

LOUIS GINZBERG

# LEGENDS OF THE JEWS

VOLUME 1





### **How to go to your page**

This eBook contains two volumes. The front matter for each volume has its own page numbering scheme, consisting of a volume number and a page number, separated by a colon.

For example, to go to page *v* of Volume 1, type “1:*v*” in the "page #" box at the top of the screen and click "Go." To go to page *v* of Volume 2, type “2:*v*”... and so forth.

The body of the text is numbered consecutively across both volumes.



LEGENDS  
OF THE JEWS

VOLUME 1







# LEGENDS OF THE JEWS

BY  
LOUIS GINZBERG

Translated from the German Manuscript by

HENRIETTA SZOLD

and

PAUL RADIN

VOLUME ONE

Bible Times and Characters

From the Creation to Moses in the Wilderness



THE JEWISH PUBLICATION SOCIETY

PHILADELPHIA

2003 • 5763



Copyright © 2003 by The Jewish Publication Society

First edition published in seven volumes in 1909, 1910, 1911, 1913, 1925, 1928, and 1938.

Second edition. All rights reserved

*No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage or retrieval system, except for brief passages in connection with a critical review, without permission in writing from the publisher:*

The Jewish Publication Society  
2100 Arch Street, 2nd Floor  
Philadelphia, PA 19103  
www.jewishpub.org

Design and Composition by Varda Graphics, Skokie, Illinois, USA  
Manufactured in the United States of America

03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Ginzberg, Louis, 1873-1953.

Legends of the Jews / by Louis Ginzberg; translated from the German manuscript by Henrietta Szold and Paul Radin.—2nd ed.

v. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-8276-0709-1

1. Legends, Jewish. 2. Bible, O.T.—Legends. 3. Midrash—Translations into English. 4. Aggada—Translations into English. I. Szold, Henrietta, 1860-1945. II. Radin, Paul, 1883-1959. III. Title.

BM530.G513 2003

296.1'9--dc21

2003047540

### Author's Dedication in the Original Edition

TO MY BROTHER ASHER

TO MY MOTHER, ON THE OCCASION OF  
HER SEVENTIETH BIRTHDAY



THE PUBLICATION OF THE NEW EDITION  
IS LOVINGLY DEDICATED TO THE MEMORY OF  
**HARRY ELSON**  
WHO SHARED HIS ERUDITE AND  
SOPHISTICATED KNOWLEDGE OF JEWISH HISTORY  
WITH HIS SON



# CONTENTS

## VOLUME 1

INTRODUCTION TO THE 2003 EDITION

PREFACE TO THE ORIGINAL EDITION

PREFACE TO THE NOTES

ABBREVIATIONS OF TITLES OF BOOKS IN THE NOTES

### I. THE CREATION OF THE WORLD 1

The First Things Created 1 • The Alphabet 3 • The First Day 5 •  
The Second Day 12 • The Third Day 18 • The Fourth Day 23 •  
The Fifth Day 28 • The Sixth Day 33 • All Things Praise the  
Lord 43

### II. ADAM 47

Man and the World 47 • The Angels and the Creation of Man 51 •  
The Creation of Adam 53 • The Soul of Man 55 • The Ideal Man  
58 • The Fall of Satan 62 • Woman 64 • Adam and Eve in Paradise  
68 • The Fall of Man 71 • The Punishment 74 • Sabbath in  
Heaven 83 • Adam's Repentance 86 • The Book of Raziel 89 • The  
Sickness of Adam 91 • Eve's Story of the Fall 92 • The Death of  
Adam 96 • The Death of Eve 98

### III. THE TEN GENERATIONS 101

The Birth of Cain 101 • Fratricide 103 • The Punishment of Cain  
106 • The Inhabitants of the Seven Earths 109 • The Descendants  
of Cain 111 • The Descendants of Adam and Lilith 114 • Seth and  
His Descendants 115 • Enosh 117 • The Fall of the Angels 119 •  
Enoch, Ruler and Teacher • The Ascension of Enoch 124 • The  
Translation of Enoch 129 • Methuselah 131

### IV. NOAH 133

The Birth of Noah 133 • The Punishment of the Fallen Angels 135  
• The Generation of the Deluge 138 • The Holy Book 141 • The  
Inmates of the Ark 143 • The Flood 147 • Noah Leaves the Ark



150 • The Curse of Drunkenness 153 • Noah's Descendants Spread Abroad 156 • The Depravity of Mankind 160 • Nimrod 161 • The Tower of Babel 163

V. ABRAHAM 167

The Wicked Generations 167 • The Birth of Abraham 168 • The Babe Proclaims God 170 • Abraham's First Appearance in Public 172 • The Preacher of the True Faith 173 • In the Fiery Furnace 175 • Abraham Emigrates to Haran 178 • The Star in the East 181 • The True Believer 182 • The Iconoclast 184 • Abraham in Canaan 187 • His Sojourn in Egypt 189 • The First Pharaoh 192 • The War of the Kings 193 • The Covenant of the Pieces 198 • The Birth of Ishmael 201 • The Visit of the Angels 204 • The Cities of Sin 207 • Abraham Pleads for the Sinners 210 • The Destruction of the Sinful Cities 212 • Among the Philistines 216 • The Birth of Isaac 218 • Ishmael Cast Off 219 • The Two Wives of Ishmael 221 • The Covenant with Abimelech 222 • Satan Accuses Abraham 224 • The Journey to Moriah 225 • The 'Akedah 228 • The Death and Burial of Sarah 233 • Eliezer's Mission 237 • The Wooing of Rebekah 239 • The Last Years of Abraham 243 • A Herald of Death 244 • Abraham Views Earth and Heaven 246 • The Patron of Hebron 249

VI. JACOB 251

The Birth of Esau and Jacob 251 • The Favorite of Abraham 255 • The Sale of the Birthright 257 • Isaac with the Philistines 259 • Isaac Blesses Jacob 263 • Esau's True Character Revealed 269 • Jacob Leaves His Father's House 271 • Jacob Pursued by Eliphaz and Esau 274 • The Day of Miracles 276 • Jacob with Laban 281 • The Marriage of Jacob 282 • The Birth of Jacob's Children 285 • Jacob Flees Before Laban 290 • The Covenant with Laban 292 • Jacob and Esau Prepare to Meet 295 • Jacob Wrestles with the Angel 298 • The Meeting Between Esau and Jacob 302 • The Outrage at Shechem 307 • A War Frustrated 310 • The War with the Ninevites 311 • The War with the Amorites 314 • Isaac Blesses Levi and Judah 316 • Joy and Sorrow in the House of Jacob 317 • Esau's Campaign Against Jacob 319 • The Descendants of Esau 322



VII. JOSEPH 327

The Favorite Son 327 • Joseph Hated by His Brethren 329 • Joseph Cast into the Pit 331 • The Sale 335 • Joseph's Three Masters 337 • Joseph's Coat Brought to His Father 339 • Judah and His Sons 343 • The Wives of the Sons of Jacob 347 • Joseph the Slave of Potiphar 349 • Joseph and Zuleika 352 • Joseph Resists Temptation 356 • Joseph in Prison 359 • Pharaoh's Dreams 362 • Joseph Before Pharaoh 364 • The Ruler of Egypt 367 • Joseph's Brethren in Egypt 370 • Joseph Meets His Brethren 372 • The Second Journey to Egypt 376 • Joseph and Benjamin 379 • The Thief Caught 382 • Judah Pleads and Threatens 384 • Joseph Makes Himself Known 387 • Jacob Receives the Glad Tidings 391 • Jacob Arrives in Egypt 394 • Joseph's Kindness and Generosity 396 • Jacob's Last Wish 399 • The Blessing of Ephraim and Manasseh 402 • The Blessing of the Twelve Tribes 406 • Death of Jacob 411 • The Sons of Jacob at War with the Sons of Esau 415 • Zepho King of Kittim 417 • The Nations at War 420 • Joseph's Magnanimity 421 • Asenath 423 • The Marriage of Joseph 424 • Kind and Unkind Brethren 425 • Treachery Punished 426 • The Death and Burial of Joseph 427

VIII. THE SONS OF JACOB 433

Significant Names 433 • Reuben's Testament 435 • Simon's Admonition Against Envy 436 • The Ascension of Levi 437 • Judah Warns Against Greed and Unchastity 439 • Issachar's Singleness of Heart 440 • Zebulon Exhorts unto Compassion 442 • Dan's Confession 443 • Naphtali's Dreams of the Division of the Tribes 444 • Gad's Hatred 447 • Asher's Last Words 448 • Benjamin Extols Joseph 449

IX. JOB 451

Job and the Patriarchs 451 • Job's Wealth and Benefactions 453 • Satan and Job 455 • Job's Suffering 457 • The Four Friends 459 • Job Restored 460

X. MOSES IN EGYPT 465

The Beginning of the Egyptian Bondage 465 • Pharaoh's Cunning 466 • The Pious Midwives 468 • The Three Counsellors 470 • The Slaughter of the Innocents 471 • The Parents of Moses 473 • The



Birth of Moses 473 • Moses Rescued from the Water 477 • The Infancy of Moses 480 • Moses Rescued by Gabriel 482 • The Youth of Moses 485 • The Flight 488 • The King of Ethiopia 490 • Jethro 493 • Moses Marries Zipporah 494 • A Bloody Remedy 497 • The Faithful Shepherd 500 • The Burning Thorn-Bush 501 • The Ascension of Moses 502 • Moses Visits Paradise and Hell 505 • Moses Declines the Mission 509 • Moses Punished for his Stubbornness 512 • The Return to Egypt 515 • Moses and Aaron Before Pharaoh 517 • The Suffering Increases 520 • Measure for Measure 523 • The Plagues Brought Through Aaron 526 • The Plagues Brought Through Moses 529 • The First Passover 534 • The Smiting of the First-Born 536 • The Redemption of Israel from Egyptian Bondage 538 • The Exodus 540

#### XI. MOSES IN THE WILDERNESS 545

Introduction 545 • The Long Route 545 • Pharaoh Pursues the Hebrews 548 • The Sea Divided 553 • The Passage Through the Red Sea 555 • The Destruction of the Egyptians 558 • The Song at the Sea 562 • The Awful Desert 565 • The Heavenly Food 569 • The Gathering of Manna 571 • Miriam's Well 575 • Amalek's War Against Israel 577 • Amalek Defeated 580 • Jethro 583 • The Installation of Elders 585 • Jethro Rewarded 588 • The Time Is at Hand 591 • The Gentiles Refuse the Torah 593 • The Contest of the Mountains 594 • The Torah Offered to Israel 596 • Israel Prepares for the Revelation 598 • The Revelation on Mount Sinai 599 • The First Commandment 602 • The Other Commandments Revealed on Sinai 605 • The Unity of the Ten Commandments 609 • Moses Chosen as Intermediator 610 • Moses and the Angels Strive for the Torah 613 • Moses Receives the Torah 616 • The Golden Calf 619 • Moses Blamed for Israel's Sin 622 • The Punishment of the Sinners 625 • Moses Intercedes for the People 627 • The Inscrutable Ways of the Lord 629 • The Thirteen Attributes of God 631 • The Second Tables 632 • The Erection of the Tabernacle Commanded 638 • The Materials for the Construction of the Tabernacle 640 • Bezalel 641 • The Ark with the Cherubim 642 • The Table and the Candlestick 644 • The Altar 646 • The Symbolical Significance of the Tabernacle 648 • The Priestly Robes 649 • The Stones in the Breastplate 651 • The Completion of the Taber-



nacle 653 • The Setting Up of the Tabernacle 655 • The Consecration of the Priests 657 • The Day of the Ten Crowns 658 • The Interrupted Joy 661 • The Gifts of the Princes 664 • The Revelations in the Tabernacle 673 • The Cleansing of the Camp 674 • The Lighting of the Candlestick 677 • The Twelve Princes of the Tribes 678 • The Census of the Levites 681 • The Four Divisions of the Levites 683 • The Four Standards 684 • The Camp 687 • The Blasphemer and the Sabbath-Breaker 689 • The Ungrateful Multitude 691 • The Flesh-Pots of Egypt 693 • The Appointment of the Seventy Elders 695 • Eldad and Medad 697 • The Quails 699 • Aaron and Miriam Slander Moses 700 • Miriam's Punishment 702 • The Sending of the Spies 703 • Significant Names 705 • Spies in Palestine 707 • The Slandorous Report 709 • The Night of Tears 711 • Ingratitude Punished 713 • The Years of Disfavor 716 • The Rebellion of Korah 718 • Moses Pleads in Vain with Korah 722 • Korah and His Horde Punished 725 • On and the Three Sons of Korah Saved 726 • Israel Convinced of Aaron's Priesthood 728 • The Waters of Meribah 731 • Moses' Anger Causes His Doom 733 • Edom's Unbrotherly Attitude Toward Israel 735 • The Three Shepherds 737 • Preparing Aaron for Impending Death 739 • Aaron's Death 740 • The General Mourning for Aaron 743 • The False Friends 745 • The Brazen Serpent 747 • At Arnon 749

## VOLUME 2

### ABBREVIATIONS OF TITLES OF BOOKS IN THE NOTES

#### XI. MOSES IN THE WILDERNESS (CONTINUED)

Sihon, The King of the Amorites 751 • The Giant Og 753 • Moses' Speech of Admonition 756 • Balak, King of Moab 758 • Balaam, the Heathen Prophet 760 • Balak's Messengers to Balaam 762 • Balaam Accepts Balak's Invitation 764 • Balaam's Ass 765 • Balaam Runs into His Own Destruction 768 • Balaam with Balak 769 • Balaam's Sacrifices Refused 770 • Balaam Extols Israel 772 • Balaam's Hopes Disappointed 774 • Curses Turned to Blessings 776 • Balaam's Wicked Counsel 778 • Phinehas, Zealous for God 779 • Twelve Miracles 781 • Phinehas Rewarded 782 • The Daughters of



Zelophehad 784 • The Appointment of Joshua 787 • Moses' Legacy to Joshua 790 • Moses' Last Campaign 791 • The Complete Annihilation of Midian 794 • The Gruesome End of Balaam 795 • The Victorious Return from the War 797 • Wealth that Bringeth Destruction 798 • Moses' Death Irrevocably Doomed 800 • Moses' Prayer for Suspension of Judgment 801 • God Tries to Comfort Moses Concerning His Death 806 • The Intercessions for Moses 808 • Moses Serves Joshua 810 • The Last Day of Moses' Life 812 • Moses Beholds the Future 814 • Moses Meets the Messiah in Heaven 816 • The Last Hours of Moses 817 • Blessing of Moses 819 • Moses Prays for Death 826 • Samael Chastised by Moses 828 • God Kisses Moses' Soul 831 • The Mourning for Moses 834 • Samael's Vain Search 835 • Moses Excels All Pious Men 837

XII. JOSHUA 841

The Servant of Moses 841 • Entering the Promised Land 842 • Conquest of the Land 845 • The Sun Obeys Joshua 848 • War with the Armenians 850 • Allotment of the Land 851

XIII. THE JUDGES 855

The First Judge 855 • Campaigns of Kenaz 858 • Othniel 860 • Boaz and Ruth 862 • Deborah 867 • Gideon 871 • Jephthah 874 • Samson 877 • The Crime of the Benjamites 880

XIV. SAMUEL AND SAUL 887

Elkanah and Hannah 887 • The Youth of Samuel 889 • Eli and His Sons 891 • The Activities of Samuel 895 • The Reign of Saul 898 • The Court of Saul 905

XV. DAVID 911

David's Birth and Descent 911 • Anointed King 912 • Encounter with Goliath 915 • Pursued by Saul 918 • Wars 920 • Ahithophel 922 • Joab 924 • David's Piety and His Sin 927 • Absalom's Rebellion 931 • David's Atonement 933 • Visitations 934 • Death of David 938 • David in Paradise 938 • The Family of David 940 • His Tomb 942

XVI. SOLOMON 945

Solomon Punishes Joab 945 • The Marriage of Solomon 947 • His Wisdom 949 • The Queen of Sheba 958 • Solomon Master of the Demons



962 • The Building of the Temple 965 • The Throne of Solomon 968 •  
The Hippodrome 970 • Lessons in Humility 971 • Asmodeus 973 •  
Solomon as Beggar 975 • The Court of Solomon 978

XVII. JUDAH AND ISRAEL 981

The Division of the Kingdom 981 • Jeroboam 982 • The Two Abi-  
jahs 984 • Asa 985 • Jehoshaphat and Ahab 986 • Jezebel 990 •  
Joram of Israel 990

XVIII. ELIJAH 993

Elijah Before His Translation 993 • After His Translation 1000 •  
Censor and Avenger 1006 • Intercourse with the Sages 1009 • God's  
Justice Vindicated 1013 • Elijah and the Angel of Death 1016 •  
Teacher of the Kabbalah 1018 • Forerunner of the Messiah 1020

XIV. ELISHA AND JONAH 1025

Elisha the Disciple of Elijah 1025 • The Shunammite 1028 •  
Gehazi 1029 • The Flight of Jonah 1031 • Jonah in the Whale  
1033 • The Repentance of Nineveh 1034

XX. THE LATER KINGS OF JUDAH 1037

Joash 1037 • Three Great Prophets 1039 • The Two Kingdoms  
Chastised 1043 • Hezekiah 1045 • Miracles Wrought for Hezekiah  
1048 • Manasseh 1054 • Josiah and His Successors 1058

XXI. THE EXILE 1065

Zedekiah 1065 • Jeremiah 1067 • Nebuchadnezzar 1072 • The  
Capture of Jerusalem 1074 • The Great Lament 1078 • Jeremiah's  
Journey to Babylon 1081 • Transportation of the Captives 1085 •  
The Sons of Moses 1088 • Ebed-Melech 1090 • The Temple Ves-  
sels 1091 • Baruch 1092 • The Tombs of Baruch and Ezekiel 1094  
• Daniel 1095 • The Three Men in the Furnace 1097 • Ezekiel  
Revives the Dead 1101 • Nebuchadnezzar a Beast 1103 • Hiram  
1104 • The False Prophets 1106 • Daniel's Piety 1107

XXII. THE RETURN OF THE CAPTIVITY 1111

Belshazzar's Feast 1111 • Daniel Under the Persian Kings 1113 •  
The Grave of Daniel 1117 • Zerubbabel 1118 • Ezra 1121 • The  
Men of the Great Assembly 1126



### XXIII. ESTHER 1129

The Feast for the Grandees 1129 • The Festivities in Shushan 1132  
• Vashti's Banquet 1134 • The Fate of Vashti 1135 • The Follies of  
Ahasuerus 1138 • Mordecai 1139 • Esther's Beauty and Piety 1141  
• The Conspiracy 1145 • Haman the Jew-Baiter 1146 • Mordecai's  
Pride 1148 • Casting the Lots 1150 • The Denunciation of the  
Jews 1152 • The Decree of Annihilation 1155 • Satan Indicts the  
Jews 1158 • The Dream of Mordecai 1161 • The Prayer of Esther  
1164 • Esther Intercedes 1166 • The Disturbed Night 1169 • The  
Fall of Haman 1172 • The Edict of the King 1178

### INDEX OF SUBJECTS

### INDEX OF PASSAGES

### INDEX OF HEBREW AND ARAMAIC WORDS AND PHRASES







# INTRODUCTION

## TO

### THE 2003 EDITION

**I**n 1898 a young scholar named Louis Ginzberg published the first in a series of articles on the Aggadah in the *Church Fathers* and in the apocryphal literature.<sup>1</sup> The word “aggadah”—literally, “narrative” or “what is transmitted through telling”—is a technical term in classical Jewish literature for the nonlegal traditions of the Rabbis who lived in Roman Palestine and Babylonia in the first six centuries of the Common Era. These traditions are preserved in both the Talmud and the various collections of Midrash, or Rabbinic biblical interpretation. Ginzberg himself was mainly interested in *aggadot* about biblical characters—stories famous in Jewish tradition but *not* found in the Bible, like the story that Abraham was the first monotheist and that he had deduced the existence of one God by destroying his father’s idols, or the tale about Moses, who, before returning to Egypt to lead the Israelites, had first been general, then king of the Ethiopians and had married their queen.

---

\* “Aggadah” is the Aramaic form of the Hebrew “Haggadah.” Ginzberg himself tended to use the latter, but for purposes of consistency (because the Aramaic form is the more common one in use today) and clarity (to avoid any confusion with the Passover Haggadah) I have consistently used Aggadah and changed all instances of Haggadah to Aggadah.

Ginzberg called such stories “legends” and sought in his articles to recover the remains of what he believed were some of the earliest existing *aggadot*. These, he argued, had been paradoxically preserved only in the books of the Apocrypha, the earliest postbiblical writings, and in the writings of the early Church Fathers. Now such a scholarly task would seem easy enough if these ancient authors had referred to them as Jewish *aggadot*; but they did not. So Ginzberg hunted them down with the assiduity and ingenuity of a tireless Sherlock Holmes. The articles, that resulted, as one later scholar noted, were in fact close to revolutionary and signaled an entirely new approach to the study of ancient Rabbinic lore. They were also the germ of this book, *Legends of the Jews*, arguably the single most important contribution to the study of Rabbinic Aggadah in the modern period.

At the time he published his first articles, Louis Ginzberg was twenty-five years old. Born in Kovno, Lithuania, in 1873, Ginzberg was the direct descendant of several distinguished rabbis, including on his mother's side, the brother of the Gaon of Vilna (1720–97). Recognized as a prodigy, even as a child, Ginzberg studied in the great Lithuanian yeshivot of Telz and Slobodka. After his father moved the family to



Amsterdam for business reasons, Ginzberg was sent to Germany to continue his rabbinical studies and receive a secular education. At age twenty-one, he enrolled in the University of Strassburg, where he studied Semitic languages and literature with the great Orientalist Theodore Noeldeke and completed his doctorate at the University of Heidelberg in 1898. (His dissertation was “The Aggadah in the Church Fathers and in the Apocryphal Literature.”)

In 1899, persuaded that he would never receive a university position in Germany because he was Jewish, Ginzberg emigrated to the United States on the promise of a teaching position at Hebrew Union College. The job, however, was retracted even before he arrived, supposedly because word had reached the school that the young European scholar was an adherent of modern biblical criticism! Pressed for a livelihood, Ginzberg found employment writing for *The Jewish Encyclopaedia*, for which, over several years, he wrote more than four hundred articles, some of which continue to be read today as exemplary studies of their subjects. Two years later, however, the *Encyclopaedia* found itself in its own financial difficulties, and Ginzberg, out of work, considered returning to Europe. At the eleventh hour, however, Ginzberg was “rescued” by Sulzberger. Judge Mayer Sulzberger of Philadelphia, one of the leading figures in American Jewry at the time. Sulzberger had met Ginzberg socially and, loath to see any young Jewish scholar leave the country, he suggested that Ginzberg write a small popular volume on Jewish legends for The Jewish Publication Society for the sum of one thousand dollars. Ginzberg agreed; and in 1901, he signed a contract for the book.

The original terms of the agreement—preserved in a letter written to Ginzberg by Henrietta Szold, secretary of the Society—were that he produce a manuscript of “approximately one hundred thousand words” (about 300 printed

pages) to be submitted in 1903. The book, however, quickly exceeded its original plan; and in 1903, Ginzberg submitted not a completed book but a reconceived plan for the work-in-progress. Eventually, the project grew to nearly ten times its originally planned size—into four large volumes, plus two dense volumes of footnotes printed in a minuscule font size and one index volume of 612 pages alone. The first volume of *Legends of the Jews* appeared in 1909; the next three in 1910, 1911, and 1913, respectively. The two volumes of notes were published in 1925 and 1928. The index (written on more than seventy thousand note cards by Boaz Cohen, Ginzberg’s student and later an eminent scholar of ancient Jewish law in his own right) was completed in 1931; but because of lack of money, it was not published until 1938.<sup>2</sup> Ginzberg, to be sure, was not working all those years full time on *Legends*. In 1902, he had been appointed professor of Talmud in the newly reorganized Jewish Theological Seminary, where he remained as its outstanding scholarly personality for the next fifty years, training some 650 rabbis and scholars and serving as the major intellectual force in the American Conservative movement. By the time the index appeared in 1938, he had also published eight other scholarly books, including seminal monographs on the Palestinian Talmud, *genizah* documents, and Geonic literature, not to mention countless articles, responsa, and essays, both learned and popular.

*Legends of the Jews* was originally written in German, presumably because Ginzberg did not feel comfortable enough in his newly adopted language (although he later became a stylist of no small measure in English). The first two volumes were translated into a felicitous English by Henrietta Szold who, despite her official title of secretary of the Society, was actually its chief editor, manager, and main translator as well.<sup>3</sup> By



now, the story of the unhappy romance that ensued between its author and translator has become part of the history of the work. Fifteen years older than Ginzberg, Szold, who was forty-five and unmarried, first met the young European professor in 1903 and instantly became enamored of him, turning her work on the translation into a labor of love. Ginzberg at first responded reluctantly to her interest; but over time, particularly after the death of his father in 1907, when he found himself desperately in need of companionship, the two developed what he called “an extraordinary friendship.” Their relationship came to an end only when, in 1908, after returning from a trip to Europe, he abruptly announced his engagement to a young woman he had met abroad. Heartbroken, Szold nearly suffered a nervous breakdown; she begged off from completing the translation of *Legends* and, ultimately, left The Jewish Publication Society to avoid having to deal with Ginzberg. This was, however, a kind of happy accident, because Szold was then able to devote all her energies to Zionist activities and the founding of Hadassah—a fortunate casualty, as it were, of *Legends*. In turn, the translation of the remaining volumes was taken over by a needy graduate student named Paul Radin, who later went on to become one of America’s most important anthropologists.

The romance behind the work notwithstanding, *Legends* underwent a radical change in the course of its writing. The original conception, as proposed by Mayer Sulzberger, was to produce a popular collection of Jewish legends about the Bible—“to offer a readable story and narrate an interesting tale,” as Ginzberg himself wrote in the preface to the fifth volume. As the work took shape, however, it became something quite different: the first attempt “to gather from the original sources all Jewish legends, insofar as they refer to biblical personages

and events, and reproduce them with the greatest attainable completeness and accuracy.”<sup>4</sup> Indeed, not only was it an attempt to collect all Jewish legends, as the complete work with the two volumes of notes coalesced, it also became the first comprehensive and critical attempt to analyze the legends and trace their development and place in both Jewish tradition and world folklore.

To appreciate the scope of Ginzberg’s achievement, it is necessary to understand the nature of the “original sources” containing the Jewish legends. Indeed, the title itself—*Legends of the Jews* rather than “Legends of the Rabbis”—was a deliberate choice on Ginzberg’s part, because he believed that Jewish legend—Aggadah—was both earlier and greater than what was represented in Rabbinic literature. Although Ginzberg always gave pride of place to the Rabbinic sources, namely, the Talmud and midrashic collections, he argued that Aggadah both antedated the period of Rabbinic Judaism (which, speaking from a critical historian’s perspective, begins only after the destruction of the Temple in 70 C.E.) and left its traces far beyond the confines of the literature that the Rabbis themselves produced. For Ginzberg, the real origins of Aggadah lay in early postbiblical literature, particularly in the works known as the Apocrypha and Pseudepigrapha, which were composed in the last centuries before the turn of the common era and the first centuries afterward. With titles such as the Book of Enoch (an obscure figure mentioned in Gen. 4:21–24), or the Last Testaments of the Ten Tribes, or the Visions of Ezekiel, these often arcane texts, were probably originally composed in Hebrew, but were now preserved only in translation in languages like Coptic and Old Church Slavonic. Typically presenting themselves as hidden or suppressed “supplements” to the biblical canon, these works, as Ginzberg was among the first to



realize, were actually the earliest testimony to extrabiblical Jewish legend. Unhappily, the Christian Church early on had adapted and appropriated these books (often adding Christianizing elements to the original Jewish texts); and in response, the Rabbis had largely disavowed them, thereby shutting them out of the Jewish biblical canon and excluding them from subsequent Jewish tradition. As part of his project, Ginzberg saw it as his duty to reclaim the Jewish legends in these books for Judaism.

Further, Ginzberg's vision of the range of Jewish legend did not end with the literature of the Rabbis. Just as he felt compelled to reclaim the Aggadah in the Apocrypha and Pseudepigrapha, so too he understood that "in the rich literature of the Church Fathers many a Jewish legend lies embalmed which one would seek in vain in Jewish books." And this was true not only of the literature of Christianity but of that of Islam as well.

Finally, Ginzberg understood that in Jewish tradition the late dating of a text did not necessarily rule out its containing very early traditions that had not been preserved anywhere else. As a consequence, he made rich use of the medieval writers—commentators, homilists, poets, and philosophers—as well as of Kabbalah and its mystical texts. Indeed, "new legends arose" even among the Hasidim, and so he felt it incumbent to include those as well, for what they might teach us about the later history of Jewish legend.

Ginzberg's vision of the parameters of Jewish legend was therefore exceedingly broad—in fact, unparalleled among his contemporaries and hardly surpassed since his time. His book was probably the first to cite in the same passage sources from the Talmud and Midrash; from the first-century Greek Jewish philosopher Philo, the Zohar; from the Church Fathers Origen and Tertullian; and from the seventeenth-century

kabbalist Hayyim Vital.<sup>5</sup> Nor was this purely a matter of intellectual vision. Ginzberg's knowledge of Western culture from its beginnings in ancient Egypt and Mesopotamia through early modern European intellectual history was dazzling. Remember, too, that he was in his thirties when he wrote *Legends*, an age when many young scholars today are still completing their doctoral dissertations.

To give just a hint of the range of materials he drew upon, consider his portrait of Abraham in the first volume.<sup>6</sup> The idea that the world owed its existence to the merits of the patriarch was derived from a Palestinian source; that Abraham left Ur at great personal sacrifice was from an Egyptian text; that Abraham proved the emptiness of their faith to the wise men of Egypt came from a Roman source; and that Laban, Balaam, and Abraham's father derived their art of sorcery from the cities Abraham had built for Hagar and Ishmael was from a Babylonian one. So, too, Ginzberg derived Abraham's mother's name from one source, Abraham's designation as "the true friend of God" from a second, the discovery of the true faith from a third, the tale of Abraham's remarkable tree from a fourth, the source of Sarah's barrenness from a fifth, the parents of Hagar from a sixth, and so on. The number of sources that Ginzberg consulted is literally mind-boggling.

One might expect that a narrative woven out of all these separate strands and pieces would have been full of loose threads and distracting digressions. But Ginzberg was an excellent storyteller, and he masterfully wove together the many fragmentary *aggadot* to produce short vignettes with titles such as "The Babe Proclaims God" and "The Patron of Hebron." Helped along by Szold's mellifluous prose, despite its somewhat Victorian diction, Ginzberg managed, in better than workmanlike style, to fit an impressive number of *aggadot*



into a coherent sequential narrative; and the stories and motifs that he could not fit into the main text itself he placed in the notes. Following the lead of the legends themselves rather than the biblical narrative, Ginzberg nonetheless managed to retell the entire biblical history from the Creation to the return of the Jews from Babylonian captivity as though there were no difference between the “Bible” proper and the Bible “of Jewish imagination and phantasy.”<sup>7</sup> The result was something like a cross between the Grimm Brothers’ fairy tales and Charles Lamb’s *Stories from Shakespeare*. In fact, Ginzberg’s “retold Bible” hearkens back to some of the very sources he mined for *aggadot*, to such ancient texts as Pseudo-Philo’s *Biblical Antiquities* and to medieval works like the *Chronicle of Yerahmeel* and *Sefer Hayashar*—works that also freely “retold” the Bible, adding *aggadot* and legends as though they were part of the original text.

What impelled Ginzberg’s work, however, was not a desire to emulate the classical tradition but a conception of Aggadah as the folk literature of the Jewish people. Ginzberg never spelled out exactly what he meant by “folk literature,” but it is possible to reconstruct his ideas from his references to Aggadah as a “popular literature,” as tales “spontaneously brought forth by the people,” as “the product of practical, pulsating life,” and as a literature “created by the people for the people.”<sup>8</sup> In treating Aggadah as folk literature, Ginzberg was, on the one hand, reacting to earlier scholars of Rabbinic literature such as the great nineteenth-century German Jewish founder of the Science of Judaism, Leopold Zunz, who had considered Aggadah to be mainly a product of the schoolhouse and academy, at worst “extravagances of an unbridled scholastic mind.”<sup>9</sup> This view of Aggadah was shared, paradoxically, by many Christian students of an-

cient Judaism, even sympathetic ones, who maintained that Judaism as a living phenomenon and a religion of vitality had ceased to exist from the moment the Jews lost their political independence and the Temple was destroyed. For these scholars, Ginzberg wrote, the Judaism of the Synagogue was “something different from the Judaism of the Bible, something actually opposed to it,” and its literature was at best “poetic phantasmagoria, the vaporings of morbid visionaries.”<sup>10</sup>

By viewing the Aggadah as the popular folk literature of ancient Judaism, Ginzberg wished to reverse judgment about the value of Aggadah and, by extension, about their valuation of Rabbinic Judaism in general. Quite the contrary, Ginzberg argued:

The school and the home are not mutually opposed to each other in the conceptions of the Jews. They study in their homes and they live in their schools. Likewise there is no distinct class of scholars among them, a class that withdraws itself from participation in the affairs of practical life. Even in the domain of the Halakhah [Rabbinic law], the Rabbis were not so much occupied with theoretic principles of law as with the concrete phenomena of daily existence. These they sought to grasp and shape. And what is true of the Halakhah is true with greater emphasis of the Aggadah, which is popular in the double sense of appealing to the people and being produced in the main by the people.<sup>11</sup>

The Aggadah, in short, embodied the living spirit of the Jewish people—indeed, it proved the existence of that living spirit even when the Jews lived in exile under foreign rule and, fleeing the sad conditions of their contemporary existence, allowed their imaginations to roam freely in the ancient past of the Bible, the Torah. For ancient and medieval Jews, Ginzberg wrote,



“Torah was the magic means of making a sordid actuality recede before a glorious memory.”<sup>12</sup>

In viewing Aggadah as the folk literature of the Jews and as an instrument for validating Jewish national existence in the present as well as in the past, Ginzberg was very much a child of his time. The very title of the work places it among the many books of national legends and folklore that appeared in the nineteenth century, including the folktale collections of the Brothers Grimm. Indeed it was a basic principle of European Romantic thought that every people must possess its own homeland, language, and national literature. Where such a literature did not manifestly exist, it was invented, as in the case of the famous Icelandic epic *Laocoon*. Ginzberg had no need to invent the legends of the Jews; he had only to rediscover them. And this he did, searching for them not only in the obvious sources of Jewish literature but also, as noted, in the Apocrypha, Pseudepigrapha, early Christian literature, and medieval Islamic and Asian literature. He dug through these documents, looking for treasures with all the zeal and painstaking patience of an intrepid archaeologist.

By placing Aggadah within its larger historical framework, Ginzberg sought to distinguish between its legendary substance and its frequently scholastic form. The latter, he felt, was the main reason Aggadah had not been sufficiently appreciated and properly understood. According to Ginzberg, the Rabbinic academy was not the birthplace or fount of Aggadah, only the site of its later transmission. Little of the original Aggadah had been preserved in its earliest form. In Christian tradition, the pseudepigraphic literature had preserved the Jewish legends in the form of apocalyptic prophecies, while in Jewish tradition the same legends were mainly transmitted in the form of Midrash, or scriptural exegesis. Ginzberg wrote:

The teachers of the Aaggadah, called *Rabbanan d'Aggade* in the Talmud, were no folklorists, from whom a faithful reproduction of legendary material may be expected. Primarily they were homilists, who used legends for didactic purposes, and their main object was to establish a close connection between the Scripture and the creations of the popular fantasy, to give the latter a firm basis and secure a long term of life for them.<sup>13</sup>

This midrashic connection to Scripture was, however, a belated, secondary addition, a mere scholastic veneer. “One of the most important tasks of the modern investigation of the Aaggadah,” he wrote, “is to make a clean separation between the original elements and the later learned additions.”<sup>14</sup> And this was precisely the task he set himself in *Legends*—a task whose execution was neatly summed up in the difference between the first four volumes of the legends proper and the two volumes of footnotes, which were densely packed with scholarship. (In this new edition, for purposes of greater convenience, each legend is immediately followed by its set of footnotes.)

The enormous body of scholarship originally contained in the two volumes of notes remains remarkably relevant; it is certainly not out of date. Given the substantial discoveries and advances in scholarship made over the last century, this is truly remarkable. Critical editions of many texts that Ginzberg consulted have changed our understanding of numerous details, and Ginzberg wrote before the discovery of the Dead Sea Scrolls and the Gnostic library at Nag Hammadi, two exceedingly valuable troves of documents that have considerably fleshed out our understanding of the ancient Jewish world. Even so, the material in these sources has generally confirmed rather than refuted Ginzberg’s view of the close “inner rela-



tion” among the early postbiblical writings and the later Rabbinic texts. More recent methodological shifts in research have added nuances to the way scholars approach the literary sources Ginzberg treated. In the main, though, no scholar even today can study biblical legends without first consulting Ginzberg to see what he already discovered and pointed out.

The single underpinning of the work that is no longer accepted by most scholars is Ginzberg’s light-handed dismissal of the midrashic dimension of Aggadah as a secondary, belated feature. Nor would contemporary scholars agree that one might easily make a “clean separation” between the original Aggadah and the later learned additions. Over the last quarter-century, students of Midrash and Aggadah have noted the close connection between exegesis and imagination in classical Jewish literature. Exegesis—the desire to interpret Scripture, the need to explain difficulties in the biblical text—is no longer seen as mere scholarly detritus but as one of the great occasions for the exercise of the Jewish imagination. Fictional invention was an intrinsic part of the way in which the Bible was read by its earliest audience to fill out the many lacunae and gaps in its narrative. Aggadah, in other words, was not simply Jewish fantasy. Homiletical Midrash was a valid—even the most cogent—medium for solving interpretive difficulties in the biblical narrative, for making the Bible relevant and meaningful to contemporary readers, for bridging the gap between the strangeness of what the Bible *seemed* to say and what its audience felt it *ought* to mean.

In fact, in the course of his own career, Ginzberg himself partially revised his earlier views. In a talk titled “Jewish Folklore: East and West”—delivered in 1936 as an address at the Tercentenary of Harvard University—Ginzberg acknowledged that “most frequently scholastic

ingenuity [namely, Midrash] and popular fancy *both* contributed toward the production of these legends” (emphasis added). Indeed, even the somewhat schizoid character of *Legends*—with its first four volumes addressed explicitly to the general reader and its last two volumes intended primarily “if not exclusively”<sup>15</sup> for the scholar—argued against the easy distinction between popular legend and exegetical scholasticism. In a more than slightly ironic fashion, the notes tend to “deconstruct” the simple, straightforward narrative related in the first four volumes by laying bare a complex subtext of often intersecting and multilayered levels of influence, borrowings, and interpretive commentaries lying innocently beneath the seemingly transparent prose of the legends. The reader willing to make the passage from the simple narrative retold in the first four volumes to the dense annotations in the last two—virtually one footnote per paragraph of narrative text—may feel as if he or she were stepping into an unsettling fourth dimension of reality of unending scholarly complication and refinement.

To be fair to Ginzberg, he was not alone among Jewish thinkers in his time in approaching the imaginative lore of the Rabbis from the vantage point of folklore or to see its imaginative, popular dimension as distinct from and even opposed to its midrashic, exegetical side.<sup>16</sup> *Legends of the Jews* was one of three major anthologies of classical Jewish Aggadah to appear in roughly the same period. In 1908–09, poet Haim Nahman Bialik and editor Yehoshua Hana Ravnitzky published their classic *Sefer Ha’Aggadah*, whose title in English—*The Book of Legends*—does more to convey its authors’ sense of Aggadah as a lost epic or as the quasi-mythic folk literature of the Jews. And only slightly later, Micah Yosef Berdichevsky (Bin-Gorion) published the first of several anthologies of Jewish folklore that culminated in his



monumental *Mimekor Yisrael* (published posthumously in 1939).

Each of these books had a somewhat different character and agenda. Bialik and Ravnitzky's *Sefer Ha 'Aggadah* was compiled as part of the Zionist project of *kinnus*, the "ingathering" of classical Jewish literature, and was consciously intended to reclaim the epic of Jewish tradition for the Zionist pioneers in Palestine in their newly reborn Hebraic culture.<sup>17</sup> Berdischevsky's anthologies were folklore collections that he hoped would inspire a rebirth of Jewish creativity; to this day, *Mimekor Yisrael* remains the most complete compilation of classical Jewish folklore.<sup>18</sup> Ginzberg's *Legends*, in turn, had a dual purpose—first, to present to an American audience the wealth of Jewish legends in a readable, interesting form (per Mayer Sulzberger's original commission); and second, to use this occasion as a pretext to collect legends from every conceivable source and to analyze and trace their parallels, influences, and sources. It was the only one of the three works to offer a genuinely original, major contribution to scholarship.

Yet for all the differences among their works, the editors of all three anthologies sought to distance Aggadah from midrashic exegesis, each for his own reason. In Bialik's case, it was largely personal: He identified Midrash with the *beit midrash* of the traditional yeshivah, from which he had fled as a youth to become the poet laureate of the Zionist movement. In his mind, Midrash never lost its depressing associations with the stifling and deadening traditional world he sought to escape. Berdishevsky's feelings were less obviously autobiographical: He was primarily interested in recovering the creative act that he saw embodied in Jewish legend. As he understood it, the midrashic or homiletic frame was a later editorial intervention that prevented the reader's direct encounter with the creative legend, an encounter that Ber-

dishevsky saw as the key to a renewed Jewish creativity in the modern world.<sup>19</sup> For Ginzberg, in contrast, the midrashic side of the legends was simply the mark of their transmission by the Rabbis—the difference between the Sages' didactic interests and the more spontaneous outpourings of the popular masses, who were the Aggadah's real authors.

Yet the real difference among these works was that Ginzberg was infinitely more sympathetic to the Rabbis than either of his far more ideologically secular contemporaries. The simple reason for this is because, deep down, Ginzberg was himself a rabbi—that is, the complete product of the Lithuanian yeshivot in which he had received his earliest training in the study of Torah. Even when his critical modernity took him outside or beyond the tradition, he still remained *of* the tradition, schooled and immersed in its depths of learning and in its commitment to study as the greatest of God's commandments. Like the ancient Rabbis, for whom study of Torah was a kind of "magic," so, too, Torah—that is, Torah in the largest sense of the word, encompassing all learning and wisdom connected to Judaism—remained for Ginzberg the essence of Jewishness; one might even say, its "magic."

Ginzberg is, arguably, the paradigmatic example of the modern Jewish scholar who has moved from the world of tradition to that of critical scholarship and carried this passion for learning from one realm of discourse to the other. Even when he no longer fully subscribed to the tenets underlying the material he studied, he was not deterred from treating the sources with the same commitment and love and care he might have felt had he remained more conventionally orthodox in practice and faith. Not that the path he had chosen for himself was without conflict: Even as an elderly man, he could be stricken by guilt for having betrayed the pious



world of his forefathers to pursue the “scientific” approach to Rabbinic literature.<sup>20</sup> Yet just as he could write that his illustrious ancestor the Vilna Gaon was “the real founder of historic criticism among the Jews”<sup>21</sup>—a claim the Vilna Gaon himself might have found difficult to accept—so, too, study of the traditional texts and intellectual immersion in the tradition constituted Louis Ginzberg’s path to Judaism, even to holiness.

To this day *Legends of the Jews* remains the single indispensable reference work on Aggadah. It is the first book to which a student or scholar turns to learn the main lines of the post-biblical understanding of a biblical episode and its sources. It is also the first place to look to find out the answer to such questions as What was the day on which Abraham was born? Who among our ancestors was identified with Aesop? What was Moses’ physical appearance? and What was the name of Potiphar’s wife? One need only refer to the index, which will give you both the legend and the note in which the legend’s source and all its versions can be found. So, too, the reader will find here the full range of the rich and often unpredictable and contradictory treasures of the world of Aggadah—an imaginative universe in which mythological tales about demons and magic co-exist with moralistic stories about the piety of the patriarchs. Yet, in addition to being an invaluable map to the world of Aggadah, *Legends* also remains exemplary testimony to the life of its author, to an intellectual career of scholarly devotion to the sources of tradition in response to the challenge of modernity. It is a double reason to celebrate the re-issuing of this monument of modern Jewish learning.

David Stern

---

1. For a complete bibliography of the articles, see *The Responsa of Professor Louis Ginzberg*, ed. David Golinkin (New York: Jewish Theological Seminary of America, 1996), 1, n. 1. Golinkin’s introduction to the book is also the most complete recent biographical sketch of Ginzberg’s life. As Golinkin notes, the articles consisted of Ginzberg’s doctoral dissertation. I also wish to thank Professor Golinkin for reading and commenting on a draft of this introduction.

2. Jonathan Sarna, *JPS: The Americanization of Jewish Culture 1888–1988* (Philadelphia: Jewish Publication Society, 1989), 178.

3. For the complete story, see Sarna, 130–35; and Baila Shargel, *Lost Love* (Philadelphia: Jewish Publication Society, 1997).

4. *Legends*, xxxi.

5. See, for example, p. 80–93.

6. For what follows, see the devoted sketch by Solomon Goldman, “The Portrait of a Teacher,” in *Louis Ginzberg Jubilee Volume*, English Section (New York, The American Academy for Jewish Research, 1945), 6–7, from which I have borrowed the list of examples.

7. *Legends*, xxv. The final section of the legends is actually devoted to the story of Esther whose book, according to Ginzberg, was the last of the scriptural writings even though the events recounted in it took place in Persia some twenty years before the return from Babylonian captivity.

8. For these references, see his English introduction to *Genizah Studies*, I:xv; *Legends*, xxix.

9. “Jewish Folklore: East and West,” in *On Jewish Law and Lore* (Philadelphia: Jewish Publication Society, 1955), 61.

10. *Legends*, xxix.

11. *Legends*, xxix–xxx.

12. *Legends*, xxx.

13. *Legends*, xxix–xxx.

14. *Legends*, xxx.

15. *Legends*, xxv.

16. For an excellent study of the background, see Mark W. Kiel, “*Sefer ha ’aggadah*: Creating a Classic Anthology for the People and by the People,” *Prooftexts* 17 (1997): 177–97.

17. See David Stern, introduction to *Sefer Ha ’aggadah, The Book of Legends* (New York: Schocken, 1996), xvii–xxii.

18. Dan Ben-Amos, introduction to *Mimekor Yisrael: Selected Classical Jewish Folktales*, coll. Micha Joseph Bin Gordon, ed. Emanuel Bin Gorion, Trans. I. M. Lask, prep. Dan Ben-Amos (Bloomington: University of Indiana Press, 1990), xiii.



19. See Zipora Kagan, “*Homo Anthologicus*: Micha Joseph Berdyczewski and the Anthological Genre,” *Proof-texts* 19 (1999): 41–57.

20. See, for example, the episode recounted in Eli Ginzberg’s loving portrait of his father, *Keeper of the Law*:

*Louis Ginzberg* (Philadelphia: Jewish Publication Society, 1966), 265–66. The incident is also discussed and contextualized in Golinkin, 9–13.

21. Louis Ginzberg, *Students, Scholars, and Saints* (Philadelphia: Jewish Publication Society, 1945), 234.



# INTRODUCTION

## TO THE NOTES

**T**he reader who wishes to acquaint himself with the aim and purpose of “Legends of the Jews” and with the method and system followed by the author will find the necessary information in the preface in the first volume. I desire, however, to supplement it with a few remarks which I hope will be useful as a guide to the notes.

[The Legends], containing the Bible as mirrored by Jewish imagination and phantasy, are intended chiefly for the general reader and not for the scholar. It is true, I flatter myself, that the latter too will welcome the opportunity offered him for the first time of reading hundreds of legends in connected form instead of being forced to hunt for them in the vast literature of the Jews spreading over a period of two thousand years and in Christian writings of many a century. In the arranging and setting of the material in order, however, my main effort was to offer a readable story and narrate an interesting tale.

[The notes], on the other hand, . . . are meant primarily, if not exclusively, for the student. The material dealt with in them is of a nature which, in the opinion of the author, will interest not only students of the legendary lore of the Jews, but also students of many other

fields of learning. The student of comparative folklore will be attracted not only by the rich material offered him for his studies, but also by the fact of its being Jewish. The Jews may well be described as the great disseminators of folklore. Many a legend that originated in Egypt or Babylonia was appropriated by the European peoples and many a European fairy tale found its way to Asia through the medium of the Jews, who on their long wanderings from the East to the West, and back from the West to the East, brought the products of oriental fancies to the occidental nations, and the creations of occidental imagination to the oriental peoples.

The danger of confounding popular beliefs with *the belief* of a people is great, and I have on more than one occasion strongly protested against the methodological error of a certain school of theologians, who attempt to draw a picture of the Jewish religion by the artificial light of popular fancies. But who will gainsay that the *Volksfrömmigkeit*\* is reflected in the legends of a people? If this be true of legend in general, how much more so of Jewish legend, and particularly of that part thereof in which Jewish imagination expressed itself with regard

---

\* Piety of the common man.



to biblical events, persons and teachings. Creation, the election of Israel, the Torah, the merits of the Fathers, reward and punishment, and many similar problems, engaged the attention, not only of Jewish thought, but also of Jewish imagination. It is a well known fact that one cannot know any one thing well unless he goes beyond it and apprehends its relation to other things. To understand a people, it is not sufficient to study its thought and imagination, but also the relation of the two to one another. Almost one half of this volume is therefore intended as much for the student of Jewish religious thought as for the Jewish folklorist.

One of the outstanding characteristics of "the popular mind" is its conservatism and adherence to old forms. Nothing perhaps illustrates this more clearly and convincingly than the close affinity that exists between the pseudepigraphic literature and the rabbinic Haggadah, notwithstanding the centuries that lie between some of the Pseudepigrapha and the Midrashim. Fascinating as the study of the relation between these two branches of Jewish literature is, it is barely in its infancy. Jewish scholars have sorely neglected the study of the Pseudepigrapha, and non-Jewish scholars that of Rabbinics, and consequently very little has been achieved in this field of learning. The [notes] contain, besides hundreds of parallels between the rabbinic sources and the pseudepigraphic writings, also a number of lengthy studies on the Pseudepigrapha, especially on their relation to the Haggadah. To mention only two examples: To the Books of Adam, *i. e.* the *Vita Adae* and the *Apocalypse of Moses*, ten pages are devoted (118–128), and an almost equal number of pages is given to the *Books of Enoch* (153–162).

What has just been said about the relation of the pseudepigraphic literature to the Haggadah might be applied *mutatis mutandis* also to the affinity between Philo and the Rabbis.

There are few Jewish authors about whom so much has been written as about Philo. And yet the most important problem connected with Philo is not yet solved. Was he a Jewish thinker with a Greek education, or a Greek philosopher with Jewish learning? I hope that the very numerous references in the Notes to the frequent similarity of the views held by the Rabbis and by Philo will contribute something towards the solution of this problem. I call special attention to those notes where apparently philosophic utterances of Philo reveal themselves on close scrutiny as sound rabbinic doctrine, the philosophical tinsel of which can be easily removed.

Notwithstanding the early claim of the Church to be the sole and true interpreter of the Bible, the products of later Jewish thought and imagination found their way into it. The channels through which they reached the Christian world were two. The Church had at its very beginning adopted the pseudepigraphic literature as well as the Hellenistic writings, especially those of Philo. Besides this literary influence of later Judaism upon the Church, cognizance must also be taken of the oral communications made by Jewish masters to their Christian disciples. Not only the Church Fathers, Origen, Eusebius, Ephraem and Jerome, of whom it is well known that they studied the Bible under the guidance of Jewish teachers, have appropriated a good deal of Jewish legendary lore, but also Tertullian, Lactantius, Ambrosius, Augustine and many other teachers and leaders of the Church have come under direct influence of Jews. It is true that the Church Fathers sometimes sneeringly refer to the *fabulae Judaicae*, but more often they accept these *fabulae* and even refrain from betraying the source from which they drew them. The large material culled from the writings of the Church Fathers to illustrate their dependence upon Jewish tradition will be, I hope, of some value to the student of the patristic



literature. At the same time the student of Jewish literature will be interested to learn that many a Haggadah first met with in Jewish literature in a Midrash composed in the seventh or eighth century, and even later, was transmitted as Jewish tradition by the Church Fathers of the fifth or fourth or even the third century. Not infrequently the patristic literature throws also some light upon the origin of a Haggadah which often owes its existence to the desire of combating Christian interpretation of the Bible. An interesting example of such a Haggadah is pointed out on page 3, note 3.

The problems that presented themselves to the author were so manifold and diverse that it was quite impossible to deal fully with them. What I strove to achieve, and I hope that I have not failed, was to have the legendary material as complete as possible. There are very few Jewish legends bearing on biblical events or persons that will not be found, or at least referred to, in this work. When a legend has several variants, I give them if they are essential, otherwise the student is referred to the sources for further minute study. I found it therefore advisable to give the reference to all parallel passages of the original sources, as in most cases some slight variants are not lacking. The order of the sources is the chronological one, *i. e.* the older source precedes the younger one, except when on account of its fulness or for some other reason the text is based on the latter one, in which case it comes first.

I have purposely avoided references to secondary sources, and while one is frequently accustomed to be referred to Rashi, Yalkut and other mediaeval authors as sources for Jewish legend, these authors are mentioned in the notes only when they offer either material not found in the older literature extant or some important variants.

I have also been very sparing with references to modern writers on the Haggadah or on

general Folklore. There are a considerable number of doctoral dissertations, mostly in German, which attempt to give the lives of prominent figures of the Bible according to the Haggadah. At their best, they are correct translations of some sections of the Midrash Rabba, and there was no need to refer to translations, as the notes are written for those who are able to make use of the original sources. For this very reason, I also refrained from giving explanations to the texts quoted if they are found in the commentaries. Explanations are given in the notes only when the commentators fail to do so, or where I differ with their views. As I have a thorough dislike for polemics, I rarely gave my reasons for the refusal to accept the views of others.

As to the literature on general Folklore, I was guided by the consideration that a student of comparative Folklore is surely acquainted with the standard works of Bolte and Polivka, Cosquin, Child, Clouston, Hartland, Grässe, Hertz, Köhler, Oesterley and other great masters of this field of study, and it would have been entirely superfluous to call attention to the very numerous parallels found in these works to Jewish legends. The relation of the legendary lore of the Jews to that of the other nations is of extreme interest to the student of Folklore, but the discussion of this relation does not fall within the scope of this work.

A folkloristic *motif* often appears in a variety of legends which formally are quite distinct from one another. In cases like this, reference is made either to the text of the related legend or to the note pertaining thereto. The attention of the student is, however, called to the fact that it is necessary to examine both text and note to make clear the meaning of such a reference. To avoid multiplying the references, it was found advisable to refer to the index, which contains under the subject headings all the passages of text and notes that are related to one another.



The index will also give a complete bibliography of the works quoted in the notes. For the convenience of the reader, however, a list of abbreviated titles of books is attached to this volume. I have followed the usual forms of quoting, and no special directions are necessary for those who are able to make use of the sources in their original. The titles of the Hellenistic and patristic works are given in Latin, and the editions referred to are the critical ones, if there be any, otherwise the vulgate text is used. Most of the writings of the Church Fathers, for instance, are quoted according to the Patrology of Migne. In quoting the works of Philo the divisions of the older editions are retained for the benefit of those who have not the critical edition of Cohn and Wendland at their disposal. Almost all the Hebrew works made use of in the notes were accessible to me in their first editions. In quoting, however, the Talmudim, Midrashim and similar works, the ordinary editions are referred to, except where critical editions exist.

The transliteration of Hebrew words is that of the Jewish Encyclopaedia, except that because of typographical difficulties, I did not make use of the diacritical points. Accordingly H stands for ה and ח, K for כ and ק, T for ט and ת and Z for ז and צ.

In the concluding lines of the preface I can not help giving expression to the feeling of deep sadness that overcomes me at the thought that Dr. B. Halper, who greatly assisted me in seeing this work through the press, was snatched away from our midst before its completion. With the devotion of the friend and the interest of the scholar he did much more for this book than even the most conscientious editor could be expected to do. His untimely death was a great loss to Jewish scholarship and still more to his friends, who will always remember him with love and affection.

LOUIS GINZBERG

*New York, April 24, 1925*



# PREFACE

## TO

### THE ORIGINAL EDITION

*Was sich nie und nirgends hat  
begeben, das allein veraltet nie.\**

THE term Rabbinic was applied to the Jewish Literature of post-Biblical times by those who conceived the Judaism of the later epoch to be something different from the Judaism of the Bible, something actually opposed to it. Such observers held that the Jewish nation ceased to exist at the moment when its political independence was destroyed. For them the Judaism of the later epoch has been a Judaism of the Synagogue, the spokesmen of which have been the scholars, the Rabbis. And what this phase of Judaism brought forth has been considered by them to be the product of the schools rather than the product of practical, pulsating life. Poetic phantasmagoria, frequently the vaporings of morbid visionaries, is the material out of which these scholars construct the theologic system of the Rabbis, and fairy tales, the spontaneous creations of the people, which take the form of sacred legend in Jewish literature, are denominated the Scriptural exegesis of the Rabbis, and condemned incontinently as *nugæ rabbinorum*.

As the name of a man clings to him, so men cling to names. For the primitive savage the name is part of the essence of a person or thing, and even in the more advanced stages of culture, judgments are not always formed in agreement with facts as they are, but rather according to the names by which they are called. The current estimate of Rabbinic Literature is a case in point. With the label Rabbinic later ages inherited from former ages a certain distorted view of the literature so designated. To this day, and even among scholars that approach its investigation with unprejudiced minds, the opinion prevails that it is purely a learned product. And yet the truth is that the most prominent feature of Rabbinic Literature is its popular character.

The school and the home are not mutually opposed to each other in the conception of the Jews. They study in their homes, and they live in their schools. Likewise there is no distinct class of scholars among them, a class that withdraws itself from participation in the affairs of practical life. Even in the domain of the Halakah, the Rabbis were not so much occupied with theoretic principles of law as with the concrete phenomena of daily existence. These they sought to grasp and shape. And what is true of the Halakah is true with greater emphasis of the

---

\* What has never occurred,  
That alone never grows old.



Haggadah, which is popular in the double sense of appealing to the people and being produced in the main by the people. To speak of the Haggadah of the Tannaim and Amoraim is as far from fact as to speak of the legends of Shakespeare and Scott. The ancient authors and their modern brethren of the guild alike elaborate legendary material which they found at hand.

It has been held by some that the Haggadah contains no popular legends, that it is wholly a factitious, academic product. A cursory glance at the pseudepigraphic literature of the Jews, which is older than the Haggadah literature by several centuries, shows how untenable this view is. That the one literature should have drawn from the other is precluded by historical facts. At a very early time the Synagogue disavowed the pseudepigraphic literature, which was the favorite reading matter of the sectaries and the Christians. Nevertheless the inner relation between them is of the closest kind. The only essential difference is that the Midrashic form prevails in the Haggadah, and the parenetic or apocalyptic form in the pseudepigrapha. The common element must therefore depart from the Midrash on the one hand and from parenthesis on the other.

Folklore, fairy tales, legends, and all forms of story telling akin to these are comprehended, in the terminology of the post-Biblical literature of the Jews, under the inclusive description Haggadah, a name that can be explained by a circumlocution, but cannot be translated. Whatever it is applied to is thereby characterized first as being derived from the Holy Scriptures, and then as being of the nature of a story. And, in point of fact, this dualism sums up the distinguishing features of Jewish Legend. More than eighteen centuries ago the Jewish historian Josephus observed that "though we be deprived of our wealth, of our cities, or of the other advantages we have, our law continues immortal." The word he meant to use was not law, but Torah,

only he could not find an equivalent for it in Greek. A singer of the Synagogue a thousand years after Josephus, who expressed his sentiments in Hebrew, uttered the same thought: "The Holy City and all her daughter cities are violated, they lie in ruins, despoiled of their ornaments, their splendor darkened from sight. Naught is left to us save one eternal treasure alone—the Holy Torah." The sadder the life of the Jewish people, the more it felt the need of taking refuge in its past. The Scripture, or, to use the Jewish term, the Torah, was the only remnant of its former national independence, and the Torah was the magic means of making a sordid actuality recede before a glorious memory. To the Scripture was assigned the task of supplying nourishment to the mind as well as the soul, to the intellect as well as the imagination, and the result is the Halakah and the Haggadah.

The fancy of the people did not die out in the post-Biblical time, but the bent of its activity was determined by the past. Men craved entertainment in later times as well as in the earlier, only instead of resorting for its subject-matter to what happened under their eyes, they drew from the fountain-head of the past. The events in the ancient history of Israel, which was not only studied, but lived over again daily, stimulated the desire to criticise it. The religious reflections upon nature laid down in the myths of the people, the fairy tales, which have the sole object of pleasing, and the legends, which are the people's verdict upon history—all these were welded into one product. The fancy of the Jewish people was engaged by the past reflected in the Bible, and all its creations wear a Biblical hue for this reason. This explains the peculiar form of the Haggadah.

But what is spontaneously brought forth by the people is often preserved only in the form impressed upon it by the feeling and the thought of the poet, or by the speculations of the learned. Also Jewish legends have rarely been transmitted



in their original shape. They have been perpetuated in the form of Midrash, that is, Scriptural exegesis. The teachers of the Haggadah, called *Rabbanan d'Aggadata* in the Talmud, were no folklorists, from whom a faithful reproduction of legendary material may be expected. Primarily they were homilists, who used legends for didactic purposes, and their main object was to establish a close connection between the Scripture and the creations of the popular fancy, to give the latter a firm basis and secure a long term of life for them.

One of the most important tasks of the modern investigation of the Haggadah is to make a clean separation between the original elements and the later learned additions. Hardly a beginning has been made in this direction. But as long as the task of distinguishing them has not been accomplished, it is impossible to write out the Biblical legends of the Jews without including the supplemental work of scholars in the products of the popular fancy.

In the present work, "The Legends of the Jews," I have made the first attempt to gather from the original sources all Jewish legends, in so far as they refer to Biblical personages and events, and reproduce them with the greatest attainable completeness and accuracy. I use the expression Jewish, rather than Rabbinic, because the sources from which I have levied contributions are not limited to the Rabbinic literature. As I expect to take occasion elsewhere to enter into a description of the sources in detail, the following data must suffice for the present.

The works of the Talmudic-Midrashic literature are of the first importance. Covering the period from the second to the fourteenth century, they contain the major part of the Jewish legendary material. Akin to this in content if not always in form is that derived from the Targumim, of which the oldest versions were produced not earlier than the fourth century, and

the most recent not later than the tenth. The Midrashic literature has been preserved only in fragmentary form. Many Haggadot not found in our existing collections are quoted by the authors of the Middle Ages. Accordingly, a not inconsiderable number of the legends here printed are taken from mediæval Bible commentators and homilists. I was fortunate in being able to avail myself also of fragments of Midrashim of which only manuscript copies are extant. The works of the older Kabbalah are likewise treasures of quotations from lost Midrashim, and it was among the Kabbalists, and later among the Ḥasidim, that new legends arose. The literatures produced in these two circles are therefore of great importance for the present purpose.

Furthermore, Jewish legends can be culled not from the writings of the Synagogue alone; they appear also in those of the Church. Certain Jewish works repudiated by the Synagogue were accepted and mothered by the Church. This is the literature usually denominated apocryphal-pseudepigraphic. From the point of view of legends, the apocryphal books are of subordinate importance, while the pseudepigrapha are of fundamental value. Even quantitatively the latter are an imposing mass. Besides the Greek writings of the Hellenist Jews, they contain Latin, Syrian, Ethiopic, Aramean, Arabic, Persian, and Old Slavic products translated directly or indirectly from Jewish works of Palestinian or Hellenistic origin. The use of these pseudepigrapha requires great caution. Nearly all of them are embellished with Christian interpolations, and in some cases the inserted portions have choked the original form so completely that it is impossible to determine at first sight whether a Jewish or a Christian legend is under examination. I believe, however, that the pseudepigraphic material made use of by me is Jewish beyond the cavil of a doubt, and therefore it could not have been left out of account in a work like the present.



However, in the appreciation of Jewish Legends, it is the Rabbinic writers that should form the point of departure, and not the pseudepigrapha. The former represent the main stream of Jewish thought and feeling, the latter only an undercurrent. If the Synagogue cast out the pseud-epigrapha, and the Church adopted them with a great show of favor, these respective attitudes were not determined arbitrarily or by chance. The pseudepigrapha originated in circles that harbored the germs from which Christianity developed later on. The Church could thus appropriate them as her own with just reason.

In the use of some of the apocryphal and pseudepigraphic writings, I found it expedient to quote the English translations of them made by others, in so far as they could be brought into accord with the general style of the book, for which purpose I permitted myself the liberty of slight verbal changes. In particulars, I was guided, naturally, by my own conception of the subject, which the notes justify in detail.

Besides the pseudepigrapha there are other Jewish sources in Christian garb. In the rich literature of the Church Fathers many a Jewish legend lies embalmed which one would seek in vain in Jewish books. It was therefore my special concern to use the writings of the Fathers to the utmost.

The luxuriant abundance of the material to be presented made it impossible to give a verbal rendition of each legend. This would have required more than three times the space at my disposal. I can therefore claim completeness for my work only as to content. In form it had to suffer curtailment. When several conflicting versions of the same legend existed, I gave only one in the text, reserving the other one, or the several others, for the notes, or, when practicable, they were

fused into one typical legend, the component parts of which are analyzed in the notes. In other instances I resorted to the expedient of citing one version in one place and the others in other appropriate places, in furtherance of my aim, to give a smooth presentation of the matter, with as few interruptions to the course of the narrative as possible. For this reason I avoided such transitional phrases as "Some say," "It has been maintained," etc. That my method sometimes separates things that belong together cannot be considered a grave disadvantage, as the index at the end of the work will present a logical rearrangement of the material for the benefit of the interested student. I also did not hesitate to treat of the same personage in different chapters, as, for instance, many of the legends bearing upon Jacob, those connected with the latter years of the Patriarch, do not appear in the chapter bearing his name, but will be found in the sections devoted to Joseph, for the reason that once the son steps upon the scene, he becomes the central figure, to which the life and deeds of the father are subordinated.

The fact that Job is placed between Jacob's sons and Moses may appear strange to some readers, since in the Bible Job is one of the last books; but "legend is above time and space," and I have, therefore, given Job the place which legend has ascribed to him.

Again, in consideration of lack of space the Biblical narratives underlying the legends had to be omitted—surely not a serious omission in a subject with which widespread acquaintance may be presupposed as a matter of course.

LOUIS GINZBERG.

*NEW YORK, March 24, 1909*



## ABBREVIATIONS OF TITLES OF BOOKS IN THE NOTES

- Abkat Rokel **מכיר רב...אבקת רוכל**, Warsaw 1876, quoted by book and chapter.
- Abudrahim **אבודרהם**, Warsaw 1877, quoted by section and page.
- Aggadat Bereshit **אגדת בראשית** ed. Buber, Cracow 1902, quoted by chapter and page.
- Aggadat 'Olam Katan **קטן עולם** ed. Jellinek, Bet Ha-Midrash, V, 57–59.
- Aggadat Shir **אגדת שיר השירים** ed. Schechter, Cambridge 1896.
- Aggadat Tefillat Shemoneh 'Esreh **אגדת תפלת שמונה עשרה**, ed. Jellinek, Bet Ha-Midrash, V, 53–56.
- Aggadta de Shimon Kefa **אגדתא דשמעון כפא**, ed. Jellinek in Bet Ha-Midrash V, 60–62.
- Aguddat Aggadot **אגדת אגדות... חיים מאיר**, Frankfort o. M., 1881.
- Al-Barceloni **פירוש ספר יצירה להרב... ברצלוני** ed. Halberstam, Berlin 1885.
- 'Aliyyot Eliyyahu **עליות אליהו תולדות... אליהו גאון**, Stettin, 1861.
- Alkabez. See Menot ha-Levi.
- Aphraates. The Homilies of Aphraates ed. by Wright, London 1869.
- Alphabet of R. Akiba 1 and 2 **אלפא ביתא דרבי** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash III, 12–64.
- Alphabet of Ben Sira 1 and 2 **אלפא ביתא דבן סירא** ed. Steinschneider, Berlin 1858.
- Alphabetot **אלפא ביתות** ed. Wertheimer, **מדרש אלפא ביתות דרבי עקיבא השלם** 81–121, Jerusalem 1914.
- ARN 1 and 2. **מסכת אבות דרבי נתן בשתי נוסחאות** ed. Schechter, Vienna 1887, quoted by chapter and page.
- Artapanus **περὶ τοῦδαίμων** in Eusebius, Praep. Evang.
- 'Asarah Haruge Malkut **מעשה עשרה הרוגי מלכות** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash VI, 19–35.
- 'Aseret ha-Dibrot **מדרש עשרת הדברות** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash I, 62–90 (quoted by page) and in **חבור מעשיות מהמדרשות והאגדות**, Venice, 1605, quoted by Commandment.
- 'Aseret Melakim **מדרש עשרת מלכים** ed. Horowitz, Bibliotheca Haggadica I, 38–55, Frankfort o. M. 1881.
- R. Asher. Glosses on the Pentateuch by R. Asher b. Jechiel; comp. Hadar.
- Astruc. R. Solomon Astruc **מדרשי התורה** ed. Eppenstein, Berlin 1889.
- ATAO. A. Jeremias, Das alte Testament im Lichte des alten Orients, Leipsic 1907.
- Ayyumah Ka-Nidgalot **איומה כנדגלות** by R. Isaac Onkeneira, Berlin 1701.
- Baer, Siddur **סדר עבודת ישראל**, Roedelheim 1868.
- R. Bahya. Commentary on the Pentateuch by R. Bahya b. Asher, Warsaw 1853, quoted by chapter and verse.
- BaR **מדרש במדבר רבה** ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and paragraph.
- Baraita di-Ma'aseh Bereshit ed. Chones in Buber, **יריעות שלמה** 47–50, Warsaw 1896.
- Baraita di Mazzalot **ברייטא דמדלות** ed. Wertheimer, **אוצר מדרשים כתבי יד** I, 1–28, Jerusalem, 1913.
- Baraita di-Shemuel **ברייטא דשמואל הקטן** ed. Frankfort o. M. 1863.
- Barceloni; See Al-Barceloni.
- Baruch, Greek. The Greek Apocalypse of Baruch ed. James, Texts and Studies vol. V, Cambridge, 1897.
- 3 Baruch. See Baruch, Greek.



- Batte Midrashot **בתי מדרשות** Vols. I–IV ed. Wertheimer, Jerusalem 1893–1897.
- Ben ha-Melek **בן המלך והנזיר** ed. Mantua 1557, quoted by chapter.
- Benjamin R., Itinerary of **בנימין ר' מסעות**, ed. Grünhut and Adler, Jerusalem (Frankfort o. M.) 1904.
- Benjamin R. of Tudela. See Benjamin R. Itinerary of Bertinoro. Glosses on the Pentateuch in **בעלי התוספות** על חמשה חומשי תורה ed. Warsaw 1876.
- BHM Vols. I–VI. **בית המדרש** ed. Jellinek. Leipsic 1853–1877, quoted by volume and page.
- BR **מדרש בראשית רבה** ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and paragraph. Comp. also Theodor.
- Caro, Isaac **תולדות יצחק**, Constantinople 1518, quoted by chapter and verse.
- Codex Naz. Codex Nazareus ed. Norberg, Copenhagen s. a.
- Da'at **דעת זקנים והוא חבור כולל על התורה** הראשון מרבתינו בעלי התוספות... והשני ספר מנחת יהודה מרבינו יהודה בר אליעזר Leghorn 1783.
- Dhamari. See Manzur.
- Debir **דביר מאסף עתי לחכמת ישראל** Berlin 1923.
- Demetrius *περὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ Τουδαίᾳ βασιλέων* in Eusebius, Praep. Evang.
- Derek Erez Z. **דרך ארץ זוטא** ed. Tawrogi, Königsberg 1885.
- Dibre ha-Yamim or Hayyamim **דברי הימים של משה** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash. II, 1–11.
- DR **מדרש דברים רבה** ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and paragraph.
- DZ **לקוטים ממדרש אלה הדברים [זוטא]** ed. Buber, Vienna 1885.
- Ekah **מדרש איכה רבה** ed. Buber, Wilna 1899, quoted by chapter and page, or ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and verse.
- Eldad **אלדד הדני** ed. Epstein, Presburg 1891.
- Eleh Ezkerah **אלה אזכרה** ed. Jellinek, Leipsic 1853.
- 'Emek ha-Melek **עמק המלך** by R. Naphtali b. Elchanan, Amsterdam 1648.
- Emunot we-Deot **ספר האמונות והדעות חבור רבינו** ed. Cracow 1880.
- 2 Enoch. The Book of the Secrets of Enoch translated from the Slavonic by W. R. Morfill and edited... by R. H. Charles, Oxford 1896.
- Enoch Hebrew; See Sefer Hanok.
- Ephraim. Ephraemi Syri Opera Omnia ed. P. Benedictus and Assemanus, Rome 1737–1743.
- ER and EZ **סדר אליהו רבה וסדר אליהו זוטא** ed. Friedmann, Vienna 1900, quoted by chapter (old numbering) and page.
- 'Eser Galuyyot **מדרש עשר גליות** ed. Grünhut in Likkutim III, 2–22.
- Eshkol **אשכול הכפר להרב רבנו יהודה הדסי** Goslow 1836, quoted by No., folio and column.
- Eshkol **יצחק ספר האשכול יסוד רבנו אברהם ב"ר** ed. Auerbach, Halberstadt 1867–1869, quoted by volume and page.
- ha-Eshkol **האשכול מאסף ספרותי ומדעי** ed. Fuchs and Günzig, Cracow 1898–1909.
- Eupolemus *περὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ Τουδαίᾳ βασιλέων*, in Eusebius, Praep. Evang.
- Eusebius, Praeparatio Evangelica ed. Gifford, Oxford 1903.
- EZ. See ER.
- Ezekiel, the tragedian. *Ἐξαγωγή* in Eusebius, Praep. Evang.
- 4 Ezra, Liber Esdrae Quartus ed. G. H. Box, Ezra Apocalypse, London 1912.
- Gadol u-Gedolah **גדול וגדולה** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash III, 121–130.
- Gedulat Mosheh **גדולת משה** ed. Amsterdam 1754.
- Geonica. Geonica by Louis Ginzberg, I and II, New York 1909.
- Ginzberg, Compte Rendu. *Compte Rendu des Mélanges Israël Lewy*, Paris 1914 = Rev. d. Etud. Juiv. LXVI, 297–315 and LXVII, 133–151.
- Ginzberg, Haggada bei den Kirchenv. Die Haggada bei den Kirchenvätern, Amsterdam 1899. Haggada bei den Kirchenvätern II. Die Haggada bei den Kirchenvätern und in der apocryphischen Litteratur, Berlin 1900.
- Gorion **ספרי דאגדתא אבא גוריון מדרש** in ed. Buber, Wilna 1886.
- Güdemann, Religionsgeschichte. Religionsgeschichtliche Studien, Leipsic 1876.
- Hadar **הדר זקנים... תורתן של ראשונים רבותינו בעלי התוספות זלה"ה על התורה... דבר חדש בעלי התוספות זלה"ה... הוא הרא"ש** Leghorn 1840.
- Hadassi. See Eshkol (1).
- Haggadat Teman. The Haggadah according to the Rite of Yemen . . . by William H. Greenburg, London 1896.



- Haggoren or ha-Goren. הגרן...נערך vols. I–IX, י"ע Joel, Chronography. Chronographia ed. Bekker, Bonn 1837.
- Berditschew-Berlin 1899–1922.
- Joel, Blicke. Blicke in die Religionsgeschichte . . . I–II, Breslau and Leipsic 1880–1883.
- JQR. NS. The Jewish Quarterly Review, New Series ed. Adler and Schechter, Philadelphia 1910 *seq.*
- Jub. The Book of Jubilees by Charles, London 1902.
- Hashkem השכם in Grünhut ספר הלקוטים I, 2–20; comp. Likkutim.
- Judah b. Barzilai; See Al-Barceloni.
- Hasidim חסידים, ed. Wistinetzki, Berlin 1891.
- Kad ha-Kemah כד הקמח ed. Breit, Lemberg 1880–1892.
- Hazofeh הצופה vols. I–IV, V, VII הצופה הארץ הגר ed. Blau, Budapest 1911–1923.
- Kaftor wa-Ferah. Estori Parhi, כפתור ופרח, ed. Luncz, Jerusalem 1897–1898.
- Hekalot or 1 Hekalot היכלות רבתי in Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash III, 83–108.
- Kaftor wa-Ferah. ב"ר יעקב ... ופרח ed. Luncz, Jerusalem 1897–1898.
- 3 Hekalot מפרקי היכלות in Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash III, 161–163.
- Kallah מסכת כלה והברייתא ed. Coronel, Vienna 1869, also reprinted in Talmud ed. Romm, Wilna 1895.
- 5 Hekalot or Hekalot V מסכת היכלות in Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 40–47.
- Kaneh or Kanah ספר הקנה והוא ספר הפליאה ed. Koretz 1784.
- 6 Hekalot or Hekalot VI ספר היכלות ונקרא גם כן ספר חנוך in Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash V, 170–190.
- KAT. E. Schrader, Die Keilinschriften und d. alte Testament; third edition by Winkler and Zimmern, Berlin 1902–1903.
- Hemdah Genuzah ספר חמדה גנוזה והוא תשובות הגאונים, Jerusalem 1863.
- Kebod Huppah; See Huppah Eliyyahu.
- Hesed Le-Abraham. Azulai, חסד לאברהם, ed. Lemberg 1860.
- Kebuzzat Maamarim קבוצת מאמרים מאת אברהם גייגר... על ירי שמואל אברהם פאדאנאסקי, Warsaw, 1910. (with notes by Louis Ginzberg).
- Hibbur ha-Ma'asiyyot; See 'Aseret ha-Dibrot.
- Keli-Yakar. Solomon Ephraim b. Aaron, כלי יקר, Lublin 1602 and frequently reprinted.
- Hibbur Yafeh. See Rabbenu Nissim.
- Ketoret ha-Sammim קטרת הסמים... על תרגום יונתן וירושלמי, Amsterdam 1671.
- Hippolytus, Philosophumena ed. Migne P. Gr. 16. 3.
- Kimha Dabishuna חלק ראשון וחלק שני מהמחזור דאבישונא, Bologna s.a. (1546).
- Ps.-Hippolytus. Sermo in Sancta Theophania, Migne Pat. Gr. 10.
- Kinyan-Torah קנין תורה. The so called sixth chapter of Abot found in most editions of this Treatise.
- ha-Hoker החוקר מכתב עתי מקדש לחכמת ישראל ed. Fuchs, Cracow 1891–94.
- Kisse we-Ipodromin. כסא ואיפודרומין של שלמה המלך, ed. Jellinek in Bet ha-Midrash V. 34–39.
- Huppah Eliyyahu חופת אליהו ed. Horowitz 45–56, Frankfort o. M. 1888.
- Koheleth קהלת רבה ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and verse.
- Imre No'am ספר אמרי נועם והוא חדושים על התורה ed. Cremona 1560.
- Koheleth Z. מדרש קהלת זוטא ed. Buber, Berlin 1894.
- Irenaeus. Adversus Haereses ed. Migne, P. Gr. 7.
- Konen מדרש כונן ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 23–29.
- R. Isaac ha-Kohen שחבר יצחק כהן ספר איוב עם פירוש, Constantinople 1545.
- Lekah לקח טוב המכונה פסיקתא Gen. and Exod. ed. Buber, Wilna 1880, Lev. Num. and Deut. ed.
- Jerome. Hieronymi Quaestiones Hebraicae in libro Geneseos e recog. P. de Lagarde, Leipsic 1868.
- Ps. Jerome. Quaestiones hebraicae in II Regum et in II Paralip., in Migne, Patrologia Lat. 23. 1329–1402.



- Padua, Wilna 1884, quoted by chapter and verse or Book and page.
- Leket Midrashim **ספר לקט מדרשים**, ed. Wertheimer, Jerusalem 1904.
- Likkute ha-Pardes **לקוטי הפרדס**, Venice 1519.
- ל"ל **לקוטי ש"ס להארי ז"ל**. The edition used is that of Leghorn 1785.
- Likkutim I–VI **ספר הלוקוטים** ed. Grünhut, Jerusalem 1898–1902.
- Maamar 'Aseret Melakim **מאמר עשרת מלכים**, ed. Horowitz, **אגדת אגדות** 54–55, Berlin, 1881.
- Ma'areket **מערכת האלהות**, Mantua 1558.
- Ma'aseh Abraham ed. Horowitz **מעשה אברהם אבינו**, **אגדת אגדות** 43–46, Berlin, 1881.
- 2 Ma'aseh Abraham **מעשה אברהם** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 118–119.
- 3 Ma'aseh Abraham **מעשה אברהם אבינו ע"ה ממה** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash I, 25–34.
- Ma'aseh Daniel. **מעשה דניאל ע"ה**, ed. Jellinek in Bet ha-Midrash V, 117–130.
- Ma'aseh R. Joshua b. Levi **מעשה דר' יהושע בן לוי** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 48–51.
- Ma'aseh ha-Nemalah. **מעשה הנמלה**, ed. Jellinek. Bet ha-Midrash V, 22–26.
- Ma'aseh Nissim. **מעשה ה' ומעשי נסים** Amsterdam 1723.
- ספר **מעשה רוקח... חבירו... אליעזר** ed. Sanok 1912.
- Ma'aseh Torah **מדרש מעשה תורה** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 92–109.
- Maasehbuch **מעשה בוך**, Amsterdam 1723, quoted by No. and page.
- Ma'asiyyot or Ma'as. ed. G. Gaster, The Sefer ha-Ma'asiyoth, in "Judith Montefiore" College, Report for the year 1894–1895, Cambridge, 1896.
- Ma'ayan Hokmah **מעין חכמה** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash I, 58–61.
- Magen-Abot. Duran, **מגן אבות**, Leghorn 1762.
- Maggid. R. Joseph Caro, **מגיד משרים**, Amsterdam 1708.
- Malala, John. Chronographia ed. Dindorf, Bonn 1831.
- Manzur. Notes on...commentary... by Aboo Manzur al-Dhamari.... by A. Kohut. New York s. a. (1894).
- Masnut; See Ma'ayan Gannim.
- בריייתא **דשמואל** in **מסכת גן עדן** ed. Frankfort o. M. 1863. Comp. also Sed-er Gan Eden.
- Masseket Kelim **מסכת כלים** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 88–91.
- Mattenot Kehunah. R. Issachar Baer b. Naphtali **מתנות כהונה** on Midrash Rabbah in ed. Wilna, 1887.
- Ma'ayan Gannim. Masnut, **על ספר איוב**, ed. Buber, Berlin 1889.
- Mekilta **ספר מכילתא דרבי ישמעאל** ed. Friedmann, Vienna 1870, quoted by massekta and folio.
- Mekilta D. **מכילתא לדברים... מאת ש' ז' שעכטער**, re-printed from Lewy-Festschrift, Breslau 1911.
- Mekiita RS **מכילתא דרבי שמעון בן יוחאי** ed. Hoffmann, Frankfort o. M. 1905, quoted by page.
- Meleket ha-Mishkan. **מאיר...מלכת המשכן**, ed. Jellinek, Vienna 1908.
- Melchizedek. Fragment in Charles, 2 Enoch 85–93.
- Menot ha-Levi **ספר מנות הלוי...שחבר...שלמה הלוי** ed. Venice 1585.
- Meshalim Shel Shelomoh. **משלים של שלמה המלך**, ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash IV, 145; 152.
- MHG I and II **מדרש חגדול...ספר בראשית** ed. Schechter, Cambridge 1902; **ספר חגדול...ספר** ed. Hoffmann, Berlin 1913–1921.
- Midrash Abraham **מדרש דאברהם אבינו** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash V. 40–41.
- Midrash R. Akiba **מדרש ר' עקיבא בן יוסף** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash V, 31–33; ed. Wertheimer, Leket Midrashim 18a–23b.
- Midrash Esther **מדרש מגלת אסתר**, ed. Horowitz in Aguddat Aggadot 56–75.
- Midrash le-Hanukkah **מדרש לחנוכה** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash I, 132–136.
- Midrash Jonah **מדרש יונה** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash I. 96–105.
- Midrash ha-Ne'elam; See Zohar Hadash.
- Midrash Shir **מדרש שיר השירים** ed. Grünhut, Jerusalem 1897.
- Midrash Temurah **מדרש תמורה**, ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash I, 106–114.
- Milhamot Melek ha-Mashiah, ed. Jellinek in **מלחמות מלך המשיח** Bet ha-Midrash VI, 117–120.
- Minhat Yehudah, see Da'at.
- Mishle **מדרש משלי** ed. Buber, Wilna 1893, quoted by chapter and page.
- Monatsschrift. Monatsschrift für Geschichte und Wissenschaft des Judenthums, Dresden (later Breslau) 1852 *seq.*
- Moses bar Cepha. De Paradiso ed. And. Masius, Antwerp 1569.







- Ibn Sabba' פירוש על התורה שחיבר...רבי אברהם סב"ע Venice 1523, quoted by Parasha and folio.
- Ps. Sa'adya. פירוש על דברי הימים, ed. R. Kirchheim, Frankfurt o. M. 1874.
- Sa'arat Eliyyahu. סערת אליהו... על מות... אליהו זצוק"ל. Wilna 1894.
- Seder R. Amram. סדר תפלה כמנהג אשכנז... עם סדר רב עמרם השלם, ed. Frumkin, Jerusalem 1912.
- Seder Gan 'Eden סדר גן עדן ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 52–53.
- Seder Rabba di Bereshit סדר רבה דבראשית דמרכבה, ed. Wertheimer, Batte Midrashot I, 1–31.
- Seder Ruhot סדר רוחות ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash V, 176–180.
- Sefer Eliyyahu. See Pirke Mashiah.
- Sefer ha-Hayyim ספר החיים... חיים בר' בצלאל Cracow 1593.
- Sefer Hanok ספר חנוך ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 114–117.
- Sefer Noah ספר נח ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash III, 155–160.
- Sefer ha-Yashar ספר הישר לרבנו תם, ed. Rosenthal, Berlin 1898.
- Sekel or Sekel Tob ספר בראשית טוב על ספר בראשית, ed. Buber, Berlin 1900–1901.
- Sha'are Gan 'Eden גן עדן וגיהנם, ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash V, 42–51.
- Sha'are Simhah. R. Isaac b. Judah ibn Gayyat, שער, Fürth 1862.
- Sha'are Yerushalaim ספר שער ירושלים... לר' משה בר' מנחם, Warsaw 1865.
- Sha'are Zedek ספר שער צדק... תשובות הגאונים, Saloniki 1792.
- Shalshet ha-Kabbalah ספר שלשלת הקבלה לחכם... גדליהו יחיא, Venice 1587.
- Shem Tob b. Shem Tob שם טוב הר' שם טוב, Venice 1547.
- Shemuel ספר שמואל ed. Buber, Lemberg 1893, quoted by chapter and page.
- Shibbole ha-Leket. שבלי הלכת... חבורו רבינו צדקיה בר' אברהם הרופא, ed. Buber, Wilna 1886, quoted by paragraph and page.
- Shir מדרש שיר השירים רבה ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and verse.
- Shitah. See Shitah Hadashah.
- Shitah Hadashah in שיטה חדשה לברכת יעקב בראשית רבה, Wilna 1887 pp. 376–377.
- ShR מדרש שמות רבה ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and paragraph.
- Shu'aib. Joshua ibn Shu'aib דרשות על התורה, Constantinople 1523, quoted by Parasha and folio.
- Sibyll. The Sibylline Oracles, ed. Geffken, Leipsic 1902.
- Sifra ספרא דבי רב הוא ספר תורת כהנים, ed. Weiss, Vienna 1862, quoted by chapter and verse.
- Sifre D. and N. ספרי דבי רב, ed. Friedmann Vienna 1864, quoted by paragraph (D = Deuteronomy, N = Numbers) and sometimes the page is added.
- Sifre Z. Der Sifre Sutta . . . von Dr. S. Horovitz, Breslau 1910.
- Sifte Kohen ספר שפתי כהן... הברו... מרדכי הכהן, Wansbeck 1690.
- Sikli, Talmud Torah. פירוש על דבר הילקוט, Poznanski, 1864.
- Sikl. תלמוד תורה לר' יעקב בר' חננאל סקלי (= Hazofeh III, 1–22) and in Festschrift-Maybaum, Leipsic 1915, quoted by paragraph.
- SMG. ראשיתו של הילקוט תלמוד, ed. Jellinek, Leipsic 1915, quoted by paragraph.
- SMG. ספר מצות גדול... רבינו משה בר' יעקב מקוצי, quoted by Commandment.
- Solomon ben ha-Yatom. פירוש מסכת משקין לר' שלמה, Berlin 1909.
- Spicilegium Syriacum. Spicilegium Syriacum, ed. by W. Cureton, London 1855.
- Syncellus. Chronographia ed. Dindorf, Bonn 1829.
- Tadshe מדרש חדשא או ברייתא דר' פנחס בן יאיר, Epstein in מקדמוניות היהודים, Vienna 1887 pp. I–XLVI.
- Talpior ספר מדרש תלפיות אשר כוננו מעשי ידי... אליהו הכהן, Lemberg 1870.
- Tan. מדרש תנחומא... עם פירוש ענף יוסף ועץ יוסף... יוסף, Wilna 1833, quoted by Parasha and paragraph.
- Tan. B. מדרש תנחומא הקדום והישן, ed. Buber, Wilna 1885, quoted by Book and page.
- Tan., Introduction. מבוא גדול המפיץ אור על מדרש תנחומא, Wilna 1885.
- Targum Jerushalmi (1) Pseudo-Jonathan ed. Ginsburger, Berlin 1903.
- Targum Yerushalmi (2) Das Fragmenten-targum ed. Ginsburger, Berlin 1899.
- Tefillat R. Simeon. תפלת ר' שמעון בן יוחאי, ed. Jellinek in Bet ha-Midrash IV, 117–126.
- Tehillim מדרש תהלים המכונה שחר טוב, ed. Buber, Wilna 1891, quoted by chapter and page.



Ps.-Tertullian—

- 1) De Jona et Ninive.
- 2) Sodoma.
- 3) Genesis.
- 5) De Execrandis Gentilium Diis.
- 6) Adversus Marcionitas or Adv. Marcionem.
- 7) Libellus Adversus Omnes Haereses.

Testament of Job. Greek text in James, Apocrypha Anecdota pp. 104–137; English translation by Kohler in Kohut Memorial Volume pp. 264–338.

Theodor מדרש בראשית רבא... על פי כתבי יד... עם Theodor מראה מקומות... מפירות... מאתי יהודה טהאדאר Berlin 1912–1916.

Theodoretus. Quaestiones in Genes. ed. Migne, P. Gr. 80.

Theophilus or Theophil. Theophilus of Antiochia, *πρὸς Ἀυτόλυκον* ed. Otto in Corpus Apol. 8.

Tola'at Ya'akob. Gabbai, תולעת יעקב, ed. Constantinople 1560.

Toledot Yizhak. See Caro.

Tosafot. See Da'at.

Tosefta תוספתא על פי כתבי יד ערפורט וויען, ed. Zuckerman, Pasewalk 1881.

Tosefta Targum. Additions to the Targum on the Prophets found in ed. Leiria 1494 and in Lagarde, *Prophetæ Chaldaice*, Leipsic, 1872.

TShBZ ספר תשב"ץ מן רבינו שמשון בר צדוק, Warsaw, 1875.

Variae Lectiones. Rabbinovicz, *Variae Lectiones in Mischnam et in Talmud Babylonicum*, Munich 1867–1897.

Wa-Yekullu מדרש ויכלו ed. Grünhut in *Likkutim* II, 16b–19b.

Wa-Yosha' מדרש ויושע ed. Jellinek, *Bet ha-Midrash* I, 35–57.

Wa-Yissa'u מדרש ויסעו ed. Jellinek. *Bar ha-Midrash* III, 1–5.

We-Hishir or Wehizhir. ...ספר והזהיר לסדר שמות... ישראל מאיר פריימאן Leipsic 1873.

WR מדרש ויקרא רבה ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and paragraph.

Yad Yosef. Joseph b. Hayyim Zarfati יד יוסף דרשות, Venice 1616.

Yalkut David פויזנער דור... מאת... דור... Yalkut David Warsaw 1879.

Yalkut Reubeni ספר ילקוט ראובני על התורה, Amsterdam 1700, quoted by chapter and verse, sometimes the folio is also given.

Yashar ספר הישר, Venice 1624, quoted by Parashah and folio.

Yelammedenu קונדריס אחרון ממדרש ילמדנו, ed. Jellinek, *Bet ha-Midrash* VI, 79–90, quoted by No.

ZATW. *Zeitschrift für die alttestamentliche Wissenschaft*, Giessen 1881 *seq.*

Zawaat Naphtali צוואת נפתלי בן יעקב לבניו, ed. Wertheimer in his edition of *פירקי היכלות*, Jerusalem 1890.

ZDMG. *Zeitschrift der deutschen morgenländischen Gesellschaft*. Leipsic, 1847 *seq.*

Zerubbabel or Zerubabel ספר זרובבל ed. Jellinek, *Bet ha-Midrash* II, 54–57, ed. Wertheimer, *Leket Midrashim*, 9b–13b.

Zohar Hadash ספר זוהר חדש Leghorn 1866, quoted by Parashah and caption, sometimes the folio is added.

Zohar Ruth. See Zohar Hadash.







# I

## THE CREATION OF THE WORLD

### THE FIRST THINGS CREATED

**I**n the beginning, two thousand years before the heaven and the earth, seven things were created: the Torah written with black fire on white fire, and lying in the lap of God; the Divine Throne, erected in the heaven which later was over the heads of the Ḥayyot; Paradise on the right side of God, Hell on the left side; the Celestial Sanctuary directly in front of God, having a jewel on its altar graven with the Name of the Messiah, and a Voice that cries aloud, “Return, ye children of men.”<sup>1</sup>

When God resolved upon the creation of the world, He took counsel with the Torah.<sup>2</sup> Her advice was this: “O Lord, a king without an army and without courtiers and attendants hardly deserves the name of king, for none is nigh to express the homage due to him.” The answer pleased God exceedingly. Thus did He teach all earthly kings, by His Divine example, to undertake naught without first consulting advisers.<sup>3</sup>

The advice of the Torah was given with some reservations. She was skeptical about the value of an earthly world, on account of the sinfulness of men, who would be sure to disregard her precepts. But God dispelled her doubts. He told her that repentance had been created long before,

and sinners would have the opportunity of mending their ways. Besides, the Temple service would be invested with atoning power, and Paradise and hell were intended to do duty as reward and punishment. Finally, the Messiah was appointed to bring salvation, which would put an end to all sinfulness.<sup>4</sup>

Nor is this world inhabited by man the first of things earthly created by God. He made several worlds before ours, but He destroyed them all, because He was pleased with none until He created ours.<sup>5</sup> But even this last world would have had no permanence, if God had executed His original plan of ruling it according to the principle of strict justice. It was only when He saw that justice by itself would undermine the world that He associated mercy with justice, and made them to rule jointly.<sup>6</sup> Thus, from the beginning of all things prevailed Divine goodness, without which nothing could have continued to exist. If not for it, the myriads of evil spirits had soon put an end to the generations of men. But the goodness of God has ordained that in every Nisan, at the time of the spring equinox, the seraphim shall approach the world of spirits, and intimidate them so that they fear to do harm to men. Again, if God in His goodness had not given protection to the weak, the tame animals would have been



extirpated long ago by the wild animals. In Tam-muz, at the time of the summer solstice, when the strength of behemot is at its height, he roars so loud that all the animals hear it, and for a whole year they are affrighted and timid, and their acts become less ferocious than their nature is. Again, in Tishri, at the time of the autumnal equinox, the great bird ziz<sup>7</sup> flaps his wings and utters his cry, so that the birds of prey, the eagles and the vultures, blench, and they fear to swoop down upon the others and annihilate them in their greed. And, again, were it not for the goodness of God, the vast number of big fish had quickly put an end to the little ones. But at the time of the winter solstice, in the month of Tebet, the sea grows restless, for then leviathan spouts up water, and the big fish become uneasy. They restrain their appetite, and the little ones escape their rapacity.

Finally, the goodness of God manifests itself in the preservation of His people Israel. It could not have survived the enmity of the Gentiles, if God had not appointed protectors for it, the archangels Michael and Gabriel.<sup>8</sup> Whenever Israel disobeys God, and is accused of misdemeanors by the angels of the other nations, he is defended by his designated guardians, with such good result that the other angels conceive fear of them. Once the angels of the other nations are terrified, the nations themselves venture not to carry out their wicked designs against Israel.

That the goodness of God may rule on earth as in heaven, the Angels of Destruction are assigned a place at the far end of the heavens, from which they may never stir, while the Angels of Mercy encircle the Throne of God, at His behest.<sup>9</sup>

1. Tehillim 90, 391. For further details relating to the pre-existent things, see Excursus I.

2. The Torah is conceived as having emanated from God's wisdom. Comp. Excursus I.

3. PRE 3. As to God's taking counsel with the angels and the Torah, compare also with pp. 48 and 54. Similarly

both Talmudim and the Midrashim frequently speak of God's court of justice, consisting of the angels as members. Comp. Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 14b; Sanhedrin 1, 18a, and Babli 38b; WR 24. 2; BaR 3. 4; BR 51. 2; ShR 6. 1 and 12. 4; Shir 1. 9; PR 42, 175b; Tan. Wa-Era 16; Tan. B. I, 96, 106; II, 36, 51; Tehillim 119, 497; Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 2, 58b; ShR 30. 18. Tertullian, *Adversus Praxean*, 16, clearly points to the fact that the legend that the angels were consulted by God with regard to the creation is due to an anti-Christian tendency. Its purpose is to exclude the possibility of assuming that the Trinity is implied wherever the Bible employs the plural in connection with the deity. Compare with footnotes 10 and 12 on pp. 48–51.

4. Raziel 20b and Sode Raza in Yalkut Reubeni on Gen. 1. 3, excerpted from an unknown but late midrashic source, since it is a further development of the Haggadot cited in notes 1 and 3 from Tehillim and PRE; comp. Luria on PRE 3, note 25, and p. 48.

5. BR 3. 7 and 9. 2; Koheleth 3. 11; Tehillim 34, 245. This is a faint reflection of the view that God formed the world out of eternal chaos, since the legend could not question the doctrine of *creatio ex nihilo*. Comp. Excursus I. The legend about the nine hundred and seventy-four generations which existed prior to the creation of the world (or cautiously expressed, the generations that God had intended to create), originally presupposed a pre-existent chaos; comp. BR. 28. 4; Koheleth 1. 15 and 4. 3; Shir 4. 4; Tehillim 90, 392, and 105, 459; Hagigah 13b; ARN 31, 91; Tan. Lek 11 and Yitro 9; ER 2, 9; 6, 33; 13, 68; 16, 130; EZ 10, 189. Subsequently the legend concerning the nine hundred and seventy-four generations was brought into relation with the Haggadah that the Torah was created one thousand years prior to the creation of the world. Comp. Excursus I. See also Shabbat 88b and Targum Job 22, 16, according to the manuscript reading recorded in Levy's *Chaldäisches Wörterbuch* I, 186.

6. BR 12. 15 and 21. 7; Midrash Shir 39b; PR 40, 167a (instead of *הוא מתענג* read *רע הוא מתענג* "he would act as a spoiled child"); Yelammedenu quoted by Sikli (comp. Poznanski in *Hazofeh*, III, 16–17, and in *Maybaum-Festschrift*, as well as Ginzberg's remarks in *Hazofeh* IV, 31; Ozar Midrashim 64); Yerushalmi Targumim on Gen. 1. 2; a quotation from an unknown Midrash by R. Bahya in *Kad ha-Kemah*, *Rosh ha-Shanah* 68a, and by R. Aaron in *Orehot Hayyim* I, 99c. The goodness of God as underlying the principle of creation is very frequently mentioned by Philo; comp. *De Mut. Nom.*, 5; *De M. Opif.*, 5 (further references to Philo are cited by Siegfried, *Philo*, 205–206). Similarly Wisdom 11. 24. The daily morning prayer (*Yotzer*) reads: "And in His goodness He renews the creation every day continually." God is often described as "the very good" (Yerushalmi Ta'anit 2, 65b; PK 25, 161a), and hence the maxim: "Only God is good" (Matthew 19.



17; Alphabetot 83; the latter source was very likely used by R. Bahya, Gen. 1. 31), is only a paraphrase of Ps. 149. 9, as pointed out in the Alphabetot. Philo is accordingly dependent upon Jewish tradition, but the Jewish sources are independent of him, although it is rather striking that the rendering of אלהים by “God’s goodness” in the Targumim, *loc. cit.*, coincides with that of Philo (*Quis Haeres Sit*, 6), while the Rabbis (see e.g. Sifre D., 27) maintain that the Tetragrammaton יהוה designates God’s attribute of goodness but His justice is expressed by אלהים. Compare footnote 46 on page 140, as well as footnote 9.

7. As to Behemoth and Ziz, compare with pp. 29 and 33.

8. Comp. Index, *s.v.* “Israel, Guardian Angels of.” Originally these two angels belonged to two different traditions: one considered Michael the guardian angel of Israel, while according to the other, contrary to Daniel 10. 21, Gabriel occupied this position. The rivalry of these two angels is met with in Jewish legends throughout the centuries (comp. Index, *s.v.*) and the harmonizing tendency of our legend argues for its comparatively late date. Instead of Michael and Gabriel, in Hekalot 6, 179–180, the Serafim (two of them; comp. Sode Raza in Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 1. 26, 10a, which reads: There are two angels with whom God takes counsel, and these are the same with whom God took counsel at the time of the creation of Adam) are said to burn the books containing the accusations brought by Satan and the guardian angels of the Gentiles against Israel (in accordance with Yoma 77a, read דוביאל instead of דמואל and ברזי instead of בראיה). Comp. also Berakot 17a (בפמליא) and EZ 5, 182, as well as *Rimze Hafiarot*, I *Sheb’uot*, concerning the accusations of the angels against Israel.

9. Konen 37–38; Midrash Behokmah 63–66; Pesikta Hadta 48–49. The distance of the angels of destruction, as well as all other evils, from God is alluded to in very old sources; comp. Yerushalmi Ta’anit 2, 65b; Tan. B. I, 95, and III, 39–40; Tan. Tazria’ 9; Tehillim 5, 54, and 87, 374; PK 24, 161b; Gittin 88a; Hagigah 12a; BR 3. 6 and 51. 31; MHG I, 22–25; see also note 54; footnote 176 on p. 365, and footnote 766 on p. 772. In all these and similar passages (Wa-Yekullu 17b–18a and Grünhut, *ad loc.*) the underlying idea is that God, the original source of good, would not come in close contact with evil. This view is related to, but not identical with, the doctrine of Philo that nothing but good emanates from God. To give a philosophic turn to a popular conception is one of Philo’s chief merits. A different opinion is expressed by Freudenthal, *Hellenistische Studien*, 1, 70. Origen, *Contra Celsum*, 4, 66, is evidently based upon Philo. The fallen angels are found according to 2 Enoch 18, in the second heaven, *i.e.*, far away from the throne of God. Attention, however, is to be drawn to the fact that in rabbinic sources the angels of destruction are not identified with the fallen

angels, as in the Books of Enoch, and elsewhere in pseud-epigraphic literature, but are the angels whose task it is to inflict punishment upon the wicked. The statement made in PR 22, 114a, that the angels of destruction, unlike all the others (comp. Friedmann, *ad loc.*), have “joints,” wishes to convey the idea that they do not stand before God’s throne, and do not fulfil their duties speedily like the other angels, but move about slowly, from one place to another, like human beings who move by means of “joints.”

## THE ALPHABET

When God was about to create the world by His word, the twenty-two letters of the alphabet<sup>10</sup> descended from the terrible and august crown of God whereon they were engraved with a pen of flaming fire. They stood round about God, and one after the other spake and entreated, “Create the world through me!” The first to step forward was the letter Taw. It said: “O Lord of the world! May it be Thy will to create Thy world through me, seeing that it is through me that Thou wilt give the Torah to Israel by the hand of Moses, as it is written, ‘Moses commanded us the Torah.’” The Holy One, blessed be He, made reply, and said, “No.” Taw asked, “Why not?” and God answered: “Because in days to come I shall place thee as a sign of death upon the foreheads of men.” As soon as Taw heard these words issue from the mouth of the Holy One, blessed be He, it retired from His presence disappointed.

The Shin then stepped forward, and pleaded: “O Lord of the world, create Thy world through me, seeing that Thine own name Shad-dai begins with me.” Unfortunately, it is also the first letter of Shaw, lie, and of Sheker, falsehood, and that incapacitated it. Resh had no better luck. It was pointed out that it was the initial letter of Ra’, wicked, and Rasha’, evil, and after that the distinction it enjoys of being the first letter in the Name of God, Raḥum, the Merciful, counted for



naught. The *Ḳof* was rejected, because *Ḳelalah*, curse, outweighs the advantage of being the first in *Ḳadosh*, the Holy One. In vain did *Ṣadde* call attention to *Ṣaddik*, the Righteous One; there was *Ṣarot*, the misfortunes of Israel, to testify against it. *Pe* had *Podeh*, redeemer, to its credit, but *Pesha'*, transgression, reflected dishonor upon it. *'Ain* was declared unfit, because, though it begins *'Anawah*, humility, it performs the same service for *'Erwah*, immorality. *Samek* said: "O Lord, may it be Thy will to begin the creation with me, for Thou art called *Samek*, after me, the Upholder of all that fall." But God said: "Thou art needed in the place in which thou art;<sup>11</sup> thou must continue to uphold all that fall." *Nun* introduces *Ner*, "the lamp of the Lord," which is "the spirit of men," but it also introduces *Ner*, "the lamp of the wicked," which will be put out by God. *Mem* starts *Melek*, king, one of the titles of God. As it is the first letter of *Mehumah*, confusion, as well, it had no chance of accomplishing its desire. The claim of *Lamed* bore its refutation within itself. It advanced the argument that it was the first letter of *Luhot*, the celestial tables for the Ten Commandments; it forgot that the tables were shattered in pieces by Moses. *Kaf* was sure of victory. *Kisseh*, the throne of God, *Kabod*, His honor, and *Keter*, His crown, all begin with it. God had to remind it that He would smite together His hands, *Kaf*, in despair over the misfortunes of Israel. *Yod* at first sight seemed the appropriate letter for the beginning of creation, on account of its association with *Yah*, God, if only *Yezer ha-Ra'*, the evil inclination, had not happened to begin with it, too. *Tet* is identified with *Tob*, the good. However, the truly good is not in this world; it belongs to the world to come. *Het* is the first letter of *Ḥanun*, the Gracious One; but this advantage is offset by its place in the word for sin, *Ḥaṭṭat*. *Zain* suggests *Zakor*, remembrance, but it is itself the word for weapon, the doer of mischief.

*Waw* and *He* compose the Ineffable Name of God; they are therefore too exalted to be pressed into the service of the mundane world. If *Dalet* had stood only for *Dabar*, the Divine Word, it would have been used, but it stands also for *Din*, justice, and under the rule of law without love the world would have fallen to ruin. Finally, in spite of reminding one of *Gadol*, great, *Gimel* would not do, because *Gemul*, retribution, starts with it.

After the claims of all these letters had been disposed of, *Bet* stepped before the Holy One, blessed be He, and pleaded before Him: "O Lord of the world! May it be Thy will to create Thy world through me, seeing that all the dwellers in the world give praise daily unto Thee through me, as it is said, 'Blessed be the Lord forever. Amen, and Amen.' " The Holy One, blessed be He, at once granted the petition of *Bet*. He said, "Blessed be he that cometh in the name of the Lord." And He created His world through *Bet*, as it is said, "Bereshit God created the heaven and the earth."

The only letter that had refrained from urging its claims was the modest *Alef*, and God rewarded it later for its humility by giving it the first place in the Decalogue.<sup>12</sup>

---

10. The mystic passages in the earliest rabbinic sources already discuss the idea that God created the world by the means of "letters" (comp., e.g., *Yerushalmi Hagigah* 2, 77c; *Menahot* 29b; *Berakot* 55a; *BR* 1. 9; *Midrash Shir* 39b; *PR* 21, 108b, and 33, 153a; *ER* 31, 164; *Shir* 5. 11; see also the passages referred to by Theodor on *BR* 9, line 9), and in gaonic literature this neo-Pythagorean-gnostic theory plays an important part, especially in the *Sefer Yezirah* (see Ginzberg's article on the *Sefer Yezirah* in the *Jewish Encyclopedia*, and the literature cited there, as well as Joel, *Blicke*, I, 121), and the literature dependent on this book, as *Midrash 'Aseret ha-Dibrot* 62, *Konen* 23–24, and many others. Along with these mystic speculations (*Pesikta Hadta* 36 asserts that God created the universe by means of the *Sefer Yezirah*; comp. also *Seder Rabba di-Bereshit* 1–5), the forms, names, and order of the Hebrew letters are a



favorite theme of the “pedagogic Haggadot,” whose object it is to render the elementary instruction to the young interesting and attractive. Such Haggadot are, *e.g.*, Shabbat 104a; Yerushalmi Megillah 1, 71d; BR 8. 11 (see the numerous parallel passages cited by Theodor), as well as the non-mystic elements of the two versions of the Alphabet of R. Akiba. Darmesteter, *R.E.J.*, IV, 259, *seq.*, and Müller, *Sitzungsberichte Wiener Akademie, Phil.-historische Klasse*, CLXVIII, treatise 2, furnish a rich collection of parallels to these Haggadot from patristic as well as from later Christian literature. To these “pedagogic Haggadot” belong also the Tagin and Midrash R. Akiba, whereas Midrash ha-Shiloah (in Onkenira’s *Ayyumah Kannidgalot*, 18) and Tikkune Zohar deal exclusively with the first word of the Bible, concerning which a great deal may be found in other parts of rabbinic literature; comp. BR 1. 7; MGH I, 10–11; Alphabet of R. Akiba 19; Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 3–4; Midrash Aggada on Gen. 1. 1; the commentaries *Hadar, Da’at, Pa’aneah*, and *Toledot Yizhak* on Gen., *loc. cit.* For interesting parallels in Christian literature relating to the forms of the Hebrew alphabet, comp. especially ps.–*Matthew* 31; Gospel of Thomas 6 (in both versions).

11. An allusion to Ps. 145. 15; comp. also Berakot 4b.

12. There are different versions relating to the controversy of the letters about precedence—originally a “pedagogic Haggadah,” it was later combined with the mystic theory of the letters. The text given is essentially based on 2 Alphabet of R. Akiba 50–55, with the omission of many biblical verses, which are quoted by God and by the letters. Other versions are found in MHG 1, 12–13; ‘Aseret ha-Dibrot 62; Midrash R. Akiba 23–24; Zohar I, 2b–3a and 205b.

## THE FIRST DAY

On the first day of creation God produced ten things:<sup>13</sup> the heavens and the earth, Tohu and Bohu, light and darkness, wind and water, the duration of the day<sup>14</sup> and the duration of the night.<sup>15</sup>

Though the heavens and the earth consist of entirely different elements,<sup>16</sup> they were yet created as a unit, “like the pot and its cover.”<sup>17</sup> The heavens were fashioned from the light of God’s garment, and the earth from the snow under the Divine Throne.<sup>18</sup> Tohu is a green band which

encompasses the whole world, and dispenses darkness, and Bohu consists of stones in the abyss, the producers of the waters. The light created at the very beginning is not the same as the light emitted by the sun, the moon, and the stars, which appeared only on the fourth day. The light of the first day was of a sort that would have enabled man to see the world at a glance from one end to the other. Anticipating the wickedness of the sinful generations of the deluge and the Tower of Babel, who were unworthy to enjoy the blessing of such light, God concealed it, but in the world to come it will appear to the pious in all its pristine glory.<sup>19</sup>

Several heavens were created,<sup>20</sup> seven in fact,<sup>21</sup> each to serve a purpose of its own. The first, the one visible to man, has no function except that of covering up the light during the night time; therefore it disappears every morning. The planets are fastened to the second of the heavens; in the third the manna is made for the pious in the hereafter; the fourth contains the celestial Jerusalem together with the Temple, in which Michael ministers as high priest, and offers the souls of the pious as sacrifices. In the fifth heaven, the angel hosts reside, and sing the praise of God, though only during the night, for by day it is the task of Israel on earth to give glory to God on high. The sixth heaven is an uncanny spot; there originate most of the trials and visitations ordained for the earth and its inhabitants. Snow lies heaped up there and hail; there are lofts full of noxious dew, magazines stocked with storms, and cellars holding reserves of smoke. Doors of fire separate these celestial chambers, which are under the supervision of the archangel Metatron. Their pernicious contents defiled the heavens until David’s time. The pious king prayed God to purge His exalted dwelling of whatever was pregnant with evil; it was not becoming that such things should exist near the Merciful One. Only then they were removed to the earth.



The seventh heaven, on the other hand, contains naught but what is good and beautiful: right, justice, and mercy, the storehouses of life, peace, and blessing, the souls of the pious, the souls and spirits of unborn generations, the dew with which God will revive the dead on the resurrection day, and, above all, the Divine Throne, surrounded by the seraphim, the ofanim, the holy Ḥayyot, and the ministering angels.<sup>22</sup>

Corresponding to the seven heavens, God created seven earths, each separated from the next by five layers. Over the lowest earth, the seventh, called Erez, lie in succession the abyss, the Tohu, the Bohu, a sea, and waters.<sup>23</sup> Then the sixth<sup>24</sup> earth is reached, the Adamah, the scene of the magnificence of God. In the same way the Adamah is separated from the fifth earth, the Arḳa, which contains Gehenna, and Sha'are Mawet, and Sha'are Zalmawet, and Be'er Shaḥat, and Tīḥa-Yawen, and Abaddon, and Sheol,<sup>25</sup> and there the souls of the wicked are guarded by the Angels of Destruction. In the same way Arḳa is followed by Ḥarabah, the dry, the place of brooks and streams in spite of its name, as the next, called Yabbashah, the mainland, contains the rivers and the springs. Tebel, the second earth, is the first mainland inhabited by living creatures, three hundred and sixty-five species,<sup>26</sup> all essentially different from those of our own earth. Some have human heads set on the body of a lion, or a serpent, or an ox; others have human bodies topped by the head of one of these animals. Besides, Tebel is inhabited by human beings with two heads and four hands and feet, in fact with all their organs doubled excepting only the trunk.<sup>27</sup> It happens sometimes that the parts of these double persons quarrel with each other, especially while eating and drinking, when each claims the best and largest portions for himself. This species of mankind is distinguished for great piety, another difference between it and the inhabitants of our earth.

Our own earth is called Ḥeled, and, like the others, it is separated from the Tebel by an abyss, the Tohu, the Bohu, a sea, and waters.

Thus one earth rises above the other, from the first to the seventh, and over the seventh earth the heavens are vaulted, from the first to the seventh, the last of them attached to the arm of God. The seven heavens form a unity, the seven kinds of earth form a unity, and the heavens and the earth together also form a unity.<sup>28</sup>

When God made our present heavens and our present earth, "the new heavens and the new earth"<sup>29</sup> were also brought forth, yea, and the hundred and ninety-six thousand worlds which God created unto His own glory.<sup>30</sup>

It takes five hundred years to walk from the earth to the heavens, and from one end of a heaven to the other, and also from one heaven to the next,<sup>31</sup> and it takes the same length of time to travel from the east to the west, or from the south to the north.<sup>32</sup> Of all this vast world only one-third is inhabited, the other two-thirds being equally divided between water and waste desert land.

Beyond the inhabited parts to the east is Paradise<sup>33</sup> with its seven divisions, each assigned to the pious of a certain degree. The ocean is situated to the west, and it is dotted with islands upon islands, inhabited by many different peoples. Beyond it, in turn, are the boundless steppes full of serpents and scorpions, and destitute of every sort of vegetation, whether herbs or trees. To the north are the supplies of hell-fire, of snow, hail, smoke, ice, darkness, and windstorms, and in that vicinity sojourn all sorts of devils, demons, and malign spirits. Their dwelling-place is a great stretch of land, it would take five hundred years to traverse it. Beyond lies hell. To the south is the chamber containing reserves of fire, the cave of smoke, and the forge of blasts and hurricanes.<sup>34</sup> Thus it comes that the wind blowing from the south brings heat and sultriness to the



earth. Were it not for the angel Ben Nez, the Winged, who keeps the south wind back with his pinions, the world would be consumed.<sup>35</sup> Besides, the fury of its blast is tempered by the north wind, which always appears as moderator, whatever other wind may be blowing.<sup>36</sup>

In the east, the west, and the south, heaven and earth touch each other, but the north God left unfinished, that any man who announced himself as a god might be set the task of supplying the deficiency, and stand convicted as a pretender.<sup>37</sup>

The construction of the earth was begun at the centre, with the foundation stone of the Temple, the Eben Shetiyah,<sup>38</sup> for the Holy Land is at the central point of the surface of the earth, Jerusalem is at the central point of Palestine, and the Temple is situated at the centre of the Holy City. In the sanctuary itself the Hekal is the centre, and the holy Ark occupies the centre of the Hekal, built on the foundation stone, which thus is at the centre of the earth.<sup>39</sup> Thence issued the first ray of light, piercing to the Holy Land, and from there illuminating the whole earth.<sup>40</sup> The creation of the world, however, could not take place until God had banished the ruler of the dark.<sup>41</sup> "Retire," God said to him, "for I desire to create the world by means of light." Only after the light had been fashioned, darkness arose, the light ruling in the sky, the darkness on the earth.<sup>42</sup>

The power of God displayed itself not only in the creation of the world of things, but equally in the limitations which He imposed upon each. The heavens and the earth stretched themselves out in length and breadth as though they aspired to infinitude, and it required the word of God to call a halt to their encroachments.<sup>43</sup>

13. This number, as Lekah, Gen. 1. 1, correctly remarks, corresponds to God's "ten words." Compare with p. 47 (beginning).

14. *I.e.*, "time", which is here mentioned as having been created simultaneously with the world. This is in

agreement with Philo, who in *De M. Opif.*, 7, rejects the view which assumes that "time" is older than the world; BR 3. 7 and Koheleth 3. 11 hold this very opinion rejected by Philo.

15. Hagigah 12a; PRE 3. The former passage mentions God's ten attributes which were made use of at the creation of the world. So also in ARN, second version 43, 119, whereas the first version knows only of seven such attributes. This latter view corresponds to Jub. 2. 2; Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 7; Tadshe 6, which state that only seven categories of creation took place on the first day. Other sources ascribe three kinds of creation to each day; compare with pp. 82–83. Quite instructive is the fact that the Talmud does not conceive רוח אלהים (Gen. 1. 2) as "God's spirit", but as "God's wind", which interpretation is certainly due to an anti-Christian tendency, since the Christians identified God's spirit with the Holy Ghost; comp. Origen, *Princip.*, I, 33, and Jerome, *ad loc.* The Jewish interpretation was later accepted by some of the Church Fathers, as *e.g.*, by Ephraim, I, 8 B. F; Basilius, *Hexaemeron*, 3, and Theodoretus, Gen., *loc. cit.*; comp. also Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 14–15. The prevalent opinion of the Palestinian Midrashim is that by "God's spirit" the spirit (=soul) of Adam is meant; according to others it implies the spirit of the Messiah; BR 8. 1. The souls of all the pious, however, were likewise created at the same time as Adam, or, as others assert, the primordial light which came into being on the first day is the material out of which the souls have been formed; comp. Excursus I, where details are also given concerning the view of the Rabbis about the doctrine of *creatio ex nihilo*, on which they insist to the extent of counting *Tobu* ("void") and *Bobu* ("emptiness") among the things created. As to God's spirit in the form of a dove (Matthew 3. 16), comp. Tosefta Hagigah 2. 5; Yerushalmi 2, 77a; Babli 15a; BR 2. 4.

16. The heavens, like all the beings dwelling therein, consist of a combination of fire (not of an earthly or physical nature) and water, whereas the earth was formed of the snow found under the heavenly throne; Konen 24; BR 4. 7 (שמים "heaven" = אש ומים "fire and water"); Hagigah 12a; BaR 12. 4. Comp. further Lekah, Gen. 1. 1 (ארץ "earth" is derived from רץ "the running one," *i.e.*, the one around which everything moves), and note 18.

17. BR 1. 15; Yerushalmi Hagigah 2, 77c; Babli 12a; Tamid 32a (the question is here discussed whether light or darkness was created first; to Philo, too, darkness is something positive, not merely the absence of light; comp. *De M. Opif.*, 7, where darkness is identified with אֵר air); WR 36. 1; Tan. B. I. 10 and 15; PRE 18; Shemuel 5, 55–56; Mishle 60; Tosefta Keritot (end); Mekilta (beginning). In most of the passages just quoted mention is made of two more views in addition to the one given in the text. According to one, the heaven preceded the earth (so Philo),



while according to the second, the earth preceded the heaven. Joel, *Blicke*, I, 112, remarks that in these speculations we have an echo of the Greek theories appertaining to cosmogony. *Recognitiones*, I, 27, agrees with the later Rabbis that heaven and earth were created simultaneously. Comp. Konen 24, where the old view is still retained. Although created simultaneously, nevertheless the heavens were created by God's right hand, and the earth by His left; PRE 18; Zohar II, 18b, 65b; comp. Luria, PRE, *ad loc.* At the very beginning God created the world to come, which He, however, hid, so that not even the angels could see it, then He fashioned this world; Alphabetot 97; comp. Isa. 64. 4.

18. PRE 3. But in the older sources (BR 3. 4; PK 21, 145b; WR 31. 7; ShR 15. 22 and 50. 1; Tan. B. I. 6, and II, 123; Tan. Wa-Yakhel 6; Tehillim 27, 221, and 104, 440) it is the light emanating from God's splendor that was the beginning of all creation. The view that snow was the primeval component of the earth is mentioned only in PRE and in the sources dependent on it (comp. Luria, *ad loc.*), whereas ShR 13. 1 maintains that the world was created of the earth found under God's throne; comp. however, BR 1. 6 and parallel passages, where it is proved by Job 37. 7 that the earth was created of snow. Zohar III, 34b, however, is directly dependent on ShR, *loc. cit.* As to the account of the creation in Konen 24–25, comp. Excursus I. It may also be remarked that the statement in ShR 15. 22, according to which the light emanated from fire (of a heavenly kind) occurs very likely already in 4 Ezra 6. 40, where *lumen aliquid luminis* is based on the faulty reading אור מאור instead of אור מאש. It is however possible that 4 Ezra wishes to say the same as many of the Midrashim just quoted, according to which the primordial light was made of God's splendor, in Hebrew "light from light". Philo expresses this view in words similar to those of the Haggadah; comp. Freudenthal, *Hellenistische Studien*, 71; Weinstein, *Genesis der Agada*, 41. See also the following note.

19. BR 3. 6, 11. 2, 12. 6, and 42. 3; Hagigah 12a (only this passage and BHM VI, 59, give a detailed but rather obscure description of *Tohu* and *Bohu*; comp. Joel, *Blicke*, I, 142); PR 5, 20a, and 46, 187a; EZ 21, 94; Tehillim, 97, 422. Comp. further ER 3, 14 and 16–17; EZ 12, 193; Nispahim 56; PRE 3 (here, in accordance with ARN, second version, 37, 95, should be read אורות צדיקים instead of ארוחות צדיקים); compare also with pp. 84, 148, 302; see text on p. 1021, with regard to the future light of the pious. On this light which is, however, not identified with the primordial light (but comp. 4 Ezra 6. 40, which reads; *lumen, . . . de thesauris tuis*, which literally corresponds to the rabbinic אור הגנוז, since גנוז="preserved in the treasury;" see also the preceding note), comp. the Apocalypse of Baruch 51. 3; Enoch 38. 4 (numerous parallel passages are cited by Charles, *ad loc.*); 2 Enoch 66. 3 and 9. Concerning Philo's view on the primordial light, comp. *De*

*M. Opif.*, 8 and 18; Sachs, *Beiträge*, II, 34; Weinstein, *Genesis der Agada*, 38. For the further development of this light doctrine among the medieval philosophers and mystics, comp. Al-Barceloni, 18–22; Zohar I, 31b, 34a, 45b, and II, 158b.

20. The Hebrew word for heaven שמים (for its etymology see note 16; BR 4.7 and parallel passages cited by Theodor) looks like a plural though it is really a singular (see Barth, *Z.D.M.G.*, 42; 346), hence the conception that there are several heavens is already met with in the Bible. But the exact fixing of their number belongs to a more recent date. Comp. the following two notes.

21. The significance of the number seven in Jewish legend may be seen by referring to the Index *s. v.* Seven. PK 23, 154b–155a; Tehillim 9, 87 (comp. the parallel passages cited by Buber); PRE 18 and Tadshe 6, 19–20, maintain that from the history of mankind and that of Israel, as well as from nature, one may prove that this number plays an important part. Similar discussions on the importance of "seven" are found in Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 30–34 (in a very elaborate form), and in 4 Maccabees 14. 17. Yezirah 4, which is the source for Zohar I, 15b and 38a, as well as for MHG I, 11, points out that everything physical is determined by seven limitations: above and below, right and left, before and behind, and its own individual form. Similarly Philo, *All. Leg.*, 1. 2. Zohar I, 38a, derives the conception of seven heavens, seven hells, and other "sevens" from this fundamental idea, and this view of Zohar deserves serious attention. On the seven heavens comp. further the following note. The dependence of Tadshe, *loc. cit.*, on Philo is not to be assumed (against Epstein, *R.E.J.*, XXI, 87, *seq.*), in view of the fact that the conception of the seven stages of man's age, though of Greek origin, occurs not only in Philo and Tadshe, but also in Koheleth 1. 2.

22. Hagigah 12b. For the correct reading of this classic passage concerning the seven heavens, comp., besides *Variae Lectiones*, *ad loc.*, MHG I, 14–15. The seven heavens are further mentioned in BR 19. 7; PK 1, 1b, and 24, 154b–155a (the names of the heavens are different here from those in the Talmud); PR 5, 17b–18b, and 15, 68b; Shir 5. 1; Tan. B. III, 37–38; Tan. Pekude 6 and Naso 15; BaR 12. 6 and 13. 2; WR 29. 11; Tehillim 9, 88, and 109, 471; Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 5–6 (read מעונות instead of מעינות). The last-named source, 21–26, also gives a detailed description of the heavens (this is the only rabbinic passage which speaks of a heavenly ladder leading from one heaven to another; compare with footnote 49 on p. 69). See also 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 63–65 and the older version of this Midrash on the first commandment; ARN 37, 110; Midrash Shir 2b; Alphabetot 86–87; PRE 18; DR 2. 32; comp. also PK 1, 7b; PR 20, 98b; Zohar I, 85b; II, 164b–165a, 172a; III, 9a–10a. That the idea concerning the seven heavens originated in the tannaitic period cannot be definitely proved.



It is found in a statement by R. Meir (ARN, *loc. cit.*), but the authenticity of this source is not above suspicion. From DR 2. 32; Tehillim 109, 471 (read רבן רבן), and 148, 538, it may be seen that even much later the prevailing view was that there were only three (according to some, two) heavens. This view is in agreement with the opinion of 12 Testaments, Levi 3, and 2 Cor. 15. 6. 2 Enoch 3–31, whose cosmogony, however, is rather syncretistic, and the following pseudepigraphic works (which contain Christian revisions), 3 Baruch; Ascension of Isaiah 8. 13; Testament of Abraham 19 (longer recension), as well as some versions of the 12 Testaments (containing Christian revisions), *loc. cit.*, are the oldest passages referring to the seven heavens. The view of “ten heavens” (corresponding to the ten groups of angels; it may also be a learned combination of the views concerning the three and seven heavens, respectively) is found in some of the texts of 2 Enoch 22 and Zohar II, 164b–165a and 172a. The later popular view among Jews, Christians, and gnostics was that there were seven heavens. The learned classes, however, were not inclined to accept this view; they were of the opinion that two, or at most, three heavens, were sufficient. As to the rabbinic sources, comp. Hagigah, DR, Tehillim, *loc. cit.* As to the Church Fathers, see Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenu.*, 10–14, as well as Siegfried, *Philo.*, index, *s. v.* “Himmel”. In the description of the individual heavens, each of the sources follows its own way. As to the pseudepigraphic works, comp. 2 Enoch; 3 Baruch; Ascension of Isaiah; 12 Testaments, Levi. As to the rabbinic literature, see Hagigah; Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 21–26; Sode Raza in Yalkut Reubeni on Gen. 1. 1, 3c–4a; Raziel 12a–13d, 19a–19c, and 27c–27d; Zohar II, 254a–263a, whose fantastic description of the seven “Hekalot” (the heavenly halls) is nothing more than an account of the seven heavens. Just as the gnostics speak of three hundred and sixty-five heavens (Tertullian, *Haer.*, 1), even so do the Jewish mystics assert that besides the seven heavens there is still another great number of heavens; comp. BHM I, 132; Alphabetot 89; Sode Raza, *loc. cit.* With regard to the description of the heavens in the text according to Hagigah, the following is to be noticed. The manna is placed in the third heaven; compare with p. 570, and Apocalypse of Baruch 29. 8. As to the fourth heaven in which the heavenly temple is situated, comp. Zebahim 62a; Menahot 110a; *Kebod Huppah*, 11. For the literature appertaining to this subject, see Excurus I. PR 20, 98b, seems to locate the heavenly temple in the seventh heaven. As to the removal of the instruments of punishment from the sixth heaven, comp. Tan. B. I, 99; BR 51. 3; Tehillim 5. 54. With regard to this subject, *i. e.*, on the idea that no evil is to be found in God’s proximity, see note 9. Comp. further Enoch 60. 17, and text on p. 927. As to the dew for the purpose of quickening the dead, compare with text on p. 603; text on pp. 1102, 1105, and 1126. See also the Apocalypse of Baruch 29. 7

and 73. 2; 2 Enoch 22. 9; as well as the “dew of light” of the gnostics in Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 63. The old rabbinic sources where this is mentioned are the following: Yerushalmi Berakot 5, 9b; Ta’anit 1, 63d. This dew particularly plays a very important part in mystic literature; comp. PRE 34 (end) and the sources cited by Luria. As to the seventh heaven *‘Arabot*, comp. BHM I, 132, which is the source for *Tola’at Ya’akob* (at the end of *Asher Yazar*).

23. The sea and the water in Jewish legend, like Ap-su and Tiamat in Babylonian mythology, are two different elements: the one is sweet water and the other salt water. To point out the exact nature of this difference, Konen 24 uses the phrase מים מתוקים (“sweet water”), in contrast to ים “sea”=salt water.

24. That is, counted from above downward.

25. Seven names for hell are already given in ‘Erubin 19a, which in Tehillim 11, 100 (with some variants) appear as seven compartments of hell; comp. notes 55–57.

26. Corresponding to the number of days of the solar year.

27. Concerning these monsters, compare with footnote 34 on p. 110.

28. MHG I, 16–17. For a full account of the seven earths, see Konen 35–37; Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 5–28 (different versions); Raziel (מעשה בראשית), 27a–27b. Older sources speak of seven or ten names of the earth (comp. note 22 with reference to the seven or ten heavens), as well of the seven earths. It is, however, doubtful whether this does not really mean seven parts (zones), comp. PK 24, 155a; WR 19. 11; Shir 6. 4 (here, however, only six heavens are mentioned, the highest of which, where God dwells, not being included, and six earths; comp. PK 1, 7b, and ShR 15. 26); ARN 38, 110; second version 43, 119; Mishle 8, 59, and 9, 61; Tehillim 92, 402; PRE 8; see further Sode Raza in Yalkut Reubeni on Gen. 1. 1, 2d–3a. Another sevenfold division of the earth is to be found in the following statement of Hagigah 12b and, with essential variants, in Yerushalmi 2, 77a; Leket 8b; Tehillim 104, 442; Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 11. According to this statement, the earth rests on pillars, which rest on water, which rests on mountains, which rest on the winds, which rest on storms, which rest on God’s arm. The number of the pillars upon which the earth rests is variously given: seven, twelve, and even one, whose name is “Zaddik” (righteous). These seven pillars of the earth are personified in the Clementine writings as the seven saints Adam, Enoch, Noah, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Moses. The view that there is a connection between the seven pillars of the earth spoken of by the Rabbis and the seven saints of the Clementine writings, first suggested by Ginzberg in the Jewish Encyclopedia, IV, 114, is now proved to be correct by Alphabetot 103, where the seven pillars are actually identified with the seven pious



men: the three patriarchs and Moses, Aaron, David, and Solomon.

29. BR 1. 13; Tan. B. I, 6. Comp. also Alphabetot 97.

30. Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 4–5; Alphabetot 89. A passage found at the end of the Mishnah which, however, does not belong to it, but is a later insertion (comp. Sanhedrin 100a; Tehillim 31, 239, and Schwarz, *Die Controversen*, 2) reads as follows: In the time to come God will bestow three hundred and ten worlds on every righteous person. Comp. further Petirat Mosheh 121 (where רבוא is to be struck out), and *Ketoret ha-Sammim* 4b, where a passage from ARN is cited concerning the three hundred and ten worlds. This passage does not occur in our texts of this Midrash, but it resembles the statement of BHM I, 132 (this is the source of R. Bahya, Gen. 1. 1) with reference to the three hundred and ninety heavens. On these heavens see Derek Erez R. 2 (end) and Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 28. 30. Instead of three hundred and ten, Alphabetot of R. Akiba has three hundred and forty. In the same source, 29, the view regarding the distance between the angels and the Shekinah is very likely connected with the statement made in 'Abodah Zarah 3b and Seder Rabba 4 concerning the eighteen thousand worlds. Comp. likewise note 97.

31. BR 6. 6 and numerous parallel passages cited by Theodor. Comp. likewise Ascension of Isaiah 7. 18; see text on p. 503; text on p. 613; text on p. 1103. See also the sources cited in the following note.

32. Ta'anit 10a; Pesahim 94a; Yerushalmi Berakot 1, 2c. Comp. the material collected by Hirschensohn, *Sheba' Hokmot*, 1–13, on the views of the ancient rabbinic sources concerning the extension of the earth and other physical-meteorological observations found in these writings. On the thickness of the heavens comp. BR 6. 6, and the Greek Baruch 3.

33. Konen 27. Yalkut Reubeni on Lev. 2. 13 quotes the following from an unknown Midrash: The world is divided into three parts: inhabited land, desert, and sea; the temple is situated in the inhabited land, the Torah was given in the desert, and salt from the sea is offered with every sacrifice. God's power extends over all these three parts of the earth; He led Israel through the Red Sea, they wandered through the wilderness, and reached the inhabited land, Palestine; R. Bahya on Num. 10. 35. According to 4 Ezra 42, a seventh part of the earth is water; but this bears no relation to *Recognitiones* 9, 26. This passage contains only the view that the world is divided into seven zones. Comp. the rabbinic parallel passages cited in note 28. The division into twelve zones, which is frequently found in non-Jewish sources (comp. Broll, *Sphaera*, 296, and Jeremias, ATAO 2, 50–51), is not unknown to rabbinic literature, where it is stated that according to Deut. 32. 8 the earth consists of twelve parts corresponding to the twelve sons of Jacob. Comp. Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 4; Alphabet R. Akiba 24;

Lekah, Gen. 1. 14 (end, where it is said that the various zones correspond to the signs of the Zodiac). See further footnote 73 on p. 157.—The view that paradise is situated in the east is based on Gen. 2. 8. But מַקְדֵּם in this verse was taken by very old authorities in the sense of “pre-existing” (comp. Excursus I). Thus many Rabbis assert that paradise was situated in the west, or to be more accurate, in the north-west. Comp. Tosafof Berakot 55b, caption מִטְרָא; Enoch 32; text on p. 645.

34. Konen 28–31; Baba Batra 25a; text on pp. 645, 685.

35. Gittin 31b. On the winds comp. Hirschensohn, *Sheba' Hokmot*, 8–11; Derenbourg, *Monatsschrift*, XXX, 173–174. Compare with p. 716.

36. Gittin 31b; Konen 31. An interesting parallel to 2 Enoch 40. 11, concerning the stilling of the wind in order that the world should not be destroyed, is found in BR 24. 4 (comp. the parallel passages cited by Theodor).

37. PRE 3; Tehillim 2, 16. Comp. likewise Baba Batra 25b.

38. This is the usual transliteration, whereas *She-tyyah* is the only permissible form, if it is to be derived from שְׁתִּי.

39. Tan. B. III, 78; Tan. Kedoshim 10. We are here confronted with a legend which is composed of various elements. Palestine, God's favorite land, was created before all other parts of the world; Sifre D., 37; Mekilta RS, 168; Ta'anit 10a; Sibyl. 5. 300. Comp. likewise Excursus I. Instead of Palestine in general, Jerusalem (Yoma 54b; Tehillim 50, 279; Targum Ps. 50. 2), or the site of the temple (comp. the following note) is designated as the beginning of creation. The widespread popular notion that the earth came into being as a result of a stone which God had thrown into the water (comp. Dähnhardt, *Natursagen*, I, 4, and see further the remarks on water as the primeval first element in Excursus I) was subsequently brought into relation with the view that creation began with the site of the temple; hence the legend that creation began with the stone found in the holy of holies; see Tosefta Yoma 4. 6; comp. also Babli 54b (נִפְחָא ר' יְצָחָק, in view of Tosefta 'Erubin 7. 18, against Rabinovicz, is to be retained); Yerushalmi 5, 42b; Tan., *loc. cit.*, and parallel passages. Independent of and partly contradictory to this view is the opinion which maintains that Palestine is situated in the centre of the earth; Jub. 8. 12; Enoch 26. 1 (according to 90. 20, Gehenna is likewise located in the centre of the earth, because an entrance thereof is found in Jerusalem, the centre of Palestine; see 'Erubin 19a; Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 27, which is not anti-Jewish); PR 10, 34a, and many of the parallel passages in later Midrashim, cited by Friedmann (Yoma, *loc. cit.*, on the contrary, distinguishes between the centre of the earth and Jerusalem), to which many more may be added; comp. *e.g.* Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 4;



Zohar II, 151a; III, 161b and 221b. Jerusalem is already mentioned in Aristeas, 83 as the centre of Palestine, and this agrees with the later Midrashim, Tan., *loc. cit.*, and parallel passages; Seder Rabba di-Bereshit, *loc. cit.* Since it was assumed that the ark was placed in the centre of the holy of holies (Meleket ha-Mishkan 53; not so Maimonides, *Yad ha-Hazakah*, *Bet ha-Behirah* 4. 1, and RSBM on Baba Batra 99a) upon the *Eben Shetiyyah*, the legend, desirous of finding creation centres (comp. the elaborate account of such circles in Zohar II, 157, and III, 161b), quite naturally saw in this stone the centre of the earth. In view of the belief that the creation of the earth (and of everything; comp. Yoma 85a) began with its centre, the *Eben Shetiyyah* also became the beginning of creation. The oldest source (Yoma 5. 2), where this stone is mentioned, leaves no doubt that it is considered to have come down there at the time of the first prophets (*i.e.*, Samuel and David; comp. Sotah 48b and Yerushalmi 9, 24b; see, however, Yerushalmi Berakot 5, 8d), and it is therefore impossible to assume that the Mishnah identified it with the stone with which creation began. It is accordingly probable that שֶׁתִּיָּה is the same as אֶשְׁתִּיָּה, and אֶשְׁתִּיָּה is to be translated “fire-stone,” *i.e.*, meteor. We have here, therefore, a tradition based upon 2 Samuel 24. 16, *seq.*, and 1 Chron. 21. 26, according to which a meteor fell down at this place (note that the Mishnah does not read הָיָה נָתַן), where subsequently the holy of holies was situated. *Hadar* on Exod. 19. 19 quotes Targum Yerushalmi *ad loc.*, in which אֲבִי אִשְׁתָּה is employed in the sense of meteors. Later, however, אֶשְׁתִּיָּה was connected with שֶׁתִּי “loom” (creation as a spinning out of skeins of the warp is a favorite picture; comp. BR 10. 5 and the parallels given by Theodor) and שֶׁתִּי “foundation;” comp. Tosefta, Yerushalmi, and Babli Yoma, *loc. cit.*; Yerushalmi Pesahim 4, 30d; PK 28, 171a; Tan. B. III, 78; Tan. Ahare 3 and Kedoshim 10; WR 20. 4; BaR 21. 4; Shir 3, 9. In all these passages it is stated that the stone was called *Eben Shetiyyah* because the foundation of the world had been laid with it. A later development of the *Eben Shetiyyah* legend transferred to this stone all that which had originally been said concerning the foundation of the temple (compare with p. 923, and note 69 appertaining to it). It is therefore asserted that the “Ineffable Name” was engraved on this stone, whose power checks the *Tehom* from overflowing the earth; comp. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 28. 30; Targum Eccl. 3. 11. This legend is further enlarged upon in Jewish Jesus tales. Since the knowledge of this name enabled anyone to accomplish all one desired, a device was necessary to prevent misuse. At the gate of the temple two brazen dogs were placed (on such magic dogs compare with pp. 546–547), so that whenever a person who had acquired the knowledge of the Name would pass, they began to bark. Frightened by this sound, the person would forget the knowledge of the Name. Jesus, however,

had written the Name on paper, which he hid under his skin. He forgot the Name while passing the dogs, but later learned it again from the paper which he pulled out from under his skin. By means of the Name he was able to perform all the miracles. Comp. Krauss, *Leben Jesu*, index *s.v.* “Grundstein.” The view that the Name of the Messiah is engraved upon a stone of the heavenly temple belongs likewise to the *Eben Shetiyyah* legend cycle. For further details concerning this legend, see text p. 278; *Feuchtwanger in Monatsschrift LV*, 43–47; Jeremias, *Babylonisches im NT*, 79–80, and ATAO 2, 49, 155, 372, 374, 585.

40. Konen 24–25, based on old sources; comp. BR 3. 4–5; PK 21, 145b; WR 31. 7; ShR 15. 22 and 50. 1; Teshillim 50, 279 (where it is said that also the destruction of this world as well as the creation of the new world will begin with Zion) and 104, 441; ER 5, 21; Tan. B. II, 96.

41. Originally a mythological conception of creation as a struggle between light and darkness (=chaos). In Jewish sources the prince of darkness is the angel of death (=Satan); comp. ShR 8. 6; Yelammedenu in Ozar Midrashim 64b; Tan. Wa-Yakhel 4. He is, of course, considered to have been created by God.

42. PR 20, 95a–96b, and 203a. The allegorical interpretation of the sign of the Zodiac, although found in both versions of the Pesikta, does not belong to the original legend concerning the struggle between light and darkness, *i.e.*, God and Satan, and is therefore rightly omitted in the manuscript made use of for the text. In this account water and darkness are identical, because water is conceived as the chaotic primeval substance. On the rebellion of the water comp. notes 50–53 and 71–73, as well as Konen 25 (read וְנִתְרַקְמָה כְּבוֹדוֹ or וְנִתְרַקְעָה וְנִתְרַקְמָה כְּבוֹדוֹ; the formation of solid bodies out of the fluid water will thus be explained), where, quite manifestly, the struggle between light and darkness, as the strife of the former against the water, is described, although just a little before (24) this struggle is given in quite a different form.

43. BR 5. 8 and 46. 3, where the Midrash refers to Aquila's translation of שָׂדִי by “ikanos;” comp. Theodor on the second passage just referred to and Joel, *Blicke*, I, 147. As to the aspiration of created things to be infinite, see the utterance of R. Simeon b. Lakish in Hagigah 12a (combined with the myth of the rebellion of the waters; see note 42), and Dähnhard, *Natursagen*, I, 2. Comp. also Tan. B. I, 7–8, 80, 197, 202; Tan. Hayye Sarah 3. In the first passage of Tan. it is said that the heavens which were created out of the heap of snow (comp. note 18), in accordance with God's blessing, “became fearful and multiplied.”



## THE SECOND DAY

On the second day God brought forth four creations, the firmament, hell, fire, and the angels.<sup>44</sup>

The firmament is not the same as the heavens of the first day. It is the crystal stretched forth over the heads of the Ḥayyot, from which the heavens derive their light, as the earth derives its light from the sun. This firmament saves the earth from being engulfed by the waters of the heavens; it forms the partition between the waters above and the waters below.<sup>45</sup> It was made to crystallize into the solid it is by the heavenly fire, which broke its bounds, and condensed the surface of the firmament. Thus fire made a division between the celestial and the terrestrial at the time of creation, as it did at the revelation on Mount Sinai.<sup>46</sup> The firmament is not more than three fingers thick,<sup>47</sup> nevertheless it divides two such heavy bodies as the waters below, which are the foundations for the nether world, and the waters above, which are the foundations for the seven heavens, the Divine Throne, and the abode of the angels.<sup>48</sup>

The separation of the waters into upper and lower waters was the only act of the sort done by God in connection with the work of creation.<sup>49</sup> All other acts were unifying. It therefore caused some difficulties. When God commanded, "Let the waters be gathered together, unto one place, and let the dry land appear," certain parts refused to obey. They embraced each other all the more closely. In His wrath at the waters, God determined to let the whole of creation resolve itself into chaos again. He summoned the Angel of the Face, and ordered him to destroy the world. The angel opened his eyes wide, and scorching fires and thick clouds rolled forth from them, while he cried out, "He who divides the Red Sea in sunder!"—and the rebellious waters stood. The all, however, was still in danger of destruction.

Then began the singer of God's praises: "O Lord of the world, in days to come Thy creatures will sing praises without end to Thee, they will bless Thee boundlessly, and they will glorify Thee without measure. Thou wilt set Abraham apart from all mankind as Thine own; one of his sons Thou wilt call 'My first-born'; and his descendants will take the yoke of Thy kingdom upon themselves. In holiness and purity Thou wilt bestow Thy Torah upon them, with the words, 'I am the Lord your God,' whereunto they will make answer, 'All that God hath spoken we will do.' And now I beseech Thee, have pity upon Thy world, destroy it not, for if Thou destroyest it, who will fulfil Thy will?" God was pacified; He withdrew the command ordaining the destruction of the world, but the waters He put under the mountains, to remain there forever.<sup>50</sup>

The objection of the lower waters to division and separation<sup>51</sup> was not their only reason for rebelling. The waters had been the first to give praise to God, and when their separation into upper and lower was decreed, the waters above rejoiced, saying, "Blessed are we who are privileged to abide near our Creator and near His Holy Throne." Jubilating thus, they flew upward, and uttered song and praise to the Creator of the world. Sadness fell upon the waters below. They lamented: "Woe unto us, we have not been found worthy to dwell in the presence of God, and praise Him together with our companions." Therefore they attempted to rise upward, until God repulsed them, and pressed them under the earth.<sup>52</sup> Yet they were not left unrewarded for their loyalty. Whenever the waters above desire to give praise to God, they must first seek permission from the waters below.<sup>53</sup>

The second day of creation was an untoward day in more than the one respect that it introduced a breach where before there had been nothing but unity; for it was the day that saw also the creation of hell. Therefore God could not



say of this day as of the others, that He “saw that it was good.” A division may be necessary, but it cannot be called good, and hell surely does not deserve the attribute of good.<sup>54</sup>

Hell<sup>55</sup> has seven divisions,<sup>56</sup> one beneath the other. They are called Sheol, Abaddon, Beër Shaḥat, Ṭiṭ ha-Yawen, Sha‘are Mawet, Sha‘are Zalmawet, and Gehenna. It requires three hundred years to traverse the height, or the width, or the depth of each division, and it would take six thousand three hundred<sup>57</sup> years to go over a tract of land equal in extent to the seven divisions.<sup>58</sup>

Each of the seven divisions in turn has seven subdivisions, and in each compartment there are seven rivers of fire and seven of hail. The width of each is one thousand ells, its depth one thousand, and its length three hundred, and they flow one from the other, and are supervised by ninety thousand Angels of Destruction. There are, besides, in every compartment seven thousand caves, in every cave there are seven thousand crevices, and in every crevice seven thousand scorpions. Every scorpion has three hundred rings, and in every ring seven thousand pouches of venom, from which flow seven rivers of deadly poison. If a man handles it, he immediately bursts, every limb is torn from his body, his bowels are cleft asunder, and he falls upon his face.<sup>59</sup> There are also five different kinds of fire in hell. One devours and absorbs, another devours and does not absorb, while the third absorbs and does not devour, and there is still another fire, which neither devours nor absorbs, and furthermore a fire which devours fire. There are coals big as mountains, and coals big as hills, and coals as large as the Dead Sea, and coals like huge stones, and there are rivers of pitch and sulphur flowing and seething like live coals.<sup>60</sup>

The third creation of the second day was the angel hosts, both the ministering angels and the angels of praise. The reason they had not been called into being on the first day was lest men

believe that the angels assisted God in the creation of the heavens and the earth.<sup>61</sup>

The angels that are fashioned from fire have forms of fire,<sup>62</sup> but only so long as they remain in heaven. When they descend to earth, to do the bidding of God here below, either they are changed into wind, or they assume the guise of men.<sup>63</sup> There are ten ranks or degrees among the angels.<sup>64</sup> The most exalted in rank are those surrounding the Divine Throne on all sides, to the right, to the left, in front, and behind, under the leadership of the archangels Michael, Gabriel, Uriel, and Raphael.<sup>65</sup>

All the celestial beings praise God with the words, “Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts,” but men take precedence of the angels herein. They may not begin their song of praise until the earthly beings have brought their homage to God.<sup>66</sup> Especially Israel is preferred to the angels. When they encircle the Divine Throne in the form of fiery mountains and flaming hills, and attempt to raise their voices in adoration of the Creator, God silences them with the words, “Keep quiet until I have heard the songs, praises, prayers, and sweet melodies of Israel.” Accordingly, the ministering angels and all the other celestial hosts wait until the last tones of Israel’s doxologies rising aloft from earth have died away, and then they proclaim in a loud voice, “Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts.”

When the hour for the glorification of God by the angels draws nigh, the august Divine herald, the angel Sham‘iel, steps to the windows<sup>67</sup> of the lowest heaven to hearken to the songs, prayers, and praises that ascend from the synagogues and the houses of learning, and when they are finished, he announces the end to the angels in all the heavens. The ministering angels, those who come in contact with the sublunary world,<sup>68</sup> now repair to their chambers to take their purification bath. They dive into a stream of fire and flame seven times, and three hundred and sixty-



five times they examine themselves carefully, to make sure that no taint clings to their bodies.<sup>69</sup> Only then they feel privileged to mount the fiery ladder and join the angels of the seventh heaven, and surround the throne of God with Ḥashmal and all the holy Ḥayyot. Adorned with millions of fiery crowns, arrayed in fiery garments, all the angels in unison, in the same words, and with the same melody, intone songs of praise to God.<sup>70</sup>

44. PRE 4; Konen 25. compare footnote 98 on p. 77, and Jub. 2. 4, according to which the firmament only was created on the second day. See also Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 10.

45. PRE 4; Theophil, 2. 13. Compare with p. 646.

46. BR 4. 2–7, which contains a number of remarks concerning the relation of the firmament created on the second day to the heavens created on the first day. See further Mekilta RS, 100, and Jerome on Is. 64. 1.

47. Tosefta Hagigah 2. 6; Yerushalmi 2, 77a; Babli 15a; BR 2. 4 and 4. 3–5. Comp. the following note.

48. Seder Rabba di-Bereshit (the text must be emended to read ... מעונות ז' עליהם 'מנונות (שנתן למטה). The waters above (comp. Greek Baruch 2) are found, however, according to another view at a "distance of five hundred years" from the firmament, where they are suspended at God's command. The waters above are assumed in Seder Rabba di-Bereshit to be of an illuminating nature, while the waters below are of the opposite character. Accordingly, in 2 Enoch 27, light and darkness are identified with the waters above and the waters below, respectively. See also Konen 24 and note 42.

49. BR 4. 6. This is to serve as an explanation why the Bible does not use the phrase "and it was good" in connection with the creations of the second day; comp. note 54 where this subject is treated at full length.

50. *Hadar* on Gen. 1. 9 and thence in BHM V, 150–156; the text needs to be emended. The sentence from ונתן to בראשית certainly does not belong here, and instead of וכלאו וכו' read באצבעא וקרען בפלגות. Comp. Konen 25 and Sanhedrin 38b. Read also ופלט אש and after ה הקב נטה עליהם insert ידו. On the formula of incantation used by the angel of the countenance" (שר הפנים) comp. Origen, *Contra Celsum*, 4. 34. Quite a considerable number of versions of the legend of the rebellion of the waters (comp. note 42) are extant. The waters above, which are masculine, aspired to a union with the waters below, which are feminine, and had not God separated them by means of the firmament (read ונתן הרקיע ... והמים הזכרים), their union

might have destroyed the world. Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 6. As to other versions comp. the notes 52, 53, and 72.

51. Comp. notes 49 and 54.

52. Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 9 (the source for this paragraph is not identical with that of 6); Raziel 11b, 18a–18b, and 27d; Konen 25. God "tore" the mass of waters into two halves, the waters above and the waters below, and informed them that they would be divided again for Israel's sake (as to these conditions, compare also with pp. 47–48); 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 63; MHG I, 26; ShR 15. 22; *Hadar* on Gen. 1. 4: as compensation to the waters below, God commanded the water libation in the temple and the use of salt with all sacrifices. A similar source was used by Rashi; R. Bahya; R. Shem Tob b. Shem Tob; R. Isaac Caro, and Bertinora on Lev. 2. 13; comp. Berliner, *Raschi*, 426. Comp. also ER 31, 161, concerning the weeping of the primeval elements of creation, which wished to remain all the time in God's proximity. See further the following note, as well as note 72.

53. 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 63; MHG I, 26; Raziel 27d. The song of praise to God by the waters originally belonged to another cycle of legends which state that the waters—the primeval element—praised God before any other thing had been created, and that they willingly submitted to His command to withdraw in order to render creation possible. Comp. BR 5. 2–4; ShR 17. 1 and 15. 22 (the second passage, however, contains a mixture of myths, referring also to the rebellion of the waters at the same time); Tehillim 93, 415–416 (in *Ma'asiyyot*, Gaster's edition, 8, it is Alexander the Great, not Hadrian, as in Tehillim, who hears the hymn of the waters); PR 192b; Alphabetor 82 (the hymn of the water induced God to create the world); Midrash quoted in *Hadar* on Gen. 7. 5 and Exod. 15. 8 (the waters praised God when Israel crossed the Red Sea); Yerushalmi 'Abodah Zarah 3, 42a; PRE 5; Ta'anit 25b. Comp. notes 71–72; Tertullian, *De Baptismo*, 3.

54. BR 4. 16, where two other reasons are given why the Bible does not have the sentence "And He saw that it was good" with reference to the second day of creation: 1) because the things created on the second day were not completed on that day and were finished on the third; hence this sentence is repeated twice on the third day; 2) because God had foreseen that Moses would incur death on account of the "water;" compare with pp. 731, *seq.* Two of the midrashic explanations are also cited by the Church Fathers; comp. Jerome on Gen. 1. 8; Ephraim 1, 15 B-C; Albertus Magnus XIX, 1. 731; Origen, *Ad Africanum*, 4. See Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 176, and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.* 15–16. Midrash ha-Ne'elam on Gen. 1. 9 reads: Only unity is good. This agrees almost verbatim with Philo, *De Allegor.*, 2. 1. That hell was created on the second day is also found in various other passages of rabbinic literature; comp. BR 11. 9 and 31. 9;



Pesahim 54a; PRE 3; ShR 15. 22; Tan. B. I, 12; Tan. Hayye Sarah 3; Tosefta Berakot 5 (6). 7. Comp. Excursus I.

55. In rabbinic sources the word ordinarily used for “hell” is *Gehinnom*, although this is at the same time the name of one of the parts of hell; comp. the passages quoted in note 25. The Rabbis, of course, knew that Gehinnom originally was the name of the valley near Jerusalem (Jer. 7. 32), where Moloch had been worshipped in ancient times, and they therefore explained the meaning of this word, as well as its synonym Tofet, from its connection with the worship of Moloch. Comp. the vivid description of the worship of Moloch in Ge ben Hinnom in Tan. B. V, 15; Ekah 1, 71–72; Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s.v. גיא and קנקל. See Krauss in ZDMG, LXVI, 273–274. The relation between Gehenna and Jerusalem is, however, of a closer nature, for one of the three gates of hell (the one is found in the inhabited land, the other in the wilderness, and the third at the bottom of the sea) is located in Jerusalem; ‘Erubin 19a (where the exact place of this gate is given); PK 29, 186b (bottom); comp. note 39. Tamid 32b cites two opinions: according to one, hell is found above the firmament (but not in heaven), while the other maintains that it is “beyond the mountains of darkness.” There is a widespread view that hell and paradise are situated side by side, so that it is possible to look from one place into the other; PK 30, 191b; Koheleth 7. 14; Midrash Tannaim 224. On the enormous size of hell comp. Pesahim 94a; Ta’anit 10a; Shir 6. 9 (the size of the entire world bears the same relation to hell as a lid to its pot); PR 41, 173b (hell expands according to its needs), PRK, Grünhut’s edition, 71. As to the intensity of the fire of hell, comp. Berakot 57b and Shabbat 39a (bottom), which state that the heat of the hot springs of Tiberias is due to the fact that its waters pass the gates of Gehenna. Comp. also Yerushalmi Berakot 6, 10d (end) where דקלים ב’ have reference to the statement in ‘Erubin 19a.

56. Sotah 10b (מדורי “habitations,” a play on the word מדורה “fire-place”); for the various descriptions of hell and paradise comp. Index, s.v. “Hell and Paradise.” The place where Moloch was worshipped (comp. the preceding note), according to the description in the older Midrashim, consisted of seven compartments (Ge ben Hinnom is thus modelled after Gehinnom). The allegoric interpretation of the seven compartments as symbolizing the sevenfold punishment is found not only in Ezra 7. 80–81, but also among the later Kabbalists; comp. Zohar II, 150b, and Azulai, *Hesed le-Abraham*, 51d. Rather strange is Mishle 7, 57, which speaks of fourteen compartments of hell (the text is not to be emended, as it is based on the interpretation of שבעות as “two times seven”), whereas the rabbinic sources (in addition to those mentioned above, comp. also Tehillim 11, 100–103) and the Babylonian myth concerning the descent of Ishtar into hell know only of seven compartments.

57. The names vary in the different versions; comp. ‘Erubin 19a; Tehillim 11, 100 and 101; PRK, Grünhut’s edition, 77, and text on p. 6.

58. Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 15; Konen 35 (bottom; read פחות תִּקַּע אלפים); comp. further Alphabet R. Akiba 28; BHM V, 50; text on p. 6. The numbers given in Konen concerning the dimensions of hell presuppose a “distance of 500 years” as a unit. Compare with p. 6.

59. Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 19–20; BHM V, 49–50. Compare further with pp. 506–507, as well as p. 565. On serpents which have venom instead of blood, see King, *Creation Tablets*, 16 and 50.

60. Masseket Gehinnom 147. On the different kinds of fire compare with text on pp. 505–506; text on p. 692; text on p. 995. See further Alphabet R. Akiba 81; PRK, 16a; Sefer Yezirah (not in our text) in Mahzor Vitry 319. On the Persian origin of this legend, comp. Darmesteter in *R.E.J.* I, 186, and Kobut, *Angelologie*, 32–33.

61. BR 1. 3 and 3. 8 (according to one opinion the angels were created as late as the fifth day, simultaneously with the other winged creatures), as well as 11. 9; Tan. B. I, 1 and 12; ShR 15. 22; PRE 4; Tehillim 24, 204; 76, 373–374; 104, 442; Konen 25. Reminiscences of the old view, according to which the angels were created on the first day (Jub. 2. 2; 2 Enoch 29. 3; Apocalypse of Baruch 21. 6), have been preserved even in authoritative Midrashim, but particularly in the mystic literature. In the latter an attempt is made to harmonize the conflicting views concerning the day on which the angels were created by assuming that the higher ranks were created on the first day, and the lower ones later; comp. Tan. Wa-Yesheb 4 and Yelammedenu in Ozar Midrashim, I, 64 (where two contrary opinions are found beside one another); ER 1, 3, as well as 19, 160, and perhaps also BR 21. 9 (ER, *loc. cit.*, understands BR to say that the Cherubim were created first, taking מקדם to mean “in the beginning”); PRE 4; Konen 24 (in the two last-mentioned sources the archangels are differentiated from the other angels; comp. the words שֶׁנִּבְרָאוּ תְּחִלָּה ז’ מלאכים, and Luria, note 1); Zohar I, 46a (the contrary opinion is given in III, 217); *Ketab Tamim* 59; *Peletat Soferim* 2; Zohar Hadash 11b and 12a (mention is made here of angels who existed prior to the creation of the world; comp. Excursus I); R. Bahya on Gen. 38. 12. The authoritative view maintaining that the angels were created on the second day (as to the reason given for this view, comp. also the statement in Alphabetot 89 and 103 concerning the disappearance of all the angels before the creation of the new world; see further Tertullian, *Adversus Hermogenem* 34) is also found in Tan. Hayye Sarah 3 and in the quotation from this Midrash in Makiri Is. 43, 141; Batte Midrashot IV, 33; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 1. 26. Compare also with footnote 22 on p. 58.

62. PRE 4; Konen 25 and 24. The fact that the angels were created of fire does not interfere with their



incorporeality, for in legend fire, particularly the heavenly fire, is incorporeal (comp. Konen 24); see also Enoch, at the beginning and 20, which reads: "All the fiery hosts of great archangels and incorporeal powers." Although they are incorporeal, they are not eternal, since there are angels who come into being for a moment only and vanish immediately after. Thus there are angels who spring up daily out of the stream Dinur (= "stream of fire"; comp. Dan. 7. 10); they praise God, and then disappear. Out of every word uttered by God angels are created. Comp. Hagigah 13b–14a; BR 78. 1 (Michael and Gabriel are the only angels who do not vanish); Alphabet 88; Trypho in Justin's *Dialogue*, 128. Trypho's remarks concerning angels are particularly important with respect to the attitude of the Synagogue towards angelology. His remark, 60, that wherever Scripture speaks of the appearance of angels, it wishes to express symbolically God's visible activity, is also found in BR 97. 3; ShR 2. 5 and 32. 9. His other statement, 128, that the angels are borne by God's power, corresponds to the view poetically expressed by the Rabbis that the splendor of the Shekinah sustains the angels. Comp. PK 6, 57a; ShR 32. 4 and 47. 5. A statement like that of Jub. 15. 27 to the effect that certain classes of angels bear the sign of the Abrahamic covenant on them would have struck the Rabbis as blasphemy. Comp. the following note and footnote 6 on p. 47.

63. BR 21. 9; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 69 and 925; ShR 25. 2; PRE 4; Tehillim 104, 442 (in the two last-named sources the angels are wind when performing their duties, in God's presence they are fire). Comp. also BR 50. 1. On angels as shades, see BaR 10. 5; perhaps also Baba Batra 91a. In WR 31. 5 it is said that the angels are males and not females, *i.e.*, they never assume the form of women; but comp. the parallel passages in Mishle 21, 89, and BR, *loc. cit.* It is, however, to be observed that Lekah, Gen. 3. 24, in citing the last-named passage does not read the word נשים. Men, women, boys, and maidens among angels are mentioned in mystical literature, but this description has hardly anything to do with their forms; it merely expresses the different degrees of their ranks. Comp. Yalkut Hadash, *s.v.* מלאכים Nos. 63, 93; R. Moses ha-Darshan in *Magazin*, XV, 80; Hasidim 277. Although the rabbinic sources hardly offer any remarks concerning the forms of angels, many a statement is found in the older literature regarding their size and rapidity; comp. Enoch 40. 1; Berakot 4b; Hullin 91b; BR 68. 12 and 51. 1. As to the material out of which the angels were created, comp. the preceding note, as well as PK 1, 3a–3b; ShR 3. 11; BaR 15. 8; DR 5. 12; Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 2, 58a; 2 ARN 24, 48–49; Tan. Wa-Yiggash 6; Targum Job 25. 2; Pesahim, 118a (bottom). Along with fire which is the peculiar heavenly element, water and snow (also hail) are mentioned as the material out of which the angels were fashioned. On fire, water, and snow as the primeval elements, comp. In-

dex, *s.v.* The statement found in many passages of rabbinic literature that Michael was created of fire and Gabriel of snow or water (see Index, *s.v.* "Michael," "Gabriel") implies the view that the former belongs to heaven and the latter to the earth. The idea that the residence of the angels is in heaven is unanimously expressed by the Rabbis, as well as by the authors of the pseudepigraphic writings. Philo's view, *De Gigant.*, 2, and *De Somn.*, 22, that the angels inhabit the air is entirely unknown to the Rabbis (BR 26. 5, to which Siegfried, *Philo*, 147, alludes, has nothing to do with the place inhabited by the angels; this passage was misunderstood by Siegfried; for the correct translation thereof, see footnote 1 on p. 101). Similarly there is nothing in the older sources of rabbinic literature in support of Philo's statement concerning the identity of the angels with the souls (*Noë* 4; *De Gigant.*, and *De Somn.*, *loc. cit.*), which is only found in the Kabbalah; comp., *e. g.*, Zohar I, 7a, and footnote 444 on p. 430.

64. Enoch 20. 1; Yerushalmi 'Erubin 1, 19d, and Shemuel 23 (for the two last mentioned passages see Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 243 note 2; concerning the presence of the Shekinah in the assembly of ten, comp. also Sanhedrin 39a; Berakot 6a); *Adamschriften*, 27, speaks of nine hosts of angels. On the names of the ten classes of angels, found only in medieval sources, comp. *Azilot* (beginning); Maimonides, *Yad ha-Hazakah*, *Yesode ha-Torah*, 2. 7; Zohar II, 43a; R. Moses ha-Darshan (from a manuscript in Gross, *Gallia Judaica*, 411); Konen 25; Derek Erez 2. The last two sources know only of five (six?) classes of angels; comp. the following note. The division of angels into seven classes mentioned in Enoch 61. 10 is an older view which makes the number of classes correspond to the number of archangels and to the heavens. On the other hand, there is one view which counts three heavens (comp. note 22), and hence knows only of three archangels (see footnote 13 on p. 52). Accordingly the idea that there are ten classes of angels is based on a combination of two older views. On the number of angels comp. Sifre N., 42; Sifre D., 51; Tehillim 68, 319; ER 6, 32 and 34; 17, 84; 29, 156, and 160; EZ 12, 193; Alphabet R. Akiba 21; Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 28; a midrashic quotation (the source is a somewhat different version of the description of Solomon's throne given in BHM. V, 34.) by R. Bahya on Gen. (beginning). The statement "as great as is the multitude of the angels, so great is the race of man" (*Revelation of John* towards the end) has a parallel in Tehillim, *loc. cit.* All these classes of angels reside at a very great distance from the Shekinah, whereas God is near to those that are broken-hearted (Ps. 34. 19), because He loves them more than the angels; Alphabet R. Akiba 29; Midrash Shir 16b (frequently quoted by the mystics, as, *e.g.*, *Rokeah*, *Hasidut*, at the end; *Teshubah* 28; *Orehot Hayyim* I, 101a).

65. PRE 4; Enoch 9. 1; 40. 2–10 (here the reading is Phanuel instead of Uriel); 71. 9. On these four archangels



compare with p. 685, and the note 440 appertaining to it. The very old view concerning the seven archangels (Enoch 20. 1–8; 81. 5; 90. 21–22; 12 Testaments, Levi 8. 1, and in many other works of the pseudepigraphic literature, as well as rabbinic writings of the post-talmudic period as PRE, *loc. cit.*, and particularly in mystic works; comp. Al-Barceloni, 247, which is indeed the oldest rabbinic source on the names of the archangels and their relation to the planets; Raziel 38a, 61a, where various sources are made use of) naturally supposes seven classes of angels. Along with the sevenfold and fourfold divisions of angels, found in pseud-epigraphic and rabbinic literatures, we meet with the conception of twelve archangels, which is connected with the signs of the Zodiac; comp. Raziel 52a, 61a (which is based on another source than the two other passages referred to above). As to this view in pseudepigraphic literature, comp. Bousset, *Religion*, 374–376.

66. Hullin 91a; 2 ARN 27, 55; 44, 124; Midrash Tannaim 71; Sifre D., 306 (end); BHM VI, 37; Mishle 9. 75; BR 65. 21; Tan. B. III, 74; Tan. Kedoshim 6; Nispahim 56. The last-named passage states that when the angels had complained of the fact that man was preferred to them, God replied: “What, ye wish to precede Israel in chanting songs of praise to Me? They, though ‘born of woman’ and subject to the evil inclination, conquer their evil inclination and daily proclaim Me as the one God and King, and wait for the coming of My Kingdom and the establishment of My house.”—Although man, who is a terrestrial being, is inferior to the angels, he surpasses them by overcoming the evil inclination, which the angels do not possess at all (BR 48. 11). The pious are therefore greater than the angels (Sanhedrin 39a; BR 88. 1; Tehillim 91, 398, and 103, 438). In the world to come the angels will try to find out from Israel the things taught to them by God; Yerushalmi Shabbat 3, 8d, and BR 1. 12. Comp. Schechter, *Aspects*, 49; Singer, *Das Buch d. Jubiläen* 98, note 6 on p. 266; text on p. 562.

67. The windows of heaven are frequently mentioned in Enoch (comp. Charles’ Index, *s.v.*) and likewise in rabbinic sources; comp. Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 2, 58a; ShR 15. 22; PRE 6; Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 78.

68. On the defilement of the celestials by coming into contact with terrestrial beings, comp. note 105.

69. This stream of fire is very likely the one which springs out of the perspiration of the Hayyot encircling God’s throne, and out of which the daily angels rise to chant songs of praise to God and disappear after their task has been accomplished; BR 78. 1; ShR 15. 6; Hagigah 14a. Comp. note 62.

70. Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 28–30; 3 Hekalot 161–163. In other sources it is not Shamiel who appears as the master of heavenly song (probably the correct reading is Shammiel, since it is derived from שָׁמַע “he summoned”),

but Michael (compare with p. 299), or rather Metatron; comp. *Sefer ha-Heshek*, 26, No. 13, and 8a, No. 61. The mystic literature knows also of a heavenly Hazzan; comp. Hagigah 13b and PR 20, 97a, concerning the function of the angel Sandalfon (on the text of PR see *Ketab Tamim*, 59). See also the account in the mystic literature of the gaonic period (*Pirke Hekalot*, Wertheimer’s edition, 31; comp. also Baer, *Siddur*, 120) concerning the angel Israel; comp. Zunz, *Synagogale Poesie*, 477. This angel is described as belonging to the order of the Hayyot; compare with footnote 253 on p. 300. Originally the name Hayyot was used to designate the creatures with animal forms mentioned in Ezekiel 1. 5, *seq.*, as surrounding God’s throne. These were considered as a distinguished class of angels (Sifra 1. 1 and Sifre N., 103; in these passages the life of the angels, or at least of this class, is assumed to be eternal; comp. note 62); subsequently, however, the Hayyot denoted a class of angels. Similarly Hashmal (Ezek 1. 4) is taken to be as the name of a class of angels; comp. Hagigah 13a–13b. In this passage of the Talmud (comp. Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 28) the description of God’s throne in Is. 6. 1–3 is said to be identical with that of Ezek. 1. 5, *seq.*, and the discrepancies are removed. Thus it is said, for instance, that the six wings of the Seraphim in Is. correspond to the four faces of the Hayyot of Ezek., since two of the wings with which they had formerly praised God were taken away from them after the destruction of the temple. PR 33, 155b–156a, reads somewhat differently. The bull image of the Hayyot (Ezek. 1. 10), was changed by Ezekiel’s prayer to that of Cherubim, so that God should not be constantly reminded of Israel’s aberration in connection with the golden calf. The feet of the Seraphim (Is. 6. 2) were concealed for the same reason because the calves’ feet (Ezek. 1. 7) would have constantly served as a reminder of the golden calf; Hagigah 13b; WR 27. 3. On the liturgical formulas which the angels employ in their doxology, comp. Hullin 91b–92a; Hagigah 14a; ER 31, 163; Hasidim 400; Seder R. Amram 18a. See also the quotations from medieval authors given in Baer’s *Siddur*, 120. Comp. also Hagigah 12b; *Mahkim* 119; *Seder Troyes* 26 (Moses caught the formula *Baruk Shem*, etc., from the whispering angels); DR 2. 36. In all these legends the tendency is to trace back the origin of the essential parts of the liturgy, as the *Shema*, *Bareku*, and *Kedushah*, to the angels; compare with text on p. 700. Not all angels however are perfect; comp. the sources cited at the beginning of this note, according to which countless numbers of angels perish in the stream Dinur, whenever they do not chant their hymns at the exact moment. Comp. Zohar III, 64b; Ekah 3, 132–133.



## THE THIRD DAY

Up to this time the earth was a plain, and wholly covered with water. Scarcely had the words of God, "Let the waters be gathered together, "made themselves heard, when mountains appeared all over and hills,<sup>71</sup> and the water collected in the deep-lying basins. But the water was recalcitrant, it resisted the order to occupy the lowly spots, and threatened to overflow the earth, until God forced it back into the sea, and encircled the sea with sand. Now, whenever the water is tempted to transgress its bounds, it beholds the sand, and recoils.<sup>72</sup>

The waters did but imitate their chief Rahab, the Angel of the Sea, who rebelled at the creation of the world. God had commanded Rahab to take in the water. But he refused, saying, "I have enough." The punishment for his disobedience was death. His body rests in the depths of the sea, the water dispelling the foul odor that emanates from it.<sup>73</sup>

The main creation of the third day was the realm of plants, the terrestrial plants as well as the plants of Paradise. First of all the cedars of Lebanon and the other great trees were made. In their pride at having been put first, they shot up high in the air. They considered themselves the favored among plants. Then God spake, "I hate arrogance and pride, for I alone am exalted, and none beside," and He created the iron on the same day, the substance with which trees are felled down. The trees began to weep, and when God asked the reason of their tears, they said: "We cry because Thou hast created the iron to uproot us therewith. All the while we had thought ourselves the highest of the earth, and now the iron, our destroyer, has been called into existence." God replied: "You yourselves will furnish the axe with a handle. Without your assistance the iron will not be able to do aught against you."<sup>74</sup>

The command to bear seed after their kind was given to the trees alone. But the various sorts of grass reasoned that if God had not desired divisions according to classes, He would not have instructed the trees to bear fruit after their kind with the seed thereof in it, especially as trees are inclined of their own accord to divide themselves into species. The grasses therefore reproduced themselves also after their kinds. This prompted the exclamation of the Prince of the World, "Let the glory of the Lord endure forever; let the Lord rejoice in His works."<sup>75</sup>

The most important work done on the third day was the creation of Paradise. Two gates of carbuncle form the entrance to Paradise,<sup>76</sup> and sixty myriads of ministering angels keep watch over them. Each of these angels shines with the lustre of the heavens. When the just man appears before the gates, the clothes in which he was buried are taken off him, and the angels array him in seven garments of clouds of glory, and place upon his head two crowns, one of precious stones and pearls, the other of gold of Parvaim,<sup>77</sup> and they put eight myrtles in his hand, and they utter praises before him and say to him, "Go thy way, and eat thy bread with joy." And they lead him to a place full of rivers, surrounded by eight hundred kinds of roses and myrtles. Each one has a canopy according to his merits,<sup>78</sup> and under it flow four rivers, one of milk, the other of balsam, the third of wine, and the fourth of honey. Every canopy is overgrown by a vine of gold, and thirty pearls hang from it, each of them shining like Venus. Under each canopy there is a table of precious stones and pearls, and sixty angels stand at the head of every just man, saying unto him: "Go and eat with joy of the honey, for thou hast busied thyself with the Torah, and she is sweeter than honey, and drink of the wine preserved in the grape since the six days of creation,<sup>79</sup> for thou hast busied thyself with the Torah, and she is compared to wine." The least fair of the just is



beautiful as Joseph and Rabbi Johanan, and as the grains of a silver pomegranate upon which fall the rays of the sun.<sup>80</sup> There is no light, “for the light of the righteous is the shining light.”

And they undergo four transformations every day, passing through four states. In the first the righteous is changed into a child. He enters the division for children, and tastes the joys of childhood. Then he is changed into a youth, and enters the division for the youths, with whom he enjoys the delights of youth. Next he becomes an adult, in the prime of life, and he enters the division of men, and enjoys the pleasures of manhood. Finally, he is changed into an old man. He enters the division for the old, and enjoys the pleasures of age.

There are eighty myriads of trees in every corner of Paradise, the meanest among them choicer than all the spice trees. In every corner there are sixty myriads of angels singing with sweet voices, and the tree of life stands in the middle and shades the whole of Paradises.<sup>81</sup> It has fifteen thousand tastes, each different from the other, and the perfumes thereof vary likewise. Over it hang seven clouds of glory, and winds blow upon it from all four sides,<sup>82</sup> so that its odor is wafted from one end of the world to the other. Underneath sit the scholars and explain the Torah. Over each of them two canopies are spread, one of stars, the other of sun and moon, and a curtain of clouds of glory separates the one canopy from the other.<sup>83</sup> Beyond Paradise begins Eden, containing three hundred and ten worlds<sup>84</sup> and seven compartments for seven different classes of the pious. In the first are “the martyr victims of the government,” like Rabbi Akiba and his colleagues;<sup>85</sup> in the second those who were drowned;<sup>86</sup> in the third<sup>87</sup> Rabbi Johanan ben Zakkai and his disciples; in the fourth those who were carried off in the cloud of glory;<sup>88</sup> in the fifth the penitents, who occupy a place which even a perfectly pious man cannot obtain; in the

sixth are the youths<sup>89</sup> who have not tasted of sin in their lives; in the seventh are those poor who studied Bible and Mishnah, and led a life of self-respecting decency. And God sits in the midst of them and expounds the Torah to them.<sup>90</sup>

As for the seven divisions of Paradise, each of them is twelve myriads of miles in width and twelve myriads of miles in length. In the first division dwell the proselytes who embraced Judaism of their own free will, not from compulsion. The walls are of glass and the wainscoting of cedar. The prophet Obadiah,<sup>91</sup> himself a proselyte, is the overseer of this first division. The second division is built of silver, and the wainscoting thereof is of cedar. Here dwell those who have repented, and Manasseh, the penitent son of Hezekiah, presides over them. The third division is built of silver and gold. Here dwell Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and all the Israelites who came out of Egypt, and the whole generation that lived in the desert.<sup>92</sup> Also David is there, together with all his sons<sup>93</sup> except Absalom, one of them, Chileab, still alive. And all the kings of Judah are there, with the exception of Manasseh, the son of Hezekiah, who presides in the second division, over the penitents. Moses and Aaron preside over the third division. Here are precious vessels of silver and gold and jewels and canopies and beds and thrones and lamps, of gold, of precious stones, and of pearls, the best of everything there is in heaven.<sup>94</sup> The fourth division is built of beautiful rubies,<sup>95</sup> and its wainscoting is of olive wood. Here dwell the perfect and the steadfast in faith, and their wainscoting is of olive wood, because their lives were bitter as olives to them. The fifth division is built of silver and gold and refined gold,<sup>96</sup> and the finest of gold and glass and bdellium, and through the midst of it flows the river Gihon. The wainscoting is of silver and gold, and a perfume breathes through it more exquisite than the perfume of Lebanon. The coverings of the silver and gold beds are made of



purple and blue, woven by Eve, and of scarlet and the hair of goats, woven by angels. Here dwells the Messiah on a palanquin made of the wood of Lebanon, “the pillars thereof of silver, the bottom of gold, the seat of it purple.” With him is Elijah. He takes the head of Messiah, and places it in his bosom, and says to him, “Be quiet, for the end draweth nigh.” On every Monday and Thursday and on Sabbaths and holidays, the Patriarchs come to him, and the twelve sons of Jacob, and Moses, Aaron, David, Solomon, and all the kings of Israel and of Judah, and they weep with him and comfort him, and say unto him, “Be quiet and put trust in thy Creator, for the end draweth nigh.” Also Korah and his company, and Dathan, Abiram, and Absalom come to him on every Wednesday, and ask him: “How long before the end comes full of wonders? When wilt thou bring us life again, and from the abysses of the earth lift us?” The Messiah answers them, “Go to your fathers and ask them;” and when they hear this, they are ashamed, and do not ask their fathers.

In the sixth division dwell those who died in performing a pious act, and in the seventh division those who died from illness inflicted as an expiation for the sins of Israel.<sup>71</sup>

71. PRE 5 (read, with the two last parallel passages, **מקצת**); Tehillim 93, 415; Aguddat Aggadot 7; MHG I, 29. A different version is given in Tehillim 90, 391, which reads: The mountains flew over the waters as birds, whereupon God distributed them in accordance with the nature of the earth. Other legends concerning the origin of the mountains are found on p. 76; see footnote 29 on p. 107. **הרים** in BR 3. 8 is based on an erroneous reading (comp. Theodor, *ad loc.*) and **חדים** is the correct reading, for the Midrash attempts to explain why Gen. 1. 3 reads **יום אחד** “one day,” and not **יום ראשון** “the first day,” a difficulty to which also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, 1, 1, calls attention. See also Hippolytus, *ad loc.*

72. PRE 5; Aguddat Aggadot 7. On the rebellion of the waters compare with pp. 12–13, as well as the following note.

73. Baba Batra 74b; Tan. IV, 97–98; Tan. Hayye Sarah 3 and Hukkat 1; BaR 18. 22; ShR 15. 22; Tehillim 1, 17 (**עירות של ים**); Wa-Yosha' 46; Hagigah 12a (**הים היה מרחיב וכו'**). Compare also with pp. 12–13, 28, and 37 (Leviathan, Rahab, and the angel of death are considered identical), as well as text on p. 557, and Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 7, 25d, where the prince of the sea (**שר של ים**) is mentioned twice. In the Midrashim cited above two entirely different elements are combined: God's strife with Rahab (which is a reminiscence of an old Babylonian myth), taken from the Babylonian Talmud, *loc. cit.*, and the weeping of the waters on account of the separation of the upper and lower waters (a mythological explanation of rain as tears), which is found in the Palestine sources (BR 5. 4 and the Midrashim cited in note 52). The eagerness of the waters to obey God's command is emphasized in PR 192b–193a and WR (according to a quotation from it found in Makiri on Ps. 33, 210) as a protest against the mythological account of the rebellion of the waters. A legend which is also composed of various elements is the one given in Tan. Hayye Sarah, *loc. cit.*, and ShR, *loc. cit.*, where the ocean and the “sea of death” are considered identical (a Babylonian view, comp. KAT 3, 576, note 2), and at the same time it is said that it will be “cured” in the time to come. The last statement is found in the old sources in connection with the Sea of Sodom (compare with footnote 184 on p. 213), which was known to Pausanias and the Church Fathers as the “Dead Sea.” This name is unknown in Jewish sources; hence the above-mentioned Midrash confused the “Dead Sea” of his source—of Christian origin?—with the “Sea of Death” of Babylonian mythology, that is the ocean. In 'Erubin 22b it is supposed that the ocean surrounds the earth (so also Herodotus II, 21 and 23), whereas according to PRE 5, the earth extends over the waters of the abyss as a ship in the midst of the sea. 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 63 speaks of the “Great Sea that encompasses the earth.” This corresponds to 'Erubin, *loc. cit.*, since the designation of “Great Sea” for the ocean is known in rabbinic literature; comp. the explicit statement concerning this identity made in Konen 32, as well as Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 9 and Luria, note 7 on PRE, *loc. cit.*, and the statement (in Sifre D., 39, Mikwaot 5. 4, BR 5. 8) that there is only one sea; the Bible speaks of “seas,” because the sea differs in its peculiarities in different places. The reason why the ocean does not overflow, though all the waters enter into it, is because the salt waters “absorb” the sweet; BR 13. 9; Bekorot 9a; Koheleth 1. 7. A different view is given in Tikkune Zohar (end), which reads: The ocean derives its name (**אוקינוס**) from **אוקי** “he spat out,” because it “spits out” the water or the aquatic animals that come into it. Comp. Kohut's essay in *Jüdische Wochenschrift* II, No. 5, on the ocean according to Jewish sources.—With regard to the strife of the waters, comp. also 4 Ezra 4. 15–17, where it is said that the waves of the sea



took counsel to wage war against the wood of the field that they win more territory; although the wood had been vanquished by fire, the counsel of the waves of the sea did not succeed because the sand kept them within their bounds. This is, however, not a mythological conception, as maintained by many, but a fable; comp. the following note. The reason why the waters of the seas and the abysses did not overflow the earth is due to the fact that God had sealed their boundaries with His name; Prayer of Manasseh 3. For details on this “sealing” compare with p. 606, and text on p. 923.

74. Konen 25, which essentially follows BR 5. 9. Comp. further Sanhedrin 39b; ER 29, 143; Elleh Ezkerah (beginning). It is a legendary application of an old fable, which is already found in Ahikar; comp. Smend, *Alter und Herkunft des Ahikar-Romans*, 77, seq. From Ahikar it was directly or indirectly borrowed by the Greeks; comp. Back, *Monatsschrift* XXV, 132–135, and XXXIII, 267. On the pride of the trees comp. *Tub ha-Arez* 93, which reads: The fruits of the ground thrive even when moistened by the feminine waters (on the sex of the waters compare with p. 147), but not the trees, which, on account of their pride, would not thrive unless moistened by masculine waters. According to PRE 5 and Aguddat Aggadot 7, the plants of paradise were created first and were afterwards utilized for the purpose of the cultivation of the earth. For the opposite view comp. BR 15. 1, which reads: God took cedars of Lebanon, which were not larger than the tentacles of a grasshopper, and planted them in paradise. Compare with footnote 96 on p. 77. The shooting up of the trees is only a special application of the view that the first things in creation were produced in their fully developed form (compare with footnote 21 on p. 58). This view is especially emphasized by Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 13, with reference to plants, which God brought forth out of the ground in their complete form, “as if the earth had been pregnant with them for a long time.” PRE 5 similarly speaks of the pregnancy of the earth, where, in connection with the conception of rain as the consort of the earth (compare with footnote 39 on p. 147), the legitimate fecundation is differentiated from the illegitimate. When the earth is fructified by rain, it is considered a legitimate fecundation, whereas when it is artificially watered, it is an illegitimate fecundation. As to the statement made in PRE concerning the origin of rain, comp. also BR 13. 9–10 and the parallel passages cited by Theodor, where various views are expressed on this point. The view that the clouds drew their water from the ocean, and the objection raised against it, is also found in the Slavonic version of III Baruch 10. 8.

75. Hullin 60a; comp. Back, *Monatsschrift* XXIX, 307, with reference to this talmudic passage. The Palestinian sources, BR 5. 9, and Yerushalmi Kilayim 1, 27b, mention two views: according to one the earth did not follow God's bidding; it only produced edible fruits, but not edible trees, which it was also commanded by God to produce.

On account of this disobedience it was cursed by God after Adam's fall. The opposite view maintains that the earth was so eager to obey God's orders that it went one step further and produced all trees bearing fruit; but after Adam's fall the fertility of the earth was diminished, and it produced barren trees as well; compare with p. 76. “The prince of the world” mentioned in Hullin, *loc. cit.*, bears no relation to the demiurge of the Gnostics, nor to Satan, “the prince of the earth” (John 12. 31, and in many other places of the New Testament), but it signifies, here as elsewhere in rabbinic literature (comp. Index, *s. v.*), the angel in charge of the world, or, to be more accurate, the earth. Comp. Joel, *Blicke*, I, 124–128. The identification of this angel with Metatron in the mystic literature of the gaonic period is not found in talmudic sources. In Ascension of Isaiah 2. 4 “the ruler of the world” is Satan as the prince of the world in the New Testament.

76. Jub. 2. 7; BR 11. 9, 12. 5, 15. 3, 21. 9; 2 Enoch 21. 1. The prevalent view in the rabbinic sources is that paradise was created before the world; comp. Excursus I. In Konen 25 paradise is differentiated from its plants, presupposing that paradise is pre-existent, while the plants were created on the third day. This is an attempt to harmonize two different views.

77. On this gold, comp. Yoma 45a; BaR 11. 3; Tan. B. IV, 33; Tan. Naso 9. In all these passages it is stated that this gold bears fruit. In this and in other accounts of paradise the description of the future Jerusalem and the temple by the prophets is transferred to paradise; for later on paradise was identified with the heavenly Jerusalem. Alphabet 96–97 contains many points which are analogous to the description given in the text, with this essential difference that the reward of the pious is postponed for the future world. As to the site of the earthly paradise, compare with p. 6. The old rabbinic sources hardly contain anything definite on the earthly paradise; but in the pseudographic literature, particularly in the Books of Enoch (comp. Charles' edition, index, *s. v.*) and in later haggadic works a good deal is said about it.

78. According to Baba Batra 75a and PR 38, 163a, there are seven “canopies” given to each pious person.

79. These four streams are frequently mentioned in the legends; comp. 2 Enoch 8. 5; PR 38, 163a; Aggadot Shir 4, 83–84; see also text on p. 124; on p. 508; *Visio Pauli* 23; Koran 47. 16–17. While in the Koran the stream of oil is replaced by a stream of fresh water, it is just this stream of balsam which is frequently alluded to in rabbinic literature; BR 62 (beginning); Ta'anit 25a; Yerushalmi 'Abodah Zarah 3, 42c; Tan. B. II, 131; Bacher, *Agada der palästinensischen Amoräer*, II, 102, note 7; Jeremias, *Babylonisches im NT*, 47. On the wine preserved for the pious, comp. Sanhedrin 99a and Matthew 26. 29; Targum Eccl. 9. 7, where the Midrash given in the text was very likely made use of.



80. This picture is mentioned in the Talmud, Baba Mezi'a 48a, with reference to the beauty of R. Johanan, upon which our source is based; comp. PK 1, 3b.

81. *I. e.*, the branches of this tree extend to the farthest ends of paradise. On the joys of the four different ages, which the pious experience, see Zohar I, 140a, where it is explained allegorically.

82. Instead of מְכִין read מְבִין ("fanning," from נבה "blew"); the variant מְנַשְׁבִּין seems to be an explanation of the difficult מְבִין, which, as a *lectio difficilior*, deserves preference. On the seven clouds of glory see text on p. 542.

83. Compare with text on p. 1002, with reference to the fragrance of paradise. Concerning the "canopies," see note 78.

84. Concerning these worlds see note 30. According to Zohar I, 125a, Eden is situated in the seventh heaven (according to another view, even above the seventh heaven), and paradise is situated on earth directly opposite to it. Comp. Berakot 34b; Sanhedrin 99a: No eye has ever seen Eden, . . . Adam dwelt in the garden (=paradise) of Eden; comp. note 17, end.

85. The divisions of the dwellers in paradise (or Eden?) into seven classes is very frequently met with (Sifre D., 10 and 47; Midrash Tanna'im 6; Tehillim 11, 10, and 16, 128; WR 30. 20; PK 28, 197b; PRK, Schönblum's edition, 36a). In one passage only is the number reduced to three (ARN 43, 120; comp. also note 97). Perhaps the difference of opinion on this point is in some way related to various opinions about the number of the heavens (comp. note 21); each heaven having a separate class of dwellers, the more pious one is, the higher the heaven in which he dwells. It is said in Shir 6. 8 that sixty groups of the pious study the Torah under the shades of the tree of life, while eighty groups of the average men study the Torah within a short distance from that tree. Mention is often made of the habitations, or rather worlds, which every pious man receives according to his merit; comp. Shabbat 152a; Ruth R. 1, 16; PK 4, 75a; Tehillim 34 (end); ShR 42. 2; Koheleth 12. 5; Baba Batra 75a (אחד ואחד שכל); 2 Enoch 61. 2; John 14. 2. This view does not conflict with the division of the pious into classes, since the individual, though being one of a class, does not forfeit his independence.—The honor conferred upon R. Akiba and his colleagues as members of the first, *i. e.*, the foremost division, is already mentioned in Baba Batra 10b.

86. *I. e.*, as martyrs during the religious persecutions; comp. Gittin 57b.

87. Comp. Hagigah 14b where this Rabbi describes his disciples as belonging to the "third division."

88. Under these, the descendants of Moses (compare with p. 1086) are to be understood.

89. In Berakot 34b two views are cited; according to one, those who repent are considered superior to those who have never sinned, while the other view maintains the

opposite case. As to the high esteem in which innocent youths are held, comp. Pesahim 113a. On the study of the Torah under God's guidance, comp. note 194.

90. Perek Gan 'Eden, which is extant in many recensions: Yalkut I, 20 (from a poor text of Yalkut published by Jellinek in BHM II, 52–53, under the wrong title Seder Gan 'Eden); Baraita di-Shemuel 25 (text in manuscript by Rachlin, *Bar Levoi*, New York, 1906, pp. 82–84); Mahzor Vitry 735. Aggadat Shir and Targum Eccl., and probably also Zohar (comp. notes 79 and 81), seem to have made use of this description of paradise. Most of the legends relating to paradise and hell are attributed to R. Joshua b. Levi, who, according to a well-known tradition, already mentioned in the Talmud (Ketubot 77b), was permitted to enter paradise during his life-time. Hence the description of paradise begins: "R. Joshua b. Levi said: There are eighty myriads of trees in every corner of paradise, etc." In Baraita di-Shemuel, after this description of paradise, there follows in a second chapter another description of the seven divisions of the pious in paradise (comp. note 97). The entire tractate is headed Masseket Gan 'Eden. It is, however, quite obvious from the contents that the two descriptions are of different origin. That a description of hell followed the one of paradise is quite probable, and the designation of the latter as Perek Gan 'Eden clearly points to this direction; but the description of hell found in our text of Baraita di-Shemuel 30–32 (published in BHM I, 147–149), from another source, has been artificially attached to that of paradise. One of the descriptions is purely legendary, while the other is midrashic-haggadic; they therefore must be of different origin.

91. These seven divisions are obviously identical with those previously described. There are many other descriptions of these divisions; comp. note 97. Concerning the proselyte Obadiah, compare with p. 1026.

92. The views of the ancient authorities differ on the question whether the "generation of the wilderness" have a portion in the life to come (=paradise); compare with footnote 177 on pp. 591–592.

93. The sentence וְכָל... מֵאֲבָשָׁלוֹם is to be placed after הוּא שָׁם; hence the translation in the text.

94. Read שְׁבַשְׁמִים instead of שְׁמִנִים, and comp. Konen 28. On Chileab compare with p. 473 and text on p. 940. On Menasseh compare with p. 1055. On those who repent, see note 89 and Koheleth 1. 8.

95. Read בְּנוֹי מִשִּׁפָּה וְאֵדָם (=Ezek. 28. 13) instead of the meaningless בְּנוֹי וְיָפָה כְּאֵדָם הָרָאשׁוֹן. Comp. Konen 29. A scribe who misread אֵדָם for אָדָם added הָרָאשׁוֹן.

96. According to Yoma 45a, fine gold (פֶּזֶז) is the third best among the seven kinds of gold, whereas Parvaim gold (comp. note 77, as well as Masseket Kelim 89) is the very best.

97. Ma'aseh de-R. Joshua b. Levi 48–49. This description is partly (not in its entirety, as Jellinek asserts)



incorporated into Konen 28–30, which source is to be used for the establishing of a correct text of Ma'aseh (comp. notes 94–95). Great caution must, however, be taken, since Konen had other sources, along with Ma'aseh, at its disposal for the description of paradise. R. Joshua b. Levi's description of paradise, found in Gaster's *Ma'asiyyot* 96–97, corresponds to ours in the introductory parts only, in which the adventure of this sage with the angel of death is mentioned (according to Ketubot 77b; comp. note 90), but not in the description of paradise proper. Very characteristic is the fact that this source knows only of three halls of paradise, one of glass, for proselytes; one of silver, for the righteous of Israel (instead of מלכי ישראל, p. 97, line 24, read מלכי ישראל); one of gold, in which dwell the three patriarchs and Moses, Aaron, David, “the weeping” Messiah, and Elijah comforting him. On the division of paradise into three, comp. note 85. The most elaborate description of paradise is that given by Jellinek in BHM III, 131–140 (comp. also the additions, 194–198), published under the title of Seder Gan 'Eden. This description has been extensively made use of by kabbalistic authors (comp. Jellinek, *Einleitung und Zusätze*, as well as Zohar I, 41a; III, 167b) who describe it as a part of the Book of Enoch. It, however, shows traces of speculative mysticism (for instance, great emphasis is laid upon the difference between spirit and soul, on the union of the masculine with the feminine souls which result in the productions of new souls, and on many other views of speculative mysticism), and it therefore could not have originated earlier than the end of the twelfth century. The division of the pious into seven classes is also known to this source, but it differs from the divisions found elsewhere (Perek Gan 'Eden 52–53 and Sha'are Gan 'Eden 42–43=Baraita di-Shemuel 28–29; comp. note 90). This source is also acquainted with a portion of paradise assigned to women, who, like the men, are divided into seven classes, each of which is under the supervision of some famous woman from biblical times. These are: Bithiah, the foster-mother of Moses, Jochebed, Miriam, Huldah the prophetess, Abigail, the four matriarchs, Sarah, Rebekah, Rachel, Leah. As nine women are given here as heads of seven divisions, the text must therefore be corrected in accordance with Zohar III, 167b. The distinction drawn here between the garden (=paradise) and Eden is old (comp. note 84 and Sha'are Gan 'Eden, *loc. cit.*, where the dwellers of Eden are divided into twelve classes), but this source expresses this distinction in a different manner. To the old mysticism belongs the conception of the 390 heavens and 18000 worlds (comp. note 30), but this source gives a different interpretation of this mystic doctrine. Quite new is the conception of the secret chamber of the Messiah in paradise which is called here, as well as in Zohar II, 8a, by the peculiar name “bird's nest.” On the whole, the Messiah plays an

important part in this description of the life of the pious in paradise. Old is the view that the pious, particularly the patriarchs and the Messiah, grieve over Israel's suffering, and pray to God for their redemption; Berakot 18b; ShR 15. 26; BaR 19. 15; Tehillim 14, 115; Ekah 2, 11 (in the two last-named passages it is Jacob especially who is most concerned about Israel's suffering); Baba Mezi'a 85b (compare this passage in text on p. 1010); Mahzor Vitry 17; Pardes 54d; Seder Rashi 22; a kabbalistic source in Yalkut Reubeni on Deut. 23. 3; Tosafot on Sotah 34d (caption אבותי), and the passages cited there from the Talmud; see further PR 12, 46b–47a. Whereas Tehillim 30, 234 and 14 (according to the reading of Makiri, *ad. loc.*, 79, bottom), and PR 2, 5b, state that the pious when dead continually praise God, later sources (PR 198a; BHM V, 43; Recanati on Gen. 3. 24; R. Bahya on Exod. 20. 8; Seder Gan 'Eden 138) maintain that on the Sabbath, festivals, and new-moons the dead rise from their graves, behold the Shekinah, and praise the Lord. Comp. also Zohar II, 8a (which very likely depends upon the Seder Gan 'Eden, *loc. cit.*); Yalkut Reubeni Gen. 19. 2; text on p. 789. On Korah compare with pp. 726–727, and text on p. 1021.—R. Joshua b. Levi is also the author of a description of hell which is given in text on pp. 505–506. For further details concerning the description of hell and paradise, comp. Gaster, *Hebrew Version of Hell and Paradise in Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, 1893, pp. 571–611; Rachlin, *Bar Levoi*, 70–86; Landau, *Hölle und Fegfeuer* (Heidelberg, 1909, *passim*). A fragment of a description of paradise is found in *Steinschneider-Festschrift*, Hebrew section, 55–56. Comp. also *Abkat Rokel*, II, 1.

## THE FOURTH DAY

The fourth day of creation produced the sun, the moon, and the stars. These heavenly spheres were not actually fashioned on this day; they were created on the first day, and merely were assigned their places in the heavens on the fourth.<sup>98</sup> At first the sun and the moon enjoyed equal powers and prerogatives.<sup>99</sup> The moon spoke to God, and said: “O Lord, why didst Thou create the world with the letter Bet?” God replied: “That it might be made known unto My creatures that there are two worlds.” The moon: “O Lord, which of the two worlds is the



larger, this world or the world to come?" God: "The world to come is the larger." The moon: "O Lord, Thou didst create two worlds, a greater and a lesser world; Thou didst create the heaven and the earth, the heaven exceeding the earth; Thou didst create fire and water, the water stronger than the fire, because it can quench the fire; and now Thou hast created the sun and the moon, and it is becoming that one of them should be greater than the other." Then spake God to the moon: "I know well, thou wouldst have me make Thee greater than the sun. As a punishment I decree that thou mayest keep but one-sixtieth of thy light." The moon made supplication: "Shall I be punished so severely for having spoken a single word?" God relented: "In the future world I will restore thy light, so that thy light may again be as the light of the sun." The moon was not yet satisfied. "O Lord," she said, "and the light of the sun, how great will it be in that day?" Then the wrath of God was once more enkindled: "What, thou still plottest against the sun? As thou livest, in the world to come his light shall be sevenfold the light he now sheds."<sup>100</sup>

The sun runs his course like a bridegroom. He sits upon a throne with a garland on his head.<sup>101</sup> Ninety-six angels accompany him on his daily journey, in relays of eight every hour, two to the left of him, and two to the right, two before him, and two behind. Strong as he is, he could complete his course from south to north in a single instant, but three hundred and sixty-five angels restrain him by means of as many grappling-irons. Every day one looses his hold, and the sun must thus spend three hundred and sixty-five days on his course. The progress of the sun in his circuit is an uninterrupted song of praise to God. And this song alone makes his motion possible. Therefore, when Joshua wanted to bid the sun stand still, he had to command him to be silent. His song of praise hushed, the sun stood still.<sup>102</sup>

The sun is double-faced; one face, of fire, is directed toward the earth, and one, of hail, toward heaven, to cool off the prodigious heat that streams from the other face, else the earth would catch afire. In winter the sun turns his fiery face upward, and thus the cold is produced.<sup>103</sup> When the sun descends in the west in the evening, he dips down into the ocean and takes a bath, his fire is extinguished, and therefore he dispenses neither light nor warmth during the night. But as soon as he reaches the east in the morning, he laves himself in a stream of flame, which imparts warmth and light to him, and these he sheds over the earth. In the same way the moon and the stars take a bath in a stream of hail before they enter upon their service for the night.<sup>104</sup>

When the sun and the moon are ready to start upon their round of duties, they appear before God, and beseech him to relieve them of their task, so that they may be spared the sight of sinning mankind. Only upon compulsion they proceed with their daily course. Coming from the presence of God, they are blinded by the radiance in the heavens, and they cannot find their way. God, therefore, shoots off arrows, by the glittering light of which they are guided. It is on account of the sinfulness of man, which the sun is forced to contemplate on his rounds, that he grows weaker as the time of his going down approaches, for sins have a defiling and enfeebling effect, and he drops from the horizon as a sphere of blood, for blood is the sign of corruption.<sup>105</sup>

As the sun sets forth on his course in the morning, his wings touch the leaves on the trees of Paradise, and their vibration is communicated to the angels and the holy *Ḥayyot*, to the other plants, and also to the trees and plants on earth, and to all the beings on earth and in heaven. It is the signal for them all to cast their eyes upward. As soon as they see the Ineffable Name, which is engraved in the sun, they raise their voices in songs of praise to God. At the same moment a



heavenly voice is heard to say, "Woe to the sons of men that consider not the honor of God like unto these creatures whose voices now rise aloft in adoration."<sup>106</sup> These words, naturally, are not heard by men, as little as they perceive the grating of the sun against the wheel to which all the celestial bodies are attached, although the noise it makes is extraordinarily loud.<sup>107</sup> This friction of the sun and the wheel produces the motes dancing about in the sunbeams. They are the carriers of healing to the sick,<sup>108</sup> the only health-giving creations of the fourth day, on the whole an unfortunate day, especially for children, afflicting them with disease.<sup>109</sup>

When God punished the envious moon by diminishing her light and splendor, so that she ceased to be the equal of the sun as she had been originally,<sup>110</sup> she fell,<sup>111</sup> and tiny threads were loosed from her body. These are the stars.<sup>112</sup>

---

98. Hagigah 12a. The view that the light created on the first day is identical with that of the heavenly bodies is given as that of the majority of scholars. But there are some who maintain that the light of the first day is entirely different from all the other lights. Compare with p. 5. Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 3–4, asserts that the ideal world was created on the first day (concerning this explanation of the expression **יום אחד** comp. note 71), whereas the material world appeared on the following days. Similarly a Tanna of the middle of the second century asserts: Everything was created on the first day, except that some things appeared earlier and others later; Tan. B. I, 2; BR 12.4; Origen on Gen. 2.2; Ephraim, I, 127C; Basilius *Hexaameron*, 4. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 24. See also Ginzberg's remarks in *R.E.J.*, LXVIII, 148. On the same view by the philosophers of the middle ages, see Horovitz, *Ueber den Einfluss. . . auf den Kalam*, 22, note 2. Compare also with footnote 97 on p. 77.

99. God created the sun and the moon in order to give the lie to the heathen who worship them as deities; had God only created one of them, the heathen would have apparently had good reason for adoring it. Similarly Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 14–15; Theophilus 2. 15; Tadshe (beginning), which reads: God first created the plant world and then the heavenly bodies, in order that it should not be said that the latter produced the former; compare also with

p. 13, where the same idea is expressed with reference to the angels.

100. Konen 25–26, which is based on older sources, comp. BR 6. 3; Hullin 60b; Shebu'ot 9a (the sacrifice of atonement on the new-moon is God's acknowledgement that He dealt too severely with the moon); PRE 4 and 51; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 1. 16 and Num. 28. 15. These sources, as well as others (Mekilta Bo 1, 3a; PK 5, 54a, PR 15, 78a; Tan. B. II, 47), also speak of the compensation received by the moon for its reduction in size: it became a symbol of Israel and the pious, whereas the sun represents Esau and the ungodly. Moreover the moon is sometimes seen also by day while the sun on the other hand is never seen by night. A reminiscence of the mythological conception of the diminution of the moon (the rationalistic explanation of the Haggadah by Back, *Monatsschrift* XXIX, 226, *seq.*, must not be taken seriously) as a punishment for its rebellious conduct toward God may be found in Enoch 18. 15, where mention is made of the chastisement of the stars which "did not come at their appointed times." This corresponds to the reproach administered to the moon, mentioned in BR, *loc. cit.*, for having encroached upon the province of its colleague (=the sun), *i.e.*, for having shone during the day. The myth sought to explain the appearance of the moon by day, which, owing to the superiority of the sun over it, was rather baffling to the primitive mind. Hullin, *loc. cit.*, as well as the later addition in BR (**אני הוא שגרמתי**), does not present the myth in its original form.—That the sun and moon are endowed with wisdom and passion like man is originally a mythological conception which had been maintained for a long time by Jews and Christians. On this conception in pseudepigraphic literature and Philo, comp. Psalms of Solomon, end (the prayer at the appearance of the new-moon, **קדוש לבנה**, in present use, which is already found in Sanhedrin 42a, partly corresponds to this psalm); Apocalypse of Baruch 48. 9; Enoch 2, 1–5, 3 (it is more than a poetic description of the order reigning in nature and the lack of order displayed by man); Philo, *De Plant. Noe*, 3; *De Somn.* 1, 4 and 2, 16. On the rabbinic sources containing this view, comp., besides the passages referred to at the beginning of this note, also those cited in notes 102, 104, 105, 112. For the Christian sources, see Origen, I, 7; *Visio Pauli* 4–6. Like the heavenly bodies, even so the earth, the plants, in short, all existing things, were conceived more or less by analogy to man; comp. note 193.—Concerning the motions of the heavenly bodies, the Books of Enoch, as well as the old rabbinic sources, contain a good deal of material which is on the boundary line of mythology and astronomy; comp. Pesahim 94a; Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 2, 58a; Baba Batra 25a; PK 29, 186a–186b; ER 2, 9–10; Hallel 89; Shir 3. 11; see also the two writings Baraita di-Shemuel and Baraita di-Mazzalot, which are entirely devoted to this subject. Old material



is found also in Razi'el, which is particularly instructive for the history of astrology. Of interest is "the case" in which the disc of the sun is inserted (*ναρθήκιον* נרתיק "case"), a conception often mentioned in old rabbinic literature as well as in the writings of the Persians and Arabs (comp. Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 145–146). It is noteworthy that this "case" is known in rabbinic sources (BR 6. 6; Koheleth 1. 5; PK 29, 186a; Nedarim 8b; 'Abodah Zarah 3b; Tehillim 19, 168 and 170; Tan. B. II, 98; Tan. Tezaweh 8; Hallel 89; Baraita de-Ma'aseh Bereshit 50) by the Greek word נרתיק —Concerning the darkness of the sun and the moon, which occupied the minds of the ancients, comp. Mekilta Bo 1. 3a; Tosefta Sukkah 2. 6 and Babli 29a; Derek Erez 2; Nispahim 10; see also the references in note 112, and Index s. v. "Eclipse." The view that the light of the sun is seven times as intense as that of the moon (Enoch 72. 37, 73. 2, and 78. 4, as well as 2 Enoch 11,2) is based on Is. 30. 26. This opinion is also shared by the legend given in the text in accordance with Konen 24–25 concerning the restoration of the light of the moon and the sevenfold increase of the light of the sun in the future. The old midrashic sources (Midrash Tannaim 181; ShR 15. 21; Targum, *ad loc.*), however, conceive the passage of Is., *loc. cit.*, in a different manner, and according to them the relationship between the light of the sun and that of the moon is 1: 49 or 1: 343. That the sun and the moon had been of equal size, as stated by Enoch 72. 37, is not stated explicitly in rabbinic literature, but the legend given in the text implies it. Similar is the view of modern scientists that the moon was originally an independent planet; comp. See, *Researches*, II. Like all first things created (compare with p. 58), the moon was created in a fully developed form, so that there was full moon on the fourth day of creation; Seder 'Olam 4.

101. PRE 6; Baraita de-Ma'aseh Bereshit 50. The metaphor of the sun as bridegroom is, of course, taken from Ps. 19. 6. It is, however, questionable whether the crown and the wreath (in Hebrew these two things are represented by one word) belong to this conception. The wreath of the bridegroom is Jewish (comp. Sotah 9. 14) but the wreath of the sun may have been borrowed from the Greeks, as the Jews have often seen the image of the sun-god wreathed. The Greek Apocalypse of Baruch knows of the crown of the sun, as well as of its chariot; so also Enoch 75. 8; 2 Enoch 11. 2. Many of the rabbinic sources cited above employ the word מרכבה "chariot," which is, however, rendered "throne," in order to retain the picture of the bridegroom.

102. MHG I, 41–42; PRE 6; Tehillim 19, 168–170; Baraita de-Ma'aseh Bereshit 50; Koheleth 86; 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 64; Zohar Hadash on Gen. 4, 19b; 2 Enoch 11. 4; Greek Apocalypse of Baruch 6. Compare also with p. 124. The song of praise of the heavenly bodies is partly based on Ps. 19, but presupposes also an acquaintance with the

Pythagorean doctrine (perhaps of oriental origin) of the music of the spheres. The original text of Enoch 41. 7 very likely read *והם מודים ומפארים ושבחו אם לא ישבחו*: "And they give thanks and they glorify; they would cease to exist if they would not praise." In consequence of the similarity between the letters ת and ח, the translator was misled into making the text say just the opposite. With regard to the music of the spheres, Philo, *De Car.*, 3, refers to it in the very words which remind one of the anonymous Midrash quoted in *Hadar*, Deut. 32. 1. Comp. also DR 10. 1 and 2; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 729. See further text on pp. 44, *seq.* The song of praise of the sun and moon did not strike the naïve mind as strange, in view of the fact that the surfaces of these luminaries resemble the human countenance; comp. R. Benjamin b. Zerah (about 1050) in his piyyut *אלהינו אלהים אמת* in the Roman and German Mahzor (comp. Zunz, *Literaturgeschichte*, 121), who undoubtedly made use of a version of Midrash Konen different from ours, but which Treves still had before him in his commentary on the Roman Mahzor entitled *Kimha Da-bishuna, ad loc.* The human countenance of the sun is also referred to in the Greek Apocalypse of Baruch 6. Comp. also the preceding note as well as note 112 and footnote 6 on p. 841.

103. PRE 6; Baraita de-Ma'aseh Bereshit. See also 2 Enoch 37. 2. In the Midrashim (BR 5. 6; Koheleth 1. 5; Tehillim 19, 170; Baraita de-Ma'aseh Bereshit, *loc. cit.*) it is said that the sun is led through a stream, which is put up for that purpose in heaven, before it starts its revolution, to cool off its heat; otherwise it might consume the earth.

104. PRE 51 and 6; Baraita de-Ma'aseh Bereshit 50. The moon and the stars have light but no heat, and hence the "bath of hail." On the stream of fire in which the sun bathes, comp. also Enoch 17. 4 and Baba Batra 84a. The latter passage reads: The sun passes paradise in the morning and hell in the evening. Dawn is a reflection of the roses of paradise; the evening twilight of the fire of hell. The stream of fire in which the sun bathes, is identical with the Nehar di-Nur; comp. Luria on PRE 51 and note 62.

105. WR 31. 9; Tehillim 19, 169; ER 2, 11; MHG I, 42; Alphabetot 118; Baraita de-Ma'aseh Bereshit 50. Quite similar is the statement of the Greek Apocalypse of Baruch 8 to the effect that the angels remove the crown of the sun in the evening, bring it to heaven, and "renew" it there (the "renewing" of creation every day is also alluded to in the morning prayer, at the end of Yotzer, comp. note 6), because the sun and its rays are becoming defiled on earth. With regard to the compulsory motion of the heavenly bodies, which do not wish to shed their light upon a sinful world, compare with text on pp. 666–724; text on p. 1080. In *Visio Pauli* 4–6, the sun, moon, stars, and the sea implore God to grant them the power to destroy the sinners. There is a widespread view, which is based on Deut. 31. 28, to the effect that the earth, the heaven, and the



heavenly bodies bear witness for and against man, according to his actions; comp. Enoch 1. 7; Sifre D., 306; 'Abodah Zarah 3a. The following legend is quoted by many medieval authors (Mahzor Vitry 373; Zohar III, 275a; *Sefer Mizvot Gadol*, 42nd positive precept; Kaneh in Yalkut Reubeni I, 16, 8b) from an unknown midrashic source which reads: Whenever Satan brings accusations against Israel on the New Year, the day when God sits down to judge the whole universe, God commands him to produce witnesses in support of his accusations. But he can only secure one witness on that day, the sun, because the moon is invisible at that time; but when Satan appears ten days later, on the Day of Atonement, with his second witness, he is informed by the Lord that Israel repented of their sins during the ten days of penitence and that they were pardoned. Satan fares still worse in the legend given in PR 45, 185b–186a, according to which, while Satan is searching for more sins, God removes sins from the balance in which the good and evil deeds are weighed. On the appearance of the heavenly bodies, before and after their daily course, before God, comp. Baba Batra 25a and text on p. 617.

106. Zohar Hadash Bereshit 4, 23a (on Gen. 2. 8); that God's name is engraved in the sun is already mentioned in PRE 6, as well as in the Baraita de-Ma'aseh Bereshit 50; whereas according to the Greek Apocalypse of Baruch 6, the bird running before the sun (compare with p. 34) bears on its body an inscription of golden letters. In the old Midrashim (Tan. B. II, 112; Kinyan Torah; introduction to Ekah 2; Tan. Ki-Tissa 16; PK 15, 121a; ShR 41. 6) it is said that a heavenly voice proclaims daily on mount Horeb: "Woe to mankind for contempt of the Torah." The revelation which took place on Sinai-Horeb is a constant accusation against mankind for not walking in God's path, despite the Torah that was given to them. Similarly the daily appearance of the sun also is a constant accusation against the sinners who do not recognize their Creator.

107. BR 6. 7; ShR 5. 9; Koheleth Z. 86; Shemuel 9, 74; Yoma 20b–21a; PRE 34. On the grating of the sun against its wheel, comp. Sachs, *Beiträge*, I, 50; Perles, *Ety-mologische Studien*, 72; Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 145. This has nothing to do with the music of the spheres, despite the statement of Maimonides, *Guide of the Perplexed*, II, 8, and Zohar Hadash Bereshit 4 (caption "שמעון ר' תני"). The old Jewish sources are not acquainted with the conception of the music of the spheres; comp. note 102. As to the noises which resound throughout the universe but are nevertheless inaudible to man, a good deal more is mentioned in the sources just quoted. These noises are at the birth and death of man, at the first sexual intercourse, as well as at the time of divorce, the felling of a fruitful tree and the sloughing of the skin of a serpent, the falling of rain (Yoma *loc. cit.*, reads more accurately: the roaring of the taurine angel when he causes the water from the lower

abyss to be poured into the upper abyss; comp. Ta'anit 25b; Baraita de-Ma'aseh Bereshit 49; Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 10; *Responsen der Geonim*, Harkavy's edition, No. 289. p. 142); finally there resounds out of Rome such a loud voice, that were it not for the grating of the sun, it would have been audible all over the world. In these sources mythological conceptions, as, for instance, the roaring of the taurine angel of the abyss, which is merely the Jewish recast of the Babylonian belief about the god "Ea," are found side by side with purely poetical images. As to the loud voice which resounds at the time of a divorce, comp. Index s. v. "Divorce." See also text on p. 56.

108. Nedarim 8b; Yoma 20b, which reads: These notes are named לא "la" in Aramaic, according to which לה (Dan. 4. 32) is explained. On the grating of the sun, comp. Löw in *Orientalische Literaturzeitung*, XV, 305.

109. Yerushalmi Ta'anit 4, 68b; Babli 27b; Soferim 7. 5. One should not go out of doors on Wednesday night (*i.e.*, on Wednesday eve, for according to the Jewish conception the day belongs to the preceding night) because the demon Agrat the daughter of Mahlat (=מחלת; the transliteration is doubtful, and Kohut's Persian etymology in *Angelologie*, 88, is certainly untenable) with her eighteen myriads of malicious throngs come out on this night (also on Saturday night) to inflict evil on man. See Pesahim 111a and 112b; PRK (Grünhut's edition) 73; BaR 12. 3. Comp. further Sifra 26. 4; Geiger, *Kebuzzat Maamarim*, 167, and Ginzberg's note in the supplement. In the middle ages Monday (compare with pp. 12–13) and Wednesday were considered as unlucky days, and there is an accepted rule "מתחילין בב' ד' אין" "one should not begin any undertaking on Monday or Wednesday." Brüll, *Jahrbücher*, IX, 5 (comp. also *ibid.*, 66), accepts the explanation found in a manuscript, according to which the belief is due to the fact that ב' in Persian signifies "bad;" but this explanation is rather far-fetched.

110. Compare with pp. 23–24.

111. It is not on earth but in heaven where the moon slipped in its terror of the punishment which was pronounced.

112. *Hadar* on Gen. 1. 16, which cites an unknown midrashic source; *Toledot Yizhak* on Gen., *loc. cit.*, which is very likely based on *Hadar*. According to this legend, the word כוכבים "stars" is connected with the word כבה "was extinguished;" the light of the moon was dimmed because some of her parts fell off. On the etymology of שמש "sun," ירח and טהר "moon," see Koenen 25–26. The text of this passage is to be corrected in accordance with Zohar Hadash Bereshit 4, 19b: שמש=שמש "servant of man." Jellinek emended it correctly without having known the parallel passage.—In the legends concerning the sun, moon, and the stars it is presupposed that these luminaries are endowed with consciousness and intelligence. This idea, as



pointed out in note 100, was so widespread among the ancients that Maimonides, *Guide of the Perplexed*, II, 5 (comp. also *Yad ha-Hazakah*, *Yesode ha-Torah*, 3. 9), was justified in referring to the Haggadah as support for his doctrine which he borrowed from the Greeks, that the heavenly bodies were endowed with intelligence. Philo, *De Plan. Noe*, 3 and *De Somn.*, 4, likewise calls attention to the agreement among the Jews and the Greeks concerning this view. It should, however, be observed that in the liturgy, at least as far as the old prayers are concerned, the conception of the heavenly bodies as intelligent or animate beings is entirely ignored, though the opportunity has frequently presented itself to make use of this idea, as, for instance, in the morning and evening prayer, in the passages of Yozer and Ma'arib 'Arabim. On the passages in pseud-epigraphic literature stating that the heavenly bodies are endowed with life and senses, comp. note 100, as well as Enoch 41. 5, and the passages cited by Charles. Not only Enoch 18. 13–16, but also the Talmud (Mo'ed Katan 16a) speaks of "rebellious" stars; compare also with p. 868, on Meroz (Jud. 5. 23). On the eclipse of the moon and sun comp. note 100. See further Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 19, and Steinschneider in *Magazin für Literatur d. Auslands*, 1845, No. 80. Concerning the material of which the sun and moon were made very little is found in the Haggadah; according to Kohen 25 the moon consists of light, the sun of fire. The statement made in the Greek Apocalypse of Baruch 9 to the effect that the moon has the likeness of a woman (in the original myth she must have been the wife of the sun) is unknown in Jewish sources. On the human form of the moon, however, see note 102. Comp. further Index, s. v. "Man in the Moon."

## THE FIFTH DAY

On the fifth day of creation God took fire<sup>113</sup> and water, and out of these two elements He made the fishes of the sea.<sup>114</sup> The animals in the water are much more numerous than those on land. For every species on land, excepting only the weasel, there is a corresponding species in the water, and, besides, there are many found only in the water.<sup>115</sup>

The ruler over the sea-animals is leviathan.<sup>116</sup> With all the other fishes he was made on the fifth day.<sup>117</sup> Originally he was created male and female like all the other animals. But when it

appeared that a pair of these monsters might annihilate the whole earth with their united strength, God killed the female.<sup>118</sup> So enormous is leviathan that to quench his thirst he needs all the water that flows from the Jordan into the sea.<sup>119</sup> His food consists of the fish which go between his jaws of their own accord.<sup>120</sup> When he is hungry, a hot breath blows from his nostrils, and it makes the waters of the great sea seething hot. Formidable though behemoth, the other monster, is, he feels insecure until he is certain that leviathan has satisfied his thirst.<sup>121</sup> The only thing that can keep him in check is the stickleback, a little fish which was created for the purpose, and of which he stands in great awe.<sup>122</sup> But leviathan is more than merely large and strong; he is wonderfully made besides. His fins radiate brilliant light, the very sun is obscured by it,<sup>123</sup> and also his eyes shed such splendor that frequently the sea is illuminated suddenly by it.<sup>121</sup> No wonder that this marvellous beast is the plaything of God, in whom He takes His pastime.<sup>124</sup>

There is but one thing that makes leviathan repulsive, his foul smell, which is so strong that if it penetrated thither, it would render Paradise itself an impossible abode.<sup>125</sup>

The real purpose of leviathan is to be served up as a dainty to the pious in the world to come. The female was put into brine as soon as she was killed, to be preserved against the time when her flesh will be needed.<sup>126</sup> The male is destined to offer a delectable sight to all beholders before he is consumed. When his last hour arrives, God will summon the angels to enter into combat with the monster. But no sooner will leviathan cast his glance at them than they will flee in fear and dismay from the field of battle. They will return to the charge with swords, but in vain, for his scales can turn back steel like straw. They will be equally unsuccessful when they attempt to kill him by throwing darts and slinging stones; such missiles will rebound without leaving the least



impression on his body. Disheartened, the angels will give up the combat, and God will command leviathan and behemot to enter into a duel with each other. The issue will be that both will drop dead, behemot slaughtered by a blow of leviathan's fins, and leviathan killed by a lash of behemot's tail. From the skin of leviathan God will construct tents to shelter companies of the pious while they enjoy the dishes made of his flesh. The amount assigned to each of the pious will be in proportion to his deserts, and none will envy or begrudge the other his better share. What is left of leviathan's skin will be stretched out over Jerusalem as a canopy, and the light streaming from it will illumine the whole world, and what is left of his flesh after the pious have appeased their appetite, will be distributed among the rest of men, to carry on traffic therewith.<sup>127</sup>

On the same day with the fishes, the birds were created, for these two kinds of animals are closely related to each other. Fish are fashioned out of water, and birds out of marshy ground saturated with water.<sup>128</sup>

As leviathan is the king of fishes, so the ziz is appointed to rule over the birds.<sup>129</sup> His name comes from the variety of tastes his flesh has; it tastes like this, *zeh*, and like that, *zeh*.<sup>130</sup> The ziz is as monstrous of size as leviathan himself. His ankles rest on the earth, and his head reaches to the very sky.<sup>131</sup>

It once happened that travellers on a vessel noticed a bird. As he stood in the water, it merely covered his feet, and his head knocked against the sky. The onlookers thought the water could not have any depth at that point, and they prepared to take a bath there. A heavenly voice warned them: "Alight not here! Once a carpenter's axe slipped from his hand at this spot, and it took it seven years to touch bottom." The bird the travellers saw was none other than the ziz.<sup>132</sup> His wings are so huge that unfurled they darken the sun.<sup>133</sup> They protect the earth against the

storms of the south; without their aid the earth would not be able to resist the winds blowing thence.<sup>134</sup> Once an egg of the ziz fell to the ground and broke. The fluid from it flooded sixty cities, and the shock crushed three hundred cedars. Fortunately such accidents do not occur frequently. As a rule the bird lets her eggs slide gently into her nest. This one mishap was due to the fact that the egg was rotten, and the bird cast it away carelessly. The ziz has another name, Renanim,<sup>135</sup> because he is the celestial singer.<sup>136</sup> On account of his relation to the heavenly regions he is also called Sekwi, the seer, and, besides, he is called "son of the nest,"<sup>137</sup> because his fledgling birds break away from the shell without being hatched by the mother bird; they spring directly from the nest, as it were.<sup>138</sup> Like leviathan, so ziz is a delicacy to be served to the pious at the end of time, to compensate them for the privations which abstaining from the unclean fowls imposed upon them.<sup>139</sup>

---

113. Konen 26, where **אש** should probably be read instead of **אור**; comp., however, Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 114, note 2, as well as PRE 9.

114. Konen 26. On the three elements, light, fire, and water, by the combination of which all the heavenly and earthly bodies have been formed, comp. Konen 24.

115. Hullin 127a; Yerushalmi Shabbat 14, 14c; Te-hillim 104, 445; PR 23, 117a. The creation of the sea shows God's might as much as that of all the other creatures taken together. Similarly God's power is manifested in the creation of Leviathan as in that of all the other creatures taken together. See Mekilta Bahodesh 7, 69b (read **שהים** instead of **שהים**), and Mekilta RS, 109.

116. Midrash Jonah 98; compare also with p. 37, and p. 1033, as well as Mekilta RS, 109. A vast collection of passages from rabbinic literature, which treat of Leviathan, is given by I. Löw in *Judaica* (Cohen-Festschrift, Berlin, 1912), 338–340. Comp. also Löw in *Orientalische Studien*, 555; Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 127–130.

117. Baba Batra 74b; BR 7. 4; Konen 26; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 1. 20. In all these passages, **תניני** (Gen., *loc. cit.*) is identified with Leviathan (so BR 11. 9, and the parallel passages cited by Theodor, *ad loc.*). **תנין** is indeed the proper word for Leviathan, since by looking at it man



is induced to relate (=תנן) God's wonders. Comp. Lekah, Gen., *loc. cit.* According to another view תנינים means the "sea-gazelle;" comp. Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*, and note 132.

118. Baba Batra 74b; Zohar II, 108b. Konen 26 mentions the creation of the female Leviathan, but not its slaying; it thus assumes the existence of a pair of these monsters which have no sexual desire, so that they do not multiply. This is explicitly stated in BR 7. 4 with reference to Behemoth; this source quotes the dissenting view that neither Leviathan nor Behemoth exists as a "pair." In Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*, however, it is stated that God not only slew the female, but also castrated the male. Comp. also Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 1. 20. The Leviathan "pair" may be compared with the Babylonian myth concerning Tiamat and her only mate Kingu, according to which the latter is vanquished by Marduk and made harmless, while the former is slain.

119. Baba Batra 74b. The Midrashim (PK 6, 58; PR 16, 81a; WR 22. 9; BaR 21. 18; Tan. Pinehas 6) describe, in still more glowing colors, the enormous quantities of water needed by Behemoth, and quote a view according to which a river comes out from paradise in order to quench the thirst of this monster. Comp. note 142.

120. PK 29, 188a; Baba Batra 74b; Midrash Jonah 98; PRE 9. Compare with p. 37; text on. p. 1033.

121. Baba Batra 74b–75a. Comp. also the Midrashim cited in note 119.

122. Shabbat 77b; PRK (Grünhut's edition) 74; Iggeret Ba'ale Hayyim 3, 12. According to I. Löw, *Orientalische Studien*, 565, כלכית which causes terror to the Leviathan, is the Greek χαλκίς "lizard."

123. PK 29, 188a. Compare also with p. 29, with regard to the illuminating canopy over the heads of the pious made of the hide of Leviathan. The clothes of the first "human couple" which were "garments of light," were made of the hide of the female Leviathan (comp. Index, *s. v.* "Adam, Garments of"). Comp. the unknown Midrash in *Hadar* and *Da'at* (מנחת יהודה) on Gen. 3. 21. In the Babylonian myths of creation the heavens are formed of the upper parts of the body of Tiamat.

124. 'Abodah Zarah 3b; PRE 9; Midrash Jonah 98; Hasidim 476. Comp. further Septuagint and Targum on Ps. 104. 26, both of which understand this passage to say (very likely on the basis of Job 40. 27, as already remarked by Rashi on Ps., *loc. cit.*, which escaped the notice of Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze* 128) that God sports with Leviathan. In 'Abodah Zarah, *loc. cit.*, the following account is given of God's occupation during the twelve hours of the day. He studies the Torah during the first three hours; He judges the world for three hours; during the next three hours He provides for the needs of all living creatures; the last three hours He spends sporting with Leviathan. This Haggadah is allegorically explained in ER 2, 61–62, where Leviathan is taken symbolically to represent the power of the

heathen (comp. Tehillim 104, 445). It is accordingly stated there that nothing pleases God so much as the failure of the designs of the heathen against Him (comp. Ps. 2. 1–4). On the plan of God's daily occupation comp. further ER 17, 84; 18, 90; 26, 130; 31, 162. On Leviathan=evil, comp. note 127, end.

125. Baba Batra 75a, which literally reads: If Leviathan were not to put his head into paradise and become perfumed by its fragrance, no creature could exist on account of the awful odor he emits. This statement has nothing to do with the medieval legend concerning the offensive odor of the devil, but it is related to the ancient identification of Leviathan with the sea. The latter has an offensive odor. Compare with text on p. 557.

126. Baba Batra 74b, where a reason is given why the female monster and not the male was put to death. Comp. note 118 and the following note.

127. PK 29, 188a–188b; Baba Batra 75a; Alphabet 98. The contest between the angels and the monsters is variously described in the sources quoted above, and especially noteworthy is the description of Alphabetot. Gabriel receives the order from God to drag out Leviathan from the Great Sea (=Ocean, or the Mediterranean Sea; comp. Baba Batra 74b and note 73), for which purpose the angel provides himself with the necessary implements. He succeeds in hooking Leviathan, but is swallowed up in his attempt to drag him out on dry land. Whereupon God Himself is obliged to seize Leviathan, and He slays him in the presence of the pious. Then Michael and Gabriel are sent against the male and female Behemoth, but being unable to carry out God's command (this is the way the fragmentary text is to be emended), He Himself is then obliged to accomplish it. For further details concerning Leviathan and Behemoth, comp. Pirke Mashiah, 76; BHM VI. 150; WR 13. 3; Kalir in the piyyut ויכון עולם (end of *Lamentations* in Roman Mahzor), who made use of old sources which are no longer extant, in his description of the two monsters and of their contest which ends with the annihilation of both. Compare further with pp. 29 and 33 with reference to Ziz and Behemoth. It is noteworthy that the tannaitic literature does not contain anything concerning Leviathan and Behemoth (the remark in Sifra 11. 10 that Leviathan is a clean fish has hardly anything to do with the view that it will be eaten at the Messianic banquet, comp. also Hullin 67b and note 139, beginning), nor concerning the Messianic banquet. The word used in Abot 3. 25 need not be taken literally, as may be seen from Tosetfa Sanhedrin 8. 9. Only in post-tannaitic literature, especially in later Midrashim, does the Messianic banquet play a great part. Comp., besides the sources already quoted, Nistarot R. Simeon 80; BHM V, 45–46; VI, 47; Alphabet R. Akiba 33. Compare also with pp. 938–939 and 1033. Luzatto, in his notes on the Roman Mahzor II, 212b, correctly



remarked that the legend about the Messianic banquet wants to convey the view that this will be the last feast, after which the pure spiritual life will begin, when there will be no bodily needs or pleasures. Those who interpret the Leviathan-Behemoth legends allegorically conceive the Messianic banquet in a spiritual sense. Comp. further below. Targum Yerushalmi Num. 11. 26 reads: And they will enjoy the good things which were prepared for them in the pristine times. This is not to be translated, as is done by Bousset, *Religion*, 327: And they will. . . to enjoy the meat of the steer. This mistranslation is due to the fact that Bousset incorrectly read תורא for טובא. Comp. also note 79 with regard to the wine of the Messianic banquet. The pseud-epigraphic literature already knows the essential elements of the highly developed Leviathan-Behemoth legends found in the later Midrashim. In Enoch 60.7–10 it is asserted, in agreement with BR 7.4, that Leviathan and Behemoth (alluding to Job 40. 20 and Ps 50. 10–11, Behemoth was described in the Hebrew text of Enoch as בהמות שדה, which the translator, however, misunderstood and instead of שדה “field,” i.e., “the dry land,” has שדה “his breast”) were created on the fifth day, and of these two the former was the female and the latter the male. But they were separated (compare with p. 28, with regard to the female of the Leviathan), the male monster, Behemoth, received the desert Dudel, Enoch 10. 4; that the latter is situated in the proximity of Jerusalem, the former east of paradise, cannot be urged as an objection to this identification, as the holy city is east of paradise; comp. PRE 20 20, beginning. See further notes 119 and 141 on the habitation of Behemoth in the proximity of paradise), whereas the female Leviathan lives in the depth of the sea. Both, however (verse 24), will serve as food (for the pious; but the text is not very clear here). In 4 Ezra 6. 49–52, Enoch is made use of, but at the same time an attempt is made to explain how it happens that the male monster Behemoth lives on the dry land, while his mate, Leviathan, is in the water. The mates of Leviathan and Behemoth are spoken of in rabbinic sources (comp. note 118). Nowhere, however (Targum Yerushalmi I, 21, is based on Baba Batra 74b, and does not maintain, as Gunkel, *Schöpfung und Chaos*, p. 54, incorrectly asserts, that Behemoth is the wife of Leviathan), is the idea expressed that both monsters are “a mated pair”; nor does it occur in BR 7. 4; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 16. The Apocalypse of Baruch 29. 4 knows of the legend that both monsters are destined to be the food of the pious in the time to come, but does not offer any additional information on the subject. The Apocalypse of Abraham 10 speaks of Leviathans (i.e., the male and female monsters), which the archangel Jaol holds in check; in another passage (21; the text is not quite clear) Leviathan and his possession are spoken of, where, perhaps, the Leviathan

and his mate should be read. In case this apocalyptic work was originally composed in Hebrew, the present text can easily be explained as being due to the translator’s confusion of קנייתו=קנייתו “his mate” with קנינו=קנינו “his possession.” Comp. Kiddushin 6a, where instead of the reading קנייה, as is found in our texts, we should read, with the Geonim in *Sha’are Zedek* 17a, No. 4, קנייתו=קנייתו “my mate.” In the last passage of the Apocalypse referred to above the remark is made that the world rests upon Leviathan. This shows the high antiquity of the similar statement found in rabbinic sources; PRE 9; Konen 26; ‘Aseret ha-Dibrot 63; Baraita de-Ma’aseh Bereshit 47 (the whole world, as well as the “Great Sea” which compasses it, rests on four pillars, and these pillars rest on one of the fins of Leviathan); Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 9; Zohar III, 279. Comp. also the numerous quotations from Kabbalistic writings by Luria on PRE, *loc. cit.*, as well as Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 19, where a quotation from a New Testament apocrypha is given concerning the “divos pisces (i.e., Leviathan and his mate) jacentes super aquas . . . tenentes totam terram.” Rather obscure is the statement of Jerome on Is. 27. 1 that, according to a *Judaica Fabula*, the monster spoken of by the prophet lives under the ground and in the air, whereas the monsters mentioned in Gen. 1. 21 have their habitation in the sea. As an explanation of these obscure words of Jerome, attention should be called to the fact that next to the view mentioned above which sees in Leviathan a monster which encircles the whole earth, there is also another which identifies him with the vault of heaven to which the signs of the Zodiac are affixed. Comp. the quotation from PRE by Kimhi on Is., *loc. cit.*; Kalir, *loc. cit.* (it has 365 eyes=days of the year); Kaneh 30c and 32c–32d; Rokeah in the commentary on Yezirah 14c. Comp. also Harkavy תלי אתליא in the Hebrew periodical *Ben Ammi*, January 1887, 27–35. That Leviathan was not identical with the תנינים mentioned in Gen., *loc. cit.*, is also presupposed by the Haggadah which asserts that Leviathan was created first (this is based on Job 40. 19, which rather applies to Behemoth; thus the two monsters are taken to be a “pair;” comp. above), and afterwards the rest of the world. Comp. Ibn Ezra’s introduction to his commentary on the Pentateuch, and פרוש על איוב ed. Sulzbach, Job, *loc. cit.* All these legends concerning Leviathan and Behemoth point to the fact, which has already been observed by several authors (comp. especially Gunkel, *Schöpfung und Chaos*, 41–69), that a good deal of old mythological material has been preserved in them. Nevertheless one must not look exclusively for Babylonian myths, and one is not warranted to identify, on the basis of Enoch, *loc. cit.*, Behemoth and Leviathan with Tiamat and Kingu, respectively, of the Babylonian mythology, since not only the rabbinic sources but also Job 40 clearly describes Behemoth as a land monster. It may therefore be said that Behemoth belongs



to quite another cycle of myths, but owing to learned combinations, the pseudepigraphic authors made it the consort of Leviathan, whereas the rabbinic sources retain the original conception of it as a land monster. The allegorical interpretation of the Leviathan-Behemoth legends originated at a very early date, and is found not only among the Gnostics (comp. the Jewish gnostic Apocalypse of Abraham, *loc. cit.*, and Hippolytus 5. 21, on Leviathan as a bad angel in the system of Justinus), but also in rabbinic sources. Comp. ER 2, 61–62 (partly quoted in note 124); *Guide of the Perplexed*, III, 23; Kimhi on Is. 27. 1, and particularly in kabbalistic literature in which Leviathan is identified with “Evil” which will disappear in Messianic times, when the righteous as purely spiritual beings like the angels, will enjoy life in paradise. See *Ma’areket* 8, 102–103b; *Nefesh ha-Hayyim* 1, 17; the numerous passages cited from Zohar by Heilpern, *’Erke ha-Kinnuyim*, s. v. *לוייתן*. See also the remark of R. David b. R. Judah he-Hasid in *Shitah Mekubbetz* on Baba Batra 75a. On Leviathan as the serpent encircling the world, compare with Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 129, and footnote 275 on p. 304.

128. Hullin 27b; PK 4, 35a; Tan. B. IV, 112 (the feet of the hen therefore resemble the scales of the fish); Tan. Hukkat 6; BaR 19. 3; Koheleth 7. 23; Konen 26. Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 20, finds the relationship between birds and fishes in that these two kinds of animals swim, the former in the air (*ὑψχεῖν* “to swim” may also be used for the flight of birds), the latter in the water. On the view of PRE 9 concerning the origin of birds and fishes, comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 114. See further Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 1. 20.

129. The name Ziz is derived from Ps. 50. 11 (*שדי* *שדי*), which is taken by the Haggadah as a proper name. Johann Heinrich Wolfius wrote a monograph on Ziz under the title “*Dissertatio de port-entosae magnitudinis ave שדי שדי*,” which appeared in Leipzig, 1683.

130. WR 22. 10; Tehillim 80, 363. Comp. further PK 6, 58a; PR 16, 81a; Tan. Pinehas 12; BaR 21. 18, with regard to Ziz; see also text on p. 2.

131. Targum on Ps. 50. 11, which is very likely based on Baba Batra 73b. Comp. the following note. It is stated in Konen 26 that Ziz rests its feet on the fins of Leviathan (comp. note 127), and that his head reaches the throne of glory. On this passage comp. note 139.

132. Baba Batra 73b. Comp. further *Ma’asijyot* (Gaster’s edition 8), where in the Alexander legend an allusion is made to this axe.

133. WR 22. 10; BR 19. 4.

134. Gittin 31b and Baba Batra 25b. In both of these talmudic passages the winged *בן נץ* is none other than Ziz, as may be seen by comparing the talmudic statement with that found in the sources referred to in the preceding note. The commentators, however, take *בן נץ* to be a winged

angel; comp. Rashi, *ad loc.*, as well as in his commentary on Job 39. 26.

135. Bekorot 57b and Menahot 66b, as an explanation of Job 39. 13.

136. Targum Job 3. 6, 38. 36, 39. 13. In all these targumic passages this bird bearing the name *תרנגול ברא* “the wild cock” (comp. *שור הבר* “wild ox,” as a name for Behemoth, note 143; it is nevertheless doubtful whether the word *ברא* is to be translated by “wild” in these cases) is undoubtedly to be identified with Ziz, although in the legend of Solomon (compare with p. 975 and note 86 appertaining to it) *תרנגול ברא* is employed to describe an entirely different bird. Comp. note 139.

137. On Sekwi (*שכוי*) comp. Targum on Job 38. 36 (according to Rosh ha-Shanah 26a and Yerushalmi Bera-kot 9, 13c, it signifies “cock”); comp. note 139. On *יוכני בר* “son of the nest,” see the following note.

138. The attempt to explain *בר יוכני* as Persian must not be taken seriously; comp. Ginzberg in *Jewish Encyclopedia*, II, 512 s. v. “Bar Yokni,” where reasons are given for the translation “son of the nest.” The talmudic passages where this gigantic bird is mentioned are: Sukkah 5a (bottom); Yoma 80a; Bekorot 57b. Comp. also Menahot 66b and Sifra 1. 14. Comp. Ginzberg in *Schwarz-Festschrift*, 360.

139. WR 22. 10, where it is explicitly stated that Ziz and Leviathan belong to the “clean animals” (comp. note 127 with reference to Leviathan), whereas in 13. 3 and Tehillim 146, 535, it is emphasized, with reference to the use of these animals, that in the time of the Messiah a new Torah will be given which will dispense with the present dietary laws. Nistarot R. Simeon 8 reads: Behemoth will be slaughtered, Leviathan (a fish does not require to be killed ritually) will be torn by Ziz, and the latter slaughtered by Moses. In view of the description of the contest between Behemoth and Leviathan (compare with p. 29), we should probably read in Nistarot *שוחטו ובהמות*, “and Behemoth will be slain by Leviathan,” i. e. by the points of his fins, which may be used as instruments for ritual slaughtering; comp. Hullin 1. 2. On the disposal of the three monsters, Leviathan, Behemoth, and Ziz, that is, the representatives of the three animal kingdoms, at the Messianic banquet, see Tehillim 18, 153, and 23, 202, whence the statement found in later writings (*Kad ha-Kemah*, end of letter ח, 93a; Levita, Tishbi, s. v. *יוכנה*) that the bird Bar Yokni will be used as food for the pious in Messianic times. No trace is found in older sources of the identity of this bird with Ziz; but since *רננים* (Job 49. 13) is according to Bekorot 57b, the same as Bar Yokni, and in the opinion of Targum, *ad loc.*, it is the same as *תרנגול ברא*, i. e., Ziz (comp. Targum Ps. 50. 11), it was quite natural for the later authorities to identify Bar Yokni with Ziz. In most of the Ziz legends the dependence upon Iranic mythology is evident. The “heavenly singer and seer” is naturally the sacred cock of Avesta



(Vendidad 18, 33, *seq.*); comp. Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 37, *seq.*; Rubin, *Kabbala und Agada*, 23–25; Ginzberg in *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. “Cock,” as well as note 194. Of Iranic origin is also the conception that the wings of Ziz eclipse the sun. With this should be compared the sun birds of the Greek Apocalypse of Baruch 6–8 and the Chalkidri in 2 Enoch 15; comp. Bousset, *Religion*, 568. Highly instructive is the following passage in Konen 26, which precedes the description of the creation of Ziz (comp. note 131): And He created an Ofan (a kind of angel) on earth, whose head reaches the holy Hayyot who is the mediator between Israel and their heavenly Father. He bears the name Sandalfon and fashions out of the prayers wreaths (or crowns) for God’s majesty, which ascend upon the head of the Lord at his uttering the holy name. Whatever is said here concerning Sandalfon is taken from Hagigah 13b (comp. also PR 20, 97a). The connection, however, between Sandalfon and Ziz can only be understood when one considers the fact that Ziz was originally taken as the heavenly singer; he is hence identical with Sandalfon. To quite a different cycle of legends belongs the conception of the gigantic bird Ziz, which will be eaten by the pious in the world to come.

## THE SIXTH DAY

As the fish were formed out of water, and the birds out of boggy earth well mixed with water, so the mammals were formed out of solid earth,<sup>140</sup> and as leviathan is the most notable representative of the fish kind, and ziz of the bird kind, so behemot is the most notable representative of the mammal kind. Behemot matches leviathan in strength, and he had to be prevented, like leviathan, from multiplying and increasing, else the world could not have continued to exist; after God had created him male and female, He at once deprived him of the desire to propagate his kind.<sup>141</sup> He is so monstrous that he requires the produce of a thousand mountains for his daily food. All the water that flows through the bed of the Jordan in a year suffices him exactly for one gulp. It therefore was necessary to give him one stream entirely for his own use, a stream flowing forth from Paradise, called

Yubal.<sup>142</sup> Behemot, too, is destined to be served to the pious as an appetizing dainty, but before they enjoy his flesh, they will be permitted to view the mortal combat between leviathan and behemot, as a reward for having denied themselves the pleasures of the circus and its gladiatorial contests.<sup>143</sup>

Leviathan, ziz, and behemot are not the only monsters; there are many others, and marvellous ones, like the reēm, a giant animal, of which only one couple, male and female, is in existence. Had there been more, the world could hardly have maintained itself against them. The act of copulation occurs but once in seventy years between them, for God has so ordered it that the male and female reēm are at opposite ends of the earth, the one in the east, the other in the west. The act of copulation results in the death of the male. He is bitten by the female and dies of the bite. The female becomes pregnant and remains in this state for no less than twelve years. At the end of this long period she gives birth to twins, a male and a female. The year preceding her delivery she is not able to move. She would die of hunger, were it not that her own spittle flowing copiously from her mouth waters and fructifies the earth near her, and causes it to bring forth enough for her maintenance. For a whole year the animal can but roll from side to side, until finally her belly bursts, and the twins issue forth. Their appearance is thus the signal for the death of the mother reēm. She makes room for the new generation, which in turn is destined to suffer the same fate as the generation that went before. Immediately after birth, the one goes eastward and the other westward, to meet only after the lapse of seventy years, propagate themselves, and perish.<sup>144</sup> A traveller who once saw a reēm one day old described its height to be four parasangs, and the length of its head one parasang and a half.<sup>145</sup> Its horns measure one hundred ells, and their height is a great deal more.<sup>146</sup>



One of the most remarkable creatures is the “man of the mountain,” Adne Sadeh, or, briefly, Adam.<sup>147</sup> His form is exactly that of a human being, but he is fastened to the ground by means of a navel-string, upon which his life depends. The cord once snapped, he dies. This animal keeps himself alive with what is produced by the soil around about him as far as his tether permits him to crawl. No creature may venture to approach within the radius of his cord, for he seizes and demolishes whatever comes in his reach. To kill him, one may not go near to him, the navel-string must be severed from a distance by means of a dart, and then he dies amid groans and moans.<sup>148</sup>

Once upon a time a traveller happened in the region where this animal is found. He overheard his host consult his wife as to what to do to honor their guest, and resolve to serve “our man,” as he said. Thinking he had fallen among cannibals, the stranger ran as fast as his feet could carry him from his entertainer, who sought vainly to restrain him. Afterward, he found out that there had been no intention of regaling him with human flesh, but only with the flesh of the strange animal called “man.”<sup>149</sup>

As the “man of the mountain” is fixed to the ground by his navel-string, so the barnacle-geese is grown to a tree by its bill. It is hard to say whether it is an animal and must be slaughtered to be fit for food, or whether it is a plant and no ritual ceremony is necessary before eating it.<sup>150</sup>

Among the birds the phoenix is the most wonderful. When Eve gave all the animals some of the fruit of the tree of knowledge, the phoenix was the only bird that refused to eat thereof, and he was rewarded with eternal life. When he has lived a thousand years, his body shrinks, and the feathers drop from it, until he is as small as an egg. This is the nucleus of the new bird.<sup>151</sup>

The phoenix is also called “the guardian of the terrestrial sphere.” He runs with the sun on his circuit, and he spreads out his wings and catches

up the fiery rays of the sun.<sup>152</sup> If he were not there to intercept them, neither man nor any other animate being would keep alive. On his right wing the following words are inscribed in huge letters,<sup>153</sup> about four thousand stadia high: “Neither the earth produces me, nor the heavens, but only the wings of fire.” His food consists of the manna of heaven and the dew of the earth. His excrement is a worm, whose excrement in turn is the cinnamon used by kings and princes.<sup>152</sup> Enoch, who saw the phoenix birds when he was translated, describes them as flying creatures, wonderful and strange in appearance, with the feet and tails of lions, and the heads of crocodiles; their appearance is of a purple color like the rainbow; their size nine hundred measures. Their wings are like those of angels, each having twelve, and they attend the chariot of the sun and go with him, bringing heat and dew as they are ordered by God. In the morning when the sun starts on his daily course, the phoenixes and the chalkidri<sup>154</sup> sing, and every bird flaps its wings, rejoicing the Giver of light, and they sing a song at the command of the Lord.<sup>155</sup>

Among reptiles the salamander and the shmir are the most marvellous. The salamander originates from a fire of myrtle wood<sup>156</sup> which has been kept burning for seven years steadily by means of magic arts. Not bigger than a mouse, it yet is invested with peculiar properties. One who smears himself with its blood is invulnerable,<sup>157</sup> and the web woven by it is a talisman against fire.<sup>158</sup> The people who lived at the deluge boasted that, were a fire flood to come, they would protect themselves with the blood of the salamander.<sup>159</sup>

King Hezekiah owes his life to the salamander. His wicked father, King Ahaz, had delivered him to the fires of Moloch, and he would have been burnt, had his mother not painted him with the blood of the salamander, so that the fire could do him no harm.<sup>160</sup>



The shamir was made at twilight on the sixth day of creation together with other extraordinary things.<sup>161</sup> It is about as large as a barley corn, and it possesses the remarkable property of cutting the hardest of diamonds. For this reason it was used for the stones in the breastplate worn by the high priest. First the names of the twelve tribes were traced with ink on the stones to be set into the breastplate, then the shamir was passed over the lines, and thus they were graven. The wonderful circumstance was that the friction wore no particles from the stones. The shamir was also used for hewing into shape the stones from which the Temple was built, because the law prohibited iron tools to be used for the work in the Temple.<sup>162</sup> The shamir may not be put in an iron vessel for safe-keeping, nor in any metal vessel, it would burst such a receptacle asunder. It is kept wrapped up in a woollen cloth, and this in turn is placed in a lead basket filled with barley bran.<sup>163</sup> The shamir was guarded in Paradise until Solomon needed it. He sent the eagle thither to fetch the worm.<sup>164</sup> With the destruction of the Temple the shamir vanished.<sup>165</sup>

A similar fate overtook the taḥash, which had been created only that its skin might be used for the Tabernacle. Once the Tabernacle was completed, the taḥash disappeared. It had a horn on its forehead, was gaily colored like the turkey-cock, and belonged to the class of clean animals.<sup>166</sup>

Among the fishes there are also wonderful creatures, the sea-goats and the dolphins, not to mention leviathan. A seafaring man once saw a sea-goat on whose horns the words were inscribed: "I am a little sea-animal, yet I traversed three hundred parasangs to offer myself as food to the leviathan."<sup>167</sup> The dolphins are half man and half fish; they even have sexual intercourse with human beings; therefore they are called also "sons of the sea," for in a sense they represent the human kind in the waters.<sup>168</sup>

Though every species in the animal world was created during the last two days of the six of creation,<sup>169</sup> yet many characteristics of certain animals appeared later. Cats and mice, foes now, were friends originally. Their later enmity had a distinct cause. On one occasion the mouse appeared before God and spoke: "I and the cat are partners, but now we have nothing to eat." The Lord answered: "Thou art intriguing against thy companion, only that thou mayest devour her. As a punishment, she shall devour thee." Thereupon the mouse: "O Lord of the world, wherein have I done wrong?" God replied: "O thou unclean reptile, thou shouldst have been warned by the example of the moon, who lost a part of her light, because she spake ill of the sun, and what she lost was given to her opponent."<sup>170</sup> The evil intentions thou didst harbor against thy companion shall be punished in the same way. Instead of thy devouring her, she shall devour thee." The mouse: "O Lord of the world! Shall my whole kind be destroyed?" God: "I will take care that a remnant of thee is spared." In her rage the mouse bit the cat, and the cat in turn threw herself upon the mouse, and hacked into her with her teeth until she lay dead. Since that moment the mouse stands in such awe of the cat that she does not even attempt to defend herself against her enemy's attacks, and always keeps herself in hiding.<sup>171</sup>

Similarly dogs and cats maintained a friendly relation to each other, and only later on became enemies. A dog and a cat were partners, and they shared with each other whatever they had. It once happened that neither could find anything to eat for three days. Thereupon the dog proposed that they dissolve their partnership. The cat should go to Adam, in whose house there would surely be enough for her to eat, while the dog should seek his fortune elsewhere. Before they separated, they took an oath never to go to the same master. The cat took up her abode with



Adam, and she found sufficient mice in his house to satisfy her appetite. Seeing how useful she was in driving away and extirpating mice, Adam treated her most kindly. The dog, on the other hand, saw bad times. The first night after their separation he spent in the cave of the wolf, who had granted him a night's lodging. At night the dog caught the sound of steps, and he reported it to his host, who bade him repulse the intruders. They were wild animals. Little lacked and the dog would have lost his life. Dismayed, the dog fled from the house of the wolf, and took refuge with the monkey. But he would not grant him even a single night's lodging; and the fugitive was forced to appeal to the hospitality of the sheep. Again the dog heard steps in the middle of the night. Obeying the bidding of his host, he arose to chase away the marauders, who turned out to be wolves. The barking of the dog apprised the wolves of the presence of sheep, so that the dog innocently caused the sheep's death. Now he had lost his last friend. Night after night he begged for shelter, without ever finding a home. Finally, he decided to repair to the house of Adam, who also granted him refuge for one night. When wild animals approached the house under cover of darkness, the dog began to bark, Adam awoke, and with his bow and arrow he drove them away. Recognizing the dog's usefulness, he bade him remain with him always. But as soon as the cat espied the dog in Adam's house, she began to quarrel with him, and reproach him with having broken his oath to her. Adam did his best to pacify the cat. He told her he had himself invited the dog to make his home there, and he assured her she would in no wise be the loser by the dog's presence; he wanted both to stay with him. But it was impossible to appease the cat. The dog promised her not to touch anything intended for her. She insisted that she could not live in one and the same house with a thief like the dog. Bickerings between the dog and the cat

became the order of the day. Finally the dog could stand it no longer, and he left Adam's house, and betook himself to Seth's. By Seth he was welcomed kindly, and from Seth's house, he continued to make efforts at reconciliation with the cat. In vain. Yes, the enmity between the first dog and the first cat was transmitted to all their descendants until this very day.<sup>172</sup>

Even the physical peculiarities of certain animals were not original features with them, but owed their existence to something that occurred subsequent to the days of creation. The mouse at first had quite a different mouth from its present mouth. In Noah's ark, in which all animals, to ensure the preservation of every kind, lived together peaceably, the pair of mice were once sitting next to the cat. Suddenly the latter remembered that her father was in the habit of devouring mice, and thinking there was no harm in following his example, she jumped at the mouse, who vainly looked for a hole into which to slip out of sight. Then a miracle happened; a hole appeared where none had been before, and the mouse sought refuge in it. The cat pursued the mouse, and though she could not follow her into the hole, she could insert her paw and try to pull the mouse out of her covert. Quickly the mouse opened her mouth in the hope that the paw would go into it, and the cat would be prevented from fastening her claws in her flesh. But as the cavity of the mouth was not big enough, the cat succeeded in clawing the cheeks of the mouse. Not that this helped her much, it merely widened the mouth of the mouse, and her prey after all escaped the cat.<sup>173</sup> After her happy escape, the mouse betook herself to Noah and said to him, "O pious man, be good enough to sew up my cheek where my enemy, the cat, has torn a rent in it." Noah bade her fetch a hair out of the tail of the swine, and with this he repaired the damage. Thence the little seam-like line next to the mouth of every mouse to this very day.<sup>174</sup>



The raven is another animal that changed its appearance during its sojourn in the ark. When Noah desired to send him forth to find out about the state of the waters, he hid under the wings of the eagle. Noah found him, however, and said to him, "Go and see whether the waters have diminished." The raven pleaded: "Hast thou none other among all the birds to send on this errand?" Noah: "My power extends no further than over thee and the dove."<sup>175</sup> But the raven was not satisfied. He said to Noah with great insolence: "Thou sendest me forth only that I may meet my death, and thou wishest my death that my wife may be at thy service."<sup>176</sup> Thereupon Noah cursed the raven thus: "May thy mouth, which has spoken evil against me, be accursed, and thy intercourse with thy wife be only through it."<sup>177</sup> All the animals in the ark said Amen. And this is the reason why a mass of spittle runs from the mouth of the male raven into the mouth of the female during the act of copulation, and only thus the female is impregnated.<sup>178</sup>

Altogether the raven is an unattractive animal. He is unkind toward his own young so long as their bodies are not covered with black feathers,<sup>179</sup> though as a rule ravens love one another.<sup>180</sup> God therefore takes the young ravens under His special protection. From their own excrement maggots come forth,<sup>181</sup> which serve as their food during the three days that elapse after their birth, until their white feathers turn black and their parents recognize them as their offspring and care for them.<sup>182</sup>

The raven has himself to blame also for the awkward hop in his gait. He observed the graceful step of the dove, and envious of her tried to emulate it. The outcome was that he almost broke his bones without in the least succeeding in making himself resemble the dove, not to mention that he brought the scorn of the other animals down upon himself. His failure excited their ridicule. Then he decided to return to his own

original gait, but in the interval he had unlearned it, and he could walk neither the one way nor the other properly. His step had become a hop betwixt and between. Thus we see how true it is, that he who is dissatisfied with his small portion loses the little he has in striving for more and better things.<sup>183</sup>

The steer is also one of the animals that have suffered a change in the course of time. Originally his face was entirely overgrown with hair, but now there is none on his nose, and that is because Joshua kissed him on his nose during the siege of Jericho. Joshua was an exceedingly heavy man. Horses, donkeys, and mules, none could bear him, they all broke down under his weight. What they could not do, the steer accomplished. On his back Joshua rode to the siege of Jericho, and in gratitude he bestowed a kiss upon his nose.<sup>184</sup>

The serpent, too, is other than it was at first. Before the fall of man it was the cleverest of all animals created, and in form it resembled man closely. It stood upright, and was of extraordinary size.<sup>185</sup> Afterward, it lost the mental advantages it had possessed as compared with other animals, and it degenerated physically, too; it was deprived of its feet, so that it could not pursue other animals and kill them. The mole and the frog had to be made harmless in similar ways; the former has no eyes, else it were irresistible, and the frog has no teeth, else no animal in the water were sure of its life.<sup>186</sup>

While the cunning of the serpent wrought its own undoing, the cunning of the fox stood him in good stead in many an embarrassing situation. After Adam had committed the sin of disobedience, God delivered the whole of the animal world into the power of the Angel of Death, and He ordered him to cast one pair of each kind into the water. He and leviathan together thus have dominion over all that has life. When the Angel of Death was in the act of



executing the Divine command upon the fox, he began to weep bitterly. The Angel of Death asked him the reason of his tears, and the fox replied that he was mourning the sad fate of his friend. At the same time he pointed to the figure of a fox in the sea, which was nothing but his own reflection. The Angel of Death, persuaded that a representative of the fox family had been cast into the water, let him go free. The fox told his trick to the cat, and she in turn played it on the Angel of Death.<sup>187</sup> So it happened that neither cats nor foxes are represented in the water, while all other animals are.<sup>188</sup>

When leviathan passed the animals in review, and missing the fox was informed of the sly way in which he had eluded his authority, he dispatched great and powerful fish on the errand of enticing the truant into the water. The fox walking along the shore espied the large number of fish, and he exclaimed, "How happy he who may always satisfy his hunger with the flesh of such as these." The fish told him, if he would but follow them, his appetite could easily be appeased. At the same time they informed him that a great honor awaited him. Leviathan, they said, was at death's door, and he had commissioned them to install the fox as his successor. They were ready to carry him on their backs, so that he had no need to fear the water, and thus they would convey him to the throne, which stood upon a huge rock. The fox yielded to these persuasions, and descended into the water. Presently an uncomfortable feeling took possession of him. He began to suspect that the tables were turned; he was being made game of instead of making game of others as usual. He urged the fish to tell him the truth, and they admitted that they had been sent out to secure his person for leviathan, who wanted his heart,<sup>189</sup> that he might become as knowing as the fox, whose wisdom he had heard many extol. The fox said reproachfully: "Why did you not tell me the truth

at once? Then I could have brought my heart along with me for King Leviathan, who would have showered honors upon me. As it is, you will surely suffer punishment for bringing me without my heart. The foxes, you see," he continued, "do not carry their hearts around with them. They keep them in a safe place, and when they have need of them, they fetch them thence." The fish quickly swam to shore, and landed the fox, so that he might go for his heart. No sooner did he feel dry land under his feet than he began to jump and shout, and when they urged him to go in search of his heart, and follow them, he said: "O ye fools, could I have followed you into the water, if I had not had my heart with me? Or exists there a creature able to go abroad without his heart?" The fish replied: "Come, come, thou art fooling us." Whereupon the fox: "O ye fools, if I could play a trick on the Angel of Death, how much easier was it to make game of you?" So they had to return, their errand undone, and leviathan could not but confirm the taunting judgment of the fox: "In very truth, the fox is wise of heart, and ye are fools."<sup>190</sup>

---

140. Hullin 27b; PRE 11. For a different view see Konen 26, which reads: He took water, earth, and light, out of which He created Behemoth; comp. notes 113 and 128.

141. Baba Batra 74b, where it is said that the male monster was castrated, and the desire to propagate its kind was taken away from the female. Konen 26 reads: He created Behemoth of the thousand mountains, as well as the ox who uproots thousand mountains daily, and both appear daily in paradise to make merry in the presence of the Lord. That Behemoth is a female monster disagrees with the view of the older rabbinic sources, as well as that of the pseudepigraphic writers (comp. notes 117–118, as well as note 127). Moreover Konen made two monsters out of the two names of the monster. The older rabbinic sources speak of Behemoth, or following Ps. 50. 10, of "Behemoth upon a thousand hills," but sometimes they use שׁוֹר הַבֵּר or, in Aramaic sources, its equivalent תּוֹר בֵּר, instead of Behemoth (comp. e. g. Targ. Ps. *loc. cit.*) and hence in Konen the female Behemoth of the thousand mountains (hills) is found alongside of the ox who uproots thousand mountains daily.



Comp. also Kalir in the Piyut ויכון (end of *Lamentations* in the Roman Mahzor) who speaks of the two consorts of Leviathan. Comp. note 127, and on the sports of the monsters in paradise see note 124.

142. PK 6, 58a; PR 16, 80b, and 194 (here it is also stated that Leviathan lies on the abyss, which otherwise would flood the earth; since the water of the ocean is salty, he is compelled to raise his fins whenever he wants to drink, in order that the water of the abyss should come up); WR 22. 10; BaR 21. 18; Tan. Pinehas 12; PRE 11. Comp. also Baba Batra 74b. The last-named Midrash understands Ps. 50. 10 to say that the grass of the thousand mountains grows anew every night, whereas in the older Midrashim a view is cited, according to which the meaning of this verse is that thousand animals grazing on the thousand mountains serve as food for Behemoth. On Behemoth in the close proximity of paradise, comp. note 127 and Konen 26. For an allegorical interpretation of this legend, comp. Zohar I, 18b, 223a (bottom), as well as III, 217a, 240b.

143. WR 13. 3; PRE 11. Concerning Behemoth as food for the pious, comp. further notes 127 and 139. On the prejudice against attending a theatre, comp. 'Abodah Zarah 10b, where, like Tertullian, *De Spectaculis* 4, Ps. 1. 1 is said to refer to the pious who keep away from the theatre and circus.

144. A quotation from a manuscript Midrash in *Midbar Kedemot* "ק, No. 12, and Aguddat Aggadot 39. A similar statement is found MHG I, 95–96 concerning a certain serpent related to the one which seduced Eve. Comp. also Rashi on Is. 30. 6 and Herodotus III, 109.

145. Baba Batra 73b; comp. also *ibid.* 74b, where a view is quoted which declares the monsters תנינים (Gen. 1. 21) to be אורזלי דימא, which is very likely a kind of *Re'em*.

146. Tehillim 22, 195, where one view is also cited to the effect that the circumference was about one hundred cubits; compare with p. 913. On a frightful kind of tiger comp. Hullin 59b; a passage which was strangely misunderstood by the author of the article "Leviathan and Behemoth" in *Jewish Encyclopedia*, VIII, 39.

147. This species is known as Adne [Sadeh], or more accurately Idne; the singular is Adan. Comp. the following note.

148. Tan. Introduction 125. Comp. further R. Simeon of Sens on Kil'ayim 8. 5 and *Ma'asehbuch* 201; *Magen Abot* 35b and 68a (women who grow on trees); Eshkol 24b; the references to non-Jewish writings (Mas'udi, Ibn Tufail, and Pseudo-Calisthenes) given by Steinschneider, *Pseudo-Epigraphische Literatur*, 25, and *Hebräische Uebersetzungen*, 12, 360. On the plant-man comp. further note 150, and footnote 89 on p. 360. Kil'ayim 8. 5 speaks of אדני השדה (it is plural of אדן which occurs frequently in correct manuscripts instead of אדם), which Yerushalmi, *ad loc.*, 31c,

renders in Aramaic by דטורא בר נש, "the man of the mountain" (שדה is also found in the Bible in the sense of "mountain"). It is undoubtedly a certain species of ape. The Yerushalmi continues that this species is vulnerable only in its navel; later authors, however, found in this remark of the Yerushalmi a reference to the plant-man which is fastened by its navel to the ground. Comp. Fink, *Monatschrift*, LI, 173–182; Nathan, *ibid.*, 501. Comp. Ginzberg in *Schwarz-Festschrift*, 327–333, who deals at length with the meaning of אדני השדה, which Rashi identifies with the Werewolf and believes to be referred to in Job 5. 23.

149. Tan. Introduction 125.

150. Responsa of R. Meir of Rothenburg (Lemberg edition, No. 160), and through the literary channels, namely, the writings of the Franco-German scholars of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, who often discussed the "legal status" of the barnacle-goose, scholars of other countries became acquainted with this legend, though there it failed to engage the popular fancy. Christian authors, at the same time, discussed the question whether it was permissible to eat these birds during Lent. Comp. Geraldus Cambiensis (1154–1189), whose zeal burned against the rashness of those who indulged in the enjoyment of this bird during the Lent season. It appears, however, that his zeal was not of much avail, since Duran, in his *Magen Abot*, 35b, confirms the persistence of the "rashness and indulgence" of the Frenchmen of his time, two hundred years after that "zeal for the observance." Comp. Oppenheim, *Monatschrift*, XVIII, 88–93; Güdemann, *Erziehungswesen* II, 117, 213, and III, 129; Steinschneider, *Hebräische Bibliographie* V, 116–117; Steinschneider in Gosche's *Archiv* III, 8; *Ha-Goren* IV, 99; *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. "Barnacle-goose."

151. BR 19.5: Shemuel 12, 81; Tan. Introduction 155; 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 27a, 28b, 29a–29b; Bereshit Rabbeti cited by Jellinek, *Einleitung* to BHM VI, 12, note, 4. The older sources name the phoenix חול, and find in Job 29. 18 a reference to this bird; in the two last-named sources the immortal bird is called מלתם or מלחם, a word of obscure origin which is very likely corrupt. Ben Sira 27a adds that this bird and its species, after the fall of man, was locked up in a city to which no one, not even the angel of death, has access. Here the very old legend concerning Luz is made use of (text on p. 861 and 969). The Church Fathers, as well as the Rabbis, refer to the phoenix as a proof for the resurrection of the dead. The discrepancies of the sources in the description of the rejuvenation of the dead represents different dogmatic opinions relating to the doctrine of resurrection; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 52–55; Güdemann, *Religionsgeschichte*, 55–65. See further footnote 37 on p. 147, and footnote 67 on p. 72. The description of the rejuvenation of the pious in the world to come, found in Alphabetot 107, which was probably made use of in Mahzor Vitry 317, line 11 (טל ילדות צומח)



presupposes the phoenix legend. On the phoenix legend in patristic literature, comp. the vast collection of material given by Charles, 2 Enoch 12.

152. Greek Apocalypse of Baruch 6; comp. notes 133–134. On a similar idea in rabbinic literature, comp. the legend concerning Ziz text p. 29 and notes 134, 139.

153. On this inscription comp. note 106.

154. The etymology of the word “Chalkidri” is very obscure; comp. Forbes and Charles on 2 Enoch 12. 1; Bousset, *Religion*, 568. The latter conjectures that it is to be regarded as an Iranian word.

155. 2 Enoch 12 and 15. The ordinary angels have six wings (Is. 6. 2), but these sun-birds are higher beings, and therefore possess twelve wings; comp. PRE 13, where the important place of Samael in the heavenly hierarchy, before his fall, is characterized by the fact that he possesses twelve wings.

156. This is only found in Rashi on Hullin 127a.

157. Hagigah (end); Sanhedrin 63b; Hullin 127a (comp. Rashi, *ad loc.*, and *Aruk. s. v. סלמנדרא*), Tan. Wa-Yesheb 3; Sifra 11. 29; ShR 15. 28. A vast collection of material relating to Salamander in Jewish literature is given by Löw in Krauss' *Griechische und Lateinische Lehnwörter, s. v. סלמנדרא*. See also Löw in *Florilegium*, in honor of De Vogüé's seventieth birthday 399–406. Comp. further Lewysohn, *Zoologie des Talmuds*, 227–230; Strasschun in *Ha-Maggid* IX, No. 14. It is noteworthy that Philo, *Quaestiones*, Exod. 28, likewise mentions πυρίγενες, which could move about in fire without suffering any harm. Philo surely had Salamander and similar creatures in mind. Hullin and Sifra, *loc. cit.*, likewise speak of creatures in the plural which live in the fire, that is, Salamander and others. The statement of Aristotle, *Historia Animalium*, V, 19, and that of Pliny, *Historia Naturalis*, X, 68 and 87, concerning the Salamander essentially agrees with the view of the rabbinic sources. On the use of the myrtle in the producing of the Salamander (comp. note 156), see Hippolytus, *Haereses* 4. 33. Comp. also the following three notes.

158. Zohar II, 211; Hadassi, Eshkol 24d; *Abkat Rokel* 2, 1. These assertions concerning the clothes of Salamander, slightly differing from one another, are not found in the talmudic-midrashic literature, but are, however, known, in non-Jewish writings of the Middle Ages; comp. Jellinek, *Beiträge zur Geschichte der Kabbala*, I, 48, and Grässe, *Beiträge zur Literatur und Sage des Mittelalters*, 81.

159. Sanhedrin 108b, where עליתא (the reading is doubtful) is the Semitic name for Salamander. In Tan. Wa-Yiggash 3 עכביט “spider” is the correct reading, since according to Aristotle, *Historia Animalium*, V, 19, the size of the Salamander is like that of the house-fly and the difference between the latter and the spider is not very great.

160. Sanhedrin 63b. Comp. Bacher, ZDMG XXVII, 15, and text on p. 1016.

161. Abot 5. 6; Sifre D., 355; Midrash Tannaim 219; Pesahim 54a; 2 ARN 37, 95; PRE 19. Compare further with footnote 99 on p. 78.

162. Tosefta Sotah 15. 1; Babli 48b; Yerushalmi 9, 20d. It is stated in PR 33, 155a, that the Shamir was also applied to the building of the temple for the purpose of splitting the rock-like hard wood (so is גלומי to be translated; comp. Syriac גלמא “rocky ground”).

163. Tosefta Sotah 15. 1; Babli 48b; Yerushalmi 9, 20d. Comp. note 166.

164. Tehillim 77, 351, which was incorporated in Yalkut II, 182. Another legend on the procuring of the Shamir is given in text on p. 973.

165. Sotah 9. 2 (it is the first temple which is meant here, contrary to the view of Tosafot on Zebahim 54b, caption אבנים); Tosefta 15. 1; Babli 48b; Yerushalmi 9, 20d. In the talmudic-midrashic sources it is never explicitly stated that the Shamir was a living creature. Nevertheless, as a matter of fact, the opinion of medieval authors that it was a worm (Rashi Pesahim 54a; Maimonides, commentary on Abot 5. 6; Mahzor Vitry 540 and many others) is undoubtedly correct. In Babli Sotah, *loc. cit.*, and PR 38, 153a, the expression מראה וכו' used in connection with the Shamir, clearly shows it was the glance of a living being which effected the splitting of wood and stones. A caper-spurge, to which the non-Jewish sources of the Middle Ages ascribed the characteristic of the Shamir, is also known in Jewish literature (WR 32. 4; Koheleth 5. 9); but it is not identical with the Shamir. The view of the tannaitic sources that the Shamir was only accessible to man at the time of the building of the temple, while the caper-spurge could be found in later times, proves that these two must not be confused with one another. Comp. Cassel, *Shamir*, in *Denkschriften der Kgl. Akademie der Wissenschaften*, Erfurt, 1854; Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 41, *seq.*; Löw, *Graphische Requisiten*, 181, *seq.* (he justly refutes Cassel's assertions that Shamir was a stone); Salzberger, *Salomos Tempelbau und Thron*. 36–54.

166. Shabbat 28b; Yerushalmi 2, 4d; PR 33, 154d; Koheleth 1, 9. Compare with p. 647. On the one-horned animal see footnote 108 on p. 87. PR, 155a, states that the wood used by Solomon (1 Kings 10. 12) was also created with this end in view; it therefore disappeared as soon as it had fulfilled its purpose.

167. Baba Batra 74a. Comp. Löw, *Aramäische Fischnamen*, No. 19, in *Nöldeke-Festschrift* 550.

168. Tosefta Bekorot 1. 11 and Babli 8a, where instead of דולפינין of the Tosefta, the Aramaic ימא בני is used, which Rashi renders by “sirens” while ps.—R. Gershon explains it as “seamen.” In our text of the Talmud nothing is said about a union of the sirens and men, and it is uncertain whether this statement of Rashi is based on a different text (ים for כבני) or whether, influenced by the belief in



fays and naiads, prevalent in the Middle Ages, all through Europe, Rashi ascribes to the Talmud something which is alien to it. According to the Tosefta and the Talmud, the dolphins give birth to their children in the same manner as human beings do. The assertion of Duran, *Magen Abot*, 68a, concerning the dolphins belongs rather to European folk-lore, although it pretends to be Jewish. Comp. Lewysohn, *Zoologie des Talmuds*, 153–155; Löw, *Aramäische Fischnamen*, No. 49, in *Nöldeke-Festschrift*; Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 101. According to Enoch 19. 2, the women who caused the fall of the angels were transformed into sirens; comp. Apocalypse of Baruch 10. 8.

169. Compare with pp. 25, 29, 33; further footnote 322 on p. 324.

170. Compare with pp. 24–25, concerning the fall of the moon. But in none of the sources is it mentioned (comp. notes 100, 110–112) that the light taken from the moon was added to the sun.

171. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 25a and 34a. Perek Shirah (cat and mouse) very likely alludes to this legend.

172. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 25a–25b. The other legend of the origin of the enmity between the cat and the mouse which is found in *Iggeret Ba'ale Hayyim* 2, 6, is derived from Arabic sources, since these animals are brought into relation with the descendants of Cain and Abel, whereas according to Jewish and Christian legends Abel died childless; comp. Index s. v. Abel.

173. The text of 2 Ben Sira does not seem to be in proper form.

174. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 26a–26b; see also 34b, where it is said that Noah stole the hair which he needed for his work, from a sleeping swine. The story told in this source (25a–34b) concerning the donkey, which was shocked at having to serve man without any compensation, practically agrees with the Sicilian legend by Dähnhardt, *Natur-sagen*, III, 178. The characteristics of these animals to scent their excrement and to urinate, as soon as one of them starts to do it, is explained in the following manner. They threatened God that they would stop to propagate their species in case they were not to receive their reward for their work. They received the following answer: “Ye will receive your reward for your labor as soon as your urine will flow as a stream big enough to work a mill and when your excrement will smell as perfume.” Hence the donkeys wish to ascertain whether they have fulfilled the conditions under which a reward was promised to them.

175. As the cause of this, Noah remarks: “The inhabitants of the city of Ai [עַי; עֹרֶב=ע] “raven;” יִנָּה=י] “dove”] will slay Jair, because he permitted the use of the meat of the raven, but prohibited that of the dove (comp. Sanhedrin 100a, top) in contradiction to the Torah.” Compare, however, with p. 845 with reference to the piety and learning of Jair.

176. This suspicion against Noah is already found in older sources, compare footnote 46 on p. 148. See further PRK (Schönblum's edition), 32b.

177. This supposed peculiarity of the raven is already mentioned in Aristotle's *Historia Animalium*, V, 47, and by many classical authors; comp. Bochart, *Hieroz.*, III, 818, as well as Lewysohn, *Zoologie des Talmuds*, 173. According to Barnabas, 10. 8, it is the weasel which is impregnated through the mouth. This, however, inaccurately reproduces the statement of Aristaeus 165, according to which the Bible has prohibited the enjoyment of this animal because it is impregnated through the ears and gives birth through the mouth. This widespread view is also mentioned by Aristotle in *De Generatione Animalium*, III, 6. 5 who, however, scoffs at it. A statement similar to that of Barnabas concerning the annual change of sex of the hyena is found in medieval Jewish writings, but not in the old rabbinic literature. Concerning the hare (אַרְנֶבֶט), comp. Ibn Ezra on Lev. 11. 6. Related to this view is the quotation in *Pa'aneah*, Lev. 12. 2 from PRE (not found in our text) that the stomach of a hare is a cure for sterility. R. Eleazar, *Rim e Haftarat*, Naso, explicitly states that this cure, which the women recommended to Samson's mother, and against which the angel warned her (Jud. 13. 7), is due to the peculiarity of this species to change its sex. It is highly probable that *Pa'aneah* introduced the quotation with the words אֲלִיעֶזֶר בִּפְרִי, that is “in the commentary (on the Haftarat) by R. Eleazar (of Worms)”; but the scribe misread the abbreviation בִּפְרִי (=בִּפְרוּשׁ) as בִּפְרָקִי, and hence בִּפְרָקִי ר' אֲלִיעֶזֶר. For further remarks on the raven, comp. the following note.

178. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 26b–27a and 34a–35a. The older sources (Sanhedrin 108b; BR 36. 7; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 1, 64d; Tan. Noah 12) state that three were punished because they did not observe the law of abstinence while in the ark (compare with p. 151): Ham, the dog, and the raven. Ham became the ancestor of the black (colored) race; the dog remains attached to the body of his mate after cohabitation; the raven conceives through his mouth. Compare further with footnote 46 on p. 148, and footnote 54 on p. 151.

179. Ketubot 49b; WR 19. 1; Shemuel 5, 57; Shir 5. 11.

180. Pesachim 113b.

181. WR 19, Shemuel 5. 57; PRE 21. Compare with p. 108. Makiri on Ps. 147, 286, quotes, from PRE, the statement that she-bears have no breasts with which to nurse their young, but God makes the young bears suck their paws, and this sustains them until they grow up and are able to provide for themselves. Concerning the sucking of paws or fingers, compare with p. 170. The jackals hate their young, and abandon them as the ravens do; they would even devour them if they could see them. For this reason God ordained that when the female jackal nurses



her young ones, their faces are covered as if with a veil, so that she cannot see them. Ekah 4, 144. Comp., on the other hand, Tan. Behukkotai 3 and Tan. B. III, 111, where the opposite view is given to the effect that these animals are devoted to their young.

182. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 24a (read לְבָנִים for לְבָנִים) and 33b. Comp. PRE 21, and the quotation from the latter in Makiri on Ps. 147, 286, as well as in Aguddat Aggadot 38, note 4.

183. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 26b. The proverb, "he who is dissatisfied, etc." (most likely the word לֹא fell out before נִמְצָא) is a variant of the proverb already found in Tosefta Sotah 4, 16 and in the parallel passages (compare with footnote 34 on p. 63). Sanhedrin 106a reads: The camel looked for horns, and lost his ears which he had possessed. This is allusion to the fable found in Pend-Nameh 207.

184. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 25a (בְּרִיאָה is used here in the sense of the English "strong," "stout"). Comp. Duran, *Kesbet u-Magen* for the similar Arabic legend concerning Mohammed.

185. BR 19. 1. On the original superior qualities of the serpent, compare further with pp. 71–72.

186. Tehillim 58, 300. On the mole, comp. also Mo'ed Katan 6b, and Yerushalmi I, 80c.

187. The angel of death occurring often in rabbinic literature, in which he is identified with Satan (Baba Batra 16a), is also well known in pseudepigraphic literature; comp. the Apocalypse of Baruch 21. 25; Ascension of Isaiah 9. 16. See also footnote 317 on p. 247. The relationship between Leviathan and the angel of death clearly points to the assumption that the view prevalent in the Kabbalah concerning the identity of Satan with Leviathan (comp. note 127) goes back to an ancient tradition. According to a legend handed down from a different version, there are several angels of death. Thus PRK 14b (Schönblum's edition) states that there are six angels of death. Gabriel is in charge of taking away the lives of young persons; Kazfiel is appointed over kings; Meshabber over animals; Mashhit over children; Af over the other kinds of men; Hemah over domestic animals. On the relation of Gabriel to the angel of death, comp. Ma'aseh Torah 98; Huppat Eliyyahu 6; Zohar 1, 99a.

188. According to ancient sources (comp. note 115), it is the weasel, which lives on the dry land, and if we want to be accurate, we ought to read "weasel" instead of "cat" in the text.

189. The heart, according to the Hebrew idiom, signifies the intellect. The conception that one can acquire the characteristics of an animal by eating it is well known among all primitive peoples.

190. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 27a–28b and 36a. The text requires many emendations. 28a, line 8, read: אֶמְרוּ לִי הָאֵמֶת; 28a, line 15: לִכְאֵן וּלְכָאֵן; 36a, 1. 15: נִכְּוֹן

וְשִׁם. On the origin of this animal fable, comp. Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, II, 680; s. v. "Ben Sira", Abrahams, *Book of Delight*, 159, seq. It should be further noted that although MHG II, 45, *Sekel*, Exod. 29, *Imre No'am* and *Hadard* on Exod. 7. 14 give different versions of the similar fable found in Yalkut I, 182 (in the first edition מִדְרָשׁ is given as source) concerning the lion, the ass, and the fox, there can be no doubt that the origin of our fable is to be found in that about the ape and the crocodile (Pantchatantra IV, 1), which has found its way also into the Alphabet of Ben Sira, where, however, it was combined with other elements. Whether the author of the Alphabet had directly made use of the Indian-Arabic fable literature, or whether he had adapted fables known to him from older Jewish writings, is a moot question. The first alternative, however, is the more likely, since the author knows a number of animal fables, which are not extant in the older Jewish literature. Some animal fables are also given in 1 Alphabet 5a–5b and 7a–7b; but those are found also in the older rabbinic literature, so that the priority of this source is more than questionable. The account of the pious son who was compensated by Leviathan because he had fulfilled his father's last wish (on this motive compare with pp. 114, seq.) is known not only to 1 Alphabet (5a–5b), but is also found in *Hibbur ha-Ma'asiyyot*, fifth commandment, and is very likely borrowed from there in the *Ma'asehbuch* 194. In these sources the following stories are welded into one: The story from 1 Alphabet 7a–7b, with the lesson "not to do any good to the wicked, so that one should not suffer from them"; the story given in text on pp. 953–954, concerning the man who understood the language of the animals; as well as the one about the pious son. This, of course, proves that the sources are quite new. WR 22. 4 and Koheleth 5. 4 must certainly have been made use of by Alphabet and the two other sources mentioned.—The Talmudim, like the Midrashim, contain very extensive material of animal folk-lore, a very small part of which is to be found in Lewysohn, *Zoologie des Talmuds* (350–358). As to the post-talmudic period, see Duran, *Magen Abot* (comp., e. g., 35b–37b) and *Shebet Musar* (particularly chapter 22), which contains vast material on this subject. The following contains material taken from the older sources. The propagation of animals is usually the result of cohabitation, but there is also spontaneous generation, i. e., animals springing forth as the result of the putrefaction of animals or vegetables. Man, fish, and serpent are the only species whose mates face each other during cohabitation, because they are the only living creatures to whom God spoke (Gen. 3. 14; Jonah 2. 11); hence this distinction is conferred upon them; Bekorot 8a; BR 20. 3. Once in seven years God transforms nature, as a result of which the hornet springs forth from the remains of the horse; bees from the cattle; the wild boar from the mountain-mouse; the multipede from the backbone of the fish;



the serpent from the backbone of the human body which did not formerly bow down at the time of prayer; Yerushalmi Shabbat 1, 3b. The beginning of this passage is badly corrupted, part of it, however, may be restored in accordance with Baba Kamma 16a (bottom) and with the text of R. Hananel, Baba Kamma *loc. cit.* One may read, with certainty, ... **קמושה מיתעבד חוח** ... **אפא מיתעבד שד ממוחו דרישא** ... **ודמעיא סממא**. It is questionable whether **קמוש** and **חוח** in Yerushalmi and Babli are to be taken as bramble-bushes. Targum on Is. 34. 13 and Hos. 9. 6 takes these nouns to be certain species of animals, as has been rightly observed by Duran, *Magen Abot*, 58b; comp. also Kimhi on the first passage. Both Yerushalmi and Babli speak in this connection of the sexual metamorphosis of the hyena (comp. note 177 with respect to the peculiarity of giving birth through the mouth, comp. Huppat Eliyyahu 3, where this is ascribed to the raven), and Babli knows of a long process of transformations of this animal, which finally becomes a demon. Concerning the splendor of the color of this animal, it is said that it possesses 365 different colors; see BR 7. 4; Tan. Tazria' 2; Tehillim 103, 432. Comp. also Berakot 6a, where this is stated with reference to the bird Kerum.—The serpent is the wicked among the animals (Bekorot 68a; Yerushalmi Berakot 2, 9a; accordingly MHG I, 95, **הרשע**=the serpent), and despite his punishment after the fall, this animal retained his weakness for the feminine sex; comp. Shabbat 109a, and see footnote 60 on p. 71. A remedy against serpents is the fumigation of the places frequented by them with the horns of a hind (this is also found in Pliny, *Historia Naturalis*, VIII, 32, 50), which is the “pious one” among the animals. Whenever a drought occurs, the other animals apply to the hind to pray to God, who will listen to its prayers on account of its piety. It digs a pit in the ground into which it sticks its horns, and prays to God for rain. Whereupon God causes water to come up from the abyss. See Tehillim 25, 187. The attribute “pious” is shared by the hind with the stork which is called in Hebrew *Hasidah*, “the pious one,” because the animals of this species are kind to one another; Hullin 63a; Tehillim 104, 144; Philo, *De Decalogo*, 12, who is very likely dependent upon Aristotle, *Historia Animalium*, 9. 13. Comp. also Hasidim 240–241, and the passages referred to by the editor, as well as *Shebet Musar* 25 (end), concerning the family purity of the stork. The heron, though it is closely related to the stork, is possessed of a different nature; it is a very unkind animal, and its name in Hebrew is therefore *Anafah*, “the wrathful one”; Hullin, *loc. cit.* The stork and the heron both belong to the family of birds that are distinguished for their keen sight, so that from Babylon they can see any object in Palestine; Hullin 63a–63b; PK 29. 187b. The ostrich like the heron is also a cruel bird, which does not even care for its young; Lekah, Lev. 11. 16 (it is very likely based on a reading very different from our texts of Hullin 64b).

On the hyena, jackal, and bear comp. note 181. The lowest and least developed mind is attributed to the fishes; Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 22 (it is very likely based on Plato, *Timaeus*, 92a), and this view is connected with the statement that the fishes did not receive any names from Adam; Tosafot on Hullin 66b; and *Pa'aneah*, Lev. 11 (end). Philo, however, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 12, makes Adam name every living thing. Descriptions of fabulous animals are found in the Hebrew version of the Alexander legend (comp. Lèvi in *Steinschneider-Festschrift* 145, *seq.*); Hadassi, Eshkol 24b–24c, and *Zel 'Olam*, II, 5, *seq.* The following account by R. Akiba goes back to an Indian fable. R. Akiba saw once a lion, a dog, and a lizard (**אנקניתא**) is akin to Hebrew **קה** (**אנ**); the lion wanted to attack the dog, but could not carry out his plan out of fear of the lizard (read **צדי**), which is the protector of the lion, whereas the dog is the protector of the lizard. Tehillim 104, 445.

## ALL THINGS PRAISE THE LORD

“**W**hatever God created has value.” Even the animals and the insects that seem useless and noxious at first sight have a vocation to fulfil. The snail trailing a moist streak after it as it crawls, and so using up its vitality, serves as a remedy for boils. The sting of a hornet is healed by the house-fly crushed and applied to the wound. The gnat, feeble creature, taking in food but never secreting it, is a specific against the poison of a viper, and this venomous reptile itself cures eruptions, while the lizard is the antidote to the scorpion.<sup>191</sup>

Not only do all creatures serve man, and contribute to his comfort, but also God “teacheth us through the beasts of the earth, and maketh us wise through the fowls of heaven.” He endowed many animals with admirable moral qualities as a pattern for man. If the Torah had not been revealed to us, we might have learnt regard for the decencies of life from the cat, who covers her excrement with earth; regard for the property of others from the ants, who never encroach upon one another’s stores; and



regard for decorous conduct from the cock, who, when he desires to unite with the hen, promises to buy her a cloak long enough to reach to the ground, and when the hen reminds him of his promise, he shakes his comb and says, "May I be deprived of my comb, if I do not buy it when I have the means." The grasshopper also has a lesson to teach to man. All the summer through it sings, until its belly bursts, and death claims it. Though it knows the fate that awaits it, yet it sings on. So man should do his duty toward God, no matter what the consequences. The stork should be taken as a model in two respects. He guards the purity of his family life zealously, and toward his fellows he is compassionate and merciful. Even the frog can be the teacher of man. By the side of the water there lives a species of animals which subsist off aquatic creatures alone. When the frog notices that one of them is hungry, he goes to it of his own accord, and offers himself as food, thus fulfilling the injunction, "If thine enemy be hungry, give him bread to eat; and if he be thirsty, give him water to drink."<sup>192</sup>

The whole of creation was called into existence by God unto His glory,<sup>193</sup> and each creature has its own hymn of praise wherewith to extol the Creator. Heaven and earth, Paradise and hell, desert and field, rivers and seas—all have their own way of paying homage to God. The hymn of the earth is, "From the uttermost part of the earth have we heard songs, glory to the Righteous." The sea exclaims, "Above the voices of many waters, the mighty breakers of the sea, the Lord on high is mighty."

Also the celestial bodies and the elements proclaim the praise of their Creator—the sun, moon, and stars, the clouds and the winds, lightning and dew. The sun says, "The sun and moon stood still in their habitation, at the light of Thine arrows as they went, at the shining of Thy glittering spear"; and the stars sing, "Thou art the Lord, even Thou alone; Thou hast made heaven,

the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth and all things that are thereon, the seas and all that is in them, and Thou preservest them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth Thee."

Every plant, furthermore, has a song of praise. The fruitful tree sings, "Then shall all the trees of the wood sing for joy, before the Lord, for He cometh; for He cometh to judge the earth"; and the ears of grain on the field sing, "The pastures are covered with flocks; the valleys also are covered over with corn; they shout for joy, they also sing."

Great among singers of praise are the birds, and greatest among them is the cock. When God at midnight goes to the pious in Paradise, all the trees therein break out into adoration, and their songs awaken the cock, who begins in turn to praise God. Seven times he crows, each time reciting a verse. The first verse is: "Lift up your heads, O ye gates; and be ye lift up, ye everlasting doors, and the King of glory shall come in. Who is the King of glory? The Lord strong and mighty, the Lord mighty in battle." The second verse: "Lift up your heads, O ye gates; yea, lift them up, ye everlasting doors, and the King of glory shall come in. Who is this King of glory? The Lord of hosts, He is the King of glory." The third: "Arise, ye righteous, and occupy yourselves with the Torah, that your reward may be abundant in the world hereafter." The fourth: "I have waited for Thy salvation, O Lord!" The fifth: "How long wilt thou sleep, O sluggard? When wilt thou arise out of thy sleep?" The sixth: "Love not sleep, lest thou come to poverty; open thine eyes, and thou shalt be satisfied with bread." And the seventh verse sung by the cock runs: "It is time to work for the Lord, for they have made void Thy law."

The song of the vulture is: "I will hiss for them, and gather them; for I have redeemed them, and they shall increase as they have increased"—the same verse with which the bird will in time to come announce the advent of the Messiah,



the only difference being, that when he heralds the Messiah he will sit upon the ground and sing his verse, while at all other times he is seated elsewhere when he sings it.

Nor do the other animals praise God less than the birds. Even the beasts of prey give forth adoration. The lion says: “The Lord shall go forth as a mighty man; He shall stir up jealousy like a man of war; He shall cry, yea, He shall shout aloud; He shall do mightily against his enemies.” And the fox exhorts unto justice with the words: “Woe unto him that buildeth his house by unrighteousness, and his chambers by injustice; that useth his neighbor’s service without wages, and giveth him not his hire.”

Yea, the dumb fishes know how to proclaim the praise of their Lord. “The voice of the Lord is upon the waters,” they say, “the God of glory thundereth, even the Lord upon many waters”; while the frog exclaims, “Blessed be the name of the glory of His kingdom forever and ever!”

Contemptible though they are, even the reptiles give praise unto their Creator. The mouse extols God with the words: “Howbeit Thou art just in all that is come upon me; for Thou hast dealt truly, but I have done wickedly.” And the cat sings: “Let everything that hath breath praise the Lord. Praise ye the Lord.”<sup>194</sup>

---

191. Shabbat 77b. The sentence “Whatever, etc.” literally agrees with that of Aristotle, *De Coelo*, I, 4: Ὁ δὲ θεὸς καὶ ἡ φύσις οὐδὲν μᾶτην ποιούσιν. Many a species of animal was only created on account of a single specimen to which some special historical mission was assigned. For instance, the gnat that lives only one day was destined to cause the death of Titus (it crept through his nose into his brains); Gittin 56b; 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 24a; BR 10. 7; WR 22. 1; Koheleth 5. 8; Koheleth Z., 104; BaR 18. 22; Tan. B. IV, 98, *seq.*; Tan. Hukkat 1; ShR 10. 1. Comp. also Ecclu. 39. 28–34. The emphasis frequently laid on the statement that everything in nature has a mission to perform, so that even the bad may be applied as a means to attain the good, is directed against the view of the Persians, according to which all noxious animals are the creation of

the god Ahriman. See Lactantius, *Institutiones*, 7. 4, who like the Rabbis emphasized the usefulness of all created things.

192. ‘Erubin 100b, where the monogamous life of the dove is pointed out as a moral lesson which may be derived from nature. The statement concerning grasshoppers, storks, and frogs are found in *Shebet Musar* 22, 70b and 73c, as well as 31, 98a (comp. also note 190), the source or sources of which are not known. On the frog, comp. Löw in *Florilegium*. . . *M. de Vogüé*, 398, and below, note 194. A description of the superiority of many animals over man in moral and physical respects is contained in part 15 of *Ben ha-Melek*. On the ant comp. DR 5. 2.

193. Tosefta Yoma 2. 5 and Babli 38a, as well as ShR 17. 1, where this idea, derived from the Bible (Is. 43. 7 and Prov. 16. 4), is fully developed. The creation is the revelation of God’s majesty and splendor in nature; compare with p. 1, and footnote 2 on p. 47.

194. Perek (Pirke) Shirah. On the oldest source where this small treatise is made use of and on its history, comp. Steinschneider, *Hebräische Bibliographie*, XIII, 103, 106, and Zunz, *Magazin*, XVIII, 301–302. It is questionable whether, as Steinschneider maintains, this treatise was influenced by the fable of the contest of animals which plays an important role in the writings of the Pure Brethren. The conception that the animals and all created things chant praise to God is genuinely Jewish, and is not only poetically expressed in the Bible (Ps. 65. 14, etc.), but occurs quite frequently in talmudic and midrashic literature, where the “singing” and praise of the animals and trees are spoken of; comp. Rosh ha-Shanah 8a; Hullin 54b; ‘Abodah Zarah 24b; BR 13. 2; Tehillim 104, 442–443 (read אֲנִי עוֹמֵד אֵין; the words וְאֵין יוֹדֵעַ are an explanatory gloss), and 148, 538. That animals chant praise seems quite natural in legends, since they originally spoke in human language (compare with p. 69), and after the fall of man they were still in possession of languages which many a wise man understood; Gittin 45a. Compare also with p. 953, *seq.* The language of trees was understood not only by R. Johanan b. Zaccai (Sukkah 28a; Baba Batra 184a; Soferim 16. 9), but also by the Gaon R. Abraham; comp. *‘Aruk*, s. v. חָס 1, and the parallels cited by Kohut, as well as *Toratan shel Rishonim* I, 63. If we further find that in Perek Shirah inanimate objects also praise God, we have to bear in mind that Hippolytus, *Haeres.*, 9, 25 explicitly states (comp. also 5, 2, where the same assertion is made concerning the gnostic sect of the Naasenians) that according to the Jewish view, “all things in creation are endowed with sensation, and that there is nothing inanimate.” In mystic literature the angels of animals, trees, rivers, etc., praise God; comp. Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 7–8; Tosafot on ‘Abodah Zarah 17a (bottom); Hullin 7a (bottom). Comp. notes 102, 105, 112, and Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 340. The Christian legend



knows not only of talking animals, trees, or other inanimate objects like ships, water, pictures, *etc.* (comp. Günter, *Christliche Legende*. s. v. "Redend;" Acts of Xantippe, 30; Narrative of Zosimus II), but is also familiar with the chants of praises of all things, which are divided into twelve classes, and utter their praise in turn one hour every day. Comp. the Testament of Adam, and the literature appertaining to it, cited by Bezold, *Das Arabisch-Aethiopische Testamentum Adami* in *Orientalische Studien*, 893–912, and James, *The Lost Apocrypha* 2–4. 2 Enoch 2. 5 is a reminiscence of Ps. 150. 6, while the Testament of Abraham 3 speaks of the human language of the trees; comp. Hagigah 14b.—In connection with the praises enumerated in Perek Shirah the following is to be noted: On the earth comp. Sanhedrin 37b and 94a ("the prince of the earth", alluded to in this passage, refers to the angel of the earth; comp. note 75); on the sea and the water comp. note 53; concerning the trees see Hagigah 14b. God's visit paid to the pious in paradise, with which the song of the cock is to be connected, is frequently mentioned in later Midrashim, especially in the mystic literature; comp. Midrash Shir 42a; midrashic quotation in the anonymous commentary on Song of Songs, published in *Steinschneider-Festschrift*, Hebrew section, 55–56, where the song of praise of the trees in paradise is brought in connection with God's visit; Seder Gan 'Eden

132–133; Zohar I, 10b, 40b, 72a, 77a–77b, 82b, 92a, 92b, 178b, 218b; II, 46a, 57a, 173b, 175b, 196a; III, 22a, 22b, 23a, 52b, 193a; Zohar Hadash Bereshit 3, 17b. On the cock as the herald of light, and the one who admonishes man not to forget to chant praise to God, comp. the Greek Apocalypse of Baruch 7, and for further details, see Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 77, *seq.*, and Ginzberg in *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. "Cock", and note 39. As to the song of praise of the vulture, comp. Hullin 63a. Concerning the song of the mouse, comp. note 171. On the hymn of the frog see text on pp. 927, as well as, and Löw *Lurchnamen* 7 in *Florilegium* in honor of M. de Vogüé, 398. In connection with the Hebrew name of the first letter of the alphabet, God is made to say: "I open the tongue and mouth of all men (אפתח לשון פה=אלף), so that they shall praise Me daily and recognize Me as King over the four corners of the earth. Were it not for the daily hymns and songs of praise, I should not have created the world." The heavens, the earth, the rivers, the brooks, the mountains, and the hills, in brief, the entire order of creation, chant hymns to the Creator. Adam too intoned a hymn to the Lord saying, (compare with p. 83): "It is a good thing to give thanks to the Lord, and to sing praise to His name." With these words he referred to the songs of praise intoned by the celestials and terrestrials; Alphabet R. Akiba 12–13.



## II ADAM

### MAN AND THE WORLD

With ten Sayings God created the world, although a single Saying would have sufficed. God desired to make known how severe is the punishment to be meted out to the wicked, who destroy a world created with as many as ten Sayings, and how goodly the reward destined for the righteous, who preserve a world created with as many as ten Sayings.<sup>1</sup>

The world was made for man, though he was the last-comer among its creatures. This was design. He was to find all things ready for him. God was the host who prepared dainty dishes, set the table, and then led His guest to his seat. At the same time man's late appearance on earth is to convey an admonition to humility. Let him beware of being proud, lest he invite the retort that the gnat is older than he.<sup>2</sup>

The superiority of man to the other creatures is apparent in the very manner of his creation, altogether different from theirs. He is the only one who was created by the hand of God.<sup>3</sup> The rest sprang from the word of God. The body of man is a microcosm, the whole world in miniature, and the world in turn is a reflex of man. The hair upon his head corresponds to the woods of the earth, his tears to a river, his

mouth to the ocean.<sup>4</sup> Also, the world resembles the ball of his eye: the ocean that encircles the earth is like unto the white of the eye, the dry land is the iris, Jerusalem the pupil, and the Temple the image mirrored in the pupil of the eye.<sup>5</sup>

But man is more than a mere image of this world. He unites both heavenly and earthly qualities within himself. In four he resembles the angels, in four the beasts. His power of speech, his discriminating intellect, his upright walk, the glance of his eye—they all make an angel of him. But, on the other hand, he eats and drinks, secretes the waste matter in his body, propagates his kind, and dies, like the beast of the field. Therefore God said before the creation of man: "The celestials are not propagated, but they are immortal; the beings on earth are propagated, but they die. I will create man to be the union of the two, so that when he sins, when he behaves like a beast, death shall overtake him; but if he refrains from sin, he shall live forever."<sup>6</sup> God now bade all beings in heaven and on earth contribute to the creation of man, and He Himself took part in it. Thus they all will love man, and if he should sin, they will be interested in his preservation.<sup>7</sup>

The whole world naturally was created for the pious, the God-fearing man, whom Israel pro-



duces with the helpful guidance of the law of God revealed to him.<sup>8</sup> It was, therefore, Israel who was taken into special consideration at the time man was made. All other creatures were instructed to change their nature, if Israel should ever need their help in the course of his history. The sea was ordered to divide before Moses, and the heavens to give ear to the words of the leader; the sun and the moon were bidden to stand still before Joshua, the ravens to feed Elijah, the fire to spare the three youths in the furnace, the lion to do no harm to Daniel, the fish to spew forth Jonah, and the heavens to open before Ezekiel.<sup>9</sup>

In His modesty, God took counsel with the angels, before the creation of the world, regarding His intention of making man. He said: "For the sake of Israel, I will create the world. As I shall make a division between light and darkness, so I will in time to come do for Israel in Egypt—thick darkness shall be over the land, and the children of Israel shall have light in their dwellings; as I shall make a separation between the waters under the firmament and the waters above the firmament, so I will do for Israel—I will divide the waters for him when he crosses the Red Sea; as on the third day I shall create plants, so I will do for Israel—I will bring forth manna for him in the wilderness; as I shall create luminaries to divide day from night, so I will do for Israel—I will go before him by day in a pillar of cloud and by night in a pillar of fire; as I shall create the fowl of the air and the fishes of the sea, so I will do for Israel—I will bring quails for him from the sea; and as I shall breathe the breath of life into the nostrils of man, so I will do for Israel—I will give the Torah unto him, the tree of life."

The angels marvelled that so much love should be lavished upon this people of Israel, and God told them: "On the first day of creation, I shall make the heavens and stretch them out; so will Israel raise up the Tabernacle as the dwelling-place of My glory. On the second day,

I shall put a division between the terrestrial waters and the heavenly waters; so will he hang up a veil in the Tabernacle to divide the Holy Place and the Most Holy. On the third day, I shall make the earth put forth grass and herb; so will he, in obedience to My commands, eat herbs on the first night of the Passover, and prepare showbread for Me. On the fourth day, I shall make the luminaries; so will he make a golden candlestick for Me. On the fifth day, I shall create the birds; so will he fashion the cherubim with outstretched wings. On the sixth day, I shall create man; so will Israel set aside a man of the sons of Aaron as high priest for My service."<sup>10</sup>

Accordingly, the whole of creation was conditional. God said to the things He made on the first six days: "If Israel accepts the Torah, you will continue and endure; otherwise, I shall turn everything back into chaos again." The whole world was thus kept in suspense and dread until the day of the revelation on Sinai, when Israel received and accepted the Torah, and so fulfilled the condition made by God at the time when He created the universe.<sup>11</sup>

---

1. Abot 5. 1; ARN 31, 90 (second version 36, 90); Rosh ha-Shanah 32a; BR 17. 1; PR 21, 108 (whence Mahzor Vitry 535); PRE 3; Lekah, Gen. 1. 5; Tikkune Zohar 70; the commentators of the Mishnah quoted by Schechter on 2 ARN. The number 10 (on the significance of this number comp. Lekah, *loc. cit.*; Tehillim 5, 19; Ma'aseh Torah 10) is computed in various ways. In Gen. 1. 3–29 the expression "and God said" occurs only nine times, but the prevalent view is that the very first beginning of creation likewise resulted from God's utterance (on the doctrine of *creatio ex nihilo* comp. Excursus I), so that there were ten utterances corresponding to the ten acts of creation. The Gnostic Manicismism also speaks of the ten creations; comp. Hippolytus, *Haeres.*, 8. 7. The expression "God's word is an act" occurs frequently in Jewish and Christian writings; comp. BR 44. 22; Tehillim 107, 461–462; Enoch 14. 17; 2 Enoch 33.4; Philo, *Sacrif. Caini*, 18. Comp. further Apocalypse of Baruch 14.17; 4 Ezra 6. 38; Heb. 11. 3; 2 Peter 3. 5; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Hortatio*, 4.



2. Tosefta Sanhedrin 8. 7–8; Babli 38a; Yerushalmi 4 (end). Comp. note 8.

3. Alphabet of R. Akiba 59, whence Rashi borrowed his remark on Gen. 1. 27. This assertion is found much more frequently in Christian sources; comp. Theophilus Ant., *Ad Autol.*, II, 18; Aphraates, 240; Clementine *Homilies*, II, 52; III, 20; IV, 34 (the last passage is a quotation from Is. 41. 20); Athenagoras, *Legat.*, 33; Irenaeus, *Haer.*, 5. 5, 1, and 2. 58 (the hands of God=the Holy Ghost and the Son); Apocalypse of Ezra (beginning); Tertullian, *D. Resurrectione*, 5; *Adversus Marcionem*, 2, ps.—Tertullian, on Gen. 35–40; Origen, *Contra Celsum*, 4, 37 (the biblical passages referring to this subject, as Job 10. 8 and Ps. 119. 73, are not to be taken literally, but have a hidden meaning); Clemens Alexandrinus, *Instructor*, 1, 3; Emerson, *Legends of Cain (Publications of Modern Languages Association of America, XXI, 41)* shows the continuance of this conception in Christian literature of the latter part of the Middle Ages. Comp. further Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 21–22, and 29, note 2. On the occurrence of this legend in pseudepigraphic literature comp. 4 Ezra 4. 14, and the Armenian version of the Book of Adam in Preuschen's *Adamschriften*, 29, and 2 Enoch 44. 1. In the following passages of the older literature the expression "the right, the left hand, one, and both hands of God" must not be taken literally; they only describe the relative importance of creations. God created the world with one hand, the temple with both hands (Mekilta Shirah 10, 44a; Mekilta RS. 70); He created the heavenly beings with His right hand, and the terrestrial with His left (Menahot 36b; Sifre D., 35; Midrash Tannaim 28; Mekilta Pasha 17, 21a; Wa-Yosha' 49; see further text on p. 1165). He created the whole world with one hand, man and the temple with both (ARN 1, 8; Ketubot 5a; comp. further PRE 7, beginning; Ma'amar 'Aseret Melakim 54; Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 69b; Alphabet of R. Akiba 24–25; Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 1, bottom, and 4, bottom; footnote 12 on p. 4, the sources with reference to the letters by means of which God created the world). The statement which emphasizes the fact that man is the creation of God's hands is probably directed against the doctrine of Philo and the Gnostics who maintain that Adam was partly or wholly created by the angels; comp. note 14. It is noteworthy that Philo, *De Somn.*, 1, 36, emphatically asserts that "man was not made by hand, but is the work of invisible nature."

4. ARN 31, 91–92, where parallels are drawn between man and the world. The comparison between man and the world in both directions, man as microcosmos and the world as macroanthropos, is a favorite subject of the Haggadah; comp., *e. g.*, Aggadat 'Olam Katan 57–59; Pesikta Hadta 36; Alphabet of R. Akiba 13; Tan. B. II, 34; Abkir in Yalkut I, 148 and 743; Koheleth and Koheleth Z. 1. 4 (this is the source of Yalkut I, 186; the reference to Tan. in

the editions is erroneous); PR 203a; Targum and Midrash in Eccl. 9. 4 and 12. 2, *seq.* Of special interest are, in later literature, the parallels elaborately drawn between man and the world; see *Orehot Zaddikim* 28 (towards the end), and *Shebet Musar* I. Since the conception of the microcosmos (Hebrew עולם קטן occurs for the first time in Tan. Pekude 3) was already known to the Babylonians (see Winckler, *Babylonische Cultur*, 33), there is no necessity to trace the haggadic conception of the microcosmos to the corresponding philosophical doctrine of the Greeks. Dependent upon the latter are Philo (*De M. Opif.*, 28; *De Plant. Noe.*, 19; *Moses*, 3. 14) and the statement bearing upon this subject found in the medieval philosophical literature of the Jews (comp. *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. "Microcosmos", and Malter, *Personification of Soul and Body*, J.Q.R., N.S., II, 453, *seq.*). The doctrine of the later Kabbalah concerning the Adam Kadmon (comp. Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, I, 183) partly coincides with the philosophical and partly with the haggadic conception of man as microcosmos. It is questionable whether 4 Ezra 4. 10 knows of man as microcosmos; but one may ascribe the acquaintance with this view to 2 Enoch 30. 8.

5. Derek Erez Z. (end). Comp. the sources in the preceding note and Rashi on Bekorot 16a.

6. BR 7. 11, 12. 8, 14. 3; Hagigah 16a (on the text of the talmudic passage comp. Lekah, Gen. 1. 20, according to which angels resemble man with respect to the fact that they are endowed with speech, but not in the use of the Hebrew language, as our texts of the Talmud read; comp. note 58); ARN 37, 109; Shemuel 2, 48; PR 43, 179b; Aggadat Bereshit 52, 106; Baraita of 32 Middot, No 16; Ma'aseh Torah 98; Sifre D., 306, 132b (וְכָךְ הָיָה ר' סִימְאִי); Midrash Tannaim 185–186; Midrash R. Akiba 31; EZ 3, 176. Comp. Schechter on ARN, *loc. cit.*, and Yalkut II, 831 (end). Man, according to Philo too, is a “creature” on the boundary-line of the mortal and the immortal; comp. *De Fortitud.*, 3; *De M. Opif.*, 46 and 24. In Lactantius, *Institutiones*, 2. 13, the conception of man as a creature combining the heavenly and earthly elements is brought into relation with the view that he is considered as microcosmos (comp. note 4). This Church Father, in several passages, calls attention (7. 5, 9; 2. 13) to the fact “that animals look downward because they are earthly; man looks upward because he is of heavenly origin.” This statement is found not only in Lactantius, but also in Philo, *Noe*, 2. 4, and *Quod Deterius Potiori Insidiari Soleat*, 29. A midrashic passage quoted by many medieval authors (*Sefer Mizwot Gadol*, Introduction to the positive precepts; *Sefer Mizwot Katan*, No. 53; Hasidim 478), and found also in a manuscript of Tan. (Introduction 152 and 154), reads as follows: Neither the angels nor the animals satisfied God; the former have no evil inclination (this view is based on BR 48. 11), the latter have no good inclination. The good of the one and the evil



of the other, therefore, are not the result of their free will. God therefore created man who possesses both the good and evil inclinations; if he follows evil, he is likened to an animal; if he follows good, he is higher than an angel (comp. BR 14. 3–4 and the parallel passages). A similar view on the nature of man is expressed by the Church Fathers; comp. Theophilus, 2, 27, and especially Tertullian, *Adversus Marcionem*, 2, 8, who finds, in agreement with R. Akiba in BR 21. 5, the superiority of man to the angels in his free will. Here and there one meets with the view that man was created in the image and likeness of the angels, not in that of God; comp. BR, *loc. cit.*, and ShR 30. 16. This is most likely directed against the Christians, who interpret Gen. 1. 27 and 5. 1 christologically; comp. Tertullian, *Adversus Marcionem*, 2. 5; *De Resurrectione*, 6; *Adversus Praxean*, 12. There are numerous other explanations of these verses in Genesis; comp. BR 8. 9, and the parallel passages cited by Theodor; see further Abot 3. 21 (on this statement of R. Akiba comp. Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. “Adam Kadmon” and “Akiba”, as well as Geiger, *Kebuzzat Ma’am-arim*, Poznanski’s edition, 101–105, and Ginzberg’s notes, 396); *Peletat Soferim*, 3–4; Tan. Introduction 154 (read שכתבתי כמו); Lekah, Gen. 1. 27; *Guide of the Perplexed*, I, 1. The conception that man was created in the image of the angels is perhaps related to the statement made in Jub. 15. 27, according to which certain classes of angels were created “circumcised”; comp. Tikkunim 47. The view expressed in the last-named passage, as well as in other kabbalistic sources, that only the Jew who observes the law resembles the image of God or of the angels, finds its counterpart among the Church Fathers with respect to Christians; comp. Clemens Alexandrinus, *Protrepticus* (end); Clementine *Homilies*, 11. 4; 16. 19; 17. 7; Origen, *De Princ.*, III, 6. 1; *Contra Celsum*, 7, 63 (where a rationalistic attitude is adopted). On the question whether animals possess an evil inclination, comp. 2 ARN 34, 74; BR 14. 4; Berakot 60a.

7. Yalkut Reubeni on Gen. 1. 26 (the source is given as Midrash, but it must be a later one). The older sources (BR 12. 8; WR 9. 9; Tan. B. I, 11; MHG I, 51; Zohar III, 219b, which gives a somewhat mystic interpretation) remark: All things came to being alternately out of heaven and earth, both of which had been created on the first day. Accordingly the firmament, the creation of the second day, sprang up from heaven; the plants on the third day from the earth; the lights on the fourth day emanated from heaven; the animals on the fifth day arose from the earth. When God was about to create man, He said: “If I create man of the earth, the terrestrial creations will be numerically more than the celestial ones; if I create him of heaven, the result will be the reverse.” Hence He created man’s soul of heaven and his body of earth. Thus was harmony established between heaven and earth.

8. The view occurring frequently in rabbinic and pseudepigraphic literature that the world was created for the sake of Israel (BR 1. 4, and the parallels cited by Theodor; see further Batte Midrashot I, 44; Shir 2. 2 and 7. 3; Tan. B. IV, 5; Tehillim 109, 465; Makiri on Ps. 47, 262; 4 Ezra 6. 55; Apocalypse of Baruch 14. 17; Assumption of Moses 1. 12; compare further pp. 1150, 1154, 1159, 1163, as well as the numerous sources cited by Weber, *Palästinensische Theologie*), does not owe its origin to national pride, but is closely connected with the ethical conception of creation. Man was the purpose of creation, and just as “the host will not invite his guest to the feast, until everything has been prepared . . . ; even so thought and did the Guide of all things . . . When He wished to invite man to the feast, He prepared the necessary good things” (Philo, *De M. Optif.*, 25; comp. further *De Sacrificiis Abelis*, 3; *De Decalogo*, 10). Practically the same words are used by the Rabbis, Sanhedrin Tosefta 8. 7–9; Babli 38a; Yerushalmi 4 (end). See also Kiddushin 4. 14. Of course, it is not every man that can claim to be the “crown of creation”. “He who observes the law . . . and obeys God . . . outweighs the whole world”, observe Philo (*De Decalogo*, 10) and the Rabbis, Sanhedrin 103b. It is not the average man but, to use a modern expression, the “superman” who was the goal of creation. Hence the Rabbis remark that the world was created for the sake of Abraham, Moses, David, the Messiah; BR 1. 7; 12. 2 and 9; Sanhedrin 98b; Hullin 89a. To be sure, every man is given the opportunity to attain to the highest ideal. It is therefore asserted that “every Jew, that every man may outweigh the whole world”; comp. Sanhedrin 4. 5; ARN 30, 90–91 (מִיִּשְׂרָאֵל has been added by the editor without good authority); second version 36, 90. The means whereby man may attain the goal of his task was given in God’s revelation, in the Torah. Hence the frequent statement that it is the Torah for whose sake the world was created; comp. Index, s. v. “Torah”. See further Assumption of Moses 1. 12, where *legem* should perhaps be read instead of *plebem*. Nahmanides, in his *Derashah*, 1–4, with his deep insight recognized the relationship that exists between the rabbinic statement concerning man as the purpose of creation and the assertion of the Rabbis regarding Israel and the Torah as necessary conditions for the existence of the world. His polemic against Ibn Ezra (Gen. 1.1) and Maimonides (*Guide of the Perplexed*, III, 13), who deny that man is the purpose of creation, is justified from the talmudic point of view. The fundamental idea that man is the crown of creation, and that the Torah was revealed to Israel as the only means whereby man can perform the task assigned to him, is found in the Bible (comp. especially Jer. 31. 35 and 33. 25–26; Ps. 8. 6–7; Is. 42. 5–6). The Church accepted this view, without any modifications, substituting only the word “Christian” for “Jew.” “The Christian is of greater importance than the whole world”, observes Cyprian



(*Epistola ad Donatum*, 1. 14), and Justin Martyr, 2 *Apologia*, 7, speaks of “Christians who knew that they were the cause of the preservation of nature”. This statement, with variations, is likewise found in the letter *Ad Diogenem*, 7 (towards the end), ascribed to that Church Father. Comp. further his *Apologia*, 1. 45, as well as Aristides, *Apologia*, 26, 1. 17 (Syriac text). The attacks on Jewish arrogance and exclusiveness, in modern theological literature, on account of this belief, are practically identical with those against which Origen had to defend the Christians. Similar charges were brought by the pagan Celsus against the Christians, and Origen refuted them in his *Contra Celsum*, 4. 27–31 (he quotes the following from Euripides: The sun and the moon are slaves of mortal men), and particularly 74–79. Comp. also note 6, which contains quotations from patristic literature on the view that the Christian alone was made in the image of God. On the view that the world was created for the sake of man, see also Justin, *Apologia*, 1. 10; *Dialogue*, 10; Aristides, *Apologia* (bottom). See also Lactantius, *Institutiones*, 2. 11 and 8. 5; Tertullian, *Adversus Marcionem*, 2. 3 and 4. Comp. also, Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 9–10. The following characteristic remark of the Talmud (Berakot 61b) may be quoted here: The world was created only for the very pious or for the very wicked, for men like R. Hanina b. Dosa (a saint who flourished during the first century C. E.); or for men like Ahab; this world was created for the latter, the other for the former.

9. BR 5. 5 (the reading יונתן ר' is also in Mekilta RS, 53); Aguddat Aggadot 21–22; Midrash Jonah 102–103; Zohar II, 198b. The view that miracles are primordial creations was later developed by Maimonides, *Guide of the Perplexed*, II, 29, in whose theology it plays an important part. The following sources have this remark on miracles: God already performed in this world, through the prophets, a part of the miracles which are to take place in the world to come: PK 9, 76a; WR 27. 4; Tan. B. III, 90, and IV, 4; Tan. Emor 9; Koheleth 3. 15. Comp. also Tan. Introduction 153.

10. Abkir in Yalkut I, 17; Midrash Shir 8; Tan. Pekude 2; 2 Ben Sira 32b; Pesikta Hadta 38; Aguddat Aggadot 8; comp. Horowitz, *ad loc.* See further text on p. 639; text on p. 1150. On the idea that God consulted the angels, compare footnote 12 and footnote 3, on p. 1.

11. Shabbat 88a; DR 8. 5; Ruth R. (beginning); Koheleth 1. 4. Comp. note 8, and footnote 202 on p. 600.

## THE ANGELS AND THE CREATION OF MAN

God in His wisdom having resolved to create man, He asked counsel of all around Him before He proceeded to execute His purpose—an example to man, be he never so great and distinguished, not to scorn the advice of the humble and lowly. First God called upon heaven and earth, then upon all other things He had created, and last upon the angels.

The angels were not all of one opinion. The Angel of Love favored the creation of man, because he would be affectionate and loving; but the Angel of Truth opposed it, because he would be full of lies. And while the Angel of Justice favored it, because he would practice justice, the Angel of Peace opposed it, because he would be quarrelsome.

To invalidate his protest, God cast the Angel of Truth down from heaven to earth, and when the others cried out against such contemptuous treatment of their companion, He said, “Truth will spring back out of the earth.”

The objections of the angels would have been much stronger, had they known the whole truth about man. God had told them only about the pious, and had concealed from them that there would be reprobates among mankind, too. And yet, though they knew but half the truth, the angels were nevertheless prompted to cry out: “What is man, that Thou art mindful of him? And the son of man, that Thou visitest him?” God replied: “The fowl of the air and the fish of the sea, what were they created for? Of what avail a larder full of appetizing dainties, and no guest to enjoy them?” And the angels could not but exclaim: “O Lord, our Lord, how excellent is Thy name in all the earth! Do as is pleasing in Thy sight.”<sup>12</sup>

For not a few of the angels their opposition bore fatal consequences. When God summoned



the band under the archangel Michael, and asked their opinion on the creation of man, they answered scornfully: "What is man, that Thou art mindful of him? And the son of man, that Thou visitest him?" God thereupon stretched forth His little finger, and all were consumed by fire except their chief Michael. And the same fate befell the band under the leadership of the archangel Gabriel; he alone of all was saved from destruction.

The third band consulted was commanded by the archangel Labbiel. Taught by the horrible fate of his predecessors, he warned his troop: "You have seen what misfortune overtook the angels who said, 'What is man, that Thou art mindful of him?' Let us have a care not to do likewise, lest we suffer the same dire punishment. For God will not refrain from doing in the end what He has planned. Therefore it is advisable for us to yield to His wishes." Thus warned, the angels spoke: "Lord of the world, it is well that Thou hast thought of creating man. Do Thou create him according to Thy will. And as for us, we will be his attendants and his ministers, and reveal unto him all our secrets." Thereupon God changed Labbiel's name to Raphael, the Rescuer, because his host of angels had been rescued by his sage advice. He was appointed the Angel of Healing, who has in his safe-keeping all the celestial remedies, the types of the medical remedies used on earth.<sup>12</sup>

12. BR 8. 3–9; Tan. Introduction 154; Tehillim 1, 23; PR 40, 166b; comp. further Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 12d; Sanhedrin 38b; DR 2. 13, and parallels cited by Theodor on BR 8. 9. The opposition of the angels to the creation of man is already mentioned in tannaitic sources (comp. Tosefta Sotah 6. 5), and is frequently alluded to in talmudic-midrashic literature; comp. PK 4, 34a; PR 14, 59b; Tan. B. IV, 110; Tan. Wa-Yera 18 and Hukat 6; BaR 19. 3; Koheleth 7. 23; Tehillim 8, 73; 2 Ben Sira 32a; see also the following note. This legend emphasizes the Jewish view as opposed to the Philo-Gnostic opinion, according to which man was, wholly or partly, created by the lower powers, not by God Himself; comp. Philo, *De M. Opif.*,

24; *De Confusione Linguarum*, 35; *De Profug.*, 14. For the Gnostic doctrine see Hippolytus, 7. 16 and 20; Tertullian, *De Resurrectione*, 5, and *De Anima*, 23. In opposition to this view, that man was, wholly or partly, created by the evil or lower powers, the Jewish legend lays stress upon the fact that the angels had nothing to do with man's creation, which they tried rather to prevent. A vague reminiscence of the Gnostic doctrine is the statement found in later sources (*Hadar*, Gen. 1. 27) that, when the angels noticed their superiority to the animal world, they became very proud; hence God commanded them to make a man, in order to humiliate them by their inability to carry out His command. Just as Philo, in the passage cited above, found this theory concerning the angels co-operating in the creation of man confirmed in the words of Scripture: "Let us make" (Gen., *loc. cit.*), so the Christians believed that these words indicated the co-operation of the Logos. It is a moot question in Jewish, as well as in Christian literature, as to how the plural of נִעֲשֶׂה is to be understood. BR, *loc. cit.*, cites not less than six different explanations of this strange plural (some explain it there as a *pluralis majestatis*), whereas most of the Church Fathers take it Christologically; comp. Irenaeus, 2. 5; Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 62 (refutes the Jewish view that God consulted the angels); Theophilus, *Ad Autol.*, 2. 18; Theodoretus, Gen. 1. 27; Basilus, *Hexameron*, Hom. 9. 6; Christian Sibylline Oracles, 8, 544. On the assertion of the Midrashim that God, though not in need of any service, took counsel with the angels, in order that He might serve as an example to man to ask the advice of his fellow-men, comp. Philo, *De Confusione Linguarum*, 27. See further Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 1, 19–21, as well as Goldfahn, *Justin Martyr und die Agada*, 24–25. The angels whom God consulted were the Seraphim, God's advisers, according to some; Mercy and Justice, according to others; see Sode Raza and Sefer ha-Tagin in Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 1. 27; compare with footnote 6, on p. 1. The statement that when a man commits a sin the angels accuse him (quoted from Tan. or Yelammedenu in Makiri on Prov. 3. 18) is probably related to the view that from the very beginning the angels were not favorably inclined towards man. The view that man's own good and evil deeds are his heavenly defenders and accusers, respectively, occurs already in a tannaitic statement (Shabbat 32a). Comp. the following note and note 20.

13. Konen 26–27, and Yerahmeel 14–15 (read Boel instead of Labiel), parts of which only go back to Sanhedrin 38b. Compare also with p. 613, and further 2 Ben Sira 32a concerning the terrible punishment God inflicted on the revolting angels. According to Sode Raza in Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 1. 27, these angels were thrown down from heaven on earth, where Adam met them later. It is noteworthy that in Konen the heads of the heavenly hierarchy are not four or seven (compare with footnote 440 on p. 685,



and footnote 64 on p. 13), but three. This corresponds to the threefold division of the cosmos, already found among the Babylonians, into heaven, earth and water. Michael is therefore said to consist of fire, the heavenly element; Gabriel of snow, the primordial substance of which the earth was made (compare footnote 18 on p. 5). According to others, Michael is of snow, and Gabriel of fire; comp. Targum Job 25. 2; the numerous references by Buber on PK 1, 3a, and footnote 63 on p. 13, as well as the Christian pseudepigraphic *History of Joseph the Carpenter*, 22, which reads: Michael the prince of the angels (the same title is also found in 13, whereas in 6 Gabriel bears this title; comp. BR 78. 1; Shir 3. 6 and BaR 11. 3, where the phrase is used: Michael and Gabriel, the princes of the angels; see Dan. 12. 1), and Gabriel the herald of light. The element out of which the third archangel was made, we may well assume, is the water beneath the earth, the streams of Belial of the Bible=the waters of death. Compare also footnotes 23 on p. 6 and footnote 187 on p. 38. Since in Babylonian mythology Nergal, the god of the nether-world, has the form of a lion (comp. Jeremias in Roscher's *Lexicon der Mythologie*, III, 250), לביאל may be taken to stand for לבי "lion" and אל "god," and its transliteration should accordingly be Lebiel. Most likely the name Raphael had originally nothing to do with רפא "he healed," but was derived from רפאים "shades." In Enoch 22. 1–6 this angel clearly appears as the prince of Hades. In 20. 2–3 the original text probably read: *על רוחות בני אדם ועל השאול רפאל הממונה* "And over the Tartarus, Raphael who is in charge of the departed souls." But the translator took *ועל השאול* to belong to the preceding sentence. The identification of Lebiel with Raphael in Koenig is therefore a learned explanation of an old tradition. It is not certain whether Raphael, as the angel of healing, owes his calling to the false explanation of his name (as "healer" we find him in Tobit and frequently in Jewish and Christian literature; comp., e. g., Baba Mezi'a 86b; Origen, *De Princ.*, I, 8. 1), for the development of the "prince of the nether-world" into the "healer" is quite conceivable. Similar developments may be found in many mythological systems.—On the function of the three archangels, it may be observed that Origen, *loc. cit.*, considers Michael as the angel of prayer, who brings man's prayers before God, and Gabriel as the angel of war. The latter is also the view of the Rabbis, as may be seen from the statement that Gabriel was the one who annihilated Sennacherib's camp, destroyed Sodom, and set fire to the temple at Jerusalem (comp. Index, s. v. "Gabriel"), and is therefore called the severe angel, in contrast to Michael, "the angel of mercy"; comp. Ekah 2, 98. The angel of prayer, according to the Rabbis, is Sandalfon (compare footnote 139 on p. 29, and Index, s. v.), but the Greek Apocalypse of Baruch 11 seems to agree with Origen. In the Christian pseudepigraphic work the *Passing of Mary*, 8, Michael appears as the prince of paradise,

which is to be compared with the function of this angel as high priest in the heavenly temple (comp. Index, s. v.), which is only another expression for paradise. Although in Jewish angelology Michael is superior to Gabriel, so that he alone bears the title "prince" (*Hagigah*, *loc. cit.*, and Hullin 40a; comp. further the Jewish tradition given by Jerome on Dan. 8. 10), one must not fail to note that at least among the Babylonian Jews Gabriel's prestige almost equals that of his rival Michael. Comp. Kohut, *Angelologie*, 24–33, whose views require a thorough revision. Compare also footnote 8 on p. 2.

## THE CREATION OF ADAM

When at last the assent of the angels to the creation of man was given, God said to Gabriel: "Go and fetch Me dust from the four corners of the earth, and I will create man therewith." Gabriel went forth to do the bidding of the Lord, but the earth drove him away, and refused to let him gather up dust from it. Gabriel remonstrated: "Why, O Earth, dost thou not hearken unto the voice of the Lord, who founded thee upon the waters without props or pillars?" The earth replied, and said: "I am destined to become a curse, and to be cursed through man, and if God Himself does not take the dust from me, no one else shall ever do it." When God heard this, He stretched out His hand, took of the dust of the ground, and created the first man therewith.<sup>14</sup>

Of set purpose the dust was taken from all four corners of the earth, so that if a man from the east should happen to die in the west, or a man from the west in the east, the earth should not dare refuse to receive the dead, and tell him to go whence he was taken. Wherever a man chances to die, and wheresoever he is buried, there will he return to the earth from which he sprang. Also, the dust was of various colors—red, black, white, and green—red for the blood, black for the bowels, white for the bones and veins, and green for the pale skin.



At this early moment the Torah interfered. She addressed herself to God: "O Lord of the world! The world is Thine, Thou canst do with it as seemeth good in Thine eyes. But the man Thou art now creating will be few of days and full of trouble and sin. If it be not Thy purpose to have forbearance and patience with him, it were better not to call him into being." God replied, "Is it for naught I am called long-suffering and merciful?"<sup>15</sup>

The grace and lovingkindness of God revealed themselves particularly in His taking one spoonful of dust from the spot where in time to come the altar would stand, saying, "I shall take man from the place of atonement, that he may endure."<sup>16</sup>

---

14. Yerahmeel 15. For a similar statement among the Arabs, comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 61–62. According to Konen 27, it was Michael, not Gabriel, who brought the dust for Adam's body. The rivalry between these two angels is often met with throughout Jewish literature; comp. the preceding note and note 8 on p. 2.

15. PRE 11; Tan. Pekude 3 (end); Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 2. 7; Yerahmeel 15–16; Sanhedrin 38a–38b. Comp. further Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 51, which reads: But in the foundation of the body he is like the whole world, since he is made out of the combination of the same elements as the world, *i. e.*, out of earth, water, air, and fire, in which each element contributed its part towards the completion of the composition of material sufficient for this purpose . . . to form this visible image. This view of the Greek philosophers that the human body consists of the four elements is mentioned by Philo also, *De Decalogo*, 8; but in *De Somn.*, 1. 3, he is in agreement with the Jewish sources (comp. Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.*; MHG I, 73, goes back to a very late source, which is acquainted with the philosophical doctrine of the four elements), and states that Adam's body was formed out of earth and water. 2 Enoch 30. 8 knows of seven substances which were employed in the composition of the human body; comp. Charles, *ad. loc.*, as well ARN 31, 91–92, with reference to the correspondence between the parts of the human body and those of the earth. The etymology of the name Adam found in the Sibylline Books III, 24–26, and elsewhere in Christian literature (comp. Schürer, *Geschichte*, III, 290): Ἀνατολή "east," Δύσις "west," Ἄρκτος "north," and Μεσημβρία

"south," goes back to 2 Enoch 30. 13. The rabbinic sources (Sotah 5a; comp. further PRE 12) explain אָדָם "Adam" as אֶפֶר "dust," דָּם "blood," and מָרָה "gall." Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 1. 2, reads: He was called Adam . . . which signifies one who is red (אָדָם), because he was formed out of red earth . . . of that which is virgin soil (קֶרֶקֶת בְּתוּלָה in mishnaic Hebrew) and real earth. Concerning this passage comp. Löw, *Zeitschrift für neut. Wissenschaft*, XI, 167. A Christological explanation of the virgin soil is found in the *Martyrdom of Bartholomew*. Just as the first Adam was created out of a virgin, so was the second. The old mythological conception of "mother-earth" has also left its traces in the Jewish legends; comp. 4 Ezra 5. 28, and the legend concerning the "pregnancy of the earth with Adam" in Aguddat Aggadot 77; comp. also Ecclu. 40. 1. In connection with the view that the dust for the human body was taken out of the whole earth, Sanhedrin 38a–38b reads: The soil of Palestine furnished the material for Adam's head; that of Babylon for his trunk; that of Akra de-Agma (a town in Babylon, notorious on account of the loose morals of its inhabitants) for his privates; that of all other countries for his extremities. Parallels to this legend in later Christian and Arabic writings are cited by Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 55–58 and 62.—On the conception that man's existence is only possible as the result of God's mercy, comp. BR. 8. 4; PR 40, 166b: Tehillim 1, 23, as well as pp. 1–2. On the creation of the world by means of God's justice and kindness, comp. further the quotations from Yelammedenu by Sikli, *Talmud Torah* 6. Tertullian, *Adversus Marcionem*, 1. 25–26, and 2. 3, emphasizes, as do the Rabbis, the necessity of these attributes of God for the existence of the world and man. Recanati, Lev. 23. 24, quotes the following from an unknown Midrash: When God betakes Himself to His seat of judgment to judge the world, Mercy on His right and Justice on His left strive with one another. Justice says: "Judge the world with exact justice, and requite the sinners according to their actions"; but Mercy rejoins: "If Thou, O Lord, heedest sins, who shall be able to exist?" (Ps. 130. 3). Justice then says: "The wicked shall die because of his sins" (Ezek., 23.8). Whereupon Mercy replies: "I ask not the death of the wicked" (Ezek. 18. 32 and 23. 11; the citations are not literal). Justice says: "All this takes place because of the sins of Jacob" (Micah 1. 5). But Mercy replies: "Not now shall Jacob be ashamed" (Is. 29. 22). "Then will I also do this unto you" (Lev. 26. 16), says Justice. "For my own sake will I do it" (Is. 48. 11), replies Mercy. "Since yesterday is the conflagration (*i. e.* hell) made ready" (Is. 30. 33), says Justice, and Mercy replies: "Before the mountains were created . . . and Thou sayest: Return, ye children of men" (Ps. 90. 2–3). Justice says: "Therefore hath the deep (*i. e.* hell) enlarged her desire" (Is. 5. 14), and Mercy replies: "A tree of life is she (wisdom) to those that lay hold on her" (Prov. 3. 18). "I will no longer have any mercy"



(Hos. 1. 6), says Justice, and Mercy replies: “For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob” (Is. 14. 1). Justice says: “And some to disgrace and everlasting abhorrence” (Dan. 12. 2), and Mercy replies: “And these to everlasting life” (*ibid.*).

16. Yerushalmi Nazir 7, 56b; BR 14. 8, PRE 11, 12, and 20; Tehillim 92, 405; EZ 2, 173. In later Midrashim two different legends have been united, and it is asserted that the dust taken from the various parts of the earth, out of which Adam’s body was formed (comp. the preceding note) was kneaded at the holy place in Jerusalem. The older sources (Nazir and BR, *loc. cit.*), as well as Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 47 (he took the best of the whole earth), do not know of this combination. Comp. note 137.

## THE SOUL OF MAN

**T**he care which God exercised in fashioning every detail of the body of man is as naught in comparison with His solicitude for the human soul. The soul of man was created on the first day, for it is the spirit of God moving upon the face of the waters. Thus, instead of being the last, man is really the first work of creation.<sup>17</sup>

This spirit, or, to call it by its usual name, the soul of man, possesses five different powers. By means of one of them she escapes from the body every night, rises up to heaven, and fetches new life thence for man.<sup>18</sup>

With the soul of Adam the souls of all the generations of men were created. They are stored up in a promptuary, in the seventh of the heavens, whence they are drawn as they are needed for human body after human body.<sup>19</sup>

The soul and body of man are united in this way: When a woman has conceived, the Angel of the Night, Lailah, carries the sperm before God, and God decrees what manner of human being shall become of it—whether it shall be male or female, strong or weak, rich or poor, beautiful or ugly, long or short, fat or thin, and what all its other qualities shall be. Piety and wickedness alone are left to the determination of man himself. Then God makes a sign to the angel appointed

over the souls, saying, “Bring Me the soul so-and-so, which is hidden in Paradise, whose name is so-and-so, and whose form is so-and-so.” The angel brings the designated soul, and she bows down when she appears in the presence of God, and prostrates herself before Him. At that moment, God issues the command, “Enter this sperm.” The soul opens her mouth, and pleads: “O Lord of the world! I am well pleased with the world in which I have been living since the day on which Thou didst call me into being. Why dost Thou now desire to have me enter this impure sperm, I who am holy and pure, and a part of Thy glory?” God consoles her: “The world which I shall cause thee to enter is better than the world in which thou hast lived hitherto, and when I created thee, it was only for this purpose.” The soul is then forced to enter the sperm against her will, and the angel carries her back to the womb of the mother. Two angels are detailed to watch that she shall not leave it, nor drop out of it, and a light is set above her, whereby the soul can see from one end of the world to the other. In the morning an angel carries her to Paradise, and shows her the righteous, who sit there in their glory, with crowns upon their heads. The angel then says to the soul, “Dost thou know who these are?” She replies in the negative, and the angel goes on: “These whom thou beholdest here were formed, like unto thee, in the womb of their mother. When they came into the world, they observed God’s Torah and His commandments. Therefore they became the partakers of this bliss which thou seest them enjoy. Know, also thou wilt one day depart from the world below, and if thou wilt observe God’s Torah, then wilt thou be found worthy of sitting with these pious ones. But if not, thou wilt be doomed to the other place.”

In the evening, the angel takes the soul to hell, and there points out the sinners whom the Angels of Destruction are smiting with fiery



scourges, the sinners all the while crying out Woe! Woe! but no mercy is shown unto them. The angel then questions the soul as before, "Dost thou know who these are?" and as before the reply is negative. The angel continues: "These who are consumed with fire were created like unto thee. When they were put into the world, they did not observe God's Torah and His commandments. Therefore have they come to this disgrace which thou seest them suffer. Know, thy destiny is also to depart from the world. Be just, therefore, and not wicked, that thou mayest gain the future world."

Between morning and evening the angel carries the soul around, and shows her where she will live and where she will die, and the place where she will be buried, and he takes her through the whole world, and points out the just and the sinners and all things. In the evening, he replaces her in the womb of the mother, and there she remains for nine months.

When the time arrives for her to emerge from the womb into the open world, the same angel addresses the soul, "The time has come for thee to go abroad into the open world." The soul demurs, "Why dost thou want to make me go forth into the open world?" The angel replies: "Know that as thou wert formed against thy will, so now thou wilt be born against thy will, and against thy will thou shalt die, and against thy will thou shalt give account of thyself before the King of kings, the Holy One, blessed be He." But the soul is reluctant to leave her place. Then the angel fillips the babe on the nose, extinguishes the light at his head, and brings him forth into the world against his will. Immediately the child forgets all his soul has seen and learnt, and he comes into the world crying, for he loses a place of shelter and security and rest.

When the time arrives for man to quit this world, the same angel appears and asks him, "Dost thou recognize me?" And man replies, "Yes;

but why dost thou come to me to-day, and thou didst come on no other day?" The angel says, "To take thee away from the world, for the time of thy departure has arrived." Then man falls to weeping, and his voice penetrates to all ends of the world, yet no creature hears his voice, except the cock alone. Man remonstrates with the angel, "From two worlds thou didst take me, and into this world thou didst bring me." But the angel reminds him: "Did I not tell thee that thou wert formed against thy will, and thou wouldst be born against thy will, and against thy will thou wouldst die? And against thy will thou wilt have to give account and reckoning of thyself before the Holy One, blessed be He."<sup>20</sup>

---

17. BR 8. 1 (on the text comp. Sikli, *Talmud Torah*, 11, where, however, אֵלִים is to be read for אֵלִים); WR 14. 1; Tan. B. III, 32; Tan. Tazria' 1; Tehillim 139, 529. Comp. also Sanhedrin 38a. In the sources just quoted, as well as elsewhere (comp. Excursus I) "the spirit of God," which in the beginning of creation moved on the surface of the waters, was afterwards identified with the spirit (=soul) of the Messiah. This was probably occasioned by an anti-Christian tendency (Origen, *De Princ.*, I, 3.3, Ephraim I, 8 B, Theodoretus, *ad loc.*, as well as many other Church Fathers identify the spirit of God in Gen. 1. 2 with the Holy Ghost). The Talmud, Hagigah 12a, however explains the word רוּחַ in this passage as "wind." Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 14–15, and footnote 14 on p. 5.

18. BR 14. 9; comp. further WR 32. 2, DR 2. 37. The philosophers found here the doctrine of the various powers of the soul, but there is no doubt that this Haggadah, in its original form, wishes to express the view of polypsychism, which was prevalent in ancient times; comp. Toy, *Introduction to the History of Religion*, 20. These five souls are, according to the Midrash, blood, wind, breath, the principle of life (immortal soul?), and the individual soul. One of these souls leaves the body at the time of sleep (on this "dream-soul" comp. Toy, *ibid.*, 2, and further Tertullian, *De Anima*, 43, who opposes this popular conception of the Christians of his time); see BR, *loc. cit.*, and 78. 1; WR, *loc. cit.*, and 4. 8; DZ 5; Berakot 60b (in a prayer still found in the liturgy); PR 8, 29a, and 31, 143a; Koheleth 10. 20; Ekah 3, 132; Tehillim 11, 102 (here dreams are explained as the result of the wanderings of the soul during the time the body is asleep), and 25, 210; ER 2, 8; EZ 15,



199; Tan. Mishpatim 16; Alphabetot 114–116; Al-Barceloni, 181 (Kaufmann's remark, 342, is accordingly to be corrected); Zohar I, 53b, 121a, 122a, 169b, 183a, 200a and (probably based on Tehillim 11. 102) III, 119a, as well as 234b; Mahzor Vitry 78; Pardes 55a; *Orehot Hayyim* I, 1a; Shibbole ha-Leket, 41. In the last-named non-midrashic sources (comp. Tehillim 57, 307) it is said that the soul, which at the time when the body is asleep is in God's keeping, does not wish to return to man again; but God compels it to do so, saying to it: "I do not wish that man who entrusted his soul to Me when he went to sleep should be disappointed." Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenu.*, 23, whose explanation of BR 14. 9, though accepted by Theodor, *ad loc.*, is erroneous, as may be seen from the passages quoted above concerning the journey of the soul while the body is asleep. In Tehillim 62, 307 עולה ויורדת signifies "breathing."

19. Tan. Pekude 3, where the statement occurs that all souls are but part of Adam's soul. Comp. Tan. Ki-Tissa 12; ShR 40. 3. This view which is probably of Christian origin (comp. I Cor. 15. 22, and Rom. 5. 14, as well as Tertullian, *De Anima*, 40), plays a great part in the Kabbalah, which speaks of the sparks of Adam's soul forming the souls of later generations. A different view is given in BR 8. 8, where it is said that God consulted the souls of the pious concerning the creation of man; comp. Excursus I. The abode of the souls of the unborn, according to Hagigah 12b, is the seventh heaven (in this passage the souls are differentiated from the spirits; comp. the preceding note); but according to Tan. Pekude, *loc. cit.*, it is in paradise. Yebamot 62a and parallel passages speak of a גוף where the soul of all future generations are preserved. It also has the additional remark that the Messiah will not come until this גוף is emptied. According to the traditional interpretation, גוף denotes a promptuary (comp. *Aruk*, s. v.). See further 2 Enoch 23. 14; and 58.5 (here an abode of the souls [spirits?] of animals is likewise spoken of); Apocalypse of Baruch 23. 5; 4 Ezra 4. 35. According to another view, this גוף is identical with the "curtain" (פרגוד) before God's throne (frequently mentioned in the Talmud), on which all souls are "painted"; comp. *Aruk*, *loc. cit.*; Zohar II, 96b, and the quotation, from a work of R. Eleazar of Worms (Rokeah), by R. Joseph Jabez, at the end of the latter's work *Ma'amar ha-Ahdut*.

20. Tan. Pekude 3, and as an independent Midrash entitled Yezirat ha-Walad ("creation of the embryo") in *Abkat Rokel*, whence it was republished by Jellinek in BHM I, 153–155. The latter scholar added a second midrashic treatise giving more material about the physical nature of man and the "creation of the embryo" from Likkute ha-Pardes 4d–5b, which is partly of the same contents as that of the first treatise. Yerahmeel 10, 19–23, is identical with Tan., *loc. cit.* As to particulars, note the following. On the angel

Lailah ("night") and his functions, comp. Niddah 16b; Sanhedrin 96a; 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 79; footnote 98 on p. 195. In Zohar II, 11a–11b, it is Gabriel who is in charge of the soul; comp. also *ibid.* 96b. That everything is predestined by God, except man's moral freedom, is also found in Ketubot 30a; Apocalypse of Baruch 54. 15. Comp. the references given by Charles, *ad loc.*, to Josephus and other sources. There is also a statement that a few days before the birth of a male child a heavenly voice announces: That woman is destined to become his wife, that house or that field will belong to him; comp. Sotah 2a and Mo'ed Katan 18b. On the view that marriages are made in heaven, see further Yerushalmi Bezah 5, 63a (bottom); WR 8. 1; BR 68. 4; PK 2, 11b–12a; Tan. Ki-Tissa 5; Shemuel 5, 62. See also Abrahams, *J.Q.R.* II, 172–177=*Book of Delight*, 172–183. On the predestination of the intellectual and other traits of man, comp. Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 916 on Job 28. The differentiation of the sex of the embryo, according to the Kabbalists, is brought by the angel Sandalfon; comp. Yalkut Reubeni, Lev. 12. 2. The refusal of the soul to enter the embryo is already presupposed in Abot 4 (end). The two heavenly companions of the soul are naturally the guardian angels of every individual person, who are frequently alluded to in Jewish, as well as in Christian, literature; comp. Berakot 60b (top); Shabbat 119b; Ta'anit 11a; Tan. Wa-Yeze 3; Matthew 18. 10; *Hermas Pastor*, Visio, V, 6. 2; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 6. 17; Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 5, and 2 *Apologia*, 5; Athenagoras, *Legatio*, 10. 20; *Visio Pauli*, 14; *The History of Joseph the Carpenter*, 13. In the Jewish sources (comp. Shabbat and Tan., *loc. cit.*; ER 18, 100; Tehillim 104, 440) the doctrine of the guardian angels appears quite early with a rationalistic explanation. In view of Shabbat *loc. cit.*, Maimonides, *Guide of the Perplexed*, III, 23, is certainly correct in asserting that the ancient Rabbis understood these guardian angels to represent the good and evil inclinations. It is interesting that *Hermas Pastor*, *loc. cit.*, represents practically the same conception. Directly dependent on Maimonides is Zohar, I, 144b, 165b, 191a; II, 41b–42a; III, 106a. Here and there the view is found, both in Jewish and Christian sources, that every man has only one guardian angel; comp. ER, *loc. cit.*, and *Kimha Dabishuna* on the piyyut אחד האומרים (morning prayer of the Day of Atonement); *Visio Pauli*, *loc. cit.* The prevalent opinion, however, is that there are two guardian angels; comp. the sources quoted above, and Eusebius, 689a, as well as text on p. 92. That the angels who accompany man testify before God concerning his acts is found not only in Ta'anit, *loc. cit.*, but also in 2 Enoch 19.5. Here also belong the remarks about the angels who come to God to plead for a man if he is good, and about those who accuse him if his conduct is bad; comp. Tehillim 94, 418; Mishle 11, 70. Hence the statement that man's actions, his limbs and his soul are his witnesses; comp. Ta'anit,



*loc. cit.*; 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 79; Sifre D., 307. Midrash Tannaim 187; Tan. B. I, 21: When a man is about to die, God appears (the appearance of God is mentioned also in Sifre N., 103), and says to him: "Write down all thy deeds, because thou art about to die now." The man then writes everything down, and signs it with his hand. On the last day of judgment, God will produce these books, and a man's actions will be shown to him. Comp. also Shabbat 32a, which reads: A man's good deeds are his *Parakletin* ("defenders") at the heavenly court. To the oldest sources, where guardian angels are mentioned, belongs 2 Maccabees 3. 26; Comp. also note 12.—According to Niddah 30b, the soul of the embryo knows and sees everything, and hence the corresponding statement in 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 79 as well as in the sources cited at the beginning of note. Comp. further Mishle 2, 49; Tan. B. III, 32; WR 14. 8–9. On the relation of this conception to the Platonic doctrine of amnesia, comp. Güdemann, *Religionsgeschichtliche Studien*, 7, *seq.*, and Joel, *Blicke*, I, 118–119. The kabbalistic treatment of this Platonic doctrine appears in Ziyoni, *Hayye Sarah* (beginning). On the idea that every man has a place in paradise or hell after death, according to his deserts, see Hagigah 15a; 2 Enoch 49; Tehillim 21, 239; Apocalypse of Baruch 23. 4; comp. especially the elaborate amplification of Hagigah, *loc. cit.*, in Hasidim 36. The idea that an angel causes the soul to forget everything, when it enters this world, is derived from Nidah 39a, where it is emphasized that the heavenly hosts adjure the embryo with the following words: "Be pious and not wicked; but when the world regards thee as pious, it shall appear to thee as though thou art wicked. Know that God is pure, His servants are pure, and thy soul is pure. If thou keepest it pure, it is well for thee; otherwise it will be taken away from thee." On the loud weeping of the dying, compare with footnote 107 on p. 25. Zohar I, 98a (Midrash ha-Ne'elam) and 79a, call the moment of death "the great judgment" for the individual, in which the soul acknowledges everything it has done during its life. For this point in the older sources comp. Sifre D., 307; Midrash Tannaim 187; Tan. B. I, 21.—The words of the angel of death are taken almost verbatim from Abot 4 (end). The motive of refusing to die plays an important part in the legends concerning Abraham and Moses (comp. Index, *s. v.* "Abraham," "Moses"), and is also found in Christian legends; comp. Louise Dudley, *Egyptian Elements in the Legend of the Body and Soul*, 151, *seq.* The dependence of the Christian on the Jewish legends, and not on the Egyptian, as Dudley assumes, appears quite clearly from the passage of *Visio Pauli* 4, which Dudley, 27, is unable to explain. The angels who took away the soul of the sinner say to him: "As for that from which thou departest, again wilt thou return unto it." This Christian source quotes almost verbatim from Abot *loc. cit.*, though the words do not fit into the description of death in *Visio*

*Pauli*. Almost all men (comp. Index, *s. v.* "Death by Kiss") die by the "sword of the angel;" nevertheless the death of the pious is painless, that of the wicked is painful. Comp. the following passages where details concerning this point are given: Berakot 8a; 'Abodah Zarah 20b (here two different views are blended into one: 1) the sword of the angel of death; 2) a drop of venom, bitter as death, from the angel's hand causes death); Tehillim 11, 102–103. In the last passage it is also said that the soul (נשמה) is removed from the body, whereas the spirit (=wind רוח) remains at the tip of the nose after death until the corpse becomes putrefied, whereupon it is removed by the angel Duma into its proper place, paradise or hell. On the various souls which man possesses, comp. note 18. The older sources (Yerushalmi Mo'ed Katan 3, 82b; Tan. Mikkez 4; comp. further Shabbat 152a) maintain that the soul during the first three days hovers about the dead body, in the hope that it will be resurrected, and it leaves it mournfully when putrefaction has set in; comp. John 11, 39, and Bousset, *Religion*, 341, note 1, as well as Zohar III, 53a, and notes 139–140.

## THE IDEAL MAN

Like all creatures formed on the six days of creation, Adam came from the hands of the Creator fully and completely developed. He was not like a child, but like a man of twenty years of age.<sup>21</sup> The dimensions of his body were gigantic, reaching from heaven to earth, or, what amounts to the same, from east to west.<sup>22</sup> Among later generations of men, there were but few who in a measure resembled Adam in his extraordinary size and physical perfections. Samson possessed his strength, Saul his neck, Absalom his hair, Asahel his fleetness of foot, Uzziah his forehead, Josiah his nostrils, Zedekiah his eyes, and Zerubbabel his voice. History shows that these physical excellencies were no blessings to many of their possessors; they invited the ruin of almost all. Samson's extraordinary strength caused his death; Saul killed himself by cutting his neck with his own sword; while speeding swiftly, Asahel was pierced by Abner's spear; Absalom was caught up by his hair in an oak, and thus suspended met



his death; Uzziah was smitten with leprosy upon his forehead; the darts that killed Josiah entered through his nostrils, and Zedekiah's eyes were blinded.<sup>23</sup>

The generality of men inherited as little of the beauty as of the portentous size of their first father. The fairest women compared with Sarah are as apes compared with a human being. Sarah's relation to Eve is the same, and, again, Eve was but as an ape compared with Adam. His person was so handsome that the very sole of his foot obscured the splendor of the sun.<sup>24</sup>

His spiritual qualities kept pace with his personal charm, for God had fashioned his soul with particular care. She is the image of God, and as God fills the world, so the soul fills the human body; as God sees all things, and is seen by none, so the soul sees, but cannot be seen; as God guides the world, so the soul guides the body; as God in His holiness is pure, so is the soul; and as God dwells in secret, so doth the soul.<sup>25</sup>

When God was about to put a soul into Adam's clod-like body, He said: "At which point shall I breathe the soul into him? Into the mouth? Nay, for he will use it to speak ill of his fellow-man. Into the eyes? With them he will wink lustfully. Into the ears? They will hearken to slander and blasphemy. I will breathe her into his nostrils; as they discern the unclean and reject it, and take in the fragrant, so the pious will shun sin, and will cleave to the words of the Torah."<sup>26</sup>

The perfections of Adam's soul showed themselves as soon as he received her, indeed, while he was still without life. In the hour that intervened between breathing a soul into the first man and his becoming alive, God revealed the whole history of mankind to him. He showed him each generation and its leaders; each generation and its prophets; each generation and its teachers; each generation and its scholars; each generation and its statesmen; each generation and its judges; each generation and its pious members; each

generation and its average, commonplace members; and each generation and its impious members. The tale of their years, the number of their days, the reckoning of their hours, and the measure of their steps, all were made known unto him.<sup>27</sup>

Of his own free will Adam relinquished seventy of his allotted years. His appointed span was to be a thousand years, one of the Lord's days. But he saw that only a single minute of life was apportioned to the great soul of David, and he made a gift of seventy years to her, reducing his own years to nine hundred and thirty.<sup>28</sup>

The wisdom of Adam displayed itself to greatest advantage when he gave names to the animals. Then it appeared that God, in combating the arguments of the angels that opposed the creation of man, had spoken well, when He insisted that man would possess more wisdom than they themselves. When Adam was barely an hour old, God assembled the whole world of animals before him and the angels. The latter were called upon to name the different kinds, but they were not equal to the task. Adam, however, spoke without hesitation: "O Lord of the world! The proper name for this animal is ox, for this one horse, for this one lion, for this one camel." And so he called all in turn by name, suiting the name to the peculiarity of the animal. Then God asked him what his name was to be, and he said Adam, because he had been created out of Adamah, dust of the earth. Again, God asked him His own name, and he said: "Adonai, Lord, because Thou art Lord over all creatures"—the very name God had given unto Himself, the name by which the angels call Him, the name that will remain immutable evermore.<sup>29</sup> But without the gift of the holy spirit, Adam could not have found names for all; he was in very truth a prophet, and his wisdom a prophetic quality.<sup>30</sup>

The names of the animals were not the only inheritance handed down by Adam to the



generations after him, for mankind owes all crafts to him, especially the art of writing, and he was the inventor of all the seventy languages.<sup>31</sup> And still another task he accomplished for his descendants. God showed Adam the whole earth, and Adam designated what places were to be settled later by men, and what places were to remain waste.<sup>32</sup>

21. BR 14. 7; BaR 12. 8; Shir 3. 11; Hullin 60a (on this talmudic passage comp. Al-Barceloni, 74, and *Responsen der Geonim*, Harkavy's edition, 199); Jerome, I, 902; Ephraim, I, 159; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 31–33, with regard to the Christian form of this view, and note 97. The opinion of the superiority and the accomplishment of the first “human pair” is only a special application of the idea that all primordial creations came out fully developed. Comp. Seder ‘Olam 4, with reference to the heavenly luminaries, and Sifra 26. 4, with respect to the plant world. Compare with footnote 74 on p. 18 and footnote 100 on p. 24. Philo, *De M. Opif.* 13, 47, 51, also speaks of the excellence of primordial creations, particularly that of Adam. To many gnostic systems this legend concerning Adam's spiritual and physical excellence is of great import; comp. *Recognitiones*, I, 47. Shu'aib, Ki-Tissa, 39c, quotes the following from an unknown Midrash: Adam received five crowns: he was king, prophet, high priest, his countenance shone in heavenly splendor, and God revealed the Torah to him.—Since the word Adam in Hebrew means “man,” the first man is called **אדם הראשון** and not infrequently also **אדם הקדמון**; hence in Aramaic **אדם קדמארא**. Comp. Sifra 5. 17; BaR 10. 2; BR 20. 11 and note 60.

22. BR 8. 1; 21. 3; 24. 2; Hagigah 12a; PRE 11; ARN 8, 22–23; PR 23, 115a; Tehillim 139, 529; WR 14. 1 and 18. 2; Tan. B. III, 37; Tan. Tazria' 8. Adam's enormously high stature plays an important part in the views of many gnostic sects, according to whom Adam was a gigantic monster without any intelligence, and moved about by creeping. Comp. Irenaeus V, 22. 2; Hippolytus 5. 2 and 8. 16. Allusions to the time when Adam's body was not yet endowed with intellect are found in many other passages of rabbinic literature; comp. Sanhedrin 38b; ARN 1, 5 (second version 8), as well as 8, 22; PK 23, 150b; PR, *loc. cit.*, and 46, 187b; ShR 40. 3; Tan. B. III, 31; Tan. Shemini 8; Tehillim 92, 403. According to Abkir in Yalkut I, 34, and readings of manuscripts of Midrash Ruth (comp. Ginzberg, *Hazofeh*, IV, 35–36), God created, as the very first act of creation, the soulless (**גולם**) in all these passages does not

mean “lifeless”) Adam and then all the other creatures. Accordingly, Adam, though the first creation, did not receive his soul before all other creations had been formed, in order that he should not be considered as God's assistant in creation; compare with footnote 61 on p. 13. Hence man is rightfully regarded as the beginning and the end of creation. 2 ARN 8, 22–23, and Epiphanius, *Haer.*, 1. 4. 4, oppose the view that Adam was God's first creation; compare, however, text on p. 55, with reference to Adam's soul which was created on the first day. Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 2. 56, asserts that the ideal man was created on the sixth day, the physical on the seventh. This does not harmonize with his general view of creation, according to which the former is of a timeless state (comp., e. g., *Legum Alleg.*, 2. 4), and it appears that he tried to fit a Haggadah into his system, but did not succeed. Freudenthal, *Hellenistische Studien*, I, 70, and Weinstein, *Zur Genesis der Agada*, 52, 79, find, in the utterances of the Haggadah concerning Adam's dimensions, which extended over the whole world, an echo of Philo's doctrine of the ideal man, the image of the whole world (*De M. Opif.*, 24, 46, and 51). This assumption is only partly correct. Both the Rabbis and Philo made use, each in his own way, of the old myth, according to which the world is a macroanthropos; comp. note 4. On Adam as a soulless monster among the Arabs, comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 62, *seq.* See further Dähnhardt, *Natursagen*, I, 242–246.

23. PRK (Schönblum's edition, 16b; Grünhut's edition, 72; Jellinek's edition, 97); Sotah 10a (does not know of Zerubbabel's wonderful voice, and has Asa, king of Judah, instead of Ashael; compare on this point with p. 905; on Zedekiah see the text on p. 1066); PRE 53 (one of the chosen is Josiah, whose nostrils were wonderful); MHG I, 66; Tan. B. V, 8 (Buber's statement, note 20, is incorrect); Tan. Wa-Ethanan 1; Yalkut on 1 Kings (end); Al-Barceloni, 30; Zohar I, 123b; Duran, *Milhemet Mizwah*, 26. On Zerubbabel compare footnote 25 on p. 1119; on Adam see Ecclu. 49. 16, which reads: Adam excelled all creatures in splendor.

24. Baba Batra 58a. On Adam's splendor which eclipsed the sun, comp. PK 4, 36b, 12, 101a; 27, 170a; PR 14, 62a; Koheleth 8. 1; WR 20. 2; Tan. B. III, 57; IV, 114; Tan. Ahare 2; *Adamschriften*, 29; *Apology of Sedrach*, 7 (along with Adam, Eve's beauty and splendor are mentioned). Comp. also on this point notes 69 and 105. The following persons are mentioned as ideals of beauty: Eve, Sarah, Rahab, Abigail, Esther, Abishag (not half as pretty as Sarah, but not inferior to Eve), Michal, and Jael, among the women. The men are: Adam, Jacob, Joseph, Saul, Absalom, R. Ishmael, and R. Abbahu. Comp. Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*; Baba Mezi'a 84a; Megillah 15a; PRK (Schönblum's edition, 24a); Sanhedrin 39b; BR 40. 5; Ma'aseh 'Aseret Haruge Malkut 23; Zohar I, 142b; II, 55a; III, 83b; Al-Barceloni,



41 and 45; Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 19. Comp. further on Adam's beauty, notes 104 and 105. On Eve's beauty see the Gnostic view quoted by Irenaeus I, 30, 7. On Sarah's beauty, see footnote 67 on p. 189.

25. Berakot 10a; WR 4.8; Tehillim 103, 433 (cited in *Pugio Fidei*, 554, with considerable variations); Tan. Hayye Sarah 3; DR 2. 37; PRE 34; Zohar I, 125a; Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 23. The latter is the intermediary between the Stoics, who speak of the relationship that exists between God and the soul (comp. Diogenes of Babylonia; *Philodem. De Piet.*, Gompertz' edition, 82; Seneca, *Ep.*, 65. 24), and the Haggadah. Comp. Bergmann in *Judaica* (in honor of Hermann Cohen), 151. In the Midrashim mentioned above, as well as elsewhere (comp. BR 14. 9) it is asserted that the soul does not sleep (comp. note 18 on the "dream soul") any more than does God. This conveys the idea of the immortality of the soul, as sleep (so already in the Gilgamesh epos) is the likeness of death; Berakot 57b. Comp. Vol. I, p. 64 (bottom). A doctrine concerning the soul, borrowed from the Stoics, is the one found in Sanhedrin 91b, according to which the soul enters the body at the time of conception. Comp. Begmann, *loc. cit.*, and text on p. 56. Along with the view that the soul is something exclusively spiritual, found in the sources cited at the beginning of this note, there is the primitive conception which regards it as a material substance endowed with some form. The latter view has been preserved in some passages, according to which the soul has the form of a bird, and it is perhaps for this reason that the Talmudim and Midrashim often speak of the flight of the soul; comp. Yerushalmi Mo'ed Katan 3, 82b; Yerushalmi Yebamot 15, 15c; Ketubot 62b (פרח רוחה "expired"); BR 93. 8 and 100. 7; WR 18. 1. Comp. further the sources referred to by Malter, *J.Q.R.*, N.S., II, 476–478. See also Tehillim 11, 102, where it is said that the soul has the appearance of a חגב בעל כנפים. This is most likely influenced by the Greek conception, and this phrase is to be rendered by "butterfly" (literally, "winged grasshopper"). The assertion found in Tehillim, *loc. cit.*, that the soul is fastened to the spine is probably related to the old view, according to which a part of the spine (compare with footnote 44 on p. 147, and Index, *s. v.* "Luz") is indestructible, and will, in the time of resurrection, furnish the material out of which the human body will be quickened. As has been previously stated, the soul enters the body at the time of conception; but opinions differ as to the time the two inclinations, the good and the evil, enter it. According to some, the evil inclination enters the body at the time of conception; according to others, at the time of the formation of the embryo (*i. e.*, forty days after conception; comp. Berakot 60a; Menahot 99b; note 97); a third view, which is the most prevalent, maintains that it enters the body at the time of birth. But the good inclination does not make its appearance before the completion of the thirteenth year (*i. e.*, at the time

of puberty); comp. ARN 17, 63–64 (second version, 36); Sanhedrin 91b; Yerushalmi Berakot 3, 6d; BR 34. 10; Tan. Bereshit 7 (this is the only passage which states that the evil inclination enters the body at the tenth year); MHG I, 108–109; Koheleth 4. 13. Compare with footnote 14 on p. 104.

26. MHG I, 74. Compare with p. 65. Koheleth 2. 12 reads: God took counsel with His court concerning every single limb of man. Comp. further the quotation from a Midrash by Shu'aib, Tazria' 61a, where it is pointed out that the number of the veins of the human body corresponds to the days of the solar year. On this number of the veins, see Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 1. 27. The remark that the wonderful mechanism of the human body shows God's skill as well as His solicitude for man occurs frequently in the Haggadah; comp. Berakot 10a; Niddah 31a; WR 14. 3–4 and 15. 2–3; Tan. B. III, 33–34, 35–36; IV, 98; Tan. Tazria' 2–3 and 6, as well as Hukkat 1; BaR 18. 22; Tehillim 103, 431–432, 434; Shemuel 5, 59–60; see also parallels cited by Buber, and comp. Mekilta RS, 67. Very instructive is WR 34. 3, where Hillel, pointing to the duty which man owes to his body, remarks: The officer in charge of the washing and cleaning of the king's statues at the theatre and circus is not only paid a salary, but occupies a high rank among the dignitaries of the kingdom; how much more is man bound to do honor to God's image! The passages in *Recognitiones*, 8. 28–33, on the human body are closely related in many respects to those of the Haggadah. For later literature one may refer to *Shebet Musar I*, where the purpose of the various component parts of the human body is minutely described.

27. Seder 'Olam 30 (read חסידי for חכמי and בינוני for נביאי; otherwise the prophets and the sages would be mentioned twice); Sanhedrin 38b; 'Abodah Zarah 5a; BR 24. 2; ShR 40. 2–3; WR 26. 7; PR 23 (beginning); ARN 31, 91 (second version 8, 22); Tan. B. I, 21, 22; Tan. Ki-Tissa 12 (comp. on this passage Recanati on Gen. 2) and Emor 2; Tehillim 139, 530; Shemuel 24, 120; EZ 6, 183 (here all that is said in the older sources concerning Adam is transferred to Moses; compare with pp. 565, 788, 814); Targum Ps. 139. 16. Most of these sources (comp. also Baba Mezi'a 85b, bottom) speak of a book which God showed to Adam, in which all future generations are recorded, and this is the Jewish form of the view prevalent among the Babylonians (comp. Jeremias, *Babylonisches im NT*, 69, *seq.*). At the same time this legend holds the view that the entire human race was potentially created in Adam, so that all future generations have been predestined at the time of the creation of Adam. Comp. note 19. Instead of the book of Adam, there appears in Zohar I, 90b, the "painted curtain" on which all souls are drawn, and which God showed him. Comp. note 19.

28. BaR 14. 12; PRE 19; Tehillim 95, 408. There are numerous additions in the following later sources (God and



Metatron as witnesses sign the deed of a gift to David); Bereshit Rabbeti 67–68 in Epstein's *Eldad*; Huppat Eliyyahu in Aggadat Bereshit, Introduction 37; Sikli in *Hazofeh*, III, 11; Yalkut I, 41. Comp. further Zohar I, 55a, 140a, 168a, 248b; II, 235a; text on p. 911. The Arabs also know of the legend (comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 63–74), but they missed the point concerning the “days of the Lord” (comp. note 72) because of their ignorance of the Bible. According to Yebamot 64b, it was only at the time of David that seventy years were fixed as the average age of man. Comp. also Herodotus I, 32, and Jub. 23. 9. Zohar I, 168a, blended the Adam-David legend with another, according to which Abraham and Jacob were supposed to live 180 years, exactly as Isaac, but their deducted years, that is five of Abraham's, twenty-eight of Jacob's, as well as thirty-seven of Joseph's (who should have lived, according to his father's blessing, as long as he), were bestowed on David.

29. BR 18. 4; PK 4, 34a; PR 14, 59b; Tan. B. IV, 110; Tan. Hukkat 6; BaR 19. 3; Koheleth 7. 23; PRE 13; Tehillim 8, 73–74; 2 ARN 8, 23. Comp. further note 34. Adam's wisdom is praised in Wisdom 10. 1 and by Philo, who also points to the naming of animals, where Adam's wisdom was displayed. PK 6, 62b, and 21, 144a (this is the source of Makiri, Is. 42, 128) maintains that the Tetragrammaton is the name by which Adam called God; comp. also Midrash Aggada Lev. 11. 4, and Berakot 7b.

30. Lekah, Gen. 2. 19. The older sources (comp. the preceding note), however, only speak of Adam's wisdom (not of his prophetic gift), by means of which he succeeded in naming the objects. Nevertheless Adam is known in the older sources as a prophet; comp. Seder 'Olam 21; Septuagint Gen. 2. 20 (against this explanation of תרדמה as prophetic ecstasy, which is also found in Seder 'Olam, comp. BR 16. 5 and 24. 17; Tan. B. I, 22, however, seems to accept the first view); Philo, *Ouis Rer. Div. Haer.*, 52. This view occurs quite frequently in patristic literature; comp. Origen, *De Princ.*, I, 3. 7; Jerome, Gen. 2. 21; Aphraates, 354; Tertullian, *Adversus Marcionem*, 11; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1. 21; Clementine *Homilies*, 3. 18. Comp. further Fabricius, *Codex Pseudepigraph.*, 6 and 12, as well as Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 35. Zohar I, 125a, reads: Every one of the forty-eight prophets (on this number comp. Index, s. v. “Prophets”) received a drop from the water of paradise, but Adam received as much as all of them together. The metaphor of the “drops of prophecy” in Zohar is borrowed from Shir 4. 11; comp. further Al-Barceloni, 130 and note 21.

31. BR 24. 7; Tan. B. I, 4; Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1. 21–22; Eusebius, 515c; Augustine, *Quaestiones*, Exod. 69. According to one version of the Book of Adam (comp. *Adamschriften*, 24), it was an angel who, after the expulsion from paradise, taught Adam smithcraft, brought the fire-tongs and hammer, and taught him how to use them.

Moreover (*ibid.*, 33), this angel instructed him how to tame an ox and to train it to work the soil; he also showed him how to eat the produce of the ground and to satisfy his hunger with it. As to rabbinic parallels to these legends, comp. notes 96 and 99, and further footnote 91 on p. 164. On the Arabic legends concerning a book of Adam, comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 66. Comp. note 11.

32. Berakot 31a; MHG I, 80 (with substantial variations). Comp. further note 37.

## THE FALL OF SATAN

The extraordinary qualities with which Adam was blessed, physical and spiritual as well, aroused the envy of the angels. They attempted to consume him with fire, and he would have perished, had not the protecting hand of God rested upon him, and established peace between him and the heavenly host.<sup>33</sup> In particular, Satan was jealous of the first man, and his evil thoughts finally led to his fall. After Adam had been endowed with a soul, God invited all the angels to come and pay him reverence and homage. Satan, the greatest of the angels in heaven, with twelve wings, instead of six like all the others, refused to pay heed to the behest of God, saying, “Thou didst create us angels from the splendor of the Shekinah, and now Thou dost command us to cast ourselves down before the creature which Thou didst fashion out of the dust of the ground!” God answered, “Yet this dust of the ground has more wisdom and understanding than thou.” Satan demanded a trial of wit with Adam, and God assented thereto, saying: “I have created beasts, birds, and reptiles. I shall have them all come before thee and before Adam. If thou art able to give them names, I shall command Adam to show honor unto thee, and thou shalt rest next to the Shekinah of My glory. But if not, and Adam calls them by the names I have assigned to them, then thou wilt be subject to Adam, and he shall have a place in My garden,



and cultivate it.” Thus spake God, and He be- took Himself to Paradise, Satan following Him. When Adam beheld God, he said to his wife, “O come, let us worship and bow down; let us kneel before the Lord our Maker.” Now Satan at- tempted to assign names to the animals. He failed with the first two that presented themselves, the ox and the cow. God led two others before him, the camel and the donkey, with the same result. Then God turned to Adam, and questioned him regarding the names of the same animals, fram- ing His questions in such wise that the first letter of the first word was the same as the first letter of the name of the animal standing before him. Thus Adam divined the proper name, and Satan was forced to acknowledge the superiority of the first man. Nevertheless he broke out in wild out- cries that reached the heavens, and he refused to do homage unto Adam as he had been bidden.<sup>34</sup> The host of angels led by him did likewise, in spite of the urgent representations of Michael, who was the first to prostrate himself before Adam in order to show a good example to the other angels. Michael addressed Satan: “Give ad- oration to the image of God! But if thou doest it not, then the Lord God will break out in wrath against thee.” Satan replied: “If He breaks out in wrath against me, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God, I will be like the Most High!” At once God flung Satan and his host out of heaven, down to the earth, and from that mo- ment dates the enmity between Satan and man.<sup>35</sup>

33. ARN 1, 8 (second version 8, 23). For the oppo- site view concerning the relation of the angels to Adam, compare with p. 64.

34. Bereshit Rabbeti (its source is Eldad; comp. Ep- stein, *Eldad*, 66, *seq.*). On Satan’s twelve wings, comp. PRE 13, which was made use of by Eldad. See also foot- note 55 on p. 117. On the wings of the angels see Batte Midrashot IV, 5, as well as *Kimha Dabishuna* on the Piyyut אֲמִיץ שְׁחָקִים in the Roman Mahzor for the Day of Atone- ment. Epstein, *loc. cit.*, as well as Grünbaum, *Gesammelte*

*Aufsätze*, 68, *seq.*, and *Neue Beiträge*, 57, *seq.*, rightly assumes that Eldad’s story of Satan’s fall goes back to Mohammedan, and indirectly to Christian, sources. Incorrect, however, is their view that the legend of the fall of Satan came to the Jews from the Christians and Mohammedans. For, though it is true that the doctrine of the fall of the angels as well as that of Satan, has, at a very early period, been opposed by the leaders of the Synagogue, the traces of that legend are nevertheless to be found in rabbinic and pseudepigraphic writings, and this shows that these ideas were popular among certain classes of people. Comp. the following note.—In *Eldad* the legend about Satan is connected with that of Adam’s giving names to the animals. These two leg- ends were originally independent. The anachronism of Adam’s speaking to Eve concerning the naming of the ani- mals, which is against the explicit statement of Gen. 2.19– 22, leads one to assume that Eldad made use of a Moham- medan source. A midrashic source, in which the names of the various animals were explained by their characteristics, was made use of by R. Sa’adya Gaon (comp. his words quoted by R. Bahya, Gen. 2. 19, and *Tashlum* Abudirham, 75) and Ibn Sabba, Gen., *loc. cit.* Comp. further MHG I, 79; *Toledot Yizhak*, Gen., *loc. cit.*

35. Vita Adae 14–16; Bereshit Rabbeti in *Pugio Fi- dei* 563. This assertion concerning the fall of Satan, whose jealousy brought about Adam’s misfortune, is widely known; comp., *e. g.*, Apocalypse of Sedrach 5; Questions of Bar- tholomew; Koran 2. 33. See Bousset, *Religion*, 386, and Epstein, *Eldad*, 75, *seq.* The oldest source, however, 2 Enoch 29. 4 and 5, which speaks of the fall of Satan, ascribes it to his jealousy of God. According to this source, Satan thought that he “would make his throne higher than the clouds of the earth, and would be equal in rank to God” (comp. Is. 14. 12–14, the reference to which Charles failed to recognize). It is for this reason that God cast down him and his angels from the heights. Satan was flying about con- tinually in the air (on this point see Targum Job 28. 7, which reads: Sammael who flies like a bird in the air) above the abyss. According to this source, the fall of Satan and his hosts occurred at the beginning of creation (on the second day?), while 31 reads that “Satan wanted to create another world, because things were subservient to Adam on earth”, to rule them and to have dominion over them. Thus we again have the idea that Satan’s jealousy of Adam brought about his fall. The conception that everything, including the angel world, was created “in order to serve man” is genu- inely Jewish (comp. note 8 and Index *s. v.* “Angels”), and is emphasized by Paul, Hebrews 1. 14. Moreover, it is quite probable that Hebrews 1. 6, goes back to Vita Adae, *loc. cit.*, and, in midrashic fashion, makes the angels worship the second Adam (=Jesus), instead of the first. Indeed the sources cited in notes 36 and 37 seem to be directed against the popular conception that Adam was worshipped by the



angels. A description of the fall of Adam, somewhat similar to that of 2 Enoch, is found in Alphabetot 93–94, where the text was shortened by the copyist, because the contents appeared to him too daring. In the part retained it is said that Satan, on the last day, will endeavor to renew his rebellion against God, and will proclaim that he is of equal rank with God, and that he was God's "partner" (שותף) in creation, that God created heaven and he created hell. Nevertheless the fire of hell will destroy him, and put an end to his arrogant talk. The words 'והיו כל וכו' in our text are the end of the missing description of the fall of Satan and his angels (מלאכי שטן) occurs very rarely in rabbinic literature) at the beginning of creation. In Tehillim 82, 369 (comp. Buber who gives the better text of Rashi) Satan's fall is alluded to, although, according to Trypho's observation in Justin Martyr's *Dialogue*, 124, the Jewish scholars refused to accept the view that Ps. 82. 7 refers to Satan's fall or to that of the angels. According to PRE 14 and 27, Satan's fall was a punishment for his having misled Adam to sin. This apparently corresponds to Revelation 12. 9; whereas according to another source (ARN 164; compare with p. 461), it was a punishment for his conduct toward Job. Compare with footnote 10 on p. 136. There is, however, still another view, according to which Satan was wicked from the very beginning, or, as the Haggadah expresses it, "was created out of the fire of hell" (compare with p. 829). On Satan's jealousy of Adam as the cause for seducing the latter to sin, compare with p. 93; Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 44–45.

## WOMAN

When Adam opened his eyes the first time, and beheld the world about him, he broke into praise of God, "How great are Thy works, O Lord!" But his admiration for the world surrounding him did not exceed the admiration all creatures conceived for Adam. They took him to be their creator, and they all came to offer him adoration. But he spoke: "Why do you come to worship me? Nay, you and I together will acknowledge the majesty and the might of Him who hath created us all. 'The Lord reigneth,'" he continued, "'He is apparelled with majesty.'" <sup>36</sup>

And not alone the creatures on earth, even the angels thought Adam the lord of all, and

they were about to salute him with "Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts," when God caused sleep to fall upon him, and then the angels knew that he was but a human being.<sup>37</sup>

The purpose of the sleep that enfolded Adam was to give him a wife, so that the human race might develop, and all creatures recognize the difference between God and man. When the earth heard what God had resolved to do, it began to tremble and quake. "I have not the strength," it said, "to provide food for the herd of Adam's descendants." But God pacified it with the words, "I and thou together, we will find food for the herd." Accordingly, time was divided between God and the earth; God took the night, and the earth took the day. Refreshing sleep nourishes and strengthens man, it affords him life and rest, while the earth brings forth produce with the help of God, who waters it. Yet man must work the earth to earn his food.<sup>38</sup>

The Divine resolution to bestow a companion on Adam met the wishes of man, who had been overcome by a feeling of isolation when the animals came to him in pairs to be named.<sup>39</sup> To banish his loneliness, Lilith was first given to Adam as wife. Like him she had been created out of the dust of the ground. But she remained with him only a short time, because she insisted upon enjoying full equality with her husband. She derived her rights from their identical origin. With the help of the Ineffable Name, which she pronounced, Lilith flew away from Adam, and vanished in the air. Adam complained before God that the wife He had given him had deserted him, and God sent forth three angels to capture her. They found her in the Red Sea, and they sought to make her go back with the threat that, unless she went, she would lose a hundred of her demon children daily by death. But Lilith preferred this punishment to living with Adam. She takes her revenge by injuring babes—baby boys during the first night of their life, while baby girls



are exposed to her wicked designs until they are twenty days old. The only way to ward off the evil is to attach an amulet bearing the names of her three angel captors to the children, for such had been the agreement between them.<sup>40</sup>

The woman destined to become the true companion of man was taken from Adam's body, for only when like is joined unto like the union is indissoluble."<sup>41</sup> The creation of woman from man was possible because Adam originally had two faces, which were separated at the birth of Eve.<sup>42</sup>

When God was on the point of making Eve, He said: "I will not make her from the head of man, lest she carry her head high in arrogant pride; not from the eye, lest she be wanton-eyed; not from the ear, lest she be an eavesdropper; not from the neck, lest she be insolent; not from the mouth, lest she be a tattler; not from the heart, lest she be inclined to envy; not from the hand, lest she be a meddler; not from the foot, lest she be a gadabout. I will form her from a chaste portion of the body," and to every limb and organ as He formed it, God said, "Be chaste! Be chaste!" Nevertheless, in spite of the great caution used, woman has all the faults God tried to obviate. The daughters of Zion were haughty and walked with stretched forth necks and wanton eyes; Sarah was an eavesdropper in her own tent, when the angel spoke with Abraham; Miriam was a tale-bearer, accusing Moses; Rachel was envious of her sister Leah; Eve put out her hand to take the forbidden fruit, and Dinah was a gadabout.<sup>43</sup>

The physical formation of woman is far more complicated than that of man, as it must be for the function of childbearing, and likewise the intelligence of woman matures more quickly than the intelligence of man.<sup>44</sup> Many of the physical and psychical differences between the two sexes must be attributed to the fact that man was formed from the ground and woman from bone. Women need perfumes, while men do not; dust of the ground remains the same no matter how long

it is kept; flesh, however, requires salt to keep it in good condition. The voice of women is shrill, not so the voice of men; when soft viands are cooked, no sound is heard, but let a bone be put in a pot, and at once it crackles. A man is easily placated, not so a woman; a few drops of water suffice to soften a clod of earth; a bone stays hard, and if it were to soak in water for days. The man must ask the woman to be his wife, and not the woman the man to be her husband, because it is man who has sustained the loss of his rib, and he sallies forth to make good his loss again. The very differences between the sexes in garb and social forms go back to the origin of man and woman for their reasons. Woman covers her hair in token of Eve's having brought sin into the world; she tries to hide her shame; and women precede men in a funeral cortege, because it was woman who brought death into the world. And the religious commands addressed to women alone are connected with the history of Eve. Adam was the heave offering of the world, and Eve defiled it. As expiation, all women are commanded to separate a heave offering from the dough. And because woman extinguished the light of man's soul, she is bidden to kindle the Sabbath light.<sup>45</sup>

Adam was first made to fall into a deep sleep before the rib for Eve was taken from his side. For, had he watched her creation, she would not have awakened love in him. To this day it is true that men do not appreciate the charms of women whom they have known and observed from childhood up. Indeed, God had created a wife for Adam before Eve, but he would not have her, because she had been made in his presence. Knowing well all the details of her formation, he was repelled by her.<sup>46</sup> But when he roused himself from his profound sleep, and saw Eve before him in all her surprising beauty and grace, he exclaimed, "This is she who caused my heart to throb many a night!" Yet he discerned at once what the nature of woman was. She would, he



knew, seek to carry her point with man either by entreaties and tears, or flattery and caresses. He said, therefore, "This is my never-silent bell!"<sup>47</sup>

The wedding of the first couple was celebrated with pomp never repeated in the whole course of history since. God Himself, before presenting her to Adam, attired and adorned Eve as a bride. Yea, He appealed to the angels, saying: "Come, let us perform services of friendship for Adam and his helpmate, for the world rests upon friendly services, and they are more pleasing in My sight than the sacrifices Israel will offer upon the altar." The angels accordingly surrounded the marriage canopy, and God pronounced the blessings upon the bridal couple, as the *Hazan* does under the *Huppah*. The angels then danced and played upon musical instruments before Adam and Eve in their ten bridal chambers of gold, pearls, and precious stones, which God had prepared for them.

Adam called his wife Ishah, and himself he called Ish, abandoning the name Adam, which he had borne before the creation of Eve, for the reason that God added His own name Yah to the names of the man and the woman—Yod to Ish and He to Ishah—to indicate that as long as they walked in the ways of God and observed His commandments, His name would shield them against all harm. But if they went astray, His name would be withdrawn, and instead of Ish there would remain Esh, fire, a fire issuing from each and consuming the other.<sup>48</sup>

36. PRE 11; Tan. Pekude 3 (end); MHG I, 56.

37. BR 8. 10; Koheleth 6. 10; Koheleth Z., 107. Comp. also the sources quoted in the preceding note, as well as Zohar I, 38a. 2 Alphabet R. Akiba 59 (whence Yal-kut I, 20, on Gen. 2. 19, without giving source) remarks that the angels, noticing Adam's resemblance to God, said: "Are there two powers in this world?" Whereupon God reduced Adam's size, which had formerly filled the entire universe (comp. note 22) to one thousand cubits; comp.

notes 73 and 33. Hasidim 290 made use of the same source, and has the addition that the part taken from Adam's body was transformed into earth, and it is only this part which became inhabited (compare with p. 62), while the rest remained a desert. At this time the exact number of future generations was fixed, which shall not be complete until the original size of Adam's body (=גוף; comp. note 19) is restored in those of his descendants.—On sleep as a sign of mortality, comp. note 25. See further 12 Testaments, Reuben 3. 1, and Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 243–244.

38. PRE 3. In this as well as in the preceding legend an answer is offered to the question why Eve was not created at the same time as Adam. BR 17. 4 reads as follows: God foresaw that Adam would complain against Eve's creation (compare with pp. 74–75); she was therefore not given to him until he asked God for her. Theophilus, 2 gives the following reason: If two human beings, Adam and Eve, had been created at the same time, people would have declared that there were two gods. Quite similar is the statement in Mishnah Sanhedrin 4. 5 and Tosefta 8. 4–5, with reference to the question why only one man was created; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 25. These rabbinic sources also give ethical reasons why only one man was created (*i. e.*, one "human pair"): If there were more than one pair, it would be said that the pious are the descendants of the first pious pair and the wicked are descendants of the first wicked pair. In order that families should not boast of their ancestors, all mankind is descended from one pair. Moreover, if thieves and robbers molest their fellowmen now, how much more obnoxious would they have been, had they been of different descent. Finally the creation of only one man exhibits God's power, who, by means of one mould, is able to produce various kinds of types. Adam is the progenitor of all mankind, and how different men are from one another!

39. BR 17. 4. According to MHG I, 80–81 and 83, Adam became conscious of the sexual instinct only when he saw Eve before him. A different view is given in Yebamot 63a, where it is stated that Adam had unnatural relations with the animals before Eve was created. This passage was, at an early period, explained figuratively (comp. Lekah, Gen. 2. 23). On the question whether sexual intercourse had taken place before the fall of Adam and Eve or not, compare with footnote 4 on p. 101.

40. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 23a–23b and 33a–33b. The text is corrupt, and can only partly be restored with certainty (read in 23a, 1. 5: אָמַר לָהֶם הַקֶּבֶל אִמְרוּ לָהֶם), but its main purport cannot be misunderstood. On Lilith's abode in Egypt, comp. Tobit 8. 3; Revelation 9. 14; Müller, *Beiträge . . . Tobias*, 22. Egypt as the seat of witchcraft and the home of demons is frequently mentioned in the Kabbalah; hence the name of this country (מִצְרַיִם) is explained as the place of oppressors (מִצְרִים), *i. e.*, demons;



comp. Yalkut Reubeni, Deut. 26. 2. The view that it was the Red Sea in Egypt where Lilith remained is based on the conception that water is the abode of demons; comp. the assertion of Aristides, *Apologia*, 4: Wind ministers to God, fire to the angels (compare with footnote 63 on p. 13), and water to the demons. This accounts for the warning given in Pesahim 112a, with reference to the drinking of the water, in order that one might not be exposed to injury by the demons found therein. The conception of Lilith as a wind spirit, now known from Babylonian sources, was retained by the Jews as late as the thirteenth century; comp. Parhon, s. v. ליל. It is, however, true that generally she was conceived as a "Lamia," so that she was even identified with the Babylonian Labartu. Comp. Ginzberg's communication to Perles in *Orientalistische Literaturzeitung*, XVIII, 179–80, and the latter's remark against Lévi (*R.E.J.* LXVIII, 13), who considers the part ascribed to Lilith, in Alphabet of Ben Sira and in medieval literature, as a later development. Comp. further Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 94, 100, and text on p. 714; text on p. 843. The assertion in Zohar I, 19b 34b, and III, 19a, concerning Lilith as Adam's first wife is based on Alphabet, *loc. cit.* But old sources speak already of "the first Eve," though they do not identify her with Lilith; comp. BR 22. 7, and Augustine, *Contra Adversarium Legis*, 2. 5. See also on this point Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 60, note 3, and more fully footnote 47 on p. 114. The confusing of the Babylonian wind spirit Lilith with the "Liliths," night spirits, is already found in 'Erubin 18b. The statement of Hasidim, 354, that these "Liliths" (ליליות) assemble under certain trees belongs to German popular beliefs. On Lilith in the Talmud, comp. Kohut, *Angelologie*, 86–89, whose statements are not tenable. Attention should be drawn to the sentence in Shabbat 151a: Whoever sleeps alone in a house (or, whoever sleeps in an isolated house?) is seized by לילית. This very likely has nothing to do with the she-devil. אחז "seized" is employed in the Talmud only with respect to diseases; when referring to demons, the form ניזק or מזיק is used.

41. MHG I, 83. The proverb "only when, etc." is frequently quoted in the Talmud; comp., e. g., 'Abodah Zarah 73a, where our text reads ניעור; the reading of MHG, is נוער ("closed tightly," from נער=יער?). Philo, *Quaestiones*, I, 20, gives more reasons why Eve was not created at the same time as Adam. One of the reasons is that woman should not claim equality with man (compare with p. 64). Concerning Lilith's insubordination compare with p. 64.

42. BR 8.1 and 17.6; Berakot 61a; 'Erubin 18a; WR 14 (beginning); Tan. B. III; 33; Tan. Tazria' 2; Tehillim 139, 529. In all these sources a second view is cited, according to which Adam was created as "androgynus," and was subsequently separated into man and woman. The relation of this view to that of Plato, *Symposium*, 189d,

190d, was already noticed by Eusebius, 585c–585d, and in recent times by Freudenthal, *Hellenistische Studien*, I, 69. Jeremias (*Altes Testament im Lichte des Orients*, index, s. v., "Androgynus"), however, has shown that this view is already found among the Babylonians. The Rabbis were particularly concerned with explaining the contradiction between Gen. 1. 27 and 2. 7, *seq.*, and since in the first passage the rather unusual expression זכר ונקבה occurs, it was quite natural for them to take it to denote "androgynus." Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 24, 46, and in many other passages (comp. the references given by Gfrörer, *Philo*, I, 267, *seq.*, and 407, *seq.*), solves this exegetical difficulty in a philosophical manner. The first account of the creation speaks of the idea of man, which is incorporeal, hence neither masculine nor feminine, whereas the second account treats of the material creation of man, which has a definite form, either man or woman. It is worth noticing that in the first passage Philo speaks of the double sex of the "ideal man," but as of no sex in the second passage. However, one may easily see that the mythological conception of the "androgynus" is still discernible in his philosophical interpretation. Justin Martyr, *Cohortatio ad Gent.*, 30, and Clemens Alexandrinus, *Instructor*, 3, follow Philo almost literally in their explanation of the biblical double account of the creation of man; but the interpretation of Tertullian, *Adversus Hermogenem*, 26, and of Hippolytus, Gen. 1. 27, is in agreement with the Baraita 32 Middot, No. 12, according to which the Bible first gives a general account, and then a detailed one. Comp. also BR 17. 4; Philo, *Quaestiones*, 1. 19. On the question whether Philo knew of the myth concerning the "androgynus Adam," comp. Bousset, *Religion*, 406. It is, however, frequently found among the Gnostics; comp. Hippolytus, V, 1 and 3; VI, 1. It is noteworthy that Celsus, in Origen, *Contra Cels.*, 4. 38, observes that Jews as well as Christians consider the account of the creation of Eve out of Adam's rib to be an allegory. In the earlier rabbinic literature now extant no such allegory is known; comp., in addition to the sources cited at the beginning of this note, ARN 1, 8 (second version 8, 23), as well as 2 Alphabet of R. Akiba 59; Zohar II, 55a; III, 44b. Even Philo does not know such an allegory, and accordingly Celsus probably refers to oral communications which were imparted to him by enlightened Jews. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 2. 21 (comp. further BR 17. 6) remarks: Eve was formed out of the third rib of the right side.

43. BR 8. 2 (מוקרת ראש) is the contrast of the expression ראש הקל which occurs very frequently) and 45. 5; DR 6. 11; Tan. B. I, 172; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 6; 2 ARN 45, 126; MHG I, 83. Compare with p. 59, and Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 58–59.

44. BR 18. 3; Berakot 61a; Niddah 45b. In the last passage, as well as BR 18. 1, a different view is cited, according to which a man's intelligence matures sooner than



that of a woman, since the former has the opportunity to develop his mind in school, which opportunity is denied the latter.

45. BR 18. 8; 2 ARN 9, 24–25; Kiddushin 2b; Yelamedenu in *Aruk*, s. v. למד. On the three precepts (besides the two mentioned in the text, there is a third one in connection with menstruation), the observance of which is particularly enjoined upon women, comp. Shabbat 31b–32a; Yerushalmi 2, 5b; Tan. B. I, 28, and III, 53; Tan. Noah 1 and Mezora' 9. Philo, *De Sacr. Abel. et Caini*, 32, is in agreement with the view of the last-mentioned rabbinic sources, which speak of Adam as the dough which God kneaded. Concerning the covering of a woman's head, comp. also 2 ARN 42, 117; 1 Timothy 2. 15; 1 Cor. 11.10; Tertullian, *De Habitu Muliebri*, 1; *Adversus Marcionem*, 5. 8; *De Oratione*, 22. The statement made by Tertullian, in the last-named passage, that the unmarried Jewish women cover their heads, contradicts the assertions of the Jewish sources, according to which married women only covered their heads; comp., e. g., Ketubot 2. 1; Yebamot 114b. See, however, Nedarim 3. 8; Sifre N., 11; Bera-kot 24a. The idea that the covering of a woman's head is a punishment for Eve's sin is also found among later Christian authors; comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 58–59.

46. BR 18. 7; 2 ARN 8, 24; Sanhedrin 39a. On Adam's first wife comp. note 40, and footnote 47 on p. 114.

47. BR 18. 4 (on the expression הקיש בזוג comp. Mekilta Beshallah 1, 26b, and Tehillim 106, 456). On Eve's beauty see note 24 and Irenaeus, I, 30, 7. See further Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 79–80. In view of the fact that Eve was taken from Adam's body, Yebamot 62b and Ephes. 5. 33 say: "One should love his wife as oneself." The Talmud adds: "And honor even more than oneself."

48. PRE 12 (אמר fell out before אם; the correct reading is found in MHG I, 82, and in the commentary on Job by R. Isaac ha-Kohen 31. 40), essentially based on older sources; comp. BR 18. 1; Shabbat 95a; Yerushalmi 10, 12c; Tan. B. I, 83 and 86; Tan. Wa-Yera 1; Koheleth 7. 2 and 8. 1; Tehillim 25, 213–214; ARN 4, 19 (second version 8,22); Kallah Rabbeti 1; ShR 1. 5; Shir 4. 11; WR 12. 2; PK 4, 37a; PR 14, 62a; Baba Batra 75a; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 34. 6, and the second version, Gen. 35. 9; 2 Alphabet R. Akiba 60 (the description of the splendor of the first wedding is more elaborate here than in any other source); Baraita 32 Middot, No. 17. In many of the sources just cited it is mentioned that in the beginning, middle (not to be taken literally), and conclusion of the Pentateuch examples are given of God's loving-kindness which man is to emulate. God adorned the bride (Eve), visited the sick (Abraham, Gen. 18. 1), and attended to Moses' burial.—The etymology of the names of "man" and "woman," which is ascribed in Sotah 17a to R. Akiba, was also known to Eusebius; comp. *Praeparatio Evang.*, 517b. Depending on

Theodotion, Gen. 2. 23, Origen, *Ad Afric.*, 12, and Jerome, Gen., *loc. cit.*, connect אשה "wife" with נשא "took;" *Vocabitur assumptio quia ex viro sumpta est*, says Jerome. Many explanations are also offered of the name חווה "Eve." It might signify חויא "serpent," because she was the serpent, i. e., the seducer of Adam, or the "speaker" (from חוה "declared"), because she was the only one besides the serpent who understood the language of the animals (comp. note 58), and it was from her that Adam learned it; comp. BR 20, 11, 22. 2, and further 18. 6; Lekah and Imre No'am on Gen. 3. 20, as well as *Ha-dar*, 11.21 (מ"ה=מות=מ), and מלאך המות=מ"ה, and יבין=יהמ"י (יהמבין יבין=יהמ"י); comp. Baba Batra 16a), and Philo, *Quaestiones*, 1. 52.

## ADAM AND EVE IN PARADISE

The Garden of Eden was the abode of the first man and woman, and the souls of all men must pass through it after death, before they reach their final destination. For the souls of the departed must go through seven portals before they arrive in the heaven 'Arabot. There the souls of the pious are transformed into angels, and there they remain forever, praising God and feasting their sight upon the glory of the Shekinah. The first portal is the Cave of Machpelah, in the vicinity of Paradise, which is under the care and supervision of Adam. If the soul that presents herself at the portal is worthy, he calls out, "Make room! Thou art welcome!" The soul then proceeds until she arrives at the gate of Paradise guarded by the cherubim and the flaming sword. If she is not found worthy, she is consumed by the sword; otherwise she receives a pass-bill, which admits her to the terrestrial Paradise. Therein is a pillar of smoke and light extending from Paradise to the gate of heaven, and it depends upon the character of the soul whether she can climb upward on it and reach heaven. The third portal, Zebul, is at the entrance of heaven. If the soul is worthy, the guard opens the portal and admits her to the heavenly Temple. Michael presents her to God, and conducts her to the seventh portal, 'Arabot, within which the souls



of the pious, changed to angels, praise the Lord, and feed on the glory of the Shekinah.<sup>49</sup>

In Paradise stand the tree of life and the tree of knowledge, the latter forming a hedge about the former. Only he who has cleared a path for himself through the tree of knowledge can come close to the tree of life, which is so huge that it would take a man five hundred years to traverse a distance equal to the diameter of the trunk, and no less vast is the space shaded by its crown of branches. From beneath it flows forth the water that irrigates the whole earth,<sup>50</sup> parting thence into four streams, the Ganges, the Nile, the Tigris, and the Euphrates.<sup>51</sup> But it was only during the days of creation that the realm of plants looked to the waters of the earth for nourishment. Later on God made the plants dependent upon the rain, the upper waters. The clouds rise from earth to heaven, where water is poured into them as from a conduit.<sup>52</sup> The plants began to feel the effect of the water only after Adam was created. Although they had been brought forth on the third day, God did not permit them to sprout and appear above the surface of the earth, until Adam prayed to Him to give food unto them, for God longs for the prayers of the pious.<sup>53</sup>

Paradise being such as it was, it was, naturally, not necessary for Adam to work the land. True, the Lord God put the man into the Garden of Eden to dress it and to keep it, but that only means he is to study the Torah there and fulfil the commandments of God.<sup>54</sup> There were especially six commandments which every human being is expected to heed: man should not worship idols; nor blaspheme God; nor commit murder, nor incest, nor theft and robbery; and all generations have the duty of instituting measures of law and order.<sup>55</sup> One more such command there was, but it was a temporary injunction. Adam was to eat only the green things of the field. But the prohibition against the use of animals for food was revoked in Noah's time, after the deluge.

Nevertheless, Adam was not cut off from the enjoyment of meat dishes. Though he was not permitted to slaughter animals for the appeasing of his appetite, the angels brought him meat and wine, serving him like attendants.<sup>56</sup> And as the angels ministered to his wants, so also the animals. They were wholly under his dominion, and their food they took out of his hand and out of Eve's.<sup>57</sup> In all respects, the animal world had a different relation to Adam from their relation to his descendants. Not only did they know the language of man,<sup>58</sup> but they respected the image of God, and they feared the first human couple, all of which changed into the opposite after the fall of man.<sup>59</sup>

---

49. Zohar Hadash (beginning of Noah); Recanati, Gen. 3. 24. On the Machpelah as the entrance to paradise, comp. Index, s. v. On the view that all the souls of the dead are presented to Adam, see text on p. 99. The pillars of paradise are really identical with the celestial ladder of Koenen 28, and are also known in Christian legend; comp. Bonwetsch in the *Göttingen Nachrichten*, 1900, and James, *Lost Apocrypha*, 96 seq. Compare also footnote 22 on p. 6.

50. *Imre No'am* and *Hadar* on Gen. 3.22. The huge size of the tree is already alluded to in older sources; comp. BR 15. 6; Yerushalmi Berakot 1.2c; Shir 6.9; Aggadat Shir 1, 13 and 55; Tehillim 1,18; ER 2,10; 2 ARN 43, 119 (below). Comp. further R. Bahya on Gen. 2. 9, who remarks: The tree of knowledge and the tree of life were both in the centre of the Garden, for they formed one tree at the bottom, and branched out into two when they reached a certain height. Philo, thinking the literal interpretation of the paradise narrative absurd (*De Plant. Noe* 8; comp. also *Leg. Alleg.*, 1. 30), is the only one who explains it allegorically, but the Rabbis, Josephus, and the pseudepigraphic writers (the Books of Enoch, Jub., etc.) take this biblical narrative literally. Not until we reach the Arabic period, when the philosophic studies influenced Jewish thought, do we find the allegorical interpretation of the paradise narrative in rabbinic circles. See Gabirol in *Peletat Soferim*, 45, seq. and Maimonides, *Guide of the Perplexed*, II, 30. Although the Kabbalah does not deny the existence of an earthly paradise, it nevertheless interprets the paradise account in an allegoric-mystical manner. MHG I, 76, goes back to a medieval source influenced by philosophical speculations. A timid attempt at allegorization of the paradise account is already found in PRE 21.



51. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, 1, 13. The etymologies given by him for the Hebrew names of these rivers correspond partly to BR 16. 1–4. Comp. further Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1. 12–13, whose statements (comp. especially his remark on the Euphrates) go back to the Palestinian Haggadah found in BR *loc. cit.* Jerome's remarks on Gen. 2. 12 are based on oral communications from his Palestinian teacher, and not on Josephus. He says: "*Fison . . . Gangem putant*"; in the extant midrashic sources Pishon is identified with the Nile; comp. BR, *loc. cit.*; Theodor, *ad loc.*, as well as Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.*, where הַיַּנְדִּיק is not Indian, but, as Epstein, *Eldad*, 33, *seq.*, proves, signifies southern Ethiopia. With respect to Gen. 15. 18, נִלוֹס (the Nile) is explained as נִנּוֹס "small"; in contrast to the Euphrates, the "great" river, the Nile is the small one; comp. *Pa'aneah* and Midrash Aggadah on Num. 1. 7. To the cycle of legends concerning the rivers of paradise, belongs the stream of life, which plays an important part in the Alexander legend, a stream which, according to Tamid 32b, flows out of paradise. The view held by some writers (comp. Friedlaender, *Chadhirlegende*, 47) that this feature of the Alexander legend is not Jewish, because the Jewish legend does not know of the "stream of life," is based on an error. "Living waters" is mentioned in Enoch 17. 4; Revelation 22. 17, and, among the Gnostics, by Hippolytus, 5. 2, as well as 5. 22. Zimmern, *Keilinschriften und AT*, 524, *seq.*, and 562, has pointed out that this view is found among the Babylonians.

52. BR 13. 9 and the parallels cited by Theodor, as well as Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 2. 6 and Greek Baruch 2. 2. The theories of the ancient Rabbis concerning rain, clouds, etc., are given by Hirschensohn, *Sheba' Hokmot*, 6–8 and 9–11.

53. Hullin 60b.

54. Sifre D., 41; Midrash Tannaim 22; BR 16. 5; PRE 12; 2 ARN 21, 44 (the literal and haggadic meanings of Gen. 2. 15 are found next to one another); 2 Enoch 30; Theophilus, 2. 19; Ephraim I, 23E; Lactantius, *Institutiones*, 2. 13; Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1. 14. A different view is given in ARN 11, 45 (second version, *loc. cit.*): Adam was commanded to work in order that his descendants should know the value of work. Mekilta RS, 107, and (the statement of R. Jose) ARN, *loc. cit.* read: Adam died only after he had ceased working; comp. also Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 58.

55. Seder 'Olam 5; Sanhedrin 56a; Tosefta 'Abodah Zarah 8. 4, *seq.*, and Babli 64b; Sifre N., 111; BR 16. 6, 24. 5, 26. 1, and 34. 8; PK 12, 100b; ShR 30. 9; BaR 14. 12; DR 1. 21 and 2. 25; Shir 1. 2; Koheleth 3. 11; Tehillim 1, 10–11, and 2, 26; Mishle 21, 110; Tan. B. II, 69; Tan. Yitro 3. Comp. also the interesting passage in Sekel 1, 108 and Lekah, Gen. 1. 15. In the rabbinic sources these commandments are known as the "seven Noachian commandments" (besides the six mentioned, the seventh commandment is

the one enjoined upon Noah not to eat the meat of a living animal; comp. Gen. 9. 4), which, in contrast to the other biblical precepts obligatory upon Israelites alone, must be accepted by all men. In some passages, however, thirty Noachian commandments are mentioned, which the children of Noah accepted, but did not fulfill. The fulfillment of those will only take place in Messianic times; comp. Yerushalmi 'Abodah Zarah 2, 40c; Hullin 92a; BR 98. 9; Tehillim 2, 26 (read שלשים instead of שלש) and 31, 177. It is not stated what these thirty commandments are; comp. R. Bezalel Ronsburg's marginal glosses on Hullin, *loc. cit.*, and Joel in *Graetz-Jubelschrift*, 174, note 1. In Sanhedrin and Tosefta, *loc. cit.*, the opinions of some scholars are cited which add a few more to the Noachian commandments, as, e. g., the prohibition of witchcraft; but even with these the number thirty is not yet reached. Tertullian, *Adversus Judaeos*, 2, tries to prove that in the prohibition of fruit enjoined upon Adam the entire decalogue is contained. A similar statement is found in Zohar I, 36a; comp. also Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 177. Anti-Christian is the remark (BR 16. 5) that Adam received the commandments concerning the observance of the Sabbath and the daily sacrifice. The inferiority of the ceremonial laws, as e. g., the observance of the Sabbath and the sacrifices, is proved by Christian apologists from the fact that Adam, the creation of God's own hands, was not enjoined to observe them.

56. Sanhedrin 59b; ARN 1, 5; Zohar I, 38a. The attendance on the part of the angels caused the jealousy of the serpent (Satan?; comp. note 35) against Adam; comp. note 60. That Adam was not permitted to eat meat is asserted by some of the Church Fathers; comp. Theophilus, 2. 18 (there were no carnivorous animals before Adam's fall); Novatian, *De Cibis Judaicis* 2. For details see footnote 56 on p. 151.

57. Apocalypse of Moses 15. It seems to follow from BR 19. 5 that Eve alone took care of the animals; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 53–54; see also *Imre No'am* and *Hadar* on Gen. 3. 20. In the last two sources the name of Eve is brought into relation with this idea; comp. note 48. On the entertainment of Adam in paradise by the angels, see the preceding note, and the Revelation of Ezra (beginning). 2 Enoch 31. 2, on the contrary, reads: I made the heavens for him open, that he should perceive the angels sing the song of triumph.

58. Jub. 3. 28; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 1. 4; Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1. 22; the Christian chronologists Syncellus, Cedrenus, and Zonaros; comp. Charles on Jub., *loc. cit.* The older rabbinic literature does not know of the original language spoken by man and the animals, and even Lekah, Gen. 3. 1, maintains that only the serpent spoke Hebrew (*i. e.*, the original speech of man; compare with footnote 91 on p. 61), whereas the rest of the animals spoke their own languages, which, however, Adam understood (comp. note



48). This is also the view of Hasidim 454. On the different languages of animals see Index, *s. v.* "Animals, Language of". It may be noted that Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1. 21, also declares that animals have a language which they use among themselves. Rationalistic explanations of the biblical passages presupposing the language of animals (the serpent and Balaam's ass) are found in geonic literature; comp. Ibn Ezra on Gen. 3, and the responsum of R. Hai Gaon in *Kohelet Shelomoh*, 13. Philo, *De Conf. Ling.*, 3, ridicules the Greek fable concerning the original language of animals. Comp., on the other hand, his observations in *Questiones*, 1. 32, where he concedes the possibility that animals were able to speak before the fall. Comp. note 113.

59. Apocalypse of Moses 11; for further details concerning this subject comp. note 113.

## THE FALL OF MAN

Among the animals the serpent was notable. Of all of them he had the most excellent qualities, in some of which he resembled man. Like man he stood upright upon two feet, and in height he was equal to the camel. Had it not been for the fall of man, which brought misfortune to them, too, one pair of serpents would have sufficed to perform all the work man has to do, and, besides, they would have supplied him with silver, gold, gems, and pearls. As a matter of fact, it was the very ability of the serpent that led to the ruin of man and his own ruin. His superior mental gifts caused him to become an infidel. It likewise explains his envy of man, especially of his conjugal relations. Envy made him meditate ways and means of bringing about the death of Adam.<sup>60</sup> He was too well acquainted with the character of the man to attempt to exercise tricks of persuasion upon him, and he approached the woman, knowing that women are beguiled easily. The conversation with Eve was cunningly planned, she could not but be caught in a trap. The serpent began, "Is it true that God hath said, Ye shall not eat of every tree in the garden?" "We may," rejoined Eve, "eat of the fruit of all

the trees in the garden, except that which is in the midst of the garden, and that we may not even touch, lest we be stricken with death." She spoke thus, because in his zeal to guard her against the transgressing of the Divine command, Adam had forbidden Eve to touch the tree, though God had mentioned only the eating of the fruit. It remains a truth, what the proverb says, "Better a wall ten hands high that stands, than a wall a hundred ells high that cannot stand." It was Adam's exaggeration that afforded the serpent the possibility of persuading Eve to taste of the forbidden fruit. The serpent pushed Eve against the tree, and said: "Thou seest that touching the tree has not caused thy death. As little will it hurt thee to eat the fruit of the tree. Naught but malevolence has prompted the prohibition, for as soon as ye eat thereof, ye shall be as God. As He creates and destroys worlds, so will ye have the power to create and destroy. As He doth slay and revive, so will ye have the power to slay and revive."<sup>61</sup> He Himself ate first of the fruit of the tree, and then He created the world. Therefore doth He forbid you to eat thereof, lest you create other worlds. Everyone knows that 'artisans of the same guild hate one another.' Furthermore, have ye not observed that every creature hath dominion over the creature fashioned before itself? The heavens were made on the first day, and they are kept in place by the firmament made on the second day. The firmament, in turn, is ruled by the plants, the creation of the third day, for they take up all the water of the firmament. The sun and the other celestial bodies, which were created on the fourth day, have power over the world of plants. They can ripen their fruits and flourish only through their influence. The creation of the fifth day, the animal world, rules over the celestial spheres. Witness the ziz, which can darken the sun with its pinions. But ye are masters of the whole of creation, because ye were the last to be created. Hasten now and eat of the



fruit of the tree in the midst of the garden, and become independent of God, lest He bring forth still other creatures to bear rule over you.”<sup>62</sup>

To give due weight to these words, the serpent began to shake the tree violently and bring down its fruit. He ate thereof, saying: “As I do not die of eating the fruit, so wilt thou not die.” Now Eve could not but say to herself, “All that my master”—so she called Adam—“commanded me is but lies,” and she determined to follow the advice of the serpent.<sup>63</sup> Yet she could not bring herself to disobey the command of God utterly. She made a compromise with her conscience. First she ate only the outside skin of the fruit, and then, seeing that death did not fell her, she ate the fruit itself.<sup>64</sup> Scarce had she finished, when she saw the Angel of Death before her. Expecting her end to come immediately, she resolved to make Adam eat of the forbidden fruit, too, lest he espouse another wife after her death.<sup>65</sup> It required tears and lamentations on her part to prevail upon Adam to take the baleful step. Not yet satisfied, she gave of the fruit to all other living beings, that they, too, might be subject to death.<sup>66</sup> All ate, and they all are mortal, with the exception of the bird *malḥam*, who refused the fruit, with the words: “Is it not enough that ye have sinned against God, and have brought death to others? Must ye still come to me and seek to persuade me into disobeying God’s command, that I may eat and die thereof? I will not do your bidding.” A heavenly voice was heard then to say to Adam and Eve: “To you was the command given. Ye did not heed it; ye did transgress it, and ye did seek to persuade the bird *malḥam*. He was steadfast, and he feared Me, although I gave him no command. Therefore he shall never taste of death, neither he nor his descendants—they all shall live forever in Paradise.”<sup>67</sup>

Adam spoke to Eve: “Didst thou give me of the tree of which I forbade thee to eat? Thou didst give me thereof, for my eyes are opened, and

the teeth in my mouth are set on edge.” Eve made answer, “As my teeth were set on edge, so may the teeth of all living beings be set on edge.”<sup>68</sup>

The first result was that Adam and Eve became naked. Before, their bodies had been overlaid with a horny skin, and enveloped with the cloud of glory. No sooner had they violated the command given them than the cloud of glory and the horny skin dropped from them, and they stood there in their nakedness, and ashamed.<sup>69</sup> Adam tried to gather leaves from the trees to cover part of their bodies, but he heard one tree after the other say: “There is the thief that deceived his Creator. Nay, the foot of pride shall not come against me, nor the hand of the wicked touch me. Hence, and take no leaves from me!” Only the fig-tree granted him permission to take of its leaves. That was because the fig was the forbidden fruit itself. Adam had the same experience as that prince who seduced one of the maid-servants in the palace. When the king, his father, chased him out, he vainly sought a refuge with the other maid-servants, but only she who had caused his disgrace would grant him assistance.<sup>70</sup>

---

60. BR 19, 19; Koheleth 1, 18; Shemuel 7, 66; Sanhedrin 59b; ARN 1, 5 (both versions); Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1, 32. Comp. also Jerome on Gen. 3, 1 and Yerushalmi Kiddushin 4, 65c (מעשה חיי); Zohar I, 79a and 191. The idea that jealousy caused the serpent’s hatred occurs already in the Septuagint, Gen. 2, 24, and 2 Enoch 31, 3, as well as in John 8, 44, and in the different versions of Vita Adae; comp. Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 27 and 54, as well as note 35, with regard to jealousy as the cause of Satan’s fall. Comp. also note 131. In pseudepigraphic literature (comp. note 116), instead of the serpent, it is Satan who is the real seducer; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 42–45. In rabbinic literature (Sorah 9b; Sanhedrin 29a; Sifre D., 323) the serpent is described as הקדמוני, which apparently corresponds to ὁ ἄρχαῖος of Revelation 20, 2. But the use of הקדמוני with reference to Adam (comp. note 21) shows that this description of the serpent by the Rabbis is entirely different from that of Revelation. On the bodily similarity of man to the serpent comp. MHG I, 87, where the observation is made that man can only



deceive another who resembles him. On the serpent as the possessor of gold and silver, compare with p. 952 (top).

61. PRE 13; BR 19. 3–4; ARN (both versions) 1, 4–5 and 151; Sanhedrin 29a. Comp. further the sources cited in the preceding note, as well as Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1. 33–34, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 1. 4. Lekah, Gen. 3. 1, remarks that God announced this prohibition respecting the fruit of paradise in the presence of the serpent, so that he knew everything about it.

62. BR 19. 4. The serpent's slandering of God is frequently mentioned in the Haggadah; comp. Tan. B. III, 47; Tan. Bereshit 8; DR 5. 10; ShR 3. 12; Tehillim 1, 9–10; 2 ARN 1, 6; Apocalypse of Moses 18; compare with p. 93. The view that the creation of the six days was of a progressive order occurs also in 2 ARN 43, 120; comp. also Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 21 and 14.

63. ARN 1, 4. In the second version, 1, 5, a view is cited, according to which the tree, as the serpent wanted to touch it, exclaimed, saying: "Let not the foot of pride come against me, and let not the hand of the wicked remove me" (Ps. 36. 12); comp. further ARN 157, concerning Satan's attempt to enter paradise. See also text on p. 93, as well as PRE 11, where the two different versions of ARN are blended together into one.

64. Ibn Sabba, Gen. 3. 6.; very likely dependent upon a lost Midrash.

65. 2 ARN 1, 6; PRE 11; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 3. 6 (where after **ואכלת** the sentence **וחמת ודחילת** should be read). Comp. the sources cited in the next note, as well as text on p. 93.

66. BR 19. 5; Tan. Introduction 155; Shemuel 12, 81. Compare with p. 93.

67. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 28b, 29a–29b, and 36a (the last passage reads **מלחס** unlike Yerahmeel 48, which associates the name of the immortal bird with **חמל** and not its synonym **חס**), and Bereshit Rabbeti in BHM VI, 12 (introduction), where the bird is named **מלחס**. This legend is, of course, only a different version of the widespread phoenix legend; compare with p. 34 and note 151 appertaining thereto. Besides this bird and its descendants, there are mentioned in 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 28b eleven persons (the meaningless **ויש אומרים** obviously resulted from an incorrect reading of the abbreviation **ויא**, which=**עשר** (ואחר עשר) who entered paradise during their life-time. These are: Enoch, Sarah the daughter of Asher, Bithiah the daughter of Pharaoh, Hiram the King of Tyre, Eliezer Abraham's servant, Elijah (missing in the printed text; comp. manuscript reading on 36a), Jabez, Ebedmelech the Ethiopian, Jonadab the Rechabite as well as his descendants, and of post-biblical times, R. Judah ha-Nasi's slave and R. Joshua b. Levi. A similar list of immortals is to be found in Derek Erez Z., 1 (end); PRK (Grünhut's edition, 83); Aguddat Aggadot (Carmoly's edition, 12), and the sources cited by Tawrogi on Derek Erez

Z. The greatest number of immortals is to be found in Yal-kut II, 367, where Methuselah (this is of Christian origin; compare with footnote 62 on p. 131) and the three sons of Korah are included in the list. Comp. Index under the names enumerated above as well as s. v. "Paradise", "Entering Alive", "Moses", "Bithiah", "Hiram", "Baruch", "Ezra". The men "who were taken up to heaven without tasting death" (**לא טעמו טעם מיתה**); comp. BR 21. 5, where this expression is employed with respect to Elijah, whereas the usual term for the immortals is "those who entered paradise during their life-time") are already mentioned in 4 Ezra 6. 26. The following are known as such in pseudepigraphic literature: Enoch (Books of Enoch), Moses (Assumption of Moses 106–107); Jeremiah (2 Maccabees 2. 1); Baruch (Apocalypse of Baruch 77. 2), and Ezra (4 Ezra, end). Comp. Box on 4 Ezra 6. 26. Nothing is to be found in the Jewish sources concerning the association of these immortals with the Messiah. The part ascribed in the Midrash (comp., e. g., DR 10. 1 and text on p. 235, as well as text on p. 838) and in the New Testament to Moses as the forerunner or assistant of the Messiah does not presuppose Moses' immortality, but his resurrection at the very beginning of the Messianic time. In case 4 Ezra 14. 9 is not a Christian interpolation, this passage does not suppose a pre-existing Messiah but only implies that the Messiah entered paradise alive after having completed his earthly career, as is explicitly stated in Derek Erez Z., *loc. cit.*, and parallel passages. In conclusion it may be remarked that the list of the immortals is found only in late writings (hardly earlier than the end of the tenth century C. E.), at the time when Enoch came to be honored again. The older rabbinic literature is not particularly favorably inclined toward Enoch; compare with footnote 58 on p. 120. On Elijah as the companion of the Messiah in paradise, see text on pp. 19–20.

68. ARN 1, 6 (read **אמרה לו** instead of **אמר לה**); PRE 13.

69. PRE 14; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 3. 7 and 21. The older Haggadah speaks of "garments of light", which the first "pair" wore before the fall of man, as bestowed upon them by God, in accordance with Gen. 3. 21, where **עור** ("skin") is explained as though it were written **אור** ("light"). This verse is said to refer to the state before the fall; comp. BR 18. 56, as well as 20. 12, and the remarks of Theodor on these passages. See further Zohar I, 36b (this is the source of Recanati, quoted by Theodor!), and for details comp. notes 93 and 104. The later Haggadah retains the legend about the light which shone on the first "human pair", but explains **עור** (Gen., *loc. cit.*) literally; hence the assertion of PRE and Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.* Compare footnote 123 on p. 28.

70. BR 15. 7. The forbidden fruit is identified, respectively, with the fig, grape, apple of paradise (*Eitrog*), wheat (which grew on stalks as tall as the cedars of Lebanon), and



the nut; comp. BR, *loc. cit.*, and 19. 5; Berakot 40a; Sanhedrin 70a; PK 20, 142a; PR 43, 175a; WR 12. 1; BaR 10. 2 and 8; Esther 2. 1; Targum Song of Songs 7. 9 (read, with R. Tam, in *Sefer ha-Yashar*, 217: **עֵדֶן רִיחַ אֶתְרוּגָא דָּגֵן**); Greek Apocalypse of Baruch 4. 8; Apocalypse of Abraham 23; Enoch 32. 4 (which reads: The tree of knowledge is in height like a fir, and its leaves like those of the carob, and its fruit like the clusters of a vine); Apocalypse of Moses 21; Tertullian, *Adversus Marcionem*, 2.2; Methodius, *Symposium*. 2; Origen, Gen. 9. 20; Epiphanius, *Haer.* 45 (has grapes, according to the view of the Gnostics); Moses bar Cepha, 36 E. The oldest and most prevalent view identifies the forbidden fruit with the grape, which goes back to an old mythological idea that wine is the beverage of the gods. The fig owes its distinction to the incident that the first “pair” took hold of the fig leaves after the fall, and this identification is not only found in rabbinic sources, but also in the Apocalypse of Moses and in Tertullian, *loc. cit.* Purely midrashic is the identification with the wheat which is only found in rabbinic sources and accepted by Moses bar Cepha. This is based on the play on the words **חֹטֶה** (“wheat”) and **חַטָּא** (“sin”). The identification with the apple of paradise is due to a similar play on words, the **אֶתְרוּגָא** being derived from **רָגַג** “he desired”; comp. Nahmanides on Lev. 23.40. The carob likewise owes its distinction to its name which signifies destruction. “Adam’s apple”, widely known all over Europe (it is met for the first time in ps.—Tertullian, Gen. 85), is perhaps the result of the inaccurate rendering of the Hebrew **תַּפּוּחַ**, which in the Bible denotes “apple”, but in later literature signifies also the apple of paradise, *i. e.*, the Ethrog; comp. Shabbat 88a, and the remark of R. Tam, *loc. cit.* The benediction mentioned in geonic sources **צַג אֶגְרוֹז אֲשֶׁר** (comp. Seder R. Amram, Frumkin’s edition, II, 406) is based on the assumption that the tree of knowledge, whose fruit produced sexual desire, was a nut-tree; compare with footnote 3 on p. 101. Comp. also ps.—Tertullian, Gen. 86; Commodianus, *Instructions*, 3, though he speaks of the palm-tree, which misled Adam, describes, at the same time, the fruit as the apple. On this point comp. Hippolytus, 6. 22, who remarks: The palm-tree is the symbol of battle and slaughter (the gnostic view cited by the same author 7. 1 concerning God as a seed of fig-tree probably bears a close relation to the fig as the fruit of the tree of knowledge). Ps.—*Matthew* 21 and the *Passing of Mary* 7 speak of the palm of paradise; comp. further BR 15. 7, where **מִתְמַרֵּת** (“shoot up as a palm tree”) is used in connection with the forbidden fruit. On the grape as the forbidden fruit, compare also with p. 153; Sifre D., 323; footnote 79 on p. 18. The legend discussed in the last passage concerning the wine of paradise preserved for the pious is probably related to the view that the fruit which brought sin into the world will become “a healing” in the world to come; comp. WR 12 (end), and the Christological

form of this legend in the Greek Apocalypse of Baruch and in Moses bar Cepha, *loc. cit.* The fig leaves with which Adam and Eve covered themselves are explained by Irenaeus III, 23.5, as a sign of repentance, because they were leaves which hurt the body. The statement of R. Meir in ‘Eruvin 18b (**זְרִי תַאֲנִים**) has the same meaning. It may further be noted that in the rabbinic sources mentioned above (comp. also Tan. B. I, 105) a view is cited according to which Scripture purposely refrains from mentioning the forbidden fruit, in order that men should not hate it afterwards for having caused death. On the exact determination of the tree of life, comp. note 113. See further Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 64–65, and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 38–42.

## THE PUNISHMENT

As long as Adam stood naked, casting about for means of escape from his embarrassment, God did not appear unto him, for one should not “strive to see a man in the hour of his disgrace.” He waited until Adam and Eve had covered themselves with fig leaves.<sup>71</sup> But even before God spoke to him, Adam knew what was impending. He heard the angels announce, “God betaketh Himself unto those that dwell in Paradise.” He heard more, too. He heard what the angels were saying to one another about his fall, and what they were saying to God. In astonishment the angels exclaimed: “What! He still walks about in Paradise? He is not yet dead?” Whereupon God: “I said to him, ‘In the day that thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die!’ Now, ye know not what manner of day I meant—one of My days of a thousand years, or one of your days. I will give him one of My days. He shall have nine hundred and thirty years to live, and seventy to leave to his descendants.”<sup>72</sup>

When Adam and Eve heard God approaching, they hid among the trees—which would not have been possible before the fall. Before he committed his trespass, Adam’s height was from the



heavens to the earth, but afterward it was reduced to one hundred ells.<sup>73</sup> Another consequence of his sin was the fear Adam felt when he heard the voice of God: before his fall it had not disquieted him in the least.<sup>74</sup> Hence it was that when Adam said, “I heard Thy voice in the garden, and I was afraid,” God replied, “Aforetime thou wert not afraid, and now thou art afraid?”<sup>75</sup>

God refrained from reproaches at first. Standing at the gate of Paradise, He but asked, “Where art thou, Adam?” Thus did God desire to teach man a rule of polite behavior, never to enter the house of another without announcing himself.<sup>76</sup> It cannot be denied, the words “Where art thou?” were pregnant with meaning. They were intended to bring home to Adam the vast difference between his latter and his former state—between his supernatural size then and his shrunken size now; between the lordship of God over him then and the lordship of the serpent over him now.<sup>77</sup> At the same time, God wanted to give Adam the opportunity of repenting of his sin, and he would have received Divine forgiveness for it. But so far from repenting of it, Adam slandered God, and uttered blasphemies against Him.<sup>78</sup> When God asked him, “Hast thou eaten of the tree whereof I commanded thee thou shouldst not eat?” he did not confess his sin, but excused himself with the words: “O Lord of the world! As long as I was alone, I did not fall into sin, but as soon as this woman came to me, she tempted me.” God replied: “I gave her unto thee as a help, and thou art ungrateful when thou accusest her, saying, ‘She gave me of the tree.’ Thou shouldst not have obeyed her, for thou art the head, and not she.”<sup>79</sup> God, who knows all things, had foreseen exactly this, and He had not created Eve until Adam had asked Him for a helpmate, so that he might not have apparently good reason for reproaching God with having created woman.<sup>80</sup>

As Adam tried to shift the blame for his misdeed from himself, so also Eve. She, like her

husband, did not confess her transgression and pray for pardon, which would have been granted to her.<sup>81</sup> Gracious as God is, He did not pronounce the doom upon Adam and Eve until they showed themselves stiff-necked. Not so with the serpent. God indicted the curse upon the serpent without hearing his defense; for the serpent is a villain, and the wicked are good debaters. If God had questioned him, the serpent would have answered: “Thou didst give them a command, and I did contradict it. Why did they obey me, and not Thee?”<sup>82</sup> Therefore God did not enter into an argument with the serpent, but straightway decreed the following ten punishments: The mouth of the serpent was closed, and his power of speech taken away; his hands and feet were hacked off; the earth was given him as food; he must suffer great pain in sloughing his skin; enmity is to exist between him and man; if he eats the choicest viands, or drinks the sweetest beverages, they all change into dust in his mouth; the pregnancy of the female serpent lasts seven years; men shall seek to kill him as soon as they catch sight of him; even in the future world, where all beings will be blessed, he will not escape the punishment decreed for him; he will vanish from out of the Holy Land if Israel walks in the ways of God.<sup>83</sup>

Furthermore, God spake to the serpent: “I created thee to be king over all animals, cattle and the beasts of the field alike; but thou wast not satisfied. Therefore thou shalt be cursed above all cattle and above every beast of the field. I created thee of upright posture; but thou wast not satisfied. Therefore thou shalt go upon thy belly. I created thee to eat the same food as man; but thou wast not satisfied. Therefore thou shalt eat dust all the days of thy life. Thou didst seek to cause the death of Adam in order to espouse his wife. Therefore I will put enmity between thee and the woman.” How true it is—he who lusts after what is not his due, not only does he not attain his desire, but he also loses what he has!



As angels had been present when the doom was pronounced upon the serpent—for God had convoked a Sanhedrin of seventy-one angels when He sat in judgment upon him—so the execution of the decree against him was entrusted to angels. They descended from heaven, and chopped off his hands and feet. His suffering was so great that his agonized cries could be heard from one end of the world to the other.<sup>84</sup>

The verdict against Eve also consisted of ten curses, the effect of which is noticeable to this day in the physical, spiritual, and social state of woman.<sup>85</sup> It was not God Himself who announced her fate to Eve. The only woman with whom God ever spoke was Sarah. In the case of Eve, He made use of the services of an interpreter.<sup>86</sup>

Finally, also the punishment of Adam was tenfold: he lost his celestial clothing—God stripped it off him; in sorrow he was to earn his daily bread; the food he ate was to be turned from good into bad; his children were to wander from land to land; his body was to exude sweat; he was to have an evil inclination; in death his body was to be a prey of the worms; animals were to have power over him, in that they could slay him; his days were to be few and full of trouble; in the end he was to render account of all his doings on earth.<sup>87</sup>

These three sinners were not the only ones to have punishment dealt out to them. The earth fared no better, for it had been guilty of various misdemeanors. In the first place, it had not entirely heeded the command of God given on the third day, to bring forth “tree of fruit.” What God had desired was a tree the wood of which was to be as pleasant to the taste as the fruit thereof. The earth, however, produced a tree bearing fruit, the tree itself not being edible.<sup>88</sup> Again, the earth did not do its whole duty in connection with the sin of Adam. God had appointed the sun and the earth witnesses to testify against Adam in case he committed a trespass. The sun, accordingly,

had grown dark the instant Adam became guilty of disobedience, but the earth, not knowing how to take notice of Adam’s fall, disregarded it altogether.<sup>89</sup> The earth also had to suffer a tenfold punishment: independent before, she was hereafter to wait to be watered by the rain from above; sometimes the fruits of the earth fail; the grain she brings forth is stricken with blasting and mildew; she must produce all sorts of noxious vermin; thenceforth she was to be divided into valleys and mountains; she must grow barren trees, bearing no fruit; thorns and thistles sprout from her; much is sown in the earth, but little is harvested; in time to come the earth will have to disclose her blood, and shall no more cover her slain; and, finally, she shall, one day, “wax old like a garment.”<sup>90</sup>

When Adam heard the words, “Thorns and thistles shall it bring forth,” concerning the ground, a sweat broke out on his face, and he said: “What! Shall I and my cattle eat from the same manger?” The Lord had mercy upon him, and spoke, “In view of the sweat of thy face, thou shalt eat bread.”<sup>91</sup>

The earth is not the only thing created that was made to suffer through the sin of Adam. The same fate overtook the moon. When the serpent seduced Adam and Eve, and exposed their nakedness, they wept bitterly, and with them wept the heavens, and the sun and the stars, and all created beings and things up to the throne of God. The very angels and the celestial beings were grieved by the transgression of Adam. The moon alone laughed, wherefore God grew wroth, and obscured her light. Instead of shining steadily like the sun, all the length of the day, she grows old quickly, and must be born and reborn, again and again.<sup>92</sup> The callous conduct of the moon offended God, not only by way of contrast with the compassion of all other creatures, but because He Himself was full of pity for Adam and his wife. He made clothes for them out of the



skin stripped from the serpent.<sup>93</sup> He would have done even more. He would have permitted them to remain in Paradise, if only they had been penitent. But they refused to repent, and they had to leave, lest their godlike understanding urge them to ravage the tree of life, and they learn to live forever. As it was, when God dismissed them from Paradise, He did not allow the Divine quality of justice to prevail entirely. He associated mercy with it. As they left, He said: “O what a pity that Adam was not able to observe the command laid upon him for even a brief span of time!”

To guard the entrance to Paradise, God appointed the cherubim, called also the ever-turning sword of flames, because angels can turn themselves from one shape into another at need.<sup>94</sup> Instead of the tree of life, God gave Adam the Torah, which likewise is a tree of life to them that lay hold upon her, and he was permitted to take up his abode in the vicinity of Paradise in the east.<sup>95</sup>

Sentence pronounced upon Adam and Eve and the serpent, the Lord commanded the angels to turn the man and the woman out of Paradise. They began to weep and supplicate bitterly, and the angels took pity upon them and left the Divine command unfulfilled, until they could petition God to mitigate His severe verdict. But the Lord was inexorable, saying, “Was it I that committed a trespass, or did I pronounce a false judgment?” Also Adam’s prayer, to be given of the fruit of the tree of life, was turned aside, with the promise, however, that if he would lead a pious life, he would be given of the fruit on the day of resurrection, and he would then live forever.

Seeing that God had resolved unalterably, Adam began to weep again and implore the angels to grant him at least permission to take sweet-scented spices with him out of Paradise, that outside, too, he might be able to bring offerings unto God, and his prayers be accepted before the Lord. Thereupon the angels came before God, and spake: “King unto everlasting, command Thou

us to give Adam sweet-scented spices of Paradise,” and God heard their prayer. Thus Adam gathered saffron, nard, calamus, and cinnamon, and all sorts of seeds besides for his sustenance. Laden with these, Adam and Eve left Paradise, and came upon earth.<sup>96</sup>

They had enjoyed the splendors of Paradise but a brief span of time—but a few hours. It was in the first hour of the sixth day of creation that God conceived the idea of creating man; in the second hour, He took counsel with the angels; in the third, He gathered the dust for the body of man; in the fourth, He formed Adam; in the fifth, He clothed him with skin; in the sixth, the soulless shape was complete, so that it could stand upright; in the seventh, a soul was breathed into it; in the eighth, man was led into Paradise; in the ninth, the Divine command prohibiting the fruit of the tree in the midst of the garden was issued to him; in the tenth, he transgressed the command; in the eleventh, he was judged; and in the twelfth hour of the day, he was cast out of Paradise, in atonement for his sin.

This eventful day was the first of the month of Tishri. Therefore God spoke to Adam: “Thou shalt be the prototype of thy children. As thou hast been judged by Me on this day and absolved, so thy children Israel shall be judged by Me on this New Year’s Day, and they shall be absolved.”<sup>97</sup>

Each day of creation brought forth three things: the first, heaven, earth, and light; the second, the firmament, Gehenna, and the angels; the third, trees, herbs, and Paradise; the fourth, sun, moon, and stars; and the fifth, fishes, birds, and leviathan. As God intended to rest on the seventh day, the Sabbath, the sixth day had to do double duty. It brought forth six creations: Adam, Eve, cattle, reptiles, the beasts of the field, and demons. The demons were made shortly before the Sabbath came in, and they are, therefore, incorporeal spirits—the Lord had no time to create bodies for them.<sup>98</sup>



In the twilight, between the sixth day and the Sabbath, ten creations were brought forth: the rainbow, invisible until Noah's time; the manna; watersprings, whence Israel drew water for his thirst in the desert; the writing upon the two tables of stone given at Sinai; the pen with which the writing was written; the two tables themselves; the mouth of Balaam's she-ass; the grave of Moses; the cave in which Moses and Elijah dwelt; and the rod of Aaron, with its blossoms and its ripe almonds.<sup>99</sup>

71. Yelammedenu in MHG I, 91 and in Yalkut I, 744; Likkutim, IV, 31b. Compare footnote 870 on p. 800.

72. BR 19. 8; PR 40, 167a; Jub. 4. 30; Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 81; Irenaeus, V, 22.2; Comp. further Charles on Jub., *loc. cit.*, and Theodor on BR 8. 2, as well as the sources cited in note 28. Many reasons are given why Adam did not die on the day he sinned, as God had threatened. Comp. Symmachus, Jonathan, and Jerome on Gen. 2. 17, as well as Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 40 (were it not for God's mercy, he would have died immediately; so also Tan. B. IV, 68; Tan. Mass'e 8; comp. also PR, *loc. cit.*); *De Leg. Aleg.*, 33; *De Profug.*, 21; *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1. 16. The view found in the last three passages of Philo that the sinner, even when alive, is already regarded as dead, whereas the righteous continue to live also after their death (comp. also Wisdom 1. 2 and 16), occurs frequently in rabbinic Haggadah; compare footnote 287 on p. 628; footnote 54 on p. 187, and also Aphraates, 168. The rationalistic explanation of the prolonged life of the ante-diluvians (according to some, their years are to be considered as lunar ones) is only met with in medieval Jewish literature; comp., e. g., Maimonides, *Guide of the Perplexed*, II, 47. But Lactantius, *Institutiones*, 2. 13, shows that such attempts are very old.

73. BR 12. 6; and 19. 8; BaR 13. 2; Shir 3. 7; PK 1, 1b; PR 15, 68b; Tan. B. Introduction, 156; Hagigah 12a (comp. Rabinovicz, *ad loc.*). See details in notes 22, 137 and 37 on Adam's original size, and further Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 30–31. On the different explanations of לרוח היום (Gen. 3. 8) comp. Aquila, Symmachus, and Theodotion cited by Jerome, *ad loc.*, as well as BR 19. 8 and ps.—Tertullian Gen. 113.

74. PK 5, 44b; PR 15, 68b; Shir 3. 7; BaR 11. 3; Tan. (introduction) 156; Shemuel 18,97. Comp. note 113.

75. MHG I, 93 (top) and Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 3. 9. In these sources it is further stated that when Adam wanted to hide himself from God, the latter said to him: "Dost thou want to hide thyself from Me? Can anyone hide himself that I shall not see him?" (Jer. 23. 24). Comp. note 97.

76. Derek Erez R., 3; Yalkut I, 28; 2 Alphabet of R. Akiba 51.

77. BR 19. 9; PK 15, 119a; Ekah (introduction) 5. This Haggadah endeavors to eliminate the anthropomorphic expression of Gen. 3. 9, and similar solutions are found in Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1. 45; *De Decalogo*, 3. 17; Justin Martyr, 99; Tertullian, *Adversus Marcionem*, 2. 24; Theophilus, 2. 26 and 29; Ephraim, 1, 23 C; Aphraates, 138. Compare further with footnote 20 on p. 107. Another attempt to explain this anthropomorphism is found in the sources cited in note 75.

78. Tan. B. III, 39; Tan. Tazria' 9. Adam's wickedness and persistence in sinning are frequently referred to in the Haggadah; comp. Sanhedrin 38b, where he is declared to have been a heretic (מין); see also Tertullian, *Adversus Marcionem*, 2. 2: Who will hesitate to declare that Adam's great sin was heresy?, and that he denied God. It is further stated that, like the wicked sinners Esau and Achan (comp. Sanhedrin 44a and Tan. B. I, 127), he removed the mark of circumcision. Here it is presupposed that Adam was created bearing the sign of the covenant, as is explicitly stated in ARN 2, 2, and parallel passages (compare footnote 318 on p. 248). As to Adam's wickedness, comp. also BR 19. 12; Tan. B. I, 18; PR 7, 26b; BaR 13. 3; Apocalypse of Moses 21.

79. PRE 14 (complete text is only found in MHG I, 93). Comp. further PK 17, 130b; Ekah 3, 39; Aggadat Bereshit 61, 125, concerning Adam, Jacob, and the people of Israel, who instead of being grateful for the benefits God had bestowed upon them, complained about them.

80. BR 17. 4; 2 ARN 8, 23.

81. Tan. B. III, 39; Tan. Tazria' 9; MHG I, 93. Zohar Hadash Bereshit 24a (3. 1). The quotation from Targum by Sabba, 7a, according to which Gen. 3. 7 should be rendered: And they uttered grumbling words, is taken from Zohar Hadash. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 47, and Hizkuni, Gen. 3. 16, remark that Eve was punished because she was still a part of Adam's body when God commanded him not to eat of the forbidden fruit and decreed death as a penalty.

82. Tan. B. III, 39; Tan. Tazria' 9; BR 20. 2; BaR 19. 11; Sanhedrin 29a. Philo, too, attempts to explain why God did not afford the serpent the opportunity to plead his case; comp. *Leg. Alleg.*, 21. Philo and the Rabbis also explain why the serpent was first cursed; comp. *Quaestiones*, Gen. I. 94 (top); BR 20. 3; Berakot 61a; Ta'anit 15b; Sifra 10. 6; MHG I, 94 (top); comp. further ARN 1, 7 (below). The Midrash (Tan. B. III, 40; Tan. Tazria' 9) lays stress upon the fact that God's name is not mentioned in the curse pronounced against Adam and Eve, because He did not allow His name to be associated with evil. On this view which occurs in the Haggadah as well as in Philo, compare with footnote 9 on p. 2, as well as footnote 176 on p. 365.

83. 2 ARN 42, 117. Other sources (PRE 14; MHG I, 96; comp. Ginzberg's note on this point in *Ha-Zofeh* IV,



31–32) enumerate nine penalties for each of the three sinners, and one, death, for all of them. PRE gives the downfall of Sammael and his host as the first penalty of the serpent, in agreement with the view of this Midrash, according to which the real seducer was Satan (=Sammael), who made use of the serpent; comp. note 116. Tadshe 8 gives six penalties for the serpent and five each for Adam and Eve. The leprosy of the serpent is also mentioned in BR 20. 4; Tan. B. II, 53, as well as III, 42 and 47; Tan. Mezora' 2; ShR 3. 13; ps.—Epiphanius, *Hexaemeron*, 251. The statement made in Tan. that in the last judgment Edom's guardian angel (*i. e.* Sammael) will be afflicted with leprosy is partly connected with the identification of the serpent with Sammael. On the loss of the serpent's feet, comp. the following note. On the loss of the serpent's language, see note 58, where it is shown that rabbinic sources do not know of any primitive animal language; this is confirmed by the above-mentioned sources, which speak of the language which only the serpent possessed before his fall. Among European peoples, however, legends concerning animals becoming dumb are widespread; comp. Dähnhardt, *Natursagen*, I, 219–223.

84. BR 20. 4–5; ARN 1, 5; Baraita 32 Middot, No. 12; Koheleth 10. 11; Tosefta Sotah 4. 18; Babli 9b. Compare further footnote 183 on p. 39. The cutting off of the serpent's feet is also mentioned (on the erectness of his stature comp. vol. I, p. 71) in Aphraates, 245. Comp. further Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 961 (Prov. 26), which practically agrees with BR, *loc. cit.*, and note 124. According to 2 Alphabet R. Akiba 61, God split the tongue of the serpent as a punishment for the "evil tongue" he employed. Comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 59–60.

85. 'Erubin 100b; ARN 1, 4 (second version 42, 117; read **מתפרסמת** "shows herself in public"); BR 20. 6–7; Tadshe 7. On the various views concerning the penalties, comp. Ginzberg's remarks in *Ha-Zofeh*, IV, 31–32. In all the sources menstruation is regarded as a penalty for Eve's sin, and since sexual desire is considered as the result of the eating of the forbidden fruit, the Gnostics, as well as the Kabbalists, maintain that menstruation came to Eve with the enjoyment of the fruit. Compare with footnote 3 on p. 101; Dähnhardt, *Natursagen*, I, 211, is to be corrected accordingly. 2 Enoch 31. 7–8 remarks that it was only the serpent (here, Satan) and the wicked deeds of man that were really cursed, "but these (Adam and Eve), whom I had previously blessed, I did not curse". On this peculiar conception, comp. note 82 (end), and further footnote 60 on p. 154, as well as PRK 31a (Schönblum's edition), which reads: Three were cursed, and their curses were beyond any limit, namely, the serpent, the woman (Eve), and the slave (Canaan). But Adam is not included among the cursed ones. In all the sources (BR 20. 5 and 95. 1; 2 ARN 42, 117; Tan. B. III, 47; Tan. Mezora' 2) it is especially stated that in the "future" every one shall be cured except the serpent, who will remain cursed for ever.

86. BR 20. 6; Yerushalmi Sotah 8 (beginning); Tephillim 9, 86.

87. ARN 42, 116–117. Quite different is the view of PRE 14 concerning the punishments inflicted on Adam; comp. Ginsberg in *Ha-Zofeh*, IV, 31. On the "garments of light," comp. notes 69 and 93 (with respect to the "horny skin" mentioned in text on p. 72, as well as in the first passage, comp. Dähnhardt, *Natursagen*, I, index, s. v. "Mensch"; *Orehot Hayyim*, I, 68c); on the second punishment comp. Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 24 and 40. Whether death is the consequence of the sin committed or not, see note 142. All animals were tame before the fall of man, and will become tame again in Messianic times; comp. Tan. B. III, 47; Tan. Mezora' 2; BR 20. 5. Comp. further notes 59 and 113. On the curses which were pronounced against Adam, compare also with p. 94, and the notes appertaining to them. According to 2 ARN 34, 74, the years of man's life have been shortened, but not those of the animals.

88. BR 5. 9; Yerushalmi Kil'ayim 1, 27b; compare with p. 18.

89. Zohar Hadash Bereshit 24b on Gen. 3. 15, where two views are cited as to how long the curse lasted over the earth; according to one, it lasted to the birth of Noah (compare with pp. 133–134); according to another, to the birth of Abraham. The idea that the sun and the earth are witnesses for and against man, is already found in the older sources; comp. Sifre D., 306; footnote 105 on p. 24. On the eclipse of the sun at the time of the fall of man, comp. the account given in Matthew 27. 45 of the eclipse of the sun at the time of the crucifixion of Jesus; see further Sukkah 29a and note 113.

90. 2 ARN 42, 117; PRE 14; comp. Luria's note, *ad loc.*, and Ginzberg in *Ha-Zofeh*, IV, 31. On vermin as a consequence of the fall of man, see also BR 5. 9 and 20. 8, as well as the Christian legends; comp. Dähnhardt, *Natursagen*, I, 216. Another view declares that whatever God created has its value; compare with p. 43, and the note appertaining to it. On the origin of the mountains, compare with footnote 31 on p. 108; on the disclosing of the absorbed blood by the earth, compare with p. 108, as well as text on pp. 561, 600. On the curse of the earth comp. 2 Alphabet R. Akiba, 61.

91. BR 20. 10; ARN 1, 6–7; Pesahim 118a; ER 31, 164.

92. Slavonic Apocalypse of Baruch 9; the Greek version of the apocalypse reads: The moon did not hide at the time of the fall, although it found itself near to Sammael when he seduced Eve. On the eclipse of the sun during the fall, see text on p. 76.

93. PRE 20; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 3. 21. Against this later view the older sources maintain that the garments mentioned in Gen., *loc. cit.*, were given to Adam and Eve by God before the fall, and that they really were not "garments



of skin", but of light; comp. BR 20. 12, citing R. Meir's statement (the explanation given there שדומין לנפט is a later rationalistic addition), and note 69. The view that the garments were made of the skin of Leviathan (*Hadat, Da'at*, and Hizkuni on Gen., *loc. cit.*, very likely quoted the same source) wishes to retain עור ("skin") in the biblical text, without losing the "light", since the skin of Leviathan has a shining lustre; compare with p. 28. The Church Fathers Irenaeus, III, 23. 5, and Tertullian, *De Pudicitia*, 9, and *De Resurrectione*, 7, speak of the celestial garments of Adam and Eve. Origen, *Contra Celsum*, 4. 40 (based very likely on Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1. 53), remarks: They received garments of skin at the time of the fall; *i. e.*, bodies, since before the fall they were spiritual beings. A similar statement is found in Zohar I, 36b, which reads: Before the fall they were dressed in "garments of light" (=כְּתָנוֹת אֹרֶךְ), after the fall in "garments of skin" (=כְּתָנוֹת עוֹר), which were useful only for the body, not for the soul. A very important part is played by Adam and Eve's "garments of light" in the various versions of the Vita Adae; comp. *Adamschriften*, 52–53. However, we must not, without any further proof, connect the garments of light with the splendor of the light which shone over Adam before the fall (comp. note 105). But we shall not go astray if we identify them with the celestial garments of the pious, frequently mentioned in pseudepigraphic literature, and in early Christian as well as in kabbalistic writings; comp. Enoch 62. 16; 2 Enoch 22. 8–10; Ascension of Isaiah 4. 16, and the parallel passages cited by Charles. See further Zohar II, 150, and the lengthy discourse by Vital, *Sha'are Kedushah* (beginning). But also those who assert that Adam and Eve received their garments from God after the fall maintain that these clothes were of a superior and unusual kind. God created these garments at the twilight of the first Friday, hence it belongs to the primordial creations, on account of which both Adam and his descendants wore them as priestly garments at the time of the offering of the sacrifices. Furthermore they were not only of extraordinary brilliance and splendor, but had also supernatural qualities; comp. Sifre D., 355; Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 5, 51a; Pesahim 54b (top); 2 ARN 37, 95 (read הַעוֹר, with respect to עוֹר (=כְּתָנוֹת עוֹר)); BR 20. 2; Tan. B. I, 17–18 and 33. See further text on pp. 161, 257, and 265. Identifying Adam's priestly garments, which he received after the fall, with the garment of light, Abkir has the following statement (Yalkut I, 34): God made high-priestly garments for Adam which were like those of the angels; but when he sinned, God took them away from him. In 2 ARN 42, 116, it is stated briefly: Adam wore splendid garments, which were removed from him after the commission of the sin. That the garments of Adam and Eve belonged to the primordial creations is also asserted in Christian sources; comp. ps.–Justinian, *Quaestiones*, . . . *ad Orthodoxos*, VI, 1293; Jacob Sarug, cited by Moses bar Cepha, *De Paradiso*,

84A; comp. further Theodoretus, Gen. 3. 27. The latter cannot admit that God killed certain animals in order to furnish Adam and Eve with clothes. The same objection to the literal interpretation of כְּתָנוֹת עוֹר is very likely the basis of the statement in Sotah 14a and BR 20.12 that the garments of Adam and Eve were made of wool, or, according to others, of linen.

94. BR 21. 5–9; Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 60. The cherubim as a definite group of angels are already mentioned in the Book of Enoch (comp. Enoch 61. 10; 2 Enoch 19. 6), and are even considered as the "angels of destruction", for which reason Enoch 20. 7 mentions them alongside with the serpents, and in ShR 9. 11 they are explicitly described as such. Later sources (*Pa'aneah*, Gen. 3. 24 and *Hinnuk*, precept 62) insert שָׂדִים instead of מְלָאכֵי חֲבָלָה (Rashi on Gen., *loc. cit.*, employs the latter, more accurate expression), which is not exactly correct, because the "angels of destruction" are not devils. The statement of *Hadat*, Gen., *loc. cit.*, that the cherubim have the form of steers is perhaps due to the confusion of שָׂרִים=שָׂרִים "oxen" with שָׂדִים "devils". However their name is explained in this source from the Aramaic כַּרְב "he ploughed". This view concerning the form of the cherubim would be very interesting if it should contain a reminiscence of the winged bulls. Comp. Index, s. v. "Cherubim".

95. MHG I, 106 (based on two different sources); ER 1 (beginning); Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 3. 24. Comp. also BR 21 (end), and Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1. 57. On the flaming sword which is found in front of paradise, compare with p. 157 (bottom), and the note appertaining to it, as well as *Hemat ha-Hemdah* 14a. In the last passage it is said (based on Sa'adya Gaon's remarks in his *Polemic against Hiwi*, 37.3, where הַלִּכְתּוֹ means the road to paradise) that God, after Adam's expulsion from paradise, did not cause him to forget the way back to paradise; on the contrary, He always made him look at it, in order that he should ever bear in mind his transgression, which deprived him of his blissful habitation. The author then quotes the following narrative from a non-Jewish chronicle. There was a king in ancient times who wished to ascertain the exact situation of paradise. He betook himself to a neighboring district, at the mountain called Lebiah (= "lioness?"). At the top of this mountain one could hear the sound of swords turning about, which resounded from the other side of the river. He let some of his men down by means of poles, but none of them returned. The author, R. Shet b. Yefet, adds thereupon that this story confirms the view of those who take the biblical account of paradise literally. Comp. note 50 concerning the allegorical conception of the description of paradise. The sources quoted in the beginning of this note belong to the oldest group of rabbinic literature, which makes a serious attempt to give a figurative explanation of the biblical passages concerning



paradise. The view found in Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 3. 24 that the flaming sword stands for Gehenna is also found in Lactantius, *Institutiones*, 12. 13. Comp. further Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 55–56.

96. Apocalypse of Moses 27–29; Vita Adae 25. 4; Armenian Book of Adam in *Adamschriften*, 16. The tree of life is preserved for the pious in the world to come; Enoch 25. 4; 4 Ezra 7. 52; Revelation 2. 7 and 22. 14. Philo's remark, *De M. Opif.*, 54, seems to be directed against such a view. To the older rabbinic literature such a view is quite alien, but is well known to later authors; comp. MHG I, 127, where, in agreement with Revelation 22. 2, the "wholesome fruit" (Ezek. 47. 12) is identified with the tree of life. See further Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 3. 24, which, along with the old view, offers also the later interpretation of this verse. With respect to the spices which Adam brought from paradise, the following may be noted. Originally this legend wishes to convey that the various kinds of spices used in the temple came from paradise, which also furnished wood for the tabernacle (Shu'aib, end of Terumah). Subsequently, however, this was connected with another legend, according to which the civilization of the world goes back to Adam (comp. notes 31–32; Dähnhardt, *Natur-sagen*, I, index, s. v. "Adam"; Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 66), and therefore he had to be the one who brought for mankind, from paradise, the seeds necessary for the cultivation of the soil. Some rabbinic passages (Tehillim 104, 445; comp. the manuscript reading quoted by Buber, note 66; the midrashic quotation by Duran, *Hofes Matmonim*, 90; 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 21b) speak of thirty kinds of trees (based on a Persian legend; comp. Bundeshesh, Justi's edition, 37, and Schorr in *He-Haluz*, VIII, 24), which Adam took with him from paradise; compare with footnote 74 on p. 18; Löw, *Aramäische Pflanzennamen*, 2, and Ginzberg in *Zeitschrift für Hebräische Bibliographie*, XI, 126.

97. PK 23, 150b; PR 46, 177b; Sanhedrin 38b; WR 19. 1, Tan. B. III, 31; Tan. Shemini 8; ARN 1, 5, 6, 8 (both versions); Tehillim 92, 403; PRE 11. Although according to the Jewish calendar, the day follows the night, nevertheless the twelve hours mentioned in the different versions of the legend are to be understood as a part of the sixth day (the sources quoted do not correspond, in all details, to one another; compare also footnote 3 on p. 101), since nothing was created at night; comp. BR 12, 14. The Church Fathers likewise assert that Adam sinned on the very first day of his creation. Some of the Christian sources divide this eventful day in a manner similar to that of the Rabbis, and they even find a Christological meaning in this division; comp. Irenaeus, V, 22. 2; Victorinus of Pettau, *De Fabrica Mundi*; Ephraates, 168; Ephraim, I, 19 C and in Moses bar Cepha, *De Paradiso*, 90A; *Schatzhöhle*, 7. Comp. further the passages cited in Ginzberg's *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 48–49, as well as Malan in his notes on the book

of Adam, 209–210. Quite different is the view concerning the time of the fall found in Jub. 3. 4, according to which Adam and Eve, who had both been created outside of paradise (this is also presupposed in the sources cited at the beginning of the note), did not enter it simultaneously, that is, Adam entered paradise when he was forty days old, while Eve did not arrive there until she was eighty days old, *i. e.*, when Adam was already eighty-seven days of age (he was seven days older than Eve). They stayed seven days and forty years in paradise, whence they were expelled on the first of Tammuz, seventy days after the fall, which took place on the seventeenth of Iyar. The Melchizedekite fragment (comp. 2 Enoch 90) seems to be the only source which, like the Book of Jub., speaks of seven years' sojourn in paradise. Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1. 25, observes that the formation of the female embryo (so is this passage to be understood) takes eighty days, that of the male only forty days. There can be no doubt that this observation wishes to explain the law of Lev. 12. 4, *seq.*, as may be seen from Niddah 3. 7. Compare with p. 147, and Roscher, *Die Zahl* 40, p. 103, *seq.* The connection of this law with the creation of Adam and Eve is, however, only found in Jub. This book also differs from the view current in the later Haggadah with regard to the date of the creation of the world. Jub. and Philo (*De Spec. Leg.*, 19; *Quaestiones*, Exod., 1. 1), as well as some rabbinic authorities of the first century C. E. (Rosh ha-Shanah 10b), are of the opinion that the world (the same view is held by the Stoics; comp. Arnim, *Stoic. Vet. Fragm.*, II, 584) was created in spring, or, to be more accurate, in the month of Nisan. A different view prevalent among the later Rabbis is that the world was created in autumn, in the month of Tishri; comp. Rosh ha-Shanah, *loc. cit.*, where R. Eliezer (about 100 C. E.) already maintains this view. The Jewish legend which considers that all first things were created in a fully developed form (comp. note 21) decided in favor of the opinion which fixes autumn, the "season of ripeness", as the time of creation. For the sake of accuracy, the legend maintains that it was the first day of autumn, the Jewish New Year, on which Adam was created, the same day on which he was expelled from paradise. Comp. PK 23, 150b; PR 46, 186b. Ephraim I, 15 A, and Theodoretus, Exod. 72, assume that the world was created in Nisan; see Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 31–32. Medieval authors point out that the letters of the word בראשית, with which the account of creation begins, may be re-arranged to read א' בתשרי, that is, "on the first day of Tishri"; comp. *Pa'aneah*, Gen. 1. 1.

98. Tan. B. I, 12; BR 11. 9 מריאם as a name for the demons is only found here, and may be explained either as a derivative of מרה "he rebelled," and accordingly, these demons were originally classed with the rebellious angels, or as derivative of מרא "master" = שד; comp. below); PR 46, 187b. Another classification of primordial creations is



that of Jub. 3. 2, *seq.*, and (based on it) Tadshe 6, according to which the number of creations amounted to twenty-two, corresponding to the number of the letters of the Hebrew alphabet, the number of the books of the Bible (counting Lamentations as a part of Jeremiah and Ezra-Nehemiah as one), and the generations from Adam to Jacob. On the first day the following things were created: The heavens, earth, water, darkness, wind, abyss, and light; on the second day, the firmament; on the third day, the gathering of the waters, grass, trees, and paradise (in view of the doctrine of the pre-existence of paradise, Tadshe has springs, instead of paradise, as the fourth creation of the third day); on the fourth day, the sun, the moon, the stars; on the fifth day, the sea-monsters, birds, and worms; on the sixth day, wild and domestic animals, creeping things, and Adam. Comp. the detailed account of the creations of each day in text on pp. 5–33, and further Tan. Hayye Sarah 3. A Haggadah quoted by medieval authors (Pardes 56a; Mahzor Vitry, 108; *Shibbole ha-Leket*, 96; *Kimha Dabishuna*, on the dirge *עצת ואיכה*), from a Sefer Yezirah (not in ours), endeavors to demonstrate in an elaborate manner why the world was created in seven days: Each two days of creation form a pair of witnesses on the unity of God, the uniqueness of Israel, and the singular sanctity of the Sabbath. Furthermore, Israel and the Sabbath testify to the unity of God; God and the Sabbath testify to the uniqueness of Israel; God and Israel testify to the singular sanctity of the Sabbath.—The demons, in accordance with their origin, are between angels and men. They have wings like the former, and move about from one end of the earth to the other, and know what will come to pass; but, like the latter, they eat and drink, propagate their kind, and die. They also have this much in common with angels that they assume any form they please, and that they can see man without being seen by him. See Hagigah 16a; Tan. B. I, 12 (there is a statement here also concerning the sexual relations between men and demons; compare with p. 114); Berakot 6a; PR 6, 24a (the angels can see the demons, but the demons cannot see the angels); 2 ARN 37, 109; Kisse we-Ippodromin, 35; PRK (Schönblum's edition, 15b); Ma'aseh Torah, 98 (where it is said: They live with one another, like angels, without hatred or envy); Mahzor Vitry, 507. The assertion that demons do not cast a shadow (Gittin 60a, and Yerushalmi 6, 48b) is very likely connected with the conception that the shadow is that soul which reflects the body (comp. note 18 on polypsychism), and since demons have no bodies, they have no shadows. On the countless numbers of demons, comp. Berakot 6a; Gittin 68a (*שדה עצמה*) means: this female demon which is mentioned in Eccl. 2. 8, cannot be accurately determined, since there are so many of them; Tehillim 91, 398. As to the view found in pseudepigraphic literature, and prevalent among the Church Fathers (comp. Bousset, *Religion*, 382, *seq.*), according to which

the demons are the descendants of the fallen angels, from their union with the daughters of man, nothing but a slight trace thereof remains in rabbinic literature (comp. Index, s. v. "Angels, the Fallen"). The doctrine connected with this view concerning the demons as seducers to idolatry and other transgressions does not occur at all in rabbinic literature. The view found in Josephus, *Bell. Jud.*, VII, 6. 3, as well as in Philo, *De Gigant.*, 6–8, and *De Somn.*, 1. 133–136, that demons are the souls of the wicked reappears again in the Kabbalah (comp. Zohar III, 70a), where it is borrowed from Christian sources, while it is entirely unknown to the earlier Rabbis; comp., however, footnote 88 on p. 164. The mortal nature of the demons is also known to Eusebius, 206, who quotes Plutarch as his authority.

99. Abot 5. 9; Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 5, 51a; Sifre D., 355; Midrash Tannaim 219; Pesahim 54a; PRE 19 (comp. Luria, *ad loc.*); PRK (Schönblum's edition, 40a; Grünhut's edition, 85); 2 ARN 27, 95; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 22. 18; Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 7. No two of the sources cited exactly correspond with one another in the enumeration of the things which lie on the boundary-line between the primordial things and those developed out of them, comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenu*. 50. 'Aknin's assertion, in his commentary on Abot, *loc. cit.*, that these things were created in the twilights of the first six days is untenable. Besides the things enumerated in the text, others are also mentioned: The first pair of tongs (on this point comp. Tosefta 'Erubin, end, and Hagigah I, end, as well as *Adamschriften*, 54), without which no other instrument could be made; Moses' staff; the Shamir; the garments of Adam and Eve (comp. note 93); fire (without which no civilization would have been possible) comp., however, note 104; the mule (compare with p. 324, on the origin of the mule, and further text on p. 945); the pillars of fire and of cloud, which moved before Israel in the wilderness, as well as the clouds of glory which surrounded them (ARN, *loc. cit.*, it is thus to be explained according to Targum Yerushalmi and Seder Rabba di-Bereshit, *loc. cit.*); the vessel in which the manna has been preserved in the holy of holies; the demons (comp. the preceding note); the ram which Abraham sacrificed in place of Isaac. Comp. also note 31, according to which *כתב ומכתב* in the above-mentioned passages refer perhaps to the use of "writing" and "stylus," and not to the material which was employed for the tables; see Mahzor Vitry, *ad loc.*; Rashi on Pesahim, *loc. cit.*; Responsa of the Geonim (Harkavy's edition, 11–12); Nahmias, commentary on Abot, *loc. cit.* See further footnote 258 on p. 618; compare also text on pp. 765, 836.



## SABBATH IN HEAVEN

Before the world was created, there was none to praise God and know Him. Therefore He created the angels and the holy Hayyot, the heavens and their host, and Adam as well. They all were to praise and glorify their Creator. During the week of creation, however, there was no suitable time to proclaim the splendor and praise of the Lord. Only on the Sabbath, when all creation rested, the beings on earth and in heaven, all together, broke into song and adoration when God ascended His throne and sate upon it.<sup>100</sup> It was the Throne of Joy upon which He sate, and He had all the angels pass before Him—the angel of the water, the angel of the rivers, the angel of the mountains, the angel of the hills, the angel of the abysses, the angel of the deserts, the angel of the sun, the angel of the moon, the angel of the Pleiades, the angel of Orion, the angel of the herbs, the angel of Paradise, the angel of Gehenna, the angel of the trees, the angel of the reptiles, the angel of the wild beasts, the angel of the domestic animals, the angel of the fishes, the angel of the locusts, the angel of the birds, the chief angel of the angels, the angel of each heaven, the chief angel of each division of the heavenly hosts, the chief angel of the holy Hayyot, the chief angel of the cherubim, the chief angel of the ofanim, and all the other splendid, terrible, and mighty angel chiefs. They all appeared before God with great joy, laved in a stream of joy, and they rejoiced and danced and sang, and extolled the Lord with many praises and many instruments. The ministering angels began, “Let the glory of the Lord endure forever!” And the rest of the angels took up the song with the words, “Let the Lord rejoice in His works!” ‘Arabot, the seventh heaven, was filled with joy and glory, splendor and strength, power and might and pride and magnificence and grandeur, praise and jubilation,

song and gladness, steadfastness and righteousness, honor and adoration.

Then God bade the Angel of the Sabbath seat himself upon a throne of glory, and He brought before him the chiefs of the angels of all the heavens and all the abysses, and bade them dance and rejoice, saying, “Sabbath it is unto the Lord!” and the exalted princes of the heavens responded, “Unto the Lord it is Sabbath!” Even Adam was permitted to ascend to the highest heaven, to take part in the rejoicing over the Sabbath.

By bestowing Sabbath joy upon all beings, not excepting Adam, thus did the Lord dedicate His creation. Seeing the majesty of the Sabbath, its honor and greatness, and the joy it conferred upon all, being the fount of all joy, Adam intoned a song of praise for the Sabbath day. Then God said to him, “Thou singest a song of praise to the Sabbath day, and singest none to Me, the God of the Sabbath?” Thereupon the Sabbath rose from his seat, and prostrated himself before God, saying, “It is a good thing to give thanks unto the Lord,” and the whole of creation added, “And to sing praises unto Thy Name, O Most High!”<sup>101</sup>

This was the first Sabbath, and this its celebration in heaven by God and the angels. The angels were informed at the same time that in days to come Israel would hallow the day in similar manner. God told them: “I will set aside for Myself a people from among all the peoples. This people will observe the Sabbath, and I will sanctify it to be My people, and I will be God unto it. From all that I have seen, I have chosen the seed of Israel wholly, and I have inscribed him as My first-born son, and I sanctified him unto Myself unto all eternity, him and the Sabbath, that he keep the Sabbath and hallow it from all work.”<sup>102</sup>

For Adam the Sabbath had a peculiar significance. When he was made to depart out of Paradise in the twilight of the Sabbath eve, the angels



called after him, "Adam did not abide in his glory overnight!" Then the Sabbath appeared before God as Adam's defender, and he spoke: "O Lord of the world! During the six working days no creature was slain. If Thou wilt begin now by slaying Adam, what will become of the sanctity and the blessing of the Sabbath?" In this way Adam was rescued from the fires of hell, the meet punishment for his sins, and in gratitude he composed a psalm in honor of the Sabbath, which David later embodied in his Psalter.<sup>103</sup>

Still another opportunity was given to Adam to learn and appreciate the value of the Sabbath. The celestial light, whereby Adam could survey the world from end to end, should properly have been made to disappear immediately after his sin. But out of consideration for the Sabbath, God had let this light continue to shine, and the angels, at sundown on the sixth day, intoned a song of praise and thanksgiving to God, for the radiant light shining through the night. Only with the going out of the Sabbath day the celestial light ceased, to the consternation of Adam, who feared that the serpent would attack him in the dark. But God illumined his understanding, and he learned to rub two stones against each other and produce light for his needs.<sup>104</sup>

The celestial light was but one of the seven precious gifts enjoyed by Adam before the fall and to be granted to man again only in the Messianic time. The others are the resplendence of his countenance; life eternal; his tall stature; the fruits of the soil; the fruits of the tree; and the luminaries of the sky, the sun and the moon, for in the world to come the light of the moon shall be as the light of the sun, and the light of the sun shall be sevenfold.<sup>105</sup>

100. Zohar Hadash, Gen. 2. 4, 22a. The conception that the entire universe chants a continuous song to God is widely known; comp. Alphabet of R. Akiba 12, and the

details given in footnote 194 on p. 45. On the song of the heavenly bodies on the first Sabbath, comp. the following note.

101. Seder Rabba di-Bereshit 7–8, where at the end the following reading is to be adopted, with *Kimha Dabishuna* (on *עצות אל ברוך* in the morning prayer of the Day of Atonement): *לאדם לשבת אתה אומר ולי אין אתה אמר הב' ה' לראש השנה*. This Midrash is the source, direct or indirect, of the statement of the medieval authors concerning the song chanted by the Sabbath. Comp. Hasidim 126; *ha-Mahkim* 133; *Orehot Hayyim* I, 64d–65a; *Tola'at Jacob* (ברוך שאמר); Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 2. 3, and in the supplement of this work *Shikhat Leket* (שבת No. 4); Treves' commentary on the Prayer Book (לאל אשר שבת); ps.—Rashi on BR 14 (end); Bereshit Rabbeti, according to the manuscript quotation thereof in *Ha-Hoker*, II, 1. Many medieval writers quote from BR, or rather Yerushalmi (comp. Buber *Yerushalayim ha-Benayyah*, note 90, and further *Orehot Hayyim* I, 36c; Abudirham *ג' סעודות*; Tosafot Ketubot 7b, below; *Sefer Mizvot Gadol*, precept 48), the following sentence: On the arrival of the Sabbath God said to all created things: "Come and chant a song; a guest, Sabbath, is come." Comp. also the quotation, from the Midrash, in *Or Zarua'* II, 18c and 47a; *ha-Mahkim*, 136: Angels have six wings, one for each day of the week with which they chant their song; but they remain silent on the Sabbath, for it is Israel (Sabbath?) who then chants a hymn to God. On this point comp. Ginzberg, *Geonica*, II, 48. All these legends about the songs on the Sabbath, or rather of the Sabbath (on this conception among the Mohammedans, comp. Goldziher in the *Kaufmann-Gedenkbuch*, 87) are later developments of the legend mentioned in note 103. The personification of the Sabbath reaches its utmost limits among the Falashas; comp. *Teezaza Sanbat* 12b *seq.*, on the angel Sabbath, God's favorite, whom all the other angels adore and to whom they chant a song. On the various angels who participate in the glorification of God and the joy of the Sabbath, comp. Tehillim 104, 440, which reads: There is nothing below which does not have one appointed over it above, corresponding to it. *Recognitiones*, I, 45, says: When God created the world, . . . he appointed chiefs over the several creatures, even over the trees and the mountains, over the fountains and the rivers, and over all the things He had made. BR 9. 6 reads: There is not a blade of grass which does not have its star in heaven, urging it, saying: "Grow." Comp. Maimonides, *Guide of the Perplexed*, II, 10; Zohar (addition from *Sifre Orizyot*, I, 15a), where instead of the star (מזל) the reading ממונה of Tehillim, *loc. cit.*, is found. Compare footnote 60 on p. 127.

102. Jub. 2. 17–20. That the angels rest on the Sabbath is also mentioned in Tikkunim 48, 86a. Comp., on the contrary, PR 23, 120, which records the witty answer of R. Akiba to Tinaeus Rufus on the question why God allows



the powers of nature to work on the Sabbath (comp. John 5. 17), when everything rests. That nature, however, is not exactly the same on the Sabbath as on week-days may be seen from the state of rest of the river Sambation (comp. Index, s. *u.*) and from the failure of the necromancers on that day (on this point comp. also Sanhedrin 65b). In connection with the Sabbath rest, rabbinic literature in many places emphasizes the doctrine that the creation must not be taken as a direct act of God, but as the word of God. It is further emphasized that even after the completion of creation God's activity continues in the deeds of the pious, as well as of the wicked, by means of which they create for themselves their portions in the world to come. Comp. Mekilta Bahodesh 7, 69b, and Shabbat 104b; Mekilta RS, 109 and 162; Midrash Tannaim 22–23; BR 10.9 and 11. 5–6, 9; PR 23, 120, and 41, 174a; Tan. Ki-Tissa 33. The above-mentioned passages contain many expressions about the great significance of the Sabbath (comp. also Tehillim 19, 162, and 92, 201–202). It may be noted, however, that nowhere in the old rabbinic literature is there to be found a trace of the mystical conception of the Sabbath occurring in Philo (*Moses*, 2 [3]. 33), according to which this distinguished day dates not only since the world was created, but from the time when the heaven and all the perceptible universe were still uncreated. It is only in PRE 3 that the Sabbath is counted among the things which existed in the thought of God prior to the creation of the world; comp. Excursus I. On the eternal Sabbath in the world to come, see note 140. The Sabbath must not be understood as a cessation from the work of creation, but as a creation in itself; everything was created in six days except rest, which was created on the Sabbath; hence Scripture speaks of the completion of creation on the Sabbath (Gen. 2. 2); comp. BR 10. 9, and the parallels cited by Theodor, where several explanations of the peculiar wording of this biblical verse are offered, and where it is further stated that the elders who translated the Torah for Talmi (=Ptolemy) did not give a literal rendering of Gen. 2. 2, but translated: "And God completed on the sixth day." Comp. note 140.

103. PRE 19; Tehillim 92, 404, and 5, 22; PR 46, 187b. The older sources (BR 22. 13; PK 22, 160b; Tan. B. I, 19; WR 10. 4; Baba Batra 14b; Shir 4.4) know only that Adam composed Psalm 92 on the glorification of repentance (תְּשׁוּבָה=הַשְׁבָּת), in accordance with the method of the Haggadah, when he repented of his sins; compare with p. 107. In ARN 1, 7 (whence it was borrowed by Alphabet R. Akiba 15), on the contrary, it is stated that Adam and the angels equally shared in the composition of this Psalm, which they sang in honor of the Sabbath, to the accompaniment of music, on the first day after the expulsion from paradise, which occurred in the twilight of the first Sabbath. Comp. also Targum on Ps. 92. 1, and note 101. The statement frequently made in later sources

(comp., however, Sanhedrin 65b and BR 11. 5) that the wicked in hell rest on the Sabbath is closely related to this legend, according to which Adam was delivered from the suffering from hell by the Sabbath; comp. PR 23, 120a; Tan. Ki-Tissa 33; Seder Gan 'Eden 43; Recanati on Gen. 3. 24; R. Bahya on Exod. 20. 8.

104. BR 11.1 and 12. 6 (in both passages טָרְדוּ מִנֵּי is a later gloss, which is due to a misunderstanding; the difference of opinion of the scholars quoted there turns about the question whether Adam was allowed to retain the heavenly light on the first day after the expulsion, but not on the question whether he spent a night in paradise or not; comp. the sources cited in note 97, all of which agree that Adam left paradise before night); Mekilta RS, 109 (this is the source for BR, *loc. cit.*: יוֹסֵי=אֵסֵי); Mekilta Bahodesh 7, 69b; PR 23, 118a–118b and 46, 186b–187a (at the same time the significance of New Year is here emphasized; comp. note 97); Yerushalmi Berakot 8, 12b; Pesahim 54a; PRE 20; Tehillim 92, 402. In most of the sources the primordial light is already identified with the splendor of Adam's countenance, whereas originally a different view had been entertained. The former belongs to a widespread cosmological speculation, according to which creation was made possible by the advance of the primordial light into the darkness of chaos; this is connected with Gen. 1. 3. Compare also footnote 19 on p. 5. See also pp. 218, 302; text on p. 1021. This light appears in Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 8 and 18, as the invisible and ideal, as the image of God's wisdom. On the other hand, the splendor of Adam's countenance is the concrete expression of the legend of the divine nature of man before his fall, and belongs to the view concerning the light of the pious in the world to come, which is prevalent in Jewish, as well as in Christian, eschatology; comp. Bousset, *Religion*, 318, for the references to this view in pseudepigraphic and ancient rabbinic literature. See further Sifre D., 10; Midrash Tannaim 6; WR 30. 2; ER 3, 14; Yerushalmi Hagigah 2, 77a (below), where the sentence of Sifre, *loc. cit.*, (שָׁבַע כְּתוּרָה), appears in abbreviated form. Comp. also note 93 with regard to the "garments of light" of Adam and Eve. See further Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 52, as well as notes 24 and 69. A rationalistic explanation of Adam's splendor is found in BR, *loc. cit.*, and parallel passages, where it is said that man's face is brighter on the Sabbath than on week-days because of the rest and the pleasure he enjoys. Reference may also be made here to the statement found in the Talmud (Bezah 16a, and parallel passages) that upon the arrival of the Sabbath, man (*i. e.*, the Jew) receives an "additional soul," which stays with him until the expiration of the Sabbath; comp. Berliner, *Jahrbuch für jüd. Geschichte und Literatur*, 1910, 205.—The part of Prometheus, which is ascribed to Adam, who, endowed with God-like wisdom, brought down fire and light (comp. on this point Jellinek, *Einleitung* to BHM V,



48), is connected with the cycle of legends, in which the beginnings of culture were traced back to Adam; comp. notes 31 and 99. The stones which he used in bringing down the light are more accurately described in Tehillim 92, 404; one was the stone of darkness, the other the stone of dimness; comp. Job 28. 3, and text on p. 5, with regard to these stones of the abyss. In *Orehot Hayyim* I, 68c, the legend of the "horny skin" is connected with the one which treats of the bringing down of the fire, and states that Adam brought down the light by means of his finger-nails (compare with text on p. 72).

105. BR 12. 6; Tan. B. I, 13; Tan. Bereshit 6; BaR 13. 12; comp. further Sifra 26. 4–13; ShR 30. 3. Another version is preserved in PRK (Schönblum's edition, 43b); *Kebod Huppah* 19–21; MHG I, 126–130. In these sources twenty-two or twenty-four blessings are enumerated which God had bestowed on Adam, of which man was gradually deprived after the fall of Adam and the sins of the following generations, and which mankind will receive again in Messianic times. On account of his sins Adam forfeited the so-called image of God (*i. e.*, the God-like splendor), tall stature, paradise and the tree of life. The generation of the deluge in consequence of its sins, lost its gigantic strength, its longevity, the multitude of children, and peace. The generation of the Tower of Babel lost the unity of speech, that is, the Hebrew language. The generation of the sinful cities (Sodom and Gomorrah) lost riches and fertility of the soil. The generation of the wilderness lost six heavenly blessings: the manna, the well which followed them in their wanderings, the pillars of cloud and fire, the knowledge of the Ineffable Name, and the presence of the Shekinah. With the exile of the ten tribes real joy passed out of existence. Upon the destruction of Jerusalem the Davidic dynasty, the dignity of the high priest, the Holy Spirit, the Jewish courts of justice (Synhedrion), the temple, and the abundance of the water of Gihon passed away. This stream used to water Palestine, but Hezekiah stopped up its springs, so that the heathens should not in their envy take possession of Jerusalem, and expel Israel therefrom. Comp. the passages cited by Horowitz in *Kebod Huppah*, and parallels cited by Schechter on MHG, I, *loc. cit.* See further MHG I, 103 (top; this passage, which is closely related to the sources cited in note 90 concerning the ten curses of Adam, states that Adam became a "fugitive and a wanderer" after the fall), and Index, under the twenty-four objects given above. On the fertility of the soil in Messianic times, compare with footnote 30 on p. 108, and Yerushalmi Kil'ayim 4, 35c. On the beauty of man in Messianic times, comp. Zohar I, 113b.

## ADAM'S REPENTANCE

Cast out of Paradise, Adam and Eve built a hut for themselves, and for seven days they sat in it in great distress, mourning and lamenting. At the end of the seven days, tormented by hunger, they came forth and sought food. For seven other days, Adam journeyed up and down in the land, looking for such dainties as he had enjoyed in Paradise. In vain; he found nothing. Then Eve spoke to her husband: "My lord, if it please thee, slay me. Mayhap God will then take thee back into Paradise, for the Lord God became wroth with thee only on account of me." But Adam rejected her plan with abhorrence, and both went forth again on the search for food. Nine days passed, and still they found naught resembling what they had had in Paradise. They saw only food fit for cattle and beasts. Then Adam proposed: "Let us do penance, mayhap the Lord God will forgive us and have pity on us, and give us something to sustain our life." Knowing that Eve was not vigorous enough to undergo the mortification of the flesh which he purposed to inflict upon himself, he prescribed a penance for her different from his own. He said to her: "Arise, and go to the Tigris, take a stone and stand upon it in the deepest part of the river, where the water will reach as high as thy neck. And let no speech issue forth from thy mouth, for we are unworthy to supplicate God, our lips are unclean by reason of the forbidden fruit of the tree. Remain in the water for thirty-seven days."

For himself Adam ordained forty days of fasting, while he stood in the river Jordan in the same way as Eve was to take up her stand in the waters of the Tigris. After he had adjusted the stone in the middle of the Jordan, and mounted it, with the waters surging up to his neck, he said: "I adjure thee, O thou water of the Jordan! Afflict thyself with me, and gather unto me all swimming creatures that live in thee. Let them



surround me and sorrow with me, and let them not beat their own breasts with grief, but let them beat me. Not they have sinned, only I alone!" Very soon they all came, the dwellers in the Jordan, and they encompassed him, and from that moment the water of the Jordan stood still and ceased from flowing.

The penance which Adam and Eve laid upon themselves awakened misgivings in Satan. He feared God might forgive their sin, and therefore essayed to hinder Eve in her purpose. After a lapse of eighteen days he appeared unto her in the guise of an angel. As though in distress on account of her, he began to cry, saying: "Step up out of the river, and weep no longer. The Lord God hath heard your mourning, and your penitence hath been accepted by Him. All the angels supplicated the Lord in your behalf, and He hath sent me to fetch you out of the water and give you the sustenance that you enjoyed in Paradise, and for which you have been mourning." Enfeebled as she was by her penances and mortifications, Eve yielded to the solicitations of Satan, and he led her to where her husband was. Adam recognized him at once, and amid tears he cried out: "O Eve, Eve, where now is thy penitence? How couldst thou let our adversary seduce thee again—him who robbed us of our sojourn in Paradise and all spiritual joy?" Thereupon Eve, too, began to weep and cry out: "Woe unto thee, O Satan! Why strivest thou against us without any reason? What have we done unto thee that thou shouldst pursue us so craftily?" With a deep-fetched sigh, Satan told them how that Adam, of whom he had been jealous, had been the real reason of his fall. Having lost his glory through him, he had intrigued to have him driven from Paradise.

When Adam heard the confession of Satan, he prayed to God: "O Lord my God! In Thy hands is my life. Remove from me this adversary, who seeks to deliver my soul to destruction, and grant me the glory he has forfeited."

Satan disappeared forthwith, but Adam continued his penance, standing in the waters of the Jordan for forty days.<sup>106</sup>

While Adam stood in the river, he noticed that the days were growing shorter, and he feared the world might be darkened on account of his sin, and go under soon. To avert the doom, he spent eight days in prayer and fasting. But after the winter solstice, when he saw that the days grew longer again, he spent eight days in rejoicing, and in the following year he celebrated both periods, the one before and the one after the solstice. This is why the heathen celebrate the calends and the saturnalia in honor of their gods, though Adam had consecrated those days to the honor of God.<sup>107</sup>

The first time Adam witnessed the sinking of the sun he was also seized with anxious fears. It happened at the conclusion of the Sabbath, and Adam said, "Woe is me! For my sake, because I sinned, the world is darkened, and it will again become void and without form. Thus will be executed the punishment of death which God has pronounced against me!" All the night he spent in tears, and Eve, too, wept as she sat opposite to him. When day began to dawn, he understood that what he had deplored was but the course of nature, and he brought an offering unto God, a unicorn whose horn was created before his hoofs,<sup>108</sup> and he sacrificed it on the spot on which later the altar was to stand in Jerusalem.<sup>109</sup>

---

106. Vita Adae 1–17. The Slavonic version of this pseudepigraph offers essential variants, but they are very likely of Christian origin, and the same remark applies to the Armenian additions to the Vita in Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 30 and 41. The description of Adam's repentance in Vita is also found in rabbinic sources (PRE 20). On the first Sunday after his expulsion from paradise, it is said in this Midrash (Zohar I, 55b, is based on PRE, and is not an independent source), Adam betook himself to the waters of the upper Gihon (a play on the words of the root גִּיחַ "he bent down", *i. e.*, repented, and גִּיחִין "the creeper" = "the serpent", comp. BR 16. 4), where he stayed, without food, up



to his neck in the water, for seven weeks continually, until his body became perforated like a sponge. He then prayed to God, saying: "Pardon my sins and accept my repentance, so that all future generations may know that repentance is efficacious, and that Thou forgivest those who return to Thee." Whereupon God stretched out His right hand, forgave Adam's sins, and accepted his repentance. On the relation of PRE to the Vita, comp. Israel Lévi, *R.E.J.*, XVIII, 86, *seq.*, and his treatise *Le Péché Originel*, 24, *seq.*; Epstein in *Magazin*, XX, 252–253; Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 61, *seq.* All these writers are of the opinion that PRE goes back to the Vita, and this latter work they consider as Christian. Comp., on the other hand, Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 51, *seq.*, and *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. "Adam, Book of", as well as Charles, *Pseudepigraphs*, 123, *seq.*, with reference to the Jewish character of the Vita and the independence of PRE from Christian sources. The following remarks may be made here. Vita reads (6) that Adam commanded Eve to stand up to her neck in water (*usque ad collum*), corresponding to עַד צוֹאָרֵר (PRE, *loc. cit.*). This shows that both sources go back to the old Halakah (comp. Yoma 87a), according to which a ritual bath can only purify when it reaches one's neck; but this does not prove the dependence of PRE on Vita, as is asserted by Epstein, *loc. cit.* Vita (10) remarks that Eve's body became like grass, because of her long stay in the water. This becomes intelligible only when we compare it with the Hebrew of PRE which reads: עַד שֶׁנֶּעֱשָׂה גּוֹפּוֹ כְּמִין יְרוּקָה (the Epstein manuscript and Makiri on Ps. 32, 206, have the correct text, whereas כְּבֵרָה is the result of a learned "emendation", based on Ta'anit 22b; Yalkut I, 34, reads כְּלָבּוֹ, which is meaningless, and is certainly a corruption of כְּלָחוֹ=רוֹגוֹר, *i. e.*, the passage in the Yalkut is shortened from PRE), *i. e.*, his body became like a sponge (on יְרוּקָה comp. Löw, *Pflanzennamen*; Ginzberg, *Geonica*, II, 321). The translator of the Vita from the Hebrew did not understand this rare word, and thought that it meant a "herb" (like יֶרֶק). Adam's repentance is alluded to in a statement by R. Meir (about 150 C. E.), who remarks that Adam was very pious (חַסִּיד has often the meaning of ascetic), and when he saw that death was decreed against him and the human race, he separated himself from his wife for one hundred and thirty years, during which time he was covered with leaves of a fig-tree (they sting the body; comp. Irenaeus III, 23, 5, and note 70). See 'Erubin 18b; BR 20. 11 and 24. 6; Tan. B. I, 20; BaR 14.12. According to another legend, if Adam had repented immediately after his fall, he would have been spared the punishment (comp. note 78). But he resolved to repent after he had learned that God forgave Cain's sin through repentance. Comp. BR 32 (end), and the passages cited in footnote 28 on p. 107. Only Mishle 9, 64, speaks of Eve's repentance. The very old legend (compare with footnote 265 on p. 235) that Adam and Eve shared the same sepul-

chre with the three patriarchs presupposes the idea that they had repented of their sins and died as "saints", otherwise it would have been against the Jewish sentiment to have the "pious" patriarchs buried together with the sinners; comp. Mishnah Sanhedrin 6. 6; Tosefta 9. 9; Tehillim 26, 219 (Abrabanel, *Ma'yene ha-Yeshuah*, 6. 1, cites this passage of Midrash Tehillim from the Tosefta, which is due to the inaccurate quotation in Yalkut II, 704); Sanhedrin 47a. On a combination of 'Erubin, *loc. cit.*, with PRE, *loc. cit.*, are based the statements concerning Adam's repentance in Hasidim 23 and Zohar Hadash Ruth 97b (ר' נחמיה פתח). Comp. further *Ha-Kaneh*, 103d. On Adam's repentance in Arabic literature, comp. Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 511, and *Neue Beiträge*, 65. See also note 138.

107. 'Abodah Zarah 8a, where, though it is not explicitly stated, it is to be understood that Adam noticed the increasing night during the time of his repentance; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 51–52. Concerning Adam's fear of darkness see further text on p. 84, and the following note. In Yerushalmi 1, 39c, the term *Calandae* (accusative *Calandas*) is explained as καλὸν "beautiful" and *dies*, "day" (comp. *Eshkol* III, 116, and R. Hananel on Babli *loc. cit.*), and it is remarked that when Adam observed the increasing day, he exclaimed: "Beautiful day", for his fear of darkness vanished on this account. In the same passage a Hebrew etymology is given of *Saturnalia*, which is said to mean "hatred and revenge", namely, of Esau (=Rome) against Israel. It may be worth while to cite the statement of Yerushalmi that when Adam saw the increasing darkness, he became possessed of fear that the serpent might attack him.

108. 'Abodah Zarah 8a; ARN 1, 7. A similar statement is found in some of the versions of the Adam Book (comp. Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 30, 541). On this legend and the others related to it, in which the mythological conception of the serpent (comp. the preceding note and text on p. 84) which swallowed the sun is easily recognisable, comp. Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 130–143.—The wonderful one-horned ox, which Adam offered as a sacrifice, is frequently alluded to. In addition to the passages cited, comp. Shabbat 28b and Yerushalmi 2, 4d; PR 33, 154a; Koheleth 1. 9; Tehillim 39, 256. It has absolutely nothing to do with the fabulous ox of the Persians (gajomarth) with which it is identified by Kohut, Z.D.M.G. XXV, 78. Compare also footnote 146 on p. 33; ARN, *loc. cit.*, reads further: The ox which Adam offered, the bullock which Noah offered (upon leaving the ark), and the ram which Abraham sacrificed (instead of Isaac) got their horns prior to their hoofs. The idea implied is that these animals belong to primordial creations, that they came to the world completely developed (comp. note 21), so that when these animals came forth from the earth, they put out their heads first, with their horns on them.



109. BR 24. 9; PRE 23 and 31; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 8. 20. Adam's house of prayer, alluded to in the Apocalypse of Moses 5 and Vita Adae 30, is perhaps nothing more than the Christian substitute for the altar at Jerusalem given in the Jewish original of these writings. That Adam erected an altar on mount Moriah cannot be considered strange, since not only was the dust, used for the formation of his body, taken from the same place (comp. note 16), but it was also this mountain on which he landed after the expulsion from paradise, because the gate of Moriah is found in the proximity of paradise. Comp. PRE 20; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 3. 23. It is hard to tell whether the midrashic view of Gen., *loc. cit.*, according to which Adam settled in the east of paradise, after his expulsion (comp. Septuagint, *ad loc.*; BR 22, 9; Tan. B. V, 16; Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 55), is connected with Adam's stay in Jerusalem or not. Comp. Luria on PRE. The statement in 2 Enoch 68. 5 that, after Enoch's translation, his sons erected an altar in the place called Ahuzan, is also related to the account of Adam's stay in Jerusalem, where he erected an altar. That this Ahuzan (*i. e.* אֲחֻזָּה; comp. the description of Jerusalem as אֲחֻזָּה in Ezek. 48. 20, *seq.*) is no other place than Jerusalem may be seen from the Melchizedek fragments 3. 35, where Melchizedek declares that he, "king and priest shall be in the place Ahuzan, that is to say, in the middle of the earth where Adam was created". Jerusalem is the centre of the earth (text on p. 7), and Melchizedek was both king and priest of Jerusalem (text on p. 196). On the connection of the Golgotha legend with this cycle of legends, comp. note 137. On the idea that paradise is in the proximity of Jerusalem, comp. also the Armenian version of Vita Adae in Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 27, where Jerusalem is designated as the city of the fallen angels. This is not due, as Preuschen believes, to an anti-Jewish tendency, but because the holy city is both the gate of paradise, as well as of Gehenna (see footnote 55 on p. 13, and Index, *s. v.* "Gehenna"), where the fallen undergo their punishment.

## THE BOOK OF RAZIEL

After Adam's expulsion from Paradise, he prayed to God in these words: "O God, Lord of the world! Thou didst create the whole world unto the honor and glory of the Mighty One, and Thou didst as was pleasing unto Thee. Thy kingdom is unto all eternity, and Thy reign unto all generations. Naught is hidden from Thee, and naught is concealed from Thine eyes. Thou

didst create me as Thy handiwork, and didst make me the ruler over Thy creatures, that I might be the chief of Thy works. But the cunning, accursed serpent seduced me with the tree of desire and lusts, yea, he seduced the wife of my bosom. But Thou didst not make known unto me what shall befall my children and the generations after me. I know well that no human being can be righteous in Thine eyes, and what is my strength that I should step before Thee with an impudent face? I have no mouth wherewith to speak and no eye wherewith to see, for I did sin and commit a trespass, and, by reason of my sins, I was driven forth from Paradise. I must plough the earth whence I was taken, and the other inhabitants of the earth, the beasts, no longer, as once, stand in awe and fear of me. From the time I ate of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, wisdom departed from me, and I am a fool that knoweth naught, an ignorant man that understandeth not. Now, O merciful and gracious God, I pray to Thee to turn again Thy compassion to the head of Thy works, to the spirit which Thou didst instil into him, and the soul Thou didst breathe into him. Meet me with Thy grace, for Thou art gracious, slow to anger, and full of love. O that my prayer would reach unto the throne of Thy glory, and my supplication unto the throne of Thy mercy, and Thou wouldst incline to me with lovingkindness. May the words of my mouth be acceptable, that Thou turn not away from my petition. Thou wert from everlasting, and Thou wilt be unto everlasting; Thou wert king, and Thou wilt ever be king. Now, have Thou mercy upon the work of Thy hands. Grant me knowledge and understanding, that I may know what shall befall me, and my posterity, and all the generations that come after me, and what shall befall me on every day and in every month, and mayest Thou not withhold from me the help of Thy servants and of Thy angels."

On the third day after he had offered up this prayer, while he was sitting on the banks of the



river that flows forth out of Paradise, there appeared to him, in the heat of the day, the angel Raziel, bearing a book in his hand. The angel addressed Adam thus: "O Adam, why art thou so faint-hearted? Why art thou distressed and anxious? Thy words were heard at the moment when thou didst utter thy supplication and entreaties, and I have received the charge to teach thee pure words and deep understanding, to make thee wise through the contents of the sacred book in my hand, to know what will happen to thee until the day of thy death. And all thy descendants and all the later generations, if they will but read this book in purity, with a devout heart and an humble mind, and obey its precepts, will become like unto thee. They, too, will foreknow what things shall happen, and in what month and on what day or in what night. All will be manifest to them—they will know and understand whether a calamity will come, a famine or wild beasts, floods or drought; whether there will be abundance of grain or dearth; whether the wicked will rule the world; whether locusts will devastate the land; whether the fruits will drop from the trees unripe; whether boils will afflict men; whether wars will prevail, or diseases or plagues among men and cattle; whether good is resolved upon in heaven, or evil; whether blood will flow, and the death-rattle of the slain be heard in the city. And now, Adam, come and give heed unto what I shall tell thee regarding the manner of this book and its holiness."

Raziel, the angel, then read from the book, and when Adam heard the words of the holy volume as they issued from the mouth of the angel, he fell down affrighted. But the angel encouraged him. "Arise, Adam," he said, "be of good courage, be not afraid, take the book from me and keep it, for thou wilt draw knowledge from it thyself and become wise, and thou wilt also teach its contents to all those who shall be found worthy of knowing what it contains."

In the moment when Adam took the book, a flame of fire shot up from near the river, and the angel rose heavenward with it. Then Adam knew that he who had spoken to him was an angel of God, and it was from the Holy King Himself that the book had come, and he used it in holiness and purity. It is the book out of which all things worth knowing can be learnt, and all mysteries, and it teaches also how to call upon the angels and make them appear before men, and answer all their questions. But not all alike can use the book, only he who is wise and God-fearing, and resorts to it in holiness. Such an one is secure against all wicked counsels, his life is serene, and when death takes him from this world, he finds repose in a place where there are neither demons nor evil spirits, and out of the hands of the wicked he is quickly rescued.<sup>110</sup>

---

110. *Sefer Raziel* (beginning). This book, which came down to us in its present form from the thirteenth century, and is probably the work of R. Eleazar of Worms, contains, in its many parts, old geonic mysticism. Another version of the legend how the Book of Raziel was given to Adam is found in *Zohar* I, 55b. According to this version, God caused a book to come to Adam through the angel Raziel (Raz, "secret"; El, "God"), while he was still in paradise, by means of which he was able to master all the seventy-two kinds of wisdom, as well as the heavenly mysteries which were unknown even to the angels. The angel Hadarniel, accordingly, remarked to Adam: "Thou art in possession of thy Master's treasures, with whose contents not even the dwellers of heaven are acquainted." After the fall (this is the only passage in rabbinic literature which speaks of Adam's stay in paradise for a longer time; comp. note 97), this book disappeared from Adam's presence, and he received it back from Raphael's hands only after he had repented (comp. note 106; read עבדין גופיה חולדין, according to *Yerushalmi Shebi'it* 9, 39d; BR 79. 6; *Koheleth* 10. 8; PK 10, 88b; *Tehillim* 18, 134; *Esther* R 1. 9). When Adam died the book came into the possession of Seth, and afterwards it was handed over to Noah and Abraham. Comp. also *Zohar* I, 37b, and 118a. On the different versions of the legend concerning the mysterious book of Adam, compare with pp. 141–142, and the notes appertaining to them. It is noteworthy that the older rabbinic literature knows nothing of such a book belonging to Adam or composed by him. The statement in *Baba*



Mezi'a 85b (below; comp. the sources cited in note 27) concerning the book which God had shown to Adam implies only that God revealed to Adam all the future generations of mankind and has no reference to a book composed by him or given to him. It is interesting to note that R. Hai Gaon (about 1000) never heard of any Adam book; comp. his remarks on Baba Mezi'a, *loc. cit.*, in Responsa of the Geonim (Harkavy's edition, 103), Müller, *Responsen Lehrer des Ostens*, No. 31, and Horowitz, *Toratan shel Rishonim* II, Nos. 1 and 3 (this passage has מְחַיֵּא instead of the incorrect מְחַיֵּי). 2 Enoch 33. 9–10 mentions, together with the Enoch writings, also those of Adam, Seth, Kainan, Mahalalel, and Jared, which writings God gave to two angels to take care of.—On the statement of Sefer Raziel that the fear with which Adam had inspired the animals disappeared after his fall, see note 113. Concerning the assertion made in the same source that wisdom abandoned Adam as a consequence of his having eaten the forbidden fruit, comp. PRK (Schönblum's edition, 43b), where among the blessings Adam forfeited as a result of his sin (comp. note 105), wisdom and knowledge (דְּעָה וְחִכְמָה) are enumerated. The forbidden fruit gave him human knowledge and discernment, but he lost true knowledge and God-like wisdom through it.

## THE SICKNESS OF ADAM

When Adam had lived to be nine hundred and thirty years old, a sickness seized him, and he felt that his days were drawing to an end. He summoned all his descendants, and assembled them before the door of the house of worship in which he had always offered his prayers to God, to give them his last blessing. His family were astonished to find him stretched out on the bed of sickness, for they did not know what pain and suffering were.<sup>111</sup> They thought he was overcome with longing after the fruits of Paradise, and for lack of them was depressed. Seth announced his willingness to go to the gates of Paradise and beg God to let one of His angels give him of its fruits. But Adam explained to them what sickness and pain are, and that God had inflicted them upon him as a punishment for his sin.<sup>112</sup> Adam suffered violently; tears and groans were wrung from him. Eve sobbed, and said, "Adam,

my lord, give me the half of thy sickness, I will gladly bear it. Is it not on account of me that this hath come upon thee? On account of me thou undergoest pain and anguish."

Adam bade Eve go with Seth to the gates of Paradise and entreat God to have mercy upon him, and send His angel to catch up some of the oil of life flowing from the tree of His mercy and give it to his messengers. The ointment would bring him rest, and banish the pain consuming him. On his way to Paradise, Seth was attacked by a wild beast. Eve called out to the assailant, "How durst thou lay hand on the image of God?" The ready answer came: "It is thine own fault. Hadst thou not opened thy mouth to eat of the forbidden fruit, my mouth would not be opened now to destroy a human being." But Seth remonstrated: "Hold thy tongue! Desist from the image of God until the day of judgment." And the beast gave way, saying, "See, I refrain myself from the image of God," and it slunk away to its covert.<sup>113</sup>

Arrived at the gates of Paradise, Eve and Seth began to cry bitterly, and they besought God with many lamentations to give them oil from the tree of His mercy. For hours they prayed thus. At last the archangel Michael appeared, and informed them that he came as the messenger of God to tell them that their petition could not be granted. Adam would die in a few days, and as he was subject to death, so would be all his descendants. Only at the time of the resurrection, and then only to the pious, the oil of life would be dispensed, together with all the bliss and all the delights of Paradise.<sup>114</sup> Returned to Adam, they reported what had happened, and he said to Eve: "What misfortune didst thou bring upon us when thou didst arouse great wrath! See, death is the portion of all our race! Call hither our children and our children's children, and tell them the manner of our sinning." And while Adam lay prostrate upon the bed of pain, Eve told them the story of their fall.<sup>115</sup>



111. Vita Adae 30; Apocalypse of Moses 5–6. Here it is presupposed that in Adam's time illness came only as the immediate forerunner of death. Comp. on this point text on p. 400, and text on p. 1050. In connection with the ante-diluvian generations, BR 26. 5 observes that they spent their lives without suffering any pain or disease. On Adam's place of prayer see note 109.

112. Vita Adae 31; Apocalypse of Moses 6. In rabbinic sources illness is not regarded as the direct consequence of the fall, very likely because it is considered as the beginning of death; comp. the preceding note. On the number of diseases comp. note 129.

113. Apocalypse of Moses 9–12; Vita Adae 24–39. The tree of life is identified in these, as well as in other Jewish and Christian writings, and also among the Gnostics, with the olive-tree; comp. 2 Enoch 8. 7 and 22. 8, as well as 66. 2; 5 Ezra 2. 12; *Evang. Nicod.* 18; *Descent of Christ* 3; *Recognitiones*, 1.45; Hippolytus 5.2; Origen, *Contra Celsum*, 6. 27, where the words of Celsus certainly go back to Ophitic writings. As has already been observed in note 70, no definite determination of the tree of life can be found in rabbinic literature, nor does it know of the life-giving oil. The resurrection of the dead, according to the statements found in this literature, will be brought about through the "dew of light" (Is. 26. 19); comp. Hagigah 12b; PRE 35 Yerushalmi Berakot 1, 9b; Apocalypse of Baruch 29. 7 and 73. 2. Compare further with footnote 12 on p. 994; text on pp. 1102 and 1127. In 2 Enoch 25 the view of the Rabbis is combined with that of the Apocalyptic writers about the life-giving oil; hence the following description of this oil: "The appearance of that oil was more than a great light, and its anointing was excellent dew." On the "dew of light" among the Gnostics, comp. Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 63. On the tree of life comp. also Enoch 24. 4, where it is identified with the palm. Comp. also BR 69. 8 and PRE 35, concerning the oil which came down from heaven for Jacob's sake, with which he anointed the site of Luz, whose inhabitants live forever; compare with p. 861.—In the legend concerning the meeting of Seth with the wild beasts the idea implied is that Adam lost his power over animals through his sin; hence the pious need not fear them. Moreover, in Messianic times (comp. note 105) the old relations between men and animals will be restored. Reference may be made here to the numerous parallels to these views from rabbinic sources: Sifre N., 1 (end) and Sifre D., 50; Sifra 26.6; Tosefta Shabbat (end); Babli 151a; Yerushalmi 14, 14b and 14c; Tosefta Berakot 3. 20; Yerushalmi 5, 9a; Babli 33a; PK 5, 44b; PR 15, 68b; Shemuel 18, 97; Midrash Shir 29a; Koheleth 5. 10; Aggadat Bereshit 15, 32; DR 4. 4; 2 ARN 45, 117; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 3. 15. Compare further p. 69; pp. 89, 98; text on pp. 442, 450; footnote 104 on p. 1103. Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 28, observes,

with respect to the conditions before the fall: And all those who were very wild by nature became meek and submissive . . . for everything that is mortal He subjected to him. Philo thus agrees with the Rabbis who do not consider the wildness of animals as the consequence of the fall of man (as do the pseudepigraphic writings referred to at the beginning of this note), but is due to the fact that they cease to be submissive to man. BR 34. 12 reads: The animals' fear and terror of man came back after the flood, but not man's dominion over them. The latter came back in the time of Solomon. While the old rabbinic literature (in agreement with Sibylline Oracles 3, 788, *seq.*) maintains that the wildness of the animals will disappear in Messianic times (basing the view on Lev. 26, 6), the medieval philosophers do not support this view. Comp. Ginzberg, *Compte Rendu* 34=*R.E.J.*, 68, 148. The instinctive shyness of certain animals in the presence of a living man (but not of a dead one; comp. BR, *loc. cit.*, and parallel passages) is ascribed to the fact that man has his star (*i. e.*, guardian angel; comp. notes 20 and 101); see Baba Kamma 2b, 41a, and Meiri's remarks in *Shita Mekubbezet* on the first passage. The view that even wild animals fear and obey the saints, etc., occurs quite frequently in Jewish as well as in Christian legends; comp. Günter, *Christliche Legende*, index, *s. v.* "Tiere". Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 80–81.

114. Apocalypse of Moses 13; Vita Adae 40–42. On the distribution of the food of the tree of life in the world to come, comp. the sources cited in note 96. See further Enoch 25. 4–5; 12 Testaments, Levi 18. 11; Lekah, Gen. 2. 9.

115. Apocalypse of Moses 14; Vita Adae 44. On the number and names of the sons and daughters of Adam, comp. ps.–Philo (beginning); Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 2. 3.

## EVE'S STORY OF THE FALL

After I was created, God divided Paradise and all the animals therein between Adam and me. The east and the north were assigned to Adam, together with the male animals. I was mistress of the west and the south and all the female animals. Satan, smarting under the disgrace of having been dismissed from the heavenly host,<sup>116</sup> resolved to bring about our ruin and avenge himself upon the cause of his discomfiture. He won the serpent over to his side, and pointed out to him that before the creation of Adam the animals



could enjoy all that grew in Paradise, and now they were restricted to the weeds. To drive Adam from Paradise would therefore be for the good of all. The serpent demurred, for he stood in awe of the wrath of God. But Satan calmed his fears, and said, “Do thou but become my vessel,<sup>117</sup> and I shall speak a word through thy mouth wherewith thou wilt succeed in seducing man.”

The serpent thereupon suspended himself from the wall surrounding Paradise, to carry on his conversation with me from without. And this happened at the very moment when my two guardian angels had betaken themselves to heaven to supplicate the Lord. I was quite alone therefore, and when Satan assumed the appearance of an angel, bent over the wall of Paradise, and intoned seraphic songs of praise, I was deceived, and thought him an angel. A conversation was held between us, Satan speaking through the mouth of the serpent:

“Art thou Eve?”

“Yes, it is I.”

“What art thou doing in Paradise?”

“The Lord has put us here to cultivate it and eat of its fruits.”

“That is good. Yet you eat not of all the trees.”

“That we do, excepting a single one, the tree that stands in the midst of Paradise. Concerning it alone, God has forbidden us to eat of it, else, the Lord said, ye will die.”

The serpent made every effort to persuade me that I had naught to fear—that God knew that in the day that Adam and I ate of the fruit of the tree, we should be as He Himself. It was jealousy that had made Him say,<sup>118</sup> “Ye shall not eat of it.” In spite of all his urging, I remained steadfast and refused to touch the tree. Then the serpent engaged to pluck the fruit for me. Thereupon I opened the gate of Paradise, and he slipped in. Scarcely was he within, when he said to me, “I repent of my words, I would rather not give thee of the fruit of the forbidden tree.” It

was but a cunning device to tempt me more. He consented to give me of the fruit only after I swore to make my husband eat of it, too. This is the oath he made me take: “By the throne of God, by the cherubim, and by the tree of life, I shall give my husband of this fruit, that he may eat, too.” Thereupon the serpent ascended the tree and injected his poison, the poison of the evil inclination, into the fruit,<sup>119</sup> and bent the branch on which it grew to the ground. I took hold of it, but I knew at once that I was stripped of the righteousness in which I had been clothed.<sup>120</sup> I began to weep, because of it and because of the oath the serpent had forced from me.

The serpent disappeared from the tree, while I sought leaves wherewith to cover my nakedness, but all the trees within my reach had cast off their leaves at the moment when I ate of the forbidden fruit.<sup>121</sup> There was only one that retained its leaves, the fig-tree, the very tree the fruit of which had been forbidden to me.<sup>122</sup> I summoned Adam, and by means of blasphemous words I prevailed upon him to eat of the fruit. As soon as it had passed his lips, he knew his true condition, and he exclaimed against me: “Thou wicked woman, what hast thou brought down upon me? Thou hast removed me from the glory of God.”

At the same time Adam and I heard the archangel Michael<sup>123</sup> blow his trumpet, and all the angels cried out: “Thus saith the Lord, Come ye with Me to Paradise and hearken unto the sentence which I will pronounce upon Adam.”<sup>124</sup>

We hid ourselves because we feared the judgment of God. Sitting in his chariot drawn by cherubim, the Lord, accompanied by angels uttering His praise, appeared in Paradise. At His coming the bare trees again put forth leaves.<sup>125</sup> His throne was erected by the tree of life, and God addressed Adam: “Adam, where dost thou keep thyself in hiding? Thinkest thou I cannot find thee? Can a house conceal itself from its architect?”<sup>126</sup>



Adam tried to put the blame on me, who had promised to hold him harmless before God. And I in turn accused the serpent. But God dealt out justice to all three of us. To Adam He said: "Because thou didst not obey My commands, but didst hearken unto the voice of thy wife, cursed is the ground in spite of thy work. When thou dost cultivate it, it will not yield thee its strength. Thorns and thistles shall it bring forth to thee, and in the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread. Thou wilt suffer many a hardship, thou wilt grow weary, and yet find no rest. Bitterly oppressed, thou shalt never taste of any sweetness. Thou shalt be scourged by heat, and yet pinched by cold. Thou shalt toil greatly, and yet not gain wealth. Thou shalt grow fat, and yet cease to live. And the animals over which thou art the master will rise up against thee, because thou didst not keep my command."<sup>127</sup>

Upon me God pronounced this sentence: "Thou shalt suffer anguish in childbirth and grievous torture. In sorrow shalt thou bring forth children, and in the hour of travail, when thou art near to lose thy life, thou wilt confess and cry, 'Lord, Lord, save me this time, and I will never again indulge in carnal pleasure,' and yet thy desire shall ever and ever be unto thy husband."<sup>128</sup>

At the same time all sorts of diseases were decreed upon us. God said to Adam: "Because thou didst turn aside from My covenant, I will inflict seventy plagues upon thy flesh. The pain of the first plague shall lay hold on thy eyes; the pain of the second plague upon thy hearing, and one after the other all the plagues shall come upon thee."<sup>129</sup>

The serpent God addressed thus: "Because thou becamest the vessel of the Evil One,<sup>130</sup> deceiving the innocent, cursed art thou above all cattle and above every beast of the field. Thou shalt be robbed of the food thou wast wont to eat, and dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life. Upon thy breast and thy belly shalt thou go, and of thy hands and thy feet thou shalt be deprived.

Thou shalt not remain in possession of thy ears, nor of thy wings, nor of any of thy limbs where-with thou didst seduce the woman and her husband, bringing them to such a pass that they must be driven forth from Paradise. And I will put enmity between thee and the seed of man. It shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel until the day of judgment."<sup>131</sup>

---

116. Apocalypse of Moses 15–30. Vita Adae, which is closely related to this source, does not contain any details on the fall of Adam, while, on the other hand, the former, but not the latter, has a description of the fall of Satan; comp. note 35. It may be remarked here that PRE 14, which some scholars consider dependent on Vita (comp. note 106), puts the fall of Satan after the fall of Adam, or more accurately, makes the former a consequence of the latter; but in Vita, on the other hand, the relation is reversed. The fact that in PRE Sammael appears as the seducer instead of Satan is, of course, no variant, since in rabbinic literature these two were regarded as identical in quite early times. The etymology of Sammael as the "blind one" (סומא), who does not see the pious, is found in the *Acts of Andrew and Matthias* (towards the end), as well as in kabbalistic sources. Comp. *'Erke ha-Kinuyim*, s. v. סומא, where=ס"א, אחרא סיטרא, i. e., Sammael. In Enoch 69. 6 it is the fallen angel Gadriel "who showed the children of men all the blows of death, and who led Eve astray, and showed all the weapons of death to the children of men." Gadriel very likely stands for Katriel, and is connected with Aramaic קטר "he intrigued", "revolted."

117. Apocalypse of Moses 16. "Became a vessel" is a Hebraism=כלי לדברות; comp. Taylor, *Sayings of the Jewish Fathers*, 26; Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 39. The view prevalent in this source that Satan was the real seducer, but employed the cunning serpent as his servant, represents the transition from the older literal conception of the biblical report concerning the fall (comp. note 50) to the allegorical interpretation which identifies the serpent with Satan; comp., e. g., Revelation 12. 9; note 83, and index, s. v. "Serpent", and "Dragon". Origen, *De Princ.*, 3. 21, and PRE 13 practically agree with the harmonizing view of the Apocalypse of Moses. Comp. note 119.

118. Apocalypse of Moses 17–18. The transformation of Satan into an angel is alluded to in 2 Cor. 11. 4. On the serpent's slanderous accusations against God, comp. the rabbinic parallels in text on pp. 71–72, and notes appertaining thereto.

119. Apocalypse of Moses 19. The three sacred objects by which she swears certainly belong to the pre-existing



things, and when we consider the fact that the tree of life is the same as paradise (comp., *e. g.*, PRK, 43b, where only paradise is mentioned, while MHG I, 126, reads paradise and the tree of life), the view of this writing concerning pre-existing things agrees with that of the Rabbis. Comp. Excursus I. That the serpent climbed up the tree of knowledge, and plucked the fruit for Eve is also found in ARN 1 (both versions). Comp. note 63 and ps.–Tertullian, *Adversus Omnes Haereses*, 2. On the view that the serpent injected the evil inclination (=sexual desire) into Eve, see note 131 and footnotes 3–4 on p. 101.

120. Apocalypse of Moses 20. The haggadic interpretation of ערומים (Gen. 3. 7 and 10) is: “And they became aware that they were bare of good deeds.” This Hebrew idiom occurs frequently in the Talmud; comp., *e. g.*, Shabbat 14a; Megillah 32a (end). Comp. BR 19. 6; PRE 14; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 3. 10 (a different interpretation of ערום, 3. 7); MHG I, 93. Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 54, note 1, is to be corrected accordingly.

121. Apocalypse of Moses 21. On the withering of the leaves of all trees, see note 125 and text on p. 646, footnote 30 on p. 459. See further the remarks in note 82 concerning the eclipse of the sun at the time of the fall. BR 15. 7 states that the trees refused to give their leaves to the transgressors. Compare with p. 74.

122. On the identification of the forbidden fruit with the fig, comp. note 70.

123. Concerning this function of Michael, compare with footnote 246 on p. 230.

124. The rabbinic sources (BR 20. 4; BaR 14. 12; Tadshe 10; comp. also the quotation from Yerushalmi in *Imre No'am*, end of Mishpatim) speak of the heavenly court consisting of seventy-one members (this number corresponds to that of the Great Synhedrion; comp. Sanhedrin 1. 6) which God appointed to judge the serpent. Comp. also note 84.

125. Comp. note 121, and further Yoma 39b, which reads: The trees of the temple withered when the heathen entered the sanctuary, but they will bloom again in Messianic times. Comp. also Apocalypse of Moses 38.

126. Apocalypse of Moses 23. That God’s residence is under the tree of life is also stated in 2 Enoch 8. 3. In kabbalistic writings the same statement is made with regard to the Shekinah; compare with p. 117. God’s speech to Adam is almost literally identical with the one found in rabbinic sources; comp. note 76.

127. Apocalypse of Moses 24. This source appears to count the ten curses which God pronounced against Adam; compare with p. 76, and the note appertaining to it. On the loss of the dominion over the animal world, comp. note 113.

128. Apocalypse of Moses 25. On the text comp. Ginzberg’s remarks in the *Jewish Encyclopedia* I, 70, where reference is made to the almost literal parallel passages

in BR 20. 7 and Niddah 31b. The text of the Hebrew original very likely read: ובשעה שתכרע ללד תסכן נפשך מרוב צער ויסורים ותשבע ותאמר לא אזקק עוד לאישי הצינני אך הפעם ואל אישך תשובי והוא ימשל בך. The expression זקק is a frequently used euphemism for conjugal relations, but the translator erroneously read לפשעי instead of לאישי. Comp. note 131 (end).

129. Vita Adae 34; Apocalypse of Moses 8. The number of diseases which came upon man in consequence of the fall amounts to seventy or seventy-two (the rivalry of these two numbers is of frequent occurrence; comp. Index under these numbers); comp. Nega’im 1. 4; Sifra 13.4; ER 5.25; midrashic citation by Ibn Sabba 53b on Gen. 43. 16. A sentence employed in amulets reads: “And mayest Thou, O God, protect him against the seventy-two kinds of diseases, which afflict this world”; comp. Midrash Talpiyyot, *s. v.* חלאים. See also the seventy kinds of deaths in Testament of Abraham 20 (longer recension), and Ginzberg’s remarks on it in *Jewish Encyclopedia*, I, 95. Other views with regard to the number of diseases are found in Berakot 8a, according to which there are 903 kinds of deaths (*i. e.*, diseases which cause death), and in Baba Mezi’a 107b, where it is said that the bile, when it is in a diseased condition, may cause 83 kinds of death.

130. Apocalypse of Moses 26. On the expression “vessel of . . .” comp. note 117. The designation of Satan as ἀχάριστος, literally “the ugly one,” corresponds with his nickname in rabbinic writings, in which he is known as מנוול, “the ugly one”; comp. *e. g.* Kiddushin 30b. It is hard to say whether we should take it in its literal meaning, in accordance with the legend which ascribes an ugly form to the angel of death (who is identical with Satan; compare with p. 247), or in a figurative sense.

131. Apocalypse of Moses 26. A tenfold punishment of the serpent seems to be presupposed here. Compare with pp. 75–76, where (see also the sources cited in note 83) the ten punishments are enumerated, in partial agreement with the account given in the Apocalypse. The first sentence “until the day of judgment” corresponds with the paraphrase of Gen. 3. 15 in Targum Yerushalmi. This Targum, as well as the Apocalypse, identifies the punishment decreed against the serpent with that against Satan; comp. notes 116 and 120. Besides the sources cited in these two notes, comp. further Enoch 69, 6 (where it is said that the fallen angel Gadriel seduced Eve, comp. note 119); 2 Enoch 21.4 (where Satanel, *i. e.* Satan, caused the fall), and similarly Wisdom 2.24 (where death is ascribed to the jealousy of the devil). The serpent is not mentioned in any of these three writings. The Apocalypse of Abraham 23 describes Azazel as being like a serpent in appearance, having hands and feet like a man, and twelve wings. Here the serpent is identified with Satan (in this pseudopigraph Azazel is employed instead of the latter), not in the allegorical sense,



but it ascribes the form of the serpent to Satan. As far as this form is concerned, it is almost identical with that of the serpent in paradise as described in rabbinic sources; compare with p. 71. Concerning the wings see text on p. 64, as well as Apocalypse of Moses, *loc. cit.*, which speaks of the wings of the serpent. The description of Satan in the Greek Baruch 4. 8 is closely related to the one in the Apocalypse of Abraham. We may thus trace the development of the conception of the "old serpent": 1) The serpent resembled man both in mind and body, before the fall, and being jealous, it resorted to corruption (this is the view of the old rabbinic literature; comp. note 60). 2) The fall was brought about not by the serpent, but by Satan, who made use of the cunning serpent (Apocalypse of Moses; PRE). 3) Satan, who had the appearance of a serpent, was the cause of the fall (Apocalypse of Abraham and Greek Baruch). 4) Satan, or some other fallen angel, brought about the fall (Books of Enoch). 5) The view of the allegorists (Philo, Revelation, medieval Jewish philosophers), according to whom it was the sensual desire which seduced man. It may be noted further that the sentence καὶ διὰ τοῦτο . . . λόγον σου in the Apocalypse of Moses 25 is misplaced; it belongs to the end of 26, where God says to the serpent that He will put enmity between him and man, because "I will judge thee according to thy actions (על דברתך), a Hebraism, which the Greek translator incorrectly rendered by λόγον σου), on account of the enmity which the enemy (=Satan; comp. Sukkah 52a) had injected into thee. Satan sowed enmity in the heart of the serpent against man (comp. Apocalypse of Moses 16), and as a punishment for this, eternal enmity shall reign henceforth between thee and them (i. e., Adam and Eve)". Comp. the similar idea in Tosefta Sotah 4. 18; BR 20. 5; Sotah 9b; ARN 1, 5.

## THE DEATH OF ADAM

On the last day of Adam's life, Eve said to him, "Why should I go on living, when thou art no more? How long shall I have to linger on after thy death? Tell me this!" Adam assured her she would not tarry long. They would die together, and be buried together in the same place. He commanded her not to touch his corpse until an angel from God had made provision regarding it, and she was to begin at once to pray to God until his soul escaped from his body.

While Eve was on her knees in prayer, an angel came,<sup>132</sup> and bade her rise. "Eve, arise from thy penance," he commanded. "Behold, thy husband hath left his mortal coil. Arise, and see his spirit go up to his Creator, to appear before Him." And, lo, she beheld a chariot of light, drawn by four shining eagles, and preceded by angels. In this chariot lay the soul of Adam, which the angels were taking to heaven. Arrived there, they burnt incense until the clouds of smoke enveloped the heavens. Then they prayed to God to have mercy upon His image and the work of His holy hands. In her awe and fright, Eve summoned Seth, and she bade him look upon the vision and explain the celestial sights beyond her understanding. She asked, "Who may the two Ethiopians be, who are adding their prayers to thy father's?" Seth told her they were the sun and the moon, turned so black because they could not shine in the face of the Father of light.<sup>133</sup> Scarcely had he spoken, when an angel blew a trumpet, and all the angels cried out with awful voices, "Blessed be the glory of the Lord by His creatures, for He has shown mercy unto Adam, the work of His hands!" A seraph then seized Adam, and carried him off to the river Acheron, washed him three times, and brought him before the presence of God, who sat upon His throne, and, stretching out His hand, lifted Adam up and gave him over to the archangel Michael, with the words, "Raise him to the Paradise of the third heaven, and there thou shalt leave him until the great and fearful day ordained by Me." Michael executed the Divine behest, and all the angels sang a song of praise, extolling God for the pardon He had accorded Adam.

Michael now entreated God to let him attend to the preparation of Adam's body for the grave. Permission being given, Michael repaired to earth, accompanied by all the angels. When they entered the terrestrial Paradise, all the trees blossomed forth, and the perfume wafted thence lulled all men into slumber except Seth alone. Then God



said to Adam, as his body lay on the ground: “If thou hadst kept My commandment, they would not rejoice who brought thee hither. But I tell thee, I will turn the joy of Satan and his consorts into sorrow, and thy sorrow shall be turned into joy. I will restore thee to thy dominion, and thou shalt sit upon the throne of thy seducer, while he shall be damned, with those who hearken unto him.”<sup>134</sup>

Thereupon, at the bidding of God, the three great archangels<sup>135</sup> covered the body of Adam with linen, and poured sweet-smelling oil upon it. With it they interred also the body of Abel, which had lain unburied since Cain had slain him, for all the murderer’s efforts to hide it had been in vain. The corpse again and again sprang forth from the earth, and a voice issued thence, proclaiming, “No creature shall rest in the earth until the first one of all has returned the dust to me of which it was formed.”<sup>136</sup> The angels carried the two bodies to Paradise, Adam’s and Abel’s—the latter had all this time been lying on a stone on which angels had placed it—and they buried them both on the spot whence God had taken the dust wherewith to make Adam.<sup>137</sup>

God called unto the body of Adam, “Adam! Adam!” and it answered, “Lord, here am I!” Then God said: “I told thee once, Dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return. Now I promise thee resurrection. I will awaken thee on the day of judgment, when all the generations of men that spring from thy loins shall arise from the grave.” God then sealed up the grave, that none might do him harm during the six days to elapse until his rib should be restored to him through the death of Eve.<sup>138</sup>

132. Apocalypse of Moses 31–32. This angel is described as “the angel of mankind”, or “the angel of the Lord resembling man in appearance.” The Hebrew very likely read: מלאך אחד מן האישים *i. e.* one of the order of the angels called אישים (=“men”). On this class of angels comp. Maimonides, *Yad ha-Hazakah*, *Yesode ha-Torah*, 2. 7, and

Masseket Azilut (beginning); comp. also Mishle 8, 58. Adam’s words (“pray to God . . . , we do not know when we shall appear before our Creator, whether He will pour out His wrath on us, or He will turn to us in mercy”) remind one of the last words of Rabban Johanan b. Zaccai (Berakot 28b; ARN 25, 79).

133. Apocalypse of Moses 33–36. On the eclipse of the heavenly bodies in God’s proximity, compare with p. 24, and note 105 appertaining to it. Different is the reading in Vita Adae 26, according to which the sun, moon, and stars did not shine for seven days as a sign of mourning for Adam’s death. Comp. Sukkah 29a; note 89.

134. Apocalypse of Moses 37–39; Vita Adae 46–47. The bathing of the soul in the stream of fire is most likely of Greek origin (comp. Fuchs and Wells, *ad loc.*). But it is also found in the later midrashic literature and in the Kabbalah; comp. Elleh Ezkerah (end), where it is said that the souls bathe in the waters of the Shiloah, whereas according to the Kabbalists (Zohar III, 16b, below; Zohar Hadash, Balak, 66a, אַמֶּה רִאֲוִיָּה, *Emek ha-Melek*, 117a), all souls must pass through the river of fire (compare footnote 69 on p. 14, and Index, *s. v.* “Dinur”); the pious are purified in this manner, while the wicked are judged there. Another view is given in Konen 29, which reads: The souls of the pious bathe, before entering paradise, in 248 rivers of balsam—a river for each member of the human body.

135. Apocalypse of Moses 40; comp. also 42. In Vita Adae 48 it is Michael and Uriel who inter Adam (Gabriel probably fell out). The older tradition knows of an hierarchy consisting of three angels (comp. note 13), and hence only three angels occupy themselves with the burial of Moses; compare with p. 831. It may also be noted that according to Zohar III, 88a, three heavenly messengers are present at the death-bed of every man. But Zohar II, 256a, on the other hand, speaks of four. The various texts of the pseudepigraphic writings cited above also differ from one another respecting the numbers and the names of the angels who took charge of Adam’s burial.

136. Apocalypse of Moses 40 and Vita Adae 48; comp. further Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 45, and Book of Adam 1. 79. The rabbinic legend knows of a number of facts about the burial of Abel by his parents (comp. vol. I, p. 113, and note 130 appertaining to it), but does not seem to be acquainted with the details given in the pseudepigraphic works. Jub. 4. 29 states: He (Adam) was the first to be buried in the ground. This alludes to the legend given in the Apocalypse of Moses and kindred sources.

137. Apocalypse of Moses 40. Since according to a well-known Haggadah (see the sources cited in note 16), the dust for the formation of Adam’s body was taken from the place of the altar in Jerusalem, the Apocalypse necessarily locates Adam’s grave on the site of the temple of Jerusalem. To be sure, here and in Vita Adae, *loc. cit.*, the grave is



erroneously placed in paradise (μὲση τοῦ παραδείσου), which must not be taken literally, but should be understood to mean near Jerusalem. This is due to the fact that according to note 109, Jerusalem, or mount Moriah, forms the gate to paradise. This is clearly stated in the Melchizedek fragment 2. 35–36: In the centre of the earth, where Adam was created, there shall be his (Melchizedek's) grave . . . where Adam buried his son Abel. It is also stated in Zohar I, 56b, that Adam chose a place for his grave (in accordance with the rabbinic legend, the cave of Machpelah is here referred to; comp. PRE. 20 and further below) near paradise, where God buried him. All this is also found in Zohar Hadash, Ruth 97b, beginning ר' רחומא ואמר, which gives also the different view that Seth took care of his father's burial. Seder 'Olam (beginning) reads: Enoch buried Adam. Comp. also Yashar, Bereshit 11b: And Seth and his sons, Enoch and Methuselah his son buried him—Adam. In footnote 32 on p. 1123, an attempt is made to prove that rabbinic literature also knows of the legend that the site of the altar is Adam's grave. The prevalent view among the Rabbis, however, is that Adam and Eve were buried in the cave of Machpelah. It is for this reason that Hebron is called Kiryat Arba', "The City of the Four", because in this city four pious men (Adam and the three patriarchs) as well as the four mothers (in other places this designation usually applies to the four wives of the three patriarchs), that is, Eve, Sarah, Rebekah, and Leah, were buried. Comp. BR 58. 4 and 8 (it is stated here that God had to roll up Adam's corpse, since even after the fall his height reached a hundred cubits; comp. also BR 19.8 and Tan. B. I, 13); 'Erubin 53a; Sotah 13a; Baba Batra 58a; PRE 20 and 36; Jerome on Gen. 23. 2 (compare also with p. 234). In the Christian legend of Golgotha Adam's burial-place is identical with the place of the crucifixion of Jesus. This is a Christian adaptation of the Jewish legend, according to which Adam was created in the centre of the earth, and was buried in the same place, *i. e.*, in the site of the altar at Jerusalem. Instead of the site of the altar, the Christian legend introduced the place of the crucifixion of Jesus (which is the Christian altar). Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 26–30 (some of his remarks are to be corrected in accordance with the material given here); Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 45–46. It should also be observed that in rabbinic sources (comp. the reference given in footnote 32 on p. 1123), where mention is made of the corpse found near the site of the altar, the word גלגולת, "Golgotha", *i. e.*, "skull", is used which appears again in Golgotha, the place of the crucifixion of Jesus. Finally, some other reasons may be given why Apocalypse of Moses and Vita Adae cannot be said to regard paradise as Adam's burial-place. According to Apocalypse 37, paradise is located in the third heaven, where Adam's soul but not his body could be placed. It is further said that God sealed Adam's

grave, so that nobody could approach his remains. This is only intelligible if Adam was buried outside of paradise, a place accessible to men and beasts. If his grave were in paradise, there would be no necessity to protect it.

138. Apocalypse of Moses 41–45. The statement that Adam died six days before Eve is related to the view (comp. note 22) that Adam's body has been in existence since the first day of creation, whereas Eve was not created out of his rib until Friday; comp. the sources cited in note 97. Adam was not only interred by the angels with great pomp and honor, but God also expressly promised him resurrection. In this presentation it is presupposed that Adam was entirely or partly forgiven because of his repentance (compare with text on pp. 86–87). These views are shared by the rabbinic sources cited in notes 106 and 142. Now and again we meet in rabbinic literature with an unfavorable view about Adam. It is said that he was driven out of paradise forever, and will be excluded from it even in the world to come. Comp. BR 21. 8 and 8, where Tannaim and Amoraim differ with respect to Adam's fate in the world to come. The most prevalent view, however, is favorable to Adam. Comp., in addition to the sources cited in notes 106 and 142, the association of Adam and Eve with the three patriarchs and their wives alluded to in the preceding note. The unfavorable view about Adam is most likely to be ascribed to the opposition to the exaggerated glorification of Adam by the Jewish gnostic circles, as reflected *e. g.* in the Clementine writings. It is worthy of note that Adam's merits are hardly ever alluded to in the liturgy (there seems to be but one exception, that of a later Selihah סליחות מנהג תימן 43a). Comp. Ha-Zofeh, VI, 325.

## THE DEATH OF EVE

The interval between Adam's death and her own Eve spent in weeping. She was distressed in particular that she knew not what had become of Adam's body, for none except Seth had been awake while the angel interred it. When the hour of her death drew nigh, Eve supplicated to be buried in the selfsame spot in which the remains of her husband rested. She prayed to God: "Lord of all powers! Remove not Thy maid-servant from the body of Adam, from which Thou didst take me, from whose limbs Thou didst form me. Permit me, who am an unworthy and



sinning woman, to enter into his habitation. As we were together in Paradise, neither separated from the other; as together we were tempted to transgress Thy law, neither separated from the other, so, O Lord, separate us not now." To the end of her prayer she added the petition, raising her eyes heavenward, "Lord of the world! Receive my spirit!" and she gave up her soul to God.

The archangel Michael came and taught Seth how to prepare Eve for burial, and three angels descended and interred her body in the grave with Adam and Abel. Then Michael spoke to Seth, "Thus shalt thou bury all men that die until the resurrection day." And again, having given him this command, he spoke: "Longer than six days ye shall not mourn."<sup>139</sup> The repose of the seventh day is the token of the resurrection in the latter day, for on the seventh day the Lord rested from all the work which He had created and made."<sup>140</sup>

Though death was brought into the world through Adam, yet he cannot be held responsible for the death of men. Once on a time he said to God: "I am not concerned about the death of the wicked, but I should not like the pious to reproach me and lay the blame for their death upon me. I pray Thee, make no mention of my guilt." And God promised to fulfil his wish. Therefore, when a man is about to die, God appears to him, and bids him set down in writing all he has done during his life, for, He tells him, "Thou art dying by reason of thy evil deeds." The record finished, God orders him to seal it with his seal. This is the writing God will bring out on the judgment day, and to each will be made known his deeds.<sup>141</sup> As soon as life is extinct in a man, he is presented to Adam, whom he accuses of having caused his death. But Adam repudiates the charge: "I committed but one trespass. Is there any among you, and be he the most pious, who has not been guilty of more than one?"<sup>142</sup>

139. Apocalypse of Moses 42–43; Vita Adae 50–51. According to Jewish law, mourning is to last for one week (Mo'ed Katan 3. 5, and other passages); but in reality only six full days are observed; comp. Pesahim 4a, and the parallel passages cited on the margin concerning the rule "A fraction of a day counts as a whole day." A reminiscence of a three days' mourning is still to be found in Vita Adae 51 (the Hebrew text read: **וַיְהִי בַיּוֹם הָרִבְעִי לְאֵבֶלֶם**, *i. e.*, after the lapse of three days), and also elsewhere; comp. Ecclu. 38. 17, and Ginzberg in *Nöldeke-Festschrift*, 625, as well as Yerushalmi Mo'ed Katan 3, 82b. Comp. the following note (end).

140. Apocalypse of Moses 43; Vita Adae 51. According to Ya-shar Bereshit 11b, mourning for the dead was first introduced upon the death of Adam, whereas ER 16, 81, makes the peculiar statement that the day of Adam's death was celebrated by his descendants as a festival, that is, they rejoiced that man is mortal, for otherwise he would not do the will of his heavenly Father.—The symbolic description of the world to come as the "great Sabbath", or as the "day of the Lord", is of frequent occurrence in Jewish, as well as in old Christian, literature, in which it is also brought into relation with the millennium; since the "day of the Lord is a thousand years" (comp. notes 28 and 72), hence His Sabbath is the seventh thousand. Comp. Tamid (end; the passage concerning the daily song does not originally belong to the Mishnah; comp. Ginzberg, *Tamid, the Oldest Treatise*, 283); Rosh ha-Shanah 31a; ARN 1, 5; Tehillim 92, 402–403 and 405; PRE 18; Mekilta Shabbeta 1, 103b; Mekilta RS, 160 (it is stated in the Mekiltas that the Sabbath offers a foretaste of the life in the world to come; comp. Berakot 57b); ER 2, 6–7; Sanhedrin 97a; 'Abodah Zarah 9a; Sifra 26. 6; 4 Ezra 8. 30; Barnabas 15. 4; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 6. 16; Clementine *Homilies*, 18. 9; Victorinus, *De Fabrica Mundi*; Hippolytus, Dan. 4. According to 2 Enoch 33, the millennium will only take place after the completion of seven thousand years. This is probably based on some learned interpretation of Gen. 2. 2, which considered the seventh day as one of the days of creation; comp. note 102. According to Alphabet R. Akiba 19, the Sabbath of the Lord will take place 6093 years after creation. Bousset, *Religion*, 341, understands Apocalypse of Moses, *loc. cit.*, to say that the soul departs from the body after seven or three days (comp. 4 Ezra 7. 101, and the rabbinic sources cited in note 20). It is for this reason that mourning must not last longer than this period.

141. Tan. B. I, 21, and IV, 124. Comp. also the kabbalistic sources referred to at the beginning of the following note. In rabbinic literature frequent mention is made of the book which contains the record of the deeds of men, as well as the witnesses who appear for or against man in the heavenly court. Comp. Abot 2. 1; Sifre D., 307; Ta'anit 11a; PR 8, 29a. See also the sources cited in note 20.



142. Tan. B. I, 21, and IV, 124; Zohar I, 54b, 81a, 65b, and 127a; Zohar Hadash, Balak, beginning אָמֵר 'ר' אַבְרָהָם, 66a; 'Emek ha-Melek 117a. Compare also the legend given in text on p. 68, which, in addition to the sources cited in the note appertaining thereto, is likewise known to *Abkat Rokel* II, 1. Closely related to our legend, especially in its kabbalistic form, is the one found in both versions of the Testament of Abraham (13, 11 respectively), concerning Abel, before whom every soul must appear to be judged. Judgment takes place after Enoch, the heavenly scribe (this agrees with most of the pseudepigraphic sources, whereas in rabbinic writings Elijah is the scribe, or secretary; compare footnote 35 on p. 996) fetches, out of the many books entrusted to the Cherubim, the one relating to the soul in question. By means of this book he establishes the record of the soul during its life-time. The rabbinic form of this legend, at the same time, expresses the view prevalent among the Rabbis that "no death occurs without sin". Adam is not responsible for any other death except his own. Every man could live forever, if he should lead a sinless life. Comp. Shabbat 55a–56b; Arakin 17a; Tehillim 92, 412; Tan. B. IV, 60, and the parallels cited by Buber; Justin Martyr (he gives this as the view prevalent among the Jews), *Dialogue*, 95. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 45–47, and Israël Lévi, *Le Péché Originel*. The legend makes use of this theory, and accordingly maintains that there are a number of men who (because they did not sin) have not tasted death, but entered paradise while yet alive. Comp. note 67. The popularity of this view is proved by the fact that *Recognitiones*, 1. 52, also speaks of those that entered paradise because they were absolutely without guilt. It is true that rabbinic literature knows also of the opposite view (particularly represented by 4 Ezra and the Apocalypse of Baruch), according to which there is "hereditary death", but no "hereditary sin", so that death is absolutely conceived as a penalty imposed on Adam, which must be suffered also by the innocent. Comp. Sifre D., 339; BR 21. 1; ER 5, 24; Baba Batra 17a. See also Tan. B. I, 17 and as well as text on p. 473. It should be mentioned that in the Prayer of Manasseh 7, the three patriarchs are designated as mortals who never sinned. This is, however, denied in 'Arakin, *loc. cit.* A third view on the origin of death is that man was created mortal. Had it not been for the fall, however, death would not have been so terrible and painful, but a joyful incident in man's career. Comp. EZ 3, 175, where this view is clearly expressed, and further BR 21. 3 (see the parallels cited by Theodor), where the expression "man was destined to die" is to be taken in this sense. Wisdom 1. 13 and 2. 23 appears to express opposition to the theory that man is mortal by his very nature. 2 ARN 34, 74, seems to be of the view that the fall of man caused an early death; that is, even if Adam had not sinned, man would not have been immortal, but he would have lived a much longer period.

Similar views are found in medieval philosophical writings and biblical commentaries; comp. Nahmanides on Gen. 2. 17, and Bekor Shor on Gen. 3. 23. Quite singular is the view expressed in BR 9. 5 and Baba Batra 75a, which reads: Adam was not deserving of death for his sin, but God, who had foreseen that there would arise men like Nebuchadnezzar and Hiram claiming to be gods (comp. Index, *s. v.* "Deification"), decreed death on the entire human race. According to this idea, it is not the descendants of Adam who have to atone by death for his sin, but, on the contrary, it was he who died on their account. In view of the favorable opinion of Adam expressed in these and in other passages (comp. notes 106 and 138), it is not surprising that the legend accords a special place of honor to Adam in Messianic times. In allusion to Micah 5. 4, it is asserted in the old rabbinic literature that when the Messiah is about to start his work of salvation, he will be furnished with a council of fourteen members to assist him. One half of these members will have the title of "shepherds", and the other half will be "princes". The shepherds will be David, as president, and Adam, Seth, Methuselah, on his right, and Abraham, Jacob, and Moses, on his left. The princes are: the Messiah as the head, and Samuel, Saul, Jesse, Elijah, Amos, Zephaniah, and Hezekiah (this is more probable than Zedekiah, as given in some texts). Comp. Sukkah 52b; PRK (Grünhut's edition, 78 and 82; Schönblum's edition, 37b and 38; BHM VI, 150; Shir 8. 10; Sa'adya Gaon, *Emunot we-De'ot*, 7, 150; BaR 15 (beginning). In the last passage it is said: Opinions differ as to the identity of the "seven shepherds" or the "eight princes" who are Messiahs. Nowhere else in rabbinic literature are these princes called Messiahs. Comp., however, Jerome on Micah, *loc. cit.*, who refers to Symmachus, who renders נָסִיכִי ("princes") by χριστοὶ ("Messiahs"). Jerome, *loc. cit.*, appears to have known the rabbinic interpretation to which he gives a Christological coloring: the seven shepherds are the patriarchs and prophets, whereas the eight princes represent the great men of the New Covenant; comp. Matthew 19. 28; Luke 22. 30; I Cor. 6. 2; Rev. 20. 4; Sibyl. 3. 781–782; 12 Testaments, Benjamin 10. 7; ShR 30. 18. Besides the seven shepherds and eight princes of the Messianic times, the Talmud (Sukkah, *loc. cit.*) knows of four distinguished personages as Messiahs. These are: Messiah the son of David; Messiah the son of Joseph; Elijah; the priest of justice (Melchizedek?). Comp. also BaR, *loc. cit.*, where, instead of the last, a Messiah appears who is a descendant of Manasseh. A fuller discussion of this point is to be found in Ginzberg's *Unbekannte Sekte*, 334–352. In Kimhi on Micah, *loc. cit.*, Enoch is substituted for Adam as one of the seven shepherds. This is rather a later correction, as the older rabbinic literature does not include Enoch among the saints; compare footnote 59 on p. 123.



### III

## THE TEN GENERATIONS

### THE BIRTH OF CAIN

There were ten generations from Adam to Noah, to show how long-suffering is the Lord, for all the generations provoked Him unto wrath, until He brought the deluge upon them.<sup>1</sup> By reason of their impiousness God changed His plan of calling one thousand generations into being between the creation of the world and the revelation of the law at Mount Sinai; nine hundred and seventy-four He suppressed before the flood.<sup>2</sup>

Wickedness came into the world with the first being born of woman, Cain, the oldest son of Adam. When God bestowed Paradise upon the first pair of mankind, He warned them particularly against carnal intercourse with each other. But after the fall of Eve, Satan, in the guise of the serpent, approached her, and the fruit of their union was Cain, the ancestor of all the impious generations that were rebellious toward God, and rose up against Him. Cain's descent from Satan, who is the angel Samael, was revealed in his seraphic appearance. At his birth, the exclamation was wrung from Eve, "I have gotten a man through an angel of the Lord."<sup>3</sup>

Adam was not in the company of Eve during the time of her pregnancy with Cain. After she had succumbed a second time to the temptations

of Satan, and permitted herself to be interrupted in her penance,<sup>4</sup> she left her husband and journeyed westward, because she feared her presence might continue to bring him misery. Adam remained in the east. When the days of Eve to be delivered were fulfilled, and she began to feel the pangs of travailing, she prayed to God for help. But He hearkened not unto her supplications. "Who will carry the report to my lord Adam?" she asked herself. "Ye luminaries in the sky, I beg you, tell it to my master Adam when ye return to the east!" In that selfsame hour, Adam cried out: "The lamentation of Eve has pierced to my ear! Mayhap the serpent has again assaulted her," and he hastened to his wife. Finding her in grievous pain, he besought God in her behalf, and twelve angels appeared, together with two heavenly powers.<sup>5</sup> All these took up their post to right of her and to left of her, while Michael, also standing on her right side, passed his hand over her, from her face downward to her breast, and said to her, "Be thou blessed, Eve, for the sake of Adam. Because of his solicitations and his prayers I was sent to grant thee our assistance. Make ready to give birth to thy child!" Immediately her son was born, a radiant figure.<sup>6</sup> A little while and the babe stood upon his feet, ran off, and returned holding in his hands a stalk of straw, which he gave to his



mother. For this reason he was named Cain, the Hebrew word for stalk of straw.

Now Adam took Eve and the boy to his home in the east. God sent him various kinds of seeds by the hand of the angel Michael, and he was taught how to cultivate the ground and make it yield produce and fruits, to sustain himself and his family and his posterity.<sup>7</sup>

After a while, Eve bore her second son, whom she named Hebel, because, she said, he was born but to die.

---

1. Abot 5, 22; ARN 32, 92 (a view is cited here, according to which some among them were God-fearing, and it was they who prevented the flood from coming for some time), and the second version 34, 92. The tenth belongs to God; Noah was the tenth after Adam, and Abraham the tenth after Noah; Tan. B. V, 27. So also Philo, *De Congressu Quaerendae Eruditionis Causa*, 17. That these sinful generations nevertheless lived longer than others has its good reasons: their longevity enabled them to study the movement of the heavenly bodies, so that they bequeathed their astronomical knowledge to later generations (BR. 26. 5; compare with p. 115. below, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 3). They likewise received, during their long and care-free life, their reward for their good deeds which was due to them, so that after their death their punishment was severe; BR 16. 5. Furthermore, God wished to test these generations; He therefore granted them long life in order to give them the opportunity to show kindness to one another. But they did not stand the test. The sons were ready to care for their parents, but not for their grand-parents, and Noah was the only one who was willing to care for his grandfather and all his ancestors; ER 16, 80. God spoke to no one in this generation until Noah came (BR 34.5 and Koheleth 7. 19), just as Abraham was the first to whom God spoke during the ten generations from Noah to him; BR 39, 4; Koheleth *loc. cit.* This seems to be directed against the view prevalent in pseudepigraphic writings that Seth, Enoch, Shem, and other patriarchs were the bearers of God's revelations; comp. Index under these names; comp. also Luria's note 4 on PRE. 22.

2. BR 28 4; Hagigah 13b; ARN 31, 93; Shabbat 88b; Koheleth 1. 15 and 4. 3; Tan. Lek 11 and Yitro 9; Tehillim 90, 392, and 105, 449; Aggadat Bereshit 49, 100; Zebahim 116a; ER 2, 9; 6, 33; 13, 61 and 68; 26, 130; Targum (from a manuscript quoted by Levy, *Chaldäisches Wörterbuch*, I, 186) on Job 22. 16. The version found in some of the sources just cited, according to which the Torah was

written down 974 generations prior to the creation of the world, is a comparatively recent presentation of this Haggadah, which, in its original form, has nothing to do with the doctrine of the preexistence of the Torah. See footnote 5 on p. 1.

3. PRE 21 (on the text comp. Luria, *ad loc.*, and MHG I, 88–89, and 105); Shabbat 146a (top; the filth with which the serpent infected Eve clung to the rest of humanity, but was removed from Israel as soon as they received the Torah); Yebamot 103b; 'Abodah Zarah 22b; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 4. 1 and 5. 3; BR 19, end (on the text comp. Theodor, *ad loc.*, and Recanate Gen. 3. 13); Zohar I, 31a and 54b; III, 117a (the heavenly origin of Cain and Abel as stated here agrees with the heresies of Archonites in Epiphanius, *Haer.*, 40.5); Hippolytus, *Haer.*, 5. 21; Irenaeus, I, 30. 7; Epiphanius, *loc. cit.* Comp. further 1 John 3. 12; Augustine, *In Epistolam Joan. ad Parthos*, 5. 3, and *Quaestiones ex Novo Test.*, III, 2282 (Migne's edition). Tertullian, *De Patientia*, 5, has no bearing on the subject discussed here, and the statement in Ginzberg's *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 59, is to be corrected accordingly. This passage of Tertullian is to be translated: Impatience, conceived of the devil's seed, produced, in the fecundity of malice, anger as her son. Comp., however, Tertullian, *Haer.*, 2, concerning Abel, who was born of an ignoble spirit. But independent of the legend concerning Eve's sexual intercourse with the serpent is the statement that the original sin consisted in this: that the serpent had awakened in her a sexual desire. Comp. Apocalypse of Abraham 23; Philo, *De M. Opif.*, 56; Slavonic Apocalypse of Baruch, 97; WR 14. 5; *Protevang. of James* 13. Compare with p. 93, and the following note., as well as footnote 131 on p. 94. The view that serpents still have the desire to have intercourse with women, just as the first serpent felt violent passion for Eve (compare with note on p. 71), is found not only in Shabbat 110a, but also in 4 Macc. 18, where it is stated that the serpent not only sullied the maidenhood of Eve but also that of other women. The assertion of the Gnostics mentioned by Epiphanius in *Haer.*, 26. 5 (*idipsum—lignum vitae—de menstruis mulierum profluviis interpretatur*) is found among the Kabbalists, with this difference that the latter connect it with the tree of knowledge (is the reading τῆς ζωῆς in Epiphanius a scribal error for τοῦ γινώσκειν?). Compare Recanati on Gen. 3. 6. and footnote 85 on p. 79. The latter Kabbalah (comp. the reference in Yalkut Reubeni on Gen. 4. 1) allegorizes the legend of Cain, "the son of Satan"; he was Satan's spiritual son, since Eve followed his false doctrine. It should also be noted that among the various etymologies of the word Eve (חוה) there is one, according to which it means "serpent": she was Adam's serpent; see BR 21. 11 and 22. 2; footnote 48 on p. 68.

4. Vita Adae 18. Compare the more detailed description of these events as given on p. 87. The Vita, as well



as its numerous Christian versions (comp. Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 41; Book of Adam and Eve 73. 90–91), and the Church Fathers (Jerome, *Adv. Jovinianum*, 1. 16; Slavonic Palaea, and others; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 57) presuppose that not only the birth of the children of Adam and Eve took place after the expulsion from paradise, but that the first “human pair” lived in paradise without sexual intercourse. The older Haggadah, as found in Jub. 4. 1 (Cain was born when Adam was seventy, and Abel seven years later, while the expulsion of Adam from paradise took place after he had spent his first seven years there) and some utterances of the Midrash (BR 22. 1 and 2; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 57–58, as well as Zohar I, 60b–61a, on the pure, spiritual married life which Adam might have enjoyed in paradise, and the immortal children that he might have begotten there if he had not sinned) practically make the same assertion. Later, however, in opposition to the Christian view which considers married life as a consequence of the original sin (BR, *loc. cit.*, even asserts that the animal world, following Adam’s example, copulated before the fall), and prefers celibacy to marriage, the prevalent Jewish view was that the married life of Adam and Eve preceded their fall; BR 18. 6; Sanhedrin 38b; PRE 11 (before the fall, but also before their arrival in paradise); ARN 1, 5 (where נדוּוּגָה, however, need not necessarily imply married state) and 6. Compare with p. 71, and Theodor on BR, *loc. cit.*, as well as Apocalypse of Baruch 56. 6. The legend prevalent in the Haggadah, according to which Cain and Abel and their twin-sisters were born on the day on which their parents had been created (BR 22. 2; Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*; PRE 11; ARN 1, 6), has no connection with the question whether their birth took place before or after the fall, since according to the Haggadah, the stay in paradise lasted only a few hours; compare with p. 77.

5. Vita Adae 19–21 (on the “*virtutes*”, powers, virtues, comp. Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, I, 179), and its various Christian versions. Midrash Aggada Gen. 4. 1, on the contrary, emphasizes, the fact that Cain’s birth was without pain. This accords with the view that his birth took place before the fall; comp. the preceding note.

6. Vita Adae 21, according to which Adiaphotus in Apocalypse of Moses 1 should be changed to Diaphotus, “full of light”. On Cain’s luminous countenance comp. PRE 21 (Eve saw that his countenance was heavenly) and Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 4. 1. The similarity of Cain (קַיִן) to Kewan (כִּיָּו) “Saturn” may have given rise to this legend about the shining countenance, particularly if one considers, on the one hand, the relationship between Cain and Samael (=Satan; compare with p. 103), and, on the other hand, the fact that Saturn represents the star of evil which brings misfortune to Israel. Comp. PR 20, 96a, and 203a, as well as Baraita de-Mazzalot 27a.

7. Vita Adae 21–22. The name of Cain is also explained as כַּאִין, “as nought” (MHG I, 105 very likely dependent on PRE), as קַנָּא, “the wrathful one” (Wisdom 10.3), and as קַנָּה “who sought to seize everything” (Philo, *Cain* 20). Comp. also the preceding note, as well as notes 6, 8, 20, 41, 53. On the view that Cain was able to run about immediately after his birth, see text on p. 58, which has a similar statement with reference to Adam, and see text on p. 141, the legend about the ante-diluvian generations, as well as the legend about Moses in text on p. 476, and text on p. 829.

## FRATRICIDE

The slaying of Abel by Cain did not come as a wholly unexpected event to his parents. In a dream Eve had seen the blood of Abel flow into the mouth of Cain, who drank it with avidity, though his brother entreated him not to take all. When she told her dream to Adam, he said, lamenting, “O that this may not portend the death of Abel at the hand of Cain!” He separated the two lads, assigning to each an abode of his own, and to each he taught a different occupation. Cain became a tiller of the ground, and Abel a keeper of sheep. It was all in vain. In spite of these precautions, Cain slew his brother.<sup>9</sup>

His hostility toward Abel had more than one reason. It began when God had respect unto the offering of Abel, and accepted it by sending heavenly fire down to consume it, while the offering of Cain was rejected.<sup>10</sup> They brought their sacrifices on the fourteenth day of Nisan, at the instance of their father, who had spoken thus to his sons: “This is the day on which, in times to come, Israel will offer sacrifices. Therefore, do ye, too, bring sacrifices to your Creator on this day, that He may take pleasure in you.” The place of offering which they chose was the spot whereon the altar of the Temple at Jerusalem stood later.<sup>11</sup> Abel selected the best of his flocks for his sacrifice, but Cain ate his meal first, and after he had



satisfied his appetite, he offered unto God what was left over, a few grains of flax seed. As though his offense had not been great enough in offering unto God fruit of the ground which had been cursed by God!<sup>12</sup> What wonder that his sacrifice was not received with favor! Besides, a chastisement was inflicted upon him. His face turned black as smoke.<sup>13</sup> Nevertheless, his disposition underwent no change, even when God spoke to him thus: "If thou wilt amend thy ways, thy guilt will be forgiven thee; if not, thou wilt be delivered into the power of the evil inclination. It coucheth at the door of thy heart, yet it depends upon thee whether thou shalt be master over it, or it shall be master over thee."<sup>14</sup>

Cain thought he had been wronged, and a dispute followed between him and Abel. "I believed," he said, "that the world was created through goodness,<sup>15</sup> but I see that good deeds bear no fruit. God rules the world with arbitrary power, else why had He respect unto thy offering, and not unto mine also?" Abel opposed him; he maintained that God rewards good deeds, without having respect unto persons. If his sacrifice had been accepted graciously by God, and Cain's not, it was because his deeds were good, and his brother's wicked.<sup>16</sup>

But this was not the only cause of Cain's hatred toward Abel. Partly love for a woman brought about the crime. To ensure the propagation of the human race, a girl, destined to be his wife, was born together with each of the sons of Adam. Abel's twin sister was of exquisite beauty, and Cain desired her.<sup>17</sup> Therefore he was constantly brooding over ways and means of ridding himself of his brother.

The opportunity presented itself ere long. One day a sheep belonging to Abel tramped over a field that had been planted by Cain. In a rage, the latter called out, "What right hast thou to live upon my land and let thy sheep pasture yonder?" Abel retorted: "What right hast thou to use

the products of my sheep, to make garments for thyself from their wool? If thou wilt take off the wool of my sheep wherein thou art arrayed, and wilt pay me for the flesh of the flocks which thou hast eaten, then I will quit thy land as thou desirest, and fly into the air, if I can do it." Cain thereupon said, "And if I were to kill thee, who is there to demand thy blood of me?" Abel replied: "God, who brought us into the world, will avenge me. He will require my blood at thine hand, if thou shouldst slay me. God is the Judge, who will visit their wicked deeds upon the wicked, and their evil deeds upon the evil. Shouldst thou slay me, God will know thy secret, and He will deal out punishment unto thee."

These words but added to the anger of Cain, and he threw himself upon his brother.<sup>18</sup> Abel was stronger than he, and he would have got the worst of it, but at the last moment he begged for mercy, and the gentle Abel released his hold upon him. Scarcely did he feel himself free, when he turned against Abel once more, and slew him. So true is the saying, "Do the evil no good, lest evil fall upon thee."<sup>19</sup>

---

8. Yashar Bereshit 9a; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 2. 1, which reads: Abel which signifies sorrow, a midrashic explanation which is based on the similarity of sound of **הבל** and **אבל**, "sorrow." This is already found in Philo, *De Migr. Abrah.*, 13. Amilabes in Apocalypse of Moses 1, as a name for Abel, is very likely a corruption of **המחבל** "the destroyed one". According to some, Cain and Abel were twin brothers; BR 22. 2 and 3 (comp. Theodor on 205, 5); PRE 21.

9. Vita Adae 22; Apocalypse of Moses 2; comp. Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 42.

10. Theodotion on Gen. 4. 4; Aggadat Shir 6. 40 (this heavenly fire came down again at the time of Noah's sacrifice when he left the ark; at the time of the consecration of the Tabernacle when it consumed Nadab and Abihu; at Manoh's sacrifice; at Solomon's consecration of the Temple; at Elijah's sacrifice on mount Carmel. It will come down again when the temple will be erected in Messianic times. Comp. Index, s. v. "Fire, Heavenly"); MHG I, 107; Yashar Bereshit, 9a; Rashi and Lekah on Gen. 4. 4 (most likely based on an old source; Aphraates, 63; Jerome on Gen.,



*loc. cit.*; Ephraim, I, 143 D; Cyril of Alexandria, *Glaphura.*, 1. 3. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 62–63; Theodor on BR 22. 6 (p. 209, 4), and note 13. Philo, on Gen. 1, 63, reads: Cain noticed from the sad mood that came upon him at the time of the sacrifice, instead of the expected sense of joy, that “God did not accept his sacrifice.” On the religious importance of sacrifice in general, comp. *Haserot Witerot* in Batte Midrashot I, 33–34; *Kad ha-Kemah*, Sukkah, 16b.

11. PRE 21 (on the text comp. MHG I, 106–107); Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 4. 3; differently in BR 22. 4, where two views concerning the day of the sacrifice are given; according to one it was on Pentecost, while according to the other, Hanukkah. It may, however, be noted that both views are based on the supposition that Abel did not live longer than fifty days, and the difference of opinion is due to the controversy whether the world (*i. e.*, Adam and his two sons; compare footnote on p. 81, and note 4) had been created in the month of Tishri or Nisan. According to Tan. Bereshit 9, Cain and Abel were forty years old at the time they brought their sacrifice; comp. also Preuschen, *Adam-schriften*, 33 (Cain was thirty, and Abel forty), and Book of Adam 77 (end), where the age of the brothers is given as fifteen and twelve, respectively. See also ps.–Philo, 1 (end): Cain was fifteen years old when he did these things. By these things are meant his marriage and becoming a father. According to Zohar Hadash, 25a, on Gen. 4. 2, they offered their sacrifice on New Year. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.* 64 and 71.

12. BR 22. 5; PRE 21 (hence the prohibition against using flax and wool together: the sacrifice of the wicked Cain should not be brought in contact with that of the pious Abel; comp. Zohar III, 87a); Tan. Bereshit 9; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 4. 3; Yashar Bereshit, 9a; Philo, *Sacrific. Abel.*, 13 (Cain did not offer the first-born, nor did he do it in proper time) and 20; Ambrose, *De Cain*, 2. 10; Ephraim, II, 313 E. Comp. further Philo, *Confus. Ling.*, 25; Josephus, *Antiqui* I, 2. 1; *Hadar*, Gen. 4. 3 and 4, as well as *Imre No'am*, *ad loc.*, and Midrash Aggada Gen. 4. 2. The Haggadah endeavors to prove that Cain, through selfishness and lack of fear of God, had incurred God's displeasure. Zohar Hadash 24a, on Gen. 4. 2, reads: Cain offered his sacrifice haughtily, Abel with humility; but the real sacrifice to God is with a contrite spirit; Ps. 51. 19. Abel's tragic end is to be ascribed to the following circumstance. When he brought his sacrifice he looked too much at the appearance of God, and therefore Moses, profiting by this lesson, hid his face (Exod. 3. 6), when God appeared to him; Recanate on Gen. 4. God prefers the persecuted; hence Abel having been persecuted by Cain, was favored by God, and his sacrifice was graciously accepted; WR 27. 5; Koheleth 3. 15; Tan. B. III, 91; Tan. Emor 9; PK 9, 76a. Here it is presupposed that Cain had been hostile to his brother even

prior to the sacrifice incident, as is described in detail in the Book of Adam 76; comp. note 17. On the basis of the Septuagint on Gen. 4. 7 (“hast thou not sinned if thou has brought it rightly, but not rightly divided it?”), Philo asserts that Cain on account of his greed only brought part of his gift to the altar, whereas Abel sacrificed the whole gift without taking any of it home; *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1, 62. The rabbinic sources (BR 22. 5; Yerushalmi Megillah 1, 72b; Zebahim 116a; WR 9. 6; BaR 13.2; Shir 4. 16; PR 5, 16b) cite two views on the question whether Abel brought a whole offering or a peace-offering (of this kind of sacrifice the one who brings it consumes the greater part).

13. BR 22. 6 (this statement is based on יאפלר=“and it became dark”); comp. Preuschen, *Adambücher*, 34; ps.–Tertullian, Gen. 184, and Emerson, *Legends of Cain*, 848, concerning the smoke which almost suffocated Cain. The rising of the smoke as a sign of acceptance, and its descending as a sign of rejection, alluded to in the old-English legend, quoted by Emerson, is also found in Jewish sources; comp. Tan. Tezawweh 15; Midrash Shir 28b (below). The blackening of the face is perhaps to be taken as a contrast to its original heavenly splendor; comp. also Peshitta, *ad loc.*, and note 6.

14. R 22. 6; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 4. 7; MHG I, 107 and 109. On the basis of Gen. 4. 7, the Rabbis state that the evil inclination is born with man (according to others, at the time of conception), whereas the good inclination does not arrive until the age of thirteen *i. e.*, when one attains majority; comp. BR 34. 10; Yerushalmi Bera-kot 3, 6d; Sanhedrin 91b; ARN 16, 62–64; Koheleth 4. 13; Tehillim 9, 82; MHG I, 107–109. Philo, *Confus. Ling.*, 22, asserts, on the contrary, that the good inclination comes at the time of man's birth. Compare footnote on p. 9.

15. On this point compare with pp. 1 and 2.

16. Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 4. 8, and this is very likely the source of Lekah and Midrash Aggada, *ad loc.* Philo, *De Migrat. Abrah.*, 13, as well as *Quod Deterius Potiori Insidiari Soleat* 1, 10–11, and 14, also speaks of Cain's challenging Abel to a dispute, to convince him, by mere force, using all plausible and possible sophisms. It may be noted that Philo, like the Targumim, finds this challenge to a dispute in the worlds of Gen. 4. 8: “Let us go into the field” (Septuagint, the Samaritan, the Targumim, the Peshitta, and others read or add here: נצא השדה). Like the Targumim, Philo, too (in his second book 10 cited above), takes the subject of the dispute to have been whether everything is to be ascribed to God (Abel's view), or to man (as maintained by Cain).

17. BR 22. 7; PRE 21; Ephiphanus, *Haer.*, 40. 5; Irenaeus, *Haer.*, 1, 6; Theodoretus, *Haer.*, 1, 11; Schatzhöhle, 34; Clementine, *Homilies*, 3. 25 (hence he was called Cain, because he was jealous of his brother on account of his wife;



comp. *ibid.*, 26 and 42, concerning the meaning of the name Abel; see further note 7); Book of Adam 76, and comp. Malan, note 44, on the later statements of Christian and Mohammedan writers concerning the struggle of the brothers on account of their sister. See also Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 68–70, as well as Rönsch, *Buch der Jubiläen*, 373–374. According to another version in BR, *loc. cit.*, it was the first Eve about whom the brothers could not agree; but it is not clear what is meant by “the first Eve”; comp. Theodor, *ad loc.*, and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.* 60–61. This passage is somehow related to the gnostic doctrine concerning the first mother Sophia-Prunicus (comp. Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 60, *seq.*, and 78, *seq.* It may likewise be noted here that Jaldabaot=יהוה “the progenitor of shame”). Along with the view that Abel had two twin-sisters, there is also another which maintains that each of them had one twin-sister only; a third view states that Cain, but not Abel, had a twin-sister. Comp. BR 22. 2 and 61. 4; PRE, *loc. cit.*; Yebamot 62a, and Yerushalmi 11, 11d; Sanhedrin 58b, and Yerushalmi 5, 22c, as well as 9, 26d; ARN 1, 6; Sifra 20. 7; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 4. 2 (thus the passage is to be understood that Cain was born with a twin-brother, and Abel with a twin-sister; Abel’s twin-sister became Cain’s wife; comp. PRE, *loc. cit.*); Zohar I, 54b and III, 44b. See further note 42 concerning the names of this daughter of Adam.—That Abel died in the state of unsoiled chastity is emphasized in ps.—*Matthew* 7, which corresponds to the old Haggadah (Jub. 4. 1 and 8, as well as Sifra, *loc. cit.*), which knows only of Cain’s wife. See, however, footnote 172 on p. 36. Some sources (BR 22. 7; Tan. Bereshit 9, and Mishpatim 13; ShR 31. 17; Aggadat Shir 7, 43, and 91–92) ascribe the enmity between the brothers to the circumstance that they divided the possession of the world in such a manner that the older brother took the soil, and the younger all the movable things. This division naturally could not be maintained for any length of time. Comp. on this point Siegfried, *Philo*, 150–151, and Ginzberg’s *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 69. According to a third view cited in BR, *loc. cit.*, the subject of their quarrel was concerning the territory on which the temple would be erected.

18. Yashar Bereshit, 9a (based on old sources; comp. BR 22. 7; Tan. Bereshit 9, and Mishpatim 13; ShR 31. 17; Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 4. 8).

19. BR 22. 8; Tan. Bereshit 9; Aggadat Shir 7, 43, and 91–92. Philo, *De Migr. Abr.*, 13, and *Quod Deterius Potiori Insidiari Soleat*, 11, and 14, as well as one of the versions of Vita Adae (in Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 34–35), reports that Cain knew how to overcome his brother by cunning. See further Ephraim, I, 41. According to a Jewish legend, cited by Jerome, Ezek. 27. 18, Cain killed his brother in Damascus (=sanguinem bibens; Jerome, Is. 17; comp. Philo, *Quis . . . haeres sit*, 11), which is undoubtedly the well-known city in Syria, in the proximity of which

primitive man is supposed to have lived (comp. Amos 1. 5, and Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 160). It is a whimsical idea of John a Lapide (*commentarium in Genesim*) to assume that another Damascus in the neighborhood of Hebron is meant here. Comp. also the Greek legend about the founding of Damascus recorded by Stephanus Byzantinus, *s. v.*, according to which one of the giants, whose name was Askos, was killed by Hermes on the same place where he flayed him (Darmaskus=Δέρμα “Askou”). Abel hid himself for some time, for he feared the wicked Cain. The latter, however, searched for him, and told him what God had said to him (Gen. 4. 6–7), and thereby won his confidence, and believed that Cain abandoned his wicked life; *Hadar*, Gen. 4. 5.

## THE PUNISHMENT OF CAIN

The manner of Abel’s death was the most cruel conceivable. Not knowing what injury was fatal, Cain pelted all parts of his body with stones, until one struck him on the neck and inflicted death.

After committing the murder, Cain resolved to flee, saying, “My parents will demand account of me concerning Abel, for there is no other human being on earth.” This thought had but passed through his mind when God appeared unto him, and addressed him in these words: “Before thy parents thou canst flee, but canst thou go out from My presence, too? ‘Can any hide himself in secret places that I shall not see him?’ Alas for Abel that he showed thee mercy, and refrained from killing thee, when he had thee in his power! Alas that he granted thee the opportunity of slaying him!”

Questioned by God, “Where is Abel thy brother?” Cain answered: “Am I my brother’s keeper? Thou art He who holdest watch over all creatures, and yet Thou demandest account of me! True, I slew him, but Thou didst create the evil inclination in me. Thou guardest all things; why, then, didst Thou permit me to slay him? Thou didst Thyself slay him, for hadst Thou



looked with a favorable countenance toward my offering as toward his, I had had no reason for envying him, and I had not slain him.” But God said, “The voice of thy brother’s blood issuing from his many wounds crieth out against thee,<sup>20</sup> and likewise the blood of all the pious who might have sprung from the loins of Abel.”

Also the soul of Abel denounced the murderer, for she could find rest nowhere. She could neither soar heavenward, nor abide in the grave with her body, for no human soul had done either before.<sup>21</sup> But Cain still refused to confess his guilt. He insisted that he had never seen a man killed, and how was he to suppose that the stones which he threw at Abel would take his life? Then, on account of Cain God cursed the ground, that it might not yield fruit unto him.<sup>22</sup> With a single punishment both Cain and the earth were chastised, the earth because it retained the corpse of Abel, and did not cast it above ground.<sup>23</sup>

In the obduracy of his heart, Cain spake: “O Lord of the world! Are there informers who denounce men before Thee? My parents are the only living human beings, and they know naught of my deed. Thou abidest in the heavens, and how shouldst Thou know what things happen on earth?” God said in reply: “Thou fool! I carry the whole world. I have made it, and I will bear it”—a reply that gave Cain the opportunity of feigning repentance. “Thou bearest the whole world,” he said, “and my sin Thou canst not bear?”<sup>24</sup> Verily, mine iniquity is too great to be borne! Yet, yesterday Thou didst banish my father from Thy presence, to-day Thou dost banish me. In sooth, it will be said, it is Thy way to banish.”<sup>25</sup>

Although this was but dissimulation, and not true repentance, yet God granted Cain pardon, and removed the half of his chastisement from him. Originally, the decree had condemned him to be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth. Now he was no longer to roam about forever, but a

fugitive he was to remain. And so much was hard enough to have to suffer, for the earth quaked under Cain, and all the animals, the wild and the tame, among them the accursed serpent, gathered together and essayed to devour him in order to avenge the innocent blood of Abel. Finally Cain could bear it no longer, and, breaking out in tears, he cried: “Whither shall I go from Thy spirit? Or whither shall I flee from Thy presence?”<sup>26</sup> To protect him from the onslaught of the beasts, God inscribed one letter of His Holy Name upon his forehead,<sup>27</sup> and furthermore He addressed the animals: “Cain’s punishment shall not be like unto the punishment of future murderers. He has shed blood, but there was none to give him instruction. Henceforth, however, he who slays another shall himself be slain.” Then God gave him the dog as a protection against the wild beasts, and to mark him as a sinner, He afflicted him with leprosy.

Cain’s repentance, insincere though it was, bore a good result. When Adam met him, and inquired what doom had been decreed against him, Cain told how his repentance had propitiated God, and Adam exclaimed, “So potent is repentance, and I knew it not!” Thereupon he composed a hymn of praise to God, beginning with the words, “It is a good thing to confess thy sins unto the Lord!”<sup>28</sup>

The crime committed by Cain had baneful consequences, not for himself alone, but for the whole of nature also. Before, the fruits which the earth bore unto him when he tilled the ground had tasted like the fruits of Paradise. Now his labor produced naught but thorns and thistles.<sup>29</sup> The ground changed and deteriorated at the very moment of Abel’s violent end. The trees and the plants in the part of the earth whereon the victim lived refused to yield their fruits, on account of their grief over him, and only at the birth of Seth those that grew in the portion belonging to Abel began to flourish and bear again. But never did



they resume their former powers. While, before, the vine had borne nine hundred and twenty-six different varieties of fruit, it now brought forth but one kind. And so it was with all other species. They will regain their pristine powers only in the world to come.<sup>30</sup>

Nature was modified also by the burial of the corpse of Abel. For a long time it lay there exposed, above ground, because Adam and Eve knew not what to do with it. They sat beside it and wept, while the faithful dog of Abel kept guard that birds and beasts did it no harm. On a sudden, the mourning parents observed how a raven scratched the earth away in one spot, and then hid a dead bird of his own kind in the ground. Adam, following the example of the raven, buried the body of Abel, and the raven was rewarded by God. His young are born with white feathers, wherefore the old birds desert them, not recognizing them as their offspring. They take them for serpents. God feeds them until their plumage turns black, and the parent birds return to them. As an additional reward, God grants their petition when the ravens pray for rain.<sup>31</sup>

---

20. BR 22. 8 (three views are given: 1) with a stone; 2) a cane—a play on the words קִיץ and קִנָּה; compare with p. 103, and notes 6–8; 3) he cut Abel's throat with a sword, having seen that Adam slaughtered one of his sacrifices in this manner); Sanhedrin 37b; Tan. Bereshit 9; PRE 21; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 4. 8; Yashar Bereshit, 9b (with the iron part of the plough-share); Zohar I, 54b (bit him with his teeth to death), and II, 231; Lekah, Gen. 4. 8 (with a club; this is the meaning of אֵלֶּה, and not sword, as Buber, *ad loc.*, takes it); Jub. 4. 31; Book of Adam 79 (he first tried to flog him to death with a stick; comp. Lekah, *loc. cit.*); Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 33. In the last passage, as in BR, *loc. cit.*, is described how Cain discovered what kind of blow would kill his brother; comp. note 43. That Cain did not believe in God's omniscience, and sought to conceal, by denial, the real facts, is remarked by Josephus, Philo, and the Midrashim; comp. notes 6 and 24.

21. BR 22. 9; Mishnah Sanhedrin 4. 5, and Babli 48b; ARN 31, 91; 2 Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 4. 10; Apocalypse of Moses 40 (here it is stated that the earth did not

receive Abel's remains); comp. further Aggadat Shir 7, 43, and 91, which reads: God showed Cain the place, where he had killed Abel, where the blood bubbled (compare with p. 1075), and where nothing grows till this day. In view of this passage and the one of Apocalypse of Moses, *loc. cit.*, one is justified in taking BR, *loc. cit.*, and Sanhedrin 4. 5 to mean that the blood remained clinging to the wood and stones without being absorbed. This, however, is not only against Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 4. 10, but also against the literal meaning of the Bible; comp. ps.—Philo, 16D, and notes 23 and 31.

22. Tan. Bereshit 9; BR 22. 10 (two views are given: 1) the curse consisted in that the earth did not yield to Cain; 2) that the earth lost its former fertility; compare with p. 109); MHG I, 112 (below; it had a different text of Tan., *loc. cit.*); Sifre N., 161.

23. Yashar Bereshit, 9b. The old sources (Mekilta Shirah 9, 42a; Tehillim 22, 189; Ekah 1, 74) speak only of the receiving of the blood and not of the remains; comp. note 21. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 2. 1, and PRE 21 (comp., however, Luria, *ad loc.*) speak of hiding the remains in the ground. Ephraim, I, 41, reads: He hid the remains under the high ears of grain and the earth. By this is very likely meant that the lower part of the body was hidden in the earth and the upper part under the ears.

24. Tan. Bereshit 9; MHG I, 113; *Shitah Hadashah* (Judah); Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 2. 1; Philo, *Quaestiones*, 1, 69. Comp. also BR 22. 11; Tan. B. I, 19; DR 8. 1.

25. BR 22. 11. In this passage, as well as in many other Midrashim (comp. the sources cited in the preceding note) and Targumim (Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 4. 13), מִנְשִׁיחַ is explained "that it could be forgiven", in agreement with Septuagint, Philo (*Quod Deterius Potiori Insidiari Soleat*, 41), Peshitta, and Vulgate. Comp. further Sanhedrin 101a and PRE 21; Tan. B. (introduction), 157. In the last passage the interpretation favored by modern exegetes is also given: "Indeed, very grievous is my sin, that I can hardly bear it."

26. Tan. B. (introduction), 157, and I, 19; Tan. Bereshit 9; BR 22. 12–13. On Cain's repentance, which was not sincere, and therefore his sin not entirely forgiven, see further PK 25, 160a–160b; PR 47, 188b (repentance removes only half of the punishment decreed on account of a sin); Yelammedenu 45; Sanhedrin 101a; WR 10. 5; DR 8. 2; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 2. 1; comp. note 28. On the arguments of the heavenly court of justice in favor and against Cain, comp. Yalkut Reubeni and Yalkut David on Gen. 4. 16 (both are based on the same source, the Sefer ha-Tagin, in manuscript).

27. PRE 21; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 4. 15. This is somewhat different from Sefer ha-Tagin in Yalkut Reubeni, *ad loc.*, which reads: He received the letter ט (nine) on his arm (not on his forehead; likewise in PRE) as a sign that he



will not die before he has begotten nine descendants (comp. Gen. 4. 17–22). On the sign of Cain comp. the following note, and further Zohar I, 36b.

28. BR 22. 12–13, where seven different views are given on the sign of Cain: 1) God caused the sun to rise (as a sign that Cain was not to be slain by animals); 2) He marked him by inflicting leprosy on him; 3) He gave him a dog to protect him against animals; 4) He marked him with a horn on his forehead (as a degradation of his human form?); 5) He punished Cain as a sign (=warning) to future murderers; 6) He partly pardoned his sin as a sign (=example) for future sinners who repent; 7) He allowed him to live until the flood. Some of these views are also to be found in Tan. Bereshit 10, where an eighth is given: the Sabbath, the sign between God and Israel (Exod. 31. 13), came in and saved Cain from death, as it had formerly done in the case of Adam (compare with p. 87); BaR 7. 5; Yelammedenu 43 (leprosy was inflicted as a punishment upon those who devoted their lives to the acquisition of possessions, as in the case of Cain, Job, and king Uzziah; on this point see BR 22. 3; Mekilta RS, 92; Tan. Noah 13=Makiri on Is. 6. 50. Compare further with p. 675, as well as Eccus. 10. 13); Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 35 and 43. Comp. note 43.

29. Yerushalmi Targumim and Midrash Aggada on Gen. 4. 16. Comp. the following note.

30. Tan. B. (introduction), 158; Genizah fragment in the library of Cambridge University, published by Ginzberg in *Ha-Goren* IX, 58–59 and 66; Shulhan Arba' I, 9d; Shu'aib, Bereshit 5d. Oh the wonderful fertility of the earth in Messianic times, when conditions will be the same as before the fall, comp. Apocalypse of Baruch 29. 5; the Papias Apocalypse (a conversation of Jesus) cited by Irenaeus 5. 23 (as a parallel to the statement "And when one of the saints will take hold of a grape, another will exclaim: I am a better grape, take me; praise the Lord through me", one may cite the Haggadah: If some one will try to pick a fig on the Sabbath, in the time to come, it will exclaim: "It is Sabbath"; Tehillim 73, 335); Enoch 10. 19; Revelation of St. John (beginning); Visio Pauli 22; Ketubot 111a–112a; Sifre D., 317. Compare further footnote 105 on p. 84; Index, s. v. "Wine"; Alfred Jeremias, *Babylonisches im NT*, 332–33.

31. Tan. Bereshit 10; PRE 21; BR 22. 8 (this is, however, not found in the manuscripts; comp. Theodor, *ad loc.*); Slavonic Palaea, 52; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 66. In contrast to the rabbinic legend about the burial of Abel, it is recorded in Apocalypse of Moses 40, and in the literature dependent on it (Christian Book of Adam; Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 45), that the earth did not receive Abel's remains until Adam's body was returned thither; compare note 21 and text on p. 97. The earth, which originally consisted of a level surface, became mountainous as a pun-

ishment for having received Abel's blood; Wa-Yosha' 53. (compare with text on pp. 12, 18, as well as 76, for other opinions concerning the origin of mountains), and the earth will not become level again until Messianic times; text on p. 1021. The conception that the mountains did not originally belong to the earth's form is prevalent in legend; comp. Dähnhardt, *Natursagen*, I, index, s. v. "Gebirge". See further Mishle 8, 59. Abel is the type of the pious (12 Testaments, Issachar 4. 4), and in the heavenly court he is the one appointed to judge every soul entering there, and decide whether it should be punished or rewarded; Testament of Abraham 12–13; compare footnote 142 on p. 99. Abel's soul, according to the Kabbalists, came to the world again in the persons of Jacob and Moses; comp. the numerous quotations from kabbalistic writings in Yalkut Reubeni on Gen. 4. 1, *seq.* Abel's soul appeared as the accuser against Cain, until the latter and his seed were destroyed from the face of the earth; Enoch 22. 7; compare pp. 606–607. A combination of two legends concerning Abel's burial is found in the Slavonic Enoch (addition to 4, 91), where it is said that the bird from which Adam learned to bury the dead was the "jack-daw." On the raven compare with p. 37.

## THE INHABITANTS OF THE SEVEN EARTHS

When Adam was cast out of Paradise, he first reached the lowest of the seven earths, the Erez, which is dark, without a ray of light, and utterly void. Adam was terrified, particularly by the flames of the ever-turning sword, which is on this earth. After he had done penance, God led him to the second earth, the Adamah, where there is light reflected from its own sky and from its phantom-like stars and constellations. Here dwell the phantom-like beings that issued from the union of Adam with the spirits.<sup>32</sup> They are always sad; the emotion of joy is not known to them. They leave their own earth and repair to the one inhabited by men, where they are changed into evil spirits. Then they return to their abode for good, repent of their wicked deeds, and till the ground, which, however, bears neither wheat nor any other of the seven species.<sup>33</sup> In this Adamah,



Cain, Abel, and Seth were born. After the murder of Abel, Cain was sent back to the Erez, where he was frightened into repentance by its darkness and by the flames of the ever-turning sword. Accepting his penitence, God permitted him to ascend to the third earth, the Arqa, which receives some light from the sun. The Arqa was surrendered to the Cainites forever, as their perpetual domain. They till the ground, and plant trees, but they have neither wheat nor any other of the seven species.

Some of the Cainites are giants, some of them are dwarfs. They have two heads, wherefore they can never arrive at a decision; they are always at loggerheads with themselves.<sup>34</sup> It may happen that they are pious now, only to be inclined to do evil the next moment.

In the Ge, the fourth earth, live the generation of the Tower of Babel and their descendants. God banished them thither because the fourth earth is not far from Gehenna, and therefore close to the flaming fire.<sup>35</sup> The inhabitants of the Ge are skilful in all arts, and accomplished in all departments of science and knowledge, and their abode overflows with wealth. When an inhabitant of our earth visits them, they give him the most precious thing in their possession, but then they lead him to the Neshiah, the fifth earth, where he becomes oblivious of his origin and his home. The Neshiah is inhabited by dwarfs without noses; they breathe through two holes instead. They have no memory; once a thing has happened, they forget it completely, whence their earth is called Neshiah, "forgetting." The fourth and fifth earths are like the Arqa; they have trees, but neither wheat nor any other of the seven species.

The sixth earth, the Ziah, is inhabited by handsome men, who are the owners of abundant wealth, and live in palatial residences, but they lack water, as the name of their territory, Ziah, "drought," indicates. Hence vegetation is sparse with them, and their tree culture meets

with indifferent success. They hasten to any waterspring that is discovered, and sometimes they succeed in slipping through it up to our earth, where they satisfy their sharp appetite for the food eaten by the inhabitants of our earth. For the rest, they are men of steadfast faith, more than any other class of mankind.<sup>36</sup>

Adam remained in the Adamah until after the birth of Seth. Then, passing the third earth, the Arka, the abiding-place of the Cainites, and the next three earths as well, the Ge, the Neshiah, and the Ziah, God transported him to the Tebel, the seventh earth, the earth inhabited by men.

---

32. On this point compare with p. 114. Concerning the darkness which came upon Adam after the fall, compare footnote 108 on p. 87.

33. The seven products mentioned in Deut. 8. 8 are here referred to. Comp. Berakot 6. 4.

34. Instead of **כתרין בישין** read **ולחון תרין ראשין**. On the two-headed Cainites compare pp. 950–951; Zohar I, 9b, and II, 80a. In the first passage of Zohar mention is made also of the two monsters Afrira and Kastimon, who were placed as rulers of the abode of the Cainites, and are the cause that Naamah (=Lilith) appears to men in sleep. The entire passage is rather obscure, but this much is certain that the Zohar conceives the Cainites as a species of genii, demons, and monsters. This view is prevalent in the legends of medieval Europe; comp. Emerson, *Legends of Cain*, 878, as well as the sources cited in note 36, and further *Orot ha-Mashiah*, 58 (below).

35. Comp. Greek Baruch III, and text on p. 164 on the part of the earth near to Gehenna.

36. Zohar Hadash Bereshit 8a–8b (instead of **לבני מאי דאכלי** read **כבני דאכלי**); Zohar Ruth, 97b (beginning **מאי דאכלי**); Zohar I, 9b, 39b–40a, 54b, 157a, and additions to I, 3a–3b; II, 41b, and 80a; III, 9b–10a. For further details on the monsters, half-men and half-animals, in the nether-world (to which reference is made in the last passage), comp. note 34, as well as text on p. 6. On the thirst of the inhabitants of the nether-world, compare footnote 135 on p. 576 and Dietrich, *Nekyia*, 97, *seq.*, where reference is made to the prevalent view concerning the thirst of the dead. Of Greek origin is the conception of the place of "forgetfulness"; comp. Rohde, *Psyche*, II, 310, and 390–391. See the following note.



## THE DESCENDANTS OF CAIN

Cain knew only too well that his blood-guiltiness would be visited upon him in the seventh generation. Thus had God decreed against him.<sup>37</sup> He endeavored, therefore, to immortalize his name by means of monuments,<sup>38</sup> and he became a builder of cities. The first of them he called Enoch, after his son, because it was at the birth of Enoch that he began to enjoy a measure of rest and peace.<sup>39</sup> Besides, he founded six other cities.<sup>40</sup> This building of cities was a godless deed, for he surrounded them with a wall, forcing his family to remain within. All his other doings were equally impious. The punishment God had ordained for him did not effect any improvement. He sinned in order to secure his own pleasure, though his neighbors suffered injury thereby. He augmented his household substance by rapine and violence; he excited his acquaintances to procure pleasures and spoils by robbery, and he became a great leader of men into wicked courses. He also introduced a change in the ways of simplicity wherein men had lived before, and he was the author of measures and weights. And whereas men lived innocently and generously while they knew nothing of such arts, he changed the world into cunning craftiness.<sup>41</sup>

Like unto Cain were all his descendants, impious and godless, wherefore God resolved to destroy them.<sup>42</sup>

The end of Cain overtook him in the seventh generation of men, and it was inflicted upon him by the hand of his great-grandson Lamech. This Lamech was blind, and when he went a-hunting, he was led by his young son, who would apprise his father when game came in sight, and Lamech would then shoot at it with his bow and arrow. Once upon a time he and his son went on the chase, and the lad discerned something horned in the distance. He naturally took it to be a beast of one kind or another, and he told the blind

Lamech to let his arrow fly. The aim was good, and the quarry dropped to the ground. When they came close to the victim, the lad exclaimed: "Father, thou hast killed something that resembles a human being in all respects, except it carries a horn on its forehead!" Lamech knew at once what had happened—he had killed his ancestor Cain, who had been marked by God with a horn.<sup>43</sup> In despair he smote his hands together, inadvertently killing his son as he clasped them. Misfortune still followed upon misfortune. The earth opened her mouth and swallowed up the four generations sprung from Cain—Enoch, Irad, Mehujael, and Methushael. Lamech, sightless as he was, could not go home; he had to remain by the side of Cain's corpse and his son's. Toward evening, his wives, seeking him, found him there. When they heard what he had done, they wanted to separate from him, all the more as they knew that whoever was descended from Cain was doomed to annihilation. But Lamech argued, "If Cain, who committed murder of malice aforethought, was punished only in the seventh generation, then I, who had no intention of killing a human being, may hope that retribution will be averted for seventy and seven generations." With his wives, Lamech repaired to Adam, who heard both parties, and decided the case in favor of Lamech.<sup>44</sup>

The corruptness of the times, and especially the depravity of Cain's stock, appears in the fact that Lamech, as well as all the men in the generation of the deluge, married two wives, one with the purpose of rearing children, the other in order to pursue carnal indulgences, for which reason the latter was rendered sterile by artificial means. As the men of the time were intent upon pleasure rather than desirous of doing their duty to the human race, they gave all their love and attention to the barren women, while their other wives spent their days like widows, joyless and in gloom.



The two wives of Lamech, Adah and Zillah, bore him each two children, Adah two sons, Jabal and Jubal, and Zillah a son, Tubal-cain, and a daughter, Naamah. Jabal was the first among men to erect temples to idols, and Jubal invented the music sung and played therein. Tubal-cain was rightly named, for he completed the work of his ancestor Cain. Cain committed murder, and Tubal-cain, the first who knew how to sharpen iron and copper, furnished the instruments used in wars and combats. Naamah, “the lovely,” earned her name from the sweet sounds which she drew from her cymbals when she called the worshippers to pay homage to idols.<sup>45</sup>

---

37. Zohar (additions) I, 3a–3b; Zohar Hadash Bereshit 8a–8b and Ruth 97b (beginning **וְאָמַר ר' רַחוּמַאי**); Yalkut Reubeni Gen. 3 (end) cites the description of the “seven worlds” from the Zohar, in the Hebrew language, whereas in our texts of the Zohar it is in Aramaic. In many details this Hebrew presentation deviates from the Aramaic. The view that the punishment was inflicted upon Cain in the seventh generation (*i. e.*, Lamech; compare with p. 111) is based on Gen. 4. 14, and 24, where **שִׁבְעָתַיִם** is explained in this sense; comp. Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi, *ad loc.*; BR 23. 4 (comp. Theodor, *ad loc.*); Tan. Bereshit 11; MHG I, 118; Theodoretus, *Quaestiones in Gen.*, 43; Jerome, *ad Damasum*, 125 (explicitly in connection with the Lamech legend), who adds that, according to Jewish tradition, 77 descendants of Lamech perished at the time of the flood, in fulfilment of the words of Gen. 4. 24. Comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.* 1, 2, 2 and note 42. Somewhat different is the (Jewish?) tradition cited by Ephraim, I, 43 E, that seven generations of Cain perished with him, whereas the Midrash speaks only of the four generations of Cain (corresponding to the four generations which Abel should have reared); comp. Tan., *loc. cit.* Jerome cites another Jewish tradition, according to which the Bible speaks of the seven sins, which Cain had to atone for: 1) He did not divide his sacrifice properly (comp. note 12); 2) he was jealous of his brother; 3) he deceitfully lured him to death (comp. note 19); 4) he killed his brother; 5) he denied this act; 6) he asserted that his sin could not be forgiven (*i. e.*, he doubted God’s mercy?) comp. note 25; 7) he did not repent of his sin during his long life, which God granted him in order to make amends; comp. note 26. The Haggadah in 12 Testaments, Benjamin 7. 1–5 on Gen. 4. 24, is somewhat confused: instead of the seven generations of the rabbinic

sources, this passage has “seven centuries”, during which Cain suffered for his sins so that every century brought its plague with it until he perished in the flood at the age of 900. That Cain perished in the flood is also stated in rabbinic sources; BR 22. 12 and 32. 5; ShR 31. 16 (here it is stated that wherever Cain came he was driven away by the inhabitants); Koheleth 6. 3; Koheleth Z. 106; Tan. Mishpatim 13 (in an abbreviated form; the hundred sons of Cain are also alluded to in the three last-named sources). Comp. 43 and Ginzberg’s *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.* 65–69.

38. Midrash Aggadah Gen. 4. 17, according to BR 23. 1 and Tehillim 9, 85. Comp. further Rashi and Lekah, *ad loc.*

39. Yashar Bereshit, 9b.

40. Ps.—Philo, 2, where the name of these cities, that of Cain’s wife (Themach=**תִּמְחַח** “may she be destroyed”; in 35 A, the same name is given of Sisera’s mother), and those of his three sons (besides Enoch) and two daughters are given. Cain, it is further recorded here, begot Enoch at the age of 15, and died 730 years old. But Jub. 4. 1 and 31 read: Cain died 930 A. M., which, according to the chronology of this book corresponds to the statement that Cain lived 860 years; comp. notes 11, 37.

41. Josephus, *Antiqui.* I, 22. The observation of Josephus that Cain was the first to introduce weights and measures is based on the haggadic interpretation of the name **קֹנֶה=קִין** “the measuring rod”. Comp. notes 7, 20 and 53.

42. BR 23. 2. Here Lamech (compare also with p. 111) is also counted among the sinful descendants of Cain, whereas Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 2, 2, designates him as a prophet who had predicted that he would have to atone for the murder committed by his forebear Cain. This interpretation of Gen. 4. 24 is closely related to the Haggadah given by Jerome; comp. note 37. On the wickedness of the Cainites, compare pp. 115–116, 136–137.—The verse Ps. 89. 3, which, according to the rabbinic view, is to be translated: “The world has been established by love”, refers, according to the Haggadah, to God’s goodness, who had provided Cain with a sister whom he could marry. For without God’s goodness this is forbidden by the law; but this marriage was permitted to Cain in order to insure the propagation of the human race. Sifra 20. 17; Yerushalmi Yebamot 11, 11d; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 5, 22b, and 9, 20d; Babli 58; PRE 21. On the translation of Ps., *loc. cit.*, see Targum and Peshitta, as well as ARN 4, 21. Comp. further Aphraates, 455 and Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, I, 665, note. These sources presuppose (comp. the polemic against this view in Philo, *De Posteritate Caini*, 11) that only Cain married his sister (**הָבַל נָשָׂא אֶחָיוֹתָיו**) in Yerushalmi is a later addition based on the legend of the twin-sisters; comp. note 17), whereas Seth married his niece, Cain’s daughter. The high esteem in which Jub. holds all the patriarchs, from Adam to Noah (comp., on the other hand, note 1 about



the adverse opinion of the Rabbis), precludes this book from referring to the union of Seth or his descendants with the wicked Cainites, and hence it is stated that Seth, Enoch, and Mahalalel married their sisters. The fictitious names frequently found in this pseudepigraphic work and in ps.–Philo (particularly the names of the women of ancient times) are entirely unknown in old rabbinic literature (comp. the adverse comment on such vagaries in Baba Batra 91a, which are regarded as a specialty of the heretics, **מינין**), and are only found in the writings of the Arabic period (Yashar, and already in PRE), when the Jews became more familiar with the Christian and Mohammedan pseudepigraphic writings. The three lists of the wives of the ante-deluvian patriarchs, which we possess in Hebrew sources, Algazi's *Toledot Adam*, 2a-2b, Damascus manuscript, published by Harkavy in *Ha-Pisgah* I, 58, and Munich manuscript (published by Perles in his *Beiträge zur Geschichte heb. . . Studien*, 90), are nevertheless important for the history of these names, since they enable us to establish their Hebrew forms, which very often cannot be recognized from the Greek and Ethiopic transliterations. The following examples will illustrate this point. Adam's oldest daughter, whose name has been transmitted in no less than twenty-two forms (comp. Rönsch, *Buch der Jubiläen*, 373; MHG I, 106; Theodor on BR 22. 2, pages 205–206), is called Azurah in Jub. 4, written **עצורה** in Hebrew, in agreement with Kid-dushin 6a, where **עצורתי** “my wife” occurs. In PRE 2 is **עזרו**, “his wife”, an allusion to Gen. 2.18. Noah's wife is Emzaru in Jub., *loc. cit.*, and **אמזרע** in Hebrew (this is how it should be read in Algazi, instead of **אמורע**; in Munich manuscript it is abbreviated to **מזרע**, *i. e.*, “mother of the seed of man”). The theophorous names, as Razuyal **רצואל** and Azrial, **עזריאל**, Jub., *loc. cit.*, and 8. 1 (with Algazi, Sason is to be read instead of Susan; **ששון** not **שושן**) appear in the Hebrew texts in their original forms **רצויה** and **עזריה**. Later on the termination **יה**, so frequently employed in proper names, was substituted by **אל**. Noah's mother is properly called in Dam. MS. **בת אנוש** (in order not to mistake it to mean “the daughter of Enosh,” the word **שמה** is added; this word, therefore, must not be emended to **שמחה**, as is done by Marx, *Orient. Ltz.*, IV, 358, on the basis of Baidawi), corresponding to Betenos in Jub., *loc. cit.* On the other hand, the names of Noah's daughters-in-law appear (Jub. 7. 14–16, where Adataneses–**אדנת נשא** “princess of women”) to be badly corrupted in the Hebrew sources. The names of Jacob's daughters-in-law in Dam. MS. are entirely different from those of Yashar (compare with pp. 347–348), and this source deserves closer investigation. The same source knows also the name of Ishmael's wife, Gigit (comp., for another view, with footnote 218 on p. 222), and the name of the prophet Jonah's wife, who is called Yoam the daughter of Azen; compare footnote 39 on p. 1035.

43. On the sign of Cain, comp. note 28.

44. Tan. Bereshit 11 (on the text comp. Yalkut I, 38; MHG I, 118–119; Rashi and Midrash Aggada on Gen. 4. 23–24); Yashar Bereshit, 10b–11a; BR 23. 4; Jerome, *ad Damasum*, 125; Ephraim, I, 26D; Book of Adam 2. 13; Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 35–36; Schatzhöhle, 78. Comp. Fabricius, *Codex Pseudepigraphicus*, 120–122 (this passage contains the views concerning the death of Cain found in the works of the chronologists Johan Malala, and Michael Glycas); Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 71–72. According to Jub. 4. 31, Cain met his death in the following manner: his house fell in over him. Just as he had slain Abel with a stone (comp. note 20), even so was he killed by the stones of the house which fell in. Aggadat Bereshit 26, 53–54, reads to the same effect. Philo, *Quod Deterius Potiori Insidiari Soleat*, 48, seems to explain allegorically a legend, according to which Cain never died. This may be compared with the legend about the immortality of the giants; compare with p. 708. It would not be surprising if Philo already knew of the legend that Cain was the son of Satan (comp. note 3) and his celestial origin would explain his immortality. EZ 2, 174, appears to be an allusion to an unfamiliar Lamech legend; but perhaps we ought to read **אבי אביו=קין**, and the passage merely implies that Lamech, who was mourning over the death of his grandfather, was endowed with long life and other blessings. It is difficult to ascertain what ps.–Philo 2 wishes to record concerning Lamech, since the text is obscure, and very likely corrupt. Comp. note 37.

45. BR 23. 2–3; Yashar Bereshit, 10b; Yerushalmi Yebamot 6, 7c (on the meaning of the name Zillah comp. Philo, *De Posteritate Caini*, 33, whose explanation agrees with Yerushalmi); Yalkut I, 47 (in the Oxford MS. **מ"ט מדות** is given as the source; comp. also Theodor on BR 22. 3); ps.–Philo, 2 (the sentence *et coepit . . . psalterii* should be read after *organorum*, and the words *et corrumpere terram* before *indigna est deus*); Theophilus, II, 30. Opinions differ concerning Naamah, Tubal-cain's sister. According to one, this Naamah, “the lovely one”, was Noah's wife (BR, *loc. cit.*; comp. also Mishle 31, 111, where it is said that the piety of Noah's wife was like that of her husband), whereas another view maintains that it was another Naamah whom Noah married. Naamah, Tubal-cain's sister, is further identified with the beautiful woman to whose charms the angels became victims; comp. MHG I, 118 (this is very likely based on PRE, as remarked by Schechter); Zohar I, 55a; Zohar Ruth 99a (beginning **פתח נחמיה** (ר' נחמיה); Midrash Aggada Gen. 4. 22. Whatever has been said in other sources concerning Istehar (compare with p. 136) is referred to Naamah in the last passage: she did not consent to gratify the desire of the fallen angels. But in the kabbalistic sources cited above (comp. further Zohar III, 76b, as well as Kaneh 103b; for more details see Grünbaum *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 57, *seq.* and 447, as well as Ginzberg's article “Ashmedai” in *Jewish*



*Encyclopedia*) Naamah, the sister of Tubal-cain, is said to be the wife of Shamdan, from whose union sprang forth Ashmedai (=the devil par excellence), who together with Lilith strangles little children (compare with pp. 64–65), while Naamah, like the latter, fools men in their dreams. On Naamah the musician, and the influence of her sensual music which corrupted humanity, comp. further Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 4. 22; Grübaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 72–74; footnote 14 on p. 138.

## THE DESCENDANTS OF ADAM AND LILITH

When the wives of Lamech heard the decision of Adam, that they were to continue to live with their husband, they turned upon him, saying, “O physician, heal thine own lameness!” They were alluding to the fact that he himself had been living apart from his wife since the death of Abel, for he had said, “Why should I beget children, if it is but to expose them to death?”<sup>46</sup>

Though he avoided intercourse with Eve, he was visited in his sleep by female spirits, and from his union with them sprang shades and demons of various kinds,<sup>47</sup> and they were endowed with peculiar gifts.

Once upon a time there lived in Palestine a very rich and pious man, who had a son named Rabbi Ḥanina. He knew the whole of the Torah by heart. When he was at the point of death, he sent for his son, Rabbi Ḥanina, and bade him, as his last request, to study the Torah day and night, fulfil the commands of the law, and be a faithful friend to the poor. He also told him that he and his wife, the mother of Rabbi Ḥanina, would die on the selfsame day, and the seven days of mourning for the two would end on the eve of the Passover. He enjoined him not to grieve excessively, but to go to market on that day, and buy the first article offered to him, no matter how

costly it might be. If it happened to be an edible, he was to prepare it and serve it with much ceremony. His expense and trouble would receive their recompense. All happened as foretold: the man and his wife died upon the same day, and the end of the week of mourning coincided with the eve of the Passover. The son in turn carried out his father's behest: he repaired to market, and there he met an old man who offered a silver dish for sale. Although the price asked was exorbitant, yet he bought it, as his father had bidden. The dish was set upon the Seder table, and when Rabbi Ḥanina opened it, he found a second dish within, and inside of this a live frog, jumping and hopping around gleefully. He gave the frog food and drink, and by the end of the festival he was grown so big that Rabbi Ḥanina made a cabinet for him, in which he ate and lived. In the course of time, the cabinet became too small, and the Rabbi built a chamber, put the frog within, and gave him abundant food and drink. All this he did that he might not violate his father's last wish. But the frog waxed and grew; he consumed all his host owned, until, finally, Rabbi Ḥanina was stripped bare of all his possessions. Then the frog opened his mouth and began to speak. “My dear Rabbi Ḥanina,” he said, “do not worry! Seeing thou didst raise me and care for me, thou mayest ask of me whatever thy heart desireth, and it shall be granted thee.” Rabbi Ḥanina made reply, “I desire naught but that thou shouldst teach me the whole of the Torah.” The frog assented, and he did, indeed, teach him the whole of the Torah, and the seventy languages of men besides.<sup>48</sup> His method was to write a few words upon a scrap of paper, which he had his pupil swallow. Thus he acquired not alone the Torah and the seventy tongues, but also the language of beasts and birds. Thereupon the frog spoke to the wife of Rabbi Ḥanina: “Thou didst tend me well, and I have given thee no recompense. But thy reward will be paid thee before I



depart from you, only you must both accompany me to the woods. There you shall see what I shall do for you.” Accordingly, they went to the woods with him. Arrived there, the frog began to cry aloud, and at the sound, all sorts of beasts and birds assembled. These he commanded to produce precious stones, as many as they could carry. Also they were to bring herbs and roots for the wife of Rabbi Ḥanina, and he taught her how to use them as remedies for all varieties of disease. All this they were bidden to take home with them. When they were about to return, the frog addressed them thus: “May the Holy One, blessed be He, have mercy upon you, and requite you for all the trouble you took on my account, without so much as inquiring who I am. Now I shall make my origin known to you. I am the son of Adam, a son whom he begot during the hundred and thirty years of his separation from Eve. God has endowed me with the power of assuming any form or guise I desire.” Rabbi Ḥanina and his wife departed for their home, and they became very rich, and enjoyed the respect and confidence of the king.<sup>49</sup>

46. BR 23. 4; Tan. Bereshit 11; BaR 14. 2; ‘Erubin 18b; Tan. B. I, 20. The justification of Adam’s celibacy in the text is taken from the last passage (this statement presupposes that Abel scarcely lived a few months; comp. note 11), whereas in ‘Erubin his celibacy appears to be as an atonement for his sin, and it is also presupposed that the first two sons were born before the fall, or at least begotten before that occurrence. Comp. note 4.

47. ‘Erubin 18b (לילי) “spectres”, as in Apocalypse of Baruch 10. 8; Tan. B. I, 20; BR 20. 11 and 24. 6. Only the last mentioned source contains the assertion that Eve likewise became the mother of spirits through her union with male spirits; see Zohar I, 54b, and III, 76b, where it is said that even now the propagation of this species is continued by virtue of the union of men with spirits in their sleep. Comp. note 45. It is possible that this conception of the origin of spirits (evil ones? comp., however, BR 20. 11) is intended to oppose the assertion of the Persians that the redeemer “Saoshyant” will spring up from the seed of Zarathustra that went to the ground. Comp. Bund. 32. 8, 9 and Yt. 13. 62.

48. Concerning this number of languages compare footnote 72 on p. 157.

49. Ma’aseh-Buch 143, 40a–40b and the Hebrew from a MS. collection of legends, published in *R.E.J.*, XXXIII, 239, *seq.* The long-winded biography of R. Haninah, or, as the Hebrew version reads, R. Johanan, in this source is identical with the narrative found in Arabian Nights concerning the gratitude of three animals (the fish, the dog, and the raven) towards their human benefactor. This narrative, as is well known, is based on an animal fable found in *Pantschatantra*. On the acquisition of language through swallowing its written characters see *Bet Nekot ha-Halakah* I, 58, and Gold-züher in *Berliner-Festschrift*, 150.

50. BR 23. 4–5; PK 5, 43b; PR 15, 67b; Ruth R. 4, 12; Makiri, Prov. 14. 28. Ruth Z. 55; Tan. B. I, 20. In allusion to the words of Scripture **שֵׁת לִי** (Gen. 4. 25), the name **שֵׁת** is interpreted as “plant” (= **שֵׁתִּיל**); Aggadat Bereshit (MS. additions), 37. Is the legend concerning Seth and the branch of the tree of life in various compilations of the *Vita Adae* (comp. Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 41 and 46) related to this interpretation of the name? The name Seth is also connected with **שֵׁית** “foundation”: he became the foundation of mankind; BaR 14. 12; MHG I, 119; Lekah and Midrash Aggada on Gen. 4. 2.

## SETH AND HIS DESCENDANTS

The exhortations of the wives of Lamech took effect upon Adam. After a separation of one hundred and thirty years, he returned to Eve, and the love he now bore her was stronger by far than in the former time. She was in his thoughts even when she was not present to him bodily. The fruit of their reunion was Seth, who was destined to be the ancestor of the Messiah.<sup>50</sup>

Seth was so formed from birth that the rite of circumcision could be dispensed with. He was thus one of the thirteen men born perfect in a way.<sup>51</sup> Adam begot him in his likeness and image, different from Cain, who had not been in his likeness and image. Thus Seth became, in a genuine sense, the father of the human race, especially the father of the pious, while the depraved and godless are descended from Cain.<sup>52</sup>

Even during the lifetime of Adam the descendants of Cain became exceedingly wicked,



dying successively, one after another, each more wicked than the former. They were intolerable in war, and vehement in robberies, and if any one were slow to murder people, yet was he bold in his profligate behavior in acting unjustly and doing injury for gain.

Now as to Seth. When he was brought up, and came to those years in which he could discern what was good, he became a virtuous man, and as he was himself of excellent character, so he left children behind him who imitated his virtues. All these proved to be of good disposition. They also inhabited one and the same country without dissensions, and in a happy condition, without any misfortune's falling upon them, until they died. They also were the inventors of that peculiar sort of wisdom which is concerned with the heavenly bodies and their order. And that their inventions might not be lost before they were sufficiently known, they made two pillars, upon Adam's prediction that the world was to be destroyed at one time by the force of fire and at another time by the violence and quantity of water. The one was of brick, the other of stone, and they inscribed their discoveries on both, that in case the pillar of brick should be destroyed by the flood, the pillar of stone might remain, and exhibit these discoveries to man-kind, and also inform them that there was another pillar, of brick, erected by them.<sup>53</sup>

51. ARN 2, 12; Tan. Noah 5; Tan. B. I, 32; Tehillim 9, 84. Compare footnote 318 on p. 248.

52. PRE 2. Hardly anything is known in the older rabbinic literature of the glorification of Seth, which has prevailed for some time, as may be seen from the existence of a gnostic sect, the Sethiani, who identified him with the Messiah (comp. Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 48–51; Fabricius, *Codex Pseudepigraphicus*, 141, 143, 145). Certain traces of this glorification have been retained by Josephus, *Antiqui.* 1, 2, 3, and in the apocryphal and pseudepigraphic literature (Ecclu. 49. 16; Jub. 19. 24; Enoch 85. 8–9; 2 Enoch 33. 10. See also index, s. v. "Seth, Descendants of"). Only

in kabbalistic writings has this view, supposedly favored by BR 23. 5 and PRE 22, attained importance. Hence, for instance, it is asserted that the soul of Seth entered into Moses and will again reappear in the Messiah. The account by Syncellus, 1. 16–17 concerning the translation of Seth to the angels, who instructed him about the fall of the angels, the fall of man, the deluge, and the advent of the Messiah, seems to go back to an apocryphal book of Seth (very likely of Jewish origin). Comp. note 1 and the following note.

53. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 2. 3. On the astronomic studies of the ante-diluvian generations comp. also BR 26. 5. The chronologists Suidas (s. v. Σήθ), Michael Glycas, *Annales* 228–233, and Johannes Malala 1. 151, Joel, *Chronographia*, p. 3, know not only to report about Seth's astronomical knowledge but also about his invention of the Hebrew characters, as well as the division of time into weeks, months and years. He received his knowledge from the angel Uriel who came to him (Syncellus 1. 16–17, on the other hand, speaks of Seth's stay among the angels), and revealed to him this knowledge, as he subsequently did to Enoch. The legend concerning the two tablets, which Seth and his children respectively made, reads differently in Vita Adae 50. 1–3. For a detailed discussion concerning this legend, see Ginzberg's Hebrew essay של אש מברל (reprinted from *Ha-Goren* VIII, 35–51), which also contains a discussion on the conception about the conflagration of the world mentioned by Philo (*Moses*, 2. 36, Mangey's edition, 175) and the Rabbis. See also Bousset, *Zeitschrift für NT. Wissenschaft*, 1902. It should also be noted here that Josippon 2. 8 (which was borrowed by Yashar Bereshit, 10a, below) considers these tablets as the work of Seth's grandchild Kenan. Josippon knows also to report that these tablets with their Hebrew characters could still be seen on some island in India in the time of Alexander the Great. It is further maintained that in that place there is a city, full of all kinds of treasures, which Kenan had founded but which no one can enter, because he rendered it inaccessible by means of astronomical and astrological knowledge and witchcraft. Kenan's bewitched town appears to be based on Arabic sources. Kenan is already described in Jub. 8. 3 (comp. the references to the chronologists by Charles) as a master of great wisdom (comp. note 41 on קִנָּה=קִין, which also signifies "writing stylus"). This, however, refers to Kenan, the son of Arpachshad who is known to Jub. as well as to Septuagint, but not to the masoretic text. Aggadat Bereshit (introduction) 37, on the other hand says of Kenan that through him his generation came in possession of evil (קִנָּה=קִין "possessed"; comp. note 7), since he induced them to worship idols. His son Mahalalel, on the contrary, repented of his sins, and returned to God, whom he praised (הלל) and extolled. On Mahalalel comp. Jub. 19. 4 (one of the seven pious men of the pre-Abrahamic times: Adam, Seth, Enosh,



Mahalalel, Enoch, Noah, and Shem) and 2 Enoch 33. 10, which mentions the books composed by Adam, Seth, Enosh, Kenan, Mahalalel, Jared, and Enoch. These books were guarded by the angels Arukh and Parukh. Comp. Yerahmeel 24. 7, and the parallel passages cited by Gaster, where Tubal-Cain is described as the one who had made the tablets.

## ENOSH

Enosh was asked who his father was, and he named Seth. The questioners, the people of his time, continued: "Who was the father of Seth?" Enosh: "Adam."—"And who was the father of Adam?"—"He had neither father nor mother, God formed him from the dust of the earth."—"But man has not the appearance of dust!"—"After death man returns to dust, as God said, 'And man shall turn again unto dust;' but on the day of his creation, man was made in the image of God."—"How was the woman created?"—"Male and female He created them."—"But how?"—"God took water and earth, and moulded them together in the form of man."—"But how?" pursued the questioners.

Enosh took six clods of earth, mixed them, and moulded them, and formed an image of dust and clay. "But," said the people, "this image does not walk, nor does it possess any breath of life." He then essayed to show them how God breathed the breath of life into the nostrils of Adam, but when he began to blow his breath into the image he had formed, Satan entered it, and the figure walked, and the people of his time who had been inquiring these matters of Enosh went astray after it, saying, "What is the difference between bowing down before this image and paying homage to a man?"<sup>54</sup>

The generation of Enosh were thus the first idol worshippers, and the punishment for their folly was not delayed long. God caused the sea to transgress its bounds, and a portion of the

earth was flooded. This was the time also when the mountains became rocks, and the dead bodies of men began to decay. And still another consequence of the sin of idolatry was that the countenances of the men of the following generations were no longer in the likeness and image of God, as the countenances of Adam, Seth, and Enosh had been. They resembled centaurs and apes, and the demons lost their fear of men.<sup>55</sup>

But there was a still more serious consequence from the idolatrous practices introduced in the time of Enosh. When God drove Adam forth from Paradise, the Shekinah remained behind, enthroned above a cherub under the tree of life. The angels descended from heaven and repaired thither in hosts, to receive their instructions, and Adam and his descendants sat by the gate to bask in the splendor of the Shekinah, sixty-five thousand times more radiant than the splendor of the sun. This brightness of the Shekinah makes all upon whom it falls exempt from disease, and neither insects nor demons can come nigh unto them to do them harm.

Thus it was until the time of Enosh, when men began to gather gold, silver, gems, and pearls from all parts of the earth, and made idols thereof a thousand parasangs high. What was worse, by means of the magic arts taught them by the angels Uzza and Azrael, they set themselves as masters over the heavenly spheres, and forced the sun, the moon, and the stars to be subservient to themselves instead of the Lord. This impelled the angels to ask God: "'What is man, that Thou art mindful of him?' Why didst Thou abandon the highest of the heavens, the seat of Thy glory and Thy exalted Throne in 'Arabot, and descend to men, who pay worship to idols, putting Thee upon a level with them?" The Shekinah was induced to leave the earth and ascend to heaven, amid the blare and flourish of the trumpets of the myriads of angel hosts.<sup>56</sup>



54. Yerahmeel 23. 6, and in a somewhat abbreviated form in *Hadar*, Gen. 4. 26. Comp. also PRE 45, with respect to the golden calf: Sammael roared out of the mouth of the calf in order to mislead Israel. The origin of idolatry occupied the minds of the Greeks, and the Jewish-Alexandrian schools accepted, with some modifications, the theory of Euhemerus, according to which its origin was due to the worship of dead heroes. Through the Jewish writers this theory reached the Church Fathers; comp. Wisdom 14. 12–13; Clementine *Homilies* 9. 5 (which reads: This is the beginning of idolatry: When Nimrod, later known as Zoroaster, was struck by lightning, the masses perceived in it a special distinction, and therefore erected a temple on his grave. Whereupon the princes of various countries laid claim to similar glory; compare footnote 85 on p. 162); Jerome on Ezek. 23. 12 and Hos. 2. 10 (Ninus, after a victorious struggle against Zoroaster, placed his father Belus among the gods). Comp. further the sources cited in Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 198–199. The statement frequently found among Church Fathers that the demons and the fallen angels, respectively, seduced men to idolatry (comp. e. g. Minucius Felix, *Octav.*, 26. 7; Justin Martyr, *Apologia*, 2. 15; Clementine *Recognitiones*, 4. 13–15; Tatian, *Or. Ad Graecos*, 8; Athenagoras, *Legat. Pro Christianis* 24; Lactantius, *Institutiones*, 2. 16), and taught them the making of images and statues, goes back to pseudepigraphic writings of the Jews (comp. e. g. Enoch 66. 6 and 99. 7; Jub. 11. 4) but is entirely unknown to the older rabbinic literature. This view is only found in later writings (comp. e. g. the legend in 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 71) and especially in the Kabbalah. Comp. Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 93. The beginning of idolatry, according to the older rabbinic sources, based on their interpretation of Gen. 4. 26, took place in the time of Enosh (hence his name is "sickly", i. e., mankind became ill in his time; Aggadat Bereshit, introduction, 37; Yashar Bereshit, 10a); Sifre D., 43; Shabbat 118b; WR 23. 3; Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 67b; Midrash Tannaim 20 and 195; BR 2. 3; 5. 1 and 5; 23. 7; Tan. B. I, 52, and IV, 24; Tan. Noah 18 and Yitro 16; Tehillim 1, 11; 88, 380; Yerushalmi Targumim and Onkelos on Gen. 4. 26 (on the reading of Onkelos comp. Berliner, *ad loc.*). Jerome, *ad loc.*, knows of the rabbinic interpretation of this verse (Gen., *loc. cit.*) together with that of Septuagint, Aquila, and Peshitta with which Ecclu. 49. 16 is in agreement. See also Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 2, and *De Praemiis*, 2 (end), where Enosh is considered as the type of the pious. Comp. also Theodoretus, *Quaestiones in Gen.*, 247, who takes Seth as the subject of הוה"ל. It is noteworthy that the passages cited above, as well as other passages (comp. Ekah, introduction, 24, 26; PR 42, 178b and 193a), speak of the wicked generation of Enosh, but not of the wicked Enosh. Maimonides, however (*Yad ha-Hazakah 'Abodat Kokabim* 1. 1) observes

(very likely on the basis of older sources; comp. Hekalot 6, 173, and Shabbat *loc. cit.*: כאנוש) that Enosh himself was an idolater. In Baraita 32 Middot (Yalkut I, 47; comp. note 45) it is explicitly stated that at the time of Enosh images and immorality were introduced by the descendants of Cain. Compare with p. 473, and text on p. 772. Comp. note 56 (end).

55. BR 23. 6–7; Baraita 32 Middot (in Yalkut I, 47) reads: As soon as this generation committed three sins (idolatry, murder, and incest; comp. the end of the preceding note), three visitations came upon them: the ocean flooded a third part of the earth; there arose mountains, valleys, and rocky ground, whereas prior to that everything had been smooth and even (comp. notes 29, 30); man's stature was shortened. In Messianic times everything will regain its former position. The overflowing of the ocean in the time of Enosh is frequently alluded to; comp. Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 67b; Sifre D., 43; Midrash Tannaim 20 and 195; BR 5. 6; Shekalim 6, 50a; Tan. B. I, 52, and IV, 24; Tan. Noah 18 and Yitro 16; Tehillim 88, 300. On the transformation of men into apes compare with p. 164, and the notes appertaining to it; Enoch 19. 2 (the women who seduced the angels were transformed into sirens); Koran 2. 60 and 7. 174.

56. Hekalot 6, 172; *Hakam ha-Razin* in Yalkut Reuben 25b–25c; Ziyoni, Gen. 4. 26. On the view that the Shekinah dwells under the tree of life compare with p. 93. On the withdrawal of the Shekinah from the earth to heaven see text on p. 473. Those who came near the Shekinah remained safe from vermin; compare with p. 831, and text on p. 1026. On the opposition of the angels to the creation of man, see text on pp. 51–52 and footnote 15 on p. 139. On the subjugation of the heavenly bodies through the power of magic, comp. Tan. Bereshit 12 (read מורדין instead of וראין); MHG I, 131; footnote 15 on p. 139. The two fallen angels bear the names of Uzza and Azzael, Azza and Azzael, Shemhazai and Azazel. The identity of Azzael with Azazel does not require any proof; but it has not hitherto been noticed that Uzza or Azza were originally the same as Shemhazai. Since nearly all the names of angels are theophorous (this was already noticed by the old Midrashim; comp. PK 12, 108b, and the parallel passage cited by Buber, which reads: The name of God is combined with every angle), Uzza and Azza are therefore to be taken as abbreviated forms of Jehouzza and Jehoazza (comp. the name עזיהו or עזיה in the Bible; on the abbreviation of theophorous names, particularly those containing the particles יהו and יה, comp. note 42). This abbreviation is due to the fact that it was not considered proper to combine the names יהו and יה with the fallen angels. Another way of avoiding this combination was the substitution of שם "the Name" for יהו. Hence the name Shemhazai, which differs only slightly from Jehouza (ע and ח are often interchanged), goes back to שםעזי=יהועזי. On the ascending



of the Shekinah amid the sounding of the trumpets, comp. Hanok, 114, and text on p. 503. On Enosh as the originator of idolatry, see Zohar I, 56a, where, however, Helakot, *loc. cit.*, and Maimonides, *Yad ha-Hazakah*, *ʿAbodat Kokabim* 1. 1, were very likely made use of. Comp. also Luria's note 4 on PRE. 22 and note 45 (end).

## THE FALL OF THE ANGELS

THE depravity of mankind, which began to show itself in the time of Enosh, had increased monstrously in the time of his grandson Jared, by reason of the fallen angels. When the angels saw the beautiful, attractive daughters of men, they lusted after them, and spoke: "We will choose wives for ourselves only from among the daughters of men, and beget children with them." Their chief Shemḥazai said, "I fear me, ye will not put this plan of yours into execution, and I alone shall have to suffer the consequences of a great sin." Then they answered him, and said: "We will all swear an oath, and we will bind ourselves, separately and together, not to abandon the plan, but to carry it through to the end."

Two hundred angels descended to the summit of Mount Hermon, which owes its name to this very occurrence, because they bound themselves there to fulfil their purpose, on the penalty of Ḥerem, anathema. Under the leadership of twenty captains they defiled themselves with the daughters of men, unto whom they taught charms, conjuring formulas, how to cut roots, and the efficacy of plants. The issue from these mixed marriages was a race of giants, three thousand ells tall, who consumed the possessions of men. When all had vanished, and they could obtain nothing more from them, the giants turned against men and devoured many of them, and the remnant of men began to trespass against the birds, beasts, reptiles, and fishes, eating their flesh and drinking their blood.

Then the earth complained about the impious evil-doers. But the fallen angels continued to corrupt mankind. Azazel taught men how to make slaughtering knives, arms, shields, and coats of mail. He showed them metals and how to work them, and armlets and all sorts of trinkets, and the use of rouge for the eyes, and how to beautify the eyelids, and how to ornament themselves with the rarest and most precious jewels and all sorts of paints. The chief of the fallen angels, Shemḥazai, instructed them in exorcisms and how to cut roots; Armaros taught them how to raise spells; Baraḳel, divination from the stars; Kawkabel, astrology; Ezeḳeel, augury from the clouds; Araḳiel, the signs of the earth; Sam-saweel, the signs of the sun; and Sriel, the signs of the moon.<sup>57</sup>

While all these abominations defiled the earth, the pious Enoch lived in a secret place. None among men knew his abode, or what had become of him, for he was sojourning with the angel watchers and holy ones. Once he heard the call addressed to him: "Enoch, thou scribe of justice, go unto the watchers of the heavens, who have left the high heavens, the eternal place of holiness, defiling themselves with women, doing as men do, taking wives unto themselves, and casting themselves into the arms of destruction upon earth. Go and proclaim unto them that they shall find neither peace nor pardon. For every time they take joy in their offspring, they shall see the violent death of their sons, and sigh over the ruin of their children. They will pray and supplicate evermore, but never shall they attain to mercy or peace."

Enoch repaired to Azazel and the other fallen angels, to announce the doom uttered against them. They all were filled with fear. Trembling seized upon them, and they implored Enoch to set up a petition for them and read it to the Lord of heaven, for they could not speak with God as aforetime, nor even raise their eyes heavenward,



for shame on account of their sins. Enoch granted their request, and in a vision he was vouchsafed the answer which he was to carry back to the angels. It appeared to Enoch that he was wafted into heaven upon clouds, and was set down before the throne of God. God spake: "Go forth and say to the watchers of heaven who have sent thee hither to intercede for them: Verily, it is you who ought to plead in behalf of men, not men in behalf of you! Why did ye forsake the high, holy, and eternal heavens, to pollute yourselves with the daughters of men, taking wives unto yourselves, doing like the races of the earth, and begetting giant sons? Giants begotten by flesh and spirits will be called evil spirits on earth, and on the earth will be their dwelling-place. Evil spirits proceed from their bodies, because they are created from above, and from the holy watchers is their beginning and primal origin; they will be evil spirits on earth, and evil spirits they will be named. And the spirits of heaven have their dwelling in heaven, but the spirits of the earth, which were born upon the earth, have their dwelling on the earth. And the spirits of the giants will devour, oppress, destroy, attack, do battle, and cause destruction on the earth, and work affliction. They will take no kind of food, nor will they thirst, and they will be invisible. And these spirits will rise up against the children of men and against the women, because they have proceeded from them. Since the days of murder and destruction and the death of the giants, when the spirits went forth from the soul of their flesh, in order to destroy without incurring judgment—thus will they destroy until the day when the great consummation of the great world be consummated. And now as to the watchers who have sent thee to intercede for them, who had been aforetime in heaven, say to them: You have been in heaven, and though the hidden things had not yet been revealed to you, you know worthless mysteries, and in the hardness of your hearts you

have recounted these to the women, and through these mysteries women and men work much evil on earth. Say to them therefore: You have no peace!"<sup>58</sup>

---

57. Enoch 6–8, where two different sources were probably combined into one, since twenty archangels are enumerated in 6, whereas 8 has only ten (in our texts nine only are given, owing to the fact that one name fell out), and it is well known that the number of the members of the heavenly court is differently given in the different sources, as twenty, ten, and seven, respectively; compare with p. 130, where, according to the Hebrew book of Enoch 176, the twenty archangels are enumerated. Comp. further Index, *s. v.* "Archangels". On the names of the angels in this part of Enoch (see the vast material given by Charles 17), the following may be noted: Artakifa=תקיא ארעא; Ramiel=רעמיאל (occurs also in the Hebrew book of Enoch, *loc. cit.*, as the "angel of thunder"); Tamiel=תהומאל, "angel of the deep;" Danel is a Greek scribal error, Δανειήλ for Λανειήλ=Δαλειήλ ליליאל "angel of the night," as in the Hebrew Enoch, *loc. cit.*, Batarrel stands for Matarel, מטריאל in the Hebrew Enoch, "angel of rain"; Zakiel is in Hebrew Enoch זקאל "angel of storms", and similarly in the magic text published by Stube, *Jüdisch-babylonische Zaubertexte* 26. Satarel occurs in Berakot 57b as the name of a person. As the name of an angel it signifies "angel of hidden things", *i. e.*, the secrets of nature. It may, however, be remarked that עסתר, "Venus", appears in Jewish texts as an angel (comp. Montgomery, *Aramaic Incantation Texts*, index, *s. v.*). Accordingly Satarel may stand for עסתראל.—The fall of the angels plays an important part in Jewish folk-lore, as well as in Jewish theology, and the following summary of the development of this belief may therefore not be out of place. In connection with Gen. 6. 1–4 we find in Enoch (in addition to the passages cited above, comp. Charles' index, *s. v.* "Angels", as well as Bousset, *Religion*, 328, *seq.*, and 560, *seq.*) a legend concerning the angels who in the time of Jared (on the play of the word ירד "descended," comp. Jub. 4. 15 and Midrash Aggadah Gen. 5, 18, as well as Aggadat Bereshit, introduction 37, not in reference to the angels, but the generation which "sank low") rebelled against God and descended from heaven to earth where they were degraded (2 Peter 2. 4 reads: "cast them down", which is a midrashic interpretation of נפילים, Gen. 6. 4, deriving it from the Hifil and not from the Kal. This interpretation is also known, along with others, to BR 27. 7. Comp. also Aggadat Bereshit, Introduction 39, where it is connected with פלא, according to which it means "the distinguished"), because they had sexual intercourse with the daughters of man.



These fallen angels are the originators of all evil; through them witchcraft, astrology, and idolatry came down to man. They themselves were judged by God, and in accordance with His judgment, are awaiting punishment in the infernal regions at the end of time. But their descendants do mischief as spirits and demons all the time; they entice man to idolatry, immorality, and all kinds of sins (comp. note 54, and Bousset, index, *s. v.* "Daemonen"), and lure them on to their destruction. Jub. 4. 15, 22, and 5. 1, also speaks of the sexual intercourse between the angels and the daughters of man, and likewise ascribes the origin of evil to the demons (comp. especially 10. 1, *seq.*), the descendants of these sinful unions; but no mention is made of any rebellion of the angels in this pseudepigraphic work. On the contrary, it is stated there that these angels were sent by God to the earth (4. 14), "that they should instruct the children of men and that they should do justice and uprightness on earth", but having been lured by the beauty of women, they fell victims to them. The same view is to be found also in Apocalypse of Baruch 66. 11–15. Still more striking is the agreement between Jub. and the elaborated legend concerning the fall of the angels in the Clementine *Homilies*, 8. 11–15. This was also known to Commodianus, *Instructiones* 3. On the fall of the angels compare also with pp. 135, 136, and note 10 appertaining thereto. In 2 Enoch 18 the fall of the angels at the time of Jared seems to be taken as a continuation of the original rebellion of Satan and his hosts (compare on this point with pp. 12, 18, 51–52, 62–63, and the notes appertaining thereto, especially note 34 on the last passage), and this may be compared with Enoch 18. 15–16, where the rebellion of the stars (=angels) at the beginning of creation is spoken of. The literal interpretation of Gen. 6. 1–4 is found not only in the above-mentioned pseudepigraphic works, but also in the Septuagint (on the correct reading of this text comp. Frankel, *Ueber den Einfluss*, 46–47, and *Vorstudien* 67. See also Dillmann in commentary on Gen., *ad loc.*); Philo, *De Gigant.*, 2; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 3. 1; Aquila and Peshitta, *ad loc.*; 2 Peter 2. 4; Jude 6. The older Church Fathers follow this view, and make use of it in their explanations of the existence of evil in this world (comp. above and note 54); see *e. g.*, Justin Martyr, *Apologia*, 11, 5, and *Dialogue*, 79; Clementine, *Homilies*, 8. 11, *seq.*; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata* 5, 1, 10; Tertullian, *De Virgin.* 7 and *De Idol.* 9; Lactantius, *Institutiones*, 2. 15. The first attempt at a different interpretation of this Gen. passage is found in 12 Testaments, Reuben 5. 6. Here the intercourse of the angels with the women is described in the following words: "They (the angels) transformed themselves into the shape of men, and appeared to them when they (the women) were with their husbands. And the women, lusting in their minds after their forms, gave birth to giants". The giants, therefore, are not the physical descendants of the angels,

but for their size they are indebted to their mothers whose imaginations were filled with the beauty and tallness of the angels (on their high stature, see text on p. 707; hence in the Testaments: "for the watchers appeared to them as reaching even unto heaven;" this is in agreement with the explanation given by the Rabbis of the name ענקים as שבעניקין החמה בקומתן; comp. Sotah 34b; BR 26. 7, and many of the parallel passages cited by Theodor, *ad loc.*). The same view is also explicitly stated in Kallah 2, 8a, and the obscure passage in Tan. B. I, 26, is very likely to be explained accordingly. BR 27. 7 is a rationalistic interpretation (comp. Theodor, *ad loc.*) of this verse. While the literal meaning of "the sons of God" is still adhered to in the 12 Testaments, Reuben, *loc. cit.*, as well as in the 12 Testaments, Naphtali, 3. 5, Philo interprets this phrase to signify "virtuous men", and "the daughters of man" as "wicked and corrupted women" (*Quaestiones in Gen.*, 1, 92). In the authoritative writings of the Synagogue great stress is laid on the fact that Scripture does not know of any sexual intercourse between angels and women. "The sons of God" is declared to signify "distinguished men", particularly the ante-diluvian generations, who enjoyed happy and long lives, like the angels. See Sifre N., 86; Sifre Z., 194; BR 27. 2–5; Symmachus, Onkelos, and Targum Yerushalmi on Gen. 6. 2 and 4; Trypho, as quoted by Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 79. The first Christian author who discarded the literal interpretation of "the sons of God" was Julius Africanus (according to a quotation by Cyncellus, I, 34; comp. Charles, Jub., 4. 15; Origen, *Contra Celsum*, 4. 31, a contemporary of Africanus, knows that אלהים may mean "judge", but does not assign this signification to אל, in Gen. 6. 2), who lived one hundred years later than Trypho and R. Simon (comp. BR, *loc. cit.*). These two Rabbis expressed themselves most decisively against the myth of the angels' intercourse with the women. On the interpretation of the "sons of God" as the descendants of Seth, met with among the later Church Fathers, compare footnote 14 on p. 138. On the traces of the myth of the fallen angels in the non-authoritative writings of the Synagogue, compare with pp. 135–136, and note 10 appertaining thereto. The designation of Adam as "the son of God" in Luke 3. 38 (in a genealogical sense) shows that already in the early days of Christianity the conception of the incarnation of a God-like being was not confined to Christ. The rabbinic sources (Tan. B. V, 77; BaR 16. 24 and parallel passages) find in Ps. 82. 6–7 the contrast expressed between "the sons of the Most High" and Adam.

58. Enoch 12–16; Jub. 4. 17–23. Numerous legends are extant in the first mentioned pseudepigraphic work, as well as in 2 Enoch and in the Testaments of the Twelve Patriarchs, concerning the person of Enoch. He is the inventor of all sciences and knowledge; he has intercourse with angels in heaven, and is finally translated into paradise or



heaven where he dwells and performs the function of heavenly scribe or secretary. All these legends left no trace in the authoritative rabbinic sources, but are well known to the Church Fathers (comp. the numerous references in Schürer, *Geschichte*, III, 284–286, to which many more may be added; see, e. g., *Recognitiones*, 4. 13), and other Christian writers of ancient and medieval times; comp. e. g., *Visio Pauli* 20, and extracts from Christian literature by Fabricius, *Codex Pseudepigraphicus*, 106–223. In the entire Tannaitic literature and in both Talmudim no mention is made of Enoch. This name, however, is found two or three times in the older Midrashim (PK 23, 155a=WR 29. 22; BR 25. 1), but without the glory conferred on it by pseudepigraphic and Christian literature. It is stated in BR, *loc. cit.*, that Enoch was not translated, as the heretics (Christians or Jewish-Christians) assert, but that he died like any other human being. He even died before his time, because he had not been of a steadfast character, and God preferred that he should die young while he was yet righteous. Comp. also Koheleth 7. 15. But even pre-Christian authors like Wisdom 15. 11, and especially Philo, *Quaestiones in Gen.*, 1, 82–86, as well as *De Abrahamo*, 3, and *De Praemiis*, 3, not only deny the translation of Enoch, but know to report that he was originally a sinner, but subsequently followed the right path. The remark in PK, *loc. cit.*, concerning Enoch as the seventh since Adam who pleased God (like everything else “that was seventh”) is almost literally found in Enoch 93. 3 and Jude 14. But all the Midrash wants to say is that Enoch was better than the six previous patriarchs and this is no particular merit; comp. note 1. The superiority of Abraham’s piety to that of Enoch and Noah is emphasized in an old source from which Lekah on Gen. 5. 24 is an extract (it is another version of the Haggadah recorded in BR 30. 10; Tan. B. I, 81). Septuagint on Gen. 5. 24 is very likely to be understood to mean that Enoch was translated to heaven, which is stated also in Ecclu. 44. 16 and 49. 14 (פְּנִים) in this verse stands in some relation to its use in later mystic literature, where the designation of Enoch-Metatron as שַׂר הַפְּנִים, “angel of the face”, occurs frequently), as well as by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I. 3. 4, and Hebrews 11. 5. Hence Enoch and Elijah are the only two “witnesses” (comp. Revelation 11. 3) in Christian legends, because they were the only two that did not die (see the material collected by Bousset, *Antichrist*, index, s. v. “Zeugen”). In Ascension of Isaiah 9. 9, Isaiah sees Enoch in the seventh heaven, the residence of the righteous since the time of Adam. In view of the fact that no distinction is made here between Enoch and the other pious men it may be assumed that according to this apocryphal work Enoch came to heaven after his death. This would be in agreement with the official doctrine of the Synagogue (comp. above, and Onkelos Gen. 5. 24). Jub. 4. 23 and Enoch 70. 3–4 explicitly state that paradise was

the abode of Enoch (comp. also Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 37–38). This is also the opinion of later rabbinic writings. See further on this point note 61. The difference of opinion concerning Enoch’s abode after his translation corresponds to that about Elijah; compare footnote 32 on p. 995. MHG I, 123, quotes the following from a supposedly tannaitic source (the introductory formula is תַּנְאֵי): Three men ascended to heaven to perform service (*i. e.*, they served as angels, מַלְאכֵי הַשָּׁרֵת); they are: Enoch, Moses, and Elijah. This statement is followed by a remark that all the pious, after their death, are transformed into angels. This is certainly a later addition. On Moses compare with p. 832, see text on p. 996.

## ENOCH, RULER AND TEACHER

After Enoch had lived a long time secluded from men, he once heard the voice of an angel calling to him: “Enoch, Enoch, make thyself ready and leave the house and the secret place wherein thou hast kept thyself hidden, and assume dominion over men, to teach them the ways in which they shall walk, and the deeds which they shall do, in order that they may walk in the ways of God.”

Enoch left his retreat and betook himself to the haunts of men. He gathered them about him, and instructed them in the conduct pleasing to God. He sent messengers all over to announce, “Ye who desire to know the ways of God and righteous conduct, come ye to Enoch!” Thereupon a vast concourse of people thronged about him, to hear the wisdom he would teach and learn from his mouth what is good and right. Even kings and princes, no less than one hundred and thirty in number, assembled about him, and submitted themselves to his dominion, to be taught and guided by him, as he taught and guided all the others. Peace reigned thus over the whole world all the two hundred and forty-three years during which the influence of Enoch prevailed.

At the expiration of this period, in the year in which Adam died, and was buried with great



honors by Seth, Enosh, Enoch, and Methuselah, Enoch resolved to retire again from intercourse with men, and devote himself wholly to the service of God. But he withdrew gradually. First he would spend three days in prayer and praise of God, and on the fourth day he would return to his disciples and grant them instruction. Many years passed thus, then he appeared among them but once a week, later, once a month, and, finally, once a year. The kings, princes, and all others who were desirous of seeing Enoch and hearkening to his words did not venture to come close to him during the times of his retirement. Such awful majesty sat upon his countenance, they feared for their very life if they but looked at him. They therefore resolved that all men should prefer their requests before Enoch on the day he showed himself unto them.

The impression made by the teachings of Enoch upon all who heard them was powerful. They prostrated themselves before him, and cried "Long live the king! Long live the king!" On a certain day, while Enoch was giving audience to his followers, an angel appeared and made known unto him that God had resolved to install him as king over the angels in heaven, as until then he had reigned over men. He called together all the inhabitants of the earth, and addressed them thus: "I have been summoned to ascend into heaven, and I know not on what day I shall go thither. Therefore I will teach you wisdom and righteousness before I go hence." A few days yet Enoch spent among men, and all the time left to him he gave instruction in wisdom, knowledge, God-fearing conduct, and piety, and established law and order, for the regulation of the affairs of men. Then those gathered near him saw a gigantic steed descend from the skies, and they told Enoch of it, who said, "The steed is for me, for the time has come and the day when I leave you, never to be seen again." So it was. The steed approached Enoch, and he mounted upon its back,

all the time instructing the people, exhorting them, enjoining them to serve God and walk in His ways. Eight hundred thousand of the people followed a day's journey after him. But on the second day Enoch urged his retinue to turn back: "Go ye home, lest death overtake you, if you follow me farther." Most of them heeded his words and went back, but a number remained with him for six days, though he admonished them daily to return and not bring death down upon themselves. On the sixth day of the journey, he said to those still accompanying him, "Go ye home, for on the morrow I shall ascend to heaven, and whoever will then be near me, he will die." Nevertheless, some of his companions remained with him, saying: "Whithersoever thou goest, we will go. By the living God, death alone shall part us."

On the seventh day Enoch was carried into the heavens in a fiery chariot drawn by fiery chargers. The day thereafter, the kings who had turned back in good time sent messengers to inquire into the fate of the men who had refused to separate themselves from Enoch, for they had noted the number of them. They found snow and great hailstones upon the spot whence Enoch had risen, and, when they searched beneath, they discovered the bodies of all who had remained behind with Enoch. He alone was not among them; he was on high in heaven.<sup>59</sup>

---

59. Yashar Bereshit, 11a–13a, and thence it was incorporated in BHM IV, 129–132. No real parallels are found in the older pseudepigraphic and rabbinic literature to this description of the activity and translation of Enoch (the fiery horse, of course, goes back to 2 Kings 2. 11), although the books of Enoch, Jub., and other writings (comp. the preceding note) know to report a good deal about Enoch's piety and wisdom. He is mentioned as the father of astronomy and calendation also in PRE 8, where it is stated that Noah received instruction from him after his translation (Luria, *ad loc.*, is to be corrected accordingly). See also Midrash Aggada Gen. 5. 24; Eupolemus, 419. In the



source of Yashar mention was very likely made also of Enoch's temporary stay with the angels concerning which the books of Enoch speak in detail. The idea that Enoch's countenance was awe-inspiring, and could cause death, is probably related to 2 Enoch 27. 38, whose Enoch legends Yashar employs also elsewhere; compare with p. 126, and the following note. The view that Enoch solemnly buried Adam goes back to Seder 'Olam 1 and Baba Batra 121b, whereas according to another legend, it was Seth who attended to his father's funeral. Compare with pp. 96–97.

## THE ASCENSION OF ENOCH

**T**his was not the first time Enoch had been in heaven. Once before, while he sojourned among men, he had been permitted to see all there is on earth and in the heavens. On a time when he was sleeping, a great grief came upon his heart, and he wept in his dream, not knowing what the grief meant, nor what would happen to him. And there appeared to him two men, very tall. Their faces shone like the sun, and their eyes were like burning lamps, and fire came forth from their lips; their wings were brighter than gold, their hands whiter than snow. They stood at the head of Enoch's bed, and called him by his name. He awoke from his sleep, and hastened and made obeisance to them, and was terrified. And these men said to him: "Be of good cheer, Enoch, be not afraid; the everlasting God hath sent us to thee, and lo! to-day thou shalt ascend with us into heaven. And tell thy sons and thy servants, and let none seek thee, till the Lord bring thee back to them."

Enoch did as he was told, and after he had spoken to his sons, and instructed them not to turn aside from God, and to keep His judgment, these two men summoned him, and took him on their wings, and placed him on the clouds, which moved higher and higher, till they set him down in the first heaven. Here they showed him the two hundred angels who rule the stars, and

their heavenly service. Here he saw also the treasures of snow and ice, of clouds and dew.

From there they took him to the second heaven, where he saw the fallen angels imprisoned, they who obeyed not the commandments of God, and took counsel of their own will. The fallen angels said to Enoch, "O man of God! Pray for us to the Lord," and he answered: "Who am I, a mortal man, that I should pray for angels? Who knows whither I go, or what awaits me?"

They took him from thence to the third heaven, where they showed him Paradise, with all the trees of beautiful colors, and their fruits, ripe and luscious, and all kinds of food which they produced, springing up with delightful fragrance. In the midst of Paradise he saw the tree of life, in that place in which God rests when He comes into Paradise. This tree cannot be described for its excellence and sweet fragrance, and it is beautiful, more than any created thing, and on all its sides it is like gold and crimson in appearance, and transparent as fire, and it covers everything. From its root in the garden there go forth four streams, which pour out honey, milk, oil, and wine, and they go down to the Paradise of Eden, that lies on the confines between the earthly region of corruptibility and the heavenly region of incorruptibility, and thence they go along the earth. He also saw the three hundred angels who keep the garden, and with never-ceasing voices and blessed singing they serve the Lord every day. The angels leading Enoch explained to him that this place is prepared for the righteous, while the terrible place prepared for the sinners is in the northern regions of the third heaven. He saw there all sorts of tortures, and impenetrable gloom, and there is no light there, but a gloomy fire is always burning. And all that place has fire on all sides, and on all sides cold and ice, thus it burns and freezes. And the angels, terrible and without pity, carry savage weapons, and their torture is unmerciful.



The angels took him then to the fourth heaven, and showed him all the comings in and goings forth, and all the rays of the light of the sun and the moon. He saw the fifteen myriads of angels who go out with the sun, and attend him during the day, and the thousand angels who attend him by night. Each angel has six wings, and they go before the chariot of the sun, while one hundred angels keep the sun warm, and light it up. He saw also the wonderful and strange creatures named phoenixes and chalkidri, who attend the chariot of the sun, and go with him, bringing heat and dew. They showed him also the six gates in the east of the fourth heaven, by which the sun goes forth, and the six gates in the west where he sets, and also the gates by which the moon goes out, and those by which she enters. In the middle of the fourth heaven he saw an armed host, serving the Lord with cymbals and organs and unceasing voices.

In the fifth heaven he saw many hosts of the angels called Grigori. Their appearance was like men, and their size was greater than the size of the giants, their countenances were withered, and their lips silent. On his question who they were, the angels leading him answered, "These are the Grigori, who with their prince Salamiel rejected the holy Lord." Enoch then said to the Grigori, "Why wait ye, brethren, and serve ye not before the face of the Lord, and why perform ye not your duties before the face of the Lord, and anger not your Lord to the end?" The Grigori listened to the rebuke, and when the trumpets resounded together with a loud call, they also began to sing with one voice, and their voices went forth before the Lord with sadness and tenderness.

In the seventh heaven he saw the seven bands of archangels who arrange and study the revolutions of the stars and the changes of the moon and the revolution of the sun, and superintend the good or evil conditions of the world. And they arrange teachings and instructions and sweet

speaking and singing and all kinds of glorious praise. They hold in subjection all living things, both in heaven and on earth. In the midst of them are seven phoenixes, and seven cherubim, and seven six-winged creatures, singing with one voice.

When Enoch reached the seventh heaven, and saw all the fiery hosts of great archangels and incorporeal powers and lordships and principalities and powers, he was afraid and trembled with a great terror. Those leading him took hold of him, and brought him into the midst of them, and said to him, "Be of good cheer, Enoch, be not afraid," and they showed him the Lord from afar, sitting on His lofty throne, while all the heavenly hosts, divided in ten classes, having approached, stood on the ten steps according to their rank, and made obeisance to the Lord. And so they proceeded to their places in joy and mirth and boundless light, singing songs with low and gentle voices, and gloriously serving Him. They leave not nor depart day or night, standing before the face of the Lord, working His will, cherubim and seraphim, standing around His throne. And the six-winged creatures overshadow all His throne, singing with a soft voice before the face of the Lord, "Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts; heaven and earth are full of His glory." When he had seen all these, the angels leading him said to him, "Enoch, up to this time we were ordered to accompany thee." They departed, and he saw them no more. Enoch remained at the extremity of the seventh heaven, in great terror, saying to himself, "Woe is me! What has come upon me!" But then Gabriel came and said unto him, "Enoch, be not afraid, stand up and come with me, and stand up before the face of the Lord forever." And Enoch answered: "O my lord, my spirit has departed from me with fear and trembling. Call the men to me who have brought me to the place! Upon them I have relied, and with them I would go before the face of the Lord." And Gabriel hurried him away



like a leaf carried off by the wind, and set him before the face of the Lord. Enoch fell down and worshipped the Lord, who said to him: "Enoch, be not afraid! Rise up and stand before My face forever." And Michael lifted him up, and at the command of the Lord took his earthly robe from him, and anointed him with the holy oil, and clothed him, and when he gazed upon himself, he looked like one of God's glorious ones, and fear and trembling departed from him. God called then one of His archangels who was more wise than all the others, and wrote down all the doings of the Lord, and He said to him, "Bring forth the books from My store-place, and give a reed to Enoch, and interpret the books to him." The angel did as he was commanded, and he instructed Enoch thirty days and thirty nights, and his lips never ceased speaking, while Enoch was writing down all the things about heaven and earth, angels and men, and all that is suitable to be instructed in. He also wrote down all about the souls of men, those of them which are not born, and the places prepared for them forever. He copied all accurately, and he wrote three hundred and sixty-six books. After he had received all the instructions from the archangel, God revealed unto him great secrets, which even the angels do not know. He told him how, out of the lowest darkness, the visible and the invisible were created, how He formed heaven, light, water, and earth, and also the fall of Satan and the creation and sin of Adam. He narrated to him, and further revealed to him that the duration of the world will be seven thousand years, and the eighth millennium will be a time when there is no computation, no end, neither years, nor months, nor weeks, nor days, nor hours.

The Lord finished this revelation to Enoch with the words: "And now I give thee Samuil and Raguil, who brought thee to Me. Go with them upon the earth, and tell thy sons what things I have said to thee, and what thou hast seen from

the lowest heaven up to My throne. Give them the works written out by thee, and they shall read them, and shall distribute the books to their children's children and from generation to generation and from nation to nation. And I will give thee My messenger Michael for thy writings and for the writings of thy fathers, Adam, Seth, Enosh, Kenan, Mahalalel, and Jared thy father. And I shall not require them till the last age, for I have instructed My two angels, Ariuk and Mariuk, whom I have put upon the earth as their guardians, and I have ordered them in time to guard them, that the account of what I shall do in thy family may not be lost in the deluge to come. For on account of the wickedness and iniquity of men, I will bring a deluge upon the earth, and I will destroy all, but I will leave a righteous man of thy race with all his house, who shall act according to My will. From their seed will be raised up a numerous generation, and on the extinction of that family, I will show them the books of thy writings and of thy father, and the guardians of them on earth will show them to the men who are true and please Me. And they shall tell to another generation, and they, having read them, shall be glorified at last more than before."

Enoch was then sent to earth to remain there for thirty days to instruct his sons, but before he left heaven, God sent an angel to him whose appearance was like snow, and his hands were like ice. Enoch looked at him, and his face was chilled, that men might be able to endure the sight of him. The angels who took him to heaven put him upon his bed, in the place where his son Methuselah was expecting him by day and by night. Enoch assembled his sons and all his household, and instructed them faithfully about all things he had seen, heard, and written down, and he gave his books to his sons, to keep them and read them, admonishing them not to conceal the books, but tell them to all desiring to know. When the thirty days had been completed,



the Lord sent darkness upon the earth, and there was gloom, and it hid the men standing with Enoch. And the angels hasted and took Enoch, and carried him to the highest heaven, where the Lord received him and set him before His face, and the darkness departed from the earth, and there was light. And the people saw, and did not understand how Enoch was taken, and they glorified God.

Enoch was born on the sixth day of the month of Siwan, and he was taken to heaven in the same month, Siwan, on the same day and in the same hour when he was born. And Methuselah hastened and all his brethren, the sons of Enoch, and built an altar in the place called Achuzan, whence Enoch was taken up to heaven. The elders and all the people came to the festivity and brought their gifts to the sons of Enoch, and made a great festivity, rejoicing and being merry for three days, praising God, who had given such a sign by means of Enoch, who had found favor with them.<sup>60</sup>

---

60. An extract from Slavonic (=2) Enoch. The Ethiopic book of Enoch, though it is older than the Slavonic, is not of a uniform character. It consists of a series of revelations which were made to Enoch during the time of his wanderings through heaven and earth and his intercourse with the angels. These revelations, varied in their contents, embracing the laws of nature, as well as the history of the kingdom of God, were entered into this book by Enoch to teach mankind. Six quotations from "the book of Enoch" are found in Zohar (I, 37b; 72b; II, 55a; III, 240a; 248b; 253b); but, as may be seen from the nature of their contents, they were taken from a much later kabbalistic book, which has nothing in common with the pseudopigraphic work bearing that name. Comp. further Kaneh 19b and 107a (this passage is identical with Zohar I, 37b, where *בספריה* is to be deleted) concerning "the book of Enoch preserved in heaven, which no eye can see." On the other rabbinic books of Enoch, comp. the following note.—Some parallels to the Slavonic Enoch from rabbinic and other sources may be mentioned here. Enoch had three sons (1. 10); so Yashar Bereshit, 11b. The statement about the two hundred angels, which guide the stars (4. 1), is related to

the corresponding number of rebellious angels in Enoch 6. 5; the stars had already revolted at the beginning of creation; Enoch 18. 15, comp. note 57. On the oil and the tree of life (6; 8. 7; 22. 8; 56. 2), compare footnote 113 on p. 91. The description of the fallen angels reads (7. 3): Who obeyed not the commandments of God, etc. This is found literally in Zadokite Fragments, 2. The tree of life as God's residence (8. 3) is also met with in rabbinic sources; comp. vol. I, p. 23. Similarly the view that this tree covers the entire paradise (7. 4) is also found in Perek Gan 'Eden, where, as in this pseudopigraphic work (7. 5), the four streams, of honey, wine, milk, and oil are mentioned; compare with p. 18, and note appertaining thereto. The hell-fire burns and freezes (10. 2); so also in Seder Rabba di-Bereshit, 17. Concerning the chariot on which the sun is riding, and on the angels which accompany it, comp. the parallels in text on p. 24. The phoenixes and Chalkadri (more accurately, Chalkydri *χαλκυδρα*, "brazen serpents") on the chariot of the sun (13) are unknown in rabbinic literature; but on the view that the singing of celestial beings causes the birds to sing their morning songs (15), compare with pp. 44–45, and the note appertaining thereto. That there are angels, who, unlike the Cherubim, possess twelve wings (12. 1), is also stated in PRE 13. The seven hosts of angels who arrange the course of the heavenly bodies and guide the universe (19. 1, *seq.*) are met with in Jewish magic texts as seven archangels; comp. Stube, *Jüdisch-babylonische Zaubertexte*, 22, where *מהפכין* means "setting in motion", and not "transforming", as Stube translates. The idea that there is "an angel over each single blade of grass" (19.4) occurs also in rabbinic writings; comp. BR 10. 6 (Mazzal=angel; comp. Tehillim 104, 440, which reads: Everything has an angel in charge of it. See further Zohar II, 80b and 171b; III, 86a, and footnote 101 on p. 83). The division of the angels into ten groups (20. 1) is very often referred to in rabbinic literature; compare footnote 64 on p. 13 (below). Michael, the chief captain (22. 6), is based directly on Dan. 12. 1, whence also the title of the archangel in Hullin 40a, whereas Tosefta 2. 18 reads *שר צבא הגדול*. Instead of Vretil, the angel who becomes Enoch's teacher (22. 12), read Uriel, in accordance with Enoch 10. 1. The remark (24. 1): "Sit thou on my left hand with Gabriel" proves the antiquity of the view, found in rabbinic writings (PRE 4; compare further footnote 440 on p. 685), concerning Gabriel's position on the left. The "song of triumph" of the angels, mentioned in 31. 2 and 42. 4, is perhaps due to a misunderstanding which goes back to an erroneous translation of *שיר נצח* ("eternal song") as "song of triumph", comp. the similar phrase, *קדושתן נקדש* and *קדושתן נצח* in the Amidah. The statement (33. 4) "My word is reality" literally corresponds to BR 44. 22; compare footnote 2 on p. 47. The names of the two angels (33. 6) are perhaps composed of *שמיא* and *ארעא* with *אל*; the angel of heaven



and the angel of earth were charged to accompany him on his journey from earth to heaven and back. The angels who watch over the book of Enoch, Oriokh and Mariokh (33. 11) have no connection whatsoever with the fallen angels Harut and Marut of the Arabic legend (supposedly Persian; comp. Bousset, *Religion*, 560); they rather seem to be theophorous names with **י** and **יה**, or similar abbreviations of the first part of the Tetragrammaton. Thus **אורי** means “God is light” (comp. **אוריה**, **אוריהאל**) and **מרי** signifies “God is master”. In order to avoid the pronunciation of God’s name, people said “**iok**” instead of “**io**” (to this very day Jews say **אלקים** instead of **אלהים**). The parable about the appearance before a prince (38. 8) is found almost literally in Berakot 28b and ARN 25, 79, where it is ascribed to the dying Rabban Johanan B. Zaccai (compare also footnote 132 on p. 96). The fact that Enoch finds Adam and Eve, as well as his other ancestors, in the lower world (41. 1 and 42. 5) has nothing to do with the Christian doctrine (not the Jewish, as Charles asserts) of the damnation of mankind until the advent of the Messiah. It merely wishes to say that Enoch’s ancestors were there as a punishment for their sins. This author, on the other hand, admits the possibility of absolute sinlessness (45. 2). On the view that God formed Adam with His own hands (44. 1), compare with p. 47. On the rejection of the oath (49.11), see the rabbinic parallels in Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 130–132. On the protest against the belief in the intercession of the dead (53. 1), compare with p. 869, and note 19 appertaining to it. Concerning the attitude of the Synagogue on this important point it is not uninteresting to note the following words of the first paitan of the Synagogue, Jose b. Jose. This paitan, after enumerating the pious men of the Bible and describing the reward they received from God, who always accepted their prayers, observes: “O God, I trust in Thee, and not in the distinguished pious men; for they are in the grave, but Thy name is everlasting” (Zikronot in the Ashkenazic Mahzor). The great reverence for the pious, especially for those of biblical times, has not gone so far as to make them intercessors between God and Israel. In his prayers the Jew knows only his God, and thinks of no intercessors among the angels or the pious.—On the transformation of Enoch from man to angel (see 22. 9–10; 37; 56) comp. the preceding note, as well as text on p. 130. With respect to the reward and punishment of animals (mentioned in 55. 5), comp. 4 Ezra 7. 66, and Index, *s. v.*, “Animals.” The Halakah that animals must be bound at the time of slaughter (59. 3) is not altogether new; comp. Tamid 4. 1, and Shabbat 54a, with respect to the temple sacrifices (where, however, binding in the manner perscribed in this pseudoe-pigraphic work is prohibited); with regard to other animals, see *Eldad*, XLIV and Ginzberg, *Tamid, the Oldest Treatise*, 206. The parting scene (64 and 67) is related to the one given in Yashar (compare with p. 123). The view that the

entire creation was for the sake of man (65. 3) is also frequently mentioned in rabbinic sources; compare with p. 47. It is questionable whether the words “and God set him before His face” (67. 2) are related to the usual designation found in geonic mysticism of Metatron-Enoch (comp. the following note) as the “prince of the face”, or not, since in this pseudoe-pigraphic book the phrase “to be found in God’s presence” is of frequent occurrence; comp. 21. 1; 22. 6; 52. 4. The assertion that Enoch was translated to heaven on the anniversary of the day and the hour on which he was born (28) goes back to a view prevalent in rabbinic writings that the pious die on their birthday. Comp. Tosefta Sotah 11. 7–8; Babli 13b; Kiddushin 38a; Seder ‘Olam 10, according to the reading of the older authors (see Ratner, note 12). The statement that it was the sixth of Sivan on which Enoch was born, and later translated, certainly proves that by this author this day was considered the day of the Revelation (comp. Seder ‘Olam 5; Tosefta ‘Arakin 1. 9, and the detailed discussion appertaining to it in Shabbat 86a–88a). In other words, this author regards Pentecost as the Festival of Revelation, a view with which we meet for the first time in the rabbinic sources of the middle of the second century of the common era. It may be remarked that the text is not quite in order, since if Enoch (68) reached heaven on the first of Sivan (one text reads Nisan; comp. also 1. 2 where the first month=Nisan), remained there for sixty days, and after a stay of thirty days on earth was translated for ever, his translation must have taken place in Elul (as in the case of Moses; compare with p. 812). The number of books composed by Enoch (68) is given as 366, which is very likely to be corrected to 365 as it is connected with the 365 years of Enoch’s life; comp., however, *Liber Johannis Apocryphus*, 890 (in a passage, where our pseudoe-pigraphic work is made use of, the number of books given is 66). Ezra, to whom, in 4 Ezra, Enoch’s part is ascribed, wrote seventy books; compare with p. 1123. By the place Achuzan (68. 5; also written Aruzan; comp. the Melchizedek fragment in the appendix to the Slavonic Enoch, 88) Jerusalem is to be understood as may be seen from the above-mentioned fragment 91, which reads as follows: He (Melchizedek) shall be priest and king in the place Achuzan, that is to say, in the middle of the earth where Adam was created; there shall at last be his grave. Since Melchizedek was king of Jerusalem (text on p. 196), and the dust of the forming of Adam’s body was taken from the site of the altar at Jerusalem (text on pp. 54, 97), there cannot be any doubt about the identification of Achuzan. Moreover, Jerusalem is said to be the centre of the earth (text on p. 7). The only difficult question is about the etymology of the word Achuzan; compare footnote 109 on p. 87. It is perhaps to be emended to Arauna, since the site of the altar at Jerusalem belonged to Arauna the Jebusite; comp. Index, *s. v.* This is, of course, no proof that this pseudoe-pigraphic



work had a Hebrew original; still less would it prove that it is of Palestinian origin, although both assumptions appear probable. These two questions, it is hoped, will be discussed more fully in some other connection.

## THE TRANSLATION OF ENOCH

**T**he sinfulness of men was the reason why Enoch was translated to heaven. Thus Enoch himself told Rabbi Ishmael. When the generation of the deluge transgressed, and spoke to God, saying, "Depart from us, for we do not desire to know Thy ways," Enoch was carried to heaven, to serve there as a witness that God was not a cruel God in spite of the destruction decreed upon all living beings on earth.

When Enoch, under the guidance of the angel 'Anpiel, was carried from earth to heaven, the holy beings, the ofanim, the seraphim, the cherubim, all those who move the throne of God, and the ministering spirits whose substance is of consuming fire, they all, at a distance of six hundred and fifty million and three hundred parasangs, noticed the presence of a human being, and they exclaimed: "Whence the odor of one born of woman? How comes he into the highest heaven of the fire-coruscating angels?" But God replied: "O My servants and hosts, ye, My cherubim, ofanim, and seraphim, let this not be an offense unto you, for all the children of men denied Me and My mighty dominion, and they paid homage to the idols, so that I transferred the Shekinah from earth to heaven. But this man Enoch is the elect of men. He has more faith, justice, and righteousness than all the rest, and he is the only reward I have derived from the terrestrial world."

Before Enoch could be admitted to service near the Divine throne, the gates of wisdom were opened unto him, and the gates of understanding, and of discernment, of life, peace, and the

Shekinah, of strength and power, of might, loveliness, and grace, of humility and fear of sin. Equipped by God with extraordinary wisdom, sagacity, judgment, knowledge, learning, compassionateness, love, kindness, grace, humility, strength, power, might, splendor, beauty, shapeliness, and all other excellent qualities, beyond the endowment of any of the celestial beings, Enoch received, besides, many thousand blessings from God, and his height and his breadth became equal to the height and the breadth of the world, and thirty-six wings were attached to his body, to the right and to the left, each as large as the world, and three hundred and sixty-five thousand eyes were bestowed upon him, each brilliant as the sun. A magnificent throne was erected for him beside the gates of the seventh celestial palace, and a herald proclaimed throughout the heavens concerning him, who was henceforth to be called Metatron in the celestial regions: "I have appointed My servant Metatron as prince and chief over all the princes in My realm, with the exception only of the eight august and exalted princes that bear My name. Whatever angel has a request to prefer to Me, shall appear before Metatron, and what he will command at My bidding, ye must observe and do, for the prince of wisdom and the prince of understanding are at his service, and they will reveal unto him the sciences of the celestials and the terrestrials, the knowledge of the present order of the world and the knowledge of the future order of the world. Furthermore, I have made him the guardian of the treasures of the palaces in the heaven 'Arabot, and of the treasures of life that are in the highest heaven."

Out of the love He bore Enoch, God arrayed him in a magnificent garment, to which every kind of luminary in existence was attached, and a crown gleaming with forty-nine jewels, the splendor of which pierced to all parts of the seven heavens and to the four corners of the earth. In



the presence of the heavenly family, He set this crown upon the head of Enoch, and called him “the little Lord.” It bears also the letters by means of which heaven and earth were created, and seas and rivers, mountains and valleys, planets and constellations, lightning and thunder, snow and hail, storm and whirlwind—these and also all things needed in the world, and the mysteries of creation. Even the princes of the heavens, when they see Metatron, tremble before him, and prostrate themselves; his magnificence and majesty, the splendor and beauty radiating from him overwhelm them, even the wicked Samael, the greatest of them, even Gabriel the angel of the fire, Bardiel the angel of the hail, Ruḥiel the angel of the wind, Barkiel the angel of the lightning, Za’miel the angel of the hurricane, Zaḳkiel the angel of the storm, Sui’el the angel of the earthquake, Za’fiel the angel of the showers, Ra’miel the angel of the thunder, Ra’shiel the angel of the whirlwind, Shalguel the angel of the snow, Maṭriel the angel of the rain, Shamshiel the angel of the day, Leliel the angel of the night, Galgliel the angel of the solar system, Ofaniel the angel of the wheel of the moon, Kokabiel the angel of the stars, and Rahtiel the angel of the constellations.

When Enoch was transformed into Metatron, his body was turned into celestial fire—his flesh became flame, his veins fire, his bones glimmering coals, the light of his eyes heavenly brightness, his eyeballs torches of fire, his hair a flaring blaze, all his limbs and organs burning sparks, and his frame a consuming fire. To right of him sparkled flames of fire, to left of him burnt torches of fire, and on all sides he was engirdled by storm and whirlwind, hurricane and thundering.<sup>61</sup>

61: Hekalot 6, 170–171 (abbreviated in Sefer Hanok, 114–116). The seventy names (on שְׁמֹת צ”ב, Hanok,

p. 116, comp. Alphabet R. Akiba ed. Wertheimer, p. 13) of Metatron, which are very important for the history of mysticism, are given in *Sha’ar ha-Heshek*. To the Metatron-Enoch literature belong also both versions of Alphabet of R. Akiba, as well as the different Hekalot books. The oldest source assuming the identity of Enoch and Metatron (to this still enigmatic name of the angel, which occurs very frequently in the Talmud, the Syriac מְטַטְרוֹן, λόγος ἐπιθρόνων is closely related) is Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 5. 24, where the text, however, has certainly not been preserved in its original form, as may be seen from אֲתַנְנִיךָ, “was carried away.” Comp. 2 Targum Yerushalmi, *ad loc.* On the Enoch-Metatron cycle of legends, comp. especially the numerous extracts from the older kabbalistic literature in Yalkut Reubeni Gen. 5. 24; Kanah, 106d (Midrash Aggada, Gen., *loc. cit.*, is based on this passage or on an older source from which both borrowed independently). See further Jellinek, *Einleitung* to BHM II, 30–32; IV, 41–43, as well as Theodor on BR 25. 1. It is questionable whether in BaR 12. 12 Metatron is identical with Enoch, or not. The designation of Metatron here as the “youth” is independent of this identification; comp. Tosafot on Yebamot 16b and Hullin 60a. The relation of the Metatron-Enoch legend cycle to the legends found in the pseudepigraphic books of Enoch is not quite clear. There can be no doubt that there exists no literary relationship between the so-called rabbinic books of Enoch (the term “rabbinic” is here employed in absence of a better name; as a matter of fact the “Rabbis” were opposed to this literature) and with pseudepigraphic literature bearing the same name. This is quite obvious to any one familiar with both literatures. Yet as has been pointed out in the preceding note many conceptions are common to both, as, for instance, Enoch’s transformation into an angel (mentioned in 2 Enoch and in Hekalot) on his entrance into heaven. This, however, proves only that, despite the fact that the leaders of the Synagogue had no high respect for Enoch (comp. note 58, where reference is likewise made to Wisdom and Philo; hence this need not necessarily be ascribed to anti-Christian tendencies), the older esteem of Enoch was not only retained in popular circles, but it was even enlarged until it reached its highest pinnacle in the identification of Enoch with Metatron. The Babylonian Nebo, the heavenly scribe, gave Enoch to the Palestinian, Metatron to the Babylonian Jews, and nothing could be more natural than the final combination of Enoch-Metatron. It is quite probable that a number of other elements were added to this combination, as, for instance, Philonian speculations on the Logos, and possibly also Christological conceptions; it is thus extremely difficult to separate it in its original component parts. Between the “official” depreciation of Enoch and his apotheosis in popular-mystical literature, some of the rabbinic sources have retained a middle course, and basing their views on



the literal interpretation of Gen. 5. 24, maintain that Enoch belonged to those few (various numbers are given: seven, nine, ten, thirteen) who entered paradise during their life-time; comp. Derek Erez Zuta (end); PRK, 83; 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 38; Yalkut I, 42, and (two sources) Ezek., 367; Aggudat Aggadot (Carmoly) 12; Kimhi on 2 Kings 2. 1. Compare on these “immortals” footnote 67 and footnote 307 on pp. 72 and 241 respectively. None of the sources just cited can be designated with certainty as old. It is true that Derek Erez Zuta is old (comp. Ginzberg in *Jewish Encyclopedia*, IV, 528–529), but it is doubtful whether the original text counted Enoch among the “immortals”; comp. Tawrogi, *ad loc.*, and further Mahzor Vitry, 721, whose author does not seem to have had the passage about the immortals in his text of Derek Erez Zuta. The view, however, that Enoch’s abode is in paradise is old (comp. note 58), and is frequently found in Christian legends; comp. Irenaeus 2. 66 (Enoch is said to have taught the disciples of the apostles); the Gospel of Nicodemus 9 (Latin version), etc. In Christian legends it is stated that Enoch and Elijah will also die at the end of time (it is even said that the anti-Christ will kill them); see History of Joseph the Carpenter 31–32 (as “immortals” are mentioned here: Shila and Tabitha); Nicodemus, *loc. cit.*; Revelation of John (beginning). In Midrash Alphabetot, 89a, it is stated that before the creation of the new world, everything, even the most high angels, will disappear, so that God’s unity will be seen by all. Comp. also Tertullian, *Adversus Hermog.*, 34, and Sanhedrin, 92a–92b.—On the twenty angels enumerated in Hekalot 175, (Sammael, the head of all the Satans, is described as “the greatest of all the angels”; read **מלאכי** instead of **מלכיות**; comp., however, *Seder Ruhot*, 179, where Satan is distinguished from Sammael, “the prince of Rome”; see also DR 11. 9, which reads: Sammael, the head of all the Satans), comp. note 57. It is noteworthy that these angels are exclusively in charge of natural phenomena and heavenly bodies. Furthermore, it is strange that Michael is not mentioned among them, and that all the stars are assigned to the charge of one angel. On the other hand, an old tradition states (Al-Barceloni, 247) that each one of the seven planets has its own angel as follows: the sun has Raphael; Venus, Aniel; Mercury, Michael; the moon, Gabriel; Saturn, Kafziel; Jupiter, Zadkiel; Mars, Sammael. These seven planets and their seven angels, it is further said, correspond to the seven hours (? Read, perhaps, **שרים** “princes” or **משרתים** “attendants”); these are: Shamsha, Belti, Nebo, Sin, Kewan, Bel (instead of **כיל** read **ביל**), and **ארים**. The last-named must not be changed into **ארמי**, Hermes, since this text contains the chief gods of the Babylonian Pantheon. On the functions of the seven planets, comp. Shabbat 156a; Baraita de-Mazzalot, 27–28; Pick, *Assyrisches und Talmudisches*, 17–19. Al-Barceloni’s words are: **ואלו הם כוכבים בעולם חנכ”ל שצ”ם אלו שבעה מושלים**

**יסודי עולם כנגדן ז’ שעות כון נבו שמשא כיל (ביל read בלתי ארים ועליהם ז’ ממונים ז’ מלאכים חמה מלאכו רפאל וכו’.**

## METHUSELAH

**A**fter the translation of Enoch, Methuselah was proclaimed ruler of the earth by all the kings. He walked in the footsteps of his father, teaching truth, knowledge, and fear of God to the children of men all his life, and deviating from the path of rectitude neither to the right nor the left.<sup>62</sup> He delivered the world from thousands of demons, the posterity of Adam which he had begotten with Lilith, that she-devil of she-devils. These demons and evil spirits, as often as they encountered a man, had sought to injure and even slay him, until Methuselah appeared, and supplicated the mercy of God. He spent three days in fasting, and then God gave him permission to write the Ineffable Name upon his sword, wherewith he slew ninety-four myriads of the demons in a minute, until Agrimus, the first-born of them, came to him and entreated him to desist, at the same time handing the names of the demons and imps over to him. And so Methuselah placed their kings in iron fetters, while the remainder fled away and hid themselves in the innermost chambers and recesses of the ocean. And it is on account of the wonderful sword by means of which the demons were killed that he was called Methuselah.<sup>63</sup>

He was so pious a man that he composed two hundred and thirty parables in praise of God for every word he uttered. When he died, the people heard a great commotion in the heavens, and they saw nine hundred rows of mourners corresponding to the nine hundred orders of the Mishnah which he had studied, and tears flowed from the eyes of the holy beings down upon the spot where he died. Seeing the grief of the



celestials, the people on earth also mourned over the demise of Methuselah, and God rewarded them therefor. He added seven days to the time of grace which He had ordained before bringing destruction upon the earth by a flood of waters.<sup>64</sup>

62. Yashar Bereshit, 13a, where it is said that the sinfulness of the generation of the flood did not begin before the end of Methuselah's life. The Melchizedek fragment 1–2 in appendix to 2 Enoch states that Methuselah was installed as ruler and leader after his father's translation, and that man's apostasy did not take place till after his death, as God had previously told him. The election of Methuselah had been announced through a clear sign that it was acceptable to God; for while he was praying, the altar shook, and a knife leaped into Methuselah's hand in the presence of all the people. The Jewish legend (comp. the following note) about Methuselah's wonderful sword is, of course, not to be dissociated from this "knife", and is closely related to the name Methuselah, since שלח may mean both "he sent" and "sword". Is the statement made in an anonymous Midrash (cited in Yalkut II, 367, Ezek. 27) that Methuselah is one of those whom death did not destroy (in addition to him, there are: Enoch; Eliezer, Abraham's servant; Hiram, king of Tyre; Ebed-melech; Bithiah, Pharaoh's daughter; Serah, Asher's daughter; the three sons of Korah; Elijah; the Messiah, and R. Joshua b. Levi, compare preceding note and footnote 67 on p. 72), connected with the etymology given by Philo (*De Posterit. Caini*, 13) "sending away of death" (=מיתת משולחת)? It is more probable, however, that we have here a reminiscence of a Christian legend. According to the chronology of the Septuagint with regard to the ante-diluvian patriarchs, Methuselah was still alive at the time of the flood. Now, since according to the Bible he was not among the inmates of the ark, the only solution of the difficulty was that he was taken away from this world to live in paradise at least for some time. Comp. Jerome, Gen. 5; Fabricius, *Codex Pseudepigraphicus*, 224–227; *Shalshelet*, 93b.

63. Yerahmeel 23. 1–4; *Sifte Kohen*, Bereshit (end) and Noah, 4d. A Genizah fragment in the library of Cambridge University containing this legend in detailed form

was published by Ginzberg, *Ha-Goren* IX, 66–68. Comp. also Vital, *Likkute Torah*, Bereshit (end), about Methuselah's sword. See further Yalkut David on Gen. 12. 1, who cites *Sifte Kohen*, as authority for the statement that Abraham came in possession of this sword, with which he conquered the kings, and further that Esau thus received it, as heirloom, from Isaac, since he was the first-born. This sword passed to Jacob when he purchased the birth-right. This is not found in *Sifte Kohen*, but something similar occurs in other sources. Compare with p. 258, and further the quotation from MS. in *Midbar Kedemot*, s. v. מתושלח. Agri-mus is identical with Anglo-Mainyu, also called Ahriman, the lord of Daeves, of the Persians. Comp. Ginzberg, *Ha-Goren*, loc. cit. 59–61.

64. Yerahmeel 23. 5–6; Midrash Aggada, Gen. 5. 25; an anonymous Midrash in Yalkut I, 42 (in later edition Abkir is given as the source); Aggadat Bereshit (introduction), 38; Sikli, who cites *Huppat Eliyyahu* as the source in his MS. work Yalkut Talmud Torah (comp. Poznanski, *Ha-Zofeh* III, 11–12, and Ginzberg, *ibid.*, IV, 28; the latter refers to Sabba, Bereshit, 9a, who is acquainted with a similar legend). Comp. further *Kad ha-Kemah* s. v. אבל, 12a–13a, who made use of the same source as Sikli, and not the one of the Yalkut. All the sources state that the flood was postponed for a week in order to allow the people to mourn for a week for the "righteous Methuselah"; comp. Tosefta Sotah 10. 3, and the passages cited in footnote 20 on p. 139. Of the ante-diluvian patriarchs, Jared and Methuselah lived the longest, because both of them were very modest and humble, as their names indicate: Jared="he who condescended", and Methuselah="he who is humble (שח), even as though he were dead" (מת). The shortest lives were those of Enoch and Lamech, because they bore the same names as the wicked descendants of Cain; Hasidim 247. The later Kabbalists (comp. Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 5. 22, end of 27a) assert that Enoch was a shoe-maker who praised God with every stitch he made. I venture to suggest that instead of Enoch, Methuselah should be read, as this is very likely based on the fact that the numerical value of מתושלח בן חנוך corresponds to the value of the words בנעלים הוא היה תופר "he made shoes." Attention is to be called to the fact that שלח in mishnaic Hebrew means skin; comp. also note 62. Maimonides, *Guide of the Perplexed*, II, 39, speaks of Methuselah and his court of justice; Maimonides' source is not known.



## IV NOAH

### THE BIRTH OF NOAH

**M**ethuselah took a wife for his son Lamech, and she bore him a man child. The body of the babe was white as snow and red as a blooming rose, and the hair of his head and his long locks were white as wool, and his eyes like the rays of the sun. When he opened his eyes, he lighted up the whole house, like the sun, and the whole house was very full of light.<sup>1</sup> And when he was taken from the hand of the midwife, he opened his mouth and praised the Lord of righteousness.<sup>2</sup> His father Lamech was afraid of him, and fled, and came to his own father Methuselah. And he said to him: "I have begotten a strange son; he is not like a human being, but resembles the children of the angels of heaven, and his nature is different, and he is not like us, and his eyes are as the rays of the sun, and his countenance is glorious.<sup>3</sup> And it seems to me that he is not sprung from me, but from the angels, and I fear that in his days a wonder may be wrought on the earth. And now, my father, I am here to petition thee and implore thee, that thou mayest go to Enoch, our father, and learn from him the truth, for his dwelling-place is among the angels."

And when Methuselah heard the words of his son, he went to Enoch, to the ends of the earth,

and he cried aloud, and Enoch heard his voice, and appeared before him, and asked him the reason of his coming. Methuselah told him the cause of his anxiety, and requested him to make the truth known to him. Enoch answered, and said: "The Lord will do a new thing in the earth. There will come a great destruction on the earth, and a deluge for one year. This son who is born unto thee will be left on the earth, and his three children will be saved with him, when all mankind that are on the earth shall die. And there will be a great punishment on the earth, and the earth will be cleansed from all impurity. And now make known to thy son Lamech that he who was born is in truth his son, and call his name Noah, for he will be left to you, and he and his children will be saved from the destruction which will come upon the earth." When Methuselah had heard the words of his father, who showed him all the secret things, he returned home, and he called the child Noah, for he would cause the earth to rejoice in compensation for all destruction.<sup>4</sup>

By the name Noah he was called only by his grandfather Methuselah; his father and all others called him Menahem. His generation was addicted to sorcery, and Methuselah apprehended that his grandson might be bewitched if his true name were known, wherefore he kept it a secret.



Menahem, Comforter, suited him as well as Noah; it indicated that he would be a consoler, if but the evil-doers of his time would repent of their misdeeds.<sup>5</sup> At his very birth it was felt that he would bring consolation and deliverance. When the Lord said to Adam, "Cursed is the ground for thy sake," he asked, "For how long a time?" and the answer made by God was, "Until a man child shall be born whose conformation is such that the rite of circumcision need not be practiced upon him." This was fulfilled in Noah, he was circumcised from his mother's womb.

Noah had scarcely come into the world when a marked change was noticeable. Since the curse brought upon the earth by the sin of Adam, it happened that wheat being sown, yet oats would sprout and grow. This ceased with the appearance of Noah: the earth bore the products planted in it. And it was Noah who, when he was grown to manhood, invented the plough, the scythe, the hoe, and other implements for cultivating the ground. Before him men had worked the land with their bare hands.<sup>6</sup>

There was another token to indicate that the child born unto Lamech was appointed for an extraordinary destiny. When God created Adam, He gave him dominion over all things: the cow obeyed the ploughman, and the furrow was willing to be drawn. But after the fall of Adam all things rebelled against him: the cow refused obedience to the ploughman, and also the furrow was refractory. Noah was born, and all returned to its state preceding the fall of man.

Before the birth of Noah, the sea was in the habit of transgressing its bounds twice daily, morning and evening, and flooding the land up to the graves. After his birth it kept within its confines. And the famine that afflicted the world in the time of Lamech, the second of the ten great famines appointed to come upon it, ceased its ravages with the birth of Noah.<sup>7</sup>

---

1. Light at the birth of heroes is a favorite motive of legend; compare with p. 476, and the note appertaining to it. Shu'aib, Noah 4d, reports the same incident concerning Noah. See note 3.

2. On the speech of new-born babes, compare with p. 476, and text on p. 826. In the Melchizedek fragments it is stated that Melchizedek, immediately after his birth, spoke with his lips, and blessed the Lord; comp. note 16.

3. On the idea that light is a sign of heavenly origin, compare text on p. 101. See also note 1.

4. Enoch 106–107. While in this pseudepigraphic work it is Methuselah who learns everything about the future and imparts the knowledge thereof to his son, in rabbinic sources it is Lamech, Noah's father, who, as a prophet at the time of the birth of his son, foresaw that his son was destined for great things; comp. *Da'at* and *Hadar* on Gen. 5. 29, and Sabba, Bereshit, 9b; Ephraim, I, 47. Whether Lamech to whom a pseudepigraphic work is ascribed (comp. Schürer, *Geschichte*, III, 358) is Lamech the father of Noah, or his name-sake, the descendant of Cain, is doubtful; comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 22, where this Cainite is credited with the gift of prophecy and comp. also BR 23. 2; comp. note 6. It is an old tradition that Noah was a prophet; Seder 'Olam 21; Philo, *Quis . . . Haeres Sit*, 52. Comp. further his remarks in *Quaestiones*, Gen. 1, 87, with reference to the naming of Noah by his father, according to which, the patriarchs (*i. e.*, the ante-diluvians) prophesied sometimes. Philo agrees on this point with Jub., according to whose author (8. 18), not only Noah, but also Adam, Seth, Enosh, Mahalalel, Enoch, and Shem were prophets, as may be inferred from 19. 24. Comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekante Sekte*, 296–297. On the meaning of the name Noah, comp. the following note.

5. Aggadat Bereshit (introduction) 38; Yalkut I, 42, quoting an unknown Midrash (later editions give Abkir as source, but this is not found in the first edition); Sikli in his MS. work Yalkut Talmud Torah (comp. Ginzberg's note in *Ha-Zofeh* IV, 28–29) quotes this legend from *Huppat Eliyyahu*; *Da'at* on Gen. 5. 29; Vital, *Likkute Torah*, Bereshit (end). The last author adds that at the time of Noah's birth, the magic sword of Methuselah (compare with p. 131 and note 63 appertaining thereto), with which he destroyed demons and evil spirits, lost its power. That is the reason why Methuselah feared the power of witchcraft. According to Yashar Bereshit, 13b, Methuselah named his grandson Noah, because the earth was appeased, while Lamech called him Menahem, "a consolation", as stated in the Bible, *loc. cit.* The explanation of the name Noah as given in the Bible did not satisfy the later readers, since *ינחמנו*, "he will console us", could only apply to *מנחם* or a similar name. BR 25. 2 gives no less than five explanations of the name Noah. He was called "he that caused rest"; 1) because it



was in his time that the rebellion of animals against man came to an end; 2) because the earth then enjoyed rest from the waters of the sea (text on p. 134); 3) because the heavenly bodies rested during the time of the flood; comp. note 41; 4) because the ark was at rest. According to others, this name signifies “the pleasant one” (נח=ניחוח), because his sacrifice was pleasant to God. Some of these explanations are also found in pseudepigraphic and patristic literature; comp. Enoch 106. 18 (the Ethiopic version reads: Call his name Noah, for he shall be left to you, thus connecting נח with הניח “left behind”, while the Latin version reads: *Qui Interpretatur requies quia requiem praestabit in Arcam*, and accordingly connects נח with הניח “caused one to find rest”), and 107. 3, which reads: Noah, for he will comfort the earth after all the destruction; Philo, *Aleg.*, 3. 24; *De Abrahamo*, 5; *Quaestiones in Gen.* 1, 87; 2, 245; Theophilus, 3. 19; Ephraim, I, 47 F; Jerome, Gen. 5. 29. Comp. also Tan. Bereshit 11. The translation of the Septuagint, διαναπαύσει ἡμᾶς does not render נחמנו but יניחנו; comp. BR, *loc. cit.* 2 (he should have called him יניחנו). See Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 73–74, and text on p. 13.

6. Tan. Bereshit 11 (this implies that Lamech was no prophet, but had good reasons to call his son ‘comforter’; comp. note 4; BR 25. 2; Abkir in Yalkut I, 42). The last-named Midrash is introduced in *Pa’aneah*, Gen. 5. 29, as a source for the legend that until Noah the hand of human beings consisted of one piece, the fingers not having been separated from one another. Seeing the new form of Noah’s hand, his father Lamech concluded that henceforth men would have to till the ground, for which they would need flexible fingers. Before this time they did not cultivate the ground, and therefore they did not need such fingers. For the legend itself, without Abkir as its source, see Tosafot and R. Asher, in *Hadar* on Gen. *loc. cit.*, who cite R. Judah Hasid as their authority. See also Zohar I, 38a and 58a–58b. The curse on the earth after Adam’s fall lasted till his death, which took place not long before the birth of Noah; *Hadar* (Pesikta de-R. Eliezer is cited as source; but neither Pirke R. Eliezer, nor Pesikta R. Tobiah b. Eliezer has it) and *Da’at* on Gen., *loc. cit.* On those born with the sign of the Abrahamic covenant on them, see footnote 318 on p. 248.

7. BR 25. 2. On the dominion of man over the animal kingdom, compare with pp. 69, 91, and notes appertaining to them. Concerning the overflowing of the sea, compare with p. 117. On the ten famines see text on p. 189, as well as Yashar Bereshit, 13a.

## THE PUNISHMENT OF THE FALLEN ANGELS

Grown to manhood, Noah followed in the ways of his grandfather Methuselah, while all other men of the time rose up against this pious king. So far from observing his precepts, they pursued the evil inclination of their hearts, and perpetrated all sorts of abominable deeds.<sup>8</sup> Chiefly the fallen angels and their giant posterity caused the depravity of mankind. The blood spilled by the giants cried unto heaven from the ground, and the four archangels accused the fallen angels and their sons before God, whereupon He gave the following orders to them: Uriel was sent to Noah to announce to him that the earth would be destroyed by a flood, and to teach him how to save his own life. Raphael was told to put the fallen angel Azazel into chains, cast him into a pit of sharp and pointed stones in the desert Dudael, and cover him with darkness, and so was he to remain until the great day of judgment, when he would be thrown into the fiery pit of hell, and the earth would be healed of the corruption he had contrived upon it. Gabriel was charged to proceed against the bastards and the reprobates, the sons of the angels begotten with the daughters of men, and plunge them into deadly conflicts with one another. Shemḥazai’s ilk were handed over to Michael, who first caused them to witness the death of their children in their bloody combat with each other, and then he bound them and pinned them under the hills of the earth, where they will remain for seventy generations, until the day of judgment, to be carried thence to the fiery pit of hell.<sup>9</sup>

The fall of Azazel and Shemḥazai came about in this way. When the generation of the deluge began to practice idolatry, God was deeply grieved. The two angels Shemḥazai and Azazel arose, and said: “O Lord of the world! It has happened,



that which we foretold at the creation of the world and of man, saying, 'What is man, that Thou art mindful of him?'" And God said, "And what will become of the world now without man?" Whereupon the angels: "We will occupy ourselves with it." Then said God: "I am well aware of it, and I know that if you inhabit the earth, the evil inclination will overpower you, and you will be more iniquitous than ever men." The angels pleaded, "Grant us but permission to dwell among men, and Thou shalt see how we will sanctify Thy Name." God yielded to their wish, saying, "Descend and sojourn among men!"

When the angels came to earth, and beheld the daughters of men in all their grace and beauty, they could not restrain their passion. Shemhazai saw a maiden named Istehar, and he lost his heart to her. She promised to surrender herself to him, if first he taught her the Ineffable Name, by means of which he raised himself to heaven. He assented to her condition. But once she knew it, she pronounced the Name, and herself ascended to heaven, without fulfilling her promise to the angel. God said, "Because she kept herself aloof from sin, we will place her among the seven stars, that men may never forget her," and she was put in the constellation of the Pleiades.

Shemhazai and Azazel, however, were not deterred from entering into alliances with the daughters of men, and to the first two sons were born. Azazel began to devise the finery and the ornaments by means of which women allure men. Thereupon God sent Metatron to tell Shemhazai that He had resolved to destroy the world and bring on a deluge. The fallen angel began to weep and grieve over the fate of the world and the fate of his two sons. If the world went under, what would they have to eat, they who needed daily a thousand camels, a thousand horses, and a thousand steers?

These two sons of Shemhazai, Hiwwa and Hiyya by name, dreamed dreams. The one saw a

great stone which covered the earth, and the earth was marked all over with lines upon lines of writing. An angel came, and with a knife obliterated all the lines, leaving but four letters upon the stone. The other son saw a large pleasure grove planted with all sorts of trees. But angels approached bearing axes, and they felled the trees, sparing a single one with three of its branches.

When Hiwwa and Hiyya awoke, they repaired to their father, who interpreted the dreams for them, saying, "God will bring a deluge, and none will escape with his life, excepting only Noah and his sons." When they heard this, the two began to cry and scream, but their father consoled them: "Soft, soft! Do not grieve. As often as men cut or haul stones, or launch vessels, they shall invoke your names, Hiwwa! Hiyya!" This prophecy soothed them.

Shemhazai then did penance. He suspended himself between heaven and earth, and in this position of a penitent sinner he hangs to this day. But Azazel persisted obdurately in his sin of leading mankind astray by means of sensual allurements. For this reason two he-goats were sacrificed in the Temple on the Day of Atonement, the one for God, that He pardon the sins of Israel, the other for Azazel, that he bear the sins of Israel.<sup>10</sup>

Unlike Istehar, the pious maiden, Naamah, the lovely sister of Tubal-cain, led the angels astray with her beauty, and from her union with Shamdon sprang the devil Asmodeus.<sup>11</sup> She was as shameless as all the other descendants of Cain, and as prone to bestial indulgences. Cainite women and Cainite men alike were in the habit of walking abroad naked, and they gave themselves up to every conceivable manner of lewd practices. Of such were the women whose beauty and sensual charms tempted the angels from the path of virtue. The angels, on the other hand, no sooner had they rebelled against God and descended to earth than they lost their transcendental qualities, and were invested with sublunary



bodies, so that a union with the daughters of men became possible. The offspring of these alliances between the angels and the Cainite women were the giants,<sup>12</sup> known for their strength and their sinfulness; as their very name, the Emim, indicates, they inspired fear. They have many other names. Sometimes they go by the name Rephaim, because one glance at them made one's heart grow weak; or by the name Gibborim, simply giants, because their size was so enormous that their thigh measured eighteen ells; or by the name Zamzummim, because they were great masters in war; or by the name Anakim, because they touched the sun with their neck; or by the name Ivvim, because, like the snake, they could judge of the qualities of the soil; or finally, by the name Nephilim, because, bringing the world to its fall, they themselves fell.<sup>13</sup>

8. Yashar Bereshit, 13a. Compare footnote 62 on p. 131.

9. Enoch 9–10. Comp. further 67–69 for the exact description of the sins of the angels. On the angels mentioned in the last passage the following is to be remarked. Yikon=אִיקוֹן, εἰκόνα, image, and is employed in the sense of the Hebrew פֶּסֶל “idol”, a name properly applied to the ring-leader of the rebellious angels. Peneme is, as has already been noticed by others, פְּנִימִי, and it should be added that in Tan. B. I, 17, and BR 21. 1, פֶּנִי is the name of an angel. Kasbiel is practically the same as Kaspiel, and is derived from כֶּשֶׁף “sorcery”; hence it is the name of “the chief of the oath”.

10. An unknown Midrash in Yalkut I, p. 44 (in later editions the source is given as Abkir, but not in the first edition); Aggadat Bereshit (introduction) 38; *Pugio Fidei*, 837–838, whose text is more correct than that of Yalkut. The episode of the woman who was transformed into a star is found, with some variations (she caused the angels to give her wings, with which she flew up to the heavenly throne, in order to seek shelter with God, who rewarded her for her constancy by transforming her into the star Virgo), in *Hadar*, Gen. 6. 2 and 28. 13 (also in BHM V, 156, with the erroneous reference to the source). This passage also adds that both of these angels had to remain behind on earth, because they had given away their wings to the virgin, and only reached heaven by means of Jacob's ladder.

According to this version of the legend, it is assumed that, though the angels had entertained evil thoughts, they never carried them out, otherwise their return to heaven would hardly have been conceivable. Accordingly the Midrash found in Yalkut, *Pugio Fidei*, and Yerahmeel 25, concerning the fall of the angels, is composed of different sources. Concerning the old legend about the angels opposing the creation of man, compare with pp. 51–52. See also Hekalot VI, 172, where it is said that Uzza and Azrael, during the sinful generation of the flood, called attention to the fact that their opposition to man's creation was justified (the text is not entirely in order; the expression הָלָלוּ שְׁנֵאֲבָדוּ בִּימֵי הַמַּבּוּל clearly proves that this passage was borrowed from an Ascension of Moses; compare with pp. 613–614). Whereupon (this is to be added) these angels descended on earth in order to prove that they were by far superior to man. This motive for the descent of the angels is rather old, since it is already found in the Clementine *Homilies*, 8. 11–12; comp. further ER 29, 162; EZ 25, 49 (the fallen angels are: Azza, Uzzi, and Azrael. This is surely the combination of a double reading, as we find the pair Azza and Azrael next to Uzza and Azrael; compare footnote 56 on p. 117); PR 34, 159a; DR (end). The transformation of the chaste virgin into a star is rather a later legend, and is hardly of Jewish origin, as may be seen from her foreign name Istehar. The account that Metatron, as God's messenger, was sent to the fallen angels is a later version of the part ascribed to Michael (in Enoch 10. 11–12). This corresponds to the angelology of the Babylonian Talmud, which transfers to Metatron all the functions that had formerly been ascribed to Michael. Hiwwa and Hiyya, the sons of the fallen angels, are directly borrowed from Niddah 61a, where Shemhazai's son is called Ahiah. Hence also the remark in *Pugio Fidei*, *loc. cit.* (where the names are written חִיָּיָה and חִיָּיָה) that these were the ancestors of Sihon and Og (compare with p. 751). Although the Talmud knows only of a son of Shemhazai, but not of one of Azazel, the dependence of those works on the Talmud is obvious. In opposition to this statement that Shemhazai suspended himself between heaven and earth as a sign of repentance (one foot on the ground, and the head in heaven), it is affirmed in DR (end) that these fallen angels have been suspended by God between heaven and earth as a punishment. This has been amplified in later sources, which assert that these angels were fastened to the “mountains of darkness” by chains, and they teach witchcraft to those who seek them. Comp. Aggadat Bereshit (introduction) 39; Zohar I, 96 and 126a; III, 208a and 221a; Zohar Ruth, 99a (beginning נְחֻמִּיהַּ ‘ר’); *Emek ha-Melek*, 107c. Comp. further EZ 25, 19, as well as Enoch 7. 3. Azazel as the seducer to sensuality is not only found in Enoch 8. 1, but also in Yoma 67b, where also the ceremony of the scapegoat on the Day of Atonement is explained on the basis of this legend. It may, however, be noted that neither in



this talmudic passage nor in Niddah 61a, where Shemhazai is mentioned, is he or Azazel designated as a fallen angel. Another legend has it that Azazel was originally an angel, and once on the day of Atonement he accused Israel before God, saying: "Why hast Thou mercy on them when they provoke Thee? Thou shouldst rather destroy them." And God replied: "If thou wouldst be among them (men), thou wouldst also sin." Azazel then requested to be tested. When, with God's permission, he descended on earth, the evil inclination overcame him and he fell a victim to Na'amah (comp. the following note), a very beautiful woman. Thereupon God said: "Since he sinned and cannot return to heaven, he should remain in the desert until the end of time, so that he should close the mouths of the accusers; for they will be warned by his fate, and will be silent." On the Day of Atonement, therefore, the scapegoat is sent to the desert, the dwelling-place of Azazel, in order to remind the accusers of his fate. *Imre No'am*, Ahare Mot (end). Comp. also Yoma 20a, and PRE 46, with respect to the silencing of Satan "the accuser" on the Day of Atonement. *Imre No'am* gives the source of this legend in a very vague manner (כתוב בהגדה), and the text is somewhat obscure. The accusation of Israel by Azazel is certainly to be understood to mean that, in the beginning of creation, he was the one to oppose the forgiving of Israel's sins on the Day of Atonement as foreseen in the Torah. The view given in Zohar I, 23a, 25a, and 37a, concerning the fall of Azza and Azazel goes back to a source identical with the one found in Aggadat Bereshit (introduction) 38. This source is *Huppat Eliyyahu*, which is explicitly named by Sikli in his MS. work, Yalkut Talmud Torah (comp. Ginzberg's note in *Ha-Zofeh*, IV, 29–30). Besides the passages referred to in this note and in the two that follow, there is hardly any other passage in rabbinic literature dealing with the fall of the angels. On the whole question of the fallen angels comp. Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 59–61, 63–66, 75–70, 442–448; see also footnote 57 on p. 119. Compare also footnote 35 on p. 63.

11. PRE according to reading of Nahmanides on Gen. 4. 2; comp. MHG I, 118; Zohar I, 155a; Zohar Ruth, 99a (beginning ר' נחמיה פתח); Aggadat Bereshit (introduction) 38. See further footnote 45 on p. 148; *Imre No'am*, Ahare Mot (end); Kanah 105b; Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 58 and 447. Na'amah, Noah's wife, was the daughter of Enoch, and is not to be confounded with the sinner bearing the same name, the daughter of the Cainite Lamech; Yashar Noah, 14b. Compare footnote 42 on p. 147.

12. PRE 22; Zohar I, 58a; Zohar Hadash Ruth, 99a (beginning ר' נחמיה פתח), which has the addition that they could not return to heaven because they had been absent for more than a week. A passage which literally corresponds with one in PRE is that in *Ketab Tamim* 61, cited

from Tosefta Sanhedrin. This is very likely based on an error, for our text of the Tosefta has no trace of this passage. Moreover, in view of the strong opposition of the authoritative rabbinic sources to the doctrine of the fall of the angels (compare footnote 57 on p. 119) any reference to this doctrine in the Tosefta is quite inconceivable. Aggadat Bereshit (introduction) 38, asserts that the angels, after their intercourse with the daughters of man, wished to return to heaven, but God said: "Ye have become defiled, and ye cannot become pure again." Similar words occur also in Clementine *Homilies*, 8. 13. Comp. further Kallah 3, 8a.

13. BR 26. 7 (on the text comp. *Hadar*, Deut. 2. 20); DR 1. 24; Tan. B. V, 6. On the tallness of the giants, comp. Enoch 7. 2; Zadokite Fragment, 2. See further text on pp. 707–708 and 751; Clementine *Homilies*, 8. 15. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 23, like his contemporary Rabban Johanan B. Zaccai (Tan., *loc. cit.*), undertakes to prove, from the skeletons found in the caves, the extraordinary tallness of the giants. The number of giants who perished in the flood, as given in the Greek Baruch 4. 10, amounts to 409,000.

## THE GENERATION OF THE DELUGE

While the descendants of Cain resembled their father in his sinfulness and depravity, the descendants of Seth led a pious, well-regulated life, and the difference between the conduct of the two stocks was reflected in their habitations. The family of Seth was settled upon the mountains in the vicinity of Paradise, while the family of Cain resided in the field of Damascus, the spot whereon Abel was slain by Cain.

Unfortunately, at the time of Methuselah, following the death of Adam, the family of Seth became corrupted after the manner of the Cainites. The two strains united with each other to execute all kinds of iniquitous deeds. The result of the marriages between them were the Nephilim whose sins brought the deluge upon the world. In their arrogance they claimed the same pedigree as the posterity of Seth, and they compared themselves with princes and men of noble descent.<sup>14</sup>

The wantonness of this generation was in a measure due to the ideal conditions under which



mankind lived before the flood. They knew neither toil nor care, and as a consequence of their extraordinary prosperity they grew insolent. In their arrogance they rose up against God. A single sowing bore a harvest sufficient for the needs of forty years, and by means of magic arts they could compel the very sun and moon to stand ready to do their service.<sup>15</sup> The raising of children gave them no trouble. They were born after a few days' pregnancy, and immediately after birth they could walk and talk; they themselves aided the mother in severing the navel string. Not even demons could do them harm. Once a new-born babe, running to fetch a light whereby his mother might cut the navel string, met the chief of the demons, and a combat ensued between the two. Suddenly the crowing of a cock was heard, and the demon made off, crying out to the child, "Go and report unto thy mother, if it had not been for the crowing of the cock, I had killed thee!" Whereupon the child retorted, "Go and report unto thy mother, if it had not been for my uncut navel string, I had killed thee!"<sup>16</sup>

It was their care-free life that gave them space and leisure for their infamies. For a time God, in His long-suffering kindness, passed by the iniquities of men, but His forbearance ceased when once they began to lead unchaste lives, for "God is patient with all sins save only an immoral life."<sup>17</sup>

The other sin that hastened the end of the iniquitous generation was their rapacity. So cunningly were their depredations planned that the law could not touch them. If a countryman brought a basket of vegetables to market, they would edge up to it, one after the other, and abstract a bit, each in itself of petty value, but in a little while the dealer would have none left to sell.<sup>18</sup>

Even after God had resolved upon the destruction of the sinners, He still permitted His mercy to prevail, in that He sent Noah unto them, who exhorted them for one hundred and twenty years to amend their ways, always holding the

flood over them as a threat. As for them, they but derided him. When they saw him occupying himself with the building of the ark, they asked, "Wherefore this ark?"

Noah: "God will bring a flood upon you."

The sinners: "What sort of flood? If He sends a fire flood, against that we know how to protect ourselves. If it is a flood of waters, then, if the waters bubble up from the earth, we will cover them with iron rods, and if they descend from above, we know a remedy against that, too."

Noah: "The waters will ooze out from under your feet, and you will not be able to ward them off."

Partly they persisted in their obduracy of heart because Noah had made known to them that the flood would not descend so long as the pious Methuselah sojourned among them. The period of one hundred and twenty years which God had appointed as the term of their probation having expired, Methuselah died, but out of regard for the memory of this pious man God gave them another week's respite, the week of mourning for him. During this time of grace, the laws of nature were suspended, the sun rose in the west and set in the east. To the sinners God gave the dainties that await man in the future world, for the purpose of showing them what they were forfeiting.<sup>19</sup> But all this proved unavailing, and, Methuselah and the other pious men of the generation having departed this life, God brought the deluge upon the earth.<sup>20</sup>

---

14. Yerahmeel 24. 10–12. On the identification (supposed in this passage) of "the sons of God" with the descendants of Seth, and that of "the daughters of man" with the generation of Cain (the last idea occurs also in PRE 22), compare footnote 45 on p. 112, and Gaster, *ad loc.*, as well as Ginzberg's *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 75–76; Zohar Hadash Bereshit (end); *Hadar*, Gen. 6. 2. The description of the gradual fall of the descendants of Seth, given by Yerahmeel, essentially agrees with the Evangel of Seth (Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 37–38 and 82, *seq.*). On



Damascus as the place where Abel is supposed to have been slain, compare footnote 19 on p. 104. According to another view, “the sons of God” are the descendants of Cain. They were called so because their ancestor Cain (compare with p. 101) was of heavenly origin. After they had mingled with the descendants of Seth, they begot children who possessed the physical strength and beauty of the Cainites, but also their demoralized nature; Aggadat Bereshit (introduction) 38–39 (comp. Ginzberg’s note on this passage in *Ha-Zofeh* IV, 29–30); Zohar I, 37; Kanah 102d and 107a. See further Hasidim 455, and Kozari II, 14.

15. Tan. Bereshit 12. The care-free and happy life which the ante-diluvian generations enjoyed is frequently alluded to in the Haggadah, in order to show that the excess of good things has its bad consequences for mankind; Tosefta Sotah 3. 6; Mekilta Shirah 2, 35b; Sifre D., 43; Mekilta RS, 58; Midrash Tannaim 36; Sanhedrin 108a; BR 26. 5; 28. 6–7; BaR 9. 14; PK 27, 169b–170a; EZ, 10, 190. Comp. Clementine *Homilies*, 8. 15, where it is said that God had given manna to the ante-diluvian giants, “suited to their various tastes” (compare with p. 570), so that they should not be eager to eat meat. See also note 19. On the subjugation of the heavenly bodies by means of witchcraft, comp. EZ, 25, 49, and text on p. 119.

16. BR 36. 1; WR 5. 1 (the expression לַאִימִךְ *la'imich* is also found in Koheleth 2. 20, and the Hebrew בַּאִמֶּךָ *ba'imecha* occurs in PR 14, 56b); Aggadat Bereshit 10, 24; PRE 22 (only this passage has the statement that they begot six children at one time; see footnote 4 on p. 465); comp. the sources cited in the preceding note, and Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 86. The crowing of the cock drives the demons away; comp. Yoma 21a. The well-known legend that heroes speak immediately after their birth (comp. note 2) is here transferred to the entire race of the ante-diluvians.

17. BR 26. 5; Yerushalmi Sotah 1, 17a; BaR 9. 33; Tan. Bereshit 12; WR 23. 9; Tan. B. I, 16 and 23–24. In some of these sources the immoral life of this wicked generation is minutely described, and it is furthermore remarked that they exhibited their shamelessness by appearing naked in public; comp. PRE 22; EZ 10, 190. See further, Singer, *Buch der Jubiläen*, 82, note 1, where the talmudic passages concerning the prohibition of uncovering the body are given, comp. further note 67. That unchastity was the cause of the deluge (as well as the destruction of the sinful cities; compare with p. 212) is maintained by 2 Enoch 34, which with regard to some details agrees with the Midrashim. In Jub. 7. 21 three sins are recorded: immorality, idolatry (uncleanness=זָרָה *zarah*), and violence as the causes of the flood. Similarly BR 31. 6. Comp. PRK, 69; Halakot Gedolot (Hildesheimer’s edition, 588; five sins caused the flood); ER 15, 74 (eight sins); Shu’alib, Noah, 5a (the trespassing of the seven Noachite commandments); ShR 30.

13. See further notes 36 and 32; text on p. 566; text on p. 1132; Index, s. v. “Immoral Life.”

18. BR 31. 3–5; Sanhedrin 108a; Koheleth 1. 13; Tan. Noah 4; Wehizhir I, 92. Compare with p. 207, the description of the sins of the Sodomites.

19. Sanhedrin 108a–108b (the measures against fire and water, of which they boasted, are mentioned, but the meaning of the words used in the description is obscure); BR 30. 7; Tan. Noah 5; Tan. B. I, 25 (God could have saved Noah without the ark; but its construction was to serve as a warning to the sinners to arouse them to repentance); Aggadat Bereshit 1, 2; Koheleth 9. 14; Koheleth Z., 125; PRE 22 and 23 (here it is stated that the construction of the ark took fifty-two years); Yashar Noah, 14a–14b, where Methuselah and Noah are said to have endeavored to induce the sinners to repent. The 120 years are of course inferred from Gen. 6. 3, which these sources as well as others (Sifre N., 43, end; Midrash Tannaim 39; Mekilta Shirah 5, 38b; Mekilta RS, 32; EZ 2, 174; ER 16, 80; Onkelos and Yerushalmi Targumim on Gen., *loc. cit.*) understand to say that God made this time an allowance to the sinners in order that they should repent and that Noah should exert his influence as an admonisher and preacher. This conception is also prevalent in ancient Christian literature; comp. Aphraates, 138; Origen, *Contra Celsum*, III, 41; ps.–Tertullian, 3, 30; Julius Africanus (cited by Syncellus, 21); Ephraim, I, 47 E–F; Christian-Palestinian Homilies in *Anecdota Oxon.*, *Semitic Series* I, part IX, 56; Methodius, *Symposium*; Evangel of Seth (in Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 39); Jerome, Gen., *loc. cit.* Some Church Fathers like Origen, ps.–Tertullian, and Julius Africanus, speak of a 100 years, during which the ark was constructed. This is not an inaccuracy, but, as was explicitly stated by Africanus, it wishes to convey that the word of God (Gen., *loc. cit.*) reached the wicked generation when the youngest of them was twenty years old (this is to be explained in accordance with footnote 69 on p. 261), and to these the opportunity of 100 years for repentance was extended. The reason for this view is to be found in the chronological difficulty which Gen., *loc. cit.*, offers; comp. Rashi, *ad loc.* Zohar I, 62, speaks of 300 years during which Noah was active as a preacher for repentance. On Noah’s preaching for repentance, comp. further Clemens “First Epistle,” 7. 6; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1, 21; *Visio Pauli*, 50 (the construction of the ark lasted 100 years); Theophilus, 3. 19; 1 Peter 3. 20. Comp. also Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 77–78. The view that Gen., *loc. cit.*, wishes to say that henceforth the duration of a man’s life will not be longer than 120 years is given by Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen., 1, 91; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 32; Lactantius, *Institutiones*, 2. 14–15. This is also the view of later rabbinic writers; comp. Ibn Ezra, *ad loc.*—On the changes of the course of the sun, comp. Ascension of Isaiah 4. 5; Enoch 80. 4–5, where this and similar miracles



as preparations for the last day are mentioned. Shabbat 156b (top) reads: God causes the planet Jupiter to appear in the east instead of in the west in order to teach Abraham not to attach any importance to astronomy. Comp. Stein-schneider, *Hebräische Bibliographie*, XVIII, 61–62, concerning similar statements in Arabic literature. On the additional week, after the lapse of the period of respite, during which he was granted the anticipation of the enjoyment of paradise, comp. Yerushalmi Targumim on Gen. 7. 4 and 10; Tosefta Sotah 10. 3–5; ARN 32, 92; Ephraim, I, 5. 2 E, and the sources cited in the following note and note 15.

20. Tosefta Sotah 10. 3–5; ARN 32, 92–93; Sanhedrin 108b (on the text comp. Lekah, Gen. 6. 3, where the reading seems to be מיתתו instead of הספדו, according to which it is said that the death of the pious has the atoning power to avert impending misfortunes for some time; comp., however, Lekah, Gen. 7. 4); BR 3. 6 (in the week of mourning for Methuselah God caused the primordial light to shine) and 32. 7; Yerushalmi Mo'ed Katan 3, 82c; Tehillim 26, 220 (God did not wish Methuselah to die at the same time as the sinners); Yashar Noah, 14a–14b (compiled from different sources. First it is said that Noah and Methuselah were the only pious persons left one hundred and twenty years before the flood; then it is asserted that the pious people died five years before the flood; finally it is remarked that Lamech, Noah's father, died about the same time, but that he followed the path of his father and son whole-heartedly; on Lamech compare footnote 64 on p. 132, and note 4). Comp. also Philo, *Quaestiones*, 2. 13, who, together with the explanation given in rabbinic sources concerning the seven days of respite to induce the sinners to repent, mentions the view that the last week before the destruction of the world corresponds to the first week of the creation, in order to show that both came from God. The same explanation is found in Lekah, Gen. 7. 4. The last week is regarded as a week of "mourning" for the men destroyed in the flood; BR 27 (end) and 32. 7; Mo'ed Katan, *loc. cit.*; Tan. B. I, 30, and III, 21; Tan. Shemini 1; ER 31, 162. God, of course, knows everything beforehand; when Scripture says (Gen. 6. 6) that He repented because He had created man, it merely implies that He repented in the same manner as a father rejoices at the birth of a son, although he knows that sooner or later he must die; for joy, as well as mourning, has its time. Comp. on this point BR and Tan., *loc. cit.*; Philo, *Quaestiones*, *ad loc.*; *Quod Deus sit immutabilis*, 5; Clementine *Homilies*, 3. 39. See further Sukkah 52b, and PRK, 19b, concerning four and six things, respectively, of which God repented of having created them; they are: The evil inclination, idolatry, the generation of the flood, the Chaldeans, the Ishmaelites, and Israel's captivity in Babylon. It should be observed that, with the exception of ARN, *loc. cit.* (upon which Yashar, *loc. cit.*, is

dependent), which makes mention of the pious and the righteous of the antediluvian generations, the other sources know only of the pious Methuselah. Maimonides, *Guide of the Perplexed*, II, 39, cites the following expressions, from unknown sources: "The court of justice presided by Methuselah" and "the house of learning of Methuselah". He rightly remarks that these terms mean persons who taught their contemporaries, and endeavored to guide them in God's ways. Compare footnotes 1 and 64 on pp. 101 and 132, respectively.

## THE HOLY BOOK

Great wisdom was needed for building the Ark, which was to have space for all beings on earth, even the spirits. Only the fishes did not have to be provided for.<sup>21</sup> Noah acquired the necessary wisdom from the book given to Adam by the angel Raziel, in which all celestial and all earthly knowledge is recorded.

While the first human pair were still in Paradise, it once happened that Samael, accompanied by a lad, approached Eve and requested her to keep a watchful eye upon his little son until he should return. Eve gave him the promise. When Adam came back from a walk in Paradise, he found a howling, screaming child with Eve, who, in reply to his question, told him it was Samael's. Adam was annoyed, and his annoyance grew as the boy cried and screamed more and more violently. In his vexation he dealt the little one a blow that killed him. But the corpse did not cease to wail and weep, nor did it cease when Adam cut it up into bits. To rid himself of the plague, Adam cooked the remains, and he and Eve ate them. Scarcely had they finished, when Samael appeared and demanded his son. The two malefactors tried to deny everything; they pretended they had no knowledge of his son. But Samael said to them: "What! You dare tell lies, and God in times to come will give Israel the Torah in which it is said, 'Keep thee far from a false word?'"



While they were speaking thus, suddenly the voice of the slain lad was heard proceeding from the heart of Adam and Eve, and it addressed these words to Samael: "Go hence! I have penetrated to the heart of Adam and the heart of Eve, and never again shall I quit their hearts, nor the hearts of their children, or their children's children, unto the end of all generations."

Samael departed, but Adam was sore grieved, and he put on sackcloth and ashes, and he fasted many, many days, until God appeared unto him, and said: "My son, have no fear of Samael. I will give thee a remedy that will help thee against him, for it was at My instance that he went to thee." Adam asked, "And what is this remedy?" God: "The Torah." Adam: "And where is the Torah?" God then gave him the book of the angel Raziel, which he studied day and night. After some time had passed, the angels visited Adam, and, envious of the wisdom he had drawn from the book, they sought to destroy him cunningly by calling him a god and prostrating themselves before him, in spite of his remonstrance, "Do not prostrate yourselves before me, but magnify the Lord with me, and let us exalt His Name together." However, the envy of the angels was so great that they stole the book God had given Adam from him, and threw it in the sea. Adam searched for it everywhere in vain, and the loss distressed him sorely. Again he fasted many days, until God appeared unto him, and said: "Fear not! I will give the book back to thee," and He called Rahab, the Angel of the Sea, and ordered him to recover the book from the sea and restore it to Adam. And so he did.<sup>22</sup>

Upon the death of Adam, the holy book disappeared, but later the cave in which it was hidden was revealed to Enoch in a dream. It was from this book that Enoch drew his knowledge of nature, of the earth and of the heavens, and he became so wise through it that his wisdom exceeded the wisdom of Adam. Once he had

committed it to memory, Enoch hid the book again.

Now, when God resolved upon bringing the flood on the earth, He sent the archangel Raphael to Noah, as the bearer of the following message: "I give thee herewith the holy book, that all the secrets and mysteries written therein may be made manifest unto thee, and that thou mayest know how to fulfil its injunction in holiness, purity, modesty, and humbleness. Thou wilt learn from it how to build an ark of the wood of the gopher tree, wherein thou, and thy sons, and thy wife shall find protection."

Noah took the book, and when he studied it, the holy spirit came upon him, and he knew all things needful for the building of the ark and the gathering together of the animals. The book, which was made of sapphires, he took with him into the ark, having first enclosed it in a golden casket. All the time he spent in the ark it served him as a time-piece, to distinguish night from day. Before his death, he entrusted it to Shem, and he in turn to Abraham. From Abraham it descended through Jacob, Levi, Moses, and Joshua to Solomon, who learnt all his wisdom from it, and his skill in the healing art, and also his mastery over the demons.<sup>23</sup>

---

21. BR 31. 13 and 32. 11. On the plan of the ark comp. further BR 31. 11; Sanhedrin 108b; PRE 23; Targum Yerushalmi Gen 6. 14–15; Philo, *Moses*, 2. 11; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 3. 2. It is to be noted that the two last-named authors speak of the four stories of the ark. The question as to how the different stories were divided according to the various species of animals is very exhaustively treated, and the sources differ greatly from one another as to the details; comp. also ps.–Hippolytus, 2–3. The construction of the ark was so difficult, that the "ark itself took part in the act"; BR 31. 11. Comp. Evangel of Seth 39, which reads: And when he had built the ark, the axe, the hammer, and the wood exclaimed: "Behold, there will come a flood which will destroy the earth." Concerning the question how room could be found in the ark for so large a number of animals and food for them all, comp. Origen,



*Contra Celsum*, 4. 41, and the Melchizedek fragment 5, where the view is expressed that the cubit mentioned in the Bible, with regard to the measurements of the ark, is different from the ordinary one. It is further added that “according to this number the Jews keep this measure of the ark of Noah, as the Lord said to him, and so they made each measure and each rule, even up to the present time.” On this point comp. BR 30. 10 with reference to אמה תיביקין “the ark cubit.”

22. This legend was published by Ginzberg in *Ha-Goren*, IX, 38–41, from a compilation of legends in a MS. of the library of the Jewish Theological Seminary of America. On the attempt of the angels to worship Adam, compare with p. 64.

23. Sefer Noah, 150–160, of which three recensions are extant. According to one, Noah received, after the flood, a medical book from the archangel Raphael (text on pp. 157–158); according to the second Adam, after the fall, received a book from Raziel, out of which all mysteries could be ascertained (text on pp. 89–90), and it is this book from which Enoch derived his wisdom; later Noah received it from the angel Raphael, in order to be able to erect the ark. The third recension does not seem to know of any connection between Noah’s book, which Raziel had handed over to him before the flood, and the book given by this angel to Adam who later transmitted it to Enoch. Based on the legend recorded in text on p. 618, this recension adds that the sapphire on which the book was engraved gave the light necessary for the inmates of the ark (compare with text on p. 147). See Jellinek, *Einleitung* to BHM, III, 30–33. The second recension was made use of in Zohar I, 37b and 58b, and perhaps also 72b. 2 Enoch 33. 12 also seems to speak of the book of Enoch which was revealed by the angels to Noah and his descendants. In Enoch 10. 1–3 it is Uriel who informs Noah beforehand of the coming of the flood, and who advised him about the erection of the ark; but 67. 2 states that the angels erected it; comp. 89. 1 and BR 31. 11. Comp. also Zohar Hadash Terumah beginning of last paragraph.

## THE INMATES OF THE ARK

The ark was completed according to the instructions laid down in the Book of Raziel. Noah’s next task was gathering in the animals. No less than thirty-two species of birds and three hundred and sixty-five of reptiles he had to take along with him. But God ordered the animals to

repair to the ark, and they trooped thither, and Noah did not have to do so much as stretch out a finger.<sup>24</sup> Indeed, more appeared than were required to come, and God instructed him to sit at the door of the ark and note which of the animals lay down as they reached the entrance and which stood. The former belonged in the ark, but not the latter. Taking up his post as he had been commanded, Noah observed a lioness with her two cubs. All three beasts crouched. But the two young ones began to struggle with the mother, and she arose and stood up next to them. Then Noah led the two cubs into the ark. The wild beasts, and the cattle, and the birds which were not accepted remained standing about the ark all of seven days, for the assembling of the animals happened one week before the flood began to descend. On the day whereon they came to the ark, the sun was darkened, and the foundations of the earth trembled, and lightning flashed, and the thunder boomed, as never before. And yet the sinners remained impenitent. In naught did they change their wicked doings during those last seven days.

When finally the flood broke loose, seven hundred thousand of the children of men gathered around the ark, and implored Noah to grant them protection. With a loud voice he replied, and said: “Are ye not those who were rebellious toward God, saying, ‘There is no God’? Therefore He has brought ruin upon you, to annihilate you and destroy you from the face of the earth. Have I not been prophesying this unto you these hundred and twenty years, and you would not give heed unto the voice of God? Yet now you desire to be kept alive!” Then the sinners cried out: “So be it! We all are ready now to turn back to God, if only thou wilt open the door of thy ark to receive us, that we may live and not die.” Noah made answer, and said: “That ye do now, when your need presses hard upon you. Why did you not turn to God during all the hundred



and twenty years which the Lord appointed unto you as the term of repentance? Now do ye come, and ye speak thus, because distress besets your lives. Therefore God will not hearken unto you and give you ear; naught will you accomplish!"

The crowd of sinners tried to take the entrance to the ark by storm, but the wild beasts keeping watch around the ark set upon them, and many were slain, while the rest escaped, only to meet death in the waters of the flood.<sup>25</sup> The water alone could not have made an end of them, for they were giants in stature and strength. When Noah threatened them with the scourge of God, they would make reply: "If the waters of the flood come from above, they will never reach up to our necks; and if they come from below, the soles of our feet are large enough to dam up the springs." But God bade each drop pass through Gehenna before it fell to earth, and the hot rain scalded the skin of the sinners. The punishment that overtook them was befitting their crime. As their sensual desires had made them hot, and inflamed them to immoral excesses, so they were chastised by means of heated water.<sup>26</sup>

Not even in the hour of the death struggle could the sinners suppress their vile instincts. When the water began to stream up out of the springs, they threw their little children into them, to choke the flood.<sup>27</sup>

It was by the grace of God, not on account of his merits, that Noah found shelter in the ark before the overwhelming force of the waters.<sup>28</sup> Although he was better than his contemporaries, he was yet not worthy of having wonders done for his sake. He had so little faith that he did not enter the ark until the waters had risen to his knees. With him his pious wife Naamah, the daughter of Enosh, escaped the peril, and his three sons, and the wives of his three sons.<sup>29</sup>

Noah had not married until he was four hundred and ninety-eight years old. Then the Lord

had bidden him to take a wife unto himself. He had not desired to bring children into the world, seeing that they would all have to perish in the flood, and he had only three sons, born unto him shortly before the deluge came.<sup>30</sup> God had given him so small a number of offspring that he might be spared the necessity of building the ark on an overlarge scale in case they turned out to be pious. And if not, if they, too, were depraved like the rest of their generation, sorrow over their destruction would but be increased in proportion to their number.<sup>31</sup>

As Noah and his family were the only ones not to have a share in the corruptness of the age, so the animals received into the ark were such as had led a natural life. For the animals of the time were as immoral as the men: the dog united with the wolf, the cock with the pea-fowl, and many others paid no heed to sexual purity. Those that were saved were such as had kept themselves untainted.<sup>32</sup>

Before the flood the number of unclean animals had been greater than the number of the clean. Afterward the ratio was reversed, because while seven pairs of clean animals were preserved in the ark, but two pairs of the unclean were preserved.<sup>33</sup>

One animal, the reëm, Noah could not take into the ark. On account of its huge size it could not find room therein. Noah therefore tied it to the ark, and it ran on behind.<sup>34</sup> Also, he could not make space for the giant Og, the king of Bashan. He sat on top of the ark securely, and in this way escaped the flood of waters. Noah doled out his food to him daily, through a hole, because Og had promised that he and his descendants would serve him as slaves in perpetuity.<sup>35</sup>

Two creatures of a most peculiar kind also found refuge in the ark. Among the beings that came to Noah there was Falsehood asking for shelter. He was denied admission, because he had no companion, and Noah was taking in the animals



only by pairs. Falsehood went off to seek a partner, and he met Misfortune, whom he associated with himself on the condition that she might appropriate what Falsehood earned. The pair were then accepted in the ark. When they left it, Falsehood noticed that whatever he gathered together disappeared at once, and he betook himself to his companion to seek an explanation, which she gave him in the following words, “Did we not agree to the condition that I might take what you earn?” and Falsehood had to depart empty-handed.<sup>36</sup>

24. PRE 23; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 5. 20; Philo, *Moses*, 2. 12; BR 32. 8; Tan. Noah 12; Zebahim 116a; Ephraim, I, 52 C-D; Augustine, *Civitas Dei*, 15. 27; Theodoretus, *Quaestiones in Gen.* 18 (comp. on this passage Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 80–81); Evangel of Seth 39. In all these sources it is emphasized that the animals of their own accord, by God’s command (according to PRE and Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.*, they were assembled by the angels), came to the ark. Comp. also the following note.

25. Yashar Noah, 15a–16a, apparently based on old sources; comp. BR 31. 13 (whenever the male ran after the female, Noah took the pair into the ark; if the female ran after the male, they were excluded from it) and 32. 8; Tan. B. I, 36; Tan. Noah 7. On the 121 years, during which Noah preached for repentance, see note 19. It should be observed that Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 3. 1, also knows of Noah’s activity as a preacher. He, however, adds (this occurs nowhere else) that when Noah realized that he failed in his efforts, he emigrated to another country. By this he probably wishes to explain how the ark came to the ridge of Ararat in Armenia (comp. note 47), though Noah, like all antediluvian patriarchs, had lived in Palestine. On the eclipse of the sun during the flood comp. Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 8, as well as text on p. 147. On the attempt of the sinners to enter the ark by force, comp. also Evangel of Seth, 39; Shu’aib, Noah, 5b; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 7. 16; PRE 23; Aggadat Bereshit 4, 10; Yalkut I, 57 (the first part perhaps from Abkir). With respect to the animals which were included in the ark, comp. also note 32.

26. Sanhedrin 108b; Rosh ha-Shanah 12a; Zebahim 113b; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29b; WR 7. 6; Koheleth 9. 4; PRE 22; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 508, on Is. 64. 1 (according to this passage, punishment by fire came upon the generation of the flood because of the robberies they had

practised; comp. also Jerome, on Is. *loc. cit.*, who reproduces this tradition somewhat inaccurately); Hashkem 15a; Tan. B. III, 13; Tan. Zaw 2; Tehillim 11, 100; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 7. 10; Aggadat Bereshit 4. 10. On the sexual dissipation of this generation (onanism, sodomy, and other abominations), comp. the sources cited in note 17, as well as BR 26. 4–5, 30. 2, and 32. 7; Zohar I, 62a and 66a. See further note 39. The punishment by fire during the flood is connected with the conception of the world-conflagration which then took place for the first time; comp. Ginzberg, *מבול של אש*, 19=*Ha-Goren IX*, 51.

27. Tan. B. I, 35–36; Tan. Noah 7; Aggadat Bereshit 4, 10; Makiri, Nahum 10; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 7. 12.

28. BR 28. 9 and 30. 9 (“the one-eyed is regarded among the blind as keen-sighted”; Noah was the pious one when all others were sinners); Sanhedrin 108a; Tan. B. I, 31–32; Tan. Noah 5; Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 7 (also Philo’s haggadic remark that “the generation of Noah” stands for his pious deeds, and that Noah is called “man” in Scripture on account of his piety, is found in rabbinic literature; comp. BR 30. 6–7; Tan. B. I, 29; Tan. Noah 2; see further the utterance of the Rabbis which is frequently quoted and usually misunderstood: Israel is called “man” *אדם*, but not the other nations; Yebamot 61a, and parallel passages; compare notes 6, 8 on pp. 47, 48); Jerome, Gen. 5. 9. Midrash Tannaim 226 asserts that Noah survived only on account of the merits of Moses (the latter lived 120 years, as announced to Noah; comp. Gen. 6. 3). Had Noah perished, there would have been no Moses. Comp., on the other hand, *ibid.* 62, where it is said that the idolatrous nations existed only on the merits of Noah. In the Talmud, as well as in the Midrashim cited above, another view is also given to the effect that Noah, despite the wickedness that prevailed in his days, was a pious man. Had he lived in a better generation, he would have certainly been righteous. BR 29. 4 and Tan., *loc. cit.*, in contrast to Midrash Tannaim 62 and Jub. 4. 19, maintain that God was gracious to Noah for the sake of his descendants, *i. e.*, for the sake of the later patriarchs, prophets, and other pious men; comp. BR 30. 10, where the superiority of Abraham to Noah is emphasized. For the opposite view see Tan. B. I, 32. Noah’s sons (including Ham) are similarly mentioned as pious men; Tan. B. I, 31 and Tan. Noah 2; 4 Ezra 3. 11; Clemens’ First Epistle, 7. 6; comp., on the other hand, Jub., *loc. cit.*, and Aggadat Bereshit 10, 24. The title *צדיק* applied to Noah (Gen. 6. 9) signifies one who gives alms, because he cared for all the living during the time of the flood; Tan. B. I, 31; Tan. Noah 5; Yelammedenu quoted by Recanati on Gen., *loc. cit.* Comp. Alphabet of Ben Sira 13a; Gerson, *Justinus Martyrer und die Agada*, 46–47. See also the following note.

29. BR 32. 6; an anonymous Midrash quoted by Shu’aib, Noah, 4b. Comp. Matthew 24. 38 concerning the



lack of faith of this generation, which remained obstinate until the coming of the flood. According to PRE 23 and Alphabet of Ben Sira 12b–13a, Noah, on the contrary, spent a whole week in the ark before the flood came. According to the prevalent Haggadah (BR 32. 8; compare with pp. 814–815) Noah entered the ark in full day-light, in the presence of his wicked surroundings, in order to show that because of his faith in God he feared no one. This expresses a rather favorable view of Noah. On Noah's wife, whose good deeds equalled those of her husband, comp. BR 23. 3; Yashar Noah, 14b; Mishle 31, 111; Tobit 4. 12, where Noah is mentioned along with the three patriarchs, who married their kin. This remark wishes to convey that Noah did not marry any of the Cainitish women. According to Jub. 4. 33, Noah's wife was called Amzara, **אם זרע** (in the Evangel of Seth 39, she is called Noamzara=**נעם זרע**), and was the daughter of Bakiel, his father's brother. Compare footnote 42 on p. 111 and note 11.

30. Tan. B. I, 25–26; Yashar Noah, 14a–14b, where Japheth is said to be the oldest, Ham the second, and Shem the youngest. In the older sources there is a difference of opinion whether Japheth or Shem was the first-born. The following authorities consider Shem the oldest: Jub. 3. 33; PRE 8; Origen, Gen. 12, 10d; Augustine, *Civitas Dei*, 16. 11; Clementine *Recognitiones*, 30; Cyprian *Epistolae*, 62.3. But most of the Rabbis consider Japheth to have been the oldest and Shem the youngest; Midrash Tannaim 73; Sanhedrin 69b; BR 26. 3; 36. 7; 37. 7; BaR 4. 8; Tan. B. I, 142; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 10. 21. With this view agree Septuagint, Gen., *loc. cit.*, and Philo, *Quaestiones in Gen.*, 2, 79. Comp. MHG I, 142 and 176; Aphraates, 234; see also the following note.

31. BR 26. 2; BaR 14. 12; Tehillim 1, 11–12. These sources assume that Noah had been married long before he begot children, whereas the sources mentioned in the preceding note (comp. also Evangel of Seth 39, where it is said that he was compelled by an angel to marry against his will and that he preferred celibacy; this is a Christianization of the old Jewish legend) assert that he married late in life.

32. Sanhedrin 108a, 108b (with the exception of "Tushlami", the animals gave up their previous manner of living after the flood); Tan. B. I, 36 and 45; Tan. Noah 12; BR 28. 8–9 (even the earth became untrue to its nature, so that when wheat was sown there grew dandel instead); Yashar Bereshit (end); 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 35b–36a; Jub. 5. 2. Since it was man who set a bad example to the animals, he was the one to be destroyed first in the flood; Tosefta Sotah 4. 11; Sifre N., 18; Sifre Z., 25; BR 50. 8; BaR 9. 18. Compare on this idea with p. 530. The corruption of the animal world readily explains its destruction in the flood. Another explanation is that the whole world was created for the sake of man (see text on p. 47), and when man, with the exception of Noah and his family, was destroyed, the animal

world was no longer entitled to exist. Those animals which were saved were spared for the sake of Noah and his descendants. Comp. BR 28. 6 (this passage gives the interesting view that the animals allured man to the eating of meat; hence they were destroyed because they were instrumental in causing sin; comp. Clementine *Homilies*, 8. 15); MHG I, 132–134, 151, 158–159 (where various old sources are cited, all of which express the same idea that the existence of the animal world depends on the existence of man); Philo, *Quaestiones in Gen.*, I, 94, and 2, 9. With regard to the animals which were found worthy of entering the ark, the following statement is made in Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*, and Zebahim 116a: Noah caused the animals to pass in front of the ark, and those which remained firmly rooted in the ground (**קולטתו**) is thus to be understood) were admitted into the ark.

33. PRE 23, where the sum total of the animals is given. The text is not quite correct; comp. Luria, note 10, and Shua'ib, 5a–5b, who quotes, from PRE, the sentence, found in Hullin 65b, concerning the numberless kinds of birds. The unclean animals mentioned in Gen. 7. 2 are described in the negative (**אשר לא טהורה**), and not positive (**טמאה**), though the latter is the shorter way. Hence it is inferred that one must be careful not to use improper language; Pesahim 3a; PR 14, 57b, and the parallel passages cited by Friedmann.

34. BR 31. 13 (according to one view, the young of the Re'em were in the ark); comp. also Shua'ib, 5a (below, which also has the statement that all the animals, which were intended for the ark, were born shortly before they entered there); Zebahim 113b; Sanhedrin 108b, according to the reading of some MSS. (comp. Rabinowicz, note 2), and MNG I, 150, note 53. Concerning the Re'em see Index, s. v. A less fabulous description of this animal is found in Lekah, Num. 23. 22: its size is larger than that of a camel, its horns, which are as sharp as a sword, are five cubits long, so that no animal can resist it.

35. PRE 23; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 2. 11 and 3. 10 (a more detailed description of this legend, taken from the Targum, is found in Yalkut Reubeni on Gen. 7. 22); Zebahim 113b. In the last passage it is further remarked that the giants, who had not been carried off by the waters on account of their size, perished from the heat (concerning this point see text on p. 144). The Re'em and Og had such gigantic strength that the heat had no effect upon them. Different is the version of this legend in MHG I, 159: The men of the generation of the flood were fifteen cubits high, and they tried to save themselves on the lofty mountains when the flood broke forth (comp., however, Yoma 76a and BR 32. 11), for which reason God caused the waters to rise fifteen cubits over the high places. Comp. also Tan. B. I, 36; Tan. Noah 7; Aggadat Bereshit 4, 10. On Og comp. also note 54, and text on pp. 751, 753.



36. Tehillim 6, 68–69 (instead of מתקן read מתגה “stipulating”). Comp. also PR 24, 125b, and EZ 3, 175, which reads: God created everything with the exception of falsehood and deceit, which man invented. See further ps.—Tertullian, *Adversus Omnes Haereses*, 2.

## THE FLOOD

**T**he assembling of the animals in the ark was but the smaller part of the task imposed upon Noah. His chief difficulty was to provide food for a year and accommodations for them. Long afterward Shem, the son of Noah, related to Eliezer, the servant of Abraham, the tale of their experiences with the animals in the ark. This is what he said: “We had sore troubles in the ark. The day animals had to be fed by day, and the night animals by night. My father knew not what food to give to the little zikta. Once he cut a pomegranate in half, and a worm dropped out of the fruit, and was devoured by the zikta. Thenceforth my father would knead bran, and let it stand until it bred worms, which were fed to the animal. The lion suffered with a fever all the time, and therefore he did not annoy the others, because he did not relish dry food. The animal urshana my father found sleeping in a corner of the vessel, and he asked him whether he needed nothing to eat. He answered, and said: ‘I saw thou wast very busy, and I did not wish to add to thy cares.’ Whereupon my father said, ‘May it be the will of the Lord to keep thee alive forever,’ and the blessing was realized.”<sup>37</sup>

The difficulties were increased when the flood began to toss the ark from side to side. All inside of it were shaken up like lentils in a pot. The lions began to roar, the oxen lowed, the wolves howled, and all the animals gave vent to their agony, each through the sounds it had the power to utter.

Also Noah and his sons, thinking that death was nigh, broke into tears. Noah prayed to God:

“O Lord, help us, for we are not able to bear the evil that encompasses us. The billows surge about us, the streams of destruction make us afraid, and death stares us in the face. O hear our prayer, deliver us, incline Thyself unto us, and be gracious unto us! Redeem us and save us!”<sup>38</sup>

The flood was produced by a union of the male waters, which are above the firmament, and the female waters issuing from the earth.<sup>39</sup> The upper waters rushed through the space left when God removed two stars out of the constellation Pleiades. Afterward, to put a stop to the flood, God had to transfer two stars from the constellation of the Bear to the constellation of the Pleiades. That is why the Bear runs after the Pleiades. She wants her two children back, but they will be restored to her only in the future world.<sup>40</sup>

There were other changes among the celestial spheres during the year of the flood. All the time it lasted, the sun and the moon shed no light, whence Noah was called by his name, “the resting one,” for in his life the sun and the moon rested. The ark was illuminated by a precious stone, the light of which was more brilliant by night than by day, so enabling Noah to distinguish between day and night.<sup>41</sup>

The duration of the flood was a whole year. It began on the seventeenth day of Heshwan, and the rain continued for forty days, until the twenty-seventh of Kislew. The punishment corresponded to the crime of the sinful generation. They had led immoral lives, and begotten bastard children, whose embryonic state lasts forty days. From the twenty-seventh of Kislew until the first of Siwan, a period of one hundred and fifty days, the water stood at one and the same height, fifteen ells above the earth. During that time all the wicked were destroyed, each one receiving the punishment due to him.<sup>42</sup> Cain was among those that perished, and thus the death of Abel was avenged.<sup>43</sup> So powerful were the waters in working havoc that the corpse of Adam was not spared in its grave.<sup>44</sup>



On the first of Siwan the waters began to abate, a quarter of an ell a day, and at the end of sixty days, on the tenth day of Ab, the summits of the mountains showed themselves. But many days before, on the tenth of Tammuz, Noah had sent forth the raven, and a week later the dove, on the first of her three sallies, repeated at intervals of a week. It took from the first of Ab until the first of Tishri for the waters to subside wholly from the face of the earth. Even then the soil was so miry that the dwellers in the ark had to remain within until the twenty-seventh day of Heshwan, completing a full sun year, consisting of twelve moons and eleven days.<sup>45</sup>

Noah had experienced difficulty all along in ascertaining the state of the waters. When he desired to dispatch the raven, the bird said: "The Lord, thy Master, hates me, and thou dost hate me, too. Thy Master hates me, for He bade thee take seven pairs of the clean animals into the ark, and but two pairs of the unclean animals, to which I belong. Thou hatest me, for thou dost not choose, as a messenger, a bird of one of the kinds of which there are seven pairs in the ark, but thou sendest me, and of my kind there is but one pair. Suppose, now, I should perish by reason of heat or cold, would not the world be the poorer by a whole species of animals? Or can it be that thou hast cast a lustful eye upon my mate, and desirest to rid thyself of me?" Whereunto Noah made answer, and said: "Wretch! I must live apart from my own wife in the ark. How much less would such thoughts occur to my mind as thou imputest to me!"<sup>46</sup>

The raven's errand had no success, for when he saw the body of a dead man, he set to work to devour it, and did not execute the orders given to him by Noah. Thereupon the dove was sent out. Toward evening she returned with an olive leaf in her bill, plucked upon the Mount of Olives at Jerusalem, for the Holy Land had not been ravaged by the deluge. As she plucked it, she said to

God: "O Lord of the world, let my food be as bitter as the olive, but do Thou give it to me from Thy hand, rather than it should be sweet, and I be delivered into the power of men."<sup>47</sup>

---

37. Sanhedrin 108b; MHG I, 160. Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 7. 14, cites, from Sode Raza, the statement that Noah took care of the wild animals, Shem of the domestic, Ham of the birds, and Japheth of the reptiles. The sources cited above assume that Noah took with him food for each species of animals, the kind of food fit for each one; but, on the other hand, some authorities (BR 31. 14; Tan. B. I, 29 and 37–38; Tan. Noah 2 and 9; Augustine, *Civitas Dei*, 15. 27) assert that the dried fig served as food for both man and beast. That all the animals of the ark became tame, so that Noah walked on snakes and scorpions without being injured, is asserted in Tehillim 91,400, and also in MHG I, 158 (comp. Schechter, note 25), whereas Tan. B. I, 38, states that Noah was struck by a lion, which made him lame for the rest of his life, because he once gave him food at a late hour. In the numerous parallels to this legend (BR 30. 6, and the sources cited in note 51) it is stated that Noah's encounter with the lion occurred on leaving the ark. On the many hardships which Noah and his family underwent in the ark on account of the animals for which they cared, compare with footnote 223 on p. 223. On the animal Ursa-hana (the writing is doubtful), comp. Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 23 and 162–163, as well as Güdemann, *Religionsgeschichtliche Studien*, 55, seq. The word is most likely of Persian origin, but it must not be identified with the phoenix, though both of them are considered among the immortals; comp. also Lewysohn, *Zoologie des Talmuds*, 224, 337, and 353, who misread the word פְּרִי "bran", as פֵּרִי "fruit".

38. Yashar Noah, 16a; see also *ibid.*, 16b, where Noah's prayer, at the opening of the window of the ark, is given. Comp. further Tehillim 29, 233, which reads: God heard the prayer of the inmates of the ark. According to BR 32. 11, and the parallels cited by Theodor, Noah suffered very much from the cold, while the same source, 9, and Tehillim 1, 11, state that the ark, despite the mass of water, rested quietly "as a ship in port". Comp. also BR 33. 7, concerning the eleven cubits of the depth of the ark. Zohar I, 68a–68b and 69a, states that Noah by hiding in the ark escaped the angel of death.

39. PRE 23. Just as the wicked generation indulged in unnatural sexual passions, even so was their punishment unnatural: The female waters rose from the abyss, and united themselves with the male waters which came from above; BR 32. 7. Comp. also note 42. The view that the flood was



brought about by the union of the male and female waters is found also in Enoch 54. 8–9, and goes back, as has already been remarked by others, to the Babylonian conception of Apsu and Tiamat. Comp. Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 14a; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 1, 64b, Babli 6b; Tosefta 1. 4; Tehillim 42, 267; PRE 5; Koheleth Z., 87. Comp. further the designation of the rain-drops and water bubbles as bridegroom and bride (Ta'anit 6b), and the explanation of this designation by Al-Fasi in his responsum cited by Abudrahim, Berakot 8 (end). See also Tan. B. I, 24 (באו עליהם המים כמין אשה) which likewise alludes to the female waters.

40. Berakot 58b–59a; Rosh ha-Shanah 11b–12a; MHG I, 156–157; *Ma'yan Gannim*, 125–126. The last source speaks of the theft committed by כִּימָה "Pleiades" in carrying off two children or stars of עֵישׁ "The Great Bear". Comp. Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 65–66.

41. BR 25. 2, 31. 11, 33. 3, and 34. 11 (with reference to this legend concerning the name of Noah, comp. note 5); Sanhedrin 108b; PRE 23; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 6. 16 (the glistening precious stone was fetched by Noah from the river Pishon, at God's behest; this is inferred from Gen. 2. 11–12); an anonymous Midrash in Yalkut I, 57; MHG I, 158. Compare also with p. 142; text on pp. 856, 1033.

42. BR 32. 5 and 33. 7. Comp. note 45, particularly concerning the chronology of the time of the flood. The forty days of punishment are brought into connection with the forty days of Moses' stay on Sinai; they did not obey the Torah, which Moses learned in forty days, hence they were destroyed in forty days. The other explanation of the forty days as given in the text (the author is the Amora R. Johanan; comp. Shemuel 20, 106) is also known to Philo, *Quaestiones in Gen.*, 2. 14, and Ephraim, I, 149E. Compare footnote 97 on p. 77. The tendency to find some relationship between the punishment inflicted on the wicked generation and the sins they committed is to be noticed in several passages of the Midrashim; compare with p. 144, and note 39, where various reasons are assigned why they were punished with water. In all these Haggadot the idea of "measure for measure" is noticeable; comp. Sifre N., 43; Midrash Tannaim 36; Mekilta Shirah 2, 35b; Mekilta RS, 58; Tosefta Sotah 3. 9; Sanhedrin 108a; BR 32. 7; Tan. Be-shallah 12; MHG I, 150–151. Opinions differ as to whether fish were among the animals which perished, or not; according to one view, punishment was not inflicted on them; according to another, Noah brought a number of fish into the ark, whence many of them escaped to the ocean; Zebahim 113b; Sanhedrin 108a; BR 32 (end).

43. BR 22. 12 and 32. 5; ShR 31. 16; Koheleth 6. 3; Koheleth Z., 106. Compare further particulars on the death of Cain in footnote 44 on p. 111.

44. BR 28. 3; Tan. B. I, 19. A further illustration of the power of the masses of the waters is given in BR, *loc. cit.*; mill-stones were entirely dissolved (this is also mentioned

in BR 30. 8; WR 31. 1; Shir 4. 1), and so did the "almond bone" of the human body, which is otherwise never destroyed, so that it forms a nucleus for the new body in the time of resurrection (comp. Index, *s. v.* "Luz"). This legend wishes to convey that the generation of the flood will not be resurrected, as is explicitly stated in Sanhedrin 10. 3; Tosefta 13. 6; Babli 108a; Yerushalmi 10, 29b; Seder 'Olam 4; BR 26. 6; WR 4. 1; Tehillim 1, 12; ARN 32, 93. The source just cited differs as to whether these sinners will be completely destroyed, or will suffer eternal damnation; comp. also Zohar I, 69. The remark concerning Adam's remains is probably anti-Christian, since in the Christian versions of the Book of Adam (Book of Adam and Eve 3. 6, *seq.*; Schatzhöhle, *passim*; Preuschen, *Adamschriften*, 26; ps.-Hippolytus, 2–3) the removal of Adam's body from the "Cave of Treasures" into the ark plays a great part. In this source the corpse is made to speak. Yerushalmi Nazir 7, 56b, remarks that after 120 years Adam's remains were destroyed, so that only a spoonful of decayed matter was left. The same fate awaits every human being. Comp., on the other hand, Shabbat 152b, where it is asserted that the remains of the pious, particularly those who were never jealous, will endure in their perfect state, and will be turned into dust only shortly before their resurrection. The remains of all those who perished in the flood were carried down by the waters into the lowland of Babylon, where the soil was manured with those bodies; Shabbat 113b; Zebahim 113a.

45. Seder 'Olam 4 (a different view is also quoted here, according to which the second month in which the flood broke out was Iyar, and by this calculation the entire chronology is to begin with the spring, and with this latter view Philo, *Quaestiones*, 2, 17, 45, and 47 agrees; see also Jub., where the year commences with Nisan); Rosh ha-Shanah 11b–12a; BR 33. 7; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 7. 11 and 8. 4–5, 13; PRE 32; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 3. 3. Compare also footnote 97 on p. 77. Just as the flood lasted twelve months, even so does, according to R. Akiba ('Eduyyot 2. 10; numerous parallel passages are cited by Theodor, BR 28, 9, 1), the punishment of the sinners in Gehenna last twelve months.

46. Sanhedrin 108; BR 33. 5 (God bade Noah to receive the raven into the ark once more, because the bird was destined, on another occasion, to bring food for Elijah; comp. 1 Kings 18. 6); 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 26–27 (which contains many additions; compare with p. 37); PRK 32b. For particulars concerning the raven see text on p. 151. Philo, *Quaestiones*, 2, 35, observes that the raven is a bird able to foresee the future (a similar statement about the raven is to be found in Gittin 45a, where, however, the same quality is also ascribed to the dove), and that is the reason why Noah sent him. Comp. also Zohar Hadash Noah, 28b–29a, where, among other things, it is said that Noah, by sending the raven, wished to indicate that God



appeared cruel to mankind, even as this bird is cruel to his children (compare with p. 37). Although it was very impious of Noah to think of God in this manner, he was not punished for it, for "a man is not held responsible for what he does, if he is driven to it by suffering." This adage is taken from Baba Batra 16b. Towards the end of the flood God's wrath was turned into mercy, and He remembered Noah's good deeds, who had cared for the animals for a whole year; He also thought of the clean animals which Noah had with him; BR 33. 3 (see the parallels cited by Theodor); Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 8. 1. BR *l. c.*: The wicked change God's mercy into severity, while the pious change this severity into mercy. Hence the name *י* in Gen. 6. 5 and *אלהים* in 8. 11, since the Tetragrammaton stands for God's mercy and *אלהים* for His severity. Philo, *Quaestiones*, 2, 28, in agreement with Targum Yerushalmi and Tan. B. I, 36–37, understands *רוח* as "the spirit of God", *i. e.*, His mercy. Comp. Ginzberg in *Ha-Zofeh*, IV, 39; Targum Ps. 29. 10 and footnote 6 on p. 1.

47. PRE 23 (he who sends a message by an unclean person is the same as though he sent it through a fool; he who sends it by a clean person is as though he sent it by a faithful servant); BR 33. 6; WR 31 (end); Shir 1. 15 and 4. 1; Sanhedrin 108b; Zebahim 113a; 'Erubin 18b; Mishle 31, 109; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 8. 11; MHG I, 163; Evangel of Seth 40 (the statement made here that the raven did not return is in agreement with Septuagint and Vulgate on Gen. 8. 7, which have the reading *שׁב ולא שׁב*; comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 82–83); *Codex Naz.*, III, 72; Ephraim (Lagarde 80, 22.). That the dove found an olive-tree on the mount of Olives is to be explained by the fact that the flood did not reach the Holy Land, although the vapors of the hot water caused destruction also there (compare with p. 144). See ps.–Philo, 8D; Zebahim, *loc. cit.*, and the four Midrashim mentioned at the beginning of this note. Comp. further Yoma 67a (*לכולא עלמא*) and text on p. 582. According to those who think that the Holy Land was also visited by the flood, the olive-leaf came from paradise, whose gates opened themselves to the dove; BR, WR, and Shir, *loc. cit.*

## NOAH LEAVES THE ARK

**T**hough the earth assumed its old form at the end of the year of punishment, Noah did not abandon the ark until he received the command of God to leave it. He said to himself, "As I entered the ark at the bidding of God, so I will leave it only at His bidding." Yet, when God

bade Noah go out of the ark, he refused, because he feared that after he had lived upon the dry land for some time, and begotten children, God would bring another flood. He therefore would not leave the ark until God swore He would never visit the earth with a flood again.<sup>48</sup>

When he stepped out from the ark into the open, he began to weep bitterly at sight of the enormous ravages wrought by the flood, and he said to God: "O Lord of the world! Thou art called the Merciful, and Thou shouldst have had mercy upon Thy creatures." God answered, and said: "O thou foolish shepherd, now thou speakest to Me. Thou didst not so when I addressed kind words to thee, saying: 'I saw thee as a righteous man and perfect in thy generation, and I will bring the flood upon the earth to destroy all flesh. Make an ark for thyself of gopher wood.' Thus spake I to thee, telling thee all these circumstances, that thou mightest entreat mercy for the earth. But thou, as soon as thou didst hear that thou wouldst be rescued in the ark, thou didst not concern thyself about the ruin that would strike the earth. Thou didst but build an ark for thyself, in which thou wast saved. Now that the earth is wasted, thou openest thy mouth to supplicate and pray."

Noah realized that he had been guilty of folly. To propitiate God and acknowledge his sin, he brought a sacrifice.<sup>49</sup> God accepted the offering with favor, whence he is called by his name Noah.<sup>50</sup> The sacrifice was not offered by Noah with his own hands; the priestly services connected with it were performed by his son Shem. There was a reason for this. One day in the ark Noah forgot to give his ration to the lion, and the hungry beast struck him so violent a blow with his paw that he was lame forever after, and, having a bodily defect, he was not permitted to do the offices of a priest.<sup>51</sup>

The sacrifices consisted of an ox, a sheep, a goat, two turtle doves, and two young pigeons.



Noah had chosen these kinds because he supposed they were appointed for sacrifices, seeing that God had commanded him to take seven pairs of them into the ark with him. The altar was erected in the same place on which Adam and Cain and Abel had brought their sacrifices, and on which later the altar was to be in the sanctuary at Jerusalem.<sup>52</sup>

After the sacrifice was completed, God blessed Noah and his sons. He made them to be rulers of the world as Adam had been,<sup>53</sup> and He gave them a command, saying, “Be fruitful and multiply upon the earth,” for during their sojourn in the ark, the two sexes, of men and animals alike, had lived apart from each other, because while a public calamity rages continence is becoming even to those who are left unscathed. This law of conduct had been violated by none in the ark except by Ham, by the dog, and by the raven. They all received a punishment. Ham’s was that his descendants were men of dark-hued skin.<sup>54</sup>

As a token that He would destroy the earth no more, God set His bow in the cloud. Even if men should be steeped in sin again, the bow proclaims to them that their sins will cause no harm to the world. Times came in the course of the ages when men were pious enough not to have to live in dread of punishment. In such times the bow was not visible.<sup>55</sup>

God accorded permission to Noah and his descendants to use the flesh of animals for food, which had been forbidden from the time of Adam until then. But they were to abstain from the use of blood. He ordained the seven Noachian laws, the observance of which is incumbent upon all men, not upon Israel alone. God enjoined particularly the command against the shedding of human blood. Whoso would shed man’s blood, his blood would be shed. Even if human judges let the guilty man go free, his punishment would overtake him. He would die an unnatural death, such as he had inflicted upon his fellow-man.

Yea, even beasts that slew men, even of them would the life of men be required.<sup>56</sup>

---

48. BR 39. 3; Koheleth 10. 4; Tan. B. I, 41; Aggadat Bereshit 7, 17–18. Of the hot springs which broke out at the time of the flood, three remained (in Palestine) open; Sanhedrin 108a; BR 33. 4; MHG I, 162. On the other traces of the flood comp. Zohar I, 63, and text on p. 966. On the place where the ark rested, comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 3. 5–6; BR 33. 4; Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 8. 4. See further the literature cited by Dillmann in his commentary, *ad loc.* Reference may also be made to the following passages: Jub. 5. 28 (Lubar, one of the mountains of Ararat, is the same as in Sefer Noah, 155, beginning; for other sources dependent on Jub., comp. Rönsch, *Buch der Jubiläen*, index, s. v. “Lubar”); Epiphanius, *Haer.*, I, 1. 4, and the sources cited by Malan in his notes on the Book of Adam 239 and 241–242. It is noteworthy that the rabbinic sources (besides the sources quoted above, comp. also Onkelos Gen., *loc. cit.*; Abba Gorion 37; Tosefta-Targum 2 Kings 19. 37), with unusual accord, describe Kardu (Korduene in Armenia) as the mountain on which the ark rested, just as Berosus (Richter’s edition, 56), in his account of the flood, makes Xisuthros come out of his ship in Korduene. Comp. also Julius Africanus, as quoted by Syncellus, I, 21.

49. Zohar Hadash Noah, 29a; Zohar I (supplement), 4a and 68a; Sabba, Noah, 10d. Compare further with p. 804, concerning Noah’s selfishness, who was anxious for his own safety, for which he prayed to God (MHG I, 154), but did not trouble himself about all the other people when God revealed to him their approaching doom. While in the ark, however, Noah constantly prayed to God; comp. note 38. See further Tan. B. I, 42; Tan. Noah 9; Aggadat Bereshit 7, 18; PRE 23.

50. BR 25. 2. On the signification of this name comp. note 5. The anthropomorphic expression “and God smelled the sweet savour” (Gen. 8. 21), against which the Clementine *Homilies*, 3. 39, strongly expressed themselves, is explained in BR 34. 9 to mean that God had accepted Noah’s sacrifice mercifully for the sake of his pious descendants, Abraham, the three youths in the fiery furnace, as well as many martyrs in the time of religious persecutions (in the time of Hadrian), who were ready to sacrifice their lives for the sanctification of God’s name.

51. BR 30. 6 and 36. 4; PK 27, 168a; WR 20. 1; Koheleth 9. 2; Koheleth Z. 119; Tan. B. I, 38, and V, 7; Tan. Noah 9 and Wa-Ethanan 1. According to some of these sources, it was when leaving the ark that Noah was hurt by the lion; this assumes that during their stay in the ark all the animals were tame; comp. note 37, and further Book of Adam 3. 11. In 2 Alphabet of Ben Sirā 29b and 35b–36a it is the eagle and the raven who, after leaving the



ark, set an example of immorality and murder. It was the raven who advised the animals not to obey Noah's command to lead a monogamous life, and it was the eagle who was the first to slay a bird. At first even the rest of the birds tried to punish the eagle (God only enabled it to escape by means of its high flight), but gradually they got accustomed to it. On Shem, the priest, compare footnote 102 on p. 196. In Zohar Hadash Noah, 29b, it is said that God appointed Shem priest as a reward for his devotion to the study of the Torah, in which he first instructed his brother Japheth and subsequently Abraham. The latter then prayed to God that He should cause His Shekinah to rest in "the house of Shem" (*i. e.*, Jerusalem), and this request was granted to him. The knowledge of the Torah was directly transmitted to Shem by Enoch, who had received it from Seth, to whom Adam had imparted it. After the flood God decided that it would be better for man to observe a few important precepts of the Torah rather than possess the whole of it and neglect it on account of the vast number of the precepts. Whereupon He assigned to them seven Noachite laws, and waited for the advent of Abraham to observe the entire Torah. According to another view, Noah and his family forgot the Torah during the time of the flood because of their sufferings. After the flood God revealed to him the seven precepts. Compare footnote 55 on p. 69.

52. BR 26. 1 and 34. 9; Tan. B. II, 127; Tan. Wa-Yakhel 6; ShR 50. 2; Tehillim 1, 11; PRE 23 and 31 (concerning the number of the sacrifices comp. Luria's note 70 on the first passage); Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 8. 20 and 22. 9; Ephraim I, 148B. Jub. 6. 1, *seq.*, connects this sacrifice of Noah, and the covenant appertaining to it which God made with him on this occasion, with the feast of Pentecost, and makes them both take place in the month of Siwan; compare footnote 60 on p. 127. Mount Lubar is designated as the site of the altar (comp. note 48).

53. BR 34. 12 (the complete dominion of man over the animals was not established until the time of Solomon; compare footnote 113 on p. 91); Midrash Aggada, Gen. 9. 2 (read **ומשום שהיה**); MHG I, 168. Noah did not wish to leave the ark, since the earth had no people at all. On account of this God said to him: "Be fruitful and multiply on earth". But Noah and his family were not inclined to comply with this command, for they feared another flood. They were finally calmed only when God promised him never to destroy the earth again; MHG I, 165 (comp. Schechter, note 20); BR 34. 6; Sanhedrin 108b (this is how **למשפחותיהם לא הם** is to be explained; comp. *Pa'aneah* and *Hadar* on Gen. 8. 19; differently Midrash Aggada, *ad loc.*, according to which **למשפח'** indicates that only the young of the animals, which were born in the ark, left it, but not those which entered it; comp. the midrashic quotation in Shu'aib, 56); Zohar Hadash Noah, 28b; Midrash Aggada 8, 18.

54. Sanhedrin 108b; BR 31. 12, 34. 7, and 36. 7; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 1, 64d; Tan. B. I, 42–43; Tan. Noah 11 and 12; PRE 23; an unknown Midrash in Yalkut II, 960 (end); it is related to, but not identical with PK 29, 189a; an unknown Midrash in *Da'at*, Gen. 7. 7; ER 31, 162; MHG I, 165 (comp. Schechter, note 18); Philo, *Quaestiones*, 2, 49; Aristas 35; Origen, *Gen. Selecta*, 7. 19; Ephraim, I, 150 C and 54 B; Book of Adam 3. 11; Evangel of Seth 40; ps.–Hippolytus, 2–3 and 4. On the statement, found in Book of Adam 3. 8, that the women had quarters in the western and the men in the eastern side of the ark, compare with pp. 92–93. On the underlying idea of this legend expressed in the saying "the individual should participate in the suffering of the community", compare footnote 190 on p. 368, and text on p. 581. Regarding the three sinners, Ham, the dog, and the raven, the following may be noted. Shemhazael (*sic*) shortly before the flood had intercourse with the wife of Ham, who, in order to protect his wife, trespassed the commandment of abstinence in the ark, and claimed the bastards Sihon and Og as his own children (comp. Index, *s. v.*); Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 7. 7, and R. Bahya, Hukkat (end), who cites this legend in an abbreviated form. The dog followed Ham's bad example secretly (as a punishment the male remains attached to the body of the female after copulation). Finally the raven followed this example openly, and called upon the other animals to violate Noah's prohibition. See 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 35b. Different is the reading *ibid.*, 26b–27a, and in the older sources cited at the beginning of this note. Comp. also MHG I, 162 (end). On the punishment of the raven, compare with p. 37, and on that of the dog, footnote 178 on p. 37.

55. BR 35. 2 (**מסוג** in MS. **כ** cited by Theodor means "going through" = "studying"; comp. **סוגיא** and **רהט**; Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 13d; Ketubot 77b; PR 10, 87b; Tehillim 36, 252. On the question whether God's oath (comp. Shebu'ot 36a; MHG I, 172, and the sources cited by Schechter, on the sevenfold oath not to destroy the world), not to bring a flood again, precludes His destruction of the world by other means, or not, see Ginzberg, **מבול של אש**, 14, *seq.*, where all the material bearing on this subject, found in ancient literature, has been collected. See further Philo, *Quaestiones*, 2. 63. The rainbow is a sign to the effect that God laid aside His weapon, the bow, with which He had destroyed the world during the flood: it was stretched at that time, but never again; Lekah, Gen. 9. 16, undoubtedly based on older sources; comp. the Midrash in MHG I, 172, where reference is made to Hab. 3. 9 concerning the bow as God's weapon. A different view is given in BR 35. 3, where the rainbow is conceived as the reflection of God's majesty. On the basis of an old tannaitic tradition (compare p. 78), according to which the rainbow, which first became visible in Noah's days, belonged to the primordial



creations, we meet, in the old sources, the rationalistic explanation of Gen. 9. 12. This explanation takes this verse to mean that during the time of the flood, on account of the uninterrupted pour of rain, no rainbow was seen, since it is only visible in clear weather; comp. Sa'adya Gaon, quoted by Kimhi, *ad loc.*, who bases his view on BR, though our text of that Midrash contains nothing to that effect. See further MHG I, 173. Philo, *Quaestiones*, 2, 64, opposes the view which considers the rainbow as God's weapon.

56. BR 36. 6 and 34. 13–14 (in the first passage the view is also cited, according to which animals are not punished); Sanhedrin 57a–57b; MHG I, 171; Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 9. 6. Comp. also DR 2. 25. On the seven Noachite laws, compare footnote 51 and footnote 55 on p. 69. On the reward and punishment of the animals, comp. Slavonic Enoch 58, and Ginzberg's *Compte Rendu*, 34. Some authorities contest the view that Adam was forbidden to eat meat; comp. BR 16 (end); Tan. B. I, 30; Tan. Shemini 8 (middle). The Church Fathers also differ on the point whether Adam was permitted to eat meat or not; comp. Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 20; Theodoretus, Gen. 9.3, and 29; Aphraates, 310. Compare also footnote 56 on p. 69. Justin Martyr and Aphraates, *loc. cit.*, as well as Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 2. 1, oppose the Jewish dietary laws on the basis of Gen. 3. 3, and we have the answer to this in the Tanhuma, *loc. cit.*, as well as in Tehillim 146, 535, in the sentence that a son of Noah (*i. e.*, a non-Jew) was permitted to eat all kinds of meat; but on mount Sinai God gave laws and precepts to Israel, which restricted the enjoyment of meat, in order to grant them reward for the observance thereof.

## THE CURSE OF DRUNKENNESS

Noah lost his epithet "the pious" when he began to occupy himself with the growing of the vine. He became a "man of the ground," and this first attempt to produce wine at the same time produced the first to drink to excess, the first to utter curses upon his associates, and the first to introduce slavery. This is the way it all came about. Noah found the vine which Adam had taken with him from Paradise, when he was driven forth. He tasted the grapes upon it, and, finding them palatable, he resolved to plant the

vine and tend it.<sup>57</sup> On the selfsame day on which he planted it, it bore fruit, he put it in the wine-press, drew off the juice, drank it, became drunken, and was dishonored—all on one day. His assistant in the work of cultivating the vine was Satan, who had happened along at the very moment when he was engaged in planting the slip he had found. Satan asked him: "What is it thou art planting here?"

Noah: "A vineyard."

Satan: "And what may be the qualities of what it produces?"

Noah: "The fruit it bears is sweet, be it dry or moist. It yields wine that rejoiceth the heart of man."

Satan: "Let us go into partnership in this business of planting a vineyard."

Noah: "Agreed!"

Satan thereupon slaughtered a lamb, and then, in succession, a lion, a pig, and a monkey. The blood of each as it was killed he made to flow under the vine. Thus he conveyed to Noah what the qualities of wine are: before man drinks of it, he is innocent as a lamb; if he drinks of it moderately, he feels as strong as a lion; if he drinks more of it than he can bear, he resembles the pig; and if he drinks to the point of intoxication, then he behaves like a monkey, he dances around, sings, talks obscenely, and knows not what he is doing.<sup>58</sup>

This deterred Noah no more than did the example of Adam, whose fall had also been due to wine, for the forbidden fruit had been the grape, with which he had made himself drunk.<sup>59</sup>

In his drunken condition Noah betook himself to the tent of his wife. His son Ham saw him there, and he told his brothers what he had noticed, and said: "The first man had but two sons, and one slew the other; this man Noah has three sons, yet he desires to beget a fourth besides." Nor did Ham rest satisfied with these disrespectful words against his father. He added to this sin of irreverence the still greater outrage



of attempting to perform an operation upon his father designed to prevent procreation.

When Noah awoke from his wine and became sober, he pronounced a curse upon Ham in the person of his youngest son Canaan. To Ham himself he could do no harm, for God had conferred a blessing upon Noah and his three sons as they departed from the ark. Therefore he put the curse upon the last-born son of the son that had prevented him from begetting a younger son than the three he had.<sup>60</sup> The descendants of Ham through Canaan therefore have red eyes, because Ham looked upon the nakedness of his father; they have misshapen lips, because Ham spoke with his lips to his brothers about the unseemly condition of his father; they have twisted curly hair, because Ham turned and twisted his head round to see the nakedness of his father; and they go about naked, because Ham did not cover the nakedness of his father. Thus he was requited, for it is the way of God to mete out punishment measure for measure.

Canaan had to suffer vicariously for his father's sin. Yet some of the punishment was inflicted upon him on his own account, for it had been Canaan who had drawn the attention of Ham to Noah's revolting condition. Ham, it appears, was but the worthy father of such a son.<sup>61</sup> The last will and testament of Canaan addressed to his children read as follows: "Speak not the truth; hold not yourselves aloof from theft; lead a dissolute life; hate your master with an exceeding great hate; and love one another."<sup>62</sup>

As Ham was made to suffer requital for his irreverence, so Shem and Japheth received a reward for the filial, deferential way in which they took a garment and laid it upon both their shoulders, and walking backward, with averted faces, covered the nakedness of their father. Naked the descendants of Ham, the Egyptians and Ethiopians, were led away captive and into exile by the king of Assyria, while the descendants of

Shem, the Assyrians, even when the angel of the Lord burnt them in the camp, were not exposed, their garments remained upon their corpses unsinged. And in time to come, when Gog shall suffer his defeat, God will provide both shrouds and a place of burial for him and all his multitude, the posterity of Japheth.

Though Shem and Japheth both showed themselves to be dutiful and deferential, yet it was Shem who deserved the larger meed of praise. He was the first to set about covering his father. Japheth joined him after the good deed had been begun. Therefore the descendants of Shem received as their special reward the *ṭallit*, the garment worn by them, while the Japhethites have only the toga.<sup>63</sup> A further distinction accorded to Shem was the mention of his name in connection with God's in the blessing of Noah. "Blessed be the Lord, the God of Shem," he said, though as a rule the name of God is not joined to the name of a living person, only to the name of one who has departed this life.<sup>64</sup>

The relation of Shem to Japheth was expressed in the blessing their father pronounced upon them: God will grant a land of beauty to Japheth, and his sons will be proselytes dwelling in the academies of Shem.<sup>65</sup> At the same time Noah conveyed by his words that the Shekinah would dwell only in the first Temple, erected by Solomon, a son of Shem, and not in the second Temple, the builder of which would be Cyrus, a descendant of Japheth.<sup>66</sup>

---

57. BR 36. 3 (on other men to whom agriculture caused injury, compare footnote 28 on p. 107); Tan. B. I, 46 (in the *Tanhuma* the designation "a man of the soil" is considered by some as a sign of honor; similarly Philo, *De Agricultura*, 1); Tan. Noah 13; PRE 23; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 9.20. That the grapes came from paradise is mentioned only in the two last sources; the opposite view is found in BR, *loc. cit.*; Tan. B. I, 48; Tan. Noah 15, which reads: Noah took along with him all the possible plants for



the future cultivation of the ground, among them the seeds of the vine. Comp. note 59.

58. Tan. Noah 18; Tan. B. I, 48; BR 36. 3–4; PRE 23; Abkir in Yalkut I, 61 (this passage speaks of the sheep, the lion, and the pig only), and in a MS. quoted by Epstein, *Ha-Eshkol*, II, 205; Shu'aib, Noah 5d (is probably based on a more correct text of Tan., and has the sheep, lion, ape, and pig); Midrash Aggada, Gen. 9. 21 (agrees with Shu'aib). *Hadar*, Gen., *loc. cit.*, quotes a somewhat different version of the legend, according to which the animals are: the pig, he-goat, sheep, and ape. In *Shalshelet*, 92b, it is the he-goat which became drunk on wild grapes. Whereupon Noah tried to plant grapes, and he washed the roots with the blood of a lion, pig, sheep, and ape. On the views of the old sources concerning wine, comp. 'Erubin 65a; Ketubot 65a; Sanhedrin 70a; BR 36. 4; Tan. B. I, 58, 50–51, and III, 24–26; Tan. Shemini 11; WR 12. 1; Mishle 23, 95–96. While intoxication is said in these sources to be the cause of all sins, and the ruin of individuals, as well as nations, and therefore severely condemned, the moderate enjoyment of the vine is not only permitted, but also recommended. Similar views on the use and misuse of wine are found in Greek Baruch 4.

59. Sanhedrin 70a; Greek Baruch 4. 8; Apocalypse of Abraham 23; Enoch 32. 4. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 38–45, and footnote 70 on p. 72. Origen, Gen. 9. 20, maintains that Noah's vine was the offshoot of the tree of knowledge, and this view seems to be shared by PRE 23 and Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.* (comp. note 57). The whole earth is either watered from paradise or Gehenna (from their streams); where good wine grows, the soil is watered from paradise; but where bad wine grows, the soil is watered from Gehenna; BHM V, 67.

60. BR 36. 4–5 and 7; Tan. B. I, 49; Tan. Noah 15; PRE 23; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 9. 24–25; Midrash Haseerot 50 (while intoxicated he ventured to have intercourse with his wife, which he would not have done if he were sober, owing to the fact that the lion had hurt him and rendered him incapable of conjugal relations; comp. BR, *loc. cit.*, and text on p. 150; but differently in BR 25. 1, where the evil that had befallen Noah is declared to have been the punishment for his refusal, after leaving the ark, to resume conjugal relations which had been interrupted during his stay there; comp. note 53 and BR, *loc. cit.*, where, according to one view, this abstinence of Noah is highly commended); Sanhedrin 70a (according to one view Ham committed sodomy); Clementine *Recognitiones*, 1. 30; Theophilus, 3. 19; Book of Adam 3. 13. The emphasis laid in Jewish sources on the fact that Ham prevented his father from begetting a fourth son seems to be directed against the view found in the Book of Adam, *loc. cit.*, and in other Christian writings, according to which Noah begot several sons after leaving the ark; comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*,

86–87. In the above-mentioned rabbinic sources, as well as in patristic literature (Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 139; Ephraim, I, 56 F, 57 A and B; Theodoretus and Origen, *Gen.*, *loc. cit.*), opinions differ as to whether the fault was entirely Ham's (yet he, having been blessed, could not be cursed; compare footnote 85 on p. 76) or whether Canaan, Ham's son, had a share in it; comp. the following note. Noah learned of the disgrace perpetrated on him by his son through a dream; Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.* According to others (Shu'aib, Noah, 5b, quoting a Midrash, perhaps BR 37. 7: **בְּנוֹ הַפֶּסוּל**), Noah took it for granted that only his immoral son could have committed this act (comp. vol. I, p. 166). On the interpretation of BR 36. 4 that "tent" is a metaphor for wife (**אֶהְיֶה לְאִשְׁתּוֹ**), comp. Mo'ed Katan 15b and BR 39. 16. A favorite metaphor for wife is house, comp. e. g. Shabbat 118b; Yoma 13a.

61. BR 36. 7; Tan. B. I, 49; Tan. Noah 15. PRE 23 goes even a step further and asserts, in agreement with some of the Church Fathers (comp. the preceding note, and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 84–87), that it was really Canaan who committed this disgraceful act (the castration of Noah); Ham, however, divulged the secret. Sforino, Gen. 9. 25, quotes a similar version from Berosus the Chaldean. Comp. also Philo (*De Ebrietati*, 2, 7, and 10; *Quaestiones*, 2, 65, 70, 77), who, in agreement with the Rabbis, makes Canaan participate in his father's disgraceful deed, and is also acquainted with the haggadic interpretation of BR 36. 2 and 7 concerning Gen. 9. 18 and 24 (Ham and Canaan, because they are both equally base in character, are designated as father and son; hence **הַקֶּטֶן** signifies "the debased"). It is probable that similar statements of the Church Fathers go back, directly or indirectly, to Philo.

62. Pesahim 113b. PRK (Schönblum's edition, 15b and 19a) has: Love sleep, and hate work, as a part of the Testament of Canaan; comp. also Pesahim 40b, below, as well as Kiddushin 49b, concerning the indolence of slaves; see footnote 292 on p. 390.

63. BR 36. 6 (they walked with their eyes closed); Tan. B. I, 48–50 (even after they had covered their father, they did not turn round); Tan. Noah 15. Compare footnote 59 on p. 1046, concerning the "death by fire" to which the army of Sennacherib was doomed. Shem is already praised in Ecclu. 49. 16, and the rabbinic legend which identifies him with Melchizedek (compare with p. 196, and MHG I, 187) does not only praise his piety, but considers him a prophet, who had in vain admonished the nations for 400 years about their wickedness. But he received his reward, for God blessed him with Abraham as his descendant; ER 20, 114; 24, 126–127; 28, 141–142; EZ 2, 174. The "house of study" and "court of justice" of Shem and Eber are frequently mentioned in the talmudic and midrashic literature; comp., e. g., BR 63. 10, 85. 12; Makkot



23b, *etc.* That Eber was a prophet is already found in Seder 'Olam 1 (comp. Ratner, *ad loc.*). See text on p. 761.

64. MHG I, 177–178; BR 26. 3. Comp. pp. 293 and 317–318, concerning the combining of God's name with that of a person.

65. BR 36. 8; Tan. B. I, 50; Tan. Noah 15; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 9. 27; Jerome on Gen., *loc. cit.* (who naturally conceives it in a Christian sense), and Irenaeus, *Haer.*, III, 5. 3. The Church Fathers follow the old versions (including Onkelos), which translate יָפֶת "stretching out"; this is perhaps the view of the Midrashim just cited. Comp. the following note.

66. Yoma 9b; PR 35, 160a; BR 36. 8; comp. further Onkelos, *ad loc.*; Jub. 7. 12; Philo, *De Ebrietati*, 13. The last-named author wavers between the explanation which takes Japheth to be the subject of יָפֶת, and that which refers this verb to God. The view that the Shekinah was absent from the second temple is widespread; compare footnote 341 on p. 645, and footnote 36 on p. 1121. Very popular is the interpretation that Noah's blessing contains the prophecy concerning the translation of the Scriptures into Greek: "The beauty of Japheth, the Greek translation, will be used in the tents of Shem, the houses of study of the Jews"; Megillah 9b; Yerushalmi 1, 71b; BR, *loc. cit.*; DR 1. 1.—Wise sayings of Shem are given in *Ben ha-Melek* 21, according to Arabic sources.

## NOAH'S DESCENDANTS

### SPREAD ABROAD

When it became known to Ham that his father had cursed him, he fled ashamed, and with his family he settled in the city built by him, and named Neelatamauk for his wife. Jealous of his brother, Japheth followed his example. He likewise built a city which he named for his wife, Adataneses. Shem was the only one of the sons of Noah who did not abandon him. In the vicinity of his father's home, by the mountain, he built his city, to which he also gave his wife's name, Zedeketelbab. The three cities are all near Mount Lubar, the eminence upon which the ark rested. The first lies to the south of it, the second to the west, and the third to the east.

Noah endeavored to inculcate the ordinances and the commands known to him upon his children and his children's children. In particular he admonished them against the fornication, the uncleanness, and all the iniquity which had brought the flood down upon the earth. He reproached them with living apart from one another, and with their jealousies, for he feared that, after his death, they might go so far as to shed human blood. Against this he warned them impressively, that they be not annihilated from the earth like those that went before. Another law which he enjoined upon them, to observe it, was the law ordaining that the fruit of a tree shall not be used the first three years it bears, and even in the fourth year it shall be the portion of the priests alone, after a part thereof has been offered upon the altar of God. And having made an end of giving his teachings and injunctions, Noah said: "For thus did Enoch, your ancestor, exhort his son Methuselah, and Methuselah his son Lamech, and Lamech delivered all unto me as his father had bidden him, and now I do exhort you, my children, as Enoch exhorted his son. When he lived, in his generation, which was the seventh generation of man, he commanded it and testified it unto his children and his children's children, until the day of his death."<sup>67</sup>

In the year 1569 after the creation of the world, Noah divided the earth by lot among his three sons, in the presence of an angel. Each one stretched forth his hand and took a slip from the bosom of Noah. Shem's slip was inscribed with the middle of the earth, and this portion became the inheritance of his descendants unto all eternity. Noah rejoiced that the lot had assigned it to Shem. Thus was fulfilled his blessing upon him, "And God in the habitation of Shem," for three holy places fell within his precincts—the Holy of Holies in the Temple, Mount Sinai, the middle point of the desert, and Mount Zion, the middle point of the navel of the earth.



The south fell to the lot of Ham, and the north became the inheritance of Japheth. The land of Ham is hot, Japheth's cold, but Shem's is neither hot nor cold, its temperature is hot and cold mixed.<sup>68</sup>

This division of the earth took place toward the end of the life of Peleg, the name given to him by his father Eber, who, being a prophet, knew that the division of the earth would take place in the time of his son.<sup>69</sup> The brother of Peleg was called Joktan, because the duration of the life of man was shortened in his time.<sup>70</sup>

In turn, the three sons of Noah, while they were still standing in the presence of their father, divided each his portion among his children, Noah threatening with his curse any who should stretch out his hand to take a portion not assigned to him by lot. And they all cried, "So be it! So be it!"<sup>71</sup>

Thus were divided one hundred and four lands and ninety-nine islands among seventy-two nations, each with a language of its own, using sixteen different sets of characters for writing. To Japheth were allotted forty-four lands, thirty-three islands, twenty-two languages, and five kinds of writing; Ham received thirty-four lands, thirty-three islands, twenty-four languages, and five kinds of writing; and Shem twenty-six lands, thirty-three islands, twenty-six languages, and six kinds of writing—one set of written characters more to Shem than to either of his brothers, the extra set being the Hebrew.<sup>72</sup>

The land appointed as the inheritance of the twelve sons of Jacob was provisionally granted to Canaan, Zidon, Heth, the Jebusites, the Amorites, the Girgashites, the Hivites, the Arkites, the Sinites, the Arvadites, the Zemarites, and the Hamathites. It was the duty of these nations to take care of the land until the rightful owners should come.<sup>73</sup>

No sooner had the children of Noah and their children's children taken possession of the

habitations apportioned to them, than the unclean spirits began to seduce men and torment them with pain and all sorts of suffering leading to spiritual and physical death. Upon the entreaties of Noah God sent down the angel Raphael, who banished nine-tenths of the unclean spirits from the earth, leaving but one-tenth for Mastema, to punish sinners through them. Raphael, supported by the chief of the unclean spirits, at that time revealed to Noah all the remedies residing in plants, that he might resort to them at need. Noah recorded them in a book, which he transmitted to his son Shem.<sup>74</sup> This is the source to which go back all the medical books whence the wise men of India, Aram, Macedonia, and Egypt draw their knowledge. The sages of India devoted themselves particularly to the study of curative trees and spices; the Arameans were well versed in the knowledge of the properties of grains and seeds, and they translated the old medical books into their language. The wise men of Macedonia were the first to apply medical knowledge practically, while the Egyptians sought to effect cures by means of magic arts and by means of astrology, and they taught the Midrash of the Chaldees, composed by Kangar, the son of Ur, the son of Kesed. Medical skill spread further and further until the time of Æsculapius. This Macedonian sage, accompanied by forty learned magicians, journeyed from country to country, until they came to the land beyond India, in the direction of Paradise. They hoped there to find some wood of the tree of life, and thus spread their fame abroad over the whole world. Their hope was frustrated. When they arrived at the spot, they found healing trees and wood of the tree of life, but when they were in the act of stretching forth their hands to gather what they desired, lightning darted out of the ever-turning sword, smote them to the ground, and they were all burnt. With them disappeared all knowledge of medicine, and it did not revive until the time



of the first Artaxerxes, under the Macedonian sage Hippocrates, Dioscorides of Baala, Galen of Caphthor, and the Hebrew Asaph.<sup>75</sup>

67. Jub. 7. 13–39. Concerning Noah's daughters-in-law, compare footnote 42 on p. 111; ps.–Hippolytus, 2; in Sibyll. 3. 826 the Sibyl describes herself as one of them. Verse 20 of Jub. is perhaps an inaccurate translation of the Hebrew original, whose text may have read: והזהירם על הדין על גלוי ערוה ועל ברכת השם “And he commanded them to mete out justice, not to commit incest, and not to blaspheme God;” comp. Sanhedrin 56b, where these are included among the seven Noachian precepts. On גלוי ערוה (literally “uncovering the nakedness”=incest or unchastity), see the dictionaries on the Talmud, *s. v.*; comp. note 17.

68. Jub. 8. 10–30, where the possessions of each of the sons of Noah are described in detail. The parallels to this legend of Jub. (some are directly borrowed from it) in Christian literature are given by Charles, *ad loc.* Comp. further Clementine *Recognitiones*, 1. 30; Ephraim, I, 153 C. This legend is entirely unknown in rabbinic sources (PRE 24 does not belong here; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 88), but Sibyll. 3. 114 seems to have made use of Jub., *loc. cit.*; comp. note 71. On Jerusalem, or rather the site of the altar, as the centre of the earth, compare with p. 7, and the Melchizedek fragment 3. On Palestine as the rightful possession of Israel, the descendants of Shem, comp. note 73.

69. Seder 'Olam 1; BR 37. 7, where one view is given, according to which at the birth of Peleg (comp. Jub. 8. 8) the earth was divided and his father therefore gave him a name alluding to this event. Concerning Eber, comp. also note 63 and Jerome, Gen. 10. 25.

70. Yashar Noah, 17a. A different view is given in BR 6. 4 and 37. 7, according to which Joktan signifies “the modest one”. As a reward for his modesty he became the progenitor of thirteen tribes. However, many of his descendants lived in great poverty. The inhabitants of Hazarmaveth lived only on herbs, and wore clothes made of paper, and daily awaited death; BR 37. 8.

71. Jub. 9. 14–15; Midrash Aggada Gen. 12, 6. Compare note 73 and text on p. 769.

72. MHG I, 182, from an unknown source. The text is corrupt in several places, and it is therefore only possible to restore some of the names to their original form. Instead of אִיִּיהֶם ס' read אִיִּיהֶם ס' for קפדקי read קפדקי “Cappadocian”; and probably instead of צרדי read צורי “Tyrian”. Less probable is the emendation of פקפילי to פניקי “Phenician”, whereas רחומי רחומי “Roman” (this is the usual orthography in Syriac) is very likely only a printer's error. It is very strange that “Jebusite” is ascribed to the Japhethic

and Persian to the Hamitic system of writing, particularly in view of Gen. 10. 16. It is unknown what גוטאזכי is; it seem to be Persian. Accordingly we may say with certainty that the systems of writing known to this source are: Roman, Cappadocian, Greek, and Median, which were employed by the Japhethites; the Hamites employed the Persian, Agogian, African, Syrian, and Phenician writings; whereas the Semites used Egyptian, Libnian (comp. Sanhedrin 21b: כתב ליבנא), Assyrian, Hebrew, and Chaldean. On the biblical table of nations in rabbinic literature comp. Krauss, *Monatsschrift*, XXXIX, 1–11 and 49–63; Schürer, *Geschichte*, II, 406, note 42, as well as Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 90. The number of nations or “tongues” (לשונות ואומות) are used synonymously in this connection) is given in the source employed in MHG, as seventy-two. This agrees with Hippolytus 10. 26; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1. 26 and other Christian authors; comp. Schürer, *loc. cit.* Other rabbinic sources usually speak of the “seventy nations of the world”; compare with p. 252; text on p. 446 as well as text on pp. 604, 645, 758, 771; see text on pp. 843, 1031, 1126, 1140, 1145. See further ER 15, 76; 19, 111, 126; 31, 156; EZ 15, 175 (uses, with one exception on p. 111, לשון and לשונות instead of אומות); DR 4. 9; Shir 1. 2 (end); Targum Song of Songs 1. 2 and 9; Midrash Tannaim 190; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 11. 7 and Deut. 32. 9; PRE 24; Midrash le-Hanukkah 135 (second version, 141); Sukkah 55b; PK 30, 194a, and 31, 195b; Tan. B. IV, 156; Tan. Pinehas 16; BaR 21, 24; Shir 4. 1; Tehillim 109, 465, and 9, 84. In the last-named passage a more detailed account of this number is given, in which it is asserted that the descendants of Japheth enumerated in the Bible are 14, those of Ham are 30 (with the omission of the Philistines who are designated in 10. 14 as a mixed people), and those of Shem are 26. The total is thus seventy. Different is the reading in Baraita 32 Middot in Yalkut I, 61, on Gen. 9. 18, and similarly Ephraim I, 51 J (comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 91–92), according to which Japheth and Ham, and even the Philistines are included in the number, but Shem, Arpachshad, Shelah, and Eber are excluded. The descendants of Noah thus amount to seventy. With the exception of the last-mentioned four, all of them were wicked; hence these four, who were pious men, were not included. The number 72 is very likely based on the assumption that Asshur named in 10. 11 must not be identified with the person bearing the same name mentioned in 10. 22. On the basis of Song of Songs 6. 8, some authorities speak of 140 nations (comp. Sifre, D., 311; Midrash Tannaim, *loc. cit.*; Shir 6. 8; Midrash Shir 43b; BaR 9. 14 and 14. 10. Compare further with pp. 670 and 672), of whom sixty have their own languages and scripts, while the remaining eighty only have languages but not scripts. MHG I, 178–179 contains an unknown Midrash which endeavors to prove that these sixty nations are in accordance with



the table of nations of Gen., where ten names are those of individuals (this is, however, done in a very forced way), while the remaining eighty sprang up later, as, for instance, the descendants of Keturah, the Ishmaelitic tribes, *etc.* Compare also with p. 252, according to which the number of seventy nations was only completed by including Israel and Edom. It is possible that originally the seventy-two nations stood for the seventy descendants of Noah and these two. Aggadat Bereshit 14, 32, reads: Isaiah and Obadiah (the first is one of the greatest of the prophets, and the second the least important) uttered their prophecies in seventy-one languages. If we should include the Philistines in the table of nations, we would have 71 nations and languages. Comp. de Rossi, *Meor 'Enayim*, 455, who refers to 72 languages in Augustine, *Civitas Dei*, 16. 3 and 11. Comp. Steinschneider, Z.D.M. G., IV, 145–170, and LVII, 474, *seq.*; Krauss in Z.A.T.W., XIX, 1–4, and XX, 38–43; Poznanski, *ibid.*, XXV, 301–308. Comp. also the following note.

73. MHG I, 179–180, quoting an unknown source. This, like the Haggadah referred to in the preceding note concerning the number seventy of Noah's descendants, is based on Deut. 32. 5. The one passage refers "the number of the sons of Israel" in this verse to the family of Jacob at the time of entering Egypt, which according to Gen. 46. 27, was 70, while the other refers it to the twelve sons of Jacob. The source of MHG is unknown. It is probably a tannaitic Midrash of which traces may be found in Sifre D., 39; Batte Midrashot 1, 4 (but there mention is made of the division of the entire earth into twelve parts, and not of Palestine; compare footnote 33 on p. 6); RShBM and *Hadardar* on Deut., *loc. cit.* In the last-named source it is explicitly stated that twelve Canaanitish tribes had charge of the Holy Land prior to the time of Israel's settlement; but the Canaanites never owned it, for "whatever the slave possesses belongs to his master", and Canaan was made the slave of Shem, the progenitor of Israel. This is to serve as a rejoinder to the complaint against Israel for having despoiled the Canaanites of their possessions. Another Haggadah goes even further, and asserts that Canaan was the unlawful possessor of Palestine; compare with p. 188. The Torah, observes a widespread Haggadah (BR 1. 2 and parallels cited by Theodor), begins with the creation of the world, and not with the legal sections, in order that Israel should be able to retort to the accusation of the nations. The latter would assert that the Israelites were robbers, who despoiled the inhabitants of Palestine of their possessions. But Israel replies: "The world and everything therein belongs to God who created it. When He wished, He gave it to you; when He willed otherwise, He took it away from you and gave it to us." Comp. Sanhedrin 91a.

74. Sefer Noah, 155 (it is really the first chapter of the Asaf book; comp. Venetianer, *Asaf Judäus*, Budapest,

1915. XXXVIII *Jahresbericht der Landes-Rabbinerschule*), apparently in agreement with Jub. 10. 114; comp. also Clementine *Homilies*, 7. 18–19, concerning the instructions which the angels gave to the demons (the souls of the giants who perished in the flood) after the flood. In the Zadokite Fragment 16. 5, too, Satan is called Mastemah, or to be accurate, "the angel Mastemah."

75. Sefer Noah, 155–156. The legend cited by many authors of the Middle Ages concerning the sages who sought to acquire, in India, certain plants of paradise, but perished miserably in their attempt, goes back, directly or indirectly, to the Asaf book (comp. the preceding note). See Nahmanides, *Torat ha-Adam* 30 (*Sha'ar ha-Gemul*), 102a, who refers to the book of healing of the old Greeks and to the Jew Asaf; Shu'aib, Bereshit, 3a, and Haazinu, 119a; Recanati, Gen. 3. 24; Ziyroni, Lev. 18. 21. R Makir, *Abkat Rokel*, 2. 1 (end), narrates the story of the attempt of the sages in a way which suggests, as his source, a different version of the Asaf book. This R. Makir is not, as Venetianer, p. 36 (of the book referred to in the preceding note) maintains, identical with the scholar bearing the same name who flourished at Narbonne about the beginning of the ninth century. The author of *Abkat Rokel* not only quotes Rashi (1. 2) and Bahir (2. 1), but he also made use of the Zohar, from which book (compare footnote 4 on p. 328) his explanation of the title *Zaddik* ("the just") given to Joseph is taken. Accordingly the tradition which considers this R. Makir as a pupil of R. Jacob b. Asher is well founded, at least in so far as it fixes the time.—An entirely different version of the origin of the books of healing is found in TShBZ, No. 445. The stay in the ark brought many diseases upon Noah and his family, apart from the discomfort caused by the bad odor of the spirits, demons, and Liliths. After the flood an angel took one of Noah's sons (*i. e.*, Shem) to paradise, where he revealed to him all kinds of remedies, which the latter wrote down in a book. This is the book of healing which Hezekiah (compare with p. 1051) made use of. The motive of the legend concerning Noah's book of healing is to establish the fact that all wisdom originated with the Jews, and that the philosophers and the physicians of the Greeks have no claim to originality; compare with p. 923, respecting Socrates, the disciple of Ahitophel, and the widespread legend of the relationship of Plato and Aristotle to Jeremiah and other Jewish sages, from whom they received their wisdom. Shu'aib, Re'eh, 107c, knows to record that Pythagoras (he is described as a small and ugly person) originally came from Haran. The legend wishes thereby to convey that he imported his wisdom (the gift of foreseeing the future is also ascribed to him) from the Hebrews, whose original seat was in Haran. On Kangar the son of Ur, see Graetz, *Monatsschrift*, VIII, 150–152, who correctly suggests the reading Kantar, who enjoyed a great reputation among the Sabeans (comp.



Chwolson, *Szabier*, II, 514). Compare footnote 95 on p. 77. A mystical "book of Shem" is mentioned in geonic times; comp. Graetz, *loc. cit.*, 150.

## THE DEPRAVITY OF MANKIND

With the spread of mankind corruption increased. While Noah was still alive, the descendants of Shem, Ham, and Japheth appointed princes over each of the three groups—Nimrod for the descendants of Ham, Joktan for the descendants of Shem, and Phenech for the descendants of Japheth. Ten years before Noah's death, the number of those subject to the three princes amounted to millions. When this great concourse of men came to Babylonia upon their journeyings, they said to one another: "Behold, the time is coming when, at the end of days, neighbor will be separated from neighbor, and brother from brother, and one will carry on war against the other. Go to, let us build us a city, and a tower, whose top may reach unto heaven, and let us make us a great name upon the earth. And now let us make bricks, and each one write his name upon his brick." All agreed to this proposal, with the exception of twelve pious men, Abraham among them. They refused to join the others. They were seized by the people, and brought before the three princes, to whom they gave the following reason for their refusal: "We will not make bricks, nor remain with you, for we know but one God, and Him we serve; even if you burn us in the fire together with the bricks, we will not walk in your ways." Nimrod and Phenech flew into such a passion over the twelve men that they resolved to throw them into the fire. Joktan, however, besides being a God-fearing man, was of close kin to the men on trial, and he essayed to save them. He proposed to his two colleagues to grant them a seven days' respite. His plan was accepted, such

deference being paid him as the primate among the three. The twelve were incarcerated in the house of Joktan. In the night he charged fifty of his attendants to mount the prisoners upon mules and take them to the mountains. Thus they would escape the threatened punishment. Joktan provided them with food for a month. He was sure that in the meantime either a change of sentiment would come about, and the people desist from their purpose, or God would help the fugitives. Eleven of the prisoners assented to the plan with gratitude. Abraham alone rejected it, saying: "Behold, to-day we flee to the mountains to escape from the fire, but if wild beasts rush out from the mountains and devour us, or if food is lacking, so that we die by famine, we shall be found fleeing before the people of the land and dying in our sins. Now, as the Lord liveth, in whom I trust, I will not depart from this place wherein they have imprisoned me, and if I am to die through my sins, then will I die by the will of God, according to His desire."

In vain Joktan endeavored to persuade Abraham to flee. He persisted in his refusal. He remained behind alone in the prison house, while the other eleven made their escape. At the expiration of the set term, when the people returned and demanded the death of the twelve captives, Joktan could produce only Abraham. His excuse was that the rest had broken loose during the night. The people were about to throw themselves upon Abraham and cast him into the limekiln. Suddenly an earthquake was felt, the fire darted from the furnace, and all who were standing round about, eighty-four thousand of the people, were consumed, while Abraham remained untouched. Thereupon he repaired to his eleven friends in the mountains, and told them of the miracle that had befallen for his sake. They all returned with him, and, unmolested by the people, they gave praise and thanks to God.<sup>76</sup>



76. Ps.–Philo, 5A, 6D–8D. Comp. also 3 (below) and 4 (top; the leader of the Japhethites is called Thanat and Theneth; perhaps תנענך?), and Yerahmeel 28–29, who had a considerably better text of ps.–Philo before him than the printed one. But not even his text was entirely free from errors. The dependence of Yerahmeel on the Latin text of ps.–Philo becomes strikingly apparent from the names of the twelve pious men whose Hebrew names Yerahmeel did not recognize in every case. These were, as ps.–Philo clearly asserts, relatives of Joktan, and, with the exception of Abraham, Nachor, Lot, and Reu, correspond to the names given in Gen. 10. 26–29, whose Latin forms (Esar=חצר in חצרמות; Tenute and Zaba are Latin corruptions for Evila and Uzal=חזל and חזל, respectively; comp. ps.–Philo, 4D) Yerahmeel reproduces. As to the legend given in ps.–Philo, we have in it one of the oldest forms of a widespread legend concerning the rescue of Abraham from death by fire (compare with pp. 176 and 186, as well as the notes appertaining thereto), which is brought in relation with the erection of the Tower of Babel, just as the rabbinic sources would have it that Abraham tried to dissuade the wicked generation of the Tower from their enterprise (Tan. B. I, 99–100; PRE 24; BR 38. 6). The puzzling remark occurring in ps.–Philo, 8C, that the place where Abraham was saved from the fire was called, in the Chaldean language, Deli, “quod interpretatur deus”, is very likely a haggadic interpretation of Ur (read Uri instead of Deli); comp. Eupolemus, 418d, where instead of biblical Ur, the form Uria is given which is most likely a corruption of Ura=אורי, “the light of God”; comp. Baba Batra 25a and see further Jub. 11. 3. The depravity of mankind, according to Jub. 11. 2, *seq.*, began in the time of Serug, who is designated as an idolater, whereas ps.–Philo, 5A, excludes him and his household from the general demoralization. Compare with p. 167.

## NIMROD

**T**he first among the leaders of the corrupt men was Nimrod.<sup>77</sup> His father Cush had married his mother at an advanced age, and Nimrod, the offspring of this belated union, was particularly dear to him as the son of his old age. He gave him the clothes made of skins with which God had furnished Adam and Eve at the time of their leaving Paradise. Cush himself had gained possession of them through Ham. From Adam

and Eve they had descended to Enoch, and from him to Methuselah, and to Noah, and the last had taken them with him into the ark. When the inmates of the ark were about to leave their refuge, Ham stole the garments and kept them concealed, finally passing them on to his first-born son Cush. Cush in turn hid them for many years. When his son Nimrod reached his twentieth year, he gave them to him.<sup>78</sup> These garments had a wonderful property. He who wore them was both invincible and irresistible. The beasts and birds of the woods fell down before Nimrod as soon as they caught sight of him arrayed in them,<sup>79</sup> and he was equally victorious in his combats with men.<sup>80</sup> The source of his unconquerable strength was not known to them. They attributed it to his personal prowess, and therefore they appointed him king over themselves.<sup>81</sup> This was done after a conflict between the descendants of Cush and the descendants of Japheth, from which Nimrod emerged triumphant, having routed the enemy utterly with the assistance of a handful of warriors. He chose Shinar as his capital. Thence he extended his dominion farther and farther, until he rose by cunning and force to be the sole ruler of the whole world, the first mortal to hold universal sway, as the ninth ruler to possess the same power will be the Messiah.<sup>82</sup>

His impiousness kept pace with his growing power. Since the flood there had been no such sinner as Nimrod. He fashioned idols of wood and stone, and paid worship to them. But not satisfied to lead a godless life himself, he did all he could to tempt his subjects into evil ways, wherein he was aided and abetted by his son Mardon. This son of his outstripped his father in iniquity. It was their time and their life that gave rise to the proverb, “Out of the wicked cometh forth wickedness.”<sup>83</sup>

The great success that attended all of Nimrod’s undertakings produced a sinister effect. Men no longer trusted in God, but rather in their



own prowess and ability,<sup>84</sup> an attitude to which Nimrod tried to convert the whole world.<sup>85</sup> Therefore people said, “Since the creation of the world there has been none like Nimrod, a mighty hunter of men and beasts, and a sinner before God.”<sup>86</sup>

And not all this sufficed unto Nimrod’s evil desire. Not enough that he turned men away from God, he did all he could to make them pay Divine honors unto himself. He set himself up as a god, and made a seat for himself in imitation of the seat of God. It was a tower built out of a round rock, and on it he placed a throne of cedar wood, upon which arose, one above the other, four thrones, of iron, copper, silver, and gold. Crowning all, upon the golden throne, lay a precious stone, round in shape and gigantic in size. This served him as a seat, and as he sat upon it, all nations came and paid him Divine homage.<sup>87</sup>

---

77. Pesahim 94b, in an utterance of Rabban Johanan B. Zaccai’s, who, connecting the name Nimrod with מֶרֶד “rebelled”, maintains that it signifies “he who caused man to revolt against God”. BR 37. 2–4; Megillah 11a; Tehillim 105, 449; Esther R. 1. 1; Philo, *De Gigant.*, 15 (he employs almost the same words as Rabban Johanan, his younger contemporary, in explaining the name Nimrod), and *Quaestiones*, 82 (here Nimrod is connected with נִמְרָד “spotted,” hence: “nomen . . . interpretatus Aethiope”); ps.–Philo, 4C (“ipse initiavit esse superbus ante dominum”). Comp. also the sources cited in the following notes 78–88, concerning the wickedness of Nimrod, as well as Yerushalmi Targumim on Gen. 10. 8. Another view given in a source which was made use of by Targum Yerushalmi 10. 11 (but not by 2 Targum Yerushalmi), states that Nimrod emigrated to Assyria because he refused to participate in the building of the tower. For this he was rewarded by God, and received four cities as an addition to his dominions, corresponding to the number of cities which he owned in Babylon, and which he abandoned in his emigration. A similar Haggadah is found in Ephraim, I, 15A, who states that Nimrod fought for the sake of God, against the generation of the building of the Tower. Ephraim also mentions another view, according to which, he betook himself to hunting in order to provide food for the builders of the Tower. Comp. BR 37. 4, and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 88–89, as well as footnote 34 on p. 176. In Yashar

Noah, 17b–18a, also two different sources are found; according to one Nimrod went (comp. *ibid.* 17 concerning the explanation of the name Nimrod: because man at the time of his birth rebelled against God) hunting in order to prepare sacrifices for the altar he erected to God. But afterwards we read that he was instrumental in causing man to forsake God. Midrash Aggada Gen. 10. 8, asserts that Nimrod was the first who ate meat.

78. Yashar Noah 17a. On these garments, comp. PRE 24 (this is the source of Yashar); Pesahim 44b; footnotes 39 and 89 on pp. 257 and 265 respectively. Comp. the following note.

79. PRE 24; Midrash ‘Aseret Melakim, 38–39; Zohar I, 73b and 142b; Sabba, Toledot, 28a; R. Bahya, Gen. 3. 21 (from Adam they came down to Cain, and after his death Nimrod took possession of them); *Hadar* and *Da’at* on Gen. 25. 32 and 27. 15. These splendid garments which Adam and Eve received at the time of leaving paradise were made of the skin of the female Leviathan (comp. p. 28–29); *Hadar* and *Da’at* on Gen. 3. 21. Comp. BR 20. 12; Tan. B. I, 18, and Abkir in Yalkut I, 44, concerning these garments of Adam which served to the former generations as priestly garments. Comp. the preceding note.

80. Yashar Noah, 17b; Zohar I, 73b–74a.

81. PRE 24. According to ps.–Philo, 5A, Nimrod was only the chief of the Hamites, whereas the Japhethites and Semites had their own chiefs; compare with p. 160 (top).

82. Yashar Noah, 17b–18a; comp. also 23a concerning Nimrod’s war enterprises and the founding of the cities; see further text on p. 194, about the identity of Nimrod with Amraphel. On the Haggadah concerning the rulers of the world, a number of versions are extant. PRE 11 reads: God, at the time of the creation of the world was the first ruler; then Nimrod, Joseph, Solomon, Ahab, Nebuchadnezzar, Cyrus, Alexander of Macedon, the Messiah, and at the end of time God, who was the first ruler, will also be the last. *Maamar ‘Aseret Melakim*, 54–55, and *Ma’asiyyot* (ed. Gaster, beginning) go back directly to this source; both of these books are to be used for a correct text of PRE. A version of this legend closely related to that found in PRE is that of Midrash ‘Aseret Melakim, 38–55, whereas 2 Targum Yerushalmi 1. 1, which has (instead of Joseph, Solomon, Ahab, Cyrus, and Alexander) the following names: Pharaoh king of Egypt (either the one who ruled in the land in the time of Joseph or the Pharaoh of the Exodus), Israel, Ahasuerus, Greece, and Rome. At the end of this verse Targum has a second version, according to which there were only four rulers over the world, two Jews (Solomon and Ahab), and two non-Jews (Nebuchadnezzar and Ahasuerus). This is apparently based on Megillah 11a, according to the modification of the talmudic statement in *Panim Aherim*, 56. Esther R. 1. 1 cites David, Solomon, Ahab, Nebuchadnezzar, Cyrus, and Darius as the rulers of the world. To this



list are probably to be added the first, as well as the last two names mentioned in PRE, in order to complete the number ten. 'Aktan, 12 gives the following rulers: Nimrod, Pharaoh, Solomon, Ahab, Nebuchadnezzar, Ahasuerus, Cyrus, Alexander, Vespasian, Adarshan. Compare with pp. 637, 760; text on pp. 945, 987, 1103, 1154. See further *Otot ha-Mashiach*, 50 (on the expression מְכִיפָה לְכִיפָה see Megillah, *loc. cit.*), and 59; on Edom's (=Rome's) dominion of the world shortly before the advent of the Messiah for the duration of nine months. Comp. Sanhedrin 98b, top.

83. Yashar Noah, 18a and 23a. Comp. note 77 for the older sources concerning Nimrod, "the one who seduced men to evil". *Recognitiones*, I, 30 and 4. 28–29, asserts that Nimrod whom the Greeks call Ninus, after whom Nineveh is named, taught the Persians to worship fire. For this purpose he made use of magic, since otherwise he could not lead men astray from God to whom they were naturally devoted. However, the first sorcerer was Ham, who was later called Zoroaster (=“living star”, in Greek) by his worshippers. He was called so because by magical manipulation of a demon he tried to draw sparks from a star, and was burned. The foolish crowd, instead of discerning God's punishment in Ham's death, believed to have perceived a particular significance in his death by fire, and began to worship him as a living star (Zoroaster). Having been reduced to ashes, Zoroaster was worshipped by the Persians as the celestial fire. In Clementine *Homilies*, 9. 4–6, Nimrod is identified with Zoroaster, and is designated as the one “who chose, giant-like, to devise things in opposition to God, and who, after his death by fire, was worshipped by the ignorant populace. This was the beginning of the worship of idols. Subsequent rulers demanded similar adoration to that which was accorded to Nimrod.” On hero-worship as the source of idolatry, compare footnote 54 on p. 117, and text on p. 171. The view that Nimrod was one of those who claimed to be gods is frequently found in rabbinic literature; comp. the following three notes, and p. 171. On the worship of fire in connection with Nimrod in the different versions of the Abraham legends, see BR 38. 13, and the parallel passages cited by Theodor, as well as Index, s. v. “Fire”. On Ninus=Nimrod, comp. note 88.

84. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 4. 1–2.

85. BR 37. 2; Pesahim 94b (top).

86. Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 10. 9; 2 Targum Yerushalmi states that Nimrod demanded of the people to abandon Shem's teaching and to follow his own (יִד in this place is used in its Arabic sense, and means “religion”).

87. MHG I, 188; *Ma'asiyyot* (Gaster's edition, 2). This legend is only a somewhat different version of Hiram's “heavenly seat”; compare with p. 1105, and the note appertaining to it. See further text on p. 526, concerning the deification of Pharaoh, as well as *Ma'asiyyot* (Gaster's edition, 6), and MHG II, 57. The legend found in the Christian

Book of Adam 3. 23 and 25 about Nimrod as a god is based on Clementine writings (comp. note 83). When the old rabbinic literature speaks of Nimrod's rebellion against God (comp. BR 42 [41]. 4, and the parallels cited by Theodor), it primarily refers to his activity as the originator of the building of the tower; comp. the following note. On Nimrod=Amraphel, compare with p. 194. It may be remarked here that Augustine, *Civitas Dei*, 26. 17, identifies Amraphel with Ninus. This presupposes the identity of Nimrod with Amraphel. Comp. note 83. See also Eusebius, 484d, and Yerahmeel 32.

## THE TOWER OF BABEL

The iniquity and godlessness of Nimrod reached their climax in the building of the Tower of Babel. His counsellors had proposed the plan of erecting such a tower, Nimrod had agreed to it, and it was executed in Shinar by a mob of six hundred thousand men. The enterprise was neither more nor less than rebellion against God, and there were three sorts of rebels among the builders. The first party spoke, Let us ascend into the heavens and wage warfare with Him; the second party spoke, Let us ascend into the heavens, set up our idols, and pay worship unto them there; and the third party spoke, Let us ascend into the heavens, and ruin them with our bows and spears.

Many, many years were passed in building the tower. It reached so great a height that it took a year to mount to the top. A brick was, therefore, more precious in the sight of the builders than a human being. If a man fell down, and met his death, none took notice of it, but if a brick dropped, they wept, because it would take a year to replace it. So intent were they upon accomplishing their purpose that they would not permit a woman to interrupt herself in her work of brick-making when the hour of travail came upon her. Moulding bricks she gave birth to her



child, and, tying it round her body in a sheet, she went on moulding bricks.

They never slackened in their work, and from their dizzy height they constantly shot arrows toward heaven, which, returning were seen to be covered with blood. They were thus fortified in their delusion, and they cried, "We have slain all who are in heaven." Thereupon God turned to the seventy angels who encompass His throne, and He spake: "Go to, let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another's speech." Thus it happened. Thenceforth none knew what the other spoke. One would ask for the mortar, and the other handed him a brick; in a rage, he would throw the brick at his partner and kill him. Many perished in this manner, and the rest were punished according to the nature of their rebellious conduct. Those who had spoken, "Let us ascend into the heavens, set up our idols, and pay worship unto them there," God transformed into apes and phantoms; those who had proposed to assault the heavens with their arms, God set against each other so that they fell in the combat; and those who had resolved to carry on a combat with God in heaven were scattered broadcast over the earth. As for the unfinished tower, a part sank into the earth, and another part was consumed by fire; only one-third of it remained standing.<sup>88</sup> The place of the tower has never lost its peculiar quality. Whoever passes it forgets all he knows.<sup>89</sup>

The punishment inflicted upon the sinful generation of the tower is comparatively lenient. On account of rapine the generation of the flood were utterly destroyed, while the generation of the tower were preserved in spite of their blasphemies and all their other acts offensive to God. The reason is that God sets a high value upon peace and harmony. Therefore the generation of the deluge, who gave themselves up to depredation, and bore hatred to one another, were extirpated,

root and branch, while the generation of the Tower of Babel dwelling amicably together, and loving one another, were spared alive, at least a remnant of them.<sup>90</sup>

Beside the chastisement of sin and sinners by the confounding of speech, another notable circumstance was connected with the descent of God upon earth—one of only ten such descents to occur between the creation of the world and the day of judgment. It was on this occasion that God and the seventy angels that surround His throne cast lots concerning the various nations. Each angel received a nation, and Israel fell to the lot of God. To every nation a peculiar language was assigned, Hebrew being reserved for Israel—the language made use of by God at the creation of the world.<sup>91</sup>

---

88. Yashar Noah, 20b–21a, based on older sources. That Nimrod was the instigator of the building of the tower, see Hullin 89a; 'Abodah Zarah 53b (where the tower is called "the house of Nimrod"); Pesahim 94b; 'Erubin 53a; BR 23. 7, 26. 4, and 42. 4; PRE 34; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 4. 2. Instead of Nimrod some sources (BR 38. 8; Tan. B. I, 53; Tan. Noah 1) speak of other Hamites, such as Cush (but according to BR 42. 4, this is only another name for Nimrod; see further Philo, *Quaestiones*, 2. 82), Put, Mizraim, and Canaan, who were the builders of the tower. These men are also meant by Lactantius, *Institutiones*, 2. 15, when he declares that the Hamites were the first idolaters. The three parties among the builders of the tower are already referred to in Sanhedrin 109a; Tan. Noah 18; Alphabet R. Akiba, 46–47 (where two contradictory views of the Talmud are combined into one); Tehillim 1, 12. In these, as in other haggadic passages, the reasons for building the tower are alleged to have been the revolt against God and the attempt to prevent a second deluge; comp. BR 38. 1, 5, 7 (the midrashic interpretation of מְקֹדֶם occurs also in Origen, *Contra Celsum*, 5. 30), and 8; Mekilta Mishpatim 20, 101a; Tan. B. I, 55; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 4. 2. Comp. particularly the detailed description of this wicked plan in Tan. B. I, 100 (on Abraham's attempt to prevent them from sinning, and the curse he pronounced against them when he failed in his effort, comp. BR, *loc. cit.*, 6; PRE 24; Tehillim 1, 12; 'Aseret ha-Dibrot, second commandment), and Yerushalmi Targumim on Gen. 11. 4. In ER 15, 74, eight sins (comp. Index, s. v. "Sins, Eight") are enumerated,



which caused the destruction of this generation. The view given in Hellenistic literature that the building of the tower was a revolt of the giants against God (ps.–Eupolemus; comp. Freudenthal, *Hellenistische Studien*, I, 92–93; Philo, *Confus. Ling.*, 2) is closely related to this Haggadah and it is most instructive that as late as the ninth century this view was still championed by Ḥiwi Al-Balkhi, according to whom the builders of the tower were the *Nefilim*; comp. Davidson, *Saadia's Polemic against Ḥiwi al-Balkhi*, 54–56. In the Bible the name Babylon is associated with the building of the tower. The Haggadah goes a step further, and also finds in the name of the place Shinar (2 Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 11. 2 identifies it with Pontus) some reference to wicked Babylon; comp. Yerushalmi Berakot 4, 7b; Shabbat 113b; BR 37. 4; Ekah (introduction) 23; Koheleth 12. 7. The oldest haggadic interpretation of Shinar is the one found in Jub. 10. 26, where, in agreement with rabbinic sources, Shinar is connected with נִיעַר “emptied” (not Babel, as Charles wrongly interprets it), and hence the explanation: “And they called its name Overthrow.” That the place was called Shinar in the Bible before the destruction of the tower, offers no difficulty to the Haggadah, since “God knew beforehand what would happen afterwards”; comp. BR 42. 7. In the 43 years (Jub. 10. 21), during which they were occupied with the building, they succeeded in erecting the tower, but not the city which they undertook to build; BR 38. 8. The tower was of extraordinary dimensions, particularly its height; comp. Jub., *loc. cit.*; Greek Baruch 3; BR, *loc. cit.*; Tan. B. I, 54; Tan. Noah 1; ER 21, 118; PRE 24 (this is the source of Yashar which, to be sure, does not state that the height was 70 miles, as maintained by PRE, but takes it to have been ten thousand; one year's journey is, according to Pesahim 94a, about 10,950 miles); 'Aseret ha-Dibrot (second commandment), which was incorporated in Midrash Abraham 46. The last-named source also speaks of the seventy stairs (so is מַעְלוֹת to be understood, and not “steps”) in the east, for the purpose of ascending, and seventy stairs in the west, for the purpose of descending, that is, one stair for each nation (comp. note 91), because all the seventy nations participated in this enterprise under the direction of a thousand kings; Targum Eccl. 7. 28. When one considers the extraordinary dimensions, one marvels at the rapid progress of the building. God caused the enterprise to prosper, in order to be able to mock later at the builders all the more. First the building was erected, and then He caused it to be destroyed, Tan. B. I, 55; BR 38. 8. But they would never have succeeded in their undertaking, were it not for the fact that they found the books of wisdom of the ante-diluvian generations in the valley of Shinar, which had been carried thither by the flood (comp. note 44), and from which they derived their knowledge for the erection of the tower; comp. Zohar I, 76a, bottom. Respecting the books of wisdom comp.

Berosus, 56, 39, who also states that after the flood Xisuthros found the ante-diluvian books at Sippara (Babylon). Each one of the builders of the tower engraved his name on a brick, of which they made use (this is a midrashic interpretation of וְנִעַשָׂה לָנוּ שֵׁם, Gen. II. 4); ps.–Philo, 6 D, and hence Yerahmeel 29. 2. Compare with pp. 578–579. The passage in the text concerning the pregnant women is from the Greek Baruch 3 (that they wished to bore a hole in the heavens is found in Sanhedrin 109b); compare with p. 541, about Rachel the daughter of Shuthelah. The story about the blood-stained arrows (Yashar, *loc. cit.*) occurs also in the Titus legend, Gittin 56b. The rest of the account in Yashar occurs literally in the older sources, Sanhedrin 109a; Tehillim 1, 12; PRE 24; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 11. 7–8; Tan. Noah 18; BR 38. 10 (on the thirty nations which perished, after the flood, on account of their sins, comp. also Tan. B. I, 123, where it is likewise remarked that Abraham was made the father of thirty nations, in order to compensate for the loss of these thirty nations); Yelammedenu in 'Aruk, s. v. גִּרְיָ; 'Aseret ha-Dibrot (second commandment); Ma'aseh Abraham, 46; Greek Baruch 2 and 3; ps.–Philo, 8C. In the last-named passage, however, “mutavit eorum effigies” refers to the various complexions and features of the races of mankind, and not to their transformations into apes and monsters, as maintained by the rabbinic sources and Baruch. On transformation into apes as a punishment see text on p. 117. The German mystics (comp. Ziyoni, end of Noah) identify the woodmen, werewolves and similar monsters, known in German folk-lore, with the builders of the tower (their descendants?), and further maintain that they were Japhethites, who were punished in this manner; compare also footnote 34 on p. 110. Midrash Aggada, Gen. 11. 8, remarks that when the tower fell, some of the people found inside were thrown into the water, others into the forest, while still others into the desert; the first became water-sprites, the second apes, and the third demons.

89. Sanhedrin 109a (on the text, comp. MHG I, 186); BR. 38. 11.

90. BR 38. 6; ARN 12, 52; MHG I, 186; comp. against this view, Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 4. 1, who considers that the sin of this nation consisted in their disobeying God's repeated demand to spread out into colonies. This commandment of God was for their own benefit, so that there should not be any strife between them in case they were to settle on a small tract of land. Comp. ER 31, 158. In many rabbinic passages the great prosperity enjoyed by this generation is dwelt upon. This brought about their ruin, as had formerly happened to the generation of the flood (comp. note 15); Tosefta Sotah 3. 10; Mekilta Shirah 2, 35b; Mekilta RS 58; Sifre D. 43; Midrash Tannaim 36–37. Sanhedrin 10. 3 and Tosefta 13. 7 maintain that this generation forfeited its share in the world to come; but, on the other



hand, it will be punished on the final day of judgment. Comp. note 44. That the tower was overthrown by means of a violent wind is asserted in many of the oldest sources; Sibyll, 3. 101; Jub. 10. 26; Mekilta Beshallah 4, 30b (God's judgment on the generation of the flood and later on the sinful cities was executed by means of storms); Theophilus, 2. 31. This judgment was carried out after the men refused the opportunity offered to them by God to repent; BR 38. 9; Mekilta Shirah 5, 38b; Tan. B. I, 56; Noah, 18. Comp also Tertullian, *Adversus Marcionem*, 2. 25.

91. PRE 24; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 11. 8 and Deut. 32. 8–9; Zawwaat Naphtali (end; second version, 12–14); 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 65; compare with pp. 446–447. See further Midrash Tannaim 190–191. In the last passage the distribution of the nations between God, whom Israel chose, and the angels, whom the Gentiles chose, is said to have taken place at the time of the revelation at Sinai. This passage, however, reads like a learned reflection on the popular notion of the distribution of the nations by lot between God and the angels. With this learned presentation agree DR 2. 34 and Pkai 3, 133, where the entire legend is so changed that it can scarcely be recognized. The official rabbinic writings contest the conception that Deut. 4.19 admits the justification of the worship of the heavenly bodies and the angels by the Gentiles. It is maintained that later on the sages who translated the Bible into Greek permitted themselves a very free rendering of Deut. *loc. cit.*, in order to obviate any misunderstanding; comp. Mekilta Shirah 14, 16c; Yerushalmi Megillah 1, 71d, and Babli 9a; Soferim 5; Tan. Shemot (end). Comp. further the remarks of Trypho in Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 55 and 121, as well as 'Abodah Zarah 55a. It is true that "the angels of the nations" are mentioned several times in authoritative sources; but this must not be understood to mean that the nations were placed under the care of the angels, whereas Israel is God's portion in accordance with the statement of the pseud-epigraphic works (Jub. 15. 31–32; Enoch 88 and 90. 22; comp. further Septuagint Deut. 32. 8–9) and the widespread view (besides the sources cited at the beginning of

this note, it is frequently to be met with in the kabbalistic literature; comp. also Clementine *Recognitiones*, 2. 42 and 8. 50, where the distribution among the angels is set for the same time as that given in the rabbinic Haggadah) in popular Jewish literature. It rather wishes to convey that as each individual person has his own guardian angel (comp. Index *s. v.*), so also each nation, including Israel whose guardian angels are Michael and Gabriel, or according to some, Michael and Metatron; comp. Index under these names, as well as 'Erke ha-Kinnuyim, *s. v.* מטטרון; see text on p. 299. The authoritative view-point of the Synagogue is emphasized by Sa'adya against the popular conception championed by his opponent Hiwi al-Balkhi; comp. Davidson, *Saadia's Polemic against Hiwi al-Balkhi* 58. The presence of the angels at the time of the destruction of the tower is also referred to in Jub. 10. 23 and this view is based on the use of the plural (נַרְדֵּה) in Gen. 11. 7. Comp. BR 38. 9, and the remarks of Theodor, *ad loc.* That Hebrew was the original language of mankind until the time of the confusion of languages, and that Eber was the only one who retained it, is a widespread view; comp. BR 18. 4 (נִבְרָא הָעוֹלָם) signifies: God made use of this language at the time of the creation of the world which came into being when He uttered His word), 31. 8, and 42.8; PRE 24 (here it is said that each angel brought a language and a script for his respective nation) and 26; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 11. 1 and 8; Tan. B. I, 56; Jub. 12. 25–26 ("tongue of creation" = שִׁבּוֹ נִבְרָא הָעוֹלָם in BR 18. 4). This view is also assumed explicitly or tacitly in patristic literature; comp. Charles on Jub., *loc. cit.*, See further Clementine *Recognitiones*, 1. 30; Origen, *Con. Cels.*, 5. 30; Zohar I, 75; Shu'aib, Noah (end), which reads: All the languages therefore contain some Hebrew words. On the view current among some Jews and Christians to the effect that Aramaic was the primitive speech, comp. Charles on Jub. 3.28; Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 63, and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 91–93.—On the descent of God to the earth, compare with p. 601, and note 206 appertaining thereto.



## V ABRAHAM

### THE WICKED GENERATIONS

Ten generations there were from Noah to Abraham, to show how great is the clemency of God, for all the generations provoked His wrath, until Abraham our father came and received the reward of all of them.<sup>1</sup> For the sake of Abraham God had shown himself long-suffering and patient during the lives of these ten generations. Yea, more, the world itself had been created for the sake of his merits.<sup>2</sup> His advent had been made manifest to his ancestor Reu, who uttered the following prophecy at the birth of his son Serug: “From this child he shall be born in the fourth generation that shall set his dwelling over the highest, and he shall be called perfect and spotless, and shall be the father of nations, and his covenant shall not be dissolved, and his seed shall be multiplied forever.”<sup>3</sup>

It was, indeed, high time that the “friend of God”<sup>4</sup> should make his appearance upon earth. The descendants of Noah were sinking from depravity to lower and lower depths of depravity. They were beginning to quarrel and slay, eat blood, build fortified cities and walls and towers, and set one man over the whole nation as king, and wage wars, people against people, and nations against nations, and cities against cities,

and do all manner of evil, and acquire weapons, and teach warfare unto their children. And they began also to take captives and sell them as slaves. And they made unto themselves molten images, which they worshipped, each one the idol he had molten for himself, for the evil spirits under their leader Masțema led them astray into sin and uncleanness. For this reason Reu called his son Serug, because all mankind had turned aside unto sin and transgression. When he grew to manhood, the name was seen to have been chosen fittingly, for he, too, worshipped idols, and when he himself had a son, Nahor by name, he taught him the arts of the Chaldees, how to be a soothsayer and practice magic according to signs in the heavens. When, in time, a son was born to Nahor, Masțema sent ravens and other birds to despoil the earth and rob men of the proceeds of their work. As soon as they had dropped the seed in the furrows, and before they could cover it over with earth, the birds picked it up from the surface of the ground, and Nahor called his son Terah, because the ravens and the other birds plagued men, devoured their seed, and reduced them to destitution.<sup>5</sup>



1. Abot 5. 3; ARN 32 (36 of the second version). The number ten is obtained by including Noah, who, at the same time, is the tenth after Adam; compare with p. 101. According to a quotation from an unknown midrashic source, mankind, up to the appearance of Abraham, was poor in good deeds; comp. Poznanski, *Kommentar zu Ezechiel von Eleazar aus Beaugency, Einleitung*, 228. In a passage found in an old liturgy Abraham is described as one whom God chose out of twenty generations (beginning with Adam); see *Hemdah Genuzah*, 161, and Warnheim, *Kebuzat Hakamim*, 107.

2. BR 12. 9; Tan. B. I, 11 and 62; Tehillim 104, 444. Despite the statement found in tannaitic sources that the three patriarchs were of equal rank (Mekilta, beginning; Tosefta Keritot, at the end; BR 1. 15), in the legends Abraham is regarded as the favorite, and ranks above his son and grandson; comp. the numerous statements exalting him; Yelammedenu cited in Yalkut, Joshua 15 (God had performed all the miracles for Israel on account of the merits of Abraham); Abot 6. 10; EZ 9. 187 and 17, 20, as well as 25, 45–46; ShR 28. 1; Berakot 7b; Tan. Toledot 4; WR 31. 4; Shir 7. 6. At the same time, however, there are passages in which the view is expressed that Jacob was the most prominent of the patriarchs; compare footnote 35 on p. 255, and also Beer, *Leben Abrahams*, p. 87ff.

3. Ps.–Philo 4D. Serug's mother is called Milcah in this pseudepigraphical work (comp. Genesis 11. 26); in Jub. 11. 7 she is named Ora.

4. Already in 2 Chron. 20.7 Abraham is styled the friend of God; but in post-biblical Hebrew literature the adjective **אורח** **ידיד** is employed; the former word is probably preferred on account of Jeremiah 11.15, **מה לידידי**, which is taken as an allusion to Abraham. Comp. Menahot 53b; Tosefta Berakot 7. 13 (see Tosafot on Menahot 53b and Shabbat 137b); Sifre N. 115 and D. 352; Mekilta Bo 18, 22a **אברהם אורח** in Mekilta Shirah 10, 44a, is obviously a quotation from an old liturgy; see morning prayer, Baer's edition, 45; Ekah, Introduction, 24, 26; ER, introduction, 80, and 24, 127. This appellation occurs also in the Hellenistic and pseudepigraphic writings as well as in Christian literature; comp. Jub. 21. 15, 20; 4 Ezra 3. 14; Prayer of Azariah 12; Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 17; I, 401 (as a quotation from Gen. 18. 17=Targum Yerushalmi **רחמי אברהם**); James 2. 23; Clemens, *Instructor*, III. 2; *Stromata* II. 5; Clemens, *First Epistle*, 10. 1. One is therefore inclined to read in Sibyll. II. 245: Abraham the great friend of the Most High and the great Moses; comp., however, Origen, *Princip.*, III, 2.5, where Moses is styled the friend of God; see also ARN 43, 121 (second version), where five bear the title of friend of God (**ידיד**): Abraham, Israel, Benjamin, Solomon, and Jerusalem; to a similar number is applied the title "beloved of God" (**אהובים**): Abraham, Jacob, Israel, Solomon, and

Jerusalem. In the Ethiopic *Mota Muse*, Moses bears the title of friend of God; but among the Arabs (already in the Koran 4. 124) this title is exclusively applied to Abraham; comp. Beer, *Leben Abrahams*, notes 427, 431, and 950; Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, pp. 118, 121; Malter, *Monatschrift* 51, 713; Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 14–15. See also *Gedulat Mosheh* 3b (**משה אהוב י**).

5. Jub. 11. 1–14. The beginning of the monarchy dates from Nimrod (compare with pp. 160–161), hence not long after the birth of Abraham. The name Serug is taken to be a contraction of **סר** and **טג** *turned away*, that is, from God. Comp. Ps. 14. 3 and 53. 4. According to ps.–Philo 4A, Serug and his sons were God-fearing, despite the wickedness of their generation. The meaning ascribed to the name Terah in Jub. is obscure, and is probably connected with the Aramic **תר** *was emaciated*. For other explanations see Charles, *Jub.*, *ad loc.*, and Baer, *op. cit.*, 95–96.

## THE BIRTH OF ABRAHAM

Terah married Emtelai, the daughter of Karnabo,<sup>6</sup> and the offspring of their union was Abraham. His birth had been read in the stars by Nimrod,<sup>7</sup> for this impious king was a cunning astrologer, and it was manifest to him that a man would be born in his day who would rise up against him and triumphantly give the lie to his religion. In his terror at the fate foretold him in the stars, he sent for his princes and governors, and asked them to advise him in the matter. They answered, and said: "Our unanimous advice is that thou shouldst build a great house, station a guard at the entrance thereof, and make known in the whole of thy realm that all pregnant women shall repair thither together with their midwives, who are to remain with them when they are delivered. When the days of a woman to be delivered are fulfilled, and the child is born, it shall be the duty of the midwife to kill it, if it be a boy. But if the child be a girl, it shall be kept alive, and the mother shall receive gifts and costly garments, and a herald shall proclaim, 'Thus is done unto the woman who bears a daughter!'"



The king was pleased with this counsel, and he had a proclamation published throughout his whole kingdom, summoning all the architects to build a great house for him, sixty ells high and eighty wide. After it was completed, he issued a second proclamation, summoning all pregnant women thither, and there they were to remain until their confinement. Officers were appointed to take the women to the house, and guards were stationed in it and about it, to prevent the women from escaping thence. He furthermore sent midwives to the house, and commanded them to slay the men children at their mothers' breasts. But if a woman bore a girl, she was to be arrayed in byssus, silk, and embroidered garments, and led forth from the house of detention amid great honors. No less than seventy thousand children were slaughtered thus. Then the angels appeared before God, and spoke, "Seest Thou not what he doth, yon sinner and blasphemer, Nimrod son of Canaan, who slays so many innocent babes that have done no harm?" God answered, and said: "Ye holy angels, I know it and I see it, for I neither slumber nor sleep. I behold and I know the secret things and the things that are revealed, and ye shall witness what I will do unto this sinner and blasphemer, for I will turn My hand against him to chastise him."<sup>8</sup>

It was about this time that Terah espoused the mother of Abraham, and she was with child. When her body grew large at the end of three months of pregnancy,<sup>9</sup> and her countenance became pale, Terah said unto her, "What ails thee, my wife, that thy countenance is so pale and thy body so swollen?" She answered, and said, "Every year I suffer with this malady."<sup>10</sup> But Terah would not be put off thus. He insisted: "Show me thy body. It seems to me thou art big with child. If that be so, it behooves us not to violate the command of our god Nimrod."<sup>11</sup> When he passed his hand over her body, there happened a miracle. The child rose until it lay beneath her

breasts, and Terah could feel nothing with his hands. He said to his wife, "Thou didst speak truly," and naught became visible until the day of her delivery.

When her time approached, she left the city in great terror and wandered toward the desert, walking along the edge of a valley,<sup>12</sup> until she happened across a cave. She entered this refuge, and on the next day she was seized with throes, and she gave birth to a son. The whole cave was filled with the light of the child's countenance as with the splendor of the sun, and the mother rejoiced exceedingly. The babe she bore was our father Abraham.

His mother lamented, and said to her son: "Alas that I bore thee at a time when Nimrod is king. For thy sake seventy thousand men children were slaughtered, and I am seized with terror on account of thee, that he hear of thy existence, and slay thee. Better thou shouldst perish here in this cave than my eye should behold thee dead at my breast." She took the garment in which she was clothed, and wrapped it about the boy. Then she abandoned him in the cave, saying, "May the Lord be with thee, may He not fail thee nor forsake thee."<sup>13</sup>

---

6. Baba Batra 91a, which is the source for Yashar Noah, 18a and Yerahmeel 27. 7; but the Palestinian Midrash PRE seems to be independent of the Babli passage, which does not have the statement that she died in Haran. The name is written אמתלאי, אמתלא (the variant איתמלאי given by Rabinowicz, *Variae Lectiones* to Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*, is of no value); it is uncertain whether the first part of the name is אימא (*mother*) or אמתא (*servant*); the first explanation seems more probable. Comp. Beer, *Leben Abrahams*, 96, 97; Gudemann, *Religionsgeschichtliche Studien*, 41–49, where additional literature is cited; Kohler, *Testament of Job*, 288. The explanation of this name as well as its relation to Greek Ἀμάλθεια is quite obscure; it is probably of Babylonian origin, like the name כרנבו (possibly ברנבו, *i. e.*, Barnabas, the son of Nebo; comp. בן נבו, Tosefta Pesahim 2. 20, and Rabinowicz, *Variae Lectiones*, Pes. 57a as well as Yashar, *loc. cit.*). Some other names are assigned to Abraham's mother and grandfather in Jub. 11. 14.



7. For further details concerning the appearance of Abraham's star, compare with p. 181, and note 48. On the source of the following legends see note 34.

8. The story of the slaughter of innocent children is modelled after the story of Moses, and is not influenced by the New Testament story about the birth of Jesus.

9. Pregnancy becomes outwardly noticeable after the third month; comp. Tosefta Niddah 1. 7; BR 85. 10; compare note 88 on p. 345.

10. The same is described as קולצאני (but the manuscript reads קוליגי), which seems to be Spanish. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 128, compares it with the Italian *calcinaccio*, that is, a hardening of the belly.

11. Comp. with p. 161.

12. In consequence of an inaccurate translation of the Arabic word *Wadi*, which signifies both *brook* and *valley*, the word נהר (*stream*) instead of נחל (*valley*) occurs a few times in the printed text as well as in the manuscript of this legend. This supposition is attested by the words מערה אחד בזה הנהר (27, line 10), since it is impossible that a cave should be in a river. The legend speaks below of a spring whose water Abraham used; but no mention is made of a stream; comp. also 27, line 16 שבאת לזה הנהר which is hardly possible, while לזה הנחל would suit admirably.

## THE BABE PROCLAIMS GOD

Thus Abraham was deserted in the cave, without a nurse, and he began to wail. God sent Gabriel down to give him milk to drink, and the angel made it to flow from the little finger of the baby's right hand, and he sucked at it until he was ten days old.<sup>14</sup> Then he arose and walked about, and he left the cave, and went along the edge of the valley.<sup>15</sup> When the sun sank, and the stars came forth, he said, "These are the gods!" But the dawn came, and the stars could be seen no longer, and then he said, "I will not pay worship to these, for they are no gods." Thereupon the sun came forth, and he spoke, "This is my god, him will I extol." But again the sun set, and he said, "He is no god," and beholding the moon, he called her his god to whom he would pay Divine homage. Then the moon was obscured, and he cried out: "This, too, is no god! There is One who sets them all in motion."<sup>16</sup>

He was still communing with himself when the angel Gabriel approached him and met him with the greeting, "Peace be with thee," and Abraham returned, "With thee be peace," and asked, "Who art thou?" And Gabriel answered, and said, "I am the angel Gabriel, the messenger of God," and he led Abraham to a spring of water near by, and Abraham washed his face and his hands and feet, and he prayed to God, bowing down and prostrating himself.

Meantime the mother of Abraham thought of him in sorrow and tears, and she went forth from the city to seek him in the cave in which she had abandoned him. Not finding her son, she wept bitterly, and said, "Woe unto me that I bore thee but to become a prey of wild beasts, the bears and the lions and the wolves!" She went to the edge of the valley, and there she found her son. But she did not recognize him, for he had grown very large. She addressed the lad, "Peace be with thee!" and he returned, "With thee be peace!" and he continued, "Unto what purpose didst thou come to the desert?" She replied, "I went forth from the city to seek my son." Abraham questioned further, "Who brought thy son hither?" and the mother replied thereto: "I had become pregnant from my husband Terah, and when the days of my delivery were fulfilled, I was in anxiety about my son in my womb, lest our king come, the son of Canaan, and slay him as he had slain the seventy thousand other men children. Scarcely had I reached the cave in this valley when the throes of travailing seized me, and I bore a son, whom I left behind in the cave, and I went home again. Now am I come to seek him, but I find him not."

Abraham then spoke, "As to this child thou tellest of, how old was it?"

The mother: "It was about twenty days old."

Abraham: "Is there a woman in the world who would forsake her new-born son in the desert, and come to seek him after twenty days?"



The mother: “Peradventure God will show Himself a merciful God!”

Abraham: “I am the son whom thou hast come to seek in this valley!”

The mother: “My son, how thou art grown! But twenty days old, and thou canst already walk, and talk with thy mouth!”<sup>17</sup>

Abraham: “So it is, and thus, O my mother, it is made known unto thee that there is in the world a great, terrible, living, and ever-existing God, who doth see, but who cannot be seen. He is in the heavens above, and the whole earth is full of His glory.”

The mother: “My son, is there a God beside Nimrod?”

Abraham: “Yes, mother, the God of the heavens and the God of the earth, He is also the God of Nimrod son of Canaan. Go, therefore, and carry this message unto Nimrod.”

The mother of Abraham returned to the city and told her husband Terah how she had found their son. Terah, who was a prince and a magnate in the house of the king, betook himself to the royal palace, and cast himself down before the king upon his face. It was the rule that one who prostrated himself before the king was not permitted to lift up his head until the king bade him lift it up. Nimrod gave permission to Terah to rise and state his request. Thereupon Terah related all that had happened with his wife and his son. When Nimrod heard his tale, abject fear seized upon him, and he asked his counsellors and princes what to do with the lad. They answered, and said: “Our king and our god! Wherefore art thou in fear by reason of a little child? There are myriads upon myriads of princes in thy realm,<sup>18</sup> rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens, and overseers without number. Let the pettiest of the princes go and fetch the boy and put him in prison.” But the king interposed, “Have ye ever seen a baby of twenty days walking with his feet,

speaking with his mouth, and proclaiming with his tongue that there is a God in heaven, who is One, and none beside Him, who sees and is not seen?” All the assembled princes were horror-struck at these words.<sup>19</sup>

At this time Satan in human form appeared, clad in black silk garb, and he cast himself down before the king. Nimrod said, “Raise thy head and state thy request.” Satan asked the king: “Why art thou terrified, and why are ye all in fear on account of a little lad? I will counsel thee what thou shalt do: Open thy arsenal and give weapons unto all the princes, chiefs, and governors, and unto all the warriors, and send them to fetch him unto thy service and to be under thy dominion.”

This advice given by Satan the king accepted and followed. He sent a great armed host to bring Abraham to him. When the boy saw the army approach him, he was sore afraid, and amid tears he implored God for help. In answer to his prayer, God sent the angel Gabriel to him, and he said: “Be not afraid and disquieted, for God is with thee. He will rescue thee out of the hands of all thine adversaries.” God commanded Gabriel to put thick, dark clouds between Abraham and his assailants. Dismayed by the heavy clouds, they fled, returning to Nimrod, their king, and they said to him, “Let us depart and leave this realm,” and the king gave money unto all his princes and his servants, and together with the king they departed and journeyed to Babylon.<sup>20</sup>

---

13. PRE 26 reads: When Abraham was born, Nimrod's courtiers wanted to put him to death; so he was kept in a hiding-place beneath the ground for thirteen years, during which time he did not see the sun nor the moon. A different account of Abraham's youth is given in Yashar; compare with p. 182. Still another version of this story is found in 2 *Aseret ha-Dibrot* 2; *Ma'as.*, G. 3; *Ma'aseh Abraham*, Horowitz edition, 43. According to the latter sources, Abraham lived in a cave for three years. Comp. Nedarim 32a; BR 30, 8; BaR 18. 21; Shir 5. 16; PR 21, 105a; Tan.



Lek 3 and Behar 1; Tan. B. I, 60; III, 105; Esther R 2. 5. In almost all of these passages two views are given, one that Abraham had recognized his Creator at the age of three, the other that this took place in Abraham's forty-eighth year (Maimonides, *Yad*, *'Abodah Zarah*, 1. 3, seems to have read "forty", which is perhaps based on Pirke Abot 5, at the end). A statement in Rokeah (*Hasidut, Zakuyyot 'Arum*), which is apparently derived from an unknown version of the Sefer Yezirah, maintains that Abraham, at the age of forty-eight, was moved by the deeds of the generation of the Tower of Babel to reflect on God and the universe. He first studied three years by himself, afterwards, by the command of God, he was taught by Shem, until he became so wise that he composed the Sefer Yezirah. Then God appeared unto him, took him unto Himself, kissed him, called him His friend, and made a covenant with him and his descendants forever. A similar statement is quoted by Judah b. Barzillai (in his commentary on the Sefer Yezirah, 268) from an old text of the Sefer Yezirah.

14. In the Abraham legend in BHM II, 118, we read that two spouts (read סלונות instead of חלונות) sprang up, one flowing with honey, the other with milk.

15. Comp. above, note 12. Other heroes, too, like Abraham, are supposed to have been able to walk, talk, and think in their infancy. See Index under "*Cain*", "*Noah*", and "*Moses*". Such "wonder children" are also known in the Christian legends, and unusual precocity is ascribed to Jesus and others; comp. Günter, *Christliche Legende*, 134 seq.

16. That Abraham discovered the true faith by meditating on nature we are told in so early a source as the Apocalypse of Abraham (compare with pp. 183–184), and about six versions of this legend are extant. Comp. BR 38. 13; 2 *Aseret ha-Dibrot* 2; *Ma'aseh Abraham* (Hor. edition, 43–44); *Ma'aseh Abraham* (BHM II, 118); Yashar Noah, 20a–20b; *Ma'as*. G. 3, 4; MHG I, 189. The oldest form seems to be that of BR, where we are told that Abraham, by observing how one element subdues another, becomes convinced of the error of worshipping the elements. But even this form is not the original one, as can be seen by comparing it with the statement of R. Judah (about 150 C.E.) in Baba Batra 10a, and Koheleth 7. 26. Benfey, *Pantschatantra* I, 376, 377, attempts to trace this legend to a kindred Indian fable. This is, however, not likely, as the Jewish sources recording this legend are extremely old. *Recognitiones*, 7, as well as Aristides, 3–6, seems to have known it, and it is quite probable that Josephus (*Antiqui*. I, 7. 1) gives a rationalistic interpretation of it.

17. Comp. above, note 15, and Ginzberg in *Jewish Encyclopedia*, II, 608A.

18. Fabulous numbers of a similar character are also found elsewhere; comp. with p. 1045.

19. The verb תמה is here used, as sometimes in biblical Hebrew, in the sense of "being horror-struck",

whereas in mishnic Hebrew it denotes "was astonished, marvelled."

20. No mention is made in this legend of the place where Abraham and Nimrod were until now; comp. Eupolemus in Eusebius, *Praep. Evang.*, IX. 17, 418d, who gives "Camarinu, a city also known as Uria" as Abraham's birthplace. Uria is the biblical Ur, which the Talmud (Baba Batra 91a) identifies with a Babylonian locality in talmudic times (the text of that passage is in a bad condition; but כותא is very likely the name borne by that place; see Rabbinowicz, *Variae Lectiones*); this name is likewise found in Arabic sources, Istahri M., 54; Maras II, 519. According to the Talmud, Abraham was kept prisoner by Nimrod for ten years, first in כותא and then in קרדו or כרדו; Beer, *Leben Abrahams*, notes 5 and 108.

## ABRAHAM'S FIRST APPEARANCE IN PUBLIC

Now Abraham, at the command of God, was ordered by the angel Gabriel to follow Nimrod to Babylon. He objected that he was in no wise equipped to undertake a campaign against the king, but Gabriel calmed him with the words: "Thou needest no provision for the way, no horse to ride upon, no warriors to carry on war with Nimrod, no chariots, nor riders. Do thou but sit thyself upon my shoulder, and I shall bear thee to Babylon."

Abraham did as he was bidden, and in the twinkling of an eye he found himself before the gates of the city of Babylon.<sup>21</sup> At the behest of the angel, he entered the city, and he called unto the dwellers therein with a loud voice: "The Eternal, He is the One Only God, and there is none beside. He is the God of the heavens, and the God of the gods, and the God of Nimrod. Acknowledge this as the truth, all ye men, women, and children. Acknowledge also that I am Abraham His servant, the trusted steward of His house."

Abraham met his parents in Babylon, and also he saw the angel Gabriel, who bade him proclaim the true faith to his father and his mother.



Therefore Abraham spake to them, and said: "Ye serve a man of your own kind, and you pay worship to an image of Nimrod. Know ye not that it has a mouth, but it speaks not; an eye, but it sees not; an ear, but it hears not; nor does it walk upon its feet, and there is no profit in it, either unto itself or unto others?"

When Terah heard these words, he persuaded Abraham to follow him into the house, where his son told him all that had happened—how in one day he had completed a forty days' journey. Terah thereupon went to Nimrod and reported to him that his son Abraham had suddenly appeared in Babylon.<sup>22</sup> The king sent for Abraham, and he came before him with his father. Abraham passed the magnates and the dignitaries until he reached the royal throne, upon which he seized hold, shaking it and crying out with a loud voice: "O Nimrod, thou contemptible wretch, that deniest the essence of faith, that deniest the living and immutable God, and Abraham His servant, the trusted steward of His house. Acknowledge Him, and repeat after me the words: The Eternal is God, the Only One, and there is none beside; He is incorporeal, living, ever-existing; He slumbers not and sleeps not, who hath created the world that men might believe in Him. And confess also concerning me, and say that I am the servant of God and the trusted steward of His house."<sup>23</sup>

While Abraham proclaimed this with a loud voice, the idols fell upon their faces, and with them also King Nimrod.<sup>24</sup> For a space of two hours and a half the king lay lifeless, and when his soul returned upon him, he spoke and said, "Is it thy voice, O Abraham, or the voice of thy God?" And Abraham answered, and said, "This voice is the voice of the least of all creatures called into existence by God." Thereupon Nimrod said, "Verily, the God of Abraham is a great and powerful God, the King of all kings," and he commanded Terah to take his son and remove

him, and return again unto his own city, and father and son did as the king had ordered.<sup>25</sup>

21. For a similar legend, compare with p. 1114.

22. As may be seen from p. 28, 1.2 from below, where the gates of Babylon are spoken of, the reference is to the city, not the land of Babylon; מדינה instead of עיר is very frequently found in works which were influenced by Arabic; this use of מדינה is also found in the Bible; comp. Ginzberg, *Geonica*, I, p. 26.

23. Despite the agreement of the manuscripts with the printed text, the reading עצמי for עצמך (p. 29, 1. 2. from below) is presupposed here; the latter can hardly be correct.

24. That idols fall to the ground at the command of the righteous is frequently recorded in Jewish as well as in Christian legends; comp. *ps.—Matthew 23; Gospel of the Saviour's Infancy* 10; text on p. 972.

25. For Abraham's native town, comp. above, note 20.

## THE PREACHER OF THE TRUE FAITH

When Abraham attained the age of twenty years, his father Terah fell ill. He spoke as follows to his sons Haran and Abraham, "I adjure you by your lives, my sons, sell these two idols for me, for I have not enough money to meet our expenses." Haran executed the wish of his father, but if any one accosted Abraham, to buy an idol from him, and asked him the price, he would answer, "Three manehs," and then question in turn, "How old art thou?" "Thirty years," the reply would be. "Thou art thirty years of age, and yet thou wouldst worship this idol which I made but to-day?" The man would depart and go his way, and another would approach Abraham, and ask, "How much is this idol?" and "Five manehs" would be the reply, and again Abraham would put the question, "How old art thou?"—"Fifty years."—"And dost thou who art fifty years of age bow down before this idol which was made but to-day?" Thereupon the man would



depart and go his way. Abraham then took two idols, put a rope about their necks, and, with their faces turned downward, he dragged them along the ground, crying aloud all the time: "Who will buy an idol wherein there is no profit, either unto itself or unto him that buys it in order to worship it? It has a mouth, but it speaketh not; eyes, but it seeth not; feet, but it walketh not; ears, but it heareth not."

The people who heard Abraham were amazed exceedingly at his words. As he went through the streets, he met an old woman who approached him with the purpose of buying an idol, good and big, to be worshipped and loved. "Old woman, old woman," said Abraham, "I know no profit therein, either in the big ones or in the little ones, either unto themselves or unto others. And," he continued to speak to her, "what has become of the big image thou didst buy from my brother Haran, to worship it?" "Thieves," she replied, "came in the night and stole it, while I was still at the bath." "If it be thus," Abraham went on questioning her, "how canst thou pay homage to an idol that cannot save itself from thieves, let alone save others, like thyself, thou silly old woman, out of misfortune? How is it possible for thee to say that the image thou worshippingest is a god? If it be a god, why did it not save itself out of the hands of those thieves? Nay, in the idol there is no profit, either unto itself or unto him that adores it."<sup>26</sup>

The old woman rejoined, "If what thou sayest be true, whom shall I serve?" "Serve the God of all gods," returned Abraham, "the Lord of lords, who hath created heaven and earth, the sea and all therein—the God of Nimrod and the God of Terah, the God of the east, the west, the south, and the north. Who is Nimrod, the dog, who calleth himself a god, that worship be offered unto him?"

Abraham succeeded in opening the eyes of the old woman, and she became a zealous

missionary for the true God. When she discovered the thieves who had carried off her idol, and they restored it to her, she broke it in pieces with a stone, and as she waded her way through the streets, she cried aloud, "Who would save his soul from destruction, and be prosperous in all his doings, let him serve the God of Abraham." Thus she converted many men and women to the true belief.

Rumors of the words and deeds of the old woman reached the king, and he sent for her. When she appeared before him, he rebuked her harshly, asking her how she dared serve any god but himself. The old woman replied: "Thou art a liar, thou deniest the essence of faith, the One Only God, beside whom there is no other god. Thou livest upon His bounty, but thou payest worship to another, and thou dost repudiate Him, and His teachings, and Abraham His servant."

The old woman had to pay for her zeal for the faith with her life. Nevertheless great fear and terror took possession of Nimrod, because the people became more and more attached to the teachings of Abraham, and he knew not how to deal with the man who was undermining the old faith. At the advice of his princes, he arranged a seven days' festival, at which all the people were bidden to appear in their robes of state, their gold and silver apparel. By such display of wealth and power he expected to intimidate Abraham and bring him back to the faith of the king. Through his father Terah, Nimrod invited Abraham to come before him, that he might have the opportunity of seeing his greatness and wealth, and the glory of his dominion, and the multitude of his princes and attendants. But Abraham refused to appear before the king. On the other hand, he granted his father's request that in his absence he sit by his idols and the king's, and take care of them.

Alone with the idols, and while he repeated the words, "The Eternal He is God, the Eternal



He is God!" he struck the king's idols from their thrones, and began to belabor them with an axe. With the biggest he started, and with the smallest he ended. He hacked off the feet of one, and the other he beheaded. This one had his eyes struck out, the other had his hands crushed.<sup>27</sup> After all were mutilated, he went away, having first put the axe into the hand of the largest idol.

The feast ended, the king returned, and when he saw all his idols shivered in pieces, he inquired who had perpetrated the mischief. Abraham was named as the one who had been guilty of the outrage, and the king summoned him and questioned him as to his motive for the deed. Abraham replied: "I did not do it; it was the largest of the idols who shattered all the rest. Seest thou not that he still has the axe in his hand? And if thou wilt not believe my words, ask him and he will tell thee."

---

26. The episode relating to the age of the idols as compared to that of the purchaser is excerpted from ER 5. 27 (it was taken over verbatim in Yerahmeel, 71–72; Zohar I, 77; this was overlooked by Gaster, *ad loc.*) and in the text it is interwoven in the account of *Ma'aseh Abraham*; other versions of this episode occur in BR 38. 13; *Ma'as.* G. 3; MHG I, 188; EZ 25, 47–48. Compare also with p. 182 and Philo, *De Decalogo*, 14. 192.

27. I read שבר עיניו (p. 32, line 4) instead of שבר עיניו. According to Baba Kama 8. 1, the correct reading of this passage is: שבר רגליו סמא עיניו קטע את ידו. The printed text as well as the manuscript, which offers some variants, is corrupt, as רגליו is repeated.

## IN THE FIERY FURNACE

Now the king was exceedingly wroth at Abraham, and ordered him to be cast into prison, where he commanded the warden not to give him bread or water.<sup>28</sup> But God hearkened unto the prayer of Abraham, and sent Gabriel to him

in his dungeon. For a year the angel dwelt with him, and provided him with all sorts of food, and a spring of fresh water welled up before him, and he drank of it. At the end of a year, the magnates of the realm presented themselves before the king, and advised him to cast Abraham into the fire, that the people might believe in Nimrod forever. Thereupon the king issued a decree that all the subjects of the king in all his provinces, men and women, young and old, should bring wood within forty days, and he caused it to be thrown into a great furnace and set afire.<sup>29</sup> The flames shot up to the skies, and the people were sore afraid of the fire. Now the warden of the prison was ordered to bring Abraham forth and cast him in the flames. The warden reminded the king that Abraham had not had food or drink a whole year, and therefore must be dead, but Nimrod nevertheless desired him to step in front of the prison and call his name. If he made reply, he was to be hauled out to the pyre. If he had perished, his remains were to receive burial, and his memory was to be wiped out henceforth.

Greatly amazed the warden was when his cry, "Abraham, art thou alive?" was answered with "I am living." He questioned further, "Who has been bringing thee food and drink all these many days?" and Abraham replied: "Food and drink have been bestowed upon me by Him who is over all things, the God of all gods and the Lord of all lords, who alone doeth wonders, He who is the God of Nimrod and the God of Terah and the God of the whole world. He dispenseth food and drink unto all beings. He sees, but He cannot be seen, He is in the heavens above, and He is present in all places, for He Himself superviseth all things and provideth for all."

The miraculous rescue of Abraham from death by starvation and thirst convinced the prison-keeper of the truth of God and His prophet Abraham, and he acknowledged his belief in



both publicly. The king's threat of death unless he recanted could not turn him away from his new and true faith. When the hangman raised his sword and set it at his throat to kill him, he exclaimed, "The Eternal He is God, the God of the whole world as well as of the blasphemer Nimrod." But the sword could not cut his flesh. The harder it was pressed against his throat, the more it broke into pieces.<sup>30</sup>

Nimrod, however, was not to be turned aside from his purpose, to make Abraham suffer death by fire. One of the princes was dispatched to fetch him forth. But scarcely did the messenger set about the task of throwing him into the fire, when the flame leapt forth from the furnace and consumed him. Many more attempts were made to cast Abraham into the furnace, but always with the same success—whoever seized him to pitch him in was himself burnt, and a large number lost their lives. Satan appeared in human shape, and advised the king to place Abraham in a catapult and sling him into the fire. Thus no one would be required to come near the flame. Satan himself constructed the catapult. Having proved it fit three times by means of stones put in the machine, they bound Abraham, hand and foot, and were about to consign him to the flames. At that moment Satan, still disguised in human shape, approached Abraham, and said, "If thou desirest to deliver thyself from the fire of Nimrod, bow down before him and believe in him." But Abraham rejected the tempter with the words, "May the Eternal rebuke thee, thou vile, contemptible, accursed blasphemer!" and Satan departed from him.

Then the mother of Abraham came to him and implored him to pay homage to Nimrod and escape the impending misfortune. But he said to her: "O mother, water can extinguish Nimrod's fire, but the fire of God will not die out for evermore. Water cannot quench it."<sup>31</sup> When his mother heard these words, she spake, "May the God

whom thou servest rescue thee from the fire of Nimrod!"

Abraham was finally placed in the catapult, and he raised his eyes heavenward, and spoke, "O Lord my God, Thou seest what this sinner purposes to do unto me!"<sup>32</sup> His confidence in God was unshakable. When the angels received the Divine permission to save him, and Gabriel approached him, and asked, "Abraham, shall I save thee from the fire?" he replied, "God in whom I trust, the God of heaven and earth, will rescue me," and God, seeing the submissive spirit of Abraham, commanded the fire, "Cool off and bring tranquillity to my servant Abraham."<sup>33</sup>

No water was needed to extinguish the fire. The logs burst into buds, and all the different kinds of wood put forth fruit, each tree bearing its own kind. The furnace was transformed into a royal pleasance, and the angels sat therein with Abraham. When the king saw the miracle, he said: "Great witchcraft! Thou makest it known that fire hath no power over thee, and at the same time thou showest thyself unto the people sitting in a pleasure garden." But the princes of Nimrod interposed all with one voice, "Nay, our lord, this is not witchcraft, it is the power of the great God, the God of Abraham, beside whom there is no other god, and we acknowledge that He is God, and Abraham is His servant." All the princes and all the people believed in God at this hour, in the Eternal, the God of Abraham, and they all cried out, "The Lord He is God in heaven above and upon the earth beneath; there is none else."<sup>34</sup>

Abraham was the superior, not only of the impious king Nimrod and his attendants, but also of the pious men of his time, Noah, Shem, Eber, and Asshur.<sup>35</sup> Noah gave himself no concern whatsoever in the matter of spreading the pure faith in God. He took an interest in planting his vineyard, and was immersed in material pleasures. Shem and Eber kept in hiding, and as



for Asshur, he said, "How can I live among such sinners?" and departed out of the land.<sup>36</sup> The only one who remained unshaken was Abraham. "I will not forsake God," he said, and therefore God did not forsake him, who had hearkened neither unto his father nor unto his mother.

The miraculous deliverance of Abraham from the fiery furnace, together with his later fortunes, was the fulfilment and explanation of what his father Terah had read in the stars. He had seen the star of Haran consumed by fire, and at the same time fill and rule the whole world. The meaning was plain now. Haran was irresolute in his faith, he could not decide whether to adhere to Abraham or the idolaters. When it befell that those who would not serve idols were cast into the fiery furnace, Haran reasoned in this manner: "Abraham, being my elder, will be called upon before me. If he comes forth out of the fiery trial triumphant, I will declare my allegiance to him; otherwise I will take sides against him." After God Himself had rescued Abraham from death, and Haran's turn came to make his confession of faith, he announced his adherence to Abraham. But scarcely had he come near the furnace,<sup>37</sup> when he was seized by the flames and consumed, because he was lacking in firm faith in God. Terah had read the stars well, it now appeared: Haran was burnt, and his daughter Sarah<sup>38</sup> became the wife of Abraham, whose descendants fill the earth.<sup>39</sup> In another way the death of Haran was noteworthy. It was the first instance, since the creation of the world, of a son's dying while his father was still alive.<sup>40</sup>

The king, the princes, and all the people, who had been witnesses of the wonders done for Abraham, came to him, and prostrated themselves before him. But Abraham said: "Do not bow down before me, but before God, the Master of the universe, who hath created you. Serve Him and walk in His ways, for He it was who delivered me from the flames, and He it is who hath

created the soul and the spirit of every human being, who formeth man in the womb of his mother, and bringeth him into the world. He saveth from all sickness those who put their trust in Him."

The king then dismissed Abraham, after loading him down with an abundance of precious gifts, among them two slaves who had been raised in the royal palace. 'Ogi was the name of the one, Eliezer the name of the other. The princes followed the example of the king, and they gave him silver, and gold, and gems. But all these gifts did not rejoice the heart of Abraham so much as the three hundred followers that joined him and became adherents of his religion.

---

28. The imprisonment of Abraham is already mentioned in the Talmud (comp. above, note 20) and PRE 25; according to these sources the imprisonment lasted ten years.

29. Christian legends, too, frequently tell of angels bringing food and drink to needy saints; comp. *Protevangelium of James* 8. 1. Despite the manuscript, מגדל instead of גדר (p. 32, 1. 22) is to be read, as may be seen from the word בית which follows.

30. There is a similar incident in the Moses legend; compare with p. 487.

31. According to the manuscript, לא תכבה is to be read instead of מכובה אינו of the printed edition (p. 34, line 16).

32. The text is somewhat obscure. Abraham, fastened to the catapult, prays to God, and the angels intercede in his behalf; then follows the scene in which Abraham's mother takes part; and then come the words: "And when it came to pass, that they threw him into the catapult." להשים should probably be read instead of וישימו. The entire passage would then become quite clear.

33. Literally: *May cooling and comfort be granted to My servant Abraham*; this is a literal translation of Koran 21. 69, as has already been observed by Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 129. In the old sources (Pesahim, 118a; BR 44. 13; ShR 8. 5; DR 2. 29; Shir 1. 12; Tan. B. II, 100=Introduction 144; Tan. Tezawweh 12; Tehillim 119. 48) it is stated that Gabriel (according to some, Michael) hastened to come to Abraham's assistance, but God checked the angel, and He Himself delivered Abraham. But according to one view given in BR it was Michael who delivered Abraham. In *Ma'aseh Abraham* (Horowitz's edition) the latter part of the text is corrupt, as two conflicting versions of Abraham's deliverance are given. The text may be emended



in accordance with 2 *Aseret ha-Dibrot* 2, by adding the sentence which fell out through homoioteleuton.

34. *Ma'aseh Abraham*, published by Jellinek in BHM, I, 25–34; this edition, which is rather inaccurate, is taken from *Shebet Musar* of Elijah ha-Kohen who used a Constantinople edition of this Midrash; comp. Porges, *Zeitschrift für hebräische Bibliographie*, X, 159, and Ginzberg, *ibid.*, IX, p. 125. I cannot state with certainty whether the MS. of this Midrash, found in the library of the Jewish Theological Seminary of America (No. 33 Steinschneider), goes back to the Constantinople edition or not, as only Elijah ha-Kohen's edition is accessible to me. The MS. text differs from that given in *Shebet Musar*, but is not always superior to it. As was already remarked by Jellinek, *op. cit.*, *Einleitung*, 16, and Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 130, *seq.*, this Midrash is a translation from the Arabic. This supposition may be proved by the phrase **אמר המגיד** (= **אלקאיל**) which is of frequent occurrence, and many other Arabisms. The author of the original, however, was a Jew, and not a Mohammedan, since parallels from rabbinic literature might be given to a great part of this booklet. Some of these parallels have already been pointed out in the preceding notes (see, *e. g.*, note 9). It may be further observed that the scene in the furnace is most likely a reminiscence of the Haggadah concerning the three youths in the furnace; compare with pp. 1128–1129, and the notes referring to them. Attention is drawn to the following details: The light at the birth of Abraham (p. 169) has its parallel in the birth of Moses and other heroes (compare with pp. 1097–1098). Gabriel appears to Abraham to show him a well of water which he needed for an ablution before praying; this is genuinely Jewish and not Mohammedan, as has been maintained by many; comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 112. The appearance of Satan in human form (pp. 171 and 176) is frequently met with in Jewish legends; comp. note 226. The dark cloud, which separated Abraham from his enemies (p. 171), naturally goes back to Exodus 14. 19; compare also with p. 321. The description of God as “He who sees but cannot be seen” (p. 175), though found in the Koran (6.100), is of frequent occurrence in rabbinic literature; comp., *e. g.*, Yerushalmi Peah 21b (towards the end); Hagigah 5b; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 4. 2; 2 Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 22. 14; Sibyll., Prooemium 8, and 4. 12. Recently an Arabic text closely related to that of the *Ma'aseh Abraham* has been published in *R.E.J.*, LXIX, 86 *seq.*—LXX, 36, *seq.*, by Shapira who claims Kob al-Ahbar as the author of this Abraham legend.

35. The building of the tower, a veritable rebellion against God (compare with p. 163), took place ten years after the death of Noah; comp. Seder 'Olam I.

36. This is a midrashic explanation of Gen. 10. 11; comp. BR 37. 4; ER 20, 114; EZ 24, 45. Targum Yerushalmi, Gen., *loc. cit.*, takes **אשור** to refer to Assyria, and accordingly

maintains that Nimrod emigrated to Assyria, because he did not want to participate in the building of the tower; God rewarded him for this pious act. In view of the fact that Targum Yerushalmi, in a preceding verse, described Nimrod as a very wicked man, the sentence **דלא בעי... חדיית** is very likely to be regarded as a later insertion, based on the above mentioned Midrashim, and refers not to Nimrod but to Asshur. Comp., however, Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, I, 88–89, as well as Targum Yerushalmi, *ad loc.* **אתוראה=אשור** (Asshur!), and PR 34, 156a. Compare footnote 77 on p. 161.

37. Compare with p. 176, and note 34.

38. Ischah (Gen. 11. 29) is taken as another name for Sarah, who was so called on account of her prophetic gift (from **סכה=שכה** to look); comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.* I, 6. 5.; Sanhedrin 69a; Megillah 14a; Seder 'Olam 21; Jerome, *Quaestiones, ad loc.*; Ephraim I, 59E.

39. Tehillim 118, 484; Hallel 107. The text of the first-named source is very corrupt (Buber misunderstood it entirely); nor is the second quite correct. A good text of Tehillim is found in Sikl's Talmud Torah; comp. *Hazofeh* III, 18, and Ginzberg, *ibid.*, IV, 32. Comp. also Yalkut I, 77, where the correct reading is found at the beginning and at the end of the quotations from Tehillim: twice **של ה' במזלו**. According to these sources, Haran was the younger brother of Abraham, and this is in agreement with the prevalent view of the Haggadah (comp. Seder 'Olam II; BR 38. 14; Sanhedrin 69b), which maintains that Abraham was one year older than Nahor, who was one year older than Haran; the latter, at the age of eight, begot Sarah. Yashar Noah, 17a and 18a, regards Nahor and Haran as twin-brothers who were much older than Abraham. BaR 4. 8 seems to agree with the latter view. The death of Haran, as a punishment for his vacillation, is already mentioned in BR 38. 13.

## ABRAHAM EMIGRATES TO HARAN

For a period of two years Abraham could devote himself undisturbed to his chosen task of turning the hearts of men to God and His teachings.<sup>41</sup> In his pious undertaking he was aided by his wife Sarah, whom he had married in the meantime. While he exhorted the men and sought to convert them, Sarah addressed herself to the women.<sup>42</sup> She was a helpmeet worthy of Abraham. Indeed, in prophetic powers she ranked higher than her husband.<sup>43</sup> She was sometimes called Ischah, “the seer”, on that account.<sup>44</sup>



At the expiration of two years it happened that Nimrod dreamed a dream. In his dream he found himself with his army near the fiery furnace in the valley into which Abraham had been cast. A man resembling Abraham stepped out of the furnace, and he ran after the king with drawn sword, the king fleeing before him in terror. While running, the pursuer threw an egg at Nimrod's head, and a mighty stream issued therefrom, wherein the king's whole host was drowned. The king alone survived, with three men. When Nimrod examined his companions, he observed that they wore royal attire, and in form and stature they resembled himself. The stream changed back into an egg again, and a little chick broke forth from it, and it flew up, settled upon the head of the king, and put out one of his eyes.

The king was confounded in his sleep, and when he awoke, his heart beat like a trip-hammer, and his fear was exceeding great. In the morning, when he arose, he sent and called for his wise men and his magicians, and told them his dream. One of his wise men, Anōko by name, stood up, and said: "Know, O king, this dream points to the misfortune which Abraham and his descendants will bring upon thee. A time will come when he and his followers will make war upon thy army, and they will annihilate it. Thou and the three kings, thy allies, will be the only ones to escape death. But later thou wilt lose thy life at the hands of one of the descendants of Abraham. Consider, O king, that thy wise men read this fate of thine in the stars, fifty-two years ago, at the birth of Abraham. As long as Abraham liveth upon the ground, thou shalt not be established, nor thy kingdom." Nimrod took Anōko's words to heart, and dispatched some of his servants to seize Abraham and kill him. It happened that Eliezer, the slave whom Abraham had received as a present from Nimrod, was at that time at the royal court. With great haste he

sped to Abraham to induce him to flee before the king's bailiffs. His master accepted his advice, and took refuge in the house of Noah and Shem, where he lay in hiding a whole month. The king's officers reported that despite zealous efforts Abraham was nowhere to be found. Thenceforth the king did not concern himself about Abraham.

When Terah visited his son in his hiding-place, Abraham proposed that they leave the land and take up their abode in Canaan, in order to escape the pursuit of Nimrod. He said: "Consider that it was not for thy sake that Nimrod overloaded thee with honors, but for his own profit. Though he continue to confer the greatest of benefactions upon thee, what are they but earthly vanity? for riches and possessions profit not in the day of wrath and fury. Hearken unto my voice, O my father, let us depart for the land of Canaan, and serve the God that hath created thee, that it may be well with thee."

Noah and Shem aided and abetted the efforts of Abraham to persuade Terah, whereupon Terah consented to leave his country, and he, and Abraham, and Lot, the son of Haran, departed for Haran with their households. They found the land pleasant, and also the inhabitants thereof, who readily yielded to the influence of Abraham's humane spirit and his piety. Many of them obeyed his precepts and became God-fearing and good.<sup>45</sup>

Terah's resolve to quit his native land for the sake of Abraham and take up his abode in strange parts, and his impulse to do it before even the Divine call visited Abraham himself—this the Lord accounted a great merit unto Terah, and he was permitted to see his son Abraham rule as king over the whole world. For when the miracle happened, and Isaac was born unto his aged parents, the whole world repaired to Abraham and Sarah, and demanded to know what they had done that so great a thing should be accomplished



for them. Abraham told them all that had happened between Nimrod and himself, how he had been ready to be burnt for the glory of God, and how the Lord had rescued him from the flames. In token of their admiration for Abraham and his teachings, they appointed him to be their king, and in commemoration of Isaac's wondrous birth, the money coined by Abraham bore the figures of an aged husband and wife on the obverse side, and of a young man and his wife on the reverse side, for Abraham and Sarah both were rejuvenated at the birth of Isaac, Abraham's white hair turned black, and the lines in Sarah's face were smoothed out.

For many years Terah continued to live a witness of his son's glory, for his death did not occur until Isaac was a youth of thirty-five.<sup>46</sup> And a still greater reward waited upon his good deed. God accepted his repentance, and when he departed this life, he entered into Paradise, and not into hell, though he had passed the larger number of his days in sin. Indeed, it had been his fault that Abraham came near losing his life at the hands of Nimrod.<sup>47</sup>

---

40. *Recognitiones*, I, 31 (a Midrash on Gen. 11. 28) gives the explanation that Haran's death was a punishment for an "incestuous crime". This legend makes Haran suffer for the crime of his son Lot, or presupposes that the latter only followed in the footsteps of his father. The Midrashim (MHG I, 191; *Ma'as*. G. 5; Yelammedenu, according to the extract published by Ginzberg in *Hazofeh*, IV, 32, from Sikli's Talmud Torah; Zohar I, 77b; Lekah Gen. *loc. cit.*) explain Haran's premature death (Abel was killed by his brother, and his death cannot be regarded as a precedent to that of Haran who died by the hand of God) in different ways. He was punished for not being steadfast in his religion; comp. the preceding note; Yashar Noah, 25b; Targum Yerushalmi Gen., *loc. cit.* People believed that Abraham was delivered from the fire by means of Haran's witch-craft—or on account of the latter's piety—and his premature death proved that they were wrong; comp. Yelammedenu, *loc. cit.*; Zohar, *loc. cit.*; Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.* Haran attempted to extinguish the flames into which Abraham was cast, and thereby lost his life; comp. Lekah Gen. *loc. cit.*

Jub. 12. 12 narrates that Abraham burned all the idols of his father; when Haran attempted to rescue them, he was himself consumed by the flames; comp. also Ephraim, I, 156D–157A, who very likely borrowed this legend from Jub. According to the Apocalypse of Abraham 8, Terah and his entire household were burned by a fire which came down from heaven as a punishment for their idolatry, which they did not renounce in spite of Abraham's exhortations to mend their ways. Yerahmeel 35. 1 reads: The Chaldeans came to immerse both Haran and Abraham in fire, for it was their custom to immerse their children in fire, as some mothers immerse their babies in water. Gaster refers to Comestor, Gen. 41, who has the same statement. Comp. also ps.—Philo 5A, where it is said that shortly before Abraham's birth mothers began to throw their children into the fire. Jerome, *Quaestiones*, 11. 28, says: Haran was burned because he refused to worship fire which the Chaldeans regarded as their god; Abraham, however, was saved by God. Bar-Hebraeus' statement concerning Haran (*Historia Dynastiarum*, 13) is directly borrowed from Ephraim, *loc. cit.*, which goes back to Jub., *loc. cit.*, and Charles on Jub. is to be corrected accordingly. Compare footnote 76 on p. 160.

41. Yashar Noah, 27a. Ogi—so in editio princeps, but in later editions it was corrupted to עניי—is no one else but Og, who, already in old sources, is identified with Eliezer, while Yashar considers Ogi and Eliezer as companions. Comp. Index, s. v. "Og" and text on p. 753.

42. BR 40. 14; PR 43, 181a; Tan. Lek 12; Shir 1. 3; ARN 12, 53, and second version 26, 54; Onkelos and the Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 15. 5; Sifre D. 32; Midrash Tannaim 25; BaR. 14. 11.

43. Tan. Shemot, at the beginning.

44. See the references given in note 38, to which is to be added Shu'aib, Hayye Sarah, 10d, who quotes an unknown midrashic source: Sarah who is also called Ischah, on account of her prophetic gift, foresaw Israel's history, and prayed to God to assist them in their tribulations.

45. Yashar Noah, 27b–28a. Anoko (אנוקו) is very likely identical with the poet-philosopher איניקש, mentioned in *Musare ha-Pilosofim* (Loewenthal's edition 3, 4); the latter is none other than Ibicus (יב) who was misread as י) who is famous in Greek legends. The comparatively favorable opinion of Terah agrees with ER 5. 27, 28, where it is related that Terah left his native country in the north because its inhabitants were idolatrous; comp. note 47. This view is also found in Augustine's *Civit. Dei*, 17. 13; but a different opinion prevails in rabbinic sources. Comp. notes 50, 54 and end of 119. On Abraham's missionary activity, comp. the references given in notes 42 and 61, as well as Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 296, on Jer. 17, and Zohar I, 79a. On the identity of Nimrod with Amraphel and on his death by the hand of Esau, alluded to in this legend, see note 85, as well as text on pp. 194 and 257, and the notes referring to them.



46. ER 5. 28. On the coins struck by Abraham, comp. Baba Kamma 97b and BR 12. 11. In the latter passage mention is also made of the coins struck by Joshua (a steer on the obverse and an antelope on the reverse), by David (a shepherd's crook, a bag, and a tower), and by Mordecai (a sack, ashes, and a golden crown). On Abraham as king, see Josephus, *Antiqui.* I, 7. 2, who quotes Nicolaus of Damascus to the effect that Abraham was king of Damascus, in the neighborhood of which there is a place called "The Habitation of Abraham". Comp. also BR 55. 1; BaR 15. 4; DR 3. 33; Tan. B. IV, 52; Tan. Beha'loteka 9; Kohelet 2. 14. Philo, *De Nobilit.* 5, says: Abraham is designated as king (Genesis 23. 6), not because of the external circumstances, for he was really a private individual, but on account of the greatness of his soul, as he was possessed of a kingly mind. The Rabbis similarly remark that scholars are called kings; comp. Gittin 62a. See text on p. 195, where it is related that Abraham declined the royal throne offered to him by the nations.

47. Comp. note 114. MHG I, 188, adds that Terah decided to go to Palestine before God had instructed Abraham to do so; comp. note 45.

## THE STAR IN THE EAST

Terah had been a high official at the court of Nimrod, and he was held in great consideration by the king and his suite. A son was born unto him whom he called Abram, because the king had raised him to an exalted place. In the night of Abraham's birth, the astrologers and the wise men of Nimrod came to the house of Terah, and ate and drank, and rejoiced with him that night. When they left the house, they lifted up their eyes toward heaven to look at the stars, and they saw, and, behold, one great star came from the east and ran athwart the heavens and swallowed up the four stars at the four corners. They all were astonished at the sight, but they understood this matter, and knew its import. They said to one another: "This only betokens that the child that hath been born unto Terah this night will grow up and be fruitful, and he will multiply and possess all the earth, he and his children

forever, and he and his seed will slay great kings and inherit their lands."

They went home that night, and in the morning they rose up early, and assembled in their meeting-house. They spake, and said to one another: "Lo, the sight that we saw last night is hidden from the king, it has not been made known to him, and should this thing become known to him in the latter days, he will say to us, Why did you conceal this matter from me? and then we shall all suffer death. Now, let us go and tell the king the sight which we saw, and the interpretation thereof, and we shall be clear from this thing." And they went to the king and told him the sight they had seen, and their interpretation thereof, and they added the advice that he pay the value of the child to Terah, and slay the babe.

Accordingly, the king sent for Terah, and when he came, he spake to him: "It hath been told unto me that a son was born to thee yesternight, and a wondrous sign was observed in the heavens at his birth. Now give me the boy, that we may slay him before evil comes upon us from him, and I will give thee thy house full of silver and gold in exchange for him." Terah answered: "This thing which thou promisest unto me is like the words which a man spoke to a mule, saying, 'I will give thee a great heap of barley, a houseful thereof, on condition that I cut off thy head!' The mule replied, 'Of what use will all the barley be to me, if thou cuttest off my head? Who will eat it when thou givest it to me?' Thus also do I say: What shall I do with silver and gold after the death of my son? Who shall inherit me?" But when Terah saw how the king's anger burned within him at these words, he added, "Whatever the king desireth to do unto his servant, that let him do, even my son is at the king's disposal, without value or exchange, he and his two older brethren."

The king spake, however, saying, "I will purchase thy youngest son for a price." And Terah



made answer, "Let my king give me three days' time to consider the matter and consult about it with my family." The king agreed to this condition, and on the third day he sent to Terah, saying, "Give me thy son for a price, as I spoke unto thee, and if thou wilt not do this, I will send and slay all thou hast in thy house, there shall not be a dog left unto thee."

Then Terah took a child which his handmaid had borne unto him that day, and he brought the babe to the king, and received value for him, and the king took the child and dashed his head against the ground, for he thought it was Abraham. But Terah took his son Abraham, together with the child's mother and his nurse, and concealed them in a cave, and thither he carried provisions to them once a month, and the Lord was with Abraham in the cave, and he grew up, but the king and all his servants thought that Abraham was dead.

And when Abraham was ten years old, he and his mother and his nurse went out from the cave, for the king and his servants had forgotten the affair of Abraham.

In that time all the inhabitants of the earth, with the exception of Noah and his household, transgressed against the Lord, and they made unto themselves every man his god, gods of wood and stone, which could neither speak, nor hear, nor deliver from distress. The king and all his servants, and Terah with his household, were the first to worship images of wood and stone. Terah made twelve gods of large size, of wood and of stone, corresponding to the twelve months of the year, and he paid homage to them monthly in turn.<sup>48</sup>

---

48. Yashar Noah, 18a–19a; *Ma'aseh Abraham*, ed. Horowitz, 43; *Ma'aseh Abraham* in BHM, II, 18; 2 *Aseret ha-Dibrot*, 2; *Ma'as*. G. 2, 3; MHG I, 188; see also the references given in note 13. The proverbial phrase of p. 181, line 47, is already found in Sifre N., 95. Yashar and 2 Alphabet of

Ben Sira 22b recast the form of this phrase, and this rather shows the poor taste of these writings. Baraita di-Masseket Niddah 23 reads: In olden times children were brought up by their grandparents. When Abraham was four years old, his father Terah entrusted him to the care of Nahor, who attempted to teach him to worship idols; but in vain, for Abraham was destined to devote himself to the service of God. Comp. Jub. 15. 8, where the wickedness of Abraham's grandfather is spoken of; comp. also note 5.

## THE TRUE BELIEVER

Once Abraham went into the temple of the idols in his father's house, to bring sacrifices to them, and he found one of them, Marumath by name, hewn out of stone, lying prostrate on his face before the iron god of Nahor. The idol was too heavy for him to raise it alone, and he called his father to help him put Marumath back in his place. While they were handling the image, its head dropped off, and Terah took a stone, and chiselled another Marumath, setting the head of the first upon the new body. Then Terah continued and made five more gods, and all these he delivered to Abraham, and bade him sell them in the streets of the city.

Abraham saddled his mule, and went to the inn where merchants from Fandana in Syria put up on their way to Egypt. He hoped to dispose of his wares there. When he reached the inn, one of the camels belonging to the merchants belched, and the sound frightened his mule so that it ran off pell-mell and broke three of the idols. The merchants not only bought the two sound idols from him, they also gave him the price of the broken ones, for Abraham had told them how distressed he was to appear before his father with less money than he had expected to receive for his handiwork.

This incident made Abraham reflect upon the worthlessness of idols, and he said to himself: "What are these evil things done by my father?"



Is not he the god of his gods, for do they not come into being by reason of his carving and chiselling and contriving? Were it not more seemly that they should pay worship to him than he to them, seeing they are the work of his hands?" Meditating thus, he reached his father's house, and he entered and handed his father the money for the five images, and Terah rejoiced, and said, "Blessed art thou unto my gods, because thou didst bring me the price of the idols, and my labor was not in vain." But Abraham made reply: "Hear, my father Terah, blessed are thy gods through thee, for thou art their god, since thou didst fashion them, and their blessing is destruction and their help is vanity. They that help not themselves, how can they help thee or bless me?"

Terah grew very wrathful at Abraham, that he uttered such speech against his gods, and Abraham, thinking upon his father's anger, left him and went from the house. But Terah called him back, and said, "Gather together the chips of the oak wood from which I made images before thou didst return, and prepare my dinner for me." Abraham made ready to do his father's bidding, and as he took up the chips he found a little god among them, whose forehead bore the inscription "God Barisat". He threw the chips upon the fire, and set Barisat up next to it, saying: "Attention! Take care, Barisat, that the fire go not out until I come back. If it burns low, blow into it, and make it flame up again." Speaking thus, he went out. When he came in again, he found Barisat lying prone upon his back, badly burnt. Smiling, he said to himself, "In truth, Barisat, thou canst keep the fire alive and prepare food," and while he spoke, the idol was consumed to ashes. Then he took the dishes to his father, and he ate and drank and was glad and blessed his god Marumath. But Abraham said to his father, "Bless not thy god Marumath, but rather thy god Barisat, for he it was who, out of his great love for thee, threw himself into the fire that thy meal

might be cooked." "Where is he now?" exclaimed Terah, and Abraham answered, "He hath become ashes in the fierceness of the fire." Terah said, "Great is the power of Barisat! I will make me another this day, and to-morrow he will prepare my food for me."

These words of his father made Abraham laugh in his mind, but his soul was grieved at his obduracy, and he proceeded to make clear his views upon the idols, saying: "Father, no matter which of the two idols thou blessest, thy behavior is senseless, for the images that stand in the holy temple are more to be worshipped than thine. Zucheus, the god of my brother Nahor, is more venerable than Marumath, because he is made cunningly of gold, and when he grows old, he will be worked over again. But when thy Marumath becomes dim, or is shivered in pieces, he will not be renewed, for he is of stone. And the god Joauv, who stands above the other gods with Zucheus, is more venerable than Barisat, made of wood, because he is hammered out of silver, and ornamented by men, to show his magnificence. But thy Barisat, before thou didst fashion him into a god with thy axe, was rooted in the earth, standing there great and wonderful, with the glory of branches and blossoms. Now he is dry, and gone is his sap. From his height he has fallen to the earth, from grandeur he came to pettiness, and the appearance of his face has paled away, and he himself was burnt in the fire, and he was consumed unto ashes, and he is no more. And thou didst then say, 'I will make me another this day, and to-morrow he will prepare my food for me.' Father," Abraham continued, and said, "the fire is more to be worshipped than thy gods of gold and silver and wood and stone, because it consumes them. But also the fire I call not god, because it is subject to the water, which quenches it. But also the water I call not god, because it is sucked up by the earth, and I call the earth more venerable, because it conquers the



water. But also the earth I call not god, because it is dried out by the sun, and I call the sun more venerable than the earth, because he illumines the whole world with his rays. But also the sun I call not god, because his light is obscured when darkness cometh up. Nor do I call the moon and the stars gods, because their light, too, is extinguished when their time to shine is past. But hearken unto this, my father Terah, which I will declare unto thee, The God who hath created all things, He is the true God, He hath empurpled the heavens, and gilded the sun, and given radiance to the moon and also the stars, and He drieth out the earth in the midst of many waters, and also thee hath He put upon the earth, and me hath He sought out in the confusion of my thoughts.”<sup>49</sup>

---

49. Apocalypse of Abraham 1–7. On the text comp. Ginzberg, in *Jewish Encyclopedia*, I, 91, *seq.* On Marumath (מְרֻמָּת=מְרֻמָּת), see ZDMG 66, 590; Zuchus is very likely to be derived from זח *was magnificent*, זוחא *splendid, magnificent* (Syriac). Similarly Joauv (variants: Joavon, Juav, and Jav; comp. Bonwetsch, *ad loc.*) is connected with Hebrew יפי *beauty*, and has nothing to do with Gnostic Jao (=יה; comp. Irenaeus, *Haer.* I, 30; 4. 5). In *Sefer ha-Tappuah* the name of the idol that was chiseled by Terah was יאניס, which is described as the moon god (Juno?), to whom children were sacrificed. On the last point comp. note 40. Instead of “was rooted in the earth” (p. 183, line 67) the text reads: “was uprooted from the earth”, which gives no satisfactory sense, and is very likely due to a faulty translation of the Hebrew שרש which signifies both rooted and uprooted. The description which the Apocalypse gives of Abraham’s discovery of God’s existence and of his making the belief in idols appear ridiculous is very closely related to the midrashic legends dealing with the same incident (compare with p. 170, *seq.*, and the notes referring to them, especially note 16) and in Jub. 11. 16–12. 21. In the last-mentioned source we are told that Abraham, while yet a child (see above, note 13), became convinced of the wickedness of idolatry, and in order not to be forced to worship idols, he left his father at the early age (comp. PRE 26) of fourteen. It was then that, at Abraham’s command, the ravens (compare with p. 167; this is only found in Jub. and in Ephraim; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*

97, 98) ceased to despoil the earth. He also invented an instrument, by which the seeds were made safe against the ravens. After that he began to preach to his father and brothers about the wickedness of idolatry. Terah admitted that Abraham’s arguments were sound, but at the same time admonished him to keep quiet, in order not to arouse the hostility of the people against himself. His brothers, however, became enraged against Abraham on account of his free speech. And in the night when Abraham threw his father’s idols into the fire, Haran his brother (comp. note 40) attempted to rescue them, and thus lost his life. Whereupon Terah left the land of the Chaldeans, to settle in Palestine (comp. note 47), and on his way he stopped for some time in Haran. It is noteworthy that in all the sources (comp. the references given in notes 16 and 108) stress is laid upon the fact that Abraham came to know God through his own reasoning about the universe and its ruler who must necessarily exist. BaR 14. 2 (comp. also PR 33, 150) enumerates three men who acquired the knowledge of God “by themselves”. They are: Abraham, Job, Hezekiah, and the fourth will be the Messiah. This Haggadah probably wishes to call attention to the fact that although these pious men lived during a godless age, they did not succumb to the influence of their surroundings. Bonwetsch, *Apocalypse Abrahams*, 49–53, Charles, in his notes on Jub., *loc. cit.*, and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 95–98, give many references to Christian sources where Abraham legends of Jewish origin are made use of. On Mohammedan parallels to these legends, see Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 90 *seq.*

## THE ICONOCLAST

But Terah could not be convinced, and in reply to Abraham’s question, who the God was that had created heaven and earth and the children of men, he took him to the hall wherein stood twelve great idols and a large number of little idols, and pointing to them he said, “Here are they who have made all thou seest on earth, they who have created also me and thee and all men on the earth,” and he bowed down before his gods, and left the hall with his son.

Abraham went thence to his mother, and he spoke to her, saying: “Behold, my father has shown those unto me who made heaven and earth



and all the sons of men. Now, therefore, hasten and fetch a kid from the flock, and make of it savory meat, that I may bring it to my father's gods, perhaps I may thereby become acceptable to them." His mother did according to his request, but when Abraham brought the offering to the gods, he saw that they had no voice, no hearing, no motion, and not one of them stretched forth his hand to eat. Abraham mocked them, and said, "Surely, the savory meat that I prepared doth not please you, or perhaps it is too little for you! Therefore I will prepare fresh savory meat to-morrow, better and more plentiful than this, that I may see what cometh therefrom." But the gods remained mute and without motion before the second offering of excellent savory meat as before the first offering, and the spirit of God came over Abraham, and he cried out, and said: "Woe unto my father and his wicked generation, whose hearts are all inclined to vanity, who serve these idols of wood and stone, which cannot eat, nor smell, nor hear, nor speak, which have mouths without speech, eyes without sight, ears without hearing, hands without feeling, and legs without motion!"

Abraham then took a hatchet in his hand, and broke all his father's gods, and when he had done breaking them he placed the hatchet in the hand of the biggest god among them all, and he went out. Terah, having heard the crash of the hatchet on the stone, ran to the room of the idols, and he reached it at the moment when Abraham was leaving it, and when he saw what had happened, he hastened after Abraham, and he said to him, "What is this mischief thou hast done to my gods?" Abraham answered: "I set savory meat before them, and when I came nigh unto them, that they might eat, they all stretched out their hands to take of the meat, before the big one had put forth his hand to eat. This one, enraged against them on account of

their behavior, took the hatchet and broke them all, and, behold, the hatchet is yet in his hands, as thou mayest see."

Then Terah turned in wrath upon Abraham, and he said: "Thou speakest lies unto me! Is there spirit, soul, or power in these gods to do all thou hast told me? Are they not wood and stone? and have I not myself made them? It is thou that didst place the hatchet in the hand of the big god, and thou sayest he smote them all." Abraham answered his father, and said: "How, then, canst thou serve these idols in whom there is no power to do anything? Can these idols in which thou trustest deliver thee? Can they hear thy prayers when thou callest upon them?" After having spoken these and similar words, admonishing his father to mend his ways and refrain from worshipping idols, he leapt up before Terah, took the hatchet from the big idol, broke it therewith, and ran away.

Terah hastened to Nimrod, bowed down before him, and besought him to hear his story, about his son who had been born to him fifty years back, and how he had done to his gods, and how he had spoken. "Now, therefore, my lord and king," he said, "send for him that he may come before thee, and do thou judge him according to the law, that we may be delivered from his evil." When Abraham was brought before the king, he told him the same story as he had told Terah, about the big god who broke the smaller ones, but the king replied, "Idols do neither speak, nor eat, nor move." Then Abraham reproached him for worshipping gods that can do nothing, and admonished him to serve the God of the universe. His last words were, "If thy wicked heart will not hearken to my words, to cause thee to forsake thy evil ways and serve the Eternal God, then wilt thou die in shame in the latter days, thou, thy people, and all that are connected with thee, who hear thy words, and walk in thy evil ways."



The king ordered Abraham to be put into prison, and at the end of ten days he caused all the princes and great men of the realm to appear before him, and to them he put the case of Abraham. Their verdict was that he should be burnt, and, accordingly, the king had a fire prepared for three days and three nights, in his furnace at Kasdim, and Abraham was to be carried thither from prison to be burnt.

All the inhabitants of the land, about nine hundred thousand men, and the women and the children besides, came to see what would be done with Abraham. And when he was brought forth, the astrologers recognized him, and they said to the king, "Surely, this is the man whom we knew as a child, at whose birth the great star swallowed the four stars. Behold, his father did transgress thy command, and he made a mockery of thee, for he did bring thee another child, and him didst thou kill."

Terah was greatly terrified, for he was afraid of the king's wrath, and he admitted that he had deceived the king, and when the king said, "Tell me who advised thee to do this. Hide naught, and thou shalt not die," he falsely accused Haran, who had been thirty-two years old at the time of Abraham's birth, of having advised him to deceive the king. At the command of the king, Abraham and Haran, stripped of all their clothes except their hosen, and their hands and feet bound with linen cords, were cast into the furnace. Haran, because his heart was not perfect with the Lord, perished in the fire, and also the men who cast them into the furnace were burnt by the flames which leapt out over them, and Abraham alone was saved by the Lord, and he was not burnt, though the cords with which he was bound were consumed. For three days and three nights Abraham walked in the midst of the fire, and all the servants of the king came and told him, "Behold, we have seen Abraham walking about in the midst of the fire."<sup>50</sup>

At first the king would not believe them, but when some of his faithful princes corroborated the words of his servants, he rose up and went to see for himself. He then commanded his servants to take Abraham from the fire, but they could not, because the flames leapt toward them from the furnace, and when they tried again, at the king's command, to approach the furnace, the flames shot out and burnt their faces, so that eight of their number died. The king then called unto Abraham, and said: "O servant of the God who is in heaven, go forth from the midst of the fire, and come hither and stand before me," and Abraham came and stood before the king. And the king spoke to Abraham, and said, "How cometh it that thou wast not burnt in the fire?" And Abraham made answer, "The God of heaven and earth in whom I trust, and who hath all things in His power, He did deliver me from the fire into which thou didst cast me."<sup>51</sup>

---

50. Yashar Noah, 23b–26b. The incident concerning the biggest idol with the hatchet in its hand (p. 185) is very frequently referred to in the Midrashim; comp. BR 38. 13, and the numerous parallels given by Theodor, *ad. loc.*; EZ 25. 47–48. Abraham, who, as a vendor of idols, nearly ruined his father's business (compare with pp. 173–174) was made a priest by Terah. When, however, the idols refused to partake of the food offered to them, Abraham broke them in pieces, which he burned. Brought before Nimrod, Abraham asked him to change the course of the sun as a proof of his divinity, and this request not having been granted, he declared him an impostor. Nimrod ordered Terah to pronounce sentence upon Abraham, and death by fire was the verdict. In this legend Abraham is represented as a breaker of idols not as an iconoclast, while in the later legend he is both and this is an attempt to combine two different Abraham legends. On Terah comp. notes 45, 47, 54, and end of 114. compare also footnote 76 on p. 75.

51. Yashar Noah, 27a. The continuation of this narrative is given in the last two paragraphs of text on p. 177.



## ABRAHAM IN CANAAN

With ten temptations Abraham was tempted, and he withstood them all, showing how great was the love of Abraham.<sup>52</sup> The first test to which he was subjected was the departure from his native land. The hardships were many and severe which he encountered, and he was loth to leave his home, besides. He spoke to God, and said, "Will not the people talk about me, and say, 'He is endeavoring to bring the nations under the wings of the Shekinah, yet he leaves his old father in Haran, and he goes away.'" But God answered him, and said: "Dismiss all care concerning thy father and thy kinsmen from thy thoughts. Though they speak words of kindness to thee, yet are they all of one mind, to ruin thee."<sup>53</sup>

Then Abraham forsook his father in Haran, and journeyed to Canaan, accompanied by the blessing of God, who said unto him, "I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great." These three blessings were to counteract the evil consequences which, he feared, would follow emigration, for travelling from place to place interferes with the growth of the family, it lessens one's substance, and it diminishes the consideration one enjoys.<sup>54</sup> The greatest of all blessings, however, was the word of God, "And be thou a blessing." The meaning of this was that whoever came in contact with Abraham was blessed. Even the mariners on the sea were indebted to him for prosperous voyages.<sup>55</sup> Besides, God held out the promise to him that in time to come his name would be mentioned in the Benedictions, God would be praised as the Shield of Abraham, a distinction accorded to no other mortal except David.<sup>56</sup> But the words, "And be thou a blessing," will be fulfilled only in the future world, when the seed of Abraham shall be known among the nations and his offspring among the peoples as "the seed which the Lord hath blessed."<sup>57</sup>

When Abraham first was bidden to leave his home, he was not told to what land he was to journey—all the greater would be his reward for executing the command of God.<sup>58</sup> And Abraham showed his trust in God, for he said, "I am ready to go whithersoever Thou sendest me." The Lord then bade him go to a land wherein He would reveal Himself, and when he went to Canaan later, God appeared to him, and he knew that it was the promised land.<sup>59</sup>

On entering Canaan, Abraham did not yet know that it was the land appointed as his inheritance. Nevertheless he rejoiced when he reached it. In Mesopotamia and in Aramnaharaim, the inhabitants of which he had seen eating, drinking, and acting wantonly, he had always wished, "O that my portion may not be in this land," but when he came to Canaan, he observed that the people devoted themselves industriously to the cultivation of the land, and he said, "O that my portion may be in this land!" God then spoke to him, and said, "Unto thy seed will I give this land."<sup>60</sup> Happy in these joyous tidings, Abraham erected an altar to the Lord to give thanks unto Him for the promise, and then he journeyed on, southward, in the direction of the spot whereon the Temple was once to stand. In Hebron he again erected an altar, thus taking possession of the land in a measure. And likewise he raised an altar in Ai, because he foresaw that a misfortune would befall his offspring there, at the conquest of the land under Joshua. The altar, he hoped, would obviate the evil results that might follow.

Each altar raised by him was a centre for his activities as a missionary. As soon as he came to a place in which he desired to sojourn, he would stretch a tent first for Sarah, and next for himself, and then he would proceed at once to make proselytes and bring them under the wings of the Shekinah. Thus he accomplished his purpose of inducing all men to proclaim the Name of God.<sup>61</sup>



For the present Abraham was but a stranger in his promised land. After the partition of the earth among the sons of Noah, when all had gone to their allotted portions, it happened that Canaan son of Ham saw that the land extending from the Lebanon to the River of Egypt was fair to look upon, and he refused to go to his own allotment, westward by the sea. He settled in the land upon Lebanon, eastward and westward from the border of the Jordan and the border of the sea. And Ham, his father, and his brothers Cush and Mizraim spoke to him, and said: "Thou livest in a land that is not thine, for it was not assigned unto us when the lots were drawn. Do not thus! But if thou persistest, ye, thou and thy children, will fall, accursed, in the land, in a rebellion. Thy settling here was rebellion, and through rebellion thy children will be felled down, and thy seed will be destroyed unto all eternity. Sojourn not in the land of Shem, for unto Shem and unto the children of Shem was it apportioned by lot. Accursed art thou, and accursed wilt thou be before all the children of Noah on account of the curse, for we took an oath before the holy Judge and before our father Noah."

But Canaan hearkened not unto the words of his father and his brothers. He dwelt in the land of the Lebanon from Hamath even unto the entrance of Egypt, he and his sons.<sup>62</sup> Though the Canaanites had taken unlawful possession of the land, yet Abraham respected their rights; he provided his camels with muzzles, to prevent them from pasturing upon the property of others.<sup>63</sup>

---

52. Pirke Abot 5. 2; Jub. 19. 8. Opinions differ as to the events in Abraham's life which are to be considered as the temptations; comp. PRE 26; ARN 34, 94–95 (second version, 37, 94; here the Nimrod legend is disregarded!); Tehillim 18, 153, and 95, 420; for full details see Schechter's notes on ARN, *loc. cit.*; comp. further Ecclesiasticus 44.20. I Maccabees 1. 52 is very likely dependent upon the last-named source. In 12 Testaments, Joseph 1. 7, it was Joseph who was tempted with ten temptations.

53. MHG I, 201–202. partly after BR 39. 7; Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 14, also dwells on the great sacrifice made by Abraham in leaving his native country at the command of God.

54. BR 39. 7 and 11. The opinion prevailing in rabbinic sources is that Gen. 12, *seq.*, refers to Abraham's emigration from Haran where he left his father. It is true that according to the Bible (Gen. 11. 23), Terah died prior to Abraham's departure; but this statement of Scripture is taken figuratively, for the wicked are regarded as dead, even while they are yet alive; comp. BR, *loc. cit.*, and the parallels given by Theodor. See also Tan. B., II, 69; Tan. Yitro 1; MHG I, 527; Midrash Tannaim, 101; Mekilta RS, 127; footnote 72 on p. 74. Acts 7.5 understands Scripture to speak of Abraham's emigration from the land of the Chaldeans, and this view is shared by Ibn Ezra, *ad loc.*; comp. note 114. Jub. 12. 16 agrees with the rabbinic view, but remarks that Terah remained in Haran until Abraham had found a desirable residence in Palestine. Syncellus 1, 176, 18, *seq.*, accepts the rabbinic view in all its details.

55. BR 39. 11; MHG, I, 202–203; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 12. 2, *seq.*, is dependent on BR, *loc. cit.* Comp. also Theodor, *ad loc.* Philo, *De Somniis*, 28, says: The wise and virtuous is not only a blessing to himself, but is also beneficial to all men, etc. Comp. also Philo, *De Migratione Abrahami*, 19.

56. Pesahim 117b; BR 39. 11; Tan. B. I, 62; Tan. Lek 4; BaR 11. 2. The legend refers to the fact that the first benediction of the 'Amidah concludes with the words: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, the Shield of Abraham."

57. MHG, I, p. 204, excerpted, perhaps, from Yelammedenu; comp. Sabba, Wayyera, 32a. Against the Christological interpretation of Gen. 12. 3 (see Galatians 3. 8) comp. the explanation of גַּב in BR 39. 12 and MHG, I, 203. Shu'aib, Lek, 6b, quotes from an unknown Midrash a lengthy explanation of Gen. 12. 2. 3, according to which Abraham received three crowns; the crown of the Torah, the crown of priesthood, and the crown of kingdom (comp. Pirke Abot 4. 17, and parallel passages). Israel inherited them later from him.

58. BR 39. 10; comp. note 230.

59. MHG, I, 202. Ziyoni, Gen. 12. 7, on the other hand, maintains that God revealed Himself unto Abraham in the Holy Land for the first time; comp. Mekilta at the beginning; Mo'ed Katan 25a, Index s. v., "Revelation".

60. BR 39. 8. In the extract from Yelammedenu published by Ginzberg in *Hazofeh*, IV, p. 33, it is stated that the inhabitants of Haran were very wicked, despite Abraham's preaching and exhortations; whereupon God commanded him to depart from the sinners and go to Palestine.

61. BR 39. 15, 16; Sanhedrin 44b; MHG I, 213. On the missionary activity of Abraham, comp. above, notes 42 and 43. To the references given in those two notes the



following are to be added: Zohar III, 168a; II, 147b and 198a; ARN 33, 94. Abraham is contrasted with David: The former was first for love and then for justice, while the latter was the reverse.

62. Jub. 10. 29–34. Midrash Aggada I, 27, and Rashi on Gen. 11. 6 quote a similar statement from a midrashic source; compare footnote 73 on p. 157.

63. BR 41. 5; comp. note 228.

## HIS SOJOURN IN EGYPT

Scarcely had Abraham established himself in Canaan when a devastating famine broke out—one of the ten God-appointed famines for the chastisement of men. The first of them came in the time of Adam, when God cursed the ground for his sake; the second was this one in the time of Abraham; the third compelled Isaac to take up his abode among the Philistines; the ravages of the fourth drove the sons of Jacob into Egypt to buy grain for food; the fifth came in the time of the Judges, when Elimelech and his family had to seek refuge in the land of Moab; the sixth occurred during the reign of David, and it lasted three years; the seventh happened in the day of Elijah, who had sworn that neither rain nor dew should fall upon the earth; the eighth was the one in the time of Elisha, when an ass's head was sold for fourscore pieces of silver; the ninth is the famine that comes upon men piecemeal, from time to time; and the tenth will scourge men before the advent of Messiah, and this last will be “not a famine of bread, nor a thirst for water, but of hearing the words of the Lord.”<sup>64</sup>

The famine in the time of Abraham prevailed only in Canaan, and it had been inflicted upon the land in order to test his faith. He stood this second temptation as he had the first. He murmured not, and he showed no sign of impatience toward God, who had bidden him shortly before to abandon his native land for a land of starvation.<sup>65</sup> The famine compelled him to leave

Canaan for a time, and he repaired to Egypt, to become acquainted there with the wisdom of the priests and, if necessary, give them instruction in the truth.<sup>66</sup>

On this journey from Canaan to Egypt, Abraham first observed the beauty of Sarah. Chaste as he was, he had never before looked at her, but now, when they were wading through a stream, he saw the reflection of her beauty in the water like the brilliance of the sun.<sup>67</sup> Wherefore he spoke to her thus, “The Egyptians are very sensual, and I will put thee in a casket that no harm befall me on account of thee.” At the Egyptian boundary, the tax collectors asked him about the contents of the casket, and Abraham told them he had barley in it. “No,” they said, “it contains wheat.” “Very well,” replied Abraham, “I am prepared to pay the tax on wheat.” The officers then hazarded the guess, “It contains pepper!” Abraham agreed to pay the tax on pepper, and when they charged him with concealing gold in the casket, he did not refuse to pay the tax on gold, and finally on precious stones. Seeing that he demurred to no charge, however high, the tax collectors, made thoroughly suspicious, insisted upon his unfastening the casket and letting them examine the contents. When it was forced open, the whole of Egypt was resplendent with the beauty of Sarah. In comparison with her, all other beauties were like apes compared with men. She excelled Eve herself.<sup>68</sup> The servants of Pharaoh outbid one another in seeking to obtain possession of her, though they were of opinion that so radiant a beauty ought not to remain the property of a private individual. They reported the matter to the king,<sup>69</sup> and Pharaoh sent a powerful armed force to bring Sarah to the palace,<sup>70</sup> and so bewitched was he by her charms that those who had brought him the news of her coming into Egypt were loaded down with bountiful gifts.<sup>71</sup>

Amid tears, Abraham offered up a prayer. He entreated God in these words: “Is this the reward



for my confidence in Thee? For the sake of Thy grace and Thy lovingkindness, let not my hope be put to shame.”<sup>72</sup> Sarah also implored God, saying: “O God, Thou didst bid my lord Abraham leave his home, the land of his fathers, and journey to Canaan, and Thou didst promise him to do good unto him if he fulfilled Thy commands. And now we have done as Thou didst command us to do. We left our country and our kindred, and we journeyed to a strange land, unto a people which we knew not heretofore. We came hither to save our people from starvation, and now hath this terrible misfortune befallen. O Lord, help me and save me from the hand of this enemy, and for the sake of Thy grace show me good.”

An angel appeared unto Sarah while she was in the presence of the king, to whom he was not visible, and he bade her take courage, saying, “Fear naught, Sarah, for God hath heard thy prayer.” The king questioned Sarah as to the man in the company of whom she had come to Egypt, and Sarah called Abraham her brother. Pharaoh pledged himself to make Abraham great and powerful, to do for him whatever she wished. He sent much gold and silver to Abraham, and diamonds and pearls, sheep and oxen, and men slaves and women slaves, and he assigned a residence to him within the precincts of the royal palace.<sup>73</sup> In the love he bore Sarah, he wrote out a marriage contract, deeding to her all he owned in the way of gold and silver, and men slaves and women slaves, and the province of Goshen besides, the province occupied in later days by the descendants of Sarah, because it was their property. Most remarkable of all, he gave her his own daughter Hagar as slave, for he preferred to see his daughter the servant of Sarah to reigning as mistress in another harem.<sup>74</sup>

His free-handed generosity availed naught. During the night, when he was about to approach Sarah, an angel appeared armed with a

stick, and if Pharaoh but touched Sarah’s shoe to remove it from her foot, the angel planted a blow upon his hand, and when he grasped her dress, a second blow followed. At each blow he was about to deal, the angel asked Sarah whether he was to let it descend, and if she bade him give Pharaoh a moment to recover himself, he waited and did as she desired. And another great miracle came to pass. Pharaoh, and his nobles, and his servants, the very walls of his house and his bed were afflicted with leprosy, and he could not indulge his carnal desires.<sup>75</sup> This night in which Pharaoh and his court suffered their well-deserved punishment was the night of the fifteenth of Nisan, the same night wherein God visited the Egyptians in a later time in order to redeem Israel, the descendants of Sarah.<sup>76</sup>

Horried by the plague sent upon him, Pharaoh inquired how he could rid himself thereof. He applied to the priests, from whom he found out the true cause of his affliction, which was corroborated by Sarah. He then sent for Abraham and returned his wife to him, pure and untouched, and excused himself for what had happened, saying that he had had the intention of connecting himself in marriage with him, whom he had thought to be the brother of Sarah.<sup>77</sup> He bestowed rich gifts upon the husband and the wife, and they departed for Canaan, after a three months’ sojourn in Egypt.<sup>78</sup>

Arrived in Canaan they sought the same night-shelters at which they had rested before, in order to pay their accounts, and also to teach by their example that it is not proper to seek new quarters unless one is forced to it.<sup>79</sup>

Abraham’s sojourn in Egypt was of great service to the inhabitants of the country, because he demonstrated to the wise men of the land how empty and vain their views were, and also he taught them astronomy and astrology, unknown in Egypt before his time.<sup>80</sup>



64. BR 25. 3 and 40. 3; Ruth R. 1. 1; Shemuel 28; Targum Ruth 1. 1. In all these sources, except in the first-named, it is stated that the second famine occurred in the time of Lemech (the father of Noah; compare with pp. 133, 134, and the notes referring to them), while in BR it is at first assumed that the second famine took place in Abraham's time (ב' בימי אברהם is the reading in MS א!), and then a dissenting opinion is cited, according to which: בימי אבר'א בימי למך א'. The commentators, whom Theodor follows, take the first passage to mean that two famines took place in Abraham's days. This interpretation is, however, unlikely. Probably ב' stands for שני and accordingly the second statement is an explanation of the first. PRE 26 maintains that the very first famine occurred in the time of Abraham; comp. also Tan. Lek 5.

65. PRE 26; BR 40. 2; MHG I, 207; comp. Schechter's notes on the last-named source.

66. Josephus, *Antiqui.* I, 8. 1, and Zohar I, 81b. In the latter passage Abraham is blamed for travelling to Egypt, and Israel's servitude in that country is said to be a punishment for that sin. Nahmanides on Gen. 12. 10 is of the opinion that Abraham's sin consisted in his lack of trust in God; for, out of fear of the inhabitants he did not acknowledge Sarah as his wife. In Baba Kamma 60b Abraham is praised for his going to Egypt, and on the strength of this action of his the rule is given: When a famine is in a city, move quickly away therefrom.

67. Tan. Lek 5; Yashar Lek, 31a; Zohar I, 81b; comp. also Baba Batra 16a; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 12. 11.

68. Tan. Lek, 5; BR 40. 5; Tan. B I, 65–66; Zohar I, 82b; Yashar, Lek 31b. The sensuality of the Egyptians is frequently referred to in Jewish literature; comp. Sifra Kedoshim (end); Yerushalmi Sotah I (p. 17a); WR 23. 7 and 25. 7; Zohar I, 117a. On Sarah's beauty and its relation to that of Eve, see text on p. 59, and the note appertaining thereto, as well as note 78.

69. BR 40. 15; Tan. B. I, 66; Tan. Lek 5.

70. Josephus, *Antiqui.* I, 8. 1.

71. Yashar Lek, 31b.

72. Tan. Lek 5; Tan. B. I, 66.

73. Yashar Lek, 32a. Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 19, likewise mentions that Sarah prayed to God to save her from Pharaoh; the old Midrashim, too, refer to this incident; comp. BR 41. 2; Tan. B. I, 66; Tan. Lek, 5. On Philo's remark that Sarah was the most beautiful of her sex, comp. above, note 68.

74. PRE 26; Yashar Lek, 32a, 32b; BR 45. 1; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 26. 1. Ephraim I, 65, says that Hagar was given to Abraham by Pharaoh; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada by den Kirchenv.*, 108; Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 102, refers to similar statements concerning Hagar in Mohammedan writings. The expression מוטב שתהיה (BR) is

also found in Sanhedrin 99b with reference to Timna. On Goshen compare with pp. 394, 395, and note 325 referring to them, as well as MHG I, 208.

75. BR 40. 2 and 52. 13; Tan. B. I, 66–67; Tan. Lek, 5; Zohar I, 82a. Pharaoh deserved his punishment because, though he was informed by Sarah of the true facts, he did not keep back from his sinful intentions; BR, *loc. cit.* MHG I, 207, on the other hand, maintains that the Egyptians would rather commit murder than adultery. Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 19, remarks that the Egyptians were punished for not having protested against Pharaoh's actions. Compare below footnote 290 on p. 311.

76. PRE 26. In Zohar I, 82a, and III, 52, many more parallels are pointed out between Pharaoh's punishment and that of the Egyptians "in the night of redemption". The view that many important events in the history of the patriarchs and that of Israel took place during the first night of Passover is very old (comp. Index, s. v. "Nisan, Fifteenth of") and is a favorite topic with the paitanim; comp. e. g. Yannai's (about 600) piyyut אַז רוב נִסִּים in the liturgy of the Great Sabbath in the Ashkenazic Mahzor. Comp. also ShR 18. 12 and BaR 20. 12. Comp. note 170.

77. Josephus, *Antiqui.* I, 8. 1. Similar statements in the writings of the Church Fathers are either directly derived from Josephus or are based on oral communications made to them by Jews; comp. Jerome and Theodoretus, Gen. 12. 17, as well as Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 100.

78. Seder 'Olam I; Jub. 13. 11. The duration of Abraham's sojourn in Egypt is given as five years; but Artapanus (Eusebius, *Praep. Evang.*, 9. 18, 420b), states that Abraham stayed twenty years in that country.

79. BR 41. 3; Arakin 16b. This explanation of למסעיו accords with Septuagint and Vulgate, though Jerome on Gen. 13. 3 rejects it. See Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 101.

80. Josephus, *Antiqui.* I, 8. 2; Artapanus (see above, note 78). The Kabbalists, on the contrary, maintain that Abraham learned witch-craft from the Egyptians, as "one appreciates the benefit of light after having been in darkness". See *'Emek ha-Melek*, 135c; *Maggid*, Lek 7b, and comp. note 313. In 'Abodah Zarah 14b it is stated, on the authority of an old tradition, that Abraham composed a book on the laws concerning idolatry containing four hundred chapters, while the Mishnah tractate dealing with the same subject consists only of five chapters. Sotah 46b reads: Pharaoh accompanied Abraham four steps (comp. the same phrase in Sanhedrin 96a) and for this kind act the Egyptians were the masters of Israel for four hundred years. PK 7, 65b contains a view concerning Pharaoh's relation to Sarah which differs from the one expressed in the legend given in our text. According to that source, when Sarah arrived in Egypt, she was impressed into service as a hand-maid, and was made to work like "a donkey in a mill".



Buber attempted to emend the text of this Midrash, but there is absolutely no need for corrections. The expression **לִירֵחִים כִּדְנוֹ** corresponds exactly to the English expression “like a horse in a mill,” except that in Hebrew the donkey takes the place of the horse. Comp. also PR 17, 80c.

## THE FIRST PHARAOH

**T**he Egyptian ruler, whose meeting with Abraham had proved so untoward an event, was the first to bear the name Pharaoh. The succeeding kings were named thus after him. The origin of the name is connected with the life and adventures of Raḳyon, Have-naught, a man wise, handsome, and poor, who lived in the land of Shinar. Finding himself unable to support himself in Shinar, he resolved to depart for Egypt, where he expected to display his wisdom before the king, Ashwerosh, the son of ‘Anam. Perhaps he would find grace in the eyes of the king, who would give Raḳyon the opportunity of supporting himself and rising to be a great man. When he reached Egypt, he learnt that it was the custom of the country for the king to remain in retirement in his palace, removed from the sight of the people. Only on one day of the year he showed himself in public, and received all who had a petition to submit to him. Richer by a disappointment, Raḳyon knew not how he was to earn a livelihood in the strange country. He was forced to spend the night in a ruin, hungry as he was. The next day he decided to try to earn something by selling vegetables. By a lucky chance he fell in with some dealers in vegetables, but as he did not know the customs of the country, his new undertaking was not favored with good fortune. Ruffians assaulted him, snatched his wares from him, and made a laughing-stock of him. The second night, which he was compelled to spend in the ruin again, a sly plan ripened in his mind. He arose and gathered together a crew of

thirty lusty fellows. He took them to the graveyard, and bade them, in the name of the king, charge two hundred pieces of silver for every body they buried. Otherwise interment was to be prevented. In this way he succeeded in amassing great wealth within eight months. Not only did he acquire silver, gold, and precious gems, but also he attached a considerable force, armed and mounted, to his person.

On the day on which the king appeared among the people, they began to complain of this tax upon the dead. They said: “What is this thou art inflicting upon thy servants—permitting none to be buried unless they pay thee silver and gold! Has a thing like this come to pass in the world since the days of Adam, that the dead should not be interred unless money be paid therefor! We know well that it is the privilege of the king to take an annual tax from the living. But thou takest tribute from the dead, too, and thou exactest it day by day. O king, we cannot endure this any longer, for the whole of the city is ruined thereby.”

The king, who had had no suspicion of Raḳyon’s doings, fell into a great rage when the people gave him information about them. He ordered him and his armed force to appear before him. Raḳyon did not come empty-handed. He was preceded by a thousand youths and maidens, mounted upon steeds and arrayed in state apparel. These were a present to the king. When he himself stepped before the king, he delivered gold, silver, and diamonds to him in great abundance, and a magnificent charger. These gifts and the display of splendor did not fail of taking effect upon the king, and when Raḳyon, in well-considered words and with a pliant tongue, described the undertaking, he won not only the king to his side, but also the whole court, and the king said to him, “No longer shalt thou be called Raḳyon, Have-naught, but Pharaoh, Paymaster, for thou didst collect taxes from the dead.”



So profound was the impression made by Rakyon that the king, the grandees, and the people, all together resolved to put the guidance of the realm in the hands of Pharaoh. Under the suzerainty of Ashwerosh he administered law and justice throughout the year; only on the one day when he showed himself to the people did the king himself give judgment and decide cases. Through the power thus conferred upon him and through cunning practices, Pharaoh succeeded in usurping royal authority, and he collected taxes from all the inhabitants of Egypt. Nevertheless he was beloved of the people, and it was decreed that every ruler of Egypt should thenceforth bear the name Pharaoh.<sup>81</sup>

---

81. Yashar Lek, 29b–31a, which was incorporated in BHM VI, 121–123. A slightly different version of this legend was published from a MS. (R. Joseph Kimhi's commentary on the Pentateuch is given as its source) by Berliner (Hoffmann—*Festschrift*, 283–285), who was evidently unaware that he was dealing with a well-known legend. Kaufmann, *R.E.J.*, XVI, 144–146, and Lévi, *ibid.*, XVIII, 130–131, called attention to the fact that al-Biruni (Sachau's edition, p. 280) has the same story, except that Haman takes the place of Rakyon, and in all likelihood this legend is of Arabic origin. Beer, *Leben Abrahams*, note 223, connects Rakyon with Naracho, the name ascribed to this Pharaoh by Malala, *Chronologia*, 71; but this identification seems rather far-fetched. On other names supposed to have been borne by this Pharaoh, comp. Beer, *loc. cit.* See further Theophilus 2. 31, who, in agreement with Yashar, maintains that this ruler of Egypt was the first to assume the title of Pharaoh. Compare also footnote 430 on p. 422.

## THE WAR OF THE KINGS

On his return from Egypt Abraham's relations to his own family were disturbed by annoying circumstances. Strife developed between the herdmen of his cattle and the herdmen of Lot's cattle. Abraham furnished his herds with muzzles, but Lot made no such provision, and

when the shepherds that pastured Abraham's flocks took Lot's shepherds to task on account of the omission, the latter replied: "It is known of a surety that God said unto Abraham, 'To thy seed will I give the land.' But Abraham is a sterile mule. Never will he have children. On the morrow he will die, and Lot will be his heir. Thus the flocks of Lot are but consuming what belongs to them or their master." But God spoke: "Verily, I said unto Abraham I would give the land unto his seed, but only after the seven nations shall have been destroyed from out of the land. To-day the Canaanites are therein, and the Perizzites. They still have the right of habitation."

Now, when the strife extended from the servants to the masters, and Abraham vainly called his nephew Lot to account for his unbecoming behavior, Abraham decided he would have to part from his kinsman, though he should have to compel Lot thereto by force. Lot thereupon separated himself not from Abraham alone, but from the God of Abraham also, and he betook himself to a district in which immorality and sin reigned supreme, wherefore punishment overtook him, for his own flesh seduced him later unto sin.

God was displeased with Abraham for not living in peace and harmony with his own kindred, as he lived with all the world beside. On the other hand, God also took it in ill part that Abraham was accepting Lot tacitly as his heir, though He had promised him, in clear, unmistakable words, "To thy seed will I give the land." After Abraham had separated himself from Lot, he received the assurance again that Canaan should once belong to his seed, which God would multiply as the sand which is upon the sea-shore. As the sand fills the whole earth, so the offspring of Abraham would be scattered over the whole earth, from end to end; and as the earth is blessed only when it is moistened with water, so his offspring would be blessed through the Torah, which is likened unto water; and as the earth endures



longer than metal, so his offspring would endure forever, while the heathen would vanish; and as the earth is trodden upon, so his offspring would be trodden upon by the four kingdoms.<sup>82</sup>

The departure of Lot had a serious consequence, for the war waged by Abraham against the four kings is intimately connected with it. Lot desired to settle in the well-watered circle of the Jordan, but the only city of the plain that would receive him was Sodom, the king of which admitted the nephew of Abraham out of consideration for the latter.<sup>83</sup> The five impious kings planned first to make war upon Sodom on account of Lot and then advance upon Abraham.<sup>84</sup> For one of the five, Amraphel, was none other than Nimrod, Abraham's enemy from of old. The immediate occasion for the war was this: Chedorlaomer, one of Nimrod's generals, rebelled against him after the builders of the tower were dispersed, and he set himself up as king of Elam. Then he subjugated the Hamitic tribes living in the five cities of the plain of the Jordan, and made them tributary. For twelve years they were faithful to their sovereign ruler Chedorlaomer, but then they refused to pay the tribute, and they persisted in their insubordination for thirteen years. Making the most of Chedorlaomer's embarrassment, Nimrod led a host of seven thousand warriors against his former general. In the battle fought between Elam and Shinar, Nimrod suffered a disastrous defeat, he lost six hundred of his army, and among the slain was the king's son Mardon. Humiliated and abased, he returned to his country, and he was forced to acknowledge the suzerainty of Chedorlaomer, who now proceeded to form an alliance with Arioch king of Ellasar, and Tidal, the king of several nations, the purpose of which was to crush the cities of the circle of the Jordan. The united forces of these kings, numbering eight hundred thousand, marched upon the five cities, subduing

whatever they encountered in their course,<sup>85</sup> and annihilating the descendants of the giants. Fortified places, unwallled cities, and flat, open country, all fell in their hands.<sup>86</sup> They pushed on through the desert as far as the spring issuing from the rock at Kadesh, the spot appointed by God as the place of pronouncing judgment against Moses and Aaron on account of the waters of strife. Thence they turned toward the central portion of Palestine, the country of dates, where they encountered the five godless kings, Bera, the villain, king of Sodom; Birsha, the sinner, king of Gomorrah; Shinab, the father-hater, king of Admah; Shemeber, the voluptuary, king of Zeboiim; and the king of Bela, the city that devours its inhabitants. The five were routed in the fruitful Vale of Siddim, the canals of which later formed the Dead Sea. They that remained of the rank and file fled to the mountains, but the kings fell into the slime pits and stuck there. Only the king of Sodom was rescued, miraculously, for the purpose that he might convert those heathen to faith in God that had not believed in the wonderful deliverance of Abraham from the fiery furnace.<sup>87</sup>

The victors despoiled Sodom of all its goods and victuals, and took Lot, boasting, "We have taken the son of Abraham's brother captive", so betraying the real object of their undertaking; their innermost desire was to strike at Abraham.<sup>88</sup>

It was on the first evening of the Passover, and Abraham was eating of the unleavened bread,<sup>89</sup> when the archangel Michael brought him the report of Lot's captivity. This angel bears another name besides, Palit, the escaped, because when God threw Samael and his host from their holy place in heaven, the rebellious leader held on to Michael and tried to drag him along downward, and Michael escaped falling from heaven only through the help of God.<sup>90</sup>

When the report of his nephew's evil state reached Abraham, he straightway dismissed all



thought of his dissensions with Lot from his mind, and only considered ways and means of deliverance.<sup>91</sup> He convoked his disciples to whom he had taught the true faith, and who all called themselves by the name Abraham.<sup>92</sup> He gave them gold and silver, saying at the same time: "Know that we go to war for the purpose of saving human lives. Therefore, do ye not direct your eyes upon money, here lie gold and silver before you." Furthermore he admonished them in these words: "We are preparing to go to war. Let none join us who hath committed a trespass, and fears that Divine punishment will descend upon him." Alarmed by his warning, not one would obey his call to arms, they were fearful on account of their sins. Eliezer alone remained with him, wherefore God spake, and said: "All forsook thee save only Eliezer. Verily, I shall invest him with the strength of the three hundred and eighteen men whose aid thou didst seek in vain."<sup>93</sup>

The battle fought with the mighty hosts of the kings, from which Abraham emerged victorious, happened on the fifteenth of Nisan, the night appointed for miraculous deeds.<sup>94</sup> The arrows and stones hurled at him effected naught,<sup>95</sup> but the dust of the ground, the chaff, and the stubble which he threw at the enemy were transformed into death-dealing javelins and swords.<sup>96</sup> Abraham, as tall as seventy men set on end, and requiring as much food and drink as seventy men, marched forward with giant strides, each of his steps measuring four miles, until he overtook the kings, and annihilated their troops. Further he could not go, for he had reached Dan, where Jeroboam would once raise the golden calves, and on this ominous spot Abraham's strength diminished.<sup>97</sup>

His victory was possible only because the celestial powers espoused his side. The planet Jupiter made the night bright for him, and an angel, Lailah by name, fought for him.<sup>98</sup> In a true sense, it was a victory of God. All the nations

acknowledged his more than human achievement, and they fashioned a throne for Abraham, and erected it on the field of battle. When they attempted to seat him upon it, amid exclamations of "Thou art our king! Thou art our prince! Thou art our god!" Abraham warded them off, and said, "The universe has its King, and it has its God!" He declined all honors, and returned his property unto each man. Only the little children he kept by himself. He reared them in the knowledge of God, and later they atoned for the disgrace of their parents.

Somewhat arrogantly the king of Sodom set out to meet Abraham. He was proud that a great miracle, his rescue from the slime pit, had been performed for him, too. He made Abraham the proposition that he keep the despoiled goods for himself.<sup>99</sup> But Abraham refused them, and said: "I have lift up mine hand unto the Lord, God Most High, who hath created the world for the sake of the pious, that I will not take a thread nor a shoe-latchet nor aught that is thine. I have no right upon any goods taken as spoils,<sup>100</sup> save only that which the young men have eaten, and the portion of the men who tarried by the stuff, though they went not down to the battle itself." The example of Abraham in giving a share in the spoils even unto the men not concerned directly in the battle, was followed later by David, who heeded not the protest of the wicked men and the base fellows with him, that the watchers who staid by the stuff were not entitled to share alike with the warriors that had gone down to the battle.<sup>101</sup>

In spite of his great success, Abraham nevertheless was concerned about the issue of the war. He feared that the prohibition against shedding the blood of man had been transgressed, and he also dreaded the resentment of Shem, whose descendants had perished in the encounter. But God reassured him, and said: "Be not afraid! Thou hast but extirpated the thorns, and as to Shem,



he will bless thee rather than curse thee.” So it was. When Abraham returned from the war, Shem, or, as he is sometimes called, Melchizedek, the king of righteousness, priest of God Most High, and king of Jerusalem, came forth to meet him with bread and wine.<sup>102</sup> And this high priest instructed Abraham in the laws of the priesthood and in the Torah, and to prove his friendship for him he blessed him, and called him the partner of God in the possession of the world, seeing that through him the Name of God had first been made known among men.<sup>103</sup> But Melchizedek arranged the words of his blessing in an unseemly way. He named Abraham first and then God. As a punishment, he was deposed by God from the priestly dignity, and instead it was passed over to Abraham, with whose descendants it remained forever.<sup>104</sup>

As a reward for the sanctification of the Holy Name, which Abraham had brought about when he refused to keep aught of the goods taken in battle,<sup>105</sup> his descendants received two commands, the command of the threads in the borders of their garments, and the command of the lachets to be bound upon their hands and to be used as frontlets between their eyes. Thus they commemorate that their ancestor refused to take so much as a thread or a lachet. And because he would not touch a shoe-latchet of the spoils, his descendants cast their shoe upon Edom.<sup>106</sup>

---

82. BR 41. 5–16; PR 3, 9b–10a; Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 13. 7; Yashar Lek, 32b. The claim of the Canaanites to Palestine is here recognized as legitimate; see a different view in text on p. 188, and compare also with p. 157. Shu'aib Lek, 7a, quotes the following passage from Yerushalmi (not found in our edition): “Strangers profit when brothers quarrel”; the quarrel between Abraham and Lot (not only between their servants alone; comp. *loc. cit.*) caused the Holy Land to remain in the possession of strangers. Comp. also Astruc, *Midreshe ha-Torah* 15, who used a similar source to that of Shu'aib. On Lot comp. note 171; on the comparison of Israel to sand see BaR 2. 13. The four

kingdoms, *i. e.*, Assyria-Babylon, Media-Persia, Macedonia-Greece, Rome, are very often spoken of by the Rabbis; comp. the very instructive study by Senior Sachs, *Shire ha-Shirim*, 70, *seq.*, and Epstein, *Mi-Kadmoniyot*, 31–35. Later the fourth kingdom was a designation of Edom and Ishmael, *i. e.*, Christianity and Islam; comp. Tehillim 6. 59. The four diasporas among the eight kingdoms are: 1) Babylon-Chaldea, 2) Media-Persia, 3) Macedonia-Greece, 4) Edom (=Rome) and Ishmael (=Arabia). Differently in Mekilta RS 118 (not tannaitic); BR 85. 8 (six kingdoms); Hallel 101; Midrash Aggada I, 20 and 155; *Hadar* 37a, where six, seven, and eight kingdoms are referred to.

83. Zohar I, 108a; very likely dependent on an earlier source.

84. MHG I, 215–216; very likely the same source made use of in Zohar I, 86, but not identical with BR 41. 3, where it is said that the war against Abraham was in truth a war against God. Comp. PR, 196b; Kallah 3, 7a, and Beer, *Leben Abrahams*, note 251.

85. Yashar Noah, 29a, and Lek, 33a. The identification of Amraphael with Nimrod is already found in old sources; comp. 'Erubin 53a; BR 41. 1; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 14. 1; Tan. Lek 6; PR 33, 151a. These passages give several etymologies of the name Amraphel. On Amraphel=Nimrod, see also note 82 on vol. I, p. 178. Augustine, *Civit. Dei*, 16. 17, identifies Amraphel with Ninus who is supposed to have been the grandson of Nimrod; comp. Yerahmeel 32. 3 and Gaster, *ad loc.*

86. Bahya Gen. 14. 5, whose remarks are based on lost midrashic sources. On the meaning of the proper names occurring in Gen. 14, and the attempt of Jewish and Christian authors to identify them, see BR 41. 6; Kallah 3. 7a; Beer, *Leben Abrahams*, 248; Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 101–103.

87. BR 41. 5–7; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 14. 2, *seq.*; Jerome, *Quaestiones*, 14. 2–7.

88. MHG I, 216; Zohar I, 86b; comp. note 84. The statement in Zohar that Lot looked like Abraham is very likely based on BR 14. 6.

89. BR. 41. 7–8; DR. 1. 25; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 14. 13.

90. PRE 27, where it is also stated that “the escaped” in Ezekiel 33. 21 likewise refers to the archangel Michael. Another legend identifies “the escaped”, who brought Abraham the report about Lot's capture, with Og. Compare with p. 753. On the designation of Abraham as “the Hebrew”, comp. BR 41. 8; Lekah 2, 144; compare also footnote 91 on p. 164.

91. Tan. B. I, 72; Tan. Lek 13; Aggadat Bereshit 13. 28. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 10. 1, says: Abraham undertook the war on account of his friendship with his neighbors, the inhabitants of Sodom, and in behalf of Lot. Comp. Zohar I, 112b.



92. Nedarim 32a and BR 42. 2—two originally different explanations of חניכיו (Gen. 14. 14). PRE 27 says: His three disciples (=Aner, Eshkol, and Mamre).

93. Tan. B I, 73; Tan. Lek 13; Aggadat Bereshit 13. 29; BR 42. 2; Nedarim 32a; Yelammedenu in supplement to Yalkut (=BHM VI, 79); PK 8, 70a (below); PR 18, 91b; WR 28. 4; BaR 18. 21; PRE 27; Targum Yerushalmi. Gen. 14. 14; Tehillim 110, 466; ER 5. 28. Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 39, speaks of the three hundred warriors, all of whom were born in the house of Abraham (he had no other servants than these) and with whom, despite their small number, he undertook the campaign, trusting that God would help him. Following the method of the Jewish legend which, on the basis of the numerical value of the name Eliezer (אליעזר=318), identifies the three hundred and eighteen with this pious servant of Abraham, the Christian legend maintains that in these warriors there is an allusion to Jesus, the numerical value of whose name is three hundred and eighteen; see Barnabas, 9. 8, and Clemens, *Stromata*, 6. 11.

94. PRE 17; comp. above, note 76.

95. BR 42. 3; Tehillim 110, 466. Jewish tradition takes Ps. 110 to refer to Abraham (another view makes it refer to Hezekiah; compare footnote 69 on p. 1049), and hence the statement that Abraham, in order to be protected, was placed at the right hand of God (Tan. B. I, 74; Aggadat Bereshit 13. 29; Sanhedrin 108b; Tan. Lek 13).

96. Sanhedrin 108b; Ta'anit 21a; BR 42. 3; Tan. B. I, 76; Tan. Lek 15; compare with p. 1001.

97. Tan. B. I, 73–74. Tan. Lek 13; BR 42. 3; Sanhedrin 96a; PRE 27; Aggadat Bereshit 13. 29; Soferim 20; PR, 196b. The Testament of Abraham also presupposes that Abraham was a giant; compare the extract from this source on p. 246.

98. BR 42. 3; Shabbat 196b (God moved, for Abraham's sake, the star Jupiter from the west to the east); Sanhedrin 96a (on the angel Lailah, compare footnote 20 on p. 56); ER 5. 28. WR 1. 4 seems to be of the opinion that Abraham's victory was due to the direct intervention of God and not to the help of the angels. Zohar I, 86a, is very likely based on WR. Reminiscences of long-forgotten legends and myths which bring Abraham in some relation with the sun, are to be found in Tehillim 1. 5; PR 20, 96b and Baba Batra 16b.

99. BR 42. 4–5; comp. ER 25. 128; Tan. B. I, 74, and see also note 46.

100. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 14. 20; BR 43. 9; Tan. B. I 74; Tan. Lek 13. Abraham was the first to declare God "the possessor of heaven and earth"; comp. Berakot 7a and EZ 25, 45.

101. BR 43. 9; Lekah I, 66, and II, 279, with the additional remark that this law, promulgated by Abraham and Moses, had become obsolete in later times, and was restored in its full force by David; comp. I Sam. 30. 22–25.

102. Tan. B. I, 75, 76; Tan. Lek 15. The identity of Melchizedek with Shem is presupposed in many Jewish and Christian sources; comp. Nedarim 32b (in a statement by a teacher who flourished about 100); BR 26. 4 and the parallel passages given by Theodor; Tehillim 76, 340; PRE 8 and 27; Yelammedenu quoted in Yalkut Nahum (here שְׁלֵם=perfect, free from any blemish); Midrash Aggada I, 23 (read שְׁעָשָׂא כֹהֵן, "he appointed him priest"); Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 14. 18. Zohar Hadash Noah, 29b (from there in Gabai's *Abodat ha-Kodesh* II, 31, where the source is not given. On the study of Abraham in the Academy of Shem-Melchizedek mentioned in this source, comp. note 13), tells us that Shem received the name Melchizedek from God when He appointed him priest; compare footnote 51 on p. 150. The Church Fathers Jerome, *Quaestiones*, 14. 18, Ephraim I, 61 E and 79D as well as Epiphanius, *Haer.*, 55. 6, speak of Shem-Melchizedek. The last-mentioned Church Father attributes this identification to the Samaritans, whereas "the Jews declare Melchizedek to have been the son of a prostitute." Later Christian authors somewhat modified the rabbinic view concerning Melchizedek and considered him a descendant of Shem. This latter view is shared by Mohammedan writers. Comp. Beer, *Leben Abrahams*, note 300; Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 103–105; Friedlaender, *Chadhr Legend*, 258, seq. On the gnostic legends concerning Melchizedek, see the gnostic fragment published by Murfil-Charles as supplement to their edition of the Slavonic Enoch, 85–93. That the mysterious personality of Melchizedek occupied the fancy of the people at very early times may be seen from the 12 Testaments which, in its pre-Christian parts (Levi 17. 7), speaks of him in the highest terms of praise. The identity of Salem, Melchizedek's city, with Jerusalem, presupposed in the rabbinic sources enumerated above, is known also to Josephus, *Wars*, VI, 10; Theophilus 2. 3 (his dependence on Josephus may be proved by the phrase "the first priest" which he copied from Josephus); Clemens, *Stromata*, 1. 5; Jerome, *Epistola ad Evargium*, 73. Comp. also Thomsen, *Loci Sancti* I, 10. On the etymological explanation of the name Jerusalem and Salem see note 253. The Samaritans identify Salem with Shechem; comp. Eupolemus 9. 17 (p. 419) and Freudenthal, *Hellenistische Studien*, I, pp. 85 and 87. The remark in ARN 2. 2, that Shem-Melchizedek was born with the sign of the Abrahamic covenant on him is directed against the Christian polemics concerning circumcision. Comp. Note 318.

103. BR 43. 6, 7, and the parallel passages given by Theodor; BaR 4. 8.

104. Nedarim 32b; WR 25. 6. This Haggadah is very likely directed against the Christians who took Melchizedek to be a type of Jesus, the everlasting priest; comp. Hebrews 7. 1–3 and especially Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 33 and 96.



105. ER 25, 128.

106. Sotah 17a; BR 43. 9; Tan. B. I, 75; Tan. Lek 13. The Midrashim mentioned differ from the Talmud with regard to the nature of the two commandments which Israel received as a reward for Abraham's good deed. Sotah, *loc. cit.*; Hullin 88b; BaR 4. 8 mention two commandments which Israel received as a reward for Abraham's humility in saying to God: "And I am but dust and ashes." Comp. Gen. 18. 27.

## THE COVENANT OF THE PIECES

Shortly after the war, God revealed Himself unto Abraham, to soothe his conscience as to the spilling of innocent blood, for it was a scruple that gave him much anguish of spirit. God assured him at the same time that He would cause pious men to arise among his descendants, who, like himself, would be a shield unto their generation.<sup>107</sup> As a further distinction, God gave him leave to ask what he would have, rare grace accorded to none beside, except Jacob, Solomon, Ahaz, and the Messiah. Abraham spoke, and said: "O Lord of the world, if in time to come my descendants should provoke Thy wrath, it were better I remained childless. Lot, for the sake of whom I journeyed as far as Damascus, where God was my protection, would be well pleased to be my heir. Moreover, I have read in the stars, 'Abraham, thou wilt beget no children.'" Thereupon God raised Abraham above the vault of the skies, and He said, "Thou art a prophet, not an astrologer!"<sup>108</sup> Now Abraham demanded no sign that he would be blessed with offspring. Without losing another word, he believed in the Lord, and he was rewarded for his simple faith by a share in this world and a share in the world to come as well, and, besides, the redemption of Israel from the exile will take place as a recompense for his firm trust.<sup>109</sup>

But though he believed the promise made him with a full and abiding faith, he yet desired

to know by what merit of theirs his descendants would maintain themselves. Therefore God bade him bring Him a sacrifice of three heifers, three she-goats, three rams, a turtle dove, and a young pigeon, thus indicating to Abraham the various sacrifices that should once be brought in the Temple, to atone for the sins of Israel and further his welfare.<sup>110</sup> "But what will become of my descendants," asked Abraham, "after the Temple is destroyed?" God replied, and said, "If they read the order of sacrifices as they will be set down in the Scriptures, I will account it unto them as though they had offered the sacrifices, and I will forgive all their sins."<sup>111</sup> And God continued and revealed to Abraham the course of Israel's history and the history of the whole world: The heifer of three years indicates the dominion of Babylon, the she-goat of three years stands for the empire of the Greeks, the ram of three years for the Medo-Persian power, the rule of Ishmael is represented by the ram, and Israel is the innocent dove.

Abraham took him these animals and divided them in the midst. Had he not done so, Israel would not have been able to resist the power of the four kingdoms. But the birds he divided not, to indicate that Israel will remain whole. And the birds of prey came down upon the carcasses, and Abraham drove them away. Thus was announced the advent of the Messiah, who will cut the heathen in pieces, but Abraham bade Messiah wait until the time appointed unto him.<sup>112</sup> And as the Messianic time was made known unto Abraham, so also the time of the resurrection of the dead. When he laid the halves of the pieces over against each other, the animals became alive again, as the bird flew over them.<sup>113</sup>

While he was preparing these sacrifices, a vision of great import was granted to Abraham. The sun sank, and a deep sleep fell upon him, and he beheld a smoking furnace, Gehenna, the furnace that God prepares for the sinner; and he beheld a flaming torch, the revelation on Sinai,



where all the people saw flaming torches; and he beheld the sacrifices to be brought by Israel; and an horror of great darkness fell upon him, the dominion of the four kingdoms. And God spake to him: "Abraham, as long as thy children fulfil the two duties of studying the Torah and performing the service in the Temple, the two visitations, Gehenna and alien rule, will be spared them. But if they neglect the two duties, they will have to suffer the two chastisements; only thou mayest choose whether they shall be punished by means of Gehenna or by means of the dominion of the stranger." All the day long Abraham wavered, until God called unto him: "How long wilt thou halt between two opinions? Decide for one of the two, and let it be for the dominion of the stranger!" Then God made known to him the four hundred years' bondage of Israel in Egypt, reckoning from the birth of Isaac, for unto Abraham himself was the promise given that he should go to his fathers in peace, and feel naught of the arrogance of the stranger oppressor. At the same time, it was made known to Abraham that his father Terah would have a share in the world to come, for he had done penance for his sinful deeds. Furthermore it was revealed to him that his son Ishmael would turn into the path of righteousness while yet his father was alive, and his grandson Esau would not begin his impious way of life until he himself had passed away. And as he received the promise of their deliverance together with the announcement of the slavery of his seed, in a land not theirs, so it was made known to him that God would judge the four kingdoms and destroy them.<sup>114</sup>

107. BR 44. 4–5; comp. Yelammedenu in supplement to Yalkut (=BHM, VI, 79) and note 102. According to another view given in BR, God revealed Himself to Abraham (the first revelation ever granted to a human being;

comp. MHG I, 324) long after the war against the kings. The Midrashim (BR, *loc. cit.*; Yelammedenu, *loc. cit.*; MHG, I, 225, 226) find in the words "thy reward is very great" (Gen. 15. 1) a hint of the reward which Abraham and his descendants are to receive in the world to come.

108. BR 44. 8–12; Tehillim 2, 10, and 21, 179; 2 ARN 43, 122; Aggadat Shir 1. 5. The statement that God commanded Abraham not to rely on astrology is very frequently met with in rabbinic literature. Comp. Shabbat 150a; Nedarim 32a; Tan. Shofetim 11; PR 43, 179a; ShR 38. 6; BaR 2. 12; Aggadat Bereshit 28, 58, and 37, 73; see further Yoma 88b and Baba Batra 16a, as well as Philo, *Abraham*, 15 (in paraphrasing Gen. 15. 5 the expression *מאיצטגנינות* found in the rabbinic sources mentioned above is employed here almost literally), *De Nobilitate*, 5 and *Quis rer. divin. haeres sit*, 20; Jub. 12. 16. PR 11, 45, and BaR 2. 14 explain Gen. 15. 5 in a different manner from that of the sources referred to, and in contrast to BR it is stated in DR 2. 7 that Abraham prayed to God to give him children.

109. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 15. 6; Mekilta Beshallah 6, 33b; Tan. Beshallah 10; Tan. B. II, 59; Shir 4. 8. Comp. next note. Against the Christian doctrine of justification by faith alone (Romans 4. 3) Zohar III, 148a, and Nahmanides on Gen. 15. 6 explain this verse as follows: And Abraham considered it as an act of grace.

110. BR 44. 14. Owing to the uncertainty of the meaning of the word *משלש*, Gen. 15. 9 (comp. *R.E.J.*, 31, 176, and *Monatsschrift*, 41, 109) the Targumim and Midrashim differ as to the number of sacrifices brought on this occasion by Abraham; comp. Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi, *ad loc.*, as well as BR, *loc. cit.*; WR 3. 3; PRE 28. Opinions also differ with regard to the question whether or not lack of trust in God is implied in Abraham's words: "Whereby shall I know that I shall inherit it?" (Gen. 15. 8). The Church Fathers agree with the view favorable to Abraham given in our text in accordance with BR. Comp. Origen and Theodoretus, *ad loc.*, as well as Ephraim I, 64B–C, and Augustine, *Civitas Dei*, 16. 24. The Church Fathers are perhaps directly dependent on Philo, *Quis rer. divin. haeres sit*, 20, who remarks that he—Abraham—trusted God, but wished to know in what manner the promise made to him would be fulfilled. A somewhat different view is expressed by Philo in his *Questions*, Gen. 2. 2. The view prevalent among the Rabbis is that Abraham is greatly to be blamed for his lack of trust in God. They even go further and assert that Israel's servitude in Egypt is the punishment for Abraham's sinful words; comp. Nedarim 32a; Tan. B. III, 79; Tan. Kedoshim 13; ER 13, 65, and EZ 2, 174; ShR 5. 22 and 30. 16; WR 11. 5; PRE 48; PR 47, 190a; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 819, on Psalm 78. Jerome, Is. 43. 27, accepts this view which, as may be seen from Yelammedenu, was known to the Tannaim.



Shu'aib, Wa-Yesheb, 21, quotes an unknown Midrash to the effect that Abraham committed three sins: He emigrated from Palestine at the time of the famine (comp. note 66); he exposed Sarah to a great moral danger by stating that she was his sister; he further showed lack of trust in God by saying: "Whereby shall I know, etc." Compare also with pp. 451 and 521, as well as text on pp. 554, 598, and 837.

111. Megillah 31b; Ta'anit 27b; WR 7. 3; PK 6, 60b; somewhat different in Berakot 17a, where fasts take the place of sacrifices; Tan. Zaw 14 (additions); Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 382 on Ezekiel 43 (almost identical with Tan. *loc. cit.*) and 321 on Jeremiah 33. Al-Barceloni, 159, quotes the following passage from the Midrash: God said to Abraham: Make thy children occupy themselves with the study of the Torah which will give them light in this world and in the world to come. Comp. also Zohar I, 100a. All these passages are a defence of Judaism against the attacks of the Christian polemical writers who maintain that after the destruction of the temple, Israel is no longer in possession of the means of atonement. The judge, who, in a controversy with a Jewish scholar, insisted that after the destruction of the temple Israel's sins can no longer be forgiven (second Yelammedenu passage) was undoubtedly a Christian. Comp. also Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 97, to whose polemics the remark in BaR 14. 4 (prayers take the place of sacrifice) seems to be a direct answer. See further Menahot 110a and PK 15, according to the reading of Makiri Malachi 1. II. Rabban Johanan b. Zaccai, without any polemical or apologetical bias, remarks: We have something that secures atonement as much as the temple service, and this is loving-kindness (ARN 4, 21; *Ma'as. G.*, 133).

112. BR 44. 14–22; PRE 28 (on the text comp. Tosafot Gen. 15. 10 *seq.*); Targum Yerushalmi Gen., *loc. cit.* In John 8. 56 and Acts 7. 7 it is presupposed that the course of Israel's history was revealed to Abraham on this occasion. Comp. also note 114.

113. MHG I, 240, very likely from a version of PRE different from ours. Sa'adya Gaon was acquainted with a source similar to or identical with the one quoted in MHG; comp. Ginzberg's remarks in Geiger's *Kebuzat Maamarim* (edited by Poznanski), 414, and Davidson, *Saadia's Polemic against Hiwi*, 64. The reviving of animals is also mentioned in another Abraham legend (Testament of Abraham A 6) and in Christian legends, comp. *e. g.* *Acts of Pilate* 2 (MS. C.). In midrashic fashion this legend in MHG is derived from ויִשָּׁב (Gen. 15. 11), which is read as if its object were פְּגָרִים, hence "and he made them fly." Another explanation of this word is "and he made them repent"; comp. BR, *loc. cit.*, 15, and Ephraim I, 64 B–C.

114. BR 44. 21 and 49. 2; Mekilta ba-Hodesh 9, 71b; ShR 51. 7; Tan. B. II, 130; Tan. Pekude 5 and 8; PK 5, 42b; PR 15, 67a; Tehillim 38, 254, and 52, 286; Targumim

Yerushalmi Gen. 15. 17; Midrash Tannaim 84; Zohar III, 299; *Hadar*, 6b; Apocalypse of Baruch 4. 4. God showed Abraham the paradise at night between the pieces of the slain animals. 4 Ezra 3. 15 says: Thou revealedst to him—Abraham—the end of the times secretly by night; comp. note 112. On the explanation of the "smoking furnace" as Gehenna comp. Revelation 9. 2; 4 Ezra 7. 3; 12 Testaments, Joseph 2. 2 (but, perhaps, a false rendering of Hebrew אִשָּׁה בְּעֵרַת "a foolish woman" as אִשָּׁה בְּעֵרַת "burning fire"); Kiddushin 40a and 81b. Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 3. 15, sees in the smoking furnace the heavenly fire which came down to consume the sacrifices. In agreement with the Rabbis Theodoretus, *ad loc.*, considers the flaming torch an allusion to the revelation on Sinai. The most detailed description of the vision at the "covenant between the pieces" is that of the Apocalypse of Abraham, the main part of which (11–32) is a Midrash on Gen. 15. 9–14, with pronounced gnostic features. The archangel Jaol (=יְהוֹאֵל, the chief of the Seraphim in Masseket Azilut 21) leads Abraham to the highest heaven and shows him the glory of God reigning there. Clad in the garment of glory (compare footnote 93 on p. 77), Abraham becomes like "one of the glorified beings and takes part in the song of praise chanted by them in heaven to God." After Abraham has been shown the heavens and all that they contain, the angel Jaol points out to him, from the heights of the heavens, the stars and the entire earth (similarly BR 44. 12 and parallel passages given by Theodor) with all that it contains, the abyss with its tortures (that is Gehenna), paradise with the joys of the pious, as well as the leviathan and its abode. At the same time the angel reveals to Abraham the course of human history in the present aeon (comp. BR 44. 22, where two views are given; according to one, God showed him only this world, while according to the other also the world to come was shown to him; comp. Ginzberg, *Journal of Bibl. Soc.*, 1922 p. 133) from the fall of Adam to the advent of the Messiah. Peculiar to this book is the interpretation that the smoking furnace refers to Azazel=Satan, who attempted to lead Abraham astray. From chapter 12 we infer that this interpretation is partly based on the explanation that עֵיט (Gen. 15. 11) means "counsellor" (=seducer), and accordingly, it may be safely assumed that this pseudograph is of Semitic—Hebrew or Aramaic—origin. Comp. Ginzberg in *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. *Abraham*, *Apocalypse of*. On the 400 years of the Egyptian servitude, compare with p. 510, and note 124 referring to it. On Terah comp. BR 39. 7 (he died as a sinner), 30. 4, and 38. 12; Tan. B. II, 9; Tan. Shemot 18; ShR 2. 6; Ruth R. (end); Zohar I, 77b and 78b; Midrash Aggada 2. 6; Bahya on Gen. 11. 32; see further notes 45, 47, and 54, as well as text on p. 507; see text on pp. 1043 and 1059. On Ishmael, comp. sources referred to in connection with Terah, and further 2 ARN 27, 54; Baba Batra 16b; ER 13, 65 (Friedmann's explanation of this



passage is faulty, as may be seen from EZ 2, 174, which passage makes it quite clear as to what is meant by the honor shown by Ishmael to his father); comp. also Hashkem, 3a–4a, where, in contrast to the views of the older sources (comp. Schechter on ARN, *ad loc.*), it is maintained that pious children sometimes save their wicked parents from Gehenna.

## THE BIRTH OF ISHMAEL

**T**he covenant of the pieces, whereby the fortunes of his descendants were revealed to Abraham, was made at a time when he was still childless.<sup>115</sup> As long as Abraham and Sarah dwelt outside of the Holy Land, they looked upon their childlessness as a punishment for not abiding within it. But when a ten years' sojourn in Palestine found her barren as before, Sarah perceived that the fault lay with her.<sup>116</sup> Without a trace of jealousy she was ready to give her slave Hagar to Abraham as wife,<sup>117</sup> first making her a freed woman.<sup>118</sup> For Hagar was Sarah's property, not her husband's. She had received her from Pharaoh, the father of Hagar. Taught and bred by Sarah, she walked in the same path of righteousness as her mistress,<sup>119</sup> and thus was a suitable companion for Abraham, and, instructed by the holy spirit, he acceded to Sarah's proposal.

No sooner had Hagar's union with Abraham been consummated, and she felt that she was with child, than she began to treat her former mistress contemptuously, though Sarah was particularly tender toward her in the state in which she was. When noble matrons came to see Sarah, she was in the habit of urging them to pay a visit to "poor Hagar", too. The dames would comply with her suggestion, but Hagar would use the opportunity to disparage Sarah. "My lady Sarah," she would say, "is not inwardly what she appears to be outwardly. She makes the impression of a righteous, pious woman, but she is not, for if she were, how could her childlessness be explained

after so many years of marriage, while I became pregnant at once?"

Sarah scorned to bicker with her slave, yet the rage she felt found vent in these words to Abraham:<sup>120</sup> "It is thou who art doing me wrong. Thou hearest the words of Hagar, and thou sayest naught to oppose them, and I hoped that thou wouldst take my part. For thy sake did I leave my native land and the house of my father, and I followed thee into a strange land with trust in God. In Egypt I pretended to be thy sister, that no harm might befall thee. When I saw that I should bear no children, I took the Egyptian woman, my slave Hagar, and gave her unto thee for wife, contenting myself with the thought that I would rear the children she would bear. Now she treats me disdainfully in thy presence. O that God might look upon the injustice which hath been done unto me, to judge between thee and me, and have mercy upon us, restore peace to our home, and grant us offspring, that we have no need of children from Hagar, the Egyptian bondwoman of the generation of the heathen that cast thee in the fiery furnace!"<sup>121</sup>

Abraham, modest and unassuming as he was, was ready to do justice to Sarah, and he conferred full power upon her to dispose of Hagar according to her pleasure. He added but one caution, "Having once made her a mistress, we cannot again reduce her to the state of a bondwoman." Unmindful of this warning, Sarah exacted the services of a slave from Hagar. Not alone this, she tormented her, and finally she cast an evil eye upon her, so that the unborn child dropped from her, and she ran away. On her flight she was met by several angels, and they bade her return, at the same time making known to her that she would bear a son who should be called Ishmael—one of the six men who have been given a name by God before their birth, the others being Isaac, Moses, Solomon, Josiah, and the Messiah.<sup>122</sup>



Thirteen years after the birth of Ishmael the command was issued to Abraham that he put the sign of the covenant upon his body and upon the bodies of the male members of his household. Abraham was reluctant at first to do the bidding of God, for he feared that the circumcision of his flesh would raise a barrier between himself and the rest of mankind. But God said unto him, "Let it suffice thee that I am thy God and thy Lord, as it sufficeth the world that I am its God and its Lord."<sup>123</sup>

Abraham then consulted with his three true friends, Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre, regarding the command of the circumcision. The first one spoke, and said, "Thou art nigh unto a hundred years old, and thou considerest indicting such pain upon thyself?" The advice of the second was also against it. "What," said Eshcol, "thou chooseth to mark thyself so that thy enemies may recognize thee without fail?" Mamre, the third, was the only one to advise obedience to the command of God. "God succored thee from the fiery furnace," he said, "He helped thee in the combat with the kings, He provided for thee during the famine, and thou dost hesitate to execute His behest concerning the circumcision?"<sup>124</sup> Accordingly, Abraham did as God had commanded, in bright daylight, bidding defiance to all, that none might say, "Had we seen him attempt it, we should have prevented him."<sup>125</sup>

The circumcision was performed on the tenth day of Tishri, the Day of Atonement, and upon the spot on which the altar was later to be erected in the Temple, for the act of Abraham remains a never-ceasing atonement for Israel.<sup>126</sup>

115. According to Seder 'Olam and BR 39. 7 (see the parallel passages given by Ratner and Theodor), God made this covenant with Abraham when the latter was seventy years old. He then returned from Palestine to Haran, where he remained for five years until he settled permanently in the Holy Land. The war with the kings took place

in the year when he returned to Palestine, and ten years later he married Hagar. The Apocalypse of Abraham is also of the opinion that the "covenant between the pieces" took place at the very beginning of Abraham's career, when he separated himself from his kinsfolk. Nedarim 32a, BR 44. 5, and in many other sources (comp. those referred to in note 102) give a different view, according to which this covenant took place after the war against the kings; this latter opinion, based on the order in which the events are narrated in the Bible, is also shared by Jub. 13. 17–14. 1. The covenant took place on the first night of Passover; see PRE 28; *Panim Aberim*, 74; PR, 196b (Friedmann's explanation, *ad loc.*, is untenable, as the parallel passages, just quoted, show); but according to Jub. 14. 1, it was on the new moon of the third month, *i. e.* Siwan, the month in which the revelation at Sinai occurred. Comp. note 76.

116. Yebamot, Tosefta 8. 4; Yerushalmi 6, 7c, and Babli 64a; BR 45. 2–3. The Haggadah assigns a number of causes for "the sterility of the mothers." The most favored explanation is that God in His love tried the pious fathers, in order that they, in their suffering, should pray to Him for help. Comp. BR 45. 4; Shir 2. 14; Tan. Toledot 9 and Wa-Yeze 7; Yebamot 64a; ER 18, 99. In later mysticism the doctrine that God "desires" the prayers of the pious plays an important part; this conception, however, is very old; comp. Hullin 60b. According to ER, *loc. cit.*, Abraham and Sarah were married for 75 years before the birth of Isaac; comp. also the preceding note.

117. MHG I, 241, 242. Here also we have the statement that a childless woman is able to tell whether she or her husband is the cause of sterility, and accordingly Sarah knew that Abraham would beget children with another wife. In BR 45. 2 the sentence 'קבוע וכו' was entirely misunderstood and therefore corrupted in the editions and MSS.; it is to be translated: I know that it is my fault that we have no issue and not as they say: She—the childless woman—needs only a cup of *meon* (meum athamaticum) to be cured. קבוע or perhaps קובע is the masculine of biblical קבעת; comp. the phrase כוס של עקרים very often found in rabbinic literature. That *meon* is a cure for barrenness does not seem to be known to any other source. According to BR 25. 1, Sarah's barrenness was due to pathological defects—she had no womb.

118. BR 45. 6; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 16. 3.

119. BR 45. 2; Yashar Lek, 34a; Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 16. 3. On Hagar, the daughter of Pharaoh, comp. above, note 74. The statement of this Targum Yerushalmi that Nimrod was the father of this Pharaoh is not found elsewhere, and, on account of its strangeness, 2 Targum Yerushalmi saw it advisable to modify it. We ought, perhaps, to read ולבר or ולעבד, *i. e.*, Eliezer who is said to have been a slave (son?) of Nimrod; comp. above, note 41. On the piety of Hagar see also BR 61. 4 and Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 42.



120. BR 45. 2–4; Yashar Lek, 34a. Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 43, quotes the view of “thorough exegetes”, according to which Abraham abstained from having any conjugal relations with Hagar as soon as she became pregnant; this was due to his natural abstemiousness and to his respect for Sarah. The statement מביאה הראשונה עיברה that Hagar became pregnant on the bridal night (BR 45. 4), very likely implies this view. Compare also with p. 243, where it is stated that Abraham remarried Hagar after Sarah’s death. Comp. MHG. I, 244.

121. Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 16. 5 (comp. note 119); a different view is given in Yashar Lek, 34, according to which Sarah blamed Abraham for not having specified, when praying to God for children, that the children should be the offspring of his marriage with her. Had the prayer been formulated in this manner, God would have granted it.

122. BR 45. 5–8. On the expression ובריות דליים employed here, comp. ‘Erubin 27b and parallel passages on margin, as well as Kiddushin 22b. According to these sources, only slaves attend on a person in the bath-room, and Sarah, by making Hagar attend on her while bathing, wanted to show her that she was still a bondwoman; comp. also Mishle 26. 99. Opinions differ as to the number of angels that appeared to Hagar; comp. BR 45. 7 (five or four) and ‘Arakin 17b (only three). On the pious who received their names from God, comp. Mekilta Bo 16, 19; BR, *loc. cit.*; PRE 32; Pirke Rabbenu ha-Kadosh, ed. Grünhut 35; Tan. B. I, 21, 22; Yerushalmi Berakot, I, 4a. The name of Isaac was never changed, because it had been given by God, whereas the names of his father and son (Jacob-Israel) were changed. With regard to Abraham, it is maintained that it is unlawful to call him by his original name, Abram; comp. Berakot, *loc. cit.*, and Babli 12b; another view is offered by Philo, *De Mut. Nomin.*, 13, 14. The Haggadah has a good deal to tell us about the meaning of the names Abram and Abraham and about the reason for changing the former into the latter. Abram means “The father of Aram”, whereas Abraham denotes “The father of nations”, *i. e.*, Ab (אב)=father, and Ham (הם=המון, while ר is disregarded)=“nations”. Comp. Berakot, Tosefta 1. 13, and Babli 13a; Shabbat 105a (each letter of the name Abram is explained); BR 46. 7. Many explanations of the change of the names Abram and Sarai are given by Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 18; *De Mut. Nom.*, 8, 9; *Cherubim*, 2; *De Gigant.* 14, 15; *Quaestiones*, Gen., *ad loc.* The change of names brought about a change in the fortunes of Abraham and Sarah: it had been decreed that Abram should have no offspring, but this did not apply to Abraham. Comp. Rosh ha-Shanah 16b (this is explained rationalistically by Maimonides, *Yad, Teshubah*, 2. 4); BR 4. 10 and the numerous parallel passages given by Theodor. A different view is found in Mekilta Yitro I, 57a, and Mekilta RS, 85, where it is stated that the lengthening of a name is a mark of honor, while its shortening is a sign

of degradation. Abraham, “the father of nations”, is really the father of proselytes; comp. Matthew 3. 9; Yerushalmi Bikkurim I, 64a; see also Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, note 3 on page 124. The numerical value of the word Abraham (אברהם=248) corresponds to the number of the members of the human body; by being circumcised he became master of his entire body, and from that time on he was called Abraham (Nedarim 32b).

123. BR 46. 3; Tan. B. I, 80; Tan. Lek 19.

124. BR 41 [42]. 8; Tan. Wa-Yera 3; Aggadat Bereshit 19. 39; *Huppah Eliyyahu*, 15; comp. Ginzberg in *Hazonofeh*, IV, 31. Mamre was rewarded for giving Abraham pious advice, as it was in Mamre’s field that God appeared to Abraham (Gen. 18. 1). The legend sees no difficulty in the fact that Abraham consulted men concerning the fulfilling of a command given by God; but to later authorities it was incomprehensible that Abraham could for a moment hesitate in complying with a divine order, and they therefore attempted to invest this legend with a meaning which is entirely foreign to it; comp. *Hadar* and *Da’at* on Gen. 18. 1; and see also Zohar I, 98b.

125. BR 22. 8 and 48. 9; PRE 28; see also Sifre D., 339.

126. PRE 28. In the older sources the thirteenth or fifteenth of Nisan is the day on which Abraham’s circumcision took place; comp. BR 48. 12 and the parallel passages given by Theodor, as well as Beer, *Leben Abrahams*, note 361. According to PRE, *loc. cit.* (comp. Luria, *ad loc.*), the operation was performed by Shem; but another view has it that Abraham circumcised himself with the assistance of God; comp. Tan. B. I, 80; Aggadat Bereshit 16, 35; and, as a later addition, BR 49. 2. Al-Barceloni, 58, quotes the last view from Yerushalmi (Palestinian Midrash?). According to Tan. Lek 17, the foreskin was removed by the bite of a scorpion. When giving Abraham the command of circumcision, God only hinted at the part of the body on which it should be performed; Abraham, however, on the basis of logical reasoning, drew the correct conclusion. Comp. BR 46. 4; Tan. B. 81; Tan. Lek 18, and see also Tosefta Shabbat 15. 9 and Babli 108a; WR 25. 6. Hadasi’s quotation (Eshkol, No. 82, 36a), from a Midrash, concerning that point is not found in the extant midrashic literature, and is perhaps a Karaitic fabrication. Opinions differ as to whether Abraham, along with the command of circumcision, received also that of פריעה (the uncovering of the corona) or not. Comp. BR 46. 12 and parallel sources given by Theodor; but in Yebamot 71b it is stated that פריעה was first introduced by Joshua.



## THE VISIT OF THE ANGELS

On the third day after his circumcision, when Abraham was suffering dire pain,<sup>127</sup> God spoke to the angels, saying, "Go to, let us pay a visit to the sick." The angels refused, and said: "What is man, that Thou art mindful of him? And the son of man, that Thou visitest him? And Thou desirest to betake Thyself to a place of uncleanness, a place of blood and filth?" But God replied unto them, "Thus do ye speak. As ye live, the savor of this blood is sweeter to me than myrrh and incense, and if you do not desire to visit Abraham, I will go alone."<sup>128</sup>

The day whereon God visited him was exceedingly hot, for He had bored a hole in hell, so that its heat might reach as far as the earth, and no wayfarer venture abroad on the highways, and Abraham be left undisturbed in his pain.<sup>129</sup> But the absence of strangers caused Abraham great vexation, and he sent his servant Eliezer forth to keep a lookout for travellers. When the servant returned from his fruitless search, Abraham himself, in spite of his illness and the scorching heat, prepared to go forth on the highway and see whether he would not succeed where failure had attended Eliezer, whom he did not wholly trust at any rate, bearing in mind the well-known saying, "No truth among slaves."<sup>130</sup> At this moment God appeared to him, surrounded by the angels. Quickly Abraham attempted to rise from his seat, but God checked every demonstration of respect, and when Abraham protested that it was unbecoming to sit in the presence of the Lord, God said, "As thou livest, thy descendants at the age of four and five will sit in days to come in the schools and in the synagogues while I reside therein."<sup>131</sup>

Meantime Abraham beheld three men. They were the angels Michael, Gabriel, and Raphael. They had assumed the form of human beings to fulfil his wish for guests toward whom to exercise

hospitality. Each of them had been charged by God with a special mission, besides, to be executed on earth. Raphael was to heal the wound of Abraham, Michael was to bring Sarah the glad tidings that she would bear a son, and Gabriel was to deal destruction to Sodom and Gomorrah. Arrived at the tent of Abraham, the three angels noticed that he was occupied in nursing himself, and they withdrew.<sup>132</sup> Abraham, however, hastened after them through another door of the tent, which had wide open entrances on all sides.<sup>133</sup> He considered the duty of hospitality more important than the duty of receiving the Shekinah. Turning to God, he said, "O Lord, may it please Thee not to leave Thy servant while he provides for the entertainment of his guests."<sup>134</sup> Then he addressed himself to the stranger walking in the middle between the other two, whom by this token he considered the most distinguished,—it was the archangel Michael—and he bade him and his companions turn aside into his tent. The manner of his guests, who treated one another politely, made a good impression upon Abraham. He was assured that they were men of worth whom he was entertaining.<sup>135</sup> But as they appeared outwardly like Arabs, and the people worshipped the dust of their feet, he bade them first wash their feet, that they might not defile his tent.<sup>136</sup>

He did not depend upon his own judgment in reading the character of his guests. By his tent a tree was planted, which spread its branches out over all who believed in God, and afforded them shade. But if idolaters went under the tree, the branches turned upward, and cast no shade upon the ground. Whenever Abraham saw this sign, he would at once set about the task of converting the worshippers of the false gods. And as the tree made a distinction between the pious and the impious, so also between the clean and the unclean. Its shade was denied them as long as they refrained from taking the prescribed ritual bath in the spring that flowed out from its roots, the



waters of which rose at once for those whose uncleanness was of a venial character and could be removed forthwith, while others had to wait seven days for the water to come up. Accordingly, Abraham bade the three men lean against the trunk of the tree. Thus he would soon learn their worth or their unworthiness.<sup>137</sup>

Being of the truly pious, “who promise little, but perform much,”<sup>138</sup> Abraham said only: “I will fetch a morsel of bread, and comfort ye your heart, seeing that ye chanced to pass my tent at dinner time. Then, after ye have given thanks to God, ye may pass on.”<sup>139</sup> But when the meal was served to the guests, it was a royal banquet, exceeding Solomon’s at the time of his most splendid magnificence. Abraham himself ran unto the herd, to fetch cattle for meat. He slaughtered three calves, that he might be able to set a “tongue with mustard” before each of his guests.<sup>140</sup> In order to accustom Ishmael to God-pleasing deeds, he had him dress the calves,<sup>141</sup> and he bade Sarah bake the bread. But as he knew that women are apt to treat guests niggardly, he was explicit in his request to her. He said, “Make ready quickly three measures of meal, yea, fine meal.” As it happened, the bread was not brought to the table, because it had accidentally become unclean, and our father Abraham was accustomed to eat his daily bread only in a clean state.<sup>142</sup> Abraham himself served his guests, and it appeared to him that the three men ate. But this was an illusion. In reality the angels did not eat,<sup>143</sup> only Abraham, his three friends, Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre, and his son Ishmael partook of the banquet, and the portions set before the angels were devoured by a heavenly fire.<sup>144</sup>

Although the angels remained angels even in their human disguise, nevertheless the personality of Abraham was so exalted that in his presence the archangels felt insignificant.<sup>145</sup>

After the meal the angels asked after Sarah, though they knew that she was in retirement in

her tent, but it was proper for them to pay their respects to the lady of the house and send her the cup of wine over which the blessing had been said.<sup>146</sup> Michael, the greatest of the angels, thereupon announced the birth of Isaac. He drew a line upon the wall, saying, “When the sun crosses this point, Sarah will be with child, and when he crosses the next point, she will give birth to a child.” This communication, which was intended for Sarah and not for Abraham, to whom the promise had been revealed long before,<sup>147</sup> the angels made at the entrance to her tent, but Ishmael stood between the angel and Sarah, for it would not have been seemly to deliver the message in secret, with none other by. Yet, so radiant was the beauty of Sarah that a beam of it struck the angel, and made him look up. In the act of turning toward her, he heard her laugh within herself:<sup>148</sup> “Is it possible that these bowels can yet bring forth a child, these shrivelled breasts give suck? And though I should be able to bear, yet is not my lord Abraham old?”<sup>149</sup>

And the Lord said unto Abraham: “Am I too old to do wonders? And wherefore doth Sarah laugh, saying, Shall I of a surety bear a child, which am old?”<sup>150</sup> The reproach made by God was directed against Abraham as well as against Sarah, for he, too, had showed himself of little faith when he was told that a son would be born unto him. But God mentioned only Sarah’s incredulity, leaving Abraham to become conscious of his defect himself.<sup>151</sup>

Regardful of the peace of their family life, God had not repeated Sarah’s words accurately to Abraham. Abraham might have taken amiss what his wife had said about his advanced years, and so precious is the peace between husband and wife that even the Holy One, blessed be He, preserved it at the expense of truth.<sup>152</sup>

After Abraham had entertained his guests, he went with them to bring them on their way, for, important as the duty of hospitality is, the duty



of speeding the parting guest is even more important.<sup>153</sup> Their way lay in the direction of Sodom, whither two of the angels were going, the one to destroy it, and the second to save Lot, while the third, his errand to Abraham fulfilled, returned to heaven.<sup>154</sup>

127. PRE 29; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 18. 1; Tan. Wa-Yera 2; Baba Mezi'a 86b.

128. Tan. B. I, 85; Tan. Wa-Yera 2; Aggadat Bereshit 19; Tan. B. I, 84.

129. Baba Mezi'a 86b; BR 48. 8; Tan. B. I, 85; Tan. Wa-Yera 3; PRE 29.

130. Baba Mezi'a 86b; BR 48. 8, 9. Abraham feared lest travellers should no longer make use of his hospitality because he had separated himself from the rest of the world through the sign of the covenant.

131. Tan. Wa-Yera 2 and Ki-Tissa 15; Tan. B. I, 86 and 177, BR 48. 1; ShR 41. 4; Aggadat Bereshit 19. 39; Tehillim 18, 156. An allusion to this legend is to be found in the remark of Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah I, 57a, (top): God said: I was the first to observe the command of standing up before an old man (Lev. 19. 32); the old man is Abraham. Comp. also PR 15, 72a. In PRE 29 it is said that as long as Abraham was uncircumcised he was unable to stand erect in the presence of the divine Glory; compare footnote 43 on p. 960.

132. Baba Mezi'a 86b; BR 50. 2; Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 18. 2. Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 56, also refers to this Haggadah: comp. also Kallah 6, 13b. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 11. 2, speaks of the three angels who appeared to Abraham, but he does not give their names.

133. BR 48. 9; compare with p. 223.

134. Shabbat 127a. MHG I, 267, quotes the following passage from an unknown Midrash: He who receives his fellow-man kindly is regarded as though he had received the Shekinah, and accordingly in Mekilta Yitro I, 59a, we ought to read חבירו with MS. instead of חכמים of the editions. The Church Fathers quote an almost identical proverb from the Bible! Comp. Tertullian, *De Oratione*, 26.

135. BR 48. 9–10; DE. 4; Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 22 and 25.

136. Baba Mezi'a 86b, with the additional remark that because Abraham suspected the strangers in this manner, his descendants, the Ishmaelites (=the Arabs), as a punishment, practice this kind of idolatry. BR 48. 9: One of the angels appeared disguised as a Saracen, the second as a Nabatean, and the third as an Arab.

137. Zohar I, 102b, and thence by Sabba, Wa-Yera, 18b, without giving his source. The tamarisk of Abraham

(Gen. 21. 33) came to him from paradise; see *Ba'al ha-Turim*, Gen. 9. 20. The oak (?) of Abraham formed a subject for popular fancy as early as the time of Josephus (comp. *Bell.* IV, 9. 7, and *Antiqui.* 1. 10), the belief having been prevalent that it was created at the beginning of the world. Yerahmeel 35. 5 quotes from Josippon that the oak of Abraham in the plain of Mamre existed until the reign of Theodosius, when it withered. Yet even then whoever took of its wood did not experience illness until the day of his death. Comp. also Jepp, *Jerusalem und das heilige Land*, I, 611–622, as well as *Palestine Exploration Fund* (Quarterly Statement, 1899, 39, 40).

138. Baba Mezi'a 87a; Nedarim 21b; Tan. Wa-Yera 4; ARN 13, 57. In these Midrashim, as well as in BR 48. 10, it is shown in detail how God's kind acts towards Abraham's descendants corresponded exactly to Abraham's kind acts towards the three travellers. "Measure for measure" (compare footnote 44 on p. 147, and text on p. 523) is God's guiding rule for reward and punishment; comp. 2 ARN 23, 47; ER 12, 59, 60, and Tosefta Sotah 4 (end).

139. Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 18. 5; compare p. 223.

140. Baba Mezi'a 86b; BR 48. 12–14; ARN 13, 57; Tan. Wa-Yera 4. Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 4. 10, likewise dwells upon the lavish hospitality of Abraham, who, though possessing many slaves, prepared the meal himself for his guests. The old sources admit that, though Abraham observed the Torah before it had been revealed (comp. note 275), he nevertheless served meat and milk to the travellers, despite the later prohibition of this kind of food. Later, when the angels protested against the presentation of the Torah to Israel, requesting God to give it to them, (compare with pp. 613–615, and note 248 appertaining to them) they had to admit that as Abraham's guests they partook of the forbidden food. Comp. PR 25, 128a–128b; Tehillim 8. 75. Later authorities maintain, on the contrary, that Abraham, in strict conformity to the commandments of the Torah, served first milk and then meat; comp. *Da'at* and *Sekel Tob* on Gen. 18. 8. Ziyayoni, Exod. 24. 21, quotes from the Midrash a statement bearing upon this point which is not found in the extant midrashic literature; comp. also Yashar Wa-Yera, 35b.

141. BR 48. 13; ARN 13, 57.

142. Baba Mezi'a 87a; BR 48. 14; PRE 26; Tan. Wa-Yera 13. The defilement of the bread was caused by Sarah (comp. Gen. 18. 12) who busied herself with the kneading of the dough. Astruc (*Midreshe ha-Torah*, 25) quotes from an unknown Midrash the statement that instead of the fresh bread prepared by Sarah stale bread was served. On the uncomplimentary remark about the niggardliness of women, see also text on p. 1028.

143. Baba Mezi'a 86b; BR 48. 11 and 14 (paraphrased in MHG I, 269); Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 11. 2; Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 23; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 18. 8; Justin



Martyr, *Dialogue*, 57; Theodoretus, Gen. *loc. cit.*, and many other Church Fathers. Compare Ginzberg, *Haggadah bei den Kirchenv.* 108. The old view was that angels may sometimes partake of food, and that they subsist on manna; comp. R. Akiba's explanation (Yoma 75b) of Ps. 78. 85, which agrees with the Septuagint, where **לחם אבירים** is rendered by ἄρτον ἁγγέλων; Tobit 12. 19 (compare Müller, *Beiträge*, *ad loc.*); ER 12, 59 and the legends, p. 634 and p. 960, as well as Zohar I, 102a, 104a, and 144a. Sa'adya in his *Polemic against Hiwi* 70, is very severe on those who maintain that angels partake of food. The omission of the visit of the angels to Jub. is very likely due to the strong anthropomorphic coloring of the biblical narrative in Gen. 18. 1–10. In many rabbinic passages the statement occurs that the angels subsist on the glory of the Shekinah; compare PK 6, 57a (also with regard to Moses during his stay in heaven, 18, 173b); PR 16, 80a; Tan. Pinehas 12; BaR 21. 16. The last-mentioned source 10. 5 reads: The angels who visited Abraham partook of the food offered to them; but not the one who visited Manoah. Koran 11. 73 gives a clumsy representation of the view prevalent in Jewish sources concerning these three angels.

144. MHG I, 272; *Da'at* and Ziyoni Gen. 18. 8; compare also the extract from Testament of Abraham, given on p. 246, where it is likewise said that a fire devoured the food; this view is very likely shared by Sa'adya in the passages quoted in the preceding note. Jud. 13. 16 probably gave rise to this view; comp. preceding note towards the end.

145. BR 48. 19.

146. Baba Mezi'a 87a; with reference to the dots over **אלי** (Gen. 18. 9), comp. BR 48. 15, and the numerous parallel passages given by Theodor.

147. Baba Mezi'a 86b (comp. note 132); MHG I, 274; Tan. B. I, 107; Tan. Wa-Yera 13; PR 6, 24b, and the numerous parallel passages given by Friedmann, *ad loc.* The angel's promise to return (Gen. 18. 10) refers to his presence at the 'Akedah; see Pardes 22d.

148. BR 48. 16; Yerushalmi Targumim, Gen. 18. 10.

149. Tan. Shofetim 18; comp. also BR 48. 17.

150. BR 48. 17. These words were spoken by God Himself, and not by the angels who know not the thoughts of man; see *Sekel Tob* 27. Zohar I, 101b limits the knowledge of angels still more, and from this point of view explains the question of the angels about Sarah; comp. Gen. 198. 9. See also the sources referred to in note 146.

151. MHG I, 276; a different view is given by Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 4. 17: Abraham rejoiced over the good tidings (he thus renders **ויצחק**, Gen. 17. 17), whereas Sarah laughed at them because she did not believe them. As a punishment for her lack of faith in the message brought by the angels concerning the birth of Isaac, her death was caused by the message that Isaac was sacrificed by his father

(compare with p. 234); see *Hasidim*, 80. Women are disqualified from appearing in court as witnesses (Babe Kamma 1. 3; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 8. 15; Evangel of Nicodemus 7), because they are of a mendacious nature, for even one of the best of them, Sarah, attempted to tell an untruth; see Yelammedenu in supplement to Yalkut=BHM VI, 80 and MHG I, 276.

152. BR 48. 18; Sifre N. 42; Yerushalmi Peah 1, 16a; Yebamot 65b; WR 9. 9; BaR 11. 7; Tan. B. III, 6. 18; Tan. Zaw 7 and Shofetim 18; *Perek ha-Shalom*.

153. MHG I, 276; comp. Schechter, *ad loc.*

154. BR 50. 2; Baba Mezi'a 86b; Tan. B. I, 96. An angel attends to one task only, and accordingly three angels had to be sent: Michael to bring the glad tidings of Isaac's birth, Gabriel to destroy the sinful cities, and Raphael to save Lot. Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 28, is acquainted with a similar Haggadah; compare with p. 204, and the sources referred to in note 132.

## THE CITIES OF SIN

The inhabitants of Sodom and Gomorrah and the three other cities of the plain were sinful and godless. In their country there was an extensive vale, where they foregathered annually with their wives and their children and all belonging to them, to celebrate a feast lasting several days and consisting of the most revolting orgies. If a stranger merchant passed through their territory, he was besieged by them all, big and little alike, and robbed of whatever he possessed. Each one appropriated a bagatelle, until the traveller was stripped bare. If the victim ventured to remonstrate with one or another, he would show him that he had taken a mere trifle, not worth talking about. And the end was that they hounded him from the city.

Once upon a time it happened that a man journeying from Elam arrived in Sodom toward evening. No one could be found to grant him shelter for the night. Finally a sly fox named Hedor invited him cordially to follow him to his house. The Sodomite had been attracted by a rarely magnificent carpet, strapped to the stranger's



ass by means of a rope. He meant to secure it for himself. The friendly persuasions of Hedor induced the stranger to remain with him two days, though he had expected to stay only overnight. When the time came for him to continue on his journey, he asked his host for the carpet and the rope. Hedor said: "Thou hast dreamed a dream, and this is the interpretation of thy dream: the rope signifies that thou wilt have a long life, as long as a rope; the varicolored carpet indicates that thou wilt own an orchard wherein thou wilt plant all sorts of fruit trees." The stranger insisted that his carpet was a reality, not a dream fancy, and he continued to demand its return. Not only did Hedor deny having taken anything from his guest, he even insisted upon pay for having interpreted his dream to him. His usual price for such services, he said, was four silver pieces, but in view of the fact that he was his guest, he would, as a favor to him, content himself with three pieces of silver.

After much wrangling, they put their case before one of the judges of Sodom, Sherek by name, and he said to the plaintiff, "Hedor is known in this city as a trustworthy interpreter of dreams, and what he tells thee is true." The stranger declared himself not satisfied with the verdict, and continued to urge his side of the case. Then Sherek drove both the plaintiff and the defendant from the court room. Seeing this, the inhabitants gathered together and chased the stranger from the city, and lamenting the loss of his carpet, he had to pursue his way.

As Sodom had a judge worthy of itself, so also had the other cities—Sharkar in Gomorrah, Zabnak in Admah, and Manon in Zeboiim. Eliezer, the bondman of Abraham, made slight changes in the names of these judges, in accordance with the nature of what they did: the first he called Shaḳḳara, Liar; the second Shaḳrura, Arch-deceiver; the third Kazban, Falsifier; and the fourth, Mazle-Din, Perverter of Judgment. At the

suggestion of these judges, the cities set up beds on their commons. When a stranger arrived, three men seized him by his head, and three by his feet, and they forced him upon one of the beds. If he was too short to fit into it exactly, his six attendants pulled and wrenched his limbs until he filled it out; if he was too long for it, they tried to jam him in with all their combined strength, until the victim was on the verge of death. His outcries were met with the words, "Thus will be done to any man that comes into our land."

After a while travellers avoided these cities, but if some poor devil was betrayed occasionally into entering them, they would give him gold and silver, but never any bread, so that he was bound to die of starvation. Once he was dead, the residents of the city came and took back the marked gold and silver which they had given him, and they would quarrel about the distribution of his clothes, for they would bury him naked.

Once Eliezer, the bondman of Abraham, went to Sodom, at the bidding of Sarah, to inquire after the welfare of Lot. He happened to enter the city at the moment when the people were robbing a stranger of his garments. Eliezer espoused the cause of the poor wretch, and the Sodomites turned against him; one threw a stone at his forehead and caused considerable loss of blood. Instantly, the assailant, seeing the blood gush forth, demanded payment for having performed the operation of cupping. Eliezer refused to pay for the infliction of a wound upon him, and he was haled before the judge Shaḳḳara. The decision went against him, for the law of the land gave the assailant the right to demand payment. Eliezer quickly picked up a stone and threw it at the judge's forehead. When he saw that the blood was flowing profusely, he said to the judge, "Pay my debt to the man and give me the balance."

The cause of their cruelty was their exceeding great wealth. Their soil was gold, and in their miserliness and their greed for more and more



gold, they wanted to prevent strangers from enjoying aught of their riches. Accordingly, they flooded the highways with streams of water, so that the roads to their city were obliterated, and none could find the way thither. They were as heartless toward beasts as toward men. They begrudged the birds what they ate, and therefore extirpated them.<sup>155</sup> They behaved impiously toward one another, too, not shrinking back from murder to gain possession of more gold. If they observed that a man owned great riches, two of them would conspire against him. They would beguile him to the vicinity of ruins, and while the one kept him on the spot by pleasant converse, the other would undermine the wall near which he stood, until it suddenly crashed down upon him and killed him. Then the two plotters would divide his wealth between them.

Another method of enriching themselves with the property of others was in vogue among them. They were adroit thieves. When they made up their minds to commit theft, they would first ask their victim to take care of a sum of money for them, which they smeared with strongly scented oil before handing it over to him. The following night they would break into his house, and rob him of his secret treasures, led to the place of concealment by the smell of the oil.

Their laws were calculated to do injury to the poor. The richer a man, the more was he favored before the law. The owner of two oxen was obliged to render one day's shepherd service, but if he had but one ox, he had to give two days' service. A poor orphan, who was thus forced to tend the flocks a longer time than those who were blessed with large herds, killed all the cattle entrusted to him in order to take revenge upon his oppressors, and he insisted, when the skins were assigned, that the owner of two head of cattle should have but one skin, but the owner of one head should receive two skins, in correspondence to the method pursued in as-

signing the work. For the use of the ferry, a traveller had to pay four zuz, but if he waded through the water, he had to pay eight zuz.<sup>156</sup>

The cruelty of the Sodomites went still further. Lot had a daughter, Palṭit, so named because she had been born to him shortly after he escaped captivity through the help of Abraham. Palṭit lived in Sodom, where she had married. Once a beggar came to town, and the court issued a proclamation that none should give him anything to eat, in order that he might die of starvation. But Palṭit had pity upon the unfortunate wretch, and every day when she went to the well to draw water, she supplied him with a piece of bread, which she hid in her water pitcher. The inhabitants of the two sinful cities, Sodom and Gomorrah, could not understand why the beggar did not perish, and they suspected that some one was giving him food in secret. Three men concealed themselves near the beggar, and caught Palṭit in the act of giving him something to eat. She had to pay for her humanity with death; she was burnt upon a pyre.

The people of Admah were no better than those of Sodom. Once a stranger came to Admah, intending to stay overnight and continue his journey the next morning. The daughter of a rich man met the stranger, and gave him water to drink and bread to eat at his request. When the people of Admah heard of this infraction of the law of the land, they seized the girl and arraigned her before the judge, who condemned her to death. The people smeared her with honey from top to toe, and exposed her where bees would be attracted to her. The insects stung her to death, and the callous people paid no heed to her heartrending cries. Then it was that God resolved upon the destruction of these sinners.<sup>157</sup>

---

155. Yashar Wa-Yera, 35b–38a; the last paragraph, concerning the riches and misery of the inhabitants of the



sinful cities, reproduces the statement found in the older sources. Comp. Tosefta Sotah 3. 12; Sifre D., 43; Mekilta Shirah 2, 35b; Mekilta RS 58; Sanhedrin 109a; WR 4 and 5. 2; PK 27, 170, and 19, 187b; MHG I, 282; PRE 25. With the exception of the story about Hedor, which is probably of Arabic origin, Yashar hardly added anything new on this subject to the material contained in the older sources mentioned above (comp. especially Sanhedrin 109a, 109b). On the wickedness of the Sodomites, see also ER 15, 74 and 21, 158; ARN 26, 106; BR 49. 5; Tan. Wa-Yera 7; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29c (top); ShR 30. 19; Zohar I, 105b. The story about the bed of Procrustes in Yashar is directly taken from Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.* The register of the sins of the generation of the flood given on p. 139 is mainly the same as that of the Sodomites. Attention is to be called to the fact that the expression "in the way of the Sodomites", frequently found in rabbinic literature, is employed to describe a high degree of parsimony and niggardliness; compare *e. g.*, Pirke Abot 5. 10 and in a legal maxim, Ketubot 103a. Rather strange, therefore, is the statement (Tosefta Shabbat 7, end) that Lot settled among the Sodomites because they were cheerful and kind people. Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 27, remarks: The land of Sodom was full of innumerable crimes, particularly those which are the result of licentiousness and intemperance. On the licentiousness of the Amorites, see 12 Testaments, Judah 12. 2.

156. Sanhedrin 109a, 109b; the other stories about the Sodomites, found in that passage, are given here in accordance with Yashar, see preceding note.

157. Yashar Wa-Yera, 39a–39a, based on Sanhedrin 109a; BR 49. 6; PRE 25; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 18. 21; Midrash Aggada I, 42, 43; MHG I, 284. Bahya, Gen., *loc. cit.*, quotes from the "Midrash," the statement found in Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*

## ABRAHAM PLEADS FOR THE SINNERS

When God saw that there was no righteous man among the inhabitants of the sinful cities, and there would be none among their descendants, for the sake of whose merits the rest might be treated with lenient consideration, He resolved to annihilate them one and all.<sup>158</sup> But before judgment was executed, the Lord made known unto Abraham what He would do to Sodom, Gomorrah, and the other cities of the plain, for they formed a part of Canaan, the land promised unto Abraham, and therefore did God

say, "I will not destroy them without the consent of Abraham."<sup>159</sup>

Like a compassionate father, Abraham importuned the grace of God in behalf of the sinners. He spoke to God, and said: "Thou didst take an oath that no more should all flesh be cut off by the waters of a flood. Is it meet that Thou shouldst evade Thy oath and destroy cities by fire? Shall the Judge of all the earth not do right Himself? Verily, if Thou desirest to maintain the world, Thou must give up the strict line of justice. If Thou insistest upon the right alone, there can be no world." Whereupon God said to Abraham: "Thou takest delight in defending My creatures, and thou wouldst not call them guilty. Therefore I spoke with none but thee during the ten generations since Noah."<sup>160</sup> Abraham ventured to use still stronger words in order to secure the safety of the godless. "That be far from Thee," he said, "to slay the righteous with the wicked, that the dwellers on the earth say not, 'It is His trade to destroy the generations of men in a cruel manner; for He destroyed the generation of Enosh, then the generation of the flood, and then He sent the confusion of tongues. He sticks ever to His trade.'"

God made reply: "I will let all the generations I have destroyed pass before thee, that thou mayest see they have not suffered the extreme punishment they deserved. But if thou thinkest that I did not act justly, then instruct thou Me in what I must do, and I will endeavor to act in accordance with thy words." And Abraham had to admit that God had not diminished in aught the justice due to every creature in this world or the other world.<sup>161</sup> Nevertheless he continued to speak, and he said: "Wilt Thou consume the cities, if there be ten righteous men in each?" And God said, "No, if I find fifty righteous therein, I will not destroy the cities."<sup>162</sup>

Abraham: "I have taken upon me to speak unto the Lord, I who would have been turned



long since into dust of the ground by Amraphel and into ashes by Nimrod, had it not been for Thy grace.<sup>163</sup> Peradventure there shall lack five of the fifty righteous for Zoar, the smallest of the five cities. Wilt Thou destroy all the city for lack of five?"

God: "I will not destroy it, if I find there forty and five."

Abraham: "Peradventure there be ten pious in each of the four cities, then forgive Zoar in Thy grace, for its sins are not so great in number as the sins of the others."

God granted his petition, yet Abraham continued to plead, and he asked whether God would not be satisfied if there were but thirty righteous, ten in each of the three larger cities, and would pardon the two smaller ones, even though there were no righteous therein, whose merits would intercede for them. This, too, the Lord granted, and furthermore He promised not to destroy the cities if but twenty righteous were found therein; yes, God conceded that He would preserve the five cities for the sake of ten righteous therein.<sup>164</sup> More than this Abraham did not ask, for he knew that eight righteous ones, Noah and his wife, and his three sons and their wives, had not sufficed to avert the doom of the generation of the flood, and furthermore he hoped that Lot, his wife, and their four daughters, together with the husbands of their daughters, would make up the number ten. What he did not know was that even the righteous in these sin-laden cities, though better than the rest, were far from good.<sup>165</sup>

Abraham did not cease to pray for the deliverance of the sinners even after the Shekinah had removed from him. But his supplications and his intercessions were in vain.<sup>166</sup> For fifty-two years God had warned the godless; He had made mountains to quake and tremble. But they hearkened not unto the voice of admonition. They persisted in their sins, and their well-merited

punishment overtook them.<sup>167</sup> God forgives all sins, only not an immoral life. And as all these sinners led a life of debauchery, they were burnt with fire.<sup>168</sup>

---

158. MHG I, 28; compare with p. 486 and also with p. 1025.

159. Tan. B. I, 88–89 (here several reasons are given why God revealed to Abraham the impending destruction of the sinful cities); BR 49. 2; Tan. Wa-Yera 5; Aggadat Bereshit 21. 43. Shu'aib, Wa-Yera, 8c, quotes the following passage from an unknown Midrash: God did not punish Adam until a heavenly court consisting of seventy members had condemned him (compare with note 124 on p. 93), and similarly a heavenly court consisting of sixty myriads of angels, assisted by Abraham, was to decide the case of the Sodomites. The angels marvelled at the distinction of Abraham, whose single opinion was regarded as equal in weight to that of the myriads of angels combined. God thereupon assembled an equal number of Jewish souls (sixty myriads of Jews left Egypt, and accordingly this is the standard number representing Israel), and the Sodomites were tried by equal numbers of angels and human souls. Shu'aib's quotation is derived from a kabbalistic source. Zohar I, 104b–105a goes back to Tan. and BR, *loc. cit.* On the participation of the angels in the trial of the Sodomites, comp. note 61.

160. BR 39. 6 and 49. 9; PK 19, 139; here also Abraham is designated as "the merciful of the three fathers"; compare note 61 on p. 187 and note 22 on p. 472.

161. Tan. B. I, 91–93; Tan. Wa-Yera 8 and Ki-Tissa 17; BR 49. 9; Aggadat Bereshit 22. 4–46. These sources give several explanations of חלילה (Gen. 18. 5); compare also Sifre D., 311, and on p. 714.

162. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 18. 24; Rashi, Lekah, and Midrash Aggada, Gen. *loc. cit.* (very likely depending upon an unknown midrashic source); BR 49. 13, כְּדִי כְּנִיסָה, ps.–Rashi, *ad loc.*

163. BR 49. 11.

164. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 18. 31, and comp. Theodor on BR 49. 12. According to a widespread Haggadah, there is no generation in the history of the world without at least thirty pious men, like Abraham, otherwise the world would be destroyed. See BR 38. 2 and 49. 3; Yerushalmi 'Abodah Zarah 2, 40c; Hullin 92a; PK 10, 88a; Tan. Wa-Yera 13 and Mikkez 6; Tehillim 5, 52 and 92, 409, below (here only three pious men); Shemuel I, 44; BaR 10. 5 (thirty-one). Shir 1. 3 speaks of the one pious person produced by the Gentiles every year. Jellinek, Introduction to BHM V, 46, compares the last-mentioned passage



with Matthew 33. 15. Yoma 38b has the statement that the world exists on account of one godly person.

165. BR 49. 13 (כדי כניסה) is paraphrased in Targum Yerushalmi 18. 32 by (ונבעי רחמין). On Lot comp. below, note 171.

166. Tan. B. I, 92, 93; Tan. Wa-Yera 8; BR 49. 14. These passages dwell upon the fact that the Shekinah did not depart from Abraham until he had finished his prayer for the sinners; comp. also ARN 32 (second version 40, 111). In BR 49. 7 and many parallel passages (see Theodor) it is stated that originally the text of Gen. 18. 22 read: "And the Lord stood before Abraham", *i. e.*, God waited for Abraham until he had accompanied his guests.

167. BR 49. 6; Tan. Wa-Yera 10. Gen. 18. 21 is accordingly explained to mean: I shall give them an opportunity to repent, and I shall destroy them if they do not repent. This explanation of the biblical verse is also given by Aphraates, 293 (comp. further Clementine *Homilies*, 3. 39); whereas Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen., 15. 24, remarks that with these words Scripture teaches us never to judge without a thorough examination. Compare a similar remark of the Rabbis on pp. 51–52; see further Mekilta Shirah 5, 38b–39a, and Tan. Beshallah 15.

168. Tan. B. I, 93; Tan. Wa-Yera 9; vol. I, p. 153 and note 17 appertaining thereto. The punishment for certain kinds of immorality is by fire, according to Lev. 20. 14 and 21. 9. Compare with note 26 on p. 144.

## THE DESTRUCTION OF THE SINFUL CITIES

The angels left Abraham at noon time, and they reached Sodom at the approach of evening. As a rule, angels proclaim their errand with the swiftness of lightning, but these were angels of mercy, and they hesitated to execute their work of destruction, ever hoping that the evil would be turned aside from Sodom.<sup>169</sup> With nightfall, the fate of Sodom was sealed irrevocably, and the angels arrived there.<sup>170</sup>

Bred in the house of Abraham, Lot had learnt from him the beautiful custom of extending hospitality, and when he saw the angels before him in human form, thinking they were wayfarers, he bade them turn aside and tarry all night in his house. But as the entertainment of strangers was

forbidden in Sodom on penalty of death, he dared invite them only under cover of the darkness of night,<sup>171</sup> and even then he had to use every manner of precaution, bidding the angels to follow him by devious ways.

The angels, who had accepted Abraham's hospitality without delay, first refused to comply with Lot's request, for it is a rule of good breeding to show reluctance when an ordinary man invites one, but to accept the invitation of a great man at once. Lot, however, was insistent, and carried them into his house by main force.<sup>172</sup> At home he had to overcome the opposition of his wife, for she said, "If the inhabitants of Sodom hear of this, they will slay thee."

Lot divided his dwelling in two parts, one for himself and his guests, the other for his wife, so that, if aught happened, his wife would be spared.<sup>173</sup> Nevertheless it was she who betrayed him. She went to a neighbor and borrowed some salt, and to the question, whether she could not have supplied herself with salt during daylight hours, she replied, "We had enough salt, until some guests came to us; for them we needed more." In this way the presence of strangers was bruited abroad in the city.<sup>174</sup>

In the beginning the angels were inclined to hearken to the petition of Lot in behalf of the sinners, but when all the people of the city, big and little, crowded around the house of Lot with the purpose of committing a monstrous crime, the angels warded off his prayers, saying, "Hitherto thou couldst intercede for them, but now no longer." It was not the first time that the inhabitants of Sodom wanted to perpetrate a crime of this sort. They had made a law some time before that all strangers were to be treated in this horrible way. Lot, who was appointed chief judge on the very day of the angels' coming, tried to induce the people to desist from their purpose, saying to them, "My brethren, the generation of the deluge was extirpated in consequence of such



sins as you desire to commit, and you would revert to them?" But they replied: "Back! And though Abraham himself came hither, we should have no consideration for him. Is it possible that thou wouldst set aside a law which thy predecessors administered?"<sup>175</sup>

Even Lot's moral sense was no better than it should have been. It is the duty of a man to venture his life for the honor of his wife and his daughters, but Lot was ready to sacrifice the honor of his daughters, wherefor he was punished severely later on.<sup>176</sup>

The angels told Lot who they were, and what the mission that had brought them to Sodom, and they charged him to flee from the city with his wife and his four daughters, two of them married, and two betrothed.<sup>177</sup> Lot communicated their bidding to his sons-in-law, and they mocked at him, and said: "O thou fool! Violins, cymbals, and flutes resound in the city, and thou sayest Sodom will be destroyed!" Such scoffing but hastened the execution of the doom of Sodom.<sup>178</sup> The angel Michael laid hold upon the hand of Lot, and his wife and his daughters, while with his little finger the angel Gabriel touched the rock whereon the sinful cities were built, and overturned them. At the same time the rain that was streaming down upon the two cities was changed into brimstone.<sup>179</sup>

When the angels had brought forth Lot and his family and set them without the city, he bade them run for their lives, and not look behind, lest they behold the Shekinah, which had descended to work the destruction of the cities. The wife of Lot could not control herself. Her mother love made her look behind to see if her married daughters were following. She beheld the Shekinah, and she became a pillar of salt. This pillar exists unto this day. The cattle lick it all day long, and in the evening it seems to have disappeared, but when morning comes it stands there as large as before.<sup>180</sup>

The savior angel had urged Lot himself to take refuge with Abraham. But he refused, and said: "As long as I dwelt apart from Abraham, God compared my deeds with the deeds of my fellow-citizens, and among them I appeared as a righteous man. If I should return to Abraham, God will see that his good deeds outweigh mine by far."<sup>181</sup> The angel then granted his plea that Zoar be left undestroyed. This city had been founded a year later than the other four; it was only fifty-one years old, and therefore the measure of its sins was not so full as the measure of the sins of the neighboring cities.<sup>182</sup>

The destruction of the cities of the plain took place at dawn of the sixteenth day of Nisan, for the reason that there were moon and sun worshippers among the inhabitants. God said: "If I destroy them by day, the moon worshippers will say, Were the moon here, she would prove herself our savior; and if I destroy them by night, the sun worshippers will say, Were the sun here, he would prove himself our savior. I will therefore let their chastisement overtake them on the sixteenth day of Nisan at an hour at which the moon and the sun are both in the skies."<sup>183</sup>

The sinful inhabitants of the cities of the plain not only lost their life in this world, but also their share in the future world. As for the cities themselves, however, they will be restored in the Messianic time.<sup>184</sup>

The destruction of Sodom happened at the time at which Abraham was performing his morning devotions, and for his sake it was established as the proper hour for the morning prayer unto all times.<sup>185</sup> When he turned his eyes toward Sodom and beheld the rising smoke, he prayed for the deliverance of Lot, and God granted his petition—the fourth time that Lot became deeply indebted to Abraham. Abraham had taken him with him to Palestine, he had made him rich in flocks, herds, and tents, he had rescued him from captivity, and by his prayer he saved



him from the destruction of Sodom. The descendants of Lot, the Ammonites and the Moabites, instead of showing gratitude to the Israelites, the posterity of Abraham, committed four acts of hostility against them. They sought to compass the destruction of Israel by means of Balaam's curses, they waged open war against him at the time of Jephthah, and also at the time of Jehoshaphat, and finally they manifested their hatred against Israel at the destruction of the Temple. Hence it is that God appointed four prophets, Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, and Zephaniah, to proclaim punishment unto the descendants of Lot, and four times their sin is recorded in Holy Writ.<sup>186</sup>

Though Lot owed his deliverance to the petition of Abraham, yet it was at the same time his reward for not having betrayed Abraham in Egypt, when he pretended to be the brother of Sarah.<sup>187</sup> But a greater reward still awaits him. The Messiah will be a descendant of his, for the Moabitess Ruth is the great-grandmother of David, and the Ammonitess Naamah is the mother of Rehoboam, and the Messiah is of the line of these two kings.<sup>188</sup>

169. BR 50. 1; Tan. B. I, 98.

170. Tan. B. I, 93 and 98; BR 50. 3. Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 723 on Ps. 85 reads: As the wicked commit their evil deeds in the darkness of the night, even so they receive their punishment at night. This is attested by the punishment of the Sodomites, the Egyptians, Haman, and Belshazzar. Comp. a similar remark (later, however, it was interpreted in a different manner; see above, note 76) in BaR 20. 12; BR 50. 23; Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah I, 57a; PR 40, 167b; Tehillim 9. 87; MHG I, 287. In all these sources, with the exception of the first, attention is drawn to the fact that Israel is always judged by God during the day, whereas the Gentiles are tried at night. Philo, *Quaestiones*, 4. 30, agrees with the Rabbis in referring the night, or, as he accurately writes, the evening, spoken of in Gen. 19. 1, to the darkness of the judgment upon the sinners. Abrabanel, *Ma'yene ha-Yeshu'ah*, 7. 11, quotes Yelammedenu, *loc. cit.*, but very likely from Yalkut, and not independently.

171. PRE 25 (לחרון is an old scribal error for לארחץ); MHG I, 288; BR 50. 4. The views of the various sources concerning Lot differ widely from one another. He is generally described as lascivious, ungrateful—towards Abraham—and is accused, among other things, of having been a usurer. Comp. BR 40. 7, 51. 6–10, and 52. 2; Nazir 23a; PR 3, 9b–10a, where he is called “wicked Lot”; Tan. Wa-Yera 12; Aggadat Bereshit 25. 50; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 785 (Mattot); Zohar I, 84a and 79a. In the last passage Abraham's kindness toward Lot is ascribed to the fact that Abraham foresaw by his prophetic gift that Lot was destined to become the ancestor—through Ruth the Moabitish woman—of David. The first Alphabet of Ben Sira, 4d, on the other hand, speaks of Lot as a “perfect and pious man”. This must not be regarded, with Epstein (*Mi-Kadmoniyot Ha-Yehudim*, 12) as ridiculing the view of the Haggadah, but as an old tradition. Comp. II Peter 2, 7; *Vissio Pauli*, 27 and 49, as well as ps.—Tertullian, *Sodoma*, 41.

172. BR 50. 4; Baba Mezi'a 87a; Tan. Wa-Yera 11; Origen, Gen. 19. 3; Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 22, and *Quaestiones*, Gen. 4, 33, 34. Lekah Gen., *loc. cit.*, states that the angels came suddenly like lightning upon Lot, whereas Abraham discerned their arrival from afar.

173. Tan. B. I, 98; BR 50. 6; MHG I, 289.

174. BR 51. 5 and 50. 4 read: Because Lot's wife sinned in connection with salt, she became a pillar of salt.

175. BR 50. 3–7; comp. note 168. The names of the judges given in BR 50. 3 are different from those in Sanhedrin 109b and Yashar. Compare with p. 208, and also PRE, 25.

176. Tan. Wa-Yera 12. PRE 25, on the contrary, is of the opinion that Lot was willing to expose himself and his family to any danger rather than leave his guests to their fate. Here also it is stated that the presence of the guests in the house was betrayed by a lad who saw them enter.

177. BR 50. 9; PRE 25 (compare with Luria, *ad loc.*); Jerome, on Gen., 19. 14. Ephraim, I, 135, on the contrary, agrees with Josephus, *Antiqui*, I, 11 that Lot only had two betrothed daughters whose fiancés perished in Sodom; compare with p. 277.

178. BR 50. 9; MHG I, 290, 291.

179. Tan. B. I, 93 and 99; BR 50. 2 and 11, as well as 51. 4 (comp. Theodor on the two last-named passages); MHG I, 290; Eighteen thousand destroying angels, under the leadership of Kemuel (comp. *Ma'ayan Hokmah*, 58), came down and destroyed the sinful cities in a moment. In numerous midrashic passages it is stated that the punishment was executed by God and His court of justice; comp. BR 51. 2 and the dozen of parallel passages given by Theodor, *ad loc.* Here also the rule is formulated that wherever the expression מֵאֵת יְיָ “from the Lord” is employed in the Bible it refers to God and His court of justice. Sifre Z. 51, 52, on the other hand, explicitly states



that God Himself executed punishment upon the generation of the deluge, the builders of the tower of Babel, the inhabitants of the sinful cities, the Egyptians, the Amorites, and Sennacherib. Philo, partly in agreement with the first view, maintains that the punishment of the Sodomites did not come directly from God. On this point, compare with p. 2 and note 9 appertaining thereto. The punishment to be executed on the fourth kingdom (=Rome) will be identical with the one inflicted on Sodom; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 440, on Is. 34; Tan. B. II, 30.

180. PRE 25, which has been incorporated in Yashar Wa-Yera, 39 (in these passages Lot's wife is called עֲדִית Idit?). Luke 17. 32 (the following verse is found verbatim, Tamid 32a) seems also to assume that Lot's wife was troubled about her relatives, and Clemens Alexandrinus, *Exhortatio*, 94, states this view quite explicitly. Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 27, and 2 *Moses*, 10; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 11. 4, and *Wars*, IV, 8. 4; Wisdom 10. 6, 1; Irenaeus *Haer.* IV, 31; ps.—Tertullian, *Sodoma*, 160–170 (the Church Fathers very likely derived their information on this point from oral communications made to them by Jews) also mention the fact that one might still see to-day the pillar of salt into which Lot's wife turned. Comp. also Berakot 54a and 54b (a tannaitic source) on the benediction to be pronounced on seeing Lot's wife (Maimonides in his *Yad* ignores this statement); see also Midrash Esther in Yalkut I, 256, end. Salt must not be used in performing certain religious ceremonies, since it was the cause of death in the case of Lot's wife; comp. *Aruk*, s. v. מֶי; Way-Yekullu 16b.

181. BR 50. 11; PR 3, 10a; Aggadot Bereshit 25, 50.

182. Shabbat 10a. Like the other sinful cities, Zoar was also destroyed when the measure of its wickedness became full; *Sekel Tob* 1. 38. Here also on the authority of an old source, etymological explanations of the names of the sinful cities are given.

183. BR 50. 12.

184. Mishnah Sanhedrin 10. 3 (according to one view, they were destroyed for ever, and their inhabitants will therefore receive neither reward nor punishment on the day of judgment); comp. Ginzberg, *Mabbul shel Esh* 17; Sanhedrin 10; Babli 109a; Yerushalmi 10, 29c; Tosefta 13. 8; ARN 36, 106, and 12, 52; WR 4. 1. Comp. also Matthew 10. 15 and 11. 24. Compare further notes 44, 90 on p. 147, 164 respectively. For the restoration of the sinful cities see Tan. B. 1, 99, as well as Tosefta Sukkah 3. 9, where the "healing" of the sea of Sodom is spoken of. 4 Ezra 5. 6 seems to allude to this legend. Hippolytus, *Haer.*, 2. 175, mentions the salutary quality of the waters of the sea of Sodom. This idea is very likely connected with the legend about Miriam's well which is supposed to be hidden in the sea; see text on p. 577–578. Shabbat 67a, on the contrary, speaks of the destroying angels "dwelling at Sodom", that is, hovering over the sea of Sodom. Comp.,

however, Rashi, *ad. loc.* The poisonous quality of the "salt of Sodom" is often mentioned in the Talmud; see the lexica, s. v. מֶלַח סְדוֹמִית. On the fruit of Sodom, comp. Wisdom 10. 7; Josephus, *Wars*, 4, 8. 4; BR 51. 4. On the relation of the well of Shittim to that of Sodom compare with p. 778, and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, I, 110.

185. Berakot 26b. Compare with p. 1127 and note 58 appertaining thereto.

186. Ekah 1. 74.

187. BR 51. 6.

188. Nazir 23a; BR 51. 8, as well as p. 546. Compare also Theodor, *ad. loc.* The Messiah is not only a descendant of David who was the offspring of Ruth the Moabitish woman, but also the descendant of Solomon and his wife Naamah the Ammonite; Bereshit Rabbeti in *Pugio Fidei*, 714 (=Epstein 77); Maimonides' Commentary on Mishnah Sanhedrin 10. (article 12); Tan. B. I, 40; Origen, *Contra Celsum*, 4. 43.—Concerning Lot and his daughters the following is to be noted. Lot's daughters believed that the entire world, together with all the inhabitants were destroyed, and that the continuation of the human race depended on them; they therefore decided to bear children to their father; BR 51. 8; PR 42. 176a; Aggadot Bereshit 25, 51; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 11. 4; Philo, *Quaestiones*, 4. 56; The Church Fathers Ephraim and Jerome, *ad. loc.*; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 110, 111. In the cave of Adullam (Yashar, Wa-Yera, 39a) Lot's daughter found the wine with which they made their father drunk. God caused the wine to be put in that place in order that they should succeed in their plan; Mekilta Shirah 2, 36a; Sifre D., 43; BR 51. 8. Although Lot was not aware of what he was doing, he is regarded as of a lascivious nature; for if he were continent, he would have taken care not to become drunk a second time after he found out what had happened to him with his older daughter on account of his drunkenness; Nazir 23a; Sifre N., 69; BR 51. 8 and the numerous parallel passages given by Theodor, *ad. loc.* Comp. also Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 111–112. Lot is a warning example to men to avoid being alone with women, lest the latter should entice them to sin, as did Lot's daughters; Yelammedenu in *Rimze Haftarot*, Shelah. Hasidim, 461, and *Hadar*, 7b, quote, from unknown Midrashim, several statements concerning Lot's daughters; compare also with p. 758, and pp. 792–793.



## AMONG THE PHILISTINES

THE destruction of Sodom induced Abraham to journey to Gerar. Accustomed to extend hospitality to travellers and wayfarers, he no longer felt comfortable in a district in which all traffic had ceased by reason of the ruined cities. There was another reason for Abraham's leaving his place; the people spoke too much about the ugly incident with Lot's daughters.<sup>189</sup>

Arrived in the land of the Philistines, he again, as aforetime in Egypt, came to an understanding with Sarah, that she was to call herself his sister. When the report of her beauty reached the king, he ordered her to be brought before him, and he asked her who her companion was, and she told him that Abraham was her brother. Entranced by her beauty, Abimelech the king took Sarah to wife, and heaped marks of honor upon Abraham in accordance with the just claims of a brother of the queen. Toward evening, before retiring, while he was still seated upon his throne, Abimelech fell into a sleep, and he slept until the morning, and in the dream he dreamed he saw an angel of the Lord raising his sword to deal him a death blow. Sore frightened, he asked the cause, and the angel replied, and said: "Thou wilt die an account of the woman thou didst take into thy house this day, for she is the wife of Abraham, the man whom thou didst cite before thee. Return his wife unto him! But if thou restore her not, thou shalt surely die, thou and all that are thine."

In that night the voice of a great crying was heard in the whole land of the Philistines, for they saw the figure of a man walking about, with sword in hand, slaying all that came in his way. At the same time it happened that in men and beasts alike all the apertures of the body closed up, and the land was seized with indescribable excitement. In the morning, when the king awoke, in agony and terror, he called all his servants and

told his dream in their ears. One of their number said: "O lord and king! Restore this woman unto the man, for he is her husband. It is but his way in a strange land to pretend that she is his sister. Thus did he with the king of Egypt, too, and God sent heavy afflictions upon Pharaoh when he took the woman unto himself. Consider, also, O lord and king, what hath befallen this night in the land; great pain, wailing, and confusion there was, and we know that it came upon us only because of this woman."<sup>190</sup>

There were some among his servants who spake: "Be not afraid of dreams! What dreams make known to man is but falsehood." Then God appeared unto Abimelech again and commanded him to let Sarah go free, otherwise he would be a dead man.<sup>191</sup> Abimelech replied: "Is this Thy way? Then, I ween, the generation of the flood and the generation of the confusion of tongues were innocent, too! The man himself did say unto me, She is my sister, and she, even she herself said, He is my brother, and all the people of their household said the same words." And God said unto him: "Yea, I know that thou hast not yet committed a trespass, for I withheld thee from sinning. Thou didst not know that Sarah was a man's wife.<sup>192</sup> But is it becoming to question a stranger, no sooner does he set foot upon thy territory, about the woman accompanying him, whether she be his wife or his sister? Abraham, who is a prophet, knew beforehand the danger to himself if he revealed the whole truth.<sup>193</sup> But, being a prophet, he also knows that thou didst not touch his wife, and he shall pray for thee, and thou shalt live."

The smoke was still rising from the ruins of Sodom, and Abimelech and his people, seeing it, feared that a like fate might overtake them.<sup>194</sup> The king called Abraham and reproached him for having caused such great misfortune through his false statements concerning Sarah. Abraham excused his conduct by his apprehension that, the



fear of God not being in the place, the inhabitants of the land slay him for his wife.<sup>195</sup> Abraham went on and told the history of his whole life, and he said: "When I dwelt in the house of my father, the nations of the world sought to do me harm, but God proved Himself my Redeemer. When the nations of the world tried to lead me astray to idolatry, God revealed Himself to me, and He said, 'Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father's house.' And when the nations of the world were about to go astray, God sent two prophets, my kinsmen Shem and Eber, to admonish them."<sup>196</sup>

Abimelech gave rich gifts to Abraham, wherein he acted otherwise than Pharaoh in similar circumstances. The Egyptian king gave gifts to Sarah, but Abimelech was God-fearing, and desired that Abraham pray for him.<sup>197</sup> To Sarah he gave a costly robe that covered her whole person, hiding her seductive charms from the view of beholders. At the same time it was a reproach to Abraham, that he had not fitted Sarah out with the splendor due to his wife.<sup>198</sup>

Though Abimelech had done him great injury, Abraham not only granted him the forgiveness he craved, but also he prayed for him to God. Thus he is an exemplar unto all. "Man should be pliant as a reed, not hard like the cedar." He should be easily appeased, and slow to anger, and as soon as he who has sinned against him asks for pardon, he should forgive him with all his heart. Even if deep and serious injury has been done to him, he should not be vengeful, nor bear his brother a grudge in his heart.<sup>199</sup>

Abraham prayed thus for Abimelech: "O Lord of the world! Thou hast created man that he may increase and propagate his kind. Grant that Abimelech and his house may multiply and increase!"<sup>200</sup> God fulfilled Abraham's petition in behalf of Abimelech and his people, and it was the first time it happened in the history of mankind that God fulfilled the prayer of one human

being for the benefit of another.<sup>201</sup> Abimelech and his subjects were healed of all their diseases, and so efficacious was the prayer offered by Abraham that the wife of Abimelech, barren hitherto, bore a child.<sup>202</sup>

---

189. BR 55. 1–4; PR 43, 176b; Aggadat Bereshit 25. 49, 50. According to Yashar Wa-Yera, 39a, Lot settled "on the other side of the Jordan", that is, in the country which was later inhabited by the Moabites and Ammonites.

190. Yashar Wa-Yera, 39a, 40a, partly after PR 42, 176b; comp. also below, note 202.

191. Tan. B. I, 101; PRE 26; MHG I, 298: The angel Michael—or Gabriel—came with a drawn sword to kill Abimelech.

192. BR 52. 6; PR 42, 176b; Tan. B. I, p. 101. The Rabbis entertained a very high opinion of Abimelech, whereas they utterly condemn Pharaoh, though the Bible tells the identical story of both these kings. Besides the sources, quoted above, which speak favorably of Abimelech, comp. MHG I, 299, where it is said that he was better than his nation; Tehillim 34, 246, and PRE 21 state that he desired to beget pious children and therefore wished to marry the pious Sarah.

193. Baba Kamma 92a; PRE 26.

194. BR 52. 7, 8; Tan. B. I, 101.

195. MHG I, 300: We may well assume that he who is God-fearing will not sin, but he who is not God-fearing will not restrain himself from sin. Accordingly, Abraham was justified in his apprehension, though the inhabitants of Gerar were not particularly addicted to licentiousness; comp. MHG, *loc. cit.*, and the different view in Lekah, Gen. 20. 11.

196. BR 52. 11; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 22. 13; see also Yerushalmi Megillah I, 71d.

197. PRE 27, where the text is not quite complete, as may be seen from MHG I, 301.

198. BR 52. 12 (comp. Theodor, *ad loc.*); Tan. B. I, p. 102; Aggadat Bereshit 25. 52–53; MHG I, 301, where several explanations are given of Gen. 20. 16 (תאורה is derived from Targum Yerushalmi, *ad loc.*); Lekah, *ad loc.*, where the words כל ונוכח are taken to be the names of a slave and a bondwoman!

199. MHG I, 302, partly after Mishnah Baba Kamma 8. 7 and Tosefta 9. 29: The injured one should pray to God to forgive the injurer, even if he is not asked to do so. Thus did our father Abraham, who prayed for Abimelech; compare DE 4; and also compare p. 748.

200. PRE 27; MHG I, 303.

201. BR 52. 13; comp. Theodor, *ad loc.*

202. PR 42, 177a: Also the other women at the court of Abimelech became pregnant and gave birth to sons. The



sickness with which Abimelech and his subjects were afflicted consisted in the closing up of all apertures in the bodies of man and beast (Baba Kamma 92a; BR 52. 13; PR, *loc. cit.*, and 178a; Aggadat Bereshit 27, 57; a different view is found in Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 20. 18), so that no female was able to give birth to a child.—The king is to his country what the heart is to the human body, when the heart is sick the entire body suffers, even so when the king sins, all his subjects suffer; MHG I, 300, and see also the similar saying in *Ein anonymen Kommentar zum Hohen Liede*, in the *Steinschneider-Festschrift*, 55.

## THE BIRTH OF ISAAC

When the prayer of Abraham for Abimelech was heard, and the king of the Philistines recovered, the angels raised a loud cry, and spoke to God thus: "O Lord of the world! All these years hath Sarah been barren, as the wife of Abimelech was. Now Abraham prayed to Thee, and the wife of Abimelech hath been granted a child. It is just and fair that Sarah should be remembered and granted a child." These words of the angels, spoken on the New Year's Day, when the fortunes of men are determined in heaven for the whole year, bore a result. Barely seven months later, on the first day of the Passover, Isaac was born.

The birth of Isaac was a happy event, and not in the house of Abraham alone. The whole world rejoiced, for God remembered all barren women at the same time with Sarah. They all bore children. And all the blind were made to see, all the lame were made whole, the dumb were made to speak, and the mad were restored to reason. And a still greater miracle happened: on the day of Isaac's birth the sun shone with such splendor as had not been seen since the fall of man, and as he will shine again only in the future world.<sup>203</sup>

To silence those who asked significantly, "Can one a hundred years old beget a son?" God commanded the angel who has charge over the

embryos, to give them form and shape, that he fashion Isaac precisely according to the model of Abraham, so that all seeing Isaac might exclaim, "Abraham begot Isaac."<sup>204</sup>

That Abraham and Sarah were blessed with offspring only after they had attained so great an age, had an important reason. It was necessary that Abraham should bear the sign of the covenant upon his body before he begot the son who was appointed to be the father of Israel.<sup>205</sup> And as Isaac was the first child born to Abraham after he was marked with the sign, he did not fail to celebrate his circumcision with much pomp and ceremony on the eighth day.<sup>206</sup> Shem, Eber, Abimelech king of the Philistines, and his whole retinue, Phicol the captain of his host in it—they all were present, and also Terah and his son Nahor, in a word, all the great ones round about.<sup>207</sup> On this occasion Abraham could at last put a stop to the talk of the people, who said, "Look at this old couple! They picked up a foundling on the highway, and they pretend he is their own son, and to make their statement seem credible, they arrange a feast in his honor." Abraham had invited not only men to the celebration, but also the wives of the magnates with their infants, and God permitted a miracle to be done. Sarah had enough milk in her breasts to suckle all the babes there,<sup>208</sup> and they who drew from her breasts had much to thank her for. Those whose mothers had harbored only pious thoughts in their minds when they let them drink the milk that flowed from the breasts of the pious Sarah, they became proselytes when they grew up; and those whose mothers let Sarah nurse them only in order to test her, they grew up to be powerful rulers, losing their dominion only at the revelation on Mount Sinai, because they would not accept the Torah. All proselytes and pious heathen are the descendants of these infants.<sup>209</sup>

Among the guests of Abraham were the thirty-one kings and thirty-one viceroys of Palestine



who were vanquished by Joshua at the conquest of the Holy Land. Even Og king of Bashan was present, and he had to suffer the teasing of the other guests, who rallied him upon having called Abraham a sterile mule, who would never have offspring. Og, on his part, pointed at the little boy with contempt, and said, “Were I to lay my finger upon him, he would be crushed.” Whereupon God said to him: “Thou makest mock of the gift given to Abraham! As thou livest, thou shalt look upon millions and myriads of his descendants, and in the end thou shalt fall into their hands.”<sup>210</sup>

---

203. PR 42, 177a–178a; Tan. B. I, 103–107; Tan. Wa-Yera 13–17; Aggadat Bereshit 28. 57–58; comp. also Baba Kamma 92b; PR 38, 165a, where attention is called to the fact that Abraham’s wife was cured of her sterility as a reward for his prayer to God in behalf of Abimelech’s wives who were unable to give birth to children; see also the preceding note. At the same time Sarah was rewarded for her trust in God; BR 53. 3.—Conflicting views are given in rabbinic sources concerning the date of Isaac’s birth (according to Jub. 16. 13 he was born the fifteenth of Siwan), and these differences are due to the competition between the months of Nisan and Tishri for the highest place in the Jewish legend; comp. Rosh ha-Shanah 10b, 11a, and the quotation from the Midrashim given in Tosafot, *ad loc.* (caption אלא), as well as BR 43. 6 (here it is stated that Isaac was born at noon) and the numerous passages given by Theodor, *ad loc.* The attempts made to harmonize this point (the date of the visit of the angels, as well as that of another important event in the history of Abraham, depends upon this question) are in vain, as has already been noted by Shu’aib, Wa-Yera, 9b. Comp. also *Hadar*, 7c (the word בתלמוד is incorrect, as no such statement occurs in the Talmud!); *Minbat Yehudah* and Tosafot, Gen. 18. 10, 11, and 21. 1.—At Isaac’s birth all creation rejoiced, the earth, the heavens, the sun, the moon, etc., because had not Isaac been born, the world would have ceased to exist; Tan. Toledot 2. Philo, *De Praemiis et Poenis*, 4 and 5, likewise explains the name Isaac as “joy”. The heavenly light at the birth of heroes is a favorite theme in legends; compare with p. 169; footnote 1 on p. 133, as well as footnote 256 on p. 302, and additionally p. 705. Comp. also PK 22, 146a.

204. Tan. Toledot 1; BR 53. 6 and 84. 8; Baba Mezi’a 87a; Tan. B. I, 176, which is the source of Makiri, Tehillim, 311, (61); Yelammedenu in Yalkut, II, 141, on 2

Samuel 3; MHG I, 304; Zohar I, 135a. Compare also with pp. 940–941.

205. BR 46. 2. Abraham received the commandment of circumcision in his old age in order that “the door should not be closed in the face of the proselytes”, who otherwise might have refused to submit to the performance of this operation in advanced age; Mekilta Nezikin 18, 95; BR, *loc. cit.*, and parallel passages given by Theodor.

206. PRE 29 (on the text, comp. Eshkol II, 131, and Luria, *ad loc.*); Lekah, *ad loc.*, I, 94 (quotation from PRE?); DR 1. 25.

207. Yashar Wa-Yera, 40b; BR 53. 10; see note 210.

208. Baba Mezi’a 87a; PK 22, 146b; The people said Isaac was Hagar’s son; Hallel 92; BR 53. 9; Tan. B. I. 107; Tan. Toledot 3; PRE 52. The last-named passage adds that this was the second of the seven miracles, that were “visible to all”, which occurred in the course of history, the first miracle being the delivery of Abraham from the fiery furnace. Lekah, *ad loc.*, I, 94, states that Sarah suckled a hundred babies on that occasion.

209. BR. 53. 9. Comp. the Antoninus legend in BHM VI, 131.

210. BR 53. 10; DR 1. 25; Kohelet 7. 2.

## ISHMAEL CAST OFF

When Isaac grew up, quarrels broke out between him and Ishmael, on account of the rights of the first-born. Ishmael insisted he should receive a double portion of the inheritance after the death of Abraham, and Isaac should receive only one portion. Ishmael, who had been accustomed from his youth to use the bow and arrow, was in the habit of aiming his missiles in the direction of Isaac, saying at the same time that he was but jesting.<sup>211</sup> Sarah, however, insisted that Abraham make over to Isaac all he owned, that no disputes might arise after his death,<sup>212</sup> “for,” she said, “Ishmael is nor worthy of being heir with my son, nor with a man like Isaac, and certainly not with my son Isaac.”<sup>213</sup> Furthermore, Sarah insisted that Abraham divorce himself from Hagar, the mother of Ishmael, and send away the woman and her son, so that there be



naught in common between them and her own son, either in this world or in the future world.

Of all the trials Abraham had to undergo, none was so hard to bear as this, for it grieved him sorely to separate himself from his son. God appeared to him in the following night, and said to him: "Abraham, knowest thou not that Sarah was appointed to be thy wife from her mother's womb? She is thy companion and the wife of thy youth, and I named not Hagar as thy wife, nor Sarah as thy bondwoman. What Sarah spoke unto thee was naught but truth, and let it not be grievous in thy sight because of the lad, and because of thy bondwoman." The next morning Abraham rose up early, gave Hagar her bill of divorcement, and sent her away with her son, first binding a rope about her loins that all might see she was a bondwoman.<sup>214</sup>

The evil glance cast upon her stepson by Sarah made him sick and feverish, so that Hagar had to carry him, grown-up as he was. In his fever he drank often of the water in the bottle given her by Abraham as she left his house, and the water was quickly spent. That she might not look upon the death of her child, Hagar cast Ishmael under the willow shrubs growing on the self-same spot whereon the angels had once spoken with her and made known to her that she would bear a son. In the bitterness of her heart, she spoke to God, and said, "Yesterday Thou didst say to me, I will greatly multiply thy seed, that it shall not be numbered for multitude, and to-day my son dies of thirst." Ishmael himself cried unto God, and his prayer and the merits of Abraham brought them help in their need, though the angels appeared against Ishmael before God. They said, "Wilt Thou cause a well of water to spring up for him whose descendants will let Thy children of Israel perish with thirst?" But God replied, and said, "What is Ishmael at this moment—righteous or wicked?" and when the angels called him righteous, God continued, "I

treat man according to his deserts at each moment."<sup>215</sup>

At that moment Ishmael was pious indeed, for he was praying to God in the following words: "O Lord of the world! If it be Thy will that I shall perish, then let me die in some other way, not by thirst, for the tortures of thirst are great beyond all others." Hagar, instead of praying to God, addressed her supplications to the idols of her youth. The prayer of Ishmael was acceptable before God, and He bade Miriam's well spring up, the well created in the twilight of the sixth day of creation.<sup>216</sup> Even after this miracle Hagar's faith was no stronger than before. She filled the bottle with water, because she feared it might again be spent, and no other would be nigh. Thereupon she journeyed to Egypt with her son, for "Throw the stick into the air as thou wilt, it will always land on its point." Hagar had come from Egypt, and to Egypt she returned, to choose a wife for her son.<sup>217</sup>

---

211. BR 53. 11; Sifre D., 31; Tosefta Sotah 6. 6. These sources quote a dissenting opinion, according to which Sarah noticed that Ishmael caught locusts and sacrificed them to the idols (that is to say, he was imitating adults, his locusts being "toy sacrifices"; comp. Shabbat 9. 6 end, but text on p. 964); according to another view Ishmael even committed adultery and murder. Jerome, Gen. 21. 9, is acquainted with these two haggadic views, whereas the Yerushalmi Targumim speak only of Ishmael's idolatry. Comp. PR, 193b; PRE 30 (this is the source of Yashar Wayera, 40b); Aggadat Bereshit 37, 73–74, and 61, 122. The legend about Ishmael persecuting Isaac is found also in Galatians 4. 26; comp. also first Alphabet of Ben Sira 3b; DR 4. 5; Tan. Shemot 1; Josephus, *Antiqui.* 1. 12, 3.

212. Philo, *Quaestiones*. Gen. 100.

213. BR 53. 11.

214. PRE 30. In Jub. 16. 17, *seq.*, it is stated, with reference to Gen. 22. 12, that God informed Abraham that only Isaac's progeny (that is, Jacob and his descendants) would be his true seed; comp. Nedarim 3. 11 and DR 4. 5. Jub. 17. 4 gives the following reasons for Ishmael's banishment: Sarah saw that Abraham rejoiced at Ishmael's playing and dancing, and she became jealous.



215. BR 53. 13; PRE 30; ShR 3. 2; Tan. Wa-Yeze 5; Tehillim 5. 55; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 21. 15–16. On the unbrotherly actions of the Ishmaelites against the Jews, compare with p. 1086. The statement that God treats man according to his deserts at each moment is very frequently found in Jewish literature; comp. (besides the sources given at the beginning of this note) Rosh ha-Shanah 16b; Yerushalmi I, 57d; 4 Ezra 7. 132. Comp. Ginzberg, *Compte Rendu des Mélanges Is. Lewy*, 23–24 (=R.E.J., 67, 137–138); see also MHG I, 309, as well as text on p. 509. In Christian sources this statement is attributed to Jesus; comp. Ginzberg *loc. cit.*

216. PRE 30; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 21. 16; MHG I, 309; Midrash Aggada, *ad loc.*, I, 48: She worshipped a brick; this is very likely a reminiscence of the worship of the Ka'bah in Mecca; comp., however, 'Abodah Zarah 46a. According to Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.*, Ishmael's fear was a punishment for his and his mother's idolatry (PRE knows only of Hagar's idolatry, and this is in agreement with the singular וְיִתְחַיֵּי of verse 14); at the same time this fear brought them both back to God.

217. BR 53. 14. The proverb "Throw the stick, etc.," is very frequently quoted; comp. Theodor, *ad loc.* The sources differ as to Ishmael's age at the time of his banishment from his father's house; see BR 53. 13 and the sources given by Theodor, *ad loc.*, as well as Lekah I, 95, and Yashar Wa-Yera, 40b; comp. also note 211.

## THE TWO WIVES OF ISHMAEL

**T**he wife of Ishmael bore four sons and a daughter, and afterward Ishmael, his mother, and his wife and children went and returned to the wilderness. They made themselves tents in the wilderness in which they dwelt, and they continued to encamp and journey, month by month and year by year. And God gave Ishmael flocks, and herds, and tents, on account of Abraham his father, and the man increased in cattle. And some time after, Abraham said to Sarah, his wife, "I will go and see my son Ishmael; I yearn to look upon him, for I have not seen him for a long time." And Abraham rode upon one of his camels to the wilderness, to seek his son Ishmael, for he heard that he was dwelling in a tent in the wilderness with all belonging to him. And

Abraham went to the wilderness, and he reached the tent of Ishmael about noon, and he asked after him. He found the wife of Ishmael sitting in the tent with her children, and her husband and his mother were not with them. And Abraham asked the wife of Ishmael, saying, "Where has Ishmael gone?" And she said, "He has gone to the field to hunt game." And Abraham was still mounted upon the camel, for he would not alight upon the ground, as he had sworn to his wife Sarah that he would not get off from the camel. And Abraham said to Ishmael's wife, "My daughter, give me a little water, that I may drink, for I am fatigued and tired from the journey." And Ishmael's wife answered and said to Abraham, "We have neither water nor bread," and she was sitting in the tent, and did not take any notice of Abraham. She did not even ask him who he was. But all the while she was beating her children in the tent, and she was cursing them, and she also cursed her husband Ishmael, and spoke evil of him, and Abraham heard the words of Ishmael's wife to her children, and it was an evil thing in his eyes. And Abraham called to the woman to come out to him from the tent, and the woman came out, and stood face to face with Abraham, while Abraham was still mounted upon the camel. And Abraham said to Ishmael's wife, "When thy husband Ishmael returns home, say these words to him: A very old man from the land of the Philistines came hither to seek thee, and his appearance was thus and so, and thus was his figure. I did not ask him who he was, and seeing thou wast not here, he spoke unto me, and said, When Ishmael thy husband returns, tell him, Thus did the man say, When thou comest home, put away this tent-pin which thou hast placed here, and place another tent-pin in its stead." And Abraham finished his instructions to the woman, and he turned and went off on the camel homeward. And when Ishmael returned to the tent, he heard the words of



his wife, and he knew that it was his father, and that his wife had not honored him. And Ishmael understood his father's words that he had spoken to his wife, and he hearkened to the voice of his father, and he divorced his wife, and she went away. And Ishmael afterward went to the land of Canaan, and he took another wife, and he brought her to his tent, to the place where he dwelt.

And at the end of three years, Abraham said, "I will go again and see Ishmael my son, for I have not seen him for a long time." And he rode upon his camel, and went to the wilderness, and he reached the tent of Ishmael about noon. And he asked after Ishmael, and his wife came out of the tent, and she said, "He is not here, my lord, for he has gone to hunt in the fields and feed the camels," and the woman said to Abraham, "Turn in, my lord, into the tent, and eat a morsel of bread, for thy soul must be wearied on account of the journey." And Abraham said to her, "I will not stop, for I am in haste to continue my journey, but give me a little water to drink, for I am thirsty," and the woman hastened and ran into the tent, and she brought out water and bread to Abraham, which she placed before him, urging him to eat and drink, and he ate and drank, and his heart was merry, and he blessed his son Ishmael. And he finished his meal, and he blessed the Lord, and he said to Ishmael's wife: "When Ishmael comes home, say these words to him: A very old man from the land of the Philistines came hither, and asked after thee, and thou wast not here, and I brought him out bread and water, and he ate and drank, and his heart was merry. And he spoke these words to me, When Ishmael thy husband comes home, say unto him, The tent-pin which thou hast is very good, do not put it away from the tent." And Abraham finished commanding the woman, and he rode off to his home, to the land of the Philistines, and when Ishmael came to his tent, his wife went forth to

meet him with joy and a cheerful heart, and she told him the words of the old man. Ishmael knew that it was his father, and that his wife had honored him, and he praised the Lord. And Ishmael then took his wife and his children and his cattle and all belonging to him, and he journeyed from there, and he went to his father in the land of the Philistines. And Abraham related to Ishmael all that had happened between him and the first wife that Ishmael had taken, recording to what she had done. And Ishmael and his children dwelt with Abraham many days in that land, and Abraham dwelt in the land of the Philistines a long time.<sup>218</sup>

---

218. Yashar Wa-Yera, 41a, 41b, which is very likely based on PRE 30, though our text of that Midrash does not contain this episode. The names of Ishmael's two wives are given in PRE, *loc. cit.*, as Aisha (עִישָׁה; עִיפָה and עִדִּישָׁה are corruptions) and Fatima (פִּטִּימָה). This is the source for Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 21. 21. These names were borne by Mohammed's wife and a daughter, respectively; comp. Nöldeke in Geiger's *Jüdische Zeitschrift*, V, 313, and Luria, *ad loc.*

## THE COVENANT WITH ABIMELECH

**A**fter a sojourn of twenty-six years in the land of the Philistines, Abraham departed thence, and he settled in the neighborhood of Hebron. There he was visited by Abimelech with twenty of his grandees,<sup>219</sup> who requested him to make an alliance with the Philistines.

As long as Abraham was childless, the heathen did not believe in his piety, but when Isaac was born, they said to him, "God is with thee." But again they entertained doubt of his piety when he cast off Ishmael. They said, "Were he a righteous man, he would not drive his first-born forth from his house." But when they observed the impious deeds of Ishmael, they said, "God is



with thee in all thou doest.” That Abraham was the favorite of God, they saw in this, too, that although Sodom was destroyed and all traffic had come to a standstill in that region, yet Abraham’s treasure chambers were filled. For these reasons, the Philistines sought to form an alliance with him, to remain in force for three generations to come, for it is to the third generation that the love of a father extends.

Before Abraham concluded the covenant with Abimelech, king of the Philistines, he reproved him on account of a well, for “Correction leads to love,” and “There is no peace without correction.” The herdmen of Abraham and those of Abimelech had left their dispute about the well to decision by ordeal: the well was to belong to the party for whose sheep the waters would rise so that they could drink of them. But the shepherds of Abimelech disregarded the agreement, and they wrested the well for their own use.<sup>220</sup> As a witness and a perpetual sign that the well belonged to him, Abraham set aside seven sheep, corresponding to the seven Noachian laws binding upon all men alike.<sup>221</sup> But God said, “Thou didst give him seven sheep. As thou livest, the Philistines shall one day slay seven righteous men, Samson, Hophni, Phinehas, and Saul with his three sons, and they will destroy seven holy places, and they will keep the holy Ark in their country as booty of war for a period of seven months, and furthermore only the seventh generation of thy descendants will be able to rejoice in the possession of the land promised to them.”<sup>222</sup> After concluding the alliance with Abimelech, who acknowledged Abraham’s right upon the well, Abraham called the place Beer-sheba, because there they swore both of them unto a covenant of friendship.

In Beer-sheba Abraham dwelt many years, and thence he endeavored to spread the law of God. He planted a large grove there, and he made four gates for it, facing the four sides of the earth,

east, west, north, and south, and he planted a vineyard therein. If a traveller came that way, he entered by the gate that faced him, and he sat in the grove, and ate, and drank, until he was satisfied, and then he departed. For the house of Abraham was always open for all passers-by, and they came daily to eat and drink there. If one was hungry, and he came to Abraham, he would give him what he needed, so that he might eat and drink and be satisfied; and if one was naked, and he came to Abraham, he would clothe him with the garments of the poor man’s choice, and give him silver and gold, and make known to him the Lord, who had created him and set him on earth.<sup>223</sup> After the wayfarers had eaten, they were in the habit of thanking Abraham for his kind entertainment of them, whereto he would reply: “What, ye give thanks unto me! Rather return thanks to your host, He who alone provides food and drink for all creatures.” Then the people would ask, “Where is He?” and Abraham would answer them, and say: “He is the Ruler of heaven and earth. He woundeth and He healeth, He formeth the embryo in the womb of the mother and bringeth it forth into the world, He causeth the plants and the trees to grow, He killeth and He maketh alive, He bringeth down to Sheol and bringeth up.” When the people heard such words, they would ask, “How shall we return thanks to God and manifest our gratitude unto Him?” And Abraham would instruct them in these words: “Say, Blessed be the Lord who is blessed! Blessed be He that giveth bread and food unto all flesh!” In this manner did Abraham teach those who had enjoyed his hospitality how to praise and thank God.<sup>224</sup> Abraham’s house thus became not only a lodging-place for the hungry and thirsty, but also a place of instruction where the knowledge of God and His Law were taught.<sup>225</sup>



219. Yashar Wa-Yera, 42a. On the chronology of these events comp. BR 54. 6 and the parallel passages given by Theodor. Pichol, Gen. 21. 22, is taken by some to be the title of the first grandee of the land, "whose mouth directs everything" = **כָּל פִּי**; comp. BR 54. 2.

220. BR 54. 2–5; Shu'aib's quotation (Wa-Yera, 9a) from an unknown Midrash; comp. Toledot Yizhak, *ad loc.*, 25c. On the rising of the water compare with pp. 239–240 as well as p. 279, pp. 493–494, p. 576.

221. MHG I, 312. On the Noachian commandments, compare with pp. 69, and the footnotes appertaining to them.

222. BR 54. 4; PK 10, 85a; Shemuel 12. 80–81; ER 7. 45. From Abraham to Moses there are seven generations, and accordingly Gen. 15. 16 can only refer to the four generations who were born in Egypt. Another explanation of the Gen. verse is that the generations of the Amorites are meant; comp. MHG I, 238; RSBM and Bekor Shor, *ad loc.*

223. Yashar Wa-Yera, 42b. In its main features this description of Abraham's hospitality follows ARN 7, 33–34, 163–164 where Job is the hero. Compare with p. 453. It is true that ARN calls attention to the fact that Abraham by far surpassed Job, the latter having been hospitable to those who came to him, while the former went to the highways to look for strangers on whom to bestow his hospitality. A short description of Abraham's hospitality is also found in BR 54. 6; Sotah 10a; Tehillim 37, 252–253, and 110, 465; Berakot 58b; *Kad ha-Kemah, Orehim*, 5a (**מדרש**=ARN, *loc. cit.*, and **ירושלמי**=Bahir; Sabba, Toledot 27c also quotes this passage from Bahir with the introductory formula **(בירושלמי)**; comp. note 133. Even to-day in the vernacular of the Jews of Eastern Europe a house with many doors is described as a "house with Avrohom Ovinu's (Father Abraham's) doors". Comp also the following two notes and *Neweh Shalom*, 48–49.

224. Tan. Lek, 12; Tosafot (**שנן**) on Sotah 10b, quoting a source similar to, but not identical with, Tan. The prayer taught by Abraham (instead of **צדקות** we should very likely read **תפלות**, parallel to **ברכות**) is identical with the first benediction of Grace after Meals; comp. Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 667, on Ps. 24. The great merit of the fathers consists in their lovingkindness (**צדקה**); comp. EZ I, 169, and Aggadat Shir 3. 22, *seq.*

225. BR 54. 6. The Haggadot about Abraham's hospitality are introduced in connection with the word **אשל** (Gen. 21. 33), which is said to stand for **אכילה** food, **שתיה** drink and **לוייה** escort, provided by Abraham. In BR *loc. cit.*, the statement, based upon the literal meaning of **אשל** which is "tamarisk", is found that the middle bar in the midst of the boards of the tabernacle (Exod. 26. 28) was made out of this tamarisk. Compare with footnote 344 on p. 647, and note 137 on p. 205.

## SATAN ACCUSES ABRAHAM

**I**n spite of the lavish hospitality practiced in the house of Abraham, it happened once that a poor man, or rather an alleged poor man, was turned away empty-handed, and this was the immediate reason for the last of Abraham's temptations, the sacrifice of his favorite son Isaac. It was the day on which Abraham celebrated the birth of Isaac with a great banquet, to which all the magnates of the time were bidden with their wives. Satan, who always appears at a feast in which no poor people participate, and keeps aloof from those to which poor guests are invited, turned up at Abraham's banquet in the guise of a beggar asking alms at the door. He had noticed that Abraham had invited no poor man, and he knew that his house was the right place for him.

Abraham was occupied with the entertainment of his distinguished guests, and Sarah was endeavoring to convince their wives, the matrons, that Isaac was her child in very truth, and not a spurious child. No one concerned himself about the beggar at the door, who thereupon accused Abraham before God.<sup>226</sup>

Now, there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the Lord, and Satan came also among them.<sup>227</sup> And the Lord said unto Satan, "From whence comest thou?" and Satan answered the Lord, and said, "From going to and fro on the earth, and from walking up and down in it." And the Lord said unto Satan, "What hast thou to say concerning all the children of the earth?" and Satan answered the Lord, and said: "I have seen all the children of the earth serving Thee and remembering Thee, when they require aught from Thee. And when Thou givest them what they require from Thee, then they forsake Thee, and they remember Thee no more. Hast Thou seen Abraham, the son of Terah, who at first had no children, and he



served Thee and erected altars to Thee wherever he came, and he brought offerings upon them, and he proclaimed Thy name continually to all the children of the earth? And now his son Isaac is born to him, he has forsaken Thee. He made a great feast for all the inhabitants of the land, and the Lord he has forgotten. For amidst all that he has done, he brought Thee no offering, neither burnt offering nor peace offering, neither one lamb nor goat of all that he had killed in the day that his son was weaned. Even from the time of his son's birth till now, being thirty-seven years, he built no altar before Thee, nor brought up any offering to Thee, for he saw that Thou didst give what he requested before Thee, and he therefore forsook Thee." And the Lord said to Satan: "Hast thou considered My servant Abraham? For there is none like him in the earth, a perfect and an upright man before Me for a burnt offering, and that feareth God and escheweth evil. As I live, were I to say unto him, Bring up Isaac thy son before Me, he would not withhold him from Me, much less if I told him to bring up a burnt offering before Me from his flocks or herds." And Satan answered the Lord, and said, "Speak now unto Abraham as Thou hast said, and Thou wilt see whether he will not transgress and cast aside Thy words this day."<sup>228</sup>

God wished to try Isaac also. Ishmael once boasted to Isaac, saying, "I was thirteen years old when the Lord spoke to my father to circumcise us, and I did not transgress His word, which He commanded my father." And Isaac answered Ishmael, saying, "What dost thou boast to me about this, about a little bit of thy flesh which thou didst take from thy body, concerning which the Lord commanded thee? As the Lord liveth, the God of my father Abraham, if the Lord should say unto my father, Take now thy son Isaac and bring him up as an offering before Me, I would not refrain, but I would joyfully accede to it."

---

226. Zohar I, 10a–11b. On the great feast prepared by Abraham on Isaac's birthday, see text on pp. 218–219. Satan disguised as a beggar is a favorite subject of Jewish legends; comp. Kiddushin 81a; compare with p. 455; p. 1016, footnote 34 on p. 176.

227. Yashar Wa-Yera, 43b, where the diction is modelled after Job 1. 6, *seq.*

228. Yashar Wa-Yera 43b, based on old sources; comp. BR 55. 4; Sanhedrin 89b. In the last-named passage, as well as in Yashar, the accuser is Satan, while in BR the angels appear as accusers. In Jub. 18. 6 Mastema (=Satan) is the accuser. Comp. also the unknown Midrash in Yalkut I, 96, and Epstein in Ha-Eshkol VI, 201.

## THE JOURNEY TO MORIAH

And the Lord thought to try Abraham and Isaac in this matter.<sup>229</sup> And He said to Abraham, "Take now thy son."

Abraham: "I have two sons, and I do not know which of them Thou commandest me to take."

God: "Thine only son."

Abraham: "The one is the only son of his mother, and the other is the only son of his mother."

God: "Whom thou lovest."

Abraham: "I love this one and I love that one."

God: "Even Isaac."<sup>230</sup>

Abraham: "And where shall I go?"

God: "To the land I will show thee, and offer Isaac there for a burnt offering."

Abraham: "Am I fit to perform the sacrifice, am I a priest? Ought not rather the high priest Shem to do it?"

God: "When thou wilt arrive at that place, I will consecrate thee and make thee a priest."<sup>231</sup>

And Abraham said within himself, "How shall I separate my son Isaac from Sarah his mother?" And he came into the tent, and he sate before Sarah his wife, and he spake these words



to her: "My son Isaac is grown up, and he has not yet studied the service of God. Now, tomorrow I will go and bring him to Shem and Eber his son, and there he will learn the ways of the Lord, for they will teach him to know the Lord, and to know how to pray unto the Lord that He may answer him, and to know the way of serving the Lord his God." And Sarah said, "Thou hast spoken well. Go, my lord, and do unto him as thou hast said, but remove him not far from me, neither let him remain there too long, for my soul is bound within his soul." And Abraham said unto Sarah, "My daughter, let us pray to the Lord our God that He may do good with us." And Sarah took her son Isaac, and he abode with her all that night, and she kissed and embraced him, and she laid injunctions upon him till morning, and she said to Abraham: "O my lord, I pray thee, take heed of thy son, and place thine eyes over him, for I have no other son nor daughter but him. O neglect him not. If he be hungry, give him bread, and if he be thirsty, give him water to drink; do not let him go on foot, neither let him sit in the sun, neither let him go by himself on the road, neither turn him from whatever he may desire, but do unto him as he may say to thee."

After spending the whole night in weeping on account of Isaac, she got up in the morning and selected a very fine and beautiful garment from those that Abimelech had given to her. And she dressed Isaac therewith, and she put a turban upon his head, and she fastened a precious stone in the top of the turban, and she gave them provisions for the road. And Sarah went out with them, and she accompanied them upon the road to see them off, and they said to her, "Return to the tent." And when Sarah heard the words of her son Isaac, she wept bitterly, and Abraham wept with her, and their son wept with them, a great weeping, also those of their servants who went with them wept greatly. And Sarah caught

hold of Isaac, and she held him in her arms, and she embraced him, and continued to weep with him, and Sarah said, "Who knoweth if I shall ever see thee again after this day?"

Abraham departed with Isaac amid great weeping, while Sarah and the servants returned to the tent.<sup>232</sup> He took two of his young men with him, Ishmael and Eliezer, and while they were walking in the road, the young men spoke these words to each other. Said Ishmael to Eliezer: "Now my father Abraham is going with Isaac to bring him up for a burnt offering to the Lord, and when he returneth, he will give unto me all that he possesses, to inherit after him, for I am his first-born." Eliezer answered: "Surely, Abraham did cast thee off with thy mother, and swear that thou shouldst not inherit anything of all he possesses. And to whom will he give all that he has, all his precious things, but unto his servant, who has been faithful in his house, to me, who have served him night and day, and have done all that he desired me?" The holy spirit answered, "Neither this one nor that one will inherit Abraham."<sup>233</sup>

And while Abraham and Isaac were proceeding along the road, Satan came and appeared to Abraham in the figure of a very aged man, humble and of contrite spirit, and said to him: "Art thou silly or foolish, that thou goest to do this thing to thine only son? God gave thee a son in thy latter days, in thine old age, and wilt thou go and slaughter him, who did not commit any violence, and wilt thou cause the soul of thine only son to perish from the earth? Dost thou not know and understand that this thing cannot be from the Lord? For the Lord would not do unto man such evil, to command him, Go and slaughter thy son." Abraham, hearing these words, knew that it was Satan, who endeavored to turn him astray from the way of the Lord, and he rebuked him that he went away. And Satan returned and came to Isaac, and he appeared



unto him in the figure of a young man, comely and well-favored, saying unto him: "Dost thou not know that thy silly old father bringeth thee to the slaughter this day for naught? Now, my son, do not listen to him, for he is a silly old man, and let not thy precious soul and beautiful figure be lost from the earth." And Isaac told these words to his father, but Abraham said to him, "Take heed of him, and do not listen to his words, for he is Satan endeavoring to lead us astray from the commands of our God." And Abraham rebuked Satan again, and Satan went from them, and, seeing he could not prevail over them, he transformed himself into a large brook of water in the road, and when Abraham, Isaac, and the two young men reached that place, they saw a brook large and powerful as the mighty waters. And they entered the brook, trying to pass it, but the further they went, the deeper the brook, so that the water reached up to their necks, and they were all terrified on account of the water. But Abraham recognized the place, and he knew that there had been no water there before, and he said to his son: "I know this place, on which there was no brook nor water. Now, surely, it is Satan who doth all this to us, to draw us aside this day from the commands of God." And Abraham rebuked Satan, saying unto him: "The Lord rebuke thee, O Satan. Begone from us, for we go by the command of God." And Satan was terrified at the voice of Abraham, and he went away from them, and the place became dry land again as it was at first. And Abraham went with Isaac toward the place that God had told him.<sup>234</sup>

Satan then appeared unto Sarah in the figure of an old man, and said unto her, "Where did thine husband go?" She said, "To his work." "And where did thy son Isaac go?" he inquired further, and she answered, "He went with his father to a place of study of the Torah." Satan said: "O thou poor old woman, thy teeth will be set on edge on account of thy son, as thou knowest

not that Abraham took his son with him on the road to sacrifice him." In this hour Sarah's loins trembled, and all her limbs shook. She was no more of this world. Nevertheless she aroused herself, and said, "All that God hath told Abraham, may he do it unto life and unto peace."<sup>235</sup>

On the third day of his journey, Abraham lifted up his eyes and saw the place at a distance, which God had told him. He noticed upon the mountain a pillar of fire reaching from the earth to heaven, and a heavy cloud in which the glory of God was seen. Abraham said to Isaac, "My son, dost thou see on that mountain which we perceive at a distance that which I see upon it?" And Isaac answered, and said unto his father, "I see, and, lo, a pillar of fire and a cloud, and the glory of the Lord is seen upon the cloud." Abraham knew then that Isaac was accepted before the Lord for an offering. He asked Ishmael and Eliezer, "Do you also see that which we see upon the mountain?" They answered, "We see nothing more than like the other mountains," and Abraham knew that they were not accepted before the Lord to go with them.<sup>236</sup> Abraham said to them, "Abide ye here with the ass, you are like the ass—as little as it sees, so little do you see."<sup>237</sup> I and Isaac my son go to yonder mount, and worship there before the Lord, and this eve we will return to you."<sup>238</sup> An unconscious prophecy had come to Abraham, for he prophesied that he and Isaac would both return from the mountain.<sup>239</sup> Eliezer and Ishmael remained in that place, as Abraham commanded, while he and Isaac went further.

---

229. Yashar Wa-Yera, 43b–44a, based on BR 55. 4; Sanhedrin 89b, and Tan. B. I, 108, as well as Tan. Wa-Yera 18 and Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 22.2. Great emphasis is laid in the sources on the fact that although Isaac, at the time of the 'Akedah, was no longer a lad, but a grown-up man (different views are given as to his exact age; comp. Seder 'Olam I; BR 55. 5, and parallel passages cited by



Theodor), yet he willingly submitted to his father's wish. In the 'Akedah legends two currents are to be distinguished; according to one, Abraham is the hero, while in the other Isaac is glorified. In the oldest reference to the 'Akedah in the liturgy (*Zikronot* in the Musaf for New Year) it is Isaac to whom credit is given, whereas medieval paitanim in their 'Akedahs sing Abraham's praises.

230. BR 55. 7; Sanhedrin 89b; Tan. B., I, 11; Tan. Wa-Yera 22; PRE 31; PR 40, 169b and 193b. Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 32, and Josephus, *Antiqui.* I, 13. 1, likewise introduce the 'Akedah with a description of Isaac's virtues on account of which he was very dear to his father, and yet Abraham did not hesitate to bring him as a sacrifice to God as soon as he was commanded to do so.

231. PR 40, 170a; A different view is given in BR 55. 7; comp. with pp. 195, 196, and the notes appertaining to them.

232. Yashar Wa-Yera, 44a, 44b. Comp. the unknown Midrash in Yalkut I, 98. The old sources (compare references in footnotes 15 on p. 550 and 758 on p. 769, as well as Tan. Wa-Yera 22), dwell upon the speed with which Abraham, in his zeal to obey God's command, proceeded to carry it out.

233. PRE 31; Yashar Wa-Yera, 44b; Wa-Yosha', 37; comp. below, note 236.

234. Yashar Wa-Yera, 44b–45a, based on old sources; comp. Sanhedrin 89b; BR 56. 4; Tan. B. I, 114; Tan. Wa-Yera 22; PR 40, 170b; Wa-Yosha', 36–37; the unknown Midrash in Yalkut I, 98. In BR the tempter is Sammael, which is only a different name for Satan; comp. above, note 228. In BR 56. 4 it is stated that Abraham hid Isaac in a casket that Satan should not lay hands upon him and, by causing injury to his body, render him unfit for a sacrifice, which according to the law must be without blemish. MHG I, 315, gives the scene of the temptation by Satan in accordance with an unknown midrashic source; comp. also *Neweh Shalom*, 59–60. In Sanhedrin and MHG, *loc. cit.*, it is related that Satan, having failed to sway either Abraham or Isaac, said to the former: "I have heard a voice from behind the curtain (see Index, *s. v.* "Curtain, Heavenly") proclaiming that a sheep, not Isaac, will be sacrificed." But even these words had no effect upon Abraham, who remarked: "It is the punishment of the mendacious not to be believed even when he tells the truth."

235. Wa-Yosha' 36; a somewhat different version is found in Yashar Wa-Yera, 46b. Comp. also the unknown Midrash in Yalkut I, 98; and 99.

236. Yashar Wa-Yera, 45a–45b, based on old sources; comp. BR 56. 2; PK 27, 170b; WR 20. 2; Kohelet 9. 7; Tan. B. I, 113, and III, 58; Tan. Wa-Yera 23 and Ahare 2; PR 40, 170b; PRE 21; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 22. 4; Aggadat Bereshit 31. 63. Comp. also Philo, *De Somniis* 11. Jub. 18. 4a reads: He made his companions abide at a well.

According to a widespread Haggadah they remained at a mile's distance from the holy mountain; comp. Tan. B. I, 113 and 183; II, 15; III, 9 and 14, as well as the numerous parallel passages cited by Theodor to BR 53. 13; see further Berakot 63b; *Sekel* 61, and Mahzor Vitry, 110.

237. BR 56. 2 and the sources referred to in the preceding note. Compare also Theodor, *ad loc.*, with p. 526.

238. Yashar Wa-Yera, 45. The Midrashim contain numerous explanations of the word כֶּהָ (Gen. 22. 5); comp. BR 56. 2; Tan. B. I, 113; Targum Yerushalmi. Gen., *loc. cit.*; Aggadat Shir 1. 5 (this is the source of Al-Barceloni, 57); Tan. Wa-Yehi 7; BR 43. 8; MHG I, 320.

239. BR 56. 2; Tan. B. I, 113; Tan. Wa-Yera 23; PR 40, 170b; Mo'ed Katan 18a; Ephraim I, 77B. 2 ARN 43, 118 (and from there in Midrash Aggada 1. 51), enumerates the "unconscious prophecies". John, 11. 51, and Herodotus III, 153, show that this conception is widespread.

## THE 'AKEDAH

And while they were walking along, Isaac spake unto his father, "Behold, the fire and the wood, but where then is the lamb for a burnt offering before the Lord?" And Abraham answered Isaac, saying, "The Lord hath chosen thee, my son, for a perfect burnt offering, instead of the lamb." And Isaac said unto his father, "I will do all that the Lord hath spoken to thee with joy and cheerfulness of heart." And Abraham again said unto Isaac his son, "Is there in thy heart any thought or counsel concerning this which is not proper? Tell me, my son, I pray thee! O my son, conceal it not from me." And Isaac answered, "As the Lord liveth, and as thy soul liveth, there is nothing in my heart to cause me to deviate either to the right or the left from the word that He hath spoken unto thee. Neither limb nor muscle hath moved or stirred on account of this, nor is there in my heart any thought or evil counsel concerning this. But I am joyful and cheerful of heart in this matter, and I say, Blessed is the Lord who has this day chosen me to be a burnt offering before Him."



Abraham greatly rejoiced at the words of Isaac, and they went on and came together to that place that the Lord had spoken of.<sup>240</sup> And Abraham approached to build the altar in that place, and Abraham did build, while Isaac handed him stones and mortar, until they finished erecting the altar. And Abraham took the wood and arranged it upon the altar, and he bound Isaac, to place him upon the wood which was upon the altar, to slay him for a burnt offering before the Lord.<sup>241</sup> Isaac spake hereupon: "Father, make haste, bare thine arm, and bind my hands and feet securely, for I am a young man, but thirty-seven years of age, and thou art an old man. When I behold the slaughtering knife in thy hand, I may perchance begin to tremble at the sight and push against thee, for the desire unto life is bold. Also I may do myself an injury and make myself unfit to be sacrificed. I adjure thee, therefore, my father, make haste, execute the will of thy Creator, delay not. Turn up thy garment, gird thy loins, and after that thou hast slaughtered me, burn me unto fine ashes. Then gather the ashes, and bring them to Sarah, my mother, and place them in a casket in her chamber. At all hours, whenever she enters her chamber, she will remember her son Isaac and weep for him."

And again Isaac spoke: "As soon as thou hast slaughtered me, and hast separated thyself from me, and returnest to Sarah my mother, and she asketh thee, Where is my son Isaac? what wilt thou answer her, and what will you two do in your old age?" Abraham answered, and said, "We know we can survive thee by a few days only. He who was our Comfort before thou wast born, will comfort us now and henceforth."

After he had laid the wood in order, and bound Isaac on the altar, upon the wood, Abraham braced his arms, rolled up his garments, and leaned his knees upon Isaac with all his strength. And God, sitting upon His throne, high and

exalted, saw how the hearts of the two were the same, and tears were rolling down from the eyes of Abraham upon Isaac, and from Isaac down upon the wood, so that it was submerged in tears. When Abraham stretched forth his hand, and took the knife to slay his son, God spoke to the angels: "Do you see how Abraham my friend proclaims the unity of My Name in the world? Had I hearkened unto you at the time of the creation of the world, when ye spake, What is man, that Thou art mindful of him? And the son of man, that Thou visitest him? who would there have been to make known the unity of My Name in this world?" The angels then broke into loud weeping, and they exclaimed: "The highways lie waste, the wayfaring man ceaseth, he hath broken the covenant. Where is the reward of Abraham, he who took the wayfarers into his house, gave them food and drink, and went with them to bring them on the way? The covenant is broken, whereof Thou didst speak to him, saying, 'For in Isaac shall thy seed be called,' and saying, 'My covenant will I establish with Isaac,' for the slaughtering knife is set upon his throat."

The tears of the angels fell upon the knife, so that it could not cut Isaac's throat, but from terror his soul escaped from him. Then God spoke to the archangel Michael, and said: "Why standest thou here? Let him not be slaughtered." Without delay, Michael, anguish in his voice, cried out: "Abraham! Abraham! Lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do thou any thing unto him!" Abraham made answer, and he said: "God did command me to slaughter Isaac, and thou dost command me not to slaughter him! The words of the Teacher and the words of the disciple—unto whose words doth one hearken?"<sup>242</sup> Then Abraham heard it said: "By Myself have I sworn, saith the Lord, because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only son, that in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as



the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea-shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies, and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed, because thou hast obeyed My voice."

At once Abraham left off from Isaac, who returned to life, revived by the heavenly voice admonishing Abraham not to slaughter his son. Abraham loosed his bonds, and Isaac stood upon his feet, and spoke the benediction, "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who quickenest the dead."<sup>243</sup>

Then spake Abraham to God, "Shall I go hence without having offered up a sacrifice?" Whereunto God replied, and said, "Lift up thine eyes, and behold the sacrifice behind thee."<sup>244</sup> And Abraham lifted up his eyes, and, behold, behind him a ram caught in the thicket, which God had created in the twilight of Sabbath eve in the week of creation, and prepared since then as a burnt offering instead of Isaac. And the ram had been running toward Abraham, when Satan caught hold of him and entangled his horns in the thicket, that he might not advance to Abraham. And Abraham, seeing this, fetched him from the thicket, and brought him upon the altar as an offering in the place of his son Isaac. And Abraham sprinkled the blood of the ram upon the altar, and he exclaimed, and said, "This is instead of my son, and may this be considered as the blood of my son before the Lord." And whatsoever Abraham did by the altar, he exclaimed, and said, "This is instead of my son, and may it be considered before the Lord in place of my son." And God accepted the sacrifice of the ram, and it was accounted as though it had been Isaac.<sup>245</sup>

As the creation of this ram had been extraordinary, so also was the use to which all parts of his carcass were put. Not one thing went to waste. The ashes of the parts burnt upon the altar formed the foundation of the inner altar, whereon the expiatory sacrifice was brought once a year,

on the Day of Atonement, the day on which the offering of Isaac took place. Of the sinews of the ram, David made ten strings for his harp upon which he played. The skin served Elijah for his girdle, and of his two horns, the one was blown at the end of the revelation on Mount Sinai, and the other will be used to proclaim the end of the Exile, when the "great horn shall be blown, and they shall come which were ready to perish in the land of Assyria, and they that were outcasts in the land of Egypt, and they shall worship the Lord in the holy mountain at Jerusalem."<sup>246</sup>

When God commanded the father to desist from sacrificing Isaac, Abraham said: "One man tempts another, because he knoweth not what is in the heart of his neighbor. But Thou surely didst know that I was ready to sacrifice my son!"

God: "It was manifest to Me, and I foreknew it, that thou wouldst withhold not even thy soul from Me."

Abraham: "And why, then, didst Thou afflict me thus?"

God: "It was My wish that the world should become acquainted with thee, and should know that it is not without good reason that I have chosen thee from all the nations. Now it hath been witnessed unto men that thou fearest God."<sup>247</sup>

Hereupon God opened the heavens, and Abraham heard the words, "By Myself I swear!"

Abraham: "Thou swearest, and also I swear, I will not leave this altar until I have said what I have to say."

God: "Speak whatsoever thou hast to speak!"

Abraham: "Didst Thou not promise me Thou wouldst let one come forth out of mine own bowels, whose seed should fill the whole world?"

God: "Yes."

Abraham: "Whom didst Thou mean?"

God: "Isaac."

Abraham: "Didst Thou not promise me to make my seed as numerous as the sand of the sea-shore?"



God: "Yes."

Abraham: "Through which one of my children?"

God: "Through Isaac."

Abraham: "I might have reproached Thee, and said, O Lord of the world, yesterday Thou didst tell me, In Isaac shall Thy seed be called, and now Thou sayest, Take thy son, thine only son, even Isaac, and offer him for a burnt offering. But I refrained myself, and I said nothing. Thus mayest Thou, when the children of Isaac commit trespasses and because of them fall upon evil times, be mindful of the offering of their father Isaac, and forgive their sins and deliver them from their suffering."

God: "Thou hast said what thou hadst to say, and I will now say what I have to say. Thy children will sin before me in time to come, and I will sit in judgment upon them on the New Year's Day. If they desire that I should grant them pardon, they shall blow the ram's horn on that day, and I, mindful of the ram that was substituted for Isaac as a sacrifice, will forgive them for their sins."<sup>248</sup>

Furthermore, the Lord revealed unto Abraham that the Temple, to be erected on the spot of Isaac's offering, would be destroyed,<sup>249</sup> and as the ram substituted for Isaac extricated himself from one tree but to be caught in another, so his children would pass from kingdom to kingdom—delivered from Babylonia they would be subjugated by Media, rescued from Media they would be enslaved by Greece, escaped from Greece they would serve Rome—yet in the end they would be redeemed in a final redemption, at the sound of the ram's horn, when "the Lord God shall blow the trumpet, and shall go with whirlwinds of the south."<sup>250</sup>

The place on which Abraham had erected the altar was the same whereon Adam had brought the first sacrifice, and Cain and Abel had offered their gifts to God—the same whereon Noah raised

an altar to God after he left the ark;<sup>251</sup> and Abraham, who knew that it was the place appointed for the Temple, called it Yireh, for it would be the abiding-place of the fear and the service of God.<sup>252</sup> But as Shem had given it the name Shalem, Place of Peace, and God would not give offence to either Abraham or Shem, He united the two names, and called the city by the name Jerusalem.<sup>253</sup>

After the sacrifice on Mount Moriah, Abraham returned to Beer-sheba, the scene of so many of his joys.<sup>254</sup> Isaac was carried to Paradise by angels, and there he sojourned for three years. Thus Abraham returned home alone, and when Sarah beheld him, she exclaimed, "Satan spoke truth when he said that Isaac was sacrificed," and so grieved was her soul that it fled from her body.<sup>255</sup>

240. Yashar Wa-Yera, 45b (read **בזוי** instead of **בזה**), based on old sources; comp. BR 56. 3–4; Tan. Wa-Yera 23; PR 40, 170b; Targumim Yerushalmi Gen. 22. 8; PRE 31. The explanation of **יחדו** (Gen., *loc. cit.*) in the sense of "in the same spirit", given in the above-mentioned sources, is also found in ps.—Philo, 41A. Comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.* I, 32. 1; MHG I, 321; compare with p. 875.

241. Yashar Wa-Yera, 45b; *Neweh Shalom*, 50; Wa-Yosha' 37; Tan. Wa-Yera 23. According to BR 56. 4; PR 40, 170; ER 28, 138; EZ 2, 174, Isaac did not participate in the erection of the altar. See also below.

242. Wa-Yosha' 37–38 (text, 38, 2, is to be emended and read **שאמרתם**); PRE 31; *Neweh Shalom* 50–51; Yashar Wa-Yera, 46a (the expression **כופר ופדין** is an Arabism); Tan. Wa-Yera 23; Yerushalmi Targumim, Gen. 22. 9; see also the quotations from an unknown Midrash given in MHG I, 521–522, and Mahzor Vitry 330. The weeping of the angels is already referred to in the old sources; comp. BR 56. 6 (on **חוצה**. See Targum and Peshitta, Isa. 38. 7, which connect this word with Syriac **חיצא**; hence the expression **בידיה היא חיצה** becomes intelligible); PR 40, 171a; PRE 31; Aggadat Bereshit 31, 61–62; MHG I, 322 (here it is Metatron who pleads for Isaac's life, and it is he who is sent to restrain Abraham from slaying Isaac); Zohar I, 120b. Compare also with p. 1079, as well as pp. 1165, 1166. That the bluntness of his knife prevented Abraham from carrying out his intention, is alluded to also in BR



56. 7; Tan. Wa-Yera 23 (here Satan knocks the knife out of Abraham's hand; but, perhaps, **המלאך** is to be read instead of **השטן**); MHG I, 322. See also the following note. Isaac's resignation to God's will is also praised in 4 Maccabees 16. 20, whereas in 13. 12 and 14. 20 it is Abraham who is the hero of the 'Akedah. See note 299; comp. ps.—Philo 18C and note 240. The binding of Isaac by Abraham was in conformity with the law, which prescribes the binding of a sacrifice before it is slaughtered; comp. Shabbat 54a; 2 Enoch 59; Eldad 44. See also Ginzberg in *Journal for Jewish Lore and Philosophy*, I, 206. It is to be noted in this connection that Abraham observed all the sacrificial ceremonies while preparing to offer up Isaac. Comp. MHG I, 322; PRE 31; Hullin 16a. The repetition of Abraham's name by the angel is explained by Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 32, in the same manner as in PR and Wa-Yosha', *loc. cit.*, whereas BR 56. 7 and the parallel passages cited by Theodor consider it an expression of endearment. See also Jub. 18. 10.

243. PRE 31; MHG I, 323; Wa-Yosha' 38; unknown midrashic sources in *Shibbole ha-Leket*, No. 18 (*Tefillah*), 17–18; Al-Barceloni, 125, based on PRE, *loc. cit.*, but with the additional remark that Isaac gave up his life at the appearance of the Shekinah. In BR 65. 9 Isaac's blindness is explained in a similar manner; comp. Hebrews 11. 19, and below, note 255. With regard to the oath taken by God, Philo, *Legum Allegor.* 71, remarks: The mere words of God are . . . laws and institutions . . . It is proper to say that all the words of God are oaths confirmed by the accomplishment of the acts to which they relate. Whether Hebrews 6. 13 is to be traced directly to Philo is doubtful. "The word of God is an act" is a favorite phrase with the Rabbis; comp. BR 44. 22; Tehillim 107, 462. See also Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen., 4. 170; footnote 1 on p. 47.

244. PR 40, 171b; MHG I, 323; Tan. B. IV, 72.

245. Yashar Wa-Yera, 46b, based on old sources; comp. BR 56. 9 and parallel passages cited by Theodor, *ad loc.*, as well as PRE 26 and unknown Midrash in Yalkut I, 101. **ביום עשורו** in Yashar is not to be taken literally; compare with footnote 99 on p. 78, and Zohar I, 120b. According to another view, it was the bell-wether of Abraham's flocks that was sacrificed instead of Isaac. Abraham had called this pet animal Isaac, and it was therefore quite appropriate that Isaac, the ram, should take the place of the real Isaac; comp. MHG I, 323–324, and *Neueh Shalom*, 51, with the additional remark that Gabriel had brought the ram to the altar.

246. PRE 31. On the trumpet at the advent of the Messiah, see p. 1021, and footnote 116 appertaining thereto. Bahya on Exod. 19. 13, and Caro, *Toledot Yizhak* on Gen. 22. 13 (the latter is based on the former) state that the ram came to life again after it was sacrificed and burned to ashes. On the resurrection of animals, compare with p. 198, and notes 113, 317.

247. Tan. B. I, 114, and IV, 72; Tan. Wa-Yera 23 and Shelah 14; PR 40, 171a; BaR 17. 2; comp. also BR 56. 7 and 57. 14, as well as Sifre D., 313. In the sources herewith mentioned it is stated that God promised Abraham not to tempt either him or Isaac in the future. The temptations and sufferings intended for Abraham were accordingly assigned to Job.—The haggadic interpretation of **יָדַעְתִּי** as **יָדַעְתִּי** ("I made thee known") is already found in Jub. 18. 1, as well as in Peshitta and Vulgate Gen. 22. 12.

248. Tan. B. I, 115; Tan. Wa-Yera 23; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 2, 65d; PK 23, 154b; WR 29. 10; MHG I, 325–326; an unknown midrashic source in *Hadar*, 8a; PR 40, 171b. Comp. also BR 56. 9, Yerushalmi Targumim, Gen. 22. 14. *Nispahim*, 47, reads: God forgives Israel's sins on New Year on account of the merit of Abraham who was willing to be burned in the furnace of fire by Nimrod in order to sanctify God's name. On the basis of the Haggadot which connect the ceremony of the blowing of the ram's horn on New Year with the ram sacrificed in lieu of Isaac, the view arose that the 'Akedah took place on that day. A different opinion, favored by the Kabbalists, maintains that this event occurred on the Day of Atonement. See Ginzberg in *Ha-Zofeh*, III, 186–188. Now and again one meets with the view that the 'Akedah took place in Nisan; comp. ShR 15. 11, and see further note 126.

249. BR 56. 10; Sifre D., 352; PRE 31; Targum Yerushalmi 22. 15; comp. note 251. According to PRE 23, Abraham performed the rite of circumcision on his body at the site of the temple; see further note 283. In remembrance of the sacrifice of Isaac, God commanded that two sacrifices should be brought daily; ER 56. 36; WR 2. 11.

250. BR 56. 7; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 2, 65d; PK 23, 154b; PR 40, 171b.

251. PR 31; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 22. 9. The altar destroyed by the flood was rebuilt by Noah, but later demolished by the builders of the Tower; MHG I, 321.

252. MHG I, 325; comp. the following note.

253. BR 56. 10; Tehillim 76, 341–342; see note 102. The etymological remark of Lactantius, *Institutiones*, 4. 10, to the effect that Jerusalem was called after Solomon, is not based, as is generally assumed, on the Greek **ἱερὸν**, but on the Hebrew **שְׁלֹמֶה** [ירושלם]. *i. e.* "the possession of Solomon." Theophilus 2. 31 remarks: Melchizedek changed the name of the city from Salem to Jerusalem. Numerous are the etymologies given of the name Moriah, the Temple mount (2 Chron. 3. 1), which according to Jewish tradition, accepted by the Church, is identical with the place where Abraham was commanded to sacrifice Isaac; comp. BR 55. 7; Yerushalmi Berakot 4, 8c; Ta'anit 10a; Berakot 62b; Shir 4. 4; Tan. B. I, 112; PR 40, 169b–170a; Tehillim 30, 233; Targumim, Aquila, Symmachus, and Septuagint, Gen. 22. 2. Peshitta stands alone with its rendering of Moriah by Amorite' (**מוריה**=**אמוריה**) and yet the Syriac Fathers



Ephraim (I, 100, 17c) and Aphraates (400) maintain that the 'Akedah took place on the holy mount of Jerusalem; see Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 113–114. Jerome, on Gen., *loc. cit.*, gives two etymologies of Moriah which agree with those of BR, *loc. cit.* Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 13, 2, knows of the identity of Moriah with the Temple mount, but gives no etymological explanation of the meaning of Moriah. See also the unknown Midrash in Yalkut I, 100.

254. BR 56. 1. According to the reading of MHG I, 327, Isaac did not return with his father, but by himself, “in the stillness of the night, in order that his miraculous escape from death should not be the cause of provoking the evil eye.” A different view is found in Midrash Aggada I, 54, and Targum Yerushalmi 22. 19. The angels alluded to in the last source probably belong to another legend; comp. the following note.

255. MHG I, 327. The purpose of Isaac's stay in paradise was to be cured from the injury inflicted by his father before the angel stopped him from completing the sacrifice; comp. the passage from an unknown Midrash *Hadar*, 10b; *Minhat Yehudah*, 13b (on Gen. 25. 27); Pa'aneah Raza, Gen. 24. 64; Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 22. 2 (the reference to R. Bahya covers only the sentence 'קרית ארבע וכו' (קריית ארבע); Shu'aib, Hayye Sarah, 11b. *Shibbole ha-Leket*, No. 18 (*Tefillah*) 17–18, quotes an unknown Midrash to the effect that Isaac was burned to ashes, and then brought back to life. The old sources, however, explicitly state that God forbade Abraham to cause even the slightest injury to Isaac; for Abraham had intended to bleed him a little, in order thus to show his willingness to offer to God his most precious possession dearest to his heart; comp. BR 56. 7, and parallel passages cited by Theodor. It is therefore very strange that Mekilta RS 4 speaks of Isaac's blood brought as a sacrifice. See, however, ps.—Philo 18c: And for the blood of him—Isaac—did I choose this people; comp. note 243.—*Yalkut David* on Gen. 27. 27 quotes the Zohar with reference to Isaac's stay in paradise, but nothing of this kind occurs in the latter, and there can be no doubt that Yalkut Reubeni is to be read instead of Zohar, as the supposed quotation from the Zohar is actually found, word for word, in Yalkut Reubeni, *loc. cit.* For further details on this point see below, footnote 301, and footnote 92 on p. 266. *Neweh Shalom* remarks: While Isaac was lying on the altar bound as a sacrifice, the angel of death took his stand opposite him, and said: “As soon as Abraham lays his hand on Isaac, and slays him, I shall take his—Isaac's—soul.” But when he saw that all the angels were pleading for Isaac's life (compare with p. 229), he remarked: “This man has no enemy, and I will therefore do him no harm.”—Abraham was enjoined to carry out the commandment of the 'Akedah three days after it was given (Gen. 22. 4), in order that it should not be said that he fulfilled God's will while in a state of excitement and perturbation; BR 55. 6; Tan. B. I, 113; Tan. Wa-Yera 22; PR 40,

170a–170b; Aggadat Bereshit 31, 63–64; Ephraim I, 76E. The diffuse comments of Philo on the 'Akedah which he explains as a protest against the sacrificing of children, show that Alexandrian Judaism, no less than Palestinian, attached great importance to this episode in the lives of the patriarchs.—The site of the Temple mount was originally a plain, but was “elevated” at the moment it was designated as the place for the 'Akedah; Tan. Wa-Yera 22; Yalkut I, 100.

## THE DEATH AND BURIAL OF SARAH

While Abraham was engaged in the sacrifice, Satan went to Sarah, and appeared to her in the figure of an old man, very humble and meek, and said to her: “Dost thou not know all that Abraham has done unto thine only son this day? He took Isaac, and built an altar, slaughtered him, and brought him up as a sacrifice. Isaac cried and wept before his father, but he looked not at him, neither did he have compassion upon him.” After saying these words to Sarah, Satan went away from her, and she thought him to be an old man from amongst the sons of men who had been with her son. Sarah lifted up her voice, and cried bitterly, saying: “O my son, Isaac, my son, O that I had this day died instead of thee! It grieves me for thee! After that I have reared thee and have brought thee up, my joy is turned into mourning over thee. In my longing for a child, I cried and prayed, till I bore thee at ninety. Now hast thou served this day for the knife and the fire. But I console myself, it being the word of God, and thou didst perform the command of thy God, for who can transgress the word of our God, in whose hands is the soul of every living creature? Thou art just, O Lord our God, for all Thy works are good and righteous, for I also rejoice with the word which Thou didst command, and while mine eye weepeth bitterly, my heart rejoiceth.” And Sarah laid her head upon the bosom of one of her handmaids, and she became as still as a stone.



She rose up afterward and went about making inquiries concerning her son, till she came to Hebron, and no one could tell her what had happened to her son. Her servants went to seek him in the house of Shem and Eber, and they could not find him, and they sought throughout the land, and he was not there. And, behold, Satan came to Sarah in the shape of an old man, and said unto her, "I spoke falsely unto thee, for Abraham did not kill his son, and he is not dead," and when she heard the word, her joy was so exceedingly violent that her soul went out through joy.

When Abraham with Isaac returned to Beer-sheba, they sought for Sarah and could not find her, and when they made inquiries concerning her, they were told that she had gone as far as Hebron to seek them. Abraham and Isaac went to her to Hebron, and when they found that she was dead, they cried bitterly over her, and Isaac said: "O my mother, my mother, how hast thou left me, and whither hast thou gone? O whither hast thou gone, and how hast thou left me?" And Abraham and all his servants wept and mourned over her a great and heavy mourning,<sup>256</sup> even that Abraham did not pray, but spent his time in mourning and weeping over Sarah.<sup>257</sup> And, indeed, he had great reason to mourn his loss, for even in her old age Sarah had retained the beauty of her youth and the innocence of her childhood.<sup>258</sup>

The death of Sarah was a loss not only for Abraham and his family, but for the whole country. So long as she was alive, all went well in the land. After her death confusion ensued. The weeping, lamenting, and wailing over her going hence was universal, and Abraham, instead of receiving consolation, had to offer consolation to others. He spoke to the mourning people, and said: "My children, take not the going hence of Sarah too much to heart. There is one event unto all, to the pious and the impious alike. I pray you now, give me a burying-place with you, not as a gift, but for money."<sup>259</sup>

In these last few words Abraham's unassuming modesty was expressed. God had promised him the whole land, yet when he came to bury his dead, he had to pay for the grave, and it did not enter his heart to cast aspersions upon the ways of God. In all humility he spake to the people of Hebron, saying, "I am a stranger and a sojourner with you." Therefore spake God to him, and said, "Thou didst bear thyself modestly. As thou livest, I will appoint thee lord and prince over them."<sup>260</sup>

To the people themselves he appeared an angel, and they answered his words, saying: "Thou art a prince of God among us. In the choice of our sepulchres bury thy dead, among the rich if thou wilt, or among the poor if thou wilt."<sup>261</sup>

Abraham first of all gave thanks to God for the friendly feeling shown to him by the children of Heth, and then he continued his negotiations for the Cave of Machpelah.<sup>262</sup> He had long known the peculiar value of this spot. Adam had chosen it as a burial-place for himself. He had feared his body might be used for idolatrous purposes after his death; he therefore designated the Cave of Machpelah as the place of his burial, and in the depths his corpse was laid, so that none might find it.<sup>263</sup> When he interred Eve there, he wanted to dig deeper, because he scented the sweet fragrance of Paradise, near the entrance to which it lay, but a heavenly voice called to him, Enough! Adam himself was buried there by Seth, and until the time of Abraham the place was guarded by angels, who kept a fire burning near it perpetually, so that none dared approach it and bury his dead therein.<sup>264</sup> Now, it happened on the day when Abraham received the angels in his house, and he wanted to slaughter an ox for their entertainment, that the ox ran away, and in his pursuit of him Abraham entered the Cave of Machpelah. There he saw Adam and Eve stretched out upon couches, candles burning at the head of their



resting-places, while a sweet scent pervaded the cave.

Therefore Abraham wished to acquire the Cave of Machpelah from the children of Heth, the inhabitants of the city of Jebus. They said to him, "We know that in time to come God will give these lands unto thy seed, and now do thou swear a covenant with us that Israel shall not wrest the city of Jebus from its inhabitants without their consent." Abraham agreed to the condition, and he acquired the field from Ephron, in whose possession it lay.<sup>265</sup>

This happened the very day on which Ephron had been made the chief of the children of Heth, and he had been raised to the position so that Abraham might not have to have dealings with a man of low rank. It was of advantage to Abraham, too, for Ephron at first refused to sell his field, and only the threat of the children of Heth to depose him from his office, unless he fulfilled the desire of Abraham, could induce him to change his disposition.<sup>266</sup>

Dissembling deceitfully, Ephron then offered to give Abraham the field without compensation, but when Abraham insisted upon paying for it, Ephron said: "My lord, hearken unto me. A piece of land worth four hundred shekels of silver, what is that betwixt me and thee?" showing only too well that the money was of the greatest consequence to him. Abraham understood his words, and when he came to pay for the field, he weighed out the sum agreed upon between them in the best of current coin.<sup>267</sup> A deed, signed by four witnesses, was drawn up, and the field of Ephron, which was in Machpelah, the field, and the cave which was therein, were made sure unto Abraham and his descendants for all times.

The burial of Sarah then took place, amid great magnificence and the sympathy of all. Shem and his son Eber, Abimelech king of the Philistines, Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre, as well as all the great of the land, followed her bier. A seven days'

mourning was kept for her, and all the inhabitants of the land came to condole with Abraham and Isaac.<sup>268</sup>

When Abraham entered the cave to place the body of Sarah within, Adam and Eve refused to remain there, "because," they said, "as it is, we are ashamed in the presence of God on account of the sin we committed, and now we shall be even more ashamed on account of your good deeds." Abraham soothed Adam. He promised to pray to God for him, that the need for shame be removed from him. Adam resumed his place, and Abraham entombed Sarah, and at the same time he carried Eve, resisting, back to her place.<sup>269</sup>

One year after the death of Sarah, Abimelech king of the Philistines died, too, at the age of one hundred and ninety-three years. His successor upon the throne was his twelve year old son Benmelek, who took the name of his father after his accession. Abraham did not fail to pay a visit of condolence at the court of Abimelech.

Lot also died about this time, at the age of one hundred and thirty-two. His sons, Moab and Ammon, both married Canaanitish wives. Moab beget a son, and Ammon had six sons, and the descendants of both were numerous exceedingly.

Abraham suffered a severe loss at the same time in the death of his brother Nahor, whose days ended at Haran, when he had reached the age of one hundred and seventy-two years.<sup>270</sup>

---

256. Yashar Wa-Yera, 46b–47a, based on old sources; Tan. Wa-Yera 23 and Ahare 2; PRE 32; PK 26, 170b; WR 20. 2; Kohelet 9. 7; Tan. B. IV, 53; Midrash Aggada I, 52 and 55; MHG I, 237. Comp. also Wa-Yosha' 26, and *Neweh Shalom*, 51–52. Sarah died in the month of Heshwan, *i. e.*, shortly after the 'Akedah, which took place in the previous month (see note 248); Esther R 3. 7; Abba Gorion 25. The sound of the blowing of the Shofar on New Year is brought in relation with the sound emitted by Sarah at the moment of her demise; see Ginzberg, *Hazofeh*, III, 186–188. The words of resignation put into Sarah's mouth are modelled after the *Zidduk ha-Din* (comp. Baer, *Siddur*, 586),



and the same remark applies to similar sentences on p. 340, and p. 818 as well.

257. MHG I, 346, based upon an unknown source; BR 58. 6.

258. BR 58. 1; MHG I, 333–334. Shu'aib, Hayye Sarah, 11a, quotes the following unknown Haggadah: Sarah really lived only thirty-seven years—from the birth of Isaac to her death—for the years she spent as a barren woman cannot be regarded as life. The same authority, Wa-Yehi, 22d, quotes a similar Haggadah concerning Jacob, who is said to have lived only thirty-four years, the space of time his favorite son Joseph stayed with him. *Hadar*, 8a (Tosafot and RASh), and *Da'at*, 10c–10d, could hardly have been made use of by Shu'aib.

259. MHG I, 346–347; on the eulogy spoken by Abraham upon Sarah, see *ibid*, 341. In the word *ולבכתה* (“and to weep for her”, Gen. 23. 2) the letter כ is small according to the Masorah; this indicates that Abraham did not weep very much for Sarah’s death; so *Hadar* and *Ba'al ha-Turim*, *ad loc.*, whereas *Leket Midrashim* 21 gives a different explanation of the smallness of this letter. It is noteworthy that Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 44 (comp. also, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 4. 73) concludes from the biblical narrative of the death of Sarah that Abraham mourned for her a short time only, as immoderate mourning is not fitting for the wise who should not feel sorry when restoring to God the deposit entrusted to them. This last remark of Philo is often met with in Jewish writings; comp. ARN 14, 59; Mishle 31, 108; Tan. Bereshit 7; see also Wisdom 15. 8, 16.—Sarah died during Abraham’s lifetime, her great piety notwithstanding, because she accused her husband of being unfair to her (Gen. 16. 5); by her premature death it was proved that her accusations were unfounded; Rosh ha-Shanah 16b; Baba Kamma 93b; comp. above, note 151. *Sifte Kohen* on Gen. 23. 2 quotes, from an unknown Midrash, the following legend about Sarah’s death: Satan appeared to her and asked her whether she knew where Isaac was. “He went with his father to be instructed in the laws of sacrifices,” was her reply. “No,” rejoined Satan, “he himself is the sacrifice.” She betook herself to the three giants, Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmi (compare with p. 707), and asked them to look into the distance, far, far away, and see if they could not discern an old man accompanied by two lads. They obeyed and informed her that they saw an old man with a knife in his hand and next to him a youth bound as a sacrifice. She was so terrified that her soul flew out of her body. A similar legend is found in the unknown midrashic source given in Yalkut I, 98.

260. MHG I, 347; Jub. 18. 3–4; comp. also 2 ARN 45, 124; WR 3. 7; vol. II, p. 339. With reference to these words of Abraham, Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 4. 74, remarks: The pious feel like strangers in this world, they are at home in the other world only. See the identical words of the

Midrash cited in text on p. 394. In BR 58. 6, on the other hand, Abraham is made to say to the children of Heth: “If I wish, I shall claim the rights of the owner, since God promised this land.”

261. MHG I, 348; comp. also BR 58. 6, and the passage, from an unknown Midrash, cited in Makiri, Proverbs 30, 88a.

262. BR 57. 7. This is very likely a haggadic interpretation of *לפני* (Gen. 23. 12), which is explained in the sense of *in the presence of*.

263. PRE 20. The Cave of Machpelah being a double cave—hence its name *מכפלה* “double”—hid all the more Adam’s body which was buried in the inner cave; comp. ‘Erubin 53a and Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen., 3. 80. Abraham, knowing that at the time of the resurrection of the dead those buried in the Cave of Machpelah would rise first, wished to be buried there; comp. the passage, from an unknown Midrash, cited in *Yad Yosef* on Gen. 23. 9 and *Abkat Rokel* II, 5. See further details concerning the Cave of Machpelah mentioned on pp. 68, and 97, as well as on p. 436, and note 7 appertaining thereto.

264. Zohar Ruth I, 97b.

265. PRE 26; Zohar Ruth I, 97c; Zohar I, 127a–128a. Concerning the light shining over R. Akiba’s grave, see Mishle 9. 62.

266. BR 58. 7; ShR 31. 17. Ephron, however, was not aware of the great treasure in his possession, as the light of the Cave of Machpelah was invisible to him; Sabba, Hayye Sarah, 24a.

267. BR 58. 7; PK 11, 95a–95b; ShR 31. 17; Tan. B. I, 103–104 and V, 20; Tan. Wa-Yera 4, Behar 1, and Re'eh 10; comp. also MHG I, 349–350; Mekilta Yitro 1, 57b; Mekilta RS, 85; Baba Mezi'a 87a; ARN 13, 57; Yerushalmi Kiddushin I, 59d; Onkelos and Yerushalmi Targumim, Gen. 23. 16. The Haggadah in the afore-mentioned sources finds in the defective spelling of the name *עפרן* (Gen. *loc. cit.*) an indication that the bearer of the name was morally “defective”; the same idea is maintained by Jerome, *ad loc.* The source of MHG is none of the Midrashim just quoted. As a reward for Abraham’s humility, who twice bowed down before the children of Heth, the nations will bow down twice before Israel (that is, they will become Israel’s subjects), once during the reign of Solomon and then again in the days of the Messiah; MHG I, 349, where a new source is introduced with the words *בא וראה*; comp. Schechter, *ad loc.*, and see above, note 262.

268. Yashar Hayye Sarah, 47a–48b, where the names of the witnesses on the bill of sale are also given; compare with p. 920. As a reward for the kindness shown to Abraham by the inhabitants of Hebron, this city remained in their possession for forty-seven years longer than they were entitled to it. The Jews took it from them forty years after the exodus from Egypt, whereas Zoan, that had been founded



seven years later than Hebron (Num. 13. 22), was destroyed at the time of the exodus; Sifra 18. 2, 85c; MHG I, 347–348. The inhabitants of Hebron, who, in order to show the last honor to Sarah, closed their places of business, did not die before they participated thirty-eight years later, in the funeral ceremonies for Abraham; BR 58. 7 and 62. 3. Shem and Eber, who were present at Sarah's as well as at Abraham's burial, took care that the latter should be interred next to the former; BR, *loc. cit.*

269. Zohar I, 128a–128b. Instead of זמן it is best to read זל, though the former reading can be defended.

270. Yashar Hayye Sarah, 48a; comp. above, note 56. Not long before Sarah's death Abraham lost his father Terah; BR 58. 5–6, where it is said: At the time of Sarah's death Abraham saw the angel of death draw his sword against him. The purport of this remark probably is that at this time some of Abraham's relatives met their death; comp. Mo'ed Katan 27b, below. Zohar I, 125a, maintains that Sarah died by a kiss from God, and not by the hand of the angel of death. Comp. Index, s. v. "Kiss from God".

## ELIEZER'S MISSION

**T**he death of Sarah dealt Abraham a blow from which he did not recover. So long as she was alive, he felt himself young and vigorous, but after she had passed away, old age suddenly overtook him.<sup>271</sup> It was he himself who made the plea that age be betrayed by suitable signs and tokens. Before the time of Abraham an old man was not distinguishable externally from a young man, and as Isaac was the image of his father, it happened frequently that father and son were mistaken for each other, and a request meant for the one was preferred to the other. Abraham prayed therefore that old age might have marks to distinguish it from youth, and God granted his petition, and since the time of Abraham the appearance of men changes in old age. This is one of the seven great wonders that have occurred in the course of history.<sup>272</sup>

The blessing of God did not forsake Abraham in old age, either. That it might not be said it had been granted to him only for the sake of Sarah, God prospered him after her death, too.

Hagar bore him a daughter, and Ishmael repented of his evil ways and subordinated himself to Isaac. And as Abraham enjoyed undisturbed happiness in his family, so also outside, in the world. The kings of the east and the west eagerly besieged the door of his house in order to derive benefit from his wisdom. From his neck a precious stone was suspended, which possessed the power of healing the sick who looked upon it. On the death of Abraham, God attached it to the wheel of the sun. The greatest blessing enjoyed by him, and by none beside except his son Isaac and Jacob the son of Isaac, was that the evil inclination had no power over him, so that in this life he had a foretaste of the future world.<sup>273</sup>

But all these Divine blessings showered upon Abraham were not undeserved. He was clean of hand, and pure of heart, one that did not lift up his soul unto vanity.<sup>274</sup>

He fulfilled all the commands that were revealed later, even the Rabbinical injunctions, as, for instance, the one relating to the limits of a Sabbath day's journey, wherefor his reward was that God disclosed to him the new teachings which He expounded daily in the heavenly academy.<sup>275</sup>

But one thing lacked to complete the happiness of Abraham, the marriage of Isaac. He therefore called his old servant Eliezer unto himself. Eliezer resembled his master not only externally, in his appearance, but also spiritually. Like Abraham he possessed full power over the evil inclination,<sup>276</sup> and like the master, the servant was an adept in the law.<sup>277</sup> Abraham spake the following words to Eliezer: "I am stricken in age, and I know not the day of my death. Therefore prepare thyself, and go unto my country, and to my kindred, and fetch hither a wife for my son."<sup>278</sup> Thus he spake by reason of the resolution he had taken immediately after the sacrifice of Isaac on Moriah, for he had there said within himself, that if the sacrifice had been executed, Isaac would



have gone hence childless. He was even ready to choose a wife for his son from among the daughters of his three friends, Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre, because he knew them to be pious, and he did not attach much importance to aristocratic stock. Then spake God to him, and said: "Concern thyself not about a wife for Isaac."<sup>279</sup> One has already been provided for him," and it was made known to Abraham that Milcah, the wife of his brother Nahor, childless until the birth of Isaac, had then been remembered by God and made fruitful. She bore Bethuel, and he in turn, at the time of Isaac's sacrifice, begot the daughter destined to be the wife of Isaac.<sup>280</sup>

Mindful of the proverb, "Even if the wheat of thine own place be darnel, use it for seed," Abraham determined to take a wife for Isaac from his own family. He argued that as any wife he chose would have to become a proselyte, it would be best to use his own stock, which had the first claim upon him.<sup>281</sup>

Eliezer now said to his master: "Peradventure no woman will be willing to follow me unto this land. May I then marry my own daughter to Isaac?" "No," replied Abraham, "thou art of the accursed race, and my son is of the blessed race, and curse and blessing cannot be united."<sup>282</sup> But beware thou that thou bring not my son again unto the land from whence I came, for if thou broughtest him thither again, it were as though thou tookest him to hell. God who sets the heavens in motion, He will set this matter right, too,<sup>283</sup> and He that took me from my father's house, and that spake unto me, and that swore unto me in Haran, and at the covenant of the pieces, that He would give this land unto my seed, He shall send His excellent angel before thee, and thou shalt take a wife for my son from thence." Eliezer then swore to his master concerning the matter, and Abraham made him take the oath by the sign of the covenant.<sup>284</sup>

---

271. Tan. Hayye Sarah, 4; Tan. B. I, 118; Aggadat Bereshit 34, 67–69; MHG I, 352–353. The Midrashim give in this connection a homiletic comment on the last chapter of Prov., which they refer to Sarah, the ideal of the "woman of valor". MHG I, 334–339, and likewise Mishle 31 find in this chapter the praise of the twenty-two "women of valor": Noah's wife, Sarah, Rebekah, Leah, Rachel, Bithiah (the foster-mother of Moses), Jochebed, Miriam, Hannah, Jael, the widow of Zarephath, Naomi, Rahab, Bath-Sheba, Michal, Hazleponith (Samson's mother), Elisheba (Aaron's wife), Serah (Asher's daughter), the wife of the prophet Obadiah, the Shunammite, Ruth, and Esther. Sarah, however, is the most prominent of these twenty-two "women of valor", and hence she is the only woman whose age, at her death, is given in Scripture.

272. Baba Mezi'a 87a; Sanhedrin 107b; BR 65. 9; Tan. B. I, 118 and 128; Tan. Hayye Sarah 1, and Toledot 6; Aggadat Bereshit 34, 69; PRE 52 (with the additional remark that this was one of the seven great miracles); Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 874, on Ps. 115; *Hadar*, 9a, quoting an unknown midrashic source. Comp. also Tan. B. I, 47, which reads: Abraham was the first to show signs of old age, to lavish hospitality, to suffer pain, and to distribute, in his lifetime, his possessions among his children. On the last point see Gen. 25. 6. Abraham said to God: "If Thou hadst made known to the generation of the flood what pain is, they would never have rebelled against Thee." Whereupon God replied: "Thou shalt be the first to experience suffering." And Isaac became very ill at his very birth. To celebrate his son's recovery from the "first illness" (caused by the circumcision?) Abraham made the great feast mentioned in Scripture (Gen. 21. 8; compare with footnote 206 and p. 218). See also footnote 74 on p. 264. On the Arabic version of the legend of the first illness, see Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 118.

273. Tan. Hayye Sarah 4; Baba Batra 16b; BR 59. 6–7; Tosefta Kiddushin 5. 17–21; comp. also Theodor, BR, *ad loc.*, and MHG I, 353–354. According to one view given in the sources just mentioned, the great blessing bestowed upon Abraham consisted in his having no daughter, while in the same passage the opposite view is recorded to the effect that Abraham *was blessed* with a daughter whose name was Bakkol ("with all things"). Compare also with Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 7; Yerushalmi Sotah 5, 20c, and Berakot 9, 14b, as well as pp. 412, 670 and 928.

274. BR 59. 5, where Ps. 24 is referred by the Psalmist to Abraham who is the pattern for the picture of the righteous. God said to Abraham: "Thou occupiest" thyself with showing loving-kindness to mankind, and art thus doing the same work as I. I shall therefore clothe thee with the same garments with which I am clad when appearing to the prophets" (comp. Dan. 7. 9); BR 58. 9; MHG I, 362; Mishle 16, 38; Tan. Hayye 4; Aggadat Bereshit 32, 68.



275. BR 59. 2, as well as 64. 3 and 95. 3; Tan. B. I, 58, 71, 211; III, 105; Tan. Lek 1 and 11, Behar 1; Aggadat Bereshit 13, 28; Tehillim I, 13 and 122; Yoma 28b; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 932, on Prov. 3. Comp. also Tosefta Kiddushin (end); ARN 33, 94 (second version 7, 21); Al-Barceloni 58–59. The Book of Jubilees sees its main task in furnishing the proof that the patriarchs—from Adam to Jacob—observed the laws that were subsequently revealed to Moses. But even this pseudepigraph has to admit that the Fathers did not observe all the laws of the Mosaic Code, and accordingly the revelation must be regarded as having taken place gradually. Comp. 33. 16, which passage was entirely misunderstood by Charles, *ad loc.*, as it has nothing to do with the Pauline doctrine, Romans 4. 15, but represents the thoroughly Jewish conception of a gradual revelation of the law. See on this point Jub. 36. 20 and the references to rabbinic writings below. Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 8. 46, seems also to be of the opinion that Gen. 26. 5 refers to the laws of the Torah which Abraham observed before the revelation on Sinai. In contrast to this view of the Haggadists concerning Abraham's observance of the Torah, we meet with statements by authoritative Tannaim and Amoraim to the effect that Abraham only observed the seven Noachian precepts, as well as circumcision which, towards the end of his life, he was commanded to perform. Comp. Hullin 7. 7; Yoma 28b; see also the very thorough study of Chajes in his *Torat Nebi'im*, 24–28b. In accordance with this view, Gen., *loc. cit.*, is explained by many rabbinic commentators to refer exclusively to the ethico-moral laws of the Torah; comp. Lekah, Nahmanides, and Ibn Ezra, *ad loc.*

276. BR 59. 8; Tan. B. I, 120. The identity of the servant mentioned in Gen. 24. 2 with Eliezer is presupposed in many places in rabbinic literature; comp. Ta'anit 4a; WR 37. 4; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. *loc. cit.*, and many other passages in the Talmudim and Midrashim. At the same time when the signs of old age were clearly visible in Abraham (compare p. 237), Eliezer's appearance was also changed; MHG I, 355.

277. Yoma 28b reads: Abraham was the head of an academy, and Eliezer "filled the cups" for the whole world with his master's wisdom. On יָרֵא in the sense of "elder", *i. e.* scholar, comp. Sifra 19. 32, 91a; Kiddushin 32b; Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 46, as well as *De Sobrietate*, 4, and *Quaestiones*, Gen., VI, 4, 85.

278. Yashar Hayye, 48b.

279. BR 57. 3.

280. MHG I, 327–328; comp. Schechter, *ad loc.*

281. BR 59. 8; MHG I, 356.

282. BR 59. 9 and 60. 2; WR 17. 5 read: Eliezer belonged to the accursed race (=a Canaanite); yet he was blessed by God on account of his faithful service to the pious, *i. e.*, Abraham.

283. MHG I, 356–357. Here also we meet with the obscure statement: If thou takest him—Isaac—there—to Haran—the dominion will return to its old place. The meaning of this passage is that if Isaac leaves the Holy Land, his descendants will surrender their dominion over the world to the Elamites; compare with text on p. 1132.

284. BR 59. 10; comp. below, note 286. The idea of taking an oath by the sign of the covenant is also found in Ephraim I, 78b, and Jerome, Gen. 24. 2; Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. *loc. cit.*, says: He made him—Eliezer—take the oath by the genital organ (?) to indicate that he—Abraham—was endeavoring to secure a wife for his son for the purpose of begetting children and not in order to enjoy carnal pleasures.

## THE WOOING OF REBEKAH

Attended by ten men,<sup>285</sup> mounted upon ten camels laden with jewels and trinkets, Eliezer betook himself to Haran under the convoy of two angels, the one appointed to keep guard over Eliezer, the other over Rebekah.<sup>286</sup>

The journey to Haran took but a few hours, at evening of the same day he reached there, because the earth hastened to meet him in a wonderful way.<sup>287</sup> He made a halt at the well of water, and he prayed to God to permit him to distinguish the wife appointed for Isaac among the damsels that came to draw water, by this token, that she alone, and not the others, would give him drink.<sup>288</sup> Strictly speaking, this wish of his was unseemly, for suppose a bondwoman had given him water to drink!<sup>289</sup> But God granted his request. All the damsels said they could not give him of their water, because they had to take it home. Then appeared Rebekah, coming to the well contrary to her wont, for she was the daughter of a king, Bethuel her father being king of Haran. When Eliezer addressed his request for water to drink to this young innocent child, not only was she ready to do his bidding, but she rebuked the other maidens on account of their discourtesy to a stranger.<sup>290</sup> Eliezer noticed, too, how



the water rose up to her of its own accord from the bottom of the well, so that she needed not to exert herself to draw it. Having scrutinized her carefully, he felt certain that she was the wife chosen for Isaac. He gave her a nose ring, wherein was set a precious stone, half a shekel in weight, foreshadowing the half-shekel which her descendants would once bring to the sanctuary year by year. He gave her also two bracelets for her hands, of ten shekels weight in gold, in token of the two tables of stone and the Ten Commandments upon them.<sup>291</sup>

When Rebekah, bearing the jewels, came to her mother and to her brother Laban, this one hastened to Eliezer in order to slay him and take possession of his goods. Laban soon learnt that he would not be able to do much harm to a giant like Eliezer. He met him at the moment when Eliezer seized two camels and bore them across the stream.<sup>292</sup> Besides, on account of Eliezer's close resemblance to Abraham, Laban thought he saw Abraham before him, and he said: "Come in, thou blessed of the Lord! It is not becoming that thou shouldst stand without, I have cleansed my house of idols."<sup>293</sup>

But when Eliezer arrived at the house of Bethuel, they tried to kill him with cunning. They set poisoned food before him. Luckily, he refused to eat before he had discharged himself of his errand. While he was telling his story, it was ordained by God that the dish intended for him should come to stand in front of Bethuel, who ate of it and died.<sup>294</sup>

Eliezer showed the document he had in which Abraham deeded all his possessions to Isaac, and he made it known to the kindred of Abraham, how deeply attached to them his master was, in spite of the long years of separation.<sup>295</sup> Yet he let them know at the same time that Abraham was not dependent wholly upon them. He might seek a wife for his son among the daughters of Ishmael or Lot. At first the kindred

of Abraham consented to let Rebekah go with Eliezer, but as Bethuel had died in the meantime, they did not want to give Rebekah in marriage without consulting her. Besides, they deemed it proper that she should remain at home at least during the week of mourning for her father.<sup>296</sup> But Eliezer, seeing the angel wait for him, would brook no delay, and he said, "The man who came with me and prospered my way, waits for me without," and as Rebekah professed herself ready to go at once with Eliezer, her mother and brother granted her wish and dismissed her with their blessings.<sup>297</sup> But their blessings did not come from the bottom of their hearts. Indeed, as a rule, the blessing of the impious is a curse, wherefore Rebekah remained barren for years.<sup>298</sup>

Eliezer's return to Canaan was as wonderful as his going to Haran had been. A seventeen days' journey he accomplished in three hours. He left Haran at noon, and he arrived at Hebron<sup>299</sup> at three o'clock in the afternoon, the time for the Minhah Prayer, which had been introduced by Isaac. He was in the posture of praying when Rebekah first laid eyes upon him, wherefore she asked Eliezer what man this was. She saw he was not an ordinary individual. She noticed the unusual beauty of Isaac, and also that an angel accompanied him. Thus her question was not dictated by mere curiosity.<sup>300</sup> At this moment she learnt through the holy spirit, that she was destined to be the mother of the godless Esau. Terror seized her at the knowledge, and, trembling, she fell from the camel and inflicted an injury upon herself.<sup>301</sup>

After Isaac had heard the wonderful adventures of Eliezer, he took Rebekah to the tent of his mother Sarah, and she showed herself worthy to be her successor. The cloud appeared again that had been visible over the tent during the life of Sarah, and had vanished at her death; the light shone again in the tent of Rebekah that Sarah had kindled at the coming in of the Sabbath, and



that had burnt miraculously throughout the week; the blessing returned with Rebekah that had hovered over the dough kneaded by Sarah; and the gates of the tent were opened for the needy, wide and spacious, as they had been during the lifetime of Sarah.<sup>302</sup>

For three years Isaac had mourned for his mother, and he could find no consolation in the academy of Shem and Eber, his abiding-place during that period. But Rebekah comforted him after his mother's death,<sup>303</sup> for she was the counterpart of Sarah in person and in spirit.<sup>304</sup>

As a reward for having executed to his full satisfaction the mission with which he had charged him, Abraham set his bondman free.<sup>305</sup> The curse resting upon Eliezer, as upon all the descendants of Canaan, was transformed into a blessing, because he ministered unto Abraham loyally.<sup>306</sup> Greatest reward of all, God found him worthy of entering Paradise alive, a distinction that fell to the lot of very few.<sup>307</sup>

---

285. Yashar Hayye, 48b; *Hadar*, 9c. He took with him ten of the very prominent of Abraham's slaves, in order that he should have the necessary quorum for the nuptial benedictions; comp. PRE 16.

286. BR 59. 10; PRE 16.

287. BR 59. 11; Sanhedrin 95a; Hullin 91b; Tan. B. I, 150; Tan. Wa-Yera 3; PRE 16; Pirke RHK, 16a and 26a; MHG I, 367. The Babylonian sources know of three men only (Eliezer, Jacob, and Abishai; comp. Index, *s. v.*), for whose sake such a miracle was performed, whereas the Palestinian passages count Abraham as the fourth fortunate person for whose sake this miracle occurred in the night of the war against the kings. In medieval Jewish legends, the miracle of *קפיצת הדרך* (that is, the *shrinking* of the road, not the *jumping*) is a favorite subject. Christian sources, too, narrate similar incidents; comp. ps.—*Matthew*, 22, and Günter, *Christliche Legende*, 104. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, refers to Mohammedan parallels.

288. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 16. 1. BR 59. 2 reads: It is possible to ascertain the character of women from the barking of the dogs. Baba Kamma 60b shows that this statement is to be taken literally, and not, as Theodor, *ad loc.*, explains it, rationalistically. Concerning the well to which

the pious repair on entering a new place, comp. Lekah, Gen. 24. 11, and MHG I, 352. PRE 26 (complete text in MHG I, 458) reads: It is a good omen to meet young girls on entering a place. According to Zohar I, 132a, the well at which Eliezer stopped was the well of Miriam.

289. BR 60. 3; WR 37. 4; Ta'anit 4a; Hullin 95b; Pirke RHK, 32b.

290. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 16. 2; Philo, *De Posteritate Caini*, 44. On Bethuel as king comp. PRE 16 and BaR 14. 11. The remark in Lekah, Gen. 24. 16 very likely goes back to PRE. The contrast between Rebekah and the daughters of the Gentiles, who, though virgins, do not keep away from men entirely, is pointed out in BR 60. 5; Yerushalmi Ketubot I, 25b; Tehillim 125, 506. See also below, note 294. Rebekah was a very beautiful maiden, and surpassed Abishag in beauty; MHG I, 360.

291. BR 60. 5–6; MHG I, 362. In the latter passage attention is called to the fact that Eliezer did not give the presents to Rebekah before he had found out that she belonged to Abraham's kindred, since the marriage was to be accomplished by these very presents; comp. Schechter, *ad loc.*, note 48.

292. An unknown midrashic source in Yalkut I, 109, and a similar statement in MHG I, 364. Abkir in Yalkut, *loc. cit.*, reads: Eliezer noticed by Laban's running that he intended to attack him; whereupon the former pronounced the "Name", and he and the camels were lifted up in the air so that Laban was unable to attack him.

293. BR 60. 7–8; ARN 8, 38 reads: Even Abraham's camels did not enter a place where there were idols; Aggadat Bereshit 67, 133; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 24. 31. The name Laban ("white") is declared to be antiphrastic, the bearer of it being the "blackest of the black"; comp. BR, *loc. cit.*; Shemuel I, 45; Ruth R 3. 1; and comp. also MHG I, 363–364, where several etymologies of the name Laban are given.

294. An unknown midrashic source in Yalkut I, 109; MHG I, 366 and 370; Midrash Aggada I, 59; Sekel, 81; Lekah, Targum Yerushalmi, and Rashi on Gen. 24. 33 and 55. Bethuel, who was the king of this place, introduced the *jus primae noctis*; comp. Herodotus IV, 168. His subjects declared themselves ready to submit to this outrage on condition that the king's own daughters should not be exempt from it. Now it was on that very day, when Eliezer arrived in Haran, that Rebekah was to be deflowered by her father (she had just reached the age of three years and one day; comp. Niddah 5. 3), and to spare her this humiliation God caused the death of Bethuel. See Yalkut *loc. cit.*; *Hadar* 9a, 9b (he was called Bethuel as an allusion to Betulah "virgin"); *Da'at* Gen. 24. 55; Soferim (end); BR 60. 12.

295. MHG I, 366; PRE 16; BR 59. 11; Tan. B. I, 145; Aggadat Bereshit 45, 92.—Eliezer's first words were: "I am Abraham's servant" (Gen. 24.34). These words are in



more than one respect characteristic of the man. "One should not wait till his shortcomings are found out by others, but should rather state them himself," is the very wise rule which guided Eliezer. He did not wait till Abraham's relatives ascertained everything concerning himself, but introduced himself to them as "Abraham's servant." Comp. BR 60. 9; Baba Kamma 92b. At the same time Eliezer was devoted to his master to such an extent that he considered it an honor to be the slave of Abraham rather than to be a free man; Hasidim 85; Zohar I, 103 and 146b. Eliezer's personality, as well as his adroit address, made a powerful impression on Abraham's relatives, who relinquished their evil intentions against him; MHG I, 366.—The Torah devotes more space to Eliezer's narrative than to some of the very important laws; from this it may be inferred that the history of the patriarchs is of extremely great moment; BR 60. 8.

296. BR 60. 9–12.

297. PRE 16. BR 60. 12 reads: They hinted to Rebekah to refuse Eliezer's request; she, however, said: "I will go with him even against your wish". From the scriptural words, "the thing proceedeth from the Lord" (Gen. 24. 50) the Rabbis infer that "marriages are made in heaven"; comp. Mo'ed Katan 18b; Tobit 6. 18. Comp. Abrahams in *J. Q. R.* II, 172, *seq.*, and footnote 20 on p. 56.

298. BR 60. 13; Shir 2. 14; MHG I, 370. According to PRE 16, the words uttered by Rebekah's relatives at her departure were the nuptial benedictions—On the presents given by Eliezer to Rebekah and her relatives, comp. BR 60. 11; Tan. B. I, 145; Aggadat Bereshit 45, 92.

299. PRE 16; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 24. 61; MHG I, 371. His speed on his return journey was due to the fact that it would have been unpleasant for Rebekah to spend the night in the company of a slave. But even then Isaac's suspicion of slaves was so deep-rooted that he did not come near Rebekah until he had convinced himself that she was a virgin. Comp. the sources quoted above and the opposite view given in MHG I, 366. See also below, note 301.

300. BR 60. 14–15; Mekilta be-Shallah 2, 28b; Mekilta RS, 45; Berakot 26a; 'Abodah Zarah 7b; Yerushalmi Berakot 4, 7a; Tan. Hayye 5 and Mikkez 9; Tan. B. I, 196; BaR 2. 1; Tehillim 55, 292, and 102, 430; Mishle 12, 93; Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 4, 140, and *Quod Deterius Potiori Insidiari Soleat*, 9; Onkelos, Targum Yerushalmi, and Jerome on Gen. 24. 63; Ephraim I, 173. Comp. also Tehillim 90, 394, and MHG I, 372. The place where Isaac used to pray was near paradise, so that its fragrance might reach him, and is identical with the field which Abraham bought from Ephron; Zohar II, 39b. Compare with pp. 234–235 and 266, and the notes appertaining to them.

301. An unknown midrashic source in Yalkut I, 109. The injury was of such a nature as to make Isaac suspect

Eliezer of having done violence to his bride. The angel Gabriel, however, with irrefutable evidence in his hands, convinced Isaac that his suspicions were unjustified. To compensate Eliezer for the wrong done to him by Isaac, God permitted him to enter paradise during his life (comp. note 307); he changed places with Isaac, who shortly before that had left paradise where he had stayed for some time; Yalkut, *loc. cit.* See also note 255. Variants of this legend are found in *Hadar*, 9a (the birds watched over the blood which Rebekah had lost on account of her injury, and thereby enabled Eliezer to convince Isaac of his innocence; as a reward for their good deed, a law was promulgated commanding to cover the blood of birds; comp. Lev. 17. 13); *Da'at*, Gen. 24. 5; *Pa'aneah Raza* 34, 65; Shu'aib, Hayye, 11c; Lekah 24. 66 (in a rather abridged form); *Orehot Hayyim* II, 39b; Midrash Aggada I, 60. Several of the sources herewith mentioned state in this connection that the dwellers of paradise walk on their heads (compare with p. 900), and this peculiarity Isaac retained on his leaving paradise. When Rebekah saw him walk in this strange manner, she exclaimed: "What man is this that walketh?" (Gen. 24. 65). See also *Minhat Yehudah*, Gen. 24. 64, and Ginberg, *Compte Rendu des Mélanges Israel Lewy*, 26.

302. BR 60. 16; Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 24. 67. Sarah's tent was not given by Abraham to any of his concubines; but, as the tent of the mistress, it remained unoccupied until Isaac married Rebekah; Zohar I, 133b; Hasidim, 294.

303. PRE 32; MHG I, 373, where mention is also made of the miraculous light shining in Rebekah's tent. See the sources quoted in the preceding note. On Isaac's studies in the "Shem academy", comp. the sources mentioned in note 255, as well as Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 24. 62, and Yashar, Hayye 48.

304. Zohar I, 133a. Sarah appeared to Isaac after her death in the tent formerly occupied by her; Zohar I, 33b, which is very likely the source of Shu'aib, Hayye, 11c. Comp. Ketubot 103a for the similar story about Rabbenu Hakkadosh.

305. PRE 16, where he is identified with Og; compare with p. 793, and Index, *s. n.*

306. BR 60. 7; WR 17. 5. In both places Eliezer is described as Canaan, which may mean a Canaanite; it may also imply that his identity with Canaan the son of Ham is assumed. In 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 28b Eliezer is declared to have been the son of Ham.

307. Derek Erez Zuta (end); 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 28b; see Index, *s. v.* "Paradise, Entering Alive". Eliezer "the pious" is also found in Yelammedenu quoted in Yalkut, Supplement=BHM VI, 79.



## THE LAST YEARS OF ABRAHAM

Rebekah first saw Isaac as he was coming from the way of Beer-lahai-roi, the dwelling-place of Hagar, whither he had gone after the death of his mother, for the purpose of reuniting his father with Hagar,<sup>308</sup> or, as she is also called, Keturah.<sup>309</sup>

Hagar bore him six sons, who, however, did scant honor to their father, for they all were idolaters.<sup>310</sup> Abraham, therefore, during his own lifetime, sent them away from the presence of Isaac, that they might not be singed by Isaac's flame, and gave them the instruction to journey eastward as far as possible.<sup>311</sup> There he built a city for them, surrounded by an iron wall, so high that the sun could not shine into the city. But Abraham provided them with huge gems and pearls, their lustre more brilliant than the light of the sun, which will be used in the Messianic time when "the moon shall be confounded and the sun ashamed."<sup>312</sup> Also Abraham taught them the black art, wherewith they held sway over demons and spirits. It is from this city in the east that Laban, Balaam, and Balaam's father Beor derived their sorceries.<sup>313</sup>

Epher, one of the grandsons of Abraham and Keturah, invaded Lybia with an armed force, and took possession of the country. From this Epher the whole land of Africa has its name.<sup>314</sup> Aram is also a country made habitable by a kinsman of Abraham. In his old age Terah contracted a new marriage with Pelilah, and from this union sprang a son Zoba, who was the father in turn of three sons. The oldest of these, Aram, was exceedingly rich and powerful, and the old home in Haran sufficed not for him and his kinsmen, the sons of Nahor, the brother of Abraham. Aram and his brethren and all that belonged to him therefore departed from Haran, and they settled in a vale, and they built themselves a city there which they called Aram-Zoba, to perpetuate the

name of the father and his first-born son. Another Aram, Aram-naharaim, on the Euphrates, was built by Aram son of Kemuel, a nephew of Abraham. Its real name was Petor, after the son of Aram, but it is better known as Aram-naharaim. The descendants of Kesed, another nephew of Abraham, a son of his brother Nahor, established themselves opposite to Shinar, where they founded the city of Kesed, the city whence the Chaldees are called Kasdim.<sup>315</sup>

Though Abraham knew full well that Isaac deserved his paternal blessing beyond all his sons, yet he withheld it from him, that no hostile feelings be aroused among his descendants. He spake, and said: "I am but flesh and blood, here to-day, to-morrow in the grave. What I was able to do for my children I have done. Henceforth let come what God desires to do in His world," and it happened that immediately after the death of Abraham God Himself appeared unto Isaac, and gave him His blessing.<sup>316</sup>

---

308. BR 60. 14 and 16. According to BR, the meaning of Beerlahai-roi is *The well where she—Hagar—said to the Living One=God: "Look at my misery."* On the explanation of the name of this place see Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 24. 64; Tan. B. I, 123; Tan. Hayye 8. BR, *loc. cit.*, quotes Abraham's case in support of the rule that a widower with mature children should first marry them off and then, if he wishes, get married himself.

309. BR 61. 4; Tan. B. I, 123; Tan. Hayye 8; Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 25. 1; PRE 30. These sources contain explanations concerning the name Keturah, all of which are based on the assumption that it is another name for Hagar. Jerome, Gen. 25. 1, knows of the identification of Keturah with Hagar, but does not explain the former name. The opposite view that Keturah was Abraham's third wife is also found in the sources herewith quoted. On Hagar's piety see above, note 237, and Yelammedenu in Supplement to Yalkut (=BHM VI, 79). The etymology of Keturah—connecting it with קטורת *incense*—given by Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 4, 147, occurs also in the rabbinic sources quoted above. Medieval authorities are at pains to explain the strange phenomenon that the offspring of this pious couple, whose marriage took place at the direct command of



God (BR, *loc. cit.*), was Ishmael and the other sons of Hagar-Keturah, the progenitors of many wicked nations. See on this point the very interesting discussion in Hasidim, 294–295. Yalkut Reubeni Gen. 26. 2, 36c, quotes a Midrash to the effect that Abraham married three wives, daughters (=descendants) of the three sons of Noah: Sarah the daughter of Shem, Keturah the daughter of Japheth, and Hagar the daughter of Ham. That Hagar was an Egyptian (=a daughter of Ham) is mentioned in Scripture.

310. BR 61. 5 and Tehillim 92, 411–412 find in the names of Keturah's sons proof for their idolatry and wickedness. On the names of Gen. 25. 3, *seq.*, see also Onkelos, Targum Yerushalmi and *Imre No'am*, *ad loc.*, as well as MHG I, 383. Comp. Schechter, *ad loc.*

311. BR 61. 7, and, with additions and amplifications, in MHG I, 378–379, as well as in Bereshit Rabbeti, 78. In the two last-named sources it is said that Abraham had admonished his sons by Keturah never to come near Isaac and his descendants (as any nation ruling over them will be punished in Gehenna) until the advent of the Messiah. When Solomon became king, the inhabitants of Sheba, the descendants of Sheba the son of Keturah (comp. Gen. 25. 3), thought that he was the promised Messiah, and came to pay him homage (מלכות in 1 Kings 9. 1 is read as מלכות kingdom; see footnote 20 on p. 457). But when they realized their mistake, they returned to their country, where they will remain till the advent of the Messiah. Comp. also R. Joseph Kara, 1 Kings x. 1. Is this in any way connected with the Christian story of the worship of the infant Jesus by the Magi?

312. Soferim (end). In this legend some traces of the Alexander legend and reminiscences of the Chinese Wall are discernible. Comp. Beer, *Leben Abrahams*, note 919, and Müller, *ad loc.* On the text of Soferim, comp. Yalkut Reubeni, Hayye (end).

313. Sanhedrin 91a and, with many embellishments, Zohar I, 133b, 223a–223b (here they are identified with the children of the east, the renown of whose wisdom is referred to in 1 Kings 5. 10); Ziyoni and Recanati, Hayye (end). Al-Barceloni, 158, says: Abraham gave the esoteric books which he possessed (that is, the books on magic) to the children of the concubines, but the Torah he reserved for Isaac. The same statement is also found in Zohar I, 100b. Comp. note 80, and Index, *s. v.* "Balaam".

314. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 15. 1, citing an extract from a work by Alexander Polyhistor, which is a curious blending of pagan mythology with Jewish legend. See Freudenthal, *Hellenistische Studien*, 130–136 and 215. In this connection mention is to be made of a legend which declared the Spartans and Lacedaemonians to be the descendants of Abraham; comp. 1 Maccabees 12. 10 and 21, as well as 14. 20; 2 Maccabees 5. 9. The Midrash quoted in note 309 maintains that Keturah was a daughter of Japheth,

and since Japheth is said, Gen. 10. 2, to have been the ancestor of the Greeks (comp. also BR 36. 8, and the parallel passages cited by Theodor, on the beauty of Japheth=the Greek language), the descendants of Abraham from Keturah were, on their maternal side, Japhethites, *i. e.*, Greeks. Comp. also BR 37. 1, and parallel passages where the sons of Japheth are "the uncles" of Israel.

315. Yashar Wa-Yera, 42b–43a. Already in the old sources Kemuel is identified with Balaam, or rather with his father Beor (comp. BR 57, end, and parallel passages cited by Theodor); hence Pethor, Balaam's city (Num. 22. 5) is said to have been founded by a son of Kemuel.

316. BR 61. 6 and 39. 11; PK 31, 198b–199a; Tan. B. I, 63, IV, 33, and V, 53; Tan. Lek 4, Naso 9, and Ha-Berakah 5; BaR 11. 2; DR 11. 1; Tehillim 1. 6. In all these sources emphasis is laid upon the fact that before Abraham God Himself blessed the meritorious; but with the advent of Abraham He conferred upon him the power of bestowing blessings. Abraham, however, did not care to bless the sons of the concubines, knowing that their descendants would be wicked. He even refrained from blessing Isaac on account of Esau, who, as Isaac's son, would have to come in for his proper share in the blessings bestowed on his father. According to another view, Isaac received the blessings from Abraham when he was on the point of dying, and God confirmed them shortly afterwards. The sources cited above contain also the statement, according to which, Abraham, when on the point of dying, invested Isaac with the right of primogeniture which carried with it the possession of the burial place Machpelah. To obviate disputes among his children, he drew up a document to that effect; compare with p. 354, and with p. 819.

## A HERALD OF DEATH

When the day of the death of Abraham drew near, the Lord said to Michael, "Arise and go to Abraham and say to him, Thou shalt depart from life!" so that he might set his house in order before he died. And Michael went and came to Abraham and found him sitting before his oxen for ploughing. Abraham, seeing Michael, but not knowing who he was, saluted him and said to him, "Sit down a little while, and I will order a beast to be brought, and we will go to my house, that thou mayest rest with me, for it is toward evening, and arise in the morning



and go whithersoever thou wilt.” And Abraham called one of his servants, and said to him: “Go and bring me a beast, that the stranger may sit upon it, for he is wearied with his journey.” But Michael said, “I abstain from ever sitting upon any four-footed beast, let us walk therefore, till we reach the house.”

On their way to the house they passed a huge tree, and Abraham heard a voice from its branches, singing, “Holy art thou, because thou hast kept the purpose for which thou wast sent.” Abraham hid the mystery in his heart, thinking that the stranger did not hear it. Arrived at his house, he ordered the servants to prepare a meal, and while they were busy with their work, he called his son Isaac, and said to him, “Arise and put water in the vessel, that we may wash the feet of the stranger.” And he brought it as he was commanded, and Abraham said, “I perceive that in this basin I shall never again wash the feet of any man coming to us as a guest.” Hearing this, Isaac began to weep, and Abraham, seeing his son weep, also wept, and Micheal, seeing them weep, wept also, and the tears of Michael fell into the water, and became precious stones.

Before sitting down to the table, Michael arose, went out for a moment, as if to ease nature, and ascended to heaven in the twinkling of an eye, and stood before the Lord, and said to Him: “Lord and Master, let Thy power know that I am unable to remind that righteous man of his death, for I have not seen upon the earth a man like him, compassionate, hospitable, righteous, truthful, devout, refraining from every evil deed.” Then the Lord said to Michael, “Go down to My friend Abraham, and whatever he may say to thee, that do thou also, and whatever he may eat, eat thou also with him, and I will cast the thought of the death of Abraham into the heart of Isaac, his son, in a dream, and Isaac will relate the dream, and thou shalt interpret it, and he himself will know his end.” And Michael

said, “Lord, all the heavenly spirits are incorporeal, and neither eat nor drink, and this man has set before me a table with an abundance of all good things earthly and corruptible. Now, Lord, what shall I do?” The Lord answered him, “Go down to him and take no thought for this, for when thou sittest down with him, I will send upon thee a devouring spirit, and it will consume out of thy hands and through thy mouth all that is on the table.”

Then Michael went into the house of Abraham, and they ate and drank and were merry. And when the supper was ended, Abraham prayed after his custom, and Michael prayed with him, and each lay down to sleep upon his couch in one room, while Isaac went to his chamber, lest he be troublesome to the guest. About the seventh hour of the night, Isaac awoke and came to the door of his father’s chamber, crying out and saying, “Open, father, that I may touch thee before they take thee away from me.” And Abraham wept together with his son, and when Michael saw them weep, he wept likewise. And Sarah, hearing the weeping, called forth from her bedchamber, saying: “My lord Abraham, why this weeping? Has the stranger told thee of thy brother’s son Lot, that he is dead? or has aught befallen us?” Michael answered, and said to her, “Nay, my sister Sarah, it is not as thou sayest, but thy son Isaac, methinks, beheld a dream, and came to us weeping, and we, seeing him, were moved in our hearts and wept.” Sarah, hearing Michael speak, knew straightway that it was an angel of the Lord, one of the three angels whom they had entertained in their house once before, and therefore she made a sign to Abraham to come out toward the door, to inform him of what she knew. Abraham said: “Thou hast perceived well, for I, too, when I washed his feet, knew in my heart that they were the feet that I had washed at the oak of Mamre, and that went to save Lot.” Abraham, returning to his chamber, made Isaac



relate his dream, which Michael interpreted to them, saying: "Thy son Isaac has spoken truth, for thou shalt go and be taken up into the heavens, but thy body shall remain on earth, until seven thousand ages are fulfilled, for then all flesh shall arise. Now, therefore, Abraham, set thy house in order, for thou hast heard what is decreed concerning thee." Abraham answered, "Now I know thou art an angel of the Lord, and wast sent to take my soul, but I will not go with thee, but do thou whatever thou art commanded." Michael returned to heaven and told God of Abraham's refusal to obey his summons, and he was again commanded to go down and admonish Abraham not to rebel against God, who had bestowed many blessings upon him, and he reminded him that no one who has come from Adam and Eve can escape death, and that God in His great kindness toward him did not permit the sickle of death to meet him, but sent His chief captain, Michael, to him. "Wherefore, then," he ended, "hast thou said to the chief captain, I will not go with thee?" When Michael delivered these exhortations to Abraham, he saw that it was futile to oppose the will of God, and he consented to die, but wished to have one desire of his fulfilled while still alive. He said to Michael: "I beseech thee, lord, if I must depart from my body, I desire to be taken up in my body, that I may see the creatures that the Lord has created in heaven and on earth." Michael went up into heaven, and spake before the Lord concerning Abraham, and the Lord answered Michael, "Go and take up Abraham in the body and show him all things, and whatever he shall say to thee, do to him as to My friend."

## ABRAHAM VIEWS EARTH AND HEAVEN

THE archangel Michael went down, and took Abraham upon a chariot of the cherubim, and lifted him up into the air of heaven, and led him upon the cloud, together with sixty angels, and Abraham ascended upon the chariot over all the earth, and saw all things that are below on the earth, both good and bad. Looking down upon the earth, he saw a man committing adultery with a wedded woman, and turning to Michael he said, "Send fire from heaven to consume them." Straightway there came down fire and consumed them, for God had commanded Michael to do whatsoever Abraham should ask him to do. He looked again, and he saw thieves digging through a house, and Abraham said, "Let wild beasts come out of the desert, and tear them in pieces," and immediately wild beasts came out of the desert and devoured them. Again he looked down, and he saw people preparing to commit murder, and he said, "Let the earth open and swallow them," and, as he spoke, the earth swallowed them alive. Then God spoke to Michael: "Turn away Abraham to his own house and let him not go round the whole earth, because he has no compassion on sinners, but I have compassion on sinners, that they may turn and live and repent of their sins, and be saved."

So Michael turned the chariot, and brought Abraham to the place of judgment of all souls. Here he saw two gates, the one broad and the other narrow, the narrow gate that of the just, which leads to life, they that enter through it go into Paradise. The broad gate is that of sinners, which leads to destruction and eternal punishment. Then Abraham wept, saying, "Woe is me, what shall I do? for I am a man big of body, and how shall I be able to enter by the narrow gate?" Michael answered, and said to Abraham, "Fear



not, nor grieve, for thou shalt enter by it unhindered, and all they who are like thee." Abraham, perceiving that a soul was adjudged to be set in the midst, asked Michael the reason for it, and Michael answered, "Because the judge found its sins and its righteousness equal, he neither committed it to judgment nor to be saved." Abraham said to Michael, "Let us pray for this soul, and see whether God will hear us," and when they rose up from their prayer, Michael informed Abraham that the soul was saved by the prayer, and was taken by an angel and carried up to Paradise. Abraham said to Michael, "Let us yet call upon the Lord and supplicate His compassion and entreat His mercy for the souls of the sinners whom I formerly, in my anger, cursed and destroyed, whom the earth devoured, and the wild beasts tore in pieces, and the fire consumed, through my words. Now I know that I have sinned before the Lord our God."

After the joint prayer of the archangel and Abraham, there came a voice from heaven, saying, "Abraham, Abraham, I have hearkened to thy voice and thy prayer, and I forgive thee thy sin, and those whom thou thinkest that I destroyed, I have called up and brought them into life by My exceeding kindness, because for a season I have requited them in judgment, and those whom I destroy living upon earth, I will not requite in death."

When Michael brought Abraham back to his house, they found Sarah dead. Not seeing what had become of Abraham, she was consumed with grief and gave up her soul. Though Michael had fulfilled Abraham's wish, and had shown him all the earth and the judgment and recompense, he still refused to surrender his soul to Michael, and the archangel again ascended to heaven, and said unto the Lord: "Thus speaks Abraham, I will not go with thee, and I refrain from laying my hands on him, because from the beginning he was Thy friend, and he has done all things

pleasing in Thy sight. There is no man like him on earth, not even Job, the wondrous man." But when the day of the death of Abraham drew nigh, God commanded Michael to adorn Death with great beauty and send him thus to Abraham, that he might see him with his eyes.

While sitting under the oak of Mamre, Abraham perceived a flashing of light and a smell of sweet odor, and turning around he saw Death coming toward him in great glory and beauty. And Death said unto Abraham: "Think not, Abraham, that this beauty is mine, or that I come thus to every man. Nay, but if any one is righteous like thee, I thus take a crown and come to him, but if he is a sinner, I come in great corruption, and out of their sins I make a crown for my head, and I shake them with great fear, so that they are dismayed." Abraham said to him, "And art thou, indeed, he that is called Death?" He answered, and said, "I am the bitter name," but Abraham answered, "I will not go with thee." And Abraham said to Death, "Show us thy corruption." And Death revealed his corruption, showing two heads, the one had the face of a serpent, the other head was like a sword. All the servants of Abraham, looking at the fierce mien of Death, died, but Abraham prayed to the Lord, and he raised them up. As the looks of Death were not able to cause Abraham's soul to depart from him, God removed the soul of Abraham as in a dream, and the archangel Michael took it up into heaven. After great praise and glory had been given to the Lord by the angels who brought Abraham's soul, and after Abraham bowed down to worship, then came the voice of God, saying thus: "Take My friend Abraham into Paradise, where are the tabernacles of My righteous ones and the abodes of My saints Isaac and Jacob in his bosom, where there is no trouble, nor grief, nor sighing, but peace and rejoicing and life unending."<sup>317</sup>

Abraham's activity did not cease with his death, and as he interceded in this world for the



sinner, so will he intercede for them in the world to come. On the day of judgment he will sit at the gate of hell, and he will not suffer those who kept the law of circumcision to enter therein.<sup>318</sup>

317. Extract from the two versions (A, B) of the Testament of Abraham. On the Jewish character of this work comp. Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, I, 93–96. A few additional remarks on this pseudepigraphon may be given here. The idea of trees speaking with a human voice (B 3) occurs also in the legend recorded in text on p. 972; see also the *Steinschneider-Festschrift*, 148. The changing of tears into pearls (3) is also found in rabbinic legends (see text on p. 913). A heavenly fire consumed the food offered to the angel (A 4); for rabbinic parallel sources see above, note 144. The goat eaten by Abraham was brought back to life (A 4); a similar statement is found in rabbinic sources (see above, notes, 113 and 246). In this pseudepigraphon Abraham is described as a giant (B 9), and this is in agreement with the view of the Rabbis (comp. above, note 97). A parallel to the beautiful legend contrasting God's mercy with man's shortsightedness (A 10, B 12), is found in the Moses legend, compare with pp. 616–617. Grimm's tale about Peter and the smith is certainly based upon the legend in the Testament of Abraham. The episode about the fragrant herbs of paradise, mentioned in the Roumanian version of this pseudepigraph (10), which Abraham strewed over his house, becomes intelligible only if we take it in connection with the Jewish Machpelah legend; comp. notes 264 and 300.—The old sources have comparatively little to tell of Abraham's funeral and the mourning over him. On the day of Abraham's death, the chiefs of all the nations mourned for him, saying: Woe to the world that lost its leader, and woe to the ship that lost her steersman (Baba Batra 91a–91b; MHG I, 381). Yashar Toledot, 50b, reads: All the land of Canaan, men, women, and children, mourned a whole year (corresponding to the year of mourning customary among Jews; comp. Semahot 10; Mo'ed Katan 22b) for Abraham. They knew that he was pious toward God and kind to men, and that it was on account of his merits that God refrained from destroying them for the sins of the inhabitants of the earth. At Abraham's funeral Isaac was the chief mourner, and not his elder brother Ishmael, who willingly yielded all the honors to Isaac, in recognition of his piety and of the fact that he had been his father's favorite child. At the same time, it is recorded, that during Abraham's lifetime Ishmael repented of his evil ways (comp., however, Index, s. v. "Ishmael"), and when he died, deeply mourned by Isaac (Yashar Toledot, 44b), he entered paradise as a good and pious man; comp. Baba Batra 16b; BR 67. 3; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 25. 8.

318. 'Erubin 19a; BR 68. 7; Tan. B. I, 82; Tan. Lek 20 and Tazria' 5; MHG I, 251–252; EZ 25, 46; ShR 19. 4; Tehillim 1, 2, and 6, 58; Ekah 1, 56; Menahot 53b; Tan. quoted by Makiri, Prov. 31. 21; Yelammedenu in *Ma'aseh Rokeah*, 52; Zohar I, 8a (here it is Duma, the door-keeper of Gehenna, who takes the place of Abraham); Al-Barceloni, 58–59 and 141. In rabbinic literature the designation mostly employed for circumcision is the "covenant" (ברית) or the "covenant of Abraham" (בריתו של אברהם); see the lexica of Levy, Kohut, and Jastrow, s. v. ברית. Its designation as the holy covenant is only found in Maccabees 1. 15 and 63, as well as in the old formula of the benediction on circumcision (Tosefta Berakot 6. 13; Shabbat 173b; Sid-dur, 582). Comp. also *Zadokite Fragments*, p. 12, line 11, and the remarks on this passage by Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, p. 111. The designation of a Jew as a son of the covenant, found in *Zadokite Fragments*, loc. cit., as well as in the very ancient Mishnah Baba Kamma 1. 2–3, makes it very probable that this religious ceremony was regarded by the people as having a sacramental, or at least a semi-sacramental character. Hence the great prominence given to this ceremony in rabbinic literature; comp. especially Nedarim, Mishnah 3. 11, Tosefta 2. 4–7, Babli 31b–32a, and Yerushalmi 38b; Mekilta Yitro 1, 58a; Yelammedenu, in Yalkut II, 321, on Jer. 33, and in Supplement to Yalkut (=BHM VI, 79). The great importance of this ceremony may also be seen from the fact that it supersedes the Sabbath; comp. Shabbat 19. 5 and Jub. 15. 14. Charles, *ad loc.*, entirely misunderstands this Mishnah, and does not seem to know that to this very day circumcision is performed on the eighth day even if it be the Sabbath. A haggadic description of a dispute as to precedence between circumcision and Sabbath, and of the final victory of the former, is found in Yelammedenu, loc. cit. The phrase "to be in Abraham's bosom", found in the New Testament, and sporadically also in rabbinic literature (e. g., Kiddushin 72b; Ekah 1. 85), has, however, nothing to do with the conception of the sacramental character of circumcision. The pious are gathered to their fathers (4 Maccabees 12. 17; BHM V, 50), and, accordingly, "to be in Abraham's bosom" is abridged from the complete expression "to be in the bosom of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob," the three patriarchs.—In reply to the attacks on circumcision by the Church Fathers, who especially dwell upon the fact that the "pious" before Abraham had not been circumcised (Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 19 and 33; Tertullian, *Adv. Marc.*, 5. 9, and *Adv. Jud.*, 4; it is to be observed that if this argument against circumcision were valid, it would apply with equal cogency to baptism; comp. Tertullian, *De Baptismo*, 13), the Jewish legend asserts that Adam, Seth, and Melchizedek were born with the sign of the covenant upon them. See ARN 1, 12, and parallel passages cited by Schechter, as well as BR 11. 6 and 46. 3. This statement was subsequently misunderstood, and



in the Midrashim these three pre-Abrahamic patriarchs share this distinction with other pious men who lived after Abraham. In Jub. 15. 27 it is stated of certain angels of a lower rank that "they were created circumcised." A similar statement occurs in the kabbalistic literature; comp. Tikkunim 47.—The old rabbinic sources are not concerned about the rational explanation of the ceremony of circumcision. BR 66. 3 and parallel passages recorded by Theodor remark that nature does not produce anything quite ready for use, but expects man to improve upon its creations. This applies also to a man's body which becomes perfect after its natural state has been improved upon by circumcision. A somewhat different explanation is given in Tan. B. III, 35, which is the source of Sa'adya in his *Polemic against Hiwi*, 62. Philo, very likely for apologetic motives, gives several reasons for circumcision (*De Spec. Legib.*, at the beginning, and *Quaestiones*, Gen. 3, 47–48), some of which are also found in the works of medieval philosophers; comp., e. g., Maimonides, *Guide of the Perplexed*, III. 49.—The rabbinic authors of the middle ages quote many a Haggadah concerning circumcision from the Midrashim which are not found in the literature that is still extant. Comp. *Menorat ha-Maor*, III, 3, 1, 1; *Kad ha-Kemah*, *Mil-lah*. See also *Yalkut Hadash*, s. v. "Millah," and Glassberg, *Zikron Berit*, passim.

## THE PATRON OF HEBRON

Once upon a time some Jews lived in Hebron, few in number, but pious and good, and particularly hospitable. When strangers came to the Cave of Machpelah to pray there, the inhabitants of the place fairly quarrelled with each other for the privilege of entertaining the guests, and the one who carried off the victory rejoiced as though he had found great spoil.

On the eve of the Day of Atonement, it appeared that, in spite of all their efforts, the dwellers at Hebron could not secure the tenth man needed for public Divine service, and they feared they would have none on the holy day. Toward evening, when the sun was about to sink, they descried an old man with silver white beard, bearing a sack upon his shoulder, his raiment tattered, and his feet badly swollen from much

walking. They ran to meet him, took him to one of the houses, gave him food and drink, and, after supplying him with new white garments, they all together went to the synagogue for worship. Asked what his name was, the stranger replied, Abraham.

At the end of the fast, the residents of Hebron cast lots for the privilege of entertaining the guest. Fortune favored the beadle, who, the envy of the rest, bore his guest away to his house. On the way, he suddenly disappeared, and the beadle could not find him anywhere. In vain all the Jews of the place went on a quest for him. Their sleepless night, spent in searching, had no result. The stranger could not be found. But no sooner had the beadle lain down, toward morning, weary and anxious, to snatch some sleep, than he saw the lost guest before him, his face luminous as lightning, and his garments magnificent and studded with gems radiant as the sun. Before the beadle, stunned by fright, could open his mouth, the stranger spake, and said: "I am Abraham the Hebrew, your ancestor, who rests here in the Cave of Machpelah. When I saw how grieved you were at not having the number of men prescribed for a public service, I came forth to you. Have no fear! Rejoice and be merry of heart!"<sup>319</sup>

On another occasion Abraham granted his assistance to the people of Hebron. The lord of the city was a heartless man, who oppressed the Jews sorely. One day he commanded them to pay a large sum of money into his coffers, the whole sum in uniform coins, all stamped with the same year. It was but a pretext to kill the Jews. He knew that his demand was impossible of fulfilment.

The Jews proclaimed a fast and day of public prayer, on which to supplicate God that He turn aside the sword suspended above them. The night following, the beadle in a dream saw an awe-inspiring old man, who addressed him in the following words: "Up, quickly! Hasten to the gate of the court, where lies the money you need.



I am your father Abraham. I have beheld the affliction wherewith the Gentiles oppress you, but God has heard your groans.” In great terror the beadle arose, but he saw no one, yet he went to the spot designated by the vision, and he found the money and took it to the congregation, telling his dream at the same time. Amazed, they counted the gold, precisely the amount required of them by the prince, no more and no less. They surrendered the sum to him, and he who

had considered compliance with his demand impossible, recognized now that God is with the Jews, and thenceforth they found favor in his eyes.<sup>320</sup>

---

319. *‘Emek ha-Melek*, 14a–14b; Reischer, *Sha’are Yerushalayim*, 10. 8. In this and in the following legend the beadle is the hero.

320. Reischer, *Sha’are Yerushalayim*, 10. 9.



## VI JACOB

### THE BIRTH OF ESAU AND JACOB

Isaac was the counterpart of his father in body and soul. He resembled him in every particular—"in beauty, wisdom, strength, wealth, and noble deeds."<sup>1</sup> It was, therefore, as great an honor for Isaac to be called the son of his father as for Abraham to be called the father of his son, and though Abraham was the progenitor of thirty nations, he is always designated as the father of Isaac.<sup>2</sup>

Despite his many excellent qualities, Isaac married late in life. God permitted him to meet the wife suitable to him only after he had successfully disproved the mocking charges of Ishmael, who was in the habit of taunting him with having been circumcised at the early age of eight days, while Ishmael had submitted himself voluntarily to the operation when he was thirteen years old. For this reason God demanded Isaac as a sacrifice when he had attained to full manhood, at the age of thirty-seven, and Isaac was ready to give up his life. Ishmael's jibes were thus robbed of their sting, and Isaac was permitted to marry. But another delay occurred before his marriage could take place. Directly after the sacrifice on Mount Moriah, his mother died, and he mourned her for three years.<sup>3</sup> Finally he

married Rebekah, who was then a maiden of fourteen.<sup>4</sup>

Rebekah was "a rose between thorns." Her father was the Aramean Bethuel, and her brother was Laban, but she did not walk in their ways.<sup>5</sup> Her piety was equal to Isaac's.<sup>6</sup> Nevertheless their marriage was not entirely happy, for they lived together no less than twenty years without begetting children.<sup>7</sup> Rebekah besought her husband to entreat God for the gift of children, as his father Abraham had done. At first Isaac would not do her bidding. God had promised Abraham a numerous progeny, and he thought their childlessness was probably Rebekah's fault, and it was her duty to supplicate God, and not his. But Rebekah would not desist, and husband and wife repaired to Mount Moriah together to pray to God there. And Isaac said: "O Lord God of heaven and earth, whose goodness and mercies fill the earth, Thou who didst take my father from his father's house and from his birthplace, and didst bring him unto this land, and didst say unto him, To thee and thy seed will I give the land, and didst promise him and declare unto him, I will multiply thy seed as the stars of heaven and as the sand of the sea, now may Thy words be verified which Thou didst speak unto my father. For Thou art the Lord our God, our



eyes are toward Thee, to give us seed of men as Thou didst promise us, for Thou art the Lord our God, and our eyes are upon Thee.”<sup>8</sup> Isaac prayed furthermore that all children destined for him might be born unto him from this pious wife of his, and Rebekah made the same petition regarding her husband Isaac and the children destined for her.

Their united prayer was heard.<sup>9</sup> Yet it was chiefly for the sake of Isaac that God gave them children. It is true, Rebekah’s piety equalled her husband’s, but the prayer of a pious man who is the son of a pious man is far more efficacious than the prayer of one who, though pious himself, is descended from a godless father.

The prayer wrought a great miracle, for Isaac’s physique was such that he could not have been expected to beget children, and equally it was not in the course of nature that Rebekah should bear children.<sup>10</sup>

When Rebekah had been pregnant seven months,<sup>11</sup> she began to wish that the curse of childlessness had not been removed from her.<sup>12</sup> She suffered torturous pain, because her twin sons began their lifelong quarrels in her womb. They strove to kill each other. If Rebekah walked in the vicinity of a temple erected to idols, Esau moved in her body, and if she passed a synagogue or a Bet ha-Midrash, Jacob essayed to break forth from her womb.<sup>13</sup> The quarrels of the children turned upon such differences as these. Esau would insist that there was no life except the earthly life of material pleasures, and Jacob would reply: “My brother, there are two worlds before us, this world and the world to come. In this world, men eat and drink, and traffic and marry, and bring up sons and daughters, but all this does not take place in the world to come. If it please thee, do thou take this world, and I will take the other.”<sup>14</sup> Esau had Samael as his ally, who desired to slay Jacob in his mother’s womb. But the archangel Michael hastened to Jacob’s

aid. He tried to burn Samael, and the Lord saw it was necessary to constitute a heavenly court for the purpose of arbitrating the case of Michael and Samael.<sup>15</sup> Even the quarrel between the two brothers regarding the birthright had its beginning before they emerged from the womb of their mother. Each desired to be the first to come into the world. It was only when Esau threatened to carry his point at the expense of his mother’s life that Jacob gave way.<sup>16</sup>

Rebekah asked other women whether they, too, had suffered such pain during their pregnancy, and when they told her they had not heard of a case like hers, except the pregnancy of Nimrod’s mother, she betook herself to Mount Moriah, whereon Shem and Eber had their Bet ha-Midrash. She requested them as well as Abraham to inquire of God what the cause of her dire suffering was.<sup>17</sup> And Shem replied: “My daughter, I confide a secret to thee. See to it that none finds it out. Two nations are in thy womb, and how should thy body contain them, seeing that the whole world will not be large enough for them to exist in it together peaceably? Two nations they are, each owning a world of its own, the one the Torah, the other sin. From the one will spring Solomon, the builder of the Temple, from the other Vespasian, the destroyer thereof. These two are what are needed to raise the number of nations to seventy. They will never be in the same estate. Esau will vaunt lords, while Jacob will bring forth prophets, and if Esau has princes, Jacob will have kings.<sup>18</sup> They, Israel and Rome, are the two nations destined to be hated by all the world.<sup>19</sup> One will exceed the other in strength. First Esau will subjugate the whole world, but in the end Jacob will rule over all.<sup>20</sup> The older of the two will serve the younger, provided this one is pure of heart, otherwise the younger will be enslaved by the older.”<sup>21</sup>

The circumstances connected with the birth of her twin sons were as remarkable as those



during the period of Rebekah's pregnancy. Esau was the first to see the light, and with him all impurity came from the womb;<sup>22</sup> Jacob was born clean and sweet of body. Esau was brought forth with hair, beard, and teeth, both front and back,<sup>23</sup> and he was blood-red, a sign of his future sanguinary nature.<sup>24</sup> On account of his ruddy appearance he remained uncircumcised. Isaac, his father, feared that it was due to poor circulation of the blood, and he hesitated to perform the circumcision. He decided to wait until Esau should attain his thirteenth year, the age at which Ishmael had received the sign of the covenant. But when Esau grew up, he refused to give heed to his father's wish, and so he was left uncircumcised.<sup>25</sup> The opposite of his brother in this as in all respects, Jacob was born with the sign of the covenant upon his body, a rare distinction.<sup>26</sup> But Esau also bore a mark upon him at birth, the figure of a serpent, the symbol of all that is wicked and hated of God.<sup>27</sup>

The names conferred upon the brothers are pregnant with meaning. The older was called Esau, because he was 'Asui, fully developed when he was born, and the name of the younger was given to him by God, to point to some important events in the future of Israel by the numerical value of each letter. The first letter in *Ya'akov* Yod, with the value of ten, stands for the decalogue; the second, 'Ayin, equal to seventy, for the seventy elders, the leaders of Israel; the third, Kof, a hundred, for the Temple, a hundred ells in height; and the last, Bet, for the two tables of stone.<sup>28</sup>

1. Tan. Shemot 1; Tan. B. I, 128; Aggadat Bereshit 40, 79; ShR 1. 1. It is also said that through Isaac these virtues came to Jacob, and through him to Joseph; comp. MHG II, 4, and also footnote 204 on p. 218.

2. MHG I, 387; comp. also *ibid.*, 388, and Sifre D., 312, as well as BR 63. 2, and the sources cited in note 1.

3. MHG I, 388; compare with footnote 229 on p. 225, and footnote 303 on p. 241. Isaac's age at the time of the 'Akedah is variously given as thirty-seven or twenty-six, compare sources cited in footnote 229 on p. 225.

4. MHG I, 388–389. According to another view she married at the age of three; comp. the sources cited by Schechter, *ad loc.*; Seder 'Olam 1; BR 57. 1, and parallel passages cited by Theodor; Yashar Hayye Sarah, 49a; MHG I, 770–771. She died at the age of one hundred and thirty-three; according to another view, she died at the age of one hundred and forty-four, or according to others at that of one hundred and forty-three. Comp. MHG (last-cited passage) and Midrash Aggadah I, 62–63, see note 302.

5. BR 63. 4, WR 23. 1; Shir 2. 2. In view of the similarity between אַרְמִי "Aramean" and רַמִּי "deceiver", these sources remark with reference to Gen. 25. 20 that Rebekah came from a people of deceivers. Shu'aib, Toledot, 13a, understands this to mean that not only Laban, but also his sister Rebekah and her sons Jacob and Esau were not free from cunning and deceit; comp. Gen. 27. 6 and 40, as well as 30. 38.

6. MHG I, 389.

7. PRE 22, in accordance with Gen. 25. 20, 26. The statement of Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 25. 21 that Rebekah was without a child for twenty-two years of her married life is very strange. Comp. *Ha-Zofeh*, III, 136–138, and *Hadar*, Gen. 25. 27. Comp. also Midrash Aggadah I, 63, and Tosafof, Yebamot 64a (beginning לִילִי).

8. Yashar Toledot, 50a–50b, partly following PRE 32. Yebamot 64a states that the childless marriage was due to both of them and not to Rebekah alone. The same view occurs also in Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 25. 21, and Zohar I, 137b. See also the sources cited in note 10. Isaac's prayer was accompanied by a sacrifice on mount Moriah; PRE 32; Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.* According to Zohar I, 137a, he brought a burnt-offering. The older sources, however, speak only of Isaac's prayer and the later Haggadah is based upon the combination of the interpretation of וַיַּעֲבֹד given in BR 63. 5 with that of Sanhedrin 103a. On the reason of the sterility of the "mothers" see MHG I, 390, and also sources cited in footnote 116 on p. 201.

9. BR 63. 5; Shemuel 6, 64; Ruth R., 4. 12; Zohar I, 137b. A different view is found in MHG I, 389.

10. Yebamot 64a–64b. MHG I, 390, on the contrary, maintains that Rebekah's prayer was as efficacious as that of Isaac.

11. Yashar Toledot, 50b. Comp. PRE 32, and Luria's remarks, *ad loc.*

12. BR 62. 6.

13. BR 67. 6. The dispute of the brothers in their mother's womb is a favorite topic in the legends; comp. Tan. B. V, 36; Tan. Ki-Teze 4; Tehillim 58, 300; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 25. 22; PRE 32; Zohar I, 137b and 138b.



Luke 1. 41 may be cited as a parallel to it. "God makes known the future actions of the pious, as well as of the wicked, while they are still in their mother's womb"; MHG I, 390–391; Tehillim 58, 299; Yoma 82a–83a. See also the following note.

14. EZ 19, 26–27; *Da'at*, Gen. 43. 14. Ziyoni, Gen. 25. 22, connects this legend with the one given on pages 55 and 56, about the creation of man.

15. Abkir in Yalkut I, 110. The statement of Jub. 25. 17 that Jacob's guardian angel is mightier than Esau's is very likely based on the assumption that Jacob's (=Israel's) guardian angel is Michael, while Esau's (Rome's) is Sammael. Comp. Index, s. v. "Michael" and "Sammael". Rebekah, who, as a prophetess (all the mothers were endowed with the gift of prophecy; comp. the sources cited in note 77), foresaw that in the future the Romans, the descendants of Esau, will slay the great Jewish scholars (compare p. 19 and footnote 85), prayed to God not to destroy all the scholars; MHG I, 391, and, in abridged form, *Nur al-Zulm*, 95. See also MHG I, 396.

16. MHG I, 390–391. The injury Esau caused to his mother consisted in tearing her womb, as a consequence of which she never bore any more children, though she was destined to be the "mother of twelve tribes"; PK 3, 23a–23b; PR 13, 48a; Tan. B. V, 36; Tan. Ki-Teze 4; BR 63. 6. A different view is found in Tan. B. IV, 221, and Aggadat Bereshit 72, 141.

17. Yashar Toledot, 50. 6; *Pa'aneah*, Gen. 25. 22, maintains, on the contrary, that she did not go to Abraham in her distress, for she did not want to sadden his heart. This is in agreement with sources cited in the following note, which do not mention Abraham. The reference to Nimrod's mother occurs only in the midrashic fragment published by Ginzberg, *Geonica*, II, 326. Comp. also MHG I, 392.

18. Tehillim 9, 83–84, and, with essential variants, MHG I, 392–393; partly also in BR 64. 6–7. Comp. further Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 25. 22; Yelammedenu in supplement to Yalkut 16=BHM VI, 80; Zohar I, 137b; Ephraim, I, 61D; Theodoretus on Gen., *loc. cit.*; Jerome, Gen. 14. 18. Rebekah received the revelation through Shem or another medium, since, with the exception of Sarah, no woman was ever found worthy to receive a divine communication directly; Yerushalmi Sotah 7, 21b, BR, *loc. cit.*; Tehillim, *loc. cit.*, and parallel passages. Comp., however, note 15.

19. BR 63. 7; Tehillim 9, 84; Yelammedenu in Supplement to Yalkut, 16=BHM VI, 80. The use of the names Edom, Seir, Esau, and similar ones, to describe Rome is very old, and was probably coined at the time of Herod, whose designation "the Idumean" was applied to his masters, the Romans. When Rome adopted Christianity, the same appellations were transferred to the Christians and

Christianity. See the very interesting collection of material in Zunz, *Synagogale Poesie*, 437–452, and *Literaturgeschichte der synagogalen Poesie*, 620. In the Amoraic portions of the talmudic and midrashic literature the use of Edom for Rome is met with quite frequently; comp., e. g., BR 9. 13–14; 10. 7; 63. 9 (the Haggadah concerning Edom-Rome occurs also in MHG I, 396, with which version 4 Ezra 6. 9–10 is closely related); 83. 4. The appellation of Edom for Rome is rarely found in tannaitic sources; comp., however, Midrash Tannaim 72 and Mekilta Amalek 2, 56a, where several Tannaim, who flourished about 100 C. E., in speaking of Rome, use the designation of Amalek for it. Early Christian authorities likewise apply these biblical appellatives to Rome; comp. e. g., Jerome, Is. 21. 2, who, in agreement with R. Meir (Yerushalmi Ta'anit 1, 64a), explains the prophecies about Duma and Seir to refer to Rome. Accordingly the use of Edom for Rome in Peshitta, Ps. 12. 9, does not prove, as Duval, *R.E.J.*, XIV, 50, maintains, its Jewish origin. Comp. also Abrabanel, *Mashmia' Yeshu'ah*, 18. 3, and Sa'adya's *Polemic against Hiwi*, 76. Sa'adya, as a man with an independent mind, rejects the tradition that the Romans are descendants of Edom. Refer also to pp. 416 and 417. On the descendants of Esau as rulers of Rome, comp. vol. II, p. 159, *seq.*, where Kittim=Rome.

20. MHG I, 394. Comp. also the passages in BR and 4 Ezra referred to in the preceding note.

21. BR 63. 7; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 25. 23; MHG I, 393. In the last-named passage attention is called to the ambiguous phraseology in the verse of Gen., *loc. cit.*, which may also be translated: "And to the elder shall be servant the younger."

22. BR 63. 8; MHG I, 391, which reads: Jacob should have been born first, but Esau threatened him that if Jacob did not grant him precedence he would kill their mother. Comp. note 16. Similarly BR, *loc. cit.*, emphasizes the fact that, though Jacob was born last, he was conceived first.

23. Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 25. 25. Comp. also BR 63. 7 and note 28.

24. BR 63. 8; MHG I, 395. See also the quotation, from an unknown Midrash, in Yalkut Reubeni, Gen., *loc. cit.*; *Pa'aneah*, Gen., *loc. cit.*; Hassidim 71.

25. *Hadar*, *Da'at*, and Shu'aib (the last named gives a wrong source) on Gen. 25. 25. The designation of Esau as the "uncircumcised one", in Tan. B. I, 158, does not belong here, but refers to the widespread legend that Esau removed the sign of the covenant by means of an operation (epispasm); comp. Tan. B. I, 127; BR 63. 13; PRE 29 (on the text see *Eshkol* II, 132, according to which read *ועשו ויעשו* (מל); Ruth R (introduction); Epiphanius, *De Mens. et Pond.*, 16; ER 29, 125–126. But in the last-named Midrash it is not Esau, as in all the other sources, but his children, who, after Isaac's death, "despised" the Abrahamic covenant. This legend about Esau's rejection of circumcision is very likely



of an anti-Christian nature (compare with note 19 on p. 252 and note 318 on p. 248), though it possibly reflects the feeling of the Jew during the Hadrianic persecutions. Comp., however, Philo, 2 *Moses*, 43.

26. ARN 2, 2; Tehillim 9, 84; Tan. B. I, 32; Tan. Noah 5. The other men distinguished in this way are: Adam, Seth, Enoch, Noah, Shem, Terah, Joseph, Moses, Balaam, Samuel, David, Isaiah, Jeremiah, and Zerubbabel. Compare footnote 318 on p. 248. PRE 24, on the other hand, speaks of the circumcision performed by Isaac on Jacob.

27. Ziyoni, Gen. 25. 25.

28. The interpretation of the name Esau occurs in Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 25. 25; Yashar Toledot, 50b, and, with some variants, *Hadar*, *ad loc.* For other interpretations of the names of Esau, Edom, and Seir see BR 63. 8; Lekah, *ad loc.*; MHG I, 396. Comp. also Rashi, *ad loc.* The interpretation of the name Jacob occurs in Tan. Shemot 4, where the name Isaac is explained in a similar way. BR, *loc. cit.*, emphasizes the fact that it was God Himself who gave Jacob his name. On the men distinguished in this manner see footnote 122 on p. 201; comp. also BaR 18. 21; *Neweh Shalom*, 76; Lekah 1. 121.

## THE FAVORITE OF ABRAHAM

While Esau and Jacob were little, their characters could not be judged properly. They were like the myrtle and the thorn-bush, which look alike in the early stages of their growth. After they have attained full size, the myrtle is known by its fragrance, and the thorn-bush by its thorns.

In their childhood, both brothers went to school, but when they reached their thirteenth year, and were of age, their ways parted. Jacob continued his studies in the Bet ha-Midrash of Shem and Eber, and Esau abandoned himself to idolatry and an immoral life.<sup>29</sup> Both were hunters of men, Esau tried to capture them in order to turn them away from God, and Jacob, to turn them toward God.<sup>30</sup> In spite of his impious deeds, Esau possessed the art of winning his father's love. His hypocritical conduct made Isaac believe that his first-born son was extremely pious. "Father," he would ask Isaac, "what is the tithe on straw and salt?" The question made him appear God-fearing

in the eyes of his father, because these two products are the very ones that are exempt from tithing.<sup>31</sup> Isaac failed to notice, too, that his older son gave him forbidden food to eat. What he took for the flesh of young goats was dog's meat.<sup>32</sup>

Rebekah was more clear-sighted. She knew her sons as they really were, and therefore her love for Jacob was exceeding great. The oftener she heard his voice, the deeper grew her affection for him.<sup>33</sup> Abraham agreed with her. He also loved his grandson Jacob, for he knew that in him his name and his seed would be called. And he said unto Rebekah, "My daughter, watch over my son Jacob, for he shall be in my stead on the earth and for a blessing in the midst of the children of men, and for the glory of the whole seed of Shem." Having admonished Rebekah thus to keep guard over Jacob, who was destined to be the bearer of the blessing given to Abraham by God, he called for his grandson, and in the presence of Rebekah he blessed him, and said: "Jacob, my beloved son, whom my soul loveth, may God bless thee from above the firmament, and may He give thee all the blessing wherewith He blessed Adam, and Enoch, and Noah, and Shem, and all the things of which He told me, and all the things which He promised to give me may He cause to cleave to thee and to thy seed forever, according to the days of the heavens above the earth. And the spirit of Mastema shall not rule over thee or over thy seed, to turn thee from the Lord, who is thy God from henceforth and forever. And may the Lord God be a father to thee, and mayest thou be His first-born son, and may He be a father to thy people always. Go in peace, my son."<sup>34</sup>

And Abraham had good reason to be particularly fond of Jacob, for it was due to the merits of his grandson that he had been rescued from the fiery furnace.<sup>35</sup>

Isaac and Rebekah, knowing of Abraham's love for their young son, sent their father a meal



by Jacob on the last Feast of Pentecost which Abraham was permitted to celebrate on earth, that he might eat and bless the Creator of all things before he died. Abraham knew that his end was approaching, and he thanked the Lord for all the good He had granted him during the days of his life, and blessed Jacob and bade him walk in the ways of the Lord, and especially he was not to marry a daughter of the Canaanites. Then Abraham prepared for death. He placed two of Jacob's fingers upon his eyes, and thus holding them closed he fell into his eternal sleep, while Jacob lay beside him on the bed. The lad did not know of his grandfather's death, until he called him, on awakening next morning, "Father, father," and received no answer.<sup>36</sup>

29. BR 63. 9; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 25. 27; Yashar Toledot, 53b; PRE 32. Comp. also Berakot 16a, where it is said that Scripture sometimes uses the word "tent" as a metaphor for "house of study". The Bet ha-Midrash of Shem and Eber is also alluded to in BR 94. 8; Shir 6. 2; Koheleth 5. 11. Comp. further ER 5, 29 and 32, where, in addition to the industry with which Jacob devoted himself to his studies, his uprightness is spoken of. See also Tan. B. I, 125, 134, 167, 206, as well as note 34.

30. MHG I, 397.

31. BR 63. 10; Tan. Toledot 7; Yelammedenu in *Nur al-Zulm*, 96; Leket Midrashim 6a (a quotation from a supposed Midrash on Job); PK, 199a; MHG I, 397. In the last named passage it is said that Isaac knew the real character of his elder son, but hoped by love and kindness, to influence him to mend his ways. The same statement occurs also in Shu'aib, Toledot, 12d.

32. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 27. 31. Comp. note 100.

33. BR 63. 10.

34. Jub. 19. 16–30. See also *ibid.* 14, which reads: And Jacob learned to write. Comp. note 29. MHG I, 397, in citing BR 63. 9, reads: **ובית מדרשו של אברהם**. This reading must have been known to Yashar Toledot, 51a, where it is explicitly stated that Abraham instructed Jacob in the ways of the Lord. On the seven pious men who preceded Abraham, *i. e.*: Adam, Seth, Enoch, Mahalalel, Enoch, Noah, and Shem, referred to in Jub., *loc. cit.*, compare footnote 28 on p. 6.

35. WR 36. 4; Tan. Toledot 4; Shemot 4; Aggadat Bereshit 64, 130. This Haggadah is based on Is. 31. 22;

but in Sanhedrin 19b this verse is differently interpreted. Abraham should have been the father of the twelve tribes, but Jacob took his place to save him the trouble of rearing children. WR, *loc. cit.*, states that mankind, including Abraham, was created for the merits of Jacob. Jacob's superiority over Abraham is expressed in many other statements of the Haggadah. It is for Jacob's merits that the Jordan became dry, that Israel might be able to enter the Holy Land; BR 76. 5. It was he who was the chosen one among the Fathers; *ibid.* 1. For Jacob's sake Israel was redeemed from Egyptian bondage, and will be redeemed by the Messiah; Haserot 2b; BR 75. 13. God loves Israel on account of Jacob; Lekah, Exod. 20. 19. It is for his sake that He makes His Shekinah dwell in Israel; Shir 7. 6. The Torah would have been revealed to Jacob, were it not for the fact that his descendants were not numerous enough in his life-time; an unknown Midrash quoted by Shu'aib, Shemini 'Azeret, 126b, and Yitro, 32b. When Israel suffers or commits a sin, it is Jacob who feels it more than the other patriarchs, and accordingly his joy will be the greatest when the future redemption comes; Tehillim 14, 115; PR 41, 174b. The conflicting view, which accords to Abraham the highest rank among the Fathers, is also given in most of the sources cited above. One may safely assert that the older Haggadah (universalistic) favors Abraham, the younger one (nationalistic) Jacob. This later view reached its highest state of development in the Kabbalah; comp., *e. g.*, Zohar I, 86b; II, 23a. The man in the moon has Jacob's face; Kanah 10b; TShBZ, 220. Compare footnote 102 on p. 24, and footnote 6 on p. 841. Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata* 1. 15, speaks of the face of the Sibyl in the moon. Origen, *in Joan.* 2. 25, and *in Gen.* 3. 9, quotes, from the lost Jewish pseudepigraphic work, the Prayer of Joseph, the following remarkable words of Jacob concerning himself. He describes himself as an "angel of God, the first servant in God's presence", whereas the angel who wrestled with him is the third in rank. The statement that Jacob never died, which the Amoraim vainly attempted to explain (comp. Ta'anit 5b, according to which the embalming and burying of Jacob were docetic; see Rashi, *ad loc.*, and footnote 39 on p. 556), originally belonged to a legend, which, like the pseudepigraphic work mentioned above, considered Jacob to have been an angel. In this legend the patriarch Jacob is confounded with the Semitic god Jacobel mentioned in an Egyptian inscription. Many an angel is nothing more than a degraded god. On Jacob's face in the heavenly throne, *Merkabah*, comp. note 134. The third patriarch (sometimes with the honorary designation "the pious"; comp. BaR 14. 12=Tadshe 10) is usually called Jacob in rabbinic literature, and not by his later name Israel, whereas Abraham is never called Abram; comp. Berakot 13a and also footnote 122 on p. 201. When Israel is used as the name of the patriarch, and not of the nation, the word **סבא**, "the



old", is added; comp. BR 70. 2, 68. 11, 73. 2, 77. 1, and in many more places. With regard to the orthography of the name יַעֲקֹב, the remark is found that the Bible spells the name *plene* יַעֲקֹב only in five passages, and in an equal number of places אֱלִיָּה is spelled defectively instead of יְהוֹאֵל. Jacob took one letter from Elijah and attached it to his own name, as a pledge that the prophet will not fail to be the harbinger of the gladsome tidings of the future redemption; Haserot 22. Jub. 19. 25 (comp. also Charles, *ad loc.*) shows that the glorification of Jacob is of very high antiquity.

36. Jub. 22. 1–23. 7. On the dream of Abraham, described in Jub., *loc. cit.*, comp. note 317 (end). On the point dwelt upon in Jub., *loc. cit.*, that with the death of Abraham the age of man was cut short and disease began to trouble the human race, comp. *Zadokite Fragments*, 10. Compare footnotes 8–10 on pp. 51–52, footnote 272 on p. 237, as well as footnote 357 on p. 400. Yebamot 64b maintains that the cutting short of the age of man took place in the days of David.

## THE SALE OF THE BIRTHRIGHT

**T**hough Abraham reached a good old age, beyond the limit of years vouchsafed later generations, he yet died five years before his allotted time. The intention was to let him live to be one hundred and eighty years old, the same age as Isaac's at his death, but on account of Esau God brought his life to an abrupt close. For some time Esau had been pursuing his evil inclinations in secret. Finally he dropped his mask, and on the day of Abraham's death he was guilty of five crimes: he ravished a betrothed maiden, committed murder, doubted the resurrection of the dead, scorned the birthright, and denied God. Then the Lord said: "I promised Abraham that he should go to his fathers in peace. Can I now permit him to be a witness of his grandson's rebellion against God, his violation of the laws of chastity, and his shedding of blood? It is better for him to die now in peace."<sup>37</sup>

The men slain by Esau on this day were Nimrod and two of his adjutants. A long-standing feud had existed between Esau and Nimrod,

because the mighty hunter before the Lord was jealous of Esau, who also devoted himself assiduously to the chase. Once when he was hunting it happened that Nimrod was separated from his people, only two men were with him. Esau, who lay in ambush, noticed his isolation, and waited until he should pass his covert. Then he threw himself upon Nimrod suddenly, and felled him and his two companions, who hastened to his succor. The outcries of the latter brought the attendants of Nimrod to the spot where he lay dead, but not before Esau had stripped him of his garments, and fled to the city with them.<sup>38</sup>

These garments of Nimrod had an extraordinary effect upon cattle, beasts, and birds. Of their own accord they would come and prostrate themselves before him who was arrayed in them. Thus Nimrod and Esau after him were able to rule over men and beasts.<sup>39</sup>

After slaying Nimrod, Esau hastened cityward in great fear of his victim's followers. Tired and exhausted he arrived at home to find Jacob busy preparing a dish of lentils. Numerous male and female slaves were in Isaac's household. Nevertheless Jacob was so simple and modest in his demeanor that, if he came home late from the Bet ha-Midrash, he would disturb none to prepare his meal, but would do it himself.<sup>40</sup> On this occasion he was cooking lentils for his father, to serve to him as his mourner's meal after the death of Abraham. Adam and Eve had eaten lentils after the murder of Abel, and so had the parents of Haran, when he perished in the fiery furnace. The reason they are used for the mourner's meal is that the round lentil symbolizes death: as the lentil rolls, so death, sorrow, and mourning constantly roll about among men, from one to the other.<sup>41</sup>

Esau accosted Jacob thus, "Why art thou preparing lentils?"

Jacob: "Because our grandfather passed away; they shall be a sign of my grief and mourning, that he may love me in the days to come."



Esau: "Thou fool! Dost thou really think it possible that man should come to life again after he has been dead and has mouldered in the grave?"<sup>42</sup> He continued to taunt Jacob. "Why dost thou give thyself so much trouble?" he said. "Lift up thine eyes, and thou wilt see that all men eat whatever comes to hand—fish, creeping and crawling creatures, swine's flesh, and all sorts of things like these, and thou vexest thyself about a dish of lentils."

Jacob: "If we act like other men, what shall we do on the day of the Lord, the day on which the pious will receive their reward, when a herald will proclaim: Where is He that weigheth the deeds of men, where is He that counteth?"

Esau: "Is there a future world? Or will the dead be called back to life? If it were so, why hath not Adam returned? Hast thou heard that Noah, through whom the world was raised anew, hath reappeared? Yea, Abraham, the friend of God, more beloved of Him than any man, hath he come to life again?"

Jacob: "If thou art of opinion that there is no future world, and that the dead do not rise to new life, then why dost thou want thy birthright? Sell it to me, now, while it is yet possible to do so. Once the Torah is revealed, it cannot be done. Verily, there is a future world, in which the righteous receive their reward. I tell thee this, lest thou say later I deceived thee."<sup>43</sup>

Jacob was little concerned about the double share of the inheritance that went with the birthright. What he thought of was the priestly service, which was the prerogative of the first-born in ancient times, and Jacob was loth to have his impious brother Esau play the priest, he who despised all Divine service.<sup>44</sup>

The scorn manifested by Esau for the resurrection of the dead he felt also for the promise of God to give the Holy Land to the seed of Abraham. He did not believe in it, and therefore he was willing to cede his birthright and the blessing

attached thereto in exchange for a mess of pottage.<sup>45</sup> In addition, Jacob paid him in coin,<sup>46</sup> and, besides, he gave him what was more than money, the wonderful sword of Methuselah, which Isaac had inherited from Abraham and bestowed upon Jacob.<sup>47</sup>

Esau made game of Jacob. He invited his associates to feast at his brother's table, saying, "Know ye what I did to this Jacob? I ate his lentils, drank his wine, amused myself at his expense, and sold my birthright to him." All that Jacob replied was, "Eat and may it do thee good!" But the Lord said, "Thou despisest the birthright, therefore I shall make thee despised in all generations." And by way of punishment for denying God and the resurrection of the dead, the descendants of Esau were cut off from the world.<sup>48</sup>

As naught was holy to Esau, Jacob made him swear, concerning the birthright, by the life of their father, for he knew Esau's love for Isaac, that it was strong.<sup>49</sup> Nor did he fail to have a document made out, duly signed by witnesses, setting forth that Esau had sold him the birthright together with his claim upon a place in the Cave of Machpelah.<sup>50</sup>

Though no blame can attach to Jacob for all this, yet he secured the birthright from him by cunning, and therefore the descendants of Jacob had to serve the descendants of Esau.<sup>51</sup>

---

37. Baba Batra 16b; Tehillim 9, 83. A somewhat different view occurs in the Palestinian sources, BR 63, 12; PK 3, 22b; PR 12, 74 (this passage contains the addition that Esau was fifteen years old at the time of Abraham's death; this was adopted by Yashar Toledot, 50b); Tan. B. V, 35; Tan. Shemot 1 (from Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*) and Ki-Teze 4; Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 25, 29 and 34; an unknown midrashic source in Shu'aib, Toledot, 13b; MHG I, 399 and 401.

38. Yashar Toledot, 51b–52a. According to Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 25, 25 and PRE 32 (the complete text is found in Yalkut I, 110, and *Nur al-Zulm*, 95), Esau killed also Nimrod's son Enoch, or rather Hiwwar (= "the leper");



comp. Aggadat Bereshit 19, 37 (here it is stated that Abraham killed Nimrod); PRE 24; Tan. B. I, 125; BR 65. 16 and 63. 13. Esau owed to Jacob his victory over Nimrod. Esau and Nimrod had been engaged in a bitter feud for a long time, and finally resolved to leave the decision to a duel. Jacob, knowing that Nimrod was invulnerable as long as he was clad in Adam's garments (compare footnotes 78–81 on p. 161, and the following note), advised his brother not to enter into combat before his adversary had removed his magic garments. Whereupon Esau put those garments on stealthily, and killed Nimrod in the duel; *Hadar and Da'at* on Gen. 25. 29–32.

39. BR 63. 13. Comp. the preceding note.

40. MHG I, 398.

41. Baba Batra 16b; BR 63. 14; PRE 35. Jerome, *Epist.* 39. 3 also mentions the custom in use among the Jews of his time to serve lentils for the mourner's meal. Comp. also Leket Midrashim 2b; Zohar I, 139a–139b; *Hadar*, Gen. 25. 30; Tan. B. I, 125–126.

42. PR 12, 47b–48a; a somewhat different text from that of the edition is found in Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 25. 32.

43. MHG I, 399–400. Comp. also EZ 19, 26–27, where the sale of the birthright by Esau to Jacob is explained as the renunciation by the former of his share in the world to come in favor of the latter, while retaining this world for himself. Comp. also Tan. B. I, 126, and Sekel, 100.

44. BR 63. 13. On the priestly functions of the first-born in pre-Mosaic times, compare with pp. 265–266; 600–601, 673, and 681–682. Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 4, 127, and Hasidim 446, maintain that Jacob's intention in buying the birthright from his brother was to take away from him the means to lead a dissipated and voluptuous life. In the last-named source it is stated that Jacob, after the consummation of the deal, was ready to return the birthright to Esau, provided he would become a pious and God-fearing man. Comp. Lekah, Gen. 25. 31, and the preceding note.

45. Lekah, Gen. 25. 31, based on an unknown Midrash. Besides lentils, Jacob gave Esau some red wine; MHG I, 399, and BR 63. 12. In the last-named passage, as well as in many others, stress is laid on the gluttony of Esau, who asked Jacob to fill him with food; Tan. B. I, 126 (זיבורית) has been misunderstood by Buber and others; it means “a bowl”); PK 6, 59a (=Yalkut II, 950, on Prov. 13, where Yelammedenu is erroneously given as source); PR 16, 82a; BaR 21. 20; Tan. Pinehas 13.

46. Lekah, Gen. 25. 34, based on an unknown midrashic source. The use of זיהוב and אדום to describe a certain coin (=gulden) in this source betrays its late age. The pot of lentils was, accordingly, not the real price for the birthright, but is to be understood as the handsel given by Jacob to Esau; *Hadar* and Midrah Aggada, Gen. 26. 25.

47. Sekel and *Imre No'am*, Gen. 25. 26. Compare footnote 63 on p. 131 as it pertains to footnote 853 on

p. 795 also pertaining to, as well as Index, s. v. “David, Sword of.”

48. MHG I, 400–401; BR 63. 14. That Esau denied the existence of God, comp. note 37. *Da'at*, Gen. 25. 27, quotes Yerushalmi (not in our text) to the effect that Esau started on his impious mode of life two years prior to Abraham's death. Out of respect for his grandfather, however, he hid his wickedness from the eyes of man. But as soon as Abraham died, he threw his mask off. Compare footnote 37 on p. 257.

49. Midrash Aggada Gen. 25. 33, and similarly Philo, *De Special. Leg.*, ii, 2; ii, 241, with reference to Gen. 31. 53. Comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 130–131 (note).

50. Yashar Toledot, 53a–53b, based on old sources; compare with pp. 304 and 320.

51. Midrash ha Ne'elam (end of paragraphs ר"א ור"ב), 36d. Compare further with pp. 309 and 1160, and note 126 on p. 1160. One often meets with the statement that Esau's descendants (Romans, or rather Christians) received the dominion over the world as a reward for the filial affection Esau showed towards his father Isaac; see, e. g., DR 1. 1; DZ. 23; and in many other places. Hasidim 341 reads: Esau went hunting . . . , exposing himself thereby to great dangers, that he should be able to provide his father with game. His reward consists in his children's dominion over the world. Mishle 30. 107 says: Esau received the dominion (over the world) for the merits of Abraham. As to the question whether Jacob's dealing with Esau was entirely justified, see Hasidim 446, which is the source for *Da'at* and *Hadar* on Gen. 25. 33. Compare also p. 258 and footnote 43. on p. 258.

## ISAAC WITH THE PHILISTINES

The life of Isaac was a faithful reflex of the life of his father. Abraham had to leave his birthplace; so also Isaac. Abraham was exposed to the risk of losing his wife; so also Isaac. The Philistines were envious of Abraham; so also of Isaac. Abraham long remained childless; so also Isaac. Abraham begot one pious son and one wicked son; so also Isaac. And, finally, as in the time of Abraham, so also in the time of Isaac, a famine came upon the land.<sup>52</sup>

At first Isaac intended to follow the example of his father and remove to Egypt, but God appeared unto him, and spake: “Thou art a perfect



sacrifice, without a blemish, and as a burnt offering is made unfit if it is taken outside of the sanctuary, so thou wouldst be profaned if thou shouldst happen outside of the Holy Land. Remain in the land, and endeavor to cultivate it. In this land dwells the Shekinah, and in days to come I will give unto thy children the realms possessed by mighty rulers, first a part thereof, and the whole in the Messianic time.”<sup>53</sup>

Isaac obeyed the command of God, and he settled in Gerar. When he noticed that the inhabitants of the place began to have designs upon his wife, he followed the example of Abraham, and pretended she was his sister.<sup>54</sup> The report of Rebekah’s beauty reached the king himself, but he was mindful of the great danger to which he had once exposed himself on a similar occasion, and he left Isaac and his wife unmolested.<sup>55</sup> After they had been in Gerar for three months, Abimelech noticed that the manner of Isaac, who lived in the outer court of the royal palace, was that of a husband toward Rebekah.<sup>56</sup> He called him to account, saying, “It might have happened to the king himself to take the woman thou didst call thy sister.”<sup>57</sup> Indeed, Isaac lay under the suspicion of having illicit intercourse with Rebekah, for at first the people of the place would not believe that she was his wife. When Isaac persisted in his statement,<sup>58</sup> Abimelech sent his grandees for them, ordered them to be arrayed in royal vestments, and had it proclaimed before them, as they rode through the city: “These two are man and wife. He that toucheth this man or his wife shall surely be put to death.”

Thereafter the king invited Isaac to settle in his domains, and he assigned fields and vineyards to him for cultivation, the best the land afforded.<sup>59</sup> But Isaac was not self-interested. The tithe of all he possessed he gave to the poor of Gerar. Thus he was the first to introduce the law of tithing for the poor, as his father Abraham had been the first to separate the priests’ portion from his fortune.<sup>60</sup>

Isaac was rewarded by abundant harvests; the land yielded a hundred times more than was expected, though the soil was barren and the year unfruitful. He grew so rich that people wished to have “the dung from Isaac’s she-mules rather than Abimelech’s gold and silver.”<sup>61</sup> But his wealth called forth the envy of the Philistines, for it is characteristic of the wicked that they begrudge their fellow-men the good, and rejoice when they see evil descend upon them, and envy brings hatred in its wake, and so the Philistines first envied Isaac, and then hated him. In their enmity toward him, they stopped the wells which Abraham had had his servants dig. Thus they broke their covenant with Abraham and were faithless, and they have only themselves to blame if they were exterminated later on by the Israelites.

Isaac departed from Gerar, and began to dig again the wells of water which they had digged in the days of Abraham his father, and which the Philistines had stopped. His reverence for his father was so great that he even restored the names by which Abraham had called the wells. To reward him for his filial respect, the Lord left the name of Isaac unchanged, while his father and his son had to submit to new names.<sup>62</sup>

After four attempts to secure water, Isaac was successful; he found the well of water that followed the Patriarchs. Abraham had obtained it after three diggings. Hence the name of the well, Beer-sheba, “the well of seven diggings,” the same well that will supply water to Jerusalem and its environs in the Messianic time.<sup>63</sup>

Isaac’s success with his wells but served to increase the envy of the Philistines, for he had come upon water in a most unlikely spot and, besides, in a year of drouth. But “the Lord fulfils the desire of them that fear Him.” As Isaac executed the will of his Creator, so God accomplished his desire.<sup>64</sup> And Abimelech, the king of Gerar, speedily came to see that God was on the side of Isaac, for, to chastise him for having instigated



Isaac's removal from Gerar, his house was ravaged by robbers in the night, and he himself was stricken with leprosy.<sup>65</sup> The wells of the Philistines ran dry as soon as Isaac left Gerar, and also the trees failed to yield their fruit. None could be in doubt but that these things were the castigation for their unkindness.

Now Abimelech entreated his friends, especially the administrator of his kingdom, to accompany him to Isaac and help him win back his friendship.<sup>66</sup> Abimelech and the Philistines spake thus to Isaac: "We have convinced ourselves that the Shekinah is with thee, and therefore we desire thee to renew the covenant which thy father made with us, that thou wilt do us no hurt, as we also did not touch thee." Isaac consented. It illustrates the character of the Philistines strikingly that they took credit unto themselves for having done him no hurt. It shows that they would have been glad to inflict harm upon him, for "the soul of the wicked desireth evil."

The place in which the covenant was made between Isaac and the Philistines was called Shib'ah, for two reasons, because an oath was "sworn" there, and as a memorial of the fact that even the heathen are bound to observe the "seven" Noachian laws.<sup>67</sup>

For all the wonders executed by God for Isaac, and all the good he enjoyed throughout his life, he is indebted to the merits of his father. For his own merits he will be rewarded in future.<sup>68</sup> On the great day of judgment it will be Isaac who will redeem his descendants from Gehenna. On that day the Lord will speak to Abraham, "Thy children have sinned," and Abraham will make reply, "Then let them be wiped out, that Thy Name be sanctified." The Lord will turn to Jacob, thinking that he who had suffered so much in bringing his sons to manhood's estate would display more love for his posterity. But Jacob will give the same answer as Abraham. Then God will say: "The old have no understanding, and

the young no counsel. I will now go to Isaac. Isaac," God will address him, "thy children have sinned," and Isaac will reply: "O Lord of the world, sayest Thou *my* children, and not *Thine*? When they stood at Mount Sinai and declared themselves ready to execute all Thy bidding before even they heard it, Thou didst call Israel 'My first-born,' and now they are *my* children, and not *Thine*! Let us consider. The years of a man are seventy. From these twenty are to be deducted, for Thou inflictest no punishment upon those under twenty. Of the fifty years that are left, one-half are to be deducted for the nights passed in sleep. There remain only twenty-five years, and these are to be diminished by twelve and a half, the time spent in praying, eating, and attending to other needs in life, during which men commit no sins. That leaves only twelve years and a half. If Thou wilt take these upon Thyself, well and good. If not, do Thou take one-half thereof, and I will take the other half." The descendants of Isaac will then say, "Verily, thou art our true father!" But he will point to God, and admonish them, "Nay, give not your praises to me, but to God alone," and Israel, with eyes directed heavenward, will say, "Thou, O Lord, art our Father; our Redeemer from everlasting is Thy name."<sup>69</sup>

It was Isaac, or, as he is sometimes called, Elihu the son of Barachel, who revealed the wonderful mysteries of nature in his arguments with Job.<sup>70</sup>

At the end of the years of famine, God appeared unto Isaac, and bade him return to Canaan. Isaac did as he was commanded, and he settled in Hebron. At this time he sent his younger son Jacob to the Bet ha-Midrash of Shem and Eber, to study the law of the Lord. Jacob remained there thirty-two years. As for Esau, he refused to learn, and he remained in the house of his father. The chase was his only occupation, and as he pursued beasts, so he pursued men, seeking to capture them with cunning and deceit.



On one of his hunting expeditions, Esau came to Mount Seir, where he became acquainted with Judith, of the family of Ham, and he took her unto himself as his wife, and brought her to his father at Hebron.

Ten years later, when Shem his teacher died, Jacob returned home, at the age of fifty. Another six years passed, and Rebekah received the joyful news that her sister-in-law 'Adinah, the wife of Laban, who, like all the women of his house, had been childless until then, had given birth to twin daughters, Leah and Rachel.<sup>71</sup> Rebekah, weary of her life on account of the woman chosen by her older son, exhorted Jacob not to marry one of the daughters of Canaan, but a maiden of the family of Abraham. He assured his mother that the words of Abraham, bidding him to marry no woman of the Canaanites, were graven upon his memory, and for this reason he was still unmarried, though he had attained the age of sixty-two, and Esau had been urging him for twenty-two years past to follow his example and wed a daughter of the people of the land in which they lived. He had heard that his uncle Laban had daughters, and he was resolved to choose one of them as his wife. Deeply moved by the words of her son, Rebekah thanked him and gave praise unto God with the words: "Blessed be the Lord God, and may His Holy Name be blessed for ever and ever, who hath given me Jacob as a pure son and a holy seed; for he is Thine, and Thine shall his seed be continually and throughout all the generations for evermore. Bless him, O Lord, and place in my mouth the blessing of righteousness, that I may bless him."

And when the spirit of the Lord came over her, she laid her hands upon the head of Jacob and gave him her maternal blessing. It ended with the words, "May the Lord of the world love thee, as the heart of thy affectionate mother rejoices in thee, and may He bless thee."<sup>72</sup>

52. MHG I, 401 (אחיו=relatives, compatriots); Tan. Toledot 9. The famine occurred immediately after the death of Abraham, and was much more grievous than the one which forced him to emigrate to Egypt; Sekel, Gen. 26. 1.

53. BR 64. 3; Tan. B. I, 128 and 168; MHG I, 401; Sekel, Gen. 24. 6; *Ha-Hoker* I, 344. The land of the Philistines is a part of the Holy Land; comp. *Da'at*, *Hadar*, and *Shu'aib* on Exod. 14. 16; Hasidim 269. Refer also to pp. 275 and 276.

54. MHG I, 403.

55. Aggadat Bereshit 26. 10; Yashar, Toledot, 52b. With regard to the difference in the attitude of the Philistines towards Abraham and Isaac, Bereshit Rabbeti (*Magazin* XV, 98) quotes, as an explanation, the proverb "He who was bitten by a snake fears a snakelike rope", and the fable of the lion and the fox. Comp. Epstein, *ad loc.* On Abimelech the king of the Philistines, compare also pp. 235 and 237, and Lekah, Gen. 25. 1.

56. Yashar, Toledot, 52b; MHG I, 403; Philo, Gen. 4, 188; BR 64. 5; Midrash Aggata, Lekah, *Hadar*, and *Da'at* on Gen. 26. 8. According to Zohar I, 140b, and III, 113b, Abimelech found out by means of astrology the true relation between Isaac and Rebekah.

57. Onkelos and Yerushalmi Targumim on Gen. 26. The rendering of אחד by "the most prominent one" is frequently found in the Talmud; comp. e. g. Megillah 28a (ascribed to R. Akiba's teacher); Hullin 28a. Comp. also Yashar, Toledot, 53a, and the dissenting view of 2 Targum Yerushalmi, which paraphrases אחד by חד מן טליא "a young man".

58. MHG I, 404.

59. Yashar, Toledot, 53a. Comp. also BR 64. 7.

60. PK 11, 98a; PR 25, 127b; Tan. B. V, 24; Tan. Rëeh 14. PRE 33, EZ. 1. 170, and Targumim Yerushalmi, Gen. 26. 12, find in this verse an indication that Isaac was very wealthy, as the large quantity of grain which he is said to have possessed represented only the tenth part of his yearly income, the tithes which he gave away. Jub. 13. 25 and 32. 8 ascribes the introduction of the priestly tithe to Abraham and Jacob. Comp. also BR 64. 6 and Mishle 30, 105.

61. BR 64. 6; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 26. 2. Compare also pp. 1126 and 1127, 1. 3 (from below), where "Israel" is a printer's error for "Isaac".

62. MHG I, 407–408, and the parallel passages cited by Schechter. Haserot 14 is the source for the remarks in MHG about Isaac's filial piety and modesty. R. Bahya, Gen. 26. 18, cites the same remark from Sa'adya Gaon's commentary on the Pentateuch. Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 4, 194, likewise dwells on Isaac's extraordinary filial piety. The masoretic note in MHG about the biblical places, where the expression הלך וגדל is used, is found also in Aggadat Esther 9. 9. Compare also footnote 122 on p. 201, and footnote 35 on p. 176.



63. PRE 35, in accordance with the correct text in MHG I, 408. On the number of wells which Isaac dug, and their symbolic significance, comp. BR 64. 8. Septuagint, on Gen. 26. 32 reads **נל**, whereas the masoretic text has **ל**. But the reading of the Septuagint is found also in rabbinic sources; comp. Midrash Tannaim 73, and Ginzberg's remarks on it in Geiger's *Kebuzzat Maamarim*, 411. The fourth well is identified with the well of Miriam; compare pp. 575–576 with pp. 260 and 261.

64. MHG I, 408. Comp. the sources quoted in note 61.

65. BR 64. 9. Lekah, Gen. 26. 26, identifies Abimelech, the king of Gerar at the time of Isaac, with the king of that name in Abraham's days. A different view is given in Yashar Toledot, 53a. See MHG I, 409 (**ח"מ**); footnote 53 on p. 187 and footnote 270 on p. 235.

66. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 26. 20 and 28. The Philistines came to Isaac imploring him to intercede in their behalf; he willingly granted their request; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 26. 27; comp. also Sifre D., 38. Isaac moved out of Gerar because "change of place brings about change of luck"; MHG I, 408–409, and Midrash Aggada Gen. 26. 22. A similar remark occurs in Rosh ha-Shanah 16b, with reference to Abraham's emigration to Palestine. Here also the different view is cited to the effect that only emigration to Palestine may change one's luck. Compare also footnote 122 on p. 201 with regard to change of names.

67. MHG I, 410–411. On the covenant between Isaac and the Philistines, compare also pp. 920 and 921. On the meaning of the name Beer-sheba see also pp. 222 and 223, as well as the sources cited in note 63. Characteristic of the wickedness of the Philistines are the words of Abimelech, who spoke of adultery as of a peccadillo (Gen. 26. 10: **כמעט** "as a trifle"), whereas pious people, on the other hand, belittle their good deeds, but consider their failings as grave sins; MHG I, 404. See also ER 25, 128–129. After Abraham's death, Isaac said to himself: "Woe unto me! How will God deal with me now that my father is dead, and I have no good deeds like his to my credit?" God in His mercy thereupon appeared to Isaac.

68. MHG I, 409. Here it is also stated that it was not on account of egotistical motives that Isaac exerted himself in digging the wells. Wherever the pious people take up their abode, they are anxious to provide the people of the neighborhood with water.

69. Shabbat 89b; PRK, 33a and 37b. This legend is given in the form of an interpretation of Is. 63. 16, where Abraham and Jacob are mentioned, but not Isaac. The "first" and "third" patriarchs deserted their descendants, but not Isaac, who pleaded for them with God. A different view occurs in BR 67. 7 (see also the statement of Raba in Shabbat, *loc. cit.*), which maintains, on the contrary, that the prophet, Isaiah, *loc. cit.*, did not mention Isaac among "the

Fathers", because he did not act as a father of Israel, when he bestowed the power of the sword on Esau (=Rome). Shir 8. 10 (this is the source Rashi, Sukkah 52b, had in mind, not Yalkut, as given in margin) reads: Isaac went to the gates of Gehenna to his children. This hints at our legend; but it cannot be ascertained with which form thereof it was acquainted, whether with the one of the Talmud, or with that of PRK. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 64, calls attention to the fact that in this legend twenty is taken to be the age of majority, in accordance with a view which prevailed in early times. The reduction of the four hundred years of the Egyptian servitude to two hundred and ten (compare footnote 124 on p. 510) is likewise due to the merits of Isaac, who, in exchange of this, had to submit to a reduction in the numerical value of his name. He should have been called Yishak (**ישחק**), but with the exception of one place (Jer. 33. 26), he is called Yizhak (**יצחק**), and the difference between **ש** and **צ** amounts to two hundred and ten, corresponding to the years of the Egyptian servitude. See *Hadar, Imre No'am*, and *Pa'aneah* on Exod. 6. 1; Midrash Aggada, Exod. 4. 24, and Gen. 21. 1; Shu'aib, Wa-Yiggash 21a; Yalkut Reubeni, Exod. 1. 1 (here it is given as a quotation from **מדרש דברי הימים**; but the statement may be doubted). Comp. also Batte Midrashot, III, 28.

70. Yerushalmi Sotah 5. 20d.

71. Yashar, Toledot 43a–43b.

72. Jub. 25. 1–23. Manifestly Rebekah is assumed to have been a prophetess. This is in agreement with Seder 'Olam 21, and parallel passages cited by Ratner, note 25, that the "fathers" and "mothers" were endowed with the prophetic spirit. Comp., however, note 18.

## ISAAC BLESSES JACOB

Esau's marriage with the daughters of the Canaanites was an abomination not only in the eyes of his mother, but also in the eyes of his father. He suffered even more than Rebekah through the idolatrous practices of his daughters-in-law. It is the nature of man to oppose less resistance than woman to disagreeable circumstances. A bone is not harmed by a collision that would shiver an earthen pot in pieces. Man, who is created out of the dust of the ground, has not the endurance of woman formed out of bone. Isaac was made prematurely old by the conduct



of his daughters-in-law, and he lost the sight of his eyes. Rebekah had been accustomed in the home of her childhood to the incense burnt before idols, and she could therefore bear it under her own roof-tree. Unlike her, Isaac had never had any such experience while he abode with his parents, and he was stung by the smoke arising from the sacrifices offered to their idols by his daughters-in-law in his own house.<sup>73</sup> Isaac's eyes had suffered earlier in life, too. When he lay bound upon the altar, about to be sacrificed by his father, the angels wept, and their tears fell upon his eyes, and there they remained and weakened his sight.

At the same time he had brought the scourge of blindness down upon himself by his love for Esau. He justified the wicked for a bribe, the bribe of Esau's filial love, and loss of vision is the punishment that follows the taking of bribes. "A gift," it is said, "blinds the eyes of the wise."

Nevertheless his blindness proved a benefit for Isaac as well as Jacob. In consequence of his physical ailments, Isaac had to keep at home, and so he was spared the pain of being pointed out by the people as the father of the wicked Esau.<sup>74</sup> And, again, if his power of vision had been unimpaired, he would not have blessed Jacob. As it was, God treated him as a physician treats a sick man who is forbidden to drink wine, for which, however, he has a strong desire. To placate him, the physician orders that warm water be given him in the dark, and he be told that it is wine.<sup>75</sup>

When Isaac reached the age of one hundred and twenty-three, and was thus approaching the years attained by his mother, he began to meditate upon his end. It is proper that a man should prepare for death when he comes close to the age at which either of his parents passed out of life. Isaac reflected that he did not know whether the age allotted to him was his mother's or his father's, and he therefore resolved to bestow his blessing upon his older son, Esau, before death

should overtake him.<sup>76</sup> He summoned Esau, and he said, "My son," and Esau replied, "Here am I," but the holy spirit interposed: "Though he disguises his voice and makes it sound sweet, put no confidence in him. There are seven abominations in his heart. He will destroy seven holy places—the Tabernacle, the sanctuaries at Gilgal, Shiloh, Nob, and Gibeon, and the first and the second Temple."

Gently though Esau continued to speak to his father, he yet longed for his end to come.<sup>77</sup> But Isaac was stricken with spiritual as well as physical blindness. The holy spirit deserted him, and he could not discern the wickedness of his older son. He bade him sharpen his slaughtering knives and beware of bringing him the flesh of an animal that had died of itself, or had been torn by a beast, and he was to guard also against putting an animal before Isaac that had been stolen from its rightful owner. "Then," continued Isaac, "will I bless him who is worthy of being blessed."<sup>78</sup>

This charge was laid upon Esau on the eve of the Passover, and Isaac said to him: "To-night the whole world will sing the Hallel unto God. It is the night when the store-houses of dew are unlocked. Therefore prepare dainties for me, that my soul may bless thee before I die." But the holy spirit interposed, "Eat not the bread of him that hath an evil eye."<sup>79</sup> Isaac's longing for tidbits was due to his blindness. As the sightless cannot behold the food they eat, they do not enjoy it with full relish, and their appetite must be tempted with particularly palatable morsels.

Esau sallied forth to procure what his father desired, little recking the whence or how, whether by robbery or theft.<sup>80</sup> To hinder the quick execution of his father's order, God sent Satan on the chase with Esau. He was to delay him as long as possible. Esau would catch a deer and leave him lying bound, while he pursued other game. Immediately Satan would come and liberate the deer, and when Esau returned to the spot, his



victim was not to be found. This was repeated several times. Again and again the quarry was run down, and bound, and liberated, so that Jacob was able meanwhile to carry out the plan of Rebekah whereby he would be blessed instead of Esau.

Though Rebekah had not heard the words that had passed between Isaac and Esau, they nevertheless were revealed to her through the holy spirit,<sup>81</sup> and she resolved to restrain her husband from taking a false step. She was not actuated by love for Jacob, but by the wish of keeping Isaac from committing a detestable act.<sup>82</sup> Rebekah said to Jacob: "This night the storehouses of dew are unlocked; it is the night during which the celestial beings chant the Hallel unto God, the night set apart for the deliverance of thy children from Egypt, on which they, too, will sing the Hallel. Go now and prepare savory meat for thy father, that he may bless thee before his death.<sup>83</sup> Do as I bid thee, obey me as thou art wont, for thou art my son whose children, every one, will be good and God-fearing—not one shall be graceless."

In spite of his great respect for his mother,<sup>84</sup> Jacob refused at first to heed her command. He feared he might commit a sin,<sup>85</sup> especially as he might thus bring his father's curse down upon him. As it was, Isaac might still have a blessing for him, after giving Esau his. But Rebekah allayed his anxieties, with the words: "When Adam was cursed, the malediction fell upon his mother, the earth, and so shall I, thy mother, bear the imprecation, if thy father curses thee. Moreover, if the worst comes to the worst, I am prepared to step before thy father and tell him, 'Esau is a villain, and Jacob is a righteous man.'"

Thus constrained by his mother, Jacob, in tears and with body bowed, went off to execute the plan made by Rebekah.<sup>86</sup> As he was to provide a Passover meal, she bade him get two kids, one for the Passover sacrifice and one for the

festival sacrifice.<sup>87</sup> To soothe Jacob's conscience, she added that her marriage contract entitled her to two kids daily. "And," she continued, "these two kids will bring good unto thee, the blessing of thy father, and they will bring good unto thy children, for two kids will be the atoning sacrifice offered on the Day of Atonement."

Jacob's hesitation was not yet removed. His father, he feared, would touch him and convince himself that he was not hairy, and therefore not his son Esau. Accordingly, Rebekah tore the skins of the two kids into strips and sewed them together, for Jacob was so tall a giant that otherwise they would not have sufficed to cover his hands.<sup>88</sup> To make Jacob's disguise complete, Rebekah felt justified in putting Esau's wonderful garments on him. They were the high-priestly raiment in which God had clothed Adam, "the first-born of the world," for in the days before the erection of the Tabernacle all the first-born males officiated as priest. From Adam these garments descended to Noah, who transmitted them to Shem, and Shem bequeathed them to Abraham, and Abraham to his son Isaac, from whom they reached Esau as the older of his two sons. It was the opinion of Rebekah that as Jacob had bought the birthright from his brother, he had thereby come into possession of the garments as well.<sup>89</sup> There was no need for her to go and fetch them from the house of Esau. He knew his wives far too well to entrust so precious a treasure to them; they were in the safe-keeping of his mother. Besides, he used them most frequently in the house of his parents. As a rule, he did not lay much stress upon decent apparel. He was willing to appear on the street clad in rags, but he considered it his duty to wait upon his father arrayed in his best. "My father," Esau was in the habit of saying, "is a king in my sight, and it would ill become me to serve before him in anything but royal apparel." To the great respect he manifested toward his father, the descendants of



Esau owe all their good fortune on earth. Thus doth God reward a good deed.

Rebekah led Jacob equipped and arrayed in this way to the door of Isaac's chamber. There she parted from him with the words, "Henceforward may thy Creator assist thee."<sup>90</sup> Jacob entered, addressing Isaac with "Father," and receiving the response, "Here am I! Who art thou, my son?" he replied equivocally, "It is I, thy first-born son is Esau." He sought to avoid a falsehood, and yet not betray that he was Jacob.<sup>91</sup> Isaac then said: "Thou art greatly in haste to secure thy blessing. Thy father Abraham was seventy-five years old when he was blessed, and thou art but sixty-three." Jacob replied awkwardly, "Because the Lord thy God sent me good speed." Isaac concluded at once that this was not Esau, for he would not have mentioned the name of God, and he made up his mind to feel the son before him and make sure who he was. Terror seized upon Jacob at the words of Isaac, "Come near, I pray thee, that I may feel thee, my son." A cold sweat covered his body, and his heart melted like wax. Then God caused the archangels Michael and Gabriel to descend. The one seized his right hand, the other his left hand, while the Lord God Himself supported him, that his courage might not fail him. Isaac felt him, and, finding his hands hairy, he said, "The voice is Jacob's voice, but the hands are the hands of Esau," words in which he conveyed the prophecy that so long as the voice of Jacob is heard in the houses of prayer and of learning, the hands of Esau will not be able to prevail against him. "Yes," he continued, "it is the voice of Jacob, the voice that imposes silence upon those on earth and in heaven," for even the angels may not raise their voices in praise of God until Israel has finished his prayers.

Isaac's scruples about blessing the son before him were not yet removed, for with his prophetic eye he foresaw that this one would have descendants who would vex the Lord. At the same

time, it was revealed to him that even the sinners in Israel would turn penitents, and then he was ready to bless Jacob. He bade him come near and kiss him, to indicate that it would be Jacob who would imprint the last kiss upon Isaac before he was consigned to the grave—he and none other. When Jacob stood close to him, he discerned the fragrance of Paradise clinging to him, and he exclaimed, "See, the smell of my son is as the smell of the field which the Lord hath blessed."<sup>92</sup>

The fragrance emanating from Jacob was not the only thing about him derived from Paradise. The archangel Michael had fetched thence the wine which Jacob gave his father to drink,<sup>93</sup> that an exalted mood might descend upon him, for only when a man is joyously excited the Shekinah rests upon him.<sup>94</sup> The holy spirit filled Isaac, and he gave Jacob his tenfold blessing: "God give thee of the dew of heaven," the celestial dew wherewith God will awaken the pious to new life in days to come; "and of the fatness of the earth," the goods of this world; "and plenty of corn and wine," the Torah and the commandments which bestow the same joy upon man as abundant harvests;<sup>95</sup> "peoples shall serve thee," the Japhethites and the Hamites; "nations shall bow down to thee," the Shemite nations; "thou wilt be lord over thy brethren," the Ishmaelites and the descendants of Keturah; "thy mother's sons will bow down to thee," Esau and his princes; "cursed be every one that curseth thee," like Balaam; "and blessed be every one that blesseth thee," like Moses.<sup>96</sup>

For each blessing invoked upon Jacob by his father Isaac, a similar blessing was bestowed upon him by God Himself in the same words. As Isaac blessed him with dew, so also God: "And the remnant of Jacob shall be in the midst of many peoples as dew from the Lord." Isaac blessed him with the fatness of the earth, so also God: "And he shall give the rain of thy seed, that thou shalt sow the ground withal; and bread of the



increase of the ground, and it shall be fat and plenteous.” Isaac blessed him with plenty of corn and wine, so also God: “I will send you corn and wine.” Isaac said, “Peoples shall serve thee,” so also God: “Kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces to the earth, and lick the dust of thy feet.” Isaac said, “Nations shall bow down to thee,” so also God: “And He will make thee high above all nations which He hath made, in praise, and in name, and in honor.”

To this double blessing his mother Rebekah joined hers: “For He shall give His angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways. They shall bear thee up in their hands, lest thou dash thy feet against a stone. Thou shalt tread upon the lion and adder; the young lion and the serpent shalt thou trample under feet. Because he hath set his love upon me, therefore will I deliver him; I will set him on high, because he hath known my name.”

The holy spirit added in turn: “He shall call upon me, and I will answer him; I will be with him in trouble; I will deliver him, and honor him. With long life will I satisfy him, and show him my salvation.”<sup>97</sup>

Jacob left the presence of his father crowned like a bridegroom, adorned like a bride, and bathed in celestial dew, which filled his bones with marrow, and transformed him into a hero and a giant.<sup>98</sup>

Of a miracle done for him at that very moment Jacob himself was not aware. Had he tarried with his father an instant longer, Esau would have met him there, and would surely have slain him. It happened that exactly as Jacob was on the point of leaving the tent of his father, carrying in his hands the plates off which Isaac had eaten, he noticed Esau approaching, and he concealed himself behind the door. Fortunately, it was a revolving door, so that though he could see Esau, he could not be seen by him.

73. Tan. Toledot 8; MHG I, 411–412. On the idolatry of Esau’s wives, comp. BR 65. 4 (here Rebekah is described as the daughter of an idolatrous priest); Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 26. 35; Aggadat Bereshit 41, 83 (Esau himself burned incense to the idols); Abkir in Yalkut I, 114; Yalkut II, 956 on Prov. 17. 25; MHG I, 411 (מ'נ). See also the following note.

74. BR 65. 4–10, which also gives the different view to the effect that Isaac’s blindness was caused by his looking at the Shekinah at the time of the ‘Akedah. Compare footnote 248 on p. 231; PRE 32; Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 27. 1; DR 11. 3; an unknown midrashic source quoted in Yalkut I, 101 (י'עקב). See also footnote 58 on p. 1127. The looking at the wicked causes blindness, and Isaac looked too often at Esau; Megillah 28a. This passage gives also another view, according to which Isaac’s blindness was a consequence of the curse called down by Abimelech upon Sarah’s children (a haggadic interpretation of the “covering of the eyes”; Gen. 20. 16); for even the curse of an ordinary person sometimes takes effect. The evil ways of the children cause the parents to age prematurely, as may be seen from what happened to Isaac, Eli, and Samuel. The wickedness of one’s child or disciple brings blindness to the father or master, respectively, as is proved by the blindness of Isaac and Ahijah the Shilonite. See Aggadat Bereshit 41, 83; Tan. Hayye Sarah 2 and Ki-Teze 4; PK 3, 23a; Tan. B. V, 35; Shemuel 8, 72; BR, *loc. cit.* Compare with footnote 6 on p. 982. There is also another view which maintains that Isaac’s blindness was his punishment for preferring the wicked Esau to the God-fearing Jacob. Besides this bodily punishment, he was also punished spiritually by losing the prophetic spirit; BR, *loc. cit.*; Tan. B. I, 30; Tan. Toledot 8; MHG I, 417; Batte Midrashot, IV, 14. Some, however, maintain that Isaac had prayed to God to send bodily ailments upon men, that they might atone for their sins, and his blindness was the first case of disease which came upon men. See BR, *loc. cit.*, and footnote 272 on p. 237.

75. MHG I, 516; BR 65. 8; Tan. Toledot 8; Philo, Gen. 4, 196. The last passage adds that Isaac regained his sight after Jacob received the blessing from him. Philo (198) also remarks that Isaac knew very well the true character of his two sons; he nevertheless wished to bless the wicked Esau, in the hope that this distinction would induce him to mend his ways, whereas there was no need to offer Jacob any inducement to do good. The same view occurs in rabbinic sources; compare footnote 31 on p. 255 and footnote 106 on p. 271.

76. BR 65. 12; Lekah Gen. 17. 2. Differently in MHG I, 418.

77. Tan. B. I, 130; MHG I, 418 (ב'). It is difficult to harmonize this view with the high praise bestowed by the Haggadah upon Esau for his filial piety; comp. note 51. On



the seven holy places, compare also pp. 222 and 223. On the seven abominations (Prov. 6. 15), see BR 65. 11; WR 16. 1.

78. BR 65. 4 and 13; Tan. Toledot 8. Another view finds in the different kinds of weapons mentioned by Isaac (Gen. 27. 3) an allusion to the "four kingdoms", which ruled the world by the might of the sword. See BR, *loc. cit.*, and Tan. B. I, 131.

79. PRE 36; Targum Yerushalmi 27. 1; ShR 15. 11; Zohar I, 142a. Compare also footnote 76 on p. 190.

80. BR 65. 13; Koheleth 5. 10.

81. BR 67. 9; Tan. Toledot 11; Tan. B. I, 131; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 27. 5; Tan. Toledot 10. On Rebekah as a prophetess see note 72, and Index, *s. v.* "Prophetesses". A different view is found in Lekah, *ad loc.*, and MHG I, 421, which, on the contrary, remark: Women are eavesdroppers, as may be seen from Rebekah's action. Comp. vol. I, p. 66.

82. Philo, *Quaestiones*, Gen. 200.

83. PRE 36; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 27. 6. On the first day of Passover the quantity of dew is fixed for the ensuing year, and on the last day of Tabernacles (Shemini 'Azret) the quantity of rain; comp. Mishnah Rosh ha-Shanah 1. 2; Ta'anit 1. 1–2, and Luria, PRE, *ad loc.*

84. Lekah and Midrash Aggadah on Gen. 27. 8.

85. PRE 36; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 37. 11.

86. BR 65. 15. Comp. also MHG I, 424 (מ"ב).

87. PRE 36; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 27. 9. By דתנין, in PRE, reference is made to Tosefta Pesahim 5. 3, according to which מטעמים (Gen., *loc. cit.*) is to be taken as a festival sacrifice. Comp. Targum Yerushalmi, *ad loc.*

88. BR 65. 14; WR 21. 11 and 27. 9; Tan. Toledot 10 and Emor 12; PR 47, 191a. Goats' skins were used for the tabernacle in remembrance of Jacob who obtained the blessings by means of goats' skins; Shir 2. 4.

89. Tan. B. I, 133 (read: שיהיה בכורו . . . לאדם) and 181; BaR 4. 8; Aggadat Bereshit 43, 85–86. Compare notes 39 and 44 on p. 147 as well as notes 78–80 on p. 161. Jerome, Gen. 27. 16, also mentions the Jewish tradition according to which the choicest garments were the priestly garments worn by the first-born who performed the priestly service before Aaron's time. That Isaac, though the first-born of his mother (and inasmuch as Ishmael was the son of a bondwoman, the former was the first legitimate child of his father), did not act as priest himself, is due to the circumstance that his blindness disqualified him from the priesthood. Comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 18.

90. BR 65. 16–17; DR I. 15; PR 23, 124a; MHG I, 424–425.

91. Tan. B. I, 131; BR 65. 18. The Haggadah would not admit that Jacob uttered an unqualified untruth, especially as his answer to Rebekah's suggestion was: To tell a lie is as great a sin as to worship idols (BR, *loc. cit.*, and Sanhedrin 92a). Accordingly, Gen. 27. 19 is explained in such a

way, that Jacob's words, though somewhat ambiguous, do not express an untruth. The construction of the Hebrew sentence admits of such an explanation without difficulty. Jub. 26. 13 goes still further, and makes Jacob answer his father: "I am thy son." Similarly with regard to verse 24, it is remarked that Jacob's answer was: "I" (=It is I), and not "I am Esau." Comp. Lekah and Rashi, *ad loc.*

92. BR 65. 19–23; Tan. B. I, 131–132 and 134–135 (comp. *ibid.* 165, where the episode with the angel is given in connection with Jacob's terror at meeting Esau on his return from Mesopotamia); Tan. Toledot 11; Ephraim, I, 77D. On the assistance rendered by the two archangels, Michael and Gabriel, comp. also BR 63. 14, where it is said that they drew up the bill of sale, transferring the birth-right from Esau to Jacob. On the fragrance from paradise, and how Isaac recognized it, see footnote 255 on p. 231 and footnote 300 on p. 240, as well as footnote 54 on pp. 1001 and 1002. According to Tan. B. I, 145, the bodies of the pious emit a celestial fragrance like that of paradise (compare pp. 545–546), while according to another view the paradise fragrance which Isaac discerned came from Jacob's garments which originally belonged to Adam who had worn them in paradise; compare pp. 265–266. The statement Tan. B. I, 141, that God caused the garments to emit a fragrance like the aromatic perfume of the incense used in the temple is a later modification of the Haggadah in BR 65. 23, and Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 27. 27.

93. Tan. B. I, 135; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 27. 35 (with the addition that the wine given by the archangel to Isaac was of the kind created at the very beginning of the world for the use of the pious in the world to come, and which is "preserved in its grapes," יין המשומר, till that time; compare footnote 79 on p. 18). A similar Haggadah is found in Shu'aib, Toledot, 12c, and Shir, 52b. A badly mutilated form of this legend occurs in a Pahlavi writing. Comp. *R.E.J.*, XVIII, 13–14.

94. Zohar Shir 1. 2. On joy as the necessary condition for the manifestation of the holy spirit, comp. Shabbat 30b; see footnote 294 on p. 391.

95. MHG I, 430; PRE 32, and comp. Luria, *ad loc.* The midrashic literature contains many interpretations of the "blessing", all of which are based on the assumption that it is nothing but a prophecy of Israel's history. See BR 66. 1–4; Tan. B. I, 133–134; Aggadat Bereshit 42, 86–87.

96. BR 66. 4; Tan. B. I, 136; MHG I, 430; Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 27. 29; Aggadat Bereshit 42, 87.

97. BR 75. 8; MHG I, 438. In Rebekah's blessing an allusion is found to the legend (see p. 266) that Michael and Gabriel came to Jacob's assistance; comp. also note 92.

98. PRE 32; comp. Index, *s. v.* "Dew, Celestial."



## ESAU'S TRUE CHARACTER REVEALED

**E**sau arrived after a delay of four hours.<sup>99</sup> In spite of all the efforts he had put forth, he had not succeeded in catching any game, and he was compelled to kill a dog and prepare its flesh for his father's meal.<sup>100</sup> All this had made Esau ill-humored, and when he bade his father partake of the meal, the invitation sounded harsh. "Let my father arise," he said, "and eat of his son's venison." Jacob had spoken differently; he had said, "Arise, I pray thee, sit and eat of my venison." The words of Esau terrified Isaac greatly. His fright exceeded that which he had felt when his father was about to offer him as a sacrifice, and he cried out, "Who then is he that hath been the mediator between me and the Lord, to make the blessing reach Jacob?"—words meant to imply that he suspected Rebekah of having instigated Jacob's act.

Isaac's alarm was caused by his seeing hell at the feet of Esau. Scarcely had he entered the house when the walls thereof began to get hot on account of the nearness of hell, which he brought along with him. Isaac could not but exclaim, "Who will be burnt down yonder, I or my son Jacob?" and the Lord answered him, "Neither thou nor Jacob, but the hunter."

Isaac told Esau that the meat set before him by Jacob had had marvellous qualities. Any savor that one desired it possessed, it was even endowed with the taste of the food that God will grant the pious in the world to come. "I know not," he said, "what the meat was. But I had only to wish for bread, and it tasted like bread, or fish, or locusts, or flesh of animals, in short, it had the taste of any dainty one could wish for." When Esau heard the word "flesh", he began to weep, and he said: "To me Jacob gave no more than a dish of lentils, and in payment for it he took my birthright. What must he have taken from thee for flesh of animals?" Hitherto Isaac

had been in great anguish on account of the thought that he had committed a wrong in giving his blessing to his younger son instead of the firstborn, to whom it belonged by law and custom. But when he heard that Jacob had acquired the birthright from Esau, he said, "I gave my blessing to the right one!"

In his dismay, Isaac had had the intention of cursing Jacob for having wrested the blessing from him through cunning. God prevented him from carrying out his plan. He reminded him that he would but curse himself, seeing that his blessing contained the words, "Cursed be every one that curseth thee." But Isaac was not willing to acknowledge his blessing valid as applied to Jacob, until he was informed that his second son was the possessor of the birthright. Only then did he say, "Yea, he shall be blessed," whereat Esau cried with an exceeding great and bitter cry. By way of punishment for having been the cause of such distress, a descendant of Jacob, Mordecai, was also made to cry with a loud and bitter cry, and his grief was brought forth by the Amalekite Haman, the descendant of Esau. At the words of Isaac, "Thy brother came with wisdom, and hath taken away thy blessing," Esau spat out in vexation, and said, "He took away my birthright, and I kept silence, and now that he takes away my blessing, should I also keep silence?"<sup>101</sup> Is not he rightly named Jacob? for he hath supplanted me these two times."<sup>102</sup>

Isaac continued to speak to Esau: "Behold, I have made him thy lord, he is thy king, and do what thou wilt, thy blessings will still belong to him; all his brethren have I given to him for slaves, and what slaves possess belongs to their owner. There is nothing for it, thou must be content that thou wilt receive thy bread baked from thy master." The Lord took it ill of Isaac that he cheered him with such kind words. "To Mine enemy," He reproached him, "thou sayest, 'What shall I do for thee, my son?'" Isaac replied, "O



that he might find grace with Thee!” God: “He is a recreant.” Isaac: “Doth he not act righteously when he honors his parents?” God: “In the land of uprightness will he deal wrongfully, he will stretch his hand forth in days to come against the Temple.” Isaac: “Then let him enjoy much good in this world, that he may not behold the abiding-place of the Lord in the world to come.”<sup>103</sup>

When it became plain to Esau that he could not induce his father to annul the blessing bestowed upon Jacob, he tried to force a blessing for himself by an underhand trick. He said: “Hast thou but one blessing, my father? Bless me, even me also, O my father, else it will be said thou hast but one blessing to bestow. Suppose both Jacob and I had been righteous men, had not then thy God had two blessings, one for each?” The Lord Himself made reply: “Silence! Jacob will bless the twelve tribes, and each blessing will be different from every other.” But Isaac felt great pity for his older son, and he wanted to bless him, but the Shekinah forsook him, and he could not carry out what he purposed. Thereupon Esau began to weep. He shed three tears—one ran from his right eye, the second from his left eye, and the third remained hanging from his eyelash. God said, “This villain cries for his very life, and should I let him depart empty-handed?” and then He bade Isaac bless his older son.<sup>104</sup>

The blessing of Isaac ran thus: “Behold, of the fat of the earth shall be thy dwelling,” by which he meant Greater Greece, in Italy; “and of the dew of heaven from above,” referring to Bet-Gubrin; “and by thy sword shalt thou live, and thou shalt serve thy brother,” but when he casts off the yoke of the Lord, then shalt thou “shake his yoke from off thy neck,” and thou wilt be his master.<sup>105</sup>

The blessing which Isaac gave to his older son was bound to no condition whatsoever. Whether he deserved them or not, Esau was to enjoy the

goods of this world. Jacob’s blessing, however, depended upon his pious deeds; through them he would have a just claim upon earthly prosperity. Isaac thought: “Jacob is a righteous man, he will not murmur against God, though it should come to pass that suffering be inflicted upon him in spite of his upright life. But that reprobate Esau, if he should do a good deed, or pray to God and not be heard, he would say, ‘As I pray to the idols for naught, so it is in vain to pray to God.’” For this reason did Isaac bestow an unconditional blessing upon Esau.<sup>106</sup>

---

99. Tan. B. I, 136; Tan. Toledot 11; BR 66. 5; *Hadar* and *Da’at* on Gen. 27. 30, cite the Haggadah that Michael and Gabriel came to Jacob’s assistance at the moment of Esau’s arrival. Comp. notes 92 and 97 as well as Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 27. 30.

100. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 27. 31. PRE 32, according to the reading in MHG I, 431, maintains, on the contrary, that Esau finally succeeded in catching a hart; comp. also Tan. Toledot 11, and Tan. B. I, 131. The sentence cited by Ginsburger (Targum, *ad loc.*) from PRE cannot be the source of Targum. The Karaite Hadassi, *Eshkol*, No. 362, 133a, quotes the following from the Midrash: Esau was in the habit of serving his father meat of animals not slaughtered according to the law, and on one occasion, when he failed to catch any game, he prepared a *ragout* out of the flesh of young dogs and hares, and put it before Isaac. But no sooner did Isaac touch the plate than the dogs began to bark, and he became frightened as narrated in the Bible, Gen. 27. 33. The Karaite Mordecai b. Nissim, 65, likewise mentions this legend, but he cannot be cited as an independent authority for this, since he undoubtedly made use of *Eshkol*. It is not improbable that the Karaites, in their attempt to ridicule the Rabbanites, exaggerated the statement of Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.*, though the barking of dead dogs is not impossible in legend; compare footnote 113 on p. 199. See also pp. 264–265, with regard to Esau’s preparation of the food according to the law, in contrast to the view ascribed to the Rabbis by the Karaites.

101. BR 65. 18 and 67. 1–4; Tan. B. I, 141–143; Tan. Toledot 11–13; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 27. 33. Great terror took hold of Isaac at the time of the ‘Akedah, when God opened the heavens and Isaac beheld the “chambers of the *Merkabah*”; Tan. B. I, 141. Comp. also the quotation from the Pesikta in Da’at, on Gen. 27. 1 (not found in our texts), as well as Zohar I, 143a, 144a. With regard to



the suspicion against Rebekah, see note 81. Jacob who caused fright and terror to his father was punished “measure for measure”, and terror seized hold of him at the report of Joseph’s death. See Zohar I, 144b.

102. Lekah Gen. 27. 36. הָכִי is taken to be identical with talmudic הָכִי “so”.

103. BR 67. 5; Tan. B. I, 143. Comp. also Megillah 6a and PRE 39 (end), as well as Mishle 26, 100, and Tehillim 10, 95.

104. Tan. B. I, 143–144 and III, 79; Sanhedrin 101b (where בפלילה “argument”, is to be read, with MHG I, 113, 433, and not בעלילה “accusation”, as our texts have it. See Ginzberg, *Randglossen zum hebräischen Ben Sira*, 7. 7 and 14); PRK ed. G. 52, where וְנָחַה is to be explained in accordance with footnote 10 on p. 888. On the tears shed by Esau, comp. ER 13, 65 (two tears), and 19, 114; 2 ARN 48, 130; Tehillim 80, 362; Tan. Kedoshim 15; Sekel 100; see pp. 1159–1161. Philo, Gen. 4, 233, reads: Isaac mistook Esau’s tears to be tears of repentance, and he blessed him, believing that he had forsaken his evil ways.

105. BR 67. 6. Comp. also Onkelos and Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 27. 40, as well as Jub. 26. 31. In the last-named source this biblical verse is rendered as follows: And it shall come to pass when thou becomest great (תָּרַב instead of תָּרַד?) and dost shake off his yoke from thy neck, thou wilt sin a grievous sin unto death, and thy seed will be uprooted from under the heaven. “Grievous sin” is a haggadic rendering of וּפְרִקַת עֹל, which is explained in accordance with this mishnic use of פֹּרוֹק עַל “to cast off the heavenly yoke”, while the other haggadic interpretation connects עֹל with עוֹל “young child”; hence the paraphrase “and thy seed”, etc. On עוֹל or עַל “child”, comp. Ginzberg’s note in Geiger, *Kebuzzat Maamarim*, 384.

106. Tan. B. I, 134 and 135; Aggadat Bereshit 42, 86–87. See also note 75.

had cunningly obtained the blessing, then Esau grieved exceedingly, and he was also vexed at his father and mother. He also rose up and took his wife, and went away from his father and mother to the land of Seir. There he married his second wife, Basemath, the daughter of Elon the Hittite, and he called her name Adah, saying that the blessing had in that time passed from him. After dwelling in Seir for six months, Esau returned to the land of Canaan, and placed his two wives in his father’s house in Hebron. And the wives of Esau vexed and provoked Isaac and Rebekah with their works, for they walked not in the ways of the Lord, but served their fathers’ gods of wood and stone, as their fathers had taught them, and they were more wicked than their fathers. They sacrificed and burnt incense to the Baalim, and Isaac and Rebekah became weary of them. And at the end of fourteen years of Jacob’s residing in the house of Eber, Jacob desired to see his father and his mother, and he returned home. Esau had forgotten in those days what Jacob had done to him, in having taken the blessing from him, but when Esau saw Jacob returning to his parents, he remembered what Jacob had done to him, and he was greatly incensed against him, and he sought to slay him.<sup>107</sup>

But Esau would not kill Jacob while his father was yet alive, lest Isaac beget another son. He wanted to be sure of being the only heir.<sup>108</sup> However, his hatred against Jacob was so great that he determined to hasten the death of his father and then dispatch Jacob. Such murderous plans Esau cherished in his heart, though he denied that he was harboring them. But God spoke, “Probably thou knowest not that I examine the hearts of men, for I am the Lord that searcheth the heart.” And not God alone knew the secret desires of Esau. Rebekah, like all the Mothers, was a prophetess, and she delayed not to warn Jacob of the danger that hung over him. “Thy brother,” she said to him, “is as sure of accomplishing his

## JACOB LEAVES HIS FATHER’S HOUSE

Esau hated his brother Jacob on account of the blessing that his father had given him, and Jacob was very much afraid of his brother Esau, and he fled to the house of Eber, the son of Shem, and he concealed himself there fourteen years on account of his brother Esau, and he continued there to learn the ways of the Lord and His commandments. When Esau saw that Jacob had fled and escaped from him, and Jacob



wicked purpose as though thou wert dead. Now therefore, my son, obey my voice, and arise, flee thou to Laban my brother, to Haran, and tarry with him for seven years, until thy brother's fury turn away." In the goodness of her heart, Rebekah could not but believe that the anger of Esau was only a fleeting passion, and would disappear in the course of time. But she was mistaken, his hate persisted until the end of his life.<sup>109</sup>

Courageous as he was, Jacob would not run away from danger. He said to his mother, "I am not afraid; if he wishes to kill me, I will kill him," to which she replied, "Let me not be bereaved of both my sons in one day."<sup>110</sup> By these words Rebekah again showed her prophetic gift. As she spoke, so it happened—when their time came, Esau was slain while the burial of Jacob was taking place.<sup>111</sup>

And Jacob said to Rebekah: "Behold, thou knowest that my father has become old and does not see, and if I leave him and go away, he will be angry and will curse me. I will not go; if he sends me, only then will I go."<sup>112</sup>

Accordingly, Rebekah went to Isaac, and amid tears she spoke to him thus: "If Jacob take a wife of the daughters of Heth, what good shall my life do me?"<sup>113</sup> And Isaac called Jacob, and charged him, and said unto him: "Thou shalt not take a wife of the daughters of Canaan, for thus did our father Abraham command us according to the word of the Lord, which He had commanded him, saying, 'Unto thy seed will I give the land; if thy children keep My covenant that I have made with thee, then will I also perform to thy children that which I have spoken unto thee, and I will not forsake them.' Now therefore, my son, hearken to my voice, to all that I shall command thee, and refrain from taking a wife from amongst the daughters of Canaan. Arise, go to Haran, to the house of Bethuel, thy mother's father, and take thee a wife from thence of

the daughters of Laban, thy mother's brother. Take heed lest thou shouldst forget the Lord thy God and all His ways in the land to which thou goest, and shouldst join thyself to the people of the land, and pursue vanity, and forsake the Lord thy God. But when thou comest to the land, serve the Lord. Do not turn to the right or to the left from the way which I commanded thee, and which thou didst learn. And may the Almighty God grant thee favor before the people of the land, that thou mayest take a wife there according to thy choice, one who is good and upright in the way of the Lord. And may God give unto thee and thy seed the blessing of thy father Abraham and make thee fruitful and multiply thee, and mayest thou become a multitude of people in the land whither thou goest, and may God cause thee to return to thy land, the land of thy father's dwelling, with children and with great riches, with joy and with pleasure."<sup>114</sup>

As the value of a document is attested by its concluding words, the signature of the witnesses, so Isaac confirmed the blessing he had bestowed upon Jacob.<sup>115</sup> That none might say Jacob had secured it by intrigue and cunning, he blessed him again with three blessings, in these words, "In so far as I am endowed with the power of blessing, I bestow blessing upon thee. May God, with whom there is endless blessing, give thee His, and also the blessing wherewith Abraham desired to bless me, desisting only in order not to provoke the jealousy of Ishmael."<sup>116</sup>

Seeing with his prophetic eye that the seed of Jacob would once be compelled to go into exile, Isaac offered up one more petition, that God would bring the exiles back again. He said, "He shall deliver thee in six troubles, and in the seventh there shall no evil touch thee." And also Rebekah prayed to God in behalf of Jacob: "O Lord of the world, let not the purpose prosper which Esau harbors against Jacob. Put a bridle upon him, that he accomplish not all he wills to do."<sup>117</sup>



When Esau observed that even his father's love had passed from him to Jacob, he went away, to Ishmael, and he addressed him as follows: "Lo, as thy father gave all his possessions to thy brother Isaac, and dismissed thee with empty hands, so my father purposeth to do to me. Make thyself ready then, go forth and slay thy brother, and I will slay mine, and then we two shall divide the whole world between us." And Ishmael replied: "Why dost thou want me to slay thy father? thou canst do it thyself." Esau said: "It hath happened aforetime that a man killed his brother—Cain murdered Abel. But that a son should kill his father is unheard of."

Esau did not really shrink back from parricide, only it chanced not to fit the plan he had hatched. "If Ishmael slays my father," he said to himself, "I am the rightful redeemer, and I shall kill Ishmael to avenge my father, and if, then, I murder Jacob, too, everything will belong to me, as the heir of my father and my uncle."<sup>118</sup> This shows that Esau's marriage with Mahalath, the daughter of Ishmael and grandchild of Abraham, was not concluded out of regard for his parents, who were opposed to his two other wives, daughters of the Canaanites. All he desired was to enter into amicable relations with Ishmael in order to execute his devilish plan.<sup>119</sup>

But Esau reckoned without his host. The night before his wedding with Mahalath Ishmael died, and Nebaioth, the son of Ishmael, stepped into his father's place, and gave away his sister.<sup>120</sup> How little it had been in Esau's mind to make his parents happy by taking a granddaughter of Abraham to wife, appears from the fact that he kept his two other wives, the Canaanitish women. The daughter of Ishmael followed the example of her companions, and thus she but added to the grief caused the parents of Esau by their daughters-in-law.<sup>121</sup> And the opportunity might have been a most favorable one for Esau to turn aside from his godless

ways and amend his conduct, for the bridegroom is pardoned on his wedding day for all his sins committed in years gone by.<sup>122</sup>

Scarcely had Jacob left his father's house, when Rebekah began to weep, for she was sorely distressed about him. Isaac comforted her, saying: "Weep not for Jacob! In peace doth he depart, and in peace will he return. The Lord, God Most High, will guard him against all evil and be with him. He will not forsake him all the days of his life. Have no fear for him, for he walketh on the right path, he is a perfect man, and he hath faith in God—he will not perish."<sup>123</sup>

---

107. Yashar, Toledot, 53a–53b. Comp. notes 71 and 73.

108. BR 75. 9; WR 27. 11; Tan. B. III, 95; Tan. Emor 13; ER 3, 12; PK 9, 78b–79a; Tehillim 2, 24; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 27. 41. See also note 118.

109. BR 67. 8–10. On Rebekah as a prophetess comp. note 81. Commenting on the words of Scripture "And Esau said in his heart" (Gen. 27. 41), the Midrash remarks: The pious are masters of their hearts (=passions), the wicked are slaves to their hearts. See BR, *loc. cit.*; Tehillim 14, 112. Esau was a consummate master of deceitfulness: he not only played the rôle of a loving son, while he was anxiously awaiting his father's death (comp. Tehillim *loc. cit.*), but he also pretended to be a loving brother, in order that Jacob should not take any precautions against his murderous plans; Mishle 26, 99, and compare footnote 11 on p. 330. According to Jub. 27. 1, Esau's evil designs were revealed to Rebekah in a dream. It is difficult to harmonize this view with the description, given *ibid.* 26. 35, of the open hostility between the brothers.

110. Jub. 27. 5.

111. Sotah 13a. Compare with p. 414. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 27. 45 explains these words of Rebekah differently.

112. Jub. 27. 7. Similarly in Tan. B. I, 145=Aggadat Bereshit 45, 91.

113. BR 67. 11; גורפת מחוטמה, as a result of her incessant weeping which made her wipe her nose continually. The paraphrasing of אשה (Gen. 27. 46) by a "wicked wife" is found not only in Targum Yerushalmi, *ad loc.*, but also in Jub. 27. 8. Leket Midrashim 22a reads: Rebekah saw, in her prophetic vision, that Titus would destroy the temple which will be a hundred cubits high (a haggadic explanation of the



masoretic note on Gen. *loc. cit.* that a small ק is to be written in קצתי).

114. Yashar, Toledot, 54b–55a. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 28. 3 reads: May the Lord give thee many possessions, and make twelve tribes issue from thee, and mayest thou be found meritorious to produce Synedrions consisting of seventy members, corresponding to the number of the nations of the earth.

115. BR 67. 12.

116. MHG I, 437–438. Compare with pp. 243–244. On the number of the blessings, see Tan. B. I, 136, and sources quoted in note 95.

117. BR 75. 8. Compare with pp. 266–269. See further Index, *s. v.* “Dominions”.

118. MHG I, 440; Aggadat Bereshit 2, 6, and 46, 95–96; Tehillim 14, 112; *Nur al-Zulm*, 87. Comp. also BR 67. 8, and note 108. *Hadar* on Gen. 27. 42 quotes, from an unknown midrashic source, the statement that God had revealed to Shem Esau’s evil designs; and the prophet informed the latter that his secrets were known to him.

119. BR 67. 8. Comp. the preceding note.

120. MHG I, 440, where נוגף ישמעאל is to be read. A somewhat different version is found in *Nur al-Zulm*, 87, which reads: When Esau saw that Ishmael was unwilling to carry out his plans, he refused to marry Mahalath, who had been betrothed to him, and the marriage took place only after her father’s death. See also Seder ‘Olam 2 and Megillah 17a, where it is stated that Ishmael died after the betrothal, but before the marriage of his daughter.

121. BR 67. 13. Here, as well as in the sources cited in the following note, Mahalath is identified with Basemath mentioned in Gen. 36. 3. This view is also shared by Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 28. 9. Philo, Gen. 4, 245, in agreement with BR, calls attention to the word על (Gen. 28. 9), which indicates that Esau did not separate himself from his Canaanitish wives, as his parents had hoped. In BR לגרשם is perhaps to be read instead of להתגייר, and the Midrash wants to say that at first Esau had intended to divorce his Canaanitish wives, but changed his mind. The difference between Esau and Jacob became evident to everybody, when the former married the ungodly daughter of Ishmael, while the latter married the pious daughters of Laban; Yelammedenu in Supplement to Yalkut 18=BHM VI, 181; Lekah, Gen. 28. 9. Comp. the following note.

122. Yerushalmi Bikkurim 3, 65d; Shemuel 17, 95 and in abridged form BR 67. 13. In all these sources the identity of Mahalath with Basemath is presupposed. See the preceding note. Like this third wife of Esau, his two first ones also had double names: Oholibamah-Judith, and Adah-Basemath. Accordingly, there is no contradiction between Gen. 26. 34 and 36. 3. Comp. Lekah, Gen. 26. 46, and Rashi, Gen. 36. 2. These two authorities, though agreeing on this point, differ in their explanations of the

meaning of the names, and show thereby that they made use of different sources. Comp. also ps.–Philo, 9, top.

123. Jub. 27. 13–18. On the expression “my sister”, used by Isaac in his address to Rebekah, see Charles, *ad loc.* He errs, however, in maintaining that the use of “brother” in the sense of “fellow-believer” (comp. 1 Corinth. 9. 5) is unknown in rabbinic literature. See Baba Kamma 88a: אחיך במצות. Comp. also MHG I, 341.

## JACOB PURSUED BY ELIPHAZ AND ESAU

When Jacob went away to go to Haran, Esau called his son Eliphaz, and secretly spoke unto him, saying: “Now hasten, take thy sword in thy hand and pursue Jacob, and pass before him in the road, and lurk for him and slay him with thy sword in one of the mountains, and take all belonging unto him, and come back.” And Eliphaz was dexterous and expert with the bow, as his father had taught him, and he was a noted hunter in the field and a valiant man. And Eliphaz did as his father had commanded him. And Eliphaz was at that time thirteen years old, and he arose and went and took ten of his mother’s brothers with him, and pursued Jacob. And he followed Jacob closely, and when he overtook him, he lay in ambush for him on the borders of the land of Canaan, opposite to the city of Shechem. And Jacob saw Eliphaz and his men pursuing after him, and Jacob stood in the place in which he was going in order to know what it was, for he did not understand their purpose. Eliphaz drew his sword and went on advancing, he and his men, toward Jacob, and Jacob said unto them, “Wherefore have you come hither, and why do you pursue with your swords?” Eliphaz came near to Jacob, and answered as follows, “Thus did my father command me, and now therefore I will not deviate from the orders which my father gave me.” And when Jacob saw that Esau had



impressed his command urgently upon Eliphaz, he approached and supplicated Eliphaz and his men, saying, "Behold, all that I have, and that which my father and mother gave unto me, that take unto thee and go from me, and do not slay me, and may this thing that thou wilt do with me be accounted unto thee as righteousness." And the Lord caused Jacob to find favor in the sight of Eliphaz and his men, and they hearkened to the voice of Jacob, and they did not put him to death, but took all his belongings, together with the silver and gold that he had brought with him from Beer-sheba. They left him nothing. When Eliphaz and his men returned to Esau, and told him all that had happened to them with Jacob, he was wroth with his son Eliphaz and with his men, because they had not put Jacob to death. And they answered, and said unto Esau, "Because Jacob supplicated us in this matter, not to slay him, our pity was moved toward him, and we took all belonging to him, and we came back." Esau then took all the silver and gold which Eliphaz had taken from Jacob, and he put them by in his house.<sup>124</sup>

Nevertheless Esau did not give up the hope of intercepting Jacob on his flight and slaying him. He pursued him, and with his men occupied the road along which he had to journey to Haran. There a great miracle happened to Jacob. When he observed what Esau's intention was, he turned off toward the Jordan river, and, with eyes directed to God, he cleft the waters with his wanderer's staff, and succeeded in crossing to the other side. But Esau was not to be deterred. He kept up the pursuit, and reached the hot springs at Baarus before his brother, who had to pass by there. Jacob, not knowing that Esau was on the watch for him, decided to bathe in the spring, saying, "I have neither bread nor other things needful, so I will at least warm my body in the waters of the well." While he was in the bath, Esau occupied every exit, and Jacob would surely have

perished in the hot water, if the Lord had not caused a miracle to come to pass. A new opening formed of itself, and through it Jacob escaped. Thus were fulfilled the words, "When thou passest through the waters, I will be with thee; when thou walkest through the fire, thou shalt not be burnt," for Jacob was saved from the waters of the Jordan and from the fire of the hot spring.

At the same time with Jacob, a rider, leaving his horse and his clothes on the shore, had stepped into the river to cool off, but he was overwhelmed by the waves, and he met his death. Jacob put on the dead man's clothes, mounted his horse, and went off. It was a lucky chance, for Eliphaz had stripped him of everything, even his clothes, and the miracle of the river had happened only that he might not be forced to appear naked among men.<sup>125</sup>

Though Jacob was robbed of all his possessions, his courage did not fail him. He said: "Should I lose hope in my Creator? I set my eyes upon the merits of my fathers. For the sake of them the Lord will give me His aid." And God said: "Jacob, thou putttest thy trust in the merits of thy fathers, therefore I will not suffer thy foot to be moved; He that keepeth thee will not slumber. Yea, still more! While a keeper watcheth only by day as a rule, and sleepeth by night, I will guard thee day and night, for, behold, He that keepeth Israel shall neither slumber nor sleep. The Lord will keep thee from all evil, from Esau as well as Laban; He will keep thy soul, that the Angel of Death do thee no hurt; He will keep thy going out and thy coming in, He will support thee now thou art leaving Canaan, and when thou returnest to Canaan."<sup>126</sup>

Jacob was reluctant to leave the Holy Land before he received direct permission from God. "My parents," he reflected, "bade me go forth and sojourn outside of the land, but who knows whether it be the will of God that I do as they say, and beget children outside of the Holy



Land?”<sup>127</sup> Accordingly, he betook himself to Beer-sheba. There, where the Lord had given permission to Isaac to depart from Canaan and go to Philistia, he would learn the will of the Lord concerning himself.

He did not follow the example of his father and grandfather and take refuge with Abimelech, because he feared the king might force also him into a covenant, and make it impossible for his descendants of many generations to take possession of the Philistine land. Nor could he stay at home, because of his fear that Esau might wrest the birthright and the blessing from him, and to that he would not and could not agree.<sup>128</sup> He was as little disposed to take up the combat with Esau, for he knew the truth of the maxim, “He who courts danger will be overcome by it; he who avoids danger will overcome it.” Both Abraham and Isaac had lived according to this rule. His grandfather had fled from Nimrod, and his father had gone away from the Philistines.<sup>129</sup>

124. Yashar Toledot, 55a–55b, where יהודה instead of כנען is to be read, since Shechem is not at the end of the Holy Land. A similar legend was known to Rashī; see his remarks on Gen. 19. 11. The statement of Berliner, *ad loc.*, that R. Judah Gedaliah, in his *Ot Emet*, 37a, quotes this legend from BR is based on a misunderstanding; comp. the following note, and note 156. The older Midrashim cite two views: according to one, Isaac, though a very rich man, sent his son away empty-handed, and God was wroth with him on this account. But the other view maintains that Jacob left his parental home laden with wealth. On his way to Laban, however, he was attacked by Esau, who robbed him of everything he had with him. See BR 68. 2 (גרוד “bare life”, instead of גרוד; comp. the use of the adverb גרוד “only” in Talmud); Tan. B. I, 145–146; Aggadat Bereshit 45, 92–93, and 67, 136. Isaac, according to the first view, was punished for his lack of paternal love. The Shekinah deserted him, and did not return to him until the day of his death; Tan., Aggadat Bereshit, *loc. cit.*; Makiri, Ps. 121, 234. On this desertion of the holy spirit (=Shekinah), compare with p. 264.

125. Tan. B. I, 145; Aggadat Bereshit 45, 93; quotation, from a Midrash in MS. by Azulai, *Midbar Kedemot*

’8, 3; Bereshit Rabbeti, cited by Epstein in *Mikkadmoniyot*, 107–108, and in *Magazin*, XV, 73; R. Judah Gedaliah, *Ot Emet*, 37 (not from BR, but from Bereshit Rabbeti); Makiri, Ps. 121, 233–234. Yelammedenu in Supplement to Yalkut 19 (=BHM VI, 81), speaks of the dividing of the Jordan for Jacob on his return home. On “Baarus” or “Baaras”, see note 189.

126. MHG I, 442–443; BR 68. 2 and 9; Tan. B. I, 145; Aggadat Bereshit 45, 93.

127. MHG I, 443. This passage also remarks: After having taken leave from his parents, Jacob betook himself to Eber, in whose house he remained hidden for fourteen years, and then proceeded to Laban. These fourteen years he spent in the study of the Torah under the guidance of Eber. See BR 68. 5; Tan. B. I, 145; Index, s. v. “Shem and Eber”.

128. BR 68. 5 and 7; Tan. B. I, 151. In these sources Philistia is not considered as part of the Holy Land. On the different view see note 53.

129. Tan. B. I, 147, and IV 161; Tan. Wa-Yehi 6 and Mass’e 1; Berakot 64a; Aggadat Bereshit 46, 95–96.

## THE DAY OF MIRACLES

Jacob’s journey to Haran was a succession of miracles. The first of the five that befell for his sake in the course of it was that the sun sank while Jacob was passing Mount Moriah, though it was high noon at the time. He was following the spring that appeared wherever the Patriarchs went or settled. It accompanied Jacob from Beer-sheba to Mount Moriah, a two days’ journey. When he arrived at the holy hill, the Lord said to him: “Jacob, thou hast bread in thy wallet, and the spring of waters is near by to quench thy thirst. Thus thou hast food and drink, and here thou canst lodge for the night.” But Jacob replied: “The sun has barely passed the fifth of its twelve day stages, why should I lie down to sleep at so unseemly an hour?” But then Jacob perceived that the sun was about to sink, and he prepared to make ready his bed.<sup>130</sup> It was the Divine purpose not to let Jacob pass the site of the future Temple without stopping; he was to tarry there at least one night. Also, God desired



to appear unto Jacob, and He shows Himself unto His faithful ones only at night.<sup>131</sup> At the same time Jacob was saved from the pursuit of Esau, who had to desist on account of the premature darkness.<sup>132</sup>

Jacob took twelve stones from the altar on which his father Isaac had lain bound as a sacrifice, and he said: "It was the purpose of God to let twelve tribes arise, but they have not been begotten by Abraham or Isaac. If, now, these twelve stones will unite into a single one, then shall I know for a certainty that I am destined to become the father of the twelve tribes." At this time the second miracle came to pass, the twelve stones joined themselves together and made one, which he put under his head, and at once it became soft and downy like a pillow. It was well that he had a comfortable couch. He was in great need of rest, for it was the first night in fourteen years that he did not keep vigils. During all those years, passed in Eber's house of learning, he had devoted the nights to study. And for twenty years to come he was not to sleep, for while he was with his uncle Laban, he spent all the night and every night reciting the Psalms.<sup>133</sup>

On the whole it was a night of marvels. He dreamed a dream in which the course of the world's history was unfolded to him. On a ladder set up on the earth, with the top of it reaching to heaven, he beheld the two angels who had been sent to Sodom. For one hundred and thirty-eight years they had been banished from the celestial regions, because they had betrayed their secret mission to Lot. They had accompanied Jacob from his father's house thither, and now they were ascending heavenward. When they arrived there, he heard them call the other angels, and say, "Come ye and see the countenance of the pious Jacob, whose likeness appears on the Divine throne, ye who yearned long to see it," and then he beheld the angels descend from heaven to gaze upon him.<sup>134</sup> He also saw the angels of the four

kingdoms ascending the ladder. The angel of Babylon mounted seventy rounds, the angel of Media, fifty-two, that of Greece, one hundred and eighty, and that of Edom mounted very high, saying, "I will ascend above the heights of the clouds, I will be like the Most High," and Jacob heard a voice remonstrating, "Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the uttermost parts of the pit." God Himself reproveth Edom, saying, "Though thou mount on high as the eagle, and though thy nest be set among the stars, I will bring thee down from thence."<sup>135</sup>

Furthermore, God showed unto Jacob the revelation at Mount Sinai, the translation of Elijah, the Temple in its glory and in its spoliation, Nebuchadnezzar's attempt to burn the three holy children in the fiery furnace, and Daniel's encounter with Bel.<sup>136</sup>

In this, the first prophetic dream dreamed by Jacob,<sup>137</sup> God made him the promise that the land upon which he was lying would be given to him, but the land he lay upon was the whole of Palestine, which God had folded together and put under him. "And," the promise continued, "thy seed will be like unto the dust of the earth. As the earth survives all things, so thy children will survive all the nations of the earth. But as the earth is trodden upon by all, so thy children, when they commit trespasses, will be trodden upon by the nations of the earth."<sup>138</sup> And, furthermore, God promised that Jacob should spread out to the west and to the east, a greater promise than that given to his fathers Abraham and Isaac, to whom He had allotted a limited land. Jacob's was an unbounded possession.<sup>139</sup>

From this wondrous dream Jacob awoke with a start of fright, on account of the vision he had had of the destruction of the Temple.<sup>140</sup> He cried out, "How dreadful is this place! this is none other but the house of God, wherein is the gate of heaven through which prayer ascends to Him." He took the stone made out of the twelve, and



set it up for a pillar, and poured oil upon the top of it, which had flowed down from heaven for him, and God sank this anointed stone unto the abyss, to serve as the centre of the earth, the same stone, the Eben Shetiyah,<sup>141</sup> that forms the centre of the sanctuary, whereon the Ineffable Name is graven, the knowledge of which makes a man master over nature, and over life and death.<sup>142</sup>

Jacob cast himself down before the Eben Shetiyah, and entreated God to fulfil the promise He had given him, and also he prayed that God grant him honorable sustenance. For God had not mentioned bread to eat and raiment to put on, that Jacob might learn to have faith in the Lord. Then he vowed to give the tenth of all he owned unto God, if He would but grant his petition. Thus Jacob was the first to take a vow upon himself,<sup>143</sup> and the first, too, to separate the tithe from his income.<sup>144</sup>

God had promised him almost all that is desirable, but he feared he might forfeit the pledged blessings through his sinfulness,<sup>145</sup> and again he prayed earnestly that God bring him back to his father's house unimpaired in body, possessions, and knowledge,<sup>146</sup> and guard him, in the strange land whither he was going, against idolatry, an immoral life, and bloodshed.<sup>147</sup>

His prayer at an end, Jacob set out on his way to Haran, and the third wonder happened. In the twinkling of an eye he arrived at his destination. The earth jumped from Mount Moriah to Haran. A wonder like this God has executed only four times in the whole course of history.<sup>148</sup>

The first thing to meet his eye in Haran was the well whence the inhabitants drew their supply of water. Although it was a great city, Haran suffered from dearth of water, and therefore the well could not be used by the people free of charge. Jacob's sojourn in the city produced a change. By reason of his meritorious deeds the water springs were blessed, and the city had water enough for its needs.

Jacob saw a number of people by the well, and he questioned them, "My brethren, whence be ye?" He thus made himself a model for all to follow. A man should be companionable, and address others like brothers and friends, and not wait for them to greet him. Each one should strive to be the first to give the salutation of peace, that the angels of peace and compassion may come to meet him. When he was informed that the by-standers hailed from Haran, he made inquiry about the character and vocation of his uncle Laban, and whether they were on terms of friendly intercourse with him. They answered briefly: "There is peace between us, but if thou art desirous of inquiring further, here comes Rachel the daughter of Laban. From her thou canst learn all thou hast a mind to learn." They knew that women like to talk, wherefore they referred him to Rachel.<sup>149</sup>

Jacob found it strange that so many should be standing idle by the well, and he questioned further: "Are you day laborers? then it is too early for you to put by your work. But if you are pasturing your own sheep, why do you not water your flocks and let them feed?"<sup>150</sup> They told him they were waiting until all the shepherds brought their flocks thither, and together rolled the stone from the mouth of the well. While he was yet speaking with them, Rachel came with her father's sheep, for Laban had no sons, and a pest having broken out shortly before among his cattle, so few sheep were left that a maiden like Rachel could easily tend them. Now, when Jacob saw the daughter of his mother's brother approaching, he rolled the great stone from the mouth of the well as easily as a cork is drawn from a bottle—the fourth wonder of this extraordinary day. Jacob's strength was equal to the strength of all the shepherds; with his two arms alone he accomplished what usually requires the united forces of a large assemblage of men.<sup>151</sup> He had been divinely endowed with this supernatural strength



on leaving the Holy Land. God had caused the dew of the resurrection to drop down upon him, and his physical strength was so great that even in a combat with the angels he was victorious.<sup>152</sup>

The fifth and last wonder of the day was that the water rose from the depths of the well to the very top, there was no need to draw it up, and there it remained all the twenty years that Jacob abode in Haran.<sup>153</sup>

---

130. PRE 35; BR 68. 10. Comp. also the sources cited in the following note, all of which presuppose that Jacob spent the night on mount Moriah. On the spring which followed him, compare pp. 492–493. The rendering of **וַיִּפְגַּע** by “and he prayed” in the Midrashim just cited is of tannaitic origin; comp. Mekilta Beshallah 2, 28a, and Mekilta RS, 45. This interpretation of **וַיִּפְגַּע** caused the word **בַּמָּקוֹם**, which follows it, to be taken to refer to God, in accordance with the frequent use of **מָקוֹם** “the Place” (=τόπος by Philo) as a name of God. See Mahzor Vitry 500, and Duran, *Magen Abot*, II, 19. These two authorities quote Sifre to the effect that God is called “the Place”. A statement of this kind is not found in our texts of the Sifre; but comp. Midrash Tannaim 222, where the text is very likely to be completed according to Tehillim 90, 390–391. On the meaning of **מָקוֹם**, comp. Dalman, *Worte Jesu*, s. v., and Landau, *Die . . . Synonyma für Gott*, p. 30, seq.

131. BR 68. 10; Sanhedrin 95b; Koheleth 3. 14; Yerushalmi Targumim, Gen. 28. 10. According to a frequently quoted statement (BaR 20. 12; Tan. B. IV, 137; Tan. Balak 11; Aggadat Bereshit 67, 71), God reveals Himself to Jews by day, and to Gentiles by night. Comp. note 221.

132. Tan. B. I, 145; comp. also note 168.

133. BR 68. 11; Tan. B. (introduction), 123–124, and I, 146; Shir 1. 16; PRE 35; Tehillim 91, 399; Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 28. 10; Hullin 91b; see also BR 24. 5; ER 5, 29; Tan. B. I, 181; note 127. On the twelve tribes as a fixed order of nature, compare with pp. 342–343.

134. BR 73. 12–14; Tan. B. I, 149–150; Sifre N., 119; Tehillim 78, 347; Lekah, Gen. 28. 12–13; MHG I, 449–451 (several interpretations of the vision of the ladder are given in this passage); Yerushalmi Targumim and Yalkut Reubeni on Gen. 28. 12. The angels took leave from Jacob at the time of his departure from the Holy Land, since each land has its own guardian angels, and the angels of Palestine could not accompany him to any other country; comp. note 230. According to one view given in BR, *loc. cit.*, the angels ascending to heaven on the ladder were the

two angels who visited Lot, and who, till this memorable night, were excluded from heaven as a punishment for their boastful words: “For *we* will destroy this place” (Gen. 19. 13), as though the destruction of Sodom was their own work, and not the carrying out of the mission entrusted to them by God. As a further humiliation they had to make use of the ladder for their ascension; comp. Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 19. 1. The idea that Jacob’s countenance is in the *Merkabah* is often referred to in rabbinic literature. Comp. (in addition to the sources cited at the beginning of this note) BR 78. 3 and 82. 2; Hullin 91a; BaR 4. 1; Tan. B. IV, 19; Tan. Bemidbar 19; Alphabet of R. Akiba 40 (‘ס) and second version 62 (חל’ק); BHM V, 63. The acquaintance of the Mohammedans with this legend has been pointed out by Goldziher. Jacob is the ideal man, and hence it is his countenance which represents the human race (comp. Ezek. 1. 10) on the divine throne. Joel, *Blicke in die Religionsgeschichte*, I, 117, gives an interesting parallel to this conception from Lobeck, *Aglaophamos*, 909. The angels from the very beginning praised God with the words (comp. 1 Chron. 16. 36) “Blessed be the Lord, the God of Israel”. When Adam was created, they asked God: “Is this the man whose God we proclaim Thee to be?” “No,” replied God, “he is a thief: he partook of the forbidden fruit.” When Noah was born, they repeated this question, and they received the answer: “No; he is a drunkard.” At the birth of Abraham the angels again addressed this question, and the answer was: “No; he is only a proselyte.” At the birth of Isaac they came again with the same question, and the reply was: “No; he loves him whom I hate” (Esau; comp. Mal. 1. 3). But when Jacob was born, and the angels again addressed their question to God, He replied: “Yes; he is the one.” See Tan. B. III, 72–73; Tan. Kedoshim 2; Aggadat Bereshit 61, 126. Comp. also Tan. Shofetim 15, and Makiri, Ps. 2, 16. Yelammedenu in Sikli’s *Talmud Torah* reads: While Jacob was asleep the angels scrutinized him to ascertain whether he was the one on whose account they praised the Lord, as the God of Israel; comp. Poznanski in *Ha-Zofeh*, III, 19, and Ginzberg’s note, *ibid.*, IV, 32. According to the version of this legend in Hullin 91a, BR 63. 12, and MHG I, 452, the angels intended to attack Jacob in his sleep, but God came to his rescue. The legend about the man in the moon, who is identified with Jacob, is perhaps connected with the old legend concerning Jacob’s countenance in the divine throne. Comp. Sabba, *Wa-Yeze*, 31a, and Index, s. v. “Man in the Moon”. Philo, *De Somniis*, 24, sees in Jacob’s ladder the picture of man’s fate: the one ascends and the other descends. A similar metaphor is used by the Rabbis who speak of the “revolving wheel”; comp. Tan. B. IV, 161; Tan. Mekilta 6; PK 2, 12a; WR 8. 1, and in many other passages. See also Bontwetsch, in the *Göttin-gen Nachrichten*, 1900, p. 76, seq., and James, *Lost Apocrypha* 96, seq.



135. PK 23, 150b–151a; WR 29. 2; PRE 35; Tan. Wa-Yeze 2; Tehillim 78. 347; ShR 32. 7.

136. BR 68. 12. Comp. also the sources cited in note 134, as well as Midrash ha-Ne'elam on Gen. 28. 12.

137. Midrash ha-Ne'elam Wa-Yeze (end), which has the additional remark that Jacob thereby noticed that he was in a holy place. God announced to him that the Shekinah would only dwell in the Holy Land, and reveal itself only to his descendants. Comp. note 215.

138. BR 69. 4–5; Hullin 91a. Comp. PR 11, 45b, and see note 82 on pp. 193–194.

139. Shabbat 118a. The passage implies that this was granted to Jacob as a reward for his observance of the Sabbath. Comp. BR 69. 6 and note 280.

140. BR 69. 7; Sifre D., 352. In PR 33, 153a, it is said that Jacob's fear was due to the fact that he was not addressed by God in the same manner as his fathers, in speaking to whom God used the word *Anoki* ("I am"). His fear, however, was soon allayed, when God used the same word in addressing him. Comp. Gen. 28. 13 and 15. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 19. 1, remarks: Jacob spent the night in the open, as he did not care to lodge with the Canaanites whom he hated.

141. PRE 35, which is the source of Rashi, Gen. 28. 18. The old sources (compare footnotes 38 and 39 on p. 7) maintain that the *Eben Shetiyah* is the "foundation stone" with which the formation of the earth began. Comp. Zohar I, 231, and Luria, PRE, *loc. cit.* The conception that the terrestrial sanctuary is placed opposite the celestial one is widespread, and occurs in very old sources. Comp. Mekilta Shirah 10, 43b; Yerushalmi Berakot 4, 8a; Ta'anit 16a; BR 55. 7; Shir 3. 10 and 4. 4; PR 40, 170a; Tan. B. I, 112; Tan. Pekude 1 and 2; MHG I, 454; Tehillim 30, 233. The distance from the terrestrial sanctuary to the celestial is only eighteen miles; BR 69. 7. It is to be observed that the Palestinian sources contrast the terrestrial with the celestial sanctuary, while in Babli (comp., e. g., Ta'anit, *loc. cit.*) the opposites are terrestrial and celestial Jerusalem. Accordingly Tan. Pekude 2 is a Babylonian source, while Tan. Pekude 1 is a Palestinian one. On the heavenly Jerusalem in pseudepigraphic literature, comp. the references cited by Box, 4 Ezra, 198–199.

142. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 28. 30; Targum Kohleth 3. 11; Toledot Yeshu. Comp. Krauss, *Leben Jesu*, 189, and Landauer, *Nöldeke-Festschrift (Orientalische Studien)*, 506. The legend which speaks of the name of the Messiah as engraved on a jewel (compare with p. 1) presupposes the idea that God's name was engraved on the *Eben Shetiyah*.

143. PRE 35; BR 69. 6 and 70. 1–4.

144. BR 70. 7; Tan. V, 24; comp. also note 60. The "ten days of penitence" were granted to Israel as a reward for the tithes which Jacob set aside; Sabba, Wa-Yishlah, 46b,

based on an unknown midrashic source. The quotation from the "Midrash" in *Da'at* and *Hadar* on Gen. 28. 22 to the effect that Jacob was the first to give tithes from his income (in the halakic literature the phrase used is מעשר כספים; in this source it is מעשר ממון) is not found in the extant midrashic literature. Comp. note 63.

145. BR 70. 4. Compare with pp. 296–297.

146. MHG I, 456.

147. BR 70. 4. These are the three cardinal sins; comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 23. In view of the fact that "slandering one's fellow-man is as grievous a sin as worshipping idols" (Yerushalmi Peah 1, 16b, and parallel passages on the margin), the statement is found that Jacob prayed to God to guard him against slandering his fellow-men; BR, *loc. cit.*

148. PRE 35; Targum Yerushalmi 28. 10 (in 1 Yerushalmi this is erroneously described as the fifth miracle; but the correct reading is found in 2 Yerushalmi). On the "jumping", or more correctly, "contracting of the earth", compare footnote 287 on p. 239. A somewhat different version of the third miracle is found in Sanhedrin 95b; Hullin 91b; comp. the sources given in notes 130–131.

149. MHG I, 457; comp. Schechter, *ad loc.* The "blessing of the water" is found, in abridged form, in BR 70. 19 and Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 28. 22 and 31. 22. The talkativeness of young women is also alluded to by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 19. 4. This author adds that the shepherds told Jacob of Laban's prominent social position. Comp. BR 70. 11.

150. BR 70. 11. Lekah, Gen. 29, 7, dwells on the duty of great men to correct the evil ways of their fellow-men, and not say: "It is none of our affairs".

151. PRE 36; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 29. 10, and 2 Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 28. 10. Laban was blessed with sons only after Jacob's arrival; BR 73. 12, and thence in Rashi, Gen. 30. 27. Refer also to p. 772.

152. PRE 32 (the text of the editions is to be supplemented by the reading of *Ketab Tamim*, 88). Comp. also note 98. On Jacob's gigantic strength, see pp. 292–293 and 315–316, as well as p. 404.

153. Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 28. 22 and 31. 22; PRE 36. Comp. note 149, as well as pp. 223, 240 and pp. 493–494. PRK, 26a, points out that for Jacob the water rose to the top, whereas for Moses it only rose high enough to be drawn. This is the source for MHG I, 459.



## JACOB WITH LABAN

Rachel's coming to the well at the moment when Jacob reached the territory belonging to Haran was an auspicious omen. To meet young maidens on first entering a city is a sure sign that fortune is favorable to one's undertakings. Experience proves this through Eliezer, Jacob, Moses, and Saul. They all encountered maidens when they approached a place new to them, and they all met with success.<sup>154</sup>

Jacob treated Rachel at once as his cousin, which caused significant whispering among the by-standers. They censured Jacob for his demeanor toward her, for since God had sent the deluge upon the world, on account of the immoral life led by men, great chastity had prevailed, especially among the people of the east. The talk of the men reduced Jacob to tears. Scarcely had he kissed Rachel when he began to weep, for he repented of having done it.

There was reason enough for tears. Jacob could not but remember sadly that Eliezer, his grandfather's slave, had brought ten camels laden with presents with him to Haran, when he came to sue for a bride for Isaac, while he had not even a ring to give to Rachel. Moreover, he foresaw that his favorite wife Rachel would not lie beside him in the grave, and this, too, made him weep.

As soon as Rachel heard that Jacob was her cousin, she ran home to tell her father about his coming. Her mother was no longer among the living, else she would naturally have gone to her. In great haste Laban ran to receive Jacob. He reflected, if Eliezer, the bondman, had come with ten camels, what would not the favorite son of the family bring with him, and when he saw that Jacob was unattended, he concluded that he carried great sums of money in his girdle, and he threw his arms about his waist to find out whether his supposition was true. Disappointed in this, he yet did not give up hope that his nephew Ja-

cob was a man of substance. Perhaps he concealed precious stones in his month, and he kissed him in order to find out whether he had guessed aright. But Jacob said to him: "Thou thinkest I have money. Nay, thou art mistaken, I have but words."<sup>155</sup> Then he went on to tell him how it had come about that he stood before him empty-handed. He said that his father Isaac had sent him on his way provided with gold, silver, and money, but he had encountered Eliphaz, who had threatened to slay him. To this assailant Jacob had spoken thus: "Know that the descendants of Abraham have an obligation to meet, they will have to serve four hundred years in a land that is not theirs. If thou slayest me, then you, the seed of Esau, will have to pay the debt. It were better, therefore, to take all I have, and spare my life, so that what is owing may be paid by me. Hence," Jacob continued, "I stand before thee bare of all the substance carried off by Eliphaz."<sup>156</sup>

This tale of his nephew's poverty filled Laban with dismay. "What," he exclaimed, "shall I have to give food and drink for a month or, perhaps, even a year to this fellow, who has come to me empty-handed!" He betook himself to his teraphim, to ask them for counsel upon the matter, and they admonished him, saying: "Beware of sending him away from thy house. His star and his constellation are so lucky that good fortune will attend all his undertakings, and for his sake the blessing of the Lord will rest upon all thou doest, in thy house or in thy field."

Laban was satisfied with the advice of the teraphim, but he was embarrassed as to the way in which he was to attach Jacob to his house. He did not venture to offer him service, lest Jacob's conditions be impossible of fulfilment. Again he resorted to the teraphim, and asked them with what reward to tempt his nephew, and they replied: "A wife is his wage; he will ask nothing else of thee but a wife. It is his nature to be



attracted by women, and whenever he threatens to leave thee, do but offer him another wife, and he will not depart.”<sup>157</sup>

Laban went back to Jacob, and said, “Tell me, what shall thy wages be?” and he replied, “Thinkest thou I came hither to make money? I came only to get me a wife,”<sup>158</sup> for Jacob had no sooner beheld Rachel than he fell in love with her and made her a proposal of marriage. Rachel consented, but added the warning: “My father is cunning, and thou art not his match.” Jacob: “I am his brother in cunning.” Rachel: “But is deception becoming unto the pious?” Jacob: “Yes, ‘with the righteous righteousness is seemly, and with the deceiver deception.’ But,” continued Jacob, “tell me wherein he may deal cunningly with me.” Rachel: “I have an older sister, whom he desires to see married before me, and he will try to palm her off on thee instead of me.” To be prepared for Laban’s trickery, Jacob and Rachel agreed upon a sign by which he would recognize her in the nuptial night.<sup>159</sup>

Thus warned to be on his guard against Laban, Jacob worded his agreement with him regarding his marriage to Rachel with such precision that no room was left for distortion or guile. Jacob said: “I know that the people of this place are knaves, therefore I desire to put the matter very clearly to thee. I will serve thee seven years for Rachel, hence not Leah; for thy daughter, that thou bringest me not some other woman likewise named Rachel; for the younger daughter, that thou exchangest not their names in the meantime.”

Nothing of all this availed: “It profits not if a villain is cast into a sawmill”—neither force nor gentle words can circumvent a rascal. Laban deceived not only Jacob, but also the guests whom he invited to the wedding.

154. PRE 36; Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 27. 22. Comp. note 152.

155. BR 70. 13. Rebekah, on a similar occasion, ran to her mother who was still alive; but Rachel’s mother was dead; BR, *loc. cit.*, and 60. 7. Josephus, contrary to the words of Scripture (Gen. 24. 50; comp. Septuagint), maintains that Rebekah’s father was dead, and this was the reason why she ran to her mother to report Eliezer’s arrival.

156. MHG I, 460–461; Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 28. 20. According to Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 29. 3, Laban ran to meet Jacob, because the report had reached him (through Rachel?) of his relative’s gigantic strength and piety. On Jacob being robbed of his possessions by Eliphaz, refer also to pp. 273–275 and 295–296.

157. Yalkut Reubeni (citing Galya Raza) on Gen. 29. 15. The interpretation of נִקְבָּה (Gen., *loc. cit.*) as נִקְבָּה is also found in Zohar I, 160b.

158. BR 70. 14. From the perfect וַעֲבַדְתִּי (Gen. 29. 15) is inferred there that for a short time Laban had Jacob work for low wages. This short time, however, was sufficient for Jacob to find out Rachel’s excellent character; *Imre No’am*, Gen. 29. 15.

159. Megillah 13a (on the text comp. Rabinovicz, *ad loc.*, and MHG I, 463–464). The sign consisted in Rachel’s touching Jacob’s right toe, right thumb, and right lobe; Azulai, *Hesed le-Abraham* II, 6.

## THE MARRIAGE OF JACOB

After Jacob had served Laban seven years, he said to his uncle: “The Lord destined me to be the father of twelve tribes. I am now eighty-four years old, and if I do not take thought of the matter now, when can I!”<sup>160</sup> Thereupon Laban consented to let him have his daughter Rachel to wife, and he was married forty-four years after his brother Esau. The Lord often defers the happiness of the pious, while He permits the wicked to enjoy the fulfilment of their desires soon.<sup>161</sup> Esau, however, had purposely chosen his fortieth year for his marriage; he had wanted to indicate that he was walking in the footsteps of his father Isaac, who had likewise married at forty years of age. Esau was like a swine that stretches out its feet when it lies down, to



show that it is cloven-footed like the clean animals, though it is none the less one of the unclean animals. Until his fortieth year Esau made a practice of violating the wives of other men, and then at his marriage he acted as though he were following the example of his pious father. Accordingly, the woman he married was of his own kind, Judith, a daughter of Heth, for God said: "This one, who is designed for stubble, to be burnt by fire, shall take unto wife one of a people also destined for utter destruction." They, Esau and his wife, illustrated the saying, "Not for naught does the raven consort with the crow; they are birds of a feather."<sup>162</sup>

Far different it was with Jacob. He married the two pious and lovely sisters, Leah and Rachel, for Leah, like her younger sister, was beautiful of countenance, form, and stature. She had but one defect, her eyes were weak, and this malady she had brought down upon herself, through her own action. Laban, who had two daughters, and Rebekah, his sister, who had two sons, had agreed by letter, while their children were still young, that the older son of the one was to marry the older daughter of the other, and the younger son the younger daughter. When Leah grew to maidenhood, and inquired about her future husband, all her tidings spoke of his villainous character, and she wept over her fate until her eyelashes dropped from their lids. But Rachel grew more and more beautiful day by day, for all who spoke of Jacob praised and extolled him, and "good tidings make the bones fat."

In view of the agreement between Laban and Rebekah, Jacob refused to marry the older daughter Leah. As it was, Esau was his mortal enemy, on account of what had happened regarding the birthright and the paternal blessing. If, now, Jacob married the maiden appointed for him, Esau would never forgive his younger brother. Therefore Jacob resolved to take to wife Rachel, the younger daughter of his uncle.<sup>163</sup>

Laban was of another mind. He purposed to marry off his older daughter first, for he knew that Jacob would consent to serve him a second period of seven years for love of Rachel. On the day of the wedding he assembled the inhabitants of Haran, and addressed them as follows: "Ye know well that we used to suffer from lack of water, and as soon as this pious man Jacob came to dwell among us, we had water in abundance." "What hast thou in mind to do?" they asked Laban. He replied: "If ye have naught to say against it, I will deceive him and give him Leah to wife. He loves Rachel with an exceeding great love, and for her sake he will tarry with us yet seven other years." "Do as it pleaseth thee," his friends said. "Well, then," said Laban, "let each one of you give me a pledge that ye will not betray my purpose."

With the pledges they left with him, Laban bought wine, oil, and meat for the wedding feast, and he set a meal before them which they had themselves paid for. Because he deceived his fellow-citizens thus, Laban is called Arami, "the deceiver." They feasted all day long, until late at night, and when Jacob expressed his astonishment at the attention shown him, they said to him: "Through thy piety thou didst a great service of lovingkindness unto us, our supply of water was increased unto abundance, and we desire to show our gratitude therefor." And, indeed, they tried to give him a hint of Laban's purpose. In the marriage ode which they sang they used the refrain "*Halia*," in the hope that he would understand it as *Ha Leah*, "This is Leah." But Jacob was unsuspecting and noticed nothing.

When the bride was led into the nuptial chamber, the guests extinguished all the candles, much to Jacob's amazement. But their explanation satisfied him. "Thinkest thou," they said, "we have as little sense of decency as thy countrymen?" Jacob therefore did not discover the deception practiced upon him until morning. During the



night Leah responded whenever he called Rachel, for which he reproached her bitterly when daylight came. "O thou deceiver, daughter of a deceiver, why didst thou answer me when I called Rachel's name?" "Is there a teacher without a pupil?" asked Leah, in return. "I but profited by thy instruction. When thy father called thee Esau, didst thou not say, Here am I?"<sup>164</sup>

Jacob was greatly enraged against Laban, and he said to him: "Why didst thou deal treacherously with me? Take back thy daughter, and let me depart, seeing thou didst act wickedly toward me."<sup>165</sup> Laban pacified him, however, saying, "It is not so done in our place, to give the younger before the first-born," and Jacob agreed to serve yet seven other years for Rachel, and after the seven days of the feast of Leah's wedding were fulfilled, he married Rachel.<sup>166</sup>

With Leah and Rachel, Jacob received the handmaids Zilpah and Bilhah, two other daughters of Laban, whom his concubines had borne unto him.<sup>167</sup>

160. BR 70. 17–18. On Jacob's age at his marriage, see Seder 'Olam 2, and parallels cited by Ratner.

161. BR 68. 4.

162. BR 65. 1–3 (הלך is here a euphemism for sexual intercourse). The designation of Esau (=Rome) as "swine" is very common in rabbinic literature, and occurs in so old a source as Enoch 89. 12. Originally it was not intended as an expression of contempt, but was coined with reference to the standard of the Roman legion stationed in Palestine, which had as its emblem a boar, a wild swine, and hence the designation of Rome as חזיר מיער "the boar out of the wood". See *R.E.J.*, XLVII, 178; Epstein, *Mikkadmoniyot*, 35; Blau, *Masoretische Untersuchungen*, 55–56. Comp. also WR 13. 5; Tehillim 80. 363; ARN 34, 100. In the time to come Esau will wrap himself in a praying-shawl (=Talit), and will attempt to take his seat among the pious; but God will drag him away from his seat, and expel him from the company of the pious. See Yerushalmi Nedarim 3, 38a. A favorite topic of the Haggadah is Rome's deceit and guile.

163. Tan. B. I, 152–153 and 157; Tan. Wa-Yeze 4; BR 70. 16 and 71. 2; Baba Batra 125a; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 29. 17; Zohar I, 223a, and II, 29b.

164. BR 70. 19. See also Tan. B. I, 152; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 29. 12; MHG I, 463 (where **הא לאה** must be read instead of **הא רחל** of the editions and MSS.). For the obscure **דכין** (BR, *loc. cit.*) MHG has **מבדין** "deceivers", which makes good sense. The inhabitants of Haran tried to allay Jacob's fear that a trick might be played on him, and they told him that they were not deceivers like himself. Comp., however, Sifra 20. 23, 93b, where the immoral life of the Canaanites is contrasted with the chastity of the "dwellers in the east", by which the east-Arameans are very likely meant. According to BR, *loc. cit.*, this seems to allude to the modesty of the Haranites. In BR 70. 12 and PK 3, 43a, "the sons of the east", praised for their modesty, are the Persians and Medes, as may be seen from the parallel passage in Berakot 8b.—Yashar Wa-Yeze, 57a–57b, is an amplification of BR 70. 14.

165. Jub. 28. 4.

166. BR 70. 19; Yerushalmi Mo'ed Katan 1, 80d; Jub. 28. 8. The statement of Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 19. 7, that Jacob married Rachel after having served seven years is due to a misunderstanding of the Hebrew **שבוע** (Gen. 29. 27), which means "septinate" and "week". On the basis of Gen. 29. 26, Jub., *loc. cit.*, states that it is forbidden to give a younger daughter in marriage before the elder one. Laban and the Haranites, as authorities on Jewish law, are rather strange figures.

167. BR 74. 13; PRE 36; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 29. 24 and 29. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 19. 8, likewise points out that Bilhah and Zilpah were not bondwomen. According to the 12 Testaments, Naphtali 1. 9, these two handmaids were the daughters of Rotheus, a brother of Deborah, Rebekah's nurse, a God-fearing man belonging to the family of Abraham. That Bilhah and Zilpah were sisters is also stated in Jub. 28. 9. The tendency of Jewish legend is to make all the tribes related to Abraham, on their paternal as well as their maternal side, and hence the statement that Rotheus was of the family of Abraham. *Pa'aneah*, Gen. 27. 2, maintains that after the death of Rachel (and Leah?) Jacob made Bilhah and Zilpah legitimate wives. Compare on p. 318. The old rabbinic literature has no difficulty in explaining Jacob's marrying two sisters. The laws of the Torah became binding only after the revelation on Sinai; compare footnote 275 on p. 237. The later authorities and especially the Kabbalists, on the other hand, developed many a theory to explain this marriage of Jacob. Comp. e. g. Recanati, Lev. 18. 6. Out of respect for Jacob the Torah, in dealing with prohibited marriages, does not mention the punishment for marrying two sisters; R. Bahya, Lev. 20. 21.



## THE BIRTH OF JACOB'S CHILDREN

**T**he ways of God are not like unto the ways of men. A man clings close to his friend while he has riches, and forsakes him when he falls into poverty. But when God sees a mortal unsteady and faltering, He reaches a hand out to him, and raises him up. Thus it happened with Leah. She was hated by Jacob, and God visited her in mercy. Jacob's aversion to Leah began the very morning after their wedding, when his wife taunted him with not being wholly free from cunning and craft himself. Then God said, "Help can come to Leah only if she gives birth to a child; then the love of her husband will return to her."<sup>168</sup> God remembered the tears she had shed when she prayed that her doom, chaining her to that recreant Esau, be averted from her, and so wondrous are the uses of prayer that Leah, besides turning aside the impending decree, was permitted to marry Jacob before her sister and be the first to bear him a child. There was another reason why the Lord was compassionately inclined toward Leah. She had gotten herself talked about. The sailors on the sea, the travellers along the highways, the women at their looms, they all gossiped about Leah, saying, "She is not within what her seeming is without. She appears to be pious, but if she were, she would not have deceived her sister."<sup>169</sup> To put an end to all this tattle, God granted her the distinction of bearing a son at the end of seven months after her marriage. He was one of a pair of twins, the other child being a daughter. So it was with eleven of the sons of Jacob, all of them except Joseph were born twins with a girl, and the twin sister and brother married later on.<sup>170</sup> Altogether it was an extraordinary childbirth, for Leah was barren, not formed by nature to bear children.

She called her first-born son Reuben, which means "See the normal man," for he was neither big nor little, neither dark nor fair, but exactly

normal.<sup>171</sup> In calling her oldest child Reuben, "See the son," Leah indicated his future character. "Behold the difference," the name implied, "between my first-born son and the first-born son of my father-in-law. Esau sold his birthright to Jacob of his own free will, and yet he hated him. As for my first-born son, although his birthright was taken from him without his consent, and given to Joseph, it was nevertheless he who rescued Joseph from the hands of his brethren."<sup>172</sup>

Leah called her second son Shime'on, "Yonder is sin," for one of his descendants was that Zimri who was guilty of vile trespasses with the daughters of Moab.<sup>173</sup>

The name of her third son, Levi, was given him by God Himself, not by his mother. The Lord summoned him through the angel Gabriel, and bestowed the name upon him as one who is "crowned" with the twenty-four gifts that are the tribute due to the priests.<sup>174</sup>

At the birth of her fourth son, Leah returned thanks to God for a special reason. She knew that Jacob would beget twelve sons, and if they were distributed equally among his four wives, each would bear three. But now it appeared that she had one more than her due share, and she called him Jehudah, "thanks unto God." She was thus the first since the creation of the world to give thanks to God,<sup>175</sup> and her example was followed by David and Daniel, the descendants of her son Judah.

When Rachel saw that her sister had borne Jacob four sons, she envied Leah. Not that she begrudged her the good fortune she enjoyed, she only envied her for her piety, saying to herself that it was to her righteous conduct that she owed the blessing of many children.<sup>176</sup> Then she besought Jacob: "Pray unto God for me, that He grant me children, else my life is no life. Verily, there are four that may be regarded as though they were dead, the blind, the leper, the childless, and he who was once rich and has lost



his fortune.” Jacob’s anger was kindled against Rachel, and he said: “It were better thou shouldst address thy petition to God, and not to me, for am I in God’s stead, who hath withheld from thee the fruit of the womb?”<sup>177</sup> God was displeased with this answer that Jacob made to his sad wife. He rebuked him with the words: “Is it thus thou wouldst comfort a grief-stricken heart? As thou livest, the day will come when thy children will stand before the son of Rachel, and he will use the same words thou hast but now used, saying, ‘Am I in the place of the Lord?’”

Rachel also made reply to Jacob, saying: “Did not thy father, too, entreat God for thy mother with earnest words, beseeching Him to remove her barrenness?” Jacob: “It is true, but Isaac had no children, and I have several.” Rachel: “Remember thy grandfather Abraham, thou canst not deny that he had children when he supplicated God in behalf of Sarah!” Jacob: “Wouldst thou do for me what Sarah did for my grandfather?” Rachel: “Pray, what did she?” Jacob: “She herself brought a rival into her house.” Rachel: “If that is all that is necessary, I am ready to follow the example of Sarah, and I pray that as she was granted a child for having invited a rival, so may I be blessed too.”<sup>178</sup> Thereupon Rachel gave Jacob Bilhah, her freed handmaid, to wife, and she bore him a son, whom Rachel called Dan, saying, “As the Lord was gracious unto me and gave me a son according to my petition, so He will permit Samson, the descendant of Dan, to judge his people, that it fall not into the hands of the Philistines.”<sup>179</sup> Bilhah’s second son Rachel named Naphtali, saying, “Mine is the bond that binds Jacob to this place, for it was for my sake that he came to Laban.” At the same time she wanted to convey by this name that the Torah, which is as sweet as Nofet, “honeycomb,” would be taught in the territory of Naphtali.<sup>180</sup> And the name had still a third meaning: “As God hath heard my fervent prayer for a son, so He will hearken

unto the fervent prayer of the Naphtalites when they are beset by their enemies.”<sup>181</sup>

Leah, seeing that she had left bearing, while Bilhah, her sister’s handmaid, bore Jacob two sons, concluded that it was Jacob’s destiny to have four wives, her sister and herself, and their half-sisters Bilhah and Zilpah. Therefore she also gave him her handmaid to wife.<sup>182</sup> Zilpah was the youngest of the four women. It was the custom of that time to give the older daughter the older handmaid, and the younger daughter the younger handmaid, as their dowry, when they got married. Now, in order to make Jacob believe that his wife was the younger daughter he had served for, Laban had given Leah the younger handmaid as her marriage portion. This Zilpah was so young that her body betrayed no outward signs of pregnancy, and nothing was known of her condition until her son was born. Leah called the boy Gad, which means “fortune,” or it may mean “the cutter,” for from Gad was descended the prophet Elijah, who brings good fortune to Israel, and he also cuts down the heathen world.<sup>183</sup> Leah had other reasons, too, for choosing this name of double meaning. The tribe of Gad had the good fortune of entering into possession of its allotment in the Holy Land before any of the others,<sup>184</sup> and, also, Gad the son of Jacob was born circumcised.<sup>185</sup>

To Zilpah’s second son Leah gave the name of Asher, “praise,” for, she said, “Unto me all manner of praise is due, for I brought my handmaid into the house of my husband as wife. Sarah did likewise, but only because she had no children, and so it was also with Rachel. But as for me, I had children, and nevertheless I subdued my passion, and without jealousy I gave my handmaid to my husband for wife. Verily, all will praise and extol me.”<sup>186</sup> Furthermore she spoke: “As the women will praise me, so the sons of Asher will in time to come praise God for their fruitful possession in the Holy Land.”<sup>187</sup>



The next son born unto Jacob was Issachar, “a reward,” and once more it was Leah who was permitted to bring forth the child, as a reward from God for her pious desire to have the twelve tribes come into the world. To secure this result, she left no means untried.<sup>188</sup>

It happened once that her oldest son Reuben was tending his father’s ass during the harvest, and he bound him to a root of dudaim, and went his way. On returning, he found the dudaim torn out of the ground, and the ass lying dead beside it. The beast had uprooted it in trying to get loose, and the plant has a peculiar quality, whoever tears it up must die.<sup>189</sup> As it was the time of the harvest, when it is permitted for any one to take a plant from a field, and as dudaim is, besides, a plant which the owner of a field esteems lightly, Reuben carried it home. Being a good son, he did not keep it for himself, but gave it to his mother. Rachel desired the dudaim, and she asked the plant of Leah, who parted with it to her sister, but on the condition that Jacob, when he returned from work in the evening, should tarry with her for a while. It was altogether unbecoming conduct in Rachel to dispose thus of her husband. She gained the dudaim, but she lost two tribes. If she had acted otherwise, she would have borne four sons instead of two. And she suffered another punishment, her body was not permitted to rest in the grave beside her husband’s.

Jacob came home from the field after night had fallen, for he observed the law obliging a day laborer to work until darkness sets in, and Jacob’s zeal in the affairs of Laban was as great in the last seven years, after his marriage, as in the first seven, while he was serving for the hand of Rachel.<sup>190</sup> When Leah heard the braying of Jacob’s ass, she ran to meet her husband,<sup>191</sup> and without giving him time to wash his feet, she insisted upon his turning aside into her tent.<sup>192</sup> At first Jacob refused to go, but God compelled him

to enter, for unto God it was known that Leah acted from pure, disinterested motives.<sup>193</sup> Her dudaim secured two sons for her, Issachar, the father of the tribe that devotes itself to the study of the Torah, whence his name meaning “reward,” and Zebulon, whose descendants carried on commerce, using their profits to enable their brethren of Issachar to keep at their studies.<sup>194</sup> Leah called this last-born son of hers Zebulon, “dwelling-place,” for she said, “Now will my husband dwell with me, seeing that I have borne him six sons, and, also, the sons of Zebulon will have a goodly dwelling-place in the Holy Land.”<sup>195</sup>

Leah bore once more, and this last time it was a daughter, a man child turned into a woman by her prayer. When she conceived for the seventh time, she spake as follows: “God promised Jacob twelve sons. I bore him six, and each of the two handmaids has borne him two. If, now, I were to bring forth another son, my sister Rachel would not be equal even unto the handmaids.” Therefore she prayed to God to change the male embryo in her womb into a female, and God hearkened unto her prayer.<sup>196</sup>

Now all the wives of Jacob, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, and Bilhah, united their prayers with the prayer of Jacob, and together they besought God to remove the curse of barrenness from Rachel. On New Year’s Day, the day whereon God sits in judgment upon the inhabitants of the earth, He remembered Rachel, and granted her a son.<sup>197</sup> And Rachel spake, “God hath taken away my reproach,” for all the people had said that she was not a pious woman, else had she borne children, and now that God had hearkened to her, and opened her womb, such idle talk no longer had any reason.<sup>198</sup>

By bearing a son, she had escaped another disgrace. She had said to herself: “Jacob hath a mind to return to the land of his birth, and my father will not be able to hinder his daughters who have borne him children from following their



husband thither with their children. But he will not let me, the childless wife, go, too, and he will keep me here and marry me to one of the uncircumcised.”<sup>199</sup> She said furthermore, “As my son hath removed my reproach, so Joshua, his descendant, will roll away a reproach from the Israelites, when he circumcises them beyond Jordan.”<sup>200</sup>

Rachel called her son Joseph, “increase,” saying, “God will give me an additional son.” Prophetic as she was, she foresaw she would have a second son. But an increase added on by God is larger than the original capital itself. Benjamin, the second son, whom Rachel regarded merely as a supplement, had ten sons, while Joseph begot only two. These twelve together may be considered the twelve tribes borne by Rachel.<sup>201</sup> Had Rachel not used the form of expression, “The Lord add to me another son,” she herself would have begotten twelve tribes with Jacob.<sup>202</sup>

168. Tan. B. I, 151–152; Aggadat Bereshit 48, 97–98. According to BR 71. 2, Leah was hated by Jacob because she deceived her sister. See also Yelammedenu in Yalkut, II, 394, on Is. 3, and MHG I, 466, as well as 468.

169. BR 71. 2. See also to p. 283.

170. PRE 36; BR 84. 21 and 82. 2. The last-named source contains the addition that Benjamin had two twin-sisters; compare pp. 345, 347–348. On the difference of the ages of Jacob’s sons, and on the meaning of their names, refer to footnotes 1 and 4 on p. 433.

171. MHG I, 468–469 and 192. The old Midrashim make no mention of Leah’s sterility.

172. Berakot 7b; MHG I, 469, which reads: My father-in-law’s first-born is a robber and a thief; my first-born is very scrupulous in his actions, and is careful not to touch other people’s property. Comp. note 190.

173. BR 61. 4; MHG I, 469, and Sabba, Wa-Yeze, 35d, seem to have read עון שם in BR.

174. DR, according to the reading of Rashi, Gen. 29. 34, but not found in our texts. A similar Haggadah occurs also in MHG I, 469, whose source is probably Bereshit Rabbeti; see Schechter, *ad loc.*, and compare further footnote 312 on p. 243 as well as p. 300 and Zohar II, 19a. In MHG, *loc. cit.*, the name Levi is associated with לָקַח “borrowed,” as well as לָקַח “accompanied”. Comp. the

similar etymologies in Jub 31. 16; BR 71. 4; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 29. 34.

175. Berakot 7b; BR 71. 4; Tan. Wa-Yeze 9. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 29. 30 reads: She called him Judah, “Thanks unto God”, because he was destined to become the ancestor of the royal house of David, and further because from him will come forth David who will compose “songs of thanks” (=psalms of thanksgiving) unto the Lord. Comp. BR, *loc. cit.*; Tan. Wa-Yeze 6; Shemuel 28. 130; footnote 4 on p. 433.

176. BR 71. 6; Aggadat Bereshit 51, 103–104. Comp. also the preceding note. Women are of a jealous disposition, and Rachel shared this weakness with her sex; BR 18. 2, and parallel passages cited by Theodor. According to ER 18, 99, Rachel was married fourteen years before she bore a child; compare footnote 1 on p. 433.

177. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 30. 1–2, which essentially follows Tan. B. I, 156, and BR 71. 6; but these Midrashim do not say that Rachel asked Jacob to pray unto God for her. Aggadat Bereshit 51, 104, reads: “If thou so desires, I shall certainly bear children, just as thou hast made the sheep bring forth their young.” Comp. also the midrashic quotation in Sabba, Wa-Yeze, 34a. On the “four that may be regarded as though they were dead”, compare footnote 142 on p. 515 and pp. 663–702.

178. BR 71. 7; Aggadat Bereshit 51, 104, which has the additional remark that Rachel was very anxious to become a mother because she had a presentiment of her premature death.

179. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 30. 5. Lekah, Gen. 30. 4, reads: From the word לָאִשָּׁה “to wife” we are to infer that Jacob took her as his legitimate wife. BR 45. 3 has the same haggadic interpretation of לָאִשָּׁה with regard to its use in connection with Hagar. Comp. note 167.

180. Tan. B. I, 156; BR 71. 8. From the beginning of the third century C. E. till about the end of the ninth, Tiberias situated in Naphtali (comp. Megillah 6a and Yerushalmi 1, 70a) was the centre of Jewish learning in Palestine. Comp. BR 98. 17, with regard to the interpretation of the blessing given by Jacob to Naphtali. Other etymologies of the name Naphtali are found in BR 71. 8 and Tan., *loc. cit.*, as well as in MHG I, 472.

181. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 30. 8, with reference to Jud. 4. 6.

182. MHG I, 473. On the relationship of Jacob’s wives to one another, comp. note 167.

183. BR 71. 8, according to the reading of Rashi, Gen. 30. 11. Hasidim 480 has several explanations of the name Gad, (=גַּד), one of which is to the effect that it signifies “deception”, as well as “garment”. Leah put her garment on Zilpah, and in this manner deceived Jacob who thought that he was in the company of the mistress and not of the handmaid. For other etymologies of this name



see Lekah, Gen. 30. 11. The opinion that the prophet Elijah belonged to the tribe of Gad is widespread; refer to pp. 408–409 as well as p. 823, and Index, *s. v.* “Elijah”.

184. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 30. 11.

185. A midrashic quotation by Rashi, Gen. 30. 11. See Berliner, *ad loc.*, and footnote 318 on pp. 247–248. BR 71. 18 and other sources (comp. note 183) also derive Gad from גַּד “he cut”; but the cutting does not refer to circumcision.

186. MHG I, 473–474. Comp. note 183.

187. Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 30. 13, following BR 71. 10.

188. BR 72. 1 and 5. Refer to footnote 194 and pp. 440–441.

189. An unknown midrashic source in Midrash Aggadah Gen. 49. 14, and, in abridged form, 30. 14. In the last passage והוציא means “And it—the donkey—pulled it (the mandrake) out”, and must not be emended, as is done by Kaufmann, *Monatsschrift*, XXXIX, 139. The same story is cited also by Sabba, Wa-Yeze, 34a, and *Toledot Yizhak* (is it based on Sabba?), Gen. 30. 14. In *Nur al-Zulm*, 124, it is the dog, not the ass, which uprooted the mandrake, and this agrees with what Josephus, *Bell. Jud.*, vii, 6. 3, says about the plant Baaras, which is very likely identical with the mandrake. The expression קרא על יברוחא (Yerushalmi ‘Erubin 10, 26c) clearly shows that the mandrake, like the Baaras of Josephus, was used in expelling demons. The anonymous commentator on Yerushalmi seems to understand the Talmud to refer to the charm used in uprooting the mandrake, which otherwise might cause death. But this could hardly be expressed by קרא על. It is very likely that the Aramaic name for the mandrake יברוחא “the chaser” describes it as a plant which chases demons away. The relation between the mandrake and the plant Adam “which kills anybody who comes near it” (compare footnote 148 on p. 34) is not quite clear. Frazer, *Folk-Lore in the Old Testament*, II, 372–397, deals at great length and in a very interesting manner with the mandrake in folk-lore. The spot, where, according to Josephus, this plant of miraculous properties grew, is undoubtedly identical with Baaras, the place where Jacob, by a hair-breadth, escaped death at the hands of Esau; compare also pp. 275–276. The name Baaras, given to this plant by Josephus, is perhaps to be explained as an abridgment of “the mandrake of Baara”=יברוחא די מערה. Compare footnote 193 with footnote 11 on p. 442. Baara is the Grecized form for מערה; comp. Yerushalmi Shabbat 3, 6a.

190. BR 72. 2–4. Lekah, Gen. 30. 14, calls attention to the fact that, though Reuben was only ten years old at that time, he nevertheless knew what the law permits, and what it prohibits.

191. BR 99. 10; Nidah 31a, and thence in MHG I, 741 (=BR 98. 12, where read חמור ליה גרם; but comp. note 193); Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 30. 16; MHG I, 473.

Geiger’s statement, *Kebuzzat Maamarim*, 142, that the old Rabbis read חמור instead of חמור (Gen. 49. 4), and hence the legend about the braying of the ass, is untenable, as shown by Ginzberg in Supplement to Geiger, *op. cit.*

192. BR 72. 5.

193. Nidah 31a. Comp. also ‘Erubin 100b. Jacob’s ass walked up to Leah’s tent without having been led there by its master; Haserot in Batte Midrashot, III, 5; comp. also note 191; חמור לגרמיה “the ass by itself” is a play on חמור גרם (Gen. 49. 14). Yerushalmi Sotah 3, 19a, and BR 72. 5, commenting on הוּא (Gen. 30. 16), remark that this word refers to God, who alone was witness to Leah’s pure motive in making Jacob stop with her. DR 7. 11 on the other hand, maintains with reference to ותצא (Gen., *loc. cit.*) that Leah was a “gad-about”. In BR 18. 2, and parallels cited by Theodor, it is Dinah who is described by this expression. The substitution of the ass for the dog in the mandrake legend (comp. note 189) by some rabbinic authorities is due to a midrashic interpretation of חמור גרם (Gen. 49. 14).

194. BR 72. 5; Shir 7. 4. On the compact between Zebulun and Issachar compare with p. 408.

195. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 30. 20. Different etymologies of the name Zebulun are found in BR 72. 6 and MHG I, 476.

196. Berakot 60a; Tan. B. I, 157; Tan. Wa-Yeze 8; Targum Yerushalmi 30. 12; Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 14a–14b; Tehillim 55, 292; MHG I, 479 (ל’); PRE 35.

197. MHG I, 478–479 and 480 (מ’); Tehillim 55, 292; BR 73. 1 and 4. Comp. also Rosh ha-Shanah 11a.

198. MHG I, 480–481, and comp. Schechter, *ad loc.* Refer also to p. 194, where it is said that Hagar declared that Sarah’s sterility was a punishment for her impious life.

199. BR 73. 3; Tan. B. I, 158 (which reads: Rachel feared that her father would take her away from Jacob and give her to Esau); Tehillim 55, 292; Aggadat Bereshit 51, 105; MHG I, 481.

200. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 30. 23. This Haggadah is based on the use of חרפה (Gen., *loc. cit.*, and Joshua 5. 9). See also MHG I, 481, which reads אין חרפה אלא ערלה.

201. Tan. B. I, 158; BR 61. 4; Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 146. According to Yelammedenu 20 (=BHM VI, 81), Rachel prophesied that Joseph would be the ancestor of the (Ephraimite) Messiah, who would arise at the end of days (בן אחרונו של עולם is to be understood in this manner). Comp. also BR 73. 5–6 for several other prophecies found in Rachel’s words of Gen. 30. 24. The etymology given there of the name Joseph (יהוסף) as “the increase by the Lord” occurs also in Philo, *De Josepho*, 6.

202. MHG I, 481. That Rachel bore children was a miracle, as she was sterile by nature, and this miracle was granted to her as a reward for her kindness to Leah, whom



she saved from being put to shame by Jacob, who would have detected the fraud played on him by Laban, had not Rachel divulged to her sister the sign agreed upon by her and Jacob by which he would recognize her on the nuptial night. See BR 73. 4; Baba Batra 123a; Tan. B. I, 154; Tan. Wa-Yeze 6. Compare pp. 281 and 282 with pp. 1080–1081 and pp. 1144–1145.

## JACOB FLEES BEFORE LABAN

Jacob had only been waiting for Joseph to be born to begin preparations for his journey home. The holy spirit had revealed to him that the house of Joseph would work the destruction of the house of Esau, and, therefore, Jacob exclaimed at the birth of Joseph, “Now I need not fear Esau or his legions.”<sup>203</sup>

About this time, Rebekah sent her nurse Deborah, the daughter of Uz, accompanied by two of Isaac’s servants, to Jacob, to urge him to return to his father’s house, now that his fourteen years of service had come to an end. Then Jacob approached Laban, and spoke, “Give me my wives and my children, that I may go unto mine own place, and to my country, for my mother has sent messengers unto me, bidding me to return to my father’s house.”<sup>204</sup> Laban answered, saying, “O that I might find favor in thine eyes! By a sign it was made known unto me that God blesseth me for thy sake.” What Laban had in mind was the treasure he had found on the day Jacob came to him, and he considered that a token of his beneficent powers.<sup>205</sup> Indeed, God had wrought many a thing in the house of Laban that testified to the blessings spread abroad by the pious. Shortly before Jacob came, a pest had broken out among Laban’s cattle, and with his arrival it ceased.<sup>206</sup> And Laban had had no son, but during Jacob’s sojourn in Haran sons were born unto him.<sup>207</sup>

All the hire he asked in return for his labor and for the blessings he had brought Laban was

the speckled and spotted among the goats of his herd, and the black among the sheep. Laban assented to his conditions, saying, “Behold, I would it might be according to thy word.” The arch-villain Laban, whose tongue wagged in all directions, and who made all sorts of promises that were never kept, judged others by himself, and therefore suspected Jacob of wanting to deceive him.<sup>208</sup> And yet, in the end, it was Laban himself who broke his word. No less than a hundred times he changed the agreement between them. Nevertheless his unrighteous conduct was of no avail. Though a three days’ journey had been set betwixt Laban’s flocks and Jacob’s, the angels were wont to bring the sheep belonging to Laban down to Jacob’s sheep, and Jacob’s droves grew constantly larger and better.<sup>209</sup> Laban had given only the feeble and sick to Jacob, yet the young of the flock, raised under Jacob’s tendance, were so excellent in quality that people bought them at a heavy price.<sup>210</sup> And Jacob had no need to resort to the peeled rods. He had but to speak, and the flocks bare according to his desire.<sup>211</sup> What Laban deserved was utter ruin, for having permitted the pious Jacob to work for him without hire, and after his wages had been changed ten times, and ten times Laban had tried to overreach him, God rewarded him in this way.<sup>212</sup> But his good luck with the flocks was only what Jacob deserved. Every faithful laborer is rewarded by God in this world, quite regardless of what awaits him in the world to come.<sup>213</sup> With empty hands Jacob had come to Laban, and he left him with herds numbering six hundred thousand. Their increase had been marvellous, an increase that will be equalled only in the Messianic time.<sup>214</sup>

The wealth and good fortune of Jacob called forth the envy of Laban and his sons, and they could not hide their vexation in their intercourse with him. And the Lord said unto Jacob, “Thy father-in-law’s countenance is not toward thee as beforetime, and yet thou tarriest with him?



Do thou rather return unto the land of thy fathers, and there I will let My Shekinah rest upon thee, for I cannot permit the Shekinah to reside outside of the Holy Land.”<sup>215</sup> Immediately Jacob sent the fleet messenger Naphtali<sup>216</sup> to Rachel and Leah to summon them to a consultation, and he chose as the place of meeting the open field, where none could overhear what was said.<sup>217</sup>

His two wives approved the plan of returning to his home, and Jacob resolved at once to go away with all his substance, without as much as acquainting Laban with his intention. Laban was gone to shear his sheep, and so Jacob could execute his plan without delay.

That her father might not learn about their flight from his teraphim, Rachel stole them, and she took them and concealed them upon the camel upon which she sat, and she went on. And this is the manner they used to make the images: They took a man who was the first-born, slew him and took the hair off his head, then salted the head, and anointed it with oil, then they wrote “the Name” upon a small tablet of copper or gold, and placed it under his tongue. The head with the tablet under the tongue was then put in a house where lights were lighted before it, and at the time when they bowed down to it, it spoke to them on all matters that they asked of it, and that was due to the power of the Name which was written upon it.<sup>218</sup>

203. BR 73. 6; Tan. B. I, 154 and 164; Baba Batra 123a; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 30. 25; and in many other places. Compare pp. 579–580 and with 680. This Hag-gadah is described as an old tradition (מסורת).

204. Yashar Wa-Yeze, 57b–58a, and Hayye Sarah, 49a, where Deborah is declared to have been the daughter of Uz, the son of Abraham’s brother Nahor. Comp. the sources quoted in note 300.

205. Tan. B. I, 161, and thence in Midrash Aggada and Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 30. 27. Comp. also the extract from Galya Raza in Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 29. 17, and note 157.

206. PRE 26. Comp. note 151.

207. BR 73. 12; BaR 20. 19; Tan. B. IV, 142; Tan. Ba-lak 12; MHG I, 485 (with the additional remark that the same thing happened to Jethro who had only daughters until the arrival of Moses into his house, when he was blessed with sons). On the blessing which the pious bring to those whom they visit, comp. Sifre D., 38; Berakot 42a; BR 73. 8; MHG I, 485–486; Zohar I, 161a. Comp. also note 151.

208. MHG I, 486. Laban’s words (Gen. 30. 34) are taken to mean: O that thou mayest keep thy word!

209. BR 73. 9–10 and 74. 3; Tan. B. I, 161; Tan. Wa-Yeze 11. The legend would not admit any trickery on the part of Jacob, and his cunning manipulations are turned into direct intervention of the angels. See Lekah, Gen. 30. 39 and *Or Zarua* I, 227, No. 769.

210. Tan. B. I, 161; Yashar Wa-Yeze, 58a–58b.

211. Tehillim 8, 78. Similarly Tan. B. I, 161; Tan. Wa-Yeze 11; BR 73. 10; MHG I, 487 (ר"ט). Comp. note 209.

212. MHG I, 490.

213. MHG I, 488 (ר"ט). Jacob made his cattle graze far away from cultivated land (comp. Gen. 30. 36), in order to avoid doing damage to the soil; MHG I, 487. Comp. also Baba Kamma 7. 7.

214. BR 73. 11; Koheleth 9. 11; Tan. B. I, 161–162. The fecundity of Messianic times refers to that of human beings, as may be seen from Mekilta Bahodesh 2, 63a, where it is said that in the time to come the number of children of each and every Jew will be equal to the number of Jews at the time of the exodus from Egypt. Refer also to footnote 10 on p. 454.

215. MHG I, 489; BR 74. 1; Tan. B. I, 160; PRE 26. See also Mekilta Bo (פתיחתא), 1b, which reads: When Israel entered into the Holy Land, all the other countries were excluded from being used as places of divine revelations. BR, *loc. cit.*, remarks that possessions acquired outside the Holy Land bring no blessings. Similarly Pesahim 50b; comp. note 274. See also note 137 and Index, s. v. “Holy Land”.

216. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 31. 4. The fleet messenger Naphtali (comp. Gen. 49. 21) is often spoken of in Jewish legend; compare pp. 408–411, p. 340, 386–387, 414 and 444; pp. 670–671.

217. Berakot 8b; BR 74. 2; PR 4. 34a (BR is to be emended according to this text); Tan. B. IV, 110; Tan. Hukat 6; Koheleth 7. 23; PRK (Grünhut’s edition, 50 and 41, כ"ו, where אין פושטין is to be read in accordance with Ketubot 48a. Among other peculiarities and customs of the Persians and the “children of the east” mention is also made of the fact that they do not kiss on the mouth. Comp., however, Herodotus I, 134, where the opposite is asserted. Comp. note 164.

218. Yashar Wa-Yeze, 58b–59a (based on PRE 26, where, however, our texts read שם רוח טומאה “the name



of an impure spirit,” instead of השם “the Ineffable Name of God” of Yashar); Tan. Wa-Yeze 12; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 31. 19; Lekah, Gen. 31. 34. Of the two descriptions of the Teraphim by Ziyoni, Wa-Yeze (end), one is taken from PRE and the other from Lekah. His etymological explanation of this word (as connected with talmudic תורפה “shame,” “decay”=בשת) is found in *Aruk*, s. v. See also Rashi, 1 Sam. 19. 13 and 2 Kings 23. 24. Rachel’s motive in stealing Laban’s idols was a laudable one; she said: Should I depart and leave the old man with his idolatry? See BR 74. 5; Tan. *loc. cit.*; Theodoretus, Gen. 31. 19. Comp. also Zohar I, 169b. On שם=the impure spirit, see also footnote 313 on p. 243.

## THE COVENANT WITH LABAN

Jacob departed and crossed the Euphrates, and set his face toward Gilead, for the holy spirit revealed to him that God would bring help there to his children in the days of Jephthah. Meantime the shepherds of Haran observed that the well, which had been filled to overflowing since the arrival of Jacob in their place, ran dry suddenly. For three days they watched and waited, in the hope that the waters would return in the same abundance as before. Disappointed, they finally told Laban of the misfortune, and he divined at once that Jacob had departed thence, for he knew that the blessing had been conferred upon Haran only for the sake of his son-in-law’s merits.<sup>219</sup>

On the morrow Laban rose early, assembled all the people of the city, and pursued Jacob with the intention of killing him when he overtook him. But the archangel Michael appeared unto him, and bade him take heed unto himself, that he do not the least unto Jacob, else would he suffer death himself.<sup>220</sup> This message from heaven came to Laban during the night, for when, in extraordinary cases, God finds it necessary to reveal Himself unto the heathen, He does it only in the dark, clandestinely as it were, while He shows

Himself to the prophets of the Jews openly, during daylight.

Laban accomplished the journey in one day for which Jacob had taken seven,<sup>221</sup> and he overtook him at the mountain of Gilead. When he came upon Jacob, he found him in the act of praying and giving praise unto God.<sup>222</sup> Immediately Laban fell to remonstrating with his son-in-law for having stolen away unawares to him. He showed his true character when he said, “It is in the power of my hand to do thee hurt, but the God of thy father spake unto me yesternight, saying, Take heed to thyself that thou speak not to Jacob either good or bad.” That is the way of the wicked, they boast of the evil they can do. Laban wanted to let Jacob know that only the dream warning him against doing aught that was harmful to Jacob prevented him from carrying out the wicked design he had formed against him.<sup>223</sup>

Laban continued to take Jacob to task, and he concluded with the words, “And now, though thou wouldst needs be gone, because thou sore longedst after thy father’s house, yet wherefore hast thou stolen my gods?” When he pronounced the last words, his grandchildren interrupted him, saying, “We are ashamed of thee, grandfather, that in thy old age thou shouldst use such words as ‘my gods.’” Laban searched all the tents for his idols, going first to the tent of Jacob, which was Rachel’s at the same time, for Jacob always dwelt with his favorite wife. Finding nothing, he went thence to Leah’s tent, and to the tents of the two handmaids, and, noticing that Rachel was feeling about here and there, his suspicions were aroused, and he entered her tent a second time. He would now have found what he was looking for, if a miracle had not come to pass. The teraphim were transformed into drinking vessels, and Laban had to desist from his fruitless search.

Now Jacob, who did not know that Rachel had stolen her father’s teraphim in order to turn



him aside from his idolatrous ways, was wroth with Laban, and began to chide with him. In the quarrel between them, Jacob's noble character manifested itself. Notwithstanding his excitement, he did not suffer a single unbecoming word to escape him. He only reminded Laban of the loyalty and devotion with which he had served him, doing for him what none other would or could have done. He said: "I dealt wrongfully with the lion, for God had appointed of Laban's sheep for the lion's daily sustenance, and I deprived him thereof. Could another shepherd have done thus? Yes, the people abused me, calling me robber and sneak thief, for they thought that only by stealing by day and stealing by night could I replace the animals torn by wild beasts. And as to my honesty," he continued, "is it likely there is another son-in-law who, having lived with his father-in-law, hath not taken some little thing from the household of his father-in-law, a knife, or other trifle? But thou hast felt about all my stuff, what hast thou found of all thy household stuff? Not so much as a needle or a nail."

In his indignation, and conscious of his innocence, Jacob exclaimed, "With whomsoever thou findest thy gods, he shall not live," words which contained a curse—the thief was cursed with premature death, and therefore Rachel had to die in giving birth to Benjamin. Indeed, the curse would have taken effect at once, had it not been the wish of God that Rachel should bear Jacob his youngest son.<sup>224</sup>

After the quarrel, the two men made a treaty, and with his gigantic strength Jacob set up a huge rock as a memorial, and a heap of stones as a sign of their covenant. In this matter Jacob followed the example of his fathers, who likewise had covenanted with heathen nations, Abraham with the Jebusites, and Isaac with the Philistines. Therefore Jacob did not hesitate to make a treaty with the Arameans.<sup>225</sup> Jacob summoned his sons, calling them brethren, for they were his

peers in piety and strength, and he bade them cast up heaps of stones. Thereupon he swore unto his father-in-law that he would take no wives beside his four daughters, either while they were alive or after their death, and Laban, on his part, swore that he would not pass over the heaps or over the pillar unto Jacob with hostile intent,<sup>226</sup> and he took the oath by the God of Abraham, and the God of Nahor, while Jacob made mention of the Fear of Isaac. He refrained from using the term "the God of Isaac," because God never unites His name with that of a living person, for the reason that so long as a man has not ended his years, no trust may be put in him, lest he be seduced by the evil inclination. It is true, when He appeared unto Jacob at Beth-el, God called Himself "the God of Isaac." There was a reason for the unusual phrase. Being blind, Isaac led a retired life, within his tent, and the evil inclination had no power over him any more. But though God had full confidence in Isaac, yet Jacob could not venture to couple the name of God with the name of a living man, wherefore he took his oath by "the Fear of Isaac."<sup>227</sup>

Early in the morning after the day of covenanting, Laban rose up, and kissed his grandchildren and his daughters, and blessed them. But these acts and words of his did not come from the heart; in his innermost thoughts he regretted that Jacob and his family and his substance had escaped him.<sup>228</sup> His true feelings he betrayed in the message which he sent to Esau at once upon his return to Haran, by the hand of his son Beor and ten companions of his son. The message read: "Hast thou heard what Jacob thy brother has done unto me, who first came to me naked and bare, and I went to meet him, and took him to my house with honor, and brought him up, and gave him my two daughters for wives, and also two of my maids? And God blessed him on my account, and he increased abundantly, and had sons and daughters and



maidservants, and also an uncommon stock of flocks and herds, camels and asses, also silver and gold in abundance. But when he saw that his wealth increased, he left me while I went to shear my sheep, and he rose up and fled in secrecy. And he put his wives and children upon camels, and he led away all his cattle and substance which he acquired in my land, and he resolved to go to his father Isaac, to the land of Canaan. And he did not suffer me to kiss my sons and daughters, and he carried away my daughters as captives of the sword, and he also stole my gods, and he fled. And now I have left him in the mountain of the brook of Jabbok, he and all belonging to him, not a jot of his substance is lacking. If it be thy wish to go to him, go, and there wilt thou find him, and thou canst do unto him as thy soul desireth.”<sup>229</sup>

Jacob had no need to fear either Laban or Esau, for on his journey he was accompanied by two angel hosts, one going with him from Haran to the borders of the Holy Land, where he was received by the other host, the angels of Palestine.<sup>230</sup> Each of these hosts consisted of no less than six hundred thousand angels,<sup>231</sup> and when he beheld them, Jacob said: “Ye belong neither to the host of Esau, who is preparing to go out to war against me, nor the host of Laban, who is about to pursue me again. Ye are the hosts of the holy angels sent by the Lord.” And he gave the name Mahanaim, Double-Host, to the spot on which the second army relieved the first.<sup>232</sup>

219. Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 31. 21–22. Comp. ARN 9, 27, as well as notes 153, 205, 207.

220. PRE 36; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 21. 24. It is a widespread view that Laban had intended to destroy Jacob and his family, root and branch. See Passover Haggada beginning **צא ולמד**; Midrash Tannaïm 172; Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 26. 5; Sifre D., 301; MHG I, 491. The angel restrained Laban from carrying out his plan of destruction, and admonished him, at the same time, not to have any dealings with Jacob whatsoever,

not even to be kind to him, for “the kindness shown by the wicked causes pain to the pious”; Yebamot 103b, with reference to Gen. 31. 24. Laban feared not only the angel but also Esau, who might, in case of injury to Jacob, appear as “the avenger of blood” against him. See Aggadat Bereshit 108, note 2, and 125, note 5. Although Rachel had taken the Teraphim with her, Laban succeeded in getting another set, which revealed to him Jacob’s escape; Yashar, Wa-Yeze 59a. According to Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 31. 21–22, Laban noticed the absence of Jacob by the lack of water; comp. note 354.

221. BR 74. 6–7. On the night as the time of divine revelations, see the sources cited in note 131, to which are to be added: WR 1. 13; Leket Midrashim, 6a and 20b; Zohar III, 113a and 200a.

222. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 31. 23.

223. MHG I, 491–492. The power of which Laban boasted is the power of witchcraft, which he might have used against Jacob; Sabba, Wa-Yeze, 42c, and Ki-Tabo, 152c; Zohar I, 167b and 166a. Laban was a famous sorcerer (his grandson Balaam was by far his inferior), and Jacob was justified in pointing out to Esau (comp. Gen. 32. 5) that even this master of witchcraft could not prevail against him. See Zohar I, 167a.

224. BR 74. 8–11; PRE 36; Tan. Wa-Yeze 13; Aggadat Bereshit 51, 105; PK 14, 116b; Koheleth 10. 5; Shemuel 22 (end). The view that even an unintentional curse or blessing takes effect is shared by the Talmud; see Mo’ed Katan 18a and Makkot 11a, which read: A compact is closed with the lips, *i. e.*, the spoken word is effective, be it a curse or a blessing. The account of Jacob’s escape from Laban and of their meeting is given by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 20. 9–11, with many embellishments. Jacob’s excuse for his escape was that God implanted in every human heart the love of his native country, and Rachel’s motive in stealing the Teraphim was to pacify her father by returning them to him, should he succeed in overtaking Jacob. The theft remained undiscovered for some time, because Laban did not think it possible that a woman in menstruation (comp. Gen. 31. 35) would dare to touch the Teraphim. On the effect of the spoken word, be it a curse or a blessing, comp. note 74.

225. Tan. Wa-Yishlah 4; BR 74. 13; PRE 36. Compare with p. 920.

226. BR 74. 13–14; PRE 26; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 31. 46; Yoma 77a–77b; MHG I, 495.

227. BR 94. 5 (Rashi, Gen. 31. 42, seems to have had a fuller text before him); Tan. Toledot 7; Tehillim 16, 120; comp. note 304. Tan. Wa-Yeze renders **בְּפֶחַי אָבִי** (Gen. 31. 53) by “the life of his father”, which agrees with Philo, *Special. Leg.*, 2. 3. See Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 130–131 (note) and *Hadar*, Gen., *loc. cit.* Lekah, *ad. loc.*, reads: He swore by the fear which seized Isaac at the



'Akedah, when he had given up his spirit and come to life again only by means of the dew of life. Refer to footnote 101; p. 229–230 and footnote 243 appertaining thereto. Lekah is very likely the source for Zohar I, 60a (תוספתא).

228. BR 74. 16 (with the additional remark that, as a punishment for Laban's evil designs against Jacob, robbers broke into his house, during his absence, and took his possessions away with them). Similarly also Yelammedenu 21=HBM VI, 81.

229. Yashar Wa-Yeze, 59a–59b, where ואגדלהו is to be explained in accordance with אשר גדלו בביתו, Wa-Yishlah, 60b. There is a number of different views concerning the relationship between Laban and Balaam: Laban is declared to be identical with Balaam, to have been Balaam's father, grandfather (Beor, Laban's son in Yashar is identical with Balaam's father), and uncle. See Sanhedrin 105a; BR 57. 4, and the parallel passages cited by Theodor, as well as *Hadar* and *Da'at* on Gen. 31. 52, and Exod. 1. 10; Mahzor Vitry 547; Zohar I, 166b.

230. Tan.B. I, 163 and 178–179; Tan. Wa-Yishlah 3 and Mishpatim (end); Aggadat Bereshit 53, 109.

231. BR 74. 17 and 76. 10; Shir 7.1.

232. Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 32. 3; Tan. Wa-Yishlah 3.

## JACOB AND ESAU PREPARE TO MEET

**T**he message of Laban awakened Esau's old hatred toward Jacob with increased fury, and he assembled his household, consisting of sixty men. With them and three hundred and forty inhabitants of Seir, he went forth to do battle with Jacob and kill him. He divided his warriors into seven cohorts, giving to his son Eliphaz his own division of sixty, and putting the other six divisions under as many of the Horites.

While Esau was hastening onward to meet Jacob, the messengers which Laban had sent to Esau came to Rebekah and told her that Esau and his four hundred men were about to make war upon Jacob, with the purpose of slaying him and taking possession of all he had. Anxious lest Esau should execute his plan while yet Jacob was on the journey, she hastily dispatched seventy-two of the retainers of Isaac's household, to give

him help. Jacob, tarrying on the banks of the brook Jabbok, rejoiced at the sight of these men, and he greeted them with the words, "This is God's helping host," wherefore he called the place of their meeting Mahanaim, Host.

After the warriors sent by Rebekah had satisfied his questions regarding the welfare of his parents, they delivered his mother's message unto him, thus: "I have heard, my son, that thy brother Esau hath gone forth against thee on the road, with men of the children of Seir the Horite, and therefore, my son, hearken to my voice, and take counsel with thyself what thou wilt do, and when he cometh up to thee, supplicate him, and do not speak roughly to him, and give him a present from what thou possessest, and from what God has favored thee with. And when he asketh thee concerning thy affairs, conceal nothing from him, perhaps he may turn from his anger against thee, and thou wilt thereby save thy soul, thou and all belonging to thee, for it is thy duty to honor him, since he is thy elder brother."

And when Jacob heard the words of his mother which the messengers had spoken to him, he lifted up his voice and wept bitterly, and did as his mother commanded him.

He sent messengers to Esau to placate him, and they said unto him: "Thus speaketh thy servant Jacob: My lord, think not that the blessing which my father bestowed upon me profited me. Twenty years I served Laban, and he deceived me, and changed my hire ten times, as thou well knowest. Yet did I labor sorely in his house, and God saw my affliction, my labor, and the work of my hands, and afterward He caused me to find grace and favor in the sight of Laban. And through God's great mercy and kindness, I acquired oxen and asses and cattle and men-servants and maid-servants. And now I am coming to my country and to my home, to my father and mother, who are in the land of Canaan. And I have sent to let my lord know all this in order to find favor in



the eyes of my lord, so that he may not imagine that I have become a man of substance, or that the blessing with which my father blessed me has benefited me.”<sup>233</sup>

Furthermore spake the messengers: “Why dost thou envy me in respect to the blessing wherewith my father blessed me? Is it that the sun shineth in my land, and not in thine? Or doth the dew and the rain fall only upon my land, and not upon thine? If my father blessed me with the dew of heaven, he blessed thee with the fatness of the earth, and if he spoke to me, Peoples will serve thee, he hath said unto thee, By thy sword shalt thou live. How long, then, wilt thou continue to envy me? Come, now, let us set up a covenant between us, that we will share equally all the vexations that may occur.”

Esau would not agree to this proposal, his friends dissuaded him therefrom, saying, “Accept not these conditions, for God hath said to Abraham, Know of a surety that thy seed shall be a stranger in a land that is not theirs, and shall serve the people thereof, and the aliens shall afflict them four hundred years. Wait, therefore, until Jacob and his family go down into Egypt to pay off this debt.”

Jacob also sent word to Esau, saying: “Though I dwelt with that heathen of the heathen, Laban, yet have I not forgotten my God, but I fulfil the six hundred and thirteen commandments of the Torah.”<sup>234</sup> If thy mind be set upon peace, thou wilt find me ready for peace. But if thy desire be war, thou wilt find me ready for war. I have with me men of valor and strength, they have but to utter a word, and God fulfils it. I tarried with Laban until Joseph should be born, he who is destined to subdue thee.”<sup>235</sup> And though my descendants be held in bondage in this world, yet a day will come when they will rule over their rulers.”<sup>236</sup>

In reply to all these gentle words, Esau spoke with arrogance: “Surely I have heard, and

truly it has been told unto me what Jacob has been to Laban, who brought him up in his house, and gave him his daughters for wives, and he begot sons and daughters, and abundantly increased in wealth and riches in Laban’s house and with his help. And when he saw that his wealth was abundant and his riches were great, he fled with all belonging to him from Laban’s house, and he carried away Laban’s daughters from their father as captives of the sword, without telling him of it. And not only to Laban hath Jacob done thus, but also unto me hath he done so, and he hath twice supplanted me, and shall I be silent? Now, I have this day come with my camp to meet him, and I will do unto him according to the desire of my heart.”

The messengers dispatched by Jacob now returned to him, and reported these words of Esau unto him.<sup>237</sup> They also told him that his brother was advancing against him with an army consisting of four hundred crowned heads, each leading a host of four hundred men.<sup>238</sup> “It is true, thou art his brother, and thou treatest him as a brother should,” they said to Jacob, “but he is an Esau, thou must be made aware of his villainy.”<sup>239</sup>

Jacob bore in mind the promise of God, that He would bring him back to his father’s house in peace, yet the report about his brother’s purpose alarmed him greatly. A pious man may never depend upon promises of earthly good. God does not keep the promise if he is guilty of the smallest conceivable trespass, and Jacob feared that he might have forfeited happiness by reason of a sin committed by him. Moreover, he was anxious lest Esau be the one favored by God, inasmuch as he had these twenty years been fulfilling two Divine commands that Jacob had had to disregard. Esau had been living in the Holy Land, Jacob outside of it; the former had been in attendance upon his parents, the latter dwelling at a distance from them. And much as he feared defeat,



Jacob also feared the reverse, that he might be victorious over Esau, or might even slay his brother, which would be as bad as to be slain by him. And he was depressed by another apprehension, that his father had died, for he reasoned that Esau would not take such warlike steps against his own brother, were his father still alive.<sup>240</sup>

When his wives saw the anxiety that possessed Jacob, they began to quarrel with him, and reproach him for having taken them away from their father's house, though he knew that such danger threatened from Esau.<sup>241</sup> Then Jacob determined to apply the three means that might save him from the fate impending: he would cry to God for help, appease Esau's wrath with presents, and hold himself in readiness for war if the worst came to the worst.<sup>242</sup>

He prayed to God: "O Thou God of my father Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, God of all who walk in the ways of the pious and do like unto them! I am not worthy of the least of all the mercies, and of all the truth, which Thou hast showed unto Thy servant. O Lord of the world, as Thou didst not suffer Laban to execute his evil designs against me, so also bring to naught the purpose of Esau, who desireth to slay me. O Lord of the world, in Thy Torah which Thou wilt give us on Mount Sinai it is written, And whether it be cow or ewe, ye shall not kill it and her young both in one day. If this wretch should come and murder my children and their mothers at the same time, who would then desire to read Thy Torah which Thou wilt give us on Mount Sinai? And yet Thou didst speak, For the sake of thy merits and for the merits of thy fathers I will do good unto thee, and in the future world thy children shall be as numerous as the sand of the sea."

As Jacob prayed for his own deliverance, so also he prayed for the salvation of his descendants, that they might not be annihilated by the descendants of Esau.

Such was the prayer of Jacob when he saw Esau approaching from afar, and God heard his petition and looked upon his tears, and He gave him the assurance that for his sake his descendants, too, would be redeemed from all distress.<sup>243</sup>

Then the Lord sent three angels, and they went before Esau, and they appeared unto Esau and his people as hundreds and thousands of men riding upon horses. They were furnished with all sorts of weapons, and divided into four columns. And one division went on, and they found Esau coming with four hundred men, and the division ran toward them, and terrified them. Esau fell off his horse in alarm, and all his men separated from him in great fear, while the approaching column shouted after them, "Verily, we are the servants of Jacob, the servant of God, and who can stand against us?" Esau then said unto them, "O, then my lord and brother Jacob is your lord, whom I have not seen these twenty years, and now that I have this day come to see him, do you treat me in this manner?" The angels answered, "As the Lord liveth, were not Jacob thy brother, we had not left one remaining of thee and thy people, but on account of Jacob we will do nothing to thee." This division passed from Esau, and when he had gone from there about a league, the second division came toward him, and they also did unto Esau and his men as the first had done to them, and when they permitted him to go on, the third came and did like the first, and when the third had passed also, and Esau still continued with his men on the road to Jacob, the fourth division came and did to them as the others had done. And Esau was greatly afraid of his brother, because he thought that the four columns of the army which he had encountered were the servants of Jacob.

After Jacob had made an end of praying, he divided all that journeyed with him into two companies, and he set over them Damesek and Alinus, the two sons of Eliezer, the bondman of



Abraham, and their sons.<sup>244</sup> Jacob's example teaches us not to conceal the whole of our fortune in one hiding-place, else we run the danger of losing everything at one stroke.

Of his cattle he sent a part to Esau as a present, first dividing it into three droves in order to impress his brother more. When Esau received the first drove, he would think he had the whole gift that had been sent to him, and suddenly he would be astonished by the appearance of the second portion, and again by the third. Jacob knew his brother's avarice only too well.<sup>245</sup>

The men who were the bearers of Jacob's present to Esau were charged with the following message, "This is an offering to my lord Esau from his slave Jacob." But God took these words of Jacob in ill part, saying, "Thou profanest what is holy when thou callest Esau lord." Jacob excused himself; he was but flattering the wicked in order to escape death at his hands.<sup>246</sup>

---

233. Yashar Wa-Yeze (end) and Wa-Yishlah (beginning), 59b–60b. On the honor which Jacob owed Esau as the elder brother, comp. the midrashic quotation in Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 32. 4, and Ketubot 103a.

234. MHG I, 501–502. On the view that Abraham's descendants are to pay off the debt, compare pp. 281–282; p. 578 and 735–736. The statement about Jacob's strict conformity with the Torah during the stay with Laban is found also in Lekah, Gen. 32. 5, but in a version somewhat different from the one in MHG and Rashi, *ad loc.*

235. BR 75.5 and 11; Tan. B. I, 161.

236. MHG I, 503. Jacob's message to Esau, as given by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 20. 1, also differs from the biblical account.

237. Yashar Wa-Yishlah, 60b.

238. BR 75. 12 (and, with slight variations, 7); MHG I, 503 (where תשעה is a faulty reading of the abbreviation ת=400, and hence the discrepancy in the number); Tan. B. I, 161.

239. BR 75. 7; Tan. B. I, 161; Zohar I, 167b.

240. BR 76. 1–2. On the fear of the pious to forfeit, through sin, the blessings promised to them, comp. the parallel passages cited on margin, and see also 277–278. Maimonides, *Shemonah Perakim*, 7, remarks: Even the patriarchs and prophets were not entirely free from human failings, as

the fear of Jacob shows. Shu'aib, Wa-Yishlah, 16c, quotes a midrashic statement to the effect that Jacob contrasted his own conduct toward his father with that of Esau, and was compelled to admit his shortcomings. He caused his father to fear and tremble (comp. Gen. 27. 33, and note 101), whereas Esau never failed, in the slightest degree, in the honor and consideration due to Isaac. Jacob therefore thought that God might prefer Esau to himself. Comp. also Zohar I, 166a; MHG I, 503.

241. MHG I, 504.

242. Tan. B. I, 162; Koheleth 9. 18.

243. BR 75. 9 and 13, as well as 76. 4–6; Yashar Wa-Yishlah, 60b–61a (gives a different version of Jacob's prayer, but at the same time makes use of BR). See also Tan. B. I, 162; Makiri, Ps. 20, 140, 141, and note 35.

244. Yashar Wa-Yishlah, 61a–61b, which amplifies the legend concerning the angels who attacked Esau at night, found in BR 78. 11; Tan. B. I, 162; and in abridged form, BR 75. 10. See note 265. Damesek, the son of Eliezer, owes his existence to the phrase דמשק אליעזר (Gen. 15. 2). On Alinus comp. note 290 with reference to Ebbaen of which Alinus seems to be a variant.

245. BR 76. 3 and 8; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 20. 1. The numerical relation of the male to the female animals varies with the different species, because the more active an animal is, the less its sexual desire, and the same applies to man. See Yerushalmi Ketubot 5, 30b; BR 76. 7; Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 112. Comp. note 274. Jacob first separated the tithes from the animals before sending them to Esau; see Rashi and Lekah, Gen. 33. 14. Comp. note 251.

246. PRE 37; Tan. B. I, 161; Tan. Wa-Yishlah 3; BR 75. 5. A different view is given in BR 76. 2–3 and 11, where Jacob is severely censured for calling Esau "my lord", and it is added that as a punishment for that, Jacob's descendants established their kingdom eight generations later than Esau's descendants (comp. Gen. 36. 31). Moreover, the latter were granted dominion over the world, whereas the former have to wait for the dominion in the world to come. See BR 75. 11; PRE, *loc. cit.*; 1 Alphabet of Ben Sira 6b.

## JACOB WRESTLES WITH THE ANGEL

THE servants of Jacob went before him with the present for Esau, and he followed with his wives and his children. As he was about to pass over the ford of Jabbok, he observed a shepherd, who likewise had sheep and camels. The stranger approached Jacob and proposed that they should



ford the stream together, and help each other move their cattle over, and Jacob assented, on the condition that his possessions should be put across first. In the twinkling of an eye Jacob's sheep were transferred to the other side of the stream by the shepherd. Then the flocks of the shepherd were to be moved by Jacob, but no matter how many he took over to the opposite bank, always there remained some on the hither shore. There was no end to the cattle, though Jacob labored all the night through. At last he lost patience, and he fell upon the shepherd and caught him by the throat, crying out, "O thou wizard, thou wizard, at night no enchantment succeeds!" The angel thought, "Very well, let him know once for all with whom he has bad dealings," and with his finger he touched the earth, whence fire burst forth. But Jacob said, "What! thou thinkest thus to affright me, who am made wholly of fire?"<sup>247</sup>

The shepherd was no less a personage than the archangel Michael, and in his combat with Jacob he was assisted by the whole host of angels under his command. He was on the point of inflicting a dangerous wound upon Jacob, when God appeared, and all the angels, even Michael himself, felt their strength ooze away. Seeing that he could not prevail against Jacob, the archangel touched the hollow of his thigh, and injured him, and God rebuked him, saying, "Dost thou act as it seemly, when thou causest a blemish in My priest Jacob?" Michael said in astonishment, "Why, it is I who am Thy priest!" But God said, "Thou art My priest in heaven, and he is My priest on earth." Thereupon Michael summoned the archangel Raphael, saying, "My comrade, I pray thee, help me out of my distress, for thou art charged with the healing of all disease," and Raphael cured Jacob of the injury Michael had inflicted.

The Lord continued to reproach Michael, saying, "Why didst thou do harm unto My first-born son?" and the archangel answered, "I did it only to glorify Thee," and then God appointed

Michael as the guardian angel of Jacob and his seed unto the end of all generations, with these words: "Thou art a fire, and so is Jacob a fire; thou art the head of the angels, and he is the head of the nations; thou art supreme over all the angels, and he is supreme over all the peoples. Therefore he who is supreme over all the angels shall be appointed unto him who is supreme over all the peoples, that he may entreat mercy for him from the Supreme One over all."

Then Michael said unto Jacob, "How is it possible that thou who couldst prevail against me, the most distinguished of the angels, art afraid of Esau?"

When the day broke, Michael said to Jacob, "Let me go, for the day breaketh," but Jacob held him back, saying, "Art thou a thief, or a gambler with dice, that thou fearest the daylight?" At that moment appeared many different hosts of angels, and they called unto Michael: "Ascend, O Michael, the time of song hath come, and if thou art not in heaven to lead the choir, none will sing." And Michael entreated Jacob with supplications to let him go, for he feared the angels of 'Arabot would consume him with fire, if he were not there to start the songs of praise at the proper time. Jacob said, "I will not let thee go, except thou bless me," whereto Michael made reply: "Who is greater, the servant or the son? I am the servant, and thou art the son. Why, then, cravest thou my blessing?"<sup>248</sup> Jacob urged as an argument, "The angels that visited Abraham did not leave without blessing him," but Michael held, "They were sent by God for that very purpose, and I was not." Yet Jacob insisted upon his demand, and Michael pleaded with him, saying, "The angels that betrayed a heavenly secret were banished from their place for one hundred and thirty-eight years. Dost thou desire that I should acquaint thee with what would cause my banishment likewise?" In the end the angel nevertheless had to yield; Jacob



could not be moved, and Michael took counsel with himself thus: "I will reveal a secret to him, and if God demands to know why I revealed it, I will make answer, Thy children stand upon their wishes with Thee, and Thou dost yield to them. How, then, could I have left Jacob's wish unfulfilled?"

Then Michael spoke to Jacob, saying: "A day will come when God will reveal Himself unto thee, and He will change thy name, and I shall be present when He changeth it."<sup>249</sup> Thy name shall be called no more Jacob, but Israel, for happy thou, of woman born, who didst enter the heavenly palace, and didst escape thence with thy life." And Michael blessed Jacob with the words, "May it be the will of God that thy descendants be as pious as thou art."<sup>250</sup>

At the same time the archangel reminded Jacob that he had promised to give a tithe of his possessions unto God, and at once Jacob separated five hundred and fifty head of cattle from his herds, which counted fifty-five hundred. Then Michael went on, "But thou hast sons, and of them thou hast not set apart the tenth." Jacob proceeded to pass his sons in review: Reuben, Joseph, Dan, and Gad being the first-born, each of his mother, were exempt, and there remained but eight sons, and when he had named them, down to Benjamin, he had to go back and begin over again with Simon, the ninth, and finish with Levi as the tenth.

Michael took Levi with him into heaven, and presented him before God, saying, "O Lord of the world, this one is Thy lot, and the tenth belonging unto Thee," and God stretched forth His hand and blessed Levi with the blessing that his children should be the servants of God on earth as the angels were His servants on high. Michael spoke again, "Doth not a king provide for the sustenance of his servants?" whereupon God appointed for the Levites all that was holy unto the Lord.<sup>251</sup>

Then Jacob spoke to the angel: "My father conferred the blessing upon me that was intended for Esau, and now I desire to know whether thou wilt acknowledge the blessing as mine, or wilt bring charges against me on account of it." And the angel said: "I acknowledge the blessing to be thine by right. Thou didst not gain it by craft and cunning, and I and all the heavenly powers recognize it to be valid, for thou hast shown thyself master over the mighty powers of the heavens as over Esau and his legions."<sup>252</sup>

And even then Jacob would not let the angel depart, he had to reveal his name to him first, and the angel made known to him that it was Israel, the same name that Jacob would once bear.<sup>253</sup>

At last the angel departed, after Jacob had blessed him, and Jacob called the place of wrestling Penueel, the same place to which before he had given the name Mahanaim, for both words have but one meaning, the place of encounter with angels.<sup>254</sup>

---

247. BR 77. 2–3; Shir 3. 5. These sources add that it was Esau's guardian angel (comp. the following note and note 273) who, at the command of God, undertook to wrestle with Jacob. God said to the angel: "Jacob has five charms to protect him: his own merits and those of his parents and grandparents; now measure thy strength against his." The angel tried, and soon discovered that Jacob was no match for him. The words put into Jacob's mouth ("this night no enchantment prevails") wish to convey that, although ordinarily the darkness of the night is very propitious for such and similar operations (comp. Index, s. v. "Night", and Fraser, *Folk-Lore in the Old Testament*, II, 411), Jacob was not afraid of the angel's machinations.—Hullin 91a points out that the pious take great care not to lose or squander their possessions; hence Jacob, after having forded the river with all his belongings, returned to fetch a small pot which he had forgotten on the other side of the Jabbok.

248. Abkir in Yalkut I, 132; according to this source, the angel appeared to make Jacob bold for his meeting with Esau. See also Zerubbabel (Jellinek's edition, 5. 5), which reads: "I am Metatron, the angel who wrestled with Jacob at the ford of Jabbok," while in Wertheimer's edition הנָהָר שְׁנֵי דְבָקָתִי בְעֵבֶר נֶאֱבָקָתִי בְּמַעְבֵּר יָבוֹק is corrupted to הנָהָר שְׁנֵי דְבָקָתִי בְּעֵבֶר. Since in many sources Metatron is identical with Michael



(comp. Index, *s. v.* “Metatron”), it follows that, according to this passage, the angel who wrestled with Jacob was sent to his assistance. In Wertheimer’s edition (versions 1 and 2) this angel described himself as Metatron=Michael, *i. e.*, as the guardian angel of Israel. The antiquity of this view which identifies this angel with Michael, or rather Metatron, may be inferred from the statement of the Church Fathers, according to whom this angel was the Holy Ghost, or Jesus; comp. *e. g.*, Clemens Alexandrinus, *Instructor*, 1. 7. It had already been observed that Christian authors often transferred to Jesus, or rather the Holy Ghost, those functions which in Jewish legends are ascribed to Michael. It should be noted here that Abkir in its present form consists of three different parts, which are introduced by: 1) טרפון; 2) ישאומרים; 3) אמר ר’ אלעזר א”ר, in Gabai. Comp. further below.—Michael was appointed the guardian angel of Israel on the day of his visit to Abraham to announce to him the birth of Isaac; see Ziyyoni, *Mishpatim* (end), quoting Galya Raza, and compare footnote 91 on p. 164, as well as the following note. The angel was in a hurry, as he had to be present at the morning song of the celestial beings; comp. BR 78. 1–2; Hullin 91b–92a; Shir 3. 5; compare with pp. 13–14. A fragment of a legend, according to which several angels fought against Jacob, is found in Yelammedenu quoted in Yalkut II, 758 on Ps. 39; compare also with p. 330; note 199. On the view that the powers of the angels vanished in the presence of God, comp. Philo, *De Somniis*, 1. 13. For a correct text of Abkir comp. Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 32. 25, and Gabai, *Abodat ha-Kodesh*, 3. 7, who quotes a considerable portion of this Abkir passage from Sode Raze. It is to be observed that towards the end אש והוא אש is to be read. The identity of this angel with Michael is also found in Tan. B. I, 165; comp. the following note.

249. BR 78. 2. The name of the angel is not given here, and the question is left open whether it was Michael or Gabriel. But inasmuch as Gabriel is one of the two angels who were punished for divulging a heavenly secret (compare with p. 204 and p. 277), which punishment is given as an excuse by the angel for his reluctance to fulfil Jacob’s wish, it follows that only Michael is meant here. According to BR, *loc. cit.*, as well as the sources cited in the preceding note, the angel finally fulfilled Jacob’s wish, for otherwise he would not have been in heaven in time to chant the praise of God. Opposed to this view is the one in PRE 37, according to which the angel had to chant his hymn on earth, and when the angels heard him sing, they knew that Jacob prevented him from returning to heaven. Comp. also ps.—Philo, 18A, who likewise maintains that it was the heavenly band-master who wrestled with Jacob.—Jacob had adjured the angel not to move without his permission; but he doubted whether his adjuring was effective as he did not know the name of the angel; hence he was anxious to learn his name; comp. Ziyyoni, Gen. 32. 27.

250. Abkir in Yalkut I, 132. This legend assumes that the wrestling between Jacob and the angel took place in heaven; comp. also vol. I, pp. 388–389.

251. PRE 27; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 32. 25. There can be no doubt that according to this view it was Michael who wrestled with Jacob, in order to remind him of his promise concerning the tithes. This view is also shared by Ephraim, I, 181B, who also knows the other explanation given in note 248 for the appearance of the angel. According to one view, Jacob, in separating the tithes of his sons, started with the youngest of them (in the eyes of the Lord the small are more precious than the great; Yelammedenu 16=BHM VI, 80), and therefore Levi was the tenth. See Jub. 32. 3; Sifre D., 355 (for the explanation of this passage see Brüll, *Jahrbücher*, IV, 130, and Epstein, *Mikkadmoniyot*, 97–98); Midrash Tannaim 220; PRE, *loc. cit.* (the reason given here for starting from the youngest is not clear); *Da’at* and *Hadar* on Gen. 28. 22. Tan. is given as a source in *Hadar*, whereas *Da’at* refers to BR as its authority. But neither of these two Midrashim has this Haggadah. See Epstein, *Mosheh ha-Darshan*, 16; see p. 403, footnote 364. On Levi being taken into heaven, see text on p. 284 and p. 437. On Jacob as the first to set aside the tithes, comp. notes 144 and 245.

252. Zohar III, 45a (based on Tan. B. I, 127, or a source related to Tan.).

253. PRE 47. The mystics of the geonic period speak of a heavenly being (חיה), named Israel, on whose forehead this name is engraved. The function of this angel is to call the hosts of angels to chant God’s praise. He addresses them with these words: “Bless ye the Lord who is to be blessed.” Whereupon they praise God, saying: “Blessed is the Lord who is to be blessed for ever and ever.” See Hekalot 4, 29; Zohar II, 4b; Baer’s *Siddur*, 126. Raziel, 6b, makes the assumption probable that this heavenly being was identified with the “Jacob’s countenance” in the throne of glory; comp. notes 35 and 134.—The Haggadah knows of a number of explanations of the name Israel: It stands for איש ראה אל “the man who saw God” (angel?); comp. ER 27, 138–139; Philo, *Conf. Ling.*, 16 and 20; *Migrat. Abr.*, 18, 36, 39 (end); *Quis Rer. Div. Haeres Sit*, 15; *De Cong. Quaer. Erud. Causa*, 10; *De Profugis*, 25 and 38; *Mut. nominum*, 12; *De Somniis*, 2. 4, 6, 26; *De Sacrificiis Abelis*, 36; *De Abrahamo*, 12; *De praemiis et poenis*, 8. From Philo, in whose writings this etymology occurs very frequently, besides in the passages just cited, it was taken over by the Church Fathers; comp. Siegfried, *Philo*, Index, *s. v.* “Israel”. In Philo’s opinion “the man who saw God” is identical with the Logos, hence Israel=Christ in the writings of the Church Fathers. See Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 75; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 2. 5; Cyril, *De Trinit.*, 19. Comp. note 428. The name Israel is also explained as “trying to sing instead of the angels” (ישר+אל=), or “joyful like the angels at



the time of their singing"; see Tan. B. I, 127, and Haserot in Batte Midrashot, III, 4. As to Jacob's singing instead of the angels, comp. BR 78. 2. Other etymologies are: "the remnant of God" (שאר אל=ישראל), or "he who walks straight with the Lord" (ישר אל=ישראל); Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 232. 29, and comp. note 273. Similar to the last etymology is the one given by Nahmanides, Deut. 2. 10 of Jeshurun, which signifies "one who walks straight," in contrast to Jacob, "he who walks crookedly". Comp. Nestle, *Zeitschrift f. Alt. Wiss.*, XXXII, 17–20

254. MHG I, 513.

## THE MEETING BETWEEN ESAU AND JACOB

At the break of day the angel left off from wrestling with Jacob. The dawn on that day was of particularly short duration. The sun rose two hours before his time, by way of compensation for having set early, on the day on which Jacob passed Mount Moriah on his journey to Haran, to induce him to turn aside and lodge for a night on the future Temple place.<sup>255</sup> Indeed, the power of the sun on this same day was altogether remarkable. He shone with the brilliance and ardor with which he was invested during the six days of the creation, and as he will shine at the end of days, to make whole the halt and the blind among the Jews and to consume the heathen. This same healing and devastating property he had on that day, too, for Jacob was cured, while Esau and his princes were all but burnt up by his terrible heat.<sup>256</sup>

Jacob was in dire need of healing lotions for the injury he had sustained in the encounter with the angel. The combat between them had been grim, the dust whirled up by the scuffle rose to the very throne of God.<sup>257</sup> Though Jacob prevailed against his huge opponent, as big as one-third of the whole world, throwing him to the ground and keeping him pinned down, yet the angel had injured him by clutching at the

sinew of the hip which is upon the hollow of the thigh, so that it was dislocated, and Jacob halted upon his thigh.<sup>258</sup> The healing power of the sun restored him, nevertheless his children took it upon themselves not to eat the sinew of the hip which is upon the hollow of the thigh, for they reproached themselves with having been the cause of his mishap, they should not have left him alone in that night.<sup>259</sup>

Now, although Jacob had prepared for the worst, for open hostilities even, yet when he saw Esau and his men, he thought it discreet to make separate divisions of the households of Leah, Rachel, and the handmaids, and divide the children unto each of them. And he put the handmaids and their children foremost, and Leah and her children after, and Rachel and Joseph hindermost. It was the stratagem which the fox used with the lion. Once upon a time the king of beasts was wroth with his subjects, and they looked hither and thither for a spokesman who mastered the art of appeasing their ruler. The fox offered himself for the undertaking, saying, "I know three hundred fables which will allay his fury." His offer was accepted with joy. On the way to the lion, the fox suddenly stood still, and in reply to the questions put to him, he said, "I have forgotten one hundred of the three hundred fables." "Never mind," said those accompanying him, "two hundred will serve the purpose." A little way further on the fox again stopped suddenly, and, questioned again, he confessed that he had forgotten half of the two hundred remaining fables. The animals with him still consoled him that the hundred he knew would suffice. But the fox halted a third time, and then he admitted that his memory had failed him entirely, and he had forgotten all the fables he knew, and he advised that every animal approach the king on his own account and endeavor to appease his anger. At first Jacob had had courage enough to enter the lists with Esau in behalf of all with him. Now



he came to the conclusion to let each one try to do what he could for himself.

However, Jacob was too fond a father to expose his family to the first brunt of the danger. He himself passed over before all the rest, saying, "It is better that they attack me than my children."<sup>260</sup> After him came the handmaids and their children. His reason for placing them there was that, if Esau should be overcome by passion for the women, and try to violate them, he would thus meet the handmaids first, and in the meantime Jacob would have the chance of preparing for more determined resistance in the defense of the honor of his wives.<sup>261</sup> Joseph and Rachel came last, and Joseph walked in front of his mother, though Jacob had ordered the reverse. But the son knew both the beauty of his mother and the lustfulness of his uncle, and therefore he tried to hide Rachel from the sight of Esau.<sup>262</sup>

In the vehemence of his rage against Jacob, Esau vowed that he would not slay him with bow and arrow, but would bite him dead with his mouth, and suck his blood. But he was doomed to bitter disappointment, for Jacob's neck turned as hard as ivory, and in his helpless fury Esau could but gnash his teeth.<sup>263</sup> The two brothers were like the ram and the wolf. A wolf wanted to tear a ram in pieces, and the ram defended himself with his horns, striking them deep into the flesh of the wolf. Both began to howl, the wolf because he could not secure his prey, and the ram from fear that the wolf renew his attacks. Esau bawled because his teeth were hurt by the ivory-like flesh of Jacob's neck, and Jacob feared that his brother would make a second attempt to bite him.<sup>264</sup>

Esau addressed a question to his brother. "Tell me," he said, "what was the army I met?" for on his march against Jacob he had had a most peculiar experience with a great host of forty thousand warriors. It consisted of various kinds of troops, armor-clad soldiers walking on foot, mounted on horses, and seated in chariots, and they all threw

themselves upon Esau when they met. He demanded to know whence they came, and the strange soldiers hardly interrupted their savage onslaught to reply that they belonged to Jacob. Only when Esau told them that Jacob was his brother did they leave off, saying, "Woe to us if our master hears that we did thee harm." This was the army and the encounter Esau inquired about as soon as he met his brother. But the army was a host of angels, who had the appearance of warriors to Esau and his men.<sup>265</sup> Also the messengers sent by Jacob to Esau had been angels, for no mere human being could be induced to go forth and face the recreant.<sup>266</sup>

Jacob now gave Esau the presents intended for him, a tenth of all his cattle,<sup>267</sup> and also pearls and precious stones,<sup>268</sup> and, besides, a falcon for the chase.<sup>269</sup> But even the animals refused to give up their gentle master Jacob and become the property of the villain Esau. They all ran away when Jacob wanted to hand them over to his brother, and the result was that the only ones that reached Esau were the feeble and the lame, all that could not make good their escape.<sup>270</sup>

At first Esau declined the presents offered to him. Naturally, that was a mere pretense. While refusing the gifts with words, he held his hand outstretched ready to receive them.<sup>271</sup> Jacob took the hint, and insisted that he accept them, saying: "Nay, I pray thee, if now I have found grace in thy sight, then receive my present at my hand, forasmuch as I have seen thy face, as I have seen the face of angels, and thou art pleased with me." The closing words were chosen with well-calculated purpose. Jacob wanted Esau to derive the meaning that he had intercourse with angels, and to be inspired with awe. Jacob was like the man invited to a banquet by his mortal enemy who has been seeking an opportunity to slay him. When the guest divines the purpose for which he has been brought thither, he says to the host: "What a magnificent and delicious meal this is!



But once before in my life did I partake of one like it, and that was when I was bidden by the king to his table”—enough to drive terror to the heart of the would-be slayer. He takes good care not to harm a man on such intimate terms with the king as to be invited to his table!<sup>272</sup>

Jacob had valid reason for recalling his encounter with the angel, for it was the angel of Esau who had measured his strength with Jacob's, and had been overcome.<sup>273</sup>

As Esau accepted the presents of Jacob willingly on this first occasion, so he continued to accept them for a whole year; daily Jacob gave him presents as on the day of their meeting, for, he said, “A gift doth blind the eyes of the wise, and how much more doth it blind the wicked! Therefore will I give him presents upon presents, perhaps he will let me alone.” Besides, he did not attach much value to the possessions he had acquired outside of the Holy Land. Such possessions are not a blessing, and he did not hesitate to part with them.

Beside the presents which Jacob gave Esau, he also paid out a large sum of money to him for the Cave of Machpelah. Immediately upon his arrival in the Holy Land he sold all he had brought with him from Haran, and a pile of gold was the proceeds of the sale. He spoke to Esau, saying: “Like me thou hast a share in the Cave of Machpelah, wilt thou take this pile of gold for thy portion therein?” “What care I for the Cave?” returned Esau. “Gold is what I want,” and for his share in Machpelah he took the gold realized from the sale of the possessions Jacob had accumulated outside of the Holy Land. But God “filled the vacuum without delay,” and Jacob was as rich as before.<sup>274</sup>

Wealth was not an object of desire to Jacob. He would have been well content, in his own behalf and in behalf of his family, to resign all earthly treasures in favor of Esau and his family. He said to Esau: “I foresee that in future days

suffering will be inflicted by thy children upon mine. But I do not demur, thou mayest exercise thy dominion and wear thy crown until the time when the Messiah springs from my loins, and receives the rule from thee.” These words spoken by Jacob will be realized in days to come, when all the nations will rise up against the kingdom of Edom, and take away one city after another from him, one realm after another, until they reach Bet-Gubrin, and then the Messiah will appear and assume his kingship. The angel of Edom will flee for refuge to Bozrah, but God will appear there, and slay him, for though Bozrah is one of the cities of refuge, yet will the Lord exercise the right of the avenger therein. He will seize the angel by his hair, and Elijah will slaughter him, letting the blood spatter the garments of God.<sup>275</sup> All this Jacob had in mind when he said to Esau, “Let my lord, I pray thee, pass over before his servant, until I come unto my lord unto Seir.” Jacob himself never went to Seir. What he meant was the Messianic time when Israel shall go to Seir, and take possession thereof.<sup>276</sup>

Jacob tarried in Succoth a whole year, and he opened a house of learning there.<sup>277</sup> Then he journeyed on to Shechem, while Esau betook himself to Seir, saying to himself, “How long shall I be a burden to my brother?” for it was during Jacob's sojourn at Succoth that Esau received daily presents from Jacob.<sup>278</sup>

And Jacob, after abiding these many years in a strange land, came to Shechem in peace, unimpaired in mind and body. He had forgotten name of the knowledge he had acquired before; the gifts he gave to Esau did not encroach upon his wealth; the injury inflicted by the angel that wrestled with him had been healed, and likewise his children were sound and healthy.<sup>279</sup>

Jacob entered Shechem on a Friday, late in the afternoon, and his first concern was to lay out the boundaries of the city, that the laws of the



Sabbath might not be transgressed. As soon as he was settled in the place, he sent presents to the notables. A man must be grateful to a city from which he derives benefits. No less did the common people enjoy his bounty. For them he opened a market where he sold all wares at low prices.<sup>280</sup>

Also he lost no time in buying a parcel of ground, for it is the duty of every man of substance who comes to the Holy Land from outside to make himself the possessor of land there.<sup>281</sup> He gave a hundred lambs for his estate, a hundred yearling sheep, and a hundred pieces of money, and received in return a bill of sale, to which he attached his signature, using the letters Yod-He for it. And then he erected an altar to God upon his land, and he said, "Thou art the Lord of all celestial things, and I am the lord of all earthly things." But God said, "Not even the overseer of the synagogue arrogates privileges in the synagogue, and thou assumest lordship with a high hand? Forsooth, on the morrow thy daughter will go abroad, and she shall be humbled."<sup>282</sup>

---

255. BR 68. 10; Tan. B. I, 168; Hullin 91b; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 32. 32. Compare with pp. 276–277.

256. Zohar I, 203b, which, in the main, is based on Abkir in Yalkut I, 132. Comp. also BR 78. 5.

257. Hullin 90a. Compare with pp. 278–279.

258. Tan. Wa-Yishlah 4; Tehillim 102, 468–469. The angels have no joints; they are formed of one piece. Hence when the angel noticed Jacob's gigantic strength he touched him on the hip to convince himself whether he is a human being or an angel, and this touch caused injury to Jacob. See PRE 36; Hullin 91a; BR 88. 6; compare also footnote 9 on p. 2.

259. Zohar I, 203b; MHG I, 513–514; *Hadar, Da'at*, and *Pa'aneah* on Gen. 32. 33, which are dependent on Hasidim, 91. In the old sources two views are mentioned with regard to the meaning of "the sons of Israel" (Gen., *loc. cit.*). According to one, it refers to the Jewish people; but the other view maintains that it alludes to Jacob's twelve sons. See Hullin 7. 6. "A scholar must not go out at night by himself", and had not Jacob disregarded this rule, nothing would have happened to him at the ford of Jabbok; see Hullin 91a and Zohar III, 55a. The evil spirits are envious of scholars, and try to attack them at night; comp. Berakot 54b.

260. BR 78. 7–8; PK 19, 139a, which reads: He made his people put on white garments which concealed weapons beneath. He tried three means: 1) prayer; 2) appeasing Esau with gifts; 3) preparing for war. Compare with p. 297.

261. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 33. 2.

262. BR 78. 10; PK 12, 49b; MHG I, 517, which reads: At this time Rachel was pregnant with Benjamin, and Joseph, fearing lest Esau should look at her and she become frightened, placed himself in front of his mother to conceal her. "Haughtiness is more frequently found among low people than among nobles", as may be seen from the varied attitudes of Jacob's children towards Esau. Rachel and Leah bowed themselves before Esau, and their children followed their example. The two handmaids did the same; but their children said: "We are the sons of Jacob, and hence nobler than our mothers, and it is not seemly for us to bow down before Esau"; Shu'aib, Wa-Yishlah, 16a. Compare, however, footnote 926 on p. 822.

263. BR 78. 9, and parallel passages cited by Theodor; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 33. 4; Zohar I, 171b (the legend about Esau's long teeth is an adaptation of the Og legend, Berakot 54b). Abkir according to a MS. published by Epstein in *Ha-Eshkol*, VI, 206. Zohar I, 172a, quotes also the opposite view, according to which, Esau, on meeting Jacob, after many years of separation, was overcome by a true feeling of love for his brother; Yashar Wa-Yishlah, 62b, is very likely the source of Zohar. Comp. also MHG I, 517' and PRE 37.

264. Tan. Wa-Yishlah 4; MHG I, 516–517; Zohar I, 17b. Comp. the preceding note.

265. BR 75. 10 (the exact number of angels is given here) and 78. 11; Tan. B. I, 165; Tan. Wa-Yishlah 3. Comp. note 244.

266. Yelammedenu 22=BHM VI, 81; BR 75. 4; Tan. B. I, 163; Tan. Wa-Yishlah 3. These messengers consisted of the angels who came with Jacob from Haran, and of those who arrived from the Holy Land to meet him. Comp. note 230.

267. PRE 37. This was a punishment for delaying to set aside the tithes of his possessions for God. Compare with p. 300.

268. Tan. B. I, 169.

269. *Hadar*, Gen. 32. 14.

270. Lekah, Gen. 32. 16; MHG I, 507. A dissenting view is found in *Ba'al ha-Turim*, Gen., *loc. cit.*, according to which Jacob sent to Esau only such animals as were, on account of their bodily injuries and imperfections, unfit for sacrificial purposes; comp. 'Abodah Zarah 1. 6, and Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 108–109. On animals refusing to serve impious masters, compare with p. 994.

271. BR 78. 12. Esau stands for the Roman officials (comp. note 19) of whom Pesahim 118b says: They stretch forth their hands for gifts; yet do not keep their promises.



272. Sotah 41b; MHG I, 518.

273. BR 78. 3. As to the identity of this angel, comp. notes 247, 248, 259. On the basis of BR the mystics—but found already in Tan. Wa-Yishlah 8—call this angel Sammael, since he is the guardian angel of Rome, *i. e.*, Esau. See Zohar I, 146a, and the numerous references to Zohar in Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 32. 25–33; *Imre No'am*, Gen. 32. 25 (here the reading is סלמאל instead of סמאל). The passage in Zohar II, 41b, where the angel is identified with Gabriel (comp. note 284) is taken from Ra'ya Mehemena, and does not belong to Zohar. The angel, disguised as Esau, appeared to Jacob, and said to him: Thou art an impostor; thou didst say to our father: "I am Esau thy first-born." Jacob excused himself by pointing out that when he acquired the birthright he became Esau's rightful successor. Thereupon the angel said: "Thy name shall not be called any more Jacob, the impostor, but Israel, the remnant of God (comp. note 253), of whom it is said: The remnant of Israel shall not do iniquity, nor speak lies" (Zephaniah 3. 13). See Yalkut Reubeni Gen. 32. 29, who gives, as his source, PRE; but it is not found in our texts of this Midrash, nor is it likely that this passage ever formed a genuine part of PRE, since according to this source, the angel with whom Jacob wrestled was Michael (comp. note 251), while an angel disguised as Esau may be assumed to have been Sammael, Esau's guardian angel; comp. note 247. A description of Jacob's encounter with the angel, entirely different from that of the rabbinic sources, is quoted by Origen, *In Joanem*, 2. 31, from the Jewish pseudepigraphic work the Prayer of Joseph. It reads: I am Jacob and Israel, am angel of God, a ruling spirit . . . called Jacob by men and Israel by God; a man seeing God (comp. note 253), because I am the first-born of every creature whom He caused to live. When I was coming from Mesopotamia of Syria (=ארם נהרים), Uriel, the angel of God, came forth and said: I have come down to the earth, and made my dwelling among men, and I am called Jacob by name. He was wroth with me, and wrestled with me saying that his name and the name of Him who is before every angel (the name אל is attached to every name of every angel; comp. PK 12, 108b, and parallel passages; hence we ought to read "after" instead of "before") should be before my name. I told him his name, and how great he was among the sons of God (=אלהים בני): Art thou not Uriel, the eighth from me, and I am Israel and archangel of the power of the Lord and a chief captain among the sons of God? Am I not Israel, the first minister in the sight of God? Do I not invoke my God by the inextinguishable name? For the expression "inextinguishable name" comp. the Hebrew phrase שאינן נמחקין שמות which is frequently used in the Talmud (comp., *e. g.*, Shebu'ot 35a) to describe the divine names like י"י שדי אל אלהים, in contrast to His attributes as חנון, ארך אפים, etc. Comp. notes 35, 134, 253, and see further footnote 146 on p. 515, on the en-

counter of Uriel (originally the angel of Hades; compare, however, with note 13 on p. 52, and Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 35–37 and 245) with Moses.—Jacob in that memorable night at the ford of Jabbok intended to flee from Esau, and as a punishment for this lack of trust in God (comp. note 240) he was injured by the angel; *Hadar*, Gen. 32. 19.

274. Tan. B. I, 168. On the possessions acquired outside the Holy Land, comp. note 215. On the acquisition of the Machpelah compare with pp. 258 and 320. 1 Alphabet of Ben Sira (ט) reads: God took it ill of Jacob, who, in his fear, gave gifts to Esau (comp. note 240), and was ready to follow his brother. He commanded him to separate himself from Esau, and as a punishment for his lack of faith in God, as evidenced by the gifts to Esau, all his cattle perished, with the exception of one little lamb, which was so precious to Jacob that he made a hut for it (comp. Gen. 33. 17), wherein to spend the night. Among the animals given by Jacob to Esau the male camel is not mentioned (comp. Gen. 32. 16, which reads: Thirty milch-camels and their colts), because it does not copulate with the female in the presence of others, and therefore Scripture omits to mention that a male camel was sent with the females. See Yerushalmi Ketubot 5, 30b; BR 76. 7. The same remark is made by Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 112, but was misunderstood by his commentators. Comp. note 245.

275. Abkir in Yalkut I, 133. For ומניין (so in first edition; in recent editions it is ומנהן read ולאין or משם. Bet Gubrin is already identified with Seir in old sources; comp. BR 67. 6. According to a talmudic legend, God will slay the Yezer ha-Ra', "the evil inclination", on the day of judgment (Sukkah 52a and ER 4, 20). Since the Yezer ha-Ra' is identical with Sammael, the angel of Edom (Sotah 10a; Makkot 12a; comp. Rashi, *ad loc.*, and Lampronti, *Pahad Yizhak*, s. v. טעיות 84c), the purport of this Abkir legend is that evil and sin will be abolished in the world to come. In Enoch 55. 4 it is the Messiah who judges Azazel and his companions, and this view is shared by 12 Testaments, Levi 18. 2, where it is said that the Messiah will bind Belior. Matthew 12. 29 and Luke 10. 19 agree with this view, while in Revelation 20. 2–3 this rôle is assigned to an angel. In Abkir it is Elijah, an old competitor of the Messiah (comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 342, seq.), who with the assistance of God, will destroy the prince of Edom, *i. e.*, Satan. The account of the struggle between leviathan and the angels, ending in the slaughtering of the monster by God Himself, so often alluded to in haggadic writings (compare with pp. 28–29, and the note 127 appertaining thereto), is another form of the legend about God's final victory over evil, which is here represented by the leviathan in accordance with the old mythological terminology; comp. Jeremias, *Babylonisches im Neuen Testamente*, 44. The seizure by the hair is perhaps an allusion to Seir, "the



hairy one” (comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 20. 3, and MHG I, 395–396). See, however, text on p. 560. In kabbalistic literature Sammael, the angel of Esau, has the form of a goat, and therefore he chose Seir (=Sair) as his people; comp. Nahmanides, Lev. 16. 8. Accordingly, the hair of Edom’s angel is perhaps the same thing as the wool of the goat, and in this connection mention may be made of the Mohammedan legend (Buhari, III, 379; comp. Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 117), which has it that the angel of death (=Sammael; comp. Index, *s. v.*) assumes the form of a ram. The account of the flight to Bozrah as given in Abkir is based on Makkot 12a. Abkir quotes R. Aha as authority, because in the Talmud a remark bearing upon this subject is attributed to this Amora; the text reads: The angel of Edom in fleeing to Bozrah will commit three errors: he will think that Bozrah is a city of refuge, confusing it with Bezer (Dent, 4. 43); he will think that the cities of refuge grant protection to murderers (whereas only those who killed someone unwittingly may find refuge there); he will erroneously assume that an angel may seek refuge in these cities, but this law applies only to men; R. Aha adds: he will commit one other error: he will think that a city of refuge grants protection to a Gentile, whereas a Jew only may seek refuge there. Comp. Rabinowicz *ad loc.* See also PRK 30a, which reads: Three things will be removed from the world before the advent of the Messiah: Seir, the Yezer ha-Ra’, and the wicked kingdom (*i. e.* Rome). Comp. further the following note.

276. BR 78. 14 (the truthful Jacob could not have possibly lied to Esau; comp. note 91); DR 1. 20; Tan. B. II, 92; Tan. Terumah 9; MHG I, 518. In all these sources the subject of the conversation between the two brothers is taken to have been the division of the two worlds: the older brother took this world and the younger the future. Comp. note 14. There is also another view to the effect that Jacob told his brother a diplomatic lie, which, under certain circumstances, is not only permitted but even commanded; comp. ‘Abodah Zarah 25a; Yerushalmi 2, 40c; MHG I, 519. Yerushalmi is perhaps the source of MHG; comp. Yalkut II, 124, which quotes the statement of R. Nathan occurring in MHG from *ירש' פ' שני שעירי*. Comp. also Targum Yer. and Sekel on Gen. 33. 16.

277. Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 33. 17 (where perhaps “eighteen months” should be read instead of a “twelve”, in accordance with Seder ‘Olam 2; BR 78. 16; Megillah 17a).

278. Tan. B. I, 169. Comp. also BR 78. 16 and note 274. The four hundred men gradually slipped away from Esau, as they feared to remain in the proximity of Jacob, and as a reward for their respect to Jacob an equal number of their descendants were saved when David massacred the Amalekites (1 Sam. 30. 17; the Amalekites and the inhabitants of Seir are regarded as the same people); BR 78. 15.

279. BR 79. 5; Shabbat 33b; Tan. B. I, 168; Targum Yerushalmi and Jerome on Gen. 33. 16. The latter, however, combines this haggadic interpretation of שלם as “in perfect condition” with that found in the Septuagint and Jub. 30. 1, according to which שלם is the name of a place near Shechem. Compare footnote 102 on p. 196.

280. BR 80. 6–7. A similar statement occurs in Shabbat 33b that Jacob established bath-houses, market-places, and a mint for the inhabitants of Shechem. In Shabbat 118b, BR 11. 7, and PR 23, 120b, attention is called to the fact that the Bible speaks of the observance of the Sabbath by Jacob, but not by Abraham; comp. note 139.

281. MHG I, 522. It is very likely that this is the parcel of ground spoken of in John 4. 5 and 12. Comp. BR 80. 7.

282. BR 80. 7–8; MHG I, 522–523. As to Jacob being called God, See Sifre D., 355; Midrash Tannaim 221; BR 77. 1. Comp. also Ginzberg’s remarks in Geiger, *Ke-buzzat Maamarim*, 393, as well as the quotation from the Prayer of Joseph in notes 35 and 273, against which the statement in BR and MHG is perhaps directed. Zohar I, 138a, maintains that God Himself appointed Jacob to be the lord of all earthly things.

## THE OUTRAGE AT SHECHEM

While Jacob and his sons were sitting in the house of learning, occupied with the study of the Torah,<sup>283</sup> Dinah went abroad to see the dancing and singing women, whom Shechem had hired to dance and play in the streets in order to entice her forth.<sup>284</sup> Had she remained at home, nothing would have happened to her. But she was a woman, and all women like to show themselves in the street.<sup>285</sup> When Shechem caught sight of her, he seized her by main force, young though she was,<sup>286</sup> and violated her in beastly fashion.<sup>287</sup>

This misfortune befell Jacob as a punishment for his excessive self-confidence. In his negotiations with Laban, he had used the expression, “My righteousness shall answer for me hereafter.” Besides, on his return to Palestine, when he was preparing to meet his brother, he concealed his daughter Dinah in a chest, lest Esau desire to have her for wife, and he be obliged to give her



to him. God spoke to him, saying: "Herein hast thou acted unkindly toward thy brother, and therefore Dinah will have to marry Job, one that is neither circumcised nor a proselyte. Thou didst refuse to give her to one that is circumcised, and one that is uncircumcised will take her. Thou didst refuse to give her to Esau in lawful wedlock, and now she will fall a victim to the ravisher's illicit passion."<sup>288</sup>

When Jacob heard that Shechem had defiled his daughter, he sent twelve servants to fetch Dinah from Shechem's house, but Shechem went out to them with his men, and drove them from his house, and he would not suffer them to come unto Dinah, and he kissed and embraced her before their eyes. Jacob then sent two maidens of his servants' daughters to remain with Dinah in the house of Shechem. Shechem bade three of his friends go to his father Hamor, the son of Haddakum, the son of Pered, and say, "Get me this damsel to wife." Hamor tried at first to persuade his son not to take a Hebrew woman to wife, but when Shechem persisted in his request, he did according to the word of his son, and went forth to communicate with Jacob concerning the matter. In the meanwhile the sons of Jacob returned from the field, and, kindled with wrath, they spoke unto their father, saying, "Surely death is due to this man and his household, because the Lord God of the whole earth commanded Noah and his children that man shall never rob nor commit adultery. Now, behold, Shechem has ravaged and committed fornication with our sister, and not one of all the people of the city spake a word to him." And whilst they were speaking, Hamor came to speak to Jacob the words of his son concerning Dinah, and after he ceased to speak, Shechem himself came to Jacob and repeated the request made by his father. Simon and Levi answered Hamor and Shechem deceitfully, saying: "All you have spoken unto us we will do. And, behold, our sister is in your house, but keep

away from her until we send to our father Isaac concerning this matter, for we can do nothing without his counsel. He knows the ways of our father Abraham, and whatever he saith unto us we will tell you, we will conceal nothing from you."

Shechem and his father went home thereafter, satisfied with the result achieved, and when they had gone, the sons of Jacob asked him to seek counsel and pretext in order to kill all the inhabitants of the city, who had deserved this punishment on account of their wickedness. Then Simon said to them: "I have good counsel to give you. Bid them be circumcised. If they consent not, we shall take our daughter from them, and go away. And if they consent to do this, then, when they are in pain, we shall attack them and slay them." The next morning Shechem and his father came again to Jacob, to speak concerning Dinah, and the sons of Jacob spoke deceitfully to them, saying: "We told our father Isaac all your words, and your words pleased him, but he said, that thus did Abraham his father command him from God, that any man that is not of his descendants, who desireth to take one of his daughters to wife, shall cause every male belonging to him to be circumcised."

Shechem and his father hastened to do the wishes of the sons of Jacob, and they persuaded also the men of the city to do likewise, for they were greatly esteemed by them, being the princes of the land.

On the next day, Shechem and his father rose up early in the morning, and they assembled all the men of the city, and they called for the sons of Jacob, and they circumcised Shechem, his father, his five brothers, and all the males in the city, six hundred and forty-five men and two hundred and seventy-six lads. Haddakum, the grandfather of Shechem, and his six brothers would not be circumcised, and they were greatly incensed against the people of the city for submitting to the wishes of the sons of Jacob.



In the evening of the second day, Shechem and his father sent to have eight little children whom their mothers had concealed brought to them to be circumcised. Haddakum and his six brothers sprang at the messengers, and sought to slay them, and sought to slay also Shechem, Hamor, and Dinah. They chided Shechem and his father for doing a thing that their fathers had never done, which would raise the ire of the inhabitants of the land of Canaan against them, as well as the ire of all the children of Ham, and that on account of a Hebrew woman. Haddakum and his brothers finished by saying: "Behold, tomorrow we will go and assemble our Canaanitish brethren, and we will come and smite you and all in whom you trust, that there shall not be a remnant left of you or them."

When Hamor and his son Shechem and all the people of the city heard this, they were sore afraid, and they repented what they had done, and Shechem and his father answered Haddakum and his brothers: "Because we saw that the Hebrews would not accede to our wishes concerning their daughter, we did this thing, but when we shall have obtained our request from them, we will then do unto them that which is in your hearts and in ours, as soon as we shall become strong."

Dinah, who heard their words, hastened and dispatched one of her maidens whom her father had sent to take care of her in Shechem's house, and informed Jacob and his sons of the conspiracy plotted against them. When the sons of Jacob heard this, they were filled with wrath, and Simon and Levi swore, and said, "As the Lord liveth, by to-morrow there shall not be a remnant left in the whole city."

They began the extermination by killing eighteen of the twenty young men who had concealed themselves and were not circumcised, and two of them fled and escaped to some lime pits that were in the city. Then Simon and Levi slew

all the city, not leaving a male over, and while they were looking for spoils outside of the city, three hundred women rose against them and threw stones and dust upon them, but Simon single-handed slew them all, and returned to the city, where he joined Levi. Then they took away from the people outside of the city their sheep, their oxen, their cattle, and also the women and the little children, and they led all these away, and took them to the city to their father Jacob. The number of women whom they did not slay, but only took captive, was eighty-five virgins, among them a young damsel of great beauty by the name of Bunah, whom Simon took to wife. The number of the males which they took captive and did not slay was forty-seven, and all these men and women were servants to the sons of Jacob, and to their children after them, until the day they left Egypt.

---

283. 2 ARN 3, 14; Koheleth 10. 8.

284. PRE 28, and, with some embellishments, Yashar Wa-Yishlah, 63a–63b, where it is pointed out that Dinah went in company of the other female members of Jacob's household, and not by herself. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 21. 1, says that Dinah went to the feast of the Shechemites.

285. Tan. B. I, 171–172; Tan. Wa-Yishlah 5–7; BR 80. 1 (numerous parallel passages are cited by Theodor) and 80. 1. In all these passages the biblical saying "as the mother so the daughter" (Ezek. 16. 44) is applied to Dinah and Leah, both of whom liked to go out to be "looked upon"; comp. note 193. The interpretation of לראות as לראות is old, though not in reference to Gen. 34. 1. Comp. Sanhedrin 4b.

286. Lekah Gen. 34. 4, and comp. Buber, *ad loc.* According to the chronology of Seder 'Olam 2, Dinah was very young at the time when Jacob arrived in Shechem.

287. BR 80. 5; Koheleth 10. 8; Yoma 77b. Comp. also MHG I, 524, where ו, occurring four times in Gen. 34. 2, is explained as ו "woe"; comp. the similar Haggadah in reference to Gen. 9. 20, *seq.*, in Sanhedrin 70a.

288. BR 80. 4 and 73. 9. On Dinah, the wife of Job, compare with footnote 3 on p. 451. According to some (comp. note 25), Esau was not better than Job, for the former, too, was not circumcised. See also text on p. 316, where another sin of Jacob is given as the cause for his misfortune with Dinah.



## A WAR FRUSTRATED

When Simon and Levi had gone from the city, the two young men who had concealed themselves in the lime pits, and were not slain amongst the people of the city, rose up, and they found the city desolate, without a man, only weeping women, and they cried out, saying, "Behold, this is the evil which the sons of Jacob did who destroyed one of the Canaanite cities, and were not afraid of all the land of Canaan."

They left the city and went to Tappuah, and told the inhabitants all that the sons of Jacob had done to the city of Shechem. Jashub, the king of Tappuah, sent to Shechem to see whether these young men told the truth, for he did not believe them, saying, "How could two men destroy a large city like Shechem?" The messengers of Jashub returned, and they reported, "The city is destroyed, not a man is left there, only weeping women, neither are there flocks and cattle there, for all that was in the city was taken away by the sons of Jacob."

Jashub wondered thereat, for the like had not been heard from the days of Nimrod, and not even from the remotest times, that two men should be able to destroy so large a city, and he decided to go to war against the Hebrews, and avenge the cause of the people of Shechem. His counsellors said to him: "If two of them laid waste a whole city, surely if thou goest against them, they all will rise up against us, and destroy us. Therefore, send to the kings round about, that we all together fight against the sons of Jacob, and prevail against them."

The seven kings of the Amorites, when they heard the evil that the sons of Jacob had done to the city of Shechem, assembled together, with all their armies, ten thousand men, with drawn swords, and they came to fight against the sons of Jacob. And Jacob was greatly afraid, and he said to Simon and Levi, "Why have you brought

such evil upon me? I was at rest, and you provoked the inhabitants of the land against me by your acts."

Then Judah spoke to his father: "Was it for naught that Simon and Levi killed the inhabitants of Shechem? Verily, it was because Shechem dishonored our sister, and transgressed the command of our God to Noah and his children, and not one of the inhabitants of the city interfered in the matter. Now, why art thou afraid, and why art thou displeased at my brethren? Surely, our God, who delivered the city of Shechem and its people into their hand, He will also deliver into our hands all the Canaanitish kings who are coming against us. Now cast away thy fears, and pray to God to assist us and deliver us."

Judah then addressed his brethren, saying: "The Lord our God is with us! Fear naught, then! Stand ye forth, each man girt with his weapons of war, his bow and his sword, and we will go and fight against the uncircumcised. The Lord is our God, He will save us."

Jacob, his eleven sons, and one hundred servants belonging to Isaac, who had come to their assistance, marched forward to meet the Amorites, a people exceedingly numerous, like unto the sand upon the sea-shore. The sons of Jacob sent unto their grandfather Isaac, at Hebron, requesting him to pray unto the Lord to protect them from the hand of the Canaanites, and he prayed as follows: "O Lord God, Thou didst promise my father, saying, I will multiply thy seed as the stars of heaven, and also me Thou didst promise that Thou wouldst establish Thy word to my father. Now, O Lord, God of the whole world, pervert, I pray Thee, the counsel of these kings, that they may not fight against my sons, and impress the hearts of their kings and their people with the terror of my sons, and bring down their pride that they turn away from my sons. Deliver my sons and their servants from them with Thy strong hand and



outstretched arm, for power and might are in Thy hands to do all this.”

Jacob also prayed unto God, and said: “O Lord God, powerful and exalted God, who hast reigned from days of old, from then until now and forever! Thou art He who stirreth up wars and causeth them to cease. In Thy hand are power and might to exalt and to bring low. O may my prayer be acceptable unto Thee, that Thou mayest turn to me with Thy mercies, to impress the hearts of these kings and their people with the terror of my sons, and terrify them and their camps, and with Thy great kindness deliver all those that trust in Thee, for Thou art He who subdues the peoples under us, and the nations under our feet.”

God heard the prayers of Isaac and Jacob, and He filled the hearts of all the advisers of the Canaanite kings with great fear and terror, and when the kings, who were undecided whether to undertake a campaign against the sons of Jacob, consulted them, they said: “Are you silly, or is there no understanding in you, that you propose to fight with the Hebrews? Why do you take delight in your own destruction this day? Behold, two of them came to the city of Shechem without fear or terror, and they put all the inhabitants of the city to the sword, no man stood up against them, and how will you be able to fight with them all?”

The royal counsellors then proceeded to enumerate all the mighty things God had done for Abraham, Jacob, and the sons of Jacob, such as had not been done from days of old and by any of the gods of the nations. When the kings heard all the words of their advisers, they were afraid of the sons of Jacob, and they would not fight against them. They turned back with their armies on that day, each to his own city. But the sons of Jacob kept their station that day till evening, and seeing that the kings did not advance to do battle with them in order to avenge

the inhabitants of Shechem whom they had killed, they returned home.<sup>289</sup>

The wrath of the Lord descended upon the inhabitants of Shechem to the uttermost on account of their wickedness. For they had sought to do unto Sarah and Rebekah as they did unto Dinah, but the Lord had prevented them. Also they had persecuted Abraham when he was a stranger, and they had vexed his flocks when they were big with young, and Eblaen, one born in his house, they had handled most shamefully. And thus they did to all strangers, taking away their wives by force.<sup>290</sup>

---

289. Yashar Wa-Yishlah, 63b–69a. The old rabbinic sources give no particulars about the war against Shechem; they merely narrate that Jacob’s sons, “relying on the strength of the old man”, undertook to war against the heathens. Jacob, though opposed to offensive wars, could not but come to the assistance of his sons, and girded with his sword, he stood at the gates of Shechem to repel the attacks of the enemy. See BR 80. 10 and 97. 6; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 48. 22. According to another view, the piety and prayers of Jacob ward off the threatening danger of an attack by the Amorites; comp. Baba Batra 123a; BR 97. 6; Aggadat Shir 3. 8, 33; 2 Targum Yerushalmi Gen., *loc. cit.* Yashar combined these two views: at first the threatening danger was ward off by Jacob’s prayer; later, however, a fierce war broke out between the sons of Jacob and the Amorites. Compare with pp. 314–316, and note 292.

290. 12 Testaments, Levi 6. 9. Eblaen is perhaps to be explained as being due to a misreading of the Hebrew original, where the text read עבדו “his slave” (=Eliezer) or עבדיו “his slaves”. On the slaves brought up in Abraham’s house, compare with footnote 93 on p. 195. For another justification of the killing of the Shechemites, see footnote 9 on p. 439.

## THE WAR WITH THE NINEVITES

**T**he destruction of Shechem by Simon and Levi terrified the heathen all around. If two sons of Jacob had succeeded in ruining a great



city like Shechem, they argued, what would Jacob and all his sons accomplish acting together? Jacob meanwhile left Shechem, hindered by none, and with all his possessions he set out, to betake himself to his father Isaac. But after an eight days' march he encountered a powerful army, which had been dispatched from Nineveh to levy tribute upon the whole world and subjugate it. On coming in the vicinity of Shechem, this army heard to what the city had been exposed at the hands of the sons of Jacob, and fury seized the men, and they resolved to make war upon Jacob.

But Jacob said to his sons: "Fear not, God will be your helper, and He will fight for you against your enemies. Only you must put away from you the strange gods in your possession, and you must purify yourselves, and wash your garments clean."

Girt with his sword, Jacob advanced against the enemy, and in the first onslaught he slew twelve thousand of the weak in the army. Then Judah spake to him, and said, "Father, thou art tired and exhausted, let me fight the enemy alone." And Jacob replied, saying, "Judah, my son, I know thy strength and thy bravery, that they are exceeding great, so that none in the world is like unto thee therein." His countenance like a lion's and inflamed with wrath, Judah attacked the army, and slew twelve myriads of tried and famous warriors. The battle raged hot in front and in the rear, and Levi his brother hastened to his aid, and together they won a victory over the Ninevites. Judah alone slew five thousand more soldiers, and Levi dealt blows right and left with such vigor that the men of the enemy's army fell like grain under the scythe of the reaper.

Alarmed about their fate, the people of Nineveh said: "How long shall we fight with these devils? Let us return to our land, lest they exterminate us root and branch, without leaving a remnant." But their king desired to restrain them, and he said: "O ye heroes, ye men of might and

valor, have you lost your senses that you ask to return to your land? Is this your bravery? After you have subdued many kingdoms and countries, ye are not able to hold out against twelve men? If the nations and the kings whom we have made tributary to ourselves hear of this, they will rise up against us as a man, and make a laughing-stock of us, and do with us according to their desire. Take courage, ye men of the great city of Nineveh, that your honor and your name be exalted, and you become not a mockery in the mouth of your enemies."

These words of their king inspired the warriors to continue the campaign. They sent messengers to all the lands to ask for help, and, reinforced by their allies, the Ninevites assaulted Jacob a second time. He spoke to his sons, saying, "Take courage and be men, fight against your enemies." His twelve sons then took up their stand in twelve different places, leaving considerable intervals between one and another, and Jacob, a sword in his right hand and a bow in his left, advanced to the combat. It was a desperate encounter for him. He had to ward off the enemy to the right and the left. Nevertheless he inflicted a severe blow, and when a band of two thousand men beset him, he leapt up in the air and over them and vanished from their sight. Twenty-two myriads he slew on this day, and when evening came he planned to flee under cover of darkness. But suddenly ninety thousand men appeared, and he was compelled to continue the fight. He rushed at them with his sword, but it broke, and he had to defend himself by grinding huge rocks into lime powder, and this he threw at the enemy and blinded them so that they could see nothing. Luckily, darkness was about to fall, and he could permit himself to take rest for the night.

In the morning, Judah said to Jacob, "Father, thou didst fight the whole of yesterday, and thou art weary and exhausted. Let me fight this



day.” When the warriors caught sight of Judah’s lion face and his lion teeth, and heard his lion voice, they were greatly afraid. Judah hopped and jumped over the army like a flea, from one warrior to the next, raining blows down upon them incessantly, and by evening he had slain eighty thousand and ninety-six men, armed with swords and bows. But fatigue overcame him, and Zebulon took up his station at his brother’s left hand, and mowed down eighty thousand of the enemy. Meantime Judah regained some of his strength, and, rising up in wrath and fury, and gnashing his teeth with a noise like unto thunder claps in midsummer, he put the army to flight. It ran a distance of eighteen miles, and Judah could enjoy a respite that night.

But the army reappeared on the morrow, ready for battle again, to take revenge on Jacob and his children. They blew their trumpets, whereupon Jacob spake to his sons, “Go forth and fight with your enemies.” Issachar and Gad said that this day they would take the combat upon themselves, and their father bade them do it while their brothers kept guard and held themselves in readiness to aid and relieve the two combatants when they showed signs of weariness and exhaustion.

The leaders of the day slew forty-eight thousand warriors, and put to flight twelve myriads more, who concealed themselves in a cave. Issachar and Gad fetched trees from the woods, piled the trunks up in front of the opening of the cave, and set fire to them. When the fire blazed with a fierce flame, the warriors spoke, saying: “Why should we stay in this cave and perish with the smoke and the heat? Rather will we go forth and fight with our enemies, then we may have a chance of saving ourselves.” They left the cave, going through openings at the side, and they attacked Issachar and Gad in front and behind. Dan and Naphtali saw the plight of their brothers and ran to their assistance. They laid

about with their swords, hewing a way for themselves to Issachar and Gad, and, united with them, they, too, opposed the foe.

It was the third day of the conflict, and the Ninevites were reinforced by an army as numerous as the sand on the sea-shore. All the sons of Jacob united to oppose it, and they routed the host. But when they pursued after the enemy, the fugitives faced about and resumed the battle, saying: “Why should we run away? Let us rather fight them, perhaps we may be victorious, now they are weary.” A stubborn combat ensued, and when Jacob saw the vehement attack upon his children, he himself sprang into the thick of the battle and dealt blows right and left. Nevertheless the heathen were victorious, and succeeded in separating Judah from his brethren. As soon as Jacob was aware of the peril of his son, he whistled, and Judah responded, and his brethren hastened to his aid. Judah was fatigued and parched with thirst, and there was no water for him to drink, but he dug his finger into the ground with such force that water gushed out in the sight of the whole army. Then said one warrior to another, “I will flee before these devils, for God fights on their side,” and he and all the army fled precipitately, pursued by the sons of Jacob. Soldiers without number they slew, and then they went back to their tents. On their return they noticed that Joseph was missing, and they feared he had been killed or taken captive. Naphtali ran after the retreating enemy, to make search for Joseph, and he found him still fighting against the Ninevite army. He joined Joseph, and killed countless soldiers, and of the fugitives many drowned, and the men that were besetting Joseph ran off and left him in safety.

At the end of the war Jacob continued his journey, unhindered, to his father Isaac.<sup>291</sup>



291. Midrash published by Schechter from a MS. in *Semitic Studies* (in memory of Kohut), 489–492. The text is not free from errors, and a few emendations may be given here. 490, line 19: read התחזק; *ibid.*, below: יללם יהודה; תשע שעות; 491, line 2: וכאשר ישב; *ibid.*, below: המלכים שאר or שאר המלכות. On Judah's gnashing his teeth with a frightful noise, see text on p. 385, and on the fleet-footed Naphtali text on pp. 291 and 314–315, as well as p. 340. Comp. the following note.

## THE WAR WITH THE AMORITES

At first the people that lived round about Shechem made no attempt to molest Jacob, who had returned thither after a while, together with his household, to take up his abode there and establish himself. But at the end of seven years the heathen began to harass him. The kings of the Amorites assembled together against the sons of Jacob to slay them in the Valley of Shechem. "Is it not enough," they said, "that they have slain all the men of Shechem? Should they be permitted now to take possession of their land, too?" and they advanced to render battle.

Judah leapt into the midst of the ranks of the foot soldiers of the allied kings, and slew first of all Jashub, the king of Tappuah, who was clad in iron and brass from top to toe. The king was mounted, and from his horse he cast his spears downward with both hands, in front of him and in back, without ever missing his aim, for he was a mighty warrior, and he could throw javelins with one hand or the other. Nevertheless Judah feared neither him nor his prowess. He ran toward him, snatching a stone of sixty sela'im from the ground and hurling it at him. Jashub was at a distance of one hundred and seventy-seven ells and one-third of an ell, and, protected with iron armor and throwing spears, he moved forward upon Judah. But Judah struck him on his shield with the stone, and unhorsed him. When the king

attempted to rise, Judah hastened to his side to slay him before he could get on his feet. But Jashub was nimble, he stood ready to attack Judah, shield to shield, and he drew his sword to cut off Judah's head. Quickly Judah raised his shield to catch the blow upon it, but it broke in pieces. What did Judah now? He wrested the shield of his opponent away from him, and swung his sword against Jashub's feet, cutting them off above the ankles. The king fell prostrate, his sword slipped from his grasp, and Judah hastened to him and severed his head from his body.

While Judah was removing the armor of his slain adversary, nine of Jashub's followers appeared. Judah slung a stone against the head of the first of them that approached him, with such force that he dropped his shield, which Judah snatched from the ground and used to defend himself against his eight assailants. His brother Levi came and stood next to him, and shot off an arrow that killed Elon, king of Gaash, and then Judah killed the eight men. And his father Jacob came and killed Zerori king of Shiloh. None of the heathen could prevail against these sons of Jacob, they had not the courage to stand up before them, but took to flight, and the sons of Jacob pursued after them, and each slew a thousand men of the Amorites on that day, before the going down of the sun. And the other sons of Jacob set forth from the Hill of Shechem, where they had taken up their stand, and they also pursued after them as far as Hazor. Before this city they had another severe encounter with the enemy, more severe than that in the Valley of Shechem. Jacob let his arrows fly, and slew Pirathon king of Hazor, and then Pasusi king of Sartan, Laban king of Aram, and Shebir king of Mahanaim.

Judah was the first to mount the walls of Hazor. As he approached the top, four warriors attacked him, but he slew them without stopping in his ascent, and before his brother Naphtali could bring him succor. Naphtali followed



him, and the two stood upon the wall, Judah to the right and Naphtali to the left, and thence they dealt out death to the warriors. The other sons of Jacob followed their two brothers in turn, and made an end of exterminating the heathen host on that day. They subjugated Hazor, slew the warriors thereof, let no man escape with his life, and despoiled the city of all therein.

On the day following they went to Sartan, and again a bloody battle took place. Sartan was situated upon high land, and the hill before the city was likewise very high, so that none could come near unto it, and also none could come near unto the citadel, because the wall thereof was high. Nevertheless they made themselves masters of the city. They scaled the walls of the citadel, Judah on the east side being the first to ascend, then Gad on the west side, Simon and Levi on the north, and Reuben and Dan on the south, and Naphtali and Issachar set fire to the hinges upon which the gates of the city were hung.

In the same way the sons of Jacob subdued five other cities, Tappuah, Arbel, Shiloh, Mahanaim, and Gaash, making an end of all of them in five days. On the sixth day all the Amorites assembled, and they came to Jacob and his sons unarmed, bowed down before them, and sued for peace. And the sons of Jacob made peace with the heathen, who ceded Timna to them, and all the land of Harariah. In that day also Jacob concluded peace with them, and they made restitution to the sons of Jacob for all the cattle they had taken, two head for one, and they restored all the spoil they had carried off. And Jacob turned to go to Timna, and Judah went to Arbel, and thenceforth the Amorites troubled them no more.<sup>292</sup>

292. Midrash Wa-Yissa'u, in Yalkut I, 132 (from there it is reprinted by Jellinek in BHM II, 1–5, who, it is to be regretted, did not make use of the first edition of the

Yalkut, and hence his text contains numerous errors). Yashar Wa-Yishlah, 70b–79b, embellished and amplified the narrative of Wa-Yissa'u, but had no other source for his verbose account of the war. Yerahmeel 36 agrees almost literally with Wa-Yissa'u, whereas Jub. 24. 4–9 and 12 Testament, Judah, contain only fragments of this legend. It is generally assumed that this legend has preserved many a reminiscence of the events of the Maccabean wars. This is quite likely; but one must not forget that the fabulist is only slightly interested in history. On the relation of Wa-Yissa'u to Jub. and Testaments the following may be stated. Instead of חצור in Yashar and Testaments, Wa-Yissa'u has חסר. This arouses the suspicion that the latter in its present form is a translation of a Greek or Latin text, which had no adequate transliteration of Hebrew צ. Sartan, “the great and strong fortress”, is undoubtedly identical with the “tower of Straton”, the old name of Caesarea, the conquest of which by the Maccabees is almost the only historical event of the Maccabean period known to the old rabbinic sources. Comp. Megillat Ta'anit 3 (beginning), and Megillah 6a. The orthography סרטן instead of סטרטון is not at all unusual; comp., e. g., אסרטא for אסטרטא “Strata”, and see further Krauss, *Lehnwörter*, s. v. שרשן. A play on words (סרטן is the Aramaic word for “cancer”) may have been intended. Instead of Gaash, Wa-Yissa'u has גועש, which is rather strange, as the use of ו to indicate a *Kamez gadol* is uncommon, and besides this the current vocalization of this word is געש and not געש. It is very doubtful whether Maani Sakir in Jub. is to be emended to Shakir Maani, since Wa-Yissa'u has מחנה שכיר (ed. Jellinek 2; in the first edition of Yalkut כ and ב are hardly distinguishable), which can scarcely be rendered by Camp Shakir. Isidao of Jub. is very likely identical with זידורי in Wa-Yissa'u, which is to be emended to זידורי, i. e., זיד ארור, “the curse villain”. פסוס is, of course, the same as talmudic פסיסא or פוסיסא, and the name of the place פרעתון (fortified by Jonathan the Maccabee; 1 Maccabees 9. 50) is given by the legend to a person. On the text of Wa-Yissa'u the following details may be noted: 1. 11 (in Jellinek) read חניתות (he could throw two spears at once); *ibid.* the first edition has לירות וא' perhaps לירות; 1. 21 read כידינו, and comp. 2 Sam. 23. 21; 1. 24 read והכהו על, and comp. Yashar, 72a, line 3; 2. 6 מתר is better than בחר; 2. 14 וכ' ושביר is an adaptation from Esther 9. 9, and this mosaic style is strong evidence of the lateness of this compilation; 2. 10; the first edition reads סרך ועלה, and comp. Baba Kamma 20a סריך סליק; 2. 17 וכתשה is hardly possible; *ibid.* Yashar misread תלה as חלה.—The medieval authors had, besides Wa-Yissa'u, other sources dealing with the wars of the sons of Jacob. Nahmanides, Gen. 34. 13, and R. Bahya, Gen. 36. 6, quote, from the “Book of the Wars of the Sons of Jacob” (R. Bahya's text is to be emended in accordance with Nahmanides, whom he very likely copies:



(בספר מלחמות בני יעקב), the legend that the Shechemites engaged in three great wars with the sons of Jacob, and if it were not for Jacob's valor, his sons would have perished. Zunz, *Gottesdienstliche Vorträge*, 145, identifies "the Book of the Wars, etc." with Wa-Yissa'u; but the quotation by Nahmanides and R. Bahya from the Sefer Milhamot is not found in Wa-Yissa'u, and therefore these two books are not identical. *Hadar*, Gen. 48. 22, quotes, from Sefer Milhamot Bene Ya'akob (the same as referred to by Nahmanides and R. Bahya?), the following account: The Shechemites (not Amorites as in Wa-Yissa'u) assembled to war against Jacob and his sons, but were vanquished. And on this occasion Naphtali the swift runner (comp. note 216 and Index, s. v. "Naphtali") carried Judah on his shoulders to the battle array (that is how this obscure passage is to be understood), who, assisted by his father and brothers, annihilated the enemy. When later the sons of Jacob belittled the assistance rendered them by their father, maintaining that he was too old to be of any value as a warrior, he convinced them of their error by his great feats of valor. The Sefer Milhamot referred to by Sabba, Wa-Yishlah, 46b, is very likely identical with Wa-Yissa'u, as his quotation from the former book agrees with the beginning of the latter. On the other hand, it is safe to assume that Tan. B. Introduction 127, does not go back to Wa-Yissa'u. Comp. notes 297 and 317.

## ISAAC BLESSES LEVI AND JUDAH

**I**f a man voweth a vow, and he does not fulfil it in good time, he will stumble through three grave sins, idolatry, unchastity, and bloodshed. Jacob had been guilty of not accomplishing promptly the vow he had taken upon himself at Beth-el, and therefore punishment overtook him—his daughter was dishonored, his sons slew men, and they kept the idols found among the spoils of Shechem.<sup>293</sup> Therefore, when Jacob prostrated himself before God after the bloody outrage at Shechem, He bade him arise, and go to Beth-el and accomplish the vow he had vowed there.<sup>294</sup> Before Jacob set out for the holy plan to do the bidding of God, he took the idols which were in the possession of his sons, and the teraphim which Rachel had stolen from her father, and he shivered them in pieces, and buried<sup>295</sup> the bits under an oak upon Mount Gerizim,<sup>296</sup> up-

rooting the tree with one hand, concealing the remains of the idols in the hollow left in the earth, and planting the oak again with one hand.<sup>297</sup>

Among the destroyed idols was one in the form of a dove, and this the Samaritans dug up later and worshipped.

On reaching Beth-el he erected an altar to the Lord, and on a pillar he set up the stone whereon he had rested his head during the night which he had passed there on his journey to Haran.<sup>298</sup> Then he bade his parents come to Beth-el and take part in his sacrifice. But Isaac sent him a message, saying, "O my son Jacob, that I might see thee before I die," whereupon Jacob hastened to his parents, taking Levi and Judah with him. When his grandchildren stepped before Isaac, the darkness that shrouded his eyes dropped away, and he said, "My son, are these thy children, for they resemble thee?" And the spirit of prophecy entered his mouth, and he grasped Levi with his right hand and Judah with his left in order to bless them, and he spoke these words to Levi: "May the Lord bring thee and thy seed nigh unto Him before all flesh, that ye serve in His sanctuary like the Angel of the Face and the Holy Angels. Princes, judges, and rulers shall they be unto all the seed of the children of Jacob. The word of God they will proclaim in righteousness, and all His judgments they will execute in justice, and they will make manifest His ways unto the children of Jacob, and unto Israel His paths." And unto Judah he spake, saying: "Be ye princes, thou and one of thy sons, over the sons of Jacob. In thee shall be the help of Jacob, and the salvation of Israel shall be found in thee. And when thou sittest upon the throne of the glory of thy justice, perfect peace shall reign over all the seed of the children of my beloved Abraham."

On the morrow, Isaac told his son that he would not accompany him to Beth-el on account of his great age, but he bade him not delay longer to fulfil his vow, and gave him permission to take



his mother Rebekah with him to the holy place. And Rebekah and her nurse Deborah went to Beth-el with Jacob.<sup>299</sup>

---

293. WR 37. 1; Tan. Wa-Yishlah 8; Tan. B. I, 173, 174; BR 81. 2. Rachel's death, which occurred about this time, is also attributed (in the above mentioned sources) to this sin of Jacob. On the encounter with the angel as a consequence of Jacob's delay in fulfilling his vow, compare with p. 300. See also text on p. 598 (bottom).

294. Tan. B. I, 174; WR 37. 1; Tan. Wa-Yishlah 8; BR 81. 2.

295. Jub. 31. 2. The ear-rings, which were worn by the Shechemites, and which, after the defeat of the latter, came into the possession of Jacob's sons, were adorned with pictures of idols; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 35. 4, which is very likely based on BR 81. 3. Comp. also Zohar I, 173a.

296. Yerushalmi 'Abodah Zarah 5, 44d; BR 81. 3. Comp. also Julius Africanus in Syncellus, *Chron.* 107, *al.* 86. Comp. note 298, and with footnote 5 on p. 855.

297. MHG I, 531. This passage also has the additional remark that this display of gigantic strength struck terror in the hearts of the Amorites, so that they gave up their intentions of undertaking a war against Jacob and his sons. On the war planned by the Amorites against Jacob, comp. note 289 and BR 82. 4. In the last-named passage it is said that the Amorites assembled for war at Hazor, and that is the reason why this city was later destroyed by Joshua (comp. Josh. 11. 13), who carried out the order given to him by Moses in accordance with the divine command. Midrash Aggada, Gen. 25. 2, reads: God caused the ground under the feet of the army assembled against Jacob to open as deep as the abyss, and a fire divided the heathen from Jacob and his sons, so that they were forced to abandon their plans. On Hazor comp. note 293.

298. Hullin 6a, and comp. Midrash quoted by Tosafot, *ad loc.*, (beginning בראש), which is not identical with any of the Midrashim cited in note 296. See also *Hadar*, Gen. 31. 4. On the pillar comp. Lekah, Gen. 35. 14;

299. Jub. 31. 3–32, and 32. 4–29. It is said there that Jacob erected this altar on the first of the seventh month (*i. e.*, on Rosh ha-Shanah), and offered sacrifices during eight successive days, from the fifteenth to the twenty-second (*i. e.*, eight days of Tabernacles). Also in rabbinic sources it is said that Jacob celebrated this festival and, according to some authorities, he was the originator thereof. See Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 35. 14, and Abudrahim, *Musaf Rosh ha-Shanah* (end). The last-named authority refers to Gen. 33. 17, where it is said that Jacob erected "booths".

## JOY AND SORROW IN THE HOUSE OF JACOB

Deborah, the nurse of Rebekah, and some of the servants of Isaac had been sent to Jacob by his mother, while he still abode with Laban, to summon him home at the end of his fourteen years' term of service. As Jacob did not at once obey his mother's behest, the two servants of Isaac returned to their master, but Deborah remained with Jacob then and always. Therefore, when Deborah died in Beth-el, Jacob mourned for her, and he buried her below Beth-el under the palm-tree,<sup>300</sup> the same under which the prophetess Deborah sat later, when the children of Israel came to her for judgment.<sup>301</sup>

But a short time elapsed after the death of the nurse Deborah, and Rebekah died, too. Her passing away was not made the occasion for public mourning. The reason was that, as Abraham was dead, Isaac blind, and Jacob away from home, there remained Esau as the only mourner to appear in public and represent her family, and beholding that villain, it was feared, might tempt a looker-on to cry out, "Accursed be the breasts that gave thee suck." To avoid this, the burial of Rebekah took place at night.

God appeared unto Jacob to comfort him in his grief,<sup>302</sup> and with Him appeared the heavenly family. It was a sign of grace, for all the while the sons of Jacob had been carrying idols with them the Lord had not revealed Himself to Jacob.<sup>303</sup> At this time God announced to Jacob the birth of Benjamin soon to occur, and the birth of Manasseh and Ephraim, who also were to be founders of tribes, and furthermore He told him that these three would count kings among their descendants, Saul and Ish-bosheth, of the seed of Benjamin, Jeroboam the Ephraimite, and Jehu of the tribe of Manasseh. In this vision, God confirmed the change of his name from Jacob to



Israel, promised him by the angel with whom he had wrestled on entering the Holy Land, and finally God revealed to him that he would be the last of the three with whose names the Name of God would appear united, for God is called only the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and never the God of any one else.<sup>304</sup>

In token of this revelation from God, Jacob set up a pillar of stone, and he poured out a drink offering thereon, as in a later day the priests were to offer libations in the Temple on the Feast of Tabernacles,<sup>305</sup> and the libation brought by Jacob at Beth-el was as much as all the waters in the Sea of Tiberias.<sup>306</sup>

At the time when Deborah and Rebekah died, occurred also the death of Rachel, at the age of thirty-six,<sup>307</sup> but not before her prayer was heard, that she bear Jacob a second son, for she died in giving birth to Benjamin. Twelve years she had borne no child, then she fasted twelve days, and her petition was granted her. She brought forth the youngest son of Jacob, whom he called Benjamin, the son of days, because he was born in his father's old age,<sup>308</sup> and with him a twin sister was born.<sup>309</sup>

Rachel was buried in the way to Ephrath, because Jacob, gifted with prophetic spirit, foresaw that the exiles would pass this place on their march to Babylon, and as they passed, Rachel would entreat God's mercy for the poor outcasts.<sup>310</sup>

Jacob journeyed on to Jerusalem.<sup>311</sup>

During Rachel's lifetime, her couch had always stood in the tent of Jacob. After her death, he ordered the couch of her handmaid Bilhah to be carried thither. Reuben was sorely vexed thereat, and he said, "Not enough that Rachel alive curtailed the rights of my mother, she must needs give her annoyance also after death!" He went and took the couch of his mother Leah and placed it in Jacob's tent instead of Bilhah's couch.<sup>312</sup>

Reuben's brothers learned of his disrespectful act from Asher. He had found it out in one way or another, and had told it to his brethren, who ruptured their relations with him, for they would have nothing to do with an informer, and they did not become reconciled with Asher until Reuben himself confessed his transgression.<sup>313</sup> For it was not long before Reuben recognized that he had acted reprehensibly toward his father, and he fasted and put on sackcloth, and repented of his misdeed. He was the first among men to do penance, and therefore God said to him: "Since the beginning of the world it hath not happened that a man hath sinned and then repented thereof. Thou art the first to do penance, and as thou livest, a prophet of thy seed, Hosea, shall be the first to proclaim, 'O Israel, return.'"<sup>314</sup>

---

300. Yashar Wa-Yeze, 57b–58a, and Wa-Yishlah, 69a. The similar Haggadah quoted in Rashi and Lekah on Gen. 35. 8 goes back to R. Moses ha-Darshan. Comp. Epstein, *R. Mosheh ha-Darshan*, 16. See also MHG I, 532, and note 204.

301. *Da'at*, *Hadar*, and *Pa'aneah* on Gen. 35. 8 from a Midrash on Jud. 4. 5. Jub. 32. 30, reads: Jacob called Deborah's burial-place "the river of Deborah", and the oak, under which the grave was, "the oak of the mourners of Deborah". The text is hardly correct; one cannot understand why a burial-place should be called a river. It is very likely that we have here a mistranslation of the Hebrew original, which read נַחַל דְּבוֹרָה "the valley of Deborah". But owing to the different meanings of the word נַחַל the translator rendered it by "river". Compare with footnote 12 on p. 169.

302. PK 3, 23b–24a; PR 12, 48b; Tan. B. I, 176, and V, 36; Tan. Ki-Teze 4; BR 81. 5 and 82. 1; Koheleth 7. 2; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 35. 8; Yashar, Wa-Yishlah, 69a–69b. Contrary to this view of the old rabbinic sources, Yashar, in agreement with Jub. 35. 27, maintains that Rebekah died before Deborah. Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, I, 22. 1, which reads: Rebekah died before Jacob returned home. Rebekah's age at the time of her death was 155. See note 4, according to Jub., but 133, according to Yashar. See also the unknown midrashic source in MHG I, 770. In the Tanhumas and Pesiktas, *loc. cit.*, Deborah is described as Jacob's nurse, which is not to be emended to the nurse of Rebekah (to make it agree with Gen. 35. 8). These Midrashim understand the expression מִיִּנְיַת רִבְקָה Gen



*l. c.* to mean “the nurse whom Rebekah employed for her children”.

303. MHG I, 533; comp. Schechter, *ad loc.*, and note 215. Contrary to the view of MHG, Tan. B. IV, 19, and Tan. Bemidbar 19 which state that God and His “family” (=court) appeared to Jacob at Beth-el, BR 82. 4 explicitly states that it was only an angel who appeared to Jacob at Beth-el on his return from Mesopotamia. On the parallels between the history of Abraham and that of Jacob, see MHG I, 534–536, and parallel passages cited by Schechter, as well as Makiri, Ps. 61. 311, whose source is not Yelammedenu, as Buber maintains, but Tan. B. I, 176.

304. BR 82. 2–4; Tan. B. I, 176. On the joining of the name of God to those of the three patriarchs, compare with pp. 451, 503, 510 and 1165. See also the lengthy discussion on this point in Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 295, note 2. See also Philo, *Mut. Nomin.*, 2, which reads: The Lord God of three natures (of instruction, of holiness, and of the practice of justice) of which Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob are recorded as the symbols. The same thought is expressed more elaborately in *De Somniis*, 1. 27. Comp. note 227.

305. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 35. 14. Comp. 299.

306. BR 78. 16.

307. Seder ‘Olam 2. This passage also states that Leah, the twin-sister of Rachel, died at the age of forty-four. Comp. Ratner, *ad loc.*, and MHG I, 538–539. According to Yashar, Wa-Yishlah, 69b, Rachel died at the age of forty-five at the same time when her father Laban died, as a punishment for breaking the covenant he had made with Jacob.

308. 12 Testaments, Benjamin 1; Lekah, Gen. 35. 18. Yashar Wa-Yishlah, 69b, and Rashi, Gen. *loc. cit.*, explain the name Benjamin as “son of the south”. Jacob’s youngest son was so called because he was the only one of his children who was born in the south, Palestine, whereas all the others were born in the north (Mesopotamia). Jub. 32. 33 states that Benjamin was born at night. This is very likely a midrashic explanation of Benjamin as “son of days” (=ימים בן) (ימים), which is taken to stand antiphrastically. Comp. Philo, *Mut. Nomin.*, 15, who likewise connects this name with ימים “days”. The etymology of this name in BR 80. 11 is obscure. See also text on p. 679 (bottom).

309. BR 82. 8, which states that each of the other sons of Jacob was born with one twin-sister, Benjamin with two. Comp. note 170. Baba Batra 123a objects to the idea of “twin-sisters”, and admits it only in the case of Dinah. See, however, Jub. 33. 22, which reads: Dinah the only daughter of Jacob.

310. BR 82. 10. Compare with p. 403, and text on p. 1080. Jacob buried Rachel immediately after she died, and did not take her body to the family burial-place, because it is not proper to transport the corpses of women,

especially those who died during child-birth. See Yerushalmi Mo’ed Katan 3, end and Babli 27b–28a; Responsum by R. Hai Gaon in *Sha’are Simbah* II, 73. Comp. also R. Bahya, Gen. 35. 19, and Lekah, 35. 8. Each of Jacob’s sons took a stone and put it on the grave and these twelve stones make up Rachel’s tomb; Lekah 35, 20.

311. Targum Yerushalmi, Lekah, and Jerome on Gen. 35. 21. Comp. also Targum Yerushalmi, Rashi, Ibn Ezra, and Kimhi on Micah 4. 8.

312. BR 98. 4; Tan. B. I, 218; Shabbat 55b (the “confusion caused to the Shekinah” spoken of in this passage is to be explained in accordance with the haggadah about the Shekinah dwelling with husband and wife, if their union is holy; compare with pp. 65–66). See also Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 35. 22; Yashar Wa-Yishlah, 69b; *Shitah Hadashah*, 2 (after Leah’s death Jacob placed Bilhah upon the couch of his deceased wife, *i. e.*, made her his principal wife); *Hadar*, Gen. 35. 22. Reuben sought, by some manipulation, (the same as mentioned in Gittin 57a; compare also with notes 130 and 340 on p. 357 and 398 respectively), to throw suspicion on Bilhah’s purity, in order to separate her from his father. Jacob, however, found out that he had no cause to suspect her. See also Zohar I, 175b and 176a. The pseudepigraphic writers make no attempt to exculpate Reuben; compare with text on pp. 435–436 and footnote 382 on p. 406.

313. Sifre D., 355; Midrash Tannaim 220.

314. BR 84. 19; PK 25, 159b; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 37. 29. Compare with footnote 60 on p. 339 and footnote 40 on p. 333.

## ESAU’S CAMPAIGN AGAINST JACOB

When Isaac felt his end approaching, he called his two sons to him, and charged them with his last wish and will, and gave them his blessing. He said: “I adjure you by the exalted Name, the praised, honored, glorious, immutable, and mighty One, who hath made heaven and earth and all things together, that ye fear Him, and serve Him, and each shall love his brother in mercy and justice, and none wish evil unto the other, now and henceforth unto all eternity, all the days of your life, that ye may enjoy good fortune in all your undertakings, and that ye perish not.”



Furthermore he commanded them to bury him in the Cave of Machpelah, by the side of his father Abraham, in the grave which he had dug for himself with his own hands. Then he divided his possessions between his two sons, giving Esau the larger portion, and Jacob the smaller. But Esau said, "I sold my birthright to Jacob, and I ceded it to him, and it belongs unto him." Isaac rejoiced greatly that Esau acknowledged the rights of Jacob of his own accord, and he closed his eyes in peace.<sup>315</sup>

The funeral of Isaac was not disturbed by any unseemly act, for Esau was sure of his heritage in accordance with the last wishes expressed by his father. But when the time came to divide Isaac's possessions between the two brothers, Esau said to Jacob, "Divide the property of our father into two portions, but I as the elder claim the right of choosing the portion I desire." What did Jacob do? He knew well that "the eye of the wicked never beholds treasures enough to satisfy it," so he divided their common heritage in the following way: all the material possessions of his father formed one portion, and the other consisted of Isaac's claim upon the Holy Land, together with the Cave of Machpelah, the tomb of Abraham and Isaac. Esau chose the money and the other things belonging to Isaac for his inheritance, and to Jacob were left the Cave and the title to the Holy Land. An agreement to this effect was drawn up in writing in due form, and on the strength of the document Jacob insisted upon Esau's leaving Palestine. Esau acquiesced, and he and his wives and his sons and daughters journeyed to Mount Seir, where they took up their abode.<sup>316</sup>

Though Esau gave way before Jacob for the nonce, he returned to the land to make war upon his brother. Leah had just died, and Jacob and the sons borne by Leah were mourning for her, and the rest of his sons, borne unto him by his other wives, were trying to comfort them, when

Esau came upon them with a powerful host of four thousand men, well equipped for war, clad in armor of iron and brass, all furnished with bucklers, bows, and swords. They surrounded the citadel wherein Jacob and his sons dwelt at that time with their servants and children and households, for they had all assembled to console Jacob for the death of Leah, and they sat there unconcerned, none entertained a suspicion that an assault upon them was meditated by any man. And the great army had already encircled their castle, and still none within suspected any harm, neither Jacob and his children nor the two hundred servants. Now when Jacob saw that Esau presumed to make war upon them, and sought to slay them in the citadel, and was shooting darts at them, he ascended the wall of the citadel and spake words of peace and friendship and brotherly love to Esau. He said: "Is this the consolation which thou hast come to bring me, to comfort me for my wife, who hath been taken by death? Is this in accordance with the oath thou didst swear twice unto thy father and thy mother before they died? Thou hast violated thy oath, and in the hour when thou didst swear unto thy father, thou wast judged." But Esau made reply: "Neither the children of men nor the beasts of the field swear an oath to keep it unto all eternity, but on every day they devise evil against one another, when it is directed against an enemy, or when they seek to slay an adversary. If the boar will change his skin and make his bristles as soft as wool, or if he can cause horns to sprout forth on his head like the horns of a stag or a ram, then shall I observe the tie of brotherhood with thee."

Then spoke Judah to his father Jacob, saying: "How long wilt thou stand yet wasting words of peace and friendship upon him? And he attacks us unawares, like an enemy, with his mail-clad warriors, seeking to slay us." Hearing these words, Jacob grasped his bow and killed Adoram the



Edomite, and a second time he bent his bow, and the arrow struck Esau upon the right thigh. The wound was mortal, and his sons lifted Esau up and put him upon his ass, and he came to Adora, and there he died.

Judah made a sally to the south of the citadel, and with him were Naphtali and Gad, aided by fifty of Jacob's servants; to the east Levi and Dan went forth with fifty servants; Reuben, Issachar, and Zebulon with fifty servants, to the north; and Simon, Benjamin, and Enoch, the last the son of Reuben, with fifty servants, to the west. Judah was exceedingly brave in battle. Together with Naphtali and Gad he pressed forward into the ranks of the enemy, and captured one of their iron towers. On their bucklers they caught the sharp missiles hurled against them in such numbers that the light of the sun was darkened by reason of the rocks and darts and stones. Judah was the first to break the ranks of the enemy, of whom he killed six valiant men, and he was accompanied on the right by Naphtali and by Gad on the left. They also hewed down two soldiers each, while their troop of servants killed one man each. Nevertheless they did not succeed in forcing the army away from the south of the citadel, not even when all together, Judah and his brethren, made an united attack upon the enemy, each of them picking out a victim and slaying him. And they were still unsuccessful in a third combined attack, though this time each killed two men.

When Judah saw now that the enemy remained in possession of the field, and it was impossible to dislodge them, he girded himself with strength, and an heroic spirit animated him. Judah, Naphtali, and Gad united, and together they pierced the ranks of the enemy, Judah slaying ten of them, and his brothers each eight. Seeing this, the servants took courage, and they joined their leaders and fought at their side. Judah laid about him to right and to left, always

aided by Naphtali and Gad, and so they succeeded in forcing the enemy one ris further to the south, away from the citadel. But the hostile army recovered itself, and maintained a brave stand against all the sons of Jacob, who were faint from the hardships of the combat, and could not continue to fight. Thereupon Judah turned to God in prayer, and God hearkened unto his petition, and He helped them. He set loose a storm from one of His treasure chambers, and it blew into the faces of the enemy, and filled their eyes with darkness, and they could not see how to fight. But Judah and his brothers could see clearly, for the wind blew upon their backs. Now Judah and his two brothers wrought havoc among them, they hewed the enemy down as the reaper mows down the stalks of grain and heaps them up for sheaves.

After they had routed the division of the army assigned to them on the south, they hastened to the aid of their brothers, who were defending the east, north, and west of the citadel with three companies. On each side the wind blew into the faces of the enemy, and so the sons of Jacob succeeded in annihilating their army. Four hundred were slain in battle, and six hundred fled, among the latter Esau's four sons, Reuel, Jeush, Lotan, and Korah. The oldest of his sons, Eliphaz, took no part in the war, because he was a disciple of Jacob, and therefore would not bear arms against him.

The sons of Jacob pursued after the fleeing remnant of the army as far as Adora. There the sons of Esau abandoned the body of their father, and continued their flight to Mount Seir. But the sons of Jacob remained in Adora over night, and out of respect for their father they buried the remains of his brother Esau. In the morning they went on in pursuit of the enemy, and besieged them on Mount Seir. Now the sons of Esau and all the other fugitives came and fell down before them, bowed down, and entreated them without



cease, until they concluded peace with them. But the sons of Jacob exacted tribute from them.<sup>317</sup>

315. Jub. 36. 1–8. Comp. the following note.

316. PRE 38; MHG I, 541; Yashar Wa-Yishlah, 92a–93a (it seems to have made use of Jub. 36. 1–8, which legend was blended with that of the rabbinic sources); Makiri, Prov. 28, 78a–79a. Esau made his choice at the advice of Ishmael (PRE), or Nebajoth (Yashar). God rewarded Esau for departing from Jacob, and gave him one hundred cities in Seir; PRE, *loc. cit.*, and ER 13, 65. This is very likely mid-rashic Haggadah on עירם (Gen. 36. 43), which is explained as עיר “city”, and מאה=מ “hundred”. Comp. Menahot 43b, below and Sanhedrin 7a: מדון מאה דיני. One feels inclined to assume that PRE is dependent upon ER, as the latter is extremely fond of the number one hundred; comp. 10, 54; 18, 106 and 107; 19, 113; 22, 121; 23, 124; EZ 9, 189. According to this Midrash, Esau withdrew to Seir only for a time, until Jacob and his descendants have paid the “debt of Abraham” by serving the Egyptians; compare with MHG I, 542 and 551, as well as notes 156, 234, and footnotes 138 on p. 578. Zohar I, 177a, and Lekah, Gen. 25. 29, maintain (on the basis of Baba Batra 16b) that at the burial of Isaac, Esau did not recognize Jacob’s superiority, but claimed his birthright, and thus broke his oath with which he confirmed the sale of his rights to Jacob. There are three legends which attempt to explain Israel’s exclusive right to the Holy Land and the cave of Machpelah. One dwells upon the fact that Esau, in selling his birthright to Jacob, renounced his claim to these two possessions (compare with p. 258); the second maintains that Jacob, on his return from Mesopotamia, acquired all claims from his brother; compare with pp. 303–304, and the notes appertaining thereto, as well as Yelammedenu in Sikli (published by Poznanski, from a MS., in *Ha-Zofeh*, III, 20), where it is stated that on this occasion the brothers drew up an agreement to abide by the wish of Isaac as expressed in his blessings, to wit, that Jacob should inherit the world to come and Esau this world. The third legend justifies Israel’s claim to Palestine on the ground that Esau, in emigrating to Seir, gave up his right to the land of his fathers; comp. the sources cited at the beginning of this note, as well as BR 82. 13 and 84. 1; Koheleth 9, 18; Yelammedenu in Sikli, *loc. cit.*; Wa-Yissa’u (end). Comp. the following note.

317. Wa-Yissa’u in Yalkut I, 132=Jellinek in BHM III, 1, *seq.* Comp. note 292. Later additions to the original contents of Wa-Yissa’u, dealing exclusively with the war, are the introductory parts which were taken over verbatim from BR 82. 13, and the passages introduced by ויש אומרים (taken from Sotah 13a), as well as the sentence explaining Joseph’s absence from the war. The text is far from faultless, and the

following emendations may be recorded here. 4, 9 (in Jellinek’s reprint) read בכסל 5, 15 ושעמהם as in 18 (where the first edition has correctly וכל) and as demanded by the context; 5, 20 read למלחמה ונפלו נגדם לעומדים נגדם. Yerahmeel, 37, literally agrees with the text of Wa-Yissa’u in Yalkut, whereas Jub. 37 and 38 has a different version of the account of the war against Esau, only a fragment of which has been preserved in 12 Testaments, Judah 9. In contrast to Jub. 37. 9 and 38, where Adoram is described as an Aramean, he is correctly called the Edomite in Wa-Yissa’u, since this legendary figure owes his existence to the Edomite city Adorah (in Wa-Yissa’u corrupted to אדורין), where Esau was buried. The faulty text of Jub. is due to misreading ארמי as אדמי. In accordance with Testament of Judah, where the assault on the enemy’s citadel by Judah is the most important event in this war (it is very likely modelled upon the war against the Amorites; compare with pp. 314–316), the passage in Wa-Yissa’u 4, 16, is to be translated: Judah entered the rampart (=חיל; see note 292), and took the iron tower by storm.—The conversation between Jacob and Esau is given in the text in accordance with Jub., *loc. cit.*, which, it seems, is in need of emendation. Read: “Neither the children of men, nor the beasts of the field keep, etc.”, instead of “swear an oath”. The Hebrew original probably had לא יקימו האנשים, which the author employed in the sense of “keep an oath”, as in classical Hebrew; but the translator took this phrase in the sense used in Aramaic and later Hebrew, and hence rendered it by “swear”. The statement of Sabba, Wa-Yishlah, 45a, that the Midrash describing the wars between Jacob and Esau (the ב of במלחמות shows that מלחמות is not the title of the book; comp. note 292), speaks of a sudden attack by the latter on the former, very likely refers to Wa-Yissa’u. In view of the fact that Sabba himself admits that he quotes from memory, the difference between his text and that of Wa-Yissa’u (as, e. g., מגדל in Sabba instead of בירה in Wa-Yissa’u) may be disregarded. Brüll, *Jahrbücher*, IX, 8, note 3, is to be corrected accordingly. For another legend about Esau’s death, see Sotah 13a, and text on p. 414. A later hand added this account to the original composition of Wa-Yissa’u. That this section did not form part of the original may be seen from the introductory words ויש אומרים.

## THE DESCENDANTS OF ESAU

The worthiest among the sons of Esau was his first-born Eliphaz. He had been raised under the eyes of his grandfather Isaac, from whom he had learnt the pious way of life.<sup>318</sup> The



Lord had even found him worthy of being endowed with the spirit of prophecy, for Eliphaz the son of Esau is none other than the prophet Eliphaz, the friend of Job. It was from the life of the Patriarchs that he drew the admonitions which he gave unto Job in his disputes with him. Eliphaz spake: "Thou didst ween thyself the equal of Abraham, and thou didst marvel, therefore, that God should deal with thee as with the generation of the confusion of tongues. But Abraham stood the test of ten temptations, and thou faintest when but one toucheth thee. When any that was not whole came to thee, thou wouldst console him. To the blind thou wouldst say, If thou didst build thyself a house, thou wouldst surely put windows in it, and if God hath denied thee light, it is but that He may be glorified through thee in the day when 'the eyes of the blind shall be opened.' To the deaf thou wouldst say, If thou didst fashion a water pitcher, thou wouldst surely not forget to make ears for it, and if God created thee without hearing, it is but that He may be glorified through thee in the day when 'the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.' In such wise thou didst endeavor to console the feeble and the maimed. But now it is come unto thee, and thou art troubled. Thou sayest, I am an upright man, why doth He chastise me? But who, I pray thee, ever perished, being innocent? Noah was saved from the flood, Abraham from the fiery furnace, Isaac from the slaughtering knife, Jacob from angels, Moses from the sword of Pharaoh, and Israel from the Egyptians that were drowned in the Sea. Thus shall all the wicked fare."

Job answered Eliphaz, and said, "Look at thy father Esau!"

But Eliphaz returned: "I have nothing to do with him, the son should not bear the iniquity of the father. Esau will be destroyed, because he executed no good deeds, and likewise his dukes will perish. But as for me, I am a prophet, and my

message is not unto Esau, but unto thee, to make thee render account of thyself." But God rebuked Eliphaz, and said: "Thou didst speak harsh words unto My servant Job. Therefore shall Obadiah, one of thy descendants, utter a prophecy of denunciation against thy father's house, the Edomites."<sup>319</sup>

The concubine of Eliphaz was Timna, a princess of royal blood, who had asked to be received into the faith of Abraham and his family, but they all, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, had rejected her, and she said, "Rather will I be a maidservant unto the dregs of this nation, than mistress of another nation," and so she was willing to be concubine to Eliphaz. To punish the Patriarchs for the affront they had offered her, she was made the mother of Amalek, who inflicted great injury upon Israel.<sup>320</sup>

Another one of Esau's descendants, Anah, had a most unusual experience. Once when he was pasturing his father's asses in the wilderness, he led them to one of the deserts on the shores of the Red Sea, opposite the wilderness of the nations, and while he was feeding the beasts, a very heavy storm came from the other side of the sea, and the asses could not move. Then about one hundred and twenty great and terrible animals came out from the wilderness at the other side of the sea, and they all came to the place where the asses were, and they placed themselves there. From the middle down, these animals were in the shape of a man, and from the middle up some had the likeness of bears, some of apes, and they all had tails behind them like the tail of the dukipat, from between their shoulders reaching down to the earth. The animals mounted the asses, and they rode away with them, and unto this day no eye hath seen them. One of them approached Anah, and smote him with its tail, and then ran off.

When Anah saw all this, he was exceedingly afraid on account of his life, and he fled to the



city, where he related all that had happened to him. Many sallied forth to seek the asses, but none could find them. Anah and his brothers went no more to the same place from that day forth, for they were greatly afraid on account of their lives.<sup>321</sup>

This Anah was the offspring of an incestuous marriage; his mother was at the same time the mother of his father Zibeon. And as he was born of an unnatural union, so he tried to bring about unnatural unions among animals. He was the first to mix the breed of the horse and the ass and produce the mule. As a punishment, God crossed the snake and the lizard, and they brought forth the ḥabarbar, whose bite is certain death, like the bite of the white she-mule.<sup>322</sup>

The descendants of Esau had eight kings before there reigned any king over the descendants of Jacob. But a time came when the Jews had eight kings during whose reign the Edomites had none and were subject to the Jewish kings. This was the time that intervened between Saul, the first Israelitish king, who ruled over Edom, and Jehoshaphat, for Edom did not make itself independent of Jewish rule until the time of Joram, the son of Jehoshaphat. There was a difference between the kings of Esau's seed and the kings of Jacob's seed. The Jewish people always produced their kings from their own midst, while the Edomites had to go to alien peoples to secure theirs.<sup>323</sup> The first Edomite king was the Aramean Balaam,<sup>324</sup> called Bela in his capacity as ruler of Edom. His successor Job, called Jobab also, came from Bozrah, and for furnishing Edom with a king this city will be chastised in time to come. When God sits in judgment on Edom, Bozrah will be the first to suffer punishment.<sup>325</sup>

The rule of Edom was of short duration, while the rule of Israel will be unto all times, for the standard of the Messiah shall wave forever and ever.<sup>326</sup>

318. Tan. B. I, 108; DR 2. 20; MHG I, 524. Wa-Yissa'u (end) is accordingly to be emended to יצחק instead of יעקב. On Eliphaz compare further with pp. 274–275 and 281, as well as text on p. 582. Hasidim 19 reads: Jacob had a Bet ha-Midrash which was attended even by the sons of Esau. This is perhaps based on Wa-Yissa'u (end), where, according to our text, Eliphaz is considered a pupil of Jacob. Comp. the following note.

319. Tan. B. I, 104 and 166; Aggadat Bereshit 55, 110–114; Tan. B. I, 108. See also Makiri, Obadiah (end), and *Ma'yan Gannim* 4. 1, both of whom very likely made use of Aggadat Bereshit, and not of an unknown Midrash on Job, as maintained by Wertheimer, *Leket Midrashim*, 5. The identity of Job's friend Eliphaz with Esau's son bearing the same name is maintained also by Jerome, Gen. 36. 10. Compare with notes 31–32 on p. 459. BR 82. 12 (see also MHG I, 54), on the contrary, asserts that Eliphaz was very wicked and had unchaste relations with his father's wife, who bore him children.

320. Sanhedrin 99b; MHG I, 542; Yashar, Wa-Yishlah, 70a. BR 80. 14, on the contrary, says: As a reward for the honor which Esau paid to his father, he was so highly esteemed by his contemporaries that princesses considered it a great honor to become related to his house by marriage. From this one may infer the great respect enjoyed by Jacob who was by far his brother's superior. Comp. BaR 14. 10; also footnote 138 on p. 578.

321. Yashar Wa-Yishlah, 70a. Similarly Zohar I, 188a–188b, reads: Anah met demons in the desert, the place where evil spirits dwell.

322. Yerushalmi Berakot 8, 12b; BR 80. 15; Pesahim 54a. Zohar I, 188b, combines this view on הימים (Gen. 36. 24) with the one given in the preceding note. Jerome, Gen. *l. c.*, offers three explanations of הימים communicated to him by his Jewish masters. According to one, it refers to the mules which Eliphaz produced by crossing the horse with the ass, or rather by observing these animals mating with one another. The other explanation considers הימים to be identical with המים “wells of water”. The third view refers it to the hot springs (חמים) which he found. Onkelos and Lekah on Gen. *l. c.*, take הימים in the sense of האמים “the awful beings” (comp. Hullin 6a), and Ephraim, I, 105 E, shares this view, whereas Targum Yerushalmi, *ad loc.*, agrees with Pesahim, *loc. cit.* This talmudic reference records also another opinion, according to which Adam crossed the horse with the ass.—The Haggadah finds in the names of Esau and his descendants and in those of their dwelling-places hints at their wicked and impious mode of life. See BR 82. 4; PRE 38 (this is the source of Rashi, Gen. 36. 43), and in amplified form, Sekel 1, 207–212 (based on an unknown midrashic source). Comp. also Tan. Wa-Yesheb 1; Shabbat 85a, and MHG I, 542, where



it is stated that the inhabitants of Seir were great experts in agriculture.

323. BR 83. 1–2; MHG I, 546 and 547–548. On foreigners as kings of Edom (Rome), see also Hullin 56b; ShR 37. 1; BaR 14. 10 (Bela, Jobab, and Husham were the only Edomites, while the other kings were foreigners); text on p. 416. Just as the Romans (Edomites) had no kings of their own, even so they had to borrow their language and script from other nations; comp. 'Abodah Zarah 10a; Yerushalmi Megillah 1. 71c; Esther 1. 22; Targum 1 Chron. 1.

43; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 36. 32; Krauss, *Lehnwörter*, s. v. בורגין.

324. Targum 1 Chron. 1. 43; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 36. 32. Comp. also *Monatsschrift*, XLIV, 35, as well as Ginzberg, *Haggadah bei den Kirchenv.*, 123. According to BaR 14. 10 Bela is a surname of Esau; comp. the preceding note.

325. BR 83. 3. On the view that Job=Jobab, compare with footnote 3 on p. 451.

326. MHG I, 548.







## VII JOSEPH

### THE FAVORITE SON

Jacob was not exempt from the lot that falls to the share of all the pious. Whenever they expect to enjoy life in tranquillity, Satan hinders them. He appears before God, and says: "Is it not enough that the future world is set apart for the pious? What right have they to enjoy this world, besides?" After the many hardships and conflicts that had beset the path of Jacob, he thought he would be at rest at last, and then came the loss of Joseph and inflicted the keenest suffering. Verily, few and evil had been the days of the years of Jacob's pilgrimage, for the time spent outside of the Holy Land had seemed joyless to him. Only the portion of his life passed in the land of his fathers, during which he was occupied with making proselytes, in accordance with the example set him by Abraham and Isaac, did he consider worth while having lived,<sup>1</sup> and this happy time was of short duration. When Joseph was snatched away, but eight years had elapsed since his return to his father's house.<sup>2</sup>

And yet it was only for the sake of Joseph that Jacob had been willing to undergo all the troubles and the adversity connected with his sojourn in the house of Laban. Indeed, Jacob's blessing in having his quiver full of children was

due to the merits of Joseph, and likewise the dividing of the Red Sea and of the Jordan for the Israelites was the reward for his son's piety. For among the sons of Jacob Joseph was the one that resembled his father most closely in appearance, and, also, he was the one to whom Jacob transmitted the instruction and knowledge he had received from his teachers Shem and Eber.<sup>3</sup> The whole course of the son's life is but a repetition of the father's. As the mother of Jacob remained childless for a long time after her marriage, so also the mother of Joseph. As Rebekah had undergone severe suffering in giving birth to Jacob, so Rachel in giving birth to Joseph. As Jacob's mother bore two sons, so also Joseph's mother. Like Jacob, Joseph was born circumcised. As the father was a shepherd, so the son. As the father served for the sake of a woman, so the son served under a woman. Like the father, the son appropriated his older brother's birthright. The father was hated by his brother, and the son was hated by his brethren. The father was the favorite son as compared with his brother, so was the son as compared with his brethren. Both the father and the son lived in the land of the stranger. The father became a servant to a master, also the son. The master whom the father served was blessed by God, so was the master whom the son served.



The father and the son were both accompanied by angels, and both married their wives outside of the Holy Land. The father and the son were both blessed with wealth. Great things were announced to the father in a dream, so also to the son. As the father went to Egypt and put an end to famine, so the son. As the father exacted the promise from his sons to bury him in the Holy Land, so also the son. The father died in Egypt, there died also the son. The body of the father was embalmed, also the body of the son. As the father's remains were carried to the Holy Land for interment, so also the remains of the son. Jacob the father provided for the sustenance of his son Joseph during a period of seventeen years, so Joseph the son provided for his father Jacob during a period of seventeen years.<sup>4</sup>

Until he was seventeen years old, Joseph frequented the Bet ha-Midrash,<sup>5</sup> and he became so learned that he could impart to his brethren the Halakot he had heard from his father, and in this way he may be regarded as their teacher.<sup>6</sup> He did not stop at formal instruction, he also tried to give them good counsel, and he became the favorite of the sons of the handmaids, who would kiss and embrace him.<sup>7</sup>

In spite of his scholarship there was something boyish about Joseph. He painted his eyes, dressed his hair carefully, and walked with a mincing step. These foibles of youth were not so deplorable as his habit of bringing evil reports of his brethren to his father. He accused them of treating the beasts under their care with cruelty—he said that they ate flesh torn from a living animal—and he charged them with casting their eyes upon the daughters of the Canaanites, and giving contemptuous treatment to the sons of the handmaids Bilhah and Zilpah, whom they called slaves.

For these groundless accusations Joseph had to pay dearly. He was himself sold as a slave, because he had charged his brethren with having

called the sons of the handmaids slaves, and Potiphar's wife cast her eyes upon Joseph, because he threw the suspicion upon his brethren that they had cast their eyes upon the Canaanitish women. And how little it was true that they were guilty of cruelty to animals appears from the fact that at the very time when they were contemplating their crime against Joseph, they yet observed all the rules and prescriptions of the ritual in slaughtering the kid of the goats with the blood of which they besmeared his coat of many colors.<sup>8</sup>

---

1. BR 84. 2–4; MHG I, 552–553. On the conception that the life of the pious is a pilgrimage, see Tan. B. I, 179; Aggadat Bereshit 57, 117; and footnotes 327, 240 on p. 229. Concerning Abraham's proselytizing activity, see text on p. 187. On Isaac's activity in this direction, see R. Bahya on Gen. 26. 15.

2. Seder 'Olam 2. During this short period, however, his life was very happy (Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 2. 1), especially from the moment Esau emigrated from the Holy Land (Tan. B. I, 178; MHG I, 541–542), so that Jacob could live at his father's place in Hebron (MHG I, 553–554), and discharge his filial duties, which he had been compelled to neglect for twenty-two years; see Seder 'Olam, *loc. cit.*

3. BR 84. 5 and 87. 8; Mekilta Beshallah 3, 29b; Mekilta RS 48 (an entire sentence, which fell out through a homoioteleuton, is to be restored in accordance with the text of our Mekilta, *loc. cit.*); Tan. Wa-Yesheb 9; Pekude 11; Naso 30; Tan. B. I, 179 and 188, as well as 206, and IV, 45; Tehillim 114, 475, and 20, 175 (which reads: The final redemption will take place on account of the merits of Joseph; see also MHG I, 544); Yelammedenu in 'Aruk, s. v. זקן; Zohar I, 180a, 182b, and 222a; II, 49a and 230b; III, 214a; 12 Testaments, Joseph 18 (according to Jub. 21, 9, it was Levi and Judah, not Joseph, who resembled their father most closely in appearance); Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 36. 2–3. Comp. also the following three notes. In 12 Testaments, Benjamin 12, Joseph is designated as “the good and pious one” (the reading “the beautiful one” lacks support), and this is in agreement with the rabbinic and pseudepigraphic sources which frequently give Joseph the title הצדיק “the pious one.” Comp. Yoma 35b; ARN 16, 63 and 160; PRE 38 (=12 Testaments, Zebulun 3); BR 93. 7, 11, as well as 95. 4; ER 16, 83; 4 Maccabees 2. 2 (which has “the virtuous Joseph,” undoubtedly representing צדיק, though it is not its literal translation); Ascension of Isaiah 4 (end); Shir



6. 12; Koheleth 19. 15; an unknown Midrash quoted in MHG I, 580 (י), 582 (י"ט), 590 (top) and 602. There can be no doubt that this title was conferred on Joseph on account of his virtuous victory over the wives of his master's wife, as expressly stated in 4 Maccabees, *loc. cit.* Hence the statement of the Kabbalists that he who keeps himself sexually clean deserves the title צדיק like Joseph; comp. *Abkat Rokel* 2. 2 and Zohar I, 59b. In the kabbalistic literature Joseph is hardly ever mentioned without this title; comp., *e. g.*, Zohar I, 59b, 71b, 85a, 153b, 158a, 189b, 194b, 204a, 206b, 207a, 208a, 246b; II, 23a, 258a; III, 14a, 26a, 189a, 242b. In later books, owing to the influence of this literature, this title of Joseph is of frequent occurrence, and it is interesting to note that sometimes later recensions of liturgic compositions read יוסף הצדיק, whereas the old sources of the very same pieces only have יוסף without any epithet; comp. *e. g.*, the prayer רבונו של עולם in Berakot 55b and Makiri, Prov. 24. 17, where all manuscripts and editions read יוסף only, whereas the prayer-books (דוכן) have יוסף הצדיק. Attention is also to be called to the fact that the liturgic composition אגיל ואשמח which is of geonic times speaks of יוסף and not of הצדיק. יוסף. Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 545, and Schapiro, *Haggadische Elemente*, 36, are to be corrected accordingly. Some of the Midrashim explain צדיק as "one who practises charity," צדקה, and remark that only Joseph and Noah bore that name of distinction because both of them provided man and beast with food in the time of famine and distress; comp. Tan. B. I, 31; Tan. Noah 3; Yelammedenu in Recanati, Wa-Yesheb; Zohar I, 208a. The title חסיד is very rarely conferred upon Joseph; comp. Abba Gorion 2, and parallel passages cited by Buber. This passage reads: Joseph the first of the חסידים. See also Shemuel 5, 63 (the correct text is to be found in MHG I, 589); Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 744 (נ"ב); MHG I, 579. The Muslim writers, following Jewish custom, give Joseph the title *al-Ziddik*; but ignorant of Hebrew, they explain it in accordance with the Arabic meaning of צדק as "truthful one." Comp. Excurs. II; Joseph. The use of the epithet הצדיק after Joseph's name is by far more frequent among Arabic-speaking Jews than among other Jews; comp., *e. g.*, Maimonides, *Guide of the Perplexed*, II, 34 and 48, as well as III, 46. On the reason of this epithet see also Lekah, Gen. 45. 15.

4. BR 84. 6; BaR 14. 5; Tan. B. I, 179; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 1 (end) and Mikkez 3; MHG I, 554–555. Compare with pp. 995–996.

5. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 37. 2. Comp. notes 3 and 6.

6. MHG I, 553; Yelammedenu 24–25(=BHM VI, 82), with the additional remark that he studied under the guidance of Jacob and Isaac; Philo, *De Josepho*, 1; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 2. 1; Zohar III, 207. On the view that the life of a shepherd is the proper preparation for a ruler, compare with text on p. 500.

7. MHG I, 555; Yelammedenu 25 (=BHM VI, 82), which reads: The sons of the handmaids were treated by the other sons of Jacob with contempt, but Joseph offered his services to them, as though he were their slave. Comp. the sources quoted in the following two notes.

8. BR 84. 7; Yerushalmi Peah I, 15d–16a; Tan. B. I, 180; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 7. See the following note.

## JOSEPH HATED BY HIS BRETHREN

Joseph's talebearing against his brethren made them hate him. Among all of them Gad was particularly wrathful, and for good reason. Gad was a very brave man, and when a beast of prey attacked the herd, over which he kept guard at night, he would seize it by one of its legs, and whirl it around until it was stunned, and then he would fling it away to a distance of two stadia, and kill it thus. Once Jacob sent Joseph to tend the flock, but he remained away only thirty days, for he was a delicate lad and fell sick with the heat, and he hastened back to his father. On his return he told Jacob that the sons of the handmaids were in the habit of slaughtering the choice cattle of the herd and eating it, without obtaining permission from Judah and Reuben. But his report was not accurate. What he had seen was Gad slaughtering one lamb, which he had snatched from the very jaws of a bear, and he killed it because it could not be kept alive after its fright. Joseph's account sounded as though the sons of the handmaids were habitually inconsiderate and careless in wasting their father's substance.<sup>9</sup>

To the resentment of the brethren was added their envy of Joseph, because their father loved him more than all of them. Joseph's beauty of person was equal to that of his mother Rachel, and Jacob had but to look at him to be consoled for the death of his beloved wife. Reason enough for distinguishing him among his children.<sup>10</sup> As



a token of his great love for him, Jacob gave Joseph a coat of many colors, so light and delicate that it could be crushed and concealed in the closed palm of one hand. The Hebrew name of the garment, *Passim*, conveys the story of the sale of Joseph. The first letter, Pe, stands for Potiphar, his Egyptian master; Samek stands for Soharim, the merchantmen that bought Joseph from the company of Ishmaelites to whom his brethren had sold him; Yod stands for these same Ishmaelites; and Mem, for the Midianites that obtained him from the merchantmen, and then disposed of him to Potiphar. But *Passim* has yet another meaning, "clefts." His brethren knew that the Red Sea would be cleft in twain in days to come for Joseph's sake, and they were jealous of the glory to be conferred upon him. Although they were filled with hatred of him, it must be said in their favor that they were not of a sullen, spiteful nature. They did not hide their feelings, they proclaimed their enmity openly.

Once Joseph dreamed a dream, and he could not refrain from telling it to his brethren. He spoke, and said: "Hear, I pray you, this dream which I have dreamed. Behold, you gathered fruit, and so did I. Your fruit rotted, but mine remained sound. Your seed will set up dumb images of idols, but they will vanish at the appearance of my descendant, the Messiah of Joseph. You will keep the truth as to my fate from the knowledge of my father, but I will stand fast as a reward for the self-denial of my mother, and you will prostrate yourselves five times before me."<sup>11</sup>

The brethren refused at first to listen to the dream, but when Joseph urged them again and again, they gave heed to him, and they said, "Shalt thou indeed reign over us? or shalt thou indeed have dominion over us?"<sup>12</sup> God put an interpretation into their mouths that was to be verified in the posterity of Joseph. Jeroboam and Jehu, two kings, and Joshua and Gideon, two judges, have been among his descendants, corresponding to

the double and emphatic expressions used by his brethren in interpreting the dream.<sup>13</sup>

Then Joseph dreamed another dream, how the sun, the moon, and eleven stars bowed down before him, and Jacob, to whom he told it first, was rejoiced over it, for he understood its meaning properly.<sup>14</sup> He knew that he himself was designated by the sun, the name by which God had called him when he lodged overnight on the holy site of the Temple. He had heard God say to the angels at that time, "The sun has come."<sup>15</sup> The moon stood for Joseph's mother, and the stars for his brethren, for the righteous are as the stars.<sup>16</sup> Jacob was so convinced of the truth of the dream that he was encouraged to believe that he would live to see the resurrection of the dead, for Rachel was dead, and her return to earth was clearly indicated by the dream. He went astray there, for not Joseph's own mother was referred to, but his foster-mother Bilhah, who had raised him.

Jacob wrote the dream in a book, recording all the circumstances, the day, the hour, and the place, for the holy spirit cautioned him, "Take heed, these things will surely come to pass."<sup>17</sup> But when Joseph repeated his dream to his brethren, in the presence of his father, Jacob rebuked him, saying, "I and thy brethren, that has some sense, but I and thy mother, that is inconceivable, for thy mother is dead."<sup>18</sup> These words of Jacob called forth a reproof from God. He said, "Thus thy descendants will in time to come seek to hinder Jeremiah in delivering his prophecies."<sup>19</sup> Jacob may be excused, he had spoken in this way only in order to avert the envy and hate of his brethren from Joseph, but they envied and hated him because they knew that the interpretation put upon the dream by Jacob would be realized.<sup>20</sup>

---

9. 12 Testaments, Gad 2. The rabbinic sources cited in the two preceding notes, on the contrary, are of the opinion that the relation between Joseph and the sons of the



handmaids were very friendly, whereas the relations between the “sons of the ladies,” on the one hand, and the sons of the handmaids and Joseph, on the other, were strained. PRE 28 and Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 37. 2 share the view of 12 Testaments.

10. Zohar I, 216b.

11. BR 84. 8–10; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 4; Aggadat Bereshit 60, 123–124; comp. also R. Bahya, Gen. 37. 3, who very likely made use of Aggadat Bereshit. According to the view of later authors, Joseph’s coat was the holy tunic of the priest; comp. *Keli Yakar*, Gen., *loc. cit.* The frankness of Joseph’s brethren may be taken as a contrast to Esau’s cunning in concealing his feelings towards Jacob; comp. note 109 on vol. I, p. 342. Philo, *De Josepho*, 2, likewise remarks: The virtuous man loves and hates openly; hidden hatred is evidence of fear. But he maintains that Joseph’s brethren acted like cowards, and tried to conceal their enmity. See also Palkera, *Ha-Mebakkesb*, 17a. On the dividing of the Red Sea, compare with text on p. 327, and text on p. 668.

12. Lekah Gen. 36. 6; MHG I, 559.

13. MHG I, 560; BR 84. 10. Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 2. 2.

14. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 2. 3.

15. BR 67. 10 and 84. 11; MHG I, 560. Comp. the following note.

16. MHG I, 560; comp. Dan. 12. 3, and Yerushalmi Nedarim 3, 38a. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 2. 3, gives a somewhat different interpretation of the dream.

17. BR 84. 11–12. Similarly Philo, *De Josepho*, 2, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 2. 3, assert that Jacob was convinced of the truth of the dream, but for the sake of peace, in order not to arouse the envy of his other sons, he rebuked Joseph for telling his dreams. Berakot 55a–55b reads: A dream may be partly fulfilled, but never in its entirety, as may be seen from Joseph who dreamed that his mother would appear before him, and yet she had already been dead. Comp. notes 18 and 20.

18. Lekah Gen. 37. 10, according to which ואל אחיו is to be translated “in the presence of his brethren.” The same view is expressed by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 2. 3. Comp. preceding note as well as note 20.

19. BR 84. 11.

20. Lekah, Gen. 37. 11. Comp. notes 17 and 18.

## JOSEPH CAST INTO THE PIT

Once the brethren of Joseph led their father’s flocks to the pastures of Shechem, and they intended to take their ease and pleasure

there.<sup>21</sup> They stayed away a long time, and no tidings of them were heard. Jacob began to be anxious about the fate of his sons. He feared that a war had broken out between them and the people of Shechem, and he resolved to send Joseph to them and have him bring word again, whether it was well with his brethren.<sup>22</sup> Jacob desired to know also about the flocks, for it is a duty to concern oneself about the welfare of anything from which one derives profit. Though he knew that the hatred of his brethren might bring on unpleasant adventures, yet Joseph, in filial reverence, declared himself ready to go on his father’s errand. Later, whenever Jacob remembered his dear son’s willing spirit, the recollection stabbed him to the heart. He would say to himself, “Thou didst know the hatred of thy brethren, and yet thou didst say, Here am I.”<sup>23</sup>

Jacob dismissed Joseph, with the injunction that he journey only by daylight,<sup>24</sup> saying furthermore, “Go now, see whether it be well with thy brethren, and well with the flock; and send me word”—an unconscious prophecy. He did not say that he expected to see Joseph again, but only to have word from him.<sup>25</sup> Since the covenant of the pieces, God had resolved, on account of Abraham’s doubting question, that Jacob and his family should go down into Egypt to dwell there. The preference shown to Joseph by his father, and the envy it aroused, leading finally to the sale of Joseph and his establishment in Egypt, were but disguised means created by God, instead of executing His counsel directly by carrying Jacob down into Egypt as a captive.<sup>26</sup>

Joseph reached Shechem, where he expected to find his brethren. Shechem was always a place of ill omen for Jacob and his seed—there Dinah was dishonored, there the Ten Tribes of Israel rebelled against the house of David while Rehoboam ruled in Jerusalem, and there Jeroboam was installed as king.<sup>27</sup> Not finding his brethren and the herd in Shechem, Joseph continued his



journey in the direction of the next pasturing place, not far from Shechem, but he lost his way in the wilderness.<sup>28</sup> Gabriel in human shape appeared before him, and asked him, saying, "What seekest thou?"<sup>29</sup> And he answered, "I seek my brethren." Whereto the angel replied, "Thy brethren have given up the Divine qualities of love and mercy."<sup>30</sup> Through a prophetic revelation they learned that the Hivites were preparing to make war upon them, and therefore they departed hence to go to Dothan. And they had to leave this place for other reasons, too. I heard, while I was still standing behind the curtain that veils the Divine throne, that this day the Egyptian bondage would begin, and thou wouldst be the first to be subjected to it."<sup>31</sup> Then Gabriel led Joseph to Dothan.<sup>32</sup>

When his brethren saw him afar off, they conspired against him, to slay him. Their first plan was to set dogs on him. Simon then spoke to Levi, "Behold, the master of dreams cometh with a new dream, he whose descendant Jero-boam will introduce the worship of Baal. Come now, therefore, and let us slay him, that we may see what will become of his dreams." But God spoke: "Ye say, We shall see what will become of his dreams, and I say likewise, We shall see, and the future shall show whose word will stand, yours or Mine."<sup>33</sup>

Simon and Gad set about slaying Joseph, and he fell upon his face, and entreated them: "Have mercy with me, my brethren, have pity on the heart of my father Jacob. Lay not your hands upon me, to spill innocent blood, for I have done no evil unto you. But if I have done evil unto you, then chastise me with a chastisement, but your hands lay not upon me, for the sake of our father Jacob." These words touched Zebulon, and he began to lament and weep, and the wailing of Joseph rose up together with his brother's, and when Simon and Gad raised their hands against him to execute their evil design,

Joseph took refuge behind Zebulon, and supplicated his other brethren to have mercy upon him. Then Reuben arose, and he said, "Brethren, let us not slay him, but let us cast him into one of the dry pits, which our fathers dug without finding water." That was due to the providence of God; He had hindered the water from rising in them in order that Joseph's rescue might be accomplished, and the pits remained dry until Joseph was safe in the hands of the Ishmaelites.<sup>34</sup>

Reuben had several reasons for interceding in behalf of Joseph. He knew that he as the oldest of the brethren would be held responsible by their father, if any evil befell him. Besides, Reuben was grateful to Joseph for having reckoned him among the eleven sons of Jacob in narrating his dream of the sun, moon, and stars. Since his disrespectful bearing toward Jacob, he had not thought himself worthy of being considered one of his sons.<sup>35</sup> First Reuben tried to restrain his brethren from their purpose, and he addressed them in words full of love and compassion. But when he saw that neither words nor entreaties would change their intention, he begged them, saying: "My brethren, at least hearken unto me in respect of this, that ye be not so wicked and cruel as to slay him. Lay no hand upon your brother, shed no blood, cast him into this pit that is in the wilderness, and let him perish thus."<sup>36</sup>

Then Reuben went away from his brethren, and he hid in the mountains, so that he might be able to hasten back in a favorable moment and draw Joseph forth from the pit and restore him to his father. He hoped his reward would be pardon for the transgression he had committed against Jacob.<sup>37</sup> His good intention was frustrated, yet Reuben was rewarded by God, for God gives a recompense not only for good deeds, but for good intentions as well.<sup>38</sup> As he was the first of the brethren of Joseph to make an attempt to save him, so the city of Bezer in the tribe of Reuben was the first of the cities of refuge appointed to



safeguard the life of the innocent that seek help.<sup>39</sup> Furthermore God spake to Reuben, saying: "As thou wast the first to endeavor to restore a child unto his father, so Hosea, one of thy descendants, shall be the first to endeavor to lead Israel back to his heavenly Father."<sup>40</sup>

The brethren accepted Reuben's proposition, and Simon seized Joseph, and cast him into a pit swarming with snakes and scorpions, beside which was another unused pit, filled with offal.<sup>41</sup> As though this were not enough torture, Simon bade his brethren fling great stones at Joseph. In his later dealings with this brother Simon, Joseph showed all the forgiving charitableness of his nature. When Simon was held in durance in Egypt as a hostage, Joseph, so far from bearing him a grudge, ordered crammed poultry to be set before him at all his meals.<sup>42</sup>

Not satisfied with exposing Joseph to the snakes and scorpions, his brethren had stripped him bare before they flung him into the pit. They took off his coat of many colors, his upper garment, his breeches, and his shirt.<sup>43</sup> However, the reptiles could do him no harm. God heard his cry of distress, and kept them in hiding in the clefts and the holes, and they could not come near him. From the depths of the pit Joseph appealed to his brethren, saying: "O my brethren, what have I done unto you, and what is my transgression? Why are you not afraid before God on account of your treatment of me? Am I not flesh of your flesh, and bone of your bone? Jacob your father, is he not my father? Why do you act thus toward me? And how will you be able to lift up your countenance before Jacob? O Judah, Reuben, Simon, Levi, my brethren, deliver me, I pray you, from the dark place into which you have cast me. Though I committed a trespass against you, yet are ye children of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, who were compassionate with the orphan, gave food to the hungry, and clothed the naked. How, then, can ye withhold

your pity from your own brother, your own flesh and bone? And though I sinned against you, yet you will hearken unto my petition for the sake of my father. O that my father knew what my brethren are doing unto me, and what they spake unto me!"

To avoid hearing Joseph's weeping and cries of distress, his brethren passed on from the pit, and stood at a bowshot's distance.<sup>44</sup> The only one among them that manifested pity was Zebulon. For two days and two nights no food passed his lips on account of his grief over the fate of Joseph, who had to spend three days and three nights in the pit before he was sold. During this period Zebulon was charged by his brethren to keep watch at the pit. He was chosen to stand guard because he took no part in the meals. Part of the time Judah also refrained from eating with the rest, and took turns at watching, because he feared Simon and Gad might jump down into the pit and put an end to Joseph's life.<sup>45</sup>

While Joseph was languishing thus, his brethren determined to kill him. They would finish their meal first, they said, and then they would fetch him forth and slay him. When they had done eating, they attempted to say grace, but Judah remonstrated with them: "We are about to take the life of a human being, and yet would bless God? That is not a blessing, that is condemning the Lord."<sup>46</sup> What profit is it if we slay our brother? Rather will the punishment of God descend upon us. I have good counsel to give you. Yonder passeth by a travelling company of Ishmaelites on their way to Egypt. Come and let us sell him to the Ishmaelites, and let not our hand be upon him. The Ishmaelites will take him with them upon their journeyings, and he will be lost among the peoples of the earth.<sup>47</sup> Let us follow the custom of former days, for Canaan, too, the son of Ham, was made a slave for his evil deeds, and so will we do with our brother Joseph."<sup>48</sup>



21. BR 84. 13; Sifre N., 69; Mishle 26. 99; ARN 34, 10; second version 37, 99. In all these sources, with the exception of the last-named, the dots on אַת in Gen. 37. 12 indicate that it is to be read as אֹתָם (they went to enjoy themselves), whereas according to ARN, *loc. cit.*, these dots draw attention to the fact that the sons of Jacob drove the flock to the pasture for their own pleasure, to enjoy the meat of the fattened animals. Compare with p. 329. Accordingly there is no need to emend the text of ARN. See Theodor, BR, *ad loc.* and Blau, *Masoretische Untersuchungen*, 23–25.

22. Yashar Wa-Yesheb 80b; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 37. 13; similarly Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 2. 4.

23. BR 84. 13; Tan. B. I, 183; comp. Hasidim 233 and note 442 appertaining to it. Philo, *De Josepho*, 2, reads: Jacob sent his sons away for a time, retaining only Joseph with him, as the suffering of the soul is cured only by time; and when he thought that the ill-feeling of his sons against Joseph had subsided, he sent the latter to inquire after their welfare.

24. Hullin 91b. Compare with pp. 381 and 390 as well as text on p. 953; See also notes 254 and 292.

25. MHG I, 562. On unconscious prophecies see footnote 239 on p. 227.

26. BR 84. 13 and 86. 1–2; Tan. B. I, 183 and 185, as well as 188; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 4; Sotah 11b; Shabbat 89b; Aggadat Bereshit 69, 122–123; Tehillim 115, 450. Comp. note 32.

27. Sanhedrin 102a; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 2.

28. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 80b.

29. PRE 38; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 37. 15; Tan. B. I, 183, 163; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 2; *Hadar, ad loc.* (which reads: Raphael); BR 84. 14 (three angels). Comp. also MHG I, 562. Philo, *Quod Deterius Potiori Insidiari Soleat*, 7, seems to have known the Haggadah about the angel meeting Joseph, and in his rationalistic manner changed the angel for the soul; comp. Zohar I, 184a. The name Dothan (דֹּתָנָה) in Gen. 37. 17 refers to the angel, who is thus designated because he observes the law (דָּת) of God. Comp. Tan., *loc. cit.*

30. PRE 38.

31. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 37. 17. Comp. notes 22 and 26, as well as Targum Yerushalmi 14.

32. PRE 38.

33. BR 84. 14; Tan. B. I, 183. These Midrashim take מֵרַחוֹק (Gen. 37. 18) as qualifying לְהַמִּיתוֹ, *i. e.*, to kill him while he was still far off by setting dogs on him. According to some authorities, they drew lots to decide upon the mode of killing him. Comp. Aggadat Bereshit 60, 23; R. Bahya on Gen. 37. 3; Mishle 1, 45.

34. 12 Testaments, Zebulun 2. According to a widespread view in rabbinic literature (comp. note 41), it was Simeon and Levi who advised to put Joseph to death, and

if not for Reuben and Judah they would have killed him. In the 12 Testaments Levi is idealized as a prophet and priest, and therefore the rôle of a bloodthirsty plotter had to be taken away from him and assigned to another brother (comp. note 41). Gad and Dan (12 Testaments, Gad 2 and Dan 1) are the competitors for this unenviable rôle of the villain. As to the dry pit, compare with footnote 63 on p. 260.

35. BR 84. 15.

36. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 3. 1–3. Reuben hoped to enable Joseph to escape during the night; Josephus, *loc. cit.*, and PRE 38. On the conception that to cause one's death is not as grievous a sin as to commit murder, see text on p. 468, as well as the Halakah in Baba Kamma 24b.

37. Lekah Gen. 37. 30; comp. Zohar I, 185a–185b, which is very likely the source of Sabba, Wa-Yesheb, 48a.

38. MHG I, 562–563 and the parallel passages cited by Schechter, as well as ARN 45, 125.

39. BR 84. 15; Shemuel 9, 75; Makkot 10a.

40. PK 25, 159b; MHG I, 563. For another version of this Haggadah see note 314 on vol. I, p. 416.

41. BR 84. 16; Tan. B. I, 184; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 2; Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 81a; Shabbat 22a; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 38. 27. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 3. 2, asserts that Reuben himself threw Joseph into the pit, but with the intention of saving him; comp. note 36. It is to be observed that although both Simeon and Levi are described as the plotters against Joseph's life (BR 99. 10; Tan. B. I, 183; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 9; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 37. 19), yet it is only Simeon who is declared to have thrown him into the pit in all the sources mentioned above, with the exception of Mishle I, 44, where Levi is said to have been Simeon's accomplice in this undertaking also. In view of the remark of note 34, it is possible that Mishle has preserved the original form of this legend, while the other sources attempted to exonerate Levi, with the result that in the Testaments (comp. note 34) and Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 42. 24 there is not the faintest allusion to Levi's enmity towards Joseph. Philo, *De Josepho*, 30, likewise puts the entire blame on Simeon.

42. Tan. B. I, 184, whence it was incorporated in Yalkut I, 142.

43. BR 84. 16, which is followed by Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 37. 3. פֶּרָגוֹד מְצִייר is a paraphrase of פְּסִים, which accordingly is not to be translated "a coat of many colors," but "an upper garment in which figures are woven," in accordance with mishnaic פֶּסֶפְסִין; comp. Nega'im 11. 6.

44. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 81a. Comp. notes 33 and 34.

45. 12 Testaments, Zebulun 4.

46. PR 10, 40b; Tan. Ki-Tissa 2. Against this view which praises Judah's interference is directed the statement of R. Meir in Sanhedrin 6b, blaming Judah for his half-hearted stand, for he could have saved Joseph from slavery just as he saved him from death. See also Tosefta Berakot 4.



18 and 1 Alphabet of Ben Sira 13a, as well as footnote 388 on p. 665.

47. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 81b. Comp. the following note.

48. PRE 38; BR 84. 17; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 2. Against this view compare text on p. 447, according to which Judah sold Joseph without the knowledge of his brethren.

## THE SALE

While the brethren of Joseph were deliberating upon his fate, seven Midianitish merchantmen passed near the pit which he lay. They noticed that many birds were circling above it, whence they assumed that there must be water therein, and, being thirsty, they made a halt in order to refresh themselves. When they came close, they heard Joseph screaming and wailing, and they looked down into the pit and saw a youth of beautiful figure and comely appearance. They called to him, saying: "Who art thou? Who brought thee hither, and who cast thee into this pit in the wilderness?" They all joined together and dragged him up, and took him along with them when they continued on their journey. They had to pass his brethren, who called out to the Midianites: "Why have you done such a thing, to steal our slave and carry him away with you? We threw the lad into the pit, because he was disobedient. Now, then, return our slave to us." The Midianites replied: "What, this lad, you say, is your slave, your servant? More likely: is it that you all are slaves unto him, for in beauty of form, in pleasant looks, and fair appearance, he excelleth you all. Why, then, will you speak lies unto us? We will not give ear unto your words, nor believe you, for we found the lad in the wilderness, in a pit, and we took him out, and we will carry him away with us on our journey." But the sons of Jacob insisted, "Restore our slave to us, lest you meet death at the edge of the sword."

Unaffrighted, the Midianites drew their weapons, and, amid war whoops, they prepared

to enter into a combat with the sons of Jacob. Then Simon rose up, and with bared sword he sprang upon the Midianites, at the same time uttering a cry that made the earth reverberate. The Midianites fell down in great consternation, and he said: "I am Simon, the son of the Hebrew Jacob, who destroyed the city of Shechem alone and unaided, and together with my brethren I destroyed the cities of the Amorites. God do so and more also, if it be not true that all the Midianites, your brethren, united with all the Canaanite kings to fight with me, cannot hold out against me. Now restore the boy you took from us, else will I give your flesh unto the fowls of the air and to the beasts of the field."

The Midianites were greatly afraid of Simon, and, terrified and abashed, they spake to the sons of Jacob with little courage: "Said ye not that ye cast this lad into the pit because he was of a rebellious spirit? What, now, will ye do with an insubordinate slave? Rather sell him to us, we are ready to pay any price you desire." This speech was part of the purpose of God. He had put it into the heart of the Midianites to insist upon possessing Joseph, that he might not remain with his brethren, and be slain by them.<sup>49</sup> The brethren assented, and Joseph was sold as a slave while they sat over their meal. God spake, saying: "Over a meal did ye sell your brother, and thus shall Ahasuerus sell your descendants to Haman over a meal, and because ye have sold Joseph to be a slave, therefore shall ye say year after year, Slaves were we unto Pharaoh in Egypt."<sup>50</sup>

The price paid for Joseph by the Midianites was twenty pieces of silver, enough for a pair of shoes for each of his brethren. Thus "they sold the righteous for silver, and the needy for a pair of shoes." For so handsome a youth as Joseph the sum paid was too low by far, but his appearance had been greatly changed by the horrible anguish he had endured in the pit with the snakes and the scorpions. He had lost his ruddy complexion, and



he looked sallow and sickly, and the Midianites were justified in paying a small sum for him.<sup>51</sup>

The merchantmen had come upon Joseph naked in the pit, for his brethren had stripped him of all his clothes. That he might not appear before men in an unseemly condition, God sent Gabriel down to him, and the angel enlarged the amulet hanging from Joseph's neck until it was a garment that covered him entirely. Joseph's brethren were looking after him as he departed with the Midianites, and when they saw him with clothes upon him, they cried after them, "Give us his raiment! We sold him naked, without clothes." His owners refused to yield to their demand, but they agreed to reimburse the brethren with four pairs of shoes, and Joseph kept his garment, the same in which he was arrayed when he arrived in Egypt and was sold to Potiphar, the same in which he was locked up in prison and appeared before Pharaoh, and the same he wore when he was ruler over Egypt.<sup>52</sup>

As an atonement for the twenty pieces of silver taken by his brethren in exchange for Joseph, God commanded that every first-born son shall be redeemed by the priest with an equal amount, and, also, every Israelite must pay annually to the sanctuary as much as fell to each of the brethren as his share of the price.<sup>53</sup>

The brethren of Joseph bought shoes for the money, for they said: "We will not eat it, because it is the price for the blood of our brother, but we will tread upon him, for that he spake, he would have dominion over us, and we will see what will become of his dreams." And for this reason the ordinance has been commanded, that he who refuseth to raise up a name in Israel unto his brother that hath died without having a son, shall have his shoe loosed from off his foot, and his face shall be spat upon. Joseph's brethren refused to do aught to preserve his life, and therefore the Lord loosed their shoes from off their feet, for, when they went down to

Egypt, the slaves of Joseph took their shoes off their feet as they entered the gates, and they prostrated themselves before Joseph as before a Pharaoh, and, as they lay prostrate, they were spat upon, and put to shame before the Egyptians.<sup>54</sup>

The Midianites pursued their journey to Gilead, but they soon regretted the purchase they had made. They feared that Joseph had been stolen in the land of the Hebrews, though sold to them as a slave, and if his kinsmen should find him with them, death would be inflicted upon them for the abduction of a free man. The high-handed manner of the sons of Jacob confirmed their suspicion, that they might be capable of man theft. Their wicked deed would explain, too, why they had accepted so small a sum in exchange for Joseph. While discussing these points, they saw, coming their way, the travelling company of Ishmaelites that had been observed earlier by the sons of Jacob, and they determined to dispose of Joseph to them, that they might at least not lose the price they had paid, and might escape the danger at the same time of being made captives for the crime of kidnapping a man. And the Ishmaelites bought Joseph from the Midianites, and they paid the same price as his former owners had given for him.<sup>55</sup>

---

49. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 81b–82a. As to Simeon's terrible voice see text on pp. 374 and 385, as well as text on p. 867. That Simeon is here the spokesman of his brethren is to be explained in accordance with notes 34 and 41.

50. Tehillim 10, 93. The great sin of the sons of Jacob was never forgiven, so that each generation of Israelites has to bear its share of suffering as an atonement. The death of the "ten martyrs" (comp. Index, *s. v.*) especially was a partial payment of this debt. These great men suffered for the crime of the ten sons of Jacob. Comp. Mishle 1, 45; Elleh Ezkerah 64; Midrash Shir 3a–3b; *Kaftor wa-Ferah*, 412. See further BR 84. 17; note 62 and footnote 14 on p. 447.

51. Tan. Wa-Yesheb 2; PRE 38 (the text of the editions is very likely incomplete; comp. *Da'at* and *Hadar*, Gen. 37. 2); MHG I, 564; 'Asarah Haruge Malkut 20. On



the text of the last-named source see *Da'at* and *Hadar*, *loc. cit.* According to the reading of the last-mentioned sources, the angel changed Joseph's sallow and sickly complexion into a rosy and ruddy one, and that is the reason why the brethren asked a higher price for him. The Midianites added a pair of shoes for each one of them. The shoes as part of the price (comp. Amos 2. 6) are also mentioned in 12 Testaments, Zebulun 4, and in Targum Yerushalmi Gen., *loc. cit.* Comp. the sources cited in the following note.

52. 'Asarah Haruge Malkut 20, whence it was borrowed by *Da'at*, *Hadar*, and *Imre No'am* on Gen. 38. 22–23. In *Hadar* and *Imre No'am* Raphael (compare with p. 332 and note 28) is substituted for Gabriel. This is due to the fact that the former is the angel of healing (comp. Index, *s. v.*), and is thus more likely to have been the one to bring about an improvement in Joseph's health. Comp. the previous note. Schapiro, *Haggadische Elemente*, 27, is to be corrected accordingly. The view that the shoes were an addition to the price proper removes the contradiction between Gen. 37. 28 and Amos 2. 6. Comp. previous note.

53. Yerushalmi Shekalim 2, 46d; PK 1, 19b–20a; BR 84. 18; Tan. Ki-tissa 10; comp. MHG I, 564, and text on p. 637.

54. 12 Testaments, Zebulun 3; comp. notes 51, 52. He who refuses to enter into a levirate marriage shows that he is lacking in brotherly love, and hence the ceremony of taking off the shoes brands him as one who is like Joseph's brethren.

55. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 82b. Concerning the various masters who possessed Joseph, see note 99.

## JOSEPH'S THREE MASTERS

As a rule the only merchandise with which the Ishmaelites loaded their camels was pitch and the skins of beasts. By a providential dispensation they carried bags of perfumery this time, instead of their usual ill-smelling freight, that sweet fragrance might be wafted to Joseph on his journey to Egypt.<sup>56</sup> These aromatic substances were well suited to Joseph, whose body emitted a pleasant smell, so agreeable and pervasive that the road along which he travelled was redolent thereof, and on his arrival in Egypt the perfume from his body spread over the whole land, and the royal princesses, following the sweet

scent to trace its source, reached the place in which Joseph was.<sup>57</sup> Even after his death the same fragrance was spread abroad by his bones, enabling Moses to distinguish Joseph's remains from all others, and keep the oath of the children of Israel, to inter them in the Holy Land.<sup>58</sup>

When Joseph learned that the Ishmaelites were carrying him to Egypt, he began to weep bitterly at the thought of being removed so far from Canaan and from his father. One of the Ishmaelites noticed Joseph's weeping and crying, and thinking that he found riding uncomfortable, he lifted him from the back of the camel, and permitted him to walk on foot. But Joseph continued to weep and sob, crying incessantly, "O father, father!" Another one of the caravan, tired of his lamentations, beat him, causing only the more tears and wails, until the youth, exhausted by his grief, was unable to move on. Now all the Ishmaelites in the company dealt out blows to him. They treated him with relentless cruelty, and tried to silence him by threats. God saw Joseph's distress, and He sent darkness and terror upon the Ishmaelites, and their hands grew rigid when they raised them to inflict a blow. Astonished, they asked themselves why God did thus unto them upon the road. They did not know that it was for the sake of Joseph.

The journey was continued until they came to Ephrath, the place of Rachel's sepulchre. Joseph hastened to his mother's grave, and throwing himself across it, he groaned and cried, saying: "O mother, mother, that didst bear me, arise, come forth and see how thy son hath been sold into slavery, with none to take pity upon him. Arise, see thy son, and weep with me over my misfortune, and observe the heartlessness of my brethren. Awake, O mother, rouse thyself from thy sleep, rise up and prepare for the conflict with my brethren, who stripped me even of my shirt, and sold me as a slave to merchantmen, who in turn sold me to others,



and without mercy they tore me away from my father. Arise, accuse my brethren before God, and see whom He will justify in the judgment, and whom He will find guilty. Arise, O mother, awake from thy sleep, see how my father is with me in his soul and in his spirit, and comfort him and ease his heavy heart."

Joseph wept and cried upon the grave of his mother, until, weary from grief, he lay immovable as a stone. Then he heard a voice heavy with tears speak to him from the depths, saying: "My son Joseph, my son, I heard thy complaints and thy groans, I saw thy tears, and I knew thy misery, my son. I am grieved for thy sake, and thy affliction is added to the burden of my affliction. But, my son Joseph, put thy trust in God, and wait upon Him. Fear not, for the Lord is with thee, and He will deliver thee from all evil. Go down into Egypt with thy masters, my son; fear naught, for the Lord is with thee, O my son." This and much more like unto it did the voice utter, and then it was silent. Joseph listened in great amazement at first, and then he broke out in renewed tears. Angered thereby, one of the Ishmaelites drove him from his mother's grave with kicks and curses. Then Joseph entreated his masters to take him back to his father, who would give them great riches as a reward. But they said, "Why, thou art a slave! How canst thou know where thy father is? If thou hadst had a free man as father, thou wouldst not have been sold twice for a petty sum." And then their fury against him increased, they beat him and maltreated him, and he wept bitter tears.

Now God looked upon the distress of Joseph, and He sent darkness to enshroud the land once more. A storm raged, the lightning flashed, and from the thunderbolts the whole earth trembled, and the Ishmaelites lost their way in their terror. The beasts and the camels stood still, and, beat them as their drivers would, they refused to budge from the spot, but crouched

down upon the ground. Then the Ishmaelites spake to one another, and said: "Why hath God brought this upon us? What are our sins, what our trespasses, that such things befall us?" One of them said to the others: "Peradventure this hath come upon us by reason of the sin which we have committed against this slave. Let us beg him earnestly to grant us forgiveness, and if then God will take pity, and let these storms pass away from us, we shall know that we suffered harm on account of the injury we inflicted upon this slave."

The Ishmaelites did according to these words, and they said unto Joseph: "We have sinned against God and against thee. Pray to thy God, and entreat Him to take this death plague from us, for we acknowledge that we have sinned against Him." Joseph fulfilled their wish, and God hearkened to his petition, and the storm was assuaged. All around became calm, the beasts arose from their recumbent position, and the caravan could proceed upon its way. Now the Ishmaelites saw plainly that all their trouble had come upon them for the sake of Joseph, and they spoke one to another, saying: "We know now that all this evil hath happened to us on account of this poor fellow, and wherefore should we bring death upon ourselves by our own doings? Let us take counsel together, what is to be done with the slave." One of them advised that Joseph's wish be fulfilled, and he be taken back to his father. Then they would be sure of receiving the money they had paid out for him. This plan was rejected, because they had accomplished a great part of their journey, and they were not inclined to retrace their steps. They therefore resolved upon carrying Joseph to Egypt and selling him there. They would rid themselves of him in this way, and also receive a great price for him.

They continued their journey as far as the borders of Egypt, and there they met four men, descendants of Medan, the son of Abraham, and to these they sold Joseph for five shekels. The



two companies, the Ishmaelites and the Medanites, arrived in Egypt upon the same day. The latter, hearing that Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh, the captain of the guard, was seeking a good slave, repaired to him at once, to try to dispose of Joseph to him. Potiphar was willing to pay as much as four hundred pieces of silver, for, high as price was, it did not seem too great for a slave that pleased him as much as Joseph. However, he made a condition. He said to the Medanites: "I will pay you the price demanded, but you must bring me the person that sold the slave to you, that I may be in a position to find out all about him, for the youth seems to me to be neither a slave nor the son of a slave. He appears to be of noble blood. I must convince myself that he was not stolen." The Medanites brought the Ishmaelites to Potiphar, and they testified that Joseph was a slave, that they had owned him, had sold him to the Medanites. Potiphar rested satisfied with this report, paid the price asked for Joseph, and the Medanites and the Ishmaelites went their way.

---

56. Tosefta Berakot 4. 16; BR 84. 17.

57. Midrash Shir 3a. Compare with p. 1028, and the following note.

58. Aggadat Shir 1, 12, where the general assertion is made that by the odor of the dead bones one may distinguish between the pious and the wicked, between Jew and Gentile, between man and woman. Compare with footnote 92 on p. 266, and footnote 2 on p. 546.

## JOSEPH'S COAT BROUGHT TO HIS FATHER

**N**o sooner was the sale of Joseph an accomplished fact than the sons of Jacob repented of their deed. They even hastened after the Medanites to ransom Joseph, but their efforts to over-

take them were vain, and they had to accept the inevitable. Meantime Reuben had rejoined his brethren.<sup>59</sup> He had been so deeply absorbed in penances, in praying and studying the Torah, in expiation of his sin against his father, that he had not been able to remain with his brethren and tend the flocks, and thus it happened that he was not on the spot when Joseph was sold.<sup>60</sup> His first errand was to go to the pit, in the hope of finding Joseph there. In that case he would have carried him off and restored him to his father clandestinely, without the knowledge of his brethren. He stood at the opening and called again and again, "Joseph, Joseph!" As he received no answer, he concluded that Joseph had perished, either by reason of terror or as the result of a snake bite, and he descended into the pit, only to find that he was not there, either living or dead. He mounted to the top again, and rent his clothes, and cried out, "The lad is not there, and what answer shall I give to my father, if he be dead?" Then Reuben returned unto his brethren, and told them that Joseph had vanished from the pit, whereat he was deeply grieved, because he, being the oldest of the sons, was responsible to their father Jacob. The brethren made a clean breast of what they had done with Joseph, and they related to him how they had tried to make good their evil deed, and how their efforts had been vain.

Now there remained nothing to do but invent a plausible explanation for their brother's disappearance to give to Jacob. First of all, however, they took an oath not to betray to his father or any human being what they had actually done with Joseph. He who violated the oath would be put to the sword by the rest. Then they took counsel together about what to say to Jacob. It was Issachar's advice to tear Joseph's coat of many colors, and dip it in the blood of a little kid of the goats, to make Jacob believe that his son had been torn by a wild beast.<sup>61</sup> The reason he suggested a kid was because its blood looks like human blood.



In expiation of this act of deception, it was ordained that a kid be used as an atonement sacrifice when the Tabernacle was dedicated.<sup>62</sup>

Simon opposed this suggestion. He did not want to relinquish Joseph's coat, and he threatened to hew down any one that should attempt to wrest it from him by force. The reason for his vehemence was that he was very much enraged against his brethren for not having slain Joseph. But they threatened him in turn, saying, "If thou wilt not give up the coat, we shall say that thou didst execute the evil deed thyself." At that Simon surrendered it,<sup>63</sup> and Naphtali brought it to Jacob, handing it to him with the words: "When we were driving our herds homeward, we found this garment covered with blood and dust on the highway, a little beyond Shechem. Know now whether it be thy son's coat or not." Jacob recognized Joseph's coat, and, overwhelmed by grief, he fell prostrate, and long lay on the ground motionless, like a stone. Then he arose, and set up a loud cry, and wept, saying, "It is my son's coat."

In great haste Jacob dispatched a slave to his sons, to bid them come to him, that he might learn more about what had happened. In the evening they all came, their garments rent, and dust strewn upon their heads. When they confirmed all that Naphtali had told him, Jacob broke out in mourning and lamentation: "It is my son's coat; an evil beast hath devoured him; Joseph is without doubt torn in pieces. I sent him to you to see whether it was well with you, and well with the flock. He went to do my errand, and while I thought him to be with you, the misfortune befell." Thereto the sons of Jacob made reply: "He came to us not at all. Since we left thee, we have not set eyes on him."

After these words, Jacob could doubt no longer that Joseph had been torn by wild beasts, and he mourned for his son, saying: "O my son Joseph, my son, I sent thee to inquire after the

welfare of thy brethren, and now thou art torn by wild beasts. It is my fault that this evil chance hath come upon thee. I am distressed for thee, my son, I am sorely distressed. How sweet was thy life to me, and how bitter is thy death! Would God I had died for thee, O Joseph, my son, for now I am distressed on thy account. O my son Joseph, where art thou, and where is thy soul? Arise, arise from thy place, and look upon my grief for thee. Come and count the tears that roll down my cheeks, and bring the tale of them before God, that His wrath be turned away from me. O Joseph, my son, how painful and appalling was thy death! None hath died a death like thine since the world doth stand. I know well that it came to pass by reason of my sins. O that thou wouldst return and see the bitter sorrow thy misfortune hath brought upon me! But it is true, it was not I that created thee, and formed thee. I gave thee neither spirit nor soul, but God created thee. He formed thy bones, covered them with flesh, breathed the breath of life into thy nostrils, and then gave thee unto me. And God who gave thee unto me, He hath taken thee from me, and from Him hath this dispensation come upon me. What the Lord doeth is well done!" In these words and many others like them Jacob mourned and bewailed his son, until he fell to the ground prostrate and immovable.

When the sons of Jacob saw the vehemence of their father's grief, they repented of their deed, and wept bitterly. Especially Judah was grief-stricken. He laid his father's head upon his knees, and wiped his tears away as they flowed from his eyes, while he himself broke out in violent weeping. The sons of Jacob and their wives all sought to comfort their father. They arranged a great memorial service, and they wept and mourned over Joseph's death and over their father's sorrow.<sup>64</sup> But Jacob refused to be comforted.

The tidings of his son's death caused the loss of two members of Jacob's family. Bilhah and



Dinah could not survive their grief. Bilhah passed away the very day whereon the report reached Jacob, and Dinah died soon after, and so he had three losses to mourn in one month.

He received the tidings of Joseph's death in the seventh month, Tishri, and on the tenth day of the month, and therefore the children of Israel are bidden to weep and afflict their souls on this day. Furthermore, on this day the sin offering of atonement shall be a kid of the goats, because the sons of Jacob transgressed with a kid, in the blood of which they dipped Joseph's coat, and thus they brought sorrow upon Jacob.<sup>65</sup>

When he had recovered somewhat from the stunning blow which the tidings of his favorite son's death had dealt him, Jacob rose up from the ground and addressed his sons, tears streaming down his cheeks all the while. "Up," he said, "take your swords and your bows, go out in the field, and make search, perhaps you will find the body of my son, and you will bring it to me, so that I may bury it. Keep a look out, too, for beasts of prey, and catch the first you meet. Seize it and bring it to me. It may be that God will have pity upon my sorrow, and put the beast between your hands that hath torn my child in pieces, and I will take my revenge upon it."

The sons of Jacob set out on the morrow to do the bidding of their father, while he remained at home and wept and lamented for Joseph. In the wilderness they found a wolf, which they caught and brought to Jacob alive, saying: "Here is the first wild beast we encountered, and we have brought it to thee. But of thy son's corpse we saw not a trace." Jacob seized the wolf, and, amid loud weeping, he addressed these words to him: "Why didst thou devour my son Joseph, without any fear of the God of the earth, and without taking any thought of the grief thou wouldst bring down upon me? Thou didst devour my son without reason, he was guilty of no manner of transgression, and thou didst roll the

responsibility for his death upon me. But God avengeth him that is persecuted."

To grant consolation to Jacob, God opened the mouth of the beast, and he spake: "As the Lord liveth, who hath created me, and as thy soul liveth, my lord, I have not seen thy son, and I did not rend him in pieces. From a land afar off I came to seek mine own son, who suffered a like fate with thine. He hath disappeared, and I know not whether he be dead or alive, and therefore I came hither ten days ago to find him. This day, while I was searching for him, thy sons met me, and they seized me, and, adding more grief to my grief over my lost son, they brought me hither to thee. This is my story, and now, O son of man, I am in thy hands, thou canst dispose of me this day as seemeth well in thy sight, but I swear unto thee by the God that hath created me, I have not seen thy son, nor have I torn him in pieces, never hath the flesh of man come into my mouth." Astonished at the speech of the wolf, Jacob let him go, unhindered, whithersoever he would, but he mourned his son Joseph as before.<sup>66</sup>

It is a law of nature that however much one may grieve over the death of a dear one, at the end of a year consolation finds its way to the heart of the mourner. But the disappearance of a living man can never be wiped out of one's memory. Therefore the fact that he was inconsolable made Jacob suspect that Joseph was alive, and he did not give entire credence to the report of his sons. His vague suspicion was strengthened by something that happened to him. He went up into the mountains, hewed twelve stones out of the quarry, and wrote the names of his sons thereon, their constellations, and the months corresponding to the constellations, a stone for a son, thus, "Reuben, Ram, Nisan," and so for each of his twelve sons. Then he addressed the stones and bade them bow down before the one marked with Reuben's name, constellation, and month, and they did not move. He gave the same order



regarding the stone marked for Simon, and again the stones stood still. And so he did respecting all his sons, until he reached the stone for Joseph. When he spoke concerning this one, "I command you to fall down before Joseph," they all prostrated themselves. He tried the same test with other things, with trees and sheaves, and always the result was the same, and Jacob could not but feel that his suspicion was true, Joseph was alive.<sup>67</sup>

There was a reason why God did not reveal the real fate of Joseph to Jacob. When his brethren sold Joseph, their fear that the report of their iniquity might reach the ears of Jacob led them to pronounce the ban upon any that should betray the truth without the consent of all the others. Judah advanced the objection that a ban is invalid unless it is decreed in the presence of ten persons, and there were but nine of them, for Reuben and Benjamin were not there when the sale of Joseph was concluded. To evade the difficulty, the brothers counted God as the tenth person, and therefore God felt bound to refrain from revealing the true state of things to Jacob. He had regard, as it were, for the ban pronounced by the brethren of Joseph.<sup>68</sup> And as God kept the truth a secret from Jacob, Isaac did not feel justified in acquainting him with his grandson's fate, which was well known to him, for he was a prophet. Whenever he was in the company of Jacob, he mourned with him, but as soon as he quitted him, he left off from manifesting grief, because he knew that Joseph lived.<sup>69</sup>

Jacob was thus the only one among Joseph's closest kinsmen that remained in ignorance of his son's real fortunes, and he was the one of them all that had the greatest reason for regretting his death. He spoke: "The covenant that God made with me regarding the twelve tribes is null and void now. I did strive in vain to establish the twelve tribes, seeing that now the death of Joseph hath destroyed the covenant. All the works

of God were made to correspond to the number of the tribes—twelve are the signs of the zodiac, twelve the months, twelve hours hath the day, twelve the night, and twelve stones are set in Aaron's breastplate—and now that Joseph hath departed, the covenant of the tribes is set at naught."

He could not replace the lost son by entering into a new marriage, for he had made the promise to his father-in-law to take none beside his daughters to wife, and this promise, as he interpreted it, held good after the death of Laban's daughters as well as while they were alive.<sup>70</sup>

Beside grief over his loss and regret at the breaking of the covenant of the tribes, Jacob had still another reason for mourning the death of Joseph. God had said to Jacob, "If none of thy sons dies during thy lifetime, thou mayest look upon it as a token that thou wilt not be put in Gehenna after thy death." Thinking Joseph to be dead, Jacob had his own fate to bewail, too, for he now believed that he was doomed to Gehenna.<sup>71</sup> His mourning lasted all of twenty-two years, corresponding to the number of the years he had dwelt apart from his parents, and had not fulfilled the duty of a son toward them.<sup>72</sup>

In his mourning Jacob put sackcloth upon his loins, and therein he became a model for the kings and princes in Israel, for David, Ahab, Joram, and Mordecai did likewise when a great misfortune befell the nation.<sup>73</sup>

---

59. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 82b–84a and 85b–86a. The author was perhaps acquainted with the Testaments of the Twelve Patriarchs. Compare with pp. 344–350 and 449–450.

60. BR 84. 19; PK 25, 159a–159b; Mishle 1, 45; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 37. 29. Reuben is very often referred to in the Haggadah of the earliest Tannaim and the latest Amoraim as the type of the "penitent"; compare with the sources cited in the footnotes on p. 318, as well as the text on pp. 345, 400, 407, 435; also pp. 667, 669–680, 685, 823, 1126–1127. Comp. also Schechter, *Zadokite Fragments*, 27, note 66. Charles, *Testaments of the Twelve Patriarchs*,



*Introduction*, 15, note 1, is accordingly in error when he maintains that the old rabbinic literature does not know of the “penitent Reuben,” and the conclusion he draws from this assumption is quite untenable. Comp. Ginzberg in *Journal of Bibl. Lit.*, *XXI*, 119.

61. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 84a–84b, partly following older sources; comp. BR 86. 14, and text on pp. 342, 442. Issachar, as the ancestor of the “tribe of the wise” (comp. note 391), gives a wise counsel.

62. MHG I, 565; BR 84. 19; Lekah and Targum Yerushalmi on Gen. 37. 31. Zohar I, 185b adds: Just as Jacob deceived his father by means of a young goat, even so was he deceived by means of a young goat. Comp. notes 65, 87–88 and footnote 88 on p. 265. As to the gravity of the sin, comp. note 50.

63. 12 Testaments, Zebulun 4.

64. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 84a–85a, which in many points resembles the description given by Philo, *De Josepho*, 3. The lamentation on Joseph closes with the acknowledgment of God’s justice צדק הדין. Compare with pp. 233–234 and note 256 appertaining to it. Joseph’s coat, soiled with blood and dust (comp. Philo, *loc. cit.*; Yashar 84b; *Da’at* and *Hadar* on Gen. 37. 31), was brought to Jacob. According to Yashar the coat was brought by the swift messenger Naphtali (compare with footnote 216, on p. 291); but the older sources maintain that it was Judah (BR 84. 8 and 95. 2; Tan. B. I, 209; BaR 13. 14; Aggadat Bereshit 60, 124), and that lots were drawn to decide who should bring the message to their father. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 37. 25 agrees with the older sources, but in 37. 32 it states that the sons of the bondwomen brought the sad news to their father.

65. Jub. 34. 14–19; comp. note 62. According to the views of the Rabbis, Bilhah survived Jacob; see text on p. 421. Dinah is mentioned in Gen. 46. 15 among the members of Jacob’s family who emigrated to Egypt many years after Joseph had been sold into slavery. Comp. note 96.

66. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 85a–85b. This legend seems to be of Arabic origin, since in genuinely Jewish legends animals do not talk.

67. Soferim 21; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 37. 33. The latter source made use of BR 84. 19, but changed the unconscious prophecy of the Midrash into a conscious one. On the number 12 in Jewish legends, comp. Zunz, *Literaturgeschichte*, 601–602, and see further ER II, 29–30; Tan. B. I, 181 and 222; MHG II, 4.

68. PRE 38; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 2; MHG I, 564. Comp. notes 66, 198, and 370.

69. BR 84. 21; comp. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 85a, where Isaac’s mourning for Joseph is spoken of. Different views have been expressed with regard to Jacob’s daughters mentioned in Gen. 37. 35. According to one opinion, the daughters-in-law are meant by the word “daughters,” but another view maintains that this word refers to the twin-sisters of

the twelve sons; compare with the sources cited in note 170 on p. 285. Yashar, *loc. cit.*, has בנות עבדיו, the daughters of his slaves, instead of בנותיו. On Isaac “the prophet” compare with note 78 on p. 264.

70. Tan. B. I, 180 and 221. BR 24. 5, Shir 15. 6, and Aggadat Bereshit 72, 141–142, dwell upon the fact that the existence of the twelve tribes is a part of the plan of creation. Were it not for his sin, Adam would have been the father of the twelve tribes. See also notes 67 and 428.

71. Rashi on Gen. 37. 35, which is based upon an unknown midrashic source somewhat similar to Tan. B. I, 204 and Tan. Wa-Yiggash 9; but neither of these two is Rashi’s source. Comp. note 320.

72. BR 84. 20; Megillah 17a. Compare with note 2 and note 240 on p. 297.

73. BR 84. 20; Esther 4. 1.

## JUDAH AND HIS SONS

When the sons of Jacob saw how inconsolable their father was, they went to Judah, and said to him, “This great misfortune is thy fault.” Judah replied: “It was I that asked you, What profit is it if we slay our brother and conceal his blood? and now you say the sin lies at my door.” The brethren continued to argue: “But it was thou that didst say, Come and let us sell him to the Ishmaelites, and we followed thy advice. Hadst thou said, Let us restore him to his father, we had heeded these words of thine as well.”

The brethren hereupon deprived Judah of his dignity, for hitherto he had been their king, and they also excluded him from their fellowship, and he had to seek his fortune alone.<sup>74</sup> Through the mediation of his chief shepherd Hirah, he became acquainted with the Canaanitish king of Adullam, Barsan by name. Though he was well aware of the corruption of the generations of Canaan, he permitted passion to get the better of him, and took a Canaanite to wife. The Adullamite king gave a banquet in his honor, at which his daughter Bath-shua poured the wine, and



intoxicated by wine and passion Judah took her and married her.<sup>75</sup> Judah's action may be compared to that of the lion who passes a carrion and eats of it, though a cur preceding him on the way had refused to touch it. Even Esau came in time to acknowledge that the daughters of Canaan were wicked, and the lion Judah must needs take one of them to wife.<sup>76</sup> The holy spirit cried out against Judah when he married the Canaanite woman of Adullam, saying, "The glory of Israel went down in Adullam."<sup>77</sup>

The first-born son of Judah from this marriage was named Er, "the childless," a suitable name for him that died without begetting any issue.<sup>78</sup> At Judah's desire, Er married Tamar, a daughter of Aram, the son of Shem, but because she was not a Canaanitish woman, his mother used artifices against her, and he did not know her, and an angel of the Lord killed him on the third day after his wedding. Then Judah gave Tamar to his second son Onan, the marriage taking place before the week of the wedding festivities for Er had elapsed. A whole year Onan lived with Tamar without knowing her, and when, finally, Judah uttered threats against him on that account, he did, indeed, have intercourse with her, but, giving heed to the injunctions of his mother, he took care not to beget any children with her.<sup>79</sup> He, too, died on account of his iniquity, and his name Onan, "mourning," was well chosen, for very soon was his father called upon to mourn for him.<sup>80</sup> Now Judah conceived the plan of marrying Tamar to his youngest son Shelah, but his wife would not permit it. She hated Tamar because she was not of the daughters of Canaan like herself, and while Judah was away from home, Bath-shua chose a wife for her son Shelah from the daughters of Canaan. Judah was very angry at Bath-shua for what she had done, and also God poured out His wrath upon her, for on account of her wickedness she had to die,<sup>81</sup> and her death happened a year after that of her two sons.

Now that Bath-shua was dead, Judah might have carried out his wish and married Tamar to his youngest son. But he waited for Shelah to grow up, because he feared for his life, seeing that Tamar had brought death to two husbands before him. So she remained a widow in her father's house for two years. Endowed with the gift of prophecy, Tamar knew that she was appointed to be the ancestress of David and of the Messiah, and she determined to venture upon an extreme measure in order to make sure of fulfilling her destiny.<sup>82</sup> Accordingly, when the holy spirit revealed to her that Judah was going up to Timnah,<sup>83</sup> she put off from her the garments of her widowhood, and sat in the gate of Abraham's tent, and there she encountered Judah.<sup>84</sup> All the time she lived in the house of her father-in-law, he had never seen her face, for in her virtue and chastity she had always kept it covered, and now when Judah met her, he did not recognize her. It was as a reward for her modesty that God made her to become the mother of the royal line of David, and the ancestress of Isaiah, and his father Amoz as well, both of whom were prophets and of royal blood.<sup>85</sup>

Judah passed Tamar by without paying any attention to her, and she raised her eyes heavenward, and said, "O Lord of the world, shall I go forth empty from the house of this pious man?" Then God sent the angel that is appointed over the passion of love, and he compelled Judah to turn back.<sup>86</sup> With prophetic caution, Tamar demanded that, as a pledge for the reward he promised her, he leave with her his signet, his mantle, and his staff, the symbols of royalty, judgeship, and Messiahship, the three distinctions of the descendants of Tamar from her union with Judah. When Judah sent her the promised reward, a kid of the goats, by the hand of his friend, in order to receive the pledges from her hand, Tamar could not be found, and he feared to make further search for her, lest he be put to shame. But Tamar, who



soon discerned that she was with child, felt very happy and proud, for she knew that she would be the mother of kings and redeemers.<sup>87</sup>

When her state became known, she was forcibly dragged before the court, in which Isaac, Jacob, and Judah sat as judges. Judah, being the youngest of the judges and the least considerable in dignity, was the first to give a decision, for thus it is prescribed in criminal cases, that the prominent judges overawe not the lesser and influence their decisions unduly. It was the opinion of Judah that the woman was liable to the penalty of death by burning, for she was the daughter of the high priest Shem, and death by fire is the punishment ordained by the law for a high priest's daughter that leads an unchaste life.<sup>88</sup>

The preparations for her execution were begun. In vain Tamar searched for the three pledges she had received from Judah, she could not find them, and almost she lost hope that she would be able to wring a confession from her father-in-law. She raised her eyes to God, and prayed: "I supplicate Thy grace, O God, Thou who givest ear to the cry of the distressed in the hour of his need, answer me, that I may be spared to bring forth the three holy children, who will be ready to suffer death by fire, for the sake of the glory of Thy Name." And God granted her petition, and sent the angel Michael down to succor her. He put the pledges in a place in which Tamar could not fail to see them, and she took them, and threw them before the feet of the judges, with the words: "By the man whose these are am I with child, but though I perish in the flames, I will not betray him. I hope in the Lord of the world, that He will turn the heart of the man, so that he will make confession thereof." Then Judah rose up, and said: "With your permission, my brethren, and ye men of my father's house, I make it known that with what measure a man metes, it shall be measured unto him, be it for good or for evil,

but happy the man that acknowledgeth his sins. Because I took the coat of Joseph, and colored it with the blood of a kid, and then laid it at the feet of my father, saying, Know now whether it be thy son's coat or not, therefore must I now confess, before the court, unto whom belongeth this signet, this mantle, and this staff. But it is better that I be put to shame in this world than I should be put to shame in the other world, before the face of my pious father. It is better that I should perish in a fire that can be extinguished than I should be cast into hell fire, which devourer other fires. Now, then, I acknowledge that Tamar is innocent. By me is she with child, not because she indulged in illicit passion, but because I held back her marriage with my son Shelah." Then a heavenly voice was heard to say: "Ye are both innocent! It was the will of God that it should happen!"<sup>89</sup>

The open confession of Judah induced his oldest brother Reuben to make public acknowledgment of the sin he had committed against his father, for he had kept it a secret until then.<sup>90</sup>

Tamar gave birth to twin sons, Perez and Zerah, both resembling their father in bravery and piety.<sup>91</sup> She called the first Perez, "mighty," because she said, "Thou didst show thyself of great power, and it is meet and proper that thou shouldst be strong, for thou art destined to possess the kingdom."<sup>92</sup> The second son was called Zerah, because he appeared from out of the womb before his brother, but he was forced back again to make way for Perez.<sup>93</sup> These two, Perez and Zerah, were sent out as spies by Joshua, and the line that Rahab bound in the window of her house as a token to the army of the Israelites, she received from Zerah. It was the scarlet thread that the midwife had bound upon his hand, to mark him as the child that appeared first and withdrew.<sup>94</sup>



74. Tan. B. I, 181, 183, 209; BR 85. 3; DR 7. 4; Tan. 'Ekeb 6; ShR 42. 3; Aggadat Bereshit 60, 123–124; Sotah 13b; Tan. Ki-Tissa 22; Zohar I, 186a. In all these sources Judah is blamed for two things: First for his failure to complete the good deed he began, since he might have restored Joseph to his father after he saved him from death and not sold him into slavery (compare with p. 347). Secondly, for having delivered Joseph's coat to his father with the words "Discern now whether it is thy son's coat or not" (Gen. 37. 23). Judah's punishment for these deceitful words correspond to his sin: Tamar said to him: "Discern, I pray thee, whose are these, etc." (*ibid.* 38. 25). Comp. notes 46, 64. That Judah was the leader of his brethren is also found in Philo, *De Josepho*, 32. On the basis of the Haggadah in the Midrashim just quoted, Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 38. 1 paraphrases וִירָר by "And he became poor"; comp. Yerushalmi Peah I, 19a, and WR 34. 13, for the explanation of מִרְדִּים in Is. 58. 7. Comp. note 95.

75. 12 Testaments, Judah 9, 8, and 11 (verses 1–2 in the last passage ought to be transferred to 8. 2). On Judah's marriage see also text on pp. 347 and 439.

76. MHG I, 569–570. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 38. 3 dwells upon the fact that Judah did not marry his wife before converting her to Judaism. Comp. note 96.

77. BR 85. 1; Tan. B. I, 182; Aggadat Bereshit 63, 128.

78. BR 85. 4; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 38. 3; MHG I, 570.

79. 12 Testaments, Judah 10. The Bible does not specify the nature of Er's sin; but the Rabbis maintain that he committed the same sin as Onan; see Yerushalmi Ketubot 7, 31 (מִצְרָה=עַר); BR 85. 4; Yebamot 34b; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 38. 7; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 90b. It is possible that in the Hebrew original of the Testaments the same view was expressed. Comp. Excursus II; Judah. On the expression חֹרֶשׁ בְּגוֹת דֵּשׁ מִבְּנִים וְזוֹרָה מִבְּחוּץ used in BR to describe onanism (severely condemned in rabbinic sources; comp., e. g., Niddah 13a), see MHG I, 570; PRE 21 (beginning); Shir 4. 13. While 12 Testaments, *loc. cit.*, and Jub. 41. 1 describe Tamar as the daughter of Aram, the rabbinic sources declare Shem to have been her father. It is true that Shem was the father of Aram (Gen. 10. 21), and there would be no difficulty in taking "father" in the sense of "grandfather." Moreover in view of the fact that Shem is by far more famous than his son Aram, the reason for describing Tamar as the daughter of Shem is quite obvious. Nevertheless the context in which the Rabbis speak of Tamar as Shem's daughter (compare with p. 345) shows clearly that they were of the opinion that she was his daughter and not his grand-daughter; comp. BR 85. 10; Tan. B. I, 187; Aggadat Bereshit 63, 129; Ruth R (end); Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.* Only Yashar, *loc. cit.*, considers Tamar

to have been a grand-daughter of Shem by his first-born son Elam. Comp. Excursus II; Judah. For the etymological explanations of the name Tamar, see Lekah and Sekel on Gen. 38. 6.

80. BR 85. 4; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 38. 4; MHG I, 570.

81. 12 Testaments, Judah 10–11. In Sotah 13b and in the sources cited in note 74 the death of Judah's wife and children is declared to have been his punishment for having sold Joseph into slavery. For he was mainly responsible for this sin; compare with pp. 343–344. Many etymological explanations are given of the name Shelah, see BR 85. 4; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 38. 5; MHG I, 570. With regard to בְּכִזִּיב (Gen. 38. 5) an opinion is quoted according to which it is not a name of a place but a noun derived from the root כִּזַּב; this verse is thus to be translated: "And she stopped bearing children after the birth of this one"; see BR, *loc. cit.*, where two explanations of בְּכִזִּיב are combined into one; Targum Yerushalmi and MHG, *loc. cit.*

82. BR 85. 6–9; Sotah; 10a–10b; Yer. Ketubot 13 (beginning); MHG I, 569 ('כ'); Zohar I, 188a–188b. According to Seder 'Olam 2, the difference in age between Er and Onan was only one year; they married at the age of seven, and died a year after their marriage. Philo, *De Virtutibus*, *De Nobilitate*, 6, gives an idealized picture of Tamar, "who was reared in the house of idolaters, but became converted to the belief in one God, and by the purity of her life she acquired nobility for her descendants." He further adds that although Tamar was of the race of the Palestinian Syrians (not Canaanitish!), she was nevertheless a free woman; her parents, too, were free people, yea, probably distinguished persons. On the view that Tamar was a convert to Judaism from idolatry, see note 76 and Sotah 10a, where she is described as a proselyte. For a different opinion comp. note 79.

83. MHG I, 572.

84. Sotah 10a, as a haggadic interpretation of עֵינִים בִּפְתָח (Gen. 38. 14), which is explained to mean: The gate to which the eyes of all are turned. For other haggadic interpretations of these words comp. Yerushalmi Sotah 1. 16d–17a; BR 85. 7; Tan. B. I, 186–187; Shemuel 6, 67; MHG I, 573 (כ"ו); Targum Yerushalmi, *ad loc.* See also note 86.

85. Megillah 10b; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 38. 15, BR 85. 8 and Tan. I, 187 warn against following Judah's example and refraining, out of excessive prudery, from looking at one's female relatives. If Judah had not been too modest, the shocking incident with Tamar would never have happened.

86. BR 85. 7, and the sources referred to in note 84. Tan. B. I, 187, has Michael instead of the "angel of love," of the other sources. On the text of Tan. see *Hadar*, Gen. 38. 15. When Moses ascended into heaven, "the great prince"



Michael met him, with the intention of consuming him with the breath of his mouth, and said unto him: "What hast thou, that art born of woman, to do here in the place of the holy ones (=angels)?" Moses rejoined: "And who art thou, and what is thy rank?" "I am as important as Judah the son of Jacob," replied Michael. From this it may be inferred that Judah was a very pious and holy man. He be-took himself to Tamar only after he had been compelled to do so by an angel; Tan. B. (Introduction) 128–129; read **שעל ידי שהרי** instead of **שעל ידי**.

87. BR 85. 9; 12 Testaments, Judah 15. 3, and in abridged form 12. 4. Shu'aib, Wa-Yesheb, 18d, quotes, from an unknown Midrash, a different explanation of the three pledges.—Just as Jacob deceived his father by means of a young goat (comp. note 62), even so did Tamar deceive Judah by means of a young goat; BR, *loc. cit.* Comp. note 74.

88. Tan. B. I, 187; BR 85. 10; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 38. 24. Comp. note 79, and the following note.

89. Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 38. 25–26; Sotah 10b, which reads: Sammael hid the pledges, so that Tamar's innocence should not be proved thereby; but Gabriel (=Michael in Palestinian sources; comp. Index, *s. v.*) brought them back. See also Tan. B., Introduction, 127 (here also Gabriel is mentioned; but this passage is not based on the Talmud); Makkot 23b, where it is stated that Shem was the presiding judge, and accordingly in Tan. B. I, 187 **שם** should be read and not **שם**; BR 85. 1 (here the Holy One, blessed be He, **הקב"ה**, takes the place of the angel); Koheleth 10. 16; Tehillim 72, 325; Shemuel 14, 91. In the last-named five sources the additional remark is found to the effect that on this occasion, as well as at the time when Samuel asserted his incorruptibility and disinterestedness (1 Sam. 12. 3, *seq.*), and when Solomon pronounced his judgment on the dispute of the two mothers (1 Kings 3. 24, *seq.*), a heavenly voice was heard to corroborate the statement made by the mortals.—Tan. B. I, 187–188, and Ag-gadar Bereshit 17, 35, remark that the "three youths" were saved from death in the furnace as a reward for the pious deed of their ancestor Judah, who had saved three lives from death by fire: Tamar and her two sons. Comp. also MHG I, 577–578.

90. Sifre D., 348; Midrash Tannaim 214; Tan. B. I, 188. Comp. note 60, and text on p. 820. As a reward for his frank confession of his sin, Judah was granted royal dignity; Tosefta Berakot 4. 17; Mekilta Beshallah 5, 31b, and parallel passages cited by Friedmann; ShR 30. 19.

91. BR 85. 9; Tan. B. I, 188, which remarks: They were kings like their father; MHG I, 574.

92. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 38. 29, and somewhat different in BR 85. 19, where the name Perez (=פרץ) is taken to be an allusion to the Messiah, who is called "the breaker" (comp. Micah 2. 13), and who is a descendant of Perez, the son of Judah. See also Lekah Gen., *loc. cit.*, and

MHG I, 579, which reads: Perez, he who broke through his mother's womb.

93. MHG I, 579; Lekah Gen. 38. 29. Comp. also Targum Yerushalmi Gen., *loc. cit.*, which remarks: Zerah, the shining (=the scarlet) thread.

94. MHG I, 336–337. The source of MHG is Mishle, but not of our editions.

## THE WIVES OF THE SONS OF JACOB

Judah was the first of the sons of Jacob to enter wedlock. After the sale of Joseph to the Midianites, his brethren had said to Judah, "If conditions were as before, our father would provide wives for us now. As it is, he is entirely absorbed by his grief for Joseph, and we must look about for wives ourselves. Thou art our chief, and thou shouldst marry first."

Judah's marriage with 'Alit the daughter of the noble merchant Shua, which was consummated at Adullam, the residence of his friend Hirah, or, as he was called later, Hiram, king of Tyre, was not happy. His two oldest sons died, and shortly thereafter his wife also. It was Judah's punishment for having begun a good deed and left it unfinished, for "he who begins a good deed, and does not execute it to the end, brings down misfortune upon his own head." Judah had rescued Joseph from death, but it was his suggestion to sell him into slavery. Had he urged them to restore the lad to his father, his brethren would have obeyed his words. He was lacking in constancy to persist until he had completed the work of Joseph's deliverance, which he had begun.<sup>95</sup>

In the same year, the year of Joseph's misfortune, all his other brethren married, too. Reuben's wife was named Elyoram, the daughter of the Canaanite Uzzi of Timnah. Simon married his sister Dinah first, and then a second wife. When Simon and Levi massacred the men of Shechem, Dinah refused to leave the city and follow her brethren,



saying, “Whither shall I carry my shame?” But Simon swore he would marry her, as he did later, and when she died in Egypt, he took her body to the Holy Land and buried it there. Dinah bore her brother a son,<sup>96</sup> and from her union with Shechem, the son of Hamor, sprang a daughter, Asenath by name, afterward the wife of Joseph. When this daughter was born to Dinah, her brethren, the sons of Jacob, wanted to kill her, that the finger of men might not point at the fruit of sin in their father’s house. But Jacob took a piece of tin, inscribed the Holy Name upon it, and bound it about the neck of the girl, and he put her under a thorn-bush, and abandoned her there. An angel carried the babe down to Egypt, where Potiphar adopted her as his child, for his wife was barren. Years thereafter, when Joseph travelled through the land as viceroy, the maidens threw gifts at him, to make him turn his eyes in their direction and give them the opportunity of gazing upon his beauty. Asenath possessed nothing that would do as a present, therefore she took off the amulet suspended from her neck, and gave it to him. Thus Joseph became acquainted with her lineage, and he married her, seeing that she was not an Egyptian, but one connected with the house of Jacob through her mother.<sup>97</sup>

Beside the son of Dinah, Simon had another son, whose name was Saul, by Bunah, the damsel he had taken captive in the campaign against Shechem.

Levi and Issachar married two daughters of Jobab, the grandson of Eber; the wife of the former was named ‘Adinah, the wife of the latter, Aridah. Dan’s wife was Elflalet, a daughter of the Moabite Hamudan. For a long time their marriage remained childless, finally they had a son, whom they called Hushim. Gad and Naphtali married women from Haran, two sisters, daughters of Amoram, a grandson of Nahor. Naphtali’s wife, Merimit, was the older

of the two, and the younger, the wife of Gad, was named ‘Uzit.

Asher’s first wife was ‘Adon, the daughter of Ephlal, a grandson of Ishmael. She died childless, and he married a second wife, Hadorah, a daughter of Abimael, the grandson of Shem. She had been married before, her first husband having been Malchiel, also a grandson of Shem, and the issue of this first marriage was a daughter, Serah by name. When Asher brought his wife to Canaan, the three year old orphan Serah came with them. She was raised in the house of Jacob, and she walked in the way of pious children, and God gave her beauty, wisdom, and sagacity.

Zebulun’s wife was Maroshah, the daughter of Molad, a grandson of Midian, the son of Abraham by Keturah.

For Benjamin, when he was but ten years old, Jacob took Mahlia to wife, the daughter of Aram, the grandson of Terah and she bore him five sons. At the age of eighteen he married a second wife, ‘Arbat, the daughter of Zimran, a son of Abraham by Keturah, and by her also he had five sons.<sup>98</sup>

---

95. BR 85. 2–3 and the sources cited in note 74. To exonerate Judah of the sin of having married a Canaanitish woman, it was necessary to explain כַּנְעָנִי (Gen. 38. 2) as “merchant”; comp. BR, *loc. cit.*, and Pesahim 50a, as well as Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi, *ad loc.* For a different view see text on p. 344, and notes 75–77. The name ‘Alet is only found in Yashar, Wa-Yesheb, 89b; comp. also Sekel, *ad loc.*, 226. On Hiram=Hirah see footnote 105 on p. 1105. Concerning the wives of Jacob’s sons; comp. note 69, and text on p. 285.

96. BR 80. 11; MHG I, 682; Yashar Wa-Yishlah, 60b and 89b. The older sources would not admit that any one of Jacob’s sons married a Canaanitish woman (comp. the preceding note), and this gave rise to the view that כַּנְעָנִית (Gen. 46. 10) refers to Dinah, whereas Yashar in an uncritical manner makes Simeon marry Dinah, and, as his second wife, the Canaanitish woman Bunah. As to the name בִּנְיָה, comp. 1 Chron. 2. 25; but there it is the name of a man, and it is quite possible that in Yashar it is the Latin *bona*; compare with text on p. 309. On the basis of the statement in BR, *loc. cit.*, that Dinah’s body was brought from



Egypt to Palestine, the medieval authors maintain that her grave is at Arbel; see Shu'aib, Wa-Yishlah, 16a, and Wa-Yehi, 24a, as well as *Seder ha-Dorot*, 2198. Comp. note 65.

97. PRE 38, which is the source of Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 41. 45 and 46. 20; Abkir in Yalkut I, 146; Judah b. Barzillai 63 (the source is not given); Soferim (end). A somewhat different version of this legend is found in *Hadar* and *Da'at* on Gen. 41. 45 (only these sources give the episode about Asenath handing over her amulet to Joseph), as well as R. Bahya, *ad loc. Hadar*, Gen. 34. 1, however, literally agrees with PRE, and in *Da'at loc. cit.* (Tosafot), reference is made to this passage of *Hadar* with the word כדפרישית. For a third version of the Asenath legend compare with pp. 405, 423, as well as note 188. The very elaborate Asenath legend found in Syriac, though undoubtedly of Jewish origin, differs in many essential points from the rabbinic version of this legend. An eagle (not an angel; in PRE it is Michael) brings the babe from Palestine, and places her on the altar of an Egyptian temple, where she is found by the priest Potiphar who, being childless, adopts her. See Oppenheim, *Fabula Josephi et Asenathae*, Berlin 1886, 4–5. Abu'l-Rabi', in *Perushim le-Rashi*, on Gen. 46. 10, gives an abridged form of this Syriac legend, as he “found it in the words of our masters”; comp. Perles, *R.E.J.* 21, 254, and 12, 87–92, as well as in *Magyar Zsidó Szemlé* 8, 294. The old Midrashim take Asenath to have been the real daughter of Potiphar; see note 109.

98. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 80a–90b. It is to be noted that of all the sons of Jacob, only Reuben, Simeon, and Judah took Canaanitish wives. The Bible (Gen. 35. 2 and 46. 10) is the authority for this statement of Yashar with regard to Simeon and Judah; but it is difficult to give the reason for assuming that Reuben married an undesirable woman except that it is likely that the two younger brothers followed the example of the oldest one. Comp. note 96 which has some remarks concerning Simeon's second wife. According to Jub. 44. 13 Simeon's Canaanitish wife came from Zephath; comp. Judges 1. 17. On Benjamin marrying at the age of eighteen, see Abot 6. 2 (does not belong to the Mishnah) and Kiddushin 39a (top).

## JOSEPH THE SLAVE OF POTIPHAR

When Joseph was sold as a slave to the Ishmaelites, he kept silent out of respect for his brethren, and did not tell his masters that he was a son of Jacob, a great and powerful man. Even when he came to the Midianites with the

Ishmaelites, and the former asked after his parentage, he still said he was a slave, only in order not to put his brethren to shame. But the most distinguished of the Midianites rebuked Joseph, saying, “Thou art no slave, thy appearance betrayeth thee,” and he threatened him with death unless he acknowledged the truth. Joseph, however, was steadfast, he would not act treacherously toward his brethren.

Arrived in Egypt, the owners of Joseph could come to no agreement regarding him. Each desired to have sole and exclusive possession of him. They therefore decided to leave him with a shopkeeper until they should come back to Egypt again with their merchandise. And God let Joseph find grace in the sight of the shopkeeper. All that he had, his whole house, he put into Joseph's hand, and therefore the Lord blessed him with much silver and gold, and Joseph remained with him for three months and five days.

At that time there came from Memphis the wife of Potiphar, and she cast her eyes upon Joseph, of whose comeliness of person she had heard from the eunuchs. She told her husband how that a certain shopkeeper had grown rich through a young Hebrew, and she added: “But it is said that the youth was stolen away out of the land of Canaan. Go, therefore, and sit in judgment upon his owner, and take the youth unto thy house, that the God of the Hebrews may bless thee, for the grace of heaven rests upon the youth.”

Potiphar summoned the shopkeeper, and when he appeared before him, he spoke harshly to him, saying: “What is this I hear? that thou stealest souls from the land of Canaan, and dost carry on traffic with them?” The shopkeeper protested his innocence, and he could not be made to recede from his assertion, that a company of Ishmaelites had left Joseph in his charge temporarily, until they should return. Potiphar had him stripped naked and beaten, but he continued to reiterate the same statement.



Then Potiphar summoned Joseph. The youth prostrated himself before this chief of the eunuchs, for he was third in rank of the officers of Pharaoh. And he addressed Joseph, and said, "Art thou a slave or a free-born man?" and Joseph replied, "A slave." Potiphar continued to question him, "Whose slave art thou?" Joseph: "I belong to the Ishmaelites." Potiphar: "How wast thou made a slave?" Joseph: "They bought me in the land of Canaan."

But Potiphar refused to give credence to what he said, and he had also him stripped and beaten. The wife of Potiphar, standing by the door, saw how Joseph was abused, and she sent word to her husband, "Thy verdict is unjust, for thou punishest the free-born youth that was stolen away from his place as though he were the one that had committed a crime." As Joseph held firmly to what he had said, Potiphar ordered him to prison, until his masters should return. In her sinful longing for him, his wife wanted to have Joseph in her own house, and she remonstrated with her husband in these words: "Wherefore dost thou keep the captive, nobly-born slave a prisoner? Thou shouldst rather set him at liberty and have him serve thee." He answered, "The law of the Egyptians does not permit us to take what belongs to another before all titles are made clear," and Joseph stayed in prison for twenty-four days, until the return of the Ishmaelites to Egypt.

Meanwhile they had heard somewhere that Joseph was the son of Jacob, and they therefore said to him: "Why didst thou pretend that thou wast a slave? See, we have information that thou art the son of a powerful man in Canaan, and thy father mourns for thee in sackcloth." Joseph was on the point of divulging his secret, but he kept a check upon himself for the sake of his brethren, and he repeated that he was a slave.

Nevertheless the Ishmaelites decided to sell him, that he be not found in their hands, for

they feared the revenge of Jacob, who, they knew, was in high favor with the Lord and with men. The shopkeeper begged the Ishmaelites to rescue him from the legal prosecution of Potiphar, and clear him of the suspicion of man theft. The Ishmaelites in turn had a conference with Joseph, and bade him testify before Potiphar that they had bought him for money. He did so, and then the chief of the eunuchs liberated him from prison, and dismissed all parties concerned.

With the permission of her husband, Potiphar's wife sent a eunuch to the Ishmaelites, bidding him to buy Joseph, but he returned and reported that they demanded an exorbitant price for the slave. She dispatched a second eunuch, charging him to conclude the bargain, and though they asked one mina of gold, or even two, he was not to be sparing of money, he was to be sure to buy the slave and bring him to her. The eunuch gave the Ishmaelites eighty pieces of gold for Joseph, telling his mistress, however, that he had paid out a hundred pieces. Joseph noticed the deception, but he kept silent, that the eunuch might not be put to shame.<sup>99</sup>

Thus Joseph became the slave of the idolatrous priest Potiphar, or Poti-pha-rah, as he was sometimes called.<sup>100</sup> He had secured possession of the handsome youth for a lewd purpose, but the angel Gabriel mutilated him in such manner that he could not accomplish it.<sup>101</sup> His master soon had occasion to notice that Joseph was as pious as he was beautiful, for whenever he was occupied with his ministrations, he would whisper a prayer: "O Lord of the world, Thou art my trust, Thou art my protection. Let me find grace and favor in Thy sight and in the sight of all that see me, and in sight of my master Potiphar." When Potiphar noticed the movement of his lips, he said to Joseph, "Dost thou purpose to cast a spell upon me?" "Nay," replied the youth, "I am beseeching God to let me find favor in thine eyes."



His prayer was heard. Potiphar convinced himself that God was with Joseph. Sometimes he would make a test of Joseph's miraculous powers. If he brought him a glass of hippocras, he would say, "I would rather have wine mixed with absinthe," and straightway the spiced wine was changed into bitter wine. Whatever he desired, he could be sure to get from Joseph, and he saw clearly that God fulfilled the wishes of his slave. Therefore he put all the keys of his house into his hand, and he knew not aught that was with him,<sup>102</sup> keeping back nothing from Joseph but his wife.<sup>103</sup> Seeing that the Shekinah rested upon him, Potiphar treated Joseph not as a slave, but as a member of his family, for he said, "This youth is not cut out for a slave's work, he is worthy of a prince's place."<sup>104</sup> Accordingly, he provided instruction for him in the arts, and ordered him to have better fare than the other slaves.<sup>105</sup>

Joseph thanked God for his new and happy state. He prayed, "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, that Thou hast caused me to forget my father's house." What made his present fortunes so agreeable was that he was removed from the envy and jealousy of his brethren. He said: "When I was in my father's house, and he gave me something pretty, my brethren begrudged me the present, and now, O Lord, I thank Thee that I live amid plenty." Free from anxieties, he turned his attention to his external appearance. He painted his eyes, dressed his hair, and aimed to be elegant in his walk. But God spake to him, saying, "Thy father is mourning in sackcloth and ashes, while thou dost eat, drink, and dress thy hair. Therefore I will stir up thy mistress against thee, and thou shalt be embarrassed."<sup>106</sup> Thus Joseph's secret wish was fulfilled, that he might be permitted to prove his piety under temptation, as the piety of his fathers had been tested.<sup>107</sup>

99. 12 Testaments, Joseph 11–16. On the text and the rabbinic parallels to this description of the life of Joseph, see Excursus II., Joseph.

100. BR 86. 3, where several explanations are given why the same man is called Potiphar as Joseph's master (Gen. 39. 1), and Potiphara as his father-in-law (*ibid.* 41. 50). The identity of Potiphar with Potiphara is also assumed in Jub. 40. 10; 12 Testaments, Joseph 18. 3; Origen and Jerome on Gen. 37. 36. See the following note.

101. Sotah 13b; BR 86. 3; Tan. B. I, 185; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 39. 1; MHG I, 579 (this passage is abridged in Shemuel 5, 63); Jerome on Gen. 37. 36. The question how the eunuch Potiphar could be the father-in-law of Joseph has already attracted the attention of Philo; see *De Allegor.*, 84. The rabbinic Haggadah offers two answers to this question: 1) Asenath was Potiphar's adopted daughter (comp. note 97); 2) she was born before he was made a eunuch by an angel as a punishment for his evil intentions towards Joseph. Comp. the sources quoted at the beginning of this note, as well as R. Bahya, Gen. 41. 45. Tehillim 105, 451, states: As soon as Joseph became powerful, he put Potiphar in prison for life. Was this a punishment for his evil intentions towards Joseph?

102. Tan. Wa-Yesheb 8; Tan. B. I, 186; BR 86. 4–5. Comp. also Tan. B. IV, 44; Tan. Naso 30; BaR 14. 3. In the last-named three sources it is stated that Joseph's master said to him: "I should like to see your God." Whereupon Joseph replied: "Thou canst not look straight at the sun; how canst thou expect to see God?" The proof for the invisibility of God from the impossibility to stare at the sun is very likely taken from Hullin 60a (=Abkir in Yalkut I, 396), where it is quoted as the answer of R. Joshua to a Roman emperor (=Hadrian); it is already found in Xenophon's *Memor.* IV, 3. 14. Jewish and Christian apologists often mention this proof; comp. Gudemann, *Religionsgeschichtliche Studien*, 117. To the references given by him the following are to be added: Philo, *De Abrahamo*, 16; Mangey I, 12. Theophilus, 1. 2; Origen, *Con. Cels.* 6. 66. Comp. Marmorstein in *Debir*, I, 123 and Ginzberg in *Ha-Goren*, IX, 62. Schapiro, *Haggadische Elemente*, 76, misunderstood the Midrashim, and speaks of Joseph's attempt to convert the king of Egypt. Comp. note 195.

103. BR 86. 6; ShR 1. 32; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 39. 6. On the euphemistic expression "to eat bread" for "to have sexual intercourse," see Shabbat 62b and Ketubot 13a.

104. MHG I, 581; BR 86. 5. Comp. also Berakot 42a; BR 86. 6; Zohar I, 189.

105. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 4. 1. Philo, *De Josepho*, 8, likewise remarks that in Potiphar's house Joseph was given the opportunity to acquire the knowledge necessary for a statesman; for the management of a house is the management of a state in miniature.



106. BR 87. 3–4; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 8; MHG I, 583. Le-kah, Lam. 1. 67, reads in Ekah 1.71: 'כִּד יוֹסֵף... בְּמִצְרַיִם וְכוּ'; but this reading is certainly untenable.

107. BR 87. 4. 12 Testaments, Joseph 3, speaks of the ten temptations which Joseph withstood; compare with p. 187. The wish of the pious to prove their piety under temptations is also mentioned with regard to David; see text on p. 928.

## JOSEPH AND ZULEIKA

“**T**hrow the stick up in the air, it will always return to its original place.” Like Rachel his mother, Joseph was of ravishing beauty, and the wife of his master was filled with invincible passion for him.<sup>108</sup> Her feeling was heightened by the astrologic forecast that she was destined to have descendants through Joseph. This was true, but not in the sense in which she understood the prophecy. Joseph married her daughter Asenath later on, and she bore him children, thus fulfilling what had been read in the stars.<sup>109</sup>

In the beginning she did not confess her love to Joseph. She tried first to seduce him by artifice. On the pretext of visiting him, she would go to him at night, and, as she had no sons, she would pretend a desire to adopt him. Joseph then prayed to God in her behalf, and she bore a son. However, she continued to embrace him as though he were her own child, yet he did not notice her evil designs. Finally, when he recognized her wanton trickery, he mourned many days, and endeavored to turn her away from her sinful passion by the word of God. She, on her side, often threatened him with death, and surrendered him to castigations in order to make him amenable to her will, and when these means had no effect upon Joseph, she sought to seduce him with enticements. She would say, “I promise thee, thou shalt rule over me and all I have, if thou wilt but give thyself up to me, and thou shalt be

to me the same as my lawful husband.” But Joseph was mindful of the words of his fathers, and he went into his chamber, and fasted, and prayed to God, that He would deliver him from the toils of the Egyptian woman.

In spite of the mortifications he practiced, and though he gave the poor and the sick the food apportioned to him, his master thought he lived a luxurious life, for those that fast for the glory of God are made beautiful of countenance.

The wife of Potiphar would frequently speak to her husband in praise of Joseph’s chastity in order that he might conceive no suspicion of the state of her feelings. And, again, he would encourage Joseph secretly, telling him not to fear her husband, that he was convinced of his purity of life, and though one should carry tales to him about Joseph and herself, Potiphar would lend them no credence. And when she saw that all this was ineffectual, she approached him with the request that he teach her the word of God, saying, “If it be thy wish that I forsake idol worship, then fulfil my desire, and I will persuade that Egyptian husband of mine to abjure the idols, and we shall walk in the law of thy God.” Joseph replied, “The Lord desireth not that those who fear Him shall walk in impurity, nor hath He pleasure in the adulterer.”

Another time she came to him, and said, “If thou wilt not do my desire, I will murder the Egyptian and wed with thee according to the law.” Whereat Joseph rent his garment, and he said, “O woman, fear the Lord, and do not execute this evil deed, that thou mayest not bring destruction down upon thyself, for I will proclaim thy impious purposes to all in public.”

Again, she sent him a dish prepared with magic spells, by means of which she hoped to get him into her power. But when the eunuch set it before him, he saw the image of a man handing him a sword together with the dish, and, warned by the vision, he took good care not to



taste of the food. A few days later his mistress came to him, and asked him why he had not eaten of what she had sent him. He reproached her, saying, "How couldst thou tell me, I do not come nigh unto the idols, but only unto the Lord? The God of my fathers hath revealed thy iniquity to me through an angel, but that thou mayest know that the malice of the wicked has no power over those who fear God in purity, I shall eat thy food before thine eyes, and the God of my fathers and the angel of Abraham will be with me." The wife of Potiphar fell upon her face at the feet of Joseph, and amid tears she promised not to commit this sin again.

But her unholy passion for Joseph did not depart from her, and her distress over her unfulfilled wish made her look so ill that her husband said to her, "Why is thy countenance fallen?" And she replied, "I have a pain at my heart, and the groanings of my spirit oppress me."

Once when she was alone with Joseph, she rushed toward him crying, "I will throttle myself, or I will jump into a well or a pit, if thou wilt not yield thyself to me." Noticing her extreme agitation, Joseph endeavored to calm her with these words, "Remember, if thou makest away with thyself, thy husband's concubine, As-tcho, thy rival, will maltreat thy children, and extirpate thy memory from the earth." These words, gently spoken, had the opposite effect from that intended. They only inflamed her passion the more by feeding her hopes. She said: "There, seest thou, thou dost love me now! It sufficeth for me that thou takest thought for me and for the safety of my children. I expect now that my desire will be fulfilled." She did not know that Joseph spoke as he did for the sake of God, and not for her sake.<sup>110</sup>

His mistress, or, as she was called, Zuleika, pursued him day after day with her amorous talk and her flattery, saying: "How fair is thy appearance, how comely thy form! Never have I

seen so well-favored a slave as thou art." Joseph would reply: "God, who formed me in my mother's womb, hath created all men."

Zuleika: "How beautiful are thine eyes, with which thou hast charmed all Egyptians, both men and women!"

Joseph: "Beautiful as they may be while I am alive, so ghastly they will be to look upon in the grave."

Zuleika: "How lovely and pleasant are thy words! I pray thee, take thy harp, play and also sing, that I may hear thy words."

Joseph: "Lovely and pleasant are my words when I proclaim the praise of my God."

Zuleika: "How beautiful is thy hair! Take my golden comb, and comb it."

Joseph: "How long wilt thou continue to speak thus to me? Leave off! It were better for thee to care for thy household."

Zuleika: "There is nothing in my house that I care for, save thee alone."

But Joseph's virtue was unshaken. While she spoke thus, he did not so much as raise his eyes to look at his mistress.<sup>111</sup> He remained equally steadfast when she lavished gifts upon him, for she provided him with garments of one kind for the morning, another for noon, and a third kind for the evening. Nor could threats move him. She would say, "I will bring false accusations against thee before thy master," and Joseph would reply, "The Lord executeth judgment for the oppressed." Or, "I will deprive thee of food;" whereupon Joseph, "The Lord giveth food to the hungry." Or, "I will have thee thrown into prison;" whereupon Joseph, "The Lord looseth the prisoners." Or, "I will put heavy labor upon thee that will bend thee double;" whereupon Joseph, "The Lord raiseth up them that are bowed down." Or, "I will blind thine eyes;" whereupon Joseph, "The Lord openeth the eyes of the blind."<sup>112</sup>

When she began to exercise her blandishments upon him, he rejected them with the words,



"I fear my master." But Zuleika would say, "I will kill him." Joseph replied with indignation, "Not enough that thou wouldst make an adulterer of me, thou wouldst have me be a murderer, besides?" And he spoke furthermore, saying, "I fear the Lord my God!"

Zuleika: "Nonsense! He is not here to see thee!"

Joseph: "Great is the Lord and highly to be praised, and His greatness is unsearchable."

Thereupon she took Joseph into her chamber, where an idol hung above the bed. This she covered, that it might not be a witness of what she was about to do. Joseph said: "Though thou coverest up the eyes of the idol, remember, the eyes of the Lord run to and fro through the whole earth. Yes," continued Joseph, "I have many reasons not to do this thing for the sake of God. Adam was banished from Paradise on account of violating a light command; how much more should I have to fear the punishment of God, were I to commit so grave a sin as adultery! The Lord is in the habit of choosing a favorite member of our family as a sacrifice unto Himself. Perhaps He desireth to make choice of me, but if I do thy will, I make myself unfit to be a sacrifice unto God. Also the Lord is in the habit of appearing suddenly, in visions of the night, unto those that love Him. Thus did He appear unto Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and I fear that He may appear unto me at the very moment while I am defiling myself with thee. And as I fear God, so I fear my father, who withdrew the birthright from his first-born son Reuben, on account of an immoral act, and gave it to me. Were I to fulfil thy desire, I would share the fate of my brother Reuben."<sup>113</sup>

With such words, Joseph endeavored to cure the wife of his master of the wanton passion she had conceived for him, while he took heed to keep far from a heinous sin, not from fear of the punishment that would follow, nor

out of consideration for the opinion of men, but because he desired to sanctify the Name of God, blessed be He, before the whole world.<sup>114</sup> It was this feeling of his that Zuleika could not comprehend, and when, finally, carried away by passion, she told him in unmistakable language what she desired,<sup>115</sup> and he recoiled from her, she said to Joseph: "Why dost thou refuse to fulfil my wish? Am I not a married woman? None will find out what thou hast done." Joseph replied: "If the unmarried women of the heathen are prohibited unto us, how much more their married women?"<sup>116</sup> As the Lord liveth, I will not commit the crime thou biddest me do." In this Joseph followed the example of many pious men, who utter an oath at the moment when they are in danger of succumbing to temptation, and seek thus to gather moral courage to control their evil instincts.<sup>117</sup>

When Zuleika could not prevail upon him, to persuade him, her desire threw her into a grievous sickness, and all the women of Egypt came to visit her, and they said unto her, "Why art thou so languid and wasted, thou that lackest nothing? Is not thy husband a prince great and esteemed in the sight of the king? Is it possible that thou canst want aught of what thy heart desireth?" Zuleika answered them, saying, "This day shall it be made known unto you whence cometh the state wherein you see me."

She commanded her maid-servants to prepare food for all the women, and she spread a banquet before them in her house. She placed knives upon the table to peel the oranges, and then ordered Joseph to appear, arrayed in costly garments, and wait upon her guests. When Joseph came in, the women could not take their eyes off him, and they all cut their hands with the knives, and the oranges in their hands were covered with blood, but they, not knowing what they were doing, continued to look upon the beauty of Joseph without turning their eyes away from him.



Then Zuleika said unto them: "What have ye done? Behold, I set oranges before you to eat, and you have cut your hands." All the women looked at their hands, and, lo, they were full of blood, and it flowed down and stained their garments. They said to Zuleika, "This slave in thy house did enchant us, and we could not turn our eyes away from him on account of his beauty." She then said: "This happened to you that looked upon him but a moment, and you could not refrain yourselves! How, then, can I control myself in whose house he abideth continually, who see him go in and out day after day? How, then, should I not waste away, or keep from languishing on account of him!" And the women spake, saying: "It is true, who can look upon this beauty in the house, and refrain her feelings? But he is thy slave! Why dost thou not disclose to him that which is in thy heart, rather than suffer thy life to perish through this thing?" Zuleika answered them: "Daily do I endeavor to persuade him, but he will not consent to my wishes. I promised him everything that is fair, yet have I met with no return from him, and therefore I am sick, as you may see."

Her sickness increased upon her. Her husband and her household suspected not the cause of her decline, but all the women that were her friends knew that it was on account of the love she bore Joseph, and they advised her all the time to try to entice the youth. On a certain day, while Joseph was doing his master's work in the house, Zuleika came and fell suddenly upon him, but Joseph was stronger than she, and he pressed her down to the ground. Zuleika wept, and in a voice of supplication, and in bitterness of soul, she said to Joseph: "Hast thou ever known, seen, or heard of a woman my peer in beauty, let alone a woman with beauty exceeding mine? Yet I try daily to persuade thee, I fall into decline through love of thee, I confer all this honor upon thee, and thou wilt not hearken unto my

voice! Is it by reason of fear of thy master, that he punish thee? As the king liveth, no harm shall come upon thee from thy master on account of this thing. Now, therefore, I pray thee, listen to me, and consent unto my desire for the sake of the honor that I have conferred upon thee, and take this death away from me. For why should I die on account of thee?" Joseph remained as steadfast under these importunities as before. Zuleika, however, was not discouraged; she continued her solicitations unremittingly, day after day,<sup>118</sup> month after month, for a whole year, but always without the least success, for Joseph in his chastity did not permit himself even to look upon her, wherefore she resorted to constraint. She had an iron shackle placed upon his chin, and he was compelled to keep his head up and look her in the face.<sup>119</sup>

---

108. BR 85. 2 (87. 4 is very likely to be explained accordingly); MHG I, 596. In these sources Asenath is considered as Potiphar's real daughter, and not as his adopted child; comp. note 97.

109. BR 85. 1.

110. 12 Testaments, Joseph 3–7. On the text of this passage and on the rabbinic parallels to this description of Joseph's steadfastness, see Excursus II; Joseph.

111. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 86b. In the older Haggadah the wife of Joseph's master is nameless. But Philo, *Leg. Alleg.*, 84. 7, speaks of Pentophoe, the wife of Pharaoh's chief cook. The description of Potiphar as Pharaoh's chief cook is in accordance with the translation of שר הטבחים (Gen. 39. 1) in the Septuagint and Jub. 34. 11. Of course, the author of the Hebrew original of Jub. quoted Gen., *loc. cit.*, literally, and there is no means to ascertain in what sense he took it. Zohar III, 213b, maintains that at first Joseph pretended not to understand the Egyptian language, in order that he might be spared the passionate words of the infatuated woman. After a while he could no longer feign ignorance of the language. When she saw that her words were of no avail, she attempted to use force.

112. Yoma 35b; comp. also BR 87. 9; ARN 16, 63; MHG I, 591; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 9. Concerning the daily change of garments and the threats, see also Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 86b–89a. This source clearly shows that Yoma, *loc. cit.*, speaks of changing Joseph's garments, not those of the woman; comp. Rabbinowicz, *ad loc.*



113. BR 87. 5. The name Zulaika (of Persian origin) is only found in Yashar; comp. note 111. As to the intention of Potiphar's wife to kill him, see text on pp. 352, 429. On the view that the night is the time for divine revelations see footnote 221 on p. 292.

114. MHG I, 586 (not from BR), and similarly Philo, *De Josepho*, 9.

115. BR 87. 4; Ruth R. 3. 9. The indecent language used by Potiphar's wife is contrasted with the modest words of Ruth. Comp. Ruth 3. 9.

116. Tan. Wa-Yesheb 8, and, in a more elaborate form, Philo, *De Josepho*, 9.

117. MHG I, 584. Comp. the passages referred to by Schechter, *ad loc.*, and ER 26, 131.

118. Yashar וישב 87a–87b. The episode with the oranges (more accurate citrons אטרונים) is also found in Tan. Wa-Yesheb 5, where it is introduced with the formula "our masters say" (אמרו רבותינו), which indicates that an old source was made use of. MHG I, 590, has "bread and meat" instead of oranges, and is not directly based on Tan. Yerahmeel 91 and Sikli in the manuscript of his Talmud Torah quote Tan. See Ginzberg's remarks (badly corrupted by the printer) in *Ha-Zofeh*, IV, 34–35. Whether Yashar made use of the Koran 12. 30–33 is doubtful; the Jewish origin of the legend as given in Tan. is beyond dispute. The feigned illness of Potiphar's wife is already mentioned in 12 Testaments, Joseph 7. See also Mahzor Vitry, 342, whose source is neither Yashar nor Tan.

119. Tan. Wa-Yesheb 8, and reference is made to this passage in *Aruk*, s. v. שרית. In BR 87. 9 it is said that the shackles were used on Joseph during his imprisonment by his master.

## JOSEPH RESISTS TEMPTATION

Seeing that she could not attain her object by entreaties or tears, Zuleika finally used force, when she judged that the favorable chance had come. She did not have long to wait. When the Nile overflowed its banks, and, according to the annual custom of the Egyptians, all repaired to the river, men and women, people and princes, accompanied by music, Zuleika remained at home under pretense of being sick. This was her long-looked-for opportunity, she thought. She rose up and ascended to the hall of state, and arrayed herself in princely garments. She placed

precious stones upon her head, onyx stones set in silver and gold, she beautified her face and her body with all sorts of things for the purifying of women, she perfumed the hall and the whole house with cassia and frankincense, spread myrrh and aloes all over, and afterward sat herself down at the entrance to the hall, in the vestibule leading to the house, through which Joseph had to pass to his work.

And, behold, Joseph came from the field, and he was on the point of entering the house to do his master's work, but when he reached the place where Zuleika sat, and saw all she had done, he turned back. His mistress, perceiving it, called out to him, "What aileth thee, Joseph? Go to thy work, I will make room for thee, that thou mayest pass by to thy seat." Joseph did as she bade him, he entered the house, took his seat, and set about his master's work as usual. Then Zuleika stood before him suddenly in all her beauty of person and magnificence of raiment, and repeated the desire of her heart.<sup>120</sup> It was the first and the last time that Joseph's steadfastness deserted him, but only for an instant. When he was on the point of complying with the wish of his mistress, the image of his mother Rachel appeared before him, and that of his aunt Leah, and the image of his father Jacob. The last addressed him thus: "In time to come the names of thy brethren will be graven upon the breastplate of the high priest. Dost thou desire to have thy name appear with theirs? Or wilt thou forfeit this honor through sinful conduct? For know, he that keepeth company with harlots wasteth his substance." This vision of the dead, and especially the image of his father, brought Joseph to his senses, and his illicit passion departed from him.<sup>121</sup>

Astonished at the swift change in his countenance, Zuleika said, "My friend and true-love, why art thou so affrighted that thou art near to swooning?"

Joseph: "I see my father!"



Zuleika: "Where is he? Why, there is none in the house."

Joseph: "Thou belongest to a people that is like unto the ass, it perceiveth nothing. But I belong to those who can see things."

Joseph fled forth, away from the house of his mistress,<sup>122</sup> the same house in which aforetime wonders had been done for Sarah kept a captive there by Pharaoh.<sup>123</sup> But hardly was he outside when the sinful passion again overwhelmed him, and he returned to Zuleika's chamber. Then the Lord appeared unto him, holding the Eben Shetiyah<sup>124</sup> in His hand, and said to him: "If thou touchest her, I will cast away this stone upon which the earth is founded, and the world will fall to ruin." Sobered again, Joseph started to escape from his mistress,<sup>125</sup> but Zuleika caught him by his garment, and she said: "As the king liveth, if thou wilt not fulfil my wish, thou must die," and while she spoke thus, she drew a sword with her free hand from under her dress, and, pressing it against Joseph's throat, she said, "Do as I bid thee, or thou diest." Joseph ran out, leaving a piece of his garment in the hands of Zuleika as he wrenched himself loose from the grasp of the woman with a quick, energetic motion.<sup>126</sup>

Zuleika's passion for Joseph was so violent that, in lieu of its owner, whom she could not succeed in subduing to her will, she kissed and caressed the fragment of cloth left in her hand.<sup>127</sup> At the same time she was not slow to perceive the danger into which she had put herself, for, she feared, Joseph might possibly betray her conduct, and she considered ways and means of obviating the consequences of her folly.<sup>128</sup>

Meanwhile her friends returned from the Nile festival, and they came to visit her and inquire after her health. They found her looking wretchedly ill, on account of the excitement she had passed through and the anxiety she was in. She confessed to the women what had happened with Joseph, and they advised her to ac-

cuse him of immorality before her husband, and then he would be thrown into prison. Zuleika accepted their advice, and she begged her visitors to support her charges by also lodging complaints against Joseph, that he had been annoying them with improper proposals.<sup>129</sup>

But Zuleika did not depend entirely upon the assistance of her friends. She planned a ruse, besides, to be sure of convincing her husband of Joseph's guilt. She laid aside her rich robes of state, put on her ordinary clothes, and took to her sick-bed, in which she had been lying when the people left to go to the festival. Also she took Joseph's torn garment, and laid it out next to her. Then she sent a little boy to summon some of the men of her house, and to them she told the tale of Joseph's alleged outrage, saying: "See the Hebrew slave, whom your master hath brought in unto my house, and who attempted to do violence to me to-day! You had scarcely gone away to the festival when he entered the house, and making sure that no one was here he tried to force me to yield to his lustful desire. But I grasped his clothes, tore them, and cried with a loud voice. When he heard that I lifted up my voice and cried, he was seized with fear, and he fled, and got him out, but he left his garment by me." The men of her house spake not a word, but, in a rage against Joseph, they went to their master, and reported to him what had come to pass.<sup>130</sup> In the meantime the husbands of Zuleika's friends had also spoken to Potiphar, at the instigation of their wives, and complained of his slave, that he molested them.<sup>131</sup>

Potiphar hastened home, and he found his wife in low spirits, and though the cause of her dejection was chagrin at not having succeeded in winning Joseph's love, she pretended that it was anger at the immoral conduct of the slave. She accused him in the following words: "O husband, mayest thou not live a day longer, if thou dost not punish the wicked slave that hath desired to



defile thy bed, that hath not kept in mind who he was when he came to our house, to demean himself with modesty, nor hath he been mindful of the favors he hath received from thy bounty. He did lay a privy design to abuse thy wife, and this at the time of observing a festival, when thou wouldst be absent.”<sup>132</sup> These words she spoke at the moment of conjugal intimacy with Potiphar, when she was certain of exerting an influence upon her husband.<sup>133</sup>

Potiphar gave credence to her words, and he had Joseph flogged unmercifully. While the cruel blows fell upon him, he cried to God, “O Lord, Thou knowest that I am innocent of these things, and why should I die to-day on account of a false accusation by the hands of these uncircumcised, impious men?” God opened the mouth of Zuleika’s child, a babe of but eleven months, and he spoke to the men that were beating Joseph, saying: “What is your quarrel with this man? Why do you inflict such evil upon him? Lies my mother doth speak, and deceit is what her mouth uttereth. This is the true tale of that which did happen,” and the child proceeded to tell all that had passed—how Zuleika had tried first to persuade Joseph to act wickedly, and then had tried to force him to do her will. The people listened in great amazement. But the report finished, the child spake no word, as before.

Abashed by the speech of his own infant son, Potiphar commanded his bailiffs to leave off from chastising Joseph, and the matter was brought into court, where priests sat as judges. Joseph protested his innocence, and related all that had happened according to the truth, but Potiphar repeated the account his wife had given him. The judges ordered the garment of Joseph to be brought which Zuleika had in her possession, and they examined the tear therein. It turned out to be on the front part of the mantle, and they came to the conclusion that Zuleika had tried to hold him fast, and had been foiled in her attempt

by Joseph, against whom she was now lodging a trumped up charge. They decided that Joseph had not incurred the death penalty, but they condemned him to incarceration, because he was the cause of a stain upon Zuleika’s fair name.<sup>134</sup>

Potiphar himself was convinced of Joseph’s innocence, and when he cast him into prison, he said to him, “I know that thou art not guilty of so vile a crime, but I must put thee in durance, lest a taint cling to my children.”<sup>135</sup>

---

120. Yashar Wa-Yesheb 88a, which essentially follows older sources; comp. BR 87. 7; Sotah 36b; PR 6, 23a; Shir 1. 1.

121. Sotah 36b; Yerushalmi Horayot 2, 46d; BR 87. 7 and 98. 20; Shemuel 5, 63; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 9; Abkir in Yalkut I, 145, and 146; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 49. 24.

122. MHG I, 589, and Abkir in Yalkut I, 146. See also 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 22b, as well as footnote 237 on p. 296.

123. MHG I, 588–589.

124. According to Luria on PRE 39, note 21, *Eben Shetiyah* is here used as a metaphor for the likeness of Rachel. But this interpretation seems to be very far-fetched.

125. Abkir in Yalkut I, 145, and comp. citation from an unknown Midrash in Tosafot שני Sotah 36b.

126. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 88a–88b. This passage does not record the inner struggle in Joseph’s soul between passion and virtue, to which the old sources refer; comp. the references in note 121. But even in these sources another view is quoted, according to which Joseph was not swayed by passion for a moment.

127. BR 87. 8.

128. Yashar Wa-Yesheb 88b. According to BaR 14. 6 (119a–119b) and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 4. 4, she threatened Joseph that if he did not gratify her desire, she would charge him with a terrible crime before his master, who would certainly kill him for it.

129. Abkir in Yalkut I, 146, and in a somewhat different form in MHG I, 590. Comp. also Mahzor Vitry, 342.

130. Yashar Wa-Yesheb 88b. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 39. 14 and 20 gives a detailed description of the wicked woman’s intrigues, by means of which she expected to prove Joseph’s guilt. He was, however, defended by the Egyptian priest, who exposed the trick she attempted to play on him. See Sekel 240; note 340, as well as footnote 312 on p. 318.

131. Abkir in Yalkut I, 146.

132. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 4. 5. It is stated by Josephus, *ibid.*, II, 4. 3, that Potiphar’s wife feigned illness, and



remained home on a festive day when all the people rejoiced in public festivities. This is in accordance with the view of the Rabbis; see text on p. 356, and note 120.

133. BR 87. 9. Potiphar intended to kill Joseph whom he believed to be guilty, but his wife prevented him from doing so, and advised him to imprison him, giving as a reason the monetary loss they would sustain by the death of the slave. In truth, however, she hoped that Joseph in prison would be more tractable than Joseph at large; Tan. Wa-Ye-sheb 9; comp. also note 135.

134. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 88a–89a. Instead of **מעבדי** ... **עבד** the context demands **מילידי** ... **יליד**. See also note 189. The speaking of babies is a favorite subject in Jewish and Christian legends; comp. Günter, *Die Christliche Legende*, 89; see also 4 Ezra 7. 21, which reads: And one-year old children shall speak with their voices. As to the establishing of Joseph's innocence, see notes 130 and 340.

135. BaR 87. 9; MHG I, 591; Lekah, Gen. 39. 20.

## JOSEPH IN PRISON

By way of punishment for having traduced his ten brethren before his father, Joseph had to languish for ten years in the prison to which the wiles of traducers had in turn condemned him.<sup>136</sup> But, on the other hand, as he had sanctified the Name of God before the world by his chastity and his steadfastness, he was rewarded. The letter He, which occurs twice in the Name of God, was added to his name. He had been called Joseph, but now he was called also *Je-ho-seph*.<sup>137</sup>

Though he was bound in prison, Joseph was not yet safe from the machinations of his mistress, whose passion for him was in no wise lessened. In truth it was she that had induced her husband to change his intention regarding Joseph; she urged him to imprison the slave rather than kill him, for she hoped that as a prisoner he could be made amenable to her wishes more easily. She spake to her husband, saying: "Do not destroy thy property. Cast the slave in prison and keep him there until thou canst sell him, and receive back the money thou didst pay out for

him."<sup>138</sup> Thus she had the opportunity of visiting Joseph in his cell and trying to persuade him to do her will. She would say, "This and that outrage have I executed against thee, but, as thou livest, I will put yet other outrages upon thee if thou dost not obey me." But Joseph replied, "The Lord executeth judgment for the oppressed."

Zuleika: "I will push matters so far that all men will hate thee."

Joseph: "The Lord loveth the righteous."

Zuleika: "I will sell thee into a strange land."

Joseph: "The Lord preserveth the strangers."<sup>139</sup>

Then she would resort to enticements in order to obtain her desire. She would promise to release him from prison, if he would but grant her wish. But he would say, "Better it is to remain here than be with thee and commit a trespass against God." These visits to Joseph in prison Zuleika continued for a long time, but when, finally, she saw that all her hopes were vain, she let him alone.<sup>140</sup>

As the mistress persisted in her love for Joseph, so his master, her husband, could not separate himself from his favorite slave. Though a prisoner, Joseph continued to minister to the needs of Potiphar, and he received permission from the keeper of the prison to spend some of his time in his master's house.<sup>141</sup> In many other ways the jailer showed himself kindly disposed toward Joseph. Seeing the youth's zeal and conscientiousness in executing the tasks laid upon him, and under the spell of his enchanting beauty, he made prison life as easy as possible for his charge. He even ordered better dishes for him than the common prison fare, and he found it superfluous caution to keep watch over Joseph, for he could see no wrong in him, and he observed that God was with him, in good days and in bad. He even appointed him to be the overseer of the prison, and as Joseph commanded, so the other prisoners were obliged to do.<sup>142</sup>



For a long time the people talked of nothing but the accusation raised against Joseph by his mistress. In order to divert the attention of the public from him, God ordained that two high officers, the chief butler and the chief baker, should offend their lord, the king of Egypt, and they were put in ward in the house of the captain of the guard. Now the people ceased their talk about Joseph, and spoke only of the scandal at court. The charges laid at the door of the noble prisoners were that they had attempted to do violence to the daughter of Pharaoh, and they had conspired to poison the king himself. Besides, they had shown themselves derelict in their service. In the wine the chief butler had handed to the king to drink, a fly had been discovered, and the bread set upon the royal board by the chief baker contained a little pebble.<sup>143</sup> On account of all these transgressions they were condemned to death by Pharaoh, but for the sake of Joseph it was ordained by Divine providence that the king should first detain them in prison before he ordered their execution. The Lord had enkindled the wrath of the king against his servants only that the wish of Joseph for liberty might be fulfilled, for they were the instruments of his deliverance from prison, and though they were doomed to death, yet in consideration of the exalted office they had held at court, the keeper of the prison accorded them privileges, as, for instance, a man was detailed to wait upon them, and the one appointed thereto was Joseph.<sup>144</sup>

The chief butler and the chief baker had been confined in prison ten years,<sup>145</sup> when they dreamed a dream, both of them, but as for the interpretation, each dreamed only that of the other one's dream.<sup>146</sup> In the morning when Joseph brought them the water for washing, he found them sad, depressed in spirits, and, in the manner of the sages, he asked them why they looked different on that day from other days.

They said unto him, "We have dreamed a dream this night, and our two dreams resemble each other in certain particulars, and there is none that can interpret them." And Joseph said unto them: "God granteth understanding to man to interpret dreams. Tell them me, I pray you."<sup>147</sup> It was as a reward for ascribing greatness and credit to Him unto whom it belongeth that Joseph later attained to his lofty position.<sup>148</sup>

The chief butler proceeded to tell his dream: "In my dream, behold, a vine was before me; and in the vine were three branches; and it was as though it budded, and its blossoms shot forth, and the clusters thereof brought forth ripe grapes; and Pharaoh's cup was in my hand; and I took the grapes, and pressed them into Pharaoh's cup, and I gave the cup into Pharaoh's hand." The chief butler was not aware that his dream contained a prophecy regarding the future of Israel, but Joseph discerned the recondite meaning,<sup>149</sup> and he interpreted the dream thus: The three branches are the three Fathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, whose descendants in Egypt will be redeemed by three leaders, Moses, Aaron, and Miriam; and the cup given into the hand of Pharaoh is the cup of wrath that he will have to drain in the end. This interpretation of the dream Joseph kept for himself, and he told the chief butler nothing thereof, but out of gratitude for the glad tidings of the deliverance of Israel from the bondage of Egypt, he gave him a favorable interpretation of his dream, and begged him to have him in his remembrance, when it should be well with him, and liberate him from the dungeon in which he was confined.

When the chief baker heard the interpretation of the butler's dream, he knew that Joseph had divined its meaning correctly, for in his own he had seen the interpretation of his friend's dream, and he proceeded to tell Joseph what he had dreamed in the night: "I also was in my dream, and, behold, three baskets of white bread



were on my head; and in the uppermost basket there was of all manner of bakemeats for Pharaoh; and the birds did eat them out of the basket upon my head.” Also this dream conveyed a prophecy regarding the future of Israel: The three baskets are the three kingdoms to which Israel will be made subject, Babylon, Media, and Greece; and the uppermost basket indicates the wicked rule of Rome, which will extend over all the nations of the world, until the bird shall come, who is the Messiah, and annihilate Rome. Again Joseph kept the prophecy a secret. To the chief baker he gave only the interpretation that had reference to his person, but it was unfavorable to him, because through his dream Joseph had been made acquainted with the suffering Israel would have to undergo.

And all came to pass, as Joseph had said, on the third day.<sup>150</sup> The day whereon he explained the meaning of their dreams to the two distinguished prisoners, a son was born unto Pharaoh, and to celebrate the joyous event, the king arranged a feast for his princes and servants that was to last eight days. He invited them and all the people to his table, and he entertained them with royal splendor. The feast had its beginning on the third day after the birth of the child, and on that occasion the chief butler was restored in honor to his butlership, and the chief baker was hanged,<sup>151</sup> for Pharaoh’s counsellors had discovered that it was not the butler’s fault that the fly had dropped into the king’s wine, but the baker had been guilty of carelessness in allowing the pebble to get into the bread.<sup>152</sup> Likewise it appeared that the butler had had no part in the conspiracy to poison the king, while the baker was revealed as one of the plotters, and he had to expiate his crime with his life.<sup>153</sup>

rend their garments (Gen. 37. 34), and his punishment was that the rending of his garment was the cause of his imprisonment; see the unknown Midrash in Shu’aib, Wa-Yesheb, 22a. The view which holds Joseph responsible (partly at least) for the crime committed by his brethren against him is old; compare with pp. 328–329, where it is stated that Joseph’s tale-bearing caused the hatred against him.

137. WR 23. 10; Sotah 36b; Tehillim 81. 368; Targum Ps. 81. 6. On the changes of names by adding or taking away letters, see Index s. v. “Abigail”, “Abraham”, “Ephron”, “Jonadab”, and “Joshua”.

138. Tan. Wa-Yesheb 9; comp. notes 129, 133, and 134. As to the machinations of Potiphar’s wife against the prisoner Joseph, see also 12 Testaments, Joseph 9.

139. BR 87. 10; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 9; Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 89a–89b. Comp. notes 112 and 119.

140. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 10b; comp. 12 Testaments, Joseph 9.

141. BR 87. 10; MHG I, 595. Comp. *Mattenot Kehunnah* and Einhorn, BR, *ad loc.*

142. Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 39. 21–23; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 5. 1. Philo, *De Josepho*, 16, dwells upon Joseph’s kindness and wisdom, by means of which he succeeded in making the criminals lead a better life, without using punishments and fines. See also BR 87. 10.

143. BR 87. 1–2; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 40. 1 (which reads: Poison was found in the beverages and food served to the king). Compare with p. 1145. R. Bahya, *Da’at* and *Hadar* on Gen. 40. 1 and 21 maintain (they undoubtedly follow midrashic sources) that the guilt of the chief baker was greater than that of the chief butler, as the fly might have fallen into the king’s cup, while it was served, whereas the pebble in the bread was obviously due to the gross negligence of the baker. Comp. note 152.

144. BR 88. 3; Megillah 13b; Esther R 2. 21; Lekah Gen. 40. 4.

145. MHG I, 594–595. Perhaps נשתהה is to be read instead of נשתהו, and the Midrash thus speaks of the years which Joseph spent in prison; comp. note 155. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 91a; Lekah and Rashi on Gen. 40. 4 maintain that the two officers were imprisoned for one year; comp. Ketubot 57b, which reads: ימים שנה and hence ימים (Gen., *loc. cit.*) is as much as a year.

146. BR 88. 4; Berakot 55b.

147. Lekah Gen. 40. 4–6. We ought to read בראשו הלומו “with confusion in his head,” instead of בראשו הלומו of the editions.

148. BR 88. 4; comp. note 173.

149. MHG I, 595.

150. BR 88. 5–6; Hullin 92a; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 40. 20. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 5. 2, Joseph saw a great omen in the dream of the vine, because wine banishes care and conciliates men.

136. Tan. B. I, 180; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 7. Comp. note 8. Joseph was the cause that his father and brethren should



151. Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 91b. According to old sources (BR 88. 6; Targumim on Gen. 40. 20; Yerushalmi 'Abodah Zarah 1, 39c) **יום הולדת את פרעה** in Gen., *loc. cit.*, means Pharaoh's birthday. Yashar takes this expression to mean "when a child was born unto Pharaoh."

152. Lekah Gen. 40. 21. As to the reason for this decision, see note 143.

153. Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 40. 22; Sekel 298.

## PHARAOH'S DREAMS

Properly speaking, Joseph should have gone out free from his dungeon on the same day as the butler. He had been there ten years by that time, and had made amends for the slander he had uttered against his ten brethren. However, he remained in prison two years longer. "Blessed is the man that trusteth in the Lord, and whose hope is the Lord," but Joseph had put his confidence in flesh and blood. He had prayed the chief butler to have him in remembrance when it should be well with him, and make mention of him unto Pharaoh, and the butler forgot his promise, and therefore Joseph had to stay in prison two years more than the years originally allotted to him there.<sup>154</sup> The butler had not forgotten him intentionally, but it was ordained of God that his memory should fail him. When he would say to himself, If thus and so happens, I will remember the case of Joseph, the conditions he had imagined were sure to be reversed, or if he made a knot as a reminder, an angel came and undid the knot, and Joseph did not enter his mind.<sup>155</sup>

But "the Lord setteth an end to darkness," and Joseph's liberation was not delayed by a single moment beyond the time decreed for it. God said, "Thou, O butler, thou didst forget Joseph, but I did not," and He caused Pharaoh to dream a dream that was the occasion for Joseph's release.<sup>156</sup>

In his dream Pharaoh saw seven kine, well-favored and fat-fleshed, come up out of the Nile,

and they all together grazed peaceably on the brink of the river. In years when the harvest is abundant, friendship reigns among men, and love and brotherly harmony, and these seven fat kine stood for seven such prosperous years. After the fat kine, seven more came up out of the river, ill-favored and lean-fleshed, and each had her back turned to the others, for when distress prevails, one man turns away from the other. For a brief space Pharaoh awoke, and when he went to sleep again, he dreamed a second dream, about seven rank and good ears of corn, and seven ears that were thin and blasted with the east wind,<sup>157</sup> the withered ears swallowing the full ears. He awoke at once, and it was morning, and dreams dreamed in the morning are the ones that come true.<sup>158</sup>

This was not the first time Pharaoh had had these dreams. They had visited him every night during a period of two years, and he had forgotten them invariably in the morning. This was the first time he remembered them, for the day had arrived for Joseph to come forth from his prison house.<sup>159</sup> Pharaoh's heart beat violently when he called his dreams to mind on awaking.<sup>160</sup> Especially the second one, about the ears of corn, disquieted him. He reflected that whatever has a mouth can eat, and therefore the dream of the seven lean kine that ate up the seven fat kine did not appear strange to him. But the ears of corn that swallowed up other ears of corn troubled his spirit.<sup>161</sup> He therefore called for all the wise men of his land, and they endeavored in vain to find a satisfactory interpretation. They explained that the seven fat kine meant seven daughters to be born unto Pharaoh, and the seven lean kine, that he would bury seven daughters; the rank ears of corn meant that Pharaoh would conquer seven countries, and the blasted ears, that seven provinces would rebel against him.<sup>162</sup> About the ears of corn they did not all agree. Some thought the good ears stood for seven cities to be built by Pharaoh, and the seven withered ears



indicated that these same cities would be destroyed at the end of his reign.

Sagacious as he was, Pharaoh knew that none of these explanations hit the nail on the head. He issued a decree summoning all interpreters of dreams to appear before him on pain of death, and he held out great rewards and distinctions to the one who should succeed in finding the true meaning of his dreams. In obedience to his summons, all wise men appeared, the magicians and the sacred scribes that were in Mizraim, the city of Egypt, as well as those from Goshen, Raamses, Zoan, and the whole country of Egypt, and with them came the princes, officers, and servants of the king from all the cities of the land.

To all these the king narrated his dreams, but none could interpret them to his satisfaction. Some said that the seven fat kine were the seven legitimate kings that would rule over Egypt, and the seven lean kine betokened seven princes that would rise up against these seven kings and exterminate them. The seven good ears of corn were the seven superior princes of Egypt that would engage in a war for their overlord, and would be defeated by as many insignificant princes, who were betokened by the seven blasted ears.

Another interpretation was that the seven fat kine were the seven fortified cities of Egypt, at some future time to fall into the hands of seven Canaanitish nations, who were foreshadowed in the seven lean kine. According to this interpretation, the second dream supplemented the first. It meant that the descendants of Pharaoh would regain sovereign authority over Egypt at a subsequent period, and would subdue the seven Canaanitish nations as well.

There was a third interpretation, given by some: The seven fat kine are seven women whom Pharaoh would take to wife, but they would die during his lifetime, their loss being indicated by the seven lean kine. Furthermore, Pharaoh would have fourteen sons, and the seven strong ones

would be conquered by the seven weaklings, as the blasted ears of corn in his dream had swallowed up the rank ears of corn.

And a fourth: "Thou wilt have seven sons, O Pharaoh, these are the seven fat kine. These sons of thine will be killed by the seven powerful rebellious princes. But then seven minor princes will come, and they will kill the seven rebels, avenge thy descendants, and restore the dominion to thy family."

The king was as little pleased with these interpretations as with the others, which he had heard before, and in his wrath he ordered the wise men, the magicians and the scribes of Egypt, to be killed, and the hangmen made ready to execute the royal decree.

However, Mirod, Pharaoh's chief butler,<sup>163</sup> took fright, seeing that the king was so vexed at his failure to secure an interpretation of his dreams that he was on the point of giving up the ghost. He was alarmed about the king's death, for it was doubtful whether the successor to the throne would retain him in office. He resolved to do all in his power to keep Pharaoh alive. Therefore he stepped before him, and spake, saying, "I do remember two faults of mine this day, I showed myself ungrateful to Joseph, in that I did not bring his request before thee, and also I saw thee in distress by reason of thy dream, without letting thee know that Joseph can interpret dreams."<sup>164</sup> When it pleased the Lord God to make Pharaoh wroth with his servants, the king put me in ward in the house of the captain of the guard, me and the chief baker.<sup>165</sup> And with us there was a simple young man, one of the despised race of the Hebrews, slave to the captain of the guard, and he interpreted our dreams to us, and it came to pass, as he interpreted to us, so it was. Therefore, O king, stay the hand of the hangmen, let them not execute the Egyptians. The slave I speak of is still in the dungeon, and if the king will consent to



summon him hither, he will surely interpret thy dreams.<sup>166</sup>

154. BR 89. 2–3; Tan. B. I, 189–190; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 9; Tehillim 105, 451; MHG I, 594–595 and 598–599, as well as 610; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 40. 14, 23; Yashar Wa-Yesheb, 91b.

155. BR 88. 7. Philo, *De Josepho*, 19, likewise remarks that God did not wish to bring about Joseph's freedom by the hand of man. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 5. 1, emphasizes the fact that Joseph, trusting in God and in Him only, did not care to defend himself against the accusation of Potiphar's wife. As to the "making of knots" (BR, *loc. cit.*), see Goldziher, *Berliner-Festschrift*, 152. Comp. also Tan. B. I, 190.

156. MHG I, 601–602; BR 87. 7 and 89. 1; comp. note 154.

157. Tan. B. I, 190; BR 89. 4; MHG I, 617–618.

158. BR 89. 5; Berakot 55b.

159. MHG I, 611 and 618 (נ"ל).

160. Tan. B. I, 190; MHG I, 618; comp. BR 18. 4 and Zohar I, 194a.

161. MHG I, 618.

162. BR 89. 6.

163. Yashar Mikkez, 94a–94b. It is obvious that Dan. 2. 1, *seq.*, is the model for this legend. Comp. Excursus II, Joseph. A vague reminiscence of the close political relations between Egypt and Palestine in pre-Israelitish times is discernible in this legend. As to other references to these relations in the legendary literature, see Ginzberg's remarks in *Eine Unbekannte Sekte*, 339.

164. BR 98. 7.

165. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 41. 10, which is based on older sources. Comp. note 144.

166. Yashar Mikkez, 94b–95a.

## JOSEPH BEFORE PHARAOH

“**A**ccursed are the wicked that never do a wholly good deed.” The chief butler described Joseph contemptuously as a “slave” in order that it might be impossible for him to occupy a distinguished place at court, for it was a law upon the statute books of Egypt that a slave could never sit upon the throne as king, nor even put his foot in the stirrup of a horse.<sup>167</sup>

Pharaoh revoked the edict of death that he had issued against the wise men of Egypt, and he sent and called Joseph. He impressed care upon his messengers, they were not to excite and confuse Joseph, and render him unfit to interpret the king's dream correctly.<sup>168</sup> They brought him hastily out of the dungeon, but first Joseph, out of respect for the king, shaved himself, and put on fresh raiment, which an angel brought him from Paradise, and then he came in unto Pharaoh.<sup>169</sup>

The king was sitting upon the royal throne, arrayed in princely garments, clad with a golden ephod upon his breast, and the fine gold of the ephod sparkled, and the carbuncle, the ruby, and the emerald flamed like a torch, and all the precious stones set upon the king's head flashed like a blazing fire, and Joseph was greatly amazed at the appearance of the king. The throne upon which he sat was covered with gold and silver and with onyx stones, and it had seventy steps. If a prince or other distinguished person came to have an audience with the king, it was the custom for him to advance and mount to the thirty-first step of the throne, and the king would descend thirty-six steps and speak to him. But if one of the people came to have speech with the king, he ascended only to the third step, and the king would come down four steps from his seat, and address him thence. It was also the custom that one who knew all the seventy languages ascended the seventy steps of the throne to the top, but if a man knew only some of the seventy languages, he was permitted to ascend as many steps as he knew languages, whether they were many or few. And another custom of the Egyptians was that none could reign over them unless he was master of all the seventy languages.

When Joseph came before the king, he bowed down to the ground, and he ascended to the third step, while the king sat upon the fourth from the top, and spake with Joseph, saying:<sup>170</sup> “O young man, my servant beareth witness concerning thee,



that thou art the best and most discerning person I can consult with. I pray thee, vouchsafe unto me the same favors which thou didst bestow on this servant of mine, and tell me what events they are which the visions of my dreams foreshow. I desire thee to suppress naught out of fear, nor shalt thou flatter me with lying words, or with words that please me. Tell me the truth, though it be sad and alarming.”<sup>171</sup>

Joseph asked the king first whence he knew that the interpretation given by the wise men of his country was not true, and Pharaoh replied, “I saw the dream and its interpretation together, and therefore they cannot make a fool of me.”<sup>172</sup> In his modesty Joseph denied that he was an adept at interpreting dreams. He said, “It is not in me; it is in the hand of God, and if it be the wish of God, He will permit me to announce tidings of peace to Pharaoh.” And for such modesty he was rewarded by sovereignty over Egypt, for the Lord doth honor them that honor Him. Thus was also Daniel rewarded for his speech to Nebuchadnezzar: “There is a God in heaven that revealeth secrets, but as for me, this secret is not revealed to me for any wisdom that I have more than any living, but to the intent that the interpretation may be made known to the king, and that thou mayest know the thoughts of thy heart.”<sup>173</sup>

Then Pharaoh began to tell his dream, only he omitted some points and narrated others inaccurately in order that he might test the vaunted powers of Joseph. But the youth corrected him, and pieced the dreams together exactly as they had visited Pharaoh in the night, and the king was greatly amazed.<sup>174</sup> Joseph was able to accomplish this feat, because he had dreamed the same dream as Pharaoh, at the same time as he.<sup>175</sup> Thereupon Pharaoh retold his dreams, with all details and circumstances, and precisely as he had seen them in his sleep, except that he left out the word Nile in the description of the seven lean

kine, because this river was worshipped by the Egyptians, and he hesitated to say that aught that is evil had come from his god.<sup>176</sup>

Now Joseph proceeded to give the king the true interpretation of the two dreams. They were both a revelation concerning the seven good years impending and the seven years of famine to follow them. In reality, it had been the purpose of God to bring a famine of forty-two years’ duration upon Egypt, but only two years of this distressful period were inflicted upon the land, for the sake of the blessing of Jacob when he came to Egypt in the second year of the famine. The other forty years fell upon the land at the time of the prophet Ezekiel.<sup>177</sup>

Joseph did more than merely interpret the dreams. When the king gave voice to doubts concerning the interpretation, he told him signs and tokens. He said: “Let this be a sign to thee that my words are true, and my advice is excellent: Thy wife, who is sitting upon the birthstool at this moment, will bring forth a son, and thou wilt rejoice over him, but in the midst of thy joy the sad tidings will be told thee of the death of thine older son, who was born unto thee but two years ago, and thou must needs find consolation for the loss of the one in the birth of the other.”

Scarcely had Joseph withdrawn from the presence of the king, when the report of the birth of a son was brought to Pharaoh, and soon after also the report of the death of his first-born, who had suddenly dropped to the floor and passed away. Thereupon he sent for all the grandees of his realm, and all his servants, and he spake to them, saying: “Ye have heard the words of the Hebrew, and ye have seen that signs which he foretold were accomplished, and I also know that he hath interpreted the dream truly. Advise me now how the land may be saved from the ravages of the famine. Look hither and thither whether you can find a man of wisdom and understanding, whom I may set over the land, for I am



convinced that the land can be saved only if we heed the counsel of the Hebrew.” The grandees and princes admitted that safety could be secured only by adhering to the advice given by Joseph, and they proposed that the king, in his sagacity, choose a man whom he considered equal to the great task.<sup>178</sup> Thereupon Pharaoh said: “If we traversed and searched the earth from end to end, we could find none such as Joseph, a man in whom is the spirit of God.<sup>179</sup> If ye think well thereof, I will set him over the land which he hath saved by his wisdom.”<sup>180</sup>

The astrologers, who were his counsellors, demurred, saying, “A slave, one whom his present owner hath acquired for twenty pieces of silver, thou proposest to set over us as master?” But Pharaoh maintained that Joseph was not only a free-born man beyond the peradventure of a doubt, but also the scion of a noble family.<sup>181</sup> However, the princes of Pharaoh were not silenced, they continued to give utterance to their opposition to Joseph, saying: “Dost thou not remember the immutable law of the Egyptians, that none may serve as king or as viceroy unless he speaks all the languages of men? And this Hebrew knows none but his own tongue, and how were it possible that a man should rule over us who cannot even speak the language of our land? Send and have him fetched hither, and examine him in respect to all the things a ruler should know and have, and then decide as seemeth wise in thy sight.”

Pharaoh yielded, he promised to do as they wished, and he appointed the following day as the time for examining Joseph, who had returned to his prison in the meantime, for, on account of his wife, his master feared to have him stay in his house. During the night Gabriel appeared unto Joseph, and taught him all the seventy languages, and he acquired them quickly after the angel had changed his name from Joseph to Joseph. The next morning, when he came into

the presence of Pharaoh and the nobles of the kingdom, inasmuch as he knew every one of the seventy languages, he mounted all the steps of the royal throne, until he reached the seventieth, the highest, upon which sat the king, and Pharaoh and his princes rejoiced that Joseph fulfilled all the requirements needed by one that was to rule over Egypt.

The king said to Joseph: “Thou didst give me the counsel to look out a man discreet and wise, and set him over the land of Egypt, that he may in his wisdom save the land from the famine. As God hath showed thee all this, and as thou art master of all the languages of the world, there is none so discreet and wise as thou. Thou shalt therefore be the second in the land after Pharaoh, and according unto thy word shall all my people go in and go out; my princes and my servants shall receive their monthly appanage from thee; before thee the people shall prostrate themselves, only in the throne will I be greater than thou.”<sup>182</sup>

---

167. BR 89. 7; BaR 14. 16 (19b).

168. Yashar Mikkez, 95a.

169. BR 89. 9; Zohar I, 194b. As to Joseph's raiment given to him by the angel, comp. note 52. According to old sources, Joseph left the prison on New Year. Comp. Rosh ha-Shanah 11a; Tehillim 81, 368; Targum Ps. 81. 6. Joseph's joy at regaining his freedom was, however, incomplete, as at that time the death of his grandfather Isaac took place; Seder 'Olam 2; MHG I, 609; Demetrius 9. 12 (424c). The last-named authority maintains that Joseph spent thirteen years in prison, but according to the Rabbis, only twelve years; comp. note 243.

170. Yashar Mikkez, 95a.

171. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 5. 5; Philo, *De Josepho*, 20, remarks that as soon as Pharaoh looked at Joseph he immediately perceived him to be not only a free and noble man, but also a wise one, who would be able to interpret the dream.

172. MHG I, 625; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 5. 4, which reads: The vague recollection which Pharaoh had retained of the interpretation was sufficient to convince him that his “wise men” were deceiving him. This is evidently



the meaning of Josephus, and MHG is to be explained accordingly.

173. MHG I, 625; Tan. Mikkez 3; BR 89. 9. Comp. note 148.

174. Tan. Mikkez 3; Yelammedenu 26=BHM VI, 82; Zohar I, 196a.

175. MHG I, 611.

176. An unknown midrashic source in Sabba, Mikkez, 51b, where a lengthy exposition is given on the impropriety of connecting God with evil; comp. MHG I, 612, and footnote 9 on pp. 2–3.

177. BR 89. 9; Baraita of 32 Middot, 10; MHG I, 625–626; comp. note 411.

178. Yashar Mikkez, 95b–96b.

179. BR 90. 1.

180. Yashar Mikkez, 96b. As to the wisdom of Joseph's counsel to Pharaoh, see citation from an unknown Midrash in Sabba, Mikkez, 51c.

181. MHG I, 626; Sotah 36b. Pharaoh's councillors said unto him: "Is it possible that a slave should become king?" When Joseph, notwithstanding their opposition, became ruler of Egypt, he imprisoned them until the arrival of his brethren who established the nobility of his descent; Tehillim 105, 451. Comp. the following note as well as notes 171 and 285.

182. Yashar Mikkez, 96b–97a, which is, in the main, based on old sources; see Sotah 36b, where the angel, nameless in Yashar, appears as Gabriel. Compare with p. 1126, and Sotah 33a; PK 4, 34b; PR 14, 60a; Tan. B. IV, 111; Tan. Hukkat 6; BaR 14. 5 and 19. 3; Koheleth 7. 23; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 831 on Ps. 41 (Yelammedenu is given as the source in the first edition only); MHG I, 626–627; Zohar III, 213b. Comp. notes 137 and 415.

## THE RULER OF EGYPT

Now Joseph reaped the harvest of his virtues, and according to the measure of his merits God granted him reward. The mouth that refused the kiss of unlawful passion and sin received the kiss of homage from the people; the neck that did not bow itself unto sin was adorned with the gold chain that Pharaoh put upon it; the hands that did not touch sin wore the signet ring that Pharaoh took from his own hand and put upon Joseph's; the body that did not come in contact with sin was arrayed in vestures of

byssus; the feet that made no steps in the direction of sin reposed in the royal chariot, and the thoughts that kept themselves undefiled by sin were proclaimed as wisdom.<sup>183</sup>

Joseph was installed in his high position, and invested with the insignia of his office, with solemn ceremony. The king took off his signet ring from his hand, and put it upon Joseph's hand, and arrayed him in princely apparel, and set a gold crown upon his head, and laid a gold chain about his neck. Then he commanded his servants to make Joseph to ride in his second chariot, which went by the side of the chariot wherein sat the king, and he also made him to ride upon a great and strong horse of the king's horses, and his servants conducted him through the streets of the city of Egypt. Musicians, no less than a thousand striking cymbals and a thousand blowing flutes, and five thousand men with drawn swords gleaming in the air formed the vanguard. Twenty thousand of the king's grandees girt with gold-embroidered leather belts marched at the right of Joseph, and as many at the left of him.<sup>184</sup> The women and the maidens of the nobility looked out of the windows to gaze upon Joseph's beauty, and they poured down chains upon him, and rings and jewels, that he might but direct his eyes toward them. Yet he did not look up, and as a reward God made him proof against the evil eye, nor has it ever had the power of inflicting harm upon any of his descendants.<sup>185</sup> Servants of the king, preceding him and following him, burnt incense upon his path, and cassia, and all manner of sweet spices, and strewed myrrh and aloes wherever he went. Twenty heralds walked before him, and they proclaimed: "This is the man whom the king hath chosen to be the second after him. All the affairs of state will be administered by him, and whoever resisteth his commands, or refuseth to bow down to the ground before him, he will die the death of the rebel against the king and the king's deputy."



Without delay the people prostrated themselves, and they cried, "Long live the king, and long live the deputy of the king!" And Joseph, looking down from his horse upon the people and their exultation, exclaimed, his eyes directed heavenward: "The Lord raiseth up the poor out of the dust, and lifteth up the needy from the dunghill. O Lord of hosts, blessed is the man that trusteth in Thee."

After Joseph, accompanied by Pharaoh's officers and princes, had journeyed through the whole city of Egypt, and viewed all there was therein, he returned to the king on the selfsame day, and the king gave him fields and vineyards as a present, and also three thousand talents of silver, and a thousand talents of gold, and onyx stones and bdellium, and many other costly things. The king commanded, moreover, that every Egyptian give Joseph a gift, else he would be put to death. A platform was erected in the open street, and there all deposited their presents, and among the things were many of gold and silver, as well as precious stones, carried thither by the people and also the grandees, for they saw that Joseph enjoyed the favor of the king. Furthermore, Joseph received one hundred slaves from Pharaoh, and they were to do all his bidding, and he himself acquired many more, for he resided in a spacious palace. Three years it took to build it. Special magnificence was lavished upon the hall of state, which was his audience chamber, and upon the throne fashioned of gold and silver and inlaid with precious stones, whereon there was a representation of the whole land of Egypt and of the river Nile. And as Joseph multiplied in riches, so he increased also in wisdom, for God added to his wisdom that all might love and honor him.<sup>186</sup> Pharaoh called him Zaphenath-paneah, he who can reveal secret things with ease, and rejoiceth the heart of man therewith. Each letter of the name *Zaphenath-paneah* has a meaning, too.

The first, *Zadde*, stands for *Zofeh*, seer; *Pe* for *Podeh*, redeemer; *Nun* for *Nabi*, prophet; *Taw* for *Tomek*, supporter; *Pe* for *Poter*, interpreter of dreams; *'Ain* for *'Arum*, clever; *Nun* for *Nabon*, discreet; and *Het* for *Hakam*, wise.<sup>187</sup>

The name of Joseph's wife pointed to her history in the same way. Asenath was the daughter of Dinah and Hamor, but she was abandoned at the borders of Egypt, only, that people might know who she was, Jacob engraved the story of her parentage and her birth upon a gold plate fastened around her neck. The day on which Asenath was exposed, Potiphar went walking with his servants near the city wall, and they heard the voice of a child. At the captain's bidding they brought the baby to him, and when he read her history from the gold plate, he determined to adopt her. He took her home with him, and raised her as his daughter. The Alef in *Asenath* stands for On, where Potiphar was priest; the Samek for Setirah, Hidden, for she was kept concealed on account of her extraordinary beauty; the Nun for Nohemet, for she wept and entreated that she might be delivered from the house of the heathen Potiphar; and the Taw for Tammah, the perfect one, on account of her pious, perfect deeds.<sup>188</sup>

Asenath had saved Joseph's life while she was still an infant in arms. When Joseph was accused of immoral conduct by Potiphar's wife and the other women, and his master was on the point of having him hanged, Asenath approached her foster-father, and she assured him under oath that the charge against Joseph was false. Then spake God, "As thou livest, because thou didst try to defend Joseph, thou shalt be the woman to bear the tribes that he is appointed to beget."<sup>189</sup>

Asenath bore him two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim, during the seven years of plenty, for in the time of famine Joseph refrained from all indulgence in the pleasures of life.<sup>190</sup> They were bred in chastity and fear of God by their father, and they were wise, and well-instructed in all



knowledge and in the affairs of state, so that they became the favorites of the court, and were educated with the royal princes.

Before the famine broke over the land, Joseph found an opportunity of rendering the king a great service. He equipped an army of four thousand six hundred men, providing all the soldiers with shields and spears and bucklers and helmets and slings. With this army, and aided by the servants and officers of the king, and by the people of Egypt, he carried on a war with Tarshish in the first year after his appointment as viceroy. The people of Tarshish had invaded the territory of the Ishmaelites, and the latter, few in number at that time, were sore pressed, and applied to the king of Egypt for help against their enemies. At the head of his host of heroes, Joseph marched to the land of Havilah, where he was joined by the Ishmaelites, and with united forces they fought against the people of Tarshish, routed them utterly, settled their land with the Ishmaelites, while the defeated men took refuge with their brethren in Javan. Joseph and his army returned to Egypt, and not a man had they lost.

In a little while Joseph's prophecy was confirmed: that year and the six following years were years of plenty, as he had foretold.<sup>191</sup> The harvest was so ample that a single ear produced two heaps of grain,<sup>192</sup> and Joseph made circumspect arrangements to provide abundantly for the years of famine. He gathered up all the grain, and in the city situated in the middle of each district he laid up the produce from round about, and had ashes and earth strewn on the garnered food from the very soil on which it had been grown;<sup>193</sup> also he preserved the grain in the ear; all these being precautions taken to guard against rot and mildew. The inhabitants of Egypt also tried, on their own account, to put aside a portion of the superabundant harvest of the seven fruitful years against the need of the future, but when the grievous time of dearth came, and they went to their

storehouses to bring forth the treasured grain, behold, it had rotted, and become unfit for food.<sup>194</sup> The famine broke in upon the people with such suddenness that the bread gave out unexpectedly as they sat at their tables, they had not even a bite of bran bread.

Thus they were driven to apply to Joseph and beseech his help, and he admonished them, saying, "Give up your allegiance to your deceitful idols, and say, Blessed is He who giveth bread unto all flesh." But they refused to deny their lying gods, and they betook themselves to Pharaoh, only to be told by him, "Go unto Joseph; what he saith to you, do!" For this Pharaoh was rewarded. God granted him long life and a long reign, until he became arrogant, and well-merited punishment overtook him.<sup>195</sup>

When the Egyptians approached Joseph with the petition for bread, he spoke, saying, "I give no food to the uncircumcised. Go hence, and circumcise yourselves, and then return hither." They entered the presence of Pharaoh, and complained to him regarding Joseph, but he said as before, "Go unto Joseph!" And they replied, "We come from Joseph, and he hath spoken roughly unto us, saying, Go hence and circumcise yourselves! We warned thee in the beginning that he is a Hebrew, and would treat us in such wise." Pharaoh said to them: "O ye fools, did he not prophesy through the holy spirit and proclaim to the whole world, that there would come seven years of plenty to be followed by seven years of dearth? Why did you not save the yield of one or two years against the day of your need?"

Weeping, they made reply: "The grain that we put aside during the good years hath rotted."

Pharaoh: "Have ye nothing over of the flour of yesterday?"

The Egyptians: "The very bread in the basket rotted!"

Pharaoh: "Why?"

The Egyptians: "Because Joseph willed thus!"



Pharaoh: "O ye fools, if his word hath power over the grain, making it to rot when he desireth it to rot, then also must we die, if so be his wish concerning us. Go, therefore, unto him, and do as he bids you."<sup>196</sup>

183. BR 90. 3; WR 23. 9; BaR 14. 6 (119b); Tan. Bereshit 12 and Mikkez 3; Zohar I, 19b; an unknown midrashic source in Mahzor Vitry, 333. That Joseph reached his high position as a reward for his virtuous life is also stated in Maccabees 2. 53; Wisdom 10. 14; 12 Testaments, Joseph 10.

184. Yashar Mikkez, 97a. **מצרים** refers here, as is often the case in this work, to the capital city of Egypt, and not to the country.

185. MHG I, 628–629; BR 98. 18; BaR 1. 6 (119b); PRE 39. On the view that Joseph and his descendants are proof against the evil eye, see Berakot 30a and the parallel passages cited on the margin. Compare with p. 348 and note 97.

186. Yashar Mikkez, 97a–97b. For a similar description of a festive procession see text on p. 1173.

187. BR 90. 4. For other explanations of this name, see *Da'at*, *Hadar*, and *Toledot Yizhak* on Gen. 41. 45. *Pa'aneah*, *ad loc.*, employs the system of *Notarikon* thirty times, by which he finds the history of Pharaoh's dream and Joseph's interpretation in the name Zaphenath Paneah. The author displays great ingenuity in some of these *Notarika*. The explanation of this name given by Origen and Jerome, *ad loc.*, is on the whole identical with that found in BR, *loc. cit.*, in Targumim, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6. 1. Philo, *Mut. Nomin.*, 15, takes this name to mean "a mouth judging in an answer."

188. Midrash Aggada, Gen. 41. 45. Concerning the Ase nah legend see note 97.

189. Abkir in Yalkut I, 146 and, in an abridged form, Origen on Gen. 41. 45. Comp. note 134.

190. Ta'anit 11a. Comp. ER 20, 112 and 25, 120; EZ I, 167, and 15, 198. *Ben ha-Meleh*, 12 (following a Mohammedan legend?), writes: It is said that Joseph used to eat so little during the years of famine, that he was always hungry. The people said to him: "O thou, on whom God has conferred wisdom, why art thou hungry, while storehouses filled with grain are at our disposal?" He answered: "I fear that, if I am satisfied, I might forget the hungry." Comp. Ta'anit, *loc. cit.*, and note 250, as well as footnote 54 on p. 151.

191. Yashar Mikkez, 98a–98b.

192. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 41. 47. Comp. also BR 90. 5, where two explanations of **לקמצים** (Gen., *loc. cit.*) are given, both of which, however, are obscure.

193. BR 90. 5; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 41. 48; Yashar Mikkez, 98b. Comp. the following note.

194. Yashar Mikkez, 98b–99a. It is very likely based on PRE 39, where it is said that only the grain preserved by Joseph did not rot—it remained in a perfect condition as long as he lived—whereas all the other grain rotted as soon as the seven years of famine began.

195. MHG I, 631. The blessings taught to the Egyptians consisted of Ps. 136. 25, which forms part of the grace after meal; compare with p. 223, and note 224 appertaining to it. The suddenness of the famine is also referred to in BR 90. 6 and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6. 1. Pharaoh, the king of Egypt in Joseph's time, is the one who later oppressed the Jews (comp. note 429), and it is this Pharaoh of whom MHG says that he later became arrogant. The Mohammedan legend speaks of two Pharaohs in Joseph's time: the first became converted to the true religion of Joseph, while the second remained an infidel; comp. Schapiro, *Haggadische Elemente*, 75–76. On p. 76 Schapiro erroneously maintains that this legend is found in rabbinic literature. Comp. note 102.

196. BR 91. 5 and 90. 6; Tan. Mikkez 7; MHG I, 631. Comp. also Yelammedenu (in Yalkut II, 285 on Jer. 11, no source is indicated, but *Aruk s. v.*, **קטדק** quotes it from Yelammedenu). It says: The Egyptians introduced circumcision amongst them in Joseph's time, but later abandoned it.

## JOSEPH'S BRETHREN IN EGYPT

THE famine, which inflicted hardships first upon the wealthy among the Egyptians, gradually extended its ravages as far as Phoenicia, Arabia, and Palestine.<sup>197</sup> Though the sons of Jacob, being young men, frequented the streets and the highways, yet they were ignorant of what their old home-keeping father Jacob knew, that corn could be procured in Egypt. Jacob even suspected that Joseph was in Egypt. His prophetic spirit, which forsook him during the time of his grief for his son, yet manifested itself now and again in dim visions, and he was resolved to send his sons down into Egypt.<sup>198</sup> There was another reason. Though he was not yet in want, he nevertheless had them go thither for food, because he was averse from arousing the envy of the sons of



Esau and Ishmael by his comfortable state.<sup>199</sup> For the same reason, to avoid friction with the surrounding peoples, he bade his sons not appear in public with bread in their hands, or in the accoutrements of war.<sup>200</sup> And as he knew that they were likely to attract attention, on account of their heroic stature and handsome appearance, he cautioned them against going to the city all together through the same gate, or, indeed, showing themselves all together anywhere in public, that the evil eye be not cast upon them.<sup>201</sup>

The famine in Canaan inspired Joseph with the hope of seeing his brethren. To make sure of their coming, he issued a decree concerning the purchase of corn in Egypt, as follows: "By order of the king and his deputy, and the princes of the realm, be it enacted that he who desireth to buy grain in Egypt may not send his slave hither to do his bidding, but he must charge his own sons therewith. An Egyptian or a Canaanite that hath bought grain and then selleth it again shall be put to death, for none may buy more than he requireth for the needs of his household. Also, who cometh with two or three beasts of burden, and loads them up with grain, shall be put to death."

At the gates of the city of Egypt, Joseph stationed guards, whose office was to inquire and take down the name of all that should come to buy corn, and also the name of their father and their grandfather, and every evening the list of names thus made was handed to Joseph. These precautions were bound to bring Joseph's brethren down to Egypt, and also acquaint him with their coming as soon as they entered the land.

On their journey his brethren thought more of Joseph than of their errand. They said to one another: "We know that Joseph was carried down into Egypt, and we will make search for him there, and if we should find him, we will ransom him from his master, and if his master should refuse to sell him, we will use force, though we perish ourselves."<sup>202</sup>

At the gates of the city of Egypt, the brethren of Joseph were asked what their names were, and the names of their father and grandfather. The guard on duty happened to be Manasseh, the son of Joseph. The brethren submitted to being questioned, saying "Let us go into the town, and we shall see whether this taking down of our names be a matter of taxes. If it be so, we shall not demur; but if it be something else, we shall see to-morrow what can be done in the case."<sup>203</sup>

On the evening of the day they entered Egypt, Joseph discovered their names in the list, which he was in the habit of examining daily, and he commanded that all stations for the sale of corn be closed, except one only. Furthermore, even at this station no sales were to be negotiated unless the name of the would-be purchaser was first obtained. His brethren, with whose names Joseph furnished the overseer of the place, were to be seized and brought to him as soon as they put in appearance.

But the first thought of the brethren was for Joseph, and their first concern, to seek him. For three days they made search for him everywhere, even in the most disreputable quarters of the city. Meantime Joseph was in communication with the overseer of the station kept open for the sale of corn, and, hearing that his brethren had not appeared there, he dispatched some of his servants to look for them, but they found them neither in Mizraim, the city of Egypt, nor in Goshen, nor in Raamses. Thereupon he sent sixteen servants forth to make a house to house search for them in the city, and they discovered the brethren of Joseph in a place of ill-fame and haled them before their master.

---

197. BR 90. 6; Yashar Mikkez, 99a. Philo, *De Josepho*, 27, maintains that, on the contrary, the famine spread like a plague from country to country, until the entire world had become affected by it. BR 89. 4 remarks that the



famine caused scabies among the men. Comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6. 1.

198. BR 91. 1 and 6; Tan. B. I, 192–194; Tan. Mikkez 5; Aggadat Bereshit, 69, 136–138; MHG I, 632, 635. Philo, *De Josepho*, 32, also remarks that Jacob had a vague presentiment of Joseph's stay in Egypt. On the idea that a joyful mood is necessary for a prophet, see note 294. In contrast to the view of the Midrashim just quoted, Tan. B. I, 192 (comp. also *ibid.* 188) maintains that Jacob and his sons, who were great prophets, were abandoned by the prophetic spirit, in order that they should not think that they were able to foresee everything and thus become proud.—In BR 91. 6; MHG I, 635, and in many other places the statement is made that Jacob sent his sons to Egypt that they, the descendants of Abraham, should begin the Egyptian servitude, which, as announced to their ancestor, was to last four hundred years. Comp. Lekah Gen. 42. 1. When suffering is inflicted on the pious, they attribute it to their sins; and hence when the famine broke out Jacob saw in it a punishment for having held on to Esau's heel at the time of their birth. Indeed it was this very sin with which the angel charged him before God, saying: "In his womb he took his brother by the heel" (Hosea 12. 4); see Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 758, on Ps. 49. To his sons who were greatly agitated by the fear of the famine, Jacob said thus: "God always assists the pious in the time of famine; so He did in the time of my fathers Abraham and Isaac, and so will He do unto me."

199. Ta'anit 10b.

200. MHG I, 635; Yelammedenu (?) in Yalkut I, 148. In the first edition ילמדנו רמז י"ז does not refer to what follows, but to the supplement of Yalkut, where paragraph 17 contains a quotation from Yelammedenu bearing upon the same biblical verse as the one on which Yalkut comments.

201. BR 91. 6; Tan. B. I, 193–194 and 195; Tan. Mikkez 8; Yashar Mikkez 99b; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 42. 5; MHG I, 635; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 148. Comp. preceding note.

202. Yashar Mikkez, 99a–100a (in the main, it follows older sources; comp. BR 91. 4 and 6); Koheleth 9. 15; Tan. Mikkez 8; Tan. B. I, 194, 202; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 42. 6. See also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6. 2.

203. BR 91. 4.

## JOSEPH MEETS HIS BRETHREN

A large crown of gold on his head, apparelled in byssus and purple, and surrounded by his valiant men, Joseph was seated upon his throne in his palace. His brethren fell down before

him in great admiration of his beauty, his stately appearance, and his majesty.<sup>204</sup> They did not know him, for when Joseph was sold into slavery, he was a beardless youth. But he knew his brethren, their appearance had not changed in aught, for they were bearded men when he was separated from them.<sup>205</sup>

He was inclined to make himself known to them as their brother, but an angel appeared unto him, the same that had brought him from Shechem to his brethren at Dothan, and spoke, saying, "These came hither with intent to kill thee." Later, when the brethren returned home, and gave an account of their adventures to Jacob, they told him that a man had accused them falsely before the ruler of Egypt, not knowing that he who incited Joseph against them was an angel. It was in reference to this matter, and meaning their accuser, that Jacob, when he dispatched his sons on their second expedition to Egypt, prayed to God, "God Almighty give you mercy before the man."<sup>206</sup>

Joseph made himself strange unto his brethren, and he took his cup in his hand, knocked against it, and said, "By this magic cup I know that ye are spies." They replied, "Thy servants came from Canaan into Egypt for to buy corn."

Joseph: "If it be true that ye came hither to buy corn, why is it that each one of you entered the city by a separate gate?"<sup>207</sup>

The brethren: "We are *all* the sons of one man in the land of Canaan, and he bade us not enter a city together by the same gate, that we attract not the attention of the people of the place." Unconsciously they had spoken as seers, for the word *all* included Joseph as one of their number.<sup>208</sup>

Joseph: "Verily, ye are spies! All the people that come to buy corn return home without delay, but ye have lingered here three days, without making any purchases, and all the time you have been gadding about in the disreputable



parts of the city, and only spies are wont to do thus."

The brethren: "We thy servants are twelve brethren, the sons of Jacob, the son of Isaac, the son of the Hebrew Abraham. The youngest is this day with our father in Canaan, and one hath disappeared. Him did we look for in this land, and we looked for him even in the disreputable houses."

Joseph: "Have ye made search in every other place on earth, and was Egypt the only land left? And if it be true that he is in Egypt, what should a brother of yours be doing in a house of ill-fame, if, indeed, ye are the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob?"

The brethren: "We did hear that some Ishmaelites stole our brother, and sold him into slavery in Egypt, and as our brother was exceeding fair in form and face, we thought he might have been sold for illicit uses, and therefore we searched even the disreputable houses to find him."

Joseph: "You speak deceitful words, when you call yourselves sons of Abraham. By the life of Pharaoh, ye are spies, and you did go from one disreputable house to another that none might discover you."<sup>209</sup>

The expression "by the life of Pharaoh" might have betrayed Joseph's real feeling to his brethren, had they but known his habit of taking this oath only when he meant to avoid keeping his word later.<sup>210</sup>

Joseph continued to speak to his brethren: "Let us suppose you should discover your brother serving as a slave, and his master should demand a high sum for his ransom, would you pay it?"

The brethren: "Yes!"

Joseph: "But suppose his master should refuse to surrender him for any price in the world, what would you do?"

The brethren: "If he yields not our brother to us, we will kill the master, and carry off our brother."

Joseph: "Now see how true my words were, that ye are spies. By your own admission ye have come to slay the inhabitants of the land. Report hath told us that two of you did massacre the people of Shechem on account of the wrong done to your sister, and now have ye come down into Egypt to kill the Egyptians for the sake of your brother. I shall be convinced of your innocence only if you consent to send one of your number home and fetch your youngest brother hither."

His brethren refused compliance, and Joseph caused them to be put into prison by seventy of his valiant men, and there they remained for three days.<sup>211</sup> God never allows the pious to languish in distress longer than three days, and so it was a Divine dispensation that the brethren of Joseph were released on the third day,<sup>212</sup> and were permitted by Joseph to return home, on condition, however, that one of them remain behind as hostage.

The difference between Joseph and his brethren can be seen here. Though he retained one of them to be bound in the prison house, he still said, "I fear God," and dismissed the others, but when he was in their power, they gave no thought to God.<sup>213</sup> At this time, to be sure, their conduct was such as is becoming to the pious, who accept their fate with calm resignation, and acknowledge the righteousness of God, for He metes out reward and punishment measure for measure. They recognized that their present punishment was in return for the heartless treatment they had dealt out to Joseph, paying no heed to his distress, though he fell at the feet of each of them, weeping, and entreating them not to sell him into slavery. Reuben reminded the others that they had two wrongs to expiate, the wrong against their brother and the wrong against their father, who was so grieved that he exclaimed, "I will go down to the grave to my son mourning."

The brethren of Joseph knew not that the viceroy of Egypt understood Hebrew, and could



follow their words, for Manasseh stood and was an interpreter between them and him.<sup>214</sup>

Joseph decided to keep Simon as hostage in Egypt, for he had been one of the two—Levi was the other—to advise that Joseph be put to death, and only the intercession of Reuben and Judah had saved him. He did not detain Levi, too, for he feared, if both remained behind together, Egypt might suffer the same fate at their hands as the city of Shechem.<sup>215</sup> Also, he preferred Simon to Levi, because Simon was not a favorite among the sons of Jacob, and they would not resist his detention in Egypt too violently, while they might annihilate Egypt, as aforetime Shechem, if they were deprived of Levi, their wise man and high priest.<sup>216</sup> Besides, it was Simon that had lowered Joseph into the pit, wherefore he had a particular grudge against him.<sup>217</sup>

When the brethren yielded to Joseph's demand, and consented to leave their brother behind as hostage, Simon said to them, "Ye desire to do with me as ye did with Joseph!" But they replied, in despair: "What can we do? Our households will perish of hunger." Simon made answer, "Do as ye will, but as for me, let me see the man that will venture to cast me into prison." Joseph sent word to Pharaoh to let him have seventy of his valiant men, to aid him in arresting robbers. But when the seventy appeared upon the scene, and were about to lay hands on Simon, he uttered a loud cry, and his assailants fell to the floor and knocked out their teeth.<sup>218</sup> Pharaoh's valiant men, as well as all the people that stood about Joseph, fled affrighted, only Joseph and his son Manasseh remained calm and unmoved. Manasseh rose up, dealt Simon a blow on the back of his neck, put manacles upon his hands and fetters upon his feet, and cast him into prison. Joseph's brethren were greatly amazed at the heroic strength of the youth, and Simon said, "This blow was not dealt by an Egyptian, but by one belonging to our house."<sup>219</sup>

He was bound and taken to prison before the eyes of the other brethren of Joseph, but as soon as they were out of sight, Joseph ordered good fare to be set before him, and he treated him with great kindness.<sup>220</sup>

Joseph permitted his nine other brethren to depart, carrying corn with them in abundance, but he impressed upon them that they must surely return and bring their youngest brother with them. On the way, Levi, who felt lonely without his constant companion Simon, opened his sack, and he espied the money he had paid for the corn. They all trembled, and their hearts failed them, and they said, "Where, then, is the lovingkindness of God toward our fathers Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, seeing that He hath delivered us into the hands of the Egyptian king, that he may raise false accusations against us?" And Judah said, "Verily, we are guilty concerning our brother, we have sinned against God, in that we sold our brother, our own flesh, and why do ye ask, Where, then, is the lovingkindness of God toward our fathers?"

Reuben spoke in the same way: "Spake I not unto you, saying, Do not sin against the child, and ye would not hear? And now the Lord doth demand him of us. How can you say, Where, then, is the lovingkindness of God toward our fathers, though you have sinned against Him?"

They proceeded on their journey home, and their father met them on the way. Jacob was astonished not to see Simon with them, and in reply to his questions, they told him all that had befallen them in Egypt. Then Jacob cried out: "What have ye done? I sent Joseph to you to see whether it be well with you, and ye said, An evil beast hath devoured him. Simon went forth with you for to buy corn, and you say, The king of Egypt hath cast him into prison. And now ye will take Benjamin away and kill him, too. Ye will bring down my gray hairs with sorrow to the grave."<sup>221</sup>



The words of Jacob, which he uttered, “Me have ye bereaved of my children,” were meant to intimate to his sons that he suspected them of the death of Joseph and of Simon’s disappearance as well, and their reports concerning both he regarded as inventions.<sup>222</sup> What made him inconsolable was that now, having lost two of his sons, he could not hope to see the Divine promise fulfilled, that he should be the ancestor of twelve tribes.<sup>223</sup> He was quite resolved in his mind, therefore, not to let Benjamin go away with his brethren under any condition whatsoever, and he vouchsafed Reuben no reply when he said, “Slay my two sons, if I bring him not to thee.” He considered it beneath his dignity to give an answer to such balderdash.<sup>224</sup> “My first-born son,” he said to himself, “is a fool. What will it profit me, if I slay his two sons? Does he not know that his sons are equally mine?”<sup>225</sup> Judah advised his brethren to desist from urging their father then; he would consent, he thought, to whatever expedients were found necessary, as soon as their bread gave out, and a second journey to Egypt became imperative.<sup>226</sup>

204. Yashar Mikkez, 100a–100b (following BR 91. 6 and the other sources cited in note 202). As to מצרים in the sense of the capital of Egypt, see note 184.

205. Yebamot 88a and parallel passages cited on the margin; BR 91. 7; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 42. 8. Comp. also Yashar Mikkez, 100b; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6. 1; text on p. 388.

206. Yelammedenu 28=BHM VI, 84 and in a very elaborate form, Aggadat Bereshit 72, 142–143. The source of *Ba'al ha-Turim*, Gen. 42. 6, is very likely Yelammedenu, though he states that it was the angel Gabriel who incited Joseph against his brethren. Comp. note 29.

207. BR 91. 6; Tan. Mikkez 8; Yashar Mikkez, 100b.

208. BR 91. 6–7 and see sources referred to in the preceding note.

209. Yashar Mikkez, 100b–101a, mainly following older sources. See BR 91. 6; Tan. Mikkez 8; Tan. B. I, 194 and 203. Comp. also citation from Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s. v. קלן 4. The idea that disreputable houses are hiding-places for spies is in accordance with Josh. 2. 1.

210. BR 91. 7; Tan. B. I, 203. A different view is found in ER 26, 131, and BaR 14. 6 (119a), according to which Joseph kept his oath, though he did not take it by God, but by the life of Pharaoh. Comp. Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא) 24d, which is very likely the source of BaR.

211. Yashar Mikkez 101a, following BR 91. 6; Tan. Mikkez 8. Sabba, Mikkez, 53a, quotes the following from an unknown Midrash: They did not accept Joseph’s proposal to send one of them to Canaan for Benjamin, for they feared lest their families should die of hunger, since it was impossible for one person to take with him the grain needed for so many families.

212. BR 91. 7; comp. also Targum Yerushalmi 41. 1; Esther R. 5. 3; Tehillim 22, 182–183.

213. MHG I, 637–638.

214. BR 91. 8; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 42. 23.

215. MHG I, 639; BR 91. 1 and 99. 7. Comp. notes 34 and 41.

216. Abkir in Yalkut I, 148. On the view that Levi possessed wisdom, prophecy, and priesthood, see text on p. 160 as well as p. 766. Levi is glorified not only in Jub. and the Testaments of the Twelve Patriarchs, but also in rabbinic literature; comp. Sifre Z., 109; PK I, 1b, and the numerous parallel passages cited by Buber, as well as the sources referred to in footnotes 174 and 251 on pp. 285, 300.

217. BR 91. 7; Tan. Wa-Yiggash 4; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 42. 24. Comp. notes 34 and 42.

218. BR 91. 7; Tan. Wa-Yiggash 4; Yashar Mikkez, 101b; Abkir in Yalkut I, 148. Comp. note 275.

219. Tan. Wa-Yiggash 4; Abkir in Yalkut I, 148; Yashar Mikkez, 101b; BR 91. 7. Compare with pp. 385 and 387.

220. BR 91. 8; Tan. B. I, 184; Lekah, Gen. 42. 8; Zohar I, 198b and 200b. Comp. also BR 91. 7 and 92. 4; MHG I, 639. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6. 6, seems to have been acquainted with a similar Haggadah.

221. Yashar Mikkez, 101b–102a; MHG I, 640, and comp. Schechter, *ad loc.*; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 42. 27 and 2 Targum Yerushalmi 42. 36; Zohar I, 200b. How it came about that it was just Levi and no other of the brethren who made the discovery is explained in three different ways. In his excitement over the separation from his favorite brother Simeon he forgot to take provender for the road so that it was necessary for him to open the sack intended to be used at home, and thus he found the money; see the unknown Midrash in Sabba, Mikkez, 53a. That he should not be suspected of theft, he immediately communicated his find to his brethren; MHG I, 640. Other authorities say that Levi, who was very pious (comp. note 216), was the first to give food to his donkey, for according to the law, before partaking of food, one must first feed the animals entrusted to one’s care (comp. Berakot 40a). In opening the sack he found the money. See the unknown midrashic source in Shu’aib,



Mikkez, 19d. The third explanation is that Levi took with him the sack of his favorite brother Simeon who was detained by Joseph in Egypt, and in order to alleviate the burden of his donkey, his brethren took his own provender for the road. He accordingly had to open the sack intended to be used at home. See *Hadar*, 20b. They had intended to search all the sacks, for they suspected trickery, but fearing that the Egyptians were persecuting them, they made haste and reached their country in a very short time; Philo, *De Josepho*, 21.

222. MHG I, 640; BR 91. 9; Philo, *De Josepho*, 30.

223. Aggadat Bereshit 72. 142; MHG I, 640. Compare with p. 342.

224. 2 ARN 40, 112. "Satan appears as the accuser of men when they are in danger," and in consequence of his accusations they frequently die. Accordingly Jacob feared to expose Benjamin to the danger of travel; Yerushalmi Shabbat 2, 5b, and parallel passages cited on the margin. Jacob had all the more reason to fear the dangers of travel, as it was on the road that Rachel died, and it was away from home that Joseph disappeared and Simeon was taken captive; Yerushalmi Shabbat 6, 8c, and parallel passages cited on the margin. Man can protect himself against all illness except against cold and heat, which mostly attack one while travelling, and Jacob feared to expose Benjamin to dangers of this kind; Ketubot 30a.

225. MHG I, 641; BR 91. 9; Tan. Mikkez 8.

226. Yashar Mikkez, 102a–102b; Tan. Mikkez 8.

## THE SECOND JOURNEY TO EGYPT

When the supplies bought in Egypt were eaten up, and the family of Jacob began to suffer with hunger, the little children came to him, and they said, "Give us bread, that we die not of hunger before thee." The words of the little ones brought scorching tears to the eyes of Jacob, and he summoned his sons and bade them go again down into Egypt and buy food.<sup>227</sup> But Judah spake unto him, "The man did solemnly protest unto us, saying that we should not see his face, except our brother Benjamin be with us, and we cannot appear before him with idle pretexts." And Jacob said, "Wherefore dealt ye so ill with me as to tell the man whether ye had yet a brother?" It was the first and only time Jacob indulged in

empty talk, and God said, "I made it My business to raise his son to the position of ruler of Egypt, and he complains, and says, Wherefore dealt ye so ill with me?" And Judah protested against the reproach, that he had initiated the Egyptian viceroy in their family relations, with the words: "Why, he knew the very wood of which our baby coaches are made!"<sup>228</sup> Father," he continued, "if Benjamin goes with us, he may, indeed, be taken from us, but also he may not. This is a doubtful matter, but it is certain that if he does not go with us, we shall all die of hunger. It is better not to concern thyself about what is doubtful, and guide thy actions by what is certain."<sup>229</sup> The king of Egypt is a strong and mighty king, and if we go to him without our brother, we shall all be put to death. Dost thou not know, and hast thou not heard, that this king is very powerful and wise, and there is none like unto him in all the earth? We have seen all the kings of the earth, but none like unto the king of Egypt. One would surely say that among all the kings of the earth there is none greater than Abimelech king of the Philistines, yet the king of Egypt is greater and mightier than he, and Abimelech can hardly be compared with one of his officers. Father, thou hast not seen his palace and his throne, and all his servants standing before him. Thou hast not seen that king upon his throne, in all his magnificence and with his royal insignia, arrayed in his royal robes, with a large golden crown upon his head. Thou hast not seen the honor and the glory that God hath given unto him, for there is none like unto him in all the earth. Father, thou hast not seen the wisdom, the understanding, and the knowledge that God has given in his heart. We heard his sweet voice when he spake unto us. We know not, father, who acquainted him with our names, and all that befell us. He asked also concerning thee, saying, Is your father still alive, and is it well with him? Thou hast not seen the affairs of the government of



Egypt regulated by him, for none asketh his lord Pharaoh about them. Thou hast not seen the awe and the fear that he imposes upon all the Egyptians. Even we went out from his presence threatening to do unto Egypt as unto the cities of the Amorites, and exceedingly wroth by reason of all his words that he spake concerning us as spies, yet when we came again before him, his terror fell upon us all, and none of us was able to speak a word to him, great or small. Now, therefore, father, send the lad with us, and we will arise and go down into Egypt, and buy food to eat, that we die not of hunger.”<sup>230</sup>

Judah offered his portion in the world to come as surety for Benjamin, and thus solemnly he promised to bring him back safe and sound, and Jacob granted his request, and permitted Benjamin to go down into Egypt with his other sons. They also carried with them choice presents from their father for the ruler of Egypt, things that arouse wonder outside of Palestine, such as the murex, which is the snail that produces the Tyrian purple, and various kinds of balm, and almond oil, and pistachio oil, and honey as hard as stone. Furthermore, Jacob put double money in their hand to provide against a rise in prices in the meantime. And after all these matters were attended to, he spake to his sons, saying: “Here is money, and here is a present, and also your brother. Is there aught else that you need?” And they replied, “Yes, we need this, besides, that thou shouldst intercede for us with God.” Then their father prayed:<sup>231</sup> “O Lord, Thou who at the time of creation didst call Enough! to heaven and earth when they stretched themselves out further and further toward infinity, set a limit to my sufferings, too, say unto them, Enough!”<sup>232</sup> God Almighty give you mercy before the ruler of Egypt, that he may release unto you Joseph, Simon, and Benjamin.”

This prayer was an intercession, not only for the sons of Jacob, but also for their descen-

dants—that God would deliver the Ten Tribes in time to come, as He delivered the two, Judah and Benjamin, and after He permitted the destruction of two Temples, He would grant endless continuance to the third.<sup>233</sup>

Jacob also put a letter addressed to the viceroy of Egypt into the hands of his son. The letter ran thus: “From thy servant Jacob, the son of Isaac, the grandson of Abraham, prince of God, to the mighty and wise king Zaphenath-paneah, the ruler of Egypt, peace! I make known unto my lord the king that the famine is sore with us in the land of Canaan, and I have therefore sent my sons unto thee, to buy us a little food, that we may live, and not die. My children surrounded me, and begged for something to eat, but, alas, I am very old, and I cannot see with mine eyes, for they are heavy with the weight of years, and also on account of my never-ceasing tears for my son Joseph, who hath been taken from me. I charged my sons not to pass through the gate all together at the same time, when they arrived in the city of Egypt, in consideration of the inhabitants of the land, that they might not take undue notice of them. Also I bade them go up and down in the land of Egypt and seek my son Joseph, mayhap they would find him there.

“This did they do, but thou didst therefore account them as spies. We have heard the report of thy wisdom and sagacity. How, then, canst thou look upon their countenances, and yet declare them to be spies? Especially as we have heard thee didst interpret Pharaoh’s dream, and didst foretell the coming of the famine, are we amazed that thou, in thy discernment, couldst not distinguish whether they be spies or not.

“And, now, O my lord king, I send unto thee my son Benjamin, as thou didst demand of my other sons. I pray thee, take good care of him until thou sendest him back to me in peace with his bretheren. Hast thou not heard, and dost thou not know, what our God did unto Pharaoh



when he took our mother Sarah unto himself? Or what happened unto Abimelech on account of her? And what our father Abraham did unto the nine kings of Elam, how he killed them and exterminated their armies, though he had but a few men with him? Or hast thou not heard what my two sons Simon and Levi did to the eight cities of the Amorites, which they destroyed on account of their sister Dinah? Benjamin consoled them for the loss of Joseph. What, then, will they do unto him that stretcheth forth the hand of power to snatch him away from them?

“Knowest thou not, O king of Egypt, that the might of our God is with us, and that He always hearkens unto our prayers, and never forsakes us? Had I called upon God to rise up against thee when my sons told me how thou didst act toward them, thou and thy people, ye all would have been annihilated ere Benjamin could come down to thee. But I reflected that Simon my son was abiding in thy house, and perhaps thou wast doing kindnesses unto him, and therefore I invoked not the punishment of God upon thee. Now my son Benjamin goeth down unto thee with my other sons. Take heed unto thyself, keep thy eyes directed upon him, and God will direct His eye upon all thy kingdom.

“I have said all now that is in my heart. My sons take their youngest brother down into Egypt with them, and do thou send them all back to me in peace.”

This letter Jacob put into the keeping of Judah, charging him to deliver it to the ruler of Egypt. His last words to his sons were an admonition to take good care of Benjamin and not leave him out of their sight, either on the journey or after their arrival in Egypt. He bade farewell to them, and then turned in prayer to God, saying: “O Lord of heaven and earth! Remember Thy covenant with our father Abraham. Remember also my father Isaac, and grant grace unto my sons, and deliver them not into the hands of

the king of Egypt. O my God, do it for the sake of Thy mercy, redeem my sons and save them from the hands of the Egyptians, and restore their two brethren unto them.”

Also the women and the children in the house of Jacob prayed to God amid tears, and entreated Him to redeem their husbands and their fathers out of the hands of the king of Egypt.<sup>234</sup>

227. Yashar Mikkez, 102b.

228. BR 91. 10; PK 17, 131a; Ekah 3. 35; Aggadat Bereshit 45, 130. The last-named source contrasts Jacob's impatience in time of distress with Abraham's complete resignation to God's will.

229. BR 91. 10; Tan. B. I, 203; Tan. Mikkez 8; Philo, *De Josepho*, 32. Comp. Brody's remark in Berliner's *Rashi*, 23.

230. Yashar Mikkez, 102b–103a.

231. BR 91. 10–11. “To be unable to satisfy a child's demand for food is worse than to be at the gate of death”; Jacob could brave many calamities, but not the children's cry for bread, and he was forced to permit Benjamin to go to Egypt; MHG I, 646. Compare with text on p. 376.

232. Tan. B. I, 202–203; Tan. Mikkez 10; BR 92. 1–2; MHG I, 644 and 646. Many more explanations are given in these passages why on this occasion Jacob addressed God as *Shaddai* (=“He who exclaimed: Enough”). Compare with footnote 43 on p. 7.

233. BR 92. 3; Tan. B. I, 203; Aggadat Bereshit 73, 142; MHG I, 648 (א'ל) and 649. Comp. also Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 43. 14; 2 ARN 43, 118; *Neueh Shalom*, 42; Midrash Aggada, Gen. 22. 5. On unconscious prophecies also see footnote 239 on p. 227.

234. Yashar Mikkez, 103a–104a. The text is to be read *אחד העם* instead of *שבענו גם כן*, and *עם כן שמענו* stands here, in accordance with footnote 56 on p. 260, for *מלך* “king”. The assertion made by Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 532, that this letter is modelled after an Arabic original is without the slightest foundation. The designation of Joseph as king is not borrowed from Arabic legends, as Grünbaum maintains, but is of frequent occurrence in the rabbinic literature of the pre-Arabic period; see, e. g., BR 91. 10 and 107. 19; ShR 1. 7; DR 2. 33 and 4. 7; BaR 14. 5 and 6; WR 16. 2; 2 ARN 10, 26 (comp. Schechter, note 11). Sifre D., 334, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 7. 3, show the high antiquity of the view which considers Joseph as king of Egypt. In some passages Joseph is described to have been the ruler of the whole world, “cosmocrater”; see *Batte Midrashot* III, 11 (a fragment of Yelammedenu?); PR 3, 10b;



comp. also WR, *loc. cit.*, and Aggadat Bereshit 66, 132. The allusions, in this letter, to the wars of the sons of Jacob against the Amorites undoubtedly presuppose the legend given in the text on p. 314, which is unknown to the Arabs. The departure of Jacob's sons with great weeping is also described by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6. 5.

## JOSEPH AND BENJAMIN

Great was the joy of Joseph when his brethren stood before him and Benjamin was with them. In his youngest brother he saw the true counterpart of his father.<sup>235</sup> He ordered his son Manasseh,<sup>236</sup> the steward of his house, to bring the men into the palace, and make ready a meal for them. But he was to take care to prepare the meat dishes in the presence of the guests, so that they might see with their own eyes that the cattle had been slaughtered according to the ritual prescriptions, and the sinew of the hip which is upon the hollow of the thigh had been removed.<sup>237</sup>

The dinner to which Joseph invited his brethren was a Sabbath meal, for he observed the seventh day even before the revelation of the law. The sons of Jacob refused the invitation of the steward, and a scuffle ensued. While he tried to force them into the banqueting hall, they tried to force him out,<sup>238</sup> for they feared it was but a ruse to get possession of them and their asses, on account of the money they had found in their sacks on their return from their first journey to Egypt. In their modesty they put the loss of their beasts upon the same level as the loss of their personal liberty. To the average man property is as precious as life itself.<sup>239</sup>

Standing at the door of Joseph's house, they spake to the steward, and said: "We are in badly reduced circumstances. In our country we supported others, and now we depend upon thee to support us." After these introductory words, they

offered him the money they had found in their sacks. The steward reassured them concerning the money, saying, "However it may be, whether for the sake of your own merits, or for the sake of the merits of your fathers, God hath caused you to find a treasure, for the money ye paid for the corn came into my hand." Then he brought Simon out to them. Their brother looked like a leather bottle, so fat and rotund had he grown during his sojourn in Egypt.<sup>240</sup> He told his brethren what kind treatment had been accorded unto him. The very moment they left the city he had been released from prison, and thereafter he had been entertained with splendor in the house of the ruler of Egypt.

When Joseph made his appearance, Judah took Benjamin by the hand, and presented him to the viceroy, and they all bowed down themselves to him to the earth.<sup>241</sup> Joseph asked them concerning the welfare of their father and their grandfather, and they made reply, "Thy servant our father is well; he is yet alive," and Joseph knew from their words that his grandfather Isaac was no more.<sup>242</sup> He had died at the time when Joseph was released from prison, and the joy of God in the liberation of Joseph was overcast by His sorrow for Isaac.<sup>243</sup> Then Judah handed his father's letter to Joseph, who was so moved at seeing the well-known handwriting that he had to retire to his chamber and weep. When he came back, he summoned Benjamin to approach close to him, and he laid his hand upon his youngest brother's head, and blessed him with the words, "God be gracious unto thee, my son."<sup>244</sup> His father had once mentioned "the children which God hath graciously given Thy servant," and as Benjamin was not among the children thus spoken of, for he was born later, Joseph compensated him now by blessing him with the grace of God.<sup>245</sup>

The table was set in three divisions, for Joseph, for his brethren, and for the Egyptians. The sons of Jacob did not venture to eat of the dishes



set before them, they were afraid they might not have been prepared according to the ritual prescriptions—a punishment upon Joseph for having slandered his brethren, whom he once charged with not being punctilious in the observance of the dietary laws.<sup>246</sup> The Egyptians, again, could not sit at the same table with the sons of Jacob, because the latter ate the flesh of the animals to which the former paid divine worship.<sup>247</sup>

When all was ready, and the guests were to be seated, Joseph raised his cup, and, pretending to inhale his knowledge from it, he said, “Judah is king, therefore let him sit at the head of the table, and let Reuben the first-born take the second seat,” and thus he assigned places to all his brethren corresponding to their dignity and their age.<sup>248</sup> Moreover, he seated the brothers together who were the sons of the same mother, and when he reached Benjamin, he said, “I know that the youngest among you has no brother borne by his own mother, next to whom he might be seated, and also I have none, therefore he may take his place next to me.”

The brethren marvelled one with another at all this. During the meal, Joseph took his portion, and gave it to Benjamin, and his wife Asenath followed his example, and also Ephraim and Manasseh, so that Benjamin had four portions in addition to that which he had received like the other sons of Jacob.<sup>249</sup>

Wine was served at the meal, and it was the first time in twenty-two years that Joseph and his brethren tasted of it, for they had led the life of Nazarites, his brethren because they regretted the evil they had done to Joseph, and Joseph because he grieved over the fate of his father.<sup>250</sup>

Joseph entered into conversation with his brother Benjamin. He asked him whether he had a brother borne by his own mother, and Benjamin answered, “I had one, but I do not know what hath become of him.” Joseph continued his questions: “Hast thou a wife?”

Benjamin: “Yes, I have a wife and ten sons.”

Joseph: “And what are their names?”

Benjamin: “Bela, and Becher, and Ashbel, Gera, and Naaman, Ehi, and Rosh, Muppim, and Huppim, and Ard.”

Joseph: “Why didst thou give them such peculiar names?”

Benjamin: “In memory of my brother and his sufferings: Bela, because my brother disappeared among the peoples; Becher, he was the first-born son of my mother; Ashbel, he was taken away from my father; Gera, he dwells a stranger in a strange land; Naaman, he was exceedingly lovely; Ehi, he was my only brother by my father and my mother together; Rosh, he was at the head of his brethren; Muppim, he was beautiful in every respect; Huppim, he was slandered; and Ard, because he was as beautiful as a rose.”<sup>251</sup>

Joseph ordered his magic astrolabe to be brought to him, whereby he knew all things that happen, and he said unto Benjamin, “I have heard that the Hebrews are acquainted with all wisdom, but dost thou know aught of this?” Benjamin answered, “Thy servant also is skilled in all wisdom, which my father hath taught me.” He then looked upon the astrolabe, and to his great astonishment he discovered by the aid of it that he who was sitting upon the throne before him was his brother Joseph. Noticing Benjamin’s amazement, Joseph asked him, “What hast thou seen, and why art thou astonished?” Benjamin said, “I can see by this that Joseph my brother sitteth here before me upon the throne.” And Joseph said: “I am Joseph thy brother! Reveal not the thing unto our brethren. I will send thee with them when they go away, and I will command them to be brought back again into the city, and I will take thee away from them. If they risk their lives and fight for thee, then shall I know that they have repented of what they did unto me, and I will make myself known unto them. But if they forsake thee, I will keep thee, that thou



shouldst remain with me. They shall go away, and I will not make myself known unto them.”<sup>252</sup>

Then Joseph inquired of Benjamin what his brethren had told their father after they had sold him into slavery, and he heard the story of the coat dipped in the blood of a kid of the goats. “Yes, brother,” spoke Joseph, “when they had stripped me of my coat, they handed me over to the Ishmaelites, who tied an apron around my waist, scourged me, and bade me run off. But a lion attacked the one that beat me, and killed him, and his companions were alarmed, and they sold me to other people.”<sup>253</sup>

Dismissed by Joseph with kind words, his brethren started on their homeward journey as soon as the morning was light, for it is a good rule to “leave a city after sunrise, and enter a city before sundown.”<sup>254</sup> Besides, Joseph had a specific reason for not letting his brethren depart from the city during the night. He feared an encounter between them and his servants, and that his men might get the worst of it, for the sons of Jacob were like the wild beasts, which have the upper hand at night.

235. Tan. Mikkez 10. For a different view see notes 3, 244.

236. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 48. 16; Tan. B. I, 197 and 202. Comp. notes 214.

237. Hullin 91a; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 43. 16; ER 26, 131.

238. BR 92. 4; BaR 14. 2; Tan. B. IV, 43; Tan. Naso 28; ER 36, 131; Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא), 24b. Aphraates, 28, on the contrary, writes: Joseph proved his piety in resisting the sinful temptations (of Potiphar’s wife), but not in the observance of the Sabbath, which had not yet been commanded at the time. It is rather strange that Schapiro, *Haggadische Elemente*, 78, misunderstood the explicit words of this Church Father. Compare with text on p. 440 and 659, as well as footnote 280, on pp. 304–305. As to the discourteous way in which Joseph’s servants dealt with his brethren, comp. 12 Testaments, Zebulun, 3. 7=text on p. 336.

239. MHG I, 649, 817. Comp. Hullin 91a. They feared not the Egyptians, but the consequences of their crime

against Joseph; see citation from an unknown Midrash in Sabba, Mikkez, 53c.

240. BR 92. 4. As to Simeon, compare with p. 374, and note 220 appertaining to it. On the merits of the fathers which came to the aid of Joseph’s sons, see BR 34. 12; Tehillim 27, 228; citation from an unknown Midrash in Sabba, Mikkez, 53c.

241. Yashar Mikkez, 104a.

242. BR 92. 5. Even to-day it is customary among Jews to hint at death, but not to announce it directly; see *Shulhan Aruk, Yoreh De’ah*, 402. 12.

243. MHG I, 609; comp. note 169.

244. Yashar Mikkez, 104a. Benjamin bore a close resemblance to Rachel his mother (compare with p. 91, and footnote 235), and looking at him, Joseph could not refrain from thinking of their dead mother; he wept, for “only tears extinguish the burning coals of the heart”; Tan. B. I, 197; Lekah and Sekel, Gen. 43. 30; Zohar I, 202b.

245. BR 74. 10 and 92. 5.

246. Tan. B. I, 180; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 2; comp. sources referred to in notes 8 and 237.

247. Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi, Gen. 43. 32.

248. BR 92. 5; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 4; Mishle I, 45; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 42. 33.

249. Yashar Mikkez, 104a–104b, which follows the sources referred to in the preceding note. Jub. 42. 23 reads: Benjamin received seven times as much as his brethren. Comp. also Demetrius, 9. 12, 425.

250. BR 92. 5 and 98. 20; Shabbat 139a; Mishle I, 46; Yashar מִקֶּז, 104b; 12 Testaments, Joseph 3. 5. Philo dwells upon the frugality of the meal, as Joseph would not indulge in dainties while others were suffering hunger. Comp. Ta’anit 11a and note 190.

251. Tan. Wa-Yiggash 4; BR 94. 8; Sotah 37b; Tan. B. I, 206–207; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 47. 21; Yalkut I, 150; MHG I, 683–684; Yashar Mikkez, 104b; Zohar I, 153b–154a. Comp. note 279, as well as footnote 6 on p. 434. Joseph was destined to be the father of twelve sons, but as a punishment for having permitted for a moment illicit passion to enter his heart (compare with p. 356, and note 121), he begot only two sons, while his brother Benjamin was blessed with ten. See Sotah, *loc. cit.*

252. Yashar Mikkez, 104b–105a. That Joseph tried to ascertain the feelings of his half-brethren towards Rachel’s children is also stated in Jub. 42. 25 and by Philo, *De Josepho*, 39, as well as by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6. 7. Comp. also the citation from an unknown midrashic source in Sabba, Mikkez, 53, which reads: Benjamin did not betray his brethren’s secret, and did not tell Jacob that they sold Joseph into slavery; Tehillim 15, 118, and comp. note 370.

253. 12 Testaments, Benjamin 2; an unknown midrashic source quoted by Sabba, Wa-Yiggash, 54d. Comp. Excursus II; Benjamin as well as text on p. 449.



254. MHG I, 651; comp. Schechter, *ad loc.*, and note 24. Sabba, Mikkez, 53b, quotes, from an unknown Midrash, several explanations of בָּקֵר (Gen. 44. 3).

## THE THIEF CAUGHT

They were not yet far beyond the city gates, when Joseph dispatched Manasseh, the steward of his house, to follow after them, and look for the silver cup that he had concealed in Benjamin's sack. He knew his brethren well, he did not venture to let them get too far from the city before he should attempt to force their return. He hoped that the nearness of the city would intimidate them and make them heed his commands. Manasseh therefore received the order to bring them to a halt, by mild speech if he could, or by rough speech if he must, and carry them back to the city.<sup>255</sup> He acted according to his instructions. When the brethren heard the accusation of theft, they said: "With whomsoever of thy servants the cup be found, let him die, and we also will be my lord's bondmen." And Manasseh said, "As you say, so were it proper to do, for if ten persons are charged with theft, and the stolen object is found with one of them, all are held responsible. But I will not be so hard. He with whom the cup is found shall be the bondman, and the rest shall be blameless."

He searched all the sacks, and in order not to excite the suspicion that he knew where the cup was, he began at Reuben, the eldest, and left off at Benjamin, the youngest, and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack. In a rage, his brethren shouted at Benjamin, "O thou thief and son of a thief! Thy mother brought shame upon our father by her thievery, and now thou bringest shame upon us." But he replied, "Is this matter as evil as the matter of the kid of the goats—as the deed of the brethren that sold their own brother into slavery?"<sup>256</sup>

In their fury and vexation, the brethren rent their clothes. God paid them in their own coin. They had caused Jacob to tear his clothes in his grief over Joseph, and now they were made to do the same on account of their own troubles. And as they rent their clothes for the sake of their brother Benjamin, so Mordecai, the descendant of Benjamin, was destined to rend his on account of his brethren, the people of Israel. But because mortification was inflicted upon the brethren through Manasseh, the steward of Joseph, the allotment of territory given to the tribe of Manasseh was "torn" in two, one-half of the tribe had to live on one side of the Jordan, the other half on the other side. And Joseph, who had not shrunk from vexing his brethren so bitterly that they rent their clothes in their abasement, was punished, in that his descendant Joshua was driven to such despair after the defeat of Ai that he, too, rent his clothes.<sup>257</sup>

Convicted of theft beyond the peradventure of a doubt, the brethren of Joseph had no choice but to comply with the steward's command and return to the city. They accompanied him without delay. Each of them loaded his ass himself, raising the burden with one hand from the ground to the back of the beast, and then they retraced their steps cityward,<sup>258</sup> and as they walked, they rapped Benjamin roughly on the shoulder, saying, "O thou thief and son of a thief, thou hast brought the same shame upon us that thy mother brought upon our father." Benjamin bore the blows and the abusive words in patient silence, and he was rewarded for his humility. For submitting to the blows upon his shoulder, God appointed that His Shekinah should "dwell between his shoulders," and He also called him "the beloved of the Lord."<sup>259</sup>

Joseph's brethren returned to the city without fear. Though it was a great metropolis, in their eyes it appeared but as a hamlet of ten persons, which they could wipe out with a turn of



the hand.<sup>260</sup> They were led into the presence of Joseph, who, contrary to his usual habit, was not holding a session of the court in the forum on that day. He remained at home, that his brethren might not be exposed to shame in public. They fell to the earth before him, and thus came true his dream of the eleven stars that made obeisance to him.<sup>261</sup> But even while paying homage to Joseph, Judah was boiling inwardly with suppressed rage, and he said to his brethren, “Verily, this man hath forced me to come back hither only that I should destroy the city on this day.”

Guarded by his valiant men on the right and on the left, Joseph addressed his brethren, snarling, “What deed is this that ye have done, to steal away my cup? I know well, ye took it in order to discover with its help the whereabouts of your brother that hath disappeared.”<sup>262</sup> Judah was spokesman, and he replied: “What shall we say unto my lord concerning the first money that he found in the mouth of our sacks? What shall we speak concerning the second money that also was in our sacks? And how shall we clear ourselves concerning the cup? We cannot acknowledge ourselves guilty, for we know ourselves to be innocent in all these matters. Yet we cannot avow ourselves innocent, because God hath found out the iniquity of thy servants, like a creditor that goes about and tries to collect a debt owing to him.”<sup>263</sup> Two brothers take care not to enter a house of mirth and festivity together, that they be not exposed to the evil eye, but we all were caught together in one place, by reason of the sin which we committed in company.”

Joseph: “But if your punishment is for selling Joseph, why should this brother of yours suffer, the youngest, he that had no part in your crime!”

Judah: “A thief and his companions are taken together.”

Joseph: “If you could prevail upon yourselves to report to your father concerning a brother that

had not stolen, and had brought no manner of shame upon you, that a wild beast had torn him, you will easily persuade yourselves to say it concerning a brother that hath stolen, and hath brought shame upon you. Go hence, and tell your father, ‘The rope follows after the water bucket.’”<sup>264</sup> But,” continued Joseph, shaking his purple mantle, “God forbid that I should accuse you all of theft. Only the youth that stole the cup in order to divine his brother’s whereabouts shall remain with me as my bondman; but as for you, get you up in peace unto your father.”

The holy spirit called out, “Great peace have they which love thy law!”

The brethren all consented to yield Benjamin to the ruler of Egypt, only Judah demurred, and he cried out, “Now it is all over with peace!” and he prepared to use force, if need be, to rescue Benjamin from slavery.<sup>265</sup>

---

255. Tan. B. I, 197–198; Tan. Mikkez 10; MHG I, 625. As to the distance from the city, comp. Yalkut I, 150 (in the first edition no source is given; but later editions have מדרש), according to which they were still a mile from the city. This is based on an old interpretation of הרחיקו (Gen. 44. 4). Compare with note 236 on p. 227.

256. BR 102. 8; Tan. B. I, 198; Tan. Mikkez 10; MHG I, 653; Yashar Mikkez, 105a. For a somewhat different description comp. Tan. B. Introduction, 130–131. Philo, *De Josepho*, 38, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6. 7, likewise dwell upon the cleverness with which the search was carried out without exciting the suspicion that the searchers knew where the cup was. Philo, however, adds that when it was found in Benjamin’s sack, his brethren did not for a moment doubt his innocence, being convinced that the finding of the cup was the result of a conspiracy.—According to Egyptian law, no one beside the king and the viceroy was permitted to use a silver cup, and therefore the stealing of the silver cup was a much greater crime than ordinary theft. See Sabba, Mikkez, 53d. Comp. notes 263 and 268.

257. Tehillim 10, 93–94; Aggadat Esther 40; BR 92. 8; Tan. Mikkez 10; Tan. B. I, 198, and introduction 131. The last-named passage reads: Happy are the righteous who are punished for their sins during their lifetime; woe to the wicked who receive their punishment after their death.

258. BR 92. 8; MHG I, 654, where הכעס is to be read instead of הכוח. Comp. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 44. 3.



259. Tan. B. I, 198; Tan. Mikkez 10; Aggadat Bereshit 74, 146. Comp. MHG I, 653, and note 256.

260. BR 92. 8.

261. Tan. B. I, 198; Tan. Mikkez 10. This is the only occasion on which Joseph's dream was fulfilled in its entirety, since on the two other similar occasions there were only ten brethren; on the first occasion Benjamin was absent, and on the second Simeon (and he had dreamed of eleven stars!).

262. Yashar Mikkez, 105a; Tan. B. I, 198; Tan. Mikkez 10.

263. BR 92. 9 (here Judah confesses his sin with Tamar, Reuben his sin with Bilhah, and all the brothers their unjustified war against Schechem); Tan. B. I, 198; Tan. Mikkez 10; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 44. 15; Aggadat Bereshit 74, 147; MHG I, 654–655. As to the question whether Benjamin was suspected of theft by his brethren, see notes 256 and 270.

264. Tan. B. I, 198; Tan. Mikkez 10. On the proverb about the rope and the bucket, see note 274.

265. BR 92. 9; Yalkut I, 150 end of Mikkez (did Yalkut have a different reading in BR?); MHG I, 656; citation from an unknown Midrash in Sabba, Mikkez, 54a, which reads: The brethren wanted to abandon Benjamin to his fate, though he protested his innocence by the life of his father and the captivity of Joseph (שבִּירָה), but Judah admonished them to hold together. As to the expression נָעַר פֶּוֹרְפֹרִיָּה in BR, *loc. cit.*, comp. Nehem. 5. 13. See Tan. Wa-Yiggash 1 (end).

## JUDAH PLEADS AND THREATENS

Joseph dismissed his brethren, and carried Benjamin off by main force, and locked him up in a chamber. But Judah broke the door open and stood before Joseph with his brethren.<sup>266</sup> He determined to use in turn the three means of liberating Benjamin at his disposal. He was prepared to convince Joseph by argument, or move him by entreaties, or resort to force, in order to accomplish his end.<sup>267</sup>

He spake: "Thou doest a wrong unto us. Thou who didst say, 'I fear God,' thou showest thyself to be like unto Pharaoh, who hath no fear of God. The judgments which thou dost pronounce are not in accordance with our laws, nor are they in accordance with the laws of the nations.

According to our law, a thief must pay double the value of what he hath stolen. Only, if he hath no money, he is sold into slavery, but if he hath the money, he maketh double restitution. And according to the law of the nations, the thief is deprived of all he owns. Do so, but let him go free. If a man buys a slave, and then discovers him to be a thief, the transaction is void. Yet thou desirest to make one a slave whom thou chargest with being a thief. I suspect thee of wanting to keep him in thy power for illicit purposes,<sup>268</sup> and in this lustfulness thou resemblest Pharaoh. Also thou art like Pharaoh in that thou makest a promise and keepest it not. Thou saidst unto thy servants, Bring thy youngest brother down unto me, that I may set mine eyes upon him. Dost thou call this setting thine eyes upon him?<sup>269</sup> If thou didst desire nothing beside a slave, then wouldst thou surely accept our offer to serve thee as bondmen instead of Benjamin. Reuben is older than he, and I exceed him in strength. It cannot but be as I say, thou hast a lustful purpose in mind with our brother.<sup>270</sup>

"Therefore let these words of mine which I am about to speak find entrance into thy heart: For the sake of the grandmother of this lad were Pharaoh and his house stricken with sore plagues, because he detained her in his palace a single night against her will. His mother died a premature death, by reason of a curse which his father uttered in inconsiderate haste. Take heed, then, that this man's curse strike thee not and slay thee. Two of us destroyed the whole of a city on account of one woman, how much more would we do it for the sake of a man, and that man the beloved of the Lord, in whose allotment it is appointed that God shall dwell!

"If I but utter a sound, death-dealing pestilence will stalk through the land as far as No. In this land Pharaoh is the first, and thou art the second after him, but in our land my father is the first, and I am the second. If thou wilt not



comply with our demand, I will draw my sword, and hew thee down first, and then Pharaoh.”

When Judah gave utterance to this threat, Joseph made a sign, and Manasseh stamped his foot on the ground so that the whole palace shook. Judah said, “Only one belonging to our family can stamp thus!” and intimidated by this display of great strength, he moderated his tone and manner. “From the very beginning,” he continued to speak, “thou didst resort to all sorts of pretexts in order to embarrass us. The inhabitants of many countries came down into Egypt to buy corn, but none of them didst thou ask questions about their family relations. In sooth, we did not come hither to seek thy daughter in marriage, or peradventure thou desirest an alliance with our sister? Nevertheless we gave thee an answer unto all thy questions.”

Joseph replied: “Verily, thou canst talk glibly! Is there another babbler like thee among thy brethren?<sup>271</sup> Why dost thou speak so much, while thy brethren that are older than thou, Reuben, Simon, and Levi, stand by silent?”

Judah: “None of my brethren has so much at stake as I have, if Benjamin returns not to his father. I was a surety to my father for him, saying, If I bring him not unto thee, and set him before thee, then let me bear the blame forever, in this world and in the world to come.”<sup>272</sup>

The other brethren withheld themselves intentionally from taking part in the dispute between Judah and Joseph, saying, “Kings are carrying on a dispute, and it is not seemly for us to interfere between them.”<sup>273</sup> Even the angels descended from heaven to earth to be spectators of the combat between Joseph the bull and Judah the lion, and they said, “It lies in the natural course of things that the bull should fear the lion, but here the two are engaged in equal, furious combat.”

In reply to Judah, when he explained that his great interest in Benjamin’s safety was due to the

pledge he had given to his father, Joseph spoke: “Why wast thou not a surety for thy other brother, when ye sold him for twenty pieces of silver? Then thou didst not regard the sorrow thou wast inflicting upon thy father, but thou didst say, A wild beast hath devoured Joseph. And yet Joseph had done no evil, while this Benjamin has committed theft. Therefore, go up and say unto thy father, The rope hath followed after the water bucket.”

These words had such an effect upon Judah that he broke out in sobs, and cried aloud, “How shall I go up to my father, and the lad be not with me?”<sup>274</sup> His outcry reached to a distance of four hundred parasangs, and when Hushim the son of Dan heard it in Canaan, he jumped into Egypt with a single leap and joined his voice with Judah’s, and the whole land was on the point of collapsing from the great noise they produced. Joseph’s valiant men lost their teeth, and the cities of Pithom and Raamses were destroyed, and they remained in ruins until the Israelites built them up again under taskmasters. Also Judah’s brethren, who had kept quiet up to that moment, fell into a rage, and stamped on the ground with their feet until it looked as though deep furrows had been torn in it by a ploughshare.<sup>275</sup> And Judah addressed his brethren, “Be brave, demean yourselves as men, and let each one of you show his heroism, for the circumstances demand that we do our best.”

Then they resolved to destroy Mizraim, the city of Egypt, and Judah said, “I will raise my voice, and with it destroy Egypt.”

Reuben: “I will raise my arm, and crush it out of existence.”

Simon: “I will raise my hand, and lay waste its palaces.”

Levi: “I will draw my sword, and slay the inhabitants of Egypt.”

Issachar: “I will make the land like unto Sodom.”



Zebulon: "Like unto Gomorrah will I render it."

Dan: "I will reduce it to a desert."<sup>276</sup>

Then Judah's towering rage began to show signs of breaking out: his right eye shed tears of blood; the hair above his heart grew so stiff that it pierced and rent the five garments in which he was clothed; and he took brass rods, bit them with his teeth, and spat them out as fine powder. When Joseph observed these signs, fear befell him, and in order to show that he, too, was a man of extraordinary strength, he pushed with his foot against the marble pedestal upon which he sat, and it broke into splinters.

Judah exclaimed, "This one is a hero equal to myself!" Then he tried to draw his sword from its scabbard in order to slay Joseph, but the weapon could not be made to budge, and Judah was convinced thereby that his adversary was a God-fearing man, and he addressed himself to the task of begging him to let Benjamin go free, but he remained inexorable.<sup>277</sup>

Judah then said: "What shall we say unto our father, when he seeth that our brother is not with us, and he will grieve over him?"

Joseph: "Say that the rope hath followed after the water bucket."

Judah: "Thou art a king, why dost thou speak in this wise, counselling a falsehood? Woe unto the king that is like thee!"

Joseph: "Is there a greater falsehood than that ye spake concerning your brother Joseph, whom you sold to the Midianites for twenty pieces of silver, telling your father, An evil beast hath devoured him?"

Judah: "The fire of Shechem burneth in my heart, now will I burn all thy land with fire."

Joseph: "Surely, the fire kindled to burn Tamar, thy daughter-in-law, who did kill thy sons, will extinguish the fire of Shechem."

Judah: "If I pluck out a single hair from my body, I will fill the whole of Egypt with its blood."

Joseph: "Such is it your custom to do; thus ye did unto your brother whom you sold, and then you dipped his coat in blood, brought it to your father, and said, An evil beast hath devoured him, and here is his blood."

When Judah heard this, he was exceedingly wroth, and he took a stone weighing four hundred shekels that was before him, cast it toward heaven with one hand, caught it with his left hand, then sat upon it, and the stone turned into dust. At the command of Joseph, Manasseh did likewise with another stone, and Joseph said to Judah: "Strength hath not been given to you alone, we also are powerful men. Why, then, will ye all boast before us?" Then Judah sent Naphtali forth, saying, "Go and count all the streets of the city of Egypt and come and tell me the number," but Simon interposed, saying, "Let not this thing trouble you, I will go to the mount, and take up one huge stone from the mount, throw it over the whole of Mizraim, the city of Egypt, and kill all therein."

Hearing all these words, which they spake aloud, because they did not know that he understood Hebrew, Joseph bade his son Manasseh make haste and gather together all the inhabitants of Egypt, and all the valiant men, and let them come to him on horseback and afoot. Meantime Naphtali had gone quickly to execute Judah's bidding, for he was as swift as the nimble hart, he could run across a field of corn without breaking an ear. And he returned and reported that the city of Egypt was divided into twelve quarters. Judah bade his brethren destroy the city; he himself undertook to raze three quarters, and he assigned the nine remaining quarters to the others, one quarter to each.

In the meantime Manasseh had assembled a great army, five hundred mounted men and ten thousand on foot, among them four hundred valiant heroes, who could fight without spear or sword, using only their strong, unarmed hands.



To inspire his brethren with more terror, Joseph ordered them to make a loud noise with all sorts of instruments, and their appearance and the hubbub they produced did, indeed, cause fear to fall upon some of the brethren of Joseph. Judah, however, called to them, “Why are you terrified, seeing that God grants us His mercy?” He drew his sword, and uttered a wild cry, which threw all the people into consternation, and in their disordered flight many fell over each other and perished, and Judah and his brethren followed after the fleeing people as far as the house of Pharaoh. Returning to Joseph, Judah again broke out in loud roars, and the reverberations caused by his cries were so mighty that all the city walls in Egypt and in Goshen fell in ruins, the pregnant women brought forth untimely births, and Pharaoh was flung from his throne. Judah’s cries were heard at a great distance, as far off as Succoth.

When Pharaoh learnt the reason of the mighty uproar, he sent word to Joseph that he would have to concede the demands of the Hebrews, else the land would suffer destruction. “Thou canst take thy choice,” were the words of Pharaoh, “between me and the Hebrews, between Egypt and the land of the Hebrews. If thou wilt not heed my command, then leave me and go with them into their land.”

266. Yashar Mikkez (end) and Wa-Yiggash (beginning).

267. BR 93. 6. Here, as in the two Tanhumas (beginning of Wa-Yiggash) and MHG I, 659, Judah is highly praised for his sense of duty which prompted him to do his utmost in behalf of Benjamin, because he had “guaranteed” to his father to bring his youngest son back safely. See also Tan. B. Introduction, 131 and 146, as well as I, 209; MHG I, 661–662.

268. Tan. B. I, 205; MHG I, 663; BR 93. 6. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6. 8, puts a grand oration in Judah’s mouth, which, however, has nothing in common with Judah’s address as found in the Haggadah. Strangely enough Josephus speaks of the crime alleged to have been committed by Benjamin as one punishable by death, whereas according to the

Jewish law theft is not a capital offence. Comp., however, note 256. On מחזירו in Tan., *loc. cit.*, comp. Kiddushin 11a (top).

269. BR 93. 6; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 44. 18.

270. MHG I, 663 (here Judah accuses Joseph of having first put money in their sacks, and then the cup in Benjamin’s sack); Tan. B. I, 205; Tan. Wa-Yiggash 5; BR 93. 6. Comp. note 263.

271. BR 93. 6 and 8. Comp. the following note. On Manasseh see text on pp. 374 and 385.

272. Tan. B. I, 295; Tan. Wa-Yiggash 5; BR 93. 6.

273. BR 93. 2; Zohar I, 206a; MHG I, 661 (י').

274. Tan. Wa-Yiggash 4 and 5; MHG I, 660; comp. Schechter, note 9. The application of the proverb concerning the rope and the bucket is that Judah might say to his father that one and the same fate overtook Benjamin and Joseph. Comp. note 264.

275. BR 93. 7; Yalkut II, 897, on Job 4. 10 (in the first edition the reference to the source, ומדרש איוב מוסיף, before כשבא חושים, is not in parentheses as in the later editions); Tan. B. Introduction, 131. On Judah’s terrible voice see text on p. 313, as well as pp. 335, 374 (in the last passage it is Simeon who has a terrible voice), 386, 388. As to the stamping upon the ground (Tan., *loc. cit.*, read בעטו), see text on p. 707.

276. Tan. B. I, 131; *Hadar*, Gen. 44, 18, which has some variants.

277. BR 93. 6; Tan. B. Introduction, 131; MHG, 664–665; Tan. Wa-Yiggash 3; *Hadar*, Gen. 44. 18, which has the additional remark that the hair above Judah’s breast had the peculiarity to kill anybody touching it. As to the strength of people being in their hair, comp. Frazer, *Folk-Lore in the Old Testament*, II, 484, *seq.*

## JOSEPH MAKES HIMSELF KNOWN

Seeing that his brethren were, indeed, on the point of destroying Egypt, Joseph resolved to make himself known to them, and he cast around for a proper opening, which would lead naturally to his announcement. At his behest, Manasseh laid his hand upon Judah’s shoulder, and his touch allayed Judah’s fury, for he noticed that he was in contact with a kinsman of his, because such strength existed in no other family. Then Joseph addressed Judah gently, saying:<sup>278</sup> “I should like to know who advised



him to steal the cup. Could it have been one of you?" Benjamin replied: "Neither did they counsel theft, nor did I touch the cup." "Take an oath upon it," demanded Joseph, and Benjamin complied with his brother's request: "I swear that I did not touch the cup! As true as my brother Joseph is separated from me; as true as I had nothing to do with the darts that my brethren threw at him; as true as I was not one of those to take off his coat; as true as I had no part in the transaction by which he was given over to the Ishmaelites; as true as I did not help the others dip his coat in blood; so true is my oath, that they did not counsel theft, and that I did not commit theft."

Joseph: "How can I know that this oath of thine taken upon thy brother's fate is true?"

Benjamin: "From the names of my ten sons, which I gave them in memory of my brother's life and trials, thou canst see how dearly I loved him. I pray thee, therefore, do not bring down my father with sorrow to the grave."

Hearing these words of abiding love, Joseph could refrain himself no longer. He could not but make himself known unto his brethren.<sup>279</sup> He spake these words to them: "Ye said the brother of this lad was dead. Did you yourselves see him dead before you?" They answered, "Yes!"

Joseph: "Did you stand beside his grave?"

The brethren: "Yes!"

Joseph: "Did you throw clods of earth upon his corpse?"

The brethren: "No."

Then Joseph reflected, saying to himself: "My brethren are as pious as aforetime, and they speak no lies. They said I was dead, because when they abandoned me, I was poor, and 'a poor man is like unto a dead man;' they stood beside my grave, that is the pit into which they cast me; but they did not say that they had shovelled earth upon me, for that would have been a falsehood."

Turning to his brethren, he said: "Ye lie when ye say that your brother is dead. He is not dead. You sold him,<sup>280</sup> and I did buy him. I shall call him, and set him before your eyes," and he began to call, "Joseph, son of Jacob, come hither! Joseph, son of Jacob, come hither! Speak to thy brethren who did sell thee." The others turned their eyes hither and thither, to the four corners of the house, until Joseph called to them: "Why look ye here and there! Behold, I am Joseph your brother!" Their souls fled away from them, and they could make no answer, but God permitted a miracle to happen, and their souls came back to them.

Joseph continued, "Ye see it with your own eyes, and also my brother Benjamin seeth it with his eyes, that I speak with you in Hebrew, and I am truly your brother." But they would not believe him. Not only had he been transformed from a smooth-faced youth into a bearded man since they had abandoned him, but also the forsaken youth now stood before them the ruler of Egypt. Therefore Joseph bared his body and showed them that he belonged to the descendants of Abraham.

Abashed they stood there, and in their rage they desired to slay Joseph as the author of their shame and their suffering. But an angel appeared and flung them to the four corners of the house. Judah raised so loud an outcry that the walls of the city of Egypt tumbled down, the women brought forth untimely births, Joseph and Pharaoh both rolled down off their thrones, and Joseph's three hundred heroes lost their teeth, and their heads remained forever immobile, facing backward, as they had turned them to discover the cause of the tumult. Yet the brethren did not venture to approach close to Joseph, they were too greatly ashamed of their behavior toward their brother.<sup>281</sup> He sought to calm them, saying, "Now be not grieved, nor angry with yourselves, that ye sold me hither,



for God did send me before you to preserve life.”

Even such kind words of exhortation did not banish their fear, and Joseph continued to speak, “As little as I harbor vengeful thoughts in my heart against Benjamin, so little do I harbor them against you.” And still his brethren were ill at ease, and Joseph went on, “Think you that it is possible for me to inflict harm upon you? If the smoke of ten candles could not extinguish one, how can one extinguish ten?”

At last the brethren were soothed, and they went up to Joseph,<sup>282</sup> who knew each by name, and, weeping, he embraced and kissed them all in turn. The reason why he wept was that his prophetic spirit showed him the descendants of his brethren enslaved by the nations.<sup>283</sup> Especially did he weep upon Benjamin’s neck, because he foresaw the destruction decreed for the two Temples to be situated in the allotment of Benjamin. And Benjamin also wept upon Joseph’s neck, for the sanctuary at Shiloh, in the territory of Joseph which was likewise doomed to destruction.<sup>284</sup>

Pharaoh was well pleased with the report of the reconciliation between Joseph and the Hebrews, for he had feared that their dissensions might cause the ruin of Egypt, and he sent his servants to Joseph, that they take part in his joy. Also he sent word to Joseph that it would please him well if his brethren took up their abode in Egypt, and he promised to assign the best parts of the land to them for their dwelling-place.<sup>285</sup>

Not all the servants of Pharaoh were in agreement with their master concerning this invitation to the Hebrews. Many among them were disquieted, saying, “If one of the sons of Jacob came hither, and he was advanced to a high position over our heads, what evil will happen to us when ten more come hither?”<sup>286</sup>

Joseph gave all his brethren two changes of raiment, one for use on the ordinary days of the

week and one for use on the Sabbath, for, when the cup was found with Benjamin, they had rent their clothes, and Joseph would not have his brethren go about in torn garments.<sup>287</sup> But to Benjamin he gave five changes of raiment, though not in order to distinguish him above his brethren. Joseph remembered only too well what mischief his father had caused by giving him the coat of many colors, thereby arousing the envy of his brethren. He desired only to intimate that Mordecai, a descendant of Benjamin, would once be arrayed in five royal garments.<sup>288</sup>

Joseph presented his brethren, apparelled in their gold and silver embroidered clothes, before Pharaoh, who was well pleased to become acquainted with them when he saw that they were men of heroic stature and handsome appearance.<sup>289</sup> He gave them wagons, to bring their families down into Egypt, but as they were ornamented with images of idols, Judah burnt them,<sup>290</sup> and Joseph replaced them with eleven other wagons, among them the one he had ridden in at his accession to office, to view the land of Egypt. This was to be used by his father on his journey to Egypt. For each of his brothers’ children, he sent raiments, and also one hundred pieces of silver for each, but for each of the children of Benjamin he sent ten changes of raiment. And for the wives of his brethren he gave them rich garments of state, such as were worn by the wives of the Pharaohs, and also ointments and aromatic spices. To his sister Dinah he sent silver and gold embroidered clothes, and myrrh, aloes, and other perfumes, and such presents he gave also to the wife and the daughters-in-law of Benjamin. For themselves and for their wives the brethren received all sorts of precious stones and jewelled ornaments, like those that are worn by the Egyptian nobility.

Joseph accompanied his eleven brethren to the frontier, and there he took leave of them with the wish that they and all their families



come down to Egypt,<sup>291</sup> and he enjoined upon them, besides, three maxims to be observed by travellers: Do not take too large steps; do not discuss Halakic subjects, that you lose not your way; and enter the city at the latest with the going down of the sun.<sup>292</sup>

278. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 107a–108a, which in the main follows Abkir in Yalkut I, 150, and BR 93. 8, whereas *Hadar*, Gen. 44. 18 (read יכבנו instead of יכסנו) is directly based on Yashar. As to the part played by Manasseh, see Tan. B., Introduction, 131, which reads: During the dispute between Judah and Joseph, Manasseh attempted to pacify the former; but as soon as he noticed that the hair on Judah's breast became hot (compare with p. 386, and preceding note), he cried to his father: "We are all dead men!" Comp. MHG I, 665, and text on pp. 374, 385. As to the dependence of Yashar on Abkir, it should be noticed that the first part of the dialogue between Judah and Joseph in Yashar is mainly based upon Abkir, although BR 93. 8 is also made use of. 2 Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 44. 18, according to the editions, is entirely based upon BR, *loc. cit.*; but a manuscript in the library of the Jewish Theological Seminary of America gives the dialogue between Judah and Joseph in accordance with Abkir and Yashar. As to Naphtali's swiftness, see footnote 216 on p. 220.

279. Tan. B. I, 206–207. A different view is quoted on pp. 380–381, and note 251, according to which Joseph made himself known to Benjamin at their first meeting.

280. Tan. B. Introduction, 131–132; *Hadar*, Gen. 44. 20; comp. MHG I, 665 (כ"ו). BaR 13. 18 likewise dwells upon the exceptional piety of Jacob's sons who committed only one sin, the selling of Joseph into slavery.

281. Tan. Wa-Yiggash 5; BR 93. 8; Tan. B. Introduction, 132. This legend (concerning Judah's terrible voice) and the one given in the text on p. 385, are doublets. Joseph ordered the Egyptians to withdraw before he made himself known to his brethren, to spare the latter the shame of being exposed as abductors. Out of consideration for their feelings, he did not utter the words "I am Joseph your brother, whom ye sold into Egypt" (Gen. 45. 4) in the presence of Benjamin, who thus never learned what his brethren had done to Joseph. Comp. Philo, *De Josepho*, 40; citation from an unknown Midrash by Sabba, Wa-Yiggash, 54d; the same(?) Midrash in *Hadar* and *Da'at*, Gen. 45. 4; comp. also Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 108b (below), and note 370. In view of the fact that the brethren did not recognize Joseph (compare with p. 372), he could only establish his identity by addressing them in Hebrew (Jub. 43. 15; BR 93. 10; Tan. Wa-Yiggash, *loc. cit.*; Targum Yerushalmi

Gen. 45. 12) and by showing them that he had the Abrahamic covenant on his body; BR 93. 8; Tan. Wa-Yiggash 5; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 45. 4. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6, 10, puts a lengthy oration in Joseph's mouth, by means of which he accomplished his reconciliation with his brethren. The Midrash likewise records Joseph's conciliatory words. Compare with p. 388–389.

282. MHG I, 670; comp. Schechter, note 6; see text on pp. 421–422.

283. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 45. 15.

284. BR 93. 12; Megillah 16b; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 45. 14; Zohar I, 209b.

285. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 109a. Pharaoh was in such a fear of Jacob's sons, that when he heard of the dispute between Judah and Joseph, he told the latter to comply with the wish of the Hebrews or leave Egypt; Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 108a. Pharaoh's delight with the final outcome was very great, for the appearance of Joseph's brethren confirmed the latter's claim to noble descent. Joseph had maintained his claim all the time, but the nobles of the realm mocked him, saying: "Look at the slave, ruling over Egypt." See citation, from an unknown Midrash, by Bekor Shor and Sabba on Gen. 45. 16. Comp. note 181.

286. MHG I, 671.

287. Tan. B. Introduction 132.

288. Megillah 16b; MHG I, 671. The three hundred Shekels which Benjamin received from Joseph had, like the other presents, a symbolic meaning; see R. Bahya, *Da'at* and *Hadar* on Gen. 45. 22, as well as Tan. B. Introduction, 132–133.

289. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 109a, where it is said that although all the brethren received "royal garments", only Benjamin's garments were beautifully embroidered. As a further mark of distinction, Benjamin received three hundred Shekels, while the brethren were only given one hundred each.

290. BR 94. 3. According to Egyptian law, it was not permitted to export wagons or animals, but on this occasion Pharaoh suspended the law; Lekah, Shu'aib, and Sabba on Gen. 45. 19.

291. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 109a–109b. Concerning Dinah comp. note 65. Lekah Gen. 45. 23 maintains that Benjamin remained with Joseph; hence Gen. 45. 23 speaks of only ten donkeys which Joseph sent to Canaan, one for each brother.

292. Ta'anit 10b; BR 94. 2 (he admonished them to continue to study the Torah while travelling); PRK 57 (Grünhut's edition), where the second precept reads: "Love one another." Compare with p. 154; Targum Yerushalmi and Lekah on Gen. 45. 24, which reads: Do not quarrel as to who is responsible for my having been sold into slavery, in order that your fellow-travellers should not be angry with you. Comp. note 24.



## JACOB RECEIVES THE GLAD TIDINGS

**I**n blithe spirits the sons of Jacob journeyed up to the land of Canaan, but when they reached the boundary line, they said to one another, "How shall we do? If we appear before our father and tell him that Joseph is alive, he will be greatly frightened, and he will not be inclined to believe us." Besides, Joseph's last injunction to them had been to take heed and not startle their father with the tidings of joy.

On coming close to their habitation, they caught sight of Serah, the daughter of Asher, a very beautiful maiden, and very wise, who was skilled in playing upon the harp. They summoned her unto them and gave her a harp, and bade her play before Jacob and sing that which they should tell her. She sat down before Jacob, and, with an agreeable melody, she sang the following words, accompanying herself upon the harp: "Joseph, my uncle, liveth, he ruleth over the whole of Egypt, he is not dead!" She repeated these words several times, and Jacob grew more and more pleasurably excited. His joy awakened the holy spirit in him, and he knew that she spoke the truth.<sup>293</sup> The spirit of prophecy never visits a seer when he is in a state of lassitude or in a state of grief; it comes only together with joy. All the years of Joseph's separation from him Jacob had had no prophetic visions, because he was always sad, and only when Serah's words reawakened the feeling of happiness in his heart, the prophetic spirit again took possession of him.<sup>294</sup> Jacob rewarded her therefor with the words, "My daughter, may death never have power over thee, for thou didst revive my spirit." And so it was. Serah did not die, she entered Paradise alive. At his bidding, she repeated the words she had sung again and again, and they gave Jacob great joy and delight, so that the holy spirit waxed stronger and stronger within him.

While he was sitting thus in converse with Serah, his sons appeared arrayed in all their

magnificence, and with all the presents that Joseph had given them, and they spake to Jacob, saying: "Glad tidings! Joseph our brother liveth! He is ruler over the whole land of Egypt, and he sends thee a message of joy." At first Jacob would not believe them, but when they opened their packs, and showed him the presents Joseph had sent to all, he could not doubt the truth of their words any longer.<sup>295</sup>

Joseph had had a premonition that his father would refuse to give his brethren credence, because they had tried to deceive him before, and "it is the punishment of the liar that his words are not believed even when he speaks the truth." He had therefore said to them, "If my father will not believe your words, tell him that when I took leave of him, to see whether it was well with you, he had been teaching me the law of the heifer whose neck is broken in the valley." When they repeated this, every last vestige of Jacob's doubt disappeared, and he said: "Great is the steadfastness of my son Joseph. In spite of all his sufferings he has remained constant in his piety."<sup>296</sup> Yea, great are the benefits that the Lord hath conferred upon me. He saved me from the hands of Esau, and from the hands of Laban, and from the Canaanites who pursued after me. I have tasted many joys, I hope to see more, but never did I hope to set eyes upon Joseph again, and now I shall go down to him and behold him before my death."<sup>297</sup>

Then Jacob and the members of his family put on the clothes Joseph had sent, among them a turban for Jacob, and they made all preparations to journey down into Egypt and dwell there with Joseph and his family. Hearing of his good fortune, the kings and the grandees of Canaan came to wait upon Jacob and express sympathy with him in his joy, and he prepared a three days' banquet for them.<sup>298</sup>

Jacob, however, would not go down into Egypt without first inquiring whether it was the



will of God that he should leave the Holy land.<sup>299</sup> He said, "How can I leave the land of my fathers, the land of my birth, the land in which the Shekinah dwells, and go into an unclean land, inhabited by slaves of the sons of Ham, a land wherein there is no fear of God?"<sup>300</sup> Then he brought sacrifices in honor of God, in the expectation that a Divine vision would descend upon him and instruct him whether to go down into Egypt or have Joseph come up to Canaan. He feared the sojourn in Egypt, for he remembered the vision he had had at Beth-el on leaving his father's house,<sup>301</sup> and he said to God: "I resemble my father. As he was greedy in filling his maw, so am I, and therefore I would go down into Egypt in consequence of the famine. As my father preferred one son to the other, so had I a favorite son, and therefore I would go down into Egypt to see Joseph. But in this I do not resemble my father, he had only himself to provide for, and my house consists of seventy souls, and therefore am I compelled to go down into Egypt. The blessing which my father gave me was not fulfilled in me, but in my son Joseph, whom peoples serve, and before whom nations bow down."<sup>302</sup>

Then the Shekinah addressed Jacob, calling his name twice in token of love,<sup>303</sup> and bidding him not to fear the Egyptian slavery foretold for the descendants of Abraham, for God would have pity upon the suffering of his children and deliver them from bondage.<sup>304</sup> God furthermore said, "I will go down into Egypt with thee," and the Shekinah accompanied Jacob thither, bringing the number of the company with which he entered Egypt up to seventy.<sup>305</sup> But as Jacob entertained fears that his descendants would stay there forever, God gave him the assurance that He would lead him forth together with all the pious that were like unto him.<sup>306</sup> And God also told Jacob that Joseph had remained steadfast in his piety even in Egypt, and he might dismiss all doubts from his mind on this score, for it was

his anxiety on this account that had induced Jacob to consider going down into Egypt; he wanted only to make sure of Joseph's faithfulness, and then return home, but God commanded him to go thither and remain there.<sup>307</sup>

Before Jacob left Canaan, he went to Beersheba, to hew down the cedars that Abraham had planted there, and take them with him to Egypt. For centuries these cedar trees remained in the possession of his descendants; they carried them with them when they left Egypt, and they used them in building the Tabernacle.<sup>308</sup>

Although Joseph had put wagons at the disposal of his brethren for the removal of his family from Canaan to Egypt, they yet carried Jacob upon their arms, for which purpose they divided themselves into three divisions, one division after the other assuming the burden. As a reward for their filial devotion, God redeemed their descendants from Egypt.<sup>309</sup>

Judah was sent on ahead by his father, to erect a dwelling in Goshen, and also a Bet ha-Midrash, that Jacob might set about instructing his sons at once after his arrival. He charged Judah with this honorable task in order to compensate him for a wrong he had done him. All the years of Joseph's absence he had suspected Judah of having made away with Rachel's son.<sup>310</sup> How little the suspicion was justified he realized now when Judah in particular had been assiduous in securing the safety of Benjamin, the other son of Rachel. Jacob therefore said to Judah: "Thou hast done a pious, God-bidden deed, and hast shown thyself to be a man capable of carrying on negotiations with Joseph. Complete the work thou hast begun! Go to Goshen, and together with Joseph prepare all things for our coming. Indeed," continued Jacob, "thou wast the cause of our going down into Egypt, for it was at thy suggestion that Joseph was sold as a slave, and, also, through thy descendants Israel will be led forth out of Egypt."<sup>311</sup>



When Joseph was informed of the approach of his father, he rejoiced exceedingly, chiefly because his coming would stop the talk of the Egyptians, who were constantly referring to him as the slave that had dominion over them. “Now,” thought Joseph, “they will see my father and my brethren, and they will be convinced that I am a free-born man, of noble stock.”

In his joy in anticipation of seeing his father, Joseph made ready his chariot with his own hands, without waiting for his servants to minister to him, and this loving action redounded later to the benefit of the Israelites, for it rendered of none effect Pharaoh’s zeal in making ready his chariot himself, with his own hands, to pursue after the Israelites.<sup>312</sup>

---

293. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 109b–110a; MHG I, 672; *Hadar*, Gen. 45. 26, which is based upon a source independent of the first two. *Hadar*, *loc. cit.*, states that Esau greatly rejoiced when the report of Joseph’s death had reached him (he knew that the house of Joseph was destined to destroy the house of Esau; compare with p. 290), and therefore when this report turned out to be false, Jacob hastened to inform his brother that his joy was groundless, for Joseph was still alive.—The brethren excommunicated Asher when they heard that his daughter informed Jacob that Joseph was still alive. They said: A child speaks in the street about the things its parents speak of at home (Sukkah 56b); hence Asher must have betrayed their secret about the selling of Joseph. According to the agreement they entered upon at the time of the sale, excommunication was the punishment for betraying this secret; *Hadar*, Deut. 33. 24. Compare with p. 342.

294. PRE 37; Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 45. 27 (see, however, Targum Yerushalmi 43. 14); Tehillim 24, 204; MHG I, 672–673; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 2; 1 Alphabet of Ben Sira 13a; Zohar I, 180b and 216b. Comp. further Shabbat 30b; Pesachim 117a; ARN 30, 90; text on pp. 370 and 403–404, as well as footnote 548 on p. 716.

295. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 110a. That Serah “did not taste death” is very likely presupposed in such old sources as BR 94. 9; PK 10, 86a–87a; 2ARN 38, 103; but explicitly it is stated in later sources only. Besides Yashar, *loc. cit.*, see also 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 28b, which is perhaps the source of Yashar; Derek Erez Zuta 1 (end); Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 46. 17. See also Ratner, Seder ‘Olam 1, note

50, and 9, note 19; Index, *s. v.* “Paradise, Entering Alive Into.”

296. BR 94. 3 and 95. 3; ARN 30. 90. The “heifer whose neck is broken” is brought to atone for the sin of those who neglected to accompany the wayfarer (Sotah 46b), and hence the last conversation of Jacob with Joseph, while the latter started on his journey to his brethren was about the kindness one is to show to the wayfarer; comp. *Da’at*, *Hadar*, *Pa’aneah*, and Shu’aib on Gen. 45. 27, as well as Tan. B. Introduction, 132 and 145. That the last conversation between Jacob and Joseph consisted of a halakic discussion is already stated in Yerushalmi Berakot 5, 8d, according to the reading of *Eshkol* I, 23.

297. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 45. 28. As to Jacob’s wars against these kings, compare with p. 314, *seq.*

298. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 110a.

299. MHG I, 675; comp. the following note.

300. PRE 39; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 7. 2; Lekah, Gen. 46. 3; MHG I, 676 (‘) and 713–714.

301. Jub. 44. 2–4. Here it is also stated that Jacob celebrated the Feast of Weeks on the fifteenth of the third month; whereupon, on the following day, God appeared to him.

302. BR 94. 45.

303. MHG I, 675; BR 57. 7, and comp. Theodor, *ad loc.*

304. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 46. 3.

305. PRE 29 (which reads: Also at the time of the Exodus the Shekinah brought up the number of Israel to six hundred thousand souls); Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 46. 4. Concerning the conception that the Shekinah goes with Israel into exile, see footnote 4 on p. 433; on the number seventy which is used in connection with Jacob’s family, comp. note 321. Sabba, Wa-Yiggash, 56b, gives a text of PRE different from the one found in the editions; comp. also R. Bahya on Exod. 12. 37, and Zohar II, 16.

306. MHG I, 676 and 713–714. Comp. BR 94. 6 as well as p. 392, and note 300 appertaining to it.

307. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 110a–110b; Philo, *De Josepho*, 42. Yalkut Reubeni Gen. 45. 28, which is very likely based on Abkir (comp. Midrash Talpiyyot, *s. v.* יוסף) writes: Jacob apprehended that Joseph living in the midst of the sensual Egyptians, had lost his purity, and therefore wished to see his face, as Jacob possessed the faculty of telling a man’s character by looking at him.

308. BR 94. 4. Here, as well as in Yerushalmi Pesachim 4, 30d, it is stated that as late as in the fourth century C. E. the grove of cedars at Magdala was considered holy, the people believing that these cedars were planted (by the patriarchs) for the purpose of being used for the tabernacle. Compare with p. 419.

309. MHG I, 676 and 700; Koheleth R. and Z. 9. 11; *Hadar* and *Da’at* on Gen. 46. 5. For an other view comp.



the sources referred to in footnote 290 on p. 389 (about the burning of the wagons by Judah) and Sekel 286. EZ 2, 175 reads: God bestowed His blessings on Jacob's sons as a reward for the filial piety shown toward their father.

310. BR 95. 1–5; Tan. B. I, 209–211; Tan. Wa-Yig-gash 9 and 11; Yelammedenu in 'Aruk, s. v. צמת. On the idea that Jacob was the head of an academy for the study of the Torah, see footnote 318 on p. 322. Targum Yerushalmi has three translations of להורות (Gen. 46, 28): 1) *to show the way*; 2) *to conquer the inhabitants* (from Syriac *הר* *to war against some one?*); 3) *to establish a dwelling-place*. The last translation is in agreement with BR, *loc. cit.*, and Onkelos, whereas Jub. 44. 9 read perhaps לראות. Septuagint, Samaritan, and Peshitta read להראות.

311. MHG I, 688. Were it not for the tribe of Judah, Israel, persecuted by the Egyptians, would have returned to Egypt (compare with pp. 555–556), and accordingly it is said here that on account of the descendants of Judah, Israel was led forth from Egypt.

312. MHG I, 688–689; Mekilta Beshallah 1, 27a; Mekilta RS, 48; BR 55. 8. The sources referred to in notes 285 and 428 say that the appearance of Joseph's brethren proved the falsehood of the rumor about his being a slave.

## JACOB ARRIVES IN EGYPT

When the Egyptian nobles observed their viceroy completing his preparations to meet his father, they did the same.<sup>313</sup> Indeed, Joseph had issued a proclamation throughout the land, threatening with death all that did not go forth to meet Jacob. The procession that accompanied him was composed of countless men, arrayed in byssus and purple, and marching to the sound of all sorts of musical instruments. Even the women of Egypt had a part in the reception ceremonies. They ascended to the roofs of the houses and the walls of the cities, ready to greet Jacob with the music of cymbals and timbrels.

Joseph wore the royal crown upon his head, Pharaoh had yielded it to him for the occasion. He descended from his chariot when he was at a distance of about fifty ells from his father, and walked the rest of the way on foot, and his example was followed by the princes and nobles of

Egypt. When Jacob caught sight of the approaching procession, he was rejoiced,<sup>314</sup> and even before he recognized Joseph, he bowed down before him, but for permitting his father to show him this mark of honor, punishment was visited upon Joseph. He died an untimely death, before the years of life assigned to him had elapsed.<sup>315</sup>

That no harm befall Jacob from a too sudden meeting with him, Joseph sent his oldest son ahead with five horses, the second son following close after him in the same way. As each son approached, Jacob thought he beheld Joseph, and so he was prepared gradually to see him face to face.<sup>316</sup>

Meantime Jacob had espied, from where he was seated, a man in royal robes among the Egyptians, a crown upon his head, and a purple mantle over his shoulders, and he asked Judah who it might be. When he was told that it was Joseph, his joy was great over the high dignity attained by his son.

By this time Joseph had come close to his father, and he bowed himself before him down to the earth, and all the people with him likewise prostrated themselves.<sup>317</sup> Then Joseph fell upon his father's neck, and he wept bitterly. He was particularly grieved that he had permitted his father to bow down before him but a little while before without hindering it.<sup>318</sup> At the very moment when Joseph embraced his father, Jacob was reciting the Shema', and he did not allow himself to be interrupted in his prayer,<sup>319</sup> but then he said, "When they brought me the report of the death of Joseph, I thought I was doomed to double death—that I should lose this world and the world to come as well. The Lord had promised to make me the ancestor of twelve tribes, and as the death of my son rendered it impossible that this promise should be realized, I feared I had incurred the doom by my own sins, and as a sinner I could not but expect to forfeit the future world, too. But now that I have beheld thee



alive, I know that my death will be only for the world here below.”<sup>320</sup>

Such was the manner of Jacob’s arrival in Egypt. He came with his whole family, sixty-nine persons they were in all, but the number was raised to seventy by the birth of Jochebed, afterward the mother of Moses, which took place when the cavalcade had advanced to the space between the one and the other city wall.<sup>321</sup> All the males in his family were married men; even Pallu and Hezron, the latter of whom was but one year old at the time of their migration, and the former but two years, had the wives with them that had been chosen for them by their parents.<sup>322</sup> In general, all the sons and grandsons of Jacob had married young, some of them had been fathers at the age of seven.<sup>323</sup>

Joseph took some from among his brethren, and presented them to Pharaoh. He chose the weakest of them, that the king might not be tempted to retain them in his service as warriors.<sup>324</sup> And as he did not desire his family to live at close quarters with the Egyptians and perhaps amalgamate with them, he introduced them as shepherds. The Egyptians worshipped the constellation of the ram, and paid divine honors to animals, and they kept aloof from shepherds. Pharaoh therefore was inclined to grant Joseph’s wish, to give them the pasture land of Goshen for their sojourning place, the land that was theirs by right, for the Pharaoh that took Sarah away from Abraham by force had given it to her as her irrevocable possession.<sup>325</sup>

In their conversation with Pharaoh the brethren of Joseph made it plain to the Egyptian king that it was not their intention to remain in Egypt forever, it was to be only a temporary dwelling-place.<sup>326</sup>

Then Joseph set Jacob his father before Pharaoh, and when the king saw him, he said to Og, who happened to be with him at that moment, “Seest thou! Thou wast wont to call Abraham a

sterile mule, and here is his grandson with a family of seventy persons!” Og would not believe his own eyes, he thought Abraham was standing before him, so close was the resemblance between Jacob and his progenitor. Then Pharaoh asked about Jacob’s age, to find out whether he actually was Jacob, and not Abraham. And Jacob said unto Pharaoh, “The days of the years of my pilgrimage are an hundred and thirty years,” using the word pilgrimage in reference to life on earth, which the pious regard as a temporary sojourn in alien lands. “Few and evil,” he continued, “have been the days of the years of my life. In my youth I had to flee to a strange land on account of my brother Esau, and now, in my old age, I must again go to a strange land, and my days have not attained unto the days of the years of the life of my fathers in the days of their pilgrimage.” These words sufficed to convince Pharaoh and Og that the man standing before them was not Abraham, but his grandson.<sup>327</sup>

When Jacob uttered the words, “The days of the years of my pilgrimage have been few and evil,” God said to him: “Jacob, I saved thee out of the hands of Esau and Laban, I restored Joseph unto thee, and made him to be a king and a ruler, and yet thou speakest of few and evil days. Because of thy ingratitude, thou wilt not attain unto the days of the years of the life of thy fathers,” and Jacob died at an age thirty-three years less than his father Isaac’s.<sup>328</sup>

On going out from the presence of Pharaoh, Jacob blessed the king with the words, “May the years still in store for me be given unto thee, and may the Nile overflow its banks henceforth again and water the land.” His words were fulfilled. In order to show that the pious are a blessing for the world, God caused the Nile to rise above its bed and fructify the land of Egypt.<sup>329</sup>



313. Tan. Wa-Yiggash 7; PRE 39.  
 314. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 110b.  
 315. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 46. 29. Comp. note 429.  
 316. MHG I, 689, where **בן יומו** is to be taken in the sense of “suddenly.”  
 317. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 110b–111a.  
 318. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 46. 29. Comp. note 315.  
 319. R. Yehudai Gaon in *Geonic Responsa* (Lyck edition, No. 45, p. 19); Rashi and Midrash Aggada Gen. 46. 29. A different version is found in Kallah 8b, which reads: Jacob did not kiss Joseph because he feared lest the latter’s beauty had caused the Egyptian women to lead him astray. Comp. notes 121 and 307, in addition to footnote 14 on p. 1114.  
 320. Tan. B. I, 209; Tan. Wa-Yiggash 9; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 46. 30. Comp. note 71.  
 321. BR 94. 9; PK 10, 86b–87a; Baba Batra 123a; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 46. 27; PRE 39; Shemuel 32, 146; MHG I, 676; Jub. 44. 12–33; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 7. 4. In these sources the seventy souls of which Jacob’s household consisted are differently counted: 1) Jacob and sixty-nine of his descendants make seventy; 2) Jochebed was born just when they were about to enter Egypt; 3) the Shekinah which accompanied Jacob into Egypt is to be included in the number seventy (comp. note 305); 4) Serah the daughter of Asher was the seventieth, but she is not counted among Jacob’s family, either because she was only an adopted child (compare with p. 348) or because she was one of those who never “tasted death” (compare with p. 391); 5) the seventieth soul was a son of Dan whose name is not given in the Bible. Compare with footnote 6 on p. 434. Comp. also Tehillim 105, 449, which reads: God counts Himself among the pious.  
 322. MHG I, 682; Tan. B. II, 3; Tan. Shemot 3; MHG II, 5; Lekah Exod. 1. 1.  
 323. Seder ‘Olam 2; MHG I, 682. Compare note 82, and footnote 39 on p. 177.  
 324. Baba Kamma 92a; BR 95. 4; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 47. 2. According to the Talmud and Targum, the weak among the twelve sons were Zebulun, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher; whereas according to BR, they were Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Issachar, and Benjamin. Comp. Sifre D., 354.  
 325. MHG I, 641; comp. Yalkut Reubeni Wa-Yiggash (end), and footnote 74 on p. 190. The following is quoted by Reubeni from Tan.: When Pharaoh learned of Joseph’s descent, he feared lest the latter now reconciled to his brethren should return with them to his country. In order to keep him in Egypt he promised him the same kind of treatment as his ancestor Abraham had received at the

hands of the Egyptians. This passage is not found in our texts of Tan., but Sabba, Wa-Yiggash, 55c, had it in his copy of that Midrash.—The aversion of the Egyptians towards shepherds is given by Demetrius 9. 11 (422d) as a reason why Joseph, before the arrival of his brethren, had not sent for them and his father to come and settle in Egypt. For another explanation why Joseph did not inform his family of his whereabouts, see notes 360 and 370.

326. MHG I, 692; Sifre D., 128; Passover Haggadah, caption **צא ולמד**.

327. MHG I, 692–693; DR 1. 25. Like Og, Pharaoh, king of Egypt at the time of Joseph, also knew Abraham by sight, and like him he mistook the grandchild for the grandfather; Lekah Gen. 45. 1 and 47. 8. According to others, Pharaoh as a young prince spent some time at the court of Abimelech, where he made the acquaintance of Isaac. The resemblance between the latter and Jacob was so great that subsequently Pharaoh mistook the son for the father; *Imre No’am*, Gen. 47. 8. On the idea that life on earth is merely a temporary sojourn, see note 1, and footnote 260 on p. 234; comp. also Philo, *De Confusione Linguarum*, 17; Lekah Gen. 10. 2 and 7. 9, as well as Tan. B. I, 179; MHG I, 402 (ק) and 453 (י). On Og see text on p. 219, as well as p. 729.

328. Tan. B. Introduction 132; *Da’at* and *Hadar* on Gen. 47. 8–9, as well as Shu’aib and Midrash Aggada, *ibid.* 47. 28. Comp. also Aggadat Bereshit 61, 125, and note 228.

329. MHG I, 692; Tan. B. IV, 39; Tan. Naso 26; BaR 12. 2; Aggadat Bereshit 42. 85, which contains the variant that no sooner had Jacob blessed Pharaoh (**וכשהושיבו בפלסין**) is not to be taken literally) than a messenger appeared and informed the king of the inundation of the Nile; comp. Jub. 45. 9–10 and see footnote 177 on p. 365.—Shu’aib, Gen. 47. 28, cites an unknown Midrash to the effect that all the years that Jacob dwelt in Egypt no sickness afflicted that country; no person even suffered from toothache; no miscarriage occurred (comp. BR 96, end; Baba Mezi’a 85a, with regard to the time of Rabbi Judah ha-Nasi). Conscious of the blessings he brought to Egypt, Jacob feared at his deathbed that the Egyptians would not permit his body to be removed from their country; compare with text on p. 399.

## JOSEPH’S KINDNESS AND GENEROSITY

Jacob and his family now settled in the land of Goshen, and Joseph provided them with all things needful, not only with food and



drink, but also with clothing, and in his love and kindness he entertained his father and his brethren daily at his own table.<sup>330</sup> He banished the wrong done to him by his brethren from his mind, and he besought his father to pray to God for them, that He should forgive their great transgression. Touched by this noble sign of love, Jacob cried out, "O Joseph, my child, thou hast conquered the heart of thy father Jacob."<sup>331</sup>

Joseph had other virtues, besides. The title "the God-fearing one," borne only by him, Abraham, Job, and Obadiah, he gained by reason of his kindness of heart and his generosity. Whatever he gave his brethren, he gave with a "good eye," a liberal spirit. If it was bread for food, it was sure to be abundant enough, not only to satisfy the hunger of all, but also for the children to crumble, as is their habit.<sup>332</sup>

But Joseph was more than a helper to his family. As a shepherd pastures his flock, so he provided for the whole world during the years of famine. The people cursed Pharaoh, who kept the stores of corn in his treasure chambers for his own use, and they blessed Joseph, who took thought for the famishing, and sold grain to all that came.<sup>333</sup> The wealth which he acquired by these sales was lawful gain, for the prices were raised, not by him, but by the Egyptians themselves.<sup>334</sup> One part of his possessions, consisting of gold and silver and precious stones, Joseph buried in four different places, in the desert near the Red Sea, on the banks of the Euphrates, and in two spots in the desert in the vicinity of Persia and Media.<sup>335</sup> Korah discovered one of the hiding-places, and the Roman emperor Antoninus, the son of Severus, another. The other two will never be found, because God has reserved the riches they hold for the pious, to be enjoyed by them in the latter days, the days of the Messiah.<sup>336</sup> The remainder of Joseph's possessions he gave away, partly to his brethren and their families, and partly to Pharaoh, who put them into his treasury.<sup>337</sup>

The wealth of the whole world flowed into Egypt at that time, and it remained there until the exodus of the Israelites. They took it along, leaving Egypt like a net without fish. The Israelites kept the treasure until the time of Rehoboam, who was deprived of it by the Egyptian king Shishak, and he in turn had to yield it to Zerah, the king of Ethiopia. Once more it came into possession of the Jews when King Asa conquered Zerah, but this time they held it for only a short while, for Asa surrendered it to the Aramean king Ben-hadad, to induce him to break his league with Baasha, the king of the Ten Tribes. The Ammonites, in turn, captured it from Ben-hadad, only to lose it in their war with the Jews under Jehoshaphat. Again it remained with the Jews, until the time of King Ahaz, who sent it to Sennacherib as tribute money. Hezekiah won it back, but Zedekiah, the last king of the Jews, lost it to the Chaldeans, from whom it came to Persia, thence to the Greeks, and finally to the Romans, and with the last it remained for all time.<sup>338</sup>

The people were soon left without means to purchase the corn they needed. In a short time they had to part with their cattle, and when the money thus secured was spent, they sold their land to Joseph, and even their persons. Many of them would cover themselves with clay and appear before Joseph, and say to him, "O lord king, see me and see my possessions!" And so Joseph bought all the land of Egypt, and the inhabitants became his tenants, and they gave a fifth of their ingatherings unto Joseph.<sup>339</sup>

The only class of the people permitted to remain in possession of their land were the priests. Joseph owed them gratitude, for they had made it possible for him to become the ruler over Egypt. The Egyptians had hesitated to make him their viceroy, because they shrank from choosing a man accused of adultery for so high an office. It was the priests that made the suggestion to examine Joseph's torn garment, which his mistress had



submitted as evidence of his guilt, and see whether the rent was in front or in back. If it was in back, it would show his innocence—he had turned to flee, and his temptress had clutched him so that the garment tore. But if the tear was in front, then it would be a proof of his guilt—he had used violence with the woman, and she had torn the mantle in her efforts to defend her honor. The angel Gabriel came and transferred the rent from the fore part to the back, and the Egyptians were convinced of Joseph’s innocence, and their scruples about raising him to the kingship were removed.<sup>340</sup>

As soon as the Egyptians learnt of the advantageous position of the priests, they all tried to prove themselves members of the caste. But Joseph investigated the lists in the archives, and determined the estate of every citizen.

The priests were favored in another way. Beside remaining in possession of their land, they received daily portions from Pharaoh, wherefore God said, “The priests that serve idols receive all they need every day, how much more do the sons of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, who are My priests, deserve that I should give them what they need every day?”<sup>341</sup>

The rest of the inhabitants of Egypt, who had to part with their land, were not permitted to remain in their native provinces. Joseph removed them from their own cities, and settled them in others. His purpose herein was to prevent the Egyptians from speaking of his brethren derogatorily as “exiles the sons of exiles”; he made them all equally aliens.<sup>342</sup> For the same reason, God later, at the time of the going forth of the Israelites from Egypt, caused all nations to change their dwelling-places about, so that the Israelites could not be reproached with having had to leave their home. And, finally, when Sennacherib carried the Jews away from their land into exile, it also happened that this king first mixed up the inhabitants of all the countries of the world.<sup>343</sup>

330. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 111b. Philo, *De Josepho*, 42, remarks: Pharaoh was so greatly impressed by Jacob, that he treated him as though the latter had been his father and not his subject. At the same time he appointed Jacob’s sons as chief shepherds. The Egyptians who were animal worshippers paid great respect to those in whose care the animals were entrusted, and Joseph therefore arranged it so that his brethren should be appointed “rulers over the cattle” of Pharaoh; Zohar II, 250b–251a. Comp. *Imre No’am*, Gen. 46. 34, and note 325.

331. 12 Testaments, Benjamin 3. Compare with p. 450.

332. MHG I, 693–694; Lekah Gen. 47. 12. Just as Joseph received the title “the God-fearing one” on account of his charity and loving-kindness, even so Abraham, Job, and Obadiah received this title for the same reason; Tan. B. III, 9, and IV, 157; Tan. Wa-Yikra 7 and Matot 1. 2 ARN 10. 26 (comp. Schechter, note 11) has Jonah instead of Obadiah, whereas BaR 22. 1 mentions only three, Abraham, Joseph, and Job, on whom this title was conferred.

333. Tan. Mikkez 7. In Tan. B. I, 188, it is stated: Joseph was a scholar and a prophet, as well as the supporter of his brethren. Comp. Aggadat Shir 1, 26, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6. 1. Joseph took such great care of his brethren and their families, that each and every one of them was entered on the list of the king’s pensioners. When, after Joseph’s death, the descendants of Jacob began to increase rapidly, the Egyptians felt that the pensioning of such a vast multitude was too heavy a burden. Unmindful of their obligations, they withdrew their support of Jacob’s descendants altogether. Lekah Gen. 47. 12 and Deut. 26. 5.

334. MHG I, 694. As to the explanation of ותלה (Gen. 47. 13) given there, see Sa’adya Gaon in Kimhi, *Shonashim*, s. v. ללה.

335. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 111b. For further details concerning the treasure, see text on pp. 549 and 718, as well as the notes appertaining to these passages. God had promised Abraham that his descendants would go forth from Egypt with great substance (comp. Gen. 15. 14). In order that this promise should be fulfilled God caused all the wealth of the earth to flow into Egypt. Zohar I, 196, which is very likely the source of Yalkut Reubeni, 15. 14, where זהר is to be read instead of מדרש. Comp. Reubeni, Gen. 41. 46.

336. Pesahim 119a; Sanhedrin 110a; Lekah Gen. 46. 49, whose source is not the Talmud.

337. Yashar Wa-Yiggash, 111b.

338. Pesahim 119a (on נצולה comp. Harkavy, *Responsen der Geonim*, No. 398, p. 213, according to which it means an empty threshing-floor) and 87a; Mekilta Amalek, 53b; Mekilta RS, 169. Compare with pp. 983, 985 and 1051.

339. MHG I, 695. Joseph is described by Artapanus, 9. 23 (429d), as a reformer of the taxation of the soil.



The same author also narrates that Joseph was the inventor of measures, on account of which he was beloved by the Egyptians. Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 7. 7.

340. Targum Yerushalmi, *Hadar*, *Da'at*, Midrash Aggada, *Pa'aneah*, and Shu'aib on Gen. 47. 22, as well as *Da'at* on Deut. 32. 12 and Yashar Wa-Yesheb 89b. According to Philo, *De Josepho*, 10, the proof of Joseph's innocence consisted in the fact that his garment and not that of the woman was torn; for if he had used force against her, he would have torn her garment; but she, having attacked him, tore his garment. In the Koran 12. 26–28 it is stated that a slave belonging to Potiphar's household proved Joseph's innocence by the fact that the garment was torn in the back instead of the front. As to the other trick which Potiphar's wife tried to play against Joseph and as to the discovery thereof, see the sources referred to in note 130, as well as *Imre No'am*, Gen. 47. 22, which follows Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 39, 14. Compare with note 312 on p. 318.

341. MHG I, 696 (where כְּטִיבוֹ "as his reputation" is to be read instead of כְּטוֹבוֹ); Baraita 32 Middot according to the reading of MHG I, introduction, XIX. An explanation of Joseph's ordinance that a fifth of the produce of the land should belong to Pharaoh is given in Lekah Gen. 47. 24.

342. Hullin 60b; Tan. B. I, 186; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 47. 21.

343. MHG I, 695. Comp. Yadayim 4. 4, and Bera-kot 28a.

## JACOB'S LAST WISH

**I**n return for the seventeen years that Jacob had devoted to the bringing up of Joseph, he was granted seventeen years of sojourn with his favorite son in peace and happiness. The wicked experience sorrow after joy; the pious must suffer first, and then they are happy, for all's well that ends well, and God permits the pious to spend the last years of their lives in felicity.<sup>344</sup>

When Jacob felt his end approach, he summoned Joseph to his bedside, and he told him all there was in his heart. He called for Joseph rather than one of his other sons, because he was the only one in a position to execute his wishes.

Jacob said to Joseph: "If I have found grace in thy sight, bury me not, I pray thee, in Egypt.

Only for thy sake did I come down into Egypt, and for thy sake I spoke, Now I can die. Do this for me as a true service of love, and not because thou art afraid, or because decency demands it. And when I sleep with my fathers, thou shalt bury me in their burying-place. Carry me out of the land of idolatry, and bury me in the land where God hath caused His Name to dwell, and put me to rest in the place in which four husbands and wives are to be buried, I the last of them."

Jacob desired not to be buried in Egypt for several reasons. He knew that the soil of Egypt would once swarm with vermin, and it revolted him to think of his corpse exposed to such uncleanness. He feared, moreover, that his descendants might say, "Were Egypt not a holy land, our father Jacob had never permitted himself to be buried there," and they might encourage themselves with this argument to make choice of Egypt as a permanent dwelling-place. Also, if his grave were there, the Egyptians might resort to it when the ten plagues came upon them, and if he were induced to pray for them to God, he would be advocating the cause of the Lord's enemies. If, on the other hand, he did not intercede for them, the Name of God would be profaned among the heathen, who would say, "Jacob is a useless saint!" Besides, it was possible that God might consider him, the "scattered sheep" of Israel, as a sacrifice for the Egyptians, and remit their punishment. From his knowledge of the people, another fear was justified, that his grave would become an object of idolatrous veneration, and the same punishment is appointed by God for the idols worshipped as for the idolaters that worship them.

If Jacob had good reasons for not wanting his body to rest in the soil of Egypt, he had equally good reasons for wanting it to rest in the Holy Land. In the Messianic time, when the dead will rise, those buried in Palestine will awaken to new life without delay, while those buried elsewhere will first have to roll from land to land through



the earth, hollowed out for the purpose, until they reach the Holy Land, and only then will their resurrection take place. But over and beyond this, Jacob had an especial reason for desiring to have his body interred in Palestine. God had said to him at Beth-el, "The land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed," and hence he made every endeavor to "lie" in the Holy Land, to make sure it would belong to him and his descendants.<sup>345</sup> Nevertheless he bade Joseph strew some Egyptian earth over his dead body.<sup>346</sup>

Jacob expressed these his last wishes three times. Such is the requirement of good breeding in preferring a request.

In the last period of Jacob's life, one can see how true it is that "even a king depends upon favors in a strange land." Jacob, the man for the sake of whose merits the whole world was created, for the sake of whom Abraham was delivered from the fiery furnace, had to ask services of others while he was among strangers,<sup>347</sup> and when Joseph promised to do his bidding, he bowed himself before his own son, for it is a true saying, "Bow before the fox in his day," the day of his power.<sup>348</sup>

He was not satisfied with a simple promise from Joseph, that he would do his wish; he insisted upon his taking an oath by the sign of the covenant of Abraham, putting a hand under his thigh in accordance with the ceremony customary among the Patriarchs.<sup>349</sup> But Joseph said: "Thou treatest me like a slave. With me thou hast no need to require an oath. Thy command sufficeth." Jacob, however, urged him, saying: "I fear Pharaoh may command thee to bury me in the sepulchre with the kings of Egypt. I insist that thou takest an oath, and then I will be at peace." Joseph gave in,<sup>350</sup> though he would not submit to the ceremony that Eliezer had used to confirm the oath he took at the request of his master Abraham. The slave acted in accordance with the

rules of slavery, the free man acted in accordance with the dictates of freedom.<sup>351</sup> And in a son that thing would have been unseemly which was becoming in a slave.<sup>352</sup>

When Joseph swore to bury his father in Palestine, he added the words, "As thou commandest me to do, so also will I beg my brethren, on my death-bed, to fulfil my last wish and carry my body from Egypt to Palestine."<sup>353</sup>

Jacob, noticing the Shekinah over the bed's head, where she always rests in a sick room, bowed himself upon the bed's head,<sup>354</sup> saying, "I thank thee, O Lord my God, that none who is unfit came forth from my bed, but my bed was perfect."<sup>355</sup> He was particularly grateful for the revelation God had vouchsafed him concerning his first-born son Reuben, that he had repented of his trespass against his father, and atoned for it by penance. He was thus assured that all his sons were men worthy of being the progenitors of the twelve tribes, and he was blessed with happiness such as neither Abraham nor Isaac had known, for both of them had had unworthy as well as worthy sons.<sup>356</sup>

Until the time of Jacob death had always come upon men suddenly, and snatched them away before they were warned of the imminent end by sickness. Once Jacob spoke to God, saying, "O Lord of the world, a man dies suddenly, and he is not laid low first by sickness, and he cannot acquaint his children with his wishes regarding all he leaves behind. But if a man first fell sick, and felt that his end were drawing nigh, he would have time to set his house in order." And God said, "Verily, thy request is sensible, and thou shalt be the first to profit by the new dispensation," and so it happened that Jacob fell sick a little while before his death.<sup>357</sup>

His sickness troubled him grievously, for he had undergone much during his life. He had worked day and night while he was with Laban, and his conflicts with the angel and with Esau,



though he came off victor from both, had weakened him, and he was not in a condition to endure the hardships of disease.<sup>358</sup>

344. MHG I, 701–702; Lekah, Shu'aib (gives מדרש as source), and *Da'at*, Gen. 48. 1; Zohar I, 180a and 216b. As to the happiness of the pious during the last years of their life, comp. Tan. B. V, 18; Tan. Ekeb 3; Aggadat Bereshit 40, 121–122; comp. note 2.

345. BR 96. 5; Tan. B. I, 213–214; Tan. Wa-Yehi 3; MHG I, 709–711. On the signs of approaching death, see Zohar I, 217b, and 227a. On Israel as the “lamb for atonement,” see Tan. B. IV, 20; BaR 4. 5; Ekah 1, 73 (below). Jacob’s fear that he would “be made an idol” is also mentioned in the sources referred to in note 329; compare further pp. 900 abd 1096. Ziyoni, Beshallah (beginning), maintains that Jacob and Joseph wished to have their bodies removed from Egypt in order that they should not be desecrated by the Egyptians, whereas according to Tehillim 24. 19, the reason for Jacob’s last wish was that the pious are loath to have their last rest among the wicked; compare footnote 21 on p. 1030. As to the superiority of the Holy Land to all other countries at the time of resurrection, see Apocalypse of Baruch 29. 2, 40. 2, and 71. 1; 4 Ezra 13. 48–49; Midrash Tannaim 58 (this is very likely the source of *Kafior wa-Ferah* 138); Mishle 17, 84; Ruth Z., 1. 47; Alphabet of R. Akiba 31 (ט); Ketubot 111a; Yerushalmi Kil’ayim 9, 32c; *Abkat Rokel* 2,4; Zohar I, 113b–114a, 128b–129a, 136b–137a. The statement in the kabbalistic sources mentioned above that the resurrection of the dead of the Holy Land will take place forty years earlier than that of the dead of other countries is based directly or indirectly upon Midrash Tannaim, *loc. cit.* See Ginzberg’s remarks in *J.Q.R.*, XVI, 447, note 1. In connection with the widespread view that the reign of the Messiah will last forty years (comp. Sanhedrin 99a and Tehillim 90, 393), this statement very likely implies the doctrine that the messianic kingdom will be confined to the Holy Land, whose dead will therefore be resurrected forty years before the general resurrection takes place when the Lord Himself will be King and Ruler. Zohar I, 137a, and II, 28b, in speaking of the resurrection of the dead, refers to a very small bone in the human body which is indestructible and will form the nucleus of the new body at the time of resurrection. There can be no doubt that this bone mentioned in the Zohar is identical with the “almond-shaped” bone Luz, concerning which see BR 30. 7; WR 18. 1; Koheleth 12. 5. Comp. Index, s. v. “Luz.” Hyrtl, *Das Arabische und Hebräische in der Anatomie*, 165, draws attention to the fact that old German anatomists called this bone “Jew-bone”; comp. also Löw, *Pflanzennamen*, 375. The

Luz legend came from the Jews to the Arabs; comp. *Jewish Encyclopedia*, 8, s. v. “Luz.”

346. Nazir 65a; MHG I, 711.

347. MHG I, 708–709. As to the idea that Jacob was “the goal of creation” and the deliverer “of Abraham from the fiery furnace,” see footnote 35 on p. 255.

348. Megillah 16b. According to this view, וישתחו (Gen. 47. 31) is to be translated “and he bowed down to Joseph,” whereas others are of the opinion that it means: “And he prostrated himself before God.” Comp. the sources referred to in notes 354–355. Yelammedenu 30 (=BHM VI, 83, and MHG I, 709) says: Jacob told Joseph that it was his duty to fulfil the word of God: “And Joseph shall put his hand upon thine eyes.”

349. PRE 39.

350. MHG I, 711.

351. Yelammedenu 29 (=BHM VI, 83, and MHG I, 358 and 711, ל). This midrashic passage may also mean that Joseph as “a free man” did not at first want to affirm his promise by an oath; but subsequently consented to act in the same manner as Eliezer had done to Abraham. Comp. note 349.

352. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 47. 30. Comp. Pesahim 51b and Semahot 12.

353. *Hadar* and *Da'at*, Gen. 47. 30.

354. Sifre D., 31; Midrash Tannaim 24; MHG I, 711. Comp. Shabbat 12b and Nedarim 40a, in accordance with which Tan. Wa-Yehi 3 (end), MHG I, 712 (ל), and Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 47. 30 are to be explained.

355. MHG I, 711; comp. note 383. Lekah, Gen. 47. 31, gives two explanations of וישתחו (Gen. 47. 12): (1) Jacob thanked God for having given him a son like Joseph; comp. Heb. 11. 21; (2) Jacob bowed to Joseph because he wished to fulfil the latter’s dream in which it was revealed to him (Gen. 37. 9–10) that his father would bow down to him; comp. note 348.

356. Sifre D., 31; Midrash Tannaim 24. In accordance with these sources, MHG I., 711, is to be read שהיתה מטתי שלמה; comp. the use of this phrase in the prayer before retiring to bed at night (ברכת המפיל), Berakot 60a and Siddur (Baer’s edition, 573). See also note 383. As to Reuben’s penitence see note 60.

357. BR 45. 9. This sickness was the fourth great miracle since the creation of man; for until Jacob’s time people died suddenly, without having been warned by illness of their impending death: they sneezed and fell dead. Hence the custom to bestow the blessing “Unto life” upon a person who sneezes; see PRE 52; footnote 272 on p. 237, as well as footnote 20 on p. 1030. In old sources (comp., e. g., Tosefta Shabbat 7. 5 and Babli Berakot 53a) the blessing used is מרפא, or in Aramic אסותא “Unto health.”

358. MHG I, 712; Yelammedenu 31 (=BHM VI, 83) and in *Aruk*, s. v. פגש and רוח.



## THE BLESSING OF EPHRAIM AND MANASSEH

All the years of Jacob's sojourn in Egypt, Asenath, the wife of Joseph, was his constant nurse. When she saw his end drawing nigh, she spoke to Joseph: "I have heard that one who is blessed by a righteous man is as though he had been blessed by the Shekinah. Therefore, bring thy sons hither, that Jacob give them his blessing."<sup>359</sup>

Though Joseph was a devoted and loving son to his father, he was not in constant attendance upon him, because he wanted to avoid giving him the opportunity of inquiring into the circumstances of his coming to Egypt. He was apprehensive that Jacob might curse his sons and bring death upon them, if he discovered the facts connected with their treacherous dealings with Joseph. He took good care therefore never to be alone with his father. But as he desired to be kept informed of his welfare, he arranged a courier service between himself and Jacob.

Now when Joseph received the news of his father's having fallen sick, through his messenger, as well as through Ephraim, whom Jacob was instructing in the Torah, he hastened to the land of Goshen, taking his two sons with him. He desired to have certainty upon five points: Would his father bless his two sons, who were born in Egypt, and, if so, would he appoint them to be heads of tribes? Would he assign the rights of the first-born unto himself, and, if so, would he divest Reuben of such rights altogether? And why had his father buried his mother Rachel by the wayside, and not carried her body to the family tomb at Machpelah?<sup>360</sup>

Jacob had also entertained doubts on five points, when he was about to emigrate from Canaan to Egypt: He did not know whether his descendants would lose themselves among the people of Egypt; whether he would die there and

be buried there; and whether he would be permitted to see Joseph and see the sons of Joseph. God gave him the assurance, saying, "I will go down with thee into Egypt, and I will surely bring thee up again after thy death, and thy descendants also, and Joseph shall put his hand upon thine eyes." When the time approached for the fulfilment of the Divine promise, God appeared unto Jacob, and He said, "I promised to fulfil thy wish, and the time of fulfilment hath come."

The holy spirit made known to Jacob that Joseph was coming to him,<sup>361</sup> and he strengthened himself, and sat upon the bed in order to pay due respect to the representative of the government. Though Joseph was his son, he was also viceroy, and entitled to special marks of honor. Besides, Jacob desired to make the impression of being a man in good health. He wanted to avoid the possibility of having his blessing of Joseph and Joseph's sons questioned as the act of an irresponsible person.<sup>362</sup>

He strengthened himself spiritually as well as physically, by prayer to God, in which he besought Him to let the holy spirit descend upon him at the time of his giving the blessing to the sons of Joseph.

When Joseph appeared in the company of his two sons, his father said to him: "In all the seventeen years thou hast been visiting me, thou didst never bring thy sons with thee, but now they have come, and I know the reason. If I bless them, I shall act in opposition to the word of God, who promised to make me the progenitor of twelve tribes, for if I adopt them as my sons, there will be fourteen tribes. But if I do not bless them, it will plunge thee in sorrow. So be it, I will bless them. But think not I do it because thou didst support me all these years. There is quite another reason."<sup>363</sup> When I left my father's house to go to Haran, I offered up a prayer at Beth-el, and I promised to give unto God the tenth of all I owned. So far as my material possessions are



concerned, I kept my vow, but I could not give the tithe of my sons, because according to the law I had to withdraw from the reckoning the four sons, Reuben, Joseph, Dan, and Gad, that are the first-born children of their mothers. When I returned, God again appeared unto me in Beth-el, and He said, Be fruitful and multiply. But after this blessing no son was born unto me except Benjamin alone, and it cannot be but that God meant Manasseh and Ephraim when He spoke of ‘a nation and a company of nations.’ If now I have found favor in thy sight, thy two sons Ephraim and Manasseh, even as Reuben and Simon, shall be mine, and then I shall be able to give a tenth part of my ten sons unto the Lord, and I shall leave this world free from the sin of not keeping my vow to the Lord concerning the tithe-giving.”

Joseph consented to do his father’s will, and Jacob tithed his sons, consecrating Levi to the Holy One, and appointing him to be the chief of his brethren. He enjoined his sons to have a care that there should never fail them a son of Levi in the priestly succession. And it happened that of all the tribes Levi was the only one that never proved faithless to the covenant of the fathers.<sup>364</sup>

Thus Jacob adopted Manasseh and Ephraim to be his own sons, even as Reuben and Simon were his sons. They were entitled like the others to a portion in the Holy Land, and like the others they were to bear standards on their journey through the desert.<sup>365</sup>

Satisfied as to Jacob’s intentions concerning his sons, Joseph asked his father about his mother’s burial-place, and Jacob spoke, saying: “As thou livest, thy wish to see thy mother lying by my side in the grave doth not exceed mine own. I had joy in life only as long as she was alive, and her death was the heaviest blow that ever fell upon me.” Joseph questioned him: “Perhaps thou didst have to bury her in the way, because she

died during the rainy season, and thou couldst not carry her body through the rain to our family sepulchre?” “No,” replied Jacob, “she died in the spring time, when the highways are clean and firm.” Joseph: “Grant me permission to take up her body now and place it in our family burial-place.” Jacob: “No, my son, that thou mayest not do. I was unwilling to bury her in the way, but the Lord commanded it.” The reason of the command was that God knew that the Temple would be destroyed, and Israel would be carried away into banishment, and the exiles would ask the Patriarchs to intercede for them with God, but God would not hearken unto them. On their way to the land of the stranger they would pass the grave of Rachel, and they would throw themselves upon it, and beseech their mother to make intercession for them with God. And Rachel would pray to God in their behalf: “O Lord of the world, look upon my tears, and have compassion upon my children. But if Thou wilt not take pity on them, then indemnify me for the wrong done to me.” Unto her prayer God will hearken, and He will have mercy upon Israel. Therefore was Rachel buried in the way.

Now Jacob desired to bless the sons of Joseph, but the holy spirit made him to see Jeroboam, the descendant of Ephraim, and Jehu, the descendant of Manasseh, how they would seduce Israel to idolatry, and the Shekinah forsook him as he was about to lay his hands upon the heads of his grandsons. He said to Joseph, “Is it possible that thou didst not marry the mother of thy children according to the law?” Joseph thereupon brought his wife Asenath to his father, and pointing to her marriage contract, he said, “This one is my wife, whom I married as is proper, with a marriage contract and due ceremony. I pray thee, my father, bless my sons if only for the sake of this pious woman.”

Jacob bade his grandsons approach close to him, and he kissed and embraced them, in the



hope that his joy in them would lure back the holy spirit, but his hope was vain. Joseph concluded that the time was not favorable for blessing, and he decided to go away until a more propitious opportunity presented itself, first, however, proving to his father that his sons had been initiated in the covenant of Abraham.

Outside of his father's chamber, alone with his sons, he threw himself down before God and besought Him to show him mercy, and he bade his sons do likewise, saying, "Be not content with your high station, for worldly honors are but for a time. Entreat God to be merciful and let the Shekinah descend upon my father, that he bless you both." Then spake God to the holy spirit: "How long yet shall Joseph suffer? Reveal thyself quickly, and enter into Jacob, that he may be able to bestow blessings."

In the words of Jacob, "Ephraim and Manasseh, even as Reuben and Simon, shall be mine," Joseph had noticed his father's preference for his younger son Ephraim. It made him very anxious about his older son's birthright, and he was careful to put the two lads before his father in such wise that Manasseh should stand opposite Jacob's right hand, and Ephraim opposite his left hand.<sup>366</sup> But Ephraim, on account of his modesty, was destined for greater things than his older brother Manasseh, and God bade the holy spirit prompt Jacob to give the birthright to Ephraim.<sup>367</sup> Now when Joseph observed his father put his right hand upon Ephraim's head, he made an attempt to remove it unto Manasseh's head. But Jacob warded him off, saying: "What, thou wouldst displace my hand against my will, the hand that overcame the prince of the angel hosts, who is as large as one-third of the world!<sup>368</sup> I know things not known to thee—I know what Reuben did to Bilhah, and what Judah did to Tamar. How much more do I know things known to thee!<sup>369</sup> Thinkest thou I know not what thy brethren did to thee, because thou wouldst betray nothing

whenever I asked thee?<sup>370</sup> I know it, Manasseh also shall become great, the judge Gideon shall descend from him, but his younger brother will be the ancestor of Joshua, who will bring the sun and the moon to a standstill, though they have dominion over the whole earth from end to end." Thus did Jacob set Ephraim the younger above Manasseh the older, and thus did it remain unto all times. In the list of the generations, Manasseh comes after Ephraim, and so it was in the allotment of the portions in the Holy Land, and so it was in the placing of the camps and the standards of the tribes, and in the dedication of the Tabernacle—everywhere Ephraim preceded Manasseh.<sup>371</sup>

The blessing bestowed upon his grandchildren by Jacob was as follows: "O that it be the will of God that ye walk in the ways of the Lord like unto my fathers Abraham and Isaac,<sup>372</sup> and may the angel that hath redeemed me from all evil give his aid unto Joshua and Gideon,<sup>373</sup> and reveal himself unto them. May your names be named on Israel, and like unto fishes may you grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth, and as fishes are protected by the water, so may you be protected by the merits of Joseph."<sup>374</sup>

The words "like unto fishes" were used by Jacob for the purpose of intimating the manner of death awaiting the Ephraimites, the descendants of Joseph. As fish are caught by their mouth, so the Ephraimites were in later days to invite their doom by their peculiar lisp. At the same time, Jacob's words contained the prophecy that Joshua the son of the man Nun, the "fish," would lead Israel into the Holy Land. And in his words lay still another prophecy, with reference to the sixty thousand men children begot in the same night as Moses, all cast into the river with him, and saved for the sake of his merits. The number of boys thrown to the fishes in the river that night was equal to the number of men in Israel upon the earth.<sup>375</sup>



Ephraim received a special and separate blessing from his grandfather. Jacob said to him, “Ephraim, my son, thou art the head of the Academy, and in the days to come my most excellent and celebrated descendants will be called Ephraim after thee.”<sup>376</sup>

Joseph received two gifts from his father. The first was Shechem, the city that Jacob had defended, with sword and bow, against the depredations of the Amorite kings when they tried to take revenge upon his sons for the outrage committed there. And the second gift was the garments made by God for Adam and passed from hand to hand, until they came into the possession of Jacob. Shechem was his reward, because, with his chastity, he stemmed the tide of immorality that burst loose in Shechem first of all.<sup>377</sup> Besides, he had a prior claim upon the city. Shechem, son of Hamor, the master of the city, had given it to Dinah as a present, and the wife of Joseph, Asenath, being the daughter of Dinah, the city belonged to him by right.<sup>378</sup>

Adam’s clothes Jacob had received from Esau. He had not taken them from his brother by force, but God had caused them to be given to him as a reward for his good deeds. They had belonged to Nimrod. Once when the mighty hunter caught Esau in his preserves, and forbade him to go on the chase, they agreed to determine by combat what their privileges were. Esau had taken counsel with Jacob, and he had advised him never to fight with Nimrod while he was clothed in Adam’s garments. The two now wrestled with each other, and at the time Nimrod was not dressed in Adam’s clothes. The end was that he was slain by Esau. Thus the garments worn by Adam fell into the hands of Esau, from him they passed into Jacob’s, and he bequeathed them to Joseph.<sup>379</sup>

Jacob also taught Joseph three signs whereby to distinguish the true redeemer, who should deliver Israel from the bondage of Egypt. He

would proclaim the Ineffable Name, appoint elders, and use the word Pakod in addressing the people.<sup>380</sup>

---

359. Yelammedenu 32 (BHM VI, 83); MHG I, 714. Comp. the following note.

360. PR 3, 10b; Yelammedenu 32, where, ראובן must be read instead of בנימין. As to Joseph’s silence about the fact that his brethren sold him into slavery, see note 370. The source of *Hadar* and *Da’at*, Gen. 48. 1, is PR, which has also another opinion that Joseph heard of his father’s illness from Bilhah who nursed him, or from Benjamin who was constantly with his father. Comp. Sifre D., 352. See also Tan. Wa-Yehi 6; MHG I, 714 and 715–716 (here it is Manasseh who studied under Jacob); Sekel 306.

361. MHG I, 713–714. Comp. Schechter, *ad loc.*, and note 306.

362. MHG I, 716; Yelammedenu 33 (=BHM VI, 83). This is very likely the source of *Hadar*, *Da’at*, and Sekel on Gen. 48. 2. Comp. note 348.

363. PR 3, 11a, and the other view 12a, line 7.

364. MHG I, 716. As to the tithe of Jacob’s sons, see footnote 250 on p. 300.

365. MHG I, 717.

366. PR 3, 11b–12a; MHG I, 717 (below) and 718–720; Yelammedenu 33–34 (=BHM VI, 83; read על הלהך) where it is also stated that the holy spirit had abandoned Jacob during the time that he grieved for Joseph (comp. note 294); Tan. Wa-Yehi 6; Zohar I, 207b; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 48. 9; Aggadat Bereshit 5, 12. As to Rachel’s burial place, see footnote 310 on p. 318, as well as Lekah Gen. 48. 7.

367. PR 3, 12a–12b; MHG I, 720–721, in accordance with which PR is to be emended to read נסתכלו=נשתכלו “asked in a foolish way”; Aggadat Bereshit 5, 11–13, the text of which suggests that ברגול in MHG, 721 means “according to the way of a spy,” *i. e.*, “I betray a secret to you.” Very likely however תר גלי is to be read. Philo, *De Josepho*, 6, likewise mentions that it was the prophetic spirit which revealed to Jacob that in the future Ephraim would be superior to Manasseh.

368. PR 3, 12 (as to the text, see *Ketab Tamim*, 88); Aggadat Bereshit 5, 12; BR 97. 4; Tan. Wa-Yehi 6.

369. BR 97. 4.

370. PR 3, 12b. The Haggadah often refers to Joseph’s nobility of character as shown by the fact that he did not tell anyone that his brethren sold him into slavery. His desire to keep this matter secret went so far that he did not attempt, after he had risen to a high position in Egypt, to communicate with his father, fearing lest he should have to



explain his presence in Egypt and thus betray his brethren; see Philo, *De Josepho*, 41; Hasidim 479–480; *Imre No'am*, Gen. 41. 16, and the sources referred to in notes 99, 281, 360, 442, as well as text on p. 450. Comp. also note 68.

371. BR 97. 4–5; MHG I, 717 (top) and 722–723; Tan. Wa-Yehi 6; PR 3, 12b; Targum Yerushalmi and Lekah on Gen. 48. 20.

372. Aggadat Bereshit 80, 155; Shitah Hadashah 1.

373. BR 97. 3. Comp. Aggadat Bereshit 5, 13, and note 371. Jacob's guardian angel is Michael; comp. Zerubbabel 10; Sekel 309 and 318, as well as Index, s. v. "Michael."

374. MHG I, 723, where many other explanations are given of the blessing **וידגו לרב** (Gen. 48. 16) bestowed by Jacob upon his two grandchildren. Comp. also the following note.

375. BR 97. 3; Tan. Wa-Yehi 6 (the Ephraimites pronounced "Sibboleth" instead of "Shibboleth"; comp. Jud. 12. 6); Lekah and Targum Yerushalmi on Gen. 48. 16. Compare footnote 50 on p. 478.

376. WR 2. 3; Shemuel 1, 45. Ephraim received this distinction, as well as many others, as a reward for his humility; God exalts those who humble themselves; BR 6. 4; PR 3, 12b; MHG I, 720–721. The last-named source gives further instances of the reward for humility: Joktan, who became the father of thirteen sons (compare footnote 70 on p. 157), and David, who was exalted above all other rulers. The more luxuriant the vine the lower are its branches; the greater the man the deeper his humility, MHG, *loc. cit.*, and comp. Schechter note 31.

377. BR 97. 9; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 48. 22; Baba-Batra 123a. On Jacob's war against the Shechemites, see text on pp. 311–315 and notes 289–292 appertaining to them. Concerning Adam's garments see footnotes 78–80 on p. 75.

378. Sabba, Wa-Yehi, 59c. On Dinah and Asenath see vol. II, p. 38.

379. *Da'at* and *Hadar*, Gen. 30. 29–30. Compare with pp. 257–258, and preceding note.

380. BR 97. 6. Compare with p. 516.

of men." Then spoke Jacob: "They that seek the Lord shall not want any good thing. I have blessings enough for all."<sup>381</sup>

Jacob summoned his sons from the land of Egypt, and bade them come to him at Raamses, first, however, commanding them to make themselves clean, that the blessing he was about to bestow might attach itself to them. Another one of his commands was that they were to establish an Academy, by the members of which they were to be governed.

When his sons were brought into his presence by the angels, Jacob spoke, saying, "Take heed that no dissensions spring up among you, for union is the first condition of Israel's redemption," and he was on the point of revealing the great secret to them concerning the end of time, but while they were standing around the golden bed whereon their father lay, the Shekinah visited him for a moment and departed as quickly, and with her departed also all trace of the knowledge of the great mystery from the mind of Jacob.<sup>382</sup> He had the same experience as his own father Isaac, who also had loss of memory inflicted upon him by God, to prevent him from revealing the secret at the end of time to Esau, when he summoned him to receive his blessing.

The accident made Jacob apprehensive that his sons were not pious enough to be considered worthy of the revelation concerning the Messianic era, and he said to them, "Ishmael and the sons of Keturah were the blemished among the issue of my grandfather Abraham; my father Isaac begot a blemished issue in Esau, and I fear now that among you, too, there is one that harbors the intention to serve idols." The twelve men spake, and said: "Hear, O Israel, our father, the Eternal our God is the One Only God. As thy heart is one and united in avouching the Holy One, blessed be He, to be thy God, so also are our hearts one and united in avouching Him." Whereto Jacob responded, "Praised be the Name

## THE BLESSING OF THE TWELVE TRIBES

When Joseph and his two sons left Jacob, his brethren, envious of the bountiful blessings bestowed upon the three, said, "The whole world loveth a favorite of fortune, and our father hath blessed Joseph thus because he is a ruler



of the glory of His majesty forever and ever!”<sup>383</sup> And although the whole mystery of the Messianic time was not communicated to the sons of Jacob, yet the blessing of each contained some reference to the events of the future.

These were the words addressed by Jacob to his oldest son: “Reuben, thou art my first-born, my might, and the beginning of my strength! Thy portion should have been three crowns. Thou shouldst have had the double heritage of thy primogeniture, and the priestly dignity, and the royal power. But by reason of thy sin, the birthright is conferred upon Joseph, kingship upon Judah, and the priesthood upon Levi. My son, I know no healing remedy for thee, but the man Moses, who will ascend to God, he will make thee whole, and God will forgive thy sin.”<sup>384</sup> I bless thee—may thy descendants be heroes in the Torah and heroes in war.<sup>385</sup> Though thou must lose thy birthright, yet wilt thou be the first to enter into possession of thy allotment in the Holy Land, and in thy territory shall be the first of the cities of refuge, and always shall thy name stand first in the list of the families of the tribes. Yea, thou shalt also be the first whose heritage will be seized by the enemy, and the first to be carried away into the lands of exile.”<sup>386</sup>

After Reuben had had his “ears pulled” thus, he retired, and Jacob called his sons Simon and Levi to his side, and he addressed them in these words: “Brethren ye were of Dinah, but not of Joseph, whom you sold into slavery. The weapons of violence wherewith ye smote Shechem were stolen weapons, for it was not seemly for you to draw the sword. That was Esau’s portion. To him was it said, By thy sword shalt thou live. Into the council of the tribe of Simon my soul will not come when they foregather at Shittim to do vicious deeds, and my glory will not be united unto the assembly of Korah, the descendants of Levi. In their anger Simon and Levi slew the prince of Shechem, and in their self-will they

sold Joseph the bull into slavery. Accursed was the city of Shechem when they entered to destroy it. If they remain united, no ruler will be able to stand up before them, no war will prosper against them. Therefore will I divide and scatter their possession among the possessions of the other tribes. The descendants of Simon will many of them be poor men, who will wander from tribe to tribe and beg for bread, and also Levi’s tribe will gather its tithes and gifts from all the others.”

The words of Jacob, “I will divide them in Jacob,” spoken of Simon and Levi, were fulfilled on Simon in particular. When twenty-four thousand of Simon fell at Shittim, the widows they left behind married husbands of all the other tribes. Nevertheless Jacob did not dismiss Simon and Levi without blessing them; the tribe of Simon was to bring forth the teachers and the beadles needed by all Israel, and Levi, the scholars that would expound the Torah and render decisions according to its teachings.<sup>387</sup>

When the remaining sons of Jacob heard the rebukes dealt out by their father to these three, they feared to hear like reproaches, and they tried to slip away from his presence. Especially Judah was alarmed, that his father might taunt him with his trespass touching Tamar. But Jacob spoke thus to him: “Judah, thou dost deserve thy name. Thy mother called thee Jehudah, because she gave praise to God at thy birth, and so shall thy brethren praise thee, and they all will call themselves by thy name. And as thou didst confess thy sin openly, so also thy descendants, Achan, David, and Manasseh, will make public avowal of their sins, and the Lord will hear their prayer. Thy hands will send darts after the fleeing foe, and thy father’s sons shall pay thee respect. Thou hast the impudence of a dog and the bravery of a lion. Thou didst save Joseph from death, and Tamar and her two sons from the flames. No people and no kingdom will be able to stand up against thee.



Rulers shall not cease from the house of Judah, nor teachers of the law from his posterity, until his descendant Messiah come, and the obedience of all peoples be unto him. How glorious is Messiah of the House of Judah! His loins girded, he will go out to do battle with his enemies. No king and no ruler will prevail against him. The mountains will be dyed red with their blood, and the garments of Messiah will be like the garments of him that presseth wine. The eyes of Messiah will be clearer than pure wine, for they will never behold unchastity and bloodshed; and his teeth will be whiter than milk, for never will they bite aught that is taken by violence.”<sup>388</sup>

Though Issachar was the older, Zebulun came next to be blessed, as a reward for the sacrifice he had made for his brother's sake, for when Issachar chose the study of the Torah as his vocation, Zebulun decided to devote himself to business and support his brother with the profits of his trade, that he might give himself up to the law undisturbed.<sup>389</sup> His blessing was that he would conquer the sea-coast as far as Zidon.<sup>390</sup>

“Issachar,” said Jacob, “will take upon himself the burden of the study of the Torah, and all the other tribes will come to him and ask him to decide their doubts on legal questions, and his descendants will be the members of the Sanhedrin and the scholars that will occupy themselves with fixing the calendar.” Jacob blessed Issachar also with the blessing, that the fruits of his land should be exceedingly large, and this brought a heavenly as well as an earthly profit in its train, for when the heathen to whom the fruits were sold marvelled thereat, the Jewish merchants explained that their extraordinary size was due to the merits of the tribe of Issachar, whom God rewarded for their devotion to the Torah, and thus many of the heathen were induced to convert to Judaism.<sup>391</sup>

In blessing Dan, Jacob's thoughts were occupied chiefly with his descendant Samson, who,

like unto God, without any manner of assistance, conferred victory upon his people. Jacob even believed the strong, heroic man to be the Messiah, but when Samson's death was revealed to him, he exclaimed, “I wait for Thy salvation, O Lord, for Thy help is unto all eternity, while Samson's help is only for a time.”<sup>392</sup> The redemption” continued Jacob, “will not be accomplished by Samson the Danite, but by Elijah the Gadite, who will appear at the end of time.”<sup>393</sup>

Asher's blessing was the beauty of his women, who would be sought in marriage by kings and high priests.<sup>394</sup>

In Naphtali's land all fruits would ripen quickly, and they would be brought as presents to kings, and gain royal favor for the givers. This blessing was fulfilled in the plain of Gennesaret.<sup>395</sup> At the same time Naphtali's blessing was a prophecy concerning his descendant Deborah, who was like a hind let loose against Sisera to conquer him, and she gave goodly words in her song of Israel's victory.<sup>396</sup> Naphtali himself deserved the description applied to Deborah, for he was swift as a hart to do the will of God, and he was a fleet messenger unto his father and the tribes. They sent him whithersoever they would, and he executed their errands with dispatch.<sup>397</sup> He served the brethren of Joseph as herald, to announce unto Jacob the glad tidings, “Joseph is yet alive,” and when the stricken father saw him approach, he said, “Lo, here cometh Naphtali the lovable, who proclaimeth peace.”<sup>398</sup>

Joseph's blessing exceeded the blessing of all his brethren. Jacob spoke: “O son whom I bred up, Joseph, whom I raised, and who wast strong to resist the enticements of sin, thou didst conquer all the magicians and the wise men of Egypt by thy wisdom and thy pious deeds. The daughters of princes cast their jewels before thee, to draw thine eyes upon them when thou didst pass through the land of Egypt, but thou didst not look their way, and therefore wast thou made



the father of two tribes. The magicians and the wise men of Egypt sought to defame thee before Pharaoh and slander thee, but thou didst set thy hope in the Almighty. Therefore may He who appeared unto me as El Shaddai bless thee and grant thee fertile soil and much cattle. May the blessing thy father giveth thee now, and the blessing that his fathers Abraham and Isaac gave him, and that called forth the envy of the great of the world, Ishmael, Esau, and the sons of Keturah—may all these blessings be a crown upon the head of Joseph, and a chain upon the neck of him that was the ruler of Egypt, and yet diminished not the honor due to his brethren.”<sup>399</sup>

The slander of which Jacob spoke referred to what Potiphar had said of Joseph before Pharaoh. He had complained, saying, “Why didst thou appoint my slave, whom I did buy for twenty pieces of silver, to be ruler over the Egyptians?” Joseph had then taken up his own defense, saying: “When thou didst buy me as a slave, thou didst commit a capital crime. Only a descendant of Canaan may be sold as a slave, and I am a descendant of Shem, and a prince besides. If thou wilt convince thyself of the truth of my words, do but compare me with the likeness of my mother Sarah that Pharaoh had made of her!” They brought Sarah’s likeness, and, verily, it appeared that Joseph resembled his ancestress, and all were convinced of his noble lineage.<sup>400</sup>

The blessing that Jacob bestowed upon Benjamin contains the prophecy that his tribe would provide Israel with his first ruler and his last ruler, and so it was, for Saul and Esther both belonged to the tribe of Benjamin. Likewise Benjamin’s heritage in the Holy Land harbors two extremes: Jericho ripens its fruits earlier than any other region in Palestine, while Beth-el ripens them latest. In Benjamin’s blessing, Jacob referred also to the service in the Temple, because the Holy Place was situated in the territory of Benjamin. And when Jacob called his youngest son a wolf that

ravineth, he was thinking of the judge Ehud, the great scholar, a Benjamite, who conquered Eglon king of Moab, and also he had in mind the Benjamites that captured their wives by cunning and force.<sup>401</sup>

Again, if he called Benjamin a wolf, Judah a lion, and Joseph a bull, he wanted to point to the three kingdoms known as wolf, lion, and bull, the doom of which was and will be sealed by the descendants of his three sons: Babylon, the kingdom of the lion, fell through the hands of Daniel of the tribe of Judah; Media, the wolf, found its master in the Benjamite Mordecai; and the bull Joseph will subdue the horned beast, the kingdom of wickedness, before the Messianic time.<sup>402</sup>

---

381. BR 97. 1; MHG I, 721; Shitah Hadashah I, Tan. Wa-Yehi 8; Aggadat Bereshit 82, 158.

382. BR 98. 1–3; Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 49. 1–2; Tan. Wa-Yehi 8; Aggadat Bereshit 81, 157, and 83, 163. In all these sources it is presupposed that Jacob did not act rightly in attempting to reveal divine mysteries to his sons without having first obtained permission from God; comp. the following note. Shu’aib, Wa-Yehi, 22d, quotes an unknown Midrash to the effect that the word ויקרא (Gen. 47. 29 and 49. 1), if explained according to the hermeneutical rule of Notarikon, contains the statement that Jacob revealed to Joseph the teachings of wisdom and the great mystery of the messianic age.

383. Sifre D., 32; Midrash Tannaim 24; BR 98. 3; Pesahim 56a; Tan. Wa-Yehi 8; Shitah Hadashah I; DR 2. 6, where it is also stated that Moses learned the response “Praised be the name, *etc.*” by listening to the angels. Comp. also Mahkim 111 (which gives a somewhat different version of the origin of this prayer of the angels); Aggadat Bereshit 81, 157; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 48. 2; WR 36. 5; Tehillim 31, 239–240. Comp. notes 239–240. Several medieval authors quote the following from an unknown Midrash: God called Jacob’s attention to the fact that the names of the twelve tribes contain neither the letters ח ט (=חט “sin”) nor ק צ (=קצ “end”); the tribes are free from sin, but the knowledge of the “end” shall not be revealed to them. See *Da’at, Hadar, Pa’aneah*, Shu’aib on Gen. 48. 1; R. Bahya, Gen. 47. 28; Abudrahim, *Shema’*; Zohar III, 188b. Sanhedrin 97b very strongly condemns those who occupy themselves with ascertaining the end of time, and the Rabbis speak of the “end” as a mystery which



has not been revealed to man or angel; Sanhedrin 99a; Tehillim 9. 81; Pesahim 54b. Comp. Mark 13. 32.

384. BR 98. 4 and 99. 6; Tan. B. I, 218; Tan. Wa-Yehi 9; Aggadat Bereshit 82, 158–159; Shitah Hadashah 2; Targumim Gen. 49. 3–4; MHG I, 731–734. Concerning Moses and Reuben see text on pp. 666 and 820.

385. Sabba, Wa-Yehi, 60a, quoting an unknown Midrash. Comp. BR 98. 4 **אלו זעקפי המלחמה** and the following note.

386. Abkir in Yalkut I, 157, and MHG I, 732; comp. BR 82. 11; MHG I, 539–540; Sabba, as in preceding note, who very likely had before him a fuller text of Abkir.

387. BR 98. 5 and 99. 7; Shitah Hadashah 2; Tan. B. I, 218–219; Tan. Wa-Yehi 9–10; Aggadat Bereshit 82, 159–160; Targumim Gen. 49. 5–7. The Church Fathers Tertullian, *Adversus Marcion.*, 3, 18, and *Adversus Judaios*, 10 and Hippolytus on Gen. 49. 5 likewise mention the tradition that the Pharisees and Scribes belonged to the tribes of Simeon and Levi; compare footnote 5 on p. 433. PR 7, 28a–28b, dwells upon the fact that the three oldest sons of Jacob received his blessings like the other brethren, though he severely censured them for their sins. As to the meaning of **מכרותיהם** (Gen. 49. 5) see also, besides the sources mentioned at the beginning of this note, PRE 38 and Yelammedenu in *'Aruk* s. v. **מכר** 3.

388. Tan. Wa-Yehi 10; Targumim 49. 8–12; MHG I, 735–739 (based on different sources); Yelammedenu 35 (=BHM VI, 84, and *'Aruk*, s. v. **כס** 5). The Haggadah finds in the blessing of Judah not only praise for his valiant and gallant spirit displayed at Tamar's trial and at the time when Joseph's life was threatened by his brethren (comp. notes 46 and 90), but also a prophecy about his prominent descendants, the Judean kings, and particularly the Messiah. The Church accepted the messianic interpretations of the blessing; comp. e. g., Hippolytus, *De Anti-Christo*, 9, seq.; *De Consummatione Mundi*, 18, and the reference to the patristic literature given by A. Poznanski, *Schiloh*, passim. Next to the Messiah it is David whose life history is found in the blessing of Judah; see the interesting passage quoted by Sabba, Wa-Yehi, 62a (top), from an unknown Midrash.

389. BR 99. 9 and 72. 5; Tan. Wa-Yehi 11; Aggadat Bereshit 82, 161; Shitah Hadashah 11; WR 25. 2; Batte Midrashot III, 26–27. Comp. note 391 as well as footnote 194 on p. 287.

390. Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 49. 13; BR 98. 11.

391. Tan. Wa-Yehi 11; BR 98. 12 and 99. 10; Shitah Hadashah 11; Aggadat Bereshit 82, 161. Issachar as “the tribe of scholars” is very frequently referred to in the Haggadah; compare with e. g. p. 287; also 339–340 and 433, as well as pp. 651, 664, 666, 679, 680, 688, 822, 823. Comp. also note 61. This legend is very likely based upon 1 Chron. 12. 33, where among those who came to David mention is made of the children of Issachar, “men that had

understanding of the times, to know what Israel ought to do”; comp. Targum, *ad loc.*, and Megillah 12b, where with reference to Esther 1. 13 it is stated that “those that have understanding of the times” describes the scholars (**רבנן**) who are well-versed in astronomy and understand how to fix the calendar. However, as there seems to be no trace of this legend in tannaitic sources, the following hypothesis may be suggested: During the amoraic period Tiberias was the main seat of Jewish learning in Palestine, and inasmuch as this city was located in the territory of the tribe of Issachar (comp. Sanhedrin 12a; Shitah, *loc. cit.*, and Megillah 6a on its identity with biblical **רַקִּית**), it was quite natural that this tribe should share in the glory of its metropolis. In support of this assumption one may quote Shir 8. 2, which reads: The tribe of Issachar studies in the house of learning situated in its territory (*i. e.*, Tiberias); Naphtali does more than this: it wanders to foreign houses of learning, and hence its reward is greater. Comp. the sources referred to in note 389, and footnote 194 on p. 28.

392. BR 98. 14 and 99. 11; Tan. Wa-Yehi 12; Shitah Hadashah 11, where it is stated that the Messiah was a Danite on his maternal side; this view is very likely related to the one found in early Christian authors about the Danite descent of the anti-Christ; comp. Irenaeus, V, 30, Hippolytus, *De Consum. Mundi* 19, and Bousset, *Antichrist*, Index, s. v. “Dan”; Yelammedenu 36 (=BHM VI, 84; read **כך שמשון** instead of **נורע**); Aggadat Bereshit 82, 161 (read **נורע** instead of **נורע**); Targumim Gen. 49. 16–18.

393. BR 99. 11; Tan. Wa-Yehi 12; Yelammedenu 37. Compare footnote 183 on p. 286. Others find in the blessing of Gad a prophecy concerning the activity of the Gadites as the vanguard of Israel, armed to conquer the Holy Land; comp. BR 98. 15; MHG I, 744; Shitah Hadashah 2; Targumim Gen. 49. 19.

394. BR 99. 12; Tan. Wa-Yehi 13; ER 9, 52. For other interpretations of the blessing of Asher see BR 98. 16; Shitah Hadashah 11; Targumim Gen. 49. 20.

395. BR 98. 17 and 99. 12; Tan. Wa-Yehi 13. Numerous other interpretations of the blessing of Naphtali are found in MHG I, 745–746, as well as in *Hadar, Da'at*, and Targumim on Gen. 49. 2. Comp. the following three notes.

396. MHG I, 745; BR 98. 17. In the second passage as well as in many others (Aggadat Bereshit 82, 162; Shitah Hadashah 11; comp. especially the unknown Midrash quoted by Sabba, Wa-Yehi, 63a), the scholarship of Naphtali (*i. e.*, of the tribe of this name) is praised. Comp. note 391.

397. MHG I, 746–747; BaR 14. 11; Sabba, Wa-Yehi, 63a; ER 9, 51, and 11, 59. As to Naphtali's extraordinary swiftness, compare with footnote 216 on p. 291, as well as text on pp. 414, 651, 688, in addition to text on p. 970 (transferred to the descendants of Naphtali); Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 49. 21.



398. Sabba and Targum Yerushalmi on Gen. 49. 21, whereas in Targum Yerushalmi Num. 27. 46 it is Serah the daughter of Asher who brings the glad tidings to Jacob. In the quotation by the glossator of *Pa'aneah* on Num., *loc. cit.*, from Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 49. 20, to the effect that Asher was the happy messenger, Asher is very likely to be emended to "Serah the daughter of Asher." Compare with p. 391, as well as footnotes 293–295.

399. BR 98. 18–20; Shitah Hadashah 2; Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 49. 22–26; comp. Sabba, Wa-Yehi, 63c, and note 184.

400. Midrash Aggada, Gen. 49. 23, and comp. Targumim on this verse. That Sarah's likeness hung in Pharaoh's bedroom is stated in Zohar II, 30a. As to the objection raised against Joseph that he was a slave, compare with p. 366. Kimhi on Gen., *loc. cit.*, likewise refers to this verse concerning Potiphar's enmity toward Joseph. *Ben ha-Melek* 6 reads: A man once said to Joseph: "I love thee very much"; to which Joseph replied: "Love caused me great suffering; my father's love brought upon me my brethren's hatred which resulted in my being sold as a slave; the love of Potiphar's wife for me lodged me in prison."

401. BR 99. 3; Tan. B. I, 219–220; Tan. Wa-Yehi 14; Shitah Hadashah 2; Aggadat Bereshit 82, 162; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 49. 27; MHG I, 751. The interpretation of Gen. 49. 27, found in 12 Testaments, Benjamin 11, and Hippolytus, *ad loc.*, according to which the "wolf" refers to the Benjamite Saul (=Paul), is a Christianized form of the Jewish Haggadah which takes the "wolf" as a symbol of Saul, the first king of Israel. Testaments, *loc. cit.*, finds in the blessing of Benjamin a hint that the temple would be erected in his territory; compare with p. 822.

402. BR 99. 2; Tan. B. I, 219–220; Tan. Wa-Yehi 14; Shitah Hadashah 2. On Joseph as the adversary of Esau, see text on p. 286, as well as p. 579.

## THE DEATH OF JACOB

After Jacob had blessed each of his sons separately, he addressed himself to all of them together, saying: "According to my power did I bless you, but in future days a prophet will arise, and this man Moses will bless you, too, and he will continue my blessings where I left off." He added, besides, that the blessing of each tribe should redound to the good of all the other tribes: the tribe of Judah should have a share in the fine

wheat of the tribe of Benjamin, and Benjamin should enjoy the goodly barley of Judah. The tribes should be mutually helpful, one to another.<sup>403</sup>

Moreover, he charged them not to be guilty of idolatry in any form or shape and not to let blasphemous speech pass their lips, and he taught them the order of transporting his bier,<sup>404</sup> thus: "Joseph, being king, shall not help to bear it, nor shall Levi, who is destined to carry the Ark of the Shekinah. Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun shall grasp its front end, Reuben, Simon, and Gad its right side, Ephraim, Manasseh, and Benjamin the hindmost end, and Dan, Asher, and Naphtali its left side." And this was the order in which the tribes, bearing each its standard, were to march through the desert, the Shekinah dwelling in the midst of them.<sup>405</sup>

Jacob then spake to Joseph, saying: "And thou, my son Joseph, forgive thy brethren for their trespass against thee, forsake them not, and grieve them not, for the Lord hath put them into thine hands, that thou shouldst protect them all thy days against the Egyptians."

Also he admonished his sons, saying that the Lord would be with them if they walked in His ways, and He would redeem them from the hands of the Egyptians. "I know," he continued, "great suffering will befall your sons and your grandsons in this land, but if you will obey God, and teach your sons to know Him, then He will send you a redeemer, who will bring you forth out of Egypt and lead you into the land of your fathers."<sup>406</sup>

In resignation to the will of God,<sup>407</sup> Jacob awaited his end, and death enveloped him gently. Not the Angel of Death ended his life, but the Shekinah took his soul with a kiss. Beside the three Patriarchs, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, only Moses, Aaron, and Miriam breathed their last in this manner, through the kiss of the Shekinah. And these six, together with Benjamin, are the only ones whose corpses are not exposed



to the ravages of the worms, and they neither corrupt nor decay.

Thus Jacob departed this world, and entered the world come, a foretaste of which he had enjoyed here below, like the other two Patriarchs, and none beside among men. In another respect their life in this world resembled their life in the world to come, the evil inclination had no power over them, either here or there, wherein David resembled them.<sup>408</sup>

Joseph ordered his father's body to be placed upon a couch of ivory, covered with gold, studded with gems, and hung with drapery of byssus and purple. Fragrant wine was poured out at its side, and aromatic spices burnt next to it. Heroes of the house of Esau, princes of the family of Ishmael, and the lion Judah, the bravest of his sons, surrounded the sumptuous bier of Jacob. "Come," said Judah to his brethren, "let us plant a high cedar tree at the head of our father's grave, its top shall reach up to the skies, its branches shall shade all the inhabitants of the earth, and its roots shall grow down deep into the earth, unto the abyss. For from him are sprung twelve tribes, and from him will arise kings and rulers, chapters of priests prepared to perform the service of the sacrifices, and companies of Levites ready to sing psalms and play upon sweet instruments."<sup>409</sup>

The sons of Jacob tore their garments and girded their loins with sackcloth, threw themselves upon the ground, and strewed earth upon their heads until the dust rose in a high cloud. And when Asenath, the wife of Joseph, heard the tidings of Jacob's death, she came, and with her came the women of Egypt, to weep and mourn over him. And the men of Egypt that had known Jacob repaired thither, and they mourned day after day, and also many journeyed down into Egypt from Canaan, to take part in the seventy days' mourning made for him.<sup>410</sup>

The Egyptians spake to one another, saying, "Let us lament for the pious man Jacob, because

the affliction of the famine was averted from our land on account of his merits," for instead of ravaging the land for forty-two years according to the decree of God, the famine had lasted but two years, and that was due to the virtues of Jacob.<sup>411</sup>

Joseph ordered the physicians to embalm the corpse. This he should have refrained from doing, for it was displeasing to God, who spoke, saying: "Have I not the power to preserve the corpse of this pious man from corruption? Was it not I that spoke the reassuring words, Fear not the worm, O Jacob, thou dead Israel?" Joseph's punishment for this useless precaution was that he was the first of the sons of Jacob to suffer death.<sup>412</sup> The Egyptians, on the other hand, who devoted forty days to embalming the corpse and preparing it for burial, were rewarded for the veneration they showed. Before He destroyed their city, God gave the Ninevites a forty days' respite on account of their king, who was the Pharaoh of Egypt. And for the three score and ten days of mourning that the heathen made for Jacob, they were recompensed at the time of Ahasuerus. During seventy days, from the thirteenth of Nisan, the date of Haman's edict ordering the extermination of the Jews, until the twenty-third of Siwan, when Mordecai recalled it, they were permitted to enjoy absolute power over the Jews.

When all preparations for the burial of Jacob had been completed, Joseph asked permission of Pharaoh to carry the body up into Canaan. But he did not himself go to put his petition before Pharaoh, for he could not well appear before the king in the garb of a mourner, nor was he willing to interrupt his lamentation over his father for even a brief space and stand before Pharaoh and prefer his petition. He requested the family of Pharaoh to intercede for him with the king for the additional reason that he was desirous of enlisting the favor of the king's relations, lest they advise Pharaoh not to fulfil his wish. He acted according to the maxim, "Seek



to win over the accuser, that he cause thee no annoyance.”<sup>413</sup>

Joseph applied first to the queen’s hairdresser, and she influenced the queen to favor him, and then the queen put in a good word for him with the king.<sup>414</sup> At first Pharaoh refused the permission craved by Joseph, who, however, urged him to consider the solemn oath he had given his dying father, to bury him in Canaan. Pharaoh desired him to seek absolution from the oath. But Joseph rejoined, “Then will I apply also for absolution from the oath I gave thee,” referring to an incident in his earlier history. The grandees of Egypt had advised Pharaoh against appointing Joseph as viceroy, and they did not recede from this counsel until Joseph, in his conversation with the Egyptian king, proved himself to be master of the seventy languages of the world, the necessary condition to be fulfilled before one could become ruler over Egypt. But the conversation proved something else, that Pharaoh himself was not entitled to Egyptian kingship, because he lacked knowledge of Hebrew. He feared, if the truth became known, Joseph would be raised to his own place, for he knew Hebrew beside all the other tongues. In his anxiety and distress, Pharaoh made Joseph swear an oath never to betray the king’s ignorance of Hebrew. Now when Joseph threatened to have himself absolved from this oath as well as the one to his dying father, great terror overwhelmed him, and he speedily granted Joseph permission to go up to Canaan and bury his father there.<sup>415</sup>

Moreover, Pharaoh issued a decree in all parts of the land menacing those with death who would not accompany Joseph and his brethren upon their journey to Canaan with their father’s remains, and accordingly the procession that followed the bier of Jacob was made up of the princes and nobles of Egypt as well as the common people.<sup>416</sup> The bier was borne by the sons of Jacob. In obedience to his wish not even their

children were allowed to touch it.<sup>417</sup> It was fashioned of pure gold, the border thereof inlaid with onyx stones and bdellium, and the cover was gold woven work joined to the bier with threads that were held together with hooks of onyx stones and bdellium. Joseph placed a large golden crown upon the head of his father, and a golden sceptre he put in his hand, arraying him like a living king.

The funeral cortege was arranged in this order: First came the valiant men of Pharaoh and the valiant men of Joseph, and then the rest of the inhabitants of Egypt. All were girt with swords and clothed in coats of mail, and the trappings of war were upon them. The weepers and mourners walked, crying and lamenting, at some distance from the bier, and the rest of the people went behind it, while Joseph and his household followed together after it, with bare feet and in tears, and Joseph’s servants were close to him, each man with his accoutrements and weapons of war. Fifty of Jacob’s servants preceded the bier, strewing myrrh upon the road in passing, and all manner of perfumes, so that the sons of Jacob trod upon the aromatic spices as they carried the body forward.

Thus the procession moved on until it reached Canaan. It halted at the threshing-floor of Atad, and there they lamented with a very great and sore lamentation.<sup>418</sup> But the greatest honor conferred upon Jacob was the presence of the Shekinah, who accompanied the cortege.<sup>419</sup>

The Canaanites had no intention at first to take part in the mourning made for Jacob, but when they saw the honors shown him, they joined the procession of the Egyptians,<sup>420</sup> loosing the girdles of their garments as a sign of grief.<sup>421</sup> Also the sons of Esau, Ishmael, and Keturah appeared, though their design in coming was to seize the opportunity and make war upon the sons of Jacob, but when they saw Joseph’s crown suspended from the bier, the Edomite and Ishmaelite kings and princes followed his example,



and attached theirs to it, too, and it was ornamented with thirty-six crowns.

Nevertheless the conflict was not averted; it broke out in the end between the sons of Jacob and Esau and his followers. When the former were about to lower the body of their father into the Cave of Machpelah, Esau attempted to prevent it, saying that Jacob had used his allotted portion of the tomb for Leah, and the only space left for a grave belonged to himself. For, continued Esau, "though I sold my birthright unto Jacob, I yet have a portion in the tomb as a son of Isaac." The sons of Jacob, however, were well aware of the fact that their father had acquired Esau's share in the Cave, and they even knew that a bill of sale existed, but Esau, assuming properly that the document was left behind in Egypt, denied that any such had ever been made out, and the sons of Jacob sent Naphtali, the fleet runner, back to Egypt to fetch the bill. Meantime, while this altercation was going on between Esau and the others, Hushim the son of Dan arose and inquired in astonishment why they did not proceed with the burial of Jacob, for he was deaf and had not understood the words that had passed between the disputants. When he heard what it was all about, and that the ceremonies were interrupted until Naphtali should return from Egypt with the bill of sale, he exclaimed, with indignation, "My grandfather shall lie here unburied until Naphtali comes back!" and he seized a club and dealt Esau a vigorous blow, so that he died, and his eyes fell out of their sockets and dropped upon Jacob's knees, and Jacob opened his own eyes and smiled. Esau being dead, his brother's burial could proceed without hindrance, and Joseph interred him in the Cave of Machpelah in accordance with his wish.

His other children had left all arrangements connected with the burial of their father's body to their brother Joseph, for they reflected that it was a greater honor for Jacob if a king concerned

himself about his remains rather than simple private individuals.<sup>422</sup>

The head of Esau, as he lay slain by the side of Jacob's grave, rolled down into the Cave, and fell into the lap of Isaac, who prayed to God to have mercy upon his son, but his supplications were in vain. God spoke, saying, "As I live, he shall not behold the majesty of the Lord."<sup>423</sup>

---

403. Tan. B. I, 221; Tan. Wa-Yehi 16; BR 99. 4; DR 13. 8; PR 7, 28b. Comp. note 387.

404. BR 100. 2.

405. Tan. B. IV, 11; Tan. Bemidbar 12; BaR 2. 8; Yashar Wa-Yehi, 112a–112b; a somewhat different version is found in BaR 5. 2. See also Hasidim 383 and Nahmanides, Gen. 48. 2. The passage in the Tanhumas escaped Nahmanides, for they explicitly state that, in accordance with Jacob's last will, none of his grandchildren was allowed to touch his bier, because their mothers (or the mothers of some of them) were Canaanitish women. In Tan. B. IV, 11, **בכס** is to be read instead of **בהם**. Comp. note 98.

406. Yashar Wa-Yehi, 112b. ER 18, 104, reads: Jacob admonished Joseph to be proud of his virtue, since God gives man knowledge and wisdom to be used only for the sanctification of His holy name, *i. e.*, to resist temptations.

407. BR 100. 1.

408. Baba Batra 16a–17a. Compare footnote 276 on p. 237, and footnote 35 on p. 255.

409. Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 50. 1.

410. Yashar Wa-Yehi, 112b–113a.

411. Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 50. 3; Zohar I, 294. Comp. note 177.

412. BR 100. 3. Compare with pp. 411–412. On Joseph's premature death see note 430.

413. Unknown Midrash quoted by Sabba, Wa-Yehi, 104a; BR 100. 6; Aggadat Esther 70. On the view that Pharaoh subsequently became king of Nineveh, see text on p. 560, and footnote 34 on p. 1034. The Egyptians drowned in the Red Sea were brought to burial as a reward for their participation in the last honor paid to Jacob; PRE 39 (this is the source of R. Bahya, Exod. 15. 12); comp., however, the opposite view about the end of the Egyptians, text on p. 561. R. Bahya, in his work *Kad ha-Kemah*, אבל 2, 16a, gives (following old sources?) a description of the nine divisions of which the cortège of Jacob's funeral consisted.

414. BR 100. 4; MHG I, 761, where **גדלת שפתים** could hardly mean "friseur"; comp. *Aruk*, s. v. **גדל**, and text on p. 1061.



415. Sotah 36b. Compare with text on p. 366. Midrash Aggada, Gen. 50. 2, is based on a combination of Sotah, *loc. cit.*, with Yashar Mikkez, 95a–95b.

416. Yashar Wa-Yehi, 113a. Comp. note 413.

417. Tan. B. IV, 11, and the sources referred to in note 405, as well as *Da'at* and *Hadar*, Gen. 50. 12. The number of Jacob's descendants at the time of his death amounted to sixty myriads; BR 79. 1.

418. Yashar Wa-Yehi, 113a–113b. Also compare with p. 409.

419. Yerushalmi Sotah 1, 17c; BR 100. 5.

420. Sotah 13a; Tan. B. I, 222; Tan. Wa-Yehi 17.

421. Yerushalmi Sotah 1, 17b; BR 100. 6; PK 10, 85a; Tan. B. I, 222; Tan. Wa-Yehi, 17.

422. Sotah 13a; PRE 39; Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 42. 21 and 50. 12; Yashar Wa-Yehi, 113b–114b (here this legend is given in a very elaborate form). As to the acquisition of the Machpelah by Jacob, see text on p. 258, and note 50 appertaining to it. For another legend about the death of Esau compare with p. 321 (top), given in accordance with Jub. 38. Closely related to the legend found in Jub. is the one given in Tehillim 18, 159–160, which reads: Jacob all alone occupied himself with the burial of his father; his sons withdrew themselves for a while, so that, unrestrained by the gaze of others, he might give himself up entirely to his grief for Isaac. At this very moment Esau sneaked into the Cave of Machpelah with the intention of killing Jacob whose life he had spared all the years their father Isaac was alive. Judah, however, noticed the attempt made by Esau upon Jacob, and killed his wicked uncle from behind. The reason that he killed him in this way was because Judah could not bring himself to kill Esau while facing him. The resemblance between the twin brothers Esau and Jacob was so great, that looking at one was as much as looking at the other, and Judah would never have been able to kill Esau while looking at his face which was the very image of Jacob's. That Jacob's sons refrained from killing their uncle on account of his close resemblance to their father is also stated in Jub., *loc. cit.* Sifre D., 348, and Midrash Tanna'im 214, as well as Yerushalmi Ketubot 1, 25c, seem to presuppose the legend found in Tehillim; *Hadar*, Gen. 49. 8, is directly based on this Midrash. In quoting the other legend about Esau's death, found in Sotah, *loc. cit.*, *Hadar* wrongly gives בַּחֲלֵק as source instead of נֶאֱמַר בַּחֲמֶק. Another inaccuracy in *Hadar*, Gen. 49. 33, is רַחַת instead of קוֹלְפֶּא of the Talmud.

423. PRE 39; Compare footnote 103 on p. 270. As to the order in which the graves of the patriarchs and their wives were arranged, comp. Yerushalmi Ta'anit 4, 68a, and Zohar III, 164a. As long as Jacob dwelt in Canaan a celestial light shone in the Cave of Machpelah, and as often as Jacob entered it the fragrance of paradise pervaded it. All these ceased the moment Jacob left Canaan for Egypt, and

did not return until Jacob's dead body was brought back to his native land; Zohar I, 250b. Compare pp. 234–235.

## THE SONS OF JACOB AT WAR WITH THE SONS OF ESAU

Jacob having been interred with royal pomp, and the seven days' period of mourning over, the conflict between the sons of Jacob and the sons of Esau broke out anew. In the skirmish that had ensued when Esau advanced a claim upon a place in the Cave of Machpelah, while his brother's remains still lay unburied, he lost forty of his men, and after his death fortune favored his sons as little. Eighty of their followers were slain, while of the sons of Jacob not one was lost. Joseph succeeded in capturing Zepho the son of Eliphaz and fifty of his men, and he clapped them in chains and carried them off to Egypt. Thereupon the rest of the attacking army led by Eliphaz fled to Mount Seir, taking with them the headless corpse of Esau, to bury it in his own territory. The sons of Jacob pursued after them, but they slew none, out of respect for the remains of Esau.

On the third day a great army gathered together, consisting of the inhabitants of Seir and the children of the East, and they marched down into Egypt with the purpose of making war upon Joseph and his brethren. In the battle that came off, this army was almost totally destroyed, not less than six hundred thousand men were mowed down by Joseph and his warriors, and the small remnant fled precipitately. Returned to their own country after this fatal campaign, the sons of Esau and the sons of Seir fell to quarrelling among themselves, and the sons of Seir demanded that their former allies leave the place, because it was they that had brought misfortune upon the country.



The sons of Esau thereupon dispatched a messenger in secret to their friend Agnias, king of Africa, begging his aid against the sons of Seir. He granted their request, and sent them troops consisting of foot-soldiers and mounted men. The sons of Seir, on their part, also sought allies, and they secured the help of the children of the East, and of the Midianites, who put warriors at their disposal. In the encounters that ensued between the hostile forces, the sons of Esau were defeated again and again, partly on account of treachery in their own ranks, for their men sometimes deserted to the enemy while the combat was on. At last, however, in the battle that took place in the desert of Paran, the sons of Esau gained a decisive victory. They massacred all the warriors of the sons of Seir, and the Midianites and the children of the East were put to flight.

Thereafter the sons of Esau returned to Seir, and they slew all the inhabitants of the place, men, women, and children, sparing only fifty lads and maidens. The former they used as slaves, and the latter they took to wife. They also enriched themselves with the spoils, seizing all the possessions of the sons of Seir, and the whole land was divided among the five sons of Esau. Now these descendants of Esau determined to put a king over themselves, but in consequence of the treachery committed during the war there prevailed such hatred and bitterness among them that they decided never to appoint a ruler from their own people. Their choice fell upon Bela, the son of Beor, one of the warriors sent to them by King Agnias. His peer could not be found among the allied troops for bravery, wisdom, and handsome appearance. They set the royal crown upon his head, built a palace for him, and gave him gifts of silver, gold, and gems, until he lived in great opulence. He reigned happily for thirty years, and met his death then in a war against Joseph and his brethren.

This war came about because the sons of Esau could not banish from their memory the

disgrace of the defeat inflicted upon them by Joseph and his people. Having enlisted the aid of Agnias, and of the Ishmaelites and other nations of the East, they set forth on a second campaign against Egypt, in the hope of delivering Zepho and his followers from the hands of Joseph. In spite of their enormous host—they had no less than eight hundred thousand men of infantry and cavalry—they were defeated at Raamses by Joseph and his brethren and their little company of six hundred men. Beside their king Bela, they left one-fourth of their army upon the field. The loss of their king discouraged them grievously, and they took to flight, hard pressed by Joseph, who cut down many of the fugitives.

When he returned from the battle, Joseph ordered manacles and fetters to be put upon Zepho and his followers, and their captivity was made more bitter unto them than it had been before.

The sons of Esau appointed Jobab of Bozrah to succeed their dead king Bela. His reign lasted ten years, but they desisted from all further attempts at waging war with the sons of Jacob. Their last experience with them had been too painful, but the enmity they cherished against them was all the fiercer, and their hatred never abated.

Their third king was Husham, and he ruled over them for twenty years. During his reign Zepho succeeded in making good his escape from Egypt. He was received kindly by Agnias, king of Africa, and appointed commander-in-chief of his troops. He used every means of persuasion to induce his sovereign lord to enter into a war with Egypt, but in vain, for Agnias was only too well acquainted with the strength and heroism of the sons of Jacob. For many years he resisted Zepho's arguments and blandishments. Indeed, as it was, Agnias had his hands full with other warlike enterprises. It had happened about this time that a man of the land of Kittim, 'Uzi by name, whom his countrymen venerated



as a god, died in the city of Pozimana, and he left behind a fair and clever daughter. Agnias heard of Yaniah's beauty and wisdom, and he sued for her hand, and his request was granted him by the people of Kittim.

The messengers of Agnias were hastening away from Kittim, bearing to their master the promise of the inhabitants that Yaniah should become his wife, when Turnus, king of Benevento, arrived on the same errand. His suit was rejected, for the people of Kittim were afraid to break the promise given to Agnias. In his anger, Turnus went to Sardinia to make war upon King Lucus, a brother of Agnias, intending to deal with the latter as soon as the other was rendered harmless. Hearing of the design hatched by Turnus, Agnias hastened to Sardinia to the assistance of his brother, and a battle took place in the Valley of Campania. Against Turnus were arrayed Agnias, his brother Lucus, and the son of the latter, Niblos, whom his father had appointed commander-in-chief of the Sardinian troops. In the first encounter, Turnus was the victor, and the Sardinians lost their general Niblos. But in the second engagement the army of Turnus was routed completely, and he himself was left dead on the field. His army fled, pursued closely by Agnias as far as the cross-road between Rome and Albano. Niblos' body was put inside of a golden statue, and his father erected a high tower over his grave, and another over the grave of Turnus, and these two buildings, connected by a marble pavement, stand opposite to each other, on the cross-road at which Agnias left off from following after the fugitive army.

The king of Africa went on to the city of Benevento, but he took no harsh measures against it and its inhabitants, because it belonged to the land of Kittim at that time. Thenceforth, however, bands of soldiers from Africa made incursions, now and again, into the land of Kittim, under the lead of Zepho, the captain of the Afri-

can army. Agnias meantime went to Pozimana, to solemnize his marriage with Yaniah, and he returned with her to his capital in Africa.<sup>424</sup>

---

424. Yashar Wa-Yehi 114b–117b, and Shemot, 118b–119b. That only Esau's rump was buried is already stated in PRE 39. On the foreign kings whom Esau's children appointed over themselves, see footnote 323 on p. 324. The description of the flight of Zepho from Egyptian bondage to Africa and his great deeds in that country is very likely taken from Josippon 2, and it is possible that Yashar had before him a fuller text of this pseudepigraphic work which contained also the details given in it about the wars between the sons of Esau and Joseph and his brethren. Yerahmeel 50. 4, *seq.*, is taken verbatim from Josippon. The reading Agnias is not certain, and perhaps Angias is to be read. Comp. the following note.

## ZEPHO KING OF KITTIM

**A**ll this time Zepho did not leave off urging Agnias to invade Egypt, and he succeeded finally in persuading the king to consider his wish, and a great army was equipped against Egypt and the sons of Jacob. Among the shield-bearers was Balaam, the fifteen year old son of Beor, a wise youth and an adept in magic, and the king bade him acquaint him with the issue of the war upon which they were entering. Balaam took wax and moulded the figures of men, to represent the army of Agnias and the army of the Egyptians, and he plunged them into magic water and let them swim, and it appeared that the African army was subdued by the Egyptians. Agnias accordingly gave up the campaign, and Zepho, seeing that his sovereign could not be persuaded into war with the sons of Jacob, fled the country and betook himself to Kittim.

The people of Kittim received him with great honors, and they offered him much money to stay with them and conduct their wars. It happened



once while Zepho was in the mountains of Kop-tiziah, where the inhabitants of Kittim had taken refuge before the troops of the African king, that he had to go on a search for an ox that had strayed away, and he discovered a cave the opening of which was barred by a great stone. He shivered the stone in pieces, and entering the cave he saw an animal formed like a man above and a he-goat below, and he killed the strange beast, which was in the very act of devouring his lost ox. There was great rejoicing among the people of Kittim, for the monster had long been doing havoc among their cattle, and in gratitude they set aside one day of the year, which they called by Zepho's name, in honor of their liberator, and all the people brought him presents and offered sacrifices to him.

At this time it came to pass that Yaniah, the wife of King Agnias, fell into a grievous sickness, and the physicians ascribed her illness to the climate, and to the water of Africa, to which she, a native of the land of Kittim, could not get accustomed, because she had been in the habit of using the water of the river Forma, which her forefathers had drawn to her house through a conduit. Agnias sent to the land of Kittim and had some of the water of the Forma brought to Africa. Finding it much lighter than the water of his own country, he built a huge canal from the land of Kittim to Africa, and the queen henceforth had all the Forma water she needed. Besides, he took earth and stone from Kittim, and built a palace for Yaniah, and she recovered from her illness.

Meantime Zepho had won a decisive victory over the African troops that had made an incursion into the land of Kittim, and the people chose him as king. His first undertaking was a campaign against the sons of Tubal and the Islands of the Sea, and again he was successful, he subdued them completely. On his return, the people built a great palace for Zepho, and they renewed his

kingship, and he continued until his death to reign as king of Kittim and of Italy for fifty years.

During the first thirteen years of his reign, the Africans made no attempt to disturb the peace of Kittim, but then they invaded the land, only to be severely repulsed by Zepho, who pursued the troops up to the very borders of Africa, and Agnias the king was in such consternation that he did not venture to make reprisals for some time. When he finally made a second attempt, his troops were annihilated by Zepho down to the very last man. Now Agnias, in despair, assembled all the inhabitants of Africa, as numerous as the sand on the sea-shore, and he united his great host with the army of his brother Lucus, and thus he made his third attempt upon Zepho and the people of the land of Kittim.

Alarmed, Zepho wrote to his brethren in Seir, and entreated their king Hadad to send him aid. But the people of Seir had concluded an alliance with Agnias as far back as under their first king Bela, and they refused Zepho's request, and the king of Kittim had to face the host of eight hundred thousand men mustered by Agnias with his little band of three thousand. Then the people of Kittim spake to their king Zepho, saying: "Pray for us unto the God of thy ancestors. Peradventure He may deliver us from the hand of Agnias and his army, for we have heard that He is a great God, and He delivers all that trust in Him." Zepho prayed unto the Lord, saying: "O Lord, God of Abraham and Isaac, my fathers, this day may it be made known that Thou art a true God, and all the gods of the nations are vain and useless. Remember now this day unto me Thy covenant with Abraham our father, which our ancestors related unto us, and do graciously with me this day for the sake of Abraham and Isaac, our fathers, and save me and the sons of Kittim from the hand of the king of Africa, who hath come against us for battle."



God gave ear unto Zepho's prayer, and in the first day's battle one-half of the African army fell. Agnias forthwith dispatched a decree to his country, ordering, on penalty of death and confiscation of property, that all the males of the land, including boys that had passed their tenth year, were to join the army and fight against the people of Kittim. In spite of these new accessions, three hundred thousand strong, Agnias was beaten again by Zepho in the second battle. The African general Sosipater having fallen slain, the troops broke into flight, at their head Agnias with Lucus the brother and Asdrubal the son of Agnias. After this dire defeat the Africans made no further attempt to disturb the peace of Kittim, and their incursions ceased forever.

In spite of the great victory that Zepho had won with the help of God, the king of Kittim walked in the idolatrous ways of the people whom he ruled, and in the ways of the sons of Esau, for, as saith the proverb of the ancients, "Out of the wicked cometh forth wickedness," and Zepho was not other than the rest of the sons of Esau.

The severe defeat inflicted upon Agnias drove Balaam from Africa to Kittim, and he was received with great honors by Zepho, who welcomed him on account of his deep wisdom.

Now Zepho thought the time had arrived for him to carry out his plan of vengeance against the posterity of Jacob, all the more as in the meantime Joseph had died, and also his brethren and the valiant men of Pharaoh had passed away. He was joined in the enterprise by Hadad, the king of Edom, and by the nations of the East and the Ishmaelites. The allied army was so vast that the space it covered as it stood in rank and file was equal to a three days' journey. It formed in battle array in the Valley of Pathros, and it was met by three hundred thousand Egyptians and one hundred and fifty Israelites from Goshen. But the Egyptians did not trust the Israelites, they feared their defection to the sons of

Esau and Ishmael. They therefore made an agreement with them that the Israelites were not to come to the help of the Egyptians until it appeared that the enemy were getting the upper hand.

Zepho, who had a high opinion of Balaam's ability, desired him to use his magic arts and find out what would be the outcome of the war, but Balaam's knowledge failed him, he could not satisfy the king's wish. The Egyptians got the worst of the first encounter between the two hostile armies, but the aspect of things changed as soon as they summoned the Israelites to aid them. The Israelites prayed to God to support them with His help, and the Lord heard their prayer. Then they threw themselves upon Zepho and his allies, and after they had cut down several thousand men, such dismay and confusion took hold of the enemy that they fled hastily, pursued by the Israelites as far as the boundary of the country. The Egyptians, instead of coming to the assistance of the Israelites, had taken to flight, leaving the small band of their allies to dispose of the huge host of their adversaries. Embittered by such treatment, the Israelites slew as many as two hundred Egyptians, under the pretext that they thought they belonged to the enemy.<sup>425</sup>

---

425. Yashar Shemot, 120a–125b, partly based on Josippon 2–3. Kittim is, of course, identical with Italy, as is explicitly stated in Josippon 1, and the point of this legend is the explanation of the old tradition about the identity of Rome with Edom (compare footnote 19 on p. 252) by making Zepho, the grandson of Esau-Edom, the first king of Italy. Sikli in the manuscript of his Talmud Torah (comp. Poznanski in *Ha-Zofeh*, III, 21) quotes, from Yelammedenu, the following legend: Zepho established the kingdom of Rome (or perhaps, founded the city of Rome), but was killed by Tiranus the king of Elisha in the war which was waged between these two countries. When Esau heard of the tragic end of his grandson, he left Palestine, and betook himself to his son Eliphaz, who had settled down with his son Zepho at Rome, that he might comfort him in his bereavement. Tiranus (it is the Greek τῦραννος "ruler") is, of course, identical with the king of Benevento, bearing the



same name, mentioned in Josippon and Yashar. As to the centaur killed by Zepho, see text on p. 324, where a similar incident is narrated of another descendant of Esau. On Zepho as king of Rome see Abarbanel, *Mashmia' Yeshu'ah*, 7. 18.

## THE NATIONS AT WAR

**H**adad, the king of Edom, who had failed to gain fame and honor in the Egyptian campaign, was favored by fortune in another war, a war against Moab. The Moabites shrank from meeting Hadad alone, and they made an alliance with the Midianites. In the thick of the fight the Moabites fled from the field of battle, leaving the Midianites to their fate, and these deserted allies of theirs were cut down to a man by Hadad and his Edomites. The Moabites saved their skins, and suffered only the inconvenience of having to pay tribute. To avenge the faithlessness practiced against them, the Midianites, supported by their kinsmen, the sons of Keturah, gathered a mighty army, and attacked the Moabites the following year. But Hadad came to their assistance, and again he inflicted a severe defeat upon the Midianites, who had to give up their plan of revenge against Moab. This is the beginning of the inveterate enmity between the Moabites and the Midianites. If a single Moabite is caught in the land of Midian, he is killed without mercy, and a Midianite in Moab fares no better. He was king for 35 years.

After the death of Hadad, the Edomites installed Samlah of Masrekah as their king, and he reigned eighteen years. It was his desire to take up the cause of Agnias, the old ally of the Edomites, and chastise Zepho for having gone to war with him, but his people, the Edomites, would not permit him to undertake aught that was inimical to their kinsman, and Samlah had to abandon the plan. In the fourteenth year of Samlah's reign, Zepho died, having been king of Kittim for fifty

years. His successor was Janus, one of the people of Kittim, who enjoyed an equally long reign.

Balaam had made his escape to Egypt after the death of Zepho, and he was received there with great demonstrations of honor by the king and all the nobles, and Pharaoh appointed him to be royal counsellor, for he had heard much about his exceeding great wisdom.

In the Edomite kingdom, Samlah was succeeded by Saul of Pethor, a youth of surpassing beauty, whose reign lasted forty years. His successor upon the throne was Baal Hamon, king for thirty-eight years, during which period the Moabites rose up against the Edomites, to whom they had been paying tribute since the time of Hadad, and they succeeded in throwing off the yoke of the stranger.

The times were troubled everywhere. Agnias, the king of Africa, died, and also the death of Janus occurred, the king of Kittim. The successors to these two rulers, Asdrubal, the son of Agnias, and Latinus, the king of Kittim, then entered upon a long drawn out war of many years. At first the fortune of war favored Latinus. He sailed to Africa in ships, and inflicted one defeat after another upon Asdrubal, and finally this king of Africa lost his life upon the battlefield. After destroying the canal from Kittim to Africa built many years before by Agnias, Latinus returned to his own country, taking with him as his wife Ushpiziwnah, the daughter of Asdrubal, who was so wondrously beautiful that her countrymen wore her likeness upon their garments.

Latinus did not enjoy the fruits of his victory long. Anibal, the younger brother of Asdrubal and his successor in the royal power, went to Kittim in ships and carried on a series of wars lasting eighteen years, in the course of which he killed off eighty thousand of the people of Kittim, not sparing the princes and the nobles. At the end of this protracted period he went back to Africa, and reigned over his people in quiet and peace.



The Edomites, during the forty-eight years of the reign of Hadar, the successor of Baal Hamon, fared no better than the people of Kittim. Hadar's first undertaking was to reduce the Moabites again under the sovereignty of Edom, but he had to desist, because he could not offer successful resistance to a newly chosen king of theirs, one of their own people, who enlisted the aid of their kinsmen the Ammonites. The allies commanded a great host, and Hadar was overwhelmed. These wars were followed by others between Hadar of Edom and Abimenes of Kittim. The latter was the attacking party, and he invaded Seir with a mighty army. The sons of Seir were defeated abjectly, their king Hadar was taken captive, and then executed by Abimenes, and Seir was made a province subject to Kittim and ruled by a governor.

Thus ended the independence of the sons of Esau. Henceforth they had to pay tribute to Kittim, over which Abimenes ruled until his death, in the thirty-eighth year of his reign.<sup>426</sup>

---

426. Yashar Shemot, 121a–121b, 127a, 128a, 131a–131b, 136b, 137a, 141a, and Joshua, 157a–157b. On the war between the Moabites and the Midianites see text on p. 759. It is noteworthy that in the description of the wars between Carthage and Rome the defeat of Hannibal and his tragic end is ignored. The chief enemy of Rome is accorded in Jewish legend a better fate than was granted him in history.

## JOSEPH'S MAGNANIMITY

As Joseph was returning from the burial of his father in the Cave of Machpelah, he passed the pit into which his brethren had once cast him, and he looked into it, and said, "Blessed be God who permitted a miracle to come to pass for me here!" The brethren inferred from these words of gratitude, which Joseph but uttered

in compliance with the injunctions of the law, that he cherished the recollection of the evil they had done him, and they feared, that now their father was dead, their brother would requite them in accordance with their deeds. They observed, moreover, that since their father was no more, Joseph had given up the habit of entertaining them at his table, and they interpreted this as a sign of his hatred of them. In reality, it was due to Joseph's respect and esteem for his brethren. "So long as my father was alive," Joseph said to himself, "he bade me sit at the head of the table, though Judah is king, and Reuben is the first-born. It was my father's wish, and I complied with it. But now it is not seemly that I should have the first seat in their presence, and yet, being ruler of Egypt, I cannot yield my place to any other." He thought it best therefore not to have the company of his brethren at his meals.

But they, not fathoming his motives, sent Billah to him with the dying message of their father, that he was to forgive the transgression and the sin of his brethren. For the sake of the ways of peace they had invented the message; Jacob had said nothing like it. Joseph, on his part, realized that his brethren spoke thus only because they feared he might do harm unto them, and he wept that they should put so little trust in his affection. When they appeared, and fell down before his face, and said, "Thou didst desire to make one of us a slave unto thyself. Behold, we all are ready to be thy servants," he spoke to them gently, and tried to convince them that he harbored no evil design against them. He said: "Be not afraid, I will do you no harm, for I fear God, and if ye think I failed to have you sit at my table because of enmity toward you, God knows the intentions of my heart, He knows that I acted thus out of consideration for the respect I owe to you."<sup>427</sup>

Furthermore he said: "Ye are like unto the dust of the earth, the sand on the sea-shore, and



the stars in the heavens. Can I do aught to put these out of the world? Ten stars could effect nothing against one star, how much less can one star effect anything against ten? Do you believe that I have the power of acting contrary to the laws of nature? Twelve hours hath the day, twelve hours the night, twelve months the year, twelve constellations are in the heavens, and also there are twelve tribes! You are the trunk and I am the head—of what use the head without the trunk? It is to my own good that I should treat you with fraternal affection. Before your advent, I was looked upon as a slave in this country—you proved me a man of noble birth. Now, if I should kill you, my claims upon an aristocratic lineage would be shown to be a lie. The Egyptians would say, He was not their brother, they were strangers to him, he but called them his brethren to serve his purpose, and now he hath found a pretext to put them out of the way. Or they would hold me to be a man of no probity. Who plays false with his own kith and kin, how can he keep faith with others? And, in sooth, how can I venture to lay hand upon those whom God and my father both have blessed?”<sup>428</sup>

As Joseph’s dealings were kind and gentle with his brethren, so he was the helper and counsellor of the Egyptians, and when Pharaoh departed this life, Joseph being then a man of seventy-one years of age, the king’s last wish was that he might be a father unto his son and successor Magron, and administer the affairs of state for him. Some of the Egyptians desired to make Joseph king after the death of Pharaoh, but this plan met with opposition on the part of others. They objected to an alien on the throne, and so the royal title was left to Magron, called Pharaoh, according to the established custom the name given to all the Egyptian kings. But Joseph was made the actual ruler of the land, and though he was only viceroy in Egypt, he reigned as king over the lands outside of Egypt

as far as the Euphrates, parts of which Joseph had acquired by conquest. The inhabitants of these countries brought their yearly tribute to him and other presents besides, and thus did Joseph rule for forty years, beloved of all, and respected by the Egyptians and the other nations, and during all that time his brethren dwelt in Goshen, happy and blithe in the service of God. And in his own family circle Joseph was happy also; he lived to act as godfather at the circumcision of the sons of his grandson Machir.

His end was premature as compared with that of his brethren; at his death he was younger than any of them at their death. It is true, “Dominion buries him that exercises it.”<sup>429</sup> He died ten years before his allotted time, because, without taking umbrage, he had permitted his brethren to call his father his “servant” in his presence.<sup>430</sup>

---

427. BR 100. 8; Tan. Wa-Yehi 17, and Zaw 9; Tan. B. II, 2, and III, 18; Yerushalmi Targumim, Lekah, and Rashi on Gen. 50. 15–20.

428. BR 100. 9; PK 16, 126b; Megillah 17b. Compare with pp. 342 and 389.

429. Yashar Wa-Yehi, 116b–117a; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 50. 23, where גזרינון is not to be emended to רבינון, but explained in accordance with Tehillim 35, 248; hence Targum takes ברכי (Gen., *loc. cit.*) to refer to the holding of the child on the knees during the performance of circumcision. On the view that Pharaoh is the title borne by all the Egyptian kings, see text on p. 193, as well as Lekah, RSBM, Ibn Ezra, *Pa'aneah*, Shu'aib (giving Midrash as his source) on Gen. 41. 10; Zohar II, 19b; *Imre No'am*, Balak (end). Several of these authorities refer to the use of Abimelech among the Philistines, Hiram among the Phenicians, Melchizedek among the Canaanites, and Agag among the Amalekites, as parallel to this employment of Pharaoh. As to the question whether Joseph bore the title king or not, see note 234, as well as the text on p. 427. According to PRE 11 (this is the source of Yalkut Reubeni, Exod. 1. 8), Joseph governed Egypt forty years as viceroy and the same number of years as king. Comp. also note 195. As to Joseph's premature death and the reason thereof, see Berakot 55a; PK 28, 184a, and parallel passages cited by Buber; 2 ARN 22, 46. In the last-named passage Solomon and Joshua are quoted as further examples of the truth that dominion buries him that exercises it. In Pesahim 87b attention is



drawn to the fact that the activity of some of the prophets extended over the lifetime of four kings; “the rulers” died at a comparatively youthful age, while the prophets lived on to a very old age. It is to be noticed that in Berakot, *loc. cit.*, Joseph’s premature death is attributed to the haughtiness displayed by him as a ruler, and the same view is maintained in BaR 13. 3, where mention is made of an additional punishment of Joseph: the standard of his descendants did not bear his name but that of his son Ephraim. In opposition to this view, 2 ARN, *loc. cit.*, does not blame Joseph, but sees in his premature death the natural consequence of the cares and worries which he had in common with many other kings and rulers.

430. PRE 39 (comp. Luria, *ad loc.*, and *Hadar*, Gen. 44. 31); BR 100. 3. Comp. notes 315 and 412. Hasidim 328 reads: Elisha declined the gifts offered to him by Naaman, and was rewarded by remaining the leader of Israel for many years; Joseph accepted Pharaoh’s presents, and for this he died before his time. As a punishment for not having protested against the designation of Jacob as “thy servant” (comp. Gen. 43. 28), Scripture speaks of the corpse of Joseph (Gen. 50. 25) while he was yet alive; comp. Sotah 13a.

## ASENATH

God gives every man the wife he deserves,<sup>431</sup> and so Asenath was worthy of being the helpmeet of Joseph the pious. Her father was Potiphar, one of Pharaoh’s magnates, ranking among the most distinguished of them by reason of wisdom, wealth, and station. His daughter was slender like unto Sarah, beautiful like Rebekah, and radiant in appearance like Rachel. Noblemen and princes sued for her hand when she was eighteen years of age. Even Pharaoh’s appointed successor, his first-born son, demanded her in marriage, but his father refused to comply with his wish, because he did not consider her a proper wife for one destined to sit upon the throne. The daughter of the Moabite king, he insisted, was a more suitable match for him. But Asenath rejected every proposal of marriage, and avoided all intercourse with men. With seven maidens born the same day as herself, she lived in retirement in a magnificent palace adjoining that of her parents.

It happened in the first of the seven years of plenty that Joseph planned to visit the place in which Potiphar resided, and he sent word to him that he would put up with him, at his house. Potiphar was enchanted with the honor in prospect for him, and also with the opportunity it would afford him of bringing about a marriage between Asenath and Joseph. But when he disclosed his plan to his daughter, she rejected it with indignation. “Why shouldst thou desire to see me united with a vagabond, a slave,” she cried out, “one that does not even belong to our nation, but is the son of a Canaanitish herdsman, a fellow that attempted to violate the honor of his mistress, and in punishment for this misdemeanor was thrown into prison, to be liberated thence by Pharaoh for interpreting his dream? Nay, father, never will I become his wife. I am willing to marry the son of Pharaoh, the future ruler and king of Egypt.”

Potiphar promised his daughter not to speak of the plan again. At that moment Joseph’s arrival was announced, and Asenath left the presence of her parents and withdrew to her own apartments. Standing by the window, she saw Joseph pass, and she was so transported with his divine beauty and his indescribably noble carriage that she burst into tears, and said: “Poor, foolish me, what shall I do? I permitted myself to be misled by friends, who told me that Joseph was the son of a Canaanitish shepherd. Now I behold the splendor that emanates from him like unto the splendor of the sun, illuminating our house with his rays. In my audacity and folly I had looked down upon him, and had spoken absurd nonsense against him. I knew not that he was a son of God, as he must be, for among men such beauty as his does not exist. I pray Thee, O God of Joseph, grant me pardon! It was my ignorance that made me speak like a fool. If my father will give me in marriage to Joseph, I will be his forever.”



Meantime Joseph had taken his seat at Potiphar's table, and he observed a maiden looking at him from one of the palace windows. He commanded that she be ordered away, for he never permitted women to gaze at him or come near to him. His supernatural beauty always fascinated the noble Egyptian ladies, and they were untiring in the efforts they made to approach him. But their attempts were vain. He cherished the words of his father Jacob, who had admonished his son to keep aloof from the women of the Gentiles.

Potiphar explained to Joseph that the maiden at the window was his virgin daughter, who never permitted men to abide near her; he was the first man she had ever looked upon. The father continued and made the request of Joseph, to allow his daughter to pay him her respects. Joseph granted the favor he desired, and Asenath appeared and greeted him with the words, "Peace be with thee, thou blessed of God Most High," whereunto Joseph returned the salutation, "Be thou blessed of the Lord, from whom flow all blessings."

Asenath desired also to kiss Joseph, but he warded off the intimate greeting with the words: "It is not meet that a God-fearing man, who blesses the living God, and eats the blessed bread of life, who drinks of the blessed cup of immortality and incorruptibility, and anoints himself with the fragrant oil of holiness, should kiss a woman of a strange people, who blesses dead and unprofitable idols, and eats the putrid bread of idolatry, which chokes the soul of man, who drinks the libations of deceit, and anoints herself with the oil of destruction."

These words uttered by Joseph touched Asenath unto tears. Out of compassion with her, he bestowed his blessing upon her, calling upon God to pour out His spirit over her and make her to become a member of His people and His inheritance, and grant her a portion in the life eternal.

---

431. Sotah 2a. A Jewish sage was asked: "What is God occupied with since the creation of the world?" He answered: "He makes matches." PR 1, 11b–12a, and parallel passages. Compare footnote 297 on p. 240.

## THE MARRIAGE OF JOSEPH

THE appearance and the speech of Joseph made so deep an impression upon Asenath that no sooner had she reached her apartment than she divested herself of her robes of state and took off her jewels, and put on sackcloth instead, strewed ashes upon her head, and supplicated God amid tears to grant her pardon for her sins. In this manner she spent seven days and seven nights in her chamber. Not even her seven attendants were permitted to enter her presence during the time of her penance. The morning of the eighth day an angel appeared unto her, and bade her put away her sackcloth and ashes and array herself in state, for this day she had been born anew, he said, to eat the blessed bread of life, to drink of the cup of life immortal, and anoint herself with the oil of life eternal. Asenath was about to set food and drink before her guest, when she perceived a honeycomb of wondrous form and fragrance. The angel explained to her that it had been produced by the bees of Paradise, to serve as food for the angels and the elect of God. He took a small portion of it for himself, and the rest he put into Asenath's mouth, saying: "From this day forth thy body shall bloom like the eternal flowers in Paradise, thy bones shall wax fat like the cedars thereof, strength inexhaustible shall be thine, thy youth shall never fade, and thy beauty never perish, and thou shalt be like unto a metropolis surrounded by a wall." At the request of Asenath, the angel blessed also her seven attendants, with the words,



“May the Lord bless you and make you to be seven pillars in the City of Refuge.”

Thereupon the angel left her, and she saw him ascend heavenward in a chariot of fire drawn by four steeds of fire. Now she knew that she had not been entertaining a human being, but an angel.

The celestial messenger had scarcely departed, when a visit from Joseph was announced, and she hastened to array and adorn herself for his reception. When she washed her face, she caught sight of it in the water, and saw it to be of such beauty as never before, so great had been the transformation wrought by the angel. When Joseph came, he did not recognize her. He asked her who she was, whereto she replied, “I am thy maid-servant Asenath! I have cast away my idols, and this day a visitant came to me from heaven. He gave me to eat of the bread of life and to drink of the blessed cup, and he spake these words unto me, ‘I give thee unto Joseph as his affianced wife, that he may be thy affianced husband forever.’ And furthermore he said, ‘Thy name shall not any more be called Asenath, but thy name shall be City of Refuge, whither the nations shall flee for safety.’ And he added, ‘I go to Joseph, to tell him all these things that have reference to thee.’ Now, my lord, thou knowest whether the man was with thee and spoke to thee in my behalf.”

Joseph confirmed all she had said, and they embraced and kissed each other in token of their betrothal, which they celebrated by a banquet with Potiphar and his wife. The wedding took place later in the presence of Pharaoh, who set a golden crown upon the head of the bridegroom and the bride, gave them his blessing, and made a seven days’ feast in their honor, to which he invited the magnates and princes of Egypt and of other countries. And during the seven days of the wedding festivities the people were prohibited, under penalty of death, from

doing any manner of work; they all were to join in the celebration of Joseph’s marriage.

## KIND AND UNKIND BRETHREN

On the twenty-first day of the second month in the second of the seven years of famine, Jacob came down to Egypt, and his daughter-in-law Asenath visited him. She marvelled not a little at his beauty and strength. His shoulders and his arms were like an angel’s, and his loins like a giant’s. Jacob gave her his blessing, and with her husband she returned home, accompanied by the sons of Leah, while the sons of the handmaids, remembering the evil they had once done unto Joseph, kept aloof. Levi in particular had conceived a fondness for Asenath. He was especially close to the Living God, for he was a prophet and a sage, his eyes were open, and he knew how to read the celestial books written by the finger of God. He revealed to Asenath that he had seen her future resting-place in heaven, and it was built upon a rock and encompassed by a diamond wall.

On their journey they met the son of Pharaoh, his successor to the throne, and he was so transported with Asenath’s beauty, that he made the plan of murdering Joseph in order to secure possession of his wife. He summoned Simon and Levi, and by blandishments and promises sought to induce them to put Joseph out of the way. Simon was so enraged that he would have felled him at once, had not his brother Levi, who was endowed with the gift of prophecy, divined his purpose, and frustrated it by stepping upon his foot, while whispering: “Why art thou so angry, and so wroth with the man? We that fear God may not repay evil with evil.” Turning to the son of Pharaoh, he told him that nothing would induce them to execute the wickedness



he had proposed; rather he advised him not to undertake aught against Joseph, else he would kill him with the sword that had served him in his slaughter of the inhabitants of Shechem. The culprit was seized with frantic alarm, and fell down before Simon and Levi to entreat their mercy. Levi raised him up, saying, "Fear not, but abandon thy wicked plan, and harbor no evil design against Joseph."

Nevertheless the son of Pharaoh did not give up his criminal purpose. He approached the sons of Bilhah and Zilpah, and sought to accomplish through them what had failed with Simon and Levi. He called them into his presence, and told them of a conversation between Joseph and Pharaoh that he had overheard. The former had said that he waited but to learn of the death of his father Jacob in order to do away with the sons of the handmaids, because they had been the ones to sell him into slavery. Their wrath excited against Joseph by these words, the sons of Bilhah and Zilpah assented to the proposition of the son of Pharaoh. It was arranged that the latter should kill Pharaoh, the friend of Joseph, while they would fall upon their brother, and put him out of the way. They were furnished with six hundred able warriors and fifty spearmen for the purpose. The first part of the plan, the murder of Pharaoh, failed. The palace guard would not allow even the successor to the throne to enter his father's bedchamber, and he had to depart without having effected his object.

Now Dan and Gad gave him the advice to take up his station with fifty archers in a secret place that Asenath had to pass on her homeward journey. Thence he could make a successful attack upon her suite, and gain possession of her. Naphtali and Asher did not care to have anything to do with this hostile enterprise against Joseph, but Dan and Gad forced them into it, insisting that all the sons of the handmaids must stand together as men and repel the danger that threatened them.

## TREACHERY PUNISHED

From their ambush the forces of the son of Pharaoh fell upon Asenath and her six hundred attendants. They succeeded in hewing down the vanguard, and Asenath had to take to flight. To her alarm she encountered the son of Pharaoh with fifty mounted men. Benjamin, seated in the same chariot with her, came to her rescue, for in spite of his youth he was exceedingly courageous. He descended from the chariot, gathered pebbles, and, throwing them at the son of Pharaoh, struck him on his forehead and inflicted a severe wound. The charioteer aided him by keeping him supplied with pebbles, which he cast at the fifty riders with such expert skill that he slew forty-eight of them with as many missiles. Meantime the sons of Leah arrived on the spot and came to Asenath's aid, for Levi, with his prophetic spirit, had seen what was happening, and summoning his five brothers he had hastened thither. These six attacked the troops in ambush and cut them down. But the danger to Asenath was by no means removed. At this moment the sons of the handmaids threw themselves upon her and Benjamin with drawn swords. It was their intention to kill them both, and flee to cover in the depths of the woods. But as soon as Asenath supplicated God for aid, the swords dropped from the hands of her assailants, and they saw that the Lord was on the side of Asenath. They fell at her feet and entreated her grace. She allayed their anxiety with the words: "Be courageous and have no fear of your brethren, the sons of Leah. They are God-fearing men. Do but keep yourselves in hiding until their wrath is appeased."

When the sons of Leah appeared, Asenath fell down before them, and amid tears she adjured them to spare the sons of the handmaids and not repay with evil the evil they had meditated. Simon would not hear of making concessions. He insisted that the measure of their sins



was full, and they must pay for them with their lives, for they had been the ones that had sold Joseph into slavery, and brought down untold misfortune upon Jacob and his sons. But Asenath did not leave off, and her urgent petitions won the day. She succeeded in calming the anger of Simon, and in Levi she had a secret ally, for this prophet knew the hiding-place of the sons of the handmaids, and he did not betray it to Simon, lest his wrath be increased at the sight of them. It was also Levi that restrained Benjamin from giving the death blow to the heavily wounded son of Pharaoh. So far from permitting harm to be done to him, he washed his wounds, put him into a chariot, and took him to Pharaoh, who thanked Levi from his heart for his services of lovingkindness. Levi's efforts were vain, three days later the son of Pharaoh died of the wounds inflicted by Benjamin, and from grief over the loss of his first-born Pharaoh followed him soon after, departing this life at the age of one hundred and seventy-seven years. His crown he left to Joseph, who ruled over Egypt for forty-eight years thereafter. He in turn handed the crown on to the grandchild of Pharaoh, an infant in arms at the time of his grandfather's death, toward whom Joseph had acted in a father's stead all his life.<sup>432</sup>

---

432. The Prayer of Asenath. Almost all scholars agree upon the Jewish origin of this pseudepigraphic work (comp. Schürer, *Geschichte*, fourth edition, III, 399–400) and in view of the etymology it gives of the name Asenath, “a city of refuge” (comp. Syriac text, 32, 1. 11), one is inclined to assume a Semitic (Hebrew or Aramaic) original of this Prayer, as this etymology clearly alludes to the similarity of אסנת and חסנת. In Hebrew חסן means “was strong,” and in Aramaic חוסנה means “strength,” as well as “a fortified place,” “citadel.” There are, however, not many parallels to this story in rabbinic literature. The legend about the bees bringing honey from paradise to Asenath is closely related to the widespread view that the manna was heavenly food prepared by the angels in the third heaven, where, according to an old conception, paradise is situated; comp. Index, s. v. “Manna” and “Paradise.” The honey in the Asenath legend

stands for manna, which, according to Exod. 16. 31, tasted “like wafers made with honey.” The enmity of the sons of the handmaids, particularly of Dan, toward Joseph is also alluded to in the rabbinic Haggadah and in the Testaments of the Twelve Patriarchs; compare with pp. 329, 443, *seq.*, and 447, *seq.* The glorification of Levi in the Asenath legend likewise agrees with the view of the Rabbis, Jub., and the 12 Testaments concerning Jacob's third son; comp. Index, s. v. Jacob's gigantic strength is often referred to in rabbinic literature; comp., e. g., PR 3, 12b; Tan. Wa-Yehi 6; BR 84. 3. Compare also footnotes 151–152 on pp. 278–279. It is noteworthy that in the Asenath legend the strength of Jacob's arms (a midrashic Haggadah of Gen. 49. 24, where זרועי is taken to refer to the following יעקב) is dwelled upon in agreement with Tan., *loc. cit.*, which states that Jacob's arms were like the pillars supporting the bath-house of Tiberias. As to Joseph being “king of Egypt,” see notes 234 and 429. On the rabbinic legends concerning Dinah, comp. note 97.

## THE DEATH AND BURIAL OF JOSEPH

On his death-bed Joseph took an oath of his brethren, and he bade them on their death-bed likewise take an oath of their sons, to carry his bones to Palestine, when God should visit them and bring them up out of the land of Egypt. He said: “I that am a ruler could take my father's body up to the Holy Land while it was still intact. Of you I do but make the request that ye carry my bones from hence, and you may inter them in any spot in Palestine, for I know that the burial-place of the fathers was appointed to be the tomb only of the three Patriarchs and their three wives.”

Joseph took the oath, to carry his remains along with them when they left Egypt, from his brethren, and not from his sons, to bury him at once in Palestine, for he feared the Egyptians would not give the latter permission to transport his bones even if they recalled what Joseph had been allowed to do with his father's body. They would object that Joseph had been the viceroy, and a wish preferred by one of so high an



estate could not be denied.<sup>433</sup> Furthermore, he adjured his brethren not to leave Egypt until a redeemer should appear and announce his message with the words, "Pakod—I have surely visited you"—a tradition which Joseph had received from his father, who had it from Isaac, and Isaac in turn had heard it from Abraham.<sup>434</sup> And he told them that God would redeem Israel through Moses as through the Messiah, in this world as in the world to come, and the Egyptian redemption would begin in Tishri, when Israel would be freed from slave labor, and would be completed in the following Nisan, when they would leave Egypt.<sup>435</sup>

Joseph also admonished his brethren to walk in the ways of the Lord, so that they might become worthy of His grace and help. Especially he impressed upon his brethren and his sons the virtue of chastity and a steadfast moral life. He told them all that had happened to him, the hatred of his brethren, the persecutions of the wife of Potiphar, the slander, envy, and malice of the Egyptians, to show how that those who fear the Lord are not forsaken by Him in darkness, or bondage, or tribulation, or distress. "I was sold into slavery," he said, "but the Lord delivered me; I was thrown into prison, but His strong hand helped me. I was tortured by hunger, but the Lord Himself gave me sustenance. I was alone, and God comforted me. And as for you, if ye will walk in the ways of chastity and purity in patience and humility of heart, the Lord will dwell among you, for He loveth a chaste life, and if you, my children, will observe the commandments of the Lord, He will raise you up here, in this world, and bless you there, in the world to come. If men seek to do evil unto you, pray for them, and you will be delivered from all evil by the Lord. On account of my forbearing patience I received the daughter of my master to wife, and her dowry was a hundred talents of gold, and God gave me also beauty like the beauty of

a flower, more than all the children of Jacob, and He preserved me unto mine old age in vigor and beauty, for in all things did I resemble Jacob."

Joseph continued and told them the visions he had had, in which the future of Israel was revealed to him, and then he closed with the words: "I know that the Egyptians will oppress you after my death, but God will execute vengeance for your sakes, and He will lead you to the land of promise of your fathers. But ye shall surely carry my bones with you from hence, for if my remains are taken to Canaan, the Lord will be with you in the light, and Beliar will be with the Egyptians in the darkness. Also take with you the bones of your mother Zilpah, and bury them near the sepulchre of Bilhah and Rachel."

These words ended, he stretched out his feet, and slept his last eternal sleep, and the whole of Israel mourned him, and the whole of Egypt was in great grief, for he had been a compassionate friend to the Egyptians, too, and he had done good unto them, and given them wise counsel and assistance in all their undertakings.<sup>436</sup>

Joseph's wish, that his bones should rest in the Holy Land, was fulfilled when the Israelites went forth from Egypt, and no less a personage than Moses applied himself to its execution. Such was Joseph's reward for the devotion he had displayed in the interment of his father's body, for he had done all things needful himself, leaving naught to others. Therefore so great a man as Moses busied himself with the realization of Joseph's wish.<sup>437</sup>

For three days and three nights preceding the exodus Moses hunted up and down through the land of Egypt for Joseph's coffin, because he knew that Israel could not leave Egypt without heeding the oath given to Joseph. But his trouble was in vain; the coffin was nowhere to be found. Serah, the daughter of Asher, met Moses, tired and exhausted, and in answer to her question about the cause of his weariness, he told her of his fruitless search. Serah took him to the Nile river,



and told him that the leaden coffin made for Joseph by the Egyptians had been sunk there after having been sealed up on all sides. The Egyptians had done this at the instigation and with the help of the magicians, who, knowing that Israel could not leave the country without the coffin, had used their arts to put it in a place whence it could not be removed.<sup>438</sup>

Moses now took Joseph's cup, and he cut four flat pieces from it, and engraved a lion on one of them, an eagle on the second, a bull on the third, and a human figure on the fourth. He threw the first, with the lion, into the river, saying at the same time, "Joseph, Joseph, the hour for the redemption of Israel hath arrived, the Shekinah lingers here only for thy sake, the clouds of glory await thy coming. If thou wilt show thyself, well and good; if not, then we are clear from our oath." But the coffin did not appear.

Then Moses threw the second plate into the water, that with the figure of the eagle, repeating the same words, but again the coffin did not rise from the bed of the Nile, and there it remained, too, when he threw in the third plate bearing the figure of the bull, and called upon Joseph a third time to come forth. But the fourth plate with the human figure and the fourth invocation to Joseph brought the coffin to the surface of the water. Moses seized it, and in joy he bore it off.<sup>439</sup> While Israel had been busy gathering gold and silver from the Egyptians, Moses had been thinking of nothing but Joseph's coffin, and his happiness was great that he had been permitted to fulfil the wish of Joseph.<sup>440</sup>

During the forty years of wandering through the desert, the coffin was in the midst of Israel, as a reward for Joseph's promise to his brethren, "I will nourish you and take care of you." God had said, "As thou livest, for forty years they will take care of thy bones."<sup>441</sup>

All this time in the desert Israel carried two shrines with them, the one the coffin containing

the bones of the dead man Joseph, the other the Ark containing the covenant of the Living God. The wayfarers who saw the two receptacles wondered, and they would ask, "How doth the ark of the dead come next to the ark of the Ever-living?" The answer was, "The dead man enshrined in the one fulfilled the commandments enshrined in the other. In the latter it is written, I am the Lord thy God, and he said, Am I in the place of God? Here it is written, Thou shalt have no other gods before My face, and he said, I fear God. Here it is written, Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain, and therefore he did not swear by God, but said, By the life of Pharaoh. Here it is written, Remember the Sabbath day, and he said to the overseer of his palace on Friday, Slay and make ready, meaning for the Sabbath. Here it is written, Honor thy father and thy mother, and he said, when his father desired to send him to his brethren, Here am I, although he knew it was perilous for him to go. Here it is written, Thou shalt not kill, and he refrained from murdering Potiphar when Potiphar's wife urged him to do it. Here it is written, Thou shalt not commit adultery, and he scorned the adulterous proposals of Potiphar's wife. Here it is written, Thou shalt not steal, and he stole nothing from Pharaoh, but gathered up all the money and brought it unto Pharaoh's house. Here it is written, Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor, and he told his father nothing of what his brethren had done to him, though what he might have told was the truth. Here it is written, Thou shalt not covet, and he did not covet Potiphar's wife."<sup>442</sup>

On their arrival in the Holy Land, the Israelites buried the bones of Joseph in Shechem, for God spake to the tribes, saying, "From Shechem did ye steal him, and unto Shechem shall ye return him."<sup>443</sup>

God, who is so solicitous about the dead bodies of the pious, is even more solicitous about their



souls, which stand before Him like angels, and do their service ministering unto Him.<sup>444</sup>

433. Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא), 24b; Mekilta RS, 39–40; Tan. Beshallah 2; PK 10, 94b–95a; ShR 20 (end); MHG I, 770 (following Mekilta RS?), where, by including the first human pair, “four fathers and four mothers” are spoken of. Compare footnote 7 on p. 436.

434. MHG I, 769–770; PRE 48; Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 50. 25, which remarks: Two redeemers will appear, Moses and Aaron, corresponding to the words פקד יפקד with which the redemption was promised; compare with text on pp. 405 and 516.

435. MHG I, 770; comp. the sources cited in the preceding note. PR 12, 49b, and Tan. Ki-Teze 10 remark: Joseph showed by his last words that he believed in the resurrection of the dead. An unknown Midrash quoted by Shu’aib, Gen. (end), explains פקד יפקד (Gen. 50. 25) to mean: He will remember you in the present world, and He will remember you in the future world.

436. 12 Testaments, Joseph 1, 10–11, 17–18, and 20. According to the view of the Rabbis, Bilhah survived Jacob (compare with p. 421), whereas Jub. 34. 16 states that she, as well as Dinah, died in Palestine many years before Jacob, and was buried over “against the tomb of Rachel”; the Testaments followed Jub.; comp. also note 65.

437. Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא), 24b; Tosefta Sotah 4. 7; Tan. Beshallah 2. The statement of Exod. 13. 19, according to this Haggadah, is not to be understood to mean that nobody in Israel, except Moses, thought of taking care of Joseph’s remains, but, on the contrary, all the Israelites, mindful of their duty toward Joseph, thought to honor him best by allowing their great leader Moses to take charge of the body of their dead leader. Similarly, when Israel subsequently entered the Holy Land, the descendants of Joseph did not think that the burial of their ancestor concerned only them, but saw to it that the entire nation participated in it; Tosefta, *loc. cit.*; Mekilta RS, 40; Sotah 13b. Compare with pp. 545–546.

438. Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא), 24a–24b; Mekilta RS, 24, where it is stated that the Egyptians had sunk the coffin in the Nile, so that its waters should be abundant; Tan. Beshallah 2; ShR 20. 19; PK 10, 85b–86a; DR 11. 7; Sotah, Tosefta 4. 7, and Babli 13a; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 13. 19; Petirat Mosheh 115; Zohar II, 46a, where it is stated that Joseph’s brethren sank their brother’s coffin in the Nile in order to prevent the Egyptians from worshipping his body; comp. note 345; Perek R. Yoshiyyahu 113; Sabba, Wa-Yehi (end), where פרת is either a misprint or *lapsus calami* instead of ניל; MHG I, 771–772. As to the

sinking of the coffins of the kings by the Babylonians, see Strabo, 16. 11. Arrian, *Alexander’s Campaigns*, 7. 2; Friedrich Delitzsch, *Das Land ohne Heimkehr*, 12. Most of the above Midrashim contain the dissenting view that Joseph “was buried in the royal palace.” In Mekilta, *loc. cit.*, read, with Oxford MS., קפיטילין instead of קברניטין, which is undoubtedly a corruption; see Krauss, *Lehnwörter*, s. v. Compare with p. 437, as well as text on pp. 545 and 621.

439. MHG I, 772. Comp. the discussion of this legend in footnote 266 on p. 621; see further on p. 545.

440. Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא), 24a; Mekilta RS 39; Sotah 13a; DR 11. 7; ShR 20. 7; Petirat Mosheh 112. Comp. the sources cited in note 438.

441. ShR 20. 19.

442. Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא), 24b; Mekilta RS, 39, containing essential variants (as to the expression קים זה, see Baba Kamma 17a); Tan. B. IV, 45; Tan. Naso 30; PR 22, 112a–112b; Yerushalmi Berakot 1, 4c; ER 26, 131. Moses took Joseph’s bones and wrapt them up in a sheep’s skin, upon which “the Name of God” was written; the dead bones and the skin then came to life again, and assuming the form of a sheep, it followed the camp of Israel during their wanderings through the wilderness; *Hadar*, Exod. 13. 19. As to Joseph’s virtues enumerated in the text, comp. notes 23, 113, 210, 238, 270, as well as pp. 593–594 and 668–669. Philo, *De Josepho*, 43, reads: Joseph stored up all the silver and gold he had received for the grain sold by him in the king’s treasury, without appropriating a drachma for himself; compare with p. 397.

443. Sotah 13b; BR 85. 3, which contains the dissenting view that Joseph himself expressed the wish to be buried in Hebron; DR 8. 4; ShR 20. 19; Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא), 24b; Tan. Ekeb 6. All the Israelites took part in the last honors paid to Joseph, to atone for the sins of their ancestors, who had sold him into slavery; Hasidim 222. Comp. note 437.

444. MHG I, 772. The difference in the pious when they are alive and dead is that in the latter state they lack the faculty of speech, but they nevertheless do not cease to praise their Creator; PR 2, 5b, and 12, 47a; Tehillim 30, 234; DR 11. 7. These passages as well as many others (comp., e. g., Ketubot 104a) speak of the three divisions of merciful angels who meet the righteous on their entering into the other world, and of the three divisions of the angels of destruction who seize the wicked as soon as they die. A similar view is also found in 12 Testaments, Asher 6, whereas according to PR 44, 184a, man’s guardian angels meet him at the time of his death; compare footnote 20 on p. 56, and Index, s. v. “Guardian Angel.” *Visio Pauli* 14 is in agreement with this view. Zohar Hadash, Lek Leka, heading וישמע maintains that Michael and Gabriel, at the head of the angels who guard the gates of Paradise, meet the pious and lead them into paradise. As soon as a righteous person



dies, God says to the three patriarchs: "Go and offer the righteous a heavenly welcome." They, however, refuse, saying: "It is not for parents to pay respect to their children; but it is the duty of children to pay respect to parents." God

thereupon addresses Jacob, saying: "Thou who didst suffer so much in bringing up thy children, go thou and meet thy righteous child, and I shall accompany thee." Zohar I, 97a; comp. also 123b and 125b; footnote 49 on p. 69.







## VIII

# THE SONS OF JACOB

### SIGNIFICANT NAMES

Jacob raised all his sons in the fear of God, and taught them the ways of a pious life, using severity when there was need to make his lessons impressive. He reaped the fruits of his labor, for all his sons were godly men of stainless character.<sup>1</sup> The ancestors of the twelve tribes resembled their fathers in piety, and their acts were no less significant than those of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Like these three, they deserve to be called the Fathers of Israel.<sup>2</sup> God made a covenant with them as He had made with the three Patriarchs, and to this covenant their descendants owe their preservation.<sup>3</sup>

The very names of the tribes point to the redemption of Israel. Reuben is so called, because God “sees” the affliction of His people; Simon, because He “hears” its groaning; Levi, He “joins” Himself unto His people when Israel suffers; Judah, Israel will “thank” God for its deliverance; Issachar, it will be “rewarded” for its suffering with a recompense; Zebulun, God will have a “dwelling-place” in Israel; Benjamin, He swore by His “right hand” to succor His people; Dan, He will “judge” the nation that subjugates Israel; Naphtali, He bestowed the Torah upon Israel, and she drops sweetness like the “honeycomb”; Gad,

the Lord gave manna unto Israel, and it was like “coriander” seed; Asher, all nations will call Israel “happy;” and Joseph, because God will “add” a second redemption of Israel to the first—redemption from the wicked kingdom at the end as from Egypt in former times.<sup>4</sup>

Not only the names of Jacob’s sons are significant, but the names of their sons as well. Thus the names of the sons of Issachar express the activities of the tribe known for its learning above all the others. The oldest was called Tola, “worm”; as the silk worm is distinguished for its mouth, with which it spins, so also the men of the tribe of Issachar for the wise words of their mouth. The second is Puah, “madder plant”; as this plant colors all things, so the tribe of Issachar colors the whole world with its teachings. The third is Jashub, “the returning one,” for through the teachings of Issachar Israel will be turned back to its Heavenly Father; and Shimron, the fourth, is “the observing one,” to indicate that the tribe of Issachar observes the Torah.<sup>5</sup>

The names of the sons of Gad likewise interpret the history of the tribe. During Israel’s sojourn in Egypt, it had strayed from the right path, but when Aaron appeared as prophet and monitor, and called unto the Israelites to cast away the abominations of their eyes and forsake the idols of



Egypt, they hearkened unto his words. Hence the double name Ozni and Ezbon borne by one of the sons of Gad, for this tribe “hearkened” to the word of God, and fulfilled His “will.”

The grandsons of Asher bear the names Heber and Malchiel, because they were the “associates” of kings, and their inheritance yielded “royal dainties.”

Partly the history of the tribe of Benjamin can be read in the names of its chiefs. It consisted originally of ten divisions, descended from Benjamin’s ten sons, but five of them perished in Egypt on account of their ungodly ways, from which no admonition availed to turn them aside. Of the five families remaining, two, the descendants of Bela and those of Ashbel, had always been God-fearing; the others, the Ahiramites, the Shephuphamites, and the Huphamites, repented of their sins, and in accordance with the change in their conduct had been the change in their names. Ehi had become Ahiram, because the breach with the “Exalted” One was healed; Muphim was called Shephupham, because they “afflicted” themselves in their penance; and Huphim was turned into Hupham, to indicate that they had “cleansed” themselves from sin. As a reward for their piety, the family springing from Bela was permitted to have two subdivisions, the Ardites and the Naamites. Their names point them out as men that know well how the fear of God is to be manifested, whose deeds are exceedingly lovely.

Naphtali was another tribe of steadfast piety, and the names of his sons testify thereto: Jahzeel, because the tribesmen raised a “partition wall” between God and the idols, inasmuch as they trusted in God and condemned the idols; Guni, because God was their “protection”; and Jezer and Shillem designate the Naphtalites as men devoted to God with all their hearts.<sup>6</sup>

1. ShR 1. 1–3; Tan. Shemot 1; MHG II, 3–4. In contrast to Jacob who was a stern father to his children, Abraham and Isaac were indulgent, with the result that they subsequently suffered for their attitude. Ishmael, the son of Abraham, and Esau, the son of Isaac, would have been different men if their fathers had been less indulgent.

2. MHG I, 681–682, and II, 5, where the filial devotion and chastity of Jacob’s sons are particularly praised. On the designation of Jacob’s twelve sons as “fathers,” see Tosefta Ma’aser Sheni (end), where it is also stated that all that God did for Israel was on account of these twelve sons (comp. Index, s. v. “Fathers, Merits of”). A similar statement is also found in PR 4, 13a and 14a, with the additional remark that the creation of the world was brought about through the merits of “the twelve tribes.” See further text on p. 968, “The Seven Patriarchs”; Sifre N., 11, where אבות can only refer to Israel’s great men in post-biblical times. Comp. the full discussion of the question, whether אבות “fathers” refers exclusively to the three patriarchs, in Ginzberg’s *Unbekannte Sekte*, 295–297.

3. Sifra 26. 45 and 42. In the second passage mention is made of the covenant with the “mothers” (the rabbis usually speak of the four mothers, Sarah, Rebekah, Rachel, and Leah; comp. Index, s. v. Mothers). The old liturgy contains no reference to the covenant with the tribes or to the covenant with the mothers, and even in the later liturgy these covenants are rarely alluded to. R. Gershon B. Judah (about 1000) is, it seems, the oldest paitan who, in his Selihah זכר ברית for Ne’ilah in the Ashkenazic ritual, speaks of the covenants made with the fathers, mothers, and tribes.

4. ShR 1. 5; Tan. Shemot 3; Tan. B. II, 3; MHG I, 681. For other explanations of these names see BaR 14. 10 and BR 81. 3; Sekel 290; text on p. 285. Philo, *De Somniis*, 2. 3, is very likely the oldest authority to explain these names independently of the Bible; comp. also Philo, *De Mutatione Nominum*, 16. In this connection mention should be made of the haggadic etymology of the name *Yehudi* (“Jew”), which is explained as “one who proclaims God’s unity” (יהודי=יחודי from יחד); *Panim Aherim* 82; comp. also *Apostolic Constitutions* II, 60. The Haggadah is interested not only in the names of the twelve tribes but also in the dates of their birth and death; comp. Seder ‘Olam 2; PRE 26; Tadshe 8; Lekah, Gen. 19. 31; Algazi, *Toledot Adam*; Heilprin, *Seder ha-Dorot*, I, 2192; Jub. 28. 11–12; 12 Testaments, *passim*.

5. MHG I, 683; BaR 13. 16. On Issachar as the tribe of scholars, see footnote 391 on p. 408. The description of the tribe of Issachar as mathematicians in Yerushalmi Targumim Gen. 46. 13–14, goes back to 1 Chron. 12. 33; comp. the full discussion of this point in the note referred to.



6. Sabba, Wa-Yiggash, 56c, quoting an unknown Midrash. As to Aaron's activity in Egypt and his crusade against the idolatrous Hebrews, see text on pp. 473 and 489, as well as text on p. 821. With the exception of the three tribes of Reuben, Simeon, and Levi, all the others were addicted to idolatry, and for this reason the genealogical tables of these three tribes only are given in Scripture (Exod. 6. 14, *seq.*; Shir 4. 7.—The legend about the Benjamin tribe is an attempt to harmonize Gen. 46. 21 with Num. 26. 38, *seq.* A similar solution is already found in Jub. 44. 33–34 (Charles misunderstood this passage entirely), where it is stated that five of Jacob's descendants disappeared in Egypt without leaving any trace; they are nevertheless counted among “the seventy souls” who entered Egypt with Jacob. The sentence concerning the sons of Judah in Jub., *loc. cit.*, is either a later addition or is to be taken parenthetically. For another solution of the apparent contradiction between, Gen. *loc. cit.*, and Num., *loc. cit.*, compare with text on p. 746.—On the pious Naphtalites, see footnote 391, as well as footnote 396, both on p. 408.—The difficult בני (Gen. 46. 23) is explained in the following way: Dan had only one son; but this son had so many children that he was called “heath-rush” חֶשֶׁשׁ, because his children were as numerous as the heath-rushes; Baba Batra 143b; BR 94. 9 (here the variant בן is given); Targum Yerushalmi Gen., *loc. cit.* (as to אַמְפּוֹרִין see Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 25. 3); ShR 32. 140. Charles, Jub. 44. 28, quotes the Rabbis to the effect that Dan had numerous children; but the Rabbis maintain the opposite view.

## REUBEN'S TESTAMENT

Two years after the death of Joseph, Reuben fell sick. Feeling that his end was nigh, he called together his sons, his grandsons, and his brethren, to give them his last admonitions from out of the fulness of his experience. He spake: “Hear, my brethren, and do ye, my children, give ear unto Reuben your father in the commands that I enjoin upon you. And, behold, I adjure you this day by the God of heaven that ye walk not in the follies of youth and the fornications to which I was addicted, and wherewith I defiled the bed of my father Jacob. For I tell you now that for seven months the Lord afflicted my loins with a terrible plague, and if my father Jacob

had not interceded for me, the Lord had swept me away. I was twenty years of age when I did what was evil before the Lord, and for seven months I was sick unto death. Then I did penance for seven years in the innermost depths of my soul. Wine and strong drink I drank not, the flesh of animals passed not my lips, dainties I tasted not, because I mourned over my sins, for they were great.”

He admonished those gathered around him to beware of the seven tempter spirits, which are the spirit of fornication, gluttony, strife, love of admiration, arrogance, falsehood, and injustice. He cautioned them especially against unchastity, saying: “Pay no heed to the glances of a woman, and remain not alone with a married woman, and do not occupy yourselves with the affairs of women. Had I not seen Bilhah bathe in a secluded spot, I had not fallen into the great sin I committed, for after my thoughts had once grasped the nakedness of woman, I could not sleep until I had accomplished the abominable deed. For when our father Jacob went to his father Isaac, while we sojourned in Eder, not far from Ephrath, which is Beth-lehem, Bilhah was drunken with wine, and she lay asleep, uncovered, in her bedchamber, and I entered in and saw her nakedness and committed the sin, and I went out again, leaving her asleep. But an angel of God revealed my impious act to my father Jacob at once. He came back and mourned over me, and never again did he approach Bilhah. Unto the very last day of his life, I had not the assurance to look my father in the face or to speak to my brethren regarding my disgrace, and even now my conscience tortures me on account of my sin. Nevertheless my father spake words of comfort to me, and prayed to God in my behalf, that the wrath of the Lord might depart from me, as He showed me.”

Reuben admonished his children impressively to join themselves to Levi, “because he will



know the law of the Lord,” he said, “and he will give ordinances for judgment, and bring sacrifices for all Israel, until the consummation of the times, as the anointed high priest of whom the Lord spake.”

After announcing his last will to his sons, Reuben departed this life at the age of one hundred and twenty-five years. His body was laid in a coffin until his sons bore it away from Egypt, and carried it up to Hebron, where they buried it in the Double Cave.<sup>7</sup>

---

7. 12 Testaments, Reuben 1–6; comp. Excursus II, Reuben.

## SIMON’S ADMONITION AGAINST ENVY

As Reuben confessed his sin upon his death-bed, and warned his children and his family to be on their guard against unchastity, the vice that had brought about his fall, so Simon, when he was about to die, assembled his sons around him, and confessed the sin he had committed. He had been guilty of boundless envy of Joseph, and he spoke: “I was the second son begotten by my father Jacob, and my mother Leah called me Simon, because the Lord had heard her prayer. I waxed strong, and shrank from no manner of deed, and I was afraid of naught, for my heart was hard, and my liver unyielding, and my bowels without mercy. And in the days of my youth I was jealous of Joseph, for our father loved him more than all the rest of us, and I resolved to kill him. For the prince of temptation sent the spirit of jealousy to take possession of me, and it blinded me so that I did not consider Joseph to be my brother, and I spared not even my father Jacob. But his God and the God of

his fathers sent His angel and saved him out of my hands.

When I went to Shechem to fetch ointment for the herds, and Reuben was in Dothan, where all our supplies and stores were kept, our brother Judah sold Joseph to the Ishmaelites. On his return, when he heard what had happened, Reuben was very sad, for he had been desirous of saving Joseph and bringing him back to our father. But as for me, my wrath was enkindled against Judah, that he had let him escape alive. My anger abode with me all of five months. But the Lord restrained me from using the power of my hands, for my right hand withered for the length of seven days. Then I knew that what had happened was for the sake of Joseph. I repented and prayed to God to restore my hand and withhold me henceforth from all sorts of defilement, envy, and folly. For two years I gave myself up to fasting and the fear of God, for I perceived that redemption from jealousy could come only through the fear of God.

My father, seeing me downcast, asked to know the cause of my sadness, and I replied that I was suffering with my liver, but in truth I was mourning more than all my brethren, seeing that I had been the cause of Joseph’s sale. And when we went down into Egypt, and Joseph bound me as a spy, I was not grieved, for I knew in my heart that my suffering was just retribution. But Joseph was good, the spirit of God dwelt within him. Compassionate and merciful as he was, he bore me no resentment for my evil deeds toward him, but he loved me with the same love he showed the others. He paid due honor to us all, and gave us gold, and cattle, and produce. And now, my dear children, do ye love one another, each one his brother, with a clean heart, and remove the spirit of jealousy from the midst of you.”

Like Reuben, so also Simon adjured his sons to beware of unchastity, for this vice is the mother of all evil. It separates man from God,



and abandons him to Beliar. These were the closing words of his exhortation: "In the writings of Enoch I saw that your sons would be corrupted through unchastity, and they would maltreat the sons of Levi with the sword. But they will not be able to do aught against Levi, for the war he will wage is the war of the Lord, and he will vanquish all your armies. As a small remnant you will be scattered among Levi and Judah, and none among you will rise to be a judge or a king of our people, as my father Jacob prophesied in his blessing."

Having completed his admonitions to his sons, Simon passed away and was gathered to his fathers, at the age of one hundred and twenty years. His sons placed him in a coffin made of imperishable wood, so that they might carry his bones to Hebron, as they did, in secret, during the war between the Egyptians and the Canaanites. Thus did all the tribes during the war; they took the remains each of its founder from Egypt to Hebron. Only the bones of Joseph remained in Egypt until the Israelites went out of the land, for the Egyptians guarded them in their royal treasure chambers. Their magicians had warned them that whenever Joseph's bones should be removed from Egypt, a great darkness would envelop the whole land, and it would be a dire misfortune for the Egyptians, for none would be able to recognize his neighbor even with the light of a lamp.<sup>8</sup>

---

8. 12 Testaments, Simeon 1–5 and 8; comp. Excursus II, Simeon.

## THE ASCENSION OF LEVI

When it was disclosed to Levi that he was about to die, he gathered all his children around him, to tell them the story of his life, and he also prophesied unto them what they would do, and what would happen to them until the judgment day. He spoke: "When we were pasturing the flocks in Abel-Meholah, the spirit of understanding of the Lord came upon me, and I saw all mankind, how they corrupt their ways, and that injustice builds up walls for herself, and impiety sits enthroned upon the towers. And I fell to grieving over the generations of men, and I prayed to the Lord to save me. Sleep enshrouded me, and I beheld a tall mountain, and lo! the heavens opened, and an angel of God addressed me, and said: 'Levi, enter!'

"I entered the first heaven, and I saw a great sea hanging there, and farther on I saw a second heaven, brighter and more resplendent than the first. I said to the angel, 'Why is this so?' And the angel said to me, 'Marvel not at this, for thou shalt see another heaven, brilliant beyond compare, and when thou hast ascended thither, thou shalt stand near the Lord, and thou shalt be His minister, and declare His mysteries to men; and of the Lord's portion shall be thy life, and He shall be thy field and vineyard and fruits and gold and silver.'

"Then the angel explained the uses of the different heavens to me, and all that happens in each, and he proclaimed the judgment day. He opened the gates of the third heaven, where I beheld the holy Temple, and God seated upon the Throne of Glory. The Lord spake to me: 'Levi, upon thee have I bestowed the blessing of the priesthood, until I come and dwell in the midst of Israel.' Then the angel carried me back to earth, and gave me a shield and a sword, saying, 'Execute vengeance upon Shechem for Dinah, and I will be with thee, for the Lord hath



sent me.' I asked the angel what his name was, and he replied: 'I am the angel that intercedes for the people of Israel, that it may not be destroyed utterly, for every evil spirit attacks it.'

"When I awoke, I betook myself to my father, and on the way, near Gebal, I found a brass shield, such as I had seen in my dream. Then I advised my father and my brother Reuben to bid the sons of Hamor circumcise themselves, for I was quivering with rage on account of the abominable deed they had done. I slew Shechem first of all, and then Simon slew Hamor, and all my other brothers came out and destroyed the whole city. Our father took this in ill part, and in his blessing he remembered our conduct. Although we did a wrong thing in acting thus against his wishes, yet I recognized it to be the judgment of God upon the people of Shechem on account of their sins, and I said to my father: 'Be not wroth, my lord, for God will exterminate the Canaanites through this, and he will give the land to thee and to thy seed after thee. Henceforth Shechem will be called the city of imbeciles, for as a fool is mocked at, so have we made a mockery of them.'

"When we journeyed to Beth-lehem, and had been abiding there for seventy days, another vision was vouchsafed me, like unto the former. I saw seven men clad in white, and they spake to me, saying: 'Rise up, and array thyself in the priestly garments, set the crown of righteousness upon thy head, and put on the ephod of understanding, and the robe of truth, and the mitre-plate of faith, and the mitre of dignity, and the shoulderpieces of prophecy.' And each of the men brought a garment unto me and invested me therewith, and spake: 'Henceforth be the priest of the Lord, thou and thy seed unto eternity. And ye shall eat all that is lovely to look upon, and the table of the Lord thy descendants will appropriate for themselves, and from them will come high priests, judges, and scholars, for all that is holy will be guarded by their mouth.'

"Two days after I was visited by this dream, Judah and I repaired to our grandfather Isaac, who blessed me in accordance with the words I had heard. Jacob also had a vision, and he saw, too, that I was appointed to be the priest of God, and through me he set apart a tenth of his possessions unto the Lord. And when we established ourselves in Hebron, the residence of Isaac, our grandfather taught me the law of the priesthood, and admonished me to hold myself aloof from unchastity.

"At the age of twenty-eight years I took Milcah to wife, and she bore me a son, and I named him Gershom, because we were strangers in the land. But I perceived he would not be in the first ranks of men. My second son was born unto me in my thirty-fifth year, and he saw the light of the world at sunrise, and I beheld him in a vision standing among the proud of the assembly, and therefore I gave him the name Kohath. The third son my wife bore me in the fortieth year of my life, and I called his name Merari, because bitter had been her travail in bearing him. My daughter Jochebed was born in Egypt, when I was sixty-three years old, and I called her thus because I was known honorably among my brethren in those days. And in my ninety-fourth year, Amram took Jochebed to wife, he that was born on the same day with her."

Thereupon Levi admonished his children to walk in the ways of the Lord, and fear Him with all their heart, and he told them what he had learnt from the writings of Enoch, that his descendants would sin against the Lord in times to come, and they would suffer the Divine punishment for their transgression, and then God would raise up a new priest, unto whom all the words of the Lord would be revealed. His last words were: "And now, my children, ye have heard all I have to say. Choose, now, light or darkness, the law of the Lord or the works of Beliar." And his sons made answer, "Before the Lord we will walk



according to His law.” Then Levi spake, “The Lord is witness and the angels are witnesses, I am witness and ye are witnesses, concerning the word of your mouth.” And his sons replied, “We are witnesses.”

Thus Levi ceased to admonish his sons. He stretched out his feet, and was gathered unto his fathers, at the age of one hundred and thirty-seven years, a greater age than any of his brethren attained.<sup>9</sup>

---

9. 12 Testaments, Levi 1–2, 5–8, 11–12; comp. Excursus II, Levi.

## JUDAH WARNS AGAINST GREED AND UNCHASTITY

**T**he last words addressed by Judah to his sons were the following: “I was the fourth son begotten by my father, and my mother called me Judah, saying, ‘I thank the Lord that He hath given me a fourth son.’ I was zealous in my youth and obedient to my father in all things. When I grew up to manhood, he blessed me, saying, ‘Thou wilt be king, and wilt prosper in all thy ways.’ The Lord granted me His grace in whatever I undertook, in the field and in the house. I could speed as swiftly as the hind, and overtake it, and prepare a dish of it for my father. A deer I could catch on the run, and all the animals of the valley. A wild mare I could outstrip, hold it, and bridle it. A lion I slew, and snatched a kid from its jaws. A bear I caught by the paw, and flung it adown the cliff, and it lay beneath crushed. I could keep pace with the wild boar, and overtake it, and as I ran I seized it, and tore it to pieces. A leopard sprang at my dog in Hebron, and I grasped its tail, and hurled it away

from me, and its body burst on the coast at Gaza. A wild steer I found grazing in the field. I took it by its horns, swung it round and round until it was stunned, and then I cast it to the ground and killed it.”

Judah continued and told his children of his heroism in the wars that the sons of Jacob had waged with the kings of Canaan and with Esau and his family. In all these conflicts he bore a distinguished part, beyond the achievements of the others. His father Jacob was free from all anxiety when Judah was with his brethren in their combats, because he had had a vision showing him an angel of strength standing at the side of Judah on all his ways.

Judah did not conceal his shortcomings, either. He confessed how drunkenness and passion had betrayed him first into marriage with a Canaanitish woman, and then into improper relations with his daughter-in-law Tamar. He said to his children:

“Do not walk after the desire of your hearts, and vaunt not the valiant deeds of your youth. This, too, is evil in the eyes of the Lord. For while I boasted that the face of a beautiful woman had never allured me in the wars, and reviled my brother Reuben for his transgression with Bilhah, the spirit of passion and unchastity gained possession of me, and I took Bath-shua to wife, and trespassed with Tamar, though she was the affianced of my son. First I said to Bath-shua’s father, ‘I will take counsel with my father Jacob, to know whether I should marry thy daughter,’ but he was a king, and he showed me an untold heap of gold accredited to his daughter, and he adorned her with the magnificence of women, in gold and pearls, and he bade her pour the wine at the meal. The wine turned my eyes awry, and passion darkened my heart. In mad love for her, I violated the command of the Lord and the will of my father, and I took her to wife. The Lord gave me a recompense according to



the counsel of my heart, for I had no joy in the sons she bore me.

“And now, my children, I pray you, do not intoxicate your selves with wine, for wine twists the understanding away from the truth, and confuses the sight of the eyes. Wine led me astray, so that I felt no shame before the throngs of people in the city, and I turned aside and went in to Tamar in the presence of them, and committed a great sin. And though a man be a king, if he leads an unchaste life, he loses his kingship. I gave Tamar my staff, which is the stay of my tribe, and my girdle-cord, which is power, and my signet-diadem, which is the glory of my kingdom. I did penance for all this, and unto old age I drank no wine, and ate no flesh, and knew no sort of pleasure. Wine causes the secret things of God and man to be revealed unto the stranger. Thus did I disclose the commands of the Lord and the mysteries of my father Jacob to the Canaanite woman Bath-shua, though God had forbidden me to betray them. I also enjoin you not to love gold, and not to look upon the beauty of women, for through money and through beauty I was led astray to Bath-shua the Canaanite. I know that my stock will fall into misery through these two things, for even the wise men among my sons will be changed by them, and the consequence will be that the kingdom of Judah will be diminished, the domain that the Lord gave me as a reward for my obedient conduct toward my father, for never did I speak in contradiction of him, but I did all things according to his words. And Isaac, my father’s father, blessed me with the blessing that I should be ruler in Israel, and I know that the kingdom will arise from me. In the books of Enoch the just I read all the evil that ye will do in the latter days. Only beware, my children, of unchastity and greed, for love of gold leads to idolatry, causing men to call them gods that are none, and dethroning the reason of man. On account of gold I lost my

children, and had I not mortified my flesh, and humbled my soul, and had not my father Jacob offered up prayers for me, I had died childless. But the God of my fathers, the merciful and gracious One, saw that I had acted unwittingly, for the ruler of deception had blinded me, and I was ignorant, being flesh and blood, and corrupt through sins, and in the moment when I considered myself invincible, I recognized my weakness.”

Then Judah revealed to his sons, in clear, brief words, the whole history of Israel until the advent of the Messiah, and his final speech was: “My children, observe the whole law of the Lord; in it is hope for all that keep His ways. I die this day at the age of one hundred and nineteen years before your eyes. None shall bury me in a costly garment, nor shall ye cut my body to embalm it, but ye shall carry me to Hebron.”

Having spoken these words, Judah sank into death.<sup>10</sup>

---

10. 12 Testaments, Judah 1–2, 12–14, 16. As to the gigantic strength of Jacob, see text on pp. 312, *seq.*, and 320, *seq.*, as well as text on pp. 385, *seq.*, and 387, *seq.* Comp. Excursus II, Judah.

## ISSACHAR’S SINGLENESS OF HEART

When Issachar felt his end approach, he summoned his sons, and he said to them: “Hearken, my children, unto your father Issachar, and listen to the words of him that is beloved of the Lord. I was born unto Jacob as his fifth son, as a reward for the dudaim. Reuben brought the dudaim from the field. They were fragrant apples, which grew in the land of Haran upon an eminence below a gully. Rachel met Reuben, and she took the dudaim away from him. The lad wept, and his cries brought his mother



Leah to his side, and she addressed Rachel thus: 'Is it a small matter that thou hast taken away my husband? and wouldst thou take away my son's dudaim also?' And Rachel said, 'See, Jacob shall be thine to-night for thy son's dudaim.' But Leah insisted, 'Jacob is mine, and I am the wife of his youth,' whereupon Rachel, 'Be not boastful and overweening. To me he was betrothed first, and for my sake he served our father fourteen years. Thou art not his wife, thou wast taken to him by cunning instead of me, for our father deceived me, and put me out of the way the night of thy nuptials, so that Jacob could not see me. Nevertheless, give me the dudaim, and thou mayest have Jacob for a night.'

"Then Leah bore me, and I was called Issachar, on account of the reward Rachel had given to my mother. At that time an angel of the Lord appeared to Jacob, and he spoke: 'Rachel will bear only two sons, for she rejected the espousal of her husband, and chose continence.' But Leah bore six sons, for the Lord knew that she desired to be with her husband, not because she was prompted by the evil inclination, but for the sake of children. Rachel's prayer also was fulfilled, on account of the dudaim, for although she desired to eat of the apples, she did not touch them, but put them in the house of the Lord, and gave them to the priest of the Most High that was in those days.

"When I grew up, my children, I walked in the integrity of my heart, and I became a husbandman, cultivating the land for my father and my brethren, and I gathered the fruit from the fields in their due time. My father blessed me, because he saw that I walked in singleness of heart. I was not married to a wife until I was thirty years old, for the hard work I did consumed my strength, and I had no desire unto woman, but, overwhelmed by fatigue, I would sink into sleep. My father was well pleased at all times with my rectitude. If my work was crowned with good results, I brought the firstfruits of my labor to the

priest of the Lord, the next harvest went to my father, and then I thought of myself. The Lord doubled the possessions in my hand, and Jacob knew that God aided me for the sake of my singleness of heart, for in my sincerity I gave of the produce of the land to the poor and the needy.

"And now hearken unto me, my children, and walk in singleness of heart, for upon it resteth the favor of the Lord at all times. The simple man longeth not for gold, he doth not defraud his neighbor, he hath no desire for meats and dainties of many kinds, he careth not for sumptuous dress, he hopeth not for long life, he waiteth only upon the will of God. The spirits of deception have no power over him, for he looketh not upon the beauty of woman, lest he defile his understanding with corruption. Jealousy cometh not into his thoughts, envy doth not sear his soul, and insatiable greed doth not make him look abroad for rich gain. Now, then, my children, observe the law of the Lord, attain to simplicity, and walk in singleness of heart, without meddling with the affairs of others. Love the Lord and love your neighbors, have pity upon the poor and the feeble, bow your backs to till the ground, occupy yourselves with work upon the land, and bring gifts unto the Lord in gratitude. For the Lord hath blessed you with the best of the fruits of the field, as he hath blessed all the saints from Abel down to our day.

"Know, my children, that in the latter time your sons will abandon the paths of probity, and will be ruled by greed. They will forsake rectitude and practice craft, they will depart from the commands of the Lord and follow after Beliar, they will give up husbandry and pursue their evil plans, they will be scattered among the heathen and serve their enemies. Tell this unto your children, so that, if they sin, they may repent speedily, and return to the Lord, for He is merciful, and He will take them out to bring them back unto their land.



“I am one hundred and twenty-two years old, and I can discern no sin in myself. Save my wife, I have known no woman. I was guilty of no unchastity through the lifting up of eyes. I drank no wine, that I might not be led astray, I did not covet what belonged to my neighbor, guile had no place in my heart, lies did not pass my lips. I sighed along with all that were heavy-laden, and to the poor I gave my bread. I loved the Lord with all my might, and mankind I also loved. Do ye likewise, my children, and all the spirits of Beliar will flee from you, no deed done by the wicked will have power over you, and ye will vanquish all the wild beasts, for ye have with you the Lord of heaven.”

And Issachar bade his children carry him up to Hebron, and bury him there by his fathers in the Cave, and he stretched out his feet, and fell into the sleep of eternity, full of years, healthy of limb, and in the possession of all his faculties.<sup>11</sup>

---

11. 12 Testaments, Issachar 1–7.

## ZEBULON EXHORTS UNTO COMPASSION

When Zebulon attained the age of one hundred and fourteen years, which was two years after the death of Joseph, he called his sons together, and admonished them, in these words, to lead a life of piety: “I am Zebulon, a precious gift for my parents, for when I was born, my father became very rich, by means of the streaked rods, in herds of sheep and herds of cattle. I am conscious of no sin in me, and I remember no wrong done by me, unless it be the unwitting sin committed against Joseph, in that I did not, out of consideration for my brethren, disclose to

my father what had happened to his favorite son, though in secret I mourned exceedingly. I feared my brethren, because they had agreed that he who betrayed the secret should be slain with the sword. When they planned to kill Joseph, I besought them amid tears not to sin thus.

“And now, my children, hearken unto me. I exhort you to observe the commands of the Lord, and have mercy upon your neighbors, and act compassionately, not only toward men, but also toward dumb brutes. For on account of my mercifulness the Lord blessed me; all my brethren fell sick at one time or another, but I escaped without any illness. Also the sons of my brethren had to endure disease, and they were nigh unto death for the sake of Joseph, because they had no pity in their hearts. But my sons were preserved in perfect health, as ye well know. And when I was in Canaan, catching fish at the shores of the sea for my father Jacob, many were drowned in the waters of the sea, but I came away unharmed. For ye must know that I was the first to build a boat for rowing upon the sea, and I plied along the coasts in it, and caught fish for my father’s household, until we went down into Egypt. Out of pity I would share my haul with the poor stranger, and if he was sick or well on in years, I would prepare a savory dish for him, and I gave unto each according to his needs, sympathizing with him in his distress and having pity upon him. Therefore the Lord brought numerous fish to my nets, for he that gives aught to his neighbor, receives it back from the Lord with great increase. For five years I fished in the summer, and in the winter I pastured the flocks with my brethren.

“Now, my children, have pity and compassion on all men, that the Lord may have pity and compassion on you, for in the measure in which man has mercy with his fellow-men, God has mercy with him. When we came down into Egypt, Joseph did not visit upon us the wrong he



had suffered. Take him as your model, and remember not a wrong done unto you, else unity is rent asunder, and the bonds of kinship are torn, and the soul is disquieted. Observe the water! If it runs on undivided, it carries down stone, wood, and sand along with it. But if it is divided and flows through many channels, the earth sucks it up, and it loses its force. If you separate, one from the other, you will be like divided waters. Be not cleft into two heads, for all that the Lord hath made has but one head. He has given two shoulders unto his creatures, two hands, and two feet, but all these organs obey one head.”

Zebulun ended his exhortation unto unity with an account of the divisions in Israel, whereof he had read in the writings of the fathers, that they would come about in future days, and bring sore suffering upon Israel. However, he spoke encouraging words to his children, saying: “Be not grieved over my death, and do not lose heart at my departure from you, for I shall arise again in the midst of you, and I shall live joyously among the people of my tribe, those who observe the law of the Lord. As for the godless, the Lord will bring everlasting fire down upon them, and exterminate them unto all generations. Now I hasten hence unto my eternal rest with my fathers. But ye, fear ye the Lord your God with all your might all the days of your life.”

Having made an end of saying these words, he sank into the sleep of death, and his sons put him into a coffin, wherein they carried him up to Hebron later, to bury him there next to his fathers.<sup>12</sup>

---

12. 12 Testaments, Zebulun 1, 5–8. On Zebulun as the mariner see text on p. 688. Comp. Excursus II, Zebulun.

## DAN’S CONFESSION

When Dan assembled his family at the last of his life, he spake: “I confess before you this day, my children, that I had resolved to kill Joseph, that good and upright man, and I rejoiced over his sale, for his father loved him more than he loved the rest of us. The spirit of envy and boastfulness goaded me on, saying, ‘Thou, too, art the son of Jacob,’ and one of the spirits of Beliar stirred me up, saying, ‘Take this sword, and slay Joseph, for once he is dead thy father will love thee.’ It was the spirit of anger that was seeking to persuade me to crush Joseph, as a leopard crunches a kid between its teeth. But the God of our father Jacob did not deliver him into my hand, to let me find him alone, and He did not permit me to execute this impious deed, that two tribes in Israel might not be destroyed.

“And now, my children, I am about to die, and I tell it unto you in truth, if you take not heed against the spirit of lies and anger, and if ye love not truth and generosity, you will perish. The spirit of anger casts the net of error around its victim, and it blinds his eyes, and the spirit of lies warps his mind, and clouds his vision. Evil is anger, it is the grave of the soul. Desist from anger and hate lies, that the Lord may dwell among you, and Beliar flee from your presence. Speak the truth each unto his neighbor, and you will not fall into anger and trouble, but you will be at peace, and the Lord of peace you will have with you, and no war will vanish with you.

“I speak thus, for I know that in the latter days you will fall off from God, and you will kindle the wrath of Levi, and rise in rebellion against Judah, but you will not accomplish aught against them, for the angel of the Lord is their guide, and Israel will perish through them. And if you turn recreant to the Lord, you will execute every kind of evil thing, and do the abominations of the heathen, committing unchastity with the



wives of the godless, while the tempter spirits are at work among you. Therefore you will be carried away into captivity, and in the lands of exile you will suffer all the plagues of Egypt and all the tribulations of the heathen. But when you return to the Lord, you will find mercy. He will take you into His sanctuary, and grant you peace.

“And now, my children, fear the Lord, and be on your guard against Satan and his spirits. Keep aloof from every evil deed, cast anger away from you and every sort of lie, love truth and forbearance, and what ye have heard from your father, tell unto your children. Avoid all manner of unrighteousness, cling to the integrity of the law of the Lord, and bury me near my fathers.”

Having spoken these words, he kissed his children, and fell asleep.<sup>13</sup>

---

13. 12 Testaments, Dan 1–6. As to Dan’s hatred of Joseph, see text on p. 426. Comp. Excursus II.

## NAPHTALI’S DREAMS OF THE DIVISION OF THE TRIBES

**I**n the hundred and thirty-second year of his life, Naphtali invited all his children to a banquet. The next morning when he awoke, he told them that he was dying, but they would not believe him. He, however, praised the Lord, and assured them again that his death was due after the banquet of the day before. Then he addressed his last words to his children:

“I was born of Bilhah, and because Rachel had acted with cunning, and had given Jacob Bilhah instead of herself, I was called Naphtali. Rachel loved me, for I was born upon her knees, and while I was still very young, she was in the habit of kissing me and saying, ‘O that I had a

brother unto thee from mine own body, one in thine image.’ Therefore Joseph resembled me in all respects, in accordance with Rachel’s prayer. My mother Bilhah was a daughter of Rotheus, a brother of Deborah, Rebekah’s nurse, and she was born the same day as Rachel. As for Rotheus, he was of the family of Abraham, a Chaldean, God-fearing, and a free man of noble birth, and when he was taken captive, he was bought by Laban and married to his slave Aina. She bore Rotheus a daughter, and he called her Zilpah, after the name of the village in which he was taken captive. His second daughter he called Bilhah, saying, ‘My daughter is impetuous,’ for hardly was she born when she hastened to suckle.

“I was fleet of foot like a deer, and my father Jacob appointed me to be his messenger, and in his blessing he called me a hind let loose. As the potter knows the vessel he fashions, how much it is to hold, and uses clay accordingly, so the Lord makes the body in conformity with the soul, and to agree with the capacity of the body He plans the soul. The one corresponds to the other down to the third of a hairbreadth, for the whole of creation was made by weight, and measure, and rule. And as the potter knows the use of every vessel he fashions, so the Lord knows the body of His creature, unto what point it will be steadfast in the good, and at what point it will fall into evil ways. Now, then, my children, let your conduct be well-ordered unto good in the fear of God, do naught that is ill-regulated or untimely, for though ye tell your eye to hear, it yet cannot, and as little can ye do deeds of light while you abide in darkness.”

Furthermore Naphtali said unto his children: “I give you no command concerning my silver, or my gold, or any other possession that I bequeath to you. And what I command you is not a hard matter, which you cannot do, but I speak unto you concerning an easy thing, which you can execute.” Then his sons answered, and said,



“Speak, father, for we are listening to thy words.” Naphtali continued: “I give you no commandment except regarding the fear of God, that you should serve Him and follow after Him.” Then the sons of Naphtali asked: “Wherefore does He require our service?” and he replied, saying: “He needs no creature, but all creatures need Him. Nevertheless He hath not created the world for naught, but that men should fear Him, and none should do unto his neighbor what he would not have others do unto him.” His sons asked again, “Father, hast thou observed that we strayed from the ways of the Lord to the right or to the left?” Naphtali replied: “God is witness, and so am I witness for you, that it is as you say. But I fear regarding future times, that you may depart from the ways of the Lord, and follow after the idols of the stranger, and walk in the statutes of the heathen peoples, and join yourselves unto the sons of Joseph instead of the sons of Levi and Judah.” The sons of Naphtali spoke, “What reason hast thou for commanding this thing unto us?” Naphtali: “Because I know that the sons of Joseph will one day turn recreant to the Lord, the God of their fathers, and it is they that will lead the sons of Israel into sin, and cause them to be driven away from their inheritance, their beautiful land, to a land that is not ours, even as it was Joseph that brought the Egyptian bondage down upon us.

“I will tell ye, my children, the vision I had while I was yet a shepherd of flocks. I saw my brethren pasturing the herds with me, and our father approached, and said: ‘Up, my sons, each one take what he can in my presence!’ We answered, and said to him, ‘What shall we take? We see nothing but the sun, the moon, and the stars.’ Then our father said: ‘These shall ye take!’ Levi, hearing this, snatched up an ox-goad, sprang up to the sun, sat upon him, and rode. Judah did likewise. He jumped up to the moon, and rode upon her. And the other nine tribes did the

same, each rode upon his star or his planet in the heavens. Joseph remained behind alone on the earth, and our father Jacob said to him, ‘My son, why hast thou not done like thy brethren?’ Joseph answered, ‘What right have men born of woman to be in the heavens, seeing that in the end they must stay on earth?’ While Joseph was speaking thus, a tall steer appeared before him. He had great pinions like the wings of the stork, and his horns were as long as those of the reēm. Jacob urged his son, ‘Up, Joseph, mount the steer!’ Joseph did as his father bade him, and Jacob went his way. For the space of two hours Joseph displayed himself upon the steer, sometimes galloping, sometimes flying, until he reached Judah. Then Joseph unfolded the standard in his hand, and began to rain blows down upon Judah with it, and when his brother demanded the reason for this treatment, he said, ‘Because thou hast twelve rods in thine hand, and I have but one. Give thine to me, and peace shall prevail between us!’ But Judah refused to do his bidding, and Joseph beat him until he dropped ten rods, and only two remained in his clutch. Joseph now invited his brethren to abandon Judah and follow after him. They all did thus, except Benjamin, who stayed true to Judah. Levi was grieved over the desertion of Judah, and he descended from the sun. Toward the end of the day a storm broke out, and it scattered the brethren, so that no two were together. When I gave an account of my vision to my father Jacob, he said, ‘It is but a dream, it can neither help nor harm.’

“A short while thereafter another vision was revealed to me. I saw all of us together with our father at the shores of the sea, and a ship appeared in the midst of the sea, and it had neither sailors nor other crew. Our father spake, ‘Do you see what I see?’ And when we answered that we did, he commanded us to follow him. He took off his clothes, and sprang into the sea, and we sprang after him. Levi and Judah were the first



to scale the side of the ship. Our father cried after them, 'See what is written upon the mast,' for there is no ship that does not bear the name of the owner upon the mast. Levi and Judah scrutinized the writing, and what they read was this, 'This ship and all the treasures therein belong unto the son of Barachel.' Jacob thanked God for having blessed him, not only on land, but also upon the sea, and he said to us, 'Stretch forth your hands, and whatsoever each one seizes shall be his!' Levi caught hold of the big mast, Judah of the second mast, next to Levi's, and the other brethren, with the exception of Joseph, took the oars, and Jacob himself seized the two rudders, wherewith to guide the ship. He bade Joseph take an oar, too, but he refused to do his father's bidding, and Jacob gave him one of the rudders. After our father had instructed us each one in what we had to do, he disappeared, whereupon Joseph took possession of the second rudder, too. All went smoothly for a time, as long as Judah and Joseph acted together in harmony with each other, and Judah kept Joseph informed in what direction to steer. But a quarrel broke out between them, and Joseph did not guide the vessel in the way his father had commanded him, and Judah attempted to direct him, and the vessel was wrecked upon a rock. Levi and Judah descended from the masts, and likewise the other brethren left the ship and escaped to the shore. At this moment Jacob appeared, and he found us scattered in all directions, and we reported to him how Joseph had caused the vessel to run aground, because he had refused, out of jealousy of Judah and Levi, to steer it according to their instructions. Then Jacob asked us to show him the spot where we had lost the ship, of which only the masts were visible above the water. He emitted a whistle summoning us all, and he swam out into the water, and raised the vessel as before. Turning to Joseph, he spake thus, 'My son, never do that again, never permit

jealousy of thy brethren to master thee. Nearly it happened that all thy brethren perished because of thee.'

"When I told my father what I had seen in this vision, he clasped his hands, and tears flowed from his eyes, and he said: 'My son, for that the vision was doubled unto thee twice, I am dismayed, and I shudder for my son Joseph. I loved him more than all of you, but by reason of his perverseness ye will be carried away into captivity, and scattered among the nations. Thy first and thy second vision had the same meaning, the vision is one.'

"Therefore, my sons, I command you not to join yourselves unto the sons of Joseph, but ye shall join yourselves unto the sons of Levi and Judah. I tell you, too, that my inheritance shall be of the best of Palestine, the middle of the earth. You will eat, and the delectable gifts of my portion will satisfy you. But I warn you not to kick in your prosperity and not to become perverse, resisting the commands of God, who satisfies you with the best of His land, and not to forget your God, whom your father Abraham chose when the families of the earth were divided in the days of Peleg. The Lord descended with seventy angels, at their head Michael, and he commanded them to teach the seventy languages unto the seventy families of Noah. The angels did according to the behest of God, and the holy Hebrew language remained only in the house of Shem and Eber, and in the house of their descendant Abraham. On this day of teaching languages, Michael came to each nation separately, and told it the message with which God had charged him, saying: 'I know the rebellion and the confusion ye have enacted against God. Now, make choice of him whom you will serve, and whom will you have as your mediator in heaven?' Then spake Nimrod the wicked, 'In my eyes there is none greater than he that taught me the language of Cush.' The other nations



also answered in words like these, each one designated its angel. But Abraham said: 'I choose none other than Him that spake and the world was. In Him I will have faith, and my seed forever and ever.' Thenceforth God put every nation in the care of its angel, but Abraham and his seed He kept for Himself.

"Therefore I adjure you not to go astray and serve other gods beside Him whom our fathers made choice of. You can perceive somewhat of His power in the creation of man. From head to foot is man wonderfully made. With his ears he hears, with his eyes he sees, with his brain he comprehends, with his nose he smells, with the tubes of his throat he utters sounds, with his gullet he swallows food, with his tongue he articulates, with his mouth he forms words, with his hands he does his work, with his heart he meditates, with his spleen he laughs, with his liver he waxes angry, with his stomach he crushes his food, with his feet he walks, with his lungs he breathes, and with his kidneys he makes resolves, and none of his organs undergoes a change in function, each performs its own. Therefore it behooves man to take to heart who it is that hath created him, and who hath developed him from a foul-smelling drop in the womb of woman, who hath brought him to the light of the world, who hath given sight to his eyes, and who hath bestowed the power of motion upon his feet, who maketh him to stand upright, who hath infused the breath of life into him, and who hath imparted of His own pure spirit unto him. Happy the man, therefore, that polluteth not the holy spirit of God within him by doing evil deeds, and well for him if he returns it to his Creator as he received it."

After Naphtali had charged his children thus, and with many other lessons like these, he enjoined them to carry his remains to Hebron, to be buried there near his fathers. Then he ate and drank with rejoicing, covered his face, and

died, and his sons did according to all that their father Naphtali had commanded them.<sup>14</sup>

---

14. 12 Testaments, Naphtali 1-2 and Zawwaat Naphtali. Comp. Excursus II, Naphtali.

## GAD'S HATRED

**I**n the hundred and twenty-seventh year of his life Gad assembled his sons, and he spake to them: "I am the ninth son of Jacob, and I was a valiant shepherd of the flocks. I guarded the herds, and when a lion or any other wild beast approached, I pursued it, gripped it by the foot, flung it a stone's throw from me, and killed it thus. Once, for a space of thirty days, Joseph tended the flocks with us, and when he returned to our father, he told him that the sons of Zilpah and Bilhah slaughtered the best of the herds, and used the flesh without the knowledge of Reuben and Judah. He had seen me snatch a lamb out of the jaws of a bear, kill the bear, and slaughter the lamb, for it was too badly injured to live. I was wroth with Joseph for his talebearing, until he was sold into Egypt. I would neither look upon him nor hear aught about him, for to our very faces he blamed us, because we had eaten the lamb without seeking the permission of Judah first. And whatever Joseph told our father, he believed.

"Now I confess my sin, that oftentimes I longed to kill him, for I hated him from the bottom of my heart, and on account of his dreams I hated him still more, and I desired to destroy him from off the land of the living. But Judah sold him by stealth to the Ishmaelites. Thus the God of our fathers saved him out of our hands, and He did not permit us to commit an abominable outrage in Israel.



“Hear now, my children, the words of truth, that ye may practice justice and the whole law of the Most High, and permit yourselves not to be tempted by the spirit of hatred. Evil is hatred, for it is the constant companion of deception, it always contradicts the truth. A little thing it magnifies into a great thing, light it takes for darkness, the sweet it calls bitter, and it teaches slander, enkindles anger, brings on war and violence, and fills the heart with devilish poison. I tell you my own experience, my children, that ye may drive hatred out of your hearts, and cleave to the love of the Lord. Righteousness banishes hatred, and humility kills it, for he that fears to give umbrage to the Lord, desires not to do wrong even in his thoughts. This is what I recognized at the last, after I had done penance on account of Joseph, for true atonement, pleasing to God, enlightens the eyes, illumines the soul with knowledge, and creates a counsel of salvation. My penance came in consequence of a sickness of the liver that God inflicted upon me. Without the prayers of my father Jacob, my spirit would have departed from me, for through the organ where-with man transgresses, he is punished. As my liver had felt no mercy for Joseph, unmerciful suffering was caused unto me by my liver. My judgment lasted eleven months, as long as my enmity toward Joseph.

“And now, my children, each of you shall love his brother, and ye shall uproot hatred from your hearts by loving one another in word and deed and the thoughts of the soul. For I spake peaceably with Joseph in the presence of our father, but when I went out from before him, the spirit of hatred darkened my understanding, and stirred up my soul to murder him. If you see one that hath more good fortune than you, do not grieve, but pray for him, that his happiness may be perfect, and if one of the wicked even should grow rich in substance, like Esau, my father’s brother, do not envy him. Wait for the end of the Lord.

“This also tell unto your children, that they shall honor Judah and Levi, for from them the Lord will cause a savior to arise unto Israel. For I know that in the end your children will fall off from God, and they will take part in all wickedness, malice, and corruptness, before the Lord.”

After Gad had rested a little while, he spake again, “My children, hearken unto your father, and bury me with my fathers.” Then he drew up his feet, and slept in peace. After five years, his sons carried his remains to Hebron unto his fathers.<sup>15</sup>

---

15. 12 Testaments, Gad 1–2, 5–8. Comp. Excursus II, Gad.

## ASHER’S LAST WORDS

I n the hundred and twenty-fifth year of his life, while he was still robust in health, Asher summoned his children unto him, and admonished them to walk in the ways of virtue and the fear of God. He spake: “Hearken, ye sons of Asher, unto your father, and I will show you all that is right before God. Two ways hath God put before the children of men, and two inclinations hath He bestowed upon them, two kinds of actions and two aims. Therefore all things are in twos, the one opposite to the other. But ye, my children, ye shall not be double, pursuing both goodness and wickedness. Ye shall cling only to the ways of goodness, for the Lord taketh delight in them, and men yearn after them. And flee from wickedness, for thus you will destroy the evil inclination. Heed well the commands of the Lord, by following truth with a single mind. Observe the law of the Lord, and have not the same care for wicked things as for good things. Rather keep your eyes upon what is truly good,



and guard it through all the commands of the Lord. The end of man, when he meets the messengers of God and of Satan, shows whether he was righteous or unrighteous in his life. If his soul goes out with agitation, she will be plagued by the evil spirit, whom she served with her lusts and her evil deeds; but if she departs tranquilly, the angel of peace will lead her to life eternal.

“Be not like Sodom, my children, which recognized not the angels of the Lord, that ye be not delivered into the hands of your enemies, and your land be cursed, and your sanctuary destroyed, and you be scattered to the four corners of the earth, and scorned in the confusion like stale water, until the Most High shall visit the earth, and break the heads of the dragons in the waters. Tell this, my sons, unto your children, that they be not disobedient toward God, for I read in the tablets of the heavens that you will be contumacious and act impiously toward Him, in that you will have no care for the law of God, but you will heed human laws, and they are corrupted by reason of man’s godlessness. Therefore ye will be dispersed abroad like unto Gad and Dan, my brethren, and you will not know either your land, or your tribe, or your tongue. Nevertheless the Lord will gather you in His faithfulness, for the sake of His gracious mercy, and for the sake of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.”

And when he had made an end of saying these words, he commanded them to bury him in Hebron. And he sank into sweet sleep, and died. His sons did as he had commanded, and they carried him up and buried him with his fathers.<sup>16</sup>

---

16. 12 Testaments, Asher 1–8. It is the only Testament which exclusively consists of parenetic material without the slightest admixture of legend.

## BENJAMIN EXTOLS JOSEPH

Benjamin was one hundred and twenty-five years old, and he called his children to come to him. When they appeared, he kissed them, and spake: “As Isaac was born unto Abraham in his old age, so was I born unto Jacob when he was stricken in years. Therefore I was called Benjamin, ‘the son of days.’ My mother Rachel died at my birth, and Bilhah her slave suckled me. Rachel had no children for twelve years after bearing Joseph. Therefore she prayed to God, and fasted twelve days, and she conceived and bore me. Our father loved Rachel fondly, and he had longed greatly to have two sons by her.

“When I came down to Egypt, and my brother Joseph recognized me, he asked me, ‘What said my brethren to my father regarding me?’ And I told him that they had sent Jacob his coat stained with blood, and had said, ‘Know now whether this be thy son’s coat or not.’ And Joseph said: ‘This is what happened to me. Canaanitish merchantmen stole me away with violence, and on the way they wanted to hide my coat, to make it seem as though a wild beast had met me and slain me. But he who was about to conceal it, was torn by a lion, whereupon his companions, in great fear, sold me to the Ishmaelites. My brethren, thou seest, did not deceive my father with a lie.’ In this wise Joseph tried to keep the deed of our brethren a secret from me. He also summoned my brethren, and enjoined them not to make known to our father what they had done to him, and bade them repeat the tale he had told me.

“Now, my children, love ye the Lord, the God of heaven and earth, and observe His commandments, taking that good and pious man Joseph as your model. Until the day of his death he would not have divulged what his brethren had done to him, and although God revealed their action to Jacob, he continued to deny it.



Only after many efforts, when Jacob adjured him to confess the truth, he was induced to speak out. Even then he besought our father Jacob to pray for our brethren, that God account not the evil they had done to him as a sin. And Jacob exclaimed, 'O my good child Joseph, thou hast shown thyself more merciful than I was!'

"My children, have you observed the mercy of the good man? Imitate it with pure intention, that ye, too, may wear crowns of glory. A good man has not an envious eye, he has mercy with all, even with sinners, though their evil designs be directed against him, and by his good deeds he conquers the evil, since it was ordained of God. If you do good, the unclean spirits will depart from you, and even the wild beasts will stand in fear of you. The inclination of a good man lies not in the power of the tempter spirit Beliar, for the angel of peace guides his soul. Flee before the malice of Beliar, whose sword is drawn to slay all that pay him obedience, and his sword is the mother of seven evils, bloodshed, corruptness, error, captivity, hunger, panic, and devastation. Therefore God surrendered Cain to seven punishments. Once in a hundred years the Lord brought a chastigation upon him. His afflictions began when he was two hundred years old, and in his nine hundredth year he was destroyed by the deluge, for having slain his righteous brother Abel. And those who are like unto Cain will be chastised forever with the same punishments as his.

"Know now, my children, that I am about to die. Practice truth and righteousness, and observe

the law of the Lord and also His commandments. This I bequeath unto you as your sole heritage, and you shall leave it to your children as an eternal possession. Thus Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob did, they transmitted it unto us, saying, 'Observe the commands of God, until the Lord shall reveal His salvation in the sight of all the heathen.' Then you will see Enoch, Noah, Shem, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob<sup>17</sup> rise up with rejoicing to new life at the right hand of God, and we brethren, the sons of Jacob, will arise also, each of us at the head of his tribe, and we will pay homage to the King of the heavens."

After Benjamin had made an end of speaking thus, he said: "I command you, my children, to carry my bones up out of Egypt and bury me near my fathers."

And when he had made an end of saying these things, he fell asleep at a good old age, and they put his body into a coffin, and in the ninety-first year of their sojourning in Egypt, his sons and the sons of his brethren brought up the bones of their father, in secret, and buried them in Hebron, at the feet of their fathers. Then they returned from the land of Canaan, and they dwelt in Egypt until the day of the exodus from the land.<sup>18</sup>

---

17. It is very likely that either Adam or Methuselah is to be added. Comp. Excursus II.

18. 12 Testaments, Benjamin 1-7, 10, and 12. Chronologies indicate Benjamin lived only 120 years. See text on p. 449.



## IX JOB

### JOB AND THE PATRIARCHS

Job, the most pious Gentile that ever lived,<sup>1</sup> one of the few to bear the title of honor “the servant of God,”<sup>2</sup> was of double kin to Jacob. He was a grandson of Jacob’s brother Esau, and at the same time the son-in-law of Jacob himself, for he had married Dinah as his second wife.<sup>3</sup> He was entirely worthy of being a member of the Patriarch’s family, for he was perfectly upright, one that feared God, and eschewed evil. Had he not wavered in his resignation to the Divine will during the great trial to which he was subjected, and murmured against God, the distinction would have been conferred upon him of having his name joined to the Name of God in prayer, and men would have called upon the God of Job as they now call upon the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. But he was not found steadfast like the three Fathers, and he forfeited the honor God had intended for him.

The Lord remonstrated with him for his lack of patience, saying: “Why didst thou murmur when suffering came upon thee? Dost thou think thyself of greater worth than Adam, the creation of Mine own hands, upon whom together with his descendants I decreed death on account of a single transgression? And yet Adam murmured

not. Thou art surely not more worthy than Abraham, whom I tempted with many trials, and when he asked, ‘Whereby shall I know that I shall inherit the land?’ and I replied, ‘Know of a surety that thy seed will be a stranger in a land that is not theirs, and shall serve them; and they shall afflict them four hundred years,’ he yet murmured not. Thou dost not esteem thyself more worthy than Moses, dost thou? Him I would not grant the favor of entering the promised land, because he spake the words, ‘Hear now, ye rebels; shall we bring you forth water out of this rock?’ And yet he murmured not. Art thou more worthy than Aaron, unto whom I showed greater honor than unto any created being, for I sent the angels themselves out of the Holy of Holies when he entered the place? Yet when his two sons died, he murmured not.”<sup>4</sup>

The contrast between Job and the Patriarchs appears from words spoken by him and words spoken by Abraham. Addressing God, Abraham said, “That be far from Thee to do after this manner, to slay the righteous with the wicked, that so the righteous should be as the wicked,” and Job exclaimed against God, “It is all one; therefore I say, He destroyeth the perfect and the wicked.” They both received their due recompense, Abraham was rewarded and Job was punished.<sup>5</sup>



Convinced that his suffering was undeserved and unjust, Job had the audacity to say to God: "O Lord of the world, Thou didst create the ox with cloven feet and the ass with unparted hoof, Thou hast created Paradise and hell, Thou createst the righteous and also the wicked. There is none to hinder, Thou canst do as seemeth good in Thy sight." The friends of Job replied: "It is true, God hath created the evil inclination, but He hath also given man the Torah as a remedy against it. Therefore the wicked cannot roll their guilt from off their shoulders and put it upon God."

The reason Job did not shrink from such extravagant utterances was because he denied the resurrection of the dead. He judged of the prosperity of the wicked and the woes of the pious only by their earthly fortunes. Proceeding from this false premise, he held it to be possible that the punishment falling to his share was not at all intended for him. God had slipped into an error, He imposed the suffering upon him that had been appointed unto a sinner. But God spake to him, saying: "Many hairs have I created upon the head of man, yet each hair hath its own sac, for were two hairs to draw their nourishment from the same sac, man would lose the sight of his eyes. It hath never happened that a sac hath been misplaced. Should I, then, have mistaken Job for another? I let many drops of rain descend from the heavens, and for each drop there is a mould in the clouds, for were two drops to issue from the same mould, the ground would be made so miry that it could not bring forth any growth. It hath never happened that a mould hath been misplaced. Should I, then, have mistaken Job for another? Many thunderbolts I hurl from the skies, but each one comes from its own path, for were two to proceed from the same path, they would destroy the whole world. It hath never happened that a path hath been misplaced. Should I, then, have mistaken Job for another?

The gazelle gives birth to her young on the topmost point of a rock, and it would fall into the abyss and be crushed to death, if I did not send an eagle thither to catch it up and carry it to its mother. Were the eagle to appear a minute earlier or later than the appointed time, the little gazelle would perish. It hath never happened that the proper minute of time was missed. Should I, then, have mistaken Job for another? The hind has a contracted womb, and would not be able to bring forth her young, if I did not send a dragon to her at the right second, to nibble at her womb and soften it, for then she can bear. Were the dragon to come a second before or after the right time, the hind would perish. It hath never happened that I missed the right second. Should I, then, have mistaken Job for another?"

Notwithstanding Job's unpardonable words, God was displeased with his friends for passing harsh judgment upon him. "A man may not be held responsible for what he does in his anguish," and Job's agony was great, indeed.<sup>6</sup>

---

1. DR 2. 4; comp. note 4.

2. ARN 43. 121. Eighteen characters designated by God as "His servants" are enumerated: Abraham, Jacob, Israel, the Messiah, Moses, Joshua, Caleb, David, Isaiah, Eliakim (Is. 22. 2), Job, Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, Azariah, Nebuchadnezzar, Zerubbabel, and the angels. The expression "servant of God," employed in addressing a person, which is found in medieval rabbinic literature, is due to Arabic influence. Accordingly the occurrence of this phrase in *Zawwaat Naphtali* is additional proof that this book is of recent date.

3. Baba Batra 15a–15b, where the following views concerning Job's time are given: 1) He was a contemporary of Moses, and lived in Palestine when the spies visited that country; 2) he was born when the Israelites entered Egypt, and died when the Exodus took place; 3) he lived during the period of the Judges; 4) he was a contemporary of Solomon; 5) of Nebuchadnezzar; 6) of Ahasuerus; 7) he was among those who returned from Babylon to Palestine and founded a college at Tiberias. Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*, further states that according to the view of most scholars, Job was a Jew, since he was endowed with the gift of prophecy, which



during the period that followed the death of Moses was exclusively in the possession of Israel (compare with p. 761). The rationalistic view that Job is not a historical but a fictitious character is likewise recorded in the Talmud, *loc. cit.*; comp. however, the responsum of R. Hai Gaon, cited by Shu'aib, Debarim, 100b, which reads: **איוב לא היה ולא נברא אלא למשל** "the purpose of Job's life was to serve as an example." Comp. further Masnut, 3. For other references to Job in older rabbinic sources, see Seder 'Olam 3; Melkita RS, 27; Yerushalmi Sotah 5, 20c; BR 57. 4, and the parallel passages cited by Theodor. In connection with the view given in BR, *loc. cit.*, according to which Job was a contemporary of Abraham, Vital, *Likkutei Torah* (at the beginning of Job) and Shalshelet ha-Kabbalah 13a, state that Uz, Abraham's nephew, died without issue, whereupon Buz married Uz's wife, and Job was the offspring of this union. Comp. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 766. On the view that Job was identical with Jobab, comp. notes 13–14, as well as footnote 325 on p. 324. On Dinah see note 35. On Job, compare with further pp. 468, 471, 497, 504, 510, 524, 531, as well as pp. 552 and 706, and notes 51, 52. The monument of the Arabic general Ayyub in Constantinople was later considered as that of Job; see Straschun, *Ha-Maggid*, IX, 13 and *'Inyane Shabbetai Zebi* 17 (ed. Freimann). With regard to the divergent and contradictory views concerning Job's time and nationality, it may be safely stated that the old legend considered him a contemporary of the patriarchs and placed him in friendly relations towards them (compare with p. 261). The late Haggadah, on the other hand, could not allow that a man of the kindness and piety of Job should be a non-Jew, and therefore made him a Jew; comp. Baba Batra 15a–15b, and the following note. Origen, *Contra Celsum* 6. 43, basing his assumption on the addition of the Septuagint to Job, maintains that Job lived long before Moses (compare with p. 261), whereas Methodius (quoted by Photius, *Bibliotheca* VII) and Ephraim (beginning of Job) assert that Moses was the author of the book of Job, which view is found in Babli and Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.*; Comp. note 14, end. It should be noted that also Targum on Job (comp. 3. 18; 4. 7; 5. 17; 14. 18; 15. 10, 20, 29), like the old Haggadah, found in this book a great many things which point to the lives of the patriarchs. Comp. Schwartz, *Tikvat Enosh*; Wiernikowski, *Das Buch Hiob nach der . . . rabbinischen Aggada* (Frankfurt, 1893).

4. PR 47, 190b–191a. The text is not quite correct; read in 191a, 1. 20: **אדם מן אברהם**; 21 **אדם גדול אתה מן אברהם**; 1. 24 **מראות ולא קרא תגר**. On God as the God of the fathers, see text on p. 318; also pp. 503 and 510. On the words carelessly uttered by Abraham, compare footnote 110 on p. 272. On Adam as the creation of God's own hand, see text on p. 47. On the angels remaining outside the holy of holies, see text on pp. 673 and 676. The contrast between the patriarchs and Job is also shown by the fact that the lat-

ter only served God out of fear (Sotah 5. 5 cites this view as that of Rabban Johanan b. Zaccai, whereas a later authority considers Job to have loved God; see further Sotah 31a; Yerushalmi 5. 20c; ARN 45, 124; Zohar II, 33b), while Abraham served Him out of love. On the inferiority of Job to the patriarchs, see also DR 2. 4; Tehillim 26. 16; Aggadat Bereshit 9, 26. See also Semahot 8, where emphasis is laid on Job's lack of patience and on his audacity to argue with God. Comp. the following note.

5. BR 49. 9; Tan. B. I, 99; Tan. Wa-Yera 5. Job was better than the generation of the Tower of Babel, but not as good as Abraham. The latter stood firm in ten temptations, the former not even in one. See Rashi's midrashic quotation (probably a later addition) and Masnut on Job. 1. 3.

6. Baba Batra 16a–16b. A view is also recorded here which defends Job against disbelief.—On the hair-sac comp. Tan. B. III, 35; WR 15. 3; Haserot, No. 30; 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 24 (here likewise is found the observation on rain-drops; comp. 2 Enoch 40. 8). BR 4. 4 reads: Sometimes God reveals Himself to man in his hair, as in the case of Job. Comp. ShR 3. 6; PR 47, 190a; Niddah 52a; Matt. 10. 30, which reads: The very hairs of your head are all numbered. On the gazelle comp. Shemuel 9, 73.

## JOB'S WEALTH AND BENEFACTIONS

Job was asked once what he considered the severest affliction that could strike him, and he replied, "My enemies' joy in my misfortune,"<sup>7</sup> and when God demanded to know of him, after the accusations made by Satan, what he preferred, poverty or physical suffering, he chose pain, saying, "O Lord of the whole world, chastise my body with suffering of all kinds, only preserve me from poverty."<sup>8</sup> Poverty seemed the greater scourge, because before his trials he had occupied a brilliant position on account of his vast wealth. God graciously granted him this foretaste of the Messianic time. The harvest followed close upon the ploughing of his field; no sooner were the seeds strewn in the furrows, than they sprouted and grew and ripened produce. He was equally successful with his cattle. His sheep killed wolves, but were themselves never harmed by wild beasts.<sup>9</sup> Of sheep he had no less



than one hundred and thirty thousand, and he required eight hundred dogs to keep guard over them, not to mention the two hundred dogs needed to secure the safety of his house. Besides, his herds consisted of three hundred and forty thousand asses and thirty-five hundred pairs of oxen. All these possessions were not used for self-indulgent pleasures, but for the good of the poor and the needy, whom he clothed, and fed, and provided with all things necessary. To do all this, he even had to employ ships that carried supplies to all the cities and the dwelling-places of the destitute. His house was furnished with doors on all its four sides, that the poor and the wayfarer might enter, no matter from what direction they approached. At all times there were thirty tables laden with viands ready in his house, and twelve besides for widows only, so that all who came found what they desired. Job's consideration for the poor was so delicate that he kept servants to wait upon them constantly. His guests, enraptured by his charitableness, frequently offered themselves as attendants to minister to the poor in his house, but Job always insisted upon paying them for their services. If he was asked for a loan of money, to be used for business purposes, and the borrower promised to give a part of his profits to the poor, he would demand no security beyond a mere signature. And if it happened that by some mischance or other the debtor was not able to discharge his obligation, Job would return the note to him, or tear it into bits in his presence.

He did not rest satisfied at supplying the material needs of those who applied to him. He strove also to convey the knowledge of God to them. After a meal he was in the habit of having music played upon instruments, and then he would invite those present to join him in songs of praise to God. On such occasions he did not consider himself above playing the cithern while the musicians rested.<sup>10</sup>

Most particularly Job concerned himself about the weal and woe of widows and orphans. He was wont to pay visits to the sick, both rich and poor, and when it was necessary, he would bring a physician along with him. If the case turned out to be hopeless, he would sustain the stricken family with advice and consolation. When the wife of the incurably sick man began to grieve and weep, he would encourage her with such words as these: "Trust always in the grace and lovingkindness of God. He hath not abandoned thee until now, and He will not forsake thee henceforth. Thy husband will be restored to health, and will be able to provide for his family as heretofore. But if—which may God forefend—thy husband should die, I call Heaven to witness that I shall provide sustenance for thee and thy children." Having spoken thus, he would send for a notary, and have him draw up a document, which he signed in the presence of witnesses, binding himself to care for the family, should it be bereaved of its head. Thus he earned for himself the blessing of the sick man and the gratitude of the sorrowing wife.<sup>11</sup>

Sometimes, in case of necessity, Job could be severe, too, especially when it was a question of helping a poor man obtain his due. If one of the parties to a suit cited before his tribunal was known to be a man of violence, he would surround himself with his army and inspire him with fear, so that the culprit could not but show himself amenable to his decision.<sup>12</sup>

He endeavored to inculcate his benevolent ways upon his children, by accustoming them to wait upon the poor. On the morrow after a feast he would sacrifice bountifully to God, and together with the pieces upon the altar his offerings would be divided among the needy. He would say: "Take and help yourselves, and pray for my children. It may be that they have sinned, and renounced God, saying in the presumption of their hearts: 'We are the children of this rich



man. All these things are our possessions. Why should we be servants to the poor?"

7. *Ben ha-Melek we-ha-Nazir*, 12.

8. ShR 31. 12; this shows, however, how weak Job was; for although he himself asked that bodily suffering be inflicted on him, he murmured against God when he was tested.

9. Baba Batra 15b–16a. PK 7, 65b–66a; PR 17, 88b; WR 17. 4; Ruth R 1. 5; Koheleth 9. 11. See also the midrashic citations in Makiri, Amos 9. 13, and by R. Isaac ha-Kohen on Job 1. 14; comp. Leket Midrashim 4b. At harvest time the clouds used to hang over Job's fields, so that the grain suffered neither from moisture nor from extreme heat; Tan. B. I, 133. Whenever anyone received even a small coin from Job, it became a blessing unto him; Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*; Pesahim 112a; BR 39. 11.

10. Testament of Job 3. The following parallels from rabbinic literature are to be recorded: Tan. B. I, 161–162 (concerning Jacob's herds and dogs); the description of Job's hospitality and benevolence is only a duplicate of the Abraham legend; compare with text on p. 223. ARN 7, 33–34 (second version 14, 33), points out Abraham's superiority to Job: the latter befriended only those needy who came to him for help, whereas the former took great pains to seek out those who were in need of help; moreover, Abraham gave delicacies and luxuries to the poor who had never been used to such things. Comp. further ARN 163–164. Tan. B. V, 25, emphasizes the fact that Job had strictly observed the agricultural laws, and was therefore astonished when he was reduced to poverty.

11. Midrash quoted by Masnut, Job 29. 13, whence it was incorporated in Leket Midrashim, 6b–7a.

12. PR 33, 149b–150a; comp. further the midrashic quotation in Leket Midrashim, 7b–8a. Job's prayer was pure because his estate was free from ill-gotten gain; ShR 22 (at the end).

## SATAN AND JOB

The happy, God-pleasing life led by Job for many years excited the hatred of Satan, who had an old grudge against him. Near Job's house there was an idol worshipped by the people. Suddenly doubts assailed the heart of Job, and he asked himself: "Is this idol really the creator of

heaven and earth? How can I find out the truth about it?" In the following night he perceived a voice calling: "Jobab! Jobab! Arise, and I will tell thee who he is whom thou desirest to know. This one to whom the people offer sacrifices is not God, he is the handiwork of the tempter, wherewith he deceives men." When he heard the voice, Job threw himself on the ground, and said: "O Lord, if this idol is the handiwork of the tempter, then grant that I may destroy it. None can hinder me, for I am the king of this land."<sup>13</sup>

Job, or, as he is sometimes called, Jobab, was, indeed, king of Edom, the land wherein wicked plans are concocted against God, wherefore it is called also Uz, "counsel."<sup>14</sup>

The voice continued to speak. It made itself known as that of an archangel of God, and revealed to Job that he would bring down the enmity of Satan upon himself by the destruction of the idol, and much suffering with it. However, if he remained steadfast under them, God would change his troubles into joys, his name would become celebrated throughout the generations of mankind, and he would have a share in the resurrection to eternal life. Job replied to the voice: "Out of love of God I am ready to endure all things unto the day of my death. I will shrink back from naught." Now Job arose, and accompanied by fifty men he repaired to the idol, and destroyed it.

Knowing that Satan would try to approach him, he ordered his guard not to give access to any one, and then he withdrew to his chamber. He had guessed aright. Satan appeared at once, in the guise of a beggar, and demanded speech with Job. The guard executed his orders, and forbade his entering. Then the mendicant asked him to intercede for him with Job for a piece of bread. Job knew it was Satan, and he sent word to him as follows, "Do not expect to eat of my bread, for it is prohibited unto thee," at the same time putting a piece of burnt bread into the hand of



the guard for Satan. The servant was ashamed to give a beggar burnt bread, and he substituted a good piece for it. Satan, however, knowing that the servant had not executed his master's errand, told him so to his face, and he fetched the burnt bread and handed it to him, repeating the words of Job. Thereupon Satan returned this answer, "As the bread is burnt, so I will disfigure thy body." Job replied: "Do as thou desirest, and execute thy plan. As for me, I am ready to suffer whatever thou bringest down upon me."

Now Satan betook himself to God, and prayed Him to put Job into his power,<sup>15</sup> saying: "I went to and fro in the earth, and walked up and down in it, and I saw no man as pious as Abraham. Thou didst promise him the whole land of Palestine, and yet he did not take it in ill part that he had not so much as a burial-place for Sarah.<sup>16</sup> As for Job, it is true, I found none that loveth Thee as he does, but if Thou wilt put him into my hand, I shall succeed in turning his heart away from Thee." But God spake, "Satan, Satan, what hast thou a mind to do with my servant Job, like whom there is none in the earth?" Satan persisted in his request touching Job, and God granted it, He gave him full power over Job's possessions.<sup>17</sup>

This day of Job's accusation was the New Year's Day, whereon the good and the evil deeds of man are brought before God.<sup>18</sup>

13. Testament of Job 1. Abraham, Job, Hezekiah (all of whom lived in a wicked environment), recognized God of their own accord; and in the days to come the Messiah will do the same; BaR 14. 2. On the identity of Job with Jobab, comp. the following note.

14. Aristes (in Eusebius, *Praep. Evang.*, 9. 25, 430d–431) is very likely the oldest source which identifies Job with Jobab (son of Zerah, son of Reuel, son of Esau), although it is quite probable that the Septuagint knew of this identification. The corresponding observation found in some manuscripts of the Septuagint as a postscript of the book of Job goes back to Aristes; comp. the thorough investigation

of this subject by Freudenthal, *Hellenistische Studien*, 136–141. This scholar, however, has overlooked the fact that in the older rabbinic literature Eliphaz, Job's friend, is identified with the son of Esau, bearing the same name; comp. vol. I, pp. 421–422. The Targum fragment published by Luzzato (אגרות שד"ל, 741), where this identification occurs, is, in its present form, most likely of a late date. Hence Ginzberg's remarks in *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 123, are to be corrected accordingly. In Targum לולבא=תמר and hence לולבא=ברא תניינא דלול=Zerah, the second son of Tamar. Testament of Job 1 is corrupt. For in this verse Job says: "I am of the sons (descendants?) of Esau; my brother is Nahor," and this is impossible. Either "my father" is to be read instead of "my brother" (on the view that Job is the same as Uz, the son of Nahor, see note 3), and the words "of the sons of Esau" are a gloss from the postscript of Septuagint, or "Zerah" should be read in the place of Nahor. On the view that Job is the same as Uz (Gen. 22, 21) comp. Tan. B. IV, 73 (which is the source of Rashi on Job 1. 1; on Rashi's remark that עצה=עוץ, see BR 57. 4), and the quotation from a Midrash in Leket Midrashim, 4a, where Uz=Edom in alluding to Lam. 4. 21. On the assertions of the Church Fathers Origen, *Hom. in Ezech.* IV (Job, qui temporibus patriarcharum et Moses vixisse. . .), Jerome, Gen. l. c. (Hus, de cuius stirpe Job descendit), and Aphraates, 215 (Job lived two hundred and ten years); comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 123–124, and note 3.

15. Testament of Job 1–2. The fame promised to Job is perhaps related to the legend cited in the text on p. 451, that God wishes to connect His name with that of Job. Satan as a beggar occurs frequently in Jewish legends, compare footnote 226 on p. 224. The Kabbalists observe that Satan would have had no power over Job, had the latter brought, instead of burnt-offerings, sacrifices in which "the other side" (Satan=the material world) also had a share; comp. Yalkut Reubeni, Lev. 1. 3. WR 7. 3 reads: Burnt-offerings atone for sinful thoughts, and Job was not sure whether his sons, who as princes frequently made feasts (according to others the feasts mentioned in Scripture refer to their weddings), did not sin in their hearts.—On Job's love of God, comp. note 4. On the expressions נותן רשות and נוטל רשות with respect to the power which Satan asked and received from God, comp. Baba Batra 16a; ARN, 164 (in the Job story); midrashic quotation in Leket Midrashim, 46. Comp. also Targum on Job 1. 12.

16. Baba Batra 16a; compare footnote 260 on p. 234, and note 39.

17. ARN, 164 (מה לך=מלך); but it is decidedly a recent addition.

18. Targum on Job 1. 6, which is very likely the source of this assertion met with in medieval authors, Rashi, Ibn Ezra, R. Joseph Karo, Masnut, *ad loc.*, R. Nissim Gaon in Hasidim, 31; Sekel 26; Zohar II, 32b; III, 231; Leket



Midrashim, 4b. Comp. Ginzberg's note on this point in *Ha-Zofeh*, III, p. 187.

## JOB'S SUFFERING

Equipped with unlimited power, Satan endeavored to deprive Job of all he owned. He burnt part of his cattle, and the other part was carried off by enemies. What pained Job more than this was that recipients of his bounty turned against him, and took of his belongings.<sup>19</sup>

Among the adversaries that assailed him was Lilith, the queen of Sheba.<sup>20</sup> She lived at a great distance from his residence, it took her and her army three years to travel from her home to his. She fell upon his oxen and his asses, and took possession of them, after slaying the men to whose care Job had entrusted them. One man escaped alone. Wounded and bruised, he had only enough life in him to tell Job the tale of his losses, and then he fell down dead. The sheep, which had been left unmolested by the queen of Sheba, were taken away by the Chaldeans. Job's first intention was to go to war against these marauders, but when he was told that some of his property had been consumed by fire from heaven, he desisted, and said, "If the heavens turn against me, I can do nothing."<sup>21</sup>

Dissatisfied with the result, Satan disguised himself as the king of Persia, besieged the city of Job's residence, took it, and spoke to the inhabitants, saying: "This man Job hath appropriated all the goods in the world, leaving naught for others, and he hath also torn down the temple of our god, and now I will pay him back for his wicked deeds. Come with me and let us pillage his house." At first the people refused to harken to the words of Satan. They feared that the sons and daughters of Job might rise up against them later, and avenge their father's wrongs. But after

Satan had pulled down the house wherein the children of Job were assembled, and they lay dead in the ruins, the people did as he bade them, and sacked the house of Job.

Seeing that neither the loss of all he had nor the death of his children could change his pious heart, Satan appeared before God a second time, and requested that Job himself, his very person, be put into his hand. God granted Satan's plea, but he limited his power to Job's body, his soul he could not touch.<sup>22</sup> In a sense Satan was worse off than Job. He was in the position of the slave that has been ordered by his master to break the pitcher and not spill the wine.<sup>23</sup>

Satan now caused a terrific storm to burst over the house of Job. He was cast from his throne by the reverberations, and he lay upon the floor for three hours. Then Satan smote his body with leprosy from the sole of his foot unto his crown. This plague forced Job to leave the city, and sit down outside upon an ash-heap,<sup>24</sup> for his lower limbs were covered with oozing boils, and the issue flowed out upon the ashes. The upper part of his body was encrusted with dry boils, and to ease the itching they caused him, he used his nails, until they dropped off together with his fingertips, and he took him a potsherd to scrape himself withal.<sup>25</sup> His body swarmed with vermin, but if one of the little creatures attempted to crawl away from him, he forced it back, saying, "Remain on the place whither thou wast sent, until God assigns another unto thee."<sup>26</sup> His wife, fearful that he would not bear his horrible suffering with steadfastness, advised him to pray to God for death, that he might be sure of going hence an upright man.<sup>27</sup> But he rejected her counsel, saying, "If in the days of good fortune, which usually tempts men to deny God, I stood firm, and did not rebel against Him, surely I shall be able to remain steadfast under misfortune, which compels men to be obedient to God."<sup>28</sup>



And Job stuck to his resolve in spite of all suffering, while his wife was not strong enough to bear her fate with resignation to the will of God.

Her lot was bitter, indeed, for she had had to take service as a water-carrier with a common churl, and when her master learnt that she shared her bread with Job, he dismissed her. To keep her husband from starving, she cut off her hair, and purchased bread with it. It was all she had to pay the price charged by the bread merchant, none other than Satan himself, who wanted to put her to the test. He said to her, "Hadst thou not deserved this great misery of thine, it had not come upon thee." This speech was more than the poor woman could bear. Then it was that she came to her husband, and amid tears and groans urged him to renounce God and die. Job, however, was not perturbed by her words, because he divined at once that Satan stood behind his wife, and seduced her to speak thus. Turning to the tempter, he said: "Why dost thou not meet me frankly? Give up thy underhand ways, thou wretch." Thereupon Satan appeared before Job, admitted that he had been vanquished, and went away abashed.<sup>29</sup>

19. Testament of Job 4. The Merciful One seizes not first upon the souls; first He destroyed Job's wealth, before He put his children to death; WR 17. 4, and the other sources cited in note 9.

20. Targum on Job 1. 15 (on the text comp. Masnut, *ad loc.*). The kingdom of Lilith is called זמרגד ("Zmar-gad") in our text; comp. Krauss, *Lehnwörter*, s. v., where the literature appertaining to it is recorded. The queen of Sheba is also known as a female demon among the Arabs, and in a very old source she is considered as a great witch; compare footnote 55 on p. 964.

21. The midrashic source made use of by R. Isaac ha-Kohen reads: "Behold, how long God withheld the punishment decreed over Job. For three years Job lived undisturbed in the village Karnaim but when his sons sinned the queen of Sheba raided them and took their possessions away." The distance from Sheba to Palestine is a very great one, according to some it would take no less than seven

years to traverse it (compare with text on p. 959) and hence the statement that at least three years must have passed between the issuing of the heavenly decree and its execution. The queen of Sheba started on her march against Job immediately on the passing of the decree and arrived three years later to execute it. The Church Fathers as well as Mohammedan writers speak likewise of Karnaim as the abode of Job; comp. Schlatter, *Verkanntes Griechisch* 55; Klein, *Barajta 34 Priesterabteilungen* 81 seq. and Apt, *Die Hioberzählung in der arab. Literatur* 2b. (Arabic text). Another local legend seems to have claimed "Magdala of the Dyers" as the abode of Job and accordingly we have the harmonizing statement in the Midrashim cited at the beginning of this note that the sons of Job marched from Karnaim through the entire valley of the Jordan (אֲלָלוֹן=אבלון comp. Schlatter, *loc. cit.*) to "Magdala of the Dyers" where death overtook them.

22. Testament of Job 4; Persia stands for Chaldea; comp. Job 1. 17.

23. Baba Batra 16a.

24. Testament of Job 4. On three occasions God sent forth a hurricane: When the house of Job collapsed over his children; when Jonah was found in the ship; when God revealed Himself to Elijah on mount Horeb; Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 13c; BR 24. 4; WR 15. 1; Koheleth 6. 1.

25. Midrashic quotation by R. Isaac ha-Kohen 2.8; Leket Midrashim, 5a; Testament of Job 5. Comp. further R. Isaac, 19. 21a, which reads: There are not such sufferings as those of Job; God afflicted him with not less than fifty plagues (ShR 23. 9, and Baba Batra 116b), among which were seven different kinds of boils; Tan. B. III, 80; Tan. Kedoshim 15.

26. Testament of Job 5; ARN, 164. *Visio Pauli* 49 states that Job's wounds were at first of the size of a grain of wheat, but on the third day they grew to the size of an ass's hoof. This statement is followed by the obscure sentence: "worms moreover which fell four digits in length." This amounts to the same as the statement in Testament of Job and ARN.

27. Midrash quoted by R. Isaac ha-Kohen on Job 2. 9; Leket Midrashim 5a (the text is not quite correct; read: כִּן נֹאמַר... וְלֹמָה אָמַרָה כִּן... וְנִקִּי וְצָדִיק... לִקְבֹּל אֶת הַצָּעִיר (כי). Job, who, despite his sufferings wished to continue his former benevolent deeds, proposed to his friends to care for the poor; but they did not believe that he would remain steadfast in his piety; Leket, *loc. cit.* Other interpretations of the words of Job's wife (Job 2. 9) are: She advised him to blaspheme God, so that the heavenly punishment of death should immediately come down upon him, and he would be rid of his sufferings. Confess thy sins to God, and do not entertain any hope that He will relieve thee of thy suffering. Comp. Masnut, *ad loc.* and the following two notes.



28. Midrash quoted by Masnut on Job 2. 10; comp. Mekilta Bahodesh 10, 72b; Sifre D., 32; Midrash Tannaim 26; BR 19. 12, where it is assumed that Job's wife also led a pious life, so that her husband asked her to continue to live in the same manner.

29. Testament of Job 5–6. The greatest sacrifice a wife could make to support her husband was to sell her hair; comp. Yerushalmi Shabbat 6, 7a.

## THE FOUR FRIENDS

**T**he friends of Job lived in different places, at intervals of three hundred miles one from the other. Nevertheless they all were informed of their friend's misfortune at the same time, in this way: Each one had the pictures of the others set in his crown, and as soon as any one of them met with reverses, it showed itself in his picture. Thus the friends of Job learnt simultaneously of his misfortune, and they hastened to his assistance.<sup>30</sup>

The four friends were related to one another, and each one was related to Job. Eliphaz, king of Teman, was a son of Esau;<sup>31</sup> Bildad, Zophar, and Elihu were cousins, their fathers, Shuah, Naamat, and Barachel, were the sons of Buz, who was a brother of Job and a nephew of Abraham.<sup>32</sup>

When the four friends arrived in the city in which Job lived, the inhabitants took them outside the gates, and pointing to a figure reclining upon an ash-heap at some distance off, they said, "Yonder is Job." At first the friends would not give them credence, and they decided to look more closely at the man, to make sure of his identity. But the foul smell emanating from Job was so strong that they could not come near to him. They ordered their armies to scatter perfumes and aromatic substances all around. Only after this had been done for hours, they could approach the outcast close enough to recognize him.

Eliphaz was the first to address Job, "Art thou indeed Job, a king equal in rank with ourselves?" And when Job said Aye, they broke out

into lamentations and bitter tears, and all together they sang an elegy, the armies of the three kings, Eliphaz, Bildad, and Zophar, joining in the choir. Again Eliphaz began to speak, and he bemoaned Job's sad fortune, and depicted his friend's former glory, adding the refrain to each sentence, "Whither hath departed the splendor of thy throne?"

After listening long to the wailing and lamenting of Eliphaz and his companions, Job spake, saying: "Silence, and I will show you my throne and the splendor of its glory. Kings will perish, rulers disappear, their pride and lustre will pass like a shadow across a mirror, but my kingdom will persist forever and ever, for glory and magnificence are in the chariot of my Father."

These words aroused the wrath of Eliphaz, and he called upon his associates to abandon Job to his fate and go their way. But Bildad appeased his anger, reminding him that some allowance ought to be made for one so sorely tried as Job. Bildad put a number of questions to the sufferer in order to establish his sanity. He wanted to elicit from Job how it came about that God, upon whom he continued to set his hopes, could inflict such dire suffering. Not even a king of flesh and blood would allow a guardsman of his that had served him loyally to come to grief. Bildad desired to have information from Job also concerning the movements of the heavenly bodies.

Job had but one answer to make to these questions: man cannot comprehend Divine wisdom, whether it reveal itself in inanimate and brute nature or in relation to human beings. "But," continued Job, "to prove to you that I am in my right mind, listen to the question I shall put to you. Solid food and liquids combine inside of man, and they separate again when they leave his body. Who effects the separation?" And when Bildad conceded that he could not answer the question, Job said: "If thou canst not comprehend the changes in thy body, how canst thou



hope to comprehend the movements of the planets?"

Zophar, after Job had spoken thus to Bildad, was convinced that his suffering had had no effect upon his mind, and he asked him whether he would permit himself to be treated by the physicians of the three kings, his friends. But Job rejected the offer, saying, "My healing and my restoration come from God, the Creator of all physicians."

While the three kings were conversing thus with Job, his wife Zitidos made her appearance clad in rags, and she threw herself at the feet of her husband's friends, and amid tears she spoke, saying: "O Eliphaz, and ye other friends of Job, remember what I was in other days, and how I am now changed, coming before you in rags and tatters." The sight of the unhappy woman touched them so deeply that they could only weep, and not a word could they force out of their mouths. Eliphaz, however, took his royal mantle of purple, and laid it about the shoulders of the poor woman. Zitidos asked only one favor, that the three kings should order their soldiers to clear away the ruins of the building under which her children lay entombed, that she might give their remains decent burial. The command was issued to the soldiers accordingly, but Job said, "Do not put yourselves to trouble for naught. My children will not be found, for they are safely bestowed with their Lord and Creator." Again his friends were sure that Job was bereft of his senses. He arose, however, prayed to God, and at the end of his devotions, he bade his friends look eastward, and when they did his bidding, they beheld his children next to the Ruler of heaven, with crowns of glory upon their heads. Zitidos prostrated herself, and said, "Now I know that my memorial resides with the Lord." And she returned to the house of her master, whence she had absented herself for some time against his will. He had forbidden her to leave it, because he

had feared that the three kings would take her with them.

In the evening she lay down to sleep next to the manger for the cattle, but she never rose again, she died there of exhaustion. The people of the city made a great mourning for her, and the elegy composed in her honor was set down in writing and recorded.

---

30. Baba Batra 16a, where another view is cited to the effect (comp. Rashi) that pictures had been engraved on trees. See, however, Targum on Job 2. 11, which reads: When Job's friends saw that the trees in the garden had withered, that the meat which they ate was transformed into raw meat, and that the wine which they drank was turned into blood, they realized that a misfortune had befallen Job. In accordance with this remark we may well assume (against Rashi) that the Talmud, *loc. cit.*, refers to the withering of the wreaths and trees and not to the pictures on the trees.

31. Tan. B. I, 166 (compare with pp. 322–323); Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 36. 12. This identification, however, was most likely known to the Septuagint, according to which Job's friends were kings, *i. e.*, princes of Edom; comp. notes 3 and 14.

32. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 766; Yashar Wa-Yera, 42b; Sekel 70; Targum on Job 32. 32; comp. notes 3 and 14, and text on p. 761. In old sources Elihu is identified with Isaac (text on p. 261) or Balaam (comp. note 33), and in Zohar II, 166a, he is described as a descendant (son?) comp. Ezek. 1. 1) of Ezekiel, although the different view of Targum was known to this source.

## JOB RESTORED

More and more the friends of Job came to the conclusion that he had incurred Divine punishment on account of his sins, and as he asseverated his innocence again and again, they prepared angrily to leave him to his fate. Especially Elihu was animated by Satan to speak scurrilous words against Job, upbraiding him for his unshakable confidence in God. Then the Lord appeared to them, first unto Job, and revealed to



him that Elihu was in the wrong, and his words were inspired by Satan. Next he appeared unto Eliphaz, and to him He spake thus: "Thou and thy friends Bildad and Zophar have committed a sin, for ye did not speak the truth concerning my servant Job. Rise up and let him bring a sin offering for you. Only for his sake do I refrain from destroying you."

The sacrifice offered by Job in behalf of his friends was accepted graciously by God, and Eliphaz broke out into a hymn of thanksgiving to the Lord for having pardoned the transgression of himself and his two friends. At the same time he announced the damnation of Elihu, the instrument of Satan.

God appeared to Job once more, and gave him a girdle composed of three ribands, and he bade him tie it around his waist. Hardly had he put it on when all his pain disappeared, his very recollection of it vanished, and, more than this, God made him to see all that ever was and all that shall ever be.<sup>33</sup>

After suffering sevenfold pain for seven years<sup>34</sup> Job was restored to strength. With his three friends he returned to the city, and the inhabitants made a festival in his honor and unto the glory of God. All his former friends joined him again, and he resumed his old occupation, the care of the poor, for which he obtained the means from the people around. He said to them, "Give me, each one of you, a sheep for the clothing of the poor, and four silver or gold drachmas for their other needs." The Lord blessed Job, and in a few days his wealth had increased to double the substance he had owned before misfortune overtook him. Zitidos having died during the years of his trials, he married a second wife, Dinah, the daughter of Jacob, and she bore him seven sons and three daughters.<sup>35</sup> He had never had more than one wife at a time, for he was wont to say, "If it had been intended that Adam should have ten wives, God would have

given them to him. Only one wife was bestowed upon him, whereby God indicated that he was to have but one, and therefore one wife suffices for me, too."<sup>36</sup>

When Job, after a long and happy life, felt his end approaching, he gathered his ten children around him, and told them the tale of his days. Having finished the narrative, he admonished them in these words: "See, I am about to die, and you will stand in my place. Forsake not the Lord, be generous toward the poor, treat the feeble with consideration, and do not marry with the women of the Gentiles."

Thereupon he divided his possessions among his sons, and to his daughters he gave what is more precious than all earthly goods, to each of them one riband of the celestial girdle he had received from God. The magic virtue of these ribands was such that no sooner did their possessors tie them around their waists than they were transformed into higher beings, and with seraphic voices they broke out into hymns after the manner of the angels.

For three days Job lay upon his bed, sick though not suffering, for the celestial girdle made him proof against pain. On the fourth day he saw the angels descend to fetch his soul. He arose from his bed, handed a cithern to his oldest daughter Jemimah, "Day," a censer to the second one, Keziah, "Perfume," and a cymbal to the third, Amaltheas, "Horn," and bade them welcome the angels with the sound of music. They played and sang and praised the Lord in the holy tongue. Then he appeared that sits in the great chariot, kissed Job, and rode away bearing his soul with him eastward. None saw them depart except the three daughters of Job.

The grief of the people, especially the poor, the widows, and the orphans, was exceeding great. For three days they left the corpse unburied, because they could not entertain the thought of separating themselves from it.



As the name of Job will remain imperishable unto all time, by reason of the man's piety,<sup>37</sup> so his three friends were recompensed by God for their sympathy with him in his distress. Their names were preserved, the punishment of hell was remitted unto them, and, best of all, God poured out the holy spirit over them.<sup>38</sup> But Satan, the cause of Job's anguish, the Lord cast down from heaven, for he had been vanquished by Job, who amid his agony had thanked and praised God for all He had done unto him.<sup>39</sup>

---

33. Testament of Job 7–9. Although his friends came from different places, they all met at the same time, at the gate of the town in which Job resided; Baba Batra 16b. Those who visit a house of mourning should not speak until the mourners have spoken first. Job's friends acted according to this rule, and kept silence until he had spoken; Mo'ed Katan 28b. Comp. further Yerushalmi 3, 82d, and ARN 37, 111–112. As long as the friendship between Job and his companions was unimpaired, Satan had no power over the former; but when jealousy and strife set in among them, he accomplished his task. As soon as the old friendship was re-established, God restored Job to his pristine greatness; PR 38, 167a; Aggadat Bereshit 28, 57; midrashic quotation by Masnut on Job 30. 1, which throws some light on the story told in the Testament of Job.—The idea that man, since he does not know himself, cannot fathom God's acts occurs frequently in Jewish literature; comp. Wisdom 9. 15–16; Philo, *De Migratione Abrahami*, 24; *De Somniis*, 1. 10 and 36; Judith 8. 14; 4 Ezra 4. 10 (this, as is shown by the parallels, has nothing to do with the view of man as a microcosm as maintained by Gunkel; the original Hebrew text of 4 Ezra very likely read דברים הגדולים עמך = quae tua sunt tecum coadulescentia); Sanhedrin 39a; Ibn Ezra, Yesod Mora 1, 16b.—In contrast to the description of Job's poverty as given in Testament of Job, some rabbinic sources assert that he had to endure indescribable bodily pain, but no poverty (comp. notes 24–26); see Baba Batra 117a and ShR 31. 21. Quite different, however, is the view of Tan. B. III, 8, and Tan. Kedoshim 15.—The idea that Elihu is the instrument of Satan is to be compared with the view of R. Akiba, according to which Balaam is identical with Elihu; comp. Yerushalmi Sotah 5, 20d. See further note 38, where mention is made of the reward of only three friends of Job.

34. Testament of Job 7; *Visio Pauli*, 49. These sources have thirty years, but according to the rabbinic view

only one year; Eduyyot 2. 10. Compare footnote 27 on p. 552.

35. Testament of Job 1, 10–11. An additional gift bestowed by God is more than the original possession; Job was seventy years old, and God granted him an additional term of life with double that number of years, so that he lived two hundred and ten years. BR 41. 4; DR 1. 31; comp. note 3 and the sources cited there (see also Ephraim on Job 42. 16) concerning Job's age and fortune; see further Testament of Job 12. At the appointed time, when his afflictions came to an end, Job arose from his seat and shook off the dust, as a cock rises from the dunghill; Tehillim 103, 344; Midrash in Makiri, Ps. 146, 281. On the expression ונתחדש ("and he became a new man") employed in Tehillim, comp. Tan. Noah 5 on the three men (Noah, Daniel, and Job) who lived to see a new world; comp. also BR 30. 8 (see also the parallel passages cited by Theodor) and Tan. B. I, 180. On Dinah comp. vol. I, p. 396, and the sources from Babli, Yerushalmi, and BR cited in note 3; see further Targum on Job 2. 10.

36. 2 ARN 2, 9; comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 184. Although Job's contemporaries led a licentious life, he was so chaste that he never looked at an unmarried woman; Baba Batra 15a and 16a (but Abraham was still more chaste than he, for he never even took notice of the charms of his own wife; compare with p. 189); Tan. B. I, 170; ARN, *loc. cit.*, and the first version 2, 13.

37. Testament of Job 11–12. It is further remarked that these magic girdles insured Job's immediate recovery (comp. note 35). The names of the three daughters are explained in Baba Batra 16b and Targum on Job 42. 14. Jemimah means "beautiful as the day"; Keziah means "exquisite as the aromatic cassia"; Keren ha-Puch means "splendid as Saffron," or (so Targum) "as the diamond" (נופך = פוך). The Septuagint renders Keren ha-Puch by "Horn of Amalthea" (the goat, of Greek mythology, which nursed young Zeus); this is based on the identification of "Puch" in the Talmud with a (fabulous?) species of the antelope. It is quite uncertain whether this Amalthea is in any way connected with Amthelai, Abraham's mother (compare footnote 6 on p. 168).

38. Koheleth 7. 2; comp. note 33 (end). Heaven has compassion on him who is merciful to his neighbor; when Job prayed to God in behalf of his friends, God had mercy on him; PR 38, 165a; Tan. B. I, 104; comp. note 33. According to a remark by R. Akiba, when Job repented, he was rewarded by God because of the pious deeds he had done in former years, prior to his affliction; Koheleth 7. 8; Ruth R 3. 13; Yerushalmi Hagigah 2, 77a (here it is מצות instead of תשובה). The views of the Rabbis concerning Job's piety prior to his affliction differ greatly from one another (comp. note 3). R. Johanan, who takes Job to have been a Jewish sage, entertains the most favorable opinion



of him, observing that Scripture spoke more highly of Job than of Abraham; Baba Batra 15b; comp., BR 30. 8. But all agree that Job was found wanting when tested by suffering. It is even said by R. Johanan that some of Job's words are so blasphemous that, if they were not written in the Bible, one would not be permitted to utter them; Baba Batra 16a; comp. further Leket Midrashim, 5a; Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*, where Job is severely criticised by Raba who remarks: "Job's mouth ought to have been filled with dust on account of the offensive words he uttered against God."—The revelations which God granted to Job showed that he was unreasonable in finding fault with God's administration of justice; they proved how little he understood the mysteries of nature or the meaning of the ruling of God's wisdom in the history of mankind; Midrash in Makiri on Ps. 146, 281, and the midrashic source quoted by R. Isaac ha-Kohen on Job 11. 7; comp. Leket Midrashim 6b. In the Testament of Job, on the other hand, Job is presented in a different light; he is glorified for his steadfastness and piety during the time of his suffering. This conception is quite unknown in the older rabbinic literature; Comp. the following note.

39. ARN, 164. The Job legend given in this passage is directly or indirectly influenced by the Testament of Job (use was made of Arabic sources which tell many things about Job and which are familiar with the contents of the Testament of Job; comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 262–271; Apt, *Die Hiobberzählung in der arabischen. Lit. passim.*); hence it forms a contrast to the Rabbis (comp. the preceding note) in maintaining that Job was steadfast. The

vermin which infested Job's body are mentioned only here and in the Testament. In contrast to ARN, the Talmud speaks of Satan in complimentary terms, and maintains that his desire to test Job was prompted by good motives, for he feared lest God should prefer Job to Abraham, and he therefore endeavored to test Job's moral strength; Baba Batra 16a.—The cantillation of the books of Job, Proverbs, and Psalms is the same because their authors experienced a similar fate. Job was humiliated, but was afterwards restored to glory; even so were David (see footnote 96 on p. 932) and Solomon who was dethroned for a time (compare with p. 975), but later became king again; Shir (Grünhut's edition, 9a) which was made use of by Masnut on Job 3. 1. Job resembles David also in other respects, for both of them, as well as Jeremiah at a later period, cursed the day of their birth, although their motives were different: Job on account of his sufferings (Job 3. 3); Jeremiah on account of the misfortunes brought upon Israel in his days (Jer. 20. 14); David on account of the sinfulness of man (Ps. 51. 7); Makiri, Ps. 51. 281.—ARN likewise mentions that the angels set forth a prayer to God (this is the signification of *קשר תפלה*; comp. *קשר הספד* in Yerushalmi Yoma 1, 38b; the translation "tied a magic knot of the Tephillin before God," Kohler, Testament of Job, 290, cannot be taken seriously) in behalf of Job; whereupon God took mercy on him. The magic girdle mentioned in the Testament of Job is the special application of the motive "heavenly gifts" frequently employed in legends (comp. Günter, *Legende des Abendlandes*, s. v. "Himmelgabe"), which appears here as a girdle in allusion to Job 40. 7.







## X MOSES IN EGYPT

### THE BEGINNING OF THE EGYPTIAN BONDAGE

As soon as Jacob was dead, the eyes of the Israelites were closed, as well as their hearts. They began to feel the dominion of the stranger,<sup>1</sup> although real bondage did not enslave them until some time later. While a single one of the sons of Jacob was alive, the Egyptians did not venture to approach the Israelites with evil intent. It was only when Levi, the last of them, had departed this life that their suffering commenced.<sup>2</sup> A change in the relation of the Egyptians toward the Israelites had, indeed, been noticeable immediately after the death of Joseph, but they did not throw off their mask completely until Levi was no more. Then the slavery of the Israelites supervened in good earnest.

The first hostile act on the part of the Egyptians was to deprive the Israelites of their fields, their vineyards, and the gifts that Joseph had sent to his brethren. Not content with these animosities, they sought to do them harm in other ways.<sup>3</sup> The reason for the hatred of the Egyptians was envy and fear. The Israelites had increased to a miraculous degree. At the death of Jacob the seventy persons he had brought down with him

had grown to the number of six hundred thousand,<sup>4</sup> and their physical strength and heroism were extraordinary and therefore alarming to the Egyptians. There were many occasions at that time for the display of prowess. Not long after the death of Levi occurred that of the Egyptian king Magron, who had been bred up by Joseph, and therefore was not wholly without grateful recollection of what he and his family had accomplished for the welfare of Egypt. But his son and successor Malol, together with his whole court, knew not the sons of Jacob and their achievements, and they did not scruple to oppress the Hebrews.

The final breach between them and the Egyptians took place during the wars waged by Malol against Zepho, the grandson of Esau. In the course of it, the Israelites had saved the Egyptians from a crushing defeat, but instead of being grateful they sought only the undoing of their benefactors, from fear that the giant strength of the Hebrews might be turned against them.<sup>5</sup>

---

1. BR 96. 1; comp. commentaries, *ad loc.*

2. Seder 'Olam 3. According to Shir 4. 7 and BaR 13. 8, Reuben died first, then Simeon, then Levi, and then Judah. Compare the sources referred to in footnote 4 on p. 433; see also text on p. 516.



3. Yashar Shemot, 118a, and 122a–122b; ShR 1. 4; Tan. B. II, 3; Tan. Shemot 3; MHG II, 6, which reads: When Joseph died, his brethren considered themselves as though they were all dead, because at his death they lost their honored position among the Egyptians; Zohar II, 16b. Comp. also Tosefta Sotah 10. 10, which states: As long as Joseph lived his brethren enjoyed a pleasant life. According to a widespread tradition among the Kabbalists, Joseph, Moses, and David died on a Sabbath towards evening; comp., *e. g.*, Zohar II, 156a.

4. BR 79. 1; this is very likely the source of Midrash Aggada, Gen. 24. 34. The fecundity of the Hebrew women was quite miraculous: they bore as many as six and twelve (according to some, even as many as sixty or seventy) children at one time; Mekilta Bo 12. 13a, and Beshallah (פתיחתא) 24a; PK 10, 85b; ShR 1. 5 (on כחושים compare footnote 6 on p. 434); Tan. B. II, 4; Tan. Shemot 5 and Pekude 9 (the number six hundred thousand is to be explained according to Shir 1. 15; comp. note 56); Aggadat Bereshit 5. 11; MHG II, 6, where it is also stated that they were of heroic valor; comp. also Shir 1. 16; Mekilta Bahodesh 2, 63a; Shabbat 30b (below).

5. Yashar Shemot, 112b and 125a–125b. Compare with pp. 419, 422, and 427. For other reasons why the Egyptians changed from friends of the Hebrews into enemies, see text on p. 473, as well as p. 547.

## PHARAOH'S CUNNING

The counsellors and elders of Egypt came to Pharaoh, and spake unto him, saying: "Behold, the people of the children of Israel are greater and mightier than we. Thou hast seen their strong power, which they have inherited from their fathers, for a few of them stood up against a people as many as the sand of the sea, and not one hath fallen. Now, therefore, give us counsel what to do with them, until we shall gradually destroy them from among us, lest they become too numerous in the land, for if they multiply, and there falleth out any war, they will also join themselves with their great strength unto our enemies, and fight against us, destroy us from the land, and get them up out of the land."

The king answered the elders, saying: "This is the plan advised by me against Israel, from

which we will not depart. Behold, Pithom and Raamses are cities not fortified against battle. It behooves us to fortify them. Now, go ye and act cunningly against the children of Israel, and proclaim in Egypt and in Goshen, saying: 'All ye men of Egypt, Goshen, and Pathros! The king has commanded us to build Pithom and Raamses and fortify them against battle. Those amongst you in all Egypt, of the children of Israel and of all the inhabitants of the cities, who are willing to build with us, shall have their wages given to them daily at the king's order.'

"Then go ye first, and begin to build Pithom and Raamses, and cause the king's proclamation to be made daily, and when some of the children of Israel come to build, do ye give them their wages daily, and after they shall have built with you for their daily wages, draw yourselves away from them day by day, and one by one, in secret. Then you shall rise up and become their taskmasters and their officers, and you shall have them afterward to build without wages. And should they refuse, then force them with all your might to build. If you do this, it will go well with us, for we shall cause our land to be fortified after this manner, and with the children of Israel it will go ill, for they will decrease in number on account of the work, because you will prevent them from being with their wives."

The elders, the counsellors, and the whole of Egypt did according to the word of the king. For a month the servants of Pharaoh built with Israel, then they withdrew themselves gradually, while the children of Israel continued to work, receiving their daily wages, for some men of Egypt were still carrying on the work with them. After a time all the Egyptians had withdrawn, and they had turned to become the officers and taskmasters of the Israelites. Then they refrained from giving them any pay, and when some of the Hebrews refused to work without wages, their taskmasters smote them, and made them



return by force to labor with their brethren. And the children of Israel were greatly afraid of the Egyptians, and they came again and worked without pay, all except the tribe of Levi, who were not employed in the work with their brethren. The children of Levi knew that the proclamation of the king was made to deceive Israel, therefore they refrained from listening to it, and the Egyptians did not molest them later, since they had not been with their brethren at the beginning, and though the Egyptians embittered the lives of the other Israelites with servile labor, they did not disturb the children of Levi.

The Israelites called Malol, the king of Egypt, Maror, "Bitterness," because in his days the Egyptians embittered their lives with all manner of rigorous service.<sup>6</sup>

But Pharaoh did not rest satisfied with his proclamation and the affliction it imposed upon the Israelites. He suspended a brick-press from his own neck, and himself took part in the work at Pithom and Raamses. After this, whenever a Hebrew refused to come and help with the building, alleging that he was not fit for such hard service, the Egyptians would retort, saying, "Dost thou mean to make us believe thou art more delicate than Pharaoh?"

The king himself urged the Israelites on with gentle words, saying, "My children, I beg you to do this work and erect these little buildings for me. I will give you great reward therefor." By means of such artifices and wily words the Egyptians succeeded in overmastering the Israelites, and once they had them in their power, they treated them with undisguised brutality. Women were forced to perform men's work, and men women's work.

The building of Pithom and Raamses turned out of no advantage to the Egyptians, for scarcely were the structures completed, when they collapsed, or they were swallowed by the earth, and the Hebrew workmen, besides having to suffer

hardships during their erection, lost their lives by being precipitated from enormous heights, when the buildings fell in a heap.<sup>7</sup>

But the Egyptians were little concerned whether or not they derived profit from the forced labor of the children of Israel. Their main object was to hinder their increase, and Pharaoh therefore issued an order, that they were not to be permitted to sleep at their own homes, that so they might be deprived of the opportunity of having intercourse with their wives. The officers executed the will of the king, telling the Hebrews that the reason was the loss of too much time in going to and fro, which would prevent them from completing the required tale of bricks. Thus the Hebrew husbands were kept apart from their wives, and they were compelled to sleep on the ground, away from their habitations.

But God spake, saying: "Unto their father Abraham I gave the promise, that I would make his children to be as numerous as the stars in the heavens, and you contrive plans to prevent them from multiplying. We shall see whose word will stand, Mine or yours." And it came to pass that the more the Egyptians afflicted them, the more they multiplied, and the more they spread abroad.<sup>8</sup> And they continued to increase in spite of Pharaoh's command, that those who did not complete the required tale of bricks were to be immured in the buildings between the layers of bricks, and great was the number of the Israelites that lost their lives in this way.<sup>9</sup> Many of their children were, besides, slaughtered as sacrifices to the idols of the Egyptians. For this reason God visited retribution upon the idols at the time of the going forth of the Israelites from Egypt. They had caused the death of the Hebrew children, and in turn they were shattered, and they crumbled into dust.<sup>10</sup>



6. Yashar Shemot, 125b–127a, partly based on older sources; compare with pp. 523–530 and 520. On the idea that Balaam was the one who advised the enslavement of Israel, see text on pp. 765–766, as well as p. 470. The tribe of Levi, mindful of the fact that they were destined to be the servants of God in the temple, refused to serve Pharaoh, who did not press them, for he knew that Jacob exempted them from carrying his bier (compare with p. 411), and even the wicked king feared to force to work those whom Jacob had exempted; *Hadar*, *Da'at*, and *Imre No'am* on Exod. 1. 13. On Malul=Maror, see note 36.

7. Sotah 11a; ShR 1. 10–11; Mekilta RS, 31. As to the king himself participating in the building, see the inscription of Nabopolassar in R. F. Harper's *Assyrian and Babylonian Literature*, 131–133, where this king, in describing the restoration of Esagila and Ezida, writes: I arrayed myself in my gown, the robe of my royalty. Bricks and mortar I carried on my back, a dupshikku of gold and silver I wore; and Nebuchadnezzar the first-born . . . I caused to carry mortar . . . with my workmen. As to men performing the work of women, and *vice versa*, see Herodotus, II, 35. Philo, *Moses*, 1. 7, maintains that many of the Hebrews died because they were unable to stand the hardships imposed upon them; their corpses were thrown out beyond the boundary (of Egypt), and nobody was allowed to cover them with earth. This is very likely to be understood to mean that the Egyptians granted to the Hebrews no respite from their work to enable them to bury their dead. On the cities built by the Hebrews, see Septuagint and Targumim on Exod. 1. 11.

8. ShR 1. 12; PR, addition, 197b; Koheleth 2.23; BR 27. 2 (comp. Theodor, *ad loc.*); Tan. Wa-Yeza 9; Philo, *Moses*, 1. 7; Abkir in Yalkut I, 153=MHG II, 8.

9. ER 7, 44; ShR 5. 21; Wa-Yosha' 45, which reads: Every Hebrew was compelled to make six hundred bricks daily. Tehillim 119, 497; PRE 48; Sanhedrin 111a; Mekilta RS, 170. Comp. with pp. 498, 521, and 541, as well as p. 880.

10. PRE 48; compare with p. 537; see also p. 550.

## THE PIOUS MIDWIVES

When now, in spite of all their tribulations, the children of Israel continued to multiply and spread abroad, so that the land was full of them as with thick underbrush—for the women brought forth many children at a birth<sup>11</sup>—the Egyptians appeared before Pharaoh again, and

urged him to devise some other way of ridding the land of the Hebrews, seeing that they were increasing mightily, though they were made to toil and labor hard. Pharaoh could invent no new design; he asked his counsellors to give him their opinion of the thing. Then spake one of them, Job of the land of Uz, which is in Aram-naharaim, as follows: “The plan which the king invented, of putting a great burden of work upon the Israelites, was good in its time, and it should be executed henceforth, too, but to secure us against the fear that, if a war should come to pass, they may overwhelm us by reason of their numbers, and chase us forth out of the land, let the king issue a decree, that every male child of the Israelites shall be killed at his birth. Then we need not be afraid of them if we should be overtaken by war. Now let the king summon the Hebrew midwives, that they come hither, and let him command them in accordance with this plan.”

Job's advice found favor in the eyes of Pharaoh and the Egyptians.<sup>12</sup> They preferred to have the midwives murder the innocents, for they feared the punishment of God if they laid hands upon them themselves. Pharaoh cited the two midwives of the Hebrews before him, and commanded them to slay all men children, but to save the daughters of the Hebrew women alive,<sup>13</sup> for the Egyptians were as much interested in preserving the female children as in bringing about the death of the male children. They were very sensual, and were desirous of having as many women as possible at their service.<sup>14</sup>

However, the plan, even if it had been carried into execution, was not wise, for though a man may marry many wives, each woman can marry but one husband. Thus a diminished number of men and a corresponding increase in the number of women did not constitute so serious a menace to the continuance of the nation of the Israelites as the reverse case would have been.



The two Hebrew midwives were Jochebed, the mother of Moses, and Miriam, his sister. When they appeared before Pharaoh, Miriam exclaimed: "Woe be to this man when God visits retribution upon him for his evil deeds." The king would have killed her for these audacious words, had not Jochebed allayed his wrath by saying: "Why dost thou pay heed to her words? She is but a child, and knows not what she speaks." Yet, although Miriam was but five years old at the time, she nevertheless accompanied her mother, and helped her with her offices to the Hebrew women, giving food to the new-born babes while Jochebed washed and bathed them.

Pharaoh's order ran as follows: "At the birth of the child, if it be a man child, kill it; but if it be a female child, then you need not kill it, but you may save it alive." The midwives returned: "How are we to know whether the child is male or female?" for the king had bidden them kill it while it was being born. Pharaoh replied: "If the child issues forth from the womb with its face foremost, it is a man child, for it looks to the earth, whence man was taken; but if its feet appear first, it is a female, for it looks up toward the rib of the mother, and from a rib woman was made."<sup>15</sup>

The king used all sorts of devices to render the midwives amenable to his wishes. He approached them with amorous proposals, which they both repelled, and then he threatened them with death by fire.<sup>16</sup> But they said within themselves: "Our father Abraham opened an inn, that he might feed the wayfarers, though they were heathen, and we should neglect the children, nay, kill them? No, we shall have a care to keep them alive." Thus they failed to execute what Pharaoh had commanded. Instead of murdering the babes, they supplied all their needs. If a mother that had given birth to a child lacked food and drink, the midwives went to well-to-do women, and took up a collection, that the infant might not suffer

want. They did still more for the little ones. They made supplication to God, praying: "Thou knowest that we are not fulfilling the words of Pharaoh, but it is our aim to fulfil Thy words. O that it be Thy will, our Lord, to let the child come into the world safe and sound, lest we fall under the suspicion that we tried to slay it, and maimed it in the attempt." The Lord hearkened to their prayer, and no child born under the ministrations of Shiphrah and Puah, or Jochebed and Miriam, as the midwives are also called, came into the world lame or blind or afflicted with any other blemish.<sup>17</sup>

Seeing that his command was ineffectual, he summoned the midwives a second time, and called them to account for their disobedience. They replied: "This nation is compared unto one animal and another, and, in sooth, the Hebrews are like the animals. As little as the animals do they need the offices of midwives."<sup>18</sup> These two God-fearing women were rewarded in many ways for their good deeds. Not only that Pharaoh did them no harm, but they were made the ancestors of priests and Levites, and kings and princes. Jochebed became the mother of the priest Aaron and of the Levite Moses, and from Miriam's union with Caleb sprang the royal house of David. The hand of God was visible in her married life. She contracted a grievous sickness, and though it was thought by all that saw her that death would certainly overtake her, she recovered, and God restored her youth, and bestowed unusual beauty upon her, so that renewed happiness awaited her husband, who had been deprived of the pleasures of conjugal life during her long illness. His unexpected joys were the reward of his piety and trust in God.<sup>19</sup> And another recompense was accorded to Miriam: she was privileged to bring forth Bezalel, the builder of the Tabernacle, who was endowed with celestial wisdom.<sup>20</sup>



11. ShR 1. 8; MHG II, 8. Comp. note 4.

12. Yashar Shemot, 124a–124b, which is based on older sources; comp. note 21, as well as footnote 32 on p. 459. Yalkut Reubeni, Exod. 1. 10, quotes an unknown Midrash to the effect that the agitation against the Jews was due to the fact that the Egyptians at that time apprehended an attack upon them by the kings of Canaan, and feared lest the Hebrews should support the enemies of Egypt. As to the historical events reflected in this legend, see Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, pp. 338–339 and Index s. v. “Historical Reminiscence.”

13. ShR 1. 14. Compare footnote 32 on p. 332.

14. ShR 1. 18; ps.–Philo, 10 (top). As to the sensuality of the Egyptians, see ER 7, 40, and text on p. 189.

15. ShR 1. 13–14; ER 7, 43; Sotah 11b. As to the different positions of the male child from the female at the time of birth, see BR 17. 7, and parallel passages cited by Theodor. Comp. note 17.

16. Sotah 11b; ShR 1. 15; Yashar Shemot, 127b.

17. ShR 1. 15. The identification of Shiprah and Puah with Jochebed and Miriam, respectively, is already found in old sources; comp. Sifre N., 78; Sotah 11b, which gives also the dissenting view that Puah is identical with Elishaba, the wife of Aaron and the daughter-in-law of Jochebed; Shemuel 18, 113; Koheleth 7. 1. As to the meaning of the names of the midwives, see the sources cited above, and Philo, *Quis Rer. Divin. Haeres Sit*, 26. The last-mentioned authority maintains that in Hebrew Shiprah signifies “a bird” and Puah “red.” Philo confused שפּרה with צפּרה and פּועה with פּואה (in mishnic Hebrew פּואה “woad” is employed to describe the reddish or rather bluish dye obtained from the leaves of the “woad”), for which blunders the inaccurate pronunciation of Hebrew by the Alexandrians is partly responsible. Philo speaks of these two women as “midwives of the Egyptians,” agreeing on this point with some of the Rabbis who are of the opinion that Jochebed and Shiprah were not Jewish women; see Tadshe 21 (end), where they are declared to have been proselytes; *Imre No’am*, Exod. 1. 15. See also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 2.

18. Sotah 11b; ShR 1. 16, which draws attention to Jacob’s blessings, where several of his sons are compared to animals.

19. Sotah 11b–12a; ShR 1. 17; Tan. B. I, 152; comp. further 1 Chron. 2. 18; see text on p. 365, as well as p. 911. The view that Miriam was the ancestress of David (and hence of the Messiah) is already found in Sifre N., 78; comp. also Yerushalmi Targumim on Exod. 1. 21. The Christian legend that Jesus is a descendant of the priestly family is very likely connected with this view of the Rabbis; see Julius Africanus, *Epistle to Aristides*, 1.

20. Sotah 11b. Compare with p. 641.

## THE THREE COUNSELLORS

I n the one hundred and thirtieth year after Israel’s going down to Egypt Pharaoh dreamed that he was sitting upon his throne, and he lifted up his eyes, and he beheld an old man before him with a balance in his hand, and he saw him taking all the elders, nobles, and great men of Egypt, tying them together, and laying them in one scale of the balance, while he put a tender kid into the other. The kid bore down the pan in which it lay until it hung lower than the other with the bound Egyptians. Pharaoh arose early in the morning, and called together all his servants and his wise men to interpret his dream, and the men were greatly afraid on account of his vision. Balaam the son of Beor then spake, and said: “This means nothing but that a great evil will spring up against Egypt, for a son will be born unto Israel, who will destroy the whole of our land and all its inhabitants, and he will bring forth the Israelites from Egypt with a mighty hand. Now, therefore, O king, take counsel as to this matter, that the hope of Israel be frustrated before this evil arise against Egypt.”

The king said unto Balaam: “What shall we do unto Israel? We have tried several devices against this people, but we could not prevail over it. Now let me hear thy opinion.”

At Balaam’s instance, the king sent for his two counsellors, Reuel the Midianite and Job the Uzite, to hear their advice. Reuel spoke: “If it seemeth good to the king, let him desist from the Hebrews, and let him not stretch forth his hand against them, for the Lord chose them in days of old, and took them as the lot of His inheritance from amongst all the nations of the earth, and who is there that hath dared stretch forth his hand against them with impunity, but that their God avenged the evil done unto them?” Reuel then proceeded to enumerate some of the mighty things God had performed for Abraham,



Isaac, and Jacob, and he closed his admonition with the words: “Verily, thy grandfather, the Pharaoh of former days, raised Joseph the son of Jacob above all the princes of Egypt, because he discerned his wisdom, for through his wisdom he rescued all the inhabitants of the land from the famine, after which he invited Jacob and his sons to come down to Egypt, that the land of Egypt and the land of Goshen be delivered from the famine through their virtues. Now, therefore, if it seem good in thine eyes, leave off from destroying the children of Israel, and if it be not thy will that they dwell in Egypt, send them forth from here, that they may go to the land of Canaan, the land wherein their ancestors sojourned.”

When Pharaoh heard the words of Jethro-Reuel, he was exceedingly wroth with him, and he was dismissed in disgrace from before the king, and he went to Midian.

The king then spoke to Job, and said: “What sayest thou, Job, and what is thy advice respecting the Hebrews?” Job replied: “Behold, all the inhabitants of the land are in thy power. Let the king do as seemeth good in his eyes.”

Balaam was the last to speak at the behest of the king, and he said: “From all that the king may devise against the Hebrews, they will be delivered. If thou thinkest to diminish them by the flaming fire, thou wilt not prevail over them, for their God delivered Abraham their father from the furnace in which the Chaldeans cast him. Perhaps thou thinkest to destroy them with a sword, but their father Isaac was delivered from being slaughtered by the sword. And if thou thinkest to reduce them through hard and rigorous labor, thou wilt also not prevail, for their father Jacob served Laban in all manner of hard work, and yet he prospered. If it please the king, let him order all the male children that shall be born in Israel from this day forward to be thrown into the water. Thereby canst thou wipe out their name, for neither any of them nor any of their fathers was tried in this way.”<sup>21</sup>

---

21. Yashar Shemot, 128a–130b; Dibre ha-Yamim 1; MHG II, 12, where שׁי stands inaccurately for טלה, Aramaic טליא “kid” and “young child.” The older sources (Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 2; Sotah 12a–12b; Tan. B. II, 122; Tan. Wa-Yakhel 4; ShR 1. 18) maintain that the astrologers announced to Pharaoh the exact day upon which the redeemer of Israel would be born; but they could not tell whether he would be a Hebrew or an Egyptian. Pharaoh therefore commanded that all the male children, Hebrew as well as Egyptian, born on that day should be thrown into the river. The Egyptians, however, did not submit to the king’s command, protesting that the redeemer of Israel would certainly not be an Egyptian; and thus only the Hebrew male children were thrown into the river; comp. note 56. On the three counsellors, see Sotah 11a, where, however, it is Pharaoh himself who advised the throwing of the children into the river; comp. the following note. According to ShR 27. 3 and 6, Pharaoh’s counsellors at that time were Balaam, Jethro, and Amalek. On Job see text on pp. 468 and p. 497; on Jethro compare with p. 497. According to Zohar II, 33a, it was Job who advised the enslavement of the Hebrews, to save them from complete annihilation planned against them by Pharaoh. The sufferings subsequently inflicted upon Job had the purpose to make him realize the acuteness of pain and the troubles he had caused to Israel. It is very likely that Yashar is the source of Zohar, *loc. cit.*

## THE SLAUGHTER OF THE INNOCENTS

Balaam’s advice was accepted by Pharaoh and the Egyptians. They knew that God pays measure for measure, therefore they believed that the drowning of the men children would be the safest means of exterminating the Hebrews, without incurring harm themselves, for the Lord had sworn unto Noah never again to destroy the world by water. Thus, they assumed, they would be exempt from punishment, wherein they were wrong, however. In the first place, though the Lord had sworn not to bring a flood upon men, there was nothing in the way of bringing men into a flood. Furthermore, the oath of God applied to the whole of mankind, not to a single nation. The end of the Egyptians was that they met their death in the billows of the Red Sea.



“Measure for measure”—as they had drowned the men children of the Israelites, so they were drowned.<sup>22</sup>

Pharaoh now took steps looking to the faithful execution of his decree. He sent his bailiffs into the houses of the Israelites, to discover all new-born children, wherever they might be. To make sure that the Hebrews should not succeed in keeping the children hidden, the Egyptians hatched a devilish plan. Their women were to take their little ones to the houses of the Israelitish women that were suspected of having infants. When the Egyptian children began to cry or coo, the Hebrew children that were kept in hiding would join in, after the manner of babies, and betray their presence, whereupon the Egyptians would seize them and bear them off.<sup>23</sup>

Furthermore, Pharaoh commanded that the Israelitish women employ none but Egyptian midwives, who were to secure precise information as to the time of their delivery, and were to exercise great care, and let no male child escape their vigilance alive. If there should be parents that evaded the command, and preserved a new-born boy in secret, they and all belonging to them were to be killed.<sup>24</sup>

Is it to be wondered at, then, that many of the Hebrews kept themselves away from their wives? Nevertheless those who put trust in God were not forsaken by Him. The women that remained united with their husbands would go out into the field when their time of delivery arrived, and give birth to their children and leave them there, while they themselves returned home. The Lord, who had sworn unto their ancestors to multiply them, sent one of His angels to wash the babes, anoint them, stretch their limbs, and swathe them. Then he would give them two smooth pebbles, from one of which they sucked milk, and from the other honey. And God caused the hair of the infants to grow down to their knees and serve them as a protecting garment,

and then He ordered the earth to receive the babes, that they be sheltered therein until the time of their growing up, when it would open its mouth and vomit forth the children, and they would sprout up like the herb of the field and the grass of the forest. Thereafter each would return to his family and the house of his father.

When the Egyptians saw this, they went forth, every man to his field, with his yoke of oxen, and they ploughed up the earth as one ploughs it at seed time. Yet they were unable to do harm to the infants of the children of Israel that had been swallowed up and lay in the bosom of the earth. Thus the people of Israel increased and waxed exceedingly. And Pharaoh ordered his officers to go to Goshen, to look for the male babes of the children of Israel, and when they discovered one, they tore him from his mother's breast by force, and thrust him into the river.<sup>25</sup> But no one is so valiant as to be able to foil God's purposes, though he contrive ten thousand subtle devices unto that end. The child foretold by Pharaoh's dreams and by his astrologers was brought up and kept concealed from the king's spies. It came to pass after the following manner.<sup>26</sup>

---

22. Sotah 11a; ShR 1. 18 and 2. 1; Shir 2. 15; Aggadat Bereshit 1, 2. God swore unto Noah never again to destroy the world by water or fire, but this oath applied only to the destruction of the entire world and not to parts thereof; compare with p. 210–211, as well as footnote 55 on p. 151.

23. Shir 2. 15; ER 7. 43; Mishle 19, 86; ShR 22. 1; Lekah Exod. 1. 2. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 3, also speaks of the search for the Hebrew children in all hiding-places. Pharaoh who was informed of the approaching birth of the redeemer of Israel (see note 21), ordered to take a census of all the pregnant women of the Hebrews, and as soon as the time of their confinement arrived, the male children were seized and killed; Midrash Shir 25b–26a; MHG II, 12; Haggadat Teman 36.

24. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 2.

25. Yashar Shemot, 130a (based on older sources; see Sotah 11b; ER 7, 42; PRE 42).

26. Josephus *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 2.



## THE PARENTS OF MOSES

When Pharaoh's proclamation was issued, decreeing that the men children of the Hebrews were to be cast into the river, Amram, who was the president of the Sanhedrin, decided that in the circumstances it was best for husbands to live altogether separate from their wives. He set the example. He divorced his wife, and all the men of Israel did likewise,<sup>27</sup> for he occupied a place of great consideration among his people, one reason being that he belonged to the tribe of Levi, the tribe that was faithful to its God even in the land of Egypt, though the other tribes wavered in their allegiance, and attempted to ally themselves with the Egyptians, going so far as to give up Abraham's sign of the covenant.<sup>28</sup> To chastise the Hebrews for their impiety, God turned the love of the Egyptians for them into hatred, so that they resolved upon their destruction. Mindful of all that he and his people owed to Joseph's wise rule, Pharaoh refused at first to entertain the malicious plans proposed by the Egyptians against the Hebrews. He spoke to his people, "You fools, we are indebted to these Hebrews for whatever we enjoy, and you desire now to rise up against them?" But the Egyptians could not be turned aside from their purpose of ruining Israel. They deposed their king, and incarcerated him for three months, until he declared himself ready to execute with determination what they had resolved upon, and he sought to bring about the ruin of the children of Israel by every conceivable means. Such was the retribution they had drawn down upon themselves by their own acts.<sup>29</sup>

As for Amram, not only did he belong to the tribe of Levi, distinguished for its piety, but by reason of his extraordinary piety he was prominent even among the pious of the tribe. He was one of the four who were immaculate, untainted by sin, over whom death would have had no

power, had mortality not been decreed against every single human being on account of the fall of the first man and woman. The other three that led the same sinless life were Benjamin, Jesse the father of David, and Chileab the son of David.<sup>30</sup> If the Shekinah was drawn close again to the dwelling-place of mortals, it was due to Amram's piety. Originally the real residence of the Shekinah was among men, but when Adam committed his sin, she withdrew to heaven, at first to the lowest of the seven heavens. Thence she was banished by Cain's crime, and she retired to the second heaven. The sins of the generation of Enoch removed her still farther off from men, she took up her abode in the third heaven; then, successively, in the fourth, on account of the malefactors in the generation of the deluge; in the fifth, during the building of the tower of Babel and the confusion of tongues; in the sixth, by reason of the wicked Egyptians at the time of Abraham; and, finally, in the seventh, in consequence of the abominations of the inhabitants of Sodom. Six righteous men, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Levi, Kohath, and Amram, drew the Shekinah back, one by one, from the seventh to the first heaven, and through the seventh righteous man, Moses, she was made to descend to the earth and abide among men as aforetime.<sup>31</sup>

Amram's sagacity kept pace with his piety and his learning. The Egyptians succeeded in enslaving the Hebrews by seductive promises. At first they gave them a shekel for every brick they made, tempting them to superhuman efforts by the prospect of earning much money. Later, when the Egyptians forced them to work without wages, they insisted upon having as many bricks as the Hebrews had made when their labor was paid for, but they could demand only a single brick daily from Amram, for he had been the only one whom they had not led astray by their artifice. He had been satisfied with a single shekel



daily, and had therefore made only a single brick daily, which they had to accept afterward as the measure of his day's work.<sup>32</sup>

As his life partner, Amram chose his aunt Jochebed, who was born the same day with him.<sup>33</sup> She was the daughter of Levi, and she owed her name, "Divine Splendor," to the celestial light that radiated from her countenance.<sup>34</sup> She was worthy of being her husband's helpmeet, for she was one of the midwives that had imperilled their own lives to rescue the little Hebrew babes. Indeed, if God had not allowed a miracle to happen, she and her daughter Miriam would have been killed by Pharaoh for having resisted his orders and saved the Hebrew children alive. When the king sent his hangmen for the two women, God caused them to become invisible, and the bailiffs had to return without accomplishing their errand.<sup>35</sup>

The first child of the union between Amram and Jochebed, his wife, who was one hundred and twenty-six years old at the time of her marriage, was a girl, and the mother called her Miriam, "Bitterness," for it was at the time of her birth that the Egyptians began to envenom the life of the Hebrews. The second child was a boy, called Aaron, which means, "Woe unto this pregnancy!" because Pharaoh's instructions to the midwives, to kill the male children of the Hebrews, was proclaimed during the months before Aaron's birth.<sup>36</sup>

27. Mekilta RS, 3; Sotah 12a; ShR 1. 13, where ראש סינהדרין is the same as גדול הדור in Talmud; see Pesahim 70b, and Büchler, *The Political . . . Leaders of the Jewish Community of Sepphoris*, 9; PR 43, 180a–180b; BaR 13. 20; Koheleth 9. 17; MHG II, 12–13; Dibre ha-Yamim 2. Another version of this legend is given by ps.–Philo, 10c, according to which the leaders of the people ordered all Israel to stop propagating the race; but Amram, trusting in God, the Savior and Redeemer of Israel, objected to the command of the leaders, and finally succeeded in making

them repeal the prohibition against the propagation of the race. Comp. note 37.

28. Sifre N., 67; ShR 1. 8; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 3, which reads: Amram, one of the nobler sort of the Hebrews. Compare footnote 409 on p. 673.

29. Sotah 11a; ShR 1. 8; Tan. B. II, 4; Tan. Shemot 5. As to the dissenting view which maintains that Pharaoh the persecutor of the Hebrews is not identical with the king of Egypt at the time of Joseph, see note 5. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 1, agrees with the latter view, and dates the anti-Israelitish policy of the Egyptians from the coming into power of a new dynasty. This author remarks that the Egyptians who were indolent and effeminate envied the industrious and successful Hebrews. Tan., *loc. cit.*, says that the theatres and circuses were filled with the Hebrews, and this caused envy and enmity. "Ingratitude is as grave a sin as idolatry"; Pharaoh began with the one and ended with the other. He pretended that he did not know of any service rendered by Joseph to Egypt (comp. Exod. 1. 8), and subsequently said: "I know not the Lord" (*ibid.* 5. 2); MHG II, 7; ShR and Tanhumas, *loc. cit.*

30. Baba Batra 17a; Targum on Ruth (end); Ma'ase Torah 94, where Benjamin is counted among the distinguished persons. On Amram's piety comp. also Tan. B. IV, 16, where it is said that Israel was redeemed from Egypt on account of the merits of Amram and his wife Jochebed. The latter, however, was not the equal of her husband, as shown by her exposing the infant Moses to danger; WR 2. 1 and Koheleth 7. 28. Comp. note 46, end. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 2, describes this couple as the noblest of their time. See also Zohar II, 19; Sifre Z., 109; text on p. 513, as well as p. 969.

31. PK 1, 1b; PR 5, 18b; BaR 12. 6 and 13. 2; BR 19. 7; Shir 5. 1; Tan. Pekude 6 and Naso 16; Tan. B. IV, 24, and III, 110; Tehillim 75, 338; Hallel 101; compare with p. 660. The Hellenistic writers, as well as the Rabbis, call attention to the fact that Moses was the seventh generation from Abraham; comp. Demetrius 10, 29, 438d; Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 2; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 6; PK 23, 154b–155a, and the parallel passages cited by Buber. Compare footnote 17 on p. 450, and Index, s. v. "Seven."

32. MHG II, 8. A similar legend is found in *Hadar*, *Da'at*, and *Imre No'am* on Exod. 1. 13, according to which the entire tribe of Levi was too wise to be deceived by Pharaoh. See also ShR 1. 11 and 5. 18; Tan. Ki-Teze 9; comp. note 9.

33. 12 Testaments, Levi 12. Levi had two wives, from one he begot Kehath and from the other Jochebed. In view of the fact that before the revelation on mount Sinai only maternal relationships were taken into consideration, the marriage of Amram and Jochebed was in accordance with the law; see Sahnhedrin 58b; Onkelos and Lekah Exod. 6. 20; text on p. 698. The name of Jochebed's mother was Otah; *Hadar* and *Da'at* on Num. 26. 59.



34. MHG II, 11 (based on a midrashic work on Prov., but not found in Midrash Mishle) and 13; comp. note 30 towards the end.

35. MHG II, 11 (read *ועשה* instead of *וכסה*), where it is also stated that the same miracle happened to the two spies who lodged at the house of Rahab; compare with p. 843.

36. Yashar Shemot, 128a; Dibre ha-Yamim 2 (read *ומהם השליך ליאור*). The etymology of the name Miriam is found in old sources; comp. Seder 'Olam 3; PR 5, 50a; see also the etymological explanations given of the names Merari and Malol in text on pp. 438 and 467. The etymology of Aaron *אהרן* as standing for *אה הרון* "woe to this pregnancy" is also found in 12 Testaments, Levi 17. Jochebed's age at the time of her marriage was, according to old sources, one hundred and thirty years; see Sotah 12a; ShR 1. 19; Baba Batra 12a; compare footnote 38 and p. 668.

## THE BIRTH OF MOSES

When Amram separated from his wife on account of the edict published against the male children of the Hebrews, and his example was followed by all the Israelites, his daughter Miriam said to him: "Father, thy decree is worse than Pharaoh's decree. The Egyptians aim to destroy only the male children, but thou includest the girls as well. Pharaoh deprives his victims of life in this world, but thou preventest children from being born, and thus thou deprivest them of the future life, too. He resolves destruction, but who knows whether the intention of the wicked can persist? Thou art a righteous man, and the enactments of the righteous are executed by God, hence thy decree will be upheld."

Amram recognized the justice of her plea, and he repaired to the Sanhedrin, and put the matter before this body. The members of the court spoke, and said: "It was thou that didst separate husbands and wives, and from thee should go forth the permission for re-marriage." Amram then made the proposition that each of the members of the Sanhedrin return to his wife, and wed her clandestinely, but his colleagues repudiated

the plan, saying, "And who will make it known unto the whole of Israel?"

Accordingly, Amram stood publicly under the wedding canopy with his divorced wife Jochebed, while Aaron and Miriam danced about it, and the angels proclaimed, "Let the mother of children be joyful!" His re-marriage was solemnized with great ceremony, to the end that the men that had followed his example in divorcing their wives might imitate him now in taking them again unto themselves. And so it happened.<sup>37</sup>

Old as Jochebed was, she regained her youth. Her skin became soft, the wrinkles in her face disappeared, the warm tints of maiden beauty returned, and in a short time she became pregnant.<sup>38</sup>

Amram was very uneasy about his wife's being with child; he knew not what to do. He turned to God in prayer, and entreated Him to have compassion upon those who had in no wise transgressed the laws of His worship, and afford them deliverance from the misery they endured, while He rendered abortive the hope of their enemies, who yearned for the destruction of their nation. God had mercy on him, and He stood by him in his sleep, and exhorted him not to despair of His future favors. He said further, that He did not forget their piety, and He would always reward them for it, as He had granted His favor in other days unto their forefathers. "Know, therefore," the Lord continued to speak, "that I shall provide for you all together what is for your good, and for thee in particular that which shall make thee celebrated; for the child out of dread of whose nativity the Egyptians have doomed the Israelite children to destruction, shall be this child of thine, and he shall remain concealed from those who watch to destroy him, and when he has been bred up, in a miraculous way, he shall deliver the Hebrew nation from the distress they are under by reason of the Egyptians. His memory shall be celebrated while the world lasts, and not only among the Hebrews,



but among strangers also. And all this shall be the effect of My favor toward thee and thy posterity. Also his brother shall be such that he shall obtain My priesthood for himself, and for his posterity after him, unto the end of the world.”

After he had been informed of these things by the vision, Amram awoke, and told all unto his wife Jochebed.<sup>39</sup>

His daughter Miriam likewise had a prophetic dream, and she related it unto her parents, saying: “In this night I saw a man clothed in fine linen. ‘Tell thy father and thy mother,’ he said, ‘that he who shall be born unto them, shall be cast into the waters, and through him the waters shall become dry, and wonders and miracles shall be performed through him, and he shall save My people Israel, and be their leader forever.’”<sup>40</sup>

During her pregnancy, Jochebed observed that the child in her womb was destined for great things. All the time she suffered no pain, and also she suffered none in giving birth to her son, for pious women are not included in the curse pronounced upon Eve, decreeing sorrow in conception and in childbearing.<sup>41</sup>

At the moment of the child’s appearance, the whole house was filled with radiance equal to the splendor of the sun and the moon.<sup>42</sup> A still greater miracle followed. The infant was not yet a day old when he began to walk and speak with his parents, and as though he were an adult, he refused to drink milk from his mother’s breast.<sup>43</sup>

Jochebed gave birth to the child six months after conception. The Egyptian bailiffs, who kept strict watch over all pregnant women in order to be on the spot in time to carry off their newborn boys, had not expected her delivery for three months more. These three months the parents succeeded in keeping the babe concealed, though every Israelitish house was guarded by two Egyptian women, one stationed within and one without.<sup>44</sup> At the end of this time they determined to expose the child, for Amram was

afraid that both he and his son would be devoted to death if the secret leaked out, and he thought it better to entrust the child’s fate to Divine Providence. He was convinced that God would protect the boy, and fulfil His word in truth.<sup>45</sup>

---

37. Sotah 12a; Mekilta RS, 3; PR 43, 180b, and the sources referred to in note 27. Amram married “for the sake of heaven,” and God swore that the issue of this union will carry the scroll of the Torah in their arms; ER 29, 157; EZ 3, 177; Nispahim 9. Maimonides, *Yad ha-Hazakah, Melakim* 9. 1, following an unknown source, writes: God revealed several laws to Amram.

38. Sotah 12a; Baba Batra 120a; ShR 1. 19. Compare with p. 668, 785, and 808.

39. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 3–4.

40. Ps.–Philo, 10–11, from which it was incorporated in Yerahmeel 42. 8. The description of the man clothed in fine linen is, of course, taken from Ezekiel 10. 2, and according to the view of the Rabbis, he is identical with Gabriel; comp. Tan. B. III, 84. Zohar II, 19a, maintains that it was Gabriel who brought Amram and Jochebed together after they had been separated; compare with text on p. 475, with reference to the angels participating in the celebration of Amram’s second wedding with Jochebed. On Miriam’s prophecy see text on p. 477.

41. Sotah 12a; ShR 1. 20; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 4.

42. Mekilta RS, 71; Sotah 12a; ShR 1. 20; Yashar Shemot, 130b; Zohar II, 11b. The primordial light, which God had hidden shortly after its creation (see text on p. 5), shone upon Moses during the first three months of his life; it was withdrawn from him as soon as Pharaoh’s daughter took him to her house; it came back to him when he ascended on mount Sinai, and remained with him till the end of his life. It was by means of this light that he was able to survey the whole of Palestine in the twinkling of an eye (text on p. 813); Zohar II, 11b; comp. also *Kad ha-Kemah, Hanukkah*, 11a. On the appearing of celestial lights at the birth of heroes, see footnote 1 on p. 133.

43. DR 11. 9, 120b; compare p. 828–829. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 3, remarks: The boy, immediately after his birth, showed a noble appearance different from that of an ordinary child. On the speaking of babes, comp. Index, s. v. “Babes, Speaking of.”

44. Mekilta RS, 3; Sotah 12b; Targum Yerushalmi on Exod. 2. 2; Yashar Shemot, 130b; Dibre ha-Yamim 2; MHG II, 13 (all prophets are seven-month children); ShR 1. 20. The last-named source, as well as Mekilta RS and Talmud, maintain that Jochebed had been pregnant for three months at the time of her separation from Amram



(compare with pp. 473, 475); but the Egyptians could not notice her condition. The same view is also found in ps.—Philo, 10d, where the text needs to be emended. The statement in MHG that Moses was born on the seventh of Adar is based on an old tradition; comp. Seder 'Olam 10, and the numerous parallel passages cited by Ratner. In all these sources it is remarked that Moses' death also took place on the seventh of Adar, in accordance with the rule that the righteous die on the day of the anniversary of their birth; compare footnote 60 on p. 127. Hippolytus, on Deut. 33. 11, gives the seventh of Iyyar as the day of Moses's death; but in view of the statement of the Rabbis, Iyyar is perhaps to be emended to Adar. MHG is the only source for the legend that Jochebed was pregnant with Moses for only six months and two days. *Kafor wa-Ferah*, XLVII, 640, reads: Moses, the light of the world, was born in the year two thousand and sixty-eight (A. M.), on Tuesday the sixth of Adar; the new moon of this Adar was Thursday, one hour and twenty-two parts of an hour. Comp. notes 3 and 23.

45. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 4.

## MOSES RESCUED FROM THE WATER

Jochebed accordingly took an ark fashioned of bulrushes, daubed it with pitch on the outside, and lined it with clay within. The reason she used bulrushes was because they float on the surface of the water, and she put pitch only on the outside, to protect the child as much as possible against the annoyance of a disagreeable odor. Over the child as it lay in the ark she spread a tiny canopy, to shade the babe, with the words, "Perhaps I shall not live to see him under the marriage canopy." And then she abandoned the ark on the shores of the Red Sea. Yet it was not left unguarded. Her daughter Miriam stayed near by, to discover whether a prophecy she had uttered would be fulfilled. Before the child's birth, his sister had foretold that her mother would bring forth a son that should redeem Israel. When he was born, and the house was filled with brilliant light, Amram kissed her on her head, but when he was forced into the expedient of exposing the child, he beat her on her

head, saying, "My daughter, what hath become of thy prophecy?" Therefore Miriam stayed, and strolled along the shore, to observe what would be the fate of the babe, and what would come of her prophecy concerning him.<sup>46</sup>

The day the child was exposed was the twenty-first of the month of Nisan, the same on which the children of Israel later, under the leadership of Moses, sang the song of praise and gratitude to God for the redemption from the waters of the sea. The angels appeared before God, and spoke: "O Lord of the world, shall he that is appointed to sing a song of praise unto Thee on this day of Nisan, to thank Thee for rescuing him and his people from the sea, shall he find his death in the sea to-day?" The Lord replied: "Ye know well that I see all things. The contriving of man can do naught to change what hath been resolved in My counsel. Those do not attain their end who use cunning and malice to secure their own safety, and endeavor to bring ruin upon their fellow-men. But he who trusts Me in his peril will be conveyed from profoundest distress to unlooked-for happiness. Thus My omnipotence will reveal itself in the fortunes of this babe."<sup>47</sup>

At the time of the child's abandonment, God sent scorching heat to plague the Egyptians, and they all suffered with leprosy and smarting boils. Thermutis, the daughter of Pharaoh, sought relief from the burning pain in a bath in the waters of the Nile.<sup>48</sup> But physical discomfort was not her only reason for leaving her father's palace. She was determined to cleanse herself as well of the impurity of the idol worship that prevailed there.

When she saw the little ark floating among the flags on the surface of the water, she supposed it to contain one of the little children exposed at her father's order, and she commanded her handmaids to fetch it. But they protested, saying, "O our mistress, it happens sometimes that a decree issued by a king is unheeded, yet it



is observed at least by his children and the members of his household, and dost thou desire to transgress thy father's edict?" Forthwith the angel Gabriel appeared, seized all the maids except one, whom he permitted the princess to retain for her service, and buried them in the bowels of the earth.

Pharaoh's daughter now proceeded to do her own will. She stretched forth her arm, and although the ark was swimming at a distance of sixty ells, she succeeded in grasping it, because her arm was lengthened miraculously. No sooner had she touched it than the leprosy afflicting her departed from her. Her sudden restoration led her to examine the contents of the ark,<sup>49</sup> and when she opened it, her amazement was great. She beheld an exquisitely beautiful boy, for God had fashioned the Hebrew babe's body with peculiar care,<sup>50</sup> and beside it she perceived the Shekinah. Noticing that the boy bore the sign of the Abrahamic covenant, she knew that he was one of the Hebrew children, and mindful of her father's decree concerning the male children of the Israelites, she was about to abandon the babe to his fate. At that moment the angel Gabriel came and gave the child a vigorous blow, and he began to cry aloud, with a voice like a young man's. His vehement weeping and the weeping of Aaron, who was lying beside him, touched the princess, and in her pity she resolved to save him. She ordered an Egyptian woman to be brought, to nurse the child, but the little one refused to take milk from her breast, as he refused to take it from one after the other of the Egyptian women fetched thither. Thus it had been ordained by God, that none of them might boast later on, and say, "I suckled him that holds converse now with the Shekinah." Nor was the mouth destined to speak with God to draw nourishment from the unclean body of an Egyptian woman.

Now Miriam stepped into the presence of Thermutis, as though she had been standing there

by chance to look at the child,<sup>51</sup> and she spoke to the princess, saying, "It is vain for thee, O queen, to call for nurses that are in no wise of kin to the child, but if thou wilt order a woman of the Hebrews to be brought, he may accept her breast, seeing that she is of his own nation." Thermutis therefore bade Miriam fetch a Hebrew woman, and with winged steps, speeding like a vigorous youth, she hastened and brought back her own mother, the child's mother, for she knew that none present was acquainted with her. The babe, unresisting, took his mother's breast, and clutched it tightly.<sup>52</sup> The princess committed the child to Jochebed's care, saying these words, which contained an unconscious divination: "Here is what is thine."<sup>53</sup> Nurse the boy henceforth, and I will give thee two silver pieces as thy wages."<sup>54</sup>

The return of her son, safe and sound, after she had exposed him, was Jochebed's reward from God for her services as one of the midwives that had bidden defiance to Pharaoh's command and saved the Hebrew children alive.<sup>55</sup>

By exposing their son to danger, Amram and Jochebed had effected the withdrawal of Pharaoh's command enjoining the extermination of the Hebrew men children. The day Moses was set adrift in the little ark, the astrologers had come to Pharaoh and told him the glad tidings, that the danger threatening the Egyptians on account of one boy, whose doom lay in the water, had now been averted. Thereupon Pharaoh cried a halt to the drowning of the boys of his empire. The astrologers had seen something, but they knew not what, and they announced a message, the import of which they did not comprehend. Water was, indeed, the doom of Moses, but that did not mean that he would perish in the waters of the Nile. It had reference to the waters of Meribah, the waters of strife, and how they would cause his death in the desert, before he had completed his task of leading the people into the promised land. Pharaoh, misled by the obscure



vision of his astrologers, thought that the future redeemer of Israel was to lose his life by drowning, and to make sure that the boy whose appearance was foretold by the astrologers might not escape his fate, he had ordered all boys, even the children of the Egyptians, born during a period of nine months to be cast into the water.

On account of the merits of Moses, the six hundred thousand men children of the Hebrews begotten in the same night with him, and thrown into the water on the same day, were rescued miraculously together with him, and it was therefore not an idle boast, if he said later, “The people that went forth out of the water on account of my merits are six hundred thousand men.”<sup>56</sup>

---

46. Sotah 12a–13a; ShR 1. 21–22; Mishle 14, 74–75, and 31, 111; BaR 13. 20; Mekilta Shirah 10, 44a; Mekilta RS, 71. Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1, 22, gives a similar description of the ark. In Talmud, *loc. cit.* (ShR is a literal quotation from it), two views are cited concerning the meaning of סִינַי (Exod. 2. 3). According to one, it is the same as יַם סוּף “Red Sea,” while according to the other, it signifies “swamp.” Jochebed did not endanger the life of the infant Moses, as she abandoned him only for a short time, so that the Egyptian astrologers (compare with p. 478) may be misled in believing that the promised redeemer of Israel found his grave in the water. The astrologers sometimes have visions of future happenings, but they never “see clearly”; ShR, *loc. cit.* This tendency to exonerate Jochebed of the crime of exposing her child to danger is also noticeable in the tragedian Ezekiel, 475, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 4, who state that Moses’ mother placed Miriam near the water to see “whether the ark would be carried away.” For the other view, blaming Jochebed for this act, see note 30.

47. Sotah 12b; ShR 1. 24. The answer given by God to the angels is also mentioned, in a somewhat different form, by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 4. Sotah, *loc. cit.*, quotes an opinion that Moses was put into the river on the sixth day of Siwan, the day of the revelation of the Torah on mount Sinai; comp. MHG II, 13.

48. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 2. 5 (in the source cited by Ginsburger there is nothing bearing upon this legend); PRE 48. Yashar Shemot, 130b–131a, Dibre ha-Yamim 3, and Ephraim on Exod, *loc. cit.*, speak of an unusual heat which God sent upon Egypt, and thus the princess was

compelled to go to bathe in the Nile. The name Thermutis is only found in Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 5, and Jub. 47, as well as in later, mostly Christian, sources dependent on these two authorities; see Rönsch, *Das Buch der Jubiläen*, 265. In rabbinic literature the name of Moses’ foster-mother is Bithiah; see note 60. Sibyll. 3, 253, speaks of the queen who saved Moses from death by drowning; this is not to be taken literally, as proved by Josephus who makes Miriam address the woman who delivered Moses from death as queen, though he himself explicitly states that she was the daughter, not the wife, of the king. Artapanus 9, 27, 432, calls Pharaoh’s daughter Merois and her husband Chenephes, king of Memphis. She adopted Moses because she was childless; this view is also found in Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 4, and Josephus, *op. cit.*, 7. Philo adds that she was the only child of Pharaoh and very much loved by him; on account of her childlessness she was always depressed and sad. In an attack of melancholy, Pharaoh’s daughter, accustomed to indoor life, left her house to seek solace for her aching heart in God’s free nature. She betook herself to the river where she found the infant Moses. Comp. note 226.

49. Sotah 12b; ShR 1. 23; comp. Lekah, Exod. 2. 10.

50. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 5; Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 3. On the beauty of Moses see text on pp. 481, 489, 512.

51. Sotah 12b; ShR 1. 24. The view that the Hebrews only were circumcised, but not the Egyptians, so that the infant was easily recognized as a Hebrew child, is shared also by Ephraim, I, 178c, and Theodoretus on Exod. 2. 6, whereas Aphraates, 210, rejects it on the ground that Joseph introduced the ceremony of circumcision among the Egyptians. The last statement is also found in rabbinic literature but with the modification that the Egyptians abandoned this rite after Joseph’s death; compare footnote 196 on p. 370. According to a widespread legend, Moses was born with the sign of the covenant on his body (comp. Sotah 12a; ShR 1. 20; DR 11. 9; compare footnote 318 on p. 248). PRE 48, on the contrary, dwells upon the fact that the parents of Moses circumcised him on the eighth day after his birth. As to the infant’s refusal to take milk from the breast of an Egyptian woman, compare with p. 476, according to which he did not take any milk, not even from the breast of his own mother. This Haggadah takes וְתִנְקֶהוּ (Exod. 2. 9) in the applied sense: the woman was called to nurse him “and not to give him the breast.” In the fuller form of the suffix וְתִנְקֶהוּ, instead of וְתִנְקֶהוּ, the Haggadah finds support for this view. Comp. the following note.

52. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 5, who remarks also that Miriam acted as though she had come that way by chance. The same observation is made by the Rabbis, Sotah 12b and ShR 1. 24.

53. Sotah 12b; ShR 1. 25; MHG II, 14, with the addition that Jochebed pretended to fear to take charge of the child, and she consented to do it only after she had been



assured by the princess that there was no reason to apprehend any unpleasant consequences.

54. Yashar Shemot, 131; Dibre ha-Yamim 3.

55. ShR 1. 25.

56. Sotah 12b; ShR 1. 18 and 24; Sanhedrin 101b; Shir 2. 15; BR 97. 3; Koheleth 1. 4; MHG II, 12. Opinions differ as to the time during which this edict was in force. Sotah limits it to one day, ShR 1. 18 to ten or twelve months, Jub. 47. 2 to seven months, and PRE 48 to three and a half years. If the last view, which is difficult to explain, is disregarded (comp. Luria, *ad loc.*), the difference of opinion among the other sources is easily understood. The edict against the Hebrew male children was due to the information Pharaoh had received from the astrologers concerning the approaching birth of the redeemer of the Hebrews (comp. note 21). According to the Talmud, they were mistaken in believing that the night on which they saw their vision was the night of the conception, and hence they counted seven months from that time. In this they erred, for Jochebed had already at that time been pregnant for three months (comp. note 44), so that on the day when the edict was put into execution Moses was already three months old. ShR is of the opinion that the edict was put into force immediately after the astrologers informed Pharaoh of the impending danger, on the very night when Jochebed conceived, and was continued to be applied until they informed him that the danger had passed, that is, when Moses was thrown into the river and they believed him drowned; hence the edict lasted for ten months (this supposes that Moses was born after seven months of pregnancy; comp. note 44), or twelve months (if he was born after the regular time of pregnancy). The text of Jub. is certainly corrupt, since it flatly contradicts the statement of Scripture that Jochebed put Moses in the river when he was three months old, and accordingly the edict must have lasted some time after his birth. It is quite likely that the Hebrew original of this work read **עַד הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁלַכְתָּ בּוֹ**, but the Greek translator misread **הַשְׁלַכְתָּ** as **נוֹלַדְתָּ**, and the seven months are to be counted from the third month of Jochebed's pregnancy until Moses was three months old; comp. ps.—Philo, 10D, and BR 85, 10, where it is stated that the pregnancy of a woman becomes noticeable at the end of the third month. On the number of children thrown into the water; see note 4.

## THE INFANCY OF MOSES

For two years the child rescued by Pharaoh's daughter stayed with his parents and kindred. They gave him various names. His father

called him Heber, because it was for this child's sake that he had been "reunited" with his wife. His mother's name for him was Jekuthiel, "because," she said, "I set my hope upon God, and He gave him back to me." To his sister Miriam he was Jered, because she had "descended" to the stream to ascertain his fate. His brother Aaron called him Abi Zanoah, because his father, who had "cast off" his mother, had taken her back for the sake of the child to be born. His grandfather Kohath knew him as Abi Gedor, because the Heavenly Father had "built up" the breach in Israel, when He rescued him, and thus restrained the Egyptians from throwing the Hebrew men children into the water. His nurse called him Abi Soco, because he had been kept concealed in a "tent" for three months, escaping the pursuit of the Egyptians. And Israel called him Shemaiah ben Nethanel, because in his day God would "hear" the sighs of the people, and deliver them from their oppressors, and through him would He "give" them His own law.<sup>57</sup>

His kindred and all Israel knew that the child was destined for great things, for he was barely four months old when he began to prophesy, saying, "In days to come I shall receive the Torah from the flaming torch."<sup>58</sup>

When Jochebed took the child to the palace at the end of two years, Pharaoh's daughter called him Moses, because she had "drawn" him out of the water, and because he would "draw" the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt in a day to come.<sup>59</sup> And this was the only name whereby God called the son of Amram, the name conferred upon him by Pharaoh's daughter. He said to the princess: "Moses was not thy child, yet thou didst treat him as such. For this I will call thee My daughter, though thou art not My daughter," and therefore the princess, the daughter of Pharaoh, bears the name Bithiah, "the daughter of God." She married Caleb later on, and he was a suitable husband for her. As she



stood up against her father's wicked counsels, so Caleb stood up against the counsel of his fellow-messengers sent to spy out the land of Canaan.<sup>60</sup> For rescuing Moses and for her other pious deeds, she was permitted to enter Paradise alive.<sup>61</sup>

That Moses might receive the treatment at court usually accorded to a prince, Bithiah pretended that she was with child for some time before she had him fetched away from his parents' house.<sup>62</sup> His royal foster-mother caressed and kissed him constantly, and on account of his extraordinary beauty she would not permit him ever to quit the palace. Whoever set eyes on him, could not leave off from looking at him, wherefore Bithiah feared to allow him out of her sight.<sup>63</sup>

Moses' understanding was far beyond his years; his instructors observed that he disclosed keener comprehension than is usual at his age. All his actions in his infancy promised greater ones after he should come to man's estate, and when he was but three years old, God granted him remarkable size. As for his beauty, it was so attractive that frequently those meeting him as he was carried along on the road were obliged to turn and stare at him. They would leave what they were about, and stand still a great while, looking after him, for the loveliness of the child was so wondrous that it held the gaze of the spectator. The daughter of Pharaoh, perceiving Moses to be an extraordinary lad, adopted him as her son, for she had no child of her own. She informed her father of her intention concerning him, in these words: "I have brought up a child, who is divine in form and of an excellent mind, and as I received him through the bounty of the river in a wonderful way, I have thought it proper to adopt him as my son and as the heir of thy kingdom." And when she had spoken thus, she put the infant between her father's hands, and he took him and hugged him close to his breast.<sup>64</sup>

57. Yashar Shemot, 131a; WR 1. 3; Dibre ha-Yamim 3 (the text is corrupt); PRE 48; Megillah 13a; Targum on 1 Chron. 4. 18; comp. also Lekah Exod. 2. 10 and the piyyut (geonic?) **התקבצו מלאכים** for the Day of Rejoicing of the Law according to the Ashkenazic ritual. In the last source Moses has two additional names: Nathaniel (=Nethanel) and Tobiah; this is due to a peculiar interpretation of WR, where, according to the context, the three names comprising the word Abi are to be counted double, and hence Moses had ten names including the name by which he is generally known; but the paitan considered Abi as the inseparable part of the name, and in order to secure ten names for the prophet, he was obliged to add two names. Ps.—Philo, 11A, states that Jochebed named her son Melkiel (**מלכיאל**), and Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1. 21, agrees with this.

58. DR 11. 9. Compare with pp. 828–829, as well as p. 476.

59. MHG II, 14; Lekah, Exod. 2. 10. The Haggadah attempts to answer the question why the baby was called **משה** "the drawer," instead of **משוי** "the drawn." Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 4, and similarly Josephus, *Antiqui.*, 11, 9. 5, as well as *Contra Apionem*, 1. 31, derive the name Moses from the Egyptian *Moy* "water." The similarity between the names Moses and Musaeus is responsible for the identification of the lawgiver of the Hebrews with Musaeus the Greek sage found in syncretistic writings; comp. e. g., Artapanus, 434. See note 69.

60. WR 1. 3; Megillah 13a, and in many other passages of rabbinic literature (comp. Index, s. v. "Bithiah"). The daughter of Pharaoh with the name Bithiah, mentioned in 1 Chron. 4. 8, is taken to be the foster-mother of Moses, and this view seems to have been known to Eusebius. On Caleb see text on pp. 469 and 461.

61. Mishle 31, 111; 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 28b; Derek Erez Zuta 1 (end); comp. Index, s. v. "Paradise, Entering Alive Into." According to Artapanus, 433c, Moses' foster-mother died before he had fled from Egypt.

62. Artapanus, 432; Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 3; this opinion is very likely shared by Ezekiel, the tragedian, 458b. Comp. Hebrews 12. 23, as well as text on p. 487.

63. Tan. Shemot 8; ShR 1. 26. Comp. the following note as well as note 50.

64. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 6–7. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 5, and ShR 1. 26 also dwell upon the precocity of the infant Moses. The statement of ShR that he remained for twenty-four months with his mother is to be explained in accordance with Tosefta Nedarim 2. 1 and Ketubot 60a, where the time of nursing is fixed at twenty-four months. Josephus accordingly says that Moses began to display his extraordinary faculties in his third year, i. e., after he was taken from his nurse Jochebed and brought to the royal house. Comp., however, note 50. On the beauty and charm



of Moses see notes 50 and 63, as well as Ecclesiasticus 44. 22–45. 1. It is a prominent feature of legend to paint the infancy and youth of their heroes in glowing colors; comp. *e. g.*, Luke 3. 52, and the numerous Christian legends about the infant Jesus. See Acts 8. 20 and notes 42–43.

## MOSES RESCUED BY GABRIEL

When Moses was in his third year, Pharaoh was dining one day, with the queen Alfar'anit at his right hand, his daughter Bithiah with the infant Moses upon her lap at his left, and Balaam the son of Beor together with his two sons and all the princes of the realm sitting at table in the king's presence. It happened that the infant took the crown from off the king's head, and placed it on his own. When the king and the princes saw this, they were terrified, and each one in turn expressed his astonishment. The king said unto the princes, "What speak you, and what say you, O ye princes, on this matter, and what is to be done to this Hebrew boy on account of this act?"

Balaam spoke, saying: "Remember now, O my lord and king, the dream which thou didst dream many days ago, and how thy servant interpreted it unto thee. Now this is a child of the Hebrews in whom is the spirit of God. Let not my lord the king imagine in his heart that being a child he did the thing without knowledge. For he is a Hebrew boy, and wisdom and understanding are with him, although he is yet a child, and with wisdom has he done this, and chosen unto himself the kingdom of Egypt. For this is the manner of all the Hebrews, to deceive kings and their magnates, to do all things cunningly in order to make the kings of the earth and their men to stumble.

"Surely thou knowest that Abraham their father acted thus, who made the armies of Nimrod king of Babel and of Abimelech king of

Gerar to stumble, and he possessed himself of the land of the children of Heth and the whole realm of Canaan. Their father Abraham went down into Egypt, and said of Sarah his wife, She is my sister, in order to make Egypt and its king to stumble.

"His son Isaac did likewise when he went to Gerar, and he dwelt there, and his strength prevailed over the army of Abimelech, and he intended to make the kingdom of the Philistines to stumble, by saying that Rebekah his wife was his sister.

"Jacob also dealt treacherously with his brother, and took his birthright and his blessing from him. Then he went to Paddan-aram, to Laban, his mother's brother, and he obtained his daughters from him cunningly, and also his cattle and all his belongings, and he fled away and returned to the land of Canaan, to his father.

"His sons sold their brother Joseph, and he went down into Egypt and became a slave, and he was put into prison for twelve years, until the former Pharaoh delivered him from the prison, and magnified him above all the princes of Egypt on account of his interpreting the king's dreams. When God caused a famine to descend upon the whole world, Joseph sent for his father, and he brought him down into Egypt his father, his brethren, and all his father's household, and he supplied them with food without pay or reward, while he acquired Egypt, and made slaves of all its inhabitants.

"Now, therefore, my lord king, behold, this child has risen up in their stead in Egypt, to do according to their deeds and make sport of every man, be he king, prince, or judge. If it please the king, let us now spill his blood upon the ground, lest he grow up and snatch the government from thine hand, and the hope of Egypt be cut off after he reigns. Let us, moreover, call for all the judges and the wise men of Egypt, that we may know whether the judgment of



death be due to this child, as I have said, and then we will slay him.”

Pharaoh sent and called for all the wise men of Egypt, and they came, and the angel Gabriel was disguised as one of them. When they were asked their opinion in the matter, Gabriel spoke up, and said: “If it please the king, let him place an onyx stone before the child, and a coal of fire, and if he stretches out his hand and grasps the onyx stone, then shall we know that the child hath done with wisdom all that he hath done, and we will slay him. But if he stretches out his hand and grasps the coal of fire, then shall we know that it was not with consciousness that he did the thing, and he shall live.”

The counsel seemed good in the eyes of the king, and when they had placed the stone and the coal before the child, Moses stretched forth his hand toward the onyx stone and attempted to seize it, but the angel Gabriel guided his hand away from it and placed it upon the live coal, and the coal burnt the child’s hand, and he lifted it up and touched it to his mouth, and burnt part of his lips and part of his tongue, and for all his life he became slow of speech and of a slow tongue.

Seeing this, the king and the princes knew that Moses had not acted with knowledge in taking the crown from off the king’s head, and they refrained from slaying him.<sup>65</sup> God Himself, who protected Moses, turned the king’s mind to grace, and his foster-mother snatched him away, and she had him educated with great care, so that the Hebrews depended upon him, and cherished the hope that great things would be done by him. But the Egyptians were suspicious of what would follow from such an education as his.<sup>66</sup>

At great cost teachers were invited to come to Egypt from neighboring lands, to educate the child Moses. Some came of their own accord, to instruct him in the sciences and the liberal arts. By reason of his admirable endowments of

mind, he soon excelled his teachers in knowledge. His learning seemed a process of mere recollecting, and when there was a difference of opinion among scholars, he selected the correct one instinctively, for his mind refused to store up anything that was false.<sup>67</sup>

But he deserves more praise for his unusual strength of will than for his natural capacity, for he succeeded in transforming an originally evil disposition into a noble, exalted character, a change that was farther aided by his resolution, as he himself acknowledged later. After the wonderful exodus of the Israelites from Egypt, a king of Arabia sent an artist to Moses, to paint his portrait, that he might always have the likeness of the divine man before him. The painter returned with his handiwork, and the king assembled his wise men, those in particular who were conversant with the science of physiognomy. He displayed the portrait before them, and invited their judgment upon it. The unanimous opinion was that it represented a man covetous, haughty, sensual, in short, disfigured by all possible ugly traits. The king was indignant that they should pretend to be masters in physiognomy, seeing that they declared the picture of Moses, the holy, divine man, to be the picture of a villain. They defended themselves by accusing the painter in turn of not having produced a true portrait of Moses, else they would not have fallen into the erroneous judgment they had expressed. But the artist insisted that his work resembled the original closely.

Unable to decide who was right, the Arabian king went to see Moses, and he could not but admit that the portrait painted for him was a masterpiece. Moses as he beheld him in the flesh was the Moses upon the canvas. There could be no doubt but that the highly extolled knowledge of his physiognomy experts was empty twaddle. He told Moses what had happened, and what he thought of it. He replied: “Thy artist and thy experts alike are masters, each in his line. If my



fine qualities were a product of nature, I were no better than a log of wood, which remains forever as nature produced it at the first. Unashamed I make the confession to thee that by nature I possessed all the reprehensible traits thy wise men read in my picture and ascribed to me, perhaps to a greater degree even than they think. But I mastered my evil impulses with my strong will, and the character I acquired through severe discipline has become the opposite of the disposition with which I was born. Through this change, wrought in me by my own efforts, I have earned honor and commendation upon earth as well as in heaven.”<sup>68</sup>

65. Yashar Shemot 131b–132b, and, in abridged form, Dibre ha-Yamim 3–4. In ShR 1. 26 it is Jethro who advised the test with the burning coal. As to the age of Moses at this occurrence, see text on pp. 828–829. The name Alfar’anit seems to be Arabic, the feminine of Pharaoh; but comp. Syncellus, I, 227: *θερμῦθις καὶ ἡ φαρσίη*. Tertullian, *Ad Nat.*, 3. 8, and *Apologia*, 16, maintains that Faria is the same as Isis.—Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 7, does not know of the test with the burning coals, but is acquainted with the legend that Moses, while still a small child, threw the crown down from Pharaoh’s head and stamped on it with his feet. The sacred scribe (astrologers, in rabbinic sources), who had foreseen the birth of Moses and warned Pharaoh of the danger that threatened him insisted that the child be put to death. In a similar strain is the version of the legend in Tan. Shemot 8 and ShR, *loc. cit.*, whereas in Yashar, Balaam takes the place of the sacred scribe. On the Arabic version of this legend see Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 155–160. On an old Slavonic translation of this section of Yashar, see Bonwetsch, *Die Mosessage*. Comp. also Hamilton in *Zeitschrift f. Romanische Philologie*, XXXVI, 129–159.

66. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 9. 7.

67. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 5–7, who gives a very elaborate description of the course of studies of the youthful Moses. Among other things he remarks that Moses received instruction in the wisdom of the Greeks, Egyptians, and the neighboring nations. A similar description is found in Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1. 23, which is very likely taken from Philo. What Moses borrowed as a youth he repaid with considerable interest as an adult mature in years. The benefits derived by the nations, directly or indirectly, from Moses’ wisdom by far outweighed those he had received

from them. Moses, “the first sage,” taught the Hebrews the art of writing, and the Phenicians, who subsequently learned it from them, taught it in turn to the Greeks; Eupolemus, 431c. Numa, the king of the Romans, following the precepts of Moses, prohibited his people to represent the deity in human or animal form; yea, even the great Plato, to quote the Pythagorean Numenius, what was he, “but Moses speaking in Attic Greek”; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1. 15; Eusebius, *Praep. Evang.*, 410–411. The strangest expression of these syncretistic tendencies is found in the life of Moses by Artapanus, 432, *seq.* According to this author, Moses, or as he calls him, Moyses (comp. note 59), is identical with Musaeus of the Greek legend, which erroneously styles him the disciple of Orpheus, whereas he was his master. Philosophy, medicine, the invention of numerous instruments, utensils, and weapons, the hieroglyphic characters, the administrative division of Egypt into thirty-six districts, and the allotment of one district to the priests are all the work of Moses. There is therefore nothing surprising in the divine honors paid to Moses by the Egyptians who called him Hermes. On these syncretistic legends see Freudenthal, *Hellenistische Studien*, 143–198; Krauss, *Ha-Goren*, VII, 29–34; also footnote 955 on p. 834. The description of Moses’ education given by the Hellenist Ezekiel, 438b, is closely related to the one found in Philo and Josephus, and one is justified in assuming a common source (not Artapanus) upon which these three authors drew.

68. Lüpschütz, *Tiferet Israel*, Kiddushin (end). The author does not give his source, but a similar legend is found in *Shita Mekubbezet*, Nedarim (end of the third chapter; here the hero is a sage whose name is not given), and *No’am ha-Middot*, letter מ (from here it was incorporated in Midrash Eliyyahu 8), where this legend is told of Aristotle. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 6, and *De Praemiis et Poenis*, 9, likewise dwells upon Moses’ discipline over himself. Comp. also Berakot 33b, which reads: Moses spoke of the fear of God as though its attainment were a light task (comp. Deut. 10. 12), because he had reached the stage where the fear of God became second nature to him.—The rabbinic sources generally speak of “Moses our master” (משה רבינו), whereas the designation “our master Moses” is extremely rare; see Midrash Tannaim 14; WR 10. 3; PK 10, 45b; ShR 50. 2. In the three last-named passages Moses is addressed directly. It is very difficult to explain why in the case of Moses the title רבינו is put after the name, whereas in connection with other names the similar titles, like רבן, רבי, and רב, are placed before the name. Attention should be called, however, to the fact that אבינו “our father,” המלך “the king,” and הנביא, “the prophet” in post-biblical literature, follow mostly the names to which they refer. Thus, *e. g.*, the Rabbis speak of דוד המלך, in contrast to the use of the Bible, where, with one doubtful exception (2 Sam. 13. 39) דוד המלך is always employed. The talmudic and midrashic literature,



in contrast to the post-talmudic literature, hardly ever uses the title *רבינו* before any other name than that of Moses, if we except *רבינו הקדוש* as the title of the compiler of the Mishnah, and *רבינו רב* for Abba Arika, the founder of the academy at Sura. Comp. Ginzberg, *Geonica*, I, 42. The explanation of the unusual expression *משה רבינו* given in *Or ha-Hayyim* 12 and *Sefer ha-Hayyim* (introduction) is of a homiletical nature. Another title given to Moses is “the pious,” in Tadshe and the sources depending on it; comp. Epstein in the introduction to his edition of this Midrash 23. Comp., however, WR 1. 4, where *חסיד* is used as an attribute of David (see Berakot 4a) and Moses, whereas in Tadshe Jacob shares this honor with Moses. “The father of wisdom” or “of the wise” and “the father of prophecy” are often used to describe Moses; comp., e. g., Sifre N., 134, and Sifre D., 306, 132b; 2 ARN 1, 3; Mishle 25. 97; DR 9. 3; WR 1. 3; Tehillim 106, 454; ER 5, 21; 6, 33; 13, 68 (here he is called “the wisest of the wise, the greatest of the great, the father of the prophets”); 18, 83; EZ 12, 194. Moses is called “the master of all prophets” (Midrash Tan-naim 213; DR 1. 10 and 2. 1; PR 41, 144a; Tehillim 5, 56); “the master of all Israel” (Ruth R 2. 4); “the elect of the prophets” (BR 76, 1); “the best and most chosen of the prophets” (Shir 4. 9; Tehillim 1, 3); “the most chosen, the most prominent, and the most indefatigable man among all the tribes” (Shir 4. 9); “the first of the prophets” (Esther R, introduction), where “first” is to be taken in the temporal sense: “the father of all seers” (Kalir, Shahrit for *פרשת החדש*; Confession of Sin at the end of the Selihah for the eve of New Year); “king and master of Israel” (Tehillim 24, 207). On Moses as king, see Index, s. v. “Moses.”

## THE YOUTH OF MOSES

One day—it was after he was grown up, and had passed beyond the years of childhood—Moses went to the land of Goshen, in which lived the children of Israel. There he saw the burdens under which his people were groaning, and he inquired why the heavy service had been put upon them. The Israelites told him all that had befallen, told him of the cruel edict Pharaoh had issued shortly before his birth, and told him of the wicked counsels given by Balaam against themselves as well as against his person when he was but a little boy and had set Pharaoh’s crown upon his head. The wrath of Moses was kindled

against the spiteful adviser, and he tried to think out means of rendering him harmless. But Balaam, getting wind of his ill-feeling, fled from Egypt with his two sons, and betook himself to the court of Kikanos king of Ethiopia.<sup>69</sup>

The sight of his enslaved people touched Moses unto tears, and he spoke, saying: “Woe unto me for your anguish! Rather would I die than see you suffer so grievously.” He did not disdain to help his unfortunate brethren at their heavy tasks as much as lay in his power. He dismissed all thought of his high station at court, shouldered a share of the burdens put upon the Israelites, and toiled in their place. The result was that he not only gave relief to the heavily-laden workmen, but he also gained the favor of Pharaoh, who believed that Moses was taking part in the labor in order to promote the execution of the royal order. And God said unto Moses: “Thou didst relinquish all thy other occupations, and didst join thyself unto the children of Israel, whom thou dost treat as brethren; therefore will I, too, put aside now all heavenly and earthly affairs, and hold converse with thee.”<sup>70</sup>

Moses continued to do all he could to alleviate the suffering of his brethren to the best of his ability. He addressed encouraging words to them, saying: “My dear brethren, bear your lot with fortitude! Do not lose courage, and let not your spirit grow weary with the weariness of your body. Better times will come, when tribulation shall be changed into joy. Clouds are followed by sunshine, storms by calm, all things in the world tend toward their opposites, and nothing is more inconstant than the fortunes of man.”<sup>71</sup>

The royal favor, which the king accorded him in ever-increasing measure, he made use of to lighten the burden laid upon the children of Israel. One day he came into the presence of Pharaoh, and said: “O my lord, I have a request to make of thee, and my hope is that thou wilt not deny it.” “Speak,” replied the king. “It is an



admitted fact,” said Moses, “that if a slave is not afforded rest at least one day in the week, he will die of overexertion. Thy Hebrew slaves will surely perish, unless thou accordedst them a day of cessation from work.” Pharaoh fulfilled the petition preferred by Moses, and the king’s edict was published in the whole of Egypt and in Goshen, as follows: “To the sons of Israel! Thus saith the king: Do your work and perform your service for six days, but on the seventh day you shall rest; on it ye shall do no labor. Thus shall ye do unto all times, according to the command of the king and the command of Moses the son of Bithiah.” And the day appointed by Moses as the day of rest was Saturday, later given by God to the Israelites as the Sabbath day.<sup>72</sup>

While Moses abode in Goshen, an incident of great importance occurred. To superintend the service of the children of Israel, an officer from among them was set over every ten, and ten such officers were under the surveillance of an Egyptian taskmaster. One of these Hebrew officers, Dathan by name, had a wife, Shelomith, the daughter of Dibri, of the tribe of Dan, who was of extraordinary beauty, but inclined to be very loquacious. Whenever the Egyptian taskmaster set over her husband came to their house on business connected with his office, she would approach him pleasantly and enter into conversation with him. The beautiful Israelitish woman enkindled a mad passion in his breast, and he sought and found a cunning way of satisfying his lustful desire. One day he appeared at break of dawn at the house of Dathan, roused him from his sleep, and ordered him to hurry his detachment of men to their work. The husband scarcely out of sight, he executed the villainy he had planned, and dishonored the woman, and the fruit of this illicit relation was the blasphemer of the Name whom Moses ordered to execution on the march through the desert.

At the moment when the Egyptian slipped out of Shelomith’s chamber, Dathan returned

home. Vexed that his crime had come to the knowledge of the injured husband, the taskmaster goaded him on to work with excessive vigor, and dealt him blow after blow with the intention to kill him.<sup>73</sup> Young Moses happened to visit the place at which the much-abused and tortured Hebrew was at work. Dathan hastened toward him, and complained of all the wrong and suffering the Egyptian had inflicted upon him.<sup>74</sup> Full of wrath, Moses, whom the holy spirit had acquainted with the injury done the Hebrew officer by the Egyptian taskmaster, cried out to the latter, saying: “Not enough that thou hast dishonored this man’s wife, thou aimest to kill him, too!” And turning to God, he spoke further: “What will become of Thy promise to Abraham, that his posterity shall be as numerous as the stars, if his children are given over to death? And what will become of the revelation on Sinai, if the children of Israel are exterminated?”

Moses wanted to see if someone would step forward, and, impelled by zeal for the cause of God and for God’s law, would declare himself ready to avenge the outrage. He waited in vain. Then he determined to act himself. Naturally enough he hesitated to take the life of a human being. He did not know whether the evil-doer might not be brought to repentance, and then lead a life of pious endeavor. He also considered, that there would perhaps be some among the descendants to spring from the Egyptian for whose sake their wicked ancestor might rightfully lay claim to clemency. The holy spirit allayed all his doubts. He was made to see that not the slightest hope existed that good would come either from the malefactor himself or from any of his offspring. Then Moses was willing to requite him for his evil deeds. Nevertheless he first consulted the angels, to hear what they had to say, and they agreed that the Egyptian deserved death, and Moses acted according to their opinion.

Neither physical strength nor a weapon was needed to carry out his purpose. He merely pro-



nounced the Name of God, and the Egyptian was a corpse. To the bystanders, the Israelites, Moses said: "The Lord compared you unto the sand of the sea-shore, and as the sand moves noiselessly from place to place, so I pray you to keep the knowledge of what hath happened a secret within yourselves. Let nothing be heard concerning it."

The wish expressed by Moses was not honored. The slaying of the Egyptian remained no secret, and those who betrayed it were Israelites, Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Pallu, of the tribe of Reuben, notorious for their effrontery and contentiousness. The day after the thing with the Egyptians happened, the two brothers began of malice aforethought to scuffle with each other, only in order to draw Moses into the quarrel and create an occasion for his betrayal. The plan succeeded admirably. Seeing Dathan raise his hand against Abiram, to deal him a blow, Moses exclaimed, "O thou art a villain, to lift up thy hand against an Israelite, even if he is no better than thou." Dathan replied: "Young man, who hath made thee to be a judge over us, thou that hast not yet attained to years of maturity? We know very well that thou art the son of Jochebed, though people call thee the son of the princess Bithiah, and if thou shouldst attempt to play the part of our master and judge, we will publish abroad the thing thou didst unto the Egyptian. Or, peradventure, thou harborest the intention to slay us as thou didst slay him, by pronouncing the Name of God?"

Not satisfied with these taunts, the noble pair of brothers betook themselves to Pharaoh, and spoke before him, "Moses dishonoreth thy royal mantle and thy crown," to which Pharaoh returned, saying, "Much good may it do him!" But they pursued the subject. "He helps thine enemies, Pharaoh," they continued, whereupon he replied, as before, "Much good may it do him!" Still they went on, "He is not the son of thy daughter." These last words did not fail of mak-

ing an impression upon Pharaoh.<sup>75</sup> A royal command was issued for the arrest of Moses, and he was condemned to death by the sword.

The angels came to God, and said, "Moses, the familiar of Thine house, is held under restraint," and God replied, "I will espouse his cause." "But," the angels urged, "his verdict of death has been pronounced—yes, they are leading him to execution," and again God made reply, as before, "I will espouse his cause."

Moses mounted the scaffold, and a sword, sharp beyond compare, was set upon his neck ten times, but it always slipped away, because his neck was as hard as ivory. And a still greater miracle came to pass. God sent down the angel Michael, in the guise of a hangman, and the human hangman charged by Pharaoh with the execution was changed into the form of Moses. This spurious Moses the angel killed with the very sword with which the executioner had purposed to slay the intended victim. Meantime Moses took to flight. Pharaoh ordered his pursuit, but it was in vain. The king's troops were partly stricken with blindness, partly with dumbness. The dumb could give no information about the abiding-place of Moses, and the blind, though they knew where it was, could not get to it.<sup>76</sup>

---

69. Yashar Shemot, 132b–133a. Opinions differ as to Moses' age at the time of his fleeing from Egypt. Some authorities think he was twelve years old (ShR 5. 2), while according to others he was twenty, twenty-two, or forty years at that time; see BaR 14. 18; ShR 1. 27 and 30; Tan. Shemot 5. The Haggadah is extremely fond of symmetry, and accordingly divides the life of Moses into three equal periods. He is said to have lived forty years in Egypt, forty in Midian, and forty in the wilderness; Sifre D., 357; MHG I, 771; Acts 7. 23. Comp. note 76.—Moses, though brought up as a royal prince, soon learned from his "nurse" Jochebed the truth about himself, and it was she who also taught him the history of his people, their former grandeur, their present enslavement, and their hopes for the future; the Hellenist Ezekiel, 438. As to the sons of Balaam, see text on p. 489. See also text on p. 689.



70. ShR 1. 27; Tan. Shemot 9; WR 37. 2. Moses endangered his life for the sake of Israel, the Torah, and the execution of justice. His reward for this is that God speaks of “the Torah of Moses,” of Israel “the people of Moses,” and of “the judgment revealed to Moses”; comp. Mekilta Shirah 1, 34b; Midrash Tannaim 96; Tan. B. V, 29; ShR 30. 4, and parallel passages marked on the margin; Batte Midrashot, IV, 2–3. The devotion of Moses to his nation and his attempt to alleviate its sufferings are very elaborately described by Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 7–8, and it is very likely that the author of Hebrews 12. 24–25 was acquainted with the Philonic Haggadah.

71. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 8.

72. ShR 1. 28; Yashar Shemot, 133a; *Shibbole ha-Le-ket* 55–56. According to the version of this legend given by Abudrahim (on *משה ישמח*) and by Treves (who follows the former), *Kimha Dabishuna* (Amidah for Sabbath morning), Moses chose Saturday as the day of rest, because it being an unlucky day, “the day of Saturn,” Pharaoh, it was hoped, would not object to the Hebrews refraining from work on it, since the work done on that day would anyway bring ill-luck. Saturday, and especially the night preceding it (according to the Jewish conception, the day follows the night), is the time when the demons and the evil spirits (*מזיקים*) hold full sway; Pesahim 112b; Seder R. Amram 25a and 26a; Mahzor Vitry 81 and 83–84; *Shibbole ha-Le-ket* 100.—The Hebrews in Egypt spent the Sabbath in reading the scrolls dealing with the promised redemption of Israel from Egyptian bondage; ShR 5. 18; Tan. Wa-Era 6; Tehillim 119, 498. R. Azariah de Rossi, *Meor 'Enayim*, 4. 4, quotes the following from Origen: On Sabbath Moses used to show the Hebrews the book of Job, that they might learn from it that the suffering of the righteous is only for a time and finally makes room for joy and pleasure. As far as can be ascertained, nothing of this kind is found in the writings of Origen. It is hard to tell whether this supposed quotation from Origen, which de Rossi claims to have read in a work of Pico di Mirandola, is contained in the latter's writings or not. In *Shalshelet ha-Kabbalah*, 13a, this supposed quotation from Origen is changed into a quotation from an old treatise *קונטרס ישן*. Comp. Straschun in *Ha-Maggid*, IX, No. 12.

73. ShR 1. 28; WR 32. 4–5; PRE 48; Tan. Shemot 9 and Emor 24; Tan. B. III, 102–103; Sifre 24. 10; Dibre ha-Yamim 4; Targum Yerushalmi Lev. 24. 10; compare with p. 689; on the brothers Dathan and Abiram, see note 75. That the Egyptian attempted to slay the Hebrew is also maintained by Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 8.

74. Yashar Shemot, 133b; Dibre ha-Yamim 4. The name Dathan is supplied in accordance with ShR 1. 28.

75. ShR 1. 29–31; Tan. Shemot 9–10; Abkir in Yal-kut I, 167; Tehillim 29, 206; DR 2. 29; ARN 20, 72 (this is the source of Lekah, Exod. 2. 12); Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1.

8–9; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1. 22. The brothers Dathan and Abiram were the most bitter enemies of Moses from his first appearance before the public until his death. They were the men who at the Red Sea attempted to make the people return to Egypt (compare with p. 550), and they also tried the same thing at the time the spies returned from Canaan (compare with p. 712). They transgressed the commandment concerning the manna (compare with p. 572); they were also the ringleaders at the rebellion of Korah. See the sources cited at the beginning of this note, and further ER 18, 106–107; Megillah 11a. As to the justification of the killing of the Egyptian, see the sources cited in the preceding note; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 2. 12; Sanhedrin 58b; text on p. 805 (the only passage where Moses is blamed for this action). Compare also text on p. 1025 (concerning the young men cursed by Elisha).

76. ShR 1. 31; DR 2. 29; Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 13a; Tehillim 4, 40–41; Shir 7. 4; Mekilta 58b; Mekilta RS, 86; Yashar Shemot, 133b; Dibre ha-Yamim 5. The view that an angel assumed the form of Moses (Docetism?) is also found in WR 6. 5, where, however, the text ought to be corrected in accordance with Midrash Tannaim 57. Comp. also Yerushalmi Peah 1, 22a. The miracle of the sword refusing to cut the neck of a saint is of very frequent occurrence in Christian legends; comp., e. g. *Acts of Andrew and Matthias*. As to the age of Moses at the time of the flight from Egypt, see note 69 and further Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 9, according to whom the punishment of Egypt followed shortly after Moses' flight, whereas Artapanus, 431, maintains that Moses spent thirty years in Midian. The statement (Jub. 47. 10 and 48. 11) that Moses fled from Egypt in his twenty-first year is based on Exod. 2. 11, where it is said that Moses' first appearance in public took place when he “grew up,” which is taken by the Haggadah to refer to the age of majority, and this, according to the old Halakah, is the age of twenty; see Ginzberg's remarks, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 64–65. The other statement, found in rabbinic sources, that Moses fled from Egypt at the age of eighteen, is to be explained in the same manner, since according to some authorities, eighteen is the age of majority; comp. Niddah 5. 9; note 69.

## THE FLIGHT

An angel of God took Moses to a spot removed forty days' journey from Egypt, so far off that all fear was banished from his mind.<sup>77</sup> Indeed, his anxiety had never been for his own person, but only on account of the future of Israel. The subjugation of his people had always been



an unsolved enigma to him. Why should Israel, he would ask himself, suffer more than all the other nations? But when his personal straits initiated him in the talebearing and backbiting that prevailed among the Israelites, then he asked himself, Does this people deserve to be redeemed?<sup>78</sup> The religious conditions among the children of Israel were of such kind at that time as not to permit them to hope for Divine assistance. They refused to give ear to Aaron and the five sons of Zerah, who worked among them as prophets, and admonished them unto the fear of God. It was on account of their impiety that the heavy hand of Pharaoh rested upon them more and more oppressively, until God had mercy upon them, and sent Moses to deliver them from the slavery of Egypt.<sup>79</sup>

When he succeeded in effecting his escape from the hands of the hangman, Moses had no idea that a royal throne awaited him. It was nevertheless so. A war broke out at this time between Ethiopia and the nations of the East that had been subject to it until then. Kikanos, the king, advanced against the enemy with a great army. He left Balaam and Balaam's two sons, Jannes and Jambres, behind, to keep guard over his capital and take charge of the people remaining at home. The absence of the king gave Balaam the opportunity of winning his subjects over to his side, and he was put upon the throne, and his two sons were set over the army as generals. To cut Kikanos off from his capital, Balaam and his sons invested the city, so that none could enter it against their will. On two sides they made the walls higher, on the third they dug a network of canals, into which they conducted the waters of the river girding the whole land of Ethiopia, and on the fourth side their magic arts collected a large swarm of snakes and scorpions. Thus none could depart, and none could enter.

Meantime Kikanos succeeded in subjugating the rebellious nations. When he returned at the

head of his victorious army, and espied the high city wall from afar, he and his men said: "The inhabitants of the city, seeing that the war detained us abroad for a long time, have raised the walls and fortified them, that the kings of Canaan may not be able to enter." On approaching the city gates, which were barred, they cried out to the guards to open them, but by Balaam's instructions they were not permitted to pass through. A skirmish ensued, in which Kikanos lost one hundred and thirty men. On the morrow the combat was continued, the king with his troops being stationed on the thither bank of the river. This day he lost his thirty riders, who, mounted on their steeds, had attempted to swim the stream. Then the king ordered rafts to be constructed for the transporting of his men. When the vessels reached the canals, they were submerged, and the waters, swirling round and round as though driven by mill wheels, swept away two hundred men, twenty from each raft. On the third day they set about assaulting the city from the side on which the snakes and scorpions swarmed, but they failed to reach it, and the reptiles killed one hundred and seventy men. The king desisted from attacking the city, but for the space of nine years he surrounded it, so that none could come out or go in.

While the siege was in progress, Moses appeared in the king's camp on his flight before Pharaoh, and at once found favor with Kikanos and his whole army. He exercised an attraction upon all that saw him, for he was slender like a palm-tree, his countenance shone as the morning sun, and his strength was equal to a lion's. So deep was the king's affection for him that he appointed him to be commander-in-chief of his forces.

At the end of the nine years Kikanos fell a prey to a mortal disease, and he died on the seventh day of his illness. His servants embalmed him, buried him opposite to the city gate toward the land of Egypt, and over his grave they



erected a magnificent structure, strong and high, upon the walls whereof they engraved all the mighty deeds and battles of the dead king.

Now, after the death of Kiḳanos, his men were greatly grieved on account of the war. One said unto the other, "Counsel us, what shall we do at this time? We have been abiding in the wilderness, away from our homes, for nine years. If we fight against the city, many of us will fall dead; and if we remain here besieging it, we shall also die. For now all the princes of Aram and of the children of the East will hear that our king is dead, and they will attack us suddenly, and they will fight with us until not a remnant will be left. Now, therefore, let us go and set a king over us, and we will remain here besieging the city until it surrenders unto us."

---

77. Yashar Shemot, 133b and Yerahmeel 45. 2. In Dibre ha-Yamim 5 'י is to be emended to 'נ.

78. ShR 1. 30; Abkir in Yalkut 167. Many passages state that Israel was redeemed from Egypt on account of the great virtue in refraining from slander and tale-bearing; comp. Mekilta Bo 5, 5a, and the numerous parallel passages cited by Friedmann, *ad loc.*

79. Seder 'Olam 21; Targum on 1 Chron. 14. 12; Yashar Shemot, 133b; BaR 14. 12; Dibre ha-Yamim 5. The five sons of Zerah are, according to 1 Chron., *loc. cit.*, Zimri, Ethan, Heman, Kalkol, and Darda. As to Aaron's activity as the leader of his people, see ShR 3. 16; MHG II, 35; Midrash Tannaim 215; text on p. 433.

## THE KING OF ETHIOPIA

They could find none except Moses fit to be their king. They hastened and stripped off each man his upper garment, and cast them all in a heap upon the ground, making a high place, on top of which they set Moses. Then they blew with trumpets, and called out before him: "Long live the king! Long live the king!" And all the people and the nobles swore unto him to give

him Adoniah for wife, the Ethiopian queen, the widow of Kiḳanos. And they made Moses king over them on that day.

They also issued a proclamation, commanding every man to give Moses of what he possessed, and upon the high place they spread a sheet, wherein each one cast something, this one a gold nose ring, that one a coin, and onyx stones, bdellium, pearls, gold, and silver in great abundance.

Moses was twenty-seven years old when he became king over Ethiopia, and he reigned for forty years. On the seventh day of his reign, all the people assembled and came before him, to ask his counsel as to what was to be done to the city they were besieging. The king answered them, and said: "If you will hearken to my words, the city will be delivered into our hands. Proclaim with a loud voice throughout the whole camp, unto all the people, saying: 'Thus saith the king! Go to the forest and fetch hither of the young of the stork, each man one fledgling in his hand. And if there be any man that transgresseth the word of the king, not to bring a bird, he shall die, and the king shall take all belonging to him.' And when you have brought them, they shall be in your keeping. You shall rear them until they grow up, and you shall teach them to fly as the hawk flieth."

All the people did according to the word of Moses, and after the young storks had grown to full size, he ordered them to be starved for three days. On the third day the king said unto them, "Let every man put on his armor and gird his sword upon him. Each one shall mount his horse, and each shall set his stork upon his hand, and we will rise up and fight against the city opposite to the place of the serpents."

When they came to the appointed spot, the king said to them, "Let each man send forth his young stork, to descend upon the serpents." Thus they did, and the birds swooped down and



devoured all the reptiles and destroyed them. After the serpents were removed in this way, the men fought against the city, subdued it, and killed all its inhabitants, but of the people besieging it there died not one.

When Balaam saw that the city had fallen into the hands of the besiegers, he exercised his magic arts, which enabled him to fly through the air, and he carried with him his two sons, Jannes and Jambres, and his eight brothers, and they all took refuge in Egypt.

Seeing that they had been saved by the king, and the city had been taken by his good counsel, the people became more than ever attached to him. They set the royal crown upon his head, and gave him Adoniah, the widow of Kikanos, to wife. But Moses feared the stern God of his fathers, and he went not in unto Adoniah, nor did he turn his eyes toward her, for he remembered how Abraham had made his servant Eliezer swear, saying unto him, "Thou shalt not take a wife for my son of the daughters of the Canaanites, among whom I dwell." He also remembered what Isaac did when Jacob fled before his brother Esau, how he commanded his son, saying, "Thou shalt not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan, nor ally thyself by marriage with any of the children of Ham, for the Lord our God gave Ham the son of Noah and all his seed as slaves to the children of Shem and Japheth forever."

At that time Aram and the children of the East heard that Kikanos the king of Ethiopia had died, and they rose up against the Ethiopians, but Moses went forth with a mighty army to fight against the rebellious nations, and he subdued them, first the children of the East and then Aram.

Moses continued to prosper in his kingdom. He conducted the government in justice, righteousness, and integrity, and his people loved and feared him.

In the fortieth year of his reign, while he was sitting upon his throne one day, surrounded by all the nobles, Adoniah the queen, who was seated before him, rose up, and spake: "What is this thing which you, the people of Ethiopia, have done these many days? Surely you know that during the forty years this man hath reigned over you, he hath not approached me, nor hath he worshipped the gods of Ethiopia. Now, therefore, let this man reign over you no more, for he is not of our flesh. Behold, Monarchos my son is grown up, let him reign over you. It is better for you to serve the son of your lord than a stranger, a slave of the king of Egypt."

A whole day the people and the nobles contended with one another, whether to pay heed to the words of the queen. The officers of the army remained faithful to Moses, but the people of the cities were in favor of crowning the son of their former lord as king. The following morning they rose up and made Monarchos, the son of Kikanos, king over them, but they were afraid to stretch forth their hand against Moses, for the Lord was with him. They also remembered the oath they had sworn unto Moses, and therefore they did him no harm. Moreover, they gave many presents to him, and dismissed him with great honor.

When Moses left Ethiopia, in the sixty-seventh year of his age, it was the time appointed by God in the days of old to bring Israel forth from the affliction of the children of Ham. But fearing to return to Egypt on account of Pharaoh, Moses journeyed to Midian.<sup>80</sup>

80. Yashar Shemot, 133b–136b and 138a (read נבך or נדן, with Yalkut in 138a, 1. 14); Dibre ha-Yamim 5–7; Yerahmeel 45 and 46. 6–9; Yalkut I, 168.—With regard to the names of the persons occurring in this legend, the following is to be noticed: מנכרוס in Yashar and מונחוס in Yalkut are scribal errors for מנכרוס=μονάρχος. The Grecized forms of the names Jannes and Jambres representing



the Semitic names **יוחני** and **ממרא**, occurring in Menahot 85a, cannot be taken as proof of the Greek origin of this legend, as these forms are found in Aramaic and Hebrew sources of legends directly borrowed from the Talmud; see, e. g., Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 7. 11, and Tan. Ki-Tissa 19 (read: **ייונס ויומברוס**) and comp. it with Menahot, *loc. cit.* It is, however, true that the legend in rabbinic sources concerning Moses' stay in Egypt has some points of contact with the following story given by Artapanus, 432, *seq.* This author writes: Chenephres, the husband of Moses' foster-mother, became envious of Moses, and sought to slay him on some plausible pretext. And so when the Ethiopians invaded Egypt, Chenephres sent Moses in command of a force against them, and enrolled a body of husbandmen for him, hoping that through the weakness of his troops Moses would be easily destroyed by the enemy. Moses, however, was victorious in his campaign which lasted for ten years (in Yashar the siege of the capital of the Ethiopians lasted nine years), and on account of his excellence even the Ethiopians became so fond of him that they learned from him the custom of circumcision. Moses built a city as quarters for his vast army, and therein he consecrated the ibis (in Yashar, the stork), because this bird destroys the animals that are noxious to man. When Moses returned to Egypt, he was welcomed by Chenephres, who in reality continued to plot against him. He took the troops away from him, and sent them to the frontier of Ethiopia. He also ordered to demolish the temple of Divispolis which had been built of baked bricks, and erected another of straw. He appointed Nacheros (identical with **מנכרוס** in Yashar?) superintendent of the building. Having alienated the Egyptians from Moses, Chenephres induced Chanethothes to undertake to slay Moses. The plot conspired against him was reported to Moses, and on the advice of Aaron he sailed across the Nile from Memphis, intending to take refuge in Arabia. Chanethothes, informed of Moses' proposed flight, placed himself in ambush with the intention to kill him. When he saw Moses approach, he drew his sword against him. But Moses seized his hand and slew him with his own sword. Self-evident is the affinity between this story of Artapanus and the following Moses legend given by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 10–11. The Jewish historian narrates: The Egyptians, sadly oppressed by the Ethiopians, betook themselves to their oracles and prophecies, and when God had given them the counsel to make use of Moses the Hebrew to assist them, the king commanded his daughter to produce him, that he might be the general of their army. After she had made him (the king) swear he would do him (Moses) no harm, she delivered him to the king. At the same time she reproached the priests, who, though they had before urged the Egyptians to kill him, were not ashamed now to own their need of his help. So Moses, at the persuasion, both of Thermuthis and the king himself, cheerfully undertook the campaign against the

Ethiopians. And the sacred scribes of both nations were glad; those of the Egyptians, because they would at once overcome their enemies by his valor, and by the same strategy Moses would be slain; but those of the Hebrews, because they would escape from the Egyptians, since Moses was to be their general. Now Moses led his army against the Ethiopians before they were apprised of his attacking them; for he did not march by the river, but by the land, where he gave a wonderful demonstration of his sagacity. For when the ground was difficult to pass over, because of the multitude of serpents which it produces in vast numbers, some of which come out of the ground unseen, and also fly in the air (comp. Is. 30. 6). Moses invented a wonderful stratagem to preserve the army. He made, of sedge, baskets like unto arks and filled them with ibes, and carried them along with them; now this animal is the greatest enemy of serpents, for they fly from them when they come near them, and as they fly they are caught and devoured by them. As soon, therefore, as Moses was come to the land which was the breeder of these serpents, he let loose the ibes, and by their means repelled the serpents, and used them for his assistants before the army came upon the ground. When he had, therefore, proceeded thus on his journey, he came upon the Ethiopians before they expected him, and joining battle with them he defeated them and went on capturing their cities. At length the Ethiopians retired to Saba, which was a royal city, afterwards named Meroë (comp. note 226) by Cambyses after the name of his own sister. The place was besieged with great difficulty, since it was both encompassed by the Nile and by two other rivers, besides having a strong wall and great ramparts between the wall and the rivers. However, while Moses was uneasy at the army's lying idle—for the enemy dared not come to battle—this accident happened. Tharbis was the daughter of the king of the Ethiopians; she happened to see Moses as he led the army near the walls and fought with great courage, and admiring the subtlety of his undertakings, and believing him to be responsible for the success of the Egyptians, she fell in love with him, and sent to him the most faithful of all her servants to discuss with him about their marriage. Moses thereupon accepted the offer on condition that she should deliver the city and gave her the assurance of an oath to take her for his wife, and that when he had taken possession of the city, he would not break his oath to her. The agreement took effect immediately. And when Moses had cut off the Ethiopians, he gave thanks to God, and consummated his marriage, and led the Egyptians back to their own land. Now the Egyptians after they had been saved by Moses, entertained hatred toward him, fearing he would take advantage of his success to raise a sedition, and introduce innovations into Egypt. They therefore told the king that he ought to be slain. The king had similar intentions himself out of envy of Moses' glorious expedition at the head of his army,



as well as out of fear of being brought low by him; and being instigated by the sacred scribes, he was ready to undertake to kill Moses. But when Moses had learned of the plots being hatched against him (the slaying of the Egyptian, the cause of Moses' flight according to Exod. 2. 12–15 is ignored by Josephus in true apologetic fashion), he went away privately, and because the public roads were watched, he took his flight through the desert, where his enemies could not suspect he would travel; and though he was destitute of food, he went on courageously. It is very likely that the story in Josephus, or to be more accurate, in Alexander Polyhistor, his authority, is based entirely on Artapanus, although the present text of the latter does not contain the incident about Moses' Ethiopian wife. The old rabbinic sources know neither of Moses' wars against the Ethiopians nor of his marriage with an Ethiopian princess. They maintain that the Ethiopian wife of Moses, mentioned in Num. 12. 1, is identical with Zipporah; compare footnote 488 on p. 700. This view is also held by Demetrius, 439d, and the Hellenist Ezekiel, 348. ShR 1. 27 and Tan. Shemot 5, though late Midrashim, do not know yet of Moses' stay in Ethiopia, and the oldest rabbinic source where reference is made to it seems to be Targum Yerushalmi Num. 12. 1. Comp. Freudenthal, *Hellenistische Studien*, 143–198, and Isidore Lévy, *R.E.J.*, LIII, 201–211.

## JETHRO

**I**n the city of Midian, named thus for a son of Abraham by Keturah,<sup>81</sup> the man Jethro had lived for many years, doing a priest's service before the idols. As time went on, he grew more and more convinced of the vanity of idol worship. His priesthood became repugnant to him, and he resolved to give up his charge. He stood before his townsmen, and said, "Until now I performed your service before the idols, but I have grown too old for the duties of the office. Choose, therefore, whomever you would choose in my place." Speaking thus, he delivered to the people all the paraphernalia appertaining to the idol worship, and bade them transfer them to the one to whom in their discretion they should entrust his position. Suspecting Jethro's hidden motives, the people put him under the ban, and none

might venture to do him the slightest service. Not even would the shepherds pasture his flocks, and there was nothing for him to do but impose this work upon his seven daughters.<sup>82</sup>

Jethro's transformation from an idolatrous priest into a God-fearing man is conveyed by his seven names. He was called Jether, because the Torah contains an "additional" section about him; Jethro, he "overflowed" with good deeds; Hobab, "the beloved son of God"; Reuel, "the friend of God"; Heber, "the associate of God"; Putiel, "he that hath renounced idolatry"; and Keni, he that was "zealous" for God, and "acquired" the Torah.<sup>83</sup>

In consequence of the hostile relation between Jethro and the inhabitants of the city, his daughters were in the habit of making their appearance at the watering troughs before the other shepherds came thither. But the ruse was not successful. The shepherds would drive them away, and water their own flocks at the troughs that the maidens had filled. When Moses arrived in Midian, it was at the well that he made halt, and his experience was the same as Isaac's and Jacob's. Like them he found his helpmeet there. Rebekah had been selected by Eliezer as the wife of Isaac, while she was busy drawing water for him; Jacob had seen Rachel first, while she was watering her sheep, and at this well in Midian Moses met his future wife Zipporah.

The rudeness of the shepherds reached its climax the very day of Moses' arrival. First they deprived the maidens of the water they had drawn for themselves, and attempted to do violence to them, and then they threw them into the water with intent to kill them. At this moment Moses appeared, dragged the maidens out of the water, and gave the flocks to drink, first Jethro's and then the flocks of the shepherds, though the latter did not deserve his good offices. True, he did them the service with but little trouble to himself, for he had only to draw a bucketful, and the water flowed so copiously that it sufficed for all



the herds,<sup>84</sup> and it did not cease to flow until Moses withdrew from the well,<sup>85</sup>—the same well at which Jacob had met Rachel, his future wife, and the same well that God created at the beginning of the world, the opening of which He made in the twilight of the first Sabbath eve.<sup>86</sup>

Jethro's daughters thanked Moses for the assistance he had afforded them. But Moses warded off their gratitude, saying, "Your thanks are due to the Egyptian I killed, on account of whom I had to flee from Egypt. Had it not been for him, I should not be here now."<sup>87</sup>

---

81. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 11. 1, which is very likely based on Demetrius, 439b, *seq.*, who gives a lengthy exposition of the relationship between Moses, "the seventh from Abraham," and Zipporah, "the sixth from Abraham." As to Medan, the son of Abraham, see text on p. 338.

82. ShR 1. 32; Tan. Shemot 11; Mekilta Yitro 1, 57b and 59a; Mekilta RS, 86 and 88; PR 35, 161a; Koheleth 3. 11. The Hellenist Ezekiel, 439, describes Jethro as a monarch and sole chief in war . . . ruler, judge, and priest. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 11. 2, likewise dwells upon the high position which Jethro held in his country. According to an opinion recorded in the first four sources cited at the beginning of this note, כהן (Exod. 2. 16) signifies "prince" and not "priest"; also compare with pp. 780 and 783.

83. Mekilta Yitro 1, 57a; Mekilta RS, 86; Sifre N., 78; Sifre Z., 73–74 (this passage also gives the dissenting view that Reuel was the father of Jethro); ShR 1. 32 and 27. 8; Tan. Yitro 4; Tan. B. II, 6; PRK, 37b; Lekah Exod. 4. 18. See also Philo, *De Mut. Num.*, 17. The contradiction between Exod. 2. 18 and Num. 10:29 did not escape the Rabbis, and in the passages referred to (see also the rabbinic sources cited in the preceding note) two solutions of the difficulty are offered. According to one, Reuel is an attribute of Jethro; according to the other, Reuel was Jethro's father. It is true that in Exod. Reuel is described as the father of Jethro's daughter; but this is merely due to the fact that children are in the habit of addressing their grandfather as father. Ephraim, I, 254 E, agrees with the second view, Theodoretus, Num. *loc. cit.*, with the first. Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 12. 1, and Vulgate, Num., *loc. cit.*

84. ShR 1. 34; Tan. Shemot 11; ARN 15, 72; MHG II, 18. Comp. also BR 70. 11. According to Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 10, Moses arraigned the shepherds in a lengthy address, with the result (he spoke like a prophet) that they repented of their unkind treatment of Jethro's daughters,

and made amends for it by taking Jethro's flock to the troughs. See also Abkir in Yalkut I, 169; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 2. 18–19; Zohar II, 13b as well as pp. 278–281.

85. ARN 20, 72; this is the source of Midrash Aggadah, Exod. 2. 19. Compare with pp. 278–281.

86. Zohar II, 12b. Compare footnote 127 on p. 576.

87. ShR 1. 32; Tan. Shemot 2.

## MOSES MARRIES ZIPPORAH

One of the seven maidens whom Moses saw at the well attracted his notice in particular on account of her modest demeanor, and he made her a proposal of marriage. But Zipporah repulsed him, saying, "My father has a tree in his garden with which he tests every man that expresses a desire to marry one of his daughters, and as soon as the suitor touches the tree, he is devoured by it."

Moses: "Whence has he the tree?"

Zipporah: "It is the rod that the Holy One, blessed be He, created in the twilight of the first Sabbath eve, and gave to Adam. He transmitted it to Enoch, from him it descended to Noah, then to Shem, and Abraham, and Isaac, and finally to Jacob, who brought it with him to Egypt, and gave it to his son Joseph. When Joseph died, the Egyptians pillaged his house, and the rod, which was in their booty, they brought to Pharaoh's palace. At that time my father was one of the most prominent of the king's sacred scribes, and as such he had the opportunity of seeing the rod. He felt a great desire to possess it, and he stole it and took it to his house. On this rod the Ineffable Name is graven, and also the ten plagues that God will cause to visit the Egyptians in a future day. For many years it lay in my father's house. One day he was walking in his garden carrying it, and he stuck it in the ground. When he attempted to draw it out again, he found that it had sprouted, and was putting forth blossoms. That is the rod with which he tries any that desire to



marry his daughters. He insists that our suitors shall attempt to pull it out of the ground, but as soon as they touch it, it devours them."

Having given him this account of her father's rod, Zipporah went home, accompanied by her sisters, and Moses followed them.<sup>88</sup>

Jethro was not a little amazed to see his daughters return so soon from the watering troughs. As a rule, the chicanery they had to suffer from the shepherds detained them until late.<sup>89</sup> No sooner had he heard their report about the wonder-working Egyptian than he exclaimed, "Mayhap he is one of the descendants of Abraham, from whom issueth blessing for the whole world."<sup>90</sup> He rebuked his daughters for not having invited the stranger that had done them so valuable a service to come into their house, and he ordered them to fetch him, in the hope that he would take one of his daughters to wife.<sup>91</sup>

Moses had been standing without all this time, and had allowed Jethro's daughters to describe him as an Egyptian, without protesting and asserting his Hebrew birth. For this God punished him by causing him to die outside of the promised land. Joseph, who had proclaimed in public that he was a Hebrew, found his last resting-place in the land of the Hebrews, and Moses, who apparently had no objection to being considered an Egyptian, had to live and die outside of that land.<sup>92</sup>

Zipporah hastened forth to execute her father's wish, and no sooner had she ushered him in<sup>93</sup> than Moses requested her hand in marriage. Jethro replied, "If thou canst bring me the rod in my garden, I will give her to thee." Moses went out,<sup>94</sup> found the sapphire rod that God had bestowed upon Adam when he was driven forth from Paradise, the rod that had reached Jethro after manifold vicissitudes, and which he had planted in the garden. Moses uprooted it and carried it to Jethro,<sup>95</sup> who conceived the idea at once that he was the prophet in Israel

concerning whom all the wise men of Egypt had foretold that he would destroy their land and its inhabitants. As soon as this thought struck him, he seized Moses, and threw him into a pit, in the expectation that he would meet with death there.

And, indeed, he would have perished, if Zipporah had not devised a stratagem to save his life. She said to her father: "Would it were thy will to hearken unto my counsel. Thou hast no wife, but only seven daughters. Dost thou desire my six sisters to preside over thy household? Then shall I go abroad with the sheep. If not, let my sisters tend the flocks, and I shall take care of the house." Her father said: "Thou hast spoken well. Thy six sisters shall go forth with the sheep, and thou shalt abide in the house and take care of it, and all that belongeth to me therein."

Now Zipporah could provide Moses with all sorts of dainties as he lay in the pit, and she did it for the space of seven years. At the expiration of this period, she said to her father: "I recollect that once upon a time thou didst cast into yonder pit a man that had fetched thy rod from the garden for thee, and thou didst commit a great trespass thereby. If it seemeth well to thee, uncover the pit and look into it. If the man is dead, throw his corpse away, lest it fill the house with stench. But should he be alive, then thou oughtest to be convinced that he is one of those who are wholly pious, else he had died of hunger."

The reply of Jethro was: "Thou hast spoken wisely. Dost thou remember his name?" And Zipporah rejoined, "I remember he called himself Moses the son of Amram." Jethro lost no time, he opened the pit, and called out, "Moses! Moses!" Moses replied, and said: "Here am I!" Jethro drew him up out of the pit, kissed him, and said: "Blessed be God, who guarded thee for seven years in the pit. I acknowledge that He slayeth and reviveth, that thou art one of the wholly pious, that through thee God will de-



stroy Egypt in time to come, lead His people out of the land, and drown Pharaoh and his whole army in the sea.”<sup>96</sup>

Thereupon Jethro gave much money to Moses, and he bestowed his daughter Zipporah upon him as wife, giving her to him under the condition that the children born of the marriage in Jethro’s house should be divided into two equal classes, the one to be Israelitish, the other Egyptian. When Zipporah bore him a son, Moses circumcised him,<sup>97</sup> and called him Gershom, as a memorial of the wonder God had done for him, for although he lived in a “strange” land, the Lord had not refused him aid even “there.”<sup>98</sup>

Zipporah nursed her first child for two years, and in the third year she bore a second son. Remembering his compact with Jethro, Moses realized that his father-in-law would not permit him to circumcise this one, too, and he determined to return to Egypt, that he might have the opportunity of bringing up his second son as an Israelite. On the journey thither, Satan appeared to him in the guise of a serpent, and swallowed Moses down to his extremities. Zipporah knew by this token that the thing had happened because her second son had not been circumcised, and she hastened to make good the omission. As soon as she sprinkled the blood of the circumcision on her husband’s feet, a heavenly voice was heard to cry to the serpent, commanding him, “Spew him out!” and Moses came forth and stood upon his feet. Thus Zipporah saved Moses’ life twice, first from the pit and then from the serpent.<sup>99</sup>

When Moses arrived in Egypt, he was approached by Dathan and Abiram, the leaders of the Israelites, and they spake: “Comest thou hither to slay us, or dost thou purpose to do the same with us as thou didst with the Egyptian?” This drove Moses straightway back to Midian, and there he remained two years more, until God revealed Himself at Horeb, and said to him, “Go

and bring forth My children out of the land of Egypt.”<sup>100</sup>

---

88. Wa-Yosha 42. The description of the rod in the text is in accordance with PRE 40. A somewhat different version of this legend is found in Hashkem 2b; comp. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 2. 21, 4. 20, and 14. 21, as well as Deut. 34. 12. According to Targum, the rod was hewn from the sapphire of the divine throne, and weighed forty seah; comp. Mekilta Beshallah 6, 58b; Mekilta RS, 81; Tan. B. II, 25, and III, 37, as well as the parallel passages cited by Buber. For further details concerning the rod of Moses (it is often confused with Aaron’s staff), see note 95; also see text on pp. 554, 808, 836, and footnote 894 on p. 807. According to ps.—Philo, 20c at the death of Moses the rod was placed by God as a “witness” between Him and His people, so that when the Israelites sin and God is wroth against them, He remembers the rod, and has mercy on them, according to His loving-kindness. See also Abrahams, *Rod of Moses*.—Zipporah (on the etymology of this name see note 147) is praised in the legends not only on account of her piety and virtue (Mo’ed Katan 16b; Tan. B. II, 7; ShR 1. 32, end; Yashar Shemot, 143a; Dibre ha-Yamim 7), but also for her beauty; comp. Sifre N., 99; Sifre Z., 82 and 204; Tehillim 7, 71. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 11, describes her as the most beautiful of the seven daughters of Jethro. As to the position held by Jethro at the court of Pharaoh, see text on pp. 471 and 497.

89. ShR 1. 32.

90. Abkir in Yalkut I, 169; Lekah Exod. 2. 20. A somewhat different account is given in ShR 1. 32 and Tan. Shemot 11, where it is said: Jethro said: He is very likely the descendant of Jacob for whom the water of the Nile rose from the bottom; compare with pp. 278–281.

91. ShR 1. 32; Tan. Shemot 11, and similarly Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 11. Comp. also Sanhedrin 103b–104a; Bera-kot 63b–64a, and Shir 2. 3 (end). The last passage presupposes Jethro’s descent from Abraham (comp. note 81), and hence his words בזכות אבותינו “for the merits of our fathers.” According to the sources referred to above, Jethro, from the moment he heard of Moses’ arrival, wished to have him as his son-in-law; but there is also a dissenting view to the effect that he greatly objected to Moses’ marriage with Zipporah; see text on pp. 495, *seq.*

92. DR 2. 8; Tan. B. II, 134, and, in abridged form, Wa-Yosha’ 42. Compare with p. 802.

93. Tan. B. II, 6; Lekah Exod. 2. 20. Comp. note 147.

94. Wa-Yosha’ 43–44. Comp. also Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 11.

95. Wa-Yosha’ 42, and comp. note 88. According to Yashar Shemot, 141a, Jacob wrested the rod from Esau, and



from the time it came to his possession he always kept it with him, so that it was the only thing he took with him when he left his father's house for Haran (comp. Gen. 32. 11). At his death he bequeathed it to his favorite son Joseph.

96. Wa-Yosha' 43 (read **חכמי מצרים** instead of **ח' ישראל**). Different versions of this legend are found in Yashar Shemot, 138b, 140–141a, and Dibre ha-Yamim 7. According to the first-named source Jethro imprisoned Moses for ten years, because he thought he had run away from the Ethiopians, and he wished to return him to his masters. Dibre ha-Yamim maintains that when Jethro heard Moses' life story from his own mouth, he imprisoned him for a time with the intention of giving him up to Pharaoh. Finally Zipporah prevailed upon her father to release Moses, who appeared, with the miraculous rod in his hand, before Jethro. Moses then received the hand of Zipporah as his reward. Artapanus, 434b, writes: Jethro intended to wage war against Egypt, and put his son-in-law on the throne; but Moses' patriotism would not permit him to engage in war against his native land. Instead of that he proposed to invade Arabia. Jethro, however, disapproved of this undertaking.

97. Wa-Yosha' 43; Yashar Shemot, 141b–142a. Comp. the opposite view in ShR 5. 8 and note 148.

98. ShR 1. 33; 12 Testaments, Levi 11 (here the etymology refers to Gershon the son of Levi); Mekilta Yitro 1, 57b; Mekilta RS, 86; MHG II, 19. Lekah Exod. 2. 22 remarks that Zipporah's pregnancy was hardly noticeable because she was very young; compare with p. 537, where a similar statement is found with reference to Bilhah.

99. Wa-Yosha' 43–44. Compare with p. 515.

100. Wa-Yosha' 44. Comp. note 75 for further details concerning these two brothers, the chief enemies of Moses.

## A BLOODY REMEDY

**T**he latter years of Israel's bondage in Egypt were the worst. To punish Pharaoh for his cruelty toward the children of Israel, God afflicted him with a plague of leprosy, which covered his whole body, from the crown of his head to the soles of his feet. Instead of being chastened by his disease, Pharaoh remained stiffnecked, and he tried to restore his health by murdering Israelitish children. He took counsel with his three advisers, Balaam, Jethro, and Job, how he might be healed of the awful malady that had seized upon

him. Balaam spoke, saying, "Thou canst regain thy health only if thou wilt slaughter Israelitish children and bathe in their blood." Jethro, averse from having a share in such an atrocity, left the king and fled to Midian. Job, on the other hand, though he also disapproved of Balaam's counsel, kept silence, and in no wise protested against it,<sup>101</sup> wherefor God punished him with a year's suffering.<sup>102</sup> But afterward He loaded him down with all the felicities of this life, and granted him many years, so that this pious Gentile might be rewarded in this world for his good deeds and not have the right to urge a claim upon the beatitude of the future life.<sup>103</sup>

In pursuance of the sanguinary advice given by Balaam, Pharaoh had his bailiffs snatch Israelitish babes from their mothers' breasts, and slaughter them, and in the blood of these innocents he bathed. His disease afflicted him for ten years, and every day an Israelitish child was killed for him. It was all in vain; indeed, at the end of the time his leprosy changed into boils, and he suffered more than before.

While he was in this agony, the report was brought to him that the children of Israel in Goshen were careless and idle in their forced labor. The news aggravated his suffering, and he said: "Now that I am ill, they turn and scoff at me. Harness my chariot, and I will betake myself to Goshen, and see the derision wherewith the children of Israel deride me." And they took and put him upon a horse, for he was not able to mount it himself. When he and his men had come to the border between Egypt and Goshen, the king's steed passed into a narrow place. The other horses, running rapidly through the pass, pressed upon each other until the king's horse fell while he sate upon it, and when it fell, the chariot turned over on his face, and also the horse lay upon him. The king's flesh was torn from him, for this thing was from the Lord, He had heard the cries of His people and their affliction. The king's servants



carried him upon their shoulders, brought him back to Egypt, and placed him on his bed.

He knew that his end was come to die, and the queen Alfar'anit and his nobles gathered about his bed, and they wept a great weeping with him.

The princes and his counsellors advised the king to make choice of a successor, to reign in his stead, whomsoever he would choose from among his sons. He had three sons and two daughters by the queen Alfar'anit, beside children from concubines. The name of his first-born was 'Atro, the name of the second Adikam, and of the third Moryon. The name of the older daughter was Bithiah, and of the other, 'Akuzit. The first-born of the sons of the king was an idiot, precipitate and heedless in all his actions. Adikam, the second son, was a cunning and clever man, and versed in all the wisdom of Egypt, but ungainly in appearance, fleshy and short of stature; his height was a cubit and a space, and his beard flowed down to his ankles.

The king resolved that Adikam should reign in his stead after his death. When this second son of his was but ten years old, he had given him Gedidah, the daughter of Abilat, to wife, and she bore him four sons. Afterward Adikam went and took three other wives, and begot eight sons and three daughters.

The king's malady increased upon him greatly, and his flesh emitted a stench like a carcass cast into the field in summer time in the heat of the sun. When he saw that his disorder had seized upon him with a strong grip, he commanded his son Adikam to be brought to him, and they made him king over the land in his place.

At the end of three years the old king died in shame and disgrace, a loathing to all that saw him, and they buried him in the sepulchre of the kings of Egypt in Zoan, but they did not embalm him, as was usual with kings, for his flesh was putrid, and they could not approach his body on account of the stench, and they buried

him in haste. Thus the Lord requited him with evil for the evil he had done in his days to Israel, and he died in terror and shame after having reigned ninety-four years.

Adikam was twenty years old when he succeeded his father, and he reigned four years. The people of Egypt called him Pharaoh, as was their custom with all their kings, but his wise men called him Akuz, for Akuz is the word for "short" in the Egyptian language, and Adikam was exceedingly awkward and undersized. The new Pharaoh surpassed his father Malol and all the former kings in wickedness, and he made heavier the yoke upon the children of Israel. He went to Goshen with his servants, and increased their labor, and he said unto them, "Complete your work, each day's task, and let not your hands slacken from the work from this day forward, as you did in the day of my father." He placed officers over them from amongst the children of Israel, and over these officers he placed taskmasters from amongst his servants. And he put before them a measure for bricks, according to the number they were to make day by day, and whenever any deficiency was discovered in the measure of their daily bricks, the taskmasters of Pharaoh would go to the women of the children of Israel, and take their infants from them, as many as the number of bricks lacking in the measure, and these babes they put into the building instead of the missing bricks. The taskmasters forced each man of the Israelites to put his own child in the building. The father would place his son in the wall, and cover him over with mortar, all the while weeping, his tears running down upon his child.

The children of Israel sighed every day on account of their dire suffering, for they had thought that after Pharaoh's death his son would lighten their toil, but the new king was worse than his father. And God saw the burden of the children of Israel, and their heavy work, and He determined to deliver them.<sup>104</sup>



However, it was not for their own sake that God resolved upon the deliverance of the children of Israel, for they were empty of good deeds, and the Lord foreknew that, once they were redeemed, they would rise up against Him, and even worship the golden calf. Yet He took mercy upon them, for He remembered His covenant with the Fathers, and He looked upon their repentance for their sins, and accepted their promise, to fulfil the word of God after their going forth from Egypt even before they should hear it.<sup>105</sup>

After all, the children of Israel were not wholly without merits. In a high degree they possessed qualities of extraordinary excellence. There were no incestuous relations among them, they were not evil-tongued, they did not change their names, they clung to the Hebrew language, never giving it up,<sup>106</sup> and great fraternal affection prevailed among them. If one happened to finish the tale of his bricks before his neighbors, he was in the habit of helping the others. Therefore God spake, "They deserve that I should have mercy upon them, for if a man shows mercy unto another, I have mercy upon him."<sup>107</sup>

101. Yashar Shemot, 138b; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 2. 23; MHG II, 20; ShR 1. 34. As to the three advisers of Pharaoh (only in MHG and in Haggadat Teman, which is very likely based on MHG), compare with pp. 470–471, and note 21. That Pharaoh's illness was leprosy is also mentioned by Artapanus, 344b, who writes: About the same time (*i. e.*, shortly before Moses' return to Egypt) Chene-phres died, having been the very first person attacked by elephantiasis; and he is said to have incurred this misfortune because he ordered the Jews to wear linen garments and forbade them to wear woolen clothing, so that they might be conspicuous and be punished by him. The statement about Pharaoh's leprosy is the reply of the Jewish legend to the account that the Hebrews were driven out of Egypt because of their leprosy; see Josephus, *Contra Apionem*, 1. 26. Bathing in blood as a remedy for leprosy among the Egyptians is mentioned by Pliny, *Nat. Hist.*, 26. 1, 5. Shortly before the outbreak of the French Revolution, King Louis was accused of bathing in children's blood;

comp. Carlyle, *French Revolution*, I, 2. 12. R. Solomon ben Ha-Yatom on Mo'ed K. 18a reads: גרסי שמו "his name was Girsī." Very likely we should read סיגרי "the leper," less likely is סיגרי = Sakiri, king of Egypt about 1391–1387.

102. Sotah 11a. Comp. Index, *s. v.* "Job."

103. BR 57. 4. Comp. Index, *s. v.* "Job."

104. Yashar Shemot, 138b–140a. This source, in describing Pharaoh's death, has very likely made use of 2 Maccabees 9. 5, *seq.* As to Pharaoh's ungainly appearance, see Mo'ed Katan 18a. Yashar seems to have misunderstood the obscure word פרמשתקו occurring in the last-named passage. On Alfar'anit (incorrectly אפרענית), see note 65; on Bithiah comp. note 60. On the legend that babies were used instead of bricks, see text on p. 337. In contrast to Yashar, the old sources maintain that Pharaoh of the Exodus was the father of Bithiah, not her brother; see Tan. B. III, 36, and note 226. The statement in ShR 1. 34 that Pharaoh recovered from his leprosy seems to be directed against the view of Yashar, according to which the Pharaoh of the Exodus was a son of the king who had been afflicted with leprosy on account of his cruelty to the Hebrews. See also Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 14.

105. ShR 1. 36; DR 3. 9 and 2. 23, where it is said: Israel's sufferings, the merits of the fathers, God's mercy, the advent of the (promised) "end," all combined, brought about the redemption of Israel: Yerushalmi Ta'anit 1. 63d–64; Tehillim 106, 457; PR 44, 184b; MHG II, 20–21. Comp. the following two notes.

106. Mekilta Bo 5, 5a; ER 17, 85 and 23, 123–24, 125, where it is stated: They observed the Abrahamic covenant although, by abandoning it, they would have gained their complete liberty; compare with p. 473, where a different view is expressed; ShR 1. 28, 29. 36 and 15. 4. The redemption was due to the merits of the fathers; WR 32. 5; BaR 3. 6 and 13. 20; Shir 2. 8 and 4. 12; Tehillim 114, 472, and 122, 508; Tan. B. IV, 146; PRE 48; PK 10, 83b; comp. also Mekilta Bo 16, 19b–20a; Mekilta RS, 171; ER 27, 138; Tehillim 44, 268; 107, 461; 114, 172–173. The manifold reasons given for the redemption of Israel may be reduced to four: 1) merits of the fathers (including the mothers); 2) Israel's own merits; 3) merits of the pious in Israel destined to be born in the future generations; 4) the mercy of God who helps the sufferers, even though they do not deserve it.—As to the use of the Egyptian language by the Hebrews, see text on p. 602.

107. Unknown Midrash in *Sifte Kohen* on Exod. 2. 25.



## THE FAITHFUL SHEPHERD

When Jethro bestowed his daughter Zipporah upon Moses as his wife, he said to his future son-in-law: "I know that thy father Jacob took his wives, the daughters of Laban, and went away with them against their father's will. Now take an oath that thou wilt not do the same unto me," and Moses swore not to leave him without his consent,<sup>108</sup> and he remained with Jethro, who made him the shepherd of his flocks. By the way he tended the sheep, God saw his fitness to be the shepherd of His people, for God never gives an exalted office to a man until He has tested him in little things. Thus Moses and David were tried as shepherds of flocks, and only after they had proved their ability as such, He gave them dominion over men.

Moses watched over the flocks with loving care. He led the young animals to pasture first, that they might have the tender, juicy grass for their food; the somewhat older animals he led forth next, and allowed them to graze off the herbs suitable for them; and finally came the vigorous ones that had attained their full growth, and to them he gave the hard grass that was left, which the others could not eat, but which afforded good food for them. Then spake God, "He that understandeth how to pasture sheep, providing for each what is good for it, he shall pasture My people."

Once a kid escaped from the flock, and when Moses followed it, he saw how it stopped at all the water courses, and he said to it: "Poor kid, I knew not that thou wast thirsty, and wast running after water! Thou art weary, I ween," and he carried it back to the herd on his shoulder. Then said God: "Thou hast compassion with a flock belonging to a man of flesh and blood! As thou livest, thou shalt pasture Israel, My flock."<sup>109</sup>

Not only did Moses take heed that no harm should come to the herds under his charge, but

he was also careful that they cause no injury to men. He always chose an open meadow as his pasturing place, to prevent his sheep from grazing in private estates.<sup>110</sup>

Jethro had no reason to be dissatisfied with the services rendered to him by his son-in-law. During the forty years Moses acted as his shepherd not one sheep was attacked by wild beasts, and the herds multiplied to an incredible degree.<sup>111</sup> Once he drove the sheep about in the desert for forty days, without finding a pasturing place for them. Nevertheless he did not lose a single sheep.

Moses' longing for the desert was irresistible. His prophetic spirit caused him to foresee that his own greatness and the greatness of Israel would manifest themselves there. In the desert God's wonders would appear, though it would be at the same time the grave of the human herd to be entrusted to him in the future, and also his own last resting-place. Thus he had a presentiment at the very beginning of his career that the desert would be the scene of his activity, which not only came true in the present order of things, but also will be true in the latter days, when he will appear in the desert again, to lead into the promised land the generation, arisen from their graves, that he brought forth from Egyptian bondage.<sup>112</sup>

Wandering through the desert, he reached Mount Horeb, which is called by six names, each conveying one of its distinctions. It is "the mountain of God," wherein the Lord revealed His law; "Bashan," for God "came there"; "a mountain of humps," for the Lord declared all the other mountains unfit for the revelation, as "crookback" animals are declared unfit for sacrifices; "mountain of abode," because it is the mountain that God desired for His "abode"; Sinai, because the "hatred" of God against the heathen began at the time when Israel received the law thereon; and Horeb, "sword," because there the sword of the law was drawn upon the sinners.<sup>113</sup>



108. ShR 1. 33; Tan. Shemot 12. As to the different explanations of **וַיֹּאֵל** (Exod. 2. 21), see Mekilta Yitro 1, 33; Mekilta RS, 169; Sifre D., 4 and 27; Midrash Tannaim 4 and 16; Tan. B. II, 7; Nedarim 65a. Vulgate has *juravit* in accordance with the view shared by most of the Rabbis. Comp. note 148.

109. ShR 2. 2–3; Tan. B. II, 6; Tehillim 78, 357. Philo, *De Josepho*, 1, and *Vita Mosis*, 1. 11; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1. 22 (based on Philo); Aphraates, 196. Compare with pp. 912–913. Moses is often called the “faithful shepherd.” This designation is a favorite with Zohar, a part of which work is called **רֵעִיָּא מְהִימְנָא** (“The Faithful Shepherd”), after Moses, who is introduced as revealing certain mystic doctrines; comp. also IV, 308–309 and 416, where it is said: “God elevates no man to an office, unless He has tried him and found him worthy of his calling”; see text on p. 673, and, in abridged form, ShR and Tan., *loc. cit.* Commenting on Moses’ working as a shepherd, *Gadol u-Gedolah*, 125–126, remarks: Great is the dignity of work, since the prophets occupied themselves with work, as, for instance, Jacob, Moses, David, and Amos were shepherds. The designation of David as prophet sounds rather strange, but see Yerushalmi Sotah 9. 24b, where Samuel and David are described as “the early prophets.”

110. Tan. B. II, 6; ShR 2. 3.

111. PRE 40; MHG II, 23, which reads: Moses used his miraculous rod as his shepherd’s staff. Compare with p. 293.

112. ShR 2. 4; Tan. B. II, 7; Tan. Shemot 14; comp. also Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 12. On Moses as the head of his generation at the time of resurrection, see text on pp. 507–508 and 541, as well as text on p. 564 and 838.

113. Tan. B. IV, 7–8; BaR 1. 8; ShR 2. 14 and 51. 8 (this passage gives only three names: the first, the fifth, and the sixth of the text); PRK 20a (this source does not know of names 2, 3, and 4, but has an additional name not mentioned elsewhere, namely: “Mount of the Kings”); Lekah Exod. 3. 1; *Rimze Haftarot, Pinehas*; Yelammedenu in Yal-kut II, 503, on Is. 60. See further Sa’adya, *Emunot we-Deot*, 3, 92; Lekah Num. 13. 17; *Kafkor wa-Ferah* 118; Poznanski, *Einleitung*, 64, on Paran and Seir as additional names of Sinai. Efodi and Shem Tob, in their respective commentaries on Maimonides’ *Guide of the Perplexed* 1, 66, remark that they saw stones of this mount upon which the signs of thorns were discernible, and it is on account of these thorns that the mountain is called “Sinai.” As to God’s hatred of the heathen, see Mekilta RS, 93; Midrash Tannaim 111; text on p. 547, *seq.*, where other names of Sinai are given. Mount Horeb was known as a holy mount even before the revelation took place on it, and for that reason the shepherds did not allow their flocks to graze there; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 12. 1; compare with p. 441. After

the revelation the mount did not lose its significance entirely. Every day a heavenly voice goes forth from it, proclaiming these words: “Woe to mankind for the contempt of the Torah.” Abot 6 (Kinyan Torah); Nispahim 17. Comp. also Berakot 16b and Baba Batra 74a. As to the defective spelling of Horeb (**חֹרֵב**, not **חֹרֵב**), see Haserot, No. 90.

## THE BURNING THORN-BUSH

When Moses drew near to Mount Horeb, he was aware at once that it was a holy place, for he noticed that passing birds did not alight upon it. At his approach the mountain began to move, as though to go forward and meet him, and it settled back into quietude only when his foot rested upon it.<sup>114</sup> The first thing Moses noticed was the wonderful burning bush, the upper part of which was a blazing flame, neither consuming the bush, nor preventing it from bearing blossoms as it burnt, for the celestial fire has three peculiar qualities: it produces blossoms, it does not consume the object around which it plays, and it is black of color. The fire that Moses saw in the bush was the appearance of the angel Michael, who had descended as the forerunner of the Shekinah herself to come down presently. It was the wish of God to hold converse with Moses, who, however, was not inclined to permit any interruption of the work under his charge. Therefore God startled him with the wonderful phenomenon of the burning thorn-bush. That brought Moses to a stop, and then God spoke with him.

There were good reasons for selecting the thorn-bush as the vessel for a Divine vision. It was “clean,” for the heathen could not use it to make idols. God’s choosing to dwell in the stunted thorn-bush conveyed the knowledge to Moses that He suffers along with Israel. Furthermore, Moses was taught that there is nothing in nature, not even the insignificant thorn-bush, that



can exist without the presence of the Shekinah. Besides, the thorn-bush may be taken as the symbol for Israel in several respects. As the thorn-bush is the lowliest of all species of trees, so the condition of Israel in the exile is the lowliest as compared with that of all the other nations, but as the thorn-bush releases no bird that alights upon it without lacerating its wings, so the nations that subjugate Israel will be punished. Also, as a garden hedge is made of the thorn-bush, so Israel forms the hedge for the world, the garden of God, for without Israel the world could not endure. Furthermore, as the thorn-bush bears thorns and roses alike, so Israel has pious and impious members, and as the thorn-bush requires ample water for its growth, so Israel can prosper only through the Torah, the celestial water. And the thorn-bush, the leaf of which consists of five leaflets, was to indicate to Moses that God had resolved to redeem Israel only for the sake of the merits of five pious men, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Aaron, and Moses. The numbers represented by the letters composing the Hebrew word for thorn-bush, *Senah*, add up to one hundred and twenty, to convey that Moses would reach the age of one hundred and twenty years, and that the Shekinah would rest on Mount Horeb for one hundred and twenty days. Finally, in order to give Moses an illustration of His modesty, God descended from the exalted heavens and spake to him from a lowly thorn-bush instead of the summit of a lofty mountain or the top of a stately cedar tree.<sup>115</sup>

---

114. Zohar II, 21a (as a magnet draws iron, even so did the holy mount draw Moses) which is very likely the source for Shu'aib, Shemot, 25b, whereas the somewhat different version in Recanati, Exod. 3. 1, is independent of Zohar. There are mountains, and Horeb is one of them, upon which neither man nor beast can set foot without immediately causing thunder-storms to come down at the first sound made by them, and only complete silence will stop these thunder-storms; Hasidim 426.

115. ShR 2. 5; Tan. Shemot 14–15. As to the peculiarities of the heavenly fire, see Yoma 21b; Darmesteter, *R.E.J.*, I, 187, *seq.*; see footnote 60 on p. 13. The angel who appeared to Moses was the archangel Gabriel, according to ShR, *loc. cit.*, whereas Aggadat Bereshit 32, 64, maintains that it was Michael, who from this moment until the worship of the golden calf watched over Moses and Israel. The appearance of Gabriel or Michael served the purpose to indicate the presence of the Shekinah, for it was God Himself, and not the angels, who spoke to Moses; see ShR, *loc. cit.*, and 32. 9; BR 97.3; Trypho, in Justin's *Dialogue*, 20 and 128. See Index, *s. v.* "Angels." As to the symbolic significance of the bush, see Tan. B. II, 8; Lekah Exod. 3. 1; PRE 40; Sabba, Shemot 66d and 67a; Al-Barceloni, 134; Tehillim 37, 223; PK 1, 2b; *Emunah u-Bittahon* 18; the vast collection of material dealing with this point in MHG II, 25, and the parallel passages cited by Hoffmann, *ad loc.* Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 12, in agreement with many of the Rabbis, sees in the bush a symbol of Israel, and in the fire that could not consume it a symbol of Israel's enemies. The symbolic explanations of the bush given by Ephraim I, 102 and Theodoretus Exod. 3. 1, are also found in the Midrash. On the "lowly" bush, see Shabbat 67a; Sotah 5a; text on p. 595; on the "purity" of the bush, again see p. 595. On the conception that God suffers when Israel is in distress, see footnote 4 on p. 433, as well as text on p. 582.

## THE ASCENSION OF MOSES

THE vision of the burning bush appeared to Moses alone; the other shepherds with him saw nothing of it. He took five steps in the direction of the bush, to view it at close range, and when God beheld the countenance of Moses distorted by grief and anxiety over Israel's suffering, He spake, "This one is worthy of the office of pasturing My people."<sup>116</sup>

Moses was still a novice in prophecy, therefore God said to Himself, "If I reveal Myself to him in loud tones, I shall alarm him, but if I reveal Myself with a subdued voice, he will hold prophecy in low esteem," whereupon he addressed him in his father Amram's voice. Moses was overjoyed to hear his father speak, for it gave him the assurance that he was still alive. The voice called his name twice, and he answered, "Here



am I! What is my father's wish?" God replied, saying, "I am not thy father. I but desired to refrain from terrifying thee, therefore I spoke with thy father's voice. I am the God of thy father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob." These words rejoiced Moses greatly, for not only was his father Amram's name pronounced in the same breath with the names of the three Patriarchs, but it came before theirs, as though he ranked higher than they.

Moses said not a word. In silent reverence before the Divine vision he covered his face, and when God disclosed the mission with which He charged him, of bringing the Israelites forth from the land of Egypt, he answered with humility, "Who am I, that I should go unto Pharaoh, and bring forth the children of Israel out of Egypt?" Thereupon spake God, "Moses, thou art meek, and I will reward thee for thy modesty. I will deliver the whole land of Egypt into thine hand, and, besides, I will let thee ascend unto the throne of My glory, and look upon all the angels of the heavens."

Hereupon God commanded Metatron, the Angel of the Face, to conduct Moses to the celestial regions amid the sound of music and song, and He commanded him furthermore to summon thirty thousand angels, to serve as his body-guard, fifteen thousand to right of him and fifteen thousand to left of him. In abject terror Moses asked Metatron, "Who art thou?" and the angel replied, "I am Enoch, the son of Jared, thy ancestor, and God has charged me to accompany thee to His throne." But Moses demurred, saying, "I am but flesh and blood, and I cannot look upon the countenance of an angel," whereupon Metatron changed Moses' flesh into torches of fire, his eyes into Merkabah wheels, his strength into an angel's, and his tongue into a flame, and he took him to heaven with a retinue of thirty thousand angels, one half moving to right of them and one half to left of them.

In the first heaven Moses saw streams upon streams of water, and he observed that the whole heaven consisted of windows, at each of which angels were stationed. Metatron named and pointed out all the windows of heaven to him: the window of prayer and the window of supplication; of weeping and of joy; plenitude and starvation; wealth and poverty; war and peace; conception and birth; showers and soft rains; sin and repentance; life and death; pestilence and healing; sickness and health; and many windows more.

In the second heaven Moses saw the angel Nuriel, standing three hundred parasangs high, with his retinue of fifty myriads of angels, all fashioned out of water and fire, and all keeping their faces turned toward the Shekinah while they sang a song of praise to God. Metatron explained to Moses, that these were the angels set over the clouds, the winds, and the rains, who return speedily, as soon as they have executed the will of their Creator, to their station in the second of the heavens, there to proclaim the praise of God.

In the third heaven Moses saw an angel, so tall it would take a human being five hundred years to climb to his height. He had seventy thousand heads, each head having as many mouths, each mouth as many tongues, and each tongue as many sayings, and he together with his suite of seventy thousand myriads of angels made of white fire praised and extolled the Lord. "These," said Metatron to Moses, "are called Erelim, and they are appointed over the grass, the trees, the fruits, and the grain, but as soon as they have done the will of their Creator, they return to the place assigned to them, and praise God."

In the fourth heaven Moses saw a Temple, the pillars thereof made of red fire, the staves of green fire, the thresholds of white fire, the boards and clasps of flaming fire, the gates of carbuncles, and the pinnacles of rubies. Angels were entering the Temple and giving praise to God there. In response to a question from Moses Metatron



told him that they presided over the earth, the sun, the moon, the stars, and the other celestial bodies, and all of them intone songs before God. In this heaven Moses noticed also the two great planets, Venus and Mars, each as large as the whole earth, and concerning these he asked unto what purpose they had been created. Metatron explained thereupon, that Venus lies upon the sun to cool him off in summer, else he would scorch the earth, and Mars lies upon the moon, to impart warmth to her, lest she freeze the earth.

Arrived in the fifth heaven, Moses saw hosts of angels, whose nether parts were of snow and their upper parts of fire, and yet the snow did not melt nor was the fire extinguished, for God had established perfect harmony between the two elements. These angels, called Ishim, have had nothing to do since the day of their creation but praise and extol the Lord.

In the sixth of the heavens were millions and myriads of angels praising God, they were called 'Irin and Qadishim, "Watchers" and "Holy Ones," and their chief was made of hail, and he was so tall, it would take five hundred years to walk a distance equal to his height.

In the last heaven Moses saw two angels, each five hundred parasangs in height, forged out of chains of black fire and red fire, the angels Af, "Anger," and Hemah, "Wrath," whom God created at the beginning of the world, to execute His will. Moses was disquieted when he looked upon them, but Metatron embraced him, and said, "Moses, Moses, thou favorite of God, fear not, and be not terrified," and Moses became calm. There was another angel in the seventh heaven, different in appearance from all the others, and of frightful mien. His height was so great, it would have taken five hundred years to cover a distance equal to it, and from the crown of his head to the soles of his feet he was studded with glaring eyes, at the sight of which the beholder fell prostrate in awe. "This one," said

Metatron, addressing Moses, "is Samael, who takes the soul away from man." "Whither goes he now?" asked Moses, and Metatron replied, "To fetch the soul of Job the pious." Thereupon Moses prayed to God in these words, "O may it be Thy will, my God and the God of my fathers, not to let me fall into the hands of this angel."

Here, in the highest heaven, he saw also the seraphim with their six wings. With two they cover their face, that they gaze not upon the Shekinah; and with two their feet, which, being like a calf's feet, they hide, to keep secret Israel's transgression of the golden calf. With the third pair of wings they fly and do the service of the Lord, all the while exclaiming, "Holy, holy, holy is the Lord of hosts; the whole earth is full of His glory." The wings of these angels are of prodigious size, it would take a man five hundred years to traverse their length and their breadth, as from one end of the earth to the other.

And Moses saw in the seventh heaven the holy Hayyot, which support the throne of God; and he beheld also the angel Zagzagel, the prince of the Torah and of wisdom, who teaches the Torah in seventy languages to the souls of men, and thereafter they cherish the precepts contained therein as laws revealed by God to Moses on Sinai. From this angel with the horns of glory Moses himself learnt all the "ten mysteries."

Having seen what there is in the seven heavens, he spoke to God, saying, "I will not leave the heavens unless Thou grantest me a gift," and God replied, "I will give thee the Torah, and men shall call it the Law of Moses."<sup>117</sup>

---

116. ShR 2. 5–6; Tan. Shemot 15; Tan. B. II, 8.

117. For the first paragraph, see ShR 3. 1 and 455; Tan. Shemot 49; Tan. B. II, 9; Mekilta RS, 167; MHG II, 26; Lekah, Exod. 3. 7 (emphasis is laid upon the fact that it was an angel, not God Himself who appeared to Moses; see note 115). As to Amram, see Sifre N., 116; text on pp. 473–474 and 501; on Moses' humility, see text on



pp. 594–595. The description of the ascension of Moses is taken from a small Midrash entitled *Gedullat Mosheh* which is devoted entirely to this subject. The Midrash published, from a manuscript, by Wertheimer, *Batte Midrashot* IV, 22 *seq.*, under the title *Midrash Ketappuah Ba'aze ha-Ya'ar*, is identical with *Gedullat Mosheh*, of whose existence Wertheimer was ignorant. A manuscript of an Arabic translation of this Midrash is found in the library of Berlin.—A few remarks on this Ascension of Moses will not be out of place. The ascension takes place amidst the sounds of music, like the ascension of the *Shekinah* to heaven (text on p. 117). On the view that Moses' body was changed to fire, see vol. I, p. 40, and *Zohar* I, 66a. The "tall angel," whom Moses saw in the third heaven, is undoubtedly identical with *Sandalfon* (see text on p. 614). The name *Nuriel* given to him in Wertheimer's edition is due to a scribal error, since *Nuriel* is stationed in the second heaven, as is explicitly stated a few lines before. On the angels of destruction *Af* and *Hemah*, see text on p. 515; text on p. 623, as well as p. 962. They are very likely identical with *Azza* and *Azazel* mentioned elsewhere; see Index, *s. v.* The prince of the Torah *Zagzagel* is, of course, identical with *Zagzagel* who, according to *Targum Yerushalmi* *Exod.* 3. 2, appeared to Moses in the bush (for other views concerning the angel of the bush, see note 115), and who is said by the Kabbalists to have been the teacher of Moses, while Adam's teacher was *Raziel* (see Index, *s. v.*), *Shem's* *Yofiel*, Abraham's *Zadkiel* (comp. *Is.* 41. 2 and footnote 98 on p. 195), Jacob's *Raphael*, Joseph's *Gabriel* (see text on p. 366), and Elijah's *Maltiel*; see *Recanati*, and *Ziyyoni*, *Exod.* 3.2. The legend knows of several ascensions of Moses; the first, at the beginning of his career, is elaborately described in *Gedullat Mosheh* and hinted at in *ShR* 3. 1; the second took place at the revelation of the Torah (see text on pp. 613–615); the third was shortly before his death (see text on pp. 814–815). Medieval authors quote fragments from descriptions of Moses' ascension, but we are not in position to tell which of the three is referred to. See, *e. g.*, *Hasidim* 394 with regard to the praise of God which Moses learned from the angels. The anonymous author of *Orehot Zaddikim* (26, beginning) quotes the following from a Midrash on the ascension of Moses: In the first heaven Moses saw a division of angels reading in the Torah the section concerning the first day of creation. Having finished reading, they chanted the praise of the Torah. In the second heaven he saw a division of angels reading in the Torah the section concerning the second day of creation. Having finished reading, they chanted the praise of Israel. In the third heaven he saw the angels reading in the Torah the section concerning the third day of creation. Having finished reading, they chanted the glory of Jerusalem. The *Er'elim* (the fourth rank of angels; compare with the sources referred to in footnote 64 on p. 13) in the

fourth heaven read in the Torah the section concerning the fourth day of creation. Having finished reading, they chanted the glory of the Messiah. In the fifth heaven Moses saw the angels reading in the Torah the section concerning the fifth day of creation. Having finished reading, they announced the torture of the wicked in Gehenna. The angels in the sixth heaven read in the Torah the section concerning the sixth day of creation. Having finished reading, they announced the joy of the righteous in paradise. On entering the seventh heaven, Moses was greatly terrified at the sight of the *Seraphim*, *Ofanim*, angels of mercy, angels of love, angels of grace, angels of fear, and angels of dread. In his terror of the numerous awe-inspiring angels he caught hold of God's throne for protection (compare with pp. 117–118). He then heard the angels surrounding the throne read in the Torah from the section concerning the Sabbath, the seventh day of creation. Having finished reading, they proclaimed the great power of repentance. He then knew that repentance reaches God's throne. Comp. *Yoma* 86a; *PK* 25, 163b; *PR* 44, 185a. As to this description of the seven heavens, see text on pp. 5–6, and Index, *s. v.* "Heavens," as well as the legend about the first seven things created, text on p. 1.

## MOSES VISITS PARADISE AND HELL

When Moses was on the point of departing from heaven, a celestial voice announced: "Moses, thou camest hither, and thou didst see the throne of My glory. Now thou shalt see also Paradise and hell," and God dispatched *Gabriel* on the errand of showing hell to him. Terrified by its fires, when he caught sight of them as he entered the portals of hell, Moses refused to go farther. But the angel encouraged him, saying, "There is a fire that not only burns but also consumes, and that fire will protect thee against hell fire, so that thou canst step upon it, and yet thou wilt not be seared."

As Moses entered hell, the fire withdrew a distance of five hundred parasangs, and the Angel of Hell, *Nasargiel*, asked him, "Who art thou?" and he answered, "I am Moses, the son of Amram."

*Nasargiel*: "This is not thy place, thou belongest in Paradise."



Moses: "I came hither to see the manifestation of the power of God."

Then said God to the Angel of Hell, "Go and show hell unto Moses, and how the wicked are treated there." Immediately he went with Moses, walking before him like a pupil before his master, and thus they entered hell together, and Moses saw men undergoing torture by the Angels of Destruction: some of the sinners were suspended by their eyelids, some by their ears, some by their hands, and some by their tongues, and they cried bitterly. And women were suspended by their hair and by their breasts, and in other ways, all on chains of fire. Nasargiel explained: "These hang by their eyes, because they looked lustfully upon the wives of their neighbors, and with a covetous eye upon the possessions of their fellow-men. These hang by their ears because they listened to empty and vain speech, and turned their ear away from hearing the Torah. These hang by their tongues, because they talked slander, and accustomed their tongue to foolish babbling. These hang by their feet, because they walked with them in order to spy upon their fellow-men, but they walked not to the synagogue, to offer prayer unto their Creator. These hang by their hands, because with them they robbed their neighbors of their possessions, and committed murder. These women hang by their hair and their breasts, because they uncovered them in the presence of young men, so that they conceived desire unto them, and fell into sin."

Moses heard hell cry with a loud and a bitter cry, saying to Nasargiel: "Give me something to eat, I am hungry."—Nasargiel: "What shall I give thee?"—Hell: "Give me the souls of the pious."—Nasargiel: "The Holy One, blessed be He, will not deliver the souls of the pious unto thee."

Moses saw the place called 'Alukah, where sinners were suspended by their feet, their heads downward, and their bodies covered with black

worms, each five hundred parasangs long. They lamented, and cried: "Woe unto us for the punishment of hell. Give us death, that we may die!" Nasargiel explained: "These are the sinners that swore falsely, profaned the Sabbath and the holy days, despised the sages, called their neighbors by unseemly nicknames, wronged the orphan and the widow, and bore false witness. Therefore hath God delivered them to these worms."

Moses went thence to another place, and there he saw sinners prone on their faces, with two thousand scorpions lashing, stinging, and tormenting them, while the tortured victims cried bitterly. Each of the scorpions had seventy thousand heads, each head seventy thousand mouths, each mouth seventy thousand stings, and each sting seventy thousand pouches of poison and venom, which the sinners are forced to drink down, although the anguish is so racking that their eyes melt in their sockets. Nasargiel explained: "These are the sinners who caused the Israelites to lose their money, who exalted themselves above the community, who put their neighbors to shame in public, who delivered their fellow-Israelites into the hands of the Gentiles, who denied the Torah of Moses, and who maintained that God is not the Creator of the world."

Then Moses saw the place called Tīṭ ha-Yawen, in which the sinners stand in mud up to their navels, while the Angels of Destruction lash them with fiery chains, and break their teeth with fiery stones, from morning until evening, and during the night they make their teeth grow again, to the length of a parasang, only to break them anew the next morning. Nasargiel explained: "These are the sinners who ate carrion and forbidden flesh, who lent their money at usury, who wrote the Name of God on amulets for Gentiles, who used false weights, who stole money from their fellow-Israelites, who ate on the Day of Atonement, who ate forbidden fat, and animals and reptiles that are an abomination, and who drank blood."



Then Nasargiel said to Moses: "Come and see how the sinners are burnt in hell," and Moses answered, "I cannot go there," but Nasargiel replied, "Let the light of the Shekinah precede thee, and the fire of hell will have no power over thee." Moses yielded, and he saw how the sinners were burnt, one half of their bodies being immersed in fire and the other half in snow, while worms bred in their own flesh crawled over them, and the Angels of Destruction beat them incessantly. Nasargiel explained: "These are the sinners who committed incest, murder, and idolatry, who cursed their parents and their teachers, and who, like Nimrod and others, called themselves gods." In this place, which is called Abaddon, he saw the sinners taking snow by stealth and putting it in their armpits, to relieve the pain inflicted by the scorching fire, and he was convinced that the saying was true, "The wicked mend not their ways even at the gate of hell."

As Moses departed from hell, he prayed to God, "May it be Thy will, O Lord my God and God of my fathers, to save me and the people of Israel from the places I have seen in hell." But God answered him, and said, "Moses, before Me there is no respecting of persons and no taking of gifts. Whoever doeth good deeds entereth Paradise, and he that doeth evil must go to hell."

At the command of God, Gabriel now led Moses to Paradise. As he entered, two angels came toward him, and they said to him, "Thy time is not yet arrived to leave the world," and Moses made answer, "What ye say is true, but I have come to see the reward of the pious in Paradise." Then the angels extolled Moses, saying: "Hail, Moses, servant of God! Hail, Moses, born of woman, that hast been found worthy to ascend to the seven heavens! Hail to the nation to which thou belongest!"

Under the tree of life Moses saw the angel Shamshiel, the prince of Paradise, who led him through it, and showed him all there is therein.

He saw seventy thrones made of precious stones, standing on feet of fine gold, each throne surrounded by seventy angels. But one of them was larger than all the others, and it was encircled by one hundred and twenty angels. This was the throne of Abraham, and when Abraham beheld Moses, and heard who he was, and what his purpose was in visiting Paradise, he exclaimed, "Praise ye the Lord, for He is good, for His mercy endureth forever."

Moses asked Shamshiel about the size of Paradise, but not even he who is the prince thereof could answer the question, for there is none that can gauge it. It can neither be measured nor fathomed nor numbered. But Shamshiel explained to Moses about the thrones, that they were different one from the other, some being of silver, some of gold, some of precious stones and pearls and rubies and carbuncles. The thrones made of pearls are for the scholars that study the Torah day and night for her own sake; those of precious stones are for the pious, those of rubies for the just, those of gold for the repentant sinners, and those of silver for the righteous proselytes. "The greatest of them all," continued Shamshiel, "is the throne of Abraham, the next in size the thrones of Isaac and Jacob, then come the thrones of the prophets, the saints, and the righteous, each in accordance with a man's worth, and his rank, and the good deeds he has performed in his lifetime." Moses asked then for whom the throne of copper was intended, and the angel answered, "For the sinner that has a pious son. Through the merits of his son he receives it as his share."

Again Moses looked, and he beheld a spring of living water welling up from under the tree of life and dividing into four streams, which passed under the throne of glory, and thence encompassed Paradise from end to end. He also saw four rivers flowing under each of the thrones of the pious, one of honey, the second of milk, the third of wine, and the fourth of pure balsam.



Beholding all these desirable and pleasant things, Moses felt great joy, and he said, "Oh, how great is Thy goodness, which Thou hast laid up for them that fear Thee, which Thou hast wrought for them that put their trust in Thee, before the sons of men!" And Moses left Paradise, and returned to the earth.

At the moment of his departure, a heavenly voice cried aloud: "Moses, servant of the Lord, thou that art faithful in His house, even as thou hast seen the reward that is laid up for the pious in the world to come, so also thou wilt be worthy of seeing the life of the world that shall be in the future time. Thou and all Israel, ye shall see the rebuilding of the Temple and the advent of the Messiah, behold the beauty of the Lord, and meditate in His Temple."<sup>118</sup>

In the world to come Moses, beside sharing the joys of Israel, will continue his activity as the teacher of Israel, for the people will go before Abraham and request him to instruct them in the Torah. He will send them to Isaac, saying, "Go to Isaac, he hath studied more of the Torah than ever I studied," but Isaac, in turn, will send them to Jacob, saying, "Go to Jacob, he hath had more converse with the sages than ever I had." And Jacob will send them to Moses, saying, "Go to Moses, he was instructed in the Torah by God Himself."<sup>119</sup>

In the Messianic time, Moses will be one of the seven shepherds that shall be the leaders of Israel with the Messiah.<sup>120</sup>

---

118. Gedullat Mosheh=Midrash Ketappuah Ba'aze ha-Ya'ar; see preceding note. The part dealing with paradise and hell is not only faulty, but also incomplete. Of the seven divisions of hell only six are described, and inasmuch as the description of the sixth division is a doublet of that of the fifth (in both descriptions the sinners are punished with fire and snow; on the cold hell see Seder Rabba de-Bereshit 17–18), it would seem that two sevenths of the text are missing.—A few remarks on this description of hell

may not be out of place here. Gabriel leads Moses to paradise; the same is found also in the text on p. 836. As to the fire which consumes the fire of hell, see text on p. 13, and text on p. 501. On Sargiel who fills hell with the souls of the wicked, see 2 Alphabet R. Akiba 63 (אלכ"ם); Apocalypse of Daniel (end); comp. further 'Abodah Zarah 17a; Tehillim 31, 241; ER 18, 108 (on the text comp. Recanati, Wa-Yelek); Shabbat 104a. In view of the fact that Nergal is the Babylonian God of hell, it is inadvisable to look for a Persian etymology for Nasargiel. Sar+Nergal, or Nergal+Sar (prince, Nergal) could easily become Nasargiel. Of theological importance is the statement of this Midrash that God makes no distinction between Jew and Gentile; the pious Gentile enters paradise, and the wicked Jew is punished in Gehenna. The prevalent view in rabbinic literature is that hell is exclusively reserved for the heathen; see footnote 318 on p. 241; ARN 16, 64; Zohar Hadash, Balak; 'Emek ha-Melek, 117a. It is, however, true that the Kabbalists maintain that even the righteous have to pass through Gehenna before entering paradise. This view is probably influenced by the Christian doctrine of Jesus' descent into hell to save the righteous who died before his time. As to God's descent into hell to save the pious, see Tehillim 1, 21, and *Nispahim* 35.—As to the thrones upon which the pious sit, see Ascension of Isaiah 7. 22, 8. 26, 9. 10, *seq.*, 11. 40; Enoch 108. 12; Matthew 9. 28; Revelation 3. 21 and 4. 4. Attention should be drawn to the fact that in old rabbinic literature the thrones are said to be reserved for the time after the resurrection; comp., *e. g.*, Hagigah 14a. While in our Midrash the "greatest of all the thrones is Abraham's," in Zohar I, 97 it is Jacob who has this distinction. The rivalry between Abraham and Jacob is already found in old sources; see footnote 35 on p. 255. Of theological importance is the view of our Midrash that Terah, though a sinner, received a seat in paradise on account of his son's merits. The old rabbinic sources emphatically declare that "no man can by any means redeem his brother" (Ps. 49. 8), nor a father his son, nor a son his father; see Sifre D., 328; Tehillim 46, 272; Sanhedrin 104a. In the last source, however, the statement is made that while a father cannot redeem his son, a son can redeem his father. The warning against relying on the merits of the fathers (2 Enoch 53. 1) is, in content and form, in full agreement with the rabbinic sources referred to. Charles' remarks on the Pharisaic doctrine of intercession are to be corrected accordingly. The reading in Gedullat Mosheh **מי שהוא רשע ואביו צדיק** is the correct one, and not the one of Ketappuah **למי שהוא צדיק ואביו [ובנו]**, as our Midrash very likely based the view concerning intercession on Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.* The doctrine of intercession as taught by later authorities (comp., *e. g.*, Lekah and Midrash Aggada on Lev. 1. 6; Shu'aib, Lek, 7a; Hashkem 3a–3b) may safely be attributed to Christian influence. Comp. also EZ 17, 22–23 and the parallel passages cited by Fried-



mann in connection with the story about the origin of Kaddish; 2 Maccabees 12. 43, Index, *s. v.* “Intercession” and “Merits of the Fathers.”—On the four streams see text on p. 18.—The description of paradise and hell in this Midrash displays a striking resemblance to the Christian (?) Revelation of Peter. The oldest source in which Moses’ visit to paradise and hell is mentioned is the Apocalypse of Baruch 4. 5 and 59. 4. Comp. also Tan. Mass’e 4.

119. ShR 2. 6.

120. Sukkah 52a. Comp. Index, *s. v.* “Shepherds, Seven.”

## MOSES DECLINES THE MISSION

When Moses turned aside to see the great sight, that the bush was not consumed, he heard a voice calling to him, “Draw not nigh hither.” These words were to convey that the dignity to be conferred upon him God intended for Moses personally, not for his descendants, and further he was warned not to arrogate honors appointed for others, as the priesthood, which was to belong to Aaron and Aaron’s descendants, or royalty, which was to appertain to David and the house of David.<sup>121</sup>

Again the voice spake: “Put off thy shoes from off thy feet, for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground.” These words conveyed the desire of God that he cut asunder every bond uniting him with earthly concerns, he was even to give up his conjugal life. Hereupon the angel Michael spoke to God: “O Lord of the world, can it be Thy purpose to destroy mankind? Blessing can prevail only if male and female are united, and yet Thou biddest Moses separate from his wife.” God answered, saying, “Moses has begot children, he has done his duty toward the world. I desire him to unite himself now with the Shekinah, that she may descend upon earth for his sake.”<sup>122</sup>

God spake furthermore, addressing Moses, “Thou seest only what is to happen in the near

future, that Israel is to receive the Torah on Mount Sinai, but I behold what cometh after, how the people will worship the steer, the figure of which they will see upon My chariot, even while My revelation will be made on Sinai. Thus they will excite My wrath. Nevertheless, though I know all the perverseness of their hearts, wherein they will rebel against Me in the desert, I will redeem them now, for I accord unto man the treatment he merits for his present actions, not what he will deserve in the future. I promised their father Jacob, ‘I will go down with thee into Egypt, and I will also surely bring thee up again,’ and now I will betake myself thither, to bring Israel up in accordance with My words unto Jacob, and bear them to the land I swore unto their fathers, that their seed should inherit it. So long as the time of affliction that I had appointed unto his seed in My revelation to Abraham was not past, I hearkened not to the supplication and the groaning of his children, but now the end hath come. Therefore, go before Pharaoh, that he dismiss My people. If thou dost not bring about the redemption, none other will, for there is none other that can do it. In thee doth Israel hope, and upon thee doth Israel wait. The matter lieth in thine hands alone.”

Moses, however, refused to take the mission upon himself. He said to God, “Thy promise unto Jacob was, ‘I will surely bring thee up again out of Egypt.’ Thou didst undertake to do it Thyself, and now it is Thy purpose to send me thither. And how, indeed, were it possible for me to accomplish this great matter, to bring the children of Israel up out of Egypt? How could I provide them with food and drink? Many are the women in childbirth among them, many are the pregnant women and the little children. Whence shall I procure dainties for those who have borne babes, whence sweetmeats for the pregnant, and whence tidbits for the little ones? And how may I venture to go among the Egyptian brigands



and murderers? for Thou art bidding me to go to mine enemies, to those who lie in wait to take my life. Why should I risk the safety of my person, seeing that I know not whether Israel possesses merits making them worthy of redemption?<sup>123</sup> I have reckoned up the years with care, and I have found that but two hundred and ten have elapsed since the covenant of the pieces made with Abraham, and at that time Thou didst ordain four hundred years of oppression for his seed.”<sup>124</sup>

But God overturned all his objections. He spake to Moses, saying: “I will be with thee. Whatever thou desirest I will do, so that the redemption will in very truth be realized through Me, in accordance with My promise to Jacob. The little ones that Israel will carry up out of Egypt I will provide with food for thirty days. This shall prove to thee in what manner I will supply the needs of all. And as I will be at thy side, thou hast no need to fear any man. Respecting thy doubt, whether Israel deserves to be redeemed, this is My answer: they will be permitted to go forth from Egypt on account of the merits they will acquire at this mountain, whereon they will receive the Torah through thee.”<sup>125</sup> And thy reckoning of the end is not correct, for the four hundred years of bondage began with the birth of Isaac, not with the going down of Jacob into Egypt. Therefore the appointed end hath come.”<sup>126</sup>

Persuaded now of God’s unalterable resolve to use him as His instrument in the redemption of Israel from Egypt, Moses entreated God to impart to him the knowledge of His Great Name, that he be not confounded if the children of Israel ask for it. God answered, saying: “Thou desirest to know My Name? My Name is according to My acts. When I judge My creatures, I am called Elohim, “Judge”; when I rise up to do battle against the sinners, I am Lord Zebaot, “the Lord of hosts”; when I wait with longsuffering patience for the improvement of the sinner, My

name is El Shaddai; when I have mercy upon the world, I am Adonai. But unto the children of Israel shalt thou say that I am He that was, that is, and that ever will be, and I am He that is with them in their bondage now, and He that shall be with them in the bondage of the time to come.”

In reply to the latter words of God, Moses said, “Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof,” and God assented thereto. He admitted that it was not proper to force the knowledge of future suffering upon Israel in a present that was itself full of evil and sorrow. And the Lord said to Moses: “My words about the future were meant for thee alone, not also for them. Tell the children of Israel, besides, that at My behest an angel can stretch his hand from heaven and touch the earth with it, and three angels can find room under one tree, and My majesty can fill the whole world, for when it was My will, it appeared to Job in his hair, and, again, when I willed otherwise, it appeared in a thorn-bush.”<sup>127</sup>

But the most important communication from God to Moses concerning the Divine Names were the words to follow: “In mercy I created the world; in mercy I guide it; and with mercies I will return to Jerusalem. But unto the children of Israel thou shalt say, that My mercy upon them is for the sake of the merits of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.”

When Moses heard these words, he spoke to God, saying, “Are there men that transgress after death?” and when God assured him that it was not possible for the dead to sin, Moses asked again, “Why, then, is it that Thou didst reveal Thyself to me at the first as the God of my father, and now Thou passest him over?” Whereupon God said, “In the beginning it was My purpose to address thee with flattering words, but now thou hearest the whole and exact truth, I am only the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.”<sup>128</sup>

Moses prayed to God, entreating Him to reveal His Great and Holy Name unto him, so



that he might call upon Him with it and secure the fulfilment of all his wishes. The Lord granted the prayer of Moses, and when the celestials knew that He had revealed the secret of the Ineffable Name, they cried out, "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, gracious Giver of knowledge!"<sup>129</sup>

God is always regardful of the honor of the elders of a people, and He bade Moses assemble those of Israel and announce the approaching redemption to them. And as God knew beforehand how Pharaoh's obduracy would display itself, He made it known to Moses at once, lest he reproach God later with the Egyptian king's frowardness.<sup>130</sup>

---

121. BR 55. 6; ShR 2. 6; DR 2. 7; Zebahim 102a; Tan. B. II, 9; Tan. Shemot 19; Mekilta RS, 167; MHG II, 26; ER 18, 90. The descendants of Moses did not inherit his dignities; he was king and priest (see note 139 and Index, *s. v.* "Moses"), but they were merely ordinary Levites.

122. Zohar III, 198a; comp. the numerous other passages of Zohar dealing with this legend in Yalkut Reubeni on Exod. 3. 5. That Moses lived apart from his wife from the time of his election by God until his death is maintained in the old sources; see text on pp. 611, 700, 786, 831, 837, as well as p. 1040; Philo, *Moses*, 2 (3). 2. Among mortals Moses was "almost perfect"; he would have been "entirely perfect," if he had fulfilled his conjugal duties. The small letter of ויקרא (Lev. 1. 1) hints at this shortcoming of Moses; Yalkut Reubeni, Lev., *loc. cit.* Moses like his disciple Joshua, received the same command to remove his shoes (comp. Exod. 3. 5 and Joshua 5. 15). But there was a difference between the two commands: to the former it meant the renunciation of conjugal joys for life; to the latter only during the campaign. Comp. Zohar Hadash, Ki-Teze, and see also MHG II, 26; Lekah, Exod. 3. 5. In connection with taking off the shoes, the following remark is found in ShR (end): One must stand barefoot in the presence of the Shekinah . . . and for this reason the priests were barefoot while performing the service in the temple. The same remark is also found in Theodoretus, Exod. 3. 5. Comp. Rosh ha-Shanah 31b and Shekalim 5. 48d.

123. ShR 3. 2 and 2. 4; Tan. Shemot 14 and 20; comp. Shir 1. 7; text on p. 220 and p. 197, as well as p. 522.

124. Tehillim 18, 150; comp. PK 5, 47a–47b, and parallel passages. As to the compounding of the four hundred years of Egyptian slavery, see note 126; text on p. 199; text on p. 552.

125. ShR 3. 4.

126. Tehillim 18, 150, and 102, 435. The rabbinic literature offers many solutions of the contradiction between Gen. 15. 13 and Exod. 12. 40. The prevalent view is that the slavery of Abraham's descendants began with the birth of Isaac (Mekilta Bo 14, 15b; Mekilta RS, 27; Seder 'Olam 3; PRE 48; Targum Yerushalmi Exod., *loc. cit.*), while their stay in Egypt amounted only to two hundred and ten (according to some, to two hundred and four) years, of which eighty-three (PRE) or eighty-seven (Seder 'Olam) were years of suffering. Comp. also ps.–Philo, 10C, and Ephraim I, 202 A, who agree with these chronological theories of the Rabbis. An unknown Midrash, quoted in *Shitah Mekubetzet*, Nedarim 31b, maintains that God hastened the course of the planets during Israel's stay in Egypt, so that the sun completed four hundred revolutions during the space of time of two hundred and ten regular years.

127. ShR 3. 6; Tan. Shemot 20; Berakot 9b. As to the name of God first revealed to Moses see text on pp. 510–511, 522. The proverb "Sufficient unto the day, etc." is also found in Matthew 6. 34. On the appearance of God's majesty in the hair of man, see footnote 6 on p. 452, as well as text on p. 878. The suffering of Israel in the Egyptian exile was worse than in any of the other exiles; Mekilta RS, 168; MHG II, 27. Comp., however, Yerushalmi Sukkah 4, 54c, where Israel is said to have suffered more in Babylon than in Egypt.

128. Tehillim 72, 324; ShR 3. 3. Compare with p. 318, as well as p. 502. This explanation of the name *Ehyeh Asher Ehyeh*, like the numerous other expositions given in rabbinic literature (comp., *e. g.*, Alphabet of R. Akiba 25=MHG II, 29) are based on the view that these words imply the immutability and unchangeability of God in His attributes of goodness, sublimity, and faithfulness. According to an unknown Midrash, quoted by numerous authors, these words signify: As thou (art) to Me, so shall I be to thee, *i. e.*, God deals with man according to his merits; see R. Bahya, Gen. 2. 4, and *Kad ha-Kemah, Shebuah*, 74a; Ziyoni, Exod. 3. 14; Gabbai, *'Abodat ha-Kodesh*, 16; at great length in Wehizhir, Exod. 85, which is perhaps the source of the last three authorities referred to. Revelation 1. 8 likewise contains an interpretation of the name *Ehyeh*, as may be seen by comparing this passage with ShR, *loc. cit.* See also Philo, *Quod Det. Potiori Insid. Soleat*, 46, and *De Mut. Nom.*, 3.

129. PRE 40; comp. Alphabet of R. Akiba 26; text on p. 1126. See also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 12. 3.

130. ShR 3. 8–9 and 5. 12; WR 211. 8; Tan. Shemot 29; Sifre N., 92; Mekilta Bo 11, 11a; Mekilta RS, 20 and 96; MHG II, 30.



## MOSES PUNISHED FOR HIS STUBBORNNESS

**I**n spite of all these safeguards, Moses was not yet ready to accept the mission God wished to impose upon him. He persisted in urging his fears, saying: "But, behold, they will not believe me, nor hearken unto my voice, for they will say, 'The Lord hath not appeared unto thee.'" And the Lord said unto him, "What is that in thine hand?" And he said, "A rod." And the Lord said: "Thou deservest to be castigated with it. If thou didst not intend to take My mission upon thyself, thou shouldst have said so in the beginning. Instead, thou didst hold back with thy refusal, until I revealed to thee the great secret of the Ineffable Name, that thou mightest know it if the children of Israel should ask thee concerning it. And now thou sayest, I will not go. Now, therefore, if thou wilt not execute My charge to thee, it will be executed by this rod. It was My wish to distinguish thee and make thee My instrument for doing many miracles.<sup>131</sup> But thou deservest a punishment for having suspected My children of lack of faith. The children of Israel are believers and sons of believers, but thou wilt show thyself of little faith in thy career, and as thou followest the example of the slanderous serpent, so shalt thou be punished with leprosy, wherewith the serpent was punished."

The Lord now bade Moses put his hand into his bosom and take it out again, and when he took it out, behold, his hand was leprous, as white as snow. And God bade him put his hand into his bosom again, and it turned again as his other flesh. Beside being a chastisement for his hasty words, the plague on his hand was to teach him that as the leper defiles, so the Egyptians defiled Israel, and as Moses was healed of his uncleanness, so God would cleanse the children of Israel of the pollution the Egyptians had brought upon them.

The second wonder connected with the rod of Moses likewise conveyed a double meaning, in that it pointed to the coming redemption of Israel, and taught Moses a specific lesson. At the bidding of God, Moses cast his rod on the ground, and it became a serpent, to show him that when he traduced Israel, he was following the example of the abusive serpent, and also to show him that the great dragon that lieth in the midst of the rivers of Egypt, though he was now hacking into Israel with his teeth, would be rendered harmless like the rod of wood, which has no power to bite.

And, again, through the third miracle he was bidden to perform, God conveyed to Moses what would happen in the latter years of his own life. The sign He gave him was to make known to him that, before the water came, blood would flow from the rock at Meribah, when Moses should strike it after uttering the hasty, impatient words that were destined to bring death down upon him.<sup>132</sup>

For seven days God urged Moses to undertake the mission He desired him to execute. He resorted to persuasion, that the heathen might not say, that He abused His power as the Ruler of the world, forcing men to do His service against their will. But Moses remained obdurate, he could not be won over.<sup>133</sup> He said: "Thou doest a wrong unto me in sending me to Pharaoh. In the palace of the Egyptian king there are persons that know how to speak the seventy languages of the world. No matter what language a man may use, there is someone that understands him. If I should come as Thy representative, and they should discover that I am not able to converse in the seventy languages, they will mock at me, and say, 'Behold this man, he pretends to be the ambassador of the Creator of the world, and he cannot speak the seventy languages.'" To this God made reply, as follows: "Adam, who was taught by none, could give names to the beasts in the seventy languages. Was it not I that made him to speak?"<sup>134</sup>



Moses was not yet satisfied, he continued to urge objections, and he said: "O Lord of the world, Thou wouldst charge me with the task of chastising Egypt and redeeming Israel, and I am ready to be Thy messenger. But is it seemly that a man should execute two errands at once? Nay, my Lord, for this two men are needed." God made answer, and said, "Moses, I know well whom thou hast in mind with thy request, to be thy companion in the mission I assign to thee. Know, therefore, that the holy spirit hath already come upon thy brother Aaron, and even now he is awaiting thee on the way of Egypt, and when his eyes rest upon thee he will rejoice."

Furthermore God spake to Moses, saying, "When I appeared unto thee the first time, thou wast meek, and didst hide thy face, not to see the vision. Whence cometh now this effrontery of thine, that thou addressest Me as a servant his master? Thou speakest too many words by far. Perchance thou thinkest I have no messengers, hosts, seraphim, ofanim, ministering angels, and Merkabah wheels, to send to Egypt, to bring My children thence, that thou sayest, 'Send by the hand of him whom Thou wilt send.' In sooth, thou deservest severe chastisement. But what can I do, seeing that I am the Master of mercy? If thou escapest unpunished, thou owest it to thy father Amram, who rendered great services in behalf of the preservation of the Israelitish people in Egypt."

But Moses replied: "O Lord of the world, I a prophet and the son of a prophet obeyed Thy words only after much hesitation, and I cannot expect Pharaoh, a wicked man and the son of a wicked man, and the Egyptians, a disobedient people and the sons of a disobedient people, to give ear to my words. O Lord of the world, Thou dost send me to Egypt to redeem sixty myriads of Thy people from the oppression of the Egyptians. If it were a question of delivering a couple of hundred men, it were a sufficiently difficult

enterprise. How much severer is the task of freeing sixty myriads from the dominion of Pharaoh! If Thou hadst called upon the Egyptians to give up their evil ways soon after they began to enslave Israel, they might have heeded Thy admonitions. But if I should go and speak to them now, after they have been ruling over Israel these two hundred and ten years, Pharaoh would say, 'If a slave has served his master for ten years, and no protest has made itself heard from any quarter, how can a man conceive the idea suddenly of having him set at liberty?' Verily, O Lord of the world, the task Thou putttest upon me is too heavy for my strength."<sup>135</sup>

Moses said furthermore: "I am not an eloquent man, nor can I see of what avail words can be in this matter. Thou art sending me to one that is himself a slave, to Pharaoh of the tribe of Ham, and a slave will not be corrected by words. I consent to go on Thy errand only if Thou wilt invest me with the power of chastising Pharaoh with brute force." To these words spoken by Moses, God made reply: "Let it not fret thee that thou art not an eloquent speaker. It is I that made the mouth of all that speak, and I that made men dumb. One I make to see, another I make blind; one I make to hear, another I make deaf. Had I willed it so, thou hadst been a man of ready speech. But I desired to show a wonder through thee. Whenever I will it, the words I cast into thy mouth shall come forth without hesitation. But what thou sayest about a slave, that he cannot be corrected by words, is true, and therefore I give thee My rod for Pharaoh's castigation."

But Moses still stood his ground. He raised other objections. "His grandchild," he said, "is closer to a man than his nephew. Nevertheless when Lot was taken captive, Thou didst send angels to the aid of Abraham's nephew. But now, when the life of sixty myriads of Abraham's lineal descendants is at stake, Thou sendest me, and not the angels. When the Egyptian bondwoman



Hagar was in distress, Thou didst dispatch five angels to stand by her, and to redeem sixty myriads of the children of Sarah Thou dost dispatch me.<sup>136</sup> O Lord, send, I pray Thee, by the hand of him whom Thou wilt send in days to come.” To this God answered, saying, “I said not that I would send thee to Israel, but to Pharaoh, and that one whom thou madest mention of, I will send to Israel at the end of days—Elijah will appear to them before the great and terrible day.”<sup>137</sup>

If Moses refused to do the errand of the Lord, there was a reason. God had revealed to him the treasures of the Torah, of wisdom, and of knowledge, and the whole world’s future. Now he beheld in the inner chamber of God rows of scholars and judges interpreting the Torah in forty-nine different ways as they sat in the court of hewn stones; and he saw, besides, Rabbi Akiba explaining the meaning of the crowns upon the letters. Then said Moses: “I do not care to be God’s messenger. Let Him rather send one of these great scholars.” Then God ordered the Angel of Wisdom to carry Moses to a place of myriads of scholars, all interpreting the Torah, and all making use of the formula: This is a Halakah revealed to Moses on Mount Sinai. Now Moses recognized that even the greatest scholars of future generations would be dependent upon him, and then, at last, he was ready to execute the mission God desired to lay upon him.<sup>138</sup>

But Moses had to pay dear for having hesitated in the execution of the Divine bidding. God said to him: “It was appointed that thou shouldst be priest, and Aaron should be the Levite. Because thou hast refused to execute My will, thou shalt be the Levite, and Aaron shall be priest,”—a punishment that did not fall upon Moses personally, but only upon his descendants, all of whom are Levites. As for himself, he performed a priest’s service in the Tabernacle.<sup>139</sup>

Moses had said to God, “Thou hast been speaking to me now these many days, nevertheless

I am still slow of speech and of a slow tongue.” For this he received another punishment. God said to him: “I might change thee into a new man, and heal thee of thy imperfect speech, but because thou hast uttered such words, I refrain from curing thee.”<sup>140</sup>

131. Abkir in Yalkut I, 171.

132. ShR 3. 12–13; PRE 20; Tan. Shemot 23; MHG II, 32–33; Abkir in Yalkut I, 171; Lekah, Exod. 4. 6–8. The last-named source reads: The rod, as well as the hand of Moses, proclaimed in a loud voice what happened to them. Compare footnote 53 on p. 69; text on pp. 737, 747, 831. As to the statement made in the last passage referred to above to the effect that Moses was never afflicted with leprosy, see Lekah, *loc. cit.*, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 12. 3.

133. Mekilta RS, 3; MHG II, 33 and 34.

134. Tan. B. V, 4–5; Alphabet of R. Akiba (פ) 42–43, whence it was borrowed by *Hadar* and *Da’at* on Exod. 4. 13. Comp. also Targum Yerushalmi and Lekah, Exod., *loc. cit.*

135. Mekilta RS, 3; MHG II, 34–35. Comp. Matthew 26. 53. On Amram see text on p. 475; on Aaron see text on p. 516.

136. ShR 3. 15–16, 15. 14, and 17. 5; Tan. B. II, 10. For different versions concerning Moses’ impediment of speech see text on p. 514 and note 140. On Hagar see text on p. 201.

137. PRE 40; Targum Yerushalmi, Exod. 4. 13; comp. also 2 ARN 40, 111.

138. Abkir in Yalkut I, 173 (in ed. prin. מדרש without the addition אבכיר found in the later editions); Alphabet of R. Akiba (צ); MHG II, 35. Compare with p. 616.

139. Zebahim 102a; WR 11. 6; ShR 3. 17; Shir 1. 7; Tehillim 18, 157, and 99, 424; PK 4, 38a–38b; PR 14, 63b; Ta’anit 11b; Yerushalmi Yoma 1, 38b and 38c; Seder ‘Olam 5 and 7. Opinions in these sources differ as to whether Moses performed the priestly service during the week of dedication only or also after Aaron and his sons had been appointed priests. According to one view, Moses remained high priest even after the dignity of that office had been conferred upon Aaron. Compare with note 121 and pp. 663 and 789.

140. Lekah, Exod. 15. 14; ShR 3. 17 (the text is incomplete); MHG II, 37 (note 1). According to the legend recorded in the text on p. 513, Moses’ impediment of speech was for a time removed by God’s will. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 14 (comp. also *De Praemiis et Poen.*, 9), maintains that Moses became slow of speech at the time when he heard God’s voice addressing him. A similar statement is



found in MHG II, 33 and 86. For another legend on the cause of this imperfection of Moses, see the text on p. 483, as well as footnote 136.

## THE RETURN TO EGYPT

When Moses finally gave in, and declared himself ready to go to Egypt as God's messenger, his acceptance was still conditional upon the promise of God to fulfil all his wishes, and God granted whatsoever he desired, except immortality and entering the Holy Land.<sup>141</sup> God also allayed his fears regarding the danger that threatened him from his whilom enemies Dathan and Abiram, on account of whom he had had to flee from Egypt. He told him that they had sunk to the estate of poor and insignificant men, bereft of the power of doing him harm.<sup>142</sup>

Moses was loyal to the oath he had given his father-in-law Jethro, never to return to Egypt without securing his consent. His first concern therefore was to go back to Midian and obtain his permission, which Jethro gave freely. Then Moses could set out on his journey. He tarried only to take his wife and his children with him, which made his father-in-law say, "Those who are in Egypt are to leave it, and thou desirest to take more thither?" Moses replied: "Very soon the slaves held in bondage in Egypt will be redeemed, and they will go forth from the land, and gather at Mount Sinai, and hear the words, 'I am the Lord thy God,' and should my sons not be present there?" Jethro acknowledged the justice of Moses' words, and he said to him, "Go in peace, enter Egypt in peace, and leave the land in peace."<sup>143</sup>

At last Moses sallied forth upon his journey to Egypt, accompanied by his wife and his children. He was mounted upon the very ass that had borne Abraham to the 'Akedah on Mount Moriah, the ass upon which the Messiah will

appear riding at the end of days.<sup>144</sup> Even now, his journey begun, Moses was but half-hearted about his mission. He travelled leisurely, thinking: "When I arrive in Egypt and announce to the children of Israel that the end of the term of Egyptian slavery has come, they will say, 'We know very well that our bondage must last four hundred years, and the end is not yet,' but if I were to put this objection before God, He would break out in wrath against me. It is best for me to consume as much time as possible on the way thither."

God was ill pleased with Moses for this artifice, and He spake to him, saying, "Joseph prophesied long ago that the oppression of Egypt would endure only two hundred and ten years." For his lack of faith Moses was punished while he was on the road to Egypt.<sup>145</sup> The angels Af and Hemah appeared and swallowed his whole body down to his feet,<sup>146</sup> and they gave him up only after Zipporah, nimble as a "bird,"<sup>147</sup> circumcised her son Gershom, and touched the feet of her husband with the blood of the circumcision. The reason why their son had remained uncircumcised until then was that Jethro had made the condition, when he consented to the marriage of his daughter with Moses, that the first son of their union should be brought up as a Gentile.<sup>148</sup>

When Moses was released by the angels, he attacked them, and he slew Hemah, whose host of angels, however, held their own before the assailant.<sup>149</sup>

The Divine voice heard by Moses in Midian telling him to return to his brethren in Egypt fell at the same time upon the ear of Aaron, dwelling in Egypt, and it bade him "go into the wilderness to meet Moses." God speaketh marvellously with His voice, and therefore the same revelation could be understood one way in Midian and another way in Egypt.

The greeting of the two brothers was very cordial. Envy and jealousy had no place between them. Aaron was rejoiced that God had chosen



his younger brother to be the redeemer of Israel, and Moses was rejoiced that his older brother had been divinely appointed the high priest in Israel. God knew their hearts, for at the time when He charged him with the Egyptian mission, Moses had said, "All these years Aaron has been active as a prophet in Israel, and should I now encroach upon his province and cause him vexation?" But God reassured him, saying, "Moses, thy brother Aaron will surely not be vexed, he will rather rejoice at thy mission, yea, he will come forth and meet thee."

Aaron showed his joy freely at seeing his brother once more, after their separation of many years. As for his joy in the distinction accorded to Moses, it was too great to be expressed in all its depth and extent. For his kind, generous spirit, he received a reward from God, in that he was permitted to bear the Urim and Thummim upon his heart, "for," God said, "the heart that rejoiced at the exalting of a brother shall wear the Urim and Thummim."<sup>150</sup>

Aaron ran to meet his brother, and embraced him, and asked where he had spent all the years of their separation. When he was told in Midian, he continued to question him, saying, "Who are these that are travelling with thee?"

Moses: "My wife and my sons."

Aaron: "Whither goest thou with them?"

Moses: "To Egypt."

Aaron: "What! Great enough is our sorrow through those who have been in Egypt from the beginning, and thou takest more to the land?"

Moses recognized that Aaron was right, and he sent his wife and his sons back to his father-in-law Jethro.<sup>151</sup>

He was no less magnanimous than Aaron. If the elder brother felt no envy on account of the younger brother's dignity, the younger brother did not withhold from the other the teachings and revelations he had received. Immediately after meeting with Aaron, Moses told him all that

God had taught him, even the awful secret of the Ineffable Name communicated to him on Mount Horeb.<sup>152</sup>

In obedience to the command of God, the elders of the people were assembled, and before them Moses performed the wonders that were to be his credentials as the redeemer sent to deliver the people. Nevertheless, the deeds he did were not so potent in convincing them of the reality of the mission as the words wherein God had announced the approaching redemption to him, which he repeated in their ears. The elders knew that Jacob had imparted to Joseph the secret mark designating the redeemer, and Joseph had in turn confided it to his brethren before his death. One of the last surviving of the brethren, Asher, had revealed it to his daughter Serah, in the following words: "He that will come and proclaim the redemption with the words of God, 'I have surely visited you, and seen that which is done to you in Egypt,' he is the true redeemer." Serah was still alive at Moses' return, and the elders betook themselves to her, and told her the words of Moses announcing the redemption. When she heard that his words had been the same as those Asher had quoted, she knew that he was the promised redeemer, and all the people believed in him.

Thereupon Moses invited the elders to go to Pharaoh with him, but they lacked the courage to appear before the king. Though they started out with Moses, they dropped off stealthily on the way, one by one, and when Moses and Aaron stood in the presence of the king, they found themselves alone, deserted by all the others. The elders did not go out free. Their punishment was that God did not permit them to ascend the holy mountain with Moses. They durst accompany him on the way to God only as far as they had accompanied him on the way to Pharaoh, and then they had to tarry until he came again.<sup>153</sup>



141. PRE 45.

142. Nedarim 64a and Yerushalmi 9, 41c; ShR 5. 4; PRE 40; BR 71. 6; Ekah 3, 124; Tan. Zaw 13; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 4. 19 and 10. 29, as well as Gen. 30. 1. On the view that the poor, blind, leprous, and childless are considered like dead, found also in ps.–Philo, see pp. 385–386.

143. Nedarim 65a; ShR 4. 1–4; Tan. Shemot 20; Tan. B. II, 10; ER 17, 83; MHG II, 38–39. Compare with pp. 500 and 515, with reference to the conditions imposed upon Moses by his father-in-law on the occasion of his marriage to Zipporah. Moses, although he obtained Jethro's permission, did not proceed to Egypt until a heavenly court, presided over by God, absolved him of the oath he had given to Jethro; see the sources quoted at the beginning of this note. The Hellenist Ezekiel, 440, maintains that the cause of Moses' return to Egypt was a dream, which, as interpreted by Jethro, implied the prediction that Moses would become king of his people and the teacher of humanity. Compare with p. 516.

144. PRE 31, which is probably directed against Mark 11. 21. This ass is undoubtedly considered in legends to be an "immortal"; comp. Index, *s. v.* "Animals, Immortal"; PRK 30b.

145. Midrash Aggada, Exod. 3. 24, which should read: *עלי הקב"ה יכעס*. Comp. note 126.

146. Nedarim 32a, which contains also the dissenting view that it was Satan himself who attacked Moses; this view is adopted by Wa-Yosha' 43 (comp. the extract from it in text on p. 496), and perhaps also by Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 4. 25. Yerushalmi Nedarim 3, 38b has *מלאך* instead of *שטן*, and even in Babli some texts have the same reading as Yerushalmi; see also MHG II, 41. ShR 2. 8 takes pains to explain that it was a "benign angel" who attacked Moses for the sole purpose of urging Zipporah to circumcise her son. Midrash Aggada, Exod., *loc. cit.*, identifies this angel with Uriel, whereas Zohar I, 93b, says that Gabriel, in the form of a fiery serpent, attempted to slay Moses. Comp. Yashar Shemot, 141b. As to Uriel's attack on Moses, comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 35–37, and note 2 on p. 245.

147. Lekah, Exod. 4. 25, which is very likely based on Tan. B. II, 6 (comp. Lekah, Exod. 2. 21), but in our text of this Midrash Zipporah's "nimbleness" refers to her speed in bringing Moses from the well to her father's house. Tan., *loc. cit.*, offers still another explanation why Moses' wife was called "bird": she purified her father's house of idolatrous pollution, even as a bird purifies a leper of his uncleanness; comp. Lev. 14. 43, *seq.* Allegorical interpretations as to the name Zipporah (= "bird") are given by Philo, *De Sacrif. Ab. et Caini*, 12 and 13, as well as *De Mut. Nom.*, 20.

148. Mekilta Yitro 1, 58a. According to other authorities, it was Moses' second son who was uncircumcised; see p. 496, and ShR 5. 8. The Church Fathers Aphraates,

110, and Ephraim, I, 200 D, blame Zipporah, and not her father, for having prevented Moses from circumcising his son. The Haggadah finds in *ויאמר* (Exod. 2. 21) a hint at the fact that Moses "swore" to his father-in-law; comp. notes 108 and 143.

149. Nedarim 32a, which contains also the dissenting view to the effect that it was Moses' younger son who was attacked, and not he himself. The views of the Rabbis differ also with regard to the subject of *לרגליו* (Exod. 4. 25). According to some, Zipporah touched the feet of her babe, while others think that she touched Moses' feet. There are still others who are of the opinion that she touched the feet of the angel. Opinions differ as to whom Zipporah applied the term "bridegroom of blood" to, Moses or his young son; see Mekilta Yitro 1, 58a; Babli Nedarim, *loc. cit.*, and Yerushalmi 3, 38b; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 4. 25–26; Wa-Yosha' 43. Ephraim I, 205A–205B, following Jewish tradition, refers *לרגליו* to the angel and *חתן* to Moses.—As to the name Gershom, see note 98; on the name of his brother Eliezer, see 4 Maccabees 6. 5, where it is explained to mean "the divine seed," *i. e.*, *זרע אל=אלעזר*. On the angels Af and Hemah see text on p. 504, as well as on p. 625.

150. Tan. B. II, 11–13; Tan. Shemot 26–28; ShR 5. 9–10; Shir 1. 10; Midrash Shir 34a; Shemuel 9, 73; Shabbat 139a; Batte Midrashot III, 16 and 18; 2 ARN 40, 111. Compare with p. 513, as well as p. 700.

151. Mekilta Yitro 1, 57b; Mekilta RS, 86; Ephraim I, 205D. Compare with p. 515.

152. Shir 4. 5; ShR 5. 11. In Shir, as in many other passages of rabbinic literature, emphasis is laid on "the complete equality" of the two brothers; comp. BR 1. 15, and the numerous parallel passages cited by Theodor. Comp. also Philo, *De Mut. Nom.*, 37.

153. ShR 5. 13–14; Tan. Shemot 24; Tan. B. II, 13; PRE 48; MHG II, 42 (where it is stated that Jacob before his death performed the same three miracles which were later repeated by Moses to prove that he was the promised redeemer); Midrash Shir 76. Comp. also ShR 5. 2 and 15. 26 (on the text see MHG, *loc. cit.*); text on pp. 405, 428, 510–511, 535.

## MOSES AND AARON BEFORE PHARAOH

The day Moses and Aaron made their appearance before Pharaoh happened to be the anniversary of his birth, and he was surrounded



by many kings, for he was the ruler of the whole world, and this was the occasion on which the kings of the earth came to do him homage. When the attendants announced Moses and Aaron, Pharaoh inquired whether the two old men had brought him crowns, and, receiving a negative reply, he ordered that they were not to be admitted to his presence, until he had seen and dismissed all the others desirous of paying him their respects.<sup>154</sup>

Pharaoh's palace was surrounded by a vast army. It was built with four hundred entrances, one hundred on each side, and each of them guarded by sixty thousand soldiers. Moses and Aaron were overawed by this display of power, and they were afraid. But the angel Gabriel appeared, and he led them into the palace, observed by none of the guards, and Pharaoh decreed severe punishment upon the inattentive sentinels for having admitted the old men without his permission. They were dismissed, and others put in their places. But the same thing happened the next day. Moses and Aaron were within the palace, and the new guard had not been able to hinder their passing. Pharaoh questioned his servants, how it had been possible for the two old men to enter, and they said: "We know it not! Through the doors they did not come. Surely, they must be magicians."<sup>155</sup>

Not enough that the palace was guarded by a host, at each entrance two lions were stationed, and in terror of being torn to pieces none dared approach the doors, and none could go within until the lion tamer came and led the beasts away. Now Balaam and all the other sacred scribes of Egypt advised that the keepers loose the lions at the approach of Moses and Aaron. But their advice availed naught. Moses had but to raise his rod, and the lions bounded toward him joyously, and followed at his feet, gambolling like dogs before their master on his return home.<sup>156</sup>

Within the palace, Moses and Aaron found seventy secretaries busy with Pharaoh's correspondence, which was carried on in seventy languages.

At the sight of the messengers of Israel, they started up in great awe, for the two men resembled angels. In stature they were as the cedars of Lebanon, their countenances radiated splendor like the sun, the pupils of their eyes were like the sphere of the morning star, their beards like palm branches, and their mouths emitted flames when they opened them for speech. In their terror, the secretaries flung down pen and paper, and prostrated themselves before Moses and Aaron.

Now the two representatives of the children of Israel stepped before Pharaoh, and they spake, "The God of the Hebrews hath met with us; let us go, we pray thee, three days' journey into the wilderness, and sacrifice unto the Lord our God, lest He fall upon us with pestilence or with the sword." But Pharaoh answered, saying: "What is the name of your God? Wherein doth His strength consist, and His power? How many countries, how many provinces, how many cities hath He under His dominion? In how many campaigns was He victorious? How many lands did He make subject to Himself? How many cities did He capture? When He goeth to war, how many warriors, riders, chariots, and charioteers doth He lead forth?" Whereto Moses and Aaron replied: "His strength and His power fill the whole world. His voice heweth out flames of fire; His words break mountains in pieces. The heaven is His throne, and the earth His footstool. His bow is fire, His arrows are flames, His spears torches, His shield clouds, and His sword lightning flashes. He created the mountains and the valleys, He brought forth spirits and souls, He stretched out the earth by a word, He made the mountains with His wisdom, He forms the embryo in the womb of the mother, He covers the heavens with clouds, at His word the dew and the rain descend earthward, He causes plants to grow from the ground, He nourishes and sustains the whole world, from the horns upon the reëm down to the eggs of vermin. Every day He



causes men to die, and every day He calls men into life.”

Pharaoh answered, and said: “I have no need of Him. I have created myself, and if ye say that He causes dew and rain to descend, I have the Nile, the river that hath its source under the tree of life, and the ground impregnated by its waters bears fruit so huge that it takes two asses to carry it, and it is palatable beyond description, for it has three hundred different tastes.”<sup>157</sup>

Then Pharaoh sent to fetch the books of the chronicles of his kingdom from his archives, wherein are recorded the names of the gods of all the nations, to see whether the name of the God of the Hebrews was among them. He read off: “The gods of Moab, the gods of Ammon, the gods of Zidon—I do not find your God inscribed in the archives!” Moses and Aaron exclaimed: “O thou fool! Thou seekest the Living in the graves of the dead. These which thou didst read are the names of dumb idols, but our God is the God of life and the King of eternal life.”<sup>158</sup>

When Pharaoh said the words, “I know not the Lord,” God Himself made answer, saying: “O thou rascal! Thou sayest to My ambassadors, ‘I know not the strength and the power of your God’? Lo, I will make thee to stand, for to show thee My power, and that My Name may be declared throughout all the earth.”<sup>159</sup>

Having searched his list of the gods of the nations in vain for a mention of the God of the Hebrews, Pharaoh cited before him the wise men of Egypt, and he said to them: “Have ye ever heard the name of the God of these people?” They replied, “We have been told that He is a son of the wise, the son of ancient kings.” Then spake God, saying, “O ye fools! Ye call yourselves wise men, but Me ye call only the son of the wise. Verily, I will set at naught all your wisdom and your understanding.”<sup>160</sup>

Pharaoh persisted in his obduracy, even after Moses and Aaron had performed the miracle

of the rod. At the time when the two Hebrews succeeded in entering the palace, guarded as it was by lions, Pharaoh had sent for his magicians, at their head Balaam and his two sons Jannes and Jambres, and when they appeared before him, he told them of the extraordinary incident, how the lions had followed the two old men like dogs, and fawned upon them. It was Balaam’s opinion that they were simply magicians like himself and his companions, and he prayed the king to have them come before him together with themselves, to test who were the master magicians, the Egyptians or the Hebrews.

Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron, and he said to them: “Who will believe you when you say that you are the ambassadors of God, as you pretend to be, if you do not convince men by performing wonders?” Thereupon Aaron cast his rod to the ground, and it became a serpent.<sup>161</sup> Pharaoh laughed aloud. “What,” he exclaimed, “is this all your God can do? It is the way of merchants to carry merchandise to a place if there is none of it there, but would anyone take brine to Spain or fish to Accho? It seems you do not know that I am an adept in all sorts of magic!” He ordered little school children to be brought, and they repeated the wonder done by Moses and Aaron; indeed, Pharaoh’s own wife performed it. Jannes and Jambres, the sons of Balaam, derided Moses, saying, “Ye carry straw to Ephraim!”<sup>162</sup> whereto Moses answered, “To the place of many vegetables, thither carry vegetables.”

To show the Egyptians that Aaron could do something with his rod that their magicians could not imitate, God caused the serpent into which His rod had been changed to swallow up all the rods of the magicians. But Balaam and his associates said: “There is nothing marvellous or astonishing in this feat. Your serpent has but devoured our serpents, which is in accordance with a law of nature, one living being devours another. If thou wishest us to acknowledge that the spirit of



God worketh in thee, then cast thy rod to the earth, and if, being wood, it swallows up our rods of wood, then we shall acknowledge that the spirit of God is in thee." Aaron stood the test. After his rod had resumed its original form, it swallowed up the rods of the Egyptians,<sup>153</sup> and yet its bulk showed no increase. This caused Pharaoh to reflect, whether this wonderful rod of Aaron might not swallow up also him and his throne. Nevertheless he refused to obey the behest of God, to let Israel go, saying, "Had I Jacob-Israel himself here before me, I should put trowel and bucket on his shoulder." And to Moses and Aaron, he said, "Because ye, like all the rest of the tribe of Levi, are not compelled to labor, therefore do ye speak, 'Let us go and sacrifice to the Lord.' If you had asked for a thousand people, or two thousand, I should have fulfilled your request, but never will I consent to let six hundred thousand men go away."

154. Tan B. II, 19; Tan. Wa-Era 5; Midrash Shir 7b; ShR 5. 14; MHG II, 43.

155. Abkir in Yalkut I, 173; MHG II, 45. As to the vastness of the palace and the large number of the armies, see Midrash Shir 7b; MHG II, 28. The printed text of Abkir is very likely abridged; see the reading of this Midrash quoted by Epstein, *Ha-Eshkol*, VI, 205, from a manuscript. Artapanus, 434d, narrates that Moses was cast by Pharaoh into prison on the very day he delivered the divine message unto him. On the following night the gates of the prison opened themselves; some of the guards died, and others sank in a deep sleep, while their weapons broke into pieces. Moses then entered the royal palace, where Pharaoh, like his guards, was sunk in a deep sleep. When the king awoke he asked Moses the name of his God; but no sooner did Moses whisper it in his ear than the king fell down like dead, and remained so until Moses brought him back to life. Thereupon Moses wrote the "Name" on a tablet, which he sealed. A priest, "who made light of what was written on the tablet," was seized with convulsions, and died. On the miraculous opening of doors, see footnote 88 on pp. 1145–1146. Comp. Index, *s. v.* "Name of God."

156. Dibre ha-Yamim 8 (which is very likely based on Yashar Shemot, 142a, which the author of Dibre ha-Yamim

had in a fuller form). As to animals being affectionate to saints, see Günter, *Legende*, *s. v.* "Thier."

157. Alphabet of R. Akiba ('ק), 44–45; MHG II, 43; Midrash Shir 8a; Abkir in Yalkut I, 241; Wa-Yosha' 40; Mishle 26. 101; ShR 5. 14; Tan. Wa-Era 5. As to the angelic forms of Moses and Aaron, see Artapanus, 436c, and Yashar Shemot, 142a. Compare with p. 556.

158. ShR 4. 14; Tan. Wa-Era 5; comp. the sources quoted in the preceding note. The phrase "to seek the living among the dead" is also found in Luke 24. 5.

159. Alphabet of R. Akiba ('ק), 45–46; ShR 5. 14; Tan. Wa-Era 5. Comp. also the sources referred to in note 157.

160. Mishle 27. 101; Yashar Shemot, 142b–143a; the sources referred to in note 157; Midrash Shir 8a adds that from that moment the wisdom of the Egyptians began to decline.

161. Yashar Shemot, 142a–142b; Dibre ha-Yamim 8. Jannes and Jambres, the opponents of Moses, are mentioned in 2 Timothy 3. 8, whereas *Zadokite Fragments* 18 speaks of Jannes (יחננה) and his brother. Pliny, *Natural History*, 30. 1, 11, and Apuleius, *Apologia*, 90, know only of Jannes. It is therefore safe to assume that the older form of the legend knew only of Jannes; see Ginzberg's remarks in *Unbekannte Sekte*, 240; Schürer, *Geschichte* (4th edition), III, 402–405; Index, *s. v.* "Jannes."

162. ShR 9. 6–7; Tan. B. II, 27–28; Menahot 85a (here the original names of the two magicians are given; they are מַמְרָא, יִחְנִי; comp. note 80); Dibre ha-Yamim 5.

163. ShR 9. 7, based on Menahot 85a, while 9. 6 is independent of the Talmud; Yashar Shemot, 142b; MHG II, 61, which gives an elaborate form of this legend.

## THE SUFFERING INCREASES

Beside refusing to dismiss the children of Israel, he ordered, on the very day of Moses and Aaron's audience with him, that the people be required to deliver the prescribed tale of bricks, though the taskmasters were not as heretofore to give them straw to make brick. Another decree was, that the children of Israel were not to be permitted to rest on the Sabbath, for Pharaoh knew that they used the leisure for reading the rolls that described their redemption. All this was a part of God's plan, the oppression of Israel was to be increased the closer the end approached.



As they wandered up and down the land of Egypt gathering the straw they needed for the due tale of bricks, they were maltreated by the Egyptians if they caught them on their fields. Such unkind acts perpetrated by the whole people made it impossible for them to cast the entire blame for the bondage of Israel upon Pharaoh. All the Egyptians showed cruelty to the Israelites on their straw foraging expeditions, and therefore the Divine punishment descended upon all alike.

This frightful time of Israel's extreme suffering lasted six months. Meantime Moses went to Midian, leaving Aaron alone in Egypt. When Moses returned at the end of the reign of terror, two of the Israelitish officers accosted him and Aaron, and heaped abuse upon them for having increased the woes of their people rather than diminished them. They spake, saying, "If ye are truly the ambassadors of God, then may He judge between us and Pharaoh. But if you are seeking to bring about the redemption of Israel on your own account, then may God judge between you and Israel. You are responsible for the widespread stench now issuing from the Israelitish corpses used as bricks for building when our tale was not complete. The Egyptians had but a faint suspicion that we were waiting for our redemption. It is your fault if they are fully conscious of it now. We are in the quandary of the poor sheep that has been dragged away by a wolf. The shepherd pursues the robber, catches up with him, and tries to snatch the sheep from his jaws, and the wretched victim, pulled this way by the wolf and that way by the shepherd, is torn to pieces. Thus Israel fares between you and Pharaoh."

The two officers that spake these stinging words were Dathan and Abiram, and it was neither the first nor the last time they inflicted an injury upon Moses. The other Israelitish officers were gentle and kind; they permitted themselves to be beaten by the taskmasters rather than prod

the laborers of their own people put under their surveillance.

The cruel suffering to which his people was exposed caused Moses to speak to God thus: "I have read the book of Genesis through, and I found the doom in it pronounced upon the generation of the deluge. It was a just judgment. I found also the punishments decreed against the generation of the confusion of tongues, and against the inhabitants of Sodom. These, too, were just. But what hath this nation of Israel done unto Thee, that it is oppressed more than any other nation in history? Is it because Abraham said, 'Whereby shall I know that I shall inherit the land?' and Thou didst rebuke him for his small faith, saying, 'Know of a surety that thy seed shall be a stranger in a land that is not theirs'? Why, then, are not the descendants of Esau and Ishmael held in bondage, too? Are they not likewise of the seed of Abraham? But if Thou wilt say, 'What concern is it of mine?' then I ask Thee, Why didst Thou send me hither as Thy messenger? Thy great, exalted, and terrible Name is feared in all the earth, yet Pharaoh heard me pronounce it, and he refuses obedience. I know Thou wilt redeem Israel in Thine own good time, and it is of little moment to Thee that now they are immuring living Israelites in these buildings."

Were He a God of justice only, the Lord would have slain Moses for the audacity of his last words, but in view of his having spoken as he had only out of compassion with Israel, the Lord dealt graciously with him. He answered Moses, saying, "Thou shalt see what I will do to Pharaoh," words conveying to Moses, that although he would be witness to the chastisement of Pharaoh, he would not be present at that of the thirty-one kings of Canaan. Thus he was rebuked for the unbecoming language he had used in addressing God.<sup>164</sup> At the same time God's words were a rejoinder to another speech by



Moses. He had said: "O Lord of the world, I know well that Thou wilt bring Thy children forth from Egypt. O that Thou wouldst make use of another instrument, for I am not worthy of being the redeemer of Thy children." God made answer thereto: "Yes, Moses, thou art worthy thereof. Through thee My children will be brought forth out of Egypt. Thou shalt see what I will do to Pharaoh."<sup>165</sup>

At the same time God called him to account for having so little faith. He said: "O for the departed, their like cannot be found any more! I appeared unto Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, as El Shaddai, God Almighty, but I was not known to them by My name Adonai, God All-Merciful, as I appeared unto thee. Nevertheless they did not cast aspersions upon My acts. I spake to Abraham, 'Unto thee will I give the land,' but when he was about to bury Sarah, he had to pay out silver and buy a resting-place for her body; and yet he did not find fault with Me. I spake to Isaac, 'Unto thee, and unto thy seed, I will give all these lands,' but when he desired water to drink, he had to strive with the herdsmen of Gerar; and yet he did not find fault with Me. I spake to Jacob, 'The land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed,' but when he wanted to spread his tent, he had to acquire a parcel of ground for an hundred pieces of money; and yet he did not find fault with Me. None of them asked to know My Name. But thou didst demand to know it at the very first, when I desired to send thee down into Egypt, and after I revealed it to thee, thou didst speak, saying, 'Thou didst tell me that Thou art called Compassionate and Gracious, Longsuffering and Merciful, but as soon as I pronounced this Name before Pharaoh, misfortune descended upon the people of Israel.' Now I desire to fulfil My covenant with the three Patriarchs, and give their posterity the promised land, as a reward for the unquestioning faith of the Fathers, and also as a

reward to the people, who, in spite of their suffering, did not find fault with My deeds. For this will I give them the land, which they do not deserve to possess for other reasons. I swear that I will do thus!" God pronounced this oath, to banish all fear from the mind of Moses, that He might act only in accordance with His attribute of justice, and thus delay the redemption of Israel for a time, on account of the sins of the people.<sup>166</sup>

Now the redemption of Israel was a settled fact. But before Moses and Aaron could start on the work of delivering their people, God called various points to their attention, which He bade them consider in their undertaking. He spake to them, saying: "My children are perverse, passionate, and troublesome. You must be prepared to stand their abuse, to the length of being pelted with stones by them. I send you to Pharaoh, and although I will punish him according to his deserts, yet you must not fail in the respect due to him as a ruler. Furthermore, be careful to take the elders of the people into your counsel,<sup>167</sup> and let your first step toward redemption be to make the people give up the worship of idols."

The last was a most difficult task, and the words of God concerning it wrung the exclamation from Moses: "See, the children of Israel will not hearken unto me. How, then, should Pharaoh hearken unto me?"<sup>168</sup> It was the third time Moses declined to go on the errand of God. Now the Divine patience was exhausted, and Moses was subjected to punishment. At first God had revealed Himself only to Moses, and the original intention had been that he alone was to perform all the miracles, but henceforth the word of God was addressed to Aaron as well, and he was given a share in doing the wonders.<sup>169</sup>

---

164. ShR 5. 14–23; Tan. Wa-Era 1 and 6; Tan. B. II, 20–21 and 33. Comp. note 75; footnote 110 on p. 198, as well as text on p. 467. As to the scrolls read by the Hebrews



on Sabbath, see note 72 and text on pp. 437 and 467. Mekilta RS, 13, gives two views; according to one the Hebrews were slaves of the royal domain; while according to the other, they were the slaves of the common people.

165. Mekilta RS 5; MHG II, 46; Ozar Midrashim 62b. Compare with p. 509.

166. ShR 6. 4; Tan. Wa-Era 1; Koheleth 7. 7; Sanhedrin 111a. Compare with p. 234, as well as p. 510 and text on p. 1166. It is not on account of Moses' superiority to the fathers that God revealed unto him the Name which remained unknown to them, but because the time demanded that this revelation be made to man; Alphabet of R. Akiba ('ר), 26, and Shua'ib, Wa-Era, 27a. On the difference between the revelations made to the fathers and those made to other prophets, comp. Mekilta RS, 170–171, and MHG II, 50. The fathers are the "Merkabah," *i. e.*, the bearers of the divine throne; their life was an uninterrupted revelation of God; BR 82. 6. A similar statement is made by Philo; compare footnote 227 on p. 293.

167. Mekilta Bo 5, 5a, and 11, 11a; Mekilta RS, 20 (ר' אל' הקפר=ר' אלעזר); ShR 6. 5, 7. 3, and 16. 2; Sifre N., 91; Zebahim 102a. Compare with pp. 510–511, 533, and p. 695 and footnote 628 on p. 738.

168. Mekilta Bo 5, 5a–5b; ShR 6. 5; WR 22. 8; BaR 13. 8 and 20 (end). Compare with pp. 473, 500; text on pp. 668, 673. The first commandment given to the Israelites was to release the Hebrew slaves in the seventh year, in order that they themselves should be found worthy to be redeemed from the Egyptian slavery; Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 3, 58d.

169. ShR 8. 1–2; a somewhat different version is given in MHG II, 54, according to which Aaron was first commanded to address the people, then to appear with Moses before Pharaoh, and finally to speak to the king. As to the question whether Aaron received direct revelations from God or not, see footnote 405 on p. 673.

## MEASURE FOR MEASURE

God divided the ten punishments decreed for Egypt into four parts, three of the plagues He committed to Aaron, three to Moses, one to the two brothers together, and three He reserved for Himself. Aaron was charged with those that proceeded from the earth and the water, the elements that are composed of more or less solid parts, from which are fashioned all the corporeal, distinctive entities, while the three en-

trusted to Moses were those that proceeded from the air and the fire, the elements that are most prolific of life.<sup>170</sup>

The Lord is a man of war, and as a king of flesh and blood devises various stratagems against his enemy, so God attacked the Egyptians in various ways. He brought ten plagues down upon them. When a province rises up in rebellion, its sovereign lord first sends his army against it, to surround it and cut off the water supply. If the people are contrite, well and good; if not, he brings noise makers into the field against them. If the people are contrite, well and good; if not, he orders darts to be discharged against them. If the people are contrite, well and good; if not, he orders his legions to assault them. If the people are contrite, well and good; if not, he causes bloodshed and carnage among them. If the people are contrite, well and good; if not, he directs a stream of hot naphtha upon them. If the people are contrite, well and good; if not, he hurls projectiles at them from his ballistæ. If the people are contrite, well and good; if not, he has scaling-ladders set up against their walls. If the people are contrite, well and good; if not, he casts them into dungeons. If the people are contrite, well and good; if not, he slays their magnates.

Thus did God proceed against the Egyptians. First He cut off their water supply by turning their rivers into blood. They refused to let the Israelites go, and He sent the noisy, croaking frogs into their entrails. They refused to let the Israelites go, and He brought lice against them, which pierced their flesh like darts. They refused to let the Israelites go, and He sent barbarian legions against them, mixed hordes of wild beasts. They refused to let the Israelites go, and He brought slaughter upon them, a very grievous pestilence. They refused to let the Israelites go, and He poured out naphtha over them, burning blains. They refused to let the Israelites go, and He caused His projectiles, the hail, to descend



upon them. They refused to let the Israelites go, and He placed scaling-ladders against the wall for the locusts, which climbed them like men of war. They refused to let the Israelites go, and He cast them into dungeon darkness. They refused to let the Israelites go, and He slew their magnates, their first-born sons.<sup>171</sup>

The plagues that God sent upon the Egyptians corresponded to the deeds they had perpetrated against the children of Israel. Because they forced the Israelites to draw water for them, and also hindered them from the use of the ritual baths, He changed their water into blood.

Because they had said to the Israelites, "Go and catch fish for us," He brought frogs up against them, making them to swarm in their kneading-troughs and their bedchambers and hop around croaking in their entrails. It was the severest of all the ten plagues.

Because they had said to the Israelites, "Go and sweep and clean our houses, our courtyards, and our streets," He changed the dust of the air into lice, so that the vermin lay piled up in heaps an ell high, and when the Egyptians put on fresh garments, they were at once infested with the insects.

The fourth plague was an invasion of the land by hordes of all sorts of wild animals, lions, wolves, panthers, bears, and others. They overran the houses of the Egyptians, and when they closed their doors to keep them out, God caused a little animal to come forth from the ground, and it got in through the windows, and split open the doors, and made a way for the bears, panthers, lions, and wolves, which swarmed in and devoured the people down to the infants in their cradles. If an Egyptian entrusted his ten children to an Israelite, to take a walk with them, a lion would come and snatch away one of the children, a bear would carry off the second, a serpent the third, and so on, and in the end the Israelite returned home alone. This plague was

brought upon them because they were in the habit of bidding the Israelites go and catch wolves and lions for their circuses, and they sent them on such errands, to make them take up their abode in distant deserts, where they would be separated from their wives, and could not propagate their race.

Then God brought a grievous murrain upon their cattle, because they had pressed the Israelites into their service as shepherds, and assigned remote pasturing places to them, to keep them away from their wives. Therefore the murrain came and carried off all the cattle in the flocks the Israelites were tending.

The sixth plague was a boil breaking forth with blains upon man and upon beast. This was the punishment of the Egyptians, because they would say to the children of Israel, "Go and prepare a bath for us unto the delight of our flesh and our bones." Therefore they were doomed to suffer with boils that inflamed their flesh, and on account of the itch they could not leave off scratching. While the Egyptians suffered thus, the children of Israel used their baths.

Because they had sent the Israelites forth into the fields, to plough and sow, hail was sent down upon them, and their trees and crops were destroyed.

They had been in the habit of saying to the Israelites, "Go forth, plant ye trees for us, and guard the fruit thereon." Therefore God brought the locusts into the Egyptian border, to eat the residue of that which was escaped, which remained unto them from the hail, for the teeth of the locust are the teeth of a lion, and he hath the jaw teeth of a great lion.

Because they would throw the Israelites into dungeons, God brought darkness upon them, the darkness of hell, so that they had to grope their way. He that sat could not rise up on his feet, and he that stood could not sit down. The infliction of darkness served another purpose. Among



the Israelites there were many wicked men, who refused to leave Egypt, and God determined to put them out of the way. But that the Egyptians might not say they had succumbed to the plague like themselves, God slew them under cover of the darkness, and in the darkness they were buried by their fellow-Israelites, and the Egyptians knew nothing of what had happened. But the number of these wicked men had been very great, and the children of Israel spared to leave Egypt were but a small fraction of the original Israelitish population.

The tenth plague was the slaying of the first-born, and it came upon the Egyptians because of their intention to murder the men children of the Israelites at their birth, and, finally, Pharaoh and his host were drowned in the Red Sea, because the Egyptians had caused the men children of the Israelites to be exposed in the water.<sup>172</sup>

Each of the plagues inflicted upon Egypt had another parallel in the cruel treatment accorded to the Israelites. The first was a punishment for the arrogant words spoken by Pharaoh, "My Nile river is mine own, and I have made it for myself."

The plague of the frogs God brought down upon the Egyptians, "because," He said, "the frogs, which sometimes inhabit the water, shall take vengeance upon the Egyptians for having desired to destroy the nation destined to be the bearers of the Torah, and the Torah is likened unto water."

God sent vermin upon them, saying, "Let the lice made of the dust of the earth take vengeance upon the Egyptians for having desired to destroy the nation whose seed is like unto the dust of the earth."

Hordes of beasts, lions and wolves and swarms of serpents, came down upon them, "because," God said, "these animals shall take vengeance upon the Egyptians for having desired to destroy the nation that is likened unto lions, wolves, and serpents."

A fatal pestilence was brought upon them, "because," God said, "death shall take vengeance upon the Egyptians for having desired to destroy the nation that faces death for the glorification of the Name of God."

They were made to suffer with burning blains, "because," God said, "the boils coming from the ashes of the furnace shall take vengeance upon the Egyptians for having desired to destroy the nation whose ancestor Abraham walked into the fiery furnace for the glorification of the Name of God."

He made hail to descend upon them, "because," He said, "the white hail shall take vengeance upon the Egyptians for having desired to destroy a nation whose sins shall be white."

The locusts came upon them, "because," God said, "the locusts, which are My great army, shall take vengeance upon the Egyptians for having desired to destroy the nation that is called My hosts."

"Darkness," said God, "which is divided from the light, shall come and take vengeance upon the Egyptians for desiring to destroy the nation upon which shineth the light of the Lord, while gross darkness covers the other peoples."

The tenth plague, the slaying of the first-born, God inflicted, saying, "I will take vengeance upon the Egyptians for having desired to destroy the nation that is My first-born. As the night divided itself for Abraham, that his enemies might be vanquished, so I will pass through Egypt in the middle of the night, and as Abraham was proved by ten temptations, so I will send ten plagues upon Egypt, the enemy of his children."<sup>173</sup>

---

170. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 17; Tan. Wa-Era 14; ShR 12. 4 and 15. 27. Compare with p. 526. The gnostic Mani-  
oimus (*Philosophoumena*, 8. 7) finds some connection between the ten words of creation (see text on p. 44) and the ten plagues; the power of God was manifested in the ten words as well as in the ten punishments brought upon the



Egyptians. The Rabbis find in the ten plagues the reward of Abraham who stood firm in the ten temptations (see text on p. 187); comp. ShR 15. 27; ARN 33, 95; Yelammedenu as quoted by Sabba, Wa-Era (end).

171. Tan. Bo 4; Tan. B. II, 40; PK 7, 66b–67a; PR 17, 89b and 197a; Wa-Yosha' 44–45. As to the noise makers, see text on p. 387, as well as p. 551.

172. ER 7, 40–43; Tan. Wa-Era 13–14 and, with essential variants, Tan. B II, 43; Wa-Yosha' 49–51; Dibre ha-Yamim 9–10 (the text is to be completed in accordance with the parallel passages); ShR 9–14. For further details on the plagues, compare with pp. 526–528. The saying “one receives the measure with which he measures” (Mekilta Amalek 2, 55a; Sifre N., 106; Sotah 1, 7, and in many more places of rabbinic literature, as well as in Matthew 7. 1) is applied by the legend to explain the punishments of the Egyptians as “measure for measure” (for this phrase see Sanhedrin 90a; it is of very frequent occurrence in post-biblical literature), maintaining that each plague corresponds to a crime committed by the Egyptians against the Hebrews. This view is found not only in the later Midrashim referred to above, but also in Mekilta Beshallah 6, 32; Tosefta Sotah 3, 13 as well as in Wisdom 11. 5, *seq.* The striking resemblance between these passages of Wisdom and the Midrashim would lead one to assume that a Palestinian Midrash was the source of this apocryphal work. The parallels which Wisdom draws between the plagues and the miracles, later performed for Israel in the wilderness, are also found in rabbinic literature; comp., *e. g.*, ARN 33, 95.

173. Yelammedenu quoted by Sabba, Wa-Era, towards the end; Yalkut I, 182 where מדרש is given as the source. Comp. note 170.

## THE PLAGUES BROUGHT THROUGH AARON

From the infliction of the first of the plagues until the passing of the last, after which the Egyptians yielded all that Moses and Aaron demanded, there elapsed a whole year, for twelve months is the term set by God for the expiation of sins. The deluge lasted one year; Job suffered one year; sinners must endure hell torments for one year, and the judgment upon Gog at the end of time will be executed for the length of one year.<sup>174</sup>

Moses announced the first plague to Pharaoh one morning when the king was walking by the river's brink. This morning walk enabled him to practice a deception. He called himself a god, and pretended that he felt no human needs. To keep up the illusion, he would repair to the edge of the river every morning, and ease nature there while alone and unobserved. At such a time it was that Moses appeared before him, and called out to him, “Is there a god that hath human needs?” “Verily, I am no god,” replied Pharaoh, “I only pretend to be one before the Egyptians, who are such idiots, one should consider them asses rather than human beings.”<sup>175</sup>

Then Moses made known to him that God would turn the water into blood, if he refused to let Israel go. In the warning we can discern the difference between God and man. When a mortal harbors the intention to do an injury to an enemy, he lies in wait for the moment when he can strike an unexpected blow. But God is outspoken. He warned Pharaoh and the Egyptians in public whenever a plague was about to descend, and each warning was repeated by Moses for a period of three weeks, although the plague itself endured but a single week.

As Pharaoh would not lay the warning to heart, the plague announced by Moses was let loose upon him and his people—the waters were turned into blood. It is a well-known proverb, “Beat the idols, and the priests are in terror.” God smote the river Nile, which the Egyptians worshipped as their god, in order to terrify Pharaoh and his people and force them to do the Divine will.

To produce the plague, Aaron took his rod, and stretched out his hand over the waters of Egypt. Moses had no part in performing the miracle, for God had said to him, “The water that watched over thy safety when thou wast exposed in the Nile, shall not suffer harm through thee.”



Aaron had scarcely executed the Divine bidding, when all the water of Egypt became blood, even such as was kept in vessels of wood and in vessels of stone. The very spittle of an Egyptian turned into blood no sooner had he ejected it from his mouth,<sup>176</sup> and blood dripped also from the idols of the Egyptians.<sup>177</sup>

The transformation of the waters into blood was intended mainly as a punishment for the oppressors, but it was at the same time a source of profit for the oppressed. It gave the Israelites the opportunity of amassing great wealth. The Egyptians paid them large sums for their water, for if an Egyptian and an Israelite drew water from the same trough, the portion carried off by the Egyptian was bound to be useless, it turned into blood. To be sure, nothing helped the Egyptians in their distress, for though they drank water from the same cup as an Israelite, it became blood in their mouth.

However, this plague did not impress Pharaoh as a punishment inflicted in the name of God, because with the help of the Angels of Destruction the magicians of Egypt produced the same phenomenon of changing water into blood. Therefore he hearkened not unto the words of Moses.<sup>178</sup>

The next was the plague of the frogs, and again it was Aaron that performed the wonder. He stretched forth his hand with his rod over the rivers, and caused frogs to come up upon the land of Egypt. Moses, whose life had been preserved by the water, was kept from poisoning his savior with the reptiles. At first only a single frog appeared, but he began to croak, summoning so many companions that the whole land of Egypt swarmed with them. Wherever an Egyptian took up his stand, frogs appeared, and in some mysterious way they were able to pierce the hardest of metals, and even the marble palaces of the Egyptian nobles afforded no protection against them. If a frog came close to them, the walls

split asunder immediately. "Make way," the frogs would call out to the stone, "that I may do the will of my Creator," and at once the marble showed a rift, through which the frogs entered, and then they attacked the Egyptians bodily, and mutilated and overwhelmed them. In their ardor to fulfil the behest of God, the frogs cast themselves into the red-hot flames of the bake-ovens and devoured the bread. Centuries later, the three holy children, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were ordered by Nebuchadnezzar to pay worship to his idols on penalty of death in the burning furnace, and they said, "If the frogs, which were under no obligation to glorify the Name of God, nevertheless threw themselves into the fire in order to execute the Divine will concerning the punishment of the Egyptians, how much more should we be ready to expose our lives to the fire for the greater glory of His Name!"<sup>179</sup> And the zealous frogs were not permitted to go unrewarded. While the others were destroyed from Pharaoh and the Egyptian houses at the moment appointed as the last of the plague, God saved those in the bake-ovens alive, the fire had no power to do them the least harm.<sup>180</sup>

Now, although the Egyptian magicians also brought up frogs upon the land of Egypt through the help of demons, Pharaoh nevertheless declared himself ready to let the people go, to sacrifice unto the Lord. The difference between this plague and the first was, that water turned into blood had not caused him any personal inconvenience, while the swarms of frogs inflicted physical suffering, and he gave the promise to Moses to let Israel go, in the hope of ridding himself of the pain he experienced. And Moses in turn promised to entreat God for him on the following day. It could not be done at once, because the seven days' term had not yet elapsed. The prayer offered by Moses in behalf of Pharaoh was granted, all the frogs perished, and their destruction was too swift for them to retire to



the water. Consequently the whole land was filled with the stench from the decaying frogs, for they had been so numerous that every man of the Egyptians gathered together four heaps of them.<sup>181</sup> Although the frogs had filled all the market-places and stables and dwellings, they retreated before the Hebrews as if they had been able to distinguish between the two nations, and had known which of them it was proper to abuse, and which to treat with consideration.<sup>182</sup> Beside sparing the Hebrews in the land of Egypt, the frogs kept within the limits of the land, in no wise trenching upon the territory of the neighboring nations. Indeed, they were the means of settling peaceably an old boundary dispute between Egypt and Ethiopia. Wherever they appeared, so far extended the Egyptian domain; all beyond their line belonged to Ethiopia.

Pharaoh was like the wicked that cry to God in their distress, and when their fortunes prosper slide back into their old, impious ways. No sooner had the frogs departed from him, his houses, his servants, and his people, than he hardened his heart again, and refused to let Israel go. Thereupon God sent the plague of the lice, the last of those brought upon Egypt through the mediation of Aaron. Moses could have no part in it, "for," said God, "the earth that afforded thee protection when she permitted thee to hide the slain Egyptian, shall not suffer through thine hand."<sup>183</sup>

The Egyptian magicians having boasted that they were able to produce the first two plagues,—an empty boast it was, for they did not bring them about with their enchantments, but only because Moses willed them to do it,—God put them to shame with the third plague. They tried in vain to imitate it.<sup>184</sup> The demons could not aid them, for their power is limited to the production of things larger than a barley grain, and lice are smaller. The magicians had to admit, "This is the finger of God." Their failure put

an end once for all to their attempts to do as Moses did.

But Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and God spake to Moses, saying, "This wicked fellow remains hard of heart, in spite of the three plagues. The fourth shall be much worse than those which have preceded it. Go to him, therefore, and warn him, it would be well for him to let My people go, that the plague come not upon him."<sup>185</sup>

---

174. 'Eduyyot 2. 10; Seder 'Olam 3. According to one view, a warning of three weeks preceded each plague, which lasted for a week; but according to the other view the duration of each plague was three weeks, preceded by a warning of one week. See ShR 9. 12; Tan. Wa-Era 13; Tan. B. II, 29; Tehillim 78, 349. A dissenting view quoted in Lekah, Exod. 8. 10, from an unknown source, states that the plagues began the first of Shebat, and ended ten weeks later, on the fifteenth of Nisan. The difference of opinion concerning the duration of the plagues is in one way or another connected with the legend that Moses left Egypt for some time (three or six months) after his first visit to Pharaoh; see PK 5, 49a, and parallel passages cited by Buber; comp. also Buber's notes on Lekah, *loc. cit.*; text on p. 496. "Job suffered for seven years." See footnote 34 on p. 461.

175. ShR 9. 8; Tan. Wa-Era 14; Midrash Aggadah Exod. 8. 16 (this is the only passage which remarks that the Egyptians are like asses; compare with p. 227); Lekah, Exod. *loc. cit.*, which quotes Hashkem. This legend, which is a satire on the deification of the Caesars, is found in an expanded and elaborate form, in MHG II, 67. According to Mo'ed Katan 18a, Pharaoh was a magus and was therefore in the habit of bathing every morning in the water to perform his religious duties; comp. Rashi, *ad loc.*; Shabbat 75a; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 7. 15. On the deification of the Caesars see text on p. 162, as well as p. 1104.

176. ShR 9. 9–11; Tan. Wa-Era, 13; Tan. B. II, 29. As to the warning, see note 174 and Lekah, Exod. 8. 15, 10. 23, where it is maintained that no warning was given before the third, sixth, and ninth plagues. Lekah is the source for many of the medieval writers (Shu'aib, R. Bahya, *Hadar*, and many others), who have this statement about the warning. The proverb "beat the idols, etc." is found in Ahikar (comp. Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. "Ahikar"). That the first plague was a punishment for worshipping the Nile is also found in Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 17 and 2 (3). 24. Artapanus, 435c maintains that the inundation of the Nile never took place before Moses (Aaron?) smote it with his rod. The plague of blood was the punishment for



drowning the male children of the Hebrews; Wisdom 11. 6 and MHG II, 62.

177. ShR 9. 11; ER 7. 41 (see Friedmann, note 14); MHG II, 62. In the later source it is stated that even the juice of the fruit was changed into blood, and that all the liquids had the odor of blood. See also Yashar Bo, 143b, as well as pp. 537–538.

178. Tehillim 88, 349; MHG II, 63; ShR 9. 10; Tan. Wa-Era 13; Zohar II, 28. Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 14. 1; Wisdom 11. 6–8; Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 26. All these authors dwell upon the fact that the very same water which turned blood for the Egyptians remained in its natural state for the Hebrews. Artapanus, 435c writes: Threatened by Pharaoh with death, the magicians brought forth a serpent which made the water return to its natural state; hence Pharaoh remained stubborn. According to MHG II, 62, Pharaoh himself was not affected by the first plague (three reasons are given why he was spared), and hence the hardness of his heart. Comp. note 181.

179. ShR 10. 2–6; Tan. Wa-Era 14; Tehillim 78, 450 and 452; ER 7. 41; Yashar Bo, 143b; Dibre ha-Yamim 9, which reads: The plague of the frogs was the severest of all the ten; see ShR 15. 21. In Sanhedrin 67b one opinion is quoted to the effect that only one frog came from the water, but in the shortest time conceivable it produced innumerable frogs. As to the croaking of the frogs, see, in addition to the sources referred to above, MHG II, 64, and note 171. On the sacrifices brought by the frogs in the fulfilment of their mission, see also Pesahim 53b; Tehillim 28, 229. Comp. also Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 18, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 14. 2. The crocodiles in the Nile are descended from the frogs sent over Egypt; MHG II, 64.

180. Tehillim 27, 299.

181. ShR 10. 5–6; Tan. Wa-Era 14. Comp. also MHG II, 64 (ד) and 67, where Pharaoh's sufferings are described in detail; it is also stated that the king was the first to be attacked by the frogs; see ShR, *loc. cit.*, and ER 7. 41. Moses prayed for Pharaoh in a synagogue which was situated outside the city (comp. Exod. 9. 29 and Lekah, *ad loc.*), because he did not think it right to pray to God in a "city defiled by idols"; Mekilta Bo 1b; ShR 12. 5–6. Shemuel 8. 69, on the contrary, maintains that God revealed Himself to Moses in Pharaoh's palace; compare with p. 533.

182. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 26.

183. ShR 10. 2, 6–7 and 15. 10; Tan. Wa-Era 14; MHG II, 62. The third plague is, according to the unanimous opinion of the Rabbis, the plague of lice (ER 7, 41 gives the names of fourteen kinds of them), whereas Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 19, understands ἀσύνυφ used by the Septuagint to translate the Hebrew כנם to signify a certain kind of gnat; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 4. 2, agrees with the view of the Rabbis. Meiri, Abot 5. 5, quotes, from the Talmud, the following sentence concerning the lice: שהיו נמצאים אצלם ולא

כלל מזיקים אותם. As far as can be ascertained, this passage does not occur in our texts of the Talmud. Shu'aib, Wa-Era, quotes the same sentence as דעת רז"ל, and does not give the Talmud as source.

184. Mekilta RS, 172; MHG II, 66. Comp. the following note.

185. ShR 10. 7 and 11. 2; Tan. Wa-Era 14; Sanhedrin 67b. These sources also give the dissenting view to the effect that the magicians were no more able to produce the first two plagues than the third; all they succeeded in doing was to produce an optical illusion upon Pharaoh, who was thus deceived in believing the claim of the magicians. Lekah, Exod. 8. 12, writes: Magicians are only able to perform their art when their feet touch the ground, and since the ground was covered by the lice (ShR 10.6 and Yashar Bo, 142b), they were doomed to failure. The same statement is also found in Shu'aib, *Hadar* and *Da'at* on Exod., *loc. cit.*, who are very likely based upon Lekah. The first two plagues were produced by the magicians with the assistance of Ben Zadua', the chief of the demons; Sabba, Wa-Era, 69d; comp. ShR 10. 4. "The finger of God" was apparent in the third plague, as it was a small gnat which caused such a lot of harm to the Egyptians; Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 19; see the similar remark of the Rabbis concerning the small "gnat" in Gittin 56b. The ground turned into lice (which stung the Egyptians like needles as soon as they put down their feet), with the result that the Hebrews were no longer forced to make bricks, as the material necessary was no longer available. MHG II, 65.

## THE PLAGUES BROUGHT THROUGH MOSES

The fourth plague was also announced to the king early in the morning by the river's brink. Pharaoh went thither regularly, for he was one of the magi, who need water for their enchantments.<sup>186</sup> Moses' daily morning visits were beginning to annoy him, and he left the house early, in the hope of circumventing his monitor. But God, who knows the thoughts of man, sent Moses to Pharaoh at the very moment of his going forth.

The warning of the plague that was imminent not having had any effect upon Pharaoh, God sent the fourth plague upon Egypt,<sup>187</sup> a



mixed horde of wild animals, lions, bears, wolves, and panthers, and so many birds of prey of different kinds that the light of the sun and the moon was darkened as they circled through the air. These beasts came upon the Egyptians as a punishment for desiring to force the seed of Abraham to amalgamate with the other nations. God retaliated by bringing a mixture upon them that cost them their life.<sup>188</sup>

As Pharaoh had been the first of the Egyptians to lay evil plans against the children of Israel, so he was the first upon whom descended punishment. Into his house the mixed horde of beasts came first of all, and then into the houses of the rest of the Egyptians. Goshen, the land inhabited by the Israelites, was spared entirely, for God put a division between the two peoples. It is true, the Israelites had committed sins enough to deserve punishment, but the Holy One, blessed be He, permitted the Egyptians to act as a ransom for Israel.

Again Pharaoh expressed his willingness to let the children of Israel sacrifice unto their God, but they were to stay in the land and do it, not go outside, into the wilderness. Moses pointed out to Pharaoh how unbecoming it would be for the Israelites to sacrifice, before the very eyes of his people, the animals that the Egyptians worshipped as gods. Then Pharaoh consented to let them go beyond the borders of his land, only they were not to go very far away, and Moses, to mislead him, asked for a three days' journey into the wilderness. But, again, when Moses had entreated God on Pharaoh's behalf, and the horde of wild beasts had vanished, the king hardened his heart, and did not let the people go.

The cessation of the fourth plague was as miraculous as the plague itself. The very animals that had been slain by the Egyptians in self-defense returned to life and departed from the land with the rest. This was ordained to prevent the wicked oppressors from profiting by the

punishment even so much as the value of the hides and the flesh of the dead animals. It had not been so with the useless frogs, they had died on the spot, and their carcasses had remained where they fell.<sup>189</sup>

The fifth plague inflicted by God upon the Egyptians was a grievous pestilence, which mowed down the cattle and beasts chiefly, yet it did not spare men altogether. This pestilence was a distinct plague, but it also accompanied all the other plagues, and the death of many Egyptians was due to it.<sup>190</sup> The Israelites again came off unscathed. Indeed, if an Israelite had a just claim upon a beast held by an Egyptian, it, too, was spared, and the same good fortune waited upon such cattle as was the common property of Israelites and Egyptians.

The sixth plague, the plague of boils, was produced by Moses and Aaron together in a miraculous way. Each took a handful of ashes of the furnace, then Moses held the contents of the two heaps in the hollow of one of his hands, and sprinkled the ashes up toward the heaven, and it flew so high that it reached the Divine throne. Returning earthward, it scattered over the whole land of Egypt, a space equal to four hundred square parasangs. The small dust of the ashes produced leprosy upon the skin of the Egyptians,<sup>191</sup> and blains of a peculiar kind, soft within and dry on top.<sup>192</sup>

The first five plagues the magicians had tried to imitate, and partly they had succeeded. But in this sixth plague they could not stand before Moses, and thenceforth they gave up the attempt to do as he did. Their craft had all along been harmful to themselves. Although they could produce the plagues, they could not imitate Moses in causing them to disappear. They would put their hands into their bosom, and draw them out white with leprosy, exactly like Moses, but their flesh remained leprous until the day of their death. And the same happened with all the other



plagues that they imitated: until their dying day they were afflicted with the ills they produced.<sup>193</sup>

As Pharaoh had wittingly hardened his heart with each of the first five plagues, and refused to turn from his sinful purpose, God punished him thereafter in such wise that he could not mend his ways if he would. God said, "Even though he should desire to do penance now, I will harden his heart until he pays off the whole of his debt."

Pharaoh had observed that whenever he walked on the brink of the Nile, Moses would intercept him. He therefore gave up his morning walk. But God bade Moses seek the king in his palace in the early hours of the day and urge him to repent of his evil ways. Therefore Moses spake to him as follows, in the name of God: "O thou villain! Thou thinkest that I cannot destroy thee from the world. Consider, if I had desired it, instead of smiting the cattle, I might have smitten thee and thy people with the pestilence, and thou wouldst have been cut off from the earth. I inflicted the plague only in such degree as was necessary to show thee My power, and that My Name may be declared throughout all the earth. But thou dost not leave off treading My people underfoot. Behold, to-morrow when the sun passes this point,"—whereat Moses made a stroke upon the wall—"I will cause a very grievous hail to pour down, such as will be only once more, when I annihilate Gog with hail, fire, and brimstone."

But God's lovingkindness is so great that even in His wrath He has mercy upon the wicked, and as His chief object was not to injure men and beasts, but to damage the vegetation in the fields of the Egyptians, He bade Moses admonish Pharaoh to send and hasten in his cattle and all that he had in the field. But the warning fell on heedless ears. Job was the only one to take it to heart, while Pharaoh and his people regarded not the word of the Lord. Therefore the Lord let the hail smite both man and beast, instead of

confining it to the herbs and the trees of the field, as He had intended from the first.

As a rule, fire and water are elements at war with each other, but in the hailstones that smote the land of Egypt they were reconciled. A fire rested in the hailstones as the burning wick swims in the oil of a lamp; the surrounding fluid cannot extinguish the flame. The Egyptians were smitten either by the hail or by the fire. In the one case as the other their flesh was seared, and the bodies of the many that were slain by the hail were consumed by the fire. The hailstones heaped themselves up like a wall, so that the carcasses of the slain beasts could not be removed, and if the people succeeded in dividing the dead animals and carrying their flesh off, the birds of prey would attack them on their way home, and snatch their prize away. But the vegetation in the field suffered even more than man and beast, for the hail came down like an axe upon the trees and broke them. That the wheat and the spelt were not crushed was a miracle.

Now, at last, Pharaoh acknowledged, and said, "The Lord is righteous, and I and my people are wicked. He was righteous when He bade us hasten in our cattle from before the hail, and I and my people were wicked, for we heeded not His warning, and men and beasts were found in the field by the hail, and slain." Again he begged Moses to supplicate God in his behalf, that He turn the plague away, and he promised to let the children of Israel go. Moses consented to do his will, saying, however: "Think not that I do not know what will happen after the plague is stayed. I know that thou and thy servants, ye will fear the Lord God, once His punishment is removed, as little as ye feared Him before. But to show His greatness, I will pray to Him to make the hail to cease."

Moses went a short distance out of the city from Pharaoh, and spread abroad his hands unto the Lord, for he did not desire to pray to



God within, where there were many idols and images. At once the hail remained suspended in the air. Part of it dropped down while Joshua was engaged in battle with the Amorites, and the rest God will send down in His fury against Gog. Also the thunders ceased at Moses' intercession, and were stored up for a later time, for they were the noise which the Lord made the host of the Syrians to hear at the siege of Samaria, wherefore they arose and fled in the twilight.<sup>194</sup>

As Moses had foreseen, so it happened. No sooner had the hail stopped than Pharaoh abandoned his resolve, and refused to let Israel go. Moses lost no time in announcing the eighth plague to him, the plague of the locusts. Observing that his words had made an impression upon the king's counsellors, he turned and went out from Pharaoh, to give them the opportunity of discussing the matter among themselves. And, indeed, his servants urged Pharaoh to let the Israelites go and serve the Lord their God. But, again, when Moses insisted that the whole people must go, the young and the old, the sons and the daughters, Pharaoh demurred, saying, "I know it to be customary for young men and old men to take part in sacrifices, but surely not little children, and when you demand their presence, too, you betray your evil purpose. It is but a pretense, your saying that you will go a three days' journey into the wilderness, and then return. You mean to escape and never come back. I will have nothing more to do with the matter."<sup>195</sup> My god Baal-zephon will oppose you in the way, and hinder you on your journey." Pharaoh's last words were a dim presentiment. As a magician he foresaw that on their going forth from Egypt the children of Israel would find themselves in desperate straits before the sanctuary of Baal-zephon.<sup>196</sup>

Pharaoh was not content with merely denying the request preferred by Moses and Aaron. He ordered them to be forcibly expelled from

the palace. Then God sent the plague of the locusts announced by Moses before. They ate every herb of the land, and all the fruit of the trees that the hail had left, and there remained not any green thing. And again Pharaoh sent for Moses and Aaron, to ask their forgiveness, both for his sin against the Lord God, in not having hearkened unto His word, and for his sin against them, in having chased them forth and intended to curse them. Moses, as before, prayed to God in Pharaoh's behalf, and his petition was granted, the plague was taken away, and in a rather surprising manner. When the swarms of locusts began to darken the land, the Egyptians caught them and preserved them in brine as a dainty to be eaten. Now the Lord turned an exceeding strong west wind, which took up the locusts, and drove them into the Red Sea. Even those they were keeping in their pots flew up and away, and they had none of the expected profit.<sup>197</sup>

The last plague but one, like those which had preceded it, endured seven days. All the time the land was enveloped in darkness, only it was not always of the same degree of density. During the first three days, it was not so thick but that the Egyptians could change their posture when they desired to do so. If they were sitting down, they could rise up, and if they were standing, they could sit down. On the fourth, fifth, and sixth days, the darkness was so dense that they could not stir from their place. They either sat the whole time, or stood; as they were at the beginning, so they remained until the end. The last day of darkness overtook the Egyptians, not in their own land, but at the Red Sea, on their pursuit of Israel. The darkness was not of the ordinary, earthly kind; it came from hell, and it could be felt. It was as thick as a dinar, and all the time it prevailed a celestial light brightened the dwellings of the children of Israel, whereby they could see what the Egyptians were doing under cover of the darkness. This was of great



advantage to them, for when they were about to go forth from the land, and they asked their neighbors to lend them raiment, and jewels of gold and jewels of silver, for the journey, the Egyptians tried to deny having any in their possession. But the children of Israel, having spied out all their treasures during the days of darkness, could describe the objects they needed with accuracy, and designate their hiding-places. The Egyptians reasoned that the words of the Israelites could be taken implicitly as they spoke them, for if they had had any idea of deceiving them, asking for a loan when they intended to keep what they laid hands on, they might have taken unobserved during the days of darkness whatever they desired. Hence the Egyptians felt no hesitation in lending the children of Israel all the treasures they asked for.<sup>198</sup>

The darkness was of such a nature that it could not be dispelled by artificial means. The light of the fire kindled for household uses was either extinguished by the violence of the storm, or else it was made invisible and swallowed up in the density of the darkness. Sight, that most indispensable of all the external senses, though unimpaired, was deprived of its office, for nothing could be discerned, and all the other senses were overthrown like subjects whose leader has fallen. None was able to speak or to hear, nor could anyone venture to take food, but they lay themselves down in quiet and hunger, their outward senses in a trance. Thus they remained, overwhelmed by the affliction, until Moses had compassion on them again, and besought God in their behalf, who granted him the power of restoring fine weather, light instead of darkness and day instead of night.<sup>199</sup>

Intimidated by this affliction, Pharaoh permitted the people to go, the little ones as well as the men and the women, only he asked that they let their flocks and their herds be stayed. But Moses said: "As thou livest, our cattle also

shall go with us. Yea, if but the hoof of an animal belongs to an Israelite, the beast shall not be left behind in Egypt." This speech exasperated Pharaoh to such a degree that he threatened Moses with death in the day he should see his face again.

At this very moment the Lord appeared unto Moses, and bade him inform Pharaoh of the infliction of the last plague, the slaying of the first-born. It was the first and the last time that God revealed Himself in the royal palace. He chose the residence of Pharaoh on this occasion that Moses might not be branded as a liar, for he had replied to Pharaoh's threat of killing him if he saw his face again, with the words, "Thou hast spoken well; I will see thy face again no more."

With a loud voice Moses proclaimed the last plague, closing his announcement with the words: "And all these thy servants shall come down unto me, and bow down themselves unto me, saying, Get thee out, and all the people that follow thee; and after that I will go out." Moses knew well enough that Pharaoh himself would come and urge him to lead Israel forth with as great haste as possible, but he mentioned only the servants of the king, and not the king himself, because he never forgot the respect due to a ruler.<sup>200</sup>

---

186. Mo'ed Katan 18a; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 7. 5; comp. note 175 (end).

187. ShR 11. 1. Sabba, Wa-Era 69d, quoting from the "Book Concerning the Laws of Kings," writes: On the day of new moon and on the day of full moon the kings of Egypt used to offer sacrifices on the bank of the Nile before sunrise. ShR, *loc. cit.*, also presupposes that Pharaoh was in the habit of betaking himself every morning to the river's bank for the purpose of praying. Comp. the sources referred to in the preceding note and in note 175.

188. Tehillim 78, 349–350 (נְעֹרִיתָא) from נָעַר "he mixed" (עָרַב); ShR 11. 2–3 and 16. 27; Yashar Bo, 143a; Dibre ha-Yamim 9; Wa-Yosha' 50; MHG II, 67–68; Tan. Wa-Era 14 and Bo 4; Tan. B. II, 43. The panthers and סִילוֹנִית (see Yashar and Dibre ha-Yamim, not כְּמִלִּית or



סמליות as in Tehillim) are mentioned in particular as the animals which caused the greatest havoc and destruction among the Egyptians. See also Midrash Aggada (which is very likely based on Yashar, reading ידים instead of אמות) and Sekel on Exod. 8. 20. The prevailing view in rabbinic literature, shared also by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 14. 3, and Wisdom II. 15–20, is that the fourth plague ערוב consisted of a mixture of wild animals attacking the Egyptians, whereas Septuagint, Exod. 8. 17, and Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 23, take ערוב be the Hebrew name of the stinging fly. Some of the Tannaim (comp. ShR and Tehillim *loc. cit.*) agree with the latter interpretation of ערוב; hence the statement in ShR that the ערוב darkened the sun and the moon. The later rabbinic sources combine the two old views concerning ערוב; comp. also Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 8. 17 and ER 7, 42. After the third plague had forced the Egyptians to release the Hebrews from the work of making bricks (comp. note 185), they employed them as domestic servants to attend to their children. God therefore sent the fourth plague which killed many of the Egyptian children.

189. ShR 11. 2–3. Comp. also MHG II, 68–69, and I, 160.

190. Mekilta RS, 172; MHG II, 68–69 (here it is shown in detail how each plague caused death to man and beast alike); ShR 10. 2; Tehillim 78, 355. After the fourth plague had killed the children of the Egyptians (comp. note 188), the Hebrews were employed by their masters as shepherds to take care of the animals. Whereupon the fifth plague came, and annihilated the live stock; MHG II, 68.

191. ShR 11. 4–6; Tan. Wa-Era 14. BR 5. 7 and parallel passages cited by Theodor, as well as Midrash Tannaim 56, maintain that on this occasion a miracle happened and the “narrow space held much more than its capacity”: the fist of Moses and Aaron held enough ashes to spread all over Egypt. Compare the similar miracle on p. 657. The phrase “it reached God’s throne” is also found in the text on p. 302.

192. Baba Kamma 80b; comp. also Ketubot 77a; BR 41. 2 and Ozar Midrashim 55, with regard to the twenty-four kinds of this disease.

193. PRE 48 (the complete text is only found in Yalkut I, 184); comp. ShR 11. 6 and 20. 1, as well as note 185.

194. ShR 12. 1–7; Tan. Wa-Era 14–17; Tan. B. II, 34–37; Tehillim 78, 353–354; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 9. 20–21 and 29; MHG II, 71–75; PK 1, 3b–4a; Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 20; Wisdom 16. 15–23. Comp. also note 181; text on p. 205; text on p. 848. On Job see Yerushalmi Sotah 5, 20c (bottom), and Zohar II, 34a. Sabba, Wa-Era (end) quotes an unknown midrashic explanation of Exod. 9. 32.

195. ShR 13. 4–5.

196. Lekah on Exod. 10. 10. Compare with p. 550. Another version of this legend is found in Midrash Shir 15a–15b which reads: Pharaoh said: I see that the unlucky

star by the name of Ra’ (=evil) will meet you, and this indicates blood. His mistake was that this blood had reference to the blood shed at the circumcision performed by Joshua when entering the Holy Land (Josh. 5. 3), and not to the slaying of Israel.

197. ShR 13. 6–7; Tan. Wa-Era 14; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 10. 19. Zebahim 102a asserts that on this occasion Pharaoh boxed the ears of Moses who let this incident pass unnoticed, since one is obliged to be respectful to a king; compare with p. 533 (end of paragraph).

198. ShR 14. 1–3; Tan. Bo. 1–3; Tan. B. II, 38–40; Yashar Bo, 114b; Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 21; Wisdom 17–18; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 14. 5. The last-named writer speaks of the death of many people caused by the darkness. Similarly the Rabbis maintain that the wicked in Israel died during the darkness; Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא), 24a; Mekilta RS, 38; PK 5, 50b; Shir 2. 13; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 10. 23; compare with pp. 524–525 and p. 569. As to the darkness at the Red Sea, see text on p. 555; on the darkness of hell see Seder Rabbah de-Bereshit 15. Comp. note 233.

199. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 21.

200. ShR 18. 1. Comp. Zohar I, 195b and II, 26a; compare with p. 522, as well as note 197. According to PR, 197b, God revealed to Moses on this occasion that He would bring upon Egypt “one more plague,” without informing him of the nature of the last plague. When the death of the first-born took place, Moses knew that this was the last plague of which God had spoken. Comp. note 181.

## THE FIRST PASSOVER

When the time approached in which, according to the promise made to Abraham, his children would be redeemed, it was seen that they had no pious deeds to their credit for the sake of which they deserved release from bondage. God therefore gave them two commandments, one bidding them to sacrifice the paschal lamb and one to circumcise their sons.<sup>201</sup> Along with the first they received the calendar in use among the Jews, for the Passover feast is to be celebrated on the fifteenth day of the month of Nisan, and with this month the year is to begin. But the computations for the calendar are so involved that Moses could not understand them



until God showed him the movements of the moon plainly. There were three other things equally difficult, which Moses could comprehend only after God made him to see them plainly. They were the compounding of the holy anointing oil, the construction of the candlestick in the Tabernacle, and the animals the flesh of which is permitted or prohibited.<sup>202</sup> Also the determination of the new moon was the subject of special Divine teaching. That Moses might know the exact procedure, God appeared to him in a garment with fringes upon its corners, bade Moses stand at His right hand and Aaron at His left, and then, citing Michael and Gabriel as witnesses, He addressed searching questions to the angels as to how the new moon had seemed to them. Then the Lord addressed Moses and Aaron, saying, "Thus shall My children proclaim the new moon, on the testimony of two witnesses and through the president of the court."<sup>203</sup>

When Moses appeared before the children of Israel and delivered the Divine message to them, telling them that their redemption would come about in this month of Nisan, they said: "How is it possible that we should be redeemed? Is not the whole of Egypt full of our idols? And we have no pious deeds to show making us worthy of redemption." Moses made reply, and said: "As God desires your redemption, He pays no heed to your idols; He passes them by. Nor does He look upon your evil deeds, but only upon the good deeds of the pious among you."<sup>204</sup>

God would not, indeed, have delivered Israel if they had not abandoned their idol worship. Unto this purpose He commanded them to sacrifice the paschal lamb. Thus they were to show that they had given up the idolatry of the Egyptians, consisting in the worship of the ram.<sup>205</sup> The early law was different from the practice of later times, for they were bidden to select their sacrificial animal four days before the day appointed for the offering, and to designate it

publicly as such, to show that they did not stand in awe of the Egyptians.

With a heavy heart the Egyptians watched the preparations of the Israelites for sacrificing the animals they worshipped. Yet they did not dare interpose an objection, and when the time came for the offering to be made, the children of Israel could perform the ceremonies without a tremor, seeing that they knew, through many days' experience, that the Egyptians feared to approach them with hostile intent. There was another practice connected with the slaughter of the paschal lamb that was to show the Egyptians how little the Israelites feared them. They took of the blood of the animal, and openly put it on the two side posts and on the lintel of the doors of their houses.<sup>206</sup>

Moses communicated the laws regulating the Passover sacrifice to the elders, and they in turn made them known to the people at large. The elders were commended for having supported the leader at his first appearance, for their faith in Moses caused the whole people to adhere to him at once. Therefore God spake, saying: "I will reward the elders for inspiring the people with confidence in Moses. They shall have the honor of delivering Israel. They shall lead the people to the Passover sacrifice, and through this the redemption will be brought about."<sup>207</sup>

The ceremonies connected with the Passover sacrifice had the purpose of conveying instruction to Israel about the past and the future alike. The blood put on the two side posts and on the lintel of their doors was to remind them of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and the bunch of hyssop for sprinkling the blood on the doors was to imply that, although Israel's position among the peoples of the earth is as lowly as that of the hyssop among the plants, yet this little nation is bound together like the bunch of hyssop, for it is God's peculiar treasure.<sup>208</sup>

The paschal sacrifice afforded Moses the opportunity for inducing the children of Israel to



submit themselves to circumcision, which many had refused to do until then in spite of his urgent appeals. But God has means of persuasion. He caused a wind to blow that wafted the sweet scents of Paradise toward Moses' paschal lamb, and the fragrance penetrated to all parts of Egypt, to the distance of a forty days' journey. The people were attracted in crowds to Moses' lamb, and desired to partake of it. But he said, "This is the command of God, 'No uncircumcised person shall eat thereof,'" and they all decided to undergo circumcision. When the Lord passed through the land of Egypt, He blessed every Israelite for his fulfilment of the two commands, the command of the paschal sacrifice and the command regarding circumcision.<sup>209</sup>

The Lord performed a great miracle for the Israelites. As no sacrifice may be eaten beyond the borders of the Holy Land, all the children of Israel were transported thither on clouds, and after they had eaten of the sacrifice, they were carried back to Egypt in the same way.<sup>210</sup>

201. Hallel 94; Tehillim 114, 472; PRE 29; ShR 17. 3; Tan. Wa-Era 4 (the redemption is described here as a reward for Abraham's piety); PK 5, 47a, and 7, 63b; Shir 1. 5; Mekilta Bo 11, 11a, Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 12. 21. Comp. notes 105–107 and 204.

202. Mekilta Bo 1, 2b–3a; PK 5, 54b; PR 15, 78a; Tan. Shemini 8; Tan. B. II, 48; III, 28; IV, 46; WR 13. 4; BaR 15. 4; ShR 15. 28 (only this passage speaks of the holy anointing oil); Sifre N., 61; Menahot 29a; Hullin 42a. Comp. Astruc, 99.

203. PK 5, 55a; PR 15, 78a–78b. According to ShR 15. 20, the first Nisan was "proclaimed holy" by the court consisting of God as the president and Moses and Aaron as His assessors. On the "secret of the calendar" (סוד העבור) revealed to Moses, see PRE 8; Leket Midrashim 2a; PK 5, 43b. Sabba Bo 71b, quotes, from an unknown source (the same as that referred to in note 194?), the statement that the Jewish calendar was introduced as a protest against the Egyptian one which was a part of their system of idolatry.

204. PK 5, 47b; Shir 2. 8; ShR 15. 4. Comp. notes 105–107 and 201.

205. ShR 15. 2–3 and 11. 3. Comp. the sources referred to in note 202.

206. PK 5, 55a–55b; PR 15, 78b; ShR 16. 2–3; Mekilta Bo 5, 5b, and 6, 6b; Philo, Exod. 1. 6 and 2. 11–12. Comp. also the quotation from Tan. in Makiri, Ps. 119, 220; Targum Yerushalmi and Lekah on Exod. 12. 6. A different view is given in Wisdom 19. 9, according to which the Hebrews brought their sacrifice in secret, so that it should not be known to the Egyptians. The legend about the selection of the paschal lamb is an attempt of the Haggadah to explain the Halakah (see Tosefta Pesahim 8. 11–18), according to which the command concerning the selection of the paschal lamb, as well as several other regulations about the Passover service given in Exod. 12, are of temporary character, applying only to the first Passover. Many medieval authors quote a Midrash to the effect that the Egyptians attacked the Israelites on the tenth of Nisan, when they saw the preparations made by them to kill the animals which the former worshipped. In remembrance of the great miracle performed to the Israelites on that day, the Sabbath preceding Passover is called The Great Sabbath (שבת הגדול), the tenth of Nisan at that time happening to be on a Sabbath. See *Ha-Orah* 20; Mahzor Vitry 222; *Shibbole ha-Leket* 159; *Orehot Hayyim* I, 70a; *Hadar*, Exod. 12. 3; Shu'aib, Zaw, 47c. On the origin of the name "The Great Sabbath," see Zunz, *Ritus*, 10; Chwolson, *Pas-samahl*, 65, note 3 (ignorant of Zunz's remarks); Elbogen, *Jüdischer Gottesdienst*, 550–551.

207. ShR 16. 1. For the opposite view compare with text on p. 516, and text on p. 597, as well as MHG II, 43. In the last-named source it is said that the elders refused to accompany Moses and Aaron to Pharaoh. Their motive for this refusal was honorable, though mistaken, and was not due to lack of courage.

208. ShR 1. 36 and 17. 2–3.

209. ShR 19. 5; BaR 11. 3 and 14. 12; ShR 1. 12 and 3. 7 (מִצֵּי=מִשְׁקָה?); Ruth R 3. 8; Wa-Yosha' 47–48. Comp. note 201 and Index, s. v. "Circumcision."

210. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 19. 4. which is perhaps based on a text of Mekilta Yithro 2, 62b, different from that of the editions. "Flying in the air" is quite a common feat of saints in Christian legends; see Günter, *Legende*, 57 and 63.

## THE SMITING OF THE FIRST-BORN

When Moses announced the slaying of the first-born, the designated victims all repaired to their fathers, and said: "Whatever Moses hath foretold has been fulfilled. Let the



Hebrews go, else we shall all die.” But the fathers replied, “It is better for one of every ten of us to die, than the Hebrews should execute their purpose.” Then the first-born repaired to Pharaoh, to induce him to dismiss the children of Israel. So far from granting their wish, he ordered his servants to fall upon the first-born and beat them, to punish them for their presumptuous demand. Seeing that they could not accomplish their end by gentle means, they attempted to bring it about by force.<sup>211</sup>

Pharaoh and all that opposed the wishes of the first-born were of the opinion that the loss of so inconsiderable a percentage of the population was a matter of small moment. They were mistaken in their calculation, for the Divine decree included not only the first-born sons, but also the first-born daughters, and not only the first-born of the marriages then existing, but also the first-born issuing from previous alliances of the fathers and the mothers, and as the Egyptians led dissolute lives, it happened not rarely that each of the ten children of one woman was the first-born of its father. Finally, God decreed that death should smite the oldest member of every household, whether or not he was the first-born of his parents.<sup>212</sup> What God resolves is executed. At the exact instant marking the middle of the night, so precise that only God Himself could determine and discern it, He appeared in Egypt, attended by nine thousand myriads of the Angels of Destruction who are fashioned some of hail and some of flames, and whose glances drive terror and trembling to the heart of the beholder. These angels were about to precipitate themselves into the work of annihilation, but God restrained them, saying, “My wrath will not be appeased until I Myself execute vengeance upon the enemies of Israel.”<sup>213</sup>

Those among the Egyptians who gave credence to Moses’ words, and tried to shield their first-born children from death, sent them to their

Hebrew neighbors, to spend the fateful night with them, in the hope that God would exempt the houses of the children of Israel from the plague. But in the morning, when the Israelites arose from their sleep, they found the corpses of the Egyptian fugitives next to them.<sup>214</sup> That was the night in which the Israelites prayed before lying down to sleep: “Cause us, O Lord our God, to lie down in peace, remove Satan from before us and from behind us, and guard our going out and our coming in unto life and unto peace,”<sup>215</sup> for it was Satan that had caused frightful bloodshed among the Egyptians.<sup>216</sup>

Among the slain there were, beside the Egyptian first-born, also the first-born of other nationalities residing in Egypt, as well as the Egyptian first-born dwelling outside of their own land.<sup>217</sup> Even the long dead of the first-born were not spared. The dogs dragged their corpses out of their graves in the houses, for it was the Egyptian custom to inter the dead at home. At the appalling sight the Egyptians mourned as though the bereavement had befallen them but recently. The very monuments and statues erected to the memory of the first-born dead were changed into dust, which was scattered and flew out of sight. Moreover, their slaves had to share the fate of the Egyptians, and no less the first-born of the captive that was in the dungeon, for none was so low but he hated the Hebrews, and rejoiced when the Egyptians decreed their persecution.<sup>218</sup> The female slaves that ground corn between mill-stones were in the habit of saying, “We do not regret our servitude, if only the Israelites are gagged, too.”<sup>219</sup>

In dealing out punishment to these aliens in the land of Egypt, God showed that He was at once the Master of the land and the Lord over all the gods of the nations, for if the slaves and the captives of war had not been smitten, they would have said, “Mighty is our god, who helped us in this plague.”<sup>220</sup> For the same reason all the



idols of the Egyptians were swept out of existence in that night. The stone idols were ground into dust, the wooden idols rotted, and those made of metal melted away,<sup>221</sup> and so the Egyptians were kept from ascribing their chastisement to the wrath of their own gods. Likewise the Lord God slew the first-born of the cattle, for the Egyptians paid worship to animals, and they would have attributed their misfortunes to them. In all these ways the Lord showed them that their gods were but vanity.

---

211. PK 7, 65a; PR 17, 88a; Tehillim 136, 520; Tan. B. II, 51–52; Wa-Yosha' 50–51; Dibre ha-Yamim 10 (with some variants). In the battle between fathers and sons not less than sixty myriads (equal to the number of Israel at the time of the Exodus) were slain.

212. PK 7, 64b; PR 17, 87b and 197b; Tan. B. II, 52; Dibre ha-Yamim 10; ShR 18. 3; Tehillim 78, 355, and 105, 452. The text of Tan. as given in the printed editions is abridged; Makiri, Ps. 105, 155, and Dibre ha-Yamim had the complete text before them. On the dissolute life of the Egyptians see footnote 68 on p. 189.

213. Mekilta RS, 52. This does not form part of the genuine Mekilta; see Ginzberg's remarks, *Geonica*, I, 167, where references are given to several medieval authors who mention this legend. The following references may be added: *Kozari* III, 73; *Pa'aneah* on Exod. 13. 18; Mahzor Vitry, 293; Passover Haggadah according to the Bagdad and Bene Israel rituals; comp. also Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 12. 12, and text on p. 558. In tannaitic sources great stress is laid on the fact that the slaying of the first-born and the redemption from Egypt were directly accomplished by God Himself (see Mekilta Bo 7, 7b, and 13, 13b; Midrash Tannaim 173; Passover Haggadah, and many other tannaitic sources), whereas in later literature the view is also expressed to the effect that the slaying of the first-born was performed by an angel; see ShR 15. 5 and 19, as well as 17. 5 and 29. 8; BaR 11, 89a (God appeared in Egypt alone without being accompanied by angels); Shir 1. 14; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 20. 16 is a literal translation of the Hebrew text. Zohar I, 117a, and III, 149a, gives a semi-mystical explanation why the redemption from Egypt was performed directly by God Himself. Comp. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 2, 20a (where, perhaps, וּלְא instead of וּכְל is to be read), and note 216. That the last plague took place exactly at midnight (Moses, as a human being, said "about midnight"; see Exod. 11. 4) is also stated in Mekilta Bo 13, 13a. Compare footnote 44 on p. 558.

214. ShR 18. 2; Shir 1. 14.

215. Unknown Midrash quoted in Eshkol I, 17; *Shibbole ha-Leket* 41 (read יִצְחָק instead of אֲבִרָהָם); *Orehot Hayyim* I, 43 (ב'); Shu'aib, Bo, 29c. It is quite likely that Eshkol is the source (directly or indirectly) of the other authorities mentioned.

216. Jub. 49. 2. Yalkut, Song of Songs 5. 2, quoting an unknown Midrash, reads: On that night God sent a sweet sleep over Israel, so that they should not be terrified by the "destroyer" (see Exod. 12. 23); they nevertheless noticed, in their sleep, the death agony of their enemies. Comp. Midrash Shir 38; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 12. 42, and note 213. In Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 4. 25 "the destroying angel" stands for Satan, which is in agreement with Jub. 48. 2, where it is explicitly stated that Moses on his way to Egypt was attacked by Satan (comp. notes 99 and 146). See also Mekilta RS, 21. That the punishment of the Egyptians took place at night was due to the fact that the wicked are punished by God in the darkness of the night; see PR 19a; ShR 18. 9, and parallel passages given by Buber, Aggadat Esther 59. Compare footnote 170 on p. 212.

217. Mekilta Bo 7, 7b and 13, 13b.

218. Mekilta Bo 13, 13b; Mekilta RS, 23–24 (the number of the first-born who died amounted to sixty myriads; see note 211); comp. also Midrash Shir 24a, which is very likely the source of Lekah, Exod. 11. 9, and *Al-Zulm*, 110; PK 7, 64b–65a; PR 17, 87b–88a.

219. PK 7, 65b; PR 17, 88b; ShR 18. 10.

220. Mekilta Bo 13, 13b.

221. Mekilta Bo 13, 13b; Mekilta RS, 13–14; Yashar Bo, 144b; Targum Yerushalmi Exod 12. 12 and Num. 33. 4; Tan. B. V, 32; Sukkah 29a. Compare with pp. 467 and 527, as well as text on p. 549. For further details on the punishment of the "gods" and the "heavenly princes," see footnote 41 on p. 557.

## THE REDEMPTION OF ISRAEL FROM EGYPTIAN BONDAGE

**P**haraoh rose up in the night of the smiting of the first-born. He waited not for the third hour of the morning, when kings usually arise, nor did he wait to be awakened, but he himself roused his slaves from their slumber, and all the other Egyptians, and together they went forth to seek Moses and Aaron.<sup>222</sup> He knew that Moses had never spoken an untruth, and as he had said,



"I will see thy face again no more," he could not count upon Moses' coming to him. There remained nothing for him to do but go in search of the Israelitish leader.<sup>223</sup> He did not know where Moses lived, and he had great difficulty and lost much time in looking for his house, for the Hebrew lads of whom he made inquiries when he met them in the street played practical jokes on him, misdirected him, and led him astray. Thus he wandered about a long time,<sup>224</sup> all the while weeping and crying out, "O my friend Moses, pray for me to God!"

Meanwhile Moses and Aaron and all Israel beside were at the paschal meal, drinking wine as they sat and leaned to one side, and singing songs in praise of God, the Hallel, which they were the first to recite. When Pharaoh finally reached the door of the house wherein Moses abode, he called to him, and from Moses the question came back, "Who art thou, and what is thy name?"—"I am Pharaoh, who stands here humiliated."—Moses asked again: "Why dost thou come to me thyself? Is it the custom of kings to linger at the doors of common folk?"—"I pray thee, my lord," returned Pharaoh, "come forth and intercede for us, else there will not remain a single being in Egypt."—"I may not come forth, for God hath commanded us, 'None of you shall go out of the door of his house until the morning.'"—But Pharaoh continued to plead: "Do but step to the window, and speak with me," and when Moses yielded to his importunities, and appeared at the window, the king addressed these words to him: "Thou didst say yesterday, 'All the first-born in the land of Egypt will die,' but now as many as nine-tenths of the inhabitants have perished."<sup>225</sup>

Pharaoh was accompanied by his daughter Bithiah, Moses' foster-mother. She reproached him with ingratitude, in having brought down evil upon her and her countrymen. And Moses answered, and said: "Ten plagues the Lord brought

upon Egypt. Hath evil accrued to thee from any of them? Did one of them affect thee?" And when Bithiah acknowledged that no harm had touched her, Moses continued to speak, "Although thou art thy mother's first-born, thou shalt not die, and no evil shall reach thee in the midst of Egypt." But Bithiah said, "Of what advantage is my security to me, when I see the king, my brother, and all his household, and his servants in this evil plight, and look upon their first-born perishing with all the first-born of Egypt?" And Moses returned, "Verily, thy brother and his household and the other Egyptians would not hearken to the words of the Lord, therefore did this evil come upon them."<sup>226</sup>

Turning to Pharaoh, Moses said: "In spite of all that hath happened, I will teach thee something, if thou desirest to learn, and thou wilt be spared, and thou wilt not die. Raise thy voice, and say: 'Ye children of Israel, ye are your own masters. Prepare for your journey, and depart from among my people. Hitherto ye were the slaves of Pharaoh, but henceforward ye are under the authority of God. Serve the Lord your God!'" Moses made him say these words three times,<sup>227</sup> and God caused Pharaoh's voice to be heard throughout the land of Egypt, so that all the inhabitants, the home-born and the aliens, knew that Pharaoh had released the children of Israel from the bondage in which they had languished. And all Israel sang, "Hallelujah, praise, O ye servants of the Lord, praise the Name of the Lord," for they belonged to the Lord, and no more were the servants of Pharaoh.<sup>228</sup>

Now the king of Egypt insisted upon their leaving the land without delay. But Moses objected, and said: "Are we thieves, that we should slink away under cover of the night? Wait until morning." Pharaoh, however, urged and begged Moses to depart, confessing that he was anxious about his own person, for he was a first-born son, and he was terrified that death would strike



him down, too. Moses dissipated his alarm, though he substituted a new horror, with the words, "Fear not, there is worse in store for thee!" Dread seized upon the whole people; every one of the Egyptians was afraid of losing his life, and they all united their prayers with Pharaoh's, and begged Moses to take the Israelites hence. And God spake, "Ye shall all find your end, not here, but in the Red Sea!"<sup>229</sup>

222. Mekilta Bo 13, 73a; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 12. 29. Comp. Berakot 9b. Pharaoh himself, the first-born of his parents, was the only one who escaped death on that night; Mekilta, *loc. cit.* For a dissenting view compare with text on p. 498.

223. Wa-Yosha' 48, which is very likely based on a fuller text of Tan. B. II, 52. Comp. the following note.

224. Tan. B. II, 52; Wa-Yosha' 47 (a different source is made use of on p. 48). Comp. Mekilta Bo 13, 13b.

225. Wa-Yosha' 48; Tan. B. II, 52–53. Moses refused to leave the house; see Mekilta Bo 13, 13b; Tehillim 113, 469; Hallel 87. That the Hallel was first sung on this night is also mentioned in Yerushalmi Pesahim 5, 32c, ShR 18. 9, and is very likely presupposed in Wisdom 18. 9; whereas according to Pesahim 117a, this paean was composed by Moses and Israel after they had crossed the Red Sea; see note 238 and text on p. 562. Pesahim 117a, *seq.*, contains several other views concerning the composition of the Hallel. Towards the end of the second Commonwealth the Hallel was chanted in the temple during the sacrifice of the paschal lamb and at the time of the Passover meal. The latter custom is still observed to-day; see Pesahim 5. 7 and 10. 6.—The episode of the meeting between Pharaoh and Moses is differently narrated in Midrash Shir 24a, where it is said that Moses even refused to look at the king, reminding him of his own words warning him (Moses) never to see his face again; see text on p. 533. On the death of those who had not been known to have been the first-born of their parents, see text on p. 537.—Jub. 49. 5 reads: And Israel ate the meat of the paschal lamb, drank wine (see Pesahim 10. 1), and gave praise and thanks. The Hebrew original read perhaps והודו ואמרו הלל, which means "they gave praise and chanted the Hallel."

226. Yashar Bo, 144b–145a; PK 7, 65a; ShR 18. 3; Mishle 31, 111. On the view that Bithiah entered paradise alive see note 61. Artapanus, 433c–433d, maintains that Moses (before his flight from Egypt) called the place, where he buried his foster-mother, Merois, after her name, which was Meroe. The Egyptians, he adds, pay as much homage to Merois as to Isis. Comp. note 58 and text on p. 498.

227. Wa-Yosha' 48–49; Tehillim 113, 469–470. Comp. the following note.

228. Pesahim 94a; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 12. 31; Yerushalmi Pesahim 5, 32a, which has the additional remark that the voice of Moses was heard through the whole land of Egypt. The Hallel chanted on that occasion consisted of the first part (*i. e.*, Ps. 113) only. Comp. note 225. As to the voice of Moses see text on p. 61.

229. Tan. B. II, 52–53; Wa-Yosha' 4 (the text is incomplete); ARN 39. 8; Tehillim 113, 469.

## THE EXODUS

Pharaoh and the Egyptians let their dead lie unburied, while they hastened to help the Israelites load their possessions on wagons, to get them out of the land with as little delay as possible. When they left, they took with them, beside their own cattle, the sheep and the oxen that Pharaoh had ordered his nobles to give them as presents. The king also forced his magnates to beg pardon of the Israelites for all they had suffered, knowing as he did that God forgives an injury done by man to his fellow only after the wrong-doer has recovered the good-will of his victim by confessing and regretting his fault.<sup>230</sup> "Now, depart!" said Pharaoh to the Israelites, "I want nothing from you but that you should pray to God for me, that I may be saved from death."<sup>231</sup>

The hatred of the Egyptians toward the Israelites changed now into its opposite. They conceived affection and friendship for them, and fairly forced raiment upon them, and jewels of silver and jewels of gold, to take along with them on their journey, although the children of Israel had not yet returned the articles they had borrowed from their neighbors at an earlier time. This action is in part to be explained by the vanity of Pharaoh and his people. They desired to pretend before the world that they were vastly rich, as everybody would conclude when this wealth



of their mere slaves was displayed to observers. Indeed, the Israelites bore so much away from Egypt that one of them alone might have defrayed the expense of building and furnishing the Tabernacle.

On their leaving the land only the private wealth of the Egyptians was in their hands, but when they arrived at the Red Sea they came into possession of the public treasure, too, for Pharaoh, like all kings, carried the moneys of the state with him on his campaigns, in order to be prepared to hire a relay of mercenaries in case of defeat. Great as the other treasure was, the booty captured at the sea far exceeded it.<sup>232</sup>

But if the Israelites loaded themselves down with goods and jewels and money, it was not to gratify love of riches, or, as any usurer might say, because they coveted their neighbors' possessions. In the first place they could look upon their plunder as wages due to them from those they had long served, and, secondly, they were entitled to retaliate on those at whose hands they had suffered wrong. Even then they were requiting them with an affliction far slighter than any one of all they had endured themselves.<sup>233</sup>

The plagues did not stay the cruelty of the Egyptian oppressors toward the Hebrews. It continued unabated until the very end of their sojourn in the land. On the day of the exodus, Rachel the daughter of Shuthelah gave birth to a child, while she and her husband together were treading the clay for bricks. The babe dropped from her womb into the clay and sank out of sight. Gabriel appeared, moulded a brick out of the clay containing the child, and carried it to the highest of the heavens, where he made it a footstool before the Divine throne. In that night it was that God looked upon the suffering of Israel, and smote the first-born of the Egyptians,<sup>234</sup> and it is one of the four nights that God has inscribed in the Book of Memorial. The first of the four is that in which God appeared to create

the world; all was waste and void, and darkness brooded over the abyss, until the Lord came and spread light round about by His word. The second night is that in which God appeared unto Abraham at the covenant of the pieces. In the third night He appeared in Egypt, slaying the first-born of the Egyptians with His right hand, and protecting the first-born of the Israelites with His left. The fourth night recorded will be that in which the end of the redemption will be accomplished, when the iron yoke of the wicked kingdom will be broken, and the evil-doers will be destroyed. Then will Moses come from the desert, and the Messiah from Rome, each at the head of his flock, and the word of God will mediate between them, causing both to walk with one accord in the same direction.

Israel's redemption in future days will happen on the fifteenth of Nisan, the night of Israel's redemption from Egypt, for thus did Moses say, "In this night God protected Israel against the Angels of Destruction, and in this night He will also redeem the generations of the future."<sup>235</sup>

Though the actual deliverance from Egypt took place in that night, the Hebrews did not leave the land until the following day.<sup>236</sup>

During the same night God requited the Egyptians for their evil deeds in the sight of all the people, the night being as bright as day at the time of the summer solstice. Not one could escape the general chastisement, for by Divine dispensation none was absent from home at the time, so that none could fail to see the chastisement.<sup>237</sup>

The angels in heaven learnt what was happening on earth. When they were about to begin their song of praise to God, He silenced them with the words, "My children on earth are singing now," and the celestial hosts had to stop and listen to the song of Israel.<sup>238</sup>

Great as the joy of the Hebrews was at their deliverance from the Egyptian bondage, it was exceeded by that of Pharaoh's people at seeing



their slaves depart, for with them went the dread of death that had obsessed them. They were like the portly gentleman riding an ass. The rider feels uncomfortable and longs for the moment of alighting, but his longing cannot compare in intensity with that of the ass groaning under the corpulent burden, and when their journey's end is reached, the ass rejoices more than his master. So the Egyptians were happier to be rid of the Hebrews than these were to be free.<sup>239</sup>

In general, the Israelites were not in a joyous mood. The strength of men is readily exhausted, mentally and physically, by the strain of a sudden change from slavery to freedom. They did not recover vigor and force until they heard the angel hosts sing songs of praise and joy over the redemption of Israel and the redemption of the Shekinah, for so long as the chosen people is in exile, the Shekinah, who dwells among Israel, is also, as it were, in exile. At the same time, God caused the earth to exhale and send aloft a healing fragrance, which cured them of all their diseases.<sup>240</sup>

The exodus of the Israelites began at Raamses, and although the distance from there to the city of Mizraim, where Moses abode, was a forty days' journey, yet they heard the voice of their leader urging them to leave the land. They covered the distance from Raamses to Succoth, a three days' march, in an instant. In Succoth God enveloped them in seven clouds of glory, four hovering in front, behind, and at the two sides of them, one suspended above them, to keep off rain, hail, and the rays of the sun, and one under them to protect them against thorns and snakes. The seventh cloud preceded them, and prepared the way for them, exalting the valleys and making low every mountain and hill.<sup>241</sup> Thus they wandered through the wilderness for forty years. In all that time no artificial lighting was needed; a beam from the celestial cloud followed them into the darkest of chambers, and if one of the

people had to go outside of the camp, even thither he was accompanied by a fold of the cloud, covering and protecting him.<sup>242</sup> Only, that a difference might be made between day and night, a pillar of fire took the place of the cloud in the evening.<sup>243</sup> Never for an instant were the people without the one or the other to guide them: the pillar of fire glowed in front of them before the pillar of cloud retired, and in the morning the cloud was there before the fire vanished.<sup>244</sup> The clouds of glory and the pillar of fire were sent for the protection of Israel alone, for none beside, not for the heathen and not for the mixed multitude that went up with them; these had to walk outside of the cloud enclosure.<sup>245</sup>

The cavalcade consisted of six hundred thousand heads of families afoot, each accompanied by five children on horseback, and to these must be added the mixed multitude, exceeding the Hebrews vastly in number.<sup>246</sup>

So profound was Israel's trust in the Lord, that they followed Moses uncomplainingly into the wilderness, without supplying themselves with provisions.<sup>247</sup> The only edibles they took were the remains of the unleavened bread and the bitter herbs, and these not to satisfy their hunger, but because they were unwilling to separate themselves from what they had prepared lovingly at the command of God. These possessions were so dear to them that they would not entrust them to the beasts of burden, they carried them on their own shoulders.<sup>248</sup>

---

230. Mekilta RS, 24; Zohar II, 45a–45b (very likely on the basis of older sources), remarks that during this night three calamities befell the Egyptians: 1) the battle between the first-born and their fathers, which resulted in many deaths (see text on p. 531); 2) the slaying of the first-born; 3) the carnage caused by Pharaoh among the magnates who had advised him not to release the Hebrews from bondage.

231. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 12. 32. Comp. Mekilta Bo 13, 14a, and Onkelos Exod., *loc. cit.*



232. Mekilta RS, 25–26; compare with text on pp. 549 and 559, as well as p. 1156. The holy spirit rested upon the Israelites, and caused the Egyptians not only to love them but also to fear them, as if they were gods. Although Moses and Aaron were too busy with other things (compare with pp. 428–429, and text on p. 546; but nothing is said there about Aaron being extremely busy) to spend their time in borrowing silver and gold from the Egyptians, they nevertheless did not go out empty-handed, as they were in possession of many treasures deposited with them by the Egyptians, who had great confidence in them. Comp. the following note.

233. Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 25; Jub. 48. 18 (which reads: In return for the service which they were forced to render to the Egyptians); Sanhedrin 91a; Megillat Ta'anit 3 (scholiast); BR 28. 7 (which reads: The treasures which the Israelites took with them from Egypt became the cause of misfortune for them); Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 14. 6, who says: The Egyptians gave presents to the departing Israelites. The same view is held by Sa'adya (Responsum published by Kis, *Gaonic Responsumok*, 17 and comp. *J.Q.R.*, New Series, III, 427, as well as Poznanski, *Mabo*, 48) who remarks that שאל, Exod. 3. 22 and 11. 2, has the same meaning as נתן; accordingly God's command to the Israelites was to solicit gifts from the Egyptians. The commentators R. Hananel and RSBM on Exod., *loc. cit.*, follow Sa'adya Gaon without mentioning his name; whereas the Church Fathers excuse "the borrowing" on the same ground as Philo and the old rabbinic sources; comp. Tertullian, *Adv. Marcion.* 2. 30; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1. 23; Augustine *C. Faustum*, 12, 71; Theodoretus Exod. 11. 2. See Lévi, *R.E.J.*, LXIII, 211 and 310. In Berakot 9b it is emphasized that the Israelites did not want to borrow from the Egyptians as they were commanded; they were satisfied with the regaining of their freedom, and did not care for riches. But God insisted that they should "oblige Him" in this matter, so that Abraham should not complain, saying: "God fulfilled His saying 'and they shall serve them, and they shall afflict them,' but did not carry out His promise 'and afterwards shall they come out with great substance.'" Comp. Gen. 15. 13–14. Lekah, Exod. 11. 2, maintains that a part of the Egyptian treasure was appropriated by the Israelites during the three days of darkness, when the Egyptians could not see what the Israelites did to them. This view, however, flatly contradicts that of the old sources; see Mekilta RS, *loc. cit.*; Tan. B. III, 39, and the references given in note 198.

234. PRE 48 and Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 24. 10 (which partly follows Yerushalmi Sukkah 4, 54c, where it is said, with reference to Exod. *loc. cit.*, that the "brick of sapphire" = the paved work sapphire, was placed under the divine throne in remembrance of the bricks which the Israelites had to furnish to their masters). *Hadar*, Exod. 4.

4, reads, in PRE, *loc. cit.*, Gabriel instead of Michael, and this reading is indirectly suggested by Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.* According to a commonly accepted view, however, the Israelites at this time had ceased to serve the Egyptians; comp. Rosh ha-Shanah 11b, which reads: On the first of Tishri (*i. e.*, six and a half months before the Exod.; comp. note 174) our fathers ceased to serve the Egyptians.

235. 1 Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 12. 42 and 2 Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 15. 18 (on the text of 2 Targum see Eisler, *Beiträge*, IV, 144–145, who is of the opinion that two readings are blended together in our present text; according to one, the second memorable night was the night in which God appeared to Abraham, and according to the other, this night refers to the one when Jacob crossed the Jabok); PK 17, 129b; PR, 195b–196a. It is quite likely that in the last-named passage reference is made to the time of darkness when God punished the wicked and not to the night of Passover; see ShR 18. 12; Yelammedenu in Yalkut, Ps. 25; note 216, and footnote 170 on p. 212. Compare with footnote 76 on p. 190; and pp. 1169–1170. As to the part to be played by Moses in the time to come see text on p. 500, as well as text on p. 734. Comp. Mekilta Bo 14, 16b; Tertullian, *De Baptismo*, 19; Alfred Jeremias, *Babylonisches im Neuen Testament*, 41.—In the time to come the redemption from Egypt will lose its significance, for the redemption from the "Kingdoms" will be uppermost in men's minds; Tosefta Berakot 1. 10; Babli 12b–13a; Yerushalmi 1, 9a. On the Passover in the Messianic times, see Lekah, Exod. 12. 16. See also Berakot 1 (end).

236. Tosefta Pesahim 10. 9 (at noon); Shabbat 86b; Mekilta RS, 24; PRE 48. There is a close relationship between this view and the legend that the first-born suffered the agony of death from midnight till the following morning, when they finally expired; see PR, 17, 87b; Semahot 1; comp. also for a dissenting view in ShR 18. 2; note 116.

237. Zohar II, 38a–38b. A similar view is found in Wisdom 18. 15–20.

238. Zohar III, 149a; compare with p. 562.

239. Tehillim 105, 452, and 114, 470.

240. Zohar II, 45a. On "the exile of the Shekinah" compare with footnote 9 on p. 439, and text on p. 582; on the heavenly fragrance see text on p. 536. Compare with p. 591.

241. Mekilta Bo 14, 14b, and Yitro 2, 62b; Mekilta RS, 26 and 40–41; Tan. Bo 9; Tehillim 107, 462. On the view that Moses' voice was heard throughout the land of Egypt, see note 228; on the extension of Egypt see text on p. 766 and text on p. 546. The "seven clouds of glory" are often spoken of in rabbinic literature; see Tosefta Sotah 4. 2; Sifre N., 83 (according to some authorities there were only four, while others maintain that there were only two clouds of glory); Sifre Z., 192; Baraita di-Meleket ha-Mishkan 14; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 12. 37; BaR 1. 2; ER 12. 60; Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא), 25a; Tan. B. IV, 2–3, and



מבוא, 146–147; comp. also Sifra 24, 43, and Justin, *Dialogue*, 131. See further text on pp. 566, 578, 686, 736, 747.

242. Sifre N., 83; Sifra 24, 3; Shabbat 22b; Baraita di-Meleket ha-Mishkan 14; Midrash Tannaim 13; comp. the references cited in the preceding note. The garments given to them by the angels (at the revelation on Sinai?) grew with them, and the clouds of glory caused them to remain clean and perfect during the forty years of their wandering through the wilderness; see PK 10, 92a–92b (מעטפין) implies that the clouds covered their garments like a cloak); DR 7. 11; Tehillim 13, 200; Shir 4. 11; Justin, *Dialogue*, 131. Compare with pp. 646, 965.

243. Mekilta RS, 41; Tehillim 105, 452. For the opposite view see Midrash Tannaim 13. They distinguished between day and night by the shade of the light spread by the clouds: it was red (glaring bright) after sunset, and white (pale) after sunrise; Baraita di-Meleket ha-Mishkan 14; Makiri on Is. 60, 1. Compare with text on p. 147.

244. Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא), 25b; Shabbat 23b; Tosefta Sotah 4. 2.

245. Sifre N., 83; Sifre Z., 192; Zohar II, 191b (it is the only source which excludes the mixed multitude); compare with p. 579.

246. Mekilta Bo 14, 15a, and Shirah 9, 42b; Mekilta RS, 26; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 12. 37–38. According to Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1. 27, the mixed multitude consisted of two distinct classes: one was made up of bastards, the sons of Egyptian women and Hebrew men; to the second belonged all those who out of love for the God of Israel followed His people. ShR 18. 1 likewise speaks of the pious among the Egyptians who even before the last plague had proclaimed their belief in the true God, and celebrated the Passover together with the Israelites. Comp. Index, s. v., “Mixed Multitude.”

247. Mekilta Bo 14, 15b; ER 17, 85. Compare with p. 566.

248. Mekilta Bo 13, 14a; Mekilta RS, 24; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 12. 34.



# XI

## MOSES IN THE WILDERNESS

### INTRODUCTION

When Israel went out of Egypt, the house of Jacob from a people of strange language, Jacob was His sanctuary and Israel His dominion." Jewish legend attempts to describe how God's sanctuary, the religion of Israel and His dominion, the beginnings of Israel as a nation, arose in the time between the Exodus from Egypt and the entrance into the Holy Land.

Moses is regarded not only as the greatest religious guide of Israel, but also as its first national leader; he is "the wisest of the wise, the father of the prophets," as well as "king in Jeshurun, when the heads of the people and the tribes of Israel gathered together." Hence his unique position in Jewish legend, neither Abraham, the friend of God, nor Solomon, the wisest of all men, nor Elijah, the helper in time of need, can lay claim to such a position.

Great religious and national institutions like the Sabbath, the sanctuary, and many other "commandments of God revealed to Moses" stand in a special relation to his life and work. The sanctification of the Sabbath became quite a living thing to him through the miracle of the Manna, and the first sanctuary was actually erected by Moses. The life of Moses

ceased, therefore, to be a thing of the past and became closely interwoven with the every-day life of the nation.

The most natural way for the popular mind to connect existing conditions with the past is the symbolic method. The present volume contains, therefore, a number of symbolic explanations of certain laws, as, for instance, the symbolical significance of the Tabernacle, which, properly speaking, do not belong to the domain of legend. The life of Moses, as conceived by Jewish legend, would, however, have been incomplete if the lines between Legend and Symbolism had been kept too strictly. With this exception the arrangement and presentation of the material in the third volume is the same as that in the two preceding ones.

### THE LONG ROUTE

The exodus would have been impossible if Joseph's bones had remained behind. Therefore Moses made it his concern to seek their resting-place, while the people had but the one thought of gathering in the treasures of the Egyptians.<sup>1</sup> But it was not an easy matter to find



Joseph's body. Moses knew that he had been interred in the mausoleum of the Egyptian kings, but there were so many other bodies there that it was impossible to identify it. Moses' mother Jochebed came to his aid. She led him to the very spot where Joseph's bones lay. As soon as he came near them, he knew them to be what he was seeking, by the fragrance they exhaled and spread around.<sup>2</sup> But his difficulties were not at an end. The question arose, how he was to secure possession of the remains. Joseph's coffin had been sunk far down into the ground, and he knew not how to raise it from the depths. Standing at the edge of the grave, he spoke these words, "Joseph, the time hath come whereof thou didst say, 'God will surely visit you, and ye shall carry up my bones from hence.' " No sooner had this reminder dropped from his lips than the coffin stirred and rose to the surface.

And even yet the difficulties in Moses' way were not removed wholly. The Egyptian magicians had stationed two golden dogs at Joseph's coffin, to keep watch, and they barked vehemently if anyone ventured close to it. The noise they made was so loud it could be heard throughout the land, from end to end, a distance equal to a forty days' journey. When Moses came near the coffin, the dogs emitted their warning sound, but he silenced them at once, with the words, "Come, ye people, and behold the miracle! The real, live dogs did not bark, and these counterfeit dogs produced by magic attempt it!"<sup>3</sup> What he said about real, live dogs and their refraining from barking had reference to the fact that the dogs of the Egyptians did not move their tongues against any of the children of Israel, though they had barked all the time the people were engaged in burying the bodies of their smitten first-born. As a reward God gave the Israelites the law, to cast to the dogs the flesh they themselves are forbidden to eat, for the Lord withholds due recompense from none of His creatures.<sup>4</sup> In-

deed, the dogs received a double reward, for their excrements are used in tanning the hides from which the Torah scrolls are made, as well as the Mezuzot and the phylacteries.<sup>5</sup>

Joseph's coffin in the possession of Moses, the march of the Israelites could begin. The Egyptians put no manner of obstacle in their way. Pharaoh himself accompanied them, to make sure that they were actually leaving the land,<sup>6</sup> and now he was so angry at his counselors for having advised against letting the Israelites depart that he slew them.<sup>7</sup>

For several reasons God did not permit the Israelites to travel along the straight route to the promised land. He desired them to go to Sinai first and take the law upon themselves there, and, besides, the time divinely appointed for the occupation of the land by the Gentiles had not yet elapsed. Over and above all this, the long sojourn in the wilderness was fraught with profit for the Israelites, spiritually and materially. If they had reached Palestine directly after leaving Egypt, they would have devoted themselves entirely each to the cultivation of his allotted parcel of ground, and no time would have been left for the study of the Torah. In the wilderness they were relieved of the necessity of providing for their daily wants, and they could give all their efforts to acquiring the law. On the whole, it would not have been advantageous to proceed at once to the Holy Land and take possession thereof, for when the Canaanites heard that the Israelites were making for Palestine, they burnt the crops, felled the trees, destroyed the buildings, and choked the water springs, all in order to render the land uninhabitable. Hereupon God spake, and said: "I did not promise their fathers to give a devastated land unto their seed, but a land full of all good things. I will lead them about in the wilderness for forty years, and meanwhile the Canaanites will have time to repair the damage they have done."<sup>8</sup> Moreover,



the many miracles performed for the Israelites during the journey through the wilderness had made their terror to fall upon the other nations, and their hearts melted, and there remained no more spirit in any man. They did not venture to attack the Israelites, and the conquest of the land was all the easier.<sup>9</sup>

Nor does this exhaust the list of reasons for preferring the longer route through the desert. Abraham had sworn a solemn oath to live at peace with the Philistines during a certain period, and the end of the term had not yet arrived. Besides, there was the fear that the sight of the land of the Philistines would awaken sad recollections in the Israelites, and drive them back into Egypt speedily, for once upon a time it had been the scene of a bitter disappointment to them. They had spent one hundred and eighty years in Egypt, in peace and prosperity, not in the least molested by the people. Suddenly Ganon came, a descendant of Joseph, of the tribe of Ephraim, and he spake, "The Lord hath appeared unto me, and He bade me lead you forth out of Egypt." The Ephraimites were the only ones to heed his words. Proud of their royal lineage as direct descendants of Joseph, and confident of their valor in war, for they were great heroes, they left the land and betook themselves to Palestine.<sup>10</sup> They carried only weapons and gold and silver. They had taken no provisions, because they expected to buy food and drink on the way or capture them by force if the owners would not part with them for money.

After a day's march they found themselves in the neighborhood of Gath, at the place where the shepherds employed by the residents of the city gathered with the flocks. The Ephraimites asked them to sell them some sheep, which they expected to slaughter in order to satisfy their hunger with them, but the shepherds refused to have business dealings with them, saying, "Are the sheep ours, or does

the cattle belong to us, that we could part with them for money!" Seeing that they could not gain their point by kindness, the Ephraimites used force. The outcries of the shepherds brought the people of Gath to their aid. A violent encounter, lasting a whole day, took place between the Israelites and the Philistines. The people of Gath realized that alone they would not be able to offer successful resistance to the Ephraimites, and they summoned the people of the other Philistine cities to join them. The following day an army of forty thousand stood ready to oppose the Ephraimites. Reduced in strength, as they were, by their three days' fast, they were exterminated root and branch. Only ten of them escaped with their bare life, and returned to Egypt, to bring Ephraim word of the disaster that had overtaken his posterity, and he mourned many days.

This abortive attempt of the Ephraimites to leave Egypt was the first occasion for oppressing Israel. Thereafter the Egyptians exercised force and vigilance to keep them in their land. As for the disaster of the Ephraimites, it was well-merited punishment, because they had paid no heed to the wish of their father Joseph, who had adjured his descendants solemnly on his deathbed not to think of quitting the land until the true redeemer should appear. Their death was followed by disgrace, for their bodies lay unburied for many years on the battlefield near Gath, and the purpose of God in directing the Israelites to choose the longer route from Egypt to Canaan, was to spare them the sight of those dishonored corpses. Their courage might have deserted them, and out of apprehension of sharing the fate of their brethren they might have hastened back to the land of slavery.<sup>11</sup>

---

1. Tosefta Sota 4.8; PK 10, 85b; Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא) 24a; Shir 1.7. Compare with pp. 428–429. ShR 18.10 reads: Moses was occupied with taking care of



Joseph's body and with procuring the material Jacob had prepared for the tabernacle; compare with p. 647.

2. An unknown Midrash quoted by Sabba, Beshallah 74b; BHM VI, 112; Aggadat Shir II, 3; comp. also Schechter on the last-named passage. Concerning the fragrance that emanates from the live as well as the dead bodies of the pious, see footnote 92 on p. 266 and text on p. 337. Comp. also Berakot 43b where it is said that in the time to come the young men of Israel will give forth a fragrance like Lebanon. As to the fragrance of the dead bodies of the pious in Christian legend, see *The Passing of Maria*, second version, 10, and Smith, ZDMG 66, 167.

3. ShR 20.19; PK 10, 86a–86b. On the extension of Egypt see Pesahim 94a and text on pp. 536, 542. The magic dogs are a reminiscence of Serapis who was represented as being of dog-like form; see Tertullian, *Ad Nationes*, 11.8. Later sources speak of several kinds of magic animals such as dogs, lions, and bulls. As soon as a fugitive slave met any of these animals, they would bark, roar and bellow until the fugitive was captured; but at the time of the exodus from Egypt none of the animals raised its voice; see Yalkut David, Exod. 11.7. For further details on the finding of Joseph's coffin, see note 723; text on pp. 428–429, as well as pp. 584, 621 and footnote 156.

4. Mekilta Mishpatim 20, 98a; ShR 31.9; Targ. Yer. Exod. 22.30.

5. Perek Shirah (end); Yalkut I, 187.

6. Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא) 23b. Before the children of Israel left Egypt it had never happened that a slave escaped from that country, which was closed on all sides; Mekilta Yitro 1, 58b; Mekilta RS 88. Comp. note 3.—Moses kept the coffin containing Joseph's body in his tent during the time that Israel journeyed through the Wilderness; Pesahim 67a; compare footnote 422 on p. 414.

7. Zohar II, 45a–45b; compare footnote 230 on p. 540.

8. Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא) 23b; Mekilta RS 38; ShR 20.11–17 (here many more reasons are given for Israel's long wanderings through the wilderness). See also Sifra 18.3, where it is said: The Canaanites honored Abraham, and as a reward for this a respite of forty years was granted to them. Compare footnote 413 on p. 413. That the journey through the wilderness was an exercise in discipline and an encouragement to study is also mentioned in *Recognitiones*, 1.35. Comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 15.3, and text on p. 717.

9. ShR 20.16. According to *Hadar*, Exod. 13.17, the Philistines were kinsmen of the Egyptians, and on account of this kinship God did not wish that Israel should march through the land of the Philistines.

10. Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא) 23b–24a and Shirah 9, 42b–43a; Mekilta RS 37–38; Sanhedrin 92b; ShR 20.11; PK 10, 85a–85b; PRE 48; Wa-Yosha' 54;

Yerushalmi Targumim Exod. 13.17; Targum Ps. 78. 9; Targum I Chron. 7.21–22; see also Yelammedenu in Yalkut II on Ps. 78, and Tehillim 81, 368. The chief of the Ephraimites is called גִּנּוֹן, גִּנּוֹן, and גִּנּוֹן in PRE—the correct reading is not certain; גִּנּוֹן seems to be most likely; comp. Ps. 77.17, and Sanhedrin 98b, when גִּנּוֹן is one of the names of the Messiah—whereas according to the text of the Yerushalmi Targumim given in Mahzor Vitry 167, Ganon was the name of the king of the Philistines who attacked and destroyed the Ephraimites led by Jair. This legend very likely represents a kind of reminiscence of a historical event, the wars between Egypt and Canaan which are frequently mentioned in the Tel-Amarna Letters. See Levy, *Monatsschrift*, 55, 285, and Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte* 339–340. In the latter passage it is suggested that then is a connection between the legend about the premature exodus of the Ephraimites and the belief in the advent of the Messiah, the son of Ephraim, who will precede the Messiah, the son of David. As to the war between Egypt and Canaan in pre-Israelitish times, see also Jub. 46.9–11, where it is said that Amram participated in the war of Egypt against Canaan and died in the Promised Land. The obscure reference in Shir 2.7, to the premature attempt of the exodus in the time of Amram is to be explained in accordance with Jub., *loc. cit.*, and the Midrashim quoted above, which record the failure of the Ephraimites. Compare footnote 12 on p. 468, and text on p. 1101. Joseph, who rose to power and dignity in Egypt, gave himself up to the enjoyments of life to such an extent that he forgot his father who was mourning his son's death and did not inform him that he was still alive (compare with p. 351, and footnote 370 on p. 404). As a punishment for this sin, two hundred thousand descendants of Joseph—the Ephraimites—perished at the hands of the Philistines; see Hasidim 231 and 232. This supposition is very likely due to the phrase ימים רבים ויתאבל used in I Chron. 7.22, in connection with the death of the Ephraimites, and in Gen. 37, 34, when the tidings of Joseph's death were brought to Jacob. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 15.3, likewise speaks of earlier wars that took place between the Philistines and the Hebrews.

11. Yashar Shemot 137a–137b; PRE 58; Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא) 24a; compare with p. 465.

## PHARAOH PURSUES THE HEBREWS

When Pharaoh permitted Israel to depart, he was under the impression that they were going only a three days' journey into the



wilderness for the purpose of offering sacrifices. He sent officers with them, whose duty was to bring them back at the appointed time. The exodus took place on a Thursday. On the following Sunday the king's watchers noticed that the Israelites, so far from preparing for a return, were making arrangements looking to a long sojourn in the desert. They remonstrated and urged them to go back. The Israelites maintained that Pharaoh had dismissed them for good, but the officers would not be put off with their mere assertions. They said, "Willy-nilly, you will have to do as the powers that be command." To such arrogance the Israelites would not submit, and they fell upon the officers, slaying some and wounding others. The maimed survivors went back to Egypt, and reported the contumacy of the Israelites to Pharaoh. Meantime Moses, who did not desire the departure of his people to have the appearance of flight before the Egyptians, gave the signal to turn back to Pi-hahiroth. Those of little faith among the Israelites tore their hair and their garments in desperation, though Moses assured them that by the word of God they were free men, and no longer slaves to Pharaoh.<sup>12</sup> Accordingly, they retraced their steps to Pi-hahiroth, where two rectangular rocks form an opening, within which the great sanctuary of Baal-zephon was situated. The rocks are shaped like human figures, the one a man and the other a woman, and they were not chiselled by human hands, but by the Creator Himself. The place had been called Pithom in earlier times, but later, on account of the idols set up there, it received the name Hahiroth. Of set purpose God had left Baal-zephon uninjured, alone of all the Egyptian idols. He wanted the Egyptian people to think that this idol was possessed of exceeding might, which it exercised to prevent the Israelites from journeying on. To confirm them in their illusory belief, God caused wild beasts to obstruct the road to the wilderness, and they

took it for granted that their idol Baal-zephon had ordained their appearance.<sup>13</sup>

Pi-hahiroth was famous, besides, on account of the treasures heaped up there. The wealth of the world which Joseph had acquired through the sale of the corn he had stored up during the seven years of plenty, he had divided into three parts. The first part he surrendered to Pharaoh. The second part he concealed in the wilderness, where it was found by Korah, though it disappeared again, not to come to view until the Messianic time, and then it will be for the benefit of the pious. The third part Joseph hid in the sanctuary of Baal-zephon, whence the Hebrews carried it off as booty.<sup>14</sup>

When Amalek and the magicians brought the information to Pharaoh, that the Israelites had resolved not to return to Egypt, his heart and the heart of his whole people turned against them. The very counsellors that had persuaded him to dismiss the children of Israel spake now as follows: "If we had only been smitten with the plagues, we could have resigned ourselves to our fate. Or if, besides being smitten with the plagues, we had been compelled to let the Hebrews depart from the land, that, too, we could have borne with patience. But to be smitten with the plagues, to be compelled to let our slaves depart from us, and to sit by and see them go off with our riches, that is more than we can endure."

Now that the children of Israel had gone from them, the Egyptians recognized how valuable an element they had been in their country. In general, the time of the exodus of Israel was disastrous for their former masters. In addition to losing their dominion over the Israelites, the Egyptians had to deal with mutinies that broke out among many other nations tributary to them, for hitherto Pharaoh had been the ruler of the whole world. The king resorted to blandishments and promises, to induce the people to make war



against the Israelites, saying, "As a rule the army marches forth first, and the king follows in security, but I will precede you; and as a rule the king has the first choice of the booty, and as much of it as he desires, but I will take no more than any one of you, and on my return from the war I will divide my treasures of silver, gold, and precious stones among you."

In his zeal Pharaoh did not wait to have his chariot made ready for him, he did it with his own hands, and his nobles followed his example.<sup>15</sup> Samael granted Pharaoh assistance, putting six hundred chariots manned with his own hosts at his disposal.<sup>16</sup> These formed the vanguard, and they were joined by all the Egyptians, with their vast assemblages of chariots and warriors, no less than three hundred of their men to one of the children of Israel, each equipped with their different sorts of weapons. The general custom was for two charioteers to take turns at driving a car, but to overtake the Israelites more surely and speedily, Pharaoh ordered three to be assigned to each. The result was that they covered in one day the ground which it had taken the Israelites three to traverse.

The mind of the Egyptians was in no wise directed toward spoil and plunder in this expedition. Their sole and determined purpose was to exterminate Israel, kith and kin. As the heathen lay great stress upon omens when they are about to start out on a campaign, God caused all their preparations to proceed smoothly, without the slightest untoward circumstance. Everything pointed to a happy issue.<sup>17</sup> Pharaoh, himself an adept in magic, had a presentiment that dire misfortune would befall the children of Israel in the wilderness, that they would lose Moses there, and there the whole generation that had departed from Egypt would find its grave. Therefore he spoke to Dathan and Abiram, who remained behind in Egypt, saying: "Moses is leading them, but he himself knows not whither.

Verily, the congregation of Israel will lift up their voice in the wilderness, and cry, and there they will be destroyed." He thought naturally that these visions had reference to an imminent future, to the time of his meeting with his dismissed slaves. But his error was profound—he was hurrying forward to his own destruction.<sup>18</sup>

When he reached the sanctuary of Baal-zephon, Pharaoh, in his joy at finding him spared while all the other idols in Egypt had been annihilated, lost no time, but hastened to offer sacrifices to him, and he was comforted, "for," he said, "Baal-zephon approves my purpose of drowning the children of Israel in the sea."<sup>19</sup>

When the Israelites beheld the huge detachments of the Egyptian army moving upon them, and when they considered that in Migdol there were other troops stationed, besides, more, indeed, than their own numbers, men, women, and children all told, great terror overwhelmed them.<sup>20</sup> What affrighted them most, was the sight of the Angel of Egypt darting through the air as he flew to the assistance of the people under his tutelage. They turned to Moses, saying: "What hast thou done to us? Now they will requite us for all that hath happened—that their first-born were smitten, and that we ran off with their money, which was thy fault, for thou didst bid us borrow gold and silver from our Egyptian neighbors and depart with their property."

The situation of the Israelites was desperate. Before them was the sea, behind them the Egyptians, on both sides the wild beasts of the desert.<sup>21</sup> The wicked among them spoke to Moses, saying, "While we were in Egypt, we said to thee and to Aaron, 'The Lord look upon you, and judge, because ye have made our savor to be abhorred in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of his servants, to put a sword in their hand to slay us.' Then there died many of our brethren during the days of darkness, which was worse than the bondage in which the Egyptians kept us.



Nevertheless our fate in the desert will be sadder than theirs. They at least were mourned, and their bodies were buried, but our corpses will lie exposed, consumed in the day by drought and by frost in the night."

Moses in his wisdom knew how to pacify the thousands and myriads under his leadership. He impressed them with the words, "Fear ye not, stand still, and see the salvation of the Lord." "When will His salvation come?" questioned the people, and he told them it would appear the following day, but they protested, "We cannot wait until to-morrow." Then Moses prayed to God, and the Lord showed him the angel hosts standing ready to hasten to the assistance of the people.<sup>22</sup>

They were not agreed as to what they were to do. There were four contending parties. The opinion of the first party was that they seek death by drowning in the sea; of the second, that they return to Egypt; the third was in favor of a pitched battle with the enemy, and the fourth thought it would be a good plan to intimidate the Egyptians by noise and a great hubbub. To the first Moses said, "Stand still, and see the salvation of the Lord;" to the second, "The Egyptians whom ye have seen to-day, ye shall see them again no more forever;" to the third, "The Lord shall fight for you;" and to the fourth, "Ye shall hold your peace." "What, then, shall we do?" these asked their leader, and Moses answered them, saying, "Ye shall bless, praise, extol, adore, and glorify Him that is the Lord of war!" instead of the sword and the five sorts of arms which they bore, they made use of their mouth, and it was of greater avail than all possible weapons of war. The Lord hearkened unto their prayer, for which He had but been waiting.<sup>23</sup>

Moses also addressed himself to God, saying: "O Lord of the world! I am like the shepherd who, having undertaken to pasture a flock, has been heedless enough to drive his sheep to

the edge of a precipice, and then is in despair how to get them down again. Pharaoh is behind my flock Israel, in the south is Baal-zephon, in the north Migdol, and before us the sea lies spread out.<sup>24</sup> Thou knowest, O Lord, that it is beyond human strength and human contrivance to surmount the difficulties standing in our way. Thine alone is the work of procuring deliverance for this army, which left Egypt at Thy appointment. We despair of all other assistance or device, and we have recourse only to our hope in Thee. If there be any escape possible, we look up to Thy providence to accomplish it for us."<sup>25</sup> With such words Moses continued to make fervent supplication to God to succor Israel in their need. But God cut short his prayer, saying: "Moses, My children are in distress—the sea blocks the way before them, the enemy is in hot pursuit after them, and thou standest here and prayest. Sometimes long prayer is good, but sometimes it is better to be brief. If I gathered the waters together unto one place, and let the dry land appear for Adam, a single human being, should I not do the same for this holy congregation? I will save them if only for the sake of the merits of Abraham, who stood ready to sacrifice his son Isaac unto Me, and for the Sake of My promise to Jacob. The sun and the moon are witnesses that I will cleave the sea for the seed of the children of Israel, who deserve My help for going after Me in the wilderness unquestioningly. Do thou but see to it that they abandon their evil thought of returning to Egypt, and then it will not be necessary to turn to Me and entreat My help."<sup>26</sup>

Moses, however, was still very much troubled in mind, on account of Samael, who had not left off lodging accusations before God against Israel since the exodus from Egypt. The Lord adopted the same procedure in dealing with the accuser as the experienced shepherd, who, at the moment of transferring his sheep



across a stream, was faced by a ravening wolf. The shepherd threw a strong ram to the wolf, and while the two engaged in combat, the rest of the flock was carried across the water, and then the shepherd returned and snatched the wolf's supposed prey away from him Samael said to the Lord: "Up to this time the children of Israel were idol worshippers, and now Thou proposest so great a thing as dividing the sea for them?" What did the Lord do? He surrendered Job to Samael, saying, "While he busies himself with Job, Israel will pass through the sea unscathed, and as soon as they are in safety, I will rescue Job from the hands of Samael."<sup>27</sup>

Israel had other angel adversaries, besides. Uzza, the tutelary Angel of the Egyptians, appeared before God, and said, "O Lord of the world! I have a suit with this nation which Thou hast brought forth out of Egypt. If it seemeth well to Thee, let their angel Michael appear, and contend with me before Thee." The Lord summoned Michael, and Uzza stated his charges against Israel: "O Lord of the world! Thou didst decree concerning this people of Israel that it shall be held in bondage by my people, the Egyptians, for a period of four hundred years. But they had dominion over them only eighty-six years, therefore the time of their going forth hath not yet arrived. If it be Thy will, give me permission to take them back to Egypt, that they may continue in slavery for the three hundred and fourteen years that are left, and Thy word be fulfilled. As Thou art immutable, so let Thy decree be immutable!"

Michael was silent, for he knew not how to controvert these words, and it seemed as if Uzza had won his suit. But the Lord Himself espoused the cause of Israel, and He said to Uzza: "The duty of serving thy nation was laid upon My children only on account of an unseemly word uttered by Abraham. When I spoke to him, saying, 'I am the Lord that brought thee

out of Ur of the Chaldees, to give thee this land to inherit it,' he made answer, 'Whereby shall I know that I shall inherit it?' Therefore did I say to him, 'Thy seed shall be a stranger.' But it is well-known and manifest before Me that they were 'strangers' from the day of Isaac's birth, and, reckoning thence, the period of four hundred years has elapsed, and thou hast no right to keep My children in bondage any longer."<sup>28</sup>

---

12. Mekilta Beshallah 1, 25a–26a and Shir 1.13; Mekilta RS 42–43. Dibre ha-Yamim 11 relates that the mixed multitude **עַרְב רַב-אִסְפָּנוֹף** comp. note 462) attempted to force Israel to return to Egypt; but in the ensuing battle between the Hebrews and the Egyptians the latter were almost entirely annihilated, so that only few of them reached Egypt to inform Pharaoh of Israel's flight. Comp. also Yashar Shemot, 145–146a.

13. Mekilta Beshallah 1, 25b–26a; Mekilta RS 41; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 14.2; compare with p. 537. See also p. 552, where it is narrated that the Egyptians were furthermore misled by the felicitous course of their preparations for the war against Israel.

14. An unknown Midrash quoted in Sifte Kohen, Exod. 14.2; this is a combination of Mekilta Beshallah 1, 26a and Mekilta RS 41 with Pesahim 119b. On the treasures of Joseph and the Egyptians see Abkir in Yalkut I, 230; see pp. 119–120, and also pp. 559 and 718.

15. Mekilta Beshallah 1, 26b–27a; Mekilta RS 43–44. A sentence not found in our text of the Mekilta but quoted in *Hadar*, and *Imre No'am*, Deut. 25.18, reads: Amalek said: Pharaoh will attack Israel in the front and I in the rear. Comp. note 139. The magicians are mentioned only in Zohar II, 46b, whereas the Mekiltas have agents (this is how **אֶקְטוֹרִין**, in Mekilta RS **קְטוֹרִין**, is to be translated) and messengers of Pharaoh. See also p. 549. As to Pharaoh the "cosmocrator", see Abkir in Yalkut I, 241, and Mekilta Shirah 6. At the exodus the power of Egypt sank; Hallel 95; comp. note 738.

16. Zohar II, 51a–51b.

17. Mekilta Beshallah 1–2, 27a–27b; Mekilta RS 44–45; Tan. Shofetim 13. The last named source adds that Pharaoh presented the chieftains of the army with pearls and precious stones, to win them over to his plans. As to the fact that pagans attribute great importance to omens, see also p. 1073–1074. On the chariots of war see Yerushalmi Kil'ayim 7,31c.

18. Mekilta Beshallah 1, 26a; Mekilta RS 41. That Dathan and Abiram, the implacable enemies of Moses



(compare footnote 75 on p. 487), remained in Egypt is found only in Targum Yerushalmi, Exod. 14.3; this is probably based upon the midrashic source quoted in *Sekel*, Exod., *loc. cit.*; see also *Haggadat Teman* 22.

19. Mekilta Beshallah 2,27b; Mekilta RS 45; ShR 15.15; compare with pp. 532, 537, text on p. 549.

20. Mekilta RS 41.

21. ShR 21.5 and 15.15. Comp. also Tan. Shofetim 13–14; Mekilta Beshallah 1, 26a and 28b; Mekilta RS 41–42. On the guardian angel of Egypt, see note 41. The midrashic basis for the legend about the angel of Egypt is the use of the singular (אֶחָד) in Exod. 14.10. According to another interpretation this verse speaks of Mizraim, son of Ham (Gen. 10.6), who came to the assistance of his descendants the Egyptians, the inhabitants of Egypt-Mizraim. See *Hadar*, Exod., *loc. cit.*; Zohar II, 19b.

22. Mekilta Beshallah 2, 28a–28b; Mekilta RS 46. The sinners in Israel said: God cannot deliver Israel from the hands of their masters, and He therefore commanded them to flee from the Egyptians. To show mankind His power, God caused Pharaoh to follow the Israelites that He might perform His miracles at the Red Sea; see ER 7.44. As to the power Moses exerted over his people, compare with p. 610.

23. Mekilta Beshallah 2, 29a; Mekilta RS 47: Yerushalmi Ta'anit 2, 65d; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 14.13 and 2 Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 14.3; PRK (Grünhut's edition) 43: Wa-Yosha' 51–52. The last two sources speak of the three divisions of the tribes. This is in agreement with ps.-Philo 11B who states that the tribes of Reuben, Issachar, Zebulun, and Simeon formed the first division; Gad, Asher, and Dan the Second; Levi, Judah, the Joseph tribes, and Benjamin the third. Yashar Shemot, 146a, divides the tribes as follows: Reuben, Simeon, and Issachar formed the first party; Zebulun, Benjamin, and Naphtali the second; Judah, Dan (read יָדָן instead of יְבִי), and the Joseph tribes the third; Levi, Gad, and Asher the fourth. The task of the last-named was to intimidate the enemy by noise. The midrashic statement about the divided counsel of the tribes is derived from Ps. 68.28 (comp. the references given in note 36 and 388), and not from Judges 5.15–16, as maintained by James on ps.-Philo, *loc. cit.* See also Philo, Moses, 2 (3).33, who remarks, that the Israelites were ready to throw themselves into the waters of the sea. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II.15.4, says: The people threw stones at Moses (see Num. 14.10); but he, self-reliant and fearless, calmed the people with his words, and made them stop the weeping and clamoring of the women and children. Reference to the weeping of the women and children is also found in Wa-Yosha', which, like Josephus, made use of Num. 14.1.

24. Abkir in Yalkut I, 233; compare with p. 550, and ps.-Philo 11B.

25. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II. 16, 1; the prayer in Yashar Shemot, 146b, reads differently.

26. Mekilta Beshallah 6, 29–30a; Mekilta RS 47–48. The Derashot in these sources are based on the conception that just as the physical order of the world is maintained by fixed laws of nature, so the moral order cannot exist without Israel. Now, inasmuch as the existence of the physical world depends upon the existence of moral man (see footnote 8 on p. 48), it is manifest that Israel is indispensable to the world. The other point brought out by these Derashot is that the Israelites on account of their trust in God and because of the merit of their fathers, are entitled to expect that divine help would come to them; comp. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 14.15.

27. ShR 21.7; Zohar II, 33a, 34a, and 181b, as well as III, 101b and 218a; PRK 33a. Compare also footnote 34 on p. 461, and Index, *s.v.* "Job". A statement similar to that of the Midrash is found in Jub. 48.15–18, which remarks that God kept Mastemah bound from the fourteenth of Nisan to the eighteenth thereof, that he might not accuse Israel. See also the comment of Mekilta Beshallah 4, 30 and Mekilta RS 47, on the use of the name הַאֱלֹהִים in Exod. 14.19.

28. Abkir in Yalkut I, 241, and Wa-Yosha' 39. A somewhat different version of this legend is found in *Hadar*, Exod. 14.10. Compare footnote 110 on p. 198, and text on p. 510.

## THE SEA DIVIDED

God spake to Moses, saying, "Why dost thou stand here praying? My children's prayer has anticipated thine. For thee there is naught to do but lift up thy rod and stretch out thine hand over the sea, and divide it." Moses replied: "Thou commandest me to divide the sea, and lay bare the dry ground in the midst of it, and yet Thou didst Thyself make it a perpetual decree, that the sand shall be placed for the bound of the sea." And again God spake to Moses: "Thou hast not read the beginning of the Torah. I, yea I, did speak, 'Let the waters under the heaven be gathered together unto one place, and let the dry land appear,' and at that time I made the condition that the waters shall divide before Israel.<sup>29</sup> Take the rod that I gave unto thee, and go to



the sea upon Mine errand, and speak thus: 'I am the messenger sent by the Creator of the world! Uncover thy paths, O sea, for My children, that they may go through the midst of thee on dry ground.' "

Moses spoke to the sea as God had bidden him, but it replied, "I will not do according to thy words, for thou art only a man born of woman, and, besides, I am three days older than thou, O man, for I was brought forth on the third day of creation, and thou on the sixth." Moses lost no time, but carried back to God the words the sea had spoken, and the Lord said: "Moses, what does a master do with an intractable servant?" "He beats him with a rod," said Moses. "Do thus!" ordered God. "Lift up thy rod, and stretch out thine hand over the sea, and divide it."<sup>30</sup>

Thereupon Moses raised up his rod—the rod that had been created at the very beginning of the world, on which were graven in plain letters the great and exalted Name, the names of the ten plagues inflicted upon the Egyptians, and the names of the three Fathers, the six Mothers, and the twelve tribes of Jacob. This rod he lifted up, and stretched it out over the sea.<sup>31</sup>

The sea, however, continued in its perverseness, and Moses entreated God to give His command direct to it. But God refused, saying: "Were I to command the sea to divide, it would never again return to its former estate. Therefore, do thou convey My order to it, that it be not drained dry forever. But I will let a semblance of My strength accompany thee, and that will compel its obedience." When the sea saw the Strength of God at the right hand of Moses, it spoke to the earth, saying, "Make hollow places for me, that I may hide myself therein before the Lord of all created things, blessed be He." Noticing the terror of the sea, Moses said to it: "For a whole day I spoke to thee at the bidding of the Holy One, who desired thee to divide,

but thou didst refuse to pay heed to my words; even when I showed thee my rod, thou didst remain obdurate. What hath happened now that thou skippest hence!" The sea replied, "I am fleeing, not before thee, but before the Lord of all created things, that His Name be magnified in all the earth."<sup>32</sup> And the waters of the Red Sea divided, and not they alone, but all the water in heaven and on earth, in whatever vessel it was, in cisterns, in wells, in caves, in casks, in pitchers, in drinking cups, and in glasses, and none of these waters returned to their former estate until Israel had passed through the sea on dry land.<sup>33</sup>

The angel Gabriel was eager to drown the Egyptians during the same night, but God bade him wait until early the next day, until the hour of the morning watch, when Abraham had made himself ready to set out for the sacrifice of his son. Gabriel succeeded, however, in holding back the turbulent waters about to sweep over Israel. To the wall of water on the right, he called, "Beware of Israel, who will receive the law in time to come from the right hand of the Lord," and turning to the wall of water on the left, he said, "Beware of Israel, who will wind the phylacteries about their left hand in time to come." The water behind he admonished, "Beware of Israel, who will let the Zizit drop down upon their back in time to come," and to the water towering in front of them, he called, "Beware of Israel, who bear the sign of the covenant upon their bodies."<sup>34</sup>

God caused the sea to go back by a strong east wind, the wind He always makes use of when He chastises the nations. The same east wind had brought the deluge; it had laid the tower of Babel in ruins; it was to cause the destruction of Samaria, Jerusalem, and Tyre; and it will, in future, be the instrument for castigating Rome drunken with pleasure; and likewise the sinners in Gehenna are punished by means of this east wind. All night long God made it to blow over



the sea. To prevent the enemy from indicting harm upon the Israelites, He enveloped the Egyptians in profound darkness, so impenetrable it could be felt, and none could move or change his posture. He that sat when it fell could not arise from his place, and he that stood could not sit down. Nevertheless, the Egyptians could see that the Israelites were surrounded by bright light, and were enjoying a banquet where they stood, and when they tried to speed darts and arrows against them, the missiles were caught up by the cloud and by the angels hovering between the two camps, and no harm came to Israel.<sup>35</sup>

29. ShR 21.1 and 6, which in the main follows Mekilta Beshallah 2, 29b-30a.

30. Wa-Yosha' 38-39; ShR 21.6; Mekilta RS 49-50. The sea did not want to divide its waters before the Israelites because they rebelled against God; Tehillim 114, 475. Conflicting with this view there is the statement that Israel saw no other way to be delivered from the Egyptians than by passing through the Red Sea; for that day being Sabbath, they were unable to try their fortune in war; See BHM VI, 37. Comp. the following note, and text on p. 849.

31. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 14.21. As to the rod of Moses, see PK 14, 140a; Tehillim 114, 475; DR 3.8; text on pp. 494 and 495.

32. Mekilta RS 50; this is very likely a late source and is identical with that made use of in Sekel 182; ShR 21.6; DR 3.8; Hallel 95-97; Wa-Yosha' 51; Tehillim 114, 475; PRE 42; PR 19, 140; *Haggadat Teman* 55. In all these passages stress is laid upon the fact that it was God's will, not the rod of Moses, that performed the miracles. BHM VI, 37, finds it even necessary to interpret הָרֹמֶם (Exod. 14.16) in the sense of removing: God told Moses to lay the rod aside before dividing the sea. *Hadar and Imre No'am* on Exod., *loc. cit.*, quote, from Tehillim, a lengthy passage bearing upon the controversy between Moses and the Red Sea. A poetical rendering of this dialogue is given in 2 Targum Yerushalmi Exodus 14.29, and in a somewhat different version by the Targum fragment in *Kaufmann-Gedenkbuch*, 235.

33. Mekilta Beshallah 4, 31a; Mekilta RS 50; Tehillim 18, 147; ShR 21.6.

34. 34 Abkir in Yalkut I, 234; Makiri Ps. 136, 258; *Hadar and Da'at* on Exod. 14.21; *Eshkol* 2, 105; Al-Barceloni 11; Or Zarua' II, 136b, No. 314; the last-named

source gives an essentially different version. Comp. also Shu'aib, Beshallah 60b and Aggadat Bereshit 17.35. An old stratum of this version is found in Mekilta Beshallah 5, 31b and 6, 33a, as well as in Mekilta RS 51 and 54.

35. Mekilta Beshallah 4, 30b-31a; Mekilta RS 49-50. Concerning the darkness, see text on p. 532. According to PRE 42, it was the angel Michael who made himself "a wall of fire" between Israel and the Egyptians. Philo, in a similar manner, identifies the pillar of fire with an angel; see Moses, 1.29.

## THE PASSAGE THROUGH THE RED SEA

On the morning after the eventful night, though the sea was not yet made dry land, the Israelites, full of trust in God, were ready to cast themselves into its waters. The tribes contended with one another for the honor of being the first to jump. Without awaiting the outcome of the wordy strife, the tribe of Benjamin sprang in, and the princes of Judah were so incensed at having been deprived of pre-eminence in danger that they pelted the Benjamites with stones. God knew that the Judaeans and the Benjamites were animated by a praiseworthy purpose. The ones like the others desired but to magnify the Name of God, and He rewarded both tribes: in Benjamin's allotment the Shekinah took up her residence, and the royalty of Israel was conferred upon Judah.

When God saw the two tribes in the waves of the sea, He called upon Moses, and said: "My beloved are in danger of drowning, and thou standest by and prayest. Bid Israel go forward, and thou lift up thy rod over the sea, and divide it." Thus it happened, and Israel passed through the sea with its waters cleft in twain.

The dividing of the sea was but the first of ten miracles connected with the passage of the Israelites through it. The others were that the waters united in a vault above their heads; twelve



paths opened up, one for each of the tribes; the water became as transparent as glass, and each tribe could see the others; the soil underfoot was dry, but it changed into clay when the Egyptians stepped upon it; the walls of water were transformed into rocks, against which the Egyptians were thrown and dashed to death, while before the Israelites they crumbled away into bits. Through the brackish sea flowed a stream of soft water, at which the Israelites could slake their thirst; and, finally, the tenth wonder was, that this drinking water was congealed in the heart of the sea as soon as they had satisfied their need.<sup>36</sup>

And there were other miracles, besides. The sea yielded the Israelites whatever their hearts desired. If a child cried as it lay in the arms of its mother, she needed but to stretch out her hand and pluck an apple or some other fruit and quiet it.<sup>37</sup> The waters were piled up to the height of sixteen hundred miles, and they could be seen by all the nations of the earth.<sup>38</sup>

The great wonder of Israel's passage through the sea took place in the presence of the three Fathers and the six Mothers, for God had fetched them out of their graves to the shores of the Red Sea, to be witnesses of the marvellous deeds wrought in behalf of their children.<sup>39</sup>

Wonderful as were the miracles connected with the rescue of the Israelites from the waters of the sea, those performed when the Egyptians were drowned were no less remarkable. First of all God felt called upon to defend Israel's cause before Uzza the Angel of the Egyptians, who would not allow his people to perish in the waters of the sea. He appeared on the spot at the very moment when God wanted to drown the Egyptians, and he spake: "O Lord of the world! Thou art called just and upright, and before Thee there is no wrong, no forgetting, no respecting of persons. Why, then, dost Thou desire to make my children perish in the sea? Canst Thou say that

my children drowned or slew a single one of Thine? If it be on account of the rigorous slavery that my children imposed upon Israel, then consider that Thy children have received their wages, in that they took their silver and golden vessels from them."

Then God convoked all the members of His celestial family, and He spake to the angel hosts: "Judge ye in truth between Me and yonder Uzza, the Angel of the Egyptians. At the first I brought a famine upon his people, and I appointed My friend Joseph over them, who saved them through his sagacity, and they all became his slaves. Then My children went down into their land as strangers, in consequence of the famine, and they made the children of Israel to serve with rigor in all manner of hard work there is in the world. They groaned on account of their bitter service, and their cry rose up to Me, and I sent Moses and Aaron, My faithful messengers, to Pharaoh. When they came before the king of Egypt, they spake to him, 'Thus said the Lord, the God of Israel, Let My people go, that they may hold a feast unto Me in the wilderness.' In the presence of the kings of the East and of the West, that sinner began to boast, saying: 'Who is the Lord, that I should hearken unto His voice, to let Israel go! Why comes He not before me, like all the kings of the world, and why doth He not bring me a present like the others? This God of whom you speak, I know Him not at all. Wait and let me search my lists, and see whether I can find His Name.' But his servants said, 'We have heard that He is the son of the wise, the son of ancient kings.' Then Pharaoh asked My messengers, 'What are the works of this God!' and they replied, 'He is the God of gods, the Lord of lords, who created the heaven and the earth.' But Pharaoh doubted their words, and said, 'There is no God in all the world that can accomplish such works beside me, for I made myself, and I made the Nile



river.' Because he denied Me thus, I sent ten plagues upon him, and he was compelled to let My children go. Yet, in spite of all, he did not leave off from his wicked ways, and he tried to bring them back under his bondage. Now, seeing all that hath happened to him, and that he will not acknowledge Me as God and Lord, does he not deserve to be drowned in the sea with his host?"

The celestial family called out when the Lord had ended His defense, "Thou hast every right to drown him in the sea!"

Uzza heard their verdict, and he said: "O Lord of all worlds! I know that my people deserve the punishment Thou hast decreed, but may it please Thee to deal with them according to Thy attribute of mercy, and take pity upon the work of Thy hands, for Thy tender mercies are over all Thy works!"

Almost the Lord had yielded to Uzza's entreaties, when Michael gave a sign to Gabriel that made him fly to Egypt swiftly and fetch thence a brick for which a Hebrew child had been used as mortar. Holding this incriminating object, his hand, Gabriel stepped into the presence of God, and said: "O Lord of the world! Wilt Thou have compassion with the accursed nation that has slaughtered Thy children, cruelly?" Then the Lord turned Himself away from His attribute of mercy, and seating Himself upon His throne of justice He resolved to drown the Egyptians in the sea.<sup>40</sup>

The first upon whom judgment was executed was the Angel of Egypt—Uzza was thrown into the sea.<sup>41</sup> A similar fate overtook Rahab, the Angel of the Sea, with his hosts. Rahab had made intercession before God in behalf of the Egyptians. He had said: "Why shouldst Thou drown the Egyptians! Let it suffice the Israelites that Thou hast saved them out of the hand of their masters." At that God dealt Rahab and his army a blow, under which they staggered and

fell dead, and then He cast their corpses in the sea, whence its unpleasant odor.<sup>42</sup>

---

36. Mekilta Beshallah 5, 31a–31b; Mekilta RS 50–51; Sotah 67a; Tan. B. I, 208; Aggadat Bereshit 74, 145; PRE 42; Aggadat Shir 2, 29; Tehillim 68, 320;76, 341; 114, 474; Hallel 95; Tosefta Berakot 4.18; Yerushalmi Targumim Exod. 14.16; Targum Ps. 68. 26; Wa-Yosha' 52. As to those who first entered the sea, comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 16.2, who maintains that Moses was the first to jump into the sea. See note 23; text on p. 333; text on p. 665.—On the ten miracles (this number is mentioned Abot 5, 4) see also Mekilta Shirah 6, 40a; Mekilta RS 64; Tan. Beshallah 10; PRE 42; Tehillim 114, 473; Hallel 96; ARN 33, 96 (second version 36, 94, and 38, 99); Wa-Yosha' 51; Midrash Shir, 38b; Midrash Temurah 111, quotation from Tan. in Makiri Ps. 136, 258. Several features of this legend are found in Wisdom 19.7–10 (the sea was changed into a pleasure-ground, as in Tehillim, *loc. cit.*), in Philo, *Moses*, 1.32, and 2 (3).34 (the sea was changed into a highway, as in 2 ARN, 99), and in Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 16.2. Comp. also Theodoretus, Exod. 14.16.—In Mekilta Beshallah 6, 33b, Mekilta RS 55, ShR 23.9, and Passover Haggadah three different opinions are given as to the number of the plagues inflicted upon the Egyptians at the Red Sea. Fifty, two hundred, and two hundred and fifty, respectively are the numbers represented in these opinions. The conflicting views are based on the assumption that at the Red Sea the plagues were five times as many as in Egypt ("the hand of the Lord" was seen at the Red Sea, whereas in Egypt His "finger" only was visible; compare Exod. 8.15 with 14.31). On this point they all agree, but they differ with respect to the exact nature of the plagues in Egypt, which, according to all views, were composite.

37. ShR 21.10; Wa-Yosha' 51; 2 ARN 38, 10; Yelam-medenu in Yalkut I, 764

38. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 14. 22; Wa-Yosha' 51. Compare with p. 843. This is the reply of the legend to the rationalists who maintain that the passage through the Red Sea took place during the low tide. Artapanus, 436b, is the oldest exponent of this rationalistic view.

39. Br 92.2; Midrash Shir 22b, where, however, the presence of these prominent persons is spoken of in connection with the redemption from Egypt; comp. also ShR 18.10 with regard to Jacob's presence. Zohar II, 53a (this is the source of Shu'aib, 30a) further adds the presence of the twelve tribes, *i.e.*, the sons of Jacob. "The six mothers" *i.e.*, Sarah, Rebekah, and Jacob's four wives, are mentioned in this connection, it seems, only in this source and in the piyyut כַּךְ נִזְכָּר for the Great Sabbath, in the Italian Mahzor. See Index, s.v. "Mothers". Rashi on Ta'anit 5b,



catchword **אף הוא**, Hasidim 34, Sekel, 190 read in BR, *loc. cit.*, **ישראל סבא**, (on this expression see vol. V, p. 276, top). According to these authorities, Exod. 14.31 (and Israel saw) is to be explained as “and Jacob saw”. The contrast to **ישראל סבא** is **מצרים סבא** in the source quoted in note 21.

40. Wa-Yosha' 39–40, which is based on Abkir in Yalkut I, 241. For another version of this legend see text on p. 552. Concerning Pharaoh's blasphemous language see text on p. 519; on the Hebrew child used as mortar see text on p. 541. *Hadar*, Exod. 24.10, combined two sources for this legend, the version on p. 28b being taken from Wa-Yosha', whereas in 40a an unknown Midrash is reproduced. Abkir in Yalkut I, 243, has a third version of this legend.

41. Abkir (perhaps Wa-Yosha'), according to *Hadar*, Exod. 14.10; ShR 21.5. That God first executed judgment on the angel of Egypt and then on the Egyptians is an old Haggadah: see Mekilta Shirah 2, 36b and Mekilta RS 58. The Mekiltas also know of the general rule that God's wrath is first visited upon the guardian angels before the nations entrusted to their care are punished. This view is found in many passages of the Talmud and Midrash; see ShR, *loc. cit.*, Shemuel 18, 98 (on the text comp. *Abkat Rokel*, 1.2); DR 1.22; Shir 8.14; Tan. Beshallah 13; Tan. B. II, 53, and V. 32; Sukkah 29a, according to Rashi's interpretation of this passage, which, however, is hardly correct, as the Talmud evidently refers to the idea that idols which are worshipped are punished; compare with pp. 467 and 527. See also Wa-Yosha' 45: Midrash Temurah 110; PK 4, 41a; Zohar II, 52b and 54b; *Batte Midrashot* I, 27. The last-named source is the only one which refers to the guardian angel of every individual as well as to that of every nation. Compare with pp. 712, 751, and 770, and text on pp. 921 and 1073. As to the burning of idols in Gehenna on the Day of Judgment, see EZ 21, 34; comp. also BR 28 (beginning), and Vol. V, p. 418, note 118 towards end of page.

42. Wa-Yosha' 46–47. As to the older view concerning Rahab, see text on p. 18, and comp. Sekel 182. In the latter legend Rahab is the “prince of Egypt” and at the same time Uzza is the “prince of the sea”. See the quotation from Wa-Yosha' (not in our text) in *Hadar*, Exod. 14.16. Abkir in Yalkut I, 234, makes Sammael the guardian angel of Egypt, and gives the following dialogue between God and him. Sammael said: The Israelites worshipped idols in Egypt, and yet Thou wishest to perform miracles for their sake. When the prince of the sea heard these words he became exceedingly wrathful against Israel, and wanted to drown them. Whereupon God replied to Sammael: “O thou fool, did Israel worship idols voluntarily? Was it not due to their servitude which deprived them of their senses?” These words of God turned away the anger of the prince of

the sea from Israel to the Egyptians. Zohar II, 270, made use of Abkir, but, in accordance with the above-mentioned sources, changed Sammael to Rahab. Comp. also Mekilta Beshallah 6, 33a.

## THE DESTRUCTION OF THE EGYPTIANS

At the moment when the last of the Israelites stepped out of the bed of the sea, the first of the Egyptians set foot into it, but in the same instant the waters surged back into their wonted place, and all the Egyptians perished.<sup>43</sup>

But drowning was not the only punishment decreed upon them by God. He undertook a thoroughgoing campaign against them. When Pharaoh was preparing to persecute the Israelites, he asked his army which of the saddle beasts was the swiftest runner, that one he would use, and they said: “There is none swifter than thy piebald mare, whose like is to be found nowhere in the world.” Accordingly, Pharaoh mounted the mare, and pursued after the Israelites seaward. And while Pharaoh was inquiring of his army as to the swiftest animal to mount, God was questioning the angels as to the swiftest creature to use to the detriment of Pharaoh. And the angels answered: “O Lord of the world! All things are Thine, and all are Thine handiwork. Thou knowest well, and it is manifest before Thee, that among all Thy creatures there is none so quick as the wind that comes from under the throne of Thy glory,” and the Lord flew swiftly upon the wings of the wind.<sup>44</sup>

The angels now advanced to support the Lord in His war against the Egyptians. Some brought swords, some arrows, and some spears. But God warded them off, saying, “Away! I need no help!”<sup>45</sup> The arrows sped by Pharaoh against the children of Israel were answered by the Lord



with fiery darts directed against the Egyptians. Pharaoh's army advanced with gleaming swords, and the Lord sent out lightnings that discomfited the Egyptians. Pharaoh hurled missiles, and the Lord discharged hailstones and coals of fire against him. With trumpets, sackbuts, and horns the Egyptians made their assault, and the Lord thundered in the heavens, and the Most High uttered His voice. In vain the Egyptians marched forward in orderly battle array; the Lord deprived them of their standards, and they were thrown into wild confusion.<sup>46</sup> To lure them into the water, the Lord caused fiery steeds to swim out upon the sea, and the horses of the Egyptians followed them, each with a rider upon his back.<sup>47</sup>

Now the Egyptians tried to flee to their land in their chariots drawn by she-mules. As they had treated the children of Israel in a way contrary to nature, so the Lord treated them now. Now the she-mules pulled the chariots, but the chariots, though fire from heaven had consumed their wheels, dragged the men and the beasts into the water. The chariots were laden with silver, gold, and all sorts of costly things, which the river Pishon, as it flows forth from Paradise, carries down into the Gihon. Thence the treasures float into the Red Sea, and by its waters they were tossed into the chariots of the Egyptians. It was the wish of God that these treasures should come into the possession of Israel, and for this reason He caused the chariots to roll down into the sea, and the sea in turn to cast them out upon the opposite shore, at the feet of the Israelites.<sup>48</sup>

And the Lord fought against the Egyptians also with the pillar of cloud and the pillar of fire. The former made the soil miry, and the mire was heated to the boiling point by the latter, so that the hoofs of the horses dropped from their feet and they could not budge from the spot.<sup>49</sup>

The anguish and the torture that God brought upon the Egyptians at the Red Sea

caused them by far more excruciating pain than the plagues they had endured in Egypt, for at the sea He delivered them into the hands of the Angels of Destruction, who tormented them pitilessly. Had God not endowed the Egyptians with a double portion of strength, they could not have stood the pain a single moment.<sup>50</sup>

The last judgment executed upon the Egyptians corresponded to the wicked designs harbored against Israel by the three different parties among them when they set out in pursuit of their liberated slaves. The first party had said, "We will bring Israel back to Egypt;" the second had said, "We will strip them bare," and the third had said, "We will slay them all." The Lord blew upon the first with His breath, and the sea covered them; the second party He shook into the sea, and the third He pitched into the depths of the abyss.<sup>51</sup> He tossed them about as lentils are shaken up and down in a saucepan; the upper ones are made to fall to the bottom, the lower ones fly to the top. This was the experience of the Egyptians. And worse still, first the rider and his beast were whisked high up in the air, and then the two together, the rider sitting upon the back of the beast, were hurled to the bottom of the sea.<sup>52</sup>

The Egyptians endeavored to save themselves from the sea by conjuring charms, for they were great magicians. Of the ten measures of magic allotted to the world, they had taken nine for themselves. And, indeed, they succeeded for the moment; they escaped out of the sea. But immediately the sea said to itself, "How can I allow the pledge entrusted to me by God to be taken from me?" And the water rushed after the Egyptians, and dragged back every man of them.

Among the Egyptians were the two arch-magicians Jannes and Jambres. They made wings for themselves, with which they flew up to heaven. They also said to Pharaoh: "If God Himself hath done this thing, we can effect naught. But if



this work has been put into the hands of His angels, then we will shake His lieutenants into the sea." They proceeded at once to use their magic contrivances whereby they dragged the angels down. These cried up to God: "Save us, O God, for the waters are come in unto our soul! Speak Thy word that will cause the magicians to drown in the mighty waters." And Gabriel cried to God, "By the greatness of Thy glory dash Thy adversaries to pieces." Hereupon God bade Michael go and execute judgment upon the two magicians. The archangel seized hold of Jannes and Jambres by the locks of their hair, and he shattered them against the surface of the water.<sup>53</sup>

Thus all the Egyptians were drowned. Only one was spared—Pharaoh himself. When the children of Israel raised their voices to sing a song of praise to God at the shores of the Red Sea, Pharaoh heard it as he was jostled hither and thither by the billows, and he pointed his finger heavenward, and called out: "I believe in Thee, O God! Thou art righteous, and I and My people are wicked, and I acknowledge now that there is no god in the world beside Thee." Without a moment's delay, Gabriel descended and laid an iron chain about Pharaoh's neck, and holding him securely, he addressed him thus: "Villain! Yesterday thou didst say, 'Who is the Lord that I should hearken to His voice?' and now thou sayest, 'The Lord is righteous.'" With that he let him drop into the depths of the sea, and there he tortured him for fifty days, to make the power of God known to him. At the end of the time he installed him as king of the great city of Nineveh, and after the lapse of many centuries, when Jonah came to Nineveh, and prophesied the overthrow of the city on account of the evil done by the people, it was Pharaoh who, seized by fear and terror, covered himself with sackcloth, and sat in ashes, and with his own mouth made proclamation and published this decree through Nineveh: "Let neither man

nor beast, herd nor flock, taste anything; let them not feed nor drink water; for I know there is no god beside Him in all the world, all His words are truth, and all His judgments are true and faithful."

Pharaoh never died, and never will die. He always stands at the portal of hell, and when the kings of the nations enter, he makes the power of God known to them at once, in these words: "O ye fools! Why have ye not learnt knowledge from me! I denied the Lord God, and He brought ten plagues upon me, sent me to the bottom of the sea, kept me there for fifty days, released me then, and brought me up. Thus I could not but believe in Him."<sup>54</sup>

God caused the Egyptians to be washed ashore in their death struggle. There were four reasons for this. The Israelites were not to say that as they themselves had escaped, so also the Egyptians had passed through the sea dryshod, only the latter had gone in another direction, and therefore had vanished from sight. The Egyptians, on the other hand, were not to think that the children of Israel had been drowned in the sea like themselves. In the third place, the Israelites were to have, as their booty, the silver, gold, and other precious things with which the Egyptians were decked; and, finally, the Israelites were to enjoy the satisfaction of seeing their enemies suffer. With their finger they could point them out one by one, saying, "This one was my taskmaster, who beat me with those fists of his at which the dogs are now gnawing, and yonder Egyptian, the dogs are chewing the feet with which he kicked me."

As they lay on the shore in their last agony, they had to witness their own destruction and the victory of the Israelites, and they also beheld the suffering of their brethren that had remained behind in Egypt, for God poured out His punishment over the whole people, whether in Egypt or in the Red Sea.<sup>55</sup> As for the corpses by the



shores of the sea, they did not remain unburied, the earth swallowed them, by way of reward for Pharaoh's having acknowledged the justice of the chastisement that had been inflicted upon king and people. Before their corpses had been disposed of in this way, they had been a quarrel between the earth and the sea. The sea said to the earth, "Take thy children unto thyself," and the earth retorted, "Keep those whom thou hast slain." The sea hesitated to do as the earth bade, for fear that God would demand them back on the day of judgment; and the earth hesitated, because it remembered with terror the curse that had been pronounced upon it for having sucked up Abel's blood. Only after God swore an oath, not to punish it for receiving the corpses of the Egyptians, would the earth swallow them.<sup>56</sup>

43. ShR 22; Mekilta Beshallah 6, 32b, and Mekilta RS 53–54; Tehillim 18, 147. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 15.3, states that six hundred chariots of war, fifty thousand horsemen, and two hundred thousand footmen of the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, whereas Jub. 48.14 gives a million and one thousand as the number of those that were drowned. *Shalshelet* 96 is based on Josephus and not on rabbinic sources which are by far more liberal with numbers, maintaining that the Egyptian army consisted of nine thousand myriads. Comp. Mekilta Beshallah 1, 27a–27b and *Pa'aneah* Exod. 14.7.

44. Mekilta RS 51–52, taken verbatim from Aggadat Shir 1, 16–17; *Kaufmann-Gedenkhuch* p. 3 (Hebrew); comp. also Tan. Shofetim 14; Midrash Shir 11b; Mekilta Beshallah 6, 33a, and Shirah 4, 37b; Mekilta RS 54; Shir 1.9; Tehillim 18, 142–144; ARN 27, 183. The legend about the "heavenly mare", mentioned in the sources quoted above, is very likely connected with the idea that the cherub has the form of a mare. Comp. footnote 94 on p. 77 and note 47.

45. Tehillim 18, 14b; PR 21, 104a; Wa-Yosha' 45; BaR 8.3; ARN 27.83. Accompanied by nine thousand myriads of angels (on this number see note 43), God appeared at the Red Sea. The angels said unto Him: "Permit us to execute Thy will upon the Egyptians..." God, however, refused their request, saying: "I shall not be content until I Myself have indicted punishment upon the enemies of Israel." See Mekilta RS 52–53, and in abridged form *Pa'aneah*, Exod. 14.7. This legend in its original form

wished to narrate the execution of the last of the plagues, not the drowning of the Egyptians; see footnote 213 on p. 537, and the following notes.

46. Mekilta Beshallah 2, 28b; Mekilta RS 46–47; Yeru-shalmi Sotah 7, 22b; Tehillim 18, 143; Midrash Shir 11b–12a. Most of the sources add that Moses showed the Israelites the multitudes of the angels that came to their assistance; comp. preceding note. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 16.3, also speaks of the thunder and lightning at the destruction of the Egyptians. Ps. 18.13, *seq.*, was taken by Josephus, as by the Rabbis (comp. Tehillim, *ad loc.*) to refer to the miracles which were performed at the Red Sea.

47. Aggadat Shir 1, 17; this is the source of Mekilta RS 52. Wa-Yosha' 52 proves quite clearly that this legend is a modification of the one concerning the "heavenly mare" = cherub; see note 44.

48. Mekilta Beshallah 5, 32a; Mekilta RS 52; somewhat differently Aggadat Shir 1.7. The idea concerning the provenance of the treasures from the river Pishon is found only in Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 14.9, and Num. 38.8. Compare with p. 540, and text on p. 549.

49. Mekilta Beshallah 5, 32a; Mekilta RS 52; Tehillim 18, 143.

50. Mekilta Beshallah 6, 33a; Mekilta RS 54. In these sources it is presupposed that the Egyptians suffered great agony before they perished, see note 55. Concerning the angels see note 45.

51. Wa-Yosha' 52, which is a combination of Mekilta Shirah 5, 38b and 7, 41, Mekilta RS 62 and 65. The two parties among the Egyptians spoken of by Philo, *Moses*, 30, correspond to the first and third, respectively, of the Midrash. The Haggadah found in Exod. 18.11 is support for the view that the drowning of the Egyptians was the punishment for the drowning of the Hebrew male children; see Tosefta Sotah 6.13; Mekilta Shirah 6, 40a; Jub. 48.14.

52. Mekilta Beshallah 6, 33a, and Shirah 2, 36a–36b; Mekilta RS 54, 58. The Great Sea emptied itself into the Red Sea, and the enormous quantities of water tossed the Egyptians about hither and thither; Mekilta Shirah 5, 38b, and Mekilta RS 62. Furthermore, the abyss ascended and united itself with the waters above in the heaven, so that the Egyptians met their death while engulfed in gloomy darkness: Mekilta, *loc cit.*; Tehillim 18, 137. The interpretation of מים נערמו (Exod. 15.8) as "and the water acted with cunning", given in Mekilta, *loc cit.*, Onkelos, and Ephraem (I, 216D), *ad loc.* is the midrashic support for the legend concerning the different punishments which the water inflicted on the Egyptians, according to the grades of wickedness.

53. Abkir in Yalkut I, 235; Wa-Yosha' 52; Yerahmeel. 159 (the Hebrew text is given by Schechter, *Zadokite Fragments*, LIX–LX); *Hakam ha-Razim* in Yalkut Reubeni Exod. 15.7. In the last-named source it is the "prince of the



Face" (the angel of His presence, Is. 63.9) who executes punishment upon the magicians. This agrees with Yerahmeel who makes Metatron the executioner. The identity of these two angels is presupposed in numerous places in the mystic literature; see Index, s.v. "Metatron". Comp. also *Hadar* and *Imre No'am* on Exod. 15.10. Concerning the seizure of the hair-locks, see footnote 276 on p. 304

54. Wa-Yosha' 52-53 *Dibre ha-Yamim* 11; Midrash Aggada, Exod. 14b; Sekel. 186, *Hadar*, Exod. 14.28; PRE 43; BHM V, 51: Tosefta of Targum Jonah 6.6: Yerahmeel, 128. Compare with p. 412, and text on p. 829, where Pharaoh is said to keep guard at the portals of hell. In the old sources different opinions are expressed as to the fate of Pharaoh: he was drowned simultaneously with his army; he was the last Egyptian to be dreamed after having witnessed the struggle of his people and their destruction: he was the only Egyptian who escaped death, in order that he might see the power and might of God. Mekilta Beshallah 6, 33a; Mekilta RS 54; Midrash Tehillim 106, 455. Pharaoh, the inhabitants of the sinful cities, the builders of the tower of Babel. Sennacherib, and Nebuchadnezzar committed the following eight sins which brought destruction upon them: Neglect of justice, idolatry, incest, bloodshed, blasphemy, arrogance, slander, and obscenity; ER 15.74 and 31.158. Comp. Index, s.v. "Noachian Laws". Compare footnote 60 on p. 1048.

55. Mekilta Beshallah 5, 32a-32b and 6, 33a-33b; Mekilta RS 53-54; Tehillim 22, 180 (on the text see Yalkut I, 240); Philo, *Moses*, 2 (3).34; Wisdom 10.20; Josephus *Antiqui.*, II 16.6. Somewhat differently in ER 1, 12, where it is stated that the garments of the Egyptians did not sink with the bodies, but were washed ashore and appropriated by the Israelites. This source maintains that "as a rule", God punishes the wicked while they are naked; Compare with p. 1135.

56. Mekilta Shirah 9, 42a; Mekilta RS 67-68; PRE 42; Wa-Yosha' 53; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 15.12; Tehillim 22, 188-189; Ekah 1, 73-74. Compare footnote 413 on p. 413; text on p. 76; text on p. 868.

## THE SONG AT THE SEA

**M**ighty is faith, for the spirit of God came upon the Israelites as a reward for their trust in God, and in His servant Moses; and it was in this exaltation that they sang to the Lord a song<sup>57</sup> that moved Him to grant forgiveness for all their sins.<sup>58</sup> This song was the second of

the nine songs that in the course of history Israel sang to their God. They assembled to sing the first in Egypt, on the night when they were freed from captivity; their second was the song of triumph by the Red Sea; their third, when the well sprang up in the wilderness; Moses sang the fourth before his death; the fifth was Joshua's song after his victory over the five Amorite kings; Deborah and Barak sang the sixth when they conquered Sisera; the seventh was David's psalm of thanksgiving to God for his deliverance out of the hand of all his enemies; the eighth was Solomon's song at the dedication of the Temple; the ninth Jehoshaphat sang as, trusting in God, he went to battle against the Moabites and the Ammonites. The tenth and last song, however, will be that grand and mighty song, when Israel will raise their voice in triumph at their future deliverance, for that will be the final release of Israel for all time.<sup>59</sup>

When Israel prepared to sound their praises to God for delivering them from destruction in the Red Sea, God, to show His recognition of Israel's fulfilment of the token of the Abrahamic covenant, bade the angels who came to intone their song, wait: "Let My children sing first," He said. This incident with the angels is like the story of that king who, upon returning from a victorious campaign, was told that his son and his servant were waiting with wreaths in their hands, and were asking who should first crown "O ye fools, to question if my servant should walk before my son! No, let my son come first!"

This was the second time that the angels were obliged to retire before Israel. When Israel stood by the Red Sea, before them the rolling waters, and behind them the hosts of Egypt, then, too, the angels appeared, to sing their daily song of praise to the Lord, but God called to them, "Forbear! My children are in distress, and you would sing!"



But even after the men had completed their song, it was not yet given to the angels to raise their voices, for after the men followed the women of Israel, and only then came the turn of the angels. Then they began to murmur, and said, "Is it not enough that the men have preceded us? Shall the women come before us also?" But God replied, "As surely as ye live, so it is."<sup>60</sup>

At first Israel requested their leader Moses to begin the song, but he declined, saying, "No, ye shall begin it, for it is a greater mark of honor to be praised by the multitude than by a single one." At once the people sang: "We will glorify the Eternal, for He has shown us signs and tokens. When the Egyptians passed the decree against us, and said, 'Every son that is born ye shall cast into the river,' our mothers went into the field, and Thou didst bid a sleep to fall upon them, and they bore us without any pain; and the angels descended from Heaven, washed and anointed us, and robed us in many-colored silken garments, and placed in our hands two lumps, one of butter and, of honey. When our mothers awoke and saw us washed, anointed, and clothed in silk, then they praised Thee, and said, 'Praised be God who has not turned His grace and His lasting love from the seed of our father Abraham; and now behold! they are in Thy hand, do with them as Thou wilt.' And they departed. When the Egyptians saw us, they approached to kill us, but Thou in Thy great mercy didst bid the earth swallow us and set us in another place, where we were not seen by the Egyptians, and lo! in this way didst Thou save us from their hand. When we grew up, we wandered in troops to Egypt, where each recognized his parents and his family. All this hast Thou done for us, therefore will we sing of Thee."

Thereupon Moses said: "Ye have given thanks to the Holy One, blessed be He, and now I will praise His name, for to me also has He shown signs and tokens. The Lord is my

strength and my song, and He is become my salvation; He is my God, and I will prepare Him an habitation; my father's God, and I will exalt Him."<sup>61</sup>

The song by the Red Sea was as much the song of Moses as of all Israel, for the great leader counted as not less than all the other Israelites together, and, besides,<sup>62</sup> he had composed a large portion of the song. In virtue of the spirit of God that possessed them while they sang, Moses and the people mutually supplemented each other, so that, as soon as Moses spoke half the verse, the people repeated it, and linked the second complementary part to it. So Moses began with the half verse, "I will sing unto the Lord, for He hath triumphed gloriously," whereupon the people answered, "The horse and his rider hath He thrown into the sea." And in this wise developed the whole song.<sup>63</sup>

But not alone the adults took part in this song, even the sucklings dropped their mothers' breasts to join in singing; yea, even the embryos in the womb joined the melody, and the angels' voices swelled the song.<sup>64</sup> God so distinguished Israel during the passage through the Red Sea, that even the children beheld His glory, yea, even the woman slave saw more of the presence of God by the Red Sea than the Prophet Ezekiel was ever permitted to behold.<sup>65</sup>

They closed the song with the words: "Let us set the crown of glory upon the head of our Deliverer, who suffers all things to perish, but does not Himself decay, who changes all things, but is Himself unchanged. His is the diadem of sovereignty, for He is the King of kings in this world, and His is the Sovereignty of the world to come; it is His and will be His in all eternity."<sup>66</sup> Thereupon Moses spake to Israel, "Ye have seen all the signs, all miracles and works of glory that the Holy One, blessed be He, hath wrought for you, but even more will he do for you in the world to come; for not like unto this world is



the world of the hereafter; for in this world war and suffering, evil inclination, Satan, and the Angel of Death hold sway; but in the future world, there will be neither suffering nor enmity, neither Satan nor the Angel of Death, neither groans nor oppression, nor evil inclination.”<sup>67</sup>

As Moses and the race that wandered from Egypt with him sang a song to the Lord by the Red Sea, so shall they sing again in the world to come. In the world to come, all generations will pass before the Lord and will ask Him who should first intone the song of praise, whereupon He will reply: “In the past it was the generation of Moses that offered up to me a song of praise. Let them do it now once more, and as Moses conducted the song by the Red Sea, so shall he do in the world of the hereafter.”<sup>68</sup>

In other respects, too, it shall be in the world to come as it was at the time of the song by the sea. For when Israel intoned the song of praise, God put on a festive robe, on which were embroidered all the promises for a happy future to Israel. Among them were written: “Then shall thy light break forth as the morning”; “Then said they among the heathen. ‘The Lord hath done great things for them,’ ” and many similar promises. But when Israel sinned, God rent the festive robe, and He will not restore it, or put it on, until the coming of the future world.<sup>69</sup>

After the men had completed the song, the women under the guidance of Miriam sang the same song to the accompaniment of music and dancing. The Israelites had had perfect faith, that God would perform for them miracles and deeds of glory, hence they had provided themselves with timbrels and with flutes, that they might have them at hand to glorify the anticipated miracles.<sup>70</sup> Then Miriam said to the women, “Let us sing unto the Lord, for strength and sublimity are His; He lords it over the lordly, and He resents presumption. He hurled Pharaoh’s horses and chariots into the sea, and

drowned them, because wicked Pharaoh in his presumption pursued God’s people, Israel.”<sup>71</sup>

---

57. Mekilta Beshallah 6, 33b; Mekilta RS 55; Tan. Beshallah 4. The advance of Pharaoh with his mighty army caused a change of heart among the Israelites. They repented of their sins, and, trusting in God, they invoked His help which did not fail them in their hour of distress; PRE 42 and ShR 25.5; comp. however, the conflicting view in pp. 565–566, and the following note.

58. Tehillim 18, 137; Shemuel 29, 134–135; Shir 4.3. Comp. Also ‘Arakin 11a and Yerushalmi Pesahim 4, 30c with reference to the atoning power of the song of the Levites in the Temple. The Midrashim quoted above speak at great length of the sin which Israel had committed; comp. the preceding note. An unknown Midrash, quoted by Shu’aib, Beshallah, 30a–30b, maintains that the reason why the Israelites sang the song (Exod. 15) was to be found in the Halakah, Berakot 54b, according to which a man returning from a sea-voyage, in order to thank God for having escaped death, must recite the benediction (ברכת הגומל): “Blessed art Thou, O Lord our God, King of the universe, who bestowest benefits upon the undeserving (literally, *the guilty*), and hast also bestowed all good upon me.”

59. Mekilta Shirah 1, 34a–34b and Mekilta RS 56–57. The “ten songs” are often referred to in the haggadic literature; but opinions differ as to the songs which are to be included in this group; see Targum Song of Songs 1.1; Aggadat Shir 1.10 and 2.29 on the Song of Abraham; Makiri Is. 5.37 and Ps. 96, 111; *Responsen der Geonim* (ed. Harkavy, No. 66) and the interesting essay on these songs by Epstein, *Mi-Mizrah u-mi-Ma’arab* I. 85–89. Concerning the song of the night of redemption, see text on pp. 538, 541. According to the Haggadah, Solomon composed Psalm 30, and the superscription of that Psalm is explained to mean: “A Song of the dedication of the house of David”, i.e., the Temple.

60. Tan. B. II, 60–61; Tehillim 106, 454; ShR 23.7; Ekah (פתיחתא) 24. According to another legend, God silenced the song of the angels with the words: “The work of My hands is drowning in the sea, and ye wish to chant songs!” See Megillah 10b; Sanhedrin 39b (“God does not rejoice at the punishment of the sinners”); PK 29, 189<sup>a</sup>; Yalkut II, 940 (from an unknown source; the word מדרש is not found in the editio princeps, and its insertion in later editions is unjustifiable, as this Haggadah does not occur in Midrash Mishle which is designated by Yalkut as מדרש in the part of that work belonging to Prov.; it is perhaps borrowed from Yelammedenu); R. Solomon ben ha-Yatom, 120, based on an unknown Midrash (comp. Chajes,



XXX); Zohar I, 57b, 61b, and II, 170b; see also Mekilta Shirah 5, 34b. PK, *loc. cit.*, is the source for the statement made by many codifiers (see, e.g., *Bet Yosef, Olah Hayyim* 490) that the entire Hallel is recited only on the first day of Passover because on the seventh day the Egyptians were drowned. Concerning the song of the angels which follows that of Israel, see Midrash Tanna'im, 71; Yerushalmi Sukkah 5, 55b; text on p. 18, and p. 541. An unknown Midrash quoted by *Hadar*, Exod. 15.8, speaks of the song chanted by the water at the drowning of the Egyptians. This statement is very likely based upon a misunderstanding of Onkelos, *ad loc.*; see Mekilta Shirah 6, 40a. See Index, s.v. "Angels, Song of"; "Water, the Song of". The very angels who counselled God against the creation of man (see text on p. 51) descended from heaven to listen to the song chanted by Israel, and then returned to their place to sing their song of praise to God; Tosefta Sotah 6.5. Compare footnote 32 on p. 1080.

61. Wa-Yosha' 40–41, which, in the main, follows older sources (comp. references cited in note 25 on vol. II, pp. 257–258, and add PK, 47, 189a–189b; BHM VI, 38; *Haggadat Teman* 35, which reads: The clean animals suckled the male children of the Hebrews); PRE 42; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 15.2; ShR 23.18.

62. Mekilta Shirah 1, 34a; Mekilta RS 56; Shir 1.15 and 4.1; Yalkut I, 241, giving Mekilta as source, but this passage is not found in our texts of this Midrash; ShR 23.9. Comp. the following note.

63. Mekilta Shirah 1, 35a, Mekilta RS 57 (better text); Sotah, Mishnah 5.4; Tosefta 6.3; Yerushalmi 5,20c; Babli 30b. The manner of reciting the Hallel is, according to the sources quoted above, the same as the song at the Red Sea; comp. Elbogen *Studien z. Gesch. d. jüd. Gottesdienstes* 57. According to Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 527, on Hosea 11, and ShR 22.8, Moses composed the song and the people sang it; compare with pp. 749–750. ShR differs from the old source (comp. note 59) also in this respect that it declares the song at the Red Sea to have been the first ever sung in God's honor.

64. Mekilta Shirah 1, 35a; Sotah, Tosefta 6.4; Yerushalmi 6, 29c; Babli 30b; Tehillim 8, 77; Zohar II, 60a. Compare with p. 607.

65. Mekilta Shirah 6, 37a; Shir 2.14, 3.7, and 4.3; Zohar II, 60a. Compare with p. 611.

66. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 15.18. According to this authority verse 18 concludes the song, whereas others consider verse 19 as the end. See Mekilta RS 70–71, where the nineteen verses of the song are said to correspond to the nineteen benedictions of the 'Amidah (according to Babylonian ritual); Lekah Exod., *loc. cit.*, and 20.11.

67. Wa-Yosha' 55.

68. Kohelet 1.9. Compare with p. 500.

69. Abkir in Yalkut I, 241.

70. Mekilta Shirah 10, 44a; Mekilta RS 71; PRE 42. According to Philo, *Moses*, 2 (3).34, the song was chanted by mixed choirs composed of men and women, whereas the Rabbis strongly disapprove of mixed choirs; see e. g., Sotah 48a. Comp. also Philo, *De Vita Contemplativa*, 11, concerning the mixed choirs among the Essenes.

71. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 15.21.

## THE AWFUL DESERT

Just as Israel had displayed sullenness and lack of faith upon approaching the sea so did they upon leaving it. Hardly had they seen that the Egyptians met death in the waters of the sea, when they spoke to Moses, and said: "God has led us from Egypt only to grant us five tokens: To give us the wealth of Egypt, to let us walk in clouds of glory, to cleave the sea for us, to take vengeance on the Egyptians, and to let us sing Him a song of praise. Now that all this has taken place, let us return to Egypt." Moses answered: "The Eternal said, 'The Egyptians whom ye have sea to-day, ye shall see then again no more forever.'" But the people were not yet content, and said, "Now the Egyptians are all dead, and therefore we can return to Egypt." Then Moses said, "You must now redeem your pledge, for God said, When thou hast brought forth the people out of Egypt, ye shall serve God upon this mountain.'" Still the people remained headstrong, and without giving heed to Moses, they set out on the road to Egypt, under the guidance of an idol that they had brought with them out of Egypt, and had even retained during their passage through the sea. Only through sheer force was Moses able to restrain them from their sinful transgression.<sup>72</sup> This was the second of the ten temptations with which Israel tempted God during their wandering through the desert.<sup>73</sup>

There was one other difficulty with the people that Moses had to overcome: The sea cast up



many jewels, pearls, and other treasures that had belonged to the Egyptians, drowned in its waves, and Israel found it hard to tear themselves away from the spot that brought them such riches. Moses, however, said, "Do you really believe that the sea will continue to yield you pearls and jewels?"<sup>74</sup>

From the sea they passed to the desert Shur, a horrible and dreadful wilderness, full of snakes, lizards, and scorpions, extending over hundreds of miles. So deadly is the nature of the snakes that dwell in this desert, that if one of them merely glides over the shadow of a flying bird, the bird falls into pieces.<sup>75</sup> It was in this desert that the following happened to King Shapor: A cohort that he sent through this desert was swallowed by a snake, and the same fate overtook a second and a third cohort. Upon the advice of his sages, he then filled the hides of animals with hot coals wrapped in straw, and had these cast before the snake until it expired.<sup>76</sup>

It was then a proof of Israel's great faith in their God, that they obeyed Moses, and without murmur or delay followed him into this frightful wilderness.<sup>77</sup> Therefore did God reward them for their trust in Him, for not only were they not harmed by the snakes and scorpions during their many years' stay in the desert, but they were even relieved of the fear of the reptiles, for as soon as the snakes saw the Israelites, they meekly lay down upon the sand.<sup>78</sup> For three days they marched through the desert, uncomplaining, but when their supply of water gave out, the people murmured against Moses, saying, "What shall we drink?" While crossing through the Red Sea they had provided themselves with water, for, miraculously, the sea flowed sweet for them; and now when the supply was becoming exhausted, they began to give expression to their dissatisfaction. On this occasion they again betrayed their faintheartedness, for instead of seeking advice from their leader Moses, they began

to murmur against him and against God, even though at present they had not yet suffered from lack of water. So poorly did they stand the test to which God had put them, for in fact the very ground upon which they trod had running water beneath it, but they were not aware of this. God had desired to see how they would act under these conditions.<sup>79</sup>

The people were all the more exasperated because their joy, when they sighted the springs and hastened to draw from them, turned to keenest disappointment when they tasted of the water and found it bitter. These deluded hopes cast them down spiritually as well as physically, and grieved them, not so much for their own sakes as for those of their young children, to whose pleas for water they could not listen without tears. Some of the thoughtless and fickle of faith among them uttered the accusation that even the former kindness had been granted them not so much as a benefit, but rather with a view to the present and much greater privation. These said that death by the hand of the enemy is to be thrice preferred to perishing by thirst; for by the wise man, speedy and painless departure from life is in no way to be distinguished from immortality; the only real death, however, is slow and painful dying, for the dread lies not in being dead, but in dying.

While they indulged in these lamentations, Moses prayed to God to forgive the faint of heart their unseemly words, and, furthermore, to supply the general want.<sup>80</sup> Mindful of the distress of the people, Moses did not pray long, but uttered his request in a few words; and quickly, as he had prayed, was his prayer answered. God bade him take a piece of a laurel tree, write upon it the great and glorious name of God, and throw it into the water, whereupon the water would become drinkable and sweet.<sup>81</sup>

The ways of the Holy One, blessed be He, differ from the ways of man: Man turns bitter to



sweet by the agency of some sweet stud, but God transformed the bitter water through the bitter laurel tree. When Israel beheld this miracle, they asked forgiveness of their heavenly Father, and said: "O Lord of the world! We sinned against Thee when we murmured about the water."<sup>82</sup> Not through this miracle alone, however, has Marah become a significant spot for Israel, but, especially, because there God gave to Israel important precepts, like the Sabbath rest, marriage and civil laws, and said to the people: "If you will observe these statutes, you will receive many more, the Ten Commandments, the Halakot, and the Haggadot; the Torah, however, will bring you happiness and life. If you will diligently endeavor to walk through life uprightly, so that you will be virtuous in your dealings with men, I will value it as if you had fulfilled all commandments, and will put upon you none of those diseases that I brought upon Egypt. If, however, you will not be mindful of My laws, and will be visited by diseases, then will I be your physician and will make you well, for as soon as you will observe the laws, shall the diseases vanish."<sup>83</sup>

The cause for the want of water at Marah had been that for three days the people had neglected the study of the Torah, and it was for this reason that the prophets and elders of Israel instituted the custom of reading from the Torah on Saturday, Monday, and Thursday, at the public service, so that three days might never again pass without a reading from the Torah.<sup>84</sup>

From Marah they moved on to Elim. From a distance palm trees made the place look inviting enough, but when the people came close, they were again disappointed; there were not more than three score and ten palm trees, and these were of stunted growth owing to a lack of water, for in spite of the presence of twelve wells of water, the soil was so barren and sandy that the wells were not sufficient to water it.<sup>85</sup> Here

again the marvellous intercession of God in favor of the fate of Israel is shown, for the scant supply of water at Elim, which had hardly sufficed for seventy palm trees, satisfied sixty myriads of the wandering people that stayed there for several days.<sup>86</sup>

The men of understanding could at this place see a clear allusion to the fortune of the people; for there are twelve tribes of the people, each of which, if it prove God-fearing, will be a well of water, inasmuch as its piety will constantly and continually bring forth beautiful deeds; the leaders of the people, however, are seventy, and they recall the noble palm tree, for in outward appearance as well as in its fruits, it is the most beautiful of trees, whose seat of life does not lie buried deep in the roots, as with other plants, but soars high, set like the heart in the midst of its branches, by which it is surrounded as a queen under the protection of her bodyguard. The soul of him who has tasted piety possesses a similar spirit; it has learned to look up and ascend, and itself ever busy with spiritual things and the investigation of Divine beauty, disdains earthly things, and considers them only as childish play, whereas that aspiration alone seems serious.<sup>87</sup>

It was at Elim, where, at the creation of the world, God had made the twelve wells of water, and the seventy palm trees, to correspond to the twelve tribes and the seventy elders of Israel, that Israel first took up the study of the law, for there they studied the laws given them at Marah.<sup>88</sup>

---

72. ShR 24.2; Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 44a; Mekilta RS 71–72. It is stated in the Haggadah that the Israelites brought along with them from Egypt an idol which they worshipped (or kept?) for a long time; see Mekilta Beshallah 6, 29b; PK 11, 99a; Sanhedrin 103b, where this idol is declared to be identical with that made by Micah; Pesahim 117a (on עֹמֶר בְּבָכִי see *Responsen der Geonim*, No. 119,



pp. 86–88, and it is to be corrected as suggested by Lebrecht, *Kritische Lese*, 23–35); Yerushalmi Sukkah 4, 54c; ARN 34; Sifre N., 84; Tan. B. IV, 79, and V, 25; Shir 1.4; ShR 41.1; Tehillim 101, 427. Compare footnote 127 on p. 880; Comp. vol. VI, P 375 and Index, s.v. “Baalbek”.

73. Abet 5.4. On the ten temptations see note 708.

74. Tan. B. II, 63; this very likely is the source of Sekel 205; comp. Note 55.

75. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 44b where the text is to be corrected in accordance with Mekilta RS 72; ShR 24.4.

76. Tan. B. II, 63–64. This legend is related to the one forming the basis for the Apocryphal work “Daniel and the Dragon”; see footnote 112 on p. 1107.

77. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 44b; Tan. B. II, 63; Shir 1.4. Compare with p. 542.

78. ShR 24.4; Wa-Yosha' 46, which reads: The snakes stretched themselves out in order to allow Israel to pass over them as over a bridge. See reference given in footnote 241 on p. 542.

79. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 45a; Mekilta RS 72. Concerning the sweet waters of the Red Sea see text on p. 556.

80. Philo, Moses, 1.33. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 1.2, likewise attempts to excuse the behavior of the people.

81. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 45b; Mekilta RS 72–73; Targum Yerushalmi 16.22. Comp. the following note.

82. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 45b, and Mekilta RS 72–73; in abridged form, Tan. B. II, 64–65, 124, and Tan. Beshallah 23–24. On the conception that God employs the same means in inflicting pain and in curing it, see also Agadat Bereshit 66, 132. The Mekiltas and the sources depending on them contain different opinions as to the kind of tree which made the waters of Marah sweet, and it seems as if the Tannaim attempted to explain away the miracle, maintaining that the change in the taste of the waters brought about by the tree was due to natural causes. A rationalistic view similar to this is expressed by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 1.2, whereas Philo, *Moses*, 1.33, is not quite sure whether the tree caused the cure in a natural way, or whether “it was then created for that special purpose”. The Mekiltas offer also an allegorical explanation of the tree. According to this interpretation, the word “tree” represents the Torah which is “the tree of life”. This allegory presupposes the legend that this tree was identical with the tree of life, or, to be more accurate, a branch of that tree. It is true that our texts of the Mekilta have no trace of that legend, but Makiri, Prov. 3, 4b, quotes it from the Mekilta. Ps.-Philo 13A likewise writes: And He—God—showed him the tree of life, whereof he cut a piece, which he took and put into Marah, and the water of Marah became sweet. Closely connected with this legend is the one found in *Zohar Hadash* Beshallah, according to which Moses threw his rod, called here also עץ, tree or wood. This rod is said in other sources to have been taken from the tree of life; see

ARN 157, ed. Schechter. Comp. also *Kaufmann-Gedenkbuch* 6 (Hebrew). An entirely different explanation of the events of Marah is found in Zohar III, 124b, where it is stated that the bitter waters of Marah served the purpose to establish which of the women were chaste and which were not (comp. Num. 5.18, *seq.*), and therefore Moses wrote God's Name on the tree (this is taken from Targum Yerushalmi, Exod. 15.25) in accordance with the law concerning a woman suspected of adultery (see Sotah 2.3). Ps.-Philo, *loc. cit.*, and 21A asserts that the waters of Marah “followed them in the desert for forty years, going up with them into the hills and coming down with them to the plains.” In another passage, 12C, ps.-Philo, in agreement with rabbinic and other sources, makes the same statement concerning “the well” (of Miriam), and the suggestion may be hazarded that the first passage contains an interpolation by a copyist who confused “the well” which is very frequently spoken of in Hebrew sources as בארה של מרים (the well of Miriam; compare with pp. 573, 575), with בארה של מרה (the well of Marah). Comp. note 126.

83. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 46a; Mekilta RS 73–74; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 15.25–26; Sanhedrin 56b; Seder 'Olam 5. Comp. also DR 2.18 and Tan. B. II, 65.

84. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 11 45a; Mekilta RS 72; Baba Kamma 82a; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 15.22. As to the reading from the Torah, see text on p. 1122. Comp. also the allegory concerning the tree quoted in note 82.

85. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 1.3; Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 46b where מקולקל or מקולל is to be read instead of מחרולל, in accordance with Mekilta RS 74 and MHG II, 170.

86. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 46b; Mekilta RS 74; MHG II, 170–171. Josephus maintains that the quails episode took place at Elim (Exod. 19.12, *seq.*), where the people murmured on account of the dearth of water. His attempt to “improve” upon the legend, known to us from rabbinic sources, concerning the scant supply of water at Elim is rather a failure, as quails are a poor substitute for water. Philo, *Moses*, 1.34, against Josephus and the Midrashim, maintains that Elim was a place distinguished for its abundance of water and wealth of vegetation.

87. Philo, *Moses*, 1.34; comp. the following note, where references to rabbinic and patristic sources containing the same allegory are cited. Concerning the symbolic significance of the palm-tree, see BR 40.6 and the parallel passages given by Theodor.

88. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 46; Mekilta RS 74; MHG II, 171; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 15.26 and Num. 33.9; Tertullian, *C. Marc.*, 4.24. The tragedian Ezekiel, 446 describes the appearance of a wonderful bird at Elim. The text is quite obscure, and it seems that the poet wanted to describe how it came about that the Israelites discovered



the twelve wells at Elim. They followed the wonderful bird (phenix?), which, accompanied by many other birds—"for birds of every kind hovered in fear behind this stately form"—flew over the wells. In legends birds are frequently spoken of as guides to water.

## THE HEAVENLY FOOD

**T**he bread which Israel had taken along out of Egypt sufficed for thirty-one days, and when they had consumed it, the whole congregation of the children of Israel murmured against their leader Moses. It was not only immediate want that oppressed them, but despair of a food supply for the future; for when they saw the vast, extensive, utterly barren wilderness before them, their courage gave way, and they said: "We migrated, expecting freedom, and now we are not even free from the cares of subsistence; we are not, as our leader promised, the happiest, but in truth the most unfortunate of men. After our leader's words had keyed us to the highest pitch of expectation, and had filled our ears with vain hopes, he tortures us with famine and does not provide even the necessary food. With the name of a new settlement he has deceived this great multitude; after he had succeeded in leading us from a well-known to an uninhabited land, he now plans to send us to the underworld, the lost road of life.<sup>89</sup> 'Would to God we had died by the hand of the Lord during the three days of darkness in the land of Egypt, when we sat by the flesh-pots, and when we did eat bread to the full.' " In their exasperation they spoke untruths, for in reality they had suffered from want of food in Egypt, too, as the Egyptians had not given them enough to eat.<sup>90</sup>

In spite of the railings against him, Moses was not so much indignant about their words as about the fickleness of the people. After those many quite extraordinary experiences they had

no right to expect merely the natural and the probable, but should cheerfully have trusted him; for, truly, in the sight of all, they had been shown the most tangible proofs of his reliability. When, on the other hand, Moses considered their distress, he forgave them; for he told himself that a multitude is by nature fickle, and allows itself to be easily influenced by impressions of the moment, which cast the past into oblivion, and engender despair for the future.<sup>91</sup>

God also forgave the unworthy conduct of Israel, and instead of being angry with them because they murmured against Him, when it should have been their duty to pray to Him, He was ready to grant them aid, saying to Moses, "They act according to their lights, and I will act according to Mine; not later than to-morrow morning manna will descend from heaven."

As a reward for Abraham's readiness, in answer to the summons to sacrifice Isaac, when he said, "Here am I," God promised manna to the descendants of Abraham with the same words, "Here am I." In the same way, during their wanderings through the wilderness, God repaid the descendants of Abraham for what their ancestor had done by the angels who visited him. He himself had fetched bread for them, and likewise God Himself caused bread to rain from heaven; he himself ran before them on their way, and likewise God moved before Israel; he had water fetched for them, and likewise God, through Moses, caused water to flow from the rock; he bade them seek shade under the tree, and likewise God had a cloud spread over Israel.<sup>92</sup> Then God spoke to Moses: "I will immediately reveal Myself without delay; mindful of the services of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, 'I will rain bread from My treasure in heaven for you; and the people shall go out and gather a certain rate every day.' "

There were good reasons for not exceeding a day's ration in the daily downpour of manna.



First, that they might be spared the need of carrying it on their wanderings; secondly, that they might daily receive it hot; and, lastly, that they might day by day depend upon God's aid, and in this way exercise themselves in faith.<sup>93</sup>

While the people were still abed, God fulfilled their desire, and rained down manna for them. For this food had been created on the second day of creation,<sup>94</sup> and ground by the angels, it later descended for the wanderers in the wilderness.<sup>95</sup> The mills are stationed in the third heaven, where manna is constantly being ground for the future use of the pious;<sup>96</sup> for in the future world manna will be set before them.<sup>97</sup> Manna deserves its name, "bread of the angels," not only because it is prepared by them, but because those who partake of it become equal to the angels in strength, and, furthermore, like them, have no need of easing themselves, as manna is entirely dissolved in the body. Not until they sinned did they have to ease themselves like ordinary mortals.<sup>98</sup>

Manna also showed its heavenly origin in the miraculous flavor it possessed. There was no need of cooking or baking it, nor did it require any other preparation, and still it contained the flavor of every conceivable dish. One had only to desire a certain dish, and no sooner had he thought of it, than manna had the flavor of the dish desired. The same food had a different taste to every one who partook of it, according to his age; to the little children it tasted like milk, to the strong youths like bread, to the old men like honey, to the sick like barley steeped in oil and honey.<sup>99</sup>

As miraculous as the taste of manna was its descent from heaven. First came a north wind to sweep the door of the desert; then a rain to wash it quite clean; then dew descended upon it, which was congealed into a solid substance by the wind, that it might serve as a table for the heaven-descending manna, and this frozen dew glistened and sparkled like gold.<sup>100</sup> But, that no

insects or vermin might settle on the manna, the frozen dew formed not only a tablecloth, but also a cover for the manna, so that it lay enclosed there as in a casket, protected from soiling or pollution above and below.

---

89. Philo, *Moses*, 1.35; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 1.3–5. The Haggadah very frequently refers to the miracle in connection with the cakes they had taken along with them out of Egypt. See e.g., Seder 'Olam 5; Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 46b; Mekilta RS 74; Kiddushin 38a (the cakes tasted like manna); ShR 25.4; Mekilta Bo 14, 15a; Tan. Bo 9; Shir 1.8. Since ordinarily one partakes of two meals a day, the sources quoted above speak of the sixty-one meals which the cakes provided from the evening meal of the day of the exodus, i.e., the fifteenth day of Nisan, till the fifteenth day of Iyar. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 1.3, remarks that the provision they took along with them out of Egypt became exhausted after thirty days, whereas the rabbinic sources emphasize the fact that they took food of one meal that lasted them for a month.

90. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 4fa, the text of which is to be corrected in accordance with Mekilta RS 74. The Mekiltas quote an opinion according to which the Israelites spoke the truth when they declared that they enjoyed plenty of food in Egypt. As slaves of the royal household, they were supplied with food in plenty free of charge. For the status of Israel in Egypt see footnote 164 on p. 521. On the three days of darkness see text on p. 524, and text on p. 783.

91. Philo, *Moses* 1.36.

92. ShR 25.4–5. That the manna, the well, and the other heavenly gifts which Israel received in the wilderness were rewards for Abraham's kindness and piety is very frequently mentioned in the Haggadah; see Tosefta Sotah 4.2–6; Baba Mezia 86b; BR 48.10; Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא), 25a; WR 24.8; PR 14, 57a; BaR 14.2; Kohelet 11.1; Tan. B. I, 87; ER 12.68.

93. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 2, 47a–47b; Mekilta RS 75; Sifre N., 89; Abkir in Yalkut I, 258; Yoma 76a; Sifre Z., 198; comp. also Philo, *Leg. Allegor.*, 56.

94. PRE 3; Yerahmeel 1.3. The prevalent opinion, however, is that the manna was created in the twilight between the sixth day and the Sabbath; see Abet 5.6; Sifre D., 355; and the numerous references cited in footnote 99 on p. 78. Luria's suggestion, PRE, *ad loc.*, to read **בין השמשות** instead of **ביום השני** is not acceptable. It is obvious that the view of this Midrash is that the "bread of the angels" was created on the very same day on which the angels themselves were created (see text on p. 13).



Comp. also Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 16.15, and the following note.

95. Tan. B. II, 67; this is the source of Makiri Ps. 78. 26. The idea that the manna is the bread of the angels is based on Ps. 78.25; see Septuagint, *ad loc.*; Wisdom 16.20; Yoma 75a, where this interpretation of לחם אבירים is maintained by R. Akiba. The colleague of the latter, R. Ishmael, however, strongly objects to the view that angels partake of food (compare footnote 143 on p. 205), and hence the change of “bread of the angels” to “bread prepared by angels” or “bread prepared in the place inhabited by angels”, *i.e.*, in heaven. Comp. Targum Ps., *loc. cit.* See also text on p. 425; text on p. 617; Sibyl., proem 87, which reads: They will partake of the sweet bread coming from the starry heaven.

96. Hagigah 12b.

97. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 4, 50b; Mekilta RS 78. In view of the statement in PK 5, 49b, and BR 48.10, one is inclined to assume that in the Mekiltas the expression לעולם הבא is used inaccurately instead לבוא לעתיד לבוא, *i.e.*, the messianic times; see reference to Sibyl. at the end of note 95.

98. Tehillim 78, 345; Tan. B. II, 67. In these sources the two interpretations of אבירים (Ps. 78.25) “the mighty”, *i.e.*, angels, and אברים “remaining in the body”—are blended together; comp. Yoma 75b; note 95; text on pp. 694 and 713.

99. Tan. B. II, 14 and 61 (text is corrupt); ShR 25.3; Yoma 75a; Sifre N., 89; Sifre Z., 197–198; Tosefta Sotah 4.3; Wisdom 16.21; Ephraem I, 218. See also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 1.6; *Recognitiones*, 1, 35; ER 12.60; BHM VI.39; text on p. 584.

100. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 3, 48b–49a; Mekilta RS 76; Tehillim 76, 346. The grains of the manna looked like pearls, and the ground upon which it fell was like a golden table; Yoma 75a.

## THE GATHERING OF THE MANNA

With an easy mind every individual might perform his morning prayer in his house and recite the Shema', then betake himself to the entrance of his tent, and gather manna for himself and all his family.<sup>101</sup> The gathering of manna caused little trouble, and those among the people who were too lazy to perform even the slightest work, went out while manna fell, so that it fell straight into their hands.<sup>102</sup> The

manna lasted until the fourth hour of the day, when it melted; but even the melted manna was not wasted, for out of it formed the rivers, from which the pious will drink in the hereafter. The heathen even then attempted to drink out of these streams, but the manna that tasted so deliciously to the Jews had a quite bitter taste in the mouth of the heathen. Only indirectly could they partake of the enjoyment of manna: They used to catch the animals that drank of the melted manna, and even in this form it was so delicious that the heathen cried, “Happy is the people that is in such a case.”<sup>103</sup> For the descent of manna was not a secret to the heathen, as it settled at such enormous heights that the kings of the East and of the West could see how Israel received its miraculous food.<sup>104</sup>

The mass of the manna was in proportion to its height, for as much descended day by day, as might have satisfied the wants of sixty myriads of people, through two thousand years.<sup>105</sup> Such profusion of manna fell over the body of Joshua alone, as might have sufficed for the maintenance of the whole congregation.<sup>106</sup> Manna, indeed, had the peculiarity of falling to every individual in the same measure; and when, after gathering, they measured it, they found that there was an omer for every man.

Many lawsuits were amicably decided through the fall of manna. If a married couple came before Moses, each accusing the other of inconstancy, Moses would say to them, “To-morrow morning judgment will be given.” If, then, manna descended for the wife before the house of her husband, it was known that he was in the right; but if her share descended before the house of her own parents, she was in the right.<sup>107</sup>

The only days on which manna did not descend were the Sabbaths and the holy days, but then a double portion fell on the preceding day. These days had the further distinction that, while they lasted, the color of the manna



sparkled more than usual, and it tasted better than usual. The people, however, were faint-hearted, and on the very first Sabbath, they wanted to go out as usual to gather manna in the morning, although announcement had been made that God would send them no food on that day. Moses, however, restrained them. They attempted to do it again toward evening, and again Moses restrained them with the words, "To-day ye shall not find it in the fields." At these words they were greatly alarmed, for they feared that they might not receive it any more at all, but their leader quieted them with the words, "To-day ye shall not find any of it, but assuredly tomorrow; in this world ye shall not receive manna on the Sabbath, but assuredly in the future world."

The unbelieving among them did not hearken to the words of God, and went out on the Sabbath to find manna. Hereupon God said to Moses: "Announce these words to Israel: I have led you out of Egypt, have cleft the sea for you, have sent you manna, have caused the well of water to spring up for you, have sent the quails to come up for you, have battled for you against Amalek, and wrought other miracles for you, and still you do not obey My statutes and commandments. You have not even the excuse that I imposed full many commandments upon you, for all that I bade you do at Marah, was to observe the Sabbath, but you have violated it." "If," continued Moses, "you will observe the Sabbath, God will give you three festivals in the months of Nisan, Siwan, and Tishri; and as a reward for the observance of the Sabbath, you will receive six gifts from God: the land of Israel, the future world, the new world, the sovereignty of the dynasty of David, the institution of the priests and the Levites; and furthermore, as a reward for the observance of the Sabbath, you shall be freed from the three great afflictions: from the sufferings of the times of Gog and Magog, from the

travails of the Messianic time, and from the day of the great Judgment."

When Israel heard these exhortations and promises, they determined to observe the Sabbath, and did so.<sup>108</sup> They did not know, to be sure, what they had lost through their violation of the first Sabbath. Had Israel then observed the Sabbath, no nation would ever have been able to exercise any authority over them.<sup>109</sup>

This, moreover, was not the only sin that Israel committed during this time, for some among them also broke the other commandment in regard to manna, that is, not to store it away from day to day. These sinners were none other than the infamous pair, Dathan and Abiram, who did not hearken to the word of God, but saved the manna for the following day. But if they fancied they could conceal their sinful deed, they were mistaken, for great swarms of worms bred from the manna, and these moved in a long train from their tents to the other tents, so that everyone perceived what these two had done.<sup>110</sup>

To serve future generations as a tangible proof of the infinite power of God, the Lord bade Moses lay an earthen vessel full of manna before the Holy Ark, and this command was carried out by Aaron in the second year of the wanderings through the desert. When, many centuries later, the prophet Jeremiah exhorted his contemporaries to study the Torah, and they answered his exhortations, saying, "How shall we then maintain ourselves?" the prophet brought forth the vessel with manna, and spoke to them, saying: "O generation, see ye the word of the Lord; see what it was that served your fathers as food when they applied themselves to the study of the Torah. You, too, will God support in the same way, if you will but devote yourselves to the study of the Torah."<sup>111</sup>

When the imminent destruction of the Temple was announced to King Josiah, he con-



cealed the Holy Ark, and with it also the vessel with manna, as well as the jug filled with sacred oil, which was used by Moses for anointing the sacred implements, and other sacred objects. In the Messianic time the prophet Elijah will restore all these concealed objects.<sup>112</sup>

Israel received three gifts during their wanderings through the desert: the well, the clouds of glory, and the manna; the first for the merits of Miriam, the second for those of Aaron, and the third for those of Moses. When Miriam died, the well disappeared for a time, but it reappeared as a reward for the merits of Aaron and Moses; when Aaron died, the clouds of glory disappeared for a time, but reappeared owing to the merits of Moses. But when the last-named died, the well, the clouds of glory, and the manna disappeared forever.<sup>113</sup> Throughout forty years, however, manna served them not only as food, but also as provender for their cattle, for the dew that preceded the fall of manna during the night brought grain for their cattle.<sup>114</sup> Manna also replaced perfume for them, for it shed an excellent fragrance upon those who ate of it.<sup>115</sup>

In spite of all the excellent qualities of manna, they were not satisfied with it, and demanded that Moses and Aaron give them flesh to eat. These replied: "We might put up with you if you murmured only against us, but you murmur against the Eternal. Come forward, that you may hear the judgment of God." At once God appeared to Moses, and said to him: "It is revealed to Me what the congregation of Israel have said, and what they will say, but tell them this: You have demanded two things; you desired bread, and I gave it to you, because man cannot exist without it; but now, filled to satiety, you demand flesh; this also will I give you, so that you might not say if your wish were denied, 'God cannot grant it.' but at some future time you shall make atonement for it; I am a judge and shall assign punishment for this."

In the meantime, however, God granted their wish, and toward evening thick swarms of quails came up from the sea, and covered the whole camp, taking their flight quite low, not two ells above the ground, so that they might be easily caught. Contrary to the manna, which fell in the morning, the quails did not come before evenfall; with a radiant countenance God gave them the former, as their desire for bread was justified, but with a darkened mien, under cover of night, He sent the quails.<sup>116</sup> Now, because the one food came in the morning and the second in the evening, Moses instituted the custom among his people of taking two meals a day, one in the morning and one in the evening; and he set the meal with the use of meat for the evening.<sup>117</sup> At the same time he taught them the prayer in which they were to offer thanks after eating manna, which read: "Blessed be Thou, O God our Lord, King of the world, who, in Thy bounty, dost provide for all the world; who in Thy grace, goodwill, and mercy, dost grant food to every creature, for Thy grace is everlasting. Thanks to Thy bounty we have never lacked food, nor ever shall lack it, for Thy great name's sake. For Thou suppliest and providest for all; Thou art bountiful, and nourishest all Thy creatures which Thou hast made. Blessed be Thou, O God, that dost provide for all."<sup>118</sup>

101. Sifre N., 89; Sifre Z., 198; Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 3, 48b–49a; Mekilta RS 76. As to the meaning of אֹפֶסִים in Mekilta, *loc. cit.*, see Löw in *Hoffmann-Festschrift*, 119–120, who takes it to be a corrupt form of אֶסְקוּפִים "threshold". The Bodleian MS. of the Mekilta has אֶסְפִים, and a Genizah fragment of that Midrash in the same library reads אֶסְפִים.

102. Tan. B II 67; Sifre N., 89, and Sifre Z., 197. A somewhat different view is found in Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 47b; Mekilta RS 75. Yoma 75a reads: For the pious the manna fell at the door of their tents; ordinary men had to go to the field and gather it; the wicked found it only after a laborious search.



103. Midrash Tannaim, 191; Tan. B. II, 66–67; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 16.21 (read perhaps **בְּנֵי עַמְמִיָּא** instead of **יִשְׂרָאֵל**); Abkir in Yalkut I, 258, whose text of Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 2 (beginning) reads **אֵין רְאוּי אֱלֹא לָכֵם**, which is in agreement with the Bodleian MS. of that Midrash, and Mekilta RS 75. See also Lekah, Exod. 16.21, according to which Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.*, is to be emended to **וּמִוֹדֵין לֹאֱלֹהָא דְּבְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל**. Zohar II, 191b asserts that even the mixed multitude could not partake of the manna.

104. Yoma 76a; Tehillim 23, 201; Tan. B. II, 66–67; Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 3, 49a–49b; Mekilta RS 77.

105. Tan. B. II, 66; Yelammedenu No. 51 = BHM VI 87–88; Abkir in Yalkut I, 258; Tosefta Sota 4.3.

106. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 3, 49b; Mekilta RS 77; Yoma 76a. Compare with p. 589.

107. Yoma 75a, based very likely on Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 5, 51a, the correct text of which is found only in Mekilta RS 79. For the text of the Babli passage see Rabbinovicz, *ad loc.*, and R. Bahya on Exod. 16.31, who seems to have had the reading given by Rabbinovicz. Lekah and *Hadar*, on the other hand, have the same text as our editions. See also Zohar II, 63a.

108. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 2, 47b, and 4–5, 50–51a; Mekilta RS 75 and 78–79; Tan. B. 67–68. Tosafot on 'Erubin 38b, caption **וְאֵין**, maintain that according to some Midrashim one would have to assume that the manna did descend on the holy days; but the Tosafists, it seems, failed to establish their view.—As to the phrase “the new world”, see the Apocalypse of Baruch 62.6. Concerning the manna as the food of the pious in the world to come, see text on p. 570.

109. Shabbat 118b. It is presupposed here that the commandment concerning the observance of the Sabbath was revealed at Alush, the place where the manna descended for the first time. This view is explicitly stated in Yerushalmi Yom Tob 2, 61a, and DR 3.1, whereas according to another opinion, the commandment concerning the Sabbath was given at Marah; see text on p. 567; Seder 'Olam 5; Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.*, and references cited in note 83. The statement, Sifre Z., 66, that the Israelites observed one Sabbath only, very likely refers to the first Sabbath they had observed at Marah before they arrived at Alush; comp. also Tehillim 92, 402. A Haggadah, which seems to be another version of the one given in the text, reads: If the Israelites would but observe one Sabbath, they would forthwith be redeemed from exile; see Shabbat, *loc. cit.*; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 1, 64a; Tehillim 95, 420; ShR 25.12; WR 3.1. See also the very interesting collection, of midrashic sayings (among them quotations from unknown sources) on the observance of the Sabbath as leading to redemption, in Shibbole Ha-Leket 96–97. That some Israelites desecrated the very first Sabbath was partly the fault of Moses

who failed to communicate the law of Sabbath in proper time; Tan. B. II, 67. Comp. the following note.

110. Tan. B. II, 67; Tan. Tezawweh 11; Mekilta RS 78; ShR 25. 10. In the last-named source, as well as in WR 13.1, it is stated that Moses forgot to communicate in due time the laws of Sabbath to the people (see Exod. 16.23). This negligence on his part was due to his indignation and excitement on account of the wicked action of Dathan and Abiram. On other occasions, too, anger had a bad effect on Moses (compare with pp. 663 and 797); this should serve as a warning to all to avoid anger, since even “the wisest of the wise” neglected his duty in time of anger. Comp. note 862.—As to the worms which betrayed the sinners, comp. Targum Yerushalmi and Midrash Aggada, on Deut. 21.8. A rather confused account of this legend is also found in the Koran 2.67.

111. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 6, 51b, and Mekilta RS 80. Compare with p. 547.

112. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 5, 51b; Mekilta RS 80; Shekalim 6.49c. For further details concerning “the concealed objects”, see text on p. 646; text on pp. 856, 1021, 1059, 1091, and 1117. The oldest form of this legend knows only of three concealed objects which Elijah will restore; these are: three jugs, one filled with manna, another with water from the well of Miriam (this is how **מִים**, Mekilta, *loc. cit.*, is to be understood; **מִי נָדָה** of our editions is a later emendation; comp. PRK 32 a), and the third with the sacred oil. The **τριστοις ἁγίασματα** in Sibyl. 2.188 correspond literally to the **שְׁלֹשָׁה סִימָנִים** of the Midrashim quoted above. Compare with p. 728.

113. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 5, 51b; Sifre D., 304; Seder 'Olam 9 and 10; Tosefta Sotah 11.10; Ta'anit 9a; Tan. B. IV, 2–3; Tan. Bemidbar 2; Mishle 14, 74; BaR 1.2 and 14.20 (towards the end); Shir 4.5; Hashkem 19b; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 15, 554, and 578, as well as 'Aruk, s.v. **אֶפְרָכְרוֹס**; PRK, 34b. Slight traces of this legend are to be found also in Philo's remark (*Moses*, 1.36) that God caused the manna to descend in order to honor the leader (Moses), etc. Ps.-Philo 21A writes: “And afterwards, when Moses was dead, the manna ceased to come down ... And these are three things which God gave His people for the sake of three persons: the well of the water of Marah, for Miriam's sake (see note 82); the pillar of cloud, for Aaron's sake; the manna, for Moses' sake. And when these three came to an end, these three gifts were taken away.” The agreement of ps.-Philo with the sources quoted above is to be noticed even in the phraseology.

114. Sode Raza in Yalkut Reubeni Exod. 16.14; comp. Zohar II, 191b.

115. Midrash Shir 36a. Compare with p. 576.

116. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 2–3, 47b–48b; Mekilta RS 76; Sifre N., 97; Yoma 75b, where the different kinds of quails are described. The Mekiltas are of the opinion that



Exod. 16 13, seq., and Num. 11.31, *seq.*, refer to the same event (see Friedman on Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 3, note 5), whereas ER 12.60 maintains that, as a reward for Abraham's hospitality (see text on p. 570), God caused the quails to come down twice to the camp of Israel, once before the revelation at Sinai (see Exod., *loc. cit.*), and a second time after the revelation (see Num., *loc. cit.*). Philo, *Moses*. 1.37, presupposes that the quails came down regularly during Israel's wanderings through the wilderness. See also Sekel 212, and text on pp. 693 and 699.

117. Yoma 75a–75b.

118. Berakot 48b. The prayer given in the text is the first benediction of Grace after Meals according to the Ashkenazic ritual. See also Hasidim 399, which reads: Before they ate the manna they pronounced the benediction: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord our God, King of the universe, who giveth bread from heaven." This is a slightly modified form of the benediction on bread, substituting 'heaven' for 'earth'.

## MIRIAM'S WELL

Relieved as they were of all the cares of subsistence through the gift of manna, it was plainly the duty of the Israelites to devote themselves exclusively to the study of the Torah.<sup>119</sup> When, therefore, they slackened in the performance of this duty, punishment in the form of lack of water immediately overtook them. This was the first time that they actually experienced this want, for at Marah nothing more than alarm that this need might come upon them had caused them to murmur and complain. In their distress they once more unreasonably cast reproaches upon their leader, and disputed with him, saying: "Wherefore is this, that thou hast brought us up out of Egypt, to kill us, and our children, and our cattle with thirst?" Moses replied: "As often as you quarrel with me, you tempt God, but God performeth wonders and excellent deeds for you, as often as you dispute with me, that His name may sound in glory throughout the world."

In spite of the injury they had done him, Moses prayed to God that He might aid them in their distress and also stand by him. "O Lord of the world!" said he, "I am surely doomed to die. Thou biddest me not to be offended with them, but if I obey Thy words, I shall certainly be killed by them." God, however, replied: "Try thou to act like Me; as I return good for evil, so do thou return to them good for evil, and forgive their trespass; go on before the people, and We shall see who dares touch thee."<sup>120</sup> Hardly had Moses shown himself to the people, when all of them rose reverently from their seats, whereupon God said to Moses: "How often have I told thee not to be angry with them, but to lead them, as a shepherd leads his flock; it is for their sake that I have set thee on this height, and only for their sake wilt thou find grace, goodwill, and mercy in My sight."<sup>121</sup>

Then God bade him go with some elders to the rock on Horeb, and fetch water out of it. The elders were to accompany him there, that they might be convinced that he was not bringing water from a well, but smiting it from a rock. To accomplish this miracle God bade him smite the rock with his rod, as the people labored under the impression that this rod could only bring destruction, for through its agency Moses had brought the ten plagues upon the Egyptians in Egypt, and at the Red Sea; now they were to see that it could work good also.<sup>122</sup> Upon God's bidding, Moses told the people to choose from which rock they wished water to flow,<sup>123</sup> and hardly had Moses touched with his sapphire rod the rock which they had chosen, when plenteous water flowed from it. The spot where this occurred, God called Massah, and Meribah, because Israel had there tried their God, saying, "If God is Lord over all, as over us; if He satisfies our need, and will further show us that He knows our thoughts, then will we serve Him, but not otherwise."<sup>124</sup>



The water that flowed for them on this spot served not only as a relief for their present need, but on this occasion there was revealed to them a well of water, which did not abandon them in all their forty years' wandering, but accompanied them on all their marches.<sup>125</sup> God wrought this great miracle for the merits of the prophetess Miriam, wherefore also it was called "Miriam's Well."<sup>126</sup> But this well dates back to the beginning of the world, for God created it on the second day of the creation,<sup>127</sup> and at one time it was in the possession of Abraham. It was this same well that Abraham demanded back from Abimelech, king of the Philistines, after the king's servants had violently taken it away. But when Abimelech pretended not to know anything about it, saying, "I wot not who hath done this thing," Abraham said: "Thou and I will send sheep to the well, and he shall be declared the rightful owner of the well, for whose sheep the water will spout forth to water them. And," continued Abraham, "from that same well shall the seventh generation after me, the wanderers in the desert, draw their supply."<sup>128</sup>

This well was in the shape of a sieve-like rock, out of which water gushes forth as from a spout. It followed them on all their wanderings, up hill and down dale, and wherever they halted, it halted, too, and it settled opposite the Tabernacle. Thereupon the leaders of the twelve tribes would appear, each with his staff and chant these words to the well, "Spring up, O well, sing ye unto it; nobles of the people digged it by the direction of the lawgiver with their staves." Then the water would gush forth from the depths of the well, and shoot up high as pillars, then discharge itself into great streams that were navigable, and on these rivers the Jews sailed to the ocean, and hauled all the treasures of the world therefrom.<sup>129</sup>

The different parts of the camp were separated by these rivers, so that women, visiting

each other, were obliged to make use of ships. Then the water discharged itself beyond the encampment, where it surrounded a great plain, in which grew every conceivable kind of plant and tree;<sup>130</sup> and these trees, owing to the miraculous water, daily bore fresh fruits.<sup>131</sup> This well brought fragrant herbs with it, so that the women had no need of perfumes on the march, for the herbs they gathered served this purpose.<sup>132</sup> This well furthermore threw down soft, fragrant kinds of grass that served as pleasant couches for the poor, who had no pillows or bedclothes.<sup>133</sup> Upon the entrance to the Holy Land this well disappeared and was hidden in a certain spot of the Sea of Tiberias. Standing upon Carmel, and looking over the sea, one can notice there a sieve-like rock, and that is the well of Miriam.<sup>134</sup> Once upon a time it happened that a leper bathed at this place of the Sea of Tiberias, and hardly had he come in contact with the waters of Miriam's well when he was instantly healed.<sup>135</sup>

119. Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא), 23a; compare with pp. 546 and 572.

120. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 6, 52a; Mekilta RS 80–81; Tan. Beshallah 22; ShR 26.2; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 17.1.

121. Tan. Beshallah 22. See Mekilta Bo (פתיחתא), 2a, and text on pp. 623, 716.

122. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 6, 51a–52b. Tan. Beshallah 21; ShR 26.2; Mekilta RS 81. In this connection the Midrashim just quoted remark, with reference to Exod. 17.6, that God indicated to Moses the place where he should look for the presence of the Shekinah, namely, where the rock shows the imprint of a human foot. This strange statement is very likely the oldest reference to the religious significance of the dolmens, whose form is described here as being similar to that of the human foot (toes?). Is סלם ("ladder") perhaps to be read instead of אדם? Comp. note 271.

123. ShR 26.2. Compare with p. 733 (end of paragraph).

124. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 6, 52b; Tan. Beshallah 22; ShR 26.2. See Index, s.v. "Moses, Rod of".

125. Seder 'Olam 5; Tan. B. IV, 127; comp. also references given in note 113.



126. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 5, 51b, and parallel passages given in note 311. The name "Miriam's well" is not found in tannaitic sources, but is of frequent occurrence in later literature; comp., e.g., Shabbat 35a; WR 22.4; BaR 18.22; Tehillim 24, 206. Comp. also note 84.

127. PRE 3; comp. note 94; text on pp. 260 and 276, as well as text on p. 494.

128. Yalkut I, 764, on Num. 21.18, excerpted, perhaps, from Yelammedenu; see *Likkutim* (ed. Grünhut), IV, 58, and text on p. 260.

129. Tosefta Sukkah 6.11–13, and a somewhat different version in the unknown Midrash cited in Yalkut I, 426; BaR 1.2 and 19.26; Tan. B. IV, 3 and 127–128; Tan. Bemidbar 2 and Hukkat 21 Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi Num. 21.16, *seq.*; Berakot 54b; Zohar II, 191b (the source of the last-named, if not Yalkut, *loc. cit.*, is the Midrash itself cited there); text on pp. 749–750. I Cor. 10.4 has an allegory of this legend, whereas ps.-Philo in 12C speaks of the well of water following them in the wilderness for forty years, and in 13A he refers to the well that followed them in the wilderness for forty years, going up with them into the hills and coming down into the plains. Comp. note 84. Ephraem 1, 263 is either based on ps.-Philo or on Jewish tradition communicated to him orally. Comp. Grünhut, *Likkutim*, II, 10a–10b, and IV, 58b; Meleket ha-Mishkan 97–98.

130. Tan. B. IV, 127–128; Tan. Hukkat 21; BaR 19.26; Midrash in Yalkut I, 426; Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s.v. דכסמי. Comp. preceding note and Grünhut, *Likkutim*, IV, 49b.

131. Tan. B. III, 74–75, which has the additional statement that the Israelites will enjoy this gift in messianic times, and if not for their sins they would have continued to enjoy it after they entered the Holy Land.

132. Tehillim 23, 200; Midrash Shir 36b, as quoted in Yalkut II, 588, on Song of Songs 5; Yelammedenu in *Aruk* s.v. אורגי (comp. Grünhut, *Likkutim*, IV, 44b); Shir 4.11; PK 10, 93b. In Shir 4.14 and in the sources cited in note 115 it is the manna which is said to have served as a perfume. On other rival claims between the manna and Miriam's well, see text on p. 584; concerning the tastes of these heavenly gifts, see note 113 and text on p. 570. Ephraem I, 287A, follows the Haggadah which favors the well.

133. Midrash Shir 37a. Sifre N., 95, asserts that the well contained "fat fish."

134. Shabbat 35a; Yerushalmi Kil'ayim 9, 32c (bottom); WR 22.4; Kohelet 5.8; Tehillim 24, 206; Tan. B. IV, 128; Tan. Hukkat 21; BaR 19.26. In all these sources it is presupposed that the well like the manna (see text on p. 570) will return in the time to come, and in, PRE 51 we have a detailed description of the various services which the well will render at that time. This, in the main, follows

the Haggadah recorded in text on p. 576. Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 15, on Josh. 5, as well as II, 378, on Zechariah 9, is closely related to PRE. See also Tosefta Sukkah 3.3–10; Sanhedrin 100a; Tan. Pinehas 14; the statement, in Tan. and in Sanhedrin, concerning the potion of healing in the time to come refers to the water of Miriam's well, as is explicitly asserted in Tosefta, *loc. cit.* See further *Kaṭfor wa-Ferah*, 139.

135. BaR 18.22; WR 22.4; Kohelet 5.8. A legend, mentioned by many medieval authors, maintains that at the termination of the Sabbath Miriam's well moves about from river to river from well to well. It is therefore recommended to draw water at this time when one might be fortunate to get the "healing water" of the miraculous well. See *Toratan shel Rishonim* I, 59; *Ha-Olah* 230; *Orehot Hayyim* Shabbat 69a. We very likely have here a legend in which different elements are blended together. The drawing or drinking of water at the termination of the Sabbath is undoubtedly connected with the view that it is dangerous to drink water immediately before the termination of the Sabbath. The reason for the latter is because at that time the souls of the departed take their last sip before returning to Gehenna (compare footnote 36 on p. 110), when the respite granted to them during the Sabbath is at an end; see Tehillim 11, 102, and references given by Buber. The story (John 5.4) about the pool and its heavenly power is very likely connected with our legend about Miriam's well. See also Tertullian *De Anima* 50.

## AMALEK'S WAR AGAINST ISRAEL

As a punishment because they had not had sufficient faith in God, and had doubted whether He could fulfil all their wishes, and had grown negligent in the study of the Torah and in the observance of the laws, God turned Amalek against them during their sojourn in Rephidim, where they had committed these sins. God dealt with them as did that man with his son, whom he bore through the river on his shoulders. Whenever the child saw something desirable, he said, "Father, buy it for me," and he fulfilled the child's wish. After the son had in this way received many beautiful things from his father, he called to a passing stranger with these words, "Hast thou perhaps seen my fa-



ther?" Then, indignantly, the father said to his son: "O thou fool, that sittest on my shoulder! All that thou didst desire, did I procure for thee, and now dost thou ask of that man, 'Hast thou seen my father!' " Thereupon the father threw the child off his shoulder, and a dog came and bit him. So did Israel fare. When they moved out of Egypt, God enveloped them in seven clouds of glory; they wished for bread, and He gave them manna; they wished for flesh, and He gave them quails. After all their wishes had been granted, they began to doubt, saying, "Is the Lord among us, or not?" then God answered, "You doubt My power; so surely as you live shall you discover it; the dog will soon bite you." Then came Amalek.<sup>136</sup>

This enemy of Israel bore the name Amalek to denote the rapidity with which he moved against Israel, for like a swarm of locusts he flew upon them; and the name furthermore designates the purpose of this enemy, who came to suck the blood of Israel.<sup>137</sup> This Amalek was a son of Eliphaz, the first-born son of Esau, and although the descendants of Jacob had been weaker and more insignificant in earlier times, Amalek had left them in peace, for he had excellent reasons to delay his attack. God had revealed to Abraham that his seed would have to serve in the land of the Egyptians, and had put the payment of this debt upon Isaac, and after his death, upon Jacob and his descendants. The wicked Amalek now said to himself, "If I destroy Jacob and his descendants, God will impose the Egyptian bondage upon me, grandson of Esau, descendant of Abraham." Therefore he kept himself in restraint as long as Israel dwelt in Egypt, but only after the bondage predicted to the seed of Abraham had been served in full, did he set out to accomplish the war of annihilation against Israel, which his grandfather Esau had enjoined upon him.<sup>138</sup>

No sooner had he heard of Israel's departure from Egypt, than he set out against them and met them by the Red Sea. There, indeed, he could work them no ill, for Moses uttered against him the Ineffable Name; and so great was his confusion, that he was forced to retreat without having effected his object.<sup>139</sup> Then, for some time, he tried lying hidden in ambush, and in this wise molesting Israel, but at length he gave up this game of hide-and-seek, and with a bold front revealed himself as the open enemy of Israel. Not alone, however, did he himself declare war upon Israel, but he also seduced all the heathen nations to assist him in his enterprise against Israel. Although these declined to war upon Israel, fearing that they might have to fare like the Egyptians, they agreed to the following plan of Amalek. He said: "Follow my expedition. Should Israel conquer me, there will still be plenty of time for you to flee, but should success crown my attempt, join your fate to mine, in my undertaking against Israel." So Amalek now marched from his settlement in Seir, which was no less than four hundred parasangs away from the encampment of the Jews; and although five nations, the Hittites, the Hivites, the Jehusites, the Amorites, and the Canaanites, had their dwellings between his home and the camp of the Jews, he insisted upon being the first to declare war upon Israel.

God punished Israel, who had shown themselves an ungrateful people, by sending against them an enemy that was ungrateful, too, never recalling that he owed his life to the sons of Jacob, who had had him in their power after their brilliant victory over Esau and his followers.<sup>140</sup>

In his expedition against Israel he made use of his kinship with them, by pretending, at first, to be their friend and kinsman. Before going over to open attack, he lured many unsuspecting Jews to death by his kindly words. He had fetched from Egypt the table of descent of the Jews; for



every Jew had there to mark his name on the bricks produced by him, and these lists lay in the Egyptian archives. Familiar with the names of the different Jewish families, Amalek appeared before the Jewish camp, and calling the people by name, he invited them to leave the camp, and come out to him. "Reuben! Simeon! Levi! etc," he would call, "come out to me, your brother, and transact business with me."

Those who answered the enticing call, found certain death at his hands; and not only did Amalek kill them, but he also mutilated their corpses, following the example of his grandsire Esau, by cutting off a certain part of the body, and throwing it toward heaven with the mocking words, "Here Shalt Thou have what Thou desirest." In this way did he jeer at the token of the Abrahamic covenant.

So long as the Jews remained within the encampment, he could, of course, do them no harm, for the cloud enveloped them, and under its shelter they were as well fortified as a city that is surrounded by a solid wall. The cloud, however, covered those only who were pure, but the unclean had to stay beyond it, until they were cleansed by a ritual bath, and these Amalek caught and killed. The sinners, too, particularly the tribe of Dan, who were all worshippers of idols, were not protected by the cloud, and therefore exposed to the attacks of Amalek.<sup>141</sup>

Moses did not himself set out to battle against this dangerous foe of Israel, but he sent his servant Joshua, and for good reasons. Moses knew that only a descendant of Rachel, like the Ephraimite Joshua, could conquer the descendant of Esau. All the sons of Jacob had taken part in the unbrotherly act of selling Joseph as a slave, hence none of their descendants might stand up in battle against the descendant of Esau; for they who had themselves acted unnaturally to a brother, could hardly hope for God's assistance in a struggle with the unbrotherly

Edomites. Only the descendants of Joseph, the man who had been generous and good to his brothers, might hope that God would grant them aid against the unbrotherly descendants of Esau. In many other respects, too, Joseph was the opposite of Esau, and his services stood his descendants in good stead in their battles against the descendants of Esau. Esau was the firstborn of his father, but through his evil deeds he lost his birthright; Joseph, on the other hand, was the youngest of his father's sons, and through his good deeds was he found worthy of enjoying the rights of a firstborn son. Joseph had faith in the resurrection, while Esau denied it; hence God said, "Joseph, the devout, shall be the one to visit merited punishment on Esau, the unbelieving." Joseph associated with two wicked men, Potiphar and Pharaoh, yet he did not follow their example; Esau associated with two pious men, his father and his brother, yet he did not follow their example. "Hence," said God, "Joseph, who did not follow the example of wicked men, shall visit punishment upon him who did not follow the example of pious men." Esau soiled his life with lewdness and murder; Joseph was chaste and shunned bloodshed, hence God delivered Esau's descendants into the hands of Joseph's descendants. And, as in the course of history only the descendants of Joseph were victorious over the descendants of Esau, so will it be in the future, at the final reckoning between the angel of Esau and the angels of the Jews. The angel of Reuben will be rebuffed by the angel of Esau with these words, "You represent one who had illegal relations with his father's wife"; the angels of Simeon and Levi will have to listen to this reproof, "You represent people who slew the inhabitants of Shechem"; the angel of Judah will be repulsed with the words, "Judah had illicit relations with his daughter-in-law." And the angels of the other tribes will be repulsed by Esau's angel, when he points out to them that they all took part in selling



Joseph. The only one whom he will not be able to repulse will be Joseph's angel, to whom he will be delivered and by whom he will be destroyed; Joseph will be the flame and Esau the straw burned in the flame.<sup>142</sup>

136. PK 2, 21a–21b; PR 12, 52a, and 13, 55a–55b; Tan. B. I, 41, and II, 10–71; Tan. Beshallah 25 and Ki-Teze 9; Shabbat 118a (concerning Amalek's attack on Israel as a punishment for the desecration of the Sabbath, see note 109); Mekilta RS 81–82; PRE 43; ShR 26.2; Sanhedrin 106a; Berakot 5,6; Mekilta Amalek 1, 53a–53b. Comp. also Yalkut I, 938 (end). Concerning the seven clouds, see text on p. 542.

137. PK 3, 26b; Tan. B. II, 71, and V, 40. The second etymology of the name is also found in Philo, Leg. Allegor., 2.66, and in De Cong. Quaer. Erud. Causa, 11.

138. Midrash quoted in *Da'ut*, Exod. 17.18; a somewhat different version is given in *Hadar*: Esau made his son Eliphaz take an oath that he would kill Jacob and thus regain the birthright which Jacob had acquired through guile. Timna, the wife of Eliphaz, however, dissuaded him from attempting to take Jacob's life, pointing out to him the danger involved in measuring his strength against that of a hero like Jacob. Eliphaz followed his wife's advice, and had to content himself with taking away Jacob's possessions (see text on pp. 274–275) without attempting his life. Esau, disappointed in his son, adjured his grandson Amalek to kill Jacob, but he, too, was persuaded by his mother Timna to let Jacob alone, pointing out to him that the descendants of Abraham were destined to serve the Egyptians, and the killing of Jacob would transfer the servitude upon Esau's children. As long as Israel was in Egypt, Amalek held his peace. But no sooner had the Israelites completed their term of servitude and left Egypt than they were attacked by Amalek. Sabba, Exod., *loc. cit.* 77a, on the other hand, quotes a Midrash according to which it was Timna who incited her son Amalek to attack Israel. See also text on pp. 296 and 323; text on pp. 710, 745, as well as 796; ER 24, 125–126, where it is stated that Eliphaz is to be blamed for having neglected the education of his son Amalek, who, unrestrained by his father, became wicked. Lekah Gen. 27.45 and Exod. 17.8 reads: Eliphaz, a pious and righteous man, refused to obey his father's command concerning Jacob. See also DR 2.29; Shu'aib, Zakor, 37c; Sekel 321; footnote 318 on p. 322.

139. Mekilta Shirah 11, 43a; Tan. Ki-Teze 9; compare with p. 549.

140. Mekilta Amalek 1, 53a; Mekilta RS 81–82; Midrash Tannaim 170; Tan. B. V, 40–41; Tan. Ki-Teze 9;

PK 3, 26b; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 12.1; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 16.8, where sixteen miles are given as the distance between Amalek's place of settlement and the encampment of the Israelites. The army of Amalek consisted of four hundred thousand warriors (Gorion III, 27; Yashar She-mot, 147a, and *Dibre ha-Yamim* 11, give different numbers), each of whom received great payment (Aggadat Shir 5, 46; text is corrupt). The war took place in the month of Iyar; Aggadat Esther 29; compare with p. 710, and text on p. 1154. The ingratitude of Amalek is to be explained in accordance with the legend given in text on p. 323.

141. PK 3, 27a–27b; PR 12, 52a–52b; Tan. B. V, 41–42 (read *נינוח היה נישור*); Tan. Ki-Teze 9–10; Sifre D., 296; Midrash Tannaim 170; PRE 44; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 17.8 and Num. 11.1, as well as Deut. 25.19. On the registers of the Jews kept in the Egyptian archives, see Mekilta Beshallah 1, 27; on the sinful Danites, see text on pp. 651, 679–680, 685, 692, 728, as well as text on p. 936; Sekel 321. Comp. also note 72, and Index, s.v. “Dan, Tribe of”. The Christian legend accordingly declares the anti-Christ to be of the tribe of Dan. See Bousset, *Antichrist*, Index, s.v. “Dan”. Even the early tannaitic sources use Amalek as a designation for Rome (see note 147), and in the legend Amalek's sneering at the Abrahamic covenant characterizes the attitude of the Romans (especially during the Hadrian persecutions) towards this very important ceremony; see footnotes 19 and 25 on pp. 252, 253. In later literature Amalek, *i.e.*, Rome, stands for Christianity; see Zunz, *Synagogale Poesie*, 439, and *Literaturgeschichte*, 620. In the Kabbalah Amalek=Sammael=evil inclination; comp. Zohar III, 289b. It is highly interesting to observe that Justin, *Dialogue* 131, is acquainted with this use of the name Amalek. As to the refusal of the clouds to protect the sinners and those that were levitically impure, see Sifre N., 83; Targum on Song of Songs 2.5; text on pp. 204–205; text on p. 542.

142. PR 12, 49a–50a, 53a, and 13, 54a–54b; PK 3, 28a–28b; Tan. B. 5, 43; Tan. Ki-Teze 10; Mekilta RS 87; Aggadat Esther 65, which reads: Only when the descendants of Rachel participated in war were the Israelites victorious. Compare with p. 288; text on pp. 1025–1026. As to the contest between Joseph and Esau, see BR 99.2 and ShR 26.3.

## AMALEK DEFEATED

Moses now instructed Joshua in regard to his campaign against Amalek, saying, “Choose us out men and go out, fight with Amalek.” The words “choose us” characterize



the modesty of Moses, who treated his disciple Joshua as an equal; in these words he has taught us that the honor of our disciples should stand as high as our own. Joshua did not at first want to expose himself to danger and leave the protection of the cloud, but Moses said to him, "Abandon the cloud and set forth against Amalek, if ever thou dost hope to set the crown upon thy head." He commanded him to choose his warriors from among the pious and God-fearing, and promised him that he would set a fast day for the following day, and implore God, in behalf of the good deeds of the Patriarchs and the wives of the Patriarchs, to stand by Israel in this war.

Joshua acted in accordance with these commands<sup>143</sup> and set out against Amalek, to conquer whom required not only skilful strategy, but also adeptness in the art of magic. For Amalek was a great magician and knew the propitious and the unpropitious hour of each individual, and in this way regulated his attacks against Israel; he attacked that one at night, whose death had been predicted for a night, and him whose death had been preordained for a day did he attack by day.

But in this art, too, Joshua was his match, for he, too, knew how to time properly the attack upon<sup>144</sup> individuals, and he destroyed Amalek, his sons, the armies he himself commanded, and those under the leadership of his sons. But in the very heat of battle, Joshua treated his enemies humanely, he did not repay like with like. Far was it from him to follow Amalek's example in mutilating the corpses of the enemy. Instead with a sharp sword he cut off the enemies' heads, an execution that does not dishonor.

But only through the aid of Moses did Joshua win his victory. Moses did not go out into battle, but through his prayer and through his influence upon the people in inspiring them with faith, the battle was won. While the battle raged between Israel and Amalek, Moses was

stationed on a height, where supported by the Levite Aaron and the Judean Hur, the representatives of the two noble tribes Levi and Judah, he fervently implored God's aid. He said: "O Lord of the world! Through me hast Thou brought Israel out of Egypt, through me hast Thou cleft the sea, and through me hast Thou wrought miracles; so do Thou now work miracles for me, and lend victory to Israel, for I well know that while all other nations fight only to the sixth hour of the day, this sinful nation stand in battle ranks till sunset." Moses did not consider it sufficient to pray alone to God, but he raised his hands toward heaven as a signal for the whole nation to follow his example and trust in God. As often as he then raised his hands to heaven and the people prayed with him, trusting that God would lend them victory, they were indeed victorious; as often, however, as Moses let down his hands and the people ceased prayer, weakening in their faith in God, Amalek conquered. But it was hard for Moses constantly to raise his hands. This was God's way of punishing him for being somewhat negligent in the preparations for the war against Amalek. Hence Aaron and Hur were obliged to hold up his arms and assist him in his prayer. As, furthermore, he was unable to stand all that time, he seated himself on a stone, disdaining a soft and comfortable seat, saying, "So long as Israel is in distress, I shall share it with them."<sup>145</sup>

At evenfall, the battle was not yet decided, therefore Moses prayed to God that He might stay the setting of the sun and thus enable Israel to draw the battle to a close. God granted this prayer, for the sun did not set until Israel had completely destroyed their enemy. Thereupon Moses blessed Joshua with the words, "Some day the sun shall stand still for thy sake, as it did to-day for mine," and this blessing was later fulfilled at Gibeon, when the sun stood still to help Joshua in his battle against the Amorites.<sup>146</sup>



Although Amalek had now received the merited punishment from the hands of Joshua, still his enterprise against Israel had not been entirely unavailing. The miraculous exodus of Israel out of Egypt, and especially the cleaving of the sea, had created such alarm among the heathens, that none among them had dared to approach Israel. But this fear vanished as soon as Amalek attempted to compete in battle with Israel. Although he was terribly beaten, still the fear of the inaccessibility of Israel was gone. It was with Amalek as with that foolhardy wight who plunged into a scalding-hot tub. He scalded himself terribly, yet the tub became a little cooled through his plunge into it. Hence God was not content with the punishment Amalek received in the time of Moses, but swore by His throne and by His right hand that He would never forget Amalek's misdeeds, that in this world as well as in the time of the Messiah. He would visit punishment upon him, and would completely exterminate him in the future world. So long as the seed of Amalek exist, the face of God is, as it were, covered, and will only then come to view, when the seed of Amalek shall have been entirely exterminated.

God had at first left the war against Amalek in the hands of His people, therefore He bade Joshua, the future leader of the people, never to forget the war against Amalek; and if Moses had listened intently, he would have perceived from this command of God that Joshua was destined to lead the people into the promised land. But later, when Amalek took part in the destruction of Jerusalem, God Himself took up the war against Amalek, saying, "By My throne I vow not to leave a single descendant of Amalek under the heavens, yea, no one shall even be able to say that this sheep or that wether belonged to an Amalekite."<sup>147</sup>

God bade Moses impress upon the Jews to repulse no heathen should he desire conversion,

but never to accept an Amalekite as a proselyte. It was in consideration of this word of God that David slew the Amalekite who announced to him the death of Saul and Jonathan; for he saw in him only a heathen, although he appeared in the guise of a Jew.<sup>148</sup>

Part of the blame for the destruction of Amalek falls upon his father, Eliphaz. He used to say to Amalek: "My son, dost thou indeed know who will possess this world and the future world?" Amalek paid no attention to this allusion to the future fortune of Israel, and his father urged it no more strongly upon him, although it would have been his duty to instruct his son clearly and fully. He should have said to him: "My son, Israel will possess this world as well as the future world; dig wells then for their use and build roads for them, so that thou mayest be judged worthy to share in the future world." But as Amalek had not been sufficiently instructed by his father, in his wantonness he undertook to destroy the whole world. God, who tries the reins and the heart, said to him: "O thou fool, I created thee after all the seventy nations, but for thy sins thou shalt be the first to descend into hell."<sup>149</sup>

To glorify the victory over Amalek, Moses built an altar, which God called "My Miracle," for the miracle God wrought against Amalek in the war of Israel was, as it were, a miracle for God. For so long as the Israelites dwell in sorrow, God feels with them, and a joy for Israel is a joy for God, hence, too, the miraculous victory over Israel's foe was a victory for God.<sup>150</sup>

---

143. Mekilta Amalek 1, 53b; Mekilta RS 82; ShR 26.3; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 17.9.

144. Midrash quoted by R. Bahya on Exod. 16.9 and Menot ha-Levi, 69a. Comp. the similar legend in Yeru-shalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 6, 59a, to the effect that Amalek, who was a great magician, selected, for the attack on Israel, those of his warriors whose birthday was on the day



of the battle. The reason for this was because “one is not easily slain on his birthday.” Moses, however, confounded the course of the heavenly bodies (מזלות), and thus frustrated Amalek’s device. The last statement refers to Moses’ causing the sun to stand still (see reference in note 146), so that Amalek’s warriors were not certain as to the actual time of their birthday. See also We-Hizhir Exod. 34a; Yashar Shemot 147a; *Dibre ha-Yamim* 11.

145. Mekilta Amalek 1, 54a–54b; Mekilta RS 82–83; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 17.10–13; PRE 44. Moses’ hesitation is recorded in Exod. 17.9, where it is said that he waited a day before he undertook to attack Amalek. The haggadic explanation of the raising and the lowering of the hands (found also in Mishnah Rosh ha-Shanah 3.8) would seem to be directed against the Christian view, according to which it was a symbolic representation of the cross (see Barnabas 12.2; Justin, *Dialogue*, 90 and 91), but Philo, *Moses*, 1.39, offers an explanation which is similar to that of the Rabbis. Philo’s other statement that Moses, before going to war, was sprinkled with the waters of purification is based on the correct assumption that in ancient Israel warriors had to be purified before going to war; see 1 Sam. 21.6 and comp. also the legends, text on p. 579, note 849 and Index, s.v. “Purification”: Sifre D., 258. The statement of Bahir (quoted as Midrash by Nahmanides and Shu’aib on Exod. 17.11) that Moses lowered his hands because one should not pray with raised hands longer than three hours is perhaps intended to discourage this form of prayer which is so much in favor among Christians. On Joshua’s war against Amalek, see text on pp. 841–842; concerning Hur see text on p. 620; text on p. 968.

146. ER 2, 10; Tehillim 19, 167; Tan. Tezawweh 9; Sifre D., 306, reads: The sun stood still as soon as Moses said: “Give ear, ye heavens.” Compare also note 947 and footnote 43 on p. 849. Concerning the different occasions when Moses caused the sun to stand still, see below note 245.

147. Tan. B. V, 41 and 45; Tan. Ki-Teze 9 and 11; PK 3, 27a; PR 12, 52a; Mekilta Amalek 2, 55a, and 56a–56b; Mekilta RS 84–85; Tehillim 9, 86; Haserot in *Batte Midrashot* I, 32a. Comp. also the quotation from the Yerushalmi (not in our editions) in *Bet Yosef, Orach Hayyim* 137. In all these sources Amalek represents Rome; hence the reference to the destruction of the Temple by him; but compare with p. 745 on the destruction of the first Temple by Amalek.

148. Mekilta Amalek 2, 56b; Mekilta RS 84; Tan. B. V, 44; Tan. Ki-Teze 11; PK 3, 28b; PR 12, 51a.

149. ER 24, 126. Comp. note 138.

150. Mekilta Amalek 2, 56a, the text of which is to be corrected in accordance with the reading in Mekilta RS 84 and Bodleian MS. The conception “that God joins Himself unto His people when it suffers and when it re-

joices” (text on p. 374) is of frequent occurrence; see Mekilta Bo 14, 16a; Mekilta RS 27; Sifre N., 84 and 161; Megillah 29a; Ta’anit 16a; Yerushalmi Sukkah 4, 54c; Ta’anit 1, 64a; Sanhedrin 4 (end); ShR 15.12 and 23.5; WR 9.3; BaR 2.2 and 7 (towards the end); DR 4.1; Ekah 1, 92 and 2, 110–111; ER 17, 89; Shemuel 4, 55; Tehillim 9, 89; 27, 223; 91, 401; Tan. B. III, 68 and 61, as well as IV, 9; Tan. Ahare 12; Aggadat Bereshit 71, 140; PK 5, 47a; Shir 4.7 and 5.2; BHM VI, 37. Compare also with pp. 392, 433, 501, 542; text on p. 1082. In practically all these passages two originally different conceptions are blended together: the primitive conception that the suffering of a people indicates the impotence of its god, and the mystic-religious one that the essence of God manifests itself in the history of mankind, and especially in the history of Israel. Accordingly God participates in the sorrows and joys of Israel. In Mekilta Bo, *loc. cit.*, and Sanhedrin 6.5, the second conception is expressed in an individualistic manner, and it is accordingly stated that the suffering of an individual, even of a sinner who suffers for his sins, causes God to grieve; comp. note 60. Later mystics frequently speak of the “exile of the Shekinah” (*Galut ha-Shekinah*) which each and every Jew ought to bewail more than any national calamity or his own misfortune.

## JETHRO

“Smite a scorner, and the simple will beware.” The destruction of Amalek brought Jethro to his senses. Jethro was originally in the same plot with Amalek, both having incited Pharaoh against Israel, but when he saw that Amalek lost this world and the other, he repented of his sinful ways, saying: “There is nothing left to me but to go over to the God of Israel”;<sup>151</sup> and although he dwelt in the greatest wealth and honor, he determined to set out for the desert, to Moses and his God.<sup>152</sup> Arrived at the camp of Israel, he could not enter it, for it was enveloped by a cloud that none could pierce, hence he wrote a letter to Moses and shot it off with an arrow, so that it fell into the camp.<sup>153</sup> The letter read: “I adjure thee, by thy two sons and by thy God, O come to meet me and receive me kindly. If thou wilt not do it for my sake, do it for thy



wife's sake; and if thou wilt not do it for her sake, do it for thy sons' sake." For Jethro brought with him his daughter Zipporah, from whom Moses had been divorced, as well as her two sons, her only children, for after her separation from Moses, she had wed no other man.

At first Moses was inclined to give no ear to this letter, but God said to him: "I, through whose word the world came into being, I bring men to Me and do not thrust them back. I permitted Jethro to approach Me, and did not push him from Me. So do thou, too, receive this man, who desires to betake himself under the wings of the Shekinah, let him approach, and do not repulse him." God herewith taught Moses that one should repulse with the left hand, and beckon with the right.<sup>154</sup>

Moses, Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, together with the seventy elders of Israel, carrying with them the sacred Ark, hastened to welcome Jethro kindly; and Moses so honored his father-in-law as to make an obeisance before him and kiss him. Before Moses told his father-in-law of the great miracles God had wrought for Egypt, such as the exodus from Egypt, the cleaving of the sea, the rain of manna, and the rest, he offered him the greeting of peace; for great is peace, that precedes even the praise of God.<sup>155</sup> After the peace-greeting, Moses, to draw his father-in-law nearer to true faith in God and His revelation, began to relate to him the miracles that God had wrought for them at the exodus from Egypt, during the passing through the Red Sea, and during the war with Amalek. He said, moreover, "In the manna that God gives us we perceive the taste of bread, of meat, of fish, in short, of all the dishes there are. Out of the well that God gives us we draw a drink that possesses the taste of old wine as well as new, of milk and of honey, in short, of all the beverages that exist. We shall," Moses continued, "receive six other gifts from God, the land of Israel, the future world,

the new world, the sovereignty of David, the institution of priests, and of Levites."

When Jethro heard all this, he determined to become a Jew and to believe in the only God, and although he felt a pang at heart upon hearing that the Egyptians had perished—for no one should scoff at a heathen before a proselyte who is not a Jew of ten generations' standing—still he burst into a song of praise to God for the deeds He had done for His people. In truth, it reflects shame upon Moses and the sixty myriads of Jews that they had not given thanks to God for the release from Egypt, until Jethro came and did so. He said: "Praised be God who delivered Moses and Aaron, as well as the whole nation of Israel, from the bondage of Pharaoh, that great dragon, and of the Egyptians. Truly, great is the Lord before all gods, for whereas formerly not a single slave succeeded in escaping from Egypt, He led sixty myriads out of Egypt. There is no god whom I had not, at some time in my life, worshipped, but now I must admit that none is like the God of Israel. This God had not been unbeknown to me heretofore, but now I know Him better, for His fame will sound throughout the world, because He visited upon the Egyptians exactly what they had planned to undertake against Israel. They wanted to destroy Israel by water, and by water were they destroyed."<sup>156</sup>

With sacrifices and a feast was the arrival of Jethro celebrated, for after he had made the burnt offering not far from the bush of thorns that had been unscathed by fire, Jethro prepared a feast of rejoicing for the whole people,<sup>157</sup> at which Moses did not consider it below his dignity to wait on the guests in person. In this he followed the example of Abraham, who in person waited on the three angels, though they appeared in the guise of idolatrous Arabs.

Abraham like Moses sought to follow in the ways of the Lord, to provide for each according



to his wants, and to grant to everybody what he lacks, whether he be a righteous man, or an idolater, who through his sins conjures up God's wrath.<sup>158</sup>

To this feast the people sat down according to their tribes. They ate, drank, and were merry, while Aaron and Jethro with their relatives sang songs of thanksgiving to God, and praised Him as the Creator and Donor of their lives and their liberty. At the same time they gave due appreciation to Moses, through whose courage everything had happily come to pass. In his words of gratitude to Moses, Jethro also gave expression to many glorious eulogies on the people of Israel, but he especially extolled Moses, who through difficulties and dangers had shown so much courage in the salvation of his friends.<sup>159</sup>

---

151. ShR 27.5; PK 3, 21a and 22a; Tan. B. II, 70; Shemuel 12, 81. It is said: Jethro was in Amalek's army, and after the defeat of the latter, he came to Moses. See also Mekilta Yitro 1, 56b–57a; Zebahim 116a; Yerushalmi Megillah 72b (bottom); ER 5, 30, where three different views are given concerning the time of Jethro's arrival: 1) he came immediately after the Red Sea had been crossed; 2) after the defeat of Amalek; 3) after the revelation at Sinai. Concerning Jethro's position at Pharaoh's court, see text on pp. 470, 497; text on pp. 549 and 589. See more details concerning Jethro in text on pp. 490–494.

152. Mekilta Yitro 1, 58a; Mekilta RS 87.

153. Tan. B. II, 73; Targum Yerushalmi and Midrash Aggada Exod. 18.6–7; Mekilta RS 87. Concerning the clouds which enveloped the camp, see text on p. 542; text on p. 579.

154. Mekilta Yitro 1, 58a–58b; Mekilta RS 87; ER 5, 30; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 18.6; Tan. Yitro 6. See also Zohar II, 69b (Jethro brought his sons with him to make them proselytes to Judaism); Lekah Exod. 18.5, whose text of the Mekilta seems to have been different from ours. On the idea of attracting proselytes by kindness, see the remarks of Tan. B. I, 63–64; DZ 1 (=Yalkut I, 213); *Batte Midrashot* I, 45a. The Midrash quoted by R. Jacob of Coucy, SMG, positive precept 10, and negative precept 116, is identical with Tan., *loc. cit.*

155. Mekilta Yitro 1, 58b; Mekilta RS 87 (the sentence about the importance of peace is taken from Perek

ha-Shalom; comp. *Reshit Hokmah* end, who quotes it from that source), BHM III, 129.

156. Mekilta Yitro 1, 58b–59a; Mekilta RS 87–88; Sanhedrin 94a; Tan. B. II, 71–72; Tan. Yitro 7; Targum Yeru-shalmi Exod. 18.8–11; Zohar II, 5a. Concerning the manna, the well, and the six gifts promised to Israel, see text on pp. 570, 571, and note 132. Philo, *De Ebriet.*, 11, seems likewise to assert that Jethro did not become a proselyte to Judaism prior to his visit to Moses. Comp. the different view found in DR 2.26, and text on p. 719, according to which Jethro had abandoned idolatry even before Moses came to Midian. Mekilta and Sanhedrin 94a seem to assume that Jethro's visit to Moses took place immediately after the Exodus, even before the crossing of the Red Sea; see note 151. As to the impossibility of escaping from Egypt, see note 3; Zohar III, 212a (the magic of Balaam made it impossible for anyone to escape); Shu'aib Wa-Era, 26d.

157. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 3.1.

158. Mekilta Yitro 2, 59a; Mekilta RS 88; Sifre D., 38; Midrash Tannaim 30; Kiddushin 32b.

159. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 3.1.

## THE INSTALLATION OF ELDERS

Jethro, who had come to Moses shortly before the revelation on Mount Sinai, stayed with his son-in-law for more than a year. In the first months, however, he had no opportunity of observing Moses in the capacity of judge, for Moses spent the time from the day of the revelation to the tenth day of Tishri almost entirely in heaven. Hence Jethro could not be present at a court proceeding of his before the eleventh day of Tishri, the first day after Moses' return from heaven. Jethro now perceived how Moses sat like a king upon his throne, while the people, who brought their lawsuits before him stood around him. This so displeased him that he said to his son-in-law: "Why sittest thou thyself alone, and all the people stand by thee from morning until even?" Moses answered: "Because the people come unto me to enquire of God. It is not in my honor that they stand, but in honor of God,



whose judgment they would know. When they are in doubt over a case of clean or unclean, or when there is a dispute between two parties, which they desire to have settled exactly according to the law, or in conformity with a compromise, they come to me; and when the parties at dispute leave me, they part as friends and no longer as enemies. I expound to the people, besides, the words of God and His decisions.”

On the day that Moses again took up his activity as a judge, and Jethro had for the first time the chance of observing him, came the mixed multitude with the plea that they, like the other Israelites, wanted their share in the Egyptian booty. Moses’ method, first seen by him in practice,<sup>160</sup> struck Jethro as most absurd, and he therefore said: “The thing that thou doest is not good,” through delicacy softening his real opinion, “It is bad” to “It is not good.”<sup>161</sup> “The people,” he continued, “will surely upbraid thee and Aaron, his two sons Nadab and Abihu, and the seventy elders, if thou continuest in this fashion. But if thou hearkenest now to my voice, thou wilt fare well, provided God approves of my plan. This is, that thou shalt be ‘the vessel of the revelations of God,’ and shalt lay the revelations of God before the people, as often as thou receivest them; so that they may understand the exposition of the Torah, as well as its decisions. And thou shalt instruct them how to pray in the synagogues, how to tend the sick, how to bury their dead, how to render the services of friendship to one another, how to practice justice, and how, in some cases, not to insist on strict justice. But as for trying the people as a judge, thou shouldst, in accordance with thy prophetic insight, choose men that are possessed of wisdom, fear of God, modesty; hate of covetousness, love of truth, love of humanity, and good name, and these shall devote all their time to trial and to the study of the Torah. If God approve my plan then wilt thou and Aaron, his sons and the sev-

enty elders, and all the people dwell in peace.”<sup>162</sup>

This counsel of Jethro’s found great favor in Moses’ eyes, for he had been only too well aware of the difficulties and annoyances with which he had had to contend. The people were very disputatious, being willing to spend seventy silverlings in litigation costs for the sake of gaining one silverling, and did their utmost to lengthen their disputes at law. When one saw that Moses was about to cast a decision against him, he demanded that his lawsuit be adjourned, declaring that he had witnesses and other proofs, which he would bring forward on the next occasion. But they were not merely litigious and disputatious, they were also spiteful, and vented their temper on Moses. If Moses went out early, they would say: “Behold the son of Amram, who betakes himself early to the gathering of manna, that he may get the largest grains.” If he went out late, they would say: “Behold the son of Amram, he ate and drank, and hence slept so long, that he had to get up late.” If he went through the thick of the multitude, they said: “Behold the son of Amram, he goes through the multitude, to gather in marks of honor.” But if he chose a path aside from the crowd, they said: “Behold the son of Amram, who makes it impossible for us to follow the simple commandment, to honor a sage.” Then Moses said: “If I did this you were not content, and if I did that you were not content! I can no longer bear you alone. ‘The Eternal, your God, hath multiplied you, and behold, ye are this day as the stars of heaven for multitude. The Lord, God of your fathers, make you a thousand times so many as ye are, and bless you, as he hath promised you!’ ”

The Israelites were not content with this blessing of Moses, and said to him: “O our teacher Moses, we do not desire thee to bless us, we have had much greater blessings given to us. God spoke to our father Abraham: ‘I will bless thee



and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore,' and thou dost limit our blessing." Moses cried: "I am only a creature of flesh and blood, limited in my powers, hence is my blessing limited. I give you my blessing, but the blessing of God remains preserved for ye, and He will bless you unlimitedly, and multiply you as the fish of the sea and the sands on the seashore, as the stars in the sky and the plants on the earth."<sup>163</sup>

After he had bestowed his blessing upon them, he asked them to propose capable and pious men, that he might appoint them as judges and leaders over them. He said: "If a man were to present himself to me as a candidate for this position of honor, I alone should not be able to decide to what tribe he belonged, and whence he came; but you know them, and hence it is advisable for you to propose them. Do not think, however, that I feel I must abide by your choice, for it depends solely upon me, whether or not I shall appoint them."

The people were very eager to carry this plan of Moses into execution, and requested him to settle the matter as quickly as possible. But their motive was self-interested, for every one among them said: "Moses will now appoint about eighty thousand officials. If I myself should not be among them, surely my son will be, and if not he, my grandson, and with a gift of some kind it will be an easy matter to induce such a judge to look after my interests at court." Moses, of course, was not deceived about their true sentiments; still, he paid no further attention to them, and picked out the best men among the people, though they were not possessed of nearly all the good qualities Jethro had thought essential for judges and leaders of the people. With kindly words he invited them to assume their offices, and said: "Blessed are ye that are judged worthy of being leaders of the children of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, of a people whom God

called His friends, His brothers, His dock, and other title, of love." He impressed upon them that they must possess much patience, and must not become impatient if a lawsuit is brought before them more than once. "Heretofore," he said, "you belonged to yourselves, but from now you belong to the people; for you judge between every man, and his brother and his neighbor. If ye are to appoint judges, do so without respect of persons. Do not say, 'I will appoint that man because he is a handsome man or a strong man, because he is my kinsman, or because he is a linguist.' Such judges will declare the innocent guilty and the guilty innocent, not through wickedness, but through ignorance; and God will reckon the appointment of such judges against you, as a perversion of justice, on account of your respect of persons. If a wealthy man and a poor man come before you to court, do not say: 'Why should I insult a rich man for so small a matter? I will rather give judgment in his favor, and then, outside the court, tell him to give the poor man what he demands, as he is in the right.' But do not, on the other hand, if the poor man is in the wrong, say: 'The rich man is obliged to assist the poor anyhow, I will now decide in favor of the poor, that in a decent way he may, without begging, obtain money from his rich fellow-man.' Do not, moreover, say: 'I fear to pronounce judgment, lest that man kill my son, burn my barn, or destroy my plants,' for the judgment is God's."

After these admonitions, Moses instructed the new judges in legal procedure, in both civil and criminal cases, and at the same time urged the people not to deny the judges the veneration due them.<sup>164</sup> For great is the importance of justice. For him who hates it, there is no remedy; but the judge who decides conscientiously is the true peacemaker, for the weal of Israel, of the commonwealth, and indeed of all living creatures.<sup>165</sup>



160. Lekah, Exod. 18.13; comp. also Pa'aneah *ad loc.*

161. Lekah Exod. 18.17.

162. Mekilta Yitro 2, 59b–60a; Mekilta RS 89–90. Concerning the seven qualifications of a judge, see Maimonides, *Yad, Sanhedrin*, 2.7 who very likely made use of an old source. Comp. Midrash Tannaim 95.

163. Sifre D., 11–13; Midrash Tannaim 6–8. Compare with pp. 695, *seq.*, where the appointment of the seventy elders is described by the Haggadah in accordance with the rules governing the appointment of judges.—The appellative “son of Amram” is a derogatory one; see text on pp. 613, 618, 655, 656, 710, 724, 733, 734, 757, 779–780, 808, 826, 835, 836; text on pp. 1078 and 1080. Tephillim 11, 45, and BaR 18.7 cite the scripture passages where David is called “son of Jesse”, and remark that those who spoke of him in this manner intended to slight him. See also I Maccabees 16.15.—On the blessing of Moses see text on pp. 661 and 819.

164. Sifre D., 13–17; Midrash Tannaim 7–10. As to the number of the judges and officers, see Sanhedrin, Mishnah 1 (end); Babli 17b–18a; text on p. 779, and text on p. 922. The number one hundred and twenty in Acts 1.15 is to be explained in accordance with Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.* Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 4.1, in contrast to the view of the Rabbis, maintains that the people had to ratify the appointment made by Moses; but the Rabbis are of opinion that the people acted only in the capacity of advisers. Comp. also Philo, *Moses*, I, 29; text on p. 641. In the tannaitic sources quoted above (as well as in ‘Erubin 100b; Alphabet R. Akiba 19; ShR 30.10; DR 1.10; Midrash Tannaim 95) it is stated that Moses did not succeed in finding men for office who combined all these qualifications (on the nature of these qualifications, see above note 162 and Hashkem 7–10) of the ideal judge as described by Jethro. On the respect due to a judge, see text on p. 679.

165. Mekilta RS 90–91, which is very likely taken from a version of Perek ha-Shalom different from ours; see Perek ha-Shalom in *Reshit Hokmah*, end(=BHM III, 125). See also Midrash Tannaim 97; Hashkem 5a–5b.

## JETHRO REWARDED

Although the installation of elders on Moses' part came to pass in accordance with the command of God, still it was Jethro upon whose advice Moses besought God to lighten his bur-

den, and to permit him partly to transfer the leadership of the people to others.<sup>166</sup> Hence he did not conceal the name of this adviser, but announced it to all the people, and immortalized him as such in the Holy Scriptures; for he deemed it praiseworthy to appreciate duly the merits of others.<sup>167</sup> It had, however, been part of God's scheme to reward Jethro for the love he bore the Torah; and for this reason did He allow it to come to pass that Moses had to have his attention called to the plan of installing the elders through his father-in-law, that the Holy Scriptures might devote a whole chapter to the plan of Jethro.<sup>168</sup>

This, however, is not the only reward for Jethro's piety, who, in his love for the Torah, excelled all proselytes. A miracle occurred on the very first day of his arrival in camp, for manna in his honor descended at the noon hour, the hour of his arrival; and, moreover, in as great quantities as was wont to rain down for sixty myriads of Israelites. He did not have to exert himself to gather the food, for it came over his body, so all he had to do was to carry his hand to his mouth to partake of it.<sup>169</sup> Jethro, nevertheless, did not remain with Moses, but returned to his native land. Moses, of course, tried to persuade his father-in-law to stay. He said to him: “Do not think that we shall continue to move thus slowly through the desert, nay, we shall now move directly to the promised land.” Only to urge Jethro to stay longer with them did Moses use the words “*we* move,” so that his father-in-law might believe that Moses too would enter the promised land, for otherwise he would hardly have allowed himself to be persuaded to join the march to Palestine. Moses continued: “I do not want to mislead thee, hence I will tell thee that the land will be divided only among the twelve tribes, and that thou hast no claim to possession of lands; but God bade us be kind to the proselytes, and to thee we shall be kinder



than to all other proselytes.” Jethro, however, was not to be persuaded by his son-in-law, considering himself in duty bound to return to his native land. For the inhabitants of his city had for many years made a habit of having him store their valuables, as none possessed their confidence in such a measure as he. If he had stayed still longer with Moses, people would have declared that he had absconded with all these things and fled to Moses to share it with him, and that would have been a blot on his fair name and that of Moses. Jethro had furthermore made many debts during the year in which he came to Moses, for, owing to the hail God had sent upon Egypt before the exodus of Israel, a great famine had arisen in Jethro’s home too, and he had found himself obliged to lend money for the support of the poor. If he were not now to return to his home, people would say that he had run away in order to evade his creditors, and such talk concerning a man of piety would have been desecration of the Divine Name. So he said to Moses: “There are people who have a fatherland but no property there; there are also property-holders who have no family; but I have a fatherland, and have property there as well as a family; hence I desire to return to my fatherland, my property, and my family.” But Moses would not yield so soon, and said to his father-in-law: “If thou dost not accompany us as a favor, I will command thee to do so, that the Israelites might not say thou hadst been converted to our religion only in the expectation of receiving a share in the promised land, but hadst returned to thy home when thou didst discover that proselytes have no claim on property in the Holy Land. Through thy refusal to move with us, thou wilt give the heathens an opportunity to say that the Jews do not accept proselytes, since they did not accept even their own king’s father-in-law, but allowed him to return to his own land. Thy refusal will injure the glory of God, for the hea-

thens will keep away from the true faith. But if thou wilt wander with us, I assure thee that thy seed shall share with us the Temple, the Torah, and the future reward of the pious. How canst thou, moreover, who hast seen all the miracles God wrought for us during the march through the desert; who wert a witness of the way in which even the Egyptians became fond of us—how canst thou now depart from us? It is a sufficient motive for thee to remain with us, in order to officiate as a member of the Sanhedrin, and teach the Torah. We, on our part, want to retain thee, only that thou mightest in difficult cases enlighten our eyes; for thou wert the man who gave us good and fair counsel, to which God Himself could not refuse His assent.” Jethro replied: “A candle may glow in the dark, but not when the sun and the moon shed their rays. Thou art the sun, and Aaron the moon; of what avail would my candle-light be! I had, therefore, better return to my home city that I may make proselytes of its inhabitants, instruct them in the Torah, and lead them under the wings of the Shekinah.” Amid great marks of honor, and provided with rich gifts, Jethro returned to his home, where he converted his kinsmen and his compatriots to the belief in the true God, as he had intended.<sup>170</sup>

The descendants of Jethro later settled in Palestine, where the fruitful land of Jericho was allotted to them as a dwelling place. After the capture of Palestine, the tribes, by mutual consent, agreed that the fertile strip of land at Jericho should fall to the share of the tribe on whose land the Temple was to be erected. But when its erection was postponed for a long time, they agreed to allot this piece of land to Jethro’s sons, because they, being proselytes, had no other possession in the Holy Land. Four hundred and eighty years did the descendants of Jethro dwell in Jericho, when, upon the erection of the Temple at Jerusalem, they relinquished it to the tribe



of Judah, who claimed it as an indemnity for the site of the Temple.<sup>171</sup>

Jethro's descendants inherited his devotion to the Torah, like him dedicating their lives entirely to its study. So long as Joshua lived, they sat at this master's feet, but when he died, they said: "We left our fatherland and came here only for the sake of studying the Torah; if we were now to spend our time in cultivating the soil, when should we study the Torah?" They therefore gave up their dwelling-place in Jericho and moved to the cold and barren wilderness, to Jabez, who there had his house of instruction. But when they there beheld the priests, the Levites, and the noblest of the Jews, they said, "How can we, proselytes, presume to sit beside these?" Instead of sitting within the house of instruction, they remained at the entrance of it, where they listened to the lectures, and in this manner made further progress in the study of the Torah.<sup>172</sup> They were rewarded for their piety, their prayer was heard by God, and their good deeds served as a protection to Israel; and on account of their pious actions they were called "the families of the scribes," the Tirathites, the Shimeathites, and the Suchathites, names designating their piety and devotion to the Torah.

One of the descendants of Jethro was Jonadab, son of Rechab, who, when he heard from a prophet that God would destroy the Temple, bade all his children, as a token of mourning, to drink no wine, use no oil for anointing themselves, nor cut their hair, nor dwell in houses. The Rechabites obeyed this command of their sire, and as a reward for this, God made a covenant with them that their descendants should always be members of the Sanhedrin, and teachers of Israel. The covenant with the Rechabites was even stronger than that with David, for to the house of the latter God promised to keep the covenant only if his descendants were pious, but He made an unconditional covenant with

the Rechabites. God rewarded them for their devotion to Him in this way, although they did not belong to the Jewish nation. From this one can gather how great would have been their reward if they had been Israelites.<sup>173</sup>

---

166. Mekilta Yitro 2, 60a, the text of which is to be corrected in accordance with Mekilta RS 91.

167. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 4.2.

168. Sifre N., 78 and 80. See a similar remark with regard to the daughters of Zelaphehad in text on p. 786.

169. Tehillim 78, 345–346; compare with p. 571. Concerning Jethro's love for the Torah, see Sifre N., 78; Tan. Yitro 4; Sifre Z., 74; Mekilta RS 91.

170. Sifre N., 78–80; Sifre Z., 76–78; Mekilta Yitro 2, 60a; Mekilta RS 91; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 18.27. Moses is described as king (of Israel) not only in the Midrashim quoted above, but also in many other passages; compare with pp. 639, 641, 661, 662, 696, 718, 719, 723, 725, 776, 820. See also Midrash Tannaim 213; Tan. Beshallah 2; Tehillim 1,3, where Deut. 33.5 is referred to Moses, who is thus described as "king in Jeshurun." The Hellenistic writers Demetrius and Philo, as well as Justus of Tiberias, call Moses the king of the Jews; see Schürer, *Geschichte* (third edition) IV, 449. Comp. also Ibn Ezra on Gen. 35.31.—Tosefta Bikkurim 1.2 and Yerushalmi 1, 64a, maintain that the descendants of Jethro enjoyed the legal status of pure blooded Israelites and not of proselytes. Comp. note 783.

171. Sifre N., 81, and D., 52; Sifre Z., 70; ARN 35, 105; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 10.32; Midrash Tannaim 5; Mekilta Deut. 5. In the text (text on p. 589, end of first paragraph) Benjamin is to be read instead of Judah.

172. Sifre Z., 76–77; Sifre N., 78, and D., 352; Mekilta Yitro 2, 60a; Mekilta RS 91–92 (the descendants of Jethro abandoned their lucrative enterprises, and devoted themselves to the study of the Torah supporting themselves by making pottery; comp. ARN 35, 105); Temurah 16a. Compare with p. 860.

173. Mekilta Yitro 2, 60b; Mekilta RS 91–92; Sifre N., 78; Sifre Z., 77; Tan. Wa-Yakhel 8; PR 40, 167b. In Mekilta RS 85 Jonadab the Rechabite is censured for his friendship with Jehu (see 2 Kings 10.15, *seq.*) but the text is very likely corrupt. The parallel passage in ARN 9, 42 (second version 17, 36) proves that it is Jonadab the nephew of David (see 2 Sam. 13.3) who is described in the Mekilta as wise but wicked. For further details concerning the descendants of Jethro see text on p. 776.—The Holy Land, the Temple, and the Davidic kingdom were given to the Israelites conditionally, and they lost them as soon as they



sinned; but the Torah, the priesthood, and the distinction of being called the Children of God were conferred upon the Israelites unconditionally. Israel therefore retained the latter gifts forever. See Midrash Tannaim 39–40 and Ozar Midrashim I, 38–39 (read קריאת); but Mekilta Yitro 2, 60b, and Tehillim 132, 516, do not know of the last-named gift.

## THE TIME IS AT HAND

Moses sent his father-in-law Jethro back to his home, shortly before the revelation on Mount Sinai. He thought: “When God gave us a single commandment of the Torah in Egypt, the Passover, He said, ‘There shall no stranger eat thereof.’ Surely Jethro may not look on when God bestows on us the whole Torah.” Moses was right: God did not want Jethro to be present at the revelation. He said: “Israel was in Egypt, bound to work with clay and bricks, at the same time as Jethro was sitting at home in peace and quiet. He who suffers with the community shall share their future joys, but he who does not share the sufferings of the community shall not take part in their rejoicing.”<sup>174</sup>

God had not only good cause to delay the giving of the Torah until after the departure of Jethro, but the time He chose for bestowing it was also chosen for a good reason. Just as a female proselyte, or a woman freed from captivity, or an emancipated slave, may not enter wedlock before she has for three months lived as a free Jewess, so God also waited three months after the deliverance of Israel from the bondage and the slavery of Egypt, before His union with Israel on Mount Sinai.<sup>175</sup> God furthermore treated His bride as did that king who went to the marriage ceremony only after he had overwhelmed his chosen bride with many gifts. So did Israel first receive manna, the well, and the quails, and not till then was the Torah granted them. Moses,

who had received this promise when God had first appeared to him, viz., “When thou hast brought forth the people out of Egypt, ye shall serve God upon this mountain”—waited most longingly for the promised time, saying, “When will this time come to pass?” When the time drew near, God said to Moses, “The time is at hand when I shall bring about something entirely new.”

This new miracle of which God spoke was the healing of all the sick among the Jews. God had wanted to give the Torah to the Jews immediately after the exodus from Egypt, but among them were found many that were lame, halt, or deaf; wherefore God said: “The Torah is without a blemish, hence would I not bestow it on a nation that has in it such as are burdened with defects. Nor do I want to wait until their children shall have grown to manhood, for I do not desire any longer to delay the delight of the Torah.” For these reasons nothing was left Him to do, but to heal those afflicted with disease. In the time between the exodus from Egypt and the revelation on Mount Sinai, all the blind among the Israelites regained their sight, all the halt became whole, so that the Torah might be given to a sound and healthy people. God wrought for that generation the same miracle which He will hereafter bring about in the future world, when “the eyes of the blind shall be opened, the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped, the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongues of the dumb sing.”<sup>176</sup> Not only physically was this generation free from blemishes, but spiritually, too, it stood on a high plane, and it was the combined merits of such a people that made them worthy of their high calling. Never before or after lived a generation as worthy as this of receiving the Torah. Had there been but one missing, God would not have given them the Torah: “for He layeth up wisdom for the righteous; He is a buckler to them that walk uprightly.”<sup>177</sup>



For one other reason did God delay the revelation of the Torah. He had intended giving them the Torah immediately after their exodus from Egypt, but at the beginning of the march through the desert, great discord reigned among them. Nor was harmony established until the new moon of the third month, when they arrived at Mount Sinai; whereupon God said: "The ways of the Torah are ways of loveliness, and all its paths are paths of peace; I will yield the Torah to a nation that dwells in peace and amity."<sup>178</sup> This decision of God, now to give them the Torah, also shows how mighty is the influence of penance. For they had been sinful upon their arrival at Mount Sinai, continuing to tempt God and doubting His omnipotence. After a short time, however, they changed in spirit; and hardly had they reformed, when God found them worthy of revealing to them the Torah.

The third month was chosen for the revelation, because everything that is closely connected with the Torah and with Israel is triple in number. The Torah consists of three parts, the Pentateuch, the Prophets, and the Hagiographa; similarly the oral law consists of Midrash, Halakah, and Haggadah. The communications between God and Israel were carried on by three, Moses, Aaron, and Miriam. Israel also is divided into three divisions, priests, Levites, and laymen; and they are, furthermore, the descendants of the three Patriarchs, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. For God has a preference for "the third": It was the third of Adam's sons, Seth, who became the ancestor of humanity, and so too it was the third among Noah's sons, Shem, who attained high station. Among the Jewish kings, too, it was the third, Solomon, whom God distinguished before all others. The number three plays a particularly important part in the life of Moses. He belonged to the tribe of Levi, which is not only the third of the tribes, but has a name consisting of three letters. He himself was the third of the

children of the family; his own name consists of three letters; in his infancy he had been concealed by his mother throughout three months; and in the third month of the year, after a preparation of three days, did he receive the Torah on a mountain, the name of which consists of three letters.<sup>179</sup>

---

174. Tan. B. II, 74–75; PK 12, 103b and 106a; see also Midrash Aggada Exod. 18.27. A conflicting view maintains that Jethro's visit to Moses took place before the revelation on Sinai; see note 151.

175. PK 12, 106a; Tan. B. II, 75. Medieval authorities quote the following legend from an unknown Midrash. While the Israelites were still in Egypt it was announced to them that fifty days after the exodus from Egypt the Torah would be revealed unto them. As soon as they were redeemed from bondage, they were so eager for the arrival of the promised day that they began to count the days, saying each day: "Now we have one day less to wait for the revelation of the Torah." To commemorate this counting, the Torah has prescribed to count the days from Passover to the Feast of Weeks (comp. Lev. 13.15–16), the so-called "Counting of the 'Omer". See Shibbole ha-Leket 210, 236; Orehot Hayyim 84a, 5; Abudrahim, Sefirat ha-'Omer; Shu'aib I, Pesah, 51c; Sabba, Emor 104c; comp. also R. Bahya Exod. 3.12.

176. PK 12, 104a and 106a–107a; Tan. B. II, 75–76; Shir 2.5; BHM 6.45; compare with p. 542, and text on p. 675. The Torah is personified in the legend, which accordingly narrates that the Torah rejoiced in the fact that it would be given to Israel. See text on p. 662.

177. Mekilta Rs 97; Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 64a (on the number of Israelites necessary in order that the Shekinah might dwell in their midst, to which reference is made in the Mekilta, see also Sifre N., 84; Yebamot 64a; Ketubot 17a; Baba Kamma 83a); Tan. Yitro 9; Tehillim 119, 490; Semahot 7; DR 7.8; WR 13.2; BR 70.9; PR, 198a–198b; ER 23, 124–24, 125; Zohar II, 78b, and III, 22b. Just as the "recipients of the Torah" and the place of its revelation were predestined and selected for various reasons, even so was the time of the revelation. The Torah was to remain in heaven for a thousand generations after the creation (see Ps. 105.8), and in view of the fact that "nine hundred and seventy-four generations" had elapsed before Adam was created (see footnote 5 on p. 1), the time of Moses, the twenty-sixth generation after Adam, was the proper time for the revelation. See Zebachim 116a; Shabbat 88a; Tan., *loc. cit.*; Tehillim 105, 449; Aggadat Bereshit 49, 100; BR 28.4 and the numerous parallel passages cited by Theodor



on “the thousand generations”. Concerning the generation of the revelation, see also text on pp. 612 and 734.—The time that elapsed from the creation till the revelation was the “time of Grace”, since mankind without the Torah as a guide could only be sustained by the grace of God. See Pesahim 118a; Tehillim 136, 519.

178. PR 12, 106b, Tan. B. II, 74; BHM VI, 40; Ekah (פתיחתא) 20; Mekilta Bahodesh 1, 62a; Mekilta RS 94; Targum Yerushalmi 19.2; WR 9.9; PRE 41.

179. PK 12, 105a–105b (אותיותיה קשולשות) “the number of the letters of the Hebrew alphabet are divisible by three”, since it amounts to twenty-seven; Tan. B. II, 73; Tan. Yitro 10; Midrash ‘Aseret ha-Dibrot 41–42.

## THE GENTILES REFUSE THE TORAH

**T**he mountain on which God made his revelation bears six names: It is called the Desert Sin, because God there announced His commandments; it is called the Desert Kadesh, because Israel was sanctified there; the Desert Kadmut because the pre-existing Torah was there revealed; the Desert Paran because Israel there was greatly multiplied; the Desert Sinai because the hatred of God against the heathens began there, for the reason that they would not accept the Torah; and for this same reason is it called Horeb, because the annihilation of the heathens was there decreed by God.<sup>180</sup> For the wrath of God against the heathens dates from their refusal to accept the Torah offered them.

Before God gave Israel the Torah, He approached every tribe and nation, and offered them the Torah, that hereafter they might have no excuse to say, “Had the Holy One, blessed be He, desired to give us the Torah, we should have accepted it.” He went to the children of Esau and said, “Will ye accept the Torah?” They answered Him, saying, “What is written therein?” He answered them, “Thou shalt not kill.” Then they all said: “Wilt Thou perchance take from us the blessing with which our father Esau was blessed? For he was blessed with the words, ‘By

thy sword shalt thou live.’ We do not want to accept the Torah.” Thereupon He went to the children of Lot and said to them, “Will ye accept the Torah?” They said, “What is written therein?” He answered, “Thou shalt not commit unchastity.” They said: “From unchastity do we spring; we do not want to accept the Torah.” Then He went to the children of Ishmael and said to them, “Do ye want to accept the Torah?” They said to Him, “What is written therein?” He answered, “Thou shalt not steal.” They said: “Wilt Thou take from us the blessing with which our father was blessed? God promised him: ‘His hand will be against every man.’ We do not want to accept Thy Torah.” Thence He went to all the other nations, who likewise rejected the Torah, saying: “We cannot give up the law of our fathers, we do not want Thy Torah, give it to Thy people Israel.” Upon this He came to Israel and spoke to them, “Will ye accept the Torah?” They said to Him, “What is written therein?” He answered, “Six hundred and thirteen commandments.” They said: “All that the Lord has spoken will we do and be obedient.”<sup>181</sup> “O Lord of the world!” they continued, “We acted in accordance with Thy commandments before they were revealed to us. Jacob fulfilled the first of the Ten Commandments by bidding his sons put away the strange gods that were among them. Abraham obeyed the commandment not to take the name of the Lord in vain, for he said: ‘I have lifted up mine hand unto the Lord, the most high God.’ Joseph fulfilled the commandment to remember the Sabbath and keep it holy; and when his brothers came to him, he had everything for their welcome prepared on Friday. Isaac observed the law to honor his father and his mother, when he allowed Abraham to bind him on the altar as a sacrifice. Judah observed the commandment not to kill when he said to his brothers, ‘What profit is it if we slay our brother and conceal his blood?’ Joseph observed the law:



‘Thou shalt not commit adultery,’ when he repulsed the desire of the wife of Potiphar. The other sons of Jacob observed the commandment: ‘Thou shalt not steal,’ saying: ‘How then should we steal out of thy lord’s house silver and gold?’ Abraham observed the commandment: ‘Thou shalt not bear false witness.’ for he was a true witness, and bore witness before all the world that Thou art the Lord of all creation. It was Abraham, also, who observed the last of the Ten Commandments: ‘Thou shalt not covet,’ saying: ‘I will not take from a thread even to a shoe-latchet.’”<sup>182</sup>

180. Shabbat 89a–89b; BHM VI, 90; Lekah, Exod. 19.18; Tan. IV, 7; Shir 4.4. Compare with p. 500.

181. Sifre D., 343, 142b; Midrash Tannaim 210; Mekilta Bahodesh 5, 67a, and 1, 62a; Mekilta RS 93; ‘Abodah Zarah 2b; ER 24, 122; EZ 11, 192; Hashkem 2b; WR 13.2; PK 5, 43b and 32, 199b–200a; PR 33, 142a; ‘Aseret ha-Dibrot 68; Tan. B. III, 28, and V, 54–55; Tan. Berakah 4; Sifre D., 311; Baba Kamma 38a; Ekah 6.123; BHM VI 39; Zohar II, 91b, and 191a–192b; 4 Ezra 7.2–210; Apocalypse of Baruch 48, 40; ps.-Jerome, *Quaestiones in Jud.* 5.4–5. The idea underlying this widespread legend is that the heathen nations showed their unfitness to take upon themselves the yoke of the Torah by their immoral and lawless conduct, which knew no restraint, not even the seven restrictions imposed upon the children of Noah (see Index, s.v. “Noachian Laws”), which are the minimum of laws necessary for the maintenance of civilization. The people of the Torah is at the same time the boldest among the nations (as the dog is the boldest among the animals and the cock among the birds), ready to repel all attacks upon its teachings and doctrines; see Yom Tob 25b. Rashi, *ad loc.*, takes this talmudic passage to mean that Israel was given the Torah, in order that, by its discipline, it might soften the “hardness” of the people that is the “hardest” among the nations. This idea, though somewhat common in the rabbinic sources and in the New Testament (see e.g. Gal. 3.24), cannot be read into the passage of Yom Tob, *loc. cit.*—The six hundred and thirteen precepts of the Torah are frequently mentioned in the Talmudim and Midrashim, but are not found in tannaitic sources. Sifre D., 76 (מִצְוֹת ג) refers to the three verses of Deut. 12.23–25 which contains the prohibition against the use of blood, and is not to be emended to תְּרִיג מִצְוֹת, as is done by Friedmann, *ad loc.*, while in the parallel passage (Midrash

Tannaim 53) the word מִצְוֹת after נ” is to be stricken out. In Mekilta Beshallah 5, 57a, תְּרִיג מִצְוֹת is a later addition, as may be seen from the parallel passage in Sifre D., 343. MHG I, 226, has תְּרִיג מִצְוֹת in the dictum of the Tanna R. Eliezer the son of R. Jose ha-Galili.—Concerning the refusal of the nations to accept the Torah see also text on pp. 670, 751, 820, and text on p. 1079.

182. Abkir in Yalkut I, 276; BHM VI, 40–41; ER 6,35, where Adam and Noah, too, are cited as examples of piety. On Joseph, see text on p. 429, and text on p. 668.

## THE CONTEST OF THE MOUNTAINS

While the nations and peoples were refusing to accept the Torah, the mountains among themselves were fighting for the honor of being chosen as the spot for the revelation. One said: “Upon me shall the Shekinah of God rest, and mine shall be this glory,” whereupon the other mountain replied: “Upon me shall the Shekinah rest, and mine shall be this glory.” The mountain Tabor said to the mountain Hermon: “Upon me shall the Shekinah rest, mine shall be this glory, for in times of old, when in the days of Noah the flood came over the earth, all the mountains that are under the heavens were covered with water, whereas it did not reach my head, nay, not even my shoulder. All the earth was sunk under water, but I, the highest of the mountains, towered high above the waters, hence I am called upon to bear the Shekinah.” Mount Hermon replied to Mount Tabor: “Upon me shall the Shekinah rest, I am the destined one, for when Israel wished to pass through the Red Sea, it was I who enabled them to do so, for I settled down between the two shores of the sea, and they moved from one side to the other, through my aid, so that not even their clothes became wet.” Mount Carmel was quite silent, but settled down on the shore of the sea, thinking: “If the Shekinah is to repose on the sea, it



will rest upon me, and if it is to repose on the mainland, it will rest upon me.” Then a voice out of the high heavens rang out and said: “The Shekinah shall not rest upon these high mountains that are so proud, for it is not God’s will that the Shekinah should rest upon high mountains that quarrel among themselves and look upon one another with disdain. He prefers the low mountains, and Sinai among these, because it is the smallest and most insignificant of all. Upon it will He let the Shekinah rest.”<sup>183</sup> The other mountains hereupon said to God, “Is it possible that Thou art partial, and wilt give us no reward for our good intention?” God replied: “Because ye have striven in My honor will I reward ye. Upon Tabor will I grant aid to Israel at the time of Deborah, and upon Carmel will I give aid to Elijah.”<sup>184</sup>

Mount Sinai was given the preference not for its humility alone, but also because upon it there had been no worshipping of idols; whereas the other mountains, owing to their height, had been employed as sanctuaries by the idolaters.<sup>185</sup> Mount Sinai has a further significance, too, for it had been originally a part of Mount Moriah, on which Isaac was to have been sacrificed; but Sinai separated itself from it, and came to the desert. Then God said: “Because their father Isaac lay upon this mountain, bound as a sacrifice, it is fitting that upon it his children receive the Torah.” Hence God now chose this mountain for a brief stay during the revelation, for after the Torah had been bestowed, He withdrew again to heaven. In the future world, Sinai will return to its original place, Mount Moriah, when “the mountain of the Lord’s house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills.”<sup>186</sup>

Just as Sinai was chosen as the spot for the revelation, owing to its humility, so likewise was Moses. When God said to Moses, “Go, deliver Israel,” he in his great humility, said: “Who am I

that I should go to Pharaoh and lead the children of Israel out of Egypt? There are nobler and wealthier than I.” But God replied: “Thou art a great man, thee have I chosen out of all Israel. Of thee shall the prophet of the future say, ‘I have laid help upon one that is mighty; I have exalted one chosen out of the people.’” Moses in his humility, however, still stood apart and would not accept the office offered him, until God said to him: “Why dost thou stand apart? If they are not to be delivered by thee, by none other will they be delivered.” When, likewise, at God’s command Moses had erected the Tabernacle, he did not enter it, out of great humility, until God said to him, “Why dost thou stand outside? Thou art worthy to serve Me.”<sup>187</sup>

---

183. Targum and Tosefta Targum Jud. 5.5; Targum Ps. 68.16–17; BR 99.1; Tehillim 68, 318; PR 7, 27a; Mekilta Bahodesh 5, 66b; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 47, and in Makiri Prov. 29, 85b; ‘Aseret ha-Dibrot 66. On the reward of “the modest Sinai”, see also text on p. 729.

184. Tehillim 68, 318; compare with p. 994. In the time to come God will cause the heavenly Jerusalem to descend upon these four mountains: Tabor, Hermon, Carmel and Sinai; see the quotation from an unknown Midrash (Yelam-medenu?) Makiri Is. 52, 195, and a similar statement in Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 319, on Isa. 2 (here, probably owing to a printer’s error, Hermon is missing, and the heavenly Jerusalem is substituted, as is often the case, by the Temple; see p. 280, footnote 141), as well as *Zerubbabel* (ed. Wertheimer, 12a) according to which a fifth mountain, Lebanon, is to share this glory. Comp. also Tehillim, *loc. cit.*

185. BR 99.1; compare with p. 501 on the “cleanliness” of the thorn bush. The revelation of the Torah did not take place in the land of Israel, but in the wilderness. By this God showed that the Torah was not given exclusively to Israel, but to all the inhabitants of the earth. For the same reason the Torah was not revealed secretly, but openly, in the presence of all mankind (compare with p. 600); see Mekilta Beshallah 1, 62a (פגוס=φύλαξ, “swindler”, *i.e.*, acting, in a stealthy manner), and 5, 67a; Midrash Tannaim 209. Comp. also Tan. B. IV, 7; Tan. Bemidbar 6; BaR 1.7. According to Philo, *De Decalogo*, 1, the wilderness was selected as the place for the revelation because the cities are defiled by the impious and iniquitous



conduct of men towards God and their fellows. For a similar view on the cities see footnote 181 on p. 528.

186. Tehillim 68, 318, and reference given in note 184. The explanation of the word Moriah as the place whence the teaching of God went forth (see BR 55.7, and the numerous parallel passages cited by Theodor, as well as footnote 253 on p. 231) presupposes, perhaps, the legend that originally Sinai formed part of Moriah; see Tosafot and R. Isaiah di-Trani on Ta'anit 16a.

187. 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 66 (read גְּדוּלִים...בְּמִשְׁפַּחָה); *Batte Midrashot* IV, 34; Mekilta Bahodesh 9, 72a; Sotah 5a; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 960, on Prov. 22. Different opinions are expressed as to whether Moses acted rightly or not in covering his face at the appearance of God in Horeb (see Exod. 3.6). According to one view this was an act of humility for which he was rewarded, while according to another he was punished for his reluctance to accept the distinction conferred upon him. See Berakot 7a; ShR 3.2 (and the parallel passages given on the margin). Comp. also Ecclesiasticus 50.11; text on pp. 630, 673, as well as p. 503.

## THE TORAH OFFERED TO ISRAEL

On the second day of the third month, Moses received word from God to betake himself to Mount Sinai, for without this direct summons he would not have gone there. This time, as at all times, when God desired to speak with Moses, He twice called him by name, and after he had answered, "Here I am," God's revelation to him followed.<sup>188</sup> When Moses had been carried to God in a cloud, which was always ready to bear him to God and then restore him to men, God said to him: "Go and acquaint the women of Israel with the principles of Judaism, and try with kindly words to persuade them to accept the Torah; but expound the full contents of the Torah to the men, and with them speak solemn words concerning it."

There were several reasons for his going to the women first. God said: "When I created the world, I gave My commandment concerning the forbidden fruit to Adam only, and not to his wife

Eve, and this omission had the effect that she tempted Adam to sin. Hence it appears advisable that the women first hear My commandments, and the men will then follow their counsel."<sup>189</sup> God, furthermore, knew that women are more scrupulous in their observance of religious precepts, and hence He first addressed Himself to them. Then, too, God expected the women to instruct their children in the ways of the Torah, wherefore He sent His messenger first to them.<sup>190</sup>

The words that Moses was to address to the women as well as to the men, to the Sanhedrin as well as to the people, were as follows: "You yourselves have seen—for it is not from writings, or through tradition, or from the mouths of others that ye learn it—what I did for you in Egypt; for; although they were idolaters, slayers of men, and men of lewd living, still I punished them not for these sins, but only for the wrong done to you. But ye will I carry on the wings of eagles, on the day of the revelation at Sinai, and ye will I bring to Me when the Temple shall be erected. Since I have wrought for you so many miracles, even before you had received the Torah and observed the laws, how many more miracles will I work for you, when you will have received the Torah and observed the laws! The beginning of all things is hard, but as soon as you will have grown accustomed to obedience, all else will be easy for you. If you will now observe the Abrahamic covenant, the Sabbath, and the commandment against idolatry, then will you be My possession; for although everything belongs to Me, Israel will be My especial possession, because I led them out of Egypt, and freed them from bondage. With respect to Israel, God is like one who received many fields as an heritage, but one he purchased himself, and the one he earned was dearest to his heart. I will reign alone over you, as My possession, I and none other, so long as you keep yourselves aloof from other peoples. If not, other peoples shall reign over you. But if you obey Me,



you shall be a nation, not only free from care, but also a nation of priests, and a holy nation.”

If Israel had not sinned through worshipping the Golden Calf, there would be among them no caste of priests, the nation would have been a nation of priests, and it was only after their sin that the greater part of the people lost the right to priesthood.

God now instructed Moses to transmit to the people His words without adding to them or diminishing from them, in the precise order and in the same tongue, the Hebrew. Moses hereupon betook himself to the people to deliver his message, without first seeing his family. He first addressed the word of God to the elders, for he never forgot the honor due the elders. Then, in simple and well arranged form, he repeated it to all the people, including the women. Joyfully and of his own impulse, every Israelite declared himself willing to accept the Torah, whereupon Moses returned to God to inform Him of the decision of the people. For although God, being omniscient, had no need of hearing from Moses the answer of the people, still propriety demands that one who is sent on a message return to make a report of his success to him who sent him. God hereupon said to Moses: “I will come to thee in a thick cloud and repeat to thee the commandments that I gave thee on Marah, so that what thou tellest them may seem to the people as important as what they hear from Me. But not only in thee shall they have faith, but also in the prophets and sages that will come after thee.”

Moses then returned to the people once more, and explained to them the serious effects that disregard of the law would have upon them. The first time he spoke to them about the Torah, he expounded its excellencies to them, so as to induce them to accept it; but now he spoke to them of the terrible punishments they would bring upon themselves, if they did not observe the laws. The people did not, however, alter

their resolution, but were full of joy in the expectation of receiving the Torah. They only wished Moses to voice to God their desire to hear Him impart His words directly to them, so they said to Moses, “We want to hear the words of our King from Himself.” They were not even content with this, but wanted to see the Divine presence, for “hearing is not like seeing.” God granted both their wishes, and commanded Moses to tell them to prepare themselves during the next two days for receiving the Torah.<sup>191</sup>

---

188. Mekilta RS 94; Sifra 1.1; MHG II, 203; Mekilta Bahodesh 2, 62a; Shabbat 86b–88a (different opinions are given here as to whether the revelation took place on Friday, the sixth of Sivan or on the Sabbath, the seventh of that month; but all agree that **בחדש**, Exod. 19.1, means “the new moon” and not “the month”; comp. Seder ‘Olam 5, and the references given by Ratner); Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 19.2–3. Jub. 1.1, in opposition to this view, maintains that the Torah was revealed on the fifteenth of Sivan.—Concerning the distinction of the third month as compared with all the other months of the year see text on pp. 591–592, and the sources quoted in note 179, to which the following should be added: BHM VI, 40; PR 20, 95a–96a; Tan. B. II 76; PK 12, 107a. These read: The Torah was given in the month of Sivan when Gemini are in the Zodiac, to indicate that it does not belong to Israel alone, but also to his twin brother Esau (that is, the Gentiles). Comp. notes 181 and 185.

189. Mekilta RS 94 (read **אמהות** instead of **בנים**): Moses received this distinction for the sake of the fathers and the mothers; see Index s.v. “Mothers, Merits of”; ShR 25.2; 1 and 2 Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 19.3. Comp. also Shabbat 87a; Sifre N., 99; Mekilta Bahodesh 2, 62b. The statement in Mekilta RS, *loc. cit.*, that “everything” was done for the sake of Jacob is also found in Yalkut I, 276. See footnote 35 on p. 255; Index s.v. “Jacob, the Merits of.”

190. ShR 25.2; PRE 41. These sources remark: Because men do that which women wish them to do. See also Philo, *De Ebriet.* 13: Women adhere to customs.

191. Mekilta Beshallah 2–3, 62b–64b, and 9, 72a (concerning the employment of the Hebrew language by Moses, referred to in this passage, see also Sifre N., 39, and the parallel passages cited by Friedmann, as well as Mekilta D.4, where the meaningless **ובסתרים** is to be emended to **ובסדרים** “in proper order”, as in Mekilta, *loc. cit.*); Mekilta RS 94–96; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 19.4–7.



Comp. note 242. Concerning the honor due to the elders, see text on pp. 516 and 535. As to the view that God's messengers return to Him and make their report as soon as they have carried out His command, comp. Mekilta Bo (פתיחתא) 2a and Midrash Tannaim 210. Philo, *Moses*, 1.27, explains the designation of Israel as a kingdom of priests to mean that Israel works for the salvation of all mankind. A similar remark is found in Alphabet of R. Akiba 28 (ר): The righteous among the Gentiles act as the priests of God. The proverb that "hearing is not like seeing" is found also in Philo. *De Special. Leg.*, *De Judice* 2, and *De Confusione Ling.* 27. Comp. also *Vita Mosis* I, 49; Herodotus, I, 8. As to the application of this proverb to the revelation of the Torah, see PR 41, 174a; Shir 1.2. Moses went beyond that which he was commanded by God: he was asked to tell the people to observe "two days of preparation, prior to the revelation of the Torah, but he added a third day. God, however, submits to the words of the pious, and the statement of Moses was not altered. See BHM VI, 41, which, in the main, follows Shabbat 87a. Comp. note 239.

## ISRAEL PREPARES FOR THE REVELATION

Just as one who is to be admitted to Judaism must first submit to the three ceremonies of circumcision, baptism, and sacrifice, so Israel did not receive the Torah until they had performed these three ceremonies. They had already undergone circumcision in Egypt. Baptism was imposed upon them two days before the revelation on Mount Sinai. On the day preceding the revelation Moses recorded in a book the covenant between Israel and their God, and on the morning of the day of the revelation, sacrifices were offered as a strengthening of the covenant.<sup>192</sup>

As there were no priests at that time, the service was performed by the elders of Israel, who in spite of their age performed their duty with youthful vigor.<sup>193</sup> Moses erected an altar on Mount Sinai, as well as twelve memorial pillars, one for each tribe, and then bade them bring bulls, as a burnt offering and a peace offering.<sup>194</sup> The blood of these animals was then separated

exactly into two halves. This was attended to by the angel Michael, who guided Moses' hand, and so conducted the separation of the blood that there might be not a drop more in one half than in the other. God upon this said to Moses: "Sprinkle the one half of the blood upon the people, as a token that they will not barter My glory for the idols of other peoples; and sprinkle the other half on the altar, as a token that I will not exchange them for any other nation." Moses did as he was bidden, and lo! the miracle came to pass that the blood of a few animals sufficed to sprinkle every single Israelite.

Before this covenant between God and Israel had been made, Moses read aloud to the people all of the Torah, that they might know exactly what they were taking upon themselves. This covenant was made a second time in the desert of Moab by Moses, and a third time by Joshua after the entrance into the promised land, on the mountains of Gerizim and Ebal.<sup>195</sup>

Although the people had now clearly expressed their desire to accept the Torah, still God hesitated to give it to them, saying: "Shall I without further ado give you the Torah? Nay, bring Me bondsmen, that you will observe it, and I will give you the Torah." Israel: "O Lord of the world! Our fathers are bondsmen for us." God: "Your fathers are My debtors, and therefore not good bondsmen. Abraham said, 'Whereby shall I know it?' and thus proved himself lacking in faith. Isaac loved Esau, whom I hated, and Jacob did not immediately upon his return from Padan-Aram keep his vow that he had made upon his way there. Bring Me good bondsmen and I will give you the Torah." Israel: "Our prophets shall be our bondsmen." God: "I have claims against them, for 'like foxes in the deserts they became your prophets.' Bring Me good bondsmen and I will give you the Torah." Israel: "We will give Thee our children as bondsmen." God: "Well, then, these are good bondsmen, on whose bond



I will give you the Torah.” Hereupon the Israelites brought their wives with their babes at their breasts, and their pregnant wives, and God made the bodies of the pregnant women transparent as glass, and He addressed the children in the womb with these words: “Behold, I will give your fathers the Torah. Will you be surety for them that they will observe it?” They answered: “Yea.” He furthermore said: “I am your God.” They answered: “Yea.” “Ye shall have no other gods.” They said: “Nay.” In this wise the children in the womb answered every commandment with “Yea,” and every prohibition with “Nay.” As it was the little children upon whose bond God gave His people the Torah, it comes to pass that many little children die when Israel does not observe the Torah.<sup>196</sup>

192. Mekilta RS 96–97 (is this the source of Meiri, *Magen Abot*, 61?); Keritot 9a; Gerim 2; Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 63b–64a. The ablution before the revelation is also referred to by Philo, *De Decalogo*, 11; Yebamot 46a; Yerushalmi Shabbat 9, 12a.

193. Lekah Exod. 24.5; ER 9, 52. These read: The innocent youth, though not of priestly descent are worthy to offer sacrifices upon the altar. Compare with p. 601 and note 205, for the dissenting view as to who “were the priests” on that day.

194. Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 63b; Mekilta RS 96–97 (this source does not know of the view found in the Mekilta that twelve pillars were erected, one for each of the twelve tribes); Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 24.4. As for the exact nature of these sacrifices, see Hagigah 6a; Midrash Tannaim 57; Sifre N., 143.

195. Midrash Tannaim 56–57; WR 6.5, which contains the additional remarks that the angel assumed the form of Moses (probably a reminiscence of the legend, given in text on p. 487, that Michael assumed the form of Moses), and that one half of the blood became black, while the other remained red; Haserot 41 in Leket Midrashim 11. *Hadar*, Exod. 24.6, has Gabriel instead of Michael. Comp. Index under the names of these two angels. WR explicitly states that one half of the blood was sprinkled upon the people; but the tannaitic sources (Midrash Tannaim 57 and Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 63b), as well as the Targumim on Exod., *loc. cit.*, maintain that the blood was sprinkled upon the altar “to atone for the people.” It seems that the older

sources attempted to combat the Christological doctrine of the atoning power of blood, derived in Hebrews 9.19–22 from the sprinkling of the blood upon the entire people and the book. The last part of the statement is entirely unknown in rabbinic sources. The remark that “there is no atonement without blood”, made in *Hadar* in this connection, is a sacrificial law often referred to in the Halakah; see e.g., Sifra 1.4 and Yoma 5a.—Opinions differ greatly as to the nature of the book of the covenant which Moses read to the people on this occasion; see Midrash Tannaim 56 and Mekilta, *loc. cit.* As to the view that this book was the Torah (in its entirety), see 1 Macabees 1.57, where the Book of the Covenant is used as a synonym for the Torah. Concerning the covenant, see further Mekilta Mishpatim 20; 102a; Sifre D., 104; Midrash Tannaim 75; but Tan. Niz-zabim (beginning) and Tan. B. V, 49, offer a somewhat different version of the Haggadah about the covenant. See also, on the covenant, Tosefta Sotah 8.10; Babli 37b; Yeru-shalmi 6, 21c; Hagigah 6a–6b; Mekilta Mishpatim 20, 102a; Lekah Deut. 2.99. In Nedarim 25a it is pointed out that Moses told the people that no mental reservation would avail them, since their oath of allegiance to God would have to be taken in conformity with the meaning which He Himself assigns to it.

196. Shir 1.4; Tehillim 8, 76–77; ‘Aseret ha-Dibrot 68 (according to this source, Abraham’s sin consists in having loved Ishmael); BHM VI, 42; Mekilta RS 100; Mishle 6,53 (here Israel offers the heavens, the earth, and the mountains as guarantors; but God rejects them because they are to perish in the time to come; see text on pp. 808–809); an unknown Midrash quoted by Shu’aib, Way-yigash, 21a. On the sins of Abraham and Jacob, see text on pp. 198, 200, 316, 317; on the children in their mothers’ wombs see text on p. 563. Concerning the death of infants as a punishment or atonement for the sins of their parents, see Shabbat 32b; Midrash Shir 13a; Hashkem 3a–5a. Until the revelation of the Torah God visited the sins of the generation upon all alike, without discriminating between the righteous and the wicked—many a “Noah” died in the deluge, and many an innocent child perished with the builders of the tower—but after the revelation of the Torah punishment and reward are meted out to each and every individual according to his merits; see Tan. Re’eh 6.

## THE REVELATION ON MOUNT SINAI

From the first day of the third month, the day on Israel arrived at Mount Sinai, a heavy cloud rested them, and every one except Moses



was forbidden to as the mountain, yea, they durst not even stay near it, lest God smite those who pushed forward, with hail or fiery arrows.<sup>197</sup> The day of the revelation announced itself as an ominous day even in the morning, for diverse rumblings sounded from Mount Sinai. Flashes of lightning, accompanied by an ever swelling peal of horns, moved the people with mighty tear and trembling. God bent the heavens, moved the earth, and shook the bounds of the world, so that the depths trembled, and the heavens grew frightened. His splendor passed through the four portals of fire, earthquake, storm, and hail. The kings of the earth trembled in their palaces, and they all came to the villain Balaam, and asked him if God intended the same fate for them as for the generation of the flood. But Balaam said to them: "O ye fools! The Holy One, blessed be He, has long since promised Noah never again to punish the world with a flood." The kings of the heathen, however, were not quieted, and furthermore said: "God has indeed promised never again to bring a flood upon the world, but perhaps He now means to destroy it by means of fire." Balaam said: "Nay, God will not destroy the world either through fire or through water. The commotion throughout nature was caused through this only, that He is now about to bestow the Torah upon His people. 'The Eternal will give strength unto His people.' " At this all the kings shouted, "May the Eternal bless His people with peace," and each one, quieted in spirit, went to his house.<sup>198</sup>

Just as the inhabitants of the earth were alarmed at the revelation, and believed the end of all time had arrived, so too did the earth. She thought the resurrection of the dead was about to take place, and she would have to account for the blood of the slain that she had absorbed, and for the bodies of the murdered whom she covered. The earth was not calmed until she heard the first words of the Decalogue.<sup>199</sup>

Although phenomena were perceptible on Mount Sinai in the morning, still God did not reveal Himself to the people until noon. For owing to the brevity of the summer nights, and the pleasantness of the morning sleep in summer, the people were still asleep when God had descended upon Mount Sinai. Moses betook himself to the encampment and awakened them with these words: "Arise from your sleep, the bridegroom is at hand, and is waiting to lead his bride: under the marriage-canopy." Moses, at the head of the procession, hereupon brought the nation to its bridegroom, God, to Sinai, himself going up the mountain.<sup>200</sup> He said to God: "Announce Thy words, Thy children are ready to obey them." These words of Moses rang out near and far, for on this occasion, his voice, when he repeated the words of God to the people, had as much power as the Divine voice that he heard.<sup>201</sup>

It was not indeed quite of their own free will that Israel declared themselves ready to accept the Torah, for when the whole nation, in two divisions, men and women, approached Sinai, God lifted up this mountain and held it over the heads of the people like a basket, saying to them: "If you accept the Torah, it is well, otherwise you will find your grave under this mountain." They all burst into tears and poured out their heart in contrition before God, and then said: "All that the Lord hath said, will we do, and be obedient."<sup>202</sup> Hardly had they uttered these words of submission to God, when a hundred and twenty myriads of angels descended, and provided every Israelite with a crown and a girdle of glory—Divine gifts, which they did not lose until they worshipped the Golden Calf, when the angels came and took the gifts away from them.<sup>203</sup> At the same time with these crowns and girdles of glory, a heavenly radiance was shed over their faces, but this also they later lost through their sins. Only Moses retained it, whose face shone so brightly, that if even to-day



a crack were made in his tomb, the light emanating from his corpse would be so powerful that it could not but destroy all the world.<sup>204</sup>

After God had bestowed upon Israel these wonderful gifts, He wanted to proceed to the announcement of the Torah, but did not desire to do so while Moses was with Him, that the people might not say it was Moses who had spoken out of the cloud. Hence He sought an excuse to be rid of him. He therefore said to Moses: “Go down, warn the people, that they shall not press forward to see, for if even one of them were to be destroyed, the loss to Me would be as great as if all creation had been destroyed. Bid Nadab and Abihu also, as well as the first born that are to perform priestly duties, beware that they do not press forward.” Moses, however, desirous of remaining with God, replied: “I have already warned the people and set the bounds beyond which they may not venture.” God hereupon said to Moses: “Go, descend and call upon Aaron to come up with thee, but let him keep behind thee, while the people do not move beyond the positions thou hadst assigned them.” Hardly had Moses left the mountain, when God revealed the Torah to the people.<sup>205</sup>

This was the sixth revelation of God upon earth since the creation of the world. The tenth and last is to take place on the Day of Judgment.

The heavens opened and Mount Sinai, freed from the earth, rose into the air, so that its summit towered into the heavens, while a thick cloud covered the sides of it, and touched the feet of the Divine Throne.<sup>206</sup> Accompanying God on one side, appeared twenty-two thousand angels with crowns for the Levites, the only tribe that remained true to God while the rest worshipped the Golden Calf. On the second side were sixty myriads, three thousand five hundred and fifty angels, each bearing a crown of fire for each individual Israelite. Double this number of angels was on the third side, whereas on the fourth side

they were simply innumerable. For God did not appear from one direction, but from all four simultaneously, which, however, did not prevent His glory from filling the heaven as well as all the earth.<sup>207</sup>

In spite of these innumerable hosts of angels there was no crowding on Mount Sinai, no mob, there was room for all the angels that had appeared in honor of Israel and the Torah. They had, however, at the same time received the order to destroy Israel in case they intended to reject the Torah.<sup>208</sup>

---

197. Mekilta RS 94; ARN (beginning); ShR 28.2; Yeru-shalmi Targumim Exod. 19.13 (*Hadar*, Exod. 34b, top, is based upon 2 Targum Yerushalmi). Concerning the heavenly punishment by fire, see also Targum Yerushalmi Num. 1.51, 3.10 and 38. In contrast to the Yerushalmi Targumim, Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 64 understands Exod. 19.12–13 to refer to punishment by the hand of man.

198. Mekilta RS 85 and 99 (on the sounds see below, note 213); Mekilta Yitro 1, 57a, and Bahodesh 6–4, 64b–65a, as well as 5, 67a–67b; Zebahim 116a; Mishle 21, 90; PR 20, 95a; PRE 41; Nispahim 55; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 5, 2–3 (the address of Moses to the people presupposes that the book of the covenant mentioned in Exod. 24.7 is identical with the part of the Pentateuch from Gen. 1.1 to Exod. 19; comp. the references cited in note 195); 4 Ezra 3.18–19. In the last-named source it is stated that the “four gates of heaven” opened on that occasion; see a similar remark in BHM VI, 41–42, but in this passage ד'קולות is very likely to be read; comp. Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 64b (bottom). Lengthy descriptions of the violent motions of the entire universe at the time of the revelation of the Torah are given by ps.-Philo 11.5; 15.6; 23.10; 32.7–8. Obviously Jud. 5.4–5 and Hab. 3.3, *seq.*, served as models for these descriptions as well as for those found in rabbinic sources. Compare also with pp. 602–603.

199. PR 21, 99–100a, where it is also remarked that the earth feared lest the revelation of the Torah should increase the sinfulness of man and thus cause the destruction of the world. Compare with p. 54.

200. PRE 41; Shir 1.12 and 5.3. Concerning the description of God as the “bridegroom of Jacob’s daughter” (*i.e.*, Israel), see DR 3.12 and Aggadat Bereshit 41, 126 (נָשָׂא=נָשָׂא, Exod. 20.10, is here derived from נָשָׂא=נָשָׂא “to marry”), which is the source of Mahzor Vitry 311. Some rabbinic sources speak of Israel as the bridegroom and of



the Torah as the bride, at whose wedding God (and Moses) acted as best man; see *Orehot Hayyim* II, 67; ShR 41.6; Epstein, *R. Moses ha-Darschan* 42–43.

201. Mekilta Bo (פתיחתא) 2a and Bahodesh 4, 65b; Mekilta RS 101; Sifre N., 116 (comp. Friedmann, note 22); Yerushalmi Targumim Exod. 21.19; Berakot 45a. Concerning Moses' powerful voice, which could be heard throughout the entire camp, see Aggadat Shir 32 and footnote 228 on p. 539; note 521. The later authorities (Jewish as well as mohammedan; comp. Goldziher, *La Notion de la Sekina*, 12) employ the expression "The Shekinah spoke through Moses' mouth", which is very likely nothing more than a striking paraphrase of this statement of the Mekilta. Philo, *Quis ... Haeres Sit*, 5, seems to have shared this view. The Targumim mentioned above speak of "the heavenly music" heard on this occasion, and in all likelihood this is the meaning of ps.-Philo 11.3, who refers to the "music of the instruments sounding aloud" at the revelation on Sinai.

202. Mekilta RS 100; Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 65a (top); Shabbat 88a and 129b; 'Abodah Zarah 2b; Midrash Shir, 44a; Shir 8.5; Tehillim 75, 337, and 76, 342; Tan. Noah 3. It is stated: "Israel was willing to accept the written Torah, but not the unwritten, and God was therefore obliged to use force (this Midrash is the source of *Or Zarua'* 1, 7a; *Hadar* and *Da'at*, Exod. 19.17); PRE 41. Concerning the idea that the existence of the world is conditioned upon the acceptance of the Torah, see also Shir 1.90; PR 21, 99b–100a; Midrash Aggadah Lev. 25.1. Note 26 and footnote 8 on p. 48.

203. Shabbat 88a (this passage speaks of two crowns instead of the crown and the girdle of the other sources); PR 10, 37a; 21, 103b, 28, 154a; PRE 27 (equipped with these gifts they became like angels); Tehillim 91, 397, and 103, 435; ShR 45.2 and 51.8; Shir 1.3, 4.13, and 8.5; Tan. Tezawweh 11 and Shelah 13; Tan. B. IV, 76, and II, 25, 99; BaR 16.25; PK 16, 124b; EZ 4, 179; Ekah (פתיחתא) 24.24 and 2.117–118; 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 68; BHM VI, 46; Makiri Tehillim 50, 275. Yelammedenu in Recanati Ki-Tissa has a version of this legend which differs essentially from that found in the other sources. Sabba, Zaw, 95c, reads: They lost the second crown in Jeremiah's time, when they refused to listen to the word of God. See also *Menorat ha-Maor* III, 1.5, which quoted an unknown Midrash. Compare with p. 627.

204. PR 21, 101a and 102a; comp. *Hadar*, Exod. 33.7, and PRE 41 (end). As to the other explanations of Moses's shining face, see text on pp. 618, 630, 634, 811. The crowns as well as the other heavenly gifts are said to have been the reward given to the Israelites for their willingness to accept the Torah before they knew its contents. This willingness they expressed in the words "All that the Lord hath spoken will we do as soon as we have heard it" (see Exod. 24.7; נשמע, literally, we shall hear). This atti-

tude is often referred to as the highest stage ever reached by Israel in the religious development; see, e.g., Shabbat 88a; Gittin 7a; Tan. B. II, 11, and III, 94. There is however, a dissenting view, according to which the Israelites, even at the moment when they expressed their willingness to accept the Torah, were employing nice words without intending to fulfill them; see Mekilta Mishpatim 13, 89b–90a; Tosefta Baba Kamma 7.9; Tan. B. I, 77; WR 6.1; DR 7.10; ShR 42.8.

205. PRE 41; ShR 28.3; Mekilta RS 102; Mekilta Bahodesh 4, 65b–66a; BaR 12.7; PR 5, 20b,. Concerning the first-born as priests, see text on pp. 258, 265, and comp. (on the other hand), Zebahim 115b, as well as text on p. 598; note 139. The sources quoted at the beginning of this note, as well as Ephraem I, 222D, maintain that Nadab and Abihu performed the priestly service not only on this occasion but also previously.

206. PRE 41; Nispahim 55. The legend of the "ascent of Sinai" is also found in Philo, *De Decalogo*, 11, and in several of the sources quoted in note 202. Concerning the ten revelations (literally, "descents") of God, see BR 38.9 and parallel passages quoted by Theodor. The individual opinion of a Tanna who flourished about the middle of the second century is quoted: The Shekinah never descended upon the earth, nor did Moses and Elijah ever ascend to heaven; the heavenly voice heard on Sinai made it seem as though the glory of God descended upon the mountain; comp. Mekilta Bahodesh 4, 65b, and Sukkah 5a, where instead of כבוד ("glory") שכינה ("Shekinah") is used. Comp. notes 296, 919, and footnote 32 on p. 995.

207. Aggadat Shit 1.14; PR 21, 202b–203a; ER 22, 119; PR 12, 107b; Tan. Zaw 12; Tan. B. II, 76–77; III, 20; IV, 13; ShR 29.8; BHM V, 68; Tehillim 68, 318–319; Targum Ps. 68.18. On the crowns see text on pp. 600–601, and on the piety of the Levites compare with p. 626. The slaves and bondwomen who were present at the revelation of the Torah on Sinai saw more of the Glory of God than the prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel; Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 64a; see a similar remark in Tehillim, *loc. cit.*; compare also with pp. 603, 610, 682, and 684.

208. PR 21, 203b; PK 12, 108a.

## THE FIRST COMMANDMENT

The first word of God on Sinai was Anoki, "It is I." It was not a Hebrew word, but an Egyptian word that Israel first heard from God. He treated them as did that king his home-coming son, whom, returning from a long stay over



sea, he addressed in the language the son had acquired in a foreign land. So God addressed Israel in Egyptian, because it was the language they spoke. At the same time Israel recognized in this word “Anoki,” that it was God who addressed them. For when Jacob had assembled his children around his death-bed; he warned them to be mindful of the glory of God, and confided to them the secrets that God would hereafter reveal to them with the word “Anoki.” He said: “With the word ‘Anoki’ He addressed my grandfather Abraham; with the word ‘Anoki’ He addressed my father Isaac, and with the word ‘Anoki’ He addressed me. Know, then, that when He will come to you, and will so address you, it will be He, but not otherwise.”<sup>209</sup>

When the first commandment had come out of the mouth of God, thunder and lightning proceeded from His mouth, a torch was at His right, and a torch at His left, and His voice flew through the air, saying: “My people, My people, House of Israel! I am the Eternal, your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt.” When Israel heard the awful voice, they flew back in their horror twelve miles, until their souls fled from them. Upon this the Torah turned to God, saying: “Lord of the world! Hast Thou given me to the living, or to the dead?” God said: “To the living.” The Torah: “But they are all dead.” God: “For thy sake will I restore them to life.” Hereupon He let fall upon them the dew that will hereafter revive the dead, and they returned to life.

The trembling of heaven and earth that set in upon the perception of the Divine voice alarmed Israel so greatly that they could hardly stand on their feet. God hereupon sent to every one of them two angels; one to lay his hand upon the heart of each, that his soul might not depart, and one to lift the head of each, that he might behold his Maker’s splendor. They beheld the glory of God as well as the otherwise invis-

ible word when it emanated from the Divine vision, and rolled forward to their ears, whereupon they perceived these words: “Wilt thou accept the Torah, which contains two hundred and forty-eight commandments, corresponding to the number of the members of thy body?” They answered: “Yea, yea.” Then the word passed from the ear to the mouth; it kissed the month, then rolled again to the ear, and called to it: “Wilt thou accept the Torah, which contains three hundred and sixty-five prohibitions, corresponding to the days of the year!” And when they replied, “Yea, yea,” again the word turned from the ear to the mouth and kissed it. After the Israelites had in this wise taken upon themselves the commandments and the prohibitions, God opened the seven heavens and the seven earths, and said: “Behold, these are My witnesses that there is none like Me in the heights or on earth! See that I am the Only One, and that I have revealed Myself in My splendor and My radiance! If anyone should say to you, ‘Go, serve other gods,’ then say: ‘Can one who has seen his Maker, face to face, in His splendor, in His glory and His strength, leave Him and become an idolater?’ See, it is I that have delivered you out of the house of bondage; it is I that cleaved the seas before you and led you on dry land, while I submerged your enemies in the depths.”<sup>210</sup> I am the God of the dry land as well as of the sea, of the past as well as of the future, the God of this world as well as of the future world.<sup>211</sup> I am the God of all nations, but only with Israel is My name allied. If they fulfil My wishes, I, the Eternal, am merciful, gracious and long suffering, and abundant in goodness and truth; but if you are disobedient, then will I be a stern judge. It you had not accepted the Torah, no punishment could have fallen upon you were you not to fulfil it, but now that you have accepted it, you must obey it.”<sup>212</sup>



In order to convince Israel of the unity and uniqueness of God, He bade all nature stand still, that all might see that there is nothing beside Him. When God bestowed the Torah, no bird sang, no ox lowed, the Ofannim did not fly, the Seraphim uttered not their “Holy, holy, holy,” the sea did not roar, no creature uttered a sound—all listened in breathless silence to the words announced by an echoless voice, “I am the Lord your God.”<sup>213</sup>

These words as well as the others, made known by God on Mount Sinai, were not heard by Israel alone, but by the inhabitants of all the earth. The Divine voice divided itself into the seventy tongues of men, so that all might understand it; but whereas Israel could listen to the voice without suffering harm, the souls of the heathens almost fled from them when they heard it.<sup>214</sup> When the Divine voice sounded, all the dead in Sheol were revived, and betook themselves to Sinai; for the revelation took place in the presence of the living as well as of the dead, yea, even the souls of those who were not yet born were present. Every prophet, every sage, received at Sinai his share of revelation, which in the course of history was announced by them to all mankind.<sup>215</sup> All heard indeed the same words, but the same voice, corresponding to the individuality of each, was God’s way of speaking with them. And as the same voice sounded differently to each one, so did the Divine vision appear differently to each, wherefore God warned them not to ascribe the various forms to various beings, saying: “Do not believe that because you have seen Me in various forms, there are various gods, I am the same that appeared to you at the Red Sea as a God of war, and at Sinai as a teacher.”<sup>216</sup>

209. PR 21, 105–106a, where numerous explanations of the “first word” *Anoki* are given; BHM VI, 42; ER 1, 22; Midrash ‘Aseret ha-Dibrot 47. Compare, however,

with p. 499, where it is said that the Israelites spoke the Hebrew language in Egypt; see also note 191. On the use of the word *Anoki* in God’s revelations to the patriarchs, see PR 33, 153a, and footnote 140 on p. 277.

210. ‘Aseret ha-Dibrot 69–70, which is based on old sources; see Tosefta ‘Arakin 1.10 (on the twelve miles, the extent of the camps, see ‘Erubin 55a, as well as note 445 and Index, s.v. “Camps, Extent of”); Sifre D., 313; Mekilta Beshallah 2, 63b and 9, 71b; Shabbat 88b; Tehillim 31, 338 (God enabled the idols to worship Him, *i.e.*, the whole of nature recognized God’s power); 68, 317–318; 119, 490–491; Midrash Shir 2b; BHM VI, 42; ER 22, 119–120; Shir 1.2 and 4.4; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 20.2; Mahzor Vitry 320 (probably based on Midrash Shir 2a, or ‘Aseret ha-Dibrot, *loc. cit.*); Shu‘aib, Yitro, 33b (his source seems to be a text of Shir 2.4 different from ours; comp. his quotation, in Bemidbar, 73b, from “Midrash Hazita”). Ps.-Philo 23.10 and 32.7–8 is acquainted with several features of this legend; comp. above note 198.—Concerning the angels who accompanied God on mount Sinai, see text on pp. 600 and 601. Some sources, however, maintain that there were no angels on mount Sinai, since even these heavenly beings, had they been near there at that time, would have been burned by “the words”; PR 33, 156a–156b; comp. also note 248.—Each of the two hundred and forty-eight members of the body urge man, saying: “Fulfill God’s commandment”, and each of the three hundred and sixty-five days of the years likewise says: “Beware of the prohibition decreed by God”; See PK 12, 101a; Tehillim 32, 244. On the six hundred and thirteen laws of the Torah see above, note 181. Concerning the dew which quickens the dead, see footnote 22 on p. 6, and Index, s.v. “Dew”. Shabbat 88b, Midrash Shir 7a, 38b, 44b, and Zohar II, 84b, speak of the heavenly fragrance that spread over Israel at the time of the revelation. The purpose of this fragrance was very likely to restore the breath of life to the dead bodies. Comp. ps.-Philo 32.8, which reads: Then—at the giving of the Torah—did paradise give forth the fragrance of its fruits.

211. Mekilta Bahodesh 2, 66b, and Shirah 4, 37b.

212. Mekilta RS 103–104; MHG II, 215; Mekilta Mishpatim. 20, 102a. Comp. also ps.-Philo 11.2, which reads: For men might say: “We have not known Thee, and therefore have not served Thee.” I will therefore take vengeance upon them, because they have known My laws. This is given by the author as a comment on the first commandment of the Decalogue.

213. ShR 29.9, which has the additional remark that the voice heard on Sinai had no echo. With regard to this voice, the following statement of the Jewish philosophers is to be noted. “God”, says Philo, *De Decalogo*, 9, “commanded that an inaudible voice be formed in the air.” The very same view is expressed by Sa’adya Gaon (quoted by Judah b. Bar-



zillai, 314) and R. Judah ha-Levi, *Al Khazari*, I, 89. A Christian parallel to this legend concerning the complete standstill of nature is the one given in *Protevangelium of James* 18, in connection with the birth of Jesus. The Jewish legend evidently wishes to emphasize the fact that the revelation came directly from God.; comp. note 248, and text on p. 994.

214. ShR 5.9 and 28.6; Shabbat 88b; Tehillim 68, 317, and 92, 403; Tan. B. II, 13–14; Tan. Shemot 25; Midrash Shir 2b; BHM VI, 39 and 45; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II 709 and 843 on Ps. 19 and 92, respectively. In all these sources “the seven voices” (*i.e.*, sounds or tones) which were heard on Sinai are referred to, whereas in Berakot 6b and BHM V, 33 mention is made of only five voices, and in BHM VI, 41 (read ‘ט instead of ‘; comp. Judah b. Barzilai, 130–131, and note 198) the number is still further reduced to four. The seven sounds of the trumpet at the resurrection referred to in BHM VI, 58, are modelled after the seven sounds on Sinai. The seventy tongues stand for all the languages of the world; see text on p. 157 and note 72 pertaining thereto.

215. ShR 28.6; Tan. Yitro 11; PRE 41; Lekah V. 99, where it is said that the same happened at the second covenant; concerning which see text on p. 598. The idea underlying this legend is related to one of the legends given in text on pp. 633–634.

216. PK 12, 110a–110b; PR 21, 100b–102a, and 33, 155b; BHM VI, 39–40; Midrash Shir 39b; ShR 5.9 and 28.6; Tan. B. II, 13–13; Philo, *De Posterit. Caini*, 43. See also Mekilta Shirah 4, 37b; p. 1043, note 36. In the Decalogue the singular is used (*e.g.*, I am the Lord *thy* God, and not *your* God), in order that everyone should say: On my account the world was created, and on my account the Torah was given. One righteous man is more precious in the sight of God than the whole of mankind: see ER 25, 126–127 (whence Lekah V, 17–18) and similarly Philo *De Decalogo* 10. Comp. also Sanhedrin, Mishnah 4.5, and Babli 103b, as well as ARN 31, which read: The soul of one righteous man weighs as much as the whole world. See footnote 8 on p. 48. For other explanations of the use of the singular in the Decalogue see note 306 and PR 21, 106b. At the time of the revelation complete harmony existed in Israel (see text on p. 592), the entire nation having only one mind and therefore addressed by God as one person; Zohar III, 84.

## THE OTHER COMMANDMENTS REVEALED ON SINAI

After Israel had accepted the first commandment with a “Yea,” God said: “As you have

now acknowledged Me as your sovereign, I can now give you commands: Thou shalt not acknowledge the gods of other nations as such, for they bring no advantage to those who adore them; this thou shalt not do while I exist. I have given you My Torah in order to lend sovereignty to you, hence you must not kindle My wrath by breaking My covenant through idolatry. You shall not worship dead idols, but Him who kills and restores to life, and in whose hand are all living things. Do not learn the works of other nations, for their works are vanity. I, the Eternal, your God, rule over zeal and am not ruled by it; I wait until the fourth generation to visit punishment upon the offenders, but if these generations are one after the other sinful, I will wait no longer with punishment. But those who love Me, or fear Me, will I reward even unto the thousandth generation.”

When Moses heard these words, according to which God would visit upon the descendants the sins of their fathers only if the consecutive generations were one after another sinful, he cast himself upon the ground and thanked God for it; for he knew it never occurred among Israel that three consecutive generations were sinful.<sup>217</sup>

The third commandment read: “O My people Israel, none among you shall call the name of the Lord in vain, for he who swears falsely by the name of the Lord shall not go unpunished on the great Judgment Day.”<sup>218</sup> Swearing falsely has terrible consequences not only for the one who does it but it endangers all the world. For when God created the world, He laid over the abyss a shard, on which is engraved the Ineffable Name, that the abyss may not burst forth and destroy the world. But as often as one swears falsely in God’s name, the letters of the Ineffable Name fly away, and as there is then nothing to restrain the abyss, the waters burst forth from it to destroy the world. This would surely come to pass, if God did not send the angel Ya‘asriel,



who has charge of the seventy pencils, to engrave anew the Ineffable Name on the shard.<sup>219</sup>

God said then to Israel, "If you accept My Torah and observe My laws, I will give you for all eternity a thing most precious that I have in My possession." "And what," replied Israel, "is that precious thing which Thou wilt give us if we obey Thy Torah?" God: "The future world." Israel: "But even in this world should we have a foretaste of that other." God: "The Sabbath will give you this foretaste."<sup>220</sup> Be mindful of the Sabbath, to make it holy; be mindful of the promise I made to the Sabbath on the seventh day of the creation of the world." For when the world was created, the seventh day came before God, and said to Him: "All that Thou hast created is in couples, why not I!" Whereupon God replied, "The community of Israel shall be thy spouse." Of this promise that God had made to the seventh day, He reminded the people on Mount Sinai, when He gave them the fourth commandment, to keep the Sabbath holy.<sup>221</sup>

When the nations of the earth heard the first commandment, they said: "There is no king that does not like to see himself acknowledged as sovereign, and just so does God desire His people to pledge unto Him their allegiance." At the second commandment they said: "No king suffers a king beside himself, nor does the God of Israel." At the third commandment they said: "Is there a king that would like to have people swear false oaths by his name?" At the fourth commandment they said: "No king dislikes to see his birthday celebrated." But when the people heard the fifth commandment, "Honor thy father and thy mother," they said: "According to our laws, if a man enrolls himself as a servant of the king, he thereby disowns his parents. God, however, makes it a duty to honor father and mother; truly, for this is honor due to Him."<sup>222</sup>

It was with these words that the fifth commandment was emphasized: "Honor thy parents

to whom thou owest existence, as thou honorest Me. Honor the body that bore thee, and the breasts that gave thee suck, maintain thy parents, for thy parents took part in thy creation."<sup>223</sup> For man owes his existence to God, to his father, and to his mother, in that he receives from each of his parents five of the parts of his body, and ten from God. The bones, the veins, the nails, the brain, and the white of the eye come from the father. The mother gives him skin, flesh, blood, hair, and the pupil of the eye. God gives him the following: breath, soul, light of countenance, sight, hearing, speech, touch, sense, insight, and understanding.<sup>224</sup> When a human being honors his parents, God says: "I consider it as if I had dwelled among men and they had honored Me," but if people do not honor their parents, God says: "It is good that I do not dwell among men, or they would have treated Me superciliously, too."<sup>225</sup>

God not only commanded to love and fear parents as Himself, but in some respects He places the honor due to parents even higher than that due Him. A man is only then obliged to support the poor or to perform certain religious ceremonies, if he has the wherewithal, but it is the duty of each one even to go begging at men's doors, if he cannot otherwise maintain his parents.<sup>226</sup>

The sixth commandment said: "O My people Israel, be no slayers of men, do not associate with murderers, and shun their companionship, that your children may not learn the craft of murder." As a penalty for deeds of murder, God will send a devastating war over mankind.<sup>227</sup> There are two divisions in Sheol, an inner and an outer. In the latter are all those who were slain before their time. There they stay until the course of the time predestined them is run; and every time a murder has been committed, God says: "Who has slain this person and has forced Me to keep him in the outer Sheol, so that I



must appear unmerciful to have removed him from earth before his time!”<sup>228</sup> On the Judgment Day the slain will appear before God, and will implore Him: “O Lord of the world! Thou hast formed me, Thou hast developed me, Thou hast been gracious unto me while I was in the womb, so that I left it unharmed. Thou in Thy great mercy hast provided for me. O Lord of all worlds! Grant me satisfaction from this villain that knew no pity for me.” Then God’s wrath will be kindled against the murderer, into Gehenna will He throw him and damn him for all eternity, while the slain will see satisfaction given him, and be glad.<sup>229</sup>

The seventh commandment says: “O My people Israel be not adulterers, nor the accomplices or companions of adulterers, that your children after you may not be adulterers. Commit no unchaste deeds, with your hands, feet, eyes, or ears, for as a punishment therefor the plague will come over the world.”<sup>230</sup>

This is the eighth commandment: “Be no thief, nor the accomplice or companion of thieves, that your children may not become thieves.” As a penalty for robbery and theft famine will come upon the world.<sup>231</sup> God may forgive idolatry, but never theft, and He is always ready to listen to complaints against forgers and robbers.<sup>232</sup>

The ninth commandment reads: “O My people Israel, bear not false witness against your companions, for in punishment for this the clouds will scatter, so that there may be no rain, and famine will ensue owing to drought.” God is particularly severe with a false witness because falsehood is the one quality that God did not create, but is something that men themselves produced.<sup>233</sup>

The content of the tenth commandment is: “O My people Israel, covet not the possessions of your neighbors, for owing to this sin will the government take their possessions from the peo-

ple, so that even the wealthiest will become poor and will have to go into exile.”<sup>234</sup> The tenth commandment is directed against a sin that sometimes leads to a trespassing of all the Ten Commandments. If a man covets his neighbor’s wife and commits adultery, he neglects the first commandment: “I am the Eternal, thy God,” for he commits his crime in the dark and thinks that none sees him, not even the Lord, whose eyes float over all the world, and see good as well as evil. He oversteps the second commandment: “Thou shalt not have strange gods beside Me . . . , I am a jealous God,” who is wroth against faithlessness, whether toward Me, or toward men. He breaks the third commandment: “Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord in vain,” for he swears he has not committed adultery, but he did so. He is the cause of profanation of the Sabbath, the consecration of which God commands in the fourth commandment, because in his illegal relation he generates descendants who will perform priestly duties in the Temple on the Sabbath, which, being bastards, they have no right to do. The fifth commandment will be broken by the children of the adulterer, who will honor as a father a strange man, and will not even know their true father. He breaks the sixth commandment: “Thou shalt not kill,” if he is surprised by the rightful husband; for every time a man goes to a strange woman, he does so with the consciousness that this may lead to his death or to the death of his neighbor. The trespassing of the seventh commandment: “Thou shalt not commit adultery,” is the direct outcome of a forbidden coveting. The eighth commandment: “Thou shalt not steal,” is broken by the adulterer, for he steals another man’s fountain of happiness. The ninth commandment: “Thou shalt not bear false witness,” is broken by the adulterous woman, who pretends that the fruit of her criminal relations is the child of her husband. In this way, the breaking of the tenth commandment has not



only led to all the other sins, but has also the evil effect that the deceived husband leaves his whole property to one who is not his son, so that the adulterer robs him of his possessions as well as of his wife.<sup>235</sup>

217. Mekilta 6, 67a–68b; Mekilta RS 105–106 (the Haggadot given in this passage concerning the five kingdoms are also found in BHM VI, 44, and Midrash Aggada Exod. 20.5); Targum Yerushalmi, Ephraem, and Theodoretus on Exod. 20.3–6. See also ps.-Philo 11.6, which reads: I am the Lord thy God, a jealous God, visiting the sins of them that sleep upon the living children of the ungodly, if they walk in the ways of their fathers. Comp. note 251.

218. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 20.6. Theodoretus and Vulgate, *ad loc.*, agree with this view that the second commandment forbids not only a false oath, but also swearing in vain. Comp. Yerushalmi Shebu'ot 3, 34c for the halakic discussion of this point.

219. Yalkut Reubeni Gen. 1.1,2b, quoting Sode Raza; Zohar II, 91b; Ma'asiyyot 111; Raziel 11a (beginning **לְעֵתָהּ אֲשֶׁר־לָךְ**); compare with p. 923. God said to the Israelites: “Swear not falsely, that your young children die not on account of this”; BHM VI, 44, which, in the main, follows Shabbat 32b; comp. note 196. Besides this punishment for swearing falsely, Shabbat, *loc. cit.*, mentions many other afflictions. Comp. also ps.-Philo 11.7, which reads: Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain, that My ways be not made vain. This is very likely a mistranslation of the Hebrew, which read: **לֹא תִשָּׂא** **אֶת שֵׁם יְיָ אֱלֹהֶיךָ לְשׁוּא** **אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִשְׂאֵי דְרָכֶי**, “Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain, that the roads of My land (literally, that My roads) become not desolate.” See Shabbat 33a, which has: On account of swearing falsely or swearing in vain the roads become desolate. Perhaps the original read **אֲשִׁיא** “I shall not make desolate.”

220. Alphabet of R. Akiba 14 (**אֵלֶּף 7**) and the second version 63 (**זֵי שֵׁן 7**), which has the additional remark that the joy of Sabbath is one-sixtieth of the world to come. The source for this statement is Berakot 57b.

221. BR 11.8; PR 23, 117b. The view that “everything was created in pairs” is a favorite with the Gnostics, but is also found in pseudepigraphic, rabbinic, and patristic writings. See Clementine; *Homilies* 19.12 and *Recognitiones* 3.59, 8.53; Apocalypse of Baruch 69.3–4; Lactantius, *De Ira Dei*, 13; Tertullian *Adversus Omnes Haereses*, 4; The “Midrash Temura”, is, as the name indicates, entirely devoted to the explanation of the doctrine of

syzygies. Comp. Joel, *Blicke*, I, 7, 161, and Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, II, 114, s.v. “Clementina.”—The variants in Exod. 20.8 and Deut. 5.12 gave rise to many a haggadic interpretation; comp. Shebu'ot 20b, which reads: Zakor (“remember”) and Shamor (“observe”) were uttered as one word, a feat which cannot be achieved by the human voice; Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 69a; Midrash Tannaim 21. In the last named source the statement quoted from Shebu'ot is applied as a solution for many other contradictions occurring in Scripture, as, e.g., the one discussed in Matthew 12.5. See also Bahir 57, which is the source of Zohar I, 48b; II, 92a; III, 92b, 224a; Nahmanides, *Emunah u-Bittahon*, 19. Medieval authorities quote the Midrash **זָכוֹר בִּימֹר וְשָׁמֹר בִּיבִשָּׁה** “Remember while thou art at sea, and observe while thou art on dry land” (on the sea it is often impossible to observe the Sabbath laws strictly); see SMG, positive precept 29; *Shibbole ha-Leket* 50, No. 65; Shu'aib, Ahare Mot, 62d; *Kimha Dabishuna* **נֹר שֶׁבֶת**. This Haggadah is found in PR 23, 116b, but most of the authorities just mentioned did not quote it directly, as may be clearly seen from the introductory phrase of SMG (**שְׁמַעְתִּי יְיָ בַּמִּדְרָשׁ**).

222. PR 23, 121a–121b; Kiddushin 31a; BaR 8.4; Philo, *Quis Rer. Div. Haeres Sit*, 35. Compare with p. 139.

223. 'Aseret ha-Dibrot 76. The commandment concerning the honor due to parents is the “severest” (*i.e.*, the most important) of all the commandments of the Torah; Yerushalmi Kiddushin 1,61b; DR 6.2. He who honors his parents commits no sins, but if one fails to honor his parents, evil visitations come upon him; ER 16, 134.

224. Niddah 61a; Kiddushin 30b; Kohelet 5.10; Wehizhir II, 120; Yerushalmi Kil'ayim 8, 31c. These passages state: God, the father and the mother contribute three things each in the formation of a child, God giving the spirit, breath and soul. According to 4 Ezra 8.8, the human body consists of tire and water, whereas Philo, *De Mun. Opif.* 51, maintains that it is formed of four elements, fire, water, air, and earth. Compare footnote 15 on p. 54.

225. Kiddushin 31a; ER 26, 134.

226. Yerushalmi Peah 1, 15d, and Kiddushin 1, 61b; PR 23, 122b; comp. also Mekilta Bahodesh 8, 70a, which is at the same time the source of the well-known saying: God regards the honor shown to parents as though it were shown to Himself; and conversely He counts the neglect to honor parents as an insult to Himself; Mekilta RS 110; Sifra Kedoshim (beginning); Midrash Tannaim 23; Kiddushin 30b; Tan. B. V, 16–17; Tan. Ekah 2. See also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 8.2, and *Contra Apionem*, 2.27–28; Philo, *De Decalogo*, 22, and *Special. Leg.*, *De Col. Par.*, 1; ps.-Phocylides, 5.8; Sibyl. 3, 594. The words of Philo, *Special. Leg.*, *loc. cit.*, “parents hold a middle position, between



the divine and human kind”, go back to a Stoic source (see Prächter, *Herakles der Stoiker*, 45, *seq.*); but the idea underlying this statement is genuinely Jewish.

227. ‘Aseret ha-Dibrot 78; Yerushalmi Targumim Exod. 20.13; comp. Abot 5.8 (ענוי means “delaying”, not “suppressing”); ARN 28.114 (second version 41, 114–115).

228. PR 24, 124b (here תרצה taken to stand for תצרח “cause to cry aloud”; similarly Mekilta RS 110 reads: As long as the murderer lives, the blood of the victim cries, *i.e.*, seethes); DR 2.25; *Visio Pauli* 18; Enoch 22.7. He who sheds the blood of his fellow-man destroys the likeness of God; see Tosefta Yebamot 8 (end); BR 34.14 (see the numerous parallel passages cited by Theodor). A similar statement is found in Philo, *De Decalogo*, 25.

229. ‘Aseret ha-Dibrot 79; ER 34.14; DR 2.25. These passages read: All ascend from Hell (that is, they are not consigned to eternal damnation), except adulterers, those who put their fellow-men to shame, and those who give opprobrious names to their fellow-men; Baba Mezi’a 58b; comp., on the other hand, Rosh ha-Shanah 16b–17a. A very realistic description of the punishment of the murderer is given in BHM V, 144–146.

230. Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 20.13; BR 26.5; Yerushalmi Sotah 1, 17a; BaR 9.33; Tan. Bereshit 12. A different view concerning the punishment for adultery is found in Abot 5.7. For “fourfold adultery” (*i.e.*, lustful eyes, etc.), see Mekilta RS 3; BHM VI, 45; PR 24, 124b.

231. Yerushalmi Targumim Exod. 22.13; comp. Abot 5.7.

232. PR 24, 125b; WR 22.6; compare with p. 139.

233. Yerushalmi Targumim Exod 20.13; PR 24, 125b; EZ 3,175; compare with pp. 144–145 and text on pp. 934–935.

234. Yerushalmi Targumim Exod. 20.14; comp. Abot 5.7. The division of the Decalogue as given in text on p. 605, is the only one known in rabbinic sources. Sifre N., 112, 113, does not consider Exod. 20.3–6 as forming part of the first commandment, but describes idolatry as being at the same time an infringement of the first commandment, “since he who professes idolatry denies God”. Philo, *De Decalogo*, *passim*, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 5.5, divide the Decalogue in a manner different from that of the Rabbis; they count 20.2–3 as the first commandment, 4–6 as the second, 7 as the third, 8–11 as the fourth, 12 as the fifth, 13 as the sixth, 14 as the seventh, 15 as the eighth, 16 as the ninth, and 17 as the tenth. Comp. *Jewish Encyclopedia*, IV 495.

235. BaR 9.12; PR 16, 107a–107b. For a different version of the Haggadah about the sin which leads to the breaking of all the Ten Commandments, see *Kad ha-Kemah* (הקמה) 86b; *Orehot Zaddikim*, 14. Concerning covetousness as the source of all evil, see also Philo, *Special*.

*Leg.*, *De Concup.* 2; *Milhamot Melek ha-Mashiah*, 117; Lactantius, *Div. Instit.* 5.6; comp. *Ha-Hoker* I, 67.

## THE UNITY OF THE TEN COMMANDMENTS

The Ten Commandments are so closely interwoven, that the breaking of one leads to the breaking of another. But there is a particularly strong bond of union between the first five commandments, which were written on one table, and the last five, which were on the other table. The first commandment: “I am the Lord, thy God,” corresponds to the sixth: “Thou shalt not kill,” for the murderer slays the image of God. The second: “Thou shalt have no strange gods before me,” corresponds to the seventh: “Thou shalt not commit adultery,” for conjugal faithlessness is as grave a sin as idolatry, which is faithlessness to God. The third commandment: “Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord in vain,” corresponds to the eighth: “Thou shalt not steal,” for theft leads to a false oath. The fourth commandment: “Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy,” corresponds to the ninth: “Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor,” for he who bears false witness against his neighbor commits as grave a sin as if he had borne false witness against God, saying that He had not created the world in six days and rested on the seventh, the Sabbath. The fifth commandment: “Honor thy father and thy mother,” corresponds to the tenth: “Covet not thy neighbor’s wife,” for one who indulges this lust produces children who will not honor their true father, but will consider a stranger their father.<sup>236</sup>

The Ten Commandments, which God first revealed on Mount Sinai, correspond in their character to the ten words of which He had made use at the creation of the world. The first



commandment: “I am the Lord, thy God,” corresponds to the first word at the creation: “Let there be light,” for God is the eternal light. The second commandment: “Thou shalt have no strange gods before me,” corresponds to the second word: “Let there be a firmament in the midst of the waters, and let it divide the waters from the waters.” For God said: “Choose between Me and the idols; between Me, the fountain of living waters, and the idols, the stagnant waters.” The third commandment: “Thou shalt not take the name of thy God in vain,” corresponds to the word: “Let the waters be gathered together,” for as little as water can be gathered in a cracked vessel, so can a man maintain his possessions which he has obtained through false oaths. The fourth commandment: “Remember to keep the Sabbath holy,” corresponds to the word: “Let the earth bring forth grass,” for he who truly observes the Sabbath will receive good things from God without having to labor for them, just as the earth produces grass that need not be sown. For at the creation of man it was God’s intention that he be free from sin, immortal, and capable of supporting himself by the products of the soil without toil. The fifth commandment: “Honor thy father and thy mother,” corresponds to the word: “Let there be lights in the firmament of the heaven,” for God said to man: “I gave thee two lights, thy father and thy mother, treat them with care.” The sixth commandment: “Thou shalt not kill,” corresponds to the word: “Let the waters bring forth abundantly the moving creature,” for God said: “Be not like the fish, among whom the great swallow the small.” The seventh commandment: “Thou shalt not commit adultery,” corresponds to the word: “Let the earth bring forth the living creature after his kind,” for God said: “I chose for thee a spouse, abide with her.” The eighth commandment: “Thou shalt not steal,” corresponds to the word: “Behold, I have given

you every herb-bearing seed,” for none, said God, should touch his neighbor’s goods, but only that which grows free as the grass, which is the common property of all. The ninth commandment: “Thou shalt not bear fair witness against thy neighbor,” corresponds to the word: “Let us make man in our image.” Thou, like thy neighbor, art made in My image, hence bear not false witness against thy neighbor. The tenth commandment: “Thou shalt not covet the wife of thy neighbor,” corresponds to the tenth word of the creation: “It is not good for man to be alone,” for God said: “I created thee a spouse, let each keep to his spouse, and let not one among ye covet his neighbor’s wife.”<sup>237</sup>

---

236. Mekilta Bahodesh 8, 70b (obviously the sentence שניאוף שניאוף שניאוף stands for שניאוף שניאוף שניאוף כנגד ניאוף; comp. PR 21, 107b–108a); BaR 9.12; Zohar II, 90a; see also Philo, *De Decalogo*, 12, and 12 Testaments, Reuben 4.6., which read: Fornication removes the soul from God, and brings it near the idols. See also Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 6.17.

237. PR 21, 108a. For a different version of the Haggadah concerning the Ten Commandments and the words of Creation, see Lekah Deut. 5.6; BHM VI 46; Zohar II, 11b–12a. Compare with p. 47.

## MOSES CHOSEN AS INTERMEDIATOR

After Israel had heard the Ten Commandments, they supposed that God would on this occasion reveal to them all the rest of the Torah. But the awful vision on Mount Sinai, where they heard the visible and saw the audible—the privilege was granted them that even the slave women among them saw more than the greatest prophet of later times—this vision had so exhausted them that they would surely have perished, had they heard another word



from God. They therefore went to Moses and implored him to be the intermediary between them and God. God found their wish right, so that He not only employed Moses as His intermediary, but determined in all future times to send prophets to Israel as messengers of His words. Turning to Moses, God said: "All that they have spoken is good. If it were possible, I would even now dismiss the Angel of Death, but death against humanity has already been decreed by Me, hence it must remain."<sup>238</sup> Go, say unto them: 'Return to your tents,' but stay thou with Me." In these words God indicated to Israel that they might again enter upon conjugal relations, from which they had abstained throughout three days, while Moses should forever have to deny himself all earthly indulgences.<sup>239</sup>

Moses in his great wisdom now knew how, in a few words, to calm the great excitement of the myriads of men, saying to them: "God gave you the Torah and wrought marvels for you, in order, through this and through the observance of the laws which He imposed upon you, to distinguish you before all other nations on earth. Consider, however, that whereas up to this time you have been ignorant, and your ignorance served as your excuse, you now know exactly what to do and what not to do. Until now you did not know that the righteous are to be rewarded and the godless to be punished in the future world, but now you know it. But as long as you will have a feeling of shame, you will not lightly commit sins." Hereupon the people withdrew twelve miles from Mount Sinai, while Moses stepped quite close before the Lord.<sup>240</sup>

In the immediate proximity of God are the souls of the pious, a little farther Mercy and Justice, and close to these was the position Moses was allowed to occupy.<sup>241</sup> The vision of Moses, owing to his nearness to God, was dear and distinct, unlike that of the other prophets, who saw

but dimly. He is furthermore distinguished from all the other prophets, that he was conscious of his prophetic revelations, while they were unconscious in the moments of prophecy. A third distinction of Moses, which he indeed shared with Aaron and Samuel, was that God revealed Himself to him in a pillar of cloud.<sup>242</sup>

In spite of these great marks of favor to Moses, the people still perceived the difference between the first two commandments, which they heard directly from God, and those that they learned through Moses' intercession. For when they heard the words, "I am the Eternal, thy Lord," the understanding of the Torah became deep-rooted in their hearts, so that they never forgot what they thus learned. But they forgot some of the things Moses taught, for as man is a being of flesh and blood, and hence ephemeral, so are his teachings ephemeral. They hereupon came to Moses, saying: "O, if He would only reveal Himself once more! O that once more He would kiss us with the kisses of His mouth! O that understanding of the Torah might remain firm in our hearts as before!" Moses answered: "It is no longer possible now, but it will come to pass in the future world, when He will put His law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts."

Israel had another reason for regretting the choice of an intermediary between themselves and God. When they heard the second commandment: "Thou shalt have no strange gods beside Me," the evil impulse was torn out from their hearts. But as soon as they requested Moses to intercede for them, the evil impulse set in once more in its old place. In vain, however, did they plead with Moses to restore the former direct communication between them and God, so that the evil impulse might be taken from them. For he said: "It is no longer possible now, but in the future world He will 'take out of your flesh the stony heart.'"<sup>243</sup>



Although Israel had now heard only the first two commandments directly from God, still the Divine apparition had an enormous influence upon this generation. Never in the course of their lives was any physical impurity heard of among them, nor did any vermin succeed in infesting their bodies, and when they died, their corpses remained free from worms and insects.<sup>244</sup>

238. Mekilta Bahodesh 9.71a–72b, and 3, 64a; Mekilta RS 113. As to the awful vision on Mount Sinai which almost caused the people to die, see text on p. 603, and Berakot 22a. As to the visibility of the audible and the audibility of the visible see also 4 Ezra 5.37, which speaks of *imago vocis*; Philo, *Moses* 2(3).97; *De Decalogo*, 11; *De Migratione Abrahami*, 11. The last-named passage, in which the author allegorizes, is the source of Origen, *Con. Cel.*, 6.62. Comp., however, the quotation from Philo, *De Decalogo*, 9, given in note 213. Concerning the idea that the divine visions granted to the Israelites on Mount Sinai were greater than those seen by the prophets, see also DR 7.8; Zohar II, 82a, 94a, 146a. Comp. note 64 and text on p. 563. According to one view the Israelites were granted power over the Angel of Death at the time of the revelation; see Mekilta, *loc. cit.*; note 262; text on pp. 620, 713.

239. Shabbat 87a; ARN 1 (second version 2, 9–11); Sifre N., 103; PRK 24a; ER 18.101, which reads: Moses warned the people three days before the revelation not only to keep themselves clean from ritual impurities, but also from sin and evil which contaminate the soul and heart of man; compare with p. 509, and text on p. 700. In the sources quoted above mention is made, in this connection, of “the fence which Moses made around the Law”; he was commanded to tell the people to observe two days of preparation, but he added a third day “as a fence”. Comp. note 191.

240. Mekilta RS 114; Mekilta Bahodesh, 9, 72a, where the reading **כנס הזה**, found in Yalkut I, 301, and Lekah Exod. 20, 10 is supported by Mekilta RS. Israel received three gifts at Sinai: The feeling of shame (*i.e.*, modesty), the feeling of compassion, and the feeling of kindness; MHG II, 238; Nedarim 20a; Kallah 1, 4b; ER as quoted in Mahzor Vitry 317, but not in our texts. Compare with p. 935. As to the great influence of Moses upon the people, see Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 447, on Is. 40; ER 22, 120, and 23, 122; text on p. 550.

241. Aggadat Shir, which is the source of Makiri Ps. 89.76. See also Mekilta Bahodesh 9, 72a; Mekilta RS 114; Yalkut I, 301, quoting an unknown midrashic source; DZ 4=Yalkut I, 815; Shu'aib Wa-Yikra 44b. Concerning the

souls of the pious see also Philo, *De Plant. Noë* 4, which reads: The pure souls are in the loftiest places.

242. Mekilta RS 114; WR 1.14; Yebamot 44b; Tehillim 90, 387–388, where it is stated that Isaiah, and according to some also Elijah, retained his consciousness in his moments of prophecy; comp. DR 2.4, which reads: Moses and Isaiah, the greatest of the prophets. Sifre Z. 83 and 84 reads: The revelation granted to Moses came directly from God, and not through an angel; comp. note 248; Sifre N., 103; Sifra 9.7; Zohar III, 261b–262a; Nahmanides, *Emunah u-Bittahon*, 18; Philo, *De Plant. Noë*, 6. The last-named authority uses the same phrase as the Rabbis to describe the clearness of Moses' visions: Moses looked through a clear glass, the other prophets through a dark glass; comp. I Corinth. 13.12 and 2 Corinth. 3.18; Tertullian, *Adversus Praxean* 14. The view is also expressed that Moses was the only original prophet, whereas all other prophets confirmed the prophecies uttered by Moses; ShR 42.8; text on p. 604. All other prophets received the divine communications in the language of the Targum (*i.e.*, Aramaic), but Moses in the Hebrew language; Vital, *Likkutei Torah* on Gen. 15.12; compare with p. 597, and note 191. The angels, with the exception of Gabriel who is master of all the seventy tongues (Compare with p. 364), are said not to understand Aramaic. The statement that God appeared in a pillar of cloud to three prophets only (comp Ps. 99, 6–7) is perhaps directed against Mark 9.7. Compare with pp. 472, 531, as well as text on p. 900.

243. Shir 1.2; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 479 on Is. 14, and 317 on Jer. 31. In contrast to the view expressed in the sources quoted above, as well as in Makkot 24a (top), Tan. Wa-Yelek 2; PR, 12, 111a, and in many other passages in rabbinic literature, to the effect that the first two commandments only were heard by Israel directly from the mouth of God, there is another opinion which maintains that all the Ten Commandments were heard by Israel from the mouth of God; see Mekilta Bahodesh 4, 66a, and 9, 71b (bottom); Mekilta RS 114 (verse 19); Philo, *Moses*, 2(3).27, and *De Decalogo*, 5; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 5.4. Comp. also Horayot 8a–8b; PRE 41; ShR 33.6; quotation from an unknown Midrash in *Shibbole ha-Leket* 7 (on the correspondence between the Ten Commandments and the Ten Words of Creation mentioned there, see text on pp. 609–610). Rashi, on Makkot, *loc. cit.*, quotes from the Mekilta the midrashic support for the first view, as given in PRE; but nothing to this effect is found in our texts of the Midrash (Bahodesh 6, 69a refers to Ps 62, 12 in an entirely different connection), and it is very likely that **מכילתא** in Rashi stands for **ספרי**; see Sifre N., 42. Comp. *Geonica* II, 307, note 2.

244. PRE 41 (end); Tehillim 22, 200; compare with p. 591, for further details concerning the great distinction of the generation of the revelation. In striking contrast to this view is the opinion of R. Akiba, according to whom this gen-



eration lost its share in the world to come; see Sanhedrin Mishnah 9.3, Tosefta 13.10–11, Babli 110b, and Yerushalmi 9, 29c. It is true that, as may be seen from the passages just quoted, R. Akiba's view is entirely rejected by the other scholars. See also WR 32.2; Tehillim 130, 490; text on p. 500.

## MOSES AND THE ANGELS STRIVE FOR THE TORAH

**T**he day on which God revealed Himself on Mount Sinai was twice as long as ordinary days. For on that day the sun did not set, a miracle that was four times more repeated for Moses' sake.<sup>245</sup> When this long day had drawn to its close, Moses ascended the holy mountain, where he spent a week to rid himself of all mortal impurity, so that he might betake himself to God into heaven. At the end of his preparations, God called him to come to Him.<sup>246</sup> Then a cloud appeared and lay down before him, but he knew not whether to ride upon it or merely to hold fast to it. Then suddenly the mouth of the cloud flew open, and he entered into it, and walked about on the firmament as a man walks about on earth. Then he met Kemuel, the porter, the angel who is in charge of twelve thousand angels of destruction, who are posted at the portals of the firmament. He spoke harshly to Moses, saying: "What dost thou here, son of Amram, on this spot, belonging to the angels of fire?" Moses answered: "Not of my own impulse do I come here, but with the permission of the Holy One, to receive the Torah and bear it down to Israel." As Kemuel did not want to let him pass, Moses struck him and destroyed him out of the world, whereupon he went on his way until the angel Hadarniel came along.

This angel is sixty myriads of parasangs taller than his fellows, and at every word that passes out of his mouth, issue twelve thousand fiery

lightning flashes. When he beheld Moses he roared at him: "What dost thou here, son of Amram, here on the spot of the Holy and High?" When Moses heard his voice, he grew exceedingly frightened, his eyes shed tears, and soon he would have fallen from the cloud. But instantly the pity of God for Moses was awakened, and He said to Hadarniel: "You angels have been quarrelsome since the day I created you. In the beginning, when I wanted to create Adam, you raised a complaint before Me and said, 'What is man that Thou art mindful of him!' and My wrath was kindled against you and I burned scores of you with My little finger. Now again ye commence strife with the faithful one of My house, whom I have bidden to come up here to receive the Torah and carry it down to My chosen children Israel, although you know that if Israel did not receive the Torah, you would no longer be permitted to dwell in heaven." When Hadarniel heard this, he said quickly to the Lord: "O Lord of the world! It is manifest and clear to Thee, that I was not aware he came hither with Thy permission, but since I now know it, I will be his messenger and go before him as a disciple before his master." Hadarniel hereupon, in a humble attitude, ran before Moses, as a disciple before his master, until he reached the fire of Sandalfon, when he spoke to Moses, saying: "Go, turn about, for I may not stay in this spot, or the fire of Sandalfon will scorch me."

This angel towers above his fellows by so great a height, that it would take five hundred years to cross over it. He stands behind the Divine Throne and binds garlands for his Lord. Sandalfon does not know the abiding spot of the Lord either, so that he might set the crown on His head, but he charms the crown, so that it rises of its own accord until it reposes on the head of the Lord. As soon as Sandalfon bids the crown rise, the hosts on high tremble and shake, the holy animals burst into paeans, the holy Sera-



phim roar like lions and say: "Holy, holy, holy is the Lord of hosts, the whole earth is full of His glory." When the crown has reached the Throne of Glory, the wheels of the Throne are instantly set in motion, the foundations of its footstool tremble, and all the heavens are seized with trembling and horror. As soon as the crown now passes the Throne of Glory, to settle upon its place, all the heavenly hosts open their mouths, saying: "Praised be the glory of the Eternal from His place." And when the crown has reached its destination, all the holy animals, the Seraphim, the wheels of the Throne, and the hosts on high, the Cherubim and the Hashmalim speak with one accord: "The Eternal is King, the Eternal was King, the Eternal will be King in all eternity."

Now when Moses beheld Sandalfon, he was frightened, and in his alarm came near to falling out of the cloud. In tears he imploringly begged God for mercy, and was answered. In His bountiful love for Israel, He Himself descended from the Throne of His glory and stood before Moses, until he had passed the flames of Sandalfon.

After Moses had passed Sandalfon, he ran across Rigyon, the stream of fire, the coals of which burn the angels, who dip into them every morning, are burned, and then arise anew. This stream with the coals of fire is generated beneath the Throne of Glory out of the perspiration of the holy Hayyot, who perspire fire out of fear of God. God, however, quickly drew Moses past Rigyon without his suffering any injury.

As he passed on he met the angel Gallizur, also called Raziel. He it is who reveals the teachings of his Maker, and makes known in the world what is decreed by God. For he stands behind the curtains that are drawn before the Throne of God, and sees and hears everything. Elijah on Horeb hears that which Raziel calls down into the world, and passes his knowledge on. This angel performs other functions in heaven. He stands before the Throne with outspread

wings, and in this way arrests the breath of the Hayyot, the heat of which world otherwise scorch all the angels. He furthermore puts the coals of Rigyon into a glowing brazier, which he holds up to kings, lords, and princes, and from which their faces receive a radiance that makes men fear them. When Moses beheld him, he trembled, but God led him past unhurt.

He then came to a host of Angels of Terror that surround the Throne of Glory, and are the strongest and mightiest among the angels. These now wished to scorch Moses with their fiery breath, but God spread His radiance of splendor over Moses, and said to him: "Hold on tight to the Throne of My Glory, and answer them."<sup>247</sup> For as soon as the angels became aware of Moses in heaven, they said to God: "What does he who is born of woman here?" And God's answer was as follows: "He has come to receive the Torah." They furthermore said: "O Lord, content Thyself with the celestial beings, let them have the Torah, what wouldst Thou with the dwellers of the dust?" Moses hereupon answered the angels: "It is written in the Torah: 'I am the Eternal, thy Lord, that have led thee out of the land of Egypt and out of the house of bondage.' Were ye perchance enslaved in Egypt and then delivered, that ye are in need of the Torah? It is further written in the Torah: 'Thou shalt have no other gods.' Are there perchance idolaters among ye, that ye are in need of the Torah? It is written: 'Thou shalt not utter the name of the Eternal, thy God, in vain.' Are there perchance business negotiations among ye, that ye are in need of the Torah to teach you the proper form of invocation? It is written: Remember to keep the Sabbath holy. Is there perchance any work among you, that ye are in need of the Torah? It is written: 'Honor thy father and thy mother.' Have ye perchance parents, that ye are in need of the Torah? It is written: 'Thou shalt not kill.' Are there perchance murderers among ye, that ye are in need of the Torah? It is written:



‘Thou shalt not commit adultery.’ Are there perchance women among ye, that ye are in need of the Torah? It is written: ‘Thou shalt not steal.’ Is there perchance money in heaven, that ye are in need of the Torah? It is written: ‘Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.’ Is there perchance any false witness among ye, that ye are in need of the Torah? It is written: ‘Covet not the house of thy neighbor.’ Are there perchance houses, fields, or vineyards among ye, that ye are in need of the Torah?” The angels hereupon relinquished their opposition to the delivering of the Torah into the hands of Israel, and acknowledged that God was right to reveal it to mankind, saying: “Eternal, our Lord, how excellent is Thy name in all the earth! Who hast set Thy glory upon the heavens.”

Moses now stayed forty days in heaven to learn the Torah from God. But when he started to descend and beheld the hosts of the angels of terror, angels of trembling, angels of quaking, and angels of horror, then through his fear he forgot all he had learned. For this reason God called the angel Yefefiyah, the prince of the Torah, who handed over to Moses the Torah, “ordered in all things and sure.” All the other angels, too, became his friends, and each bestowed upon him a remedy as well as the secret of the Holy Names, as they are contained in the Torah, and as they are applied. Even the Angel of Death gave him a remedy against death. The applications of the Holy Names, which the angels through Yefefiyah, the prince of the Torah, and Metatron, the prince of the Face, taught him, Moses passed on to the high-priest Eleazar, who passed them to his son Phinehas, also known as Elijah.<sup>248</sup>

245. PRE 41, where **היום כפול** is to be taken literally. The sun stood still for Moses on the day of the battle with Amalek (see note 146) and on the days of the battles against Sihon and Og (see text on pp. 751 and 829), as well as at the time when Moses commanded heaven and earth to stand still and listen to him, saying: “Give ear, ye heavens,

and I will speak and let the earth hear the words of my mouth.” See Ta’anit 20a; ‘Abodah Z. 25a; Tehillim 19, 167; PR 3, 13b; Sifre D., 306 (131a, in the middle of page); Lekah, Deut. 32.1 and 24.12; DR 10.2–3; DZ 30. A Midrash quoted in *Hadar*, Deut. 32.1, reads: Moses refused to submit to the Angel of Death, saying unto him: “I shall not die, but live, and declare the works of God.” The angel of Death replied: “God has the sun and the moon to praise Him and to declare His glory.” Whereupon Moses bade the sun and the moon stand still and he began to praise God. In Sibyl. 5, 256–259 it is said that Moses, the best of the Hebrews—Philo, *Moses*, 1 (beginning), and Midrash Tannaim 186 call him the greatest and most perfect man—made the sun and the moon stand still. Comp. note 947.

246. ARN, both versions at the beginning; Seder ‘Olam 6; Yoma 4b; Yerushalmi Ta’anit 4, 68b. According to another view given in the sources just quoted, Moses ascended, without further preparations, in the morning immediately after the revelation on Sinai. See also Mekilta RS 96.

247. Ma’ayan ha-Hokmah 58–60; PR 20, 96a–98a; Yalkut Mishpatim (end). The fragment published in BMH V, 165–266 very likely forms part of Ma’ayan ha-Hokmah; comp. also Mahzor Vitry 323–325; Zohar I, 5a; II, 58a; III, 78b. The description of Sandalfon and Gallizur, quoted in *Ketab Tamim* 5, 9 from a Midrash which is no longer extant, agrees in the main with that of Ma’ayan.—As to how Moses found his way through the dark clouds, see Yoma 4b and Philo, *Quaestiones*, Exod. 2.48. On the angels guarding the gates of heaven, see Ascension of Isaiah 24, *seq.* Concerning the opposition of the angels to the creation of man, see text on p. 51. On Sandalfon and the crown which he places on the head of the Lord, see Index, s.v. “Sandalfon.” The description of a certain distance as “a journey of five hundred years” is of frequent occurrence in the legends; see text on p. 6; text on p. 503; comp. also Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 13a. The conception about the fire of Rigion is certainly of Persian origin, being identical with Hvareno of the Avesta, concerning which see Cumont, *Mysteries of Mithra*, index, s.v. That Moses saved himself by holding on to God’s throne is a very old legend; see Shabbat 88a; p. 504–505, bottom; comp. note 273; text on pp. 625 and 631. When the angels attempted to expel Moses from heaven, he said to them: “I am permitted to sit in the place where ye are not even allowed to stand.” See quotation from Nahmanides in Neubauer’s *The Fifty-third Chapter of Isaiah* 1.76. As to the question whether Moses sat or stood in heaven, see Megillah 21a.

248. Ma’ayan ha-Hokmah 60–61 and PR 20, 98a, 25, 128a, which in the main follow old sources; see Shabbat 88b; ARN 2, 10; DR 7.9 and 8.2; Shir 8.11; Tehillim 8, 74–75. These sources read: When, owing to the worship of the golden calf, the first tables were broken, the angels rejoiced, thinking that Israel, because of his sins, lost the



Torah. God, however, pointed out to the angels that they too, had transgressed the command of the Torah (compare p. 334, note 29) when, as Abraham's guests, they partook of forbidden food and ate meat with milk; PRE 46; Tan. B V, 51; Mekilta RS, 101–102 (not tannaitic); Zohar II, 3. When the angels were about to attack Moses, God changed his face, making him look like Abraham; He then said to the angels: "Are ye not ashamed to attack him in whose house ye ate and drank!" Turning to Moses God said: "It is on account of the merits of Abraham that thou hast come into possession of the Torah." On the "prince of the Torah" and his attitude toward Moses, see also BHM II, 116–117, and text on p. 729. This legend, however, must not be taken to express the idea that the Torah was revealed by an angel; the function of Yefefiyah is that of a teacher of the Torah and not that of one who reveals it. Concerning angels as teachers of a chosen few, see p. 89, footnote 109. The old authorities very frequently emphasize the direct character of the revelation of the Torah; Sifre Z., 84; Mekilta Ki-Tissa 1, 103b (comp., however, Mekilta RS 160); Hagigah 6b; second version of ARN 1, 2. Philo, *Moses*, 2 (3).23, writes: The laws were partly revealed by God Himself, through the medium of divine prophecy (hence Philo, *Moses*, 1, and the Rabbis, Yerushalmi Sotah 6.1, describe Moses as the interpreter of the sacred laws) partly in the form of questions and answers, revealing the will of God (comp. e.g. Num. 9.8), and some of them were promulgated by Moses while in a state of ecstasy. Though this tripartite division of the Torah is quite unknown to the Rabbis (they condemn as a heresy the view which would admit even that one word of the Torah was written by Moses himself, and not received by him from heaven; see Sanhedrin 99a), they agree with Philo that the revelation was not through the medium of angels. The view of Paul, Galatians 3.17, is not Jewish, but rather anti-Jewish; comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 246–249, where this passage of Galatians, as well as Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XV, 5.3, and Jub. 1.17, is fully discussed. See also, above, note 242, and text on p. 604. A rather advanced view is held by an unknown Jewish author of the middle ages, according to whom Moses, while inspired by the holy spirit, nevertheless made use of written and oral sources for the compilation of the history prior to his own times as recorded in the Book of Genesis. See Neubauer, *Medieval Jewish Chronicles* I, 163.

## MOSES RECEIVES THE TORAH

When Moses reached heaven, he found God occupied ornamenting the letters in

which the Torah was written, with little crown-like decorations, and he looked on without saying a word. God then said to him: "In thy home, do not people know the greeting of peace?" Moses: "Does it behoove a servant to address his Master?" God: "Thou mightest at least have wished Me success in My labors." Moses hereupon said: "Let the power of my Lord be great according as Thou hast spoken."<sup>249</sup> Then Moses inquired as to the significance of the crowns upon the letters, and was answered: "Hereafter there shall live a man called Akiba, son of Joseph, who will base in interpretation a gigantic mountain of Halakot upon every dot of these letters." Moses said to God: "Show me this man." God: "Go back eighteen ranks." Moses went where he was bidden, and could hear the discussions of the teacher sitting with his disciples in the eighteenth rank, but was not able to follow these discussions, which greatly grieved him. But just then he heard the disciples questioning their master in regard to a certain subject: "Whence dost thou know this?" And he answered, "This is a Halakah given to Moses on Mount Sinai," and now Moses was content. Moses returned to God and said to Him: "Thou hast a man like Akiba, and yet dost Thou give the Torah to Israel through me!" But God answered: "Be silent, so has it been decreed by Me." Moses then said: "O Lord of the world! Thou hast permitted me to behold this man's learning, let me see also the reward which will be meted out to him." God said: "Go, return and see." Moses saw them sell the flesh of the martyr Akiba at the meat market. He said to God: "Is this the reward for such erudition?" But God replied: "Be silent, thus have I decreed."<sup>250</sup>

Moses then saw how God wrote the word "long-suffering" in the Torah, and asked: "Does this mean that Thou hast patience with the pious?" But God answered: "Nay, with sinners also am I long-suffering." "What!" exclaimed Moses,



“Let the sinners perish!” God said no more, but when Moses implored God’s mercy, begging Him to forgive the sin of the people of Israel, God answered him: “Thou thyself didst advise Me to have no patience with sinners and to destroy them.” “Yea,” said Moses, “but Thou didst declare that Thou art long-suffering with sinners also, let now the patience of the Lord be great according as Thou hast spoken.”<sup>251</sup>

The forty days that Moses spent in heaven were entirely devoted to the study of the Torah, he learned the written as well as the oral teaching, yea, even the doctrines that an able scholar would some day propound were revealed to him.<sup>252</sup> He took an especial delight in hearing the teachings of the Tanna Rabbi Eliezer, and received the joyful message that this great scholar would be one of his descendants.<sup>253</sup>

The study of Moses was so planned for the forty days, that by day God studied with him the written teachings, and by night the oral. In this way was he enabled to distinguish between night and day, for in heaven “the night shineth as the day.” There were other signs also by which he could distinguish night from day; for if he heard the angels praise God with “Holy, holy, holy is the Lord of hosts,” he knew that it was day; but if they praised Him with “Blessed be the Lord to whom blessing is due,” he knew that it was night. Then, too, if he saw the sun appear before God and cast itself down before Him, he knew that it was night; if, however, the moon and the stars cast themselves at His feet, he knew that it was day. He could also tell time by the occupation of the angels, for by day they prepared manna for Israel, and by night they sent it down to earth. The prayers he heard in heaven served him as another token whereby he might know the time, for if he heard the recitation of the Shema’ precede prayer, he knew that it was day, but if the prayer preceded the recitation of the Shema’, then it was night.<sup>254</sup>

During his stay with Him, God showed Moses all the seven heavens, and the celestial temple, and the four colors that he was to employ to fit up the tabernacle. Moses found it difficult to retain the colors, whereupon God said to him: “Turn to the right,” and as he turned, he saw a host of angels in garments that had the color of the sea. “This,” said God, “is violet.” Then He bade Moses turn to the left, and there he saw angels dressed in red, and God said: “This is royal purple.” Moses hereupon turned around to the rear, and saw angels robed in a color that was neither purple nor violet, and God said to him: “This color is crimson.” Moses then turned about and saw angels robed in white, and God said to him: “This is the color of twisted linen.”<sup>255</sup>

Although Moses now devoted both night and day to the study of the Torah, he still learned nothing, for hardly had he learned something from God when he forgot it again. Moses thereupon said to God: “O Lord of the world! Forty days have I devoted to studying the Torah, without having profited anything by it.” God therefore bestowed the Torah upon Moses, and now he could descend to Israel, for now he remembered all that he had learned.<sup>256</sup>

Hardly had Moses descended from heaven with the Torah, when Satan appeared before the Lord and said: “Where, forsooth, is the place where the Torah is kept?” For Satan knew nothing of the revelation of God on Sinai, as God had employed him elsewhere on purpose, that he might not appear before Him as an accuser, saying: “Wilt Thou give the Torah to a people that forty days later will worship the Golden Calf?” In answer to Satan’s question regarding the whereabouts of the Torah, God said: “I gave the Torah to Earth.” To earth, then, Satan betook himself with his query: “Where is the Torah?” Earth said: “God knows of its course, He knoweth its abiding-place, for ‘He looketh to



the ends of the earth, and seeth under the whole heaven.' " Satan now passed on to the sea to seek for the Torah, but the sea also said: "It is not with me," and the abyss said: "It is not in me." Destruction and death said: "We have heard the fame thereof with our ears." Satan now returned to God and said: "O Lord of the world! Everywhere have I sought the Torah, but I found it not." God replied: "Go, seek the son of Amram." Satan now hastened to Moses and asked him: "Where is the Torah that God hath given thee?" Whereupon Moses answered: "Who am I, that the Holy One, blessed be He, should have given me the Torah?" God hereupon spoke to Moses: "O Moses, thou utterest a falsehood." But Moses answered: "O Lord of the world! Thou hast in Thy possession a hidden treasure that daily delights Thee. Dare I presume to declare it my possession?" Then God said: "As a reward for thy humility, the Torah shall be named for thee, and it shall henceforth be known as the Torah of Moses."<sup>257</sup>

Moses departed from the heavens with the two tables on which the Ten Commandments were engraved, and just as the words of it are by nature Divine, so too are the tables on which they are engraved. These were created by God's own hand in the dusk of the first Sabbath at the close of the creation, and were made of a sapphire-like stone. On each of the two tables are the Ten Commandments, four times repeated, and in such wise were they engraved that the letters were legible on both sides, for, like the tables, the writing and the pencils for inscription, too, were of heavenly origin. Between the separate commandments were noted down all the precepts of the Torah in all their particulars, although the tables were not more than six hands in length and as much in width.<sup>258</sup> It is another of the attributes of the tables, that although they are fashioned out of the hardest stone, they can still be rolled up like a scroll.<sup>259</sup> When God

handed the tables to Moses, He seized them by the top third, whereas Moses took hold of the bottom third, but one third remained open, and it was in this way that the Divine radiance was shed upon Moses' face.<sup>260</sup>

---

249. Shabbat 89a. A different version of this legend is found in *Hadar*, Num. 14.7. In Babylon it was considered bad manners for a pupil to greet his master before being greeted first, but in Palestine, on the other hand, a pupil was expected to greet his master first; see Berakot 27b and Yerushalmi 2, 4b; comp. Müller, *Hilluf Minbagim* 32, No. 33.

250. Menahot 29b. For another version of this legend, compare text on p. 514. Comp. also PK 4, 29b, which reads: Things not revealed to Moses were known to R. Akiba. See also the quotation from *Sefer Tagin* (not in our texts) in Yalkut Reubeni, Exod. 19.2. On the meaning of קִיץ, Menahot, *loc. cit.*, see Derenbourg, *Journal Asiatique*, I, 247.

251. Sanhedrin 111a–111b; Baba Kamma 50b; PK 16, 166b; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 2, 65b; compare with p. 502, and text on pp. 629, 631, 714. In one respect, however, it was Moses who made God to be more compassionate than He had intended to be. God first revealed to Moses that He would visit the sins of the fathers upon their children. Moses objected to this, saying: "Many a wicked man bore a pious child; why should the latter suffer for the sin of the former?" God recognized the justice of this objection, and promulgated the law: The children shall not be put to death for their fathers; every man shall be put to death for his own sin (Deut. 24.16); see BaR 19.33. Compare also with p. 604, and note 217.

252. Yerushalmi Peah 2, 17a; WR 22.1; ShR 47.1; Kohelet 1.10 and 5.8; compare with pp. 604 and 618.

253. PK 4, 40; BaR 19.7; Tan. B. IV, 118; Tan. Hukkat 8.

254. Tehillim 19, 166–167; ShR 47.5 and 8. God taught him by day, and during the night he repeated his lessons; Tan. Ki-Tissa 36; Tan. B. II, 119; PRE 46; Targum Lamentations 2.19. The night is the best time for serious study, and hence it was devoted by Moses to the study of the oral law; see 'Erubin 65a; WR 19.1; Shir 5.11; Shemuel 5, 57; Compare footnote 83 on p. 927, as well as text on p. 634. There is an angel on whom a label is attached bearing the inscription *Hesed* ("Grace"). During the day the label is attached to the angel's front, and by night to his back. By means of this the angels know to distinguish between night and day. See Pa'aneah Raza, Exod. 13.21, and comp. Index, s.v. "Israel", Angel. As to the sun



and moon worshipping God before they begin their task, see text on p. 24. Concerning the grinding of the manna by angels, see text on p. 570.

255. PR 20, 98b; PK 1, 4b; BaR 12.8; Shir 3.11. The place where Moses was during the forty days is described by ps.-Philo 12.1 as the one “where is the light of the sun and the moon”; comp. note 260.

256. ShR 41.6; compare with p. 615. According to Jub. 32.25, Jacob likewise forgot the things communicated to him by an angel from the heavenly tables. While ShR and many other passages describe the great efforts Moses made to acquire the knowledge of the Torah, it is maintained by Yerushalmi Horayyot 3.48c that he became the great master of the Torah without the slightest exertion. Comp. the following note.

257. Shabbat 89a (comp. the Midrash quoted by Tosafot); Sanhedrin 26b; Kallah 8, 15a. Moses put his life in danger for the sake of the Torah, Israel, and the maintenance of Justice (comp. Exod. 2.12); as a reward for this, Scripture speaks of the “Torah of Moses”, of “Israel the people of Moses”, and of the “justice of Moses”; see Mekilta Shirah 1, 34b; Midrash Tannaim 96; Tan. B. V, 29; Tan. Ki-Tissa 35; PR 5, 14b (here the erection of the Sanctuary is substituted for Israel); BaR 12.9; ShR 30.4; Tehillim 1, 15, and 30, 235–236. For other explanations of the expression “The Torah of Moses” (Malachi 3.22), see text on pp. 485, 486, 504; text on pp. 617, 633, 806.

258. PRE 19 and 46; Abot 5.6 (the characters and the stylus, mentioned there as having been created during the twilight of the first eve of Sabbath, very likely refer to the character and stylus used for the tables; see, however, note 99, on vol. I, p. 83); Shabbat 104a (on this passage, see *Hoffmann-Festschrift*, 113–114); Shekalim 6, 49b where the following conflicting opinions are given: 1) five commandments were engraved on one table and five on the other; 2) all the Ten Commandments were engraved on each of the two tables; 3) the Ten Commandments were on both sides of each of the two tables; 4) the Ten Commandments were on each of the four sides of each of the two tables (read in *Responsen der Geonim*, ed. Harkavy 11, טטרונא instead of אצטרונא; Sifre D., 313; Sifre N., 101; Shir 5.14 (whence Lekah Exod. 31.18 states that the sapphire employed for the tables was taken from the Throne of Glory; see, however, Zohar I, 131b, according to which the tables were hewn out from the *Eben Shetiyah*); ShR 47.6; Midrash Shir 40b; Zohar II, 84a–84b; Philo, *Quaestiones*, Exod. 2, 42. This legend about the nature of the tables is an attempt to express in popular form the view strongly emphasized by Philo (*De Decalogo*, 29, and *De Special. Leg. passim*) that the Ten Commandments contain the kernel of the entire Torah. The division of the six hundred and thirteen precepts of the Torah into ten classes, with the Ten Commandments as headings, is first found in

the writings of Sa'adya Gaon, who perhaps followed Philo, whose book *De Special. Leg.* is the first attempt in this direction. It is worthy of notice that the talmudic-midrashic sources never speak of the Decalogue as containing the entire Torah, though this view is expressed with regard to the Shema'; see Yerushalmi Berakot 1, 3c. In this connection it may be mentioned that the section of Lev. 19, *seq.*, is said by the Rabbis to contain the Decalogue; see WR 24.5. Comp. notes 302 and 306.

259. Shir 5.14.

260. Tan. Ki-Tissa (end). God gave the Torah to Moses with His right hand; see EZ 11, 192; PK 32, 200a; Tehillim 1, 15; 16, 124; 18, 155; Mishle 6, 54; Tan. Berakah 6. God holds life and justice in His left hand, and grace and the Torah in His right, one who does justice and observes the Torah receives life from God as an act of His grace; see WR 4.1; DR 5.4; Koheleth 3.16 (end). On the radiance of Moses' face see the references given above, note 204, as well as PK 4, 37a; Tan. B. IV, 114, and the parallel passages cited by Buber; notes 295 and 309. Zohar II, 58a, and Shu'aib Ki-Tissa (end) are based on Tan., *loc. cit.*, where an opinion is quoted to the effect that “the rays sent forth” from the countenance of Moses owed their existence to the sparks which emanated from the Shekinah at the time when Moses received instruction in the Torah from God. Zohar adds (on whose authority?) that after Israel worshipped the golden calf the radiance of Moses' face lost its lustre, retaining only a thousandth part of its original strength, so that the angels who formerly dreaded to come near him attempted to attack him. Compare with p. 503. Ps.-Philo 12.1 explains the radiance of Moses' face in the following manner: He was covered with an invisible light, for he had gone to the place where is the light of the sun and moon (comp. note 255), and the light of his face overcame the brightness of the sun and moon. The place of the great light is, of course, the place of the Shekinah.

## THE GOLDEN CALF

When God revealed Himself upon Mount Sinai, all Israel sang a song of jubilation to the Lord, for their faith in God was on this occasion without bounds and unexampled, except possibly at the time of the Messiah, when they likewise will cherish this firm faith. The angels, too, rejoiced with Israel, only God was down-cast on this day and sent His voice “out of



thickest darkness," in token of His sorrow. The angels hereupon said to God: "Is not the joy that Thou hast created Thine?" But God replied: "You do not know what the future will bring." He knew that forty days later Israel would give the lie to the words of God: "Thou shalt have no other gods before Me," and would adore the Golden Calf.<sup>261</sup> And truly, God had sufficient cause to grow sad at this thought, for the worship of the Golden Calf had more disastrous consequences for Israel than any other of their sins. God had resolved to give life everlasting to the nation that would accept the Torah, hence Israel upon accepting the Torah gained supremacy over the Angel of Death. But they lost this power when they worshipped the Golden Calf. As a punishment for this, their sin, they were doomed to study the Torah in suffering and bondage, in exile and unrest, amid cares of life and burdens, until, in the Messianic time and in the future world, God will compensate them for all their sufferings.<sup>262</sup> But until that time there is no sorrow that falls to Israel's lot that is not in part a punishment for their worship of the Golden Calf.<sup>263</sup>

Strange as it may seem that Israel should set out to worship this idol at the very time when God was busied with the preparation of the two tables of the law, still the following circumstances are to be considered. When Moses departed from the people to hasten to God to receive the Torah, he said to them: "Forty days from to-day I will bring you the Torah." But at noon on the fortieth day Satan came, and with a wizard's trick conjured up for the people a vision of Moses lying stretched out dead on a bier that floated midway between earth and heaven. Pointing to it with their fingers, they cried: "This is the man Moses that brought us up out of the land of Egypt."<sup>264</sup> Under the leadership of the magicians Jannes and Jambres, they appeared before Aaron, saying: "The Egyptians were wont to

carry their gods about with them, to dance and play before them, that each might be able to behold his gods; and now we desire that thou shouldst make us a god such as the Egyptians had." When Hur, the son of Miriam, whom Moses during his absence had appointed joint leader of the people with Aaron, owing to his birth which placed him among the notables of highest rank, beheld this, he said to them: "O ye frivolous ones, you are no longer mindful of the many miracles God wrought for you." In their wrath, the people slew this pious and noble man; and, pointing out his dead body to Aaron, they said to him threateningly: "If thou wilt make us a god, it is well, if not we will dispose of thee as of him." Aaron had no fear for his life, but he thought: "If Israel were to commit so terrible a sin as to slay their priest and prophet, God would never forgive them." He was willing rather to take a sin upon himself than to cast the burden of so wicked a deed upon the people. He therefore granted them their wish to make them a god, but he did it in such a way that he still cherished the hope that this thing might not come to pass. Hence he demanded from them not their own ornaments for the fashioning of the idol, but the ornaments of their wives, their sons, and their daughters, thinking: "If I were to tell them to bring me gold and silver, they would immediately do so, hence I will demand the earrings of their wives, their sons, and their daughters, that through their refusal to give up their ornaments, the matter might come to nought." But Aaron's assumption was only in part true; the women indeed did firmly refuse to give up their jewels for the making of a monster that is of no assistance to his worshippers. As a reward for this, God gave the new moons as holidays to women, and in the future world too they will be rewarded for their firm faith in God, in that, like the new moons, they too, may monthly be rejuvenated. But when the men saw that no



gold or silver for the idol was forthcoming from the women, they drew off their own earrings that they wore in Arab fashion, and brought these to Aaron.<sup>265</sup>

No living calf would have shaped itself out of the gold of these earrings, if a disaster had not occurred through an oversight of Aaron. For when Moses at the exodus of Israel from Egypt set himself to lifting the coffin of Joseph out of the depths of the Nile, he employed the following means: He took four leaves of silver, and engraved on each the image of one of the beings represented at the Celestial Throne,—the lion, the man, the eagle, and the bull. He then cast on the river the leaf with the image of the lion, and the waters of the river became tumultuous, and roared like a lion. He then threw down the leaf with the image of man, and the scattered bones of Joseph united themselves into an entire body; and when he cast in the third leaf with the image of the eagle, the coffin floated up to the top. As he had no use for the fourth leaf of silver with the image of the bull, he asked a woman to store it away for him, while he was occupied with the transportation of the coffin, and later forgot to reclaim the leaf of silver. This was now among the ornaments that the people brought to Aaron, and it was exclusively owing to this bull's image of magical virtues, that a golden bull arose out of the fire into which Aaron put the gold and silver.<sup>266</sup>

When the mixed multitude that had joined Israel in their exodus from Egypt saw this idol conducting itself like a living being, they said to Israel: "This is thy God, O Israel."<sup>267</sup> The people then betook themselves to the seventy members of the Sanhedrin and demanded that they worship the bull that had led Israel out of Egypt. "God," said they, "has not delivered us out of Egypt, but only Himself, who had in Egypt been in captivity." The members of the Sanhedrin remained loyal to their God, and were

hence cut down by the rabble.<sup>268</sup> The twelve heads of the tribes did not answer the summons of the people any more than the members of the Sanhedrin, and were therefore rewarded by being found worthy of beholding the Divine vision.<sup>269</sup>

But the people worshipped not only the Golden Calf, they made thirteen such idols, one each for the twelve tribes, and one for all Israel. More than this, they employed manna, which God in His kindness did not deny them even on this day, as an offering to their idols.<sup>270</sup> The devotion of Israel to this worship of the bull is in part explained by the circumstance that while passing through the Red Sea, they beheld the Celestial Throne, and most distinctly of the four creatures about the Throne, they saw the ox. It was for this reason that they hit upon the notion that the ox had helped God in the exodus from Egypt, and for this reason did they wish to worship the ox beside God.<sup>271</sup>

The people then wanted to erect an altar for their idol, but Aaron tried to prevent this by saying to the people: "It will be more reverential to your god if I build the altar in person," for he hoped that Moses might appear in the meantime. His expectation, however, was disappointed, for on the morning of the following day, when Aaron had at length completed the altar, Moses was not yet at hand, and the people began to offer sacrifices to their idol, and to indulge in lewdness.<sup>272</sup>

---

261. PR 96b; PRE 41.

262. EZ 4, 179–180. That originally the Torah was given to Israel as a weapon against the Angel of Death, is an old conception; see Tan. B. II, 112, IV, 76, and the parallel passages cited by Buber in his note on the latter place, as well as *Batte Midrashot* III, 14–15; text on p. 713; note 238.

263. Yerushalmi Ta'anit 4, 68c (top); Sanhedrin 102a; ShR 43.2; Koheleth 9.11; Ekah 1.62.

264. Shabbat 89a; Tan. B. II, 112–113; Tan. Ki-Tissa 19 and Beha'aloteka 14; ShR 41.7; Targum



Yerushalmi Exod. 32.1. The error of the people consisted in including, in their calculation, the day of the ascent, whereas Moses, in speaking of forty days, had “complete ones” in mind, excluding the day of ascent, which he partly spent on earth. See Rashi and Tosafot on Shabbat, *loc. cit.* Disappointed in their expectation to see their leader return, they came to Aaron with the request to appoint another leader (אלהים in Exod. 32.1 means judge, leader). See *Hadar, ad loc.*, 42d and 43a.

265. PRE 45; ShR 41.5; WR 10.3., 7.1, and 2.1 (the women of this generation were pious); BaR 15.21 and 9.44; EZ 4, 180; Sanhedrin 7a; Tan. B. II, 113; Tan. Ki-Tissa 19; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 32.3–5; Zohar II, 191a and 192a. The legend that Aaron was intimidated by the people, especially when he saw the violent death of Hur, is also mentioned by Ephraem I, 224a. On Hur, see text on pp. 581, 644. According to text on p. 559, Jannes and Jambres met their death at the Red Sea; see Index, s.v. “Jannes and Jambres”. Concerning another attempt to exculpate Aaron, see below, note 351. On the piety of the women see text on pp. 653, 785; on the New Moon as a festive day, see *Menorat ha-Maor, Rosh Hodesh*.

266. Midrash Shir 13a–13b. This is very likely the source of Hadassi, 45a (numbers 117–118) and 134d (numbers 362–363). For a different version of this legend, see vol. II, p. 182, and note 493 referring to it. Grünbaum *Neue Beiträge*, 151 gives the Arabic version. For a third version see footnote 126 on p. 880. There is some relation between this legend and the one found in early Christian writings, according to which the Egyptians identified Joseph with Serapis; see Tertullian, *Ad Nationes* 2.8, and *Specilegium Syriacum* 89; comp. note 271. In PRE this legend is abridged in the following manner: Aaron found a golden plate, upon which the Divine Name was engraved, together with the form of a calf. When Aaron threw this piece of gold into the fire, a bleating calf came forth, for Sammael had entered it, and started to bleat to deceive the Israelites. See text on p. 141, where a similar part is ascribed to Sammael.

267. PK 9, 78a; WR 27.8; Tan. B. III, 94; Tan. Emor 11; ShR 42.6; Shir 1.9, which reads: The Egyptian magicians made the calf move about as if it were alive. Comp. the preceding note; text on pp. 620, 624, 673, 693.

268. Ginzberg, *Haggadot Ketu'ot* 53–54, 64–66=*Haggoren* IX; BaR 15.21, and, on the other hand, compare with p. 695. As to “the redemption of God from Egypt”, see note 150.

269. PRE 45.

270. Tehillim 3, 37; ShR 41.1; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28b; WR 5.3. *Yalkut David*, Exod. 32.1, quotes Midrash and Targum Shir 2.17 to the effect that the clouds of glory departed from the Israelites as soon as they worshipped the golden calf. As far as can be ascertained, this

legend is found neither in the Midrashim nor in the Targum (certainly not in the passage referred to). Did the author of *Yalkut David* use manuscripts? In the text on p. 772, it is said that the clouds of glory were not withdrawn from the Israelites when they worshipped the golden calf. Compare with p. 600.

271. Ginzberg, as above, note 268; ShR 3.2, 42.5, and 43.8; Tan. Ki-Tissa 21. This legend presupposes an old Haggadah, according to which, Ps. 106.20 refers to “the ox of the Merkabah” (Ezekiel 1.10); but as early as the time of R. Akiba great objections were raised to this view; see Mekilta 6.33 (the text is rather “doctored”); Mekilta RS 45; Shir 1.9; Tehillim 106, 455–456. See also Lekah, Exod. 32.4, which reads: They noticed that the feet of angels were like those of calves (see Ezekiel 1.7) and therefore they made the golden calf. The identification of the golden calf with the Apis of the Egyptians frequently mentioned by early Christian authors (comp. e.g., *Apostolic Constitution*, 6.20; Lactantius, *Divinae Institutiones* 4.10) is unknown in the old rabbinic sources. Ziyoni, however, on Exod. 32.1 quoted from the “Book of the Magicians” a lengthy description of the Apis cult (introduced by a magician called Apis in the ninety-second year of Jacob), which is said to be identical with the worship of the golden calf. Comp. also note 3. Pa'aneah, Exod. 32.4, writes: They had noticed in the sand along the shore of the Red Sea that the imprints left by the feet of the angels were like those of the feet of calves, and therefore they adopted the form of a calf for their idol. This is a slight modification of Lekah, *loc. cit.* Comp. also note 122 on the imprints on rocks. At the request of Ezekiel, God changed “the ox of the Merkabah” into a Cherub (comp. Ezekiel 1.10 with 10.14), so that He might not be constantly reminded of Israel's sin. See Haggigah 13b.

272. ShR 41.7 and 42.4; Tan. B. II, 113. Comp. the reference to Zohar cited in note 260.

## MOSES BLAMED FOR ISRAEL'S SIN

When the people turned from their God, He said to Moses, who was still in heaven: “Go, get thee down; for thy people, which thou broughtest out of the land of Egypt, have corrupted themselves.” Moses, who until then had been superior to the angels, now, owing to the sins of Israel, feared them greatly. The angels, hearing that God meant to send him from His presence, wanted to kill him, and only by



clinging to the Throne of God, who covered him with His mantle, did he escape from the hands of the angels, that they might do him no harm.<sup>273</sup> He had a particularly hard struggle with the five Angels of Destruction: Kezef, Af, Hemah, Mashhit, and Haron, whom God had sent to annihilate Israel. Moses then hastened to the three Patriarchs, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and said to them: "If ye are men who are participators of the future life, stand by me in this hour, for your children are as a sheep that is led to the slaughter." The three Patriarchs united their prayers with those of Moses, who said to God: "Hast Thou not made a vow to these three to multiply their seed as the stars, and are they now to be destroyed?" In recognition of the merits of these three pious men, God called away three of the Angels of Destruction, leaving only two; whereupon Moses further importuned God: "For the vow Thou madest to Israel, take from them the angel Mashhit;" and God granted his prayer. Moses continued: "For the vow Thou madest me, take from them also the angel Haron." God now stood by Moses, so that he was able to conquer this angel, and he thrust him down deep into the earth in a spot that is a possession of the tribe of Gad, and there held him captive.

So long as Moses lived this angel was held in check by him, and if he tried, even when Israel sinned, to rise out of the depths, open wide his mouth, and destroy Israel with his panting, all Moses had to do was to utter the name of God, and Haron, or as he is sometimes called, Peor, was drawn once more into the depths of the earth. At Moses' death, God buried him opposite the spot where Peor is bound. For should Peor, if Israel sinned, reach the upper world and open his mouth to destroy Israel with his panting, he would, upon seeing Moses' grave, be so terror-stricken, that he would fall back into the depths once more.<sup>274</sup>

Moses did indeed manage the Angels of Destruction, but it was a more difficult matter to appease God in His wrath. He addressed Moses harshly, crying: "The grievous sins of men had once caused Me to go down from heaven to see their doings. Do thou likewise go down from heaven now. It is fitting that the servant be treated as his master. Do thou now go down. Only for Israel's sake have I caused this honor to fall to thy lot, but now that Israel has become disloyal to Me, I have no further reason thus to distinguish thee." Moses hereupon answered: "O Lord of the world! Not long since didst Thou say to me: 'Come now, therefore, and I will send thee that thou mayest bring forth My people out of Egypt;' and now Thou callest them my people. Nay, whether pious or sinful, they are Thy people still." Moses continued: "What wilt Thou now do with them?" God answered: "I will consume them, and I will make of thee a great nation." "O Lord of the world!" replied Moses, "If the three-legged bench has no stability, how then shall the one-legged stand! Fulfil not, I implore Thee, the prophecies of the Egyptian magicians, who predicted to their king that the star 'Ra'ah' would move as a harbinger of blood and death before the Israelites."<sup>275</sup> Then he began to implore mercy for Israel: "Consider their readiness to accept the Torah, whereas the sons of Esau rejected it." God: "But they transgressed the precepts of the Torah; one day were they loyal to Me, then instantly set to work to make themselves the Golden Calf." Moses: "Consider that when in Thy name I came to Egypt and announced to them Thy name, they at once believed in me, and bowed down their heads and worshipped Thee." God: "But they now bow down their heads before their idol." Moses: "Consider that they sent Thee their young men to offer Thee burnt offerings." God: "They now offered sacrifices to the Golden Calf." Moses: "Consider that on Sinai they acknowledged that



Thou art their God.” God: “They now acknowledge that the idol is their god.”

All these arguments with God did not help Moses; he even had to put up with having the blame for the Golden Calf laid on his shoulders. “Moses,” said God, “when Israel was still in Egypt, I gave thee the commission to lead them out of that land, but not to take with thee the mixed multitude that wanted to join them. But thou in thy clemency and humility didst persuade Me to accept the penitent that do penance, and didst take with thee the mixed multitude. I did as thou didst beg Me, although I knew what the consequences would be, and it is now these people, ‘thy people,’ that have seduced Israel to idolatry.” Moses now thought it would be useless to try to secure God’s forgiveness for Israel, and was ready to give up his intercession, when God, who in reality meant to preserve Israel, but only liked to hear Moses pray, now spoke kindly to Moses to let him see that He was not quite inaccessible to his exhortations, saying: “Even in Egypt did I foresee what this people would do after their deliverance. Thou foresawest only the receiving of the Torah on Sinai, but I foresaw the worship of the Calf as well.” With these words, God let Moses perceive that the defection of Israel was no surprise to Him, as He had considered it even before the exodus from Egypt; hence Moses now gathered new courage to intercede for Israel. He said: “O Lord of the world! Israel has indeed created a rival for Thee in their idol, that Thou art angry with them. The Calf, I suppose, shall bid stars and moon to appear, while Thou makest the sun to rise; Thou shalt send the dew and he will cause the wind to blow; Thou shalt send down the rain, and he shall bid the plants to grow.” God: “Moses, thou art mistaken, like them, and knowest not that the idol is absolutely nothing.” “If so,” said Moses, “why art Thou angry with Thy people for that which

is nothing! Besides,” he continued, “Thou didst say Thyself that it was chiefly *my* people, the mixed multitude, that was to blame for this sin, why then art Thou angry with *Thy* people? If Thou art angry with them only because they have not observed the Torah, then let me vouch for the observance of it on the part of my companions, such as Aaron and his sons, Joshua and Caleb, Jair and Machir, as well as many pious men among them, and myself.” But God said: “I have vowed that ‘He that sacrificeth unto any god, save unto the Lord only, he shall be utterly destroyed,’ and a vow that has once passed My lips, I can not retract.” Moses replied: “O Lord of the world! Hast not Thou given us the law of absolution from a vow, whereby power is given to a learned man to absolve any one from his vows? But every judge who desires to have his decisions accounted valid, must subject himself to the law, and Thou who hast prescribed the law of absolution from vows through a learned man, must subject Thyself to this law, and through me be absolved from Thy vow.” Moses thereupon wrapped his robe about him, seated himself, and bade God let him absolve Him from His vow, bidding Him say: “I repent of the evil that I had determined to bring upon My people.” Moses then cried out to Him: “Thou art absolved from Thine oath and vow.”<sup>276</sup>

---

273. See the sources given in previous note. On clinging to the throne, see text on pp. 614 and 631.

274. PRE 45; ShR 41.7 and 44.8; DR 3.2; Tehillim 7, 65–66 (in this passage it is said: At first God did not consider the merits of the fathers, for even they were not free from sin. Compare with pp. 598–599), and 18, 142; Koheleth 4.2; PR 10, 38b. According to another version of this legend, Af and Hemah (on these angels see text on pp. 504 and 515) were buried alive opposite the grave of Moses; see Imre No’am (end); comp. also Sotah 14a and Tosafot, *ad loc.*; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 9.19 and 34.6. The episode of the struggle of Moses and the destroying angels, as narrated in this legend, is said in PRE, *loc. cit.*, to have taken place after Moses had descended from Sinai.



This is in agreement with many other sources which tell of Moses' intercession for Israel after his descent; see text on p. 627.

275. Midrash Shir 14b–15b (on Ra'ah see footnote 196 on p. 532); ShR 42.5 and 44.9 (God hinted to Moses that He waited only for the prayer of the latter to avert the execution of the threatened punishment; this is also found in 42, end; ER 4,17; Ephraem I, 225B; Tertullian, *Adversus Marc.* 2.26; Theodoretus, Exod. 32.10); PK 16, 128b. As to the idea that Moses owed his distinguished rank to Israel, see text on pp. 355 and 489. On the three-legged bench (*i.e.*, the descendant of the three patriarchs), see text on p. 714. *Kimha Dabishuna* Shekalim quotes a Midrash to the effect that God intended to choose the pious among the Gentiles for His people and place them in Paradise instead of the wicked Israelites. Comp. note, 540.

276. ShR 42–44; Tan. Ki-Tissa 21–24; DR 3.11–15; BaR 5.15. Concerning the rejection of the Torah by the sons of Esau, see text on p. 593; on the readiness of Israel to trust in God and in Moses, see text on p. 535; on the guilt of the “mixed multitude” in making the golden calf, see Zohar I, 25a, 26a, and 28b; note 207. That God had revealed to Moses, even before the exodus from Egypt, the future defection of Israel, is also recorded in the text on p. 509. The Haggadah often discusses the question why God is “jealous of idols”, though they are things of nought; see Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 68 (on the text see *Ma'asiyyot* ed. Gaster 33); Mekilta RS, 105; 'Abodah Zarah 54b–55a. As to the idea that God submitted to the law of absolving vows, see quotation from an unknown Midrash in Yalkut Reubeni Num. 30. 14; against this idea compare with p. 802.

## THE PUNISHMENT OF THE SINNERS

When Moses descended from Sinai, he there found his true servant Joshua, who had awaited him on the slope of the mountain throughout all the forty days during which Moses stayed in heaven,<sup>277</sup> and together they repaired to the encampment. On approaching it, they heard the cries of the people, and Joshua remarked to Moses: “There is a noise of war in the camp,” but Moses replied: “Is it possible that thou, Joshua, who art one day destined to be the leader of sixty myriads of people, canst not distinguish among the different kinds of dins! This is no cry of Israel conquering, nor

of their defeated foe, but their adoration of an idol.”<sup>278</sup> When Moses had now come close enough to the camp to see what was going on there, he thought to himself: “How now shall I give to them the tables and enjoin upon them the prohibition of idolatry, for the very trespassing of which, Heaven will inflict capital punishment upon them!” Hence, instead of delivering to them the tables, he tried to turn back, but the seventy elders pursued him and tried to wrest the tables from Moses. But his strength excelled that of the seventy others, and he kept the tables in his hands, although these were seventy Seah in weight. All at once, however, he saw the writing vanish from the tables, and at the same time became aware of their enormous weight; for while the celestial writing was upon them, they carried their own weight and did not burden Moses, but with the disappearance of the writing all this changed. Now all the more did Moses feel loath to give the tables without their contents to Israel, and besides he thought: “If God prohibited one idolatrous Israelite from partaking of the Passover feast, how much more would He be angry if I were now to give all the Torah to an idolatrous people?” Hence, without consulting God, he broke the tables. God, however, thanked Moses for breaking the tables.<sup>279</sup>

Hardly had Moses broken the tables, when the ocean wanted to leave its bed to flood the world. Moses now “took the Calf which they had made, and burnt it in the fire, and ground it to powder, and strewed it upon the water,” saying to the waters: “What would ye upon the dry land?” And the waters said: “The world stands only through the observance of the Torah, but Israel has not been faithful to it.” Moses hereupon said to the waters: “All that have committed idolatry shall be yours. Are you now satisfied with these thousands?” But the waters were not to be appeased by the sinners that Moses cast into them, and the ocean would not retreat to



its bed until Moses made the children of Israel drink of it.<sup>280</sup>

The drinking of these waters was one of the forms of capital punishment that he inflicted upon the sinners. When, in answer to Moses' call: "Who is on the Lord's side? Let him come unto me," all the sons of Levi gathered themselves together unto him—they who had not taken part in the adoration of the Golden Calf,—Moses appointed these Levites as judges, whose immediate duty it was to inflict the lawful punishment of decapitation upon all those who had been seen by witnesses to be seduced to idolatry after they had been warned not to do so. Moses gave this command as though he had been commissioned to do so by God. This was not actually so, but he did it in order to enable the judges appointed by him to punish all the guilty in the course of one day, which otherwise, owing to the procedure of Jewish jurisprudence, could not well have been possible. Those who, according to the testimony of witnesses, had been seduced to idolatry, but who could not be proven to have been warned beforehand, were not punished by temporal justice, they died of the water that Moses forced them to drink; for this water had upon them the same effect as the curse-bringing water upon the adulterous woman. But those sinners, too, against whom no witnesses appeared, did not escape their fate, for upon them God sent the plague to carry them off.<sup>281</sup>

277. Lekah, Exod. 32.19. On the devotion of Joshua to his master, see *Batte Midrashot* III, 26, and Index, s. v. "Joshua".

278. Koheleth 9.11; ShR 41.1; Yerushalmi Taanit 4, 68c (top); comp. also Philo, *Moses*, 2 (3).19. In Koheleth attention is called to the errors committed by Joshua on these two occasions when he attempted to impress his views on Moses; see Num. 11, 28–29.

279. Yerushalmi Ta'anit 4.68c; ARN 2,11 (both versions); Shabbat 87a; ShR 19.3 and 46.3; Pesahim 87b; PRE 46; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 32.19; Baba Batra 14b;

Tan. Ki-Tissa 26 and 'Ekeb 11; ER 21, 117; EZ 4, 180; *Batte Midrashot* III. 13 (Yelammedenu?); PR 20, 96b. The Pesikta is the only source in which Joshua is said to have participated in the breaking of the tables; see also Ziyayoni, Deut. 5.6. In Shabbat, *loc. cit.*, three things are enumerated which Moses did on his own authority and which were later sanctioned by God; these are: He broke the tables, added a day of preparation for the revelation on Sinai, and gave up conjugal life. Concerning the two last-named points see text on p. 509; text on pp. 611 and 761; note 191. In opposition to all the sources just quoted, it is maintained in DR 3.14 that God reproached Moses for breaking the tables in his anger at the sinners, and told him that the world would not exist for a moment if He grew angry as easily on account of the sins of man; see text on p. 247 and text on p. 617. The disappearance of the writing from the tables is also referred to by ps-Philo, 12.5, who says: And he looked upon the tables, and saw that they were not written, and he hastened and broke them. On the gigantic struggle of Moses, see text on p. 633; concerning the weight of the tables, comp. also Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 31.18. It is noteworthy that the tables and the rod of Moses were not only of the same weight (sixty seah), but also of the same material, that is, sapphire; see text on pp. 494–495, and footnote 88 on p. 495.

280. Zohar II, 113b; comp. the following note.

281. Yoma 66b, which also gives the dissenting view that the three different forms of death (*i.e.*, execution by the Levites, death caused by the water, and death from the plague) depended upon the manner of worshipping the calf; 'Abodah Zarah 44a; Yerushalmi Sotah 6, 19a; BaR 9.48; PR 10, 38a; Tan. Ki-Tissa 26; PRE 45; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 32.30, which says: The lips of him who had devotedly worshipped the idol became tightly closed "like gold"; Tosefta 'Abodah Zarah 4.19. A different version of this legend is found in ps-Philo 12.7: And it was so, if any man willed in his mind that the calf should be made, his tongue was cut off (by the drinking of the water); but if any one was constrained thereto by fear, his face shone. Ephraem I, 126 A-B gives this legend in agreement with the Rabbis. Ps-Jerome on 1 Samuel 7.6 maintains that Samuel preformed the same ordeal as Moses; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.* I, 21–23. The Christian legend tells of a similar ordeal in later times; see The Gospel of ps.-Matthew 12. In opposition to the view that the execution of the idolaters was ordered by Moses on his own authority (ER 4, 17), there are some Rabbis who maintain that he did it at the command of God; see Mekilta Bo 12, 12b, according to the reading of Yalkut II, 43; Rashi and Lekah on Exod. 32.27. The Levites, who not only refrained from worshipping the calf, but, jealous for God, killed the idolaters (comp. Tehillim 1, 13, and text on pp. 601, 797), received the reward for their piety, and



became the servants of the Sanctuary; see Philo, *Moses*, 2(3) 20 and 37, as well as *Special. Leg.* (on Priests), 1.4, 322–24. Comp. Index, s. v. “Levites”.

## MOSES INTERCEDES FOR THE PEOPLE

Those who were executed by these judgments numbered three thousand, so that Moses said to God: “O Lord of the world! Just and merciful art Thou, and all Thy deeds are deeds of integrity. Shall six hundred thousand people—not to mention all who are below twenty years of age, and all the many proselytes and slaves—perish for the sake of three thousand sinners?” God could no longer withhold His mercy, and determined to forgive Israel their sins.<sup>282</sup> It was only after long and fervent prayers that Moses succeeded in quite propitiating God, and hardly had he returned from heaven, when he again repaired thither to advance before God his intercession for Israel. He was ready to sacrifice himself for the sake of Israel, and as soon as punishment had been visited on the sinners, he turned to God with the words: “O Lord of the world! I have now destroyed both the Golden Calf and its idolaters, what cause for ill feeling against Israel can now remain? The sins these committed came to pass because Thou hadst heaped gold and silver upon them, so that the blame is not wholly theirs. ‘Yet now, if Thou wilt, forgive their sin; and if not, blot me, I pray Thee, out of Thy book which Thou hast written.’”<sup>283</sup>

These bold words of Moses were not without consequences for him, for although God thereupon replied: “Whosoever hath sinned against Me, him will I blot out of My book.” still it was on account of this that his name was omitted from one section of the Pentateuch.<sup>284</sup> But for Israel his words created an instant revul-

sion of feeling in God, who now addressed him kindly, and promised that He would send His angel, who would lead the people into the promised land. These words indicated to Moses that God was not yet entirely appeased, and he could further see this in the punishment that fell upon Israel on that day. Their weapons, which every man among them had received at the revelation on Sinai, and which had miraculous virtues, having the name of God engraved upon them, were taken from them by the angels, and their robes of purple likewise. When Moses saw from this that God’s wrath was still upon Israel, and that He desired to have nothing further to do with them, he removed his tent a mile away from the camp, saying to himself: “The disciple may not have intercourse with people whom the master has excommunicated.”

Not only the people went out to this tent whenever they sought the Lord, but the angels also, the Seraphim, and the heavenly hosts repaired thither, the sun, the moon, and the other heavenly bodies, all of whom knew that God was to be found there, and that the tent of Moses was the spot where they were to appear before their Creator. God, however, was not at all pleased to see Moses keep himself aloof from the people, and said to him: “According to our agreement, I was to propitiate thee every time thou wert angry with the people, and thou wert to propitiate Me when My wrath was kindled against them. What is now to become of these poor people, if we be both angry with them? Return, therefore, into the camp to the people. But if thou wilt not obey, remember that Joshua is in the camp at the sanctuary, and he can well fill thy place.” Moses replied: “It is for Thy sake that I am angry with them, and now I see that still Thou canst not forsake them.” “I have,” said God, “already told thee, that I shall send an angel before them.” But Moses, by no means content with this assurance, continued to im-



portune God not to entrust Israel to an angel, but to conduct and guide them in person.<sup>285</sup>

Forty days and forty nights, from the eighteenth day of Tammuz to the twenty-eighth day of Ab, did Moses stay in heaven,<sup>286</sup> beseeching and imploring God to restore Israel once more entirely into His favor. But all his prayers and exhortations were in vain, until at the end of forty days he implored God to set the pious deeds of the three Patriarchs and of the twelve sons of Jacob to the account of their descendants; and only then was his prayer answered. He said: "If Thou art angry with Israel because they transgressed the Ten Commandments, be mindful for their sake of the ten tests to which Thou didst subject Abraham, and through which he nobly passed. If Israel deserves at Thy hands punishment by fire for their sin, remember the fire of the lime kiln into which Abraham let himself be cast for the glory of Thy name. If Israel deserves death by sword, remember the readiness with which Isaac laid down his neck upon the altar to be sacrificed to Thee. If they deserve punishment by exile, remember for their sake how their father Jacob wandered into exile from his paternal home to Haran." Moses furthermore said to God: "Will the dead ever be restored to life?" God in surprise retorted: "Hast thou become a heretic, Moses, that thou dost doubt the resurrection?" "If," said Moses, "the dead never awaken to life, then truly Thou art right to wreak vengeance upon Israel; but if the dead are to be restored to life hereafter, what wilt Thou then say to the fathers of this nation, if they ask Thee what has become of the promise Thou hadst made to them? I demand nothing more for Israel," Moses continued, "than what Thou wert willing to grant Abraham when he pleaded for Sodom. Thou wert willing to let Sodom survive if there were only ten just men therein, and I am now about to enumerate to Thee ten just men among the Israelites: myself,

Aaron, Eleazar, Ithamar, Phinehas, Joshua, and Caleb." "But that is only seven," objected God. Moses, not at all abashed, replied: "But Thou hast said that the dead will hereafter be restored to life, so count with these the three Patriarchs to make the number ten complete." Moses' mention of the names of the three Patriarchs was of more avail than all else, and God granted his prayer, forgave Israel their transgression, and promised to lead the people in person.<sup>287</sup>

---

282. ER 4,17. The same number of Israelites lost their life by drinking the water; Shu'aib, Ki-Tissa, 40b.

283. Tan. Ki-Tissa 26; Berakot 32a. In the latter passage the intercession of Moses for Israel is very graphically described.

284. *Hadar*, Exod. 27.20; *Da'at* and R. Bahya, 22.23; Zohar III, 246a; comp. also *Pa'aneah* Exod. (end). From the section of Shemot in which the birth of Moses is recorded, to the end of the Pentateuch, the section of Tezawweh is the only one in which the name of Moses is not mentioned. Another explanation of "Thy book" (Exod. 32.32) is that it refers to the book of—eternal—life in which all the pious are entered; see Midrash Tannaim 211; Wehizhir I, 78; comp. also Berakot 32a and Sotah 14a, where this explanation is presupposed. As to the readiness of Moses to sacrifice himself for the sake of Israel, see PR 22, 111a; Zohar I, 67b; note 257. Moses, David, Habakkuk, and Jeremiah are four pious men, who, carried away by their prayers, addressed unbecoming words to God; see Tehillim 90.385. For further details concerning this prayer of Moses for Israel, see Berakot 7a–7b and DR 13.11. In most of the passages where this prayer is spoken of, his supplications on Sinai (Exod. 32.11) and those which he made after the descent therefrom are dealt with as one prayer. Comp. note 274.

285. ShR 45.1–2. Zohar I, 52b and 63b (on this occasion they lost their immaculate state; compare with p. 612); Shu'aib, Ki-Tissa, 40b; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 33.6–7 (this is the only passage in which occurs the statement that Moses hid the heavenly gifts in the tent in which he taught the Torah); PK 17, 129b; Tehillim 25, 212; Ekah 1.58; EZ 4, 180; Berakot 63b; DR 3.15; Tan. Ki-Tissa 26–27; Tan. B. II, 115–116. On the heavenly gifts, see also references in note 202. In most of the sources it is stated that these gifts will be returned to Israel in the time to come. See also text on p. 826.

286. Seder 'Olam 6. Moses ascended into heaven on Thursday, and descended therefrom on Monday; it is



therefore customary to fast on these days; see Tan. B. I, 94 (on the text see *Ketab Tamim*, 88), and Midrash Wayekullu 18. These fast-days are mentioned in Luke 18.12 and BR 76.3. According to PRE 46, Moses spent only the first and last forty days in heaven, *i.e.*, from the seventh of Siwan to the seventeenth of Tammuz, and from the twenty-ninth of Ab to the tenth of Tishre, whereas the forty days intervening between these two periods he remained on earth praying to God to forgive the sin of Israel. See Luria, *ad loc.*, and EZ 4, 180.

287. ShR 44.5–9; Midrash Shir 13b; DR 3.15 (in this passage it is stated that there were at that time in Israel, besides Moses, seventy-seven pious men: the seventy members of the Sanhedrin, Aaron and his four sons, Caleb and Phineas; compare with p. 624; Shir 1 (end); Aggadat Bereshit 5.13–14; Tan. B. II, 90–91. As to the conception that the pious are considered as living even after their departure from this world, see Berakot 19a–19b; Midrash Tannaim 101; Mekilta RS, 127; MHG I, 527; Philo, *De Josepho*, 43; 4 Maccabees 7.20 and 16.25; Matthew 8.22 and 22.31–32; 1 Timothy 5.6–7. Compare also footnote 72 on p. 74. For a poetical description of the “living death” of the wicked, see *Ben ha-Melek we-ha-Nazir* 20.

## THE INSCRUTABLE WAYS OF THE LORD

Moses still cherished three other wishes: that the Shekinah might dwell with Israel; that the Shekinah might not dwell with other nations; and lastly, that he might learn to know the ways of the Lord whereby He ordained good and evil in the world, sometimes causing suffering to the just and letting the unjust enjoy happiness, whereas at other times both were happy, or both were destined to suffer. Moses laid these wishes before God in the moment of His wrath, hence God bade Moses wait until His wrath should have blown over, and then He granted him his first two wishes in full, but his third in part only.<sup>288</sup> God showed him the great treasure troves in which are stored up the various rewards for the pious and the just, explaining each separate one to him in detail: in this one were

the rewards of those who give alms; in that one, of those who bring up orphans. In this way He showed him the destination of each one of the treasures, until at length they came to one of gigantic size. “For whom is this treasure?” asked Moses, and God answered: “Out of the treasures that I have shown thee I give rewards to those who have deserved them by their deeds; but out of this treasure do I give to those who are not deserving, for I am gracious to those also who may lay no claim to My graciousness, and I am bountiful to those also who are not deserving of My bounty.”

Moses now had to content himself with the certainty that the pious were sure of their deserts; without, however, learning from God, how it sometimes comes to pass that evil doers, too, are happy. For God merely stated that He also shows Himself kind to those who do not deserve it, but without further assigning the why and the wherefore. But the reward of the pious, too, was only in part revealed to him, for he beheld the joys of Paradise of which they were to partake, but not the real reward that is to follow the feast in Paradise; for truly “eye hath not seen, beside the Lord, what He hath prepared for him that waiteth for Him.”<sup>289</sup>

By means of the following incident God showed Moses how little man is able to fathom the inscrutable ways of the Lord. When Moses was on Sinai, he saw from that station a man who betook himself to a river, stooped down to drink, lost his purse, and without noticing it went his way. Shortly after, another man came, found the money, pocketed it, and took to his heels. When the owner of the purse became aware of his loss, he returned to the river, where he did not find his money, but saw a man, who came there by chance to fetch water. To him he said: “Restore to me the money that a little while ago I left here, for none can have taken it if not thou.” When the man declared that he



had found none of the money nor seen any of it, the owner slew him. Looking with horror and amazement on this injustice on earth, Moses said to God: "I beseech Thee, show me Thy ways. Why has this man, who was quite innocent, been slain, and why hath the true thief gone unpunished?" God replied: "The man who found the money and kept it merely recovered his own possession, for he who had lost the purse by the river, had formerly stolen it from him; but the one who seemed to be innocently slain is only making atonement for having at one time murdered the father of his slayer."<sup>290</sup> In this way, God granted the request of Moses, "to show him His ways," in part only. He let him look into the future, and let him see every generation and its sages, every generation and its prophets, every generation and its expounders of the Scriptures, every generation and its leaders, every generation and its pious men. But when Moses said: "O Lord of the world! Let me see by what law Thou dost govern the world; for I see that many a just man is lucky, but many a one is not; many a wicked man is lucky, but many a one is not; many a rich man is happy, but many a one is not; many a poor man is happy, but many a one is not;" then God answered: "Thou canst not grasp all the principles which I apply to the government of the world, but some of them shall I impart to thee. When I see human beings who have no claim to expectations from Me either for their own deeds or for those of their fathers, but who pray to Me and implore Me, then do I grant their prayers and give them what they require for subsistence."<sup>291</sup>

Although God had now granted all of his wishes, still Moses received the following answer to his prayer, "I beseech Thee, show me Thy glory": "Thou mayest not behold My glory, or else thou wouldst perish, but in consideration of My vow to grant thee all thy wishes, and in view of the fact that thou art in possession of the se-

cret of My name, I will meet thee so far as to satisfy thy desire in part. Lift the opening of the cave, and I will bid all the angels that serve Me pass in review before thee; but as soon as thou hearest the Name, which I have revealed to thee, know then that I am there, and bear thyself bravely and without fear."<sup>292</sup>

God had a reason for not showing His glory to Moses. He said to him: "When I revealed Myself to thee in the burning bush, thou didst not want to look upon Me; now thou art willing, but I am not."<sup>293</sup>

---

288. Berakot 7a, where one opinion is recorded to the effect that God granted Moses also his third wish, and revealed to him "His ways" whereby He ordains good and evil in His world; Tehillim 25, 211. The difference between the presence of the Shekinah and that of an angel is the same as that between the immediate and mediate working of God; see footnote 62 on p. 13; footnote 115 on p. 502 and footnote 20 on p. 844.

289. ShR 25.6; Tan. Ki-Tissa 27; B. II, 116; comp. also Berakot 34b; Tan. B. V, 9; text on p. 801.

290. Shu'aib, Debarim (beginning), 98c; this is very likely the source of *Kimba Dabishuma*, \*H,mi y'male\* (Musaf for the Day of Atonement), and of the Judeo-German rendering of this legend, concerning which see Grünbaum, *Chrestomathie*, 215, seq. The Hebrew original remained unknown to this author, as well as to Krauss, *Ha-Goren*, 215, seq., J. Q. R., New Series, II, 349 seq., and Friedländer, *ibid.* III, 179-180. Comp. also Gaster, *Exempla*, 432. On the German rendering of this legend, see Brockhaus in ZDMG, XIV, 706, who calls attention to the fact that the Persian poet Jāmi made use of this legend. From the Judeo-German writings this legend found its way into the hasidic literature. Modern writers, ignorant of the old sources in which this legend occurs, credit it to the Hasidim. A variant of this legend is No. 353 in Gaster *l. c.*, where however it is Solomon to whom God's justice is revealed.

291. EZ 6, 182-183. As to the problem of the theodicy, see also Berakot 7a; 2 ARN 22, 46, which is the source for Midrash Aggada Exod. 20.12. Next to Moses it was Habakkuk who wished to find out "the ways of the Lord"; comp. Tehillim 7, 70-71; 87, 343; 90, 389; Tosefta of Targum Hab. 3.1; Mahzor Vitry 170. The legend about Habakkuk refusing to leave the circle, which he drew, before God had given him an answer to his question (see



Ta'anit 23a) very likely refers to Habakkuk's question concerning "the ways of the Lord". For the view that God showed Moses all the generations, see also text on p. 641; compare further with p. 59.

292. PRE 46; compare with p. 514.

293. Berakot 7a; ShR 45.5; comp. note 187, text on p. 502.

## THE THIRTEEN ATTRIBUTES OF GOD

The cave in which Moses concealed himself while God passed in review before him with His celestial retinue, was the same in which Elijah lodged when God revealed Himself to him on Horeb. If there had been in it an opening even as tiny as a needle's point, both Moses and Elijah would have been consumed by the passing Divine light,<sup>294</sup> which was of an intensity so great that Moses, although quite shut off in the cave, nevertheless caught the reflection of it, so that from its radiance his face began to shine.<sup>295</sup> Not without great danger, however, did Moses earn this distinction; for as soon as the angels heard Moses request God to show him His glory, they were greatly incensed against him, and said to God: "We, who serve Thee night and day, may not see Thy glory, and he, who is born of woman, asks to see it!" In their anger they made ready to kill Moses, who would certainly have perished, had not God's hand protected him from the angels. Then God appeared in the cloud.

It was the seventh time that He appeared on earth,<sup>296</sup> and taking the guise of a precentor of a congregation, He said to Moses: "Whenever Israel hath sinned, and calleth Me by the following thirteen attributes, I will forgive them their sins. I am one and the same Merciful God before men have sinned, and after they have sinned and repented I am the Almighty God who pro-

vides for all creatures. I am the Merciful One who restrains evil from human kind. I am the Gracious One who helps in time of need. I am the Long-Suffering to the upright as well as to the wicked. I am Bountiful to those whose own deeds do not entitle them to lay claim to rewards. I am Faithful to those who have a right to expect good from Me; and preserve graciousness unto the two-thousandth generation. I forgive misdeeds and even atrocious actions, in forgiving those who repent."<sup>297</sup> When Moses heard this, and particularly that God is long-suffering with sinners,<sup>298</sup> he prayed: "O forgive, then, Israel's sin which they committed in worshipping the Golden Calf." Had Moses now prayed, "Forgive the sins of Israel unto the end of all time," God would have granted that too, as it was a time of mercy; but as Moses asked forgiveness for this one sin only, this one only was pardoned, and God said: "I have pardoned according to thy word."<sup>299</sup>

The day on which God showed Himself merciful to Moses and to His people, was the tenth day of Tishri, the day on which Moses was to receive the tables of the law from God for the second time, and all Israel spent it amid prayer and fasting, that the evil spirit might not again lead them astray. Their ardent tears and exhortations, joined with those of Moses, reached heaven, so that God took pity upon them and said to them: "My children, I swear by My lofty Name that these your tears shall be tears of rejoicing for you; that this day shall be a day of pardon, of forgiveness, and of the cancelling of sins for you, for your children, and your children's children to the end of all generations."<sup>300</sup>

This day was now set for the annual Day of Atonement, without which the world could not exist, and which will continue even in the future world when all other holy days will cease to be. The Day of Atonement, however, is not only a reminiscence of the day on which God was rec-



onciled to Israel and forgave them their sins, but it is also the day on which Israel finally received the Torah.<sup>301</sup> For after Moses had spent forty days in prayer, until God finally forgave Israel their sins, he began to reproach himself for having broken the tables of the law, saying: "Israel asked me to intercede for them before God, but who will, on account of my sin, intercede before God for my sake?" Then God said to him: "Grieve not for the loss of the first two tables, which contained only the Ten Commandments. The second tables that I am now ready to give thee, shall contain Halakot, Midrash, and Haggadot."<sup>302</sup>

At the new moon of the month Elul, Moses had the trumpet sounded throughout the camp, announcing to the people that he would once more betake himself to God for forty days to receive the second tables from Him, so that they might not be alarmed by his absence; and he stayed in heaven until the tenth day of Tishri, on which day he returned with the Torah and delivered it to Israel.<sup>303</sup>

294. Megillah 19b; compare with p. 995.

295. PR 10, 37b; Tan. Ki-Tissa 37; ShR 47.7. As to the radiance of Moses' countenance, see text on pp. 600–601, 618, 634, and the notes appertaining to these passages.

296. PRE 46; PR 10, 37b; Sifra (end of Baraita de-Rabbi Ishmael). The phrase "born of woman" is a designation of contempt in the mouth of an angel; see text on p. 507; text on p. 614; text on pp. 1104, 1148. Neither the angels nor the Holy Creatures (*Hayyot ha-Kodesh*) see God or hear His voice; but the pious, after their death, see Him. See Sifre N., 103; Ta'anit, Babli (end). The same conception is also found in *Recognitiones*, 3.30, and Theophilus, *Ad Autol.* 7.—Concerning the attack of the angels on Moses, see text on pp. 614, *seq.*, 625. On the appearance of God on earth, see note 206. According to Sifre D., 343, and Midrash Tannaim 211, there are only four appearances of God: 1) He appeared in Egypt to redeem Israel (compare with p. 537); 2) on Sinai to reveal the Torah; 3) He will appear to take vengeance on Gog and Magog; 4) and finally He will appear in the Messianic age.

297. Rosh ha-Shanah 17b. As to the thirteen attributes of God, see the references given by Simonsen in *Lewy-Festschrift*, 271. This scholar also calls attention to 4

Ezra 7.132–139, which represents a Midrash on the Thirteen Attributes. Comp. also Ginzberg, *Compte Rendu* 23 (R.E.J. LXVII, 137–138); see also EZ 4, 183; Hasidim 123; *Kimha Dabishuna* מלך אל; Maimonides' *Responsa*, 87. The older talmudic-midrashic literature refers quite frequently to these attributes; comp. Rosh ha-Shanah, *loc. cit.*, as well as Tan. B. I, 91; *Nispahim* 42 (EZ, 23); PK 6, 57a; PR 5, 22a; 16, 79b–80a, and 194a; Tehillim 93, 416; Hashkem 3b. Tehillim only knows of the dissenting opinions which count ten or eleven attributes of God. Compare footnote 15 on p. 5.

298. Sanhedrin 111a (bottom); Tehillim 93, 416. The views cited in these passages differ as to which attribute appeared to Moses to be the most exalted; each of the following attributes is named for this distinction: Long-suffering, grace, compassion, and truth. See also quotation from Tan. (not found in our texts) in Makiri, Ps 92, 98, and text on pp. 616–617, 714.

299. PRE 46; ER I, 3–4. Compare with p. 638. Philo remarks, in reference to Exod 33.23, that the human intellect cannot conceive the essence of God, but only His activities; see *De Posteritat. Caini*, 48 (end); *De Profugis*, 29; *De Mut. Nom.* 2. Maimonides, *Guide of the Perplexed*, I, 21, gives an explanation of Exod., *loc. cit.*, which is in almost every detail identical with that of Philo. On the very curious statement (Berakot 7a) that Moses saw God's phylacteries (Tefillin), which is certainly not to be taken literally, see R. Hananel in *Responsa der Geonim*, Lyck edition, No. 115; Or Zarua' I, 21b–21c; REBN (ראב"ן) 42b. *Baruk she-Amar* 5d quotes, from Berakot *loc. cit.*, a statement concerning the form of these phylacteries. This statement, however, is found neither in Berakot nor elsewhere.

300. EZ 4, 180–181; ER 17, 86; Tan. Pekude (end); Tan. B. I, 94; Seder 'Olam 6; Ta'anit 30b; Baba Batra 12a. See also Yoma 20a, which reads: On the Day of Atonement Satan has no power to bring an accusation against Israel.

301. PRE 46; comp. also the reference given in the preceding note. As to the everlasting continuation of the institution of the Day of Atonement (*i. e.*, its observance in the time to come), see Mishle 9, 61 and vol. VI, end.

302. ShR 46. 1. For a conflicting view compare with pp. 618, 666–667.

303. PRE 46; Mishle 23, 94, where השניים should be read instead of הראשונים.

## THE SECOND TABLES

Whereas the first tables had been given on Mount Sinai amid great ceremonies, the



presentation of the second tables took place quietly, for God said: "There is nothing lovelier than quiet humility. The great ceremonies on the occasion of presenting the first tables had the evil effect of directing an evil eye toward them, so that they were finally broken."<sup>304</sup> In this also were the second tables differentiated from the first, that the former were the work of God, and the latter, the work of man. God dealt with Israel like the king who took to himself a wife and drew up the marriage contract with his own hand. One day the king noticed his wife engaged in very intimate conversation with a slave; and, enraged at her unworthy conduct, he turned her out of his house. Then he who had given the bride away at the wedding came before the king and said to him: "O sire, dost thou not know whence thou didst take thy bride? She had been brought up among the slaves, and hence is intimate with them." The king allowed himself to be appeased, saying to the other: "Take paper and let a scribe draw up a new marriage contract, and here take my authorization, signed in my own hand." Just so did Israel fare with their God when Moses offered the following excuse for their worship of the Golden Calf: "O Lord, dost Thou not know whence Thou hast brought Israel, out of a land of idolaters?" God replied: "Thou desirest Me to forgive them. Well, then, I shall do so, now fetch Me hither tables on which I may write the words that were written on the first. But to reward thee for offering up thy life for their sake, I shall in the future send thee along with Elijah, that both of you together may prepare Israel for the final deliverance."<sup>305</sup>

Moses fetched the tables out of a diamond quarry which God pointed out to him, and the chips that fell, during the hewing, from the precious stone made a rich man of Moses, so that he now possessed all the qualifications of a prophet—wealth, strength, humility, and wisdom. In regard to the last-named be it said, that

God had given in Moses' charge all the fifty gates of wisdom except one.

As the chips falling from the precious stone were designed for Moses alone, so too had originally the Torah, written on these tables, been intended only for Moses and his descendants; but he was benevolent of spirit, and imparted the Torah to Israel.<sup>306</sup> The wealth that Moses procured for himself in fashioning the Torah, was a reward for having taken charge of the corpse of Joseph while all the people were appropriating to themselves the treasures of the Egyptians. God now said: "Moses deserves the chips from the tables. Israel, who did not occupy themselves with labors of piety, carried off the best of Egypt at the time of their exodus. Shall Moses, who saw to the corpse of Joseph, remain poor? Therefore will I make him rich through these chips."<sup>307</sup>

During the forty days he spent in heaven, Moses received beside the two tables all the Torah—the Bible, Mishnah, Talmud, and Haggadah, yea, even all that ever clever scholars would ask their teacher was revealed to him. When he now received the command from God to teach all this to Israel, he requested God to write down all the Torah and to give it to Israel in that way. But God said: "Gladly would I give them the whole in writing, but it is revealed before Me that the nations of the world will hereafter read the Torah translated into Greek, and will say: 'We are the true Israel, we are the children of God.' Then I shall say to the nations: 'Ye claim to be My children, do ye not know that those only are My children to whom I have confided My secret, the oral teaching?' " This was the reason why the Pentateuch only was given to Moses in writing, and the other parts of the Torah by word of mouth. Hence the covenant God made with Israel reads: "I gave ye a written and an oral Torah. My covenant with you says that ye shall study the written Torah as a written



thing, and the oral as an oral; but in case you confound the one with the other you will not be rewarded. For the Torah's sake alone have I made a covenant with you; had ye not accepted the Torah, I should not have acknowledged you before all other nations. Before you accepted the Torah, you were just like all other nations, and for the Torah's sake alone have I lifted you above the others. Even your king, Moses, owes the distinction he enjoys in this world and in the world hereafter to the Torah alone. Had you not accepted the Torah, then should I have dissolved the upper and the under worlds into chaos."<sup>308</sup>

Forty days and forty nights Moses now devoted to the study of the Torah, and in all that time he ate no bread and drank no water, acting in accordance with the proverb, "If thou enterest a city, observe its laws." The angels followed this maxim when they visited Abraham, for they there ate like men; and so did Moses, who being among angels, like the angels partook of no food. He received nourishment from the radiance of the Shekinah, which also sustains the holy *ṛayyot* that bear the Throne. Moses spent the day in learning the Torah from God, and the night in repeating what he had learned. In this way he set an example for Israel, that they might occupy themselves with the Torah by night and by day.

During this time Moses also wrote down the Torah, although the angels found it strange that God should have given him the commission to write down the Torah, and gave expression to their astonishment in the following words, that they addressed to God: "How is it that Thou givest Moses permission to write, so that he may write whatever he will, and say to Israel, 'I gave you the Torah, I myself wrote it, and then gave it to you?'" But God answered: "Far be it from Moses to do such a thing, he is a faithful servant!"

When Moses had completed the writing of the Torah, he wiped his pen on the hair of his forehead, and from this heavenly ink that cleaved to his forehead originated the beams of light that radiated from it.<sup>309</sup> In this way God fulfilled to Moses the promise: "Before all thy people I will do marvels, such as have not been done in all the earth, nor in any nation."<sup>310</sup> On Moses' return from heaven, the people were greatly amazed to see his face shining, and there was fear, too, in their amazement. This fear was a consequence of their sin, for formerly they had been able to bear without fear the sight of "the glory of the Lord that was like devouring fire," although it consisted of seven sheaths of fire, laid one over another; but after their transgression they could not even bear to look upon the countenance of the man who had been the intermediator between themselves and God.<sup>311</sup> But Moses quieted them, and instantly set about imparting to the people the Torah he had received from God.

His method of instruction was as follows: first came Aaron, to whom he imparted the word of God, and as soon as he had finished with Aaron, came the sons of Aaron, Eleazar and Ithamar, and he instructed them, while Aaron sat at his right hand, listening. When he had finished with the sons of Aaron, the elders appeared to receive instruction, while Eleazar sat at the right hand of his father, and Ithamar at the left hand of Moses, and listened; and when he had finished with the elders, the people came and received instruction, whereupon Moses withdrew. Then Aaron went over what had been taught, and his sons likewise, and the elders, until every one, from Aaron down to every man out of the people, had four times repeated what he had learned, for in this way had God bidden Moses impress the Torah four times upon Israel.<sup>312</sup>



304. PR 5, 21b; BaR 12.4; Tan. B. I, 193; Tan. Ki-Tissa 31 and Naso 17; *Batte Midrashot* III, 3 (Yellammedenu?). Comp. the dissenting view in an unknown Midrash quoted in Yalkut I, 854, according to which the second tables were given amid great ceremonies like the first. Lekah Deut. 10.3 agrees with this latter view. See the following note.

305. DR 3.17; Tosefta Baba Kamma 7.4. A different version is found in an unknown Midrash in Yalkut I, 854: God disapproved of the act of Moses in breaking the tables (see above note 279), and therefore spoke to him as follows: "If thou hadst made these tables thyself, thou wouldst not have broken them; make thou now another pair of tables, that thou mayest appreciate their worth." God then showed him a sapphire quarry under the Throne of Glory (comp. note 258 and the following note), out of which Moses made an exact replica of the first tables. See also ps-Philo 12 (end), who writes: Hew thee out therefore two tables of stone from the place where thou didst hew out the former, and write upon them again My judgments which were on the first. In Exod. 34.1 it is plainly stated that God Himself wrote the words upon the second tables, and accordingly one is justified in assuming that the original Hebrew of ps-Philo had וכתבתִי which, however, was misread as וכתבת by the translator.—If the first tables had not been broken, Israel would never have forgotten the Torah; 'Erubin 54a; compare also with p. 611.

306. Nedarim 38a; ShR 46.2 and 47.3; WR 32.2; Koheleth 9.11 (God showed Moses the sapphire quarry in his own tent); PRE 46; Tan. Ki-Tissa 29, 31 and 'Ekeb 9 (in this passage, in agreement with the Midrash quoted in the preceding note, it is said that the sapphire quarry was under the Throne of Glory, in allusion to Exod. 24.10); BaR 9.48 (read סִפִּיר instead of סִכֵּר); Sifre Z., 82; ARN 9, 41; Midrash Aggada Num. 12.2. In the text on p. 633 line 36, Sapphire is to be read instead of diamond. On the fifty gates of wisdom, see text on p. 950, and the note appertaining to it. Concerning the qualifications of the prophet, see Maimonides, *Shemonah Perakim* 8. As to the idea that the Torah was originally intended only for Moses, see BaR, *loc. cit.*; DR 3.11; ShR 48.5 and 47.9; note 216; text on p. 618. See also PR 21 106a, where the use of the singular in the Ten Commandments is commented upon in this connection Comp. note 216.

307. ShR 46.2. Compare with pp. 545–546.

308. ShR 47.1–4; Tan. Ki-Tissa 34 and Wa-Yera 5; Tan. B. I, 88 and 118; PR 5, 14b; Yerushalmi Peah 2, 17a; WR 22.1; BaR 14.10 (end); Koheleth 1.9; Megillah 19b. The anti-Christian tendency of the Haggadah is obvious. The Church has the Bible in Greek, and yet refutes the oral law. Concerning "the completeness" of the Torah revealed to Moses, see also text on pp. 604 (where it is stated that all

the souls were present at the revelation) and 666–667. As to Moses being a king, see note 170. On the idea that the existence of the world is conditioned upon Israel's acceptance of the Torah, see note 202. On the verbal difference between Exod. 20.2, *seq.*, and Deut. 5.6, *seq.*, see references cited in note 221, to which should be added Lekah Deut. 5.12. In this source attention is called to the fact that the *Decalogue* in Deut. contains all the letters of the Hebrew alphabet, whereas the letter ט is missing in the Exod. version. The explanation of this missing ט, as given in Baba Kamma 55a, is that the word טוב ("good") could not be applied to the first tables, since they were broken. Lekah, *loc. cit.*, though he had no variant reading of Baba Kamma, *loc. cit.*, assigns an entirely different meaning to the simple words of the Amoraim. For other explanations of the missing ט, see *Emunah u-Bittahon* 19 (this was borrowed by R. Bahya, notwithstanding his words מַה שֶׁרָמְזוּ בַּמִּדְרָשׁ) and Recanati, Exod. 20.17. Later authorities have a good deal to say about the distribution of the six hundred and twenty letters—corresponding to the six hundred and thirteen precepts of the Torah and the seven Noachian precepts—over the tables, which, according to an old tradition (see Shekalim 15, 49b) measured one by three hand-breadths; see Ginzberg, *Geonica* II, 23 and 35–36; Al-Barceloni, 68–69; BaR 13.16 and 18.21; Tan. Korah 12; Lekah Exod. 20.14; Ginzberg, *Compte Rendu* 21 (=R.E.J. LXVII, 135); Ziyoni, Deut. 5.6.

309. ShR 47.5 and 3.1; Tan. Ki-Tissa 36–37; Tan. B. II, 118–120; Makiri Prov. 30.3. Concerning the eating of the angels while guests of Abraham, see footnote 143 on p. 205, and note 94. As to the idea that the radiance of the Shekinah sustains the angels, see Berakot 17a; Kallah 2.4a. The explanation of Exod. 14.11, found in the last-mentioned source, is identical with that given by Philo, who likewise declares that "seeing God" was unto Moses the same as food and drink to other mortals; see *Moses*, 2(3).2. The view that the rays coming forth from Moses' face had their origin in the writing upon the tables is presupposed also in Corinthians 3.7. Comp. the following note, as well as notes 204, 260, 295. Hasidim 296 narrates that the radiance of glory was seen on a pious man at the time of his death, which phenomenon is explained in the following way: God, at the time of signing "the decrees of this man's death", caused a drop of ink to fall over him. As to the manner in which Moses divided his study periods, see text on p. 617, and Megillah 21a.

310. Lekah Exod. 34.10. See also *op. cit.* 24, where a reason is assigned for the fact that this distinction was conferred upon Moses on the occasion of the giving of the second tables and not before. According to ER 4, 17–18, this was Moses' reward for his intercession for Israel after they had worshipped the golden calf. The earlier Midrashim, however, present a different view, and maintain that the



radiance of the face of Moses preceded the giving of the second tables; see DR 23.11; PK 4, 37a; PR 14, 62b; Tan. B. IV. 114; comp. also references given in notes 204, 269, 295. Ps.-Philo, 12.1, is also of the opinion that Moses received this distinction when he ascended heaven for the first tables; see also Yalkut Reubeni Ki-Tissa (end). When Moses was commanded to write down the verse "And the man Moses was the meekest of all men" (Num. 12.3), he, on account of his humility, was very reluctant to obey and he therefore wrote a very small ם in the word עני "meek", so that it might also be read as עני "poor". Not having used up the ink of his pen, he wiped it on the hair of his forehead, and from this the radiance of his face originated; see Onkeneira, *Ayyumah Kannidgalot*, 17a, who quotes an unknown Midrashic source. Comp. Sifre Z, 163, and note 490.

311. PK 5, 45a; PR 15, 69a; Shir 3.70; Shemuel 17, 97; BaR 11.3. Concerning fear as a consequence of sin, see text on p. 75, and Berakot 60b.

312. 'Erubin 54b; Mekilta RS, 6; Mekilta Bo 3, 3b. As to the studying of a text four times, see Mekilta RS, 117; Tan. Yitro 15 and Wa-Yakhel; BR 4.5; ShR 40.1: Yossippon (?) in Mahzor Vitry 88; Zohar I, 5a.

## THE CENSUS OF THE PEOPLE

At sight of the rays that emanated from Moses' face, the people said to him: "We were humbled by God owing to that sin we had committed. God, thou sayest, has forgiven us, and is reconciled to us. Thou, Moses, wert included in our humiliation, and we see that He has once more exalted thee, whereas, in spite of the reconciliation with God, we remain humbled." Hereupon Moses betook himself to God and said: "When Thou didst humble them, Thou didst humble me also, hence shouldst Thou now raise them too, if Thou hast raised me." God replied: "Truly, as I have exalted thee, so will I exalt them also; record their numbers, and through this show the world how near to My heart is the nation that before all others acknowledged Me as their king, singing by the Red Sea: 'This is my God, and I will exalt Him.' " Moses then said to God: "O Lord of the world! Thou hast so many

nations in Thy world, but Thou carest nothing about recording their numbers, and only Israel dost Thou bid me count." God replied: "All these multitudes do not belong to Me, they are doomed to the destruction of Gehenna, but Israel is My possession, and as a man most prizes the possession he paid for most dearly, so is Israel most dear to Me, because I have with great exertions made it My own."<sup>313</sup> Moses further said to God: "O Lord of the world! To our father Abraham Thou madest the following promises: 'And I will make thy seed in number as the dust of the earth; and I will make thy seed as the stars in the heavens,' but now Thou biddest me number Israel. If their forefather Abraham could not count them, how, then, should I?" But God quieted Moses, saying: "Thou needest not actually count them, but if thou wouldst determine their number, add together the numerical value of the names of the tribes, and the result will be their number." And truly in this way did Moses procure the sum total of the Jews, which amounted to sixty myriads less three thousand, the three thousand having been swept away by the plague in punishment for their worship of the Golden Calf. Hence the difference between the number at the exodus from Egypt, when Moses had counted them for the first time, and the number at the second census, after the losses incurred by the plague. God treated Israel as did that king his herd, who ordered the shepherds tell the tale of the sheep when he heard that wolves had been among them and had killed some, having this reckoning made in order to determine the amount of his loss.

The occasions on which, in the course of history, Israel were numbered, are as follows: Jacob counted his household upon entering Egypt; Moses counted Israel upon the exodus from Egypt; after the worship of the Golden Calf; at the arrangement into camp divisions; and at the distribution of the promised land.



Saul twice instituted a census of the people, the first time when he set out against Nahash, the Ammonite, and the second time when he set out in war upon Amalek. It is significant of the enormous turn in the prosperity of the Jews during Saul's reign, that at the first census every man put down a pebble, so that the pebbles might be counted, but at the second census the people were so prosperous that instead of putting down a pebble, every man brought a lamb. There was a census in the reign of David, which, however, not having been ordered by God, had unfortunate consequences both for the king and for the people. Ezra instituted the last census when the people returned from Babylon to the Holy Land. Apart from these nine censuses, God will Himself count His people in the future time when their number will be so great that no mortal will be able to count them.<sup>314</sup>

There was an offering to the sanctuary connected with the second census in Moses' time, when every one above twenty years of age had to offer up half a shekel. For God said to Moses: "They indeed deserve death for having made the Golden Calf, but let each one offer up to the Eternal atonement money for his soul, and in this way redeem himself from capital punishment." When the people heard this, they grieved greatly, for they thought: "In vain did we exert ourselves in taking booty from the Egyptians, if we are now to yield up our hard-earned possessions as atonement money. The law prescribes that a man must pay fifty shekels of silver for dishonoring a woman, and we who have dishonored the word of God, should have to pay at least an equal amount. The law furthermore decrees that if an ox kill a servant, his owner shall pay thirty shekels of silver, hence every Israelite should have to discharge such a sum, for 'we changed our glory into the similitude of an ox that eateth grass.' But these two fines would not suffice, for we slandered God, Him who brought

us out of Egypt, by calling out to the Calf, 'This is thy God, that brought thee up out of Egypt,' and slander is punishable by law with one hundred shekels of silver." God who knew their thoughts, said to Moses: "Ask them why they are afraid. I do not ask of them to pay as high a fine as he who dishonors or seduces a woman, nor the penalty of a slanderer, nor that of the owner of a goring ox, all that I ask of them is this," and hereupon he showed Moses at the fire a small coin that represented the value of half a shekel. This coin each one of those who had passed through the Red Sea was to give as an offering.

There were several reasons why God asked particularly for the value of half a shekel as a penalty. As they committed their sin, the worship of the Golden Calf, in the middle, that is the half of the day, so they were to pay half of a shekel; and, furthermore, as they committed their sin in the sixth hour of the day, so were they to pay half a shekel, which is six grains of silver. This half shekel, furthermore, contains ten *gerahs*, and is hence the corresponding fine for those who trespassed the Ten Commandments. The half shekel was also to be an atonement for the sin committed by the ten sons of Jacob, who sold their brother Joseph as a slave, for whom each had received half a shekel as his share.<sup>315</sup>

---

313. PR 10, 36b–37b; PK 2, 10b; Tan. Ki-Tissa 4. On the humiliation of Moses on account of Israel's sin, see text on p. 623. The Midrashim just mentioned play on the double meaning of *תשא ראש* in Exod. 30.12, which signifies "count" and "hang". See also quotation, from an unknown Midrash, in *Hadar*, *ad loc.*

314. PK 2, 17b–18b (the numerical value of the initial letters of the names of the twelve tribes, if counted as thousands, corresponds to the number of people as given in Num. 1.46); PR 10, 40b; Tan. B. II, 197–198; Tan. Ki-Tissa 9. On the census at the time of the Exodus, see text on p. 784; on the census during Saul's reign, see Yoma 22b and Targum on 1 Sam. 15.4 (based on Pesahim 64a); on the inauspicious census in David's time, see text on p. 936.



The counting of the number of Jews, whether of the entire people or of a section thereof, is forbidden by the Jewish law; see Berakot 62b, Josephus *Antiqui.*, 181.

315. PK 2, 18b–20a; PR 10, 40a; Tan. B. II, 108–109; Tan. Ki-Tissa 9–11; Shekaiim 1, 46b, and 2, 46d. God produced the coin from under His throne; see Shekalim and PK, *loc. cit.* But PRE 48 remarks in this connection: God used each finger of His right hand to bring about deeds of salvation and redemption; with the little finger He pointed out to Noah the way to the ark; with the finger next to it He slew the Egyptians; with the middle finger He wrote the Ten Commandments upon the tables; with the finger next to it He pointed out to Moses the half-Shekel to be given by every Israelite for his atonement. He will use His entire hand to destroy Esau and Ishmael. On the text of PRE see *Hadar* (the source is erroneously given as *Pesikta*) and *Da'at* on Exod. 30.21. In the latter source it is said that God pointed out to Moses the New Moon (see text on p. 535) with His fourth finger. Compare with p. 336, and text on p. 573.

## THE ERECTION OF THE TABERNACLE COMMANDED

When, on that memorable Day of Atonement, God indicated His forgiveness to Israel with the words, "I have forgiven them according as I have spoken," Moses said: "I now feel convinced that Thou hast forgiven Israel, but I wish Thou wouldst show the nations also that Thou art reconciled with Israel." For these were saying: "How can a nation that heard God's word on Sinai, 'Thou shalt have no other gods before Me,' and that forty days later called out to the Calf, 'This is thy god, O Israel,' expect that God would ever be reconciled to them?" God therefore said to Moses: "As truly as thou livest, I will let My Shekinah dwell among them, so that all may know that I have forgiven Israel. My sanctuary in their midst will be a testimony of My forgiveness of their sins, and hence it may well be called a 'Tabernacle of Testimony.'"<sup>316</sup>

The erection of a sanctuary among Israel was begun in answer to a direct appeal from the

people, who said to God: "O Lord of the world! The kings of the nations have palaces in which are set a table, candlesticks, and other royal insignia, that their king may be recognized as such. Shalt not Thou, too, our King, Redeemer, and Helper, employ royal insignia, that all the dwellers of the earth may recognize that Thou art their King!" God replied: "My children, the kings of flesh and blood need all these things, but I do not, for I need neither food nor drink; nor is light necessary to Me, as can well be seen by this, that My servants, the sun and the moon, illuminate all the world with the light they receive from Me; hence ye need do none of these things for Me, for without these signs of honor will I let all good things fall to your lot in recognition of the merits of your fathers." But Israel answered: "O Lord of the world! We do not want to depend on our fathers. 'Doubtless Thou art our Father, though Abraham be ignorant of us, and Israel acknowledge us not.' " God hereupon said: "If you now insist upon carrying out your wish, do so, but do it in the way I command you. It is customary in the world that whosoever has a little son, cares for him, anoints him, washes him, feeds him, and carries him, but as soon as the son is come of age, he provides for his father a beautiful dwelling, a table, and a candlestick. So long as you were young, did I provide for you, washed you, fed you with bread and meat, gave you water to drink, and bore you on eagles' wings; but now that you are come of age, I wish you to build a house for Me, set therein a table and a candlestick, and make an altar of incense within it."<sup>317</sup> God then gave them detailed instruction for furnishing the Tabernacle, saying to Moses: "Tell Israel that I order them to build Me a tabernacle not because I lack a dwelling, for, even before the world had been created, I had erected My temple in the heavens; but only as a token of My affection for you will I leave My heavenly temple and dwell



among you, 'they shall make Me a sanctuary, that I may dwell among them.' ”

At these last words Moses was seized by a great fear, such as had taken possession of him only on two other occasions. Once, when God said to him, “Let each give a ransom for his soul,” when, much alarmed, he said: “If a man were to give all that he hath for his soul, it would not suffice.” God quieted him with the words, “I do not ask what is due Me, but only what they can fulfil, half a shekel will suffice.” Then again, fear stirred Moses when God said to him: “Speak to Israel concerning My offering, and My bread for My sacrifices made by fire,” and he said trembling, “Who can bring sufficient offerings to Thee? ‘Lebanon is not sufficient to burn, nor the beasts thereof sufficient for a burnt offering.’ ” Then again God quieted him with the words, “I demand not according to what is due Me, but only that which they can fulfil, one sheep as a morning sacrifice, and one sheep as an evening sacrifice.” The third time, God was in the midst of giving Moses instructions concerning the building of the sanctuary, when Moses exclaimed in fear: “Behold, the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain Thee, how much less this sanctuary that we are to build Thee?” And this time also God quieted him with the words, “I do not ask what is due Me, but only that which they can fulfil; twenty boards to the north, as many to the south, eight in the west, and I shall then so draw My Shekinah together that it may find room under them.”<sup>318</sup> God was indeed anxious to have a sanctuary erected to Him, it was the condition on which He led them out of Egypt,<sup>319</sup> yea, in a certain sense the existence of all the world depended on the construction of the sanctuary, for when the sanctuary had been erected, the world stood firmly founded, whereas until then it had always been swaying hither and thither.<sup>320</sup> Hence the Tabernacle in its sepa-

rate parts also corresponded to the creations of the six days. The two tables in the Ark corresponded to the heaven and the earth, that had been created on the first day. As the firmament had been created on the second day to divide the waters which were under the firmament from the waters which were above, so there was a curtain in the Tabernacle to divide between the holy and the most holy. As God created the great sea on the third day, so did He appoint the laver in the sanctuary to symbolize it, and as He had on that day destined the plant kingdom as nourishment for man, so did He now require a table with bread in the Tabernacle. The candlestick in the Tabernacle corresponded to the two luminous bodies, the sun and the moon, created on the fourth day; and the seven branches of the candlestick corresponded to the seven planets, the Sun, Venus, Mercury, the Moon, Saturn, Jupiter, and Mars. Corresponding to the birds created on the fifth day, the Tabernacle contained the Cherubim, that had wings like birds. On the sixth, the last day of creation, man had been created in the image of God to glorify his Creator, and likewise was the high priest anointed to minister in the Tabernacle before his Lord and Creator.<sup>321</sup>

316. ShR 51.4; Tan. B. II, 126–127; Tan. Pekude 2 and 6. Comp. also Yelammedenuin Yalkut I, 723 (read **אין תורה אלא לשון סהדות**; ER 30, 148. Compare with pp. 631 and 639.

317. Midrash Aggada, Exod. 27.1, which quotes an unknown midrashic source.

318. Tan. B.IV, 35; Tan. Naso 11, which reads: I have, in heaven, a temple, a hall (**היכל**), and a throne; PK 2, 20a–20b; PR 16,84b; Tehillim 91, 395–396; BaR 12.3. Com. also *Likkutim*, II, 2a; 2 Enoch 45, 204; Ecclesiasticus 32.1–5. See text on p. 1.

319. PR 2, 18b (emphasis is laid upon the place where the Shekinah dwells, and not on sacrifices); Tan.Naso 22; BaR 12.6.

320. PR 5, 16a; Tan. Naso 19 and Terumah 9; Tan. B. II, 94; Shemuel 26. Compare with p. 660.



321. Tan. Pekude 2; Midrash Aggada, Exod. 38.21; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 719, and supplement No. 54 (=BHM VI 89); Shu'aib, Pekude 41c; compare with p. 48. The tabernacle is also explained to be, in its form, a symbolic representation of the human body, see Shu'aib, Terumah 66b–36c, and *Shibbole ha-Leket* 3 (BR isgivenas the source in this passage); Tadshe 2 and 10. A third view finds in the tabernacle a symbol of heaven and of what it contains. See Tadshe 2; PK 1, 5a; *Likkutim* II, 3b–4a, and text on p. 420. Comp. note 346.

## THE MATERIALS FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE TABERNACLE

When, on the Day of Atonement, God said to Moses, “Let them make Me a sanctuary, that I may dwell among them,” that the nations of the world might see that He had forgiven Israel their sin, the worship of the Golden Calf, it was gold He bade them bring for the adornment of the sanctuary. God said: “The gold of the Tabernacle shall serve as an expiation for the gold they employed in the construction of the Golden Calf. Besides gold, let them bring Me twelve other materials for the construction of the Tabernacle: ‘silver, brass, and blue, and purple, and scarlet, fine linen, and goats’ hair, and rams’ skins dyed red, and badgers’ skins, and shittim wood, oil for the light, spices for anointing-oil, and for sweet incense, onyx stones and stones to be set in the ephod and in the breastplate.’” To these instructions, God added these words: “But do not suppose that you are giving Me these thirteen objects as gifts, for thirteen deeds did I perform for you in Egypt, which these thirteen objects now repay. For ‘I clothed you with broidered work, and shod you with badgers’ skins, and girded you about with fine linen, and I covered you with silk. I decked you also with ornaments, and I put

bracelets upon your arms, and chains about your necks. And I put jewels on your foreheads, and earrings in your ears, and a beautiful crown upon your heads.’ But in the future world, in return for these thirteen offerings to the Tabernacle, you shall receive thirteen gifts from Me, when ‘I shall create upon every dwelling place of Mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day, and the shining of a flaming fire by night, for upon all the glory shall be a defence. And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and for a covert, from storm and from rain.’” God continued: “Give your contributions to the sanctuary with a willing heart. Do not think that you need give anything out of your pockets, for all you have belongs to Me, through whom you received it in your passage through the Red Sea, when you took their wealth from the Egyptians.<sup>322</sup> I demand nothing from the other nations, but from you I do so, because a was I that led you out of Egypt. But you shall erect a sanctuary to Me not in this world only, but in the future world also. At first the Torah dwelt with Me, but now that it is in your possession, you must let Me dwell among you with the Torah.”

Through the various objects God bade them dedicate to the sanctuary, the course of their history was indicated. The gold signified their yoke under Babylon, “the head of gold;” the silver pointed toward the sovereignty of Persia and Media, who through silver tried to bring about the destruction of Israel; brass stood for the Greek Empire, that like this metal is of inferior quality, its rule also was less significant than that of its predecessors in the sovereignty over the world; the rams’ skins dyed red indicate the sovereignty of “red Rome.” God now said to Israel: “Although you now behold the four nations that will hold sway over you, still shall I send you help out of your bondage, ‘oil for the light,’ the Mes-



siah, who will enlighten the eyes of Israel, and who will make use of 'spices for anointing-oil,' for he will anoint the high priest, that once again 'I may accept you with your sweet savour.'<sup>323</sup>

When Moses was in heaven, God showed him the Tabernacle, as well as models for all the holy vessels therein, hence Moses naturally supposed that he was destined to be the builder of the Tabernacle. But he was mistaken, for when he was about to leave heaven, God said to Moses: "Thee have I appointed king, and it does not behoove a king to execute works in person, but to give people directions. Therefore thou art not to execute the building of the Tabernacle in person, but thou art to give them thy directions to be executed." Moses now asked God whom he should select as the man to carry out his orders, whereupon God fetched out the book of Adam and laid it before Moses. In this book he found recorded all the generations, from the creation of the world to the resurrection of the dead, and the kings, leaders, and prophets set down beside every generation. Then God said to Moses: "In that hour did I decree every man's calling, and Bezalel was then appointed to his task."<sup>324</sup>

322. Tan. Terumah 5–8; Tan. B. II, 90–92; Shir 4.13; Zohar II, 148a. Yalkut I, 429 (=Likkutim II, 8b, which is the source for Yalkut Reubeni Deut. 1.1), counts only eleven materials, whereas Mahzor Vitry 314, which quotes Wehizhir (not found in our text of this work), has fifteen. See also Lekah and Midrash Aggada on Exod. 25.3.

323. Tan. Terumah 7 (during the reign of Ahasuerus the Mede the destruction of Israel was sought by Haman by means of money; see Esther 3.9; "Red Rome" is an allusion to the identification of Rome with Edom; see footnote 19 on p. 252); Tan. B. II, 91–92; Hashkem 10a; Lekah Exod. 25.3; *Kad ha-Kemah*, Lulab I 140, and 'Osher II, 28b; see text on pp. 648–649.

324. ShR 40.2. Philo, *Moses*, 2(3).3, speaks of the incorporeal patterns, according to which Moses was to make the furniture of the tabernacles. The same idea is expressed in his *Quaestiones*, Exod. 2, 52 and 82–83. Compare with p. 646. Concerning the Book of Adam, see text on p. 59, text on pp. 630 and 788.

## BEZALEL

Bezalel was, first of all, of a noble line. His father Hur was a son of Caleb from his union with Miriam, Moses' sister, that Hur who gave his life to restrain Israel from the worship of the Golden Calf. As a reward for his martyrdom, his son Bezalel was to build the Tabernacle, and one of his later descendants, King Solomon, was to build the Temple at Jerusalem. Bezalel was not only of a distinguished family, he was himself a man of distinction, possessed of wisdom, insight and understanding. By means of these three God created the world; Bezalel erected the Tabernacle. Through their aid was the Temple completed, and even in the future world will it be wisdom, insight, and understanding, these three, that God will employ to set up the new Temple. Bezalel, furthermore, had wisdom in the Torah, insight into the Halakah, and understanding in the Talmud,<sup>325</sup> but more than this, he was well versed in secret lore, knowing as he did the combination of letters by means of which God created heaven and earth. The name Bezalel, "in the shadow of God," was most appropriate for this man whose wisdom made clear to him what none could know save one who dwelt "in the shadow of God."

Moses had an instant opportunity of testing the wisdom of this builder appointed by God. God had bidden Moses first to erect the Tabernacle, then the Holy Ark, and lastly to prepare the furnishings of the Tabernacle; but Moses, to put Bezalel's wisdom to the test, ordered him to construct first the Holy Ark, then the furnishings of the Tabernacle, and only then the sanctuary. Hereupon wise Bezalel said to Moses: "O our teacher Moses, it is the way of man first to build his house, and only then to provide its furnishings. Thou biddest me first provide furnishings and then build a sanctuary. What shall I do with the furnishings when there



is no sanctuary ready to receive them?" Moses, delighted with Bezalel's wisdom, replied: "Now truly, the command was given just as thou sayest. Wert thou, perchance, 'in the shadow of God,' that thou knewest it?"

Although God knew that Bezalel was the right man for the erection of the Tabernacle, still He asked Moses, "Dost thou consider Bezalel suited to this task?" Moses replied: "O Lord of the world! If Thou considerest him suitable, then surely do I!" But God said: "Go, nevertheless, and ask Israel if they approve My choice of Bezalel." Moses did as he was bidden, and the people assented in these words: "If Bezalel is judged good enough by God and by thee, assuredly he is approved by us."<sup>326</sup> As the builder of the Tabernacle, God gave Bezalel five other names to bear. He called him Reaiah, "to behold," for Bezalel was beheld by God, by Moses, and by Israel, as the one who had been decreed for his activity since the beginning of the world. He called him "the son of Shobal," because he had erected the Tabernacle that towered high, like a dove-cote. He called him Jahath, "the Trembler," because he made the sanctuary, the seat of the fear of God. He called him Ahumai, because, through his work, the sanctuary, Israel, and God were united; and finally Lahad, as the one who brought splendor and loftiness to Israel, for the sanctuary is the pride and splendor of Israel.

At the side of Bezalel, the noble Judean, worked Oholiab, of the insignificant tribe of Dan, to show that "before God, the great and the lowly are equal." And as the Tabernacle rose, thanks to the combined efforts of a Judean and a Danite, so too did the Temple of Jerusalem, which was built at the command of the Judean Solomon by the Danite Hiram.<sup>327</sup> As the headworkers of the Tabernacle were filled with the holy spirit of God in order to accomplish their task aright, so too were all who aided in its construction, yes, even the beasts that were em-

ployed on this occasion possessed wisdom, insight, and understanding.<sup>328</sup>

---

325. ShR 48.3–4; Tan. B. II, 121–123; Tan. Wa-Yakhel 4–5. As to the statement that Miriam was Bezalel's great-grandmother, see text on p. 469; concerning his father Hur, see text on p. 620. Bezalel was thirteen years old at the time of the erection of the tabernacle, and his father was only eight years his senior. The "former generations" became mature, physically and mentally, at a very early age. See Sanhedrin 69b; Yerushalmi Yebamot 10, 11b (Caleb beget his son at the age of ten); Kiddushin 1, 59c. Compare with p. 395, and text on p. 716. Bible has Bezael as the son of Uri.

326. Berakot 55a; Koheleth 7.11; Aggadat Shir 5, 36–37, where an opinion is quoted, according to which Bezalel and his assistant Oholiab went up Mount Sinai, where the heavenly Sanctuary was shown to them; BR 1.14; Yeru-shalmi Peah 1, 15b. The etymological explanation of the name Bezalel as meaning "I, the Shadow of God" is also given by Philo who finds in it an indication that Bezalel's conception of God was "shadow-like", whereas that of Moses was a substantial one; see *Leg. Alleg.*, 3.31, and *De Plant. Noë*, 6. As to the question whether the ark or the tabernacle was made first, see also text on pp. 642–643, 644–645, 654–655. It is very doubtful whether the combination of letters spoken of in the Haggadah is identical with the Philonic ideas. Comp. Index, s. v. "Letters". On the assent of the people, comp. note 164.

327. ShR 40.4; Tan. Ki-Tissa 13; PR 6, 26a; 'Arakin 16a. Compare also with pp. 679–680. The names mentioned in 1 Chron. 4.1–2 are taken by the Haggadah to be those of Bezalel.

328. ShR 48.3; Tan. B. II, 122–123; Tan. Wa-Yakhel 5. Comp. also PRE 3. Concerning the spirit which God will shed over the animals in the time to come, see 2 ARN 43, 60.

## THE ARK WITH THE CHERUBIM

The very first thing that Bezalel constructed was the Ark of the Covenant, contrary to Moses' order, first to erect the Tabernacle and then to supply its separate furnishings. He succeeded in convincing Moses that it was the proper thing to begin with the Ark, saying:



“What is the purpose of this Tabernacle?” Moses: “That God may let His Shekinah rest therein, and so teach the Torah to His people Israel.” Bezalel: “And where dost thou keep the Torah?” Moses: “As soon as the Tabernacle shall have been completed, we shall make the Ark for keeping the Torah.” Bezalel: “O our teacher Moses, it does not become the dignity of the Torah that in the meanwhile it should lie around like this, let us rather first make the Ark, put the Torah into it, and then continue with the erection of the Tabernacle, for the Tabernacle exists only for the sake of the Torah.” Moses saw the justice of this argument, and Bezalel began his work with the construction of the Ark. In this he followed the example of God, who created light before all the rest of the creation. So Bezalel first constructed the Ark that contains the Torah, the light that illuminates this world and the other world; and only then followed the rest.<sup>329</sup>

The Ark consisted of three caskets, a gold one, the length of ten spans and a fractional part; within this a wooden one, nine spans long, and within this wooden one, one of gold, eight spans long, so that within and without the wooden was overlaid with the golden caskets. The Ark contained the two tables of the Ten Commandments as well as the Ineffable Name, and all His other epithets. The Ark was an image of the celestial Throne, and was therefore the most essential part of the Tabernacle, so that even during the march it was spread over with a cloth wholly of blue, because this color is similar to the color of the celestial Throne. It was through the Ark, also, that all the miracles on the way through the desert had been wrought. Two sparks issued from the Cherubim that shaded the Ark, and these killed all the serpents and scorpions that crossed the path of the Israelites, and furthermore burned all thorns that threatened to injure the wanderers on their march through the desert. The smoke rising from these scorched thorns,

moreover, rose straight as a column, and shed a fragrance that perfumed all the world, so that the nations exclaimed: “Who is this that cometh out of the wilderness like pillars of smoke, perfumed with myrrh and frankincense, with all powders of the merchant?”<sup>330</sup>

Apart from this Ark, which was kept in the Tabernacle, they had another ark, in which were contained the tables broken by Moses, which they carried with them whenever they went to war.<sup>331</sup> The Ark that Bezalel constructed was also used again in Solomon’s Temple, for he retained the Ark used by Moses in the Tabernacle, even though all the other furnishings of the Temple were fashioned anew. It remained there up to the time of the destruction of the Temple by Nebuchadnezzar, when it was concealed under the pavement of the wood-house, that it might not fall into the hands of the enemy. This place remained a secret for all time. Once a priest, noticing about the wood-house that something lay hidden under it, called out to his colleagues, but was suddenly stricken dead before divulging the secret.<sup>332</sup>

On the Ark were the Cherubim with their faces of boys and their wings. Their number was two, corresponding to the two tables, and to the two sacred names of God, Adonai and Elohim, which characterized Him as benevolent and as powerful. The face of each Cherub measured one span, and the wings extended each ten spans, making twenty-two spans in all, corresponding to the twenty-two letters of the Hebrew alphabet.<sup>333</sup> It was “from between the two Cherubim” that God communed with Moses, for the Shekinah never wholly descended to earth any more than any mortal ever quite mounted into the heaven, even Moses and Elijah stood a slight distance from heaven; for, “The heaven, even the heavens, are the Lord’s: but the earth hath He given to the children of men.” Therefore God chose the Cherubim that were ten spans above



the earth as the place where the Shekinah be- took itself to commune with Moses.<sup>334</sup> The heads of the Cherubim were slightly turned back, like that of a scholar bidding his master farewell; but as a token of God's delight in His people Israel, the faces of the Cherubim, by a miracle, "looked one to another" whenever Israel were devoted to their Lord, yea, even clasped one another like a loving couple. During the festivals of the pilgrimage the priests used to raise the curtain from the Holy of Holies to show the pilgrims how much their God loved them as they could see in the embrace of the two Cherubim.<sup>335</sup>

A two-fold miracle came to pass when the Cherubim were brought into the Temple by Solomon: the two staves that were attached to the Ark extended until they touched the curtain, so that two protuberances like a woman's breasts became visible at the back of it, and the wings of the Cherubim furthermore extended until they reached the ceiling of the Holy of Holies.<sup>336</sup>

---

329. ShR 50.1–2; Tan. Wa-Yakhel 5; Tan. B. II, 124. Compare also with p. 642, where a different opinion is quoted, according to which the Sanctuary was first erected and subsequently the ark was fashioned. See also text on pp. 644–645 and 654–655. God commanded Moses to make the entire nation participate in the work of the ark, in order that all might have a share in the Torah kept in the ark; ShR 34.2. Comp. Tan. Wa-Yakhel 7, which reads: Bezalel fashioned the ark with his own hands, whereas the rest of the work was done by others under his direction.

330. Tan. Wa-Yakhel 7; BaR 4.13 and 5.1; Yellammedenuin Yalkut I, 729; Tehillim 22, 185–186; Baba Batra 14b; Shir 1.2 and 3.5; DR 7.9; Yoma 21a, which states: The ark did not diminish the empty space of the Holy of Holies; see parallel passages cited on margin as well as Yerushalmi Baba Batra 6, 15c, and compare footnote 65 on p. 966. Just as the ark, the receptacle of the Torah, was within and without of fine gold, even so must a scholar, the possessor of the Torah, take care that his inside is like his outside, that is, he must be sincere. See Yoma 72b, as well as Philo, *De Ebriet.* 21; *Quaestiones*, Exod. 2, 54. In 2 Clemens, 12, a saying attributed to Jesus, reads: The kingdom of God will not arrive before the inside of

man will be like his outside. It is quite obvious that in this saying the rabbinic phrase תוכו כבחו (comp. Yoma 72b; Tan., *loc. cit.*; *Leket Midrashim*, 6b and 7b) is made use of.—The identification of the ark with the promised angel (see Exod. 23.20) is first found in Lekah, Exod., *loc. cit.* This identification is very likely based on old sources. Comp. the reference in note 435. Of all the furniture and vessels of the Sanctuary the ark is the only one whose measure is given in fractions (see Exod. 25.10); this indicates that, like the ark, the human receptacle of the Torah ought to be humble of spirit and contrite (=broken) of heart; *Kad ha-Kemah*, *Gaawah* (end). See also the explanation of the four staves of the ark as given in Lekah, Exod. 25.12.

331. Shekalim 6, 49b Sotah, Tosefta 7.18 and Yerushalmi 8, 22b–22c; Baba Batra 14a–14b; Meleket ha-Mishkan 6; Sifre N., 82; Sifre Z., 191. A different view is given in Yerushalmi Sotah, *loc. cit.*, according to which there was only one ark which served as a receptacle for the two sets of the two tables, for the scroll of the Torah, and for the presents offered by the Philistines (see 1 Sam. 6.8).

332. Meleket ha-Mishkan 7; Shekalim, Mishnah 6.1–2; Tosefta 2.18; Talmud 7, 49b; Tosefta Sotah 13.1; Yoma 53b–54a; EZ 25, 129. Comp. Friedmann's remarks on Meleket ha-Mishkan, *loc. cit.*; text on pp. 573 and 645.

333. Tadshe 2; Sukkah 5b; ShR 41.6; DR 3.16. The symbolic representation of the ark, as given by Philo, *Moses*, 2(3).8, and *Quaestiones*, Exod. 2, 62, offers many points of resemblance to that of the Midrashim. With reference to the Cherubim, Josephus, *Antiqui.*, 6.5 writes: Cherubim are flying creatures, whose form is not like any creature, but which Moses saw near the throne of God.

334. Sukkah 5a; Mekilta Bahodesh 4, 65; comp. also Yerushalmi Shabbat 1, 2d.

335. Baba Batra 99a; a somewhat different version is given in Yoma 54a–54b. Comp. also Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi on Exod. 25.20. The raising of the curtain during the festivals is also mentioned by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 6. 4.

336. Meleket ha-Mishkan 7; Yoma, Tosefta 2(3).7 and Babli 64a; compare with p. 646.

## THE TABLE AND THE CANDLESTICK

While the number of Cherubim was the same in the Temple as in the Tabernacle, Solomon had, on the other hand, ten tables set up in the Temple in place of the one fashioned by Moses. This was because the one table suf-



ficed to bring sustenance to Israel so long as they were maintained by manna in the desert; but as the demand for food was greater after they settled in the promised land, Solomon had ten tables set up. But in the Temple also did the table of Moses retain its ancient significance, for only upon it was the shewbread placed, and it stood in the centre, whereas the tables fashioned by Solomon stood five to the south and five to the north. For from the south come “the dews of blessing and the rains of plenty,” while all evil comes from the north; hence Solomon said: “The tables on the south side shall cause the rains of plenty and the dews of blessing to come upon the earth, while the tables on the north side shall keep off all evil from Israel.”<sup>337</sup>

Moses had great difficulty with the construction of the candlestick, for although God had given him instructions about it, he completely forgot these when he descended from heaven. He thereupon betook himself to God once more to be shown, but in vain, for hardly had he reached earth, when he again forgot. When he betook himself to God the third time, God took a candlestick of fire and plainly showed him every single detail of it, that he might now be able to reconstruct the candlestick for the Tabernacle. When he found it still hard to form a clear conception of the nature of the candlestick, God quieted him with these words: “Go to Bezalel, he will do it aright.” And indeed, Bezalel had no difficulty in doing so, and instantly executed Moses’ commission. Moses cried in amazement: “God showed me repeatedly how to make the candlestick, yet I could not properly seize the idea; but thou, without having had it shown thee by God, couldst fashion it out of thy own fund of knowledge. Truly dost thou deserve thy name Bezalel, ‘in the shadow of God,’ far thou dost act as if thou hadst been ‘in the shadow of God’ while He was showing me the candlestick.”<sup>338</sup>

This candlestick was later set up in the Temple of Solomon, and although he set up ten other candlesticks, still this one was the first to be lighted. Solomon chose the number ten because it corresponds to the number of Words revealed on Sinai; and each of these candlesticks had seven lamps, seventy in all, to correspond to the seventy nations. For while these lamps burned the power of these nations was held in check, but on the day on which these lamps are extinguished the power of the nations is increased.<sup>339</sup> The candlestick stood toward the south, and the table to the north of the sanctuary, the table to indicate the delights of which the pious would partake in Paradise, which lies to the north; the light of the candlestick to symbolize the light of the Shekinah, for in the future world there will be but one delight, to gaze at the light of the Shekinah.<sup>340</sup> On account of its sacredness the candlestick was one of the five sacred objects that God concealed at the destruction of the Temple by Nebuchadnezzar, and that He will restore when in His loving-kindness He will erect His house and Temple. These sacred objects are: the Ark, the candlestick, the fire of the altar, the Holy Spirit of prophecy, and the Cherubim.<sup>341</sup>

---

337. Meleket ha-Mishkan 8; Menahot Tosefta 11.9, and Babli 98b–99a; Shekalim 6, 50a–50b. On the qualities of the south and the north, see text on pp. 6–7, and the notes appertaining to them. Philo, *Moses*, 2(3).10, writes: The table on which bread and salt are laid (salt is in agreement with Septuagint Lev. 24.7; whereas the Rabbis, Menahot 11, 5–8, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 6.6, know nothing of salt) was placed on the northern side, since of all the winds, the north wind is the most beneficial for the production of nourishment. See also Yelammedenu 53=BHM VI, 88.

338. BaR 15.9; Tan. B. I, 49–50; Tan. Beha'aloteka 6. The pattern, fashioned of fire, for the ark, the table, and the candlestick came down from heaven to Moses, that he might be able to make these vessels of the sanctuary. According to another view, it was Gabriel who taught Moses



how to fashion the candlestick; see Menahot 29a. Compare also footnote 315 on p. 637, and footnote 202 on p. 535.

339. Tadshe 2; Meleket ha-Mishkan 10; Menahot, Tosefta 11.10, and Babli 99a; Shekalim 6, 50a. Compare with pp. 644–645, where a similar statement concerning Solomon's tables is given. The symbolic explanation of the seven branches of the candlestick, as representing the seven planets, is given by Philo, *Vito Mosis*, 2(3).9; *Quis ... Haeres Sit*, 45; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 6.7; as well as by the Midrashim, Tadshe 11; Tan. Beha'aloteka 6; Yalkut I, 219. The last-quoted source reminds one of Philo's words. Compare also p. 639.

340. Tadshe 11. As to the view that paradise is situated in the north, see footnote 33 on p. 6. The passage in Tadshe concerning the south is not very clear, and it may be translated: There—in the south—is only one light, that of the Shekinah. In Baba Batra 25b the candlestick is explained to be a symbolic representation of the Torah (comp. Ps. 119.105). A similar explanation is found in the Apocalypse of Baruch 17.4 and 59.2.

341. Tan. B. IV, 50; Tan. Beha'aloteka 6; BaR 15.9. Compare text on pp. 573 and 643.

## THE ALTAR

One of the most miraculous parts of the Tabernacle was the altar. For when God bade Moses make an altar of shittim wood and overlay it with brass, Moses said to God: "O Lord of the world! Thou badest me make the altar of wood and overlay it with brass, but Thou didst also bid me have 'a fire kept burning upon the altar continually.' Will not the fire destroy the overlay of brass, and then consume the wood of the altar?" God replied: "Moses, thou judgest by the laws that apply to men, but will these also apply to Me? Behold, the angels that are of burning flame. Beside them are My store-houses of snow and My store-houses of hail. Doth the water quench their fire, or doth their fire consume the water? Behold, also, the mayyot that are of fire. Above their heads extends a terrible sea of ice that no mortal can traverse in less than five hundred years. Yet doth the water quench

their fire, or doth their fire consume the water? For, 'I am the Lord who maketh peace between these elements in My high places.' But thou, because I have bidden thee to have 'a fire kept burning upon the altar continually,' art afraid that the wood might be consumed by the fire. Dead things come before Me, and leave Me imbued with life, and thou art afraid the wood of the altar might be consumed! Thine own experience should by now have taught thee better; thou didst pierce the fiery chambers of heaven, thou didst enter among the fiery hosts on high, yea, thou didst even approach Me, that 'am a consuming fire.' Surely thou shouldst then have been consumed by fire, but thou wert unscathed because thou didst go into the fire at My command; no more shall the brass overlay of the altar be injured by fire, even though it be no thicker than a denarium."

In the words, "Dead things come before Me and leave Me imbued with life," God alluded to the three following incidents. The rod of Aaron, after it had lain for a night in the sanctuary, "brought forth buds, and bloomed blossoms, and even yielded almonds." The cedars that Hiram, king of Tyre, sent to Solomon for the building of the Temple, as soon as the incense of the sanctuary reached them, thrilled green anew, and throughout centuries bore fruits, by means of which the young priests sustained themselves. Not until Manasseh brought the idol into the Holy of Holies, did these cedars wither and cease to bear fruit. The third incident to which God alluded was the stretching of the staves of the Ark when Solomon set them in the Holy of Holies, and the staves, after having been part of the Ark for four hundred and eighty years, suddenly extended until they touched the curtain.

Solomon erected a new altar for offerings, but knowing how dear to God was the altar erected by Moses, the brazen altar, he at least retained the same name for his altar. But in the



following words it is evident how much God prized the altar erected by Moses, for He said: "To reward Israel for having had 'a fire kept burning upon the altar continually,' I shall punish 'the kingdom laden with crime' by fire 'that shall not be quenched night or day; the smoke thereof shall go up forever.'"<sup>342</sup>

Beside the brazen altar there was also one of gold, which corresponded to the human soul, while the former corresponded to the body; and as gold is more valuable than brass, so also is the soul greater than the body. But both altars were used daily, as man must also serve his Maker with both body and soul. On the brazen altar sacrifices were offered, as the body of man, likewise, is nourished by food; but on the golden altar, spices and sweet incense, for the soul takes delight in perfumes only.<sup>343</sup>

The materials employed for the construction of the Tabernacle, the skins and the wood, were not of the common order. God created the animal Tahash exclusively for the needs of the Tabernacle, for it was so enormous that out of one skin could be made a curtain, thirty cubits long. This species of animal disappeared as soon as the demands of the Tabernacle for skins were satisfied. The cedars for the Tabernacle, also, were obtained in no common way, for whence should they have gotten cedars in the desert! They owed these to their ancestor Jacob. When he reached Egypt, he planted a cedargrove and admonished his sons to do the same, saying: "You will in the future be released from bondage in Egypt, and God will then demand that you erect Him a sanctuary to thank Him for having delivered you. Plant cedar trees, then, that when God will bid you build Him a sanctuary, you may have in your possession the cedars required for its construction." His sons acted in accordance with the bidding of their father, and upon leaving Egypt took along the cedars for the anticipated erection of the sanctuary. Among these

cedars was also that wonderful cedar out of which was wrought "the middle bar in the midst of the boards, that reached from end to end," and which Jacob took with him from Palestine when he emigrated to Egypt, and then left to remain among his descendants. When the cedars were selected for the construction of the Tabernacle, they intoned a song of praise to God for this distinction.

But not all the twenty-four species of cedar might be used for the Tabernacle, nay, not even the seven most excellent among them were found worthy, but only the species *shittim* might be used. For God, who foresees all, knew that Israel would in the future commit a great sin at *Shittim*, and therefore ordained that *shittim* wood be used for the Tabernacle to serve as atonement for the sin committed at *Shittim*. *Shittim* furthermore signifies "follies," hence Israel were to construct the place of penance for their folly in adoring the Golden Calf, out of *shittim* wood, to atone for this "folly." And finally, the letters of which the word "*Shittim*" is composed, stand for Shalom, "peace," Tobah, "good," Yesh'uah, "salvation," and Mehillah, "forgiveness."<sup>344</sup> The boards that were made for the Tabernacle out of *shittim* wood never decayed, but endure in all eternity.<sup>345</sup>

---

342. Tan. Terumah 10–11. Concerning the heavenly beings, some of which are made of fire and some of water, see the statements in PK 1, 3a (numerous parallel passages are cited by Buber; comp. also ARN, second version, 24, 48–49, footnote 63 on p. 13) which refer to Michael and Gabriel, as well as to those angels who are made partly of fire and partly of snow. On the sea of ice, see text on p. 12. As to the idea that the cedars used for the Temple blossomed and bore fruit, see also Tan. B. IV, 32, which reads: Everything in the Temple, even the gold, was fruitful and multiplied; BaR 11.3 and 12.4; ShR 35.1; Shir 3.8; Yoma 21b and 39b; text on p. 93 and text on p. 644. The belief in the generative power of precious stones was widespread in the middle ages; see Kunz, *The Magic of Jewels and Charms*.



343. Tadshe 11. The view that the soul is sustained by fragrant odors is widespread; see, *e. g.*, Berakot 43b, and the explanation given by many medieval authorities concerning the custom of smelling spices at the termination of the Sabbath; comp. Mahzor Vitry 117.

344. Tan. Terumah 9–10; Tan. B. II, 91 and 94–95; ShR 18.10, 33.8, and 35.1; BR 15.1 (numerous parallel passages are cited by Theodor) and 94.4. Concerning Tahash, see text on p. 35; concerning the view that Jacob prepared the necessary building material, see above, note I, and text on p. 392. Shu'aib, Terumah 67b, quotes an unknown Midrash to the effect that the Shittim-wood for the tabernacle came from paradise, whence Adam took it with him when he was driven out of that place. Subsequently it came into the possession of Abraham, who bequeathed it to Isaac. The latter, in his turn, bequeathed it to Jacob, who took it with him to Egypt. At the Exodus, the Israelites took it with them to the desert. According to Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 26.28, the middle bar was made of the wood taken from the tree which Abraham planted at Beer-sheba (compare with p. 392). The angels felled this tree when the Israelites crossed the Red Sea, and threw it into the waters thereof, while an angel proclaimed: "This is the tree which Abraham planted in Beer-sheba." The Israelites took the tree out of the water, and later made of it the middle bar, whose length was seventy cubits. This bar became circular when the tabernacle stood erect, so that it held all the boards together; but as soon as the boards were removed the middle bar became as straight as a rod.

345. Yoma 72a (bottom); Rashi, *ad loc.*, who remarks that the boards were hidden and will be brought out again in the time to come. See text on p. 665.

## THE SYMBOLICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF THE TABERNACLE

The separate parts of the Tabernacle had each a symbolical significance, for to all that is above there is something corresponding below. There are stars above, but likewise below, where "a star shall come out of Jacob;" God has His hosts above, and likewise below, His people Israel, "the hosts of the Lord;" above there are Ofannim, and on earth likewise there is an Ofan; above, God has Cherubim, and likewise below in the sanctuary of Israel; God hath His

dwelling above, but likewise below; and, lastly, God hath stretched out the heavens above like a curtain, and below, in the sanctuary, were curtains of goats' hair.<sup>346</sup>

The number of curtains, also, corresponds to those in heaven, for just as there are eleven upper heavens, so also were there eleven curtains of goats' hair.<sup>347</sup> The size of the Tabernacle was seventy cubits, corresponding to the seventy holy days celebrated annually by the Jews, to wit: fifty-two Sabbaths, seven days of Passover, eight of Tabernacles, and a day each for Pentecost, the Day of Atonement, and New Year's Day. The number of vessels amounted to seventy also; as likewise God, Israel, and Jerusalem bear seventy names; and as, correspondingly in the time between the building of the first and of the second Temple, there were seventy consecutive Sanhedrin.<sup>348</sup>

Like the Tabernacle, so the altar, too, had its symbolical significance. Its length and its breadth were five cubits each, corresponding respectively to the five Commandments on the two tables of the law. Its height was three cubits, corresponding to the three deliverers God sent to deliver Israel from Egypt,—Moses, Aaron, and Miriam. It had four horns in the four corners thereof, to atone for the sins of the people that on Sinai received four horns, "the horn of the Torah," "the horn of the Shekinah," "the horn of Priesthood," and "the horn of the Kingdom."<sup>349</sup>

In the Tabernacle, as later in the Temple, gold, silver, and brass were employed, but not iron. God meant to indicate by the exclusion of iron that "in the future time," "the golden Babylon, the silver Media, and the brazen Greece," would be permitted to bestow gifts on the new Temple, but not "the iron Rome." It is true that Babylon also destroyed the sanctuary of God, like Rome, but not with such fury and such thorough-going wrath as Rome, whose sons cried: "Raze it, raze it, even to the foundations



thereof,” and for this reason Rome may not contribute to the Messianic Temple. And as God will reject the gifts of Rome, so also will the Messiah, to whom all the nations of the earth will have to offer gifts. Egypt will come with her gifts, and although the Messiah will at first refuse to accept anything from the former taskmaster of Israel, God will say to him: “The Egyptians granted My children an abode in their land, do not repulse them.” Then the Messiah will accept their gift. After Egypt will follow her neighbor, Ethiopia, with her gifts, thinking that if the Messiah accepted gifts from the former taskmaster of Israel, he will also accept gifts from her. Then the Messiah will also accept Ethiopia’s gifts. After these two kingdoms will follow all others with their gifts, and all will be accepted save those from Rome. This kingdom will be sorely disappointed, for, depending upon their kinship with Israel, they will expect kind treatment from the Messiah, who had graciously received the other nations not connected with Israel. But God will call out to the Messiah: “Roar at this monster that devours the fat of the nations, that justifies its claims for recognition through being a descendant of Abraham by his grandson Esau, the nation that forgives all for the sake of money, that kept Israel back from the study of the Torah, and tempted them to deeds that are in accord with the wishes of Satan.”<sup>350</sup>

346. Midrash Aggada Exod. 26.7, based on an old source, since Abbahu, who flourished about the end of the third century, is quoted as the authority. See also ShR 33.4 and 35.6; PK 1, 4b–5a; BaR 12.8; Shir 3.11. The correspondence between the stars and the golden clasps, spoken of in the sources just quoted, is also referred to in Shabbat 99a and Yerushalmi Megillah 1, 72c–72d. The most elaborate symbolic explanation of the tabernacle, found in rabbinic sources, is the one given by R. Shemaiah of Soisson in his treatise on the tabernacle published by Berliner in *Monatsschrift* XIII, 225–231 and 258–264. A. Epstein, *Mikkadmoniyyot* (supplement), 2–4, calls attention to the

close resemblance of the symbolic explanation, as given by R. Shemaiah, to that found in Tadshe and Bereshit Rabbete, all three attempting to show that man, the world, and the Sanctuary correspond to one another. Shu’aib, Terumah 66b, drew upon a source closely related to the three mentioned above, whereas *Shibbole ha-Leke* 3 is a direct quotation from Bereshit Rabbete, and accordingly רבתי בבראשית is to be read instead of רבא as found in our texts. Noteworthy is the following quotation from a Midrash given by R. Shemaiah (*op cit.*, 226), which reads: God said unto Moses: “Behold the celestial Sanctuary, and erect the terrestrial sanctuary in like fashion.” Compare with p. 576, last paragraph. The symbolic explanation of the tabernacle as given by Philo, *Moses*, 2(3), 3–10, and particularly *Quaestiones*, Exod. 2, 51–124, has many points of contact with that of the Rabbis. Clemens, *Stromata*, 4.6, is altogether based on Philo.

347. Tadshe 2; comp. Index, s. v. “Heavens”.

348. Tadshe 10. The seventy names of God, of Israel, and of Jerusalem are enumerated in Aggadat Shir 1, 8–10. Comp. Schechter *ad loc.*

349. Tan. Terumah 10.

350. ShR 35.5; Pesahim 118b. The Haggadah frequently speaks of Esau (=Rome) priding himself of his descent from Abraham, and says that in the time to come he will attempt to save himself by claiming relationship with Jacob (=Israel); see Yerushalmi Nedarim 3, 38a, and Tan. B. III, 15. All these Haggadot are very likely to be taken as anti-Christian. As to the gifts offered by the Gentiles to the Messiah, see also Enoch 53.1 and 90.30. Concerning the four kingdoms and their symbolic representations, see text on pp. 640–641.

## THE PRIESTLY ROBES

Simultaneously with the construction of the Tabernacle and its vessels, were fashioned the priestly robes for Aaron and his sons. It was at this time that God made known Aaron’s appointment to the office of high priest, saying: “Go and appoint a high priest.” Moses: “Out of which tribe?” God: “Of the tribe of Levi.” Moses was most happy upon hearing that the high priest was to be chosen out of his tribe, and his joy was increased when God added: “Appoint thy brother Aaron as high priest.” This choice of Aaron was, of course, also a disappoint-



ment to Moses, who had hoped God would appoint him as His high priest, but God had designed this dignity for Aaron to reward him for his pious deeds when Israel worshipped the Golden Calf. For when Moses returned from Sinai and saw the Calf fashioned by Aaron, he thought his brother was no better than the rest of the people, and had, like them, devoted himself to idolatry. But God knew that Aaron's participation in the construction of the Calf was merely due to the pious motive of delaying the people until Moses should return, hence He even then said to Aaron: "I am fully aware of thy motive, and, as truly as thou livest, I shall appoint thee as warden over the sacrifices that My children offer Me." In consideration of Moses' feelings, God gave into his hands the appointment of Aaron, saying to him: "I might have installed thy brother as high priest without having informed thee of it, but I relinquish his appointment to thee, that thou mayest have an opportunity of showing the people thy humility, in that thou dost not seek this high office for thyself."<sup>351</sup> At God's bidding, Aaron and his two sons were now chosen as priests, and, moreover, not for a limited period, but Aaron and his house were invested with the priesthood for all eternity. As soon as these were installed as priests, Moses set to work to instruct them thoroughly in the priestly laws.<sup>352</sup>

God ordered the following eight garments as Aaron's garb: coat, breeches, mitre, girdle, breastplate, ephod, robe, and golden plate; but his sons needed only the first four garments. All these garments had expiatory virtues, and each expiated a definite sin. The coat atoned for murder, the breeches for unchastity, the mitre for pride, the girdle for theft, the breastplate for partial verdicts, the ephod for idolatry, the bells on the robe for slander, and the golden plate for effrontery.<sup>353</sup>

The breastplate and the ephod were set with precious stones, which were the gifts of the noble to the sanctuary, though, to be exact, they were in reality a gift from God. For precious stones and pearls had rained down with the manna, which the noble among Israel had gathered up and laid away until the Tabernacle was erected, when they offered them as gifts.<sup>354</sup>

The ephod had only two precious stones, one on each shoulder, and on each of these stones were engraved the names of six tribes in the following order: Reuben, Levi, Issachar, Naphtali, Gad, Jehoseph, on the right shoulder-piece; Simeon, Judah, Zebulun, Dan, Asher, Benjamin, on the left shoulder. The name Joseph was spelled Jehoseph, a device by which the two stones had exactly the same number of letters engraved upon them.<sup>355</sup> On the breastplate were twelve precious stones, on which the names of the three Patriarchs preceded those of the twelve tribes, and at the end were engraved the words, "All these are the twelve tribes of Israel."<sup>356</sup>

---

351. ShR 37.1–4; Tan. Terumah 10; Shemuel 23, 112; Koheleth 7.1; Tehillim 101, 427–428, which read: The tribe of Reuben was rejected because of Reuben's sin in connection with Bilhah; the tribe of Simeon on account of their sins at Shittim (compare with p. 778); the Joseph tribes because Joseph slandered his brethren. Compare with p. 328; ER 13, 63, and 31, 157, which read: Aaron strove to reconcile Israel to his God (see text on p. 743), and he was therefore chosen to perform the work of reconciliation (*i. e.*, atonement) in the Sanctuary. Concerning Aaron's real motives in fashioning the golden calf, see text on p. 654, as well as *Da'at* and *Hadar* on Exod. 3.2. As to Moses's aspiration to the priesthood, see text on p. 736. Compare with p. 659.

352. Tan. B. II, 100–101; Tan. Terumah 10–13; ShR 38.1.

353. WR 10.6; Zebahim 88b; 'Arakin 16a; Yerushalmi Yoma 9, 44b–44c; Shir 34.1; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 513 (this passage agrees literally with WR). See also Yoma 7a–7b (in this passage atoning power is ascribed to the mitre only and that in a limited degree) and 72a–72b. A very elaborate symbolic interpretation of the priest-



ly garments is given by Philo, *Moses*, 2(3).2–14, and *Special. Leg.* 15–6, of which Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 7.7, seems to have made use, but of which no trace is found in rabbinic literature. The tripartite division of the tabernacle, as a symbol of the tripartite division of the cosmos into water, dry land, and heaven, is given by Josephus and in Tadshe 2 (beginning).

354. ShR 33.8, with the additional remark that the Jews at that time were so rich, that any one of them would have been able to defray the cost of the erection of the tabernacle. See also Yoma 95a; Zohar III, 23b; compare with pp. 654–655.

355. Maimonides' *Yad, Kele ha-Mikdash* 9.9 (he undoubtedly follows a tannaitic source); Sotah 66a, and Yerushalmi 7, 21d. See the thorough study of Epstein, *Mikkadmoniyyot*, 83–90, and comp. also *Responsen der Geonim*, Harkavy's edition, 3, as well as the following note.

356. Yoma 73b; Sotah 66b. Comp. also Epstein, *Mikkadmoniyyot* 83–90, as well as Aristeas 97, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 7.5. In order to have all the letters of the Hebrew alphabet engraved upon the stones, it was necessary to include the names of the three patriarchs, as well as the words "all these are, etc." (Comp. Gen. 49.28). Had some letters been missing, the oracular sentences would not have been possible. See text on p. 664.

## THE STONES IN THE BREASTPLATE

The twelve stones differed not only in color, but also in certain qualities peculiar to each, and both quality and color had especial reference to the tribe whose name it bore. Reuben's stone was the ruby, that has the property, when grated by a woman and tasted by her, of promoting pregnancy, for it was Reuben who found the mandrakes which induce pregnancy.

Simeon's stone was the smaragd, that has the property of breaking as soon as an unchaste woman looks at it, a fitting stone for the tribe whose sire, Simeon, was kindled to wrath by the unchaste action of Shechem. It was at the same time a warning to the tribe of Simeon, that committed whoredom at Shi'im with the daughters of Moab, to be mindful of chastity, and like its stone, to suffer no prostitution.

Levi's stone was the carbuncle, that beams like lightning, as, likewise, the faces of that tribe beamed with piety and erudition. This stone has the virtue of making him who wears it wise; but true wisdom is the fear of God, and it was this tribe alone that did not join in the worship of the Golden Calf.

Judah's stone was the green emerald, that has the power of making its owner victorious in battle, a fitting stone for this tribe from which springs the Jewish dynasty of kings, that routed its enemies. The color green alludes to the shame that turned Judah's countenance green when he publicly confessed his crime with Tamar.

Issachar's stone was the sapphire, for this tribe devoted themselves completely to the study of the Torah, and it is this very stone, the sapphire, out of which the two tables of the law were hewn. This stone increases strength of vision and heals many diseases, as the Torah, likewise, to which this tribe was so devoted, enlightens the eye and makes the body well.

The white pearl is the stone of Zebulun, for with his merchant ships he sailed the sea and drew his sustenance from the ocean from which the pearl, too, is drawn. The pearl has also the quality of bringing its owner sleep, and it is all the more to the credit of this tribe that they nevertheless spent their nights on commercial ventures to maintain their brother-tribe Issachar, that lived only for the study of the Torah. The pearl is, furthermore, round, like the fortune of the rich, that turns like a wheel, and in this way the wealthy tribe of Zebulun were kept in mind of the fickleness of fortune.

Dan's stone was a species of topaz, in which was visible the inverted face of a man, for the Danites were sinful, turning good to evil, hence the inverted face in their stone.

The turquoise was Naphtali's stone, for it gives its owner speed in riding, and Naphtali was "a hind let loose."



Gad's stone was the crystal, that endows its owner with courage in battle, and hence served this warlike tribe that battled for the Lord as an admonition to fear none and build on God.

The chrysolite was Asher's stone, and as this stone aids digestion and makes its owner sturdy and fat, so were the agricultural products of Asher's tribe of such excellent quality that they made fat those who ate of them.

Joseph's stone was the onyx, that has the virtue of endowing him who wears it with grace, and truly, by his grace, did Joseph find favor in the eyes of all.

Jasper was Benjamin's stone, and as this stone turns color, being now red, now green, now even black, so did Benjamin's feelings vary to his brothers. Sometimes he was angry with them for having sold into slavery Joseph, the only other brother by his mother Rachel, and in this mood he came near betraying their deed to his father; but, that he might not disgrace his brothers, he did not divulge their secret. To this discretion on his part alludes the Hebrew name of his stone, Yashpeh, which signifies, "There is a mouth," for Benjamin, though he had a mouth, did not utter the words that would have covered his brothers with disgrace.<sup>357</sup>

The twelve stones in the breastplate, with their bright colors, were of great importance in the oracular sentences of the high priest, who by means of these stones made the Urim and Tummim exercise their functions. For whenever the king or the head of the Sanhedrin wished to get directions from the Urim and Tummim he betook himself to the high priest. The latter, robed in his breastplate and ephod, bade him look into his face and submit his inquiry. The high priest, looking down on his breastplate, then looked to see which of the letters engraved on the stones shone out most brightly, and then constructed the answer out of these letters. Thus, for example, when David inquired of the

Urim and Tummim if Saul would pursue him, the high priest Abiathar beheld gleaming forth the letter Yod in Judah's name, Resh in Reuben's name, and Dalet in Dan's name, hence the answer read as follows: Yered, "He will pursue."

The information of this oracle was always trustworthy, for the meaning of the name Urim and Tummim is in the fact that "these answers spread light and truth," but not every high priest succeeded in obtaining them. Only a high priest who was permeated with the Holy Spirit, and over whom rested the Shekinah, might obtain an answer, for in other cases the stones withheld their power. But if the high priest was worthy, he received an answer to every inquiry, for on these stones were engraved all the letters of the alphabet, so that all conceivable words could be constructed from them.<sup>358</sup>

---

357. R. Bahya on Exod., 28.17, which is the source for Toledot Yizhak, *ad loc.*; *Talpiyyot*, s. v. **סגולת האבנים**, makes use of R. Bahya's description, but does not follow it in every detail. See also ShR 38.8–9; Lekah and Targum Yerushalmi on Exod. *loc. cit.*; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 2.2–25 (this passage differs from Targum on Exod.); Targum Song of Songs 2.12. The old rabbinic literature has no remarks about the peculiarities of the twelve stones, and there can be no doubt that R. Bahya, or rather the source which he followed, is based upon some medieval lapidarium. Steinschneider, *Semitic Studies in memory of Kohut* 64, *seq.*, gives a bibliography of lapidaria composed by Christian authors in the Middle Ages. Of course, the relation between the peculiarities of the stones and the history of the tribes is of Jewish origin. Comp. Index, under the names of the Twelve Tribes. See text on pp. 685, 688; text on p. 856.

358. Yoma 73a–73b and Yerushalmi 7, 44c. The Urim and Thummim ceased to give oracular answers immediately after the death of the first prophets; Sotah 9.12. According to Tosefta 13.2 and Babli 48b, by the "first prophets" are meant those prophets who lived during the first commonwealth, so that the time when the Urim and Thummim ceased to function is identical with the time of the destruction of the first Temple. Yerushalmi 9, 24b, however, offers the opinion that the expression the "first prophets" refers to Samuel and David, and accordingly the Urim and Thummim did not function in the first Temple.



Targum Yerushalmi, Exod. 28.30, maintains that the high priest gave the oracular answers by means of the “great and holy Name” which was engraved upon the Urim and Thummim as well as up on the *Eben Shetiyah*. The sources quoted in notes 355 and 356 do not make the slightest allusion to the Name being engraved upon the stones of the breast-plate. Concerning the statement that the Name was engraved upon the *Eben Shetiyah*, see Index, s. v. On the lustre of the stones, see text on p. 820; text on p. 846. The view given in Lekah, Exod. 29.15, as that of *יש אומרים* is quite unintelligible to me.

## THE COMPLETION OF THE TABERNACLE

On the eleventh day of Tishri Moses assembled the people, and informed them that it was God’s wish to have a sanctuary among them, and each man was bidden to bring to the sanctuary any offering he pleased. At the same time he impressed upon them that, however pious a deed participation in the construction of the Tabernacle might be, still they might under no circumstances break the Sabbath to hasten the building of the sanctuary. Moses thereupon expounded to them the kind of work that was permissible on the Sabbath, and the kind that was prohibited, for there were not less than thirty-nine occupations the pursuit of which on the Sabbath was punishable by death.<sup>359</sup> Owing to the importance of keeping the Sabbath, Moses imparted the precepts concerning it directly to the great masses of the people that he had gathered together, and not to the elders alone. In this he acted according to God’s command, who said to him: “Go, Moses, call together great assemblages and announce the Sabbath laws to them, that the future generations may follow thy example, and on Sabbath days assemble the people in the synagogues and instruct them in the Torah, that they may know what is prohibited and what is permitted, that My name may be

glorified among My children.” In the spirit of this command did Moses institute that on every holy day there might be preaching in the synagogues, and instruction concerning the significance of the special holy day. He summoned the people to these teachings with the words: “If you will follow my example, God will count it for you as if you had acknowledged God as your king throughout the world.”<sup>360</sup>

The stress laid on the observance of the Sabbath laws was quite necessary, for the people were so eager to deliver up their contributions, that on the Sabbath Moses had to have an announcement proclaimed that they were to take nothing out of their houses, as the carrying of things on the Sabbath is prohibited.<sup>361</sup> For Israel is a peculiar people, that answered the summons to fetch gold for the Golden Calf, and with no less zeal answered the summons of Moses to give contributions for the Tabernacle. They were not content to bring things out of their houses and treasuries, but forcibly snatched ornaments from their wives, their daughters, and their sons, and brought them to Moses for the construction of the Tabernacle. In this way they thought they could cancel their sin in having fashioned the Golden Calf; then had they used their ornaments in the construction of the idol, and now they employed them for the sanctuary of God.<sup>362</sup>

The women, however, were no less eager to contribute their mite, and were especially active in producing the woolen hangings. They did this in so miraculous a way, that they spun the wool while it was still upon the goats.<sup>363</sup> Moses did not at first want to accept contributions from the women, but these brought their cloaks and their mirrors, saying: “Why dost thou reject our gifts? If thou doest so because thou wantest in the sanctuary nothing that women use to enhance their charms, behold, here are our cloaks that we use to conceal ourselves from the eyes of



the men. But if thou art afraid to accept from us anything that might be not our property, but our husbands', behold, here are our mirrors that belong to us alone, and not to our husbands." When Moses beheld the mirrors, he waxed very angry, and bade the women to be driven from him, exclaiming: "What right in the sanctuary have these mirrors that exist only to arouse sensual desires?" But God said to Moses: "Truly dearer to Me than all other gifts are these mirrors, for it was these mirrors that yielded Me My hosts. When in Egypt the men were exhausted from their heavy labors, the women were wont to come to them with food and drink, take out their mirrors, and caressingly say to their husbands: 'Look into the mirror, I am much more beautiful than thou,' and in this way passion seized the men so that they forgot their cares and united themselves with their wives, who thereupon brought many children into the world. Take now these mirrors and fashion out of them the laver that contains the water for the sanctifying of the priests." Furthermore out of this laver was fetched the water that a woman suspected of adultery had to drink to prove her innocence. As formerly the mirrors had been used to kindle conjugal affection, so out of them was made the vessel for the water that was to restore broken peace between husband and wife.

When Moses upon God's command made known to the people that whosoever was of a willing heart, man or woman, might bring an offering, the zeal of the women was so great, that they thrust away the men and crowded forward with their gifts,<sup>364</sup> so that in two days all that was needful for the construction of the Tabernacle was in Moses' hands. The princes of the tribes came almost too late with their contributions, and at the last moment they brought the precious stones for the garments of Aaron, that they might not be entirely unrepresented in the

sanctuary. But God took their delay amiss, and for this reason they later sought to be the first to offer up sacrifices in the sanctuary.<sup>365</sup>

After everything had been provided for the construction of the Tabernacle, Bezalel set to work with the devotion of his whole soul, and as a reward for this, the Holy Scriptures speak of him only as the constructor of the sanctuary, although many others stood by him in this labor. He began his work by fashioning the boards, then attended to the overlaying of them, and when he had completed these things, he set to work to prepare the curtains, then completed the Ark with the penance-cover belonging to it, and finally the table for the shewbread, and the candlestick.<sup>366</sup>

---

359. Mekilta Shabbat 2, 104b; Mekilta RS 165. See also Sifra 19.3 and 4 Maccabees 2.10, with reference to the honor due to parents, which one is not to observe when it conflicts with the honor due to God.

360. Tan. as quoted in *Shibbole ha-leket* 67–68; Abkir in Yalkut I, 408; *Rokeah* 53 (the source, though not given by the author, is very likely Abkir). Comp. also Megillah 4a; Lekah, Exod. 34.34 (end); Zohar II, 203. The last-named passage reads: Moses communicated the laws of Sabbath to the Israelites before they worshipped the golden calf. But many of the people, misled by the "mixed multitude" (see text on p. 621), did not observe them, and Moses therefore repeated them after the death of the "mixed multitude" (see text on p. 626). This time he addressed himself exclusively to the Jews. The source of Zohar is Lekah, Exod. 35.4. The Sabbath as the day of study and religious instruction is of frequent occurrence in Jewish literature; see e. g., Pesahim 68b; Yer. Shabbat 15, 15a; PR 23, 116a and 121a; Philo, *Special. Leg.* 2.6; *Vita Mosis*, 2(3).27 (in this passage it is regarded as an institution of Moses); ps-Philo 11.7.

361. Shabbat 90a. Comp. Lekah, Exod. 34.34.

362. Shekalim 1, 45d; Lekah, Exod. 35.22; ShR 41.2 (which remarks: All that was necessary for the building of the tabernacle was brought in the short space of "two morning hours"); BaR 12.37; Tehillim 101, 428; Tan. B. II, 90; Tan. Terumah 4 (it is stated in this passage: God's blessing was on everything which the people brought, so that even little things were put to great use).



363. Shabbat 74b and 99a; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 35.26. The goats came every day, with the exception of Sabbath and the New Moon, to the women, and offered their wool for the hangings of the Tabernacle; Shu'aib, Wa-Yakhel, 42b, On the New Moon as a festival of the women, see text on pp. 620–621 and next note; on the animals participating in the erection of the Tabernacle, see text on p. 642.

364. Aggadat Shir 4, 79 (the word שלמה in this passage probably means, not “cloak”, but, as in Deut. 22.17, the garment used by the bride); BaR 9.14 (it says: They disposed of their mirrors as a proof of their chastity); Tan. Pekude 9, reads: The women provided their husbands with food consisting of fish which came to them in a miraculous way as soon as they let their pitchers down into the well to draw water. See Sotah 11a, and comp. further PRK 15a on fish as a food conducive to fecundity. The statement with regard to the praise of the women in the passage cited by *Hadar*, Exod. 35.22, reads somewhat differently from that in the sources quoted above; it also adds that the women received the New Moon as a festival (see the preceding note), as a reward for their devotion to their nation by bearing and raising children under very trying circumstances. In the legends about the mirrors of the women, expression is given to the thought that it is the intention which counts more than the deed; comp. Mishnah Mena-hot (end), which reads: Whether one does much or little—does not matter—provided the intention is for the sake of heaven. The story told in WR 3.5 of the poor widow and the high priest, as an illustration of the importance of the intention, is very much akin to that of Mark 12.44; Philo, *Moses*, 2(3).15, seems to presuppose a Haggadah similar to that given by the Rabbis concerning the mirrors presented by the women.

365. Tan. B. IV, 40; Tan. Naso 27 (the text is corrupt); compare with pp. 664–665. As to the provenance of these stones, see text on p. 65, as well as Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 35.27, where it is stated that the clouds fetched them from the river Pishon (see Gen. 2.12), and placed them in the wilderness (read מדברא instead of מדבחה), where the princes found them. Compare with p. 559. A similar legend is given in the following verse of Targum, according to which the clouds brought the perfumes from paradise, and placed them in the wilderness for Israel. In Yoma 75a, the clouds which carried the precious stones are identical with those which brought the manna. It therefore seems reasonable to assume that Targum did not draw upon this passage.

366. Tan. B. II, 125; Tan. Wa-Yakhel 10; ShR 50.4–5. Comp. the different opinion concerning the order of the work, as given in the text on pp. 642–643.

## THE SETTING UP OF THE TABERNACLE

The work on the Tabernacle progressed rapidly, for everything was ready in the month of Kislev, but it was not set up until three months later. The people were indeed eager to set up the sanctuary at once and to dedicate it, but God bade Moses wait until the first day of the month of Nisan, because that was Isaac's birthday, and God wished the joy of dedication to take place on this day of joy. The mockers among Israel, of course, to whom this was not known, made fun of Moses, saying: “Of course, is it possible that the Shekinah should rest over the work of Amram's sons?”<sup>367</sup>

In regard to the Tabernacle, Moses had to suffer much besides from the fault-finders and wicked tongues. If he showed himself upon the street, they called out to one another: “See what a well-fed neck, what sturdy legs the son of Amram has, who eats and drinks from our money!” The other would answer: “Dost thou believe that one who has the construction of the Tabernacle in his hands will remain a poor man?” Moses said nothing, but resolved, as soon as the Tabernacle should have been completed, to lay an exact account before the people, which he did. But when it came to giving his account, he forgot one item of seven hundred seventy-five shekels which he had expended for hooks upon which to hang the curtains of the Tabernacle. Then, as he suddenly raised his eyes, he saw the Shekinah resting on the hooks and was reminded of his omission of this expenditure. Thereafter all Israel became convinced that Moses was a faithful and reliable administrator.<sup>368</sup>

As the people had brought much more material than was necessary for the Tabernacle, Moses erected a second Tabernacle outside the



encampment on the spot where God had been accustomed to reveal Himself to him, and this "Tabernacle of revelation" was in all details like the original sanctuary in the camp.<sup>369</sup>

When everything was ready, the people were very much disappointed that the Shekinah did not rest upon their work, and they betook themselves to the wise men who had worked on the erection of the Tabernacle, and said to them: "Why do ye sit thus idle, set up the Tabernacle, that the Shekinah may dwell among us." These now attempted to put up the Tabernacle, but did not succeed, for hardly did they believe it was up, when it fell down again. Now all went to Bezalel and his assistant Oholiab, saying to them: "Do you now set up the Tabernacle, you who constructed it, and perhaps it will then stand." But when even these two master-builders did not succeed in setting up the Tabernacle, the people began to find fault, and say: "See now what the son of Amram has brought upon us. We spent our money and went through a great deal of trouble, all because he assured us that the Holy One, blessed be He, would descend from His place with the angels and dwell among us under 'the hangings of goats' hair,' but it has all been in vain." The people now went to Moses, saying: "O our teacher Moses, we have done all thou hast bidden us do, we gave all thou didst ask of us. Look now upon this completed work, and tell us if we have omitted aught, or have done aught we should have refrained from doing, examine it with care and answer us." Moses had to admit that all had been done according to his instructions. "But if it be so," continued the people, "why then cannot the Tabernacle stand? Bezalel and Oholiab failed to set it up, and all the wise men as well!" This communication sorely grieved Moses, who could not understand why the Tabernacle could not be set up. But God said to him: "Thou wert sorry to have had no share in the erection of the Tabernacle, which

the people supplied with material, and on which Bezalel, Oholiab, and the other wise men labored with the work of their hands. For this reason did it come to pass that none could set up the Tabernacle, for I want all Israel to see that it cannot stand if thou dost not set it up." Moses replied: "O Lord of the world! I do not know how to put it up." But God answered: "Go, get busy with its setting-up, and while thou art busy at it, it will rise of its own accord." And so it came to pass. Hardly had Moses put his hand upon the Tabernacle, when it stood erect, and the rumors among the people that Moses had arbitrarily put up the Tabernacle without the command of God ceased forevermore.<sup>370</sup>

---

367. PR 24a–24b (on the text, see *Orehot Hayyim* I, 26d), which has the additional remark that the month of Kislev was later compensated with the feast of Hanukkah, in memory of the dedication of the Temple under the Maccabees; Tan. Pekude (end); ShR 52.2. On Isaac's birthday see footnote 203 on p. 218; text on p. 966. On the derogatory expression "son of Amram", see note 163, and comp. the phrase "son of Bath-sheba" in text on p. 966. On the people finding fault with Moses, see text on p. 586.

368. Tan. B. II, 129; Tan. Pekude 7, and Ki-Tissa 27; ShR 51.6; Kiddushin 33b; Yerushalmi Bikkurim 3, 65; Zohar II, 226 (which reads: A heavenly voice told the people of the use made of the supposedly missing item); Midrash Aggada Exod. 38.21; Hadassi, 132a. No. 358. Similarly *Manhig*, *Tefillah*, 39, knows the tale about the sudden appearance of the hooks which came to defend Moses against his accusers. See also Toledot Yizhak, Exod., *loc. cit.*, and *Ayyumah Kannidgalot*, 16a, where this legend is given in accordance with the *Manhig* version.

369. ShR 51.2; Tan. Pekude 5; Tan. B. II, 127; Midrash Esfah in Yalkut I, 737; Sifre Z., 62 and 110. Comp. Hoffmann, *Wichtigste Instanzen gegen die Graf-Wellhausen'sche Hypothese*, 81. To remove all suspicion, Moses took Ithamar to participate with him in drawing up the accounts of the treasury of the tabernacle; ShR, *loc. cit.*

370. Tan. Pekude 11; Tan. B. II, 132–133; ShR 52.2–3. As a reward to Moses for his great devotion to the work of erecting the tabernacle, Scripture speaks of the erection of the tabernacle "by Moses" (Num. 7.1) and not "by Israel". See Tan. Ki-Tissa 35; BaR 12.1. Com. note 257.



## THE CONSECRATION OF THE PRIESTS

**B**efore the sanctuary and its vessels were dedicated for service, they were anointed with holy oil. On this occasion the miracle came to pass that twelve lugs of oil sufficed not only to anoint the sanctuary and its vessels, and Aaron and his two sons throughout the seven days of their consecration, but with this same oil were anointed all the successors of Aaron in the office of high priest, and several kings until the days of Josiah.

An especial miracle occurred when Aaron was anointed and on his pointed beard two drops of holy oil hung pendant like two pearls. These drops did not even disappear when he trimmed his beard, but rose to the roots of the hair. Moses at first feared that the useless waste of these drops of holy oil on Aaron's beard might be considered sacrilege, but a Divine voice quieted him. A Divine voice quieted Aaron, also, who likewise feared the accident that had turned the holy oil to his personal use.<sup>371</sup>

The anointing of Aaron and his two sons was not the only ceremony that consecrated them as priests, for during a whole week did they have to live near the Tabernacle, secluded from the outer world. During this time Moses performed all priestly duties, even bringing sacrifices for Aaron and his sons, and sprinkling them with the blood of these sacrifices.<sup>372</sup> It was on the twenty-third day of Adar that God bade Moses consecrate Aaron and his sons as priests, saying to him: "Go, persuade Aaron to accept his priestly office, for he is a man who shuns distinctions. But effect his appointment before all Israel, that he may be honored in this way, and at the same time warn the people that after the choice of Aaron none may assume priestly rights. Gather thou all the congregation together unto the door

of the Tabernacle." At these last words Moses exclaimed: "O Lord of the world! How shall I be able to assemble before the door of the Tabernacle, a space that measures only two seah, sixty myriads of adult men and as many youths?" But God answered: "Dost thou marvel at this? Greater miracles than this have I accomplished. The heaven was originally as thin and as small as the retina of the eye, still I caused it to stretch over all the world from one end to the other. In the future world, too, when all men from Adam to the time of the Resurrection will be assembled in Zion, and the multitude will be so great that one shall call to the other, 'The place is too strait for me, give place to me that I may dwell,' on that day will I so extend the holy city that all will conveniently find room there."<sup>373</sup>

Moses did as he was bidden, and in presence of all the people took place the election of Aaron and his sons as priests, whereupon these retired for a week to the door of the Tabernacle. During this week, in preparing the burnt offering and the sin offering, Moses showed his brother Aaron and Aaron's sons how to perform the different priestly functions in the sanctuary. Moses made a sin offering because he feared that among the gifts out of which the sanctuary had been constructed, there might have been ill-gotten gains, and as God loves justice and hates loot as an offering, Moses through a sin offering sought to obtain forgiveness for a possible wrong. During this week, however, the sanctuary was only temporarily used. Moses would set it up mornings and evenings, then fold it together again, and it was not until this week had passed that the sanctuary was committed to the general use. After that it was not folded together except when they moved from one encampment to another."<sup>374</sup>

These seven days of retirement were assigned to Aaron and his sons not only as a preparation for their regular service, they had another



significance also. God, before bringing the flood upon the earth, observed the seven days preceding as a week of mourning, and in the same way He bade Aaron and his sons live in absolute retirement for a week, as is the duty of mourners, for a heavy loss awaited them—the death of Nadab and Abihu, which took place on the joyous day of their dedication.<sup>375</sup>

---

371. Horayyot 11b and Keritot 5b; in both passages it is also stated that until Josiah hid the sacred oil (text on p. 573) all the high priests and those kings who did not come to the throne by inheritance were anointed with the oil prepared by Moses. During the second commonwealth neither the high priests nor the kings were anointed with the “oil of ointment”, though some of the kings were anointed with balsam. But according to PRK, 42a, Aaron and his sons and Zadok were the only “anointed priests”; among the kings, Saul, David, Joash, and Jehoash enjoyed this distinction. Comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte* 319–320; WR 3.5 and 10.8; ARN 1, 1 and 34, 100; BaR 12.15, 14.13, and 18.9; PK 1, 7a; Sifre N., 92, Sifre Z., 53–54 (this passage gives a very detailed description of the ceremony of anointing) and 57; Shekalim 9.49c–49d; Sifra 7.35 and 8.10; Tehillim 133, 517; Tan. Korah 6; Tan. B. IV, 90; Shir 1.10; Midrash Shir 34b (which reads: Through a miracle not a drop of the sacred oil was spilled;) Ekah 1, 87; *Batte Midrashot* III, 16. The emphatic manner in which many of the passages just quoted state their view that neither Aaron nor the Messiah will be anointed in the time to come leads one to assume the probability that this opinion is directed against the Christian Messiah, literally “the anointed one”. Com. Ginzberg, *op. cit.*, note 4 on p. 348, and footnote 23 on p. 913.

372. PK 4, 38a–38b (this passage quotes also the dissenting view, according to which Moses performed the services of high priest during the last forty years of his life; this opinion seems to have been shared by Philo, who describes Moses as a high priest; see *Quis ... Haeres Sit*, 38); Zebahim 101b–102a; Ta’anit 11b; Yerushalmi Yoma 1, 38b; WR 11.6; BaR 9.44; ShR 37.1; Tehillim 91, 423–424; PR 14, 63b–64a; compare footnote 121 on p. 509.

373. Tan. B. III, 19.21; Tan. Zaw 10–12; WR 10.9; *Likkutim* II, 4b; BR 5.7 (numerous parallel passages are cited by Theodor); DR 4.11; PR 1, 2a (on the text see *Rokeah*, 221); PK 12, 108a–108b, and 20, 143a–143b; ARN 35, 106; Baba Batra 76b; Sifre D., 1. The question as to how, at the time of the resurrection, all the numberless multitudes will find place in Palestine engaged the atten-

tion of Sa’adya Gaon; see *Eminot we-Deot*, 7 (=BHM VI, 148–149). See text on pp. 674, 739–740; text on p. 844. An allusion to the legend that all the Israelites were assembled in the Sanctuary is very likely to be found in Enoch 89.36. As to the date of the consecration of the priests, see Sifre D., 44; Seder ‘Olam 7 and parallel passages given by Ratner.

374. Sifra 8.15 and 35; Seder ‘Olam 7; Tosefta Menahot 7.6, seq.; PK 6, 6a–6b; PR 5, 15a; Yerushalmi Yoma I, 38b; BaR. 13.2.

375. Tan. B. II, 21–22; Tan. Shemini 1; BR 100.7; Yerushalmi Moed Katan 3, 82c; comp. also Tan. B. I, 222, and Tan. Wa-Yehi 17, as well as footnote 64 on p. 132.

## THE DAY OF THE TEN CROWNS

The first day of Nisan was an eventful day, “a day that was distinguished by ten crowns.” It was the day on which the princes of the tribes began to bring their offerings; it was the first day on which the Shekinah came to dwell among Israel; the first day on which sacrifice on any but the appointed place was forbidden; the first day on which priests performed sacrificial rites; the first day on which the priests bestowed their blessing upon Israel; the first day for regular sacrificial service; the first day on which the priests partook of certain portions of the offering; the first day on which the heavenly fire was seen on the altar; it was besides the first day of the week, a Sunday, the first day of the first month of the year.<sup>376</sup>

It was on this day after “the week of training” for Aaron and his sons that God said to Moses: “Thinkest thou that thou art to be high priest because thou hast been attending to priestly duties during this week? Not so, call Aaron and announce to him that he has been appointed high priest, and at the same time call the elders and in their presence announce his elevation to this dignity, that none may say Aaron himself assumed this dignity.”<sup>377</sup> Following the example



of God, who on Sinai distinguished Aaron before all others, saying, "And thou shalt come up, thou and Aaron with thee, but let not the priests and the people break through," Moses went first to Aaron, then to Aaron's sons, and only then to the elders, to discuss with them the preparations for the installation of Aaron into office.<sup>378</sup>

When Moses approached Aaron with the news of God's commission to appoint him as high priest, Aaron said: "What! Thou hadst all the labor of erecting the Tabernacle, and I am now to be its high priest!" But Moses replied: "As truly as thou livest, although thou art to be high priest, I am as happy as if I had been chosen myself. As thou didst rejoice in my elevation, so do I now rejoice in thine."<sup>379</sup> Moses continued: "My brother Aaron, although God has become reconciled to Israel and has forgiven them their sin, still, through thy offering must thou close the mouth of Satan, that he may not hate thee when thou enterest the sanctuary. Take then a young calf as a sin-offering, for as thou didst nearly lose thy claim to the dignity of high priest through a calf, so shalt thou now through the sacrifice of a calf be established in thy dignity." Then Moses turned to the people, saying: "You have two sins to atone for: the selling of Joseph, whose coat your fathers smeared with the blood of a kid to convince their father that its owner had been torn to pieces by a wild beast, and the sin you committed through the worship of the Golden Calf. Take, then, a kid to atone for the guilt you brought upon yourselves with a kid, and take a calf to atone for the sin you committed through a calf. But to make sure that God has become reconciled to you, offer up a bull also, and thereby acknowledge that you are slaughtering before God your idol, the bull that you had erstwhile worshipped." The people, however, said to Moses: "What avails it this nation to do homage to its king, who is invisible?" Moses replied: "For this very reason did God

command you to offer these sacrifices, so that He may show Himself to you." At these words they rejoiced greatly, for through them they knew that God was now completely reconciled to them, and they hastened to bring the offerings to the sanctuary. Moses admonished them with the words: "See to it now that you drive evil impulse from your hearts, that you now have but one thought and one resolution, to serve God; and that your undivided services are devoted singly and solely to the one God, for He is the God of gods and the Lord of lords. If you will act according to my words, 'the glory of the Lord shall appear unto you.'"

But Aaron in his humility still did not dare to enter on his priestly activities. The aspect of the horned altar filled him with fear, for it reminded him of the worship of the bull by Israel, an incident in which he felt he had not been altogether without blame. Moses had to encourage him to step up to the altar and offer the sacrifices. After Aaron had offered up the prescribed sacrifices, he bestowed his blessing upon the people with lifted hands, saying: "The Eternal bless thee and keep thee: The Eternal make His face shine upon thee and be gracious unto thee: The Eternal lift up His countenance upon thee and give thee peace."

In spite of the offerings and the blessing, there was still no sign of the Shekinah, so that Aaron, with a heavy heart, thought, "God is angry with me, and it is my fault that the Shekinah has not descended among Israel, I merely owe it to my brother Moses that to my confusion I entered the sanctuary, for my service did not suffice to bring down the Shekinah." Upon this Moses went with his brother into the sanctuary a second time, and their united prayers had the desired effect, there came "a fire out from before the Lord, and consumed upon the altar the burnt offering and the fat," and stayed upon the altar well-nigh one hundred and sixteen years, and



neither was the wood of the altar consumed, nor its brazen overlay molten.

When the people saw the heavenly fire, the evident token of God's grace and His reconciliation with them, they shouted, and fell on their faces, and praised God, intoning in His honor a song of praise. Joy reigned not only on earth, but in heaven also, for on this day God's joy over the erection of the sanctuary was as great as had been His joy on the first day of creation over His works, heaven and earth.<sup>380</sup> For, in a certain sense, the erection of the Tabernacle was the finishing touch to the creation of the world. For the world exists for the sake of three things, the Torah, Divine service, and works of love. From the creation of the world to the revelation on Sinai the world owed its existence to the love and grace of God; from the revelation to the erection of the sanctuary, the world owed its existence to the Torah and to love, but only with the erection of the Tabernacle did the world secure its firm basis, for now it had three feet whereupon to rest, the Torah, Divine service, and love. From another point of view, too, is the day of the consecration of the sanctuary to be reckoned with the days of creation, for at the creation of the world God dwelt with mortals and withdrew the Shekinah to heaven only on account of the sin of the first two human beings. But on the day of the consecration of the Tabernacle the Shekinah returned to its former abode, the earth. The angels therefore lamented on this day, saying: "Now God will leave the celestial hosts and will dwell among mortals." God indeed quieted them with the words, "As truly as ye live, My true dwelling will remain on high," but He was not quite in earnest when He said so, for truly the earth is His chief abode. Only after the Tabernacle on earth had been erected did God command the angels to build one like it in heaven, and it is this Tabernacle in which Me'aron offers the souls of the pious before

God as an expiation for Israel, at the time of the exile when His earthly sanctuary is destroyed.

This day marks an important change in the intercourse between God and Moses. Before this, the voice of God would strike Moses' ear as if conducted through a tube, and on such an occasion the outer world recognized only through Moses' reddened face that he was receiving a revelation; now, at the consecration of the sanctuary, this was changed. For when, on this day, he entered the sanctuary, a sweet, pleasant and lovely voice rang out toward him, whereupon he said: "I will hear what God the Lord will speak." Then he heard the words: "Formerly there reigned enmity between Me and My children, formerly there reigned anger between Me and My children, formerly there reigned hatred between Me and My children; but now love reigns between Me and My children, friendship reigns between Me and My children, peace reigns between Me and My children."

It was evident that peace reigned, for on this day the undisturbed freedom of movement over the world, which had until then been accorded the demons, was taken from them. Until then these were so frequently met with, that Moses regularly recited a special prayer whenever going to Mount Sinai, entreating God to protect him from the demons. But as soon as the Tabernacle had been erected, they vanished. Not entirely, it is true, for even now these pernicious creatures may kill a person, especially within the period from the seventeenth day of Tammuz to the ninth day of Ab, when the demons exercise their power. The most dangerous one among them is Keteb, the sight of whom kills men as well as animals. He rolls like a ball and has the head of a calf with a single horn on his forehead.

Just as God destroyed the power of these demons through the Tabernacle, so too, through the priestly blessing that He bestowed upon His people before the consecration of the sanctuary,



did He break the spell of the evil eye, which might otherwise have harmed them now as it had done at the revelation on Sinai. The great ceremonies on that occasion had turned the eyes of all the world upon Israel, and the evil eye of the nations brought about the circumstance of the breaking of the two tables. As God blessed His people on this occasion, so too did Moses, who upon the completion of the Tabernacle blessed Israel with the words: "The Eternal God of your fathers make you a thousand times so many more as ye are, and bless you, as He hath promised you!" The people made answer to this blessing, saying: "Let the beauty of the Lord our God be upon us: and establish Thou the work of our hands upon us; yea the work of our hands establish Thou it."<sup>381</sup>

376. Seder 'Olam 7; Sifra 9.1; BR 3.9; Shabbat 86b; PR 7, 27b; BaR 13.6; Tadshe 10. Comp. also Sifre Num., 44, and Shekalim 1. 2a (beginning).

377. Tan. B. III, 24; Tan. Shemini 10; WR. 11.6; Compare footnote 372; text on p. 509 and text on p. 650.

378. Sifra 9.1

379. Tan. B. III, 24; Tan. Shemini 3. Compare with pp. 453–454.

380. Sifra 9.2–24. Concerning the atonement for the selling of Joseph, see ShR 30.7 and text on p. 359. On the admonition of Moses to drive away the evil inclination, see Philo, *Moses*, 2(3).17, according to whom one of the sacrifices offered up on this occasion was intended to convey to the Israelites the thought that even the virtuous are not free from sin. On the fire of the altar, see 2 Maccabees 2.10; text on pp. 643, 692–693; text on p. 1119. Besides the fire of the altar, it was the smoke by which God's grace was indicated; see Tan. Tezawweh 15; Midrash Shir 28b; PK 27, 171b (by the smoke of the fire of the altar on the Day of Atonement one could judge whether the new year would be prosperous or not); PR 47, 190b; Tan. B. III, 60; WR 20.4; Yoma 21b; Baba Batra 147a. On the likeness of the fire of the altar to a lion, see Yoma, *loc. cit.*, and Zohar III, 32b–33a.

381. PR 5, 15a–16a, 18b, 20b–22b; Tan. B. IV, 37–40; Tan. Naso 16–19, 23, and 25, as well as Pekude 11; BaR 12.4, 7. 12. Concerning the Shekinah's withdrawal to heaven, see text on p. 473; Tehillim 8, 76–77. In the old

sources the view prevails that the terrestrial sanctuary corresponds to the celestial one (comp. *e. g.*, Mekilta Shirah 10, 43b; BaR 45.7; Index, s. v. "Sanctuary Celestial"), whereas the later Haggadah reverses the relation between these two sanctuaries, maintaining that after the destruction of the terrestrial sanctuary the celestial one was erected to serve as a place of atonement for Israel; see BHM V, 63, where Michael, not Metatron, is the celestial high priest, in agreement with Hagigah 12b and Seder Rabba de-Bereshit 24. An attempt to harmonize these two conflicting views is given in the text, in accordance with the sources cited at the beginning of this note, maintaining that the two sanctuaries were established simultaneously. See also *Hadar*, Lev. 9.2, which reads: Michael was appointed high priest—of the celestial sanctuary—at the same time as Aaron. R. Bahya, Exod. 40.17, cites Hagigah, *loc. cit.*, as source for the harmonizing legend; but this is probably a slip of the pen, or his text of the Talmud contained this later addition. The Karaite writer Kirkisani, in his treatise on Jewish sects (still in manuscript), quotes a lengthy passage from the Talmud on Metatron's priestly functions and activities as teacher. Compare with p. 299; text on p. 638; Zohar II, 241a, and III, 3b.—Concerning Moses' fiery (red) face, see PK 27 (end); on the change of the intercourse between God and man after the establishment of the tabernacle, see Shir 2.3 and parallel passages. Concerning demons, comp. Tehillim 17, 130–131, and 55, 292; Ekah 1.63; Baba Kamma 21a. As to the blessings of Moses on this occasion, see Sifra 9.18; Tosefta Menahot 7.8; Seder 'Olam 6; *Likkutim* II, 1b–2a; quotation from later (unknown) Midrashim by Shu'aib, Pekude (end); compare also pp. 586 (bottom) and 820.

## THE INTERRUPTED JOY

The happiest of women on this day was Elisheba, daughter of Amminadab, for beside the general rejoicing at the dedication of the sanctuary, five particular joys fell to her lot: her husband, Aaron, was high priest; her brother-in-law, Moses, king; her son, Eleazar, head of the priests; her grandson, Phinehas, priest of war; and her brother, Nahshon, prince of his tribe. But how soon was her joy turned to grief! Her two sons, Nadab and Abihu, carried away by the universal rejoicing at the heavenly fire,



approached the sanctuary with the censers in their hands, to increase God's love for Israel through this act of sacrifice, but paid with their lives for this offering. From the Holy of Holies issued two flames of fire, as thin as threads, then parted into four, and two each pierced the nostrils of Nadab and Abihu, whose souls were burnt, although no external injury was visible.<sup>382</sup>

The death of these priests was not, however, unmerited, for in spite of their piety they had committed many a sin. Even at Sinai they had not conducted themselves properly, for instead of following the example of Moses, who had turned his face away from the Divine vision in the burning bush, they basked in the Divine vision on Mount Sinai. Their fate had even then been decreed, but God did not want to darken the joy of the Torah by their death, hence He waited for the dedication of the Tabernacle. On this occasion God acted like the king who, discovering on the day of his daughter's wedding that the best-man was guilty of a deadly sin, said: "If I cause the best-man to be executed on the spot, I shall cast a shadow on my daughter's joy. I will rather have him executed on my day of gladness than on hers." God indicted the penalty upon Nadab and Abihu "in the day of the gladness of His heart," and not on the day on which the Torah espoused Israel.

Among the sins for which they had to atone was their great pride, which was expressed in several ways. They did not marry, because they considered no woman good enough for them, saying: "Our father's brother is king, our father is high priest, our mother's brother is prince of his tribe, and we are heads of the priests. What woman is worthy of us!" And many a woman remained unwed, waiting for these youths to woo her. In their pride they even went so far in sinful thoughts as to wish for the time when Moses and Aaron should die and they would have the guidance of the people in their hands. But God

said: " 'Boast not thyself of to-morrow;' many a colt has died and his hide has been used as a cover for his mother's back." Even in the performance of the act that brought death upon them, did they show their pride, for they asked permission of neither Moses nor Aaron whether they might take part in the sacrificial service. What is more, Nadab and Abihu did not even consult with each other before starting out on this fatal deed, they performed it independently of each other. Had they previously taken counsel together, or had they asked their father or their uncle, very likely they would never have offered the disastrous sacrifice. For they were neither in a proper condition for making an offering, nor was their offering appropriate. They partook of wine before entering the sanctuary, which is forbidden to priests; they did not wear the prescribed priestly robes, and, furthermore, they had not sanctified themselves with water out of the laver for washing. They made their offering, moreover, in the Holy of Holies, to which admittance had been prohibited, and used "strange fire," and the offering was all in all out of place because they had had no command from God to offer up incense at that time. Apart from this list of sins, however, they were very pious men, and their death grieved God more than their father Aaron, not alone because it grieves God to see a pious father lose his sons, but because they actually were worthy and pious youths.<sup>383</sup>

When Aaron heard of the death of his sons, he said: "All Israel saw Thee at the Red Sea as well as at Sinai without suffering injury thereafter; but my sons, whom Thou didst order to dwell in the Tabernacle, a place that a layman may not enter without being punished by death—my sons entered the Tabernacle to behold Thy strength and Thy might, and they died!" God hereupon said to Moses: "Tell Aaron the following: 'I have shown thee great favor and have granted thee great honor through this, that thy



sons have been burnt. I assigned to thee and thy sons a place nearer to the sanctuary, before all others, even before thy brother Moses. But I have also decreed that whosoever enters the Tabernacle without having been commanded, he shall be stricken with leprosy. Wouldst thou have wished thy sons, to whom the innermost places had been assigned, to sit as lepers outside the encampment as a penalty for having entered the Holy of Holies?" When Moses imparted these words to his brother, Aaron said: "I thank Thee, O God, for that which Thou hast done for me, for the kindness Thou hast shown me in causing my sons to die rather than having them waste their lives as lepers. It behooves me to thank Thee and praise Thee, 'because Thy lovingkindness is better than life, my lips shall praise Thee.'"<sup>384</sup>

Moses endeavored to comfort his brother in still another way, saying: "Thy sons died to glorify the name of the Lord, blessed be His name, for on Sinai God said to me: 'And there will I meet with the children of Israel, the Tabernacle shall be sanctified by those that glorify Me.' I knew that this sanctuary of God was to be sanctified by the death of those that stood near it, but I thought either thou or I was destined for this, but now I perceive that thy sons were nearer to God than we." These last words sufficed to induce Aaron to control his grief over the loss of his sons, and like the true wise man he silently bore the heavy blow of fate without murmur or lament. God rewarded him for his silence by addressing him directly, and imparting an important priestly law to him.

Aaron could not take part in the burial of Nadab and Abihu, for a high priest is not permitted to take part in a funeral procession, even if the deceased be a near kinsman. Eleazar and Ithamar, also, the surviving sons of Aaron, were not permitted to mourn or attend the funeral on the day of their dedication as priests, so that

Aaron's cousins, the Levites Mishael and Elzaphan, the next of kin after these had to attend to the funeral. These two Levites were the sons of a very worthy father, who was not only by descent a near kinsman of Aaron, but who was also closely akin to Aaron in character. As Aaron pursued peace, so too did his uncle Uzziel, father to Mishael and Elzaphan. Being Levites they might not enter the place where the heavenly fire had met their cousins, hence an angel had thrust Nadab and Abihu out of the priestly room, and they did not die until they were outside it, so that Mishael and Elzaphan might approach them.<sup>385</sup>

Whereas the whole house of Israel was bidden to bewail the death of Nadab and Abihu, for "the death of a pious man is a greater misfortune to Israel than the Temple's burning to ashes,"<sup>386</sup>—Aaron and his sons, on the other hand, were permitted to take no share in the mourning, and Moses bade them eat of the parts of the offering due them, as if nothing had happened. Now when Moses saw that Aaron had burnt to ashes one of the three sin offerings that were offered on that day, without himself or his sons having partaken of it, his wrath was kindled against his brother, but in consideration of Aaron's age and his office Moses addressed his violent words not to Aaron himself, but to his sons. He reproached them with having offended against God's commandment in burning one sin offering and eating of the other two. He asked them, besides, if they were not wise enough to profit by the example of their deceased brothers, who paid for their arbitrary actions with their lives, particularly since they also had been doomed to death, and owed their lives only to his prayer, which had power to preserve for their father half the number of sons. Moses' reproof, however, was unjustified, for Aaron and his sons had done what the statutes required, but Moses had on this occasion, as on two others, owing to



his wrath, forgotten the laws which he himself had taught Israel. Hence Aaron opposed him decidedly and pointed out his error to him. Moses, far from taking Aaron's reprimand amiss, caused a herald to make an announcement throughout the camp: "I have falsely interpreted the law, and Aaron, my brother, has corrected me. Eleazar and Ithamar also knew the law, but were silent out of consideration for me." As a reward for their considerateness, God thereupon revealed important laws to Moses with a special injunction to tell them to Aaron as well as to Eleazar and Ithamar.<sup>387</sup>

---

382. Seder 'Olam 7; Zebahim 102a; PK 27, 170a; Tehillim 75, 338; WR 20.2; Mishle 31, 112; Koheleth 2.2; Tan. B. III, 50–57; Tan. Ahare 1; Shir 3.6; Sifra 10.1–2; Sifre N., 44; Sanhedrin 52a; Tan. B. I, 50 (which asserts that their bodies were burned, but not their garments); Tan. Noah 15 and Shemini 12; Targum Yerushalmi Lev. 10.2. The tannaitic Midrashim just quoted cite an opinion, according to which the angels pushed the two sons of Aaron out of the holy place before they were burned. On Moses' kingship see note 170. On the position of Phineas as "priest of war", see text on p. 783.

383. Tan. B. III, 61–64 and 67–68; Tan. Ahare 6; WR 29. 4–12; BaR 2.23; PK 27, 172a–174b; Tehillim 78, 356; Shebi'it 6, 36c; 'Erubin 63a; Sifra 9.2; Sanhedrin 52a; Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s. v.; תנ"ך (2), and No. 46 = BHM VI, 86. Concerning the improper conduct of Aaron's sons in looking at the divine vision on Sinai, see text on p. 695 and note 187. Philo, *De Profugis*, is of the opinion that Nadab and Abihu, in their "love and affection for God, were willing to die in body, that they might live before the Lord." A similar view is found in Sifra 10.1; comp. note 599.

384. PR 47, 189b. Moses, who was only a Levite and not a priest was not permitted to enter the place of the tabernacle which was assigned to the priest; comp., however, note 372. As to the punishment of leprosy, see text on p. 675, and footnote 30 on p. 1040, as well as text on p. 286.

385. Sifra 10.2–7 (this section does not belong to Sifra proper, but to a tannaitic Midrash of the school of R. Ishmael); Zebahim 115a (on the text see Al-Barceloni, 128 and *Shittah Mekubbezet*, *ad loc.*); Targum Yerushalmi Lev. 10.4–5. Concerning the conception that God is glorified by the death of the pious, see John 12.28. On Aaron, the

lover of peace, see text on p. 743; on the direct revelation received by him, see notes 387, 405. Opinions differ as to whether the bodies of Nadab and Abihu were injured by the heavenly fire, which brought about their death, or not; but all agree that their garments remained intact; Sifra 10.2; Sanhedrin 52a; Tan. B. I, 50; Tan. Noah 15. Comp. note 382.

386. Sifre D., 31; Rosh ha-Shanah 18b; Zohar III, 56b and 57b; on the atoning effect of the death of the pious, see further Yerushalmi Yoma 1, 38b; Tan. B. III, 64 and 66, and parallel passages cited by Buber.

387. Sifra 10.16, 19–20; WR 13.1; ARN 26 (second version 60), 111 (see Schechter, note 29); Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 139, and 1 Sam. 27; Zebahim 101a–101b; Hashkem 7a–7b; Wehizhir II, 171; comp. notes 110, 406, 599, 862.

## THE GIFTS OF THE PRINCES

When Moses called on the people to make their offerings for the erection of the sanctuary, it sorely vexed the princes of the tribes that he had not summoned them particularly. Hence they withheld their contributions, waiting for the people to give according to their powers, so that they might step in and make up the deficiency, and all should observe that without them the Tabernacle could not have been completed. But they were mistaken, for in their ready devotion the people provided all needful things for the sanctuary, and when the princes of the tribes perceived their mistake and brought their contributions, it was too late. All that they could do was to provide the jewels for the robes of the high priest, but they could no longer take a hand in the erection of the Tabernacle. On the day of the dedication they tried to make partial amends for letting slip their opportunity, by following the advice of the tribe of Issachar, renowned for wisdom and erudition, to bring wagons for the transportation of the Tabernacle. These princes of the tribes were no upstarts or men newly risen to honor, they were men who



even in Egypt had been in office and exposed to the anger of the Egyptians; they had also stood at Moses' side when he undertook the census of the people. They now brought as an offering to Moses six covered wagons, fully equipped, and even painted blue, the color of the sky, and also twelve oxen to draw the wagons. The number of wagons as well as of oxen had been set with a purpose. The six wagons corresponded to the six days of creation; to the six Mothers, Sarah, Rebekah, Rachel, Leah, Bilhah, and Zilpah; to the six laws that the Torah prescribes exclusively for the king; to the six orders of the Mishnah, and to the six heavens. The number of the oxen corresponded to the twelve constellations, and to the twelve tribes. Moses did not at first want to accept the teams, but God not only bade him accept them, He also ordered him to address the princes kindly, and to thank them for their gifts. Moses now even thought the Shekinah had deserted him and would rest on the princes of the tribes, assuming that they had received direct communication from God to make this offering to the sanctuary. But God said to Moses: "If it had been a direct command from Me, then I should have ordered thee to tell them, but they did this on their own initiative, which indeed meets with My wish." Moses now accepted the gifts, not without misgivings, fearing lest a wagon should break, or an ox die, leaving this tribe or that unrepresented by a gift. But God assured him that no accident should occur to either wagon or ox,—yes, a great miracle came to pass in regard to these wagons and oxen, for the animals live forever without ailing or growing old, and the wagons likewise endure to all eternity.

Moses then distributed the wagons among the Levites so that the division of the sons of Gershon received two wagons, and the sons of Merari four, because the latter were entrusted with the transportation of the heavy portions of the Tabernacle, boards, bars, and similar things,

whereas the former, having the lighter portions, had enough with two wagons. The third division of the Levites, the sons of Kohath, received no wagons, for they were entrusted with the transportation of the Holy Ark, which might not be lifted upon a wagon, but was to be borne upon their shoulders. David, who forgot to observe this law and had the Ark lifted upon a wagon, paid heavily for his negligence, for the priests who tried to carry the Ark to the wagon were flung down upon the ground. Ahithophel then called David's attention to the need of following the example of Kohath's sons, who bore the Ark on their shoulders through the desert, and David ordered them to do the same.

But the princes of the tribes were not content with having provided the means for transporting the sanctuary, they wanted to be the first, on the day of the dedication, to present offerings. As with the wagons, Moses was doubtful whether or not to permit them to bring their offerings, for these were of an unusual kind that were not ordinarily permissible. But God bade him accept the dedication offerings of the princes, though Moses was still in doubt whether to let all the twelve princes make their offerings on the same day, or to set a special day for each, and if so, in what order they should make their offerings. God thereupon revealed to him that each one of the princes of the tribes was to sacrifice on a special day, and that Nahshon, the prince of Judah, was to make the start. He was rewarded in this way for the devotion he had shown God during the passage through the Red Sea. When Israel, beset by the Egyptians, reached the sea, the tribes among themselves started quarreling who should first go into the sea. Then suddenly Nahshon, the prince of Judah, plunged into the sea, firmly trusting that God would stand by Israel in their need.<sup>388</sup>

Nahshon's offering was one silver charger that had been fashioned for the sanctuary, the



weight whereof was an hundred and thirty shekels; one bowl of equal size, but of lighter weight, of seventy shekels; both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering. Furthermore, one spoon of ten shekels of gold, full of incense; one young bullock, the picked of his herd; one excellent ram, and one lamb a year old, these three for a burnt offering; and a kid of the goats for a sin offering, to atone for a possible uncleanness in the sanctuary. These sacrifices and gifts Nahshon offered out of his own possessions, not out of those of his tribe. God's acceptance of the offerings of the princes of the tribes shows how dear they were to God; for at no other time was an individual allowed to offer up incense, as Nahshon and his fellows did. They also brought sin offerings, which is ordinarily not permitted unless one is conscious of having committed a sin. Finally the prince of the tribe of Ephraim brought his offering on the seventh day of the dedication, which was on a Sabbath, though ordinarily none but the daily sacrifices may be offered on the Sabbath.<sup>389</sup>

The offerings of all the princes of the tribes were identical, but they had a different significance for each tribe. From the time of Jacob, who foretold it to them, every tribe knew his future history to the time of the Messiah, hence at the dedication every prince brought such offerings as symbolized the history of his tribe.

Nahshon, the prince of Judah, brought a silver charger and a silver bowl, the one to stand for the sea, the other for the mainland, indicating that out of his tribe would spring such men as Solomon and the Messiah, who would rule over all the world, both land and sea. The golden spoon of ten shekels signified the ten generations from Perez, son of Judah, to David, first of Judean kings, all whose actions were sweet as the incense contained in the spoon. The three burnt offerings, the bullock, the ram, and the lamb, corresponded to the three Patriarchs, Abraham,

Isaac, and Jacob, whereas the kid of the goats was to atone for the sin of Judah, who sought to deceive his father with the blood of a kid. The two oxen of the peace offering pointed to David and Solomon, and the three small cattle of the peace offering, the rams, the goats, and the lambs, corresponded to the descendants and successors of these two Judean kings, who may also be classified in three groups, the very pious, the very wicked, and those who were neither pious nor wicked.

On the second day of the dedication appeared the prince of the tribe of Reuben and wanted to present his offering, saying: " 'Tis enough that Judah was permitted to offer sacrifice before me, surely it is now time for our tribe to present our offerings." But Moses informed him that God had ordained that the tribes should present offerings in the order in which they moved through the desert, so that the tribe Issachar followed Judah. This tribe had altogether good claims to be among the first to offer sacrifices, for, in the first place, this tribe devoted itself completely to the study of the Torah, so that the great scholars in Israel were among them; and then, too, it was this tribe that had proposed to the others the bringing of the dedication offerings. As this was the tribe of erudition, its gifts symbolized things appertaining to the Torah. The silver charger and the silver bowl corresponded to the written and to the oral Torah; and both vessels alike are filled with fine flour, for the two laws are not antagonistic, but form a unity and contain the loftiest teachings. The fine flour was mingled with oil, just as knowledge of the Torah should be added to good deeds; for he who occupies himself with the Torah, who works good deeds, and keeps himself aloof from sin, fills his Creator with delight. The golden spoon of ten shekels symbolizes the two tables on which God with His palm wrote the Ten Commandments, and which con-



tained between the commandments all the particulars of the Torah, just as the spoon was filled with incense. The three burnt offerings, the bullock, the ram, and the lamb corresponded to the three groups of priests, Levites, and Israelites, whereas the kid of the goats alluded to the proselytes, for the Torah was revealed not only for Israel but for all the world; and “a proselyte who studies the Torah is no less than a high priest.” The two oxen of the peace offering corresponded to the oral and the written Torah, the study of which brings peace on earth and peace in heaven.<sup>390</sup>

After Nahshon, the temporal king, and Nathanel the spiritual king, came the turn of Eliab, the prince of the tribe of Zebulun. This tribe owed its distinction to the circumstance that it followed commerce and through the profits thereof was enabled to maintain the tribe of Issachar, which, entirely devoted to study, could not support itself. The charger and bowl that he presented to the sanctuary symbolize the food and drink with which Zebulun provided the scholar-tribe Issachar. The spoon indicated the border of the sea, which Jacob in his blessing had bestowed on Zebulun as his possession, and the ten shekels of its weight corresponded to the ten words of which this blessing consisted. The two oxen point to the two blessings which Moses bestowed upon Zebulun, as the three small cattle, the ram, the goat, and the lamb, correspond to the three things which gave Zebulun’s possessions distinction before all others, the tunny, the purple snail, and white glass.<sup>391</sup>

After the tribes that belonged to Judah’s camp division had brought their offerings, followed Reuben and the tribes belonging to his division. The gifts of the tribe of Reuben symbolized the events in the life of their forefather Reuben. The silver charger recalled Reuben’s words when he saved Joseph’s life, whom the other brothers wanted to kill, for “the tongue of

the just is as choice silver.” The silver bowl, from which was sprinkled the sacrificial blood, recalled the same incident, for it was Reuben who advised his brothers to throw Joseph into the pit rather than to kill him. The spoon of ten shekels of gold symbolizes the deed of Reuben, who restrained Jacob’s sons from bloodshed, hence the gold out of which the spoon was fashioned had a blood-red color. The spoon was filled with incense, and so too did Reuben fill his days with fasting and prayer until God forgave his sin with Bilhah, and “his prayer was set forth before God as incense.” As penance for this crime, Reuben offered the kid of the goats as a sin offering, whereas the two oxen of the peace offering corresponded to the two great deeds of Reuben, the deliverance of Joseph, and the long penance for his sin.<sup>392</sup>

Just as Reuben interceded to save his brother Joseph’s life so did Simeon rise up for his sister Dinah when he took vengeance upon the inhabitants of Shechem for the wrong they had done her. Hence the prince of the tribe of Simeon followed the prince of the tribe of Reuben. As the sanctuary was destined to punish unchastity among Israel, so were the gifts of the tribe whose sire figured as the avenger of unchastity symbolic of the different parts of the Tabernacle. The charger corresponded to the court that surrounded the Tabernacle, and therefore weighed one hundred and thirty shekels, to correspond to the size of the court that measured one hundred cubits, of which the Tabernacle occupied thirty. The bowl of seventy shekels corresponded to the empty space of the Tabernacle. These two, the charger and the bowl, were filled with fine flour mingled with oil, because in the court of the Tabernacle were offered up meat offerings, mingled with oil, whereas in the Tabernacle was the shewbread of fine flour, and the candlestick filled with oil. The spoon of ten shekels of gold corresponded to the scroll of the



Torah and the tables with the Ten Commandments that rested in the Ark. The sacrificial animals, the bullock, the ram, the lamb, and the kid corresponded to the four different kinds of curtains and hangings that were used in the sanctuary, and that were fashioned out of the hides of these animals. The two oxen of the peace offering pointed to the two curtains, the one in front of the Tabernacle, the other in front of the court, whereas the three kinds of small cattle that were used as offerings corresponded to the three curtains of the court, one to the north, one to the south, one to the west of it; and as each of these was five cubits long, so were five of each kind presented as offerings.<sup>393</sup>

As Simeon, sword in hand, battled for his sister, so, by force of arms, did the tribe Gad set out to gain the land beyond the Jordan for their brethren. Therefore did their prince follow Shelumiel, prince of Simeon, with his offerings. This tribe, so active in gaining the promised land, symbolized in its gifts the exodus from Egypt, which alone made possible the march to Palestine. The charger of the weight of a hundred and thirty shekels alluded to Jochebed, who at the age of one hundred and thirty years bore Moses, who had a symbolical connection with the bowl, for he was thrown into the Nile. This bowl weighed seventy shekels, as Moses extended his prophetic spirit over the seventy elders; and as the bowl was filled with fine flour, so did Moses' prophetic spirit in no way diminish because the seventy elders shared in prophecy. The three burnt offerings recalled the three virtues Israel possessed in Egypt, which were instrumental in their deliverance—they did not alter their Hebrew names, they did not alter their Hebrew language, and they lived a life of chastity. The sin offerings were to atone for the idolatry to which they were addicted in Egypt, so that God did not permit their deliverance until they had renounced idolatry. The two oxen of the peace

offering corresponded to Jacob and Joseph, for whose sake God had delivered Israel out of Egypt. They brought, besides, fifteen heads of small cattle as a sacrifice, because God was mindful of His vow to the three Patriarchs and the twelve fathers of the tribes, and released Israel out of bondage.<sup>394</sup>

A special distinction was granted to the tribe of Ephraim, for God allowed their prince to make his offering on the Sabbath, a day on which otherwise none but the daily offerings were allowed to be offered. This distinction the tribe of Ephraim owed to its ancestor Joseph in recognition of his strict observance of the Sabbath as governor of Egypt. The gifts of this tribe represent the history of Jacob and of Joseph, for the descendants of the latter owed much to Jacob's love for his son Joseph. The charger alluded to Jacob, the bowl to Joseph, and as both these vessels were filled with fine flour mingled with oil, so too were both Jacob and Joseph very pious men, and the course of their lives ran evenly. The spoon symbolized Jacob's right hand, which he laid on the head of Ephraim to bless him; the spoon was filled with incense; Jacob laid his right hand upon Ephraim and not upon his elder brother Manasseh because he knew that the former was worthy of the distinction. The three burnt offerings corresponded to the three Patriarchs, whereas the kid of the goats stood for Joseph, whose coat had been smeared with a kid's blood. The two oxen of the peace offering indicated the two blessings that the sons of Joseph had received from their grandfather, Jacob, and the three kinds of small cattle that were offered as peace offerings corresponded to the three generations of Ephraim that Joseph was permitted to see before his death.<sup>395</sup>

Joseph not only observed the Sabbath, he was also chaste, not to be tempted by Potiphar's wife, and he was faithful in the service of his master. God therefore said to Joseph: "Thou hast



kept the seventh commandment, 'Thou shalt not commit adultery,' and hast not committed adultery with Potiphar's wife; and thou hast also kept the following commandment, the eighth, 'Thou shalt not steal,' for thou didst steal neither Potiphar's money nor his conjugal happiness, hence there will come a time when I shall give thee the reward due thee. When, hereafter, the princes of the tribes will offer their offerings at the dedication of the altar, the two princes among thy descendants shall one after the other offer their offerings, the one on the seventh, the other on the eighth day of the dedication, as a reward because thou didst observe the seventh and the eighth commandments." The prince of the tribe of Manasseh now followed that of Ephraim, trying like the preceding, symbolically to represent Jacob's and Joseph's lives. The charger, one hundred and thirty shekels in weight, indicated that Jacob at the age of one hundred and thirty years migrated to Egypt for the sake of Joseph. The bowl of seventy shekels corresponded to Joseph who caused seventy souls of the Hebrews to migrate to Egypt. The spoon of ten shekels of gold indicated the ten portions of land that fell to Manasseh. The three burnt offerings corresponded to the three generations of Manasseh that Joseph was permitted to see before his death, whereas the kid of the goats recalled Jair, son of Manasseh, who died childless. The two oxen of the peace offering indicated that the possessions of the tribe of Manasseh were to be divided into two parts, one on this side the Jordan, and one beyond it. The three kinds of small cattle for peace offerings corresponded to the triple attempt of Joseph to influence his father in favor of Manasseh, whereas the five heads of each indicated the five daughters of Zelophehad, the only women who, like men, received their shares in the distribution of the promised land.<sup>396</sup>

As the sanctuary stood first in Shiloh, Joseph's possession, then in Jerusalem, Benjamin's

possession, so did this tribe with its sacrifices follow Joseph's tribes. The charger signified Rachel, the mother of Benjamin, who bore him to Jacob when he was a hundred years old, and in memory of this, as well as of Benjamin's attainment of thirty years when he came to Egypt, the weight of the charger amounted to one hundred and thirty shekels. The bowl indicated the cup Joseph employed to discover his brothers' sentiments toward Benjamin, and both vessels, charger and cup, were filled with fine flour, for both Joseph's and Benjamin's lands were found worthy of being sites for God's sanctuary. The spoon of ten shekels of gold full of incense corresponded to the ten sons of Benjamin, all of whom were pious men. The three burnt offerings corresponded to the three temples erected in Jerusalem, Benjamin's property, the Temple of Solomon, the Temple of the exiles returned from Babylon, and the Temple to be erected by the Messiah. The sin offering, the kid of the goats, points to the building of the Temple by the wicked king Herod, who atoned for his execution of the learned men by the erection of the sanctuary. The two oxen of the peace offering corresponded to the two deliverers of the Jews that sprang from the tribe of Benjamin, Mordecai and Esther. The five heads each of the three kinds of small cattle for a peace offering symbolized the triple distinction of Benjamin and his tribe by five gifts. The gift of honor that Joseph gave his brother Benjamin five times exceeded that of all his other brothers; when Joseph made himself known to his brothers, he gave Benjamin five changes of raiment, and so too did the Benjamite Mordecai receive from Ahasuerus five garments of state.<sup>397</sup>

In his blessing Jacob likened Dan to Judah, hence the tribe of Dan stood at the head of the fourth camp of Israel, and their prince offered his gifts before those of Asher and Naphtali. Jacob in his blessing to Dan thought principally



of the great hero, Samson, hence the gifts of this tribe allude chiefly to the history of this Danite judge. Samson was a Nazirite; and to this alluded the silver charger for storing bread, for it is the duty of a Nazirite, at the expiration of the period of his vow, to present bread as an offering. To Samson, too, alluded the bowl, in Hebrew called Mizrak, "creeping," for he was lame of both feet, and hence could only creep and crawl. The spoon of ten shekels of gold recalled the ten laws that are imposed upon Nazirites, and that Samson had to obey. The three burnt offerings had a similar significance, for Samson's mother received three injunctions from the angel, who said to her husband, Manoah: "She may not eat of anything that cometh of the vine, neither let her drink wine or strong drink, nor eat any unclean thing." The sin offering, which consisted of a kid, called in Hebrew Sa'ir, corresponded to the admonition given to Samson's mother, not to shave his hair, in Hebrew Se'ar. The two oxen corresponded to the two pillars of which Samson took hold to demolish the house of the Philistines; whereas the three kinds of small cattle that were presented as offerings symbolized the three battles that Samson undertook against the Philistines.<sup>398</sup>

The judge must pronounce judgment before it be executed, hence, too, the tribe of Asher, "the executors of justice," followed Dan, the judges. The name Asher also signifies "good fortune," referring to the good fortune of Israel that was chosen to be God's people, and in accordance with this name also do the gifts of the prince of the tribe of Asher allude to the distinction of Israel. The charger, one hundred and thirty shekels of silver in weight, corresponds to the nations of the world, whom, however, God repudiated, choosing Israel in their stead. The bowl of seventy shekels corresponds to the seventy pious souls of whom Israel consisted when they moved to Egypt. Both vessels were filled

with fine flour. God sent His prophets to the other nations as well as to Israel, but Israel alone declared itself willing to accept the Torah. This nation accepted "the spoon of ten shekels of gold filled with incense," every man among them being willing to accept the Ten Commandments and the Torah. The three burnt offerings corresponded to the three crowns that Israel received from their God, the crown of the Torah, the crown of the Priesthood, and the crown of the Kingdom, for which reason also golden crowns were fashioned on the Ark in which the Torah was kept, on the altar on which the priests offered sacrifices, and on the table that symbolized the kingdom. But the highest of all is the crown of a good name, which a man earns through good deeds, for the crucial test is not the study of the Torah, but the life conforming to it. For this reason also there was a sin offering among the offerings, corresponding to the crown of good deeds, for these alone can serve men as an expiation. The two oxen indicate the two Torah that God gave His people, the written and the oral, whereas the fifteen peace offerings of small cattle correspond to the three Patriarchs and the twelve fathers of the tribes, for these fifteen God had chosen.<sup>399</sup>

As Jacob blessed first Asher and then Naphtali, so too did these two tribes succeed each other in the offerings at the dedication of the Tabernacle. Naphtali, Jacob's son, was a very affectionate son, who was ever ready to execute his father's every command. The prince of the tribe of Naphtali followed his ancestor's example, and by his gifts to the sanctuary sought to recall the three Patriarchs and their wives. "One silver charger, the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty shekels," symbolized Sarah, who was unique among her sex in her piety, and who almost attained the age of a hundred and thirty years. A silver bowl for sprinkling blood recalled Abraham, who was thrown far away from his



home. The weight of the bowl was seventy shekels, as Abraham also was seventy years old when God made with him the covenant between the pieces. The charger and the bowl were both filled with fine flour mingled with oil, as also Abraham and Sarah were imbued with a love for good and pious deeds. The spoon of ten shekels of gold alludes to Abraham as well, for Abraham conquered the evil inclination and resisted the ten temptations, whereas the three burnt offerings and the sin offering corresponded to the offerings made by Abraham at the covenant between the pieces. The two oxen for the peace offering indicate Isaac and Rebekah, whereas the three kinds of small cattle allude to Jacob, Leah, and Rachel, but the sum total of the offerings of these three species was fifteen, corresponding to these three and the twelve fathers of the tribes.<sup>400</sup>

Apart from the significance that the offerings of the tribal princes had for each individual tribe respectively, they also symbolized the history of the world from the time of Adam to the erection of the Tabernacle. The silver charger indicated Adam, who lived nine hundred and thirty years, and the numerical equivalent of the letters of Kaarat Kesef, "silver charger," amounts to the same. Corresponding to the weight of "an hundred and thirty shekels," Adam begat his son Seth, the actual father of the future generations, at the age of a hundred and thirty years. The silver bowl alludes to Noah, for, as it weighed seventy shekels, so too did seventy nations spring from Noah. Both these vessels were filled with fine flour, as Adam and Noah were both full of good deeds. The spoon "of ten shekels of gold" corresponds to the ten words of God by which the world was created, to the ten Sefirot, to the ten lists of generations in the Scriptures, to the ten essential constituent parts of the human body, to the ten miracles God wrought for Israel in Egypt, to the ten miracles Israel experienced by the Red Sea. The three burnt offerings were

meant to recall the three Patriarchs. The kid of the goats indicated Joseph; the two oxen corresponded to Moses and Aaron; the five rams to the five distinguished sons of Zerah: Zimri, Ethan, Heman, Calcol, and Data; whereas the five goats and the five lambs symbolized the five senses of mankind by means of which the existence of things is determined.

The sum total of the gifts of the twelve princes of the tribes had also a symbolical significance. The twelve chargers correspond to the twelve constellations; the twelve bowls to the twelve months; the twelve spoons to the twelve guides of men, which are: the heart, that bestows understanding and insight; the kidneys, that give counsels, good as well as evil; the mouth, that cuts all kinds of food; the tongue, that renders speech possible; the palate, that tastes the flavors of food; the windpipe, that renders possible breathing and the utterance of sounds; the esophagus, that swallows food and drink; the lungs, that absorb fluids; the liver, that promotes irritation; the spleen, that promotes laughter; the crop, that grinds all food; and the stomach, that affords pleasant sleep. "All the silver of the vessels that weighed two thousand and four hundred shekels" corresponded to the years that had passed from the creation of the world to the advent of Moses in the fortieth year of his life. All the gold of the spoons, the weight of which was an hundred and twenty shekels, corresponded to the years of Moses' life, for he died at the age of a hundred and twenty.<sup>401</sup>

The different species of animals offered as sacrifices corresponded to the different ranks of the leaders of Israel. The twelve bullocks to the kings, the twelve rams to the princes of the tribes, the twelve kids of the goats to the governors, and the twelve sheep to the government officials. The twenty-four oxen for a peace offering corresponded to the books of the Scriptures, and the divisions of the priests and were also



meant to serve as atonement for the twenty-four thousand men, who, owing to their worship of Peor, died of the plague. The sixty rams of the peace offering corresponded to the sixty myriads of Israel's fighting hosts; the sixty he-goats to the sixty empires; and the sixty he-lambs to the building of the second Temple that measured sixty cubits in height and sixty in width.<sup>402</sup>

The gifts of the twelve princes of the tribes were not only equal in number, but also in the size and width of the objects bestowed, every tribe making exactly the same offering to the sanctuary. None among them wished to outrival the others, but such harmony reigned among them and such unity of spirit that God valued the service of each as if he had brought not only his own gifts but also those of his companions. As a reward for this mutual regard and friendship, God granted them the distinction of permitting them to present their offerings even on the Sabbath day.<sup>403</sup>

---

388. BaR 12.16–21, which is based on older sources; see PK 1, 7a–10a; PR 7, 26b and 28a (in this passage it is explicitly stated that the story about Nahshon is derived from the similarity of the name נחשון to the word נחשול “billow”; hence this legend does not reflect the self-sacrificing character of the patriarchal house during the second century, as suggested by Oppenheim in *Ha-Hoker*, 1, 97–99); Sifre Z., 54–56; ARN 11, 45–46; Tehillim 101, 428–429; Shir 6.4; Sifre N., 45–47. Concerning the princes of the tribes, see text on pp. 650 (the “notables” referred to stand for the princes), 653–654, and 695; on Issachar, the wise and learned tribe, see Index, s. v. On the animals living forever, see pp. 514–517 and note 345. Concerning David's error see text on p. 786 and text on p. 923. On the courage and self-sacrificing character of the tribe of Judah at the crossing of the Red Sea, see text on pp. 555 and 679, as well as the sources cited in note 36, and BaR 13.4, 7. Comp. Tan. B. IV, 40, and Tan. Naso 27.

389. Sifre N., 47–51; Sifre Z., 56; BaR 13.2; Tan. Naso 20. Comp. also WR 8.3, and text on p. 668.

390. BaR 13.14–16. It is often stated in the Hagadah that Jacob foretold the history of the future to his sons; see, e. g., text on p. 407. On Solomon, the Cosmocrator, see text on p. 760, and text on p. 945. Concern-

ing Judah's sin, see footnote 62 on p. 340. For other explanations of the sin-offering, see Sifre N., 51; Lekah Num. 7.16. Comp. Sifre N., 52; Sifre Z., 56; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 7.19.

391. BaR 13.17; Sifre D., 354. Comp. Index, s. v. “Zebulun”.

392. BaR 13.18. On Reuben, the type of the repentant sinner, see footnote 60 on p. 339.

393. BaR 13.19. The faithless woman died immediately after she tasted the dust on the floor of the tabernacle (see Num. 5.6, *seq.*); hence the sanctuary is described as the “avenger of unchastity”.

394. BaR 13.20. On Jochebed's age at the time of her death, see note 817. Concerning the undiminished spirit of Moses, see text on p. 696. As to Israel's three virtues, see text on p. 499. On Israel's idolatry in Egypt, see text on p. 524. Concerning the merits of Jacob and Joseph, see text on p. 330; text on p. 551.

395. BaR 14.2 (end) and 5; Tan. B. IV, 42–44; compare with pp. 379 and 429, as well as text on p. 593. On the correspondence of the incidents in Joseph's life with those of Jacob, see text on p. 327.

396. BaR 14.6–7; Tan. B. IV, 42 and 45; Tan. Naso 28 and 30. Compare with p. 659.

397. BaR 14.8. On Herod's atonement, see Baba Batra 3b–4a.

398. BaR 14.9. On Samson, see footnote 115 on p. 878.

399. BaR 14.10 Besides the seventy nations, the descendants of Noah (compare footnote 72 on p. 157), there are sixty kingdoms, twelve Ishmaelitic and forty-eight Edomitic; hence there are altogether one hundred and thirty nations. As to the refusal of the Torah by the nations, see text on pp. 429 and 761. On the three, or rather four crowns, see Abet 4.13; ARN 41, 130 (second version 48, 130–131). The last-named passage reads: Moses acquired the first crown, Aaron the second, David the third, but the fourth may be acquired by everyone. See also Yoma 72b; Sifre N., 119; ShR 34.2; Shemuel 23, 112; Koheleth 7.1.

400. BaR 14.11. On Naphtali's swiftness, see footnote 217 on p. 291. Concerning Abraham's power over the evil inclination, see footnote 276 on p. 304. As to Abraham's age at the time of the “covenant between the pieces”, see vol. V, p. 230, note 115. The Hebrew word for “bowl” is מזרק, from the root זרק, the meaning of which is “to throw.”

401. BaR 14.12 and 18; Tadshe 10; Alphabet of R. Akiba 35 (לו); PRK Grunhut's edition, 89–90; comp. Excursus II, Naphtali. The vital parts of the human body are only slightly different from the “ten guides”, as may be seen from Koheleth 7.19. It is therefore safe to assume that BaR and Tadshe have blended together the two different views concerning the anatomical division of the human



body; but see text on p. 960. On the sons of Zerah comp. Seder 'Olam 21, and text on p. 489.

402. BaR 14.18; Tadshe 10.

403. Sifre Z., 57–58; Sifre N., 53–56; BaR 14.13.

Symbolic explanations of the gifts of the princes are given, besides BaR 13–14 and Tadshe 10, also in Targum Yerushalmi Num. 7.84–88 and Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 714.

## THE REVELATIONS IN THE TABERNACLE

“Honor pursues him who tries to escape it.” Moses in his humility felt that his mission as leader of the people ended with the erection of the Tabernacle, as Israel could now satisfy all their spiritual needs without his aid. But God said: “As truly as thou livest, I have for thee a far greater task than any thou hast yet accomplished, for thou shalt instruct My children about ‘clean and unclean,’ and shalt teach them how to offer up offerings to Me.” God hereupon called Moses to the Tabernacle, to reveal to him there the laws and teachings.<sup>404</sup> Moses in his humility did not dare to enter the Tabernacle, so that God had to summon him to enter. Moses, however, could not enter the sanctuary while a cloud was upon it, this being a sign “that the demons held sway,” but waited until the cloud had moved on. The voice that called Moses came from heaven in the form of a tube of fire and rested over the two Cherubim, whence Moses perceived its sound. This voice was as powerful as at the revelation at Sinai when the souls of all Israel escaped in terror, still it was audible to none but Moses. Not even the angels heard it, for the words of God were destined exclusively for Moses. Aaron, too, with the exception of three cases in which God revealed Himself to him, never received His commands except through the communications of Moses. God would call Moses twice caressingly by name, and

when he had answered, “Here am I,” God’s words were revealed to him, and every commandment as a special revelation. God always allowed a pause to take place between the different laws to be imparted, that Moses might have time rightly to grasp what was told him.<sup>405</sup>

On the first day of the dedication of the Tabernacle, not less than eight important sections of laws were communicated to Moses by God.<sup>406</sup> As a reward for his piety, Aaron and his descendants to all eternity received the laws of sanctity, which are a special distinction of the priests,<sup>407</sup> and these laws were revealed on this day. It was on this day, also, that Aaron and his sons received the gifts of the priests, for although even at the revelation on Sinai Israel had set them aside, still they were not given to Aaron and his sons until this day when the sanctuary was anointed.<sup>408</sup>

The second law revealed on this day was the separation of the Levites from among the children of Israel, that they might be dedicated to the sanctuary. “For God elevates no man to an office unless He has tried him and found him worthy of his calling.” He did not say, “and the Levites shall be Mine,” before He had tried this tribe, and found them worthy. In Egypt none but the tribe of Levi observed the Torah and clung to the token of the Abrahamic covenant, while the other tribes, abandoning both Torah and token of covenant, like the Egyptians, practiced idolatry. In the desert, also, it was this tribe alone that did not take part in the worship of the Golden Calf. Justly, therefore, did God’s choice fall upon this godly tribe, who on this day were consecrated as the servants of God and His sanctuary.<sup>409</sup>

The ceremonies connected with the consecration of the Levites had much in common with the regulations for the cleansing of lepers. Originally, the firstborn had been the servants of the sanctuary, but, owing to the worship of the Golden Calf, they lost this prerogative, and the Levites replaced them. It was for this reason



that the Levites were obliged to observe regulations similar to those for the cleansing of lepers, because they took the place of men who by their sins had defiled themselves. The offerings that the Levites brought on this occasion consisted of two bullocks, one for a burnt offering and one for a sin offering; for the law prescribes that a bullock be offered as a burnt offering whenever the congregation, seduced by others, commits idolatry; and Israel would not have worshipped the Golden Calf had not the mixed multitude misled them. "But whosoever worships an idol, by this act renounces the whole Torah," hence did the Levites have to offer up another bullock for a sin offering, in accordance with the law that "if the whole congregation of Israel have done somewhat against any of the commandments of the Lord concerning things which should not be done, and are guilty, then they shall offer up a young bullock for the sin." As the Levites had been chosen "to do the service of the children of Israel in the Tabernacle of the congregation, and to make an atonement for the children of Israel," God ordered all the congregation of Israel to be present at the consecration of the Levites, for whosoever had a sin offering offered up for himself must in person bring it to the Tabernacle. Therefore, too, did the elders of Israel have to put their hands upon the Levites, according to the prescription that the elders must put their hands upon the sin offering that was to make atonement for the sin of the congregation. Aaron, like the elders, participated in the ceremony of the consecration, lifting up every single Levite as a token that he was now dedicated to the sanctuary.<sup>410</sup> Aaron's extraordinary strength is proven by the fact that he was able to lift up twenty-two thousand men in one day.<sup>411</sup>

404. Tan. B. III, 4–5; Tan. Wa-Yera 3. Comp. also WR 1.5 and Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 940 on Prov. 8.

405. BaR 14.19–22, which is based on older sources; comp. Sifre Z., 48, 55, 58–59, and 108; Sifre N., 58; Sifra 1.1; Mekilta (beginning); ARN 2, 10. The view prevalent in tannaitic sources is that Aaron never received a direct revelation, and that the passages in the Pentateuch which apparently presuppose direct revelations to Aaron (see e. g., Lev. 10.3) are intended to convey that God told Moses to communicate certain revelations to Aaron. For a dissenting view see text on p. 522; text on pp. 663, 676. On demons, or rather angels of destruction, see text on p. 451; text on p. 660. It is noteworthy that, according to the Haggadah, the ministering angels, left the holy of holies as soon as the high priest entered it on the Day of Atonement; see PR 47, 190a, 191a; Yerushalmi Yoma 5, 42c. Philo, *Quis Rer. Div. Haeres Sit*, 5, remarks: God instructed him, not in brief sentences, but gave him an unbroken and continuous answer. These words seem to be directed against the view of the Rabbis that God always allowed a pause between the different laws which He imparted.

406. Gittin 60a; Sifre Z., 55, speaks of fifteen revelations received by Moses on this memorable day.

407. WR 26.6.

408. Sifre 7.36; BaR 14.13.

409. Tan. B. IV, 50–51; Tan. Beha'aloteka 8; BaR 15.12 and 1.12; Midrash Tannaim, 215; Sifre N., 67; compare with pp. 473, 500 and 522; text on pp. 601, 626, and 811. Yalkut II, 589, on Malachi 2.4, quotes a Midrash, according to which the prophet Malachi refers to the Abrahamic covenant as the "covenant of Levi" (see Malachi 2.8), because the tribe of Levi was the only one that held fast to the Abrahamic covenant during Israel's stay in Egypt.

410. Midrash Aggada Num. 98.6–16; BaR 4.8, 12.7 and 15 (this passage reads: The Levites defiled themselves through the dead bodies of the worshippers of the golden calf—Exod. 32.26, *seq.*—and accordingly had to be purified). Compare with p. 258; text on pp. 556 and 621. It was only through a miracle that the presence of *all* Israel at the consecration of the Levites was made possible. Compare with p. 657.

411. WR 26.9; Koheleth 12.7; Ekah (פתיחתא) 23.19. Comp. Aristeas 93.

## THE CLEANSING OF THE CAMP

The third law revealed on this day was the command that the children of Israel put out of the camp every leper and every unclean person. When Israel moved out of Egypt, the



majority of the people were afflicted with physical defects and diseases, contracted during their work on the structures they had been compelled to erect in Egypt. One had his hand crushed by a falling stone, another's eye was blinded by splashings of loam. It was a battered and crippled host that reached Sinai, eager to receive the Torah, but God said: "Does it become the glory of the Torah that I should bestow it on a race of cripples? Nor do I want to await the coming of another, sound generation, for I desire no further delay of the revelation of the Torah." Hereupon God sent angels to heal all among Israel that were diseased or afflicted with defects, so that all the children of Israel were sound and whole when they received the Torah. They remained in this condition until they worshipped the Golden Calf, when all their diseases returned as a punishment for their defection from God. Only the women, during their stay in the desert, were exempt from the customary ailments to which women are subject, as a reward for being the first who declared themselves ready to accept the Torah. When the Tabernacle had been consecrated, God now said to Moses: "So long as you had not yet erected the Tabernacle, I did not object to having the unclean and the lepers mingle with the rest of the people, but now that the sanctuary is erected, and that My Shekinah dwells among you, I insist upon your separating all these from among you, that they may not defile the camp in the midst of which I dwell."

The law in regard to lepers was particularly severe, for they were denied the right of staying within the camp, whereas the unclean were prohibited merely from staying near the sanctuary.<sup>412</sup> The lepers were the very ones who had worshipped the Golden Calf, and had as a consequence been smitten with this disease, and it was for this reason that God separated them from the community. Thirteen sins are punished with leprosy by God: blasphemy, unchastity, murder,

false suspicion, pride, illegal appropriation of the rights of others, slander, theft, perjury, profanation of the Divine Name, idolatry, envy, and contempt of the Torah. Goliath was stricken with leprosy because he reviled God; the daughters of Zion became leprous in punishment of their unchastity; leprosy was Cain's punishment for the murder of Abel. When Moses said to God, "But behold, they will not believe me," God replied: "O Moses, art thou sure that they will not believe thee? They are believers and the sons of believers. Thou who didst suspect them wrongly, put now thy hand into thy bosom, . . . and he put his hand into his bosom: and when he took it out, behold, his hand was leprous as snow." Uzziah presumed upon the rights of the priesthood, and went into the Temple to burn incense upon the altar of incense. He was just about to commit the offence, when "the leprosy brake forth in his forehead." Leprosy fell upon Naaman, who had grown arrogant because of his heroic deeds. For slandering Moses Miriam became leprous as snow; and Gehazi was punished by leprosy because he frustrated the purpose of Elisha, who desired to accept nothing from Naaman in order that the cure might redound to the glory of God.<sup>413</sup>

Another important law revealed on this day referred to the celebration of "the second Passover feast." Mishael and Elzaphan, who had attended to the burial of Nadab and Abihu, were godly men, anxious to fulfil the commandments of God, hence they went to the house where Moses and Aaron instructed the people, and said to them: "We are defiled by the dead body of a man; wherefore are we kept back that we may not offer an offering of the Lord in His appointed season among the children of Israel?" Moses at first answered that they might not keep the Passover owing to their condition of uncleanness, but they argued with him, asking that even if, owing to their condition, they might not par-



take of the sacrificial meat, they might, at least, be permitted to participate in the offering of the paschal lamb by having the blood of the offering sprinkled for them. Moses admitted that he could not pass judgment on this case before receiving instruction concerning it from God. For Moses had the rare privilege of being certain of receiving revelations from God whenever he applied to Him. He therefore bade Mishael and Elzaphan await God's judgment concerning their case, and sentence was indeed revealed immediately.<sup>414</sup>

It was on this day also that God said to Moses: "A heavy blow of fate has fallen upon Aaron to-day, but instead of murmuring he thanked Me for the death that robbed him of his two sons, which proves his trust in My justice toward them, who had deserved punishment more severe. Go then, and comfort him; and at the same time tell him 'that he come not at all times into the holy place within the vail before the mercy seat, which is upon the Ark.' " These last words greatly aggrieved Moses, who now thought: "Woe is me! For it seems as if Aaron had lost his rank, since he may not at all times enter the sanctuary. The statement of the periods for his admission into the sanctuary is also so indeterminate that I am not at all sure whether they are to recur hourly, or daily, or annually, every twelve years, perhaps even seventy, or not at all." But God replied: "Thou art mistaken, I was not thinking of fixing a certain time, whether hour, or day, or year, for Aaron may enter the sanctuary at any time, but when he does so, he must observe certain ceremonies." The ceremonies that Aaron, as well as every other high priest, had to perform on the Day of Atonement before his entrance into the Holy of Holies were symbolical of the three Patriarchs, of the four wives of the Patriarchs, and of the twelve tribes. Only by depending upon the merits of these pious men and women might the high priest venture to enter the Holy of Holies without having to

fear the angels that filled this space. These were obliged to retreat upon the entrance of the high priest, and even Satan had to flee whenever he beheld the high priest, and did not dare to accuse Israel before God.<sup>415</sup>

Aaron's grief about the death of his sons was turned to joy when God, on the day of their death, granted him the distinction of receiving a direct revelation from the Lord, which prohibited both him and his sons from drinking wine or strong drink when they went into the Tabernacle.<sup>416</sup>

On this day, also, Moses received the revelation concerning the red heifer, whose significance was never vouchsafed to any other human being beside himself. On the following day, under the supervision of Eleazar, Aaron's son, it was slaughtered and burned. Although, beside this one, a number of other red heifers were provided in future generations, this one was distinguished by having its ashes kept forever, which, mingled with the ashes of other red heifers, were always used for the purification of Israel. But it is in this world alone that the priest can purify the unclean by sprinkling with this water of purification, whereas in the future world God will sprinkle clean water upon Israel, "that they may be cleansed from all their filthiness, and from all their idols."<sup>417</sup>

---

412. BaR 7.1, 4, 6; Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 64a, and 9, 71b; Sifre N., 1; WR 18.4; PR 7, 28a, and 15, 78b; Zohar II, 51b; *Toratan shel Rishonim* II, 26. Compare with p. 542, text on p. 591.

413. BaR 7.4–5; Tan. Mezora<sup>c</sup> 4; Tan. B. III, 48–50; WR 17.3; Tosefta Nega'im 6.7; PRK 37a; Zohar III, 206a. Compare with p. 107; text on p. 643; text on p. 916.

414. Sifre N., 68; Sifre Z., 66–67; Pesahim 6a; Midrash Aggada Num. 1.1. Compare with pp. 611 and 761.

415. WR 21.7; PR 47, 189b–191b; PK 27, 176a–176b; Tehillim 10, 96; Yerushalmi Yoma 1, 39; Yelammedenu 49=BHM VI, 87, and in *'Aruk*, s. v. דריה (this passage reads: The high-priest is greater than Michael; the latter pleads for Israel only with words, while the former



intercedes in their behalf with deeds); Tan., quoted by Makiri on Prov. 24.6; an unknown Midrash cited in *Imre No'am* on Exod. 38.32 reads: Satan seized the high priest by the throat to prevent him from performing the service in the holy of holies. Comp. note 405; text on p. 451; text on pp. 660, 673.

416. WR 12.1 (end); but comp. note 405. It is, however, possible that the word **תָּנִי** in WR means: He revealed a law which referred exclusively to Aaron and his sons. Comp. Sifre Z. 48 and 108.

417. PK 4, 39a–39b, and 41b; PR 14, 46a–46b and 66a; Tan. B. IV, 117 and 120; Tan. Hukkat 8; BaR 12.15, 13.15, and 19.6; *Batte Midrashot* III, 8 (from Esfah?); Sifre N., 44; Niddah 9a (bottom); Yoma 57a (top), which reads: God dwells with the Israelites even when they are in a state of impurity (quoted as an answer given by a Rabbi to a polemical argument of a **מִי**, that is, a Judeo-Christian). See also Aggadat Shir 4, 37 (this passage reads: In the time to come God will remove the impurity of idolatry, unchastity, and bloodshed from Israel); Tosefta Parah 6.5, which reads: When the Israelites were exiled to Babylon, they took with them the ashes of the red heifer. The legend, found in Pahlavi literature (comp. *R.E.J.*, 19, 51), that the Jews took with them to Babylon water and dust from Jerusalem is an inaccurate representation of the statement of the Tosefta. Shu'aib, Hukkat, 88c, quotes, from Mishnah Parah 6.5, the statement that the Messiah will furnish the tenth red heifer. But our texts of the Mishnah contain the remark that from Moses until the destruction of the Second Temple nine red heifers were furnished, one by Moses, etc. Nothing is, however, said about the red heifer in the time to come.

## THE LIGHTING OF THE CANDLESTICK

The eighth law revealed on this day was the lighting of the candlestick. After all the princes of the tribes had brought their gifts to the sanctuary, and God had bidden Moses to let them offer each his offering, one a day, throughout twelve days, Aaron, profoundly agitated, thought: "Woe is me! It seems as if, owing to my sin, my tribe has been excluded by God from participating in the dedication of the sanctuary." Hereupon God said to Moses: "Go to Aaron and

say to him, "Do not fear that thou art slighted, and art deemed inferior to the other princes of the tribes. Thou, on the contrary, shalt enjoy a greater glory than all of these, for thou art to light the lamps of the candlestick in the sanctuary." When Israel heard God's command that the lights of the sanctuary be lighted, they said: "O Lord of the world! Thou biddest us make a light for Thee that art the light of the world, and with whom light dwelleth." But God replied: "Not because I need your light do I bid you burn lamps before Me, but only that I might thereby distinguish you in the eyes of the nations that will say, 'Behold the people of Israel, that hold up a light before Him who bestoweth light upon all the world.' By your own eye-sight can you see how little need I have of your light. You have the white of the eye and the black of the eye, and it is by means of this dark part of the eye that you are enabled to see, and not through the light part of the white of the eye. How should I, that am all light, have need of your light!" God furthermore said: "A mortal of flesh and blood lights one light by means of another that is burning, I have brought forth light out of darkness: 'In the beginning darkness was upon the face of the deep,' whereupon I spake, 'Let there be light: and there was light.' Shall I now be in need of your illumination? Nay, I commanded you to light the candles in the sanctuary that I might distinguish you and give you another opportunity of doing a pious deed, the execution of which I will reward in the future world by letting a great light shine before you; and, furthermore, if you will let the candles shine before Me in My sanctuary, I shall protect from all evil your spirit, 'the candle of the Lord.'"<sup>418</sup>

Simultaneously with the command to light the sanctuary, Moses received the instruction to celebrate the Sabbath by the lighting of candles, for God said to him: "Speak unto the children of Israel; if you will observe My command to



light the Sabbath candles, I shall permit you to live to see Zion illuminated, when you will no longer require the light of the sun, but My glory will shine before you so that the nations will follow your light.”<sup>419</sup>

Aaron was distinguished not only by being selected to dedicate the sanctuary through the lighting of the candles, God ordered Moses to communicate to his brother the following revelation: “The sanctuary will on another occasion also be dedicated by the lighting of candles, and then it will be done by thy descendants, the Hasmoneans, for whom I will perform miracles and to whom I will grant grace. Hence there is greater glory destined for thee than for all the other princes of the tribes, for their offerings to the sanctuary shall be employed only so long as it endures, but the lights of the Hanukkah festival will shine forever; and, moreover, thy descendants shall bestow the priestly blessing upon Israel even after the destruction of the Temple.”<sup>420</sup>

The candlestick that Aaron lighted in the sanctuary was not the common work of mortal hands, but was wrought by a miracle. When God bade Moses fashion a candlestick, he found it difficult to execute the command, not knowing how to set to work to construct it in all its complicated details. God therefore said to Moses: “I shall show thee a model.” He then took white fire, red fire, green fire, and black fire, and out of these four kinds of fires He fashioned a candlestick with its bowls, its knops, and its flowers. Even then Moses was not able to copy the candlestick, whereupon God drew its design upon his palm, saying to him: “Look at this, and imitate the design I have drawn on thy palm.” But even that did not suffice to teach Moses how to execute the commission, whereupon God bade him cast a talent of gold into the fire. Moses did as he was bidden, and the candlestick shaped itself out of the fire. As on this occasion, so upon other occasions also did God have to present the

things tangibly before Moses in order to make certain laws intelligible to him. In this way, for example, at the revelation concerning clean and unclean animals, God showed one specimen of each to Moses, saying: “This ye shall eat, and this ye shall not eat.”<sup>421</sup>

---

418. BaR 15.5–7; Tan. B. IV, 47–48; Tan. Beha'aloteka 4–5; comp. Shabbat 22b; ShR 35.23.

419. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 719 (beginning of Beha'aloteka), and *Orehot Hayyim* I, 4b. Comp. BHM I, 134–135, and the following note, as well as text on pp. 843 and 868.

420. Midrash quoted in Or Zarua' I, 139, No. 321; Nahmanides on Num. 8.2. The passage quoted from Yelammedenu in *Orehot Hayyim* (comp. preceding note) very likely refers to the Hanukkah lights, and not to the lights in the Temple Comp. BHM I, 135, and note 367.

421. Tan. B. III, 28–29; Tan. Shemini 8. For another legend concerning the candlestick, see text on pp. 644–645. Compare also with p. 535 with reference to the legend about the three things which God had to demonstrate to Moses. Sifre Z. 60–61, reads: God showed Moses the pattern of the candlestick four times; 1) when He showed the patterns of all the sacred vessels; 2) when He made him watch Michael beat out the golden plates of the pattern (this is how the word ממתיה is to be understood; this word is used instead of מרקיע on account of the phrase מיכאל מותח which is often quoted; comp. BR 3.9 and parallel passages cited by Theodor, ממשח of MHG and the first edition of the Yalkut is a worthless reading); 3) He showed him the candlestick in the process of making; 4) when the candlestick was completed. See also quotation from Mekilta (R. Simon?) by Hadassi, *Eshkol*, 30a, Nos. 82, 338.

## THE TWELVE PRINCES OF THE TRIBES

God in His love for Israel had frequent censures taken of them, so that He might accurately estimate His possession. In scarcely half a year they were twice counted, once shortly before the erection of the Tabernacle, and the sec-



ond time a month after its dedication.<sup>422</sup> On the first day of the month of Iyyar, Moses received instructions to take a census of all men over twenty who were physically fit to go to war. He was ordered to take Aaron as his assistant, so that in case he should overlook some of the men Aaron might remind him of them, for “two are better than one.” They were also to take as their subordinate assistants Eleazar and Ithamar, Aaron’s sons, and a man each from the several tribes. These twelve men were appointed not only to conduct the census, but also to look after the spiritual welfare of their respective tribes, the sins of which would be upon their heads unless, with all their powers, they strove to prevent them. Moses and Aaron nevertheless adjured the princes of the tribes, in spite of their high rank, not to tyrannize over the people, whereas, on the other hand, they admonished the people to pay all due respect to their superiors.<sup>423</sup>

The names of these twelve princes of the tribes indicated the history of the tribes they represented. The prince of the tribe of Reuben was called Elizur, “my God is a rock,” referring to the ancestor of this tribe, Reuben, Jacob’s son, who sinned, but, owing to his penance, was forgiven by God, who bore his sin as a rock bears the house built upon it. The name of Elizur’s father was Shedeur, “cast into the fire,” because Reuben was converted to repentance and atonement through Judah, who confessed his sin when his daughter-in-law Tamar was about to be cast into the fire.

The prince of the tribe of Simeon was named Shelumiel, “my God is peace,” to indicate that in spite of the sin of Zimri, head of this tribe, through whom four and twenty thousand men among Israel died, God nevertheless made peace with this tribe.

The prince of the tribe of Judah bore the name Nahshon, “wave of the sea,” the son of Amminadab, “prince of My people,” because the

prince received this dignity as a reward for having plunged into the waves of the Red Sea to glorify God’s name.

The tribe of Issachar had for its prince Nethanel, “God gave,” for this tribe devoted its life to the Torah given by God to Moses. Accordingly Nethanel was called the son of Zuar, “burden,” for Issachar assumed the burden of passing judgment on the lawsuits of the other tribes.

Corresponding to the occupation of the tribe of Zebulun, its prince was called Eliab, “the ship,” son of Helon, “the sand,” for this tribe spent its life on ships, seeking “treasures hidden in the sand.”

Elishama, son of Ammihud, the name of the prince of the tribe of Ephraim, points to the history of Joseph, their forefather. God said: “Elishama, ‘he obeyed Me,’ who bade him be chaste and not covet his master’s wife that wanted to tempt him to sin, and Ammihud, ‘Me he honored,’ and none other.”

The other tribe of Joseph, Manasseh, also named their prince in reference to their forefather, calling him Gamaliel, son of Pedahzur, which signifies, “God rewarded Joseph for his piety by releasing him from bondage and making him ruler over Egypt.”

The prince of the tribe of Benjamin was named Abidan, “my father decreed,” son of Gideon, “mighty hosts,” referring to the following incident. When Rachel perceived that she would die at the birth of her son, she called him “son of faintness,” supposing that a similar fate would overtake him, and that he was doomed through weakness to die young. But Jacob, the child’s father, decreed otherwise, and called him Benjamin, “son of might and of many years.”

The prince of the tribe of Dan bore the name Ahiezer, “brother of help,” son of Amishaddai, “My people’s judge,” because he was allied with the helpful tribe of Judah at the erec-



tion of the Tabernacle, and like this ruling tribe brought forth a mighty judge in the person of Samson.

The tribe of Asher was distinguished by the beauty of its women, which was so excellent that even the old among them were fairer and stronger than the young girls of the other tribes. For this reason kings chose the daughters of this tribe to be their wives, and these, through their intercession before the kings, saved the lives of many who had been doomed to death. Hence the name of the prince of the tribe of Asher, Pagiel, "the interceder," son of Ochran, "the afflicted," for the women of the tribe of Asher, through their intercession, obtained grace for the afflicted.

The prince of the tribe of Gad bore the name Eliasaph, "God multiplied;" son of Deuel, "God is a witness." To reward them for passing over the Jordan and not returning to their property on this side of the river until the promised land was won, their wealth was multiplied by God; for when, upon returning, they found the enemy at home, God aided them and they gained all their enemy's possessions. God was furthermore witness that this tribe had no wicked motive when they erected an altar on their land.

The prince of the tribe of Naphtali was called Ahira, "desirable meadow," son of Enan, "clouds;" for the land of this tribe was distinguished by its extraordinary excellence. Its products were exactly what their owners "desired," and all this owing to the plenty of water, for the "clouds" poured plentiful rain over their land.

At the census of the people the tribes were set down in the order in which they put up their camp and moved in their marches. The tribes of Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun formed the first group, the royal tribe of Judah being associated with the tribe of learned men, Issachar, and with Zebulun, which through its generosity enabled Issachar to devote itself to the study of the

Torah. The second group consisted of Reuben, Simeon, and Gad. The sinful tribe of Simeon was supported on the right by the penance of Reuben and on the left by the strength of Gad. The tribes of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Benjamin formed a group by themselves, for these before all the other tribes were destined to appear gloriously against Amalek. The Ephraimite Joshua was the first who was victorious against Amalek, the Benjamite Saul followed his example in his war against Agag, king of Amalek, and, under the leadership of men out of the tribe of Manasseh, the tribe of Simeon at the time of king Jehoshaphat succeeded in destroying the rest of the Amalekites, and to take possession of their lands. The tribes of Dan, Asher, and Naphtali formed the last group, and for the following reason were united in this way. The tribe of Dan had already at the time of the exodus from Egypt been possessed of the sinful thought to fashion an idol. To counteract this "dark thought" Asher was made its comrade, from whose soil came "the oil for lighting;" and that Dan might participate in the blessing, Naphtali, "full with the blessing of the Lord," became its second companion.<sup>424</sup>

At this third census the number of men who were able to go to war proved to be exactly the same as at the second census, taken in the same year. Not one among Israel had died during this period, from the beginning of the erection of the Tabernacle to its dedication, when the third census took place.<sup>425</sup> But no conclusive evidence concerning the sum total of the separate tribes can be drawn from this number of men able to go to war, because the ratio of the two sexes varied among the different tribes, as, for example, the female sex in the tribe of Naphtali greatly outnumbered the male.<sup>426</sup>

---

422. Rashi on Num. 1.1, based on an unknown midrashic source. Comp. BaR 1.10; Lekah Num. 2.1; text on pp. 636–637.



423. MHG Numbers I (in manuscript).

424. Midrash Aggada Num. 1.4–14 (the phrase נִילֹס *niilos* “the small Nilus” is employed in contrast to “the great Euphrates;” comp. BR 16.3), and, in abridged form, *Pa’aneah* and *Imre No’am* on Num., *loc. cit.* As to Reuben’s repentance, see text on p. 339. On Judah’s confession of sin, see text on p. 345. On Nahshon, see text on p. 665. On Issachar and Zebulun, see text on p. 408. n the explanations of the names of Elishama, Ammihud, Gamaliel, and Pedahzur, see also Tan. B. IV, 43; Haserot 49, and parallel passages cited by Buber on Tan. Concerning the meaning of the name Benjamin, see Midrash Aggada Num. 27.38; text on p. 318. On the beauty of the women of Asher, see text on p. 408; text on p. 823. Concerning the tribes of Gad, see text p. 852 (שמעאלים *שמעאלים* is to be read instead of מצריים *מצריים* in Midrash Aggada). On the successful adversaries of Amalek, see text on p. 288 and text on p. 578. On the sinful tribe of Dan, see text on pp. 578 and 651. For other explanations of the names of the princes see *Hadar*, Num. 7.28, and Hasidim 438.

425. Lekah Num. 1.46. The taking of the census lasted only one day, the people and the leaders being equally anxious to carry out God’s command without delay; Lekah Num. 1.17. See text on p. 856.

426. *Pa’aneah* on Gen. 49.2; *Baal ha-Turim* and *Imre No’am* on Num. 1.46. Lekah Num., *loc. cit.*, on the contrary, maintains that this tribe consisted of males only.

## THE CENSUS OF THE LEVITES

Moses at the census did not take into consideration the tribe of Levi, because God had not commanded him to select a prince for this tribe as for all others, hence he drew the conclusion that they were not to be counted. Naturally he was not sure of his decision in this matter, and wavered whether or not to include the Levites in the number, when God said to him: “Do not muster the tribe of Levi, nor number them among the children of Israel.” At these words Moses was frightened, for he feared that his tribe was considered unworthy of being counted with the rest, and was therefore excluded by God. But God quieted him, saying: “Do not number the Levites among the children of Israel, number them separately.” There were sev-

eral reasons for numbering the Levites separately. God foresaw that, owing to the sin of the spies who were sent to search the land, all men who were able to go to war would perish in the wilderness, “all that were numbered of them, according to their whole number, from twenty years old and upward.” Now had the Levites been included in the sum total of Israel, the Angel of Death would have held sway over them also, wherefore God excluded them from the census of all the tribes, that they might in the future be exempt from the punishment visited upon the others, and might enter the promised land. The Levites were, furthermore, the body-guard of God, to whose care the sanctuary was entrusted—another reason for counting them separately. God in this instance conducted Himself like the king who ordered one of his officers to number his legions, but added: “Number all the legions excepting only the legion that is about me.”<sup>427</sup>

The extent of God’s love for Levi is evident through the command given to Moses, to number in the tribe of Levi “all males from a month old and upward,” whereas in the other tribes none were numbered save men able to go to war, from twenty years and upward. Upon other occasions God had even the embryos among the Levites numbered. This occurred upon Jacob’s entrance into Egypt, when the number seventy for his family was attained only by including Jochebed who was still in the womb; and similarly at a future time upon the return of the exiles from Babylon. For at that time only twenty-three of the priestly sections returned, hence to complete their number they had to include Bigvai, who belonged to the missing section, even though he was still in the womb.<sup>428</sup>

When Moses was ordered to number among the Levites all children from a month old and upward, he said to God: “Thou biddest me count them from a month old and upward. Shall I



now wander about in their courts and houses and count each child, seeing that Thou givest me such a command!" But God replied: "Do thou what thou canst do, and I will do what I can do." It now came to pass that whenever Moses betook himself to a Levite tent he found the Shekinah awaiting him, telling him exactly the number of children without his having to count them.<sup>429</sup>

In the choice of this tribe God showed His preference for the seventh, for Levi was the seventh pious man, starting from Adam, to wit: Adam, Noah, Enoch, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Levi. As in this instance, so in many others did God indicate His love for the seventh. He sits enthroned in the seventh heaven; of the seven worlds the seventh alone is inhabited by human beings; of the early generations the seventh was the most excellent, for it produced Enoch. Moses, seventh among the Patriarchs, was judged worthy of receiving the Torah. David, seventh son of Jesse, was chosen as king. In periods of time, also, the seventh was the favorite. The seventh day is the Sabbath; the seventh month, Tishri, is the month of the holy days; the seventh year is the Sabbatical year of rest, and every seventh Sabbatical year of rest is the year of jubilee.<sup>430</sup>

Another reason for numbering even the youngest boys among the Levites was that the tribe of Levi as a whole had the responsibility of atoning for the sin of the first-born among the children of Israel. For it was these who until the time of the worship of the Golden Calf performed the services of the priesthood, and their privilege was taken from them owing to this, their sin. This prerogative was then conferred upon the tribe of Levi, who, moreover, dedicating themselves, man for man, to the service of the Lord, served as an atonement for the first-born of Israel, that they might not be destroyed as they deserved.<sup>431</sup>

The exchange of Levites in place of the first-born did, however, present a difficulty. For God had communicated the number of Levites to Moses in the following way: "Their number amounts to as many as the number of My legion." For, when God came down upon Sinai, twenty-two thousand angels surrounded Him, and just as many men did the Levites number. Outside of these there were three hundred first-born among the Levites that could not well be offered in exchange for the first-born among the other tribes, because their standing was the same as theirs. As the number of first-born among the other tribes exceeded the number of Levites by two hundred seventy-three, this surplus remained without actual atonement. Hence God ordered Moses to take from them five shekels apiece by the poll as redemption money, and give it to the priests. This sum was fixed upon by God, who said: "Ye sold the first-born of Rachel for five shekels, and for this reason shall ye give as redemption money for every first-born among ye five shekels."

To avoid quarrels among the first-born, as otherwise each one would try to lay the payment of redemption money upon his neighbor, Moses wrote upon twenty-two thousand slips of paper the word "Levi," and upon two hundred seventy three the words "five shekels," all of which were then thrown into an urn and mixed. Then every first-born had to draw one of the slips. If he drew a slip with "Levi" he was not obliged to remit any payment, but if he drew "five shekels," he had to pay that sum to the priests.<sup>432</sup>

---

427. BaR 1.12 and 3.7 which is very likely based on an old source, since Kalir in his piyyut אֵיתָן for Shekalim, and Rashi on Num. 1.49 (Tan. Bemidbar 15, end, is not Rashi's source, as Berliner erroneously maintains), neither of whom was acquainted with BaR, made use of a source in



which the tribe of Levi was described, as in BaR, as the body-guard (לגיון) of God.

428. PK 2, 20b; BaR 3.8; Tan. B. IV, 16–17; Tan. Bemidbar 16. Compare with p. 395, and the note appertaining to it.

429. PK 2, 20b–21a; BaR 3.9 and 7.2; Tan. Bemidbar 16. Compare with p. 636. Aaron, though belonging to the tribe of Levi, was not included in the census of the Levites; ARN 34, 109, and parallel passages cited by Schechter. This is given as an explanation of the dots upon וְאַהֲרֹן (Num. 3.39). Comp. Blau, *Masoretische Untersuchungen*, 9, *seq.*

430. PK 23, 154b–155a; WR 29.11; BaR 3.8; Tan. B. IV, 17–18; Tan. Bemidbar 17; PRE 28 (in this passage we have instead of the seven worlds—see text on p. 89—the seven parts of the world, and the Holy Land is counted as the seventh); Tehillim 9, 86–87. For the praise of the “seven”, see also Philo, *De Mun. Opif.* 30, *seq.* pp. 120–122, top; Index, s. v. “Seven”.

431. BaR 4.98. Compare with p. 258; text on p. 673.

432. Sanhedrin 17a and Yerushalmi 19c; Tan. B. IV, 20–21; Tan. Bemidbar 21; BaR 4.9–10; PK 2, 21a. Compare with pp. 601, 684, 695–696.

## THE FOUR DIVISIONS OF THE LEVITES

A part from the census of all male Levites, Moses now took another census of the men from the ages of thirty to fifty, for only at this age were the Levites permitted to perform service in the Tabernacle throughout their march through the desert, a law that indeed ceased to hold good when Israel settled in the Holy Land.<sup>433</sup> These officiating Levites, as well as the priests, were divided by Moses into eight sections, a number that was not doubled until the prophet Samuel increased it to sixteen, to which David again added eight, so that there were later twenty-four divisions among the Levites and priests.<sup>434</sup>

The most distinguished among the Levites were the sons of Kohath, whose charge during the march through the desert was the Holy of Holies, and among the vessels particularly the

Holy Ark. This latter was a dangerous trust, for out of the staves attached to it would issue sparks that consumed Israel's enemies, but now and then this fire wrought havoc among the bearers of the Ark. It therefore became a customary thing, when the camp was about to be moved, for Kohath's sons to hasten into the sanctuary and seek to pack up the different portions of it, each one planning cautiously to shift the carrying of the Ark upon another. But this even more kindled God's anger against them, and He slew many of the Kohathites because they ministered to the Ark with an unwilling heart. To avert the danger that threatened them, God ordered Aaron and his sons to enter first into the sanctuary, and “to appoint to the Kohathites, every one, his service and his burden, that they might not go in to see when the holy things are uncovered, lest they die.” This was done because previous to this command the sons of Kohath had been accustomed to feast their eyes on the sight of the Ark, which brought them instantaneous death. But, according to this order, Aaron and his sons first took apart the different portions of the sanctuary, covered the Ark, and not till then called the sons of Kohath to bear the burden.

During the march the Levites might wear no shoes, but had to walk barefoot because they carried and ministered to holy objects. The Kohathites had, moreover, to walk backwards, for they might not turn their backs to the Holy Ark. They were, furthermore, owing to their office as bearers of the Ark, distinguished by being the first of the Levites to be numbered in the census, although in other respects the sons of Gershon led, for Gershon was the first-born of Levi.<sup>435</sup>

When giving the commission to count the sons of Kohath, God explicitly mentioned that Moses should undertake the census with Aaron, but He did not do so when He ordered the numbering of the sons of Gershon. Moses now



thought that God had done this intentionally because the former were directly under Aaron's supervision while the Gershonites were not. Nevertheless, out of respect to his brother, he bade his brother, as well as, out of courtesy, the princes of the tribes, to be present at the numbering of the Levites, but he did not tell Aaron that he did so in the name of God. In this Moses erred, for God wished Aaron to be present at the numbering of the Levites. For this reason, when He ordered the census of the third division, Merari's sons, to be taken, He expressly mentioned Aaron's name. At the apportionment of the service among the individual Levites, however, Aaron paid attention only to the sons of Kohath, each of whom had his special task allotted to him, whereas Moses appointed their tasks to the sons of Gershon and Merari.<sup>436</sup> The highest chief of the Levites, however, was Eleazar, who was "to have the oversight of them that keep the charge of the sanctuary." But despite his high position, Eleazar was modest enough to participate in the service in person. During their marches from place to place, he himself would carry all needful things for the daily offering. In his right hand he carried the oil for the candlestick, in his left hand the incense, on his arm the things that were made in the pans, and, attached to his girdle, the phial with the oil for ointment.<sup>437</sup> Ithamar, Eleazar's brother, also had a duty in the sanctuary, for it was he to whom the guidance of the service of Gershon's and Merari's sons was assigned. For these must perform none but the service God had specially assigned to them, as no Gershonite might perform the duty of a Merarite, and vice versa, and each individual, too, had his special duty, that no quarrel might arise among them.<sup>438</sup>

433. Sifre N., 63; Sifre Z., 62; Hullin 24a.

434. Ta'anit, Tosefta 4(3).2 and 2.1; Babli 27a; Yerushalmi 4, 67d–68a; Tehillim 1, 1; comp. also Sifre Z., 62.

435. BaR 5.1 and 8; *Batte Midrashot* IV, 35. Concerning the ark, see text on pp. 642–643; Sifre Z., 192. In the latter passage the identity of the ark with the "angel of the Lord" seems to be presupposed, comp. note 330. As to walking backwards while carrying the ark, see Yoma 53a. On the Levites being barefooted, see p. 511, note 122

436. BaR 7.6 and 8.

437. Yerushalmi Shabbat 10, 12c; BaR 4 (end); *Batte Midrashot* IV, 34; BHM III, 122. In the last source Aaron is also praised for his modesty, because he did not consider it beneath his dignity to remove the ashes from the altar; the last sentence is quoted from the Agur, a Midrash which is no longer extant; see Brüll, *Jahrbücher*, V, 98, and Gaster, *Zeitschrift f. heb. Bibliographie* X, 92–94.

438. Yerushalmi Shabbat 12, 13c; BaR 7.3 and 11.

## THE FOUR STANDARDS

When God appeared upon Sinai, He was surrounded by twenty-two thousand angels, all in full array and divided into groups, each of which had its own standard. Looking upon these angel hosts, Israel wished like them to be divided into groups with standards, and God fulfilled their wish. After Moses had completed the census of the people, God said to him: "Fulfil their wish and provide them with standards as they desire. 'Every man of the children of Israel shall pitch by his own standard, with the ensign of their father's house; far off about the Tabernacle of the congregation shall they pitch.' " This commission greatly agitated Moses, who thought: "Now will there be much strife among the tribes. If I bid the tribe of Judah pitch in the East, it will sorely state its preference for the South, and every tribe will likewise choose any direction but the one assigned to it." But God said to Moses: "Do not concern thyself with the position of the standards of the tribes, for they have no need of thy direction. Their father Jacob before his death ordered them to group themselves about the Tabernacle just as his sons were to be grouped



about his bier at the funeral procession.” When Moses now told the people to divide themselves in groups round about the Tabernacle, they did it in the manner Jacob had bidden them.<sup>439</sup>

“The Lord by wisdom hath founded the earth; by understanding hath He established the heavens.” The division of the tribes of Israel according to four standards, as well as their subdivision at each standard, is not arbitrary and accidental, it corresponds to the same plan and direction as that of which God made use in heaven. The celestial Throne is surrounded by four angels: to the right Michael, in front Gabriel, to the left Uriel, and to the rear Raphael. To these four angels corresponded the four tribes of Reuben, Judah, Dan, and Ephraim, the standard bearers. Michael earned his name, “Who is like unto God,” by exclaiming during the passage of Israel through the Red Sea, “Who is like unto Thee, O Lord, among the gods?” and he made a similar statement when Moses completed the Torah, saying: “There is none like unto the God of Jeshurun.” In the same way Reuben bore upon his standard the words, “Hear, O Israel: the Lord our God is one Lord,” hence Reuben’s position with his standard to the right of the sanctuary corresponded exactly to Michael’s post at the right of the celestial Throne. Gabriel, “God is mighty,” stands in front of the Throne, as Judah, “mightiest among his brethren,” was the standard bearer in front of the camp. Dan, the tribe “from which emanated dark sin,” stood at the left side of the camp with his standard, corresponding to the angel Uriel, “God is my light,” for God illuminated the darkness of sin by the revelation of the Torah, in the study of which this angel instructed Moses, and devotion to which is penance for sin. The tribe of Ephraim was the standard bearer to the rear of the camp, occupying the same position as Raphael, “God heals,” holds at the celestial Throne; for this tribe, from which sprang Jeroboam, was in

need of God’s healing for the wound that this wicked king dealt Israel.<sup>440</sup>

God had other reasons for the divisions of the tribes that He decreed, for He said to Moses: “In the East whence comes the light shall the tribe of Judah, whence arises the light of sovereignty, pitch its camp, and with them the tribe of Issachar, with whom dwells the light of the Torah, and Zebulun, shining through its wealth. From the South come the dews of blessing and the rains of plenty, hence shall Reuben pitch on this side, for this tribe owes its existence to the penitent deeds of its forefather, penance being that which causes God to send His blessing upon the world. Beside Reuben shall stand the warlike tribe of Gad, and between these two Simeon, in order that this tribe, made weak by its sins, might be protected on either side by the piety of Reuben and the heroism of Gad. In the West are the storehouses of snow the storehouses of hail, of cold, and of heat, and as powerless as are mortals against these forces of nature, so ineffectual shall be the enemies of the tribes of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Benjamin, for which reason their post was to the West of the camp. From the North comes the darkness, and so from the tribe of Dan will come the darkness of sin, for this tribe alone will declare itself willing to accept the idols of Jeroboam, hence its place is to the North of the camp. To illuminate its darkness, put beside it shining Asher, and Naphtali, filled with God’s plenty.”<sup>441</sup>

The four standards were distinguished from one another by their different colors, and by the inscriptions and figures worked upon each. The color of Judah’s standard corresponded to the color of the three stones in the breastplate of the high priest, on which were engraved the names of Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun, and was composed of red, green, and fiery red. Judah’s name, as well as Issachar’s and Zebulun’s, was inscribed on the banner, and beside the names was this in-



scription: "Rise up, Lord, and let Thine enemies be scattered; and let them that hate Thee flee before Thee." The standard of Reuben, about which gathered also the tribes of Simeon and Gad, was the color of the emerald, the sapphire, and the sabhalom, for on these three stones were the names of these tribes engraved on the breastplate of the high priest. Beside the names of Reuben, Simeon, and Gad the following device was wrought on the second standard, "Hear, O Israel: the Lord our God is one Lord." The third standard, around which rallied the tribes of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Benjamin, bore the color of the diamond, the turquoise, and the amethyst, for on these three stones in the high priest's breastplate were engraved the names of these three tribes. On this standard beside the namer of these three tribes was the motto, "And the cloud of the Lord was upon them by day, when they went out of the camp." As on the breastplate of the high priest the stones chrysolite, beryl and panther-stone bore the names of Dan, Asher, and Naphtali, so too did the fourth standard, round which these three tribes gathered, bear a color resembling these three stones. This standard contained the names of Dan, Asher, and Naphtali, and the device: "Return, O Lord, unto the many thousands of Israel."<sup>442</sup>

The standards had also other distinguishing characteristics. Judah's standard bore in its upper part the figure of a lion, for its forefather had been characterized by Jacob as "a lion's whelp," and also sword-like hooks of gold. On these hooks God permitted a strip of the seventh cloud of glory to rest, in which were visible the initials of the names of the three Patriarchs, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, the letters being radiations from the Shekinah. Reuben's standard had in its upper part the figure of a man, corresponding to the mandrakes that Reuben, forefather of this tribe, found, for this plant had the form of a manikin. The hooks on this standard were like

those on the standard of Judah, but the second letters of the names of the three Patriarchs, Bet, Zade, and 'Ayyin, were seen above them in the cloud. In the standard of Ephraim was fashioned the form of a fish, for Jacob had blessed the forefather of this tribe by telling him to multiply like a fish; in all other respects it was like the other two standards, save that above the sword-like hooks of gold were seen the third letters in the names of the Patriarchs, Resh, Het, and Kof. Dan's standard contained the form of a serpent, for "Dan shall be a serpent by the way," was Jacob's blessing for this tribe; and the gleaming letters over the hooks were: Mem for Abraham, Kof for Isaac, and Bet for Jacob. The letter He of Abraham's name was not indeed visible over the standards, but was reserved by God for a still greater honor. For, over the Holy Ark, God let a pillar of cloud rest, and in this were visible the letters Yod and He, spelling the name Yah, by means of which God had created the world. This pillar of cloud shed sunlight by day and moonlight by night, so that Israel, who were surrounded by clouds, might distinguish between night and day. These two sacred letters, Yod, He, would on weekdays fly about in the air over the four standards, hovering now upon this, now upon that. But as soon as Friday was over and the Sabbath began, these letters stood immovable on the spot where they chanced to be at that moment, and remained in this rigid position from the first moment of the Sabbath to the last.

Whenever God wanted Israel to break up camp and move on, He would send on from its place over the Ark the cloud in which beamed the two sacred letters Yod and He in the direction in which Israel was to march, and the four strips of cloud over the standards would follow. As soon as the priests saw these clouds in motion, they blew the trumpets as a signal for starting, and the winds thereupon from all sides breathed myrrh and frankincense.<sup>443</sup>



Although it was the clouds that gave the signal for taking down and pitching tents, still they always awaited the word of Moses. Before starting the pillar of cloud would contract and stand still before Moses, waiting for him to say: “Rise up, Lord, and let Thine enemies be scattered: and let them that hate Thee flee before Thee,” whereupon the pillar of cloud would be set in motion. It was the same when they pitched camp. The pillar of cloud would contract and stand still before Moses, waiting for him to say: “Return, O Lord, unto the many thousands of Israel,” whereupon it would expand first over the tribes that belonged to the standard of Judah, and then over the sanctuary, within and without.<sup>444</sup>

439. BaR 2.3 and 8; Tan. B. IV, 11; Tan. Bemidbar 12; Shir 2.4 (quoted by Shu’aib, Bemidbar with numerous variants) and 6.11. On the number of angels who accompanied God on Sinai, see text on pp. 573 and 682. On the instructions given by Jacob concerning the standards, see text on p. 411. Comp. also *Hadar*, Exod. 13.17, which reads: They made use of the standards at the exodus from Egypt.

440. BaR 2.10 (here no reason is given for the statement that Reuben corresponds to Michael; but the reason is found in Targum Yerushalmi Num. 2.10); PR 46, 188a, here the text reads correctly פתח מיכאל, and not פתח משה, as BaR has it; BHM II, 39 (Michael in the front, Gabriel to the right), and VI, 49. In the last passage, as well as in the unknown Midrash quoted in *Kimha Dabishuna* (on וחיית, Minhah service of the Day of Atonement) the four Hayyot take the place of the four archangels. The identification of the Hayyot with the four archangels, Michael, Gabriel, Raphael, and Uriel, was already known to the Gnostics; see Origen, *Contra Celsum* 6.30. In PRE 4 the order is: Michael to the right, Gabriel to the left, Uriel in front, and Raphael in the rear; comp. also Zohar III, 118b. An allegory of the old legend is to be found in ARN 43, 121, which reads: The throne of glory has four standards, righteousness, justice, grace, and truth. Concerning the three, or rather seven heads of the heavenly hierarchy see footnote 13 on p. 52. The expression “Gabriel to the left” occurs also in Enoch 24.1, whereas according to Ascension of Isaiah 8.7, all “angels are to the left”. On the identity of Uriel with Suriel, see Ginzberg,

*Unbekannte Sekte*, 35–37 and 245. See note 60 in “Ten Generations.”

441. BaR 2.10 and 3.12; Konen 38; PR 47, 188a–188b; BHM VI, 47; Kaneh 31d–32a. On Issachar, see text on p. 408. On Reuben, see text on p. 339. On Dan see text on p. 579. As to the south being the blessed region, see text on p. 645. *Likkutim* II, 2b–3b, and DZ 19, consider that the division of the twelve tribes corresponds to the twelve signs of the Zodiac.

442. Targum Yerushalmi Num. 2.3–25. Comp. the following note.

443. Kaneh 32b–32c; Midrash Aggada Num. 2.2; Yerahmeel 53, 149; Ziyoni, Bemidbar (fragmentary); *Imre No’am*, Num. 10.34; Sabba, Bemidbar 110a–110b; Al-Barceloni 8. Epstein, Mikkadmoniyyot 87–90, justly remarks that the Haggadah concerning the standards found in Targum Yerushalmi (see the preceding note) goes back to a source made use of by these medieval authors. Compare also with pp. 688 and 692.

444. Sifre N., 84; Meleket ha-Mishkan 14, 83; Tan. B. IV, 12 (the short statements of the tannaitic sources are elaborated here); Midrash in Yalkut at the end of Exodus = *Likkutim*, II, 13b–15b. Comp. also Yerushalmi ‘Erubin 5, 22c; Yerahmeel 53, 151–152; text on p. 692.

## THE CAMP

The camp was in the form of a square, twelve thousand cubits on each side, and in the middle was the space, four thousand cubits in size, for the sanctuary, and the dwelling place of priests and Levites. In the East of the sanctuary lived Moses, Aaron, and Aaron’s sons; the Levites of the family of Kohath lived in the South, the sons of Gershon in the West, and the sons of Merari in the North. Each of these divisions had for its dwelling place a space of a hundred cubits, while each group of three tribes that joined under one standard had a space of four thousand cubits. This was only for the dwelling place of the people, the cattle were outside the encampment, and the cloud of glory separated the dwelling places of the human beings from those of the animals. Rivers surrounded the camp from without, and so also were the differ-



ent groups separated one from the other by rivers. But in order that on the Sabbath, when riding was prohibited, intercourse among the different parts of the camp might not be rendered impossible, there were bridges of boards over the rivers. The purple color of the cloud of glory was reflected in the waters of the rivers, so that it spread afar a radiance like that of the sun and the stars. The heathens, whenever they beheld these wondrous radiant waters, were frightened and feared Israel, but at the same time praised God for the miracles He wrought for Israel.<sup>445</sup>

These were miracles that were visible to the outer world as well, but there were others that were known to Israel alone. During their forty years' march they had no need of change of raiment. The robe of purple with which the angels clothed each one among them at their exodus from Egypt remained ever new; and as a snail's shell grows with it, so did their garments grow with them. Fire could not injure these garments, and though they wore the same things throughout forty years, still they were not annoyed by vermin, yes, even the corpses of this generation were spared by worms.<sup>446</sup>

During their marches, as well as in their stay at a certain place, they had not only the four standards that divided them into four groups of three tribes each, each individual tribe had furthermore its own special spot and its special ensign. Reuben's flag was red, and on it were pictured mandrakes. Simeon's flag was green, with a picture of the city of Shechem upon it, for the forefather of the tribe had conquered this city. Judah's flag was azure, and bore the form of a lion. Issachar's flag was black, and had two figures, the sun and the moon, for from this tribe sprung the learned men who busied themselves with astronomy and the science of the calendar. Zebulun's flag was white, with the form of a ship, for this tribe was devoted to navigation. Dan's flag had a color like a sapphire, with

the figure of a serpent. Naphtali's flag was a dull red, the color of wine, and on it was the figure of a hind, in memory of its forefather, who was like "a hind let loose." Asher's Bag was red like fire, and had the token of an olive tree, because this tribe had much olive oil of excellent quality. The two tribes descended from Joseph—Ephraim, and Manasseh—both had flags of the same deep black color with a representation of Egypt, but they had other forms besides. Ephraim's had the picture of a bull, to symbolize Joshua, sprung of this tribe, whose glory was like "the firstling of his bullock, that pusheth the people together to the ends of the earth;" whereas Manasseh's was that of a unicorn, symbolizing the judge Gideon that sprang from this tribe, "who with his hems of unicorns pushed the people." Benjamin's flag had a color composed of all the other eleven colors, and a wolf for his token, Jacob having described this tribe as "a wolf that ravineth." The different colors of the flags corresponded to the colors of the stones set in the breastplate of the high priest, on which were engraved the names of the twelve tribes. Reuben's stone had a red color like his flag, Simeon's flag was green like the color of his stone, and in this way with all the tribes the color of stones and of Bags harmonized.<sup>447</sup>

---

445. Midrash in Yalkut I, 426=*Likkutim*, II, 13b; Yerahmeel 53, 155–156. A different version of this legend is found in Yalkut I, 427=*Likkutim* II, 13b. Comp. Tan. B. IV, 12; Tan. Bemidbar 12; *Batte Midrashot* III, 18; text on pp. 576 and 719. The description of the camp as a square of twelve miles is already found in very old sources; see, *e. g.*, Mekilta Bahodesh 21 62b; 9, 71b, and in many other passages. Comp. note 210.

446. PR 10, 92a–92b; DR 7.11; Shir 4.11; Tehillim 23, 199–200; compare with p. 612. Justin, *Dialogue*, 131, is acquainted with the legend concerning the miraculous growth of the garments.

447. BaR 2.7; Tan. B. IV, 12; Midrash Aggada Num. 2.2 (Issachar's emblem was a donkey, that of Zebulun was a house); Yerahmeel 52, 153, where it is stated that Issachar's



emblem was a donkey, as in Midrash Aggada; Ziyoni, Num. 1.1; Shu'aib Bemidbar, 74a; *Imre No'am* at the end of Bemidbar. The old form of this legend, as given in Targum Yerushalmi Num. 2.3, *seq.*, knows only of four insignia for the four main divisions of the camp, which are: Lion for Judah; manikin for Reuben (neither **ברחילא** of the editions, nor **בראילא** of the MS. is correct; read **ברונא=ברולא**, literally, "little son"); fish for Ephraim; serpent for Dan. These four images of animals are chosen in accordance with Gen. 48.16; 49.9, if, where Judah is described as a lion, Dan as a serpent, Ephraim as a fish, while the manikin for Reuben owes its origin to the mandrakes found by Reuben, which looked like manikins; comp. Index, s. v. The later Haggadah could not resist the temptation of identifying the four insignia of the camp with the figures at the holy throne (compare with p. 685, concerning the correspondence of the celestial divisions with the terrestrial ones), and hence in Lekah Num. 2.2, *seq.*, the eagle replaces the serpent. Epstein, *Mikkadmoniyyot* 87, *seq.*, is to be corrected accordingly. Yerahmeel 53, 152–153, gives the lengthy exposition of the symbolic representations of the four elements by the four standards: Similar expositions in a somewhat abridged form are found in other writings of the Middle Age; see Ziyoni, *loc. cit.*, and Epstein, *loc. cit.* As to the correspondence between the colors of the Rags and those of the stones in the high priests' breast-plate, to which the sources just quoted refer, see the description of these stones in text on pp. 651–652. God's flag displayed black and white lines in the form of tents.

## THE BLASPHEMER AND THE SABBATH-BREAKER

When Israel received the Torah from God, all the other nations envied them and said: "Why were these chosen by God out of all the nations?" But God stopped their mouths, replying: "Bring Me your family records, and My children shall bring their family records." The nations could not prove the purity of their families, but Israel stood without a blemish, every man among them ready to prove his pure descent, so that the nations burst into praise at Israel's family purity, which was rewarded by God with the Torah for this its excellence.<sup>448</sup>

How truly chastity and purity reigned among Israel was shown by the division of the

people into groups and tribes. Among all these thousands was found only a single man who was not of pure descent, and who therefore at the pitching of the standards could attach himself to none of the groups. This man was the son of Shelomith, a Danite woman, and the Egyptian,<sup>449</sup> whom Moses, when a youth of eighteen, had slain for having offered violence to Shelomith, the incident that had necessitated Moses' flight from Egypt. It had happened as follows: When Moses came to Goshen to visit his parents, he witnessed how an Egyptian struck an Israelite, and the latter, knowing that Moses was in high favor at Pharaoh's court, sought his assistance, appealing to him with these words: "O, my lord, this Egyptian by night forced his way into my house, bound me with chains, and in my presence offered violence to my wife. Now he wants to kill me besides." Indignant at this infamous action of the Egyptian, Moses slew him, so that the tormented Israelite might go home. The latter, on reaching his house, informed his wife that he intended getting a divorce from her, as it was not proper for a member of the house of Jacob to live together with a woman that had been defiled. When the wife told her brothers of her husband's intentions, they wanted to kill their brother-in-law, who eluded them only by timely flight.<sup>450</sup>

The Egyptian's violence was not without issue, for Shelomith gave birth to a son whom she reared as a Jew, even though his father had been an Egyptian. When the division of the people according to the four standards took place, this son of Shelomith appeared among the Danites into whose division he meant to be admitted, pointing out to them that his mother was a woman of the tribe of Dan. The Danites, however, rejected him, saying: "The commandment of God says, 'each man by his own standard, with the ensign of his father's house.' Paternal, not maternal descent decides a man's admission



to a tribe.” As this man was not content with this answer, his case was brought to Moses’ court, who also passed judgment against him. This so embittered him that he blasphemed the Ineffable Name which he had heard on Mount Sinai, and cursed Moses. He at the same time ridiculed the recently announced law concerning the shewbread that was to be set on the table in the sanctuary every Sabbath, saying: “It behooves a king to eat fresh bread daily, and no stale bread.”<sup>451</sup>

At the same time as the crime of blasphemy was committed by the son of Shelomith, Zelophehad committed another capital crime. On a Sabbath day he tore trees out of the ground although he had been warned by witnesses not to break the Sabbath. The overseers whom Moses had appointed to enforce the observance of the Sabbath rest seized him and brought him to the school, where Moses, Aaron, and other leaders of the people studied the Torah.

In both these cases Moses was uncertain how to pass judgment, for, although he knew that capital punishment must follow the breaking of the Sabbath, still the manner of capital punishment in this case had not yet been revealed to him. Zelophehad was in the meantime kept in prison until Moses should learn the details of the case, for the law says that a man accused of a capital charge may not be given liberty of person. The sentence that Moses received from God was to execute Zelophehad in the presence of all the community by stoning him. This was accordingly done, and after the execution his corpse was for a short time suspended from the gallows.<sup>452</sup>

The sin of the Sabbath-breaker was the occasion that gave rise to God’s commandment of *Zizit* to Israel. For He said to Moses, “Dost thou know how it came to pass that this man broke the Sabbath?” Moses: “I do not know.” God: “On week days he wore phylacteries on his head and phylacteries on his arm to remind him of

his duties, but on the Sabbath day, on which no phylacteries may be worn, he had nothing to call his duties to his mind, and he broke the Sabbath. Go now, Moses, and find for Israel a commandment the observance of which is not limited to week days only, but which will influence them on Sabbath days and on holy days as well.” Moses selected the commandment of *Zizit*, the sight of which will recall to the Israelites all the other commandments of God.<sup>453</sup>

Whereas in the case of the Sabbath breaker Moses had been certain that the sin was punishable by death, and had been in doubt only concerning the manner of execution, in the case of the blasphemer matters were different. Here Moses was in doubt concerning the nature of the crime, for he was not even sure if it was at all a capital offence. Hence he did not have these two men imprisoned together, because one of them was clearly a criminal, whereas the status of the other was undetermined. But God instructed Moses that the blasphemer was also to be stoned to death, and that this was to be the punishment for blasphemers in the future.<sup>454</sup>

There were two other cases beside these two in Moses’ career on which he could not pass judgment without appealing to God. These were the claims of Zelophehad’s daughters to the inheritance of their father, and the case of the unclean that might not participate in the offering of the paschal lamb. Moses hastened in his appeal to God concerning the two last mentioned cases, but took his time with the two former, for on these depended human lives. In this Moses set the precedent to the judges among Israel to despatch civil cases with all celerity, but to proceed slowly in criminal cases. In all these cases, however, he openly confessed that he did not at the time know the proper decision, thereby teaching the judges of Israel to consider it no disgrace, when necessary, to consult others in cases when they were not sure of true judgment.<sup>455</sup>



448. Esfah in Yalkut I, 683. Comp. also BaR 13.8, where it is said: The tribes of Reuben, Simon and Levi preserved their family records, *i.e.*, did not intermarry with those who were not of pure Jewish blood, and therefore Scripture describes their family trees separately from those of other tribes (Exod. 6.14, *seq.*). Compare footnote 6 on p. 434. The Gentiles said: “The Egyptians were the masters of the Hebrew men, how much more so of the Hebrew women!” God therefore commanded the angel who is appointed over pregnancy to make the Jewish children look like their fathers. No one doubted any longer the purity of the Jewish race; Shir 4.2; PK 10, 82b; BaR 9.154; comp. also BR 79 (end) and Kiddushin 70b. Comp. p. 219, note 204.

449. WR 33.4–5; BaR 9.14; Tan B. III, 163; Tan. Emor 24; Targum Yerushalmi Lev. 29.10; comp. also BaR 3.6, which reads: Israel’s redemption from Egypt was rewarded for the chastity of the women, see also Zohar II, 4a; Sifre 24.10.

450. Yashar, Shemot, 133b. Another version of this legend is given in text on p. 486; see also PRE 48 (here the wronged husband is described as belonging to the tribe of Levi), and footnote 7 on p. 436.

451. WR 33.3; Tan. B. III, 162–163; Tan. Emor 23–24; Sifra, Lekah (cursed Moses!), and Tan. Yerushalmi on Lev. 24.11; Sabba’ (at the end of Emor). Zohar III, 106a, which is very likely based on a midrashic source (comp. *Hadar, Da’at* and *Pa’aneah* on Lev., *loc. cit.*), reads: The bastard attempted to cause the death of Moses by cursing him with the Name, and in this way to avenge his Egyptian father who had been killed by Moses in the same manner; see text on p. 491. The secret of the bastard’s descent was divulged in consequence of his quarrel with the Danites (comp. also Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 961, on Prov. 25), for Moses himself did not care to reveal family secrets (see Tosefta ‘Eduyyot, at the end), especially as bastards die young if their descent remains a secret; see Yerushalmi Yebamot 8, 9c–9d; WR 33.6–7; Wisdom 3.16 and 4.6. According to a later source (comp. Azulai, *Petah ‘Enayim* on Yebamot 78a), the short-living of bastards dates only from the time of Ezra, who prayed to God to make the bastards die young, so that the purity of the Jewish people might be preserved. The mocking words of the bastard with reference to the law concerning the shewbread were without foundation. It is true that the leaves remained a whole week on the table; they were, however, as fresh at the end of the week as at the time they were taken from the oven; Menahot 29a. Comp. RITBA (ר״טב א׳) on Yoma 21a.

452. Sifre N., 105, 113, 114, 133; Sifre Z., 103–105; Sifra 24.12; Shabbat 96b; Baba Batra 119b. To exculpate—partly at least—the father of the pious virgins (com-

pare with p. 785), it is said that Zelophehad was willing to sacrifice his life that the people might learn by his death that the desecration of the Sabbath is a very grievous sin; comp. Targum Yerushalmi Num. 15.32–35 and *Imre No’am*, at the end of Shelah who gives a Midrash, not Targum, as source for his statement. See also notes 813, 814. Philo, *Moses*, 2(3).27–28 (which reads: They found Moses in the house of study; this is in agreement with Sifra), and *Special. Leg., de Col. Par.*, 8, describes the episode of the Sabbath breaker in a manner similar to that found in rabbinic sources. According to Tosefta Yebamot 1.10 and parallel passages in Babli and Yerushalmi, the high-priestly family of Caiafas (קיאפא, “ape”) hailed from Bet Mekoshesh, “the house of the stick-gatherer”. In view of the legend—undoubtedly Jewish—found in Koran 2.60, that Moses transformed the Sabbath breakers into apes, one is inclined to trace some connection between the Caiafas (“apes”) and their place of origin, “the house of the stick-gatherer”, the מקושש being the typical case of the Sabbath breaker. See note 790.

453. ER 26, 132; this is very likely the source of Mahzor Vitry, 637; *Orehot Hayyim*, 58d; Lekah and *Imre No’am* on Num. 15.38.

454. Sifra 24.12; comp. also the references to Philo and tannaitic Midrashim given in note 452.

455. Targum Yerushalmi Lev. 24.12; Num. 9.8, 15.34, and 27.5; comp. also Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 2(3).24, and Sifre N., 68.

## THE UNGRATEFUL MULTITUDE

When God commanded Israel to set out from Sinai and continue their march, the Israelites were glad, for during their stay in that place they had throughout eleven days received new laws daily, and they hoped that after having departed from the holy mountain they would receive no further laws. Hence, instead of making a day’s march from Sinai, as God had commanded them, they marched incessantly for three days, in order to be as far as possible from the holy spot. They behaved like a boy who runs quickly away after dismissal from school, that his teacher might not call him back. Although this antipathy to His laws vexed God, He did not therefore forsake them, but let the Ark move



before them as long as they desired to continue the march. For it was by this token that the Israelites knew that the Shekinah was among them, as God had promised them. As often as they broke camp or pitched camp Moses would say to them: "Do what the Shekinah within the Ark bids you do." But they would not believe Moses that the Shekinah dwelt among them unless he spoke the words: "Rise up, Lord, and let Thine enemies be scattered; and let them that hate Thee flee before Thee," whereupon the Ark would begin to move, and they were convinced of the presence of the Shekinah. The Ark furthermore gave the signal for breaking camp by soaring up high,<sup>456</sup> and then swiftly moving before the camp at a distance of three days' march, until it found a suitable spot upon which Israel might encamp.<sup>457</sup>

Hardly had they departed from Sinai when they once more began to lead the wicked course of life that they had for a time abandoned. They began to seek a pretext to renounce God and again to be addicted to idolatry.<sup>458</sup> They complained about the forced marches which at God's command they had been obliged to make after their departure from Sinai, and in this way showed their ingratitude to God who wanted them as quickly as possible to reach the Holy Land, and for this reason allowed them to cover an eleven days' distance in three days.<sup>459</sup> Their murmurs and complaints, however, were not silent, but quite loud, for they were anxious that God should hear their wicked words. In punishment for their defamation of the Divine glory, God sent upon them a fire emanating from that very glory.<sup>460</sup>

Upon twelve occasions did God send a Divine fire upon earth, six times as a token of honor and distinction, but as many times as a punishment. To the first class belong the fire at the consecration of the Tabernacle, at the offering of Gideon as at that of Manoah and of David; at the dedication of Solomon's Temple, and

at the offering of Elijah upon Mount Carmel. The six fatal fires are the following: the fire that consumed Nadab and Abihu; that which wrought havoc among the murmuring and complaining multitude; the fire that consumed the company of Korah; the fire that destroyed Job's sheep, and the two fires that burned the first and the second troops which Ahaziah sent against Elijah.<sup>461</sup>

This celestial fire wrought the greatest havoc among the idolatrous tribe of Dan, and among the mixed multitude that had joined the Israelites upon their exodus from Egypt.<sup>462</sup> The elders of the people turned to Moses, saying: "Rather deliver us as a sheep to the slaughter, but not to a celestial fire that consumes earthly fire."<sup>463</sup> They should by right have prayed to God themselves, but in this instance they were like the king's son who had kindled his father's anger against him, and who now hastened to his father's friend, begging him to intercede for him. So did Israel say to Moses: "Go thou to God and pray for us." Moses instantly granted their wish, and God without delay heard Moses' prayer and halted the destroying fire.<sup>464</sup> But God did not simply take the fire away from Israel and put it elsewhere, for it was of such a nature that it would gradually have spread on all sides and finally have destroyed everything. It had in this way caused the destruction in Israel, for, beginning at one end of the camp, it spread so rapidly that one could at no time tell how far it had gone. That the presence of this Divine fire might continue to restrain Israel from sin, God did not allow it to rise back to heaven, but it found its place on the altar of the Tabernacle, where it consumed all the offerings that were brought during Israel's stay in Egypt. This is the same fire that destroyed Aaron's sons as well as Korah's company, and it is the Divine fire that every mortal beholds in the moment of his death.<sup>465</sup>



On this occasion also it was evident that pious men are greater than the angels, for Moses took bundles of wool and laid them upon the Divine fire, which thereupon went out.<sup>466</sup> He then said to the people: "If you repent of your sin, then the fire will go out, but otherwise it will burst forth and consume you."<sup>467</sup>

456. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 739: Wayekullu in *Likkutim*, II, 17a–17b. On the ark, see text on pp. 686 and 806.

457. Sifre N., 82; Sifre Z., 191 (read קורסור "cursor" for קנסור); Tan. Wa-Yakhel 7; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 10.33.

458. Sifre N., 85; Sifre Z., 79 and 193.

459. Rashi and Midrash Aggada on Num. 11.1, which is very likely based on an older source. Concerning the "forced marches" see Sifre N., 82, and Sifre D., 2; Sifre Z., 191. In Sifre D., 2, it is said that if the Israelites had not sinned, they would have reached the Holy Land in one day. Comp. note 456.

460. Sifre N., 85; Sifre Z., 79 and 193–194; PRE 35 (on the text comp. *Batte Midrashot*, III, 30); Targum Yerushalmi Num. 11.1. Comp. R. Bahya on Num. 11.1, who gives a different view to the effect that they were afraid of Moses to utter their complaints in a loud voice.

461. An unknown Midrash quoted by R. Bahya on Lev. 9.24, and in MHG Num. 11.1. Sifre Z., is not the source of this Haggadah, as was erroneously assumed by Horovitz who incorporated it in his edition of this tannaitic Midrash (pp. 79–80), for R. Bahya was not acquainted with this tannaitic work. *Toledot Yizhak*, Lev., *loc. cit.*, is directly based on R. Bahya, and is not to be regarded as an independent source. See also PRK, 16a, and text on p. 103.

462. Sifre N., 84 and 86, which also gives the opposite view that the tire caused the death of the most prominent men; Sifre Z., 194; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 11.1; Kiddushin 75b; Yerushalmi Gittin 1, 43d (top); BR 95.4; Tan. B. IV, 60; Tan. Beha'loteka 16 (the members of the Synhedrion were consumed by the fire=Sifre Z., *loc. cit.*); BaR 15.24.

463. PRE 52; *Batte Midrashot*, III, 30; compare with p. 13.

464. Sifre N., 86; Sifre Z., 194.

465. PRE 53; Sifre Z., 80 and 194 (according to the second passage the tire disappeared in the same place where it broke out; the first passage is therefore a literal quotation from PRE, and not of tannaitic origin like the second); Sifre N., 85–86. Concerning the fire of the altar, see text on pp. 659–660.

466. Tan. Wa-Yishlah 2; Yalkut I, 732 (in this place the sources from which the extracts were taken are not described; the quotation from Sifre 86 closes with במקומה; the extract which follows it, up till שקעה בארץ, is taken from PRE 53; the next passage is practically identical with Tan., *loc. cit.*; the closing remarks on the reason for the punishment by fire is found in Tan. B. IV, 60, though expressed in a somewhat different manner); Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 813.

467. Sifre N., 86; Sifre Z., 194.

## THE FLESH-POTS OF EGYPT

Not mindful of the punishment by fire, Israel still did not mend their ways, but soon again began to murmur against God. As so often before, it was again the mixed multitude that rebelled against God and Moses, saying: "Who shall give us flesh to eat? We remember the fish that we did eat in Egypt freely; the cucumbers, and the melons, and the leeks, and the onions, and the garlick. But now our soul is dried away: there is nothing at all, beside this manna before our eyes." But all this murmuring and these complaints were only a pretext to sever themselves from God, for first of all, they actually possessed many herds and much cattle, enough plentifully to satisfy their lusting after flesh if they had really felt it; and manna, furthermore, had the flavor of every conceivable kind of food, so all they had to do while eating it was to wish for a certain dish and they instantly perceived in manna the taste of the desired food. It is true that manna never gave them the flavor of the five vegetables they mentioned, but they should have been grateful to God for sparing them the taste of these vegetables injurious to health. Here they showed their perversity in being dissatisfied with measures for which they should have been grateful to God. Manna displeased them because it did not contain the flavor injurious to health, and they also objected



to it because it remained in their bodies, wherefore they said: "The manna will swell in our stomachs, for can there be a human being that takes food without excreting it?" God had, as a special mark of distinction, given them this food of the angels, which is completely dissolved in the body, and of which they could always partake without injury to their health. It is a clear proof of the excellent taste of manna that at a later time, when the last manna fell on the day of Moses' death, they ate of it for forty days, and would not make use of other food until the manna had been exhausted to the last grain, clearly showing that the taking of any different food was disagreeable. But while manna was at hand in abundance, they complained about seeing before them, morning and evening, no other food than manna.<sup>468</sup>

The true state of affairs was that they had a lurking dissatisfaction with the yoke of the law. It is certain that they had not had in Egypt better food for which they now longed, for their taskmasters, far from giving them dainties, gave them not even straw for making bricks. But in Egypt they had lived undisturbed by laws, and it was this unrestrained life that they desired back. Especially hard for them were the new laws on marriage, for in Egypt they had been accustomed to marry those closely related by blood, from whom they were now obliged to separate. They now trooped together in families, and awaiting the moment when Moses, about to leave the house of study, would have to pass them, they began to murmur publicly,<sup>469</sup> accusing him of being to blame for all the sufferings they had been obliged to bear. Upon his advice, they said, had they abandoned a most fruitful land, and instead of enjoying the great fortune promised to them, they were now wandering about in misery, suffering thirst from lack of water, and were apprehensive of dying of starva-

tion in case the supply of manna should cease. When these and similar abuses were uttered against Moses, one out of the people stepped forth and exhorted them not so soon to forget the many benefactions they had known from Moses, and not to despair of God's aid and support. But the multitude upon this became even more excited, and raged and shouted more violently than ever against Moses.<sup>470</sup> This conduct of Israel called forth God's wrath, but Moses, instead of interceding for the people, began to complain of their treatment of him, and announced to God that he could not now execute the commission he had undertaken in Egypt, namely, to lead Israel in spite of all reverses, until he had reached the promised land. He now begged God to relieve him of the leadership of the people in some way, and at the same time to stand by him in his present predicament, that he might satisfy the people's desire for flesh.<sup>471</sup>

---

468. Sifre N., 86–89; Sifre Z., 194–198; BaR 7.4; ShR 25.3. Concerning the manna, see details given in text on pp. 570, *seq.*, 747, and note 90. The rather obscure remarks of Tosefta Sotah 6.7 about the abundance of fish Israel enjoyed in Egypt are to be explained in accordance with the legend given in note 364. Comp. also DZ 19. A very interesting conversation between R. Meshullam (ben Kalonymos) and an Arabian prince about the ingratitude of the Israelites, who complained about the heavenly gift of manna, is recorded in Sabba', Beha'aloteka, 116b.

469. Sifre N., 87 and 90; Sifre Z., 195 and 198–199; Shabbat 130a; Yoma 75a; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 4, 68d; BaR 15.24; Tan. B. IV, 61; Tan. Beha'aloteka 16; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 11.5 and 10. In Mekilta RS 26, חָנַם is taken in its literal sense: they did not wish to use their cattle for food, and desired to receive meat like bread—manna—for nothing.

470. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 13.1. The tannaitic sources maintain that Num. 11.7 is to be taken as the protest of Scripture against the slanderous words of Israel in the preceding verse; see Sifre N., 88; Sifre Z., 195; Tosefta Sotah 9.2. Josephus makes one of the people utter the protest!

471. Sifre N., 90; Sifre Z., 199; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 11.12–15.



## THE APPOINTMENT OF THE SEVENTY ELDERS

**T**he sad predicament of Moses on this occasion is partly traceable to the fact that he had to face alone the murmurs and complaints of the people without the accustomed assistance of the seventy elders. Since the exodus from Egypt the seventy elders of the people had always been at his side, but these had recently been killed by the fire from heaven at Taberah, so that he now stood all alone. This death overtook the elders because like Nadab and Abihu they had not shown sufficient reverence in ascending Mount Sinai on the day of the revelation, when, in view of the Divine vision, they conducted themselves in an unseemly manner. Like Nadab and Abihu the elders would have received instantaneous punishment for their offense, had not God been unwilling to spoil the joyful day of the revelation by their death. But they had to pay the penalty nevertheless: Nadab and Abihu, by being burned at the consecration of the Tabernacle, and the elders similarly, at Taberah.<sup>472</sup>

As Moses now utterly refused to bear the burden of the people alone, God said to him: "I gave thee sufficient understanding and wisdom to guide My children alone, that thou mightest be distinguished by this honor. Thou, however, wishest to share this guidance with others. Go, then, and expect no help from Me, 'but I will take of the spirit that is upon thee and will put it upon them; and they shall bear the burden of the people with thee, that thou bear it not thyself alone.'"<sup>473</sup>

God bade Moses choose as his helpers in the guidance of the people such men as had already been active leaders and officers in Egypt. In the days of Egyptian bondage it frequently happened that the officers of the children of Israel were beaten if the people had not fulfilled

their task in making bricks, but "he that is willing to sacrifice himself for the benefit of Israel shall be rewarded with honor, dignity, and the gift of the Holy Spirit." The officers suffered in Egypt for Israel, and were now found worthy of having the Holy Spirit come upon them.<sup>474</sup> God moreover said to Moses: "With kindly words welcome the elders to their new dignity, saying, 'Hail to you that are deemed worthy by God of being fit for this office.' At the same time, however, speak seriously with them also, saying, 'Know ye that the Israelites are a troublesome and stiffnecked people, and that you must ever be prepared to have them curse you or cast stones at you.'"

God commanded the selection of the elders to take place at the Tabernacle, that Israel might reverence them, saying, "Surely these are worthy men," but they were not permitted with Moses to enter the Tabernacle and hear God's word. The people were however mistaken in assuming that God's word reached the ears of the elders, for He spoke with Moses alone, even though the prophetic spirit came upon them also.<sup>475</sup>

Now when Moses wished to proceed to the selection of the seventy elders, he was in a sore predicament because he could not evenly divide the number seventy among the twelve tribes, and was anxious to show no partiality to one tribe over another, which would lead to dissatisfaction among Israel. Bezalel, son of Uri, however, gave Moses good advice. He took seventy slips of paper on which was written "elder," and with them two blank slips, and mixed all these in an urn. Seventy-two elders, six to each tribe, now advanced and each drew a slip. Those whose slips were marked "elder" were elected, while those who had drawn blank slips were rejected, but in such a wise that they could not well accuse Moses of partiality.<sup>476</sup>

By this method of appointment, it came to pass that there were six elders for each tribe ex-



cept the tribe of Levi. The names of those chosen were: from the tribe of Reuben—Hanoch, Carmi, Pallu, Zaccur, Eliab, Nemuel; from the tribe of Simeon—Jamin, Jachin, Zohar, Ohad, Shaul, Zimri; from the tribe of Levi—Amram, Hananiah, Nethanel, Sithri; from the tribe of Judah—Zerah, Dan, Jonadab, Bezalel, Shephatiah, Nahshon; from the tribe of Issachar—Zuar, Uzza, Igal, Palti, Othniel, Haggi; from the tribe of Zebulun—Sered, Elon, Sodi, Oholiab, Elijah, Nimshi; from the tribe of Benjamin—Senaah, Kislon, Elidad, Ahitub, Jediael, Mattaniah; from the tribe of Joseph—Jair, Joezer, Malchiel, Ado-niram, Abiram, Sethur; from the tribe of Dan—Gedaliah, Jogli, Ahinoam, Ahiezer, Daniel, Seraiah; from tribe of Naphtali—Elhanan, Elia-kim, Elishama, Semachiah, Zabdi, Johanan; from the tribe of Gad—Haggai, Zarhi, Keni, Matta-thiah, Zechariah, Shuni; from the tribe of Asheri—Pashhur, Shelomi, Samuel, Shalom, Shecaniah, Abihu.<sup>477</sup>

Moses gathered these seventy elders of noble extraction and of lofty and pious character round about the tent in which God used to reveal Himself, bidding thirty of them take their stand on the south side, thirty on the northern, and ten on the eastern, whereas he himself stood on the western side. For this tent was thirty cubits long and ten cubits wide, so that a cubit each was apportioned to the elders.<sup>478</sup> God was so pleased with the appointment of the elders that, just as on the day of the revelation, He descended from heaven and permitted the spirit of prophecy to come upon the elders, so that they received the prophetic gift to the end of their days, as God had put upon them of the spirit of Moses. But Moses' spirit was not diminished by this, he was like a burning candle from which many others are lighted, but which is not therefore diminished; and so likewise was the wisdom of Moses unimpaired. Even after the appointment of the elders did Moses remain

the leader of the people, for he was the head of this Sanhedrin of seventy members which he guided and directed.<sup>479</sup>

The position of the elders was not of the same rank as that of Moses, for he was the king of Israel, and it was for this reason that God had bidden him to secure trumpets, to use them for the calling of the assembly, that this instrument might be blown before him as before a king. Hence shortly before Moses' death these trumpets were recalled from use, for his successor Joshua did not inherit from him either his kingly dignity or these royal insignia. Not until David's time were the trumpets used again which Moses had fashioned in the desert.<sup>480</sup>

---

472. Tan. IV, 60–61; Tan. Beha'aloteka 16; BaR 15.24; quotation from an unknown Midrash in Yalkut I, 732 (on the source of Yalkut, see note 466). Compare with pp. 621 and 662. According to BaR 13.20, the elders appointed by Moses were the same men who, braving all danger, accompanied him on his first visit to Pharaoh's court. For the opposite view see text on p. 516. The explanation of Exod. 24.2 in Lekah agrees with the view of Ephraem I, 223A, according to which the elders received their prophetic gift not at Sinai, but later when Moses appointed them. Concerning the death of the elders by the fire from heaven at Tabera, see reference in note 462.

473. Tan. B. IV, 61; Tan. Beha'aloteka 16; 15.25.

474. Tan. B. IV, 58; Tan. Beha'aloteka 13; BaR 15.20; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 11.16; Sifre N., 92; Sifre Z., 200. Compare with p. 665.

475. Sifre N., 92; Sifre Z., 200. Compare with p. 751.

476. Midrashic fragment (Esfah?) published by Buber, from a Vatican MS., in the Hebrew periodical *Keneset Israel* (1885), 309, *seq.*, and thence by Chones, in his supplement to *Rab Pe'alim*, 149–150. Comp. Sifre N. 95; Sifre., 201–202; Sahnhedrin 17a and Yerushalmi 1, 19c; Tan. B. IV, 56–57; Tan. Beha'aloteka 12; BaR 15.19. Compare with p. 682. The Vatican fragment made use of some, and perhaps of all, the sources just quoted.

477. Esfahin Yalkut I, 136, where two lists of names are given; a third list is found in the fragment quoted in the preceding note. But none of the lists has been carefully preserved, as quite a considerable number of names is corrupt. Despite the corrupt state of the texts, one easily recognizes the principle guiding the authors in the selection of the



names. The elders of each tribe bear names which are found in Scripture to have been borne by persons belonging to that particular tribe; comp., *e. g.*, the names of the six elders of the tribe of Simeon with Gen. 46.10 and Num. 25.14. In view of this fact, it is safe to assume that כנניה is to be read instead of חנניה, since the former name is that of a Levite (see 1 Chron. 15.22), but not the latter. A fourth list of names of the elders is found in Mahzor Vitry 388, giving as his authority a responsum of R. Nissim (flourished in North Africa at the beginning of the eleventh century), which enumerates the names of the seventy-eight pious men (he counts six elders for each tribe, and adds Moses, Joshua, Caleb, Eliezer, Ithamar, and Phineas) who wrote the section of Haazinu (=Deut. 32.1–43) in Scripture. It is hard to say anything definitely as to the meaning of “the writing of Haazinu”, but there can be no doubt that seventy-two of these seventy-eight pious men are meant to stand for the seventy-two elders appointed by Moses. See also Aristeas 47–50, which gives a list of the seventy-two elders who translated the Scripture into Greek. In Esfah (both lists), among the elders of the tribe of Benjamin, there is one named סנאב or סניאב, for which סנאה or סנאה is to be read in accordance with Nehem. 11.9 and 1 Chron. 9.7. The tannaitic sources also call a Benjamite family “the sons of סנאה”; comp., *e. g.*, Ta’anit 4.5.

478. Esfah in Yalkut I, 737. As to this tent, see text on p. 617, and note 369.

479. Sifre Z., 200–201 (it was one of the ten times that God descended upon earth; comp. notes 260 and 919); Sifre N., 93; Tan. B. IV, 57–58 and 61; Tan. Beha’aloteka 12 and 16; BaR; 15.19, and 25, as well as 13.20; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 11.23. That the gift of prophecy conferred upon the elders remained with them until the end of their days, is asserted by Onkelos and Targum Yerushalmi Num. 11.25, whereas Sifre, *loc. cit.*, gives a different opinion. See text on p. 697. The likening of Moses to a burning candle from which many others are kindled occurs not only in the Midrashim just quoted, but also in Philo *De Gigantibus* 6, from which Theodoretus, Num. 11.17, may have borrowed it. In the philosophic literature of the Middle Ages this figure of speech is of frequent occurrence with reference to the wise and their disciples; see, *e. g.*, *Tikkun Middot ha-Nefesh* 5.2, *Musare ha-Pilosofim* 3.2 and 6.9. Comp. also Sifre Z., 163, and Aphraates, 122.

480. Tan. B. IV, 51–54, which also gives the conflicting view that not even David made use of the trumpets, neither of those fashioned by Moses nor of any others; Tan. Beha’aloteka 9–10; BaR 15.15–16; Koheleth 8.8; Menahot 28b; BR 96.3; Sifre N. 75; Z., 70. A detailed description of these trumpets and the music produced by them is given in Sifre N., 72–74; Sifre Z., 70–73; Yerahmeel 53, 151–152.

## ELDAD AND MEDAD

When Moses had completed the appointment of the elders and had asked them to accompany him to the Tabernacle, there to receive the Holy Spirit, Eldad and Medad, two of these elders, in their humility, did not obey his summons, but hid themselves, deeming themselves unworthy of this distinction. God rewarded them for their humility by distinguishing them five-fold above the other elders. These prophesied what would take place on the following day, announcing the appearance of the quails, but Eldad and Medad prophesied what was still veiled in the distant future. The elders prophesied only on this one day, but Eldad and Medad retained the gift for life. The elders died in the desert, whereas Eldad and Medad were the leaders of the people after the death of Joshua. The elders are not mentioned by name in the Scriptures, whereas these two are called by name. The elders, furthermore, had received the prophetic gift from Moses, whereas Eldad and Medad received it directly from God.<sup>481</sup>

Eldad now began to make prophecies, saying: “Moses will die, and Joshua the son of Nun will be his successor as leader of the people, whom he will lead into the land of Canaan, and to whom he will give it as a possession.” Medad’s prophecy was as follows: “Quails will come from the sea and will cover the camp of Israel, but they will bring evil to the people.” Beside these prophecies, both together announced the following revelation: “At the end of days there will come up out of the land of Magog a king to whom all nations will do homage. Crowned kings, princes, and warriors with shields will gather to make war upon those returned from exile in the land of Israel. But God, the Lord, will stand by Israel in their need and will slay all their enemies by hurling a flame from under His glorious Throne. This will consume the souls in



the hosts of the king of Magog, so that their bodies will drop lifeless upon the mountains of the land of Israel, and will become a prey to the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air. Then will all the dead among Israel arise and rejoice in the good that at the beginning of the world was laid up for them, and will receive the reward for their good deeds.”<sup>482</sup>

When Gershon, Moses’ son, heard these prophecies of Eldad and Medad, he hurried to his father and told him of them. Joshua was now greatly agitated about the prophecy that Moses was to die in the desert and that he was to be his successor, and said to Moses: “O lord, destroy these people that prophesy such evil news!” But Moses replied: “O Joshua, canst thou believe that I begrudge thee thy splendid future? It is my wish that thou mayest be honored as much as I have been and that all Israel be honored like thee.”<sup>483</sup>

Eldad and Medad were distinguished not only by their prophetic gift, but also by their noble birth, being half-brothers of Moses and Aaron. When the marriage laws were revealed, all those who had been married to relatives by blood had to be divorced from them, so that Amram, too, had to be separated from his wife Jochebed, who was his aunt, and he married another woman. From this union sprang Eldad, “not of an aunt,” and Medad, “in place of an aunt,” so called by Amram to explain by these names why he had divorced his first wife, his aunt.<sup>484</sup>

---

481. Tan. B. IV, 57; Tan. Beha’aloteka 12; BaR 15.19 (here Eldad and Medad are identified with Elidad and Samuel mentioned in Num. 34.20–21; but compare with p. 698). See also Sifre N., 95; Sifre Z., 8 and 201–202; Sanhedrin 17a and Yerushalmi 1, 19c; note 476. As to the great piety of these two prophets, see text on p. 968. According to BaR 3.7, they survived Joshua.

482. BaR 15.19; Tan. B. IV, 57; Tan. Beha’aloteka 12; Yerushalmi Targumim Num. 11.26 (with regard to the punishment of the people of Magog, it is said here that a fire from under the holy throne will descend and consume their souls, leaving their bodies unimpaired. Compare footnote 59 on p. 1046, and Index, s. v. “Souls, Burning of”); Sifre N., 95; Sifre Z., 202; Sanhedrin 17a, and Yerushalmi 1, 19c. According to ps.-Philo 20.5, the prophecy of Eldad and Medad read: After that Moses resteth, the captaincy of Moses shall be given unto Joshua the son of Nun. This is in harmony with the tannaitic Midrashim quoted above, and Ephraem I, 257E, who know nothing of the prophecy referring to the time to come. Hermas Pastor, 2.3, quotes from the Book of Eldad and Medad who prophesied to the people in the wilderness as follows: “Nigh is the Lord to them that repent”. Comp. Ps. 145.18. In the *Stichometry* of Nicephorus the writing of Eldad and Medad occupied four hundred stichoi. Comp. Schürer, *Geschichte* (4th edition), III, 360–361. See also note 484.

483. BaR 15.19; Tan. B. IV, 57; Tan. Beha’aloteka 12; Sifre N., 96; Sifre Z., 202–203; Yerushalmi Targumim Num. 11.28, which read: Prevent the prophetic spirit from resting upon them (on the text see Shu’aib, *ad loc.*, who quotes from Targum Yerushalmi מנע מנהון רוח קדשא); Sanhedrin 17a (which reads: Appoint them to offices, and they will die a premature death). Comp. above, note 278, and footnote 57 on p. 852.

484. *Hadar*, *Da’at*, *Pa’aneah*, and Shu’aib on Num. 11.26; ps.-Jerome on 1 Chron. 4.17. A certain R. Hillel, who flourished at the end of the twelfth century, visited the Holy Land, where he found the following inscription on the tomb of these prophets: “Brothers of Aaron on the paternal side, but not on the maternal.” See the rabbinic sources quoted at the beginning of this note. Targum Yerushalmi Num. 11.26, on the contrary, maintains that Eldad and Medad were the sons of Jochebed and Elizaphan the son of Parnach (Num. 34.25), whom she married after she had been divorced from Amram (see text on p. 475), shortly before the birth of Moses. It is very strange that Targum makes Amram re-marry Jochebed after she had been married to someone else, which is explicitly forbidden by the law (see Deut. 24.4). Yahya, *Shalshelet*, 13a, quotes, from PRE and Rashi on Chron., the statement found in Targum Yerushalmi, that Jochebed was the mother of Eldad and Medad. It is hard to believe that Yahya’s references are correctly cited, as it is unlikely that his texts of PRE and Rashi differed from ours. If it is not a slip of the pen, it is all the worse for that author, who purposely quotes wrong authorities to make a strange statement acceptable! R. Nissim, quoted in *Imre No’am* Mass’e at the end, identifies Eldad with Elidad; comp. note 481, and Beer, *Monatsschrift* VI, 643–650.



## THE QUAILS

The prophecy of these men concerning the quails turned out as they had predicted, the quails being, as God had foretold to Moses, no blessing for the people. For God said to Moses: "Tell the people to be prepared for impending punishment, they shall eat flesh to satiety, but then they shall loathe it more than they now lust for it I know, however, how they came to have such desires. Because My Shekinah is among them they believe that they may presume anything. Had I removed My Shekinah from their midst they would never have cherished so foolish a desire." Moses, knowing that the granting of the people's wish would be disastrous to them, said to God: "O Lord, why, pray, dost Thou first give them flesh, and then, in punishment for their sin, slay them! Who ever heard any one say to an ass, 'Here is a measure of wheat; eat it, for we want to cut off thy head?' Or to a man, 'Here is a loaf of bread for thee; take it, and go to hell with it!' " God replied: "Well, then, what wouldst thou do?" Moses: "I will go to them and reason with them that they may desist from their lusting after flesh." God: "I can tell thee beforehand that thy endeavors in this matter will be fruitless." Moses betook himself to the people, saying to them: "Is the Lord's hand waxed short? Behold, He smote the rock, that the waters gushed out, and the streams overflowed; He can give bread also; can He not provide flesh for His people?" The people, however, said: "Thou art only trying to soothe us; God cannot grant our wish."<sup>485</sup> But they erred vastly, for hardly had the pious among them retired to their tents, when upon the godless, who had remained in the open, came down quails in masses as thick as snowflakes, so that many more were killed by the descent of the quails than later by the tasting of them. The quails came in

such masses that they completely filled the space between heaven and earth, so that they even covered the sun's disk, and settled down on the north side and the south side of the camp, as it were a day's journey, lying, however, not directly upon the ground but two cubits above it, that people might not have to stoop to gather them up. Considering this abundance, it is not surprising that even the halt that could not go far, and the lazy that would not, gathered each a hundred kor. These vast quantities of flesh did not, however, benefit them, for hardly had they tasted of it, when they gave up the ghost. This was the punishment for the grave sinners, while the better ones among them enjoyed the taste of the flesh for a month before they died, whereas the pious without suffering harm caught the quails, slaughtered them, and ate of them. This was the heaviest blow that had fallen upon Israel since their exodus from Egypt, and in memory of the many men who had died because of their forbidden lusting after flesh, they changed the name of the place where this misfortune occurred to Kibroth-hattaavah, "Graves of those who lusted."<sup>486</sup> The wind that went forth to bring the quails was so powerful a storm that it could have destroyed the world, so great was God's anger against the ungrateful people, and it was only due to the merits of Moses and Aaron that this wind finally left the world upon its hinges.<sup>487</sup>

---

485. Sifre N., 95; Sifre D., 31; Sifre Z., 201 (פְּטוּרָה means "excuse", from פָּטַר "to be free from doing a thing"); Tosefta Sotah 6.6. This legend is an attempt to exculpate Moses of the sin of doubting God's omnipotence, as expressed in his words in Num. 11.21. He never doubted that God was able to send down meat to "suffice" their bodily desires; but knowing the consequences of their foolish desire, he argued with God that it would not be for the people's real benefit to have their desire gratified. See also Tehillim 23, 199, and R. Nissim quoted in *Imre No'am* on Num., *loc. cit.* Philo *Quis Rer. Div. Haeres Sit*, 5, likewise has some difficulty in explaining the audacious words of



Moses as recorded in Num., *loc. cit.*, and similar passages of Scripture. See also Ephraem I, 257, and Theodoreus, Num., *loc. cit.*

486. Sifre N., 97–98; Sifre Z., 81 and 201; Tosefta Sotah 4.4; Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 3.48b; Mekita RS 76–77; compare with p. 573. *Pa'aneah* on Num. 11.33 quotes Tehillim (not found in our text) to the effect that those only were punished who asked for meat to satisfy their gluttony, but not the sick and weak who needed meat for their sustenance. See also Targum Yerushalmi Num. 11.31–33.

487. Targum Yerushalmi Num. 11.31; Yoma 75b.

## AARON AND MIRIAM

### SLANDER MOSES

When the seventy elders were appointed, and the spirit of the Lord came upon them, all the women lighted the candles of joy, to celebrate by this illumination the elevation of these men to the dignity of prophets. Zipporah, Moses' wife, saw the illumination, and asked Miriam to explain it. She told her the reason, and added, "Blessed are the women who behold with their eyes how their husbands are raised to dignity." Zipporah answered, "It would be more proper to say, 'Woe to the wives of these men who must now abstain from all conjugal happiness!'" Miriam: "How dost thou know this?" Zipporah: "I judge so from the conduct of thy brother, for ever since he was chosen to receive Divine revelations, he no longer knows his wife."<sup>488</sup> Miriam hereupon went to Aaron, and said to him: "I also received Divine revelations, but without being obliged to separate myself from my husband," whereupon Aaron agreed, saying: "I, too, received Divine revelations, with-out, however, being obliged to separate myself from my wife." Then both said: "Our fathers also received revelations, but without discontinuing their conjugal life. Moses abstains from conjugal joys only out of pride, to show how holy a man he is."

Not only did they speak evil of Moses to each other, but hastened to him and told him to his face their opinion of his conduct.<sup>489</sup> But he, who could be self-assured and stern when it touched a matter concerning God's glory, was silent to the undeserved reproaches they heaped upon him, knowing that upon God's bidding he had foresworn earthly pleasures. God therefore said: "Moses is very meek and pays no attention to the injustice meted out to him, as he did when My glory was detracted from, and boldly stepped forth and exclaimed, 'Who is on the Lord's side? Let him come unto me.' I will therefore now stand by him."

It is quite true that this was not the only occasion on which Moses proved himself humble and gentle, for it was part of his character. Never among mortals, counting even the three Patriarchs, was there more meek a man than he. The angels alone excelled him in humility, but no human being; for the angels are so humble and meek, that when they assemble to praise God, each angel calls to the other and asks him to precede him, saying among themselves: "Be thou the first, thou art worthier than I."<sup>490</sup>

God carried out His intention to uphold Moses' honor, for just as Aaron was with his wife and Miriam with her husband, a Divine call suddenly reached Amram's three children, one voice that simultaneously called, "Aaron!" "Moses!" and "Miriam!"—a miracle that God's voice alone can perform. The call went to Moses also, that the people might not think that Aaron and Miriam had been chosen to take Moses' place. He was ready to hearken to God's words, but not so his brother and his sister, who had been surprised in the state of uncleanness, and who therefore, upon hearing God's call, cried, "Water, water," that they might purify themselves before appearing before God.<sup>491</sup> They then left their tents and followed the voice until God appeared in a pillar of cloud, a distinction



that was conferred also upon Samuel. The pillar of cloud did not, however, appear in the Tabernacle, where it always rested whenever God revealed Himself to Moses, and this was due to the following reasons. First of all, God did not want to create the impression of having removed Moses from his dignity, and of giving it to his brother and sister, hence He did not appear to them in the holy place. At the same time, moreover, Aaron was spared the disgrace of being reproached by God in his brother's presence, for Moses did not follow his brother and sister, but awaited God's word in the sanctuary. But there was still another reason why God did not want Moses to be present during His conference with Aaron and Miriam—"Never praise a man to his face." As God wanted to praise Moses before Aaron and Miriam, He preferred to do so in his absence.<sup>492</sup>

Hardly had God addressed Aaron and Miriam, when they began to interrupt Him, whereupon He said to them: "Pray, contain yourselves until I have spoken." In these words He taught people the rule of politeness, never to interrupt. He then said: "Since the creation of the world hath the word of God ever appeared to any prophet otherwise than in a dream? Not so with Moses, to whom I have shown what is above and what is below; what is before and what is behind; what was and what will be. To him have I revealed all that is in the water and all that is upon the dry land; to him did I confide the sanctuary and set him above the angels. I Myself ordered him to abstain from conjugal life, and the word he received was revealed to him clearly and not in dark speeches, he saw the Divine presence from behind when It passed by him. Wherefore then were ye not afraid to speak against a man like Moses, who is, moreover, My servant? Your censure is directed to Me, rather than to him, for 'the receiver is no better than

the thief,' and if Moses is not worthy of his calling, I, his Master, deserve censure."<sup>493</sup>

---

488. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 738; Hashkem 17b; Sifre N., 99; Sifre Z., 81–82 and 203–204; ARN 9, 39; Tan. III, 46; Tan. Zaw 13. In all these passages and in many others (comp., e. g., Mo'ed Katan 17b; Tehillim 9, 70 and 72; 2 Targum Yerushalmi Num. 12.1; 2 ARN 43, 122; see also Theodoretus on Num., *loc. cit.*) it is assumed that the "Cushite woman" spoken of in Num., *loc. cit.*, refers to Zipporah, "who was distinguished for her beauty and piety as the Cushite—Ethiopian—is distinguished for his dark color." But Targum Yerushalmi Num., *loc. cit.*, finds in this biblical verse an allusion to the "queen of the Ethiopians whom Moses was forced to marry while fleeing from Pharaoh." Compare footnote 80 on p. 491.

489. ARN 11, 39–40; Hashkem 18a; Sifre N., 100 (the dissenting view is given here that they only spoke evil of Moses among themselves, but never in his presence; see text on p. 330, with regard to Joseph's attitude toward his brethren; compare further with p. 704); Sifre Z., 82. See also the references given in the preceding note. On Moses' continence, see text on p. 509; text on pp. 645, 701, and 785–786. Comp. also ARN 2, 9–10.

490. Esfah in Yalkut I, 739; Sifre N., 101 (the dissenting view is given here that the three patriarchs surpassed Moses in meekness; comp., however, Hullin 89a, and Philo, *De Ebrietate*, 23, who appraise Moses higher than the patriarchs, See also note 961); Sifre Z., 82–83; ARN 9, 41, and 12, 51–52. In the last passage the humility of the angels is described as the ideal type; this is in agreement with the view given in the tannaitic Midrashim just quoted. See also Midrash Aggada Num. 12.3. The legend concerning Moses' meekness, quoted from *Ayyumah Kannidgalot* in note 310, is partly found in *Hadar*, Num. 12.3. This passage also states that on this occasion only did Moses forsake his great virtue, when he said to the multitude clamoring for water: "Are we to bring you forth water out of this rock?" (Num. 20.10). He spoke as though he and Aaron could make the water flow from the rock, whereas they only acted as God's messengers. Comp. note 613.

491. Sifre N., 102; Sifre Z., 83; Tan. B. III, 46; Tan. Zaw 13; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 738 and Esfah (?), *ibid*, 739. Compare with p. 515.

492. Sifre Z., 83–84; Sifre N., 102 Esfah in Yalkut I, 739; Zohar III, 3a. Compare with p. 645.

493. Sifre Z., 84; Sifre N., 103 (two views are given here with regard to the interpretation of Num. 12.7, whether "the house of God" includes or excludes the angels; comp. also Midrash Aggada, beginning, on Moses' su-



periority to the angels); Esfah in Yalkut I, 739 (אמר לו המלאכים=א"ל). Compare with p. 645, and note 489 (end). For the proverb concerning the thief and the receiver, see also Kiddushin 56b, which reads: Not the mouse is the thief, but the hole where the stolen thing is hidden.

## MIRIAM'S PUNISHMENT

God now gently rebuked Aaron and Miriam for their transgression, and did not give vent to His wrath until He had shown them their sin. This was an example to man never to show anger to his neighbor before giving his reason for his anger. The effects of God's wrath were shown as soon as He had departed from them, for while He was with them, His mercy exceeded His anger, and nothing happened to them, but when He was no longer with them, punishment set in. Both Aaron and Miriam became leprous, for this is the punishment ordained for those who speak ill of their neighbors.<sup>494</sup> Aaron's leprosy, however, lasted for a moment only, for his sin had not been as great as that of his sister, who started the talk against Moses. His disease vanished as soon as he looked upon his leprosy. Not so with Miriam. Aaron in vain tried to direct his eyes upon her leprosy and in this way to heal her, for in her case the effect was the reverse; as soon as he looked upon her the leprosy increased, and nothing remained but to call for Moses' assistance, who was ready to give it before being called upon.<sup>495</sup> Aaron thereupon turned to his brother with the following words: "Think not that the leprosy is on Miriam's body only, it is as if it were on the body of our father Amram, of whose flesh and blood she is." Aaron did not, however, try to extenuate their sin, saying to Moses: "Have we, Miriam and I, ever done harm to a human being?" Moses: "No." Aaron: "If we have done evil to no

strange people, how then canst thou believe that we wished to harm thee? For a moment only did we forget ourselves and acted in an unnatural way toward our brother. Shall we therefore lose our sister? If Miriam's leprosy doth not now vanish, she must pass all her life as a leper, for only a priest who is not a relative by blood of the leper may under certain conditions declare her clean, but all the priests, my sons and I, are her relatives by blood. The life of a leper is as of one dead, for as a corpse makes unclean all that comes in contact with it, so too the leper. Alas!" so Aaron closed his intercession, "Shall our sister, who was with us in Egypt, who with us intoned the song at the Red Sea, who took upon herself the instruction of the women while we instructed the men, shall she now, while we are about to leave the desert and enter the promised land, sit shut out from the camp?"

These words of Aaron, however, were quite superfluous, for Moses had determined, as soon as his sister became diseased, to intercede for her with God, saying to himself: "It is not right that my sister should suffer and I dwell in contentment."<sup>496</sup> He now drew a circle about himself, stood up, and said a short prayer to God, which he closed with the words: "I will not go from this spot until Thou shalt have healed my sister. But if Thou do not heal her, I myself shall do so, for Thou hast already revealed to me how leprosy arises and how it disappears." This prayer was fervent, spoken with his whole heart and soul, though very brief. Had he spoken long, some would have said: "His sister is suffering terribly and he, without heeding her, spends his time in prayer." Others again would have said: "He prayeth long for his sister, but for us he prayeth briefly." God said to Moses: "Why dost thou shout so!" Moses: "I know what suffering my sister is enduring. I remember the chain to which my hand was chained, for I myself once suffered from this disease." God: "If a king, or if



her father had but spit in her face, should she not be ashamed seven days? I, the King of kings, have spit in her face, and she should be ashamed at least twice seven days. For thy sake shall seven days be pardoned her, but the other seven days let her be shut out from the camp.” For want of a priest who, according to the tenets of the law, must declare a leper clean after the healing, God Himself assumed this part, declaring Miriam unclean for a week, and clean after the passing of that period.<sup>497</sup>

Although leprosy came to Miriam as a punishment for her sin, still this occasion served to show how eminent a personage she was. For the people were breaking camp and starting on the march when, after having saddled their beasts of burden for the march, upon turning to see the pillar of cloud moving before them, they missed the sight of it. They looked again to see if Moses and Aaron were in the line of procession, but they were missing, nor was there anywhere to be seen a trace of the well that accompanied them on their marches. Hence they were obliged to return again to camp, where they remained until Miriam was healed. The clouds and the well, the sanctuary and the sixty myriads of the people, all had to wait a week in this spot until Miriam recovered. Then the pillar of cloud moved on once more and the people knew that they had not been permitted to proceed on their march only because of this pious prophetess. This was a reward for the kind deed Miriam had done when the child Moses was thrown into the water. Then Miriam for some time walked up and down along the shore to wait the child's fate, and for this reason did the people wait for her, nor could they move on until she had recovered.<sup>498</sup>

leprosy as a punishment for slander, see text on p. 675. Comp. also PRE 45 (on the text see *Batte Midrashot*, 111, 32-33), which reads: There is no cure for him who slanders his fellow-man; how great then should be the punishment of him who slanders his brothers!

495. Sifre Z., 85 and 87; Sifre N., 105; ARN 39-40: Midrash Aggada Num. 12.10. The question why Aaron was not punished like his sister was raised by Irenaeus, *Fragmenta*, 32, and his answer is similar to that of the Rabbis. The view that Aaron became leprous for a brief moment is not shared by all authorities; see the sources quoted in note 494, where it is asserted that Aaron was not punished at all. Comp. also PRE 45 (on the text see *Batte Midrashot* III, 32 and Sifre Z., 85), which remarks: Aaron was not punished with leprosy, for if he were he would not have been able to perform his priestly functions.

496. Sifre N., 105; Sifre Z., 85-86; ARN 9, 41; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 12.12, which is followed by Midrash Aggada, *ad loc.* (נפל=כמת). Concerning the idea that leprosy is equal to death, see text on p. 285 and text on p. 663.

497. ARN 9, 41 (on the drawing of the circle, see note 895); DR 6.13; Sifre N., 105-106; Sifre Z., 87; Berakot 32a and 34b; Zebahim 102a-102b; WR 15.8; Zohar I, 24b. See also Tosafot on Baba Batra 111a (catchword ק'), and R. Bezalel Ashkenazi כללי התלמוד, Marx' edition, 188, where the quotation from Sifre (*loc. cit.*?) reads קל נדול וְחוֹמֶר לְמֶלֶךְ וְנִפְקֵן נִדּוּל. The king and high priest is God, and not Moses, as the Tosafists maintain. Comp. Sanhedrin 39a, where God is described as priest.

498. Sifre N., 106; Sifre D., 275 (it is said here that they did not put down their tents until Miriam appeared); Sifre Z., 87 and 203; Sotah 1.9; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 1.15-16, and second version 13.1; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 742. Concerning the mode of procedure in breaking up the camp, see text on p. 686.

## THE SENDING OF THE SPIES

The punishment that God brought upon Miriam was meant as a lesson of the severity with which God punishes slander. For Miriam spoke no evil of Moses in the presence of any one except her brother Aaron. She had moreover no evil motive, but a kindly intention, wishing only to induce Moses to resume his conjugal life. She did not even dare to rebuke Moses to

494. Sifre N., 104-105; Sifre Z., 84-85; Shabbat 91a; Tan. B. III, 46; Tan. Zaw 13; ARN 9.39. Concerning



his face, and still, even in spite of her great piety, Miriam was not spared this heavy punishment.<sup>499</sup> Her experience, nevertheless, did not awe the wicked men who shortly after this incident, made an evil report of the promised land, and by their wicked tongues stirred up the whole people in rebellion against God, so that they desired rather to return to Egypt than to enter Palestine. The punishment that God inflicted upon the spies as well as upon the people they had seduced was well deserved, for had they not been warned of slander by Miriam's example, there might still have been some excuse. In that case they might have been ignorant of the gravity of the sin of slander, but now they had no excuse to offer.<sup>500</sup>

When Israel approached the boundaries of Palestine, they appeared before Moses, saying: "We will send men before us, and they shall search out the land, and bring us word again by what way we must go up, and into what cities we shall come." This desire caused God to exclaim: "What! When you went through a land of deserts and of pits, you had no desire for scouts, but now that you are about to enter a land full of good things, now you wish to send out scouts." Not only was the desire in itself unseemly, but also the way in which they presented their request to Moses; for instead of approaching as they had been accustomed, letting the older men be the spokesmen of the younger they appeared on this occasion without guidance or order, the young crowding out the old, and these pushing away their leaders.<sup>501</sup> Their bad conscience after making this request—for they knew that their true motive was lack of faith in God—caused them to invent all sorts of pretexts for their plans. They said to Moses: "So long as we are in the wilderness, the clouds act as scouts for us, for they move before us and show us the way, but as these will not proceed with us into the promised land, we want men to search out the land for us." Another plea that

they urged for their desire was this. They said: "The Canaanites fear an attack from us and therefore hide their treasures. This is the reason why we want to send spies there in time, to discover for us where they are hiding their treasures." They sought in other ways to give Moses the impression that their one wish was exactly to carry out the law. They said: "Hast not thou taught us that an idol to which homage is no longer paid may be used, but otherwise it must be destroyed? If we now enter Palestine and find idols, we shall not know which of them were adored by the Canaanites and must be destroyed, and which of them were no longer adored, so that we might use them." Finally they said the following to Moses: "Thou, our teacher, hast taught us that God 'would little by little drive the Canaanites before us.' If this be so, we must send out spies to find out which cities we must attack first."<sup>502</sup> Moses allowed himself to be influenced by their talk, and he also liked the idea of sending out spies, but not wishing to act arbitrarily he submitted to God the desire of the people. God answered: "It is not the first time that they disbelieve My promises. Even in Egypt they ridiculed Me, it is now become a habit with them, and I know what their motive in sending spies is. If thou wishest to send spies do so, but do not pretend that I have ordered thee."

Moses hereupon chose one man from every tribe with the exception of Levi, and sent these men to spy out the land. These twelve men were the most distinguished and most pious of their respective tribes, so that even God gave His assent to the choice of every man among them.<sup>503</sup> But hardly had these men been appointed to their office when they made the wicked resolve to bring up an evil report of the land, and dissuade the people from moving to Palestine. Their motive was a purely personal one, for they thought to themselves that they would retain their offices at the head of the tribes so long as



they remained in the wilderness, but would be deprived of them when they entered Palestine.<sup>504</sup>

499. Midrash Tannaim 157; Sifre N., 99; ARN 9, 40 (second version 42, 116). Comp. note 489.

500. BaR 16.6; Tan. B. IV., 64; Tan. Shelah 5; ARN 9, 39; *Likkutim*, IV, 28b–29a.

501. Sifre D., 20; Midrash Tannaim 11. Comp. also ER 29, 144, and Sifre N., 136.

502. Midrash Tannaim 11; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 743, as well as in *Arukh*, s.v. **טכני** and **כסל** (comp. *Likkutim*, IV, 28a–28b); BaR 16.7; Tan. B. IV, 64–65; Tan. Shelah 5.

503. Sifre D., 20; Midrash Tannaim 11–12; ER 29, 144; BaR 16.8; Tan. B. IV, 65; Tan. Shelah 5. Philo, *Vita Mosi*, 1.40–41, likewise dwells upon the fact that the sending of the spies was due to the initiative of Moses, and was not by a command from God. The same view is shared by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XII, 14.1, who gives the address delivered by Moses to the people, in which he explains to them his plan to send spies. The contradiction between Num. 13.2 and Deut. 1.22–23 was noticed by the Rabbis, who reconciled these verses, whereas Philo and Josephus ignore the passage in Num. It is noteworthy that ps-Philo, 15.1, takes the trouble to state explicitly that “Moses sent spies to spy out the land, for so was it commanded him.” Reference is frequently made to the piety, wisdom, and high position of the spies; see Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 743; BaR 16.5 (where it is stated that the spies were selected by Moses and the people on account of their piety, and God approved of the selection); Tan. B. IV, 64; Tan. Shelah 4; Philo, *Moses*, 1.41; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 4.2; quotation from an unknown Midrash in *Imre No’am* on Exod. 28.12.

504. Zohar III, 158a, which is the source for Yalkut Reubeni, Sum. 13.17 (the reference to Targum is very likely a printer’s error); comp. also BaR 16.1 (end), where **היו רשעים** means “they became wicked”, and not “they were wicked”, as may be seen from the statement *ibid.* 16.5, and in the other sources cited in the preceding note.

## SIGNIFICANT NAMES

Significant of the wickedness of these men are their names, all of which point to their

godless action. The representative of the tribe of Reuben was called Shammua, the son of Zaccur, because he did not obey God, which was counted against him just as if he had pursued sorcery. Shaphat, the son of Hori, was Simeon’s representative. His name signifies, “He did not conquer his evil inclination, and hence went out empty-handed, without having received a possession in the land of Israel.” The tribe of Issachar was represented by Igal, the son of Joseph. He bore this name because he soiled the reputation of the Holy Land, and therefore died before his time. Benjamin’s representative was Palti, the son of Raphu, so called because “he spat out the good qualities that had previously been his, and therefore wasted away.” The name of Gaddiel, the son of Sodi, Zebulun’s representative, signifies, “He spoke infamous things against God in executing the secret plan of the spies.” Manasseh’s representative, Gaddi, the son of Susi, was so called because he blasphemed God and aroused His wrath; for it was he who said of the land, “it eateth up its inhabitants.” But the worst one among them was Ammiel, the son of Gemalli, the representative of Dan, for it was he who said, “The land is so strong that not even God could go up against it,” hence his name, which means, “He cast a shadow upon God’s strength,” and he was punished according to his wicked words, for he did not enter the promised land. Asher’s representative was Sethur, the son of Michael, who had resolved to act against God and instead of saying, “Who is like unto God?” he said, “Who is God?” Naphtali’s representative was named Nahbi, the son of Vophsi, for he suppressed the truth, and faith found no room in his mouth, for he brought forth lies against God. The last of these spies, Gad’s representative, bore the name Geuel, the son of Machi, for he was humbled because he urged untruths against God.



As the ten sinners were named in accordance with their actions, so too did the names of the two pious spies among them correspond to their pious actions. Judah's representative was named Caleb, the son of Jephunneh, because "he spoke what he felt in his heart and turned aside from the advice of the rest of the spies." The pious representative of Ephraim was Hoshea, the son of Nun, a fitting name for him, for he was full of understanding and was not caught like a fish by the spies. Moses who perceived, even when he sent out the spies, the evil intentions they harbored, changed Hoshea's name to Joshua, saying: "May God stand by thee, that thou mayest not follow the counsel of the spies."<sup>505</sup>

This change of name that was brought about by the prefixing of the letter Yod at last silenced the lamentations of this letter. For ever since God had changed Sarai's name to Sarah, the letter Yod used to flit about the celestial Throne and lament: "Is it perchance because I am the smallest among the letters that Thou hast taken me away from the name of the pious Sarah?" God quieted this letter, saying: "Formerly thou wert in a woman's name, and, moreover, at the end. I will now affix thee to a man's name, and, moreover, at the beginning." This promise was redeemed when Hoshea's name was changed to Joshua.<sup>506</sup>

When the spies set out on their way, they received instructions from Moses how to conduct themselves, and what, in particular, they were to note. He ordered them not to walk on the highways, but to go along private pathways, for although the Shekinah would follow them, they were still to incur no needless danger. If they entered a city, however, they were not to slink like thieves in alleyways, but to show themselves in public and answer those who asked what they wanted by saying: "We came only to buy some pomegranates and grapes." They were

emphatically to deny that they had any intention of destroying the idols or of felling the sacred trees. Moses furthermore said: "Look about carefully what manner of land it is, for some lands produce strong people and some weak, some lands produce many people and some few. If you find the inhabitants dwelling in open places, then know that they are mighty warriors, and depending upon their strength have no fear of hostile attack. If, however, they live in a fortified place, they are weaklings, and in their fear of strangers seek shelter within their walls. Examine also the nature of the soil. If it be hard, know then that it is fat; but if it be soft, it is lean."<sup>507</sup> Finally he bade them inquire whether Job was still alive, for if he was dead, then they assuredly needed not to fear the Canaanites, as there was not a single pious man among them whose merits might be able to shield them.<sup>508</sup> And truly when the spies reached Palestine, Job died, and they found the inhabitants of the land at his grave, partaking of the funeral feast.<sup>509</sup>

---

505. Midrash Aggada Num. 13.4; Tan. Haazinu 7. Comp. Sotah 34b; BaR 16.10; Tan. B. IV, 64–66. Concerning the name of Joshua, see Ecclesiasticus 46.1, as well as Matthew 1.21 Justin, *Dialogue*, 113, and Tertullian, *Adversus Iudaeos*, 9. The Christian writers apply to Jesus (=Joshua) the son of Joseph what the Jewish Haggadah claims for Joshua the son of Nun.

506. *Likkutim*, II, 20c; BR 46.1; ShR 6.1; WR 19.2; Shir 5.11; Tan Korah 12.

507. Tan B. IV, 66; Tan. Shelah 6; BaR 16.12; ER 29, 144; Sotah 33b; Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s.v. **חָרַס**; Le-kah and *Pa'aneah* on Num. 13.17; Sifre D., 22; Midrash Tannaim 12.

508. Baba Batra 15a–15b. Comp. the following note and Index, s.v. "Job".

509. Sotah 65a. Wherever the spies came they met mourners, for all the people mourned for Job. But not being acquainted with the real reason of this general mourning, the spies exclaimed: "This is a land that eateth up the inhabitants thereof," *ibid.*; compare with p. 713. According to *Yalkut David* Num. 13.32, it was the custom of the Amorites to delay the burial of a pious man a long time, and then bury a number of other men with him in the



same coffin, in order that "the merits of the pious may protect the other men." When the spies saw the numerous corpses buried at the same time (they were all buried with Job), they thought that Palestine was a land that "eateth up the inhabitants thereof". See also the midrashic fragment published by Schechter in *Semitic Studies*, 494, and Lekah, Num., *loc. cit.*

## THE SPIES IN PALESTINE

On the twenty-seventh day of Siwan Moses sent out the spies from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran,<sup>510</sup> and following his directions they went first to the south of Palestine, the poorest part of the Holy Land. Moses did like the merchants, who first show the poorer wares, and then the better kind; so Moses wished the spies to see better parts of the land the farther they advanced into it. When they reached Hebron, they could judge what a blessed land this was that had been promised them, for although Hebron was the poorest tract in all Palestine, it was still much better than Zoan, the most excellent part of Egypt. When, therefore, the sons of Ham built cities in several lands, it was Hebron that they erected first, owing to its excellence, and not Zoan, which they built in Egypt fully seven years later.

Their progress through the land was on the whole easy, for God had wished it so, that as soon as the spies entered a city, the plague struck it, and the inhabitants, busied with the burial of their dead, had neither time nor inclination to concern themselves with the strangers.<sup>511</sup> Although they met with no evil on the part of the inhabitants, still the sight of the three giants, Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai inspired them with terror. These were so immensely tall that the sun reached only to their ankles, and they received their names in accordance with their size and strength. The strongest among them was Ahi-

man, beholding whom one fancied oneself standing at the foot of a mountain that was about to fall, and exclaimed involuntarily, "What is this that is coming upon me?" Hence the name Ahiman. Strong as marble was the second brother, wherefore he was called Sheshai, "marble." The mighty strides of the third brother threw up plots from the ground when he walked, hence he was called Talmai, "plots."<sup>512</sup> Not only the sons of Anak were of such strength and size, but his daughters also, whom the spies chanced to see. For when these reached the city inhabited by Anak, that was called Kiriath-Arba, "City of Four," because the giant Anak and his three sons dwelt there, they were struck with such terror by them that they sought a hiding place. But what they had believed to be a cave was only the rind of a huge pomegranate that the giant's daughter had thrown away, as they later, to their horror, discovered. For this girl, after having eaten the fruit, remembered that she must not anger her father by letting the rind lie there, so she picked it up with the twelve men in it as one picks up an egg shell, and threw it into the garden, never noticing that she had thrown with it twelve men, each measuring sixty cubits in height. When they left their hiding place, they said to one another: "Behold the strength of these women and judge by their standard the men!"<sup>513</sup>

They soon had an opportunity of testing the strength of the men, for as soon as the three giants heard of the presence of the Israelite men, they pursued them, but the Israelites found out with what manner of men they were dealing even before the giants had caught up with them. One of the giants shouted, and the spies fell down as men dead, so that it took a long time for the Canaanites to restore them to life by the aid of friction and fresh air. The Canaanites hereupon said to them: "Why do you come here? Is not the whole world your God's, and did not He parcel it out according to His wish?



Came ye here with the purpose of felling the sacred trees?" The spies declared their innocence, whereupon the Canaanites permitted them to go their ways unmolested. As a reward for this kind deed, the nation to which these giants belonged has been preserved even to this day.<sup>514</sup>

They would certainly not have escaped from the hands of the giants, had not Moses given them two weapons against them, his staff and the secret of the Divine Name. These two brought them salvation whenever they felt they were in danger from the giants. For these were none other than the seed of the angels fallen in the antediluvian era. Sprung from their union with the daughters of men, and being half angels, half men, these giants were only half mortal. They lived very long, and then half their body withered away. Threatened by an eternal continuance of this condition, half life, and half death, they preferred either to plunge into the sea, or by a magic herb which they knew to put an end to their existence.<sup>515</sup> They were furthermore of such enormous size that the spies, listening one day while the giants discussed them, heard them say, pointing to the Israelites: "There are grasshoppers by the trees that have the semblance of men," for "so they were in their sight."<sup>516</sup>

The spies, with the exception of Joshua and Caleb, had resolved from the start to warn the people against Palestine, and so great was their influence that Caleb feared he would yield to it. He therefore hastened to Hebron where the three Patriarchs lie, and, standing at their graves, said: "Joshua is proof against the pernicious influence of the spies, for Moses had prayed to God for him. Send up prayers now, my fathers, for me, that God in His mercy may keep me far from the counsel of the spies."<sup>517</sup>

There had always been a clash between Caleb and his comrades during their crossing through Palestine. For whereas he insisted upon taking along the fruits of the land to show their

excellence to the people, they strongly opposed this suggestion, wishing as they did to keep the people from gaining an impression of the excellence of the land. Hence they yielded only when Caleb drew his sword, saying: "If you will not take of the fruits, either I shall slay you, or you will slay me." They hereupon cut down a vine, which was so heavy that eight of them had to carry it, putting upon each the burden of one hundred and twenty seah. The ninth spy carried a pomegranate, and the tenth a fig, which they brought from a place that had once belonged to Esheol, one of Abraham's friends, but Joshua and Caleb carried nothing at all, because it was not consistent with their dignity to carry a burden.<sup>518</sup> This vine was of such gigantic size that the wine pressed from its grapes sufficed for all the sacrificial libations of Israel during its forty years' march.<sup>519</sup>

After the lapse of forty days they returned to Moses and the people, after having crossed through Palestine from end to end. By natural means it would not, of course, have been possible to traverse all the land in so short a time, but God made it possible by "bidding the soil leap for them," and they covered a great distance in a short time. God knew that Israel would have to wander in the wilderness forty years, a year for every day the spies had spent in Palestine, hence He hastened their progress through the land, that Israel might not have to stay too long in the wilderness.<sup>520</sup>

---

510. Seder 'Olam 8; Ta'anit 29a; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 13.21. Comp. Ratner on Seder 'Olam. Concerning the identity of Paran with Kadesh, see Lekah, Num. 13.18; Sa'adya Gaon, *Emunot we-de'ot* 3,92.

511. BaR 16.12–13; Tan. B. IV. 66–67; Tan. Shelah 6 and 8; Sotah 64b; Sifre D., 37. On the plague which raged in Palestine during the visit of the spies, see note 509, and text on p. 713.

512. Sotah 64b; BaR 16.11; Tan. B. IV, 66; Tan. Shelah 7; Midrash Aggada Num. 13.22. Concerning the



giants, see text on pp. 24 and 137; text on pp. 707, 751. On the “throwing up of plots from the ground”, see text on p. 385.

513. Midrashic fragment published by Schechter in *Semitic Studies* 492; comp. *Hadar* and *Pa'aneah*, Num. 13.2 and 28 as well as Gaster, *Exempla*, 321. On the gigantic statures of the spies, see Sotah 10b.

514. ER 29, 144-145. Compare with pp. 706, 710-711; text on p. 846.

515. Zohar III, 160b; R. Bahya on Num. 13.7. The latter did not draw upon Zohar, but upon midrashic sources, as he explicitly states, and it is very likely that Zohar made use of the same source. Comp. also Rashi and Midrash Aggada, Num. 13.33. According to Mekilta Shirah 9, 43a, the spies remained undetected through a miracle: if anybody wanted to betray them, he was rendered as “still as a stone”, that is, dumb. Ps.-Philo, 15.2, speaks of another miracle, which was performed for the spies. He writes: “For they (*i. e.*, the spies) saw how that as they went up, the lightning of the stars shone, and the thunders followed, sounding with them.” Does this mean that the spies journeyed by night by the supernatural light of the stars which shone for them?

516. Sotah 65a. See the opposite view in text on pp. 710-711.

517. Sotah 64b; Zohar III, 158b-159a. Compare with p. 704; Sotah 65a (top).

518. Yerushalmi Sotah 7, 21d; Babli 34a; PR 27, 132a; BaR 16.14 and 16; Tan. B. IV, 67-68; Tan. Shelah 8-9; Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1.41-42. According to another view, none of the spies, with the exception of Caleb and Joshua, was able to carry the vine. See the passage quoted by R. Bahya from a Midrash, Num. 13.23 (from Yelammedenu? See *Likkutim*, IV, 29b); Zohar III, 160b.

519. Shir 4.13, which gives also the dissenting view, according to which the wine required for the libations came from the vines growing around Miriam's well. Compare with p. 545. Targum Song of Songs 1.14 maintains that the wine for the libations came from En-Gedi. In tannaitic literature we meet with the view that the Israelites brought no sacrifices whatsoever during their journey through the wilderness; see Sifre N., 67; Sifre Z., 66, and the parallel passages given by Horovitz (the first edition of Yalkut I, 555, has ספר' correctly, and not זוטא' as in later editions; Horovitz is to be corrected accordingly); Hagigah 6b. There is also a view that the Israelites in the wilderness were not permitted to partake of any meat except of a sacrifice; see Sifre D., 15; Hullin 16b-17d. As to the public sacrifices (קרבנות צבור), it is said in the tannaitic Midrashim just quoted that they were taken care of by the Levites, with the assistance of the few pious men of the other tribes.

520. BaR 16.16; Tan. B. IV, 68; Tan. Shelah 8. Concerning “the leaping of earth”, or to be accurate, the con-

tracting of the earth, see footnote 287 on p. 241. The extent of the Holy Land is four hundred parasangs in length by four hundred parasangs in width; see, *e. g.*, Megillah 6b and Baba Kamma 82b.

## THE SLANDEROUS REPORT

When Moses heard that the spies had returned from their enterprise, he went to his great house of study, where all Israel too assembled, for it was a square of twelve miles, affording room to all.<sup>521</sup> There too the spies betook themselves and were requested to give their report. Pursuing the tactics of slanderers, they began by extolling the land, so that they might not by too unfavorable a report arouse the suspicion of the community. They said: “We came unto the land whither thou sentest us, and surely it floweth with milk and honey.” This was not an exaggeration, for honey flowed from the trees under which the goats gazed, out of whose udders poured milk, so that both milk and honey moistened the ground. But they used these words only as an introduction, and then passed on to their actual report, which they had elaborated during those forty days, and by means of which they hoped to be able to induce the people to desist from their plan of entering Palestine.<sup>522</sup> “Nevertheless,” they continued, “the people be strong that dwell in the land, and the cities are walled, and very great: and moreover we saw the children of Anak there.” Concerning the latter they spoke an untruth with the intention of inspiring Israel with fear, for the sons of Anak dwelt in Hebron, whither Caleb alone had gone to pray at the graves of the Patriarchs,<sup>523</sup> at the same time as the Shekinah went there to announce to the Patriarchs that their children were now on the way to take possession of the land which had been promised to them of yore.<sup>524</sup> To



intensify to the uttermost their fear of the inhabitants of Palestine, they furthermore said: "The Amalekites dwell in the land of the South." They threatened Israel with Amalek as one threatens a child with a strap that had once been employed to chastise him, for they had had bitter experiences with Amalek. The statement concerning Amalek was founded on fact, for although southern Palestine had not originally been their home, still they had recently settled there in obedience to the last wish of their forefather Esau, who had bidden them cut off Israel from their entrance into the promised land. "If, however," continued the spies in their report, "you are planning to enter the land from the mountain region in order to evade Amalek, let us inform you that the Hittites, and the Jebusites, and the Amorites dwell in the mountains; and if you plan to go there by sea, let us inform you that the Canaanites dwell by the sea, and along the Jordan."<sup>525</sup>

As soon as the spies had completed their report, Joshua arose to contradict them, but they gave him no chance to speak, calling out to him: "By what right dost thou, foolish man, presume to speak? Thou hast neither sons nor daughters, so what dost thou care if we perish in our attempt to conquer the land? We, on the other hand, have to look out for our children and wives." Joshua, therefore, very much against his will, had to be silent. Caleb now considered in what way he could manage to get a hearing without being shouted down as Joshua had been.

Caleb had given his comrades an entirely false impression concerning his sentiments, for when these formed the plan to try to make Israel desist from entering Palestine, they drew him into their council, and he pretended to agree with them, whereas he even then resolved to intercede for Palestine. Hence, when Caleb arose, the spies were silent, supposing he would corroborate their statements, a supposition which

his introductory words tended to strengthen. He began: "Be silent, I will reveal the truth. This is not all for which we have to thank the son of Amram." But to the amazement of the spies, his next words praised, not blamed, Moses. He said: "Moses—it is he who drew us up out of Egypt, who clove the sea for us, who gave us manna as food." In this way he continued his eulogy on Moses, closing with the words: "We should have to obey him even if he bade us ascend to heaven upon ladders!"<sup>526</sup> These words of Caleb were heard by all the people, for his words were so mighty that they could be heard twelve miles off. It was this same powerful voice that had saved the life of the spies. For when the Canaanites first took note of them and suspected them of being spies, the three giants, Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai pursued them and caught up with them in the plain of Judea. When Caleb, hidden behind a fence, saw that the giants were at their heels, he uttered such a shout that the giants fell down in a swoon because of the frightful din. When they had recovered, the giants declared that they had pursued the Israelites not because of the fruits, but because they had suspected them of the wish to burn their cities.<sup>527</sup>

Caleb's mighty voice did not, however, in the least impress the people or the spies, for the latter, far from retracting their previous statements, went so far as to say: "We be not able to go up against the people; for they are stronger than we, they are so strong that even God can not get at them. The land through which we have gone to search it is a land that eateth up the inhabitants thereof through disease; and all the people that we saw in it are men of wicked traits. And here we saw men upon sight of whom we almost swooned of fright, the giants, the sons of Anak, which come of giants: and we were in our own sight as grasshoppers, and so we were in their sight."<sup>528</sup> At these last words, God said: "I have no objection to your saying,



‘We were in our own sight as grasshoppers,’ but I take it amiss if you say, ‘And so we were in their sight,’ far how can you tell how I made you appear in their sight? How do you know if you did not appear to them to be angels?”<sup>529</sup>

521. ER 29, 145. Concerning the measurement of the camp, see note 445, and text on p. 834. Instead of the enormous size of the house of study, Aggadat Shir 2, 32, (read *בבית מדרשו=בבמד"ר* and comp. Schechter *ad loc.*) refers to the supernatural strength of Moses' voice which carried for twelve miles, from the house of study to the end of the camp. Concerning Moses' voice, see note 201 and footnote 228 on p. 539.

522. Sotah 65a; BaR 16.17; Tan. B. IV, 68; Tan. Shelah 8; Lekah Num. 13.25–27 (based, in the main, on Ketubot 111b); Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s. v. *פִּקְדָּה* = *Likkutim*, IV, 29b.

523. Midrash Aggada Num. 13.28. For the opposite view see text on pp. 707 and 710–711. Concerning Caleb's visit to Hebron, see text on p. 707.

524. Midrash quoted by R. Bahya on Num. 13.22; Zohar III, 159a.

525. BaR 16.18; Tan. B. IV, 68; Tan. Shelah 89; Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s. v. *סִפֵּר* 4; Zohar III, 162a. On Amalek, see Lekah Num. 13.29; text on pp. 578.

526. Sotah 35 (*רִישׁ קִטְיָעָה* “headless” *i. e.*, a fool; comp. ShR 41.7, which has the expression *קִצְיָעִי צוֹאֲרִיא*; on Joshua's lack of intelligence, See Index, s. v.); BaR 16.19; Tan. B. IV, 68; Tan. Shelah 10. Joshua died childless (according to Megillah 14b however, he had daughters, but no sons) as a punishment for his audacity in giving advice to Moses, without having been asked for it (compare with p. 698). According to others, he was punished for having kept the army in camp one night more than was necessary, thus preventing the men from joining their wives; comp. 'Erubin 63a–63b; Comp. note 847. On “son of Amram”, see note 163.

527. Aggadat Shir 6, 41 and 88–89; a doublet of this legend is found in text on p. 707. The text of Aggadat Shir is badly corrupted; read: *אָמַר לָהֶם לָמָּה וְטָפְחוּ בְּאֵתָם בְּשִׁבְלִי... לֹא בָּאוּ אֶלָּא שֶׁאֲמַרְנוּ... אֶתָּם*. On Caleb's mighty voice, see text on p. 812.

528. Sotah 65a; Tan. B. IV, 66; Tan. Shelah 7 and Mass'e 4; BaR 16.11; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 6, 68d. Comp. Geiger, *Kebuzzat Maamarim*, 47, and Ginzberg in supplement to Geiger, 383–384.

529. Tan. B. IV, 66; Tan. Shelah 7; BaR 16.11. For the opposite view see text on p. 587.

## THE NIGHT OF TEARS

The words of the spies were heard by willing ears. The people believed them implicitly, and when called to task by Moses, replied: “Our teacher Moses, if there had been only two spies or three, we should have had to give credence to their words, for the law tells us to consider the testimony of even two as sufficient, whereas in this case there are fully ten!<sup>530</sup> Our brethren have made us faint of heart. Because the Lord hated us, He hath brought us forth out of the land of Egypt, to deliver us into the hand of the Amorites, to destroy us.” By these words the Israelites revealed that they hated God, and for this reason did they believe that they were hated by Him, for “whatever a man wisheth his neighbor, doth he believe that his neighbor wisheth him.” They even tried to convince Moses that God hated them. They said: “If an earthly king has two sons and two fields, one watered by a river, and the other dependent upon rains, will he not give the one that is watered by the river to his favorite son, and give the other, less excellent field to his other son? God led us out of Egypt, a land that is not dependent upon rain, only to give us the land of Canaan, which produces abundantly only if the rains fall.”<sup>531</sup>

Not only did the spies in the presence of Moses and Aaron voice their opinion that it was not advisable to attempt conquering Palestine, but they employed every means of inciting the people into rebellion against Moses and God. On the following evening every one of them betook himself to his house, donned his mourning clothes, and began to weep bitterly and to lament. Their housemates quickly ran toward them and in astonishment asked their reason for these tears and lamentations. Without interrupting their wailings, they answered: “Woe is me for ye, my sons, and woe is me for ye, my



daughters and daughters-in-law, that are doomed to be dishonored by the uncircumcised and to be given as a prey to their lusts. These men that we have beheld are not like unto mortals. Strong and mighty as angels are they; one of them might well slay a thousand of us. How dare we look into the iron faces of men so powerful that a nail of theirs is sufficient to stop up a spring of water!" At these words all the household, sons, daughters, and daughters-in-law, burst into tears and loud lamentations. Their neighbors came running to them and joined in the wails and sobs until they spread throughout all the camp, and all the sixty myriads of people were weeping. When the sound of their weeping reached heaven, God said: "Ye weep to-day without a cause, I shall see to it that in the future ye shall have a cause to weep on this day." It was then that God decreed to destroy the Temple on the ninth day of Ab, the day on which Israel in the wilderness wept without cause, so that this day became forever a day of tears.<sup>532</sup>

The people were not, however, content with tears, they resolved to set up as leaders in place of Moses and Aaron, Dathan and Abiram, and under their guidance to return to Egypt.<sup>533</sup> But worse than this, not only did they renounce their leader, but also their God, for they denied Him and wished to set up an idol for their God.<sup>534</sup> Not only the wicked ones among them such as the mixed multitude demurred against Moses and Aaron, but those also who had heretofore been pious, saying: "Would to God that we had died in the land of Egypt! Or would to God we had died in this wilderness!"

When Joshua and Caleb heard these speeches of the people teeming with blasphemy, they rent their garments and tried to restrain the people from their sinful enterprise, exhorting them particularly to have no fear of the Canaanites, because the time was at hand when God had promised Abraham to give the land of Canaan

to his descendants, and because there were no pious men among the inhabitants of the land for whose sake God would have been willing to leave it longer in their possession. They also assured the people that God had hurled from heaven the guardian angel of the inhabitants of Palestine, so that they were now impotent.<sup>535</sup> The people, however, replied: "We do not believe you; the other spies have our weal and woe more at heart than you."<sup>536</sup> Nor were the admonitions of Moses of more avail, even though he brought them a direct message from God to have no fear of the Canaanites. In vain did he say to them, "He who wrought all those miracles for you in Egypt and during your stay in the wilderness will work miracles for you as well when you will enter the promised land. Truly the past ought to inspire you with trust in the future." The only answer the people had to this was, "Had we heard this report of the land from strangers, we should not have given it credit, but we have heard it from men whose sons are our sons, and whose daughters are our daughters."<sup>537</sup> In their bitterness against their leaders they wanted to lay hands upon Moses and Aaron, whereupon God sent His cloud of glory as a protection to them, under which they sought refuge. But far from being brought to a realization of their wicked enterprise by this Divine apparition, they cast stones at the cloud, hoping in this way to kill Moses and Aaron. This outrage on their part completely wore out God's patience, and He determined upon the destruction of the spies, and a severe punishment of the people misled by them.<sup>538</sup>

---

530. Tan. Mass'e 4; BaR 23.6. Comp. also Yerushalmi Ma'aserot 1, 48d, and Ta'anit 4, 68d. The last passage reads: When the spies returned to the camp they found Moses and Aaron instructing the people in the laws of Hallah and Orlah. Whereupon they remarked to them mockingly: "Ye have not entered the promised land; why



then do ye trouble yourselves about laws which are to be observed in the Holy Land only?" Comp. Hallah 2.1.

531. Tan. B. IV, 84; BaR 16.3; Sifre D., 24; Midrash Tannaim 12.

532. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 743 on Num. 14.1, as well as in *'Aruk*, s. v. דבר 2=*Likkutim*, IV, 29b–30b; midrashic fragment published by Schechter in *Semitic Studies*, 492. Comp. also Sifre D., 24. On the text of Yelammedenu, see Epstein in *Ha-Eshkol* VI, 209–210. It is, however, best to read: וכו' כודות ברזל לאמה של מים יכולה לבלוע Comp. PR 20, 97, and accordingly בר' כודות בר'=*כאודות*. See also the legend about the giants at the time of the flood, text on p. 144. On the "night of weeping", see Sotah 65a; Ta'anit 29a; Yerushalmi 4,68d; Tan. B. IV, 690; Tan. Shelah 12; BaR 16.20; ER 29, 145; Ekah 1.60–61; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 14.1; Jerome on Zech. 8.18–19. Comp. sources quoted note 510.

533. Tehillim 106, 455; comp. Index, s. v. "Dathan and Abiram."

534. Midrash Tannaim 1–2. Comp. also Alphabet of R. Akiba 47 (ר').

535. Lekah Num 14.2–9. On the fall of the guardian angel, see notes 41, 670.

536. BaR 16.21; Tan. B. IV, 69; Tan. Shelah 12.

537. Sifre D., 24–25; Midrash Tannaim 12.

538. BaR 16.21; Tan. B. IV, 69; Tan. Shelah 12; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 743 on Num. 14.1; Sotah 35a (where it is said that the cloud caught up the stones thrown at Moses and Aaron); ER 29, 144. The Talmud, and very likely also the Midrashim just quoted, presuppose that the Israelites, in their wrath against God, threw the stones towards the clouds.

## INGRATITUDE PUNISHED

God now appeared to Moses, bidding him convey the following words to the people: "You kindle My anger on account of the very benefits I conferred upon you. When I clove the sea for you that you might pass through, while the Egyptians stuck in the loam at its bottom, you said to one another, 'In Egypt we trod loam, and He led us out of Egypt, only that we might again tread it.' I gave you manna as food, which made you strong and fat, but you, perceiving that you felt no need of easing yourselves after partaking of it, said: 'How comes it to pass that

twenty days have gone by and we have not eased ourselves? Ordinarily a human being dies if after four or five days he does not excrete the food he has taken. Surely we are doomed to die.' When the spies came to Palestine, I arranged it so that as soon as they entered a city its king or governor died, in order that the inhabitants, occupied with the burial of their ruler, might not take account of the spies' presence and kill them. Instead of being thankful for this, the spies returned and reported, 'The land through which we have gone to search it, is a land that eateth up the inhabitants thereof.' To you I gave the Torah; for your sake I said to the Angel of Death, 'Continue to hold sway over the rest of the world, but not over this nation that I have chosen as My people.' Truly I had hopes that after all this you would sin no more, and like Myself and the angels would live eternally, without ever tasting death. You, however, in spite of the great opportunity that I offered you, conducted yourselves like Adam. Upon him also did I lay a commandment, promising him life eternal on condition he observed it, but he brought ruin upon himself by trespassing My commandment and eating of the tree. To him I said, 'Dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return.' Similar was My experience with you. I said, 'You are angels,' but you conducted yourselves like Adam in your sins, and hence like Adam you must die. I had thought and hoped you would follow the example of the Patriarchs, but you act like the inhabitants of Sodom, who in punishment for their sins were consumed by fire.<sup>539</sup> If," continued God, turning to Moses, "they suppose that I have need of swords or spears to destroy them, they are mistaken. As through the word I created the world, so can I destroy the world by it, which would be a proper punishment for them. As through their words and their talk they angered Me, so shall the word kill them, and thou shalt be their heir, for



'I will make of thee a greater nation and mightier than they.'"<sup>540</sup>

Moses said: "If the chair with three legs could not withstand the moment of Thy wrath, how then shall a chair that hath but one leg endure? Thou art about to destroy the seed of the three Patriarchs; how then may I hope that my seed is to fare better? This is not the only reason for which Thou shouldst preserve Israel, as there are other considerations why Thou shouldst do so. Wert Thou to destroy Israel, the Edomites, Moabites, and all the inhabitants of Canaan would say"<sup>541</sup> that Thou hadst done this only because Thou wert not able to maintain Thy people, and therefore Thou didst destroy them. These will furthermore declare that the gods of Canaan are mightier than those of Egypt, that Thou hadst indeed triumphed over the river gods of Egypt, but that Thou wert not the peer of the rain gods of Canaan. Worse even than this, the nations of the world will accuse Thee of continuous cruelty, saying, 'He destroyed the generation of the flood through water; He rased to the ground the builders of the tower, as well as the inhabitants of Sodom; and no better than theirs was the fate of the Egyptians, whom He drowned in the sea. Now He hath also ruined Israel whom He had called, 'My firstborn son,' like Lilith who, when she can find no strange children, slays her own. So did He slay His own son.'"<sup>542</sup> Moses furthermore said: "Every pious man makes a point of cultivating a special virtue. Do Thou also in this instance bring Thy special virtue to bear." God: "And what is My special virtue?" Moses: "Long-suffering, love, and mercy, for Thou art wont to be long-suffering with them that kindle Thy wrath, and to have mercy for them. In Thy very mercy is Thy strength best shown. Mete out to Thy children, then, justice in small measure only, but mercy in great measure."<sup>543</sup>

Moses well knew that mercy was God's chief virtue. He remembered that he had asked God, when he interceded for Israel after their sin of the Golden Calf, "Pray tell me by what attribute of Thine Thou rulest the world." God answered: "I rule the world with loving-kindness, mercy, and long-suffering." "Can it be," said Moses, "that Thy long-suffering lets sinners off with impunity?" To this question Moses had received no answer, hence he felt he might now say to God: "Act now as Thou didst then assent."<sup>544</sup> Justice, that demands the destruction of Israel, is on one side of the scales, but it is exactly balanced by my prayer on the other side. Let us now see how the scales will balance." God replied: "As truly as thou livest, Moses, thy prayer shall dip the scales to the side of mercy. For thy sake must I cancel My decision to annihilate the children of Israel, so that the Egyptians will exclaim, 'Happy the servant to whose wish his master defers.' I shall, however, collect My debt, for although I shall not annihilate Israel all at once, they shall make partial annual payments during the following forty years. Say to them, 'Your carcasses shall fall in this wilderness; and all that were numbered of you, according to your whole number, from twenty years old and upward, which have murmured against Me. And your children shall be wanderers in the wilderness forty years, and shall bear your whoredoms, until your carcasses be consumed in the wilderness.'"<sup>545</sup>

This punishment was not, however, as severe as it might appear, for none among them died below the age of sixty, whereas those who had at the time of the exodus from Egypt been either below twenty or above sixty were entirely exempt from this punishment. Besides only such were smitten as had followed the counsel of the spies, whereas the others, and the Levites and the women were exempt."<sup>546</sup> Death, moreover,



visited the transgressors in such fashion that they were aware it was meant as punishment for their sins. Throughout all the year not one among them died. On the eighth day of the month Ab, Moses would have a herald proclaim throughout the camp, “Let each prepare his grave.” They dug their graves, and spent there the following night, the same night on which, following the counsel of the spies, they had revolted against God and Moses. In the morning a herald would once more appear “Let the living separate themselves from the dead.” Those that were still alive arose, but about fifteen thousand of them remained dead in their graves. After forty years, however, when the herald repeated his customary call on the ninth day of Ab, all arose, and there was not a single dead man among them. At first they thought they had made a miscalculation in their observation of the moon, that it was not the ninth day of Ab at all, and that this was the reason why their lives had been spared. Hence they repeated their preparations for death until the fifteenth day of Ab. Then the sight of the full moon convinced them that the ninth day of Ab had gone by, and that their punishment had been done away with. In commemoration of the relief from this punishment, they appointed the fifteenth day of Ab to be a holy day.<sup>547</sup>

539. Tan. B. IV, 75–78; Tan. Shelah 13; BaR 16.24: Makiri, Ps. 82, 56 (quoting Tan. B., *loc. cit.*) and 78, 26. On the loam of the Red Sea, see ShR 24.1. See also the opposite view in text on p. 556. On the manna, see text on pp. 570 and 693–694. On the plague raging in Palestine during the visit of the spies, see text on p. 707; comp. Yerushalmi Ta’anit 4, 68a. Concerning the Torah as a weapon against the Angel of Death, see text on pp. 611 and 620. The explanation of Ps. 82.6, as referring to the “generation of the wilderness” who received the Torah, is found also in John 10.34–35. Comp. *Likkutim* IV, 31a–31b.

540. DR 5.13; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 743 on Num. 13.1. The promise of a blessing by God, even if

made conditionally, is always fulfilled Moses became the ancestor of a clan numbering six hundred thousand men, corresponding to the number of Israel at the time of the exodus; thus the promise made to Moses, “I will make of thee a great nation”, was fulfilled. See Berakot 7a; Targum Yerushalmi Exod; 24.10; BaR 16.25; Tan. B. IV, 79; compare footnote 55 on p. 1088.

541. Lekah Num. 14.13–15. Compare with p. 623. Moses’ prayer for Israel, which stayed the decree of annihilation from being executed against them, in connection with the worship of the golden calf, is made use of by the Haggadah for his intercession in connection with the slander of the Holy Land by the spies.

542. BaR 16.25; Tan. B. IV, 78; Berakot 32a. Concerning Lilith, see text on p. 64.

543. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 743, on Num. 14, and II, 507, on Job 17; PK 16, 166a–167b; *Likkutim*, IV, 32b–33a. The special virtues of the patriarchs and other persons of biblical times, distinguished for their piety, are: Abraham was very zealous for the observance of the Abrahamic covenant; Isaac excelled in prayer; Jacob was famed for his truth; Joseph for his chastity (but perhaps חסידות in this passage means “lovingkindness”: compare footnote 3 on p. 327 where Joseph is designated as חסיד); Moses was distinguished for his modesty; Aaron for his love of peace; Phineas for his zeal for God. Comp. also the geonic (?) piyyut רחמנא אדכר in the Sefardic and cognate liturgies.

544. Tan. B. IV, 81; BaR 16.22 and 28; DR 5.13; PK 26, 166a–167a; ER 29, 144. Compare with pp. 616–617.

545. DR 5.13; BaR 26.25; Yelammedenu in *Likkutim* IV, 33a (bottom); Tan. B. IV, 70; Tan. Shelah 13; Berakot 32a.

546. BaR 16.23 and 3.7; Tan. B. IV, 70–71 (read at bottom of 70: לֹא נִכְנַס); Tan. Shelah 13; Baba Batra 121b; Esfah (?) in *Batte Midrashot* III, 8. According to the old Halakah, one becomes of age at twenty years, see text on p. 726, and footnote 69 on p. 261, and this is the reason for the statement in Baba Batra, *loc. cit.* But the Midrashim do not accept this view of the old Halakah. This explains the difference between the Talmud and the Midrashim, quoted above, with regard to the punishment of the men below twenty. As to women being free from this punishment, see Tehillim 1, 13–14, and text on p. 788.

547. Yerushalmi Ta’anit 4, 69c, and Babli 30b; Baba Batra 121a–121b; Ekah (פתיחתא) 23. 36–37; Shemuel (end); Tehillim 78, 348; Lekah Num. 14.23. With the exception of the two last-mentioned sources, the other passages give many other reasons for the origin of the festival of the fifteenth of Ab.—When God decreed the death of these sinners He at the same time also decreed that Israel should in the future be exiled into foreign lands, so that



“all the earth be filled with the glory of the Lord.” See *Le-kah Num.* 14.22. Israel was severely punished for the slanderous report of the spies, in accordance with the gravity of the sin; for slander is the most abominable sin. See *Mid-rash Tannaim* 140; *‘Arakin* 15a; text on pp. 703–704.

## THE YEARS OF DISFAVOR

**A**lthough God had now cancelled His resolution to annihilate Israel, He was not yet quite reconciled with them, and they were out of favor during the following years of their march through the desert, as was made evident by several circumstances. During these years of disfavor the north wind did not blow, with the result that the boys who were born in the desert could not be circumcised, as the absence of this wind produced an excessively high temperature, a condition that made it very dangerous for the young boys to have this operation performed upon them.<sup>548</sup> As the law, however, prohibits the offering of the paschal lamb unless the boys have been circumcised Israel could not properly observe the feast of Passover after the incident of the spies.<sup>549</sup> Moses also felt the effects of the disfavor, for during this time he received from God none but the absolutely essential directions, and no other revelations. This was because Moses, like all other prophets, received this distinction only for the sake of Israel, and when Israel was in disgrace, God did not communicate with him affectionately.<sup>550</sup> Indeed Moses’ fate, to die in the desert without entering the promised land, had been decreed simultaneously with the fate of the generation led by him out of Egypt.<sup>551</sup>

But the most terrible punishment of all fell upon the spies who, with their wicked tongues, had brought about the whole disaster. God repaid them measure for measure. Their tongues stretched to so great a length that they touched the navel; and worms crawled out of their

tongues, and pierced the navel; in this horrible fashion these men died.<sup>552</sup> Joshua and Caleb, however, who had remained true to God and had not followed the wicked counsel of their colleagues, were not only exempted from death, but were furthermore rewarded by God, by receiving in the Holy Land the property that had been allotted to the other spies.<sup>553</sup> Caleb was forty years of age at the time when he was sent out as a spy. He had married early, and at the age of ten had beget a son, still at the age of eighty-five he was sturdy enough to enjoy his possession in the Holy Land.<sup>554</sup>

God’s mercy is also extended to sinners, hence He bade Moses say to the people: “The Amalekites and the Canaanites are now dwelling in the valley, to-morrow turn you, and get you into the wilderness by the way of the Red Sea.” God did this because He had firmly resolved, in the event of a war between Israel and the inhabitants of Palestine, not to aid the former. Knowing that in this case their annihilation was sure, He commanded them to make no attempt to enter the land by force.<sup>555</sup> “It had been My intention,” said God, “to exalt you, but now if you were to attempt to make war upon the inhabitants of Palestine, you would suffer humiliation.” The people did not, however, hearken to the words of God that Moses communicated to them, and all at once formed in battle array in order to advance against the Amorites. They thought that after they had confessed their sin of having been misled by the spies, God would stand by them in their battles, so they said to Moses: “Surely these few drops have not filled the bucket.” Their transgression against God seemed to them only a peccadillo that had long since been forgiven. They were, however, mistaken. Like bees the enemies swarmed down upon them, and whereas these had in former times fallen dead of fright upon hearing the names of the Israelites, now a blow



from them sufficed to kill the Israelites. Their attempt to wage war without the Holy Ark in their midst proved a miserable failure. Many of them, and Zelophehad among these, met their death, and as many others returned to camp covered with wounds. The wailing and weeping of the people was of no avail, God persisted in His resolve, and they brought upon themselves grave punishment for this new proof of disobedience, for God said to Moses: "If I were to deal with them now in accordance with strict justice, they should never enter the land. After a while, however, I shall, let them 'possess the land, which I swore unto their fathers to give unto them.'" <sup>556</sup>

In order to comfort and encourage Israel in their dejection, Moses received directions to announce the law of sacrifices, and other precepts laid down for the life in the Holy Land, that the people might see that God did not mean to be angry with them forever. When Moses announced the laws to them, a dispute arose between the Israelites and the proselytes, because the former declared that they alone and not the others were to make offerings to God in His sanctuary. God hereupon called Moses, and said to him: "Why do these always quarrel one with another?" Moses replied: "Thou knowest why." God: "Have I not said to thee, 'One law and one ordinance shall be for you and for the stranger that sojourneth with you?'" <sup>557</sup>

Although the forty years' march through the desert was a punishment for the sin of Israel, still it had one advantage. At the time when Israel departed from Egypt, Palestine was in poor condition; the trees planted in the time of Noah were old and withered. Hence God said: "What! Shall I permit Israel to enter an uninhabitable land? I shall bid them wander in the desert for forty years, that the Canaanites may in the meantime fell the old trees and plant new ones, so that Israel, upon entering the land, may find it

abounding in plenty." So did it come to pass, for when Israel conquered Palestine, they found the land not only newly cultivated, <sup>558</sup> but also filled to overflowing with treasures. The inhabitants of this land were such misers that they would not indulge in a drop of oil for their gruel; if an egg broke, they did not use it, but sold it for cash. The hoardings of these miserly Canaanites God later gave to Israel to enjoy and to use. <sup>559</sup>

---

548. Yebamot 72a (it is said in this passage that the blowing of the north wind is a sign of God's grace, and hence it did not blow in the years of His displeasure, except at the moment of midnight, which is "the acceptable time"; compare with p. 7); PK 5, 50b; Shir 2.13. Compare with p. 844. See also Sifra 1.1; Mekilta Bo (פתיחתא), 2a (bottom) and the references given in note 550.

549. Sifre Num. 67; Zebachim 115a–115b; Mo'ed Katan 15b. Comp. above note 519.

550. Mekilta Bo 1, 2a–2b; Sifra 1.1; Ta'anit 30b, and Yerushalmi 3, 66c. According to MHG I, 673, Moses spent these years of God's displeasure in mourning for Israel's severe chastisement. His dejected spirit was the cause of his not receiving divine revelations during this period, since the Shekinah dwells only on those whose spirit is joyful. Compare with p. 391, and the note appertaining to it. A similar statement was very likely to be found in ER 29, 145, where the text after שונה... כל אותן is incomplete. As to the conception that Moses and all the other prophets owed their distinction to Israel, see text on pp. 575 and 623.

551. Sifre N., 135, and Sifre D., 29; Midrash Tannaim 17; Mekilta Amalek 2, 55a. Compare with p. 737.

552. Sotah 65a (here also we have the dissenting view that they died of croup); Koheleth 9.12, which reads: They died because the members of their bodies fell apart. Comp. also Acts 12.23, where it is said that Herod was eaten up by worms as a punishment for his blasphemy. The same death overtook the blasphemer Antiochus IV; see 2 Maccabees 9.9.

553. Baba Batra 117b; comp. Tan. B. IV, 65; BaR 16.9, which says: Joshua took the reward of the spies.

554. Yerushalmi Kiddushin 1, 59c. Comp. note 325.

555. Midrash Aggada Num. 14.25.

556. Tan. B. IV, 81–82; BaR 17.3; *Liklutim* IV, 35b–36b. According to some authorities, the Israelites were wounded, but not killed, by their enemies, so that the Name of God should not be desecrated. Comp. *Hadar* and



*Da'at* on Deut. 1.44. Concerning Zelophehad, see text on pp. 690 and 785.

557. ER 29, 146.

558. Koheleth 6.11. Comp., however, *Sifre D.*, 38, and text on p. 546 according to which the Canaanites, hearing of Israel's design on Palestine, destroyed the buildings, felled the trees, and burned the crops. Concerning this passive form of warfare, see Herodotus IV, 120.

559. Koheleth 2.26.

## THE REBELLION OF KORAH

The Canaanites were not the only ones who did not enjoy their wealth and money, for a similar fate was decreed for Korah. He had been the treasurer of Pharaoh, and possessed treasures so vast that he employed three hundred white mules to carry the keys of his treasures; but "let not the rich man boast of his riches," for Korah through his sin lost both life and property. Korah had obtained possession of his riches in the following way: When Joseph, during the lean years, through the sale of grain amassed great treasures, he erected three great buildings, one hundred cubits wide, one hundred cubits long, and one hundred cubits high, filled them with money and delivered them to Pharaoh, being too honest to leave even five silver shekels of this money to his children. Korah discovered one of these three treasures. On account of his wealth he became proud, and his pride brought about his fall.<sup>560</sup> He believed Moses had slighted him by appointing his cousin Elizaphan as chief of the Levite division of Kohathites. He said: "My grandfather had four sons, Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. Amram, as the firstborn, had privileges of which his sons availed themselves, for Aaron is high priest and Moses is king; but have not I, the son of Izhar, the second son of Kohath, the rightful claim to be prince of the Kohathites? Moses, however, passed me by and appointed Eliza-

phan, whose father was Uzziel, the youngest son of my grandfather. Therefore will I now stir up rebellion against Moses, and overthrow all institutions founded by him." Korah was far too wise a man to believe that God would permit success to a rebellion against Moses, and stand by indifferently, but the very insight that enabled him to look into the future became his doom. He saw with his prophetic eye that Samuel, a man as great as both Aaron and Moses together, would be one of his descendants; and furthermore that twenty-four descendants of his, inspired by the Holy Spirit, would compose psalms and sing them in the Temple. This brilliant future of his descendants inspired him with great confidence in his undertaking, for he thought to himself that God would not permit the father of such pious men to perish. His eye did not, however, look sharply enough into the future, or else he would also have known that his sons would repent of the rebellion against Moses, and would for this reason be deemed worthy of becoming the fathers of prophets and Temple singers, whereas he was to perish in this rebellion.<sup>561</sup>

The names of this unfortunate rebel corresponded to his deeds and to his end. He was called Korah, "baldness," for through the death of his horde he caused a baldness in Israel. He was the son of Izhar, "the heat of noon" because he caused the earth to be made to boil "like the heat of noon;" and furthermore he was designated as the son of Kohath, for Kohath signifies "bluntness," and through his sin he made "his children's teeth be set on edge." His description as the son of Levi, "conduct," points to his end, for he was conducted to hell.<sup>562</sup>

Korah, however, was not the only one who strove to overthrow Moses. With him were, first of all, the Reubenites Dathan and Abiram, who well deserve their names, for the one signifies, "transgressor of the Divine law," and the other,



“the obdurate.” There were, furthermore, two hundred fifty men, who by their rank and influence belonged to the most prominent people in Israel; among them even the princes of the tribes. In the union of the Reubenites with Korah was verified the proverb, “Woe to the wicked, woe to his neighbor.” For Korah, one of the sons of Kohath, had his station to the south of the Tabernacle, and as the Reubenites were also encamped there, a friendship was struck up between them, so that they followed him in his undertaking against Moses.<sup>563</sup>

The hatred Korah felt against Moses was still more kindled by his wife. When, after the consecration of the Levites, Korah returned home, his wife noticed that the hairs of his head and of his body had been shaved, and asked him who had done all this to him. He answered, “Moses,” whereupon his wife remarked: “Moses hates thee and did this to disgrace thee.” Korah, however, replied: “Moses shaved all the hair of his own sons also.” But she said: “What did the disgrace of his own sons matter to him if he only felt he could disgrace thee? He was quite ready to make that sacrifice.”<sup>564</sup> As at home, so also did Korah fare with others, for, hairless as he was, no one at first recognized him, and when people at last discovered who was before them, they asked him in astonishment who had so disfigured him. In answer to their inquiries he said, “Moses did this, who besides took hold of my hands and feet to lift me, and after he had lifted me, said, ‘Thou art clean.’ But his brother Aaron he adorned like a bride, and bade him take his place in the Tabernacle.” Embittered by what they considered an insult offered him by Moses, Korah and his people exclaimed: “Moses is king, his brother did he appoint as high priest, his nephews as heads of the priests, he allots to the priests the heave offering and many other tributes.”<sup>565</sup> Then he tried to make Moses appear ridiculous in the eyes of the people. Shortly be-

fore this Moses had read to the people the law of the fringes in the borders of their garments. Korah now had garments of purple made for the two hundred fifty men that followed him, all of whom were chief justices. Arrayed thus, Korah and his company appeared before Moses and asked him if they were required to attach fringes to the corners of these garments. Moses answered, “Yea.” Korah then began this argument. “If,” said he, “one fringe of purple suffices to fulfil this commandment, should not a whole garment of purple answer the requirements of the law, even if there be no special fringe of purple in the corners?” He continued to lay before Moses similar artful questions: “Must a Mezuzah be attached to the doorpost of a house filled with the sacred Books?” Moses answered, “Yea.” Then Korah said: “The two hundred and seventy sections of the Torah are not sufficient, whereas the two sections attached to the doorpost suffice!” Korah put still another question: “If upon a man’s skin there show a bright spot, the size of half a bean, is he clean or is he unclean?” Moses: “Unclean.” “And,” continued Korah, “if the spot spread and cover all the skin of him, is he then clean or unclean?” Moses: “Clean.” “Laws so irrational,” said Korah, “cannot possibly trace their origin from God. The Torah that thou didst teach to Israel is not therefore God’s work, but thy work, hence art thou no prophet and Aaron is no high priest!”<sup>566</sup>

---

560. BHM II, 108; *Likkutim*, I, 22b–23a; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 16.19; Sanhedrin 110b, and Yerushalmi 10, 27d (bottom); Mishle 11, 70; Pesahim 119a; PRE 50; Gorion 46. Concerning Joseph’s treasures, see text on p. 397; text on p. 549. On Korah’s riches see also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 2.2 and 4; BaR 18.13 and 22.7; Tan. B. IV, 160; Tan. Mattot 5; Aggadat Esther 56.

561. BaR 18.2 and 8; Tan. B. IV, 85 and 89; Tan. Korah 1 and 5; *Likkutim*, IV, 39b and 41b; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 1080. On Samuel, as the descendant of Korah and his comparison with Moses and Aaron, see notes 242,



492 and Tehillim 99, 424. Compare further with p. 722; text on p. 100.

562. Sanhedrin 109b; Mishle 11, 71. Comp. also Sekel II, 35–36; *Likkutim*, IV, 40b.

563. Tan. B. IV, 88 and 93 (for the proverb, “woe to the wicked, etc.”, very frequently quoted in talmudic and midrashic literature, see references given by Buber, note 38, as well as note 116 on p. 12); Tan. Korah 4 and 10; *Likkutim*, IV, 40b; Sanhedrin 110a. According to some authorities, the Reubenites were angry with Moses for having conferred so many honors on the tribe of Judah and not on them, who were the descendants of Jacob’s first-born; see *Likkutim*, IV, 42b, as well as Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 2.2; *Pa’aneah*, Num. 16.1. Among the rebels there were to be found representatives of all tribes, with the exception of that of Levi. Each tribe was represented by twenty-three men, corresponding to the number of the members constituting the lower courts. Accordingly, the congregation of Korah consisted of two hundred and fifty-three men, of whom only three are mentioned by name: Dathan, Abiram, and On (Num. 16.1–2), while the rest remained unnamed; *Imre No’am*, Num. 16.2. According to the Midrash quoted by Shu’aib, Num., *loc. cit.*, the men who rebelled together with Korah knew the Name, and hence Moses was afraid of them, since he realized that he could not use the Name against them. This is based on the midrashic explanation of the words **אֲנָשֵׁי שֵׁם** (Num., *loc. cit.*), which is taken to mean “masters in the use of the Holy Name”. Concerning Moses’ employment of the Name in punishing sinners, see text on p. 486 and text on p. 690. Comp. Manzur, 8–9; Tan. IV, 86; PR 7, 27b–28a.

564. Sanhedrin 110a; Midrash Aggada, Num. 16.8. This legend is a doublet of the one which follows it immediately; see references in the following note. Comp. these references also with regard to Korah’s wicked wife.

565. BaR 18.4; Tan. B. IV, 86–87; Tan. Korah 6. Comp. also Zohar III, 49a and references in the following note.

566. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 27d–28a; Tan. B. IV, 85 (it is said here that the outbreak of the rebellion took place during the banquet given by Korah to his friends, when certain parts of the slaughtered animals were seized by Eliezer as his priestly share); Tan. Korah 2; Mishle 11, 70; Aggadat Esther 56 (in this passage it is stated that it was Korah’s wife who called her husband’s attention to the absurdity of some of the laws promulgated by Moses; comp. the preceding two notes); *Likkutim*, IV, 39b–40a. Ps.-Philo 16.1 likewise remarks: At that time did He give him the commandment concerning the fringes; and then did Korah rebel, and two hundred men (read: and fifty) with him, and spoke saying: “What if a law which we cannot bear is ordained for us?” One fails to see the hardship of this commandment concerning the fringes, whereas its

absurdity under certain circumstances is very clearly shown by the Rabbis. The connections of the commandment concerning the fringes and the rebellion of Korah was assumed by the Haggadah in accordance with the hermeneutical rule of **סְמוּכִין** “juxtaposition”, which implies that there is some connection between two passage of Scripture which are “near” one another. The Haggadah therefore presupposes that the rebellion of Korah, the narrative of which follows the commandment concerning the fringes, must be connected with the the passages preceding it. Philo, *Moses*, 2(3).21 and 38, is of the same opinion as the Midrashim just quoted that Korah denied the divine origin of Aaron’s priesthood. Comp. also Zohar I, 17.

## KORAH ABUSES MOSES AND THE TORAH

Then Korah betook himself to the people to incite them to rebellion against Moses, and particularly against the tributes to the priests imposed upon the people by him. That the people might now be in a position to form a proper conception of the oppressive burden of these tasks, Korah told them the following tale that he had invented: “There lived in my vicinity a widow with two daughters, who owned for their support a field whose yield was just sufficient for them to keep body and soul together. When this woman set out to plow her field, Moses appeared and said: ‘Thou shalt not plow with an ox and an ass together.’ When she began to sow, Moses appeared and said: ‘Thou shalt not sow with divers seeds.’ When the first fruits showed in the poor widow’s field, Moses appeared and bade her bring it to the priests, for to them are due ‘the first of all the fruit of the earth’; and when at length the time came for her to cut it down, Moses appeared and ordered her ‘not wholly to reap the corners of the field, nor to gather the gleanings of the harvest, but to leave them for the poor.’ When she had done all that Moses had bidden her, and was about to thrash



the grain, Moses appeared once more, and said: 'Give me the heave offering, the first and the second tithes to the priests.' When at last the poor woman became aware of the fact that she could not now possibly maintain herself from the yield of the field after the deduction of all the tributes that Moses had imposed upon her, she sold the field and with the proceeds purchased ewes, in the hope that she might now undisturbed have the benefit of the wool as well as of the younglings of the sheep. She was, however, mistaken. When the firstling of the sheep was born, Aaron appeared and demanded it, for the firstborn belongs to the priest. She had a similar experience with the wool. At shearing time Aaron reappeared and demanded 'the first of the fleece of the sheep,' which, according to Moses' law, was his. But not content with this, he reappeared later and demanded one sheep out of every ten as a tithe, to which again, according to the law, he had a claim. This, however, was too much for the long-suffering woman, and she slaughtered the sheep, supposing that she might now feel herself secure, in full possession of the meat. But wide of the mark! Aaron appeared, and, basing his claim on the Torah, demanded the shoulder, the two cheeks, and the maw. 'Alas!' exclaimed the woman, 'The slaughtering of the sheep did not deliver me out of thy hands! Let the meat then be consecrated to the sanctuary.' Aaron said, 'Everything devoted in Israel is mine. It shall then be all mine.' He departed, taking with him the meat of the sheep, and leaving behind him the widow and her daughters weeping bitterly. Such men," said Korah, concluding his tale, "are Moses and Aaron, who pass their cruel measures as Divine laws."<sup>567</sup>

Pricked on by speeches such as these, Korah's horde appeared before Moses and Aaron, saying: "Heavier is the burden that ye lay upon us than was that of the Egyptians; and moreover as, since the incident of the spies, we are forced

annually to offer as a tribute to death fifteen thousand men, it would have been better for us had we stayed in Egypt." They also reproached Moses and Aaron with an unjustified love of power, saying: "Upon Sinai all Israel heard the words of God, 'I am thy Lord.' Wherefore then lift ye up yourselves above the congregation of the Lord?"<sup>568</sup> They knew no bounds in their attacks upon Moses, they accused him of leading an immoral life and even warned their wives to keep far from him.<sup>569</sup> They did not, moreover, stop short at words, but tried to stone Moses,<sup>570</sup> when at last he sought protection from God and called to Him for assistance. He said: "I do not care if they insult me or Aaron, but I insist that the insult of the Torah be avenged. 'If these men die the common death of all men,' I shall myself become a disbeliever and declare the Torah was not given by God."<sup>571</sup>

---

567. Tehillim 1, 14 (read **בא אהרון** after **גרון**); Midrash Aggada, Num. 7.19; Manzur 7–8. A short version of this legend, lacking the fine humor of the longer version, is found in *Likkutim*, I, 23a–23b; BHM VI, 107–108; *Hibbur Ma'as*. No. 6; *Neweh Shalom*, 56. Comp. also Matthew 23.14.

568. Tan. BIV, 86; Tan. Korah 6; BaR 18.4; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 752 (which reads: Korah said: "We received the ten commandments on Mount Sinai, but no law concerning the gifts to the priests, nor concerning the fringes, which thou hast devised thyself"); *Likkutim* IV, 40b. Comp. also references given in note 566. Concerning the fifteen thousand men who died annually, see text on p. 715. The Haggadah presupposes that the rebellion of Korah took place after the return of the spies, and this is explicitly stated in Seder 'Olam 8, and in many other passages referred to by Ratner, *ad loc.* Midrash Aggada, Num. 14.22, on the contrary, maintains that the sending of the spies took place after the rebellion of Korah.

569. Mo'ed Katan 18b; Tan. B. IV, 92; Tan. Korah 10; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 16.4; BaR 18.20; Tehillim 106, 455.

570. BaR 18.4. Comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 2.3.

571. Tan. B. IV, 90, 92, and 96; Tan. Korah 6; BaR 18.9 and 12; Yelammedenu (?) in Yalkut I, 752; *Likkutim*, IV, 40a and 42b–43a; Tehillim 2, 25; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28a. Moses (Num. 16.29), Elijah (1 Kings 18.36),



and Micah (1 Kings 22.28) are the prophets who asked that a miracle should be wrought for them, otherwise they would be declared as impostors; see Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.* Comp. also Mishle 11, 71; *Likkutim*, I, 23b.

## MOSES PLEADS IN VAIN WITH KORAH

Moses took Korah's transgression much to heart, for he thought to himself that perhaps, after the many sins of Israel, he might not succeed in obtaining God's pardon for them. He did not therefore have this matter decided immediately, but admonished the people to wait until the following day, having a lingering hope that Korah's horde, given time for calm reflection, might themselves perceive their sin to which an excess of drink might have carried them away. Hence he said to them: "I may not now appear before the Lord, for although He partakes of neither food nor drink, still He will not judge such actions of ours as we have committed after feasting and revelling. But 'to-morrow the Lord will show who are His.'<sup>572</sup> Know ye now that just as God has set definite bounds in nature between day and night, between light and darkness, so also has He separated Israel from the other nations, and so also has He separated Aaron from the rest of Israel. If you can obliterate the boundary between light and darkness, then only can you remove the boundary of separation between Israel and the rest, but not otherwise. Other nations have many religions, many priests, and worship in many temples, but we have one God, one Torah, one law, one altar, and one high priest, whereas ye are two hundred fifty men, each of whom is imbued with the desire of becoming high priest, as I too should like to be high priest, if such a thing were possible. But to prove Aaron's claim to his dignity, 'this

do; take you censers, Korah, and all his company; and put fire therein, and put incense upon them before the Lord to-morrow.' The offering of incense is the most pleasant offering before the Lord, but for him who hath not been called this offering holds a deadly poison, for it consumed Nadab and Abihu. But I exhort ye not to burden your souls with a deadly sin, for none but the man God will choose as high priest out of the number of you will remain alive, all others will pay with their lives at the offering of incense." These last words of Moses, however, far from restraining them, only strengthened Korah in his resolve to accomplish his undertaking, for he felt sure that God would choose him, and none other. He had a prophetic presentiment that he was destined to be the forefather of prophets and Temple singers, and for this reason thought he was specially favored by God.

When Moses perceived that Korah was irclaimable, he directed the rest of his warning to those other Levites, the men of Korah's tribe, who, he feared, would join Korah in his rebellion. He admonished them to be satisfied with the honors God had granted them, and not to strive for priestly dignity. He concluded his speech with a last appeal to Korah to cause no schism in Israel, saying: "Had Aaron arbitrarily assumed the priestly dignity, you would do right to withstand his presumption, but it was God, whose attributes are sublimity, strength, and sovereignty, who clothed Aaron with this dignity, so that those who are against Aaron are in reality against God." Korah made no answer to all these words, thinking that the best course for him to follow would be to avoid picking an argument with so great a sage as Moses, feeling sure that in such a dispute he should be worsted and, contrary to his own conviction, be forced to yield to Moses.

Moses, seeing that it was useless to reason with Korah, sent a messenger to Dathan and



Abiram,<sup>573</sup> summoning them to appear before his court. He did this because the law requires that the accused be summoned to appear before the judge, before judgment may be passed upon him, and Moses did not wish these men to be punished without a hearing.<sup>574</sup> These, however, made answer to the messenger sent by Moses, "We will not come up!" This shameless answer held an unconscious prophecy. They went not up, but, as their end showed, down, to hell. Not only, moreover, did they refuse to comply with Moses' demand, they sent the following message in answer to Moses: "Why dost thou set thyself up as master over us? What benefit didst thou bring to us? Thou didst lead us out of Egypt, a land 'like the garden of the Lord,' but hast not brought us to Canaan, leaving us in the wilderness where we are daily visited by the plague. Even in Egypt didst thou try to assume the leadership, just as thou doest now. Thou didst beguile the people in their exodus from Egypt, when thou didst promise to lead them to a land of milk and honey; in their delusion they followed thee and were disappointed. Now dost thou attempt to persuade us as thou didst persuade them, but thou shalt not succeed, for we will not come and obey thy summons."<sup>575</sup>

The shamelessness of these two men, who declined even to talk about their transgression with Moses, aroused his wrath to the uttermost, for a man does get a certain amount of satisfaction out of discussing the dispute with his opponents, whereas he feels badly if he cannot discuss the matter. In his anger he said to God: "O Lord Of the world! I well know that these sinners participated in the offerings of the congregation that were offered for all Israel, but as they have withdrawn themselves from the community, accept not Thou their share of the offering and let it not be consumed by the heavenly fire. It was I whom they treated so, I who took no money from the people for my labors, even when pay-

ment was my due. It is customary for anyone who works for the sanctuary to receive pay for his work, but I travelled to Egypt on my own ass, and took none of theirs, although I undertook the journey in their interests. It is customary for those that have a dispute to go before a judge, but I did not wait for this, and went straight to them to settle their disputes, never declaring the innocent guilty, or the guilty innocent."

When he now perceived that his words had no effect upon Korah and his horde, he concluded his words with a threat to the ring leaders: "Be thou and all thy company before the Lord, thou and they, and Aaron, to-morrow."

Korah spent the night before the judgment in trying to win over the people to his side, and succeeded in so doing. He went to all the other tribes, saying to them: "Do not think I am seeking a position of honor for myself. No, I wish only that this honor may fall to the lot of each in turn, whereas Moses is now king, and his brother high priest." On the following morning, all the people, and not Korah's original company alone, appeared before the Tabernacle and began to pick quarrels with Moses and Aaron. Moses now feared that God would destroy all the people because they had joined Korah, hence he said to God: "O Lord of the world! If a nation rebels against a king of flesh and blood because ten or twenty men have cursed the king or his ambassadors, then he sends his hosts to massacre the inhabitants of the land, innocent as well as guilty, for he is not able with certainty to tell which among them honored the king and which among them cursed him. But Thou knowest the thoughts of man, and what his heart and kidneys counsel him to do, the workings of Thy creatures' minds lie open before Thee, so that Thou knowest who hath rebelled against Thee and who hath not, for Thou knowest the spirit of each one. 'Shall one man sin, and wilt Thou



be wroth with all the congregation?’ ” God hereupon said to Moses:<sup>576</sup> “I have heard thy prayer for the congregation. Say then, to them, ‘Get you up from about the Tabernacle of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram.’ ”<sup>577</sup>

Moses did not immediately carry out these instructions, for he tried once again to warn Dathan and Abiram of the punishment impending upon them, but they refused to give heed to Moses, and remained within their tents. “Now,” said Moses, “I have done all I could, and can do nothing more.” Hence, turning to the congregation, he said:<sup>578</sup> “Depart, I pray you, from the tents of these wicked men, that even in their youth deserved death as a punishment for their actions. In Egypt they betrayed the secret of my slaying an Egyptian; at the Red Sea it was they that angered God by their desire to return to Egypt; in Alush they broke the Sabbath, and now they trooped together to rebel against God. They now well deserve excommunication, and the destruction of all their property. ‘Touch, therefore, nothing of theirs, lest ye be consumed in all their sins.’ ”<sup>579</sup>

The community obeyed the words of Moses and drew back from the dwellings of Dathan and Abiram. These, not at all cowed, were not restrained from their wicked intention, but stood at the doors of their tents, abusing and calumniating Moses. Moses hereupon said to God: “If these men die upon their beds like all men, after physicians have attended to them and acquaintances have visited them, then shall I publicly avow ‘that the Lord hath not sent me’ to do all these works, but that I have done them of mine own mind.” God replied: “What wilt thou have Me do?” Moses: “If the Lord hath already provided the earth with a mouth to swallow them, it is well, if not, I pray Thee, do so now.” God said: “Thou shalt decree a thing, and it shall be established unto thee.”<sup>580</sup>

Moses was not the only one to insist upon exemplary punishment of the horde of Korah. Sun and Moon appeared before God, saying: “If Thou givest satisfaction to the son of Amram, we shall set out on our course around the world, but not otherwise.” God, however, hurled lightnings after them, that they might go about their duties, saying to them: “You have never championed My cause, but now you stand up for a creature of flesh and blood.” Since that time Sun and Moon have always to be driven to duty, never doing it voluntarily because they do not wish to look upon the sins of man upon earth.

---

572. BaR 18.6–7; Sanhedrin 52a; Tan. B. IV 88; Tan. Korah 4–5; *Likkutim*, IV, 41a; Midrash Aggada Num. 16.5.

573. BaR 18.7–9; Tan. B. IV, 88–90; Tan. Korah 5–6; *Likkutim*, IV, 41a. On the idea of selection in nature and history, see also Pesahim 104a; Tehillim 24, 203, and the liturgical formula of the Habdalah recited at the termination of the Sabbath. The oneness of Israel’s God, Law, and Sanctuary, as contrasted with the multitude of gods, laws, and sanctuaries of the heathens, is a favorite topic with the Haggadists; comp., e. g., Philo *Special. Leg.*, 1 (*de Sacrific. Offren.* 11); Josephus, *Contra Apionem*, 2.23, and *Antiqui.*, IV, 8.5; Apocalypse of Baruch 48.24; Sifre D., 354; Midrash Tannaim 218–219; text on p. 863. Concerning the prophetic presentiment of Korah, see text on p. 718.

574. Mo’ed Katan 16a; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 16.12. Moses was rewarded for his attempt to make Dathan and Abiram abandon their evil designs, although he did not succeed in saving them. The three sons of Korah, as well as On, were saved because they repented of their sin; see Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 752, and *Likkutim*, IV, 41b. Compare also with pp. 726–727.

575. BaR 18.10; Tan. B. IV, 90; Tan. Korah 6; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 752 (the sentence ‘וְאִין אֲנִי וְכֹהֵן is to be taken as an unconscious prophecy); *Likkutim*, IV, 41b and 42a.

576. BaR 18.10–11; Tan. B. IV, 90–91; Tan. Korah 6–7. Comp. also Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 292, on Jer. 15, and in Makiri, 215 (on Is. 56), as well as 29 (on Amos); ER 17.73; ShR 4.1; DR 11.2; Tehillim 24, 206. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 3.32, makes Moses deliver, on this occasion, a long oration, in which he gives a survey of his life history; this oration is addressed to God.



577. BaR 18.11; Tan. B. IV, 91; Tan. Korah 7 (end); Targum Yerushalmi Num. 16.24.

578. BaR 18.12; Tan. B. IV, 91; Tan. Korah 8; comp. also 4 Maccabees 2.17.

579. Targum Yerushalmi 16.26. On this pair of wicked brothers, see text on p. 487; text on pp. 550, 595, and the references given in the notes appertaining to these passages. Comp. also Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 14.11.

580. BaR 18.12; Tan. B. IV, 92 and 94; Tan. Korah 8; *Likkutim*, IV, 42b; Nedarim 39b; Mishle 11, 71. Comp. also the references given in the following note, as well as in note 571.

## KORAH AND HIS HORDE PUNISHED

God did not gainsay satisfaction to His faithful servant. The mouth of hell approached the spot upon which Dathan, Abiram, and their families stood,<sup>581</sup> and the ground under their feet grew so precipitous that they were not able to stand upright, but rolled to the opening and went quickly into the pit. Not these wicked people alone were swallowed by the earth, but their possessions also. Even their linen that was at the launderer's or a pin belonging to them rolled toward the mouth of the earth and vanished therein.<sup>582</sup> Nowhere upon earth remained a trace of them or of their possessions, and even their names disappeared from the documents upon which they were written.<sup>583</sup> They did not, however, meet an immediate death, but sank gradually into the earth, the opening of which adjusted itself to the girth of each individual. The lower extremities disappeared first, then the opening widened, and the abdomen followed, until in this way the entire body was swallowed. While they were sinking thus slowly and painfully, they continued to cry: "Moses is truth, and his Torah is truth. We acknowledge that Moses is rightful king and true prophet, that Aaron is legitimate high priest, and that the Torah has been given by God. Now deliver us, O our teacher Moses!" These words were audible

throughout the entire camp, so that all might be convinced of the wickedness of Korah's undertaking.<sup>584</sup>

Without regard to these followers of Korah, who were swallowed up by the earth, the two hundred and fifty men who had offered incense with Aaron found their death in the heavenly fire that came down upon their offering and consumed them. But he who met with the most terrible form of death was Korah. Consumed at the incense offering, he then rolled in the shape of a ball of fire to the opening in the earth, and vanished. There was a reason for this double punishment of Korah. Had he received punishment by burning alone, then those who had been swallowed by the earth, and who had failed to see Korah smitten by the same punishment, would have complained about God's injustice, saying: "It was Korah who plunged us into destruction, yet he himself escaped it." Had he, on the other hand, been swallowed by the earth without meeting death by fire, then those whom the fire had consumed would have complained about God's injustice that permitted the author of their destruction to go unpunished. Now, however, both those who perished by fire and those who were swallowed up by the earth witnessed their leader share their punishment.<sup>585</sup>

This terrible death did not, however, suffice to atone for the sins of Korah and his company, for their punishment continues in hell. They are tortured in hell, and at the end of thirty days, hell again casts them up near to the surface of the earth, on the spot where they had been swallowed. Whosoever on that day puts his ear to the ground upon that spot hears the cry: "Moses is truth, and his Torah is truth, but we are liars." Not until after the Resurrection will their punishment cease, for even in spite of their grave sin they were not given over to eternal damnation.

For a time Korah and his company believed that they should never know relief from these



tortures of hell, but Hannah's words encouraged them not to despair. In reference to them she announced the prophecy, "The Lord bringeth low, to Sheol, and lifteth up." At first they had no real faith in this prophecy, but when God destroyed the Temple, and sank its portals deep into the earth until they reached hell, Korah and his company clung to the portals, saying: "If these portals return again upward, then through them shall we also return upward." God hereupon appointed them as keepers of these portals over which they will have to stand guard until they return to the upper world.<sup>586</sup>

---

581. Nedarim 39b; Sanhedrin 110a; Tan. B. IV, 94; Mishle 11,71. On the sun and moon being forced to do their duty, see text on p. 24, and text on p. 1080. The designation of Moses as "son of Amram" in this passage is not to be taken in a derogatory sense (comp. note 163); it rather expresses pity for Moses, who is thus described as being helpless. In view of the fact that "there is nothing new under the sun", the Rabbis maintain that the mouth of the earth which swallowed up Korah was created in the twilight between the sixth day of creation and the first Sabbath (compare with p. 77), and that at the time of the punishment of the congregation of Korah it approached the spot where the sinners stood, and swallowed them up; see Abot 5.6, and the references given in footnote 99 on p. 78. A dissenting view is given in Sanhedrin 37b, which states that the earth did not open its mouth from the time it swallowed up the blood of Abel until it swallowed up Korah. The very same remark is also found in ps.-Philo, 16, where the translator from the Hebrew committed an amusing error. The words "*et locutus sum Sion, dicens: Non adicias ut deglutias sanguinem*" (16, bottom) are a mistaken rendering of the Hebrew ולציון דברתי אל תוסף לבלע דם (16, top) "And I spoke unto the dry land, saying: Thou shalt not any more swallow up blood." In view of the rare occurrence of the word ציון the translator may be forgiven for misreading it as ציון "Zion".

582. BaR 18.13; Tan. B. I 96–97 (in this passage the view is also given that the earth was cleft asunder at different places wherever one of the sinners stood); Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 752; *Likkutim*, IV, 43a–43b; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28a.

583. Shemuel 5, 62; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28a.

584. Targum Yerushalmi and Lekah on Num. 16.22–34; Tan. B. IV, 97; *Likkutim*, I, 23b; BHM VI,

108; text on p. 725–726. The Christian legend tells of similar punishments of sinners. Comp. *The Acts of Philip*, towards the end.

585. Tan. B. IV, 93; BaR 18.19 (*op. cit.* 15 speaks of the fire which consumed Korah's wife); Sanhedrin 110; Sifre N., 117. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 3.4, Korah was consumed by fire, whereas the *Protevangelium of James* 9.2 declares that Korah was swallowed up by the mouth of the earth.

586. Baba Batra 74a; Sanhedrin 110a–110b; Tan. B. IV, 94; BaR 18.13; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 16.34; Shemuel 5, 61–62; Mishnah Sanhedrin 10.3 (in this passage the view is also given that they were punished with eternal damnation); Tosefta 13.89; Babli 109b; Yerushalmi 10, 29c (here it is stated that Moses prayed for them that they should be saved from the torments of hell, with reference to Deut. 33.6, the Reubenites being identified with the congregation of Korah, whose leaders belonged to the tribe of Reuben; comp. Num. 16.1); ARN 26, 107 (here it is said that they do not suffer torments of hell, but will not come to life at the time of the resurrection; this is also the view of ps.-Philo, 16.3); BHM VI, 108; *Likkutim*, I, 23b–24a; Alphabet of R. Akiba 16–17 (here it is said that at the day of final judgment, Metatron, the holy Hayyot, as well as Korah and his congregation, will bear witness that there is only one God in heaven, on earth, and in hell); *Neweh Shalom*, 55–56; comp. note 590; text on p. 24; text on pp. 725 and 835; text on pp. 890 and 1091.

## ON AND THE THREE SONS OF KORAH SAVED

God punishes discord severely, for although the decree of Heaven does not otherwise punish any one below twenty years of age, at Korah's rebellion the earth swallowed alive even children that were only a day old—men, women, and children, all together.<sup>587</sup> Out of all the company of Korah and their families only four persons escaped ruin, to wit: On, the son of Peleth, and Korah's three sons. As it was Korah's wife who through her inciting words plunged her husband into destruction, so to his wife does On owe his salvation. Truly to these two women applies the proverb: "Every wise woman buildeth her house: but the foolish plucketh it



down with her own hands.” On, whose abilities had won him distinction far beyond that of his father, had originally joined Korah’s rebellion. When he arrived home and spoke of it to his wife, she said to him: “What benefit shalt thou reap from it? Either Moses remains master and thou art his disciple, or Korah becomes master and thou art his disciple.” On saw the truth of this argument, but declared that he felt it incumbent upon himself to adhere to Korah because he had given him his oath, which he could not now take back. His wife quieted him, however, entreating him to stay at home. To be quite sure of him, however, she gave him wine to drink, whereupon he fell into a deep sleep of intoxication. His wife now carried out her work of salvation, saying to herself: “All the congregation are holy, and being such, they will approach no woman whose hair is uncovered.” She now showed herself at the door of the tent with streaming hair, and whenever one out of the company of Korah, about to go to On, saw the woman in this condition, he started back, and owing to this scheme her husband had no part in the rebellion. When the earth opened to swallow Korah’s company, the bed on which On still slept began to rock, and to roll to the opening in the earth. On’s wife, however, seized it, saying: “O Lord of the world! My husband made a solemn vow never again to take part in dissensions. Thou that livest and endurest to all eternity canst punish him hereafter if ever he prove false to his vow.” God heard her plea, and On was saved. She now requested On to go to Moses, but he refused, for he was ashamed to look into Moses’ face after he had rebelled against him. His wife then went to Moses in his stead. Moses at first evaded her, for he wished to have nothing to do with women, but as she wept and lamented bitterly, she was admitted and told Moses of all that had occurred. He now accompanied her to her house, at the entrance of

which he cried: “On, the son of Peleth, step forth, God will forgive thee thy sins.” It is with reference to this miraculous deliverance and to his life spent in doing penance that this former follower of Korah was called On, “the penitent,” son of Peleth, “miracle.” His true name was Nemuel, the son of Eliab, a brother of Dathan and Abiram.<sup>588</sup>

More marvellous still than that of On was the salvation of Korah’s three sons. For when the earth yawned to swallow Korah and his company, these cried: “Help us, Moses!” The Shekinah hereupon said: “If these men were to repent, they should be saved; repentance do I desire, and naught else.” Korah’s three sons now simultaneously determined to repent their sin, but they could not open their mouths, for round about them burned the fire, and below them gaped hell.<sup>589</sup> God was, however, satisfied with their good thought, and in the sight of all Israel, for their salvation, a pillar arose in hell, upon which they seated themselves. There did they sit and sing praises and songs to the Lord sweeter than ever mortal ear had heard, so that Moses and all Israel hearkened to them eagerly. They were furthermore distinguished by God in receiving from Him the prophetic gift, and they then announced in their songs events that were to occur in the future world. They said: “Fear not the day on which the Lord will ‘take hold of the ends of the earth, and the wicked be shaken out of it,’ for the pious will cling to the Throne of Glory and will find protection under the wings of the Shekinah. Fear not, ye pious men, the Day of Judgment, for the judgment of sinners will have as little power over you as it had over us when all the others perished and we were saved.”<sup>590</sup>

---

587. Tan. B. IV, 87; Tan. Korah 3 (end); BaR 18.4; *Likkutim*, IV, 43b. Concerning the twentieth year as the age of majority, see above, note 546.



588. Sanhedrin 109b–110a; Tan. B. IV, 93; BaR 18.20; Manzur 8–9.

589. Quotation from an unknown Midrash, as recorded from a manuscript, by Schechter in *Semitic Studies*, 493; Tehillim 45, 270. According to another legend, the sons of Korah had decided in their hearts to repent when Moses attempted to persuade their father to desist from his evil work, and they indicated their adherence to Moses by rising in his honor in the presence of Korah; see Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 752 (Tehillim 1,14 is to be emended accordingly); *Likkutim*, IV, 41b–52a. According to ps.-Philo, 16.4 Korah asked his seven (six) sons to join him in his revolt against Moses; but they refused to follow his counsel, and endeavored to dissuade him from his evil designs. Comp. also the following note.

590. Tehillim 45, 269–270; 46, 272–273; 1, 14–15 (here also the view is expressed that the earth was only cleft around the spot upon which they stood, but not beneath it); Sanhedrin 110a; quotation from an unknown Midrash, as recorded, from a manuscript, by Schechter in *Semitic Studies*, 493; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 752 and in II, 924, on Job 38. In the last passage and in Tehillim 49, 278 a view is quoted, according to which the sons of Korah were saved by “flying in the air”. In a similar manner the righteous will be saved on the day of judgment, when the Lord will “take hold of the ends of the earth, and the wicked will be shaken out of it.” Concerning the “flying of the righteous” at the time of the destruction of the world, see also Sanhedrin 92b (top). The legend recorded in the text on p. 726, to the effect that Korah and his congregation were appointed the custodians of the sunken portals of the Temple, was originally applied to the sons of Korah who repented at the last moment, and hence, though they are in hell, they are not tortured, but take charge of the remnants of the Temple. According to the Midrash quoted in Yalkut II, 376, on Ezekiel 28, the sons of Korah entered into paradise alive. The statement that the world rests on three pillars (comp. Abot 1.2), means, according to some authorities, that the world owes its existence to the three sons of Korah. Other authorities, however, are of the opinion that the three pillars are the three patriarchs. Still other authorities maintain that the three youths, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, are the three pillars supporting the world; Tehillim 1, 15. As to the pillars (*i. e.*, righteous men) upholding the world, see footnote 28 on p. 6. In the legends concerning the sons of Korah it is assumed that the sons of Korah, mentioned in the book of Psalms as the authors of many psalms, are identical with the sons of that Korah who led the revolt against Moses; but with regard to the psalmist Asaph opinions differ as to whether he was related to this Korah or not. Some authorities maintain that Asaph was the son of this Korah, while others are of the opinion that he flourished at a much later period than Korah, but

that he belonged to the family of Korahites. According to a third view, this Asaph was in no way related to this Korah. See WR 17.1; ER 30, 150–151 (this passage contains the midrashic basis for the legend that the sons of Korah are the custodians of the sunken portals of the Temple); compare with p. 1091; Shir 4.4.

## ISRAEL CONVINCED OF AARON'S PRIESTHOOD

After the death of the two hundred and fifty followers of Korah, who perished at the offering of incense, Eleazar, the son of Aaron, was ordered “to take up the censers out of the burning,” in which the souls, not the bodies of the sinners were burned,<sup>591</sup> that out of these brasen plates be made a covering for the altar. Eleazar, and not his father, the high priest, received this commission, for God said: “The censer brought death upon two of Aaron’s sons, therefore let the third now fetch forth the censer and effect expiation for the sinners.”<sup>592</sup> The covering of the altar fashioned out of the brass of these censers was “to be a memorial unto the children of Israel, to the end that no stranger, which is not of the seed of Aaron, come near to burn incense before the Lord.” Such a one was not, however, to be punished like Korah and his company, but in the same way as Moses had once been punished by God, with leprosy. This punishment was visited upon king Uzziah, who tried to burn incense in the Temple, asserting that it was the king’s task to perform the service before the King of all. The heavens hastened to the scene to consume him, just as the celestial fire had once consumed the two hundred and fifty men, who had wrongfully assumed the rights of priesthood; the earth strove to swallow him as it had once swallowed Korah and his company. But a celestial voice announced: “Up-



on none save Korah and his company came punishments like these, upon no others. This man's punishment shall be leprosy." Hence Uziah became a leper.<sup>593</sup>

Peace was not, however, established with the destruction of Korah and his company, for on the very day that followed the terrible catastrophe, there arose a rebellion against Moses, that was even more violent than the preceding one. For although the people were now convinced that nothing came to pass without the will of God, still they thought God was doing all this for Moses' sake. Hence they laid at his door God's violent anger against them, blaming not the wickedness of those who had been punished, but Moses, who, they said, had excited God's revengefulness against them. They accused Moses of having brought about the death of so many of the noblest among them as a punishment for the people, only that they might not again venture to call him to account, and that he might thereby ensure his brother's possession of the priestly office, since no one would hereafter covet it, seeing that on its account the noblest among them had met so terrible a fate. The kinsmen of those who had perished stirred the flame of resentment and spurred on the people to set a limit to Moses' love of power, insisting that the public welfare and the safety of Israel demanded such measures.<sup>594</sup> These unseemly speeches and their unceasing, incorrigible perverseness brought upon them God's wrath to such a degree that He wanted to destroy them all, and bade Moses and Aaron go away from the congregation that He might instantly set about their ruin.

When Moses saw that "there was wrath gone out from the Lord, and that the plague was begun," he called Aaron to him, saying: "Take thy censer, and put fire therein from off the altar, and lay incense thereon, and carry it quickly unto the congregation, and make atonement for them." This remedy against death Moses had

learned from the Angel of Death himself at the time he was staying in heaven to receive the Torah. At that time he had received a gift from each one of the angels, and that of the Angel of Death had been the revelation of the secret that incense can hold him at bay.<sup>595</sup> Moses, in applying this remedy, had in mind also the purpose of showing the people the injustice of their superstition concerning the offering of incense. They called it death-bearing because it had brought death upon Nadab and Abihu, as well as upon the two hundred and fifty followers of Korah. He now wished to convince them that it was this very incense that prevented the plague, and to teach them that it is sin that brings death.<sup>596</sup> Aaron, however, did not know why he employed incense, and therefore said to Moses: "O my lord Moses, hast thou perchance my death in view? My sons were burned because they put strange fires into the censers. Shall I now fetch holy fire from the altar and carry it outside? Surely I shall meet death through this fire!" Moses replied: "Go quickly and do as I have bidden thee, for while thou dost stand and talk, they die." Aaron hastened to carry out the command given to him, saying: "Even if it be my death, I obey gladly if I can only serve Israel thereby."<sup>597</sup>

The Angel of Death had meanwhile wrought terrible havoc among the people, like a reaper mowing down line after line of them, allowing not one of the line he touched to escape, whereas, on the other hand, not a single man died before he reached the row in which the man stood. Aaron, censer in hand, now appeared, and stood up between the ranks of the living and those of the dead, holding the Angel of Death at bay. The latter now addressed Aaron, saying: "Leave me to my work, for I have been sent to do it by God, whereas thou dost bid me stop in the name of a creature that is only of flesh and blood." Aaron did not, however, yield, but said: "Moses



acts only as God commands him, and if thou wilt not trust him, behold, God and Moses are both in the Tabernacle, let us both betake ourselves thither.” The Angel of Death refused to obey his call, whereupon Aaron seized him by force and, thrusting the censer under his face, dragged him to the Tabernacle where he locked him in, so that death ceased.<sup>598</sup>

In this way Aaron paid off a debt to Moses. After the worship of the Golden Calf, that came to pass not without some guilt on Aaron’s part, God had decreed that all four of Aaron’s sons were to die, but Moses stood up between the living and the dead, and through his prayer succeeded in saving two out of the four. In the same way Aaron now stood up between the living and the dead to ward off from Israel the Angel of Death.<sup>599</sup>

God in His kindness now desired the people once and for all to be convinced of the truth that Aaron was the elect, and his house the house of priesthood, hence He bade Moses convince them in the following fashion. Upon God’s command, he took a beam of wood, divided it into twelve rods, bade every prince of a tribe in his own hand write his name on one of the rods respectively, and laid up the rods over night before the sanctuary. Then the miracle came to pass that the rod of Aaron, the prince of the tribe of Levi, bore the Ineffable Name which caused the rod to bloom blossoms over night and to yield ripe almonds. When the people, who all night had been pondering which tribe should on the morrow be proven by the rod of its prince to be the chosen one, betook themselves early in the morning to the sanctuary, and saw the blossoms and almonds upon the rod of Aaron, they were at last convinced that God had destined the priesthood for his house. The almonds, which ripen more quickly than any other fruit, at the same time informed them that God would quickly bring punishment upon

those who should venture to usurp the powers of priesthood. Aaron’s rod was then laid up before the Holy Ark by Moses. It was this rod, which never lost its blossoms or almonds, that the Judean kings used until the time of the destruction of the Temple, when, in miraculous fashion, it disappeared. Elijah will in the future fetch it forth and hand it over to the Messiah.<sup>600</sup>

---

591. Sanhedrin 52a. Compare with p. 662.

592. Lekah Num. 17.2.

593. Tan. Zaw 13; Makiri Is. 6, 54–55; Targum Yeru-shalmi Num. 17.5. For other versions of this Haggadah, see Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 271 on Is. 6; Tan. B. III, 19–20; *Likkutim*, IV, 43b–44a. Compare with p. 1040.

594. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 4.1.

595. Shabbat 89a. Whenever Israel deserved to be punished for its sins, the punishment came forth from the sanctuary; and since Moses lived near the sanctuary, he was the first to notice the appearance of the destroying angel. Whereupon Moses would hasten to Aaron and urge him to protect Israel against the approaching visitation; BaR 5.6. According to Targum Yerushalmi Num. 7.11, it was the angel Kezef (“Wrath”), the one who fought against Moses in Horeb, who came forth to destroy Israel; compare with pp. 622–623. See also below note 598.

596. Rashi and Midrash Aggada on Num. 16.11, probably based on Mekilta Amalek 6, 52a; compare with p. 575.

597. Tan. B. III, 19; Tan. Zaw 9; Lekah Num. 17.11.

598. Tan. Tezawweh 15 (end); *Likkutim*, IV, 44a–44b; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 17.12–13. According to 4 Maccabees 7.11, the angel caused the death of the people by fire.

599. Lekah, Num. 17.13. Prayer can only have the power to ward off half of the punishment decreed by God, whereas repentance averts the entire punishment. Hence Moses’ prayer saved only two of Aaron’s sons from the death decreed on Aaron’s four sons; see WR 10.5 and 18.1; BaR 9.47; DR 8.10; Tan. B. III, 67; Tan. Ahare 8; PR 47, 188b–189a; compare also with pp. 663–664; Sifra 10.12; Yoma 87a, where it is stated that it was for the merits of Aaron that two of his sons escaped death.

600. BaR 18.23, which contains the statement that Aaron’s rod is identical with the rod of Judah; Tan. B. III, 66–67, which reads: Aaron’s rod was placed in the middle, so that the people should not say that its proximity to the Shekinah (*i. e.*, the ark) caused it to blossom; Tan. Ahare 8; *Likkutim*, IV, 44b. The rod which blossomed is the very



same with which Jacob crossed the Jordan (compare footnote 125 on pp. 275), which later came into the possession of Judah (Gen. 48.18; comp. above, and text on p. 344), and which Moses took with him on his journey to Egypt (Exod. 4.17). It is the same rod with which Aaron performed the miracles before Pharaoh (Exod. 7.9, *seq.*), and which David held in his hand in his encounter with Goliath (1 Samuel 18.40). It remained in the possession of the Davidic kings until the destruction of the Temple, when it was hidden. It will again be made use of in the time of the Messiah when it will be taken out from the place where it is hidden. See Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 763, and II, 869, on Ps. 110; Midrash Aggada, Gen. 32.11 (in this passage it is said that Moses divided the Red Sea with this rod); Makiri, Prov. 20.3 and Ps. 110, 183. In this legend Aaron's rod is identified not only with that of Moses (compare footnote 88 on p. 495), but also with the staff of the kings (*i. e.*, Judah, David, and the Messiah), so that the blossoming of this rod proved not only the justice of Aaron's claim to the priesthood, but also established David's claim to the kingdom. See also *Zerubbabel* (Jellinek's edition, 55; Wertheimer's edition 10b), as well as text on pp. 732–733.—The rod brought forth blossoms on one side and almonds on the other, and when the blossoms turned into almonds, there were sweet almonds on one side and bitter ones on the other. As long as Israel walked in the ways of the Lord, the sweet almonds were fresh (literally, *moist*); but when they departed from the right path, the bitter ones were fresh; see Shu'aib and *Hadar* on Num. 17.23. The first-named source quotes, from an unknown Midrash, a symbolic explanation, according to which the buds represent the first Temple, the blossoms the second, and the fruit—that is, the almonds—the third, *i. e.*, the Temple to be built by the Messiah. Comp. also Yerushalmi Horayyot 42a; Shekalim 6, 49c; references given in note 112 concerning the “hiding” of Aaron's rod (מקלו), with its blossoms and fruit, by Josiah. See further text on pp. 1021 and 1059. Legendary amplifications of the biblical narrative of the blossoming of the rod are also recorded by Josephus, *Antiqui*, IV, 4.2, as well as in Clemens' Letter to the Corinthians 43. The latter is very likely based on the Jewish legend. Ps.-Philo. 17.3–4 comments on the miracle of the blossoming of the rod in the following words: And this likeness which was born there was like unto the work which Israel (=Jacob) wrought, while he was in Mesopotamia with Laban the Syrian, when he took rods of almonds, and put them at the gathering of waters (comp. Gen. 30.37). This remark of ps.-Philo seems in some way connected with the rabbinic legend which identifies Aaron's rod with that of Jacob. On the Christian and Mohammedan legends concerning Aaron's rod, see Ginzberg in *Jewish Encyclopedia*, I, 5–6, and Salzberger, *Salomo-Sage*, I, 66, *seq.*

## THE WATERS OF MERIBAH

Korah's rebellion took place during Israel's sojourn in Kadesh-Barnea, whence, a short time before, the spies had been sent out. They remained in this place during nineteen years, and then for as long a time wandered ceaselessly from place to place through the desert.<sup>601</sup> When at last the time decreed by God for their stay in the wilderness was over, and the generation that God had said must die in the desert had paid its penalty for its sin, they returned again to Kadesh-Barnea. They took delight in this place endeared to them by long years of habitation, and settled down in the expectation of a cheerful and agreeable time. But the prophetess Miriam now died, and the loss of this woman, who occupied a place as high as that of her brothers, Moses and Aaron, at once became evident in a way that was perceived by the pious as well as by the godless. She was the only woman who died during the march through the desert, and this occurred for the following reasons. She was a leader of the people together with her brothers, and as these two were not permitted to lead the people into the promised land, she had to share their fate. The well, furthermore, that had provided Israel with water during the march through the desert, had been a gift of God to the people as a reward for the good deeds of this prophetess, and as this gift had been limited to the time of the march through the desert, she had to die shortly before the entrance into the promised land.

Hardly had Miriam died, when the well also disappeared and a dearth of water set in, that all Israel might know that only owing to the merits of the pious prophetess had they been spared a lack of water during the forty years of the march.<sup>602</sup> While Moses and Aaron were now plunged in deep grief for their sister's death, a mob of the people collected to wrangle with



them on account of the dearth of water. Moses, seeing the multitudes of people approaching from the distance, said to his brother Aaron: "What may all these multitudes desire?" The other replied: "Are not the children of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob kind-hearted people and the descendants of kind-hearted people? They come to express their sympathy." Moses, however, said: "Thou art not able to distinguish between a well-ordered procession and this motley multitude; were these people assembled in an orderly procession, they would move under the leadership of the rulers of thousands and the rulers of hundreds, but behold, they move in disorderly troops. How then can their intentions be to condole with us?"<sup>603</sup>

The two brothers were not long to remain in doubt concerning the purpose of the multitude, for they stepped up to them and began to pick a quarrel with Moses, saying: "It was a heavy blow for us when fourteen thousand and seven hundred of our men died of the plague; harder still to bear was the death of those who were swallowed up by the earth, and lost their lives in an unnatural way; the heaviest blow of all, however, was the death of those who were consumed at the offering of incense, whose terrible end is constantly recalled to us by the covering of the altar, fashioned out of the brassen plates that came of the censers used by those unfortunate ones. But we bore all these blows, and even wish we had all perished simultaneously with them instead of becoming victims to the tortures of death by thirst."<sup>604</sup>

At first they directed their reproaches against Moses alone, since Aaron, on account of his extraordinary love of peace and his kind-heartedness, was the favorite of the people, but once carried away by suffering and rage, they started to hurl their accusations against both of the brothers, saying: "Formerly your answer to us had always been that sorrows came upon us and

that God did not stand by us because there were sinful and godless men among us. Now that we are 'a congregation of the Lord,' why have ye nevertheless led us to this poor place where there is not water, without which neither man nor beast can live? Why do not ye exhort God to have pity upon us since the well of Miriam has vanished with her death?"<sup>605</sup>

"A righteous man regardeth the life of his beast," and the fact that these people, so near to death, still considered the sufferings of their beasts shows that they were, notwithstanding their attitude toward Moses and Aaron, really pious men. And, in truth, God did not take amiss their words against Moses and Aaron, "for God holds no man accountable for that which he utters in distress." For the same reason neither Moses nor Aaron made reply to the accusations hurled against them, but hastened to the sanctuary to implore God's mercy for His people. They also considered that the holy place would shelter them in case the people meant to lay hands upon them. God actually did appear at once, and said to them: "Hasten from this place; My children die of thirst, and ye have nothing better to do than to mourn the death of an old woman!"<sup>606</sup> He then bade Moses "to speak unto the rock that it may give forth water," but impressed upon them the command to bring forth neither honey nor oil out of the rock, but water only. This was to prove God's power, who can pour out of the rock not only such liquids as are contained in it, but water too, that never otherwise issues from a rock. He also ordered Moses to speak to the rock, but not to smite it with his rod. "For," said God, "the merits of them that sleep in the Cave of Machpelah suffice to cause their children to receive water out of the rock."<sup>607</sup>

Moses then fetched out of the Tabernacle the holy rod on which was the Ineffable Name of God, and, accompanied by Aaron, betook



himself to the rock to bring water out of it.<sup>608</sup> On the way to the rock all Israel followed him, halting at any rock by the way, fancying that they might fetch water out of it. The grumblers now went about inciting the people against Moses, saying: “Don’t you know that the son of Amram had once been Jethro’s shepherd, and all shepherds have knowledge of the places in the wilderness that are rich in water? Moses will now try to lead us to such a place where there is water, and then he will cheat us and declare he had caused the water to flow out of a rock. If he actually is able to bring forth water out of rocks, then let him fetch it out of any one of the rocks upon which we fix.” Moses could easily have done this, for God said to him: “Let them see the water flow out of the rack they have chosen,” but when, on the way to the rock, he turned around and perceived that instead of following him they stood about in groups around different rocks, each group around some rock favored by it, he commanded them to follow him to the rock upon which he had fixed. They, however, said: “We demand that thou bring us water out of the rock we have chosen, and if thou wilt not, we do not care to fetch water out of another rock.”<sup>609</sup>

601. Seder ‘Olam 8. Comp. note 568 and ps.-Philo 16.7. The latter maintains that immediately after Korah had been swallowed up, the people asked Moses for permission to move away from that place.

602. Yelammedenu (?) in *Batte Midrashot* III, 8–10; comp. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 7.3. See also text on p. 573, and note 498. The death of the righteous possesses atoning power, and hence, in Scripture, the report of Miriam’s death (Num. 20.1) follows immediately the law concerning the red heifer which was used for the “purification of sin”; see Mo’ed Katan 28a; Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s. v. מת 2; *Likkutim*, I, 19a–19b, and IV, 48a–48b. Concerning the women of this generation, see text on p. 714.

603. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 673; *Likkutim*, IV, 50a. Compare with p. 704 (bottom left).

604. Lekah, Num. 20.3. Concerning the number of deaths every year, see text on pp. 714 and 721. The number fifteen thousand is a round one; see Tosafot on Baba Batra 121a.

605. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 763, and in *Batte Midrashot* III, 10; Esfah in Yalkut, *loc. cit.*; comp. also Lekah, Num. 20–35. Concerning Aaron’s love of peace, and about the people’s affections for him, see text on p. 743.

606. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 763; Lekah, Num. 20.6; compare also with p. 542 (end of section). Yelammedenu, *loc. cit.*, remarks that the righteous are as concerned about the welfare of their beasts as about themselves. This may be inferred from the fact that Jacob told Joseph to find out “whether it is well with thy brethren and well with the flock.” Comp. also Mekilta Amalek 6, 52a; Tan. B. IV, 120; text on p. 331; Nedarim 81a.

607. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 763; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 20.8, which reads: God said unto Moses and Aaron: “Adjure the rock by the Name, and only in case of its refusal should ye smite it” (on תריכון “adjure”, see Targum Is. 65.9, where יתך-לל (יקלל)); Lekah Num., *loc. cit.* Compare with p. 738.

608. Targum Yerushalmi and Lekah on Num. 20.8. Comp. the preceding note, as well as notes 600 and 625.

609. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 163, and in II, 879, on Ps. 78; Lekah Num. 20.10.

## MOSES’ ANGER CAUSES HIS DOOM

Throughout forty years Moses had striven to refrain from harshly addressing the people, knowing that if but a single time he lost patience, God would cause him to die in the desert. On this occasion, however, he was mastered by his rage, and shouted at Israel the words: “O ye madmen, ye stiffnecked ones, that desire to teach their teacher, ye that shoot upon your leaders with your arrows, do ye think that out of this rock that ye have chosen, we shall be able to bring forth water?<sup>610</sup> I vow that I shall let water flow out of that rock only that I have chosen.” He addressed these harsh words not to a few among Israel, but to all the people, for God had brought the miracle to pass that the small space in front of the rock held all Israel. Carried



away by anger, Moses still further forgot himself, and instead of speaking to the rock as God had commanded him, he struck a rock chosen by himself.<sup>611</sup> As Moses had not acted according to God's command, the rock did not at once obey, and sent forth only a few drops of water, so that the mockers cried: "Son of Amram, is this for the sucklings and for them that are weaned from the milk?" Moses now waxed angrier still, and for a second time smote the rock, from which gushed streams so mighty that many of his enemies met their death in the currents, and at the same time water poured out of all the stones and rocks of the desert.<sup>612</sup> God hereupon said to Moses: "Thou and Aaron believed Me not, I forbade you to smite the rock, but thou didst smite it; ye sanctified Me not in the eyes of the children of Israel because ye did not fetch water out of any one of the rocks, as the people wished; ye trespassed against Me when ye said, 'Shall we bring forth water out of this rock?' and ye acted contrary to My command because ye did not speak to the rock as I had bidden ye. I vow, therefore, that 'ye shall not bring this assembly into the land which I have given them,' and not until the Messianic time shall ye two lead Israel to the Holy Land."<sup>613</sup> God furthermore said to Moses: "Thou shouldst have learned from the life of Ishmael to have greater faith in Me; I bade the well to spring up for him, even though he was only a single human being, on account of the merits of his father Abraham. How much more then hadst thou a right to expect, thou who couldst refer to the merits of the three Patriarchs as well as to the people's own, for they accepted the Torah and obeyed many commandments. Yea, even from thine own experience shouldst thou have drawn greater faith in My will to aid Israel. When in Rephidim thou didst say to Me, 'They be almost ready to stone me,' did not I reply to thee, 'Why dost thou accuse My children? Go with thy rod before the

people, and thou shalt smite the rock, and there shall come water out of it.' If I wrought for them miracles such as these when they had not yet accepted the Torah, and did not yet have faith in Me, shouldst thou not have known how much more I would do for them now?"<sup>614</sup>

God "taketh the wise in their own craftiness." He had long before this decreed that Moses die in the desert, and Moses' offense in Kadesh was only a pretext God employed that He might not seem to be unjust. But He gave to Moses himself the true reason why He did not permit him to enter the promised land, saying: "Would it perchance redound to thy glory if thou wert to lead into the land a new generation after thou hadst led out of Egypt the sixty myriads and buried them in the desert? People would declare that the generation of the desert has no share in the future world, therefore stay with them, that at their head thou mayest after the Resurrection enter the promised land."<sup>615</sup> Moses now said to God: "Thou hast decreed that I die in the desert like the generation of the desert that angered Thee. I implore Thee, write in Thy Torah wherefore I have been thus punished, that future generations may not say I had been like the generation of the desert." God granted this wish, and in several passages of the Scriptures set forth what had really been the offense on account of which Moses had been prohibited from entering the promised land.<sup>616</sup> It was due only to the transgression at the rock in Kadesh, where Moses failed to sanctify God in the eyes of the children of Israel; and God was sanctified by allowing justice to take its course without respect of persons, and punishing Moses. Hence this place was called Kadesh, "sanctity," and En Mishpat, "fountain of justice," because on this spot judgment was passed upon Moses, and by this sentence God's name was sanctified.<sup>617</sup>

As water had been the occasion for the punishment of Moses, God did not say that that



which He had created on the second day of the creation “was good,” for on that day He had created water, and that which brought about Moses’ death was not good.<sup>618</sup>

If the death doomed for Moses upon this occasion was a very severe punishment, entirely out of proportion to his offense, then still more so was the death destined for Aaron at the same time. For he had been guilty of no other offense than that of joining Moses at his transgression, and “whoso joins a transgressor, is as bad as the transgressor himself.” On this occasion, as usual, Aaron showed his absolute devotion and his faith in God’s justice. He might have said, “I have not sinned; why am I to be punished?” but he conquered himself and put up no defense, wherefore Moses greatly praised him.<sup>619</sup>

610. Tan. B. IV, 120–121; Tan. Hukkat 9; BaR 19.9; PK 14, 118b; PR 11, 42b; Hashkem 19b–20a; Shir 1.6; comp. also ER 13 65, and Midrash Tannaim 14, where it is said that Moses’ delinquency was a mere oversight. Comp. note 870.

611. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 763; BR 5.7; BaR 19.9; Tan. B. IV, 120; Tan. Hukkat 79. Compare with p. 657 and note 410. The rod upon which the Name was engraved was taken away from Moses, as a punishment for his having used it to smite the rock; Zohar I, 6b. On the identification of Aaron’s rod with the staff of Moses, see note 600.

612. BaR 19.19.; Tan. B. IV, 20; Tan. Hukkat 9; Tehillim 78, 345; Yelammedenu In Yalkut I, 763, and II, 819, on Ps. 78. The final portion of the last-named passage is taken from Tehillim, *loc. cit.*, and does not form part of the Yelammedenu.

613. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 763. Comp. note 490, according to which this passage of Yelammedenu is to be understood in the following manner: Moses’ sin consisted in his having used words which might have been misunderstood by the people to mean that it was Moses, and not God, who made the water flow from the rock. See also Nahmanides, Num. 20.1–11, who fully discusses the different opinions concerning the sin committed by Moses at the Waters of Meribah. Compare further with pp. 737–738. Concerning Moses (and Aaron) as leaders of Israel in the time of the Messiah, see text on pp. 500, 541, and text on pp. 564, 734, 838.

614. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 764. Compare with pp. 551, 575, and 732.

615. BaR 19.13–14 (שמקדם is correct; comp. PK 5, 46a, which reads: At the crossing of the Red Sea it became known to Moses that he would not enter the Holy Land); Tan. Hukkat 10.11; Tan. B. IV, 121–122. These Midrashim point out that Moses on several other occasions had employed worse expressions in addressing God (comp. note 285), and yet was not punished for them. The reason given for this is because on those occasions he did not commit the offence publicly but privately. Concerning the question whether the “generation of the wilderness” shall have a share in the world to come, see Sanhedrin, Mishnah 10.3; Tosefta 13.10; Babli 110b; Yerushalmi 10, 29c; ARN 26, 107–108; references in notes 177 and 586 (the references in the last note deal with the congregation of Korah); ‘Abodah Zarah 4b–5a, which reads: The commission of that grievous sin (*i. e.*, the worship of the golden calf) was out of harmony with Israel’s nature; but God willed it so, in order to show thereby that even a whole nation might be forgiven the most grievous of sins, if it only repents.

616. Tan. B. IV, 121–122; Tan. Hukkat 10; BaR 19.12; Yoma 86b; Sifre D., 26; Sifre N., 137; Midrash Tannaim 13; Sifre Z., 160; DR 2.6.

617. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 764; BaR 19.13–14; Tan. Hukkat 11. Comp. BR 42.7.

618. BR 4.6. Compare with p. 12.

619. BaR 19.9; Tan. B. IV, 121; Tan. Hukkat 10; Yelammedenu (?) in *Likkutim* IV, 526; compare with p. 821. According to Lekah, Num. 20.12, Aaron’s sin consisted in his not having tried to prevent Moses from using angry words against Israel. For other legends about the Waters of Meribah, see text on pp. 737–738.

## EDOM’S UNBROTHERLY ATTITUDE TOWARD ISRAEL

From Kadesh Moses sent ambassadors to the king of Edom, requesting him to permit Israel to travel through his territory. “For,” thought Moses, “When our father Jacob with only a small troop of men planned to return to his father’s house, which was not situated in Esau’s possessions, he previously sent a messenger to him to ask his permission. How much more then does it behoove us, a people of great numbers, to refrain



from entering Edom's territory before receiving his sanction to do so!"

Moses' ambassadors had been commissioned to bear the following message to the king of Edom: "From the time of our grandfather Abraham, there was a promissory note to be redeemed, for God had imposed it upon him that in Egypt his seed should be enslaved and tortured. It had been thy duty, as well as ours, to redeem this note, and thou knowest that we have done our duty whereas thou wert not willing. God had, as thou knowest, promised Abraham that those who had been in bondage in Egypt should receive Canaan for their possession as a reward. That land, therefore, is ours, who were in Egypt, and thou who didst shirk the redemption of the debt, hast now no claim to our land. Let us then pass through thy land until we reach ours.<sup>620</sup> Know also that the Patriarchs in their grave sympathized with our sufferings in Egypt, and whenever we called out to God He heard us, and sent us one of His ministering angels to lead us out of Egypt. Consider, then, that all thy weapons will avail thee naught if we implore God's aid, who will then at once overthrow thee and thy hosts, for this is our inheritance, and 'the voice of Jacob' never proves ineffectual.<sup>621</sup> That thou mayest not, however, plead that our passage through thy land will bring thee only annoyances and no gain, I promise thee that although we draw drink out of the well that accompanies us on our travels, and are provided with food through the manna, we shall, nevertheless, buy water and food from thy people, that ye may profit by our passage."

This was no idle promise, for Moses had actually asked the people to be liberal with their money, that the Edomites might not take them to be poor slaves, but might be convinced that in spite of their stay in Egypt, Israel was a wealthy nation. Moses also pledged himself to provide the cattle with muzzles during their pas-

sage through Edom, that they might do no damage to the land of the dwellers there. With these words he ended his message to the king of Edom: "To the right and to the left of thy land may we pillage and slaughter, but in accord with God's words, we may not touch thy possession." But all these prayers and pleadings of Moses were without avail, for Edom's answer was in the form of a threat: "Ye depend upon your inheritance, upon 'the voice of Jacob' which God answers, and I too shall depend upon my inheritance, 'the hand and sword of Esau.'" Israel now had to give up their attempt to reach their land through Edom's territory, not, however, through fear, but because God had prohibited them from bringing war upon the Edomites, even before they had heard from the embassy that Edom had refused them the right of passage.

The neighborhood of the godless brings disaster, as Israel was to experience, for they lost the pious Aaron on the boundary of Edom, and buried him on Mount Hor. The cloud that used to precede Israel, had indeed been accustomed to level all the mountains, that they might move on upon level ways, but God retained three mountains in the desert: Sinai, as the place of the revelation; Nebo, as the burial-place of Moses; and Hor, consisting of a twin mountain, as a burial-place for Aaron. Apart from these three mountains, there were none in the desert, but the cloud would leave little elevations on the place where Israel pitched camp, that the sanctuary might thereupon be set up.<sup>622</sup>

---

620. Lekah, Num. 20.14; BaR 19.15; Tan. B. IV, 122; Tan. Hukkat 12. Compare with p. 296, and note 234 appertaining to it.

621. Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s.v. פטריקון (comp. *Likkutim*, IV, 53b); Tan. B. IV, 122 and 129; Tan. Hukkat 12; BaR 19.15. Of the patriarchs, it is Jacob in particular who suffers with his descendants; see Tehillim 14, 115; PR 40 (end); Ekah 2.111. Comp. footnote 35 in "Jacob". Concerning the "inheritance", see text on pp. 578 and 746.



622. BaR 19.15–16; Tan. B. IV, 122–123; Tan. Hukkat 12–14; Mekilta Beshallah 2, 28a; Mekilta RS, 45–46. Moses assured the king of Edom that the Israelites would not attack the Edomite women (Targum Yerushalmi Num. 20.17); but although the king knew that God commanded the Israelites not to destroy the Edomites, he feared lest they should subjugate them and make them pay tribute, so that in this manner the debts which Esau owed Jacob might be paid by the descendants of the former. See Mekilta Shirah 11, 49a (read אֲנוֹנוֹת “an-nonae”); Mekilta RS, 68. Great is the importance of blood-relationship; if not for their kinship with Israel, the Edomites would have been excluded from “entering into the congregation of the Lord”, since their sin was greater than that of the Moabites and the Ammonites, who were punished in this manner; see Midrash Tannaim 146, with regard to Deut. 23.5–8. Edom threatened Israel with the sword; even so will God destroy Edom with the sword (see Is. 34.5) in the time to come; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 439, on Is., *loc. cit.* Concerning the cloud that went before Israel, see text on p. 542.

## THE THREE SHEPHERDS

Aaron died four months after the death of his sister Miriam, whereas Moses died nearly a year after his sister. Her death took place on the first day of Nisan, and that of Moses on the seventh day of Adar in the same year. Although the death of these three did not take place in the same month, God spoke of them saying, “And I cut off the three shepherds in one month,” for He had determined upon their death in one month.<sup>623</sup> It is God’s way to classify people into related groups, and the death of these three pious ones was not determined upon together with that of the sinful generation of wanderers in the desert, but only after this generation had died, was sealed the doom of the three.<sup>624</sup> Miriam died first, and the same fate was decreed for her brothers as a consequence of her death.

Miriam’s death plunged all into deep mourning, Moses and Aaron wept in their apartments and the people wept in the streets. For six hours

Moses was ignorant of the disappearance of Miriam’s well with Miriam’s death, until the Israelites went to him, saying, “How long wilt thou sit here and weep?” He answered, “Shall I not weep for my sister, who has died?” They replied, “While thou art weeping for one soul, weep at the same time for us all.” “Why?” asked he. They said, “We have no water to drink.” Then he rose up from the ground, went out and saw the well without a drop of water. He now began to quarrel with them, saying, “Have I not told ye, ‘I am not able to bear you myself alone’? Ye have rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens, princes, chiefs, elders, and magnates, let these attend to your needs.” Israel, however, said: “All rests with thee, for it is thou who didst lead us out of Egypt and brought ‘us in unto this evil place; it is no place of seed or of figs, or of vines, or of pomegranates; neither is there any water to drink.’ If thou wilt give us water, it is well, if not, we shall stone thee.” When Moses heard this, he fled from them and betook himself to the Tabernacle. There God said to him: “What ails thee?” and Moses replied: “O Lord of the world! Thy children want to stone me, and had I not escaped, they would have stoned me by now.” God said: “Moses, how much longer wilt thou continue to calumniate My children? Is it not enough that at Horeb thou didst say, ‘They be ready to stone me,’ whereupon I answered thee, ‘Go up before them and I will see whether they stone thee or not!’ ‘Take the rod and assemble the congregation, thou and Aaron thy brother, and speak ye unto the rock before their eyes, that it give forth its water.’”

Moses now went to seek for the rock, followed by all Israel, for he did not know which was the rock out of which God had said water was to flow.<sup>625</sup> For the rock out of which Miriam’s well flowed vanished among the rest of the rocks in such a way that Moses was not able to



distinguish it among the number.<sup>626</sup> On the way they saw a rock that dripped, and they took up their places in front of it. When Moses saw that the people stood still, he turned around and they said to him: "How long wilt thou lead us on?" Moses: "Until I fetch ye forth water out of the rock." The people: "Give us water at once, that we may drink." Moses: "How long do ye quarrel? Is there a creature in all the world that so rebels against its Maker as ye do, when it is certain that God will give ye water out of a rock, even though I do not know which one that may be!" The people: "Thou wert a prophet and our shepherd during our march through the desert, and now thou sayest, 'I know not out of which rock God will give ye water.'"

Moses hereupon assembled them about a rock, saying to himself: "If I now speak to the rock, bidding it bring forth water, and it bring forth none, I shall subject myself to humiliation in the presence of the community, for they will say, 'Where is thy wisdom?'" Hence he said to the people: "Ye know that God can perform miracles for ye, but He hath hidden from me out of which rock He will let the water how forth. For whenever the time comes that God wishes a man not to know, then his wisdom and understanding are of no avail to him." Moses then lifted his rod and let it quietly slide down upon the rock upon which he laid it, uttering, as if addressing Israel, the words, "Shall we bring you forth water out of this rock?" The rock of its own accord now began to give forth water, whereupon Moses struck upon it with his rod, but then water no longer flowed forth, but blood. Moses hereupon said to God: "This rock brings forth no water," and God instantly turned to the rock with the question: "Why dost thou bring forth not water, but blood?" The rock answered: "O Lord of the world! Why did Moses smite me?" When God asked Moses why he had smitten the rock, he replied: "That it might bring

forth water." God, however, said to Moses: "Had I bidden thee to smite the rock? I had only said, 'Speak to it'" Moses tried to defend himself by saying, "I did speak to it, but it brought forth nothing." "Thou," God replied, "hast given Israel the instruction, 'In righteousness shalt thou judge thy neighbor'; why then, didst not thou judge the rock 'in righteousness,' the rock that in Egypt supported thee when out of it thou didst suck honey? Is this the manner in which thou repayest it? Not only wert thou unjust to the rock, but thou didst also call My children fools. If then thou art a wise man, it does not become thee as a wise man to have anything further to do with fools, and therefore thou shalt not with them learn to know the land of Israel."<sup>627</sup> At the same time God added, "Neither thou, nor thy brother, nor thy sister, shall set foot upon the land of Israel." For even in Egypt God had warned Moses and Aaron to refrain from calling the Israelites fools, and as Moses, without evoking a protest from Aaron, at the water of Kadesh, called them fools, the punishment of death was decreed for him and his brother.<sup>628</sup> When God had informed Moses of the impending punishment due to him and his brother, He turned to the rock, saying: "Turn thy blood into water," and so it came to pass.<sup>629</sup>

---

623. Petirat Aharon beg. (read וְבוֹ בַיּוֹם "on that day", forty years before, Aaron's sons died at the dedication of the Tabernacle, see text on pp. 661, *seq.*); Ta'anit 9a; Sifre D.; 305; Seder 'Olam 10; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 907, on Job 16. Concerning the day of Miriam's death, see Ratner, note 20 on Seder 'Olam l. c.

624. *Batte Midrashot* III, 8–9. Comp. Tehillim 24, 219, as well as Tosefta Sanhedrin 9.9. For a different view, see text on 716.

625. Petirat Aharon 91. Compare with pp. 732–733. On the great mourning for Miriam, see Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 4,6.

626. Rashi and Midrash Aggada on Num. 20.10; Petirat Aharon 92. Compare with p. 582. An allusion to this legend is perhaps to be found in Targum Yerushalmi



Num. 20.8 where תריכון is to be taken literally. Comp. note 607.

627. Petirat Aharon 92, where אינו מוציא מים is to be read. Concerning the blood flowing from the rock, see Targum Yerushalmi Num. 20.11; ShR 3.13; Tehillim 78, 344. See also Sibyll. 3.803 and 461; text on p. 512. Concerning the honey flowing from the rock, see text on p. 472, according to which גדלם “on which they were brought up” is to be read in Petirat Aharon, *loc. cit.* Compare with pp. 731–733.

628. PK 14, 118b–119a; Tan. B. V 14; DR 2.2 and 8; *Likkutim* V, 97a–97b (on this passage see text on p. 522, bottom, and note 610); Petirat Aharon 92.

629. Petirat Aharon 92.

## PREPARING AARON FOR IMPENDING DEATH

As a sign of especial favor God communicates to the pious the day of their death, that they may transmit their crowns to their sons. But God considered it particularly fitting to prepare Moses and Aaron for impending death, saying: “These two pious men throughout their lifetime did nothing without consulting Me, and I shall not therefore take them out of this world without previously informing them.”<sup>630</sup>

When, therefore, Aaron’s time approached, God said to Moses: “My servant Moses, who hast been ‘faithful in all Mine house,’ I have an important matter to communicate to thee, but it weighs heavily upon Me.” Moses: “What is it?” God: “Aaron shall be gathered unto his people; for he shall not enter into the land which I have given unto the children of Israel, because ye rebelled against My word at the waters of Meribah.” Moses replied: “Lord of the world! It is manifest and known before the Throne of Thy glory, that Thou art Lord of all the world and of Thy creatures that in this world Thou hast created, so that we are in Thy hand, and in Thy hand it lies to do with us as Thou wilt. I am not, however, fit to go to my brother, and repeat

to him Thy commission, for he is older than I, and how then shall I presume to go up to my older brother and say, ‘Go up unto Mount Hor and die there!’ ” God answered Moses: “Not with the lip shalt thou touch this matter, but ‘take Aaron and Eleazar his son, and bring them up unto Mount Hor.’ Ascend thou also with them, and there speak with thy brother sweet and gentle words, the burden of which will, however, prepare him for what awaits him. Later when ye shall all three be upon the mountain, ‘strip Aaron of his garments, and put them upon Eleazar his son, and Aaron shall be gathered unto his people, and shall die there.’<sup>631</sup> As a favor to Me prepare Aaron for his death, for I am ashamed to tell him of it Myself.”<sup>632</sup>

When Moses heard this, there was a tumult in his heart, and he knew not what to do. He wept so passionately that his grief for the impending loss of his brother brought him to the brink of death himself. As a faithful servant of God, however, nothing remained for him to do, but to execute his Master’s command, hence he betook himself to Aaron to the Tabernacle, to inform him of his death.

Now it had been customary during the forty years’ march through the desert for the people daily to gather, first before the seventy elders, then under their guidance before the princes of the tribes, then for all of them to appear before Eleazar and Aaron, and with these to go to Moses to present to him their morning greeting. On this day, however, Moses made a change in this custom, and after having wept through the night, at the cock’s crow summoned Eleazar before him and said to him: “Go and call to me the elders and the princes, for I have to convey to them a commission from the Lord.” Accompanied by these men, Moses now betook himself to Aaron who, seeing Moses when he arose, asked: “Why hast thou made a change in the usual custom?” Moses: “God hath bidden me to



make a communication to thee.” Aaron: “Tell it to me.” Moses: “Wait until we are out of doors.” Aaron thereupon donned his eight priestly garments and both went out.

Now it had always been the custom for Moses whenever he went from his house to the Tabernacle to walk in the centre, with Aaron at his right, Eleazar at his left, then the elders at both sides, and the people following in the rear. Upon arriving within the Tabernacle, Aaron would seat himself as the very nearest at Moses’ right hand, Eleazar at his left, and the elders and princes in front. On this day, however, Moses changed this order; Aaron walked in the centre, Moses at his right hand, Eleazar at his left, the elders and princes at both sides, and the rest of the people following.

When the Israelites saw this, they rejoiced greatly, saying: “Aaron now has a higher degree of the Holy Spirit than Moses, and therefore does Moses yield to him the place of honor in the centre.” The people loved Aaron better than Moses.<sup>633</sup> For ever since Aaron had become aware that through the construction of the Golden Calf he had brought about the transgression of Israel, it was his endeavor through the following course of life to atone for his sin. He would go from house to house, and whenever he found one who did not know how to recite his Shema’, he taught him the Shema’; if one did not know how to pray he taught him how to pray; and if he found one who was not capable of penetrating into the study of the Torah, he initiated him into it.<sup>634</sup> He did not, however, consider his task restricted ‘to establishing peace between God and man,’ but strove to establish peace between the learned and the ignorant Israelites, among the scholars themselves, among the ignorant, and between man and wife.<sup>635</sup> Hence the people loved him very dearly, and rejoiced when they believed he had now attained a higher rank than Moses.

Having arrived at the Tabernacle, Aaron now wanted to enter, but Moses held him back, saying: “We shall now go beyond the camp.” When they were outside the camp, Aaron said to Moses: “Tell me the commission God hath given thee.” Moses answered: “Wait until we reach the mountain.” At the foot of the mountain Moses said to the people: “Stay here until we return to you; I, Aaron, and Eleazar will go to the top of the mount, and shall return when we shall have heard the Divine revelation.” All three now ascended.

---

630. Tan. B. IV, 123–124; Tan. Hukkat 14; BaR 19.17.

631. Petirat Aharon 93. Comp. the following note.

632. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 764; *Likkutim* IV, 54a. “Difficult in the sight of the Lord is the death of His saints” (comp. Ps. 116.15; קר is taken to mean “heavy”, “difficult”), and if Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Moses, and David had not spoken, in a heedless moment, of their death, they would never have died; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 874 (end); Tehillim 116, 477–478; Tan. Wayehi 4, which reads: The righteous never die, except when they have expressed their desire to do so. DR 9.1; Hallel 104.

633. Petirat Aharon 92–93 (line 22 of 92 read פועל נאמן; the following line seems also to be corrupt); Tan. B. IV 131. On Aaron’s love of peace, and the people’s affection for him, see text on pp. 732 and 744. Concerning the ceremonies connected with the reception of the leaders of the people by Moses, see text on p. 634.

634. ER 13, 63; 20, 112, and 25, 128.

635. ER 13, 68. See also EZ 1, 169–170, where the three patriarchs, Moses, Aaron, and David, are praised for their kindness as their highest virtue.

## AARON’S DEATH

Moses wanted to inform his brother of his impending death, but knew not how to go about it. At length he said to him: “Aaron, my brother, hath God given anything into thy keeping?” “Yes,” replied Aaron. “What, pray?”



asked Moses. Aaron: "The altar and the table upon which is the shewbread hath He given into my charge." Moses: "It may be that He will now demand back from thee all that He hath given into thy keeping." Aaron: "What, pray?" Moses: "Hath He not entrusted a light to thee?" Aaron: "Not one light only but all seven of the candlestick that now burn in the sanctuary." Moses had, of course, intended to call Aaron's attention to the soul, "the light of the Lord," which God had given into his keeping and which He now demanded back. As Aaron, in his simplicity, did not notice the allusion, Moses did not go into further particulars, but remarked to Aaron: "God hath with justice called thee an innocent, simple-hearted man."

While they were thus conversing, a cave opened up before them, whereupon Moses requested his brother to enter it, and Aaron instantly acquiesced. Moses was now in a sad predicament, for, to follow God's command, he had to strip Aaron of his garments and to put them upon Eleazar, but he knew not how to broach the subject to his brother. He finally said to Aaron: "My brother Aaron, it is not proper to enter the cave into which we now want to descend, invested in the priestly garments, for they might there become unclean; the cave is very beautiful, and it is therefore possible that there are old graves in it." Aaron replied, "Thou art right." Moses then stripped his brother of his priestly garments, and put them upon Aaron's son, Eleazar.<sup>636</sup>

As it would have been improper if Aaron had been buried quite naked, God brought about the miracle that, as soon as Moses took off one of Aaron's garments, a corresponding celestial garment was spread over Aaron, and when Moses had stripped him of all his priestly garments, he found himself arrayed in eight celestial garments. A second miracle came to pass in the stripping of Aaron's garments, for Moses was

enabled to take off the undermost garments before the upper. This was done in order to satisfy the law that priests may never use their upper garments as undergarments, a thing Eleazar would have had to do, had Moses stripped off Aaron's outer garments first and with these invested his son.<sup>637</sup>

After Eleazar had put on the high priest's garments, Moses and Aaron said to him: "Wait for us here until we return out of the cave," and both entered it. At their entrance they beheld a couch spread, a table prepared, and a candle lighted, while ministering angels surrounded the couch. Aaron then said to Moses: "How long, O my brother, wilt thou still conceal the commission God hath entrusted to thee? Thou knowest that He Himself, when for the first time He addressed thee, with His own lips declared of me, 'When he seeth thee, he will be glad in his heart.' Why, then, dost thou conceal the commission God hath entrusted to thee? Even if it were to refer to my death, I should take it upon myself with a cheerful countenance." Moses replied: "As thou thyself dost speak of death, I will acknowledge that God's words to me do concern thy death, but I was afraid to make it known to thee. But look now, thy death is not as that of the other creatures of flesh and blood; and not only is thy death a remarkable one, but see! The ministering angels have come to stand by thee in thy parting hour."<sup>638</sup>

When he spoke of the remarkable death that awaited Aaron, Moses meant to allude to the fact that Aaron, like his sister Miriam and later Moses, was to die not through the Angel of Death, but by a kiss from God.<sup>639</sup> Aaron, however, said: "O my brother Moses, why didst not thou make this communication to me in the presence of my mother, my wife, and my children?" Moses did not instantly reply to this question, but tried to speak words of comfort and encouragement to Aaron, saying: "Dost thou



not know, my brother, that thou didst forty years ago deserve to meet thy death when thou didst fashion the Golden Calf, but then I stood before the Lord in prayer and exhortation, and saved thee from death. And now I pray that my death were as thine! For when thou diest, I bury thee, but when I shall die, I shall have no brother to bury me. When thou diest, thy sons will inherit thy position, but when I die, strangers will inherit my place." With these and similar words Moses encouraged his brother, until he finally looked forward to his end with equanimity.

Aaron lay down upon the adorned couch, and God received his soul. Moses then left the cave, which immediately vanished, so that none might know or understand how it had happened. When Eleazar saw Moses return alone, he said to him: "O my teacher, where is my father?" Moses replied: "He has entered Paradise." Then both descended from the mountain into the camp.<sup>640</sup> When the people saw Moses and Eleazar return without Aaron, they were not at all in the mood to lend faith to the communication of Aaron's death. They could not at all credit that a man who had overcome the Angel of Death was now overcome by him. Three opinions were then formed among the people concerning Aaron's absence. Some declared that Moses had killed Aaron because he was jealous of his popularity; some thought Eleazar had killed his father to become his successor as high priest; and there were also some who declared that he had been removed from earth to be translated to heaven. Satan had so incited the people against Moses and Eleazar that they wanted to stone them. Moses hereupon prayed to God, saying: "Deliver me and Eleazar from this unmerited suspicion, and also show to the people Aaron's bier, that they may not believe him to be still alive, for in their boundless admiration for Aaron they may even make a God of him." God then said to the angels: "Lift up on

high the bier upon which lies My friend Aaron, so that Israel may know he is dead and may not lay hands upon Moses and Eleazar." The angels did as they were bidden,<sup>641</sup> and Israel then saw Aaron's bier floating in the air, while God before it and the angels behind intoned a funeral song for Aaron. God lamented in the words, "He entereth into peace; they rest in their beds, each one that walketh in his uprightness," whereas the angels said: "The law of truth was in his mouth, and unrighteousness was not found in his lips: he walked with Me in peace and uprightness, and did turn many away from iniquity."

---

636. Petirat Aharon 93–94 (read לפניכם instead of לפני ה'; Tan. B. IV, 131–132. Concerning the conception that the soul is a pledge entrusted to man by God, see Vol. V, p. 255, note 259 and Index, s. v. "Soul". The story about Aaron's preparations for his death is related differently in Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 764. One early morning Moses called upon his brother, and informed him that he had spent a sleepless night pondering over a difficult passage in the Bible and asked him whether he would not assist him in solving the difficulty. Moses added that in his excitement he had forgotten the exact place, and that he only remembered that the passage occurred in the Book of Genesis. They read the first chapter of the Bible, and at the perusal of the creation of each day, Moses exclaimed, "How beautiful and good is the creation of this day!" When they reached the narrative concerning the creation of Adam, Moses remarked: "I do not know what to say of the creation of man. How can I call it beautiful and good, knowing that the end of man is death?" Aaron, however, replied: "Far be it from us not to resign ourselves to the will of God." These words of Aaron gave Moses the desired opportunity to inform his brother of his imminent death. At the very moment Aaron became aware of his approaching death, his stature shrank, and all the people knew that he had reached the end of his life. In *Likkutim*, IV, 54a–54b, the text of Yelammedenu was taken from the later editions of the Yalkut, in which entire sentences are missing. Comp. also Zohar III, 183a.

637. Sifra Milluim 8.7, and comp. the notes of R. Jacob David, *ad loc.*, in the Warsaw edition. The text on p. 815, contains a different legend concerning the undressing of Aaron and the dressing of Eleazar. Yelammedenu I, 787, describes Aaron's last hour in the following manner: The brothers had nearly reached Mount Hor, and Moses



did not yet find courage to inform Aaron of his approaching death. Finally Moses took heart, and said to Aaron: "If a hundred years from now God would decree thy death, what wouldst thou say?" Aaron replied: "I would only say: The Judge is just" (compare footnote 256 on p. 302). Without any hesitation Moses then said: "Now that thou didst resign thyself to God's will, let us ascend the mount, since God has decreed that thou shouldst die in that place". Reconciled to his fate, Aaron followed his younger brother "as a lamb that is led to the slaughter." God spoke to the angels, saying: "Ye were astonished at Isaac when he put himself on the altar to be slaughtered in obedience to his father's will. Marvel ye now all the more at Aaron who submits himself to death at the words of his younger brother." Three different views are given in Yelammedenu concerning the undressing of Aaron. Moses began to undress him from below; as soon as one part of the body was laid bare, it was immediately covered by a "cloud of glory" (*i. e.*, a celestial garment; comp. Index, s. v. "Celestial Garments") so that by the time Aaron was completely undressed his body was covered with the cloud of glory, and he was no longer among the living. According to the second view, every part of Aaron's body, as soon as Moses removed the garment from it, was "swallowed up" by the mouth of the mount, and thus his naked body was not exposed to anyone's eye. The third view maintains that the undressing of Aaron and the dressing of Eleazar took place simultaneously: while Moses undressed his brother, the angels dressed his nephew Eleazar. At the very moment of his death, Aaron was asked by his brother: "How is the death of the righteous?" The answer given was: "I cannot tell thee that; all I can say is: I wish I had come sooner to the place where I am now."

638. Petirat Aharon 94. Compare with pp. 515–516; text on p. 996.

639. Baba Batra 17a. This passage contains also the statement that the three patriarchs, as well as Moses and Miriam, died by a kiss from God. Compare with p. 516.

640. Petirat Aharon 94–95 (read לָגַע עֵדֶן-לָגַע, instead of לָבַע); Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 764 and 787.

641. Petirat Aharon 95; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 674 and 187 (the phrase מֵת שָׁמַיִם, 764, means "he died a natural death"; but the text is hardly correct, and in view of the explicit statement of Petirat Aharon that Moses feared lest the people should deify Aaron, it may best be assumed that the words וְכֹה דָרַךְ refer to Aaron's translation); Tan. B. IV, 124; PRE 17; BaR 20.20; Tan. Hukkat 17; Zohar III, 183a (which reads: All the people in the camp saw what was happening on Mount Hor); Sifre D., 304. Moses did not inform the people of Aaron's approaching death, because he feared lest, out of their love for Aaron, they might attempt to prevent God's decree

from being carried out by praying for his life. In this way they would act contrary to God's wise plan. See Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 764. On Aaron's overpowering the Angel of Death, see text on p. 729; on his popularity, see text on p. 743, *seq.*; concerning his suspicion of Moses, see text on p. 745.

## THE GENERAL MOURNING FOR AARON

When Israel beheld the funeral rites prepared in honor of Aaron by God and by the angels, they also prepared a funeral ceremony of thirty days in which all the people, men and women, adults and children, took part.<sup>642</sup> This universal mourning had its foundation not only in Israel's emulation of the Divine mourning and of the ceremonies arranged by Moses and Eleazar, or in their wish to show their reverence for the deceased high priest, but first and foremost in the truth that the people deeply loved Aaron and deeply felt his death. They mourned for him even more than they did later for Moses; for the latter only a part of the people shed tears, but for Aaron, everyone. Moses, as a judge, was obliged to mete out justice to the guilty, so that he had enemies among the people, men who could not forget that he had pronounced them guilty in court. Moses, furthermore, was sometimes severe with Israel when he held up to them their sins, but never Aaron. The latter "loved peace and pursued peace, loved men and brought them near to the Torah." In his humility, he did not consider his dignity hurt by offering greetings first to even the lowliest, yes, he did not even fail in offering his greeting when he was certain that the man before him was wicked or godless. The lament of the angels for Aaron as one "who did turn many away from iniquity" was therefore well justified. This kindness of his led many a sinner to re-



form, who at the moment when he was about to commit a sin thought to himself: "How shall I be able to lift up my eyes to Aaron's face? I, to whom Aaron was so kind, blush to do evil." Aaron recognized his especial task as that of the Peace-maker. If he discovered that two men had fallen out, he hastened first to the one, then to the other, saying to each: "My son, dost thou not know what he is doing with whom thou hast quarreled? He beats at his heart, rends his garments in grief, and says, 'Woe is me! How can I ever again lift up my eyes and look upon my companion against whom I have acted so?'" Aaron would then speak to each separately until both the former enemies would mutually forgive each other, and as soon as they were again face to face salute each other as friends. If Aaron heard that husband and wife lived in discord, he would hasten to the husband, saying: "I come to thee because I hear that thou and thy wife live in discord, wherefore thou must divorce her. Keep in mind, however, that if thou shouldst in place of thy present wife marry another, it is very questionable if thy second wife will be as good as this one; for at your first quarrel she will throw up to thee that thou art a quarrelsome man, as was shown by thy divorce from thy first wife." Many thousands of unions were saved from impending rupture by the efforts and urgings of Aaron, and the sons born to the couples brought together anew usually received Aaron's name, owing, as they did, their existence to his intercession. Not less than eighty thousand youths bearing his name took part in the mourning for Aaron.<sup>643</sup>

When Moses beheld the deepfelt sorrow of the heavenly beings and of men for Aaron, he burst into passionate weeping, and said: "Woe is me, that am now left all alone! When Miriam died, none came to show Her the last marks of honor, and only I, Aaron, and his sons stood

about her bier, wept for her, mourned her, and buried her. At Aaron's death, I and his sons were present at his bier to show him the last marks of honor. But alas! How shall I fare! Who will be present at my death? I have neither father nor mother, neither brother nor sister—who then will weep for me?" God, however, said to him: "Be not afraid, Moses, I Myself shall bury thee amid great splendor, and just as the cave in which Aaron lies has vanished, that none may know the spot where Aaron is buried, so too shall no mortal know thy burial place. As the Angel of Death had no power over Aaron, who died 'by the kiss,' so shall the Angel of Death have no power over thee, and thou shalt die 'by the kiss.'" Moses grew calm at these words, knowing at last that he had his place among the blessed pious. Blessed are they, for not only does God in person gather them to Him, but as soon as they are dead, the angels go joyously to meet them and with beaming faces go to greet them, saying, "Enter into peace."<sup>644</sup>

---

642. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 787; Petirat Aharon 95; Lekah, Deut. 31.14.

643. ARN 12, 48–51, and second version 24, 48–51, as well as supplement, 161 and 163; Kallah 2.6 (read שנתרצית "thou quarrellest", instead of שנתרצית); WR 3.6; Sanhedrin 6b; Tan. B. IV, 130 1–131; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 787. The description of Aaron as the ideal of kindness and love of peace is found in sentences attributed to Hillel and his masters Shemaiah and Abtalion; see Abot 1.12; Yoma 71b; comp. Ginzberg's remarks in Geiger, *Kebuzzat Maamarim*, 160. See also text on pp. 740 and 742. The statement found in Targum Yerushalmi Num. 20.29 (whence it was borrowed by Rashi and Lekah) that men as well as women mourned for Aaron, whereas for Moses only the men mourned, is taken from PRE 17. The other statement of Targum that the weeping and mourning of Moses and Eleazar for Aaron made all the rest of the people do the same is found also in ARN 12, 49.

644. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 787, and (in abridged form) 764. According to another view, the people mourned very deeply for Miriam, see note 625. Concern-



ing the statement that Moses desired a death similar to that of his brother, see text on p. 815. On the disappearance of Aaron's grave, see text on p. 742, and note 792. On "death by a kiss", see note 639.

## THE FALSE FRIENDS

When Moses and Eleazar returned from the mountain without Aaron, Israel said to Moses: "We shall not release thee from this spot until thou showest us Aaron, dead or alive." Moses prayed to God, and He opened the cave and all Israel saw within it Aaron, lying dead upon a bier. They instantly felt what they had lost in Aaron, for when they turned to look at the camp, they saw that the clouds of glory that had covered the site of the camp during their forty years' march had vanished. They perceived, therefore, that God had sent these clouds for Aaron's sake only, and hence, with Aaron's death, had caused them to vanish. Those among Israel who had been born in the desert, having now, owing to the departure of the clouds of glory, for the first time beheld the sun and moon, wanted to fall down before them and adore them, for the clouds had always hidden the sun and the moon from them, and the sight of them made a most awful impression upon them. But God said to them: "Have I not commanded you in My Torah: 'Take ye therefore good heed unto yourselves ... lest thou lift up thine eyes unto heaven, and when thou seest the sun and the moon and the stars, even all the host of heaven, thou be drawn away and worship them, and serve them?' For it is God that led thee out of the furnace of Egypt, that thou mightest be the people of His inheritance."<sup>645</sup>

The disappearance of the clouds of glory inspired Israel with terror, for now they were unaided against the attacks of enemies, whereas

none had been able to enter into the camp of Israel while the clouds covered them. This fear was not, indeed, ungrounded, for hardly did Amalek learn that Aaron was dead and that the clouds of glory had vanished, when he at once set about harassing Israel.<sup>646</sup> Amalek acted in accordance with the counsel his grandsire Esau had given him, for his words to his grandson had been: "In spite of all my pains, I did not succeed in killing Jacob, therefore be thou mindful of avenging me upon his descendants." "But how, alas!" said Amalek, "Shall I be able to compete with Israel?" Esau made answer: "Look well, and as soon as thou seest Israel stumble, leap upon them." Amalek looked upon this legacy as the guiding star of his actions. When Israel trespassed, saying with little faith, "Is the Lord among us, or not?" Amalek instantly appeared. Hardly had Israel been tempted by its spies wickedly to exclaim, "Let us make a captain, and let us return into Egypt," when Amalek was upon the scene to battle with Israel. In later times also Amalek followed this policy, and when Nebuchadnezzar moved to Jerusalem in order to destroy it, Amalek took up his position one mile away from the holy city, saying: "If Israel should conquer, I should declare that I had come to assist them, but should Nebuchadnezzar be victorious, then shall I cut off the flight of the fleeing Israelites." His hopes were realized, for Nebuchadnezzar was victorious, and standing at the crossway, he cut down the fleeing Israelites, and added insult to injury by hurting invectives against God and the people, and ridiculing them.

When, after Aaron's death, Amalek no longer considered Israel dangerous, since the clouds had disappeared, he instantly set about making war upon them. Amalek did not, however, go in open warfare against Israel, but tried through craft to attain what he dared not hope for in open warfare. Concealing their weapons in their



garments, the Amalekites appeared in Israel's camp as if they meant to condole with them for Aaron's death, and then unexpectedly attacked them. Not content with this, the Amalekites disguised themselves in Canaanite costume and spoke the speech of the latter, so that the Israelites might not be able to tell if they had before them Amalekites, as their personal appearance seemed to show, or Canaanites, as their dress and speech indicated. The reason for this disguise was that Amalek knew that Israel had inherited the legacy from their ancestor Isaac that God always answered their prayer, hence Amalek said: "If we now appear as Canaanites, they will implore God to send them aid against the Canaanites, and we shall slay them." But all these wiles of Amalek were of no avail. Israel couched their prayer to God in these words: "O Lord of the world ! We know not with what nation we are now waging war, whether with Amalek or with Canaan, but whichever nation it be, pray visit punishment upon it."<sup>647</sup> God heard their prayer and, promising to stand by them, ordered them totally to annihilate their enemy, saying: "Although ye are now dealing with Amalek, do not treat him like Esau's other sons, against whom ye may not war, but try totally to destroy them, as if they were Canaanites." Israel acted according to this command, slaying the Amalekites in battle, and dedicating their cities to God.<sup>648</sup> Amalek's only gain in this enterprise was that, at the beginning of the war, they seized a slave woman who had once belonged to them, but who later passed over into the possession of the Israelites.<sup>649</sup>

For Israel this attack of Amalek had indeed serious consequences, for as soon as they perceived the approach of the enemy, they were afraid to continue the march to Palestine, being now no longer under the protection of the clouds, that vanished with Aaron's death; hence they determined to return to Egypt. They actu-

ally carried out part of this project by retreating eight stations, but the Levites pursued them, and in Moserah there arose a bitter quarrel between those who wanted to return to Egypt and the Levites who insisted upon the continuance of the march to Palestine. Of the former, eight tribal divisions were destroyed in this quarrel, five Benjamite, and one each of the Simeonite, Gadite, and Asherite divisions, while of the Levites one division was completely extirpated, and three others decimated in such a way that they did not recover until the days of David. The Levites were finally victorious, for even their opponents recognized that it had been folly on their part to desire to return to Egypt, and that their loss had been only a punishment because they had not arranged a mourning ceremony adequate to honor a man of Aaron's piety. They thereupon celebrated a grand mourning ceremony for Aaron in Moserah, and it is for this reason that people later spoke of this place as the place where Aaron died, because the great mourning rites took place there.<sup>650</sup>

---

645. Petirat Aharon 95; Midrash Aggada on Deut. 4.26. On convincing the people of Aaron's death, see text on p. 742. Concerning the clouds that were sent down for Aaron's sake, see text on p. 573, and the following note.

646. Seder 'Olam 9; Tosefta Sotah 11.1; Sifre N., 82; Rosh ha-Shanah 6a; Ta'anit 9a; Yerushalmi Yoma 1, 38b; PK 19, 138a; PR 13, 55a; Tan. B. IV, 124–125 (only in this passage and in the sources dependent upon it is Arad identified with Amalek; compare to the contrary with p. 751); Tan. Hukkat 18; BaR 19.20; Shir 4.5; Ekah 1.93; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 20.1 and 33.40. It is noteworthy that the Septuagint and Philo, *Moses*, 1.45, take כְּנַעֲנִי in Num. 21.1 as the name of a person, and not as a *gentilicum*; they perhaps presuppose the rabbinic legend which considers that the King of Arad was an Amalekite and not a Canaanite. Comp. also note 669. The Haggadah concerning the death of Aaron which gave courage to the enemy to attack Israel is also known to Aphraates, 452, who undoubtedly had it orally communicated to him by Jews.

647. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 763, and II, 549, on Obadiah; *Likkutim*, IV, 55a–55b, as well as in *Aruk*, s.v.



פּתח; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 21.1, and somewhat differently on 33.4, where it is stated that Amalek joined Canaan in his attack on Israel (comp. the preceding note); BaR 19.20; Tan. B. IV, 125; Tan. Hukkat 18. On the idea that Amalek carried out the counsel given him by Esau, see also *Rokeah* 234; Lekah, Gen. 27.45; text on p. 561; text on p. 1086. According to an unknown Midrash quoted by Rashi and Kimhi on 2 Chron. 20.11 the enemies who waged war against Jehoshaphat were really Amalekites disguised as Ammonites.

648. BaR 19.20; Tan. B. IV, 125; Tan. Hukkat. The complete destruction of this enemy by the Jews is explained by Philo, *Moses*, 1.45, in the following manner: As every pious man offers the first fruits unto God..., so did the Hebrews dedicate the whole of this mighty country (*i. e.* Arad) unto the Lord. The very same reason is given by *Rokeah*, 221 (on the authority of an old source?) for devoting Jericho to God; compare footnote 22 on p. 845.

649. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 764 (in the later editions of the Yalkut the reference to Yelammedenu as a source is missing); Lekah, Num. 21.1. Comp. 2 Kings 5.2.

650. Yerushalmi Yoma 1, 38b, and Sotah 1, 17b; BaR 19.20; Tan. B. IV, 125; Tan. Hukkat 18; Seder 'Olam 9; Mekilta Wayyassa' 1, 22b; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 21.1, and Deut. 10.6; Yelammedenu (?) in *Batte Midrashot*, III, 14; Midrash Aggada, Num. 26.12. It is noteworthy that the tannaitic sources, Seder 'Olam and Mekilta, know nothing of the quarrel between the Levites and the other tribes; they only state that the Israelites, after having continued to march for eight stations, returned to the place where Aaron died to arrange for a great mourning in his honor. Concerning the Benjamite and Simeonite clans who were entirely annihilated, see text on p. 434; text on p. 783.

## THE BRAZEN SERPENT

Owing to the king of Edom's refusal to permit Israel to pass through his land, they were obliged, at the very point when they believed themselves at the end of their march, to continue it, so as to go around the land of Edom. The people, weary of the many years' marches, now became peevish, saying: "We had already been close to the promised land, and now must turn about once more! It was the same with our fathers who, close to their goal, had to

turn back and roam about for thirty-eight years. Thus will it be with us!"<sup>651</sup> In their dejection they set about murmuring against God and Moses, "master and servant being to them as one." They complained that they were entirely thrown upon manna as a means of sustenance. This last mentioned complaint came from those in regard to whom God had vowed that they should never see the land which He had sworn unto the Patriarchs. These people could not bear the sight of the products of Palestine's soil, dying as soon as they beheld them. Now that they had arrived at the outskirts of the promised land, the merchants brought into the camp of the Israelites the native products, but these, unable to partake of them, still had to continue to gather sustenance exclusively from manna.<sup>652</sup>

Then a voice sounding from the heavens became audible upon earth, making this announcement: "Come hither and behold, O ye men! Come hither and hearken, ye creatures of flesh! In the beginning of things I cursed the serpent with the words, 'Dust shalt thou eat,' yet it complained not of its food. But ye, My people that I have led out of Egypt, for whom I caused manna to rain down from heaven, and quails to fly from the sea, and a spring to gush forth from the abyss, ye do murmur against Me on account of manna, saying, 'Our soul loatheth this light bread.' Let now the serpents come, that complained not, even though whatever food they ate tasted only of the dust, and let them bite those who murmur though they have a food that possesses every conceivable flavor."<sup>653</sup> The serpent, which was the first creature to slander its Maker and was therefore punished, shall now punish this people, which, not profiting by the example of the serpent's punishment, blasphemes its Creator by declaring that the heavenly food that He sends them would finally bring them death." The very serpents that during the forty years' march had been burned by the cloud of glory



and lay heaped up high round about the camp, these same serpents now bit the people so terribly that their poison burned the souls of those whom they attacked.<sup>654</sup>

When Moses betook himself to those who had been bitten, hearing that they were too ill to come to him,<sup>655</sup> they, conscious of their guilt, said to him: "We have sinned, because we have spoken against the Lord and against thee; pray unto the Lord, that He take away the serpents from us." Such was the meekness of Moses, that he instantly forgave the people's transgression in regard to himself, and at once implored God's aid. God also, however, forgave their sin as soon as they had shown penitence, and thus set an example to man likewise to grant forgiveness when it is requested.

As a healing for those who had been bitten, God now bade Moses to make a serpent of brass, and put it upon a pole, that it might come to pass that every one who was bitten might look upon it and live. Moses did as he was bidden, and made a serpent of brass. As soon as he hurled it on high, it remained floating in the air, so that all might be able to look upon it.<sup>656</sup> He made the serpent of brass, because in Hebrew *Nahash* signifies "snake" and *Nehoshet*, "brass"; hence Moses made the serpent of a substance that had a sound similar to that of the object fashioned out of it.<sup>657</sup> It was not, however, the sight of the serpent of brass that brought with it healing and life; but whenever those who had been bitten by the serpents raised their eyes upward and subordinated their hearts to the will of the heavenly Father, they were healed; if they gave no thought to God, they perished.<sup>658</sup>

Looking upon the serpent of brass brought healing not only to those who had been bitten by serpents, but also to those who had been bitten by dogs or other animals. The cure of the latter was effected even more quickly than that of the former, for a casual glance sufficed for

them, whereas the former were healed only after a long and insistent gaze.<sup>659</sup>

---

651. Rashi on Num. 21.4, which is very likely based upon an old midrashic source. As long as Aaron lived the Hebrews were protected by "the cloud" against the burning sun of the wilderness; but immediately after his death the cloud disappeared (see text on p. 745, and note 645), and they suffered greatly from the sun; they therefore became peevish and impatient; Yelammedenu (?) in *Batte Midrashot*, III, 17. They did not give expression to their vexation at the long journey through the wilderness; they were nevertheless punished for having harbored evil thoughts concerning God and Moses; Sanhedrin 110a; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 21.5.

652. Tan. B. IV, 125–126; Tan. Hukkat 19; BaR 19.21. These sources further remark that life in the wilderness was vexatious and difficult only to those against whom God decreed that they should die in the wilderness.

653. Targum Yerushalmi Num. 21.6; Tan. B. IV, 126; Tan. Hukkat 19; BaR 19.22; Ephraem I, 263. Compare with pp. 693–694.

654. BaR 19.22; Tan. B. IV, 126; Tan. Hukkat 19; PRE according to the text of *Batte Midrashot*, III, 34. Concerning the kind of death caused by the serpent, see Zohar III, 183b. On the slanderous serpent, see text on p. 512; vol. V, p. 95, note 62. Concerning the clouds that marched before Israel burning the serpents, see text on p. 772. Comp. *Likkutim*, IV, 56a.

655. Lekah, Num. 21.

656. Tan. B. IV, 126; Tan. Hukkat 19; BaR 19.22, which reads: Just as Israel sinned against two, God and Moses (comp. also Sanhedrin 110a), so also two kinds of serpents were sent to execute God's punishment on them, in order that they might thereby learn how grievous was their offence against their leader Moses; *Hadar*, Num. 21.8. BaR and Tan., *loc. cit.*, on the contrary, maintain that all the havoc was caused by one serpent. Concerning the speedy forgiveness granted to the sinners by God and Moses, see text on p. 217.

657. Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 6, 59a; BR 31.8. Several other explanations for making the serpent of brass are given by Philo, 2 *Leg. Alleg.* 20. Comp. also Midrash Aggada Num. 21.9.

658. Rosh ha-Shanah 6.8; Mekilta Amalek 1, 54a; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 21.8–9; PRE in *Batte Midrashot*, III, 34; Wisdom 16.10–13. In the patristic literature the serpent of brass "put upon a pole" is symbolic of the crucified Jesus; comp. *e. g.*, Justin *Dialogue*, 91, 94, 112, and 1 *Apologia*, 60; Tertullian, *De Idol.* 5; *Adversus Marcion.* 3.8, and *Adversus Judaeos* 10. The rabbinic expla-



nation of the setting up of the serpent upon a pole must not be taken as an anti-Christian Haggadah, as may be seen from the fact that it was known to the author of Wisdom. It is at the same time true that in the polemic literature of the Jews in the Middle Ages the correct explanation of the serpent of brass plays an important part. Comp., e. g., *Pelelat Soferim* 32, which records the reply given by R. Nathan Official to a Christian with regard to the setting up of the serpent (the text is corrupt; read **שָׂאֵל אֶחָד** instead of **סֹבֵל אֶחָד**; at the end read **אֵלָא זֶה** instead of **זֶה וְלֹא זֶה**); the statement of R. Nathan that this serpent was nothing else but Moses' rod which was turned into a serpent (comp. Exod. 4.3) is found in no other source. See text on p. 581 and note 145.

659. Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 6, 59a; Tan. B. IV, 126; Tan. Hukkat 19; BaR 19.23.

## AT ARNON

The murmurs of the people, on account of which God sent upon them the serpents, took place in Zalmonah, a place where grew only thorns and thistles. Thence they wandered on to Punon, where God's punishment overtook them.<sup>660</sup> In the following two stations also, in Oboth and Iye-abarim, they continued their hostile actions against God, who for this reason was full of wrath against them, and did not look upon them again with favor until they reached Arnon.<sup>661</sup> God's favor was instantly shown during Israel's passage through the valley of Arnon, where He wrought for Israel miracles as great as those of yore at the passage through the Red Sea. This valley was formed by two lofty mountains that lay so close together that people upon the two summits of them could converse with one another. But in passing from one mountain to the other, one had to cover a distance of seven miles, having first to descend into the valley, and then again to ascend the other mountain. The Amorites, knowing that Israel should now have to pass through the valley, assembled in innumerable multitudes, and a part of them hid

in the caves, of which there were many on the slopes of the mountain, while another part of them awaited Israel in the valley below, hoping to attack and destroy them unexpectedly from above and from below in their passage through the valley. God, however, frustrated this plan, bringing it to pass that Israel did not descend into the valley at all, but stayed above, through the following miracle. For whereas the mountain on the one side of the valley was full of caves, the other consisted entirely of pointed rocks; and God moved this rocky mountain so close up to the other, that the jutting rocks of the one entered into the caves of the other, and all the Amorites that were concealed within them were crushed.

It was the rocky mountain that was moved, and not the other, for this same rocky mountain was the beginning of the promised land, and at the approach of Israel from the other mountain, which was Moabite, the land leaped to meet them, for it awaited them most longingly.

An old proverb says: "If you give a piece of bread to a child, tell its mother about it." God, likewise, wanted Israel to know the great miracles He had accomplished for their sake, for they had no inkling of the attack the heathens had planned to make upon them. God therefore bade the well that had reappeared since their stay in Beeroth to flow past the caves and wash out parts of the corpses in great numbers. When Israel now turned to look upon the well, they perceived it in the valley of the Arnon, shining like the moon, and drawing corpses with it. Not until then did they discover the miracles that had been wrought for them. Not only did the mountains at first move together to let them pass, and then again move apart, but God saved them from great peril. They now intoned a song of praise to the well that revealed to them the great miracle.<sup>662</sup>



When, at the passage through the Red Sea, Israel wanted to intone a song of praise, Moses did not let them do it alone, but first sang to them the song they were to sing to the Lord. For then Israel was young, and could only repeat what its teacher Moses sang before them, but when the nation reached Arnon, it was fully grown, after its forty years' march through the desert. Now the Israelites sang their own song, saying: "O Lord of the world! It behooves Thee to work miracles for us, whereas it is our duty to intone to Thee songs of praise." Moses had no part in the song of praise to the well, for the well had given occasion to his death in the desert, and no man can be expected to sing about his executioner. As Moses wanted to have nothing to do with this song, God demanded that His own name also be not mentioned in it, acting in this instance like the king who was invited to a prince's table, but refused the invitation when he learned that his friend was not to be present at the feast.<sup>663</sup> The song to the well was as follows: "This is the well that the Patriarchs of the world, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, have digged, the princes of olden times have searched, the heads of the people, the lawgivers of Israel, Moses and Aaron, have made its water to run with their staves. In the desert Israel received it as a gift, and after they had received it, it followed Israel upon all their wanderings, to lofty mountains and deep valleys. Not until they came to the boundary of Moab did it disappear, because Israel did not observe the words of the Torah."<sup>664</sup>

Israel sang a song to the well alone, and not to manna, because they had on several occasions railed against the heavenly food, and therefore God said: "I do not wish ye to find fault with manna, nor yet to have ye praise it now," and He would not permit them to sing a song of praise to manna.<sup>665</sup>

---

660. Targum Yerushalmi Num. 33.4–42. Comp. Lekah and *Hadar* on Num. 21.10.

661. Tan. B. IV, 126–127; Tan. Hukkat 19; BaR 19.24.

662. Tan. B. IV, 127; Tan. Hukkat 20; BaR 19.25; DZ 23–24. According to Berakot 59a–59b, the miracle was caused by the pillar which preceded the Israelites on their marching, and prepared the way for them, elevating the valleys and levelling the mountains and hills; compare with pp. 541–542 and text on p. 642. These sources further state that the Israelites would never have known of this miracle had it not been for two lepers who, marching outside the cover of the clouds (see text on p. 579), had the opportunity to observe the levelling of the mountains and the annihilation of the Amorites. The proverb "if you give, etc." occurs also in Shabbat 10b. As to the mountains meeting persons, see text on p. 501.

663. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 763–764; Tan. B. IV, 127; Tan. Hukkat 21; BaR 19.26. That the song at the Red Sea was composed by Moses and sung by Israel is also the view of Ephraem I, 216B. For a different opinion, see text on pp. 562 and 563.

664. Targum Onkelos and Yerushalmi on Num. 21.17–20 (the places named in the verses are haggadically explained to refer to the Torah and to those who study it; see also 'Erubin 59a). Midrash Aggada and *Hadar* on Num., *loc. cit.*, as well as Sabba', Hukkat (end). have other explanations of this song. Comp. also Tan. B. IV, 127–128, Tan. Hukkat 21; BaR 19.26; text on p. 576. In all these sources, the well praised by Israel is identified with "Miriam's well" (compare with p. 575), which disappeared after the death of the prophetess (compare with p. 731). This well subsequently reappeared, and its reappearance was greeted with a song by the people; see Seder 'Olam 9.10, and the parallel passages cited by Ratner, *ad loc.* Philo, *Moses*, 1.46, on the other hand, is of the opinion that the well greeted with a song was the first well the Israelites found on entering a cultivated land after their long journey in the wilderness.

665. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 763. The great miracles performed for Israel in Egypt and in the wilderness were, in one way or another, connected with water. The first plague inflicted upon the Egyptians was the turning of the water into blood. Then there was the dividing of the Red Sea. At Marah the bitter waters were made sweet. Later on many other miracles were performed in connection with water. Israel therefore was moved to sing the praise of water at the end of their wandering through the desert. Moses at the same time informed the Israelites that when they enter the Holy Land another miracle connected with water would take place, namely, the dividing of the Jordan; see DR 2.8.



LEGENDS  
OF THE JEWS

VOLUME 2







# LEGENDS OF THE JEWS

BY  
LOUIS GINZBERG

Translated from the German Manuscript by

HENRIETTA SZOLD

and

PAUL RADIN

VOLUME TWO

Bible Times and Characters

From the Moses in the Wilderness to Esther



THE JEWISH PUBLICATION SOCIETY

PHILADELPHIA

2003 • 5763



Copyright © 2003 by The Jewish Publication Society

First edition published in seven volumes in 1909, 1910, 1911, 1913, 1925, 1928, and 1938.

Second edition. All rights reserved

*No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage or retrieval system, except for brief passages in connection with a critical review, without permission in writing from the publisher:*

The Jewish Publication Society  
2100 Arch Street, 2nd Floor  
Philadelphia, PA 19103  
www.jewishpub.org

Design and Composition by Varda Graphics, Skokie, Illinois, USA  
Manufactured in the United States of America

03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Ginzberg, Louis, 1873-1953.

Legends of the Jews / by Louis Ginzberg; translated from the German manuscript by Henrietta Szold and Paul Radin.—2nd ed.

v. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-8276-0709-1

1. Legends, Jewish. 2. Bible, O.T.—Legends. 3. Midrash—Translations into English. 4. Aggadah—Translations into English. I. Szold, Henrietta, 1860–1945. II. Radin, Paul, 1883–1959. III. Title.

BM530.G513 2003

296.1'9--dc21

2003047540

### Author's Dedication in the Original Edition

TO MY BROTHER ASHER

TO MY MOTHER, ON THE OCCASION OF

HER SEVENTIETH BIRTHDAY



THE PUBLICATION OF THE NEW EDITION  
IS LOVINGLY DEDICATED TO THE MEMORY OF  
**HARRY ELSON**  
WHO SHARED HIS ERUDITE AND  
SOPHISTICATED KNOWLEDGE OF JEWISH HISTORY  
WITH HIS SON.



# CONTENTS

## VOLUME 1

INTRODUCTION TO THE 2003 EDITION

PREFACE TO THE ORIGINAL EDITION

PREFACE TO THE NOTES

ABBREVIATIONS OF TITLES OF BOOKS IN THE NOTES

### I. THE CREATION OF THE WORLD 1

The First Things Created 1 • The Alphabet 3 • The First Day 5 •  
The Second Day 12 • The Third Day 18 • The Fourth Day 23 •  
The Fifth Day 28 • The Sixth Day 33 • All Things Praise the  
Lord 43

### II. ADAM 47

Man and the World 47 • The Angels and the Creation of Man 51 •  
The Creation of Adam 53 • The Soul of Man 55 • The Ideal Man  
58 • The Fall of Satan 62 • Woman 64 • Adam and Eve in Paradise  
68 • The Fall of Man 71 • The Punishment 74 • Sabbath in  
Heaven 83 • Adam's Repentance 86 • The Book of Raziel 89 • The  
Sickness of Adam 91 • Eve's Story of the Fall 92 • The Death of  
Adam 96 • The Death of Eve 98

### III. THE TEN GENERATIONS 101

The Birth of Cain 101 • Fratricide 103 • The Punishment of Cain  
106 • The Inhabitants of the Seven Earths 109 • The Descendants  
of Cain 111 • The Descendants of Adam and Lilith 114 • Seth and  
His Descendants 115 • Enosh 117 • The Fall of the Angels 119 •  
Enoch, Ruler and Teacher • The Ascension of Enoch 124 • The  
Translation of Enoch 129 • Methuselah 131

### IV. NOAH 133

The Birth of Noah 133 • The Punishment of the Fallen Angels 135  
• The Generation of the Deluge 138 • The Holy Book 141 • The  
Inmates of the Ark 143 • The Flood 147 • Noah Leaves the Ark



150 • The Curse of Drunkenness 153 • Noah's Descendants Spread Abroad 156 • The Depravity of Mankind 160 • Nimrod 161 • The Tower of Babel 163

V. ABRAHAM 167

The Wicked Generations 167 • The Birth of Abraham 168 • The Babe Proclaims God 170 • Abraham's First Appearance in Public 172 • The Preacher of the True Faith 173 • In the Fiery Furnace 175 • Abraham Emigrates to Haran 178 • The Star in the East 181 • The True Believer 182 • The Iconoclast 184 • Abraham in Canaan 187 • His Sojourn in Egypt 189 • The First Pharaoh 192 • The War of the Kings 193 • The Covenant of the Pieces 198 • The Birth of Ishmael 201 • The Visit of the Angels 204 • The Cities of Sin 207 • Abraham Pleads for the Sinners 210 • The Destruction of the Sinful Cities 212 • Among the Philistines 216 • The Birth of Isaac 218 • Ishmael Cast Off 219 • The Two Wives of Ishmael 221 • The Covenant with Abimelech 222 • Satan Accuses Abraham 224 • The Journey to Moriah 225 • The 'Akedah 228 • The Death and Burial of Sarah 233 • Eliezer's Mission 237 • The Wooing of Rebekah 239 • The Last Years of Abraham 243 • A Herald of Death 244 • Abraham Views Earth and Heaven 246 • The Patron of Hebron 249

VI. JACOB 251

The Birth of Esau and Jacob 251 • The Favorite of Abraham 255 • The Sale of the Birthright 257 • Isaac with the Philistines 259 • Isaac Blesses Jacob 263 • Esau's True Character Revealed 269 • Jacob Leaves His Father's House 271 • Jacob Pursued by Eliphaz and Esau 274 • The Day of Miracles 276 • Jacob with Laban 281 • The Marriage of Jacob 282 • The Birth of Jacob's Children 285 • Jacob Flees Before Laban 290 • The Covenant with Laban 292 • Jacob and Esau Prepare to Meet 295 • Jacob Wrestles with the Angel 298 • The Meeting Between Esau and Jacob 302 • The Outrage at Shechem 307 • A War Frustrated 310 • The War with the Ninevites 311 • The War with the Amorites 314 • Isaac Blesses Levi and Judah 316 • Joy and Sorrow in the House of Jacob 317 • Esau's Campaign Against Jacob 319 • The Descendants of Esau 322



VII. JOSEPH 327

The Favorite Son 327 • Joseph Hated by His Brethren 329 • Joseph Cast into the Pit 331 • The Sale 335 • Joseph's Three Masters 337 • Joseph's Coat Brought to His Father 339 • Judah and His Sons 343 • The Wives of the Sons of Jacob 347 • Joseph the Slave of Potiphar 349 • Joseph and Zuleika 352 • Joseph Resists Temptation 356 • Joseph in Prison 359 • Pharaoh's Dreams 362 • Joseph Before Pharaoh 364 • The Ruler of Egypt 367 • Joseph's Brethren in Egypt 370 • Joseph Meets His Brethren 372 • The Second Journey to Egypt 376 • Joseph and Benjamin 379 • The Thief Caught 382 • Judah Pleads and Threatens 384 • Joseph Makes Himself Known 387 • Jacob Receives the Glad Tidings 391 • Jacob Arrives in Egypt 394 • Joseph's Kindness and Generosity 396 • Jacob's Last Wish 399 • The Blessing of Ephraim and Manasseh 402 • The Blessing of the Twelve Tribes 406 • Death of Jacob 411 • The Sons of Jacob at War with the Sons of Esau 415 • Zepho King of Kittim 417 • The Nations at War 420 • Joseph's Magnanimity 421 • Asenath 423 • The Marriage of Joseph 424 • Kind and Unkind Brethren 425 • Treachery Punished 426 • The Death and Burial of Joseph 427

VIII. THE SONS OF JACOB 433

Significant Names 433 • Reuben's Testament 435 • Simon's Admonition Against Envy 436 • The Ascension of Levi 437 • Judah Warns Against Greed and Unchastity 439 • Issachar's Singleness of Heart 440 • Zebulon Exhorts unto Compassion 442 • Dan's Confession 443 • Naphtali's Dreams of the Division of the Tribes 444 • Gad's Hatred 447 • Asher's Last Words 448 • Benjamin Extols Joseph 449

IX. JOB 451

Job and the Patriarchs 451 • Job's Wealth and Benefactions 453 • Satan and Job 455 • Job's Suffering 457 • The Four Friends 459 • Job Restored 460

X. MOSES IN EGYPT 465

The Beginning of the Egyptian Bondage 465 • Pharaoh's Cunning 466 • The Pious Midwives 468 • The Three Counsellors 470 • The Slaughter of the Innocents 471 • The Parents of Moses 473 • The



Birth of Moses 473 • Moses Rescued from the Water 477 • The Infancy of Moses 480 • Moses Rescued by Gabriel 482 • The Youth of Moses 485 • The Flight 488 • The King of Ethiopia 490 • Jethro 493 • Moses Marries Zipporah 494 • A Bloody Remedy 497 • The Faithful Shepherd 500 • The Burning Thorn-Bush 501 • The Ascension of Moses 502 • Moses Visits Paradise and Hell 505 • Moses Declines the Mission 509 • Moses Punished for his Stubbornness 512 • The Return to Egypt 515 • Moses and Aaron Before Pharaoh 517 • The Suffering Increases 520 • Measure for Measure 523 • The Plagues Brought Through Aaron 526 • The Plagues Brought Through Moses 529 • The First Passover 534 • The Smiting of the First-Born 536 • The Redemption of Israel from Egyptian Bondage 538 • The Exodus 540

#### XI. MOSES IN THE WILDERNESS 545

Introduction 545 • The Long Route 545 • Pharaoh Pursues the Hebrews 548 • The Sea Divided 553 • The Passage Through the Red Sea 555 • The Destruction of the Egyptians 558 • The Song at the Sea 562 • The Awful Desert 565 • The Heavenly Food 569 • The Gathering of Manna 571 • Miriam's Well 575 • Amalek's War Against Israel 577 • Amalek Defeated 580 • Jethro 583 • The Installation of Elders 585 • Jethro Rewarded 588 • The Time Is at Hand 591 • The Gentiles Refuse the Torah 593 • The Contest of the Mountains 594 • The Torah Offered to Israel 596 • Israel Prepares for the Revelation 598 • The Revelation on Mount Sinai 599 • The First Commandment 602 • The Other Commandments Revealed on Sinai 605 • The Unity of the Ten Commandments 609 • Moses Chosen as Intermediator 610 • Moses and the Angels Strive for the Torah 613 • Moses Receives the Torah 616 • The Golden Calf 619 • Moses Blamed for Israel's Sin 622 • The Punishment of the Sinners 625 • Moses Intercedes for the People 627 • The Inscrutable Ways of the Lord 629 • The Thirteen Attributes of God 631 • The Second Tables 632 • The Erection of the Tabernacle Commanded 638 • The Materials for the Construction of the Tabernacle 640 • Bezalel 641 • The Ark with the Cherubim 642 • The Table and the Candlestick 644 • The Altar 646 • The Symbolical Significance of the Tabernacle 648 • The Priestly Robes 649 • The Stones in the Breastplate 651 • The Completion of the Taber-



nacle 653 • The Setting Up of the Tabernacle 655 • The Consecration of the Priests 657 • The Day of the Ten Crowns 658 • The Interrupted Joy 661 • The Gifts of the Princes 664 • The Revelations in the Tabernacle 673 • The Cleansing of the Camp 674 • The Lighting of the Candlestick 677 • The Twelve Princes of the Tribes 678 • The Census of the Levites 681 • The Four Divisions of the Levites 683 • The Four Standards 684 • The Camp 687 • The Blasphemer and the Sabbath-Breaker 689 • The Ungrateful Multitude 691 • The Flesh-Pots of Egypt 693 • The Appointment of the Seventy Elders 695 • Eldad and Medad 697 • The Quails 699 • Aaron and Miriam Slander Moses 700 • Miriam's Punishment 702 • The Sending of the Spies 703 • Significant Names 705 • Spies in Palestine 707 • The Slandorous Report 709 • The Night of Tears 711 • Ingratitude Punished 713 • The Years of Disfavor 716 • The Rebellion of Korah 718 • Moses Pleads in Vain with Korah 722 • Korah and His Horde Punished 725 • On and the Three Sons of Korah Saved 726 • Israel Convinced of Aaron's Priesthood 728 • The Waters of Meribah 731 • Moses' Anger Causes His Doom 733 • Edom's Unbrotherly Attitude Toward Israel 735 • The Three Shepherds 737 • Preparing Aaron for Impending Death 739 • Aaron's Death 740 • The General Mourning for Aaron 743 • The False Friends 745 • The Brazen Serpent 747 • At Arnon 749 • Sihon, The King of the Amorites 751 • The Giant Og 753 • Moses' Speech of Admonition 756 • Balak, King of Moab 758 • Balaam, the Heathen Prophet 760 • Balak's Messengers to Balaam 762 • Balaam Accepts Balak's Invitation 764 • Balaam's Ass 765 • Balaam Runs into His Own Destruction 768 • Balaam with Balak 769 • Balaam's Sacrifices Refused 770 • Balaam Extols Israel 772 • Balaam's Hopes Disappointed 774 • Curses Turned to Blessings 776

## VOLUME 2

### ABBREVIATIONS OF TITLES OF BOOKS IN THE NOTES

#### XI. MOSES IN THE WILDERNESS (CONTINUED)

Balaam's Wicked Counsel 778 • Phinehas, Zealous for God 779 • Twelve Miracles 781 • Phinehas Rewarded 782 • The Daughters of



Zelophehad 784 • The Appointment of Joshua 787 • Moses' Legacy to Joshua 790 • Moses' Last Campaign 791 • The Complete Annihilation of Midian 794 • The Gruesome End of Balaam 795 • The Victorious Return from the War 797 • Wealth that Bringeth Destruction 798 • Moses' Death Irrevocably Doomed 800 • Moses' Prayer for Suspension of Judgment 801 • God Tries to Comfort Moses Concerning His Death 806 • The Intercessions for Moses 808 • Moses Serves Joshua 810 • The Last Day of Moses' Life 812 • Moses Beholds the Future 814 • Moses Meets the Messiah in Heaven 816 • The Last Hours of Moses 817 • Blessing of Moses 819 • Moses Prays for Death 826 • Samael Chastised by Moses 828 • God Kisses Moses' Soul 831 • The Mourning for Moses 834 • Samael's Vain Search 835 • Moses Excels All Pious Men 837

XII. JOSHUA 841

The Servant of Moses 841 • Entering the Promised Land 842 • Conquest of the Land 845 • The Sun Obeys Joshua 848 • War with the Armenians 850 • Allotment of the Land 851

XIII. THE JUDGES 855

The First Judge 855 • Campaigns of Kenaz 858 • Othniel 860 • Boaz and Ruth 862 • Deborah 867 • Gideon 871 • Jephthah 874 • Samson 877 • The Crime of the Benjamites 880

XIV. SAMUEL AND SAUL 887

Elkanah and Hannah 887 • The Youth of Samuel 889 • Eli and His Sons 891 • The Activities of Samuel 895 • The Reign of Saul 898 • The Court of Saul 905

XV. DAVID 911

David's Birth and Descent 911 • Anointed King 912 • Encounter with Goliath 915 • Pursued by Saul 918 • Wars 920 • Ahithophel 922 • Joab 924 • David's Piety and His Sin 927 • Absalom's Rebellion 931 • David's Atonement 933 • Visitations 934 • Death of David 938 • David in Paradise 938 • The Family of David 940 • His Tomb 942

XVI. SOLOMON 945

Solomon Punishes Joab 945 • The Marriage of Solomon 947 • His Wisdom 949 • The Queen of Sheba 958 • Solomon Master of the Demons



962 • The Building of the Temple 965 • The Throne of Solomon 968 •  
The Hippodrome 970 • Lessons in Humility 971 • Asmodeus 973 •  
Solomon as Beggar 975 • The Court of Solomon 978

XVII. JUDAH AND ISRAEL 981

The Division of the Kingdom 981 • Jeroboam 982 • The Two Abi-  
jahs 984 • Asa 985 • Jehoshaphat and Ahab 986 • Jezebel 990 •  
Joram of Israel 990

XVIII. ELIJAH 993

Elijah Before His Translation 993 • After His Translation 1000 •  
Censor and Avenger 1006 • Intercourse with the Sages 1009 • God's  
Justice Vindicated 1013 • Elijah and the Angel of Death 1016 •  
Teacher of the Kabbalah 1018 • Forerunner of the Messiah 1020

XIV. ELISHA AND JONAH 1025

Elisha the Disciple of Elijah 1025 • The Shunammite 1028 •  
Gehazi 1029 • The Flight of Jonah 1031 • Jonah in the Whale  
1033 • The Repentance of Nineveh 1034

XX. THE LATER KINGS OF JUDAH 1037

Joash 1037 • Three Great Prophets 1039 • The Two Kingdoms  
Chastised 1043 • Hezekiah 1045 • Miracles Wrought for Hezekiah  
1048 • Manasseh 1054 • Josiah and His Successors 1058

XXI. THE EXILE 1065

Zedekiah 1065 • Jeremiah 1067 • Nebuchadnezzar 1072 • The  
Capture of Jerusalem 1074 • The Great Lament 1078 • Jeremiah's  
Journey to Babylon 1081 • Transportation of the Captives 1085 •  
The Sons of Moses 1088 • Ebed-Melech 1090 • The Temple Ves-  
sels 1091 • Baruch 1092 • The Tombs of Baruch and Ezekiel 1094  
• Daniel 1095 • The Three Men in the Furnace 1097 • Ezekiel  
Revives the Dead 1101 • Nebuchadnezzar a Beast 1103 • Hiram  
1104 • The False Prophets 1106 • Daniel's Piety 1107

XXII. THE RETURN OF THE CAPTIVITY 1111

Belshazzar's Feast 1111 • Daniel Under the Persian Kings 1113 •  
The Grave of Daniel 1117 • Zerubbabel 1118 • Ezra 1121 • The  
Men of the Great Assembly 1126



XXIII. ESTHER 1129

The Feast for the Grandees 1129 • The Festivities in Shushan 1132  
• Vashti's Banquet 1134 • The Fate of Vashti 1135 • The Follies of  
Ahasuerus 1138 • Mordecai 1139 • Esther's Beauty and Piety 1141  
• The Conspiracy 1145 • Haman the Jew-Baiter 1146 • Mordecai's  
Pride 1148 • Casting the Lots 1150 • The Denunciation of the  
Jews 1152 • The Decree of Annihilation 1155 • Satan Indicts the  
Jews 1158 • The Dream of Mordecai 1161 • The Prayer of Esther  
1164 • Esther Intercedes 1166 • The Disturbed Night 1169 • The  
Fall of Haman 1172 • The Edict of the King 1178

INDEX OF SUBJECTS

INDEX OF PASSAGES

INDEX OF HEBREW AND ARAMAIC WORDS AND PHRASES







## ABBREVIATIONS OF TITLES OF BOOKS IN THE NOTES

- Abkat Rokel **מכיר רוכל...אבקת**, Warsaw 1876, quoted by book and chapter.
- Abudrahim **אבודרהם**, Warsaw 1877, quoted by section and page.
- Aggadat Bereshit **אגדת בראשית** ed. Buber, Cracow 1902, quoted by chapter and page.
- Aggadat 'Olam Katan **אגדת עולם קטן** ed. Jellinek, Bet Ha-Midrash, V, 57–59.
- Aggadat Shir **אגדת שיר השירים** ed. Schechter, Cambridge 1896.
- Aggadat Tefillat Shemoneh 'Esreh **אגדת תפלת שמונה עשרה**, ed. Jellinek, Bet Ha-Midrash, V, 53–56.
- Aggadta de Shimon Kefa **אגדתא דשמעון כיפא**, ed. Jellinek in Bet Ha-Midrash V, 60–62.
- Aguddat Aggadat .... **חיים מאיר**.... **אגדת אגדות**, Frankfort o. M., 1881.
- Al-Barceloni **פירוש ספר יצירה להרב** ... **ברצלוני** ed. Halberstam, Berlin 1885.
- 'Aliyyot Eliyyahu **עליות אליהו תולדות** ... **אליהו גאון** ed. Stettin, 1861.
- Alkabez. See Menot ha-Levi.
- Aphraates. The Homilies of Aphraates ed. by Wright, London 1869.
- Alphabet of R. Akiba 1 and 2 **אלפא ביתא דרבי** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash III, 12–64.
- Alphabet of Ben Sira 1 and 2 **אלפא ביתא דבן סירה** ed. Steinschneider, Berlin 1858.
- Alphabetot **אלפא ביתות** ed. Wertheimer, **מדרש אלפא ביתות דרבי עקיבא השלם**, 81–121, Jerusalem 1914.
- ARN 1 and 2. **מסכת אבות דרבי נתן בשתי נוסחאות** ed. Schechter, Vienna 1887, quoted by chapter and page.
- Artapanus *περὶ Ἰουδαίων* in Eusebius, Praep. Evang. **מעשה עשרה הרוגי מלכות** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash VI, 19–35.
- 'Aseret ha-Dibrot **עשרת הדברות** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash I, 62–90 (quoted by page) and in **חבור מעשיות מהמדרשות והאגדות**, Venice, 1605, quoted by Commandment.
- 'Aseret Melakim **עשרת מלכים** ed. Horowitz, Bibliotheca Haggadica I, 38–55, Frankfort o. M. 1881.
- R. Asher. Glosses on the Pentateuch by R. Asher b. Jechiel; comp. Hadar.
- Astruc. R. Solomon Astruc **מדרשי התורה** ed. Eppenstein, Berlin 1889.
- ATAO. A. Jeremias, Das alte Testament im Lichte des alten Orients, Leipsic 1907.
- Ayyumah Ka-Nidgalot **איומה כנדגלות** by R. Isaac Onkeneira, Berlin 1701.
- Baer, Siddur **סדר עבודת ישראל**, Roedelheim 1868.
- R. Bahya. Commentary on the Pentateuch by R. Bahya b. Asher, Warsaw 1853, quoted by chapter and verse.
- BaR **מדרש במדבר רבה** ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and paragraph.
- Baraita di-Ma'aseh Bereshit ed. Chones in Buber, **יריעות שלמה** 47–50, Warsaw 1896.
- Baraita di Mazzalot **בריתא דמדלות** ed. Wertheimer, **אוצר מדרשים כתבי יד**, I, 1–28, Jerusalem, 1913.
- Baraita di-Shemuel **בריתא דשמואל הקטן** ed. Frankfort o. M. 1863.
- Barceloni; See Al-Barceloni.
- Baruch, Greek. The Greek Apocalypse of Baruch ed. James, Texts and Studies vol. V, Cambridge, 1897.
- 3 Baruch. See Baruch, Greek.



- Batte Midrashot בתי מדרשות Vols. I–IV ed. Wertheimer, Jerusalem 1893–1897.
- Ben ha-Meleך והנזיר ed. Mantua 1557, quoted by chapter.
- Benjamin R., Itinerary of בנימין ר', ed. Grünhut and Adler, Jerusalem (Frankfort o. M.) 1904.
- Benjamin R. of Tudela. See Benjamin R. Itinerary of Bertinoro. Glosses on the Pentateuch in בעלי התוספות על חמשה חומשי תורה, Warsaw 1876.
- BHM Vols. I–VI. בית המדרש ed. Jellinek. Leipsic 1853–1877, quoted by volume and page.
- BR מדרש בראשית רבה ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and paragraph. Comp. also Theodor.
- Caro, Isaac יצחק, Tולדות, Constantinople 1518, quoted by chapter and verse.
- Codex Naz. Codex Nazareus ed. Norberg, Copenhagen s. a.
- Da'at ספר דעת זקנים והוא חבור כולל על התורה הראשון מרבתינו בעלי התוספות... והשני ספר מנחת הראשון מרבתינו יהודה מרבינו יהודה בר אליעזר Leghorn 1783.
- Dhamari. See Manzur.
- Debir דביר מאסף עתי לחכמת ישראל, Berlin 1923.
- Demetrius *περὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἰουδαίᾳ βασιλέων* in Eusebius, Praep. Evang.
- Derek Erez Z. דרך ארץ זוטא ed. Tawrogi, Königsberg 1885.
- Dibre ha-Yamim or Hayyamim דברי הימים של משה ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash. II, 1–11.
- DR מדרש דברים רבה ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and paragraph.
- DZ לקוטים ממדרש אלה הדברים [זוטא] ed. Buber, Vienna 1885.
- Ekah מדרש איכה רבה ed. Buber, Wilna 1899, quoted by chapter and page, or ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and verse.
- Eldad אלדד הדני ed. Epstein, Presburg 1891.
- Eleh Ezkerah מדרש אלה אזכרה ed. Jellinek, Leipsic 1853.
- 'Emek ha-Meleך עמק המלך by R. Naphtali b. Elchanan, Amsterdam 1648.
- Emunot we-Deot ספר האמונות והדעות חבירו... רבינו עמק המלך, Cracow 1880.
- 2 Enoch. The Book of the Secrets of Enoch translated from the Slavonic by W. R. Morfill and edited... by R. H. Charles, Oxford 1896.
- Enoch Hebrew; See Sefer Hanok.
- Ephraim. Ephraemi Syri Opera Omnia ed. P. Benedictus and Assemanus, Rome 1737–1743.
- ER and EZ סדר אליהו רבה וסדר אליהו זוטא ed. Friedmann, Vienna 1900, quoted by chapter (old numbering) and page.
- 'Eser Galuyyot מדרש עשר גלויות ed. Grünhut in Likkutim III, 2–22.
- Eshkol אשכול הכפר להרב רבנו יהודה הדסי Goslow 1836, quoted by No., folio and column.
- Eshkol יצחק ספר האשכול יסדו רבנו אברהם ב"ר Auerbach, Halberstadt 1867–1869, quoted by volume and page.
- ha-Eshkol האשכול מאסף ספרותי ומדעי ed. Fuchs and Günzig, Cracow 1898–1909.
- Eupolemus *περὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἰουδαίᾳ βασιλέων*, in Eusebius, Praep. Evang.
- Eusebius, Praeparatio Evangelica ed. Gifford, Oxford 1903.
- EZ. See ER.
- Ezekiel, the tragedian. *Ἐξαγωγή* in Eusebius, Praep. Evang.
- 4 Ezra, Liber Esdrae Quartus ed. G. H. Box, Ezra Apocalypse, London 1912.
- Gadol u-Gedolah גדול וגדולה ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash III, 121–130.
- Gedulat Mosheh גדולת משה ed. Amsterdam 1754.
- Geonica. Geonica by Louis Ginzberg, I and II, New York 1909.
- Ginzberg, Compte Rendu. *Compte Rendu des Mélanges Israël Lewy*, Paris 1914 = Rev. d. Etud. Juiv. LXVI, 297–315 and LXVII, 133–151.
- Ginzberg, Haggada bei den Kirchenv. Die Haggada bei den Kirchenvätern, Amsterdam 1899. Haggada bei den Kirchenvätern II. Die Haggada bei den Kirchenvätern und in der apocryphischen Litteratur, Berlin 1900.
- Gorion מדרש אבא גוריון ed. Buber, Wilna 1886.
- Güdemann, Religionsgeschichte. Religionsgeschichtliche Studien, Leipsic 1876.
- Hadar זקנים... תורתן של ראשונים רבותינו בעלי הדר בעלי התוספות זלה"ה על התורה... דבר חדש בעלי התוספות זלה"ה... הוא הרא"ש Leghorn 1840.
- Hadassi. See Eshkol (1).
- Haggadat Teman. The Haggadah according to the Rite of Yemen . . . by William H. Greenburg, London 1896.



- Haggoren or ha-Goren. הגרן...נערך vols. I–IX, ע"י Berditschew-Berlin 1899–1922.
- Hallel מדרש הלל הנקרא ספר המעשים ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash V. 87–110.
- Haserot מדרש חסרות ויתרות ed. Wertheimer, Jerusalem 1900.
- Hashkem ספר הלקוטים I, in Grünhut מדרש השכם, 2–20; comp. Likkutim.
- Hasidim ספר חסידים, ed. Wistinetzki, Berlin 1891.
- Hazofeh הצופה מארץ הגר vols. I–IV, V, VII הצופה ed. Blau, Budapest 1911–1923.
- Hekalot or 1 Hekalot היכלות רבתי in Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash III, 83–108.
- 3 Hekalot מפרקי היכלות in Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash III, 161–163.
- 5 Hekalot or Hekalot V מסכת היכלות in Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 40–47.
- 6 Hekalot or Hekalot VI ספר היכלות ונקרא גם כן in Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash V, 170–190.
- Hemdat ha-Hemdah חמדת החמדה ed. Wertheimer, גנזי ירושלים III. 13b–15a, Jerusalem 1902.
- Hemdah Genuzah ספר חמדה גנוזה והוא תשובות הגאונים, Jerusalem 1863.
- Hesed Le-Abraham. Azulai, חסד לאברהם ed. Lemberg 1860.
- Hibbur ha-Ma'asiyyot; See 'Aseret ha-Dibrot.
- Hibbur Yafeh. See Rabbenu Nissim.
- Hippolytus, Philosophumena ed. Migne P. Gr. 16. 3.
- Ps.-Hippolytus. Sermo in Sancta Theophania, Migne Pat. Gr. 10.
- ha-Hoker החוקר מכתב עתי מקדש לחכמת ישראל ed. Fuchs, Cracow 1891–94.
- Huppat Eliyyahu כבוד חופה אליהו ed. Horowitz 45–56, Frankfort o. M. 1888.
- Imre No'am ספר אמרי נועם והוא חדושים על התורה ed. Cremona 1560.
- Irenaeus. Adversus Haereses ed. Migne, P. Gr. 7.
- R. Isaac ha-Kohen שחבר יצחק כהן ספר איוב עם פירוש, Constantinople 1545.
- Jerome. Hieronymi Quaestiones Hebraicae in libro Geneseos e recog. P. de Lagarde, Leipsic 1868.
- Ps. Jerome. Quaestiones hebraicae in II Regum et in II Paralip., in Migne, Patrologia Lat. 23. 1329–1402.
- Joel, Chronography. Chronographia ed. Bekker, Bonn 1837.
- Joel, Blicke. Blicke in die Religionsgeschichte . . . I–II, Breslau and Leipsic 1880–1883.
- JQR. NS. The Jewish Quarterly Review, New Series ed. Adler and Schechter, Philadelphia 1910 *seq.*
- Jub. The Book of Jubilees by Charles, London 1902.
- Judah b. Barzilai; See Al-Barceloni.
- Kad ha-Kemah כד הקמח ed. Breit, Lemberg 1880–1892.
- Kaftor wa-Ferah. Estori Parhi, כפתור ופרח, ed. Luncz, Jerusalem 1897–1898.
- Kaftor wa-Ferah. יעקב ב"ר יצחק, לוצאטו ed. Basel 1581.
- Kallah מסכת כלה והביתא ed. Coronel, Vienna 1869, also reprinted in Talmud ed. Romm, Wilna 1895.
- Kaneh or Kanah ספר הקנה והוא ספר הפליאה, ed. Koretz 1784.
- KAT. E. Schrader, Die Keilinschriften und d. alte Testament; third edition by Winkler and Zimmermann, Berlin 1902–1903.
- Kebod Huppah; See Huppat Eliyyahu.
- Kebuzzat Maamarim קבוצת מאמרים מאת אברהם גייגר... על ירי שמואל אברהם פאדנאנסקי, Warsaw, 1910. (with notes by Louis Ginzberg).
- כללי התלמוד לר' בצלאל A. Marx. כללי התלמוד, in Hoffmann-Festschrift 179–218.
- Keli-Yakar. Solomon Ephraim b. Aaron, כלי יקר, Lublin 1602 and frequently reprinted.
- Ketoret ha-Sammim קטרת הסמים... על תרגום יונתן, Amsterdam 1671.
- Kimha Dabishuna חלק ראשון וחלק שני מהמחזור כפי מנהג ק"ק רומא עם פירוש קמחא דאבישונא Bologna s.a. (1546).
- Kinyan-Torah קנין תורה. The so called sixth chapter of Abot found in most editions of this Treatise.
- Kisse we-Ipodromin. כסא ואיפודרומין של שלמה המלך, ed. Jellinek in Bet ha-Midrash V. 34–39.
- Kohleth מדרש קהלת רבה ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and verse.
- Koheith Z. מדרש קהלת זוטא ed. Buber, 83–130, Berlin 1894.
- Konen מדרש כונן ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 23–29.
- Lekah מדרש לקח טוב המכונה פסיקתא Gen. and Exod. ed. Buber, Wilna 1880, Lev. Num. and Deut. ed.



- Padua, Wilna 1884, quoted by chapter and verse or Book and page.
- Leket Midrashim **ספר לקט מדרשים**, ed. Wertheimer, Jerusalem 1904.
- Likkute ha-Pardes **לקוטי הפרדס**, Venice 1519.
- ל"ל **לקוטי ש"ס להארי ז"ל**. The edition used is that of Leghorn 1785.
- Likkutim I–VI **ספר הלקוטים** ed. Grünhut, Jerusalem 1898–1902.
- Maamar 'Aseret Melakim **מאמר עשרת מלכים**, ed. Horowitz, **אגדת אגדות** 54–55, Berlin, 1881.
- Ma'areket **מערכת האלהות**, Mantua 1558.
- Ma'aseh Abraham ed. Horowitz **אברהם אבינו** **אגדת אגדות ע"ה** 43–46, Berlin, 1881.
- 2 Ma'aseh Abraham **מעשה אברהם** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 118–119.
- 3 Ma'aseh Abraham **מעשה אברהם אבינו ע"ה ממה** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash I, 25–34.
- Ma'aseh Daniel. **מעשה דניאל ע"ה**, ed. Jellinek in Bet ha-Midrash V, 117–130.
- Ma'aseh R. Joshua b. Levi **מעשה דר' יהושע בן לוי** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 48–51.
- Ma'aseh ha-Nemalah. **מעשה הנמלה**, ed. Jellinek. Bet ha-Midrash V, 22–26.
- Ma'aseh Nissim. **מעשה ה' ומעשי נסים** Amsterdam 1723.
- ספר **מעשה רוקח... חברו... אליעזר...** ed. Sanok 1912. **יהודה ב"ר קלונימוס ממגנציא**
- Ma'aseh Torah **מדרש מעשה תורה** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 92–109.
- Maasehbuch **מעשה בוך**, Amsterdam 1723, quoted by No. and page.
- Ma'asiyyot or Ma'as. ed. G. Gaster, The Sefer ha-Ma'asiyoth, in "Judith Montefiore" College, Report for the year 1894–1895, Cambridge, 1896.
- Ma'ayan Hokmah **מעין חכמה** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash I, 58–61.
- Magen-Abot. Duran, **מגן אבות**, Leghorn 1762.
- Maggid. R. Joseph Caro, **מגיד משרים**, Amsterdam 1708.
- Malala, John. Chronographia ed. Dindorf, Bonn 1831.
- Manzur. Notes on...commentary... by Aboo Manzur al-Dhamari.... by A. Kohut. New York s. a. (1894).
- Masnut; See Ma'ayan Gannim.
- Masseket Gan 'Eden **מסכת גן עדן** **דשמואל ברייתא** ed. Frankfort o. M. 1863. Comp. also Seder Gan Eden.
- Masseket Kelim **מסכת כלים** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 88–91
- Mattenot Kehunah. R. Issachar Baer b. Naphtali **מתנות כהונה** on Midrash Rabbah in ed. Wilna, 1887.
- Ma'ayan Gannim. Masnut, **על ספר איוב**, ed. Buber, Berlin 1889.
- Mekilta **ספר מכילתא דרבי ישמעאל** ed. Friedmann, Vienna 1870, quoted by Massekta and folio.
- Mekilta D. **מכילתא לדברים...מאת ש' ז' שעכטער**, reprinted from Lewy-Festschrift, Breslau 1911.
- Mekiita RS **מכילתא דרבי שמעון בן יוחאי** ed. Hoffmann, Frankfurt o. M. 1905, quoted by page.
- Meleket ha-Mishkan. **מאיר...מלכת המשכן**, ed. Jellinek, Vienna 1908.
- Melchizedek. Fragment in Charles, 2 Enoch 85–93.
- Menot ha-Levi **ספר מנות הלוי...שחבר...שלמה הלוי** ed. Venice 1585.
- Meshalim Shel Shelomoh. **משלים של שלמה המלך**, ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash IV, 145; 152.
- MHG I and II **מדרש חגדול...ספר בראשית** ed. Schechter, Cambridge 1902; **מדרש חגדול...ספר שמות** ed. Hoffmann, Berlin 1913–1921.
- Midrash Abraham **מדרש אברהם אבינו** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash V. 40–41.
- Midrash R. Akiba **מדרש ר' עקיבא בן יוסף** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash V, 31–33; ed. Wertheimer, Leket Midrashim 18a–23b.
- Midrash Esther **מדרש מגלת אסתר** ed. Horowitz in Aguddat Aggadot 56–75.
- Midrash le-Hanukkah **מדרש לחנכה** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash I, 132–136.
- Midrash Jonah **מדרש יונה** ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash I. 96–105.
- Midrash ha-Ne'elam; See Zohar Hadash.
- Midrash Shir **מדרש שיר השירים** ed. Grünhut, Jerusalem 1897.
- Midrash Temurah **מדרש תמורה**, ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash I, 106–114.
- Milhamot Melek ha-Mashiah, ed. Jellinek in **מלחמות** **מלך המשיח** Bet ha-Midrash VI, 117–120.
- Minhat Yehudah, see Da'at.
- Mishle **מדרש משלי** ed. Buber, Wilna 1893, quoted by chapter and page.
- Monatsschrift. Monatsschrift für Geschichte und Wissenschaft des Judenthums, Dresden (later Breslau) 1852 seq.
- Moses bar Cepha. De Paradiso ed. And. Masius, Antwerp 1569.



- Mota Muse. Faitlovitch, Mota Muse, Paris 1906.
- Nahmanides. *Derasha Tora* ה' תמימה שדרש תורת, ed. Jellinek, Leipsic 1853.
- Neweh Shalom. Taussig, *נוה שלום*, Munich 1872.
- Nispahim. Friedmann, *נספחים לסדר אליהו זוטא*, Vienna 1904.
- Nur al-Zulm, *Light of Shade and Lamp of Wisdom*, by Nathanel Ibn Yeshaya, ed. Kohut, New York 1894.
- Nistarot R. Simon; See Pirke Mashiah.
- Or ha-Hayyim *אור החיים... ר' חיים בר' בצלאל*, Mezirow 1801.
- Or Zaru'a *אור זרוע חברו... רבינו יצחק ב"ר משה* Vols. I–II, Zhitomir 1862; vol. III–IV, Jerusalem 1887–1890, quoted by folio and No.
- Ha-Orah *יצחק ספר האורה... לרבינו שלמה בר' Buber*, Lemberg 1905.
- Orehot Hayyim *ספר ארחות חיים אשר חבר... אהרן*, Florence 1750.
- Orient. Ltz. *Orientalistische Literatur-Zeitung* ed. Peiser, Königsberg 1898 *seq.*
- Otot ha-Mashiah *אותות המשיח* ed. Jellinek. Bet ha-Midrash II, 58–63.
- Ozar Midrashim *אוצר מדרשים כתבי יד* I–II ed. Wertheimer, Jerusalem 1913–1914.
- Pa'aneah *פענח רזא והוא פירוש יפה על חמשה חומשי* Pa'aneah *תורה... חיברו... רבינו יצחק ב"ר יהודה*, Prague 1607
- Panim Aherim *ספרי מדרש פנים אחרים* ed. Buber *ספרי* 45–82, Wilna 1886.
- Pardes *ספר הפרדס... להגאון רש"י דלה"ה* Constanti-nople 1802.
- Perek Gan 'Eden; Comp. Note 90 on p. 31.
- Pesikta Hadta *פסיקתא חדתא* ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash VI, 36–70.
- Petahiah R., Itinerary of. See Pethahiah, R. of Ratis-bon.
- Pethahiah, R. of Ratisbon. *פתחיה מרעגשפורג*, ed. Grünhut, Jerusalem (Frankfort o. M.) 1905.
- Petirat Aharon. *מדרש פטירת אהרן*, ed. Jellinek in Bet ha-Midrash I, 91–95.
- Petirat Mosheh or 1 Petirat Mosheh. *מדרש פטירת משה רבינו ע"ה*, ed. Jellinek in Bet ha-Midrash I, 115–129.
- 2 Petirat Mosheh. *מדרש פטירת משה רבינו ע"ה*, ed. Jellinek in Bet ha-Midrash VI, 74–78.
- 3 Petirat Mosheh. *דרש לפטירת משה רבינו*, ed. Gaulmyn in *דברי הימים של משה*, ed. Paris 1629, f. 34–59.
- Ps.-Philo. Philonis Judaei Alexandrini Libri Antiqui-tatum, Basel 1527; sometimes the reference is added to James, the Biblical Antiquities of Philo, London and New York 1917.
- Philosophumena; see Hippolytus.
- Pirke Mashiah *ספר אליהו ופרקי משיח ונסתרות ר' שמעון בן יוחאי* ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash III, 65–82.
- Pirke R. Yoshiyyahu. *פרקי ר' יאשיהו*, ed. Jellinek in Bet ha-Midrash VI, 112–116.
- Pirke RHK; See PRK.
- PK *פסיקתא... מיתסת לרב כהנא*, ed. Buber, Lyck 1860, quoted by Piska and folio.
- Poznanski, Einleitung or Mebo *פירוש על יחזקאל ותרי עשר לרבי אליעזר מבלגנצי... וספח לו מבוא על חכמי צרפת מפרשי המקרא* Warsaw 1913–1914.
- PR *מדרש פסיקתא רבתי* ed. Friedmann, Vienna 1880, quoted by Pesikta and folio.
- PRE *פרקי רבי אליעזר*, Amsterdam 1709 or Warsaw 1852.
- PRK *פרקי רבינו הקדוש* ed. Grünhut, Likkutim III, or *פרקא דרבינו הקדוש* ed. Schönblum *שלושה ספרים נפתחים*, Lemberg, 1877.
- Pugio Fidei. *Pugio Fidei Raymundi Martini . . . . Adversus Mauros et Judaeos*, Leipsic 1667.
- Rabbinovicz; See Variae Lectiones.
- ספר ראבי"ה... *חברו רבינו אליעזר ברבי ראבי"ה יואל*, ed. Aptowitz, Berlin 1913.
- Rabbenu Nissim. *ספר מעשיות והוא חבור יפה מהישועה*, ed. Buber *להחכם רבינו נסים ב"ר יעקב*, Warsaw 1881.
- RAsh; See R. Asher.
- Raziel *ספר רזיאל המלאך*, ed. Wilna 1881, quoted by caption and page.
- REBN *ראה זה ספר... הנקרא אב"ן העזר שחיבר... אליעזר* Prague 1610, quoted by folio and No.; ed. Raschkes. Jerusalem 1913 (Vol. I) and 1915 (vol. II).
- REJ. *Revue des Études Juives*, Paris 1880 *seq.*
- Reshit Hokmah. *ראשית חכמה אשר חבר... אליהו...* Josefow 1868, quoted by chapter and folio.
- Responsen der Geonim *וכרון לראשונים וגם לאחרונים* ..., ed. Berlin 1887.
- RITBA *ספר חדושי הריטב"א*, Amsterdam 1729.
- RSBM. *פירוש התורה אשר כתב רשב"ם*, ed. Rosin, Breslau 1881.
- Ruth R. *מדרש רות רבה*, ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and verse.



Ibn Sabba' פירוש על התורה שחיבר... רבי אברהם סב"ע Venice 1523, quoted by Parasha and folio.

Ps. Sa'adya פירוש על דברי הימים, ed. R. Kirchheim, Frankfurt o. M. 1874.

Sa'arat Eliyyahu. אליהו זצוק"ל... אברהם מוילנא... בתוכם ע"י בנו... אברהם Seder R. Amram עם סדר Seder Gan 'Eden עדן גן ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 52–53.

Seder Rabba di Bereshit דבראשית דמרכבה סדר רבה דר' ישמעאל כהן גדול ed. Wertheimer, Batte Midrashot I, 1–31.

Seder Ruhot סדר רוחות ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash V, 176–180.

Sefer Eliyyahu. See Pirke Mashiah.

Sefer ha-Hayyim ספר החיים... ר' חיים בר' בצלאל Cracow 1593.

Sefer Hanok ספר חנוך ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash II, 114–117.

Sefer Noah ספר נח ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash III, 155–160.

Sefer ha-Yashar ספר הישר לרבנו תם ed. Rosenthal, Berlin 1898.

Sekel or Sekel Tob ספר טוב על ספר בראשית ed. Buber, Berlin 1900–1901.

Sha'are Gan 'Eden גן ערך וגיהנם ed. Jellinek, Bet ha-Midrash V, 42–51.

Sha'are Simhah. R. Isaac b. Judah ibn Gayyat, שער, Fürth 1862.

Sha'are Yerushalaim ספר משה ב'ר' מנחם ירושלים... לר' משה ב'ר' מנחם מענדיל רישר Warsaw 1865.

Sha'are Zedek ספר שער צדק... תשובות הגאונים Saloni 1792.

Shalshet shel Ketav לשלשלת הקבלה לחכם... גדליהו יחייא Venice 1587.

Shem Tob b. Shem Tob שם טוב הר' שם טוב Venice 1547.

Shemuel מדרש שמואל ed. Buber, Lemberg 1893, quoted by chapter and page.

Shibbole ha-Leket שבלי הלקט... חבור רבינו צדקיה ב'ר' אברהם הרופא ed. Buber, Wilna 1886, quoted by paragraph and page.

Shir מדרש שיר השירים רבה ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and verse.

Shitah. See Shitah Hadashah.

Shitah Hadashah in שיטה חדשה לברכת יעקב בראשית רבה, Wilna 1887 pp. 376–377.

ShR מדרש שמות רבה ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and paragraph.

Shu'aib. Joshua ibn Shu'aib דרשות על התורה, Constantinople 1523, quoted by Parasha and folio.

Sibyll. The Sibylline Oracles, ed. Geffken, Leipsic 1902.

Sifra ספרא דבי רב הוא ספר תורת כהנים ed. Weiss, Vienna 1862, quoted by chapter and verse.

Sifre D. and N. ספרי דבי רב ed. Friedmann Vienna 1864, quoted by paragraph (D = Deuteronomy, N = Numbers) and sometimes the page is added.

Sifre Z. Der Sifre Sutta . . . von Dr. S. Horowitz, Breslau 1910.

Sifte Kohen ספר שפתי כהן... הברו... מרדכי הכהן Wansbeck 1690.

Sikli, Talmud Torah. Poznanski, על דבר הילקוט תלמוד תורה לר' יעקב בר' חננאל סקילי (= Hazofeh III, 1–22) and in Festschrift-Maybaum, Leipsic 1915, ראשיתו של הילקוט תלמוד תורה לר' יעקב בר' חננאל סקילי.

SMG. ספר מצות גדול... רבינו משה ב'ר' יעקב מקוצי, quoted by Commandment.

Solomon ben ha-Yatom. פירוש מסכת משקין לר' שלמה בן היתום... על ירי צבי פרץ חיות Berlin 1909.

Spicilegium Syriacum. Spicilegium Syriacum, ed. by W. Cureton, London 1855.

Syncellus. Chronographia ed. Dindorf, Bonn 1829.

Tadshe מדרש חדשא או ברייתא דר' פנחס בן יאיר ed., Epstein in מקדמוניות היהודים, Vienna 1887 pp. I–XLVI.

Talpiot ספר מדרש תלפיות אשר כוננו מעשי ידי... אליהו הכהן, Lemberg 1870.

Tan. מדרש תנחומא... עם פירוש ענף יוסף ועץ יוסף... לה"ר חנוך זונדיל ב'ר' יוסף Parasha and paragraph.

Tan. B. מדרש תנחומא הקדום והישן ed. Buber, Wilna 1885, quoted by Book and page.

Tan., Introduction. Buber, מבוא גדול המפיץ אור על מדרש תנחומא, Wilna 1885.

Targum Jerushalmi (1) Pseudo-Jonathan ed. Ginsburger, Berlin 1903.

Targum Yerushalmi (2) Das Fragmenten-targum ed. Ginsburger, Berlin 1899.

Tefillat R. Simeon. תפלת ר' שמעון בן יוחאי ed. Jellinek in Bet ha-Midrash IV, 117–126.

Tehillim מדרש תהלים המכונה שחר טוב ed. Buber, Wilna 1891, quoted by chapter and page.



Ps.-Tertullian—

- 1) De Jona et Ninive.
- 2) Sodoma.
- 3) Genesis.
- 5) De Execrandis Gentilium Diis.
- 6) Adversus Marcionitas or Adv. Marcionem.
- 7) Libellus Adversus Omnes Haereses.

Testament of Job. Greek text in James, *Apocrypha Anecdota* pp. 104–137; English translation by Kohler in *Kohut Memorial Volume* pp. 264–338.

Theodor מדרש בראשית רבא... על פי כתבי יד... עם Theodor מראה מקומות... ופירוש... מאתי יהודה טהעאדאר Berlin 1912–1916.

Theodoretus. *Quaestiones in Genes.* ed. Migne, P. Gr. 80.

Theophilus or Theophil. Theophilus of Antiochia, *πρὸς Ἀυτολόκον* ed. Otto in *Corpus Apol.* 8.

Tola'at Ya'akob. Gabbai, תולעת יעקב ed. Constantinople 1560.

Toledot Yizhak. See Caro.

Tosafot. See Da'at.

Tosefta תוספתא על פי כתבי יד ערפורט ווינן ed. Zuckerman, Pasewalk 1881.

Tosefta Targum. Additions to the Targum on the Prophets found in ed. Leiria 1494 and in Lagarde, *Prophetæ Chaldaice*, Leipsic, 1872.

TShBZ ספר תשב"ץ מן רבינו שמשון בר צדוק ed. Warsaw, 1875.

Variae Lectiones. Rabinovicz, *Variae Lectiones in Mischnam et in Talmud Babylonicum*, Munich 1867–1897.

Wa-Yekullu מדרש ויכלו ed. Grünhut in *Likkutim* II, 16b–19b.

Wa-Yosha' מדרש ויושע ed. Jellinek, *Bet ha-Midrash* I, 35–57.

Wa-Yissa'u מדרש ויסעו ed. Jellinek. *Bat ha-Midrash* III, 1–5.

We-Hishir or Wehizhir. ... ספר והזחיר לסדר שמות... ישראל מאיר פריימאן Leipsic 1873.

WR מדרש ויקרא רבה ed. Wilna 1887, quoted by chapter and paragraph.

Yad Yosef. Joseph b. Hayyim Zarfaty יד יוסף דרשות Venice 1616.

Yalkut David פוינזער דור... מאת... דור... ילקוט דור, Warsaw 1879.

Yalkut Reubeni ספר ילקוט ראובני על התורה Amsterdam 1700, quoted by chapter and verse, sometimes the folio is also given.

Yashar ספר הישר Venice 1624, quoted by Parashah and folio.

Yelammedenu מדרש ילמדנו קונדריס אחרון ed. Jellinek, *Bet ha-Midrash* VI, 79–90, quoted by No.

ZATW. *Zeitschrift für die alttestamentliche Wissenschaft*, Giessen 1881 *seq.*

Zawaat Naphtali צוואת נפתלי בן יעקב לבניו ed. Wertheimer in his edition of *פירקי היכלות*, Jerusalem 1890.

ZDMG. *Zeitschrift der deutschen morgenländischen Gesellschaft*. Leipsic, 1847 *seq.*

Zerubbabel or Zerubabel ספר זרובבל ed. Jellinek, *Bet ha-Midrash* II, 54–57, ed. Wertheimer, *Leket Midrashim*, 9b–13b.

Zohar Hadash ספר זוהר חדש Leghorn 1866, quoted by Parashah and caption, sometimes the folio is added.

Zohar Ruth. See Zohar Hadash.







## SIHON, THE KING OF THE AMORITES

The crushing of those concealed in the caves of the mountain at Arnon was only the beginning of the miracles God wrought for Israel during their conquest of the land. It was at Arnon, too, that Sihon, the king of the Amorites, and his people who, hardly a month after Aaron's death, rushed upon Israel, were completely destroyed by them.<sup>666</sup> This Amorite king, and likewise Og, the king of Bashan, were sons of Ahiah, whose father Shemhazai was one of the fallen angels.<sup>667</sup> In accordance with his celestial origin Sihon was a giant whom none could withstand, for he was of enormous stature, taller than any tower in all the world, his thigh-bone alone measuring eighteen cubits, according to the big cubit of that time.<sup>668</sup> In spite of his huge size he was also fleet of foot, wherefore he was called Sihon, "foal," to indicate the celerity with which he moved, for his true name was Arad.<sup>669</sup>

Moses was sorely afraid of waging war against this giant, but God put Sihon's and Og's guardian angels in chains, and then said to Moses: "Behold, I have begun to deliver up Sihon and his land before thee: begin to possess, that thou mayest inherit his land." For indeed after the angels of Sihon and his people had fallen, Moses had nothing more to fear, for his enemies were thus delivered into his hands.<sup>670</sup> God assured Moses that "He would begin to put the dread of him and the fear of him upon the peoples that are under the whole heaven," by bidding the sun to stand still during his war against Sihon, that all the world might see that God battled for Moses.<sup>671</sup>

Moses now asked if he might before waging war send ambassadors to Sihon to request him to permit Israel to pass through his land. God replied: "How now! I commanded thee, 'Rise

up, contend with him in battle, begin to possess his land!' and thou wantest to send him messengers of peace?" Moses, however, replied: "I desire only to follow Thy example when Thou didst wish to lead Israel out of Egypt, and yet didst send me to Pharaoh with the message to let Israel, Thy people, pass out, even though Thou couldst have consumed all of Egypt with one flash of lightning. When Thou didst reveal the Torah, too, Thou didst offer it to the heathen nations for acceptance before giving it to Israel." God saw the justice of Moses' words, and commanded him never in the future to declare war upon a city before previously urging the people to surrender in peace.<sup>672</sup>

Moses hereupon sent a missive to Sihon in which he requested him to permit Israel to pass through his land, promising him that he would see to it that the people should go along by the king's highway, so that he need have no cause to fear any deeds of violence upon married women, or seductions of girls.<sup>673</sup> "We shall even," continued Moses, "pay for the water that is otherwise given freely, and likewise<sup>674</sup> buy food-stuffs from thee at good prices."<sup>675</sup> This letter to Sihon contained at its close, notwithstanding, the communication that the Israelites would bring war upon Sihon in case he did not permit them to pass through. Moses' assumption, however, that Sihon should permit Israel to pass through sounded in Sihon's ears like a summons to the keeper of a vineyard to permit one to harvest it. Sihon's answer therefore was as follows: "I and my brother Og receive tribute from all the other Canaanite kings to keep off their enemies from access to the land, and now you ask me to give you free access to Canaan!"

War between Sihon and Moses ensued, and ended in a brilliant victory for Israel.<sup>676</sup> Sihon and his son, who equaled him in heroic strength, found their death in this fray.<sup>677</sup> God had so brought it to pass that Israel had no need of la-



boriously waging war upon one city after another in Sihon's land, He had brought all the hosts of this Amorite king together into Heshbon. When this city therefore and the hosts within it were destroyed, all the rest of Sihon's land lay open before them. Israel's victory was all the more marvellous, because Heshbon was an exceptionally well fortified city, so that, had gnats been its inhabitants, it could not have been captured by mortal means, much less so when manned by the hero Sihon and his heroic warriors.<sup>678</sup> This victory was made possible only by the fact that God visited them with convulsions so terrible that they rolled up and writhed in pain, unable to stand in the battle lines, so that Israel could cut them down while they were half dead from convulsive pains.<sup>679</sup> God also drew masks over their faces, so that they could not see plainly, and taking one another for Israelites, slew their own people.<sup>680</sup>

With the fall of Heshbon Israel came into possession of all the land of Sihon, with the exception of Jazer, and Moses therefore sent spies to that city. The men whom he sent there, Caleb and Phinehas, were not only capable warriors, but also pious men. They said: "Moses once sent spies who brought great misfortune upon all their generation, we will attack this city, trusting in God, and we are sure we shall not perish, because Moses has prayed for our welfare." They thereupon attacked Jazer, conquered it, and when upon the day after Moses had sent them out they returned to him, they informed him that they had conquered Jazer and slain its inhabitants.<sup>681</sup>

666. Seder 'Olam 9; Tan. B. IV, 130; Tan. Hukkat 34; BaR 19.32, which reads: Aaron died in the month of Ab, and the war against Sihon took place in the following month, that is in Elul. Comp. note 669.

667. Niddah 61a. According to an unknown Midrash, quoted by R. Bahya, Hukkat (end), they were the

sons of Shemhazael. Compare with pp. 136 and 144, as well as text on p. 753.

668. Tan. B. V, 3 and 6; DR 1.24; DZ 24–25; Makiri Amos 10–11; Niddah 24b. The above sources do not agree as to the selection of their hero, some expressing their predilection for Sihon and others for Og. Compare with p. 753. Sihon's mother was Ham's wife, who committed adultery with Ahiah before and after the deluge, and bore him two sons, Og, who was born before the deluge (see text on p. 144), and Sihon, born after it; *Hadar* and *Da'at* Hukkat (end). Concerning the enormous stature of the giants, see text on pp. 119 and 137, as well as text on p. 707.

669. Rosh ha-Shanah 6a, where it is stated that Sihon, Arad, and Kenaani are three names of the same person; comp. also Baba Batra 78b and Midrash Aggadah Num. 21.23. In the last-mentioned source כנעני is said to be the name of a person. This is in agreement with the Septuagint, Num. 21.1 and Philo, *Moses*, 1.45. Comp. note 646. The victory over Arad took place in the month of Ab, shortly after the death of Aaron; Aggadat Esther 29; compare also with p. 745, as well as notes 666 and 682, dealing with the victory over Sihon.

670. DR 1.22–23; DZ 26; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 764. Compare with pp. 557 and 712.

671. Ta'anit 20a; 'Abodah Zarah 25a; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 2.25. Comp. note 245.

672. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 764; Tan. B. III, 16, and V, 6–7; Tan. Zaw 3; DR 5.13 (which states that Moses sent messengers without consulting God; comp. notes 191, 239); BaR 19.33. Compare with pp. 593 and 792.

673. Targum Yerushalmi Num. 21.22. Concerning the explanation that "field and vineyard" are metaphors for woman, see PRE 21; BR 63.12 and Theodor's note 4 on BR 22.7; Sanhedrin 74b (שדה=קרקע); Zohar I, 36b. Comp. also Ps. 128.3. See note 622.

674. Tan. B. IV, 129; Tan. Hukkat 23; BaR 19.29; DZ 26. The negotiations took place between the people of Israel and Sihon, as it was beneath Moses' dignity to deal directly with this small potentate, but to the king of Edom the Hebrew ambassadors were sent as the representatives of Moses, Lekah, Num. 20.21, which offers this as an explanation of the difference in the wording between this verse and Num. 20.14. The three Midrashim quoted at the beginning of this note do not share this view, and maintain that the "leader of a generation is equal to the entire generation." Comp. Tosefta 'Abodah Zarah I, 4, and hence Scripture considers the undertakings of Moses as those of the people, and speaks of them promiscuously.

675. 'Abodah Zarah 68a; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 2.28. In view of the fact that Jews are forbidden to eat food prepared by Gentiles, all that they wanted was food stuffs.

676. Tan. B. IV, 129; Tan. Hukkat 230; BaR 19.29; DZ 26.



677. Tan. B. IV, 130 (comp. Buber, *ad loc.*); Tan. Hukkat 25; BaR 19.32; DZ 27; Yelammedenu (?) in *Likkutim*, V, 96b.

678. Tan. B. IV, 129; Tan. Hukkat 230; BaR 19.29; DZ 26–27; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 810; Sifre D., 3; Midrash Tannaim 4; compare with p. 774.

679. DZ 27.

680. Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s. v. פרמא 3; comp. *Likkutim*, V, 96b. See also vol. IV, p. 26.

681. DZ 27; Tan. B. IV, 130; Tan. Hukkat 24; BaR 19.31. Philo, *Moses*, 1.47, likewise dwells upon the complete annihilation of Sihon's army in the first encounter with Israel. That Caleb and Phinehas were the spies is found only in Targum Yerushalmi Num. 21.22. Compare with p. 843.

## THE GIANT OG

The war with Sihon took place in the month of Elul. In the following month of Tishri they rested on account of the holy days, but immediately after these they set out to battle against Og.<sup>682</sup> This king did not hasten to his brother's aid, although he was only one day's distance from him, for he felt sure Sihon could conquer Israel without his assistance.<sup>683</sup> He erred in this, however, as in some other matters. In the war of the four kings against the five, it was Og who had brought to Abraham news of his nephew Lot's bondage, assuming that Abraham would surely hasten to his kinsman's aid, be killed in battle, and thus enable Og to get possession of the beautiful Sarah. God, however, leaves no man unrewarded or unpunished. To reward him for hastening with quick steps to advise Abraham of Lot's captivity, God granted him life for five hundred years, but he was eventually killed because it was only a wicked motive that had induced him to perform this service for Abraham. He did not, as he had hoped, gain Sarah, but was slain by her descendant Moses.<sup>684</sup>

The battle against Og took place in Edrei, the outskirts of which Israel reached toward

nightfall. On the following morning, however, barely at gray dawn, Moses arose and prepared to attack the city, but looking toward the city wall, he cried in amazement, "Behold, in the night they have built up a new wall about the city!" Moses did not see clearly in the misty morning, for there was no wall, but only the giant Og who sat upon the wall with his feet touching the ground below.<sup>685</sup> Considering Og's enormous stature, Moses' mistake was pardonable, for as a grave-digger of later times related, Og's thigh-bone alone measured more than three parasangs. "Once," so records Abba Saul, "I hunted a stag which fled into the thigh-bone of a dead man. I pursued it and ran along three parasangs of the thigh-bone, yet had not reached its end." This thigh-bone, as was later established, was Og's.<sup>686</sup>

This giant never in all his days made use of a wooden chair or bed, as these would have broken down beneath his weight, but sat upon iron chairs and lay upon iron beds. He was not only of gigantic build and strength, but of a breadth also that was completely out of proportion even with his height, for his breadth was one half his height, whereas the normal proportion of breadth to height is as one to three.<sup>687</sup> In his youth Og had been a slave to Abraham, who had received him as a gift from Nimrod, for Og is none other than Eliezer, Abraham's steward. One day, when Abraham rebuked him and shouted at him, Eliezer was so frightened that one of his teeth fell out, and Abraham fashioned out of it a bed in which he always slept. Og daily devoured a thousand oxen or an equal number of other animals, and drank correspondingly, requiring daily not less than a thousand measures of liquids.<sup>688</sup> He remained in Abraham's service until Isaac's marriage, when Abraham gave him his freedom as a reward for having undertaken the labor of wooing Rebekah for his son, and of fetching her to his house. God also rewarded him in this



world, that this wicked wight might not lay claim to a reward in the world to come. He therefore made a king of him.<sup>689</sup> During his reign he founded sixty cities, that he surrounded with high walls, the lowest of which was not less than sixty miles in height.<sup>690</sup>

Moses now feared to wage war against Og, not only on account of his giant strength and huge size, which Moses had now witnessed with his own eyes, but he also thought: "I am only one hundred and twenty years old, whereas he is more than five hundred. Surely he could never have attained so great an age, had he not performed meritorious deeds."<sup>691</sup> Moses also remembered that Og was the only giant that had escaped the hand of Amraphel, and he perceived in this a token of God's special favor toward Og.<sup>692</sup> Moses feared, moreover, that Israel in the recent war against Sihon might have committed sins, so that God would not now stand by them. "The pious are always afraid of the consequences of sin, and therefore do not rely upon the assurances God has made to them;" hence Moses now feared to advance upon Og even though God had promised him aid against his enemies.<sup>693</sup> God, however, said to him: "What matters to thee Og's gigantic stature? He is as a green leaf in thy hand,<sup>694</sup> his destruction has been decreed since the moment when he looked with evil eyes upon Jacob and his family when they arrived in Egypt." For even then God had said to him: "O thou wicked knave, why dost thou look upon them with an evil eye? Verily, thine eye shall burst, for thou shalt fall into their hands."<sup>695</sup>

Og met his death in the following fashion. When he discovered that Israel's camp was three parasangs in circumference, he said: "I shall now tear up a mountain of three parasangs, and cast it upon Israel's camp, and crush them." He did as he had planned, pulled up a mountain of three parasangs, laid it upon his head, and came marching in the direction of the Israelite camp,

to hurl it upon them. But what did God do? He caused ants to perforate the mountain, so that it slipped from Og's head down upon his neck, and when he attempted to shake it off, his teeth pushed out and extended to left and right, and did not let the mountain pass, so that he now stood there with the mountain, unable to throw it from him. When Moses saw this, he took an axe twelve cubits long, leaped ten cubits into the air, and dealt a blow to Og's ankle, which caused the giant's death.<sup>696</sup>

This was the end of the last of the giants, who was not only last in time, but also in significance, for despite his height and strength, he was the most insignificant of the giants who perished in the flood.<sup>697</sup>

With Og's death all his lands fell to the lot of the Israelites without another sword's stroke, for God had so ordained it that all of Og's warriors were with him at his encounter with Israel, and after Israel had conquered these, only women and children remained in all the land. Had Israel been obliged to advance upon every city individually, they would never have finished, on account of the number of the cities and the strength of the hosts of the Amorites.<sup>698</sup>

Not alone Sihon and Og, the kings of the Amorites, were such giants and heroes, but all the Amorites. When Hadrian conquered Jerusalem, he boasted of his victory, whereupon Rabban Johanan, the son of Zakkai, said to him: "Boast not of thy victory over Jerusalem, for, had not God conquered it for thee, thou shouldst never have gained it." He thereupon led Hadrian to a cave where he showed him the corpses of the Amorites, each of which was eighteen cubits, and said: "When we were worthy of victory, these fell into our hands, but now, on account of our sins, dost thou rule over us."<sup>699</sup>

The victory over Sihon and his hosts was as great as that over Pharaoh and his hosts, and so was the victory over Og and his hosts. Each of



these victories was as important as that over the thirty-one kings that Joshua later captured, and it would well have behooved Israel to sing songs of praise to their Lord as after Pharaoh's destruction. David later made good this omission, for he intoned a song of praise in gratitude for the victory God had lent to Israel over Sihon and Og.<sup>700</sup>

Without direct assistance from God these victories would not have been possible, but He sent hornets upon them, and their destruction was irrevocable. Two hornets pursued every Amorite; one bit one eye, the second the other eye, and the poison of these little creatures consumed those bitten by them.<sup>701</sup> These hornets remained on the east side of the Jordan, and did not pursue Israel's march to the regions west of the Jordan, nevertheless they wrought great havoc among the Canaanites of the region west of the Jordan. The hornets stood on the eastern bank of the Jordan, and spat their venom across to the opposite bank, so that the Canaanites that were hit became blind and were disarmed.<sup>702</sup>

When God promised Moses to send an angel to Israel, he declined the offer with the words: "If Thy presence go not with me, carry us not up hence," whereupon God replied: "Thou complainest because I desire to send only an angel to assist thee to conquer the land. As truly as thou livest, I shall now send thee not even an angel, but a hornet to destroy the enemies of Israel. It is, however, for thy sake alone that I deliver the enemy into Israel's hands, and not as if Israel deserved it through their own good deeds."<sup>703</sup>

Og's bed, fashioned out of ivory, that measured nine arms' length, taking the giant's arm as a standard,<sup>704</sup> Og had preserved in the Ammonite city Rabbah, for he knew that Israel would penetrate neither to the land of the Ammonites nor of the Moabites, because God had prohibited them from coming too close to Lot's descendants.<sup>705</sup> He likewise forbade them to wage war with the Edomites; in this way Esau, a

son kind to his father Isaac, was rewarded by not having his descendants, the Edomites, molested by Israel. God said to Israel: "In this world ye shall have no sway over the mountain Seir, Edom's realm, but in the future world, when ye shall be released, then shall ye obtain possession of it. Until then, however, beware of the sons of Esau, even when they fear ye, much more so when ye shall dwell scattered among them."<sup>706</sup>

---

682. Tan. B. IV, 130; Tan. Hukkat 24; BaR 19.32; Seder 'Olam 9; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 5.2. Comp. note 666, and text on p. 1151.

683. Shir 4.8; Midrash Tannaim 4; for the contrary view, see Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 5.3.

684. DR 1.25; BR 42.8; Niddah 61a; Tan. B. IV, 130; Tan Hukkat 25; BaR 19.32; compare with pp. 144 and 271 as well as text on p. 751. The Haggadah assumes that Og was a contemporary of Abraham (compare with p. 144), and this accounts for the statement that he was five hundred years old at the time of his death, which look place in the last year of Israel's wandering through the wilderness, or two years prior to this; comp. Seder 'Olam 9, and Ratner note 13. Abraham was born 1948 A. M., and the forty years of the wandering through the wilderness ended in the year 2488, hence Og was by forty years the junior of Abraham. According to another view, however, Og was born before the deluge (comp. note 667), so that he lived more than eight hundred years.

685. DR 1.24; DZ 25; Makiri on Ps. 136, 260 (the text is corrupt, and should be emended in accordance with DZ). Comp. note 668. Concerning Edrei, see *Kafzor wa-Ferah*, ed. Lunz, Index, s. v.

686. Niddah 24b; Tan. B. V, 6; DZ 27. Comp. note 668.

687. DZ 27 (the giant Goliath was very big and tall but his breadth was proportionate to his height); Targum Yeru-shalmi Deut. 3.11; comp. note 704. Maimonides, *Guide*, II, 47, strongly repudiates this view of Og's monstrosity, but does not mention the fact that Targum and Midrash are the authorities for this opinion. Comp. also Onkelos Deut., *loc. cit.*

688. Soferim 21, where it is also stated that Abraham received him as a present from Nimrod. Compare with pp. 119 and 177; Index, s. v. "Eliezer, the Slave of Abraham", and the following note.

689. PRE 16, where it is also stated that he was the slave (according to another reading, the son) of Nimrod, from whom Abraham received him as a present; comp. the



preceding note. The version of this legend, as given in Sofrim 21, presupposes that Abraham manumitted his slave when he knocked his tooth out, in accordance with the law as recorded in Exod. 21.26.

690. Sofrim 21.

691. Tan. B. IV, 130; Tan. Hukkat 25; BaR 19.32; Zohar III, 181a. Moses was afraid of Og who had been circumcised by Abraham, whose slave he was. Comp. notes 688, 689.

692. Tan. B. IV, 130; Tan. Hukkat 25; BaR 19.32; DZ 27; comp. Siddah 61a and the remark of Tosafot, *ad loc.*

693. BaR 19.32; Tan. B. IV, 130; Tan. Hukkat 25. Compare with p. 296 (bottom). The battle against Og took place on a Sabbath, and Moses feared lest the desecration of the Sabbath (though forced by necessity) should result in misfortune for Israel; see David Luria on BR 70.16.

694. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 810.

695. Berakot 54b (Moses was ten cubits high, and by jumping ten cubits he reached Og's ankles); Targum Yerushalmi Num. 21.35, where תִּלְתָּהּ is to be read instead of שִׁיתָהּ. Another version of this legend is to be found in DR 1.24 and Midrash Aggada, Num., *loc. cit.* This version reads: Og tore up a mountain, and lifted it up to cast it upon the camp of Israel, but Moses wrote the Name upon a potsherd, and threw it at the mountain which was about to fall upon Israel. The result was that the mountain remained suspended in the air. Parhon, s. v. דּוּכִיפֶת, quotes a Midrash to the effect that it was the hoopoe which perforated the mountain, whereas the Midrash Aggada ascribes this feat to the raven. The statement in Sekel 178 that Og's teeth were sixty cubits long is taken from Megillah 15b. Comp. also ER 26, 133. The legend given in the text on p. 829, maintains that Moses slew Sihon and Og with his rod.

697. Niddah 61a; Tan. B. IV, 130; Tan. Hukkat 25; BaR 19.32; PRE 23; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 3.11. Compare with p. 144, and text on p. 753. The description of Og as the "last of the giants" in Deut. 3.12 is found by the Haggadah also in Gen. 14.13 (that is how the Haggadah explains הַפְּלִיט) and it refers either to the escape from the deluge, in which all the giants perished, or to his escape from Amraphel's sword.

698. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 810. Compare with pp. 751–752. Yelammedenu, *loc. cit.*, adds that whereas after the victory over Sihon the Israelites had been very anxious to get as much spoil as possible, they were quite indifferent to the spoil after the victory over Og. The riches the Israelites had acquired by the first victory had satisfied their desire for spoil. Comp. *Likkutim*, V, 97a.

699. Tan. B. I, 6. Concerning the giant's measuring eighteen cubits, see text on p. 751. On the Amorites as giants, see *Recognitiones* I, 29. Comp. also Jub. 29.9.

700. Tan. in Makiri on Ps. 136, 257; *Likkutim*, V, 96a; Tan. B.V., 3 and 6 (the victories over Sihon and Og were greater—*i. e.*, more miraculous—than those over Pharaoh); DZ 25; Midrash Tannaim 4.

701. Tan. B. V, 6; DZ 27; BaR 18.22; Sotah 66a; Midrash Aggada Deut. 7.20 (the hornets used to track the Amorites to their hiding-places and kill them there; in this manner they frustrated the sudden attack upon Israel planned by their enemies); Philo, *Quaestiones*, Exod. 2.24. See also Wisdom 12.8–10 which reads: And sentest wasps as forerunners of their host, to destroy them... executing judgment upon them little by little, Thou gavest them a place of repentance. The use of τόπος, literally "place", in the sense of "opportunity," is of frequent occurrence in Jewish-hellenistic literature, and is a Hebraism, being a translation of מקום which has both meanings in mishnaic Hebrew; comp., *e. g.*, Berakot 4.2.

702. Sotah 36a, which also gives the dissenting view that there were two kinds of hornets, one which killed the trans-Jordanic enemies of Israel, and another which destroyed the inhabitants of the Holy Land proper; Tosefta Sota 11.10; Shir 4.5.

703. Tan. B. V, 6; Aggadat Bereshit 8.19. Compare with p. 627, as well as text on p. 844.

704. Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 3.11. Comp. note 687. Josephus *Antiqui.*, IV, 5.3, dwells upon Og's beauty and high descent.

705. Midrash Aggada Deut. 3.11.

706. Tan. B. V, 4–6; DR 1.15–20; Yelammedenu in *Likkutim*, V, 91a–94b; DZ 20–24; Makiri on Ps. 36, 227; 60, 309 (where David is censured for having engaged in war against Edom); 137, 264; on Is. 41, 125, and on Obadiah 18–19. Concerning Esau's filial piety, see Zohar I, 146, and Index, s. v.

## MOSES' SPEECH OF ADMONITION

As Abraham before his death spoke to his son Isaac, he to his son Jacob, and Jacob in turn to his sons, words admonishing them to walk in the ways of the Lord, so Moses also did not depart from this world without previously calling Israel to account for their sins, and admonishing them to observe the commandments of the Lord. Moses' speech of admonition had a greater effect than the revelation of the Decalogue upon Mount Sinai, for whereas Israel,



shortly after they had said on Sinai, "We shall do according as we have heard," transgressed by worshipping the Golden Calf, Moses' words of admonition had left a powerful impression upon them, and he restored them to God and the Torah. God therefore said, "As a reward to thee because thy words of exhortation have brought Israel to follow Me, I shall designate these words as thine, even though thou didst speak them only in execution of My command."

Moses did not, however, make his speech of exhortation to the people until after the victory of Sihon and Og, for Moses thought: "Were I to have called them to account before these victories, they would have answered, 'He is trying to recall to us our sins because he is unable to lead us into the promised land against Sihon and Og, and he is seeking our sins as an excuse.' " But after Moses had proven what he could do, he could safely venture to recall to the people their sins.<sup>707</sup> He now assembled all classes of Israel, the nobles as well as the common people, saying to them: "I will now give you a severe rebuke for your sins, and if any one have something to offer as an excuse, let him now advance it." In this way he shut off the possibility of their saying later on, "Had we heard the words of the son of Amram, we should have answered each word fourfold and fivefold."

Moses now recounted the ten temptations with which they tempted God: how at the Red Sea they had repented having followed Him, and had even turned back three stations on the way to Egypt; how even after the miracle that clove the Red Sea for them, they had so little faith in God as to say, "Just as at this spot we passed unharmed through the Red Sea, so also did the Egyptians in another part of it." At Marah and at Rephidim they tried God on account of the dearth of water, and as they twice rebelled against God on account of water, so also did they on account of manna. They infringed upon the two

laws God had given than in regard to manna, storing it from one day to the next, and going to gather it on the Sabbath, although God had strictly forbidden both. On account of their lust for flesh also they twice transgressed, murmuring for flesh at the same time as they received manna, although manna completely satisfied their needs; and after God had granted their wish and had sent them quails, they remained content for a short time only, and then again demanded quails, until God granted them that wish also. "But the worst of all," Moses told them, "was the worship of the Golden Calf. And not only that, but again in Paran, misled by the spies, ye transgressed in desiring to make an idol, and under its guidance to return to Egypt."

Moses then pointed out to them that it was owing to their sin that they had strayed about in the desert for forty years, for otherwise God would have brought them to Palestine on the same day as He had led them out of Egypt. He not only reproached Israel with the sins they had committed against God, but also with the evil they had worked Moses himself, mentioning how they had thrown their infants into his lap, saying, "What food hast thou for these?"<sup>708</sup> On this occasion it was evident how good and pious a nation was that before Moses, for all the sins he enumerated to them had been committed not by them, but by their fathers, all of whom had in the meantime died, yet they were silent, and made no answer to this severe reprimand their leader gave them.<sup>709</sup> Moses did not, however, merely admonish the people to walk in the ways of the Lord, but he said to Israel: "I am near to death. Whosoever hath learned from me a verse, a chapter, or a law, let him now come to me and learn it anew," whereupon he repeated all the Torah,<sup>710</sup> and that, too, in the seventy languages of the world, that not Israel alone but all the heathen peoples, too, might hear the teachings of God.<sup>711</sup>



707. Midrash Tannaim 1 and 4 (which reads: Before the victory over Sihon, the mind of the people was too distracted to pay proper attention to the words of Moses); Sifre D., 3. Compare with p. 618.

708. Midrash Tannaim 1–3; Sifre D., 1–2; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 1.1. The ten temptations (mentioned in as early a source as Abot 5.4) are enumerated in different ways; comp. ARN 9, 39, and 34, 98–99 (second version 38, 98–99; a view is quoted here according to which there were eleven temptations; comp. Num. 14.22); Tehillim 95, 420–421; Arakin 15a; DZ 13–14. On God's intentions to bring them quickly to Palestine, compare with p. 692 and note 459.

709. DR 1.13. As a reward for their having listened to his reprimand with reverence, they were blessed by Moses; DR 1.9; DZ 18.

710. Sifre D., 4; Midrash Tannaim 4.

711. Lekah, Deut. 1.5. Compare with p. 604; text on p. 843.

## BALAK, KING OF MOAB

“**G**od allows nothing to stay unrewarded, not even a respectable word remains without its reward.” The older of Lot’s two daughters had called her son that was conceived in guilt, Moab, “by the father,” whereas the younger, for the sake of decency, called her son Ammon, “son of my people,” and she was rewarded for her sense of propriety. For when Moses wanted to overrun the descendants of Lot with war, God said to him: “My plans differ from thine. Two doves shall spring from this nation, the Moabite Ruth and the Ammonite Naomi, and for this reason must these two nations be spared.”

The treatment God bade Israel accord to these two nations was not, however, uniform. In regard to Moab, God said, “Vex not Moab, neither contend with them in battle,” which portended that Israel was not to wage war against the Moabites, but that they might rob them or reduce them to servitude. In regard to the sons

of Ammon, on the other hand, God forbade Israel to show these descendants of Lot’s younger daughter even the slightest sign of hostility, or in any way to alarm them, so that Israel did not even show themselves in battle array to the Ammonites.<sup>712</sup>

Israel’s hostile, though not warlike, attitude toward Moab inspired these people and their kings with great fear, so much so that they seemed to be strangers in their own land, fearing as they did that they should have to fare like the Egyptians; for the Israelites had come to Egypt as strangers, but had in time possessed themselves of the land so that the Egyptians had to rent their dwelling-places from them. Their fear was still further increased by their belief that Israel would pay no attention to God’s command to them not to wage war against Lot’s descendants. This assumption of theirs was based on the fact that Israel had taken possession of the kingdoms of Sihon and Og, even though these had originally been part of Ammon’s and Moab’s possessions.<sup>713</sup> Heshbon, Sihon’s capital city, had formerly belonged to Moab; but the Amorites, thanks to Balaam and his father Beer’s support, had taken from Moab these and some other regions. The Amorites had hired these two sorcerers to curse Moab, with the result that the Moabites were miserably defeated in the war against Sihon. “Woe to thee, Moab! Thou art undone, O people of Chemosh!” These and similar utterances were the ominous words that Balaam and his father employed against Moab.<sup>714</sup> Chemosh was a black stone in the form of a woman, that the Moabites worshipped as their god.<sup>715</sup>

As a part of Moab passed into Sihon’s possession so did a part of Ammon fall into Og’s hands, and because Israel had appropriated these lands, the Moabites feared they would filch from them all their land. In great alarm they therefore gathered together in their fastnesses, in which they knew themselves to be safe from Israel’s attacks.<sup>716</sup>



Their fear was in reality quite without foundation, for Israel never dreamed of transgressing God's command by waging war upon Lot's descendants. They might without compunction keep the former provinces of Moab and Ammon because they took them not from these, but from Sihon and Og, who had captured them.<sup>717</sup>

At this time the king of Moab was Balak, who was formerly a vassal of Sihon, and in that capacity was known as Zur. After Sihon's death he was chosen king, though he was not worthy of a rank so high. Favored by fortune, he received royal dignity, a position that his father had never filled.<sup>718</sup> Balak was a fitting name for this king, for he set about destroying the people of Israel, wherefore he was also called the son of Zippor, because he flew as swiftly as a bird to curse Israel.<sup>719</sup> Balak was a great magician, who employed for his sorcery the following instrument. He constructed a bird with its feet, trunk, and head of gold, its mouth of silver, and its wings of bronze, and for a tongue he supplied it with the tongue of the bird Yadu'a. This bird was now placed by a window where the sun shone by day and the moon by night, and there it remained for seven days, throughout which burnt offerings were offered before it, and ceremonies performed. At the end of this week, the bird's tongue would begin to move, and if pricked by a golden needle, would divulge great secrets. It was this bird that had imparted to Balak all his occult lore. One day, however, a flame that suddenly leaped up burned the wings of this bird, which greatly alarmed Balak, for he thought that Israel's proximity had destroyed his instrument of sorcery.<sup>720</sup>

The Moabites now perceiving that Israel conquered their enemies by supernatural means said, "Their leader had been bred in Midian, let us therefore inquire of the Midianites about his characteristics." When the elders of Midian were consulted, they replied, "His strength abides in his mouth." "Then," said the Moabites, "we shall

oppose to him a man whose strength lies in his mouth as well," and they determined to call upon Balaam's support. The union of Moab and Midian establishes the truth of the proverb: "Weasel and Cat had a feast of rejoicing over the flesh of the unfortunate Dog." For there had always been irreconcilable enmity between Moab and Midian, but they united to bring ruin upon Israel, just as Weasel and Cat had united to put an end to their common enemy Dog.<sup>721</sup>

---

712. Baba Kamma 38a–38b (here it is stated that the prohibition "not to vex Moab" remained valid even after the latter had attempted to destroy Israel by means of Balaam's curses); Nazir 23b; Horayyot 10b; BR 51.11; BaR 20.3; Tan. B. IV, 133; Zohar III, 188. Comp. also Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 418, on Is. 40 (the reference to the source is only given in the first edition), which reads: As a reward for Lot's hospitality by giving the angels one night's lodging in his house, the Israelites were forbidden to wage war against his descendants.

713. BaR 20.3. Comp. note 717.

714. Tan. B. IV, 129; Tan. Hukkat 24; BR 20.7. Concerning the view that Balaam caused the defeat of Moab, see text on p. 760. Ps.-Philo, 18.2 maintains, on the other hand, that Balak sent to Balaam, saying: "Behold, I know how that in the reign of my father Zippor, when the Amorites fought against him, thou didst curse them and they were delivered into his hands." On Balaam's father, see note 722.

715. Lekah, Num. 21.29, whence this statement found its way in Sekel and Ziyoni on Num. *loc. cit.* These authorities regard Chemosh as the Moabite Ka'bah.

716. BaR 20.3; Tan. B. IV 133; Tan. Balak 2. These Midrashim also remark that the defeat of Sihon and Og, "the sentinels of Palestine" (see text on p. 751, bottom) was the cause of the great fear of the Moabites.

717. Hullin 69b; Gittin 38a; Tan. B. IV, 129; Tan. Hukkat 24; BaR 19.30. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 6.2, likewise calls attention to the fact that Balak was ignorant of God's command to Israel not to wage war against the Moabites.

718. BaR 20.4; Tan. B. IV, 134; Tan. Balak 4. On Balaam's father, see text on p. 779 and note 722. According to Targum Yerushalmi Num. 22.4, Moab and Midian formed a confederate state, and the king was alternately a Moabite and a Midianite; hence the predecessor of Balak the Moabite was a Midianite, and not his father. Comp. also Koheleth 2.9. Zohar III, 196b–197a, reads: Balak was the grandson of Jethro, and the only one of the latter's fam-



ily who was not converted to the true religion of Israel (compare with p. 493, and text on p. 589). The Moabites and Midianites therefore elected him king as a reward for his steadfastness to the faith of his people, comp. note 721. The text of Lekah 23.18 is corrupt, and is to be emended in accordance with Kohleleth, *loc. cit.*

719. Lekah, Midrash Aggada, and *Ba'al ha-Turim* on Num. 22.1. In Lekah מַצְפִּיר is the same as מַשְׁכִּים, from the Aramaic צַפְרָא “early morning”, and Balak is said to have started the day with hostile plans against Israel. Compare also with p. 515, which deals with the etymology of the name Zipporah. Philo, *De Confusione Ling.* 15, explains the name Balak as one who is “void of sense”, in accordance with Is. 24.1, where the Septuagint has ἐρημώσσει בֹּלְקָה of Hebrew text.

720. Zohar III, 184b. The use of the bird Yaddua' for magical purposes is referred to in very early sources; comp. the explanation of יַדְעוּנִי (Lev. 19.31) in Sanhedrin 66b. A comparison of Zohar with Maimonides, commentary on Mishnah Sanhedrin 7.4, will prove the dependence of the former on the latter. The Franco-German school of talmudic commentators identify Yaddua' in Sanhedrin. *loc. cit.*, with the “vegetable man”, see Rashi, *ad loc.*, R. Samson of Sens, Kil'ayim 8.5; comp. Ginzberg's full discussion on this point in *Schwars Festschrift* 329–333. Compare also with pp. 33–34, and the notes appertaining to them. Philo, *Moses*, 1.48, describes Balaam as a great master in the art of augury. Did he confuse Balaam with Balak “the son of the bird”? Concerning Balak's magical art, see also Zohar III, 198b, which reads: He sank a magical mixture consisting of herbs and heads of scorpions fifteen hundred cubits deep into the ground. This mixture was subsequently found by David; see text on p. 923. For further details concerning Balak's magic, see text on pp. 771, 774, 775.

721. Tan. B. IV, 134; Tan. Balak 3; BaR 20.4; Sifre N., 157; Sanhedrin 105a; MHG I, 546; Zohar III, 189b–190a. In the last-named source the Midianites are chiefly blamed, and are said to have incited the Moabites against Israel. Compare with p. 420, and text on p. 792. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 6.2, writes: Balak the king of the Moabites, who had from his ancestors a friendship and a league with the Midianites; comp. notes 718 and 842.

## BALAAM, THE HEATHEN PROPHET

The man whom the Moabites and Midianites believed to be Moses' peer was none other than Laban, Israel's archenemy, who in olden days had wanted to root out entirely Ja-

cob and all his family,<sup>722</sup> and who had later on incited Pharaoh and Amalek against the people of Israel to bring about their destruction.<sup>723</sup> Hence, too, the name Balaam, “Devourer of Nations,” for he was determined to devour the nation of Israel.<sup>724</sup> Just at this time Balaam was at the zenith of his power, for his curse had brought upon the Moabites their defeat at the hands of Sihon, and his prophecy that his compatriot Balak should wear the royal crown had just been fulfilled, so that all the kings sent ambassadors to seek advice from him. He had gradually developed from an interpreter of dreams to a sorcerer, and had now attained the still greater dignity of prophet, thus even surpassing his father, who had indeed been a prophet too, but not so notable a one as his son.<sup>725</sup>

God would permit the heathens to have no ground for exculpation, for saying in the future world, “Thou hadst kept us far from Thee.” To them, as well as to Israel, he gave kings, sages, and prophets; but whereas the former showed themselves worthy of their high trust, the latter proved themselves unworthy of it. Both Solomon and Nebuchadnezzar were rulers over all the world: the former built the Temple and composed many hymns and prayers, the latter destroyed the Temple and cursed and blasphemed the Lord, saying, “I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.” Both David and Haman received great treasures from God, but the former employed them to secure a site for God's sanctuary, whereas the latter with his tried to destroy a whole nation. Moses was Israel's prophet, and Balaam was prophet of the heathens: but how great a contrast between these two! Moses exhorted his people to keep from sin, whereas Balaam counselled the nations to give up their moral course of life and to become addicted to lewdness. Balaam was also different from the Israelite prophets in his cruelty. They had such pity for the



nations that misfortune among the heathens caused them suffering and sorrow, whereas Balaam was so cruel that he wanted to destroy an entire nation without any cause.

Balaam's course of life and his actions show convincingly why God withdrew from the heathens the gift of prophecy.<sup>726</sup> For Balaam was the last of the heathen prophets. Shem had been the first whom God had commissioned to communicate His words to the heathens. This was after the flood, when God said to Shem: "Shem, had My Torah existed among the previous ten generations, I suppose I should not have destroyed the world by the flood. Go now, announce to the nations of the earth My revelations, ask them if they will not accept My Torah." Throughout four hundred years did Shem go about as a prophet, but the nations of the earth did not heed him. The prophets that labored after him among the heathens were Job and his four friends, Eliphaz, Zophar, Bildad, and Elihu, as well as Balaam, all of whom were descendants of Nahor, Abraham's brother, from his union with Milcah. In order that the heathens might not say, "Had we had a prophet like Moses, we should have received the Torah," God gave them Balaam as a prophet, who in no way was inferior to Moses either in wisdom or in the gift of prophecy. Moses was indeed the greatest prophet among the Israelites, but Balaam was his peer among the heathens. But although Moses excelled the heathen prophet in that God called him without any previous preparation, whereas the other could obtain Divine revelations only through sacrifices, still Balaam had one advantage over the Israelite prophet. Moses had to pray to God "to shew him His ways," whereas Balaam was the man who could declare of himself that he "knew the knowledge of the Most High." But because, in spite of his high prophetic dignity, Balaam had never done anything good or kind, but through his evil tongue had

almost destroyed all the world, God vowed a vow to His people that He would never exchange them for any other people or nation, and that He would never permit them to dwell in any land other than Palestine.<sup>727</sup>

---

722. Sanhedrin 105a (Beor is taken here as an epithet of Balaam; this explanation is against that of Rashi); Targum Yerushalmi Num. 22.25; BR 57.3 (Balaam is identified here with Kemuel; see Theodor *ad loc.*, *Hadar*, Exod. 1.10, and Num 22.5; *Da'at*, Gen. 22.23, and Exod., *loc. cit.*, Mahzor Vitry 549); Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 766. Compare also with pp. 294, 324; text on pp. 417, 420, 470, 482, 485, 491, 497, 518, 519; text on pp. 766, 772, and 796, as well as text on p. 861. In the sources quoted above three different views can be easily recognized: Balaam is identified with Laban; Balaam is Laban's grandson; Balaam is Laban's nephew. But there is still a fourth view which maintains that Balaam died at the age of thirty-three, and accordingly could not have been a close relative of Laban, and certainly not identical with him, see Sanhedrin 106b. The view held by many modern authors, Jewish as well as Christian, that in Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*, as well as in many other passages of the legendary literature of the Jews, Balaam is used as an *alias* for Jesus (comp. the literature on this point given by Laible, *Jesus in Talmud*, IV, 50, *seq.*, Schorr, *He-Haluz* X, 32–46; Herford, *Christianity in Talmud*, 65 *seq.*) is decidedly wrong; comp. Ginzberg, *Journal Biblical Literature*, 41.121, note 18. On the descent of Balaam, see also Lekah, Num. 22.6, where he is described as belonging to the family of Kemuel.

723. Sotah 11a; Abba Gorion 30, which reads: Balaam incited Amalek to attack the Israelites as soon as they left Egypt, telling him that as a descendant of Abraham he might count upon God's assistance. Compare with pp. 470, *seq.* and the references to vol. II given in the preceding note. It was due to Balaam's magic that the Israelites could not flee from Egypt (comp. Zohar III, 212a, which was excerpted in Yalkut Reubeni on Num. 23.22; see also note 3). Although they finally succeeded, by the help of God, in gaining their liberty, Balaam did not give up hope to bring them back to the house of bondage. The seven weeks between the exodus and the revelation on Mount Sinai Balaam spent with the fallen angels Azza and Azzazel, endeavoring, with the help of these angels, to force Israel back to Egypt; *Emek ha-Melek* 107b–107d This passage also gives a detailed description of Balaam's magic.

724. Sanhedrin 105b (on the text comp. *Aruk*, s. v. **בַּלְעָם**; Midrash Aggada and Targum Yerushalmi on Num. 22.5.



725. Tan. B. IV, 134; Tan. Balak 4; Sanhedrin 105a; Koheleth 2.9; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 22.5 and 24.3. Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 6.2, who writes: These Midianites, knowing that there was one Balaam . . . the greatest of the prophets at that time . . . sent some of their honorable princes to entreat the prophet to come to them, etc. As to Balaam's relation to the Moabites and the Amorites, see notes 714, 718. As long as the Israelites were in Egypt, Balaam was considered the wisest of men, and all nations came to him for advice; but after the exodus (*i. e.* after the revelation of the Torah; see text on p. 611) a Jewish bondwoman possessed more wisdom than Balaam. He therefore hated the Israelites out of envy, 2 ARN 45, 124–125. As to the question whether Balaam was a prophet, or merely an interpreter of dreams, or a magician, see note 784.

726. BaR 20.1; Tan. B. IV, 132 (read ונבדקו instead of ונדבדקו); Tan. Balak 1; Koheleth 6.18. On the "rulers over all the world", see note 82 on vol. I, p. 178. Concerning Balaam as the one who counseled the allurements of Israel to lewdness, see text on pp. 778, *seq.*

727. ER 18, 141–147, and 6, 35; EZ 10–11, 191–192; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 766. This passage maintains that Balaam, Job, and his four companions were descendants of Abraham's brother Nahor. See above, note 722; footnote 3 on p. 451; text on p. 459. Concerning Job as a prophet, see Ecclesiasticus 39.9. Compare, however, with p. 1156, where Balaam is said to have been the only prophet the Gentiles had ever produced. Moses, the greatest prophet of the Jews, and Balaam, the greatest prophet of the Gentiles, are often contrasted with one another in the haggadic literature; see Sifre D., and Midrash Tannaim at the end; Sifre Z., 58–59; comp. also WR 1.13; BaR 14.20; Zohar II, 22a; text on pp. 537 and 541. As to the refusal of the Torah by the Gentiles, see text on p. 593. On the non-Jewish prophets, see also Abodah Zarah 6a; see text on p. 670.

## BALAK'S MESSENGERS TO BALAAM

Balak now sent messengers to Balaam with the following message: "Think not that I ask thy help against Israel exclusively in my own interests, and that thou canst expect from me alone honor and rewards for thy service, but rest assured that all nations will then honor thee, that Canaanites as well as Egyptians will cast themselves at thy feet when thou shalt have de-

stroyed Israel. This people that hath gone out of Egypt hath covered with earth Sihon and Og, the eyes that guarded the whole land, and now they are about to destroy us as well. They are not, indeed, greater heroes than we, nor are their hosts more numerous than ours, but they conquer as soon as they open their lips in prayer, and that we cannot do. Try now to see if I may not gradually become their master, so that I may at least lead a certain per cent of them to destruction, be it only a twenty-fourth part of them."

Balak himself was even a greater magician and soothsayer than Balaam, but he lacked the gift of properly grasping prophetic observations. He knew through his sorcery that he was to be the cause of the death of twenty-four thousand Israelites, but he did not know in what way Israel was to suffer so great a loss, hence he requested Balaam to curse Israel, hoping by this curse to be able to restrain Israel from entering the Holy Land.

Balak's messengers to Balaam consisted of the elders of Moab and Midian. The latter were themselves great magicians, and by their art established the truth, that should Balaam obey Balak's summons, their mission against Israel would be successful, but should he hesitate even for a moment to follow them, nothing was to be expected from him. When they now reached Balaam and he bade them stay over night to await his answer, the elders of Midian instantly returned, for they knew that they had now nothing to expect from him.<sup>728</sup> They said: "Is there such a father as hates his son? God is the father of Israel, He loves them. Shall He now, owing to a curse from Balaam turn His love into hatred?"<sup>729</sup> Indeed, had the matter depended on Balaam's wishes, he would doubtless instantly have acquiesced and followed Balak's summons, for he hated Israel more than Balak, and was much pleased with the commission of the Moabite king. The elders that Balak had sent had



besides in their possession all needful instruments of magic, so that Balaam might have no excuse for not instantly following them, but Balaam had, of course, to bide his time and first find out if God would permit him to go to Balak, hence he bade the Moabite messengers stay over night, because God never appears to heathen prophets save at night. As Balaam expected, God appeared by night and asked Balaam, "Who are these people with thee?"

Balaam was one of the three men whom God put to the test and who miserably failed to pass it. When God appeared to Cain and asked, "Where is Abel thy brother?" he tried to deceive God. He should have replied, "Lord of the world! What is hidden and what is open, both alike are known to Thee. Why then dost Thou inquire after my brother?" But instead of this he replied, "I know not. Am I my brother's keeper?" God therefore said to him: "Thou hast spoken thine own sentence. The voice of thy brother's blood crieth unto Me from the ground, and now cursed art thou." Hezekiah acted like Cain when the messengers from the king of Babylon came to him, and Isaiah the prophet asked him, "What said these men? And from whence came they unto thee?" Hezekiah should have answered, "Thou art a prophet of God, why dost thou ask me?" But instead of giving this answer, he replied haughtily and boastfully, "They are come from a far country unto me, even from Babylon." On account of this haughty answer Isaiah announced to the king this prophecy: "Behold, the days come, that all that is in thine house shall be carried to Babylon; and of thy sons that shall issue from thee, they shall be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon."

The scoundrel Balaam, too, should have made answer to God's question, "What men are these with thee!" by saying, "Lord of the world! Everything lies open before Thee, and nothing is hidden from Thee, why then dost Thou ask

me?" But he, on the other hand, made quite a different answer and started to boast, saying to God: "Although Thou dost not distinguish me, and dost not spread my fame over the world, still the kings seek me: Balak, the king of Moab, hath sent to ask me to curse Israel." Then God said, "Because thou speakest thus, thou shalt not curse the people," and added, "O thou wicked rascal! I said of Israel, He that toucheth them, toucheth the apple of My eye,' and yet thou wishest to touch them and curse them! Therefore shall thine eye be blinded."<sup>730</sup> Thus Balaam became blind of one eye, as he had already been lame of one foot.<sup>731</sup> Balaam now perceiving that God did not wish him to curse Israel said, "If it be so, then I shall bless them." God: "They have no need of thy blessing, for they are blessed." God said to Balaam as one says to a bee: "Neither thy honey nor thy sting."

---

728. Tan. B. IV, 134–135; Tan. Balak 4–5; BaR 20.7–8; Zohar III, 198a and 209b; comp. note 720.

729. Sanhedrin 105a, which was followed by Lekah and Midrash Aggada on Num. 22.8.

730. BaR 20.6 and 9–12; Tan. B. IV, 136–137; Tan. Balak 5–8; 2 ARN 45, 125 (here Adam is counted as the fourth who failed to pass the test to which he was put by God; comp. Gen. 3.9); BR 19.11; Zohar III, 200a; *Battle Midrashot*, IV, 5: (Balaam hated Israel, because he had hoped that God would select him to accomplish the exodus from Egypt and to deliver the Torah; comp. vol. VI, pp. 421–422). In connection with the question put by God to Balaam, the following remark is made by ps.-Philo, 18, 173. Balaam said: "Wherefore, O Lord, dost Thou tempt the race of men? They cannot sustain it; for Thou knowest more than they, all that was in the world before Thou didst found it. And now enlighten Thy servant if it be right that I go with them." Balaam's answer, according to ps.-Philo, is identical with the one he ought to have given according to the Rabbis. Concerning the idea that God never appears to Gentiles save at night, see BR 52.11; Mekilta Bo 1.1 (God made the moon appear during the day to instruct Moses in the regulations of the calendar, as He never spoke to him except by day); WR 1.13; footnote 221 on p. 292. All the Midrashim quoted above, as well as Philo, *Moses*, 1.48, maintain that Balaam was from the very beginning anxious to carry out Balak's invitation and



was ready to curse Israel. Opposed to this view is the statement in Aggadat Bereshit 65, 130, according to which Balaam said to Balak's messengers: "I cannot undertake to do any evil against Israel, with whom the Lord is." Comp. note 766. In ps.-Philo, *loc. cit.*, it is God who reminded Balaam of His love for Abraham and Jacob, whose descendants He chose as His people; "and now, behold, thou thinkest to go with these, and curse them whom I have chosen;" comp. note 744. On Balaam's blindness, comp. Niddah 31a, where it is said that he became afflicted with blindness as punishment for an impure thought. See also Zohar III, 147b.

731. Sotah 10a; Sanhedrin 105a.

## BALAAAM ACCEPTS BALAK'S INVITATION

On the following morning Balaam gave the elders of Moab his answer, saying that he would not follow Balak's call, but not betraying to them the truth, that God hath forbidden him to curse Israel. He said instead, "God said to me, 'Go not with these men, for that would be beneath thy dignity, but await nobler ambassadors.'"<sup>732</sup> 'Balaam's plan was to insult Balak, so that he should send no further messengers to him, and no one might discover that he could accomplish nothing beyond the word of God. His expectations, however, were disappointed. The ambassadors in their turn, not quite painstaking in their representation of the truth, told their king that Balaam considered it beneath his dignity to appear in their escort, making no mention of God, but speaking as if the refusal came simply and exclusively from Balaam.'<sup>733</sup>

Balak thereupon sent more honorable ambassadors to Balaam, until he was at last obliged to admit that he could undertake nothing against God's command. Even then, it is true, he did not admit that his acceptance or his refusal of Balak's invitation depended entirely upon God, but declared that he could, if he wished, do as

he chose, but did not choose to transgress God's prohibition. In his second embassy Balak promised Balaam more for his service than he had offered him the first time. Balaam's answer was as follows: "If Balak would give me his house full of silver and gold, I cannot go beyond the word of the Lord my God." These words characterize the man, who had three bad qualities: a jealous eye, a haughty spirit, and a greedy soul. His jealousy was the reason why he wanted to curse Israel, whom he envied for their good fortune; in his haughtiness, he told the first messengers the falsehood that God would not let him go with them because it would be beneath his dignity; and his avarice was expressed in his answer to the second embassy in which he not only surreptitiously mentioned Balak's gold and silver, but spoke his mind by explaining to them that their master could not adequately compensate him for his service, saying, "If Balak were to hire hosts against Israel, his success would still be doubtful, whereas he should be certain of success if he hired me!"

He did not, however, give even the second embassy a decisive answer, but said to them also, "I cannot go beyond the word of the Lord my God, to do less or more. Now therefore I pray you, tarry ye also here this night, that I may know what the Lord will speak unto me more." These words of his held unconscious prophecies: "I cannot go beyond the word of the Lord," was as much as to say that he could not put the blessings of God to Israel to naught. "Tarry ye also here this night," contained the prophecy that this second embassy would be as much disappointed as the first, for although Balaam accompanied the second messengers, still he had no power to curse Israel, but only to bless them. Finally, the words, "What the Lord will speak unto me more," held a prediction that God would bestow even more benedictions upon the Israelites through him.



“God permits man to go upon the way he chooses to go.” When God appeared to Balaam the first time he said to him, “Thou shalt not go with them;” but when Balaam still did not relinquish his desire to go to Balak, God would not interfere. Hence, at His second appearance, God said to Balaam, “If the men be come to call thee, rise up, go with them; but only the word which I speak unto thee, that shalt thou do.”<sup>734</sup>

“Audacity prevails even before God.” Balaam’s steadfast insistence upon his wish wrested from God His consent to Balaam’s journey to Moab.<sup>735</sup> He warned him of its consequences, saying to him: “I take no pleasure in the destruction of sinners, but if thou art bound to go to thy destruction, do so! Whosoever leads righteous men astray upon an evil way, will fall into the ditch of his own digging!” Balaam was misled by God’s behavior toward him, and thus plunged into destruction. When God first appeared to him and asked him, “What men are these with thee?” this blasphemer thought: “God knows them not. It seems clear that there are times when He is not aware of what goes on, and I shall now be able to do with His children as I wish.” Balaam was misled by God because he had with his words seduced to unchastity people who had up to his time lived in purity.<sup>736</sup> God’s apparent change of decision, that first prohibited him from going to Balak, and then permitted him to do so, completely bewildered him, so that he thought, “God at first said to me, ‘Go thou not with them,’ but the second time He said, ‘Go with them.’ So too will He change His words, ‘Curse them not,’ into ‘Curse them.’” Just as Balaam was confused by God, so too were the magicians that Balak had sent to him. At the first visit these had through their magic lore established that he would accept Balak’s invitation, but God made him decline it; at the second time, on the other hand, they estab-

lished that he would not accept the invitation, and God made him obey their summons.<sup>737</sup>

732. Tan. B. IV 136–137; Tan. Balak 6; BaR 20.10; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 22.12.

733. Lekah and Midrash Aggada on Num. 22.12.

734. BaR 20.19–20; Tan. B. IV, 136–137; Tan. Balak 6–8; Midrash Aggada, Num. 22.19–20; *Likkutim* IV, 61b–62a. Balaam’s three bad traits are contrasted with Abraham’s three good traits. These are: a good eye, a loving soul, and a humble spirit; Abot 5.19. See also 2 Peter 2.15, and Jude 11. Concerning unconscious prophecy, see vol. V, 250, note 239, and Index, s. v.

735. Sanhedrin 105b; BaR 20.12; Tan. B. IV 137; Tan. Balak 8. God exalted Balaam in order to make his humiliation all the more noticeable, He therefore did not permit him to go with Balak’s first messengers, who were not men of high rank, so that he should be disgraced in the presence of the second messengers, who were men of great prominence; Lekah, Num. 22.20. Compare with p. 765, which gives another reason why God did not permit Balaam to go with the first messengers, but allowed him to go with the second.

736. BaR 20.9 and 12; Tan. B. IV, 136–137; Tan. Balak 5 and 15. Camp. also ps.-Philo, 18 8; 17B, which reads: and God said unto him: “Go with them, and thy journey shall be an offense, and Balak himself shall go to destruction.”

737. Midrash Aggada, Num. 22.7. Concerning the magicians sent by Balak; see text on p. 763, and note 735.

## BALAAM’S ASS

Balaam could hardly await the morning, rejoicing no less than Balak’s messengers at God’s consent to his journey to Balak, and still hoping that he might succeed in bringing disaster upon Israel. In his haste to set out, he himself saddled his ass although he did not lack servants, whereupon God said: “O thou villain, their ancestor Abraham forestalled thee, for he too rose up early in the morning and in person saddled his ass to lead Isaac to sacrifice in fulfillment of the command that had reached him.”<sup>738</sup>



The ass that Balaam took with him had been created on the sixth day of the creation. He had received it as a gift from Jacob, that he might not give evil counsel to Pharaoh concerning Jacob's children. It was upon his advice, nevertheless, that Pharaoh forced the Israelites to make bricks.<sup>739</sup> He took his two sons, Jannes and Jambres,<sup>740</sup> for it behooves a noble man always to have at least two companions upon any journey that he undertakes.<sup>741</sup>

Although God had now granted him permission to go on the journey, still His wrath was kindled when he set out. God said, "Behold, this man! He knows that I read each man's heart, and knows also that he departeth only to curse Israel."<sup>742</sup> This wickedness on his part had the result that even the Angel of Mercy turned against him as an enemy, standing in his way. At first the ass alone perceived the angel, and not Balaam, for God has so arranged it that human beings may not perceive the angels that surround them or else they would through terror lose their reason.<sup>743</sup> The ass, on the other hand, instantly perceived the angel. He at first stood in her way as she was in the middle of the road, so that she could turn aside on both sides; then she perceived him when the road narrowed, and she could turn to one side only; and finally she reached a spot where there was no road at all to which she could turn either on this side or on that. This was to teach Balaam the following lesson: if he wished to curse Abraham's children, he should have leeway on both sides, Ishmael's children and Keturah's children; if he wanted to curse Isaac's children, one side would still be open to him, Esau's children; but if he wanted to curse Jacob's children, he should never bring it to pass, for they are protected on both sides, on the one hand by Abraham and Isaac, on the other by Jacob and Levi, while God watches over them from above. "The wall on this side, and on that side," through which place he had to pass, were further-

more to indicate to him that he could not become master over Israel, who have in their possession the tables of the law, "that were written on both their sides." When the ass reached the wall that Jacob and Laban had erected as a token that they "would never pass over it for harm," she thrust her feet against it, to punish him for having broken his agreement with Jacob.<sup>744</sup>

Balaam, who had with blows attempted to make the ass walk straight ahead, flew into a rage when she lay down altogether and would not budge from the spot, so that he smote her all the more. Then the Lord opened the mouth of the ass, and permitted her to use speech, a gift that she had possessed ever since her creation, but had not until then used.<sup>745</sup> She said, "What have I done unto thee, that thou hast smitten me these three times?" The first words of the ass were so chosen as to call Balaam's attention to the wickedness and uselessness of his undertaking against Israel; "Three times" was to remind him that he wished to curse a nation that "three times" in every year arranged pilgrimages to the lord. The ass's speech was altogether to serve as a warning to Balaam to beware of his mouth, and not to curse Israel. The ass, through her speaking, was to instruct him that the mouth and the tongue are in God's hand.

Balaam answered the ass in the language in which she had addressed him, in Hebrew, which he did not, however, speak fluently. He said, "Because thou hast mocked me: I would there were a sword in mine hand, for now I had killed thee." The ass thereupon replied, "Thou canst not kill me save with a sword in thy hand; how then wilt thou destroy an entire nation with thy mouth!" Balaam was silent, knowing no reply.<sup>746</sup> The ass did not only make him ridiculous in the eyes of the elders of Moab that accompanied him, but she also exposed him as a liar. For when the ambassadors asked him why he had not chosen a horse rather than an ass for his



journey, he answered that his saddle horse was in the pasture. Then the ass interrupted him, saying, “Am not I thine ass upon which thou hast ridden all thy life long!” Balaam: “I use thee as a beast of burden, but not for the saddle.” The ass: “Nay, upon me hast thou ridden since thine earliest days, and thou hast always treated me with as much affection as a man treats his wife.” Balaam had now to admit that the ass had spoken the truth.<sup>747</sup>

Balak’s princes were much amazed at this extraordinary miracle, but the ass died the moment she had spoken what she had to say. God did this for two reasons, firstly because He feared that the heathens might worship this ass were she to stay alive; and secondly because God wanted to spare Balaam the disgrace of having people point to his ass and say, “This is she that worsted Balaam.” By this action it can be seen how highly God prizes the honor of pious men, if He even sought to spare the honor of this villain. It is out of consideration to mankind, also, that God has closed the mouth of animals, for were they to speak, man could not well use them for his service, since the ass, the most stupid of all animals, when she spoke, confounded Balaam, the wisest of the wise.

---

738. Sanhedrin 105a; Mekilta Beshallah it 27a; Mekilta RS, 44; BR 45.8; BaR 20.12; Tan. B. IV, 137; Tan. Balak 8; Ozar Midrashim 42. Sabba<sup>4</sup>, Wa-Yera, 22b, quotes an unknown Midrash to the effect that before Abraham there had been none who saddled his ass by himself, *i. e.*, who was anxious to fulfill the divine command given to him.

739. Midrash Aggada Num. 22.21. This passage presupposes the identity of Balaam with Laban; see note 722. Concerning Balaam as the counselor of Pharaoh, see note 723. The old sources quoted in footnote 99 on p. 78, speak of the “mouth of Balaam’s ass” as having been created in the twilight between the sixth day and the first Sabbath of creation.

740. Targum Yerushalmi, Num. 22.22. The later legends likewise consider these two magicians to have been Balaam’s sons; compare with pp. 426 and 487. According

to text on p. 559, they were drowned in the Red Sea; compare, however, with p. 620, where they are made responsible for the fashioning of the golden calf.

741. BaR 20.13; Tan. B. III, 81–82, and IV, 137; Tan. Emor 2 and Balak 8; BR 55.8; WR 26.7; Shemuel 24, 118. Abraham and Saul (comp. Gen. 22.3 and 1 Samuel 28.8) are quoted as proof that this is the proper conduct. Comp. also Sotah 7a.

742. ER 28, 142 (which dwells also upon Balaam’s eagerness to curse Israel; he spent a sleepless night, excited over the opportunity offered to him. That God did not appear to Balaam in his dream, but while he was awake, may be inferred from the fact that Num. 22.20 does not have the word **בַּחֲלוֹם**, as in Gen. 20.3 and 21.24); Lekah and Targum Yerushalmi on Num. 22.22.

743. BaR 20.13; Tan. B. IV, 137; Tan. Balak, 8; Rashi On Num. 22.23 (partly based on Berakot 6a, which reads: If the eye of man were permitted to see all that surrounds him, he could not exist for a moment, as he would be instantly killed by the fear of the myriads of evil spirits around him); Zohar III, 207b. In the last-named source the purpose of the legend is entirely misunderstood, and the statement is made that the “Angel of Mercy” attempted to prevent Balaam from proceeding on his journey. The angel thereby wished to save Balaam from destruction. “Woe unto the wicked who turn the attribute of mercy into the attribute of justice” is a favorite expression of the Haggadah (comp. e. g., BR 30.3), and in this sense one is to understand the statement that Balaam made the “Angel of Mercy” (Num. 22.23 reads **מַלְאֲךְ הַמֵּרְחוּם** and not **מַלְאֲךְ אֱלֹהִים**; compare footnote 6 on p. 1, which deals with the use of the tetragrammaton to describe God as merciful) turn against him. According to Tan. B. I, 187; ShR 2.3; Aphraates 57; Theodoretus, Num., *loc. cit.*, this angel was Michael. But according to *Imre No’am*, Num., *loc. cit.*, it was Gabriel. On the rivalry of these two angels, see footnote 8 on p. 2, and Index, s. v. Michael, Gabriel.

744. BaR 20.14; Tan. B. IV, 138; Tan. Balak 8; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 22.24 and 30; Al-Barceloni, 57 (a somewhat different interpretation of the two “sides of the road”). Compare with p. 772. The legend that Balaam’s wall is identical with that erected by Jacob and Laban is found only in Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.* But many medieval authors quote this statement from the Midrash; comp. *Hadar*, Wa-Yeze, end, (they stuck a sword into the wall, and with this sword Balaam was killed); Num. 22.24 and 21.8; *Da’at* and *Pa’aneah* Wa-Yeze (end); *Imre No’am*, Num. 22.24; Ziyoni, Gen. 38.8 (towards the end); Midrash Aggada, Num. 22.24–25; *Gan*, quoted by Poznanski, *Mebo*, 102–103, who strangely enough did not notice that *Gan* reproduces a widespread legend. Whether this legend presupposes the identity of Balaam with Laban (comp. note 722) is doubtful. On Levi as one of the very pious



men in the pre-Mosaic times, see index, s. v. Concerning God's wrath at Balaam's attempt to curse the descendants of Jacob, see note 730, end, where the same remark by ps.-Philo is quoted.

745. Midrash Aggada and Targum Yerushalmi, Num. 22.27–28 Compare with p. 78, and note 739. Tan. B. IV, 138, and BaR 20.14, dwell upon the ridiculous position into which Balaam was brought by his ass, and which enraged him against the animal. It is worth while noticing that Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 6.3, twice emphasizes the fact that Balaam's ass "spoke with the voice of a man" It may well be assumed that as early as the time of Josephus the allegorists and rationalists attempted to explain the speaking of the ass in an allegorical or symbolical manner, and it is against such views that Josephus' words are directed. On a similar attempt made by the Jewish philosophers of the Arabic period, see Ibn Ezra, Num. 22.28, and Maimonides, *Guide*, II, 42, who maintain that the episode with the ass is nothing but a vision.

746. Tan. B. IV, 138; Tan. Balak 9; BaR 20.4. Balaam's imperfect knowledge of Hebrew is evidenced by his use of the word \*hitalalt\* Num. 22.29, which had an obscene meaning; comp. Lekah, Num. 22.6.

747. Sanhedrin 105a–105b; Tan. B. IV, 138–139; Tan. Balak 9; Yerushalmi Targumim Num. 22.30. In the Talmud and Targum Yerushalmi Balaam is said to have committed buggery with his ass; comp also Zohar III, 209b–210a.

## BALAAAM RUNS INTO HIS OWN DESTRUCTION

While all this was going on, Balaam still did not perceive that God's angel stood before him. God meant to show him that in His hand is not only the tongue of man, but his eye as well, so that as long as He chooses, man will fail to see what is directly before his nose. But God suddenly permitted Balaam to see the angel with a sword drawn in his hand, and Balaam fell flat on his face.<sup>748</sup> For, being uncircumcised, Balaam might not listen to the words of God or of an angel, standing erect; hence, upon perceiving the angel, who instantly began to address him, Balaam cast himself upon the ground.<sup>749</sup>

The sword in the angel's hand did not signify that he meant to strike Balaam, for a breath from his mouth would have sufficed to kill myriads, but it was to point out the following truth to Balaam: "The mouth was given to Jacob, but to Esau and to the other nations, the sword. Thou art about to change thy profession, and to go out against Israel with his own weapon, and therefore shalt thou find death through the sword that is thy own weapon."<sup>750</sup>

The angel now said to Balaam: "If I have been commissioned to demand restitution from thee for the injustice thou hast offered to the ass, that can show neither meritorious deeds of her own nor of her fathers, how much the more must I stand up as the avenger of an entire nation, that have their own merits and can refer to the merits of their fathers. But to return to the ass, why didst thou smite her, that turned from the road only because she saw me and was frightened." Balaam was a shrewd sinner, for he knew that Divine punishment could be averted only by penitence, and that the angels have no power to touch a man who, after sinning, says, "I have sinned." Hence he said to the angel, "I have sinned," but added, "I did not set out until God said to me, 'Rise up, go with them;' and now thou sayest to me, 'Return.' But this is the Lord's way. Did He not also at first tell Abraham to sacrifice his son, and then He caused an angel to call out to him, 'Lay not thine hand upon the lad?' It is His custom first to give a command, and then through an angel to recall it. So also did He indeed say to me, 'Go with them,' but if it displeaseth thee, I shall turn back."<sup>751</sup> The angel replied: "All that I have done was to thy advantage, but if thou art bound to plunge into destruction, do so, go with these people, but destruction is decreed for all of you. Think not, however, that thou shalt do as thou wilt, for thou shalt have to say what I desire thee to speak, and to restrain what I wish to remain unuttered."



In spite of the warnings he had received from God and the angel, he was not to be restrained from taking this fatal step, but in his hatred toward Israel still cherished the hope that he should succeed in obtaining God's consent to curse Israel, and he continued his journey in this happy expectation.<sup>752</sup>

---

748. Tan. B. IV, 139; Tan. Balak 9–10; BaR 20.14–15; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 765 (Yelammedenu is given as the source in the first edition only). Concerning the conception that God does not wish to have sinners publicly disgraced, see Sanhedrin 7.3; PK 9, 75b, and parallel passages cited by Buber.

749. Targum Yerushalmi Num. 24.3; PRE 29 (this passage also states that even Abraham before he was circumcised could not listen to the words of God and remain standing); Zohar I, 96b; BaR 20.15; Tan. B. IV, 39; Tan. Balak 10. Comp. also the references in note 727 to the sources dealing with the differences between Moses and Balaam; see also text on p. 960; footnote 131 on p. 204; footnote 318 on p. 248.

750. BaR 20.13; Tan. B. IV, 137–138; Tan. Balak 8; Midrash Aggada, Num. 22.23 (elaborated). Compare with p. 749, and note 855.

751. BaR 20.5; Tan. B. IV, 139 (Balaam who boasted of knowing the plans of the Most High—text on p. 761—had now to admit that he knew nothing thereof); Tan. Balak 10; Yelammedenu (?) in Yalkut I; 766.

752. Midrash Aggada, Num. 22.35; Tan. B. IV, 140; Tan. Balak 10; BaR 20.15; *Likkutim*, IV, 62b–63a. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, II, 63, in agreement with the rabbinic Hag-gada (see text on pp. 764–765) maintains that Balaam after having heard the words of the angel, intended to return home, but was advised by God to proceed on his journey. Philo, *Vita Mosi* 1.39, agrees with the view of the Rabbis as given in the text that the words spoken by Balaam, “if it displease Thee, I will get me back” (Num. 22.34), prove his insincerity (if he were sincere, he would have returned without asking), and God therefore became angry with him, and allowed him to go to his destruction.

## BALAAM WITH BALAK

Whenever God wishes to humble an evil-doer, He at first exalts him, to fill him with pride. So too He humbled Balaam after exalting him, for at first Balak had sent princes of little distinction to him, whereupon God said to him, “Thou shalt not go with them.” When, however, he sent many renowned princes to him, God said to Balaam, “Go with them,” but this journey brought him nothing but humiliation and ruin, for he fared in accordance with the proverb, “Pride goeth before destruction, and an haughty spirit before a fall.” God does this so that men might not say, “Whom hath God destroyed? Surely not that insignificant person,” hence God exalts sinners before their fall.<sup>753</sup>

When Balaam approached the Moabite boundaries, he sent messengers to Balak to announce his arrival, and Balak went forth to his country's border to meet him. Pointing to the boundary lines, Balak said to Balaam: “These have been fixed since Noah's days, that no nation might push into the realm of another, but Israel set out to destroy the boundaries, as their attitude toward Sihon and Og shows, into whose kingdoms they entered.”<sup>754</sup> He then greeted him with the words: “Did I not twice send unto thee to call thee? Wherefore camest not thou into me? Am I not able indeed to promote thee to honor?” Balak unconsciously uttered a prophecy, for in truth Balaam went hence in disgrace and dishonor, and not covered with glory, as he could not fulfil the other's wish to curse Israel.<sup>755</sup> It should now have been Balaam's duty, had he really desired to be of service to the king of Moab, to say to him, “Why dost thou attempt to do what will bring thee misfortune, and finally utter ruin?” But he spoke quite differently instead, boastfully bragging with his gift of prophecy, pointing out that he was the last prophet among the heathens. “And,” continued he, “I, the last



prophet among the heathens, shall thus counsel thee. The ancestor of that nation erected to God an altar upon which, thrice annually, he offered up seven oxen and seven rams; do thou, then, erect seven altars, and offer up on each seven oxen and seven rams." God laughed when he heard this counsel, saying: "Every beast of the forest is Mine, and the cattle upon a thousand hills. I know all the fowls of the mountains: and the wild beasts of the field are Mine. If I were hungry, I would not tell thee: for the world is Mine, and the fulness thereof. Will I eat the flesh of bulls, or drink the blood of goats?"<sup>756</sup>

Balak led his guest from the border-line to the interior of the land, taking pains to show him great multitudes of the people, having bazaars erected for that purpose. Pointing to these multitudes, among which there were also many children, Balak said, "Look thou, how Israel plan to destroy these multitudes of people that have done them no injury."

Balak slew for Balaam's welcome one ox and one sheep, proving the proverb, "The pious promise little and do much, the wicked promise much and do little." Balak had sent word to Balaam, saying, "I will promote thee unto very great honor;" yet when he arrived, he offered him for food only one ox and one sheep. Suppressing his rage, Balaam thought, "Is that all that he offers me! He will have to pay for this to-morrow," for he instantly determined to have him offer up many sacrifices on the following day to punish him for having treated him in so niggardly a fashion.

## BALAAM'S SACRIFICES REFUSED

On the following morning Balak took Balaam and brought him up into the high places of Baal. For Balak was even a greater magician and soothsayer than Balaam, who allowed himself like a blind man to be led by him. He led him to this spot because through his magic lore he knew that Israel was to suffer a great misfortune upon the heights of Baalpeor, and he thought it was to be Balaam's curse that would effect this disaster upon them. The relation of these two men to each other was like that between two men, one of whom has a knife in his hand, but does not know what part of the body to strike for slaughter, and the other knows the part of the body, but has no knife. Balak knew the place where disaster awaited Israel, but did not know how it was to be brought about, whereas Balaam knew how evil is conjured up, but did not know the places set for disaster, to which Balak had to lead him.<sup>757</sup> Balaam's superiority over Balak and the other magicians lay in this, that he could accurately determine the moment in which God is wrathful, and it was for this reason that his curse was always effective because he knew how to curse at the very instant of God's anger. It is true that God is angry for one instant every day, to wit, during the third hour of the day, when the kings with crowns upon their heads worship the sun, but this moment is of infinitesimally short duration. Fully eighty-five thousand and eighty-eight such moments make one hour, so that no mortal save Balaam had ever been able to fix that moment, although this point of time has as outward manifestations in nature, for while it lasts, the cock's comb becomes absolutely white, without even the smallest stripe of red. God's love for Israel, however, is so great that during the time that Balaam prepared to curse Israel, He did not wax

753. MHG, Num. 22.35 (in manuscript); comp. note 735.

754. Tan. B. IV, 140; Tan. Balak 10; BaR 20.16. Concerning the boundary lines fixed by Noah, see text on p. 157.

755. BaR 20.16; Tan. B. IV, 140; Tan. Balak 10.

756. ER 28.142. Concerning the seven altars and seven sacrifices, see text on p. 771.



angry at all, so that Balaam waited in vain for the moment of wrath.<sup>758</sup>

Balaam now tried to obtain God's consent for Israel's curse through sacrifices, and hence bade Balak erect seven altars upon the high places of Baal, corresponding to the seven altars that since Adam had been erected by seven pious men, to wit: Adam, Abel, Noah, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Moses. When the altars had been erected, he said to God: "Why didst Thou favor these people, if not for the sacrifices that they offered Thee? Were it not better for Thee to be adored by seventy nations than by one?" But the Holy Spirit answered, "'Better is a dry morsel and quietness therewith, than an house full of sacrifices and strife.' Dearer to Me is a dry offering of meal than all these many flesh offerings by which thou strivest to stir up strife between Me and Israel."

Now was Balaam's fate decided, for by his conduct he put himself into direct opposition to God, and hence his destruction was decreed,<sup>759</sup> and from that moment the holy spirit of prophecy left him and he was nothing more than a magician. For Israel's sake, however, God granted him the honor of His revelation, but He did so grudgingly, as one loathes to touch an unclean thing. Hence He would not permit Balaam to come to Him, but rather appeared to Balaam. God's different treatment of Balaam and of Moses at the revelation is evident, for whereas the latter betook himself to the sanctuary to hear God's words, the former received God's revelation at any place whatsoever. It characterizes God's attitude toward them. Two men once knocked at a magnate's door, the one being a friend, who had a request to make, and the other a leprous beggar. The magnate said, "Let my friend enter, but I shall send the beggar's alms to the door, that he may not enter and pollute my palace." God called Moses to Him, whereas He

did not desire Balaam to come to Him, but betook Himself there.<sup>760</sup>

He found Balaam at the seven altars that he had erected, and said to him, "What doest thou here?" whereupon Balaam answered, "I have erected for Thee as many altars as the three fathers of Israel, and I have offered upon them bullocks and rams." God, however, said to him: "'Better is a dinner of herbs where love is, than a stalled ox and hatred therewith.' Pleasanter to Me is the meal of unleavened bread and herbs that the Israelites took in Egypt, than the bullocks that thou offerest out of enmity. O thou knave, if I wished for offerings, I should order Michael and Gabriel to bring them to Me, thou art mistaken if thou believest that I should accept offerings from the nations of the world, for I have vowed a vow to accept such from Israel alone."<sup>761</sup> God thereupon handed him over to an angel who entered and settled in his throat, and would not permit Balaam to speak when he wanted to curse Israel.<sup>762</sup>

---

757. BaR 20.16–18; Tan. B. IV, 140; Tan. Balak 11; 2 ARN 23.48. For an illustration of the truth of the proverb concerning the liberality of the pious, see text on p. 205. Concerning Balak's magic art, see text on pp. 760, 763, 774, 775; Zohar III, 112b; 304a.

758. Berakot 7a; 'Abodah Zarah 4a–4b; Zohar I, 95b; III, 113a; *Battle Midrashot*, IV, 16. Comp. also Yerushalmi Berakot 1.2d (in connection with the smallest fraction of an hour). See Bornstein in *Hatekufah* VI, 271–272, according to whom this fraction (one 56848 of the hour) is to be read in Babli too. In the text on p. 770, top, eighty-five is, a misprint for fifty-eight.

759. BaR 20.18; Tan. B. III, 12; IV, 140–141; Tan. Zaw 1 and Balak 11–12; Tehillim 17, 125, and 90, 385. Comp. also Tan. B. III, 16. and Tan. Zaw 4, which reads: The nations of the world asked Balaam, "Why did God command Israel, and not us, to bring sacrifices?" He answered: "The purpose of sacrifices is to establish peace; but peace without the Torah is impossible. The Israelites accepted the Torah; they were therefore commanded to bring sacrifices, but ye who rejected it are not to bring any sacrifices." The verse "the sacrifice of the wicked is an abomina-



tion" (Prov. 21.27; comp. also 15.8) is said to refer to the sacrifices brought by Balaam and the wicked nations, which were not acceptable to God. Comp. *Tehillim*, *loc. cit.* See also Midrash Aggada and Rashi on Num. 23.1; text on p. 770.

760. BaR 20.18; Tan. B. IV, 141; Tan. Balak 11; Midrash Aggada and Lekah on Num. 23.4; WR 1.3; *Likkutim*, IV, 63b–64a; Zohar III, 200b (top). Concerning the contrast between Moses and Balaam, see text on p. 761.

761. Tan. B. III, 12, and IV, 141; Tan. Zaw 1, and Balak 12; BaR 20.18; Yelammedenu (?) in *Likkutim*, IV, 64a; Midrash Tannaim 146–147. Comp. Aggadat Shir (end), and note 759.

762. Sanhedrin 105b; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 765 (the source is given in the first edition only); Tan. B. IV, 141; Tan. Balak 12; BaR 20.18; *Likkutim*, IV, 64a–64b; *Batte Midrashot* IV, 15a.

## BALAAAM EXTOLS ISRAEL

Balaam now turned back to Balak, who awaited him with his princes. He now wanted to begin to curse Israel, but his mouth, far from being able to utter the words, was on the contrary compelled to praise and bless Israel.<sup>763</sup> He said: "I found myself upon the high places, in company with the Patriarchs, and thou, Balak, hast cast me down from the heights; through thee did I lose the gift of prophecy. Both of us are ungrateful men if we wish to undertake evil against Israel, for, had it not been for their father Abraham, for whose sake God saved Lot out of the ruin of the cities, there should now be no Balak, for thou art one of Lot's descendants. And had it not been for Jacob, I, Laban's descendant, should not now be on earth, for no sons were born unto Laban until after Jacob had come into his house."<sup>764</sup> Thou didst bring me out of Aram to curse Israel, but it was this land that their father Abraham left, laden with blessings, and it was this land also that their father Jacob entered, laden with blessings. Shall now a curse come upon them from this land?<sup>765</sup> How can I curse them if he that curseth them bringeth a

curse upon himself? Thou, moreover, wishest me even to curse Jacob. Hadst thou urged me to curse a nation that were only the descendants of Abraham or of Isaac, I might have been able to do so; but to curse Jacob's descendants is as bad as if a man were to come to a king and say to him, 'The crown that thou wearest upon thy head is worthless.' Would such a man be permitted to live? 'The Lord's portion is His people; Jacob is the lot of His inheritance.' 'In Israel,' said the Lord, 'will I be glorified.' How now should I curse them? How shall I curse whom God hath not cursed? Even when they have been worthy of a curse, they have not been cursed. When Jacob went in to receive the blessings, he went in through craft and said to his father, 'I am Esau, thy firstborn.' Doth not he deserve a curse out of whose mouth issueth a lie? Yet, far from being cursed, he was even blessed. Ordinarily a legion that stirs up sedition against their king is declared guilty of death, but Israel had denied God, saying, 'These be thy gods, O Israel.' Should they not then have been destroyed? God, however, did not even at that moment withdraw from them His love, but left to them the clouds of glory, manna, and the well, even after they had adored the Calf. Howsoever often they sinned and God threatened them with a curse, still He did not say that He would bring it upon them, whereas in His promises of blessings He always tells them that He Himself would send them upon Israel. How shall I curse when God doth not curse!<sup>766</sup>

"Israel is a nation of whom God thought even before the creation of the world. It is the rock upon which the world is founded. For, when God was considering the scheme of the creation, He thought, 'How can I create the world if the idolatrous generation of Enosh and the generation of the flood will arouse My anger?' He was about to desist from the creation of the world, when He saw before Him Abraham's



form, and He said, 'Now I have a rock upon which I can build, one upon which I can found the world.'<sup>767</sup> How, too, should I curse this nation that are protected and surrounded by the merits of the Patriarchs and the wives of the Patriarchs as it by lofty mountains and steep hills, so that if Israel sin, God forgives them as soon as Moses prays to Him to be mindful of the Patriarchs!<sup>768</sup>

"I was in error when I believed Israel could be easily attacked, but now I know that they have taken deep root in the earth, and cannot be uprooted. God forgives them many sins out of consideration for their having preserved the token of the Abrahamic covenant; and as powerless as I am to curse them alone, just as powerless am I to curse them together with another nation, for 'it is a people that shall dwell alone, and shall not be reckoned among the nations.' Israel is distinguished from all other nations by their costume, by their food, by the token of the covenant upon their bodies, and by the token upon their doorposts, wherefore God doth not judge them at the same time with other nations, for He judges the latter in the darkness of the night, but the former in bright daylight. Israel is a separate people, alone they enjoy the blessings God gives them, no other nation rejoices with Israel. So too in the Messianic time Israel will quite alone rejoice in delights and pleasures, whereas in the present world it may also partake of the universal welfare of the nations."<sup>769</sup>

"I am not able to accomplish anything against a nation that zealously fulfils God's commandments, and that owes its existence to the devotion with which the wives of the Patriarchs obeyed the commandments of God."<sup>770</sup> 'Let me die the death of the righteous, and let my last end be like his!' " Balaam in these words spoke an unconscious prophecy, to wit, that he should be entitled to participate in the fate of the righteous, to his share in the future world, if he died

the death of the righteous, a natural death, but not otherwise. He died, however, a violent death, and thus lost his share in the future world."<sup>771</sup>

---

763. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 765. Comp. also references in the preceding note.

764. BaR 20.19; Tan. B. IV, 141–143; Tan. Balak 12; *Batte Midrashot* IV, 15a–15b; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 765–766. Concerning the blessing which came to Laban through Jacob, see text on pp. 290 and 293. On Balaam's descent from Laban, see note 722 (end). Concerning the view that Balaam was deprived of the gift of prophecy, see note 784. In the Midrashim quoted above there are many other haggadic interpretations of Balaam's orations. Other kinds of explanations are given by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 6.5, and ps-Philo, 18.10–12; 18C–D. It is noteworthy that Josephus' interpretations are based upon the Hebrew text of Scripture, and not upon the Septuagint. If, e. g., Josephus makes Balaam say: "There is not any nation among mankind, but ye will be esteemed superior to them in virtue," it is obvious that it is a haggadic rendering of Num. 23.9, where יתחשב is taken in the sense of "being esteemed", in accordance with the mishnic use of this verb (comp., e. g., Shebi'it 8.11). Num. 23.7 is paraphrased by ps.-Philo as follows: "Lo, Balak hath brought me..., saying: 'Come, run into the Fire of these men.' " This of course, is a haggadic interpretation of ארה connecting it with אור "fire". The following sentence in ps.-Philo runs: It is easier to take away the foundation and all the topmost parts of the earth (read "terra" instead of "erorum") and darken the light of the sun ... than to uproot the planting of the Most High. This Haggadah on Num. 23.9 is similar to that given by Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 766. Compare with p. 773. Josephus, as well as ps.-Philo, combined Balaam's four orations into one.

765. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 766. Comp. *Likkutim*, IV, 65a–65b. Concerning the statement found in these Midrashim that Israel's strength lies in words (*i. e.*, the Torah), see text on pp. 768–769.

766. BaR 20.19; Tan. B. IV, 142; Tan. Balak 12; Wa-Yekullu 18; *Batte Midrashot* IV, 16; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 766; *Likkutim*, IV, 66a–66b. The conception that God does not associate Himself with the evil brought upon Israel has, properly considered, no bearing upon any special privilege of Israel. The idea that God, as the source of the good, cannot be the direct source of evil is Philonic as well as rabbinic; see Tan. B. III, 39–41 and the discussion on this point in footnote 9 on p. 2, and footnote 176 on p. 365.—In the quotation from Aggadat Bereshit given in note 730 the words בשעה ששלה are perhaps not to be taken literally. Concerning the idea that the manna was



given to Israel even after they had worshipped the golden calf, see text on p. 621, and note 270.

767. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 766; *Likkutim*, I, 67a. Compare with pp. 1 and 125, as well as note 764.

768. Tan. B. IV, 143; Tan. Balak 12; BaR 20.17; Yerushalmi Targumim Num. 23.9; *Batte Midrashot* IV, 16; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 765; Mekilta Amalek 1, 54a; Mekilta RS 82; PR 12, 49a; Lekah, Num. *loc. cit.* (quoting a tannaitic source?). Compare with p. 628.

769. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 768; *Batte Midrashot* IV, 16–17; Tan. B. IV, 143; Tan. Balak 12; BaR 20.19; Yerushalmi Targumim and Lekah on Num. 23.9. On the judging of the nations in the darkness of the night, see Tehillim 9, 87; Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 1, 57a; BR 50.3; PR 40, 167b. The last-named source reads: God does not desire the destruction of the sinner, He therefore judges the nations at night, the time of rest, when they cease from doing evil. The Israelites, on the other hand, are judged by day, the time when they perform good deeds, in remembrance of which God is merciful unto them. This view is entirely different from that of the old Haggadah, according to which the judging of the nations at night is a form of severity; see footnote 170 on p. 212, and footnote 216 on p. 537.

770. Tan. B. IV, 143; Tan. Balak 12; BaR 20.19. These Midrashim take the words “the dust of Jacob” to refer to the fulfilling of the commandments connected with the soil (*i. e.*, agricultural laws), whereas Targum Yerushalmi, *ad loc.*, and Wayekullu 18 consider this phrase as an allusion to the performance of circumcision, when dust is strewn over the wound (on this custom see Hilluf Minhagim 18–19). Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 765, and ER 21, 116 refer this phrase to the purity of the young men in Israel, who are thus described as צעיר “young gazelles.”

771. Yerushalmi Targumim and Midrash Aggada Num. 23.10; ER 21, 116. The translation of Num., *loc. cit.*, by Septuagint seems to presuppose a similar haggadic interpretation; comp. also Philo, *Moses*, 1.50. That Balaam lost his share in the world to come is stated in Sanhedrin 10.2. Comp. also the quotation from a Midrash (on Job?) in Makiri, Is. 57, 217.

## BALAAM'S HOPES DISAPPOINTED

When Balak saw that Balaam, instead of cursing, praised and exalted Israel, he led him to the top of Pisgah, hoping that he might there succeed in cursing Israel. By means

of his sorcery, Balak had discovered that Pisgah was to be a place of misfortune for Israel, hence he thought that Balaam would there utter his curse against Israel. He was, however, mistaken; the disaster that there awaited Israel was the death of their leader Moses, who died there, and God refused to grant Balaam's wish on this spot also.

God indeed appeared to Balaam, but what He said to him was: “Go again unto Balak, and bless Israel.” Balaam now did not wish to return to Balak at all, to disappoint him a second time, but God compelled him to return to Balak and communicate to him the blessings of Israel. Balaam now turned back to Balak, whom he found standing by his burnt offering. But whereas on the first occasion the king had awaited Balaam, surrounded by all his princes, Balaam now saw only a few notables surrounding Balak. Most of the princes had deserted their king without awaiting Balaam, for they expected nothing further from him after the first disappointment he had caused them. Balak as well did not now receive him as kindly, but mockingly asked, “What hath the Lord spoken?” hinting in this way that Balaam was unable to say what he wished, but only what God willed.

Balaam replied to these scornful words of Balak: “Rise up, Balak. Thou mayest not be seated when God's words are spoken. God is not like a man of flesh and blood, that makes friends and disowns them, as soon as he finds such as are better than they. God is not so, for He doth not cancel the vow He had made to the Patriarchs, for He promised to bestow Canaan upon their descendants, and He fulfilleth His promise. He always fulfils what He hath promised to Israel, but allows the evil with which He threatens them to be unfulfilled as soon as they repent them of their sins. God sees not their sins, but He seeth their good deeds. Thou, Balak, sayest to me, ‘Come, curse Jacob for me,’ but a thief



can enter a vineyard that hath a keeper only if the keeper sleeps, but 'He that keepeth Israel neither sleepeth nor slumbereth' and how then can I enter their vineyard? If, however, thou dost think that I cannot harm Israel on account of Moses, who is their keeper, know then that his successor will be as invincible as he, for through the sound of trumpets he will overthrow the walls of Jericho.

"Thou, Balak, furthermore sayest, 'A people hath gone forth out of Egypt,' but they have not only gone forth, 'God brought them forth out of Egypt,'<sup>772</sup> who combines in Himself the powers of the angels and of the invisible demons.<sup>773</sup> Swift as the flight of a bird doth fortune as well as misfortune come upon Israel; if they sin, God suddenly plunges them down, but if they act well in the sight of the Lord, God exalts them as quickly as a cloud. Thou, Balak, hast repeatedly tried to discover in what spot thou shouldst be able to work them woe, but they will have nothing to do with sorceries, they baffle and put to naught the sorceries and prophecies of other nations by their pious deeds. When they set forth into battle, they practice no magic, but the high priest, clad in the Urim and Tummim, consults God about the outcome of the battle. There will even be a time when Israel will sit before the Lord like a pupil before his master, and will receive the revelation of the secrets of the Torah from Him, so that even the angels will consult Israel concerning the secrets revealed to them by God, for the angels are not permitted to approach God as closely as the Israelites in the Messianic time.

"There is not indeed upon the earth a nation like Israel. The last thing they do before going to sleep is to devote themselves to the study of the Torah and the fulfilment of its laws, and this also is their first occupation upon awakening. As soon as they arise, they recite the Shema' and adore God, and not until after they have

done this, do they go about their business. If evil spirits come to attack them, or if disaster threatens them, they worship their God, and as soon as they utter the words, 'The Lord our God is one Lord,' the harmful spirits become powerless against them and whisper after them the words, 'Praised be the Name of the Glory of His Kingdom, for ever and ever.' When at night they retire, they again recite the Shema', whereupon the angels of the day pass on the trust of guarding them to the angels of the night, and when, upon awakening, they again worship their Lord, the angels of the night again pass them on to be guarded by the angels of the day."<sup>774</sup>

When Balak for the second time saw that Balaam, instead of cursing, blessed Israel, he brought him to the top of Peer, thinking that peradventure it would please God to have him curse them from thence. For by his sorcery Balak had discovered that a great disaster was to fall upon Israel on the top of Peer, and thought that this disaster might be their curse from Balaam. He was, however, mistaken in this supposition, for the disaster in that spot was none other than Israel's sin with the daughters of Moab, and God's punishment for this.<sup>775</sup>

---

772. Tan. B. IV, 144; Tan. Balak 12–14; BaR 20.20; Yerushalmi Targumim 23.19, *seq.* On Balak as a great sorcerer, see note 757. Philo, *Moses*, I, 51, explains the change of place by Balaam as an attempt to influence God thereby. Comp. Rosh ha-Shanah 16a, which reads: Change of place brings change of luck. See also footnote 122 on p. 201. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 6.5, gives a lengthy address by Balaam, in which he excuses himself and explains his failure to curse Israel.

773. Gittin 68b; Lekah, Num. 23.22. Concerning the invisibility of the demons, see text on p. 77, and note 743.

774. Tan. B. IV, 144–145; Tan. Balak 14; Likkutim, IV, 70a–70b. Concerning Israel's superiority over the angels, see Nedarim 32a; Yerushalmi Shabbat 6 (end); DR 1.12. On the warding off of the evil spirit by the recitation of the Shema', see Berakot 5a.



775. Rashi and Midrash Aggada, Num. 23.29. Compare with p. 774, which has a similar statement concerning the choice of Pisgah. According to Targum Yerushalmi, Num. 22.41, Balak led Balaam at the very beginning to the top of Peor, which is also called Bamot-baal.

## CURSES TURNED TO BLESSINGS

**B**alaam, on the other hand, made no further attempts to induce God to curse Israel, but thought he might be able to bring misfortune upon Israel by enumerating the sins they had committed in the desert, and in this way to conjure up God's wrath against them. But the desert had also been the place where Israel had accepted the Torah, hence the mention of the desert called up God's love instead of His wrath.<sup>776</sup> Balaam himself, when he let his eyes wander over the camp of Israel, and perceived how their tents were so pitched that no one might see what was going on in the homes of the others, found himself compelled to burst into praises of Israel;<sup>777</sup> and, under the inspiration of the prophetic spirit, the curses he had intended to speak were changed in his mouth into blessings, and he spoke of the extent and importance of the kingdom of Israel.<sup>778</sup> But whereas Moses blessed his people in a low, quiet voice, Balaam spoke his words of blessing in a very loud voice, so that all the other nations might hear and out of envy make war upon Israel. Balaam's blessings were therefore accounted to him not as blessings, but as curses. God said: "I have promised Abraham, 'And I will bless them that bless thee, and him that curseth thee will I curse,' hence will I account Balaam's blessings as curses."<sup>779</sup> And indeed all of Balaam's blessings later turned to curses, except his blessing that houses of teaching and of prayer should never be missing among Israel.<sup>780</sup>

The words that Balaam announced were heard by all the inhabitants of the earth, such power did God lend to his voice, for He knew that at some future time there would be a man born of woman who would pass himself for a god and would mislead all the world. Hence God permitted all the world to hear Balaam's words, that said: "God is not a man, and the man that passeth himself for God lieth. But he that will mislead the world by declaring that he will disappear for a time and then reappear will promise what he can never fulfil. Woe then to that nation that will lend ear to the man who will pass himself for God."<sup>781</sup> Balaam furthermore announced the events that would come to pass at the time of David's sovereignty; and also what will happen at the end of days, in the time of the Messiah, when Rome and all other nations will be destroyed by Israel, excepting only the descendants of Jethro, who will participate in Israel's joys and sorrows.<sup>782</sup> Yea, the Kenites are to be the ones to announce to Israel the arrival of the Messiah, and the sons of the Kenite Jonadab are to be the first at the time of the Messiah to bring offerings at the Temple and to announce to Jerusalem its deliverance.<sup>783</sup> This was Balaam's last prophecy. After this, the prophetic spirit left Balaam, and God in this way granted Moses' wish to reserve the gift of prophecy as a special distinction to Israel. Balaam was the last prophet of the nations.<sup>784</sup>

---

776. Targum Yerushalmi, Rashi, and Lekah on Num. 24.1. See also Targum Yerushalmi Num. 22.41–23.1, which reads: Balaam, from the top of Peor, observed the Danites, who, on account of their sins, were not covered by the clouds of glory (comp. Index, s. v. "Danites"), and he rejoiced, hoping that he would be able to induce God to curse Israel on account of these sinners. That Balaam, despite the clear indication of God's unwillingness to curse the Israelites, continued to hate them, is emphasized also by Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1.52.



777. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 771; Targum Yerushalmi Num 24.2; Baba Batra 60a; BaR 2.4. The strict separation of the tents was proof of the purity of their family life.

778. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 765, and II 782 on Ps.62. In another passage of Yelammedenu (I, 771) it is shown in detail that Balaam worded the blessings which he was forced to pronounce upon Israel in such a way that they might be turned into curses. The same view is also found in Ta'anit 20a. Comp. also note 780.

779. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 766; Makiri, Prov. 27, 86b. On Balaam's voice, see note 781.

780. Sanhedrin 105b. This passage contains also the following remark: The blessings which Balaam was forced to pronounce upon Israel indicate the nature of the curses which he attempted to call down on them; for God made him speak exactly the opposite of what he had intended. Balaam wished to say: "May the Shekinah never dwell among them", but he was forced to say: "How beautiful ... are the dwellings (=the sanctuaries) of Israel, etc." Comp. also Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 771. Talmud, Yelammedenu, ER 21, 116–117, as well Yerushalmi Targumim Num. 24.5, take the "tents of Jacob" (Num. 24.5) to refer to the houses of study. All the worldly bliss that Israel enjoyed was the fulfillment of Balaam's blessings, while the "benedictions of the patriarchs" will be fulfilled in the world to come; DR 3.4.

781. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 765; Tan. B. IV, 146; Tan. Balak 15; BaR 20.21. The anti-Christian passages occur only in Yelammedenu and, partly, also in Makiri, Prov. 68b–69a. Another legend concerning Balaam's powerful voice is found in Yelammedenu I, 771, whence it has been incorporated in Koheleth 7.5, which reads: Balaam's voice carried as far as sixty miles (במחנה ישראל) is a variant which is not found in Yalkut I, 765), and when the Israelites heard it, they became very proud. Jacob's blessing contained reproaches against some of the tribes; Moses' blessings administered admonitions and reprimands; but Balaam uttered nothing but praises and blessings. Their pride over it became a stumbling-block to the Israelites, who were enticed to lewdness immediately after Balaam had pronounced his benedictions. Compare with p. 778.

782. Targumim Num. 24.7–9 and 17–24; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I. 771; PR 13, 54a, and 41, 173b; ER 21, 117; Sanhedrin 106a; the Messianic Midrash in Lekah on verse 17; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 6.5. It is noteworthy that Ephraem I, 153E, explains verse 17 to refer to Zerubbabel, though as early an authority as R. Akiba finds in it a Messianic prophecy; comp. Yerushalmi Ta'anit 4, 68d. This view was later shared by Jewish as well as Christian authorities; comp. e. g., Targum Yerushalmi and Theodoretus, *ad loc.* It is quite likely that Ephraem reproduces the view of a Jewish rationalist, as it is rather strange for a

Christian to ignore this messianic passage. Ephraem's explanation of כְּתִים (Num. 24.24) as Rome is found in Targum Yerushalmi, *ad loc.*

783. Unknown Midrash quoted in Makiri on Is; 52, 145. On the descendants of Jonadab, see text on p. 590, and footnote 57 on p. 1089. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 771 likewise identifies the Kenite spoken of in 24.21 with the descendants of Jonadab the Rechabite; it reads: When Balaam saw the sons of Jonadab occupying seats in the Chamber of Gazit (=the great Synhedrion), he exclaimed in astonishment: "The law prescribes that only priests, Levites, and (pure-blooded) Israelites are qualified to become members of the Synhedrion (Sanhedrin 4.2), and yet these descendants of Jonadab were found worthy of this high position as a reward for the hospitality of their sire Jethro, who offered bread to Moses." Comp. also Sanhedrin 106a. Concerning the superiority of Jethro's descendants to all other proselytes, see Bikkurim, Tosefta 1.2 and Yerushalmi I, 64a.

784. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 771; Sanhedrin 106a; see also ps.-Philo 18.11; 17D, where the following words are put into Balaam's mouth: "For but a little is left to me of the holy spirit which abideth in me since I know that through having been persuaded by Balak, I lost the days of my life." In 18. 2 ps.-Philo describes Balaam as "the interpreter of dreams, who dwelt in Mesopotamia." This is in agreement with Targum Yerushalmi Num. 22.5 and Tan. B. IV, 134, according to which פְּתוּרָה means "the interpreter of dreams", from the Hebrew-Aramaic root פָּתַר "to interpret dreams". Balaam was thus, as Tan., *loc. cit.*, points out, first an interpreter of dreams, and then a prophet; but when he proved unworthy of his high calling, he sank to the low level of sorcerer; he remained a sorcerer for the rest of his life, see Josh. 13.22 and note 852.—"Moses committed Balaam's prophecy to writing, and while it was in his power to claim this glory for himself and make people believe that the predictions were his own, there being no one who could contradict him and accuse him of doing so, still he gave attention to Balaam, and did him the honor to make mention of him on this account," Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 6.13. The statement of the Baraita, Baba Batra 14b, that Moses wrote his own book (=the Pentateuch) and the section of Balaam is to be understood in the same sense as the words quoted from Josephus. Compare footnote 38 on p. 1035.



## BALAAM'S WICKED COUNSEL

**A**lthough Balaam had not been able to fulfil Balak's wish and curse Israel, still he did not leave him before giving him advice as to how he might bring ruin to Israel, saying: The God of this people loathes unchastity; but they are very eager to possess linen garments. Pitch tents, then, and at their entrances have old women offer these articles for sale. Induce them in this way to enter the interior of the tents where they will be surprised by young harlots, who will seduce them to unchastity, so that God may punish them for their sin.<sup>785</sup>

"Throw the stick up in the air; it will always return to its original place." The Moabite nation that owes its existence to the illegal relations of Lot with his daughter could not deny its origin, and followed Balaam's counsel to tempt Israel to unchastity. They pitched tents, filled them with pretty women, whom they provided with valuable things, and had old women take up their posts at the doors of the tents, whose task it was to lure the passing Israelites into the interior. If an Israelite passed to buy something of the Moabites, the old women at the entrance to the tent would thus address him, "Dost thou not wish to buy linen garments that were made in Bet-Shan?" Then they would show him a sample of the goods, and name the price, and finally add, "Go within, and thou wilt see wares still more beautiful." If he went within, he was received by a young woman who was richly adorned and perfumed, who would at first set for him a price much lower than the value of the goods, and then invite him to do as if he were at home, and to choose the article he liked best. While he sat there, he was treated with wine, and the young woman invited him to drink with the words: "Why do we love ye while you hate us? Are we not all descendants of one man? Was not Terah our ancestor as much as yours? If

thou wilt not eat of our sacrifices or what we have cooked, here are calves and fowl that thou mayest slaughter in accordance with thy law." But as soon as the Israelite had allowed himself to be persuaded to drink, he was absolutely in the hands of the shameless woman. Intoxicated with wine, his passion for the woman was soon kindled, but she agreed to satisfy his desires only after he had first worshipped Peor, the god of the Moabites. Now the worship of this idol consisted in nothing else than the complete baring of the body, hence the Israelites, seeing no evil in it, declared themselves willing to follow the summons of the Moabite women; and in this way they were seduced both to unchastity and to idolatry by the Moabite women. At first the men were ashamed and committed this whoredom with the Moabite women in secret, but they soon lost this feeling of shame and betook themselves two by two to their lewd actions.<sup>786</sup>

Israel's moral degeneration is to be partly explained by this, that the place where they found themselves was apt to tempt them to lewdness. For there are springs whose waters have various effects upon those who partake of them. One kind of water strengthens, another weakens; one makes beautiful, another makes ugly; one makes chaste, another brings about lewdness. Now there was in Shittim, where the Israelites then dwelt, the "Well of Lewdness," out of which the inhabitants of Sodom had erstwhile fetched water, but from which, since the destruction of the sinful cities, no one had drunk, and for this reason the people had until then been chaste. But Israel, as soon as they tasted of this water, gave up their chaste manner of life. This disastrous spring will lose its force only in the Messianic time when God will cause it to dry up.<sup>787</sup>

---

785. Sanhedrin 106a. Balaam's wicked counsel to entice Israel to idolatry by means of unchastity (see Num. 24.14 and 31.16) is described at full length by Philo,



*Moses*, 1.54–55, and *De Fortit.*, 7; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 6.6–9, and ps.-Philo 18.18–19. Comp. also Revelation 2.14, where this legend is very likely presupposed. The rabbinic sources offer several versions of this legend; see Sifre, N., 131 and 157; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28d (top); Tan. B. IV, 147; Tan. Balak 15 and Mattot 3; BaR 20. 23 and 22.4; ARN 1.3; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 785; PRE 47; Yerushalmi Targumim Num. 24.4. On the severe punishment which God inflicts for unchastity, see text on p. 139; text on p. 1132.

786. BaR 20.23; Tan. B. IV, 146, and Tan. Balak 17, which, in the main, follow earlier sources; see Sifre N., 131; Sanhedrin, Babli 106b; Yerushalmi 10, 28d; see also references in preceding note. New is the statement in BaR and in the Tanhumas that Balaam instructed them not to allow the Jewish young men to commit idolatry while drunk, because they would not be held responsible for acts committed while in a state of drunkenness. This sounds like a learned reflection on the popular legend as given by the old sources, to make it agree with the Halakah concerning the irresponsibility of the inebriate; see 'Erubin 65a. The proverb "Throw the stick, etc." is also found in text on p. 352. Concerning the description of the worship of Peor, found in rabbinic sources, see Chajes, *Marcus Studien*, 24. Israel became subjected to the "four kingdoms" through the worship of Peor; Tehillim 106, 456.

787. Tan. B. I, 146–147; Tan. Balak 16–17; BaR 20.22. Concerning the effect of the water on the body and soul of those who partake of it, see Zohar I, 125a. Herodotus III, 23; Tertullian *De Anima* 50. On the identity of the well of Shittim (the etymological explanations of this name are found in Sanhedrin 106a; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 771; Tan. Terumah 10) with the "well of lewdness", out of which the inhabitants of Sodom drew water, see footnote 184 on p. 213, and Zohar Ruth 1.4.

## PHINEHAS, ZEALOUS FOR GOD

When the people's shamelessness became more and more widespread, God commanded Moses to appoint judges to punish the sinners, and as it was difficult to discover these through the agency of witnesses, God marked them by causing the cloud of glory that lay spread over the camp of Israel to disappear from the sinners. Those that were not covered by the cloud of glory were thus clearly marked as sin-

ners.<sup>788</sup> God appointed as judges and executioners the seven myriads eight thousand six hundred officers of the people, giving them the order that each of them execute two sinners.<sup>789</sup> These carried out Moses' command and stoned the sinners, whose corpses then hung upon the gallows for a few minutes. This was the legal punishment, for these sinners had not only committed whoredom with the women of Moab, but had worshipped the Moabite idol Peor; and idolatry is punishable with death by stoning.<sup>790</sup>

While the judges administered their stern offices, the tribe of Simeon approached their prince, Zimri, and said to him, "People are being executed, and thou sittest still as if nothing were going on." He thereupon took with him twenty four thousand men, and betook himself to Cozbi, Balak's daughter, and without considering God or men, he requested her in the presence of many people to yield herself to him, to satisfy his evil desires. Now Balak had ordered his daughter Cozbi to employ her beauty only for the sake of enticing Moses, thinking, "Whatever evil may be decreed by God against Israel, Moses will be brought to naught, but if my daughter should succeed in seducing him to sin, then all Israel will be in my hand." Hence Cozbi said to Zimri: "My father ordered me to be obedient to the wishes of Moses alone, and to none other; for he is a king, and so is my father, and a king's daughter is fit for none but a king." Zimri, however, replied: "I am a greater man than Moses, for he is chief only of the third tribe in Israel, whereas I am prince of the tribe of Simeon, the second of the Israelite tribes, and if thou wilt, I will convince thee that I am a greater man than Moses, for I will take thee to myself in his presence, without paying attention to his prohibition."

Zimri then seized Cozbi by the locks of her hair, and brought her before Moses, whom he then addressed as follows: "Tell me, son of Am-



ram, is this woman permitted me, or is she forbidden me?" Moses said, "She is forbidden to thee." Zimri answered: "Art thou really the faithful expounder of the Torah, whose reliability God praised with the words, 'He is faithful in all Mine house?' How then canst thou assert that she is forbidden to me, for then thy wife would be forbidden to thee, for she is a Midianite like this woman, and this one is a noble woman of a noble family, whereas thy wife is the daughter of an idolatrous priest." At these words, Moses, Eleazar, and the elders began to weep, for they knew not how to make answer to Zimri's insolent words, nor what they could do to restrain this sinner from the accomplishment of his sin. God said to Moses: "Where is thy wisdom? Thou didst need to utter only one word, and Korah and all his company were swallowed by the earth. Canst thou now do nothing better than to weep?" The Holy Spirit exclaimed at Moses' perplexity and silence, "The stouthearted are spoiled, they have slept their sleep."<sup>791</sup>

God, who calls the pious to strict account, punished Moses for the lack of decision that he displayed on this occasion, by leaving his burial-place unknown to mankind.<sup>792</sup> While Moses and other pious men were irresolute and deliberated whether or not Zimri deserved death, Phinehas said to Moses: "O my great-uncle, didst thou not teach me, when thou didst return from Mount Sinai, that it was the zealot's task for the sake of God's law to slay those who commit unchastity with non-Jewish women?" Phinehas took the liberty of pointing out the law to his teacher Moses who had forgotten it, because, "when God's name is profaned, no man should consider the respect due to a teacher," wherefore Phinehas thought now only of establishing God's law, and in doing this it was necessary to recall it to Moses' mind. Moses indeed did not take it at all amiss, but said to Phinehas, "Let the reader of the letter be its bearer also," words by which

he called upon Phinehas himself to visit punishment upon the sinners.<sup>793</sup>

Phinehas was now for a time in doubt whether he should dare to punish the sinners, for it was to be expected that he would eventually meet his death in this way, being one against two, Zimri and his mistress Cozbi. When, however, the plague that God had sent upon Israel on account of their sins spread more and more rapidly, Phinehas determined to risk his life in trying to kill the sinners. "For," said he to himself, "the horse goes willingly into battle, and is ready to be slain only to be of service to its master. How much more does it behoove me to expose myself to death in order to sanctify God's name!"<sup>794</sup> He found himself all the more impelled to act thus because he could not well leave the punishment of the sinners to others. He said: "The tribe of Reuben can effect nothing in this instance, because their grandsire Reuben was himself suspected of an unchaste action; nothing is to be expected from the tribe of Simeon, for it follows the sinful example of its prince Zimri; the tribe of Judah cannot well be of use in this matter, because their grandsire Judah committed unchastity with his daughter-in-law Tamar; Moses himself is doomed to impotence because his wife Zipporah is a Midianite woman. Hence there remains nothing but for me to interpose."<sup>795</sup>

788. Tan. B. IV, 148; Tan. Balak 19; BaR 20.23; *Likkutim*, IV, 73b. The midrashic basis of this Haggadah is to be found in the words of Scripture (Num. 24.4): "And hang them up ... in the face of the sun." On the view that the cloud of glory did not protect the sinners, see text on pp. 579, 797; text on p. 849, and note 776.

789. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28d. On the number of the officers and judges, see text on p. 587.

790. Targum Yerushalmi and Rashi, Num. 25.4 (שמש נגד is taken to mean as long "as the sun shone"); Sanhedrin 34b (bottom), and Yerushalmi 10, 28b; Sifre N., 131. Compare with p. 690. According to the standard Halakah (Sanhedrin 6.4), only the bodies of the blasphem-



ers and idolaters were hung upon gallows, but not those of other criminals who were executed. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 6.9, likewise is of the opinion that the crime for which these sinners suffered death was apostasy from the Jewish religion, from which they were led astray by the Midianite women (comp. Num. 31.16; the Rabbis speak of the Moabite women in accordance with 61.1), who would not consent to marry Jews unless they abandoned their faith. It is to be noted that Josephus speaks of intermarriage between Jewish men and Moabite-Midianite women, whereas the Rabbis (comp. the references in note 785), in agreement with Philo, *Moses*, 1.5, and ps.-Philo, 18.18–19, maintain that the great sin committed at Shittim consisted in Israel's complete surrender to illicit passion; see, however, Philo, *De Monarchia* 7, where he seems to share Josephus' view. Compare footnote 40 on p. 862.

791. Sanhedrin 82a, and Yerushalmi 10, 28a; Tan. B. IV, 148; Tan. Balak 20; BaR 20.24; ShR 33.5; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 25.6. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 6.1–11, Zimri, at the instigation of his wife (notice the description of Cozbi as Zimri's wife, and comp. end of preceding note), sacrificed publicly to an idol; but Moses, fearing that by severe measures he might make a critical situation still worse, preferred not to proceed against this criminal nor against others who acted in a similar manner. All that Moses did was to exhort the people to remain faithful to God. Zimri, encouraged by the apparent weakness of Moses, called upon the people to throw down the fetters of the law, which Moses imposed upon them, and he publicly confessed that he had married a non-Jewish woman. As a free man he did not care for the law promulgated by Moses against intermarriage, nor for any other of his laws.—On the identification of Balak with Zur, see text on p. 760. On Jethro as the former idolatrous priest, see text on p. 493. Zimri's sarcastic remarks on Moses' marriage with a Midianite woman were without foundation. Moses married Zipporah before the revelation of the Torah; when the law forbidding intermarriage was promulgated, Zipporah had already for a long time been a pious proselyte; comp. quotation from a Midrash in *Imre No'am*, Balak (end). On Moses' lack of energy, on certain occasions, see text on p. 792.

792. Tan. B. IV, 148; Tan. Balak 20; BaR 20.24. For the opposing view see text on p. 746, where it is stated that a great distinction was conferred upon Moses by God, who did not reveal his burial-place to any man. Compare with p. 746 and note 644.

793. Sanhedrin 82a.

794. ShR 33.5; see also Sanhedrin 82a, where it is said that Phineas attempted to ward off the plague by performing a very pious act, the slaying of the sinners at the great risk to his own life. See also note 799.

795. Unknown Midrash quoted by Sabba', פנחס 128a; comp. PRE 47. A somewhat different version of this

Haggadah is given in Lekah, Num. 25.7 (at the end), which is partly based on Sifre N., 131, and Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29a.

## TWELVE MIRACLES

Phinehas now, prepared at the risk of his own life to punish Zimri for his sin, left the house of teaching where he had until now debated the case of Zimri with Moses and all other pious men, and had himself provided with a lance, having none with him because no armed man may enter a house of teaching. That his weapon might not betray him, he detached the upper iron part of the lance and hid it in his bosom, and leaned upon the wooden shaft as if it were a staff.<sup>796</sup> When he reached the house where Zimri and Cozbi were giving extravagant play to their passions, the people said to him, "Whence, Phinehas, and whither?" He replied, "Do ye not know that the tribe of Levi is always to be found where the tribe of Simeon is?" Then they permitted him to enter the house, but said, "It seems that even the Pharisees now permit intercourse with the heathen women." When Phinehas had entered, he drew his lance, "and thrust both of them through, the man of Israel, and the woman through her belly."<sup>797</sup>

Phinehas's fear that these two might attack him was not realized, for God performed no less than twelve miracles for Phinehas, which not only made it impossible for the sinners to attack him, but also showed the people that his action found favor in the sight of the Lord. The first miracle was that an angel would not allow the sinful couple to separate when Phinehas surprised them; the second miracle was that the angel stopped their mouths so that they could not cry out for help; the third miracle was that Phinehas's lance struck the man's and the woman's



pudenda; the fourth miracle was that the upper, iron part of the lance extended, so that Phineas could at one thrust pierce the man as well as the woman; the fifth miracle was that Phineas's arm was sufficiently strong to lift both upon the point of his lance; the sixth miracle was that the wooden shaft of the lance sustained the might of two persons; the seventh miracle was that the two bodies remained poised upon the lance and did not fall off; the eighth miracle was that the angel turned the shameless pair around, so that all might see that Phineas had surprised them in flagranti; the ninth miracle was that no blood flowed from them although they had been thrust through, or else Phineas would have been polluted; the tenth miracle was that the shameless couple did not give up the ghost so long as Phineas bore them upon the point of his lance, as he would otherwise have been polluted by their corpses; the eleventh miracle was that the angel raised the doorposts of the room so that Phineas might pass through with the sinners upon the point of his lance, and the twelfth miracle was that when the tribe of Simeon prepared to avenge Prince Zimri's death upon Phineas, the angel sent a plague upon them, so that they were impotent against him.<sup>798</sup>

Phineas was not, however, content with having punished the sinners, but tried also to reconcile God with Israel. He threw the two dead bodies upon the ground, saying to God, "Why, alas! Hast Thou on account of the sins of these two slain twenty-four thousand Israelites!" For this was the number that had been snatched away by the plague that God had sent upon Israel for their sins. The angels now wanted to plunge Phineas into death for his bold words, but God bade them desist, saying, "Leave him in peace, he is a zealot, the son of a zealot, and an appeaser of wrath, the son of an appeaser of wrath."<sup>799</sup>

796. Sanhedrin 82a–82b, and Yerushalmi 10, 29a; BaR 20.25; Tan. B. IV, 148–149; Tan. Balak 21; Sifre N., 131; PRE 47 (here it is said: Phineas seized the spear from Moses' hands); Targum Yerushalmi Num. 25.7.

797. Sanhedrin 82b, and Yerushalmi 10, 29a; Sifre N., 131; Ephraem, I, 166b.

798. BaR 20.25; Tan. B. IV, 149; Tan. Balak 21; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 25.8; Sifre N., 131 (in this passage two versions have been combined into one); Sanhedrin 82b, and Yerushalmi 10, 29a; PRE 47. According to the legend given in text on p. 780, the plague broke out before Zimri was slain by Phineas. See also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 6.12, and Philo, *Moses*, 1.55. The latter, combining Num. 25.5 with 25.9, speaks of the twenty-four thousand sinners slain by the pious who followed the example of Phineas. In *De Fortit.*, 7, Philo maintains, on the other hand, that the sinners were slain by God. PRE, *loc. cit.*, seems to assume that Phineas himself killed many (or all?) of the sinners. Comp. the following note.

799. Sanhedrin 82b, where it is said: The mixed multitude took to themselves wives from among the daughters of the tribe of Simeon, and the offspring of these intermarriages were the sinners who fell a prey to the allurements of the Moabite women. The plague that broke out in consequence of the sins committed by them purged Israel of this element. Etymological explanations of the names of Zimri and Cozbi, as well as of the names of their fathers, are given in Sanhedrin 82b; Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s. v. זמרי; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 25.14. Although these etymologies differ from one another, they are all based on the assumption that the names of these sinners indicate the unchaste and lewd life led by their bearers. According to Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*, Zimri bore different names, as he is identical with Saul, the son of a Canaanite woman (Gen. 46.10), and with Shelumiel (Num. 1.6) the prince of the tribe of Simeon.

## PHINEHAS REWARDED

While God expressed His entire satisfaction with Phineas's act, it found many adversaries among Israel, who would scornfully call after him, "Behold, this man, the grandson of one who fattened calves to offer them up to an idol, daring to slay a prince among Israel!" This spiteful remark referred to the fact that Phine-



has was descended on his mother's side not only from Joseph, but from Jethro also who, before his conversion to Judaism, had been a priest of idols. God therefore said to Moses, "Phinehas the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, hath turned My wrath away from the children of Israel, hence I offer him My greeting of peace, for it was he who, zealous for My sake, preserved the seed of Abraham." The reason God designated Phinehas as the son of Eleazar and the grandson of Aaron was that He wanted to stop the mouths of Phinehas's detractors, who pretended that he was nothing but a grandson of the heathen priest Jethro, ignoring the fact that he was at the same time the grandson of Aaron, the high priest before the Lord.<sup>800</sup>

God was not content with the greeting of peace, but bade Moses tell Phinehas: "With thy mouth hast thou defended Israel, therefore as thy priest's portion shalt thou receive the jawbone of animals; with thy lance didst thou aim at the bellies of the shameless couple, hence shalt thou receive the bellies of the animals; and as with thy arm thou didst labor to slay the sinners, so for thy portion shalt thou receive the shoulder of the animals. As, moreover, thou didst strive to make peace among mankind, so shalt thou bestow the priestly blessing upon My children, and bless them with peace."<sup>801</sup> As a reward for his pious deed Phinehas was appointed by God as a priest with all the rights of priesthood, that enabled him to lay claim to the twenty-four tributes to priests.<sup>802</sup>

But the highest reward to Phinehas was that God granted him everlasting priesthood. For Phinehas is none other than the prophet Elijah. His task it is to make atonement for Israel, and without tasting of death, he constantly discharges the duties of his everlasting priesthood until the resurrection of the dead, offering up daily two sacrifices for the children of Israel, and upon the skins of these animals recording the events of

each day.<sup>803</sup> God furthermore said to Phinehas: "Thou hast in this world established peace between Me and Israel; in the future world also shalt thou establish peace between Me and them." He was therefore destined to be the forerunner of the Messiah to establish before his coming peace on earth.<sup>804</sup>

When Israel addicted themselves to an immoral life at Shittim, the nations of the world rejoiced greatly, for they knew that God had distinguished Israel before all other nations, and had given them the Torah, only because their life had been moral. "Now," said they, "the crown has been taken from Israel's head, their pride is departed, for now they are no better than we." God, however, raised up Israel from their fall by sending the plague upon the sinners at Shittim, and thus purified Israel from them, so that they could again, as of yore, be proud of their family purity, through which they had been distinguished from all other nations.

God therefore ordered them to take a census, to show in this way that Israel remained true to the traditions of their ancestor Abraham by keeping their family life pure.<sup>805</sup> This census showed that several tribes had lost entire divisions since the time that passed between the entrance of Israel into Egypt, and their entrance into the promised land. Among the tribes that had perished were such as had already lost their lives in Egypt, those, namely, who had died during the days of darkness because they were such sinners that they did not want to leave Egypt. But heaviest of all were the losses in the tribes of Benjamin and of Simeon, for in the battle between the Levites and the other tribes after Aaron's death, when the latter, for fear of the Canaanites, wanted to return to Egypt, the Benjamites lost no less than seven divisions. All of the twenty-four thousand men that died from the plague at Shittim belonged, however, to the tribe of Simeon which, at the end of the march



through the desert, had dwindled down to less than half its number. The tribe of Dan, on the other hand, had turned out to be very fruitful, for, whereas at the entrance into Egypt it had consisted of only one division, it later exceeded in number all the other tribes, except the tribe of Judah.<sup>806</sup>

800. Sanhedrin 82b, and Yerushalmi 9, 27b (in this passage it is stated that they intended to excommunicate Phineas on account of his rashness); Sifre N., 13; WR 33.4; Sotah 43a; BaR 21.3; Tan. B. IV, 151; PR 13, 115 (Sabba' Balak, 127c, reads בזויה in the Pesikta); comp. vol. I, p. 289. According to Julius Africanus, *Epistola ad Aristidem*, Putiel, the maternal grandfather of Phineas (comp. Exod. 6.25), belonged to the tribe of Judah; but the Rabbis are of the opinion that Putiel is another name for Jethro or Joseph. See references at the beginning of the note; MHG II, 55=Yelammedenu in *'Aruk*, s. v. פט 2.

801. Yelammedenu in *'Aruk*, s. v. זרוע: Midrash Aggada Num. 25.13 (from *'Aruk*?); Sifre D., 165; Midrash Tannaim 107–108; Hullin 134b; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 25.13; Ephraem I, 166D. For another symbolical explanation of the priestly gifts, see Philo, *Special. Leg., De Praem. Sacerd.* 3.

802. Sifre N., 131; Zebahim 101a. For the opposite view, see text on p. 661, according to which Phineas became priest at the same time as his father and grandfather.

803. *Batte Midrashot* IV, 32 (this is the only passage which contains the legend concerning the daily sacrifice offered by Phineas-Elijah; compare with p. 996); Sifre N., 131; BaR 31.3; Tan. Phineas 1. Comp. the following note.

804. Yelammedenu in *'Aruk*, s. v. זרוע and in Yalkut I, 771=Midrash Aggada, Num. 25.13, where no source is indicated; Targum Yerushalmi Num., *loc. cit.* (on the text, see *Imre No'am, ad loc.*). On Phineas=Elijah, compare footnote 3 on p. 993. As a reward for his zeal Phineas received the greatest gift granted to man, and this only by God, namely, "peace"; Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 1.55; an almost identical statement is found in BaR 21.1. On the decree issued by Phineas against "the wine of Gentiles", see text on p. 798.

805. Esfah in Yalkut I, 773. Compare with p. 689. the census, see Tan. B. IV, 152; Tan. Pinehas 4; BaR 21.7.

806. Midrash Aggada, Num. 26.12, 38, and 40; BaR 21.8; Tan. Pinehas 5. Concerning those who perished in Egypt during the three days of darkness, see text on p. 525, and text on p. 569. According to ps.-Philo, 14.15–

16, only one-fiftieth part of Israel left Egypt, because they believed not in God. This is a midrashic explanation of וחמשים (Exod. 13.1–8). See Mekilta Beshallah (פתיחתא) 1, 24a, and 138 Mekilta RS, 38, where it is said that forty-nine fiftieths died during the three days of darkness. Comp. also Jerome, *Epistola ad Damasum*, 36 (ed. Migne, I, 458). On the losses sustained by the tribes of Benjamin and Simeon, see text on p. 746, and note 799.

## THE DAUGHTERS OF ZELOPHEHAD

But there was another purpose beside that of establishing Israel's family purity in taking the census at Arbot-Moab. For when God at the exodus from Egypt put His people into Moses' hands, He entrusted them to him after having counted them, and now when Moses was about to depart from this world, he wanted to return the dock that God had entrusted to him, truly numbered, into God's hand.<sup>807</sup>

After the number of the nation had been determined, God ordered Moses to divide the promised land among them according to their numbers.<sup>808</sup> Jacob had indeed upon his death-bed determined what parts of the land were to fall to the lot of each tribe, but in order that the tribes might not quarrel among themselves, God decreed that the assignments be made by lot.<sup>809</sup> After the conquest of the land Joshua and Eleazar saw to the drawing of lots. On this occasion the miracle came to pass that whenever Eleazar drew a lot from the urn, the lot itself announced the words, "I am the lot of Thus-and-So." In this way was avoided the possibility of having the malcontents declare that Eleazar had, at the drawing of lots, been partial to his friends and had assigned to them the lots they wished for.<sup>810</sup>

When Zelophehad's daughters, that had lived piously and wisely like their father and their ancestors, heard that the land was being divided among the male members of the tribe,



but not among the female, they took counsel together, discussing what they could do, so that they might not find themselves come out empty-handed. They said: "God's love is not like the love of a mortal father; the latter prefers his sons to his daughters, but He that created the world extends His love to women as well as to men, 'His tender mercies are over all His works.' " They now hoped that God would take pity on them and give them their share of the promised land, which they loved with as great devotion as their grandsire Joseph, who had upon his death-bed exhorted his children to transfer his body to the Holy Land.<sup>811</sup>

Being wise and learned, they waited for a propitious time to lay their case before Moses, an opportunity which they found when Moses in the house of teaching recited the law concerning the levirate marriage. They now advanced and said: "If we are as good as our brothers, then do we lay claim to our father's inheritance, and to his share of the land; but if we are not to be considered as sons, then should our mother have to marry her brother-in-law, as our father has left no issue, since we do not count."<sup>812</sup> They furthermore pointed out that their father had been neither one of the spies nor one of Korah's followers, who had, owing to their sins, lost claim to their share of the land,<sup>813</sup> but that he had found his death when a number of men, in spite of Moses' warnings, had presumed to storm the mountain occupied by the Amalekites and the Canaanites.<sup>814</sup> "Had our father," continued they, "left behind him a son, and the latter were now also dead, then should we lay no claim to inheritance if this son had left a living child, were it even a daughter; but as we are our father's only descendants, give us, we pray, 'a possession among the brethren of our father.' "

The fervent longing of these women to have a share in the Holy Land shows how much better and more pious were the women of this gen-

eration than the men. The latter said, "Let us make a captain, and let us return to Egypt," whereas the women said, "Give us a possession among the brethren of our father."<sup>815</sup> But not only during the rebellion that was kindled by the spies did the women remain true to Moses and to their God, but on other occasions also it was they who tried to build up what the men had torn down. At the worship of the Golden Calf, too, they tried to restrain the men from sin, hence it was the men only that had to die in the desert because they had been tempted to rebellion by the spies, whereas the women entered into the promised land.<sup>816</sup> Among them also there was even to be found a woman as old as Jochebed—the daughter of Levi by his union with Otah—who survived her sons Moses and Aaron, as well as her daughter Miriam, and who was permitted to enter the promised land at the age of two hundred and fifty years.<sup>817</sup>

The daughters of Zelophehad did not bring their request directly to Moses, but at first urged their plea before the lowest officers, the captains of tens. These, however, said: "This is an important matter since it touches upon laws of inheritance, hence it does not become us to decide this matter; greater men than we must settle it." Hence they sent them to the captains of fifties. When these saw that out of consideration for them the captains of tens would not pass judgment, they sent the daughters of Zelophehad on to the captains of hundreds, that were their superiors. But these too, out of consideration for the higher judges, would not settle this matter, and so the daughters of Zelophehad came to the captains of thousands, who sent them to the princes of the tribes, until they came at last to the highest authority, to Moses. Now Moses might well have decided this case without further ado, but in his meekness he thought, "There is still a higher authority than I, to wit, God," and he bade them await God's judgment.<sup>818</sup> The



answer that he received from God was as follows: "The daughters of Zelophehad have the law on their side, for what they desire is in accordance with the law that was written in heaven by Me; give them therefore their father's inheritance, and also two parts of their grandfather Hepher's possessions, for their father Zelophehad was his firstborn and was therefore entitled to a double share."<sup>819</sup>

The daughters of Zelophehad, who in spite of their years—the youngest of them had attained forty—had not yet been married, now entered into wedlock, and according to God's bidding that Moses communicated to them, they married their uncle's sons, although they were free to marry whomsoever they chose.<sup>820</sup>

"God works good through the good, and evil through the evil." The chapter of the laws of God that was published by Moses as an addition to the incident of Zelophehad's daughters would have been given without them also, but God rewarded these women for their piety by making them the direct occasion of this chapter of the law.<sup>821</sup> At the same time this case of these women was to teach several lessons to Moses. He who, since he had been made God's messenger to the people, had lived apart from his wife was not to grow too conceited on account of the sacrifice he had made to his sacred calling; hence in the last year of his life there appeared before him the daughters of Zelophehad, who of their own accord had not married because they had not found mates that they considered suitable. Then, too, Moses could not answer the legal question that the daughters of Zelophehad presented to him, and had to ask God's counsel, which was a second lesson to Moses. At the appointment of the elders, Moses earnestly told them, "The cause that is too hard for ye, bring it to me, and I will hear it," and in punishment of these boastful words God so brought it to pass that he could give no answer to this request of the women,

whereupon God said to him, "Didst not thou say, 'the cause that is too hard for ye, bring it to me?' and now thou canst not properly settle this legal question of the women."

A similar punishment for a similar offense was visited upon David who, well aware of his erudition, said, "The laws of the Torah do I grasp as easily and as quickly as songs." God then said, "As truly as thou livest, thou shalt hereafter forget a Biblical law that even the school children know." So, too, it came to pass that when he had the Holy Ark fetched from Gibeah to Zion, he forgot the Biblical instruction that the Ark may be carried only upon the shoulder, and had it lifted upon a wagon. Then occurred the miracle that the Ark leaped of itself into the air, whereas the oxen that pulled the wagon fell down, whereupon Uzzah, to whom the transportation of the Ark had been entrusted, stretched out his hand to prevent the Ark from falling and himself fell dead upon the ground, for "a sin that is committed in ignorance of the law is accounted as if it had been intentional." Uzzah should have been mindful of the law that the Ark was not to be lifted upon a cart, hence his punishment. God thereupon said to David, "Didst thou not say, 'Thy statutes have been my songs?' and thou hast not even mastered the words of the Bible, 'Unto the sons of Kohath he gave none: because the service of the sanctuary belonged unto them; they bare it upon their shoulders.'"

---

807. BaR 21.7; Tan. B. IV, 152; Tan. Pinehas 4. Concerning the census after the exodus, see text on p. 636; BaR 1.10; Lekah, Num. 1.1.

808. Baba Batra 117a–118a and 121b (the opposite view is given here to the effect that the land was divided according to the numbers of those who left Egypt); Sifre N., 132; BaR 21.8. Comp. Friedmann on Sifre, *loc. cit.*

809. Tan. Pinehas 6; BaR 21.9; Sifre N., 132.

810. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 773; Tan. Pinehas 6; BaR 21.9. Compare with pp. 851–852.



811. Sifre N., 133; Sifre Z., 155–157; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 27.1; BaR 21.11; Tan. B. IV, 153; Tan. Pinehas 7.

812. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 773 (end); BaR 21.11; Tan. B. IV, 153; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 27.4; Pinehas 7; Baba Batra, Mishnah 8.16, and Talmud 119b. The sisters were all of equal learning, wisdom, and piety; hence in approaching Moses and the elders, each one of them addressed one sentence to the leaders, and accordingly Num. 27.3–4 Consists of five sentences. See Yelammedenu, *loc. cit.*; Sifre N. 133; Sifre Z., 157; Baba Batra 120a.

813. Sifre N., 133; Sifre Z., 157; Baba Batra 118b; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 27.3. Comp. the following note.

814. Sifre N., 113 and 133; Sifre Z., 103–104 and 157. Compare with pp. 690 and 716. According to Zohar III, 157a and 205b, Zelophehad, though of noble descent, was an ignorant man, and therefore was not appointed prince of his tribe. Disappointed in his hopes, he joined those who complained against God and Moses (see Num. 21.5–6), and was killed by the serpents, thus atoning with his death for his sin.

815. Sifre N., 133; Sifre Z., 155; BaR 21.10; Tan. B. IV, 153; Tan. Pinehas 7. Comp. Baba Batra 119b, and note 546.

816. BaR 16.10; Tan. B. IV, 153; Tan. Pinehas 7. Compare with p. 620 and note 546.

817. Seder 'Olam 9. Compare with pp. 668, 726, and 810. On Otah, see footnote 33 on p. 474.

818. Sifre Z., 157; BaR 21.12; Tan. B. IV, 153; Tan. Pinehas 9; Targum Yerushalmi 27.2. In Sifre N., 133 and 68, as well as in Baba Batra 119b, is given a dissenting view, according to which Zelophehad's daughters placed their case before Moses and the elders, while they were sitting in the "house of study." An entirely different view is found in Zohar III, 205. Zelophehad's daughters did not place their case before Moses, because they feared lest he should be prejudiced against them on account of the enmity their father showed toward Moses (comp. note 814). They therefore preferred to have their case decided by the lower authorities. But when none of the judges was able to render a decision, and the case was brought before Moses, he, in his great modesty, did not wish to display his superior knowledge, and said that he would put the case before God. Comp. also the remarks of R. Bahya on the long  $\text{ל}$  of  $\text{משפט}$  (Num. 27.5). According to another version, God took it ill of Moses for having withdrawn himself from the case of Zelophehad's daughters, and therefore, immediately after this episode, He informed him of his impending death, saying unto him: "Thou couldst withdraw thyself from acting as a judge in the case of Zelophehad's daughters; but thou wilt have to submit thyself to My judicial de-

cree against thee." See Shir 1.10; Midrash Aggada, Num. 27.5 (as an explanation of the long  $\text{ל}$  in  $\text{משפט}$ ). Comp. note 822.

819. Sifre N. 134; Sifre Z. 157–158; Baba Batra, Mishnah 8.3; Babli 118b–119a; Yerushalmi 8, 16a. The tannaitic sources just quoted as well as Philo, *Moses*, 2(3).31, find in Num. 27.7 words of high praise for Zelophehad's daughters. Comp. note 821.

820. Baba Batra 119b. For the contrary view see Sifre Z. 157, where strong objections are raised against the opinion which considers them to have been old spinsters.

821. Baba Batra 119b (top); Shabbat 32a. The proverb "God works good, etc." is of frequent occurrence see Tosefta Yoma 5(2).12; BaR 3.18. Compare also with p. 586 (with regard to Jethro's counsel concerning the appointment of Judges).

## THE APPOINTMENT OF JOSHUA

When Moses heard God's decision in the case of the daughters of Zelophehad, which turned out in their favor so that they inherited their father's property, he thought, "This is a propitious time to urge a plea before the Lord, for if daughters are to inherit their father, then must my sons inherit my office."<sup>822</sup> He then began to pray to God that his successors, who, he hoped, were also to be his descendants, might be worthy leaders of their people. He said: "O my Lord, before whom come the spirits of all human beings, so that Thou knowest the spirit of each—whose spirit is proud, and whose spirit is meek; whose spirit is patient and whose spirit is restive; mayest Thou set over Thy community a man who is gifted with strength, with wisdom, with beauty, and with decorum, so that his conduct may not give offense to the people."<sup>823</sup> O Lord of the world! Thou knowest each man's views, and knowest that each man has a view of his own, hence, as I am about to depart from this world, I pray Thee, appoint a leader over them that will know how to deal with each man according to his views."<sup>824</sup>



Moses, being a truly pious man, thought when he saw his end approach, not of himself, but of the welfare of the community, for whom he implored a good and worthy leader.<sup>825</sup> Hence he furthermore said to God: "Let not my successor share my fate, for although I accepted the guidance of the people only after long hesitation, owing to Thy urgings and requests, still I shall not be permitted to lead them into the promised land. Mayest Thou then deal differently with my successor than Thou hast dealt with me, and permit him not only to lead the people in the desert, but to take them into the promised land."<sup>826</sup> He, however, shall be a man 'which may go out before them,' who, unlike the kings of the heathens, that send their legions to war but themselves remain at home, shall himself lead Israel to war. But he shall also be a man 'which may come in before them;' may it be granted him to see the number of those returning from war no less than that of those going into war. O Lord of the world!" continued Moses, "Thou hast led Israel out of Egypt, not to punish them for their sins, but to forgive them, and Thou hast not led them out of Egypt that they may be without leaders, but that they may indeed have leaders. I insist, therefore, that Thou shouldst tell me whether or not Thou wilt grant them a leader."

This is one of the five occasions upon which Moses implored God to give him an answer to his question. When he saw that his appearance before Pharaoh only occasioned him to bring greater and greater cruelties upon Israel, he said to God, "Tell me if Thou wilt now deliver them, or not." He also demanded God's answer to the question, "Shall I now fall into their hands or not?" when at Rephidim, on account of the dearth of water, he was threatened by the people. The third occasion was when he prayed to God for Miriam's recovery, and said, "Tell me, wilt Thou heal her or not?" And lastly when, af-

ter long and fervent prayer, he asked God whether he should be permitted to enter into the Holy Land, he said, "Let me know if I am to enter the Holy Land or not."<sup>827</sup>

God fulfilled this wish of Moses, saying: "Thou hast now requested to be informed concerning thy immediate successor. I shall do more than this, and show thee all the judges and prophets that I will allow to arise for My children from now on to the resurrection of the dead." Then He showed Moses his successor Joshua, his successor's successor, Othniel, and all the other judges and prophets. Then God added these words: "Of all these that I have shown thee, each will have his individual spirit and his individual knowledge, but such a man as thou now wishest for thy successor, whose spirit is to embrace in itself the spirits of sixty myriads of Israel, so that he may speak to each one of them according to his understanding, such a man as this will not arise until the end of time. The Messiah will be inspired with a spirit that in itself will embrace the spirits of all mankind.

"But now, concerning thy immediate successor, know then that he that watcheth the fig tree shall eat of its fruits, and he that waiteth upon his master will be promoted to honor, and thy sons shall not inherit the leadership because they concerned themselves little with the Torah. Joshua shall be thy successor, who served thee with devotion and showed thee great veneration, for at morn and eve he put up the benches in thy house of teaching and spread the carpets over them; he served thee as far as he was able, and Israel shall now know that he will therefore receive his reward."<sup>828</sup> Take then Joshua, a man such as thou didst wish as a successor, whom thou hast proven, and who knows how to deal with people of every tendency, 'and lay thy hand upon him.' Give him an opportunity, while thou art still alive, to speak in public and to pronounce the law, so that Israel may not after thy



death contemptuously say of thy successor, 'As long as his teacher was alive, he dared not pronounce judgment, and now he wishes to do so!'<sup>829</sup> Although Joshua, who is not of thy kin, is to be thy successor, I shall nevertheless be mindful of the law that 'no inheritance shall remove from one tribe to another tribe,' for the dignity of leadership is to be reserved for thy family; Joshua 'shall stand even before Eleazar the priest, thy brother's son, who shall ask counsel for him according to the judgment of the Urim.'<sup>830</sup>

After Moses in kindly words had induced Joshua to accept the leadership after his death, pointing out to him the great rewards that in the future world await the leaders of Israel, 'he took Joshua, and set him before Eleazar the priest, and before all the congregation,' that all might thereafter acknowledge him as his successor.<sup>831</sup> He then bade Joshua, who had been sitting on the floor like all the rest, rise and seat himself upon a bench beside him. Joshua seated himself with the words, "Blessed be the Lord that hath through Moses bestowed the Torah upon Israel."<sup>832</sup> Moses honored Joshua furthermore by interrupting his discourse as soon as Joshua entered the house of teaching, and resuming it only when he had taken his seat.<sup>833</sup> Moses also bade a herald proclaim throughout all the camp, "This man Joshua is worthy of being appointed by God as His shepherd."<sup>834</sup>

Moses distinguished Joshua not because God had ordered him to do so, but because he was sincerely glad to pass his dignity on to him, just as a father is glad to leave his possessions to his son. So, too, whereas God had bidden Moses to lay only one hand upon Joshua's head and in this way put his honor upon him, Moses fulfilled God's command by laying both his hands upon Joshua, and by this action bestowed upon him not only insight and understanding, but also a radiant countenance like that of Moses, from whose face issued rays like those of the sun. In

giving all these qualities to Joshua, Moses lost nothing. Moses' wisdom was like a torch, whereas Joshua's may be compared to a candle only, and just as a torch loses none of its intensity if a candle is lighted therefrom, so little was Moses' wisdom diminished by the wisdom he gave to Joshua.<sup>835</sup> The rays, too, that emanated from Joshua's countenance were weaker than those from Moses', and not until the crossing of the Jordan did they attain their full intensity, so that upon beholding them, "the people feared him as they feared Moses."<sup>836</sup>

Joshua's appointment by God as Moses' successor had been Moses' most cherished wish, but he had not ventured to give expression to it, for he was mindful of the punishment God had sent over him when he had entreated Him to send Aaron instead of himself to deliver Israel out of Egypt, and from that time he feared to make any proposals whatsoever to God. He was like the child who had once been burned by a coal, and then seeing a brightly sparkling jewel, took it to be a burning coal, and dared not touch it.<sup>837</sup>

---

822. BaR 21.11–13 (this passage has also the dissenting view that Moses had hoped to lead Israel into the Holy Land); Tan. Pinehas 7–11; Tan. B. IV, 153, and I, 192; Sifre D., 17; Midrash Tannaim 10; Mekilta RS, 91; Koheleth 8.17; Shemuel 14, 88. Compare with pp. 913 and 923, as well as text on p. 665. According to *Otiyyot Gedolot* in *Leket Midrashim*, 23a, and *Eshkol*, 45a, 118, the long ך at the end of the word משהך indicates Moses' punishment for his boastful words; comp. note 818. On Moses' continence, see text on p. 700. As to the four legal questions which he was unable to decide, see text on p. 690; *Ozar Midrashim*, 47 (this passage counts six cases). Comp. note 862.

823. 2 ARN 30 (first version 17), 65; BaR 21.14; Tan. Pinehas 11; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 776; Sifre Z., 161. As to Moses' wish to have Joshua as his successor, see text on p. 789.

824. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 776. More amplifications of the prayers of Moses for a right leader of the people are given in Sifre N., 139; Shir 1.7; Midrash Shir 10b–11a; Targum Song of Songs 1.7–8.



825. Sifre N., 138; Midrash Shir 1.10–11a.

826. BaR 21.15; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 776. On Moses' hesitation to undertake the leadership of Israel, see text on pp. 509–510.

827. Sifre N., 138–139; Sifre Z., 160–162 (בני דויה) means here “those in misery”; Sifre D., 26; Midrash Tannaim, 15. On the *Jewish* Kings participating in the combat themselves, see text on p. 900.

828. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 776, on Num. 27.16 and 22; BaR 12.9 and 21.15; Tan. Pinehas 11. Compare with p. 841. Concerning the future prophets and judges shown to Moses, see text on pp. 641, 814–816.

829. Sifre N., 140, and Sifre D., 305; Sifre Z., 162; BaR 21.15; Tan. Pinehas 11; Midrash Tannaim 185.

830. Sifre D., 305; BaR 21.15. See also Enoch 89.39, where the two leaders who were at the head of Israel at the entry into the Holy Land refer to Joshua and Eliezer. Compare also with pp. 797–798.

831. Sifre N., 141; Sifre Z., 62.

832. Sifre N., 140; Sifre D., 305; Midrash Tannaim 180; Assumption of Moses 12.2. According to Megillah 21a, from the time of Moses until Rabban Gamaliel the Elder, it was customary, both for the master and the disciple, to study the Torah, standing. Comp., however, Mo'ed Katan 16b (bottom); Baba Mezi'a 84b; Sanhedrin 17a; ARN 6, 27–28. See note 893, and Ginzberg's discussion of this point in *Hazofeh* III, 121.

833. Sifre N., 140.

834. Midrash Aggada, Num. 27.20. On the herald, see text on p. 810. It is a wise rule “to tell a man part of his praise in his presence, but not all of it;” accordingly Moses assembled all the people while Joshua was absent, and spoke to them of their new leader's great virtues; Lekah, Deut. 31.6.

835. Sifre N., 141; Sifre Z., 163 (only the first edition of the Yalkut indicates the source); Philo, *De Caritate*, 3. Compare with p. 696.

836. Tehillim 21, 179. This passage also states that the rays which will emanate from the countenance of the Messiah will spread a stronger lustre than those of Moses and Joshua. Does this mean that the Messiah will be greater than Moses? See Tan. B. I, 139, where it is said: The Messiah is greater than the (three) patriarchs, more exalted than Moses, and superior to the angels. Maimonides, *Yad ha-Hazakah*, *Teshubah* 9.2, on the other hand, explicitly states that the Messiah will be “a great prophet, akin to Moses.” Concerning Joshua's rays, see text on p. 813; see footnote 6 on p. 841; see footnote 14 on p. 843.

837. Sifre Z., 162; Sifre N., 139, where it is said: It was Moses' sincerest desire to have Joshua as his successor, and yet he did not give expression to it in his prayer, in order not to arouse animosity between the new leader and Aaron's sons, who might feel offended at not having been

selected to succeed their uncle. Comp. also Philo, *De Caritate*, 1–3. As to Moses' punishment for his reluctance to accept the office offered to him, see text on p. 514.

## MOSES' LEGACY TO JOSHUA

After Moses had announced Joshua as his successor before all the congregation, he disclosed to him that the course of his own life was run, and that he would now depart to his fathers. As his inheritance he gave to Joshua a book of prophecy, which Joshua was to anoint with cedar-oil, and in an earthen vessel to lay upon the spot that from the creation of the world God had created for it, so that His name might there be invoked. This book contained in brief outline the history of Israel from the entrance into the promised land to the establishment of God's kingdom upon earth, when, in wrath and indignation on account of His children, the Lord will rise from His Throne of power and proceed from His holy dwelling.

When Joshua heard the words of Moses as they are written in his Holy Scriptures, he rent his garments and fell at Moses' feet, who, himself in tears, yet comforted him. Joshua, however, said: “How canst thou comfort me concerning the bitter word that thou hast spoken, which abounds in sobs and tears, that thou art to depart from thy people? What place will receive thee? What monument will point to thy grave? Or who will dare to remove thy corpse from one place to another as if it were an ordinary mortal's? All dying men receive a grave upon earth according to their rank, but thy grave extends from sunrise to sunset, from South to North; all the world is thy tomb. Thou goest. Who now, O master, shall care for this people? Who shall take pity upon them and be a guide upon their way? Who shall pray for them incessantly, that I



may lead them into the land of their fathers? How shall I provide food for them according to their wish, or drink according to their desire? From the beginning they numbered sixty myriads, and now, thanks to thy prayers, they have greatly multiplied. Whence shall I draw insight and understanding to give them judgment and counsel? Even the kings of the Amorites, hearing that we desire to attack them, will say, 'Let us now set out against them, for there is now no longer among them the many-sided, incomprehensible and sacred spirit, worthy of the Lord, the ever-faithful master of the word, the Divine prophet of all the world, the most consummate master of this age. If now our enemies once more transgress before the Lord, they will have no defender to offer up prayers for them before God, as Moses had done, the great messenger who at all hours of the day kneeled down and prayed, lifting up his eyes to Him who rules all the world, and constantly reminding Him of His covenant with the Patriarchs, and appeasing Him with invocations.' For thus will the Amorites speak saying, 'He is no longer among them; arise then and let us wipe them from the face of the earth.' But what then, O my lord Moses, will become of this people?"

When Joshua had spoken these words, he cast himself once more at Moses' feet. Moses seized his hand, raised him to a seat before them, and answered him, saying: "Do not underestimate thyself, O Joshua, but be light of heart, and pay heed to my words. All the nations that dwell in the universe hath God created, and us also. Them and us did He foresee from the beginning of the creation of the universe even unto the end of the world, and He overlooked nothing, even down to the smallest, but He at the same time foresaw and foredoomed everything. All that was to happen in this universe did God foresee and foredoom, and lo! it cometh to pass. He appointed me for them and

for their sins, that for them I might make prayer and exhortation. Not for my fitness or my strength was I chosen, but only through the grace of His mercy and His long-suffering. For I assure thee, Joshua, not on account of the excellence of this people wilt thou destroy the heathens; all the fastnesses of heaven and the foundations of the universe were created and approved by God, and are beneath the ring of His right hand. Those, therefore, that maintain and fulfil God's commandments thrive and prosper, but those who sin and neglect the commandments will not receive the promised possessions, and will be punished by the heathens with many plagues. But that He should wholly destroy or abandon them is impossible, for God will step forth, who foresaw everything even to eternity, and whose covenant is firmly founded, in accordance with the oath which He swore to the Patriarchs. Then the hands of the angel will be filled and he will be appointed chief, and he will forthwith avenge them of their enemies."<sup>838</sup>

---

838. Assumption of Moses 1, *seq.* The uniqueness of Moses' leadership is emphasized also Sotah 14a and Tan. B. V, 13.

## MOSES' LAST CAMPAIGN

Balaam's prophecy, "He shall not lie down until he eat of the prey, and drink the blood of the slain," was very quickly fulfilled. Shortly before his death, before he lay down to everlasting sleep, it was granted Moses to rejoice in the death of Balaam and the five Midianite kings allied to him.<sup>839</sup> Israel's sinful profanation at Shittim, occasioned by Balaam's wicked advice, sorely smote Moses' heart. God had appointed Moses



as lord of the angels, who through fire and cloud had to step aside to make room for him and let him pass, yea, at his appearance they rose from their seats to do him honor. As he had power over the angels, so too did he rule the sea, which he clove at will and then commanded to resume its former guise, and the treasures of hail, which he employed to send hail over the Egyptians. Now this man, who was sovereign over the angels and over the forces of nature, could only weep when Israel committed whoredom with the daughters of Moab and Midian. To comfort Moses, God now said: "As truly as thou livest, thou shalt not depart out of this world until thou shalt have avenged those who tempted Israel to sin. 'Avenge the children of Israel of the Midianites: afterward shalt thou be gathered unto thy people.'"<sup>840</sup> God at the same time reproached Moses for his despair and lack of energy at Shittim, saying: "When all the tribes of Israel, save the tribe of Levi, were against thee, thou didst not then lack courage to stand up against all the people on account of the worship of the Golden Calf; how much more then at Shittim, when all Israel save only one tribe, the tribe of Simeon, were on thy side, shouldst thou have proven thyself sufficiently strong to keep back the sinners from their sin!"<sup>841</sup>

When Moses received the command to wage war upon the people that had tempted Israel to sin, he said to God: "Yesterday didst Thou say to me, 'Vex not Moab,' and now Thou sayest, 'Avenge the children of Israel.' " God, however, replied: "When I said, 'Vex not Moab,' I named these people after their grandsire, the son of Lot, but now that through their own fault they have lost the claim to kind treatment from Israel, I shall no longer think of their grandsire Abraham's kinsman, but shall call them Midianim, 'they that lost their claim.'"<sup>842</sup>

Lot's descendants now not only had no further claims to exemption, but a command was

given to Moses to treat them with still greater hostility than the other nations. Until then it had been Israel's duty not to fight against a city of the heathens unless they had first proclaimed peace to it and the heathens had refused to accept it, but now they were instantly to proceed to hostility; and whereas they had formerly been prohibited from destroying the trees that surrounded a city, they were now ruthlessly to destroy all that lay in their path. This wrath of God against those who had tempted Israel to sin was justified, for "the tempter to sin is worse than the murderer, since he who slays another robs him of this world alone, but he that tempts another deprives him of this world and the world beyond." Two nations, the Egyptians and the Edomites, attacked Israel with the sword, but God nevertheless said, "Thou shalt not abhor an Edomite; thou shalt not abhor an Egyptian." The Moabites and Ammonites, on the other hand, tempted Israel to sin, hence God's word concerning them was as follows: "An Ammonite or Moabite shall not enter into the assembly of the Lord, even to the tenth generation."<sup>843</sup>

Israel received the command to make war upon the Midianites at the same time as that to fight the Moabites, but whereas Moses at once waged war against Midian, it was not until David's time that a relentless war was waged against Moab. There were several reasons why the Midianites were to receive their punishment before the Moabites. Firstly, Moab's hatred against Israel was not quite without foundation, for although the Israelites had not attacked them in war, still they had inspired them with great fear by pillaging the Moabite region, hence the Moabites tried by every means to be rid of Israel. Midian, on the other hand, had no cause for undertaking hostilities against Israel, and yet they not only joined the Moabites, but outdid them in their hatred against Israel. Furthermore Moab wanted to kill Israel, but Midian wanted to



tempt them to sin, which is worse than death.<sup>844</sup> The delay in punishing Moab also corresponded in other ways to God's plan, for the Moabite Ruth was destined to become the mother of the dynasty of David, hence God said to Israel: "Wait yet a while in this matter of the war against the Moabites: I have lost something valuable among them. As soon as I have found it, ye shall avenge yourselves of them."<sup>845</sup>

God indicated that the war against Midian would be Moses' last in these words, "Avenge the children of Israel of the Midianites: afterward shalt thou be gathered unto thy people." The connection between the war and Moses' death is as follows. When God announced to Moses that he was to die on this side of the Jordan, Moses implored God with the words: "O Lord of the world! Is it right that death should so soon overtake me, that have seen Thy ways, Thy actions, and Thy path?" God replied, saying: "Moses, if a long life were better for men, surely I should not then have permitted thy ancestors to taste of death; but it is better for thee if thou art taken from this world than if thou wert to remain in it." Moses was not, however, satisfied with this answer from God, whereupon God said: "Well then, thou mayest live many years longer, yea, thou shalt live even to a thousand years, but know thou that Israel will not then conquer their foes, and that Midian will not be brought under their yoke." In this way was Moses made to yield by God, for he thought, "Whether I die to-day or to-morrow matters little, for death will come to me at last. I would rather see Israel conquer their foes and bring Midian under their yoke than that I should live longer." God therefore bade Moses avenge Israel of the Midianites, if he was thereupon ready to die.<sup>846</sup>

Moses then thought: "I know that if I were now to go into battle against the Midianites, the people would declare that I wished for my own death, since God made it dependent upon the

punishing of the Midianites, and my life is assured me as long as ever I wish to put it off." This consideration did not, however, determine him, for, fully aware that his enterprise of war would hasten his death, he nevertheless set about the execution of this war as soon as God commanded him. Wherever the execution of a Divine command, or the possibility of furthering Israel's cause was concerned, Moses gave no thought to himself, even though it touched his life. Not so Joshua. When he came to Canaan, he thought: "If I wage an incessant war upon the Canaanites, I shall certainly die as soon as I shall have conquered them, for Moses also died immediately after his conquest of Midian." He therefore proceeded very slowly in his conquest of the Holy Land, so that he might be sure of a long life. But, "however many thoughts there may be in man's heart, God's word prevails," and whereas Joshua hoped to become very aged, he died ten years before the time God had originally allotted to him, for, although he would otherwise have attained his master's age, he now died at the age of a hundred and ten.<sup>847</sup>

---

839. Tan. B. IV, 145; Tan. Balak 14; BaR 20.20; *Likkutim*, IV, 70b.

840. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 783, on Num. 31.2 (the first edition contains the unintelligible words **וכן במנין** after **אש**); *Likkutim* IV, 81a.

841. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 185, on Num. 31.1–2; *Likkutim*, IV, 79b. Compare with p. 779.

842. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 785. Comp. also Sifre N., 157, where **מדינים** is likewise used to describe the Moabites. This identification of the Midianites with the Moabites is very likely presupposed by Philo, *Moses*, 1.56, who speaks of this campaign as being directed against Balak, the king of Moab; but comp., on the other hand, his remarks in *De Fortitud.* 7. See reference to Josephus in note 721.

843. BaR 31.4–6; Tan. B. IV, 151–152; Tan. Pinehas 3; Sifre D., 252; Midrash Tannaim 147; *Likkutim*, V, 147a. Compare with p. 751.

844. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 785. On the fear of the Moabites, see text on p. 758. According to the sources



in note 842, the last campaign of Moses was against Moab. But against this view comp. Baba Kamma 38a–38b, and the following note.

845. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 875, where it is assumed that the prohibition to wage war against the Moabite extended only till David's birth; comp. Tosafot Baba Kamma 38a and note 59 on vol. IV p. 94. According to Yelammedenu, the reason why the prohibition against intermarriage with Moab (Deut. 23.4) applied to Moabite males only is to be found in the fact that the Moabite Ruth had been destined to become the mother of David. Abraham succeeded in bringing many "under the wings of the Shekinah" (on Abraham's proselytizing activity, see text on pp. 178 and 186), and yet he failed to influence Lot; the descendants of the latter were therefore precluded from entering into the congregation of the Lord; Yelammedenu, *loc. cit.*

846. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 785.

847. Sifre N., 157; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 785; Tan. B. IV, 158; Tan. Mattot 4; BaR 22.6; *Likkutim* IV, 82a. According to another view, Joshua lost ten years of his life on account of his forwardness to give advice to Moses without having been asked for it; see Tan. Tezaweh 9; text on p. 698; note 526; compare also footnote 19 on p. 844.

## THE COMPLETE ANNIHILATION OF MIDIAN

Whereas Moses, disregarding the expected consequences of the war upon himself, gladly went into battle, Israel did not want to obey his summons to war. The people of whom Moses had on one occasion said, "They be almost ready to stone me," when they now learned that their leader Moses was to die at the end of this war, tried to evade it, saying that they preferred to forego impending victory rather than to lose their leader, and each one hid himself, so as not to be picked out for this war. God therefore bade Moses cast lots to decide their going into battle, and those whose lots were drawn had to follow the call to arms even against their will. Moses' summons to battle was as follows: "Arm ye men from among you for the war, to

execute the Lord's vengeance on Midian." Moses spoke of the Lord's revenge, whereas God designated this war against Midian as Israel's revenge. For Moses said to God: "Lord of the world! If we had worshipped the stars and planets, the Midianites should not have hated us, they hate us only on account of the Torah and the commandments that Thou hast given us, hence must Thou avenge Thyself of them."<sup>848</sup>

Moses did not in person lead the war against Midian, for he was mindful of the proverb, "Cast no stone into the well from which thou hast drawn water," and he who as a fugitive from Egypt had sought refuge in Midian, did not wish to make war upon that land. He relinquished the leadership of the people to Phinehas, for "he that beginneth a good deed shall also complete it," and it was Phinehas who had begun God's war against the Midianites by slaying the princess Cozbi, Zimri's mistress, hence the task of completing this war fell to his lot. Phinehas, as a descendant of Joseph, had, moreover, a special reason for wishing to take revenge upon the Midianites, as those had been Midianites who had sold Joseph as a slave in Egypt.<sup>849</sup>

The forces under Phinehas's command consisted of thirty-six thousand men, one third to take active part in battle, one third to guard the baggage, and one third to pray, whose duty it was in the course of battle to implore God to lend victory to the warriors of Israel. Moses passed on to Phinehas not only the Holy Ark, which Israel always takes into battle, but also the Urim and Tummim, that he might, if necessary, consult God.<sup>850</sup> Outside of this Phinehas also received the gold plate of the mitre from the high priest's forehead, for Moses said to him: "The knave Balaam will by means of his sorceries fly into the air, and will even enable the five Midianite kings to fly with him, therefore shall ye hold up to them the plate of pure gold upon



which is engraved God's name, and they will fall to earth." They did as Moses commanded, and truly Balaam and the five kings fell to earth. They then executed Balaam according to the four forms prescribed by the Jewish laws. They hanged him, kindled a fire beneath the gallows, struck off his head with a sword, and then dropped him from the gallows into the fire below.<sup>851</sup>

Although Israel undertook the war against Midian upon God's bidding, to take vengeance for the wrong that had been done them, still their method of warfare was most humane. They attacked the cities of the Midianites from three sides only, so as not entirely to cut off flight. Victory was on the side of Israel, into whose possession fell the cities with all their temples, idols, and palaces. The same fate overtook all the live kings of Midian. All were slain alike just as all had made a common cause of the wish to destroy Israel. Balaam who had come to Midian from his home in Mesopotamia in order to receive his reward for his counsel not to fight Israel, but to tempt them to sin, instead of a reward, met with death at the hands of the Jews.<sup>852</sup>

---

848. Sifre N., 157; BaR 22.2; Tan. B. IV, 158–159; Tan. Mattot 3; Philo, *Moses*, 1.56. Concerning the idea that the hatred of the nations for Israel is due to their hatred for God and the Torah, see text on p. 1154.

849. BaR 22.4 (this passage has the dissenting view that Midian against which Moses waged war was located near Moab, and is to be distinguished from the country of the same name whither he took refuge when fleeing from Egypt); Tan. B. IV, 159; Tan. Mattot 3; Sifre N., 157; Sotah 43a. Concerning the view that Phineas was (on his maternal side) a descendant of Joseph, see text on p. 783. According to Sotah, *loc. cit.*, Phineas acted in the campaign as field-chaplain (משור מלחמה literally, "anointed for war"), whereas Philo, *Moses*, 1.56, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 7, are of the opinion that he was commander of the army, and this view is shared by many of the Rabbis; see note 860. The sacrifices preparatory to the undertaking of war,

of which Philo, *loc. cit.*, speaks, are unknown in rabbinic sources. See, however, note 145.

850. BaR 22.3 (this passage has also the dissenting view that each tribe sent two thousand warriors); Tan. B. IV, 158–159; Tan. Mattot 3; Sifre N., 157; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 31.6; Sotah, Tosefta 7.17, and Babli 43a. On the taking of the ark to the battle, see note 331; text on pp. 891–892 and 1051.

851. BaR 20.20 and 22.5; Tan. Mattot 4; Sifre N., 157; Sanhedrin 106b and Yerushalmi 10, 29a. For a full description of Balaam's gruesome end, see text on pp. 795–796.

852. Sifre N., 157; comp. references given in the preceding note. On the sword with which Balaam was killed, see note 744. Israel regretted having slain Balaam, and exclaimed in despair: "Woe unto us! We have slain a prophet." But a heavenly voice was immediately heard proclaiming: "Ye slew not a prophet but a sorcerer"; PRK, 33a. Comp. note 784.

## THE GRUESOME END OF BALAAM

This arch-magician at first tried to escape Israel's power by sorcery. For when he saw Phinehas and the leaders of the hosts of Israel, he flew into the air,<sup>853</sup> a feat which he accomplished by magic arts, but particularly through the assistance of his wizard sons, Jannes and Jambres. At the sight of Balaam flying high in the air, Phinehas shouted to his army, "Is there any one among us who is able to fly after this villain?" The Danite Zaliah, a past master in the art of sorcery, followed this summons, and flew high into the air. Balaam, however, surpassed him, and took a path in the air on which Zaliah could not follow, and after the former had soared through five different layers of air, he had quite vanished from Zaliah's ken, who knew not what to do. Phinehas, however, came to his aid. By means of a magical invocation he dispelled the clouds that covered Balaam, and then Zaliah forced Balaam to descend to earth and appear before Phinehas.<sup>854</sup> He began to implore Phinehas to spare his life, promising never again to try



to curse Israel, but Phinehas replied: "Art not thou the Aramean Laban who tried to destroy our father Jacob? Then thou didst pass on to Egypt to destroy Jacob's seed, and when they removed from Egypt thou didst incite the wicked Amalek to harass us, and now thou didst attempt to curse Israel. But when thou sawest that thy endeavor to curse them was without avail, since God would not hear thee, thou gavest Balak the despicable advice to deliver up the daughters of his land to prostitution, and thereby to tempt Israel to sin, and wert in part successful, for twenty-four thousand Israelites died in consequence of their sin with the daughters of Moab. In vain therefore dost thou plead that thy life be spared." He then ordered Zaliah to kill Balaam, admonishing him, however, to be sure not to kill him through the holy name of God, as it does not befit so great a sinner to meet his death in such a way. Zaliah now tried in vain to kill Balaam, for through his magic wiles he was proof against every weapon, until Phinehas at last gave Zaliah a sword on both sides of which was engraved a serpent, with the words, "Kill him with that to which he belongs—through this he will die," and with this sword Balaam was killed.<sup>855</sup>

His corpse was not buried, but his bones rotted, and from them arose several species of harmful snakes, that bring disaster to human beings; and even the worms that devoured his flesh were turned into snakes. The magicians made use of these snakes for three different types of enchantment, for the heads, the bodies, and the tails, had each a different effect. One of the questions that the Queen of Sheba put to Solomon was how to withstand these three different kinds of enchantment, and the wise king knew even this secret, which he then imparted to her.<sup>856</sup>

855. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 785. In this source Balaam is said to have performed his feat by means of the

Name. Phinehas, who also knew the Name, flew after him and caught up with him at God's throne, where he was begging for mercy. Phinehas held up to him the high priest's plate of pure gold, upon which the Name was engraved, and thus caused him to descend (compare with p. 795), and brought him before the Synhedrion, who sentenced him to death. Targum Yerushalmi Num. 31.8 and *Aguddat Aggadot* 78–79 follow Yelammedenu in the main. What is meant by the statement of Yelammedenu that Balaam, while flying through the air, stretched out his arms like the two tables of stone? In Jewish and Christian legends, flying through the air is one of the accomplishments of the sorcerers; comp., e. g., text on p. 559 (the same expression תפשו בציצית ראשו is used in *Aguddat Aggadot*, loc. cit., with regard to Balaam, as in Abkir in connection with Jannes and Jambres; comp. note 53), and the Christian legend concerning Simon Magus. Comp. the following two notes.

854. Zohar III, 194a–194b, where two different versions of the legend are combined into one. According to one version, Jannes and Jambres were killed shortly after they had fashioned the golden calf; see text on p. 620. Zohar remarks that the tribe of Dan produced four heroes: Samson, Zaliah, Ira, David's friend (see 2 Sam. 20.26), and Seraiah who, as assistant of the Ephraimite Messiah, will cause great havoc among the Gentiles. The connection between this Seraiah and the Christian legend concerning the Danite descent of the anti-Christ is obvious, although it is difficult to trace the exact nature of this connection. Comp. Index, s. v. "Danites."

855. Targum Yerushalmi Num. 31.8, where, in accordance with Sanhedrin 106b, it is said that Phineas killed Balaam; comp. note 853. On the identity of Balaam with Laban, and on the long list of his crimes, see text on p. 760. On the sword, see notes 44 and 852, as well as text on p. 768 and footnote 59 on p. 921. See Index, s. v. "Methusalem, Sword of", and "David, Sword of". The different legends concerning the death of Balaam show many points of resemblance to those about the death of Jesus (comp. the rich collections of such legends by Krauss, *Leben Jesu*). But this does not furnish any basis for the hypothesis that Balaam is used as a cryptic name for Jesus; see note 722. According to the legend given in the Masorah, (לו כ"ב) it was Joshua who killed Balaam. Is this based upon the reading יהושע instead of פינחס in Sanhedrin 106b? Compare footnote 34 on p. 846.

856. Zohar III; 194. Onkelos, the son of Titus's sister, succeeded by means of necromancy to have a talk with Balaam, who told him that his punishment consisted in being boiled in scalding *semen virile* corresponding to his sin, for he was responsible for the unchaste acts committed by the Israelites with the daughters of Moab; Gittin 57a. The same passage stated that Balaam advised Onkelos not



to adopt the Jewish religion. His words were: "Seek thou not their (Israel's) peace and prosperity all thy days for ever." And he gave this advice to Onkelos, though he had to admit that Israel is the foremost nation on earth.

## THE VICTORIOUS RETURN FROM THE WAR

After the close of the campaign against Midian, the warriors returned with rich spoils to the camp of Israel, but they were such pious and honorable men that they did not lay claim to the booty, but rendered it all up, so that it might be impartially divided among all.<sup>857</sup> As they were honest and conscientious in their relations between man and man, so likewise were they very strict in their observance of religious statutes. Throughout the time of war not a single one of them neglected even the slightest religious ceremony, were it only to put on the phylactery of the forehead before that of the arm.<sup>858</sup> But they were especially careful never again to be tempted by the Midianite women. If they entered a house to take its treasures from it, they did so in pairs, one blackening the faces of the women, and the other seizing their ornaments. In vain would the Midianite women cry, "Are we not creatures of God, that ye treat us thus?" whereupon the Israelites would say, "Were not ye the cause that so many of us found their death?" Justly therefore could these pious men say to Moses: "Thy servants have taken the sum of the men of war which are under our charge, and not one among us had committed a sin or an unchaste action. We have therefore brought the Lord's oblation to make atonement for our souls." Moses thereupon said in surprise, "Ye contradict yourselves, what need of atonement is there if no man among you is guilty of sin?" They replied: "It is true, our teacher Moses, two

by two did we approach the women, one blackening their faces, and the other taking off their ear-rings, but even though we committed no sin with the Midianite women, still the heat of passion was kindled in us when we took hold of the women, and therefore by an offering do we seek to make atonement." Moses thereupon set out to praise them, saying: "Even the common men among you are filled with good and pious deeds, for a man that was under conditions that enabled him to sin, but controlled himself, has done a pious deed, not to speak of the pious and chaste men among you whose pious deeds are legion."<sup>859</sup>

As among those who had been slain in Midian there was a Jewish apostate, the warriors were polluted, and hence might not enter the camp, but had to stay without. Moses in his meekness did not, however, wait for them to come to him, but hastened to them. When, however, he heard that they had killed only the men but not the women, his wrath was kindled against the leaders of the army, for, "Upon the leaders falls the blame for the faults of the people." He reproached them, pointing out to them that it had been the women who really had brought disaster upon Israel at Shittim. But Phinehas replied: "Our teacher Moses, we acted according to thy instructions, thou didst bid us only 'avenge ourselves of the Midianites,' but madest no mention of the women of Midian."<sup>860</sup> Moses then ordered them to execute all the women of the Midianites that were ripe for marriage, but to spare the young girls. In order to determine the difference in age, all were led past the gold plate of the mitre on the high priest's forehead, and this had the effect of making those who had been doomed to death grow pale.<sup>861</sup>

In punishment for Moses' outburst of anger God caused him to forget to communicate to the soldiers outside the camp the laws of purification. These were then announced by Elea-



zar, Aaron's son. It was not, however, proper for him to pronounce a law in the presence of his teacher Moses, and he was accordingly punished for his lack of reverence to his teacher Moses. God had previously said that whenever Joshua wanted to inquire of God, he was "to stand before Eleazar the priest, and inquire of him by the judgment of the Urim and Tummim." But this did not come about. In all his long career, Joshua had no need of asking Eleazar's counsel, so that the latter lost the honor that had been intended for him.<sup>862</sup>

The occasion that led to the war against Midian had been Israel's seduction by the Midianite women, but these had succeeded only by having first intoxicated the sinners with wine. Phinehas, to make sure that this might not be repeated in the future, put the earthly as well as the heavenly ban upon all those who should drink the wine of the heathens, for the latter used it only as libations to their idols and for immoral purposes. In pronouncing this ban, he called upon the Ineffable Name and upon the holy writing of the two tables against its transgressors.<sup>863</sup>

857. Sifre N., 157; Tan. B. IV, 159; Tan. Mattot 3; BaR 22.4; Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 57.

858. Shir 4.4 and 6.6. On the piety of those warriors, see Aggadat Shir 4, 35 (here (אחד=אלף) and quotation from an unknown Midrash in *Kimha Dabishuna* on ליושב תהלות (morning prayer for the Day of Atonement).

859. Shir 1.6 and 4.4; Targum Yerushalmi Num. 31.50. According to Philo, *Moses*, 1.57, they were in need of atonement, because he who kills a man, even though justly and in self-defense, appears to be guilty of bloodshed by reason of the relationship of all mankind to a common father.

860. Midrash Aggada, Num. 31.9 (which is introduced with the formula אִמְרוּ חֲכָמֵינוּ, but in the rabbinic literature now extant nothing is found about this Jewish apostate); Sifre N., 157. In these sources Phineas is supposed to have been the commander-in-chief of the army. Comp. PRE 47, and note 849.

861. Yebamot 60b; Targum Yerushalmi and Midrash Aggada, Num. 31.9 (here the holy ark takes the place of the high priest's plate). Compare with pp. 935 and 960. In the Christian legendary work *Protevangelium of James*, 5.1, it is related how Joachim the father of Mariah observed the high priest's mitre to ascertain whether he (Joachim) was free from sin or not.—As to the captives who escaped death, see Philo, *Moses*, 1.57, who is of the opinion that the very young boys were also spared. See, however, his remarks on this subject in *De Fortitud.* 8. Comp. also Sifre N., 157.

862. Sifre N., 157, (end); here attention is called to two other cases of fits of anger which caused Moses to forget the words revealed to him by God: In his anger at the sons of Aaron he forgot the law concerning sacrifices, see text on pp. 663–664; when he grew wrathful against the people at Meribah, he smote the rock instead of talking to it, as he was commanded, see text on p. 734; ARN (both versions) 1,3; WR 13.1; Pesahim 66b; 'Erubin 63a; PRE-47; Mishle 25, 97. Comp. also notes 110, 387 and 830.

863. PRE 47. Comp. note 786.

## WEALTH THAT BRINGETH DESTRUCTION

God gave three gifts to the world, wisdom, strength, and wealth. If they come from God, they are a blessing, otherwise they bring ruin. The world had two great sages, Balaam among the Gentiles, and Ahithophel among the Jews, but both of these, on account of their wisdom, lost this world as well as the world beyond. There were two great heroes in the world, Samson in Israel, and Goliath among the Gentiles, but both met death on account of their strength. There were two wealthy men in the world, Korah among the Jews, and Haman among the Gentiles, and both perished on account of their wealth. A similar fate overtook the two and a half tribes that stayed on the hither side of the Jordan. These had grown very rich in cattle through the spoils of the Midianites, and therefore preferred the pasture land on the hither side of the Jordan as their inheritance. But



later on their wealth brought them destruction, because, choosing on account of their wealth of cattle to separate themselves from their brethren, they were afterwards the first that were driven from their dwelling place into exile.<sup>864</sup>

How intent these people were upon their possessions is shown in the words with which they presented their wish to Moses, saying, "We will build sheepfolds here for our cattle, and cities for our little ones," showing that they rated the cattle higher than their children, for they thought of the animals before they considered their children. Moses did not indeed call them to account for this, but showed them in unmistakable words that it was their duty first to consider men and then animals, by saying in his reply to these tribes, "Build you cities for your little ones, and folds for your sheep."<sup>865</sup>

The land which these tribes had selected was indeed of great excellence, as even the names of the cities indicate. One was called Ataroth, "garlanded with fruits;" a second, Dibon, "flowing with honey;" a third, Jazer, "help," for its possession was a great help to those who owned it. Three other cities in this region that were named on account of the excellence of the soil were: Nimrah, "gaily colored," for the ground of this city was gaily colored with fruits; Sebam, "perfume," whose fruits scattered a fragrance like perfume; and Nebo, "produce," because it was distinguished for its excellent produce.<sup>866</sup> This last mentioned city, like Baalmeon, did not retain its name when it passed into Israel's possession, for they wanted to have no cities that bore the names of idols, and therefore gave them new names.<sup>867</sup> Many another town as well received a new name from the Israelites, just as Nobah gave his own name to the city of Kenath that he had gained by arms, hoping in this way to immortalize his name, for he had no children. His name was, however, not preserved in this way,

for after the death of the conqueror, the old name of Kenath returned again.<sup>868</sup>

It was among the possessions of these two and a half tribes also that Moses shortly before his death founded the cities of refuge. Moses in this instance illustrates the proverb, "Whosoever loves pious deeds, never has enough of them." Although God had told Moses that he would never cross to the other side of the Jordan, he still insisted upon at least determining the site for the asylum in the region of the East Jordan. God gave Moses the law concerning the cities of refuge in accordance with Israel's wish. For the people said to God: "Lord of the world! Thou didst promise us a long course of life as a reward for fulfilling the commandments, but supposing now that a man hath slain another unintentionally, and the avenger of the blood slays him, he will die before his time." God then said to Moses: "As truly as thou livest, they speak wisely. Appoint therefore several cities for cities of refuge, 'that the manslayer might flee thither, which slayeth his neighbor unawares.'" Moses rejoiced greatly at this statute, and instantly set about its execution, for "he that hath tasted of a food knoweth its flavor," and Moses who had erstwhile been obliged to flee on account of having slain an Egyptian, knew the feelings of the man who is pursued on account of a manslaughter that he had committed unawares.<sup>869</sup>

---

864. Tan. B. IV, 160; Tan. Mattot 5; BaR 22.7. Comp. also Aggadat Esther 56, as well as Koheleth 4.6 and 5.12. On the riches of Korah and Haman, see text on p. 718; text on p. 1146. On the view that Balaam and Ahithophel forfeited their share in the world to come, see text on p. 773, and footnote 72 on p. 923.

865. BaR 22.9; Tan. Mattot 7.

866. Midrash Aggada, Num. 32.38. Comp. also the paraphrase of the names of the conquered places in Yerushalmi Targumim (on the text of 2 Targum Yerushalmi, see *Hadar* and R. Bahya, *ad loc.*). See the following note.



867. Rashi on Num. 32:28; comp. also Targum Yerushalmi and Lekah, *ad loc.*

868. Rashi, I.ekah, and Midrash Aggada on Num. 32:41–42. Comp. also Ruth 2:13.

869. DR 2:26–27; Koheleth 5:8. On the relation of Deut. 4:41–49 to Joshua 20, see Makkot 9b and 11a. According to a quotation from Yerushalmi Makkot in Makiri on Is. 9, 74, Joshua, at the command of God, introduced many new regulations concerning the cities of refuge. In our texts of Yerushalmi Makkot II, 31a (bottom) the omission of this passage is indicated by גר"ש, which is an abbreviation of גמר ש"ס "the continuation of this passage" (see Ginzberg, *Yerushalmi Fragments*, I, 128); but this discussion is not resumed in any part of the Yerushalmi.

## MOSES' DEATH IRREVOCABLY DOOMED

When God in wrath against Moses and Aaron vowed, "Therefore ye shall not bring this assembly into the land which I have given them," Moses forbore to implore God to do away with this sentence, acting in accordance with the precept, "Do not attempt to dissolve thy neighbor's vow in the moment he hath made it." Moses waited forty years before he approached God with the request to permit him to enter the promised land with Israel.<sup>870</sup> This occurred when he had received God's command to appoint Joshua as his successor, for he now perceived that God had actually resolved to execute His sentence.<sup>871</sup> For although God had ten times decreed that Moses was to die in the desert, still Moses had not troubled much about it, even when the resolution had been sealed in the heavenly court. He thought: "How often did Israel sin, and yet, when I prayed for them, He annulled the punishment He had decreed; surely God should accept my prayer, if I—a man who never sinned—should pray to Him."<sup>872</sup> Moses had also a special reason for assuming that God had changed His determination concerning him,

and would now permit him to enter the promised land, for he had been permitted to enter the part of Palestine lying on this side the Jordan, the land of Sihon and of Og, and from this he reasoned that God had not irrevocably decreed punishment for him, and that it might therefore now be recalled.<sup>873</sup> He was strengthened in this assumption by the fact that after the conquest of the east-Jordanic region God revealed to him the instructions as to how the land was to be divided, and it seemed to him as if he were in person to carry out these instructions. He was, however, mistaken, for shortly after these laws had been revealed to him, God informed him that he was to look upon the promised land from Mount Abarim, as he should never enter it.<sup>874</sup>

When God saw that Moses was not much concerned about the impending punishment, He sealed the command He had issued against him, and swore by His Ineffable Name that Moses should not march into the land. Moses thereupon put on sackcloth, threw himself upon the ashes, and prayed not less than fifteen hundred prayers for the annulment of the Divine resolve against him. He drew a circle about himself, stood in the center of it, and said, "I will not move from this spot until judgment shall have been suspended." Heaven and earth, as well as all the forms of creation, trembled and said, "Perhaps it is God's wish to destroy this world, to create a new universe." But a voice sounded from heaven and said: "God's wish to destroy the world has not yet come, the commotion in nature is due to this that 'in God's hand is the soul of all living things and the spirit of all flesh,' even the spirit of the man Moses, whose end is now at hand."

God then bade them proclaim in heaven, and in all the celestial courts of justice, that they should not accept Moses' prayers, and that no angel was to carry Moses' prayer to



Him, because Moses' doom of death had been sealed by Him. God quickly called before Him the Angel Akraziel, who is the celestial herald; and bade him proclaim the following in heaven: "Descend at once and lock every single gate in heaven, that Moses' prayer may not ascend into it." Then, at Moses' prayer, trembled heaven and earth, all the foundations thereof and the creatures therein, for his prayer was like a sword that slashes and rends, and can in no wise be parried, for in it was the power of the Ineffable Name that Moses had learned from his teacher Zagzagel, the teacher and scribe of the celestial beings. But when the Galgalim and Seraphim saw that God did not accept Moses' prayer, and without taking consideration of him did not grant his prayer for longer life, they all opened their mouths, saying: "Praised be the glory of the Lord from its place, for there is no injustice before Him, no forgetfulness, no respect of persons toward the small or the great."<sup>875</sup>

870. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 743, on Num. 14.11 (read with RSBM on Deut. 3.23, שנה instead of מ'שנה, as the episode of the water at Meribah took place one year before the death of Moses; see text on p. 733), which is followed by Midrash Tannaim 18; Mahzor Vitry 531; *Aruk*, s. v. ל; Nehemias, *Perush Pirke Abot* 44b, who cites Tanhuma as his source. Comp. Ginzberg, *Hazofeh* III, 127, and Taylor, *An Appendix to Sayings of the Jewish Fathers*, 161–162.

871. DR 1.5.

872. DR 11.10; Petirat Mosheh 120; 2 Petirat Mosheh 676. On the sealing of the heavenly decree, see Elleh Ezkerah 6; text on p. 800; text on p. 1160.

873. Midrash Tannaim 15; Mekilta Beshallah 2, 55a. Comp. also Sifre D., 26.

874. BaR 13; Tan. B. IV, 154; Tan. Pinehas 9.

875. DR 1 1.19; Petirat Mosheh 120–121; 2 Petirat Mosheh 376–377, where the name Akraziel "Herald of God" is corrupted to Azkariel. Concerning the circle drawn by Moses, see text on p. 702. On Zagzagel see vol. V, p. 417 (top) and note 898. On God's justice as revealed in his dealings with Moses, see text on p. 810.

## MOSES' PRAYER FOR SUSPENSION OF JUDGMENT

Moses began his long but fruitless prayer by saying: "Lord of the world! Consider how much I had to bear for the sake of Israel until they became the people of Thy claim and of Thy possession. I suffered with them, shall I not then take part in their rejoicing? Look Thou, by forbidding me to enter the promised land, Thou givest the lie to Thy Torah, for it says, 'In his day thou shalt give the laborer his hire.' Where, then, is my hire for the forty years during which I labored for the sake of Thy children, and for their sake suffered much sorrow in Egypt, in the desert, and at the giving of the Torah and the commandments? With them I suffered pain, shall not I behold their good fortune as well? But Thou tellest me that I may not cross the Jordan! All the time that we were in the desert I could not sit quietly in the academy, teaching and pronouncing judgment, but now that I should be able to do so, Thou tellest me that I may not."<sup>876</sup>

He continued: "May the mercy in Thee precede Thy justice, so that my prayer may be answered, for I well know that 'there is no mercy in justice.'<sup>877</sup> Thou Thyself didst tell me when I asked Thee how Thou didst conduct the world, 'I owe nothing to any creature, and what I do for them is a free gift on My part,' therefore as a free gift, grant now my prayer to me."<sup>878</sup> Thou Thyself didst point out to me that it is Thy desire that people should pray to Thee to cancel punishment that was laid upon them. When Israel committed that terrible sin, the worship of the Golden Calf, Thou didst say to me, 'Let Me alone, that I may destroy them, and blot out their name from under heaven.' I then thought, 'Who can restrain God, that He should say, "Let Me?"' It is plain that He desires me to pray for



His children;’ and I prayed, and was answered. The prayer of the individual for the community was answered, but not so the prayer of the community for the one individual! Is it because I called Israel, ‘rebels?’ But in this I only followed Thy example, for Thou too didst call them, ‘the sons of rebellion.’<sup>879</sup>

“Thou didst call me, as well as Leviathan, thy servant; I sent up prayers to Thee, and Leviathan likewise, and him didst Thou answer, for Thou madest a covenant with him that Thou keepest, but the covenant that Thou madest with me Thou breakest, for Thou didst say, ‘Die in the mount whither thou goest up.’ In the Torah Thy words are: ‘If the servant shall plainly say, I love my master, my wife, and my children; I will not go out free: then his master shall bring him unto the judges; and he shall serve him for ever.’ I implore Thee now, ‘hear my cry, O God; attend unto my prayer.’<sup>880</sup> Thou art not in the position of a judge of flesh and blood who, when granting a prayer, has to consider that he may be compelled by his superior to repeal his answer, Thou canst do what Thou wilt, for where on earth or in heaven is there one so mighty that he can do such deeds as Thine in Egypt, or who can perform such mighty deeds as Thou didst at the Red Sea?<sup>881</sup> I pray Thee, therefore, let me behold the land that, in spite of the slander of the spies, I praised, and Jerusalem and the Temple also.<sup>882</sup>

“When, in answer to the proposition Thou madest me to go into Egypt and deliver Israel, I said, ‘I can not do it, for I made a vow to Jethro never to leave him,’ Thou didst release me from that vow. O Lord of the world! As then Thou didst absolve me of my vow, saying, ‘Go, return into Egypt,’ so do Thou now absolve Thyself from Thy vow, and permit me to enter the land of Israel.” Then God answered: “Thou hast a master to absolve thee from thy vow, but I have no master.”<sup>883</sup> Moses then said: “Thy judgment

against me reads that I shall not as king enter the promised land, for to me and to Aaron Thou didst say, ‘Ye shall not bring this assembly into the land which I have given them.’ Permit me then, at least, to enter it as a common citizen.” “That,” said the Lord, “is impossible. The king shall not enter it degraded to the rank of a common citizen.” “Well, then,” said Moses, “if I may not even go into the land as a common citizen, let me at least enter into the promised land by the Paneas Grotto, that runs from the east bank to the west bank of the Jordan.” But this request, too, God denied him, saying, “Thou shalt not go from this bank of the Jordan to the other.” “If this request also is to be denied me,” begged Moses, “grant me at least that after my death my bones may be carried to the other side of the Jordan.” But God said, “Nay, not even thy bones shall cross the Jordan.”<sup>884</sup> “O Lord of the world!” exclaimed Moses, “If Joseph’s bones were permitted to be carried into the promised land, why not mine?” God replied, “Whosoever acknowledges his country shall be buried therein, but whosoever does not acknowledge his country shall not be buried therein. Joseph pledged allegiance to his country when he said, ‘For indeed I was stolen away out of the land of the Hebrews,’ and therefore also does he deserve to have his bones brought to the land of Israel, but thou didst in silence hear the daughters of Jethro say to their father, ‘An Egyptian delivered us out of the hands of the shepherds,’ without correcting them by saying, ‘I am a Hebrew;’ and therefore shall not even thy bones be brought into the land of Israel.”<sup>885</sup>

Moses furthermore said to God: “O Lord of the world! With the word, ‘Behold’ did I begin Thy praise, saying, ‘Behold, the heaven and the heaven of heavens is the Lord’s,’ and with that very word, ‘Behold,’ dost Thou seal my death, saying, ‘Behold, thy days approach that thou must die.’” God replied to this: “A wicked



man in his envy sees only the profits, but not the expenditures of his neighbor. Dost thou not recall that when I wanted to send thee to Egypt, thou didst also decline My request with the word, saying, 'Behold, they will not believe me.' Therefore did I say, 'Behold, thy days approach that thou must die.'<sup>886</sup> "As furthermore," continued God, "thou didst say to the sons of Levi when they asked thy forgiveness, 'Enough, ye take too much upon ye, ye sons of Levi,' so too shall I answer thy prayer for forgiveness, 'Let it suffice thee; speak no more unto Me of this matter.' "

"O Lord of the world!" again pleaded Moses, "Wilt not Thou recall the time when Thou didst say to me, 'Come now, therefore, and I will send thee unto Pharaoh, that thou mayest bring forth My people the children of Israel out of Egypt.' Let them be led by me into their land as I led them out of the land of bondage." But to this also God found a reply: "Moses, wilt not thou recall the time when thou didst say to Me, 'O my Lord, send, I pray Thee, by the hand of him whom Thou wilt send?' 'With the measure that a man uses, shall measure be given him.'<sup>887</sup> I announced death to thee with the word, 'Behold,' saying, 'Behold, thy days approach that thou must die,' because I wanted to point out to thee that thou diest only because thou art a descendant of Adam, upon whose sons I had pronounced death with the word, 'Behold,' saying to the angels: 'Behold, the man is become as one of us, to know good and evil; and now, lest he put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat, and live forever.'<sup>888</sup>

Moses then said, "O Lord of the world! To the first man didst Thou give a command that could easily be obeyed, and yet he disobeyed it, and thereby merited death; but I have not transgressed any of Thy commandments." God: "Behold, Abraham also, who sanctified My name in the world, died." Moses: "Yea, but from Abraham issued Ishmael, whose descendants arouse

Thy anger." God: "Isaac, also, who laid his neck upon the altar to be offered as a sacrifice to Me, died." Moses: "But from Isaac issued Esau who will destroy the Temple and burn Thy house." God: "From Jacob issued twelve tribes that did not anger Me, and yet he died." Moses: "But he did not ascend into heaven, his feet did not tread the clouds, Thou didst not speak with him face to face, and he did not receive the Torah out of Thy hand." God: " 'Let it suffice thee; speak no more unto Me of this matter,' speak not many words, for only 'a fool multiplieth words.'<sup>889</sup> " Moses: "O Lord of the world! Future generations will perchance say, 'Had not God found evil in Moses, He would not have taken him out of the world.'<sup>890</sup> " God: "I have already written in My Torah, 'And there hath not arisen since a prophet in Israel like unto Moses.'<sup>891</sup> " Moses: "Future generations will perhaps say that I had probably acted in accordance with Thy will in my youth, while I was active as a prophet, but that in my old age, when my prophetic activities ceased, I no longer did Thy will."

Moses: "Lord of the world! Let me, I pray, enter into the Land, live there two or three years, and then die." God: "I have resolved that thou shalt not go there." Moses: "If I may not enter it in my lifetime, let me reach it after my death." God: "Nay, neither dead nor alive shalt thou go into the land." Moses: "Why this wrath against me?" God: "Because ye sanctified Me not in the midst of the children of Israel." Moses: "With all Thy creatures dost Thou deal according to Thy quality of mercy, forgiving them their sins, once, twice, and thrice, but me Thou wilt not forgive even one single sin!" God: "Outside of this sin of which thou art aware, thou hast committed six other sins with which I have not until now reproached thee. At the very first, when I appeared to thee, thou didst say, 'O my Lord, send I pray Thee, by the hand of him whom Thou wilt send,' and didst refuse to obey My



command to go to Egypt. Secondly thou didst say, 'For since I came to Pharaoh to speak in Thy name, he hath evil entreated this people; neither hast Thou delivered Thy people at all,' accusing Me thereby of having only harmed Israel, instead of aiding them. Thirdly didst thou say, 'If these men die the common death of all men, then the Lord hath not sent me,' so that thou didst arouse doubts among Israel if thou wert really My ambassador. Fourthly didst thou say, 'But if the Lord make a new thing,' doubting if God could do so. Fifthly didst thou say to Israel, 'Hear now, ye rebels,' and in this way didst insult My children. Sixthly didst thou say, 'And behold, ye are risen up in your fathers' stead, an increase of sinful men.' Were Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, Israel's fathers, perchance sinful men, that thou didst thus address their children?' Moses: "I only followed Thy example, for Thou, too, didst say, 'The censers of these sinners.'" God: "But I did not characterize their fathers as sinners."

Moses: "O Lord of the world! How often did Israel sin before Thee, and when I begged and implored mercy for them, Thou forgavest them, but me Thou wilt not forgive! For my sake Thou forgavest the sins of sixty myriads, and now Thou wilt not forgive my sin?" God: "The punishment that is laid upon the community is different from the punishment that is laid upon the individual, for I am not so severe in my treatment of the community as I am in dealing with an individual. But know, furthermore, that until now fate had been in thy power, but now fate is no longer in thy power."<sup>890</sup> Moses: "O Lord of the world! Rise up from the Throne of Justice, and seat Thyself upon the Throne of Mercy, so that in Thy mercy, Thou mayest grant me life, during which I may atone for my sins by sufferings that Thou shalt bring upon me. Hand me not over to the sword of the Angel of Death. If Thou wilt grant my prayer, then shall

I sound Thy praises to all the inhabitants of the earth; I do not wish to die, 'but live and declare the works of the Lord.'" God replied: "'This is the gate of the Lord; the righteous shall enter into it,' this is the gate into which the righteous must enter as well as other creatures, for death had been decreed for man since the beginning of the world."<sup>890</sup>

Moses, however, continued to importune God, saying: "With justice and with mercy hast Thou created the world and mankind, may mercy now conquer justice. In my youth Thou didst begin by showing me Thy power in the bush of thorns, and now, in my old age, I beseech Thee, treat me not as an earthly king treats his servant. When a king of flesh and blood has a servant, he loves him so long as he is young and strong, but casts him off when he is grown old. But Thou, 'cast me not off in the time of old age.' Thou didst show Thy power at the revelation of the Ten Commandments, and Thy strong hand in the ten plagues that Thou didst bring upon Egypt. Thou didst create everything, and in Thy hand doth it lie to kill and to give life, there is none who can do these works, nor is there strength like Thine is the future world. Let me then proclaim Thy majesty to the coming generations, and tell them that through me Thou didst cleave the Red Sea, and give the Torah to Israel, that throughout forty years Thou didst cause manna to rain from heaven for Israel, and water to rise from the well." For Moses thought that if his life were spared, he should be able everlastingly to restrain Israel from sin and to hold them forever in faith to the one God. But God said: "'Let it suffice thee.' If thy life were to be spared, men should mistake thee, and make a god of thee, and worship thee." "Lord of the world!" replied Moses, "Thou didst already test me at the time when the Golden Calf was made and I destroyed it. Why then should I die?" God: "Whose son art thou?" Moses: "Amram's son."



God: "And whose son was Amram?" Moses: "Izhar's son." God: "And whose son was he?" Moses: "Kohath's son." "And whose son was he?" Moses: "Levi's son." "And from whom did all of these descend?" Moses: "From Adam." God: "Was the life of any one of these spared?" Moses: "They all died." God: "And thou wishest to live on?" Moses: "Lord of the world! Adam stole the forbidden fruit and ate of it, and it was on this account that Thou didst punish him with death, but did I ever steal aught from Thee? Thou Thyself didst write of me, 'My servant Moses, who is faithful in all Mine house.' " God: "Art thou worthier than Noah?" Moses: "Yes; when Thou sentest the flood over his generation he did not beg Thy mercy for them, but I did say to Thee, 'Yet now, if Thou wilt forgive their sin; and if not, blot me, I pray Thee, out of Thy book which Thou hast written.' "

God: "Was it I perchance, that counselled thee to slay the Egyptian?" Moses: "Thou didst slay all the firstborn of Egypt, and shall I die on account of one single Egyptian that I slew?" God: "Art thou perchance My equal? I slay and restore to life, but canst thou perchance revive the dead?"<sup>871</sup>

876. DR 11.10; Petirat Mosheh 121; 2 Petirat Mosheh 677; Midrash Tannaim 15 and 179; Nispahim 44=Yalkut II, 284, on Jer. 9 (in the first edition פ' פרה is given as source; this, however, must be emended to פ'ר אליעזר; comp. *op. cit.* 285). The sources cited at the beginning of the note state that Moses prayed five hundred and fifteen prayers, until God heard him and granted him the privilege to look at the promised land from the top of the mountain.

877. Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 815 (on the proverb "no mercy in justice", see Ketubot 9.3, and Mishle 22, 93, where it refers to justice administered by a terrestrial court); *Likkutim*, V, 79b. Comp. also Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 813.

878. DR 2.1; Tan. B. V, 9; Tan. Wa-Ethanan 3 (המצור="alms"). Compare also with pp. 629, 714, and 804.

879. Tan. B. V, 14; Sifre D., 27; Midrash Tannaim 16; DR 2.8; Petirat Mosheh 117; 2 Petirat Mosheh 675. That the death of Moses in the wilderness was a punishment for his calling Israel "rebels" is inferred from Num. 20.10–12. Compare with pp. 733, *seq.*, and 738. According to ps.-Philo 19.6–7, God spoke to Moses, saying: "Behold, thou goest to sleep with thy fathers, and this people...will forget My Law...but thou shalt not enter therein (into the Holy Land) in this age, lest thou see the graven images whereby this people will be deceived and led out of the way." This novel view concerning God's refusal to allow Moses to enter the Holy Land is inferred from Deut. 31.16.

880. Tan. B. V, 10; *Likkutim*, V, 79–80a. The tannaitic Midrashim Sifre D., 27, and Midrash Tannaim 16 remark: Abraham, Jacob, Moses, David, and Isaiah described themselves as "servants of the Lord", and so they were called by Him, whereas Samson and Solomon were never recognized by God as such, though they called themselves "servants of the Lord"; Joshua, Job, Caleb, Eliakim, Zerubbabel, Daniel and his three companions, as well as the early prophets, were described by God as His servants, but they never applied this designation to themselves. The Midrashim quoted above cite the biblical passages where the title "servant of God" is applied to the above-mentioned persons by God and by themselves.

881. Sifre D., 27; Midrash Tannaim 17; Petirat Mosheh 11 Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s. v. אנטפתא; Mekilta Amalek 2, 55a.

882. Midrash Tannaim 16; Sifre D., 28; Tan. B. V, 9; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 3.25.

883. Sifre D., 27; Midrash Tannaim 16. For other explanations of החלות in Deut. 3.24 (according to the Haggadah, it is to be translated: "thou didst absolve"), see the sources quoted above, as well as Sifre N., 134. Compare with p. 625; *Pa'aneah*, Deut. 3.24.

884. Midrash Tannaim 17, 19, and 178; Sifre N., 135; Mekilta Amalek 2, 55b; compare with pp. 803 and 813.

885. Midrash Tannaim 178; DR 2.8. Compare with p. 495.

886. DR 9.6; Tan. B. V, 10–11 and 56; Tan. Wa-Ethanan 6, Wa-Yelek 3, and Berakah 7; Midrash Tannaim 179–180; 2 Petirat Mosheh 374; *Likkutim*, V, 161a; Ziyyoni, Wa-Yelek; Manzur 52. In the last-quoted Midrash, as well as in many others (see Grünhut on *Likkutim*, *loc. cit.*), the word הן is interpreted as having the meaning of the Greek ἓν "one", God thus describes Himself as the "One" and Moses as the "One (*i. e.*, greatest) prophet".

887. Midrash Tannaim 178; Sotah 13b; BaR 18.18; Tehillim 18, 150–151. On the reluctance of Moses to accept the leadership of the people, see note 837. The Haggadah offers many explanations of the words רב לך in



Deut. 3:26; comp. Midrash Tannaim 17–18; Sifre D., 29; Sotah 13b; Sifre N., 135; Mekilta Amalek 2, 55b; Tan. B. V, 10 and 14; *Likkutim*, V, 101b–102a.

888. DR 9.8; Koheleth 7.13; Tan. B. V, 11 (read in line 3 **קִנְסְתִּי כָּבֵד**); Tan. Wa-Ethanan 6; 2 Petirat Mosheh 674 (two different sources are made use of); Petirat Mosheh 116. On the view that Adam's sin was the cause of the death of Moses and of those who like him were free from sin, see Sifre D., 339; Shabbat 55b; note 142 on vol. I, p. 102; Index s. v. "Death", "Sin".

889. Tan. B. V, 11; Tan. Wa-Ethanan 6; 2 Petirat Mosheh 674–375 (on the two leaders of Israel one of whom, Moses, wished his sin to be recorded, while the other, David, desired to keep his sin secret, see the sources quoted in footnote 616 on p. 734). Concerning Moses' superiority to all other mortals, see text on pp. 804–805 and 837. On the sins of Moses, see text on pp. 509 and 522; text on pp. 733, *seq.*, 737, *seq.*, and note 571. As a punishment for having used the hasty words "Ye are risen, etc.", Moses' grandson (compare with p. 881) became a priest to an idol; Hasidim 71. Moses was commanded by God to ask the fathers of Israel for pardon for having offended them by describing his contemporaries as having "risen up in their fathers' stead an increase of sinful men", which words stamped the past generations of Israel as sinful men. In accordance with this command given to Moses, it is customary that one who has slandered those who are "in the grave" should beg their pardon; *Imre No'am* and *Pa'aneah* on Mattot (end); Aguddah 17b.

890. Tan. B. V, 11, Tan. Wa-Ethanan 6; 2 Petirat Mosheh 675. For the description of Moses' praying for mercy, see text on p. 801. On the angel of death, see text on p. 809.

891. Petirat Mosheh 118–119; Makiri, Ps. 71, 345. On the parable of the king and his servant, see Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 86, on 1 Sam. 2, *seq.*, and on Is 2. Concerning Moses' claim that he was free from sin, whereas all other men died on account of their sins, see text on p. 803, and note 889. According to Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 873, on Ps. 115, God spoke to Moses as follows: "All creatures descend to Sheol, but thou shalt ascend (to heaven) after thy death." On Noah, see text on p. 150. On the slaying of the Egyptians, see text on p. 487.

## GOD TRIES TO COMFORT MOSES CONCERNING HIS DEATH

That Moses might not take his approaching end too much to heart, God tried to comfort him by pointing out to him that in his lifetime he had received such distinctions from his Creator as no man before him, and that still greater distinctions awaited him in the future world. God said: "Dost not thou remember the great honor I showed thee? Thou didst say to Me, 'Arise,' and I arose; thou saidst, 'Turn about,' and I turned about; for thy sake too did I invert the order of heaven and earth, for the order of heaven it is to send down dew and rain, and earth's order is it to produce bread, but thou didst say to Me, 'I do not wish it so, but bid heaven to send down bread, and earth to bring forth water,' and I acted in accordance with thy wish; I caused bread to rain from heaven, and the well 'sprung up.' Thou didst say, 'If the Lord make a new thing, and the ground open her mouth, and swallow them up, then ye shall understand that the Lord hath sent me,' and I fulfilled thy wish, and it swallowed them. I had also spoken, 'He that sacrificeth unto any god, save unto the Lord only, shall be utterly destroyed,' but when Israel sinned with the Golden Calf and I meant to deal with them according to My words, thou wouldst not let Me, saying: 'Pardon, I pray Thee, the iniquity of this people.' and I forgave them as thou didst ask Me. More than this, the Torah is named after Me, it is the Torah of the Lord, but I named it after Thy name, saying, 'It is the Torah of My servant Moses.' The children of Israel also are named after Me, 'for unto Me the children of Israel are servants; they are My servants,' but I called them after thy name. I distinguished thee still more, for just as there is neither food nor drink for Me, so also didst thou stay in heaven forty



days and forty nights, and in all that time, 'didst neither eat bread, nor drink water.' I am God, and see, 'I made thee a god to Pharaoh;' I have prophets, and thou hast a prophet, for I said to thee, 'and Aaron, thy brother, shall be thy prophet.' Again, no being may see Me, and thee too did I make so that 'the people were afraid to come nigh thee,' and as I said to thee, 'thou shalt see My back but My face shall not be seen,' so too did the people see the back of thee. I glorified the Torah with twenty-two letters, and with all these letters did I glorify thee. I sent thee to Pharaoh, and thou didst lead Israel out of Egypt; through thee did I bestow the Sabbath upon Israel, and the law of circumcision; I gave thee the Ten Commandments, I covered thee with the cloud, I gave thee the two tables of stone, which thou didst break; I made thee unique in the world; I gave thee the Torah as an inheritance, and honored thee more than all the seventy elders."

Moses had to acknowledge that extraordinary marks of honor had been his. He said: "Lord of the world! Thou didst set me on high, and didst bestow upon me so many benefits that I cannot enumerate one of a thousand, and all the world knows how Thou didst exalt me and honor me, and all the world knows as well that Thou art the One God, the only One in Thy world, that there is none beside Thee, and that there is nothing like Thee. Thou didst create those above and those below, Thou art the beginning and the end. Who can enumerate Thy deeds of glory? Do one of these, I beseech Thee, that I may pass over the Jordan." God said: "Let it suffice, speak no more unto Me of this matter."<sup>892</sup> It is better for thee to die here, than that thou shouldst cross the Jordan and die in the land of Israel. There in a tomb fashioned by men, on a bier made by men, and by the hands of men wouldst thou be buried; but now shalt thou be buried in a tomb fashioned by God, on

a bier made by God, and shalt be buried by the hands of God.<sup>893</sup> O My son Moses, much honor has been stored up for thee in the future world, for thou wilt take part in all the delights of Paradise, where are prepared three hundred and ten worlds, which I have created for every pious man that through love of Me devoted himself to the Torah. And as in this world I appointed thee over the sixty myriads of Israel, so in the future world shall I appoint thee over the fifty-five myriads of pious men. Thy days, O Moses, will pass, when thou art dead, but thy light will not fade, for thou wilt never have need of the light of sun or moon or stars, nor wilt thou require raiment or shelter, or oil for thy head, or shoes for thy feet, for My majesty will shine before thee, My glory will clothe thee, My splendor will shelter thee, My radiance will make thy face beam, My sweetness will delight thy palate, the carriages of My equipage shall serve as vehicles for thee, and one of My many sceptres upon which is engraved the Ineffable Name, one that I had employed in the creation of the world, shall I give to thee, the image of which I had already given thee in this world."<sup>894</sup>

892. Petirat Mosheh 119–120; 2 Petirat Mosheh 677–378. On the great distinction conferred by God upon Moses, see text on pp. 618, 633, 687, and 692.

893. Midrash Tannaim 18; DR 9.5. Comp. also Midrash Tannaim 19, which reads: God said to Moses: "I exalted thee above the angels, which remain standing in My presence and are not permitted to sit, whereas thou wast permitted to remain sitting." On Moses' sitting in the presence of God, see Megillah 21a and note 832.

894. Petirat Mosheh 121 (רבוּא is to be omitted; see 'Okazin (end), and Sanhedrin 100a, which reads: Every righteous man will receive three hundred and ten words from God); 2 Petirat Mosheh 676. In the last-mentioned source, DR 11.9 is made use of, hence the statement that in the days to come Moses will appear at the head of fifty-five myriads of pious men. This is also found in Manzur 14. On the rod of Moses, see text on p. 424, and Index, s. v. On the creation of the world by means of the Name, see Yerushalmi Hagigah 2, 17, and Index, s. v. "God, Name of".



## THE INTERCESSIONS FOR MOSES

When Moses saw that God lent no ear to his prayers, he sought to invoke God's mercy through the pleadings of others. "To everything there is a season, and a time to every purpose under the heaven." So long as the course of Moses' days had not yet been run, everything was in his power, but when his time was over, he sought for some one to appeal to God's mercy for him. He now betook himself to Earth and said: "O Earth, I pray thee, implore God's mercy for me. Perhaps for thy sake will He take pity upon me and let me enter into the land of Israel." Earth, however, replied: "I am 'without form and void,' and then too I shall soon 'wax old like a garment.' How then should I venture to appear before the King of kings? Nay, thy fate is like mine, for 'dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return.'"

Moses then betook himself to the Heavens, and said: "I pray you, implore God's mercy for me, for through you perchance will He take pity upon me and let me enter into the land of Israel." The Heavens, however, replied: "Before imploring God's mercy for thee, we must first do so for ourselves, for 'the heavens are not clean in His sight,' and 'the heavens shall vanish away like smoke.'"

Moses hastened to Sun and Moon, and implored them to intercede for him with God, but they replied: "Before we pray to God for thee, we must pray for ourselves, for 'the moon shall be confounded, and the sun ashamed.'"

Moses then took his request to the Stars and the Planets, but these, too, replied: "Before we venture to plead for thee, we must plead for ourselves, for 'all the host of heaven shall be dissolved.'"

Moses then went to the Hills and the Mountains, beseeching them, "Pray appeal to God's mercy for me," and they, too, replied: "We too

have to implore God's mercy for ourselves, for He said, 'The mountains shall depart, and the hills be removed.'"

He then laid his plea before Mount Sinai, but the latter said: "Didst thou not see with thine eyes and record in the Torah that, 'Mount Sinai was altogether in smoke, because the Lord descended upon it in a fire?' How then shall I approach the Lord?"

He then went to the Rivers, and sought their intercession before the Lord, but they replied: " 'The Lord made a way in the sea, and a path in the mighty waters.' We cannot save ourselves out of His hand, and how then should we aid thee?"

Then he went to the Deserts, and to all the Elements of Nature, but in vain sought to secure their aid. Their answer was: "All go unto one place; all are of the dust, and turn to dust again."

The Great Sea was the last to which he brought his request, but it replied: "Son of Amram, what ails thee today? Art not thou the son of Amram that erstwhile came to me with a staff, beat me, and clove me into twelve parts, while I was powerless against thee, because the Shekinah accompanied thee at thy right hand? What has happened, then, that thou comest before me now pleading?" Upon being reminded of the miracles that he had accomplished in his youth, Moses burst into tears and said, "Oh, that I were as in months past, as in the days when God preserved me!" And turning to the sea, he made answer: "In those days, when I stood beside thee, I was king of the world, and I commanded, but now I am a suppliant, whose prayers are unanswered."<sup>895</sup>

When Moses perceived that Heaven and Earth, Sun and Moon, Stars and Planets, Mountains and Rivers turned a deaf ear to his prayers, he tried to implore mankind to intercede for him before God. He went first to his disciple



Joshua, saying: "O my son, be mindful of the love with which I treated thee by day and by night, teaching thee mishnah and halakah, and all arts and sciences, and implore now for my sake God's mercy, for perhaps through thee He may take pity upon me, and permit me to enter the land of Israel." Joshua began to weep bitterly, and beat his palms in sorrow, but when he wanted to begin to pray, Samael appeared and stopped his mouth, saying, "Why dost thou seek to oppose the command of God, who is 'the Rock, whose work is perfect, and all whose ways are judgment?'" Joshua then went to Moses and said, "Master, Samael will not let me pray." At these words Moses burst into loud sobs, and Joshua, too, wept bitterly.

Moses then went to his brother's son, Eleazar, to whom he said: "O my son, be mindful of the days when God was angry with thy father on account of the making of the Golden Calf, and I saved him through my prayer. Pray now thou to God for me, and perhaps God will take pity upon me, and let me enter into the land of Israel." But when Eleazar, in accordance with Moses' wish, began to pray, Samael appeared and stopped his mouth, saying to him, "How canst thou think of disregarding God's command?" Then Eleazar reported to Moses that he could not pray for him.

He now tried to invoke Caleb's aid, but him, too, Samael prevented from praying to God. Moses then went to the seventy elders and the other leaders of the people, he even implored every single man among Israel to pray for him, saying: "Remember the wrath which the Lord nursed against your fathers, but I brought it to pass that God relinquished His plan to destroy Israel, and forgave Israel their sins. Now, I pray ye, betake yourselves to the sanctuary of God and exhort His pity for me, that He may permit me to enter into the land of Israel, for 'God never rejects the prayer of the multitude.'"

When the people and their leaders heard these words of Moses, they broke out into mournful weeping, and in the Tabernacle with bitter tears they entreated God to answer Moses' prayer, so that their cries rose even to the Throne of Glory. But then one hundred and eighty four myriads of angels under the leadership of the great angels Zakun and Lahash descended and snatched away the words of the suppliants, that they might not reach God. The angel Lahash indeed tried to restore to their place the words which the other angels had snatched away, so that they might reach God, but when Samael learned of this, he fettered Lahash with chains of fire and brought him before God, where he received sixty blows of fire and was expelled from the inner chamber of God because, contrary to God's wish, he had attempted to aid Moses in the fulfilment of his desire. When Israel now saw how the angels dealt with their prayers, they went to Moses and said, "The angels will not let us pray for thee."<sup>896</sup>

When Moses saw that neither the world nor mankind could aid him, he betook himself to the Angel of the Face, to whom he said, "Pray for me, that God may take pity upon me, and that I may not die." But the angel replied: "Why, Moses, dost thou exert thyself in vain! Standing behind the curtain that is drawn before the Lord, I heard that thy prayer in this instance is not to be answered." Moses now laid his hand upon his head and wept bitterly, saying, "To whom shall I now go, that he might implore God's mercy for me?"

God was now very angry with Moses because he would not resign himself to the doom that had been sealed, but His wrath vanished as soon as Moses spoke the words: "The Lord, the Lord, a God full of compassion and gracious, slow to anger, and plenteous in mercy and truth; keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin." God now said kindly



to Moses: "I have registered two vows, one that thou art to die, and the second that Israel is to perish. I cannot cancel both vows, if therefore thou chooseth to live, Israel must be ruined." "Lord of the world!" replied Moses, "Thou approachest me artfully; Thou seizest the rope at both ends, so that I myself must now say, 'Rather shall Moses and a thousand of his kind perish, than a single soul out of Israel!' But will not all men exclaim, 'Alas! The feet that trod the heavens, the face that beheld the Face of the Shekinah, and the hands that received the Torah, shall now be covered with dust!' " God replied: "Nay, the people will say: 'If a man like Moses, who ascended into heaven, who was a peer of the angels, with whom God spoke face to face, and to whom He gave the Torah—if such a man cannot justify himself before God, how much less can an ordinary mortal of flesh and blood, who appears before God without having done good deeds or studied the Torah, justify himself?' I want to know," He added, "why thou art so much aggrieved at thy impending death." Moses: "I am afraid of the sword of the Angel of Death." God: "If this is the reason then speak no more in this matter, for I will not deliver thee into his hand." Moses, however, would not yield, but furthermore said, "Shall my mother Jochebed, to whom my life brought so much grief, suffer sorrow after my death also?" God: "So was it in My mind even before I created the world, and so is the course of the world; every generation has its learned men, every generation has its leaders, every generation has its guides. Up to now it was thy duty to guide the people, but now the time is ripe for thy disciple Joshua to relieve thee of the office destined for him."<sup>897</sup>

895. Tan. B. IV, 11–12; Tan. Wa-Ethanan 6; Petirat Mosheh 125–126 (על עצמינו ע"ע); 2 Petirat Mosheh 679–380; Manzur 15; quotation from Midrash

in *Eshkol* 137a–137b, 364. The three last-named sources are independent of Tan., and the appeals addressed by Moses to the different parts of the universe are given in these sources in a more elaborate form than in Tan. Comp. note 908.

896. Petirat Mosheh 380; Manzur 15–16 (the text is not in an entirely satisfactory state); quotation from Midrash in *Eshkol* 137b, 364. Some elements of this legend are found in very early sources; comp. Mekilta Amalek 2, 55b; Midrash Tannaim 179; DR 3.11 and 7.10. On the "sixty blows of fire", see *Aruk*, s. v. פלס 4, and accordingly the reading of *Eshkol* פולסין דנורא is the correct one, whereas in Manzur the text is somewhat abridged. פולסא is nothing but the Syriac בלצוציתא "sparks" Compare footnote 84 on p. 1011.

897. Tan. B. V, 12 (the text is not in a satisfactory state; read מדת הדין instead of רוח הקדש, and חרבו instead of חבלו); Tan, Wa-Ethanan 6; Petirat Mosheh 120 (this source is the only one which contains the passage about the two vows); 2 Petirat Mosheh 675; Mishle 14, 77. That Moses finally became convinced that his request could only be granted at the cost of Israel's destruction, is clearly brought out in the version of this legend as given in *Hadar*, Deut., 3.25. On the effect of the reciting of God's thirteen attributes, see text on p. 631. On the view that Moses was not delivered into the hands of the Angel of Death, see text on pp. 803, 816–817, and 831. That Jochebed survived her illustrious son is also stated in text on p. 785. On the view that Moses' death was the highest expression of God's justice, see text on p. 800.

## MOSES SERVES JOSHUA

Moses now said to himself: "If God has determined that I may not enter the land of Israel, and I am thus to lose the reward for the many precepts that may be observed only in the Holy Land, for no other reason than because the time has come for my disciple Joshua to go to the front of Israel and lead them into the land, then were it better for me to remain alive, to enter the land, and relinquish to Joshua the leadership of the people." What now did Moses do? From the first day of Shebat to the sixth of Adar, the day before his death, he went and served Joshua from morning until evening, as a disciple



his master. These thirty-six days during which Moses served his former disciple corresponded to the equal number of years during which he had been served by Joshua.

The way in which Moses ministered to Joshua was as follows. During this period he arose at midnight, went to Joshua's door, opened it with a key, and taking a shirt from which he shook out the dust, laid it near to Joshua's pillow. He then cleaned Joshua's shoes and placed them beside his bed. Then he took his undergarment, his cloak, his turban, his golden helmet, and his crown of pearls, examined them to see if they were in good condition, cleaned and polished them, arranged them aright, and laid them on a golden chair. He then fetched a pitcher of water and a golden basin and placed them before the golden chair, so that Joshua upon awakening might find water wherewith to wash himself. He then caused Joshua's rooms, which he had furnished like his own, to be swept and put into order, then ordered the golden throne to be brought in, which he covered with a linen and a woolen cloth, and with other beautiful and costly garments, as is the custom with kings. After all these preparations had been made, he bade the herald proclaim: "Moses stands at Joshua's gate and announces that whosoever wishes to hear God's word should betake himself to Joshua, for he, according to God's word, is the leader of Israel."

When the people heard the herald, they trembled and shook, and pretended to have a headache, so that they might not have to go to Joshua. Every one of them said, in tears, "Woe to thee, O land, when thy king is a child!" But a voice from heaven resounded, crying, "When Israel was a child, then I loved him," and Earth, too, opened her mouth, and said, "I have been young, and now am old, yet have I not seen the righteous forsaken."

While the people refused to lend ear to the herald's summons, the elders of Israel, the leaders of the troops, the princes of the tribes, and the captains of thousands, of hundreds, and of tens appeared at Joshua's tent, and Moses assigned to each his place according to his rank.

In the meantime approached the hour when Joshua was wont to arise, whereupon Moses entered his room and extended his hand to him. When Joshua saw that Moses served him, he was ashamed to have his master minister to him, and taking the shirt out of Moses' hand, and dressing himself, trembling, he cast himself at Moses' feet and said: "O my master, be not the cause wherefore I should die before half my time is done, owing to the sovereignty God has imposed upon me." But Moses replied: "Fear not, my son, thou sinnest not if thou art served by me. With the measure wherewith thou didst mete out to me, do I mete out to thee; as with a pleasant face thou didst serve me, so shall I serve thee. It was I that taught thee, 'Love thy neighbor as thyself,' and also, 'Let thy pupil's honor be as dear to thee as thine own.' " Moses did not rest until Joshua seated himself upon the golden chair, and then Moses served Joshua, who still resisted, in every needful way. After he was through with all this, he laid upon Joshua, who still resisted, his rays of majesty, which he had received from his celestial teacher Zagzagel, scribe of the angels, at the close of his instruction in all the secrets of the Torah.

When Joshua was completely dressed and ready to go out, they reported to him and to Moses that all Israel awaited them. Moses thereupon laid his hand upon Joshua to lead him out of the tent, and quite against Joshua's wish insisted upon giving precedence to him as they stepped forth. When Israel saw Joshua precede Moses, they all trembled, arose, and made room for these two to proceed to the place of the great,



where stood the golden throne, upon which Moses seated Joshua against his will. All Israel burst into tears when they saw Joshua upon the golden throne, and he said amid tears, "Why all this greatness and honor to me?"<sup>898</sup>

In this way did Moses spend the time from the first day of Shebat to the sixth of Adar, during which time he expounded the Torah to the sixty myriads of Israel in seventy languages.

---

898. *Petirat Mosheh* 123–124. As to different elements of which this legend is composed, see DR 9.9; Tan. B. V, 12–13; Tan. Wa-Ethanan 6; Mishle 14.77. On Moses' willingness to become Joshua's servant, if he were only permitted to continue to live, see text on pp. 801, 813, 814, 827. Concerning the herald, see text on pp. 783, 813. On God's love for the innocent youth, see text on p. 1068; on the words exclaimed by the earth, see *Ye-bamot* 16b, where these words are said to have been uttered by "the prince of the world", compare footnote 75 on p. 18; on the rays of Moses and Joshua, see text on p. 789, and Index, s. v. According to *Sefer Hanok* 116, *Zag-zagel* (compare also with p. 504, and text on p. 829) is no other than Metatron, and consequently one is inclined to explain this strange name (the variant *סַגְגִּיָּאל* occurs several times) as *סַגְגִּיָּאל* "the prince of the heavenly princes."

## THE LAST DAY OF MOSES' LIFE

On the seventh day of Adar, Moses knew that on this day he should have to die, for a heavenly voice resounded, saying, "Take heed to thyself, O Moses, for thou hast only one more day to live."<sup>899</sup> What did Moses now do? On this day he wrote thirteen scrolls of the Torah, twelve for the twelve tribes, and one he put into the Holy Ark, so that, if they wished to falsify the Torah, the one in the Ark might remain untouched. Moses thought, "If I occupy myself with the Torah, which is the tree of life, this day will draw to a close, and the impending doom

will be as naught." God, however, beckoned to the sun, which firmly opposed itself to Moses, saying, "I will not set, so long as Moses lives."<sup>900</sup> When Moses had completed writing the scrolls of the Torah, not even half the day was over. He then bade the tribes come to him, and from his hand receive the scrolls of the Torah, admonishing the men and women separately to obey the Torah and its commands. The most excellent among the thirteen scrolls was fetched by Gabriel, who brought it to the highest heavenly court to show the piety of Moses, who had fulfilled all that is written in the Torah. Gabriel passed with it through all the heavens, so that all might witness Moses' piety. It is this scroll of the Torah out of which the souls of the pious read on Monday and Thursday, as well as on the Sabbath and holy days.

Moses on this day showed great honor and distinction to his disciple Joshua in the sight of all Israel. A herald passed before Joshua through all the camp, proclaiming, "Come and hear the words of the new prophet that hath arisen for us to-day!" All Israel approached to honor Joshua. Moses then gave the command to fetch hither a golden throne, a crown of pearls, a royal helmet, and a robe of purple. He himself set up the rows of benches for the Sanhedrin, for the heads of the army, and for the priests. Then Moses betook himself to Joshua, dressed him, put the crown on his head, and bade him be seated upon the golden throne to deliver from it a speech to the people. Joshua then spoke the following words which he first whispered to Caleb, who then announced it in a loud voice to the people. He said: "Awaken, rejoice, heavens of heavens, ye above; sound joyously, foundations of earth, ye below. Awaken and proclaim aloud, ye orders of creation; awaken and sing, ye mountains everlasting. Exult and shout in joy, ye hills of the earth, awaken and burst into songs of triumph, ye hosts of heaven. Sing and relate, ye tents of



Jacob, sing, ye dwelling places of Israel. Sing and hearken to all the words that come from your King, incline your heart to all His words, and gladly take upon yourselves and your souls the commandments of your God. Open your mouth, let your tongue speak, and give honor to the Lord that is your Helper, give thanks to your Lord and put your trust in Him. For He is One, and hath no second, there is none like Him among the gods, not one among the angels is like Him, and beside Him is there none that is your Lord. To His praise there are no bounds; to His fame no limit, no end; to His miracles no fathoming; to His works no number. He kept the oath that He swore to the Patriarchs, through our teacher Moses. He fulfilled the covenant with them, and the love and the vow He had made them, for He delivered us through many miracles, led us from bondage to freedom, clove for us the sea, and bestowed upon us six hundred and thirteen commandments.”

When Joshua had completed his discourse, a voice resounded from heaven, and said to Moses, “Thou hast only five hours more of life.” Moses called out to Joshua, “Stay seated like a king before the people!” Then both began to speak before all Israel; Moses read out the text and Joshua expounded. There was no difference of opinion between them, and the words of the two matched like the pearls in a royal crown. But Moses’ countenance shone like the sun, and Joshua’s like the moon.

While Joshua and all Israel still sat before Moses, a voice from heaven became audible and said, “Moses, thou hast now only four hours of life.” Now Moses began to implore God anew: “O Lord of the world! If I must die only for my disciple’s sake, consider that I am willing to conduct myself as if I were his pupil; let it be as if he were high priest, and I a common priest; he a king, and I his servant.” God replied: “I have

sworn by My great name, which ‘the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain,’ that thou shall not cross the Jordan.” Moses: “Lord of the world! Let me at least, by the power of the Ineffable Name, fly like a bird in the air; or make me like a fish transform my two arms to fins and my hair to scales, that like a fish I may leap over the Jordan and see the land of Israel.” God: “If I comply with thy wish, I shall break My vow.” Moses: “Lord of the world! Lead me upon the pinions of the clouds about three parasangs high beyond the Jordan, so that the clouds be below me, and I from above may see the land.” God replied: “This, too, seems to Me like a breaking of My vow.” Moses: “Lord of the world! Cut me up, limb by limb, throw me over the Jordan, and then revive me, so that I may see the land.” God: “That, too, would be as if I had broken My vow.” Moses: “Let me skim the land with my glance.” God: “In this point will I comply with thy wish. ‘Thou shalt see the land before thee; but thou shalt not go thither.’” God thereupon showed him all the land of Israel, and although it was a square of four hundred parasangs, still God imparted such strength to Moses’ eyes that he could oversee all the land. What lay in the deep appeared to him above, the hidden was plainly in view, the distant was close at hand, and he saw everything.<sup>901</sup>

899. Petirat Mosheh 122: 2 Petirat Mosheh, 378; DR 9.9. Comp. also Josephus *Antiqui.* IV, 8; text on p. 757.

900. DR 9.9; Petirat Mosheh 122; 2 Petirat Mosheh 678; compare with p. 938

901. Petirat Mosheh 122–123 (line 14 of p. 123, beginning with צִתָּה is the continuation of line 5); 2 Petirat Mosheh 378–379; quotation from Midrash in *Eshkol* 137a–137b, 379. On the praying of the departed souls, see text on p. 20, and text on p. 101. The part of the Meturgeman is ascribed to Caleb on account of his strong voice; see text on p. 710. On the shining of the countenances of Moses and Joshua, see text on p. 789, and note 898; see also footnote 6 on p. 841.



## MOSES BEHOLDS THE FUTURE

Pointing to the land, God said: "This is the land which I swore unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, saying, I will give it unto thy seed; to them did I promise it, but to thee do I show it." But he saw not only the land. God pointed with His finger to every part of the Holy Land, and accurately described it to Moses, saying, "This is Judah's share, this Ephraim's," and in this way instructed him about the division of the land. Moses learned from God the history of the whole land, and the history of every part of it. God showed it to him as it would appear in its glory, and how it would appear under the rule of strangers. God revealed to him not only the complete history of Israel that was to take place in the Holy Land, but also revealed to him all that had occurred and that was to occur in the world, from its creation to the Day of Judgment, when the resurrection of the dead will take place. Joshua's war with the Canaanites, Israel's deliverance from the Philistines through Samson, the glory of Israel in David's reign, the building of the Temple under Solomon, and its destruction, the line of kings from the house of David, and the line of prophets from the house of Rahab, the destruction of Gog and Magog on the plain of Jericho, all this and much more, was it given Moses to see. And as God showed him the events in this world, so too did he show him Paradise with its dwellers of piety, and hell with the wicked men that fill it.<sup>902</sup>

The place whence Moses looked upon the Holy Land was a mountain that bore four names: Nebo, Abarim, Hor, and Pisgah. The different appellations are due to the fact that the kingdoms accounted it as a special honor to themselves if they had possessions in the Holy Land. This mountain was divided among four kingdoms, and each kingdom had a special name for its part.<sup>903</sup> The most appropriate name seems to

be Nebo, for upon it died three sinless nebi'im, "prophets," Moses, Aaron, and Miriam.

To this mountain, upon God's command, Moses betook himself at noon of the day on which he died. On this occasion, as upon two others, God had His commands executed at noon to show mankind that they could not hinder the execution of God's orders, even if they chose to do so. Had Moses gone to die on Mount Nebo at night, Israel would have said: "He could well do so in the night when we knew of nothing. Had we known that he should go to Nebo to his death, we should not have let him go. Verily, we should not have permitted him to die, who led us out of Egypt, who clove the sea for us, who caused manna to rain down and the well to spring up, who bade the quails to fly to us, and performed many other great miracles." God therefore bade Moses go to his grave on mount Nebo in bright daylight, at the noon hour, saying, "Let him who wishes to prevent it try to do so."

For a similar reason did Israel's exodus from Egypt take place in the noon hour, for, had they departed at night, the Egyptians would have said: "They were able to do this in the darkness of the night because we knew nothing of it. Had we known, we should not have permitted them to depart, but should have compelled them by force of arms to stay in Egypt." God therefore said: "I shall lead out Israel at the noon hour. Let him who wishes to prevent it try to do so."

Noah, too, entered the ark at the noon hour for a similar reason. God said: "If Noah enters the ark at night, his generation will declare: 'He could do so because we were not aware of it, or we should not have permitted him to enter the ark alone, but should have taken our hammers and axes, and crushed the ark.' Therefore," said God, "do I wish him to enter the ark at the noon hour. Let him who wishes to prevent it try to do so."



God's command to Moses to betake himself to Mount Nebo, and there to die, was couched in the following words: " 'Get thee up into this mountain of Abarim.' Death for thee means not destruction, but elevation. 'Die in the mount whither thou goest up;' go up all alone, and let no one accompany thee. Aaron's son Eleazar accompanied him to his tomb, but no man shall witness the distinction and reward that await thee at thy death. There shalt thou be gathered to thy people, to the fathers of Israel, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and to thy fathers, Kohath and Amram, as well as to thy brother Aaron and thy sister Miriam, just as Aaron thy brother died in mount Hor, and was gathered unto his people." For when Aaron was to die, Moses drew off one by one his garments, with which he invested Aaron's son Eleazar, and after he had taken off all his garments, he clothed him in his death robe. Then he said to Aaron: "Aaron, my brother, enter the cave," and he entered. "Get upon the couch," said Moses, and Aaron did so. "Close thine eyes," and he closed them. "Stretch out thy feet," and Aaron did so, and expired. At sight of this painless and peaceful death, Moses said: "Blessed is the man that dies such a death!" When therefore Moses' end drew nigh, God said: "Thou shalt die the death that thou didst wish, as peacefully and with as little pain as thy brother Aaron."<sup>904</sup>

---

902. Sifre D., 357; Sifre N., 135–136; Mekilta Amalek 2, 55b–56a (according to this passage, the past history of the human race was shown to him); Midrash Tannaim 19, 206, 207, 293–294; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 34.1–4. A very lengthy description of the mysteries revealed to Moses shortly before his death is found in ps.-Philo 19.10–13, whereas "The Assumption of Moses" containing the future history of Israel from the time of Moses' death until the days of the Messiah is given as the last words of Moses to Joshua. Compare with pp. 790–791. The haggadic literature contains many references to the cosmic as well as historic revelations made to Moses.

But the occasion on which they took place is not stated. The election of Moses at the burning bush, the revelation on Sinai, and the vision on the top of Pisgah are the three outstanding moments in the life of the great prophet, and accordingly the legend connects the revelations of the cosmic and historic mysteries, granted to Moses, with one of these three events. See Tan. B. III, 83, and IV, 162; WR 26.7; EZ 6, 183; BaR 23.5; text on pp. 641 and 788. Among the Church Fathers it is Aphraates, 420 who, in agreement with the Rabbis and ps.-Philo, finds in Deut. 34.1–4 an allusion to the revelation of the future history of Israel.—Concerning the line of prophets from the house of Rahab, see text on p. 843.

903. Sifre N., 37; Sifre D., 338; Midrash Tannaim 206. Compare with p. 846; Hullin 60b.

904. Sifre D., 337–339; Midrash Tannaim 206–207; Sotah 13a; Ozar Midrashim 41–42; BR 47.9. The last two sources add that Abraham performed the ceremony of circumcision on himself and the members of his family in broad daylight (comp. Gen. 17.26), to show his fearlessness and his trust in God. With regard to Moses' burial, ps.-Philo, 19; 20D, remarks: And He buried him...in the light of the whole world. A similar statement is found in the Assumption of Moses 1.15: And I am now going in the presence of all the people to rest with my fathers. The emphasis laid by all these authorities on the fact that Moses' death took place "in public" has very likely the aim to combat the view that he did not die at all, but was translated to heaven; comp. note 951. That this hypothesis is not without sound ground may be seen from Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 8.48, who describes the last moments of Moses as follows: Now as he went thence to the place where he was to vanish out of their sight, they all followed him weeping; but Moses beckoned with his hand...and bid them stay behind...All those who accompanied him were, the senate and Eleazar the high priest and Joshua the commander. Now as soon as they were come to the mountain called Abarim...he dismissed the senate, and as he was going to embrace Eleazar and Joshua, and was still discoursing with them, a cloud stood over him on the sudden, and he disappeared in a certain valley, although he wrote in the holy books that he died (comp. note 951), which was done out of fear lest they should venture to say that because of his extraordinary virtue he went to God. The later legend concerning the translation of Enoch is similar to that given by Josephus with regard to "the disappearance" of Moses. Compare with p. 123.



## MOSES MEETS THE MESSIAH IN HEAVEN

Moses received still another special distinction on the day of his death, for on that day God permitted him to ascend to the lofty place of heaven, and showed him the reward that awaited him in heaven and the future. The Divine attribute of Mercy appeared there before him and said to him: "I bring glad tidings to thee, at which thou wilt rejoice. Turn to the Throne of Mercy and behold!" Moses turned to the Throne of Mercy and saw God build the Temple of jewels and pearls, while between the separate gems and pearls shimmered the radiance of the Shekinah, brighter than all jewels. And in this Temple he beheld the Messiah, David's son, and his own brother Aaron, standing erect, and dressed in the robe of the high priest. Aaron then said to Moses: "Do not draw near, for this is the place where the Shekinah dwells, and know that no one may enter here before he have tasted of death and his soul have been delivered to the Angel of Death."

Moses now fell upon his face before God, saying, "Permit me to speak to Thy Messiah before I die." God then said to Moses: "Come, I shall teach thee My great name, that the flames of the Shekinah consume thee not." When the Messiah, David's son, and Aaron beheld Moses approach them, they knew that God had taught him the great name, so they went to meet him and saluted him with the greeting: "Blessed be he that cometh in the name of the Lord." Moses thereupon said to the Messiah: "God told me that Israel was to erect a Temple to Him upon earth, and I now see Him build His own Temple, and that, too, in heaven!" The Messiah replied: "Thy father Jacob saw the Temple that will be erected on earth, and also the Temple that God rears with His own hand in heaven,

and he clearly understood that it was the Temple God constructed with His own hand in heaven as a house of jewels, of pearls, and of the light of the Shekinah, that was to be preserved for Israel to all eternity, to the end of all generations. This was in the night when Jacob slept upon a stone, and in his dream beheld one Jerusalem upon earth, and another in heaven. God then said to Jacob, 'My son Jacob, to-day I stand above thee as in the future thy children will stand before Me.' At the sight of these two Jerusalems, the earthly and the heavenly, Jacob said: 'The Jerusalem on earth is nothing, this is not the house that will be preserved for my children in all generations, but in truth that other house of God, that He builds with His own hands.' But if thou sayest," continued the Messiah, "that God with His own hands builds Himself a Temple in heaven, know then that with His hands also He will build the Temple upon earth."

When Moses heard these words from the mouth of the Messiah, he rejoiced greatly, and lifting up his face to God, he said, "O Lord of the world! When will this Temple built here in heaven come down to earth below?" God replied: "I have made known the time of this event to no creature, either to the earlier ones or to the later, how then should I tell thee?" Moses said: "Give me a sign, so that out of the happenings in the world I may gather when that time will approach." God: "I shall first scatter Israel as with a shovel over all the earth, so that they may be scattered among all nations in the four corners of the earth, and then shall I 'set My hand again the second time,' and gather them in that migrated with Jonah, the son of Amittai, to the land of Pathros, and those that dwell in the land of Shinar, Hamath, Elam, and the islands of the sea."

When Moses had heard this, he departed from heaven with a joyous spirit. The Angel of



Death followed him to earth, but could not possess himself of Moses' soul, for he refused to give it up to him, delivering it to none but God Himself.<sup>905</sup>

---

905. BHM VI, introduction 22; a superior text (but even this one is not entirely correct; read *וְאֵלֶּיךָ שָׁמַי* at the end read *וְלֹא* instead of *וְאֵל*) is given by Epstein, *El-dad*, 67–70. The legend that God showed Jacob (and also Abraham, Isaac, Moses, and David) the terrestrial as well as the celestial temple is very old; see Midrash Tannaim 216; Sifre D., 352; BR 56.10. On the view that Moses surrendered his soul only to God, see text on pp. 810, 831, *seq.*

## THE LAST HOURS OF MOSES

When Moses had finished looking upon the land and the future, he was one hour nearer to death. A voice sounded from heaven and said, "Make no fruitless endeavors to live, for thou hast now in this world only three hours of life." Moses, however, did not desist from prayer, saying to God: "Lord of the world! Let me stay on this side the Jordan with the sons of Reuben and the sons of Gad, that I may be as one of them, while Joshua as king at the head of Israel shall enter into the land beyond the Jordan." God replied: "Dost thou wish Me to make as naught the words in the Torah that read, 'Three times in the year all thy males shall appear before the Lord God?' If Israel sees that thou dost not make a pilgrimage to the sanctuary, they will say, 'If Moses, through whom the Torah and the laws were given to us, does not make a pilgrimage to the sanctuary, how much less do we need to do so!' Thou wouldst then cause nonobservance of My commandments. I have, furthermore, written in the Torah through thee, 'At the end of every seven years, in the set time of the year of release, when all Israel is come

to appear before the Lord thy God, in the place which He shall choose, thou shalt read this law before all Israel in their hearing.' If thou wert to live thou shouldst put Joshua's authority in the eyes of all Israel to naught, for they would say, 'Instead of learning the Torah and hearing it from the mouth of the disciple, let us rather go to the teacher and learn from him.' Israel will then abandon Joshua and go to thee, so that thou wouldst cause rebellion against My Torah, in which is written that the king shall read before all Israel the Torah in the set time of the year of release."<sup>906</sup>

In the meanwhile still another hour had passed, and a voice sounded from heaven and said: "How long wilt thou endeavor in vain to avert the sentence? Thou hast now only two hours more of life." The wicked Samael, head of the evil spirits, had eagerly awaited the moment of Moses' death, for he hoped to take his soul like that of all other mortals, and he said continually, "When will the moment be at hand when Michael shall weep and I shall triumph?" When now only two hours remained before Moses' death, Michael, Israel's guardian angel, began to weep, and Samael was jubilant, for now the moment he had awaited so long was very close. But Michael said to Samael: "Rejoice not against me, mine enemy: when I fall, I shall arise; when I sit in darkness, the Lord shall be a light unto me." Even if I fell on account of Moses's death, I shall arise again through Joshua when he will conquer the one and thirty kings of Palestine. Even if I sit in darkness owing to the destruction of the first and second Temples, the Lord shall be my light on the day of the Messiah."

In the meanwhile still another hour had passed, and a voice resounded from heaven and said, "Moses, thou hast only one hour more of life!" Moses thereupon said: "O Lord of the world! Even if Thou wilt not let me enter into the land of Israel, leave me at least in this world,



that I may live, and not die.” God replied: “If I should not let thee die in this world, how then can I revive thee hereafter for the future world? Thou wouldst, moreover, then give the lie to the Torah, for through thee I wrote therein, ‘neither is there any that can deliver out of My hand.’” Moses continued to pray: “O Lord of the world! If Thou dost not permit me to enter into the land of Israel, let me live like the beasts of the field, that feed on herbs, and drink water, let me live and see the world: let me be as one of these.” But God said, “Let it suffice thee!” Still Moses continued: “If Thou wilt not grant me this, let me at least live in this world like a bird that flies in the four directions of the world, and each day gathers its food from the ground, drinks water out of the streams, and at eve returns to its nest.” But even this last prayer of his was denied, for God said, “Thou hast already made too many words.”<sup>907</sup>

Moses now raised up his voice in weeping, and said, “To whom shall I go that will now implore mercy for me!” He went to every work of creation and said, “Implore mercy for me.” But all replied: “We cannot even implore mercy for ourselves, for God ‘hath made everything beautiful in its time,’ but afterward, ‘all go unto one place, all are of the dust, and all turn to dust again,’ ‘for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment.’”

When Moses saw that none of the works of creation could aid him, he said: “He is ‘the Rock, His work is perfect, for all His ways are judgment: A God of faithfulness and without iniquity, just and right is He.’”

When Moses saw that he could not escape death, he called Joshua, and in the presence of all Israel addressed him as follows: “Behold, my son, the people that I deliver into thy hands, is the people of the Lord. It is still in its youth, and hence is inexperienced in the observance of its

commandments; beware, therefore, lest thou speak harshly to them, for they are the children of the Holy One, who called them, ‘My first-born son, Israel’; and He loved them before all other nations.” But God, on the other hand, at once said to Joshua: “Joshua, thy teacher Moses has transferred his office to thee. Follow now in his footsteps, take a rod and hit upon the head, ‘Israel is a child, hence I love him,’ and ‘withhold not correction from the child.’”<sup>908</sup>

Joshua now said to Moses: “O my teacher Moses, what will become of me? If I give to the one a share upon a mountain, he will be sure to want one in the valley, and he to whom I shall give his share in the valley will wish it to be upon a mountain.” Moses, however, quieted him, saying, “Be not afraid, for God hath assured me that there will be peace at the distribution of the land.” Then Moses said: “Question me regarding all the laws that are not quite clear to thee, for I shall be taken from thee, and thou shalt see me no more.” Joshua replied, “When, O my master, by night or by day, have I ever left thee, that I should be in doubt concerning anything that thou hast taught me?” Moses said, “Even if thou hast no questions to ask of me, come hither, that I may kiss thee.” Joshua went to Moses, who kissed him and wept upon his neck, and a second time blessed him, saying, “Mayest thou be at peace, and Israel be at peace with thee.”<sup>909</sup>

906. Midrash Tannaim 179; Petirat Mosheh 125; 2 Petirat Mosheh 679.

907. DR 11.9; Petirat Mosheh 125 (read אֲנִי וְאִפְרָח); 2 Petirat Mosheh 679. On the struggle between Sammael and Moses, see text on pp. 828, *seq.*

908. Petirat Mosheh 125–126 and 2 Petirat Mosheh 680, both of which are based on old sources; see Sifre D., 305; quotation from Tan. in Makiri, Prov. 23.13; *Likkutim*, V, 161a–161b; ARN 17, 65, and the parallel sources cited by Schechter. Concerning the appeal made by Moses to the “works of creation”, see text on p. 808, and ‘Abodah Zarah 17a. The Midrashim very likely made use of this talmudic passage. Concerning “the acknowledging



of God's justice" (צדוק הדין) by Moses, see text on p. 233, text on p. 341. Comp. Sotah 40a and Sanhedrin 8a.

909. Petirat Mosheh 126. Compare with p. 841. Moses further said to Joshua: "Thou shalt have to carry a burden which proved too heavy for three (Moses, Aaron, and Miriam). May God be with thee! I implore thee to take care of my mother, who has the terrible misfortune of losing all her children in her life-time. Now thou art to be her son. Be kind to the poor proselyte (Zipporah), and see that no evil is done to her. In memory of our friendship treat my orphans, to whom it was not granted to be my successors, as members of thy household." See 2 Petirat Mosheh 680 (bottom). On Jochebed, see text on p. 785.

## THE BLESSING OF MOSES

The people now came to Moses and said, "The hour of thy death is at hand," and he replied: "Wait until I have blessed Israel. All my life long they had no pleasant experiences with me, for I constantly rebuked them and admonished them to fear God and fulfil the commandments, therefore do I not now wish to depart out of this world before I have blessed them."<sup>910</sup> Moses had indeed always cherished the desire of blessing Israel, but the Angel of Death had never permitted him to satisfy his wish, so shortly before dying, he enchained the Angel of Death, cast him beneath his feet, and blessed Israel in spite of their enemy, saying, "Save Thy people, and bless Thine inheritance: feed them also, and bear them up for ever."<sup>911</sup>

Moses was not the first to bestow blessings, as former generations had also done so, but no blessing was as effective as his. Noah blessed his sons, but it was a divided blessing, being intended for Shem, whereas Ham, instead of being blessed, was cursed. Isaac blessed his sons, but his blessings led to a dispute, for Esau envied Jacob his blessing. Jacob blessed his sons, but even his blessing was not without a blemish, for in the blessing he rebuked Reuben and called him

to account for the sins he had committed. Even the number of Moses' blessings excelled that of his predecessors. For when God created the world, He blessed Adam and Eve, and this blessing remained upon the world until the flood, when it ceased. When Noah left the ark, God appeared before him and bestowed upon him anew the blessing that had vanished during the flood, and this blessing rested upon the world until Abraham came into the world and received a second blessing from God, who said, "And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee." God then said to Abraham: "Henceforth it no longer behooves Me to bless My creatures in person, but I shall leave the blessings to thee: he whom thou blessest, shall be blessed by Me." Abraham did not, however, bless his own son Isaac, in order that the villain Esau might not have a share in that blessing. Jacob, however, received not only two blessings from his father, but one other besides from the angel with whom he wrestled, and one from God; and the blessing also that had been Abraham's to bestow upon his house went to Jacob. When Jacob blessed his sons, he passed on to them the five blessings he had received, and added one other. Balaam should really have blessed Israel with seven benedictions, corresponding to the seven altars he had erected, but he envied Israel greatly, and blessed them with only three blessings. God thereupon said: "Thou villain that begrudgest Israel their blessings! I shall not permit thee to bestow upon Israel all the blessings that are their due. Moses, who has 'a benevolent eye,' shall bless Israel." And so, too, it came to pass. Moses added a seventh blessing to the six benedictions with which Jacob had blessed his twelve sons. This was not, however, the first time that Moses blessed the people. He blessed them at the erection of the Tabernacle, then at its consecration, a third time



at the installation of the judges, and a fourth time on the day of his death.<sup>912</sup>

Before bestowing his blessing upon Israel, however, Moses intoned a song in God's praise, for it is fitting to glorify God's name before asking a favor of Him, and as Moses was about to ask God to bless Israel, he first proclaimed His grandeur and His majesty.<sup>913</sup>

He said: "When God first revealed Himself to Israel to bestow the Torah upon them, He appeared to them not from one direction, but from all four at once. He 'came from Sinai,' which is in the South, 'and rose from Seir unto them,' that is in the East; 'He shined forth from mount Paran,' that is in the North, 'and he came from the ten thousands of holy angels that dwell in the West.'<sup>914</sup> He proclaimed the Torah not only in the language of Sinai, that is Hebrew, but also in the tongue of Seir, that is Roman, as well as in Paran's speech, that is Arabic, and in the speech of Kadesh, that is Aramaic, for He offered the Torah not to Israel alone, but to all the nations of the earth. These, however, did not want to accept it, hence His wrath against them, and His especial love for Israel who, despite their awed fear and trembling upon God's appearance on Sinai, still accepted the Torah."<sup>915</sup> Lord of the world!" continued Moses, "When Israel shall have been driven out of their land, be mindful still of the merits of their Patriarchs and stand by them, deliver them in Thy mercy from 'the yoke of the nations,' and from death, and guide them in the future world as Thou didst lead them in the desert."<sup>916</sup>

At these words Israel exclaimed, "The Torah that Moses brought to us at the risk of his life is our bride, and no other nation may lay claim to it."<sup>917</sup> Moses was our king when the seventy elders assembled, and in the future the Messiah will be our king, surrounded by seven shepherds, and he will gather together once more the scattered tribes of Israel."<sup>918</sup> Then Moses said: "God

first appeared in Egypt to deliver His people, then at Sinai to give them the Torah, and He will appear a third time to take vengeance at Edom, and will finally appear to destroy Gag."<sup>919</sup>

After Moses had praised and glorified God, he began to implore His blessings for the tribes. His first prayer to God concerned Reuben, for whom he implored forgiveness for his sin with Bilhah. He said: "May Reuben come to life again in the future world for his good deed in saving Joseph, and may he not remain forever dead on account of his sin with Bilhah. May Reuben's descendants also be heroes in war, and heroes in their knowledge of the Torah." God granted this prayer and forgave Reuben's sin in accordance with the wish of the other tribes, who begged God to grant forgiveness to their eldest brother.<sup>920</sup> Moses at once perceived that God had granted his prayer, for all the twelve stones in the high priest's breastplate began to gleam forth, whereas formerly Reuben's stone had given forth no light.<sup>921</sup> When Moses saw that God had forgiven Reuben's sin, he at once set about trying to obtain God's pardon for Judah, saying, "Was it not Judah that through his penitent confession of his sin with his daughter-in-law Tamar induced Reuben, too, to seek atonement and repentance?" The sin for which Moses asked God to forgive Judah was that he had never redeemed his promise to bring Benjamin back to his father. Owing to this sin, his corpse fell to pieces, so that its bones rolled about in their coffin during the forty years' march in the desert. But as soon as Moses prayed to God, saying, "Hear, Lord, the voice of Judah," the bones joined together once more, but his sin was not quite forgiven, for he was not yet admitted to the heavenly academy. Therefore Moses continued to pray: "Bring him in unto his people," and he was admitted. It did not, indeed, benefit him, for in punishment of his sin, God brought it to pass that he could not follow the discus-



sions of the scholars in heaven, much less take part in them, whereupon Moses prayed: "Let his hands be sufficient for him," and then he no longer sat as one dumb in the heavenly academy. But still his sin was not quite forgiven, for Judah could not succeed in being victorious in the disputes of the learned, hence Moses prayed, "And Thou shalt be an help against his adversaries." It was only then that Judah's sin was quite forgiven, and that he succeeded in disputes with his antagonists in the heavenly academy.<sup>922</sup>

As Moses prayed for Judah, so too did he pray for his seed, and especially for David and the royal dynasty of David. He said: "When David, king of Israel, shall be in need, and shall pray to Thee, then, 'Hear, Lord, his voice, and Thou shalt be an help against his adversaries,' 'bring him' then back 'to his people' in peace; and when alone he shall set out into battle against Goliath, 'let his hands be sufficient for him, and Thou shalt be an help against his adversaries.' " Moses at the same time prayed God to stand by the tribe of Judah, whose chief weapon in war was the bow, that their 'hands might be sufficient,' that they might vigorously and with good aim speed the arrow.

As Moses had never forgiven Simeon their sin with the daughters of Moab, he bestowed upon them no blessing, but this tribe also was not quite forgotten, for he included this tribe in his blessing for Judah, praying to God, that He might hear Judah's voice whenever he should pray for the tribe of Simeon when they should be in distress, and that furthermore He should give them their possession in the Holy Land beside Judah's.<sup>923</sup>

Simeon and Levi "drank out of the same cup," for both together in their wrath slew the inhabitants of Shechem, but whereas Levi made amends for his sin, Simeon added another new one. It was the Levites who, in their zeal for God, slew those that worshipped the Golden

Calf; it was a Levite, Phinehas, moreover, who in his zeal for God slew the wicked prince of the tribe of Simeon, and his mistress. Hence Moses praised and blessed the tribe of Levi, whereas he did not even consider Simeon with a word.

His words first referred to Aaron, prince of the tribe of Levi. He said: "Well may Thy Urim and Tummim belong to Aaron, who ministered services of love to Thy children, who stood every test that Thou didst put upon him, and who at the 'waters of rebellion' became the victim of a wrong accusation." God had then decreed against Aaron that he was to die in the desert, although not he, but Moses had trespassed against Him, saying to Israel, "Hear now, ye rebels." As Aaron, prince of the tribe of Levi, when Israel was still in Egypt, declaimed passionately against the people because they worshipped idols, so too all the tribe of Levi stood up by God's standard when Israel worshipped the Golden Calf in the desert, and slew the idolaters, even if they were their half-brothers or their daughters' sons. The Levites also were the only ones who, in Egypt as in the desert, remained true to God and His teachings, did not abandon the token of the covenant, and were not tempted to rebellion by the spies. "Hence," continued Moses, "shall the Levites be the only ones from whose mouth shall issue judgment and instruction for Israel. 'They shall put incense' in the Holy of Holies, 'and whole burnt offerings upon His altar.' Their sacrifices shall reconcile Israel with God, and they themselves shall be blessed with earthly goods. Thou, Lord, 'smitest through the loins of them that rise up against them,' that dispute the priestly rights of this tribe; Thou didst destroy Korah, and they 'that hated them,' like king Uzriah, shall not rise again."<sup>924</sup> 'Bless, Lord, the substance' of the Levites who give from the tithes that they receive one-tenth to the priests. Mayest Thou accept sacrifice from the hands of the priest Elijah upon mount Car-



mel, 'smite the loins' of his enemy Ahab, break the neck of the latter's false prophets, and may the enemies of the high priest Johanan rise not again."<sup>925</sup>

"Benjamin," said Moses, "is the beloved of the Lord, whom He will always shield, and in whose possession the sanctuary shall stand, in this world as well as in the time of the Messiah, and in the future world."<sup>926</sup>

Moses blessed Joseph's tribe with the blessing that their possession might be the most fruitful and blessed land on earth; dew shall ever be there, and many wells spring up. It shall constantly be exposed to the gentle influences of sun and moon, that the fruits may ripen early. "I wish him," said Moses, "that the blessings given him by the Patriarchs and the wives of the Patriarchs may be fulfilled." And so, too, it came to pass, for the land of the tribe of Joseph possessed everything, and nothing within it was lacking. This was the reward to Joseph for having fulfilled the will of God that was revealed to Moses in the bush of thorns; and also because as king of Egypt he treated his brothers with high honors although they had thrust him from their midst. Moses furthermore blessed Joseph by promising him that, as he had been the first of Jacob's sons to come to Egypt, he was also to be the first in the future world to appear in the Holy Land. Moses proclaimed the heroism of Joseph's seed in the words: "As it is a vain thing to try to force the firstling bullock to labor, so little shall Joseph's sons be yoked into service by the empires; as the unicorn with his horns pushes away all other animals, so, too, shall Joseph's sons rule the nations, even to the ends of the earth. The Ephraimite Joshua shall destroy myriads of heathens, and the Manassite Gideon thousands of them."<sup>927</sup>

Zebulun was the tribe that before all the other tribes devoted itself to commerce, and in this way acted as the agent between Israel and

the other nations, selling the products of Palestine to the latter, and foreign wares to the former. Hence the blessing that Moses bestowed upon them. " 'Rejoice, Zebulun, in thy going out' on commercial enterprises; at thy instance shall many nations pray upon the sacred mountain of the Temple and offer their sacrifices." For the people that came into Zebulun's realms on matters of business used to go from thence to Jerusalem to look upon the sanctuary of the Jews, and many of them were converted through the grand impression that the life in the holy city made upon them. Moses furthermore blessed this tribe by giving them an estate by the sea, which might yield them costly fish and the purple shell, and the sand of whose shores might furnish them the material for glass. The other tribes were therefore dependent upon Zebulun for these articles, which they could not obtain from any one else, for whosoever attempted to rob Zebulun of them, was doomed to bad luck in business. It is the "Sea of Chaifa" also, within Zebulun's territory, where all the treasures of the ocean were brought to shore; for whenever a ship is wrecked at sea, the ocean sends it and its treasures to the sea of Chaifa, where it is hoarded for the pious until the Judgment Day.<sup>928</sup> One other blessing of Zebulun was that it would always be victorious in battle, whereas the tribe of Issachar, closely bound up with it, was blessed by its distinction in the "tents of learning." For Issachar was "the tribe of scholars and of judges," wherefore Moses blessed them, saying that in "the future time," Israel's great house of instruction as well as the great Sanhedrin would be located in this tribe.<sup>929</sup>

The tribe of Gad, dwelling on the boundary of the land of Israel, received the benediction that in "the future time" it would be as strong in battle as it had been at the first conquest of Palestine, and would hereafter stand at the head of Israel on their return to the Holy Land, as it had done on their first entrance into



the land. Moses praised this tribe for choosing its site on this side the Jordan because that place had been chosen to hold Moses' tomb. Moses indeed died on mount Nebo, which is Reuben's possession, but his body was taken from Nebo by the pinions of the Shekinah, and brought to Gad's territory, a distance of four miles, amid the lamentations of the angels, who said, "He shall enter into peace and rest in his bed."<sup>930</sup>

Dan, who like Gad had his territory on the boundary of the land, was also blessed with strength and might, that he might ward off the attacks of Israel's enemies. He was also blessed in receiving his territory in the Holy Land in two different sections of it.<sup>931</sup>

Naphtali's blessing read: "O Naphtali, satisfied with favor, and full with the blessing of the Lord: possess thou the west and the south." This blessing was verified, for the tribe of Naphtali had in its possession an abundance of fish and mushrooms, so that they could maintain themselves without much labor; and the valley of Gennesaret furthermore was their possession, whose fruits were renowned for their extraordinary sweetness. But Naphtali was blessed not with material blessings only, but also with spiritual; for it was the great house of instruction at Tiberias to which Moses alluded when he said of Naphtali, "he is 'full with the blessings of the Lord.'"<sup>932</sup>

Moses called Asher the favorite of his brethren, for it was this tribe that in the years of release provided nourishment for all Israel, as its soil was so productive that what grew of its own accord sufficed to sustain all. But Moses blessed Asher in particular with a land rich in olives, so that oil flowed in streams through Asher's land. Hence Moses blessed him with the words: "The treasures of all lands shall flow to thee, for the nations shall give thee gold and silver for thine oil." He blessed Asher moreover with many

sons,<sup>933</sup> and with daughters that preserved the charms of youth in their old age.<sup>934</sup>

As Moses uttered eleven benedictions, so likewise did he compose eleven psalms, corresponding to the eleven tribes blessed by him.<sup>935</sup> These psalms of Moses were later received into David's Psalter, where the psalms of Adam, Melchizedek, Abraham, Solomon, Asaph, and the three sons of Korah also found their place.<sup>936</sup> Moses' first psalm says, "Thou turnest man to destruction; and sayest, Return, ye children of men: and forgivest the forefather of the tribe of Reuben who sinned, but returned again to God." Another one of Moses' psalms reads, "He that dwelleth in the secret place of the most High shall abide under the shadow of the Almighty," which corresponds to the tribe of Levi that dwelled in the sanctuary, the shadow of the Almighty. To the tribe of Judah, whose name signifies, "Praise the Lord," belongs the psalm, "It is a good thing to give thanks unto the Lord" The psalm: "The Lord is apparelled with majesty," is Benjamin's, for the sanctuary stood in his possession, hence this psalm closes with the words, "Holiness becometh Thine house, O Lord, forevermore." The psalm: "O Lord, Thou God to whom vengeance belongeth; Thou God to whom vengeance belongeth, shine forth," was composed by Moses for the tribe of Gad; for Elijah, a member of this tribe, was to destroy the foundations of the heathens, and to wreak upon them the vengeance of the Lord. To the tribe of learned men, Issachar, goes the psalm: "O come, let us sing unto the Lord: let us make a joyful noise to the rock of our salvation," for it is this tribe that occupy themselves with the Torah, the book of praise.<sup>937</sup>

---

910. Tan. B. V, 13; Tan. Wa-Ethanan 6; Petirat Mosheh 126; 2 Petirat Mosheh 680–381; PK 32, 197a.



911. PK 32, 198b; DR 11.5; DZ 9. As to the victory of Moses over the angel of Death (=Sammael), see text on pp. 820, *seq.*

912. PK 32, 198b–199b; Tan. B. V, 52–54; Tan. Berakah 1. Comp. also DR 11.1. As to Abraham's refraining from blessing Isaac, see text on p. 243. On the relation of the blessings of Moses to those of Jacob, see text on p. 409. Jacob bestowed upon his sons the blessings he had received from God, from the angel with whom he had wrestled, and from his grandfather; the two blessings he had received from his father (comp. Gen. 27.28–29 and 28.1); he also added one blessing of his own. He thus gave six blessings to his son. Comp. also BR 94.5. The blessings given by Moses to each tribe corresponded to the pious deeds of the progenitor of the tribe, and accordingly they supplemented the blessings which Jacob bestowed on his sons, the sires of the tribes; see quotation from Midrash in Sabba', Berakah, 165b. Comp. further Sifre D., 357 (on יַעֲקֹב יַעֲקֹב); Hasidim 18. Jacob's sons took turns in attending on their father on week-days, while on the Sabbath they all together attended on him. As long as their grandfather Isaac was alive, they, together with their father, spent the Sabbath with Isaac. The blessings bestowed by Jacob on his sons corresponded with the services rendered on the days when they attended on him; Hasidim 171. On other blessings of Moses, see text on pp. 586 and 656.

913. Sifre D., 343; Midrash Tannaim 208–209. Following Moses' example, David, Solomon, and the wise men who instituted the prayer (comp. with text on p. 283) began with the glorification of God's name, and then proceeded with their requests.

914. Midrash Tannaim 209. On the west as the place of the Shekinah, see Baba Batra 25a and Index, s. v. "West".

915. Sifre D., 343; Midrash Tannaim 209; Targum Yeru-shalmi Deut. 32.2. Compare with p. 593.

916. Midrash Tannaim 212. For other haggadic interpretations of Deut. 33.3, see Targumim, *ad loc.*; Sifre D., 344; Midrash Tannaim 212–213.

917. Sifre D., 345; Midrash Tannaim 212–213. On the Torah as the bride, or rather "betrothed" of Israel, see Friedmann on Sifre, *loc. cit.*; text on p. 600 and note 200.

918. Midrash Tannaim 313; Targumim Deut. 33.5. According to another view, this verse of Deut. speaks of God as the King of Israel; comp. Sifre D., 346, and Midrash Tannaim, *loc. cit.* On Moses as king see note 170. On the Seven Shepherds, see footnote 142 on p. 99.

919. Midrash Tannaim 210. According to Sifre D., 343, the appearance of God against Gog will be the third and the fourth at the advent of the Messiah. An old tannaitic tradition speaks of "God's ten descents on earth". He descended to punish Adam (Gen. 3.8); to look at the tower (*ibid.* 11.5); to convince Himself of the wickedness of the

sinful cities (*ibid.* 18.21); to deliver Israel from Egypt (Exod. 3.8); to drown the Egyptians in the Red Sea (2 Sam. 22.10); to reveal the Torah (Exod. 19.20); to make His spirit rest upon the seventy elders (Num. 11.5); to make the Shekinah dwell in the Temple (Ezek. 44.2). He will also descend in the time to come when He will appear to execute judgment upon Gog. See Mekilta Bahodesh 6, 64a; Sifre N., 33; ARN 24, 102 (in this passage the ascents are also described), and second version 37, 96–97, which contains some variants; RR 38.9. According to PRE 14 and 24, God descended to reveal Himself unto Moses in the bush, to perform the miracle of making the water flow from the rock (twice); He also descended twice on the tabernacle. Comp. note 206.

920. Sifre D., 347; Midrash Tannaim 213–214. Comp. also Philo, *De Caritate*, 4, which reads: And the things which were entreated for in the petitions were real blessings, not only that such things might fall to their share in this mortal life, but still more so when the soul should be released from the bondage of flesh. Philo was very likely acquainted with the interpretations given by the Rabbis of the blessings bestowed upon Reuben and Judah. The genuineness of this sentence is however very doubtful; it is very likely an addition by a Christian reader. The further remarks of Philo, *ibid.* and *Moses*, 2 (3).39, that some of the blessings have already been fulfilled, and that "the rest will certainly be accomplished", are in full agreement with the Haggadah of the Rabbis, who find in these blessings the history of Israel from its very beginning until the days of the Messiah. The statement of Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 8.44, that "the song (*i. e.*, Deut. 32.1–43) contains a prediction of what was to come afterwards, agreeably whereto all things have happened all along, and so still happen to us", is in perfect agreement with the view of the Rabbis; see Sifre D., 307–333; Midrash Tannaim 192–204; Yerushalmi Targumim, *ad loc.*—That Moses prayed for Reuben's life in the future world is also stated by Aphraates, 420, and Epiphanius, *Ancoratus*, 97.

921. DZ 10. Compare with pp. 651–652; text on p. 846; text on p. 350. When in accordance with the command of God, the tribe of Reuben was charged to pronounce the curse upon mount Ebal against him who committed incest with his father's wife (comp. Deut. 27.13 and 20), all Israel knew then that Reuben's sin was forgiven; *Shitah* 2; the very lengthy quotation from an unknown Midrash in Sabba', Wa-Yeze 36b, Ki-Tabo, 152a. This unknown Midrash adds that Reuben never asked his father's pardon, and therefore his sin, notwithstanding his life-long repentance, was not forgiven until Moses prayed for him. Compare footnote 60 on p. 339.

922. Baba Kamma 91b; MHG I, 689; Sifre D., 348; Midrash Tannaim 214. Compare with p. 345.



923. Sifre D., 348; Midrash Tannaim 214; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 33.7; Tehillim 86, 372, and 102, 430; PK 32, 197b. As to the sins committed by the tribe of Simeon, see text on p. 783, and note 794. PK, *loc. cit.*, adds that because the tribe of Simeon had not received any blessing from Moses, it did not furnish Israel with a king, whereas each of the other tribes produced one king or more. It is true that Zimri was of the tribe of Simeon; but having only reigned for seven days (comp. I Kings 16.15), he may be disregarded. The fact that this tribe did not furnish any kings is mentioned also in the Testaments of the 12 Patriarchs, Simeon, 5.6. and Tadshe 8; but comp., to the contrary, Sukkah 27b, where it is stated that “there was not one tribe which did not furnish kings and judges”; compare also with p. 407. Philo, *De Conf. Ling.*, 35, is of the opinion that Moses included Simeon in Levi’s blessing. Comp. the following note.

924. Sifre D., 349–352; Midrash Tannaim 214–215; compare with p. 433; text on pp. 673, 714, 734. Ephraem I, 191 A-C, in agreement with the Rabbis, remarks that Moses failed to bless the tribe of Simeon on account of its sin committed at Shittim. His observations on the difference between the tribes of Simeon and Levi, as contrasted with the similarity of the character of their sires, the sons of Jacob, are found, almost verbatim, in the tannaitic sources quoted.

925. Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 33.11. According to a later tradition, the father of Mattathias the Hasmonean was the high priest Johanan (Soferim 20.8; comp. Müller, *ad loc.*), and it is very likely that Targum Yerushalmi refers to this alleged high priest and not to John (Johanan) Hyrcanus. The older haggadah never alludes to the Hasmoneans (it was too near the time of the strife between the Pharisees and the Hasmoneans to be impartial to the latter). The later Haggadah of the Amoraim (comp., e. g., Megillah 11a; Tehillim 93, 413; text on p. 678) hardly knew of the Hasmoneans more than that at a certain period they played a glorious part in the history of Israel, for which they deserve praise and honor. The reference to “John the high priest” in Targum Yerushalmi, far from being “remarkable proof” of the high antiquity of this Aramaic paraphrase of the Pentateuch, as Geiger (*Urschrift*, 479) maintains, is clear evidence of its comparatively recent date.

926. Sifre D., 352; Midrash Tannaim 216–217. According to one view, even the temporary central sanctuaries, as those at Gibeon and Nob, were in the territory of Benjamin; Yerushalmi Megillah I, 72d and Zebahim 118b. The description of Benjamin as the “host of the Shekinah” (comp., e. g., Yoma 12a) very likely refers to the fact that the Shekinah during her wanderings found temporary rest in the territory of this tribe. Three reasons are assigned for this great distinction conferred upon the tribe of Ben-

jamin. The sire of this tribe, Benjamin the son of Jacob, was the only son of the patriarch born in the Holy Land (comp. Gen. 35.16, *seq.*). Furthermore he was the only one of Joseph’s brethren who took no part in selling the latter. If the central sanctuary had been located in the territory of any other tribe, God would not have heard the prayers addressed to Him in such a place, even as Joseph’s brethren turned a deaf ear to their brother’s supplications when they sold him. Finally, just as Jacob found solace by leaning on “the shoulders” of his youngest son Benjamin, even so did the Shekinah “dwell between his shoulders”: see Sifre and Midrash Tannaim, *loc. cit.*; Mekilta Bahodesh 4, 65b; BR 99.1. Compare footnote 262 on p. 303. According to some authorities, the site of the Jerusalem Temple was partly in the territory of Benjamin and partly in the territory of Judah; see Yoma and BR, *loc. cit.*

927. Sifre D., 353; Midrash Tannaim 217–218; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 33.16–17. The statement that Joseph will be the first to appear in the Holy Land very likely refers to the Ephraimitic Messiah who will inaugurate the future redemption; see Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte* 337. The statement in Sifre with regard to “the mountains of Joseph” is to be emended in accordance with Midrash Tannaim in the following manner: The mountain of the Temple antedates the mountains of Joseph; the mountains of Joseph antedate the mountains of the land of Israel. The Temple mount was created first (see vol. I, p. 12), then the mountains of Joseph (the hill-country of Ephraim הַר אֶפְרַיִם, or the mountains Ebal and Gerizim), and finally the other mountains of the Holy Land.

928. Sifre D., 345; Midrash Tannaim 218–219; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 33.18–19; Megillah 8a.

929. Sifre D., 354; Midrash Tannaim 218; BaR 13.17; Targum Yerushalmi 33.18. On the relation of “the tribe of merchants” (Zebulun) to “the tribe of scholars” (Issachar), compare with p. 429.

930. Sifre D. 355; Midrash Tannaim 219–220; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 33.20; comp. Sifre N., 106, and the parallel passages given by Friedmann. The activity of the tribe of Gad in “the time to come” very likely alludes to the activity of the Gadite Elijah (see text on p. 286), who will appear in “the time to come” as the forerunner of the Messiah. However as may be seen from Targum Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.*, and Aggadat Bereshit 67, 133, הוּא in Sifre was taken by some authorities to refer, not to the tribe of Gad, but to Moses, who will lead Israel back to the Holy Land; see text on p. 838.

931. Sifre D., 355; Midrash Tannaim 220.

932. Sifre D., 355; Midrash Tannaim 220. Compare with p. 286; text on p. 408.

933. Sifre D., 355; Midrash Tannaim 220; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 33.24.

934. ER 9, 52. Compare with p. 408.



935. PK 32, 198a; Tehillim 90, 387.

936. Tehillim 1, 7; Baba Batra 14b–15a (in this passage ten psalmists, besides David, are enumerated, adding Heman and Jeduthun, but excluding Solomon); Shir 4.4 (here Ezra is counted instead of Melchizedek), 8.9. Comp. note 590 (end).

937. PK 32, 198a; Tehillim 90, 387. On Reuben, see text on p. 339; on Gad, text on p. 286; on Issachar, text on p. 408. Comp. Shebu'ot 1, 33b, 1.38.

## MOSES PRAYS FOR DEATH

Moses still had many other blessings for every single tribe, but when he perceived that his time had drawn to a close, he included them all in one blessing, saying,<sup>938</sup> “Happy art thou, O Israel: Who is like unto thee, a people saved by the Lord, the shield of thy help, and that is the sword of thy excellency!” With these words he at the same time answered a question that Israel had put to him, saying, “O tell us, our teacher Moses, what is the blessing that God will bestow upon us in the future world?” He replied: “I cannot describe it to you, but all I can say is, happy ye that such is decreed for ye!” Moses at the same time begged God that in the future world He might restore to Israel the heavenly weapon that He had taken from them after the worship of the Golden Calf. God said, “I swear that I shall restore it to them.”<sup>939</sup>

When Moses had finished his blessing, he asked Israel to forgive his sternness toward them, saying: “Ye have had much to bear from me in regard to the fulfilment of the Torah and its commandments, but forgive me now.” They replied: “Our teacher, our lord, it is forgiven.” It was now their turn to ask his forgiveness, which they did in these words: “We have often kindled thine anger and have laid many burdens upon thee, but forgive us now.” He said, “It is forgiven.”

In the meanwhile people came to him and said, “The hour has come in which thou departest from the world.” Moses said, “Blessed be His name that liveth and endureth in all eternity!” Turning to Israel, he then said, “I pray ye, when ye shall have entered into the land of Israel, remember me still, and my bones, and say, ‘Woe to the son of Amram that ran before us like a horse, but whose bones remained in the desert.’” Israel said to Moses: “O our teacher, what will become of us when thou art gone?” He replied: “While I was with ye, God was with ye; yet think not that all the signs and miracles that He wrought through me were performed for my sake, for much rather were they done for your sake, and for His love and mercy, and if ye have faith in Him, He will work your desires.”<sup>940</sup> ‘Put not your trust in princes, nor in the son of man, in whom there is no help,’ for how could ye expect help from a man, a creature of flesh and blood, that cannot shield himself from death? Put, therefore, your trust in Him through whose word arose the world, for He liveth and endureth in all eternity. Whether ye be laden with sin, or not, ‘pour your heart before Him,’ and turn to Him.” Israel said: “‘The Lord, He is God; the Lord, He is God.’ God is our strength and our refuge.”<sup>941</sup>

Then a voice sounded from heaven and said, “Why, Moses, dost thou strive in vain? Thou hast but one-half hour more of life in the world.” Moses, to whom God had now shown the reward of the pious in the future world, and the gates of salvation and of consolation that He would hereafter open to Israel, now said: “Happy art thou, O Israel: who is like unto thee, a people saved by the Lord!” He then bade farewell to the people, weeping aloud. He said: “Dwell in peace, I shall see ye again at the Resurrection,” and so he went forth from them, weeping aloud. Israel, too, broke into loud lam-



entations, so that their weeping ascended to the highest heavens.

Moses took off his outer garment, rent his shirt, strewed dust upon his head, covered it like a mourner, and in this condition betook himself to his tent amid tears and lamentations, saying: "Woe to my feet that may not enter the land of Israel, woe to my hands that may not pluck of its fruits! Woe to my palate that may not taste the fruits of the land that flows with milk and honey!"<sup>942</sup>

Moses then took a scroll, wrote upon it the Ineffable Name, and the book of the song, and betook himself to Joshua's tent to deliver it to him.<sup>943</sup> When he arrived at Joshua's tent, Joshua was seated, and Moses remained standing before him in a bowed attitude without being noticed by Joshua. For God brought this to pass in order that Moses, on account of this disrespectful treatment, might himself wish for death. For when Moses had prayed to God to let him live, were it only as a private citizen, God granted his prayer, saying to him, "If thou hast no objection to subordinating thyself to Joshua, then mayest thou live," and in accordance with this agreement, Moses had betaken himself to hear Joshua's discourse.

The people who had gathered as usual before Moses' tent to hear from him the word of God, failed to find him there, and hearing that he had gone to Joshua, went there likewise, where they found Moses standing and Joshua seated. "What art thou thinking of," they called out to Joshua, "that thou art seated, while thy teacher Moses stands before thee in a bowed attitude and with folded hands?" In their anger and indignation against Joshua, they would instantly have slain him, had not a cloud descended and interposed itself between the people and Joshua. When Joshua noticed that Moses stood before him, he instantly arose, and cried in tears: "O my father and teacher Moses, that like a father

didst rear me from my youth, and that didst instruct me in wisdom, why dost thou do such a thing as will bring upon me Divine punishment?" The people now besought Moses as usual to instruct them in the Torah, but he replied, "I have no permission to do so." They did not, however, cease importuning him, until a voice sounded from heaven and said, "Learn from Joshua." The people now consented to acknowledge Joshua as their teacher, and seated themselves before him to hear his discourse. Joshua now began his discourse with Moses sitting at his right, and Aaron's sons, Eleazar and Ithamar, at his left. But hardly had Joshua begun his lecture with the words, "Praised be God that taketh delight in the pious and their teachings," when the treasures of wisdom vanished from Moses and passed over into Joshua's possession, so that Moses was not even able to follow his disciple Joshua's discourse. When Joshua had finished his lecture, Israel requested Moses to review with them what Joshua had taught, but he said, "I know not how to reply to your request!" He began to expound Joshua's lecture to them, but could not, for he had not understood it. He now said to God: "Lord of the world! Until now I wished for life, but now I long to die. Rather a hundred deaths, than one jealousy."<sup>944</sup>

---

938. Tan. B. V, 13; Tan. Wa-Ethanan 6; Petirat Mosheh 126; 2 Petirat Mosheh 681.

939. Sifre D., 356; Midrash Tannaim 222–223. Compare with pp. 600–601 and 627.

940. Tan. B. V, 13; Tan. Wa-Ethanan 6; Petirat Mosheh 126; 2 Petirat Mosheh 681. Comp. the following note.

941. Midrash Tannaim 14–15, where מתענגעין is to be read instead of מתענגין. As to the view that it is "the people", and not the individual (not even the genius), who decides the current of history, see text on p. 716, and Assumption of Moses 12.

942. Petirat Mosheh 125–126; 2 Petirat Mosheh 681. As to the great mysteries revealed to Moses immediately before his death, see note 902. Comp. also DR 11.8



which reads: Moses requested God that before his death the gates of heaven and the abyss should be opened, that all men might see that there is only one God. See text on p. 603. The supplication of Moses to be allowed to enter the Holy Land was not prompted by his longing for earthly pleasures, but by his great desire to be in a position to fulfill those commandments which cannot be observed outside the Holy Land; see Sotah 14a; Midrash Tannaim 17; 2 Petirat Mosheh, 381–382, where this point is elaborated at full length. Comp. with p. 810.

943. DR 11.10; Petirat Mosheh 127; 2 Petirat Mosheh 681. “The book of song” is identical with the poetic piece in Deut. 32.1–43, on, which see notes 920 and 946. In Petirat Mosheh “the book of song” became “the book of Yashar”, through the error of a copyist who confused שִׁיר, “song” with יֶשֶׁר “Yashar”. The author of 2 Petirat Mosheh seems to have had before him the corrupt reading סֵפֶר הַיֶּשֶׁר, and not being able to explain it, wisely omitted the entire sentence.

944. Tan. B. V, 12–13; Tan. Wa-Ethanan 6; Mishle 14, 77; Makiri, Prov. 14; *Likkutim* VI, 17a–17b; Petirat Mosheh 127. Another version of this legend is found in DR 9.9 which reads: When Moses, with Joshua at his right, reached the tabernacle, God revealed Himself unto Joshua in a cloud of glory. Moses thereupon asked Joshua of what nature the revelation was. Joshua answered: “Were the revelations granted to thine ear made known to me?” Thereupon Moses exclaimed: “A thousand deaths are preferable to one jealousy.” Strong as death was Moses’ love for Joshua; but cruel as the grave was his jealousy Compare with pp. 810, 813; Sotah 13b. On the explanation of the midrashic passages referred to at the beginning of the note, see Ginzberg, *Rivista Israelitica* VII, 93–94.

## SAMAEI CHASTISED BY MOSES

When God perceived that Moses was prepared to die, He said to the angel Gabriel, “Go, fetch Me Moses’ soul.” But he replied, “How should I presume to approach and take the soul of him that outweighs sixty myriads of mortals!” God then commissioned the angel Michael to fetch Moses’ soul, but he amid tears refused on the same grounds as Gabriel. God then said to the angel Zagzagel, “Fetch Me Moses’ soul!” He replied, “Lord of the world! I was his teacher and he my disciple, how then

should I take his soul!”<sup>945</sup> Then Samael appeared before God and said: “Lord of the world! Is Moses, Israel’s teacher, indeed greater than Adam whom Thou didst create in Thine image and Thy likeness? Is Moses greater, perchance, than Thy friend Abraham, who to glorify Thy name cast himself into the fiery furnace? Is Moses greater, perchance, than Isaac, who permitted himself to be bound upon the altar as a sacrifice to Thee? Or is he greater than Thy firstborn Jacob, or than his twelve sons, Thy saplings! Not one of them escaped me, give me therefore permission to fetch Moses’ soul.” God replied: “Not one of all these equals him. How, too, wouldst thou take his soul? From his face? How couldst thou approach his face that had looked upon My Face! From his hands? Those hands received the Torah, how then shouldst thou be able to approach them! From his feet? His feet touched My clouds, how then shouldst thou be able to approach them! Nay, thou canst not approach him at all.” But Samael said, “However it be, I pray Thee, permit me to fetch his soul!” God said, “Thou hast My consent.”<sup>946</sup>

Samael now went forth from God in great glee, took his sword, girded himself with cruelty, wrapped himself in wrath, and in a great rage betook himself to Moses. When Samael perceived Moses, he was occupied in writing the Ineffable Name. Darts of fire shot from his mouth, the radiance of his face and of his eyes shone like the sun, so that he seemed like an angel of the hosts of the Lord, and Samael in fear and trembling thought, “It was true when the other angels declared that they could not seize Moses’ soul!”

Moses, who had known that Samael would come, even before his arrival, now lifted his eyes and looked upon Samael, whereupon Samael’s eyes grew dim before the radiance of Moses’ countenance. He fell upon his face, and was seized with the woes of a woman giving birth, so



that in his terror he could not open his mouth. Moses therefore addressed him, saying: "Samael, Samael! 'There is no peace, saith my God, to the wicked!' Why dost thou stand before me! Get thee hence at once, or I shall cut off thy head." In fear and trembling Samael replied: "Why art thou angry with me, my master, give me thy soul, for thy time to depart from the world is at hand." Moses: "Who sent thee to me?" Samael: "He that created the world and the souls." Moses: "I will not give thee my soul." Samael: "All souls since the creation of the world were delivered into my hands." Moses: "I am greater than all others that came into the world, I have had a greater communion with the spirit of God than these and thou together." Samael: "Wherein lies thy preeminence?" Moses: "Dost thou not know that I am the son of Amram, that came circumcised out of my mother's womb, that at the age of three days not only walked, but even talked with my parents, that took no milk from my mother until she received her pay from Pharaoh's daughter? When I was three months old, my wisdom was so great that I made prophecies and said, 'I shall hereafter from God's right hand receive the Torah.' At the age of six months I entered Pharaoh's palace and took off the crown from his head. When I was eighty years old, I brought the ten plagues upon Pharaoh and the Egyptians, slew their guardian angel, and led the sixty myriads of Israel out of Egypt. I then clove the sea into twelve parts, led Israel through the midst of them, and drowned the Egyptians in the same, and it was not thou that took their souls, but I. It was I, too, that turned the bitter water into sweet, and mounted into heaven, and there spoke face to face with God! I hewed out two tables of stone, upon which God at my request wrote the Torah. One hundred and twenty days and as many nights did I dwell in heaven, where I dwelled under the Throne of Glory; like an angel during all this time I ate no bread and

drank no water. I conquered the inhabitants of heaven, made known their secrets to mankind, received the Torah from God's right hand, and at His command wrote six hundred and thirteen commandments, which I then taught to Israel. I furthermore waged war against the heroes Sihon and Og, that had been created before the flood and were so tall that the waters of the flood did not even reach their ankles. In battle with them I bade sun and moon to stand still, and with my staff slew the two heroes. Where, perchance, is there in the world a mortal who could do all this? How darest thou, wicked one, presume to wish to seize my pure soul that was given me in holiness and purity by the Lord of holiness and purity! Thou hast no power to sit where I sit, or to stand where I stand. Get thee hence, I will not give thee my soul."

Samael now in terror returned to God and reported Moses' words to Him. God's wrath against Samael was now kindled, and He said to him: "Go, fetch Me Moses' soul, for if thou dost not do so, I shall discharge thee from thine office of taking men's souls, and shall invest another with it" Samael implored God, saying: "O Lord of the world, whose deeds are terrible, bid me go to Gehenna and there turn uppermost to undermost, and undermost to uppermost, and I shall at once do so without a moment's hesitation, but I cannot appear before Moses." God: "Why not, pray?" Samael: "I cannot do it because he is like the princes in Thy great chariot. Lightning-flashes and fiery darts issue from his mouth when he speaks with me, just as it is with the Seraphim when they laud, praise and glorify Thee. I pray Thee, therefore, send me not to him, for I cannot appear before him." But God in wrath said to Samael: "Go, fetch Me Moses' soul," and while he set about to execute God's command, the Lord furthermore said: "Wicked one! Out of the fire of Hell wast thou created, and to the fire of Hell shalt thou eventually re-



turn. First in great joy didst thou set out to kill Moses, but when thou didst perceive his grandeur and his greatness, thou didst say, 'I cannot undertake anything against him.' It is clear and manifest before Me that thou wilt now return from him a second time in shame and humiliation."

Samael now drew his sword out of its sheath and in a towering fury betook himself to Moses, saying, "Either I shall kill him or he shall kill me." When Moses perceived him he arose in anger, and with his staff in his hand, upon which was engraved the Ineffable Name, set about to drive Samael away. Samael fled in fear, but Moses pursued him, and when he reached him, he struck him with his staff, blinded him with the radiance of his face, and then let him run on, covered with shame and confusion. He was not far from killing him, but a voice resounded from heaven and said, "Let him live, Moses, for the world is in need of him," so Moses had to content himself with Samael's chastisement.<sup>947</sup>

945. Petirat Mosheh 127 (אמר הקב"ה (לִגְבִּירָאֵל); 2 Petirat Mosheh 681; Manzur 16; DR 11.1. On Sagsagel, see note 898.

946. 2 Petirat Mosheh 681–382. On the superiority of Moses to all other pious men, see text on pp. 803, 805, and 837. The Christian booklet, the Revelations of Esdras, is a poor adaptation of this part of Petirat Mosheh. Notice, e. g., the following words of Ezra addressed to the angels who wanted to take out his soul through his mouth: "Mouth to mouth have I spoken with God". But where has it ever been stated that Ezra, or anybody else but Moses, spoke mouth to mouth with God? In changing the name of the hero, the Christian compiler was not aware of the fact that he makes Ezra use words which can only be attributed to Moses. DR 11.10, Petirat Mosheh, *loc. cit.*, and Manzur 16 have retained some traces of the old legend concerning the struggle between Michael and Satan (=Sammael) about the body of Moses, to which the pseudepigraphic and early Christian literatures allude quite frequently; see Jude 9, and the references to the Church Fathers given by Fabricius, *Codex Pseudepigr. Vet. Test.* 842, *seq.*, and Charles, Assumption of Moses, 105,

*seq.* According to this old legend, Michael asked God for permission to bury Moses (compare with pp. 831–832). But Satan objected to this request, first on the ground that Moses did not deserve this last honor because he killed the Egyptian (compare with p. 805), and then on the general ground that everything corporeal may be claimed by him (Satan) as his due. Satan's claim was refuted by Michael with the following words: "The Lord rebuke thee! For it was God's spirit which created the universe and all mankind." Not satisfied with refuting Satan's claims, the archangel accused his adversary of having caused the serpent to seduce Adam and Eve (compare with pp. 92–93). He finally succeeded in achieving a complete victory over Satan, with the result that the body of Moses was not delivered up into the hands of Satan. The controversy between Michael and Sammael reads in DR, *loc. cit.*, as follows: Sammael, head of the Satans (=evil spirits; comp. Tosefta Shabbat 17.3: "the angels of Satan"), waited impatiently for the moment of Moses' death, exclaiming: "O for the moment when Michael shall weep and I will open my mouth with laughter!" Hearing these words, Michael replied: "I weep, and thou laughest; but 'rejoice not against me, O mine enemy, though I am fallen, I shall arise; though I sit in darkness, the Lord is light unto me.' " *Though I am fallen* through the death of Moses, *I shall arise* with the leadership of Joshua; though *I sit in darkness* through the destruction of the first and second Temples, *the Lord shall be a light unto me* in the days of the Messiah. The last sentence does not continue Michael's reply to Satan, but is a haggadic interpretation of Micah 7.8, the first half of which verse is alleged to have been uttered by Michael on the occasion of Moses' death. Compare with p. 817. It is noteworthy that the rabbinic sources speak of the attempt of Sammael or Satan to come into possession of Moses' soul, whereas in the old legend Satan claims his body. See, however, Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 873, on Ps. 115, which reads: God said to Moses: "All creatures descend into Sheol, but thou shalt ascend unto Me." Comp. notes 892, 951.—The statement that Gabriel was the first angel called upon to fetch the soul of Moses is perhaps connected with the view that this angel is one of "the six angels of death"; see Ma'aseh Torah 98; PRK, 14b; *Huppah Eliyyahu* 46. According to these sources, it is Gabriel's task to take the life of kings. Compare footnote 187 on p. 38. See also Zohar I, 99a (סְתָרֵי תוֹרָה), where Gabriel appears as the assistant of the angel of Death. As to the latter's (=Satan's) claim on all living, see text on p. 37.

947. DR 11.10; Petirat Mosheh 127–128 (read וּמֵאִמְרוֹ instead of וּמֵאִמְרוֹ); 2 Petirat Mosheh 682; Manzur 16–18 (the text is very corrupt); quotation from Midrash by Hadassi, *Eshkol*, 137c, 364. Concerning the various elements of this legend, see footnote 318 on p. 248; text on pp. 476, 480, 482, 518; text on pp. 557, 613, *seq.*, and



751. Short versions of a legend about Sammael's futile attempts are found in early sources; see Sifre D., 305; ARN 12, 50 (second version 25.51; comp. also p. 150, which agrees with 2 Petirat Mosheh); DR 11.5 (on the text see *Hadar*, Deut. 32.1); Tan. Berakah 3. In the two last-named Midrashim it is stated that Moses rebuked the Angel of death with the following words: "Begone from here, as I intend to praise the Lord." The latter replied: "Heaven and earth declare God's glory incessantly, and He does not need thee for this purpose." Whereupon Moses said: "Give ear, ye heavens, and I will speak, and let the earth hear the words of my mouth. Ye two be silent, that I may praise the Lord." When the Angel of Death came a second time, Moses forced him again to retire and made him do his bidding by means of the Name. But when the Angel of Death appeared for the third time, Moses became convinced that his last hour was come, and he resigned himself to his fate, saying: "Now I shall acknowledge the justice of the Lord, and submit myself to it." Comp. note 908 and 911. Concerning the view that the Song of Moses (see note 920) caused heaven and earth to keep silent, see Sifre D., 306, 131 (middle of page); Midrash Tannaim 182; DR 10.2; *Likkutim*, V, 163a; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 729; Philo, *De Carit.* 3; note 245; footnote 102 on p. 24 and footnote 43 on p. 849.

## GOD KISSES MOSES' SOUL

**I**n the meanwhile Moses' time was at an end. A voice from heaven resounded, saying: "Why, Moses, dost thou strive in vain? Thy last second is at hand." Moses instantly stood up for prayer, and said: "Lord of the world! Be mindful of the day on which Thou didst reveal Thyself to me in the bush of thorns, and be mindful also of the day when I ascended into heaven and during forty days partook of neither food nor drink. Thou, Gracious and Merciful, deliver me not into the hand of Samael." God replied: "I have heard thy prayer. I Myself shall attend to thee and bury thee." Moses now sanctified himself as do the Seraphim that surround the Divine Majesty, whereupon God from the highest heavens revealed Himself to receive Moses' soul. When Moses beheld the Holy One, blessed be

His Name, he fell upon his face and said: "Lord of the world! In love didst Thou create the world, and in love Thou guidest it. Treat me also with love, and deliver me not into the hands of the Angel of Death." A heavenly voice sounded and said: "Moses, be not afraid. 'Thy righteousness shall go before thee; the glory of the Lord shall be thy rearward.'"

With God descended from heaven three angels, Michael, Gabriel, and Zagzagel. Gabriel arranged Moses' couch, Michael spread upon it a purple garment, and Zagzagel laid down a woolen pillow. God stationed Himself over Moses' head, Michael to his right, Gabriel to his left, and Zagzagel at his feet, whereupon God addressed Moses: "Cross thy feet," and Moses did so. He then said, "Fold thy hands and lay them upon thy breast," and Moses did so. Then God said, "Close thine eyes," and Moses did so. Then God spake to Moses' soul: "My daughter, one hundred and twenty years had I decreed that thou shouldst dwell in this righteous man's body, but hesitate not now to leave it, for thy time is run." The soul replied: "I know that Thou art the God of spirits and of souls, and that in Thy hand are the souls of the living and of the dead. Thou didst create me and put me into the body of this righteous man. Is there anywhere in the world a body so pure and holy as this is? Never a fly rested upon it, never did leprosy show itself upon it. Therefore do I love it, and do not wish to leave it." God replied: "Hesitate not, my daughter! Thine end hath come. I Myself shall take thee to the highest heavens and let thee dwell under the Throne of My Glory, like the Seraphim, Ofannim, Cherubim, and other angels." But the soul replied: "Lord of the world! I desire to remain with this righteous man; for whereas the two angels Azza and Azazel when they descended from heaven to earth, corrupted their way of life and loved the daughters of the earth, so that in punish-



ment Thou didst suspend them between heaven and earth, the son of Amram, a creature of flesh and blood, from the day upon which Thou didst reveal Thyself from the bush of thorns, has lived apart from his wife. Let me therefore remain where I am."<sup>948</sup> When Moses saw that his soul refused to leave him, he said to her: "Is this because the Angel of Death wishes to show his power over thee?" The soul replied: "Nay, God doth not wish to deliver me into the hands of death." Moses: "Wilt thou, perchance, weep when the others will weep at my departure?" The soul: "The Lord 'hath delivered mine eyes from tears.'" Moses: "Wilt thou, perchance, go into Hell when I am dead?" The soul: "I will walk before the Lord in the land of the living." When Moses heard these words, he permitted his soul to leave him, saying to her: "Return unto thy rest, O my soul; for the Lord hath dealt bountifully with thee."<sup>949</sup> God thereupon took Moses' soul by kissing him upon the mouth.<sup>950</sup>

Moses' activity did not, however, cease with his death, for in heaven he is one of the servants of the Lord."<sup>951</sup> God buried Moses' body in a spot that remained unknown even to Moses himself. Only this is known concerning it, that a subterranean passage connects it with the graves of the Patriarchs.<sup>952</sup> Although Moses' body lies dead in its grave, it is still as fresh as when he was alive.<sup>953</sup>

948. DR 11.10 (on the text, see *Hadar* and *Da'at*, Deut. 34.5, and Ziyoni, 10); Petirat Mosheh 128–129 (read **לא היתה בו צרעת מעולם**, and comp. Yalkut I, 540); 2 Petirat Mosheh 682; ARN 156 (read line 10, bottom, **בסתרכי של מילת**); Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 34.6 which reads: Michael and Gabriel arranged Moses' couch, while Metatron, Yofiel, and Yefifyyah placed him upon it; quotation from Midrash in Hadassi's *Eshkol*, 137a, 364. On the various elements of this legend, see text on pp. 135–136; text on p. 509; footnote 132 on p. 512; text on pp. 810 and 815, as well as footnote 12 on p. 1028. It is noteworthy that Targum Yerushalmi follows on the whole the

midrashic description of the last act in the life of Moses, whereas on Deut. 32.49–52 it gives an independent Haggadah concerning Moses' reluctance to submit to death. In this passage we read: When Moses was commanded by God to ascend unto mount Abarim, he greatly rejoiced, thinking that he was going to receive there revelations as on mount Sinai, and he made himself ready to prepare the people for the new revelations. God, however, did not permit him to retain his illusions very long, and explained to him that the purpose of his ascending unto mount Abarim was to die there. Moses thereupon began his supplications that he might be permitted to enter the Holy land. A similar Haggadah is also found in 2 Petirat Mosheh 378, which is probably dependent on Targum Yerushalmi, since it fits rather badly in the description of Moses' last days as given in this Midrash.

949. DR 11.5; 2 Petirat Mosheh 383; *Likkutim*, V, 169b; Midrash Tannaim 225; comp. note 946 (towards the end).

950. Baba Batra 17a; DR 11 (end); Petirat Mosheh 129; 2 Petirat Mosheh 683. As to "the death by a kiss", see text on pp. 741 and 744. According to Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*, this kind of death differs from all others because it is not caused by the Angel of Death, and hence it is a privilege granted only to a very few people. A rationalistic view is given in Sifre D., 357, and Midrash Tannaim 225–226, according to which it means no more than a painless death.

951. Sifre D., 357; Midrash Tannaim 224; Sotah 13b. In all these three sources it is given as the opinion of "some who maintain that Moses did not die, but continues to administer above". This view was known to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 8.48, who emphasizes the fact that Moses wrote in the holy book that he died (as to the question whether the narrative concerning the death and burial of Moses was written by himself or by Joshua, see Baba Batra 15a, where different opinions of the Tannaim are recorded; see also Philo, *Vita Mosis*, 2.39) out of fear lest they should venture to say (compare with p. 742, with regard to Aaron) that because of his extraordinary virtue he went to God. Comp. note 904 and footnote 58, towards the end of p. 120. Philo though insisting on the literal meaning of the biblical narrative concerning Moses' death and burial (see Moses 2[3], end), also seems to have been acquainted with the view that Moses ascended to heaven; see *De Sacrific. Abeli*, 3. Comp. also the following note and footnote 25, towards the end, on p. 253.

952. Sifre D., 357; Midrash Tannaim 224; Sotah 14a; Tan. B. V. 132 (where it is stated that the graves of the three patriarchs are on Mount Nebo; on the identification of Mount Nebo with Mount Abarim, see text on p. 814); Berakot 18b, which reads: God said to Moses before his death: "Go to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, and inform them



that I have fulfilled my promise made unto them to give the Holy Land to their descendants.”—God himself buried Moses; Sanhedrin 39a; ps.-Philo, 19; 20D. According to other authorities, Moses buried himself; see Sifre N., 32; BaR 10.17; Septuagint Deut. 34.6. A third view is that of Philo, *Moses*, 2(3), end, according to which he was buried by celestial beings. The following legend of the Falashas, partly found also in Mohammedian literature, is an attempt to explain, at full length, the manner in which Moses buried himself. Moses, so the legend runs, adjured God by His Name to indicate to him the day of his death. God informed him that he would die on a Friday (this is in accordance with Seder ‘Olam 10; comp. Ratner’s note 11). Accordingly, Moses put on his shrouds every Friday and waited for the Angel of Death. But many years elapsed, and the Angel of Death did not appear to Moses, who thus entirely forgot the information imparted to him concerning his last day. One Friday while praying on mount Sinai, Moses was startled by the words of greeting addressed to him by a youth. The youth’s voice sounded very strange, and in great fear he asked him who he was. The youth introduced himself as Suriel, the Angel of Death, and told him that he had come to take his life. Moses asked him for a few hours’ grace to enable him to take leave of those who were near and dear to him. This request was granted by Suriel. Descending from the mountain, Moses hesitated in his walk, as he did not know whether to go first to his mother (compare with p. 834), or to his wife. A heavenly voice was heard, saying: “To thy mother.” Having bidden farewell to his mother, he betook himself to his wife and sons. The latter wept so bitterly that heaven and earth, as well as Moses himself, could not refrain from weeping with them. God asked Moses: “Weepest thou because thou art reluctant to depart from the earth or because thou fearest death?” Moses replied: “My father-in-law Jethro is dead, and so is my brother Aaron; who then will take care of my widow and children?” But God reminded him of the care He had taken of him when thrown into the water by his mother. Just as He provided for him, even so will He not fail to provide for those left behind. God then commanded Moses to divide the Red Sea with his rod. Moses did as he was bidden, and a stone rolled out of the depth of the sea. He then cleft the stone, wherein two worms, a big one and a small one were found. The latter spoke, saying: “Praised be God who forgot me not in the depth of the sea.” Turning to Moses God said: “I did not forget the small worm in the depth of the sea; how then couldst thou think that I would forget thy children?” Whereupon Moses left his house, not knowing whither to turn. On the way he met three angels (compare with pp. 831–832), who assumed the appearance of three young men, busying themselves with the digging of a grave, “For whom is the grave?”, asked Moses. “For the beloved of God”, was the reply. “If

so”, said Moses, “I will assist you in your work.” The angels rejoined: “We know not whether the grave is big enough. Wouldst thou go down into it? The person to be buried therein is of thy size.” As soon as Moses descended into the grave, he was met there by the Angel of Death, who greeted him with the words: “Peace unto thee, O Moses the son of Amram!” Moses replied: “Peace be with thee”—and he died. The angels then buried him in the grave in which he met death. See Faitlovitch, *Mota Musa*, 9–20; Arabic text, *ibid.*, 29–31; 36–37. Comp. also Grunbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 183. The legend concerning the death of David, as given in text on p. 938, shows many points of similarity to this legend. The legend concerning the death and burial of Solomon in *Rev. d. Trad. Pop.* II, 513 is almost identical with this Moses legend. See also Weil, *Bible Leg.* 142. On Suriel, see Index, s. v. Moses’ grave was created in the twilight between the sixth day of creation and the first Sabbath (see Abot 5.6, and the references given in footnote 99 on p. 23), and although its location is accurately described in the Bible (Deut. 34.6), no one was ever able to find it. The Roman government attempted once to establish the exact spot, but failed. To the officers looking at the grave from the mountain it appeared to be in the valley; to those in the valley it appeared to be on the mountain. See Sifre D., 359; Midrash Tannaim 226; Sotah 14a. Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 8.48, which reads: And as he was going to embrace Eleazar and Joshua... a cloud stood over him on the sudden, and he disappeared in a certain valley. The quotations from a lost version of the Assumption of Moses (comp. Origen, *In Josuam*, homily 2.1, Lommatszsch’s edition 11.22, and references in note 946) speak of Joshua and Caleb as having been present at “the disappearance of Moses”; Caleb believed that he saw Moses’ grave in the valley, whereas Joshua saw him ascend into heaven; the former saw Moses’ body, the latter beheld his spirit. Concerning the visions seen by Joshua and Caleb at the moment of Moses’ death, comp. the description of the vision of Seth at Adam’s death as given in the Apocalypse of Moses. See text on pp. 96–97. That a cloud came down and separated Moses from Joshua is also stated in Midrash Tannaim 225. The grave of Moses was concealed from the eye of man, so that the Hebrews should not turn it into a sanctuary and the Gentiles into an idolatrous place of worship; see Lekah Deut. 34.6. A similar view is expressed by the Christian authors Aphraates, 162; Origen, *Selecta in Num.* Migne’s edition, 12, 578B; Theodoretus, *Interr.* 43, Deut. For further details concerning the grave of Moses, see text on p. 623, as well as note 274.

953. Sifre D., 357; Midrash Tannaim 227. Comp. Geiger, *Kebuzzat Maamarim* 44, and Ginzberg in Geiger, *op. cit.* 383; Lekah Deut 34. 7 reads: Moses received six distinctions which were not granted to any one else: His



voice could be heard through the entire camp (comp. note 210); he looked at the entire extent of the Holy Land with one glance (compare with p. 808); God spoke to him face to face (on this point see DZ 10, which reads: God fulfilled all the wishes of Moses, including the request to “see the glory of God”, which was granted to him at the time of his death; compare with p. 630); there never arose a prophet in Israel equal to him (on Moses’ superiority to the Messiah, see note 836); his eye became not dim when he died, his countenance forever retained the brightness it received on mount Sinai (compare with pp. 601 and 618), so that he appeared as though he had been administering before the living God. On the last point, see also ps.-Philo, 19.20D, who remarks: And his likeness was changed gloriously, and he died in glory.

## THE MOURNING FOR MOSES

When Moses died, a voice resounded from heaven throughout all the camp of Israel, which measured twelve miles in length by twelve in width, and said, “Woe! Moses is dead. Woe! Moses is dead.” All Israel who, throughout thirty days before Moses’ decease, had wept his impending death now arranged a three months’ time of mourning for him.<sup>954</sup> But Israel were not the only mourners for Moses. God Himself wept for Moses, saying, “Who will rise up for Me against the evil-doers? Who will stand up for Me against the workers of iniquity?” Metatron appeared before God and said: “Moses was Thine when he lived, and he is Thine in his death.” God replied: “I weep not for Moses’ sake, but for the loss Israel suffered through his death. How often had they angered Me, but he prayed for them and appeased My wrath.” The angels wept with God, saying, “But where shall wisdom be found?” The heavens lamented: “The godly man is perished out of the earth.” The earth wept: “And there is none upright among men.” Stars, planets, sun, and moon wailed: “The righteous perisheth, and no man layeth it to heart,” and God praised Moses’ excellence in

the words: “Thou hast said of Me, ‘The Lord He is God: there is none else,’ and therefore shall I say of thee, ‘And there arose not a prophet in Israel like unto Moses.’”<sup>955</sup>

Among mortals, it was particularly Jochebed, Moses’ mother, and Joshua, his disciple, that deeply mourned Moses’ death. They were not indeed certain if Moses were dead, hence they sought him everywhere. Jochebed went first to Egypt and said to that land, “Mizraim, Mizraim, hast thou perchance seen Moses?” But Mizraim replied, “As truly as thou livest, Jochebed, I have not seen him since the day when he slew all the firstborn here.” Jochebed then betook herself to the Nile, saying, “Nile, Nile, hast thou perchance seen Moses?” But Nile replied, “As truly as thou livest, Jochebed, I have not seen Moses since the day when he turned my water to blood.” Then Jochebed went to the sea and said, “Sea, sea, hast thou perchance seen Moses?” The sea replied, “As truly as thou livest, Jochebed, I have not seen him since the day when he led the twelve tribes through me.” Jochebed thereupon went to the desert and said, “Desert, desert, hast thou perchance seen Moses?” The desert replied, “As truly as thou livest, Jochebed, I have not seen him since the day whereon he caused manna to rain down upon me.” Then Jochebed went to Sinai, and said, “Sinai, Sinai, hast thou perchance seen Moses?” Sinai said, “As truly as thou livest, Jochebed, I have not seen him since the day whereon he descended from me with the two tables of the law.” Jochebed finally went to the rock and said, “Rock, rock, hast thou perchance seen Moses?” The rock replied, “As truly as thou livest, I have not seen him since the day when with his staff he twice smote me.”<sup>956</sup>

Joshua, too, sought his teacher Moses in vain, and in his grief for Moses’ disappearance he rent his garments, and crying aloud, called ceaselessly, “ ‘My father, my father, the chariot of Israel and the horsemen thereof.’ ‘But where



shall wisdom be found?’ ” But God said to Joshua: “How long wilt thou continue to seek Moses in vain? He is dead, but indeed it is I that have lost him, and not thou.”<sup>957</sup>

954. Sifre D., 357; Midrash Tannaim 227; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 8.3 and 48–49; Philo *Moses*, 2(3), end. For a different view concerning the mourning for Moses, see BR 100.4; text on pp. 743–744.

955. Tan. B. IV, 13; Tan. Wa-Ethanan 6; quotation from Tan. in Makiri, Ps. 12.71; ARN 156; DR (end); Sotah 13b and 14a, as well as Yerushalmi 1 (end); Sifre D., 355, 357; Midrash Tannaim 219, 224; Tosefta Sotah 4.8–9; Petirat Mosheh 129; 2 Petirat Mosheh 683. ps.-Philo, 19.20D, strongly emphasizes the fact that the angels mourned for Moses. He writes as follows: And the angels lamented at his death... and on that day the hymn of the hosts was not chanted (compare with pp. 13–14) because of the departure of Moses. Neither was there a day like unto it... neither shall there be any such for ever, that He should make the hymn of the angels to cease because of a man. The last words perhaps indicate that on another occasion God made the hymn of the angels to cease, but not on account of the mourning for “a man”, but on account of the Temple. See vol. VI, p. 397, note 32. On the mourning of the angels for Moses, see also text on pp. 622–623; ARN 25.51. On the view that by the death of Moses the Israelites lost the intermediary between them and God, see also ps.-Philo, 19.3; 19A. Comp. note 248. See Krauss in *Ha-Goren* VII, 29 with regard to the statement, found in Sifre, *loc. cit.*, and parallel passages that the angel Semalion announced the death of Moses with the words: “The great scribe is dead.” Compare also footnote 66 on text p. 483.

956. Piyyut אֲזַלְתָּ יוֹכֶבֶד in the Italian Mahzor for the Rejoicing of the Law, which is undoubtedly based upon an unknown version of Petirat Mosheh. See the quotation given by Epstein, *Mikkadmoniyot*, 128, from a work by R. Eleazar Ashkenazi. Jochebed’s futile search for Moses is a doublet to Samael’s futile search; see text on pp. 835, *seq.*

957. Midrash Tannaim 225; ARN 12.51 and 57; Sifre D., 305. Comp. also ps.-Philo 20.2 ; 20D, who remarks: Then said God unto Joshua: “Wherefore mournest thou, and wherefore hopest thou in vain, thinking that Moses shall yet live? Now therefore thou waitest to no purpose, for Moses is dead.”

## SAMAEL’S VAIN SEARCH

Samael, the Angel of Death, had not heard that God had taken Moses’ soul from his body and received it under the Throne of Glory. Believing that Moses was still among the living, he betook himself to Moses’ house in order to seize his soul, for he feared to return before God without having executed His command to take Moses’ soul. He did not, however, find Moses in his accustomed place, so he hastened into the land of Israel, thinking, “Long did Moses pray to be permitted to enter this land, and perhaps he is there.” He said to the land of Israel, “Is Moses perchance with thee?” But the land replied, “Nay, he is not found in the land of the living.”

Samael then thought: “I know that God once said to Moses, ‘Lift up thy rod and divide the sea,’ so perhaps he is by the sea.” He hastened to the sea and said, “Is Moses here?” The sea replied: “He is not here, and I have not seen him since the day when he clove me into twelve parts, and with the twelve tribes passed through me.”

Samael then betook himself to Gehenna asking, “Hast thou seen Moses, the son of Amram?” Gehenna replied, “With mine ears have I heard his cry, but I have not seen him.”

He betook himself to Sheol, Abaddon, and Tit-ha-Yawen, to whom he said, “Have ye seen the son of Amram?” They replied: “Through Pharaoh, king of Egypt, have we heard his call, but we have not seen him.”

He betook himself to the Abyss and asked, “Hast thou seen the son of Amram?” The answer arose, “I have not seen him, but heard indeed his call.”

He asked Korah’s sons, that dwell within the Abyss, “Have ye seen the son of Amram?” They replied, “We have not seen him since the day upon which at Moses’ bidding the earth opened its mouth and swallowed us.”



He betook himself to the clouds of glory and asked, "Is Moses perchance with you?" They answered, "He is hid from the eyes of all living."

He went to the heavens and asked, "Have ye seen the son of Amram?" The answer was, "We have not seen him since at God's command he mounted to us to receive the Torah."

He hastened to Paradise, but when the angels that guard its gates beheld Samael, they drove him away and said, "Wicked one! Wicked one! 'This is the gate of the Lord; the righteous shall enter into it.' " Samael thereupon flew over the gates of Paradise at a height of four thousand parasang, descended into Paradise and asked Paradise, "Hast thou perchance seen Moses?" Paradise answered, "Since in Gabriel's company he visited me to look upon the reward of the pious, I have not seen him."

He went to the tree of life, but even at the distance of three hundred parasangs, it cried out to him: "Approach me not." He therefore asked from afar, "Hast thou seen the son of Amram?" The tree replied, "Since the day on which he came to me to cut him a staff, I have not seen him."

He betook himself to the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, and said, "Hast thou seen the son of Amram?" The tree replied, "Since the day on which he came to me to get a writing reed, wherewith to write the Torah, I have not seen him."

He betook himself to the mountains with his query. These replied, "Since he hewed the two tables out of us, we have not seen him."

He went to the deserts and asked, "Have ye seen the son of Amram?" These replied, "Since he has ceased to lead Israel to pasture upon us, we have not seen him."

He betook himself to mount Sinai, for he thought God had formerly commanded Moses to ascend it, and that he might now be there. He asked Sinai, "Hast thou seen the son of Amram?"

Sinai said, "Since the day on which out of God's right hand he received the Torah upon me, I have not seen him."

He betook himself to the birds and said, "Have ye seen Moses?" They replied, "Since the day whereon he separated the birds into clean and unclean we have not seen him."

He went to the quadrupeds and asked: "Have ye seen Moses?" They answered: "Since the day on which he determined which beasts might be eaten, and which might not, we have not seen him."<sup>958</sup> The answer of the birds and beasts referred to the day on which God assembled all the species of animals, led them before Moses, and instructed him which of these were clean and which were not, which might, and which might not be eaten.<sup>959</sup>

Samael then betook himself to the "Court of the Dead," where the angel Dumah guards the souls of the deceased, and asked this angel, "Hast thou seen the son of Amram?" He replied: "I heard the words of lamentation for him in heaven, but I have not seen him."

He betook himself to the angels and asked, "Have ye seen the son of Amram?" These made the same reply as Dumah, and advised him to go to the mortals, who might possibly give him information concerning Moses' whereabouts.

He betook himself to the mortals and asked, "Where is Moses?" These replied: "Our teacher Moses is not like human beings. He is the peer of the angels of ministry, for he ascended into heaven and dwelt in heaven like the angels, 'he hath gathered the wind in his fists' like an angel, and God took his soul to Himself in the place of His sanctity. What connection then hast thou with the son of Amram?"<sup>960</sup>

958. ARN 156–157 (in line 8 of p. 157 read: החיים אצל עץ instead of היים אצל); Manzur 19. The old sources (Sifre D., 305; Midrash Tannaim 224–225; ARN 12, 50–51, and second version 26, 52) give this legend in a very



abridged form. On the Holy Land as “the land of the living”, see Ketubot 111a. On the dividing of the sea, see text on p. 556. Concerning the idea that Pharaoh is keeping guard at the gate of Hell, see text on p. 560. On the sons of Korah who dwell within the abyss, see text on pp. 726 and 727. Concerning Moses’ visit to paradise, see text on p. 445; on his staff (=rod), see text on p. 494, where a different story is told, according to which a branch from a tree in paradise became the rod of Moses. On the reed used by Moses in writing the Torah, see footnote 99 on p. 78. *Comp Nispahim* 28–29.

959. *Tan. B. III*, 29; *IV*, 46–47. Concerning the animate and inanimate things pointed out by God to Moses, see Buber’s note to *Tan.*, as well as footnote 202 on p. 535.

960. *ARN* 157 (in this passage it is very likely supposed that Moses did not die, but was translated to heaven; see note 951); *Manzur* 19; *Midrash Tannaim* 225; *ARN* 20, 50, and second version 25.52.

## MOSES EXCELS ALL PIOUS MEN

The special distinction that God granted to Moses at his death was well merited, for Moses outweighed all other pious men.<sup>961</sup> When Moses died, Adam appeared and said, “I am greater than thou, for I was created in God’s image.” But Moses replied: “I am nevertheless superior to thee, for the glory that thou didst receive from God was taken from thee, whereas I retained the radiance of my face forever.”

Noah then said to Moses: “I am greater than thou, for I was preserved out of the generation of the flood.” Moses replied: “I am superior to thee, for thou didst save thyself alone, and hadst not the power to save thy generation, but I saved myself and also saved my generation at the time when they transgressed with the Golden Calf.”

Abraham said to Moses, “I am greater than thou, for I fed the wanderers.” Moses: “I am superior to thee, for thou didst feed the uncircumcised whereas I fed the circumcised; and thou,

moreover, didst feed them in a land of habitations, whereas I fed Israel in the desert.”

Isaac said to Moses: “I am greater than thou, for I bared my neck upon the altar and beheld the Face of the Shekinah.” Moses replied: “Still am I superior to thee, for thou didst indeed behold the Face of the Shekinah, but thine eyes grew dim, whereas I talked with the Shekinah face to face, and yet neither did mine eyes grow dim nor my strength wane.”

Jacob said, “I am greater than thou, for I wrestled with the angel and conquered him.” Moses replied: “Thou didst wrestle with the angel upon thy territory, but I mounted to the angels into their own territory, and still they feared me.”<sup>962</sup>

Joseph said to Moses, “I am greater than thou, for my master’s wife could not tempt me to sin.” Moses replied: “Still am I superior to thee, for thou didst restrain thyself from a strange woman, whereas I abstained from intercourse with my own wife.”<sup>963</sup>

The degree of Moses’ superiority over the other pious men can be seen by the following. Adam died because he had been seduced by the serpent, whereas Moses fashioned a serpent out of brass at sight of which everyone that had been bitten by a snake recovered. Noah offered a sacrifice to God that was accepted, but he himself was not admitted to God’s presence. When Moses, on the other hand, offered a sacrifice in Israel’s name, God said to him, “Know that twice daily I shall dwell with ye.” Abraham had been the cause for Israel’s bondage in Egypt, for that was the punishment for his words, “‘Whereby shall I know that I shall inherit’ the land?” Moses, on the other hand, it was that delivered Israel out of Egyptian bondage. Jacob indeed conquered in his struggle with the angel, but the blow that the angel dealt him put Jacob’s thigh out of joint forever, whereas Moses inspired the angels with



such fear that as soon as they beheld him in heaven, they fled.

But Moses not only surpassed all other human beings, he surpassed also the entire creation that God had brought forth in six days. On the first day God created light, but Moses mounted into heaven and seized the spiritual light, the Torah. On the second day God created the firmament, whereby He decreed that the earth was not to enter the realm of the firmament, nor the firmament the realm of earth, but Moses scaled the firmament even though he belonged to earth. On the third day God created the sea, but as soon as the sea caught sight of Moses, it retreated before him affrighted. On the fourth day God created the sun and the moon to illuminate the earth, but Moses said to God: "I do not wish sun and moon to give light to Israel, Thou Thyself shalt do so," and God granted his prayer. On the fifth day God created the animals, but Moses slaughtered whatever animals he wanted for Israel's needs. When, therefore, God laid all the objects of creation on one side of the scales, and Moses upon the other, Moses outweighed them.<sup>964</sup> Moses was justly called, "the man of God," for he was half man and half God.<sup>965</sup>

But not in this world alone was Moses the great leader and teacher of his people, he shall be the same in the future world, in accordance with the promise God made him shortly before his death. God said: "Thou that didst lead My children in this world, shalt also lead them in the future world."<sup>966</sup>

---

961. 3 Petirat Mosheh 71, *seq.* Comp. the references given in the following note. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IV, 8.49. writes: He (Moses) excelled all men that ever were in understanding, and made the best use of what that understanding suggested to him. Philo likewise (*Moses*, 1, beginning) describes Moses as the greatest and most perfect of all men. The rabbinic sources, however, place the three patriarchs higher than Moses; see notes 490 and 836.

962. Quotation from Tan. (Yelammedenu?) in Ma-kiri, Prov. 31,29, and Ps. 49, 270; 68, 330; DR 11.3 (on the text see *Hadar*, Deut., end); DZ 9; *Likkutim* V, 166b–167a. On Adam, see text on p. 84; on the view that Isaac's loss of eyesight was caused by his having looked at the Shekinah, see text on pp. 263–264; on Moses' victory over the angels, see text on p. 613. Concerning Moses' superiority to all other pious and righteous men, see text on p. 803, and note 961.

963. 3 Petirat Mosheh 72.

964. 3 Petirat Mosheh 72–73. On the view that Abraham was the cause of Israel's bondage in Egypt, see footnote 110 on p. 198. On the flight of the angels at beholding Moses in heaven, see text on p. 614. Concerning the celestial light that shone for the Israelites during their wandering through the wilderness, see text on p. 347; text on p. 745.

965. DR 11.4; PK 32, 198b; Tehillim 90, 388. In the text the literal translation of the Hebrew is given. The purport of the passage in a less literal but more accurate form is: Moses was half terrestrial, half celestial. The sources just quoted contain several other explanations of the designation of Moses as **אִישׁ אֱלֹהִים** ordinarily translated "a man of God". According to the Haggadah, it means "master of the angels" (comp. note 962); "master of God" (God was willing to do the bidding of Moses); "master of justice", since the principle of Moses was that justice be done, even "if mountains have to be bored through." Comp. note 877. Philo, like the Rabbis, gives many explanations of the expression "man of God". comp. *De Mut. Nom.* 3. 22 (this agrees literally with the explanation given in Tehillim, *loc. cit.*); 2 *De Somniis* 35–36 (which reads: "The perfect man is neither God nor man, but something between the uncreated—God—and the perishable nature"); *Quod Omnis Probus Liber*, 7 (which reads: The man who is wholly possessed of the love of God...is no longer a man, but actually—God). Comp. also Aristeas 140. According to *Imre No'am*, Naso (end), Moses' importance was as great as that of the Cherubim. As to those whom Scripture calls "man of God", see Sifre D., 342; Midrash Tannaim 208; ARN 37.95, where the following are enumerated: Moses, Elkanah, Samuel, David, Iddo, Shemaiah, Elijah, Elisha, Micaiah, and Amos. With the exception of Elkanah, all these personages are described as "men of God" in the Bible. On Elkanah, see footnote 28 on p. 891.

966. DR, end, and 3, end, with the addition that God promised Moses to send him, together with Elijah, at the end of the days. Messianic activity in co-operation with Elijah or the Messiah, is ascribed to Moses in Sifre D 355; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 33.21; Aggadat Bereshit 67, 133 (see note 930); Midrash Tannaim 219. Comp. also text on pp. 501, 508, 541; text on pp. 564, 734; Sanhedrin



92a. In Mahzor Vitry 164 it is said that Moses will be the cupbearer at the messianic banquet. Moses, who was one hundred and twenty years old at the time of his demise, lived less years than any of the patriarchs, from Adam until his own times, with the exception of Joseph, who died at the age of one hundred and ten years. The reason for the premature death of these two righteous men (on Joseph compare with p. 450) is as follows: "Long life" is promised in the Torah as a reward for studying the Torah and for honoring parents (see Deut. 5.16 and 30.20). Men would be inclined to believe that a long "terrestrial life" is meant by this promise. This is, of course, not the case, as the reward promised is eternal life in the world to come. Therefore Moses, who more than any other man devoted himself to the study of the Torah, and Joseph, who distinguished himself greatly by honoring his father, died at an early age. It thus becomes clear that the reward for good deeds does not consist in temporal things. See Hasidim, 225, which is partly based on Kiddushin 39b. On the day of Moses'

death see Wistinetzki's note on Hasidim, *loc. cit.*, and Ratner's note 11 on *Seder 'Olam* 10. All opinions agree that he died in the month of Adar (*Seder 'Olam*, *loc. cit.*, Kiddushin 38a, and many parallel passages cited by Ratner). With the exception of Josephus, all authorities are also unanimous that it was on the seventh of that month. Josephus is of the opinion that it was on the first of that month. The authorities, however, differ greatly as to the day of the week on which Moses died. Sunday, Wednesday, Friday, and Saturday compete for the distinction of being the day on which Moses died. The prevalent opinion among the post-talmudic authorities is that Moses (like Joseph and David) died on Sabbath afternoon. On the day of Moses' birth, see footnote 44 on p. 476. Moses' reward for interceding for the Israelites and saving them from destruction (see note 284 and text on p. 810) consists in the fact that Scripture speaks of him as though he had created Israel; ER 4.19. Compare footnote 70 on p. 485 and note 259.







## XII JOSHUA

### THE SERVANT OF MOSES

**T**he early history of the first Jewish conqueror<sup>1</sup> in some respects is like the early history of the first Jewish legislator. Moses was rescued from a watery grave, and raised at the court of Egypt. Joshua, in infancy, was swallowed by a whale, and, wonderful to relate, did not perish. At a distant point of the sea-coast the monster spewed him forth unharmed. He was found by compassionate passers-by, and grew up ignorant of his descent. The government appointed him to the office of hangman. As luck would have it, he had to execute his own father. By the law of the land the wife of the dead man fell to the share of his executioner, and Joshua was on the point of adding to parricide another crime equally heinous. He was saved by a miraculous sign. When he approached his mother, milk flowed from her breasts. His suspicions were aroused, and through the inquiries he set afoot regarding his origin, the truth was made manifest.<sup>2</sup>

Later Joshua, who was so ignorant that he was called a fool, became the minister of Moses, and God rewarded his faithful service by making him the successor to Moses.<sup>3</sup> He was designated as such to Moses when, at the bidding of his master, he was carrying on war with the

Amalekites.<sup>4</sup> In this campaign God's care of Joshua was plainly seen. Joshua had condemned a portion of the Amalekites to death by lot, and the heavenly sword picked them out for extermination.<sup>5</sup> Yet there was as great a difference between Moses and Joshua as between the sun and the moon.<sup>6</sup> God did not withdraw His help from Joshua, but He was by no means so close to him as to Moses. This appeared immediately after Moses had passed away. At the moment when the Israelitish leader was setting out on his journey to the great beyond, he summoned his successor and bade him put questions upon all points about which he felt uncertain. Conscious of his own industry and devotion, Joshua replied that he had no questions to ask, seeing that he had carefully studied the teachings of Moses. Straightaway he forgot three hundred Halakot, and doubts assailed him concerning seven hundred others. The people threatened Joshua's life, because he was not able to resolve their difficulties in the law. It was vain to turn to God, for the Torah once revealed was subject to human, not to heavenly, authority.<sup>7</sup> Directly after Moses' death, God commanded Joshua to go to war, so that the people might forget its grievance against him.<sup>8</sup> But it is false to think that the great conqueror was nothing more than a



military hero. When God appeared to him, to give him instructions concerning the war, He found him with the Book of Deuteronomy in his hand, whereupon God called to him: "Be strong and of good courage; the book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth."<sup>9</sup>

1. Esther R., introduction; Abba Gorion 2.

2. *Rab Pe'alim*, 12a, giving as source a Midrash quoted by the Kabbalist R. Nathan (*i. e.*, R. Nathan Shapiro, author of *מגלה עמוקות*), but the published writings of this Kabbalist do not to my knowledge contain this form of the Oedipus legend, nor is it found in any other Jewish source. The reference to *ס' מעשיית* of R. Nissim Gaon by the editor of *Rab Pe'alim* is a poor guess, as this narrative does not occur in that book. The name of Joshua's father, Nun, "fish", is hardly sufficient to account for this legend, though it is given as an explanation thereof. With regard to Joshua's parents, the above-cited source relates the following details: They were very pious, but for a long time they were not blessed with children. After many prayers and supplications, Nun's wife became pregnant. But instead of rejoicing at the approaching fulfilment of his great desire, Nun kept on weeping and lamenting day and night. Pressed by his wife to explain his strange behavior, he informed her of the revelation made to him from heaven that his own child would cut his head off. To prevent this, Joshua's mother exposed him immediately after his birth. The infant was swallowed by a whale and subsequently carried out what heaven had decreed against his father. The insulting name hurled at Joshua by the spies (compare footnote 526 on p. 710) was "cutter of heads", alluding to his having been the official executioner, and as such having cut off his father's head. Very strange is the statement that Joshua's father lived in Jerusalem; yet the king who had him executed (read *קיסטינר* "quaestorarius", instead of *סנדטור*) is described as king of Egypt. On the view that Palestine was an Egyptian dependency in pre-Mosaic times; see footnote 10 on p. 547. Comp. note 33.

3. Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 959 on Prov. 21 (towards the end) Midrash Tannaim 227; Alphabet R. Akiba II, 16; 2 ARN 11, 28 and 18.39; *Likkutim*, IV, 76b, and V, 106a. Compare with pp. 788–789. The Kabbalists describe the charms applied by Moses for the strengthening of Joshua's intellect; comp., *e. g.*, Razi'el (*ס' המזלות*), 31a.

4. Mekilta Amalek 1, 55a. Friedmann, *ad loc.*, calls attention to the view of several Tannaim, according to which the war against Amalek took place towards the end of Israel's journey through the wilderness, when it was decreed that Moses should not enter the Holy Land.

5. Zohar II, 66a; comp. PK 3, 22a; Luria's note 28 on PRE 44; footnote 144 on p. 581.

6. Sifre N., 140; Baba Batra 75a; Zohar 114b; text on pp. 789, 813. The metaphorical description of Joshua as the moon gave rise to the popular belief, common among Jews of Eastern Europe, that Joshua is the man in the moon; comp. Perez, *Schriften* III, 75 (English translation 155) Mandllin *Urquell* IV, 122; Dähnhard, *Natursagen*, I, 319. On the legend concerning the plant Arum (=Aaron's rod) discussed by Dähnhardt, *loc. cit.*, see text on p. 708, according to which Moses gave the spies his rod to protect them against the attacks of the Canaanites (the legend very frequently confuses, or identifies, the rod of Moses with that of Aaron; see Index, s. v. "Aaron, Rod of"). On the man in the moon, see footnote 35 on p. 255, and Index, s. v.

7. Temurah 16a; compare with pp. 817–818; text on p. 860. Joshua is the ideal type of the "disciple of the wise", and hence the talmudic phrase "even if Joshua the son of Nun had told me, etc." Comp. Hullin 124a; Yebamot 45a; Berakot 24b (comp. the reading given by Rabinovitch, note 50); Yerushalmi Yebamot 4,6a, where *כמשה שקול* is perhaps to be read instead of *למשה*; Epstein, Eldad. 88. See also Yerushalmi Peah 1, 15a, which reads: Joshua by means of deep reasoning succeeded in establishing laws which were revealed to Moses on Sinai.

8. Temurah 16a. The revelation of the Torah to Moses was final and could not be abrogated nor altered by the prophets who succeeded him; comp. Chajes, *Torat Nebiim*, *passim*. See further footnote 97 on p. 872; footnote 42 on p. 895, and footnote 13 on p. 994.

9. BR 6.9. On the designation of Deuteronomy as "the book of the Law" *ספר התורה*, see Ginzberg, *R.E.J.*, LXVII, 135 (=Compte Rendu 21). On Joshua as the ideal type of the scholar, see note 7. According to ps.-Philo, 20; 20D, God spoke to Joshua after the death of Moses, saying: "take the garments of his wisdom (those worn by Moses?) and put them on thee, and gird thy loins with the girdle of his knowledge; then shalt thou be changed and become another man." And it came to pass when he put them on, that his mind was kindled, and his spirit was stirred up. Of a famous teacher of the Mishnah it is said that he ascribed his learning to the fact that he used a staff which belonged to the great master R. Meir; see Yerushalmi Nedarim 9,41b and comp. 1 Kings 19.19–20.

## ENTERING THE PROMISED LAND

The first step in preparation for war was the selection of spies. To guard against a



repetition of what had happened to Moses, Joshua chose as his messengers Caleb and Phinehas, on whom he could place dependence in all circumstances.<sup>10</sup> They were accompanied on their mission by two demons, the husbands of the she-devils Lilith and Mahlah. When Joshua was planning his campaign, these devils offered their services to him; they proposed that they be sent out to reconnoitre the land. Joshua refused the offer, but the devils took possession of Caleb and Phinehas, and transformed their appearance so frightfully that the residents of Jericho were struck with fear of them.<sup>11</sup> In Jericho the spies put up with Rahab. She had been leading an immoral life for forty years, but at the approach of Israel, she paid homage to the true God, lived the life of a pious convert, and, as the wife of Joshua, became the ancestress of eight prophets and of the prophetess Huldah.<sup>12</sup> She had opportunity in her own house of beholding the wonders of God. When the king's bailiffs came to make their investigations, and Rahab wanted to conceal the Israelitish spies, Phinehas calmed her with the words: "I am a priest, and priests are like angels, visible when they wish to be seen, invisible when they do not wish to be seen."<sup>13</sup>

After the return of the spies, Joshua decided to pass over the Jordan. The crossing of the river was the occasion for wonders, the purpose of which was to clothe him with authority in the eyes of the people. Scarcely had the priests, who at this solemn moment took the place of the Levites as bearers of the Ark, set foot in the Jordan, when the waters of the river were piled up to a height of three hundred miles. All the peoples of the earth were witnesses of the wonder.<sup>14</sup> In the bed of the Jordan Joshua assembled the people around the Ark. A Divine miracle caused the narrow space between its staves to contain the whole concourse. Joshua then proclaimed the conditions under which God would give Pales-

tine to the Israelites, and he added, if these conditions were not accepted, the waters of the Jordan would descend straight upon them. Then they marched through the river. When the people arrived on the further shore, the holy Ark, which had all the while been standing in the bed of the river, set forward of itself, and, dragging the priests after it, overtook the people.

The day continued eventful. Unassailed, the Israelites marched seventy miles to Mount Gerizim and Mount Ebal, and there performed the ceremony bidden by Moses in Deuteronomy: six of the tribes ascended Mount Gerizim, and six Mount Ebal. The priests and the Levites grouped themselves about the holy Ark in the vale between the two peaks. With their faces turned toward Gerizim, the Levites uttered the words: "Happy the man that maketh no idol, an abomination unto the Lord," and all the people answered Amen. After reciting twelve blessings similar to this in form, the Levites turned to Mount Ebal, and recited twelve curses, counterparts of the blessings, to each of which the people responded again with Amen. Thereupon an altar was erected on Mount Ebal with the stones, each weighing forty seim, which the Israelites had taken from the bed of the river while passing through the Jordan. The altar was plastered with lime, and the Torah written upon it in seventy languages, so that the heathen nations might have the opportunity of learning the law. At the end it was said explicitly that the heathen outside of Palestine, if they would but abandon the worship of idols, would be received kindly by the Jews.

All this happened on one day, on the same day on which the Jordan was crossed, and the assembly was held on Gerizim and Ebal—the day on which the people arrived at Gilgal, where they left the stones of which the altar had been built.<sup>15</sup> At Gilgal Joshua performed the rite of circumcision on those born in the desert, who



had remained uncircumcised on account of the rough climate and for other reasons.<sup>16</sup> And here it was that the manna gave out. It had ceased to fall at the death of Moses, but the supply that had been stored up had lasted some time longer.<sup>17</sup> As soon as the people were under the necessity of providing for their daily wants, they grew negligent in the study of the Torah. Therefore the angel admonished Joshua to loose his shoes from off his feet, for he was to mourn over the decline of the study of the Torah,<sup>18</sup> and bare feet are a sign of mourning. The angel reproached Joshua in particular with having allowed the preparations for war to interfere with the study of the Torah and with the ritual service. Neglect of the latter might be a venial sin, but neglect of the former is worthy of condign punishment.<sup>19</sup> At the same time the angel assured Joshua that he had come to aid him, and he entreated Joshua not to draw back from him, like Moses, who had refused the good offices of the angel.<sup>20</sup> He who spoke to Joshua was none other than the archangel Michael.<sup>21</sup>

10. Tan. B. IV, 62; Tan. Shelah 1: BaR 16.1. According to another opinion, the spies were Perez and Zerah, the sons of Judah; compare with pp. 345–348. Ps.-Philo 20, 21 is of the opinion that the two spies were Kenaz and Seenamias (the Hebrew original had either שמע or שמוע; comp. 1 Chron. 2.42 and 43), the two sons of Caleb, whom Joshua admonished “to do like unto their father”, and not to follow the example of the other spies, who slandered the Holy Land.

11. *Kinat Setarim* 31c and 44d. Owing to the ambiguity of the word חרש in Josh. 2.1, the opinions in the Midrashim differ as to how the spies succeeded in avoiding the suspicion of the inhabitants of Jericho. According to some, the spies pretended to be deaf and dumb (חֲרָשׁ is read as חָרָשׁ), while others say that they disguised themselves as merchants of pottery (חרש is read as חרס); still others say that they were disguised as carpenters (חרש is read as חָרָשׁ); comp. Sifre Z., 74; Ruth R. 1.1; Tan. B. IV, 62; Tan. Shelah 1; BaR 16.1; Yelammedenu in ‘Aruk, s. v. חרס; *Likkutim* IV, 27a.

12. Sifre N., 78; Sifre Z., 75; BaR 8 (end); Megillah 14b; EZ 22, 37 (here it is said that Rahab’s descendants were seven kings and eight prophets); PR 40, 167b; Midrash Aggada Num. 167 (below). Compare with p. 814; text on p. 1059. The eight prophets and priests are: Jeremiah and his father Hilkiah, Seraiah and his grandfather Mahseiah (Jer. 51.59), Baruch and his father Neriah, as well as Hananel and Shallum, Jeremiah’s cousin, or according to some (comp. Rashi and Kimhi on Jerem. 32.12) his uncle. According to some authorities, Ezekiel and his father Buzi (who, too, was a prophet) were likewise descendants of Rahab. As to the immoral life led by Rahab until the time of her conversion, see, in addition to the sources cited above, also Mekilta Yitro 57a; Mekilta RS, 85; Zebachim 116b. In the last passage it is asserted that she led an immoral life from the age of ten years until fifty. The legend paints Rahab in very black colors to bring out the effect of repentance; but it has in Josh. 2.1 biblical authority for that. It is true that Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 12, and Targum *ad loc.* interpret זונה to mean “keeper of an inn” (from זן “he fed”), but comp. Kimhi, *ad loc.*, and Büchler, *Priester und Cultus*, 63–64 who call attention to the identity of פונדקיתא with זונה; compare footnote 106 on p. 874.

13. Tan. B. IV, 62; Tan. Shelah 1; BaR 16.1; WR 1.1. As to the miracle of becoming invisible, see also text on p. 474, text on pp. 858, 1145. The medieval legends frequently allude to the miracle of invisibility, and know of the charms which render one invisible; see Raziel, at the end of ואחר ד’. The Christian legends are also acquainted with this idea; comp. *Acts of Matthew*, towards the middle; see Index, s. v. “Invisibility”.

14. Sotah Tosefta 8.1–4; Babli 33b–34a; Yerushalmi 7, 21d–22a; compare with p. 789. The division of the waters of the Jordan is said to have taken place as a reward for the good deeds of Abraham (Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 15); according to others, for the good deeds of Jacob (BR 76.5; Shir 4.4; compare page 1050). Still others think that it was on account of Joseph (compare with p. 327).

15. Sotah, Mishnah 7.5; Tosefta 8.5–11; Babli 34a, 35b–37b; Yerushalmi 7, 22a; Seder ‘Olam 9; Sifre D., 55–57; Midrash Tannaim 56, 57–58; Mekilta Deut., 189–190 (line 5 read ובסדרים instead of ובסתרים, and comp. Mekilta Bahodesh 2, 62b, top as well as Seder ‘Olam, *loc. cit.*; כה כסדר means “in proper order”); Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 27.9 and 25. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 1.19, the ceremonies on the mountains Gerizim and Ebal took place after the conquest of the Holy Land, and not on entering it. R. Ishmael (Midrash Tannaim 58) is of the same view. On the miracle that the narrow space contained all the people, see BR 5.7, and parallel passages cited by Theodor as well as text on p. 373. On the ark moving by itself, see ShR 36.4; BaR 4.20 (27b); text on p. 786. As to



what part of the Torah was written upon the stones, see Mekilta Deut., *loc. cit.*; Ginzberg, *R.E.J.*, LXVII, 35 (= *Compte Rendu* 21); text on p. 757, note 9. As to the conditions under which Israel was willing to refrain from attacking the heathens, see text on p. 846.

16. Yebamot 71b–72a; Midrash Shir 15a–15b; Shir 4.6. See also Midrash Aggada Gen. 17.8, which reads: Israel would never have been able to enter the Holy Land, had not Joshua circumcised those born in the wilderness, since this land was promised the patriarchs on the condition that their descendants would observe the rite of circumcision; comp. BR 46.9; text on p. 716; footnote 196 on p. 532. The statement of Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 1.11 that Gilgal means “liberty” is a haggadic rendering of Josh. 5.9, and perhaps presupposes the view quoted above that by performing the rite of circumcision at that place they definitely won their liberty.

17. Tosefta Sotah 11.2 (the manna which came down on the last day sufficed them for the following thirty-nine days); Seder ‘Olam 10; Mekilta Wa-Yassa’ 5, 51b (where different views are given as to how long they ate manna after the death of Moses; one authority is quoted to the effect that the last manna sufficed them for “the fourteen years of the conquest and the dividing of the Holy Land”); Kiddushin 38a. An allegorical explanation of Josh. 1.11 is found in ER 18, 101, and reads as follows: Joshua’s command to Israel to prepare victuals did not refer to the preparation of food to eat (for there was no need for that as long as the manna came down); but he urged them to prepare spiritual food, to repent from their sins, that they might be found worthy to enter the Holy Land. Here is presupposed that the manna continued to come down after the death of Moses, and only ceased after they had crossed the Jordan. Compare with p. 569, which gives a similar legend concerning the bread which the Israelites took with them from Egypt. That the manna was given to Israel as a reward for the good deeds of Moses is a widespread haggadah, comp. ps.-Philo, 21A (end); text on pp. 572–573 and 694.

18. ER 18, 101–102.

19. ‘Erubin 63b, and parallel passages on the margin; Aggadat Esther 80. In these sources Joshua is further reproached for having kept the warriors in camp (separated from their wives) when there was no need for it. Compare footnote 526 on p. 710, Yerushalmi Ketubot 5, 30a–30b. Joshua is also blamed for having married Rahab (comp. vol. IV, p. 5), and for not having prayed to God on entering the Holy Land to have the “evil inclination removed from Israel”; see *Pa’aneah*, Haazinu (end). Comp. Index, s. v. “Joshua”.

20. BR 97.3; Tan. B. II, 87; Tan. Mishpatim 18; Aggadat Bereshit 32, 64–65. On the view that Moses refused the help of an angel and insisted on God’s direct guidance

for Israel, see also Midrash Tannaim 222; ShR 32.3–8; Tehillim 90, 390; Philo, *Quaestiones*, Exod. II, 13; text on pp. 627–628 and 755.

21. Aggadat Bereshit 32.64; Zerubbabel (Jellinek’s edition, 55; Wertheimer’s edition, 10); R. Hananel as quoted by R. Bahya, Exod. 23.20; Lekah and Midrash Aggada on Exod. *loc. cit.*; BR 97.3, where the text is to be emended in accordance with ShR 2.5. That the angel who appeared to Joshua was Michael is also asserted by Aphraates, 57. In Tan. B. I. 17, Michael is declared to be the “angel of the face” whereas in Sanhedrin 38b the angel whose services Moses refused, and who is none other than the “angel of the face”, (comp. Tan. Mishpatim 18), is identified with Metatron. The identity of Michael with Metatron in Zerubbabel, *loc. cit.*, is due to an attempt at harmonization. Comp. Index, s. v. “Angel of the Face”, “Michael”, “Metatron”.

## CONQUEST OF THE LAND

Joshua’s first victory was the wonderful capture of Jericho. The whole of the city was declared anathema, because it had been conquered on the Sabbath day. Joshua reasoned that as the Sabbath is holy, so also that which is conquered on the Sabbath should be holy.<sup>22</sup> The brilliant victory was followed by the luckless defeat at Ai. In this engagement perished Jair, the son of Manasseh, whose loss was as great as if the majority of the Sanhedrin had been destroyed.<sup>23</sup> Presently Joshua discovered that the cause of the defeat was the sinfulness of Israel, brought upon it by Achan, who had laid hands on some of the spoils of Jericho. Achan was a hardened transgressor and criminal from of old. During the life of Moses he had several times appropriated to his own use things that had been declared anathema,<sup>24</sup> and he had committed other crimes worthy of the death penalty.<sup>25</sup> Before the Israelites crossed the Jordan, God had not visited Achan’s sins upon the people as a whole, because at that time it did not form a national unit yet. But when Achan abstracted an idol and all its



appurtenances from Jericho,<sup>26</sup> the misfortune of Ai followed at once.

Joshua inquired of God, why trouble had befallen Israel, but God refused to reply. He was no tale-bearer; the evil-doer who had caused the disaster would have to be singled out by lot.<sup>27</sup> Joshua first of all summoned the high priest from the assembly of the people. It appeared that, while the other jewels in his breastplate gleamed bright, the stone representing the tribe of Judah was dim.<sup>28</sup> By lot Achan was set apart from the members of his tribe. Achan, however, refused to submit to the decision by lot. He said to Joshua: "Among all living men thou and Phinehas are the most pious. Yet, if lots were cast concerning you two, one or other of you would be declared guilty. Thy teacher Moses has been dead scarcely one month, and thou hast already begun to go astray, for thou hast forgotten that a man's guilt can be proved only through two witnesses."

Endued with the holy spirit, Joshua divined that the land was to be assigned to the tribes and families of Israel by lot, and he realized that nothing ought to be done to bring this method of deciding into disrepute. He, therefore, tried to persuade Achan to make a clean breast of his transgression.<sup>29</sup> Meantime, the Judeans, the tribesmen of Achan, rallied about him, and throwing themselves upon the other tribes, they wrought fearful havoc and bloodshed. This determined Achan to confess his sins.<sup>30</sup> The confession cost him his life, but it saved him from losing his share in the world to come.<sup>31</sup>

In spite of the reverses at Ai,<sup>32</sup> the terror inspired by the Israelites grew among the Canaanitish peoples. The Gibeonites planned to circumvent the invaders, and form an alliance with them. Now, before Joshua set out on his campaign, he had issued three proclamations: the nation that would leave Canaan might depart unhindered; the nation that would conclude

peace with the Israelites, should do it at once; and the nation that would choose war, should make its preparations. If the Gibeonites had sued for the friendship of the Jews when the proclamation came to their ears, there would have been no need for subterfuges later. But the Canaanites had to see with their own eyes what manner of enemy awaited them, and all the nations prepared for war. The result was that the thirty-one kings of Palestine perished, as well as the satraps of many foreign kings, who were proud to own possessions in the Holy Land.<sup>33</sup> Only the Gergashites departed out of Palestine, and as a reward for their docility God gave them Africa as an inheritance.<sup>34</sup>

The Gibeonites deserved no better fate than all the rest, for the covenant made with them rested upon a misapprehension, yet Joshua kept his promise to them, in order to sanctify the name of God, by showing the world how sacred an oath is to the Israelites.<sup>35</sup> In the course of events it became obvious that the Gibeonites were by no means worthy of being received into the Jewish communion, and David, following Joshua's example, excluded them forever, a sentence that will remain in force even in the Messianic time.<sup>36</sup>

---

22. Tan. B. IV, 42; Tan. Naso 28; BaR 14.1. That the fall of Jericho took place on the Sabbath is frequently stated in rabbinic literature; comp. Seder 'Olam 11; Yerushalmi Shabbat 1, 4a–4b; BR 47.9 and 70.15; Tan. B. IV, 9 and 163; Tan. Bemidbar 9 and Mass'e 5; BaR 2.9 and 23.6. Among the Church Fathers it is Tertullian who attempts at great length to explain this desecration of the Sabbath by Joshua; comp. *Adversus Marc.*, 2.21 and 12. In *Adversus Judaeos*, 4, the abrogation of the Mosaic law is argued from this incident and this is a further proof that this work is wrongly ascribed to Tertullian. It is very likely that this Christian (and Karaitic; comp. Hadassi, *Eshkol*, 45b) polemic prompted Sa'adya Gaon, *Emunot we-De'ot*, 3, 95, to assert that Jericho was not captured on the Sabbath. According to a Midrash quoted by Sabba' Wa-Yehi, 59a–59d, Joshua would not even allow the trumpets to be blown on



the Sabbath (the production of music on the Sabbath is forbidden by the Rabbis only; see Rosh ha-Shanah 29b) before he heard the sounding of the heavenly trumpets. Just as the first of all the products of the earth belong to the Lord, even so did Joshua consecrate unto Him the first city conquered; comp. the sources cited at the beginning of this note. See also footnote 648 on p. 746; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 1.15. The statement of Josephus that Jericho fell on the seventh day of Passover is not in agreement with the view of the Rabbis, according to whom this event took place after the festival; see Seder 'Olam 11.—Not only Rahab and the members of her family escaped the fate of the inhabitants of Jericho, but all the families allied to her by marriage; Yerushalmi Berakot 4, 8; Sanhedrin 10, 28c; BR 1.1; Koheleth 5.6; Ruth R. 1.1. Israel was forced to spare the lives of all those inhabitants of Jericho in compliance with the oath given by the two spies to Rahab. However, there was no justification for the spies to grant Rahab's request, and as a punishment for this it was a descendant of Rahab, the prophet Jeremiah (see note 12), who was charged to prophesy about the destruction of the Temple and the exile of Israel; PK 13.112a; Ekah Z., 75. According to some authorities, Rahab did not belong to one of the "seven nations", whose extermination God had commanded. The spies were therefore justified in granting her request; comp. Tosafot Megillah 14b (bottom); Kimhi, Josh. 6.25; Hala-kot Gedolot (Venice edition, 108b; Hildeshei-mer's edition, 443). In the last-named source **רוֹסְתִיקִיָּאָה** means "foreigner" (=rustica?) and not farmer, as maintained by Perles, *Etymologische Studien*, 84. Another view is also quoted in Tosafot to the effect that since Rahab had adopted Judaism before the Israelites entered the Holy Land, the laws relating to the "seven nations" did not apply to her; comp. however Sifre N., 78; Sifre Z., 75. The victory over Jericho was of very great importance, as the inhabitants of that city were valiant warriors, so that Israel's first victory equaled all the later victories put together (Sifre D., 52, and Midrash Tannaim 45) which were won by an army of seventy thousand Jewish warriors; Shir 6.4. Comp. also Josephus, V. 125. The great miracle which happened at Jericho was not that the walls fell, but that they disappeared in the bowels of the earth; Berakot 54a, 54b; Targum Joshua 6.20.

23. WR 11.7; Baba Batra 121b; Yerushalmi Sotah 7, 22a (top); Alphabet of Ben Sira 2a–2b. In the last source it is said that when Abraham journeyed in Ai it was announced to him that all his descendants, with the exception of one (Jair), would fall in the battle of Ai. He then prayed that this misfortune should be averted from Israel, and his prayer was granted. In the battle of Ai the Jewish army suffered only one casualty, the death of Jair. A somewhat different version of this legend is found in BR 39.16, and Sanhedrin 44b. The prominence of those slain at Ai is

also emphasized by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 1.12. Joshua is responsible for this defeat, because he remained in camp and did not march at the head of the army as he had been commanded by God. Compare with p. 788. Others say that Joshua's sin which caused this defeat consisted in his having delayed to erect the stones and write the Torah upon them. Instead of doing so immediately after the crossing of the Jordan, he waited till he was sixty miles away from the river. Another opinion blames Joshua for having declared Jericho devoted to the Lord and thereby led the Israelites to temptation; comp. Sifre D., 29; Mekilta RS, 26; ER 18, 102; Sanhedrin 44a; text on p. 843. On Jair, comp. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 27a, where it is said that he declared the raven (=עֵרֹב=ע, the first letter of עֵי, Ai) clean, but the dove (=יֹנָה=י, the second letter of עֵי, Ai) unclean. This wishes to convey that he was of such a keen mind that he could by clever dialectics demonstrate the exact opposite of the law; comp. Sanhedrin 17a–17b, and 101a (top).

24. Sanhedrin 43b; Yerushalmi 6, 23b; BR 85 (end); Tan. B. IV, 163; Tan. Mass'e 5; BaR 23.6.

25. Sanhedrin 44a; Tan. B. IV, 163; Tan. Mass'e 5; BaR 23.6. The crime of which he is accused are: unchastity with a betrothed woman, desecration of the Sabbath, and *epispasmos*.

26. Sanhedrin 43b (below); Shebuot 39a (this is the *locus classicus* of the statement that all Jews are responsible for one another); Yerushalmi Sotah 7.22 (top). Comp. also WR 1.10, and Shir 2.3. That Achan stole an idol is asserted in PRE 38 and Tan. Wa-Yesheb 2. Comp. note 33.

27. Sanhedrin 43b, and Yerushalmi 6, 23b; ER 18, 102. Joshua's prayer and God's reply to it (Josh. 7, *seq.*) are embellished with many additional passages in the Haggadah; comp. Sanhedrin 44a; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 1, 65d; Tan. B. IV, 163; Tan. Mass'e 5; BaR 23.6; ER, *loc. cit.*; Josephus *Antiqui.*, V, 1.13. The Rabbis, as well as Josephus, emphasize the fact that "Joshua used freedom with God". See also ps.-Philo, 21B.

28. PRE 38; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 2; compare with p. 820, and text on p. 797. An unknown Midrash quoted by Kimhi on Josh. 8.3, reads: Joshua caused the people to pass before the ark; the sinners remained rooted to the soil, without being able to move a step; compare with p. 935 and footnote 861 on p. 797.

29. Sanhedrin 43b, and Yerushalmi 6, 23b; Tan. B. IV, 163; Tan. Mass'e 5; BaR 23.6; ER 18, 102.

30. Tan. B. IV, 163; Tan. Mass'e 5; BaR 23.6.

31. Sanhedrin Mishnah 6.2; Tosefta 9.5; Yerushalmi 6, 23b; PRE 38; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 2. Comp. ARN 45, 126, which reads: Three men, by their confessions, lost this world, and gained the world to come: the gatherer of wood on the Sabbath (compare with p. 689); the blasphemer (compare with p. 689); Achan. See further WR 9.1. That



Achan by his confession gained the world to come is also presupposed in ps.-Philo, 25.7; see the quotation therefrom in the text on p. 855. On the question whether the members of his family were executed with him, as Scripture seems to indicate (comp. Josh. 8.24–25), or not, see Sanhedrin 44a; PRE *loc. cit.*; *Neweh Shalom* 75–76. According to the Talmud only Achan was executed, but his execution took place in the presence of the members of his family, and that is how Josh. 8.24 is to be understood. The Midrashim, on the other hand, maintain that, together with Achan, all the members of his family were executed, because they had not informed the authorities of the crime committed by him. The statement of Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 1.14, that Achan was buried at night in a disgraceful manner, suitable for a condemned criminal, is in harmony with the regulations concerning the burial of criminals described in Sanhedrin 6.5, and Babli 46b (top). According to Sanhedrin 44b and WR 9.1, this Achan is identical with Zimri mentioned in 2 Chron. 2.6, and the different names borne by this sinner are explained haggadically. The derivation of the name Achan, עֲכָן, from עֲכִינָא “serpent” (Greek ἔχινος) is also given by ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 2.7.

32. On the reason for the defeat at Ai, see note 23.

33. Yerushalmi Shebi'it 7, 36c; WR 17.6; DR 5.14. On foreign kings who acquired possessions in Palestine, see also text on p. 814. In connection with the story of Achan this legend is employed to explain how it came about that he found in Jericho a Babylonian garment (see Josh. 7.21). Comp. Sifre D., 37; BR 85 (end); Tan. Mishpatim 17 and Re'eh 8; Shir 8.11; Tan. B. II, 86–87, and IV, 86 (this is the source of Makiri, Ps. 84.61); Yelammedenu (?) in Yalkut II, 271, on Jer. 3; ShR 32.3; Tehillim 5, 51. Most of these sources state that the Palestinian viceroy of the king of Babylon resided in Jericho. The former used to send to his overlord Palestinian dates, in exchange for which he would receive articles manufactured in Babylon, like garments and similar things. It is hardly likely that the Haggadah has preserved reminiscences of the time when Palestine stood in political and commercial relations with Babylon, as maintained by Jastrow, *Zeitschrift für Assyriologie*, VII, 1–7. On the relations of Palestine with Egypt, according to the Haggadah, see note 2; footnote 12 on p. 468, and footnote 10 on p. 547—The large number of kings in such a small country as Palestine is explained by the Haggadah by assuming that they were representatives of the foreign kings, who were desirous of owning possessions in the Holy Land.

34. Yerushalmi Shebi'it 7, 36c; WR 17.6; DR 5.14; BaR 17.3; Mekilta Bo 18, 21b–22a; Tosefta Shabbat 7(8).25. In the tannaitic sources it is the Canaanites, or, to be more accurate, the Amorites, who emigrated to Africa, and this is very likely the haggadic way of stating that the Phenicians (=כְּנַעֲנִים) founded Carthage in Africa. Procopius,

II, 20, p. 135, and Suidas, s. v. χανᾶν likewise report the emigration of the Canaanites from Palestine at the time of Joshua, and that on a pillar found in Tangiers, Africa, the following inscription was engraved: “We are Canaanites who were driven out from our country by the robber Joshua.” Comp. Fabricius, *Codex Pseud. Vet. Test.*, 889–893 and Bacher, *J.Q.R.*, III, 354. On the designation of Joshua as “robber”, compare footnote 855 on p. 796, where it is suggested that some read Sanhedrin 10b טָאָה לִישׁוּעַ “Joshua the robber”. Tosefta Shabbat 7(8).23 records also a view very unfavorable to the Amorites who are said to have been the “hardest people” on earth (*i. e.*, morally insensible) so that even today the word “Amorite” is used to designate a “hard person”. Superstitious practices are designated in tannaitic, as well as in amoraic texts, as the “ways of the Amorites” (comp., *e. g.*, Shabbat, Mishnah 6, end; Tosefta 7(8), passim; Babli 67a–67b). This indicates that the Amorites were considered as magicians and sorcerers. The Apocalypse of Baruch 60.1 and ps.-Philo, 25.10, 26, (bottom) share this opinion with regard to the Amorites.—In the legend concerning the emigration of the Gergashites, the place where they are alleged to have settled is perhaps not Africa (אַפְרִיקָא), but the land of the Iberians (אַבְרִיקָא = Ἰβηρία) in Caucasia; comp. Krauss in *Monatsschrift*, XXXIX, 2, *seq.*; Harkavy, *Ha-Me'assef*, 1912, 470; Munk, *Palestine*, 81; text on p. 708; note 45.

35. Gittin 46a. Comp. Tosafot (beginning בִּיּוֹן). Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 1.17, dwells upon the inviolability of an oath, as illustrated by the way Israel dealt with the Gibeonites.

36. Yerushalmi Kiddushin 10, 65c; Shemuel 28, 134; BaR 8.4. Compare with p. 935.

## THE SUN OBEYS JOSHUA

The task of protecting the Gibeonites involved in the offensive and defensive alliance made with them, Joshua fulfilled scrupulously. He had hesitated for a moment whether to aid the Gibeonites in their distress, but the words of God sufficed to recall him to his duty. God said to him: “If thou dost not bring near them that are far off, thou wilt remove them that are near by.”<sup>37</sup> God granted Joshua peculiar favor in his conflict with the assailants of the Gibeonites. The hot hailstones which, at Moses’ intercession, had remained suspended in the air



when they were about to fall upon the Egyptians, were now cast down upon the Canaanites.<sup>38</sup> Then happened the great wonder of the sun's standing still, the sixth<sup>39</sup> of the great wonders since the creation of the world.

The battle took place on a Friday. Joshua knew it would pain the people deeply to be compelled to desecrate the holy Sabbath day. Besides, he noticed that the heathen were using sorcery to make the heavenly hosts intercede for them in the fight against the Israelites. He, therefore, pronounced the Name of the Lord, and the sun, moon, and stars stood still.<sup>40</sup> The sun at first refused to obey Joshua's behest, seeing that he was older than man by two days. Joshua replied that there was no reason why a free-born youth should refrain from enjoining silence upon an old slave whom he owns, and had not God given heaven and earth to our father Abraham?<sup>41</sup> Nay, more than this, had not the sun himself bowed down like a slave before Joseph? "But", said the sun, "who will praise God if I am silent?"<sup>42</sup> Whereupon Joshua: "Be thou silent, and I will intone a song of praise."<sup>43</sup> And he sang thus:

1. Thou hast done mighty things, O Lord, Thou hast performed great deeds. Who is like unto Thee? My lips shall sing unto Thy name.

2. My goodness and my fortress, my refuge, I will sing a new song unto Thee, with thanksgiving I will sing unto Thee, Thou art the strength of my salvation.

3. All the kings of the earth shall praise Thee, the princes of the world shall sing unto Thee, the children of Israel shall rejoice in Thy salvation, they shall sing and praise Thy power.

4. In Thee, O God, did we trust; we said, Thou art our God, for Thou wast our shelter and our strong tower against our enemies.

5. To Thee we cried, and we were not ashamed; in Thee we trusted, and we were delivered; when we cried unto Thee, Thou didst

hear our voice, Thou didst deliver our souls from the sword.

6. Thou hast shown unto us Thy mercy, Thou didst give unto us Thy salvation, Thou didst rejoice our hearts with Thy strength.

7. Thou wentest forth for our salvation; with the strength of Thy arm Thou didst redeem Thy people; Thou didst console us from the heavens of Thy holiness, Thou didst save us from tens of thousands.

8. Sun and moon stood still in heaven, and Thou didst stand in Thy wrath against our oppressors, and Thou didst execute Thy judgments upon them.

9. All the princes of the earth stood up, the kings of the nations had gathered themselves together, they were not moved at Thy presence, they desired Thy battles.

10. Thou didst rise against them in Thine anger, and Thou didst bring down Thy wrath upon them, Thou didst destroy them in Thy fury, and Thou didst ruin them in Thy rage.

11. Nations raged from fear of Thee, kingdoms tottered because of Thy wrath, Thou didst wound kings in the day of Thine anger.

12. Thou didst pour out Thy fury upon them, Thy wrathful anger took hold of them, Thou didst turn their iniquity upon them, and Thou didst cut them off in their wickedness.

13. They spread a trap, they fell therein, in the net they hid their foot was caught.

14. Thine hand found all Thine enemies, who said, through their sword they possessed the land, through their arm they dwelt in the city.

15. Thou didst fill their faces with shame, Thou didst bring their horns down to the ground.

16. Thou didst terrify them in Thy wrath, and Thou didst destroy them from before Thee.

17. The earth quaked and trembled from the noise of Thy thunder against them; Thou



didst not withhold their souls from earth, and Thou didst bring down their lives to the grave.

18. Thou didst pursue them in Thy storm, Thou didst consume them in the whirlwind, Thou didst turn their rain into hail, they fell in floods, so that they could not rise.

19. Their carcasses were like rubbish cast out in the middle of the streets.

20. They were consumed, and they perished before Thee, Thou hast delivered Thy people in Thy might.

21. Therefore our hearts rejoice in Thee, our souls exult in Thy salvation.

22. Our tongues shall relate Thy might, we will sing and praise Thy wondrous works.

23. For Thou didst save us from our enemies, Thou didst deliver us from those who rose up against us, Thou didst destroy them from before us, and depress them beneath our feet.

24. Thus shall all Thine enemies perish, O Lord, and the wicked shall be like chaff driven by the wind, and Thy beloved shall be like trees planted by the waters.<sup>44</sup>

---

37. BaR 8.4; Shemuel 18.133; compare with p. 583, and text on p. 935.

38. Berakot 54b; Tan. Wa-Era 16; Ephraem I, 21OF. Compare with p. 531.

39. PRE 52. On the "seven great miracles", of which the standstill of the sun is one, see footnote 272 on p. 237.

40. PRE 52, and compare with p. 581. Opinions differ as to how long the sun stood still; see 'Abodah Zarah 25a; Targum Hab. 3.11, according to the reading of Mahzor Vitry 171; Shu'aib, Bereshit (end). The miracle took place on a summer's day in the month of Tammuz; comp. Seder 'Olam 11; Aggadot Esther 29.

41. Tan. B. III, 68; Tan. Ahare 9; BR 6(end). Compare with pp. 553–554. Opinions differ as to what is meant by the "Book of Yashar" of which Joshua spoke on that occasion (Josh. 10.13). Gen., Num., Deut., and Jud. are named by one authority or another as the book to which Joshua referred; comp. BR, *loc. cit.*; 'Abodah Zarah 25a; Yerushalmi Sotah 1, 17; Targum 2 Sam. 1.18 (here the "Book of Yashar"=Pentateuch); Jerome, Is. 44.2

and Ezek. 18.4. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 39–41.

42. Tan. B. III, 68; Tan. Ahare 9; BR 6 (end).

43. Tan. B. III, 68; Tan. Ahare 9. On the conception that the praise of God rendered by the pious might take the place of the song chanted by nature to the glory of God, see DR 11.5, and footnote 947 on p. 830.

44. Yashar Joshua, 135–136a. As during the war for the defense of the Gibeonites a great miracle was wrought for Joshua, so also later in his war against the united kings of Canaan (see Josh. 11), when the enemies of Israel at the prayer of Joshua "became still as a stone". Mekilta Shirah 9, 43a. Compare footnote 515 on p. 708.

## WAR WITH THE ARMENIANS

Joshua's victorious course did not end with the conquest of the land. His war with the Armenians, after Palestine was subdued, marked the climax of his heroic deeds. Among the thirty-one kings whom Joshua had slain, there was one whose son, Shobach by name, was king of Armenia. With the purpose of waging war with Joshua, he united the forty-five kings of Persia and Media, and they were joined by the renowned hero Japheth. The allied kings in a letter informed Joshua of their design against him as follows: "The noble, distinguished council of the kings of Persia and Media to Joshua, peace! Thou wolf of the desert, we well know what thou didst to our kinsmen. Thou didst destroy our palaces; without pity thou didst slay young and old; our fathers thou didst mow down with the sword; and their cities thou didst turn into a desert. Know, then, that in the space of thirty days, we shall come to thee, we, the forty-five kings, each having sixty thousand warriors under him, all of them armed with bows and arrows, girt about with swords, all of us skilled in the ways of war, and with us the hero Japheth. Prepare now for the combat, and say not afterward that we took thee at unawares."



The messenger bearing the letter arrived on the day before the Feast of Weeks. Although Joshua was greatly wrought up by the contents of the letter, he kept his counsel until after the feast, in order not to disturb the rejoicing of the people. Then, at the conclusion of the feast, he told the people of the message that had reached him, so terrifying that even he, the veteran warrior, trembled at the heralded approach of the enemy. Nevertheless Joshua determined to accept the challenge. From the first words his reply was framed to show the heathen how little their fear possessed him whose trust was set in God. The introduction to his epistle reads as follows: "In the Name of the Lord, the God of Israel, who saps the strength of the iniquitous warrior, and slays the rebellious sinner. He breaks up the assemblies of marauding transgressors, and He gathers together in council the pious and the just scattered abroad, He the God of all gods, the Lord of all lords, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. God is the Lord of war! From me, Joshua, the servant of God, and from the holy and chosen congregation to the impious nations, who pay worship to images, and prostrate themselves before idols: No peace unto you, saith my God! Know that ye acted foolishly to awaken the slumbering lion, to rouse up the lion's whelp, to excite his wrath. I am ready to pay you your recompense. Be ye prepared to meet me, for within a week I shall be with you to slay your warriors to a man."

Joshua goes on to recite all the wonders God had done for Israel, who need fear no power on earth; and he ends his missive with the words: "If the hero Japheth is with you, we have in the midst of us the Hero of all heroes, the Highest above all the high."

The heathen were not a little alarmed at the tone of Joshua's letter. Their terror grew when the messenger told of the exemplary discipline maintained in the Israelitish army, of the gigan-

tic stature of Joshua, who stood five ells high, of his royal apparel, of his crown graven with the Name of God. At the end of seven days Joshua appeared with twelve thousand troops. When the mother of King Shobach, who was a powerful witch, espied the host, she exercised her magic art, and enclosed the Israelitish army in seven walls. Joshua thereupon sent forth a carrier pigeon to communicate his plight to Nabiah, the king of the trans-Jordanic tribes. He urged him to hasten to his help and bring the priest Phinehas and the sacred trumpets with him. Nabiah did not tarry. Before the relief detachment arrived, his mother reported to Shobach that she beheld a star arise out of the East against which her machinations were vain. Shobach threw his mother from the wall, and he himself was soon afterward killed by Nabiah. Meantime Phinehas arrived, and, at the sound of his trumpets, the walls toppled down. A pitched battle ensued, and the heathen were annihilated.<sup>45</sup>

---

45. Shulam in his appendix to his edition of Zacuto's Yuhasin, following a Samaritan chronicle (= *Chronicon Samaritanum*, ed. Juynboll, XXVI–XXXII); see also Yalkut Reubeni, Debarim (end), which follows Shulam. That the Canaanites fleeing from Joshua settled in Armenia is asserted also by Moses Choronensis (comp. p. 53); but it is not unlikely that the original form of the legend spoke of Arameans and not of Armenians. Observe the name of the hero Shobah, which is identical with that of an Aramean general; see 2 Sam. 10.16 and 18. There is perhaps also some connection between this legend and the one concerning the emigration of the Gergashites (compare with p. 846), if we accept the hypothesis that in the latter legend the Georgians (Γεόργιοι) in the Caucasus are identical with the biblical Gergashites; comp. references to Krauss, Harkavy, and Munk, in note 34.

## ALLOTMENT OF THE LAND

At the end of seven years of warfare,<sup>46</sup> Joshua could at last venture to parcel out the



conquered land among the tribes. This was the way he did it. The high priest Eleazar, attended by Joshua and all the people, and arrayed in the Urim and Thummim, stood before two urns. One of the urns contained the names of the tribes, the other the names of the districts into which the land was divided. The holy spirit caused him to exclaim "Zebulon". When he put his hand into the first urn, lo, he drew forth the word Zebulon, and from the other came the word Accho, meaning the district of Accho. Thus it happened with each tribe in succession.<sup>47</sup> In order that the boundaries might remain fixed, Joshua had had the H̄azubah<sup>48</sup> planted between the districts. The rootstock of this plant once established in a spot, it can be extirpated only with the greatest difficulty. The plough may draw deep furrows over it, yet it puts forth new shoots, and grows up again amid the grain, still marking the old division lines.<sup>49</sup>

In connection with the allotment of the land Joshua issued ten ordinances intended, in a measure, to restrict the rights in private property: Pasturage in the woods was to be free to the public at large. Any one was permitted to gather up bits of wood in the field. The same permission applied to all grasses, wherever they might grow, unless they were in a field that had been sown with fenugreek, which needs grass for protection. For grafting purposes twigs could be cut from any plant except olive-trees. Water springs belonged to the whole town. It was lawful for any one to catch fish in the Sea of Tiberias, provided navigation was not impeded. The area adjacent to the outer side of a fence about a field might be used by any passer-by to ease nature. From the close of the harvest until the seventeenth day of Marḥeshwan fields could be crossed. A traveller who lost his way among vineyards could not be held responsible for the damage done in the effort to recover the right

path. A dead body found in a field was to be buried on the spot where it was found.<sup>50</sup>

The allotment of the land to the tribes and subdividing each district among the tribesmen took as much time as the conquest of the land.<sup>51</sup>

When the two tribes and a half from the land beyond Jordan returned home after an absence of fourteen years, they were not a little astonished to hear that the boys who had been too young to go to the wars with them had in the meantime shown themselves worthy of the fathers. They had been successful in repulsing the Ishmaelitish tribes who had taken advantage of the absence of the men capable of bearing arms to assault their wives and children.<sup>52</sup>

After a leadership of twenty-eight years,<sup>53</sup> marked with success<sup>54</sup> in war and in peace, Joshua departed this life. His followers laid the knives he had used in circumcising the Israelites<sup>55</sup> into his grave, and over it they erected a pillar as a memorial of the great wonder of the sun's standing still over Ajalon.<sup>56</sup> However, the mourning for Joshua was not so great as might justly have been expected. The cultivation of the recently conquered land so occupied the attention of the tribes that they came nigh forgetting the man to whom chiefly they owed their possession of it. As a punishment for their ingratitude, God, soon after Joshua's death, brought also the life of the high priest Eleazar and of the other elders to a close, and the mount on which Joshua's body was interred began to tremble, and threatened to engulf the Jews.<sup>57</sup>

---

46. Seder 'Olam 11; Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 5, 51b; Zebahim 118b, and in many more talmudic and midrashic passages, where the "seven years of conquest" and "seven years of division" are spoken of. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 1.19, and the Assumption of Moses 2.3 maintain that the war of conquest lasted only five years.

47. Baba Batra 122a, and, in a somewhat different form, Yerushalmi Yoma 4, 41b, where it is stated that the



division of the land was carried out by lot, the decision of the Urim and Tummim, and the valuation of the different kinds of the soil allotted. On the last point, see also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 1.21, and text on p. 784. The small stones used in casting the lots proclaimed aloud the share allotted to each tribe, crying out: "This is the share of the tribe of Judah, etc." Compare with p. 784. Comp. Ma'asiyyot (Gaster's edition, 114); Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 1.1, quoting *Sode Raza* as his authority, whereas in Num. 26.56 *Hakam ha-Razin* is given as the source. Comp. Razi'el 11a–11b; footnote 70 on p. 923.

48. On this plant (= *urgingea maritima*) and its use, see Löw, in *Lewy-Festschrift*, 47–53, and Ginzberg, *R.E.J.*, LXVII, 139–140 (*Compte Rendu*, 26).

49. Baba Batra 56a; Bezah 25b; Yerushalmi Peah 2, 16d; Tehillim 87, 377.

50. Baba Kamma 81a, where several other ordinances are ascribed to Joshua by some authorities; Tosefta Baba Mezi'a 11.32; Yerushalmi Baba Batra 5, 15a (top). Comp. Bloch, *Sha'are Torat ha-Takkanot* I, 54–68. The second benediction of Grace after Meal is said to have been composed by Joshua; Berakot 48b; compare with p. 573. On Joshua as the author of *'Alenu*, see footnote 53 on p. 1139.

51. Seder 'Olam 11. Comp. note 46.

52. BR 98.15. Compare with pp. 679–680. The rabbinic Haggadah has nothing to add to the biblical narrative concerning the erection of the altar by the two and a half tribes (Josh. 22.9, *seq.*), whereas ps.-Philo, 22:22D,

*seq.* embellishes this story with many new details. In the days of Joshua the Israelites "took upon themselves the kingdom of heaven" with love, and as a reward God treated them for three hundred years (the period of the judges) with love and patience as a father deals with his children, not as a teacher with his disciples; ER 17, 86.

53. Seder 'Olam 12; Comp. Ratner, *ad loc.*, and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenu.*, 1–2.

54. To commemorate his great victories, the coins struck by Joshua bore the figure of a bullock on the obverse, and a wild ox (Re'em) on the reverse, in allusion to Moses' blessing to his tribe (comp. Deut. 33.17); thus his fame spread through all the world; BR 39.11; Baba Kamma 97b. Compare footnote 46 on p. 218.

55. Septuagint Josh. (end).

56. An unknown Midrash quoted by Rashi, Josh. 24.30. Comp. also Kimhi, *ad loc.* According to Zohar I, 53a, Joshua was one of the few mortals who "died free from sin"; comp., to the contrary, text on p. 793, and notes 19, 23.

57. Shabbat 105b; Shemuel 23, 114; Ruth R., introduction; Koheleth 7.1. The high priest Eleazar died not long after Joshua, but not before he had completed the Book of Joshua, to which he added the report about the author's (Joshua's) death; see Baba Batra 15a; Seder 'Olam 12. Comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 27. On the burial place of Eleazar, see Midrash Tannaim 107.







## XIII THE JUDGES

### THE FIRST JUDGE

After the death of Joshua the Israelites inquired of God whether they were to go up against the Canaanites in war. They were given the answer: "If ye are pure of heart, go forth unto the combat; but if your hearts are sullied with sin, then refrain." They inquired furthermore how to test the heart of the people. God ordered them to cast lots and set apart those designated by lot, for they would be the sinful among them. Again, when the people besought God to give it a guide and leader, an angel answered: "Cast lots in the tribe of Caleb." The lot designated Kenaz, and he was made prince over Israel.<sup>1</sup>

His first act was to determine by lot who were the sinners in Israel, and what their inward thought. He declared before the people: "If I and my house be set apart by lot, deal with us as we deserve, burn us with fire." The people assenting, lots were cast, and 345 of the tribe of Judah were singled out, 560 of Reuben, 775 of Simon, 150 of Levi, 665 of Issachar, 545 of Zebulun, 380 of Gad, 665 of Asher, 480 of Manasseh, 448 of Ephraim, and 267 of Benjamin.<sup>2</sup> So 6110<sup>3</sup> persons were confined in prison, until God should let it be known what was to be done with them. The united prayers of Kenaz, Elea-

zar the high priest, and the elders of the congregation, were answered thus: "Ask these men now to confess their iniquity, and they shall be burnt with fire." Kenaz thereupon exhorted them: "Ye know that Achan, the son of Zabdi, committed the trespass of taking the anathema, but the lot fell upon him, and he confessed his sin. Do ye likewise confess your sins, that ye may come to life with those whom God will revive on the day of the resurrection."<sup>4</sup>

One of the sinful, a man by the name of Elah,<sup>5</sup> said in reply thereto: "If thou desirest to bring forth the truth, address thyself to each of the tribes separately."<sup>6</sup> Kenaz began with his own, the tribe of Judah. The wicked of Judah confessed to the sin of worshipping the golden calf, like unto their forefathers in the desert. The Reubenites had burnt sacrifices to idols. The Levites said: "We desired to prove whether the Tabernacle is holy." Those of the tribe of Issachar replied: "We consulted idols to know what will become of us."<sup>7</sup> The sinners of Zebulun: "We desired to eat the flesh of our sons and daughters, to know whether the Lord loves them." The Danites admitted, they had taught their children out of the books of the Amorites, which they had hidden then under Mount Abairim,<sup>8</sup> where Kenaz actually found them. The



Naphtalites confessed to the same transgression, only they had concealed the books in the tent of Elah, and there they were found by Kenaz. The Gadites acknowledged having led an immoral life, and the sinners of Asher, that they had found, and had hidden under Mount Shechem, the seven golden idols called by the Amorites the holy nymphs—the same seven idols which had been made in a miraculous way after the deluge by the seven sinners, Canaan, Put, Shelah, Nimrod, Elath, Diul, and Shuah.<sup>9</sup> They were of precious stones from Havilah, which radiated light, making night bright as day. Besides, they possessed a rare virtue: if a blind Amorite kissed one of the idols, and at the same time touched its eyes, his sight was restored.<sup>10</sup> After the sinners of Asher, those of Manasseh made their confession—they had desecrated the Sabbath. The Ephraimites owned to having sacrificed their children to Moloch. Finally, the Benjamites said: “We desired to prove whether the law emanated from God or from Moses.”

At the command of God these sinners and all their possessions were burnt with fire at the brook Pishon. Only the Amorite books and the idols of precious stones remained unscathed. Neither fire nor water could do them harm. Kenaz decided to consecrate the idols to God, but a revelation came to him, saying: “If God were to accept what has been declared anathema, why should not man?” He was assured that God would destroy the things over which human hands had no power. Kenaz, acting under Divine instruction, bore them to the summit of a mountain, where an altar was erected. The books and the idols were placed upon it, and the people offered many sacrifices and celebrated the whole day as a festival. During the night following, Kenaz saw dew rise from the ice in Paradise and descend upon the books. The letters of their writing were obliterated by it, and then an angel came and annihilated what was left.<sup>11</sup>

During the same night an angel carried off the seven gems, and threw them to the bottom of the sea. Meanwhile a second angel brought twelve other gems, engraving the names of the twelve sons of Jacob upon them, one name upon each. No two of these gems were alike:<sup>12</sup> the first, to bear the name of Reuben, was like sardius; the second, for Simon, like topaz; the third, Levi, like emerald; the fourth, Judah, like carbuncle; the fifth, Issachar, like sapphire; the sixth, Zebulon, like jasper; the seventh, Dan, like ligure; the eighth, Naphtali, like amethyst; the ninth, Gad, like agate; the tenth, Asher, like chrysolite; the eleventh, Joseph, like beryl; and the twelfth, Benjamin, like onyx.

Now God commanded Kenaz to deposit twelve stones in the holy Ark, and there they were to remain until such time as Solomon should build the Temple, and attach them to the Cherubim.<sup>13</sup> Furthermore, this Divine communication was made to Kenaz: “And it shall come to pass, when the sin of the children of men shall have been completed by defiling My Temple, the Temple they themselves shall build, that I will take these stones, together with the tables of the law, and put them in the place whence they were removed of old, and there they shall remain until the end of all time, when I will visit the inhabitants of the earth. Then I will take them up, and they shall be an everlasting light to those who love Me and keep My commandments.”<sup>14</sup>

When Kenaz bore the stones to the sanctuary, they illumined the earth like unto the sun at midday.

---

1. The elaborate Kenaz legend is found in ps.-Philo pp. (25–32) only, and therefrom in Yerahmeel 57, 165–173, in a somewhat abridged form. It is worthy of note that Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 3.3, calls the first judge (after Joshua) Kenaz, and not Othniel, as the Hebrew text and the Septuagint of Jud. 3:9 have it. Ps.-Philo and Josephus, however,



do not agree as to who the father of Kenaz was; according to the former, it was Caleb, whereas the latter seems to think it was Othniel; see statement of contents of *Antiqui.*, V. The Christian literature of the Middle Ages contains many references to Cenec (this is the most frequent form of this name; but there are more than a dozen corruptions thereof), who was the successor of Joshua in the leadership of the people, and who distinguished himself by his deep mastery of lithology; see the references given by Steinschneider, *Hebräische Bibliographie*, XVI, 104–106; *Hebräische Uebersetzungen*, 237, note 922, and 963, note 105. This Cenec or Zenek is, of course, none other than Kenaz קנז transliterated Cenec by ps.-Philo. The view which ascribes the mastery of lithology to Cenec (=Kenaz) is connected with the legend about the precious stones (as recorded by ps.-Philo), the hero of which is Kenaz; see text on pp. 855–856. The holy Getha, whose grave is described by a traveller in Palestine in the Middle Ages, is not Jephthah (so Nestle, *Zeitschrift des deutschen Palästina Vereins*, XXX, 210–211), but Kenaz-Cenec, which name is also spelt Cethel (see Steinschneider, *loc. cit.*), of which Getha is a slight corruption. Comp. James, *Biblical Antiquities of Philo*, 146; footnote 10 on p. 843.

2. In Yerahmeel the number of the sinners of the tribe of Benjamin fell out, and the numbers of the sinners of the other tribes are different from those given by ps.-Philo. Comp. the following note.

3. The sum total of the numbers given is 5480, and not 6110 as Yerahmeel and ps.-Philo have it; but in these two sources the numbers of the sinners of the tribes of Dan and Naphtali have fallen out. It is to be noted that Simeon has the largest number of sinners, and Levi the smallest. This is in keeping with the view of the Jewish legend concerning these two tribes. See text on pp. 821–822, and footnote 924 appertaining thereto.

4. Achan's confession saved him from losing his share in the world to come; see text on p. 979, note 32.

5. According to Gen. 35.4, Jacob hid the foreign gods under the terebinth (אלה in Hebrew, and hence Elah, Elas, in ps.-Philo, is the sinner who hid the foreign gods in his tent). On the identity of the terebinth of Jacob with the one mentioned in Josh. 24.26, see quotation from an unknown Midrash in Rashi and Kimhi, Josh., *loc. cit.*

6. Yerahmeel 57, 166. In ps.-Philo Elah's words read: "Shall not death come upon us, that ye shall die by fire? Nevertheless I tell thee, my lord, there are no inventions like unto those which we have made wickedly. But if thou wilt search out the truth plainly, ask severally the men of every tribe, and so shall some one of them that stand by perceive the difference of their sins."

7. Yerahmeel 57, 167, whereas ps.-Philo reads somewhat differently: We would inquire by the evil spirits to see

whether they revealed plainly. On the tribe of Issachar as the tribe of scholars and wise men, see text on p. 408, and Index, s. v.

8. So Yerahmeel 57, 167, whereas ps.-Philo has the "tent of Elas" (=Elah), instead of mount Abarim. The texts of both sources are corrupt; the former ascribes to the tribe of Naphtali the same sin as that committed by the tribe of Dan, while the latter source ignores Naphtali altogether. As to the books of the Amorites, see footnote 34 on p. 846. Ps.-Philo has: The Amorites taught us that which they did, that we might teach our children. But later ps.-Philo refers to the books of the Amorites which were destroyed in a supernatural way, and therefore the text of ps.-Philo made use of by Yerahmeel is the correct one.

9. According to ps.-Philo, the seven sinners are: Canaan, Put, Selath, Nimrod, Elath, Desuath. James, *ad loc.*, adds Ham, to make up the required seven; but Yerahmeel shows that the last name is Suah (שוח), and accordingly it is safe to assume that Desuath is a corruption of De'dan, Suah. Comp. Gen. 10.7. On the making of idols in the time after the deluge, see text on p. 160. On the hiding of the idols under Mount Shechem, see text on p. 316.

10. Ps.-Philo gives some more details concerning these stones, not found in Yerahmeel.

11. On the ice in paradise (an allusion to Ezek. 1.22?), see text on p. 5. Yerahmeel seems to have had before him a corrupted text of ps.-Philo.

12. On the twelve stones in the breast-plate of the high priest, see text on pp. 651–652.

13. Ps.-Philo, 28 (bottom) reads: *Donec exurgat Jahel, qui aedificet domum in nomine meo et tunc ea proponet ante me supra duo Cherubin.* That Solomon is here referred to cannot be doubted and Yerahmeel substitutes Solomon for Jahel. The puzzling Jahel can easily be explained by retranslating this passage into Hebrew as follows: יקום אתיאל והוא יבנה בית לשמי עד אשר "Until Ithiel will arise and build a house for My name." It is quite natural that in this oracle the wise king should not be called by his ordinary name, but by one of his numerous other names. The writer's fancy decided to use אתיאל (compare with p. 945 on Solomon's ten names), but the translator misread it as את יאל, and hence *exurgat Jahel* in the present text. Quite puzzling is also the end of the sentence, as one fails to see any connection between the stones of the high priest and the Cherubim.

14. On the hiding of the temple vessels, see text on p. 837; text on p. 1091. On the "illuminating stones" in Messianic times, see PK 18, 135b–137b, as well as the numerous references cited by Buber *ad loc.* Compare also with p. 1012, and further text on p. 147.



## CAMPAIGNS OF KENAZ

After these preparations Kenaz took the field against the enemy, with three hundred thousand men.<sup>15</sup> The first day he slew eight thousand of the foe, and the second day five thousand. But not all the people were devoted to Kenaz. Some murmured against him, and calumniating him, said: "Kenaz stays at home, while we expose ourselves on the field." The servants of Kenaz reported these words to him. He ordered the thirty-seven<sup>16</sup> men who had railed against him to be incarcerated, and he swore to kill them, if God would but grant him assistance for the sake of His people.

Thereupon he assembled three hundred men of his attendants, supplied them with horses, and bade them be prepared to make a sudden attack during the night, but to tell none of the plans he harbored in his mind. The scouts sent ahead to reconnoitre reported that the Amorites were too powerful for him to risk an engagement. Kenaz, however, refused to be turned away from his intention. At midnight he and his three hundred trusty attendants advanced upon the Amorite camp. Close upon it, he commanded his men to halt, but to resume their march and follow him when they should hear the notes of a trumpet. If the trumpet was not sounded, they were to return home.

Alone Kenaz ventured into the very camp of the enemy. Praying to God fervently, he asked that a sign be given him: "Let this be the sign of the salvation Thou wilt accomplish for me this day: I shall draw my sword from its sheath, and brandish it so that it glitters in the camp of the Amorites. If the enemy recognize it as the sword of Kenaz, then I shall know Thou wilt deliver them into my hand; if not, I shall understand Thou hast not granted my prayer, but dost purpose to deliver me into the hand of the enemy for my sins."

He heard the Amorites say: "Let us proceed to give battle to the Israelites, for our sacred gods, the nymphs, are in their hands, and will cause their defeat." When he heard these words, the spirit of God came over Kenaz. He arose and swung his sword above his head. Scarce had the Amorites seen it gleam in the air when they exclaimed: "Verily, this is the sword of Kenaz, who has come to inflict wounds and pain. But we know that our gods, who are held by the Israelites, will deliver them into our hands. Up, then, to battle!" Knowing that God had heard his petition, Kenaz threw himself upon the Amorites, and mowed down forty-five thousand of them, and as many perished at the hands of their own brethren, for God had sent the angel Gabriel<sup>17</sup> to his aid, and he had struck the Amorites blind, so that they fell upon one another. On account of the vigorous blows dealt by Kenaz on all sides, his sword stuck to his hand. A fleeing Amorite, whom he stopped, to ask him how to loose it, advised him to slay a Hebrew, and let his warm blood flow over his hand. Kenaz accepted his advice, but only in part: instead of a Hebrew, he slew the Amorite himself, and his blood freed his hand from the sword.<sup>18</sup>

When Kenaz came back to his men, he found them sunk in profound sleep, which had overtaken them that they might not see the wonders done for their leader. They were not a little astonished, on awakening, to behold the whole plain strewn with the dead bodies of the Amorites. Then Kenaz said to them: "Are the ways of God like unto the ways of man? Through me the Lord hath sent deliverance to this people. Arise now and go back to your tents." The people recognized that a great miracle had happened, and they said: "Now we know that God hath wrought salvation for His people; He hath no need of numbers, but only of holiness."

On his return from the campaign, Kenaz was received with great rejoicing. The whole people



now gave thanks to God for having put him over them as their leader. They desired to know how he had won the great victory. Kenaz only answered: "Ask those who were with me about my deeds." His men were thus forced to confess that they knew nothing, only, on awakening, they had seen the plain full of dead bodies, without being able to account for their being there. Then Kenaz turned to the thirty-seven men imprisoned, before he left for the war, for having cast aspersions upon him. "Well," he said, "what charge have you to make against me?" Seeing that death was inevitable, they confessed they were of the sort of sinners whom Kenaz and the people had executed, and God had now surrendered them to him on account of their misdeeds. They, too, were burnt with fire.

Kenaz reigned for a period of fifty-seven years. When he felt his end draw nigh, he summoned the two prophets, Phinehas and Jabez,<sup>15</sup> together with the priest Phinehas, the son of Eleazar. To these he spake: "I know the heart of this people, it will turn from following after the Lord. Therefore do I testify against it." Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, replied: "As Moses and Joshua testified, so do I testify against it; for Moses and Joshua prophesied concerning the vineyard, the beautiful planting of the Lord, which knew not who had planted it, and did not recognize Him who cultivated it, so that the vineyard was destroyed, and brought forth no fruit. These are the words my father commanded me to say unto this people."

Kenaz broke out into loud wailing, and with him the elders and the people, and they wept until eventide, saying: "Is it for the iniquity of the sheep that the shepherd must perish? May the Lord have compassion upon His inheritance that it may not work in vain."

The spirit of God descended upon Kenaz, and he beheld a vision. He prophesied that this

world would continue to exist only seven thousand years, to be followed then by the Kingdom of Heaven. These words spoken, the prophetic spirit departed from him, and he straightway forgot what he had uttered during his vision. Before he passed away, he spoke once more, saying: "If such be the rest which the righteous obtain after their death, it were better for them to die than live in this corrupt world and see its iniquities."<sup>20</sup>

As Kenaz left no male heirs, Zebul was appointed his successor. Mindful of the great service Kenaz had performed for the nation, Zebul acted a father's part toward the three unmarried daughters of his predecessor. At his instance, the people assigned a rich marriage portion to each of them; they were given great domains as their property. The oldest of the three, Ethema by name, he married to Elizaphan; the second, Pheila, to Odihel; and the youngest, Zilpah, to Doel.

Zebul, the judge, instituted a treasury at Shiloh. He bade the people bring contributions, whether of gold or of silver. They were only to take heed not to carry anything thither that had originally belonged to an idol. His efforts were crowned with success. The free-will offerings to the Temple treasure amounted to twenty talents of gold and two hundred and fifty talents of silver.

Zebul's reign lasted twenty-five years. Before his death he admonished the people solemnly to be God-fearing and observant of the law.<sup>21</sup>

---

15. According to ps.-Philo, the Amorites were the enemies, whereas at the beginning of the Kenaz legend the *Allophyli* (i. e., the Philistines) were the enemy.

16. Ps.-Philo enumerates them all by name, but the names are mutilated.

17. This is in accordance with the abridged text of Yerahmeel, whereas ps.-Philo speaks of two angels who



came to the assistance of Kenaz: Gethel (or Ingethel), “who is set over the hidden things and worketh unseen”, and the angel Zeruel, who “is set over strength”. The former smote the Amorites with blindness so that every man who saw his neighbor counted him his adversary and they slew one another, while the second angel “bare up the arms of Kenaz” in order to remain unperceived. Gethel is a fairly accurate transliteration of עֲטִיאל or עֲטֵהָאֵל from עֵטָה (Arabic *ghata*), “covered, hid”, and hence Gethel is an appropriate name for the angel “who is set over the hidden things and worketh unseen.” The name of the angel who “is set over strength” is Zeruel, זֶרְעֵאֵל from זֶרַע “strength”, and as this word in Hebrew also means “arm”, it is said that Zeruel “bare up the arms of Kenaz”, in order to be unperceived. Compare footnote 43 on p. 916. On the miracle of invisibility, see footnote 13 on p. 843, and Index, s. v. On the blinding of the enemy by angels, see II Kings 6.18; text on p. 752; text on p. 1162.

18. On the view that the blood that was stuck to the hand loosened the sword, see text on p. 926.

19. The name Jabez יַעֲבֵץ (on the rabbinic legend concerning him, see notes 22 and 30) is transliterated in ps.-Philo by Jabis, which Yerahmeel took to be the equivalent of Hebrew יָבֵץ, and thus the wicked king of Hazor is made to be the namesake of the prophet. The dependence of Yerahmeel upon the Latin text of ps.-Philo is thereby proved beyond doubt. Yerahmeel had before him the incorrect Latin text: “*Jabis et Phineas duos prophetas et filium Eleazari sacerdotis*”, whereas there can hardly be any doubt that the last four words are a gloss, explaining that Phinehas “the prophet” is identical with Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest. This is, of course, quite correct, since according to ps.-Philo (see quotation in the text on p. 882 and note 140) Phinehas the son of Eleazar is none other than the prophet Elijah. But when the gloss crept into the text, it made ps.-Philo speak absurdly of Phinehas the prophet and Phinehas the priest.

20. Besides the vision of Kenaz, ps.-Philo gives also one by Eleazar the priest, which he revealed on his deathbed to his son Phinehas, who, in his turn, communicated it to the dying Kenaz and the elders surrounding him. On the view that the “shepherd must perish for the iniquity of his flock”, see Shabbat 33b. As to the conception that the world is to exist seven thousand years, see footnote 140 on p. 99. The sentence concerning the shepherd and the flock reads in ps.-Philo as follows: “Shall the shepherd (God) destroy His flock (Israel) to no purpose, except that it continues to sin against Him?”

21. Zebul is a corruption of Iehud, *i. e.*, Ehud, the second judge in Israel; see Jud. 3.15. On p. 33 (towards the end) this name is spelt Iebul. For the interchange of Z and I in ps.-Philo, see 47A, where Jambri stands for Zambri זַמְרִי; on the confusion of *d* and *l*, see 44D, which has

Dedila instead of Delila דִּלְיָלָה; in old Latin MSS. it is difficult to distinguish between *b* and *h*, and between *d* and *l*. Yerahmeel, following the masoretic text of the Bible, according to which Othniel was the first judge, makes him the successor of Kenaz, instead of Ehud; but there can be no doubt that ps.-Philo knows nothing of Othniel, and considers Kenaz as the first judge. Comp. note 1, and the following note.

## OTHNIEL

Othniel was a judge of a very different type. His contemporaries said, that before the sun of Joshua went down, the sun of Othniel, his successor in the leadership of the people, appeared on the horizon. The new leader's real name was Judah; Othniel was one of his epithets, as Jabez was another.<sup>22</sup>

Among the judges, Othniel represents the class of scholars. His acumen was so great that he was able, by dint of dialectic reasoning, to restore the seventeen hundred traditions<sup>23</sup> which Moses had taught the people, and which had been forgotten in the time of mourning for Moses. Nor was his zeal for the promotion of the study of the Torah inferior to his learning. The descendants of Jethro left Jericho, the district assigned to them, and journeyed to Arad, only that they might sit at the feet of Othniel.<sup>24</sup> His wife, the daughter of his half-brother Caleb, was not so well pleased with him. She complained to her father that her husband's house was bare of all earthly goods, and his only possession was knowledge of the Torah.<sup>25</sup>

The first event to be noted in Othniel's forty years' reign<sup>26</sup> is his victory over Adoni-bezek. This chief did not occupy a prominent position among the Canaanitish rulers. He was not even accounted a king, nevertheless he had conquered seventy foreign kings.<sup>27</sup> The next event was the capture of Luz by the Israelites. The only way to gain entrance into Luz was by a cave, and the



road to the cave lay through a hollow almond tree. If this secret approach to the city had not been betrayed by one of its residents, it would have been impossible for the Israelites to reach it. God rewarded the informer who put the Israelites in the way of capturing Luz. The city he founded was left unmolested both by Sennacherib and Nebuchadnezzar, and not even the Angel of Death has power over its inhabitants. They never die, unless, weary of life, they leave the city.<sup>28</sup>

The same good fortune did not mark Othniel's reign throughout. For eight years Israel suffered oppression at the hands of Cushan, the evil-doer who in former days had threatened to destroy the patriarch Jacob, as he was now endeavoring to destroy the descendants of Jacob, for Cushan is only another name for Laban.<sup>29</sup>

Othniel, however, was held so little answerable for the causes that had brought on the punishment of the people, that God granted him eternal life; he is one of the few who reached Paradise alive.<sup>30</sup>

---

22. BR 58.2; Shemuel 8,73; Koheleth 1.5; Shir 4.7; Temurah 16a. In all these sources Othniel is supposed to be the direct successor of Joshua, and not Kenaz, as ps.-Philo has it; comp. note 1, and the preceding note. According to the Rabbis, Judah, who was commanded by God to go up first against the Canaanites (Jud. 1.1), was a person so named (*i. e.*, Othniel, the first judge), and does not refer to the tribe of Judah. Aphraates, 481, shares this view of the Rabbis. The statement of Lactantius, *Institut.*, 4.10, that the country of Judea was called after a certain Judah who was the leader of Israel after Moses, presupposes the rabbinic view that the first judge was called Judah. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 2.1, paraphrases the passage of Jud. 1.1 by "the tribe of Judah". He adds that priority was given to this tribe in accordance with the command of God through Phinehas. Comp. Seder 'Olam 20, according to the reading of Rashi on Jud. 2.1; Targum Jud., *loc. cit.*, and the references cited by Ratner. All these sources maintain that "the messenger of God" sent to Israel after the death of Joshua was none other than Phinehas. See also Septuagint on Josh. (end); Ginzberg, *Haggadah bei den Kirchenv.*, 2–4.

23. Temurah 16a. Compare with p. 841. As to the learning and devotion to the Torah displayed by Othniel-Jabez, see also ShR 38.5; BHM V, 69; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 936; Tan. Tezawweh 9; ER 5,30. In the last passage it is said that Jabez (=Othniel) had never experienced pain nor committed sins; this was granted to him as a reward for his having travelled through the entire land of Israel to instruct the people in the Torah, for the sake of God's glory. Comp. also the references in the following note.

24. Sifre N., 78; Sifre Z., 76–77; Mekilta Yitro 2,60a–60b; Mekilta RS, 92; Temurah 16a; ER 5,30–31; Targum 1 Chron. 2.55 and 4.9–10; text on pp. 589–590.

25. Temurah 16a. The identity of Caleb the son of Jephuneh, one of the spies, with Caleb the son Kenaz (Jud. 1.13; according to the Septuagint, it is Kenaz who is described in this passage as the younger brother of Caleb), whose daughter was the wife of Othniel, is presupposed in many places of the Talmudim and Midrashim. Comp., e. g., Sanhedrin 69b; Sotah 11b: Caleb's father was Hezron, his stepfather was Kenaz, but he was called "the son of Jephuneh", because he deviated (the name Jephuneh is here connected with פנה "turned aside") from the evil counsel of the spies, and did not slander the Holy Land. On Caleb's first marriage with Miriam, see text on p. 469; on his second marriage with Bithiah, Moses' foster-mother, see Megillah 13a; Targum 1 Chron. 4.18; Index, s. v. *Hadar*, Wa-Yelek (end), 75a, quotes from Temurah, *loc. cit.*, a statement concerning the great devotion to the Torah evinced by the generation of Othniel-Jabez. This is, however, not found in our texts of the Talmud. The description of the devotion to the Torah evinced by the disciples of R. Judah ben Ilai (Sanhedrin 20a) agrees verbatim with that concerning the generation of Othniel quoted in *Hadar* from Temurah.

26. Seder 'Olam 12, and the parallel passages cited by Ratner. Comp. also Ginzberg, *Haggadah bei den Kirchenv.*, 1–2. According to the Rabbis, Othniel followed almost immediately upon Joshua as the leader of the people. It is true that between Joshua and Othniel there were the "elders", to whom the leadership was entrusted; but these elders outlived Joshua (Jud. 2.6) only for a short while. Their short duration was a punishment for their not having mourned for Joshua in a manner befitting his merits; compare with p. 552. According to some authorities, however, the time intervening between Joshua and Othniel was twenty, or, as others maintain, seventeen years. It was during this interval that the events recorded in the book of Ruth took place. Comp. the references cited by Ratner, note 5 on Seder 'Olam, *loc. cit.*, and Shir 4.6, where Boaz is identified with Judah mentioned in Jud. 1.1. See notes 22, 31 and 33.

27. Sifre D., 353 (end); Midrash Tannaim 218. An unknown Midrash quoted by R. Bahya, *Kad ha-Kemah*



יָדָיו, 78b, and Sabba', Bereshit, 8d, remarks that Adonibezek was forgiven his sin because he confessed it. Compare with pp. 846 and 855.

28. BR 69 (end); Sotah 46b; Nispahim 14–15 (=EZ 16); Sukkah 53a; PRK (Schönblum's edition, 43b); Zohar II, 151b. Comp. also Sanhedrin 97a, which gives the story concerning the place called Kushta ("Truth"), where nobody died "before his time", *i. e.*, before reaching old age, because the inhabitants thereof never spoke an untrue word. It is not quite clear whether there is any connection between the city of Luz, over which the angel of death has no power, and the little bone in the human body called Luz which never decays and out of which the new body will be formed in the time of resurrection (see vol. V, pp. 184, note 44 and 365, note 345; Index, s. v. "Luz"); but it can hardly be regarded as accidental that the immortal city and the immortal bone of the human body bear the same name. The above-cited sources contain the obscure statement that purple (תכלת) was made in the city of Luz; a play on לֹז and לֹזָה woven?

29. Sanhedrin 105a; Yerushalmi Nazir 9,57c. On Laban's enmity towards the descendants of Jacob, see text on p. 760. The Israelites suffered oppression at the hands of Cushan on account of their sins; but Othniel pleaded to God in their behalf, saying: "Thou hast promised Moses to redeem Israel from their enemies, whether they fulfil Thy will or not; now, I pray Thee, redeem Israel." Tan. Shemot 20 (on the text, comp. Rashi, Jud. 3.10); ShR 3.2.

30. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 29a and 36a, where by Jabez the judge Othniel-Jabez is very likely meant, though later sources maintain that "the immortal Jabez" was a grandson (son?) of R. Judah the patriarch, the redactor of the Mishnah; comp. Derek Erez Z., 1 (end), the parallel passages cited by Tawrogi, *ad loc.*, and Epstein, *Mikkadmoniyot*, 111–112, as well as PRK (Grünhut's edition, 83); Carmoly *Aguddat Aggadot*, 12. It is probable that the original form of the Haggadah concerning Jabez read יְהוּדָה יוֹרֵדָה, referring to the identity of Othniel-Jabez with Judah mentioned in Jud. 1.1 (comp. note 22). Later this remark was misunderstood, and was emended to שֶׁל יְהוּדָה בְּנוֹ יוֹרֵדָה, which presupposes that this Judah is the patriarch, the redactor of the Mishnah. Kallah 2,9b explicitly states that Jabez who was one of the seven who entered paradise alive was none other than the one mentioned in the Bible. Comp. Index, s. v. "Paradise, Entering Alive into".

## BOAZ AND RUTH

The story of Ruth came to pass a hundred<sup>31</sup> years after Othniel's reign. Conditions in Palestine were of such a nature that if a judge

said to a man, "Remove the mote from thine eye", his reply was, "Do thou remove the beam from thine own."<sup>32</sup> To chastise the Israelites God sent down upon them one of the ten seasons of famine which He had ordained, as disciplinary measures for mankind, from the creation of the world until the advent of Messiah.<sup>33</sup> Elimelech<sup>34</sup> and his sons,<sup>35</sup> who belonged to the aristocracy of the land, attempted neither to improve<sup>36</sup> the sinful generation whose transgressions had called forth the famine, nor alleviate the distress that prevailed about them. They left Palestine, and thus withdrew themselves from the needy who had counted upon their help. They turned their faces to Moab.<sup>37</sup> There, on account of their wealth and high descent, they were made officers in the army.<sup>38</sup> Mahlon and Chilion, the sons of Elimelech, rose to still higher distinction, they married the daughters of the Moabite king Eglon.<sup>39</sup> But this did not happen until after the death of Elimelech, who was opposed to intermarriage with the heathen.<sup>40</sup> Neither the wealth nor the family connections of the two men helped them before God. First they sank into poverty, and, as they continued in their sinful ways, God took their life.<sup>41</sup>

Naomi, their mother, resolved to return to her home. Her two daughters-in-law were very dear to her on account of the love they had borne her sons, a love strong even in death, for they refused to marry again.<sup>42</sup> Yet she would not take them with her to Palestine, because she foresaw contemptuous treatment in store for them as Moabitish women.<sup>43</sup> Orpah was easily persuaded to remain behind. She accompanied her mother-in-law a distance of four miles, and then she took leave of her, shedding only four tears as she bade her farewell. Subsequent events showed that she had not been worthy of entering into the Jewish communion, for scarcely had she separated from Naomi when she abandoned herself to an immoral life. But with God



nothing goes unrewarded. For the four miles which Orpah travelled with Naomi, she was recompensed by bringing forth four giants, Goliath and his three brothers.<sup>44</sup>

Ruth's bearing and history were far different. She was determined to become a Jewess, and her decision could not be shaken by what Naomi, in compliance with the Jewish injunction, told her of the difficulties of the Jewish law. Naomi warned her that the Israelites had been enjoined to keep Sabbaths and feast days,<sup>45</sup> and that the daughters of Israel were not in the habit of frequenting the theatres and circuses of the heathen. Ruth only affirmed her readiness to follow Jewish customs.<sup>46</sup> And when Naomi said: "We have *one* Torah, *one* law, *one* command; the Eternal our God is *one*, there is none beside Him," Ruth answered: "Thy people shall be my people, thy God my God."<sup>47</sup> So the two women journeyed together to Bethlehem. They arrived there on the very day on which the wife of Boaz was buried, and the concourse assembled for the funeral saw Naomi as she returned to her home.<sup>48</sup>

Ruth supported herself and her mother-in-law sparsely with the ears of grain which she gathered in the fields. Association with so pious a woman as Naomi<sup>49</sup> had already exercised great influence upon her life and ways. Boaz was astonished to notice that if the reapers let more than two ears fall, in spite of her need she did not pick them up, for the gleaning assigned to the poor by the law does not refer to quantities of more than two ears inadvertently dropped at one time.<sup>50</sup> Boaz also admired her grace, her decorous conduct, her modest demeanor.<sup>51</sup> When he learned who she was, he commended her for her attachment to Judaism. To his praise she returned: "Thy ancestors found no delight even in Timna,<sup>52</sup> the daughter of a royal house. As for me, I am a member of a low people, abominated by thy God, and excluded from the assembly of

Israel." For the moment Boaz failed to recollect the Halakah bearing on the Moabites and Ammonites. A voice from heaven reminded him that only their males were affected by the command of exclusion.<sup>53</sup> This he told to Ruth, and he also told her of a vision he had had concerning her descendants. For the sake of the good she had done to her mother-in-law, kings and prophets would spring from her womb.<sup>54</sup>

Boaz showed kindness not only to Ruth and Naomi, but also to their dead. He took upon himself the decent burial of the remains of Elimelech and his two sons.<sup>55</sup> All this begot in Naomi the thought that Boaz harbored the intention of marrying Ruth. She sought to coax the secret, if such there was, from Ruth.<sup>56</sup> When she found that nothing could be elicited from her daughter-in-law, she made Ruth her partner in a plan to force Boaz into a decisive step. Ruth adhered to Naomi's directions in every particular, except that she did not wash and anoint herself and put on fine raiment, until after she had reached her destination. She feared to attract the attention of the lustful, if she walked along the road decked out in unusual finery.<sup>57</sup>

The moral conditions in those days were very reprehensible. Though Boaz was high-born and a man of substance, yet he slept on the threshing-floor, so that his presence might act as a check upon profligacy. In the midst of his sleep, Boaz was startled to find some one next to him. At first he thought it was a demon. Ruth calmed his disquietude<sup>58</sup> with these words: "Thou art the head of the court, thy ancestors were princes, thou art thyself an honorable man, and a kinsman of my dead husband. As for me, who am in the flower of my years, since I left the home of my parents where homage is rendered unto idols, I have been constantly menaced by the dissolute young men around."<sup>59</sup> So I have come hither that thou, who art the redeemer, mayest spread out thy skirt over me."<sup>60</sup> Boaz



gave her the assurance that if his older brother Tob<sup>61</sup> failed her, he would assume the duties of a redeemer. The next day he came before the tribunal of the Sanhedrin<sup>62</sup> to have the matter adjudged. Tob soon made his appearance, for an angel led him to the place where he was wanted,<sup>63</sup> that Boaz and Ruth might not have long to wait. Tob, who was not learned in the Torah, did not know that the prohibition against the Moabites had reference only to males. Therefore, he declined to marry Ruth.<sup>64</sup> So she was taken to wife<sup>65</sup> by the octogenarian<sup>66</sup> Boaz. Ruth herself was forty years old<sup>67</sup> at the time of her second marriage, and it was against all expectations that her union with Boaz should be blessed with offspring, a son, Obed the pious.<sup>68</sup> Ruth lived to see the glory of Solomon, but Boaz died on the day after the wedding.<sup>69</sup>

---

31. Seder 'Olam 12; comp. the references cited by Ratner, note 13. According to Baba Batra 91a, Boaz is identical with the judge Ibzan who was a contemporary of Samson's father (comp. note 47), whereas according to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 9.1, the story of Ruth took place at the time of Eli. Other authorities consider Boaz a contemporary of Deborah; see Ruth R. (beginning), and We-Hizhir I, 87; comp. also note 26. The rather puzzling reference to the judge Jahshun (=Nahshon) by Hamzah al-Ispahani (comp. Steinschneider, below) is based on a confusion of Nahshon with his grandson Boaz who, as mentioned above, is identical according to some of the Rabbis, with Ibzan. The confusion of Nahshon with his grandson Boaz is found also in *Schatzhöhle*, 176, where it is stated: Ibzan is identical with Nahshon; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 10, and Steinschneider, *Zeitschrift für die religiösen Interessen des Judenthums*, II, 321.

32. Baba Batra 15b; Targum Ruth 1.1; Ruth R., 1.1; Ruth Z., 345. Comp. Matthew 7.4.

33. BR 25.3; Targum Ruth 1.1. On the famines, compare with p. 189; on the famine in the time of Boaz, see Baba Batra 91a; Ruth R. 1.1. According to Ruth Z., 45, this famine was not a "famine for bread only, but for the heavenly words of the Lord".

34. According to a widespread tradition Nahshon had four sons: Elimelech, Shalmon (the father of Boaz), Naomi's father, and Tob (comp. note 16); see Tan. B. III, 107; Tan. Behar 3; Baba Batra 91a; Seder 'Olam 12. Ac-

cording to the view of Ruth R. 3.12, Elimelech, Boaz, and Tob were brothers.

35. Haggadic etymologies of their names and those of their wives are given in Ruth R. 1.4; Ruth Z. 46–47; Tan. B. III, 107; Tan. Behar 3; Berakot 7b.

36. Targum Ruth 1.1–2; Tan. Shemini 9. (here שופט stands for דין "judge of a community") and Behar 3 (Elimelech was the head of his generation); Tan. B. III, 107; Ruth R. 1.1–2; Baba Batra 91a.

37. Ruth R. 1.1; Baba Batra 91a; Zohar Ruth 1.1, which is based on Ruth Z., 46–47. In the last source it is observed: They felt themselves drawn to the Moabites, whom they resembled. They were mean and ungenerous like the Moabites who "did not meet Israel with bread and water in the way, when they came forth out of Egypt." (Comp. Deut. 23.5).

38. Targum Ruth 1.1.

39. Ruth R. 1.4: When Ehud said unto Eglon, King of Moab: "I have a message from God unto thee", the King arose from his seat (Jud. 3.20) to show honor to God. His reward was that his descendant Solomon (by his daughter Ruth) "sat on the throne of the Lord" (1 Chron. 29.23); see Tan. B. I, 220; Tan. Wa-Yehi 14; Sanhedrin 60a; Ruth R., *loc. cit.* On the similarity between the "throne of God" (the heavenly mode of ruling) and the "throne of Solomon" (his wise and just ruling), see ShR 15.26; Shir 1.1. Compare footnote 70 on p. 969. Good deeds though lacking good intention, have their reward; Balak offered up unto God forty-two sacrifices (see Num. 23.1, 14, and 29), and he was rewarded in that Ruth, the granddaughter of his grandson (son?) Eglon, became the mother of the Davidic dynasty; see Nazir 23b; Sanhedrin 105b; Targum and Lekah on Ruth 1.4. Compare footnote 4 on p. 1025.

40. Lekah, Ruth 1.4. The old sources take it for granted that the sons of Elimelech did not convert their wives to Judaism, either at the time of their marriage or later; see Ruth R. 1.4, where (that is how the obscure passage is to be understood) it is said that the sons of Elimelech were of the opinion that the prohibition against intermarriage with the Moabites (Deut. 23.2) applied also to the marrying of Moabitish women after their conversion to Judaism. Accordingly their wives' conversion would not have rendered marriage legitimate (comp. note 64). See Tan. B. III, 108; Tan. Behar 3; Zohar III, 190a (in this passage Elimelech is held responsible for the sinful actions of his sons); Targum Ruth 1.4. Against this view Zohar Ruth 1.4 (שאל ר' פדת) and 14 maintains that the wives of Elimelech's sons were converted to Judaism before their marriage; but no sooner was Orpah's husband dead than she returned to her idols, for her conversion to Judaism was only a matter of policy with her. See also Ruth Z., 47, where the death of Mahlon and Chilion was a punishment for their father's sin (avarice). Here their marriages were



considered to have been in accordance with the law, or in other words, this passage presupposes that their wives were proselytes. See also the supplement to Lekah, Ruth 48, 49, where special stress is laid on the fact (read שנתיהדרו instead of שנתיהדר) that Orpah and Ruth became converted to Judaism prior to their marriage to the sons of Elimelech. Compare footnote 44; footnote 790 on p. 779; footnote 16 on p. 948.

41. Ruth R. 1.5, which reads: The Merciful One does not take away the life of the sinner before warning him with some other punishment. WR 17.4; PK 8,66b; PR 17, 89a; Tan. B. III, 108; Tan. Behar 3.

42. Targum Ruth 1.8. Comp. also Ruth R., *ad loc.*, which reads: Naomi's daughters-in-law not only saw to it that the last honors paid to their husbands should be in keeping with their station in life, but also renounced their claims to the estates of the deceased (their dowry rights) in favor of their mother-in-law. Naomi decided to return to the Holy Land after she had heard from the Jewish merchants who came to Moab that the famine had disappeared. Other authorities think that this fact was revealed to her by the holy spirit; see Ruth R., Targum (this passage speaks of an angel instead of the holy spirit), and Lekah on Ruth 1.6.

43. Ruth Z., 47–48. This passage also states that in Jerusalem each class of the population inhabited its own district, and the higher classes did not permit the lower ones to dwell in their midst. Similarly the classes were distinguished by different dress, and in view of the class consciousness among the Jews, Naomi feared to expose her daughters-in-law to humiliation and disgrace, especially as they were very poor and clad in rags. Naomi herself, however, was anxious to return to the Holy Land, and barefoot, and in rags she continued her homeward journey, without stopping to rest even on the eve of Sabbath (Holy Day? comp. note 48) Ruth R. 1.7; Ruth Z. 49. On the text of this passage of Ruth R. comp. Lekah, *ad loc.*, according to which we have to read שהוצדה.... ביחד; for ביחף is a poor variant instead of ביחד, whereas שהוצדה is the Hofal of צדה "feared"; see Rosh ha-Shanah 1.9, and the explanation of this passage by Geiger, *Kebuzzat Ma'amarim*, 15–20.

44. Ruth R. 1.14; Shemuel 20, 106–107; Sorah 42b; Ruth Z., 49; text on pp. 915 and 934. The law prescribes that one asking to be admitted as a proselyte is to be refused, unless he persists and presents his request a second time. Accordingly Naomi refused Ruth's first request, but admitted her as a proselyte when Ruth repeated her request a second time, after the laws appertaining to a proselyte were expounded to her; Ruth R. 1.7 and 13; Ruth Z., 48.

45. According to Yebamot 47a, the attention of one desirous of adopting Judaism must be called to these ceremonial laws.

46. Ruth R. 1.16–17; Yebamot 47b; Ruth Z., 49 (on the phrase שאני קונה עולמי, see 'Abodah Zarah 17a,

which has קונה עולמו); Targum Ruth 1.16–17; Mishle (end).

47. Midrashic fragment published by Hartmann, *Ruth in der Midrasch-litteratur*, 97. Compare with p. 722.

48. Baba Batra 90a; Yerushalmi Ketubot 1,25a; Ruth R. 1.19. In the last source several other views are given concerning the day on which Naomi arrived. Some say that it was on the day when the marriages of the sixty children of the judge Ibzan took place (comp. Jud. 12.9), whereas other authorities maintain that the people flocked to Bethlehem on that day for the preparation of the 'Omer, and accordingly Naomi's arrival occurred (see Menahot 10.3) at the "termination of the first day of Passover." A somewhat different view is given by Targum Ruth 1.22, where the beginning of the barley harvest, spoken of in Ruth, *loc. cit.*, is referred to the day preceding Passover (ערב פסח), when the first preparations for the reaping of the 'Omer are made (comp. Menahot, *loc. cit.*). One is, however, inclined to read במפקי יומא א' דפסחא "at the termination of the first day of Passover", instead of במעלי יומא דפסחא of our texts of Targum; see also note 43. Comp. also Ruth R. 1.22.

49. MHG I, 336, maintains that she is one of the twenty-two pious women whose piety was praised by Solomon in the last chapter of Prov., where the words "she reacheth forth her hand to the needy", refer to Naomi, who brought Ruth under the wings of the Shekinah. Compare footnote 271 on p. 237.

50. Ruth R. 2.5–6; on the text see Lekah and Yalkut, *ad loc.* As to the law appertaining to gleanings, see Peah 6.5.

51. Ruth Z., 50; Ruth R. 2.5–6. It was an angel who led Ruth to the field of Boaz; see Lekah, Ruth 2.3.

52. On Timna, see text on pp. 323–324, and Index, s. v.

53. Midrashic fragment published by Hartmann, *Ruth in der Midrasch-Litteratur*, 98; Targum Ruth 2.11–13. Ruth in her modesty described herself as one of the "handmaids of Boaz"; whereupon he assured her that she would be counted as one of "the mothers of Israel"; see PK 16, 124a; Ruth R. 1.14. According to PK, *loc. cit.*, the Halakah that the biblical law excluding the Moabites "from the congregation of the Lord" (Deut. 23.4, *seq.*) applies only to the males, but not to the females, was promulgated at that period and was still unknown to Ruth, who learned it from Boaz. Comp. notes 40, 64, and text on p. 917. The greeting, "The Lord be with you" (Ruth 2.4), was first introduced by Boaz, and sanctioned by a heavenly voice (see footnote 193 on p. 1179). This sanction was absolutely necessary, as it was against the law that forbids to mention God's name under ordinary circumstances. This greeting continued to be in vogue until the time of Athaliah (according to some authorities, until the days of the three youths, while according to others, until the time of



Mordecai and Esther), when the name of the Lord was forgotten. See Berakot Mishnah 9 (end); Babli 63a; Yerushalmi 9, 14c; Makkot 23b; Ruth R. 4.4. The Haggadah very likely presupposes that the innovation of Boaz consisted in the use of the Tetragrammaton; see Geiger, *Urschrift*, 262, seq.; Schwarz in his notes on Tosefta Berakot 9; Jacob, *Im Namen Gottes*, 174. What Kohler, *Journal of Jewish Lore and Philosophy* I, 26–38, has to say on this subject does not deserve serious consideration, as he evidently did not grasp the point made by Geiger. In this connection it may be mentioned that the phrase “Thanked be God” is said by ps.-Matthew, 6 to have been coined by Mary the mother of Jesus.

54. Shabbat 113b; Ruth R. 2.14; Ruth Z., 51. God put His blessing in the few ears of corn Boaz gave her, and they sufficed for her meal; see PK 6, 59a–59b (it is not explicitly stated whether the blessing was on account of Boaz or Ruth); PR 16, 82a; WR 34.8; BaR 21.20; Mishle 13, 74; Tan. Pinehas 13.

55. Ruth R. 2.20. Boaz took great pains to impress upon his numerous workmen (he employed so many of them, that each group of forty-two had a foreman; Ruth R. 2.4) to be kind and polite to Ruth. He also told them to drop sheaves in her way, that she might take them home, as she was very strict in observing the law (compare with p. 863) and would not take anything to which she was not entitled. The workmen did even more than they had been commanded by their master, and threshed for her the grain she gleaned. But she was contented with very little, and would not take home more than was required for her daily need. This daily supply aroused the suspicion of Naomi, who feared her daughter-in-law was leading an immoral life, obtaining her daily needs from her lovers. See Ruth Z., 51. The story in that passage about the pious man goes back to Tosefta Peah 3.8.

56. Ruth Z., 52. Naomi had taken an oath to provide for Ruth, and was therefore anxious to see her married; comp. Targum Ruth 3.1.

57. Shabbat 113b; Ruth R. 3.3; Yerushalmi Peah 8, 21b; PR 23, 115b; Ruth Z., 52; Tan. B. III, 108; Tan. Behar 3; Targum and Peshitta Ruth 3.3. Some of these sources state that Naomi, to allay Ruth's apprehensions, said to her: “My merits will accompany thee”; comp. also Haserot 4a, and Lekah, Ruth 3.5. Ruth was extremely afraid to walk at night all by herself, as she was of such extraordinary beauty that no man could look at her without becoming passionately enamoured of her; Ruth R. 2.4. On the haggadic explanation, given in this passage, of ויקר (Ruth 2.4) as קרא or rather קרה “had a night pollution”, see Megillah 15a.

58. Demons, both male and female, have their bodies and faces covered with hair, but their heads are bald; see *Emek ha-Melek*, 140 b. According to Hasidim (Bologna edition, 1161), the male demons have hair on their heads, but not the females. Comp. Yalkut Hadash, Keshafim, 55.

59. On Ruth's extraordinary beauty, see note 57.

60. Ruth R. 3.7–10 (Boaz retired after praying and studying the Torah); Ruth Z., 52; Sanhedrin 19b; Tan. B. III, 108; Tan. Behar 3; midrashic fragment published by Hartmann in *Ruth in der Midrasch-Litteratur*, 98–99; Targum Ruth 3.7–12, which reads: Boaz retired after having thanked God for having removed the famine from Israel at his prayer; comp. also Targum Ruth 1.6. On the chastity of Boaz, highly praised in the above-cited sources (Boaz, Joseph, and Palti, the husband of Michal, are declared to have been the highest types of chastity) comp. note 85. See also ER 24, 131; WR 23.11; BaR 15.16; Ruth R. 3.13; Ruth Z., 53; PRE 39. The Karaite Hadassi, *Eshkol* 45b, No. 118, accuses the Rabbis of slandering Boaz, because they maintain that he did not resist the temptation to which he was exposed. But the Rabbis on the contrary are full of praise for his steadfastness and chastity. On similar Karaite fabrications, see footnote 43 on p. 895.

61. According to the prevailing opinion, טוב (Ruth 3.13) is taken to be the name of the kinsman, who in 4.1 is addressed by Boaz: “Ho, such a one”, because he was not conversant with the law, and Boaz did not deign to call him by his name; see Ruth R. 3.11 and 4.1; Ruth Z., 53; Tan. B. III, 108; Tan. Behar 3; Baba Batra 91b. On the relationship between Boaz and Tob, see note 34. Targum Ruth 3.13, however, takes טוב to mean “well”. By the six measures of barley which Boaz gave Ruth on her return home, he indicated to her that she was destined to become the ancestress of six pious men who would be endowed with six spiritual gifts (comp. Is. 11.2). These men are: David, Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, Azariah, and the Messiah (others count Daniel's three friends as one, and add Hezekiah and Josiah); see Ruth R. 3.14; Ruth Z., 53; Sanhedrin 93b; PRK 36b; BaR 13.11; Targum Ruth 3.15.

62. Targum Ruth 4.1; Ruth Z., 53 (המדרש=סנהדרין) בית in this passage and in many others). Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 9.4.

63. Ruth R. 4.1–2. On the text, comp. Lekah and Yalkut on Ruth, *ad loc.*

64. Ruth R. 4.1–2 and 5 (the Ketib קניתי, Ruth 4.5, is explained as second person feminine: Tob did not act like a man, but like an ignorant woman. See the similar Haggadah in Berakot 32a on Num. 14.16); Haserot 6. On the view that through Boaz the prohibition against intermarrying with the Moabites was limited to the males only, see footnote 53, and text on p. 917. It was Boaz too who introduced the ceremony of pronouncing the benedictions on the bridal couple in the presence of ten men; see Ketubot 7a, and Yerushalmi 1, 25a; Ruth R. 4.2. In view of the fact that at weddings and on similar festive occasions young people are apt to forget what morals and decorum require of them, Boaz ordained that “elders” should be appointed to supervise over such festive celebrations, and this



ordinance continued in force until the time of the Palestinian patriarchate; Yerushalmi and Ruth R., *loc. cit.*

65. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 9.4, combining Ruth 4.6 with Deut. 25.89, maintains that Ruth performed the ceremony of “taking off the shoe” (חליצה) of the kinsman who refused to marry her. The same view is alluded to in Zohar Ruth 4.6. It is very likely that Targum paraphrases נעל by “glove” to combat this view which is against the Halakah enjoining only that a sister-in-law should take off the shoe of the brother of the deceased, and Ruth was certainly not Tob’s sister-in-law. The Halakah explains Ruth 4.7 to refer to the form of acquisition known in rabbinic jurisprudence as Halifin (חליפין), consisting in the handing over of an object by the purchaser to the seller, as a symbolical substitute for the object bought. See Baba Mezi’a 47a; Yerushalmi Kiddushin 1, 60c; Ruth R. 4.8; Shemuel 28, 100.

66. Ruth R. 3.10.

67. Ruth R. 3.10. Comp. Tosafot Yebamot 48b (bottom).

68. Ruth R. 4.12. Apart from her advanced age at the time of her second marriage (compare, however, with p. 864), Ruth’s physical condition was not fit for bearing children, had not a miracle been wrought for her. On the pious Obed (“servant”, *i. e.*, servant of God), see also Targum Ruth 4.21 and Lekah on Ruth 4.17. According to the midrashic fragment published by Hartmann, *Ruth in der Midrasch-Litteratur*, 100, Obed was one of the pious men who were born with the sign of the Abrahamic covenant on them; compare footnote 318, towards the end, on p. 248.

69. Ruth Z., 55; Lekah, Ruth 4.17 (this passage gives a detailed description of the death of Boaz in the bridal chamber); comp. also Josephus *Antiqui.*, V, 9.4, which reads: Obed was born within a year after the marriage of Ruth. Lekah, 4.16, adds that Naomi in her youth was “a nurse” to Boaz, as she was later a nurse to his son Obed. The view that Ruth lived to see the glory of Solomon (this already in Baba Batra 91b) very likely assumes that the story of Ruth took place at the end of the period of the Judges. Comp. note 31. Boaz became the ancestor of kings (the Davidic dynasty), as a reward for “his taking a wife for the sake of Heaven”; EZ, 3, 178.

## DEBORAH

Not long after Ruth, another ideal woman arose in Israel, the prophetess Deborah.

When Ehud died, there was none to take his place as judge, and the people fell off from

God and His law. God, therefore, sent an angel to them with the following message: “Out of all the nations on earth, I chose a people for Myself, and I thought, so long as the world stands, My glory will rest upon them. I sent Moses unto them, My servant, to teach them goodness and righteousness. But they strayed from My ways. And now I will arouse their enemies against them, to rule over them, and they will cry out: ‘Because we forsook the ways of our fathers, hath this come over us.’ Then I will send a woman unto them, and she will shine for them as a light for forty years.”<sup>70</sup>

The enemy whom God raised up against Israel was Jabin,<sup>71</sup> the king of Hazor, who oppressed him sorely. But worse than the king himself was his general Sisera, one of the greatest heroes known to history. When he was thirty years old, he had conquered the whole world. At the sound of his voice the strongest of walls fell in a heap, and the wild animals in the woods were chained to the spot by fear. The proportions of his body were vast beyond description. If he took a bath in the river, and dived beneath the surface, enough fish were caught in his beard to feed a multitude, and it required no less than nine hundred horses to draw the chariot in which he rode.<sup>72</sup>

To rid Israel of this tyrant, God appointed Deborah and her husband Barak. Barak was an ignoramus, like most of his contemporaries. It was a time singularly deficient in scholars.<sup>73</sup> In order to do something meritorious in connection with the Divine service, he carried candles, at his wife’s instance, to the sanctuary, wherefrom he was called Lapidoth, “Flames”. Deborah was in the habit of making the wicks on the candles very thick, so that they might burn a long time. Therefore God distinguished her. He said: “Thou takest pains to shed light in My house, and I will let thy light, thy fame, shine abroad in the whole land.” Thus it happened



that Deborah became a prophetess and a judge. She dispensed judgment in the open air, for it was not becoming that men should visit a woman in her house.<sup>74</sup>

Prophetess though she was, she was yet subject to the frailties of her sex. Her self-consciousness was inordinate. She sent for Barak<sup>75</sup> to come to her instead of going to him,<sup>76</sup> and in her song she spoke more of herself than was seemly. The result was that the prophetic spirit departed from her for a time while she was composing her song.<sup>77</sup>

The salvation of Israel was effected only after the people, assembled on the Mount of Judah, had confessed their sins publicly before God and besought His help. A seven days' fast was proclaimed for men and women, for young and old. Then God resolved to help the Israelites, not for their sakes, but for the sake of keeping the oath he had sworn to their forefathers, never to abandon their seed. Therefore He sent Deborah unto them.<sup>78</sup>

The task allotted to Deborah and Barak, to lead the attack upon Sisera, was by no means slight. It is comparable with nothing less than Joshua's undertaking to conquer Canaan. Joshua had triumphed over only thirty-one of the sixty-two kings of Palestine, leaving at large as many as he had subdued. Under the leadership of Sisera these thirty-one unconquered kings opposed Israel.<sup>79</sup> No less than forty thousand armies, each counting a hundred thousand warriors, were arrayed against Deborah and Barak.<sup>80</sup> God aided Israel with water and fire. The river Kishon and all the fiery hosts of heaven<sup>81</sup> except the star Meros<sup>82</sup> fought against Sisera. The Kishon had long before been pledged to play its part in Sisera's overthrow. When the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, God commanded the Angel of the Sea to cast their corpses on the land, that the Israelites might convince themselves of the destruction of their

foes, and those of little faith might not say afterward that the Egyptians like the Israelites had reached dry land. The Angel of the Sea complained of the impropriety of withdrawing a gift. God mollified him with the promise of future compensation. The Kishon was offered as security that he would receive half as many bodies again as he was now giving up. When Sisera's troops sought relief from the scorching fire of the heavenly bodies in the coolness of the waters of the Kishon, God commanded the river to redeem its pledge. And so the heathen were swept down into the Sea by the waves of the river Kishon, whereat the fishes in the Sea exclaimed: "And the truth of the Lord endureth forever."<sup>83</sup>

Sisera's lot was no better than the lot of his men. He fled from the battle on horseback<sup>84</sup> after witnessing the annihilation of his vast army. When Jael saw him approach, she went to meet him arrayed in rich garments and jewels. She was unusually beautiful, and her voice was the most seductive ever a woman possessed.<sup>85</sup> These are the words she addressed to him: "Enter and refresh thyself with food, and sleep until evening, and then I will send my attendants with thee to accompany thee, for I know thou wilt not forget me, and thy recompense will not fail." When Sisera, on stepping into her tent, saw the bed strewn with roses which Jael had prepared for him, he resolved to take her home to his mother as his wife, as soon as his safety should be assured.

He asked her for milk to drink, saying: "My soul burns with the flame which I saw in the stars contending for Israel." Jael went forth to milk her goat, meantime supplicating God to grant her His help: "I pray to Thee, O Lord, to strengthen Thy maid-servant against the enemy. By this token shall I know that Thou wilt aid me—if, when I enter the house, Sisera will awaken and ask for water to drink." Scarcely had Jael crossed the threshold when Sisera awakened



and begged for water to quench his burning thirst. Jael gave him wine mixed with water, which caused him to drop into a sound sleep again. The woman then took a wooden spike in her left hand, approached the sleeping warrior, and said: "This shall be the sign that Thou wilt deliver him into my hand—if I draw him from the bed down on the ground without awaking him." She tugged at Sisera, and in very truth he did not awaken even when he dropped from the bed to the floor. Then Jael prayed: "O God, strengthen the arm of Thy maid-servant this day, for Thy sake, for the sake of Thy people, and for the sake of those that hope in Thee." With a hammer she drove the spike into the temple of Sisera, who cried out as he was expiring: "O that I should lose my life by the hand of a woman!" Jael's mocking retort was: "Descend to hell and join thy fathers, and tell them that thou didst fall by the hand of a woman."<sup>86</sup>

Barak took charge of the body of the dead warrior, and he sent it to Sisera's mother, Themac,<sup>87</sup> with the message: "Here is thy son, whom thou didst expect to see returning laden with booty." He had in mind the vision of Themac and her women-in-waiting. When Sisera went forth to battle, their conjuring tricks had shown him to them as he lay on the bed of a Jewish woman. This they had interpreted to mean that he would return with Jewish captives. "One damsel, two damsels for every man,"<sup>88</sup> they had said. Great, therefore, was the disappointment of Sisera's mother. No less than a hundred cries did she utter over him.<sup>89</sup>

Deborah and Barak thereupon intoned a song of praise, thanking God for the deliverance of Israel out of the power of Sisera, and reviewing the history of the people since the time of Abraham.<sup>90</sup>

After laboring for the weal of her nation for forty years, Deborah departed this life. Her last words to the weeping people were an exhorta-

tion not to depend upon the dead. They can do nothing for the living. So long as a man is alive, his prayers are efficacious for himself and for others. They avail naught once he is dead.

The whole nation kept a seventy days' period of mourning in honor of Deborah, and the land was at peace for seven years.<sup>91</sup>

---

70. Ps.-Philo, 33; 30.1–2. On the erroneous reading "Zebul" (32 bottom) instead of Iehud (=Ehud), see note 21. The activity of Shamgar who succeeded Ehud (comp. Jud. 3.31) is entirely ignored by ps.-Philo, whereas Yerahmeel 58.2 refers at least to the fact recorded in Scripture that Shamgar's activity fell between the time of Ehud and Deborah.

71. Ps.-Philo 33, where Jabel is a corruption of Jabin, see Jud. 4.1. Jabin's capital, Hazor, was completely burned down by Joshua (Josh.11.11), who carried out the divine command given to Moses with regard to its complete destruction, and thus fulfilled the desire of Jacob (in this sense is *מסורת* to be understood) who had waged war against it; see BR 81.4; text on p. 315.

72. Aguddat Aggadat 77–78 (read בקרונין instead of *בתנורין*); Abba Gorion 27–28; Neweh Shalom, 47–48. On the enormous size of Sisera's army see note 80.—The Haggadah sees in Sisera (the name occurs among the pagan inhabitants of Palestine as late as the third century C.E.; comp. Yerushalmi Dammai 2, 22c) not only the enemy of the Jews, but also the blasphemer of God and the mocker of the Jewish religion; see Shemuel 13, 85; Tehillim 2, 24; WR 7 (end); Tan. B. III, 14; Tan. Zaw 2; Aggadat Bereshit 1.2; Esther R. 2.4; compare also with p. 1163. In all these sources it is pointed out that God sent the heavenly fire against Sisera (comp. note 81) to punish him for his blasphemy. The view that Sisera at the age of thirty years was the conqueror of the whole world is very likely a reminiscence of the history of Alexander the Great. On the falling of the walls at the sound of his voice, see text on p. 335. According to Tan. Wa-Yakhel 8, Shemaiah and Abtalion, the two famous leaders of the Pharisees towards the end of the first century B.C.E. were descendants of Sisera; according to Gittin 57b, their ancestor was Sennacherib, whereas Sisera's descendants are said to have been "ordinary school teachers". As remarked above, the name Sisera was in use among the pagan population of Palestine as late as the third century C.E., and accordingly the statement that Si-sera was the ancestor of some scholars who were of Gentile descent may be historical, though of course, not the Sisera mentioned in Scripture. Comp. p. 1147, note 93.



73. Megillah 14a (on the text see Rabbinovicz, *ad loc.*, and Aggadat Esther 48); ER 10,48, which reads: Deborah's husband had three names. He was called Barak because his countenance shone like lightning; Lappidoth because he used to make the lamps for the sanctuary at Shiloh; Michael after the angel Michael, or because he was very modest (in Hebrew מִכָּל is modest). The statement that he was called Michael after the angel very likely wishes to convey that Barak received the divine revelation through the angel. Compare with p. 501, on Michael as the intermediary between the Shekinah and Moses. That Barak was a prophet is explicitly stated in Targum Jud. 5.23, where the correct text is that of the editions, Kimhi, *ad loc.*, and not of Codex Reuchlin, and Leiria edition of Targum who have not בָּרַק נְבִיאָה. Comp., however, Seder 'Olam 20, where Barak is not counted among the prophets. That Barak was the husband of Deborah is maintained also by ps.-Jerome on Jud. 5.1, and the same author (on 5.25) speaks also of the revelations communicated to Deborah by the angel Michael; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggadah bei den Kirchenu.*, 5 and 8–9, where note 2 on p.5 is to be corrected in accordance with the above remark. Another Haggadah about Barak is given in ER 10, 50–51, where it is said that he attended on the “elders”, who were the leaders and teachers of the people after the death of Joshua. For his faithful service to them he was rewarded by God, and was chosen to assist Deborah in her work of delivering Israel from the hands of Sisera. God revealed to the prophetess that the work of salvation can only be achieved by men who devote themselves to the study of the Torah and the service of God, or by those who (like Barak) place themselves at the disposal of the students of the Torah. According to Tehillah 22, 180, and Tobit 1.8, Deborah belonged to the tribe of Naphtali, whereas Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1.21, maintains that she was of the tribe of Ephraim. This latter view is shared by Tadshe 8, where the reading should be דְּבוֹרָה מֵאֶפְרַיִם וּבָרַק מִנַּפְתָּלִי “Deborah belonged to the tribe of Ephraim, Barak to that of Naphtali.” According to Ambrosius *De Viduis*, 1; 8.45 and 16; 248 Barak was Deborah's son. That the victory over Sisera was won by the tribes of Naphtali and Zebulun (comp. Jud. 5.8) was due to the fact that Naphtali was a very obliging son to his father Jacob as Zebulun was a very obliging brother to Issachar; see ER 10, 50–51; compare with p. 408.

74. ER 10, 48–49; Megillah 14a. On the legal question whether women are eligible to the office of judge, see Tosafot Niddah 50a. Comp. also Zohar III, 19b, which reads: Woe unto the generation whose leader (judge) is a woman. Targum Jud. 4.5 calls attention to the wealth of Deborah who had possessions throughout the country, and dispensed justice without receiving any remuneration for it.

75. Megillah 14b. Here it is also stated: Pride is unbecoming to women; the prophetesses Deborah and Huldah were proud women (on Huldah, see footnote 117 on p. 1059), and both bore ugly names (Deborah=“bee”, and Huldah=“weasel”).

76. Barak not only obeyed her command, but also insisted on her going with him to the battle to protect him with her merits against dangers; see Zohar III, 21.

77. Pesahim 66b; Zohar III, 21b–22a; BR 40.4, and parallel passage cited by Theodor.

78. Ps.-Philo, 33–34; 30.4–7, which contains also a lengthy address by Deborah delivered to the people on this occasion.

79. Tan. B. IV, 164; Tan. Mass'e 5; BaR 23.7. These kings were foreign potentates who were so charmed with Palestine that they desired to own possessions there. See BR 53.10; footnote 33 on p. 862.

80. Abba Gorion 27; Aguddat Aggadot 77; *Neweh Shalom*, 47. Comp. also ps.-Philo, 34; 31.2, which reads: And the number of them (of Sisera's army) that were gathered and slain in one hour was ninety times nine hundred and seventy thousand men. This number seems to be connected with the “nine hundred chariots”, of Sisera spoken of in Jud. 4.2, where, however, ps.-Philo, 33; 30.3, reads “eight thousand”. On the army of Sisera, see also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 5, 1 and text on p. 1154.

81. The Haggadah takes Jud. 5.20 literally, and accordingly maintains that “the hosts of Sisera” were annihilated by the “hosts of heaven”, the stars and angels; comp. WR 7 (end). Ps.-Philo, 34C and D; 31.1 and 2; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 5.4, and Yerahmeel 58.174 (which is based on Josephus or on a text of ps.-Philo different from ours) rationalize in the following manner: God sent rain, storm, and hail against Sisera. Pesahim, 118b reads: The iron chariots of Sisera melted on account of the intense heat emanating from the stars. Compare with p. 559. See also Abba Gorion 27; Aguddat Aggadot 77; *Neweh Shalom* 47. Comp. Aggadat Bereshit 1,2; Tosefta Sotah 3.14. On the identification of the stars with angels, see Mo'ed Katan 16a. Compare with p. 1154.

82. Mo'ed Katan 16a, which cites also another view to the effect that Meroz is the name of a prominent personage who refused to participate in the war against Sisera and was therefore excommunicated by Barak. Ps.-Jerome, Jud. 5.23, reads: *Meros. i. e. potestati angelicae.*

83. Pesahim 118b; PRE 42. Compare with p. 561. A somewhat different view is given by ps.-Jerome, Jud. 5.1. An allusion to this legend is to be found in the paraphrase of Targum which renders קְדוּמִים נָחַל by “the brook at which miracles have been wrought for Israel in ancient times”. It should be observed that Targum agrees with ps.-Jerome who likewise refers נָחַל קְדוּמִים to the Red Sea, and not to the Brook Kishon. The remarks by Ginzberg, *Haggada*



*bei den Kirchenu.*, 8, are to be corrected accordingly. The victory over Sisera was won in the first night of Passover; *Panim Aherim* 74 (compare footnote 76 on p. 190). Sisera was killed within a very few hours of the beginning of the battle; Koheleth 3.14. Similarly ps.-Philo, 34; 31.2. reads: And...they were slain in one hour. On Mount Tabor, where the battle took place, see text on pp. 594–595.

84. Ps.-Philo, 34; 31.3; according to this ברגליו (Jud. 4.17) is to be translated “by himself” and not “on his feet”.

85. Ps.-Philo, 34; 31.3; Megillah 15a. The former source, like the Palestinian Midrashim, speak only of the great fascination which Jael’s beauty exerted over Sisera; comp., e. g., WR 23. 10, which reads: God attached His name to the names of Joseph (=יהוסף), Paltiel (=אלפלטי), the husband of Michal, and Jael (=יהאל), to testify that these pious persons withstood the temptation to which they were exposed (compare footnote 60 on p. 863) and remained chaste. Comp. also MHG I, 336, which reads: When Sisera, in a state of intoxication, asked her to submit to his passion, she killed him. The Babylonian Talmud goes much further, and maintains that Jael surrendered herself to Sisera’s passion, as this was the only sure means to get hold of him and kill him; see Yebamot 103a–103b; Nazir 23b; Horayot 10b. *Rimze Haftiarot* quotes a Haggadah to the effect that Jael gave Sisera to drink “the milk of her breast”; comp. Niddah 55b and Tosefta Shabbat 8.24, where this legend is perhaps presupposed. Ps.-Philo, 35; 31.6, reads: And Jael took wine and mingled it with the milk. Similarly MHG, *loc. cit.*, speaks of Sisera’s intoxication, which presupposes that he was served by Jael with something stronger than milk.

86. Ps.-Philo, 34–35; 31.3–7; this was reproduced, in abridged form, by Yerahmeel 58, 172. On the fire of the stars contending for Israel, see notes 72, 81. According to the law, Deut. 22.5, a woman is forbidden to use weapons, and that is the reason why Jael slew Sisera with a hammer, and not with a spear or sword; see Targum Jud. 5.26; *Hadar*, Deut., *loc. cit.*; Mishle 31, 111. This Midrash is the source of Yalkut II, 456, where the first edition refers to מדרש and not to אבכיר as in later editions. Deborah’s words “like women in the tent shall she (Jael) be blessed” (Jud. 5.24) contain the blessing that Jael may be like unto Sarah, Rebekah, Rachel, and Leah (whose tents are mentioned in Scripture; see Gen. 24.67 and 41.33), since if it were not for Jael, the descendants of these four women would have perished by the hand of Sisera; see BR 48.15; Nazir 23b, and parallel passages. Comp. also Targum Jud. 5.24.

87. *I. e.*, תמחה=תמח “may she be destroyed”. The same name was borne by Cain’s wife; ps.-Philo, 1; 2.1. Yerahmeel misread or “emended” the text of ps.-Philo, and has Tamar as the name of Sisera’s mother.

88. Ps.-Philo, according to Yerahmeel 58, 184, while our text of ps.-Philo, 35; 31.8, reads somewhat differently. On the magic of Sisera’s mother, see Zohar III, 119a, and Sabba’, Wa-Yeze, 27d.

89. Yerushalmi quoted by many medieval authors but not found in our texts; comp. R. Hananel in Rosh ha-Shanah (end); *Aruk*, s. v. ערב 1; Manhig 54, No. 21; *Shibbole ha-Leket* 282, No. 301 (end); *Pardes* 42b (bottom). On the “hundred cries”, comp. also WR 27.7; PK 9, 77b, and parallel passages cited by Buber. The connection between the “hundred cries” of Sisera’s mother and the “hundred sounds” of the Shofar, alluded to in Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.*, is obscure and should probably read אמנו שרה instead of אמא דסיסרא; comp. Reifmann in *Or Torah*, 205; Ratner, *Ahawat Zion*, Rosh ha-Shanah 57; footnote 256 on p. 234. Comp. note 92.

90. Ps.-Philo, 35–36; 32.1–17, and a shorter paraphrase in Targumim on Jud. 5.1, *seq.*

91. Ps.-Philo, 37; 33.1–6. According to Seder ‘Olam 12, the forty years of Deborah’s rule included the twenty years of Israel’s subjection to Jabin and Sisera. On the doctrine that the pious who are dead cannot intercede for the living sinners, see text on p. 1159; pp. 127–128 and footnote 118, towards the end, on p. 508. This, however, has nothing to do with the strong faith in the “merits of the fathers”, which ps.-Philo frequently emphasizes. Comp. Index, s. v. “Fathers, Merits of”.

## GIDEON

Elated by the victory over Sisera, Israel sang a hymn of praise, the song of Deborah, and God, to reward them for their pious sentiments, pardoned the transgressions of the people.<sup>92</sup> But they soon slipped back into the old ways, and the old troubles harassed them. Their backsliding was due to the witchcraft of a Midianite priest named Aud. He made the sun shine at midnight, and so convinced the Israelites that the idols of Midian were mightier than God, and God chastised them by delivering them into the hands of the Midianites.<sup>93</sup> They worshipped their own images reflected in the water,<sup>94</sup> and they were stricken with dire poverty. They could not bring so much as a meal offering, the offering of the poor.<sup>95</sup> On the eve of one Passover,



Gideon uttered the complaint: "Where are all the wondrous works which God did for our fathers in this night, when he slew the first-born of the Egyptians, and Israel went forth from slavery with joyous hearts?" God appeared unto him, and said: "Thou who art courageous enough to champion Israel, thou art worthy that Israel should be saved for thy sake."<sup>96</sup>

An angel appeared, and Gideon begged him for a sign, that he would achieve the deliverance of Israel. He excused his petition with the precedent of Moses, the first prophet, who likewise had asked for a sign. The angel bade him pour water on the rock, and then gave him the choice of how he would have the water transformed. Gideon desired to see one-half changed into blood, and one-half into fire. Thus it happened. The blood and the fire mingled with each other, yet the blood did not quench the fire, nor did the fire dry out the blood. Encouraged by this and other signs,<sup>97</sup> Gideon undertook to carry on the war against the Midianites with a band of three hundred God-fearing men, and he was successful. Of the enemy one hundred and twenty thousand corpses covered the field, and all the rest fled precipitately.<sup>98</sup>

Gideon enjoyed the privilege of bringing salvation to Israel because he was a good son. His old father feared to thresh his grain on account of the Midianites, and Gideon once went out to him in the field and said: "Father, thou art too old to do this work; go thou home, and I shall finish thy task for thee. If the Midianites should surprise me out here, I can run away, which thou canst not do, on account of thy age."<sup>99</sup>

The day on which Gideon gained his great victory was during the Passover, and the cake of barley bread that turned the camp of the enemy upside down, of which the Midianite dreamed, was a sign that God would espouse the cause of His people to reward them for bringing a cake of barley bread as an 'Omer offering.<sup>100</sup>

After God had favored Israel with great help through him, Gideon had an ephod made. In the high priest's breast-plate, Joseph was represented among the twelve tribes by Ephraim alone, not by Manasseh, too. To wipe out this slight upon his own tribe, Gideon made an ephod bearing the name of Manasseh. He consecrated it to God, but after his death homage was paid to it as an idol.<sup>101</sup> In those days the Israelites were so addicted to the worship of Beelzebub that they constantly carried small images of this god with them in their pockets, and every now and then they were in the habit of bringing the image forth and kissing it fervently.<sup>102</sup> Of such idolaters were the vain and light fellows who helped Abimelech, the son of Gideon by his concubine from Shechem, to assassinate the other sons of his father. But God is just. As Abimelech murdered his brothers upon a stone, so Abimelech himself met his death through a millstone. It was proper, then, that Jotham, in his parable, should compare Abimelech to a thorn-bush, while he characterized his predecessors, Othniel, Deborah, and Gideon, as an olive-tree, or a fig-tree, or a vine. This Jotham, the youngest of the sons of Gideon, was more than a teller of parables. He knew then that long afterward the Samaritans would claim sanctity for Mount Gerizim, on account of the blessing pronounced from it upon the tribes. For this reason he chose Gerizim from which to hurl his curse upon Shechem and its inhabitants.<sup>103</sup>

The successor to Abimelech equalled, if he did not surpass, him in wickedness. Jair erected an altar unto Baal, and on penalty of death he forced the people to prostrate themselves before it. Only seven men remained firm in the true faith, and refused to the last to commit idolatry. Their names were Deuel, Abi Yisreel, Jekuthiel, Shalom, Ashur, Jehonadab, and Shemi-el.<sup>104</sup> They said to Jair: "We are mindful of the lessons given



us by our teachers and our mother Deborah. 'Take ye heed,' they said, 'that your heart lead you not astray to the right or to the left. Day and night ye shall devote yourselves to the study of the Torah.' Why, then, dost thou seek to corrupt the people of the Lord, saying, 'Baal is God, let us worship him'? If he really is what thou sayest, then let him speak like a god, and we will pay him worship." For the blasphemy they had uttered against Baal, Jair commanded that the seven men be burnt. When his servants were about to carry out his order, God sent the angel Nathaniel, the lord over the fire, and he extinguished the fire, though not before the servants of Jair were consumed by it. Not only did the seven men escape the danger of suffering death by fire, but the angel enabled them to flee unnoticed, by striking all the people present with blindness. Then the angel approached Jair, and said to him: "Hear the words of the Lord ere thou diest. I appointed thee as prince over my people, and thou didst break My covenant, seduce My people, and seek to burn My servants with fire, but they were animated and freed by the living, the heavenly fire. As for thee, thou wilt die, and die by fire, a fire in which thou wilt abide forever."

Thereupon the angel burnt him with a thousand men, whom he had taken in the act of paying homage to Baal.<sup>105</sup>

92. Tehillim 18, 137; Shemuel 19, 135. Compare footnote 58 on p. 562. Ps.-Philo, 37; 32.18, speaks of a great sacrificial festival celebrated by Deborah and the people at Shiloh, after the victory over Sisera. On this occasion "they sounded the broad trumpets", and Deborah said: "This shall be for a testimony of the trumpets between the stars and their Lord." The meaning of the last sentence is not clear, but it seems that ps.-Philo explains the ceremony of sounding the trumpets (the sounding of the Shofar on New Year?) as a memorial of the victory of Israel over Sisera. Comp. the quotation from Yerushalmi in note 89.

93. Ps.-Philo 37; 34.1–5. Comp. Sifre D., 84, where it is said that God will enable the false prophet to cause the

sun and moon to stand still in order to test the strength of Israel's faith.

94. Yelammedenu in *'Aruk*, s. v. **בְּנוֹאָה**, and Yalkut II, 62, where Tan. is given as source; this is, however, not found in our text of the Tanchumas. Comp. Tan. B. I, 138, and note 98.

95. Tehillim 106 (end).

96. Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 62; Zohar Hadash, Noah, 29a. The victory over the Midianites took place on the second night of Passover; see note 100.

97. Ps.-Philo 38; 35.6–7; Yerahmeel 58, 175. On a similar miracle see text on p. 665. With regard to the miracles which, according to Scripture (Jud. 6.37–40), were wrought for Gideon, the following remark should be noted: The first miracle, the non-appearance of the dew upon all the ground, was not performed directly by God, whereas the second one was direct from God. The reason is because God enters into direct connection with good, but not with evil; comp. Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 62; B. I. 138; footnote 9 on p. 2. The Angel who appeared to Gideon looked like a youth; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 6.2. The Haggadah points out that Gideon, in making use of an altar dedicated to an idol and of sacrifices set aside for idolatrous practices, acted contrary to the law (he transgressed no less than seven commands), but he obeyed a special revelation that came to him on this occasion. See Yerushalmi Megillah 1, 72c; WR 22.9; Shemuel 13, 83; Compare footnote 8 on p. 841.

98. Ps.-Philo, 38; 36.1–2, The Haggadah offers several explanations of the water test referred to in Scripture (Jud. 7.5, *seq.*). The sinners of this generation used to worship their own images reflected in the water (see text on p. 871), and accordingly those who "bowed down upon their knees to drink water" betrayed themselves as idolaters by bowing down to worship their images in the water; Yelammedenu in *'Aruk*, s. v. **בְּנוֹאָה** and Yalkut II, 62; somewhat differently Tan. B. I, 183, which reads: "As idolaters they were accustomed to bow down", and they followed their custom while drinking water. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 6.3, God desired to show that He was able to accomplish the defeat of Israel's enemies with a small army of faint-hearted people who were too timid to "bow down and drink water quietly".

99. MHG I, 722–723, and, in a somewhat different form, in the later editions of Yalkut II, 62. This story is found in a Genizah fragment of Tan., and it is very likely that R. Abraham Gedaliah, who inserted this legend in his edition of Yalkut (Leghorn 1656), was in possession of a MS. of Tan. similar to that of the Genizah.

100. PK 8, 71a; PR 18, 92b; WR 27.6. These sources only say that the victory over the Midianites was the reward for the fulfilment of the commandment of the 'Omer; the later sources, however (*Panim Aherim*, 73; the



paitan Yannai in piyyut **ויהי בחצי הלילה** (ובכן ויהי בחצי הלילה), expand this Haggadah, and maintain that this victory was won on the first night of Passover or according to some on the very day on which the 'Omer was brought. See Aggadat Esther 29, where it is stated that the war against the Midianites took place in the month of Elul. Comp. note 83 and footnote 76 on p. 190. MHG I, 722, finds in the "cake of barley, which turned the camp of the enemy upside down," an indication that this victory was gained by Gideon as a reward for his filial piety towards his father, whom, at the risk of being captured by the Midianites (see text on pp. 871–872), he provided with bread of barley. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 6.3, sees in the cake of barley the symbol of Israel's low state. Comp. Sifre N., 8; Sotah 15a; Jerome, Hosea 3.2.

101. Yalkut II, 64 (the source is not given). It is very likely that on account of the making of the Ephod Gideon is disparaged by the Haggadah which considers Gideon, Jephthah, and Samson as the three least worthy of the judges; see Rosh ha-Shanah, Tosefta 2(1).3; Babli 25a–25b. Comp. also Zohar Hadash, Noah, 29a, which reads: Gideon was neither a pious man himself nor the son of a pious man, and yet he was found worthy of being the liberator of Israel, because he pleaded for them to God; see Jud. 6.13–14, and text on p. 872. Very severe is the censure of Gideon in ps.-Philo, 38; 36.3–4, and a reason is given why he was not punished for his idolatry. God said: "...when he (Gideon) destroyed the sanctuary of Baal, then all men said: Let Baal avenge himself. Now, therefore, if I chastize him for the evil he did against Me, ye (men) will say: It was not God who chastized him but Baal because he sinned aforetime against him." For a similar view, see text on p. 966.

102. Shabbat 83b. Comp. also Yerushalmi 9, 11d, and 'Abodah Zarah 3, 43a, where attention is called to the smallness of the images of this idol, which is said to have been of Priapean form. On the sinfulness of this generation, see also Bezah 25b.

103. Tan. B. I, 103. The parable of Jotham is said here to refer to the prominent judges Othniel (=olive-tree), Deborah (=fig-tree), Gideon (=vine), and Elimelech (=bramble). Tan. also states that Abimelech reigned three years, as a reward for the modesty of his father Gideon, who in a "tripartite" sentence refused the royal crown offered him by the people; see Jud. 8.23. Abimelech, in contrast to his father (Jud. 8.27), was very greedy for riches, and his end therefore came speedily; Aggadat Bereshit 26, 54; see also *ibid.*, 52–53, where Abimelech's wickedness and greed are contrasted with the piety and liberality of his namesake Abimelech, the King of Gerar. The ingratitude of the Israelites who permitted Abimelech to murder the children of their benefactor Gideon was counted unto them as though they had forsaken God; ingratitude is as grave a sin as idolatry; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 64. On

the blessings pronounced on Mount Gerizim, see text on p. 843, according to which the blessings were pronounced in the valley, whereas Tan., *loc. cit.*, maintains that they were uttered on the mountain. The reading in Tan. *loc. cit.*, should be **הוא הר גריזים שלנו מבורך**; comp. **טורא בריכא** in BR 32.10, and parallel passages. The name of Abimelech's mother was Drumah, comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 7, 1.

104. Ps.-Philo 39; 38.1–2; Yerahmeel 68, 175. The names of the seven pious men are badly mutilated in ps.-Philo, and not quite correct in Yerahmeel. This legend about Jair and the pious men recalls in many details the story of Abraham as given in ps.-Philo 6–8; 6.16–18. Jair is said to have perished in fire. This is a haggadic interpretation of **בַּקְמֹון** (Jud. 10.5), which is taken to mean "furnace" from **קמין**=**αμύτιον**, of frequent occurrence in the Talmudim and Midrashim.

105. Ps.-Philo, 39, and Yerahmeel 48, 175. The name Nathanel given to the "angel who is over fire" (only in ps.-Philo) is rather strange. Is perhaps Atuniel (from **אֶתוֹנָא** "furnace") to be read? In rabbinic angelology Gabriel is the angel appointed over fire; see Index, s. v. As to Baal, the following statement of Zohar I, 49a, is rather interesting: Baal is the sun; Asherah the moon; the former is the husband, the latter the wife. On the rescue of the pious from the furnace, see Dan. 3.22 and text on p. 160.

## JEPHTHAH

The first judge of any importance after Gideon was Jephthah. He, too, fell short of being the ideal Jewish ruler. His father had married a woman of another tribe, an unusual occurrence in a time when a woman who left her tribe was held in contempt.<sup>106</sup> Jephthah, the offspring of this union, had to bear the consequences of his mother's irregular conduct. So many annoyances were put upon him that he was forced to leave his home and settle in a heathen district.<sup>107</sup>

At first Jephthah refused to accept the rulership which the people offered him in an assembly at Mizpah, for he had not forgotten the wrongs to which he had been subjected. In the end, however, he yielded, and placed himself at the head of the people in the war against Getal,



the king of the Ammonites. At his departure, he vowed before God to sacrifice to Him whatsoever came forth out of the doors of his house to meet him when he returned a victor from the war.

God was angry and said: "So Jephthah has vowed to offer unto me the first thing that shall meet him! If a dog were the first to meet him, would a dog be sacrificed to me? Now shall the vow of Jephthah be visited on his first-born, on his own offspring, yea, his prayer shall be visited on his only daughter. But I assuredly shall deliver my people, not for Jephthah's sake, but for the sake of the prayers of Israel."

The first to meet him after his successful campaign was his daughter Sheilah. Overwhelmed by anguish, the father cried out: "Rightly was the name Sheilah, the one who is demanded, given to thee, that thou shouldst be offered up as a sacrifice. Who shall set my heart in the balance and my soul as the weight, that I may stand and see whether that which happened to me is joy or sorrow? But because I opened my mouth to the Lord, and uttered a vow, I cannot take it back." Then Sheilah spoke, saying: "Why dost thou grieve for my death, since the people was delivered? Dost thou not remember what happened in the days of our forefathers, when the father offered his son as a burnt offering, and the son did not refuse, but consented gladly, and the offerer and the offered were both full of joy? Therefore, do as thou hast spoken. But before I die I will ask a favor of thee. Grant me that I may go with my companions upon the mountains, sojourn among the hills, and tread upon the rocks to shed my tears and deposit there the grief for my lost youth. The trees of the field shall weep for me, and the beasts of the field mourn for me. I do not grieve for my death, nor because I have to yield up my life, but because when my father vowed his heedless vow, he did not have me in mind. I fear, therefore, that I may not be an acceptable sacrifice, and that my

death shall be for nothing." Sheilah and her companions went forth and told her case to the sages of the people, but none of them could give her any help. Then she went up to Mount Telag, where the Lord appeared to her at night, saying unto her: "I have closed the mouth of the sages of my people in this generation, that they cannot answer the daughter of Jephthah a word; that my vow be fulfilled and nothing of what I have thought remain undone. I know her to be wiser than her father, and all the wise men, and now her soul shall be accepted at her request, and her death shall be very precious before My face all the time." Sheilah began to bewail her fate in these words: "Hearken, ye mountains, to my lamentations, and ye hills, to the tears of my eyes, and ye rocks, testify to the weeping of my soul. My words will go up to heaven, and my tears will be written in the firmament. I have not been granted the joy of wedding, nor was the wreath of my betrothal completed. I have not been decked with ornaments, nor have I been scented with myrrh and with aromatic perfumes. I have not been anointed with the oil that was prepared for me. Alas, O mother, it was in vain thou didst give birth to me, the grave was destined to be my bridal chamber. The oil thou didst prepare for me will be spilled, and the white garments my mother sewed for me, the moth will eat them; the bridal wreath my nurse wound for me will wither, and my garments in blue and purple, the worms will destroy them, and my companions will all their days lament over me. And now, ye trees, incline your branches and weep over my youth; ye beasts of the forest, come and trample upon my virginity, for my years are cut off, and the days of my life grow old in darkness."<sup>108</sup>

Her lamentations were of as little avail as her arguments with her father. In vain she sought to prove to him from the Torah that the law speaks only of animal sacrifices, never of human



sacrifices. In vain she cited the example of Jacob, who had vowed to give God a tenth of all the possessions he owned, and yet did not attempt later to sacrifice one of his sons. Jephthah was inexorable. All he would yield was a respite during which his daughter might visit various scholars, who were to decide whether he was bound by his vow. According to the Torah his vow was entirely invalid. He was not even obliged to pay his daughter's value in money. But the scholars of his time had forgotten this Halakah, and they decided that he must keep his vow. The forgetfulness of the scholars was of God, ordained as a punishment upon Jephthah for having slaughtered thousands of Ephraim.

One man there was living at the time who, if he had been questioned about the case, would have been able to give a decision. This was the high priest Phinehas. But he said proudly: "What! I, a high priest, the son of a high priest, should humiliate myself and go to an ignominy!" Jephthah on the other hand said: "What! I, the chief of the tribes of Israel, the first prince of the land, should humiliate myself and go to one of the rank and file!" So only the rivalry between Jephthah and Phinehas caused the loss of a young life. Their punishment did not miss them. Jephthah died a horrible death. Limb by limb his body was dismembered. As for the high priest, the holy spirit departed from him, and he had to give up his priestly dignity.<sup>109</sup>

As it had been Jephthah's task to ward off the Ammonites, so his successor Abdon was occupied with protecting Israel against the Moabites. The king of Moab sent messengers to Abdon, and they spoke thus: "Thou well knowest that Israel took possession of cities that belonged to me. Return them." Abdon's reply was: "Know ye not how the Ammonites fared? The measure of Moab's sins, it seems, is full." With his army of twenty thousand men he went out

against the enemy, slew forty-five thousand of their number, and routed the rest.<sup>110</sup>

---

106. Targum (Tosefta) Jud. 11.1 in Leiria edition, and in Kimhi; comp. also Josephus, V, 7.8, who remarks: They (Jephthah's brethren) cast him off, because he did not have the same mother as the rest, but was born of a strange mother, who was introduced among them by his father's fondness. Did Josephus read זרה instead of זונה in Jud., *loc. cit.*? Of course, it is possible, and even very likely, that Josephus for apologetic reasons did not care to describe a prominent personage in Israel as the son of a γυναικὸς πόρνῃς as the Hebrew זונה is rendered by Septuagint. Our Targum paraphrases it by פונדקיתא ("inn-keeper"); comp. Büchler, *Priester und Cultus*, 63; Krauss, *Lehmwörter*, s. v. פונדקית; footnote 12 on p. 843. That in olden times it was considered improper to marry out of one's tribe is maintained also by Origen, Num. 36.8. This is very likely presupposed also in Ketubot 28b and Yerushalmi 2, 26d. Comp. Freund, *Schwarz-Festschrift*, 180.

107. Yerushalmi Shebi'it 6.36c where the land of Tob is identified with the city of Hippos in the Decapolis. It is on account of the fertility of its soil that it is described in Scripture as "good land". The editions of Targum also have בארעא טבא, but Codex Reuchlin and Kimhi read טוב, in agreement with Septuagint. Ps.-Philo seems to take טוב as the name of a person, and this is also the view suggested by Kimhi. "As each bird seeks its kind, so does man his equal find"; the "vain fellows" who gathered around Jephthah show what kind of a man he was; Baba Kamma 92b. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 7.8, for apologetic reasons (see the preceding note), represents Jephthah in a favorable light, and as a true aristocrat he adds that Jephthah's father was a very prominent personality. The Rabbis, on the other hand, are rather severe in their opinion of this judge; comp. notes 101, 109.

108. Ps.-Philo, 40–42; 39.6–40.4; Yerahmeel 59. 176. On Getal, see note 1. Concerning Isaac's joyful readiness to be brought as a sacrifice, see text on pp. 228–229. Mount Telag or Selac (also written Thelac) is, of course, nothing but Hermon, Hebrew הר שלג, Aramaic טור תלג. Comp. Onkelos on Deut. 3.9, and Sifre N., 131. Accordingly Stelac is a faulty reading, combining the Hebrew form *selac* (=שלג) with the Aramaic *thelac* (=תלג) "snow". What ps.-Philo has to say about the "shutting up of the mouth of the wise" becomes intelligible only in connection with the statement of the Rabbis (comp. the following note) that, were it not for the ignorance of the people, Jephthah's daughter would never have been sacrificed, for his vow was not according to the law. On the text of



ps.-Philo, see the fragment published by James, *Text and Studies*, II, 3.

109. WR 37.4; Br 60.3; Tan. B. III, 112–114; Tan. Behukkotai 5; Koheleth 10.15; Ta'anit 4a; Midrash Tan-naim 100; Sifre D., 148; Targum and Tosefta Targum on Jud. 11.39; PRK 32b; ER 11, 55–57; We-Hizhir, Behukkotai (end). Although Jephthah was severely punished for having slain many thousands of the Ephraimites, they deserved their fate, for they were addicted to idolatry, particularly to the worship of an idol called Sibboleth, which name was so much on their lips that they involuntarily said Sibboleth when they intended to say Shibboleth; Tosefta Targum Jud. 12.6; ER 11, 456. In the last-named source Phinehas is blamed for not having prevented the war between Jephthah and the Ephraimites. He ought to have remonstrated with those proud men who did not intercede in behalf of Jephthah's daughter, though they were ready to go to war for an alleged insult. The view that Jephthah did not offer his daughter as a sacrifice, but merely made her live in seclusion far from all earthly intercourse, devoting herself entirely to the service of God, is first found in the writings of medieval Rabbis (comp., *e. g.*, Kimhi on Jud. 11.39). The midrashic and talmudic literature does not know of this rationalistic view, and it strongly condemns Jephthah and his contemporaries for having offered a human sacrifice. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 7.10, shares the view of the old rabbinic authorities. "Woe unto the wicked and unto those who come near them"; Jephthah, originally a pious man, dwelled among the wicked Ephraimites, and followed their example. They offered human sacrifices to Baal, and he sacrificed his daughter to God. Murder was common among the Ephraimites, and the slaughter of twenty-two thousand men was considered a light thing by Jephthah. The earth refused to receive the corpse of this evil doer, and its decaying parts were found scattered here and there; comp. Alphabet of Ben Sira 4a–4b.—An old legend connects "the poisoning of the water" during the "four turnings of the sun" (*i. e.*, vernal equinox, summer solstice, autumnal equinox, and winter solstice) with the sacrifice of Jephthah's daughter. In the vernal equinox God turned the waters of Egypt into blood (compare footnote 174 on p. 526) and from that time on every year, at the time when the vernal equinox takes place, a drop of blood is thrown into the waters, which poisons them. The same thing happens at the summer solstice, the time when Moses smote the rock, and blood began to flow therefrom (see text on p. 738); at the autumnal equinox, the time when Abraham stretched out his hand to slay Isaac (compare footnote 248 on p. 231) and the knife began to bleed (compare footnote 242 on p. 229); at the winter solstice, the time when Jephthah offered his daughter as a sacrifice, and his knife began to bleed. On these four days of the "turn of the sun" the maidens of Israel went to lament

Jephthah's daughter. According to some authorities, however, the poisoned state of the water during the "four turns of the sun" is due to different causes. At each "turn of the sun" a different angel is appointed over the world, but for a moment "the world remains without a leader", and this is the moment when the change of heavenly officials takes place. Availing himself of this opportunity, Scorpio throws gall and a drop of blood into the water to cause death to mankind. See Mahzor Vitry, supplement 14; *Ginze Yerushalaim* III, 18b; Abudrahim *תקופות סדר*; Aptowitzer in *Ha-Zofeh* II, 122–126; Ginzberg, *ibid.*, III, 184, and IV, 98. In the last-quoted passage attention is called to the myth concerning the weeping for Belti for seven days in the month of Tebeth, as well as to the Jewish legend, according to which Jephthah's daughter was sacrificed and wept for in this month; comp. *Z.D.M.G.*, LXVI, 176.

110. Ps.-Philo, 42; 41.1. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 7.15, on the other hand, maintains that Abdan ruled during a very peaceful time, which did not offer him any opportunity to display his qualities as a warrior.

## SAMSON

The last judge but one, Samson, was not the most important of the judges, but he was the greatest hero of the period and, except Goliath, the greatest hero of all times. He was the son of Manoah of the tribe of Dan, and his wife Zelalponit<sup>111</sup> of the tribe of Judah,<sup>112</sup> and he was born to them at a time when they had given up all hope of having children. Samson's birth is a striking illustration of the short-sightedness of human beings. The judge Ibzan had not invited Manoah and Zelalponit to any of the one hundred and twenty feasts in honor of the marriage of his sixty children, which were celebrated at his house and at the house of their parents-in-law, because he thought that "the sterile she-mule" would never be in a position to repay his courtesy. It turned out that Samson's parents were blessed with an extraordinary son, while Ibzan saw his sixty children die during his lifetime.<sup>113</sup>

Samson's strength was superhuman,<sup>114</sup> and the dimensions of his body were gigantic—he



measured sixty ells between the shoulders. Yet he had one imperfection, he was maimed in both feet.<sup>115</sup> The first evidence of his gigantic strength he gave when he uprooted two great mountains, and rubbed them against each other. Such feats he was able to perform as often as the spirit of God was poured out over him. Whenever this happened, it was indicated by his hair. It began to move and emit a bell-like sound, which could be heard far off. Besides, while the spirit rested upon him, he was able with one stride to cover a distance equal to that between Zorah and Eshtaol.<sup>116</sup> It was Samson's supernatural strength that made Jacob think that he would be the Messiah. When God showed him Samson's latter end, then he realized that the new era would not be ushered in by the hero-judge.<sup>117</sup>

Samson won his first victory over the Philistines by means of the jawbone of the ass on which Abraham had made his way to Mount Moriah. It had been preserved miraculously.<sup>118</sup> After this victory a great wonder befell. Samson was at the point of perishing from thirst, when water began to flow from his own mouth as from a spring.<sup>119</sup>

Besides physical prowess, Samson possessed also spiritual distinctions. He was unselfish to the last degree. He had been of exceeding great help to the Israelites, but he never asked the smallest service for himself.<sup>120</sup> When Samson told Delilah that he was a "Nazarite unto God", she was certain that he had divulged the true secret of his strength. She knew his character too well to entertain the idea that he would couple the name of God with an untruth. There was a weak side to his character, too. He allowed sensual pleasures to dominate him. The consequence was that "he who went astray after his eyes, lost his eyes." Even this severe punishment produced no change of heart. He continued to lead his old life of profligacy in prison, and he

was encouraged thereto by the Philistines, who set aside all considerations of family purity in the hope of descendants who should be the equals of Samson in giant strength and stature.<sup>121</sup>

As throughout life Samson had given proofs of superhuman power, so in the moment of death. He entreated God to realize in him the blessing of Jacob,<sup>122</sup> and endow him with Divine strength.<sup>123</sup> He expired with these words upon his lips: "O Master of the world! Vouchsafe unto me in this life a recompense for the loss of one of my eyes. For the loss of the other I will wait to be rewarded in the world to come." Even after his death Samson was a shield unto the Israelites. Fear of him had so cowed the Philistines that for twenty years they did not dare attack the Israelites.<sup>124</sup>

---

111. Tan. B. IV, 160, and parallel passages cited in footnote 864 on pp. 798–799; Baba Batra 91a; BaR 10.5; Aggadat Bereshit 52, 106–107 (which reads: A miracle was wrought for seven sterile women, and they bore children; they are: Sarah, Rebekah, Leah, Rachel, Hannah, Hazleponit, and Zion); MHG I, 337, says: Hazleponit is one of the twenty-two virtuous women who are praised in the last chapter of Proverbs. Compare footnote 271 on p. 237. The MSS. of the Talmud have Hazleponit, which is very likely the correct reading, since there can be no doubt that the reference is to **הצלפוני** in I Chron. 4.3. The obscure sentence in Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*, **ואחתי נשין** is very likely to be translated: "And sister means the same as wife." The Talmud identifies Etam mentioned in Chron., *loc. cit.*, with Manoah, the father of Samson on the basis of Jud. 15.8, and hence the remark that **ואחיתם הצלפוני** means the same as **ואשתו הצלפוני**, or in Aramaic **נשין ואחתי**. On **נשין** "wife" (secondary form of the plural **נשין**), see Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 22.5. On "sister" = "wife", comp. Song of Songs 4.9–10; Tobit 5.22; Jub. 27.14; Shir 3.11; MHG. I. 341. The explanation given by Gudemann, *Religionsgeschichtliche Studien*, 49–55, of the name Hazleponit and of **נשין** is untenable. BaR, *loc. cit.*, explains this name as "The shadow of God (*i. e.*, the angel) turned to her" (and not to her husband), as it was her piety and virtue which were rewarded with a son like Samson, whereas her husband was an "ignorant man"; comp. BaR and MHG, I, 337; Berakot 61a; Midrash Mishle (end). Josephus, on the other hand (comp. his statement with



regard to Jephthah, notes 106, 107), maintains that Manoah was one of the greatest men of his generation. Ps.-Philo, 42–43, 42.1, enumerates the names of Samson's ancestors up to Dan, the son of Jacob, and it is worthy of note that the judge was the tenth from the patriarch. Samson's mother is called Eluma (עלומה=עלומה), the daughter of Remac. Ps.-Philo knows some other details concerning Samson's parents. Manoah and his wife contended for some time as to who was responsible for their childless union. Finally God heard the prayer of Manoah's wife, and sent to her the angel Phadihel (very likely פחד־יאל, and not פדיאל), who said unto her: "Thou art the barren one . . . but now . . . thou shalt conceive and bear a son, and shalt call his name Samson, for he shall be holy unto the Lord." The etymology of the name Samson as given by ps.-Philo is rather obscure, since there is no Hebrew word meaning "holy" which can in any possible way be connected with the word Samson. Possibly "holy unto the Lord" is an inaccurate rendering of "anointed to the Lord", in allusion to שמן "oil". Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 8.4, explains Samson as "the mighty one", and this is still less satisfactory. The Rabbis, on the other hand, connect this name with שמש "sun", remarking that Samson spread light over his generation like the sun; comp. Sotah 10a (where read, with Makiri on Ps. 84, 61, הַאֵלֶּר בְּדוֹר, which says: Samson received the name of God, as it is written: "For the Lord God is a sun and shield" (Ps. 84.12). Although the angel told Manoah's wife that it was she herself, and not her husband, who was responsible for their childless union, she did not reveal this to Manoah, "for the sake of peace"; BaR 10.5 and 11, 88a; WR 9.9; Derek Erez, Perek ha-Shalom. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 8.2–3, Manoah "was fond of his wife to distraction (he did not divorce her, though she bore him no children; nor did he marry another wife), and was therefore extremely jealous of her. Now when his wife informed him of what the angel, who resembled a young man (comp. note 97), beautiful and tall, had told her, he became beside himself for jealousy." The angel's command to Manoah's wife, "and eat not any unclean thing", was a warning to her not to follow the advice of the women who had counseled her to eat of a hare's stomach as a remedy against sterility. This cure is ascribed to the hare's stomach, because this animal changes its sex: it is a male for a time and then changes into a female. See Tosefata 'Atikata 5.19; *Rimze Haftarot*, Naso; footnote 177 on p. 37. Comp. also Index, s. v. "Hare".—The angels who visited Abraham partook of the food offered to them by the patriarch (compare footnote 143 on p. 205), but the angel who came to Manoah refused. The different attitudes are to be explained in the following manner: The angels visited Abraham as wayfarers, and they revealed the divine message to him only after they had partaken of his food; but this was not the case with the angel who came to Manoah and his

wife. He appeared to them as the bearer of a divine message, and if he had taken anything from them it would have looked like compensation for his service. He said to them: "The prophets of God do not take presents as the false prophets do." BaR 10.5; comp. also ER 12, 60, and Index, s. v. "Angels." What ps.-Philo 43; 42.8, has to say about the angel's refusal to receive gifts is unintelligible to me.

112. BR 98.13 and 99.11; BaR 10.5. Comp. the preceding note with regard to the identification of Samson's mother with Hazleponit in 1 Chron. 4.3, who is described as belonging to the tribe of Judah.

113. Baba Batra 91a; Tosefta-Targum Jud. 12.9. These sources presuppose the identity of Ibzan with Boaz; see note 31 and footnote 3 on p. 911.

114. Sotah 10a. Comp. p. 58. Samson's superhuman strength is presupposed in the haggadic interpretation of כְּאֶחָד (Gen. 49.16), as "like unto the One (=God)". Comp. BR 98.13; Tan. Wa-Yehi 12; Sotah, *loc. cit.* See also note 123.

115. Sotah 10a; Nispahim 44; BaR 14.9. The enormous size of Samson's body is inferred from the fact that he carried the gates of Gaza on his shoulders (see Jud. 16.3), which, "according to tradition measured sixty cubits." Ps.-Philo, 43; 43.4, describes Samson's feat at Gaza in the following terms: One of the gates he held in his right hand as a shield and the other he laid upon his shoulders, and bore it away, and because he had no sword, he pursued the Philistines with it, and killed therewith twenty-five thousand men.

116. Sotah 9b and Yerushalmi 1, 17b; WR 8.2. On the conception that God's holy spirit might manifest itself in man's hair, see BR 4.4 and text on p. 510. The Rabbis speak of Samson as one upon whom God's spirit rested, but do not consider him a prophet. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 8.4, however, does not hesitate to describe him as a prophet.

117. BR 98.13. According to the Haggadah, the blessing given to Dan by Jacob (Gen. 49.16–18) refers to Samson the Danite. See text on p. 408.

118. Tosefta-Targum Jud. 15.15. For other interpretations of this verse, see BR 98.13; 1) a three-day-old ass; 2) a she-ass pregnant with two. For the latter interpretation of חֲמֹר חֲמֵרִים, see also Targum, *ad loc.*

119. BR 98.13. which reads: Samson would have perished even if there were water near him, as he was too exhausted to stretch out his hand; he prayed to God: "Even if I have no other merit than that of being circumcised, whereas the Philistines are not, I ought not to fall into the hands of the uncircumcised." Samson who was proud of his superhuman strength came near dying by thirst, that he might learn that a man's strength avails him nothing without God's help; Josephus *Antiqui.*, V, 8.9. The remark of BR, *loc. cit.*, that "the babblers become thirsty", wishes very likely to convey the same idea as Josephus. The latter's (*loc.*



*cit.*) rationalistic explanation of the miracle narrated in Jud. 15.19, according to which Samson noticed water flowing from a rock, is known also to the Rabbis; comp. BR, *loc. cit.* According to some authorities, however, לחי (Jud., *loc. cit.*) means the “jaw-bone” (of the ass). God said: He likes that which is unclean (Philistine women), and his life shall be saved by the water coming from an unclean thing (the jaw-bone of an ass); Sotah 9b; BaR 9.24.

120. Sotah 10a; BaR 9.24.

121. Sotah 9b–10a (on טחן as a euphemism for sexual intercourse, see also Jerome, Is. 47.2); BaR 9.24. Samson’s parents at first attempted to dissuade him from marrying a Philistine woman, saying to him: “As the fields of the heathen are sown in mixed seeds (this is forbidden in Lev. 19.19), so are their offspring.” Samson, however, did not heed their wise counsel, and married a Philistine woman from Timnah (according to some authorities this place is not identical with Timnah mentioned in Gen. 38.12), with whom he lived only one week, because she betrayed his secret to his companions who pretended to be his friends, while in reality they watched him that he should not attack the Philistines. It is with good reason that Samson, after his first experience of married life, exclaimed: “There is nothing more deceitful than a woman!” (Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 8.6). When, however, the father of the Philistine woman gave her into marriage to another man, Samson became so infuriated at the Philistines for their connivance at the breach of marriage vows (בשבועתן שחזור refers perhaps to the breach of the covenant made between the Philistine Abimelech and Abraham), that he destroyed their fields by means of the torches put between the tails of the foxes; they acted like sly foxes, and their punishment was therefore carried out by foxes. Samson went from bad to worse: He started by marrying a heathen woman, and finished by becoming a captive of a heathen harlot at Gaza. It was therefore at this place that he met his fate at the hands of Delilah, who deserves this name, “she who makes poor”, as it was through her that Samson became poor: he lost his strength, his wisdom, and his piety. See Sotah, Mishnah 1.8 (the sentence, “he who went astray after his eyes lost his eyes”, is found almost verbatim in ps.-Philo, 43, bottom; 43.5); Tosefta 3.15; Babli 9b–10a; Yerushalmi 1, 17b and Ketubot 5, 30b; MHG I, 752; Mekilta Shirah 2, 36a; BR. 52.12; BaR 9.24. “Wine leads to unchastity”, and therefore Samson was commanded to be a Nazirite all his life (on the nature of his form of Naziriteship, see Nazir, Mishnah 1.3–4; Babli 4b), otherwise his conduct would have been still more licentious; BaR 10.5. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 5.11 and 12, attempts to exonerate Samson to some extent. On the vile means employed by Delilah, see Sotah 9b.

122. ויתן לך האלהים (Gen. 27.28) is translated: “And He shall give thee that which is divine.”

123. BR 66.3. Comp. note 115.

124. Yerushalmi Sotah 1, 17b; BaR 9.24; Sotah 10a. On the reading of Babli in Jud. 16.31, see Ratner on Seder ‘Olam 12, and Schnitzer in *Ha-Zofeh* III, 137. According to BR 98.14, the number of the slain by far exceeded three thousand. Scripture (Jud. 16.27) speaks only of those who were in the building which Samson pulled down. There was, however, a vast multitude, much in excess of that number, standing around the building, and they all perished when it fell on them. The same view is shared by ps.-Philo, 44; 43.8, which reads: And the house fell and all that was in it, and slew all those that were round about it, and the number of them was forty thousand men and women. Samson’s last words read in ps.-Philo: “O Lord, God of my fathers, hear me yet this once, and strengthen me that I may die with those Philistines, for the sight of the eyes which they have taken from me was fully given unto me by Thee.” He then added: “Go forth, O my soul, and be not grieved. Die, O my body, and weep not for thyself.”

## THE CRIME OF THE BENJAMITES

A part of the money which Delilah received from the Philistine lords as the price of Samson’s secret, she gave to her son Micah, and he used it to make an idol for himself.<sup>125</sup> This sin was the more unpardonable as Micah owed his life to a miracle performed by Moses. During the times of the Egyptian oppression, if the prescribed number of bricks was not furnished by the Israelites, their children were used as building material. Such would have been Micah’s fate, if he had not been saved in a miraculous way. Moses wrote down the Name of God, and put the words on Micah’s body. The dead boy came to life, and Moses drew him out of the wall of which he made a part.<sup>126</sup> Micah did not show himself worthy of the wonder done for him. Even before the Israelites left Egypt, he made his idol,<sup>127</sup> and it was he who fashioned the golden calf. At the time of Othniel the judge,<sup>128</sup> he took up his abode at a distance of not more than three miles from the sanctuary at



Shiloh,<sup>129</sup> and won over the grandson of Moses<sup>130</sup> to officiate as priest before his idol.

The sanctuary which Micah erected harbored various idols. He had three images of boys, and three of calves, one lion, an eagle, a dragon, and a dove. When a man came who wanted a wife, he was directed to appeal to the dove. If riches were his desire, he worshipped the eagle. For sons he addressed himself to the boy images; for sons and daughters both, to the calves; to the lion for strength, and to the dragon for long life. Sacrifices and incense alike were offered to these idols, and both had to be purchased with cash money from Micah, seven didrachms for a sacrifice, and one for incense.<sup>131</sup>

The rapid degeneration in the family of Moses may be accounted for by the fact that Moses had married the daughter of a priest who ministered to idols. Yet, the grandson of Moses was not an idolater of ordinary calibre. His sinful conduct was not without a semblance of morality. From his grandfather he had heard the rule that a man should do "Abodah Zarah" for hire rather than be dependent upon his fellow-creatures. The meaning of "Abodah Zarah" here naturally is "strange", in the sense of "unusual" work, but he took the term in its ordinary acceptance of "service of strange gods".<sup>132</sup> So far from being a whole-souled idolater, he adopted methods calculated to harm the cause of idol worship. Whenever any one came leading an animal with the intention of sacrificing it, he would say: "What good can the idol do thee? It can neither see nor hear nor speak." But as he was concerned about his own livelihood, and did not want to offend the idolaters too grossly, he would continue: "If thou bringest a dish of flour and a few eggs, it will suffice." This offering he would himself eat.

Under David he filled the position of treasurer. David appointed him because he thought that a man who was willing to become priest to

an idol only in order to earn his bread, must be worthy of confidence. However sincere his repentance may have been, he relapsed into his former life when he was removed from his office by Solomon, who filled all positions with new incumbents at his accession to the throne. Finally he abandoned his idolatrous ways wholly, and became so pure a man that he was favored by God with the gift of prophecy. This happened on the day on which the man of God out of Judah came to Jeroboam, for the grandson of Moses is none other than the old prophet at Beth-el who invited the man of God out of Judah to come to his house.<sup>133</sup>

The mischief done by Micah spread further and further. Especially the Benjamites distinguished themselves for their zeal in paying homage to his idols. God therefore resolved to visit the sins of Israel and Benjamin upon them. The opportunity did not delay to come. It was not long before the Benjamites committed the outrage of Gibeah. Before the house of Bethac, a venerable old man, they imitated the disgraceful conduct of the Sodomites before the house of Lot. When the other tribes exacted amends from the Benjamites, and were denied satisfaction, bloody combats ensued. At first the Benjamites prevailed, in spite of the fact that the Urim and Thummim questioned by Phinehas had encouraged the Israelites to take up the conflict, with the words: "Up to war, I shall deliver them into your hands." After the tribes had again and again suffered defeat, they recognized the intention of God, to betray them as a punishment for their sins. They therefore ordained a day of fasting and convocation before the holy Ark, and Phinehas the son of Eleazar entreated God in their behalf: "What means this, that Thou ledest us astray? Is the deed of the Benjamites right in Thine eyes? Then why didst Thou not command us to desist from the combat? But if what our brethren have done is evil in Thy sight, then



why dost Thou cause us to fall before them in battle? O God of our fathers, hearken unto my voice. Make it known this day unto Thy servant whether the war waged with Benjamin is pleasing in Thine eyes, or whether thou desirest to punish Thy people for its sins. Then the sinners among us will amend their ways. I am mindful of what happened in the days of my youth, at the time of Moses. In the zeal of my soul I slew two for the sin of Zimri, and when his well-wishers sought to kill me, Thou didst send an angel, who cut off twenty-four thousand of them and delivered me. But now eleven of Thy tribes have gone forth to do Thy bidding, to avenge and slay, and, lo, they have themselves been slain, so that they are made to believe that Thy revelations are lying and deceitful. O Lord, God of our forefathers, naught is hidden before Thee. Make it manifest why this misfortune has overtaken us.”

God replied to Phinehas at great length, setting forth why eleven tribes had suffered so heavily. The Lord had wanted to punish them for having permitted Micah and his mother Delilah to pursue their evil ways undisturbed, though they were zealous beyond measure in avenging the wrong done to the woman at Gibeah. As soon as all those had perished who were guilty of having aided and abetted Micah in his idolatrous practices, whether directly or indirectly, God was willing to help them in their conflicts with the Benjamites.

So it came. In the battle fought soon after, seventy-five thousand Benjamites fell slain. Only six hundred of the tribe survived.<sup>134</sup> Fearing to remain in Palestine, the small band emigrated to Italy and Germany.<sup>135</sup>

At the same time the punishment promised them by God overtook the two chief sinners. Micah lost his life by fire, and his mother rotted alive; worms crawled from her body.<sup>136</sup>

In spite of the great mischief caused by Micah, he had one good quality, and God permitted it to plead for him when the angels stood up against him as his accusers. He was extremely hospitable. His house always stood wide open to the wanderer, and to his hospitality he owed it that he was granted a share in the future world.<sup>137</sup> In hell Micah is the first in the sixth division, which is under the guidance of the angel Hadriel, and he is the only one in the division who is spared hell tortures.<sup>138</sup> Micah's son was Jero-boam, whose golden calves were sinful far beyond anything his father had done.<sup>139</sup>

In those days God spake to Phinehas: “Thou art one hundred and twenty years old, thou hast reached the natural term of man's life. Go now, betake thyself to the mountain Danaben, and remain there many years. I will command the eagles to sustain thee with food, so that thou returnest not to men until the time when thou lockest fast the clouds and openest them again. Then I will carry thee to the place where those are who were before thee, and there thou wilt tarry until I visit the world, and bring thee thither to taste of death.”<sup>140</sup>

---

125. Ps.-Philo 44; 44.2; Tosefta-Targum Jud. 17.2; a quotation from an unknown Midrash in Rashi and Kimhi, *ad loc.* There can be no doubt that in ps.-Philo, *l. c.*, we ought to read Delila instead of Dedila. Ps.-Philo has a very strange statement to the effect that this Dedila or Delila was not only the mother of Micah but also of Heliu *i. e.*, Eli. According to Eldad, 4–5, the descendants of Samson from his marriage (?) with Delilah live among the Danites (compare with p. 983), and are distinguished by their gigantic strength and great valor. Their war-cry is: “Salvation belongeth unto the Lord; Thy strength over Thy people, the tribes of Jeshurun, Selah.” The text, however, is not quite clear, and this war-cry is probably that of the Danites, and not of the descendants of Samson. Compare also footnote 27 on p. 915.

126. Tan. Ki-Tissa 19 (on children as building material, see text on p. 467); Sanhedrin 101b (see Rashi on **בבנין** **נתימך**; Alphabet of Ben Sira 4d; Shu'aib, *Hadar*, and



Ziyyoni on Exod. 32.4, *seq.* According to another version of this legend, Micah stole the silver plate by means of which Moses had made Joseph's coffin come to the surface of the water (compare with on p. 429; text on p. 621), and employed it first to fashion the golden calf, and later to make a graven image; *Teshubot Hakme Zarefat*, 42, No. 67; Ziyyoni, *loc. cit.* The latter quotes from Midrash Shir ha-Shirim (not found in any of the three Midrashim on Song of Songs), still another legend about Micah's share in the fashioning of the golden calf. Comp. the following two notes and footnote 266 on p. 621. See also ShR 41.1.

127. Mekilta Bo 14, 16a. For a full discussion of this point, compare footnote 72 on p. 565. The Mekilta and many other sources presuppose that Micah's activity took place shortly after the death of Joshua. Comp. the following note and note 136.

128. Seder 'Olam 12, which reads: In the days of Cushan-Rishathaim Micah set up the graven image (comp. Jud. 3.8, *seq.*). This, of course, does not preclude the possibility that Micah made this image in Egypt. On his share in the fashioning of the golden calf, see note 126, and footnote 72 on p. 565.

129. Sanhedrin 103b reads: From Gareb to Shiloh is a distance of three miles, and the smoke of the holy altar at Shiloh mingled with the smoke proceeding from the altar erected by Micah to his graven image at Gareb. This occurs also in Aggadat Bereshit 49, 100; PR 29, 137b. The statement about Gareb is rather puzzling, as this locality is in the neighborhood of Jerusalem, not of Shiloh. The Talmud *l. c.* adds: the angels wished his doom but God said to them, "Leave him; his bread is offered to the wayfarers."

130. Tosefta Sanhedrin 14.7–8; Baba Batra 109b; Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 13d; Shir 2.5; ARN 24, 99. In all these sources the Levite mentioned in Jud. 17.7 is identified with Jonathan of 18.30. The suspended Nun in Jud. 18.30 is accordingly explained in these sources in the following manner: This priest of the graven image was a grandson of Moses; but out of respect for the great prophet, he is described, by means of the suspended Nun, as the grandson of Manasseh, to whom he was related through their kindred actions, both having been idolaters. See Blau, *Masoretische Untersuchungen*, 46–49. Comp. also the references cited in note 133. This priest was not only a grandson of Moses on his paternal side, but on his maternal side, too, he was of prominent descent, as his mother belonged to the tribe of Judah. He is therefore described in the very same scriptural verse (Jud. 17.7) as a Levite and Judean. The soundness of the rule that "children take after their mother's brothers" can be proved by the difference between the descendants of Moses and those of Aaron. The latter married the sister of Nahshon, the prince of Judah, and his descendants were priests and high priests unto the Lord; but the former married the sister of idolaters (the

sons of Jethro), and his grandson was a priest of Micah's graven image; Baba Batra 109b–110a.

131. Ps.-Philo, 44; 44.2–9; Yerahmeel 59, 180. The first source contains also a lengthy Midrash showing how Israel, by worshipping Micah's graven image, transgressed all the ten commandments. The statement of Yerahmeel that Micah's activity took place in the days of the judge Abdon agrees neither with the view of the Rabbis, nor with that of ps.-Philo. Comp. notes 125, 127, 128, and 136.

132. Baba Batra 109b; Tosefta-Targum Jud. 18.18. Comp. also the references cited in the following note.

133. Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 13d; Sanhedrin 10, 30b–30c; Shir 2.5; Baraita de-Yeshua 46b; Alphabet of Ben Sira 4b. The first three sources quote also a different view to the effect that Amaziah the priest of Beth-el (Amos 7.10) is identical with the "old prophet" of Beth-el (1 Kings 13.11, *seq.*). As to the man of God out of Judah (*ibid.* 14.1), the prevalent opinion is that he was none other than the prophet Iddo (2 Chron. 12.15 and 13.22); comp. Seder 'Olam 10; Tosefta Berakot 10.19; Sifre D., 177; Midrash Tannaim 112; Sanhedrin 89a–89b; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 8.5. נביאי הבעל (Sanhedrin 104a) refers perhaps to Amaziah the priest of Beth-el. Comp. also Targum 1 Chron. 26.24, which is entirely dependent on Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.* In Alphabet of Ben Sira, *loc. cit.*, "the priest of Micah" is confounded with Micah himself, who is thus said to have been the priest of Beth-el.

134. Ps.-Philo, 44; 45–47, and, in abridged form, Yerahmeel 59, 180–181. It is very strange that in ps.-Philo the crime of the Benjamites is transferred from Gibeah to Nob. When the man of the tribe of Levi came to Gibeah, he desired to abide there, as the sun had set; but the inhabitants of this place did not suffer him to lodge in their midst. He was therefore obliged to proceed to Nob, where hospitality was offered to him by Bethac (on this name, see footnote 26 on p. 891) who, like himself, was of the tribe of Levi. The rabbinic sources know of no direct connection between the sin of Micah and the calamity that befell Israel in consequence of the crime of the Benjamites. They do, however, maintain that both events took place about the same time; according to some, Micah's graven image was set up on the very same day on which the war against the Benjamites began, that is, on the twenty-third of Shebat, which, in that year, fell on a Sabbath. See Seder 'Olam 12, and Ratner, note 9, as well as Esther R. 37.7. It is also said that the defeats suffered by the other tribes, in their campaign against the tribe of Benjamin, was their punishment for "having gone to war to avenge the honor of a woman, while they paid no heed to God's honor, which was outraged by Micah and his followers." See Sanhedrin 103b; PRE 48. Comp. further Yerushalmi Yoma 1, 38c; Megillah 1, 72a, where Phinehas' indifference towards the "crime of the Benjamites" is unfavorably contrasted with



his zeal displayed in his early career. A similar remark is found in ER 11, 56–57, where the Synedion and the high priest Phinehas are held responsible for the death of the several thousands who fell in the war with the Benjamites. The crime which caused the war would never have been perpetrated if they, the leaders of the people, had done their duty and not neglected the moral education of Israel. There is also a view to the effect that the Israelites addressed themselves first to the idols for counsel (אלהים in Jud. 20.18, *seq.*, is taken to mean “gods”, not “God”), and therefore suffered defeat; but when they called upon God, victory was granted them. Attention is also drawn to the difference in the answers given by God to Israel. The first and second answers did not contain any promise of help and assistance from God; hence the defeats of Israel. But the third answer was: “Go up, for to-morrow I will deliver him into thy hand”; and God fulfilled His promise. See Shebu’ot 35b; Soferim 4.17. That the first two answers were not favorable was due to the fact that they were addressed to God by one who was not worthy of performing the ceremony of inquiring of the Urim and Tummim; the last answer was favorable because the question was asked by the pious Phinehas; see Hasidim 122. The men who fell in the war to avenge the outraged and murdered woman deserved their fate; the woman, too, deserved her death, for she had at one time broken faith with her husband by sinning with the Amalekites; it was for this reason that God delivered her into the hands of sinners; ps.-Philo, 46; 45.3. The Rabbis are by far more considerate of the poor woman, and maintain that it was all the fault of her husband who was of a very harsh nature, so that his wife could not bear his treatment any longer and ran away from him. Thus his history “teaches us that one must not attempt to overawe the members of his family”, for this man’s severity led to bloodshed, unchastity, and desecration of the Sabbath; Gittin 6b; Targum Jud. 19.2 (on the text of Targum, see Nahmanides in his commentary on Gittin, who writes: **וְתִזְנֶה... לְשׁוֹן מִזֶּן וְיוֹנֵתָן תִּירָגַם**; Ratner on Seder ‘Olam 12; note 9. On the desecration of the Sabbath as the cause—not the effect—of this calamity, comp. the Midrash fragment in *J. Q. R.* New Series, VIII, 132.

135. Midrash quoted by Kimhi, Jud. 20.5. The reading **גרמניא**, “Germany”, is not certain, as some texts have **רומניא** “Romania” (Byzantium, or the Roman Empire?). For a full discussion of this legend comp. Brüll, *Jahrbücher*, IV, 34–40. A haggadic interpretation of **רמון** (Jud. 20.46) as Romania is perhaps the origin of the widespread legend among the Jews of the Middle Ages that the fleeing Benjamites settled in Romania. ps.-Philo, 48; 57.11, gives the names of the Benjamite clans and their chiefs who escaped death. The other tribes first decided to exclude the tribe of Benjamin from Israel; but changed their minds, for they found in Scripture an indication that

it was God’s will that Israel should consist of twelve tribes; see Yerushalmi Ta’anit 4, 69c; BR 84.4; Ekah, introduction, 33, 36. In these sources, as well as in Babli, Ta’anit 30b, and Baba Batra 116a, the great popular feast on the fifteenth of Ab is said to have originally been celebrated to commemorate the day (it was the fifteenth of Ab) on which Benjamin was re-admitted into the community of Israel. To enable the handful of Benjamites to develop normally, it became necessary to change some old laws of inheritance; Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*, and Midrash Aggadah, Num. 36.4. The punishment meted out to the inhabitants of Jabesh-Gilead (comp. Jud. 21.5, *seq.*) was well merited. After the disastrous defeats sustained by the other tribes at the hands of the Benjamites, they threw themselves before the holy ark, and repented of their sins, whereupon God’s grace turned to them. All Israelites were called to arms under threat of excommunication, and all responded to the call, with the exception of the inhabitants of Jabesh-Gilead. These were excommunicated, and death was their punishment. See PRE 38; Tan. Wa-Yesheb 2; *Orehot Hayyim*, II, 509. As to the means by which they ascertained which of the women of Jabesh-Gilead were virgins, who should thus escape death (Jud. 21.11–12), see Yebamot 60b and text on p. 797. The festival on which the Benjamites went up to Shiloh and captured wives (Jud. 21.19) was Passover; see ps.-Philo, 48; 48.2. This is an interesting example of the use of midrashic Haggadah by this author, as it is based upon the hermeneutic rule of analogy **שוה גזרה** according to which **ימימים ימימה** (Jud., *loc. cit.*) has the same meaning as in Exod. 13.10, where it undoubtedly refers to Passover. See Targum and Kimhi on Jud., *ad loc.*; Menahot 36b; Mekilta RS, 34; footnote 9 on p. 888.

136. Ps.-Philo, 45; 44.9, and 48; 47.12. On the view that blasphemers and other grave sinners are punished by being eaten up alive by worms, see footnote 552 on p. 716 and vol. VI, p. 242, note 106. This author is obviously of the opinion that Micah’s activity and the “crime of the Benjamites” took place towards the end of the period of the judges, whereas the Rabbis and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 8.2, maintain that they occurred at the beginning of that period. Comp. notes 127, 134. See also ER 11, 57, which reads: In Scripture the crime of Gibeah is given at the end of the history dealing with the times of the judges, that the Gentiles should not say: The Israelites were already morally corrupt when they entered Palestine.

137. Sanhedrin 103b; Alphabet of Ben Sira 4d.

138. Konen 31. Nahmanides, Sha’ar ha-Gemul. 97c, reads Psoiel (from **פסל**, Micah’s graven image) instead of Hadriel.

139. Sanhedrin 101b. Here also it is said that the rebel Sheba the son of Bichri is none other than Micah. Compare with p. 981.



140. Ps.-Philo, 48; 48.1; Yerahmeel 59, 180. Danabben is undoubtedly a corrupt reading, though it is hard to suggest the correct form of this name. It may be a corruption of Lebanon, Abarim, or some other word. Ps.-Philo is the oldest source for the widespread legend which identifies Phinehas with Elijah; see footnote 803 on p. 783 and footnote 3 on p. 993. Of interest is ps.-Philo's statement

that Phinehas-Elijah (and, of course, all other "immortals") will "taste death" in the time to come. The same view is also shared by 4 Ezra, 7.29; comp. also vol. V, 21, note 61 (end) with regard to the disappearance of the angels before the creation of the new world. According to the Septuagint (Josh., end), the death and burial of Phinehas are recorded in Scripture.







## XIV SAMUEL AND SAUL

### ELKANAH AND HANNAH

The period of the Judges is linked to the period of the Kingdom by the prophet Samuel, who anointed both Saul and David as kings. Not only was Samuel himself a prophet, but his forebears also had been prophets,<sup>1</sup> and both his parents, Elkanah and Hannah, were endowed with the gift of prophecy.<sup>2</sup> Aside from this gift, Elkanah possessed extraordinary virtues. He was a second Abraham, the only pious man of his generation, who saved the world from destruction when God, made wroth by the idolatry of Micah, was on the point of annihilating it utterly.<sup>3</sup> His chief merit was that he stimulated the people by his example to go on pilgrimages to Shiloh, the spiritual centre of the nation. Accompanied by his whole household, including kinsmen, he was in the habit of making the three prescribed pilgrimages annually, and though he was a man of only moderate means,<sup>4</sup> his retinue was equipped with great magnificence. In all the towns through which it passed, the procession caused commotion. The lookers-on invariably inquired into the reason of the rare spectacle, and Elkanah told them: "We are going to the house of the Lord at Shiloh, for thence comes forth the law. Why should you not join us?"

Such gentle, persuasive words did not fail of taking effect. In the first year five households undertook the pilgrimage, the next year ten, and so on until the whole town followed his example. Elkanah chose a new route every year. Thus he touched at many towns, and their inhabitants were led to do a pious deed.<sup>5</sup>

In spite of his God-fearing ways, Elkanah's domestic life was not perfectly happy. He had been married ten years, and his union with Hannah had not been blessed with offspring.<sup>6</sup> The love he bore his wife compensated him for his childlessness, but Hannah herself insisted upon his taking a second wife. Peninnah embraced every opportunity of vexing Hannah. In the morning her derisive greeting to Hannah would be: "Dost thou not mean to rise and wash thy children, and send them to school?"<sup>7</sup> Such jeers were to keep Hannah mindful of her childlessness. Perhaps Peninnah's intentions were laudable: she may have wanted to bring Hannah to the point of praying to God for children.<sup>8</sup> However it may have been forced from her, Hannah's petition for a son was fervent and devout. She entreats God: "Lord of the world! Hast Thou created aught in vain? Our eyes Thou hast destined for sight, our ears for hearing, our mouth for speech, our nose to smell therewith, our



hands for work. Didst Thou not create these breasts above my heart to give suck to a babe?<sup>9</sup> O grant me a son, that he may draw nourishment therefrom. Lord, Thou reignest over all beings, the mortal and the heavenly beings. The heavenly beings neither eat nor drink, they do not propagate themselves, nor do they die, but they live forever. Mortal man eats, drinks, propagates his kind, and dies. If, now, I am of the heavenly beings, let me live forever. But if I belong to mortal mankind, let me do my part in establishing the race.”<sup>10</sup>

Eli the high priest, who at first misinterpreted Hannah's long prayer, dismissed her with the blessing: “May the son to be born unto thee acquire great knowledge in the law.”<sup>11</sup> Hannah left the sanctuary, and at once her grief-furrowed countenance changed. She felt beyond a doubt that the blessing of Eli would be fulfilled.<sup>12</sup>

1. Megillah 13a. On Samuel as the descendant of Korah, whose sons were prophets, see Seder 'Olam 20, and Ratner, *ad loc.*; text on pp. 724 and 726–727. According to PR 43, 181b, Tohu, the great grandfather of Elkanah, is none other than the psalmist Asaph. On the many haggadic interpretations of Ramathaim-Zophim and Ephraim (1 Sam. 1.1), see Shemuel 1, 44–45; WR 2.3; Ruth R. 1.2; PRE 45; Targum 1 Sam. 1.1 (צופים=prophets, in accordance with Megillah *loc. cit.*); ps.-Jerome and Ephraem on 1 Sam. 1.1. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenu.*, 12–13, and Kellermann, *Der Midrasch zum 1 Buche Samuelis*, 7–12.

2. Seder 'Olam 20 and 21; Megillah 14a. Comp. also Shemuel 1, 45, and note 28. The name of Hannah's father was Batuel (Bethuel); ps.-Philo, 51; 61.6.

3. Aggadat Bereshit 49, 100–101. See also Shemuel 1, 44; BaR 10.5, which reads: Elkanah was equal in importance to thirty-one pious men. On a lengthy legend concerning Elkanah in ps.-Philo, see note 17.

4. “A man of moderate means” is found only in Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 16.2. This is perhaps a haggadic interpretation of הרמתים (1 Sam. 1.1), “between the heights”. Comp. Megillah 14a, and references given in note 1.

5. ER 7, 47–48; Koheleth 5.19; Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 14; PR 43, 179a (which reads: Hannah used to go up to the sanctuary for prayer); Shemuel 1, 45; Targum and

ps.-Jerome on 1 Sam. 1.3. The last mentioned Midrash points out that prayer is vastly superior to sacrifices, and therefore maintains that Elkanah's purpose in visiting the sanctuary was to pray there. On the meaning of מימים ימימה, see also note 9.

6. PR 43, 181a; ER 18, 99. According to the law (Mishnah Yebamot 6, end), ten years of married life without children is a ground for divorce or gives the husband the right to take a second wife. The Rabbis who looked with disfavor on polygamy attempt therefore to explain why the pious Elkanah had two wives; comp. PR 43, 181b; Shemuel 1, 45; Aggadat Bereshit 49, 101.

7. PR 43, 181b; Shemuel 1, 45–46. On the conception that barren women may change their unfortunate state by self-denial, see text on p. 286. Peninnah's taunting words read in ps.-Philo, 49–50, 51.1–2, as follows: “What profiteth it thee that Elkanah thy husband loveth thee? But thou art a dry tree. I know moreover that he will love me, because he delighteth to see my sons standing around him like the planting of an olive-yard ... A woman is not indeed beloved, even if her husband love her for her beauty. Let not Anna therefore boast herself of her beauty; but he that boasteth let him boast when he sees his seed before his face; and when it is not so among women, even the fruit of their womb, then shall love become of no account. For what profit was it unto Rachel that Jacob loved her? Except that there have been given unto her the fruit of her womb, surely his love would have been to no purpose.” On the several interpretations of מנות ואפים (1 Sam 1.4–5) given by the Haggadah, see PR 43, 182a; Shemuel 1, 46; Targum and ps. Jerome, *ad loc.* Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenu.*, 14–15, and Kellermann, *Midrasch zum 1 Buche Samuelis*, 20–21.

8. Baba Batra 16a; PR 43, 182b. A less favorable opinion of Peninnah is expressed by the sources referred to in the preceding note and in note 22.

9. Berakot 31b; MHG I, 391–392. In ps.-Philo, 50; 50.4, the prayer of Hannah reads: Hast not Thou, O Lord, examined the heart of all generations before Thou formedst the world? But what is the womb that is born open, or what one that is shut up dieth, except Thou will it? And now let my prayer go up before Thee this day, lest I go down hence empty. For thou knowest my heart, how I have walked before Thee from the days of my youth. The last sentence is a combination of 2 Kings 20.3 and 1 Kings 18.12. Other versions of Hannah's prayer are found PR 43, 179b–180a; Shemuel 1, 48 and 49; PRK (Grünhut's edition, 42a; here עלילה, “ruse”, amounts to ואם לאו ונר ונר of the parallel passages); Aggadat Bereshit 19, 60. The last-named Midrash takes the “memorable day” (1 Sam. 1.4) to refer to the day of Passover which is spoken of in the preceding verse as מימים ימימה, in accordance with the use of that phrase in Exod. 13.10 The same



view is shared by ps.-Philo, 49–50; 50.2, which reads: *Die bono paschae* (a Hebraism=פסח טוב של יום); whereas Shemuel 1, 46, maintains that it was “the Feast of Weeks”, the only one of the “three festivals” consisting of one day, and is therefore described as “the day”. On מימים ימימה as the term for Passover, see footnote 135 (end) on p. 882. Comp. also references cited in note 5.

10. PR 43, 179b; Shemuel 1, 48–49. Aggadat Bereshit 52, 106. On the statement in Shemuel that Hannah was the first to call God “the Lord of hosts”, see also Shemuel 9, 75, and Berakot 31b.

11. Shemuel 2, 51–52. According to ps.-Philo 52; 50.7–8, Eli assured her that her prayer was heard, as he was acquainted with the prophecy concerning the birth of Samuel; but he did not tell her that it had been foreordained that she should give birth to a prophet; comp. note 17. Hannah’s prayer is considered by the Rabbis to have been “correct and in accordance with the regulations concerning prayer” (=Amidah). The reason why Eli thought her drunk was because she came to prayer straight from a festival banquet. Comp. Berakot 31a; Shemuel 2, 50–51. According to ps.-Philo 50; 50.5–6, Hannah did not pray aloud, as all men do, because she thought: “Perchance I am not worthy to be heard, and it shall be that Peninnah will taunt and reproach me yet more (*plus me zelans impropere mihi Phenenna*)” is a faulty translation of פנינה לקנאני (ותוסף), as she daily saith: Where is thy God in whom thou trustest?” Her praying in a low voice and the way she deported herself at prayer caused Eli to say to her: “Go, put away thy wine from thee.” The Rabbis, on the other hand, maintain that one must follow the example of Hannah, and pray (the Amidah) in a low voice. Comp. Talmud and Midrash as quoted above. See, however, *Hilluf Minhagin*, No. 43, 40, where it is said that the saying of the Amidah in a low voice is a Babylonian custom, whereas in Palestine it is uttered aloud. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 10.2, is of the opinion that it was the length of Hannah’s prayer which made Eli suspect that she was drunk. Comp. the similar statement Yerushalmi Berakot 4, 7b, and Shemuel 3, 72.

12. Shemuel 2, 52; comp., however, ps.-Philo, 50; 50.2, where Hannah’s beauty is highly praised.

## THE YOUTH OF SAMUEL

**H**annah’s prayer was heard. At the end of six months and a few days<sup>13</sup> Samuel was born to her, in the nineteenth year of her married life,<sup>14</sup> and the one hundred and thirtieth of her age.<sup>15</sup> Samuel was of a frail constitution,<sup>16</sup>

and required tender care and nurture. For this reason he and his mother could not accompany Elkanah on his pilgrimages. Hannah withheld her boy from the sanctuary for some years. Before Samuel’s birth a voice from heaven had proclaimed that in a short time a great man would be born, whose name would be Samuel. All men children of that time were accordingly named Samuel. As they grew up, the mothers were in the habit of getting together and telling of their children’s doings, in order to determine which of them satisfied the expectations the prophecy had aroused. When the true Samuel was born, and by his wonderful deeds excelled all his companions, it became plain to whom the word of God applied.<sup>17</sup> His preeminence now being undisputed, Hannah was willing to part with him.

The following incident is an illustration of Samuel’s unusual qualities manifested even in infancy. He was two years old when his mother brought him to Shiloh to leave him there permanently. An occasion at once presented itself for the display of his learning and acumen, which were so great as to arouse the astonishment of the high priest Eli himself. On entering the sanctuary Samuel noticed that they were seeking a priest to kill the sacrificial animal. Samuel instructed the attendants that a non-priest was permitted to kill the sacrifice. The high priest Eli appeared at the moment when, by Samuel’s directions, the sacrifice was being killed by a non-priest. Angered by the child’s boldness, he was about to have him executed, regardless of Hannah’s prayer for his life. “Let him die,”<sup>18</sup> he said, “I shall pray for another in his place.” Hannah replied: “I lent him to the Lord. Whatever betide, he belongs neither to thee nor to me, but to God.”<sup>19</sup> Only then, after Samuel’s life was secure, Hannah offered up her prayer of thanksgiving. Beside the expression of her gratitude, it contains also many prophecies regarding Samuel’s future achievements, and it



recites the history of Israel from the beginning until the advent of Messiah.<sup>20</sup> Her prayer incidentally brought relief to the Sons of Korah. Since the earth had swallowed them, they had been constantly sinking lower and lower. When Hannah uttered the words, "God bringeth down to Sheol, and bringeth up,"<sup>21</sup> they came to a standstill in their downward course.

Hannah was spared to witness, not only the greatness of her son, but also the undoing of her rival. Every time Hannah bore a child, Peninnah lost two of hers, until eight of her ten children had died, and she would have had to surrender all, had not Hannah interceded for her with prayer.<sup>22</sup>

---

13. Rosh ha-Shanah 11a (here it is assumed that Hannah's prayer in the sanctuary took place on Passover; comp. note 9); Shemuel 3, 52. Like Samuel, Isaac, too, was a "seventh-month child" (Rosh ha-Shanah, *loc. cit.*), and "for this reason every child brought forth in the seventh month shall live, because upon him (Isaac) did God call His glory, and showed forth the new age"; ps.-Philo 24; 23.8. Another seventh-month child was Ichabod, the grandson of Eli; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 11.4. According to MHG II, 13, all prophets were seventh-month children. Compare footnote 44 on p. 476.

14. PR 43, 181a; ER 18, 99. Comp. note 6.

15. Shemuel 3, according to the reading of Yalkut II, 80 (1 Sam. 1, end). It is, however, possible that the reference אגדת שמואל (so ed. princeps) in Yalkut belongs to the preceding sentence. *Rimze Haftarat*, Rosh ha-Shanah 1, reads: A miracle was wrought for her, as for Abraham and Sarah, and she gave birth to a child when she was old. Each woman who enters into a holy union (not to satisfy the desires of the body) receives a pious son for her reward, as may be seen from the history of Hannah; Tan. B. IV, 31.

16. Hagigah 6a.

17. Shemuel 3, 52. Comp. also *Rimze Haftarat*, Rosh ha-Shanah 1, where the name Samuel is explained as שמו של אל עליון, which very likely means: "his name is given to him by the Most High God" and not "his name is the same as that of the Most High God". Here it is likewise presupposed that not only the birth of the prophet, but also his name was made known by God. An amplified form of this legend is given by ps.-Philo 49, 51, 53; 49.1, 51.1–2. At the end of the period of the judges the people began to

inquire of the Lord, and said: "Let us cast lots, that we may see whether there is one who can rule over us like Kenaz." But when they cast lots, no man was found worthy of the office. Grieved at this token of divine displeasure, they again cast lots by tribes, but the lot did not fall on any tribe. And Israel said: "Let us choose one of ourselves; for we perceive that God abhorreth His people, and that His soul is displeased with us." At the advice of a man named Nethetz (perhaps a corruption of Nebez, Aramaic נבזין "lots". Comp., however, the Jewish name נתזה, Sanhedrin 74a), they tried for the third time, and cast lots by cities, and the lot fell on Armathem. They then cast lots by the men of that city, and the lot "leaped out" (*cecidit sors*, a Hebraism=נפל הגורל) on Elkanah. The people took him, and said: "Come and be ruler over us." He, however, could not be induced to become either prince or judge. Greatly disconcerted, the people prayed again unto the Lord for guidance. God answered them as follows: "Know ye that Elkanah upon whom the lot hath fallen cannot rule over you; but it is rather his son that shall be born of him; he shall be prince over you, and shall prophesy; and from henceforth there shall not be wanting unto you a prince for many years." The people inquired again of the Lord which of Elkanah's ten sons by Peninnah shall be the ruler and prophet, and the reply was: "None of Peninnah's sons can be a prince over the people; but he that shall be born of the barren woman, whom I have given Elkanah to wife, shall be a prophet before Me for ever. And I will love him, even as I loved Isaac (comp. note 13), and his name shall be before Me for ever." And when Hannah bore a son, she "called his name Samuel, which is interpreted Mighty, according as God called his name when He prophesied of him." The original Hebrew of the last sentence very likely read: שמו אל כאשר קרא אותו י' וגו' ותקרא אותו שמואל (comp. the rabbinic interpretation of the name Samuel given above), and is to be translated: She called his name Samuel, *i. e.* his name was given by God. On names given by God, see footnote 112 on p. 198. See also the quotation from ps.-Philo in note 13, where it is stated that Eli knew of this prophecy about Samuel, but not Hannah. But if so, how did she know the name given by God to the prophet?

18. Shemuel 3, 53; Berakot 31b. As to the slaughtering of a sacrifice by a non-priest, see also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, III, 9. 1, who agrees with the rabbinic Halakah, whereas Philo, *De Special. Legi.*, *De Sacrifican.*, 5, and *Quaestiones in Exod.* 10, is of the opinion that the slaughtering is a priestly function; comp. Schürer, *Geschichte* (4th edition), II, 239, note 39. There seems, however, to have been a difference of opinion among the Rabbis on this point; comp., *e. g.*, WK 22.7, where R. Ishmael (himself a priest) speaks of the slaughtering of the sacrifices by priests. Zohar III, 124a, maintains that the slaughtering must *not*



*be done* by a priest. Comp. R. Ezekiel Feivel, *Toledot Adam*, I, 52a–52b.

19. Shemuel 3, 53. This passage contains also the remark that Hannah uttered an unconscious prophecy when she said: “I also have lent him to the Lord” (1 Sam. 1.28). Samuel remained among the living as long as Saul (=“lent to the Lord”) was alive, and departed this life shortly before Saul’s death. Comp. note. 70.

20. Targum 1 Sam. 2.1–11; Shemuel 4–6, 55–65; *Batte Midrashot*, IV, 6–9, as well as ps.-Philo, 51; 51.3, *seq.*, contain lengthy homiletical paraphrases of Hannah’s prayer of thanks. It should be observed that Targum finds in verse 4 a prophecy concerning the victory of the Maccabees over the Greeks; compare footnote 925 on p. 822. The Haggadah considers Hannah’s second prayer (on the first, see note 11) as an abridged form of the ‘Amidah. See Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 80.

21. Sanhedrin, Mishnah 10.3; Tosefta 13.9; Babli 109b; Yerushalmi 10, 28a and 29c; Shemuel 5, 61–62; BR 98.2; Targum 1 Sam. 2.6. Compare with p. 726.

22. Shemuel 5, 61; PR 43, 182a; *Batte Midrashot*, IV, 7. Hannah bore, besides Samuel, who was equal to two, two other sons, as well as two daughters (she prayed for sons as well as for daughters; Shemuel 2, 49); to these should be added her two grandsons (Samuel’s sons), who were born during her life-time; she thus had eight children, corresponding to the number of children lost by her rival Peninnah. Comp. also ps.-Jerome, 1 Sam. 2.5, and the remarks on this point by Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 15–16. That Peninnah had ten children (=sons) is also maintained by ps.-Philo; comp. note 17, and this view is based on I Sam. 1.8.

## ELI AND HIS SONS

Shortly<sup>23</sup> before Samuel entered upon his novitiate in the sanctuary, Eli succeeded to the three highest offices in the land: he was made high priest, president of the Sanhedrin, and ruler over the political affairs of Israel. Eli was a pious man, and devoted to the study of the Torah, wherefore he attained to a good old age and to high honors.<sup>24</sup> In his office as high priest he was successor to no less a personage than Phinehas, who had lost his high-priestly dignity on account of his haughty bearing toward Jephthah. With Eli the line of Ithamar rose to power in-

stead of the line of Eleazar.<sup>25</sup> However, the iniquitous deeds of his two sons brought dire misfortune upon Eli and upon his family, though the Scriptural account of their conduct may not be taken literally. The sons of Eli transgressed only in that they sometimes kept the women waiting who came to the sanctuary to bring the purification offerings, and so they retarded their return to their families.<sup>26</sup> This was bad enough for priests of God. Their misdeeds recoiled upon their father, who was not strict enough in rebuking them. Eli’s punishment was that he aged prematurely, and, besides, he had to give up his various offices.

During his lifetime, his youngest son Phinehas, the worthier of the two,<sup>27</sup> officiated as high priest. The only reproach to which Phinehas laid himself open was that he made no attempt to mend his brother’s ways.

The worst of God’s decree against Eli he learned from Elkanah,<sup>28</sup> the man of God who came unto Eli, and who announced that the high-priestly dignity would be wrested from his house, and once more conferred upon the family of Eleazar, and, furthermore, his descendants would all die in their prime. The latter doom can be averted by good deeds, devotion in prayer, and zealous study of the Torah. These means were often employed successfully.<sup>29</sup> But against the loss of the high priest’s office there is no specific. The house of Eli forfeited it irrevocably. Abiathar, the great-grandson of Eli’s son Phinehas,<sup>30</sup> the last of the high priests of the line of Ithamar, had to submit to the fate of seeing David transfer his dignity to Zadok, in whose family it remained forever.

The sons of Eli brought misfortune also upon the whole of Israel. To their sins and to the ease with which the people condoned them was attributed the unhappy issue of the war with the Philistines. The holy Ark, the receptacle for the broken tables of the law, which accompanied



the people to the camp,<sup>31</sup> did not have the expected effect of compelling victory for the Israelites. What Eli feared happened. He enjoined upon his sons not to appear before him if they should survive the capture of the Ark.<sup>32</sup> But they did not survive it; they died upon the battlefield on which their nation had suffered bitter defeat. The Philistines, to be sure, had to pay dearly for their victory, especially those who had spoken contemptuous words when the holy Ark had appeared in the Israelitish camp: "The God of the Israelites had ten plagues, and those he expended upon the Egyptians. He no longer has it in His power to do harm." But God said: "Do ye but wait and see. I shall bring a plague down upon you the like of which hath never been."<sup>33</sup> This new plague consisted in mice crawling forth out of the earth, and jerking the entrails out of the bodies of the Philistines while they eased nature. If the Philistines sought to protect themselves by using brass vessels, the vessels burst at the touch of the mice, and, as before, the Philistines were at their mercy.<sup>34</sup> After some months of suffering, when they realized that their god Dagon was the victim instead of the victor, they resolved to send the Ark back to the Israelites. Many of the Philistines,<sup>35</sup> however, were not yet convinced of God's power. The experiment with the milch kine on which there had come no yoke was to establish the matter for them. The result was conclusive. Scarcely had the cows begun to draw the cart containing the Ark when they raised their voices in song:

Arise thou, O Acacia! Soar aloft in the fulness of thy splendor,  
Thou who art adorned with gold embroidery,  
Thou who art revered within the Holiest of the palace,  
Thou who art covered by the two Cherubim!<sup>36</sup>

When the holy Ark was thus brought into the Israelitish domain, there was exceeding great rejoicing. Yet the people were lacking in due reverence. They unloaded the holy vessel

while doing their usual work. God punished them severely.<sup>37</sup> The seventy members of the Sanhedrin perished, and with them fifty thousand of the people.<sup>38</sup> The punishment was meet for another reason. At first sight of the Ark some of the people had exclaimed: "Who vexed thee that thou didst feel offended, and what has mollified thee now?"<sup>39</sup>

---

23. Shemuel 1, 46, which is very likely based on Seder 'Olam 13 (see parallel passages cited by Ratner, *ad loc.*), stating that Eli ruled the people for forty years, and Samuel, who died at the age of fifty-two, for twelve. Comp. notes 25, 26, 69.

24. Tan. Shemini 2; Tan. B. III, 23; Aggadat Bereshit 41, 83; MHG I, 413. According to Tagin 1, it was Eli who copied from the Torah written on the stones of Gilgal (compare with p. 843) the "crowns" and embellishments of the Hebrew letters. He transmitted their exact form to Palti (=Paltiel, Michal's husband; see Index, s. v. "Paltiel"); the latter handed them over to Ahitophel, who transmitted them to Ahijah the prophet of Shiloh, who in turn transmitted them to the high priest Jehoiada, from whom the prophets received them. The prophets buried the copy of the Torah provided with the "crowns" under the threshold of the Temple, where Ezekiel found it, when during the reign of Josiah, the Temple was torn open. He took this copy to Babylon, whence it was subsequently brought to Jerusalem by Ezra.

25. Ps.-Philo 50; 52.2, and accordingly we ought to read 48D; *Heli* instead of *eum*. That Eli was the immediate successor of Phinehas (comp. note 40) is presupposed by ER 11, 57; Origen in *Joan.* and Aphraates, 272. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 10–11. 6.7. All these sources very likely presuppose the identity of Phinehas and Elijah (compare with p. 882); they accordingly see no difficulty in the fact that this "immortal" exercised the high-priestly functions for several centuries. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 11.5, has the high priests Abiezer, Bukki, and Ozi between Phinehas and Eli (comp. 1 Chron. 5.30–31), but he is also acquainted with the tradition that Eli was the first high priest of the priestly line of Ithamar. According to Ps.-Philo, 44D; 44.2, Eli's mother was Dedila (read Delilah; compare footnote 125 on p. 880), whose son Micah fashioned the graven image. This statement seems very strange in view of the favorable picture of Eli given by this author.

26. Yerushalmi Sotah 16a and Ketubot 13, 35c; BR 85.12; Yoma 9a–9b; Shabbat 55b; Tosefta-Targum 1 Sam.



2.22; Shemuel 7, 66; Zohar I, 176a; Aggadat Bereshit 41, 84. The last-named source maintains that the women, tired of waiting, used to return home without having brought the sacrifices, and hence were made to have conjugal relations in a state of impurity. The same view is expressed by Ephraem as well as ps.-Jerome, and is very likely presupposed by Peshitta 1 Sam 2.22. This interpretation is based on an old (Sadducean?) Halakah which forbids conjugal relations with women before they have brought their purification offerings. Comp. Geiger, *Jüdische Zeitschrift*, II, 28, and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 17–19. Attention is to be called to the fact that neither the Septuagint nor ps.-Philo has the slightest reference to the improper conduct of Eli's sons with the women who came to the sanctuary. The latter, 51; 52.1, writes: The two sons of Eli . . . began to act wickedly toward the people, and multiplied their iniquities. And they dwelt hard by the house of Bethac, and when the people came together to sacrifice, Hophni and Phinehas came and provoked the people to anger, seizing the oblations before the holy things were offered unto the Lord. Although Bethac occurs in another passage of ps.-Philo (compare footnote 134 on p. 882), one feels inclined to reconstruct the original text of this passage in the following manner: יבואו האנשים לזבוח וגו'. והם גרו בבית קרוב לבית א' (=אלהים) וכאשר. The sanctuary is here, as in Scripture, described as "the house of God", but the translator misread the abbreviation (א'ק) = אלהים, and hence mistranslated בית א'ק by "Bethac". On this abbreviation, see footnote 60 on p. 127=vol. V, p. 160. In MHG I, 414–415, the sons of Eli are excused of the charge of improper conduct with women, but their disgraceful treatment of the sacrifices is painted in black colors. Comp. also Shemuel 6, 64, and Tosefta Menahot (end). Pesahim 57a reads: A voice was heard from the Temple hall crying aloud: "Be gone, ye sons of Eli, who defile the sanctuary." It is very likely that in this passage the Sadducean priests are meant by the sons of Eli.

27. Aggadat Bereshit 41, 83; MHG I, 413–414; Shabbat 55b; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 11.12. The view that Eli had to relinquish his office of high priest does not seem to agree with the opinion concerning the duration of his office as given in note 23. It is, however, true that according to the law, he could hardly perform his priestly functions while blind; see Lev. 21.18, and Bekorot 43b–44a. As to his sons, see also text on p. 968, where they are described as two pious priests. This, however, may be explained by the fact that they died as martyrs (in the war for God and Israel), and hence all their sins were forgiven them. Ps.-Philo, 51–52; 52.2–4, has a lengthy paraphrase of Eli's words of rebuke addressed to his sons, at the conclusion of which he remarks that "when Eli said to them: 'Repent you of your evil way', they said: 'When we grow old, we will repent.'" And for this reason the opportunity

was not granted to them to repent. Comp. Yoma 85b, which reads: If one says: "I shall continue to sin, and later repent", the opportunity to repent is not granted to him. Comp. Index, s. v. "Repentance".

28. Shabbat 55b; Seder 'Olam 20, and parallel passages by Ratner on "Elkanah, the man of God" (=prophet); Shemuel 8, 69; Midrash Tannaim 208; ps.-Jerome on 1 Sam. 2.27, which reads: *Hunc virum Dei Judaei Phines dicunt*. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 19–20, where attention is called to the unanimous view of the old rabbinic sources that the man of God was Elkanah and not Phinehas; see also note 2, and footnote 965 on p. 838.

29. Rosh ha-Shanah 18a; Yebamot 105a; BR 59.1; Shemuel 8, 71; ER II, 53; Tosefta Targum 1 Sam. 2.32. On the haggadic interpretation of 1 Sam. 2.27–36, see Kellermann, *Midrasch zum 1 Buche Samuelis*, 56–63.

30. Ahimelech, the father of Abiathar, was identical with Ahijah the great grandson of Eli (1 Sam. 14.3), according to a Haggadah found in ps.-Jerome, 1 Sam. 21.1. On the appointment of Zadok as high priest to succeed Abiathar, see ER 12, 57, and EZ 10, 190. Zadok was the only priest who was anointed (this statement, of course, disregards Aaron and his sons who were consecrated as priests by anointment); PRK (Grünhut's edition, 87–88). Here it is also stated that Saul, David, Solomon, Joash, and Jehoahaz were the only kings who were anointed. Comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 319–320 and footnote 371 on p. 657.

31. Shekalim 6, 49c. On the view that the ark accompanied Israel to the camps, see text on p. 794. When at war with the Philistines they took the ark with them, God said: "Ye did not think of the holy ark when the sons of Eli provoked Me by their iniquities; but now, going to battle, ye bethink yourselves thereof." See ER 12, 57; comp. also ps.-Philo, 53; 54.2, which reads: And as the ark went up with them..., the Lord thundered (haggadic interpretation of ותהם הארץ, 1 Sam. 4.5), and said: "This time shall be like the time when they were in the wilderness; then they took the ark without My commandment (a strange interpretation of Num. 14.44), and destruction befell them; even so shall it be now: the people shall fall, and the ark shall be taken, that I may punish the adversaries of My people because of the ark, and rebuke My people for their sins."

32. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 11.2.

33. Sifre N., 88; Sifre Z., 196; Tosefta Sotah 9.4; Shemuel 10, 77. The two sons of Eli were slain by Goliath who took the holy ark with his left hand, and slew Hophni and Phinehas with his right. When Eli heard from Saul (who was light on his feet and fled from the battle) that the ark had been taken, he said: "Behold, Samuel prophesied about me and my sons that we should die together, but he made no mention of the ark unto me." In his great despair



Eli fell off from his seat and died on the same day as his sons. On the very same day another member of Eli's family died: his daughter-in-law, while giving birth to a son whom she called Ichabod, said: "Where is the glory? for the glory of the Lord is departed from Israel, since the ark of the Lord was taken." See ps.-Philo, 52–53; 54.3–6. On the parts played by Goliath and Saul in this campaign, see vol. IV, p. 65. The first part of the name Ichabod (יחבד) is explained as יח "where?" (the same explanation is also found in Kimhi on Sam. 4.21). The Septuagint renders this verse: And she called the child Οὐαιβαραβώθ, both because of the ark of God, and because of her father-in-law, and because of her husband. The Septuagint very likely takes יח in the sense of יי "woe" (Aramaic), whereas Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 11.4, reads: Ichabod, which name signifies "disgrace", and this because the army received a disgrace at this time. Comp. the etymology of the name Aaron in footnote 36 on p. 474.

34. Sifre N., 88; Sifre Z., 96; Tehillim 93, 414; Shemuel 10, 77. According to Septuagint on 1 Sam. 5.6, *seq.*, the punishment of the Philistines consisted in being smitten in "their secret parts". Furthermore mice sprang up in the midst of their country, and there was a great "confusion of death" among them when God smote the men of their cities, great and small. It is interesting that ER 11, 58, likewise speaks of the visitation of the mice, as well as of the plague causing death among men, women, and children. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 1.1, very likely following Septuagint, writes: God sent a very destructive disease upon the city and country of Ashdod, for they died of dysentery or flux, a sore distemper that brought death upon them very suddenly; for before the soul could, as usual in easy deaths, be well loosed from the body, they brought up their entrails, and vomited them up, entirely corrupted by the disease. And as to the fruits of their country, a great multitude of mice arose out of the earth and hurt them, and spared neither the plants nor the fruits. It is doubtful whether ps.-Philo's (53–54; 55.2.9) elaborate account of the plague is based on a text different from that of the Masorah or not. According to this writer, the plague consisted of scorpions and all kinds of noisome creeping things, which particularly attacked the children and the mothers. The number of them that died with child was seventy-five thousand, and of the sucklings sixty-five thousand, and of those that gave suck fifty-five thousand, and of men twenty-four thousand. The wise men of the Philistines therefore said: "Whereas all that are with child and give suck die, . . . and they that are suckled perish, we also will take kine that give suck and yoke them to a new cart, and place the ark upon it, and shut up the young of the kine. And it shall be, if the kine go forth . . . we shall know that we have suffered for the ark's sake." At the advice of their sages the Philistines set the kine at the head of the three ways that are

about Ekron; for the middle way leads to Ekron, and the way on the right hand to Judea, and the way on the left hand to Samaria. The kine, albeit they lowed and yearned for their young, went forth nevertheless by the right-hand way which leads to Judea. And they knew that it was for the ark's sake that they were laid waste. And all the Philistines assembled and brought the ark again into Shiloh with timbrels and pipes and dances. And because of the noisome creeping things that laid them waste, they made seats of gold, and sanctified the ark. The "seats of gold" (*sedilia aurea*) correspond literally to αἱ ἔδραι αἱ χρυσαῖ of the Septuagint, 1 Sam. 6.17=טַחְרֵי הָהָב of the Hebrew text, whereas in 5.9 and 6.5 the Hebrew equivalent of ἔδραι is עֲפָלִים. It is not unlikely that the substitute used in the time of the Septuagint and ps.-Philo for עֲפָלִים (this word was considered obscene) was מוֹשֵׁב="sedilium" and "podex" (for מוֹשֵׁב in the sense of "podex" see Sanhedrin 82b). Accordingly there is no proof that ps.-Philo made use of the Septuagint. Very strange is the statement of ps.-Philo that the Philistines brought the ark to Shiloh. This contradicts not only the Bible (see 1 Sam. 6. 12), but also the story about the kine so minutely described by this author. It is very likely that Allohili (54D, line 6) is a copyist's error for *Israel* or *populi*. After the kine brought the ark to Judea all the people assembled, and took it to the sanctuary. "Israel" and not "the Philistine" is required as subjects of "*sanctificaverunt arcum*". When the ark returned from the Philistines it was "re-sanctified" by the people. With regard to the accident that befell the idol Dagon, ps.-Philo narrates that its priests were crucified by the people when they found it fallen on its face and its hands and feet lying before the ark. Kimhi quotes an opinion (of the Midrash?) that the upper part of the idol had a human form, the lower that of a fish. Comp. R. E. J. IV, 56 *seq.* and 269–271.

35. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 1.2; ps.-Philo (as quoted in the preceding note). Comp. also sources cited in note 33 which likewise mention the difference of opinion among the Philistines.

36. BR 54.4 (this passage has many other "songs of the kine"); 'Abodah Zarah 24b; ER 11, 58; Shemuel 12, 82; Tan. Wa-Yakhel 7. That the kine were set at the head of the three ways (a haggadic interpretation of 1 Sam. 6.12) is asserted not only by ps.-Philo (comp. note 34), but also by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 1.2.

37. ER 11, 58 (the unseemly behavior of the Jews is contrasted with the great respect shown to the ark by the Philistines, who covered their faces that they should not behold the holy vessel); Sotah 35a; BaR 5.9; Tan. Wa-Yakhel 7 (the wind pushed back the cover from the ark, and the people did not refrain from looking at the uncovered ark); Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 1.4, reads: And the wrath of God overtook them, and struck seventy persons dead . . . who, not being priests, and so not worthy to touch the ark,



had approached it. Josephus did not forget for a moment that he was a priest. As to the sin committed by the inhabitants of Beth-Shemesh, see also Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 2, 20b; Septuagint Targum and Tosefta-Targum on 1 Sam. 6.19. On the rejoicing of the people at the return of the ark, see the quotation from ps.-Philo in note 34.

38. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 2, 20b (another opinion has it: the loss of the seventy members of the Synedrion was as grave a loss as the death of fifty thousand men); Targum on 1 Sam. 6.19; BaR 5.9; ER 11, 58; Sotah 35b. In the last-named source two views are given: 1) seventy men, each one of whom was as important to Israel as fifty thousand other men; 2) fifty thousand men, each one of whom was as important as the seventy members of the Synedrion. Comp. Mekilta RS 26 and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 20–21, where reference is made to ps.-Jerome 1 Sam 4, 19 who remarks: *Hos septuaginta viros iudices septuaginta Hebraei intelligunt*. See also the similar haggadic interpretation of Joshua 7.4–5, text on p. 845 and note 23 appertaining thereto.

39. Sotah 35a–35b. Comp. also sources referred to in preceding note.

## THE ACTIVITIES OF SAMUEL

In the midst of the defeats and other calamities that overwhelmed the Israelites, Samuel's authority grew, and the respect for him increased, until he was acknowledged the helper of his people. His first efforts were directed toward counteracting the spiritual decay in Israel. When he assembled the people at Mizpah for prayer, he sought to distinguish between the faithful and the idolatrous, in order to mete out punishment to the disloyal. He had all the people drink water, whose effect was to prevent idolaters from opening their lips.<sup>40</sup> The majority of the people repented of their sins, and Samuel turned to God in their behalf: "Lord of the world! Thou requirest naught of man but that he should repent of his sins. Israel is penitent, do Thou pardon him."<sup>41</sup> The prayer was granted, and when, after his sacrifice, Samuel led an attack upon the Philistines, victory was not withheld from the Israelites. God terrified the enemy

first by an earthquake, and then by thunder and lightning. Many were scattered and wandered about aimlessly; many were precipitated into the rents torn in the earth, the rest had their faces scorched, and in their terror and pain their weapons dropped from their hands.<sup>42</sup>

In peace as in war Samuel was the type of a disinterested, incorruptible judge, who even refused compensation for the time, trouble, and pecuniary sacrifices entailed upon him by his office.<sup>43</sup> His sons fell far short of resembling their father in these respects. Instead of continuing Samuel's plan of journeying from place to place to dispense judgment, they had the people come to them, and they surrounded themselves with a crew of officials who preyed upon the people for their maintenance.<sup>44</sup> In a sense, therefore, the curse with which Eli threatened Samuel in his youth was accomplished: both he and Samuel had sons unworthy of their fathers.<sup>45</sup> Samuel at least had the satisfaction of seeing his sons mend their ways. One of them is the prophet Joel, whose prophecy forms a book of the Bible.<sup>46</sup>

Though, according to this account, the sons of Samuel were by no means so iniquitous as might be inferred from the severe expressions of the Scripture, still the demand for a king made by the leaders of the people was not unwarranted. All they desired was a king in the place of a judge. What enkindled the wrath of God and caused Samuel vexation, was the way in which the common people formulated the demand. "We want a king," they said, "that we may be like the other nations."<sup>47</sup>

40. Ps.-Jerome, 1 Sam. 7.6, *seq.*, quoting this legend as "*Hebraei tradunt*". The extant rabbinic literature knows of such an ordeal in connection with the worshippers of the golden calf, but not with regard to the sinners in the days of Samuel; see Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 21–23; text on p. 626.—A lengthy description of the "call



of Samuel” is given by ps.-Philo, 52; 53.1, *seq.* When Samuel was only eight years old, God decided to reveal Himself to him; but, in order not to frighten the child, the voice that came to him was as that of a man and not as of God. Samuel at first thought that he heard the voice of Eli, and ran to him. The latter thought that an unclean spirit was attempting to deceive Samuel, and he warned him with the following words: “In thee do I behold the sign that men shall have from this day forward for ever (it is very likely an inaccurate translation of the Hebrew **הָאָדָם מֵהַיּוֹם וְלָעוֹלָם** and **וְעַתָּה רָאָה אֶת זֶה לְכָל** “And now behold that sign for all men from this day forward and for ever”; the translator, however, read, **וְעַתָּה רָאָה** instead of **וְעַתָּה רָאָה**), that if one call unto another twice in the night or at noonday (very likely an inaccurate translation of **חֲצוֹת** which here means “midnight”, and not “noonday”), they shall know that it is an evil spirit. But if he call a third time, they shall know that it is an angel.” The second time the voice of heaven which called Samuel sounded to him like the voice of his father Elkanah, and awakening from his sleep, he ran again to Eli. The latter said to him: “In those two voices, where-with God hath called upon thee, He likened Himself to thy father and to thy master; but now on the third time (He will speak) as God.” Eli then instructed Samuel as follows: Attend with thy right ear, and refrain with thy left. For phinehas the priest commanded us, saying: The right ear heareth the Lord by night, the left ear an angel. Therefore if thou hear with thy right ear, say thus: “Speak what Thou wilt, for I hear Thee, for Thou hast formed me.” But if thou hear with thy left ear, come and tell me. A third time a voice resembling that of Elkanah’s awoke Samuel from his sleep, and “filled” his right ear. He now knew that God was revealing Himself to him. The content of this revelation was the announcement of the doom decreed upon the “flower that came forth of the rod of Aaron” (the punishment of the priests). Because they transgressed the law concerning the “nest with birds” (comp. Deut. 22.26) it shall happen to them that the mothers shall die with the children, and the fathers with the sons. Samuel at first would not reveal the prophecy to Eli, saying: “How shall I prophesy the destruction of him that fostered me?” But Eli insisted on knowing the truth. Samuel was afraid, and told him all the words he had heard. And Eli said: “Can a thing formed answer him that formed it? Even so cannot I answer Him when He takes away that which He hath given; He who is the Faithful Giver, the Holy One who hath prophesied. I am subject to His power.” That Samuel began to prophesy at a very early age is also the view of Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 10.4, who gives the age of twelve as the beginning of his activity. The statement of the Rabbis (comp. notes 23, 25, and 27, as well as Midrash Tannaim 89) that Samuel’s leadership lasted only twelve years, from his fortieth year until his death, refers to his activity as

judge and head of the nation, and does not preclude the possibility of his having exercised his prophetic calling many years more. On the view that God addressed Samuel in the voice of his father, in order not to frighten him, see text on p. 729, where the same statement is given with regard to Moses. On the relation between Phinehas and Eli, see note 25. That the priests were punished for their transgression of the law concerning the “bird’s nest”, is a very strange statement, especially in view of the explicit words of Scripture (1 Sam. 2.12, *seq.*, and 22). It seems therefore likely that the Hebrew original read: **וְכַשֵּׁם שֶׁהֵם עֲבָרוּ עַל מִצְוַת קָנִים שִׁצִּיתִי לְמֹשֶׁה כִּי יָמוּתוּ וְגו’**. The reference was not to the commandment given in Deut. 22.26, but to that of Lev. 12.6, in accordance with the tannaitic use of **קָנִים** to designate the purification offering of a woman after child-birth. Ps.-Philo, in agreement with the Rabbis (see note 26), is of the opinion that the sons of Eli were negligent in the sacrifices of the “birds” brought by the women. The translator, or perhaps a later glossator, not acquainted with the mishnaic use of the word **קָנִים** (the treatise dealing with the law given in Lev., *loc cit.*, bears the name of **קָנִים**), took it in the sense of **קָן צָפוּר** of Deut., *loc. cit.* Eli’s words, at hearing the doom of his family, express his resignation to the will of God, or, as the Rabbis term it, his “acknowledgment of God’s justice” (**צְדוּק הַדִּין**); this is an obligation incumbent upon any one who hears bad “tidings”; comp. Berakot Mishnah 9.2 and footnote 256 on pp. 235–236. Samuel was chosen prophet by God as a reward for his humility. Three times he arose from his bed in response to what he thought was Eli’s summons. Had he not been so humble, he would never have found out through Eli that it was God who called him; *Batte Midrashot*, IV, 34; a quotation from a Midrash in *Reshit Hokmah* **שַׁעַר עוֹנָה** 7. Samuel did not sleep in the sanctuary, as one might erroneously infer from the words of Scripture (1 Sam. 3.3), but in the “hall of the Levites”. The voice calling Samuel went forth from the sanctuary, and passed Eli, who did not hear it, though he was near the holy place; see Shemuel 9, 75; Targum 1 Sam. 3.20. Comp. Rashi and Kimhi, *ad loc.*

41. Yerushalmi Ta’anit 2, 65d; Shemuel 13, 83; Tehillim 119, 503; Baraita de-Yeshu’a, 47a; Targum 1 Sam. 7.6; ER 17, 86–87.

42. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 2.2. On three occasions God wages a “war of confusion” against the enemies of Israel: in the battle of Gibeon (Josh. 10.10); in the battle against Sisera (Jud. 4.15); in the battle which Samuel fought against the Philistines. In the time of the Messiah Israel’s enemies will be destroyed by God in the same way. The Egyptians were likewise annihilated at the Red Sea in the same manner. See Shemuel 13, 84; Tehillim 18, 147. Before going into action, Samuel brought a sacrifice, and though not a priest, he performed the sacrificial rites. A divine command suspended on this occasion the laws



pertaining to sacrifices, bidding a non-priest to perform the functions of a priest, and making him transgress seven other sacrificial laws; see Yerushalmi Megillah 1, 72c; Shemuel 13, 83; BaR 14.1; WR 22.9; Tehillim 27, 227; Tan. B. IV, 41. On similar suspensions of the law, see footnote 8 on p. 841.—This was the first war in which Samuel participated, as he did not take part in that disastrous campaign which resulted in the capture of the ark and the death of Eli's two sons. Three days before that battle God sent him away, saying: "Go and look upon the place of Arimatha (=Ramathaim); there shall be thy dwelling". When, at his return, he heard of the great calamity that befell Israel, he was deeply grieved. God consoled him, saying: "Before thou diest, thou shalt see the end which I will bring upon Mine enemies, whereby the Philistines shall perish and be destroyed by scorpions and by all manner of noisome creeping things." Ps-Philo, 53–54; 55.1–2. As to the sending away of Samuel, see a similar legend about Jeremiah in text on p. 1075.

43. Nedarim 38a; Tan. B. IV, 91; BaR 18.10. When Samuel spoke the words: "Witness against me . . . Whose ass have I taken, etc." (1 Sam. 12.3), a heavenly voice proclaimed: "I witness." Makkot 23b; BR 85.1; Shemuel 14, 90–91; comp. also Yelammedenu in Likkutim, V, 90b–91a, and text on p. 899, with regard to Samuel's disinterestedness and incorruptibility, wherein he was equal to Moses. Philo, *De Inebrietas* 34, describes Samuel as the greatest of kings (=rulers, *i. e.*, judges) and prophets. As to Samuel's Naziriteship, see Nazir Mishnah, Babli, and Yerushalmi (end), as well as Shemuel 1, 49–50; Targum 1 Sam. 1.11. According to some authorities quoted in these sources, he was no Nazirite, and the words of Scripture (Sam. *loc. cit.*) are to be translated "And he shall know of no fear (of man) all his life." On Samuel as the "master of the prophets", see Yerushalmi Hagigah 2, 77a; Tan. B. IV, 82; Shemuel 24, 120; Tehillim 90, 387. He is said to have been equal to Moses and Aaron put together PR 43, 182a; *Batte Mid-rashot*, IV, 7. On the view that Samuel was Moses's equal, and in some respect his superior, see also Shemuel 9, 74–75; Tehillim 25, 212 (see Buber, note 24); BaR 3.8; PK 4, 38b; ShR 16.4; footnote 561 on p. 718. Comp. also Eccles. 46.11, which reads: The Nazirite of God among the prophets, Samuel who judged and performed the service of priests. On the last point see the preceding note. The Karaite Hadassi, *Eshkol*, 45b, No. 119, quotes a statement of the Rabbis to the effect that Samuel acted proudly in proclaiming in the presence of all the people his incorruptibility as a judge and his disinterestedness. No such remark is found in the rabbinic literature still extant, and in view of the extraordinary glorification of Samuel by the Haggadah, it is very unlikely that it brought this accusation against him. Hadassi either misunderstood his source, or deliberately invented a statement unfavorable to

Samuel, that he might be able to reprove the Rabbanites for their lack of reverence towards the heroes of Israel. A late Karaitic writer (see Neubauer, *Beiträge*, Hebrew part, 65), drawing upon Hadassi, maintains that the Rabbanites accuse Samuel of having been a corrupt judge. What the Rabbis do say is that Samuel acted proudly in saying: I am the seer; compare with p. 913. Compare also footnote 60 on p. 863 (bottom).

44. Shabbat 56a (it contains several attempts to tone down the biblical report concerning Samuel's sons); Hullin 133a; Tosefta Sotah 14.5–6; BR 85.12; Shemuel 7, 67; Yerushalmi Sotah 1, 17a, and Ketubot 13, 35d (top). Comp. note 46, and Tosefta-Targum 1 Sam. 12.2.

45. Makkot 11a. The Haggadah finds in 1 Sam. 3.7 the curse uttered by Eli.

46. Shemuel 1, 45 (the views differ; according to one opinion, both were wicked; while others maintain that when they repented, both were found worthy of receiving the gift of the holy spirit); BaR 10.5; Ruth R. 2.1; Tehillim 80, 361. See also ps.-Jerome, 1 Chron. 6.13; who (following Jewish tradition?) maintains that Ahijah was an unworthy judge, but not his brother Joel, though he too is censured by Scripture for not having attempted to restrain his brother from his evil deeds. See a similar view with regard to the two sons of Eli, text on p. 891. Comp. Rahmer, *Ein lateinischer Kommentar . . . zu den Büchern der Chronik*, 29–30, and references given in note 44. It is very likely that, in agreement with ps.-Jerome, we are to read in Tehillim, *loc. cit.*: **יואל הוא ושני הווא**.

47. Sanhedrin, Tosefta 4.5, and Babli 20b; Sifre D., 156; Midrash Tannaim 103–104; Mekilta D., 5–6; DR 5.8–11. All these sources cite a difference of opinion among the Rabbis with reference to Deut. 17.14. According to some, the institution of a monarchy was commanded by God to Israel, and therefore the sin committed by Israel in Samuel's time consisted in the manner the common people formulated their demand for a king, or in asking for a king before the time was ripe for one. Others maintain that God never commanded the appointment of a king, but knowing Israel's inclination towards a monarchy, He permitted the establishment of such a rule, should the people desire it. This request made by Israel in Samuel's days was granted by God, who, however, did not approve of it. But the prevalent opinion is that Israel, after entering the Holy Land, had three national duties to discharge: the establishment of a monarchy, the annihilation of Amalek, and the building of the Temple. According to Sanhedrin 20b, these duties were to be fulfilled in the order given herewith, whereas Mekilta D., *loc. cit.*, is of the opinion that the first national duty was the building of the Temple, and then the appointment of a king (first the establishment of the kingdom of heaven on earth, and then the organization of the earthly kingdom). In Samuel's days the



people committed the sin of asking for a king before the Temple had been erected. The same view seems to be shared by ps.-Philo, 54; 56.1–3, who makes Samuel utter the words: “Behold, now I see that there is not yet for us the time of a perpetual kingdom, nor of building the house of the Lord our God, inasmuch as they desire a king before the time.” The last expression “*petentibus regem ante tempus*” is practically identical with the one found in Sifre, *loc. cit.*, *על ידן, שהקדימו עליהן* or *שהקדימו עליהן* (comp. Tosefta, *loc. cit.*) in describing Israel’s sinful action in Samuel’s days. After Saul had been appointed king, the people attempted to excuse their demand for a king by saying to Samuel: “We, as well as our king with us, are thy servants; because we are unworthy to be judged by a prophet, therefore we said: Appoint a king over us to judge us.” See ps.-Philo, 55; 57.4; comp. also 55; 58.4. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 3.3, reads: These words (the people’s demand for a king) greatly afflicted Samuel on account of his hatred of the kingly government; for he was very fond of aristocracy, which is divine and makes men who possess it of a happy disposition. In Sanhedrin, Tosefta and Babli, *loc. cit.*, a difference of opinion is cited with regard to the picture drawn by Samuel of the king’s powers. According to one view, the law accedes to the king all this arbitrary power, but another maintains that Samuel tried to “frighten the people” by picturing to them what a lawless king might do.

## THE REIGN OF SAUL

There were several reasons for the choice of Saul as king. He had distinguished himself as a military hero in the unfortunate engagement of the Philistines with Israel under the leadership of the sons of Eli. Goliath captured the tables of the law. When Saul heard of this in Shiloh, he marched sixty miles to the camp, wrested the tables from the giant, and returned to Shiloh on the same day, bringing Eli the report of the Israelitish misfortune.<sup>48</sup> Besides, Saul possessed unusual beauty,<sup>49</sup> which explains why the maidens whom he asked about the seer in their city sought to engage him in a lengthy conversation.<sup>50</sup> At the same time he was exceedingly modest. When he and his servant failed to find the asses they were looking for, he said, “My father will take thought for us,” putting his

servant on a level with himself,<sup>51</sup> and when he was anointed king, he refused to accept the royal dignity until the Urim and Thummim were consulted.<sup>52</sup> His chief virtue, however, was his innocence. He was as free from sin as “a one year old child.”<sup>53</sup> No wonder, then, he was held worthy of the prophetic gift. The prophecies he uttered concerned themselves with the war of Gog and Magog, the meting out of reward and punishment at the last judgment.<sup>54</sup> Finally, his choice as king was due also to the merits of his ancestors, especially his grandfather Abiel, a man interested in the public welfare, who would have the streets lighted so that people might go to the houses of study after dark.<sup>55</sup>

Saul’s first act as king was his successful attack upon Nahash, king of the Ammonites, who had ordered the Gileadites to remove the injunction from the Torah barring the Ammonites from the congregation of Israel.<sup>56</sup> In his next undertaking, the campaign against the Philistines, he displayed his piety. His son Jonathan had fallen under the severe ban pronounced by Saul against all who tasted food on a certain day, and Saul did not hesitate to deliver him up to death. Jonathan’s trespass was made known by the stones in the breastplate of the high priest. All the stones were bright, only the one bearing the name Benjamin had lost its brilliancy. By lot it was determined that its dimmed lustre was due to the Benjamite Jonathan. Saul desisted from his purpose of executing Jonathan only when it appeared that he had transgressed his father’s command by mistake. A burnt offering and his weight in gold paid to the sanctuary were considered an atonement for him.<sup>57</sup> In the same war Saul had occasion to show his zeal for the scrupulous observance of the sacrificial ordinances. He reproached his warriors with eating the meat of the sacrifices before the blood was sprinkled on the altar,<sup>58</sup> and he made it his task to see to it that the slaughtering knife was kept



in the prescribed condition. As recompense, an angel brought him a sword, there being none beside Saul in the whole army to bear one.<sup>59</sup>

Saul manifested a different spirit in the next campaign, the war with the Amalekites, whom, at the bidding of God, he was to exterminate. When the message of God's displeasure was conveyed to Saul by the prophet Samuel, he said: "If the Torah ordains that a heifer of the herd shall be beheaded in the valley as an atonement for the death of a single man, how great must be the atonement required for the slaughter of so many men? And granted they are sinners, what wrong have their cattle done to deserve annihilation? And granted that the adults are worthy of their fate, what have the children done?" Then a voice proclaimed from heaven, "Be not overjust." Later on, when Saul commissioned Doeg to cut down the priests at Nob, the same voice was heard to say, "Be not overwicked."<sup>60</sup> It was this very Doeg, destined to play so baleful a part in his life, who induced Saul to spare Agag, the king of the Amalekites. His argument was that the law prohibits the slaying of an animal and its young on the same day. How much less permissible is it to destroy at one time old and young, men and children.<sup>61</sup> As Saul had undertaken the war of extermination against Amalek only because forced into it, he was easily persuaded to let the people keep a part of the cattle alive. As far as he himself was concerned, he could have had no personal interest in the booty, for he was so affluent that he took a census of the army by giving a sheep to every one of his soldiers, distributing not less than two hundred thousand sheep.<sup>62</sup>

Compared with David's sins, Saul's were not sufficiently grievous to account for the withdrawal of the royal dignity from him and his family. The real reason was Saul's too great mildness, a drawback in a ruler. Moreover, his family was of such immaculate nobility that his de-

scendants might have become too haughty.<sup>63</sup> When Saul disregarded the Divine command about the Amalekites, Samuel announced to him that his office would be bestowed upon another. The name of his successor was not mentioned on that occasion, but Samuel gave him a sign by which to recognize the future king: he who would cut off the corner of Saul's mantle, would reign in his stead. Later on, when David met Saul in the cave and cut off a piece of the king's skirt, Saul knew him for a certainty to be his destined successor.<sup>64</sup>

So Saul lost his crown on account of Agag, and yet did not accomplish his purpose of saving the life of the Amalekite king, for Samuel inflicted a most cruel death upon Agag, and that not in accordance with Jewish, but with heathen, forms of justice. No witnesses of Agag's crime could be summoned before the court, nor could it be proved that Agag, as the law requires, had been warned when about to commit the crime.<sup>65</sup> Though due punishment was meted out to Agag, in a sense it came too late. Had he been killed by Saul in the course of the battle, the Jews would have been spared the persecution devised by Haman, for, in the short span of time that elapsed between the war and his execution, Agag became the ancestor of Haman.<sup>66</sup>

The Amalekite war was the last of Saul's notable achievements. Shortly afterward he was seized by the evil spirit and the rest of his days were passed mainly in persecuting David and his followers. Saul would have died immediately after the Amalekite war, if Samuel had not interceded for him. The prophet prayed to God that the life of the disobedient king be spared, at least so long as his own years had not come to their destined close: "Thou regardest me equal to Moses and Aaron."<sup>67</sup> As Moses and Aaron did not have their handiwork destroyed before their eyes during their life, so may my handiwork not cease during my life." God said: "What shall I



do? Samuel will not let me put an end to Saul's days, and if I let Samuel die in his prime, people will speak ill of him.<sup>68</sup> Meanwhile David's time is approaching, and one reign may not overlap the time assigned to another by a hairbreadth." God determined to let Samuel age suddenly, and when he died at fifty-two,<sup>69</sup> the people were under the impression the days of an old man had come to an end. So long as he lived, Saul was secure.<sup>70</sup> Scarcely was he dead, when the Philistines began to menace the Israelites and their king. Soon it appeared how well justified had been the mourning services for the departed prophet in all the Israelitish towns.<sup>71</sup> It was not remarkable that the mourning for Samuel should have been universal. During his active administration as judge, he had been in the habit of journeying through every part of the country, and so he was known personally to all the people. This practice of his testifies not only to the zeal with which he devoted himself to his office, but also to his wealth, for the expenses entailed by these journeys were defrayed from his own purse. Only one person in all the land took no part in the demonstrations of grief. During the very week of mourning Nabal held feasts. "What!" God exclaimed, "all weep and lament over the death of the pious, and this reprobate engages in revelry!" Punishment was not withheld. Three days after the week of mourning for Samuel Nabal died.<sup>72</sup>

There was none that felt the death of Samuel more keenly than Saul. Left alone and isolated, he did not shrink from extreme measures to enter into communication with the departed prophet. With his two adjutants,<sup>73</sup> Abner and Amasa, he betook himself to Abner's mother, the witch of En-dor.<sup>74</sup> The king did not reveal his identity, but the witch had no difficulty in recognizing her visitor. In necromancy the peculiar rule holds good that, unless it is summoned by a king, a spirit raised from the dead

appears head downward and feet in the air.<sup>75</sup> Accordingly, when the figure of Samuel stood upright before them, the witch knew that the king was with her. Though the witch saw Samuel, she could not hear what he said, while Saul heard his words, but could not see his person—another peculiar phenomenon in necromancy: the conjuror sees the spirit, and he for whom the spirit has been raised only hears it. Any other person present neither sees nor hears it.

The witch's excitement grew when she perceived a number of spirits arise by the side of Samuel. The dead prophet, when he was summoned back to earth, thought that the judgment day had arrived. He requested Moses to accompany him and testify to his always having executed the ordinances of the Torah as Moses had established them. With these two great leaders a number of the pious arose, all believing that the day of judgment was at hand. Samuel was apparelled in the "upper garment" his mother had made for him when she surrendered him to the sanctuary. This he had worn throughout his life, and in it he was buried. At the resurrection all the dead wear their grave-clothes, and so it came about that Samuel stood before Saul in his well-known "upper garment".

Only fragments of the conversation between Samuel and Saul have been preserved in the Scriptures. Samuel reproached Saul with having disturbed him. "Was it not enough", he said, "for thee to enkindle the wrath of thy Creator by calling up the spirits of the dead, must thou needs change me into an idol? For is it not said that like unto the worshippers so shall the worshipped be punished?" Samuel then consented to tell the king God's decree, that he had resolved to rend the kingdom out of his hand, and invest David with the royal dignity. Whereupon Saul: "These are not the words thou spakest to me before."<sup>76</sup> "When we dwelt together," rejoined Samuel, "I was in the world of lies, and



thou heardest lying words from me, for I feared thy wrath and thy revenge. Now I abide in the world of truth, and thou hearest words of truth from me. As to the thing the Lord hath done unto thee, thou hast deserved it, for thou didst not obey the voice of the Lord, nor execute his fierce wrath upon Amalek.” Saul asked: “Can I still save myself by flight?” “Yes,” replied Samuel, “if thou fleest, thou art safe. But if thou acceptest God’s judgment, by to-morrow thou wilt be united with me in Paradise.”

When Abner and Amasa questioned Saul about his interview with Samuel, he replied: “Samuel told me I should go into battle to-morrow, and come forth victorious. More than that, my sons will be given exalted positions in return for their military prowess.” The next day his three sons went with him to the war, and all were stricken down. God summoned the angels and said to them: “Behold the being I have created in my world. A father as a rule refrains from taking his sons even to a banquet, lest he expose them to the evil eye. Saul goes to war knowing that he will lose his life, yet he takes his sons with him, and cheerfully accepts the punishment I ordain.”<sup>77</sup>

So perished the first Jewish king, as a hero and a saint. His latter days were occupied with regrets on account of the execution of the priests at Nob,<sup>78</sup> and his remorse secured pardon for him.<sup>79</sup> Indeed, in all respects his piety was so great that not even David was his equal: David had many wives and concubines; Saul had but one wife. David remained behind, fearing to lose his life in battle with his son Absalom; Saul went into the combat knowing he should not return alive. Mild and generous, Saul led the life of a saint in his own house, observing even the priestly laws of purity. Therefore God reproached David with having pronounced a curse upon Saul in his prayer.<sup>80</sup> Also, David in his old age was punished for having cut off the corner of

Saul’s mantle, for no amount of clothing would keep him warm.<sup>81</sup> Finally, when a great famine fell upon the land during the reign of David, God told him it had been inflicted upon him because Saul’s remains had not been buried with the honor due to him, and at that moment a heavenly voice resounded calling Saul “the elect of God”.<sup>82</sup>

48. Shemuel 11, 78–79; Tehillim 7, 63; Tosefta-Targum 1 Sam. 4.12 (an angel assisted Saul to cover the long distance in a short time); ps.-Philo, 53; 54.3–4. Comp. note 32 and footnote 34 on p. 916.

49. Sotah 10a; compare with p. 58.

50. Berakot 48b; Shemuel 13, 86; Tehillim 7, 70.

51. Tosefta Berakot 4.18; Tan. B. III, 4; ARN 10 (second version 20), 43; a quotation from a Midrash in *Reshit Hokmah*, שער ענוה 7. When Saul refused to accept the crown offered to him on account of his youth (comp. 1 Sam. 9.2; but here he dwells on the insignificance of his tribe and family), the prophet replied: “Who will grant that the word should come into accomplishment of itself, that thou mayest live many days? But consider this that thy words shall be likened unto the words of a prophet, whose name shall be Jeremiah.” See ps.-Philo, 55; 56.6. The statement in ps.-Philo that Saul met Samuel walking hard by Baam (*ille autem ambulabat juxta Baam*; 54, bottom; 56.4) goes back to 1 Sam. 9.14: והנה שמואל יוצא לקראתם הבמה where the Septuagint has εἰς Βαμᾶ, as if *במה* were the name of a place. On Saul’s modesty and other virtues, see also note 80, and footnote 86 on p. 1098, as well as Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 4.5.

52. Tan. B. III, 4; Tosefta-Targum 1 Sam. 10.22. Saul, however, had a presentiment that he was destined to become king. For in a vision he saw himself on top of a palm-tree, which indicates accession to royal dignity; see ps.-Jerome, 1 Sam. 9.20, who gives it as a “Hebrew tradition.” Comp. Berakot 57a (towards the end) about dreaming of ascending a roof. In the incidents which happened to Saul on his way from Samuel to his father, the history of his life was shown to him. The three goats (comp. 1 Sam. 10.3, *seq.*) indicated to him that he would be the father of three sons, and the two loaves of bread which were given to him signified that two daughters would be born unto him; Tan. as quoted in Makiri, Is. 46.161. Comp. Tan. B. I, 22. On the haggadic interpretation of Zelzah (1 Sam. 10.2), comp. BR 82.9; Shemuel 14, 89; Tosefta Sotah 11.11.

53. Yoma 22b (1 Sam. 13.1 is explained to mean, innocent like a one-year-old child); PR 195a; Targum 1 Sam.



13.1; Yerushalmi Bikkurim 3, 65d; Shemuel 17, 95. The two last-named sources read: The bridegroom on the day of his wedding, the king on the day of his coronation, and the elder on the day of his ordination are forgiven all their sins up to that day. That Saul was free from sin is also mentioned by ps.-Jerome on 1 Sam. 13.1. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenu.* 23–24. See also Targum 1 Chron. 8.40, and note 80.

54. Ps.-Jerome, 1 Sam. 10.6, giving this view as a Jewish tradition. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenu.*, 117.

55. Yerushalmi Shebi'it 3, 34d; WR 9.2; Tan. Tezaweh 8; Targum 1 Chron. 8. 33; compare with p. 677. Saul was one of the Benjamites who were told to get a wife by capturing one of the daughters of Shiloh (Jud. 21.21); but being very shy by nature, he had no courage to come near the dancing maidens. One of them, however, attracted by Saul's beauty (compare with p. 895), suggested to him that he should capture her; Rashi, 1 Sam. 20.30, and *Rimze Hafiarot*, Rosh ha-Shanah, 1.

56. Shemuel 14, 89 (other opinions are: he wanted them to slay the Jewish archers, or the members of the Synedrion); Tosefta-Targum 1 Sam. 11.2; comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 5.1, who remarks that if Nahash had accomplished what he wanted, he would have rendered Israel powerless in war, as the left eye of the warrior is covered with the shield.

57. PRE 38; Shemuel 17, 96. On the dimness of the stone of Benjamin, indicating the sin of that tribe, see text on p. 845.

58. Zebahim 120a, as an explanation of 1 Sam. 14.34. On the explanation of this verse by ps.-Jerome, see Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenu.*, 24–26. It is quite possible that ps.-Jerome has correctly transmitted the Haggadah to the effect that no meat except that of a sacrifice could be eaten in time of war, when all the people were near the holy ark that followed them to the battle-field; Saul prevented the use of other meat by the people. Comp. sources quoted in footnote 519 on p. 708 with regard to the use of meat during the journey of Israel in the wilderness.

59. WR 25 (end); BaR 11 (towards the end); Shemuel 17, 95–96.

60. Yoma 22b; Koheleth 7.16; Shemuel 18, 100; Alphabet of Ben Sira 4c; Jerome, Eccles. 7.16. Quite correct was Saul's attitude towards the Kenites, whom he had warned of the danger threatening them in case they should not separate themselves from the Amalekites. He owed this to them for the hospitality offered by the Kenite Jethro to Moses. Although this hospitality was prompted by selfish motives (he wanted Moses to marry one of his daughters), one ought to be grateful for a good deed, even if the motive thereof is not a pure one; Berakot 63b; WR 34.8; PRE 44;

Shir 2.5; Shemuel 18, 99; ps.-Jerome on 1 Sam. 15.6; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 7.2–3.

61. Tehillim 52, 284; Shemuel 18, 99–100. On the contrast between the kindness of the law concerning animals and the severity of war, see text on p. 297, and the quotation from ps.-Philo, note 40. The Amalekites were great sorcerers (compare with p. 581), and used to transform themselves into animals to escape the attacks of the enemies in war. God therefore commanded Israel to kill all the animals of the Amalekites; see *Ketab Tamim*, 61, and R. Bahya, Ki-Teze (end), both of whom had that legend in their text of PRE 39.

62. Yoma 22b; Shemuel 18, 99; Targum 1 Sam. 16.4. Compare also with p. 637. Ps.-Philo, 55; 58.2–4, on the other hand, maintains that Saul had spared Agag and his wife because of the hidden treasures promised by the Amalekite king. But Saul never saw the hidden treasures which Agag had promised to show him, as the latter was shortly after killed by Samuel.

63. Yoma 22b; comp. the favorable opinion of Saul in vol. IV, pp. 65–66 and 72, as well as Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 4.1 and 12.7.

64. Tehillim 57, 297–298; Ephraem, 1 Sam. 15.27. Opinions differ as to the meaning of Scripture that Saul on his return from the campaign against Amalek set up a **ת** on Carmel (1 Sam. 15.12). According to some, Saul erected on Carmel, an altar, the one which was later used by Elijah (1 Kings 18.30, *seq.*); but according to others, Saul deposited the spoils on Carmel. See Midrash quoted by Rashi and Kimhi, *ad loc.* These two interpretations of **ת** are also known to Ephraem, *ad loc.*, 362E. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenu.*, 27.

65. PK 3, 25a–26b (comp. Buber, note 90); PR 12, 52b; Ekah 3,139; Tan. B. V, 39–40; Tan. Ki-Teze 9; Shemuel 18, 101. In these sources opinions differ as to the way Samuel executed Agag. According to some, Samuel cut Agag's body into pieces, which he threw to the ostriches (**מעדנות** in 1 Sam. 15.32 is taken to mean the same as **נעמיות**, because the roots **עדן** and **נעם** are synonymous); but others maintain that he bound him on four poles, and killed him by pulling the poles apart. It is obvious, though none of the commentators noticed it, that this Haggadah attempts to solve the difficulty involved in the fact that Samuel who was a Nazirite would not have been permitted to slay Agag, since a Nazirite is forbidden to touch a dead body. The old view which denies the Naziriteship of Samuel was probably prompted by this difficulty; comp. note 43. Ps.-Philo, 55; 58 (end), maintains that Samuel slew Agag with a sword. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 7 (end) writes: He (Samuel) gave orders to slay him. This is a simple way out of the difficulty.

66. ER 20, 115 and 21, 117; Alphabet of Ben Sira 11c; Targum Shenit 4.13; compare with p. 1163. A similar



legend is related in ps.-Philo, 55, 58.3–4. When Saul in his greed (see note 62) had spared Agag, God decided to punish him, and made this very sin to become the cause of his death. God therefore said to the prophet Samuel: “Suffer Agag and his wife to come together this night, and slay him tomorrow; but preserve thou his wife until she has given birth to a male child, and then she, too, shall die. The child born of her shall be an offence unto Saul.” This posthumous child of Agag, called Edad, later became Saul’s armor-bearer, and in the battle of Gilboa it was Agag’s son who delivered the death blow to the Hebrew king. Comp. also ps.-Philo (end). Comp. note 107.

67. On the view that Samuel was the equal of these two, see note 43, and text on p. 611. The evil spirit which afflicted Saul was “one born of an echo in chaos”, and David composed a psalm which when sung by him had the power to make the evil spirit depart; ps.-Philo 56; 60, where the text of the psalm is given.

68. *I. e.*, his premature death will be declared to be due to his sins.

69. On Samuel’s age at the time of his death and the duration of his activity, see references cited in notes 23, 25, 27. In opposition to the prevalent opinion that Samuel ruled only twelve years, there is found in Tehillim 25, 212 (see Buber, *ad loc.*) the view that his activity lasted as long as that of Moses, forty years. This view is shared by Julius Africanus, 1, 93. This author very likely combined the statement of Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 10.3 (to the effect that Samuel began to prophesy at the age of twelve), with that of the Rabbis that he died at the age of fifty-two. Comp. also BaR 3.8; ER 6, 37; Tehillim 92, 411; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 13.5; Tabari I, 414.

70. Ta’anit 5b; Yerushalmi Berakot 4, 7b; Shemuel 25, 122 (שלו מטעת, *i. e.*, Saul, “the planting of Samuel”); the planter would not have survived the destruction of his planting; accordingly, Samuel died about the time when Saul’s death was decreed; the reading of Yalkut II, 141, and Makiri, Ps. 51, 282, is not acceptable); BaR 3.8. “Hannah’s long prayer shortened the days of Samuel.” In her prayer she consecrated her son to the service of the sanctuary for his entire life (see 1 Sam. 1.11 and 22); but as a Levite Samuel could not perform any holy service after the age of fifty (Num. 8.24), and hence he died after having spent this number of years at the sanctuary, from the age of two (See 1 Sam. 1.24; she weaned him at that age; comp. Ketubot 60a) until the age of fifty-two. See Yerushalmi Berakot 4, 7b, and Ta’anit 4, 67c, as well as Bikkurim 2, 64c and Shemuel 2.50 and 3.52.

71. Tosefta Sotah 11.5. On the text, see Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 35–36, where it is suggested that we ought to read ודאי ושמואל מת אלא לענין שאול וימת שמואל מיתה. Tosefta, in agreement with the “Hebrew tradition” given by ps.-Jerome, 28.8, explains that 1 Sam.

25.1 contains the report concerning Samuel’s death and burial, whereas in 1 Sam. 28.3 Samuel’s death is merely referred to by the way, in connection with Saul’s visit to the witch of En-Dor, which would not have happened, had the great prophet still been alive. Comp. the following note.

72. Koheleth 7.1 and Shemuel 23, 111, 115, 117–118 (according to these sources, Samuel’s death is mentioned in 1 Sam. 25.1 by the way only, in connection with the story of Nabal; comp. the preceding note); Yerushalmi Bikkurim 2, 64a (the “ten days” mentioned in 1 Sam. 25.38 refer to the “ten days of penitence”, from New Year to the Day of Atonement, granted to the sinners as days of grace before their final doom is decreed on the Day of Atonement); Tehillim 26, 219–220; ER 18, 109; 2 ARN 43, 118. Nabal’s untimely death was due to his failure to assist the poor; EZ 1, 170. Greedy as he was, he was ashamed to refuse flatly the requests and petitions of the needy, but employed great cunning in avoiding his duty. He lived in Maon, but his possessions were in Carmel (1 Sam. 25.2); the poor who came to Maon were told that if they applied in Carmel, their wishes would be granted; those who came to Carmel were told that Nabal’s residence was in Maon where he transacted his affairs; quotation from a Midrash by Shu’aib, ‘Ekeb, 104b. Comp. also Tehillim 14, 113. Pride was another vice of Nabal. He was so proud of his aristocratic descent that he despised David, the descendant of Ruth the Moabite, and claimed the honor and privileges due to the tribe of Judah for himself, the representative of the noble clan of Caleb; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 2, 20b; Baraita de-Yeshu’a, 45a. In his pride he not only denied David’s claim to royal dignity, but also God, in whose name Samuel anointed David; denying God, Nabal led a loose life; Tehillim 53, 287–288.—On Samuel as the ideal type of judge, see text on p. 895.

73. WR 26.7; Tan. B. III, 81; Tan. Emor 2; Shemuel 24, 118. As to “the rule of conduct” to take two companions on a journey, see text on p. 766. The Midrashim mentioned above (see also PRE 33) dwell also upon Saul’s strange action, in that he first destroyed the sorcerers, and then sought the advice of the witch of En-dor. Ps.-Philo, 59; 64.1, maintains that Saul “scattered all the sorcerers out of the land” not out of zeal for God and His law, but that “men should remember him after his death.” For this he was punished by God that he himself sought help from the sorcerers.

74. PRE 33; ps.-Jerome, 1 Sam. 28.7. On the view that Abner accompanied Saul on his visit to the witch, see the references given in the preceding note. Comp. also Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 36–37. Ps.-Philo, 59; 64.3–5, calls the witch Sedecla (=צדק לא “unrighteous”; comp. the explanation of the name Tobal by Rashi, Is. 7.6), the daughter of Adod (the reading Debin is hardly acceptable), the Midianite (see text on p. 871), and maintains



that she deceived the people of Israel with her sorceries for forty years. In PRE the name of the witch is Zephaniah=“the hidden one”.

75. WR 26.7; Tan. B. III, 82 (here it is supposed that necromancy can only be performed during the day, and accordingly לילה in 1 Sam. 28.8 is to be taken in the sense of gloom; comp. a similar explanation of לילה in Tan. B. I., 93; footnote 163 on p. 211); Tan. Emor 2; Shemuel 24.119. Septuagint, 1 Sam. 28.14, very likely read זקף instead of זקן, but the legend about the dead walking with their heads downwards and feet in the air is found in sources independent of this passage; see the references given in footnote 301 on p. 240. Frankel's remarks in *Vorstudien*, 188, and Wellhausen, *Text der Bücher Samuelis*, 13, are to be corrected accordingly. When Saul noticed that the witch did not recognize him, though she had seen him often, he wept and said: “Lo, now I know that my beauty is changed, and the glory of my kingdom is passed from me”; ps.-Philo, 59; 64.4. This author, however, does not explain how the witch, seeing Samuel rise from among the dead, knew that it was Saul who asked her services. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 14.2, maintains that Samuel informed her of Saul's presence.

76. Comp. 1. Sam. 15.28 with 28.17.

77. WR 26.7; Tan. B. III, 82–83; Tan. Emor 7; Shemuel 24, 119–120; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 2, 77a; Hagigah 4b; PRE. 23. The story of the witch of En-dor as narrated by ps.-Philo, 59; 64.5,8, offers many parallels to the rabbinic legends, but in some respects this author's description differs from that of the Rabbis. When Saul asked the witch to describe to him the form of the apparition, she replied: “Thou inquirest of me concerning the gods; for behold, his form is not the form of a man. He is arrayed in a white robe . . . and two angels lead him.” We have here two haggadic explanations of אל־עֲוֹלִים (1 Sam. 28.14); Samuel is like a God (so also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 14.2), and with him two angels (see p. 57, and Index, s. v. “Guardian Angels”), whereas according to the Rabbis, “two men of God” (Moses and Samuel) ascended. Saul, continues ps.-Philo, recognized the mantle Samuel had rent; comp. 1 Sam. 15.27. On the views of the Rabbis as to whose garment was torn on this occasion, Samuel's or Saul's, see Ruth R. 41.8 and Shemuel 18, 100. In agreement with the Rabbis, ps.-Philo makes Samuel utter the words: “I thought that the time was come for me to receive the reward of my deeds (*i. e.*, in the terminology of rabbinic theology, the day of judgment). Ps.-Philo and the Rabbis (comp. Shemuel 10.76; PRE, *loc. cit.*), as well as Eccles. 46.20, dwell upon Samuel's great distinction in having “prophesied after his death”. PRE and ps.-Philo maintain that the purpose of the “prophecy after death” was to call Saul to repentance, to atone by his heroic death for his sins. This throws light upon Eccles., *loc. cit.*, where “to remove

the sins” (λαοὺ of the Greek is not represented in the Syriac, and is based on a misunderstanding) refers to those of Saul, who, on hearing Samuel's words, went to his death, to atone thereby for his sins, as is explicitly stated by the Rabbis and ps.-Philo. The latter writes: And Saul heard the words of Samuel . . . and said: “Behold, I depart to die with my sons, if perchance my destruction may be an atonement for my iniquities”. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 14.2, likewise dwells upon Saul's heroic spirit, who, knowing what awaited him at the battle, did what duty demanded of him, and even took his sons with him to certain death. According to a Midrashic Genizah fragment, Saul in going into battle followed the advice of his son Abinadab (“father of the free-will offering”). The same statement is made by ps.-Jerome, 1 Sam. 31.6, with the additional remark that this son of Saul was also called Ishvi (1 Sam. 14.41), because of his being worthy (יָשָׁר) to be mentioned with his father.—The witch of En-dor succeeded in making Samuel appear, because he had only been dead a few months (comp. note 70), and the first year the bodies of the pious remain intact in the grave, while their souls “ascend and descend”; as soon as the bodies begin to decay, the souls remain above and descend no more; Shabbat 152b. The rationalistic view that necromancy, like sorcery in general, is nothing but a fraud, is first met with among authors who flourished about 900 C.E.; comp. the references given by Kimhi on 1 Sam. 18.25; R. Hananel on Sanhedrin 67b quoted by R. Bahya, Exod. 22.7. R. Bahya himself considers necromancy possible, and knows many things about it. See also Ziyoni, Kedoshim (end). As to the view that the dead will rise in the garments in which they were buried, see Yerushalmi Shebi'it 9, 32b; BR 90 (beginning); Tan. B. I, 208–209; Koheleth 5.10. On the punishment of those who were worshipped as gods, see text on p. 399.

78. Tan. B. III, 45, which reads: The thought of having caused the death of the priests of Nob drove him into the arms of death; he had executed eighty-five priests who were worthy to be high priests; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29a; Targum 1 Sam. 22.18. Kimhi, *ad loc.*, seems to have misunderstood the meaning of this passage of Targum; comp., however, note 92 which cites the unfavorable opinions on these priests expressed by ps.-Philo. This author nevertheless remarks (58; 63.3) that the defeat of Israel and the death of Saul and his sons at the hands of the Philistines were the punishment for the crime committed against the priests of Nob. God said: “Behold, in the first year of Saul's reign, when Jonathan sinned and was about to be put to death by his father, the people rose up and saved him. Now when the priests were slain, even three hundred and eighty-five (this number is found in Septuagint, whereas the Hebrew has only eighty-five; comp. Kimhi, *loc. cit.*), they kept silence and said nothing. Therefore . . . they shall fall down wounded, they and their king.”



79. Berakot 12b; 'Erubin 53b (top); Yoma 22b (which reads: David committed more sins than Saul, and yet they did not cause his fall); Alphabet of Ben Sira 3b. In the last passage Saul's severity toward his children is contrasted with David's leniency towards the sins and evil deeds of his children. On the virtues of Saul, see text on pp. 898 and 899, and the following note.

80. Tehillim 7, 62–63; Shemuel 24, 122; Yerushalmi Nedarim 10 (end; here a view is cited according to which, 2 Sam. 1.24–25 refers to Saul's great devotion to the Torah and its exponents; comp. 'Erubin 53a, bottom); PRK 5, 44a–44b; PR 15, 68a–68b; BaR 11.3; Tosefta-Targum 1 Sam. 10.23. The distinction of being the first Jewish king Saul owed to the tribe of Benjamin, which was rewarded in this way for its great faith in God displayed at the Red Sea, when it was the first to jump into the water; Targum 1 Sam. 15.7, and compare with p. 555. In contrast to these Haggadahs glorifying Saul, see ER 31, 159, where he is described as having been of a proud and distrustful nature, which led him to sin and finally to ruin. See also Yerushalmi Sotah 1, 17b; Shemuel 13, 85, and BaR 11.3, where the statement is made that Saul and Absalom possessed beauty of body but not of soul. Opinions differ as to whether Saul in taking away his daughter Michal from David and giving her to another man (comp. 1 Sam. 25.44) committed a crime or an error, the latter consisting in his thinking erroneously that his daughter's marriage to David was void according to the law; comp Sanhedrin 19b, and the list of Saul's sins in WR 26.9; Tan. B. III, 83; Tan. Emor 2; Shemuel 24, 120–121. ER, *loc. cit.*, censures Saul severely for his taking away Michal from David, and according to Tosefta Sotah 11 (end) he did the same with his daughter Merab, whom he first gave unto marriage to David, and then took her away from her lawful husband to make her marry another man. Compare also with pp. 906 and 940. Instructive is the remark of BR 32.1 and 38.1, that Saul considered David's marriage to Michal void the moment he became an outlaw and legally dead. On the observance by Saul of the priestly laws of purity, see also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 11.9. According to Seder 'Olam 12, Saul ruled two years, but Eupolemus, 477b maintains that he reigned twenty-one years. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI (end) states that Saul reigned forty years. Comp. also Alphabet of Ben Sira 4a; Septuagint 1 Sam. 13.1; note 53, beginning.

81. Berakot 62b. David was all the more to be blamed for this act, as he cut off the fringes ("Zizit") from Saul's garment; Tehillim 7, 64, and somewhat differently in ראבי"ה I, 163, No. 162. Comp. also *Toledot Adam we-Hawwah* I; 19.3 and p. 1058.

82. Berakot 12b; 'Erubin 53b. Compare with p. 935.

## THE COURT OF SAUL

The most important figure at the court of Saul was his cousin Abner, the son of the witch of En-dor.<sup>83</sup> He was a giant of extraordinary size. A wall measuring six ells in thickness could be moved more easily than one of Abner's feet.<sup>84</sup> David once chanced to get between the feet of Abner as he lay asleep, and he was almost crushed to death, when fortunately Abner moved them, and David made his escape.<sup>85</sup> Conscious of his vast strength he once cried out: "If only I could seize the earth at some point, I should be able to shake it." Even in the hour of death, wounded mortally by Joab, he grasped his murderer like a worsted ball. He was about to kill him, but the people crowded round them, and said to Abner: "If thou killest Joab, we shall be orphaned, and our wives and children will be a prey to the Philistines." Abner replied: "What can I do? He was about to extinguish my light." The people consoled him: "Commit thy cause to the true Judge." Abner thereupon loosed his hold upon Joab, who remained unharmed, while Abner fell dead instantly. God had decided against him.<sup>86</sup> The reason was that Joab was in a measure justified in seeking to avenge the death of his brother Asahel. Asahel, the supernaturally swift runner,<sup>87</sup>—so swift that he ran through a field without snapping the ears of wheat<sup>88</sup>—had been the attacking party. He had sought to take Abner's life, and Abner contended, that in killing Asahel he had but acted in self-defense. Before inflicting the fatal wound, Joab held a formal court of justice over Abner. He asked: "Why didst thou not render Asahel harmless by wounding him rather than kill him?" Abner replied that he could not have done it. "What," said Joab, incredulous, "if thou wast able to strike him under the fifth rib, dost thou mean to say thou couldst not have made him innocuous by a wound, and saved him alive?"<sup>89</sup>



Although Abner was a saint,<sup>90</sup> even a "lion in the law,"<sup>91</sup> he perpetrated many a deed that made his violent death appear just. It was in his favor that he had refused to obey Saul's command to do away with the priests at Nob.<sup>92</sup> Yet a man of his stamp should not have rested content with passive resistance. He should have interposed actively, and kept Saul from executing his bloody design. And granted that Abner could not have influenced the king's mind in this matter,<sup>93</sup> at all events he is censurable for having frustrated a reconciliation between Saul and David. When David, holding in his hand the corner of the king's mantle which he had cut off, sought to convince Saul of his innocence, it was Abner who turned the king against the suppliant fugitive. "Concern not thyself about it," he said to Saul. "David found the rag on a thorn-bush in which thou didst catch the skirt of thy mantle as thou didst pass it."<sup>94</sup> On the other hand, no blame attaches to Abner for having espoused the cause of Saul's son against David for two years and a half. He knew that God had designated David for the royal office, but, according to an old tradition, God had promised two kings to the tribe of Benjamin, and Abner considered it his duty to transmit his father's honor to the son of Saul the Benjamite.<sup>95</sup>

Another figure of importance during Saul's reign, but a man of radically different character, was Doeg. Doeg, the friend of Saul from the days of his youth,<sup>96</sup> died when he was thirty-four years old,<sup>97</sup> yet at that early age he had been president of the Sanhedrin and the greatest scholar of his time. He was called Edomi, which means, not Edomite, but "he who causes the blush of shame", because by his keen mind and his learning he put to shame all who entered into argument with him.<sup>98</sup> But his scholarship lay only on his lips, his heart was not concerned in it, and his one aim was to elicit admiration.<sup>99</sup> Small wonder, then, that his end was disastrous.

At the time of his death he had sunk so low that he forfeited all share in the life to come.<sup>100</sup> Wounded vanity caused his hostility to David, who had got the better of him in a learned discussion.<sup>101</sup> From that moment he bent all his energies to the task of ruining David. He tried to poison Saul's mind against David, by praising the latter inordinately, and so arousing Saul's jealousy.<sup>102</sup> Again, he would harp on David's Moabite descent, and maintain that on account of it he could not be admitted into the congregation of Israel. Samuel and other prominent men had to bring to bear all the weight of their authority to shield David against the consequences of Doeg's sophistry.<sup>103</sup>

Doeg's most grievous transgression, however, was his informing against the priests at Nob, whom he accused of high treason and executed as traitors. For all his iniquitous deeds he pressed the law into his service, and derived justification of his conduct from it. Abimelech, the high priest at Nob, admitted that he had consulted the Urim and Thummim for David. This served Doeg as the basis for the charge of treason, and he stated it as an unalterable Halakah that the Urim and Thummim may be consulted only for a king. In vain Abner and Amasa and all the other members of the Sanhedrin demonstrated that the Urim and Thummim may be consulted for any one whose undertaking concerns the general welfare. Doeg would not yield, and as no one could be found to execute the judgment, he himself officiated as hangman.<sup>104</sup> When the motive of revenge actuated him, he held cheap alike the life and the honor of his fellow-man. He succeeded in convincing Saul that David's marriage with the king's daughter Michal had lost its validity from the moment David was declared a rebel. As such, he said, David was as good as dead, since a rebel was outlawed. Hence his wife was no longer bound to him.<sup>105</sup> Doeg's punishment accorded with his misdeeds. He



who had made impious use of his knowledge of the law, completely forgot the law, and even his disciples rose up against him, and drove him from the house of study. In the end he died a leper.

Dreadful as this death was, it was not accounted an atonement for his sins. One angel burned his soul, and another scattered his ashes in all the houses of study and prayer.<sup>106</sup> The son of Doeg was Saul's armor-bearer, who was killed by David for daring to slay the king even though he longed for death.<sup>107</sup>

Along with Abner and Doeg, Jonathan distinguished himself in the reign of his father. His military capacity was joined to deep scholarship. To the latter he owed his position as Ab Bet Din.<sup>108</sup> Nevertheless he was one of the most modest men known in history.<sup>109</sup> Abinadab was another one of Saul's sons who was worthy of his father, wherefore he was sometimes called Ishvi.<sup>110</sup> As for Saul's grandson Mephibosheth, he, too, was reputed a great man. David himself did not scorn to sit at his feet, and he revered Mephibosheth as his teacher.<sup>111</sup> The wrong done him by David in granting one-half his possessions to Ziba, the slave of Mephibosheth, did not go unavenged. When David ordered the division of the estate of Mephibosheth, a voice from heaven prophesied: "Jeroboam and Rehoboam shall divide the kingdom between themselves."<sup>112</sup>

83. PRE 33. Comp. note 74.

84. Koheleth 9.11.

85. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 24b; Yalkut II, 285, on Jer. 9.22, which reads: The entire camp of Israel found place between Abner's knees. Compare with p. 919.

86. Yalkut II, 285, on Jer. 9.22. The text is not quite certain. The first edition reads: **תפש בן אבנר**, which, of course, must be emended to **תפ' בו אבנר**, whereas the later editions have **תפ' אבנר**. According to the second reading, it is Joab who laid hold of Abner, and the words **שכבה את נר'**

were spoken by the former, who thus describes the killing of his brother by Abner as "extinguishing my light". Abner's words, "If I could, etc.", remind one of the famous saying of Archimedes: "Give me a place to stand and I will move the earth (**δός μοι ποῦ στῶ καὶ κινῶ τὴν γῆν**)."

87. PRK (Grünhut's edition, 72); PRE 53. Compare with pp. 58–59, and the note appertaining thereto. The loss caused to David by the death of Ashael was equal to that caused by the death of the nineteen men who were killed by Abner at the same time with him; Sifre D., 52; Midrash Tannaim 55.

88. Koheleth R. 9.11; Yalkut II, 285, on Jer. 9.22. For a similar remark concerning the swift runner Naphthali, see text on p. 386.

89. Sanhedrin 49a. Compare with p. 945.

90. BR 82.4; Yerushalmi Sotah 1, 17b.

91. Yerushalmi Peah 1, 16a; PK 4, 31b; Tehillim 7, 67; Tan. B. IV, 106; Tan. Hukkat 4; BaR 19.2; WR 26.2. In all these sources Abner and Amasa are described as "the two lions in the Torah" during the reign of Saul. Compare with p. 946. The name Abner signifies "father of light", and Saul's cousin bore this name on account of his having been the head (father) of the Synedrium, which illuminates the world by its wisdom; *Rimze Hafiarot*, Mahar Hodesh; comp. Baba Batra 4a.

92. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29a, which reads: Abner and Amasa declared to Saal that they would rather resign the high position held by them than accede to the king's demand. The fate that overtook the priests of Nob was, however, well merited by them. These priests were polluting the holy things of the Lord, and making the first-fruits a reproach. God was wroth, and said: "Behold, I will wipe out the priests who dwell in Nob, because they walk in the ways of the sons of Eli." Ps.-Philo, 58; 63.1. Comp. note 78.

93. Sanhedrin 20a, which cites also the different view to the effect that Abner tried in vain to restrain Saul from his bloody act. See also Yerushalmi Sotah 1, 17b and the references cited in the following note.

94. Yerushalmi Peah 1, 16a, and Sotah 1, 17b; PK 4, 32b–33a; WR 26.2; Tan. B. IV, 107–108 and 168; Tan. Hukkat 4 and Mass'e 12; BaR 19.2 and 23.13. These sources cite four different opinions on the nature of the sin for which Abner paid with his life: 1) He did not try to restrain Saul from slaying the priests of Nob; 2) he prevented a reconciliation between Saul and David; 3) he was guilty of *lése-majesté* in using the words "from Abner to David" in writing to the latter (2 Sam. 3.12), instead of "to David from Abner"; 4) he thought little of human life, and for his amusement he arranged a tournament resulting in the death of many men; see 1 Sam. 2.14, *seq.* Comp. also Sanhedrin 20a.



95. BR 82.4; Tan. B. I, 177; comp. vol. I, p. 144.

96. Ps.-Jerome, 1 Chron. 8.38, quotes the Hebrew tradition that Doeg accompanied Saul when he went to seek the asses. Septuagint, 1 Sam. 21.8 reads הארמי "Aramean", instead of האדמי "Edomite". It is worth noticing that according to the view of the Rabbis (Tehillim 52, 284), Doeg was not at all of foreign extraction (indeed he belonged to the tribe of Judah like David), but he was blood-thirsty by nature, and hence his epithet אדמי "the bloody one". According to others, he acted like an Edomite; the Edomites were revengeful, so was he. A third view is that he hailed from the country south of Nob, and that part of the Holy Land was called Idumea. Ps.-Philo, 58; 63.1, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, 6.12, 1, follow Septuagint, and speak of "Doeg the Syrian". Comp. note 98.

97. Sanhedrin 69b and 106b. In the last passage Ahitophel is said to have died at the same age as Doeg. Comp. note 100.

98. Tehillim 52, 184–185 and 284 (in 284 many explanations of the epithet האדמי are given, see note 96); Tan. B. V, 29; Tan. Shofetim 1; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29a; Babli 106b. The "Hebrew tradition" in ps.-Jerome, 1 Chron. 8.38, to the effect that Azrikam the first-born of Azael (this is in agreement with Septuagint and Peshitta which read בכרו instead of בכרו) is identical with Doeg, presupposes a haggadic explanation of *Edomi*, as this Azrikam is described as a descendant of the Benjamite Saul; Comp. note 96. On the names given in 1 Chron., *loc. cit.*, see Pesahim 62b.

99. Sanhedrin 106b; Hagigah 15b; BaR 18.17. Ahitophel shared this moral weakness as well as Doeg.

100. Sanhedrin, Mishnah 10.1; Tan. B. III, 43 and 45; Tan. Mezora' 1 and 2; ARN 40, 133, and 36, 108. The rule laid down in these sources is that all Israelites have a share in the world to come, with the exception of the three kings Jeroboam, Ahab, and Manasseh, as well as the four "private men" Balaam, Doeg, Ahitophel, and Gehazi. See also Tosefta Sanhedrin 12.11, where Ahaz is counted among the hopeless sinners; Babli 101a–107b; Yerushalmi 10, 28b–29b; ARN 36, 108, which reads: Absalom and all the wicked kings of Israel (but not those of Judah) have no share in the world to come; but 41, 133 has: Five kings have no share in the world to come (these are: Jeroboam, Ahab, Manasseh, Ahaz, and Ahaziah; comp. Sanhedrin 103b); ER 3, 16. The view of the allegorists (רשומות) is quoted, according to which all the abominable sinners enumerated above have their share in the world to come; comp. Sanhedrin 104b–105a; Yerushalmi 10, 29b (end of section). Comp. also Yelammedenu in *'Aruk*, s. v. גלעד=MHG I, 479, and footnote 93 on p. 976. As to the popular, but untenable, hypothesis that the "four private men" mentioned above stand for Jesus and some of his apostles, see footnote 722 on p. 760.

101. Zebahim 54b. This learned discussion, in which Samuel, David, and Doeg partook (see Targum 1 Sam. 19.19, 23, and 20.1), was about the explanation of Deut. 12.14. David carried his point that "the place which the Lord will choose", spoken of in the Torah, refers to Jerusalem.

102. Sanhedrin 83b; Ruth R. 2.1; Shemuel 19, 104; BaR 13.10. These sources dwell upon the cunning of Doeg, who knew how to arouse Saul's jealousy by pointing out to him that neither the king himself nor his son Jonathan, though they are great masters of the Torah, succeeds as often as David in "rendering decisions according to the law". The young man mentioned in 1 Sam. 16.18 is none other than Doeg, who praised David before Saul to arouse the latter's jealousy. David surpassed Saul not only in knowledge, but also in his great success as a teacher, 'Erubin 53a (end). He was so marvellous, that when his pupils looked at his face their memory became unfailing; WR 20.1; Koheleth 9.2. Comp. 'Erubin 13b; vol. VI, 170–171.

103. Yebamot 76b. Compare text on p. 598; footnote 53 on p. 862, and Index, s. v. "Moabites."

104. Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 131, on 1 Sam. 22; Tehillim 52, 284. Comp. also Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29a (on the text of Yerushalmi, see *Batte Midrashot* I, 34–35). The death of the priests of Nob was the last act in the execution of the divine decree against the house of Eli; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 12.6. Comp. note 78 and note 92. Abiathar, the only priest of Nob who escaped the massacre, is described in 1 Kings 2.26 as "a priest of Anathoth", which means "a priest of poverty". He who, during David's life-time, lived in affluence and wealth, was reduced by Solomon to poverty. Zohar I, 63b.

105. BR 32.1 and 38.1; Tehillim 52, 284. Comp. note 80.

106. Sanhedrin 106b; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 131, on 1 Sam. 22. Comp. also ps.-Philo, 58–59; 63.4, which reads: And as to Doeg the Syrian (comp. note 96), thus said the Lord: "Behold, the day shall come quickly when the worm shall come upon his tongue, and shall cause him to pine away, and his dwelling shall be with Jair (see text on pp. 872–873) forever in the fire that shall not be quenched. According to the Rabbis, Doeg and Ahitophel will not be resurrected, nor will they (on the great judgment) be given over to punishment (BR 32.1 and 38.1; ER 18, 107; comp. references in note 100), and the burning of the soul amounts to the same thing. Ps.-Philo decrees eternal punishment for Doeg in fire, *i. e.*, Gehenna. On being eaten alive by worms, see footnote 552 on p. 716. It is the punishment for blasphemers and slanderers. The Haggadah links Doeg and Ahitophel together, because of the similarity of their sins: both were "men of evil tongues". See BR, *loc. cit.*; Tan. B. I, 51–52, and III, 43; Tan. Noah 17 and Mezora' 1.



107. Tan. B. V, 44; Tan. Ki-Teze 11; PK 2, 28b–29a; PR 12, 51a; ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam. 1.2. Our texts of the Pesik-tas read as though it were Doeg himself and not his son who was Saul's armor-bearer slain by David. But see Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 39. R. Solomon b. ha-Yatom, in his commentary on Mo'ed Katan 9b, quotes a Midrash to the effect that Saul split Doeg like a fish (a haggadic play on the word דוּיג in 1 Sam. 22.18; see Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29a, where נִתְפַּשְׁתָּה כְּדִיג is to be read in the text, with *Batte Midrashot* I, 35), which would support the view that Doeg was Saul's armor-bearer slain by David. It seems certain that in Ben ha-Yatom שְׂאוֹל is a scribal error for דוּד. Ps.-Jerome, 1 Chron. 9.44, mentions the Hebrew tradition that Doeg was Saul's armor-bearer; but in the last battle in which the king fell it was Doeg's son who acted as his armor-bearer. On the death of the latter at the hands of David, see also text on p. 582. According to Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 130, on 1 Sam. 21, David came to the high priest Ahimelech on a Sabbath, just when he found the priests occupied with the baking of the shew-bread. Astounded at their desecration of the Sabbath, he was told by them that they were acting in accordance with the instructions given them by Doeg, who taught them that the baking of the shew-bread, being a Temple ceremony, superseded the Sabbath. David, however, called their attention to the grave error of Doeg, who confused the arranging of the shew-bread, which must take place on the Sabbath, with the baking thereof, which ought to be done on the previous day. Comp., however, Menahot 95b–96a, where an opinion is quoted that the error of the priests of Nob consisted in baking the shew-bread on Friday; whereupon David pointed out to them that it must be done on the Sabbath. In this passage it is also said that David and his men were at the point of starva-

tion, and therefore partook of the holy bread, as there is no ceremonial law which one is bound to observe at the risk of death. They received the holy bread which had been removed from the table of the sanctuary to be distributed among the priests; but David pointed out to the priests that whenever it is necessary to preserve life, it is permitted to take the shew-bread from the holy table. The statement of ps.-Jerome, 1 Sam. 21.6, that, according to Jewish tradition, David did not partake of the holy bread, is very strange, for the explicit words of the Talmud and Yelammedenu, *loc. cit.*, are to the contrary. The view of Matth. 12.3–4 is shared by the Rabbis and not, as ps.-Jerome maintains, opposed by them.

108. Mo'ed Katan 26a. On Jonathan's scholarship, see also note 102.

109. Baba Mezi'a 85a; Yerushalmi Pesahim 6, 33a; comp. on the other hand, Baraita de-Yeshua' 46a which reads: He who regrets having performed a good deed delays the (Messianic) salvation. Such a man was Jonathan, who used to say: "If I had not been kind to David, he would never have had designs on the life of my father."

110. Ps.-Jerome, 1 Sam. 31.6. On Abinadab, see also note 77.

111. Berakot 4a; 'Erubin 53b; compare with pp. 927, 935, 941.

112. Yoma 22b; ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam. 19.29. Comp. also Yerushalmi Yebamot 2, 4a, where allusion is very likely made to the wrong done by David to Mephibosheth in granting one half of the latter's possessions to Ziba. This wrong was all the more grievous because David granted Ziba one half of Mephibosheth's personal property, besides his real estate. The Temple was destroyed because David gave ear to Ziba's slander against Mephibosheth. See Alphabet of Ben Sira 11b.







## XV DAVID

### DAVID'S BIRTH AND DESCENT

David, the "elect of God",<sup>1</sup> was descended from a family which itself belonged to the elect of Israel. Those ancestors of his who are enumerated in the Bible by name are all of them men of distinguished excellence. Besides, David was a descendant of Miriam,<sup>2</sup> the sister of Moses, and so the strain of royal aristocracy was reinforced by the priestly aristocracy. Nor was David the first of his family to occupy the throne of a ruler. His great-grandfather Boaz was one and the same person with Ibzan, the judge of Bethlehem.<sup>3</sup> Othniel, too, the first judge in Israel after the death of Joshua, and Caleb,<sup>4</sup> the brother of Othniel, were connected with David's family. As examples of piety and virtue, David had his grandfather and more particularly his father before him. His grandfather's whole life was a continuous service of God,<sup>5</sup> whence his name Obed, "the servant", and his father Jesse was one of the greatest scholars of his time,<sup>6</sup> and one of the four who died wholly untainted by sin.<sup>7</sup> If God had not ordained death for all the descendants of our first parents after their fall, Jesse would have continued to live forever. As it was, he died at the age of four hundred,<sup>8</sup> and then a violent death, by the hand of the Moabite king,<sup>9</sup> in

whose care David, trusting in the ties of kinship between the Moabites and the seed of Ruth, left his family when he was fleeing before Saul. Jesse's piety will not go unrewarded. In the Messianic time he will be one of the eight princes to rule over the world.<sup>10</sup>

In spite of his piety, Jesse was not always proof against temptation. One of his slaves caught his fancy, and he would have entered into illicit relations with her, had his wife, Nazbat, the daughter of Adiel, not frustrated the plan. She disguised herself as the slave, and Jesse, deceived by the ruse, met his own wife. The child borne by Nazbat was given out as the son of the freed slave, so that the father might not discover the deception practiced upon him. This child was David.<sup>11</sup>

In a measure David was indebted for his life to Adam. At first only three hours of existence had been allotted to him. When God caused all future generations to pass in review before Adam, he besought God to give David seventy of the thousand years destined for him. A deed of gift, signed by God and the angel Metatron, was drawn up. Seventy years were legally conveyed from Adam to David, and in accordance with Adam's wishes, beauty, dominion, and poetical gift<sup>12</sup> went with them.



1. 2 ARN 43, 121. Compare footnote 35 on p. 255 and p. 256, towards beginning. Besides David, the following are described in Scripture as “the elect of God”: Abraham, Jacob, Israel (the people of), Saul, Levi (the tribe of), Moses, the Messiah, Joshua, Judah, Solomon, and Jerusalem. Just as Moses was “the elect” among the prophets, so was David “the elect” among the kings; Tehillim 1, 3, and parallel passages cited by Buber. These sources point out the great similarity between the life of the great king and that of the great prophet. Footnote 68 on p. 485.

2. Sifre N., 78. On the view that the kings of Judah (including the Messiah) were descendants of Judah, the royal tribe, and Levi, the priestly tribe, see text on p. 469.

3. Baba Batra 91a; Targum Ruth 1.6, 3.7, and 4.21. Compare footnote 31 on p. 862.

4. Sifre N., 78; Sotah 11b; PRE 45. Compare with p. 469.

5. Targum Ruth 4.21. Compare with p. 864.

6. Berakot 58a and Yebamot 76b, which read: Jesse went to the front at the head of an army of sixty myriads, returned from the front with such an army, and delivered his lectures before a similar multitude. See also Makiri on Ps. 118, 214.

7. Shabbat 55b (hence the name Nahash, “serpent”, by which Jesse is known; he died merely because death was decreed for all men in consequence of the serpent’s seduction of Eve); Baba Batra 17a; Targum Is. 14.29; Targum Ruth 4.22; ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam. 17.25. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 58–59. The four men untainted by sin are, according to Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*: Benjamin, Amram, Jesse, and Kilab the son of David. Zohar I, 57b, has Levi instead of Kilab. Allusion to the great piety of Jesse is made by ps.-Philo, 57–58; 62.5, who makes David say to Jonathan: “Yet the righteousness of my father shall help me that I fall not into thy father’s hands.” The Hebrew original perhaps, read: **וצדקת אבות=וצדקת אבי** “and the righteousness of my fathers” (in rabbinic Hebrew the phrase used is **זכות אבות**), which the translator misread as **וצדקת אבי** “and the righteousness of my father”. Compare footnote 30 on p. 473 and note 142 on p. 100.

8. BR 96.4. Comp. Lekah, Gen. 46.29.

9. BaR 14.1. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 12.3, on the other hand, maintains that the king of Moab was very kind to David’s parents. Comp. also Zohar III, 190a. The Haggadah attempts to excuse David’s cruelty towards the Moabites (comp. 2 Sam. 2.2) by accusing them of having killed his parents.

10. Sukkah 52b. On “the Messianic princes”, see footnote 142 on p. 99.

11. 11 An unknown Midrash quoted by Makiri, Ps. 118, 214. On the references to this legend by the medieval authors, see Zunz, *Synagogale Poesie*, 129. Comp. also *Kele*

*Yakar*, 1 Sam. 17; Azulai, *Midbar Kedemot*, s. v. **ישי**, No. 20; R. Elijah Wilna in his commentary on Yoreh De’ah, 157.24. Comp. note 23. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XII, 4.6, narrates a similar story about Hyrcanus the son of Joseph the tax collector. As to the names of Nazbat and Adiel (which occur only in Baba Batra 91a), see Güdermann, *Religionsgeschichtliche Studien*, 49, *seq.* The reading **עדאל** and **עדה**, instead of **עדיאל** are incorrect; see 1 Chron. 27.25, where a son of Adiel is mentioned as King David’s treasurer.

12. PRE 19; BaR 14.12; Tehillim 92, 409; Midrash in Yalkut I, 41; Aggadat Bereshit (introduction), XXXVIII; Zohar I, 55a–55b, 140a, 248b; II, 235a. In Zohar I, 168a–168b, the legend reads that Abraham presented David with five years, Jacob with twenty-eight, and Joseph with thirty-eight; all of which amount to seventy-one, *i. e.*, David died in his seventy-first year. Comp. also Epstein, *Eldad*, 67, and Zohar Hadash, Ruth, 98b, beginning **עיר קטנה דבר אחר**. On the Mohammedan version of this legend, see Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 64; text on p. 69 and note 28 appertaining thereto. The Mohammedan writers misunderstood the point made by the legend, and state that Adam donated forty of his years. Of course, the point is that David lived seventy years, corresponding to the number missing in Adam’s life to make up a thousand years = a “day of the Lord”. As to the deeds signed by God and the angels, see also the quotation from Tosafot in manuscript given by Poznanski, *Kommentar . . . von Eliezer aus Beau-gency, Einleitung*, CX. Here a deed is drawn up on the sixth day of creation between the Most High, called the Almighty God, and the earth, in which the latter takes upon itself the obligation of furnishing every day “one hundred dead men like Adam”. The witnesses are Michael, the prince of wisdom, and Gabriel, the prince of strength. On the daily deaths, see note 123. The legend in Seymour, *Tales of Solomon* 15–16, applies to Solomon what really belongs to his father David.

## ANOINTED KING

Beauty and talent, Adam’s gifts to David, did not shield their possessor against hardship. As the supposed son of a slave, he was banished from association with his brothers, and his days were passed in the desert tending his father’s sheep.<sup>13</sup> It was his shepherd life that prepared him for his later exalted position. With gentle consideration he led the flocks entrusted to him. The young lambs he guided to pastures of tender



grass; the patches of less juicy herbs he reserved for the sheep; and the full-grown sturdy rams were given the tough weeds for food. Then God said: "David knows how to tend sheep, therefore he shall be the shepherd of my flock Israel."<sup>14</sup>

In the solitude of the desert David had opportunities of displaying his extraordinary physical strength. One day he slew four lions and three bears,<sup>15</sup> though he had no weapons. His most serious adventure was with the reëm. David encountered the mammoth beast asleep, and taking it for a mountain, he began to ascend it. Suddenly the reëm awoke, and David found himself high up in the air on its horns. He vowed, if he were rescued, to build a temple to God one hundred ells in height, as high as the horns of the reëm. Thereupon God sent a lion. The king of beasts<sup>16</sup> inspired even the reëm with awe. The reëm prostrated himself, and David could easily descend from his perch. At that moment a deer appeared. The lion pursued after him, and David was saved from the lion as well as the reëm.<sup>17</sup>

He continued to lead the life of a shepherd until, at the age of twenty-eight,<sup>18</sup> he was anointed king by Samuel, who was taught by a special revelation that the despised youngest son of Jesse was to be king. Samuel's first charge had been to anoint one of the sons of Jesse, but he was not told which one. When he saw the oldest, Eliab, he thought him the king of God's choice. God had allowed him to be deceived, in order to punish Samuel for his excessive self-consciousness in calling himself the seer. It was thus proved to him that he could not foresee all things.<sup>19</sup> However, Samuel's error was pardonable. God's first choice had rested upon Eliab. Only on account of his violent nature, his swiftness to anger against David, the position destined for him was transferred to his youngest brother.<sup>20</sup> Eliab was in a sense compensated by

seeing his daughter become the wife of Rehoboam. Thus he, too, enjoys the distinction of being among the ancestors of the Judaic kings, and Samuel's vision of Eliab as king was not wholly false.<sup>21</sup>

The election of David was obvious from what happened with the holy oil with which he was anointed.<sup>22</sup> When Samuel had tried to pour the oil on David's brothers, it had remained in the horn, but at David's approach it flowed of its own accord, and poured itself out over him. The drops on his garments changed into diamonds and pearls, and after the act of anointing him, the horn was as full as before.

The amazement was great that the son of a slave should be made king. Then the wife of Jesse revealed her secret, and declared herself the mother of David.<sup>23</sup>

The anointing of David was for a time kept a secret, but its effect appeared in the gift of prophecy which manifested itself in David,<sup>24</sup> and in his extraordinary spiritual development. His new accomplishments naturally earned envy for him. None was more bitterly jealous than Doeg, the greatest scholar of his time. When he heard that Saul was about to have David come to court as his attendant, Doeg began to praise David excessively, with the purpose of arousing the king's jealousy and making David hateful in his eyes. He succeeded,<sup>25</sup> yet Saul did not relinquish his plan of having David at court. David had become known to Saul in his youth, and at that time the king had conceived great admiration for him. The occasion was one on which David had shown cleverness as well as love of justice. A rich woman had had to leave her home temporarily. She could not carry her fortune with her, nor did she wish to entrust it to any one. She adopted the device of hiding her gold in honey jars, and these she deposited with a neighbor. Accidentally he discovered what was in the jars, and he abstracted the gold. On her



return the woman received her vessels, but the gold concealed in them was gone. She had no evidence to bring up against her faithless neighbor, and the court dismissed her complaint. She appealed to the king, but he was equally powerless to help. When the woman came out of the palace of the king, David was playing with his companions. Seeing her dejection, he demanded an audience of the king, that truth might prevail. The king authorized him to do as he saw fit. David ordered the honey jars to be broken, and two coins were found to adhere to the inner side of the vessels. The thief had overlooked them, and they proved his dishonesty.<sup>26</sup>

---

13. Makiri, Ps. 118, 214. Verses 22–24 of this psalm are put by this Midrash into the mouth of David's mother and brothers. This is a very old Haggadah; comp. Pesahim 119a and Shemuel 19, 104, where it is said that verses 21–27 were uttered on the occasion when David was anointed by Samuel. David said: "I will give thanks . . . for Thou hast afflicted me (עֲנִיתָנִי from עָנָה "afflicted"), but now Thou art become my salvation." Jesse said: "The stone which the builders, etc." David's brothers said: "This is the Lord's doing, etc." Samuel said: "This is the day, etc." David's brothers said once more: "O Lord, save now." David joined in their singing: "O Lord, make us prosper", and Jesse continued their prayer with the verse: "Blessed be he that cometh in the name of the Lord." Whereupon Samuel responded: "We bless you out of the house of the Lord." Then they all exclaimed: "The Lord is good, and hath given us light." Ps.-Philo 56.59.4 also gives a psalm by David composed on the occasion of his anointment, in which the new king contrasts his good fortune with the sad fate of Abel who was slain by his brother out of envy. "But it is not so with me", David is alleged to have said, "for God hath kept me, and hath delivered me unto His angels and His guardians to watch over me. For my brothers envied me, and my father and my mother made me of no account." David's ruddy complexion (comp. 1 Sam. 16.12; according to Septuagint, this verse speaks of the reddish color of David's hair. See also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 8.1) was due to Jesse's great passion at the time of begetting his youngest son. And this unusual color nearly caused the death of David and his mother, as his brothers suspected her of adultery. Jesse, however, restrained them from carrying out their evil designs, and they yielded to his wish on the condition that

David should be considered as a slave, and thus for twenty-eight years he was shepherd of his father's flock. See Makiri, *loc. cit.* where בָּנִים is to be read for בָּנִים; David's age at the time of his anointment is said to have been twenty-eight years; comp. Seder 'Olam 13; note 18. The older sources maintain that David's ruddy complexion indicated that he was destined to shed blood, and accordingly Samuel was terrified when he beheld the "red David", whom he thought a second Esau. God, however, informed him that David would shed much blood, but only of those who by their iniquity have forfeited their lives. One could see at David's birth that he was destined for great things, as he was born with the sign of the Abrahamic covenant on him; Sotah 10b; Tehillim 9, 58; footnote 318 on p. 248.

14. Tehillim 78, 357; ShR 2.2. Comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge* 193–194, and text on p. 500.

15. Shemuel 20, 107; Baraita of 32 Middot 3. Of the fleece of the sheep saved from the claws of the wild beasts David made himself a garment, that he should always remember the miracle wrought for him; see quotation from an unknown Midrash by R. Elijah Wilna in *Toledot Adam* I, 59. According to ps.-Philo, 56; 59.5, a lion came out of the wood and a she-bear (the female of this species is considered more ferocious than the male, comp. BR 87, beginning) came from the mountain, and took the bulls of David (did this author read שָׂר instead of שֶׁה in 1 Sam. 17.34?). Whereupon David said: "Lo, this shall be a sign unto me for a mighty beginning of my victory in the battle"; and he went after the wild beasts with stones, and slew them. God then said unto him: "Lo, by stones have I delivered unto thee these beasts . . . and this shall be a sign unto thee that hereafter thou shalt slay with stones the adversary of My people." Comp. also Mekilta Amalek 2, 56a, where, with reference to David's slaying of the wild beasts, it is said "that a sign was given unto him of which he took notice." David was of such unusual strength that he could bend a "bow of brass"; Tehillim 18, 155. The first battle in which David engaged took place shortly after the encounter with the wild beasts, while he was still feeding his sheep, when the Midianites came and would have taken his sheep; but he fought against them, and slew of them fifteen thousand men; ps.-Philo 56; 61.1.

16. This designation of the lion is very frequent in Jewish literature; comp., e. g. Hagigah 13b.

17. Tehillim 22, 195; 91, 395; 92, 408. Compare with p. 1103.

18. Seder 'Olam 12 (on the variant "twenty-nine", see Ratner, *ad loc.*); Makiri, Ps. 118, 24. Comp. note 13.

19. Sifre D., 17; Midrash Tannaim 10; Tan. Wayera 6; Shemuel 14, 88. Compare footnote 322 on p. 640. See also ps.-Philo 56; 59.2, which reads: And the Lord said unto him: "Where is thy vision which thy heart hath seen? Art not thou he that saidst: I am that seeth? And how



knowest thou not him whom thou must anoint? And now let this rebuke suffice thee, and seek out the shepherd, the least of them all, and anoint him.” Samuel, though sure of God’s help, kept his journey to Beth-lehem a secret (1 Sam. 16.2, *seq.*), and did not betray to any outsider the purpose of his visit. This teaches us that one must not expose himself to danger (as far as it can be avoided) even while carrying out God’s command. See Pesahim 8b; Yoma 11a; Yebamot 65b (here it is said: For the sake of peace Samuel told an untruth); Zohar I, 209a; Maimonides, *Shemonah Perakim*, 8. Comp. also MHG I, 519, and Yalkut II, 123. In the last source the statement about the importance of peace, the same almost verbatim as MHG, is quoted from Yerushalmi Yoma, but our texts do not have it. On Samuel’s self-consciousness, see footnote 43 on p. 895.

20. Pesahim 66b; Shemuel 14, 88. The Haggadah finds that Eliab’s violent character is indicated in 1 Sam. 17.28.

21. Yalkut II, 124, where in Tan. is erroneously given as source instead of Yelammedenu; see Yalkut II, 750, on Ps. 45.8.

22. On the “holy oil” (Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 8.1), see Shemuel 19, 102, and text on p. 657. In anointing David Samuel used a “horn” filled with oil, but in anointing Saul he took a cruse: the horn was the symbol of David’s everlasting kingdom, whereas the cruse represented Saul’s temporary rule. Compare with p. 1037. See Megillah 14a, and also Hippolytus, 5.4 (end).

23. Makiri on Ps. 118, 214; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 124 (comp. note 21), and 750, on Ps. 45.8; Ephraem, 1 Sam. 16.13. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 28. As to the secret of David’s mother, see text p. 911 and note 11. While still a youth, David began to prophesy that he would slay Goliath the Philistine and erect the house of God. His father thought him weak-minded, and therefore made him keep the sheep, the only occupation for which he considered him fit. When Samuel arrived at Jesse’s house, he, too, was struck by David’s insignificant looks, and hardly took notice of him. But God said to Samuel: “Arise; My anointed one stands, and thou sittest.” It is with reference to the low esteem in which he had been held that David praised God with the words: “The stone which the builders rejected is become the chief corner-stone” (Ps. 118.22); see Midrash Tannaim 10, and comp. references cited in note 13. David was not the youngest son of Jesse, as one might be inclined to infer from Scripture (1 Sam. 16.11), but “the least esteemed of his sons”. Comp. note 88, end. Jesse’s youngest son was Elihu; see Midrash Tannaim *l. c.* and comp. 1 Chron. 27.18.

24. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 8.2, and comp. the quotations from ps.-Philo in note 13. Although the Psalms, the book of David, does not form part of the prophetic section of the Bible, he was nevertheless a prophet, see Seder

‘Olam 20; Mekilta Bo (פתיחתא) 2a. According to Sotah 48, Yerushalmi 9, 24b, the term “the first prophets” refers to Samuel and David. Some, however, maintain that by this term Gad and Nathan are meant, while others think that it stands for Jeremiah and Baruch. Compare footnote 358 on p. 652.

25. Sanhedrin 93b. Compare footnote 102 on p. 906.

26. BHM IV, 150–151; Ma’aseh-buch, No. 199, 67d. In many sources the hero of this legend is Solomon. Comp. Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 403; Seymour *Tales of Sol.* 17 and 33; footnote 27 on p. 950.

## ENCOUNTER WITH GOLIATH

David was not long permitted to enjoy the ease of life at court. The aggressive manner assumed by Goliath drove him to the front. It was a curious chance that designated David to be the slayer of Goliath, who was allied with him by the ties of blood. Goliath, it will be remembered, was the son of the Moabite Orpah,<sup>27</sup> the sister-in-law of David’s ancestress Ruth, and her sister as well, both having been the daughters of the Moabite king Eglon.<sup>28</sup> David and Goliath differed as widely as their grandams, for in contrast to Ruth, the pious, religious Jewess, Orpah had led a life of unspeakable infamy. Her son Goliath was jeered at as “the son of a hundred fathers and one mother”.<sup>29</sup> But God lets naught go unrewarded, even in the wicked. In return for the forty steps Orpah had accompanied her mother-in-law Naomi,<sup>30</sup> Goliath the Philistine, her son, was permitted to display his strength and skill for forty days, and in return for the four tears Orpah had shed on parting from her mother-in-law, she was privileged to give birth to four giant sons.<sup>31</sup>

Of the four, Goliath was the strongest and greatest. What the Scriptures tell about him is but a small fraction of what might have been told. The Scriptures refrain intentionally from expatiating upon the prowess of the miscreant.



Nor do they tell how Goliath, impious as he was, dared challenge the God of Israel to combat with him, and how he tried by every means in his power to hinder the Israelites in their Divine worship. Morning and evening he would appear in the camp at the very time when the Israelites were preparing to say the Shema'.<sup>32</sup>

All the more cause, then, for David to hate Goliath and determine to annihilate him. His father encouraged him to oppose Goliath, for he considered it David's duty to protect Saul the Benjamite against the giant, as Judah, his ancestor, had in ancient days pledged himself for the safety of Benjamin, the ancestor of Saul.<sup>33</sup> For Goliath was intent upon doing away with Saul. His grievance against him was that once, when, in a skirmish between the Philistines and the Israelites, Goliath had succeeded in capturing the holy tables of the law, Saul had wrested them from the giant.<sup>34</sup> In consequence of his malady, Saul could not venture to cross swords with Goliath, and he accepted David's offer to enter into combat in his place. David put on Saul's armor, and when it appeared that the armor of the powerfully-built king fitted the erstwhile slender youth, Saul recognized that David had been predestined for the serious task he was about to undertake, but at the same time David's miraculous transformation did not fail to arouse his jealousy.<sup>35</sup> David, for this reason, declined to array himself as a warrior for his contest with Goliath. He wanted to meet him as a simple shepherd. Five pebbles came to David of their own accord,<sup>36</sup> and when he touched them, they all turned into one pebble.<sup>37</sup> The five pebbles stood for God, the three Patriarchs, and Aaron. Hophni and Phinehas, the descendants of the last, had only a short time before been killed by Goliath.<sup>38</sup>

Scarcely did David begin to move toward Goliath, when the giant became conscious of the magic power of the youth. The evil eye David

cast on his opponent sufficed to afflict him with leprosy,<sup>39</sup> and in the very same instant he was rooted to the ground, unable to move.<sup>40</sup> Goliath was so confused by his impotence that he scarcely knew what he was saying, and he uttered the foolish threat that he would give David's flesh to the cattle of the field, as though cattle ate flesh. One can see, David said to himself, that he is crazy, and there can be no doubt he is doomed.<sup>41</sup> Sure of victory, David retorted that he would cast the carcass of the Philistine to the fowls of the air. At the mention of fowls, Goliath raised his eyes skyward, to see whether there were any birds about. The upward motion of his head pushed his visor slightly away from his forehead, and in that instant the pebble aimed by David struck him on the exposed spot.<sup>42</sup> An angel descended and cast him to the ground face downward, so that the mouth that had blasphemed God might be choked with earth. He fell in such wise that the image of Dagon which he wore on his breast touched the ground, and his head came to lie between the feet of David, who now had no difficulty in dispatching him.<sup>43</sup>

Goliath was encased, from top to toe, in several suits of armor, and David did not know how to remove them and cut off the head of the giant. At this juncture Uriah the Hittite offered him his services, but under the condition that David secure him an Israelitish wife. David accepted the condition, and Uriah in turn showed him how the various suits of armor were fastened together at the heels of the giant's feet.

David's victory naturally added fuel to the fire of Saul's jealousy. Saul sent Abner, his general, to make inquiry whether David, who, he knew, was of the tribe of Judah, belonged to the clan of the Perez or to the clan of the Zerah. In the former case his suspicion that David was destined for kingship would be confirmed. Doeg, David's enemy from of old, observed that David, being the descendant of the Moabitess Ruth,



did not even belong to the Jewish communion, and Saul need entertain no fears from that quarter. A lively discussion arose between Abner and Doeg, as to whether the law in Deuteronomy regarding Moabites affected women as well as men. Doeg, an expert dialectician, brilliantly refuted all of Abner's arguments in favor of the admission of Moabitish women. Samuel's authority had to be appealed to in order to establish for all times the correctness of Abner's view.<sup>44</sup> Indeed, the dispute could be settled only by recourse to threats of violence. Ithra, the father of Amasa, in Arab fashion, for which reason he was sometimes called the Ishmaelite, threatened to hew down any one with his sword who refused to accept Samuel's interpretation of the law, that male Moabites and male Ammonites are forever excluded from the congregation of Israel, but not Moabite and Ammonite women.<sup>45</sup>

27. Sotah 42b (here several etymologies of the names ערפָּה Orpah, Naomi's daughter-in-law, and הרפָּה 2 Sam. 21.16, are given, to show their identity); Tan. B. I, 208; Ruth R. 1.14; Ruth Z., 49; Shemuel 20, 106–108; ps.-Philo, 57; 61.6. In the last source *mater tua* ("thy mother") very likely means "thy ancestress", since David describes Ruth as "my mother", which, of course, cannot be taken literally. On the meaning of the name Goliath, and his designation as אִישׁ הַבִּינִים, see Sotah, *loc. cit.*, and Targum Ps. 9.1. In the latter source לִבָּן = אִישׁ הַבִּינִים Goliath. On Orpah, Goliath's mother, see text on pp. 862–863 and 934.

28. Ruth R. 1.4; Ps.-Philo, 57; 61.6. Compare with pp. 862–863.

29. Sotah 42b; Ruth R. 1.14; Ruth Z., 49; Vulgate 1 Sam. 17.4. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 30–31. According to Tosefta-Targum Sam., *loc. cit.*, Goliath's father (ancestor?) was Samson, and his mother was Orpah.

30. See, on the other hand, text on pp. 862–863, according to which Orpah accompanied her mother-in-law a long distance.

31. Sotah 42b; Ruth R. 1.14; Shemuel 20, 106–107; Tan. B. I, 208. The forty days are explained by ps.-Philo, 57; 61.2, as corresponding to "the number of days wherein Israel feasted when they received the law in the wilderness."

Goliath said: "For forty days I will reproach them, and after that I will fight with them." Similar is the meaning of the statement in Sotah, *loc. cit.* כִּנְגַד מ' יוֹם שְׁתַּנְּנָה בָהֶן תּוֹרָה. For other explanations of the forty days, see Shemuel 20, 106.

32. Sotah 42b (Scripture hints at Goliath's extraordinary strength and powers, that we might properly appreciate David's achievement); Shemuel 20, 106; Tosefta-Targum 1 Sam. 17.9–10 and 16. Targum has the morning and evening sacrifice instead of the morning and evening prayer. See also ps.-Philo, 57; 61.2, where Goliath challenged Saul to fight him, and "if not, he will come unto him and cause him to be taken captive, and his people will be forced to serve the gods of the Philistines."

33. Tan. V. I. 207 and 208; Haserot 44. This Haggadah is given as an explanation of Jesse's words, who told David to "take the pledge" of his brothers; comp. 1 Sam. 17.18. According to another view, David was bidden by his father to see to it that his brothers send their wives bills of divorce, so that in case they do not return from the battle, their wives would have no difficulty in remarrying. See Ketubot 9a; Shabbat 56a; ps.-Jerome, 1 Sam., *loc. cit.* Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 31–32, and text on p. 928.

34. Shemuel 11, 78–79; ps.-Philo, 53; 54.3–4, and 56–57; 61.2. Compare with p. 898.

35. Tan. B. III, 84; Tan. Emor 4; Shemuel 21, 108. Saul suspected that David must have been anointed with "holy oil" (see text on p. 913), which had the effect of changing the body of the anointed one; if he was short he became tall; if he was black, he became white, etc; Tanhuma., *loc. cit.*, and Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 750, on Ps. 45.2. It is very likely that Philo was acquainted with the legendary qualities of the holy oil, and in his way attempted to rationalize this legend. Comp. *De Nobilitate*, 5.

36. Shemuel 21, 108.

37. Zohar III, 272a; compare with p. 277.

38. Shemuel 21, 108, and somewhat differently in the unknown Midrash quoted by Kimhi on 1 Sam. 17.40. According to ps.-Philo, 57; 61.5, David wrote upon seven stones "the names of his fathers Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Moses, and Aaron, and his own name, and the name of the Almighty." See also 2 Maccabees 10.29, where the five men are very likely the three patriarchs, and Moses and Aaron. Comp. further Aggadot Bereshit 50.102–103 (only in manuscript not in printed text).

39. WR 21.2; PK 27, 175a; Shemuel 21, 109; Zohar II, 206a–206b. The last-named source gives many details about the power of David's eye. Compare with p. 677.

40. WR 21.2; PK 27, 175a; Shemuel 21, 108. The sources dwell upon the fact that the beauty of David aroused an impure passion in Goliath.



41. Shemuel 21, 109, according to the reading of Kimhi, 1 Sam. 17.44.

42. A Midrash quoted by Kimhi, 1 Sam. 17, 49. According to others, a miracle was performed, and the small pebble pierced the hard metal of which Goliath's visor was fashioned; see Shemuel 21, 109 and Tehillim 78, 350, which read: On five occasions God made the "soft" conquer the "hard": the frogs crawled through the marble buildings of the Egyptians (compare with p. 527); the horns penetrated through the rocks to the hiding-places of the Amorites, and killed them (text on p. 755); the mice sent upon the Philistines gnawed through the metal vessels (text on p. 892); the pebble which David threw at Goliath and the missile which struck Ahab (see text on p. 988) penetrated through the hard metal to the bodies of Goliath and Ahab, respectively. Comp. also Tehillim 105, 452.

43. Tehillim 18, 160, and 144, 533; WR 10.7; Shir 4.4; Shemuel 21, 109. According to ps.-Philo, 57; 61.4–8, it was the angel Ceruihel, the angel appointed over strength (*i. e.*, זרועאל; compare footnote 17 on p. 858), who gave David strength to slay Goliath. While there was still life in him, Goliath said unto David: "Hasten and slay me, and rejoice." But David said: "Before thou diest, open thine eyes and behold the slayer who hath killed thee." And the Philistine looked and saw the angel, and said: "Thou hast not killed me by thyself, but he that was with thee, whose form is not like the form of a man." Ps.-Philo, *loc. cit.*, makes David harangue Goliath as follows: "Were not the two women, of whom thou and I were born, sisters (comp. notes 27, 28)? Thy mother was Orpah, and mine was Ruth. Orpah chose for herself the gods of the Philistines, and went after them, but Ruth chose for herself the ways of the Almighty, and walked in them. And now . . . I that am born of thy kindred am come to avenge my people. For thy three brothers also shall fall into my hands after thy death."

44. The Uriah story is quoted, from an unknown Midrash, by R. Moses Al-Sheikh, on 2 Sam. 13, and by R. Samuel Laniado on 1 Sam. 17.50. Compare with p. 928. The controversy between the scholars of that time concerning David's admission to "the congregation of the Lord" is found in Ruth R. 2.5; Shemuel 22, 109–110, and, in a somewhat different form, in Yebamot 76b and Ephraim, 1 Sam. 17.55. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 32–33. This Haggadah is an attempt to harmonize 1 Sam. 16.18, *seq.*, with 1 Sam. 17.55, *seq.* Another solution of this difficulty is given by ps.-Philo, 57; 61.89, who remarks: And the angel of the Lord "lifted up the face" of David and no man knew him, and when Saul saw David, he asked him who he was, and there was no man who knew who he was. There can be no doubt that *erexit faciem* ("lifted up his face") is a mistranslation, and I would suggest that the original Hebrew read שָׁנָא אֶת פָּנָיו = "changed his face", which was misread as נִשָּׂא פָּנָיו "lifted up his face." On the "changing of the face" in ps.-Philo, see the quotation in footnote 75 on p. 900.

45. Yebamot 77a; Yerushalmi 8, 9c; Tehillim 9, 87; Ruth R. 1.21; Targum and ps.-Jerome on 1 Chron. 2.17. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 124, and Index, s. v. "Moabites". With regard to Ithra, another view is given in Tehillim, *loc. cit.*, according to which, he was an Ishmaelite, but became converted to Judaism when he heard Jesse recite the verse: "Look unto Me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth" (Is. 45.22).

## PURSUED BY SAUL

As God stood by David in his duel with Goliath, so he stood by him in many other of his difficulties. Often when he thought all hope lost, the arm of God suddenly succored him, and in unexpected ways, not only bringing relief, but also conveying instruction on God's wise and just guidance of the world.

David once said to God: "The world is entirely beautiful and good, with the one exception of insanity. What use does the world derive from a lunatic, who runs hither and thither, tears his clothes, and is pursued by a mob of hooting children?" "Verily, a time will come," said God in reply, "when thou wilt supplicate me to afflict thee with madness." Now, it happened when David, on his flight before Saul, came to Achish, the king of the Philistines, who lived in Gath, that the brothers of Goliath formed the heathen king's bodyguard, and they demanded that their brother's murderer be executed. Achish, though a heathen, was pious, for which reason he is called Abimelech in the Psalms, after the king of Gerar, who also was noted for piety. He therefore sought to pacify David's enemies. He called their attention to the fact that Goliath had been the one to challenge the Jews to combat, and it was meet, therefore, that he should be left to bear the consequences.



The brothers rejoined, if that view prevailed, then Achish would have to give up his throne to David, for, according to the conditions of the combat, the victor was to have dominion over the vanquished as his servants. In his distress, David besought God to let him appear a madman in the eyes of Achish and his court. God granted his prayer. As the wife and daughter of the Philistine king were both bereft of reason, we can understand his exclamation: "Do I lack madmen, that ye have brought this fellow to play the madman in my presence?" Thus it was that David was rescued. Thereupon he composed the Psalm beginning with the words, "I will bless the Lord at all times," which includes even the time of lunacy.<sup>46</sup>

On another occasion David expressed his doubt of God's wisdom in having formed such apparently useless creatures as spiders are. They do nothing but spin a web that has no value. He was to have striking proof that even a spider's web may serve an important purpose. On one occasion he had taken refuge in a cave, and Saul and his attendants, in pursuit of him, were about to enter and seek him there. But God sent a spider to weave its web across the opening, and Saul told his men to desist from fruitless search in the cave, for the spider's web was undeniable proof that no one had passed through its entrance.<sup>47</sup>

Similarly, when David became indebted to one of them for his life, he was cured of his scorn for wasps. He had thought them good for nothing but to breed maggots. David once surprised Saul and his attendants while they were fast asleep in their camp, and he resolved to carry off, as proof of his magnanimity, the cruse that stood between the feet of the giant Abner, who like the rest was sleeping. Fortunately his knees were drawn up, so that David could carry out his intention unhindered. But as David was retiring with the cruse, Abner stretched out his

feet, and pinned David down as with two solid pillars. His life would have been forfeit, if a wasp had not stung Abner, who mechanically, in his sleep, moved his feet, and released David.<sup>48</sup>

There were still other miracles that happened to David in his flight. Once, when Saul and his men compassed David round about, an angel appeared and summoned him home, to repulse the raid of the Philistines upon the land. Saul gave up the pursuit of David, but only after a majority had so decided, for some had been of the opinion that the seizure of David was quite as important as the repulse of the Philistines.<sup>49</sup> Again, in his battle with the Amalekites, David enjoyed direct intervention from above. Lightning in flashes and sheets illumined the dark night, so enabling him to carry on the struggle.<sup>50</sup>

46. Tehillim 34, 294; 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 24a–24b: *Kimha Dabishuna* שבת בראשית.

47. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 24b; Targum Ps. 57.3. Comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 195.

48. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 24b; compare with p. 905. Abner, however, never believed David that he had been near him while he was asleep, and therefore tried to convince Saul that David found the cruse of water lost by the servant; Yerushalmi Peah 1, as quoted in *Aruk*, s. v. בר 7, but not in our texts; compare footnote 94 on p. 906.

49. Tehillim 18, 138; 9, 85; comp. also 142, 532, which reads: David was within the cave, and Saul was watching outside at the entrance.

50. WR 21.3; PK 27, 175b; Ekah, introduction, XXX; Tehillim 18, 162.—The legend tells of many things (not mentioned in Scripture) which happened to David during the time he was pursued by Saul. Although his position on the day of his flight was precarious (1 Sam. 21.35, *seq.*), he nevertheless insisted on saying his morning prayers with the quorum required for the service, and he requested his friend Jonathan to bring eight men (the quorum מנין, consists of ten) to the hiding-place; *Rimze Haftarot*, Mahar Hodesh. The prolix description of the last meeting between David and Jonathan in ps.-Philo, 57–58; 62.3, *seq.*, hardly contains any other legendary material except the statement that Jonathan knew already then that David was destined to possess "the kingdom in this world". If Jonathan had thought of giving his departing friend a few loaves of bread on his journey, Nob, the city of the



priests, would not have been destroyed, Doeg would not have been excluded from the community of the pious, and Saul and his three sons would not have been slain. This teaches us that the refraining from giving a departing guest the necessary provisions for his journey is accounted to one as a deliberate sin, even though it might be due to forgetfulness, as in the case of Jonathan; Sanhedrin 104a. David, who started on his journey without provisions, arrived in Nob almost in a state of collapse, and was forced to partake of the holy bread to save his life. On that occasion he ate bread baked of seven seah of flour; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 130. Compare footnote 107 on p. 907. From Nob he fled to Adullam, where fourteen hundred scholars joined him; EZ 5, 181. Later he was forced to leave the Holy Land, and this caused him extreme pain, as "he who leaves the Holy Land to settle in another country is considered as though he worshipped idols". It is in this sense that we have to understand David's words: "Cursed be they before the Lord, for they have driven me out this day that I should not cleave unto the inheritance of the Lord, saying: Go, serve other gods" (1 Sam. 26.19). See ARN 26, 85; Ketubot 110b; Tosefta 'Abodah Zarah 4(5).5; Sifra 25.38. David was so much attached to the Holy Land, that he used to say: "I prefer to stand at the threshold of the house of my God and live in the Holy Land, though lacking all necessities of life, even the carob, rather than dwell in any other land in affluence and prosperity." Yelammedenu in *'Aruk*, s. v. סַפְּנָיָהּ וְסַטְסִימָה. He showed his devotion to his country when immediately after he married Michal he went to war against the Philistines, who had hoped that he would stay home, availing himself of the privilege granted by the law (Deut. 20.7) to newly-married men. David went still further, and promulgated the law that nobody is exempt from military duty in a defensive war, as the exemptions mentioned in the Torah refer to an offensive war only; Shemuel 22, 110; Sotah, Mishnah 8(end); Babli 44b; Yerushalmi 8, 23a; Tosefta 7 (end). In his zeal to expand the confines of the Holy Land he engaged in offensive wars against Syria before he conquered all that belonged to the Holy Land. This mistaken zeal resulted in the fact that the Syrian provinces conquered by him never received the holy character of Palestine proper; Sifre D., 52; Midrash Tan-naim 44; Yerushalmi Hallah 2, 58b; Tosefta Kelim, Baba Kamma, 1.5.; Gittin 8a; Baba Batra 90b.

## WARS

David's first thought after ascending the throne was to wrest Jerusalem, sacred since

the days of Adam, Noah, and Abraham, from the grasp of the heathen. The plan was not easy of execution for various reasons. The Jebusites, the possessors of Jerusalem, were the posterity of those sons of Heth who had ceded the Cave of Machpelah to Abraham only on condition that their descendants should never be forcibly dispossessed of their capital city Jerusalem. In perpetuation of this agreement between Abraham and the sons of Heth, monuments of brass were erected, and when David approached Jerusalem with hostile intent, the Jebusites pointed to Abraham's promise engraven upon them and still plainly to be read.<sup>51</sup> They maintained that before David could take the city, which they had surrounded with a high wall, he would have to destroy the monuments. Joab devised a plan of getting into Jerusalem. He set up a tall cypress tree near the wall, bent it downward, and, standing on David's head, he grasped the very tip of the tree. When the tree rebounded, Joab sat high above the wall, and could jump down upon it. Once in the city, he destroyed the monuments, and possessed himself of Jerusalem.<sup>52</sup> For David a miracle had happened; the wall had lowered itself before him so that he could walk into the city without difficulty. David, however, was not desirous of using forcible means. He therefore offered the Jebusites six hundred shekels, fifty shekels for each Israelitish tribe. The Jebusites accepted the money, and gave David a bill of sale.<sup>53</sup>

Jerusalem having been acquired, David had to prepare for war with the Philistines, in which the king gave proof at once of his heroic courage and his unshakable trust in God. The latter quality he displayed signally in the battle that took place in the Valley of the Giants. God had commanded David not to attack the host of the Philistines until he heard "the sound of marching in the tops of the mulberry trees." God desired to pass judgment upon the tutelary angels



of the heathen, before surrendering the heathen themselves to the pious,<sup>54</sup> and the motion of the tops of the trees was to indicate that the battle could proceed. The enemy advanced until there were but four ells between them and the Israelites. The latter were about to throw themselves against the Philistines, but David restrained them, saying: "God forbade me to attack the Philistines before the tops of the trees begin to move. If we transgress God's command, we shall certainly die. If we delay, it is probable that we shall be killed by the Philistines, but, at least, we shall die as pious men that keep God's command. Above all, let us have confidence in God." Scarcely had he ended his speech when the tops of the trees rustled, and David made a successful assault upon the Philistines. Whereupon God said to the angels, who were constantly questioning him as to why he had taken the royal dignity from Saul and given it to David: "See the difference between Saul and David."<sup>55</sup>

Of David's other campaigns, the most notable is his war with Shobach the Aramean, whom he conquered in spite of his gigantic size and strength. Shobach was very tall, as tall as a dove-cote, and one look at him sufficed to strike terror to the heart of the beholder.<sup>56</sup> The Aramean general indulged in the belief that David would treat the Syrians gently on account of the monument, still in existence at that time, which Jacob and Laban had erected on the frontier between Palestine and Aram as a sign of their covenant that neither they nor their descendants should wage war with each other. But David destroyed the monument.<sup>57</sup> Similarly, the Philistines had placed trust in a relic from Isaac, the bridle of a mule which the Patriarch had given to Abimelech, the king of the Philistines, as a pledge of the covenant between Israel and his people. David took it from them by force.<sup>58</sup>

However, David was as just as he was bold. Disregard of the covenants made by the Patri-

archs was far removed from his thoughts. Indeed, before departing for the wars with the Arameans and the Philistines, he had charged the Sanhedrin to investigate carefully the claims of the two nations. The claims of the Philistines were shown to be utterly unfounded. In no sense were they the descendants of those Philistines who had concluded a treaty with Isaac; they had immigrated from Cyprus at a much later date. The Arameans, on the other hand, had forfeited their claims upon considerate treatment, because under the "Aramean" Balaam, and later again, in the time of Othniel, under their king Cushan-rishathaim, they had attacked and made war upon the Israelites.<sup>59</sup>

---

51. PRE 36. According to another view, the Jebusites were the descendants of Abimelech, king of Gerar, who later settled in Jerusalem, where he built a strong fortress (Zion), which for many centuries had withstood all attacks until David captured it; Yalkut Reubeni 44c, giving ספר הקבלה as his authority; but neither ספר הקבלה of R. Abraham ibn Daud, nor שלשלת הקבלה of Ibn Yahya, has this legend. The Jebusites had, on the top of a high tower, two monuments, one representing a blind man (Isaac), the other a lame man (Jacob). Attached to these monuments was the text of the covenant between Abraham and the Philistine king Abimelech, some of whose descendants inhabited Jerusalem. The Jews respected the covenant as long as some of Abimelech's descendants were still in existence, but in David's time Abimelech's family became extinct, and there was no longer any reason for refraining from driving out the Jebusites from Jerusalem. See Midrash quoted by Rashi and Kimhi, 2 Sam. 5.6, as well as Yalkut Reubeni, *loc. cit.* According to Targum, *ad loc.*, "the blind and the lame" mentioned in this verse refer to the sinners (*i. e.*, the Jebusites).

52. Tehillim 18, 152; PRE 36; MHG I, 351; compare footnote 268 on p. 235.

53. Tehillim 18, 152; PRE 36; Shemuel 32, 139; Sifre N., 52; Sifre D., 62; Zebahim 116b; BaR 11.7; Baraita of 32 Middot, 15; ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam. 24.24; Midrash 13 Middot, 70–71. Only the last source has the statement that David himself contributed as much as all the twelve tribes together. The money given to the Jebusites, according to the sources just cited, was for the site of the Temple (comp. 2 Sam., *loc. cit.*, and 1 Chron. 21.25); but PRE, *loc.*



*cit.*, maintains that it was for the city of Jerusalem. As to the miracle of the wall lowering itself, see also Baba Mezi'a 95b; Yerushalmi Mo'ed Katan 3, 81d; ps.-Matthew 20. According to a Christian legend, the Jebusites, after having been driven out from Palestine by David, settled in Cyprus. Comp. Acts of Barnabas (towards the end); see also footnote 57 on p. 965.

54. Ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam. 5.24, which very likely follows a Jewish tradition. On the judgment inflicted upon the guardian angels of the nations, see text on p. 557 and note pertaining thereto. According to Rashi, 2 Sam., *loc. cit.*, the motion of the tops of the trees indicated the approach of the angels who came to David's assistance. With regard to the meaning of בְּכָאִים in 2 Sam., *loc. cit.*, and 1 Chron. 14.14, ps.-Jerome, on the latter passage, quotes a Jewish tradition, according to which the Philistines used to bring human sacrifices to their idol (Moloch), and hence בְּכָאִים is the same as בְּכָאִים "the weeping ones", because they wept when they offered up their human sacrifices. Another explanation of בְּכָאִים is given by ps.-Jerome on 2 Sam., *loc. cit.*: All idols deserve this name, "the weeping", for they are the cause of the tears of their worshippers. Quite similar is the remark of the Rabbis 2 ARN 28, 101, and Tehillim, 96, according to the reading of Makiri on Ps. 96, 112.

55. Tehillim 27, 222–223; PR 8, 30b. On the view that Saul lacked trust in God, see 1 Sam. 14.19.

56. Sotah 42b; Tehillim 3, 38.

57. PRE 36. On the covenant between Jacob and Laban, see Yalkut Reubeni on Deut. 12.2, and the text on p. 293.

58. PRE 36; MHG I, 410.

59. Tehillim 60, 304; Tan. B. V, 2; Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s. v. שִׁשִּׁי; Targum Ps. 60. 1; BR 74.15. The last source dwells upon the fact that the Mobites, the Ammonites, and the Edomites, the moment they attacked the Israelites, forfeited the claim they might have had to be treated kindly. See also Jub. 24.28–33; note 77 text on p. 214. David engaged in eighteen campaigns (WR 1.4), and was forced to defend himself against the attacks of ten adversaries: Saul, Doeg, Ahitophel, Sheba, Shimei, Shobach and Goliath and the latter's three brothers (Tehillim 18, 139); yet there was nothing for which he was so grateful to God as for the help granted him against Saul. During his flight from Saul he prayed to God for two things: that he should not be delivered into the hands of his enemy, and that the latter should not be delivered into his hands, so that he should not be led into temptation to slay the anointed of the Lord; Tehillim 6, 69. David used a sword upon which the name of God was engraved. He was therefore accustomed to swear by his sword. He did not, however, use this sword to slay Uriah, but employed for this purpose the sword of the children of Ammon (2 Sam. 12.9), upon

which was engraved a serpent, the idol of the Ammonites. David had some excuse for slaying Uriah (see text on p. 928), but not for using this "unclean" sword; Zohar II, 107a–108a. As to the sword used in slaying Uriah, see also text on p. 258; text on p. 796. These passages record similar legends concerning the swords of Esau and Phinehas. In Gaster, *Exempla* No. 351 reference is made to the sword of David upon which the Name was engraved; see footnote 32 on p. 952.

## AHITHOPHEL

Among David's courtiers and attendants, a prominent place is occupied by his counsellor Ahithophel,<sup>60</sup> with whom the king was connected by family ties, Bath-sheba being his granddaughter.<sup>61</sup> Ahithophel's wisdom was supernatural, for his counsels always coincided with the oracles rendered by the Urim and Thummim, and great as was his wisdom, it was equalled by his scholarship. Therefore David did not hesitate to submit himself to his instruction,<sup>62</sup> even though Ahithophel was a very young man, at the time of his death not more than thirty-three years old.<sup>63</sup> The one thing lacking in him was sincere piety,<sup>64</sup> and this it was that proved his undoing in the end, for it induced him to take part in Absalom's rebellion against David. Thus he forfeited even his share in the world to come.<sup>65</sup>

To this dire course of action he was misled by astrologic and other signs, which he interpreted as prophecies of his own kingship, when in reality they pointed to the royal destiny of his granddaughter Bath-sheba.<sup>66</sup> Possessed by his erroneous belief, he cunningly urged Absalom to commit an unheard-of crime. Thus Absalom would profit nothing by his rebellion, for, though he accomplished his father's ruin, he would yet be held to account and condemned to death for his violation of family purity, and the way to the throne would be clear for Ahithophel, the great sage in Israel.<sup>67</sup>



The relation between David and Ahithophel had been somewhat strained even before Absalom's rebellion. Ahithophel's feelings had been hurt by his being passed over at the time when David, shortly after ascending the throne, invested, on a single day, no less than ninety thousand functionaries with positions.

On that day a remarkable incident occurred. When the Ark was to be brought up from Geba to Jerusalem, the priests who attempted to take hold of it were raised up in the air and thrown violently to the ground. In his despair the king turned for advice to Ahithophel, who retorted mockingly: "Ask thy wise men whom thou hast but now installed in office." It was only when David uttered a curse on him who knows a remedy and withholds it from the sufferer, that Ahithophel advised that a sacrifice should be offered at every step taken by the priests. Although the measure proved efficacious, and no further disaster occurred in connection with the Ark, yet Ahithophel's words had been insincere. He knew the real reason of the misadventure, and concealed it from the king. Instead of following the law of having the Ark carried on the shoulders of priests, David had had it put on a wagon, and so incurred the wrath of God.<sup>68</sup>

Ahithophel's hostility toward David showed itself also on the following occasion. When David was digging the foundations of the Temple, a shard was found at a depth of fifteen hundred cubits. David was about to lift it, when the shard exclaimed: "Thou canst not do it." "Why not?" asked David. "Because I rest upon the abyss." "Since when?" "Since the hour in which the voice of God was heard to utter the words from Sinai, 'I am the Lord thy God', causing the earth to quake and sink into the abyss. I lie here to cover up the abyss." Nevertheless David lifted the shard, and the waters of the abyss rose and threatened to flood the earth. Ahithophel was standing by, and he thought to himself: "Now

David will meet with his death, and I shall be king." Just then David said: "Whoever knows how to stem the tide of waters, and fails to do it, will one day throttle himself."<sup>69</sup> Thereupon Ahithophel had the Name of God inscribed upon the shard, and the shard thrown into the abyss. The waters at once commenced to subside, but they sank to so great a depth that David feared the earth might lose her moisture, and he began to sing the fifteen "Songs of Ascents", to bring the waters up again.<sup>70</sup>

Nevertheless David's curse was realized. Ahithophel ended his days by hanging himself. His last will contained the following three rules of conduct:<sup>71</sup> 1. Refrain from doing aught against a favorite of fortune. 2. Take heed not to rise up against the royal house of David. 3. If the Feast of Pentecost falls on a sunny day, then sow wheat.<sup>72</sup>

Posterity has been favored with the knowledge of but a small part of Ahithophel's wisdom, and that little through two widely different sources, through Socrates,<sup>73</sup> who was his disciple, and through a fortune-book written by him.<sup>74</sup>

---

60. Berakot 3b, which reads: David did not engage in any war before he took counsel with Ahithophel. Targum Ps. 141.10 describes Ahithophel as the head of the Synedion.

61. Sanhedrin 101b; ps.-Jerome 2 Sam. 11.3. Ahithophel was at first David's best friend; Tehillim 55, 290.

62. Nedarim 37b; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29a; Tehillim 3, 38, which reads: His wisdom was superhuman, like that of an angel. Comp. also Tehillim 55, 391, which reads: David feared nobody except Ahithophel, who was his master and teacher in the knowledge of the Torah. According to some, David learned two things only from Ahithophel, to acquire colleagues with whom to study the Torah, and to walk quickly to the house of God for prayer and service; see Abot 6.2; Nispahim 18; Kallah 6, 16; Mahzor Vitry 556; Nehemias, Commentary on Abot, 77; BaR 18.17.

63. Sanhedrin 69b; compare footnote 97 on p. 906.

64. Sanhedrin 106b; Hagigah 15b; Tehillim 55, 292-293, and 119, 495 and 500. Compare with p. 906,



where a similar characteristic is attributed to Doeg. Ahitophel used to compose three prayers for each day; Yerushalmi Berakot 4, 8a (bottom), which is a play on the name Ahitophel אֲחִיתּוֹפֶל = אֲחִי תּוֹפֶל “brother of prayer”, i. e. “man of prayers”; comp., however, Ratner, *Ahabat Ziyon*, ad. loc. It was his pride which brought destruction upon him, as may be seen from his haughty behavior towards David at the removal of the ark (compare with p. 906); ER 31, 157.

65. Sanhedrin Mishnah 10.1. Compare footnote 100 on p. 906.

66. Sanhedrin 101b; an unknown Midrash in Yalkut II, 151 on 2 Sam. 16. Compare footnote 52 on p. 898, and footnote 2 on p. 981.

67. Yalkut II, 151 on 2 Sam. 16. Ahitophel thought that David was fallen from the grace of God for ever since he had committed the sin with Bath-sheba. But he did not know that “no sin can efface the merit acquired by the study of the Torah”, and these merits stood David in good stead in the time of his disgrace; see Sotah 21a; comp. also Baba Mezi’a 59a; PK 2, 10b; Tan. B. II, 106; Tan. Ki-Tissa 4; Tehillim 2, 38, which reads: Doeg and Ahitophel used to remark mockingly: “Is it conceivable that he who took the sheep and slew the shepherd should be able to make good?” On the reading “Doeg” in this passage, see Tosafot שניץ on Sotah, loc. cit.

68. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29a; BaR 4.20; ER 31, 157, which reads: The ark was suspended in the air, and Uzzah “put forth his hand” to take hold of it. The sinners in Israel then said: “Were it not for Uzzah, the ark would have dropped down to the ground.” No sooner did they utter these blasphemous words than Uzzah dropped dead. All then became convinced that the ark was able to support itself without human help. According to Sotah 35a, Uzzah eased himself near the ark, and as a punishment was smitten dead, whereas according to *Rimze Hafiarot*, Shemini, he brought his death upon himself by uncovering the ark. Compare footnotes 37 and 39 on p. 892. As to the grave error committed by David in putting the ark on a wagon, see Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 4.2; Aphraates, 363; Ephraem, 2 Sam. 6.7; see text on pp. 665 and 786; Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 47–48. On the number of functionaries appointed by David, see text on p. 587. The king chose pious men, and therefore passed over Ahitophel, who was wise but not pious; Hasidim 416.

69. Ahitophel ended his life by strangling himself; see 2 Sam. 17.18. A somewhat different reason for Ahitophel’s death by strangling is given in ER 31, 157.

70. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29a; Sukkah 53a–53b; Makkot 11a; Shemuel 26, 125; Ma’asiyyot (Gaster’s edition, 113–114); Raziel שמואל שמואל, *Sode Raza* as quoted in Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 1.1; *Hakam ha-Razim* in Yalkut Reubeni, Num. 26.56; Al-Barceloni, 72–73; Zohar

III, 198b. In the last source it is stated that David found a pot filled with magic herbs at the abyss where it was placed by Balak; compare with p. 605, and footnote 47 on p. 863. As to the waters below the holy of holies, see Mid-dor 2.6, and Yoma 77b–78a. All these Haggadahs belong to the cycle of legends concerning the Eben Shetiyah; see Index, s. v.

71. 2 Sam. 17.23 is quoted as proof for the law that the last wish of the dying has legal validity; comp. Baba Batra 147a.

72. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29a–29b; Baba Batra 147a (here the first rule of conduct reads: Do not engage in dissension, which is very likely a doublet to rule 2; comp. ER 31, 157); PRK 23a (as in Baba Batra, with the addition: When you begin to suffer the “travail of the Messiah”, start to prepare gifts for him). Comp. also Tosefta ‘Arakin 1.9.

73. R. Moses Isserles, *Torat ha-‘Olah* 1.11, quoting an “old source”.

74. On the fortune-book, see Steinschneider, *Hebräische Uebersetzungen*, 870.

## JOAB

Joab, the warrior, was a contrast to Ahitophel in every essential. He was David’s right hand. It was said, if Joab had not been there to conduct his wars, David would not have had leisure to devote himself to the study of the Torah. He was the model of a true Jewish hero, distinguished at the same time for his learning, piety, and goodness. His house stood wide open for all comers, and the campaigns which he undertook redounded invariably to the benefit of the people. They were indebted to him for luxuries even,<sup>75</sup> and more than that, he took thought for the welfare of scholars, he himself being the president of the Sanhedrin.<sup>76</sup>

It interested Joab to analyze the character of men and their opinions. When he heard King David’s words: “Like as a father pitieth his children, so the Lord pitieth them that fear him,” he expressed his astonishment that the comparison should be made with the love of a father for



a child, and not with the love of a mother; mother love as a rule is considered the stronger and the more self-sacrificing. He made up his mind to keep his eyes open, and observe whether David's idea was borne out by facts. On one of his journeys he happened into the house of a poor old man who had twelve children, all of whom the father supported, however meagrely, with the toil of his own hands. Joab proposed that he sell him one of the twelve children; he would thus be relieved of the care of one, and the selling-price could be applied to the better support of the rest. The good father rejected the proposition brusquely. Then Joab approached the mother, offering her a hundred gold denarii for one of the children. At first she resisted the temptation, but finally she yielded. When the father returned in the evening, he cut the bread, as was his wont, into fourteen pieces, for himself, his wife, and his twelve children. In allotting the portions he missed a child, and insisted upon being told its fate. The mother confessed what had happened during his absence. He neither ate nor drank, and next morning he set out, firmly resolved to return the money to Joab and to slay him if he should refuse to surrender the child. After much parleying, and after the father had threatened him with death, Joab yielded the child to the old man, with the exclamation: "Yes, David was right when he compared God's love for men to a father's love for his child. This poor fellow who has twelve children to support was prepared to fight me to the death for one of them, which the mother, who calmly stayed at home, had sold to me for a price."

Among all the heroic achievements of Joab, the most remarkable is the taking of the Amalekite capital. For six months the flower of the Israelitish army, twelve thousand in number, under the leadership of Joab, had been besieging the capital city of the Amalekites without result. The soldiers made representations to their gen-

eral, that it would be well for them to return home to their wives and children. Joab urged that this not only would earn for them contempt and derision, but also would invite new danger. The heathen would be encouraged to unite against the Israelites. He proposed that they hurl him into the city by means of a sling, and then wait forty days. If at the end of this period they saw blood flow from the gates of the fortress, it should be a sign to them that he was still alive.

His plan was executed. Joab took with him one thousand pieces of money and his sword. When he was cast from the sling, he fell into the courtyard of a widow, whose daughter caught him up. In a little while he regained consciousness. He pretended to be an Amalekite taken prisoner by the Israelites, and thrown into the city by his captors, who thus wished to inflict death. As he was provided with money, which he dispensed lavishly among his entertainers, he was received kindly, and was given the Amalekite garb. So apparelled, he ventured, after ten days, on a tour of inspection through the city, which he found to be of enormous size.

His first errand was to an armorer, to have him mend his sword, which had been broken by his fall. When the artisan scanned Joab's weapon, he started back—he had never seen a sword like it. He forged a new one, which snapped in two almost at once when Joab grasped it firmly. So it happened with a second sword, and with a third. Finally he succeeded in fashioning one that was acceptable. Joab asked the smith whom he would like him to slay with the sword, and the reply was, "Joab, the general of the Israelitish king." "I am he," said Joab, and when the smith in astonishment turned to look at him, Joab ran him through so skilfully that the victim had no realization of what was happening. Thereupon he hewed down five hundred Amalekite warriors whom he met on his way, and not one escaped



to betray him. The rumor arose that Asmodeus, the king of demons, was raging among the inhabitants of the city, and slaying them in large numbers.

After another period of ten days, which he spent in retirement with his hosts, Joab sallied forth a second time, and caused such bloodshed among the Amalekites that his gory weapon claved to his hand, and his right hand lost all power of independent motion, it could be made to move only in a piece with his arm. He hastened to his lodging place to apply hot water to his hand and free it from the sword. On his way thither the woman who had caught him up when he fell into the city called to him: "Thou eatest and drinkest with us, yet thou slayest our warriors." Seeing himself betrayed, he could not but kill the woman. Scarcely had his sword touched her, when it was separated from his hand, and his hand could move freely, for the dead woman had been with child, and the blood of the unborn babe loosed the sword.

After Joab had slain thousands, the Israelites without, at the very moment when they were beginning to mourn their general as dead, saw blood issue from the city, and joyfully they cried out with one accord: "Hear, O Israel, the Lord is our God, the Lord is One." Joab mounted a high tower, and in stentorian tones shouted: "The Lord will not forsake his people." Inspired with high and daring courage, the Israelites demanded permission to assault the city and capture it. As Joab turned to descend from the tower, he noticed that six verses of a Psalm were inscribed on his foot, the first verse running thus: "The Lord answers thee in the day of trouble, the name of the God of Jacob is thy defense." Later David added three verses and completed the Psalm. Thereupon the Israelites took the Amalekite capital, destroyed the heathen temples in the city, and slew all its inhabitants, ex-

cept the king, whom, with his crown of pure gold on his head, they brought before David.<sup>77</sup>

75. Sanhedrin 49a; Yerushalmi Makkot 2,31d; ps.-Jerome, 1 Kings 2.34.

76. Yerushalmi Makkot 2, 31d; Tan. B. IV, 166; Tan. Mass'e 12; BaR 23.13; PR 11, 43b. In these sources the Tahchemonite (2 Sam. 23.8) is said to refer to Joab who bore this name, "the wise", because of his having been the head of the academy. Allusion to this Haggadah is made in Chronicle of Ahimaaz, 112, line 12 where מְבִית יֹאב = of the house of the head of the academy. According to Mo'ed Katan 16b and Targum, 2 Sam., *loc. cit.*, as well as 1 Chron. 11.11, Tahchemonite is an attribute of David, who was as famous a scholar as a warrior.

77. The first Joab legend is found in BHM V, 52–53 (on the text see Löw, *Monatsschrift* XXVI, 240), and comp. VI, introduction, XVI–XVII; the second legend of which Joab is the hero is found in several sources independent of one another; see Gaster, *Exempla* No. 304; BHM V, 146–148; Makiri, Ps. 18, 115 (here correctly קְסָרִין=קְסָרִי Caesarea and not קִינְסָלִי as in BHM; comp. Megillah 6a אָדוֹם (קְסָרִי בֵּת אָדוֹם); Mahzor Vitry 332, giving Tehillim as source; Ma'aseh-book 42d–43c, No. 145. The last two call the city, captured by Joab, Rabbah of the children of Ammon, and this is very likely the correct reading, as the story ends with the incident that the crown of the captured king was given to David. This obviously refers to the biblical narrative (Sam. 12.30) concerning the crown of the king of Rabbah. On the effect of the blood upon the sword, see text on p. 858. The old sources contain many details concerning the war against Edom waged by David and Joab, some of which have been made use of in this Joab legend. It is said in Baba Batra 21a–21b that Joab had first slain the men of Edom only, sparing the women. This action was based on a faulty reading of Deut. 25.19, where the Bible speaks of "blotting out the remembrance of Amalek"; but instead of זִכָּר "remembrance", Joab's teacher had made him read זָכָר "male". When Joab found out the grave consequences of the faulty reading, he was so enraged that he was about to slay his teacher. ER 11, 54, on the other hand, maintains that Joab exterminated all the Edomites, with the exception of one pregnant woman; as proof for this assumption 1 Kings 11.16 is quoted, and this is only intelligible if we suppose that the Midrash read in 1 Kings, *loc. cit.*, זָכָר (= Deut., *loc. cit.*), and not זִכָּר as the Masorah has it. In his campaign against Edom Joab almost despaired of victory, and in a moment of despondency he addressed the following words to God: "O God, Thou hast cast us off, Thou hast broken us down, Thou hast been



angry.” No sooner did he utter these words than the earth began to tremble and quake because of Joab’s lack of trust in God. David became so enraged by Joab’s lack of faith that he intended to slay him. The shaking and trembling of the earth ceased at Joab’s prayer: “Heal the breaches thereof, for it tottereth.” See Tehillim 60, 305; the text is slightly corrupt, but by reading **יִאֲמַר יְיָ** get the proper meaning of the passage, which has baffled the commentators. Notwithstanding the great victory over Edom it was not as great as David had wished; Rome did not, like the rest of Edom (on Rome = Edom, see footnote 19 on p. 252), fall into his hands. The entire annihilation of Edom, including Rome, will not take place before the advent of the Messiah. Until then the descendants of Esau enjoy power and prosperity as a reward for the filial piety of their ancestor. See BR 1.16; DZ 21–23 and 24; Makiri, Ps. 60, 309; comp. Index, s. v. “Edom”, “Rome”, and “Esau”. David though fierce in battle, treated the bodies of the fallen warriors with piety, and cared for their burial. These human acts spread his fame throughout the world. See the quotation, from an unknown Midrash, in Rashi and Kimhi on 2 Sam. 8.13.

## DAVID’S PIETY AND HIS SIN

Neither his great achievements in war nor his remarkable good fortune moved David from his pious ways, or in aught changed his mode of life. Even after he became king he sat at the feet of his teachers, Ira the Jairite<sup>78</sup> and Mephibosheth. To the latter he always submitted his decisions on religious questions, to make sure that they were in accordance with law.<sup>79</sup> Whatever leisure time his royal duties afforded him, he spent in study and prayer. He contented himself with “sixty breaths” of sleep.<sup>80</sup> At midnight the strings of his harp,<sup>81</sup> which were made of the gut of the ram sacrificed by Abraham on Mount Moriah,<sup>82</sup> began to vibrate. The sound they emitted awakened David, and he would arise at once to devote himself to the study of the Torah.<sup>83</sup>

Besides study, the composition of psalms naturally claimed a goodly portion of his time. Pride filled his heart when he had completed the

Psalter, and he exclaimed: “O Lord of the world, is there another creature in the universe who like me proclaims Thy praise?” A frog came up to the king, and said: “Be not so proud; I have composed more psalms than thou, and, besides, every psalm my mouth has uttered I have accompanied with three thousand parables.”<sup>84</sup> And, truly, if David indulged in conceit, it was only for a moment. As a rule he was the exemplar of modesty. The coins which were stamped by him bore a shepherd’s crook and pouch on the obverse, and on the reverse the Tower of David.<sup>85</sup> In other respects, too, his bearing was humble, as though he were still the shepherd and not the king.<sup>86</sup>

His great piety invested his prayer with such efficacy that he could bring things in heaven down to earth.<sup>87</sup> It is natural that so godly a king should have used the first respite granted by his wars to carry out his design of erecting a house of worship to God. But in the very night in which David conceived the plan of building the Temple, God said to Nathan the prophet: “Hasten to David. I know him to be a man with whom execution follows fast upon the heels of thought, and I should not like him to hire laborers for the Temple work, and then, disappointed, complain of me. I furthermore know him to be a man who obligates himself by vows to do good deeds, and I desire to spare him the embarrassment of having to apply to the Sanhedrin for absolution from his vow.”<sup>88</sup>

When David heard Nathan’s message for him, he began to tremble, and he said: “Ah, verily, God hath found me unworthy to erect His sanctuary.” But God replied with these words: “Nay, the blood shed by thee I consider as sacrificial blood, but I do not care to have thee build the Temple, because then it would be eternal and indestructible.” “But that would be excellent,” said David. Whereupon the reply was vouchsafed him: “I foresee that Israel will commit sins.



I shall wreak My wrath upon the Temple, and Israel will be saved from annihilation. However, thy good intentions shall receive their due reward. The Temple, though it be built by Solomon, shall be called thine.”<sup>89</sup>

David’s thinking and planning were wholly given to what is good and noble. He is one of the few pious men over whom the evil inclination had no power.<sup>90</sup> By nature he was not disposed to commit such evil-doing as his relation to Bath-sheba involved. God Himself brought him to his crime, that He might say to other sinners: “Go to David and learn how to repent.”<sup>91</sup> Nor, indeed, may David be charged with gross murder and adultery. There were extenuating circumstances. In those days it was customary for warriors to give their wives bills of divorce, which were to have validity only if the soldier husbands did not return at the end of the campaign. Uriah having fallen in battle, Bath-sheba was a regularly divorced woman. As for the death of her husband, it cannot be laid entirely at David’s door, for Uriah had incurred the death penalty by his refusal to take his ease in his own house, according to the king’s bidding.<sup>92</sup> Moreover, from the first, Bath-sheba had been destined by God for David, but by way of punishment for having lightly promised Uriah the Hittite an Israelitish woman to wife, in return for his aid in unfastening the armor of the prostrate Goliath, the king had to undergo bitter trials before he won her.<sup>93</sup>

Furthermore, the Bath-sheba episode was a punishment for David’s excessive self-consciousness. He had fairly besought God to lead him into temptation, that he might give proof of his constancy. It came about thus: He once complained to God: “O Lord of the world, why do people say God of Abraham, God of Isaac, God of Jacob, and why not God of David?” The answer came: “Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob were tried by me, but thou hast not yet been proved.”

David entreated: “Then examine me, O Lord, and try me.” And God said: “I shall prove thee, and I shall even grant thee what I did not grant the Patriarchs. I shall tell thee beforehand that thou wilt fall into temptation through a woman.”

Once Satan appeared to him in the shape of a bird. David threw a dart at him. Instead of striking Satan, it glanced off and broke a wicker screen which hid Bath-sheba combing her hair. The sight of her aroused passion in the king.<sup>94</sup> David realized his transgression, and for twenty-two years he was a penitent. Daily he wept a whole hour and ate his “bread with ashes”.<sup>95</sup> But he had to undergo still heavier penance. For a half-year he suffered with leprosy, and even the Sanhedrin, which usually was in close personal attendance upon him, had to leave him. He lived not only in physical, but also in spiritual isolation, for the Shekinah departed from him during that time.<sup>96</sup>

---

78. Mo’ed Katan 16b; Targum 2 Sam. 20.26. As to the supposition that in Sam., *loc. cit.*, as well as in many other places, כהן means “master”, “teacher”, and not “priest”, see also Mekilta Amalek 1, 57b; Comp. note 141 and footnote 82 on p. 493. David is the bearer of many names in Scripture, some of which characterize him as a great warrior and others as a prominent scholar. See Mo’ed Katan, *loc. cit.*: Targum 2 Sam. 21.19 and 23.8; ps.-Jerome on Sam., *loc. cit.*, and 1 Chron. 11.11; Ruth R. 1.1; Targum Chron., *loc. cit.* Comp. also note 76. By assigning a multitude of names to David, the Haggadah harmonizes the contradictions between 2 Sam. 21.19, where the slayer of Goliath is called Elhanan, and 1 Sam. 17.1–54, where the slaying of this Philistine is ascribed to David. These two names belong to one person: David was called Elhanan, “he to whom God was gracious”. In 2 Sam. 23.8 it is David himself who is the greatest warrior of his time, “who slew at one time eight hundred,” and were it not for the sin he committed with Bath-sheba, he would have slain a thousand of his enemies at one time, as promised in the Torah to the pious; see Lev. 26.8; comp. Moed Katan *l. c.*; Targum and ps.-Jerome *ad loc.* Just as Amram received the priesthood as a reward for his zeal in the study of the Torah, even so did David receive the kingdom as a reward for his zeal in the study of the Torah, 2 ARN 48, 13l; comp.



also ER 2, 8; 3, 13, 15–16; Tehillim 25, 211. His devotion to the fulfilment of the Torah (see footnote 102 on p. 906) was equal to his zeal in the study thereof, so that he felt disappointed at the thought that there were moments in the life of a man when the body requires his entire attention, disturbing him from his religious activity. He, however, consoled himself with the thought that the Jew has the sign of the covenant of Abraham on his body, and may therefore be said to be constantly fulfilling God's command; see Sifre D., 36; Midrash Tannaim 29; Tosefta Berakot (end); Yerushalmi 9,14d; Menahot 43b; Tehillim 6, 38; Makiri, Ps. 119, 230. Lovingkindness was one of David's chief virtues; he would not permit a day to pass without giving alms to the poor. He would usually distribute charity before entering the house of prayer (Alphabet of Ben Sira 8a). But above all virtues he prized justice. In his capacity as judge he never decided a case in favor of a poor man, if he was guilty, but insisted on justice being done (compare with p. 587), though after the poor man had satisfied the law, he could count without fail on the liberality and generosity of the king. See ARN 33, 94; DR 5.3; Tosefta Sanhedrin 1.2 and Babli 6b. The last two sources maintain that it was David's rule to arbitrate between the litigants; but when he failed in his effort, he let justice take its course. His respect for justice was so great that he never availed himself of his constitutional rights as king (on these rights see footnote 47, end, on p. 895), which permitted him, under certain circumstances, to disregard the right of private property. If interests of the state compelled him to make use of his royal prerogative, he would first apply to the court for a permit, and even then he would indemnify those whose property he seized. A case of this kind is hinted at in 2 Sam. 23.13–17. David was in need of such a permit, but the Synedion which could grant him one was not near him; so three of his valiant warriors volunteered to break through the battle-lines of the enemy and put the case before the Synedion. According to another view, however, the passage in 2 Sam., *loc. cit.*, refers to something entirely different. The three valiant warriors risked their lives to fetch water for libation, as it was the feast of Tabernacles, when the ceremony of the water-libation is performed. See Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 2, 20b–20c; Baba Kamma 60b; Shemuel 20, 105; Ruth R. 2.9; ps.-Jerome, 1 Chron. 11.18. Notwithstanding the great care David took in meting out justice, he nevertheless once committed a judicial murder, and had a very pious man executed on the false testimony of two witnesses, who accused him of bug-gery; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 6, 23b–23c. This legend with many elaborations is also found in Arabic literature; comp. Salzberger, *Salomo-Sage*, I. 55, who is not acquainted with the Jewish prototype of the legend given by him. That David described himself as “godly” (Ps. 86.2, חַסִּיד) was not due to conceit, which would have been pardonable in

his case, but he wished to say that he was “like God”, inasmuch as he bore the insults heaped upon him, like the Lord who patiently bears the blasphemies of the heathen. See Tehillim 16, 123, and 96, 372. This Haggadah derives חַסִּיד “godly” from חָסַד “insult”; as to the etymology of this word, see note 190 on p. 43 towards the middle. David was called “the servant of the Lord” (compare footnote 880 on p. 802) after he repented of his sin because the Lord exalts the honor of the repentant sinner. See Tehillim 18, 136.

79. Berakot 4a; compare with p. 906. According to a Jewish legend in ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam. 4.2, it was Mephibosheth who instigated the slaying of his uncle Ishbosheth in the hope of succeeding him as king.

80. Sukkah 26b; Zohar I, 206b–207b, which reads: The deep sleep after “sixty breaths of the horse” is a foretaste of death, and therefore David would never indulge in a deep sleep. Comp. Berakot 57b. It is said that “sixty breaths” are a little more than half an hour. Comp. Lewysohn, *Zoologie d. Tal.* 137, note 2.

81. Opinions differ as to the number of these strings. Some maintain that David's harp had only seven strings, whereas the harp to be used in Messianic times will have eight; but according to others, the strings of David's harp numbered ten. See Tosefta 'Arakin 2.7; Babli 13b; PR 21 (beginning); Tan. B. IV, 50; BaR 15.11; Tehillim 81, 366, and 92, 406; PRE 19. David would never have composed the Psalms without the aid of music, as the Holy Spirit came over him only when he was put in a state of ecstasy by music, see Tehillim 24, 204, and comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 12.3, as well as text on p. 391. The Psalms, to a great extent, consist of revelations made to David by the Holy Spirit concerning the future history of Israel; see Tehillim 4, 40, and 24, 204; Pesahim 117a–118a; Gittin 57b; Ekah 2, 111. Comp. note 24. The passages in Psalms dealing with Israel's salvation refer to the Messianic salvation; see quotation from Midrash in Mahzor Vitry 8; Pardes 57d; Siddur Rashi 9.

82. PRE 21 (on the text see R. Bahya, Exod. 19.13); compare with p. 230.

83. Berakot 3b; Yerushalmi 1, 2d; PK 7, 62b–63a; PR 196a; Tehillim 22, 185; 57, 298; 108, 464; Ekah 2, 121; ER 18, 96; Zohar III, 175b. Comp. Löw, *Lebensalter*, 315–316, who fully discusses this legend and its relation to the Aeol's harp of the Greeks. See also R. Schmidt, *Pancatantram*, 21, on the Indian form of the legend. A rationalistic explanation of the legend concerning David's harp is given by R. Hai Gaon; see Löw *op. cit.*, 317, and Shu'aib, Bo, 28c. The Talmudim and Midrashim often speak of the night as the proper time for prayer and study (comp., e. g., 'Abodah Zarah 3b, and footnote 254 on p. 617), but the praying at midnight (*Hazot*) is first found in the mystic literature of the Middle Ages. Compare footnote 194 on



p. 45. Great praise is bestowed upon David for the devotion with which he prayed; see Berakot 30b; PR 9, 32a.

84. Perek Shirah; Yalkut on Ps. (end); Zohar III, 222b and 232b (as to the remark made here concerning the frogs, see text on p. 527); Zohar Hadash, Ahare Mot תנא חזי (end); comp. Steinschneider, *Hebräische Bibliographie*, XIII, 104. On the parables, see text on p. 131, and text on p. 950. David prayed to God that the reading of his Psalms might be accounted to men as meritorious as the reading of the Torah, so that "his lips should move gently in the grave" while the people occupy themselves with his work, and in this manner he would have eternal life as his share; Tehillim 1, 9; 30, 334; 61, 306; Yerushalmi Berakot 2, 4b, and parallel passages. On the composition of the Psalms, see text on p. 823, and further Tehillim 1, 8 (parallel passages are cited by Buber); Zohar II, 101a; Berakot 9b–10a. In the last passage it is stated that the favorite psalms of David are those beginning with Ashre, "Happy is he", whereas according to others the alphabetic ones have this distinction. Comp. the quotation from an unknown Mid-rash in Shu'aib, Shelah (beginning); Kimha Dabishuna ברוך שומר for Sabbath morning. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 12.3, David being freed from wars and dangers, and enjoying for the remainder of his life a profound peace, composed songs and hymns to God in several sorts of meters: some of those which he made were trimeters, and others pentameters. He also made instruments of music, and taught the Levites to sing hymns to God, both on the Sabbath day and on festivals. It is rather strange that Josephus limits the songs in the Temple to the Sabbaths and festivals, though there can be no doubt that in his time the song was a daily feature; comp. Tamid (end). See, however, Sifre N., 77 and Sifre Z., 72.

85. BR 39.11; Baba Kamma 97b. The money coined by Solomon bore his own and his father's names (figures?) on the obverse, and Jerusalem (figure or name?) on the reverse side. Compare footnote 46 on p. 180.

86. Sotah 10b; Megillah 11a; Mo'ed Katan 16b. On the reverence shown by David to the scholars, and particularly to his master Ira, see also Shir 1.2, and ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam. 20.26. When, however, the interests of the state demanded resolute and decisive action, David knew how to play the master and lord; Sotah 40b; compare with p. 817. After he had slain Goliath, the women hailed him with the words: "Saul hath slain his thousands, and David his ten thousands." But David with true humility, spoke: "O Lord of the universe, Thou wagest war, and unto Thee belongs the victory." See Tehillim 36, 249. As a truly modest man, he even doubted whether the promises of honor and glory made to him by God would ever be fulfilled. Not that he doubted the power of God, but being aware of his sinfulness, he feared that he forfeited them. Comp. Berakot 4a, and see text on p. 296.

87. Hagigah 12b; compare with p. 5. David's prayer for "exiled Israel" had the effect that even when subjected to foreign powers, Israel never occupies a despised state. Were it not for David's prayer, the Israelites in exile would have been "sellers of wax" (= poor peddlers); Sotah 49a. Juvenal, *Saturnalia*, 6, 542, alludes to the Jews selling wax-candles in Rome. Comp. Sanhedrin 95a; note 110, end; note 115 on p. 1158.

88. Shemuel 26, 125. It is a prerogative of the Davidic kings that they (according to some sources, they and the high priests) are permitted to sit in the Temple court (עזרה), whereas all others must remain standing. Hence Scripture (2 Sam. 7.18) mentions the fact that David, on receiving the divine revelation concerning the building of the Temple by his son, "went and *sat* before the Lord." Comp. Tehillim 1, 1–3; Yerushalmi Pesahim 5, 32d and parallel passages on the margin; Yoma 25b, and parallel passages on the margin, as well as footnote 9 on p. 983. David desired so ardently to erect the house of God, that he was full of joy when he heard the people say: "O that the time would soon come when the old man (David) will die, and Solomon will proceed with the building of the Temple." See Makkot 10a; Yerushalmi Berakot 21, 4b; DR 5.3. Nathan the prophet before receiving the revelation concerning the building of the Temple by Solomon strongly encouraged David in his plan to erect a permanent house of God; Tehillim 62, 308–309. This prophet, by the way, was the son of one of David's brothers, but was brought up by his grandfather Jesse, and is therefore counted sometimes as a son of the latter. Accordingly there is no contradiction between 1 Sam. 16.10 and 1 Chron. 3.13. Comp. ps.-Jerome on Sam., *loc. cit.* See also note 23, and footnote 11 on p. 947.

89. PR 2, 7a–7b; Tehillim 62, 309. Comp. also Mekilta Shirah 1, 34b, which reads: The Temple, though built by Solomon, is nevertheless called the "house of David" (see Ps. 30.1), because the latter had set his heart upon the building of the Temple; had not God prevented him, he would have carried out his plan. Compare footnote 59 on p. 562.—David was engaged in war all his life. He never had a pleasant dream, being always troubled by bad dreams, whereas Ahitophel always had pleasant dreams; Berakot 55b; Zohar I, 200a.

90. Baba Batra 17a. Compare with p. 237.

91. 'Abodah Zarah 4b–5a. Comp. also quotation from an unknown Midrash in Shu'aib, *Kippurim*, 121a.

92. Shabbat 56a; Ketubot 9b; Kiddushin 43a. In contrast to this exoneration of David, comp. Shemuel 25, 122–123, where he is severely censured not only for his sins attributed to him in Scripture, but for many others. The Midrash maintains that Uriah was not the only one whose death was caused by David. Even Nathan the prophet would have been killed by him, if he had dared to



talk about the king's crime. The prophet was continually watched by the king's spies that he should not "divulge" anything. See also quotation from an unknown Midrash in Shu'aib, *Kippurim*, 121a; text on p. 901, and note 33.

93. Quotation from an unknown Midrash in Al-Sheikh, 2 Sam. 12. Compare with p. 916. Sanhedrin 107a reads: Bath-sheba was destined to become David's wife from the creation of the world; but he took her while she was not mature. This is a play on the name Bath-sheba, which in later Hebrew denotes "a fine quality of figs" (comp., e. g., Ma'aserot 2.8), with פגה "an unripe fig". A brilliant defence of David by God against the accusations of the angel Duma (= prince of hell; comp. Index, s. v.) is given in Zohar I, 8b (on the "three months" in this passage, see Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 31, note 2), 94a; II, 107a; III, 78b. The question about the shepherd and the lambkin in Yoma 66b refers, according to a geonic tradition, to David (comp. R. Hananel and Tosafot, *ad loc.*, as well as Ginzberg, *Geonica* II, 19), and was very likely addressed to R. Eliezer by Jewish Gnostics who condemned David. Comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 28–30. Comp. also note 67.

94. Sanhedrin 107a; Tehillim 18, 157; 26, 216; midrashic Genizah fragment in the University Library at Cambridge. As to David's wish to be considered like the three patriarchs, see also Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 141; Pesahim 117b; Shemuel 26, 126; Tehillim 18, 139; Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 4, 59c; Zohar I, 82a; ps.-Jerome, 1 Chron. 17.8. Comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 295–297, with regard to the relation of God to the three patriarchs as shown in the expression "the God of Abraham, etc." and see further footnote 304 on p. 318, as well as footnote 4 on p. 451. The liturgy has the expression "God, the shield of David", but it is used only in the benediction after reading the Haftarah. Did the Haftarah, in olden times, close with a passage from the Psalms? According to Mo'ed Katan 16a, God spoke to David: "I shall reward thee for thy humility, and shall make thee like unto Me, inasmuch as thou shalt be able to annul my decrees (David's prayer will avert the decreed punishment). I shall further make thee 'the head of the three' (patriarchs)". Compare also with p. 318; text on p. 451.

95. ER 2, 7. Comp. also Apocalypse of Sedrach 14, which reads: David was saved by tears.

96. Yoma 22b; Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 1, 56b; Sanhedrin 107b; Shemuel 26, 127. On the basis of this Haggadah, 2 Sam. 5.5 is brought in harmony with 1 Kings 2.11. According to the last source, the six months during which David was isolated physically and spiritually are disregarded in giving the number of the years of his reign. Other authorities (Yerushalmi, Shemuel, *loc. cit.*; Ruth R. 2.14) maintain that the six months during which David was in flight from Absalom are disregarded in 1 Kings, *loc.*

*cit.* Both these views are also given in ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam. 5.4–5. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 43–46. The word נמרצת (1 Kings 2.8) is to be taken as the initials of the five insulting names hurled at David by Shimei; he called him "adulterer" (נואף=נ), Moabite (מואבי=מ), "murderer" (רוצח=ר), according to others, רשע "wicked", "leper" (צרוע=צ), and "abomination" (תועבה=ת). See Shabbat 105a; Tehillim 3, 36; BaR 9.7; ps.-Jerome, 1 Kings, *loc. cit.* Comp. Ginzberg, *ibid.*, 72. On the view that David was punished with leprosy for committing adultery, compare also with p. 435, where it is said that Reuben was punished in the same manner for a similar sin, and see further note 2 on p. 982, end; Index, s. v. "Leprosy". Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 9, 4.

## ABSALOM'S REBELLION

Of all the punishments, however, inflicted upon David, none was so severe as the rebellion of his own son.

Absalom was of such gigantic proportions that a man who was himself of extraordinary size, standing in the eyesocket of his skull, sank in down to his nose.<sup>97</sup> As for his marvellous hair, the account of it in the Bible does not convey a notion of its abundance. Absalom had taken the vow of a Nazarite. As his vow was for life, and because the growth of his hair was particularly heavy, the law permitted him to clip it slightly every week.<sup>98</sup> It was of this small quantity that the weight amounted to two hundred shekels.

Absalom arranged for his audacious rebellion with great cunning. He secured a letter from his royal father empowering him to select two elders for his suite in every town he visited. With this document he travelled through the whole of Palestine. In each town he went to the two most distinguished men, and invited them to accompany him, at the same time showing them what his father had written, and assuring them that they had been chosen by him because he had a particular affection for them. So he succeeded in gathering the presidents of two



hundred courts about him. This having been accomplished, he arranged a large banquet, at which he seated one of his emissaries between every two of his guests, for the purpose of winning them over to his cause. The plan did not succeed wholly, for, though the elders of the towns stood by Absalom, in their hearts they hoped for David's victory.<sup>99</sup>

The knowledge that a part of Absalom's following sided with him in secret,—that, though he was pursued by his son, his friends remained true to him,—somewhat consoled David in his distress. He thought that in these circumstances, if the worst came to the worst, Absalom would at least feel pity for him.<sup>100</sup> At first, however, the despair of David knew no bounds. He was on the point of worshipping an idol, when his friend Hushai the Archite approached him, saying: "The people will wonder that such a king should serve idols." David replied: "Should a king such as I am be killed by his own son? It is better for me to serve idols than that God should be held responsible for my misfortune, and His Name thus be desecrated." Hushai reproached him: "Why didst thou marry a captive?" "There is no wrong in that," replied David, "it is permitted according to the law." Thereupon Hushai: "But thou didst disregard the connection between the passage permitting it and the one that follows almost immediately after it in the Scriptures, dealing with the disobedient and rebellious son, the natural issue of such a marriage."<sup>101</sup>

Hushai was not the only faithful friend and adherent David had. Some came to his rescue unexpectedly, as, for instance, Shobi, the son of Nahash, who is identical with the Ammonite king Hanun, the enemy of David at first, and later his ally.<sup>102</sup> Barzillai, another one of his friends in need, also surprised him by his loyalty, for on the whole his moral attitude was not the highest conceivable.<sup>103</sup>

Absalom's end was beset with terrors. When he was caught in the branches of the oak-tree, he was about to sever his hair with a sword stroke, but suddenly he saw hell yawning beneath him, and he preferred to hang in the tree to throwing himself into the abyss alive.<sup>104</sup> Absalom's crime was, indeed, of a nature to deserve the supreme torture, for which reason he is one of the few Jews who have no portion in the world to come.<sup>105</sup> His abode is in hell, where he is charged with the control of ten heathen nations in the second division. Whenever the avenging angels sit in judgment on the nations, they desire to visit punishment on Absalom, too, but each time a heavenly voice is heard to call out: "Do not chastise him, do not burn him. He is an Israelite, the son of My servant David." Whereupon Absalom is set upon his throne, and is accorded the treatment due to a king.<sup>106</sup> That the extreme penalties of hell were thus averted from him, was on account of David's eightfold repetition of his son's name in his lament over him. Besides, David's intercession had the effect of re-attaching Absalom's severed head to his body.<sup>107</sup>

At his death Absalom was childless, for all his children, his three sons and his daughter, died before him, as a punishment for his having set fire to a field of grain belonging to Joab.<sup>108</sup>

97. Niddah 24b; BaR 9.24.

98. Tosefta Sotah 3.16; Nazir 4a; BaR 9.24; Shemuel 27 (here two conflicting views are also given, according to one Absalom clipped his hair monthly; according to the other, once a year only); Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 8.5; Vulgate and ps.-Jerome on 2 Sam. 14.26. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 54.

99. Tan. B. I, 155–156; BaR 9, 24 (the elders who joined Absalom soon found out his true character); Yerushalmi Sotah 1, 17b. Comp. also Tehillim 55, 292, which reads: The prayers of the members of the Synedion for David had the effect that the counsel given by Ahitophel was not followed by Absalom. Compare with p. 983.

100. Berakot 7b; Tehillim 3, 34. Owing to an incorrect reading in Tehillim, *loc. cit.* (עם instead of אצל), Zo-



har, I, 151b, maintains that David felt some consolation in the fact that the leaders of the people remained faithful to him, and did not join Absalom; comp. the preceding note. In the Book of Psalms the psalm which David composed “when he fled from Absalom” follows the one concerning Gog and Magog (the “nations in uproar against God and the Messiah”; comp. Ps. 2 and 3). The reason is that if one should say: “How is it possible that the slave should rebel against his master?”, he will receive the answer: “Behold, it even happened that the son rebelled against his father.” See Berakot 10a.

101. Sanhedrin 107a; DR 4.4; Zohar III, 24a; EZ 3, 177; ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam. 15.25. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 53–54. David served an idol because he wished to make his fate appear just in the eyes of men, who would say: “Behold, he merited his punishment.” That David on this occasion had his head covered and went barefoot (2 Sam. 16.30) was due to the fact that the Synedion excommunicated him (on account of his sin with Bath-sheba?), and one who is excommunicated is forbidden to put on shoes or to have his head uncovered. The ban was removed from him by his master Ira. Comp. Shemuel 8, 70; BaR 3.2; Zohar II, 107b. See also Mo’ed Katan 15a.

102. Tehillim 2, 34–36, where also the different kinds of food sent by David’s friends (2 Sam. 17.28–29) are described in detail.

103. Shabbat 152a, which reads: Barzillai had led a lascivious life, and having spent his strength, he could not enjoy life any more when he became old; comp. 2 Sam. 19.36. In Tehillim 2, 35–36 it is stated that David had feared these very men who came to his assistance. Barzillai was a proselyte; see Jerushalmi Kiddushin 4.65b.

104. Sotah 10b; BaR 9.24; PRE 53. Absalom’s miserable end is often referred to in the Haggadah to illustrate the rule that God “punishes measure for measure,” and it is shown in detail how Absalom’s fate corresponded to his sins. Comp. Sotah, Mishnah 1.8; Tosefta 3.16–17; Yerushalmi 1, 17b; Babli, and BaR, *loc. cit.*; Mekilta Shirah 6, 40a.

105. Sanhedrin 103b. Comp. Yoma 66b, and footnote 100 on p. 906.

106. Ma’aseh de Rabbi Joshua b. Levi in BHM II, 50–51.

107. Sotah 10b. This passage records also the different view that David’s prayer brought Absalom into paradise. David, however, was punished for his great love for his wicked son, and eight of his sons (Bath-Sheba’s first child, Amnon, Absalom, Adonijah, and four others; compare with p. 936) died a premature death, corresponding to the eight times he cried out in agony: “My son”, about the wicked Absalom (2 Sam. 19.1 and 5). Eight rulers of the Davidic dynasty likewise died a violent death. These are: Joram, Ahaziah, Athaliah, Jehoash, Amaziah, Amon,

Josiah, and Jehoiakim. See the quotation, from an unknown Midrash, in Hasidim 107; compare also p. 901. As to Jehoiakim’s violent death, see text on p. 1060. The death of David’s sons and descendants was also a punishment for his having kept himself in a place of safety, while his army fought against Absalom. Comp. 2 Sam. 18.3, *seq.* See further text on p. 901. David’s great love for Absalom may be judged from the way he acted towards the Ethiopian and Ahimaaz. The former who informed him of Absalom’s death he had executed, and the latter, who attempted to keep it a secret for a time, was appointed to a high office. Comp. PK 32, 196a–196b; see also PRE 53.

108. Sotah 11a. This passage records also the different opinion that Absalom left sons, but that they were so insignificant that Scripture (2 Sam. 18.18) speaks of them as though he died childless. Ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam., *loc. cit.*, mentions both views in a somewhat confused manner. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggadah bei den Kirchenv.*, 60–61, where attention is drawn to Targum 2 Sam., *loc. cit.*, which paraphrases בן of the text by בר קימא: Absalom had children, but they died at an early age. In view of 2 Chron. 11.21 there can be no doubt that Absalom had a daughter, and accordingly בנים in the sources quoted is to be taken literally “sons”.

## DAVID’S ATONEMENT

All these sufferings did not suffice to atone for David’s sin. God once said to him: “How much longer shall this sin be hidden in thy hand and remain unatoned? On thy account the priestly city of Nob was destroyed,<sup>109</sup> on thy account Doeg the Edomite was cast out of the communion of the pious, and on thy account Saul and his three sons were slain. What dost thou desire now—that thy house should perish, or that thou thyself shouldst be delivered into the hands of thine enemies?” David chose the latter doom.

It happened one day when he was hunting, Satan, in the guise of a deer, enticed him further and further, into the very territory of the Philistines, where he was recognized by Ishbi the giant, the brother of Goliath, his adversary. Desirous of avenging his brother, he seized David,



and cast him into a winepress, where the king would have suffered a torturous end, if by a miracle the earth beneath him had not begun to sink, and so saved him from instantaneous death. His plight, however, remained desperate, and it required a second miracle to rescue him.

In that hour Abishai, the cousin of David, was preparing for the advent of the Sabbath, for the king's misfortune happened on Friday as the Sabbath was about to come in. When Abishai poured out water to wash himself, he suddenly caught sight of drops of blood in it. Then he was startled by a dove that came to him plucking out her plumes, and moaning and wailing. Abishai exclaimed: "The dove is the symbol of the people of Israel. It cannot be but that David, the king of Israel, is in distress." Not finding the king at home, he was confirmed in his fears, and he determined to go on a search for David on the swiftest animal at his command, the king's own saddle-beast. But first he had to obtain the permission of the sages to mount the animal ridden by the king, for the law forbids a subject to avail himself of things set aside for the personal use of a king. Only the impending danger could justify the exception made in this case.

Scarcely had Abishai mounted the king's animal, when he found himself in the land of the Philistines, for the earth had contracted miraculously. He met Orpah, the mother of the four giant sons. She was about to kill him, but he anticipated the blow and slew her. Ishbi, seeing that he now had two opponents, stuck his lance into the ground, and hurled David up in the air, in the expectation that when he fell he would be transfixed by the lance. At that moment Abishai appeared, and by pronouncing the Name of God he kept David suspended 'twixt heaven and earth.

Abishai questioned David how such evil plight had overtaken him, and David told him of his conversation with God, and how he himself

had chosen to fall into the hands of the enemy, rather than permit the ruin of his house. Abishai replied: "Reverse thy prayer, plead for thyself, and not for thy descendants. Let thy children sell wax, and do thou not afflict thyself about their destiny." The two men joined their prayers, and pleaded with God to avert David's threatening doom. Abishai again uttered the Name of God, and David dropped to earth uninjured. Now both of them ran away swiftly, pursued by Ishbi. When the giant heard of his mother's death, his strength forsook him, and he was slain by David and Abishai.<sup>110</sup>

---

109. By his lack of precaution he caused Saul's suspicion against the priests of Nob; comp. also vol. IV, pp. 257–258. Against this view, see Sanhedrin 104a; ER 12, 60. Compare also footnote 92 on p. 901.

110. Sanhedrin 95a; BR 59.11; Tan. B. I, 150–151; Tan. Wa-Yeze (according to the Tanhumas, Joab and Abishai hastened to David's assistance from the land of the Ammonites; comp., however, Tehillim, 60, 305); Hullin 91b; Tehillim 18, 157–159; BHM IV, 140–141; Hibbur Ma'as. No 5; Likkutim, I, 21b–22b; *Neweh Shalom* 55–56; Zohar Ruth 1.14. Comp. also Gaster *Exempla*, 111–113 which offers some interesting variants to our texts of Sanhedrin. On the withering of the wreath as a sign of death, see footnote 20 on p. 457. On the Persian elements in this legend see *R.E.J.* II, 300, and XVII, 202, *seq.* On the dove as Israel's symbol, see Berakot 53b; Shir 2.14 and 4.1; 4 Ezra 5.26; ps.-Philo, 40; 39.5. On David's saddle-beast, see text on p. 945. On the miracle of the contraction of the earth, see footnote 287 on p. 239. On Orpha the mother of the giants, see text on pp. 863 and 915. As to the saying, "Let thy children sell wax", see note 87.

## VISITATIONS

Among the sorrows of David are the visitations that came upon Palestine during his reign, and he felt them all the more as he had incurred them through his own fault. There was first the famine, which was so desolating that it



is counted among the ten severest that are to happen from the time of Adam to the time of the Messiah.<sup>111</sup> During the first year that it prevailed, David had an investigation set on foot to discover whether idolatry was practiced in the land, and was keeping back the rain. His suspicion proved groundless. The second year he looked into the moral conditions of his realm, for lewdness can bring about the same punishment as idolatry. Again he was proved wrong. The third year, he turned his attention to the administration of charity. Perhaps the people had incurred guilt in this respect, for abuses in this department also were visited with the punishment of famine.<sup>112</sup> Again his search was fruitless, and he turned to God to inquire of Him the cause of the public distress. God's reply was: "Was not Saul a king anointed with holy oil, did he not abolish idolatry, is he not the companion of Samuel in Paradise? Yet, while you all dwell in the land of Israel, he is 'outside of the land.' " David, accompanied by the scholars and the nobles of his kingdom, at once repaired to Jabesh-gilead, disinterred the remains of Saul and Jonathan, and in solemn procession bore them through the whole land of Israel to the inheritance of the tribe of Benjamin. There they were buried. The tributes of affection paid by the people of Israel to its dead king aroused the compassion of God, and the famine came to an end.<sup>113</sup>

The sin against Saul was now absolved, but there still remained Saul's own guilt in his dealings with the Gibeonites, who charged him with having killed seven of their number. David asked God why He had punished His people on account of proselytes. God's answer to him was: "If thou dost not bring near them that are far off, thou wilt remove them that are near by." To satisfy their vengeful feelings, the Gibeonites demanded the life of seven members of Saul's family. David sought to mollify them, repre-

senting to them that they would derive no benefit from the death of their victims, and offering them silver and gold instead. But though David treated with each one of them individually, the Gibeonites were relentless. When he realized their hardness of heart, he cried out: "Three qualities God gave unto Israel; they are compassionate, chaste, and gracious in the service of their fellow-men. The first of these qualities the Gibeonites do not possess, and therefore they must be excluded from communion with Israel."<sup>114</sup>

The seven descendants of Saul to be surrendered to the Gibeonites were determined by letting all his posterity pass by the Ark of the law. Those who were arrested before it were the designated victims. Mephibosheth would have been one of the unfortunates, had he not been permitted to pass by unchecked in answer to the prayer of David,<sup>115</sup> to whom he was dear, not only as the son of his friend Jonathan, but also as the teacher who instructed him in the Torah.<sup>116</sup>

The cruel fate that befell the descendants of Saul had a wholesome effect. All the heathen who saw and heard exclaimed: "There is no God like unto the God of Israel, there is no nation like unto the nation of Israel; the wrong inflicted upon wretched proselytes has been expiated by the sons of kings." So great was the enthusiasm among the heathen over this manifestation of the Jewish sense of justice that one hundred and fifty thousand of them were converted to Judaism.<sup>117</sup>

As for David, his wrong in connection with the famine lay in his not having applied his private wealth to the amelioration of the people's suffering. When David returned victorious from the combat with Goliath, the women of Israel gave him their gold and silver ornaments. He put them aside for use in building the Temple, and even during the three years' famine this fund



was not touched. God said: "Thou didst refrain from rescuing human beings from death, in order to save thy money for the Temple. Verily, the Temple shall not be built by thee, but by Solomon."<sup>118</sup>

David is still more blameworthy on account of the census which he took of the Israelites in defiance of the law in the Pentateuch. When he was charged by the king with the task of numbering the people, Joab used every effort to turn him away from his intention. But in vain. Incensed, David said: "Either thou art king and I am the general, or I am king and thou art the general." Joab had no choice but to obey. He selected the tribe of Gad as the first to be counted, because he thought that the Gadites, independent and self-willed, would hinder the execution of the royal order, and David would be forced to give up his plan of taking a census. The Gadites disappointed the expectations of Joab, and he betook himself to the tribe of Dan, hoping that if God's punishment descended, it would strike the idolatrous Danites. Disliking his mission as he did, Joab spent nine months in executing it, though he might have dispatched it in a much shorter time. Nor did he carry out the king's orders to the letter. He himself warned the people of the census. If he saw the father of a family of five sons, he would bid him conceal a few of them. Following the example set by Moses, he omitted the Levites from the enumeration, likewise the tribe of Benjamin, because he entertained particularly grave apprehensions in behalf of this greatly decimated tribe.<sup>119</sup> In the end, David was not informed of the actual number obtained. Joab made two lists, intending to give the king a partial list if he found that he had no suspicion of the ruse.<sup>120</sup>

The prophet Gad came to David and gave him the choice of famine, oppression by enemies, or the plague, as the penalty for the heavy crime of popular census-taking. David was in

the position of a sick man who is asked whether he prefers to be buried next to his father or next to his mother. The king considered: "If I choose the calamities of war, the people will say, 'He cares little, he has his warriors to look to.' If I choose famine, they will say, 'He cares little, he has his riches to look to.' I shall choose the plague, whose scourge strikes all alike."<sup>121</sup> Although the plague raged but a very short time,<sup>122</sup> it claimed a large number of victims. The most serious loss was the death of Abishai, whose piety and learning made him the counterpoise of a host of seventy-five thousand.<sup>123</sup>

David raised his eyes on high, and he saw the sins of Israel heaped up from earth to heaven. In the same moment an angel descended, and slew his four sons, the prophet Gad, and the elders who accompanied him. David's terror at this sight, which was but increased when the angel wiped his dripping sword on the king's garments, settled in his limbs, and from that day on they never ceased to tremble.<sup>124</sup>

---

111. BR 25.3. Compare with p. 189, and text on p. 862. David caused the famine by bestowing all the priestly gifts on one person, his master Ira, instead of distributing them among several priests; 'Erubin 63a. On Ira, see also note 78 beginning, according to which he was not a priest. This famine was so grievous that the people were forced to eat bitter vetches (כרשינר *ervilia*; comp. Löw, *Erve und Wicke*, in *Zeitschrift für Assyriologie* XXX) which is ordinarily used only as fodder. David then ordained that the priestly gifts should be set aside from vetches, since in case of necessity it can be used as food for men; Yerushalmi Hallah 4, 60b; ER 13,67.

112. Yerushalmi Ta'anit 3, 66c, and Kiddushin 4, 65b–65c; Yebamot 78b; PRE 17; BaR 8.4. The last-named source contains a glowing praise of the proselytes; see the similar remarks of the Rabbis concerning proselytes in Tan. B. I, 63, and ShR 19.4. As to the sins which keep back the rain, see Ta'anit 7b; Mishle 25, 97–98; Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 771; quotation from Yerushalmi (?) in Sabba', Bereshit, 5a (not in our texts); ps.-Philo, 45; 44 (end), which reads: Therefore if they shall speak lies before Me, I will command the heaven and it shall defraud them of rain. This is based on a midrashic interpretation of Prov.



25.14. Comp. Ta'anit and Midrash Mishle, *loc. cit.* See also Ta'anit 10b, which reads: Just as the Babylonians are deceptive, even so are the clouds of their country.

113. PRE 17; BaR 8.4. See also Shemuel 28, 132–133, and the references cited in the preceding note. On the piety of Saul, “Samuel’s companion in paradise”, see text on p. 701. According to ps.-Philo, 57; 62.2, the spirit rested on Saul, and he prophesied, saying: “Why art thou deceived, O Saul? Whom dost thou persecute in vain? The time of thy kingdom is at an end. Go to thy place, for thou shalt die, and David shall reign. Shalt not thou and thy sons (read *filios tuos*, instead of *filius tuus*) die together? And then shall the kingdom of David appear.” And the spirit departed from Saul, and he knew not what he had prophesied.

114. Yerushalmi Kiddushin 4, 65c, and Ta'anit 3, 66c; Shemuel 28.134; Tehillim 1, 100; ShR 39.16; Yebamot 78b–79a; BaR 8.4; WR 22.6; Tan. B. IV, 23. In the last four sources the view is expressed that Saul did not kill any of the Gibeonites; but the destruction of Nob, the city of the priests, caused great misery to their servants, the Gibeonites, and this was accounted to Saul as though he had brought about their death. On the Gibeonites, see also text on p. 846. On the three qualities God gave to Israel, see also PRK 33b; Abot 4.19; John 8. 39–44; footnote 240 on p. 611.

115. Yerushalmi Kiddushin 65c; Yebamot 79a; Shemuel 28, 133; BaR 8.4. Compare footnote 28 on p. 846; text on p. 797; on p. 960.

116. Berakot 4a. Comp. further references in the preceding note, and text on p. 906.

117. Yebamot 79a; Yerushalmi Kiddushin 65c; BaR 8.4; Shemuel 28, 134; compare with p. 1176. According to Yebamot 76a, no proselytes were admitted into the Jewish fold during the time of David and Solomon, because there was good reason to suspect the sincerity and religious convictions of those who wished to become Jews.

118. Ruth Z., 51; PR 6, 26a. Compare with p. 966.

119. PR 11, 43b–44a; Shemuel 30, 136. David’s sin consisted not so much in taking the census, but in taking it without making “every man give a ransom for his soul unto the Lord”, half a shekel for an offering, as God had commanded Moses. See Exod. 30.11, *seq.* God made David forget this law as a punishment for using unbecoming words in speaking of God as the one who had “stirred up” Saul against him (1 Sam. 26.18); see Berakot 62b. On the view that David forgot a commandment of the Torah, see text on pp. 665, 786; text on p. 923. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 13.1, is likewise of the opinion that David’s sin consisted in not paying half a shekel for each man that was numbered, whereas according to PK 2, 18b, and BaR 2.17, he sinned in taking the census without having any valid reason for doing so. On the idolatrous Danites, see text on p. 579 and Index, s. v. “Danites”.

120. PK 2, 18b; PR 11, 43b; Shemuel 30, 137; ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam. 24.9. The contradiction between Sam., *loc. cit.*, and 1 Chron. 21.5 disappears if we assume that the number given in the first passage is not the complete one.

121. PR 11, 44b; Targum 1 Chron. 21.13; ER 7, 39; Tehillim 17, 126; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 13.2.

122. Opinions are unanimous that the plague lasted only a few hours, but they differ as to the exact number; comp. Berakot 62b; PR 11, 44b; Tehillim 17, 126–127; Shemuel 30, 137–138; Targum, Peshitta, and ps.-Jerome on 2 Sam. 24.15. Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 13.3, and the following note.

123. Tehillim 18, 126; Shemuel 30, 38; Berakot 62b; Targum 1 Chron. 21.15. A detailed description of the plague is given by Josephus *Antiqui.*, VII, 13.3. A widespread legend states that one hundred youths died daily during the plague (but comp. the preceding note: on the one hundred deaths, see note 12), whereupon David instituted that one hundred benedictions should be recited in the daily prayers (for the oldest enumeration of the one hundred benedictions, see Ginzberg, *Geonica* II, 116–117). The plague ceased as soon as this change in the liturgy was introduced. See BaR 18.21; *Eshkol* of R. Abraham b. Isaac I.56 (geonic source); *Orehot Hayyim* 1, 4c; Kad ha-Kemah ברכה 36b; Mahzor Vitry 3, and the parallel passages given by Hurwitz, *ad loc.* The plague was a punishment for Israel’s lack of enthusiasm for the building of the Temple; Tehillim and Shemuel, *loc. cit.* Abishai, though distinguished for his piety and learning, was not free from the sin of having been an accomplice of his brother Joab in the killing of Abner. To indicate his sin, Scripture (2 Sam. 10.10) spells his name defectively. See the Jewish tradition in ps.-Jerome, *ad loc.*, and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 50–51. Comp. also footnote 267 on p. 235.

124. ER 7, 39; Aggadat Bereshit 38.77 (comp. Buber, note 9). Against this, see ShR 15.20, which reads: The “board of intercalation” at the time of Solomon consisted of ten members, three of whom were Solomon, Nathan the prophet, and Gad the seer. The angel who caused the death of so many men in Israel was nevertheless an “angel of mercy”; he hoped that the dreadful calamity brought upon Israel would pacify God’s anger kindled against them. This angel pleaded with God for Israel, and entreated Him that He should remember His covenant with the patriarchs and be merciful to Israel. God looked at the terrestrial sanctuary, the place where Isaac was tied to be sacrificed (see text on p. 231), and at the celestial sanctuary, where the souls of the pious are (text on p. 5) and where Jacob’s image is engraved (see text on p. 758), and He caused the plague to cease. See Aggadat Bereshit, *loc. cit.*, and 30, 61; Berakot 62b; Targum 1 Chron. 21.15.



## THE DEATH OF DAVID

David once besought God to tell him when he would die. His petition was not granted, for God has ordained that no man shall foreknow his end. One thing, however, was revealed to David, that his death would occur at the age of seventy on the Sabbath day. David desired that he might be permitted to die on Friday. This wish, too, was denied him, because God said that He delighted more in one day passed by David in the study of the Torah, than in a thousand holocausts offered by Solomon in the Temple. Then David petitioned that life might be vouchsafed him until Sunday; this, too, was refused, because God said it would be an infringement of the rights of Solomon, for one reign may not overlap by a hairbreadth the time assigned to another.

Thereafter David spent every Sabbath exclusively in the study of the Torah, in order to secure himself against the Angel of Death, who has no power to slay a man while he is occupied with the fulfilment of God's commandments. The Angel of Death had to resort to cunning to gain possession of David.<sup>125</sup> One Sabbath day, which happened to be also the Pentecost holiday,<sup>126</sup> the king was absorbed in study, when he heard a sound in the garden. He rose and descended the stairway leading from his palace to the garden, to discover the cause of the noise. No sooner had he set foot on the steps than they tumbled in, and David was killed. The Angel of Death had caused the noise in order to utilize the moment when David should interrupt his study.<sup>125</sup> The king's corpse could not be moved on the Sabbath, which was painful to those with him, as it was lying exposed to the rays of the sun. So Solomon summoned several eagles, and they stood guard over the body, shading it with their outstretched pinions.<sup>127</sup>

---

125. Shabbat 30a–30b; Ruth R. 1.17; Koheleth 5.10. As to the conception that God never reveals to man the time of his death, see also Pesahim 54b (top), PRK 35b, and 4 Ezra 5.25. God said to David: "I delight more in thy acts of justice than in the multitude of sacrifices brought by Solomon; Yerushalmi Berakot 2, 4b, and Rosh ha-Shanah 1, 56b; Makkot 10a. As to the conception that the angel of death has no power over those who are occupied with the study of the Torah, see also Mo'ed Katan 28a; Baba Mezi'a 86a; text on p. 812; text on p. 1025.

126. Ruth R. 1.17; Yerushalmi Bezah 2, 61b. In the last source it is presupposed that David died on a week-day. David, it is stated there, died on the feast of Pentecost, and as all Israel was in a state of mourning, the festive offerings were brought on the following day. Comp. also Koheleth 5.10.

127. Ruth R. 1.17. For the contrary view, see Shabbat 30b; Kohelet 5.10, where it is said that the removal of the corpse was accomplished without any miracle. Comp. also Mirkhond, 72 on the birds sheltering the crowds from the sun at the funeral of David.

## DAVID IN PARADISE

The death of David did not mean the end of his glory and grandeur. It merely caused a change of scene. In the heavenly realm as on earth David ranks among the first. The crown upon his head outshines all others, and whenever he moves out of Paradise to present himself before God, suns, stars, angels, seraphim, and other holy beings run to meet him. In the heavenly court-room a throne of fire of gigantic dimensions is erected for him directly opposite to the throne of God. Seated on this throne and surrounded by the kings of the house of David and other Israelitish kings, he intones wondrously beautiful psalms. At the end he always cites the verse: "The Lord reigns forever and ever," to which the archangel Metatron and those with him reply: "Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts!" This is the signal for the holy *Ḥayyot* and heaven and earth to join in with praise. Finally the kings of the house of David



sing the verse: "And the Lord shall be king over all; in that day shall the Lord be one, and His name one."<sup>128</sup>

The greatest distinction to be accorded David is reserved for the judgment day, when God will prepare a great banquet in Paradise for all the righteous. At David's petition, God Himself will be present at the banquet, and will sit on His throne, opposite to which David's throne will be placed. At the end of the banquet, God will pass the wine cup over which grace is said, to Abraham, with the words: "Pronounce the blessing over the wine, thou who art the father of the pious of the world." Abraham will reply: "I am not worthy to pronounce the blessing, for I am the father also of the Ishmaelites, who kindle God's wrath." God will then turn to Isaac: "Say the blessing, for thou wert bound upon the altar as a sacrifice." "I am not worthy," he will reply, "for the children of my son Esau destroyed the Temple." Then to Jacob: "Do thou speak the blessing, thou whose children were blameless." Jacob also will decline the honor on the ground that he was married to two sisters at the same time, which later was strictly prohibited by the Torah. God will then turn to Moses: "Say the blessing, for thou didst receive the law and didst fulfil its precepts." Moses will answer: "I am not worthy to do it, seeing that I was not found worthy to enter the Holy Land." God will next offer the honor to Joshua, who both led Israel into the Holy Land, and fulfilled the commandments of the law. He, too, will refuse to pronounce the blessing, because he was not found worthy to bring forth a son. Finally God will turn to David with the words: "Take the cup and say the blessing, thou the sweetest singer in Israel and Israel's king. And David will reply: "Yes, I will pronounce the blessing, for I am worthy of the honor."<sup>129</sup> Then God will take the Torah and read various passages from it, and David will recite a psalm in which both the

pious in Paradise and the wicked in hell will join with a loud Amen. Thereupon God will send his angels to lead the wicked from hell to Paradise.<sup>130</sup>

---

128. BHM V, 167–168, and VI, 25–26; Or Zarua I, 39a, and II, 18b. As early an authority as R. Akiba (Sanhedrin 38b, and parallel passages) speaks of the throne upon which David will sit on the Day of Judgment. Footnote 118 on pp. 508–509. See also ER 18, 89–90, where it is said that David will sit at God's right hand on the Day of Judgment. There can be no doubt that these legends about David are connected with the view that he is the promised Messiah; see Sanhedrin 98a; Rosh ha-Shanah 25a which reads: David, the king of Israel, lives for ever; Tehillim 5, 52; 57, 298; 75, 340; 2 ARN 45, 125; *Shitah Hadashah* 2 (which reads: David is the first and the last of the Jewish rulers); Zohar I 82b; III, 84a. The last passage is a kabbalistic rendering of the statement (Sanhedrin 98b) that in the days to come God will raise "another David" to be the Messiah, whose viceroy will be the first David. See also Mishle 19, 87, where David is given as one of the names of the Messiah. One of David's distinctions which he shares with the three patriarchs, and Moses, Aaron, Miriam, and Benjamin is that his corpse was not touched by worms; Baba Batra 17a; Tehillim 119, 492; Derek Erez Z., I (end). Comp. also Acts 13.36. Baba Batra, *loc. cit.*, states that David is one of the few over whom the evil inclination had no power; compare footnote 276 on p. 237. Somewhat different is the statement of Yerushalmi Sotah 5, 20c: Abraham turned the evil inclination into the good inclination, but David was unable to do that, and he therefore slew the evil inclination. This wishes to convey that David (as repentance for his sin with Bath-sheba) denied himself the pleasures which are permitted by the law, and lived like an ascetic, whereas Abraham served God in enjoying life. On David's ascetic life, comp. the remark in Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 2, 20a, with regard to 2 Sam. 20.30. The world was created for the sake of David; Sanhedrin 98b, where Moses and the Messiah are regarded by some authorities as those for whose sake the world was created. See the similar statement in Berakot 61b, which reads: The world was created only for the very pious or for the extremely wicked; for the former the world to come, and this world for the latter. See footnote 8, top, on p. 48.

129. BHM V, 45–46, and VI, 47 (in this passage David is said to be on a horse of fire), which is based on older sources; see Pesahim 119b; Yoma 76a; Tehillim 23, 202; Nispahim 32–33. In ShR 25.8 Michael is first requested to say the blessing; but with "angelic" modesty



passes on this honor to Gabriel, who likewise refuses the honor, and asks the patriarchs to say the blessing. They in turn ask Moses and Aaron, who pass on the honor to the elders, and the latter find David to be the one deserving of this great distinction. Compare, however, with p. 965, p. 838. In the world to come there will be no company of righteous of which David will not be a member; Shemuel 19, 104. On the throne of David see the preceding note, and Index, s. v. "Thrones of the Righteous".

130. BHM V, 46; Nispahim 33. Comp. also *Visio Pauli* 29.

## THE FAMILY OF DAVID

David had six wives, including Michal, the daughter of Saul, who is called by the pet name Eglah, "Calfkin", in the list given in the Bible narrative.<sup>131</sup> Michal was of entrancing beauty,<sup>132</sup> and at the same time the model of a loving wife. Not only did she save David out of the hands of her father, but also, when Saul, as her father and her king, commanded her to marry another man, she acquiesced only apparently. She entered into a mock marriage in order not to arouse the anger of Saul, who had annulled her union with David on grounds which he thought legal. Michal was good as well as beautiful; she showed such extraordinary kindness to the orphan children of her sister Merab that the Bible speaks of the five sons of Michal "whom she bore to Adriel." Adriel, however, was her brother-in-law and not her husband, but she had raised his children, treating them as though they were her own.<sup>133</sup> Michal was no less a model of piety. Although the law exempted her, as a woman, from the duty, still she executed the commandment of using phylacteries.<sup>134</sup> In spite of all these virtues, she was severely punished by God for her scorn of David, whom she reproached with lack of dignity, when he had in mind only to do honor to God. Long she remained childless, and at last, when she was blessed with a child, she lost her own life in giving birth to it.<sup>135</sup>

But the most important among the wives of David was Abigail, in whom beauty, wisdom, and prophetic gifts were joined. With Sarah, Rahab, and Esther, she forms the quartet of the most beautiful women in history. She was so bewitching that passion was aroused in men by the mere thought of her.<sup>136</sup> Her cleverness showed itself during her first meeting with David, when, though anxious about the life of her husband Nabal, she still, with the utmost tranquillity, put a ritual question to him in his rage. He refused to answer it, because, he said, it was a question to be investigated by day, not by night. Thereupon Abigail interposed, that sentence of death likewise may be passed upon a man only during the day. Even if David's judgment were right, the law required him to wait until daybreak to execute it upon Nabal. David's objection, that a rebel like Nabal had no claim upon due process of law, she overruled with the words: "Saul is still alive, and thou art not yet acknowledged king by the world."

Her charm would have made David her captive on this occasion, if her moral strength had not kept him in check. By means of the expression, "And *this* shall not be unto thee," she made him understand that the day had not yet arrived, but that it would come, when a woman, Bath-sheba, would play a disastrous part in his life. Thus she manifested her gift of prophecy.

Not even Abigail was free from the feminine weakness of coquetry. The words "remember thine handmaid" should never have been uttered by her. As a married woman, she should not have sought to direct the attention of a man to herself.<sup>137</sup> In the women's Paradise she supervises the fifth of the seven divisions into which it is divided, and her domain adjoins that of the wives of the Patriarchs, Sarah, Rebekah, Rachel, and Leah.<sup>138</sup>

Among the sons of David, Adonijah, the son of Haggith, must be mentioned particularly,



the pretender to the throne. The fifty men whom he prepared to run before him had fitted themselves for the place of heralds by cutting out their spleen and the flesh of the soles of their feet. That Adonijah was not designated for the royal dignity, was made manifest by the fact that the crown of David did not fit him. This crown had the remarkable peculiarity of always fitting the legitimate king of the house of David.<sup>139</sup>

Chileab was a son worthy of his mother Abigail. The meaning of his name is “like the father”, which had been given him because of his striking resemblance to David in appearance, a circumstance that silenced the talk against David’s all too hasty marriage with the widow of Nabal.<sup>140</sup> Intellectually, too, Chileab testified to David’s paternity. In fact, he excelled his father in learning, as he did even the teacher of David, Mephibosheth, the son of Jonathan.<sup>141</sup> On account of his piety he is one of the few who have entered Paradise alive.<sup>142</sup>

Tamar cannot be called one of the children of David, because she was born before her mother’s conversion to Judaism. Consequently, her relation to Amnon is not quite of the grave nature it would have been, had they been sister and brother in the strict sense of the terms.

To the immediate household of David belonged four hundred young squires, the sons of women taken captive in battle. They wore their hair in heathen fashion, and, sitting in golden chariots, they formed the vanguard of the army, and terrified the enemy by their appearance.<sup>143</sup>

131. Sanhedrin 21a; BR 82.7; BaR 4.8; Shemuel 11, 79, and 22.111; Tehillim 59, 303; Tosefta-Targum and ps.-Jerome on 2 Sam. 3.5. All these sources agree on the identity of Eglah and Michal, but they differ as to the reason why the designation “little calf” was given to Michal; comp. Ginzberg, *Haggadah bei den Kirchenv.*, 41–42. According to an unknown Midrash quoted by Kimhi, 2 Sam. 21.10, David also married (took as concubine?) Rizpah,

whom he greatly admired for the reverence and devotion she displayed for Saul’s unlucky descendants; see Sam., *loc. cit.* Comp. also Yerushalmi Yebamot 3, 3d, which reads: David married Rizpah. On Rizpah’s noble deeds, see also Yerushalmi Kiddushin 4, 65c, and BaR 8.4.

132. Megillah 15a. This passage contains different views as to who were the most beautiful women. The unanimous opinion seems to be that there were only four women of perfect beauty, but there is no agreement on their identification. Sarah, Rachel, and Abigail are three of the undisputed beauties. As to the fourth, Esther, Vashti, Jael, and Michal are the competitors. Compare also footnote 24 on p. 59.

133. Sanhedrin 19b–20a. As to the legality of David’s marriage with Michal, or rather Michal’s second marriage to Palti, see footnote 80 on p. 901, and footnote 105 on p. 906. Palti, Michal’s second husband, is highly praised for his control of his passions; see Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*, and many other places; footnote 85 on p. 868. Obeying Saul’s command, he went through the ceremony of marriage with Michal, and as far as the outside world was concerned, they lived as a married couple; but he never came near her, knowing that she was David’s lawful wife. He placed a sword between her and himself, saying: “The one who will dare to do it (*i. e.*, have conjugal relations) will be slain with this sword.” On the expression נעץ חרב בחרב, comp. also Shabbat 17a; Yebamot 77a. Accordingly there is not the slightest reason to assume, with Heller, *R.E.J.* XLIX, 190, that this legend is dependent on Indian sources. Comp. also Gaster, *Exempla* 242, col. 2. On the view that God was the witness to Palti’s continence (hence he is called Paltiel), see PRE 39; WR 23.10; ps.-Jerome 1 Sam. 25.44; footnote 85 on p. 868; Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 33–35 and 64. On the children of Merab, see Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 4.3, and ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam. 21.8. The latter shares the views of the Rabbis that Michal brought up her sister’s orphaned children, and this is why Scripture speaks of Michal as being their mother. As to the means employed by Michal to save David (1 Sam. 19, *seq.*), see Shemuel 22, 110–111; Tehillim 59, 303; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VI, 11.4. According to MHG I, 337, Michal boldly declared to her father that she enabled David to escape because she was convinced of his innocence.

134. Mekilta Bo 17, 21; ‘Erubin 96a; Yerushalmi Berakot 2, 4c; PR 22, 112b. With the exception of ‘Erubin, *loc. cit.*, Michal is described in these sources as “the daughter of Cush”, which is another name for Saul, who was called Cush, “Ethiopian” (comp. Ps. 7.1), antiphrastically. Saul was distinguished for his beauty as the Ethiopian for his (dark) color; see Sifre N., 99; Sifre Z., 204 (here it is said: Distinguished for his looks and pious deeds); Mo’ed Katan 16b; Tehillim 7, 69, 70, 71–72 (this passage gives a



different explanation of this designation of Cush); 2 ARN 43, 12; Targum and Ibn Ezra on Ps. 7.1. The legend about Michal using phylacteries is of midrashic origin. The last section of Prov. is said by the Haggadah to refer to the twenty-two pious women mentioned in the Bible (comp. MHG I, 344, *seq.*; Mishle 31; footnote 271 on p. 237), each of the twenty-two verses of this section containing the praise of each of these pious women. It was therefore quite natural for the Haggadah to find in verse 25 an allusion to Michal, of whom one might have rightly said: "And she rejoices at the last day" (this is the literal translation of the Hebrew), as it was in her very last day that she had the joy of motherhood (compare with p. 940). The first half of this verse reads: "Strength and dignity are her clothing." Now since in the Haggadah "strength" *עֹז* is equivalent to "phylacteries" (comp. Berakot 6a), it follows that the woman whose praise is sung in this verse (*i. e.*, Michal) is lauded for having clothed herself with phylacteries. It should also be mentioned that *תַּפְּלִין לִרְבוֹשׁ*, which literally means "clothing oneself with phylacteries", is the technical expression in Palestinian sources for putting on phylacteries; comp. Yerush. Berakot 2, 4c.

135. Sanhedrin 21a. The narrative given in 2 Sam. 4.20, *seq.*, was adorned with many legends by the Haggadah; comp. Yerushalmi Sukkah 5, 55c, and Sanhedrin 2, 20b; Shemuel 25, 124; BaR 4.20. The legend about Obed Edom in the last-named source is very old, see Berakot 63b–64a; Yerushalmi Yebamot 4.6b; 2 ARN 11, 27; Shir 2.5; ps.-Jerome, 2 Sam. 6.11. The reward of this pious Levite, who lit the lamp twice a day before the ark which had been placed in his house, consisted in his having been blessed with many children. The women in his house gave birth after a pregnancy of two months only, and bore six children at one time. Israel became now convinced that the ark, far from bringing misfortune, as they thought, upon those who are near it, was a source of blessing and good fortune. It is true the people at Beth-Shemesh (see text on p. 892) and Uzza (see text on pp. 922–923) were punished when they came near to the ark, but this was on account of not having shown due reverence to the holy ark. See Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 6, 52a–52b. On Obed-Edom see also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 4.20.

136. Megillah 15a; Seder 'Olam 21. See also Mishnah Sanhedrin 2, 4, where Abigail is described as the highest ideal of the pious woman.

137. Megillah 14b; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 2, 20b, and 4, 22b; Shemuel 23, 116–117; Tehillim 53, 287–288. The expression *הַלְכוּת הַלֹּחֶם* in the three first-named sources is to be taken literally. On the conception of the "bright light" emanating from the body of persons (men as well as women) distinguished for their beauty, comp. Berakot 5b and Ketubot 65a. For further details concerning Nabal, see Tehillim, *loc. cit.*, and 14, 113; text on p. 900. On Abigail's

beauty, see note 132, and comp. further Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 13.6 and 8, who has many embellishments of this biblical story about her and Nabal her husband.

138. BHM III, 136.

139. Sanhedrin 21b; comp. text on p. 1037. On the similarity of Adonijah's and Absalom's characters which made both act in like manner, see Baba Batra 109b; Tehillim 2, 28; ps.-Jerome, 1 Kings 1.6.

140. Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 141, and in *'Aruk*, s. v. *כְּלָאב*; Wa-Yekullu in Likkutim, II, 16a–17a; comp. also VI, 82b–83a; Tan. Toledot 6; Targum I Chron. 3.1. On the similar legend concerning the striking likeness of Isaac to Abraham, see text on p. 218.

141. Berakot 4a (the real name of this son of David's was Daniel); ps.-Jerome, 1 Chron. 3.1. This author remarks (2 Sam. 20.26) with reference to *כְּהֲנִים* in 2 Sam. 8.19 that some of David's sons were the masters of their brothers; but comp. Targum, *ad loc.*; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 5.4 and note 78, beginning.

142. Derek Erez Zuta 1 (end), and parallel passages cited by Taw rogi. Comp. Index, s. v. "Paradise, Entering Alive into".

143. Sanhedrin 21b; Kiddushin 76b; ps.-Jerome 2 Sam. 13, 37; compare with p. 932. To prevent such misdeeds as the one committed by Ammon, David and his Synedrion ordained that even an unmarried woman must not be alone with a man; though the biblical law prohibits only a married woman to be alone with a man. See Sanhedrin 21a–21b and Excursus II, Reuben. The description of David's vanguard in rabbinic sources reminds one of that given by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 7.3, of Solomon's guard.

## HIS TOMB

When David was buried, Solomon put abundant treasures into his tomb. Thirteen hundred years later the high priest Hyrcanus took a thousand talents of the money secreted there to use it in preventing the siege of Jerusalem by the Greek king Antiochus. King Herod also abstracted great sums. But none of the marauders could penetrate to the resting-place of the kings,—next to David his successors were interred,—for it was sunk into the earth so skillfully that it could not be found.<sup>144</sup>

Once on a time, a Moslem pasha visited the mausoleum, and as he was looking through the



window in it, a weapon of his ornamented with diamonds and pearls dropped into the tomb. A Mohammedan was lowered through the window to fetch the weapon. When he was drawn up again, he was dead, and three other Mohammedans who tried to enter in the same way met the fate of their comrade. At the instigation of the kadi, the pasha informed the Rabbi of Jerusalem that the Jews would be held responsible for the restoration of the weapon. The Rabbi ordered a three days' fast, to be spent in prayer. Then lots were cast to designate the messenger who was to be charged with the perilous errand. The lot fell upon the beadle of the synagogue, a pious and upright man. He secured the weapon, and returned it to the pasha, who manifested his gratitude by kindly treatment of the Jews thereafter. The beadle later told his adventures in the tomb to the Hakam Bashi. When he had descended, there suddenly appeared before him an old man of dignified appearance, and handed him what he was seeking.<sup>145</sup>

Another miraculous tale concerning the tomb of David runs as follows: A poor but very pious Jewish washerwoman was once persuaded by the keeper of the tomb to enter it. Hardly was she within, when the man nailed up the entrance, and ran to the kadi to inform him that a Jewess had gone in. Incensed, the kadi hastened to the spot, with the intention of having the woman burnt for her presumptuousness. In her terror the poor creature had begun to weep and implore God for help. Suddenly a flood of light illumined the dark tomb, and a venerable old man took her by the hand, and led her downward under the earth until she reached the open. There he parted from her with the words: "Hasten homeward, and let none know that thou wert away from thy house." The kadi had the tomb and its surroundings thoroughly searched by his bailiffs, but not a trace of the woman

could be discovered, although the keeper again and again swore by the Prophet that the woman had entered. Now the messengers whom the kadi had sent to the house of the woman returned, and reported they had found her washing busily, and greatly astonished at their question, whether she had been at the tomb of David. The kadi accordingly decided that for his false statements and his perjury, the keeper must die the very death intended for the innocent woman, and so he was burnt. The people of Jerusalem suspected a miracle, but the woman did not divulge her secret until a few hours before her death. She told her story, and then bequeathed her possessions to the congregation, under the condition that a scholar recite Kadish for her on each anniversary of her death.<sup>146</sup>

---

144. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 15.3. This statement of Josephus is quoted by Yahya in *Shalshelet ha-Kabbalah*, 16a (bottom; headed **אחיה השלוני**), with the following additions. Herod after having abstracted large sums from the cave where David's tomb was located, wished to enter the tomb itself, but fearing that some misfortune might befall him, ordered two young men to try it first. They were, however, destroyed by a fire that went forth from the tomb, and Herod who stood outside, watching them, fled for his life. To make atonement for the attempted sacrilege, Herod erected a beautiful monument over the tomb; nevertheless from that time on none of Herod's undertakings succeeded. Comp. also R. Benjamin of Tudela, 35 and Nallino, *Tomba di Davide*.

145. *Sha'are Yerushalayim* 47a–47b. The beadle of the synagogue (usually one of the poorest men of the congregation) as the most worthy member of the community, is also found in the legend given on p. 249.

146. *Sha'are Yerushalayim* 47b. Until David's time man's average span of life was much longer than in later generations. He died at the age of seventy years, and this came to be considered a good age; Yebamot 64b.—To David's heroic deeds we must add his victory over Lahmi, the brother of Goliath, both of whom he slew in one day; see Targum, Kimhi, and ps.-Rashi on 1 Chron. 20.5, as well as Targum 2 Sam. 21.19, and note 78, toward the beginning. See note 12.







## XVI SOLOMON

### SOLOMON PUNISHES JOAB

At the youthful age of twelve<sup>1</sup> Solomon succeeded his father David as king. His real name was Jedidiah, the “friend of God”, but it was superseded by the name Solomon on account of the peace that prevailed throughout the realm during his reign. He bore three other names besides: Ben, Jakeh, and Ithiel. He was called Ben because he was the builder of the Temple; Jakeh, because he was the ruler of the whole world; and Ithiel, because God was with him.<sup>2</sup>

The rebellion Adonijah intended to lead against the future king was suppressed during David’s lifetime, by having Solomon anointed in public. On that occasion Solomon rode upon a remarkable she-mule, remarkable because she was not the product of cross-breeding, but of a special act of creation.<sup>3</sup>

As soon as he ascended the throne, Solomon set about executing the instructions his father had given him on his death-bed. The first of them was the punishment of Joab.<sup>4</sup>

Notwithstanding all his excellent qualities, which fitted him to be not only David’s first general, but also the president of the Academy,<sup>5</sup> Joab had committed great crimes, which had to

be atoned for. Beside the murder of Abner<sup>6</sup> and Amasa of which he was guilty, he had incurred wrong against David himself. The generals of the army suspected him of having had Uriah the Hittite put out of the way for purposes of his own, whereupon he showed them David’s letter dooming Uriah. David might have forgiven Joab, but he wanted him to expiate his sins in this world, so that he might be exempt from punishment in the world to come.<sup>7</sup>

When Joab perceived that Solomon intended to have him executed, he sought the protection of the Temple. He knew full well that he could not save his life in this way, for the arm of justice reaches beyond the doors of the sanctuary, to the altar of God. What he wished was to be accorded a regular trial, and not suffer death by the king’s order. In the latter case he would lose fortune as well as life, and he was desirous of leaving his children well provided for. Thereupon Solomon sent word to him that he had no intention of confiscating his estates.<sup>8</sup>

Though he was convinced of Joab’s guilt, Solomon nevertheless granted him the privilege of defense. The king questioned him: “Why didst thou kill Abner?”

Joab: “I was the avenger of my brother Asahel, whom Abner had slain.”



Solomon: "Why, it was Asahel who sought to kill Abner, and Abner acted in self-defense."

Joab: "Abner might have disabled Asahel without going to extremes."

Solomon: "That Abner could not do."

Joab: "What! Abner aimed directly at Asahel's fifth rib, and thou wouldst say he could not have managed to wound him lightly?"

Solomon: "Very well, then, we shall drop Abner's case. But why didst thou slay Amasa?"

Joab: "He acted rebelliously toward King David. He omitted to execute his order to gather an army within three days; for that offense he deserved to suffer the death penalty."

Solomon: "Amasa failed to obey the king's order, because he had been taught by our sages that even a king's injunctions may be set at defiance if they involve neglect of the study of the Torah, which was the case with the order given to Amasa. And, indeed," continued Solomon, "it was not Amasa but thou thyself who didst rebel against the king, for thou wert about to join Absalom, and if thou didst refrain, it was from fear of David's strong-fisted troops."<sup>9</sup>

When Joab saw that death was inevitable, he said to Benaiah, who was charged with the execution of the king's order: "Tell Solomon he cannot inflict two punishments upon me. If he expects to take my life, he must remove the curse pronounced by David against me and my descendants on account of the slaying of Abner. If not, he cannot put me to death." Solomon realized the justness of the plea. By executing Joab, he transferred David's curse to his own posterity: Rehoboam, his son, was afflicted with an issue; Uzziah suffered with leprosy; Asa had to lean on a staff when he walked; the pious Josiah fell by the sword of Pharaoh, and Jeconiah lived off charity. So the imprecations of David were accomplished on his own family instead of Joab's.<sup>10</sup>

---

1. Seder 'Olam 14. Comp. the parallels cited by Ratner, as well as Nazir 5a; Temurah 15a; Sanhedrin 69b; Targum Sheni 1.2 (which remarks: About thirteen years old, *i. e.*, after having completed his twelfth year); Jerome, *Epistola*, 72, (22, 674); Eupolemus, 452. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 7.8, Solomon ascended the throne at the age of fourteen, and reigned eighty years. The Masorah and Septuagint read "forty", and not "eighty", in 1 Kings 11.42.

2. Targum Sheni 1.2, 4; Shir 1.1 (here the real names are: Koheleth, Solomon, and Jedidiah, whereas Agur, Jakeh, Lemuel, and Ithiel are attributes); BaR 10.4; Mishle 30, 103–104; Tan. Wa-Era 5; Tan. B. II, 18; Yellammedenu in *'Aruk*, s. v. אָגוּר; Koheleth 1.1; Jerome, *Eccles.* 1.1. Comp. also Ephraem, 2 Sam. 12.24–25, who remarks: He was later called Solomon because of the peace that prevailed during his reign. According to the Rabbis, Solomon is one of the names of God, and in Song of Songs God is designated by that name; comp. Shabbat 35b; Shir, *loc. cit.* On the view that Solomon received his name before he was born, see text on p. 122, and comp. further Tan. B. I, 21; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 4.2. On Ithiel, see footnote 13 on p. 856.

3. Yerushalmi Kil'ayim 8, 31c; Tosefta 5.7. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 4.2, God revealed to David, before the birth of Solomon, that this son promised to him would succeed him as king and build the Temple; comp. 1 Chron. 22.9. A rabbinic legend tells us that after the death of Bath-Sheba's first child David swore unto her that her next child would be his successor; see ps.-Jerome, 1 Kings 1.17, and Kimhi, 2 Sam. 12.24. The anointing of Solomon served the purpose of counteracting Adonijah's claim to the throne, otherwise this move would not have been necessary, since Solomon succeeded to the throne by the law of inheritance; see Midrash Tannaim 106; Tosefta Sanhedrin 4.11; Horayot 11b. See footnote 371 on p. 657 and Index, s. v. "Anointing of Kings". The request made by Adonijah to be permitted to marry Abishag (1 Kings 2.13, *seq.*) clearly indicates that he still considered himself David's legitimate successor, as it is only the king who is allowed to make use of the servants of the deceased king. Solomon therefore ordered the execution of Adonijah for this attempt at rebellion. That David did not marry Abishag was not due to his advanced age and impotence, as some mockingly remarked to him, but to his respect for the law which does not permit a king to marry more than eighteen wives, and David already had that number. See Sanhedrin 22a.

4. On Joab's pious descendants, among whom were priests and prophets, see Targum 1 Chron. 2.54.

5. Yerushalmi Makkot 2, 31c; Tan. B. IV, 166. Compare footnote 76 on p. 924.



6. On this point see text on pp. 905–906. The people had suspected David of having conspired the death of Abner, but they became convinced of the king's innocence by the genuine grief which he expressed at Abner's funeral. It was fortunate for David that the people realized their error, otherwise they would have killed him in their rage against the murderer of Abner. The king, to show his respect for the dead hero, participated in the funeral, though, according to the law, a king must never be present at a funeral: see Sanhedrin, Mishnah 2.3; Tosefta 4.2; Babli 20a; Yerushalmi, 2, 20c. See footnote 275 on p. 304. In the last source it is said that David addressed first the men then the women, to convince them that Joab acted entirely without his knowledge. As to the suspicion against David, see also the references in the following note.

7. Tan. B. IV, 167; Tan. Mass'e 12; BaR 23.13.

8. Yerushalmi Makkot 2, 31a; Shemuel 35, 123. As to the question whether the sanctuary at Jerusalem offered asylum to criminals, and under what conditions, see also Babli Makkot 12a, and Mahzor Vitry 33. The latter made use of a version of Midrash Tehillim in which the trial of Joab was dealt with at full length; but our texts of this Midrash have preserved no reference to it; comp. also note 10.

9. Sanhedrin 49a; comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 1.5 and 11.7; text on pp. 905–906.

10. Sanhedrin 48b–49a; Jerushalmi Kiddushin 1.61a, Shemuel 25.123–124; Tan. B. IV, 167; Tan. Mass'e 12; BaR 23.13. A poetic description of Joab's tragic end, partly based on an unknown Midrash, is found in Mahzor Vitry 341–342; comp. also *ibid.* 331–332 (the commentary on the poem); see further note 8. In this poem Jacob first laments his innocent death, and then proceeds to ask Solomon and Israel to have pity on him. When, however, he saw that his pleadings were in vain, he called his son Joel, to give him his last message. He said to him: "Observe the Torah, educate thy (younger) brothers, and honor thy mother." Solomon first called upon his son Rehoboam to slay Joab, and in this way avenge the death of Absalom caused by Joab (see 2 Sam. 18.14–15); but Rehoboam could not muster enough courage for the deed, when he saw all Israel weep. Benaiah was therefore sent by the king to carry out this command instead of his hesitating son. When Joab saw him approach with his sword in his hand, he said: "Benaiah, Benaiah, attempt not what will end in a great disappointment (this is how **לא תשנך רוחך** is to be understood, and is not to be emended as done by the editor); my neck is strong and thy sword too weak, and thou canst not kill me." Joab, however, was mistaken. Benaiah succeeded in carrying out the king's command to the great consternation of Israel who out of fear of the king dared not give expression to the deep sorrow in their heart for the bitter end of Joab. As to the great loss sustained by Israel through Joab's death, see also Yerushalmi Makkot 2, 31a;

Shemuel 25, 124. The high priest Abiathar was not slain by Solomon. The king merely removed him from his high position, and appointed Zadok to the office of high priest; see Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 1.4. According to the views of the Rabbis, Abiathar was removed from his office by David, on his flight from Absalom, when the Urim and Tummim refused to give answer to Abiathar; when Zadok succeeded in obtaining a response, he was appointed high priest; see Yoma 73b; Sotah 48b; Seder 'Olam 14. Zadok was the man best fitted for holding the office of high priest in his time, as his ancestor Aaron in his time. See Koheleth 1.1, and comp. also ps.-Jerome 1 Chron. 21.7, where Zadok is said to have been a second Aaron, and, like his great ancestor, had stopped a plague by his prayers. As to the anointing of Zadok, see footnote 371 on p. 657.

## THE MARRIAGE OF SOLOMON

The next to suffer Joab's fate was Shimei ben Gera, whose treatment of David had outraged every feeling of decency. His death was of evil portent for Solomon himself. So long as Shimei, who was Solomon's teacher, was alive, he did not venture to marry the daughter of Pharaoh. When, after Shimei's death, Solomon took her to wife, the archangel Gabriel descended from heaven, and inserted a reed in the sea. About this reed more and more earth was gradually deposited, and, on the day on which Rehoboam erected the golden calves, a little hut was built upon the island. This was the first of the dwelling-places of Rome.<sup>11</sup>

Solomon's wedding-feast in celebration of his marriage with the Egyptian princess came on the same day as the consecration of the Temple.<sup>12</sup> The rejoicing over the king's marriage was greater than over the completion of the Temple. As the proverb has it: "All pay flattery to a king." Then it was that God conceived the plan of destroying Jerusalem. It was as the prophet spoke: "This city hath been to me a provocation of mine anger and of my fury from the day that they built it even unto this day."



In the nuptial night Pharaoh's daughter had her attendants play upon a thousand different musical instruments, which she had brought with her from her home, and as each was used, the name of the idol to which it was dedicated was mentioned aloud. The better to hold the king under the spell of her charms, she spread above his bed a tapestry cover studded with diamonds and pearls, which gleamed and glittered like constellations in the sky. Whenever Solomon wanted to rise, he saw these stars, and thinking it was night still, he slept on until the fourth hour of the morning. The people were plunged in grief, for the daily sacrifice could not be brought on this very morning of the Temple dedication, because the Temple keys lay under Solomon's pillow, and none dared awaken him. Word was sent to Bath-sheba, who forthwith aroused her son, and rebuked him for his sloth. "Thy father", she said, "was known to all as a God-fearing man, and now people will say, 'Solomon is the son of Bath-sheba, it is his mother's fault if he goes wrong.' Whenever thy father's wives were pregnant, they offered vows and prayed that a son worthy to reign might be born unto them. But my prayer was for a learned son worthy of the gift of prophecy. Take care, 'give not thy strength unto women nor thy ways to them that destroy kings,' for licentiousness confounds the reason of man. Keep well in mind the things that are necessary in the life of a king.<sup>13</sup> 'Not kings, Lemuel.' Have naught in common with kings who say: 'What need have we of a God?' It is not meet that thou shouldst do like the kings who drink wine and live in lewdness. Be not like unto them. He to whom the secrets of the world are revealed,<sup>14</sup> should not intoxicate himself with wine."<sup>15</sup>

Apart from having married a Gentile, whose conversion to Judaism was not dictated by pure motives, Solomon transgressed two other Biblical laws. He kept many horses, which a Jewish

king ought not to do, and, what the law holds in equal abhorrence, he amassed much silver and gold. Under Solomon's rule silver and gold were so abundant among the people that their utensils were made of them instead of the baser metals.<sup>16</sup> For all this he had to atone painfully later on.

---

11. Berakot 8a; Tosefta-Targum 1 Kings 2.36 and 3.1; comp. vol. IV, pp. 381–382. As to the insults heaped by Shimei on David, and the reconciliation of these two men, see Tehillim 3, 36–37; footnote 96 on p. 928. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 5.1, Shimei was executed by Solomon for breaking the oath he had given to him. On death as a punishment for perjury or similar offences, see Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 135–137. Solomon slew Shimei by pronouncing God's Name upon him (compare with p. 486); Shimei sinned by the word of mouth, and his punishment, in accordance with his sin, was executed by a word. See Zohar II, 108. Comp. also *ibid.*, 107b, where Berakot, *loc. cit.*, and perhaps also Kimhi, 1 Kings 2.8, are made use of. That Nathan the prophet was Solomon's teacher, as maintained in Zohar, is found nowhere in rabbinic literature, nor are Septuagint and Vulgate, 2 Sam. 12.25, to be understood in that sense. On the view of ps.-Jerome, 1 Chron. 20.7, that Nathan is identical with Jonathan, David's nephew, who slew one of the Philistine giants (1 Chron. 20.7), see footnote 88 on p. 927. On the founding of Rome, see Shabbat 56b; Yeru-shalmi 'Abodah Zarah 1, 39c (here it is Michael who inserted the reed in the sea; compare footnote 8 on p. 9); Sifre D., 52; Shir 1.6. Comp. Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 169; Schlatter, *Verkanntes Griechisch* 64 and Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. "Abba Kolon". This Abba Kolon ("Father of Colony", or Abba Kalon, "father of shame"?) is said in Shir, *loc. cit.*, to have made the settlement of Rome possible. The first settlers of Rome found that the huts collapsed as soon as built. Whereupon Abba Kolon said to them: "Unless ye mix water from the Euphrates with your mortar, nothing that ye build will stand." He then offered to supply such water, and for this purpose journeyed through the east as a cooper, and returned with water from the Euphrates in wine-casks. The builders poured this water into the mortar, and built new huts which did not collapse. Hence the proverb: "A city without Abba Kolon is not worthy of the name." The newly-built city was therefore called Babylonian Rome. On Babylon = Rome, see Rev. 14.8, 17.18, and the references to rabbinic literature in Ginzberg, *Geonica*, I, 29, note 1, as well as Hekalot, ed. Wertheimer, 32, 39, and Mahzor Vitry 520. The Babylonian myth about the origin of the city of Babylon (see



King, *Creation Tablets*, 132) resembles the Jewish legend about the founding of Rome. Comp. also Zohar III, 251b–252a, and Nehemias מִכְתָּבֵי דָּוִד, 161.

12. Comp., however, Seder 'Olam 15, according to which Solomon's marriage with Pharaoh's daughter took place at the time when he started to build the Temple; hence the word of God (Jer. 32.31) that this city (Jerusalem, *i. e.*, the Temple) has been to Him a provocation from the day that they built it. The first four years of Solomon's reign were the only ones during which he walked in the ways of the Lord; comp. also Niddah 70a and EZ 8, 185. The last passage reads: The first Temple existed four hundred and ten years, but Israel was free from idolatry for twenty years only. This number very likely refers to the twenty years of the reign of the pious king Josiah; comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 302. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 7.5, Solomon "fell into an error about the observance of the laws, when he made the images of the brazen oxen, which supported the brazen sea and the images of the lions about his own throne." The Rabbis, on the other hand, are far from blaming him for these images, and the images of the throne occupy a very important position in the rabbinic legend; compare with p. 968, *seq.*

13. Shabbat 56b; Sanhedrin 70b; Yelammedenu in 'Aruk, s. v. בִּטְנִי; Tan. Shemot 1; WR 12.5; BaR 10.4; Mishle 30, 107–108. לִמְחֹות in Prov. 31.3, is derived from חִיה "he lived". The warning against drunkenness on this occasion had its good reasons. Solomon had not touched any wine all the years he was engaged in building the Temple. To celebrate his marriage with Pharaoh's daughter, which took place on the day when the building of the Temple was completed, he changed his mode of life, and drank wine, with the effect that he was overpowered by a heavy sleep; see WR, *loc. cit.*—Bath-sheba is here, as elsewhere in the Haggadah, well spoken of, and is counted as one of the twenty-two virtuous women, whose praise is sung in the last chapter of Prov. Comp. Mishle, 31, 112, and MHG I, 337. Compare footnote 271 on p. 237. In the latter source it is maintained that she had, by means of the holy spirit, foreseen that her son would be the wisest of men.

14. רוֹזְנִים in Prov. 31.4, is connected with the Aramaic רִז "a secret". The secret refers to the secret lore of the Torah.

15. BaR 10.4. Comp. also Sanhedrin 70b; WR 12.5, and the references given at the beginning of note 13.

16. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 2, 20c; PK 27, 169a; Tan. B. III, 55; Tan. Ahare 1; Shir 1.1 (י); Koheleth 2.2. Wealth came to Solomon in a miraculous way. God commanded the sea to cast up all the valuable things that had ever been thrown into it; see *Tub ha-Arez*, 37c. As soon as Solomon married Pharaoh's daughter, his wealth began to diminish, though he remained very rich all his life; Niddah 70b.

With regard to the foreign women whom he married, the following views are found: 1) He married women belonging to the nations with which it is forbidden to enter into marriage relations (the so-called "seven nations") even when converted to Judaism; 2) he did not marry the foreign women, but had illicit relations with them; 3) the women he married were converts to Judaism, but as their conversion was not prompted by love for God, they did not observe the commandments of the Torah, and particularly neglected those which are incumbent on married women, and yet Solomon did not remonstrate with them; 4) he married those women to convert them to Judaism; but though his intentions were good, he is blamed for having done it, as one should not take a wife without being certain of her piety and virtue. Comp. the sources cited at the beginning of the note, and further Seder 'Olam 15; Yebamot 76a; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 7.5. Kimhi, 1 Kings 3,3, quotes from an unknown midrashic source the view that the biblical prohibition against intermarriage with Egyptians refers only to the marriage of Egyptian males and Jewish females, but not *vice versa*; comp. Index, s. v. "Moabite Women". The difference of opinion concerning Solomon's marriages reflects not only the difference in estimating Solomon's character (comp. note 59), but also in the attitude toward intermarriage. Solomon's favorite wife was Pharaoh's daughter, whom he loved as much as all the others put together. But she led him astray, and made him commit as many sins as all the others put together. See Sifre D., 52, and Midrash Tannaim 45; the sources quoted at the beginning of the note refer also to the sin of Solomon in marrying a multitude of wives; compare footnote 81 and note 40 on pp. 864–865.

## HIS WISDOM

But Solomon's wealth and pomp were as naught in comparison with his wisdom. When God appeared to him in Gibeon, in a dream by night, and gave him leave to ask what he would,—a grace accorded to none beside except King Ahaz of Judah, and promised only to the Messiah in time to come,<sup>17</sup>—Solomon chose wisdom, knowing that wisdom once in his possession, all else would come of itself.<sup>18</sup> His wisdom, the Scriptures testify, was greater than the wisdom of Ethan the Ezrahite, and Heman, and Calcol, and Darda, the three sons of Mahol.



This means that he was wiser than Abraham,<sup>19</sup> Moses,<sup>20</sup> Joseph,<sup>21</sup> and the generation of the desert.<sup>22</sup> He excelled even Adam.<sup>23</sup> His proverbs which have come down to us are barely eight hundred in number. Nevertheless the Scripture counts them equal to three thousand, for the reason that each verse in his book admits of a double and a triple interpretation. In his wisdom he analyzed the laws revealed to Moses, and he assigned reasons for the ritual and ceremonial ordinances of the Torah, which without his explanation had seemed strange.<sup>24</sup> The "forty-nine gates of wisdom" were open to Solomon as they had been to Moses, but the wise king sought to outdo even the wise legislator. He had such confidence in himself that he would have dispensed judgment without resort to witnesses, had he not been prevented by a heavenly voice.<sup>25</sup>

The first proof of his wisdom was given in his verdict in the case of the child claimed by two mothers as their own. When the women presented their difficulty, the king said that God in His wisdom had foreseen that such a quarrel would arise, and therefore had created the organs of man in pairs, so that neither of the two parties to the dispute might be wronged. On hearing these words from the king, Solomon's counsellors lamented: "Woe to thee, O land, when thy king is a youth." In a little while they realized the wisdom of the king, and then they exclaimed: "Happy art thou, O land, when thy king is a free man." The quarrel had of set purpose been brought on by God to the end that Solomon's wisdom might be made known. In reality the two litigants were not women at all, but spirits. That all doubt about the fairness of the verdict might be dispelled, a heavenly voice proclaimed: "This is the mother of the child."<sup>26</sup>

During the lifetime of David, when Solomon was still a lad, he had settled another difficult case in an equally brilliant way. A wealthy man had sent his son on a protracted business

trip to Africa. On his return he found that his father had died in the meantime, and his treasures had passed into the possession of a crafty slave, who had succeeded in ridding himself of all the other slaves, or intimidating them. In vain the rightful heir urged his claim before King David. As he could not bring witnesses to testify for him, there was no way of dispossessing the slave, who likewise called himself the son of the deceased. The child Solomon heard the case, and he devised a method of arriving at the truth. He had the father's corpse exhumed, and he dyed one of the bones with the blood first of one of the claimants, and then of the other. The blood of the slave showed no affinity with the bone, while the blood of the true heir permeated it. So the real son secured his inheritance.<sup>27</sup>

After his accession to the throne, a peculiar quarrel among heirs was brought before Solomon for adjudication. Asmodeus, the king of demons, once said to Solomon: "Thou art the wisest of men, yet I shall show thee something thou hast never seen." Thereupon Asmodeus stuck his finger in the ground, and up came a double-headed man. He was one of the Cainites, who live underground, and are altogether different in nature and habit from the denizens of the upper world.<sup>28</sup> When the Cainite wanted to descend to his dwelling-place again, it appeared that he could not return thither. Not even Asmodeus could bring the thing about. So he remained on earth, took unto himself a wife, and begot seven sons, one of whom resembled his father in having two heads. When the Cainite died, a dispute broke out among his descendants as to how the property was to be divided. The double-headed son claimed two portions. Both Solomon and the Sanhedrin were at a loss; they could not discover a precedent to guide them. Then Solomon prayed to God: "O Lord of all, when Thou didst appear to me in Gibeon, and didst give me leave to ask a gift of Thee, I desired neither silver nor



gold, but only wisdom, that I might be able to judge men in justice.”

God heard his prayer. When the sons of the Cainite again came before Solomon, he poured hot water on one of the heads of the double-headed monster, whereupon both heads flinched, and both mouths cried out: “We are dying, we are dying! We are but one, not two.” Solomon decided that the double-headed son was after all only a single being.<sup>29</sup>

On another occasion Solomon invented a lawsuit in order to elicit the truth in an involved case. Three men appeared before him, each of whom accused the others of theft. They had been travelling together, and, when the Sabbath approached, they halted and prepared to rest and sought a safe hiding-place for their money, for it is not allowed to carry money on one’s person on the Sabbath. They all three together secreted what they had in the same spot, and, when the Sabbath was over, they hastened thither, only to find that it had been stolen. It was clear one of the three must have been the thief, but which one?

Solomon said to them: “I know you to be experienced and thorough business men. I should like you to help me decide a suit which the king of Rome has submitted to me. In the Roman kingdom there lived a maiden and a youth, who promised each other under oath never to enter into a marriage without obtaining each other’s permission. The parents of the girl betrothed their daughter to a man whom she loved, but she refused to become his wife until the companion of her youth gave his consent. She took much gold and silver, and sought him out to bribe him. Setting aside his own love for the girl, he offered her and her lover his congratulations, and refused to accept the slightest return for the permission granted. On their homeward way the happy couple were surprised by an old highwayman, who was about to rob the

young man of his bride and his money. The girl told the brigand the story of her life, closing with these words: ‘If a youth controlled his passion for me, how much more shouldst thou, an old man, be filled with fear of God, and let me go my way.’ Her words took effect. The aged highwayman laid hands neither on the girl nor on the money.

“Now,” Solomon continued to the three litigants, “I was asked to decide which of the three persons concerned acted most nobly, the girl, the youth, or the highwayman, and I should like to have your views upon the question.”

The first of the three said: “My praise is for the girl, who kept her oath so faithfully.” The second: “I should award the palm to the youth, who kept himself in check, and did not permit his passion to prevail.” The third said: “Commend me to the brigand, who kept his hands off the money, more especially as he would have been doing all that could be expected of him if he had surrendered the woman—he might have taken the money.”

The last answer sufficed to put Solomon on the right track. The man who was inspired with admiration of the virtues of the robber, probably was himself filled with greed of money. He had him cross-examined, and finally extorted a confession. He had committed the theft, and he designated the spot where he had hidden the money.<sup>30</sup>

Even animals submitted their controversies to Solomon’s wise judgment. A man with a jug of milk came upon a serpent wailing pitifully in a field. To the man’s question, the serpent replied that it was tortured with thirst. “And what art thou carrying in the jug?” asked the serpent. When it heard what it was, it begged for the milk, and promised to reward the man by showing him a hidden treasure. The man gave the milk to the serpent, and was then led to a great rock. “Under this rock”, said the serpent, “lies



the treasure.” The man rolled the rock aside, and was about to take the treasure, when suddenly the serpent made a lunge at him, and coiled itself about his neck. “What meanest thou by such conduct?” exclaimed the man. “I am going to kill thee,” replied the serpent, “because thou art robbing me of all my money.” The man proposed that they put their case to King Solomon, and obtain his decision as to who was in the wrong. So they did. Solomon asked the serpent to state what it demanded of the man. “I want to kill him,” answered the serpent, “because the Scriptures command it, saying: ‘Thou shalt bruise the heel of man.’” Solomon said: “First release thy hold upon the man’s neck and descend; in court neither party to a lawsuit may enjoy an advantage over the other.” The serpent glided to the floor, and Solomon repeated his question, and received the same answer as before from the serpent. Then Solomon turned to the man and said: “To thee God’s command was to bruise the head of the serpent—do it!” And the man crushed the serpent’s head.<sup>31</sup>

Sometimes Solomon’s assertions and views, though they sprang from profound wisdom, seemed strange to the common run of men. In such cases, the wise king did not disdain to illustrate the correctness of his opinions. For instance, both the learned and the ignorant were stung into opposition by Solomon’s saying: “One man among a thousand have I found; but a virtuous woman among all those have I not found.” Solomon unhesitatingly pledged himself to prove that he was right. He had his attendants seek out a married couple enjoying a reputation for uprightness and virtue. The husband was cited before him, and Solomon told him that he had decided to appoint him to an exalted office. The king demanded only, as an earnest of his loyalty, that he murder his wife, so that he might be free to marry the king’s daughter, a spouse comporting with the dignity of his new station. With a

heavy heart the man went home. His despair grew at sight of his fair wife and his little children. Though determined to do the king’s bidding, he still lacked courage to kill his wife while she was awake. He waited until she was tight asleep, but then the child enfolded in the mother’s arms rekindled his parental and conjugal affection, and he replaced his sword in its sheath, saying to himself: “And if the king were to offer me his whole realm, I would not murder my wife.” Thereupon he went to Solomon, and told him his final decision. A month later Solomon sent for the wife, and declared his love for her. He told her that their happiness could be consummated if she would but do away with her husband. Then she should be made the first wife in his harem. Solomon gave her a leaden sword which glittered as though fashioned of steel. The woman returned home resolved to put the sword to its appointed use. Not a quiver of her eyelids betrayed her sinister purpose. On the contrary, by caresses and tender words she sought to disarm any suspicion that might attach to her. In the night she arose, drew forth the sword, and proceeded to kill her husband. The leaden instrument naturally did no harm, except to awaken her husband, to whom she had to confess her evil intent. The next day both man and wife were summoned before the king, who thus convinced his counsellors of the truth of his conviction, that no dependence can be placed on woman.<sup>32</sup>

The fame of Solomon’s wisdom spread far and wide. Many entered the service of the king, in the hope of profiting by his wisdom. Three brothers had served under him for thirteen years, and, disappointed at not having learnt anything, they made up their minds to quit his service. Solomon gave them the alternative of receiving one hundred coins each, or being taught three wise saws. They decided to take the money. They had scarcely left the town when the youngest of the three, regardless of the protests of his two



brothers, hastened back to Solomon and said to him: "My lord, I did not take service under thee to make money; I wanted to acquire wisdom. Pray, take back thy money, and teach me wisdom instead." Solomon thereupon imparted the following three rules of conduct to him: "When thou travellest abroad, set out on thy journey with the dawn and turn in for the night before darkness falls; do not cross a river that is swollen; and never betray a secret to a woman." The man quickly overtook his brothers, but he confided nothing to them of what he had learned from Solomon. They journeyed on together. At the approach of the ninth hour—three hours after noon—they reached a suitable spot in which to spend the night. The youngest brother, mindful of Solomon's advice, proposed that they stop there. The others taunted him with his stupidity, which, they said, he had begun to display when he carried his money back to Solomon. The two proceeded on their way, but the youngest arranged his quarters for the night. When darkness came on, and with it nipping cold, he was snug and comfortable, while his brothers were surprised by a snow storm, in which they perished. The following day he continued his journey, and on the road he found the dead bodies of his brothers. Having appropriated their money, he buried them, and went on. When he reached a river that was very much swollen, he bore Solomon's advice in mind, and delayed to cross until the flood subsided. While standing on the bank, he observed how some of the king's servants were attempting to ford the stream with beasts laden with gold, and how they were borne down by the flood. After the waters had abated, he crossed and appropriated the gold strapped to the drowned animals. When he returned home, wealthy and wise, he told nothing of what he had experienced even to his wife, who was very curious to find out where her husband had ob-

tained his wealth. Finally, she plied him so closely with questions that Solomon's advice about confiding a secret to a woman was quite forgotten. Once, when his wife was quarrelling with him, she cried out: "Not enough that thou didst murder thy brothers, thou desirest to kill me, too." Thereupon he was charged with the murder of their husbands by his two sisters-in-law. He was tried, condemned to death, and escaped the hangman only when he told the king the story of his life, and was recognized as his former retainer. It was with reference to this man's adventures that Solomon said: "Acquire wisdom; she is better than gold and much fine gold."<sup>33</sup>

Another of his disciples had a similar experience. Annually a man came from a great distance to pay a visit to the wise king, and when he departed Solomon was in the habit of bestowing a gift upon him. Once the guest refused the gift, and asked the king to teach him the language of the birds and the animals instead. The king was ready to grant his request, but he did not fail to warn him first of the great danger connected with such knowledge. "If thou tellest others a word of what thou hearest from an animal," he said, "thou wilt surely suffer death; thy destruction is inevitable." Nothing daunted, the visitor persisted in his wish, and the king instructed him in the secret art.

Returned home, he overheard a conversation between his ox and his ass. The ass said: "Brother, how farest thou with these people?"

The ox: "As thou livest, brother, I pass day and night in hard and painful toil."

The ass: "I can give thee relief, brother. If thou wilt follow my advice, thou shalt live in comfort, and shalt rid thyself of all hard work."

The ox: "O brother, may thy heart be inclined toward me, to take pity on me and help me. I promise not to depart from thy advice to the right or the left."



The ass: "God knows, I am speaking to thee in the uprightness of my heart and the purity of my thoughts. My advice to thee is not to eat either straw or fodder this night. When our master notices it, he will suppose that thou art sick. He will put no burdensome work upon thee, and thou canst take a good rest. That is the way I did to-day."

The ox followed the advice of his companion. He touched none of the food thrown to him. The master, suspecting a ruse on the part of the ass, arose during the night, went to the stable, and watched the ass eat his fill from the manger belonging to the ox. He could not help laughing out loud, which greatly amazed his wife, who, of course, had noticed nothing out of the way. The master evaded her questions. Something ludicrous had just occurred to him, he said by way of explanation.

For the sly trick played upon the ox, he determined to punish the ass. He ordered the servant to let the ox rest for the day, and make the ass do the work of both animals. At evening the ass trudged into the stable tired and exhausted. The ox greeted him with the words: "Brother, hast thou heard aught of what our heartless masters purpose?" "Yes," replied the ass, "I heard them speak of having thee slaughtered, if thou shouldst refuse to eat this night, too. They want to make sure of thy flesh at least." Scarcely had the ox heard the words of the ass when he threw himself upon his food like a ravenous lion upon his prey. Not a speck did he leave behind, and the master was suddenly moved to uproarious laughter. This time his wife insisted upon knowing the cause. In vain she entreated and supplicated. She swore not to live with him any more if he did not tell her why he laughed. The man loved her so devotedly that he was ready to sacrifice his life to satisfy her whim, but before taking leave of this world he desired to see his

friends and relations once more, and he invited them all to his house.

Meantime his dog was made aware of the master's approaching end, and such sadness took possession of the faithful beast that he touched neither food nor drink. The cock, on the other hand, gaily appropriated the food intended for the dog, and he and his wives enjoyed a banquet. Outraged by such unfeeling behavior, the dog said to the cock: "How great is thy impudence, and how insignificant thy modesty! Thy master is but a step from the grave, and thou eatest and makest merry." The cock's reply was: "Is it my fault if our master is a fool and an idiot? I have ten wives, and I rule them as I will. Not one dares oppose me and my commands. Our master has a single wife, and this one he cannot control and manage." "What ought our master to do?" asked the dog. "Let him take a heavy stick and belabor his wife's back thoroughly," advised the cock, "and I warrant thee, she won't plague him any more to reveal his secrets."

The husband had overheard this conversation, too, and the cock's advice seemed good. He followed it, and death was averted.<sup>34</sup>

On many occasions, Solomon brought his acumen and wisdom to bear upon foreign rulers who attempted to concoct mischief against him. Solomon needed help in building the Temple, and he wrote to Pharaoh, asking him to send artists to Jerusalem. Pharaoh complied with his request, but not honestly. He had his astrologers determine which of his men were destined to die within the year. These candidates for the grave he passed over to Solomon. The Jewish king was not slow to discover the trick played upon him. He immediately returned the men to Egypt, each provided with his grave clothes, and wrote: "To Pharaoh! I suppose thou hadst no shrouds for these people. Herewith I send thee the men, and what they were in need of."<sup>35</sup>



Hiram, king of Tyre, the steadfast friend of the dynasty of David, who had done Solomon such valuable services in connection with the building of the Temple, was desirous of testing his wisdom. He was in the habit of sending catch-questions and riddles to Solomon with the request that he solve them and help him out of his embarrassment about them. Solomon, of course, succeeded in answering them all. Later on he made an agreement with Hiram, that they were to exchange conundrums and riddles, and a money fine was to be exacted from the one of them who failed to find the proper answer to a question propounded by the other. Naturally it was Hiram who was always the loser. The Tyrians maintain that finally Solomon found more than his match in one of Hiram's subjects, one Abdamon, who put many a riddle to Solomon that baffled his wit.<sup>36</sup>

Of Solomon's subtlety in riddle guessing only a few instances have come down to us, all of them connected with riddles put to him by the Queen of Sheba.<sup>37</sup> The story of this queen, of her relation to Solomon, and what induced her to leave her distant home and journey to the court at Jerusalem forms an interesting chapter in the eventful life of the wise king.

17. BR 44.8; Aggadat Shir 1.5; Tehillim 2, 29; 12, 179; 119, 494; 2 ARN 43. According to the dissenting view given in these sources Abraham and Jacob shared this distinction with the three other men mentioned there.

18. PR 14, 59a; Shir 1.1 (ט). Solomon fasted forty days, that God should grant him wisdom, and as a reward for his modesty and humility his wish was fulfilled so that he became "the father of wisdom". See Mishle 1, 1, where אבי הנבואה "father of prophecy" is to be struck out as a copyist's error, who while writing of Solomon put down the title of Moses, who is often called the father of wisdom and the father of prophecy. Compare with p. 485, note 68 towards the end. Glowing descriptions of Solomon's wisdom are found in Ecclus, 47.13, *seq.*; Wisdom 7.15, *seq.*; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 2.5. According to the Hellenistic writers, Solomon's wisdom consisted in his great knowl-

edge of science and philosophy. But for the Rabbis there is no other wisdom than the knowledge of the Torah, and accordingly, Solomon's great mastery of the Torah is praised; see references in note 24. He attempted to find not only the reasons of the divine commandments, but also the profound secret of divine retribution for the fulfilment of the commandments. He further attempted to discover the "end" (the time of the advent of the Messiah). See Tehillim, 9, 80–81. As to Solomon's wisdom, see also Shir 1.1; Koheleth 1.1 and 13; 'Erubin 21b; Shabbat 14b; Yebamot 21a. In the three last passages Solomon is said to have contributed a great deal to the further development of the Torah by his introducing new ordinances and ceremonies. The institution of the 'Erub and the ceremony of washing the hands before meals as well as the extension of the prohibited marriages (שניות לעריות), are attributed to him. When Alexander the Great conquered Jerusalem, he found there Solomon's books of wisdom which he gave to his teacher Aristotle, who drew all his knowledge from them. The wisdom of the Greeks is accordingly entirely dependent upon Solomon. See *Derek Emunah* 46b; *Shalshet ha-Kabbalah* 102b (שמעון הצדיק); *Iggeret Ba'ale Hayyim* 3.7; Ginzberg, *Aristotle in Jewish Literature in Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v.

19. Jewish tradition identifies Ethan the Ezrahite (Ps. 89.1) with Abraham. Comp. Baba Batra 15a.

20. Heman, "the confidant" (of God), *i. e.*, Moses; comp. Num. 12.7.

21. Calcol, "the giver of food", *i. e.*, Joseph; comp. Genesis 47.12.

22. Dar-Da; "Dor" = "generation", and Da = "wisdom"; they are called "the sons of Mahol", that is, the "sons of pardon", because their sins were forgiven; compare with p. 592.

23. האדם (= man), in this verse, is taken to mean Adam.

24. PK 4, 33a–33b; PR 12, 59a–60b; Tan. B. IV, 109–112; Tan. Hukkat 6; BaR 19.3; Koheleth 7.23; Mishle 1, 39; Midrash Shir 23a; ps.-Jerome, 1 Kings 4.31–32. On the variants of this Haggadah in ps.-Jerome, see Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 73. On the three thousand parables of Solomon, see also 'Erubin 21a; Shir 1.1; text on p. 927, and Ginzberg, *ibid.*, 74. As Solomon excelled all Israel in wisdom, even so did he excel all the wisest men among other nations, the dwellers in the east, who were renowned for their wisdom (on these, see also Yerushalmi Shabbat 12, 13d, towards the end), the Egyptians, who were famous as masters of astrology and magic. In his great wisdom Solomon was not only able to supplement the wise words of his father David, but sometimes also to correct them, and accordingly the views expressed in the Book of Proverbs are not always in harmony with those of the Book of Psalms, notwithstanding the great reverence Solomon



had for his father, to whose glorification he devoted his entire life. See Mishle 1, 42, 43; 15, 79; Shir 1.6 (here the parallels between the lives of David and Solomon are dwelled upon) and 1.10; Baba Batra 10b. To the opinions wherein David and Solomon differed belongs also this: the former holds that the heart (=feeling and will) is the seat of wisdom, whereas the latter declares that the head (intellect) generates wisdom. See Mishle 1, 42, and the Mohammedan legend in Salzberger, *Salomo-Sage*, 66, who, strangely enough, did not see the dependence of this legend on the rabbinic Midrash, comp. note 27 (middle). On Solomon's literary products, see note 93.

25. Rosh ha-Shanah 21b. According to another version, Solomon's wisdom was in one respect akin to the divine wisdom; like God he could give judgment without the evidence of witnesses, for he penetrated into the secrets of man's thoughts. See Tehillim 72, 324 (with regard to Solomon's decision in the case of the two women); Targum Shir 1.2, followed by Zohar II, 78a; Shir 1.1; ShR 15.26; Wisdom 7.20. As to the "forty-nine gates of wisdom", which were open to Moses and Solomon (according to one view in Rosh ha-Shanah, *loc. cit.*, however, the former only had that privilege), see the numerous passages containing the Haggadah that each statement of the Torah admits of forty-nine correct interpretations ("and as many incorrect ones" in PR 21.101a is a later addition). Comp. PR 14, 58a–58b, 60b, and 21, 101a; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 4, 22a; Ekah, introduction, XXIII, 20; PK 4, 31a–31b; Soferim 16.6; 'Erubin 13b. The reading "sixty gates of wisdom" in *Hinnukh*, No. 152 is very likely a copyist's error. A different Haggada is given in Alphabet of R. Akiba 16, according to which no less than five thousand gates of wisdom, eight thousand gates of understanding, and eleven thousand gates of knowledge were opened to Moses on Sinai. These numbers correspond to the number of the books of the Bible multiplied by a thousand. This Scripture consists of the five books of Moses, eight of the prophets (the Minor Prophets are counted as one book), and eleven of the Hagiographa (counting Ezra and Nehemiah as one book; see Baba Batra 14b; Sanhedrin 93b). See also Norzi, Num. 28.5.

26. Tehillim 72, 324–325; Shir 1. 1,10; Koheleth 1.1; Makkot 23b; BR 85.12; Yalkut Reubeni on Gen. 4.8, which reads: These female spirits were Lilith and Naamah. It is hardly admissible to assume dependence upon the similar Indian legend (comp. Salzberger, *Salomo-Sage*, 52–53). This Haggadah very likely has its origin in the quite natural supposition that no woman, and particularly no mother, would have a child killed to satisfy a grudge. Comp. Shu'aib, Shekalim, 34c. Tehillim, *loc. cit.*, has the fine remark that the Bible, in describing the procedure in Solomon's court, is employing forensic style, and therefore 1 Kings 3.23 is not superfluous, as it is the duty of the

judge to sum up the claims of the litigants before rendering his decision.

27. BHM IV, 145–146; Hibbur Ma'as. No. 10; Ha-sidim 91, where the wise judge is R. Sa'adya Gaon. On the widespread legend concerning the test of kinship, see Steinschneider, *Hebräische Bibliographie*, XIII, 133, and XVIII, 39; Kohut, *Journal of American Oriental Society*, XXIX, 84–85; Davidson, *Sepher Sha'ashuim*, LXII; Gaster, *Exempla* No. 391; Gaston Paris, *R. E. J.* XI, 7. The legend in vol. IV, pp. 88–85, about young David's discovery of the thief very likely belongs to the cycle of legends clustering around Solomon, a copyist erroneously putting the name of the father instead that of the son. Comp. Steinschneider, *op. cit.* XVIII, 40; Salzberger, *Salomo-Sage*, 57; note 8; footnote 26 on p. 914. The legend is very fond of showing the great wisdom of the youth Solomon, who even then often overruled the seemingly just decisions of his father David. A poor servant of David once borrowed an egg with the promise to return all that might come from it. When his creditor insisted upon the fulfilment of the promise, David, before whom the case was tried, condemned him to an enormous amount of money, in view of the fact that from the egg a chicken could be hatched which would lay eighteen eggs, from which eighteen chickens could be hatched, each of which would lay eighteen eggs, etc. On the advice of Solomon the debtor sowed boiled peas, and when seen by David and asked how he could expect these to grow, he replied: How can a boiled egg be hatched and produce chickens? David had neglected to find out before giving judgment whether the egg borrowed was boiled or not. Levi, R.E.J. XXXIII, 65 *seq.* Gaster, *Exempla*, Nos. 329 and 342. Seymour, *Tales of King Solomon*, 18 *seq.*, gives a considerable number of legends all of which have the same aim, to show the superiority of Solomon's wisdom to that of his father. The earlier Jewish literature hardly knows of this rivalry between father and son, though we find there some remarks to the effect that certain views expressed by Solomon in his writings do not always agree with those of his father, comp. Shabbat 30a and note 24. Some of these legends however, contain old material. Comp. *e. g.* the tale about the treasure (Seymour 18–19) which belongs to the circle of Alexander legends, compare footnote 35 on p. 1034. Great as was Solomon's wisdom, he nevertheless was not free from human limitations. Once a poor man was carrying a sack of flour in his hand when a wind came and blew it into the sea. He complained to David about the wind, but all that the King could do was to make his loss good and send him home. Solomon, however, was not satisfied with his father's action in this matter and insisted on calling the wind to justice and David finally yielded to the wish of his son. He conjured the spirit of the wind and asked him to explain why he had blown the poor man's flour into the sea. The answer was as follows: a ship, on



high sea with many people on board had sprung a leak and was on the point of foundering; the flour, however, stopped the leak and all were saved. A few days later the ship came into port and they gave the poor man a third of their possessions which they had vowed as a thank-offering; Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 444; Jacob Saphir *אבן ספיר* I, 26 seq.; Seymour, *Tales of King Solomon* 18.

28. On the dwelling-place of the Cainites, see text on p. 110.

29. *Hibbur ha-Ma'asiyyot*, No 11; BHM IV, 151–152; Ma'asiyyot (Gaster's edition), 113, 75; Al-Barceloni, 173; Mordecai, *Tefillin*, who gives PRE as his source. See Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 113; Steinschneider, *Hebräische Bibliographie*, XVIII, 16, and Salzberger, *Salomo-Sage*, 58.

30. Rabbenu Nissim 38; Midrash 'Aseret ha-Debarim in *Hibbur ha-Ma'asiyyot* (eighth commandment) and BHM I, 86–87; Ma'asiyyot ed. Gaster 73–75; Baraita de-Yeshua (end); Hegyon ha-Nefesh, 10a. Comp. Steinschneider, *Hebräische Bibliographie*, XVIII, 40. The legend given in BHM *ibid.* 87–88, and *Hibbur Ma'asiyyot* (third commandment) concerning the thief who betrayed himself is brought into relation with Solomon in the version thereof in the Constantinople edition of *משלים של שלמה*. This legend is as follows: A man arriving in a strange place shortly before the beginning of the Sabbath, hastened to bury the money he had with him, as it is forbidden to carry about any money on the day of rest. For he had no friend in that place to whom he could entrust his purse. At the termination of the Sabbath he went to get his money, but it was not there; his host had watched him on the previous day, and stole the purse. The stranger suspected his host, but having no evidence, he thought it best to ask the wise Solomon for advice, and he did not regret it. On the king's advice, he went up to his host, and told him that he had lately buried a large sum of money for safety, but having retained a still greater sum on his person, he would like to be advised whether he should put it in the same place as the other sum, or should entrust it to somebody. The dishonest host, greedy for the stranger's money, advised him to bury the larger sum in the same place, and hastened to replace the stolen money so that the owner should add more thereto. The latter, however, joyfully took his money and went his way. Comp. Steinschneider, *op. cit.* XIII, 129, seq. Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 111.

31. Tan. B. Introduction, 157, and in a very elaborate form, Ma'asch-Buch, No. 144. Comp. Gaster, *Exempla*, Nos. 441a–441b. On the view that the serpent knew the place of the hidden treasures, see text on p. 71.

32. Rabbenu Nissim 14; Meshalim No. 3; BHM IV, 146–147; Zabara, *Sepher Sha'ashuim*, Davidson's edition, XLIX–XXLII; Gaster *Exempla* Nos. 328, 401. Another legend illustrating the truth or Solomon's words, "a woman, etc." (Eccles. 7.28) is given in Meshalim, No. 2, and BHM

IV, 146; but this source does not attribute any part in it to the wise king. On the other hand he plays a very important part in the following two legends. Once Solomon had to make use of his knowledge of magic to convince people of the truth of his words against women. Once he warned a man against the faithlessness of his wife, but the latter did not believe him. Solomon gave him as a present a silver goblet, which the man took home. The paramour of his wife came, saw the goblet and asked the woman to drink out of it together with him. They did so and their lips remained attached to the goblet. When brought before Solomon, the wise king said: "The spell can only be broken if their heads be pierced with red hot iron. The wronged husband pleaded, however, for the culprits. Solomon took David's sword (compare footnote 59, end, on p. 921) on which was engraved the Name, poured water over it and sprinkled their faces with this water. They were thus released. Others say that two scholars passed a scroll of the Torah between them which released them; Gaster, *Exempla* 351a. The variant of this legend (No. 351b) in which Bath-sheba is introduced, to illustrate the wickedness of women, has some relation to that given by Seymour, *Tales of King Solomon*, 14–15. Here it is told that the mother of Solomon decided to kill him because of his slighting remark about women made by him while still an infant of three years, when he said that "a woman's soul is not as heavy as a handful of chips of wood."

33. Meshalim No. 4; BHM IV, 148–150; Gaster, *Exempla* No. 402. Comp. Steinschneider, *Hebräische Bibliographie*, XVIII, 39–40. As to the three rules of conduct imparted by Solomon to his disciple, see text on pp. 381 and p. 390, where the first one is referred to; the second is a verbal variant of the proverb: "he who throws himself against a wave is overthrown by it" (comp. BR 14.15); the third is found verbatim in *Musar Haskel* beginning (Steinschneider's edition), and comp. also Eccles. 7.26, according to the Greek. On hundred as a round number see footnote 316 on p. 320, and comp. also Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 4, 22b (middle of column).

34. *Ben ha-Melek we-ha-Nazir*, XXIV, and in abridged form in Prym and Socin, *Der Dialekt des Tur Abdin*, LXVI. There are several versions of this legend, in some of which Solomon does not play any part. Comp. Gaster *Exempla*, Nos. 381, 449; Neuhoﬀ, *Afrikanische Märchen* 51; footnote 190 on pp. 42–43. The conception that he who knows the language of animals must keep it secret at the peril of his life seems to be presupposed also in the Arabic legend given by Salzberger, *Salomo-Sage*, 60. The view that Solomon understood the languages of all animals is based upon 1 Kings 5.13, and is often referred to in the midrashic literature; comp. Shir. 1.1; Koheleth 1.11 (here an attempt is made to rationalize the popular belief. Comp. also Tan. B. IV, 112 top, and parallel passages cited by Buber);



Targum Shenì 1.2, 5. Solomon's knowledge of the languages of the animals plays an important part in Mohammedan legends; see footnote 58 on p. 69. The following legend given by Sabba', Wa-Yeze, 33b, is very likely of Mohammedan origin: Solomon once overheard a male bird say to his mate: "If thou desirest it, I shall forthwith destroy the throne upon which Solomon sits." Astonished at its impudence, the wise king had this bird appear before him, and asked it to explain what it meant by these boasting words. The bird replied: "O Solomon, where is thy wisdom? Knowest thou not that one utters foolish things to gain the admiration of the woman one loves?" A similar tale is found in Hanauer, *Folklore of Holy Land* 48.

35. PK 4, 34a; PR 12, 59b; Tan. B. IV, 110; Tan. Hukkat 6; BaR 19.3.

36. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 5.3. The correspondence between the two kings is given by Josephus, *op cit.*, VIII, 2.6–7, and by Eupolemus, 448–449, in a very lengthy form, whereas Scripture only refers to it in a few words. Eupolemus, 451, speaks of a golden pillar which Solomon presented to Hiram, and which the latter dedicated to Zeus; comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 5.3. Another legend relates that Hiram fashioned his daughter's statue of the gold which Solomon presented to him; comp. Theophilus in Eusebius, *Praep. Evang.*, 452. This is also to be supplemented by the legend that Solomon married Hiram's daughter; see Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1.21. In the kabbalistic literature the legend concerning the rivalry between Solomon and Hiram in solving riddles is connected with the Hiram legend given in text on pp. 1104–1105; comp. Zohar II, 159a, and II, 61a; Sabba', Tezaw-weh, 84, and wa-Ethanan, 134a. As to the possessions given by Solomon to Hiram (1 Kings 9.13), see Shabbat 54a, where several opinions are given why the king of Tyre was dissatisfied with the gift. According to one view, the inhabitants of these cities "were laden with gold and silver", so that Hiram apprehended that they would not be willing to engage in warlike expeditions; see also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 5.3.

37. In Baba Batra 15b an opinion is quoted that a "queen of Sheba" never existed, and that the expression **מַלְכַּת שְׁבָא** means "dominion of Sheba" (**מְלִכְתָּ**). This statement very likely refers to Job. 1.15, where the Rabbis seem to have read **מַלְכַּת שְׁבָא**; comp. Targum, *ad loc.* See, however, MHG I, 379; footnote 311 on p. 243; Schechter in *Folk-Lore*, 1890, pp. 350–351.

## THE QUEEN OF SHEBA

Solomon, it must be remembered, bore rule not only over men, but also over the beasts

of the field, the birds of the air, demons, spirits, and the spectres of the night. He knew the language of all of them and they understood his language.<sup>38</sup>

When Solomon was of good cheer by reason of wine, he summoned the beasts of the field, the birds of the air, the creeping reptiles, the shades, the spectres, and the ghosts, to perform their dances before the kings, his neighbors, whom he invited to witness his power and greatness. The king's scribes called the animals and the spirits by name, one by one, and they all assembled of their own accord, without fetters or bonds, with no human hand to guide them.

On one occasion the hoopoe<sup>39</sup> was missed from among the birds. He could not be found anywhere. The king, full of wrath, ordered him to be produced and chastised for his tardiness. The hoopoe appeared and said: "O lord, king of the world, incline thine ear and hearken to my words. Three months have gone by since I began to take counsel with myself and resolve upon a course of action. I have eaten no food and drunk no water, in order to fly about in the whole world and see whether there is a domain anywhere which is not subject to my lord the king.<sup>40</sup> And I found a city, the city of Kitor, in the East. Dust is more valuable than gold there, and silver is like the mud of the streets. Its trees are from the beginning of all time, and they suck up water that flows from the Garden of Eden. The city is crowded with men. On their heads they wear garlands wreathed in Paradise. They know not how to fight, nor how to shoot with bow and arrow. Their ruler is a woman, she is called the Queen of Sheba. If, now, it please thee, O lord and king, I shall gird my loins like a hero, and journey to the city of Kitor in the land of Sheba. Its kings I shall fetter with chains and its rulers with iron bands, and bring them all before my lord the king."



The hoopoe's speech pleased the king. The clerks of his land were summoned, and they wrote a letter and bound it to the hoopoe's wing. The bird rose skyward, uttered his cry, and flew away, followed by all the other birds.

And they came to Kitor in the land of Sheba. It was morning, and the queen had gone forth to pay worship to the sun. Suddenly the birds darkened his light. The queen raised her hand, and rent her garment, and was sore astonished. Then the hoopoe alighted near her. Seeing that a letter was tied to his wing, she loosed it and read it. And what was written in the letter? "From me, King Solomon! Peace be with thee, peace with the nobles of thy realm! Know that God has appointed me king over the beasts of the field, the birds of the air, the demons, the spirits, and the spectres. All the kings of the East and the West come to bring me greetings. If thou wilt come and salute me, I shall show thee great honor, more than to any of the kings that attend me. But if thou wilt not pay homage to me, I shall send out kings, legions, and riders against thee. Thou askest, who are these kings, legions, and riders of King Solomon? The beasts of the field are my kings, the birds my riders, the demons, spirits, and shades of the night my legions. The demons will throttle you in your beds at night, while the beasts will slay you in the field, and the birds will consume your flesh."

When the Queen of Sheba had read the contents of the letter, she again rent her garment, and sent word to her elders and her princes: "Know you not what Solomon has written to me?" They answered: "We know nothing of King Solomon, and his dominion we regard as naught." But their words did not reassure the queen. She assembled all the ships of the sea, and loaded them with the finest kinds of wood, and with pearls and precious stones. Together with these she sent Solomon six thousand youths and maidens, born in the same year, in the same

month, on the same day, in the same hour—all of equal stature and size, all clothed in purple garments. They bore a letter to King Solomon as follows: "From the city of Kitor to the land of Israel is a journey of seven years. As it is thy wish and behest that I visit thee, I shall hasten and be in Jerusalem at the end of three years."

When the time of her arrival drew nigh, Solomon sent Benaiah the son of Jehoiada to meet her. Benaiah was like unto the flush in the eastern sky at break of day, like unto the evening star that outshines all other stars, like unto the lily growing by brooks of water. When the queen caught sight of him, she descended from her chariot to do him honor. Benaiah asked her why she left her chariot. "Art thou not King Solomon?" she questioned in turn. Benaiah replied: "Not King Solomon am I, only one of his servants that stand in his presence." Thereupon the queen turned to her nobles and said: "If you have not beheld the lion, at least you have seen his lair, and if you have not beheld King Solomon, at least you have seen the beauty of him that stands in his presence."

Benaiah conducted the queen to Solomon, who had gone to sit in a house of glass to receive her. The queen was deceived by an illusion. She thought the king was sitting in water, and as she stepped across to him she raised her garment to keep it dry. On her bared feet the king noticed hair, and he said to her: "Thy beauty is the beauty of a woman, but thy hair is masculine; hair is an ornament to a man, but it disfigures a woman."<sup>41</sup>

Then the queen began and said:<sup>42</sup> "I have heard of thee and thy wisdom; if now I inquire of thee concerning a matter, wilt thou answer me?" He replied: "The Lord giveth wisdom, out of His mouth cometh knowledge and understanding." She then said to him:

1. "Seven there are that issue and nine that enter; two yield the draught and one drinks."



Said he to her: "Seven are the days of a woman's defilement, and nine the months of pregnancy; two are the breasts that yield the draught, and one the child that drinks it." Whereupon she said to him: "Thou art wise."

2. Then she questioned him further: "A woman said to her son, thy father is my father, and thy grandfather my husband; thou art my son, and I am thy sister." "Assuredly," said he, "it was the daughter of Lot who spake thus to her son."

3. She placed a number of males and females of the same stature and garb before him and said: "Distinguish between them." Forthwith he made a sign to the eunuchs, who brought him a quantity of nuts and roasted ears of corn. The males, who were not bashful, seized them with bare hands; the females took them, putting forth their gloved hands from beneath their garments. Whereupon he exclaimed: "Those are the males, these the females."

4. She brought a number of men to him, some circumcised and others uncircumcised, and asked him to distinguish between them. He immediately made a sign to the high priest, who opened the Ark of the covenant, whereupon those that were circumcised bowed their bodies to half their height, while their countenances were filled with the radiance of the Shekinah; the uncircumcised fell prone upon their faces. "Those", said he, "are circumcised, these uncircumcised."<sup>43</sup> "Thou art wise, indeed," she exclaimed.

5. She put other questions to him, to all of which he gave replies. "Who is he who neither was born nor has died?" "It is the Lord of the world, blessed be He."

6. "What land is that which has but once seen the sun?" "The land upon which, after the creation, the waters were gathered, and the bed of the Red Sea on the day when it was divided."

7. "There is an enclosure with ten doors, when one is open, nine are shut; when nine are open, one is shut?" "That enclosure is the womb; the ten doors are the ten orifices of man—his eyes, ears, nostrils, mouth, the apertures for the discharge of the excreta and the urine, and the navel; when the child is in the embryonic state, the navel is open and the other orifices are closed, but when it issues from the womb, the navel is closed and the others are opened."

8. "There is something which when living moves not, yet when its head is cut off it moves?" "It is the ship in the sea."<sup>44</sup>

9. "Which are the three that neither ate, nor did they drink, nor did they have bread put into them, yet they saved lives from death?" "The signet, the cord, and the staff are those three."

10. "Three entered a cave and five came forth therefrom?" "Lot and his two daughters and their two children."

11. "The dead lived, the grave moved, and the dead prayed: what is that?" "The dead that lived and prayed, Jonah; and the fish, the moving grave."

12. "Who were the three that ate and drank on the earth, and yet were not born of male and female?" "The three angels who visited Abraham."<sup>45</sup>

13. "Four entered a place of death and came forth alive, and two entered a place of life and came forth dead?" "The four were Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, and the two were Nadab and Abihu."

14. "Who was he that was born and died not?" "Elijah and the Messiah."

15. "What was that which was not born, yet life was given to it?" "The golden calf."

16. "What is that which is produced from the ground, yet man produces it, while its food is the fruit of the ground?" "A wick."



17. "A woman was wedded to two, and bore two sons, yet these four had one father?" "Tamar."

18. "A house full of dead; no dead one came among them, nor did a living come forth from them?" "It is the story of Samson and the Philistines."

19. The queen next ordered the sawn trunk of a cedar tree to be brought, and she asked Solomon to point out at which end the root had been and at which the branches. He bade her cast it into the water, when one end sank and the other floated upon the surface of the water. That part which sank was the root, and that which remained uppermost was the branch end. Then she said to him: "Thou exceedest in wisdom and goodness the fame which I heard, blessed be thy God!"<sup>46</sup>

The last three riddles which the Queen of Sheba put to Solomon were the following:

20. "What is this? A wooden well with iron buckets, which draw stones and pour out water." The king replied: "A rouge-tube."

21. "What is this? It comes as dust from the earth, its food is dust, it is poured out like water, and lights the house."—"Naphtha."

22. "What is this? It walks ahead of all; it cries out loud and bitterly; its head is like the reed; it is the glory of the noble, the disgrace of the poor; the glory of the dead, the disgrace of the living; the delight of birds, the distress of fishes."—He answered: "Flax."<sup>47</sup>

---

38. Solomon's knowledge of the languages of the animals is hardly referred to in the older literature; comp. the references given in notes 24 and 34 to the Midrashim, where 1 Kings 5.13 is interpreted in a rationalistic manner. But Solomon's dominion over the entire creation, men, animals, demons, and angels, is not disputed; comp. ShR 15.6 and 30.16; BaR 11.3; BR 34.12 (which reads: The power over the animal world, lost by Adam through his sin, was regained by Solomon); Sanhedrin 20b (which reads: Solomon before his fall was lord over all the terrestri-

als and celestials); compare also with pp. 962, *seq.*, and 973, *seq.*

39. For details concerning this bird, see Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 139, *seq.*; note 85 and footnote 696 on p. 754.

40. Solomon is one of the few (three or ten) monarchs who ruled over the entire world; see Shir 1.1, 10; Mishle 20, 88, and 30, 104; PRE 11; Esther R. 1.1 (here David is also said to have been a "Cosmocrator"); Megillah 11b (top). Compare with p. 161; text on pp. 666, 760. The Church Fathers are at pains to contradict this assertion of the Jewish legend, not out of dislike for Solomon, but for polemical reasons, maintaining that the scriptural passages speaking of man's dominion over the entire creation can only refer to Jesus. See Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 34; Tertullian, *Adversus Judaeos*, 7.

41. Certain particulars concerning the relations between the queen of Sheba and Solomon have been omitted here because of their too realistic character. In the Arabic legend in which the queen bears the name Bilkis (Hebrew פִּלְגֵשׁ "concubine"?), we are told that the genii wanted to hinder the marriage of Solomon and the queen of Sheba; they therefore called the king's attention to the growth of hair on her legs. To convince himself that they spoke the truth, Solomon had a glass palace built, and when he found that their allegation was confirmed, he ordered them to make Nurah, a mixture of arsenic and unslaked lime, which he used as a depilatory. Comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 219, and Seymour *Tales of King Solomon* 146–148. The legend concerning the hair on the queen's legs very likely supposes that she was of the genii (this is explicitly stated by the Arabs), and hence the hair, for the bodies of demons are covered with hair; compare footnote 58 on p. 863. That Solomon married the queen of Sheba is stated also in 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira, 21b, where the depilatory is also mentioned. Compare footnote 311 on p. 243 and footnote 21 on p. 1072.

42. Targum Sheni 1.3, 8–10. Read either לשמשא instead of ליומא, or "day" is here used instead of "sun"; comp. BR. 6.7. The description of Benaiah (concerning whom see vol. IV, pp. 166, 172) reminds one of that given of the high priest Simeon in Ecclus. 50.6, *seq.* It is, however, possible that Targum Sheni made use of the old piyyut נהדרמה (Musaf of Day of Atonement), the author of which was acquainted with the Hebrew original of Ecclus. Comp. Rapoport, *Bikkure ha-Ittim* IX, 116.

43. Those who are not sons of the covenant of Abraham cannot bear the divine presence; compare footnote 131 on p. 204, and footnote 727 on p. 761. See also text on p. 935.

44. The living tree had no motion; the trunk from which the crowning branches have been severed supplies the material for the moving vessels.



45. As to the question whether the angels who visited Abraham actually ate, or only “feigned to eat”, see footnote 143 on p. 205. The fifth riddle seems to be anti-Christian. For the sixth riddle, see PRE 10 and Midrash Jonah 98, where it is said that the fish showed Jonah the “roads of the Red Sea” through which Israel passed. The ninth riddle refers to the story of Judah (comp. Gen. 38.25).

46. These nineteen riddles found in the MS. Midrash ha-Hefez were translated and explained by Schechter in *Folk-Lore* I, 349–358. It is noteworthy that the fifth and eighth riddles are introduced by the words, “and furthermore she asked him”, from which it may be inferred that three different sources have been made use of by the compiler of this Midrash. The first four occur in Mishle I, 40–41. It is further noteworthy that the seventh and eighth are in Aramaic while the others are in Hebrew. This would probably show that the former belonged to some Targum. Comp. Herz, *Die Rätsel d. König. von Saba*; Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 220–221, and the following note. On the fourteenth riddle, see footnote 61 on p. 130.

47. Targum Sheni 1,3, 10. The second riddle is given in Hebrew (מבִּיט literally “look”, means here “lights”), though the Targum is of course in Aramaic. The following points may contribute to the understanding of the third riddle. The sail of the boat is made of flax, in a storm it waves to and fro, and when beaten by the wind, it emits sounds; the rich wear byssus, the poor have rags, and shrouds are usually made of linen (comp. Ketubot 8b); the birds steal the flax-seed, and the fish are caught with nets made of flax, comp. Wünsche, *Räthsel-Weisheit bei den Hebräern*; Cassel, *Zweites Targum*, 21–22. The meaning of אַרְקִלִין in Targum Sheni is a riddle which the lexicographers attempted to solve; but not being as wise as Solomon, they failed. Comp. Krauss, *Lehnwörter*, s. v., and *Ha-Shiloah*, XIV. 92. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 6.5, the “queen of Egypt and Ethiopia” (that is how he designates the queen of Sheba) was inquisitive about philosophy, and was “a woman that on other accounts also was to be admired”. She showed her admiration of Solomon by many and precious gifts she made to him, and it is said that the root of that balsam which Palestine produces (comp. Berakot 43a, where balsam oil, אַפְרִסְמוֹן, is described as שֶׁמֶן אֶרְצוֹ, “the oil of our land”) was the gift of this woman; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 6.6.

## SOLOMON MASTER OF THE DEMONS

Never has there lived a man privileged, like Solomon, to make the demons amenable

to his will. God endowed him with the ability to turn the vicious power of demons into a power working to the advantage of men. He invented formulas of incantation by which diseases were alleviated, and others by which demons were exorcised so that they were banished forever.<sup>48</sup> As his personal attendants he had spirits and demons whom he could send hither and thither on the instant. He could grow tropical plants in Palestine, because his ministering spirits secured water for him from India.<sup>49</sup>

As the spirits were subservient to him, so also the animals. He had an eagle upon whose back he was transported to the desert and back again in one day, to build there the city called Tadmor in the Bible.<sup>50</sup> This city must not be confounded with the later Syrian city of Palmyra, also called Tadmor. It was situated near the “mountains of darkness”,<sup>51</sup> the trysting-place of the spirits and demons. Thither the eagle would carry Solomon in the twinkling of an eye, and Solomon would drop a paper inscribed with a verse among the spirits, to ward off evil from himself. Then the eagle would reconnoitre the mountains of darkness, until he had spied out the spot in which the fallen angels ‘Azza and ‘Azrael<sup>52</sup> lie chained with iron fetters—a spot which no one, not even a bird, may visit. When the eagle found the place, he would take Solomon under his left wing, and fly to the two angels. Through the power of the ring having the Holy Name graven upon it, which Solomon put into the eagle’s mouth, ‘Azza and ‘Azrael were forced to reveal the heavenly mysteries to the king.<sup>53</sup>

The demons were of greatest service to Solomon during the erection of the Temple. It came about in this wise: When Solomon began the building of the Temple, it once happened that a malicious spirit snatched away the money and the food of one of the king’s favorite pages. This occurred several times, and Solomon was not able to lay hold on the malefactor. The king



besought God fervently to deliver the wicked spirit into his hands. His prayer was granted. The archangel Michael appeared to him, and gave him a small ring having a seal consisting of an engraved stone, and he said to him: "Take, O Solomon, king, son of David, the gift which the Lord God, the highest Zebaot, hath sent unto thee. With it thou shalt lock up all the demons of the earth, male and female; and with their help thou shalt build up Jerusalem. But thou must wear this seal of God; and this engraving of the seal of the ring sent thee is a Pentalfa."<sup>54</sup> Armed with it, Solomon called up all the demons before him, and he asked of each in turn his or her name, as well as the name of the star or constellation or zodiacal sign and of the particular angel to the influence of which each is subject. One after another the spirits were vanquished, and compelled by Solomon to aid in the construction of the Temple.

Ornias, the vampire spirit who had maltreated Solomon's servant, was the first demon to appear, and he was set to the task of cutting stones near the Temple. And Solomon bade Ornias come, and he gave him the seal, saying: "Away with thee, and bring me hither the prince of all the demons." Ornias took the finger-ring, and went to Beelzeboul, who has kingship over the demons. He said to him: "Hither! Solomon calls thee." But Beelzeboul, having heard, said to him: "Tell me, who is this Solomon of whom thou speakest to me?" Then Ornias threw the ring at the chest of Beelzeboul, saying: "Solomon the king calls thee." But Beelzeboul cried aloud with a mighty voice, and shot out a great, burning flame of fire; and he arose and followed Ornias, and came to Solomon. Brought before the king, he promised him to gather all the unclean spirits unto him. Beelzeboul proceeded to do so, beginning with Onoskelis, that had a very pretty shape and the skin of a fair-hued woman, and

he was followed by Asmodeus; both giving an account of themselves.

Beelzeboul reappeared on the scene, and in his conversation with Solomon declared that he alone survived of the angels who had come down from heaven. He reigned over all who are in Tartarus, and had a child in the Red Sea, which on occasion comes up to Beelzeboul and reveals to him what he has done. Next the demon of the Ashes, Tephros, appeared, and after him a group of seven female spirits, who declared themselves to be of the thirty-six elements of the darkness. Solomon bade them dig the foundation of the Temple, for the length of it was two hundred and fifty cubits. And he ordered them to be industrious, and with one united murmur of protest they began to perform the tasks enjoined.

Solomon bade another demon come before him. And there was brought to him a demon having all the limbs of a man, but without a head. The demon said to Solomon: "I am called Envy, for I delight to devour heads, being desirous to secure for myself a head; but I do not eat enough, and I am anxious to have such a head as thou hast." A hound-like spirit, whose name was Rabdos, followed, and he revealed to Solomon a green stone, useful for the adornment of the Temple. A number of other male and female demons appeared, among them the thirty-six world-rulers of the darkness, whom Solomon commanded to fetch water to the Temple. Some of these demons he condemned to do the heavy work on the construction of the Temple, others he shut up in prison, and others, again, he ordered to wrestle with fire in the making of gold and silver, sitting down by lead and spoon, and to make ready places for the other demons, in which they should be confined.

After Solomon with the help of the demons had completed the Temple, the rulers, among them the Queen of Sheba, who was a sorceress,



came from far and near to admire the magnificence and art of the building, and no less the wisdom of its builder.<sup>55</sup>

One day an old man appeared before Solomon to complain of his son, whom he accused of having been so impious as to raise his hand against his father and give him a blow. The young man denied the charge, but his father insisted that his life be held forfeit. Suddenly Solomon heard loud laughter. It was the demon Ornias, who was guilty of the disrespectful behavior. Rebuked by Solomon, the demon said: "I pray thee, O king, it was not because of thee I laughed, but because of this ill-starred old man and the wretched youth, his son. For after three days his son will die untimely, and, lo, the old man desires to make away with him foully." Solomon delayed his verdict for several days, and when after five days he summoned the old father to his presence, it appeared that Ornias had spoken the truth.

After some time, Solomon received a letter from Adares, the king of Arabia. He begged the Jewish king to deliver his land from an evil spirit, who was doing great mischief, and who could not be caught and made harmless, because he appeared in the form of wind. Solomon gave his magic ring and a leather bottle to one of his slaves, and sent him into Arabia. The messenger succeeded in confining the spirit in the bottle. A few days later, when Solomon entered the Temple, he was not a little astonished to see a bottle walk toward him, and bow down reverently before him; it was the bottle in which the spirit was shut up. This same spirit once did Solomon a great service. Assisted by demons, he raised a gigantic stone out of the Red Sea. Neither human beings nor demons could move it, but he carried it to the Temple, where it was used as a cornerstone.

Through his own fault Solomon forfeited the power to perform miraculous deeds, which

the Divine spirit had conferred upon him. He fell in love with the Jebusite woman Sonmanites. The priests of Moloch and Raphan, the false gods she worshipped, advised her to reject his suit, unless he paid homage to these gods. At first Solomon was firm, but, when the woman bade him take five locusts and crush them in his hands in the name of Moloch, he obeyed her. At once he was bereft of the Divine spirit, of his strength and his wisdom, and he sank so low that to please his beloved he built temples to Baal and Raphan.<sup>56</sup>

---

48. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 2.5. The recognized authorities of rabbinic Judaism condemn the use of the conjuring books ascribed to Solomon (compare footnote 90 on p. 1051), whereas the early Church held them in high esteem, and preserved considerable fragments of them; see Schürer, *Geschichte*, III, 407–414. Comp. note 93, and *Jewish Encyclop.*, s. v. Solomon.

49. Koheleth 2.5. On Solomon's dominion over the spirits and demons, see PK 5, 45b, and the parallel passages cited by Buber, as well as the references given in note 38. In agreement with the view given in Testament of Solomon (compare with p. 962, *seq.*), Shir 1.1, 5, and ShR 52.4 limit Solomon's power over the world of spirits to the time of the building of the Temple, when they were forced by him into service, since "all creatures contributed their share to the glory of God."

50. Koheleth 2.25; Apocalypse of Baruch 87.26; compare also with pp. 938 and 1090.

51. The "mountains of darkness" are mentioned in the Alexander legend of the Talmud (Tamid 32a), and play an important part in the later folklore of the Jews.

52. On these angels see text on pp. 135, *seq.*, and text on p. 711.

53. Zohar III, 233a–233b. Palmyra is said to be the place where the queen of Sheba was buried by Solomon; comp. Seymour, *Tales of King Solomon* 148, and hence the remark of Zohar on Palmyra, the city of magic. For another version of the visits paid by Solomon to the fallen angels, see Zohar III, 112b; comp. also Aggadat Bereshit (end of introduction); *Emek ha-Melek* 107c; Zohar III, 208a; Zohar Ruth (beginning נחמיה פתח 'ר); note 55.

54. This, five A's interlaced, is somewhat different from the Magen David, "the shield of David", to whose magic power the Karaite Judah Hadassi (Eshkol, 92c, No. 242) is the earliest authority to make reference. Comp. *Monatsschrift*, 66, 1–9.



55. On Sheba as the land of sorcerers, see also MHG I, 378–379; footnote 311 on p. 243. It is possible that the substitution of “Egypt” for “Sheba” by Josephus, who consistently speaks of the “queen of Egypt” (comp. note 47), is to be ascribed to the fact that in the Haggadah Egypt is the land of magic and witchcraft *par excellence*; comp. Index, s. v. “Egypt”. In the Arabic legend the “sorceress” became the daughter of a female jinn (Peri); comp. Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 219. As to the Jewish sources, where the queen of Sheba appears as a female demon, see Zohar III, 309b; note 41; footnote 20 on p. 457. As she was a sorceress or demon, it is quite natural that the question she asked Solomon had reference to magic and witchcraft; see Zohar III, 194b. Comp., on the other hand, Aggadat Shir 1, 65, where it is said that the queen of Sheba praised Solomon for the wisdom he displayed in rendering justice and providing for the poor.

56. Testament of Solomon, which is a pseudepigraphic book of Jewish origin, but with many Christian layers, and it is therefore often difficult to distinguish between the Jewish and the Christian elements of this work; comp. Conybeare, *J.Q.R.* XI, 1–45, and Salzberger, *Salomos Tempelbau*, 12–15. The following are the rabbinic parallels to the Solomon legend of this pseudepigraph. The demons assisted Solomon in the erection of the Temple; see the references cited in note 49. For Solomon’s magic ring in the Ashmedai legend of the Talmud, see text on p. 973. Beelzeboul (= Beelzebub) holds in this writing the same position as Sammael in the rabbinic legend, and the statement that the name Beelzeboul describes its bearer as the dweller of the first heaven (chapter 25) is to be explained in accordance with the view of the Rabbis that Zebul is the name of one of the heavens (comp. Hagigah 12b), though it is to be noticed that it is the fourth heaven which is called Zebul in the Talmud. On the son of Beelzeboul, see the Jewish legend concerning the son of Sammael (text on p. 141). It should also be noticed that Cain is said to have been the son of Sammael; see text on p. 101. The green stone which Solomon needed for the building of the Temple is very likely identical with the Shamir of the rabbinic legend; see note 82. The episode related by Ornia is only a slightly different version of the rabbinic legend, text on p. 973, where Ashmedai takes the place of Ornia. As to the sacrifices of the locusts, see text on pp. 219–220, and comp. also *Kebra Negast*, 60 (German translation), where this incident is told about Solomon and the daughter of Pharaoh. The idol Rephaim is probably a reminiscence of רפאים “the shades” in Sheol; comp. also the etymology of רפאים, “images of idols”, in ARN 38, 101. The name Abezithod, borne by a very powerful spirit, is probably the Hebrew אב עזות אבד, “the father who is devoid of counsel”; comp. Deut. 32.28 (גוי אבד עזות). This evil spirit is said to have fought against Moses in Egypt by means of magic,

hardened Pharaoh’s heart, assisted Jannes and Jambres, caused the Egyptians to pursue the Israelites after having permitted them to leave Egypt, and finally been drowned with the Egyptians in the Red Sea, where he is kept a prisoner under a pillar. In the rabbinic legend it is Sammael, in the Book of Jubilees Mastema, who is the great adversary of Moses and Israel in Egypt and at the Red Sea; but there is also a rabbinic legend which ascribes this part to Uzza, the angel of Egypt, who like Abezithod was thrown into the Red Sea. Compare with pp. 550, 551–552, 689, and see also Index, s. v. “Mastema”. See also *Zadokite Fragm.* 5.18, which reads: And Belial raised Johanan (=Jannes) and his brother. That Ornia has the form of a lion (9) is very likely to be explained by the fact that he is said to have been the offspring of Uriel, whose name is taken to be identical with Ariel, “lion of God”, hence the form of a lion is ascribed to him. Comp. Zohar III, 32b, where Yoma 21a is made use of; note 13 on pp. 52–53. The Testament of Solomon, though containing a great many Jewish elements, is on the whole of a strongly syncretistic character. The pagan element is obvious in the fact that the angels (not only the fallen ones) are made to have offspring. This is neither Jewish nor Christian, but pagan.

## THE BUILDING OF THE TEMPLE

Among the great achievements of Solomon first place must be assigned to the superb Temple built by him. He was long in doubt as to where he was to build it. A heavenly voice directed him to go to Mount Zion at night, to a field owned by two brothers jointly. One of the brothers was a bachelor and poor, the other was blessed both with wealth and a large family of children. It was harvesting time. Under cover of night, the poor brother kept adding to the other’s heap of grain, for, although he was poor, he thought his brother needed more on account of his large family. The rich brother, in the same clandestine way, added to the poor brother’s store, thinking that though he had a family to support, the other was without means. This field, Solomon concluded, which had called forth so remarkable a manifestation of brotherly love, was the best site for the Temple, and he bought it.<sup>57</sup>



Every detail of the equipment and ornamentation of the Temple testifies to Solomon's rare wisdom. Next to the required furniture, he planted golden trees, which bore fruit all the time the building stood. When the enemy entered the Temple, the fruit dropped from the trees, but they will put forth blossoms again when it is rebuilt in the days of the Messiah.<sup>58</sup>

Solomon was so assiduous that the erection of the Temple took but seven years, about half the time for the erection of the king's palace, in spite of the greater magnificence of the sanctuary. In this respect, he was the superior of his father David, who first built a house for himself, and then gave thought to a house for God to dwell in. Indeed, it was Solomon's meritorious work in connection with the Temple that saved him from being reckoned by the sages as one of the impious kings, among whom his later actions might properly have put him.<sup>59</sup>

According to the measure of the zeal displayed by Solomon were the help and favor shown him by God. During the seven years it took to build the Temple, not a single workman died who was employed about it, nor even did a single one fall sick. And as the workmen were sound and robust from first to last, so the perfection of their tools remained unimpaired until the building stood complete. Thus the work suffered no sort of interruption. After the dedication of the Temple, however, the workmen died off, lest they build similar structures for the heathen and their gods. Their wages they were to receive from God in the world to come,<sup>60</sup> and the master workman, Hiram,<sup>61</sup> was rewarded by being permitted to reach Paradise alive.<sup>62</sup>

The Temple was finished in the month of Bul, now called Marheshwan, but the edifice stood closed for nearly a whole year, because it was the will of God that the dedication take place in the month of Abraham's birth. Meantime the enemies of Solomon rejoiced mali-

ciously. "Was it not the son of Bath-sheba," they said, "who built the Temple? How, then, could God permit His Shekinah to rest upon it?" When the consecration of the house took place, and "the fire came down from heaven," they recognized their mistake.<sup>63</sup>

The importance of the Temple appeared at once, for the torrential rains which annually since the deluge had fallen for forty days beginning with the month of Marheshwan, for the first time failed to come, and thenceforward appeared no more.<sup>64</sup>

The joy of the people over the sanctuary was so great that they held the consecration ceremonies on the Day of Atonement. It contributed not a little to their ease of mind that a heavenly voice was heard to proclaim: "You all shall have a share in the world to come."

The great house of prayer reflected honor not only on Solomon and the people, but also on King David. The following incident proves it: When the Ark was about to be brought into the Holy of Holies, the door of the sacred chamber locked itself, and it was impossible to open it. Solomon prayed fervently to God, but his entreaties had no effect until he pronounced the words: "Remember the good deeds of David thy servant." The Holy of Holies then opened of itself, and the enemies of David had to admit that God had wholly forgiven his sin.<sup>65</sup>

In the execution of the Temple work a wish cherished by David was fulfilled. He was averse to having the gold which he had taken as booty from the heathen places of worship during his campaigns used for the sanctuary at Jerusalem, because he feared that the heathen would boast, at the destruction of the Temple, that their gods were courageous, and were taking revenge by wrecking the house of the Israelitish God. Fortunately Solomon was so rich that there was no need to resort to the gold inherited from his father, and so David's wish was fulfilled.<sup>66</sup>



57. Costa, *Mikveh Israel*, No. 59, based perhaps on Berthold Auerbach, who refers to this legend in his *Village Stories*. It is not sure whether these sources have been made use of by the writer in *Ha-Zefirah*, 1897, No. 172. It is possible that he drew upon an oral legend current among the Jews of Russia of today as it was among those of Germany at the time of Auerbach. This legend seems to be based on a midrashic exposition of Ps. 133.1. According to old sources, the site of the Temple had been known before Solomon, see footnote 101 on p. 906, and footnote 53 on p. 920. See further Sifre D., 62, where it is said that the prophet Gad made known the holy site to David. See also PR 43, 179b; Eupolemus, 447d; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 13.4. As to the original possessor of the site, Araunah the Jebusite, see Josephus *loc. cit.*, who seems to have been acquainted with some legends concerning the Jebusite. According to 'Abodah Zarah 24b, he was "a proselyte of the gate". Araunah is described in Scripture as king (2 Sam. 24.23), which means that he was the legitimate owner of the site of the Temple, for every one is "king" of his possessions; Zohar II, 214b. Just as David transmitted to Solomon the tradition about the site of the Temple, even so did he give him the necessary instructions about the furniture and vessels of the Temple; these traditions were handed down to him by Moses, through the long chain of authorities (Joshua, the elders, and the prophets). See Shemuel 16, 92–93; Yerushalmi Megillah 1, 70a. Just as a woman after giving birth to a male child remains impure for thirty-three days (see Lev. 12.4), even so did the earth after giving birth to Adam remain impure for thirty-three generations, that is, until the time of Solomon; Aguddat Aggadot 77, and note 15 on pp. 54–55. Another Haggadah reads: Just as the moon acquired its complete light after fifteen days, even so did the light which began to shine at the time of Abraham reach its full strength in Solomon's time, the fifteenth since Abraham; as the moon loses its light completely on the thirtieth day, even so did this light become dark after thirty generations during the time of Zedekiah, when the Temple was destroyed and Israel sent into exile; see ShR 15.26; PR 15, 76b–77a; BaR 13.14. A parallel to this Haggadah is perhaps Matth. 1.17; comp. however, Moore, *Harvard Theological Review*, XIV, 97–103, and Ginzberg, *op. cit.* 196.

58. Yoma 39b; Yerushalmi 4, 41d; BaR 12.4; Tan. B. IV, 33; Tan. Naso 9; Shir 3.9. A rationalistic rendering of this legend is found in Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 5.2. On the "gold that grows", see also BaR 13.18, and text on p. 647.

59. Sanhedrin 104b; Yerushalmi 10, 29b (as to the meaning of *הדר עלה*, see the remarks of R. Abraham Schiff in *ספר יראים*, note 140, end; but comp. the explanation given further below); PR 6, 23b–24a; Tan. B. III, 43;

Tan. Mezora' 1; Mishle 22, 93 (on this passage see *Ketab Tammim*, 63); BaR 14 (beginning); comp. also Shabbat 56b; Yoma 66b; footnote 100 on p. 906. The sin on account of which some of the Rabbis were inclined to count him among the wicked kings is the one committed by him in marrying foreign women, particularly Pharaoh's daughter; see note 16 about the different views on this question, and comp. further Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 7.2. See also Sanhedrin 103b; where it is stated that Ahaz, Ahaziah, and all the kings of Israel concerning whom Scripture uses the words, "and they did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord" have no share in the world to come. Notice the emphasis laid upon the "kings of Israel", to exclude Solomon from this class of the wicked, though Scripture employs the words "and he did that, etc." with regard to him; see 1 Kings 11.16. When the authors of the Mishnah decided to count Solomon among the kings who have no share in the world to come, David appeared to them in a vision, and prostrated himself before them that they should change their decision. Others narrate that a fire broke out from the holy of holies, and consumed everything around them, forcing them to interrupt their discussions. Later they intended to take it up again (this is how *הדר עלה*, read *הדרו עלה*, is to be understood in Yerushalmi; comp. *חזרו לשנות* in the Tanhumas), but finally they gave it up, as they found that their prayers which used to be granted remained now unanswered or, according to another view, because a heavenly voice pleaded for Solomon; comp. the references at the beginning of the note. Targum Sheni 1.2, 5, seems to take Solomon as the promised Messiah. On the controversy among the Church Fathers concerning the salvation of Solomon, see Seymour *Tales of King Solomon* 187–188.

60. PR 6, 25a. Here it is also stated that the Temple "had built itself", the stones broke loose from the quarries and placed themselves in layers on the site of the Temple. The same view is also given in Shir 1.1, 5; Tehillim 24, 208; BaR 14.13; Zohar I, 74a. A similar statement concerning the tabernacle erected by Moses is found in ShR 52.4. For the symbolism of the Temple, see Midrash Tadshe 2, and text on pp. 705–706.

61. To harmonize the contradiction between 1 Kings 7.14 and 2 Chron. 2.13, it is assumed that the architect Hiram was a Naphtalite on his father's side and a Danite on his mother's side, a descendant of the Danite Oholiab, the assistant of Bezalel in the erection of the tabernacle; comp. 'Arakin 16a; PR 6, 26a; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 3.4; ps.-Jerome on 1 Kings 7.14. As to the view of ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 2.13, according to which *צרי* in this passage of Chron. means "artist" (*צַרִּי*), see Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 74–75.

62. Derek Erez 1 (end). Comp. the parallel passages cited by Tawrogi, *ad loc.*, and Epstein, *Mikkadmoniyot*,



111. See also note 67 on p. 73 and Index, s. v. "Paradise, Entering Alive".

63. PR 6, 24b–25a. Compare with p. 655; note 65. On the brazen altar which was withdrawn from use by Solomon on the occasion of the dedication of the Temple (1 Kings 8.64), see Midrash Tannaim 54; Mekilta Bahodish 11, 73a.

64. Tan. B. I, 43; Tan. Noah 11. As to the blessings which came upon the world at the erection of the Temple and disappeared at its destruction, see ARN 4, 19–20 (second version 5, 18–19); Tan. B. IV, 5, and the parallel passages cited by Schechter and Buber.

65. Mo'ed Katan 9a; Shabbat 30a; Sanhedrin 107b; Tan. B. II, 22 (here it is said that the door of the holy of holies did not open of itself until Solomon had David's coffin brought into the sanctuary), and IV, 83; ShR 8.1 (here it is said that the ark measured exactly ten cubits, and the opening of the door of the sanctuary was exactly the same measure; hence it was impossible to bring in the ark; compare footnote 330 on p. 643), and 44.2; BaR 14.3 and 15.13; Tehillim 7, 66, and 24, 207–208; PR 2, 6b; Koheleth 4.2; Targum Ps. 76.17 and 132.10; Targum 2 Chron. 7.10. Comp. also BR 35.3; Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 36; text on p. 644.

66. PR 6, 25b. Compare footnote 102 on p. 872. According to another legend, David begrudged himself food and other necessities of life, so that Solomon should have plenty of gold and silver for the vessels of the temple; but God would not allow him to make use of the money left him by his father, because the latter kept his treasures in the time of the great famine, instead of using them to alleviate the sufferings of the poor; compare text on p. 935, and DR. 2.27.

## THE THRONE OF SOLOMON

Next to the Temple in its magnificence, it is the throne of Solomon that perpetuates the name and fame of the wise king. None before him and none after him could produce a like work of art, and when the kings, his vassals, saw the magnificence of the throne they fell down and praised God. The throne was covered with fine gold from Ophir, studded with beryls, inlaid with marble, and jewelled with emeralds, and rubies, and pearls, and all manner of gems. On each of its six steps there were two golden

lions and two golden eagles, a lion and an eagle to the left, and a lion and an eagle to the right, the pairs standing face to face, so that the right paw of the lion was opposite to the left wing of the eagle, and his left paw opposite to the right wing of the eagle. The royal seat was at the top, which was round.

On the first step leading to the seat crouched an ox, and opposite to him a lion; on the second, a wolf and a lamb; on the third, a leopard and a goat;<sup>67</sup> on the fourth perched an eagle and a peacock; on the fifth a falcon<sup>68</sup> and a cock; and on the sixth a hawk and a sparrow; all made of gold. At the very top rested a dove, her claws set upon a hawk, to betoken that the time would come when all peoples and nations shall be delivered into the hands of Israel. Over the seat hung a golden candlestick, with golden lamps, pomegranates, snuff dishes, censers, chains, and lilies. Seven branches extended from each side. On the arms to the right were the images of the seven patriarchs of the world, Adam, Noah, Shem, Job, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and on the arms to the left, the images of the seven pious men of the world, Kohath, Amram, Moses, Aaron, Eldad, Medad, and the prophet Hur. Attached to the top of the candlestick was a golden bowl filled with the purest olive oil, to be used for the candlestick in the Temple, and below, a golden basin, also filled with the purest olive oil, for the candlestick over the throne. The basin bore the image of the high priest Eli; those of his sons Hophni and Phinehas were on the two faucets protruding from the basin, and those of Nadab and Abihu on the tubes connecting the faucets with the basin.

On the upper part of the throne stood seventy golden chairs for the members of the Sanhedrin, and two more for the high priest and his vicar. When the high priest came to do homage to the king, the members of the Sanhedrin also appeared, to judge the people, and they took



their seats to the right and to the left of the king. At the approach of the witnesses, the machinery of the throne rumbled—the wheels turned, the ox lowed, the lion roared, the wolf howled, the lamb bleated, the leopard growled, the goat cried, the falcon screamed, the peacock gobbled, the cock crowed, the hawk screeched, the sparrow chirped—all to terrify the witnesses and keep them from giving false testimony.

When Solomon set foot upon the first step to ascend to his seat, its machinery was put into motion. The golden ox arose and led him to the second step, and there passed him over to the care of the beasts guarding it, and so he was conducted from step to step up to the sixth, where the eagles received him and placed him upon his seat. As soon as he was seated, a great eagle set the royal crown upon his head. Thereupon a huge snake rolled itself up against the machinery, forcing the lions and eagles upward until they encircled the head of the king. A golden dove flew down from a pillar, took the sacred scroll out of a casket, and gave it to the king, so that he might obey the injunction of the Scriptures, to have the law with him and read therein all the days of his life. Above the throne twenty-four vines interlaced, forming a shady arbor over the head of the king, and sweet aromatic perfumes exhaled from two golden lions, while Solomon made the ascent to his seat upon the throne.<sup>69</sup>

It was the task of seven heralds to keep Solomon reminded of his duties as king and judge. The first one of the heralds approached him when he set foot on the first step of the throne, and began to recite the law for kings, "He shall not multiply wives to himself." At the second step, the second herald reminded him, "He shall not multiply horses to himself"; at the third, the next one of the heralds said, "Neither shall he greatly multiply to himself silver and gold." At the fourth step, he

was told by the fourth herald, "Thou shalt not wrest judgment"; at the fifth step, by the fifth herald, "Thou shalt not respect persons," and at the sixth, by the sixth herald, "Neither shalt thou take a gift." Finally, when he was about to seat himself upon the throne, the seventh herald cried out: "Know before whom thou standest."<sup>70</sup>

The throne did not remain long in the possession of the Israelites. During the life of Rehoboam, the son of Solomon, it was carried to Egypt. Shishak, the father-in-law of Solomon, appropriated it as indemnity for claims which he urged against the Jewish state in behalf of his widowed daughter. When Sennacherib conquered Egypt, he carried the throne away with him, but, on his homeward march, during the overthrow of his army before the gates of Jerusalem, he had to part with it to Hezekiah. Now it remained in Palestine until the time of Jehoash, when it was once more carried to Egypt by Pharaoh Necho. His possession of the throne brought him little joy. Unacquainted with its wonderful mechanism, he was injured in the side by one of the lions the first time he attempted to mount it, and forever after he limped, wherefore he was given the surname Necho, the hobbler.<sup>71</sup> Nebuchadnezzar was the next possessor of the throne. It fell to his lot at the conquest of Egypt, but when he attempted to use it in Babylonia, he fared no better than his predecessor in Egypt. The lion standing near the throne gave him so severe a blow that he never again dared ascend it. Through Darius the throne reached Elam, but, knowing what its other owners had suffered, he did not venture to seat himself on it, and his example was imitated by Ahasuerus. The latter tried to have his artificers fashion him a like artistic work, but, of course, they failed.<sup>72</sup> The Median rulers parted with the throne to the Greek monarchs, and finally it was carried to Rome.<sup>73</sup>



67. **אינקא** “a goat”, from **ינק** “sucked”; comp. Hebrew **יונק** and Aramaic **ינוקא**, as well as Hebrew **טלה** “lamb”, and Aramaic **טליא** “lamb”, “youth”. The Assyrian *uniku* is to be explained in the same manner. As to the prosthetic **א**, it is to be remarked that in primae yod verbs the use of such an **א** is the rule in Syriac, whereas in Judeo-Aramaic it is not very frequent.

68. Read **שורניקא** “falcon” instead of **שוניא** “cat”.

69. Targum Sheni 1.2, 5–7. Other versions of the description of the throne (more or less different from that given in Targum Sheni) are found in Abba Gorion 4–8; *Panim Aherim* 57; *Kolbo*, No. 119, republished from there by Jellinek in BHM II, 83–85; Ma’asiyyot (Gaster’s edition) 78–79; Midrash on the Throne of Solomon, published from a MS. by Perles in *Monatsschrift* XXI, 128–133, and hence in BHM V, 34–37 (a very fantastic description, in which also the demons play a part; they fly with Solomon through the air “between heaven and earth” before he takes his seat); Yerahmeel 84, 251–253; Esther R. 1.2, 12; Midrash Shir 31b. Comp. also Shu’aib, who quotes from Targum (Sheni) a description of the throne different from that found in our texts, and further R. Bahya’s introduction to his commentary, who seems to have been acquainted with the Midrash published by Perles; comp. also the following note. On the “seven patriarchs” see PR 7, 29b, and on the other distinguished men whose images were engraved on the throne, see Index, under the respective names.

70. BaR 12.17; Shir 6.4; Esther R. 1.1, 12; DR 5.6; PK 1, 7a–7b. The descriptions of the throne as given in the later sources state that there were inscriptions on the throne or on the animals thereof which reminded him of his duties as king and judge. BaR, *loc. cit.*, contains many symbolic explanations of the six steps of Solomon’s throne. According to one explanation, Solomon’s throne was fashioned after the pattern of the divine throne; now since God’s throne is in the seventh heaven, therefore the seat Solomon occupied was also above six elevations; Compare footnote 39 on p. 862. The legends concerning Solomon’s throne are treated in detail by Cassel, *Der Thron Salomos* and in his edition of Targum Sheni, as well as by Salzberger, *Salomos Thron*. Comp. also Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 115.

71. This etymology of the name Necho, connecting it with Hebrew **נכה רגלים** “lame”, is very old, as may be seen from the Peshitta and Targum on 2 Kings 23.29. Comp. also PK 27, 168a. The daughter of Pharaoh (=Siamun), whom Solomon took as wife, is called Bithiah in Targum on 2 Chron. 8.11. This is very likely due to a confusion of Shishak’s daughter with the one of his predecessor, the foster-mother of Moses; compare footnote 60 on p. 481 and Index, s. v. “Bithiah”.

72. Abba Gorion 2–4; Esther R. 1.2, 10; Aguddat Aggadot 57–59 (on p. 59, top, read **של מצרים=של מ’**; “Alexandria of Egypt” is the usual way in which the Rabbis refer to Alexandria); *Panim Aherim* 57–59; *Kolbo* 119 (=BHM II, 83); WR 20 (beginning); Koheleth 9.2; Tan. B. V, 7; Targum 1 and Targum Sheni 1.2. Compare further with text on p. 983 and 1130. The sources quoted differ with regard to the details of the “wandering of the throne”, but agree that none but Solomon and his descendants were able to make use of the throne, whereas the pagan rulers who attempted to ascend it not only failed of their purpose, but were punished for their efforts.

73. Esther R. 1.2, 12, where the Tanna R. Eleazar the son of R. Jose, who visited Rome about 170 C. E., states that he saw fragments of Solomon’s throne in Rome. On this Tanna’s visit to Rome, see Graetz, *Geschichte*, IV, 191. Here also it is stated that only “Cosmocrators”, like Nebuchadnezzar and Cyrus, had the privilege of making use of this throne; Ahasuerus had therefore to be satisfied with a replica and was not permitted to sit on the original, because he ruled only over one hundred and twenty-seven provinces. Footnote 13 on p. 1132, top.

## THE HIPPODROME

**T**he throne was not the only remarkable sight at the court of the magnificent king. Solomon attracted visitors to his capital by means of games and shows. In every month of the year the official who was in charge for the month, was expected to arrange for a horse race, and once a year<sup>74</sup> a race took place in which the competitors were ten thousand youths, mainly of the tribes of Gad and Naphtali, who lived at the court of the king year in, year out, and were maintained by him. For the scholars, their disciples, the priests, and the Levites, the races were held on the last of the month; on the first day of the month the residents of Jerusalem were the spectators, and, on the second day, strangers. The hippodrome occupied an area of three parasangs square, with an inner square measuring one parasang on each side, around which the races were run. Within were two grilles ornamented with all sorts of animals. Out of the jaws of four gilded



lions, attached to pillars by twos, perfumes and spices flowed for the people. The spectators were divided into four parties distinguished by the color of their garb: the king and his attendants, the scholars and their disciples, and the priests and Levites were attired in light blue garments; all the rest from Jerusalem wore white; the sight-seers from the surrounding towns and villages wore red, and green marked the heathen hailing from afar, who came laden with tribute and presents. The four colors corresponded to the four seasons. In the autumn the sky is brilliantly blue; in winter the white snow falls; the color of spring is green like the ocean, because it is the season favorable to voyages, and red is the color of summer, when the fruits grow red and ripe.<sup>75</sup>

As the public spectacles were executed with pomp and splendor, so the king's table was royally sumptuous. Regardless of season and climate, it was always laden with the delicacies of all parts of the globe. Game and poultry, even of such varieties as were unknown in Palastine, were not lacking, and daily there came a gorgeous bird from Barbary and settled down before the king's seat at the table. The Scriptures tell us of great quantities of food required by Solomon's household, and yet it was not all that was needed. What the Bible mentions, covers only the accessories, such as spices and the minor ingredients. The real needs were far greater, as may be judged from the custom that all of Solomon's thousand wives arranged a banquet daily, each in the hope of having the king dine with her.<sup>76</sup>

---

74. The great animal race was under the supervision of the official mentioned in 1 Kings 4.19, whose duties are explained in this manner. See also Sanhedrin 12a, where he is said to have been the superior of the other twelve, each of whom served one month. Others maintain that he exercised his functions only in leap years, performing his duties during the additional month.

75. Midrash published by Perles from a MS. in *Monatsschrift*, XXI, 134–136, and reprinted by Jellinek in BHM V, 37–39. On pp. 38–39 read **לכרות כחדקל ופרת** “He will dig channels as deep as the Tigris and Euphrates”; the subject is **קטן שבישראל** mentioned before. The Naphthalites were swift runners (see text on p. 465), and the Gadites excelled in military skill; see footnote 393 on p. 408. Index, s. v.

76. PK 6, 58a–58b; PR 16, 81b; BaR 21.19; Teshillim 50, 280; Baba Mezi'a 86b; Tan. Pinchas 12; Koheleth 2.7 and 9.11; comp. also DR 1.5 (parallel passages are cited on margin); Baba Mezi'a Mishnah 7.1; Matthew 7.29.

## LESSONS IN HUMILITY

Great and powerful as Solomon was, and wise and just, still occasions were not lacking to bring home to him the truth that the wisest and mightiest of mortals may not indulge in pride and arrogance.

Solomon had a precious piece of tapestry, sixty miles square, on which he flew through the air so swiftly that he could eat breakfast in Damascus and supper in Media. To carry out his orders he had at his beck and call Asaph ben Berechiah<sup>77</sup> among men, Ramirat among demons, the lion among beasts, and the eagle among birds. Once it happened that pride possessed Solomon while he was sailing through the air on his carpet, and he said: “There is none like unto me in this world, upon whom God has bestowed sagacity, wisdom, intelligence, and knowledge, besides making me the ruler of the world.” The same instant the air stirred, and forty thousand men dropped from the magic carpet. The king ordered the wind to cease from blowing, with the word: “Return!” Whereupon the wind: “If thou wilt return to God, and subdue thy pride, I, too, will return.” The king realized his transgression.

On one occasion he strayed into the valley of the ants in the course of his wanderings. He



heard one ant order all the others to withdraw, to avoid being crushed by the armies of Solomon. The king halted and summoned the ant that had spoken. She told him that she was the queen of the ants, and she gave her reasons for the order of withdrawal. Solomon wanted to put a question to the ant queen, but she refused to answer unless the king took her up and placed her on his hand. He acquiesced, and then he put his question: "Is there any one greater than I am in all the world?"—"Yes", said the ant.

Solomon: "Who?"

Ant: "I am."

Solomon: "How is that possible?"

Ant: "were I not greater than thou, God would not have led thee hither to put me on thy hand."

Exasperated, Solomon threw her to the ground, and said: "Thou knowest who I am? I am Solomon, the son David."

Not at all intimidated, the ant reminded the king of his earthly origin, and admonished him to humility, and the king went off abashed.

Next he came to a magnificent building, into which he sought to enter in vain; he could find no door leading into it. After long search the demons came upon an eagle seven hundred years old, and he, unable to give them any information, sent him to his nine hundred years old brother, whose eyrie was higher than his own, and who would probably be in a position to advise them. But he in turn directed them to go to his still older brother. His age counted thirteen hundred years, and he had more knowledge than himself. This oldest one of the eagles reported that he remembered having heard his father say there was a door on the west side, but it was covered up by the dust of the ages that had passed since it was last used. So it turned out to be. They found an old iron door with the inscription: "We, the dwellers in this palace, for many years lived in comfort and luxury; then, forced

by hunger, we ground pearls into flour instead of wheat—but to no avail, and so, when we were about to die, we bequeathed this palace to the eagles." A second statement contained a detailed description of the wonderful palace, and mentioned where the keys for the different chambers were to be found. Following the directions on the door, Solomon inspected the remarkable building, whose apartments were made of pearls and precious stones. Inscribed on the doors he found the following three wise proverbs, dealing with the vanity of all earthly things, and admonishing men to be humble:

1. O son of man, let not time deceive thee; thou must wither away, and leave thy place, to rest in the bosom of the earth.

2. Haste thee not, move slowly, for the world is taken from one and bestowed upon another.

3. Furnish thyself with food for the journey, prepare thy meal while daylight lasts, for thou wilt not remain on earth forever, and thou knowest not the day of thy death.<sup>78</sup>

In one of the chambers, Solomon saw a number of statues, among them one that looked as though alive. When he approached it, it called out in a loud voice: "Hither, ye satans, Solomon has come to undo you." Suddenly there arose great noise and tumult among the statues. Solomon pronounced the Name, and quiet was restored. The statues were overthrown, and the sons of the satans ran into the sea and were drowned. From the throat of the lifelike statue he drew a silver plate inscribed with characters which he could not decipher, but a youth from the desert told the king: "These letters are Greek, and the words mean: 'I, Shadad ben Ad, ruled over a thousand thousand provinces, rode on a thousand thousand horses, had a thousand thousand kings under me, and slew a thousand thousand heroes, and when the Angel of Death approached me, I was powerless.'"<sup>79</sup>



77. This hero of the Arabic legend is known in Jewish sources only as the father of "medicine"; compare footnote 75 on p. 158. The attempt of Venetianer, *Asaf Judaeus*, 18. seq., to distinguish between the legendary Asaph and the author of medical books bearing the same name is not to be taken seriously.

78. "To prepare for a journey" in Jewish parlance means "to do good as long as life lasts, before the great journey to the great beyond is begun"; comp. Ketubot 67b.

79. Ma'aseh ha-Nemalah published several times separately and also in BHM V, 22–26. The Arabic origin of this legend is obvious, and the Arabic original is still in existence, though less known than the Hebrew translation; see *Hebräische Bibliographie*, XIII, 105, and Jellinek, Introduction to BHM V, 11–13. Salzberger, *Salomo-Sage*, 90, published an Arabic text containing the first part of Ma'aseh ha-Nemalah, but did not recognize the nature of the text. Comp. also Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 343 and Seymour *Tales of King Solomon* 80–99. See further *Ben ha-Meleh*, XVI, where David is said to have found an inscription upon which a king told of himself that he had ruled a thousand years, destroyed a thousand cities, annihilated a thousand armies, and married a thousand princesses. This is only a somewhat different version of the inscription by Shadad supposed to have been found by Solomon.

## ASMODEUS

When Solomon in his wealth and prosperity grew unmindful of his God, and, contrary to the injunctions laid down for kings in the Torah, multiplied wives unto himself, and craved the possession of many horses and much gold, the Book of Deuteronomy stepped before God and said: "Lo, O Lord of the world, Solomon is seeking to remove a Yod from out of me,"<sup>80</sup> for Thou didst write: "The king shall not multiply horses unto himself, nor shall he multiply wives to himself, neither shall he greatly multiply to himself silver and gold"; but Solomon has acquired many horses, many wives, and much silver and gold." Hereupon God said: "As thou livest, Solomon and a hundred of his kind shall he annihilated ere a single one of thy letters shall be obliterated."<sup>81</sup>

The charge made against Solomon was soon followed by consequences. He had to pay heavily for his sins. It came about in this way: While Solomon was occupied with the Temple, he had great difficulty in devising ways of fitting the stone from the quarry into the building, for the Torah explicitly prohibits the use of iron tools in erecting an altar. The scholars told him that Moses had used the shamir,<sup>82</sup> the stone that splits rocks, to engrave the names of the tribes on the precious stones of the ephod worn by the high priest. Solomon's demons could give him no information as to where the shamir could be found. They surmised, however, that Asmodeus,<sup>83</sup> king of demons, was in possession of the secret, and they told Solomon the name of the mountain on which Asmodeus dwelt, and described also his manner of life. On this mountain there was a well from which Asmodeus obtained his drinking water. He closed it up daily with a large rock, and sealed it before going to heaven, whither he went every day, to take part in the discussions in the heavenly academy. Thence he would descend again to earth in order to be present, though invisible,<sup>84</sup> at the debates in the earthly houses of learning. Then, after investigating the seal on the well to ascertain if it had been tampered with, he drank of the water.

Solomon sent his chief man, Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, to capture Asmodeus. For this purpose he provided him with a chain, the ring on which the Name of God was engraved, a bundle of wool, and a skin of wine. Benaiah drew the water from the well through a hole bored from below, and, after having stopped up the hole with the wool, he filled the well with wine from above. When Asmodeus descended from heaven, to his astonishment he found wine instead of water in the well, although everything seemed untouched. At first he would not drink of it, and cited the Bible verses that inveigh against wine, to inspire himself with moral cour-



age. At length Asmodeus succumbed to his consuming thirst, and drank till his senses were overpowered, and he fell into a deep sleep. Benaiah, watching him from a tree, then came, and drew the chain about Asmodeus's neck. The demon, on awakening, tried to free himself, but Benaiah called to him: "The Name of thy Lord is upon thee." Though Asmodeus now permitted himself to be led off unresistingly, he acted most peculiarly on the way to Solomon. He brushed against a palm-tree and uprooted it; he knocked against a house and overturned it; and when, at the request of a poor woman, he was turned aside from her hut, he broke a bone. He asked with grim humor: "Is it not written, 'A soft tongue breaketh the bone'?" A blind man going astray he set in the right path, and to a drunkard he did a similar kindness. He wept when a wedding party passed them, and laughed at a man who asked his shoemaker to make him shoes to last for seven years, and at a magician who was publicly showing his skill.

Having finally arrived at the end of the journey, Asmodeus, after several days of waiting, was led before Solomon, who questioned him about his strange conduct on the journey. Asmodeus answered that he judged persons and things according to their real character, and not according to their appearance in the eyes of human beings. He cried when he saw the wedding company, because he knew the bridegroom had not a month to live, and he laughed at him who wanted shoes to last seven years, because the man would not own them for seven days, also at the magician who pretended to disclose secrets, because he did not know that a buried treasure lay under his very feet; the blind man whom he set in the right path was one of the "perfect pious", and he wanted to be kind to him; on the other hand, the drunkard to whom he did a similar

kindness was known in heaven as a very wicked man, but he happened to have done a good deed once, and he was rewarded accordingly.

Asmodeus told Solomon that the shamir was given by God to the Angel of the Sea, and that Angel entrusted none with the shamir except the moor-hen,<sup>85</sup> which had taken an oath to watch the shamir carefully. The moor-hen takes the shamir with her to mountains which are not inhabited by men, splits them by means of the shamir, and injects seeds, which grow and cover the naked rocks, and then they can be inhabited. Solomon sent one of his servants to seek the nest of the bird and lay a piece of glass over it. When the moor-hen came and could not reach her young, she flew away and fetched the shamir and placed it on the glass. Then the man shouted, and so terrified the bird that she dropped the shamir and flew away. By this means the man obtained possession of the coveted shamir, and bore it to Solomon. But the moor-hen was so distressed at having broken her oath to the Angel of the Sea that she committed suicide.

Although Asmodeus was captured only for the purpose of getting the shamir, Solomon nevertheless kept him after the completion of the Temple. One day the king told Asmodeus that he did not understand wherein the greatness of the demons lay, if their king could be kept in bonds by a mortal. Asmodeus replied, that if Solomon would remove his chains and lend him the magic ring, he would prove his own greatness. Solomon agreed. The demon stood before him with one wing touching heaven and the other reaching to the earth. Snatching up Solomon, who had parted with his protecting ring, he flung him four hundred parasangs away from Jerusalem, and then palmed himself off as the king.



80. That means: He fails to pay attention to the Yod in **לא ירבה** (Deut. 17.16–17); comp. also Matthew 5.18.

81. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 2, 20c; WR 19.2; ShR 6.1; Tan. Wa-Era 5; Tan. B. II, 18; Aggadat Bereshit 75, 146. It is worthy of notice that Solomon is censured for having married many wives, but not for having married foreign women. Comp. note 16.

82. On the Shamir, see text on p. 35, and the notes appertaining thereto. The Tannaim speak of the Shamir as having been created (in the twilight between the sixth day and the Sabbath of creation; see references in footnote 99 on p. 78) *ad hoc*, that is, for the use of the sanctuary. Accordingly it disappeared after the destruction of the Temple. See, e. g., Tosefta Sotah 15.1. The old sources do not state explicitly whether it was a mineral, plant, or animal; but the tradition which considers it to have been some kind of an insect represents the view of the old authorities; see footnote 165 on p. 35. The Testament of Solomon, however, seems to regard the Shamir as a stone; see note 56. In an Abyssinian legend the Shamir is supposed to have been a kind of wood; see Seymour, *Tales of King Solomon*, 149.

83. For Ashmedai in the Solomon legend, see Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. "Asmodeus". The Aramaic origin of the name Asmodeus is pointed out there.

84. As to the demons being present at the debates of the scholars in the academies, see Berakot 6a (top). The demons are divided into three classes: 1) the angel-like; 2) the human-like; 3) the animal-like. Asmodeus and his family are "Jewish demons", i. e., they profess the true religion, and observe the Torah. See Zohar III, 253a and 277a (below). According to the Arabs, there are different religions among the genii, as among men, and this view is "Judaized" by the Zohar. The older view considers the demons to be either fallen angels, or at least spirits akin to them. See Index, s. v. "Demons".

85. The guardian bird of the Shamir is called **ברא תרנגולא**, "the wild cock", in the Talmud, where it is identified with the biblical **דוכיפת** (Lev. 11.19), usually rendered by "hoopoe". The important part played by the hoopoe in the later Solomon legend (comp. note 39) is very likely to be explained by Arabic folk-lore; comp. Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 39, *seq.* According to some it was the eagle which brought the Shamir from paradise, see Tehillim 78.351 = Yalkut II.182; text on p. 35.

## SOLOMON AS BEGGAR

**B**anished from his home, deprived of his realm, Solomon wandered about in far-off

lands, among strangers, begging his daily bread. Nor did his humiliation end there; people thought him a lunatic, because he never tired of assuring them that he was Solomon, Judah's great and mighty king. Naturally that seemed a preposterous claim to the people.<sup>86</sup> The lowest depth of despair he reached, however, when he met some one who recognized him. The recollections and associations that stirred within him then made his present misery almost unendurable.

It happened<sup>87</sup> that once on his peregrinations he met an old acquaintance, a rich and well-considered man, who gave a sumptuous banquet in honor of Solomon. At the meal his host spoke to Solomon constantly of the magnificence and splendor he had once seen with his own eyes at the court of the king. These reminiscences moved the king to tears, and he wept so bitterly that, when he rose from the banquet, he was satiated, not with the rich food, but with salt tears. The following day it again happened that Solomon met an acquaintance of former days, this time a poor man, who nevertheless entreated Solomon to do him the honor and break bread under his roof. All that the poor man could offer his distinguished guest was a meagre dish of greens. But he tried in every way to assuage the grief that oppressed Solomon. He said: "O my lord and king, God hath sworn unto David He would never let the royal dignity depart from his house, but it is the way of God to reprove those He loves if they sin. Rest assured, He will restore thee in good time to thy kingdom." These words of his poor host were more grateful to Solomon's bruised heart than the banquet the rich man had prepared for him. It was to the contrast between the consolations of the two men that he applied the verse in Proverbs: "Better is a dinner of herbs where love is, than a stalled ox and hatred therewith."

For three long years Solomon journeyed about, begging his way from city to city, and



from country to country, atoning for the three<sup>88</sup> sins of his life by which he had set aside the commandment laid upon kings in Deuteronomy—not to multiply horses, and wives, and silver and gold. At the end of that time, God took mercy upon him for the sake of his father David, and for the sake of the pious princess Naamah, the daughter of the Ammonite king, destined by God to be the ancestress of the Messiah. The time was approaching when she was to become the wife of Solomon<sup>89</sup> and reign as queen in Jerusalem. God therefore led the royal wanderer to the capital city of Ammon.<sup>90</sup> Solomon took service as an underling with the cook in the royal household, and he proved himself so proficient in the culinary art that the king of Ammon raised him to the post of chief cook. Thus he came under the notice of the king's daughter Naamah, who fell in love with her father's cook. In vain her parents endeavored to persuade her to choose a husband befitting her rank. Not even the king's threat to have her and her beloved executed availed to turn her thoughts away from Solomon. The Ammonite king had the lovers taken to a barren desert, in the hope that they would die of starvation there. Solomon and his wife wandered through the desert until they came to a city situated by the sea-shore. They purchased a fish to stave off death. When Naamah prepared the fish, she found in its belly the magic ring belonging to her husband, which he had given to Asmodeus, and which, thrown into the sea by the demon, had been swallowed by a fish. Solomon recognized his ring, put it on his finger, and in the twinkling of an eye he transported himself to Jerusalem. Asmodeus, who had been posing as King Solomon during the three years, he drove out, and himself ascended the throne again.

Later on he cited the king of Ammon before his tribunal, and called him to account for the disappearance of the cook and the cook's

wife, accusing him of having killed them. The king of Ammon protested that he had not killed, but only banished them. Then Solomon had the queen appear, and to his great astonishment and still greater joy the king of Ammon recognized his daughter.<sup>91</sup>

Solomon succeeded in regaining his throne only after undergoing many hardships. The people of Jerusalem considered him a lunatic, because he said that he was Solomon. After some time, the members of the Sanhedrin noticed his peculiar behavior, and they investigated the matter. They found that a long time had passed since Benaiah, the confidant of the king, had been permitted to enter the presence of the usurper. Furthermore the wives of Solomon and his mother Bath-sheba informed them that the behavior of the king had completely changed—it was not befitting royalty and in no respect like Solomon's former manner. It was also very strange that the king never by any chance allowed his foot to be seen, for fear, of course, of betraying his demon origin.<sup>92</sup> The Sanhedrin, therefore, gave the king's magic ring to the wandering beggar who called himself King Solomon, and had him appear before the pretender on the throne. As soon as Asmodeus caught sight of the true king protected by his magic ring, he flew away precipitately.

Solomon did not escape unscathed. The sight of Asmodeus in all his forbidding ugliness had so terrified him that henceforth he surrounded his couch at night with all the valiant heroes among the people.<sup>93</sup>

---

86. Gittin 68a–68b (for a correct text use must be made of Ma'asiyyot 75–78 (Gaster's edition and Makiri, Prov. 20, beginning); Tehillim 78, 351–353; Likkutim I, 20b–21b; BHM VI, 106–107; *Neweh Shalom*, 53–55; *Hibbur Ma'asiyyot*, No. 4; Manzur al-Dhamari, 13–14; Targum on Eccles. 1.12; Midrash Shir 29a–30a. In contrast to Babli and the above-mentioned sources dependent



upon it, the Palestinian sources maintain that it was an angel who, disguised as Solomon, occupied the throne during the time that the real Solomon wandered about through the world as a beggar; comp. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 2, 20c; PK 27, 168b–169a; Tan. B. III, 55–56; Tan. Ahare 1 and Wa-Ethanan 2; Shir 1.1, 10 and 3.17; Ruth R. 2.14; Koheleth 1.12, 2.2, and 9.12. Comp. also Megillah 11b (top; on the test see Aggadat Esther 7); Sanhedrin 29b; ShR 30.16; Aggadat Shir 3.33. In the Babylonian version of the legend Persian influence is apparent. It is, however, doubtful whether one is justified in assuming Persian influence in the Palestinian version. Comp. *R.E.J.* XVII, 59, *seq.*; Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, II, s. v. “Asmodeus” and Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 114.

87. Mishle 15, 78–79; on the text, see R. Bahya, *Pe-kude* (beginning).

88. The marrying of foreign women is not accounted as a sin unto him; comp. notes 16 and 81.

89. According to 1 Kings 14.21, Naamah the Ammonitish woman was the mother of Rehoboam; hence the ancestress of the Messiah, who is to be a descendant of the Davidic kings. Comp. Baba Kamma 38b; BR 50.10; Index, s. v. “Messiah”. The text explicitly states: **משיח בן דוד שיצא ממנה**.

90. This city is called **משכמם**, probably an intentional corruption of **עם כמם**, which, though it stands for Moab in Num. 21.29, might be taken for Ammon in accordance with Jud. 11.24.

91. *Emek ha-Melek* 14d–15a and 108c–109d, whence it is incorporated in BHM II, 86–87. Comp. also Azulai, *Midbar Kedemot*, 96, No. 24. The relation of the Jewish legend to the Arabic one, published by Salzberger, *Salomo-Sage*, 124, *seq.*, needs careful examination; see Midrash Shir 29b–30a, Steinschneider, *Hebräische Bibliographie*, XVIII, 57–58 and Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 404. The old Jewish sources often speak of the “two precious doves”, Ruth the Moabitish woman and Naamah the Ammonitish woman, on whose account Ammon and Moab escaped destruction; comp. BR 50.10; Baba Kamma 38a, Yebamot 63a. But the authors of the Talmud (comp. Yebamot 77a) speak of David playing with his grandson Rehoboam, and accordingly are of the opinion that Solomon married Naamah the Ammonitish woman, the mother of Rehoboam, during his father’s lifetime. This view is shared by Aphraates, 461. The assertion of Ephraem on 1 Kings 14.25 that Naamah misled her son into idolatry is not found in the talmudic-midrashic literature. Kimhi, 1 Kings, *loc. cit.*, is the first to mention it. Compare footnote 18 on p. 985.

92. The feet of demons resemble those of the cock; see Berakot 6a; Zohar III, 309a. On the feet of angels, see text on p. 245.

93. Gittin 68b; Tehillim 78, 353. Comp. also the references cited in note 86. A different view is given in the Talmud, *loc. cit.*, and elsewhere, to the effect that Solomon never regained the throne, but died (in his wanderings?) as a private man. It is said that Solomon was at first the ruler over the entire world, then over Tadmur only (on Tadmur, see text on p. 962), then over Israel only, and finally he only possessed the couch upon which he slept; even this possession he did not enjoy entirely, as he was terrified by evil spirits in his sleep. See Aggadat Shir 3, 33–34, and (somewhat differently) 1, 6; Shir 3.6; comp. also the parallel passages cited by Schechter. It was towards the end of his life that the holy spirit came to him (according to some, he was a prophet; see Sotah 48b, top; Targum 1 Kings 5.13; Ratner on Seder ‘Olam 20; notes 8, 25), by means of which he composed three books: Song of Songs, Proverbs, and Ecclesiastes; see Seder ‘Olam 15. On the reasons for this trilogy, see Aggadat Shir 1, 6. It is the first book, the “holiest of holy books” (= Hagiographa) upon which Solomon’s glory is based, whereas the last had for a long time to encounter the opposition of the sages against its admission into the Canon, because the passages thereof, owing to their obscure language, seem to contradict the dogma or reward and punishment and other essential doctrines of Judaism; see Yadayim 3.5; Tosefta 2.14; Shabbat 30b; Mishle 25, 97; PK 8, 68b; PR 18, 90b; WR 28 (beginning); ARN (both versions) 1, 2–3; Jerome, Eccles. 12.13. On the great esteem in which Song of Songs was held (it was taken as an allegorical presentation of the history of Israel from the beginning of its career until the advent of the Messiah), see Targum Shir 1.1; Aggadat Shir 1, 4–6 and 10; Midrash Shir 1b; Shir 1.1; Zohar I, 98b and 135a; quotation from an unknown Midrash in the anonymous Arabic commentary on Song of Songs published by Friedlaender in *Steinschneider-Festschrift*, 54, *seq.* Those who recite this book like a (love) song will be severely punished for their sacrilege. See Sanhedrin 101a; Kallah 1, 1b. Solomon composed his first book while he was still young, songs having a special attraction for the youth; when he reached the age of manhood he wrote Proverbs, containing the ripe fruit of a man who knows life; but when he became old he composed Ecclesiastes, the key-note of which is the vanity of all human pleasures and desires. See Shir. 1.1; Aggadat Shir 1.6. In the Zohar reference is made to the following books of Solomon: 1) The book which Ashmedai gave Solomon, from which something bearing on magic is quoted in III, 194b; 2) the book of the wisdom of Solomon, from which three sayings are quoted (the first is found in Shabbat 33a) in III, 193b; 3) the book on physiognomy, from which a lengthy passage is quoted in II, 70a, *seq.*; comp. Davidson, *Sepher Sha’ashuim*, Introduction, LXXXII, *seq.*; 4) Solomon’s book on the knowledge



of precious stones in II, 127a (top). The book of Solomon's wise counsels referred to in I, 225b, is very likely identical with No. 2. Solomon is probably the author, or rather the redactor of the book (or books) of the Sons of the East; see Zohar I, 99b, and II, 171b. Compare footnote 70 on p. 1049. Comp. notes 18 and 24.

## THE COURT OF SOLOMON

As David had been surrounded by great scholars and heroes of repute, so the court of Solomon was the gathering-place of the great of his people. The most important of them all doubtless was Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, who had no peer for learning and piety either in the time of the first or the second Temple.<sup>94</sup> In his capacity as the chancellor of Solomon, he was the object of the king's special favor. He was frequently invited to be the companion of the king in his games of chess. The wise king naturally was always the winner. One day Solomon left the chess-board for a moment, Benaiah used his absence to remove one of the king's chessmen, and the king lost the game. Solomon gave much thought to the occurrence. He came to the conclusion that his chancellor had dealt dishonestly with him, and he was determined to give him a lesson.

Some days later Solomon noticed two suspicious characters hanging about the palace. Acting at once upon an idea that occurred to him, he put on the clothes of one of his servants and joined the two suspects. The three of them, he proposed, should make the attempt to rob the royal palace, and he drew forth a key which would facilitate their entrance. While the thieves were occupied in gathering booty, the king roused his servants, and the malefactors were taken in custody. Next morning Solomon appeared before the Sanhedrin, which was presided over by Benaiah<sup>95</sup> at the time, and he desired to

know from the court what punishment was meted out to a thief. Benaiah, seeing no delinquents before him, and unwilling to believe that the king would concern himself about the apprehension of thieves, was convinced that Solomon was bent on punishing him for his dishonest play. He fell at the feet of the king, confessed his guilt, and begged his pardon. Solomon was pleased to have his supposition confirmed, and also to have Benaiah acknowledge his wrongdoing. He assured him he harbored no evil designs against him, and that when he asked this question of the Sanhedrin, he had had real thieves in mind, who had broken into the palace during the night.<sup>96</sup>

Another interesting incident happened, in which Benaiah played a part. The king of Persia was very ill, and his physician told him he could be cured by nothing but the milk of a lioness. The king accordingly sent a deputation bearing rich presents to Solomon, the only being in the world who might in his wisdom discover means to obtain lion's milk. Solomon charged Benaiah to fulfil the Persian king's wish. Benaiah took a number of kids, and repaired to a lion's den. Daily he threw a kid to the lioness, and after some time the beasts became familiar with him, and finally he could approach the lioness close enough to draw milk from her udders.

On the way back to the Persian king the physician who had recommended the milk cure dreamed a dream. All the organs of his body, his hands, feet, eyes, mouth, and tongue, were quarrelling with one another, each claiming the greatest share of credit in procuring the remedy for the Persian monarch. When the tongue set forth its own contribution to the cause of the king's service, the other organs rejected its claim as totally unfounded. The physician did not forget the dream, and when he appeared before the king, he spoke: "Here is the dog's milk which we went to fetch for you." The king, enraged, or-



dered the physician to be hanged, because he had brought the milk of a bitch instead of the milk of a lion's dam. During the preliminaries to the execution, all the limbs and organs of the physician began to tremble, whereupon the tongue said: "Did I not tell you that you all are of no good? If you will acknowledge my superiority, I shall even now save you from death." They all made the admission it demanded, and the physician requested the executioner to take him to the king. Once in the presence of his master, he begged him as a special favor to drink of the milk he had brought. The king granted his wish, recovered from his sickness, and dismissed the physician in peace. So it came about that all the organs of the body acknowledge the supremacy of the tongue.<sup>97</sup>

Besides Benaiah, Solomon's two scribes, Elihoreph and Ahijah, the sons of Shisha, deserve mention. They both met their death in a most peculiar way. Solomon once upon a time noticed a care-worn expression on the countenance of the Angel of Death. When he asked the reason, he received the answer, that he had been charged with the task of bringing the two scribes to the next world. Solomon was desirous of stealing a march upon the Angel of Death, as well as keeping his secretaries alive. He ordered the demons to carry Elihoreph and Ahijah to Luz, the only spot on earth in which the Angel of Death has no power.<sup>98</sup> In a jiffy, the demons had done his bidding, but the two secretaries expired at the very moment of reaching the gates of Luz. Next day, the Angel of Death appeared before Solomon in very good humor, and said to him: "Thou didst transport those two men to the very spot in which I wanted them." The fate destined for them was to die at the gates of Luz, and the Angel of Death had been at a loss how to get them there.<sup>99</sup>

A most interesting incident in Solomon's own family circle is connected with one of his

daughters. She was of extraordinary beauty, and in the stars he read that she was to marry an extremely poor youth. To prevent the undesirable union, Solomon had a high tower erected in the sea, and to this he sent his daughter. Seventy eunuchs were to guard her, and a huge quantity of food was stored in the tower for her use.

The poor youth whom fate had appointed to be her husband was travelling one cold night. He did not know where to rest his head, when he espied the rent carcass of an ox lying in the field. In this he lay down to keep warm. When he was ensconced in it, there came a large bird, which took the carcass, bore it, together with the youth stretched out in it, to the roof of the tower in which the princess lived, and, settling down there, began to devour the flesh of the ox. In the morning, the princess, according to her wont, ascended to the roof to look out upon the sea, and she caught sight of the youth. She asked him who he was, and who had brought him thither? He told her that he was a Jew from Accho, and had been carried to the tower by a bird. She showed him to a chamber, where he could wash and anoint himself, and array himself in a fresh garb. Then it appeared that he possessed unusual beauty. Besides, he was a scholar of great attainments and of acute mind. So it came about that the princess fell in love with him. She asked him whether he would have her to wife, and he assented gladly. He opened one of his veins, and wrote the marriage contract with his own blood. Then he pronounced the formula of betrothal, taking God and the two archangels Michael and Gabriel as witnesses, and she became his wife, legally married to him.

After some time the eunuchs noticed that she was pregnant. Their questions elicited the suspected truth from the princess, and they sent for Solomon. His daughter admitted her marriage, and the king, though he recognized in her husband the poor man predicted in the constel-



lations, yet he thanked God for his son-in-law, distinguished no less for learning than for his handsome person.<sup>100</sup>

94. Berakot 18b; Targum 2 Sam. 23.20–25; Zohar I, 105b–106b; 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 20a. See also the undoubtedly Jewish Haggadah in ps.-Jerome on 2 Sam. *loc. cit.*

95. Berakot 4a = Sanhedrin 16b (on the text see Tosafot and Rabbenu Hananel, *ad loc.*; *Aruk*, s. v. אחר; R. Nissim in *R.E.J.* XLIV, 29, 295–296), where the assertion is made that the Cherethites and Pelethites whose chief was Benaiah (2 Sam. 8.18), represent the Great Synhedrion, whose president was Benaiah. Mahzor Vitry, 332, is of the opinion that this Benaiah is not identical with his namesake, the commander-in-chief of Solomon's army (1 Kings 2.35). The reason for this is probably to be found in the fact that Benaiah, the general of Solomon, was not a priest (see 1 Kings 2.34, where he acts as executioner, which work cannot be done by a priest on account of the Levitical laws of purity), whereas according to the Haggadah, Benaiah, the head of the Synhedrion was a priest; see Midrash Shir 30a, and 1 Chron. 37.5. Comp. also Tosafot, *loc. cit.*

96. *Ma'aseh-Buch*, No. 230; translated into Hebrew in BHM VI, 124–126; Comp. Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 426.

97. Tehillim 39, 255. The legend about the rivalry of the human organs, without any reference to Solomon and Benaiah, is also found in Makiri, Prov. 18, 3a; *Orehot*

*Zaddikim*, 25; Shu'aib, Shelah, 83d–84a. The last-named author offers several other variants for our texts of Tehillim.

98. On Luz see text on p. 861.

99. Sukkah 58a. Another version is found in Yerushalmi Kil'ayim 9, 32c; Ma'asiyyot (Gaster's edition 100). The two servants of Solomon are described in Babli as איסקבטירי "scribes", and hence in Yerushalmi as אליחרף ואחיה, which is ἐξασέπτωρ = "exceptor", "copyist", correctly spelled אסקפטריא in Ma'asiyyot. The words אליחרף ואחיה in Babli are very likely a later addition from Yerushalmi, whereas the original version of Babli spoke of Solomon's "two slaves". Rashi's explanation of כושאי is not acceptable.

100. Tan. B. Introduction, 136; Arabic parallels to this legend are cited by Grünbaum, *Neue Beiträge*, 233, *seq.*, and Salzberger, *Salomo-Sage*, 80. In another version of this legend many new points of interest are introduced; it reads as follows. During a war between Solomon and Hiram the Jewish soldiers were

101. attempting to cross a river on a very hot day. Solomon called upon the birds to protect his soldiers from the heat, and when Hiram came to see this miracle he was received peaceably, and the war thus ended. While the two kings were conversing, an eagle removed his wing from over Solomon's head, informing him at the same time that the High Priest Joshua (sic!) would die and the king's daughter would marry a bastard. This information the eagle gave to Solomon as he had received it from his spouse. Solomon shut his daughter up in a high tower, etc. as given in the text. Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 336.



## XVII

### JUDAH AND ISRAEL

#### THE DIVISION OF THE KINGDOM

**T**he division of the kingdom into Judah and Israel, which took place soon after the death of Solomon, had cast its shadow before. When Solomon, on the day after his marriage with the Egyptian princess, disturbed the regular course of the Temple service by sleeping late with his head on the pillow under which lay the key of the Temple, Jeroboam with eighty thousand Ephraimites approached the king and publicly called him to account for his negligence. God administered a reproof to Jeroboam; “Why dost thou reproach a prince of Israel? As thou livest, thou shalt have a taste of his rulership, and thou wilt see thou art not equal to its responsibilities.”<sup>1</sup>

On another occasion a clash occurred between Jeroboam and Solomon. The latter ordered his men to close the openings David had made in the city wall to facilitate the approach of the pilgrims to Jerusalem. This forced them all to walk through the gates and pay toll. The tax thus collected Solomon gave to his wife, the daughter of Pharaoh, as pin-money. Indignant at this, Jeroboam questioned the king about it in public. In other ways, too, he failed to pay Solomon the respect due to royal position, as his father before him, Sheba the son of Bichri, had

rebelled against David, misled by signs and tokens which he had falsely interpreted as pointing to his own elevation to royal dignity, when in reality they concerned themselves with his son.<sup>2</sup>

It was when Jeroboam was preparing to depart from Jerusalem forever, in order to escape the dangers to which Solomon’s displeasure exposed him,<sup>3</sup> that Ahijah of Shilo met him with the Divine tidings of his elevation to the kingship. The prophet Ahijah, of the tribe of Levi, was venerable, not only by reason of his hoary age,—his birth occurred at least sixty years before the exodus from Egypt,<sup>4</sup>—but because his piety was so profound that a saint of the exalted standing of Simon ben Yoḥai associated Ahijah with himself. Simon once exclaimed: “My merits and Ahijah’s together suffice to atone for the iniquity of all sinners from the time of Abraham until the advent of the Messiah.”<sup>5</sup>

---

1. WR 12.5. On the delay caused by Solomon’s long sleep, see text on pp. 947–948. See also ER 24, 125, which reads: Jeroboam received the rulership over the tribes as a reward for his courage in calling Solomon to account.

2. Sanhedrin 101b; text on p. 882. As to the legal question whether the inhabitants of Abel of Beth-maacah acted in accordance with the law when they surrendered Sheba, who had taken refuge with them, see Tosefta Terumot 7.20; Yerushalmi 8, 46b; BR 94.9; Shemuel 32, 140;



Koheleth 9.18. The only excuse given for the inhabitants of this city is that Sheba as a rebel against the “throne of David” had no claim upon them. The Midrashim just quoted (as well as Tan. B. I, 92; PK 10, 87a; Aggadat Bereshit 22, 45–46) maintain that the woman at whose counsel Sheba was killed by the inhabitants of Abel of Beth-maacah was Serah the daughter of Asher, concerning whom see text on p. 391, and Index, s. v. “Paradise, Entering Alive”. The Midrashim cited above give, in full, her pleadings with the inhabitants of the city to yield to the demands of Joab for the surrender of Sheba. On the confusion of Sheba with Shemi the son of Gera by ps.-Jerome on 2 Sam. 16.10, see Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 56–57. About the early history of Jeroboam, comp. the following addition to 1 Kings 12.24 found in Septuagint. There was a man...a servant to Solomon, and his name was Jeroboam, and the name of his mother was Sarira, a harlot...And he built for Solomon Sarira in mount Ephraim, and he had three hundred chariots of horses. He built the citadel with the levies of the house of Ephraim, fortified the city of David, and aspired to the kingdom. And Solomon sought to kill him, and he escaped to Sousakim king of Egypt, and was with him until Solomon died. And Jeroboam heard in Egypt that Solomon was dead, and he spoke in the ears of the king of Egypt, saying: “Let me go, and I will depart into my land”; and Sousakim gave to Jeroboam Ano, the eldest sister of Thelkemina his wife, to be his wife. She was great among the daughters of the king, and she bore to Jeroboam Ahijah...And Jeroboam departed out of Egypt, and came into the land of Sarira...And hither the whole tribe of Ephraim assembled, and Jeroboam built a fortress there. The description of Jeroboam’s mother as a harlot is perhaps an old haggadic explanation of her name Zarua צָרוּעַ, literally “leper”. Comp. Yebamot 63b: אִשָּׁה רְעָה צָרְעָה לְבַעֲלָה “A shrew is like leprosy to her husband”, and see also p. 931, footnote 96.

3. According to Sanhedrin 102a, Jeroboam left Palestine with the intention never to return there again.

4. Seder ‘Olam 1, and the parallel passages cited by Ratner; Baba Batra 121b. Ahijah is one of the seven whose terms of life overlapped one another, so that they form a chain extending from the creation of the world until the end of time. These seven are: Adam, Methuselah, Noah, Shem, Jacob, Amram, Ahijah, and Elijah, the last of whom continues to live. According to Septuagint 1 Kings 12.24, Ahijah was sixty years old when Ano the wife of Jeroboam (comp. note 2) made him inquire about the outcome of her son’s illness; see 1 Kings 14.1, *seq.* Septuagint further differs from the masoretic text of 1 Kings 11, 29, *seq.*, by making the prophet Shemaiah, instead of Ahijah, the bearer of the divine message to Jeroboam.

5. BR 35.2; Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 13d (bottom); PK 10, 88a. In the legends of the Hasidim Ahijah figures

as the teacher of R. Israel Baal Shem Tob, the founder of the sect; comp. Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, II, 389; see also text on p. 1043. Ahijah suffered a martyr’s death: He was executed by Abijah (the wicked king of Judah and not his namesake, the son of Jeroboam, who is praised in the Haggadah for his piety; compare with p. 984), as was his contemporary Shemaiah by Basha the wicked king of Israel. See Midrash Aggadah Num. 30.5.

## JEROBOAM

Jeroboam was the true disciple<sup>6</sup> of this great prophet. His doctrine was as pure as the new garment Ahijah wore when he met Jeroboam near Jerusalem, and his learning exceeded that of all the scholars of his time except his own teacher Ahijah alone. The prophet was in the habit of discussing secret lore with Jeroboam and subjects in the Torah whose existence was wholly unknown to others.<sup>7</sup>

Had Jeroboam proved himself worthy of his high position, the length of his reign would have equalled David’s.<sup>8</sup> It was his pride that led him into destruction. He set up the golden calves as objects to be worshipped by the people, in order to wean them from their habit of going on pilgrimages to Jerusalem. He knew that in the Temple only members of the royal house of David were privileged to sit down. No exception would be made in favor of Jeroboam, and so he would have had to stand while Rehoboam would be seated. Rather than appear in public as the subordinate of the Judean king, he introduced the worship of idols, which secured him full royal prerogatives.

In the execution of his plan he proceeded with great cunning, and his reputation as a profound scholar and pious saint stood him in good stead. This was his method: He seated an impious man next to a pious man, and then said to each couple: “Will you put your signature to anything I intend to do?” The two would give an



affirmative answer. “Do you want me as king?” he would then ask, only to receive an affirmative answer again. “And you will do whatever I order?” he continued. “Yes,” was the reply. “I am to infer, then, that you will even pay worship to idols if I command it?” said Jeroboam. “God forbid!” the pious member of the couple would exclaim, whereupon his impious companion, who was in league with the king, would turn upon him: “Canst thou really suppose for an instant that a man like Jeroboam would serve idols? He only wishes to put our loyalty to the test.” Through such machinations he succeeded in obtaining the signatures of the most pious, even the signature of the prophet Ahijah. Now Jeroboam had the people in his power. He could exact the vilest deeds from them.<sup>9</sup>

So entrenched, Jeroboam brought about the division between Judah and Israel, a consummation which his father, Sheba the son of Bichri, had not been able to compass under David, because God desired to have the Temple erected before the split occurred.<sup>10</sup> Not yet satisfied, Jeroboam sought to involve the Ten Tribes in a war against Judah and Jerusalem. But the people of the northern kingdom refused to enter into hostilities with their brethren, and with the ruler of their brethren, a descendant of David. Jeroboam appealed to the elders of the Israelites, and they referred him to the Danites, the most efficient of their warriors; but they swore by the head of Dan, the ancestor of their tribe, that they would never consent to shed the blood of their brethren. They were even on the point of rising against Jeroboam, and the clash between them and the followers of Jeroboam war prevented only because God prompted the Danites to leave Palestine.

Their first plan was to journey to Egypt and take possession of the land. They gave it up when their princes reminded them of the Biblical prohibition<sup>11</sup> against dwelling in Egypt. Like-

wise they were restrained from attacking the Edomites, Ammonites, and Moabites, for the Torah commands considerate treatment of them. Finally they decided to go to Egypt, but not to stay there, only to pass through to Ethiopia. The Egyptians were in great terror of the Danites, and their hardiest warriors occupied the roads travelled by them. Arrived in Ethiopia, the Danites slew a part of the population, and exacted tribute from the rest.<sup>12</sup>

The departure of the Danites relieved Judah from the apprehended invasion by Jeroboam, but danger arose from another quarter. Shishak,<sup>13</sup> the ruler of Egypt, who was the father-in-law of Solomon, came to Jerusalem and demanded his daughter's jointure. He carried off the throne of Solomon,<sup>14</sup> and also the treasure which the Israelites had taken from the Egyptians at the time of the exodus. So the Egyptian money returned to its source.<sup>15</sup>

---

6. Jeroboam was as distinguished a scholar as his master, the prophet Ahijah; see Tehillim 5, 55, and comp. also MHG I, 412.

7. Sanhedrin 102a. Ahijah and Jeroboam discussed the mysteries of the divine throne (מעשה מרכבה). The angels therefore asked God: “Dost Thou reveal the secrets of the Torah to this man who is going to set up two calves to be worshipped?” God rejoined: “Is this man at present righteous or wicked?” “Righteous”, replied the angels. Whereupon God said: “I deal with a man as he is, not as he will be.” See Tehillim 5, 55. Compare footnote 215 on p. 220. The opposite view is given in Zohar Hadash, Bereshit (end) and Ahare (end), where it is said that God had intended to take away Jeroboam from this world while he was still young and pious; but at the pleading of the angels He did not carry out His intention. Later, when Jeroboam forsook God and His Torah, the angels realized that in their short-sightedness they pleaded for the life of a terrible sinner.

8. Seder ‘Olam 15. That Jeroboam persisted in his evil ways, notwithstanding the miracle performed by the prophet of Judah (on this miracle, see Tan. B. III, 10; Tan. Tehillim 12), was the fault of the false prophet of Beth-el (1 Kings 13.11, *seq.*) who persuaded the king that no miracle took place at all, and supported his words by the fact



that the prophet of Judah was killed by a lion, from which incident one ought to conclude that he was not a true prophet; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 9. For further details concerning the true prophet of Judah and the false prophet of Beth-el, see PK 2, 14b–15a, and the parallel passages cited by Buber, *ad loc.*, and Ratner's note 29 on Seder 'Olam 20, as well as the references cited in footnote 133 on p. 881. One might infer the great merit of hospitality from the fact that the false prophet of Beth-el received a revelation (see 1 Kings 13.20) as a reward for his kindness towards the prophet of Judah to whom he offered hospitality; Sanhedrin 103b; ER 12, 60–61.

9. Sanhedrin 101b; compare with p. 1037. As to the view that only members of the house of David were privileged to sit down in the Temple (*i. e.*, עזרה "Temple court"), see footnote 88 on p. 927 and comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 4.2, who takes pains to point out that on the occasion of the dedication of the Temple Solomon sat down and then rose for his prayer. Another legend charges the people rather than Jeroboam with the sin of idolatry. Intoxicated with wine at the coronation of Jeroboam, they urged him to erect idols; but not being sure that they would not change their mind on becoming sober, he delayed his decision till the following day. When he saw that the people persisted in their demand, he yielded to them on the condition that the members of the Synhedrion be killed (or, according to others, removed from office), so that one might worship idols without fear of being executed for the offence. Jeroboam then sent emissaries through the entire country to entice the pious to worship idols. These emissaries used to address the people in the following manner: The most illustrious generation was that of the wilderness (see text on p. 592), and it worshipped the golden calf, without receiving severe punishment. Our king therefore desires to follow the example set by this generation. It was Jeroboam's pride and ambition which made him forsake his God. He knew that in the Sabbatical year the king is commanded to read the word of God to the people in the Temple (see Deut. 31.10), and as long as Israel should make pilgrimages to Jerusalem, Rehoboam would inevitably appear to the entire nation as the real king. Jeroboam therefore established the worship of the calves, and in this way prevented the people from going up to Jerusalem. He abolished not only the three festivals, when pilgrimages were made, but also the Sabbaths; Yerushalmi 'Abodah Zarah 1, 39b; Jerome on Hos. 7.4–7. See also the quotation from an unknown Midrash in Shu'aib, Nizzabim 114a, where it is likewise said that Jeroboam claimed to be the legitimate king of Israel on account of his Ephraimitic descent. At first, however, he refused to accept the offered crown because of his poverty; whereupon

the people (or, according to some, Ahijah) bestowed great wealth upon him; Aggadat Shir 95, according to the reading of Makiri, Is. 7, 105.

10. Koheleth 2.11, 3. On Jeroboam's father see text on p. 981. At Shechem Israel renounced not only his allegiance to the house of David, but also his loyalty to God and his sanctuary, (see 1 Kings 12.16, where לאהליך is taken to be an "emendation of the Scribes" for לאלהיך "to thy gods"); the salvation of Israel will therefore not come before Israel "seeks the Lord their God, David their king, and the sanctuary" which God in His great goodness had given to His people; Shemuel 13, 84.

11. According to the Rabbis, the Bible forbids one to dwell in Egypt. Comp. Mekilta Beshallah 2, 28b; Yerushalmi Sukkah 55b; Esther R. 1.3 (פתיחתא).

12. Eldad 25–26.

13. His real name was Zebub, "fly", and he is called Shishak (from *Shuk*, "desire"), because he longed for the death of Solomon whom he feared to attack; Seder 'Olam 20; Aggadat Shir 7, 43. Comp. Esther R. 1.2, 13.

14. On the history of the throne, see text on p. 969.

15. Pesahim 119a. On the further history of these treasures see text on p. 397. Three returned to the place whence they came: Israel, the Torah, and the treasures. Israel came originally from Babylon (Abraham from the other side of the river), and returned thither after having been exiled from the Holy Land; the Torah came from heaven, and the letters of the tables ascended to heaven after Moses broke the tables (see text on p. 625); the treasures which came from Egypt returned thither; Pesahim 87a; Mekilta Amalek 1, 53b; ARN 41, 132–133; second version 47, 130.

## THE TWO ABIJAHs

Jeroboam did not entirely forego his plan of a campaign against Judah, but it was not executed until Abijah had succeeded his father Rehoboam on the throne of Jerusalem. The Judean king was victorious. However, he could not long enjoy the fruits of his victory. Shortly after occurred his death, brought on by his own crimes. In his war against Jeroboam he had indulged in excessive cruelty; he ordered the corpses of the enemy to be mutilated, and permitted them to be buried only after putrefaction had set in. Such



savagery was all the more execrable as it prevented many widows from entering into a second marriage. Mutilating the corpses had made identification impossible, and so it was left doubtful whether their husbands were among the dead.

Moreover, Abijah used most disrespectful language about the prophet Ahijah the Shilonite; he called him a “son of Belial” in his address to the people on Mount Zemaraim. That in itself merited severe punishment. Finally, his zeal for the true worship of God, which Abijah had urged as the reason of the war between himself and Jeroboam, cooled quickly. When he obtained possession of Beth-el, he failed to do away with the golden calves.<sup>16</sup>

In this respect his namesake, the Israelitish king Abijah, the son of Jeroboam, was by far his superior. By removing the guards stationed at the frontier, he bade defiance to the command of his father, who had decreed the death penalty for pilgrimages to Jerusalem. More than this, he himself ventured to go up to Jerusalem in fulfillment of his religious duty.<sup>17</sup>

---

16. Seder 'Olam 16; Yerushalmi Yebamot 16, 15a; BR 56.20; WR 33.5; Ruth R. 4.8; Shemuel 18, 100; comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VII, 11.3, who also maintains that Abijam (= Abijah in 2 Chron. 13.1) died directly after his victory over Jeroboam. Abijah, in speaking of the supporters of Jeroboam as “sons of Belial” (see 2 Chron. 13.7, where the Hebrew representing “vain men” is בְּנֵי בָלִיעַל), insulted the prophet Ahijah, who more than anybody else contributed to the elevation of Jeroboam to the throne of Israel.

17. Mo'ed Katan 28b. According to the Kabbalists, the son of Abijah will be the Ephraimitic Messiah; Zohar Hadash Balak (end). Besides Abijah there were others who, like him, disregarded the command of Jeroboam against pilgrimages to Jerusalem, and by clever ruses fooled the guards at the frontier. The descendants of these pious men celebrated the fifteenth of the month of Ab as a festival by bringing sacrifices to the Temple; see Yerushalmi Ta'anit 4, 68b; Targum 1 Chron. 2.54. Comp., however, Babli Ta'anit 28a, and Megillat Ta'anit 5.9–10, where the pious men, who at the risk of their lives made pilgrimages to Jerusalem,

are said to have lived at the time when the Greek government decreed against the Jews ordinances “like those of Jeroboam”. With regard to Jeroboam's edict against pilgrimages to Jerusalem, see Yerushalmi 'Abodah Zarah 1, 39b, where the text seems to be corrupt, though Yalkut II, 542, on Hos. 7, has the same reading as our texts.

## ASA

Asa, the son of Abijah of Judah, was a worthier and a more pious ruler than his father had been. He did away with the gross worship of Priapus,<sup>18</sup> to which his mother was devoted. To reward him for his piety, God gave him the victory over Zerah, the king of the Ethiopians. As a result of this victory he came again into possession of the throne of Solomon and of the treasures Shishak had taken from his grandfather, which Zerah in turn had wrested from Shishak.<sup>19</sup> Asa himself did not long keep them. Baasha, the king of Israel, together with Ben-hadad, the Aramean king, attacked Asa, who tried to propitiate Ben-hadad by giving him his lately re-acquired treasures.<sup>20</sup> The prophet justly rebuked him for trusting in princes rather than in God, and that in spite of the fact that the Divine help had been visible in his conflict with the Ethiopians and the Lubim; for there had been no need for him to engage in battle with them; in response to his mere prayer God had slain the enemy.<sup>21</sup> In general, Asa showed little confidence in God; he rather trusted his own skill. Accordingly, he made even the scholars of his realm enlist in the army sent out against Baasha. He was punished by being afflicted with gout, he of all men, who was distinguished on account of the strength residing in his feet.<sup>22</sup> Furthermore, the division between Judah and Israel was made permanent, though God had at first intended to limit the exclusion of David's house from Israel to only thirty-six years. Had Asa



shown himself deserving, he would have been accorded dominion over the whole of Israel.<sup>23</sup> In point of fact, Asa, through his connection by marriage with the house of Omri, contributed to the stability of the Israelitish dynasty, for as a result of the support given by the southern ruler Omri succeeded in putting his rival Tibni out of the way. Then it was that God resolved that the descendants of Asa should perish simultaneously with the descendants of Omri. This doom was accomplished when Jehu killed the king of Judah on account of his friendship and kinship with Joram the king of Samaria.<sup>24</sup>

---

18. 'Abodah Zarah 44a; Vulgate 1 Kings 15.13; Jerome on Hos. 4, 14. The assonance of "Phallus" and מַלְלָצָה [מַלְלָצָה] may have suggested this assumption. Comp., however, Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 10.3, who quotes Herodotus of Halicarnassus to the effect that the king of Egypt (*i. e.*, Shishak, who, shortly before Asa, conquered Jerusalem) left behind him pillars upon which were engraved the secret parts of women. To reconcile the contradiction between 1 Kings 15.10 and 2 Chron. 13.2, it is asserted that after repenting of her idolatrous practices, the name of Asa's mother was changed; her father's name, too, was changed; the latter was none other than the wicked Absalom. See Targum 2 Chron., *loc. cit.*, and 15.16. Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 10.1, and ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 15.16. The latter quotes the Jewish tradition, according to which the water of the brook of Kidron turned into fire, and burned the image of the idol which Asa threw into it. The commentators Kimhi and Gersonides on 1 Kings 15.2, as well as ps.-Rashi on 2 Chron. 13.2, call attention to the fact that it was not the mother, but the grandmother, of Asa who had been addicted to idolatry. This is another attempt to reconcile the contradiction between 1 Kings 15.2 and 15.10. Compare footnote 91 on p. 976.

19. Pesahim 119a; Seder 'Olam 16; Esther R. 1.2. Compare with p. 397, and text on pp. 969, 993. The number in the hostile army (comp. 2 Chron. 14.8) was established by Asa from the number of the chariots; comp. Mekilta Beshallah 1, 27b. Most historians identify Zerah with Osorchan I, the successor of Sesanchis (Shi-shak). It is noteworthy that Seder 'Olam merely states that Zerah restored to Asa what Shishak had won in the battle with Rehoboam, and does not mention that Zerah had in turn taken it from Shishak in war. This latter statement appears first in the Talmud.

20. Pesahim 119a; Seder 'Olam 16. Comp. the references at the beginning of the preceding note.

21. Ekah, introduction, XXX, and Tehillim 79, 358, which read: Four kings expressed four different wishes, and God granted to each of them his desire. David prayed for strength to attack his enemies (Ps. 18.38), and God granted his prayer (1 Sam. 30.17). Asa said: "I have no strength to attack my enemies; but if God so wills, I shall defeat them by pursuing them"; his prayer was heard (2 Chron. 14. 11–12). Jehoshaphat said: "I can neither attack the enemy nor pursue him; but I shall leave the carrying on of the war to God, whom I shall continue to praise and glorify"; God defeated the enemies of Jehoshaphat, while the pious king was engaged in praising Him (2 Chron. 20.21–22). Hezekiah said: "I cannot attack the enemy, nor pursue him, nor engage in continually praising God; but I pray that He should annihilate him while I sleep"; God destroyed the army of the Assyrians while the Jews were asleep (2 Kings 19.35). According to the Haggadah, the words addressed by the prophet Azariah to Asa and his people (2 Chron. 15.3, *seq.*) contain a prophecy and are to be translated: And for long seasons Israel will be without the true God, etc.; WR 19.9; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 12.2.

22. Sotah 10a. See also Nedarim 31b, where it is stated that the servitude of Israel in Egypt was a punishment for Abraham's having made the scholars engage in war against the kings. On the view that Asa was distinguished for having his strength in his feet, see text on p. 58.

23. Seder 'Olam 16; Tosefta Sotah 12.1–2

24. Seder 'Olam 17; Tosefta Sotah 12.13.

## JEHOSHAPHAT AND AHAB

The successors of Omri and Asa, each in his way, were worthy of their fathers. Jehoshaphat, the son of Asa, was very wealthy. The treasures which his father had sent to the Aramean ruler reverted to him in consequence of his victory over the Ammonites, themselves the conquerors of the Arameans, whom they had despoiled of their possessions.<sup>25</sup> His power was exceedingly great; each division of his army counted no less than one hundred and sixty thousand warriors.<sup>26</sup> Yet rich and powerful as he was, he was so modest that he refused to don his royal apparel when he went to the house of the



prophet Elisha to consult him; he appeared before him in the attire of one of the people.<sup>27</sup> Unlike his father, who had little consideration for scholars, Jehoshaphat was particularly gracious toward them. When a scholar appeared before him, he arose, hastened to meet him, and kissing and embracing him, greeted him with “Rabbi, Rabbi!”<sup>28</sup>

Jehoshaphat concerned himself greatly about the purity and sanctification of the Temple. He was the author of the ordinance forbidding any one to ascend the Temple mount whose term of uncleanness had not expired, even though he had taken the ritual bath.<sup>29</sup> His implicit trust in God made him a complete contrast to his skeptical father. He turned to God and implored His help when to human reason help seemed an utter impossibility. In the war with the Arameans, an enemy held his sword at Jehoshaphat’s very throat, ready to deal the fatal blow, but the king entreated help of God, and it was granted.<sup>30</sup>

In power and wealth, Ahab, king of Samaria, outstripped his friend Jehoshaphat, for Ahab is one of that small number of kings who have ruled over the whole world.<sup>31</sup> No less than two hundred and fifty-two kingdoms acknowledged his dominion.<sup>32</sup> As for his wealth, it was so abundant that each of his hundred and forty children possessed several ivory palaces, summer and winter residences.<sup>33</sup> But what gives Ahab his prominence among the Jewish kings is neither his power nor his wealth, but his sinful conduct. For him the gravest transgressions committed by Jeroboam were slight peccadilloes. At his order the gates of Samaria bore the inscription: “Ahab denies the God of Israel.” He was so devoted to idolatry, to which he was led astray by his wife Jezebel, that the fields of Palestine were full of idols. But he was not wholly wicked, he possessed some good qualities. He was liberal toward scholars, and he showed great reverence for the Torah, which he studied zealously. When Ben-hadad exacted all he possessed—his wealth,

his wives, his children—he acceded to his demands regarding everything except the Torah; that he refused peremptorily to surrender.<sup>34</sup> In the war that followed between himself and the Syrians, he was so indignant at the presumptuousness of the Aramean upstart that he himself saddled his war-horse for the battle. His zeal was rewarded by God; he gained a brilliant victory in a battle in which no less than a hundred thousand of the Syrians were slain, as the prophet Micaiah had foretold to him.<sup>35</sup> The same seer<sup>36</sup> admonished him not to deal gently with Ben-hadad. God’s word to him had been: “Know that I had to set many a pitfall and trap to deliver him into thy hand. If thou lettest him escape, thy life will be forfeit for his.”<sup>37</sup>

Nevertheless the disastrous end of Ahab is not to be ascribed to his disregard of the prophet’s warning—for he finally liberated Ben-hadad, —but chiefly to the murder of his kinsman Naboth, whose execution on the charge of treason he had ordered, so that he might put himself in possession of Naboth’s wealth.<sup>38</sup> His victim was a pious man, and in the habit of going on pilgrimages to Jerusalem on the festivals. As he was a great singer, his presence in the Holy City attracted many other pilgrims thither. Once Naboth failed to go on his customary pilgrimage. Then it was that his false conviction took place—a very severe punishment for the transgression, but not wholly unjustifiable.<sup>39</sup> Under Jehoshaphat’s influence and counsel, Ahab did penance for his crime, and the punishment God meted out to him was thereby mitigated to the extent that his dynasty was not cut off from the throne at his death.<sup>40</sup> In the heavenly court of justice,<sup>41</sup> at Ahab’s trial, the accusing witnesses and his defenders exactly balanced each other in number and statements, until the spirit of Naboth appeared and turned the scale against Ahab. The spirit of Naboth it had been, too, that had led astray the prophets of Ahab, making them



all use the very same words in prophesying a victory at Ramothgilead. This literal unanimity aroused Jehoshaphat's suspicion, and caused him to ask for "a prophet of the Lord", for the rule is: "The same thought is revealed to many prophets, but no two prophets express it in the same words."<sup>42</sup> Jehoshaphat's mistrust was justified by the issue of the war. Ahab was slain in a miraculous way by Naaman, at that time only a common soldier of the rank and file. God permitted Naaman's missile to penetrate Ahab's armor, though the latter was harder than the former.<sup>43</sup>

The mourning for Ahab was so great that the memory of it reached posterity.<sup>44</sup> The funeral procession was unusually impressive; no less than thirty-six thousand warriors, their shoulders bared, marched before his bier.<sup>45</sup> Ahab is one of the few in Israel who have no portion in the world to come.<sup>46</sup> He dwells in the fifth division of the nether world, which is under the supervision of the angel Oniel. However, he is exempt from the tortures inflicted upon his heathen associates.<sup>47</sup>

25. Pesahim 119a; compare with pp. 397; note 19.

26. Tehillim 15.118 הספירה is very likely a gloss to הדירגון.

27. BaR 21.6; Tan. B. IV, 152; Tan. Pinehas 3. According to another view quoted in these sources, Jehoshaphat did not don his royal robes from the moment he heard that God had decreed the punishment of Asa's descendants; see note 24, as well as the following note. Jehoshaphat had to pay dearly for his friendship and close connection with the wicked house of Omri; his commercial undertakings ceased to prosper from the time he associated himself with the goddess; ARN 9, 42; Alphabet of Ben Sira 14a, as a comment upon 2 Chron. 20.37.

28. Ketubot 103b; Makkot 24a; Tehillim 15, 118. Comp. also Yerushalmi Sotah (end), where the king's humility is praised (read שרץ מן). Notwithstanding his lack of regard for scholars (text on p. 985), Asa nevertheless married the daughter of the prophet Hanani (2 Chron. 16.7), and the issue of this marriage was Jehoshaphat. The prophet Eliezer, who was active during the reign of Jehoshaphat

(2 Chron. 20.37), was a grandson of Hanani, and accordingly בן דודוהו in the verse referred to is to be translated "the son of his uncle"; ps.-Jerome, 2 Chron. 20.31 and 37.

29. Yebamot 7b, given as a haggadic interpretation of החצר החדשה of 2 Chron. 20.5. For another Haggadah on this verse see ps.-Jerome, *ad loc.*

30. Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 13b; Tehillim 4, 3. See also Babli Berakot 10a (bottom), which contains an allusion to it not recognized by Rashi (caption מקובלני).—In reality God had condemned Jehoshaphat to death for having joined Ahab in war, and he was only saved by his prayer. He lived seven years longer, a period which Scripture puts to his son's account, not to his own. Seder 'Olam 17; notes 24 and 27.

31. Megillah 11a; PRE 11. Compare footnote 82 on p. 161. See also Septuagint 1 Kings 18.10, where Obadiah's words to Elijah read: "There is not a nation or a kingdom, whither my lord hath not sent to seek thee; and if they said: He is not here, then hath he (Ahab) set fire to the kingdom and its territories, because he hath not found thee." This undoubtedly presupposes that Ahab had power over all the kingdoms. Comp. Index, s. v. "Cosmocrators".

32. Esther R 1.1. ER 9, 49, counts only two hundred and thirty-two, who, according to 1 Kings 20.15, are supposed to be the sons of the conquered kings whom Ahab held as hostages. Of them it is said that life in the midst of Jewish surroundings made them pious, and through them God granted victory to Ahab in his war with Ben-hadad. According to Esther R., *loc. cit.*, twenty of the satrapies owing allegiance to Ahab were devastated by the famine which took place in his time, and therefore only two hundred and thirty-two hostages are mentioned in 1 Kings, *loc. cit.*

33. Shemuel 2, 47; Koheleth 6.3; Esther R. 1.1; Nispahim 44. On the winter and summer residences of the rich, see Midrash Shir 24a; on Ahab's great wealth see Berakot 61b; ER 9, 49. On Ahab's wicked children, see Koheleth 1.18.

34. Sanhedrin 102b; 103b. Comp. also Tan. Shemot 29 and Gaster, *Exempla*, pp. 184–185. In Tanḥuma the story of the Talmud is elaborated. In the latter passage the great learning of Ahab and of the two other wicked kings (Jeroboam and Manasseh) is emphasized. See also MHG I, 412; text on pp. 982 and 1054.

35. Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 219; Tan. B. II, 16; Tan. Shemot 29. During the reign of Ahab Israel was addicted to idolatry, but possessed the great virtue of keeping away from slander and backbiting. During the time of Samuel and Saul the Israelites were just the reverse: they were devoted to the study of the Torah (even young boys and girls were learned in the law), but they had "evil tongues". The former were victorious in their wars, the latter were unfortunate in their military expeditions. One



may infer from this that one is severely punished for the “evil use of his tongue”. See Yerushalmi Peah 1, 16a; WR 26.2; DR 5.10; Tehillim 7, 67; PK 4, 31b; Tan. B. IV, 106; Tan. Hukkat 4; BaR 19.2. Ahab’s generation did not reveal the hiding-place of Elijah and the other hundred prophets; but David’s abode in his flight from Saul was betrayed many a time. The great victory of Ahab and his people over the Syrians was the reward for their observance of the Sabbath. Likewise under Ahab’s son it was because of the observance of the Sabbath that Israel was victorious in the war against Mesha. See Mekilta RS, 162 = Midrash Gadol 124.

36. Seder ‘Olam 20; Tosefta Sanhedrin 14.15; Babli 89b; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 14.15. The first and the last sources take the prophet mentioned in 1 Kings 20.13, 22 and 28 to be Micaiah, whose activity at the time of Ahab is spoken of in 1 Kings 22.8.

37. WR 26.8; Tan. B. III, 84; Tan. Emor 3; Shemuel 24, 121; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 11, 30c. Comp. also Baraita di-Yeshua’ 46, where **חזק** **בן דוד** should be read instead of **חזק**.

38. Sanhedrin 48b; Tosefta 4.6. Two views are given there with regard to Ahab’s claims upon Naboth’s possessions. According to one, the king and Naboth were cousins, and when the latter died without issue, his possessions reverted to the nearest of kin, that is, Ahab. According to the other view, the property of those executed for lèse majesté fell to the royal treasury; compare with p. 945. That Naboth was of noble descent is asserted by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 13.7.

39. PR 25, 127a. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 13.7, speaks of the *three* false witnesses who testified against Naboth. This presupposes the old Halakah according to which in cases involving capital punishment three witnesses (or to be more accurate, one accuser and two witnesses) are necessary. Comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 170, note 5. Naboth’s fate illustrates the saying, “Woe unto the wicked and woe to his associate”; Naboth paid with his life for having been on friendly and close relations with the wicked Ahab; Alphabet of Ben Sira, 4b.

40. PK 25, 160b; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28b; Sotah 3, 18d; Ta’anit 25b; PRE 43; Shir 1.5.

41. Commenting on 1 Kings 22.19, the Rabbis remark that in the heavenly court there were some who pleaded for Ahab’s life and others who demanded his death; this is the meaning of Scripture in speaking of the host of heaven standing by God on His right and on His left; Tan. B. I, 96; II, 8 and 84; Tan. Shemot 18 and Mishpatim 15; Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s. v. **שמאל**.

42. Sanhedrin 89a; Shabbat 102b. But Naboth’s soul had to leave the abode of the pious, which is near God, for

God tolerates not in His presence those who resort to lies; Sanhedrin and Shabbat *loc. cit.*; Tosefta-Targum 1 Kings 22.21 and 23. On the view that no two prophets express themselves in the same words, see also Aggadat Bereshit 14, 30; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 15.4. The last-named author writes: Zedekiah exhorted him (the king) not to hearken to Micaiah, for he did not speak the truth at all. To support his words, he instanced the saying of Elijah, who was a greater prophet to foretell the future than Micaiah. Now Elijah prophesied that the dogs would lick his (Ahab’s) blood in the field of Naboth (see 1 Kings 21.19). It was therefore plain that Micaiah was a false prophet, since he contradicted the words of a prophet greater than himself, and asserted that Ahab would be slain in a place three days’ journey distant from there. It was, however, subsequently seen that Micaiah did not contradict Elijah: Ahab fell in Ramoth Gilead, but his blood was licked by the dogs in Samaria, when they washed the king’s chariot there (1 Kings 22.38). See Josephus, *ibid.*; comp. also Sanhedrin 39b; Tosefta-Targum 1 Kings 22.34. Ahab’s sad end illustrates the truth of the sayings: “He who honors his enemy is like an ass”, and “He who honors his enemy will meet his death through him”. Ahab honored his enemy Ben-hadad, and was slain in the war against him; Alphabet of Ben Sira 10b–11a.

43. Tehillim 78, 350; Shemuel 11, 80. That it was Naaman’s missile which struck Ahab is also mentioned by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XVIII, 15.5; in Targum 2 Chron. 18.33; by Ephraem, 2 Kings 6.1. On the nature of this miracle, see footnote 44 on p. 917. Ahab was the only Jew slain in this battle; the suffering of the prophet Micaiah who had himself wounded to bring home the truth of his prophecy concerning the fatal result of the war against the Syrians (1 Kings 22.37; comp. note 36) atoned for the sins of Israel, who were spared further punishment. See Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 11, 30c. This passage, however, is very obscure, and its purport probably is that the suffering of the pious Jehoshaphat (see text on p. 987) had the atoning power.

44. Megillah 3a; Mo’ed Katan 28b; Targum Zech. 12.11. Comp., however, Sanhedrin 39b, where 1 Kings 22.36 is explained: And a jubilant song was heard through the battle arrays; the army rejoiced in the final execution of the divine punishment on Ahab.

45. Baba Kamma 17a. On the baring of the shoulders as a sign of mourning, see Büchler, *Zeitschrift für alttest. Wissenschaft*, XXI, 81. *seq.*

46. Sanhedrin, Mishnah 10.1. On the persons who have no share in the world to come, see footnote 100 on p. 906. Compare also footnote 65 on p. 922.

47. Konen 31. Compare with pp. 882 and 932.



## JEZEBEL

Wicked as Ahab was, his wife Jezebel was incomparably worse. Indeed, she is in great part the cause of his suffering, and Ahab realized it. Once Rabbi Levi expounded the Scriptural verse in which the iniquity of Ahab and the influence of his wife over him are discussed, dwelling upon the first half for two months. Ahab visited him in a dream, and reproached him with expatiating on the first half of the verse to the exclusion of the latter half. Thereupon the Rabbi took the second half of the verse as the text of his lectures for the next two months, demonstrating all the time that Jezebel was the instigator of Ahab's sins.<sup>48</sup> Her misdeeds are told in the Scriptures. To those there recounted must be added her practice of attaching unchaste images to Ahab's chariot for the purpose of stimulating his carnal desires. Therefore those parts of his chariot were spattered with his blood when he fell at the hand of the enemy.<sup>49</sup> She had her husband weighed every day, and the increase of his weight in gold she sacrificed to the idol.<sup>50</sup> Jezebel was not only the daughter and the wife of a king, she was also co-regent with her husband, the only reigning queen in Jewish history except Athaliah.<sup>51</sup>

Hardened sinner though Jezebel was, even she had good qualities. One of them was her capacity for sympathy with others in joy and sorrow. Whenever a funeral cortege passed the royal palace, Jezebel would descend and join the ranks of the mourners, and, also, when a marriage procession went by, she took part in the merry-making in honor of the bridal couple. By way of reward the limbs and organs with which she had executed these good deeds were left intact by the horses that trampled her to death in the portion of Jezreel.<sup>52</sup>

48. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28b. Comp. also ER 9, 49, and Babli 102b, where several authorities are quoted to the effect that Jezebel was mainly responsible for Ahab's wicked life.

49. Sanhedrin 39b.

50. Sanhedrin 100b, and somewhat different Yerushalmi 10, 28b. On the custom to devote to the Temple gold corresponding to one's increase in weight, see Yoma 38b; Sifra 26.29; Ekah 1, 86–87; comp. further 'Arakin Mishnah 5.1.

51. Esther R. 1.9. Among the heathen Semiramis and Vashti are considered the two reigning queens. Shemuel 2 (beginning) calls Jezebel "the daughter of a priest", while 1 Kings 16.31 describes her father as a king.

52. PRE 17.

## JORAM OF ISRAEL

Of Joram, the son of Ahab, it can only be said that he had his father's faults without his father's virtues. Ahab was liberal, Joram miserly, nay, he even indulged in usurious practices. From Obadiah, the pious protector of the prophets in hiding, he exacted a high rate of interest on the money needed for their support. As a consequence, at his death he fell pierced between his arms, the arrow going out at his heart, for he had stretched out his arms to receive usury, and had hardened his heart against compassion.<sup>53</sup> In his reign only one event deserves mention, his campaign against Moab, undertaken in alliance with the kings of Judah and Edom, and ending with a splendid victory won by the allied kings. Joram and his people, it need hardly be said, failed to derive the proper lesson from the war. Their disobedience to God's commands went on as before. The king of Moab, on the other hand, in his way sought to come nearer to God. He assembled his astrologers and inquired of them, why it was that the Moabites, successful in their warlike enterprises against other



nations, could not measure up to the standard of the Israelites. They explained that God was gracious to Israel, because his ancestor Abraham had been ready to sacrifice Isaac at His bidding. Then the Moabite king reasoned, that if God sets so high a value upon mere good intention, how much greater would be the reward for its actual execution, and he, who ordinarily was a sun worshipper, proceeded to sacrifice his son, the successor to the throne, to the God of Israel. God said: "The heathen do not know Me, and their wrong-doing arises from ignorance; but you, Israelites, know Me, and yet you act rebelliously toward Me."<sup>54</sup>

As a result of the seven years' famine, conditions in Samaria were frightful during the greater part of Joram's reign. In the first year everything stored in the houses was eaten up. In the second, the people supported themselves with what they could scrape together in the fields. The flesh of the clean animals sufficed for the third year; in the fourth the sufferers resorted to the unclean animals; in the fifth, to reptiles and insects; and in the sixth the monstrous thing happened that women crazed by hunger consumed their own children as food. But the acme of distress was reached in the seventh year, when men sought to gnaw the flesh from their own bones.<sup>55</sup> To these occurrences the prophecies of Joel apply, for he lived in the awful days of the famine in Joram's reign.

Luckily, God revealed to Joel at the same time how Israel would be rescued from the famine. The winter following the seven years of dearth brought no relief, for the rain held back until the first day of the month of Nisan. When it began to fall, the prophet said to the people, "Go forth and sow seed!" But they remonstrated with him, "Shall one who hath saved a measure of wheat or two measures of barley not use his store for food and live, rather than for seed and die?" But the prophet urged them, "Nay, go

forth and sow seed." And a miracle happened. In the ant hills and mouse holes, they found enough grain for seed, and they cast it upon the ground on the second, the third, and the fourth day of Nisan. On the fifth day of the month rain fell again. Eleven days later the grain was ripe, and the offering of the 'Omer could be brought at the appointed time, on the sixteenth of the month. Of this the Psalmist was thinking when he said, "They that sow in tears shall reap in joy."<sup>56</sup>

---

53. ShR 31.9; Tan. Mishpatim 9; Tehillim 15.6. Compare with pp. 1025–1026. According to Gaster, *Exempla*, p. 185, however, Joram was wicked only "from without", but within he was good, as shown by the sympathy he felt with the sufferings of his people. Comp. 2 Kings 6.30.

54. PK 2, 13; Tan. Ki-Tissa 9; Tosefta-Targum 2 Kings 3.27; Ta'anit 4a; Midrash Tannaim 100; Sifre D., 148; Ephraem, 2 Kings 3.26–27; Jerome, Micah 6.7; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 3.2. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 83–86. According to one view (Sanhedrin 39b), the king of Moab brought his son as a sacrifice to an idol and not to God.

55. Ta'anit 5a; comp. also PR 29, 136b–137a; Sanhedrin 12a; Tosefta 2.9; Yerushalmi 1, 18d; Nedarim 6, 39d.

56. Ta'anit 45a; Yerushalmi 1, 64a. Others identify this Joel with Joel the son of Samuel (see footnote 46 on p. 895), whereas Seder 'Olam 20 (but see Ratner, *ad loc.*) maintains that Joel, Nahum, and Habakkuk were contemporaries of Manasseh. A fourth view found in PK 16.128b declares Joel, Amos, Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechariah, Malachi, Ezekiel, and Jeremiah to have been the eight post-exilic prophets. The reading is not certain; some texts have Micah and Habakkuk instead of Joel and Jeremiah. Jerome, Joel 1.1, very likely on the authority of his Jewish masters, maintains that Joel lived shortly after Hosea, and therefore their books follow one another. Besides the literal interpretation of Joel's prophecy, according to which a grievous famine took place in his time which was caused by the locust (see Ta'anit, *loc. cit.*, and Jerome 1.6), there is also a symbolic explanation maintaining that the prophet refers to the devastations brought upon Israel by the "four kingdoms" (comp. Index, s. v.), and therefore he speaks of four kinds of locusts. See Targum and Jerome on Joel 1.4 (he writes: *Hebraei interpretantur*); WR 5.3. Comp. Rahmer, *Die Commentarii zu den XII Kleinen Propheten*, Joel,



4–6.; footnote 20 on p. 1039. On the etymologies of the names Joel and his father Pethuel given by Jerome, Joel 1.1, see Rahmer, *ibid.*, 1–3, and the references in footnote 20 on p. 1039. For an interesting description of the different kinds of locusts which devastated the Holy Land in Joel's times, see PRK 43a. Comp. also MHG II, 80. As to this statement in PRK that the heart of a certain kind of locust has the shape of the letter Heth, it is to be remarked that to this day this kind of locust is believed to be the only one permitted to be eaten by the Jews of North Africa. On

the war against Moab, which took place during the reign of Joram, the contemporary of Joel, see text on p. 849. This war was caused by the inhuman cruelty of the Moabite king, who had the bodies of the Edomite kings exhumed and their bones burned to lime. God could not permit such an evil deed to pass unpunished, and the Moabites suffered a crushing defeat at the hands of the allied kings. See Baba Batra 22a; Targum and Jerome (who introduces it by *tradunt Hebraei*) on Amos 2.1. Comp. also Rashi, *ad loc.*



## XVIII ELIJAH

### ELIJAH BEFORE HIS TRANSLATION

**T**he Biblical account of the prophet Elijah,<sup>1</sup> of his life and work during the reigns of Ahab and his son Joram, gives but a faint idea of a personage whose history begins with Israel's sojourn in Egypt, and will end only when Israel, under the leadership of the Messiah, shall have taken up his abode again in Palestine.

The Scripture tells us only the name of Elijah's home,<sup>2</sup> but it must be added that he was a priest, identical with Phinehas,<sup>3</sup> the priest zealous for the honor of God, who distinguished himself on the journey through the desert, and played a prominent rôle again in the time of the Judges.<sup>4</sup>

Elijah's first appearance in the period of the Kings was his meeting with Ahab in the house of Hiel, the Beth-elite, the commander-in-chief of the Israelitish army, whom he was visiting to condole with him for the loss of his sons. God Himself had charged the prophet to offer sympathy to Hiel, whose position demanded that honor be paid him. Elijah at first refused to seek out the sinner who had violated the Divine injunction against rebuilding Jericho, for he said that the blasphemous talk of such evil-doers always called forth his rage. Thereupon God

promised Elijah that fulfilment should attend whatever imprecation might in his wrath escape him against the godless for their unholy speech. As the prophet entered the general's house, he heard Hiel utter these words: "Blessed be the Lord God of the pious, who grants fulfilment to the words of the pious." Hiel thus acknowledged that he had been justly afflicted with Joshua's curse against him who should rebuild Jericho.

Ahab mockingly asked him: "Was not Moses greater than Joshua, and did he not say that God would let no rain descend upon the earth, if Israel served and worshipped idols? There is not an idol known to which I do not pay homage, yet we enjoy all that is goodly and desirable. Dost thou believe that if the words of Moses remain unfulfilled, the words of Joshua will come true?" Elijah rejoined: "Be it as thou sayest: 'As the Lord, the God of Israel liveth, before whom I stand, there shall not be dew nor rain these years, but according to my word.' " In pursuance of His promise, God could not but execute the words of Elijah, and neither dew nor rain watered the land.<sup>5</sup>

A famine ensued, and Ahab sought to wreak his vengeance upon the prophet. To escape the king's persecutions, Elijah hid himself. He was sustained with food brought from the larder of



the pious king Jehoshaphat by ravens,<sup>6</sup> which at the same time would not approach near to the house of the iniquitous Ahab.<sup>7</sup>

God, who has compassion even upon the impious, tried to induce the prophet to release Him from His promise. To influence him He made the brook run dry<sup>8</sup> whence Elijah drew water for his thirst. As this failed to soften the inflexible prophet, God resorted to the expedient of causing him pain through the death of the son of the widow with whom Elijah was abiding, and by whom he had been received with great honor. When her son, who was later to be known as the prophet Jonah,<sup>9</sup> died, she thought God had formerly been gracious to her on account of her great worthiness as compared with the merits of her neighbors and of the inhabitants of the city, and now He had abandoned her, because her virtues had become as naught in the presence of the great prophet.<sup>10</sup> In his distress Elijah supplicated God to revive the child.<sup>11</sup> Now God had the prophet in His power. He could give heed unto Elijah's prayer only provided the prophet released Him from the promise about a drought, for resuscitation from death is brought about by means of dew, and this remedy was precluded so long as Elijah kept God to His word withholding dew and rain from the earth.<sup>12</sup> Elijah saw there was nothing for it but to yield. However, he first betook himself to Ahab with the purpose of overcoming the obduracy of the people, upon whom the famine had made no impression. Manifest wonders displayed before their eyes were to teach them wisdom. The combat between God and Baal took place on Carmel. The mount that had esteemed itself the proper place for the greatest event in Israelitish history, the revelation of the law, was compensated, by the many miracles now performed upon it, for its disappointment at Sinai's having been preferred to it.<sup>13</sup>

The first wonder occurred in connection with the choice of the bullocks. According to Elijah's arrangement with Ahab, one was to be sacrificed to God, and then one to Baal. A pair of twins, raised together, were brought before the contestants, and it was decided by lot which belonged to God and which to Baal. Elijah had no difficulty with his offering; quickly he led it to his altar. But all the priests of Baal, eight hundred and fifty in number, could not make their victim stir a foot. When Elijah began to speak persuasively to the bullock of Baal, urging it to follow the idolatrous priests, it opened its mouth and said: "We two, yonder bullock and myself, came forth from the same womb, we took our food from the same manger, and now he has been destined for God, as an instrument for the glorification of the Divine Name, while I am to be used for Baal, as an instrument to enrage my Creator." Elijah urged: "Do thou but follow the priests of Baal that they may have no excuse, and then thou wilt have a share in that glorification of God for which my bullock will be used." The bullock: "So dost thou advise, but I swear I will not move from the spot, unless thou with thine own hands wilt deliver me up." Elijah thereupon led the bullock to the priests of Baal.<sup>14</sup>

In spite of this miracle, the priests sought to deceive the people. They undermined the altar, and Hiel hid himself under it with the purpose of igniting a fire at the mention of the word Baal. But God sent a serpent to kill him.<sup>15</sup> In vain the false priests cried and called, Baal! Baal!—the expected flame did not shoot up. To add to the confusion of the idolaters, God had imposed silence upon the whole world. The powers of the upper and of the nether regions were dumb, the universe seemed deserted and desolate, as if without a living creature. If a single sound had made itself heard, the priests would have said, "It is the voice of Baal."<sup>16</sup>



That all preparations might be completed in one day,—the erection of the altar, the digging of the trench, and whatever else was necessary,—Elijah commanded the sun to stand still. “For Joshua,” he said, “thou didst stand still that Israel might conquer his enemies; now stand thou still, neither for my sake, nor for the sake of Israel, but that the Name of God may be exalted.” And the sun obeyed his words.<sup>17</sup>

Toward evening Elijah summoned his disciple Elisha, and bade him pour water over his hands. A miracle happened. Water flowed out from Elijah’s fingers until the whole trench was filled.<sup>18</sup> Then the prophet prayed to God to let fire descend, but in such wise that the people would know it to be a wonder from heaven, and not think it a magician’s trick.<sup>19</sup> He spoke: “Lord of the world, Thou wilt send me as a messenger ‘at the end of time’, but if my words do not meet with fulfilment now, the Jews cannot be expected to believe me in the latter days.”<sup>20</sup> His pleading was heard on high, and fire fell from heaven upon the altar, a fire that not only consumed what it touched, but also licked up the water.<sup>21</sup> Nor was that all; his prayer for rain was also granted. Scarcely had these words dropped from his lips, “Though we have no other merits, yet remember the sign of the covenant which the Israelites bear upon their bodies,” when the rain fell to earth.<sup>22</sup>

In spite of all these miracles, the people persisted in their idolatrous ways and thoughts. Even the seven thousand who had not bowed down unto Baal were unworthy sons of Israel, for they paid homage to the golden calves of Jeroboam.<sup>23</sup>

The misdeeds of the people had swelled to such number that they could no longer reckon upon “the merits of the fathers” to intercede for them; they had overdrawn their account.<sup>24</sup> When they sank to the point of degradation at which they gave up the sign of the covenant, Elijah could control his wrath no longer, and he ac-

cused Israel before God.<sup>25</sup> In the cleft of the rock in which God had once aforesaid appeared to Moses, and revealed Himself as compassionate and long-suffering, He now met with Elijah,<sup>26</sup> and conveyed to him, by various signs, that it had been better to defend Israel than accuse him. But Elijah in his zeal for God was inexorable. Then God commanded him to appoint Elisha as his successor, for He said: “I cannot do as thou wouldst have me.”<sup>27</sup> Furthermore God charged him: “Instead of accusing My children, journey to Damascus, where the Gentiles have an idol for each day of the year. Though Israel hath thrown down My altars and slain My prophets, what concern is it of thine?”<sup>28</sup>

The four phenomena that God sent before His appearance—wind,<sup>29</sup> earthquake, fire, and a still small voice—were to instruct Elijah about the destiny of man. God told Elijah that these four represent the worlds through which man must pass: the first stands for this world, fleeting as the wind; the earthquake is the day of death, which makes the human body to tremble and quake; fire is the tribunal in Gehenna, and the still small voice is the Last Judgment, when there will be none but God alone.<sup>30</sup>

About three years<sup>31</sup> later, Elijah was taken up into heaven,<sup>32</sup> but not without first undergoing a struggle with the Angel of Death. He refused to let Elijah enter heaven at his translation, on the ground that he exercised jurisdiction over all mankind, Elijah not excepted. God maintained that at the creation of heaven and earth He had explicitly ordered the Angel of Death to grant entrance to the living prophet, but the Angel of Death insisted that by Elijah’s translation God had given just cause for complaint to all other men, who could not escape the doom of death. Thereupon God: “Elijah is not like other men. He is able to banish thee from the world, only thou dost not recognize his strength.” With the consent of God, a combat took place be-



tween Elijah and the Angel of Death. The prophet was victorious, and, if God had not restrained him, he would have annihilated his opponent. Holding his defeated enemy under his feet, Elijah ascended heavenward.<sup>33</sup>

In heaven he goes on living for all time.<sup>34</sup> There he sits recording the deeds of men<sup>35</sup> and the chronicles of the world.<sup>36</sup> He has another office besides. He is the Psychopomp, whose duty is to stand at the cross-ways in Paradise and guide the pious to their appointed places;<sup>37</sup> who brings the souls of sinners up from Gehenna at the approach of the Sabbath, and leads them back again to their merited punishment when the day of rest is about to depart; and who conducts these same souls, after they have atoned for their sins, to the place of everlasting bliss.<sup>38</sup>

Elijah's miraculous deeds will be better understood if we remember that he had been an angel from the very first, even before the end of his earthly career. When God was about to create man, Elijah said to Him: "Master of the world! If it be pleasing in Thine eyes, I will descend to earth, and make myself serviceable to the sons of men." Then God changed his angel name, and later, under Ahab, He permitted him to abide among men on earth, that he might convert the world to the belief that "the Lord is God." His mission fulfilled, God took him again into heaven, and said to him: "Be thou the guardian spirit of My children forever, and spread the belief in Me abroad in the whole world."<sup>39</sup>

His angel name is Sandalphon,<sup>40</sup> one of the greatest and mightiest of the fiery angel host. As such it is his duty to wreath garlands for God out of the prayers sent aloft by Israel.<sup>41</sup> Besides, he must offer up sacrifices in the invisible sanctuary, for the Temple was destroyed only apparently; in reality, it went on existing, hidden from the sight of ordinary mortals.<sup>42</sup>

1. Popularly he is always called Elijah the Prophet (אליהו הנביא); but in the talmudic-midrashic literature Elijah alone, without any qualification, is of more frequent occurrence. The eulogy זכור לטוב "remembered to good" is often added to his name; comp. Berakot 3a; Yerushalmi Terumot 1, 40a; PK 18, 136a; PR 22, 111b; Tan. B. I, 20; II, 7 and 28. In Ecclus. 45.1 this eulogy is added to the name of Moses. See Zunz, *Zur Geschichte*, 321, *seq.*

2. Elijah was one of the original inhabitants of Jabesh-Gilead who escaped the war of annihilation waged against this city by the rest of Israel (see Jud. 21.10, *seq.*), and who called themselves "the inhabitants of Gilead" when they returned to their native city after the war, to indicate the difference between themselves and the new settlers. See Tosafot Ta'anit 3a (beginning ויאמר), and, without giving his authority, Bahur, *Tishbi*, s. v. תשבי. Elijah never married, and therefore nothing is said in Scripture concerning his family. Zohar Hadash Ruth 2.1 (beginning ר' נתן); Ps.-Matthew 7. Comp. (against it?) the responsum of R. Judai Gaon in תשובות הגאונים (Lyck edition, 19, No. 45); Mishle 30, 105.

3. Baba Mezi'a 114b and Tosefta-Targum 1 Kings 17.13 consider Elijah to have been a priest, but do not identify him with Phinehas. This view is shared by several Church Fathers; comp. Aphraates, 314; Epiphanius, *Haereses*, 55.3; ps.-Epiphanius, *De Vitis Prophetarum*, s. v.; the Armenian pseudepigraph in *Apocrypha Anecdota* II. 164. The identification of Elijah with Phinehas is first met with in ps.-Philo, 48; 48, 1–2, and this view prevails in the later Midrashim; comp. PRE 44; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 6.18; Num. 25.12; Deut. 30.4; BaR 21.3; Tan. Pinehas 1. Comp. Buber on Tan. B. III, 151, note 19. This identification is very likely presupposed in Sifre N., 131. Compare with pp. 821–822; text on p. 882, and the notes appertaining to them. The tribes of Gad and Benjamin compete with the tribe of Levi for the honor of counting Elijah as theirs; see BR 71.9; ShR 40.4; ER 18, 97; EZ 15, 199. See the full discussion on this point by Friedmann, introduction to ER 2–12, and Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, 76–80. The designation of Elijah as "the disciple of Moses" in talmudic literature (Tosefta Sotah 4.8 and Eduyyot, end; Mekilta Beshallah פתיחתא, 24b) is not to be taken literally, since all prophets may aptly be described as the disciples of Moses, "the father of prophecy"; see footnote 68 on p. 484. The real teacher of Elijah was Ahijah the Shilonite; see Yerushalmi 'Erubin 5, 22a, in accordance with Seder 'Olam 1 and Baba Batra 121b; compare footnote 4 on p. 981. The description of Elijah as התשבי מתשבי גלעד in 1 Kings 17.1 is said in PRE *loc. cit.*, to mean: Elijah whose name was changed (from Pinehas) and who is destined to



bring Israel back to their heavenly Father. The identification of Elijah with Phinehas is also known to Origen, John 6.7; Petrus Damascus (Migne's edition CXLV, 382B); ps.-Jerome on 1 Sam. 2.27. Comp. Ginzberg, *op. cit.* On the identification of Elijah with Khadir by the Arabs, see Friedlaender, *Die Chadhirlegende*, Index, s. v. "Elias".

4. Phinehas is "the angel of God" mentioned in Jud. 2.1, as well as the prophet in Jud. 6.8. See Seder 'Olam 20; WR 1. Comp. also Ratner's remark on the Seder 'Olam passage referred to. See also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, V, 2.1; footnote 22 on p. 860.

5. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28b; Babli 113a; Tosefta-Targum 1 Kings 16.34; EZ 8, 185–186; 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 36a–36b (Addenda); Midrash 'Aseret Melakim 41. It was love for his people that prompted Elijah to request God for the famine; he hoped that the sufferings of the people would turn God's wrath from them; PR 44, 183a. The people mocked at Elijah, not only on account of the unfulfilled threat hurled at them by him because of their wickedness, but they also derided him for his looks. Elijah was a hairy man (2 Kings 1.8), and when they saw him they would say: "Behold, Elijah curls his locks." PR 26, 129a. Footnot 32 on pp. 1042–1043.

6. Some early rationalists, however, deny that Elijah was fed by ravens; they explain ערבים (1 Kings 17.4) to mean "the inhabitants of the city of Oreb"; BR 33.5; Hulin 5a; Jerome on Is. 15.7 (who gives it as Jewish tradition). Comp. also Kimhi on 1 Kings, *loc. cit.*, who quotes the opinion according to which ערבים denotes "merchants".

7. Tan. B. IV, 165; Tan. Mass'e 8; BaR 23.9; WR 19.1. In opposition to this view it is said in Sanhedrin 113b and Hulin 5a, as well as in BR 33.5, that the ravens brought the meat from the slaughter house of Ahab. According to Aphraates, 314, the ravens brought Elijah his priestly portion (comp. note 3) from the Temple of Jerusalem. Aphraates very likely follows a Jewish tradition.

8. Sanhedrin 113b. When God sent Elijah to inform Ahab of the impending rain (1 Kings 18.1), the prophet exclaimed: "How could rain come, when Israel did not repent of his sins?" God replied: "I sent rain upon the earth when Adam was the only man on it." See Tehillim 117, 480.

9. Yerushalmi Sukkah 5, 55a; PRE 33; Jerome, introduction to his commentary on Jonah (he gives the midrashic interpretation of the name Amittai אמיתי, as being connected with אמת in 1 Kings 17.24); BR 98.11. Koheleth R. 8.10 maintains, on the other hand, that the son of the widow at Zarephath was a sinner. Comp. also Luke 4.26, where emphasis is laid on the fact that this widow was not a Jewess. The sources cited at the beginning of this note are of the opinion that she belonged to the tribe of Asher and her deceased husband to that of Zebulun. As to the view that the son of the widow was the future "Messiah

of the tribe of Joseph", see footnote 35 on p. 996. The midrashic basis for this statement is found in the words of Elijah addressed to the widow to the effect that he should receive his portion first and afterwards her son should receive his (see 1 Kings 17.13). By this he wished to convey that at the end of time he would appear as the forerunner of the "Messiah of the tribe of Joseph". According to Tosefta-Targum, *ad loc.*, however, Elijah told the widow that he, being a priest, must receive his priestly portion first (see Num. 15.20), before she and her son could partake of the bread. See ER 18, 97–98 (read לבשר, instead of לבלל), where both explanations of 1 Kings, *loc. cit.*, are given.

10. BR 50.11; PR 3, 10a. Comp., however, PRE 33, which mentions the insinuating reproaches made by the widow of Zarephath to Elijah for having taken his lodging with her, a single and unprotected woman.

11. A man owes his life to one who opens his door hospitably for him to enter. Hence Elijah exercised his resuscitating powers not upon his own dead parents, but upon the child of the hostess; ShR 4.8.

12. Yerushalmi Berakot 5, 9b; Ta'anit 1, 63d. There is a different version of this Haggadah: God entrusted the "key of rain" to Elijah who asked for it, and God Himself retained the "keys of quickening the dead" and the "key of birth". When Elijah further requested that the "key of quickening the dead" should also be given to him, God said that it was not seemly that the master should hold only one key and the servant two. Whereupon Elijah returned the "key of rain". See Sanhedrin 113a; DR 7.6; PR 42, 178a; Tehillim 78, 346; BR 73.4; Ta'anit 2b; Tan. B. I 106 (which says: There are four keys with which God does not part: the key of sustenance, the key of rain, the key of graves, and the key of the womb of a barren woman), 139, and 135; Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 28.12; 2 Targum Yerushalmi Gen. 30.22; BHM VI, 62. Compare footnote 177 on p. 286. On the dew of resurrection of the dead, see text on pp. 6, 267; text on pp. 1101–1102. As to the similarity of the "reviving of the soil by rain" and the quickening of the dead, see Ta'anit 7a; vol. V, p. 119, note 113.

13. Tehillim 68, 318. Compare with p. 595. The altar upon which Elijah sacrificed had been erected by Saul on his victorious return from the war against Amalek, but was destroyed by the sinful inhabitants of Samaria, and Elijah "repaired the altar of the Lord" (see 1 Kings 18.30). See quotation from an unknown Midrash by Kimhi on 1 Sam. 15.12. Compare footnote 64 on p. 899. The law forbidding to sacrifice outside the Temple of Jerusalem was suspended temporarily by Elijah at the command of God. Prophets have no right to abrogate the law, but only to suspend it temporarily; Yebamot 90b; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 2, 65a; WR 23.9; Shemuel 13 (end); BaR 14.1, 113a; Tan. B. IV, 41. Comp. also the references cited by Buber on Shemuel, *loc. cit.*, and footnote 8 on p. 841. According to



an unknown Midrash quoted in Midrash Aggada Deut. 12.9, Elijah permitted himself the temporary suspension of this law on the strength of the words of God spoken to Jacob when He announced to him the approaching birth of Benjamin. He said: "A nation among a multitude of Gentiles shall be of thee (Gen. 35.11; **גוים** ו**בקהל** = **וקהל** = Gentiles, *i. e.*, idolatrous and sinful Jews). By these words God revealed to Jacob that Benjamin would have a son (Elijah belonged to this tribe, see note 3), who would perform a great deed among a multitude of Gentiles (= sinful Jews) and would erect an altar outside the holy place.

14. Tan. B. IV, 165; Tan. Mass'e 8; BaR 23.9. On the talking of animals, see text on pp. 13, 37.

15. Yalkut II, 214 on 1 Kings 18.26, giving **מדרש** as source (see the first edition); ShR 15.15; PR 14, 13a. This Haggadah is also known to Christian authors; see Ephraem, 1 Kings 18.19; Chrysostomus, *In Petram et Eliam* I, 765 (edition Fronto Ducaeus); Armenian pseud-epigraph, *Apocrypha Anecdota*, II, 164. Comp. Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, I, 80–82.

16. ShR 29 (end). On a similar "silence of nature", see text on p. 604.

17. Aggadat Bereshit 76, 148, and from there in Yalkut II, 215, on 1 Kings 18 (first inserted in Leghorn edition, and accordingly R. Elijah ha-Kohen in his *Midrash Talpiyyot*, s. v. **אליהו** quotes this Haggadah from Yalkut).

18. ER 17, 87. Here it is also stated that the miracle or rather the miracles (besides the fire, the small quantity of water poured by Elisha over the hands of Elijah caused ten springs to gush forth) performed by Elijah brought Israel back to God; they gave up their idolatry, and became God-fearing with all their hearts. The afternoon prayer (Minhah) is the most acceptable to God, and it was therefore in this Minhah prayer that Elijah besought God to grant his wishes. See Berakot 6b and Aggadat Bereshit 76, 147, with reference to **המנחה בעלות** (1 Kings 18.36). He began his prayer with the words: "O Lord, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel". He did not employ the liturgical formula: "God of Abraham, God of Isaac, God of Jacob" (=Israel), that the people should not be misled to believe that there are three gods (anti-Christian). He therefore did not repeat the word God. Elijah further said: "If Thou grantest not my request for the merits of the fathers, do it for the merits of the tribes." See Aggadat Bereshit 76, 148–149. On the merits of the tribes see footnote 3 on p. 433. Elijah, in his great love for Israel, spoke the very bold words: "For Thou didst turn their heart backward" (1 Kings 18. 37), as if God were the cause of Israel's apostasy. See Berakot 31b–32a (which reads: God admitted that He was partly the cause of man's sin, by having created the evil inclination); Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28c (top); Tan. B. IV, 96; BaR 18.12. Compare footnote 571 on p. 721.

Other explanations of 1 Kings 18.37 are given in Targum and Kimhi, *ad loc.*

19. Berakot 9b. It is an interpretation of Elijah's double exclamation, "Hear me, hear me!" (1 Kings 18.37). Another interpretation of the double exclamation is found in Yerushalmi Ta'anit 2, 65d: Elijah said: "Hear me for my own merits; hear me for the merits of my disciples." Targum, *ad loc.*, and Aggadat Bereshit 76, 149 offer still other explanations. As to Elijah's desire not to have the miracle misinterpreted by the people, see also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 13.5.

20. Midrash Shir 25a; Aggadat Bereshit 76, 149.

21. Yoma 21b, where six different kinds of fire are enumerated; compare with p. 13. "The majority decides everything"; the fire would never have fallen from heaven, were it not for the fact that the majority of Israel exclaimed on mount Carmel: "The Lord, He is God"; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 3, 66c (towards the end).

22. WR 31.4; Shir 7.6; PK 30, 192a, and Koheleth 11.2, which read: Elijah prayed that God might remember to Israel the merits of observing the commandments of circumcision and of Sabbath. The words: "and Elijah put his face between his knees" (1 Kings 18.42), are thus explained to mean that he besought God to remember the sign of the covenant, comp. WR *loc. cit.* As to the observance of the Sabbath by the "generation of Ahab", see footnote 35 on p. 987. Elijah did not for a moment forget the honor due to a king, and he ran before Ahab's chariot as a precursor; Mekilta Bo 13, 14a, with reference to 1 Kings 18, 46. Comp., on the other hand, Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 13.6, which reads: And the prophet was under a *divine fury*, and ran along with the king's chariot. Against this interpretation of **יד יי**, see Targum *ad loc.*

23. Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 219; they are identified with Gideon warriors (their descendants? Jud. 7.5) in Tan. B. I, 138. Comp. also Jerome, Obadiah 1.1, who quotes a Jewish tradition that the hundred prophets hidden by Obadiah (1 Kings 18.4) did not "bow unto Baal", and belonged to the seven thousand whom "Elijah is accused of having ignored". On this rather obscure statement, see Rahmer, *Die Commentarii zu den XII Propheten, Obadja*, 2–3.

24. WR 36 (end); Shabbat 55a; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 27d; Aggadat Bereshit 10, 24. These sources quote different views as to the time when the "merits of the fathers" ceased to be effective. The times of Elijah, Hosea, Jehoahaz, and Hezekiah are mentioned in this connection. On the different explanations given by the medieval authorities of the statement about the "end of the merits of the fathers", see Tosafot Shabbat, *loc. cit.* (beginning **ושמואל**); Or Zarua I, 39, No. 106, and II, 12b, No. 23. Comp. also Index, s. v. "Fathers, Merits of".



25. PRE 29. On the zeal displayed by Elijah for the observance of the law of circumcision, see note 103. Elijah was zealous for the honor of God, and hence was ready to appear as the accuser of Israel before God (comp., however, note 18). Jonah was zealous for the honor of Israel, but less so for the honor of God (see footnote 27 on p. 1040). Jeremiah, however, was as zealous for the honor of God as for the honor of His people. Jeremiah therefore remained a prophet all his life, while Elijah was commanded to appoint Elisha as his successor, and Jonah received but two revelations from God. See Mekilta Bo (פתיחתא), 2a; ARN 47, 129. Elijah had no fear of man, and did not flee to the desert to escape Jezebel, but to ascertain his fate at the holy mount of Horeb, for he had noticed that the angel of death had no power over him, and was anxious to know what God had decided concerning his person. See Zohar I, 209a.

26. Megillah 19b; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 13.7. Compare with p. 630.

27. Shir 1.6; Aggadat Shir 8, 45; EZ 8, 186; Zohar I, 209a–209b; II, 90b; Zohar Hadash, Noah (towards the end, beginning יהושע ר' אליעזר).

28. Shir 1.6.

29. This wind was so strong that it nearly brought about the ruin of the entire world, which was swept by it. Of the same violence, but limited to certain places, were the winds which God sent on the sea when Jonah was on his way to Tarshish (Jonah 1.4), and the wind which “smote the four corners of the house” in which Job’s sons were (Job. 1.19; text on p. 457). Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 13c; BR 24.4; WR 15.1; Koheleth 1.6; Koheleth Z., 87.

30. Tan. Pekude 2; Yezirat ha-Walad 155. According to Targum 1 Kings 19.11, *seq.*, God first showed Elijah three different classes of angels (“angels of wind”, “angels of storm”, and “angels of fire”), and then appeared Himself. Comp. also Zohar I, 16; 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 22a; Berakot 58a. On the four worlds through which man must pass, see Ginzberg, *Hazofeh* IV, 27, and 98. Comp. also 4 Ezra 3.19, which reads: And Thy glory went through the four gates of fire, earthquake, wind, and cold. It is obvious that this author, in describing the theophany at Horeb on the occasion of the revelation of the Torah, uses as his pattern the theophany at Horeb in the time of Elijah. Accordingly, *gelu* “cold” is out of place here, and *vox* “voice” must be one of the four gates. The misreading of קל “voice” for קר “cold” in the Hebrew original is responsible for the present text.

31. Seder ‘Olam 17. On the day on which Elijah was taken from this world, the first king of Edom was appointed; Shir 1.6; Yerushalmi ‘Abodah Zorah 1.39c.

32. Septuagint, as well as Targum, on 2 Kings 2.1, seems to oppose the popular view of Elijah’s translation to heaven. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 2.2, explicitly states: Elijah disappeared from among men . . . It is written in the Sacred

Books that they (*i. e.* Elijah and Enoch) disappeared, but so that nobody knew that they died. R. Jose, living a generation after Josephus, definitely states that neither Moses (at the time of the revelation on Sinai) nor Elijah ascended to heaven (Mekilta Bahodesh 4, 65b; Sukkah 5a), and according to the Talmud, it is the opinion of this Tanna that the temporary abode of Moses and the permanent one of Elijah are to be looked for in the close vicinity of heaven but not in heaven itself. In ‘Erubin 45a it is unqualifiedly assumed that Elijah “dwells on high”, which refers to heaven, or the vicinity thereof. Paradise is often spoken of as the abode (permanent?) of Elijah (comp., *e. g.*, Derek Erez Z. 1, and the numerous parallel passages cited by Tawrogi concerning Elijah and the others who entered paradise alive; text on pp. 1001, 1010), but in view of the confused notions of the location of paradise prevailing in the mid-rashic and talmudic writings, this does not give us any clue as to whether these passages assume Elijah’s translation to heaven or not. That Elijah never “tasted death” (on this phrase see BR 21.5; Mark 9.1; Hebrews 2.9), but continued “to live for ever”, is the almost unanimous opinion of the talmudic-midrashic literature and (disregarding a few rationalists; see *e. g.*, Kimhi on Malachi 3.23) also of the medieval Jews; see Seder ‘Olam 2 and 17; Mo’ed Katan 26a; BR, *loc. cit.*; PK 9, 76a; WR 27.4; Koheleth 3.16; Tan. B. III, 90; Tan. Emor 9. Comp. also the references cited by Friedmann, introduction to ER 14–20. His statement that some of the old sources refer to the translation of Elijah’s soul, but not to his body, is a rationalistic conception entirely alien to the old sources, and there can be no doubt that Elijah was considered to have been translated, body and soul, to a place beyond the earth, that is, to heaven or paradise, or in the vicinity of heaven. Zohar II, 197a, asserts that Elijah received a celestial body which enabled him to ascend to heaven; but when he descends to earth to reveal himself, he resumes his terrestrial body. Comp. Index, s. v. “Celestial Garments”. See also notes 34 and 37. For Christian views concerning Elijah’s translation, see Bollandi, *Acta Sanctorum*, July 20, V, 1.9. There is no cogent reason for assuming that the view of R. Jose mentioned above was prompted by an anti-Christian tendency, to combat the Christian doctrine of the ascension of Jesus. This view seems to be shared not only by Septuagint but also by Ecclesi. 48.9, where the Hebrew text has מעלה and מרום but not שמים “heaven”, and there can hardly be any doubt that the substitution of the words “upwards” and “on high” for שמים “heaven” was intentional.

33. Zohar Hadash Ruth 1.1 (beginning משכיל מאמר רבי אשרי). On the struggle between Elijah and Samael on the Day of Judgment, see footnote 275 on p. 304, and comp. also the struggle between Moses and Samael in text on pp. 827, *seq.*



34. Seder 'Olam 1; Baba Batra 121b; 2 ARN 38, 103. See the full discussion on Elijah's immortality in note 32, and comp. further the words quoted from ps.-Philo in text on p. 882.

35. WR 34.8; Ruth R. 2.14, which reads: Elijah and the Messiah write down the good deeds of man, and God affixes His seal to this record. See also Kiddushin 70a, which says: Every marriage is recorded in writing by Elijah (Rashi's explanation of the contents of the writing is unacceptable, as may be seen from the parallel passages cited further below; the sentence **אוי לו**, etc. is a remark by the author of the Baraita and not the text of the writing of Elijah), and God affixes His seal to the marriage record. He who marries a woman not worthy of him (*i. e.*, not of pure descent) will be put in stocks on the pole by Elijah, and flogged by God. Some quote a similar statement from Abot 5 (end; comp. Taylor, *Appendix to Sayings of the Jewish Fathers*, 172), but this addition to Abot is found in none of the extant texts of Abot. See also Derek Erez R. 1, which reads: He who marries a woman worthy of him is loved by God and kissed by Elijah; but he who marries an unworthy woman is hated by God and flogged by Elijah. For the correct text of Derek Erez see *Halakot Gedolot* 52b (Hildesheimer's edition, 254). That Elijah in these passages is not the prophet Elijah, but an angel called Elijah, is maintained by Rashi to Kiddushin, *loc. cit.* But there is no good reason for this assumption. Elijah's zeal for the purity of the family is perhaps connected with the view that he is identified with Phinehas who slew a man and a woman for their unchastity. Comp. also note 107.

36. Seder 'Olam 7. It is possible that the phrase **מעשה כל הדורות** means: "the deeds of all living". Comp. the quotations from WR and Ruth R. in the preceding note.

37. PRE 15, which reads: Elijah sits at the crossways; one road is that of justice, the other of love. On the arrival of a righteous person, Elijah calls out: "Open ye the gates, that the righteous nation that keepeth faithfulness may enter in."

38. Yalkut Reubeni (Addenda), s. v. **אליה**. See also MaHaRil, *hilkot shabbat* (end; Frankfort edition, 76b), where it is said that Elijah is seated under the tree of life and records the good deeds of those who observe the Sabbath. MaHaRil cites Tosafot (or Tosefta?) as his source; but in Tosafot on the Talmud and Pentateuch (and still less in the Tosefta) no such passage can be found. I doubt whether he is right in connecting the popular belief as to Elijah's occupation at that hour with the custom of reciting piyyutim in his praise at the conclusion of the Sabbath. For further details, see Kohn, *Monatsschrift*, XII, 287–288.

39. R. Moses De Leon quoted by Cordovero, *Pardes*, 24.4, whence Yalkut Reubeni, Gen. 1.26, 9d (Amsterdam edition). This conception cannot be found in any old source, but its resemblance to the teaching of the Mel-

chizedekites is so striking that one is warranted in assuming a connection between them. It must be borne in mind that Ambrosius (*De Fide*, III, 11.88; Migne's edition XVI, 607) assigns a Jewish origin to the doctrine of the Melchizedekites. It is also noteworthy that Epiphanius, in his polemic against this sect (*Haer.* 15; Migne's edition XLI, 976), uses the expression "As for Elijah, we have the following tradition about his descent, etc." Epiphanius, as may be seen, deemed it necessary to prove, in opposition to the Melchizedekites, that Elijah was not an angel sent from heaven. The designation of Elijah as an "angel in heaven" **מלאך בשמים** (in Zohar Hadash Ruth 2.1, beginning **רבי נתן שאל**) refers to his state after his translation. The celestial body of Elijah spoken of in Zohar II, 197, likewise refers to his body after his translation.

40. *Emek ha-Melek*, 175c. Sandalphon is explained as a compound of **σύν** = "with" and **ἀδελφός** = "brother"; Elijah is the "brother" of Enoch-Metatron, both of whom were changed to angels after their translation.

41. Zohar II, 58a, based in the main on Hagigah 13b and PR 20.79a. In the old sources Elijah has nothing to do with Sandalphon. Compare with pp. 613–614.

42. *Emek ha-Melek* 65 (end); compare with p. 783.

## AFTER HIS TRANSLATION

Elijah's removal from earth, so far from being an interruption to his relations with men, rather marks the beginning of his real activity as a helper in time of need, as a teacher and as a guide. At first his intervention in sublunar affairs was not frequent. Seven years after his translation,<sup>43</sup> he wrote a letter to the wicked king Jehoram, who reigned over Judah. The next occasion on which he took part in an earthly occurrence was at the time of Ahasuerus, when he did the Jews a good turn by assuming the guise of the courtier Harbonah,<sup>44</sup> in a favorable moment inciting the king against Haman.<sup>45</sup>

It was reserved for later days, however, for Talmudic times, the golden age of the great scholars, the Tannaim and the Amoraim, to enjoy Elijah's special vigilance as protector of the innocent, as a friend in need, who hovers over the just and the pious, ever present to guard



them against evil or snatch them out of danger. With four strokes of his wings Elijah can traverse the world.<sup>46</sup> Hence no spot on earth is too far removed for his help. As an angel<sup>47</sup> he enjoys the power of assuming the most various appearances to accomplish his purposes. Sometimes he looks like an ordinary man, sometimes he takes the appearance of an Arab, sometimes of a horseman, now he is a Roman court-official, now he is a harlot.

Once upon a time it happened that when Nahum, the great and pious teacher, was journeying to Rome on a political mission, he was without his knowledge robbed of the gift he bore to the Emperor as an offering from the Jews. When he handed the casket to the ruler, it was found to contain common earth, which the thieves had substituted for the jewels they had abstracted. The Emperor thought the Jews were mocking at him, and their representative, Nahum, was condemned to suffer death. In his piety the Rabbi did not lose confidence in God; he only said: "This too is for good."<sup>48</sup> And so it turned out to be. Suddenly Elijah appeared, and, assuming the guise of a court-official, he said: "Perhaps the earth in this casket is like that used by Abraham for purposes of war. A handful will do the work of swords and bows." At his instance the virtues of the earth were tested in the attack upon a city that had long resisted Roman courage and strength. His supposition was verified. The contents of the casket proved more efficacious than all the weapons of the army, and the Romans were victorious. Nahum was dismissed, laden with honors and treasures, and the thieves, who had betrayed themselves by claiming the precious earth, were executed, for, naturally enough, Elijah works no wonders for evildoers.<sup>49</sup>

Another time, for the purpose of rescuing Rabbi Shila, Elijah pretended to be a Persian. An informer had denounced the Rabbi with the

Persian Government, accusing him of administering the law according to the Jewish code. Elijah appeared as witness for the Rabbi and against the informer, and Shila was honorably dismissed.<sup>50</sup>

When the Roman bailiffs were pursuing Rabbi Meïr, Elijah joined him in the guise of a harlot. The Roman emissaries desisted from their pursuit, for they could not believe that Rabbi Meïr would choose such a companion.<sup>51</sup>

A contemporary of Rabbi Meïr, Rabbi Simon ben Yoḥai, who spent thirteen years in a cave to escape the vengeance of the Romans, was informed by Elijah of the death of the Jew-baiting emperor, so that he could leave his hiding-place.<sup>52</sup>

Equally characteristic is the help Elijah afforded the worthy poor. Frequently he brought them great wealth. Rabbi Kahana was so needy that he had to support himself by peddling with household utensils. Once a lady of high standing endeavored to force him to commit an immoral act, and Kahana, preferring death to iniquity, threw himself from a loft. Though Elijah was at a distance of four hundred parasangs, he hastened to the spot in time to catch the Rabbi before he touched the ground. Besides, he gave him means enough to enable him to abandon an occupation beset with perils.<sup>53</sup>

Rabba bar Abbahu likewise was a victim of poverty. He admitted to Elijah that on account of his small means he had no time to devote to his studies. Thereupon Elijah led him into Paradise, bade him remove his mantle, and fill it with leaves grown in the regions of the blessed. When the Rabbi was about to quit Paradise, his garment full of leaves, a voice was heard to say: "Who desires to anticipate his share in the world to come during his earthly days, as Rabba bar Abbahu is doing?" The Rabbi quickly cast the leaves away; nevertheless he received twelve thousand denarii for his upper garment, because it



retained the wondrous fragrance of the leaves of Paradise.<sup>54</sup>

Elijah's help was not confined to poor teachers of the law; all who were in need, and were worthy of his assistance, had a claim upon him. A poor man, the father of a family, in his distress once prayed to God: "O Lord of the world, Thou knowest, there is none to whom I can tell my tale of woe, none who will have pity upon me. I have neither brother nor kinsman nor friend, and my starving little ones are crying with hunger. Then do Thou have mercy and be compassionate, or let death come and put an end to our suffering." His words found a hearing with God, for, as he finished, Elijah stood before the poor man, and sympathetically inquired why he was weeping. When the prophet had heard the tale of his troubles, he said: "Take me and sell me as a slave; the proceeds will suffice for thy needs." At first the poor man refused to accept the sacrifice, but finally he yielded, and Elijah was sold to a prince for eighty denarii. This sum formed the nucleus of the fortune which the poor man amassed and enjoyed until the end of his days. The prince who had purchased Elijah intended to build a palace, and he rejoiced to hear that his new slave was an architect. He promised Elijah liberty if within six months he completed the edifice. After nightfall of the same day, Elijah offered a prayer, and instantaneously the palace stood in its place in complete perfection. Elijah disappeared. The next morning the prince was not a little astonished to see the palace finished. But when he sought his slave to reward him, and sought him in vain, he realized that he had had dealings with an angel. Elijah meantime repaired to the man who had sold him, and related his story to him, that he might know he had not cheated the purchaser out of his price; on the contrary, he had enriched him, since the palace was worth a hundred times more than the money paid for the pretended slave.<sup>55</sup>

A similar thing happened to a well-to-do man who lost his fortune, and became so poor that he had to do manual labor in the field of another. Once, when he was at work, he was accosted by Elijah, who had assumed the appearance of an Arab: "Thou art destined to enjoy seven good years. When dost thou want them—now, or as the closing years of thy life?" The man replied: "Thou art a wizard; go in peace, I have nothing for thee." Three times the same question was put, three times the same reply was given. Finally the man said: "I shall ask the advice of my wife." When Elijah came again, and repeated his question, the man, following the counsel of his wife, said: "See to it that seven good years come to us at once." Elijah replied: "Go home. Before thou crossest thy threshold, thy good fortune will have filled thy house." And so it was. His children had found a treasure in the ground, and, as he was about to enter his house, his wife met him and reported the lucky find. His wife was an estimable, pious woman, and she said to her husband: "We shall enjoy seven good years. Let us use this time to practice as much charity as possible; perhaps God will lengthen out our period of prosperity." After the lapse of seven years, during which man and wife used every opportunity of doing good, Elijah appeared again, and announced to the man that the time had come to take away what he had given him. The man responded: "When I accepted thy gift, it was after consultation with my wife. I should not like to return it without first acquainting her with what is about to happen." His wife charged him to say to the old man who had come to resume possession of his property: "If thou canst find any who will be more conscientious stewards of the pledges entrusted to us than we have been, I shall willingly yield them up to thee." God recognized that these people had made a proper use of their wealth, and He granted it to them as a perpetual possession.<sup>56</sup>



If Elijah was not able to lighten the poverty of the pious, he at least sought to inspire them with hope and confidence. Rabbi Akiba, the great scholar, lived in dire poverty before he became the famous Rabbi. His rich father-in-law would have nothing to do with him or his wife, because the daughter had married Akiba against her father's will. On a bitter cold winter night, Akiba could offer his wife, who had been accustomed to the luxuries wealth can buy, nothing but straw as a bed to sleep upon, and he tried to comfort her with assurances of his love for the privations she was suffering. At that moment Elijah appeared before their hut, and cried out in supplicating tones: "O good people, give me, I pray you, a little bundle of straw. My wife has been delivered of a child, and I am so poor I haven't even enough straw to make a bed for her." Now Akiba could console his wife with the fact that their own misery was not so great as it might have been, and thus Elijah had attained his end, to sustain the courage of the pious.<sup>57</sup>

In the form of an Arab, he once appeared before a very poor man, whose piety equalled his poverty. He gave him two shekels. These two coins brought him such good fortune that he attained great wealth. But in his zeal to gather worldly treasures, he had no time for deeds of piety and charity. Elijah again appeared before him and took away the two shekels. In a short time the man was as poor as before. A third time Elijah came to him. He was crying bitterly and complaining of his misfortune, and the prophet said: "I shall make thee rich once more, if thou wilt promise me under oath thou wilt not let wealth ruin thy character." He promised, the two shekels were restored to him, he regained his wealth, and he remained in possession of it for all time, because his piety was not curtailed by his riches.<sup>58</sup>

Poverty was not the only form of distress Elijah relieved. He exercised the functions of a

physician upon Rabbi Shimi bar Ashi, who had swallowed a noxious reptile. Elijah appeared to him as an awe-inspiring horseman, and forced him to apply the preventives against the disease to be expected in these circumstances.

He also cured Rabbi Judah ha-Nasi of long-continued toothache by laying his hand on the sufferer, and at the same time he brought about the reconciliation of Rabbi Judah with Rabbi Ḥayyah, whose form he had assumed. Rabbi Judah paid the highest respect to Rabbi Ḥayyah after he found out that Elijah had considered him worthy of taking his appearance.<sup>59</sup>

On another occasion, Elijah re-established harmony between a husband and his wife. The woman had come home very late one Friday evening, having allowed herself to be detained by the sermon preached by Rabbi Meïr. Her autocratic husband swore she should not enter the house until she had spat in the very face of the highly-esteemed Rabbi. Meantime Elijah went to Rabbi Meïr, and told him a pious woman had fallen into a sore predicament on his account. To help the poor woman, the Rabbi resorted to a ruse. He announced that he was looking for one who knew how to cast spells, which was done by spitting into the eye of the afflicted one. When he caught sight of the woman designated by Elijah, he asked her to try her power upon him. Thus she was able to comply with her husband's requirement without disrespect to the Rabbi; and through the instrumentality of Elijah conjugal happiness was restored to an innocent wife.<sup>60</sup>

Elijah's versatility is shown in the following occurrence. A pious man bequeathed a spice-garden to his three sons. They took turns in guarding it against thieves. The first night the oldest son watched the garden. Elijah appeared to him and asked him: "My son, what wilt thou have—knowledge of the Torah, or great wealth, or a beautiful wife?" He chose wealth, great



wealth. Accordingly Elijah gave him a coin, and he became rich. The second son, to whom Elijah appeared the second night, chose knowledge of the Torah. Elijah gave him a book, and "he knew the whole Torah." The third son, on the third night, when Elijah put the same choice before him as before his brothers, wished for a beautiful wife. Elijah invited this third brother to go on a journey with him. Their first night was passed at the house of a notorious villain, who had a daughter. During the night Elijah overheard the chickens and the geese say to one another: "What a terrible sin that young man must have committed, that he should be destined to marry the daughter of so great a villain!" The two travellers journeyed on. The second night the experiences of the first were repeated. The third night they lodged with a man who had a very pretty daughter. During the night Elijah heard the chickens and the geese say to one another: "How great must be the virtues of this young man, if he is privileged to marry so beautiful and pious a wife." In the morning, when Elijah arose, he at once became a matchmaker, the young man married the pretty maiden, and husband and wife journeyed homeward in joy.<sup>61</sup>

If it became necessary, Elijah was ready to do even the services of a sexton. When Rabbi Akiba died in prison, Elijah betook himself to the dead man's faithful disciple, Rabbi Joshua, and the two together went to the prison. There was none to forbid their entrance; a deep sleep had fallen upon the turnkeys and the prisoners alike. Elijah and Rabbi Joshua took the corpse with them, Elijah bearing it upon his shoulder. Rabbi Joshua in astonishment demanded how he, a priest, dared defile himself upon a corpse. The answer was: "God forbid! the pious can never cause defilement." All night the two walked on with their burden. At break of day they found themselves near Cæsarea. A cave opened before their eyes, and within they saw a

bed, a chair, a table, and a lamp. They deposited the corpse upon the bed, and left the cave, which closed up behind them. Only the light of the lamp, which had lit itself after they left, shone through the chinks. Whereupon Elijah said: "Hail, ye just, hail to you who devote yourselves to the study of the law. Hail to you, ye God-fearing men, for your places are set aside, and kept, and guarded, in Paradise, for the time to come. Hail to thee, Rabbi Akiba, that thy lifeless body found lodgment for a night in a lovely spot."<sup>62</sup>

43. Seder 'Olam 17. Comp., however, Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 5.2.

44. PRE 50; Esther R. 7.9.

45. The origin of this Haggadah is as follows: The prayer after the reading of the Megillah closes with the words: "May Harbonah, too, be remembered unto good" (Yerushalmi Megillah 3, 74b, bottom; Soferim 14.6). Now the expression זכור לטוב "remembered unto good" is the ancient eulogy attached to Elijah (see note 1), and accordingly its application to Harbonah in the prayer for Purim was interpreted to mean that he was identical with Elijah. The last words of the prayer וגם חרבונה זכור לטוב were thus understood to mean: "And as for Harbonah, he is the one (Elijah) who is remembered unto good." As to Elijah's participation in the delivery of the Jews from the hands of Haman, see text on p. 1160.

46. Berakot 4b, which reads: Michael traverses the world with one stroke, Gabriel with two, Elijah with four, the angel of death with eight (this is only in ordinary cases, but in the time of plague with one). Comp. also Zohar I, 13a.

47. On the ability of the angel to assume the most varied appearances and forms, see text on p. 13. In the note appertaining thereto it is pointed out that an angel never assumes the form of a woman, and in this respect Elijah is their superior, as he, at least once, appeared as a harlot; see 'Abodah Zarah 18b. On Elijah as an angel comp. notes 34 and 39–40.

48. גם זו לטובה. This favorite expression of the Rabbis was supposed to have given rise to his appellation Gamzu (גמזו). But in fact it is the name of his birthplace.

49. Ta'anit 21a; Sanhedrin 108b. Compare with p. 195.

50. Berakot 58b.

51. 'Abodah Zarah 18b. In the legend given *ibid.* 17b, concerning R. Eliezer b. Parata, Elijah assumed the appearance of a high official for the purpose of silencing



the accusers of the Rabbi in court. Failing in this, he made the Rabbi disappear (the Rabbi suddenly found himself in a place four hundred parasangs away from court).

52. Shabbat 33b, and, with additions, Zohar Hadash Ki-Tabo (beginning). In the Zohar, which claims to be the work of this Rabbi and saint, Elijah's conversations with the pious, particularly the masters of the Kabbalah, are frequently referred to. Friedmann, introduction to ER, 38–40, gives an almost complete list of these Zohar passages. Comp. note 98.

53. Kiddushin 40a. Palestine, as well as Egypt, extends over four hundred parasangs (Pesahim 94a; Index, s. v. "Palestine", "Egypt"), and therefore the expression "four hundred parasangs" is often used to describe a great distance. Comp. note 51.

54. Baba Mezi'a 114a–114b. **אכל לעלמיה** in this passage, as well as **דליכליה לעלמא** in Gittin 68b means: "he used up his share in the world to come during his lifetime." Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze*, 49, and many other scholars misunderstood the passage in Gittin. On the fragrance of paradise, see text on p. 19.

55. *Hibbur Yafeh*, 57–59, and hence in later sources; comp., e. g., BHM V, 140–141. The relation of this Jewish legend to the Christian one, as elaborately set forth in the *Acta Thomae*, ought to be examined. A poetic version of this Elijah legend by R. Jesse b. Mordecai was incorporated in the liturgy and is sung at the conclusion of the Sabbath. Comp. Zunz, *Literaturgeschichte*, 486 and Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 415.

56. Ruth Z., 55; *Hibbur Yafeh* 82–84. On Elijah assuming the guise of an Arab, see also note 62. Another legend about Elijah as the one to bring succor to the needy is found in *Hemdat ha-Yamim* III, 14b, and hence in *'Oseh fele* II, 52, seq. Once upon a time there lived a pious and learned Rabbi in Jerusalem, who was in the habit of providing the poor with food and other necessities for Passover. But it happened once that he entirely forgot to provide for the needs of a very poor but worthy scholar, who on the day before Passover had neither mazzot nor wine for the feast. In his miserable state he decided to leave his home rather than see his family dying of hunger. Walking aimlessly in the streets, he was addressed by a venerable looking old man with the following words: "I am a stranger in this place; I beg of you to take me to your house for the days of the festival, and here is the money to furnish us with all our needs. The poor scholar, though depressed by his inability to be the host to the stranger without payment, did as he was requested, and with the ample funds now at his disposal prepared a really sumptuous meal for the first night of Passover. But when the time of the Seder arrived, the stranger did not appear; all the searching was in vain, as no trace could be found of him. The poor scholar then realized that the stranger was none other than Elijah

the prophet who came to his assistance. On the very same night Elijah appeared to the Rabbi of the place, and awakened him by seizing him by his throat and nearly choking him to death. Elijah chided him for having neglected the poor scholar, and told him that if it were not for his quick action, God would have destroyed the entire community for not having taken care of the worthy man. He then commanded the Rabbi to hasten to the poor scholar and beg his pardon for not having provided him with the necessities of life.

57. Nedarim 50a. Comp. Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. "Akiba in Legend".

58. Luzzatto, *Kafior wa-Ferah*, 7b; collection of Ma'asiyyot published from MS. in *R.E.J.*, XXXIII, 58–60. A shorter form of this legend is found in Ruth Z., 50. Four other versions of this legend are found in Gaster, *Exempla*, Nos. 301, p. 193, and 307, pp. 206–207; Comp. also No. 334. On Elijah assuming the guise of an Arab, see note 62. The following is a widespread legend about Elijah as a helper in need. Shortly before the arrival of the Sabbath a man came to a town where he had no friends at all, and did not know what to do with his money, as it is prohibited to carry money on the day of rest (see the same motive in the text on p. 951). He betook himself to the synagogue, where he found a man praying with his phylacteries on his forehead and arm. Deeming him a pious man, he entrusted the money to him. At the termination of the Sabbath the stranger asked him for the money. But the hypocrite denied that he had ever received any money from him. In his distress he prayed to God as follows: "O Lord, I did not trust that man, but Thy name (the letter 'ש' as an abbreviation of **שדי** "almighty", is written on the phylactery for the forehead), believing that a man who bears Thy name on him would not defraud people." After praying he fell asleep, and in his dream Elijah appeared unto him, saying: "Go to the wife of this man and tell her that her husband commands her to return the money to you. That she may believe your words, say unto her: Your husband, to show his confidence in me, revealed unto me the secret that you both ate the meat of a swine on the Day of Atonement." The stranger did as he was advised by Elijah, and the woman returned the money to him. See PR 22, 111b; Yellammedenu in Or Zarua I, 149; Ma'asiyyot, ed. Gaster 83. For the later version of this legend, see Ma'asiyyot ed. Araki, Nos. 96 and 105; *Hebräische Bibliographie*, XIII, 129–130; Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 123. In the profuse legend concerning the "two faithful friends" (*'Oseh Fele* II, 44a, seq.), Elijah appears in a dream to the Rabbi, and informs him of the fraud perpetrated by one of the "two faithful friends" against the other.

59. The legend concerning R. Shimi is found in Shabbat 109b; that about R. Judah is in Yerushalmi Kil'ayim 9, 32b; BR 33.3 and 96.5; Tan. B. I, 215; Tan.



Wa-Yehi 3. Elijah plays the rôle of a physician also in the legend about the "woman with the animal face" in *Oseh Fele* II, 36a, *seq.* The medicine given by him changes the monstrosity into a beauty. Comp. also Ginzberg, *Hagoren*, IX, 34, *seq.*

60. DR 5 (end). The parallel passages in Yerushalmi Sotah I, 198a; WR 9.9 and BaR 9.30 have "the holy spirit" instead of Elijah. Comp. also Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 145, the text of which is different from those of the Midrashim and Yerushalmi. On spittle as a remedy for sickness, see also Mark 8.22 and John 9.6.; Comp. Ginzberg, *Journal Bibl. Literature*, XLI, 123, note 20.

61. Ma'aseh-buch, No. 157, 47d, and No. 169, 52c. The animals notice the presence of Elijah; when dogs bark gleefully it is a sign that Elijah is not far from them; when they whine, the angel of death is near them. See Baba Kamma 60b; comp. *Imre No'am*, Bo (end) and footnote 284 on p. 238. On a different version of this legend, see Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 355.

62. Mishle 9, 62; Elleh Ezkerah 68; Ma'aseh Haruge Malkut 27–28. Mishle is the source of MHG (Ms.), whence Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 245. On the cave in the vicinity of Caesarea, see text on p. 1012, and on the furniture thereof see text on p. 741; comp. also 2 Kings 4.10.

## CENSOR AND AVENGER

Helpfulness and compassion do not paint the whole of the character of Elijah. He remained the stern and inexorable censor whom Ahab feared. The old zeal for the true and the good he never lost, as witness, he once struck a man dead because he failed to perform his devotions with due reverence.<sup>63</sup>

There were two brothers, one of them rich and miserly, the other poor and kind-hearted. Elijah, in the garb of an old beggar, approached the rich man, and asked him for alms. Repulsed by him, he turned to the poor brother, who received him kindly, and shared his meagre supper with him. On bidding farewell to him and his equally hospitable wife, Elijah said: "May God reward you! The first thing you undertake shall be blessed, and shall take no end until you yourselves cry out Enough!" Presently the poor man

began to count the few pennies he had, to convince himself that they sufficed to purchase bread for his next meal. But the few became many, and he counted and counted, and still their number increased. He counted a whole day, and the following night, until he was exhausted, and had to cry out Enough! And, indeed, it was enough, for he had become a very wealthy man. His brother was not a little astonished to see the fortunate change in his kinsman's circumstances, and when he heard how it had come about, he determined, if the opportunity should present itself again, to show his most amiable side to the old beggar with the miraculous power of blessing. He had not long to wait. A few days later he saw the old man pass by. He hastened to accost him, and, excusing himself for his unfriendliness at their former meeting, begged him to come into his house. All that the larder afforded was put before Elijah, who pretended to eat of the dainties. At his departure, he pronounced a blessing upon his hosts: "May the first thing you do have no end, until it is enough." The mistress of the house hereupon said to her husband: "That we may count gold upon gold undisturbed, let us first attend to our most urgent physical needs." So they did—and they had to continue to do it until life was extinct.<sup>64</sup>

The extreme of his rigor Elijah displayed toward teachers of the law. From them he demanded more than obedience to the mere letter of a commandment. For instance, he pronounced severe censure upon Rabbi Ishmael ben Jose, because he was willing to act as bailiff in prosecuting Jewish thieves and criminals. He advised Rabbi Ishmael to follow the example of his father and leave the country.<sup>65</sup>

His estrangement from his friend Rabbi Joshua ben Levi is characteristic. One who was sought by the officers of the law took refuge with Rabbi Joshua. His pursuers were informed of his place of concealment. Threatening to put all the



inhabitants of the city to the sword if he was not delivered up, they demanded his surrender. The Rabbi urged the fugitive from justice to resign himself to his fate. Better for one individual to die, he said, than for a whole community to be exposed to peril. The fugitive yielded to the Rabbi's argument, and gave himself up to the bailiffs. Thereafter Elijah, who had been in the habit of visiting Rabbi Joshua frequently, stayed away from his house, and he was induced to come back only by the Rabbi's long fasts and earnest prayers. In reply to the Rabbi's question, why he had shunned him, he said: "Dost thou suppose I care to have intercourse with informers?" The Rabbi quoted a passage from the Mishnah to justify his conduct, but Elijah remained unconvinced. "Dost thou consider this a law for a pious man?" he said. "Other people might have been right in doing as thou didst; thou shouldst have done otherwise."<sup>66</sup>

A number of instances are known which show how exalted a standard Elijah set up for those who would be considered worthy of intercourse with him. Of two pious brothers, one provided for his servants as for his own table, while the other permitted his servants to eat abundantly only of the first course; of the other courses they could have nothing but the remnants. Accordingly, with the second brother Elijah would have nothing to do, while he often honored the former with his visits.

A similar attitude Elijah maintained toward another pair of pious brothers. One of them was in the habit of providing for his servants after his own needs were satisfied, while the other of them attended to the needs of his servants first. To the latter it was that Elijah gave the preference.<sup>67</sup>

He dissolved an intimacy of many years' standing, because his friend built a vestibule which was so constructed that the supplications of the poor could be heard but faintly by those within the house.<sup>68</sup>

Rabbi Joshua ben Levi incurred the displeasure of Elijah a second time, because a man was torn in pieces by a lion in the vicinity of his house. In a measure Elijah held the Rabbi responsible, because he did not pray for the prevention of such misfortunes.<sup>69</sup>

The story told of Elijah and Rabbi Anan forms the most striking illustration of the severity of the prophet. Someone brought Rabbi Anan a mess of little fish as a present, and at the same time asked the Rabbi to act as judge in a lawsuit he was interested in. Anan refused in these circumstances to accept a gift from the litigant. To demonstrate his single-mindedness, the applicant urged the Rabbi to take the fish and assign the case to another judge. Anan acquiesced, and he requested one of his colleagues to act for him, because he was incapacitated from serving as a judge. His legal friend drew the inference, that the litigant introduced to him was a kinsman of Rabbi Anan's, and accordingly he showed himself particularly complaisant toward him. As a result, the other party to the suit was intimidated. He failed to present his side as convincingly as he might otherwise have done, and so lost the case. Elijah, who had been the friend of Anan and his teacher as well, thenceforth shunned his presence, because he considered that the injury done the second party to the suit was due to Anan's carelessness. Anan in his distress kept many fasts, and offered up many prayers, before Elijah would return to him. Even then the Rabbi could not endure the sight of him; he had to content himself with listening to Elijah's words without looking upon his face.<sup>70</sup>

Sometimes Elijah considered it his duty to force people into abandoning a bad habit. A rich man was once going to a cattle sale, and he carried a snug sum of money to buy oxen. He was accosted by a stranger—none other than Elijah—who inquired the purpose of his journey. "I go to buy cattle," replied the would-be purchaser.



“Say, if it please God,” urged Elijah. “Fiddlesticks! I shall buy cattle whether it please God or not! I carry the money with me, and the business will be dispatched.” “But not with good fortune,” said the stranger, and went off. Arrived at the market, the cattle-buyer discovered the loss of his purse, and he had to return home to provide himself with other money. He again set forth on his journey, but this time he took another road to avoid the stranger of ill omen. To his amazement he met an old man with whom he had precisely the same adventure as with the first stranger. Again he had to return home to fetch money. By this time he had learned his lesson. When a third stranger questioned him about the object of his journey, he answered: “If it please God, I intend to buy oxen.” The stranger wished him success, and the wish was fulfilled. To the merchant’s surprise, when a pair of fine cattle were offered him, and their price exceeded the sum of money he had about his person, he found the two purses he had lost on his first and second trips. Later he sold the same pair of oxen to the king for a considerable price, and he became very wealthy.<sup>71</sup>

As Elijah coerced this merchant into humility toward God, so he carried home a lesson to the great Tanna Eliezer, the son of Rabbi Simon ben Yoḥai. This Rabbi stood in need of correction on account of his overweening conceit. Once, on returning from the academy, he took a walk on the sea-beach, his bosom swelling with pride at the thought of his attainments in the Torah. He met a hideously ugly man, who greeted him with the words: “Peace be with thee, Rabbi.” Eliezer, instead of courteously acknowledging the greeting, said: “O thou wight,<sup>72</sup> how ugly thou art! Is it possible that all the residents of thy town are as ugly as thou?” “I know not,” was the reply, “but it is to the Master Artificer who created me that thou shouldst have said: ‘How ugly is this vessel which Thou hast fashioned.’ ”

The Rabbi realized the wrong he had committed, and humbly begged pardon of the ugly man—another of the protean forms adopted by Elijah. The latter continued to refer him to the Master Artificer of the ugly vessel. The inhabitants of the city, who had hastened to do honor to the great Rabbi, earnestly urged the offended man to grant pardon, and finally he declared himself appeased, provided the Rabbi promised never again to commit the same wrong.<sup>73</sup>

The rigor practiced by Elijah toward his friends caused one of them, the Tanna Rabbi Jose, to accuse him of being passionate and irascible. As a consequence, Elijah would have nothing to do with him for a long time. When he reappeared, and confessed the cause of his withdrawal, Rabbi Jose said he felt justified, for his charge could not have received a more striking verification.<sup>74</sup>

---

63. Berakot 6b, where it is also stated that on this account Elijah assumed the guise of an Arab. Comp. note 56. He often took the opportunity to point out the importance of prayer and devotion to the saints and scholars to whom he revealed himself. R. Eleazar the son of R. Jose once met Elijah driving four thousand camels heavily laden, and at his question concerning the nature of the load, he received the following answer from the prophet: “These camels are laden with wrath and fury for those who talk during their prayers.” He further informed this Tanna that prayers of this kind are never granted, whereas those who pray with devotion and do not talk in their prayers will be heard by God. To the father of this Tanna Elijah once gave the same piece of information. The legend is quoted by many medieval authors from the Yerushalmi or Midrash respectively but is not found in the extant Midrashim and not in the Yerushalmi. See the references cited by Buber, *Yerushalayim ha-Benayyah*, No. 33, 18, and Friedmann, introduction to ER 32. This legend is further quoted from the Midrash by Shu’aib, 33b; R. Bahya, *Kad ha-Kemah* II, 57b קדושה; Abudrahim ישתבח; Treves, *Kimha Dabishuna* ישתבח. To his friend R. Jose (comp. note 74) Elijah imparted the following piece of information: As often as Israel, in the houses of worship, praise God, He exclaims: “Happy the King who is praised in His house; but woe unto the father (מה לו) is a euphemism for (אוי לו) who exiled his



children, and woe to the children who were exiled from their father's table." See Berakot 3a.

64. Tendlau, *Sprüchwörter*, 14–15, who took down this legend in the form he found it current among German Jews. It is the Jewish version of a widespread legend among European nations. Comp. Dähnhardt, *Natursagen*, II, 140, *seq.* Comp. also Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 435.

65. Baba Mezi'a 84a. A contemporary of this Rabbi, who subsequently became famous under the name of R. Eleazar b. R. Simeon, was in his earlier days very ignorant, but of a very strong physique. On account of sturdiness he was appointed overseer of the laborers employed by the government. Elijah appeared to him once as an old man, and after convincing him of the uselessness of his life, advised him to take up the profession of his fathers and to study the Torah. R. Eleazar objected, as he had no teacher to instruct him, and Elijah became his master for thirteen years. See PK 10, 92b–93a (for the text use Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 94), and with additional embellishments Zohar Hadash, Lek (end of *וישמע*).

66. Yerushalmi Terumot 8, 96b; BR 94 (end). According to the law, the Rabbi was permitted to surrender one man, that all the inhabitants of the place might be saved; but a pious man is expected to do more than the strict law requires of him. On another occasion this Rabbi, to his great humiliation, had found out that too much rigor in ceremonial matters was far from being commendable. Elijah pointed out to the disciple of the Rabbi the unpleasant consequences of a too rigorous decision by the master. See Yerushalmi Shabbat 9, 39a; Dammai 2, 22c.

67. Ketubot 61a. Comp. Rashi, who has a somewhat different interpretation of this passage.

68. Baba Batra 7b.

69. Makkot 11a.

70. Ketubot 106a. The conclusion of this narrative is: Hence the titles "the great order of Elijah" and "the small order of Elijah", that is, the collection of teachings imparted by Elijah to R. Anan before this occurrence is called the "great order", and that imparted after is called "the small order". The nature of these works attributed to Elijah is entirely unknown, as there can be no doubt that the extant Midrashim Seder Eliyyahu Rabba and Seder Eliyyahu Zutta date from post-talmudic times, and may have nothing in common but the titles with the works referred to in the Talmud. The nine haggadic Baraitot cited by the Talmud from Tanna de be Eliyyahu (see the references in Friedmann, Introduction to ER 45) are very likely taken from a haggadic compilation by a Tanna called Elijah. On the use of this name in the time of the Tannaim and Amoraim, see Ratner, *Ahabat Ziyon*, Pesahim, 61. In the above-mentioned Midrashim attributed to Elijah these nine Baraitot are incorporated (see Friedmann, *loc. cit.*), and in three passages the talmudic *דבי אליהו* is

changed to *דבי משיח הנביא* by the author (authors?) of these Midrashim. This shows that at a comparatively early date *דבי אליהו* of the Talmud was misunderstood to refer to the prophet Elijah. These Midrashim quite often introduce the prophet as narrating events and incidents of his life, but they lack the simplicity of legend, and one immediately sees that the author puts into the mouth of Elijah his own views concerning God, Israel, and the Torah. Another work by Elijah is *ספר אליהו*, an apocalyptic book, in which Elijah reveals the secrets made known to him by the angel Michael concerning the Messianic times. Closely related to it is the apocalyptic writing *פרקנ'ן משיח*, in which Elijah imparts to R. Jose more valuable information about the Messiah and the Messianic redemption. These two apocalyptic works were very likely composed about the middle of the eighth century.

71. Alphabet of Ben Sira 9b–10a. Comp. Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. "Ben Sira, Alphabet", and Lévi, *R.E.J.*, LIII, 66. The pious custom to say: "If it please God" is known to the New Testament (1 Corinth. 4.19; Heb. 6.3; James 4.15) and to Plato; see the references cited by Neumark, *Geschichte der jüdischen Philosophie*, II, 292. On the use of the familiar *אם ירצה השם*, "If it please God", and *בעזר השם*, "with God's help" in medieval writings, see Zunz, *Gesammelte Schriften*, III, 268.

72. Aramaic *ריקה* "Reka"; but Ma'asiyyot (Gaster's edition 139) has *אָקָה* as in Matth. 5.2.

73. Ta'anit 20 (below); 2 ARN 41.131; Derek Erez R. 4, where the Tosafists (Ta'anit, *loc. cit.*) read that the "ugly man" was Elijah; Kallah 6.13a.

74. Sanhedrin (end). Comp. James 5.17.

## INTERCOURSE WITH THE SAGES

Elijah's purely human relations to the world revealed themselves in their fulness, neither in his deeds of charity, nor in his censorious rigor, but rather in his gentle and scholarly intercourse with the great in Israel, especially the learned Rabbis of the Talmudic time. He is at once their disciple and their teacher. To one he resorts for instruction on difficult points, to another he himself dispenses instruction. As a matter of course, his intimate knowledge of the supernatural world makes him appear more frequently in the rôle of giver than receiver. Many a bit of secret lore the Jewish teachers learnt from



Elijah, and he it was who, with the swiftness of lightning, carried the teachings of one Rabbi to another sojourning hundreds of miles away.<sup>75</sup>

Thus it was Elijah who taught Rabbi Jose the deep meaning hidden in the Scriptural passage in which woman is designated as the helpmeet of man. By means of examples he demonstrated to the Rabbi how indispensable woman is to man.<sup>76</sup>

Rabbi Nehorai profited by his exposition of why God created useless, even noxious insects. The reason for their existence is that the sight of superfluous and harmful creatures prevents God from destroying His world at times when, on account of the wickedness and iniquity prevailing in it, it repents Him of having created it. If He preserves creatures that at their best are useless, and at their worst injurious, how much more should He preserve human beings with all their potentialities for good.

The same Rabbi Nehorai was told by Elijah, that God sends earthquakes and other destructive phenomena when He sees places of amusement prosperous and flourishing, while the Temple lies a heap of dust and ashes.<sup>77</sup>

To Rabbi Judah he communicated the following three maxims: Let not anger master thee, and thou wilt not fall into sin; let not drink master thee, and thou wilt be spared pain; before thou settest out on a journey, take counsel with thy Creator.<sup>78</sup>

In case of a difference of opinion among scholars, Elijah was usually questioned as to how the moot point was interpreted in the heavenly academy.<sup>79</sup> Once, when the scholars were not unanimous in their views as to Esther's intentions when she invited Haman to her banquets with the king, Elijah, asked by Rabba bar Abahu to tell him her real purpose, said that each and every one of the motives attributed to her by various scholars were true, for her invitations to Haman had many a purpose.<sup>80</sup>

A similar answer he gave the Amora Abiathar, who disputed with his colleagues as to why the Ephraimite who caused the war against the tribe of Benjamin first cast off his concubine, and then became reconciled to her. Elijah informed Rabbi Abiathar that in heaven the cruel conduct of the Ephraimite was explained in two ways, according to Abiathar's conception and according to his opponent Jonathan's as well.<sup>81</sup>

Regarding the great contest between Rabbi Eliezer ben Hyrcanus and the whole body of scholars, in which the majority maintained the validity of its opinion, though a heavenly voice pronounced Rabbi Eliezer's correct, Elijah told Rabbi Nathan, that God in His heaven had cried out: "My children have prevailed over Me!"<sup>82</sup>

On one occasion Elijah fared badly for having betrayed celestial events to the scholars. He was a daily attendant at the academy of Rabbi Judah ha-Nasi. One day, it was the New Moon Day, he was late. The reason for his tardiness, he said, was that it was his daily duty to awaken the three Patriarchs,<sup>83</sup> wash their hands for them, so that they might offer up their prayers, and after their devotions lead them back to their resting-places. On this day their prayers took very long, because they were increased by the Musaf service on account of the New Moon celebration, and hence he did not make his appearance at the academy in good time. Elijah did not end his narrative at this point, but went on to tell the Rabbi, that this occupation of his was rather tedious, for the three Patriarchs were not permitted to offer up their prayers at the same time. Abraham prayed first, then came Isaac, and finally Jacob. If they all were to pray together, the united petitions of three such paragons of piety would be so efficacious as to force God to fulfil them, and He would be induced to bring the Messiah before his time. Then Rabbi Judah wanted to know whether there were any among the pious on earth whose prayer possessed equal



efficacy. Elijah admitted that the same power resided in the prayers of Rabbi Ḥayyah and his two sons. Rabbi Judah lost no time in proclaiming a day of prayer and fasting and summoning Rabbi Ḥayyah and his sons to officiate as the leaders in prayer. They began to chant the Eighteen Benedictions. When they uttered the word for wind, a storm arose; when they continued and made petition for rain, the rain descended at once. But as the readers approached the passage relating to the revival of the dead, great excitement arose in heaven, and when it became known that Elijah had revealed the secret of the marvellous power attaching to the prayers of the three men, he was punished with fiery blows. To thwart Rabbi Judah's purpose, Elijah assumed the form of a bear, and put the praying congregation to flight.<sup>84</sup>

Contrariwise, Elijah was also in the habit of reporting earthly events in the celestial regions. He told Rabba bar Shila that the reason Rabbi Meïr was never quoted in the academy on high was because he had had so wicked a teacher as Elisha ben Abuyah. Rabba explained Rabbi Meïr's conduct by an apologue. "Rabbi Meïr", he said, "found a pomegranate; he enjoyed the heart of the fruit, and cast the skin aside." Elijah was persuaded of the justness of this defense, and so were all the celestial powers. Thereupon one of Rabbi Meïr's interpretations was quoted in the heavenly academy.<sup>85</sup>

Elijah was no less interested in the persons of the learned than in their teachings, especially when scholars were to be provided with the means of devoting themselves to their studies. It was he who, when Rabbi Eliezer ben Hyrcanus, later a great celebrity, resolved to devote himself to the law, advised him to repair to Jerusalem and sit at the feet of Rabban Johanan ben Zakkai.<sup>86</sup>

He once met a man who mocked at his exhortations to study, and he said that on the great day of reckoning he would excuse himself for his

neglect of intellectual pursuits by the fact that he had been granted neither intelligence nor wisdom. Elijah asked him what his calling was. "I am a fisherman," was the reply. "Well, my son," questioned Elijah, "who taught thee to take flax and make nets and throw them into the sea to catch fish?" He replied: "For this heaven gave me intelligence and insight." Hereupon Elijah: "If thou possessest intelligence and insight to cast nets and catch fish, why should these qualities desert thee when thou dealest with the Torah, which, thou knowest, is very nigh unto man that he may do it?" The fisherman was touched, and he began to weep. Elijah pacified him by telling him that what he had said applied to many another beside him.<sup>87</sup>

In another way Elijah conveyed the lesson of the great value residing in devotion to the study of the Torah. Disguised as a Rabbi, he was approached by a man who promised to relieve him of all material cares if he would but abide with him. Refusing to leave Jabneh, the centre of Jewish scholarship, he said to the tempter: "Wert thou to offer me a thousand million gold denarii, I would not quit the abode of the law, and dwell in a place in which there is no Torah."<sup>88</sup>

By Torah, of course, is meant the law as conceived and interpreted by the sages and the scholars, for Elijah was particularly solicitous to establish the authority of the oral law,<sup>89</sup> as he was solicitous to demonstrate the truth of Scriptural promises that appeared incredible at first sight. For instance, he once fulfilled Rabbi Joshua ben Levi's wish to see the precious stones which would take the place of the sun in illuminating Jerusalem in the Messianic time. A vessel in mid-ocean was nigh unto shipwreck. Among a large number of heathen passengers there was a single Jewish youth. To him Elijah appeared and said, he would rescue the vessel, provided the boy went to Rabbi Joshua ben Levi, and took him to a certain place far removed from the town and from



human habitation, and showed him the gems. The boy doubted that so great a man would consent to follow a mere slip of a youth to a remote spot, but, reassured by Elijah, who told him of Rabbi Joshua's extraordinary modesty, he undertook the commission, and the vessel with its human freight was saved. The boy came to the Rabbi, besought him to go whither he would lead, and Joshua, who was really possessed of great modesty, followed the boy three miles without even inquiring the purpose of the expedition. When they finally reached the cave, the boy said: "See, here are the precious stones!" The Rabbi grasped them, and a flood of light spread as far as Lydda, the residence of Rabbi Joshua. Startled, he cast the precious stones away from him, and they disappeared.<sup>90</sup>

This Rabbi was a particular favorite of Elijah, who even secured him an interview with the Messiah. The Rabbi found the Messiah among the crowd of afflicted poor gathered near the city gates of Rome, and he greeted him with the words: "Peace be with thee, my teacher and guide!" Whereunto the Messiah replied: "Peace be with thee, thou son of Levi!" The Rabbi then asked him when he would appear, and the Messiah said, "To-day." Elijah explained to the Rabbi later that what the Messiah meant by "to-day" was, that he for his part was ready to bring Israel redemption at any time. If Israel but showed himself worthy, he would instantly fulfil his mission.<sup>91</sup>

Elijah wanted to put Rabbi Joshua into communication with the departed Rabbi Simon ben Yoḥai also, but the latter did not consider him of sufficient importance to honor him with his conversation. Rabbi Simon had addressed a question to him, and Rabbi Joshua in his modesty had made a reply not calculated to give one a high opinion of him.<sup>92</sup> In reality Rabbi Joshua was the possessor of such sterling qualities, that

when he entered Paradise Elijah walked before him calling out: "Make room for the son of Levi."<sup>93</sup>

---

75. 'Erubin 43a. On the basis of this and similar passages of the Talmud, where Elijah appears as the teacher of the wise, it was thought that he is alluded to wherever the Talmud speaks of a "certain old scholar", **ההוא סבא**. Comp. *Responsen der Geonim* (Harkavy's edition, No. 23) and Tosafoth on Hullin 6a. As to Elijah assuming the appearance of an "old man", see also PK 10, 92b–93a. Elijah used to appear daily to R. Joseph, the Gaon of Pumbedita, but nobody knew of it until this Rabbi became very old and absent-minded (this is how **ואשטף** is to be understood), so that he once remarked to the scholars of the academy: "Leave some room next to me for the 'old man' who comes to see me." They did not see anybody come, and knew that he meant Elijah. See Iggeret R. Sherira Gaon 37, lines 7–5 (from bottom.)

76. Yebamot 63a, and more fully ER 9, 61. On certain regulations concerning prayer imparted by Elijah to this Rabbi, see Berakot 3a, and note 63. Elijah pointed out to another Rabbi that "poverty is the most precious gift which God could have bestowed upon Israel," as it leads them to be kind, self-sacrificing, and God-fearing. See Hagigah 9b; EZ 3, 176, and 6, 181.

77. Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 13c; ER 1, 15; Tehillim 18, 140–141, and 104, 447–448. Comp. also quotation from Yerushalmi (not in our texts) in Yalkut I, 836, on Deut. 6.4, and Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 862, on Ps. 104. On the causes of earthquakes and other phenomena, see also Sibyll. 4.130–135; Enoch 59.1–5; Berakot 59a. On the relation of Elijah to R. Nehorai, see Ruth R. 2.21, and Friedmann, introduction to ER 33, note 2.

78. Berakot 29b (bottom). The correct reading of the second maxim is to be found only in MHG I, 175, whereas all the other texts have **תחטי** instead of **תדני**, which is used as a play on the preceding **תני**. It is to be observed that the first two maxims are in Aramaic and the third in Hebrew. This very likely points to the use of different sources by the Talmud. The third maxim means: "Pray before thou settest out on a journey."

79. The "heavenly academy", in which the pious who departed this life and the angels study the Torah with God, is frequently mentioned in the Haggadah, as for instance Gittin 68a and Baba Mezi'a 86a.

80. Megillah 15b.

81. Gittin 6b; compare footnote 134 on p. 882.

82. Baba Mezi'a 59b. R. Nathan received from Elijah the wise counsel never to fill himself with food and drink,



but to leave one third of his stomach unfilled, one third thereof filled with food and one third with beverages. See Gittin 70a.

83. For a similar function of Elijah, see Esther R. 4.9.

84. Baba Mezi'a 85b. In a similar legend (Ma'aseh-buch No. 157) it is Jeremiah who performs the function of the Hazzan in the congregation of the pious who departed this life. On the view that the dead pray, see also footnote 97 on p. 20. In Baba Mezi'a, *loc. cit.*, it is also stated that Elijah showed to a scholar the fiery chariots in which the pious ascend to the heavenly academy. The scholar, however, lost his eye-sight, because, notwithstanding Elijah's warning, he looked at the chariot of R. Hiyyah, the lustre of which blinded him. As to the nature of the punishment inflicted upon Elijah, see footnote 896 on p. 809. That prayer combined with repentance will bring about the Messianic redemption of Israel is also stated by Philo, *De Praemiis et Poenis* 8.

85. Hagigah 15b.

86. PRE 1; Bet Eked ha-Aggadot 8 and 14; 2 ARN 13, 30.

87. EZ 14, 195–196; Tan. Wa-Yelek 2.

88. ER 18, 95 (read קסדור=קדור instead of קודיר), and EZ 1, 167. Comp. also Kinyan Torah 9; Mekilta RS, 98; quotation from the Midrash in *Steinschneider-Festschrift*, Hebrew section, 55.

89. ER 14–15, 70–80, and EZ 2, 171–175 give Elijah's conversation with people who accepted the "written Torah", but not the "oral Torah", and his arguments in favor of the binding power of both, the written and the unwritten Torot. Comp. note 70.

90. PK 18, 136; PR 32, 148b (this passage has the rare description of the prophet as "Abba Elijah" "father Elijah"; comp. Sanhedrin, (end); Ma'asiyyot, ed. Gaster 135. These stones were at the bottom of the "great sea", and the shipwreck was necessary to enable the Jewish lad to lift them and show them to the Rabbi. As to the cave where the stones were placed, see note 62. A confusion of Caesarea and Lydda seems to prevail in the sources. On the stones to be used in the Messianic times, see text on p. 856, and Jerome on Joel 4.4–12.

91. Sanhedrin 98a. In the Hebrew the reply made by the Messiah contains a play on words, which cannot be reproduced in another language.

92. PK 10, 87b; BR 35 (beginning). The question addressed to R. Joshua was whether he had seen a rainbow. His affirmative answer implied that his piety did not suffice to ward off the extreme punishment due to a wicked generation. For a rainbow appears only to remind God of His promise to Noah not to destroy the world on account of the iniquity of its inhabitants. Comp. Ketubot 77b and Zohar I, 72b.

93. Ketubot 77b. In the numerous legends concerning the intercourse of Elijah with the sages and saints it is presupposed that these men knew his identity when he appeared to them. Other mortals, on the other hand (even those who were found worthy to be helped by Elijah in time of need and distress), were not aware of the great distinction conferred upon them until he had disappeared from among them, and sometimes did not find out at all about the supernatural company granted to them. Comp., for instance, the legend given in the text on pp. 1006 and 1007–1008. A third form of communication between Elijah and certain people is known as גלוי אליהו, the "appearance of Elijah", in dreams to give advice and counsel. In the old literature this is very rarely mentioned, and besides the legend quoted from PR and Yelammedenu in note 58, there is only one other in which Elijah is said to have appeared to a "Roman ruler" in a dream, and warned him against squandering the treasures left him by his ancestors; BR 83.4. On the other hand, this "appearance of Elijah" is very frequently referred to in later literature. Comp. note 103. They favored this form of communication with wicked and cruel rulers to make them change their evil designs against the Jews. The Calif Al-Mutadhid (892–902), a veritable Haman, became a friend and protector of the Jews after Elijah had appeared to him in a dream and threatened him with a cruel death if he did not immediately change his attitude towards the Jews. See Arabic fragment published by Harkavy in *Berliner-Festschrift*, 35, *seq.* The same thing happened to the Sultan Sulaiman I (1545); Elijah not only prevented him from carrying out the cruel persecution of the Jews upon which he had decided, but changed him into their staunch friend. As a reward for this he was visited by Elijah (in a dream) every month. That the Sultan should have no doubt as to the reality of the appearance, Elijah first revealed himself to R. Moses Hamon, the physician-in-ordinary of the Sultan, and told him to prepare his majesty for the visit he (Elijah) would pay him. See Sambari in Neubauer's *Medieval Jewish Chronicles*, I, 147–149. Sambari, *ibid.*, 121, is the only source for the statement that Elijah was born in a village near Cairo. In view of the prevalent opinion that Elijah is none other than Phinehas (compare with p. 993), it was quite natural that some locality in Egypt should claim the distinction of being the birthplace of the prophet.

## GOD'S JUSTICE VINDICATED

Among the many and various teachings dispensed by Elijah to his friends, there are



none so important as his theodicy, the teachings vindicating God's justice in the administration of earthly affairs. He used many an opportunity to demonstrate it by precept and example. Once he granted his friend Rabbi Joshua ben Levi the fulfilment of any wish he might express, and all the Rabbi asked for was, that he might be permitted to accompany Elijah on his wanderings through the world. Elijah was prepared to gratify this wish. He only imposed the condition, that, however odd the Rabbi might think Elijah's actions, he was not to ask any explanation of them. If ever he demanded why, they would have to part company. So Elijah and the Rabbi fared forth together, and they journeyed on until they reached the house of a poor man, whose only earthly possession was a cow. The man and his wife were thoroughly good-hearted people, and they received the two wanderers with a cordial welcome. They invited the strangers into their house, set before them food and drink of the best they had, and made up a comfortable couch for them for the night. When Elijah and the Rabbi were ready to continue their journey on the following day, Elijah prayed that the cow belonging to his host might die. Before they left the house, the animal had expired. Rabbi Joshua was so shocked by the misfortune that had befallen the good people, he almost lost consciousness. He thought: "Is that to be the poor man's reward for all his kind services to us?" And he could not refrain from putting the question to Elijah. But Elijah reminded him of the condition imposed and accepted at the beginning of their journey, and they travelled on, the Rabbi's curiosity unappeased. That night they reached the house of a wealthy man, who did not pay his guests the courtesy of looking them in the face. Though they passed the night under his roof, he did not offer them food or drink. This rich man was desirous of having a wall repaired that had tumbled down. There was no need for him to

take any steps to have it rebuilt, for, when Elijah left the house, he prayed that the wall might erect itself, and, lo! it stood upright. Rabbi Joshua was greatly amazed, but true to his promise he suppressed the question that rose to his lips. So the two travelled on again, until they reached an ornate synagogue, the seats in which were made of silver and gold. But the worshippers did not correspond in character to the magnificence of the building, for when it came to the point of satisfying the needs of the way-worn pilgrims, one of those present said: "There is no dearth of water and bread, and the strange travellers can stay in the synagogue, whither these refreshments can be brought to them." Early the next morning, when they were departing, Elijah wished those present in the synagogue in which they had lodged, that God might raise them all to be "heads". Rabbi Joshua again had to exercise great self-restraint, and not put into words the question that troubled him profoundly. In the next town, they were received with great affability, and served abundantly with all their tired bodies craved. On these kind hosts Elijah, on leaving, bestowed the wish that God might give them but a single head. Now the Rabbi could not hold himself in check any longer, and he demanded an explanation of Elijah's freakish actions. Elijah consented to clear up his conduct for Joshua before they separated from each other. He spoke as follows: "The poor man's cow was killed, because I knew that on the same day the death of his wife had been ordained in heaven, and I prayed to God to accept the loss of the poor man's property as a substitute for the poor man's wife. As for the rich man, there was a treasure hidden under the dilapidated wall, and, if he had rebuilt it, he would have found the gold; hence I set up the wall miraculously in order to deprive the curmudgeon of the valuable find. I wished that the inhospitable people assembled in the synagogue might have many heads, for a



place of numerous leaders is bound to be ruined by reason of the multiplicity of counsel and disputes. To the inhabitants of our last sojourning place, on the other hand, I wished a 'single head', for with one to guide a town, success will attend all its undertakings. Know, then, that if thou seest an evil-doer prosper, it is not always unto his advantage, and if a righteous man suffers need and distress, think not God is unjust." After these words Elijah and Rabbi Joshua separated from each other, and each went his own way.<sup>94</sup>

How difficult it is to form a true judgment with nothing but external appearances as a guide, Elijah proved to Rabbi Baroka. They were once walking in a crowded street, and the Rabbi requested Elijah to point out any in the throng destined to occupy places in Paradise. Elijah answered that there was none, only to contradict himself and point to a passer-by the very next minute. His appearance was such that in him least of all the Rabbi would have suspected a pious man. His garb did not even indicate that he was a Jew. Later Rabbi Baroka discovered by questioning him that he was a prison guard. In the fulfilment of his duties as such he was particularly careful that the virtue of chastity should not be violated in the prison, in which both men and women were kept in detention. Also, his position often brought him into relations with the heathen authorities, and so he was enabled to keep the Jews informed of the disposition entertained toward them by the powers that be. The Rabbi was thus taught that no station in life precluded its occupant from doing good and acting nobly.

Another time Elijah designated two men to whom a great future was assigned in Paradise. Yet these men were nothing more than clowns! They made it their purpose in life to dispel discontent and sorrow by their jokes and their cheery humor, and they used the opportunities granted by their profession to adjust the diffi-

culties and quarrels that disturb the harmony of people living in close contact with each other.<sup>95</sup>

---

94. *Hibbur Yafeh* 8–11 (reprinted by Jellinek in BHM V, 133–135). A different version is found in Ma'asiyyot 12 (reprinted by R. Elijah ha-Kohen in *Me'il Zedakah*, No. 439, and by Jellinek in BHM VI, 131–133. The latter did not know that R. Elijah ha-Kohen used Ma'asiyyot for his text). Comp. also Ma'asiyyot ed. Gaster 96–97. For Judeo-German and later German versions, see Zunz, *Gottesdienstliche Vorträge* (second edition, 138). A version agreeing with neither of the two just mentioned is given by Peter Venerabilis; comp. *R.E.J.*, XLIII, 284; See also *ibid.* VIII, 64–73 and Gaster, *Exempla*, No. 393. The antiquity of the legend is attested by Mohammed who reproduces it in the Koran (18.59–82) in his anachronistic fashion. There is no valid reason to doubt the Jewish origin of this legend, especially if one considers the fact that Elijah appears as the "vindicator of God's justice" in the old Haggadah, preceding the Koran by centuries. It may not be out of place to quote a few examples of this rôle, played by Elijah. At the destruction of Jerusalem Elijah walked about among the inhabitants of the city, who were dying of starvation, to find out whether they deserved their sad fate. Coming across a young child, he said to him: "Repeat the words I am going to recite to you, and thou shalt live." But when the child heard the Shema' recited by Elijah, he preferred death to proclaiming God's unity. And the child died hugging and kissing his idol. See Sifra 26.30; Sanhedrin 63b. It is noteworthy that in these passages Elijah received the attribute **הצדיק**, literally "the righteous one", but it very likely means: "he who acknowledged God's justice." Elijah once remarked to a great saint: "You are astounded why the Messiah has not come yet. To-day is the Day of Atonement, and on this day of repentance many a virgin is deflowered in your city of Nehardea." See Yoma 19b. The young widow of a promising scholar was inconsolable at the premature death of her husband, and exclaimed all the time: "God said of the Torah: 'It is thy life and the length of thy days' (comp. Deut. 30.2); Where is the length of my husband's days, who devoted his life to the study of the Torah?" None of the great scholars could explain the premature death of their young disciple. But Elijah went to see the widow, and in his conversation with her led her to admit certain failings of her deceased husband and consequently to acknowledge that his death was a deserved punishment. See Shabbat 13a–13b; ER 15, 76; ARN 2, 8, and parallel passages cited by Schechter. Most of the incidents narrated of Elijah's life in the Midrashim ER and EZ (comp. note 70) have no other purpose but to vindicate God's justice in the history of nations and in the



lives of individuals. Comp. Friedmann, introduction to ER 31–32. For the dependence of the Arabic Khadhir legend on the Jewish Elijah Haggadah, see Friedlaender, *Die Chadhirlegende*, 255, *seq.*

95. Ta'anit 22a. A similar lesson on the impossibility to judge things by appearances was given by Elijah to another wise and pious Rabbi when they were walking together. Passing by a carcass, the Rabbi put his hand to his nose in order not to inhale the awful stench, whereas Elijah walked hard by the carcass without taking the slightest notice of it. Shortly after a proud and haughty man passed by them, whereupon Elijah put his hand to his nose. Astonished at this strange behavior, the Rabbi asked him to explain it. Elijah replied: "The proud man is worse than the carcass; if one touches a carcass, he becomes defiled only until sunset (Lev. 11.24); but contact with the proud generates impurities lasting for a long time. Kab ha-Yashar 7, whence Ma'asiyyot (Bagdad edition, No. 89). Comp. WR (end).

## ELIJAH AND THE ANGEL OF DEATH

**A**mong the many benevolent deeds of Elijah, special mention ought to be made of his rescue of those doomed by a heavenly decree to fall into the clutches of the Angel of Death. He brought these rescues about by warning the designated victims of their impending fate, and urging them to do good deeds, which would prove a protection against death.

There was once a pious and rich man with a beautiful and saintly daughter. She had had the misfortune of losing three husbands in succession, each on the day after the wedding. These sorrows determined her never again to enter into the marriage state. A cousin of hers, the nephew of her father, induced by the poverty of his parents, journeyed from his distant home to apply for help to his rich uncle. Scarcely had he laid eyes upon his lovely cousin when he fell a victim to her charms. In vain her father sought to dissuade his nephew from marrying his daughter. But the fate of his predecessors did not affright him, and the wedding took place. While he was

standing under the wedding canopy, Elijah came to him in the guise of an old man, and said: "My son, I want to give thee a piece of advice. While thou art seated at the wedding dinner, thou wilt be approached by a ragged, dirty beggar, with hair like nails. As soon as thou catchest sight of him, hasten to seat him beside thee, set food and drink before him, and be ready to grant whatever he may ask of thee. Do as I say, and thou wilt be protected against harm. Now I shall leave thee and go my way." At the wedding feast, a stranger as described by Elijah appeared, and the bridegroom did according to Elijah's counsel. After the wedding the stranger revealed his identity, introducing himself as the messenger of the Lord sent to take the young husband's life. The supplications of the bridegroom failed to move him; he refused to grant a single day's respite. All he yielded was permission to the young husband to bid farewell to his newly-wed wife. When the bride saw that what she had feared was coming to pass, she repaired to the Angel of Death and argued with him: "The Torah distinctly exempts the newly-wed from all duties for a whole year. If thou deprivest my husband of life, thou wilt give the lie to the Torah." Thereupon God commanded the Angel of Death to desist, and, when the relatives of the bride came to prepare the grave for the groom, they found him well and unharmed.<sup>96</sup>

A similar thing befell the son of the great and extremely pious scholar Rabbi Reuben. To him came the Angel of Death and announced that his only son would have to die. The pious man was resigned. "We mortals can do nothing to oppose a Divine decree," he said, "but I pray thee, give him thirty days' respite, that I may see him married." The Angel of Death acquiesced. The Rabbi told no one of his encounter, waited until the appointed time was drawing to a close, and, on the very last day, the thirtieth, he arranged his son's wedding feast. On that day, the



bridegroom-to-be met Elijah, who told him of his approaching death. A worthy son of his father, he said: “Who may oppose God? And am I better than Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob? They, too, had to die.” Elijah told him furthermore, that the Angel of Death would appear to him in the guise of a ragged, dirty beggar, and he advised him to receive him in the kindest possible manner, and in particular he was to insist upon his taking food and drink from him. All happened as Elijah had predicted, and his advice, too, proved efficacious, for the heart of the Angel of Death, who finally revealed his identity with the beggar, was softened by the entreaties of the father, combined with the tears of the young wife, who resorted to the argument cited above, of the year of exemption from duty granted to the newly-married. The Angel of Death, disarmed by the amiable treatment accorded to him, himself went before the throne of God and presented the young wife’s petition. The end was that God added seventy years to the life of Rabbi Reuben’s son.<sup>97</sup>

96. Tan. Haazinu 8. It is difficult to determine with certainty the relation of this legend to the story of Tobit, as it would be a rash conclusion to consider the former directly dependent upon the latter. The legend about R. Akiba’s daughter (Shabbat 156b) has obviously influenced our legend. The astrologers predicted that the daughter of this famous Rabbi would die on the day of her wedding. This prophecy would have been fulfilled, had she not, at the moment when the serpent was to sting her, hastened to the door to give alms to a beggar, and instead of being killed by the serpent, it was killed by her. As to the angel of death assuming the appearance of a beggar, see text on pp. 34–35. The motive: “Charity delivereth from death” (Prov. 10.2; according to the interpretation of the Rabbis, צדקה *loc. cit.*) is also found in the legend about the youth who was saved by Elijah from the gallows as a reward for his having been very generous to his parents (*Oseh Fele*, II, 21, *seq.*; it is of very late origin); also in the diffuse legend about R. Phineas, *ibid.*, 23, *seq.* Comp. also the references in next note.

97. Ma’asiyyot, No. 1, and, with some additions, Ma’asiyyot (Gaster’s edition, 139, 100); comp. also BHM V, 152–154, where this legend is republished from *Me’il Zedakah*, No. 434. Jellinek did not know that the author of this book reproduced this legend from Ma’asiyyot. Another version of this legend occurs in Midrash ‘Aseret ha-Dib-rot 83–84, where, however, Elijah does not play any part at all.—Elijah’s activity is not limited to the helping of the pious to save them from death, poverty, and physical pain; he sometimes comes to relieve mental pain and anguish. A very saintly man was once punished for his excessive self-consciousness by being misled to sin by a female demon. God wished thus to humiliate him for his pride in his continence. Long and intense were the mental sufferings of this pious man, who could not for a moment forget his sin. But having been humiliated for a sufficiently long time, he was visited by Elijah who informed him that the beautiful woman who misled him to sin was not a human being but a spirit, and his sin was accordingly not a real one. Tan. B. I, 20. Comp. Yerushalmi Shabbat 13b. Sometimes Elijah himself inflicted punishment upon the pious for their frailties and failings, that they might mend their ways. A rich and learned young man once decided to take up some trade and profession, but not knowing what to choose, he resolved to look around before making up his mind. He first visited the market-place to study the life of the merchants, and when he saw that commerce was carried on by lying and cheating, he gave up the idea of becoming a merchant. Finally he noticed a man tilling the soil (it was none else but Elijah), and asked him what his business was. Elijah replied: “I till the soil to provide food for myself, my wife, and children, the poor and the needy, the animals of the fields, the fowl of the air, and the beasts of the earth.” The young man thereupon decided to stay with Elijah, and became a tiller of the soil. The latter took him to his house, and promised to fulfill all his wishes. The young man, however, had only one wish: to be married. Elijah knowing who was destined to become this man’s wife, took him to her (she lived in a place a three-days’ journey distant from them; but Elijah brought the young man to her in a second), and they were married. In his new happy state the young man entirely forgot his resolution to become a tiller of the soil. At the end of seven days Elijah appeared to him, and informed him that as a punishment for his having neglected his duty for seven days, he would spend seven years in slavery. Elijah’s prediction came true. On his way to his family (אבותיו) is not to be taken literally; his father was dead), with his wife, her slaves and bondwomen, the caravan halted near a big river. While the young man was trying to wash his feet in the river, Elijah appeared, seized him, and carried him off to a distant country, where he sold him into slavery. The young man’s wife did not complain, but was convinced that “whatever God did was for



the best." She settled down in the place where her husband disappeared, and opened a store for the sale of corn, in the hope that her husband would turn up in the course of time. After five years she recognized her husband as a slave of a corn merchant. Their joy was great, and also their trust in God. When the young man told his wife that heaven decreed seven years of slavery against him, of which two years were still lacking, they parted without a murmur. At the termination of the seventh year Elijah brought the young man to his wife, and henceforth they lived happily together. See *'Aseret ha-Dibrot*, 85–86.

## TEACHER OF THE KABBALAH

The frequent meetings between Elijah and the teachers of the law of the Talmudic time were invested with personal interest only. Upon the development of the Torah they had no influence whatsoever. His relation to the mystic science was of quite other character. It is safe to say that what Moses was to the Torah, Elijah was to the Kabbalah.

His earliest relation to it was established through Rabbi Simon ben Yohai and his son Rabbi Eliezer. For thirteen years he visited them twice daily in their subterranean hiding-place, and imparted the secrets of the Torah to them.<sup>98</sup> A thousand years later, Elijah again gave the impetus to the development of the Kabbalah, for it was he that revealed mysteries, first to the Nazirite Rabbi Jacob, then to his disciple Abraham ben Isaac Ab Bet Din, and, finally, to the disciple of the latter, Abraham ben David. The mysteries in the books "Peliash" and "Kānah", the author Elkanah owed wholly to Elijah. He had appeared to him in the form of a venerable old man, and had imparted to him the secret lore taught in the heavenly academy. Besides, he led him to a fiery rock whereon mysterious characters were engraved, which were deciphered by Elkanah.

After his disciple had thus become thoroughly impregnated with mystical teachings, Eli-

jah took him to the tomb of the Patriarchs, and thence to the heavenly academy. But the angels, little pleased by the intrusion of one "born of woman", inspired him with such terror that he besought Elijah to carry him back to earth. His mentor allayed his fears, and long continued to instruct him in the mystical science, according to the system his disciple has recorded in his two works.<sup>99</sup>

The Kabbalists in general were possessed of the power to cite Elijah, to conjure him up by means of certain formulas.<sup>100</sup> One of them, Rabbi Joseph della Reyna, once called upon Elijah in this way, but it proved his own undoing. He was a saintly scholar, and he had conceived no less a purpose than to bring about the redemption of man by the conquest of the angel Samael, the Prince of Evil. After many prayers and vigils and long indulgence in fasting, and other ascetic practices, Rabbi Joseph united himself with his five disciples for the purpose of conjuring up Elijah. When the prophet, obeying the summons, suddenly stood before him, Rabbi Joseph spoke as follows: "Peace be with thee, our master! True prophet, bearer of salvation, be not displeased with me that I have troubled thee to come hither. God knows, I have not done it for myself, and not for mine own honor. I am zealous for the name and the honor of God, and I know thy desire is the same as mine, for it is thy vocation to make the glory of God to prevail on earth. I pray thee, therefore, to grant my petition, tell me with what means I can conquer Satan." Elijah at first endeavored to dissuade the Rabbi from his enterprise. He described the great power of Satan, ever growing as it feeds upon the sins of mankind. But Rabbi Joseph could not be made to desist. Elijah then enumerated what measures and tactics he would have to observe in his combat with the fallen angel. He enumerated the pious, saintly deeds that would win the interest of the archangel Sandalphon in his



undertaking, and from this angel he would learn the method of warfare to be pursued. The Rabbi followed out Elijah's directions carefully, and succeeded in summoning Sandalphon to his assistance. If he had continued to obey instructions implicitly, and had carried out all Sandalphon advised, the Rabbi would have triumphed over Satan and hastened the redemption of the world. Unfortunately, at one point the Rabbi committed an indiscretion, and he lost the great advantages he had gained over Satan, who used his restored power to bring ruin upon him and his disciples.<sup>101</sup>

The radical transformation in the character of Kabbalistic teaching which is connected with the name of Rabbi Isaac Loria likewise is an evidence of Elijah's activity. Elijah sought out this "father of the Kabbalistic Renaissance", and revealed the mysteries of the universe to him. Indeed, he had shown his interest in him long before any one suspected the future greatness of Rabbi Isaac. Immediately after his birth, Elijah appeared to the father of the babe, and enjoined him not to have the rite of circumcision performed until he should be told by Elijah to proceed. The eighth day of the child's life arrived, the whole congregation was assembled at the synagogue<sup>102</sup> to witness the solemn ceremonial, but to the great astonishment of his fellow-townsmen the father delayed it. The people naturally did not know he was waiting for Elijah to appear, and he was called upon once and again to have the ceremony take place. But he did not permit the impatience of the company to turn him from his purpose. Suddenly, Elijah, unseen, of course, by the others, appeared to him, and bade him have the ceremony performed. Those present were under the impression that the father was holding the child on his knees during the circumcision; in reality, however, it was Elijah. After the rite was completed, Elijah handed the infant back to the father with the words: "Here

is thy child. Take good care of it, for it will spread a brilliant light over the world."<sup>103</sup>

It was also Elijah who in a similar way informed Rabbi Eliezer, the father of Rabbi Israel Baal Shem Tob,—the father of him whose name is unrivalled in the annals of the Hasidic Kabbalah—that a son would be born to him who should enlighten the eyes of Israel. This Rabbi Eliezer was justly reputed to be very hospitable. He was in the habit of stationing guards at the entrances to the village in which he lived, and they were charged to bring all strangers to his house. In heaven it was ordained that Rabbi Eliezer's hospitable instincts should be put to a test. Elijah was chosen for the experiment. On a Sabbath afternoon, arrayed in the garb of a beggar, he entered the village with knapsack and staff. Rabbi Eliezer, taking no notice of the fact that the beggar was desecrating the Sabbath, received him kindly, attended to his bodily wants, and the next morning, on parting with him, gave him some money besides. Touched by his kind-heartedness, Elijah revealed his identity and the purpose of his disguise, and told him that, as he had borne the trial so well, he would be rewarded by the birth of a son who should "enlighten the eyes of Israel."<sup>104</sup>

---

98. Zohar Hadash Ki-Tabo (beginning); Zohar Shir beginning *ש"ך חדי*; Tikkune Zohar (beginning). Friedmann, introduction to ER, 38–40, gives a list of all the passages in the Zohar dealing with Elijah's relations to R. Simeon and his son R. Eleazar. Tikkune Zohar, No. 17, contains an exposé of the Zoharic Kabbalah by Elijah. This exposé found its way into the Sefardic prayer-book. Comp. also note 52.

99. As for Elijah's being the teacher of R. Jacob and R. Abraham b. Isaac, see *Shem ha-Gedolim*, 3–4; Jellinek, *Auswahl Kabbalistischer Mystik*, 4–5. Comp. also Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, I, s. v. "Abraham ben David of Posquières". As to the relation of Elijah to Elkanah, see introduction to Peliah; Jellinek, BHM III, 38 (German part); Graetz, *Geschichte*, VII, note 3.



100. *Emek ha-Meleḥ*, introduction, 10a. Elijah is often conjured to give aid to women at childbirth against Lilith and the machinations of witches.

101. לֵקוּטֵי שׁ"ס לְהַאֲרִי ז' 55a–59a, which is the oldest printed source of the legend about R. Joseph della Reyna found in many Hebrew, as well as Judeo-German, collections of legends. Vital, *Sha'are Kedushah* (end) refers to this legend in a few words.

102. Formerly the ceremony of circumcision was performed in the synagogue, as it still is to-day in some Oriental countries.

103. Shibhe ha-Ari (beginning) and comp. the references in Schechter's *Studies in Judaism*, II, 323, note 117. A similar story about R. Phinehas is found in *Oseh Fele* II, 22b–23a. During the persecution of the pious by the wicked Jezebel, Elijah displayed great zeal for the observance of the Abrahamic covenant (comp. note 25), and as his reward Cod promised him that he should be present at every ceremony of circumcision. Accordingly the "chair of Elijah" must not be forgotten at the ceremony of circumcision, as he is always present on these occasions, though not visible to the eyes of the ordinary man. See PRE 29; Halakot Gedolot, according to the text of *Shibbale ha-Leket*, 376, No. 6. Comp. *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v., "Elijah's Chair". A child was once brought in for circumcision, and all present greeted him with the customary formula of *Baruk ha-Ba* ("Blessed be he that cometh"), which is at the same time a welcome to Elijah, the guest expected to come. R. Judah he-Hasid of Regensburg, the Sandek at the circumcision ceremony, remained silent. Asked for the reason of his strange silence, he answered: "I do not see Elijah seated at my side." While he was speaking, a venerable old man (comp. note 75) appeared at the window, and R. Judah was seen addressing him. The old man (of course, it was Elijah) declared to them that he refused to come because the child would one day abandon Judaism. The prophecy was fulfilled. See Ma'aseh-buch, No. 180, 54d. Elijah's ubiquity was explained in different ways; see Glasberg, *Zikron la-Rishonim*, 233, seq. In view of Elijah's acting as an assistant to the Sandek, it is quite natural that he is regarded as the patron of those performing the function of Sandek. See the diffuse legend concerning the help granted to the Sandek by Elijah in Rosenberg, אֱלִיהוּ הַנְּבִיא, 34, seq. As his source the author gives the Midrash Wa-Yosha' in MS. But there can be no doubt that this is a pure invention. Rosenberg has the temerity to state that a part of this legend is found in the printed text of this Midrash. This is not the case.

104. Ma'asiyyot Peliot 24–25. Comp. also *Shibhe ha-Besht* (beginning). The admirers of the Gaon, R. Elijah Wilna, the great opponent of R. Israel Baal Shem Tob, tell of their hero's intercourse with Elijah as well. Comp. *Aliyyot Eliyyahu*, 35. I remember to have heard a temptation

legend, similar to the one given in the text, told in Wilna of R. Moses Krammer, the great grandfather of the Gaon; see *Sa'arat Eliyyahu*, 18; *Tr Wilna*, 10. Comp. also the similar legend in Ma'asiyyot (Gaster's edition, 161, 115–116), where אֲבִיּוֹן is to be read instead of הַגְּמוֹן; the angel who tempted the saint assumed the appearance of a beggar. Compare footnote 15 on p. 456 and text on pp. 1016–1017.

## FORERUNNER OF THE MESSIAH

Many-sided though Elijah's participation in the course of historical events is, it cannot be compared with what he is expected to do in the days of the Messiah. He is charged with the mission of ordering the coming time aright and restoring the tribes of Jacob.<sup>105</sup> His Messianic activity thus is to be twofold: he is to be the forerunner of the Messiah, yet in part he will himself realize the promised scheme of salvation. His first task will be to induce Israel to repent when the Messiah is about to come,<sup>106</sup> and to establish peace and harmony in the world.<sup>107</sup> Hence he will have to settle all legal difficulties, and solve all legal problems, that have accumulated since days immemorial,<sup>108</sup> and decide vexed questions of ritual concerning which authors entertain contradictory views. In short, all differences of opinion must be removed from the path of the Messiah.<sup>109</sup> This office of expounder of the law Elijah will continue to occupy even after the reign of peace has been established on earth, and his relation to Moses will be the same Aaron once held.<sup>110</sup>

Elijah's preparatory work will be begun three days before the advent of the Messiah. Then he will appear in Palestine, and will utter a lament over the devastation of the Holy Land, and his wail will be heard throughout the world. The last words of his elegy will be: "Now peace will come upon earth!" When the evil-doers hear this message, they will rejoice. On the second day, he



will appear again and proclaim: "Good will come upon earth!" And on the third his promise will be heard: "Salvation will come upon earth."<sup>111</sup> Then Michael will blow the trumpet, and once more Elijah will make his appearance, this time to introduce the Messiah.<sup>112</sup> To make sure of the identity of the Messiah, the Jews will demand that he perform the miracle of resurrection before their eyes, reviving such of the dead as they had known personally.<sup>113</sup> But the Messiah will do the following seven wonders: He will bring Moses and the generation of the desert to life; Korah and his band he will raise from out of the earth; he will revive the Ephraimitic Messiah, who was slain; he will show the three holy vessels of the Temple, the Ark, the flask of manna, and the cruse of sacred oil, all three of which disappeared mysteriously; he will wave the sceptre given him by God; he will grind the mountains of the Holy Land into powder like straw, and he will reveal the secret of redemption. Then the Jews will believe that Elijah is the Elijah promised to them, and the Messiah introduced by him is the true Messiah.<sup>114</sup>

The Messiah<sup>115</sup> will have Elijah blow the trumpet, and, at the first sound, the primal light, which shone before the week of the Creation, will reappear; at the second sound the dead will arise, and with the swiftness of wind assemble around the Messiah from all corners of the earth; at the third sound, the Shekinah will become visible to all; the mountains will be razed at the fourth sound, and the Temple will stand in complete perfection as Ezekiel described it.<sup>116</sup>

During the reign of peace, Elijah will be one of the eight princes forming the cabinet of the Messiah.<sup>117</sup> Even the coming of the great judgment day will not end his activity. On that day the children of the wicked who had to die in infancy on account of the sins of their fathers will be found among the just, while their fathers will be ranged on the other side. The babes will im-

plore their fathers to come to them, but God will not permit it. Then Elijah will go to the little ones, and teach them how to plead in behalf of their fathers. They will stand before God and say: "Is not the measure of good, the mercy of God, larger than the measure of chastisements? If, then, we died for the sins of our fathers, should they not now for our sakes be granted the good, and be permitted to join us in Paradise?" God will give assent to their pleadings, and Elijah will have fulfilled the word of the prophet Malachi; he will have brought back the fathers to the children.<sup>118</sup>

The last act of Elijah's brilliant career will be the execution of God's command to slay Sam-ael, and so banish evil forever.<sup>119</sup>

---

105. Ecclus. 48.10–11. This is more than a free rendering of Malachi 3.25; to the author of Ecclus. Elijah is very likely the promised Messiah. Traces of this view are found in rabbinical sources, see Friedmann, introduction to ER, 25–37; Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 346, *seq.* The statement that Elijah is one of the names of the Messiah is inferred from Malachi, *loc. cit.*; Mishle 19, 87. This shows that even later this biblical passage was taken to refer to the Messiah. But since it later became a fixed conception that the Messiah must be a "son of David", there is no other way out of the difficulty than to give the name Elijah to the son of David. On the four Messiahs (that is: Messiah the son of David, the Messiah of the tribe of Joseph, Elijah, and the priest of righteousness), see Ginzberg, *ibid.*

106. PRE 43 and 47. This was probably the prevalent notion in the early formative period of Christianity, as may be inferred from the New Testament account of John the Baptist (=Elijah), the alleged precursor of the Messiah. On repentance as the *conditio sine qua non* of the "final redemption", see Sanhedrin 97b; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 1, 63d; PRE 43; Tan. B. III, 111; Tan. Behukkotai 3; Philo, *De Praemiis et Poenis*, 8. Comp. also note 84.

107. Mishnah and Tosefta at the end of 'Eduyyot, where different views are cited concerning the means by which Elijah will restore peace and harmony in Israel. All these views presuppose that Elijah's chief activity will consist in restoring the purity of the family. See the thorough discussion on this point by Friedmann, introduction to ER, 20–24. Comp. also note 35.

108. Mishnah and Tosefta at the end of 'Eduyyot. Comp. the following note.



109. Menahot 45a. The phrase, "This must remain undecided until Elijah comes", is of frequent occurrence in tannaitic literature. Comp. the references given by Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 304, *seq.*, where the meaning of this expression is also fully discussed.

110. Zohar III, 27b–28a.

111. PR 35, 161. This passage also gives him the designation of "Harbinger of good tidings", which later became his favorite appellation; see Ginzberg, *Geonica*, I, 55, note 1. See also the Messianic Midrash in Lekah IV, 259, and Tefillat R. Simon, 123 (top).

112. Otot ha-Mashiah, 62; Tefillat R. Simeon, 125. It is noteworthy that according to a widespread belief, Elijah, with the "rest of the righteous", will flee into the desert, whence they will return after a stay of forty-five days, led by the Messiah, who will then begin his work of redemption. PK 5, 49a–49b (משיח=Elijah; see note 105); PR 15, 72a–73a; Pirke Mashiah, 72; ShR 5.2; BaR 11.2; Shir 2.9; Aggadat Shir 5, 38; Ruth R. 2.14; Rev. 12.6. Comp. Friedmann, introduction to ER 25–26; Bousset, *Antichrist Legende*, 212–213 and 203–208. The part ascribed to Elijah in the work of Messianic redemption in Zerubbabel, 56, and Otot ha-Mashiah, 62, is rather an unimportant one compared with that assigned to him in the other Midrashim cited above. Christian authors (comp. *f. i.* Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 49) mention the Jewish belief that Elijah will anoint the Messiah; but the old rabbinic writings know nothing of this function of Elijah's, and the prevalent opinion in these works is that the Messiah will not be anointed at all. Only later Jewish writers, as the Karaite Joseph ha-Levi (in Neubauer, *The LIII Chapter of Isaiah* 1.21) and Nahmanides, *Wikkuah*, mention the anointing of the Messiah by Elijah, and one may be permitted to question whether these writers represent an original Jewish view or not. See Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 349, note 4.

113. Aggadat Shir 7, 44. In Christian legendary lore it is Elijah who demands the same sign from the anti-Christ as his credential; comp. Bousset, *Antichrist Legende*, 203. In the Jewish version of this belief it is presupposed that the resurrected dead will have the same appearance and form as they had before their death. See Apocalypse of Baruch 50.2–4; Pesahim 68a.

114. Pirke Mashiah, 72; Pirke R. Yoshiyyahu, 115. On the view that Moses will lead the "generation of the wilderness", see text on p. 541. As to Korah's rising from the earth, see text on p. 20. On the revealing of the three holy vessels which were hidden for a long time, see text on p. 572. On the scripture of the Messiah, see text on p. 730. On the view that the mountains will disappear in Messianic times, see text on p. 76, and note 116; p. 109, footnote 31. According to a Midrash quoted in *Rimze Hafiarot*, Nahamu, Elijah and Jeremiah will hasten to the

Holy Land, seize it, and give it to Israel as a possession. Jeremiah's part in the work of redemption is presupposed in Matth. 16.14. Compare also p. 1071, footnote 13.

115. It is Elijah who, during the long exile, consoles the Messiah for the suffering inflicted upon him for the atonement of Israel's sins. See Konen 29; Ma'aseh R. Joshua, 50; text on pp. 19–20.

116. Apocalypse of Daniel (towards the end). In other (earlier) sources it is God who blows the Shofar; see text on p. 230 and Alphabet R. Akiba 31. Comp. also Otot ha-Mashiah 61–62, where it is said that Michael will blow the Shofar twice. On the primeval light, see text on p. 84. On the levelling of the mountains, see note 114.

117. Sukkah 52b. On the eight princes see footnote 142 on p. 99.

118. Koheleth 4.1. As to the doctrine that the death of young children is due to the sins of the fathers, see Hashkem 3b, and text on p. 605. Opinions differ as to the age of the children who will have a share in the world to come. According to some, all children, even those who only lived a moment, have a share, while others maintain that children are not entitled to a share, unless they died at an age when they could speak (*i. e.*, say Amen after a prayer). Other authorities think that male children are entitled to a share as soon as they are circumcized. One Rabbi is very generous, and puts embryos on equal footing with grown up children. See Yerushalmi Shebi'it 4, 45c. The custom, first referred to by the Babylonian Gaon R. Nahshon (comp. Sha'are Zedek, 22a, No. 5), of circumcizing children who died before their eighth day, has its origin in the above-mentioned view that only children after circumcision are entitled to a share in the world to come. On the status of the children of the wicked and of the idolaters in the world to come, see Yerushalmi Shebi'it, *loc. cit.*; Bera-kot 9, 13b; Tosefta Sanhedrin 13.1, Babli 110b. Connected with the conception that God in His mercy would not have the children suffer for the sins of the fathers is the view that in the time to come "the bastards", that is, the offspring of forbidden marriages, will not be excluded from the community of Israel. See Kiddushin 72b; Tosefta 5.4; WR 32.8; Koheleth, *loc. cit.* Against this view comp. ARN 22, 53, and Wisdom 4.6.

119. Abkir in Yalkut I, 153. Compare with p. 304; text on p. 996; note 33. Comp. also the statement: "Happy is he who met Elijah or sat next to him; such a man is destined for the world to come"; Talmud Kallah 3 (end). This is probably a paraphrase of Ecclus. 48.11, where the author of Kallah very likely read *יחיה כי יחיה ומת*, and, according to a well-known hermeneutical rule of the Hag-gadah, explained the phrase *יחיה יחיה* in the sense of eternal life, or, as the Rabbis express it, "life in the world to come". Comp., *e. g.*, the midrashic explanation of 2 Kings 20.1 in Berakot 10a. The old versions of Ecclus. have simi-



lar interpretations of the text; see Smend, *Die Weisheit des Jesus Sirach*, *ad loc.* The old piyyut אליהו הנביא, sung at the termination of the Sabbath, closes with the stanza: “Happy is he who saw his (Elijah’s) face in a dream; happy

is he whom he offered the greeting of peace, or to whom he responded the greeting of peace.” It is safe to assume that the Paitan made use of Kallah, *loc. cit.*, or of a source akin to it. As to seeing Elijah in a dream, see note 93.







## XIV ELISHA AND JONAH

### ELISHA THE DISCIPLE OF ELIJAH

The voices of the thousands of prophets of his time were stilled when Elijah was translated from earth to heaven. With him vanished the prophetic spirit of those who in former times had in no wise been his inferiors.<sup>1</sup> Elisha was the only one among them whose prophetic powers were not diminished. On the contrary, they were strengthened, as a reward for the unhesitating readiness with which he obeyed Elijah's summons, and parted with the field he was ploughing, and with all else he possessed, in favor of the community. Thenceforward he remained Elijah's unwearying companion. When the angel descended from heaven to take Elijah from earth, he found the two so immersed in a learned discussion that he could not attract their attention, and he had to return, his errand unfulfilled.<sup>2</sup>

Elijah's promise to bestow a double portion of his wondrous spirit upon his disciple was realized instantaneously. During his life Elisha performed sixteen miracles, and eight was all his master had performed. The first of them, the crossing of the Jordan, was more remarkable than the corresponding wonder done by Elijah, for Elisha traversed the river alone, and Elijah had

been accompanied by Elisha. Two saints always have more power than one by himself.<sup>3</sup>

His second miracle, the "healing" of the waters of Jericho, so that they became fit to drink, resulted in harm to himself, for the people who had earned their livelihood by the sale of wholesome water were very much incensed against the prophet for having spoiled their trade. Elisha, whose prophetic powers enabled him to read both the past and the future of these tradesmen, knew that they, their ancestors, and their posterity had "not even the aroma of good about them." Therefore he cursed them. Suddenly a forest sprang up and the bears that infested it devoured the murmuring traders. The wicked fellows were not undeserving of the punishment they received, yet Elisha was made to undergo a very serious sickness, by way of correction for having yielded to passion.<sup>4</sup> In this he resembled his master Elijah; he allowed wrath and zeal to gain the mastery over him. God desired that the two great prophets might be purged of this fault. Accordingly, when Elisha rebuked King Jehoram of Israel, the spirit of prophecy forsook him, and he had to resort to artificial means to reawaken it within himself.<sup>5</sup>

Like his teacher, Elisha was always ready to help the poor and needy, as witness his sympa-



thy with the widow of one of the sons of the prophets, and the effective aid he extended to her. Her husband had been none other than Obadiah, who, though a prophet, had at the same time been one of the highest officials at the court of the sinful king Ahab. By birth an Edomite, Obadiah had been inspired by God to utter the prophecy against Edom. In his own person he embodied the accusation against Esau, who had lived with his pious parents without following their example, while Obadiah, on the contrary, lived in constant intercourse with the iniquitous King Ahab and his still more iniquitous spouse Jezebel without yielding to the baneful influence they exercised.<sup>6</sup> This same Obadiah not only used his own fortune, but went to the length of borrowing money on interest from the future king, in order to have the wherewithal to support the prophets who were in hiding. On his death, the king sought to hold the children responsible for the debt of the father. In her despair the pious wife of Obadiah<sup>7</sup> went to the graveyard, and there she cried out: "O thou God-fearing man!" At once a heavenly voice was heard questioning her: "There are four God-fearing men, Abraham, Joseph, Job, and Obadiah. To which of them dost thou desire to speak?" "To him of whom it is said, 'He feared the Lord greatly.'"

She was led to the grave of the prophet Obadiah, where she poured out the tale of her sorrow. Obadiah told her to take the small remnant of oil she still had to the prophet Elisha and request him to intercede for him with God, "for God", he said, "is my debtor, seeing that I provided a hundred prophets, not only with bread and water, but also with oil to illuminate their hiding-place, for do not the Scriptures say: 'He that hath pity upon the poor lendeth unto the Lord?'" Forthwith the woman carried out his behest. She went to Elisha, and he helped her by making her little cruse of oil fill vessels upon

vessels without number, and when the vessels gave out, she fetched potsherds, saying, "May the will that made empty vessels full, make broken vessels perfect." So it was. The oil ceased to flow only when the supply of potsherds as well as vessels gave out. In her piety the woman wanted to pay her tithe-offering, but Elisha was of the opinion that, as the oil had been bestowed upon her miraculously, she could keep it wholly and entirely for her own use. Furthermore, Elisha reassured her as to the power of the royal princes to do her harm: "The God who will close the jaws of the lions set upon Daniel, and who did close the jaws of the dogs in Egypt, the same God will blind the eyes of the sons of Ahab, and deafen their ears, so that they can do thee no harm."<sup>8</sup> Not only was the poor widow helped out of her difficulties, her descendants unto all times were provided for. The oil rose in price, and it yielded so much profit that they never suffered want.<sup>9</sup>

---

1. Seder 'Olam 21; Tosefta Sotah 12.5; Megillah 14a; Shir 4.11; Ekah 4 (end). Comp. Ratner on Seder 'Olam, *loc. cit.* The statement in the two Midrashim just mentioned, that in Elijah's time there were sixty myriads of prophets (according to some, double this number), is very likely based on a misconception of the old source given in Seder 'Olam, where so large a number of prophets refers not to the time of Elijah, but to the entire course of Jewish history. The words in the old source read: There were forty-eight prophets and seven prophetesses, whose prophecies are written down in Scripture; but besides them there were as many prophets as men delivered from Egypt (*i. e.*, sixty myriads), whose prophecies, however, were not written down. In the quotation from Seder 'Olam in Megillah the variant is found: "double the number of those who were delivered from Egypt". Four of Elijah's disciples are mentioned by name; they are Micah, Jonah, Obadiah, and Elisha. PRK (Grünnhut's edition, 64). Comp. Index, under these names. Elisha's birthplace was Abel-meholah, "mourning-dance", so called because the inhabitants of this place had the custom of performing dances in the house of mourning. But thus they expressed their trust in God's justice, who rewards the pious after their departure from this life, and who will bring them to life in the time of resurrection. Aguddat



Shemuel, 1 Kings. Comp. *Zeker Natan*, 92a, אבילות No. 2. On the disciples of Elijah and Elisha, see also Targum Deut. 34.3.

2. ER 5, 22–23. Comp. also Ta'anit 10b; Sotah 49a; Berakot 31a, and Yerushalmi 5, 8d. As to the conception that the angel of death has no power over one occupied with the study of the Torah, see text on p. 938, and note 125 appertaining thereto. The angel who came to take Elijah was not the angel of death, but his task was similar to that entrusted to the latter. Comp. Friedmann, Introduction to ER, 16–17.

3. Baraita of 32 Middot, No. 1. For the correct text, see MHG I, XIX. As to the question whether Elisha revived two dead persons (one more than his master Elijah), or only one, see note 21. Neither the eight miracles of Elijah nor the sixteen of Elisha are enumerated in the Midrashim extant to-day, but the reading מִיֵּכֶן אִמְרוֹ in MHG undoubtedly refers to an old source where they were given in detail. Comp. Katzenellenbogen, *Netivot 'Olam*, 9, seq.

4. Sotah 46b–47a. According to the Haggadah, Elisha's mockers were not boys, but grown-up men who "behaved like silly boys". The leading men of Jericho were not entirely free from blame, for if they had done their duty and accompanied the prophet on his way from the city to Bethel, nobody would have dared to insult the prophet Elisha in their presence, and the regrettable incident would not have occurred. See Sotah, *loc. cit.* In this passage it is also stated that the number of men killed by the bears amounted to forty-two, corresponding to the sacrifices brought by Balak (Num. 23.1, seq.), since God records good deeds even if not prompted by good motives; see footnote 39 on p. 862. Comp. also the quotation from an unknown Midrash by Shu'aib 90d; *Hadar* on Num. 23.28; Zohar II, 224a–224b; Kimhi 2 Kings 2.24. The relation of the forty-two sacrifices to the forty-two persons devoured by the bears is not quite clear, and the attempted explanations of the talmudic statement by the commentators are far from being satisfactory. On the sickness of Elisha, see text on pp. 1029–1031.

5. Pesahim 66b. On Elijah's irascibility, see text on pp. 1008. It was on account of the merit of the observance of the Sabbath that God gave victory to Joram and his allies in the war against Moab; Mekilta RS, 162. Compare footnote 35 on p. 954.

6. Sanhedrin 39b; Sifre N., 133; Tan. B. I, 167; WR 13.3; Jerome, introduction to his commentary on Obadiah (who remarks: *Hunc ajunt Hebraei, qui sub rege Samariae Achab...pavit...prophetas*); ER 24, 125–126. Obadiah was reluctant to announce the doom of the nation to which he belonged by birth, but was forced to do it by the seventy-one members of the "heavenly Synedrium"; Aggadot Bereshit 14, 32 (whence *Rimze Haftarot*, Wa-Yishlah). Comp. also *ibid.* 55, 101–114, and 58, 118–119. See fur-

ther text on p. 323; text on p. 579; p. 1058, footnote 104. The Haggadah concerning Obadiah's non-Jewish descent is very likely based upon the fact that he is described in Scripture as a "God-fearing man" (1 Kings 18.3), which later was the usual name of a proselyte. See Schürer, *Geschichte* (fourth edition), III, 174, note 70. During the great famine Ahab said to Obadiah: "It seems that thou art not as worthy a man as the pious of the former generations; Laban was blessed for the merits of Jacob, and Potiphar received blessings on account of Joseph; but thou bringest no blessings to me." A heavenly voice thereupon proclaimed: "And Obadiah feareth the Lord greatly." See Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*; ER, 24, 126. Comp. the following note.

7. ShR 31.4 and Tan. Mishpatim 9 read: Jehoram stretched out his hands to receive the interest paid him by Obadiah. His punishment for taking interest was that Jehu's bow smote him "between his arms" and killed him; see 2 Kings 9.24. Compare with p. 990. That it was Obadiah's widow for whose benefit Elisha performed the miracle with the cruse of oil is presupposed in many old sources, Jewish as well as Christian. Comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 4.2; PK 2, 13b (which reads: Were it not for the merits of Obadiah's widow, Israel would have been destroyed); Tehillim 16, 118; Targum and Theodoretus on 2 Kings 4.1; ps.-Epiphanius, *De Vitis Prophetarum, Obadiah*; Ephraem I, 526C. Comp. also MHG I, 338; Zohar Haddash, Ruth 1.7 (beginning רַבִּי אֶלְכָּסָנְדֵּרִי אֱלִיהוֹ instead of אֶחָזִיקָה הָבָא and perhaps also בְּעוֹלָם הָבָא is to be read instead of בְּעוֹלָה' but it is possible that בְּעוֹלָה' in the mouth of Elijah, addressed to one dwelling in paradise, is the same as בְּעוֹלָם הָבָא when used by those dwelling in "this world"). Comp. also the references in the next note. The Haggadah identifying the prophet Obadiah with Obadiah who was "over the household" of Ahab (see preceding note) is due to an inference from the Haggadah that the "certain woman of the wives of the sons of the prophets" was the widow of Obadiah, the high official of Ahab's court.

8. Tosefta-Targum in Kimhi on 2 Kings 4, and in several MSS.; see the text of Targum published by Luzzatto in Geiger's *Wissenschaftliche Zeitschrift* V, 132–136, and in *Kobez Debarim Nehmadim*, No. 3. The text of the Tosefta-Targum in *Targ*, Way-yera, differs from all the other texts, and contains additional legendary material. On the "four God-fearing men", see 2 ARN 10, 26, and footnote 332 on p. 397, as well as Ozar Midrashim, ed. Wertheimer 42. God's blessings extend and expand that which exists, but do not make things arise "from nothing"; hence it was necessary, in order that Elisha should perform this miracle, that the widow should have some oil in her possession, though its quantity was hardly sufficient to anoint the little finger. See Zohar I, 88a.

9. BR 35.3.



## THE SHUNAMMITE

The great woman of Shunem, the sister of Abishag and wife of the prophet Iddo,<sup>10</sup> also had cause to be deeply grateful to Elisha. When Elisha came to Shunem on his journey through the land of Israel, his holiness made a profound impression upon the Shunammite. Indeed, the prophet's eye was so awe-inspiring that no woman could look him in the face and live.<sup>11</sup> Contrary to the habit of most women, who are intent upon diminishing their expenses and their toil, the Shunammite took delight in the privilege of welcoming the prophet to her house as a guest. She observed that not even a fly dared approach close to the holy man, and a grateful fragrance exhaled from his person. "If he were not so great a saint," she said, "and the holiness of the Lord did not invest him, there were no such pleasant fragrance about him." That he might be undisturbed, she assigned the best chambers in the house to the prophet. He on his part, desiring to show his appreciation of her hospitality, knew no better return for her kindness than to promise that she should be blessed with a child within a year.<sup>12</sup> The woman protested: "O, my husband is an old man, nor am I of an age to bear children; the promise cannot be fulfilled." Yet it happened as the prophet had foretold. Before a twelvemonth had passed, she was a mother.

A few years later her child died a sudden death. The mother repaired to the prophet, and lamented before him: "O that the vessel had remained empty, rather than it should be filled first, and then be left void." The prophet admitted that, though as a rule he was acquainted with all things that were to happen, God had left him in the dark about the misfortune that had befallen her. With trust in God, he gave his staff to his disciple Gehazi, and sent him to bring the boy back to life. But Gehazi was un-

worthy of his master. His conduct toward the Shunammite was not becoming a disciple of the prophet, and, above all, he had no faith in the possibility of accomplishing the mission entrusted to him. Instead of obeying the behest of Elisha, not to speak a word on his way to the child of the Shunammite, Gehazi made sport of the task laid upon him. To whatever man he met he addressed the question: "Dost thou suppose this staff can bring the dead back to life?" The result was that he forfeited the power of executing the errand with which he had been charged. Elisha himself had to perform the miracle. The prophet uttered the prayer: "O Lord of the world! As Thou didst wonders through my master Elijah, and didst permit him to bring the dead to life, so, I pray Thee, do Thou perform a wonder through me, and let me restore life to this lad."<sup>13</sup> The prayer was granted, and the child was revived. The act of the prophet proves the duty of gratitude in return for hospitality. Elisha did not attempt to resuscitate his own kith and kin who had been claimed by death; he invoked a miracle for the sake of the woman who had welcomed him kindly to her house.<sup>14</sup>

10. PRE 33. Comp. Luria, *ad loc.*, who calls attention to the reading מִן, according to which she was the mother, not the wife, of the prophet Iddo. The old sources identify Iddo with the prophet mentioned in 1 Kings 13.1, *seq.* Comp. Seder 'Olam R. 20; Tosefta Sanhedrin 14.5; Sifre D., 177; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 8.5, and X. 4.4. The reading Ἀχίαν in the last passage does not occur in the better texts; comp. Niese. In PRE 111 is perhaps to be read instead of נָדָה. Zohar I, 7b (introduction), and II, 44a, considers the Shunammite to have been the mother of the prophet Habakkuk. The same statement is found in *Rimze Haftarot*, Shebu'ot 2.

11. PRE 33.

12. Zohar II, 44a, based in the main on Berakot 10b; Baba Mezi'a 87a; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29b; WR 24.6. For the fragrance issuing from the bodies of the pious, see text on p. 337; text on p. 546. On the view that the flies cannot approach the pious, see text on p. 831. The day on which Elisha "promised" a child to the



Shunammite woman was New Year, when God decides the fate of all men for the coming year. See Zohar I, 64b, 160b; II, 44a; III, 231.

13. PRE 33; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29b; Mekilta Amalek 1, 53b. As to Gehazi's denying the quickening of the dead and as to his sensuousness, see Sifre Z., 202, and text on p. 1029. On the heat that caused the death of the child, see Yerushalmi Yebamot 15, 14d. It is incumbent on a disciple to visit his master on festival days, and when the Shunammite told her husband on a week-day that she was going to visit Elisha (2 Kings 4.23), he was greatly surprised. See Rosh ha-Shanah 16b; Zohar III, 265b.

14. ShR 4.2; footnote 11 on p. 994. Comp. also Batte Midrashot, III, 25, which reads: The son of the Shunammite was resuscitated from death as a reward for her hospitality to Elisha. This prophet revived two persons (see note 21), whereas his master Elijah only one, and this distinction of Elisha was his reward for having given up all his possessions and joined Elijah at the command of God; See ER 5, 22–23.

## GEHAZI

Gehazi, proved untrustworthy by his conduct on this occasion, again aroused the ire of the prophet when he disregarded the order not to accept money from Naaman, the Syrian captain. He did not succeed in deceiving the prophet. On his return from Naaman he found Elisha occupied with the study of the chapter in the Mishnah Shabbat which deals with the eight reptiles. The prophet Elisha greeted him with the rebuke: "Thou villain! the time has come for me to be rewarded for the study of the Mishnah about the eight reptiles. May my reward be that the disease of Naaman afflict thee and thy descendants for evermore." Scarcely had these words escaped his lips, when he saw the leprosy come out on Gehazi's face.<sup>15</sup> Gehazi deserved the punishment on account of his base character. He was sensual and envious, and did not believe in the resurrection of the dead. His unworthy qualities were displayed in his conduct toward the Shunammite and toward the disciples of

Elisha. When the pretty Shunammite came to the prophet in her grief over the death of her child, Gehazi took her passionately in his arms, under the pretext of forcing her away from the prophet, on whom she had laid hold in her supplications.

As for the other disciples of Elisha, he endeavored to keep them away from the house of the prophet. He was in the habit of standing without the door. This induced many to turn away and go home, for they reasoned that, if the house were not full to overflowing, Gehazi would not be standing outside. Only after Gehazi's dismissal did the disciples of Elisha increase marvellously. That Gehazi had no faith in the resurrection of the dead, is shown by his incredulity with regard to the child of the Shunammite.<sup>16</sup>

In spite of all these faults, Elisha regretted that he had cast off his disciple, who was a great scholar in the law, especially as Gehazi abandoned himself to a sinful life after leaving the prophet. By means of magnetism he made the golden calves at Beth-el float in the air, and many were brought to believe in the divinity of these idols. Moreover, he engraved the great and awful Name of God in their mouth. Thus they were enabled to speak, and they gave forth the same words God had proclaimed from Sinai: "I am the Lord thy God—Thou shalt have no other gods before Me." Elisha accordingly repaired to Damascus to lead Gehazi back to the paths of righteousness. But he remained impenitent, for he said: "From thyself I have learned that there is no return for him who not only sins himself, but also induces others to sin."<sup>17</sup> So Gehazi died without having done aught to atone for his transgressions, which were so great that he is one of the few Jews who have no share in Paradise.<sup>18</sup> His children inherited his leprosy. He and his three sons are the four leprous men who informed the king of Israel of the precipitate flight of the Syrian host.<sup>19</sup>



Elisha's excessive severity toward his servant Gehazi and toward the mocking boys of Jericho did not go unpunished. He had to endure two periods of disease, and the third sickness that befell him caused his death. He is the first known to history who survived a sickness. Before his death had been the inevitable companion of disease.<sup>20</sup>

A great miracle marked the end of a life rich in miraculous deeds: a dead man revived at the touch of Elisha's bier, and stood on his feet. It was a worthy character for whom the wonder was accomplished—Shallum the son of Tikvah, the husband of Huldah the prophetess, a man of noble descent, who had led a life of lovingkindness. He was in the habit of going daily beyond the city bearing a pitcher of water, from which he gave every traveller to drink, a good deed that received a double reward. His wife became a prophetess, and when he died and his funeral, attended by a large concourse of people, was disturbed by the invasion of the Arameans, he was given new life by contact with the bones of Elisha. He lived to have a son, Hanamel by name.<sup>21</sup>

The death of Elisha was a great misfortune for the Israelites. So long as he was alive, no Aramean troops entered Palestine. The first invasion by them happened on the day of his burial.<sup>22</sup>

15. Sanhedrin 107b (comp. Rashi, *ad loc.*), and Sotah 47a, according to the reading of Yalkut II, on 2 Kings 5. The haggadic writings dwell upon the great humility of Naaman, who appeared before Elisha in a simple manner, without any pomp, though he was commander-in-chief of a great kingdom. See Haserot 35 (as haggadic explanation of the Ketib בִּטְסוֹ in 2 Kings, 5:9; comp. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10.29b); Tan. (or WR?) in *Kad ha-Kemah*, גִּאֹרָה I, 50a but not found in our texts of the Midrashim. Before his conversion, however, Naaman was very proud, and his leprosy was a punishment for his pride. See BaR 7.5.

16. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29b; WR 24.7; PRE 33 (on this passage see Wertheimer, *Batte Midrashot*, III, 19, note 46); Berakot 10b. On the reason of Gehazi's punishment, see Sanhedrin 100a; ARN 9, 41 and 155; footnote 413 on p. 675; text on p. 1028.

17. Sotah 47a; Sanhedrin 107b. In the *Zadokite Fragments* 8.20 reference is made to the "words of Elisha spoken to Gehazi", and it is probable that a pseudepigraphic work containing the history of Elisha and his wicked disciple was known to this sectarian writer. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 53, calls attention to the fact that according to the talmudic passages mentioned above, Gehazi settled in Damascus, the home of this sect.

18. Mishnah Sanhedrin 11 (10).1. Compare footnote 100 on p. 980.

19. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29b.

20. Baba Mezi'a 87a; Sotah 47a; Sanhedrin 107b; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29b. Compare with p. 1025. As to the view that the generations before Elisha did not know of illness which was not fatal, see the references given in footnote 357 on p. 400; text on p. 1050; Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 874 on Ps. 116. On Elisha's disease and severity, see also Hasidim 78, and ps.-Tertullian, *Adversus Marcionias* 3.210, *seq.* The prophet's severity towards his disciple is censured also in Mekilta Yitro 1, 58b, where it is said: Elisha acted against the rule: "Let thy right hand push away and thy left hand bring back."—Tosefta-Targum Kings 5.19 reads: Elisha told Naaman that it was not lawful to bring sacrifices outside the Holy Land, and accordingly if he desires to bring sacrifices to God, he must send them annually to the holy Temple in Jerusalem.

21. PRE 33. According to Koheleth 13.10, it was the false prophet Zedekiah (1 Kings 22.24) who was brought back to life by the contact with Elisha's corpse, but only for a moment, to avoid his burial near Elisha. A similar statement is found in Sanhedrin 47a; Hullin 7b; Tosefta-Targum 2 Kings 13.21; Tehillim 26, 220. In all these sources it is stated that the man who touched Elisha's bones "stood up on his feet", but did not go to his house, for he immediately died and was buried in another place. Tehillim, *loc. cit.*, adds that he was the son of the Shunammite whom Elisha had once resuscitated, and when he died a second time, they threw his corpse near that of Elisha, that he might come to life again. He revived again, but died immediately after, because he was wicked. At all events, the promise made to Elisha by Elijah to give him "a double portion of his spirit" (2 Kings 2.9–10) was fulfilled; the master resuscitated only one person, and the disciple two. Comp. Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*; text on p. 1017; note 3.

22. Tosefta Sotah 12.6. Comp. also ER 8, 39, where פִּוּטְסִין = "fossata", an allusion to כְּרֶה in 2 Kings 6.23. The Arameans esteemed the prophet so highly, that when their king Ben-Hadad became ill, he sent a present to Elisha, the



value of which outweighed all the treasures of Damascus, and requested him to predict the outcome of his illness. See Shir 4.8. On the contrast between the pagan ruler, who in time of illness inquired of the prophet of the Lord, and the Jewish king Ahaziah, who sent his messengers to inquire of Baal-Zebub whether he would recover from his sickness (2 Kings 1.2), see Batte Midrashot, III, 28–29; Aggadat Shir 1, 26. On the divine honors paid to Ben-Hadad and his successor Hazael by the Arameans, see Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 4.6. Israel's victory over the Arameans, under king Joash, was the reward of this king for his refusal to listen to the accusations brought against the prophet Amos by Amaziah (Amos 7.10, *seq.*). The king said to Amaziah: God forbend that the prophet should have uttered such a prophecy; but if he did, he merely obeyed the command of God. See ER 16, 88.

## THE FLIGHT OF JONAH

Among the many thousands<sup>23</sup> of disciples whom Elisha gathered about him during the sixty years<sup>24</sup> and more of his activity, the most prominent was the prophet Jonah. While the master was still alive, Jonah was charged with the important mission of anointing Jehu king.<sup>25</sup> The next task laid upon him was to proclaim their destruction to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.<sup>26</sup> The doom did not come to pass, because they repented of their wrong-doing, and God had mercy upon them. Among the Israelites Jonah was, therefore, known as “the false prophet”. When he was sent to Nineveh to prophesy the downfall of the city, he reflected: “I know to a certainty that the heathen will do penance, the threatened punishment will not be executed, and among the heathen, too, I shall gain the reputation of being a false prophet.”<sup>27</sup> To escape this disgrace, he determined to take up his abode on the sea, where there were none to whom prophecies never to be fulfilled would have to be delivered.

On his arrival at Joppa, there was no vessel in port. To try him, God caused a storm to arise,

and it carried a vessel back to Joppa, which had made a two days' journey away from the harbor. The prophet interpreted this chance to mean that God approved his plan. He was so rejoiced at the favorable opportunity for leaving land that he paid the whole amount for the entire cargo in advance, no less a sum than four thousand gold denarii. After a day's sailing out from shore, a terrific storm<sup>28</sup> broke loose. Wonderful to relate, it injured no vessel but Jonah's. Thus he was taught the lesson that God is Lord over heaven and earth and sea, and man can hide himself nowhere from His face.

On the same vessel were representatives of the seventy nations of the earth, each with his peculiar idols. They all resolved to entreat their gods for succor, and the god from whom help would come should be recognized and worshipped as the only one true God. But help came from none. Then it was that the captain of the vessel approached Jonah where he lay asleep, and said to him: “We are suspended 'twixt life and death, and thou liest here asleep. Pray, tell me, to what nation dost thou belong?” “I am a Hebrew,” replied Jonah. “We have heard,” said the captain, “that the God of the Hebrews is the most powerful. Cry to Him for help. Perhaps He will perform such miracles for us as He did in days of old for the Jews at the Red Sea.”

Jonah confessed to the captain that he was to blame for the whole misfortune, and he besought him to cast him adrift, and appease the storm. The other passengers refused to consent to so cruel an act. Though the lot decided against Jonah, they first tried to save the vessel by throwing the cargo overboard. Their efforts were in vain. Then they placed Jonah at the side of the vessel and spoke: “O Lord of the world, reckon this not up against us as innocent blood, for we know not the case of this man, and he himself bids us throw him into the sea.” Even then they could not make up their minds to let him



drown. First they immersed him up to his knees in the water of the sea, and the storm ceased; they drew him back into the vessel, and forthwith the storm raged in its old fury. Two more trials they made. They lowered him into the water up to his navel, and raised him out of the depths when the storm was assuaged. Again, when the storm broke out anew, they lowered him to his neck, and a second time they took him back into the vessel when the wind subsided.<sup>29</sup> But finally the renewed rage of the storm convinced them that their danger was due to Jonah's transgressions, and they abandoned him to his fate. He was thrown into the water, and on the instant the sea grew calm.<sup>30</sup>

23. Ketubot 106a, which reads: Elisha was always surrounded by at least two thousand and two hundred disciples. Comp. also Targum Yerushalmi Deut. 34.3, and note 1.

24. Seder 'Olam 19.

25. Seder 'Olam 19; BR 21.5 (here very likely Jonah is identified with the "one" of the sons of the prophets mentioned in 2 Kings 6.3, *seq.*); Alphabet of Ben Sira 10b. Jonah first attempted to convey to Jehu the divine message by signs, but the latter being somewhat foolish by nature (comp. 2 Kings 9.20, where שׂוֹנֵעוֹן is taken to mean foolishness, madness), did not understand the signs, and the prophet had to speak plainly to him. Truly says the proverb: "For the wise a hint, for the fool a punch." See Alphabet of Ben Sira, *loc. cit.* Jehu belonged to the tribe of Manasseh (נַמְשִׁי in 2 Kings 9.2=מְנַשִּׁי), and was the last legitimate king of the northern kingdom; those who succeeded him were nothing else than chieftains of brigands; PR 3, 12b; Tadshe 8; Yerushalmi Horayyot 3, 47c. On Jonah's relation to Elijah, see text on p. 994, and note 38.

26. PRE 10; Tan. Wa-Yikra 8; Midrash Jonah 96; Yalkut on Jonah 1. According to these sources, the first prophecy of Jonah is that mentioned in 2 Kings 14.25; against this view, see Mekilta Bo (פְּתִיחָתָא), 2a, and Yebamot 98a, where it is stated that this prophet received only two divine revelations, both concerning Nineveh (comp. Jonah 1.1 and 3.1). The passage of 2 Kings 14.25 is therefore explained as follows: The impending punishment of Israel was averted, as in the case of the doom decreed against Nineveh.

27. PRE 10; Tan. Wa-Yikra 8; Midrash Jonah 96. God conferred a great honor on the inhabitants of Nin-

evah by sending the prophet to them, a distinction never before granted to the "nations of the world." Asshur, the ancestor of these people, had left his native country, and founded Nineveh in honor of God (he did not wish to remain among the sinful adherents of the wicked Nimrod; compare with p. 176, bottom). As he honored God, even so were his descendants honored by God. Jonah's refusal to go to Nineveh was due to his love for Israel. He knew that the Ninevites would repent of their evil doings, and this would cause the wrath of God against His people, who notwithstanding the numerous admonitions by many prophets, continued to sin. By fleeing from the Holy Land, Jonah hoped to prevent the disgrace of Israel, since the Shekinah does not reveal itself outside the Holy Land, and being removed from the place of revelation, he could no longer receive communications from God to go to Nineveh. Mekilta Bo (פְּתִיחָתָא), 1b–2a; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 11, 30b; Jerome on Jonah 1.2 and 4.1; Tertullian, *De Pudicitia* 10 and ps.-Tertullian, *De Jona* 20, *seq.* On the view that no revelations were made to prophets outside the Holy Land, see also Mo'ed Katan 25a; Mekilta RS 5–6; Zohar I, 85a, and II, 170b; John 8.52; unknown Midrash quoted by Kara, Josh. 22; 57. According to the sources mentioned at the beginning of this note, Jonah's purpose in fleeing from the dry land was to evade a further divine revelation which would send him to Nineveh. He believed that God's glory (manifestation of the Shekinah) shows itself in heaven and on dry land, but not on water.

28. PRE 10; Tan. Wa-Yikra 8; Midrash Jonah 96–97; Nedarim 38a. In the last passage it is stated that "God causes the Shekinah to dwell only upon those who are physically strong, rich, wise, and humble. Jonah's wealth is quoted as a proof that the prophets were rich. As to the midrashic basis for the statement that Jonah paid for the entire cargo, see Jerome on Jonah with reference to the masoretic reading of שְׂכָרָה in Jonah 1.3, in contrast to Septuagint which reads שְׂכָרוֹ. On Tarshish, see Jerome, *ad loc.*, and Rahmer, *Die Commentarii zu den 12 kleinen Propheten, Jonah*, 15–16.

29. PRE 10; Tan. Wa-Yikra 8; Midrash Jonah 97. On the violence of this storm, see BR 24.4, and footnote 29 on p. 995. On the attempts made by the crew of the ship to save Jonah's life, see also Zohar I, 121a, and II, 230b–231a.

30. PRE 10; Tan. Wa-Yikra 8; Midrash Jonah 97; Zohar II, 230b. Jonah had boarded the ship in the hope that he would lose his life on the voyage and would thus be spared the pain of seeing the heathen repent (see note 27); Mekilta Bo (פְּתִיחָתָא), 2a; Jerome on Jonah 1.6. According to the Halakah, the prophet, who like Jonah, suppresses the prophecy revealed to him, will be put to death by heaven (בִּיּוֹד שָׁמַיִם מִיתָה); Tosefta Sanhedrin 14.15; Yerushalmi 11, 30b; Babli 89b.



## JONAH IN THE WHALE

At the creation of the world, God made a fish intended to harbor Jonah. He was so large that the prophet was as comfortable inside of him as in a spacious synagogue. The eyes of the fish served Jonah as windows, and, besides, there was a diamond, which shone as brilliantly as the sun at midday, so that Jonah could see all things in the sea down to its very bottom.

It is a law that when their time has come, all the fish of the sea must betake themselves to leviathan, and let the monster devour them. The life term of Jonah's fish was about to expire, and the fish warned Jonah of what was to happen. When he, with Jonah in his belly, came to leviathan, the prophet said to the monster: "For thy sake I came hither. It was meet that I should know thine abode, for it is my appointed task to capture thee in the life to come and slaughter thee for the table of the just and pious." When leviathan observed the sign of the covenant on Jonah's body, he fled affrighted, and Jonah and the fish were saved. To show his gratitude, the fish carried Jonah whithersoever there was a sight to be seen. He showed him the river from which the ocean flows, showed him the spot at which the Israelites crossed the Red Sea, showed him Gehenna and Sheol, and many other mysterious and wonderful places.

Three days Jonah had spent in the belly of the fish, and he still felt so comfortable that he did not think of imploring God to change his condition. But God sent a female fish big with three hundred and sixty-five thousand little fish to Jonah's host, to demand the surrender of the prophet, else she would swallow both him and the guest he harbored. The message was received with incredulity, and leviathan had to come and corroborate it; he himself had heard God dispatch the female fish on her errand. So it came about that Jonah was transferred to an-

other abode. His new quarters, which he had to share with all the little fish, were far from comfortable, and from the bottom of his heart a prayer for deliverance arose to God on high.<sup>31</sup> The last words of his long petition were, "I shall redeem my vow,"<sup>32</sup> whereupon God commanded the fish to spew Jonah out. At a distance of nine hundred and sixty-five parasangs from the fish he alighted on dry land. These miracles induced the ship's crew to abandon idolatry, and they all became pious proselytes in Jerusalem.<sup>33</sup>

---

31. Midrash Jonah (only this source contains the episode with the female fish); PRE 10; Tan. Wa-Yikra 8. As to the statements made concerning Leviathan, see text on pp. 28 and 29. The statement that Jonah will capture the Leviathan in the days to come is perhaps connected with the Messianic part ascribed to this prophet; see note 38. All changes in nature which took place in the course of history were foreseen at the creation of the world (see text on pp. 47–48), and hence it is said here that at the creation of the world God made a fish intended to harbor Jonah. The Haggadah explains *סִי* (Jonah 2.8) as *סִי יָם*, and hence the statement that Jonah was shown the Red Sea. Comp. also Targum and Jerome, *ad loc.*

32. Midrash Jonah 98–99. This prayer of Jonah has the regular form of the Selihah. PRE 10, Tan. Wa-Yikra 8 and 2 Midrash Jonah 33 have a short prayer only. They add that the fish remained still while the prophet prayed. Jonah's soul left him when he was thrown into the sea, and ascended to God to be judged. The heavenly court decided that Jonah's soul should be returned to him; in possession of his soul he was swallowed up by the fish. No sooner, however, had the fish swallowed him than it died, but it came back to life when Jonah revived. See Zohar I, 121a. It is not quite certain whether the translation of the last sentence is correct. Jonah was near losing his life, because he did not fulfil the vow he had taken upon himself (did not go to Nineveh, as he had vowed to do?), and was saved from death only after he spoke the word: "I shall redeem my vow." See Yelammedenu in Yalkut I, 784, on Num. 30. On the prayer of Jonah, see Shu'aib, 122b, and Kad ha-Kemah, Kippurim, 116, *seq.*

33. Midrash Jonah 99. On the conversion of the ship's crew, see also PRE 10; Tan. Wa-Yikra 8. For a different explanation of Jonah 1.16, see Targum and Jerome, *ad loc.*, as well as the Midrashim just cited. All these authorities presuppose that the crew did not bring their sacrifices to God while still on board.



## THE REPENTANCE OF NINEVEH

Jonah went straightway to Nineveh, the monster city covering forty square parasangs and containing a million and a half of human beings. He lost no time in proclaiming their destruction to the inhabitants. The voice of the prophet was so sonorous that it reached to every corner of the great city, and all who heard his words resolved to turn aside from their ungodly ways. At the head of the penitents was King Osnappar of Assyria.<sup>34</sup> He descended from his throne, removed his crown, strewed ashes on his head instead, took off his purple garments, and rolled about in the dust of the highways. In all the streets royal heralds proclaimed the king's decree bidding the inhabitants fast three days, wear sackcloth, and supplicate God with tears and prayers to avert the threatened doom. The people of Nineveh fairly compelled God's mercy to descend upon them. They held their infants heavenward, and amid streaming tears they cried: "For the sake of these innocent babes, hear our prayers." The young of their stalled cattle they separated from the mother beasts, the young were left within the stable, the old were put without. So parted from one another, the young and the old began to bellow aloud. Then the Ninevites cried: "If Thou wilt not have mercy upon us, we will not have mercy upon these beasts."

The penance of the Ninevites did not stop at fasting and praying. Their deeds showed that they had determined to lead a better life. If a man had usurped another's property, he sought to make amends for his iniquity; some went so far as to destroy their palaces in order to be able to give back a single brick to the rightful owner. Of their own accord others appeared before the courts of justice, and confessed their secret crimes and sins, known to none beside themselves, and declared themselves ready to submit to well-

merited punishment, though it be death that was decreed against them.

One incident that happened at the time will illustrate the contrition of the Ninevites. A man found a treasure in the building lot he had acquired from his neighbor. Both buyer and seller refused to assume possession of the treasure. The seller insisted that the sale of the lot carried with it the sale of all it contained. The buyer held that he had bought the ground, not the treasure hidden therein. Neither rested satisfied until the judge succeeded in finding out who had hidden the treasure and who were his heirs, and the joy of the two was great when they could deliver the treasure up to its legitimate owners.<sup>35</sup>

Seeing that the Ninevites had undergone a real change of heart, God took mercy upon them, and pardoned them. Thereupon Jonah likewise felt encouraged to plead for himself with God, that He forgive him for his flight. God spoke to him: "Thou wast mindful of Mine honor,"—the prophet had not wanted to appear a liar, so that men's trust in God might not be shaken—"and for this reason thou didst take to the sea. Therefore did I deal mercifully with thee, and rescue thee from the bowels of Sheol."

His sojourn in the inside of the fish the prophet could not easily dismiss from his mind, nor did it remain without visible consequences. The intense heat in the belly of the fish had consumed his garments, and made his hair fall out,<sup>36</sup> and he was sore plagued by swarms of insects. To afford Jonah protection, God caused the *kikayon* to grow up. When he opened his eyes one morning, he saw a plant with two hundred and seventy-five leaves, each leaf measuring more than a span, so that it afforded relief from the heat of the sun. But the sun smote the gourd that it withered, and Jonah was again annoyed by the insects. He began to weep and wish for death to release him from his troubles. But when God led him to the plant, and showed him what



lesson he might derive from it,—how, though he had not labored for the plant, he had pity on it,—he realized his wrong in desiring God to be relentless toward Nineveh, the great city, with its many inhabitants, rather than have his reputation as a prophet suffer taint. He prostrated himself and said: “O God, guide the world according to Thy goodness.”

God was gracious to the people of Nineveh so long as they continued worthy of His loving-kindness. But at the end of forty days they departed from the path of piety, and they became more sinful than ever. Then the punishment threatened by Jonah overtook them, and they were swallowed up by the earth.<sup>37</sup>

Jonah’s suffering in the watery abyss had been so severe that by way of compensation God exempted him from death: living he was permitted to enter Paradise.<sup>38</sup> Like Jonah, his wife was known far and wide for her piety. She had gained fame particularly through her pilgrimage to Jerusalem, a duty which, by reason of her sex, she was not obliged to fulfil.<sup>39</sup> On one of these pilgrimages it was that the prophetic spirit first descended upon Jonah.<sup>40</sup>

---

34. Midrash Jonah 99–100; second version 25–26. According to these Midrashim the number of the population of Nineveh was twelve times as large as that given in Jonah 4.11. The “six score thousand persons” refers to the population of one of the twelve districts into which the city was divided. PRE 43 and Tosefta-Targum on Jonah 3.6 make Pharaoh king of Nineveh. Compare with p. 412; text on p. 560.

35. Mishnah Ta’anit 2.1; Babli 16a; Yerushalmi 2, 65b; PK 25, 161a–161b; Midrash Jonah 100–102; PRE 43; ShR 45.1. It is noteworthy that in the Yerushalmi and PK the separation of the young animals from their mothers

is described as an Arab custom. The description of the penance of the Ninevites by Tabari II, 45, is dependent on Jewish sources. Jerome on Jonah 3.10 agrees almost literally with the Mishnah Ta’anit. On the penance, see also Shu’aib, Jonah, 122a. The narrative about the treasure is a variation of an Alexander legend, which has a great vogue in Jewish literature. Comp. Yerushalmi Baba Mezi’a 2, 8c; BR 33.1, and parallel passages cited by Theodor. See also footnote 27 on p. 950.

36. As to the falling out of the hair, see Ibn Ezra on Jonah 4.6.

37. Midrash Jonah 102; the second version of this Midrash 34–35 gives a long prayer by Jonah in which he beseeches God to pardon his sins. The destruction of Nineveh forty years later (Yalkut II, 550, on Jonah 3, reads forty days, and hence the text on p. 1035; but the correct reading is years) is found only in PRE 43. Comp. also Tobit 4.4; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 10.2, and IX, 11.3.

38. Tehillim 26, 220, where reference is also made to the widespread view that Jonah was the son of the widow of Zarephath resuscitated by Elijah; see footnote 9 on p. 994. Since the son of the widow is said to be the “Messiah of the tribe of Joseph” (ER 18, 97–98), the statement that Jonah was permitted to enter paradise alive is very likely to be understood in the sense that he awaits there the end of times to start on his Messianic mission. The “Messiah, the son of David” likewise entered paradise alive, and awaits there “his time”. See Derek Erez Z. 1 (end), and parallel passages cited by Tawrogi. It is, however, possible that the Messianic part attributed to Jonah (=the son of the widow of Zarephath) is a Jewish adaptation of the Christian view which considers him a prototype of Jesus; see Matth. 12.39; Luke 11.29. The statement in 3 Macc. 6.8 that Jonah returned from Nineveh to his people is not known in rabbinic writings. The assertion that the “Book of Jonah” is a book by itself, and not a part of the Book of the Twelve *תרי עשר* (BaR 18.21) wishes very likely to call attention to the fact that this biblical book has a character of its own, its contents dealing exclusively with the story of a heathen city. See a similar remark with regard to the “section treating of Balaam” in footnote 784 on p. 776. On the time during which Jonah was active, see notes 1 and 25. Comp. also Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1.21, who considers Jonah to have been the contemporary of Isaiah, Hosea, and Daniel.

39. ‘Erubin 96a; Mekilta Bo 17, 21a (below).

40. Yerushalmi Sukkah 5, 55a.







## XX

# THE LATER KINGS OF JUDAH

### JOASH

When the prophet Jonah, doing the behest of his master Elisha, anointed Jehu king over Israel,<sup>1</sup> he poured the oil out of a pitcher, not out of a horn, to indicate that the dynasty of Jehu would not occupy the throne long.<sup>2</sup> At first Jehu, though a somewhat foolish<sup>3</sup> king, was at least pious, but he abandoned his God-fearing ways from the moment he saw the document bearing the signature of the prophet Ahijah of Shilo, which bound the signers to pay implicit obedience to Jeroboam. The king took this as evidence that the prophet had approved the worship of the golden calves. So it came to pass that Jehu, the destroyer of Baal worship, did nothing to oppose the idolatrous service established by Jeroboam at Beth-el.<sup>4</sup> The successors of Jehu were no better; on the contrary, they were worse, and therefore in the fifth generation<sup>5</sup> an end was put to the dynasty of Jehu by the hand of the assassin.

The kings of Judah differed in no essential particular from their colleagues in the north. Ahaziah, whom Jehu killed, was a shameless sinner; he had the Name of God expurged from every passage in which it occurred in the Holy Scriptures, and the names of idols inserted in its place.<sup>6</sup>

Upon the death of Ahaziah followed the reign of terror under the queen Athaliah, when God exacted payment from the house of David for his trespass in connection with the extermination of the priests at Nob. As Abiathar had been the only male descendant of Abimelech to survive the persecution of Saul, so the sole representative of the house of David to remain after the sword of Athaliah had raged<sup>7</sup> was Joash, the child kept in hiding, in the Holy of Holies in the Temple, by the high priest Jehoiada and his wife Jehosheba.<sup>8</sup> Later Jehoiada vindicated the right of Joash upon the throne, and installed him as king of Judah. The very crown worn by the rulers of the house of David testified to the legitimacy of the young prince, for it possessed the peculiarity of fitting none but the rightful successors to David.<sup>9</sup>

At the instigation of Jehoiada King Joash undertook the restoration of the Temple. The work was completed so expeditiously that one living at the time the Temple was erected by Solomon was permitted to see the new structure shortly before his death.<sup>10</sup> This good fortune befell Jehoiada<sup>11</sup> himself, the son of Benaiah, commander-in-chief of the army under Solomon. So long as Joash continued under the tutelage of Jehoiada, he was a pious king. When



Jehoiada departed this life, the courtiers came to Joash and flattered him: "If thou wert not a god, thou hadst not been able to abide for six years in the Holy of Holies, a spot which even the high priest is permitted to enter but once a year." The king lent ear to their blandishments, and permitted the people to pay him Divine homage.<sup>12</sup> But when the folly of the king went to the extreme of prompting him to set up an idol in the Temple, Zechariah, the son of Jehoiada, placed himself at the entrance, and barring the way said: "Thou shalt not do it so long as I live."<sup>13</sup> High priest, prophet, and judge though Zechariah was, and son-in-law of Joash to boot, the king still did not shrink from having him killed for his presumptuous words, nor was he deterred by the fact that it happened on a Day of Atonement which fell on the Sabbath.<sup>14</sup> The innocent blood crimsoning the hall of the priests did not remain unavenged. For two hundred and fifty-two years it did not leave off seething and pulsating, until, finally, Nebuzaradan, captain of Nebuchadnezzar's guard, ordered a great carnage among the Judeans, to avenge the death of Zechariah.<sup>15</sup>

Joash himself, the murderer of Zechariah, met with an evil end. He fell into the hands of the Syrians, and they abused him in their barbarous, immoral way. Before he could recover from the suffering inflicted upon him, his servants slew him.<sup>16</sup>

Amaziah, the son and successor of Joash, in many respects resembled his father. At the beginning of his reign he was God-fearing, but when, through the aid of God, he had gained a brilliant victory over the Edomites, he knew no better way of manifesting his gratitude than to establish in Jerusalem the cult of the idol worshipped by his conquered enemies. To compass his chastisement, God inspired Amaziah with the idea of provoking a war with Joash, the ruler of the northern kingdom. Amaziah demanded

that Joash should either recognize the suzerainty of the southern realm voluntarily, or let the fate of battle decide the question.<sup>17</sup> At first Joash sought to turn Amaziah aside from his purpose by a parable reminding him of the fate of Shechem, which the sons of Jacob had visited upon him for having done violence to their sister Dinah.<sup>18</sup> Amaziah refused to be warned. He persisted in his challenge, and a war ensued. The fortune of battle decided against Amaziah. He suffered defeat, and later he was tortured to death by his own subjects.<sup>19</sup>

---

1. Seder 'Olam 18; compare footnote 23 on p. 1031.

2. Megillah 14a; Horayyot 12a; Keritot 6a. Compare also footnote 22 on p. 927, with regard to the pitcher out of which Samuel took the oil to anoint Saul. As to the "holy oil" being used for the anointing of kings, see text on p. 657. Against this, see Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 6.1.

3. Alphabet of Ben Sira 10b. Compare footnote 23 on p. 1031.

4. Sanhedrin 102b (top). Compare with p. 982. Great is peace; although one performs many good deeds, he achieves nothing if he does not promote peace. This may be inferred from the life of Jehu: he abolished idolatry from among Israel, he caused the downfall of Ahab's dynasty, and killed Jezebel; but all his good deeds counted for nought because he did not promote peace. See Midrash Gadol 129–130. On the worship of the golden calves even by the pious in Israel, see text on p. 995. According to EZ 7, 184, Jehu at first was a very pious man, and did not worship the golden calves, but when he became king, he deteriorated, and followed in the footsteps of his predecessors.

5. EZ 7, 184; ER 18, 88. A boon conferred by God upon one as a reward for a good deed remains not only with the person that merited it, but also with his descendants unto the fourth generation, whether they are good or wicked. God granted the kingdom to Jehu for his good deeds (see 2 Kings 10.30), and notwithstanding his own and his descendants' sinfulness, his dynasty lasted for five generations. See EZ, *loc. cit.* Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 8.5–6, describes Jehoahaz (the son of Jehu) as a repentant sinner, and his son Joash as a pious man, whereas EZ, *loc. cit.*, puts Jehu and all his descendants among the sinners.

6. Sanhedrin 102b. According to one opinion, the Judean kings Ahaz and Ahaziah, as well as all the kings of the northern kingdom concerning whom Scripture uses the expression "and they did that which was evil in the



sight of the Lord”, have no share in the world to come, but are spared the tortures of hell; Sanhedrin 103a; compare footnote 107 on p. 932, and footnote 59 on p. 966.

7. Sanhedrin, 95b.

8. Tan. B. II, 31; Tan. Wa-Era 9; Seder ‘Olam 18 (comp. Ratner, note 7); Tehillim 18, 151; Shir 1.16; Targum 2 Chron. 22.11; ShR 8.2. In the three last-named Midrashim a different opinion is given, according to which Joash was kept during the summer in the upper chamber, above the holy of holies, and during the winter in one of the cells (חַתָּן) of the Temple.

9. ‘Abodah Zarah 44a; Targum 2 Chron. 23.11, and 1 Chron. 20.2; compare with p. 941. This crown, it is said, was so heavy, that it could not be placed on a person’s head. David, however, engraved the “Name” on it, and this had the effect that he and his rightful successors did not feel the heavy weight thereof. According to others, the crown was suspended over the heads of the Davidic kings by means of a magnet. The child saved by Jehoash was called Joash because of the despair (שָׁאָה “he despaired”) of the people of having a descendant of David occupy the throne once more. See *Rimze Haftarot*, Shekalim; comp. the similar etymology of the name Josiah in Haserot 17a.

10. Seder ‘Olam 18.

11. Ps.-Sa’adya on 2 Chron., p. 54. Comp. Ratner, Seder ‘Olam 19, note 14; footnote 95 on p. 978 and Index, s. v. “Benaiah”, Opinions differ as to whether 2 Chron. 24.3 refers to Jehoiaha marrying two wives or to his making Joash marry them. Maimonides, *Yad ha-Hasakah, Issure Biah*, 17.13, and *Kele ha-Mikdash*, 5.10, maintains that according to the Halakah (comp. Yoma 13a) the high priest is forbidden to have two wives, and therefore the biblical verse under discussion does not speak of the two wives of the high priest Jehoiaha. RABD on *Issure Biah*, loc. cit., on the other hand, follows Rashi on 2 Chron., 24.3, and takes 17 in this verse to refer to Jehoiaha in agreement with Septuagint; but Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 7.5, and Vulgate understand it in the same way as Maimonides.

12. Tan. B. II, 23 and 31; Tan. Wa-Era 9; Seder ‘Olam 18; ShR 8.2; Makiri on Ps. 9(end), citing Tan.; ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 21.17.

13. Midrash Shir 3, 27a.

14. Yerushalmi Ta’anit 4, 69a; Ekah, introduction, 20–21; Koheleth 3.16 and 10.4.

15. Gittin 57b; Yerushalmi Ta’anit 4, 69a; Ekah, introduction, 20–21; Koheleth 3.16 and 10.4. Compare with p. 1075.

16. Mekilta Amalek 1, 53a (as to the meaning of שְׁפוּטִים, see Ginzberg, *Compte Rendu*, 7 = R.E.J. LXVI, 303); Tan. B. II, 23–24; Tan. Wa-Era 9; ShR 8.2; Yerushalmi Kiddushin 1, 61a; Makiri on Ps. 9(end); ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 24.27. The Midrashim cited remark, four kings claimed to be gods: Hiram, Nebuchadnezzar, Pharaoh, and

Joash; they ended by being treated like women (“*coitu foemineo commixantur*”). Joash was ungrateful to his benefactor Jehoiaha (he killed the latter’s son), and he was killed by men who were descended from the Moabites and Ammonites (see 2 Chron. 24.26), the two ungrateful nations. See Mekilta, loc. cit. On the characterization of these two nations as ungrateful, see text on p. 214, and text on p. 772.

17. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 9.3. Comp. also Seder ‘Olam 19. Amaziah’s violent death was the punishment for his cruelty against the Edomites; Ekah, introduction, 14.

18. BR 80.3; Tan. B. I, 171; Tan. Wa-Yishlah 7; Baraita of 32 Middot, No. 26.

19. Seder ‘Olam 19. This passage also states that Amaziah did not rule the last fifteen years of his life, his kingdom having been administered by his son Uzziah, who later, in his turn, had to leave the administration of the kingdom to his son Jotham for twenty years, from the time he was afflicted with leprosy unto his death. By means of these assumptions the Midrashim and the Talmud are able to explain several chronological difficulties offered by the data found in Scripture with regard to the lives of these kings; comp. the references in Ratner, notes 24, 26. Amaziah’s general is said to have ended his days in Morviedero, Spain. See Ibn Habib, *Darke Noam*, 6b and Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, I, 487.

### THREE GREAT PROPHETS

The reign of Uzziah, who for a little while occupied the throne during his father Amaziah’s lifetime, is notable particularly because it marks the beginning of the activity of three of the prophets, Hosea, Amos, and Isaiah. The oldest of the three was Hosea,<sup>20</sup> the son of the prophet and prince Beerli, the Beerli who later was carried away captive by Tiglath-pileser, the king of Assyria.<sup>21</sup> Of Beerli’s prophecies we have but two verses, preserved for us by Isaiah.<sup>22</sup>

The peculiar marriage contracted by Hosea at the command of God Himself was not without a good reason. When God spoke to the prophet about the sins of Israel, expecting him to defend or excuse his people, Hosea said severely: “O Lord of the world! Thine is the universe. In place of Israel choose another as Thy



peculiar people from among the nations of the earth." To make the true relation between God and Israel known to the prophet, he was commanded to take to wife a woman with a dubious past. After she had borne him several children, God suddenly put the question to him: "Why followest thou not the example of thy teacher Moses, who denied himself the joys of family life after his call to prophecy?" Hosea replied: "I can neither send my wife away nor divorce her, for she has borne me children." "If, now," said God to him, "thou who hast a wife of whose honesty thou art so uncertain that thou canst not even be sure that her children are thine, and yet thou canst not separate from her, how, then, can I separate Myself from Israel, from My children, the children of My elect, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob!" Hosea entreated God to pardon him. But God said: "Better were it that thou shouldst pray for the welfare of Israel, for thou art the cause that I issued three fateful decrees against them." Hosea prayed as he was bidden, and his prayer averted the impending threefold doom.<sup>23</sup>

Hosea died at Babylon at a time in which a journey thence to Palestine was beset with many perils. Desirous of having his earthly remains rest in sacred ground, he requested before his death that his bier be loaded upon a camel, and the animal permitted to make its way as it would. Wherever it stopped, there his body was to be buried. As he commanded, so it was done. Without a single mishap the camel arrived at Safed. In the Jewish cemetery of the town it stood still, and there Hosea was buried in the presence of a large concourse.<sup>24</sup>

The prophetic activity of Amos commenced after Hosea's had closed, and before Isaiah's began. Though he had an impediment in his speech,<sup>25</sup> he obeyed the call of God, and betook himself to Beth-el to proclaim to the sinful inhabitants thereof the Divine message with which he had been charged. The denunciation

of the priest Amaziah, of Beth-el, who informed against the prophet before King Jeroboam of Israel, did him no harm, for the king, idolater though he was, entertained profound respect for Amos. He said to himself: "God forbid I should think the prophet guilty of cherishing traitorous plans, and if he were, it would surely be at the bidding of God."<sup>26</sup> For this pious disposition Jeroboam was rewarded; never had the northern kingdom attained to such power as under him.<sup>27</sup>

However, the fearlessness of Amos finally caused his death. King Uzziah inflicted a mortal blow upon his forehead with a red-hot iron.<sup>28</sup>

Two years after Amos ceased to prophesy, Isaiah was favored with his first Divine communication. It was the day on which King Uzziah, blinded by success and prosperity, arrogated to himself the privileges of the priesthood. He tried to offer sacrifices upon the altar, and when the high priest Azariah<sup>29</sup> ventured to restrain him, he threatened to slay him and any priest sympathizing with him unless they kept silent. Suddenly the earth quaked so violently that a great breach was torn in the Temple, through which a brilliant ray of sunlight pierced, falling upon the forehead of the king and causing leprosy to break forth upon him. Nor was that all the damage done by the earthquake. On the west side of Jerusalem, half of the mountain was split off and hurled to the east, into a road, at a distance of four stadia.<sup>30</sup> And not heaven and earth alone were outraged by Uzziah's atrocity and sought to annihilate him; even the angels of fire, the seraphim, were on the point of descending and consuming him, when a voice from on high proclaimed, that the punishment appointed for Uzziah was unlike that meted out to Korah and his company despite the similarity of their crimes.<sup>31</sup>

When Isaiah beheld the august throne of God on this memorable day,<sup>32</sup> he was sorely affrighted, for he reproached himself with not having tried to turn the king away from his im-



pious desire.<sup>33</sup> Enthralled he hearkened to the hymns of praise sung by the angels, and lost in admiration he failed to join his voice with theirs. “Woe is me,” he cried out, “that I was silent! Woe is me that I did not join the chorus of the angels praising God! Had I done it, I, too, like the angels, would have become immortal, seeing I was permitted to look upon sights to behold which had brought death to other men.”<sup>34</sup> Then he began to excuse himself: “I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips.” At once resounded the voice of God in rebuke: “Of thyself thou art the master, and of thyself thou mayest say what thou chooseth, but who gave thee the right to calumniate My children of Israel and call them ‘a people of unclean lips?’” And Isaiah heard God bid one of the seraphim touch his lips with a live coal as a punishment for having slandered Israel. Though the coal was so hot that the seraph needed tongs to hold the tongs with which he had taken the coal from the altar, the prophet yet escaped unscathed, but he learned the lesson, that it was his duty to defend Israel, not traduce him. Thenceforth the championship of his people was the mainspring of the prophet’s activity, and he was rewarded by having more revelations concerning Israel and the other nations vouchsafed him than any other prophet before or after him. Moreover God designated Isaiah to be “the prophet of consolation”. Thus it happened that the very Isaiah whose early prophecies foretold the exile and the destruction of the Temple,<sup>35</sup> later described and proclaimed, in plainer terms than any other prophet,<sup>36</sup> the brilliant destiny in store for Israel.

20. Seder ‘Olam 20; Pesahim 87b; Baba Batra 14b; PR 33, 153b (this passage reads: Hosea prophesied for ninety years); EZ 9, 86. These sources speak of the four contemporary prophets, Hosea, Amos, Isaiah, and Micah.

The last-named prophet, however, was a younger contemporary of the other three, as is explicitly stated in Seder ‘Olam, *loc. cit.* PR 33, 150b, seems to identify the prophet Micah with Micaiah the son of Imlah who prophesied in the time of Jehoshaphat (1 Kings 22.8). Comp. PK 16.135b; Ibn Ezra on Micah 1.2; Ratner, note 6 on Seder ‘Olam, *loc. cit.* Obadiah is also said to have been active as a prophet during the time of Jehoshaphat; Baraita of 32 Middot, as quoted by ps.-Rashi on BR 83.3. Comp. Ratner, *loc. cit.*, note 7, and Grünhut, *Likkutim*, II, 11b, note 3. This would agree with the widespread view that the prophet Obadiah is none else than Obadiah, the official of Ahab’s court. Compare with pp. 1025–1026. Our texts of Seder ‘Olam, *loc. cit.*, state that Obadiah prophesied during the time of Amaziah, “when Edom fell never to rise again”. Yalkut II, Obadiah, and ps.-Rashi, *loc. cit.*, read, however, Jehoshaphat instead of Amaziah. Grünhut, *loc. cit.*, though quoting ps.-Rashi, did not notice that this author had the same reading in Seder ‘Olam as Yalkut. Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1.20, makes Isaiah, Hosea, Micah and Joel contemporaries, and Jerome (comp. his remarks on Hosea 1.1; Joel 1.1) partly depends upon this Christian author and partly upon Jewish tradition; hence his statement that Hosea, Joel, Amos, Obadiah, Jonah, Micah, and Isaiah were σύγχρονοι (=בפרק אחד of the rabbinical sources), contemporaries. Jerome and Clement find in the order of the biblical books a hint as to the times of the respective authors. Now as Micah (and Amos) were younger contemporaries of Hosea, it follows that Joel, Obadiah, and Jonah, whose books are placed between those bearing the names of Hosea and Micah, lived during the same period as the latter. As to the Jewish view concerning the time of Joel, see footnote 56 on p. 991 and Index, s. v. On Micah, see also footnote 1 on p. 1025.

21. PK 25, 159b, which reads: Beeri died in Exile, that the Godless exiles might rise with him at the time of resurrection. For a similar statement concerning the death of Moses in the wilderness, see footnote 615 on p. 734.

22. WR 6.6 and 15.2. Beeri’s prophecy consisted of two verses, which were later inserted in the Book of Isaiah, 8.19–20.

23. Pesahim 87a–87b (here it is also stated that the name Gomer of Diblaim, as Hosea’s wife is called in Scripture, was not her real name, but indicates her disreputable mode of life); EZ 9, 186–187; Targum as quoted in *Kad ha-Kamah*, I אהבה, 6b–7a; We-Hizhir I, 86. As to the interpretation by the Haggadah of the prophecies given in Hosea 1 and 2, see BaR 2.12–14. The view that Hosea’s marriage spoken of in Scripture is to be understood as a prophetic vision is unknown in the old sources. Ibn Ezra, *ad loc.*, and Maimonides (*Guide of the Perplexed*, II, 46) are perhaps the earliest authors maintaining such a rationalistic view. On the haggadic interpretation of the name Go-



mer of Diblaim, see also Jerome and Targum, *ad loc.* As to the celibacy of Moses, see text on p. 736.

24. Shalshelet ha-Kabbalah, 19a.

25. PK 16, 125b; PR 33, 150b; WR 10.2. The activity of Amos as a prophet preceded that of Isaiah by two years; the latter began to prophesy on the "day of the earthquake", the former two years before the earthquake. Comp. Seder 'Olam 20, and the references given in note 29. In Greek transliteration the names Amos (עמוס) and Amoz (אמוץ) sound alike, and hence the statement found in many Christian writers, who were ignorant of Hebrew, that Isaiah was the son of the prophet Amos; see, e. g., Clement, *Stromata*, 1.20; ps.-Epiphanius, *De Vitis Prophetarum*, s. v. "Isaiah". In the original of Ascension of Isaiah 1.1 the text very likely read: *ישעיהו בן אמוץ הנביא*, which should be translated "the prophet Isaiah, the son of Amoz," and not as the Greek translator has it, "Isaiah the son of Amoz the prophet". Yahya, *Shalshelet ha-Kabbalah*, 99b, follows Christian authors (though he does not say so) in identifying Amoz the father of Isaiah with Amos the prophet. It is, however, an old Jewish tradition that Isaiah's father was also a prophet, living in the reign of Amaziah, whose brother he was. It was at his advice that the king dismissed the army he had gathered from among the Ephraimites (2 Chron. 25.7–10). Seder 'Olam 20; Megillah 10b; Sotah 10b. Comp. also Megillah 15a; WR 6.6 (which read: Wherever the names of the prophet and his father are given it is sure that he was a prophet the son of a prophet); Aggadat Bereshit 14, 32. In WR a different opinion is quoted, according to which all prophets mentioned in Scripture were the sons of prophets. With regard to the native places of the prophets, Megillah, *loc. cit.*, states that all those whose birthplaces are not given in Scripture were Jerusalemites. PK 16, 128b considers Amos to have been a post-exilic prophet. Compare note 20 and footnote 56 on p. 991.

26. Pesahim 87b; ER 17, 88; EZ 7, 184.

27. Yerushalmi Hallah 2, 58c. Comp. also EZ 7, 184.

28. Yahya, *Shalshelet ha-Kabbalah*, 97, undoubtedly based on a Christian source; comp. note 25. According to ps.-Epiphanius, *De Vitis Prophetarum*, s. v. "Amos", this prophet met his death through a blow on his temples dealt him with a stick by the son of the false prophet Amaziah. Comp. Index, s. v. "Amaziah, Priest of Beth-el".

29. Azariah the "chief priest" in 2 Chron. 26.20, is identified with Azariah the high priest, in 1 Chron. 5.36. Comp. Sifre Z., 112, and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 10.4. The Rabbis maintain that chapter 6 of Isaiah is the beginning of this prophetic book, and contains the first vision granted to the prophet on the day on which the impious king Uzziah attempted to sacrifice on the altar and was stricken with leprosy. As a "leper is like dead" (compare footnote 177 on p. 286), מות in Is. 6.1 does not mean death but

leprosy. See Targum, *ad loc.*; ShR 1.34; Tan. Zaw 13. Comp. also Seder 'Olam 20; Mekilta Shirah 6 (beginning); Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 404 on Is. 6; Aphraates, 362 (read ארעא instead of עמא); Jerome on Is. 7.3, *seq.*; ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 26.22.

30. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 10.4. Tan. Noah 13 is not contented with a breach in the Temple; it says that the hall of the Temple (היכל) was rent in two parts, separated from each other by a cleft of twelve miles (a favorite number; see Index) in width, and the Midrash transfers to the Temple itself that which Josephus tells of the Temple mount. Comp. also Targum Is. 28.21, as well as the references given at the end of the preceding note; add ARN 9, 42. On leprosy as a punishment for arrogance see ARN, *loc. cit.*, and text on p. 675. According to Tan. Noah 13, the passion with which Uzziah devoted himself to the cultivation of the soil (comp. 2 Chron. 26.10) caused him to neglect the study of the Torah. The evil consequence thereof was that he became arrogant, saying: "God is king, and so am I, and it behooves the terrestrial king to do the service in the Temple of the celestial king." As the "love of husbandry" caused the downfall of Uzziah, even so was it the cause of that of Cain and Noah. Comp. also Yelammedenu, No. 43 (here Cain, Job, and Uzziah are given); BR 22.3; Mekilta RS, 92 (where Cain, Noah, Lot, and Uzziah are described as the four men who were "greedy for husbandry", and came thereby to grief).—The statement of Josephus that a ray of sunlight caused Uzziah's leprosy is evidently based on a haggadic interpretation of וְהַצִּרְעָתָה in 2 Chron. 26.19, the usual meaning of זרע being "shone" in regard to the sun. See, however, also text on p. 728, and note 197 on p. 600 (top) in connection with death by celestial fire as a punishment for the laity usurping the priesthood.

31. Tan. Zaw 13; compare with p. 728. As to the earthquake taking place on the day on which Uzziah attempted his sacrifice, see references cited in the two preceding notes; and Jerome on Amos 1.3.

32. On Isaiah's receiving the "call" on that day, see note 29. He was in his study when he heard a heavenly voice proclaim: "Whom shall I send? I sent Amos, and they (Israel) said: God found no better messenger than this stammerer (compare with p. 1040, and Koheleth 1.1). I sent Micah, and they smote him on the cheek (I Kings 22.24; comp. note 20). Whom shall I now send, and who will go for us?" Isaiah replied: "Here am I, send me." Thereupon God said to him: "My children are rebellious and troublesome; art thou prepared to stand their abuses and blows?" But Isaiah, far from being intimidated, said: "I am willing to give my back to the smiters and my cheek to them that pluck off the hair (Is. 50.6), but am not worthy to serve as Thy messenger to Thy children." As a reward for his trust in Israel, whom he hoped to bring back to the



path of righteousness by his prophecies, Isaiah was distinguished above all the other prophets in two ways. All the other prophets received their spirit of prophecy from their masters (the spirit of Elijah came over to Elisha; the spirit of Moses was put upon the seventy elders), but Isaiah prophesied from the mouth of the Almighty." He was further distinguished by repeating the introductory words of his prophecy (comp., *e. g.*, 40.1; 51.9, 12, 16), indicating thereby that their fulfilment was certain. See PK 16, 125b; WR 10.2. Comp. also ER 16, 82, and notes 35, 36.

33. Jewish tradition in Jerome on Is. 6.6. This interpretation throws light on the obscure words חַיִּיב לְאוֹכְלָא in Targum on this passage.

34. As to the conception that the sight of the divine causes death to mortals, see text on p. 631.

35. On Isaiah the "comforter of the mourners for Zion", see Ecclus. 48.21–25. This shows that Isaiah's authorship of the entire book now bearing his name was known at as early a time as that of Ben Sira. Comp. ER 16.82–83; Jerome, *Ad Damasum* 1.375.

36. PR 33, 150b–151a. About the Seraphim which Isaiah saw, see the quotation from an unknown Midrash in BHM, V, 162, according to which the Seraph has six wings to praise God each work-day of the week with one of them, whereas on the Sabbath the Seraphim are silent, and God is praised by the terrestrials, *i. e.* Israel. Comp. also *Orehot Hayyim*, I, 18b. As to the supposition that Israel recites the Kedushah only on the Sabbath, see Ginzberg, *Geonica*, II, 48. According to PK 9, 75b, and parallel passages cited by Buber, the Seraphim praise God with two wings, they cover their faces with two wings, that they look not at the Shekinah, and with two wings they cover their feet, that the Shekinah be not reminded by them of the sin committed by Israel in worshipping the golden calf, since the "sole of their feet is like the sole of the calf's foot"; comp. Ezek. 1.7. The two prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel saw the same heavenly vision; the latter gave a fuller description thereof, than the former. "Ezekiel is to be likened to a villager, who saw the king, and Isaiah to the inhabitant of the capital city." The former, not accustomed to the sight of the divine glory, gave a detailed description of what he saw, whereas the latter, being used to it, did not care to describe it. The "wings" spoken of by Isaiah are identical with the "faces" referred to by Ezekiel. It is true that the Seraphim which Isaiah saw had six wings, whereas the heavenly beings described by Ezekiel had only four faces. This discrepancy is to be explained by the fact that at the time of the destruction of the Temple the two wings (= faces) used by these heavenly beings to praise God with were taken from them, and hence Ezekiel, living at that time, saw "four faces" only. See Hagigah 13b. The Seraph that touched Isaiah with a live coal was Michael; Berakot 4b. On the day of judgment Isaiah will plead for the sinners that they may be

permitted to look at the blissful joys of the righteous. His pleading in their behalf will not be granted, as "the congregation of Israel" (כְּנֶסֶת יִשְׂרָאֵל) will oppose it, insisting that the sinners are not entitled to such consideration. See Alphabet of R. Akiba (כ'), 33–34. In BHM, V, 50, an allusion is found to the view, according to which Isaiah at this memorable vision was shown the punishment of the sinners in hell.

## THE TWO KINGDOMS CHASTISED

Afflicted with leprosy, Uzziah was unfit to reign as king, and Jotham administered the affairs of Judah for twenty-five years before the death of his father.<sup>37</sup> Jotham possessed so much piety that his virtues added to those of two other very pious men suffice to atone for all the sins of the whole of mankind committed from the hour of creation until the end of all time.<sup>38</sup>

Ahaz, the son of Jotham, was very unlike him. "From first to last he was a sinner."<sup>39</sup> He abolished the true worship of God, forbade the study of the Torah, set up an idol in the upper room of the Temple, and disregarded the Jewish laws of marriage.<sup>40</sup> His transgressions are the less pardonable, because he sinned against God knowing His grandeur and power, as appears from his reply to the prophet. Isaiah said to him: "Ask a sign of God, as, for instance, that the dead should arise, Korah come up from Sheol, or Elijah descend from heaven." The king's answer was: "I know thou hast the power to do any of these, but I do not wish the Name of God to be glorified through me."<sup>41</sup>

The only good quality possessed by Ahaz was respect for Isaiah.<sup>42</sup> To avoid his reproaches, Ahaz would disguise himself when he went abroad, so that the prophet might not recognize him.<sup>43</sup> Only to this circumstance, joined to the fact that he was the father of a pious son and the son of an equally pious father, is it to be ascribed



that, in spite of his wickedness, Ahaz is not one of those who have forfeited their portion in the world to come. But he did not escape punishment; on the contrary, his chastisement was severe, not only as king but also as man. In the ill-starred war against Pekah, the king of the northern kingdom, he lost his first-born son, a great hero.<sup>44</sup>

Pekah, however, was not permitted to enjoy the fruits of his victory, for the king of Assyria invaded his empire, captured the golden calf at Dan, and led the tribes on the east side of Jordan away into exile. The dismemberment of the Israelitish kingdom went on apace for some years. Then the Assyrians, in the reign of Hoshea, carried off the second golden calf together with the tribes of Asher, Issachar, Zebulon, and Naphthali, leaving but one-eighth of the Israelites in their own land. The larger portion of the exiles was taken to Damascus. After that Israel's doom overtook it with giant strides, and the last ruler of Israel actually hastened the end of his kingdom by a pious deed. After the golden calves were removed by the Assyrians, Hoshea, the king of the north, abolished the institution of stationing guards on the frontier between Judah and Israel to prevent pilgrimages to Jerusalem. But the people made no use of the liberty granted them. They persisted in their idolatrous cult, and this quickened their punishment. So long as their kings had put obstacles in their path, they could excuse themselves before God for not worshipping Him in the true way. The action taken by their king Hoshea left them no defense. When the Assyrians made their third incursion into Israel, the kingdom of the north was destroyed forever, and the people, one and all, were carried away into exile.<sup>45</sup>

The heathen nations settled in Samaria by the Assyrians instead of the deported Ten Tribes were forced by God to accept the true religion of the Jews. Nevertheless they continued to wor-

ship their olden idols: the Babylonians paid devotion to a hen, the people of Cuthah to a cock, those of Hamath to a ram, the dog and the ass were the gods of the Avvites, and the mule and the horse the gods of the Sepharvites.<sup>46</sup>

---

37. Seder 'Olam 19, and the parallel passages cited by Ratner.

38. Sukkah 45b. Jotham's piety is also referred to in BR 63.1 and by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 11.2. Compare further with p. 98.

39. Megillah 11a; BR 27.1; Esther R. 1.1; Tehillim 105, 449. In these sources an old tradition is given, according to which Scripture indicated with regard to five men that they were pious from "first to last", and with regard to other five that they were wicked from "first to last". The five pious men are: Abraham, Moses, Aaron, Hezekiah and Ezra; the five wicked ones are: Nimrod, Esau, the brothers Dathan and Abiram (counted as one), Ahaz, and Ahasuerus. Ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 23.9 quotes this Haggadah with regard to Ahaz.

40. Sanhedrin 103b. Here, as in many other places (comp. EZ 9, 187–188; BR 42.3 and parallel passages cited by Theodor), Ahaz is said to have issued an edict against the study of the Torah. Comp. note 112.

41. Tan. B. I, 153; Aggadat Bereshit 48, 98–99; Jerome on Is. 7.12.

42. On the view that Isaiah was a blood-relative of the king, see note 25.

43. Sanhedrin 104a; Yerushalmi 10, 27d; WR 26.3. *Rimze Haftarot*, Yitro, quotes the statement of the "wise" (אמרו חכמינו ז"ל) according to which Ahaz, when passing women who were engaged in washing, closed his eyes to avoid looking at the bare parts of their bodies. It seems fairly certain that the author confused the statement in Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.* (דכבשינו לאפיה) with Makkot 24a (מסתכל וגו' זה שאינו), and attributed the virtue of modesty to the wicked king, in direct contrast to the view of the Haggadah which maintains that Ahaz abolished the laws against incest; comp. Sanhedrin 103b.

44. Sannhedrin 103b; Yerushalmi 10, 27d; WR 36.3. There are, however, also others who maintain that this wicked king forfeited his share in the world to come; compare footnote 100 on p. 980, and p. 508, footnote 118.

45. Seder 'Olam 22; Ta'anit 30b; Yerushalmi 4, 69c; Baba Batra 121a; Gittin 88a; Ekah, introduction, 33; EZ 9, 188; 'Eser Galuyyot 2–4; Aggadat Shir 1, 28; Jerome on Hos. 10.2. The last-named author gives, on Hos. 10.5, the following somewhat humorous Haggadah communicated



to him by “the Hebrews”. The crafty and greedy priests at Beth-el and Dan had substituted gilded images of calves for those made of solid gold, which they appropriated for themselves. When the Assyrian kings captured the golden calves, the people mourned the loss, but the priests laughed inwardly at the trick played by them. This is the meaning of the words of the prophet (Hos. 10.5): The inhabitants of Samaria shall be in dread for the calves of Beth-aven; for the people thereof shall mourn over it, and the priests thereof shall “laugh” over it.

46. Sanhedrin 63b. Another interpretation of the names of the idols mentioned in 2 Kings 17.30–31 is given in Yerushalmi ‘Abodah Zarah 3, 42d, according to which the inhabitants of Samaria fashioned the images of Jacob and Joseph to whom they paid divine honors. This is the answer of the Jews to the Samaritans’ claim to be the only legitimate descendants of Joseph. Tosefta-Targum on Kings, *loc. cit.*, contains, with slight modification, the views of Babli, as well as Yerushalmi, concerning these idols. Comp. also R. Hananel, as quoted by R. Bahya, Exod. 32.8.

## HEZEKIAH

While the northern kingdom was rapidly descending into the pit of destruction, a mighty upward impulse was given to Judah, both spiritually and materially, by its king Hezekiah. In his infancy the king had been destined as a sacrifice to Moloch. His mother had saved him from death only by rubbing him with the blood of a salamander, which made him fire-proof.<sup>47</sup> In every respect he was the opposite of his father. As the latter is counted among the worst of sinners, so Hezekiah is counted among the most pious of Israel. His first act as king is evidence that he held the honor of God to be his chief concern, important beyond all else. He refused to accord his father regal obsequies; his remains were buried as though he had been poor and of plebeian rank. Impious as he was, Ahaz deserved nothing more dignified.<sup>48</sup> God had Himself made it known to Hezekiah, by a sign, that his father was to have no consideration paid him. On the day of the dead king’s funeral day-

light lasted but two hours, and his body had to be interred when the earth was enveloped in darkness.<sup>49</sup>

Throughout his reign, Hezekiah devoted himself mainly to the task of dispelling the ignorance of the Torah which his father had caused. While Ahaz had forbidden the study of the law, Hezekiah’s orders read: “Who does not occupy himself with the Torah, renders himself subject to the death penalty.” The academies closed under Ahaz were kept open day and night under Hezekiah. The king himself supplied the oil needed for illuminating purposes. Gradually, under this system, a generation grew up so well trained that one could search the land from Dan even to Beer-sheba and not find a single ignoramus. The very women and the children, both boys and girls, knew the laws of “clean and unclean.”<sup>50</sup> By way of rewarding his piety, God granted Hezekiah a brilliant victory over Sennacherib.

This Assyrian king, who had conquered the whole world,<sup>51</sup> equipped an army against Hezekiah like unto which there is none, unless it be the army of the four kings whom Abraham routed, or the army to be raised by Gog and Magog in the Messianic time. Sennacherib’s army consisted of more than two millions and a half of horsemen, among them forty-five thousand princes sitting in chariots and surrounded by their paramours, by eighty thousand armor-clad soldiers, and sixty thousand swordsmen. The camp extended over a space of four hundred parasangs, and the saddle-beasts standing neck to neck formed a line forty parasangs long. The host was divided into four divisions. After the first of them had passed the Jordan, it was well nigh dry, for the soldiers had all slaked their thirst with the water of the river. The second division found nothing to quench their thirst except the water gathered under the hoofs of the horses. The third division was forced to dig wells,



and when the fourth division crossed the Jordan, they kicked up great clouds of dust.<sup>52</sup>

With this vast army Sennacherib hastened onward, in accordance with the disclosures of the astrologers, who warned him that he would fail in his object of capturing Jerusalem, if he arrived there later than the day set by them. His journey having lasted but one day instead of ten, as he had expected, he rested at Nob. A raised platform was there erected for Sennacherib, whence he could view Jerusalem. On first beholding the Judean capital, the Assyrian king exclaimed: "What! Is this Jerusalem, the city for whose sake I gathered together my whole army, for whose sake I first conquered all other lands? Is it not smaller and weaker than all the cities of the nations I subdued with my strong hand?" He stretched himself and shook his head, and waved his hand contemptuously toward the Temple mount and the sanctuary crowning it. When his warriors urged him to make his attack upon Jerusalem, he bade them take their ease for one night, and be prepared to storm the city the next day. It seemed no great undertaking. Each warrior would but have to pick up as much mortar from the wall as is needed to seal a letter and the whole city would disappear. But Sennacherib made the mistake of not proceeding directly to the attack upon the city. If he had made the assault at once, it would have been successful, for the sin of Saul against the priests at Nob had not yet been wholly expiated; on that very day it was fully atoned for.<sup>53</sup> In the following night, which was the Passover night, when Hezekiah and the people began to sing the Hallel Psalms,<sup>54</sup> the giant host was annihilated. The archangel Gabriel,<sup>55</sup> sent by God to ripen the fruits of the field, was charged to address himself to the task of making away with the Assyrians, and he fulfilled his mission so well that of all the millions of the army, Sennacherib alone was saved with his two sons, his son-in-law<sup>56</sup> Nebuchadnezzar, and Ne-

buzaradan.<sup>57</sup> The death of the Assyrians happened when the angel permitted them to hear the "song of the celestials."<sup>58</sup> Their souls were burnt, though their garments remained intact.<sup>59</sup> Such an end was too good for Sennacherib. To him a disgraceful death was apportioned. On his flight away from Jerusalem, he met a Divine apparition in the guise of an old man. He questioned Sennacherib as to what he would say to the kings allied with him, in reply to their inquiry about the fate of their sons at Jerusalem. Sennacherib confessed his dread of a meeting with those kings. The old man advised him to have his hair cut off, which would change his appearance beyond recognition. Sennacherib assented, and his adviser sent him to a house in the vicinity to fetch a pair of shears. Here he found some people—angels in disguise—busying themselves with a hand-mill. They promised to give him the shears, provided he ground a measure of grain for them. So it grew late and dark by the time Sennacherib returned to the old man, and he had to procure a light before his hair could be cut. As he fanned the fire into a flame, a spark flew into his beard and singed it, and he had to sacrifice his beard as well as his hair. On his return to Assyria, Sennacherib found a plank, which he worshipped as an idol, because it was part of the ark which had saved Noah from the deluge. He vowed that he would sacrifice his sons to this idol if he prospered in his next ventures. But his sons heard his vows, and they killed their father,<sup>60</sup> and fled to Ẕardu, where they released the Jewish captives confined there in great numbers. With these they marched to Jerusalem, and became proselytes there. The famous scholars Shemaiah and Abtalion were the descendants of these two sons of Sennacherib.<sup>61</sup>

---

47. Sanhedrin 63b; Targum on 2 Chron. 23.3; Tosefta-Targum 2 Kings 16.3. In the last-named source it



is asserted that Hezekiah was saved from death by fire through the merits of his descendants, the three youths who willingly offered themselves to be thrown into the fiery furnace for the glory of God. On Salamander, see text on p. 34, and notes 156–158 appertaining thereto; comp. also Bacher, *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* XXVII, 15.

48. Sanhedrin 47a; Makkot 24a; Tehillim 15, 118.

49. Sanhedrin 96a.

50. Sanhedrin 94b; Sifre D., 34; Sifra 9.22; 45b; ER 17, 88; Shir 1.3; Koheleth 9.18. Compare with p. 1049.

51. Megillah 11b; BaR (end). The policy of Sennacherib was after conquering a country, to transfer the inhabitants thereof to another country, and thus it came about that to-day no land is inhabited by its original settlers; Yadayim 4.4; Tosefta 2.17; Sotah 46b; Yebamot 76a; Tosefta Kiddushin 5.4; Seder 'Olam 23 (comp. Ratner, note 8); Berakot 28a; BaR (end); Midrash Tannaim 146. Compare footnote 82 on p. 161. On Sennacherib as "cosmocrator", see also Mekilta Beshallah 1, 26b; Sotah 9a (comp. Tosafot, caption מנימין); Tan. B. III, 37 and 38; WR 18.2; Mahzor Vitry 169; Makiri, Isa 9.11, quoting an unknown source. On other "cosmocrators", see Index, s. v.

52. Sanhedrin 93b, and, with variations, Tosefta-Targum Is. 10.31. Comp. also Mekilta Shirah 2, 36a; Apocalypse of Baruch 63.7; Seder 'Olam 23; Tosefta Sotah 3.18; ShR 18.5; Tehillim 79, 358–359; Tan. B. III, 38; ER 7, 44–45.

53. Sanhedrin 93b; *Panim Aherim* 73; comp. also WR 5.3, where it is stated that on the very same day God decreed Uziah's punishment (compare with p. 1040), the delivery of the ten tribes into the hands of Sennacherib, and the latter's defeat by Hezekiah. The meaning of this Haggadah is very likely that God revealed these three things to Isaiah; compare with p. 1040.

54. ShR 18.5; Tosefta-Targum 2 Kings 19.35–37; Shir 1.12; Seder 'Olam 23 (comp. Ratner, note 38); Yerushalmi Pesahim 9, 36d. On the first night of Passover as the "night of miracles", see footnote 76 on p. 190. *Panim Aherim* 93 = Yalkut II, 241 reads: When Rab-shakeh heard the singing of the Hallel he counselled Sennacherib to withdraw from Jerusalem, as on this night—the first night of Passover—many miracles were wrought for Israel. Sennacherib however did not accept the wise counsel given him. Here it is very likely assumed that Rab-shakeh was an "apostate"; comp. note 94.

55. Sanhedrin 95b; Tosefta-Targum Is. 10.32; Aggadat Shir 5.39 and 8.45; Jerome on Is. 30.2. On the other hand, ShR 18.5, Tosefta-Targum 2 Kings 19.35, and Aphraates, 58, maintain that it was Michael who destroyed the host of the Assyrians. Targum 2 Chron. 32.21 assigns this distinction to both of the archangels. On the preference given to Gabriel over Michael in the Babylonian Hag-

gadah, whereas the favorite of the Palestinian Haggadah is Michael, comp. Index, s. v. "Michael" and "Gabriel". Very obscure is the following remark of Aggadat Shir 8.45; At the time Gabriel received the power to annihilate the host of the Assyrians, Leviathan was empowered to "destroy the rivers". From the connection in which this passage is given it becomes evident that the "rivers of fire flowing from before the Shekinah" are meant. According to Apocalypse of Baruch 63.6, it is the angel Rameel who destroyed the Assyrians. The co-operation of Gabriel and Michael in the destruction of Babylon is maintained in Tosefta-Targum Is. 21.5, and very likely also Aggadat Shir 5.39, where השומרים is to be explained in accordance with ShR. *loc. cit.* Hezekiah and Isaiah were in the Temple when the host of the Assyrians approached Jerusalem; a fire arose from amidst them, which burned Sennacherib and consumed his host. See Tehillim 22, 180. The burning of Sennacherib is not to be taken literally. See, however, text on p. 1046.

56. Sanhedrin 95b; Tosefta-Targum 2 Kings 19.35 and Is. 10.32 (only Targum makes Nebuchadnezzar the son-in-law of Sennacherib). Compare with p. 1073.

57. Sanhedrin 95b; Tosefta-Targum 2 Kings 19.35 does not mention Nebuzaradan. Sanhedrin gives different views which set the number of survivors at ten or fourteen. Jerome on Is. 10.13 has ten; 'Eser Galuyyot 7 shares the view given in the text.

58. Sanhedrin 95b, and similarly Jerome on Is. 10.3. The latter states that Jewish tradition considers Hamon, "noise" (comp. Is. 33.3), to be the name of the angel Gabriel. This is corroborated by Aggadat Shir 5, 39. According to Sanhedrin, the angel clapped together his wings, and the noise caused by it was so terrific that the Assyrians gave up their ghosts. Another view given in Sanhedrin is that the angel blew out the breath of the Assyrians. This means that he took their souls without injuring their bodies. Comp. the following note. Here it is also stated: God asked Gabriel, "Is thy scythe sharpened?" The angel replied, "It is sharpened and ready since the six days of creation." The use of the scythe by Gabriel is very likely connected with the view that he is charged with the ripening of the products of the fields; compare with the text on p. 1046. The rabbinical sources know nothing of the mice which caused the defeat of Sennacherib by gnawing to pieces in one night the bows and the rest of the armor of the Assyrians. Comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 1.4, who quotes Herodotus as his authority.

59. Shabbat 113b; Sanhedrin 94a; Jerome Is. 10.16; Tosefta-Targum 2 Kings 19.35; Targum 2 Chron. 32.21. Comp. the preceding note. According to another view the bodies of the Assyrians were burned but not their garments, and this was the reward for the pious deed of their ancestor Shem who covered the nakedness of his father



with a garment. See Apocalypse of Baruch 63.8; Tan. B. I, 50, and III, 13–14; Tan. Noah 15 and Zaw 2; Tehillim 11, 100; Shabbat and Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.* Comp. also Targum Yerushalmi Num. 11.26; footnote 482 on p. 698, and footnote 382 on p. 662.

60. Sanhedrin 95b–96a; Tosefta-Targum 2 Kings 19.35–37; ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 32.21. Sennacherib brought severe punishment upon himself by committing eight grievous sins. These were: Neglecting justice, idolatry, unchastity, bloodshed, desecration of the “Name”, employment of obscene language, pride, and slander. These eight sins caused the doom of the generation of the flood, of the generation of the builders of the tower, of the inhabitants of the sinful cities, of Pharaoh, and of Nebuchadnezzar. See ER 15, 74. Arrogance is punished with “death by fire”, as may be seen from what befell the generation of the flood (compare with pp. 138, 144), Pharaoh (comp. Exod. 5.2 and 9.23–24), Sisera (compare with text on p. 868), Sennacherib (on his arrogance, see Is. 10.8, *seq.*); Nebuchadnezzar (comp. Dan. 3.15 and 22). The same punishment will be inflicted upon the “wicked kingdom” in the days to come. See WR 7.6; Tan. B. III, 13; Tan. Zaw 2; Tehillim 11, 100; Aggadat Bereshit 1.1–2. Comp. also Sanhedrin 94a–94b, which reads: Sennacherib, who instructed his messenger (Rab-shakeh) to utter blasphemies against God, was punished through a messenger of God (the angel); Pharaoh who uttered blasphemies himself was punished by God Himself. Sennacherib represents here his people who were slain by the angel. Comp. also note 55 (end).

61. Tosefta-Targum 2 Kings 19.35–37, where **ומינהון** must be read instead of **והינהון**. On the pious descendants of Sennacherib’s sons, see also Gittin 57a; Sanhedrin 96b; Tan. Wa-Yakhel 8. Compare further with p. 158, footnote 72. Shemaiah and Abtalion are said to have been kings of Baalbek, and this seems to be connected with the legend about their descent from Sennacherib; comp. ps.-Hippolytus 705; comp. note 103. On the graves of Sennacherib’s sons, see Ozar Tob, 38.

## MIRACLES WROUGHT FOR HEZEKIAH

The destruction of the Assyrian host delivered Hezekiah from an inner as well as an outer enemy, for he had opponents in Jerusalem, among them the high priest Shebnah.<sup>62</sup> Shebnah had a more numerous following in the

city than the king himself,<sup>63</sup> and they and their leader had favored peace with Sennacherib. Supported by Joah, another influential personage, Shebnah had fastened a letter to a dart, and shot the dart into the Assyrian camp. The contents of the letter were: “We and the whole people of Israel wish to conclude peace with thee, but Hezekiah and Isaiah will not permit it.”<sup>64</sup> Shebnah’s influence was so powerful that Hezekiah began to show signs of yielding. Had it not been for the prophet Isaiah, the king would have submitted to Sennacherib’s demands.

Shebnah’s treachery and his other sins did not go unpunished. When he and his band of adherents left Jerusalem to join the Assyrians, the angel Gabriel closed the gate as soon as Shebnah had passed beyond it, and so he was separated from his followers. To the inquiry of Sennacherib about the many sympathizers he had written of, he could give no reply but that they had changed their mind. The Assyrian king thought Shebnah had made sport of him. He, therefore, ordered his attendants to bore a hole through his heels, tie him to the tail of a horse by them, and spur the horse on to run until Shebnah was dragged to death.<sup>65</sup>

The unexpected victory won by Hezekiah over the Assyrians, to whom the kingdom of Samaria had fallen a prey but a short time before, showed how wrong they had been who had mocked at Hezekiah for his frugal ways. A king whose meal consisted of a handful of vegetables could hardly be called a dignified ruler, they had said. These critics would gladly have seen his kingdom pass into the hands of Pekah, the king of Samaria, whose dessert, to speak of nothing else, consisted of forty seim of young pigeons.<sup>66</sup>

In view of all the wonders God had done for him, it was unpardonable that Hezekiah did not feel himself prompted at least to sing a song of praise to God. Indeed, when the prophet Isaiah urged him to it, he refused, saying that the study



of the Torah, to which he devoted himself with assiduous zeal, was a substitute for direct expressions of gratitude. Besides, he thought God's miracles would become known to the world without action on his part,<sup>67</sup> in such ways as these: After the destruction of the Assyrian army, when the Jews searched the abandoned camps, they found Pharaoh the king of Egypt and the Ethiopian king Tirhakah. These kings had hastened to the aid of Hezekiah, and the Assyrians had taken them captive and clapped them in irons, in which they were languishing when the Jews came upon them. Liberated by Hezekiah, the two rulers returned to their respective realms, spreading the report of the greatness of God everywhere. And again, all the vassal troops in Sennacherib's army, set free by Hezekiah, accepted the Jewish faith, and on their way home they proclaimed the kingdom of God in Egypt and in many other lands.<sup>68</sup>

By failing in gratitude Hezekiah lost a great opportunity. The Divine plan had been to make Hezekiah the Messiah, and Sennacherib was to be Gog and Magog. Justice opposed this plan, addressing God thus: "O Lord of the world! David, king of Israel, who sang so many songs and hymns of praise to Thee, him Thou didst not make the Messiah, and now Thou wouldst confer the distinction upon Hezekiah, who has no word of praise for Thee in spite of the manifold wonders Thou hast wrought for him?" Then the earth appeared before God, and said: "Lord of the world! I will sing Thee a song in place of this righteous man; make him to be the Messiah," and the earth forthwith intoned a song of praise. Likewise spake the Prince of the World:<sup>69</sup> "Lord of the world! Do the will of this righteous man." But a voice from heaven announced: "This is my secret, this is my secret." And again, when the prophet exclaimed sorrowfully, "Woe is me! How long, O Lord, how long!" the voice replied: "The time of the Messi-

ah will arrive when the 'treacherous dealers and the treacherous dealers' shall have come."<sup>70</sup>

The sin committed by Hezekiah asleep, he had to atone for awake. If he refused to devote a song of praise to God for his escape from the Assyrian peril, he could not refrain from doing it after his recovery from the dangerous sickness that befell him.<sup>71</sup> This sickness was a punishment for another sin beside ingratitude. He had "peeled off" the gold from the Temple, and sent it to the king of the Assyrians; therefore the disease that afflicted him caused his skin to "peel off".<sup>72</sup> Moreover, this malady of Hezekiah's was brought upon him by God, to afford an opportunity for the king and the prophet Isaiah to come close to each other. The two had had a dispute on a point of etiquette.<sup>73</sup> The king adduced as a precedent the action of Elijah, who "went to show himself unto Ahab", and demanded that Isaiah, too, should appear before him. The prophet, on the other hand, modelled his conduct after Elisha's, who permitted the kings of Israel, and Judah, and Edom, to come to him. But God settled the dispute by afflicting Hezekiah with sickness, and then He bade Isaiah go to the king and pay the visit due to the sick. The prophet did the bidding of God. When he appeared in the presence of the ailing king, he said: "Set thine house in order, for thou wilt die in this world and not live in the next"—a fate which Hezekiah incurred because he had failed to take unto himself a wife and bring forth posterity. The king's defense, that he had preferred a celibate's life because he had seen in the holy spirit that he was destined to have impious children, the prophet did not consider valid. He rebutted it with the words: "Why dost thou concern thyself with the secrets of the All-Merciful? Thou hast but to do thy duty. God will do whatsoever it pleases Him." Thereupon Hezekiah asked the daughter of the prophet in marriage, saying: "Perchance my merits joined



to thine will cause my children to be virtuous." But Isaiah rejected the proposal of marriage, because he knew that the decree of God ordaining the king's death was unalterable. Whereupon the king: "Thou son of Amoz, bring thy prophecy to an end, and go hence! For thus has it been transmitted to me from the house of my ancestor:<sup>74</sup> Even if a sharp sword rests at the very throat of a man, he may yet not refrain from uttering a prayer for mercy."<sup>75</sup>

And the king was right. Though death had been decreed against him, his prayer averted it. In his prayer he supplicated God to keep him alive for the sake of the merits of his ancestors, who had built the Temple and brought many proselytes into the Jewish fold, and for the sake of his own merits, for, he said, "I searched out all the two hundred and forty-eight members of my body which Thou didst give me, and I found none which I had used in a manner contrary to Thy will."<sup>76</sup>

His prayer was heard. God added fifteen years to his life, but He made him understand very clearly, that he owed the mercy solely to the merits of David, not at all to his own, as Hezekiah fondly believed.<sup>77</sup> Before Isaiah left the court of the palace, God instructed him to return to the king, and announce his recovery to him. Isaiah feared lest Hezekiah should place little trust in his words, as he had but a short while before predicted his swiftly approaching end. But God reassured the prophet. In his modesty and piety, the king would harbor no doubt derogatory to the prophet's trustworthiness.<sup>78</sup> The remedy employed by Isaiah, a cake of figs applied to the boil, increased the wonder of Hezekiah's recovery, for it was apt to aggravate the malady rather than alleviate it.<sup>79</sup>

A number of miracles besides were connected with the recovery of Hezekiah. In itself it was remarkable, as being the first case of a recovery on record. Previously illness had been in-

evitably followed by death. Before he had fallen sick, Hezekiah himself had implored God to change this order of nature. He held that sickness followed by restoration to health would induce men to do penance. God had replied: "Thou art right, and the new order shall be begun with thee."<sup>80</sup> Furthermore, the day of Hezekiah's recovery was marked by the great miracle that the sun shone ten hours longer than its wonted time. The remotest lands were amazed thereat, and Baladan, the ruler of Babylon, was prompted by it to send an embassy to Hezekiah, which was to carry his felicitations to the Jewish king upon his recovery. Baladan, it should be said by the way, was not the real king of Babylon. The throne was occupied by his father, whose face had changed into that of a dog. Therefore the son had to administer the affairs of state, and he was known by his father's name as well as his own.<sup>81</sup> This Baladan was in the habit of dining at noon, and then he took a nap until three o'clock of the afternoon. On the day of Hezekiah's recovery, when he awoke from his sleep, and saw the sun overhead, he was on the point of having his guards executed, because he thought they had permitted him to sleep a whole afternoon and the night following it. He desisted only when he was informed of Hezekiah's miraculous recovery, and realized that the God of Hezekiah was greater than his own god, the sun.<sup>82</sup> He at once set about sending greetings to the Jewish king. His letter read as follows: "Peace be with Hezekiah, peace with his great God, and peace with Jerusalem." After the letter was dispatched, it occurred to Baladan that it had not been composed properly. Mention of Hezekiah had been made before mention of God. He had the messengers called back, and ordered another letter to be written, in which the oversight was made good. As a reward for his punctiliousness, three of his descendants, Nebuchadnezzar, Evil-merodach, and Belshazzar, were appointed by



God to be world monarchs. God said: "Thou didst arise from thy throne, and didst take three steps to do Me honor, by having thy letter rewritten, therefore will I grant thee three descendants who shall be known from one end of the world to the other."<sup>83</sup>

The embassy sent by the Babylonian monarch was an act of homage to God for his miracle-working power. Hezekiah, however, took it to be an act of homage toward himself, and it had the effect of making him arrogant. Not only did he eat and drink with the heathen who made up the embassy, but also, in his haughtiness of mind, he displayed before them all the treasures which he had captured from Sennacherib, and many other curiosities besides, among them magnetic iron, a peculiar sort of ivory, and honey as solid as stone.

What was worse, he had his wife partake of the meal in honor of the embassy, and, most heinous crime of all,<sup>84</sup> he opened the holy Ark, and pointing to the tables of the law within it, said to the heathen: "With the help of these we undertake wars and win victories."<sup>85</sup> God sent Isaiah to reproach Hezekiah for these acts. The king, instead of confessing his wrong at once, answered the prophet haughtily.<sup>86</sup> Then Isaiah announced to him that the treasures taken from Sennacherib<sup>87</sup> would revert to Babylon some time in the future, and his descendants, Daniel and the three companions of Daniel, would serve the Babylonian ruler as eunuchs.<sup>88</sup>

Despite his pride in this case, Hezekiah was one of the most pious kings of Judah. Especially he is deserving of praise for his efforts to have Hebrew literature put into writing, for it was Hezekiah who had copies made of the books of Isaiah, Ecclesiastes, Song of Songs, and Proverbs.<sup>89</sup> On the other hand, he had concealed the books containing medical remedies.<sup>90</sup>

Great was the mourning over him at his death. No less than thirty-six thousand men with

bared shoulders marched before his bier, and, rarer distinction still, a scroll of the law was laid upon his bier, for it was said: "He who rests in this bier, has fulfilled all ordained in this book."<sup>91</sup> He was buried next to David and Solomon.<sup>92</sup>

---

62. WR 5.5, which gives also the different view that Shebnah was only an Amarkol (high Temple official). The Jewish teachers of Eusebius and Jerome shared the view given in the text. Comp. the commentaries of these Church Fathers on Is. 22.15.

63. Sanhedrin 26a; Jerome on Is. 22.15. The latter maintains that Shebnah delivered into the hands of Sennacherib the entire city of Jerusalem with the exception of Mount Zion.

64. Sanhedrin 26a–26b; WR 5.5 and 17.3; Tehillim 11, 98–99; Zohar III, 199b. In Sanhedrin it is also said that Shebnah was the most prominent scholar of his time, being superior even to Hezekiah in his learning; but he was of a very lascivious character, and for his evil deeds he was punished with leprosy.

65. Sanhedrin 26a–26b. On being dragged to death by horses, see also Ekah 5, 115. A different view concerning the course of this campaign is given in Seder 'Olam 23. Eight years after the capture of Samaria, Sennacherib undertook his campaign against Judea, being convinced that the punishment of Israel predicted by the prophets was meant for the entire nation including Judea. On his march to Judea he conquered the Moabites, Ammonites and Arabs, his former allies in the war against Samaria, and his general Rab-shakeh succeeded in persuading the party led by Shebnah to surrender to him voluntarily and to follow him to Babylon. Sennacherib was forced to stop his campaign against Hezekiah for a short time, as he had to move hurriedly against Ethiopia. Having conquered this "pearl of all countries", he returned to Judea. But before attacking Hezekiah, he sent his generals Tartan and Rab-saris to make him surrender voluntarily. Comp. also Ratner, notes 7–24. Opinions differ as to whether Sennacherib was a wise or a foolish king. See Sanhedrin 94a; Sifre D., 37; 2 ARN 20.43.

66. Sanhedrin 94b; PK 6, 59b–60a; PR 16, 82a; Mishle 13,74. According to Tosefta-Targum on Is. 7, 6, the "son of Tabeel" mentioned there is no other than Pekah; but according to Yerushalmi 'Abodah Zarah 1. 39a Tabeel means "idol". The haggadic interpretation of וְנָחַל in Tosefta-Targum Is. 8.6 is taken from PK, *loc. cit.*

67. Shir 4.8; Aggadat Shir 8, 45; Ekah, introduction, 30, and the parallel passages cited by Buber. On Hezekiah's refusal to sing a song of praise to God, see text



on p. 1049 and text on p. 1080; on his great devotion to the study of the Torah, see Sanhedrin 20a; Mishle 28, 97; both versions of ARN 1, 2–3. Comp. further the references in note 59. The Midrashim attempt to explain in detail the nature of Hezekiah's activity referred to in Prov. 28.1. Comp. note 89. When Rabban Johanan b. Zakkai saw his end drawing nigh, he said: "Prepare a chair for Hezekiah, king of Judah." See Yerushalmi Sotah 9, 24c; 'Abodah Zarah 3, 42c. This great Rabbi, whose life was devoted to the study of the Torah and to the spreading of the knowledge thereof among the people, expected to be met at his death by the pious king, whose life was devoted to the same ideals as his.

68. Seder 'Olam 23; Menahot 109b; Shir 4.8. In the last passage it is stated that Hezekiah thought that the miracle of the standstill of the sun (compare with p. 1050) would proclaim the omnipotence of God Almighty more than he could do by words of praise and song.

69. According to the later mystics, the "prince of the world" is identical with Metatron. Comp. Index, s. v.

70. Sanhedrin 94a; Shir 4.8. The Church Fathers Justin Martyr (*Dialogue*, 33) and Tertullian (*Adversus Marcionem*, 5.9) maintain that the Jews interpret Ps. 110 as referring to Hezekiah. As to the haggadic explanation of the "closed" מ in לְמַרְבֵּה (Is. 6.6), see also the quotation from an unknown Midrash in Kimhi, *ad loc.*, according to which this "closed" מ in the middle of the word, and the open one at the end of הַמ (Nehem. 2.14) contain an allusion to the time of the advent of the Messiah. It is worthy of note in this connection that the old sources knew nothing of the explanation of Is. 9.5 as given by the medieval commentators, according to whom "the child" mentioned here (*i. e.*, Hezekiah) was called "prince of peace" by the wonderful Counsellor, the mighty God, the everlasting Father. The Talmud and Midrash explicitly state that the names in this verse are those of the child to whom the "names of God were given", though the authorities differ as to whether Hezekiah or the Messiah is meant by this "child". See Sanhedrin 94a; PRK (Schönblum's edition, 39a; Grünhut's edition 82. Here the child is identified with the Messiah); Ma'aseh Torah 100 (Child = the Messiah; the text is not quite correct); PR 46, 188a; Ruth R. 3.15; Makiri Is. *ad loc.*, where the text of PR reads somewhat differently. As to the names of God borne by men, see Baba Batra 75b; Sifre D., 355 (אֵין כֹּהֵל); BR 79 (end); footnote 282 on p. 305. It is not quite sure whether מֶן קִדְּם in Targum on Is., *loc. cit.*, is not a later "emendation" prompted by anti-Christian tendency. Comp. Aptowitzer, Ha-Zofeh, I, 81–82.

71. Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 243 (end) on 2 Kings 20; Eusebius and Jerome on Is. 39.1; Ephraem I, 560. Seder 'Olam 23, on the other hand, maintains that the downfall of Sennacherib took place on the very same

day on which Hezekiah became ill. Comp. also Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 424 on Is. 38 (end).

72. Aggadat Shir 1, 12; Pereq R. Yoshiyyahu, 133.

73. As to the point of etiquette, see Tosefta Horayyot 2.9, and Yerushalmi 3, 48b. Compare also with p. 876, with regard to the relation between Phinehas and Jephthah.

74. The allusion is to Jehoshaphat; compare with p. 987 and note 30 appertaining thereto.

75. Berakot 10a; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28b (top); Hezekiah quotes his "grandfather" David as authority for the view that prayer, alms, and repentance ward off evil decreed against one, even after it had been announced to him in a vision or dream; Koheleth 5.9; Baraita di-Yeshu'a 45a; Zohar I, 13a and 66a; ER 8, 46. In the last source Hezekiah's illness is said to have been the punishment for unseemly language used by him in his prayer of deliverance from the hands of Sennacherib. It is difficult to tell to what words in Hezekiah's prayer (as given in 2 Kings 19.15–19) the Haggadah objected.

76. Yerushalmi Berakot 4, 8b; Babli 10b; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28b–28c; Koheleth 5.6. This prayer of Hezekiah was considered a model as far as its formal aspect is concerned; comp. ER 8, 46 (as to the correct reading, see Rokeah, 325, and רִאשִׁי"ה 79; Aptowitzer's edition, 53); Berakot 27b. On the idea that the members of the human body were created to perform the divine commandments, see PK 12, 101a; footnote 210 on p. 603. Comp. Midrash Tannaim 15.

77. Berakot 10b. Comp. also Koheleth 1.1. As to the question whether one's good deeds could prolong one's life beyond the space of time set for him, see Yebamot 49b–50a; Koheleth 3.2; Tosefta Horayyot 1.15.

78. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28b; Koheleth 5.6. The last passage contains the additional remark of the king addressed to the prophet, which reads: "Did I not tell thee from the beginning that I would not be guided by thy advice but by the advice of my grandfather?" Comp. note 74.

79. Mekilta Wa-Yassa' 1, 45b, and Beshallah 5, 32a; Mekilta RS 73; Jerome on Is. 39.1. Compare with pp. 566–567. The Rabbis find some difficulty in explaining the demand of the king for a sign (Is. 38.22), as it is forbidden to ask signs of a prophet; comp. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 11, 30c. During the king's illness Isaiah made the scholars study at the entrance of the royal palace to prevent the angel of death from entering it; 'Erubin 26a, and compare with p. 938.

80. BR 65.9; PRE 52 (which reads: "this was the last of the seven great miracles"; compare with p. 400, and text on p. 1030).

81. Sanhedrin 96a; Yerushalmi Yebamot 2, 4a; ER 8, 47; Zohar I, 6b; PRE 52 (with some modifications). At the funeral of Ahaz the sun set ten hours before its time (compare with p. 1045), and at Hezekiah's recovery from his



illness the sun recovered the lost hours. See Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*, and somewhat different in PRE, *loc. cit.* Comp. also Hippolytus, *In Isaiam* 630–631; Brüll in *Bet ha-Midrash* (Hebrew periodical) II, 148.

82. This is a reminiscence of Merodach as sun god. Baladan's dog-face is very likely a Jewish "explanation" of the dogs seen on the Assyrian-Babylonian monuments in the company of Merodach. Comp. Roscher's *Lexicon der Mythologie*, II, 2371.

83. PK 2, 13a–14a; Shir 3.4; Esther R. 1.9; Tan. Ki-Tissa 5; ER 20, 115. Another version of this legend is given in text on p. 1072, according to which Nebuchadnezzar was the secretary to Merodach-Baladan, not his son. Jerome on Is. 39.1 agrees with the Palestinian Midrashim in making Nebuchadnezzar the son of Merodach.

84. Sanhedrin 104a; Shir 3.4 (on the text, see Sachs, in introduction to *Sefer Tagin* 15, *seq.*); ER 8, 47. Comp. also Aggadat Shir 1, 26.

85. PRE 52; Targum 2 Chron. 32.31. As to the tables compare with p. 794.

86. BR 19.11; BaR 20.6; Zohar III, 200a. The proper answer for the king to give to Isaiah would have been: "O prophet of God, thou surely knowest who the men are and what they want." Hezekiah like Adam (Gen. 3.9–10), Cain (*ibid.* 4.9), and Balaam (Num. 22.9), on similar occasions, was tested and found wanting. Compare with p. 763 and text on p. 1162, bottom.

87. As to the origin of these treasures, see text on p. 397.

88. Sanhedrin 93b; Origen, Matth. 15.5; Jerome on Is. 39.7.

89. Baba Batra 15a; both versions of ARN 1, 2–3; Mishle 25, 96–97. In the last two sources it is stated that the "men of Hezekiah" (Prov. 25.1) were very careful before they decided a point of law, and as a reward long life was granted to them. The Haggadah very likely identifies the "men of Hezekiah" with the members of the Great Assembly (compare with p. 1126), and hence the statement concerning their long life. Opinions in the above sources differ as to the exact nature of the work done by the "men of Hezekiah". According to some, they "wrote down" the book of Isaiah and the three books of Solomon, whereas others maintain that they withdrew from public use the books of Solomon, because they were of the opinion that these books were not of a holy nature, and they remained "hidden" until the time of the Great Assembly. The third opinion is that these men explained the words of Solomon (ARN 1, 2: **לא שהעתיקו אלא שפירשו**), and owing to their explanation these books were admitted into the Canon. Hezekiah undertook six reforms; three were approved by the scholars of his time, and three were rejected. He "hid" the "books of medicine", broke in pieces the brazen serpent which Moses had made, and buried his father as

though he had been a pauper (compare with p. 1045). All this he did with the approval of the scholars. On the other hand, they did not approve of his stopping the upper spring of the waters of Gihon, of his scraping off the gold from the Temple (compare with p. 1049), and of his declaring a leap year by adding a second month of Nisan. See Berakot 10b; Pesahim 56a (in the editions it is given wrongly as Mishnah); Yerushalmi 9, 36c–36d; Nedarim 6, 40a; Sanhedrin 12a–12b; Tosefta 2, 10–11; Yerushalmi 1, 18d (different opinions are given here as to the nature of the error committed by Hezekiah in the intercalation of the year mentioned in 2 Chron. 30.2); ARN 1, 11–12; PRE 9. Comp. also 'Arakin 10b; Tosefta 2.6; Yerushalmi Sukkah 5, 55d. On the breaking in pieces of the brazen serpent, see also Hullin 6b; Yerushalmi Dammai 2, 22c; see also the following note. On the "books of medicine", see the following note.

90. Berakot 10b; Pesahim 56a; Yerushalmi 9, 36c–36d (here: "tablets of medical remedies"); Nedarim 6, 40a; Sanhedrin 1, 18d. Comp. references at the end of preceding note. It is not explicitly stated in the rabbinical writings that these books had Solomon as their author, or that the people ascribed them to him. The Rabbis were very likely silent on this fact to avoid the impression of an implied unfavorable criticism on the wise king. See Josephus, *Antiqui.*, VIII, 5; Maimonides, *Mishnah Commentary* on Pesahim 4 (end); Schürer, *Geschichte*, III, 413, 418–419; Chajes, *Marcus Studien*, 37; Grünbaum, *Gesammelte Aufsätze* 25; Azulai in his commentary on ARN 2. The last-named authority quotes from a MS. of R. Eleazar of Worms the statement that until the days of Hezekiah a list of the healing springs was circulated among the people. In case of illness they did not pray to God for help, but made use of the healing springs. For this reason Hezekiah hid this list, which had been transmitted from generation to generation from the time of Noah. An attempt is obviously made here to connect the "stopping of the spring of Gihon" (comp. 2 Chron. 32.30, and the preceding note) with the hiding of the medical remedies. The breaking in pieces of the brazen altar by Hezekiah was due to the same reason as the hiding of the medical books. The "hissing of the brazen serpent" used to heal all sick people of Jerusalem, and the cure was so certain that in case of illness they never prayed to God for help. Hezekiah therefore broke the brazen serpent in pieces. Until his time this serpent was attached to Solomon's throne. See *Kisse we-Ippodromon*, 35. Compare also footnote 74 on p. 157.

91. Baba Kamma 17a; Ekah, introduction, 25. Compare with p. 988.

92. Baba Kamma 16b; ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 32.33. This pious king bore the name Hezekiah because he had been made strong by God (**חזק** "was strong"), and because he brought Israel nigh unto God. He had eight other



names (comp. note 70), and his great adversary Sennacherib (*i. e.*, he who uttered blasphemous words against God; comp. note 60) also had eight other names; these are: Tiglath-pileser, Palnesser, Shalmanesser, Pul, Sargon, Os-nappar, Rabba-yakkira ("the great and honored"). See Sanhedrin 94a; Jerome on Is. 20.1 and 36.1. On Sennacherib's eight names, see Einhorn in the supplement to his commentary on Ruth R.

## MANASSEH

Hezekiah had finally yielded to the admonitions of Isaiah, and had taken a wife unto himself;<sup>93</sup> the daughter of the prophet. But he entered upon marriage with a heavy heart. His prophetic spirit foretold to him that the impiousness of the sons he would beget would make their death to be preferable to their life. These fears were confirmed all too soon. His two sons, Rabshakeh and Manasseh, showed their complete unlikeness to their parents in early childhood. Once, when Hezekiah was carrying his two little ones on his shoulders to the Bet ha-Midrash, he overheard their conversation. The one said: "Our father's bald head might do for frying fish." The other rejoined: "It would do well for offering sacrifices to idols." Enraged by these words, Hezekiah let his sons slip from his shoulders. Rabshakeh was killed by the fall, but Manasseh escaped unhurt.<sup>94</sup> Better had it been if Manasseh had shared his brother's untimely fate. He was spared for naught but murder, idolatry, and other abominable atrocities.<sup>95</sup>

After Hezekiah had departed this life, Manasseh ceased to serve the God of his father. He did whatever his evil imagination prompted. The altar was destroyed, and in the inner space of the Temple he set up an idol<sup>96</sup> with four faces, copied from the four figures on the throne of God. It was so placed that from whatever direction one entered the Temple, a face of the idol confronted him.<sup>97</sup>

As Manasseh was sacrilegious toward God, he was malevolent toward his fellows. He had fashioned an image so large that it required a thousand men to carry it. Daily a new force was employed on this task, because Manasseh had each set of porters killed off at the end of the day's work. All his acts were calculated to cast contempt upon Judaism and its tenets. It did not satisfy his evil desire to obliterate the name of God from the Holy Scriptures;<sup>98</sup> he went so far as to deliver public lectures whose burden was to ridicule the Torah.<sup>99</sup> Isaiah and the other prophets, Micah, Joel, and Habakkuk,<sup>100</sup> left Jerusalem and repaired to a mountain in the desert, that they might be spared the sight of the abominations practiced by the king. Their abiding-place was disclosed to the king. A Samaritan, a descendant of the false prophet Zedekiah, had taken refuge in Jerusalem after the destruction of the Temple. But he did not remain there long; charges were made against him before the pious king Hezekiah, and he withdrew to Bethlehem, where he gathered hangers-on about him. This Samaritan it was who traced the prophets to their retreat, and lodged accusations against them before Manasseh.<sup>101</sup> The impious king sat in judgment on Isaiah, and condemned him to death. The indictment against him was that his prophecies contained teachings in contradiction with the law of Moses. God said unto Moses: "Thou canst not see My face; for man shall not see Me and live"; while Isaiah said: "I saw the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up." Again, Isaiah compared the princes of Israel and the people with the impious inhabitants of Sodom and Gomorrah, and he prophesied the downfall of Jerusalem and the destruction of the Temple.<sup>102</sup> The prophet offered no explanation. He was convinced of the uselessness of defending himself, and he preferred Manasseh should act from ignorance rather than from wickedness. However, he fled for safety. When he heard the



royal bailiffs in pursuit of him, he pronounced the Name of God, and a cedar-tree swallowed him up. The king ordered the tree to be sawn in pieces. When the saw was applied to the portion of the bark under which the mouth of Isaiah lay concealed, he died. His mouth was the only vulnerable part of his body, because at the time when he was called to his prophetic mission,<sup>103</sup> it had made use of the contemptuous words “a people of unclean lips”, regarding Israel. Isaiah died at the age of one hundred and twenty years,<sup>104</sup> by the hands of his own grandchild.<sup>105</sup>

God is long-suffering, but in the end Manasseh received the deserved punishment for his sins and crimes. In the twenty-second year of his rulership, the Assyrians came and carried him off to Babylon in fetters, him together with the old Danite idol, Micah's image.<sup>106</sup> In Babylonia, the king was put into an oven which was heated from below. Finding himself in this extremity, Manasseh began to call upon god after god to help him out of his straits. As this proved inefficacious, he resorted to other means. “I remember,” he said, “my father taught me the verse: ‘When thou art in tribulation, if in the latter days thou shalt return to the Lord thy God, and hearken unto His voice, He will not fail thee.’ Now I cry to God. If he inclines His ear unto me, well and good; if not, then all kinds of gods are alike.” The angels stopped up the windows of heaven, that the prayer of Manasseh might not ascend to God, and they said: “Lord of the world! Art Thou willing to give gracious hearing to one who has paid worship to idols, and set up an idol in the Temple?” “If I did not accept the penance of this man,” replied God, “I should be closing the door in the face of all repentant sinners.” God made a small opening under the Throne of His Glory, and received the prayer of Manasseh through it. Suddenly a wind arose, and carried Manasseh back to Jerusalem.<sup>107</sup> His return to God not only helped him in his dis-

tress, but also brought him pardon for all his sins, so that not even his share in the future world was withdrawn from him.<sup>108</sup>

The people of this time were attracted to idolatry with so irresistible a force that the vast learning of Manasseh, who knew fifty-two different interpretations of the Book of Leviticus,<sup>109</sup> did not give him enough moral strength to withstand its influence. Rab Ashi, the famous compiler of the Talmud, once announced a lecture on Manasseh with the words: “To-morrow I shall speak about our colleague Manasseh.” At night the king appeared to Ashi in a dream, and put a ritual question to him, which the Rabbi could not answer. Manasseh told him the solution, and Ashi, in amazement at the king's scholarship, asked why one so erudite had served idols. Manasseh's reply was: “Hadst thou lived at my time, thou wouldst have caught hold of the hem of my garment and run after me.”<sup>110</sup>

Amon, the son of Manasseh, surpassed his father in wickedness. He was in the habit of saying: “My father was a sinner from early childhood, and in his old age he did penance. I shall do the same. First I shall satisfy the desires of my heart, and afterward I shall return to God.”<sup>111</sup> Indeed, he was guilty of more grievous sins than his predecessor; he burned the Torah; under him the place of the altar was covered with spiderwebs; and, as though of purpose to set at naught the Jewish religion, he committed the worst sort of incest, a degree more heinous than his father's crime of a similar nature.<sup>112</sup> Thus he executed the first half of his maxim literally. For repentance, however, he was given no time; death cut him off in the fulness of his sinful ways.

93. On Hezekiah's original decision to remain unmarried, compare with p. 1049.

94. Berakot 10a; but not in our editions; the passage is supplied by Rabinovitz, *Variae Lectiones*, from the Munich MS. and old sources; comp. also Gaster, *Exempla*,



234. Jerome on Is. quotes the Jewish tradition, according to which Isaiah was the father-in-law of Manasseh. This is very likely a slip for the father-in-law of Hezekiah and grandfather of Manasseh, for not only Babli, but also Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28c, declares that Manasseh was the grandson of the prophet. As for Rab-shakeh, it is only said of him, in Sanhedrin 60a, that he was an "apostate". This view is shared by Ephraem, while Jerome on Is. 36.1, following a Jewish tradition, makes him a son of Isaiah. Jerome was possibly inaccurate in reporting the tradition; he may have meant to say a grandson instead of a son. In this case his tradition would tally with that in Berakot, *loc. cit.* It is, however, hard to understand the statement of the Talmud that Rab-shakeh died in his childhood, without attempting to reconcile this view with the biblical account. It would not do to assume that Rab-shakeh, the son of Hezekiah mentioned in the Talmud, is not identical with the bearer of this name in the Bible, for Targum on Eccles. 10.9, following the Talmud, explicitly states that the Rab-shakeh mentioned in the Bible was the brother of Manasseh. The emphasis laid in the Ascension of Isaiah 1.1 upon the fact that shortly before his death Hezekiah had one son only is perhaps an allusion to the rabbinic legend that his other son (Rab-shakeh) died as a child; comp. also note 54 (end). Quite obvious is the connection between this pseudepigraphic work and the Talmud with regard to Hezekiah's intention to kill Manasseh when he was informed by Isaiah of the wicked deeds his son would commit one day. He was, however, prevented by the prophet from carrying out his intention; for the latter said: "Sammael's plan concerning Manasseh is determined upon, and words will not avail thee." These words of Isaiah remind one of the talmudic passage cited above, Berakot 10a, where the prophet is said to have refused to give his daughter in marriage to the king, remarking: "The decree is decided upon" (that Manasseh would be wicked); compare with p. 1049. The text of Ascension of Isaiah, as given by (Ps-) Chrysostomus, *Opus Imperfectum in Mattheum*, homily I, shows still closer resemblance between the Manasseh legend as given in this pseudepigraphic work and in the Talmud.

95. Ascension of Isaiah 2.5 and Apocalypse of Baruch 64.3, as well as the rabbinic sources (comp. the references given in the following four notes), contain detailed descriptions of the wicked deeds of this king. His name Manasseh is derived, in Ascension of Isaiah 2, 1, as well as in Sanhedrin 12b, from *nasha* "he forgot": he forgot his God and his pious father. On the act of incest committed by him, see note 112.

96. Sanhedrin 103b. This idol was made by his grandfather Ahaz, who did not dare to set it up in the inner space of the Temple, but kept it in the upper chamber over the holy of holies. When on the seventeenth of Tammuz

the idol was set up by Manasseh (Ta'anit 28b; Yerushalmi 4, 68d, top), the prophet Isaiah addressed the people as follows: "Thus saith the Lord: The heaven is My throne, and the earth is My footstool; why then do ye glory in the Temple built by you? On account of four sins I no longer take pleasure in this house, and have decreed to have it destroyed by Nebuchadnezzar, and ye shall go into captivity." These were the last words of Isaiah (the last chapter of his book begins: "The heaven is My throne, etc."), as he was forthwith killed by Manasseh, who became enraged at hearing about the destruction of the Temple and Israel's captivity predicted by Isaiah. See Tosefta-Targum on Is. 66.1; PR 4, 14a. Comp. Zunz, *Gottesdienstliche Vorträge*, 78; Bacher, *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, XXVIII, 16–17; Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia* I, 81. The text of this Tosefta-Targum was printed from a MS., and privately distributed by Christian D. Ginsburg on the occasion of the International Congress of Orientalists held in Rome, 1898. That the last chapter of Is. contains the words of the prophet uttered at the time when Manasseh set up the idol in the Temple is also stated in EZ 9, 188. On the view that Isaiah met his death at the hands of Manasseh, see note 103.

97. DR 2.20; Sanhedrin 103b; EZ 9, 188; Peshitta 2 Chron. 33.7. Comp. also Apocalypse of Baruch 64.3, which reads: And he (Manasseh) made an image with five faces, four of which looked to the four winds, and the fifth was on the top of the image, as an adversary to the zeal of the Mighty One. Similarly it is stated in Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*: Manasseh at first fashioned one face for it; then four (four additional ones, or three additional ones?), that the Shekinah might see and be provoked. The Talmud, as well as the Apocalypse of Baruch, connects סמל in 2 Chron. 23.7 with סמל הקנאה "image of jealousy" in Ezek. 8.5. A very obscure statement concerning the image set up by Manasseh is found in Ta'anit 28b–29a, and reads as follows: Manasseh set up two images in the Temple; but one fell down, and broke the arm of the other in its falling. On the latter this inscription was found: "Thou desirest to bring about the destruction of this house (the Temple) and I am ready to give thee my assistance." The setting up of the image in the Temple by Manasseh was the cause of Israel's captivity into Babylon. See Gittin 7a; Apocalypse of Baruch 64.4.

98. Sanhedrin 103b. Apocalypse of Baruch 64.2–3 describes Manasseh's sins as follows: He slew the righteous, and wrested judgement, shed the blood of the innocent, and wedded women he violently polluted (this accusation is made in rabbinic sources against Jehoiaqim; compare with p. 985), he overturned the altars, destroyed their offerings and drove forth their priests, lest they should minister in the sanctuary. And to such a degree did Manasseh's impiety increase, that he removed the praise of the Most



High from the sanctuary. The last statement wishes to convey that on account of Manasseh's sins the Shekinah left the sanctuary long before the destruction of the Temple. This agrees with the view of the Rabbis, according to which the Shekinah after leaving the sanctuary had stopped at various stations, until, after the capture of the city, it finally ascended to heaven, its original abode. Comp. the different versions of the Haggadah concerning the "ten stations of the Shekinah" in Rosh ha-Shanah 31a; PK 13, 114b–115a; ARN 34, 102; Ekah, introduction, 25; Aggadat Shir 5, 39; Makiri on Ps. 115, 200. The last passage agrees with Apocalypse of Baruch that the "first journey of the Shekinah" took place in Isaiah's time, when Manasseh set up the image in the Temple. Comp. also note 96. In Ascension of Isaiah 2.4–5 it is said of Manasseh: And he (Satan) made him (Manasseh) strong in apostatizing Israel and in the lawlessness which was spread abroad in Jerusalem. And witchcraft and magic increased, and divination and auguration, and fornication, and adultery, and the persecution of the righteous.

99. Sanhedrin 99b. On Manasseh's great mastery of the knowledge of the Torah, see the references cited in notes 109, 110.

100. According to Seder 'Olam 20, the prophets Joel, Nahum and Habakkuk lived in Manasseh's days. Here it is also stated that Micah was a younger contemporary of Isaiah. For other views concerning the times of the prophets, see Index, under the corresponding names. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, IX, 11.3, makes Nahum a contemporary of king Jotham.

101. Ascension of Isaiah 2–3. This Samaritan is called Belchira or Belachora, which is very likely an opprobrious appellation formed of בעל "master" and חרי or rather חרע, "excrement"; comp. 'Abodah Z. 46b and Beelzebub (perhaps = בעל זבול). Tobiah the Canaanite and John of Anathoth are mentioned as the adherents of Belchira. In view of the fact that in Nehem. 3.35, *seq.*, and 6.12. Tobiah the Ammonite appears not only as a great adversary of the Jews, but also as the supporter of a false prophet, it is very likely that we should read Ammonite instead of Canaanite in the pseudepigraphic work. The faulty reading was caused by the "Canaanite" Zedekiah mentioned a few lines below. John of Anathoth looks like a reminiscence of Jer. 28.1, where the false prophet Hananiah (= John) is mentioned. It is true that this one is described as hailing from Gibeon and not from Anathoth, but as he appears as the adversary of Jeremiah, who was a native of Anathoth, it was quite natural for the legend to make him a native of that city. Without much violence to the text, מגבעון in Jer., *loc. cit.*, might be explained to refer to the father of Hananiah and not to Hananiah himself.

102. The first charge against Isaiah occurs in Ascension of Isaiah 3 (here it is Belchira who appears as the ac-

cuser against Isaiah and the other prophets); Yebamot 49b; Origen, *In Jesajam*, homily 1.5; Jerome on Is. 1.10; *Paralipomena Jeremiae* (near the end); ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 33.10. The second charge is found only in Ascension of Isaiah, *loc. cit.*; ps.-Jerome, *loc. cit.*; Jerome, *loc. cit.* The last-named gives as his authority the oral information communicated to him by Jews. Comp. also Tosefta-Targum on Is. 66.1, and particularly the version thereof published by David Ginsburg (see note 96). Yebamot, *loc. cit.*, has the following two further contradictions between Moses and Isaiah. The former said: "For what great nation is there that hath God so nigh unto them, as the Lord our God is whenever we call upon Him?" (Deut. 4.7), while the latter said: "Call ye upon Him while He is near" (Is. 55.6). Moses further said: "The number of thy days I will fulfil" (Exod. 23.24), whereas Isaiah said to Hezekiah: "I will add unto thy days fifteen years." Comp. also Tosefta-Targum on Is. 16.1, and Jerome, *Ad Damasum*, I, 369. As to the "adding of years", see note 77.

103. Yebamot 49b; Sanhedrin 103b; Tosefta-Targum on 2 Kings 21.16, and Is. 66.1; PR 4.14; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28c. The three last-named Palestinian sources record the legend that Isaiah was swallowed up by a tree (in PR and Targum it is a carob-tree, in Yerushalmi it is a cedar-tree), which had to be sawed in pieces before Isaiah could be killed; but there is no trace in these sources of the legend in Babli that the prophet's mouth was the only vulnerable part of his body. According to Yerushalmi, Isaiah's hiding-place was discovered through the fringes of his garment which were not swallowed by the tree. It seems that the form of the legend as given in this source is not complete. It may be suggested that this legend had a statement that the prophet had once neglected to fulfil the commandment of *Zizit*, and as a punishment his hiding-place was betrayed by the "fringes" of his garment. Compare with p. 905, note 81. Isaiah's martyrdom is described in Ascension of Isaiah as follows: And he (Manasseh) sent and seized Isaiah. And he sawed him in sunder with a wood-saw. And when Isaiah was being sawn in sunder, Belchira (comp. note 101) stood up, accusing him, and all the false prophets stood up, laughing and rejoicing because of Isaiah.... And Belchira said to Isaiah: "Say: I have lied in all that I have spoken, and likewise the ways of Manasseh are good and right. And the ways also of Belchira and of his associates are good." And this he said to him when he began to be sawn in sunder. But the prophet refused to listen to the words of Belchira (comp. Yebamot, *loc. cit.* for the reason of Isaiah's refusal to defend himself against the accusation hurled at him), and while being sawn in sunder he neither cried aloud, nor wept, but his lips spoke with the Holy Spirit, until he was sawn in twain. That Isaiah, at the time of his martyrdom, conversed with the Holy Spirit is based on the haggadic interpretation of 2 Kings 17.9;



comp. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*, and PR, *loc. cit.* To the prophets who were with him before he was put to death he said: "Go ye to the region of Tyre and Zidon; as for me only has God mingled the cup."—The legend of Isaiah's martyrdom was very likely known to so early an authority as Josephus; comp. *Antiqui.*, X, 3.1. It is generally assumed that in Hebrews 11.37 (ἐπρίσθησαν) allusion is made to the specific mode (being sawn in sunder) of Isaiah's martyrdom. In patristic literature there are many references to Isaiah's having been sawn in sunder; but as this legend was current among the Jews for centuries (comp. the sources quoted at the beginning of note as well as in previous note), it is not always certain whether the Church Fathers made use of the pseudepigraphic work *Ascension of Isaiah* (more correctly, the *Martyrdom of Isaiah*), or drew upon the oral traditions of the Jews. See Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 120; Tertullian, *De Patientia*, 14; *Visio Pauli*, 49; ps.-Hippolytus 705. The last-named author also states that Manasseh restored the city of Baalbek which Solomon had built. Comp. Pesahim 117a, where בכי very likely stands for בעל בכי "Baalbek". It is true Pesahim speaks of the "image fashioned by Micah" של מיכה פסלו as being located at Baalbek, but we find the wicked king mentioned in connection with this image. See Seder 'Olam 24, which reads: Manasseh was exiled to Babylon, and with him the image of Micah. Compare footnote 61 and p. 20, footnote 72. The Jewish sources contain nothing about the ascension of Isaiah, and accordingly the Jewish part of the *Ascension of Isaiah* is very likely limited to Isaiah's martyrdom, the rest being of Christian origin.

104. Aggadat Bereshit 14, 32. Here it is also stated that Isaiah, the greatest of the prophets (or one of the most prominent of the prophets), and Obadiah, the most insignificant of them, did not prophesy before they received permission from the Great Synedrin. They both prophesied in seventy-one tongues; compare with p. 1027, note 6. Isaiah was as great a prophet as Moses; PR 4, 14a. Compare with p. 612, note 242, and see also Baraita di-Yeshu'ah 45; Aggadat Bereshit, *loc. cit.*; footnote 242 on p. 611. According to a Jewish tradition found in ps.-Jerome, 1 Chron. 33.19, the prophet Hozai mentioned there is none else but Isaiah. The book of Amos, the father of Isaiah, is referred to in *Ascension of Isaiah* 4.22. Comp. note 25.

105. On the kinship between Isaiah and Manasseh, see note 94.

106. Seder 'Olam 24. Comp. Ratner, *ad loc.*, and note 103.

107. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 28c; Babli 103a; PK 25, 162a–162b; MHG I, 113–114; DR 2.20; Ruth R. 2.14; Targum and ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 33.13; PRE 43; Abba Gorion 36. The "Prayer of Manasseh" offered while he was a prisoner in Babylon forms part of the Canon of the Greek Bible. On the oven, see the articles by Krauss

and Nestle in *Zeitschrift für die alttestamentliche Wissenschaft*, XXII, 309, *seq.*; XXIII 326, *seq.* and 337 as well as Bacher, *R. E. J.*, XLV, 291, *seq.*

108. Sanhedrin Mishnah 10 (11).1; ARN 35, 108; EZ 9, 189 (it is said here that Manasseh's repentance was accepted for the sake of the pious destined to be born of him); Aggadat Bereshit 9, 23. The apocryphal works the Prayer of Manasseh and Tobit 14.10 share this view favorable to Manasseh. On the other hand, the prevalent opinion in rabbinic literature is that Manasseh is one of the few Jews who lost their portion in the world to come; comp. Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*, and the references given in footnote 100 on p. 900, as well as Tan. B. III, 43; Tan. Mezora' 1; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 27a and 29b; Babli 102b–103a. Apocalypse of Baruch 64 agrees with this view, and maintains that Manasseh, though he prayed, did not really repent. Aggadat Bereshit, *loc. cit.*, likewise speaks of Manasseh's prayer and words of repentance which were uttered "with lips of deceit". Comp. Sanhedrin 101b.

109. Sanhedrin 102b, Ahab and Jeroboam (the two other Jewish kings who, like Manasseh, lost their share in the world to come; comp. the references cited in preceding note) excelled Manasseh in learning; the former was able to interpret the Book of Leviticus in eighty-five ways, and the latter in one hundred and three. The "greater the scholar the stronger his evil inclination" is a favorite saying with the Rabbis; see Sukkah 52a (bottom). Compare also p. 988, footnote 34.

110. Sanhedrin 102b.

111. *Constitutiones Apostolicae*, II, 23, which is very likely based on a Jewish legend; comp. Yoma 8 (end), which reads: He who says: "I shall sin and then repent", no opportunity is given him for repentance. Compare footnote 27 on p. 891.

112. Sanhedrin 103a. The statement about the burning of the Torah by Amon is taken from Seder 'Olam 24, but here בער very likely means "swept away". He committed incest with his mother (not out of passion, but to defy God and the Torah). This is very likely due to a play on the word אִמּוֹן with אִם "mother". Of his father Manasseh it is said that he committed incest with his sister, and of Ahaz that he set aside the Jewish laws of marriage. Manasseh is further accused of having cut out the divine Name from the Scriptures. Comp. notes 40 and 95.

## JOSIAH AND HIS SUCCESSORS

That the full measure of punishment was not meted out to Amon—his evil deeds



were such that he should have forfeited his share in the world to come—was due to the circumstance that he had a pious and righteous son.<sup>113</sup> Josiah offers a shining model of true, sincere repentance.<sup>114</sup> Though at first he followed in the footsteps of his father Amon, he soon gave up the ways of wickedness, and became one of the most pious kings of Israel, whose chief undertaking was the effort to bring the whole people back to the true faith. It dates from the time when a copy of the Torah was found in the Temple, a copy that had escaped the holocaust kindled by his father and predecessor Amon for the purpose of exterminating the Holy Scriptures.<sup>115</sup> When he opened the Scriptures, the first verse to strike his eye was the one in Deuteronomy: “The Lord shall bring thee and thy king into exile, unto a nation which thou hast not known.” Josiah feared this doom of exile was impending, and he sought to conciliate God through the reform of his people.<sup>116</sup>

His first step was to enlist the intercession of the prophets in his behalf. He addressed his request, not to Jeremiah, but to the prophetess Huldah, knowing that women are more easily moved to compassion. As Jeremiah was a kinsman of the prophetess—their common ancestors were Joshua and Rahab—the king felt no apprehension that the prophet take his preference for Huldah amiss. The proud, dignified answer of the prophetess was, that the misfortune could not be averted from Israel, but the destruction of the Temple, she continued consolingly, would not happen until after the death of Josiah.<sup>117</sup> In view of the imminent destruction of the Temple, Josiah hid the holy Ark and all its appurtenances, in order to guard them against desecration at the hands of the enemy.<sup>118</sup>

The efforts of the king in behalf of God and His law found no echo with the great majority of the people. Though the king was successful in preventing the worship of idols in

public, his subjects knew how to deceive him. Josiah sent out his pious sympathizers to inspect the houses of the people, and he was satisfied with their report, that they had found no idols, not suspecting that the recreant people had fastened half an image on each wing of the doors, so that the inmates faced their household idols as they closed the door upon Josiah’s inspectors.

This godless generation contemporaneous with Josiah was to blame for his death. When King Pharaoh, in his campaign against the Assyrians, wanted to travel through Palestine, Jeremiah advised the king not to deny the Egyptians the passage through his land. He cited a prophecy by his teacher Isaiah, who had foreseen the war between Assyria and Egypt. But Josiah retorted: “Moses, thy teacher’s teacher, spake: ‘I will give peace in the land, and no sword shall go through your land,’ not even the sword that is not raised against Israel with hostile intent.” The king, innocent of the deception practiced by the people, knew not that they were idol worshippers, to whom the promises of the Torah have no application. In the engagement that ensued between the Jews and the Egyptians, no less than three hundred darts struck the king. In his death agony he uttered no word of complaint; he only said: “The Lord is righteous, for I have rebelled against His commandment,” thus admitting his guilt in not having heeded the advice of the prophet.<sup>119</sup>

So ended the days of this just king after a brilliant career, the only king since Solomon to rule over both Judah and Israel, for Jeremiah had brought back to Palestine the ten exiled tribes of the north, and made them subject to Josiah.<sup>120</sup> The mourning for him was profound.<sup>121</sup> Even Jeremiah perpetuated his memory in his Lamentations.<sup>122</sup>

Pharaoh of Egypt was not permitted to enjoy the results of his victory to the full, for it was soon after this that, in attempting to ascend



the wondrous throne of Solomon, he was struck down by the lions and rendered lame by the blow.<sup>123</sup>

The people put Jehoahaz on the throne of Judah to succeed Josiah, though his brother Jehoiakim was the older by two years. To silence the legitimate claims of Jehoiakim, the new king underwent the ceremony of anointing.<sup>124</sup> But his reign was very brief. At the end of three months Pharaoh carried him off into exile in Egypt, and Jehoiakim ruled in his stead.

Jehoiakim was another of the sinful monarchs of the Jews, uncharitable toward men and disobedient to God and the laws of God. His garments were of two kinds of stuff mingled together, his body was tattooed with the names of idols, and in order that he might appear as a non-Jew, he performed the operation of an epipost upon himself. Various forms of incest were committed by him, and, besides, he was in the habit of putting men to death that he might violate their wives, and confiscate their possessions.<sup>125</sup> Blasphemous as he was, he spoke: "My predecessors did not know how to provoke the wrath of God. As for me, I say frankly, we have no need whatsoever of Him; the very light He gives us we can dispense with, for the gold of Parvaim can well replace it."<sup>126</sup>

Seeing such abominations, God desired to resolve the world into its original chaos. If He desisted from His purpose, it was only because the people led a God-fearing life during the time of Jehoiakim.<sup>127</sup> After he had reigned eleven years, Nebuchadnezzar put an end to his dominion. Advancing with his army, the Babylonian king halted at Daphne, a suburb of Antioch. Here he was met by the Sanhedrin of Jerusalem, who desired to know whether he was coming with the purpose of destroying the Temple. Nebuchadnezzar assured them, that all he wanted was the surrender of Jehoiakim, who had rebelled against his authority. Returned to Jeru-

salem, the Sanhedrin informed Jehoiakim of Nebuchadnezzar's intention. The king asked the elders, whether it was ethical to purchase their lives by sacrificing his. For answer they referred him to the story of the way Joab dealt with the city of Abel of Beth-maacah, which had saved itself by surrendering the rebel Sheba, the son of Bichri. The king's objections did not deter the Sanhedrin from following the example of Joab acting under the direction of David. They made Jehoiakim glide down from the city walls of Jerusalem by a chain. Below, the Babylonians stood ready to receive him. Nebuchadnezzar took Jehoiakim in fetters to all the cities of Judah, then he slew him, and, his rage still unabated, threw his corpse to the dogs after having stuck it into the carcass of an ass.<sup>128</sup> The dogs left nothing of Jehoiakim's body over except his skull, on which were written the words: "This and something besides." Many centuries later it was found by a Rabbi near the gates of Jerusalem. He tried in vain to give it burial; the earth refused to retain it, and the Rabbi concluded therefrom that it belonged to the corpse of Jehoiakim. He wrapped the skull in a cloth, and laid it in a closet. One day the wife of the Rabbi discovered it there, and she burnt it, thinking the skull belonged to a former wife of her husband, so dear to him even after her death that he could not separate himself from this relic.<sup>129</sup>

When Nebuchadnezzar returned to Babylonia from his Palestinian expedition, the people received him with great pomp and solemnity. He announced to them that in place of Jehoiakim, whom he had slain, he had installed Mattaniah, the rebel's son, called Jehoiachin, as king over Judah, and the people uttered the warning: "One cannot educate a well-behaved puppy whose dam was ill-conditioned; let alone an ill-conditioned puppy whose dam was ill-conditioned."

Nebuchadnezzar returned to Daphne, and informed the Sanhedrin, who hastened from



Jerusalem to meet him, that he desired the surrender of Jehoiachin. If they refused to satisfy his demand, he would destroy the Temple. When the Jewish king was told the threat of his Babylonian adversary, he mounted upon the roof of the Temple, and, holding all the keys of its chambers in his hand, he spoke thus to God: "Until now Thou didst consider us worthy of confidence, and Thou didst entrust Thy keys to us. Since Thou no longer dost esteem us trustworthy, here, take back Thy keys." He was held to his word: a hand was stretched forth from heaven, and it received the keys.<sup>130</sup>

Jehoiachin, good and pious, did not desire the city of Jerusalem to be exposed to peril for his sake. So he delivered himself to the Babylonian leaders, after they swore that neither city nor people should suffer harm. But the Babylonians did not keep their oath. A short while thereafter they carried into exile, not only the king, but also his mother, and ten thousand<sup>131</sup> of the Jewish nobility and of the great scholars.<sup>132</sup> This was the second attempt made by Nebuchadnezzar to deport the Jews. On taking the former king Jehoiakim captive, he had exiled three hundred of the noblest of the people, among them the prophet Ezekiel.<sup>133</sup>

The king Jehoiachin was incarcerated for life, a solitary prisoner, separated from his wife and his family. The Sanhedrin, who were among those deported with the king, feared that the house of David die out. They therefore besought Nebuchadnezzar not to separate Jehoiachin from his wife. They succeeded in enlisting the sympathy of the queen's hairdresser, and through her of the queen herself, Semiramis, the wife of Nebuchadnezzar, who in turn prevailed upon the king to accord mild treatment to the unfortunate prince exiled from Judea. Suffering had completely changed the once sinful king, so that, in spite of his great joy over his reunion with his wife, he still paid regard to the prescrip-

tions of the Jewish law regulating conjugal life. He was prepared to deny himself every indulgence, when the purchase price was an infringement of the word of God. Such steadfastness pleaded with God to pardon the king for his sins, and the heavenly Sanhedrin absolved God from His oath, to crush Jehoiachin and deprive his house of sovereignty.<sup>134</sup> By way of reward for his continence he was blessed with distinguished posterity. Not only was Zerubbabel, the first governor of Palestine after the destruction of the Temple, a grandson of Jehoiachin's,<sup>135</sup> but also the Messiah himself will be a descendant of his.<sup>136</sup>

113. Sanhedrin 104a. Compare with p. 507 (below).

114. Shabbat 57b; Seder 'Olam 24. Another view (Shabbat, *loc. cit.*) is that Josiah was pious from his infancy. His repentance mentioned in 2 Kings 23.25 refers to the fact that when he reached the age of majority (at eighteen; comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 64–65) he annulled all the verdicts pronounced by him before that time, and from his own pocket he re-imbursed all those who suffered loss by this annulment.

115. Sanhedrin 103, which is an attempt to explain the "finding" of the Torah. Comp. also Kimhi on 2 Kings 22.8, and note 112.

116. Yoma 52b (on the correct reading, comp. Rabinovitch, *ad loc.*); Yerushalmi Shekalim 6, 59c and Kimhi on 2 Kings 22.11. Many medieval authors (comp. the references cited by Friedmann in *Ha-Goren* VII, 10–13, and Shu'aib, 10d; Lekah on Exod. 16.32) quote Shekalim, *loc. cit.*, differently from our text. According to their reading the book "found" was the book of Deuteronomy, and the same statement is made by Jerome in Ezek. 1.1 (comp. Nestle, *Zeitschrift f. alt. Wissenschaft* XXII, 170–171) undoubtedly on the authority of his Jewish teachers. The "finding" of the Torah was of such importance for the life of the Jews, that they began to date a new era from that event, and it is this era which Ezekiel used. The high priest Hilkiah found the Torah under the threshold (read אלתא instead of אורלמא; comp. Targum on Josh. 24.26) of the Temple hall at midnight after the setting of the moon. See Targum on Ezek. 1.1 and Tosefta-Targum in Wertheimer, *Ozar Midrashim* II, 53.

117. Megillah 14b. Here also it is remarked: Eminence is not for women; two eminent women are mentioned in the Bible, Deborah and Huldah, and both proved to be of a proud disposition. Deborah was haughty



towards Barak (compare with p. 868, and note 75 pertaining thereto) and the prophetess Huldah spoke of Josiah as the “man” (comp. 2 Kings 22.15), without giving him the title of king. This “unpleasant” feature of their character is indicated by their “ugly” names, the former was called Deborah “bee”, and the latter Huldah “weasel”. On the kinship between Huldah and Jeremiah, see text on p. 843, and on her husband, see text on p. 1030. The prophetess had an academy in Jerusalem; Targum on 2 Kings 22.14 and on 2 Chron. 24.22.

118. Yoma 52b; Horayyot 12a; Keritot 5b; Shekalim 6, 59c; Tosefta Yoma 3 (2).7 and Sotah 13.1. In all these sources it is stated that besides the holy ark, the king also hid the following holy objects: the holy oil, the vessel with the manna, the rod of Aaron with its almonds and blossoms, as well as the coffer with the offering of the Philistines. In other sources different holy objects are mentioned as having been hidden; comp. ARN 41, 135; PRK 32a; ER 25, 129. Compare with pp. 572–573, 657, 730; text on p. 1091, as well as Kimhi on 1 Kings 6.19 and on 2 Chron. 35.3. The last-named author quotes a Midrash not found in the extant midrashic literature, according to which Solomon, at the erection of the Temple, provided a secret place to be used later for “hiding” holy objects. Ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron., *loc. cit.*, quotes the Jewish tradition, according to which Ahaz had removed the holy ark from the Temple, which remained in the house of Shallum, the husband of the prophetess Huldah, until the days of Josiah. Yoma Mishnah 5.3 seems to presuppose that there was a holy ark in the second Temple. This, however, does not contradict the story of the hiding of the ark by Josiah, as it is quite probable that at the erection of the second Temple they fashioned another ark. The Talmud 52b explains the Mishnah differently. On the “hiding” of the altar of Moses by Solomon, see Mekilta Bahodesh 11, 73a, which reads: On the day upon which the one (altar) was built (that of Solomon), the other (that of Moses) was hidden.

119. Ekah 1, 91–92 (comp. also *ibid.*, introduction, 22, where it is stated that at first they worshipped idols secretly, then publicly); Ta’anit 22a–22b; Tosefta 2.10; PK 27, 168a; Yerushalmi Kiddushin 1, 61a; Shemuel 25, 62. Zohar III, 114a; ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 35.22–25. In the version of Ekah made use of by R. Solomon ha-Yatom, 119 the reading was **הוֹרוּ בַּמִּשְׁחָה** in agreement with Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.* Comp. also Tan. B. IV, 167; Tan. Mass’e 12. On Pharaoh the “lame”, see note 123.

120. Megillah 14b.

121. Megillah 3a; Mo’ed Katan 28b; Targum on Zech. 12.11.

122. Seder ‘Olam 24; Ta’anit 22b; Ekah 1, 92; Yerushalmi Kiddushin 1, 61a; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 5.1. The Rabbis, as well as Josephus, understand 2 Chron. 35.25 to refer to the Book of Lamentations, in which Jeremiah la-

ments the fate of the “anointed of the Lord” (4.20), by which Josiah is meant. Comp. also Targum on 2 Chron., *loc. cit.*, and the references cited in note 119.

123. PK 27, 168a; WR 20.1; Tan. B. V, 7; Abba Gorion 3; Koheleth 9.2. In the last-named source it is said that this Pharaoh seized the throne in behalf of his widowed daughter who claimed her dowry from the estate of Solomon. According to this view, Pharaoh the “lame” is identical with Shishak, Solomon’s father-in-law; compare with p. 983. The interpretation of Neco, the name of the Egyptian king, as though it were נֶכֶח “lame” is often found in Jewish and Christian writings; comp. Megillah 3a; Mo’ed Katan 28b; Targum Zech. 12.11, and 2 Chron. 35.20; Peshitta on 2 Kings 23.29; Aphraates, 471 (top).

124. Horayyot 11b; Keritot 5b; Shekalim 7, 49c–49d. On the basis of 1 Chron. 3.15, the Rabbis maintain that Josiah had three sons: Jehoiaquim, Johanan, (to whom the name Jehoahaz was given on his accession to the throne), and Zedekiah (also called Shallum and Mattaniah); compare footnote 1 on p. 1065; Targum on 2 Chron., *loc. cit.*; WR 10.8; Seder ‘Olam 24. Ratner, note 26, finds a contradiction between Seder ‘Olam and the other sources with regard to the question of who was the first-born son of Josiah. It is very strange that, though quoting Horayyot, he did not notice that the difficulty raised by him was raised and disposed of in the Talmud.

125. WR 10.6; Tan. Lek 20; Aggadat Bereshit 48, 99; Sanhedrin 103b (according to one opinion, he tattooed his “membrum” with the Name of God); Baraita di-Yeshua’h 45; ps.-Jerome on 2 Chron. 36.8. Comp. note 112.

126. Sanhedrin 103b. To the reply made to him that God said: “Mine is the silver, and Mine is the gold”, he rejoined: “Did He not say: The heavens are the heavens of the Lord, but the earth hath He given to the children of men?”

127. Sanhedrin 103a; ‘Arakin 17a. The reverse was the case in the time of Zedekiah. God would then have reduced the world to its original chaos on account of the sinfulness of that generation, were it not for the piety of the king. On Zedekiah’s piety, see footnote 1 on p. 1065. The view that the Jews went into captivity during the reign of a pious king, when the people had no excuse for their sinfulness, is also found in Apocalypse of Baruch. 1.3; text on p. 1037.

128. BR 94 (end; is **חוֹץ לְפִילִיָּה** to be read instead of **וּפִילִיָּה**?); WR 19.6; Shekalim 6, 50a; Seder ‘Olam 25; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 6.3. The Haggadah concerning Jehoiaquim’s peculiar death is an attempt to reconcile the contradiction between 2 Kings 24.6 and 2 Chron. 36.6. Comp. also Jerome on Jer. 22.12, and Hippolytus, *In Daniele*, 641, where the story of Jehoiaquim is confused with that of Zedekiah.



129. Sanhedrin 82a and 104a.
130. WR 19.6; Shekalim 6, 50a; 2 'Eser Galuyyot 114; Seder 'Olam 25. On the legend concerning the keys, compare footnote 24 on p. 1073.
131. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 7.1; comp. the following note.
132. Seder 'Olam 25; Sifre D., 321; Tan. Noah 3; Gittin 88a; Sanhedrin 38a, and Yerushalmi 1, 19a (comp. also *ibid.*, 18b–18c, concerning the scholars exiled to Babylon with Zedekiah); Nedarim 7, 40a; WR 11.7; BaR 11.3; Esther R., introduction; Hallel 97; Shir 8.11 and 12; 'Eser Galuyyot 10. With the exception of the first and last-named sources, all the others identify the “exile of the scholars” with the exile of Jehoiachin. The hegemony of Babylonian Jewry over the rest of the Jews is thus explained; comp. Tan. *loc. cit.* The “exile of the scholars” during the reign of Jehoiakim, as given in Seder 'Olam and 'Eser Galuyyot, *loc. cit.*, must not be emended to agree with the other sources (comp. Ratner, note 9), since Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 6.3, likewise maintains that the exile of the nobility took place during the reign of Jehoiakim; the nobility of Josephus and the flower of scholarship of the Rabbis are identical. Compare with p. 1140.
133. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 6.3; comp. the preceding note.
134. WR 19.6 (Nebuchadnezzar's wife is called שמירמית, שמירמעם and שמירמעם; the last form of the name is explained: “because she was born in thunder”) and 10; PK 25, 162b–163b; Shir 8.6; Sanhedrin 37b. See also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 7.1, whose favorable opinion of Jehoiachin flatly contradicts the words of Scripture in 2 Kings 24.9 and 2 Chron. 36.9. It is quite likely that he drew upon the Haggadah which maintains that sorrow and suffering changed the wicked and Godless king into a saint. With Jehoiachin the holy ark came to Babylon (Seder 'Olam 25; Tosefta Shekalim 2.18; Yerushalmi 6, 49c; Yoma 53b; against this view see the references cited in note 118), and it was in this land, in the city of Nehardea, that he erected a synagogue using as building material the

stones and bricks brought with him from the Holy Land. The holiness of this synagogue was evidenced by the Shekinah which used it from time to time as its abode, see Megillah 29a; comp. the geonic interpretation of this passage in *Aruk*, s. v. שף 1; Rashi, *ad loc.*; Sha'are Teshubah 71; Iggeret R. Sherira 26; Epstein in *Schwarz-Festschrift*, 326. The life history of this king illustrates the truth of the wise adage, “Never despair”. For thirty-seven years he languished in prison, yet at the end of this time he not only gained his liberty but received great honors. When Nebuchadnezzar who had kept him prisoner died (as to the contradiction between the date given in 2 Kings 25.27 and that in Jer. 52.31, see Seder 'Olam 28), the new king Evil-Merodach immediately set him free, and spoke to him comfortingly as follows: “Do not feel grieved at having been a prisoner this long time; forget not that thy captor was a king like thee, and not an ordinary man; to avenge the injustice done by him to thee, I dishonored his dead body” (compare with p. 1108). Evil-merodach gave Jehoiachin royal garments, and settled an allowance upon him. See 2 ARN 17, 38.

135. PK 25, 163b; WR 10.56; Shir 8.6; Sanhedrin 37b–38a. In all these sources it is said that Zerubbabel was a son of Jehoiachin, but they differ as to how to harmonize this view with 2 Chron. 3.17, *seq.*, which seems to contradict it. According to the Talmud, this scriptural passage contains a number of attributes of Zerubbabel, whereas the Midrash maintains that these attributes are assigned to Jehoiachin. The Talmud is also of the opinion that Zerubbabel is identical with Nehemiah.

136. Tan. B. I, 140; Tan. Toledot 14; Aggadat Bereshit 44, 89; Targum on 2 Chron. 3.24. Anani mentioned in 2 Chron., *loc. cit.*, is said in these sources to be the name of the Messiah (= “the one from the clouds”; comp. Sanhedrin 98a in reference to Dan. 7.13: עַם עֲנִי שְׁמִיא אֲרוֹ, and 96b בֶּר נָפְלִי “son of the cloud”, as a designation of the Messiah), and שְׁבַעַה following this name describes the Messiah, “the one endowed with seven (שְׁבַעַה) divine gifts”. Comp. Is. 11.2, and p. 866, footnote 61.







## XXI

### THE EXILE

#### ZEDEKIAH

The execution of one king and the deportation of another were but preludes to the great national catastrophe in the time of Zedekiah, the destruction of the Temple and the exile of the whole people. After Nebuchadnezzar had led Jehoiachin and a portion of the people into banishment, his commiseration was aroused for the Jews, and he inquired, whether any other sons of Josiah were still living. Only Mattaniah was left.<sup>1</sup> He was re-named Zedekiah, in the hope that he would be the father of pious sons. In reality the name became the omen of the disasters to happen in the time of this king.

Nebuchadnezzar, who invested Zedekiah with the royal office, demanded that he swear fealty to him. Zedekiah was about to swear by his own soul, but the Babylonian king, not satisfied, brought a scroll of the law, and made his Jewish vassal take the oath upon that.<sup>2</sup> Nevertheless he did not keep faith with Nebuchadnezzar for long. Nor was this his only treachery toward his suzerain. He had once surprised Nebuchadnezzar in the act of cutting a piece from a living hare and eating it, as is the habit of barbarians. Nebuchadnezzar was painfully embarrassed, and he begged the Jewish king to promise

under oath not to mention what he had seen. Though Nebuchadnezzar treated him with great friendliness, even making him sovereign lord over five vassal kings, he did not justify the trust reposed in him. To flatter Zedekiah, the five kings once said: "If all were as it should be, thou wouldst occupy the throne of Nebuchadnezzar." Zedekiah could not refrain from exclaiming: "O yes, Nebuchadnezzar, whom I once saw eating a live hare!"

The five kings at once repaired to Nebuchadnezzar, and reported what Zedekiah had said. Thereupon the king of Babylonia marched to Daphne, near Antioch, with the purpose of chastising Zedekiah. At Daphne he found the Sanhedrin of Jerusalem, who had hastened thither to receive him. Nebuchadnezzar met the Sanhedrin courteously, ordered his attendants to bring state chairs for all the members, and requested them to read the Torah to him and explain it. When they reached the passage in the Book of Numbers dealing with the remission of vows, the king put the question: "If a man desires to be released from a vow, what steps must he take?" The Sanhedrin replied: "He must repair to a scholar, and he will absolve him from his vow." Whereupon Nebuchadnezzar exclaimed: "I verily believe it was you who released Zedekiah



from the vow he took concerning me.” And he ordered the members of the Sanhedrin to leave their state chairs and sit on the ground.<sup>3</sup> They were forced to admit, that they had not acted in accordance with the law, for Zedekiah’s vow affected another beside himself, and without the acquiescence of the other party, namely, Nebuchadnezzar, the Sanhedrin had no authority to annul the vow.<sup>4</sup>

Zedekiah was duly punished for the grievous crime of perjury. When Jerusalem was captured, he tried to escape through a cave extending from his house to Jericho. God sent a deer into the camp of the Chaldeans, and in their pursuit of this game, the Babylonian soldiers reached the farther opening of the cave at the very moment when Zedekiah was leaving it.<sup>5</sup> The Jewish king together with his ten sons was brought before Nebuchadnezzar, who addressed Zedekiah thus: “Were I to judge thee according to the law of thy God, thou wouldst deserve the death penalty, for thou didst swear a false oath by the Name of God; no less wouldst thou deserve death, if I were to judge thee according to the law of the state, for thou didst fail in thy sworn duty to thy overlord.”

Zedekiah requested the grace that his execution take place before his children’s, and he be spared the sight of their blood. His children, on the other hand, besought Nebuchadnezzar to slay them before he slew their father, that they might be spared the disgrace of seeing their father executed. In his heartlessness Nebuchadnezzar had resolved worse things than Zedekiah anticipated. In the sight of their father, the children of Zedekiah were killed, and then Zedekiah himself was deprived of sight; his eyes were blinded.<sup>6</sup> He had been endowed with eyes of superhuman strength,—they were the eyes of Adam,—and the iron lances forced into them were powerless to destroy his sight. Vision left him only because of the tears he shed over the

fate of his children.<sup>7</sup> Now he realized how true Jeremiah had spoken when he had prophesied his exile to Babylonia. Though he should live there until his death, he would never behold the land with his eyes. On account of its seeming contradictoriness, Zedekiah had thought the prophecy untrue. For this reason he had not heeded Jeremiah’s advice to make peace with Nebuchadnezzar. Now it had all been verified; he was carried to Babylonia a captive, yet, blind as he was, he did not see the land of his exile.<sup>8</sup>

---

1. PR 26, 129b. Shallum (1 Chron. 3.15) is taken to be another name for Zedekiah. This name was given to him either because he was “perfect” (*shalem*) in his conduct (comp. note 119), or because in his days the Davidic dynasty came to an end (*shalem*). See Horayyot 11b; Yerushalmi Shekalim 6, 49b; Jerome on Jer. 22.11. It is curious that this Church Father gives the identification of Shallum with Zedekiah as his own view, and states that Jewish tradition considers Shallum to have been some other son of Josiah. On the respective ages of Josiah’s sons, see Tosefta Sanhedrin 4.11, and references given in footnote 124 on p. 1060.

2. PR 26, 129b. On the correct reading of the text comp. Ginzberg, *Compte Rendu*, 32=R.E.J., LXVII, 145–146. According to others, he made him take the oath of allegiance by the “horns of the altar”, or, as some maintain, by the Abrahamic covenant. See PK 27, 168b; Ekah 2, 15; Koheleth 9.2; Esther R. 1.8. On the taking of an oath by the Torah, see Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 132–133. On the swearing by the Abrahamic covenant, see footnote 284 on p. 238.

3. Ekah 2, 114–115; Nedarim 56a; Tan. B. II, 33, and V, 8. The first passage maintains that Nebuchadnezzar killed the members of the Synedrin in a very cruel manner. The word יָרָא in the passage cited from Tan. means “raw”, and this seems to be the original form of the legend. Nebuchadnezzar lacked refinement, and was in the habit of eating raw meat. Subsequently יָרָא was taken in its ordinary sense, and hence the statement in Ekah that he was caught eating a piece of flesh from a live hare.

4. Nedarim 65a. On the halakic principle underlying this Haggadah, see *Or Zaru’a Shebu’ot*, 6–7.

5. A quotation from an unknown Midrash by Rashi and Kimhi on 2 Kings 25.4; Jer. 39.4; Ezek. 12.13; *Kad ha-Kemah*, Shebu’ah, II, 75. On the enormous length of this cave, see ‘Erubin 61b; Tan. B. IV, 9; PR 26, 131a, and



parallel passages cited by Buber on Tan., *loc. cit.* and by Friedmann on PR, *loc. cit.*

6. PR 26, 131a. Read **ונתנו בכלוב** “and he put him in a cage” (this the Babylonians actually did with their prisoners) instead of **ונתנם בתנור** which makes no sense, though the legend records elsewhere that the Babylonians put the captive Manasseh in an oven (compare with p. 1055). On the “old” Halakah presupposed here that perjury is punishable with death, comp. Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 136. In Esther R. 1.8 Nebuchadnezzar’s words are made to harmonize with the later view of the Halakah which maintains that perjury is not a capital crime.

7. Tan. B. V, 8. This is the source of Yalkut II, 257 (end of 2 Kings). Compare with footnote 23 on p. 59. Jeremiah’s prophecy that the king would lose his mind (comp. Jer. 4.9; **לב** is taken to mean “mind” and not “courage”, compare footnote 189, p. 42) was thus fulfilled on this occasion. Had Zedekiah retained his right sense, he would rather have committed suicide than witness the execution of his children. See Ekah 1, 87.

8. PR 26, 131a–131b, where **יחזקאל** should probably be read instead of **ירמיה**. Comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 8.2, which reads: And these things happened to him, as Jeremiah (34.3) and Ezekiel (12.13) had predicted to him that he should be caught and brought before the king of Babylon, and should speak face to face with him, and should see his eyes with his own eyes; and thus far did Jeremiah prophesy, but he was also made blind and brought to Babylon but did not see it, according to the prediction of Ezekiel. As to Zedekiah’s fate in captivity, see 2 Targum Esther 1.2 (end) where it is said that Pelatiah the son of Benaiyah (comp. Ezek. 11.13, and accordingly either **יהודיע** of Targum is a faulty reading for **בניהו** or we must read **בניהו** **בן יהודיע**; see 1 Kings 2.29) remonstrated with Nebuchadnezzar on account of his cruelty to the Jews. He said to him: “When one delivers his flock to a shepherd, and a bear comes and snatches away a sheep, of whom will it be required?” The king answered: “From the shepherd will it be required.” Whereupon Pelatiah rejoined: “Let thine ears hear what thy mouth has uttered.” The king then ordered to bring Zedekiah before him, and he removed the iron and brass chains from him, and changed his prison garments for others. The similarity between the words of Pelatiah in Targum and those of Paltiel, “the prince of the people” (comp. Ezek. 11.1), in 4 Ezra 5.16–18 is obvious, though in this pseudepigraphic writing it is Ezra who is the shepherd and not Nebuchadnezzar, as in Targum. On Pelatiah, see also note 21. The imprisonment of Zedekiah and his final release are referred to in Targum on Ps. 107.10, *seq.*, whereas Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 8.7, maintains that Nebuchadnezzar kept Zedekiah in prison until he died, and buried him magnificently (comp. notes 117–118), but he freed the high priest from his bonds. In Tehillim 90,

389 **יהויכין** is very likely to be read instead of **צדקיה**. In explanation of Hab. 2.15 it is said that the biblical verse refers to the indignities inflicted by Nebuchadnezzar on Zedekiah whom he gave to eat and drink things causing diarrhoea, thus exposing him to derision. See Tan. B. II, 33; Esther R. 1.8; Jerome on Hab., *loc. cit.* (who quotes as his authority *quemdam de Hebraeis, qui sapiens apud illos = חכם, et δευτερωτής = משנה, vocabatur*). The coarse form of this legend in Jerome is very likely to be ascribed to his own account, and not to the learned Hebrew. Comp. note 107.

## JEREMIAH

Though Zedekiah besmirched his career by perjury, he was nevertheless so good and just a king that for his sake God relinquished his purpose of returning the world to its original chaos, as a punishment for the evil-doing of a wicked generation.<sup>9</sup> In this depraved time, it was first and foremost Jeremiah to whom was delegated the task of proclaiming the word of God. He was a descendant of Joshua and Rahab, and his father was the prophet<sup>10</sup> Hilkiyah. He was born while his father was fleeing<sup>11</sup> from the persecution of Jezebel, the murderess of prophets. At his very birth he showed signs that he was destined to play a great part. He was born circumcised,<sup>12</sup> and scarcely had he left his mother’s womb when he broke into wailing, and his voice was the voice, not of a babe, but of a youth. He cried: “My bowels, my bowels tremble, the walls of my heart they are disquieted, my limbs quake, destruction upon destruction I bring upon earth.” In this strain he continued to moan and groan, complaining of the faithlessness of his mother, and when she expressed her amazement at the unseemly speech of her new-born son, Jeremiah said: “Not thee do I mean, my mother, not to thee doth my prophecy refer; I speak of Zion, and against Jerusalem are my words directed. She adorns her daughters, arrays them in purple, and puts golden crowns upon



their heads. Robbers will come and strip them of their ornaments."

As a lad he received the call to be a prophet. But he refused to obey, saying: "O Lord, I cannot go as a prophet to Israel, for when lived there a prophet whom Israel did not desire to kill? Moses and Aaron they sought to stone with stones; Elijah the Tishbite they mocked at because his hair was grown long; and they called after Elisha, 'Go up, thou bald head'—no, I cannot go to Israel, for I am still naught but a lad." God replied: "I love youth, for it is innocent. When I carried Israel out of Egypt, I called him a lad, and when I think of Israel lovingly, I speak of him as a lad. Say not, therefore, thou art only a lad, but thou shalt go on whatsoever errand I shall send thee. Now, then," God continued, "take the 'cup of wrath', and let the nations drink of it." Jeremiah put the question, which land was to drink first from the "cup of wrath", and the answer of God was: "First Jerusalem is to drink, the head of all earthly nations, and then the cities of Judah." When the prophet heard this, he began to curse the day of his birth. "I am like the high priest," he said, "who has to administer the 'water of bitterness' to a woman who is held under the suspicion of adultery, and when he approaches the woman with the cup, lo, he beholds his own mother. And I, O Mother Zion, thought, when I was called to prophesy, that I was appointed to proclaim prosperity and salvation to thee, but now I see that my message forebodes thee evil."

Jeremiah's first appearance in public was during the reign of Josiah, when he announced to the people in the streets: "If ye will give up your wicked doings, God will raise you above all nations; if not, He will deliver His house into the hands of the enemies, and they will deal with it as seemeth best to them."

The prophets contemporary with Jeremiah in his early years were Zechariah and Huldah.

The province of the latter was among women, while Zechariah was active in the synagogue.<sup>13</sup> Later, under Jehoiakim, Jeremiah was supported by the prophecies of his relative Uriah of Kirjath-jearim, a friend of the prophet Isaiah.<sup>14</sup> But Uriah was put to death by the ungodly king, the same who had the first chapter of Lamentations burnt after obliterating the Name of God wherever it occurs in the whole book. But Jeremiah added four chapters.<sup>15</sup>

The prophet fell upon evil times under Zedekiah. He had both the people and the court against him. Nor was that surprising in a day when not even the high priests in the Temple bore the sign of the covenant upon their bodies.<sup>16</sup> Jeremiah had called forth general hostility by condemning the alliance with Egypt against Babylonia, and favoring peace with Nebuchadnezzar; and this though to all appearances the help of the Egyptians would prove of good effect for the Jews. The hosts of Pharaoh Necho had actually set forth from Egypt to join the Jews against Babylon. But when they were on the high seas, God commanded the waters to cover themselves with corpses. Astonished, the Egyptians asked each other, whence the dead bodies. Presently the answer occurred to them: they were the bodies of their ancestors drowned in the Red Sea on account of the Jews, who had shaken off Egyptian rule. "What," said the Egyptians thereupon, "shall we bring help to those who drowned our fathers?" So they returned to their own country, justifying the warning of Jeremiah, that no dependence could be put upon Egyptian promises.<sup>17</sup>

A little while after this occurrence, when Jeremiah wanted to leave Jerusalem to go to Anathoth and partake of his priestly portion there, the watchman at the gate accused him of desiring to desert to the enemy. He was delivered to his adversaries at court, and they confined him in prison. The watchman knew full well that it



was a trumped up charge he was bringing against Jeremiah, and the intention attributed to him was as far as possible from the mind of the prophet, but he took this opportunity to vent an old family grudge. For this gateman was a grandson of the false prophet Hananiah, the enemy of Jeremiah, the one who had prophesied complete victory over Nebuchadnezzar within two years. It were proper to say, he calculated the victory rather than prophesied it. He reasoned: "If unto Elam, which is a mere ally of the Babylonians against the Jews, destruction has been appointed by God through Jeremiah, so much the more will the extreme penalty fall upon the Babylonians themselves, who have inflicted vast evil upon the Jews."<sup>18</sup> Jeremiah's prophecy had been the reverse: so far from holding forth any hope that a victory would be won over Nebuchadnezzar, the Jewish state, he said, would suffer annihilation. Hananiah demanded a sign betokening the truth of Jeremiah's prophecy. But Jeremiah contended there could be no sign for such a prophecy as his, since the Divine determination to do evil can be annulled. On the other hand, it was the duty of Hananiah to give a sign, for he was prophesying pleasant things, and the Divine resolution for good is executed without fail.<sup>19</sup> Finally, Jeremiah advanced the clinching argument: "I, a priest, may be well content with the prophecy; it is to my interest that the Temple should continue to stand. As for thee, thou art a Gibeonite, thou wilt have to do a slave's service in it so long as there is a Temple. But instead of troubling thy mind with the future in store for others, thou shouldst rather have thought of thine own future, for this very year thou wilt die." Hananiah, in very truth, died on the last day of the year set as his term of life, but before his death he ordered that it should be kept secret for two days, so to give the lie to Jeremiah's prophecy. With his last words, addressed to his son Shelemiah, he charged him to seek ev-

ery possible way of taking revenge upon Jeremiah, to whose curse his death was to be ascribed. Shelemiah had no opportunity of fulfilling his father's last behest, but it did not pass from his mind, and when he, in turn, lay upon his death-bed, he impressed the duty of revenge upon his son Jeriah. It was this grandson of Hananiah who, when he saw Jeremiah leaving the city, hastened to take the opportunity of accusing the prophet of treason. His purpose prospered. The aristocratic enemies of Jeremiah, enraged against him, welcomed the chance to put him behind prison bars, and gave him in charge of a jailer, Jonathan, who had been a friend of the false prophet Hananiah. Jonathan pleased himself by mocking at his prisoner: "See," he would say, "see what honor thy friend does thee, to put thee in so fine a prison as this; verily, it is a royal palace."

Despite his suffering, Jeremiah did not hold back the truth. When the king inquired of him, whether he had a revelation from God, he replied: "Yes, the king of Babylonia will carry thee off into exile." To avoid irritating the king, he went into no further detail. He only prayed the king to liberate him from prison, saying: "Even wicked men—like Hananiah and his descendants—at least cast about for a pretext when they desire to take revenge, and their example ought not to be lost upon thee who art called Zedekiah, 'just man'." The king granted his petition, but Jeremiah did not enjoy liberty for long. Hardly out of prison, he again advised the people to surrender, and the nobility seized him and cast him into a lime pit filled with water, where they hoped he would drown. But a miracle happened. The water sank to the bottom, and the mud rose to the surface, and supported the prophet above the water. Help came to him from Ebed-melech, a "white raven", the only pious man at court. Ebed-melech hastened to the king and spoke: "Know, if Jeremiah perishes in the



lime pit, Jerusalem will surely be captured.” With the permission of the king, Ebed-melech went to the pit, and cried out aloud several times, “O my lord Jeremiah,” but no answer came. Jeremiah feared the words were spoken by his former jailer Jonathan, who had not given up his practice of mocking at the prophet. He would come to the edge of the pit and call down jeeringly: “Do but rest thy head on the mud, and take a little sleep, Jeremiah.” To such sneers Jeremiah made no reply, and hence it was that Ebed-melech was left unanswered. Thinking the prophet dead, he began to lament and tear his clothes. Then Jeremiah, realizing that it was a friend, and not Jonathan, asked: “Who is it that is calling my name and weeps therewith?” and he received the assurance that Ebed-melech had come to rescue him from his perilous position.<sup>20</sup>

9. Sanhedrin 103a. Comp. note 119 and footnote 127 on p. 1060.

10. Sifre N., 78; Sifre Z., 75; PK 13, 115b, where it is said that the people spoke scornfully of Jeremiah as “that descendant of a proselyte”. On Rahab, the ancestress of prophets and priests, see text on p. 843. On the scornful reference to his descent, compare with pp. 782–783, the similar remark about Phinehas. That Hilkiah the father of Jeremiah is identical with the high priest bearing this name in the time of Josiah is maintained by the Church Fathers Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1.21, and Hippolytus on Susannah 1.1, who considers Jeremiah to have been the brother of Susannah (this is how the passage is to be understood), the daughter of the high priest Hilkiah. In Jewish sources, Kimhi on Jer. 1.1 is perhaps the first who explicitly declares that Jeremiah’s father was the high priest Hilkiah; but Targum Jer. 1.1 probably presupposes this view.

11. BR 64.4, where מנשה is very likely to be read, instead of איזבל, in accordance with Rashi on Ezek. 20.14. This correct reading is more in harmony with history, for it makes Jeremiah’s father flee from the wicked king Manasseh, not from the wicked queen Jezebel. Comp., however, Ascension of Isaiah 2.12, with regard to the false prophet Belchira (living at the time of Manasseh), who is said to have been a nephew of the false prophet Zedekiah, who flourished in the reigns of Ahab and Jezebel. Jeremiah was born on the ninth of Ab (the day on which the Temple

was burned), and his birth was announced to his father by the wicked Pashhur. Hence the prophet curses not only the day of his birth, but also the man who brought the “tidings” to his father, saying: “A man-child was born unto thee” (Jer. 20. 14–15). See Kimhi on Jer., *loc. cit.*, and *Seder ha-Dorot*, 3298.

12. ARN 2, 12; Tehillim 9, 84. Compare footnote 318 on p. 248. While still in his mother’s womb, he cried: “I shall not leave it before I receive my name.” His father said: “I shall call thee Abraham.” But the unborn babe replied: “This is not my name.” The father continued to suggest many other names, but the unborn babe insisted that none of the proposed names would fit him. Finally Elijah the prophet appeared and proposed the name Jeremiah, because in the days of this child God will raise up (יָרִם “raise up” and יְהוָה “God”) an enemy against Jerusalem, who will lift up his hand against it. “This”, assented the unborn babe, “is my name.” I shall be called Jeremiah (the full form of Jeremiah יֵרֵמְיָהוּ יֵרֵמְיָהוּ Jeremiah), adding in this way the last part of thy name (=אֱלִיָּהוּ) to my own. See 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 17b. For other etymologies of the name Jeremiah (among which there is one deriving it from the Greek ἐρημῖα “desert”), see PK 13, 115a; Ekah Z. 76; Koheleth 1.1.

13. PR 26, 129a–129b, and, in a shortened form, Ekah Z., 62 (here it is correctly written כְּהֵן and not כְּגִדּוֹל, since the “water of bitterness” might be administered by an ordinary priest), and 134. Zion the mother of Israel is a favorite metaphor with the pseudepigraphic writers and the New Testament; see Apocalypse of Baruch 3.1, and the parallels cited by Charles. The Haggadah maintains that Jeremiah was meant in the promise made by God to Moses that He will raise up a prophet “like unto thee” (Deut. 18.18), and although there “hath not arisen a prophet in Israel like Moses” (Deut. 34.10), the lives of these two prophets show so many striking resemblances, that the description of Jeremiah as “a prophet like unto Moses” is well justified. Moses prophesied for forty years, so did Jeremiah; Moses prophesied concerning Judah and Israel, so did Jeremiah; Moses was attacked by members of his own tribe (*i. e.*, the Levite Korah), so was Jeremiah (comp. Jer. 20.1); Moses was thrown into the water, and Jeremiah into a pit; Moses was saved from death by a bondswoman (Exod. 2.5), and Jeremiah by a slave (comp. Jer. 38.9; the name Ebed-melech is explained as “slave of the king”; comp. note 66); Moses addressed words of exhortation to the people, so did Jeremiah. See PK 13, 112a; Ekah Z., 75; Midrash Tannaim 111; a quotation from an unknown Pesikta in Midrash Aggadah, 160, on Num. 30.11, where many more parallels are drawn between the life of Moses and that of Jeremiah. Comp. also Kaneh (caption אֵשׁ תַּמִּיד), who seems to have made use of the same source as Midrash Aggadah. Moses was the first in the long row of prophets and Jeremiah the



last; the prophets Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi, who lived after his time, retained only a trace of the old prophetic power. See PK 13, 116a, where the text is to be corrected in accordance with Midrash Aggada, 160, on Num. 30.11. As to the meaning of פְּקִידָה which is rendered by “trace”, see Nega’im 5.3. In his modesty and humility Jeremiah declined the honor to be compared with Moses. When God told him to take the place once occupied by Moses and to become the leader and guide of the people, he rejoined: “Who am I to take the place of Moses? May it be granted to me to be like his pupil.” See Midrash quoted by Shu’aib, Mattot, 91d. As to Jeremiah’s being equal to Moses, see Matth. 16.14, and the Christian tradition concerning the “two witnesses” (Rev. 11.3), according to which the one is Moses and the other Jeremiah; see Bousset, *Antichrist*, 208, and see also text on p. 1022, footnote 112. Jeremiah, Isaiah, Jacob, and Adam are the four men who are described in the Bible as “the creatures of God”. See PR 26, 129a, and comp. also *ibid.* 27, 133b, as well as Mekilta Bo 16, 19a, with regard to the statement that Jeremiah was consecrated to the prophetic calling while still in his mother’s womb. Jeremiah, however, was not the only prophet sent to the wicked generation. For ninety years before the exile two prophets admonished Israel twice daily to repent and mend their ways, if they did not want to be banished into captivity. See PK 16, 124b; PR 33, 153; Ekah 2, 117. But the Israelites said to Jeremiah: “After all the sins we have committed we are ashamed to return to God.” To this God replied by the mouth of Jeremiah: “If ye come back to Me, ye return to your father, and children are never ashamed to come back to their father.” See DR 2.24; PK 25, 165a. Jeremiah’s teacher was the prophet Zephaniah, a great-grandson of king Hezekiah (comp. Ibn Ezra and Kimhi on Zeph. 1.1; Maimonides in his introduction to his *Yad*), and when the disciple began to prophesy, he limited his activity to speaking in the streets, whereas Zephaniah preached in the synagogue. See PR 26, 129b. In the text on p. 1068, lines 6 and 7, read Zephaniah instead of Zechariah.

14. PK 13, 115b, which reads: As Jeremiah was scornfully spoken of by the people as “that descendant of the harlot Rahab” (comp. the references given in note 10, to which should be added PK 13, 11b–12a; Ekah Z., 74, 75; unknown Pesikta quoted in Midrash Aggada, 160, on Num. 30.11), so was Uriah referred to by the people as the “Gibeonite”, because he came from Kiriath-Jearim (Jer. 26.20), a city which originally belonged to the Gibeonites (comp. Josh. 9.17), and therefore the Bible takes pains to emphasize the fact that this prophet was of noble descent, a priest, comp. Is. 8.2. The identity of Uriah killed by Jehoiakim with the priest Uriah in Is., *loc. cit.*, is presupposed in many old sources; comp. Sifre D., 43; Ekah 5, 159; Makkot (end); Targum on Is., *loc. cit.* These sources,

however, understand the passage in Is. to mean: God spoke to Isaiah: the good tidings foretold by the prophet Zechariah will be fulfilled, as the evil predicted by Uriah (his prophecy consisted of Micah 3.12) was fulfilled. According to this view, Isaiah had no personal relations with Zechariah or Uriah. Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1.21, asserts that the prophet Habakkuk was a contemporary of Jeremiah and Ezekiel, but in the same passage it is stated that Jonah and Habakkuk were contemporaries of Daniel. Comp. Index under the respective names of these prophets.

15. Mo’ed Katan 26a; Ekah, introduction, 27, and 1, 43. The old rabbinical sources know of no other writings of Jeremiah than the book bearing his name, the Book of Lamentations, which is said to be the “scroll” mentioned in Jer. 36.2, *seq.*, and the Book of Kings. See Baba Batra 15a, and comp. the sources cited at the beginning of this note. The statement of Baba Batra, with regard to the Book of Kings, is to be understood that the prophet was the editor thereof. This becomes evident when we consider the similar statements made there concerning other biblical books, as, *e. g.*, the following ones: Hezekiah and his associates *wrote* the books of Isaiah, Proverbs, Song of Songs, and Ecclesiastes; the men of the Great Assembly *wrote* the books of Ezekiel, the twelve Minor Prophets, Daniel, and the Scroll of Esther. Comp. further details concerning this use of כָּתַב in footnote 89 on p. 1051. The apocryphal and pseudepigraphic literature knows at least of three additional writings by Jeremiah. They are: 1) Epistle of Jeremiah, a letter written by the prophet to the Jews who were about to be led as captives to Babylon, in which he warns them against idolatry. It is a Midrash on Jer. 10.11, and is a canonical book in the Greek Bible. 2) The Paralipomena of Jeremiah, also known under the title, the Rest of the Words of Baruch, an originally Jewish work, but with considerable Christian additions and interpolations. Though ascribed to Jeremiah, the chief interest of this work centres around Ebed-melech the Ethiopian, the friend of the prophet; comp. note 58. On a third pseudepigraphic writing ascribed to Jeremiah, see Schürer, *Geschichte* (4th edition), III, 393. Eupolemus (?), 454b–454c, narrates how the wicked king Jehoiakim attempted to burn Jeremiah on account of his prophecies predicting the destruction of the Temple and the captivity of the people. It is not likely that this writer had made use of an apocryphal writing of Jeremiah. In all probability this statement of Eupolemus is based on a (fanciful) combination of Jer. 36.23 with 26.8, *seq.* The biblical narrative about the burning of Jeremiah’s writings was changed to an attempt at burning the author. In the very late compilation known as the Ma’aseh-Buch (comp. No 163, 49b) we meet for the first time in rabbinic sources with a reference to non-canonical writings of Jeremiah, which are said to have consisted of lamentations. Zephaniah, the teacher of Jeremiah (comp. note 14), is



also credited with an additional work, and fragments of the Apocalypse of Zephaniah are still extant. See Schürer, *op. cit.*, 367–368.

16. Ekah 1, 71; Tan. Lek 20; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29c. Opinions differ as to the nature of the sins which caused the destruction of the Temple and the captivity. See Shabbat 119a, 139a; Yoma 9b; Yerushalmi 1, 38c; Ta'anit 5a–5b; Nedarim 81a; Baba Mezi'a 30b (which reads: Jerusalem was destroyed because the people dispensed justice according to the “strict law”); Yerushalmi Hagigah 1, 76b; 2 ARN 5, 18; ER 14, 71 (comp. Yoma, *loc. cit.*), and 18, 96; EZ 1, 168; Ekah, introduction, 1 and 27 (on the seven cardinal sins which they are said to have committed, see Sifre 26.21 and Mishle 6, 56; compare also footnote 60 on p. 1046) as well as 1, 41, 56–57, 62, 69–70, 92–93; Ekah Z., 59, 75, 77; PK 13, 112b; 15, 120b–121a; PR 25, 125b; 27, 132b–133a; BaR 9.7; Koheleth 1.13; Baraita di-Yeshua' 45b. It is noteworthy that the Rabbis did not consider idolatry as the sin which caused the severe punishment of Israel. They even maintain that the Israelites were merely to give expression to their dissatisfaction with the law, the burden of which was too heavy for them, especially the injunctions regulating sexual life. See Sanhedrin 63b. Neglect of the study of the Torah is most frequently mentioned as the main cause for Israel's severe punishment, and besides this a number of other sins, transgressions as well as moral wrongs, are mentioned as having contributed to make God wroth with His people. In Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 5, 58d (towards the end), and Ekah, 1, 62, it is stated that because they did not release their Hebrew slaves (comp. Jer. 34.8, *seq.*), they themselves were given over to slavery. The same view is shared by ps.-Tertullian *De Carmine adv. Marcionem*, 3, 235. The view that their evil treatment of Jeremiah caused the exile is found in Ecclus. 49.7 and EZ 9, 188. That the destruction of Jerusalem and the exile of Judah were mainly due to the sins of the “ten tribes” is maintained in Assumption of Moses 3.5; comp. also Baruch 2.26; Apocalypse of Baruch 77.10. See, on the other hand, 1.3 of the last-named work, where it is said that the sins of Judah were greater than those of Israel. Eupolemus (?), 454b, following closely the words of Scripture, asserts that Jeremiah was sent by God, and found the Jews sacrificing to a golden image, the name of which was Baal.

17. Ekah 4, 152; an unknown Midrash quoted in *Sefer ha-Musar*, 18, 129b–130a. The text in Ekah is not quite clear, as one fails to see the connection between the friendly relations of the ten tribes with the Egyptians and the assistance of the latter offered to Judah.

18. Sanhedrin 89b; Yerushalmi 11, 30b. This Haniah was originally a true prophet; see Sifre D., 84; Sanhedrin 90b; Yerushalmi, *loc. cit.*; Midrash Shir 10a; Hallel

103 (towards the bottom). In the last-named source חנניה עזול חנניה מישאל ועזריה בן עזור is corrupted to חנניה בן עזור. In Midrash Shir 12a (bottom), the text is not to be emended with the editor to חנניה, it refers to 1 Kings 13.18 and 22.11.

19. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 11, 30b; Midrash Tannaim 63–64; Tan. Wa-Yera 13. As to the conception that God always fulfils His word if it is a promise to bestow “good” upon man, whereas He sometimes changes His word if it contains a threat to do harm to man, see BR 53.4, and the numerous parallel passages cited by Theodor.

20. PR 26, 129a–129b; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 11, 30b; Midrash Tannaim 64. On Jonathan, see also Hallel 103 (towards the bottom); on the pious Ebed-melech see text on pp. 1090, *seq.* Jeremiah, on hearing Hananiah's false prophecy, said: “Amen! the Lord do so.” His punishment for having “flattered” the wicked was that he almost lost his life at the hands of the grandson of the man whom he had flattered; Sotah 41b–42a with reference to Jerem. 28.6 and 36.13.

## NEBUCHADNEZZAR

The suffering to which Jeremiah was exposed was finally ended by the capture of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar. This Babylonian king was a son of King Solomon and the Queen of Sheba.<sup>21</sup> His first contact with the Jews happened in the time of his father-in-law Sennacherib, whom he accompanied on his campaign against Hezekiah. The destruction of the Assyrian army before the walls of Jerusalem, the great catastrophe from which only Nebuchadnezzar and four others escaped with their life, inspired him with fear of God.<sup>22</sup> Later, in his capacity as secretary to the Babylonian king Merodach-baldan, it was he who called his master's notice to the mention of the Jewish king's name before the Name of God. “Thou callest Him ‘the great God’, yet thou dost name Him after the king,” he said. Nebuchadnezzar himself hastened after the messenger to bring back the letter and have it changed. He had advanced scarce three steps when he was restrained by the angel Gabriel, for



even the few paces he had walked for the glory of God earned him his great power over Israel. A further step would have extended his ability to inflict harm immeasurably.<sup>23</sup>

For eighteen years daily a heavenly voice resounded in the palace of Nebuchadnezzar, saying: "O thou wicked slave, go and destroy the house of thy Lord, for His children hearken not unto Him." But Nebuchadnezzar was beset with fears lest God prepare a fate for him similar to that of his ancestor Sennacherib. He practiced belomancy and consulted other auguries, to assure himself that the war against Jerusalem would result favorably. When he shook up the arrows, and questioned whether he was to go to Rome or Alexandria, not one arrow sprang up, but when he questioned about Jerusalem, one sprang up. He sowed seeds and set out plants; for Rome or Alexandria nothing came up; for Jerusalem everything sprouted and grew. He lighted candles and lanterns; for Rome or Alexandria they refused to burn, for Jerusalem they shed their light. He floated vessels on the Euphrates; for Rome or Alexandria they did not move, for Jerusalem they swam.<sup>24</sup>

Still the fears of Nebuchadnezzar were not allayed. His determination to attack the Holy City ripened only after God Himself had shown him how He had bound the hands of the archangel Michael, the patron of the Jews, behind his back, in order to render him powerless to bring aid to his wards. So the campaign against Jerusalem was undertaken.<sup>25</sup>

---

21. 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 21b; R. Joseph Kimhi on 1 Kings 10.1 (comp. Dukes, *Rabbinische Blumenlese*, 267), with the addition: And she (the queen of Sheba) descended from Abraham through his children with the concubines. This is based on the identification of שְׁבָא in 1 Kings, *loc. cit.*, with שְׁבָא in Gen. 25.3; comp. MHG I, 379, and footnote 311 on p. 243. The legend about Solomon's marriage with the queen of Sheba is perhaps of Arabic origin,

as it is not found in old Jewish sources antedating the Mohammedan period. The name Bilkis, however, given in Arabic sources to the queen of Sheba seems to be the Hebrew פִּלְגִּשׁ "concubine", and this would point to the Jewish origin of the legend. Compare footnote 41 on p. 959. Later Kabbalists changed "mother" to "ancestress", maintaining that Nebuchadnezzar was not the son but the descendant of the queen of Sheba. Nebuchadnezzar's wife was Semiramis; comp. note 106 and footnote 134 on p. 1061. A son-in-law of Nebuchadnezzar was the viceroy of Mesene, and at his request Jewish captives were sent to his dominion, but only slaves, while the freemen among the Jews remained in Babylon. This was done at the suggestion of Pelatiah (comp. note 8), who remarked to Nebuchadnezzar: "We (freemen) ought to remain near thee, and the slaves may be sent away." See Kiddushin 72b. Nebuchadnezzar, being the king of Babylon, is also described as the "grandson of Nimrod", the first king of that country; see Pesahim 94b. This, however, is probably not to be taken in a genealogical sense.

22. Sanhedrin 95b (but here nothing is said about Nebuchadnezzar being related to Sennacherib); Tosefta-Targum on Is. 32; Ekah, introduction, 30, where Sennacherib is said to have been the grandfather of Nebuchadnezzar. Comp. also Ekah, introduction, 23; 2 Targum on Esther 1.2, 11, and 4.1; text on p. 1049 and note 59 pertaining thereto.

23. Sanhedrin 96a; for another version of this legend, see text on p. 1050.

24. Ekah, introduction, 23; Tehillim 79, 359–360; Koheleth 12.7; 2 Targum Esther 1.2, 11, and 4.1; PK 5, 50b–51a; PR 15, 74a; Shir 2.13. The Rabbis seem to have taken קִלְקַל (Ezek. 21.25) to mean "shooting"; the divination employed by Nebuchadnezzar, accordingly, did not consist in the "shaking of arrows", but in "throwing" them. Comp. Cassel, *Esther*, 287. The three last-named sources cited above maintain that the seventy years of the Babylonian exile are to be counted from the time when the heavenly voice began to be heard in Nebuchadnezzar's palace, while the actual period of the exile lasted only fifty-two years. Compare, however, text on p. 1129. During these fifty-two years the land of Judah was entirely deserted by "all that lives"; neither man, nor beast, nor fowl, nor fish was to be found there (comp. Jer. 9.9), and for seven years the soil thereof was "brimstone and salt, and a burning, that it is not sown", so that the attempts made by the Samaritans to till the soil were in vain. Seven hundred species of "clean" fish, eight hundred of "clean" beasts and numberless species of fowl left the Holy Land at the time of the exile, and settled in Babylon (the fish travelled through the abyss) and, with the exception of the turbot, they all returned with the restoration of the captivity. See Seder 'Olam 27; Shabbat 145b; Yoma 54a; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 4, 69b;



Kil'ayim 9, 32c; Ketubot 12, 25b; PK 13, 113b–114; PR 1, 3a; Ekah, introduction, 34. The cedar-tree likewise came at the time of the exile to Babylon, where it was brought by Nebuchadnezzar, who had spoiled all the cedar groves of Palestine to enrich his own country. It is to this that the prophet refers saying: "Yea, the cypresses rejoice at thee, and the cedars of Lebanon; since thou art laid down, no feller is come up against us" (Is. 14.8); Ekah 1, 64. The palm was brought to Babylon forty years prior to the exile so that Israel, accustomed to the fruit of the palm (sweet fruit is the proper food for the students of the Torah), should not lack it. See PK 13, 114a; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 4, 69b. The Jews were the first to introduce the use of the "mill" in Babylon, their young men having been forced by Nebuchadnezzar to take the handmills with them from Palestine to the land of their captivity. See Ekah 5, 159. Several of the above statements of the Haggadah and many others concerning the exile (comp., *e. g.*, note 16) reflect the views of the Rabbis about the catastrophe in the year 70, C. E., notwithstanding the references made to the biblical passages dealing with the "first exile". Comp. also Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29c, which reads: Israel was not exiled until he had become divided into twenty-four sects, as it is written: "I send thee to the children of Israel, to the *rebellious nation*" (Ezek. 2.3). It is quite obvious that the sectarianism at the end of the second commonwealth is meant. Another statement (*ibid.*) reads: Israel was not exiled until he had neglected the law of circumcision and other divine commands. It is not impossible, though not very likely, that this wishes to convey the idea that Pauline Christianity is responsible for the destruction of the second Temple. Comp. note 16 (beginning) and note 29 (towards end of page).

25. Ekah Z., 63, 70, 134; comp. note 27. Michael, the guardian angel of Israel, had to be found first before "his" people could be conquered. Comp. the same view with regard to the guardian angels of Egypt, text on p. 557. As to the conception that the "right hand" of God is bound as long as Israel is in exile, see Ekah, 2, 110–111, and footnote 4 on p. 433.

## THE CAPTURE OF JERUSALEM

If the Babylonians thought that the conquest of Jerusalem was an easy task, they were greatly mistaken. For three years God endued the inhabitants with strength to withstand the onslaughts of the enemy, in the hope that the Jews would amend their evil ways and abandon their

godless conduct, so that the threatened punishment might be annulled.

Among the many heroes in the beleaguered city that was bidding defiance to the Babylonians, one by the name of Akiba was particularly distinguished. The stones hurled at the walls of the city from the catapults wielded by the enemy without, he was wont to catch on his feet, and throw them back upon the besiegers. Once it happened that a stone was so cast as to drop, not upon the wall, but in front of it. In his swift race toward it, Akiba was precipitated into the space between the inner and the outer wall. He quickly reassured his friends in the city, that his fall had in no wise harmed him. He was only a little shaken up and weak; as soon as he had his accustomed daily meal, a roasted ox, he would be able to scale the wall and resume the struggle with the Babylonians. But human strength and artifice avail naught against God. A gust of wind arose, and Akiba was thrown from the wall, and he died. Thereupon the Chaldeans made a breach in the wall, and penetrated into the city.<sup>26</sup>

Equally fruitless were the endeavors of Hanamel, the uncle of Jeremiah, to save the city. He conjured the angels up, armed them, and had them occupy the walls. The Chaldeans retreated in terror at the sight of the heavenly host. But God changed the names of the angels, and brought them back to heaven. Hanamel's exorcisms availed naught. When he called the Angel of the Water, for instance, the response would come from the Angel of Fire, who bore the former name of his companion. Then Hanamel resorted to the extreme measure of summoning the Prince of the World, who raised Jerusalem high up in the air. But God thrust the city down again, and the enemy entered unhindered.<sup>27</sup>

Nevertheless, the capture of the city could not have been accomplished if Jeremiah had been present. His deeds were as a firm pillar for



the city, and his prayers as a stony wall. Therefore God sent the prophet<sup>28</sup> on an errand out of the city. He was made to go to his native place, Anathoth, to take possession of a field, his by right of inheritance. Jeremiah rejoiced; he took this as a sign that God would be gracious to Judah, else He would not have commanded him to take possession of a piece of land. Scarcely had the prophet left Jerusalem when an angel descended upon the wall of the city and caused a breach to appear, at the same time crying out: "Let the enemy come and enter the house, for the Master of the house is no longer therein. The enemy has leave to despoil it and destroy it. Go ye into the vineyard and snap the vines asunder, for the Watchman hath gone away and abandoned it. But let no man boast and say, he and his have vanquished the city. Nay, a conquered city have ye conquered, a dead people have ye killed."

The enemy rushed in and ascended the Temple mount, and on the spot whereon King Solomon had been in the habit of sitting when he took counsel with the elders, the Chaldeans plotted how to reduce the Temple to ashes. During their sinister deliberations, they beheld four angels, each with a flaming torch in his hand, descending and setting fire to the four corners of the Temple. The high priest, seeing the flames shoot up, cast the keys of the Temple heavenward, saying: "Here are the keys of Thy house; it seems I am an untrustworthy custodian," and, as he turned, he was seized by the enemy and slaughtered in the very place on which he had been wont to offer the daily sacrifice. With him perished his daughter, her blood mingling with her father's. The priests and the Levites threw themselves into the flames with their harps and trumpets, and, to escape the violence feared from the licentious Chaldeans,<sup>29</sup> the virgins who wove the curtains for the sanctuary followed their example. Still more horrible

was the carnage caused among the people by Nebu-zaradan, spurred on as he was by the sight of the blood of the murdered prophet Zechariah seething on the floor of the Temple. At first the Jews sought to conceal the true story connected with the blood. At length they had to confess, that it was the blood of a prophet who had prophesied the destruction of the Temple, and for his candor had been slain by the people. Nebuzaradan, to appease the prophet, ordered the scholars of the kingdom to be executed first on the bloody spot, then the school children, and at last the young priests, more than a million souls in all. But the blood of the prophet went on seething and reeking, until Nebuzaradan exclaimed: "Zechariah, Zechariah, the good in Israel I have slaughtered. Dost thou desire the destruction of the whole people?" Then the blood ceased to seethe.

Nebuzaradan was startled by the thought, if the Jews, who had a single life upon their conscience, were made to atone so cruelly, what would be his own fate! He left Nebuchadnezzar and became a proselyte.<sup>30</sup>

---

26. Ekah Z., 61; PR 29, 139b–140a. On Abika (not Akiba as in the text, which is a printer's error), see Güdemann, *Monatsschrift*, XXIX, 132, who identifies him with Chagiras of Adiabene, whose heroic exploits during the wars with the Romans in 70 C. E. are described by Josephus, *Bell.*, V, 11.5. That Abika is said to have fought against the Babylonians is not necessarily an anachronism; comp. the end of the note 24. When Gabriel (it is he who is spoken of in Ezek. 10.2 as the "man clothed in linen") received the command "to fill both his hands with coals of fire from between the Cherubim and dash them against the city" (of Jerusalem), he had to ask one of the Cherubim to be kind enough and fetch the coals for him (the celestials need lovingkindness like the terrestrials) for he would have been burned immediately if he had approached the place of the Cherubim. For three years Gabriel kept the almost extinguished coals in his hands, hoping that Israel would repent and Jerusalem would thus be saved. When he realized, however, that his hope was doomed to disappointment, he was ready to dash the coals with fury; but at



that moment God called to him: "Gently, gently! There are men in Israel who are kind to their fellow-men. Had Gabriel carried out his intention, Israel would have been annihilated, and thus its survival is due to the lovingkindness shown by some of them, on account of whose merits Gabriel was admonished by God not to act too furiously in his work of destruction. See WR 26.8; Tan. B. III, 41 and 84; Tan. Emor 3; Shemuel 24, 121; Ekah 1, 75–76; Mishhale 1, 47–48; Yoma 77a. On the part played by Gabriel in the destruction of the Temple, see Ekah 2, 97–99, where many haggadic embellishments are found about the narratives (visions?) given in Ezek. 9 and 10. As to the mark set by the angel upon the foreheads of the pious (Ezek. 9.4–6; see footnote 122 on p. 1159), comp. Shabbat 55a; Tan. B. III, 41; Tan. Mishpatim 6. It is stated in these passages that the pious were marked by the angel with ink, the wicked with blood, the ink-mark warded off the angels of destruction, the blood mark incited them. The "justice" of God insisted that the pious be also punished for not having guided the wicked back to the path of righteousness. The demand of justice was granted, and the pious were even the first upon whom the punishment was visited. Comp. Ezek. 9.6.

27. Yalkut II, 1001, without giving its source but very likely quoting Ekah Z. The view that the destruction of the Temple was never achieved by the hand of man, but that the angels (or the heavenly fire) burned it is often met with in the talmudic and midrashic literature. Michael and Gabriel are mentioned as the angels who carried out the work of destruction. Comp. Sanhedrin 96b; Ekah 1, 76; 2, 109–110; DR 1.17; Tehillim 36, 252; Ekah Z., 61; Aggadat Shir 5, 39; Midrash Shir 30b. Comp. note 25. Most of the Midrashim just cited speak of the angels as keeping guard over the Temple, which accordingly was indestructible as long as they watched over it. A somewhat different version of this Haggadah reads: As long as the Shekinah dwelled in it, the Temple could not be destroyed; but the Shekinah gradually withdrew from its place between the Cherubim to its original abode in heaven, and this left the Temple and the holy city unprotected. Ekah, introduction, 25; Rosh ha-Shanah 31a; PK 13, 114b; ARN 34, 102; Aggadat Shir 5, 39; compare footnote 98 on p. 1054 with regard to the "ten stations" travelled by the Shekinah. Noteworthy is the statement found in Pesikta and Ekah that for thirteen and a half years the Shekinah, after withdrawing from the Temple, dwelled on the Mount of Olives, from where it proclaimed, three times daily, to the people: "I will go and return to My place, till they acknowledge their guilt and seek My face." Comp. Hosea 5.15. In contrast to the view that finally the Shekinah returned to heaven, there are also authorities who maintain that "the Shekinah, never left the western wall"; Tan. B. II, 5–6; Shir 2.9; Tehillim 11, 98–99; ShR 2.3. The western wall is the only remnant of the former Temple building.

28. Comp. the "sending away" of Samuel from the calamitous battle in footnote 42 on p. 895. See also Apocalypse of Baruch 2, according to which Jeremiah, Baruch, and the other pious men were commanded by God to leave the city one day before the enemy was to enter it, in order that their presence might not render it impregnable. Compare with p. 1092.

29. PR 26, 131a; 2 Targum Esther 1.2, 11; PK 13, 115b–116a; Koheleth 3.16 and 10.6; WR 4.10; Sanhedrin 103a. On the view that the angel destroyed the Temple, see, besides the references given in note 27, also Apocalypse of Baruch 7–8 and 80. This apocryphal work is also acquainted with the legend about the keys of the Temple; the rabbinical sources dealing with it are given in footnote 130 on p. 1061; comp. also the references at the beginning of this note, as well as Ta'anit 29a; ARN 4, 24; 2 Targum Esther 1.3, 12. The last high priest was Seraiah (comp. 2 Kings 25.18), a brother of Baruch; see Sifre N., 78, and the parallel passages cited by Friedmann, as well as Ekah 2, 113. Comp. also *Shitah Mekubbezet* on 'Arakin 16a. As long as Israel brought the daily offering (besides circumcision, this was the only divine command observed by them; comp., however, note 24 end, and note 16 beginning) Jerusalem was impregnable. The enemy succeeded in entering the city only after the services of the Temple had ceased owing to the lack of sacrifices. For a time the enemy supplied the Jews with the necessary animals but finally they sent them up a swine instead of a sheep. See Apocalypse of Daniel (towards the beginning), which undoubtedly follows Baba Kamma 82b (comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XIV, 2.2), where the episode with the swine is said to have taken place at the time of the war between Aristobulus and Hyrcanus. Another version of the legend about the swine reads as follows: When the enemy approached the Temple, the gate shut of itself, and would by no means open. It was of no avail to the enemy that he brought three hundred and sixty camels laden with iron axes and tried to force the gate open, as it "swallowed up" all the rams (comp. the statement concerning the "magnetic iron" in the text on p. 1051). Finally פֶּרְנוֹט (according to Perles, *Schwartz-Festschrift*, 305, Haterius Fronto, mentioned by Josephus, *Bell.*, VI, 4.3 and 9.2; but perhaps פֶּטְרוֹט, Paternus, is to be read; comp. Schürer, *Geschichte*, 4th edition, I, 649) brought a swine, slew it, and sprinkled its blood upon the Temple, defiling it thereby. Whereupon the gate opened, and the enemy entered the Temple. When, however, Nebuchadnezzar wanted to enter the holy of holies, the doors closed and would not open, until a heavenly voice called out: "Open thy doors, O Lebanon, that the fire may devour thy cedars" (Zech 11.1). Whereupon they opened. See 2 Targum 1.2, 11–12, which in the main follows Sanhedrin 96b and Targum Lam. 2.9. On the defilement of the Temple by the enemy and on the blasphemies uttered by them against God, see Ekah 2, 113,



and ER 1, 5. The Temple was taken on the seventh of Ab, and the work of destruction began immediately; on the ninth towards evening the enemy set fire to it, and on the tenth it was burned down completely; Seder 'Olam 27; Ta'anit 29a; Yerushalmi 4, 69c (top), and Megillah 1, 70c. It was the first year of the Sabbatical cycle, and on the first day of the week, the ninth of Ab, when the enemy seized the Temple just at the moment when the Levites chanted the song: "And He hath brought upon them their own iniquity and will cut them off in their own evil" (Ps. 94.23). See Seder 'Olam 30; Tosefta Ta'anit 5 (3). 9; Babli 29a; Yerushalmi 4, 68d; Arakin 11b–12a; Soferim 18. These sources state that the destruction of the second Temple took place exactly on the same day of the week and of the month and in the same year of the Sabbatical cycle as the first. (70 A.D. = 5<sup>th</sup> year on this basis, but is second year using modern basis.) Comp. also Josephus, *Bell.*, VI, 4.5–8, and *Antiqui.*, X, 8.3; Schürer, *Geschichte* (4th edition) I, 631. The statements of the latter are far from being correct. מוצאי שבת is not Sabbath night but Sunday, as the context shows, since there was no service in the Temple at night; ערב is not found in correct texts, and is certainly a scribal error.—God in His mercy ordained that the destruction of the Temple, as a result of which the people went into captivity, should take place in the warm days of the summer, otherwise the exiles would have suffered greatly from the cold on their way to Babylon. See Tan. B. III, 41.—Just as the destruction of the Temple would never have been accomplished by the Babylonians, if they had not been assisted by God in a miraculous way (comp. above), even so was the conquest of Jerusalem brought about directly by God. For two and a half years Nebuchadnezzar besieged the holy city without making the slightest progress. He finally decided to raise the siege and return to Babylon. When he was about to carry out his intention, the thought occurred to him (thus did God ordain) to measure the height of the city walls, and after taking the measurements in two days he found out to his great joy that the walls sank daily two and a half hand-breadths. He remained outside the walls till they had disappeared entirely, and he entered the city. See Ekah, introduction, 30. On the view that the gates of the Temple opened of themselves, see Yoma 39b and Josephus, *Bell.*, VI, 5.3, who reports this miracle to have taken place shortly before the destruction of the second Temple. Comp. note 24 (end). The designation of the Temple as Lebanon (Yoma, *loc. cit.*, Gittin 56b, and 2 Targum Esther 1.2, 12), is also known to Jerome; comp. his commentary on Jerem. 22.20. Azulai, *Midbar Kedemot*, s. v. ירמיה, quotes from a Midrash on Lam. the following legend: Jeremiah and Nebuchadnezzar were intimate friends in their childhood. The future ruler of the world once said to his Jewish friend: "If I become king, I shall burn the Temple of Jerusalem, destroy the city, and drive its people into exile."

Jeremiah, who knew by the Holy Spirit that Nebuchadnezzar was destined to do great things, began to plead with him for the Jews, but without much success. The only request he granted him was that he (Jeremiah) should be permitted to save as many as would be able to leave Jerusalem in the few hours from noon until sunset. When the fatal day of the destruction of the Temple arrived, Jeremiah was absent from the city (compare with p. 1075), returning to it about sunset, and thus was unable to save a person. Comp. also Horowitz, *Bet Eked*, I, 37, whose reference to the source of this legend is misleading, as there can be no doubt that he copied it from Azulai. Bernstein, *König Nebuchadnezzar*, 27, note 1, gives a somewhat different version of this legend, alleged to be taken from "cabbalistic works"; but the correctness of the statement may be doubted. Bernstein, *ibid.*, quotes from "cabbalistic works" the legend that Nebuchadnezzar, greatly moved by the tears and lamentations of his friend Jeremiah, ordered to have the Temple rebuilt and the people return from the exile. It is quite certain that Jewish sources contain nothing of the kind, and it seems that Bernstein must have confused Jewish with Arabic sources. Comp. Mas'udi, *Muruj al-Dhahab*, I, 100.

30. Gittin 57b; Sanhedrin 96b; Ekah 4, 148–149, and introduction, 23; Yerushalmi Ta'anit 4, 69b; PK 15, 122a–122b; Koheleth 3.16 and 10.4; 2 Targum Esther 1.2, 12. In the last-named source Nebuchadnezzar and not Nebuzaradan is the avenger of the prophet Zechariah. In Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.* (comp. also ShR 46.4), it is explicitly stated that the king was not present at the conquest of Jerusalem, which was entirely the work of Nebuzaradan. It is true that the Bible speaks of the campaign against Jerusalem as the work of Nebuchadnezzar; but this is due to the fact that the general was so overawed by the king that whatever he did he considered it as the work of his master, whose likeness he had attached to his chariot, so that he might always be reminded of him. Apocalypse of Daniel (beginning) follows in the main Sanhedrin, but has one new point to the effect that it was Gedaliah the son of Ahikam who told Nebuzaradan the real cause of the seething blood. This explains why he was appointed governor over Judah by the Babylonian general. On the virgins who wove the curtains for the sanctuary, see also Apocalypse of Baruch 10. 18–19. Midrash Aggada on Num. 30.15 (158) maintains that the blood of the murdered Zechariah bespattered the walls of the sanctuary, and in consequence thereof the Shekinah left the Temple and did not return until the time of Isaiah. Comp. the references in note 27 on the "stations of the Shekinah". Ratner, note 17 on Seder 'Olam 27, justly suggests that the Zechariah legend was known to this tannaitic work. In the Christian Apocryphon *Protevangelium of James* 24, Zechariah, the father of John the Baptist, is substituted for his namesake Zechariah, the prophet and high priest in the time of King Joash.



Compare with p. 1038. In Matth. 22.35 (but not in the parallel passage Luke 11.51) the father of the murdered prophet is called Berechiah, owing to a confusion of the pre-exilic prophet Zechariah (the son of Jehoiada) with the post-exilic prophet, the author of the biblical book Zechariah, whose father's name was Berechiah. Comp. also Josephus, *Bell.*, IV, 5.4; Moore, *Journal of Oriental Society*, XVI, 317, *seq.* Midrash Aggadah, *loc. cit.*, counts the following martyred prophets: Hur (comp. Index, s. v.); Shemai-ah, who was killed by Basha, king of the ten tribes; Ahiah of Shiloh (compare footnote 5 on p. 981); Zechariah, who was killed by king Joash; Isaiah who was sawn asunder by Manasseh (comp. Index, s. v.); Jeremiah, who was stoned by the Egyptian Jews. Comp. note 42. For the miracle of the never-congealing blood, comp. also the quotation from an unknown Midrash in *J.Q.R.*, N. S. VII, 133, with regard to the blood of the goat slaughtered by the brethren of Joseph (comp. Gen. 37.31), which, it is said, will remain uncongealed until the advent of the Messiah. As to the large number of priests killed by Nebuzaradan, see also Ekah 2, 108. As to the latter's conversion to Judaism, compare with p. 1082, where it is assumed that he remained in the service of Nebuchadnezzar even after the destruction of the Temple, and accordingly he did not become a proselyte. In Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*, it is stated that God intended to have Nebuchadnezzar's descendants become proselytes, but the angels objected, for they did not want the wicked king who destroyed God's house to be granted such a distinction. With regard to the army which participated in the destruction of the Temple, the view is expressed that it will not rise on the day of resurrection, but at the same time it will be spared the torments of hell. See Yerushalmi Shebi'it 4, 35c; Ruth R. 1, 17. Comp. also Tosefta Sanhedrin 13.5 and Seder 'Olam 3 (end).

## THE GREAT LAMENT

On his return from Anathoth, Jeremiah saw, at a distance, smoke curling upward from the Temple mount, and his spirit was joyful. He thought the Jews had repented of their sins, and were bringing incense offerings. Once within the city walls, he knew the truth, that the Temple had fallen a prey to the incendiary. Overwhelmed by grief, he cried out: "O Lord, Thou didst entice me, and I permitted myself to be enticed; Thou didst send me forth out of Thy house that Thou mightest destroy it."<sup>31</sup>

God Himself was deeply moved by the destruction of the Temple, which He had abandoned that the enemy might enter and destroy it. Accompanied by the angels, He visited the ruins, and gave vent to His sorrow: "Woe is Me on account of My house. Where are My children, where My priests, where My beloved? But what could I do for you? Did I not warn you? Yet you would not mend your ways." "To-day", God said to Jeremiah, "I am like a man who has an only son. He prepares the marriage canopy for him, and his only beloved dies under it. Thou dost seem to feel but little sympathy with Me and with My children. Go, summon Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Moses from their graves. They know how to mourn." "Lord of the world," replied Jeremiah, "I know not where Moses is buried." "Stand on the banks of the Jordan," said God, "and cry: 'Thou son of Amram, son of Amram, arise, see how wolves have devoured thy sheep.'"

Jeremiah repaired to the Double Cave, and spake to the Patriarchs: "Arise, ye are summoned to appear before God." When they asked him the reason of the summons, he feigned ignorance, for he feared to tell them the true reason; they might have cast reproaches upon him that so great a disaster had overtaken Israel in his time. Then Jeremiah journeyed on to the banks of the Jordan, and there he called as he had been bidden: "Thou son of Amram, son of Amram, arise, thou art cited to appear before God." "What has happened this day, that God calls me unto Him?" asked Moses. "I know not," replied Jeremiah again. Moses thereupon went to the angels, and from them he learned that the Temple had been destroyed, and Israel banished from his land. Weeping and mourning, Moses joined the Patriarchs, and together, rending their garments and wringing their hands, they betook themselves to the ruins of the Temple. Here their wailing was augmented by the loud lamenta-



tions of the angels:<sup>32</sup> “How desolate are the highways to Jerusalem, the highways destined for travel without end! How deserted are the streets that once were thronged at the seasons of the pilgrimages! O Lord of the world, with Abraham the father of Thy people, who taught the world to know Thee as the ruler of the universe, Thou didst make a covenant, that through him and his descendants the earth should be filled with people, and now Thou hast dissolved Thy covenant with him. O Lord of the world! Thou hast scorned Zion and Jerusalem, once Thy chosen habitation. Thou hast dealt more hardly with Israel than with the generation of Enosh, the first idolaters.”

God thereupon said to the angels: “Why do ye array yourselves against Me with your complaints?” “Lord of the world,” they replied, “on account of Abraham, Thy beloved, who has come into Thy house wailing and weeping, yet Thou payest no heed unto him.” Thereupon God: “Since My beloved ended his earthly career, he has not been in My house. ‘What hath My beloved to do in My house?’”<sup>33</sup>

Now Abraham entered into the conversation: “Why, O Lord of the world, hast Thou exiled my children, delivered them into the hands of the nations, who torture them with all tortures, and who have rendered desolate the sanctuary, where I was ready to bring Thee my son Isaac as a sacrifice?” “Thy children have sinned,” said God, “they have transgressed the whole Torah, they have offended against every letter of it.” Abraham: “Who is there that will testify against Israel, that he has transgressed the Torah?” God: “Let the Torah herself appear and testify.” The Torah came, and Abraham addressed her: “O my daughter, dost thou indeed come to testify against Israel, to say that he violated thy commandments? Dost thou feel no shame? Remember the day on which God offered thee to all the peoples, all the nations of

the earth, and they all rejected thee with disdain.<sup>34</sup> Then my children came to Sinai, they accepted thee, and they honored thee. And now, on the day of their distress, thou standest up against them?” Hearing this, the Torah stepped aside, and did not testify. “Let the twenty-two letters of the Hebrew alphabet in which the Torah is written come and testify against Israel,” said God. They appeared without delay, and Alef, the first letter, was about to testify against Israel, when Abraham interrupted it with the words: “Thou chief of all letters, thou comest to testify against Israel in the time of his distress? Be mindful of the day on which God revealed Himself on Mount Sinai, beginning His words with thee: *‘Anoki the Lord thy God.’* No people, no nation accepted thee, only my children, and now thou comest to testify against them!” Alef stepped aside and was silent. The same happened with the second letter Bet,<sup>35</sup> and with the third, Gimel, and with all the rest—all of them retired abashed, and opened not their mouth. Now Abraham turned to God and said: “O Lord of the world! When I was a hundred years old, Thou didst give me a son, and when he was in the flower of his age, thirty-seven years old, Thou didst command me to sacrifice him to Thee, and I, like a monster, without compassion, I bound him upon the altar with mine own hands. Let that plead with Thee, and have Thou pity on my children.”

Then Isaac raised his voice and spake: “O Lord of the world, when my father told me, ‘God will provide Himself the lamb for a burnt offering, my son,’ I did not resist Thy word. Willingly I let myself be tied to the altar, my throat was raised to meet the knife. Let that plead with Thee, and have Thou pity on my children.”

Then Jacob raised his voice and spake: “O Lord of the world, for twenty years I dwelt in the house of Laban, and when I left it, I met



with Esau, who sought to murder my children, and I risked my life for theirs. And now they are delivered into the hands of their enemies, like sheep led to the shambles, after I coddled them like fledglings breaking forth from their shells, after I suffered anguish for their sake all the days of my life. Let that plead with Thee, and have Thou pity on my children.”

And at last Moses raised his voice and spake: “O Lord of the world, was I not a faithful shepherd unto Israel for forty long years? Like a steed I ran ahead of him in the desert, and when the time came for him to enter the Promised Land, Thou didst command: ‘Here in the desert shall thy bones drop!’ And now that the children of Israel are exiled, Thou hast sent for me to mourn and lament over them. That is what the people mean when they say: The good fortune of the master is none for the slave, but the master’s woe is his woe.” And turning to Jeremiah, he continued: “Walk before me, I will lead them back; let us see who will venture to raise a hand against them.” Jeremiah replied: “The roads cannot be passed, they are blocked with corpses.” But Moses was not to be deterred, and the two, Moses following Jeremiah, reached the rivers of Babylon. When the Jews saw Moses, they said: “The son of Amram has ascended from his grave to redeem us from our enemies.”<sup>36</sup> At that moment a heavenly voice was heard to cry out: “It is decreed!” And Moses said: “O my children, I cannot redeem you, the decree is unalterable—may God redeem you speedily,” and he departed from them.

The children of Israel raised their voices in sore lamentation, and the sound of their grief pierced to the very heavens. Meantime Moses returned to the Fathers, and reported to them to what dire suffering the exiled Jews were exposed, and they all broke out into woe-begone plaints.<sup>37</sup> In his bitter grief, Moses exclaimed: “Be cursed, O sun, why was not thy light extinguished in

the hour in which the enemy invaded the sanctuary?” The sun replied: “O faithful shepherd, I swear by thy life, I could not grow dark. The heavenly powers would not permit it. Sixty fiery scourges they dealt me, and they said, ‘Go and let thy light shine forth.’”<sup>38</sup> Another last complaint Moses uttered: “O Lord of the world, Thou hast written it in Thy Torah: ‘And whether it be cow or ewe, ye shall not kill it and her young both in one day.’ How many mothers have they slaughtered with their children—and Thou art silent!”

Then, with the suddenness of a flash, Rachel, our mother, stood before the Holy One, blessed be He: “Lord of the world,” she said, “Thou knowest how overwhelming was Jacob’s love for me, and when I observed that my father thought to put Leah in my place, I gave Jacob secret signs, that the plan of my father might be set at naught. But then I repented me of what I had done, and to spare my sister mortification, I disclosed the signs to her. More than this, I myself was in the bridal chamber, and when Jacob spake with Leah, I made reply, lest her voice betray her. I, a woman, a creature of flesh and blood, of dust and ashes, was not jealous of my rival. Thou, O God, everlasting King, Thou eternal and merciful Father, why wast Thou jealous of the idols, empty vanities? Why hast Thou driven out my children, slain them with the sword, left them at the mercy of their enemies?” Then the compassion of the Supreme God was awakened, and He said: “For thy sake, O Rachel, I will lead the children of Israel back to their land.”<sup>39</sup>

31. PR 26, 131. Compare with p. 1075.

32. On the weeping of the angels (=Is. 33.8), see also text on p. 229. On this occasion as well as on those of the flood and of the drowning of the Egyptians God silenced the song of the angels; Ekah, introduction, 24,24. Compare pp. 564–565, note 60, and pp. 836–837, note 958.



The weeping of the angels at the destruction of the Temple is also found in Apocalypse of Baruch 77.2.

33. On the designation of Abraham as the “friend” and “beloved” of God, see text on p. 168, note 4.

34. On the rejection of the Torah by the “other nations”, see text on p. 593.

35. In the Midrash the words of Abraham addressed to the first three letters only of the alphabet are given.

36. On the part of Moses in the Messianic work of redemption, see text on pp. 500, 541; text on pp. 734, 838. For the designation of “faithful shepherd”, see text on p. 500.

37. The complaints of Moses and the people are later insertions in the old legend about the great lament, as may be seen from the language, which is Aramaic, whereas the rest is Hebrew. Similarly the Rachel episode did not originally form part of this legend.

38. For a similar case where the sun is forced to do his work, see text on pp. 671–672. On the “sixty fiery scourges”, see p. 810, footnote 896 and p. 1013, footnote 84.

39. Ekah, introduction, 24, Ekah Z., 63, 66–67, 71–73, 138–140, 142–144. See also Menahot 53b, which reads: In the hour when the Temple was destroyed God found Abraham there praying. God said to him: “What doth My beloved in My house?” “I came on account of my children,” replied Abraham. “Thy children”, said God, “have committed sins, and have been banished.” “Perhaps”, rejoined Abraham, “without intention, through ignorance.” “No,” said God, “they did it presumptuously.” “May be”, pleaded Abraham, “only a small portion of them sinned.” “No,” remonstrated God, “many of them are guilty.” “Had it been Thy will,” rejoined Abraham, “they would have repented.” “Nay,” said God, “their wickedness waxeth when they prosper.” Abraham then began to weep and mourn, saying: “God forbid that there should be no salvation for them.” A heavenly voice then proclaimed: “The Lord called thy (Israel’s) name ‘A green olive-tree’ (Jer. 11.16); Israel is like an olive-tree: its product comes after pressure and crushing; even so will Israel’s salvation come after its suffering.” This account is a haggadic paraphrase of Jer. 11.15–16. In BHM V, 63–64, it is Jacob who leads in the great lament, and makes the angels, as well as the souls of the pious (in line 2 from below וְנִשְׁמָתָן is to be read), weep for Israel. He was consoled only after he had received assurance from God that Israel’s sufferings at the hands of his oppressors would save him from torments of hell. Compare with pp. 198–199. For another version of the lament, see 2 Targum Esther 1.2 (towards the end); ARN 4, 24, 165; second version 7, 21; ER 28, 148–150; Ekah 1, 42, 56, and 59; PR 28, 135; PK 22, 148b (אֲחֵרֶת פִּסְקָא). In Pesikta the whole of nature mourns for Israel. It is very likely presupposed here that with the destruction of the Temple nature deteriorated, and will not regain its

former excellence until the advent of the Messiah. Comp. Sotah Mishnah 9.2; Tosefta 15.1–2; Babli 48b–49a; Yerushalmi 9, 24b. See also Pesahim 42b; Baba Batra 25b; Tan. Tezawweh 13. For further references to the great lament, see Berakot 3a; 7a (top), 59a; Hagigah 5b; an unknown Midrash quoted by Makiri on Is. 52, 195 and 196 (the paragraph כְּנָגֵדָם אָמַר דָּוִד on p. 196 is quoted as Pesikta in Makiri on Ps. 31, 204); Zohar III, 172a. The Zohar legend about the “tears of God”, shed for the suffering of Israel, turning into pearls is probably based on Berakot 59a. On Rachel’s intercession for her children, see text on pp. 284, 318; footnote 202 on p. 288; text on p. 403; ER 28, 148; ps.-Rashi on Abot 3.12. Although the destruction of the Temple was a great loss, it was nevertheless fortunate that God poured out His wrath upon “stones and wood” and not upon Israel. The destruction of the Temple saved Israel from annihilation. See Kiddushin 31b (comp. Rashi caption מִלְתָּא אִיסְתַּעֲיִיא מִלְתָּא); Tehillim 79, 360, and 92, 408 (which reads: Songs and music at the erection of the Temple, and songs and music at the destruction of the Temple); Ekah 4, 148; ER 28, 150–151. In the exile God made Israel swear five oaths: not to attempt to reconquer the Holy Land by force of arms; not to rebel against the nations ruling over them; not to divulge the appointed time of the redemption; not to despair of the final redemption (this, it seems, is the meaning of יִרְחֹק שְׁלֹא; differently Rashi); not to divulge the “secret” (of the calendar) to the other nations. At the same time God made the nations swear not to oppress Israel too hard. See Ketubot 111a; Shir 2.7. Comp. also Tan. B. I, 38–39, and the parallel passages cited by Buber in note 134. God assured Israel that He would redeem them in the time to come, not as the nations, and even Israel, thought that the destruction of the Temple amounted to the repudiation of Israel. See ShR 31.10; PR 31, 143b, 146b; Berakot 32b.

## JEREMIAH’S JOURNEY TO BABYLON

When Nebuchadnezzar dispatched his general Nebuzaradan to the capture of Jerusalem, he gave him three instructions regarding the mild treatment of Jeremiah: “Take him, and look well to him, and do him no harm; but do unto him even as he shall say unto thee.” At the same time he enjoined him to use pitiless cruelty toward the rest of the people. But the prophet desired to share the fate of his suffering brethren,



and when he saw a company of youths in the pillory, he put his own head into it. Nebuzaradan would always withdraw him again. Thereafter if Jeremiah saw a company of old men clapped in chains, he would join them and share their ignominy, until Nebuzaradan released him. Finally, Nebuzaradan said to Jeremiah: "Lo, thou art one of three things; either thou art a prophet of false things, or thou art a despiser of suffering, or thou art a shedder of blood. A prophet of false things—for since many a year hast thou been prophesying the downfall of this city, and now, when thy prophecy has come true, thou sorrowest and mournest. Or a despiser of suffering—for I seek to do thee naught harmful, and thou thyself pursuest what is harmful to thee, as though to say, 'I am indifferent to pain.' Or a shedder of blood—for the king has charged me to have a care of thee, and let no harm come upon thee, but as thou insistest upon seeking evil for thyself, it must be that the king may hear of thy misfortune, and put me to death."<sup>40</sup>

At first Jeremiah refused Nebuzaradan's offer to let him remain in Palestine. He joined the march of the captives going to Babylon, along the highways streaming with blood and strewn with corpses. When they arrived at the borders of the Holy Land, they all, prophet and people, broke out into loud wails, and Jeremiah said: "Yes, brethren and countrymen, all this hath befallen you, because ye did not hearken unto the words of my prophecy."<sup>41</sup> Jeremiah journeyed with them until they came to the banks of the Euphrates. Then God spoke to the prophet: "Jeremiah, if thou remainest here, I shall go with them, and if thou goest with them, I shall remain here." Jeremiah replied: "Lord of the world, if I go with them, what doth it avail them? Only if their King, their Creator accompanies them, will it bestead them."<sup>42</sup>

When the captives saw Jeremiah make preparations to return to Palestine, they began to

weep and cry: "O Father Jeremiah, wilt thou, too, abandon us?" "I call heaven and earth to witness," said the prophet, "had you wept but once in Zion, ye had not been driven out."<sup>43</sup>

Beset with terrors was the return journey for the prophet. Corpses lay everywhere, and Jeremiah gathered up all the fingers that lay about; he strained them to his heart, fondled them, kissed them, and wrapped them in his mantle, saying sadly: "Did I not tell you, my children, did I not say to you, 'Give glory to the Lord your God, before He cause darkness, and before your feet stumble upon the dark mountains?'"<sup>44</sup>

Dejected, oppressed by his grief, Jeremiah saw the fulfilment of his prophecy against the coquettish maidens of Jerusalem, who had pursued but the pleasures and enjoyments of the world. How often had the prophet admonished them to do penance and lead a God-fearing life! In vain; whenever he threatened them with the destruction of Jerusalem, they said: "Why should we concern ourselves about it?" "A prince will take me unto wife," said one; the other, "A perfect will marry me." And at first it seemed the expectations of Jerusalem's fair daughters would be realized, for the most aristocratic of the victorious Chaldeans were charmed by the beauty of the women of Jerusalem, and offered them their hand and their rank. But God sent disfiguring and repulsive diseases upon the women, and the Babylonians cast them off, threw them violently out of their chariots, and ruthlessly drove them over the prostrate bodies.<sup>45</sup>

---

40. Ekah, introduction, 34; PK 13, 113a–113b; PR 29, 137a.

41. PR 27, 131b. Comp. the references given in the preceding note.

42. Ekah, introduction, 34; PK 13, 113b. On the idea that God accompanied Israel in exile, see also PR 31, 144b, and footnote 4 on p. 433. Opinions differ as to the fate of Jeremiah (and Baruch) after he had been carried off to Egypt. According to our text of Seder 'Olam 26, when Nebuchadnezzar conquered Egypt, Jeremiah and Baruch



were “exiled by him to Babylon”, whereas Rashi, on Jer. 44.14, has Palestine instead of Babylon. Comp. also Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 1, 19a (top), and the parallel passages on margin, where it is stated that Jeremiah, Ezekiel, and Baruch fixed the calendar outside the Holy Land; as the context shows, this can only refer to Babylon. With regard to Baruch, Megillah 16b explicitly states that he lived (and died) in Babylon. This is in agreement with Baruch 1.1. Comp. also Ratner note 50 on Seder ‘Olam 26, and *Ha-Misderonah* I, 37. In Apocalypse of Baruch 10 and 33 it is said that Jeremiah was told by God to go to Babylon to console the exiles, whereas Baruch remained in the Holy Land with the rest of the people. According to The Rest of Words 4.5, Jeremiah was carried off captive to Babylon. The different versions about Jeremiah’s martyrdom reflect the difference of opinion as to the country in which the prophet finally settled. The legend about the prophet’s martyrdom is very likely of Jewish origin, although the rabbinic literature contains only one reference to it. But Heb. 11.37 seems to allude to it. An unknown Midrash quoted in Midrash Aggada, Num. 30.15, reads as follows: The Jews in Egypt stoned Jeremiah, but his body was buried by the Egyptians who loved him, because through his prayers the crocodiles (on *התמנו חיים*, see Löw in *Judaica*, 341) disappeared from the Nile, and ceased to ravage the country. Later Alexander disinterred the body, and buried it in Alexandria. On Jeremiah as a helper against the crocodiles, see also the extract from an Armenian pseudepigraphic work in *Apocrypha Anecdota*, II, 164. The legend about the prophet’s martyrdom in ps.-Epiphanius, *De Vitis Prophetarum*, s. v. “Jeremiah”, agrees in the main with Midrash Aggada. On the other hand, the Rest of Words, 9, maintains that Jeremiah suffered his martyrdom not in Egypt (=Tapheneh in ps.-Epiphanius), but in Jerusalem, and a popular tradition still current points to a spot in the north of the holy city as the prophet’s grave. Jeremiah’s martyrdom is also mentioned in *Visio Pauli* 49, and by Hippolytus, *Susanna* 1.1. Other Christian writers (comp. Victorinus of Peteau, *Apocalypse of John*, 11.1; ps.-Tertullian, *Carmen Adversus Marcionitas* 3, 245 and 257) count Jeremiah among those who never “tasted death”. This view must have been widespread, as it left its traces in Arabic sources (comp. Friedlaender, *Chadhirlegende*, 269–270). Still it is very doubtful whether it is of Jewish origin. It is more likely that Christian legend transferred to Jeremiah certain features which originally belonged to his disciple Baruch (on a similar confusion between master and disciple, see note 66, end), who, according to Jewish tradition was one of those who “entered paradise alive”; compare with p. 1093. See also the remarks in notes 13 and 66 on Jeremiah as one of the “two witnesses”. In ‘Aktan IV (end; Carmoly’s edition) it is said that Jeremiah prayed for death, as he could no longer endure to see Israel suffer. Whereup-

on a heavenly voice was heard saying: “Wait until thou seest the destruction of Babylon, and then I will grant thee peace (*אניחך*), until I build My house for ever.” God then “hid” him. This undoubtedly presupposes that the prophet did not die, but it may be doubted whether this passage is genuine, as it seems to be a fabrication of Carmoly’s. Jeremiah is not among the “ten pious men”, who, according to ‘Aktan 1, “entered paradise alive”. The statement in Shalsholet 99b–100a, 101a about the martyrdom of Jeremiah and about his meeting with Plato in Egypt (who first ridiculed the prophet, but later admired him) is taken from Christian sources. Comp. also Abravanel on Jer. 5.1.—The Ben Sira legend is so closely interwoven with the life of Jeremiah that it may be worth while to give here its main feature in connection with the Jeremiah legends. This prophet surprised once, in a public bath, wicked men of the tribe of Ephraim, and found them committing onanism; he reproached them for their sin. Far from repenting, they forced the prophet to follow their example, threatening that if he refused, they would commit sodomy, using him as the object of their lust. Shortly after the prophet’s virgin daughter came to bathe in the same place, and conceived by absorbing the sperm released by her father. Nine months later she gave birth to a son, who, immediately after he left his mother’s womb (comp. note 12), began to speak, saying to her: “Do not be ashamed though the people may accuse thee of having led an immoral life, tell them that I am Ben Sira, that is, ‘the son of Jeremiah’ ” (the numerical value of *סירה* is 271, the same as that of *ירמיהו*). After a long conversation with his mother, in which he told her, among other things, that his father Jeremiah likewise spoke immediately after his birth (compare with p. 1067), he requested her to provide him with a good meal consisting of bread, meat, and wine, as he was not like other infants who are nourished by the breasts of their mothers. At the age of one year he was sent to school, where his display of wisdom and learning caused masters and pupils to marvel. No sooner did the teacher begin to instruct him in the Hebrew alphabet than Ben Sira composed proverbs in accordance with the order of the letters. The teacher exclaimed: “In truth, nature changed its order.” Ben Sira, however, remarked: “This is nothing new, as Baruch did it before me, when he composed the alphabetic lamentations (Book of Lamentations) at the command of Jeremiah, who recited to him the letters of the alphabet, while he immediately formed the verses.” Ben Sira spent seven years at school; when he left it, there was nothing “big or small” which he did not know. He could tell, for instance, by looking at it how many grains a measure (= *seah*) of wheat contains. The fame of his wisdom spread all over the world, and hence the wise men of Nebuchadnezzar became envious of him, and by means of slander and all kinds of wild accusations attempted to have Nebuchadnezzar kill



him, but all his machinations against him were of no avail. Nebuchadnezzar was even ready to abdicate his throne in his favor, but Ben Sira refused to become king, as he was not a descendant of David. Nebuchadnezzar then wanted him to marry his daughter, but, of course, he refused to marry a Gentile woman. For this affront the king was about to kill him, but Ben Sira's great wisdom saved him. See 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira. This curious little book, containing fables, legends, and tales, in all of which Ben Sira is the central figure, is not of a homogeneous character. The unusual (not miraculous) birth, the marvellous precociousness, and other features of the Ben Sira legend are decidedly anti-Christian in character. Jesus, the son of Sira (= Ben Sira) is contrasted with Jesus, the son of Mary, and the former appears in a more favorable light. See Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, II, 680, where it is shown that the gnostic work *Evangel of the Childhood of Jesus* was the model after which the Ben Sira legend was fashioned. Comp. also Ginzberg, *Zeitschrift für Hebräische Bibliographie*, XI, 125–126, and BHM V, 37. The Arabic sources tell a great deal about the relation between Nebuchadnezzar and Joseph, and the part played in these sources by Joseph (*i. e.*, Aesop) is practically the same as that ascribed to Ben Sira in the Jewish legend. Comp. Hochfeld, *Beiträge zur Syrischen Fabel-literatur*. When Ben Sira was about to begin to study the Book of Yezirah, a heavenly voice was heard saying: "Thou canst not do it alone." He went to his father and they studied it together. At the end of three years a man was created by them (*i. e.*, following the instructions of the book, they succeeded in doing so; comp. Sanhedrin 65b and 76b), on whose forehead was written Emet (אמת), "truth" (comp. Yoma 69b, which reads: Emet is the seal of God), as on Adam's forehead. The man thus created said to them: "God created Adam, and when He decided that he should die, He erased one letter from the word Emet, and Adam was dead (מת "dead" = אמת without the first letter). I greatly desire that ye do the same to me, and that ye never again create a man, that the world go not astray through him like the generation of Enosh" (compare with p. 117). The man they created further said to them: "Transpose the order of the letters (by means of which he was created), and erase the Alef from the word Emet on my forehead." They did so, and he immediately turned into dust. See *Sefer ha-Gematria* quoted from MS. by Epstein, *Mikkadmoniyot*, 122–123. A somewhat different version of this legend is found in Kaneh 36a, and hence in Yalkut Reubeni on Gen. 1.26, 9d, where פליאה is given as source. The complete title of Kaneh is והוא ספר הקנה והוא ס' הפליאה. Ben Sira imparted his secret lore to his son Uz-ziah and his grandson Joseph. When he had done so, the Holy Spirit called out: "Who is it that revealed My secrets to mankind?" Ben Sira (the numerical value of ירמיה בר is 469, and hence עצט"ש = בר ירמיה, *i. e.*, Ben Sira) arose

and said: "I, Buzi the son of Buzi." The Holy Spirit said to him: "Enough!" Immediately Joseph (his grandson) sat down and wrote the words dictated to him by Ben Sira in five books. See quotation from a MS. (Paris Codex 762) by Barges, *Tagin*, 10. On the son and grandson of Ben Sira, see Epstein, *Ha-Hoker* II, 41, and Mordell, *J.Q.R.*, N.S., III, 529–534. On Buzi = Jeremiah, see note 93. The identification of Ben Sira with the high priest Joshua the son of Jehozadak, found on the title page of some editions of Alphabet of Ben Sira, is of Christian origin; comp. Nestle in Hastings' *Dictionary of the Bible*, IV, 542, who gives references to the Latin MSS. of Eccclus. where the author is described as the son of Jehozadak. See also *Shebet Yehudah* 2, which reads: The second persecution of the Jews took place in the time of Ben Sira; it was a very severe persecution, but I do not know the cause thereof. I found it written that on this occasion thirty thousand souls apostatized from the religion of Moses, and those who remained steadfast were burned as martyrs. This Ben Sira is Joshua ben Sira, the grandson of Joshua the son of Jehozadak, the high priest, known among the Christians as Josephus Sirach. He composed the book of Ecclesiasticus in use among Christians, who consider it as a biblical book, on account of its great wisdom and value.

43. Pr. 26, 131b. This is followed by the description of the "mourning woman". The prophet met a woman in mourning, who informed him that she was mourning and weeping for her husband who "went far away from her", and for her seven sons, who in the absence of their father, were killed by a house falling upon them (comp. Job 1.19; Friedmann's text is to be corrected in accordance with the Parma MS; see Halper, *Post-Biblical Hebrew Literature*, Hebrew volume, 16 and 210). Jeremiah attempted to console her, saying to her: "Thou art not better than my mother Zion, and yet she became pasture for the beasts of the field." The woman answered: "I am thy mother Zion, I am the mother who lost her seven children" (comp. Jer. 15.9). Jeremiah then consoled her, pointing out that her fate was similar to that of Job, and like him she would at the end be compensated for all her suffering. He closed his consoling address with the message of God: "A mortal of flesh and blood built thee, a mortal of flesh and blood laid thee waste; but in the future I shall build thee." A similar vision is also found in 4 Ezra 9.38–10.28; yet it is inconceivable that there is direct dependence of the Midrash upon Ezra. Comp. Lévi, *R.E.J.* XXIV, 281–285. A poetical rendering of this vision is Kalir's dirge אז במלאת קינות according to the Ashkenazic ritual.

44. Ekah, introduction, 34; PK 13, 113b. Not only did they not heed the warnings and admonitions of the prophets, but they even mocked at him and his prophecies; Mishle 1, 48. Yea, they went so far in their wickedness, that they spread a rumor that Jeremiah was leading an immoral



life. These false accusations raised against him embittered him greatly, and he prayed to God to make “his enemies stumble” (comp. Jer. 18.23). By this he meant that even when they performed charitable deeds, the recipients thereof should be unworthy and undeserving. See Baba Kamma 16b.

45. PK 17, 132a–133b; PR 31, 145b; WR 16.1; Ekah 4, 150–151; Ekah Z., 71 and 142; Yoma 9b; Tan. B. III, 42; Shabbat 62b–63b. In the last-named passage the statement is found that the wood growing in Jerusalem had the pleasant flavor of cinnamon (and could be used as perfume by the women). But at the time of the destruction this kind of wood was “hidden” (= disappeared), with the exception of a very small piece which was preserved and is to be found in the treasure of queen Zamzamai (=Zenobia, queen of Palmyra). On cinnamon in Palestine see the references given by Löw, *Aramäische Pflanzennamen*, 292. There was so much cinnamon there that it was used as fodder for goats. Comp. Yerushalmi Peah 7, 20a (bottom). When the holy city was conquered, Nebuchadnezzar issued an order to his armies to refrain from any immoral acts with married women, because the “God of the Jews hates unchastity”. All the single women in Jerusalem got quickly married, to protect themselves against any attack by the Babylonian soldiers, with the exception of three widows who remained unprovided with husbands, and they were the only women who were ravished. See Ekah 5, 157 and Aggadat Shir 5, 38. Against this view comp. Yebamot 16b, which, explicitly speaks of the licentiousness displayed by the Babylonian troops on this occasion. See further Ekah 1, 46 (bottom); 5, 157 (the explanation of טוֹחַן as a euphemism for בעֵל, “had sexual intercourse”, is known also to Jerome on Is. 47, 2, who, in agreement with Sotah 10a, takes טוֹחַן in Jud. 16.21 to have this meaning; compare note 121 on p. 880); Esther R. 2.3; Targum on Lam. 5.13. As to the beauty of the inhabitants of Jerusalem, see also Kiddushin 49b (which reads: Of ten measures of beauty Jerusalem has nine and the rest of the world one); ARN 28.85. Comp. further Gittin 58a; Targum on Lam. 4.2; text on p. 1101, with regard to the great charms of the young men of Jerusalem.

## TRANSPORTATION OF THE CAPTIVES

Nebuchadnezzar's orders were to hurry the captives along the road to Babylon without stop or stay. He feared the Jews might else find opportunity to supplicate the mercy of God, and He, compassionate as He is, would re-

lease them instantly they did penance.<sup>46</sup> Accordingly, there was no pause in the forward march, until the Euphrates was reached. There they were within the borders of the empire of Nebuchadnezzar, and he thought he had nothing more to fear.

Many of the Jews died as soon as they drank of the Euphrates. In their native land they had been accustomed to the water drawn from springs and wells. Mourning over their dead and over the others that had fallen by the way, they sat on the banks of the river, while Nebuchadnezzar and his princes on their vessels celebrated their victory amid song and music. The king noticed that the princes of Judah, though they were in chains, bore no load upon their shoulders, and he called to his servants: “Have you no load for these?” They took the parchment scrolls of the law, tore them in pieces, made sacks of them, and filled them with sand; these they loaded upon the backs of the Jewish princes. At sight of this disgrace, all Israel broke out into loud weeping. The voice of their sorrow pierced the very heavens, and God determined to turn the world once more into chaos, for He told Himself, that after all the world was created but for the sake of Israel. The angels hastened thither, and they spake before God: “O Lord of the world, the universe is Thine. Is it not enough that Thou hast dismembered thy earthly house, the Temple? Wilt Thou destroy Thy heavenly house, too?” God restraining them said: “Do ye think I am a creature of flesh and blood, and stand in need of consolation? Do I not know beginning and end of all things? Go rather and remove their burdens from the princes of Judah.” Aided by God the angels descended, and they carried the loads put upon the Jewish captives until they reached Babylon.

On their way, they passed the city of Bari.<sup>47</sup> The inhabitants thereof were not a little astonished at the cruelty of Nebuchadnezzar, who



made the captives march naked. The people of Bari stripped their slaves of their clothes, and presented the slaves to Nebuchadnezzar. When the king expressed his astonishment thereat, they said: "We thought thou wert particularly pleased with naked men." The king at once ordered the Jews to be arrayed in their garments. The reward accorded the Bariites was that God endowed them forever with beauty and irresistible grace.<sup>48</sup>

The compassionate Bariites did not find many imitators. The very opposite quality was displayed by the Ammonites, Moabites, Edomites, and Arabs. Despite their close kinship with Israel, their conduct toward the Jews was dictated by cruelty. The two first-mentioned, the Ammonites and the Moabites, when they heard the prophet foretell the destruction of Jerusalem, hastened without a moment's delay to report it to Nebuchadnezzar, and urge him to attack Jerusalem. The scruples of the Babylonian king, who feared God, and all the reasons he advanced against a combat with Israel, they refuted, and finally they induced him to act as they wished.<sup>49</sup> At the capture of the city, while all the strange nations were seeking booty, the Ammonites and the Moabites threw themselves into the Temple to seize the scroll of the law, because it contained the clause against their entering into the "assembly of the Lord even to the tenth generation."<sup>50</sup> To disgrace the faith of Israel, they plucked the Cherubim from the Holy of Holies and dragged them through the streets of Jerusalem, crying aloud at the same time: "Behold these sacred things that belong to the Israelites, who say ever they have no idols."

The Edomites were still more hostile<sup>51</sup> in the hour of Israel's need. They went to Jerusalem with Nebuchadnezzar, but they kept themselves at a distance from the city, there to await the outcome of the battle between the Jews and the Babylonians. If the Jews had been victori-

ous, they would have pretended they had come to bring them aid. When Nebuchadnezzar's victory became known, they showed their true feelings. Those who escaped the sword of the Babylonians, were hewn down by the hand of the Edomites.<sup>52</sup>

But in fiendish cunning these nations were surpassed by the Ishmaelites. Eighty thousand young priests, each with a golden shield upon his breast, succeeded in making their way through the ranks of Nebuchadnezzar and in reaching the Ishmaelites. They asked for water to drink. The reply of the Ishmaelites was: "First eat, and then you may drink," at the same time handing them salt food. Their thirst was increased, and the Ishmaelites gave them leather bags filled with nothing but air instead of water. When they raised them to their mouths, the air entered their bodies, and they fell dead.

Other Arabic tribes showed their hostility openly; as the Palmyrenes, who put eighty thousand archers at the disposal of Nebuchadnezzar in his war against Israel.<sup>53</sup>

---

46. PR 28, 135a, and 31, 144a; Ekah 5, 155–156 (this command Nebuchadnezzar gave to Nebuzaradan who is called Arioch, in Dan. 2.14, who took charge of the transport of the exiles); Tehillim 137, 522; ER 28, 150.

47. PR 28, 135a–135b; Tehillim 137, 522–523; Targum on Lam. 5.5 (which reads: The holy books were torn in pieces, and the parchment was used for bags which, filled with water from the Euphrates, were carried by the princes of Judah); ER 28, 154; 2 Targum Esther 1.2 (towards the end). In the last passage it is asserted that Jeremiah said to Nebuchadnezzar and his army: "Go not to your idols to praise them; know that ye have taken captive and killed a people which was already captured and slain (*i. e.* it was God who made the victory over Jerusalem possible; compare with p. 1075, and Sanhedrin 96b, which reads: Thou killest a slain people, thou burnest a burned palace, thou grindest ground flour), and ye have no reason for vainglory." Jeremiah marched along with the captives beyond Bari (comp. the following note), until they reached a certain country, where he bitterly wept and sobbed. Two tears fell from his eyes, and they became two fountains



which exist to this day. In the Christian legend (Acts of Andrew and Matthew towards the end) the flesh and hair torn from a martyr changed into trees. In the Midrashim quoted above, and especially in ER 28, 154, God's wrath against Israel changed into love for them, when the people at the banks of the Euphrates experienced in their hearts feelings of remorse and repentance of their sins. It was then that God broke out in a great lament (compare with pp. 1075, *seq.*) for the suffering of the people.

48. PR 28, 135b–136a; Tehillim 137, 523; 2 Targum Esther 1.2 (towards the end; **בית בורי** or rather **בית כורו**); Aggadat Bereshit 63, 128. On Bari (in Italy?), see Bacher, *Monatsschrift*, XLI, 604 and in *R.E.J.*, XXXIII, 40–44; Lévi, *R.E.J.* XXXIII, 278–282 and XXXV, 224.

49. Sanhedrin 96b; Midrash Tannaim 145. As to Nebuchadnezzar's reluctance to undertake the campaign against Jerusalem, see text on pp. 1074–1075.

50. Yebamot 16b; Ekah 1, 74.

51. PK 19, 137–138a; Ekah, introduction, 9.

52. Yelammedenu in Yalkut on Obadiah; comp. also PK 19, 138a–138b; Midrash Shir 39a. On the Edomites as the destroyers of the Temple, see also PK 3, 25b, 26a–26b. On Edom = Rome, see Index, s. v. "Edom". Compare with p. 745. In Esther R. 1.2 it is said that the **ואגוסטיאני** **דיקומני** counselled Nebuchadnezzar to undertake the war against Jerusalem and to destroy the Jews. They were punished for their evil counsel, and they themselves were destroyed. The **יכולנו וברקוליאני** then took their place. As to the meaning and correct reading of the Hebrew words just quoted, see Sachs, *Beiträge*, I, 113; Cassel, *An Explanatory Commentary on Esther*, 17–19. **דקוריני** is very likely to be read instead of **דיקומני** and **כלוני ופרטוריאני** instead of **יכולנו וברקוליאני**. The Midrash remarks that the *Decuriones* and *Augustiani* (comp. Tacitus, *Annales*, XIV, 15.2, which reads: *Equites Romani cognomento Augustianorum aetate ac robore conspicui*) advised the destruction of the people, and as a punishment the power was taken away from them (the Senate) and given to the *Calones* and *Praetoriani*. R. Benjamin of Tudela, in his *Itinerary* 8, likewise reports that Titus undertook the campaign against Jerusalem at the special order of the Senate, the *Decuriones* and *Augustiani* of the Midrash. That Nebuchadnezzar stands here for Titus and that the account refers to the destruction of the second Temple is quite obvious. Comp. the following note and note 24 (end).

53. Yerushalmi Ta'anit 4, 69b; Ekah 2, 108; BR 53, 14; ShR 3.2 and 27.1; Tan. Yitro 5; Tehillim 5, 54–55. On the part played by the Palmyrenes in the destruction of the Temple, see also Yebamot 16b, and note 45. The tradition about the Palmyrene archers who took part in the cam-

paign against Jerusalem is historically sound; comp. Cagnat, *L'Armée Romaine au Siège de Jerusalem*, in the supplement to *R.E.J.*, XXII, 39. The legend, however, which is ever fond of drawing parallels, speaks not only of the participation of the Palmyrenes in the war against Jerusalem under Titus, but also of the assistance they rendered Nebuchadnezzar. The parallels are often carried so far that one is not quite sure whether the legend, in speaking of the destruction of the Temple, refers to that of the first or the second. The legend, for instance, about the birth of the Messiah on the day of the destruction of the Temple is often mentioned (Yerushalmi Berakot 2, 5a; Ekah 1, 89–90; Ekah Z., 133; Panim Aherim, 78; Aggadat Bereshit 67, 133; a quotation from an unknown Midrash by Grünhut in his edition of Makiri on Prov., 103b); but there is no way of telling whether the destruction of the first or the second Temple is meant. Comp. also the preceding note and note 24 (end). As to the sufferings of the exiles, see also Ekah, introduction, 6 (which reads: "their bodies burned"; from thirst?); 1, 61; ER 28, 154. In the last-named passage **מיתת קרח** means "a death like that of Korah", and not a "death by frost". On the death of Korah, see Sanhedrin 52a, and text on p. 725, according to which Korah and his congregation died by heavenly fire which consumed their souls, but left their bodies intact. In the same manner, remarks the Midrash, was the death of many of the exiles, whom God granted a sudden death, which did not distort or disfigure their bodies.—The death of the pious is as great a calamity as the destruction of the Temple, and hence the day on which the pious Gedaliah was killed (on the third of Tishri, fifty-two days after the destruction of the Temple; comp. Seder 'Olam 26, and note 39 by Ratner) was declared a fast-day for all time. See Rosh ha-Shanah 18b; Sifre D., 31; Tosefta Sotah 6.10. The pious Gedaliah acted in accordance with the law, and refused to be guided by the "evil talk" against Ishmael the son of Nethaniah (comp. Jer. 40.14–41.1, 2), and received him kindly. Yet it was careless on his part not to take precautions against the possibility of Ishmael's attack. The rule of conduct is: Do not believe evil talk, but disregard it not entirely. The murderous act of this Ishmael illustrates the truth of the saying: "Trust not a proselyte even in the twenty-fourth generation." Ishmael was the descendant, twenty-four generations removed, of Jerahmeel by a marriage with the non-Jewish princess Atarah (1 Chron. 2, 26), whom he had married for the sake of glory. See Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 2, 20b, and Horayyot 3, 48 (towards the bottom); Ruth Z., 48; PR 22, 111b.—On the view that the prominent inhabitants of Jerusalem were exiled to Spain, and especially to Toledo, see Shalshelet 101a.



## THE SONS OF MOSES

If Nebuchadnezzar thought, that once he had the Jews in the regions of the Euphrates they were in his power forever, he was greatly mistaken. It was on the very banks of the great river that he suffered the loss of a number of his captives. When the first stop was made by the Euphrates, the Jews could no longer contain their grief, and they broke out into tears and bitter lamentations. Nebuchadnezzar bade them be silent, and as though to render obedience to his orders the harder, he called upon the Levites, the minstrels of the Temple, to sing the songs of Zion for the entertainment of his guests at the banquet he had arranged. The Levites consulted with one another. "Not enough that the Temple lies in ashes because of our sins, should we add to our transgressions by coaxing music from the strings of our holy harps in honor of these 'dwarfs'?"<sup>54</sup> they said, and they determined to offer resistance. The murderous Babylonians mowed them down in heaps, yet they met death with high courage, for it saved their sacred instruments from the desecration of being used before idols and for the sake of idolaters.

The Levites who survived the carnage—the Sons of Moses they were—bit their own fingers off, and when they were asked to play, they showed their tyrants mutilated hands, with which it was impossible to manipulate their harps.<sup>55</sup> At the fall of night a cloud descended and enveloped the Sons of Moses and all who belonged to them. They were hidden from their enemies, while their own way was illuminated by a pillar of fire. The cloud and the pillar vanished at break of day, and before the Sons of Moses lay a tract of land bordered by the sea on three sides. For their complete protection God made the river Sambation to flow on the fourth side. This river is full of sand and stones, and on the six working days of the week, they tumble over each other

with such vehemence that the crash and the roar are heard far and wide. But on the Sabbath<sup>56</sup> the tumultuous river subsides into quiet. As a guard against trespassers on that day, a column of cloud stretches along the whole length of the river, and none can approach the Sambation within three miles. Hedged in as they are, the Sons of Moses yet communicate with their brethren of the tribes of Naphtali, Gad, and Asher, who dwell near the banks of the Sambation. Carrier pigeons bear letters hither and thither.

In the land of the Sons of Moses there are none but clean animals, and in every respect the inhabitants lead a holy and pure life, worthy of their ancestor Moses. They never use an oath, and, if perchance an oath escapes the lips of one of them, he is at once reminded of the Divine punishment connected with his act—his children will die at a tender age.

The Sons of Moses live peaceably and enjoy prosperity as equals through their common Jewish faith. They have need of neither prince nor judge, for they know not strife and litigation. Each works for the welfare of the community, and each takes from the common store only what will satisfy his needs. Their houses are built of equal height, that no one may deem himself above his neighbor, and that the fresh air may not be hindered from playing freely about all alike. Even at night their doors stand wide open, for they have naught to fear from thieves, nor are wild animals known in their land. They all attain a good old age. The son never dies before the father. When a death occurs, there is rejoicing, because the departed is known to have entered into life everlasting in loyalty to his faith. The birth of a child, on the other hand, calls forth mourning, for who can tell whether the being ushered into the world will be pious and faithful? The dead are buried near the doors of their own houses, in order that their survivors, in all their comings and goings, may be reminded



of their own end. Disease is unknown among them, for they never sin, and sickness is sent only to purify from sins.<sup>57</sup>

54. PR 31, 144 (as to the “dwarf” Nebuchadnezzar, see note 96), and in a shortened form 28, 136a; ER 28, 149; Tehillim 137, 524; 2 Targum Esther 1.2 (towards the end); Eldad and the sources depending on it (comp. Epstein, 5 and 42–43, as well as BHM VI, 15); Targum on Ps. 137.4; ‘Eser Galuyyot 14; second version 115; Aktan 24.

55. PK 31, 144a, and the other sources cited in the preceding note. On the “sons of Moses” who number more than six hundred thousand (this was the number of Israel at the time of the exile), see Berakot 7a; Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 34.10; footnote 540 on p. 714.

56. Pliny, *Hist. Nat.*, 31.2, agrees with the Rabbis (Sanhedrin 65a, in an alleged conversation between R. Akiba and the Roman general Tineius Rufus; BR 11.5; Tan. Ki-Tissa 33; PR 23, 119b) that this river rests on the Sabbath, whereas Josephus, *Bell.*, VII, 5.1., maintains just the opposite, that it rests on week-days and flows on the Sabbath. The anonymous author of the *Itinerarium a Burdigala Hierusalem usque* maintains that the pool of Solomon dries up completely on the Sabbath. Josephus and the Rabbis differ also as to the location of this river. The former maintains that it is situated in Syria, between Acra and Raphanea, whereas the latter implicitly assume that it is somewhere in a country very far from Palestine. Comp. the rabbinical legends concerning the ten tribes referred to below. For the references to the river Sambation in Christian, Mohammedan, and Samaritan writings see Nöldeke, *Beiträge zur Geschichte des Alexanderromans*, 48; Epstein, *Eldad*, 13–16; Grünbaum in *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, XXII, 627; Kazwini, *Cosmography*, II, 17; Mas‘udi, *Muruj al-Dhahab*, I, 161; *Kobez ‘al Yad*, IV, 13. Comp. also the following note. The view that the ten tribes, or at least some of the tribes, dwell beyond the “river Sambation” is widespread, and is found not only in the talmudic-midrashic literature, but also in many medieval writings. Comp. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 10, 29c, which reads: One part of Israel (*i. e.*, the northern tribes) was exiled beyond the river Sambation, one part to Daphne near Antiochia, and the third part was carried off (literally, “covered”) by a cloud. When the time of redemption will come, all the exiles from the three diasporas will return. See BR 73.6 (which says: The ten tribes are beyond the river Sambation); PR 31, 146a–147a; Tan. B. I, 203, and IV, 79; BaR 16, 25 (here it is said the “mountains of darkness” is the place to which the third part was carried off); comp. also Targum Yerushalmi Exod. 24.10; *Kobez ‘al Yad*, IV,

42; Neubauer, *J. Q. R.*, I, 14, *seq.* “Where are the ten tribes”; Lewin, *Wo wären die zehn Stämme zu suchen*, 17–25. Comp. also Ginzberg, *Haggadot Ketu‘ot* 43–45. This clearly shows that the hope for the return of the ten tribes and the salvation of “all Israel” is not limited to the circles in which the apocalyptic literature originated (comp., *e. g.*, Tobit, Testament of 12 Patriarchs and 4 Ezra), as has been maintained by many modern scholars. As far as can be ascertained, R. Akiba is the only one among the old Rabbis who taught that the “ten tribes were repudiated by God for ever” (Mishnah Sanhedrin 10.3), and he was strongly censured for this view by the Talmud, Sanhedrin 110b. There can be no doubt that R. Akiba, as an active propagandist for the Bar Kokeba revolt, attempted to fire the enthusiasm of Palestinian Jewry by telling them that the future of Judaism depended entirely upon them, the descendants of Judah and Benjamin. That the ten tribes were transported in a miraculous way beyond a river, where they lived undisturbed as pious Jews, is presupposed in 4 Ezra 13.41–50. Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqu.*, XI, 5.3. The holiness of the Sabbath is “attested” by the river Sambation, and also by a certain fish which spends the Sabbath resting on the banks of the river, and by a mountain from which silver is taken every day in the week with the exception of the Sabbath when no silver can be found there. See Sode Raza in Yalkut Reubeni on Gen. 2.2. The Palestinian (Syrian?) place called שבת to which reference is made in an Egyptian inscription (comp. Müller, *J. Q. R.*, N.S., IV, 652) was probably situated on the river of the same name mentioned by Josephus, *Bell.*, VII, 5.1. Kaufmann (*R.E.J.*, XXII, 285) suggests that the legend about Sambation is due to the confusion of חול “sand” with חל “week-day”; the river that throws up sand became the river that “works” on week-days only. This suggestion, though rather ingenious, is for more than one reason quite untenable. For further details concerning the Sambation legend, see *Shebet Musar*, 11, 38b; *Kobez ‘al Yad*, IV, 40. For the vast literature on this subject, comp. Krauss, *Lehnwörter*, s. v.

57. Eldad and the sources that are based on it; comp. Epstein, *Eldad* 5, 14, 17, 27–29, 40–41, 43–44, 57–58, 64–65, who calls attention to the Arabic versions of this legend about the “Land of the Blessed”. It escaped him, as it did many of the other scholars dealing with this legend, that in the Narrative of Zosimos we have this Jewish legend with very slight Christian additions. Instead of the “sons of Moses”, we have here the “sons of Rechab” who were carried by a cloud to the “Land of the Blessed”, the entrance to which is made inaccessible by an impassable river. On the sons of Rechab, compare with p. 776; PR 31, 147a (where it is said that the Land of Sinim is their dwelling-place); Midrash Aggada on Num. 24.22 (which reads: The sons of Jonadab the Rechabite were not exiled, but God sent them to the “mountains of darkness” (comp. the



preceding note); 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira 28, which reads: The descendants of Jonadab (= the Rechabite; comp. 29a) live in paradise where they entered alive. In the Narrative of Zosimos the land inhabited by the sons of Rechab is described as the paradise on earth, and the life of its inhabitants as that of angels. The only difference between 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira and the Christian pseudepigraphic work is that the latter explicitly states that the Rechabites, though living many hundred years, die in the end, whereas according to the Jewish source, they do not "taste death". The substitution of the "sons of Rechab" for the "sons of Moses" is very likely not due to a Christian hand, but is a "Jewish variant". See also R. Benjamin of Tudela's *Itinerary*, ed. Asher 70, where the sons of Rechab appear as "free" Jews, not subjected to other nations. *Shibhe Israel*, 218, quotes the following from the Yalkut on Obadiah: In the future the Messiah, accompanied by the sons of Moses, will betake himself to mount Seir to judge the sons of Esau. This passage is not found there, nor, as far as can be ascertained, in any other place of the Yalkut.

## EBED-MELECH

The Sons of Moses were not the only ones to escape from under the heavy hand of Nebuchadnezzar. Still more miraculous was the deliverance of the pious Ethiopian Ebed-melech from the hands of the Babylonians. He was saved as a reward for rescuing Jeremiah when the prophet's life was jeopardized. On the day before the destruction of the Temple, shortly before the enemy forced his way into the city, the Ethiopian was sent, by the prophet Jeremiah acting under Divine instruction, to a certain place in front of the gates of the city, to dole out refreshments to the poor from a little basket of figs he was to carry with him. Ebed-melech reached the spot, but the heat was so intense that he fell asleep under a tree, and there he slept for sixty-six years. When he woke up, the figs were still fresh and juicy, but all the surroundings had so changed, he could not make out where he was. His confusion increased when he entered the city to seek Jeremiah, and found nothing as it had been. He

accosted an old man, and asked him the name of the place. When he was told it was Jerusalem, Ebed-melech cried out in amazement: "Where is Jeremiah, where is Baruch, and where are all the people?" The old man was not a little astonished at these questions. How was it possible that one who had known Jeremiah and Jerusalem should be ignorant of the events that had passed sixty years before? In brief words he told Ebed-melech of the destruction of the Temple and of the captivity of the people, but what he said found no credence with his auditor. Finally Ebed-melech realized that God had performed a great miracle for him, so that he had been spared the sight of Israel's misfortune.

While he was pouring out his heart in gratitude to God, an eagle descended and led him to Baruch, who lived not far from the city. Thereupon Baruch received the command from God to write to Jeremiah that the people should remove the strangers from the midst of them, and then God would lead them back to Jerusalem. The letter written by Baruch and some of the figs that had retained their freshness for sixty-six years were carried to Babylonia by an eagle, who had told Baruch that he had been sent to serve him as a messenger. The eagle set out on his journey. His first halting-place was a dreary waste spot to which he knew Jeremiah and the people would come—it was the burial-place of the Jews which Nebuchadnezzar had given the prophet at his solicitation. When the eagle saw Jeremiah and the people approach with a funeral train, he cried out: "I have a message for thee, Jeremiah. Let all the people draw nigh to receive the good tidings." As a sign that his mission was true, the eagle touched the corpse, and it came to life. Amidst tears all the people cried unto Jeremiah: "Save us! What must we do to return to our land?"

The eagle brought Jeremiah's answer to Baruch, and after the prophet had sent the Babylo-



nian women away, he returned to Jerusalem with the people. Those who would not submit to the orders of Jeremiah relative to the heathen women, were not permitted by the prophet to enter the holy city, and as they likewise were not permitted to return to Babylonia, they founded the city of Samaria near Jerusalem.<sup>58</sup>

---

58. Rest of the Words of Baruch 1–8. For the numerous variants of the legend about the “sleepers” in Christian and Mohammedan sources, see Heller in *R.E.J.*, XLIX, 190, *seq.* Closely related to the Ebed-melech legend is the one given by the Talmudim concerning Honi (= Onias) ha-Me’aggel, who is said to have slept seventy years, from the destruction of the Temple until the end of the Babylonian exile. Comp. Ta’anit 22b, and Yerushalmi 3, 66d. It seems that the Legend about the stoning of Jeremiah found at the end of the Rest of the Words (comp. note 42) is in some way connected with the stoning of Onias (=Honi) narrated by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XIV, 2.1. According to Ta’anit 22b, Onias, however, was not stoned, but died shortly after he awoke from his long sleep. For further details concerning Ebed-melech, see note 66.

## THE TEMPLE VESSELS

The task laid upon Jeremiah had been two-fold. Besides giving him charge over the people in the land of their exile, God had entrusted to him the care of the sanctuary and all it contained.<sup>59</sup> The holy Ark, the altar of incense, and the holy tent were carried by an angel to the mount whence Moses before his death had viewed the land divinely assigned to Israel. There Jeremiah found a spacious cave, in which he concealed these sacred utensils. Some of his companions had gone with him to note the way to the cave, but yet they could not find it.<sup>60</sup> When Jeremiah heard of their purpose, he censured them, for it was the wish of God that the place of hiding should remain a secret until the

redemption, and then God Himself will make the hidden things visible.<sup>61</sup>

Even the Temple vessels not concealed by Jeremiah were prevented from falling into the hands of the enemy; the gates of the Temple sank into the earth,<sup>62</sup> and other parts and utensils were hidden in a tower at Bagdad by the Levite Shimur<sup>63</sup> and his friends. Among these utensils was the seven-branched candlestick of pure gold, every branch set with twenty-six pearls, and beside the pearls two hundred stones of inestimable worth. Furthermore, the tower at Bagdad was the hiding-place for seventy-seven golden tables, and for the gold with which the walls of the Temple had been clothed within and without. The tables had been taken from Paradise by Solomon, and in brilliance they outshone the sun and the moon, while the gold from the walls excelled in amount and worth all the gold that had existed from the creation of the world until the destruction of the Temple. The jewels, pearls, gold, and silver, and precious gems, which David and Solomon had intended for the Temple were discovered by the scribe Hilkiyah, and he delivered them to the angel Shamshiel, who in turn deposited the treasure in Borsippa. The sacred musical instruments were taken charge of and hidden by Baruch and Zedekiah until the advent of the Messiah, who will reveal all treasures. In his time a stream will break forth from under the place of the Holy of Holies, and flow through the lands to the Euphrates, and, as it flows, it will uncover all the treasures buried in the earth.<sup>64</sup>

---

59. Rest of the Words of Baruch 1–3.

60. Comp. the similar story about the vain attempt of the Roman government to locate the grave of Moses; Sifre D., 357; Midrash Tannaim 226; ‘Aktan 6. In the last-named source it is Hadrian who attempted in vain to find the grave of Moses. In that passage this wicked ruler is said to have travelled throughout the Holy Land to visit the



graves of the kings and prophets. His attempt, however, to find the grave of Moses was fruitless.

61. 2 Maccabees 2.4–8; Josippon 3. The legend about the hiding of the holy vessels, recorded in the Rest of the Words of Baruch 3, is based on 2 Maccabees, whereas in Apocalypse of Baruch 6.7–10, Baruch sees an angel descend into the holy of holies and take from there the veil, the holy ark, the mercy seat, the two tables, the holy raiment of the priests (the high priest?), the altar of incense, the forty-eight precious stones wherewith the priest (= high priest) was adorned (the Hebrew original read: [ארבע]ה, which was misread as ארבעים ושמונה אבן, and all the holy vessels of the tabernacle. The angel then said to the earth: “Earth hear the word of God, and receive what I commit to thy care to guard until the last times” ... And the earth opened its mouth, and swallowed them up. For the similar view of the Rabbis about the fate of the holy vessels, see text on pp. 572, 645; text on pp. 856, 1021, 1059, 1117, 1120. Comp. also the references in notes 62–64, and Friedmann in *Ha-Shiloah*, XIII, 54, *seq.*

62. Ekah 2, 114, which reads: The gates were thus rewarded for the honor they paid to the holy ark (compare with p. 966); Tan. IV, 51, which reads: All the holy vessels were brought to Babylon, with the exception of the gates. See also Sotah 9a (here it is said that the enemy had no power over the gates, because they were made by David); BaR 15.13; Tan. Beha'aloteka 9. Comp. also 4 Ezra 10.22; Assumption of Moses 3.2; text on p. 726.

63. Read: Shomer (“the guardian”). Bar Hebraeus, *Tarih Muhrasar*, 70, speaks of the priest Simeon (שמעון) as the one who hid the holy vessels. There cannot be any doubt that he is dependent upon Jewish tradition, and it is probable that he confused שמור or rather שמעון with שומר.

64. Masseket Kelim 88–91. On Bursif (=Borsippa; according to Shabbat 36a, it is identical with Biblical בבל), see also Sanhedrin 109a and BR 28.11, where it is said that those dwelling in this place suffer from a weak memory.—According to some Kabbalists, the destruction of the Temple was not a reality, but it appeared to the people as though it had actually taken place (docetism); the Temple disappeared from the sight of man, and will become visible again in messianic times. Comp. Zohar II, 240b, and Yalkut Hadash, s. v. חרבן, Nos. 7 and 18.

## BARUCH

At the time of the destruction of the Temple, one of the prominent figures was Baruch, the faithful attendant<sup>65</sup> of Jeremiah. God

commanded him to leave the city one day before the enemy was to enter it, in order that his presence might not render it impregnable. On the following day, he and all other pious men having abandoned Jerusalem, he saw from a distance how the angels descended, set fire to the city walls, and concealed the sacred vessels of the Temple. At first his mourning over the misfortunes of Jerusalem and the people knew no bounds. But he was in a measure consoled at the end of a seven days' fast, when God made known to him that the day of reckoning would come for the heathen, too. Other Divine visions were vouchsafed him. The whole future of mankind was unrolled before his eyes, especially the history of Israel, and he learned that the coming of the Messiah would put an end to all sorrow and misery, and usher in the reign of peace and joy among men. As for him, he would be removed from the earth, he was told, but not through death, and only in order to be kept safe against the coming of the end of all time.<sup>66</sup>

Thus consoled, Baruch addressed an admonition to the people left in Palestine, and wrote two letters of the same tenor to the exiles, one to the nine tribes and a half, the other to the two tribes and a half. The letter to the nine tribes and a half of the captivity was carried to them by an eagle.<sup>67</sup>

Five years after the great catastrophe, he composed a book in Babylonia,<sup>68</sup> which contained penitential prayers and hymns of consolation, exhorting Israel and urging the people to return to God and His law. This book Baruch read to King Jeconiah and the whole people on a day of prayer and penitence. On the same occasion a collection was taken up among the people, and the funds thus secured, together with the silver Temple vessels made by order of Zedekiah after Jeconiah had been carried away captive, were sent to Jerusalem, with the request that the high priest Joakim and the people should



apply the money to the sacrificial service and to prayers for the life of King Nebuchadnezzar and his son Belshazzar. Thus they might ensure peace and happiness under Babylonian rule. Above all, they were to supplicate God to turn away His wrath from His people.

Baruch sent his book also to the residents of Jerusalem, and they read it in the Temple on distinguished days, and recited the prayers it contains.<sup>69</sup>

Baruch is one of the few mortals who have been privileged to visit Paradise and know its secrets. An angel of the Lord appeared to him while he was lamenting over the destruction of Jerusalem and took him to the seven heavens, to the place of judgment where the doom of the godless is pronounced, and to the abodes of the blessed.<sup>70</sup>

He was still among the living at the time in which Cyrus permitted the Jews to return to Palestine, but on account of his advanced age he could not avail himself of the permission. So long as he was alive, his disciple Ezra remained with him in Babylonia, for "the study of the law is more important than the building of the Temple." It was only after the death of Baruch that he decided to gather together the exiles who desired to return to the Holy Land and rebuild the Temple in Jerusalem.<sup>71</sup>

---

65. The old authorities differ as to whether Baruch was a prophet or not. Mekilta Bo (פתיחתא), end, reads: Baruch was greatly distressed because he did not receive the prophetic spirit, whereas the disciples of the former prophets (Joshua the disciple of Moses, Elisha the disciple of Elijah and many others) succeeded their masters as prophets. To console him, God told Jeremiah to speak to Baruch as follows: "Baruch, there is no need of a fence, if there is no vineyard; of what use is the shepherd, if there is no flock?" Comp. also *ibid.*, 1b, where it is stated that prophecy is a prerogative of the Holy Land, and though it is true that Ezekiel and Jeremiah prophesied in other countries, their career was begun in the Holy Land. On the other

hand, Seder 'Olam 20, Sifre Z., 75, Megillah 14b, and Sifre N., 78, count not only Baruch, but also his father and grandfather and uncle (comp. Jer. 51.59) among the prophets. Those sources also state that he was related to Jeremiah, both having been descendants of Rahab the harlot. She was accordingly the ancestress of eight priests, who were prophets at the same time; these are: Jeremiah, his father Hilkiah, his uncle Shallum, and the latter's son Hanamel (comp. Jerem. 32.7), Baruch, his father Neriah, his grandfather Mahseiah, and his uncle Seraiah. According to some, the priest and prophet Ezekiel, as well as his father Buzi, who was also a prophet, likewise belong to Rahab's descendants. Comp. Yalkut II, 1074 (end) on 1 Chron. 4.23; footnote 12 on p. 843. In the apocalyptic and pseudepigraphic literature Baruch is presupposed to have been a prophet, and is said to have been the author of three prophetic works: 1) Baruch; 2) Apocalypse of Baruch (Syriac); 3) Apocalypse of Baruch (Greek). On the relationship between Jeremiah and Ezekiel, see notes 42 and 93.

66. Apocalypse of Baruch 1–77. As for Baruch and the pious men having been "sent away" by God from Jerusalem before the day of the destruction of the Temple, see text on p. 1075, and note 28. On the hiding of the holy vessels, see notes 60, 61. That Baruch was one of the distinguished and pious men who never "tasted death" is also the view of the Rabbis. Comp. Sifre N., 99; Mo'ed Katan 16b; PRE 53 (comp. Luria *ad loc.* and Tehillim 7, 72); 2 ARN 43, 122; PR 26, 130b, where he is identified with Ebed-melech the Ethiopian (comp. Jer. 38.7; he is called the Ethiopian, *i. e.*, the "black", antiphrastically, because he was the only "white", *i. e.*, pious, man at the court of king Zedekiah), and of this man it is explicitly stated that he entered paradise alive. See Derek Erez Z., 1 (end), and the parallel passages cited by Tawrogi, to which should be added PRK (Grünhut's edition, 83); 'Aktan 12. In the last-named source, however, Ebed-melech is said to have been a proselyte and accordingly he is not identified with the priest Baruch (comp. the preceding note). He is further described there as one of the ten rulers who became proselytes; they are: The king Hiram, Ebed (*i. e.*, Ebed-melech; מלך "king" is taken as the title of Ebed); Antoninus, Talmi (Ptolemy of Egypt, at whose command the Septuagint was prepared), Monobaz (king of Adiabene), Tobai (?), Bolan (king of the Khazars); the queens Bithiah (the foster-mother of Moses), Helena (queen of Adiabene), and Beruria (Valeria; Comp. Gerim 2.4; Mekilta Bo 15, 18a; Yebamot 46a). In the Christian legend it is Jeremiah, and not his disciple Baruch, who is one of the immortals. Comp. notes 13 and 42. Comp., however, also II Macc. 2.1 *seq.* and 15.15.

67. Apocalypse of Baruch 78–87. Compare also with p. 1090.



68. As to the view that Baruch and Jeremiah were exiled to Babylon, see note 42, and compare with p. 1091.

69. Book of Baruch.

70. The Greek Apocalypse of Baruch is a description of this ascension.

71. Megillah 16b; Shir 5.5. On the view that Baruch entered paradise alive, see note 66.

## THE TOMBS OF BARUCH AND EZEKIEL

The piety of Baruch and the great favor he enjoyed with God were made known to later generations many years after his death, through the marvellous occurrences connected with his tomb. Once a Babylonian prince commanded a Jew, Rabbi Solomon by name, to show him the grave of Ezekiel, concerning which he had heard many remarkable tales. The Jew advised the prince first to enter the tomb of Baruch, which adjoined that of Ezekiel. Having succeeded in this, he might attempt the same with the tomb of Ezekiel, the teacher of Baruch.<sup>72</sup> In the presence of his grandees and his people the prince tried to open the grave of Baruch, but his efforts were fruitless. Whosoever touched it, was at once stricken dead. An old Arab advised the prince to call upon the Jews to gain entrance for him, seeing that Baruch had been a Jew, and his books were still being studied by Jews. The Jews prepared themselves by fasts, prayers, penitence, and almsgiving, and they succeeded in opening the grave without a mishap. Baruch was found lying on a marble bier, and the appearance of the corpse was as though he had only then passed away.<sup>73</sup> The prince ordered the bier to be brought to the city, and the body to be entombed there. He thought it was not seemly that Ezekiel and Baruch should rest in the same grave. But the bearers found it impossible to remove the bier more than two thousand ells from the original

grave; not even with the help of numerous draught-animals could it be urged a single step further. Following the advice of Rabbi Solomon, the prince resolved to inter the bier on the spot they had reached, and also to erect an academy there. These miraculous happenings induced the prince to go to Mecca. There he became convinced of the falseness of Moham-medanism, of which he had hitherto been an adherent, and he converted to Judaism, he and his whole court.

Near the grave of Baruch there grows a species of grass whose leaves are covered with gold dust. As the sheen of the gold is not readily noticeable by day, the people seek out the place at night, mark the very spot on which the grass grows, and return by day and gather it.<sup>74</sup>

Not less famous is the tomb of Ezekiel, at a distance of two thousand ells from Baruch's. It is overarched by a beautiful mausoleum erected by King Jeconiah after Evil-merodach had released him from captivity. The mausoleum existed down to the middle ages, and it bore on its walls the names of the thirty-five thousand Jews who assisted Jeconiah in erecting the monument. It was the scene of many miracles. When great crowds of people journeyed thither to pay reverence to the memory of the prophet, the little low gate in the wall surrounding the grave enlarged in width and height to admit all who desired to enter. Once a prince vowed to give a colt to the grave of the prophet, if but his mare which had been sterile would bear one. When his wish was fulfilled, however, he did not keep his promise. But the filly ran a distance equal to a four days' journey to the tomb, and his owner could not recover it until he deposited his value in silver upon the grave. When people went on long journeys, they were in the habit of carrying their treasures to the grave of the prophet, and beseeching him to let none but the rightful heirs remove them thence. The prophet always granted



their petition. Once when an attempt was made to take some books from the grave of Ezekiel, the ravager suddenly became sick and blind. For a time a pillar of fire, visible at a great distance, rose above the grave of the prophet, but it disappeared in consequence of the unseemly conduct of the pilgrims who resorted thither.

Not far from the grave of Ezekiel was the grave of Barozak, who once appeared to a rich Jew in a dream. He spoke: "I am Barozak, one of the princes who were led into captivity with Jeremiah. I am one of the just. If thou wilt erect a handsome mausoleum for me, thou wilt be blessed with progeny." The Jew did as he had been bidden, and he who had been childless, shortly after became a father.<sup>75</sup>

---

72. That Baruch was a disciple of Ezekiel is not mentioned elsewhere. It is very likely that "teacher" is not to be taken literally. Compare footnote 3 on p. 993.

73. Not only Moses' body shows no signs of decay (compare with p. 832), but also those of other pious men; comp. Shabbat 152b; Baba Mezi'a 84b. When Hadrian opened the tomb of David (comp. note 60), he was amazed at the high color of the face; he pressed the flesh with his finger, and the blood began to circulate. Admiringly the wicked king called out: "This man deserved to be the ruler of the entire world, since even after his death he is like the living." See 'Aktan 23.

74. *Gelilot Erez Israel* 101a; a somewhat different version of this legend is given by R. Pethahiah of Ratisbon 4b–5a. On gold dust, see also text on p. 1117.

75. R. Pethahiah of Ratisbon 5a–5b; comp. also the remarks of R. Benjamin of Tudela (I, 67; II, 141–143) about the tomb of the prophet Ezekiel. A geonic responsum in Schechter's *Saadyana*, 123, mentions the "synagogue of Ezekiel", Daniel, Ezra, Baruch, and the masters of the Talmud. This very likely means the synagogue erected by Ezekiel (in the place where later his mausoleum was built?), and frequented by Daniel, Ezra, Baruch, and other great men. A "Daniel synagogue" in the neighborhood of ברנשא (Birnos, on the road from Bagdad to Hilla?) is mentioned in the Talmud by authorities living in the third century. Comp. 'Erubin 21a, and Berliner, *Beiträge zur Geographie*, 28.

## DANIEL

The most distinguished member of the Babylonian Diaspora was Daniel. Though not a prophet,<sup>76</sup> he was surpassed by none in wisdom, piety, and good deeds. His firm adherence to Judaism he displayed from his early youth, when, a page at the royal court, he refused to partake of the bread, wine, and oil of the heathen, even though the enjoyment of them was not prohibited by the law.<sup>77</sup> In general, his prominent position at the court was maintained at the cost of many a hardship, for he and his companions, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were envied their distinction by numerous enemies, who sought to compass their ruin.

Once they were accused before King Nebuchadnezzar of leading an unchaste life. The king resolved to order their execution. But Daniel and his friends mutilated certain parts of their bodies, and so demonstrated how unfounded were the charges against them.<sup>78</sup>

As a youth Daniel gave evidence of his wisdom, when he convicted two old sinners of having testified falsely against Susanna, as beautiful as she was good. Misled by the perjured witnesses, the court had condemned Susanna to death. Then Daniel, impelled by a higher power, appeared among the people, proclaimed that wrong had been done, and demanded that the case be re-opened. And so it was. Daniel himself cross-questioned the witnesses one after the other. The same questions were addressed to both, and as the replies did not agree with each other, the false witnesses stood condemned, and they were made to suffer the penalty they would have had the court inflict upon their victim.<sup>79</sup>

Daniel's high position in the state dates from the time when he interpreted Nebuchadnezzar's dream. The king said to the astrologers and magicians: "I know my dream, but I do not



want to tell you what it was, else you will invent anything at all, and pretend it is the interpretation of the dream. But if *you* tell *me* the dream, then I shall have confidence in your interpretation of it.”

After much talk between Nebuchadnezzar and his wise men, they confessed that the king’s wish might have been fulfilled, if but the Temple had still existed. The high priest at Jerusalem might have revealed the secret by consulting the Urim and Thummim. At this point the king became wrathful against his wise men, who had advised him to destroy the Temple, though they must have known how useful it might become to the king and the state. He ordered them all to execution. Their life was saved by Daniel, who recited the king’s dream, and gave its interpretation.<sup>80</sup> The king was so filled with admiration of Daniel’s wisdom that he paid him Divine honors. Daniel, however, refused such extravagant treatment—he did not desire to be the object of idolatrous veneration.<sup>81</sup> He left Nebuchadnezzar in order to escape the marks of honor thrust upon him, and repaired to Tiberias, where he built a canal. Besides, he was charged by the king with commissions, to bring fodder for cattle to Babylonia and also swine from Alexandria.<sup>82</sup>

---

76. Megillah 3a and Sanhedrin 94a (top), where in reference to Dan. 10.7 it is remarked that the men who were with him were the prophets Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi; yet it was he, though not a prophet, who was found worthy to behold the vision. Palestinian sources, however, tannaitic as well as amoraic, count Daniel among the prophets. Comp. Mekilta 1b; PK 4, 36b; PR 14, 61 (where the anthropomorphism of the “prophets” refers to certain anthropomorphic expressions used in Dan.); Seder ‘Olam 20; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 11.4 and 7; Matth. 14.25. See also Sanhedrin, where Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah are designated as prophets, and it would be very strange if their great friend (Daniel) were not of that rank. It seems that the old authorities spoke of the “Book of Daniel” as belonging to the Hagiographa and not to the prophetic part of the Canon. Later, however, the “Book

of Daniel” was confused with its author, and hence the statement that he was not a prophet. But the writing of a prophet is not necessarily a prophetic book, as may be seen from the Book of Psalms, which belongs to the Hagiographa, though David was a prophet. Comp. Seder ‘Olam 20; Mekilta Bo (פתיחתא), 2a; Yerushalmi Sotah 9, 24b. See also note 108 and footnote 18 on p. 1115. For the views of the later authorities concerning Daniel, see Fischer, *Daniel*, 100–102. For the attribute “man greatly beloved” given to Daniel (Dan. 10.11), see the explanation in Koheleth 9.7 and Tan. B. I, 88. He is said to have been also called Memuchan and Hathach (compare with pp. 1106 and 1161), as well as Sheshbazzar (comp. Ezra 1.8). The last name signifies: “He was in distress six times”, as Daniel was the eye-witness of three exiles (the first under Jehoiakim, the second under Jehoiachin, and the third under Zedekiah); he was at the point of losing his life with the rest of the wise men of Babylon (Dan. 2.13), of being devoured by the lions, and finally he witnessed the throwing of his three companions, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, into the fiery furnace. See PR 6, 23b. As a reward for the faithfulness with which he served his “earthly king” (Nebuchadnezzar), he was chosen to serve his heavenly King, and thus Daniel (=Sheshbazzar) was the first to lay the “foundation” of the house of God” (Ezra 6.16); PR, *loc. cit.* Combining Dan. 1.3 and 6 with Is. 39.7, the Hagadah maintains that Daniel and his three companions were descendants of the kings of Judah; some authorities, however, are of the opinion that his companions did not belong to the tribe of Judah. See Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 10.1; Sanhedrin 93b; PRE 53; “Hebrew tradition” in Jerome on Is., *loc. cit.* Comp. Fischer, *Daniel*, 33–39. That Daniel was the son of Jeconiah (= Jehoiachin) is asserted only by Bar Hebraeus, *Chronicon Syriacum*, 27, and Ma’aseh Daniel (beginning). The latter source also narrates that during the carnage which took place at the conquest of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar (compare with p. 1075) a soldier entered the house of study in which Daniel and his three companions were sitting. He first intended to kill them, but God “gave them favor in the sight” of the soldier. He did not kill them, but took them captive to Babylon.

77. ‘Abodah Zarah 55b; Yerushalmi 2, 41d; Yoma 76b. In Tan. B. I, 110–111 the story of the refusal of Daniel and his three companions to partake of the food is told in a circumstantial manner, whereas Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 10.2, rationalizes the biblical narrative of Dan. 1.8, *seq.* Zohar II, 125b, gives the menu of Nebuchadnezzar’s table, and adds that Daniel was saved from the lions as a reward for his having refrained from eating the forbidden food offered to him at the table of Nebuchadnezzar. But Daniel’s piety did not consist exclusively in his strict observance of the dietary laws; lovingkindness, charity, and pray-



ing were his chief merits. See ARN 4, 21. It is therefore not surprising that according to one view, Daniel is the promised Messiah; comp. Sanhedrin 98b. Nevertheless the miracles wrought for Daniel, as well as God's granting of his request were not due to his own merits, but to those of Abraham. See Tan. B. I, 111; Berakot 7b. Against this view comp. ARN, *loc. cit.*

78. Midrash Megillah 176. Compare with p. 1051, and note 76, with regard to those men as the "eunuchs" (סריסים) of whom Isaiah spoke. On the other hand, it is maintained in Sanhedrin 93b that they were perfect in body and intellect, but that they were called סריסים, "eunuchs", because they "emasculated the worship of idols from among their generation". Compare with p. 1099 (towards the end). In Yerushalmi Shabbat 4, 8d, it is said that although they were made eunuchs, they regained their former state in the fiery furnace. Comp. also Jerome on Is. 56.4–5, and ER 26, 131. "The eunuchs that keep My sabbaths", of whom the prophet speaks, is said to refer to Daniel's three companions.

79. The apocryphal Book of Susannah in its Greek version, as well as in the Hebrew translation thereof in BHM VI, 126–128, and in Yerahmeel 65. A similar motive to the one in the Susanna story is found in the rabbinic legend about the false prophets (= text on p. 1106). Comp. Frankel, *Monatsschrift*, XVII, 447, and Brüll, *Jahrbücher*, II, 8, *seq.* These two scholars also call attention to the story told in Sanhedrin 5.2 about the careful examination of witnesses by a certain Ben Zakkai (according to the Talmud, 40a–40b, it was the famous Rabban Johanan ben Zakkai but this is doubtful), which reminds one of the part played by Daniel in Susanna. Comp. note 108.

80. Tan. B. I, 90. For the interpretation of the stone which was "cut out without hands" (Dan. 2.34) as referring to the Messiah, comp. Tan. B. II, 91–92, and Tan. Terumah 7. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 1.4, in affected mysteriousness, wants to convey the same statement as the Midrashim. According to the very late compilation Ma'aseh Daniel 19, Daniel cured Nebuchadnezzar by prayer from the injury he received while attempting to ascend the throne of Solomon. The injury (a broken leg) of Nebuchadnezzar is mentioned also in *Panim Aherim* 57–58; Abba Gorion 4 (he attempted to ascend the throne in Riblah, while he sat in judgment over Zedekiah); 2 Targum Esther 1.2; compare with p. 969 and note 13 on pp. 1131–1132.

81. BR 96.5; Tan. B. I, 213 (here Daniel is contrasted with the heathen rulers who asked for divine honors). Comp. also PK 9, 76a; WR 27.4; Tan. B. III, 91; Midrash Shir 43a; text on p. 399.

82. Sanhedrin 93a, in explaining Daniel's absence from Babylon during the incident of the three men in the furnace; comp. the following note. With regard to the export of swine from Alexandria, comp. Menahot 4.4, which

reads: No cow or sow is permitted to leave Alexandria without having its womb cut out, that it should not be able to conceive.

## THE THREE MEN IN THE FURNACE

During Daniel's absence Nebuchadnezzar set up an idol, and its worship was exacted from all his subjects under penalty of death by fire. The image could not stand on account of the disproportion between its height and its thickness. The whole of the gold and silver captured by the Babylonians in Jerusalem was needed to give it steadiness.<sup>83</sup>

All the nations owning the rule of Nebuchadnezzar, including even Israel, obeyed the royal command to worship the image. Only the three pious companions of Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, resisted the order. In vain Nebuchadnezzar urged upon them, as an argument in favor of idolatry, that the Jews had been so devoted to heathen practices before the destruction of Jerusalem that they had gone to Babylonia for the purpose of imitating the idols there and bringing the copies they made to Jerusalem. The three saints would not hearken to these seductions of the king, nor when he referred them to such authorities as Moses and Jeremiah, in order to prove to them that they were under obligation to do the royal bidding. They said to him: "Thou art our king in all that concerns service, taxes, poll-money, and tribute, but with respect to thy present command thou art only Nebuchadnezzar. Therein thou and the dog are alike unto us. Bark like a dog, inflate thyself like a water-bottle, and chirp like a cricket."<sup>84</sup>

Now Nebuchadnezzar's wrath transcended all bounds, and he ordered the three to be cast into a red hot furnace, so hot that the flames of its fire darted to the height of forty-nine ells



beyond the oven, and consumed the heathen standing about it. No less than four nations were thus exterminated.<sup>85</sup> While the three saints were being thrust into the furnace, they addressed a fervent prayer to God, supplicating His grace toward them, and entreating Him to put their adversaries to shame. The angels desired to descend and rescue the three men in the furnace. But God forbade it: "Did the three men act thus for your sakes? Nay, they did it for Me; and I will save them with Mine own hands."<sup>86</sup> God also rejected the good offices of Yurkami, the angel of hail, who offered to extinguish the fire in the furnace. The angel Gabriel justly pointed out that such a miracle would not be sufficiently striking to arrest attention. His own proposition was accepted. He, the angel of fire, was deputed to snatch the three men from the red hot furnace. He executed his mission by cooling off the fire inside of the oven, while on the outside the heat continued to increase to such a degree that the heathen standing around the furnace were consumed.<sup>87</sup> The three youths thereupon raised their voices together in a hymn of praise to God, thanking Him for His miraculous help.<sup>88</sup> The Chaldeans observed the three men pacing up and down quietly in the furnace, followed by a fourth—the angel Gabriel—as by an attendant. Nebuchadnezzar, who hastened thither to see the wonder, was stunned with fright, for he recognized Gabriel to be the angel who in the guise of a column of fire had blasted the army of Sennacherib.<sup>89</sup> Six other miracles happened, all of them driving terror to the heart of the king: the fiery furnace which had been sunk in the ground raised itself into the air; it was broken; the bottom dropped out; the image erected by Nebuchadnezzar fell prostrate; four nations were wasted by fire; and Ezekiel revived the dead in the valley of Dura.

Of the last, Nebuchadnezzar was apprised in a peculiar way. He had a drinking vessel made

of the bones of a slain Jew. When he was about to use it, life began to stir in the bones, and a blow was planted in the king's face, while a voice announced: "A friend of this man is at this moment reviving the dead!" Nebuchadnezzar now offered praise to God for the miracles performed, and if an angel had not quickly struck him a blow on his mouth, and forced him into silence, his psalms of praise would have excelled the Psalter of David.

The deliverance of the three pious young men was a brilliant vindication of their ways, but at the same time it caused great mortification to the masses of the Jewish people, who had complied with the orders of Nebuchadnezzar to worship his idol.<sup>90</sup> Accordingly, when the three men left the furnace—which they did not do until Nebuchadnezzar invited them to leave<sup>91</sup>—the heathen struck all the Jews they met in the face, deriding them at the same time: "You who have so marvellous a God pay homage to an idol!" The three men thereupon left Babylonia and went to Palestine, where they joined their friend, the high priest Joshua.<sup>92</sup>

Their readiness to sacrifice their lives for the honor of God had been all the more admirable as they had been advised by the prophet Ezekiel that no miracle would be done for their sakes: When the king's command to bow down before the idol was published, and the three men were appointed to act as the representatives of the people, Hananiah and his companions resorted to Daniel for his advice. He referred them to the prophet Ezekiel, who counselled flight, citing his teacher Isaiah as his authority. The three men rejected his advice, and declared themselves ready to suffer the death of martyrs. Ezekiel bade them tarry until he inquired of God, whether a miracle would be done for them. The words of God were: "I shall not manifest Myself as their savior. They caused My house to be destroyed, My palace to be burnt, My chil-



dren to be dispersed among the heathen, and now they appeal for My help. As I live, I will not be found of them.”

Instead of discouraging the three men, this answer but infused new spirit and resolution in them, and they declared with more decided emphasis than before, that they were ready to meet death. God consoled the weeping prophet by revealing to him, that He would save the three saintly heroes. He had sought to restrain them from martyrdom only to let their piety and steadfastness appear the brighter.

On account of their piety it became customary to swear by the Name of Him who supports the world on three pillars, the pillars being the saints Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah. Their deliverance from death by fire worked a great effect upon the disposition of the heathen. They were convinced of the uselessness of their idols, and with their own hands they destroyed them.<sup>93</sup>

83. Ekah, introduction, 23 (comp. 5, end); Koheleth 12.5. As to Daniel's absence, comp. also the preceding note. Against this view, see Shir 7.8. Here it is stated that the three men whose lot it was to represent their nation at the worship of the image (according to some, the entire Jewish representation consisted of twenty-three men, twenty of whom obeyed the command of Nebuchadnezzar; superior courts are composed of twenty-three members; comp. Sanhedrin 1.4) asked Daniel for advice, but he referred them to Ezekiel, saying to them: "There is a prophet (Daniel himself was not a prophet; comp. note 76) before you; go to him." In Ma'aseh Daniel, 119, it is said that Daniel, like his companions, was commanded by Nebuchadnezzar to worship the image, and like them he refused to obey. The king, however, decreed to put the three men to death but not Daniel. Comp. also Hippolytus on Dan. 3.16, who remarks: Daniel, though he stood at a distance and kept silence, encouraged them to be of good cheer, as he smiled at them. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 10.5, speak of the three men as Daniel's kinsmen (comp. note 76), who, like himself, were made rulers by Nebuchadnezzar over his whole kingdom.

84. WR 33.6; BaR 15.14; Shir 2.14; Tan. B. I, 38–39, and IV, 52; Tan. Noah 10 and Beha'aloteka 9; Yelammedenu in *Aruk*, s. v. אָרָא 2; Aggadat Bereshit 7, 15–16;

Tehillim 18, 229; Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 3, 21b. On the etymology of the name Nebuchadnezzar (נְבוּכַדְנֶצְצַר = נִבְחָ "barked"; כֵּד "a pitcher of water"; נֶצֶר "chirped"), see also BR 90.3, where it is said that this wicked king was also called טַפְסָר (comp. Jerem. 51, 27) because he was a fool (= טַפֵּשׁ), though old in years (שֶׁר בְּשָׁנִים), whereas Joseph was called אַבְרָם because he was wise (אֵב בחכמה), though young (רַךְ בְּשָׁנִים).

85. Sanhedrin 92b (מַלְכֵיּוֹת is here the same as אֲמוֹנוֹת in Tan., differently Rashi); Tan. III, 14; Tan. Noah 10 and Zaw 2; Tehillim 22, 188; Shir 7.9, where the names of the offices (?) given in Dan. 3.2 and 27 are explained in detail. The death of those who threw the pious men into the furnace is mentioned in the Bible (Dan. 3.22), and in the Additions to Daniel found in the Septuagint this verse reads: And the king's servants, that put them in, ceased not to make the furnace hot with naphtha, pitch, tow, and small wood; so that the flame streamed forth above the furnace forty-nine cubits. And it spread, and burned those Chaldeans whom it found about the furnace. The "forty-nine cubits" is a haggadic explanation of חַד שְׁבַעָה (Dan. 3.19), and is found also in Tehillim 28, 229, though in a somewhat different form. In the Midrashim quoted, as well as in Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.* (read הַיִּמְקִירוֹס instead of הַיִּמְקִירוֹ), it is said that Nebuchadnezzar himself was half burned on this occasion, see note 90. Compare footnote 76 on p. 160.

86. Tan. B. I, 40–41; Tan. Noah 10; Aggadat Bereshit 7.17. Against this view, comp. the references given in the next note, according to which it was an angel (Gabriel), and not God Himself, who saved the three men from death. Compare also footnote 33 on p. 176, with regard to the rescue of Abraham from the fiery furnace. For the prayer of the three men, see the following note.

87. Pesahim 118a–118b (יִרְקָמִי, the name of the angel of hail, is composed of יָהּ = יְהוָה "God", and רָקַם = רָקַם; comp. Syriac כְּאִפְּא רִגְמוּתָא, "hail stones"; hence Yorkami is the correct transliteration; the various etymologies of this name given by the lexicographers are not to be taken seriously); Abba Gorion 34; Ma'aseh Abraham (Horowitz' edition 45–46; here it is Michael who attempted to get ahead of Gabriel and rescue the three men); ShR 18.5; PRE 33; Tan. Tezawweh 12 (here the competition between Michael and Gabriel relates to the rescuing of Abraham); Tehillim 117, 480; PR 35, 160b; Midrash Esther 66. In the apocryphal Prayer of Azariah 26–27 it is said: But the angel of the Lord came down into the furnace together with Azariah and his fellows, and he drove the flame of the fire out of the furnace, as it had been a moist whistling wind, so that the fire touched them not at all, neither hurt nor troubled them. Comp. also 4 Maccabees 6.6, which reads: "Thou, when the three friends in Babylon freely gave their lives to the flames..., didst make as



dew the fiery furnace, and deliver them unharmed ... turning the flame upon their adversaries.” The Midrashim go still further, and state that the furnace turned into a pleasure-ground. Comp. PR, *loc. cit.*; Shir 7.8 (end; the text is obscure; **טלנוס** must not be emended to **פלניס**, as it explains **אור** and not **כבשן**; **אורקי** is still more puzzling); Tan. B. III, 14; Tan. Zaw 2. The Haggadah (Sanhedrin 92b, below, and Shir 7.9, beginning) calls attention to the fact that the three men appeared robed in their best garments to be thrown into the furnace, because “even when one’s life is in danger one ought to be mindful of the duties laid upon one by his position.” Of a strange nature is the following statement of the Talmud (Ketubot 33b): Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah would have paid homage to the image if they had been flogged. Comp. Tosafot, *ad loc.* The idea conveyed by this statement is that even martyrs can not always endure the tortures of a slow death.

88. The apocryphal Prayer of Azariah and the Song of the Three Children in the Additions to Daniel in the Septuagint and in Theodotion. Reminiscences of this or a similar prayer and song by the three men are found in many passages of rabbinic literature; comp. Pesahim 118a (the Hallel is said here to have been composed by these men); Tan. B. I, 40; Noah 10; ShR 20.1 and 18.5 (here it is said that Gabriel collaborated in the composition of Hallel; on Gabriel see preceding note); Tehillim 117, 480; Aggadat Bereshit 7.17; Aggadat Shir 2.29; Zohar III, 57a. Comp. also Mahzor Vitry 320–322 and 337–338.

89. PR 35, 160b, with the additional remark: Gabriel attended upon the three men as does a disciple upon his master, because “the righteous are greater than the angels” (comp. Index, s. v. “Angels”, and see further Yerushalmi Shabbat 6, end, which reads: The three men made it possible for the angel to withstand the fire of the furnace, and not the reverse); DR 1.12. On Gabriel, see note 87, and footnote 55 on p. 1046.

90. Sanhedrin 92b–93a (as to the correct text, comp. note 83, according to which, one of the miracles was that Nebuchadnezzar was half consumed by the fire of the furnace and not that the bottom dropped out); Shir 7.9; Tan. B. I, 41, and III, 14; Tan. Noah 10 and Zaw 2; Aggadat Bereshit 7, 14. On the drinking cups made of the skulls of slain enemies, see Herodotus, IV, 65; Frazer, *Golden Bough* III, 372. Compare further footnote 345 on p. 400. The Karaites (comp., *e. g.*, Hadassi, *Eshkol*, 45b below and 134a) accuse the Rabbis of ascribing this barbarous practice to the prophet Ezekiel. It is difficult to tell whether this accusation is due to ignorance or malice; the text of the Talmud (Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*) makes it absolutely clear that it is Nebuchadnezzar, not Ezekiel, who is said to have committed this barbarous act. God does not wish to be praised by the wicked, who call on Him in time of distress, but forget Him in time of happiness; that is why the angel pre-

vented Nebuchadnezzar from continuing his prayer of God. See WR 16.4; Tan. B. II, 37; Tan. Wa-Era (end). The words of praise to God uttered by Nebuchadnezzar: “For all His works are truth, and His ways justice” (Dan. 4.34), contain all the praises of God found in the Psalms of David. See WR 13 (end); Tehillim 5, 55–56; comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 10.6. Yet Nebuchadnezzar had a poor conception of God’s true essence, as may be seen from his description of the angel as one whose appearance is like a son of God (Dan. 3.25). An angel struck him on his mouth, saying: “Correct thyself! Has God any sons?” Nebuchadnezzar profited by this lesson, and the next time he spoke of the angel of God (Dan. 3.28), and not of His son. See Yerushalmi Shabbat 6 (end); ShR 20.10 (here it is also stated that Nebuchadnezzar’s words, “and none can stay His hand”, Dan. 4.32, are blasphemous, conveying the idea that God in His omnipotence does not refrain from doing injustice; comp. Baba Kamma 38a); Shir 7.9; Shemuel 5, 60 (read **משולח** instead of **משלו**); Aggadat Bereshit 27, 55. This anti-Christian Haggadah (the last-named source reads: The Babylonians maintain God has a son; on Babylon = Rome, see Index, s. v.) is the Jewish reply to the argument of the Church Fathers that in Dan., *loc. cit.*, the expression “son of God” refers to Jesus. Comp. *e. g.*, Hippolytus, *ad loc.*

91. Tan. B. I, 41; Tan. Noah 10 (read: **למלאך** instead of **למלך**; the angel bade them leave the furnace, but they did not obey until they received permission from the king); Aggadat Bereshit 7, 17; Shir 7.9.

92. Sanhedrin 93a (they got married in Palestine, and begot children; comp. note 78); Midrash Shir 32a–32b; PK 11, 99a; Tan. B. V, 25–26; Tan. Ki-Tissa 14 and Re’eh 16; BR 56.19. As to the fate of the three men, two other opinions are mentioned. According to one, they died immediately after they were saved from the fire of the furnace. Their death was caused by the “evil eye” with which people looked at them because of the miracle wrought for them. The other view maintains that they died in a very peculiar manner. Enormously large multitudes of heathens assembled to see them leave the furnace, and these multitudes were so exasperated at the Israelites for having forsaken their God (the three men were the only Israelites steadfast in their religion; see note 83), that they spat at them; the three men fell into the spittle and were drowned. The last view is extremely bizarre, and it is possible that the correct reading is **בקר** “by cold” instead of **ברק** “in spittle”. Comp. Yerushalmi Shabbat 14, 14c, and Baba Mezi’a 107b, where two views are given as to the most frequent causes of death: 1) Most people die from cold (**קר** = **צנה**); 2) the “evil eye” is responsible for most deaths. Accordingly the two views concerning the death of the three men (“evil eye”; cold) only wish to convey the idea that they died in the same way as most people. In Baba Mezi’a the word



used for cold is רוח “draft”, and רוק is phonetically and graphically similar to it. In the Tauhumas, and PK, *loc. cit.*, the expression גוש של רוק “mass of spittle” is used with reference to the rest of the Israelites (the heathens spat at them, that they became a “mass of spittle”), and not with regard to the three men. At all events, the expression גוש של רוק in these sources supports the reading of רק in Babli, and the suggested emendations are rather doubtful.

93. Shir 7.8 (according to another opinion, the three pillars are the three patriarchs; compare footnote 590 on p. 728); Tehillim 1, 5; compare with p. 527. As to the conversion of the heathen on this occasion, see also Shir 1.3 and 4.1; ‘Aseret ha-Dibrot 70. Delegations of the people waiting on Ezekiel are also mentioned on other occasions. Before the destruction of the Temple people came to argue with him about his prophecies foretelling the imminent captivity of Israel. They said to him: “If Abraham received the Holy Land as a reward for having fulfilled one commandment (circumcision?), how much more can we expect to remain in possession of this land when we fulfil many commandments?” Ezekiel replied: “Ye eat with the blood, cutting off parts from a live animal to consume them; ye lift your eyes unto your idols to worship them; ye shed blood, and stand upon your sword, delaying the execution of justice; ye work abominations, and commit sodomy; ye defile every one his neighbor’s wife. Ye do not even fulfil the Noachian commandments (compare with p. 69), and yet ye say: The land is given to us for inheritance.” See Tosefta Sotah 6.9, which is a paraphrase of Ezek. 33.24–26. The same passage contains the two other paraphrases of these verses. After the destruction of the Temple the elders came to the prophet and said to him: “When the master sells his slave, does he not thereby renounce his claim to him? Now God sold us to the nations of the world, and accordingly we are no longer under His jurisdiction.” The prophet replied: “Does the master renounce his claim to his slave if he gave him for a time to another master, with the understanding that he would take the slave back after the expiration of that period?” See Sifre N., 115; Tan. B. V, 50; Tan. Nizzabim 3 (this is the source of Yalkut II, 359, where Wa-Yikra Rabbah is erroneously given as source); 2 AKN 11, 28. When the elders came to Ezekiel to hear from him the word of God, the prophet was told by God that He “would not be inquired of” by them (comp. Ezek. 20.1–3). The prophet pleaded for them with God, saying: “Wouldst Thou forsake them, and not ‘be inquired of’ by them even for the sake of the Torah?” Thereupon God changed His decision, saying unto Ezekiel: “I will yet for this (the sake of the Torah) be inquired of by the house of Israel.” See Yelammedenu in Yalkut II, 358, on Ezek. 20.3. When Ezekiel received from God the revelation concerning the future Temple, he said: “We are in exile in the land of our enemies, and Thou

commandest me to reveal to Israel the plan for the Temple!” God, however, informed him that the study of the Temple laws by Israel is as acceptable to Him as the erection of the Temple. See Tan. Zaw 14; Yelammedenu in *‘Aruk*, s. v. צר 3; WR 7.3. Compare also with p. 198. The purpose of revealing to Ezekiel the vision of the heavenly throne (Ezek. 1.1, *seq.*) was to demonstrate to him that God is not in need of the services performed in the Temple, since innumerable hosts of angels minister to Him in heaven; hence it is for Israel’s sake that the Temple will be rebuilt. See WR 2.8; ER 6, 34. Ezekiel, like his father Jeremiah (comp. Tosefta-Targum quoted by Kimhi on Ezek. 1.3, and see also the quotation from a MS. given in note 42, where Buzi is said to be the name of Jeremiah, on the strength of the assertion that he is identical with Buzi the father of Ezekiel), lived in a time of terrible depravity and sinfulness, to atone for which God inflicted great suffering upon him. See Sanhedrin 29a with reference to Ezek. 4.4 and similar passages. On the sins of Israel, see the passage cited above from Tosefta. One of the most wicked acts of this generation was the fashioning of the “image of jealousy” (Ezek. 8.5), which was an abomination in the eyes of the Lord. By means of witchcraft they had fashioned out of stone two figures, a male and a female, embracing one another like husband and wife. See Hasidim 46. A similar reminiscence of the Virgil legend is found in the Armilus legend; see Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, II, s. v. “Armilus”. A very strange statement occurs in the Jewish Peter legend (second version of Aggadta de-Shimon Kefa. 9) that Peter (= Kefa “stone”) was so called because he occupied as his seat the stone on the river Kebar, from which Ezekiel used to deliver his prophecies. The sentence קול לו מהאבן ויהיה יוצא not quite clear. Does it perhaps mean: And he (Peter) became famous on account of this stone?

## EZEKIEL REVIVES THE DEAD

Among the dead whom Ezekiel restored to life at the same time when the three men were redeemed from the fiery furnace were different classes of persons. Some were the Ephraimites that had perished in the attempt to escape from Egypt before Moses led the whole nation out of the land of bondage. Some were the godless among the Jews that had polluted the Temple at Jerusalem with heathen rites, and those still more godless who in life had not believed in



the resurrection of the dead. Others of those revived by Ezekiel were the youths among the Jews carried away captive to Babylonia by Nebuchadnezzar whose beauty was so radiant that it darkened the very splendor of the sun. The Babylonian women were seized with a great passion for them, and at the solicitation of their husbands, Nebuchadnezzar ordered a bloody massacre of the handsome youths. But the Babylonian women were not yet cured of their unlawful passion; the beauty of the young Hebrews haunted them until their corpses lay crushed before them, their graceful bodies mutilated. These were the youths recalled to life by the prophet Ezekiel. Lastly, he revived some that had perished only a short time before. When Hananiah, Mishaël, and Azariah were saved from death, Nebuchadnezzar thus addressed the other Jews, those who had yielded obedience to his command concerning the worship of the idol: "You know that your God can help and save, nevertheless you paid worship to an idol which is incapable of doing anything. This proves that, as you have destroyed your own land by your wicked deeds, so you are now trying to destroy my land with your iniquity." Forthwith he commanded that they all be executed, sixty thousand in number. Twenty years passed, and Ezekiel was vouchsafed the vision in which God bade him repair to the Valley of Dura, where Nebuchadnezzar had set up his idol, and had massacred the host of the Jews. Here God showed him the dry bones of the slain with the question: "Can I revive these bones?" Ezekiel's answer was evasive, and as a punishment for his little faith, he had to end his days in Babylon, and was not granted even burial in the soil of Palestine. God then dropped the dew of heaven upon the dry bones, and "sinews were upon them, and flesh came up, and skin covered them above." At the same time God sent forth winds to the four corners of the earth, which unlocked the

treasure houses of souls, and brought its own soul to each body. All came to life except one man, who, as God explained to the prophet, was excluded from the resurrection because he was a usurer.

In spite of the marvellous miracle performed for them, the men thus restored to life wept, because they feared they would have no share at the end of time in the resurrection of the whole of Israel. But the prophet assured them, in the name of God, that their portion in all that had been promised Israel should in no wise be diminished.<sup>95</sup>

---

94. Sanhedrin 92a (this passage also gives the different view that the quickening of the dead is to be understood as an allegory; but in opposition to this opinion, a Tanna remarks: I am a descendant of one of the men quickened by Ezekiel, and here are the phylacteries which came down to me from him); PRE 33; ER 5, 23–24 (Ezekiel was rewarded for his great love for his people, and was found meritorious to perform this great miracle); Targum Yerushalmi on Exod. 13.17 (compare with p. 547); Tan. B. II, 84; ShR 31.5. On the view that usurers are excluded from the resurrection, see the references given by Luria, note 130 on PRE, *loc. cit.* On the beauty of the Jewish youths, see the references in note 45. In contrast to the view that Ezekiel, on this occasion, showed lack of trust in God's omnipotence, it is maintained in BR 19.11 (this is the source of Zohar III, 200a), that the prophet was the only one of five (the others are: Adam, Cain, Balaam, and Hezekiah; compare footnote 730 on p. 763 as well as p. 1053, note 86) who gave the expected answer to the questions put to them by God. Ezekiel is praised for the strictness with which he observed the law, especially the dietary regulations; comp. Hullin 37b. But the dietary laws given by Ezekiel in his book, which on the surface seem to contradict the laws of the Torah, nearly caused his work to be excluded from the Canon and be "hidden"; Shabbat 13a, and the parallel passages on the margin. The legend that Ezekiel was the teacher of Pythagoras, mentioned for the first time by Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1.15, is probably of Jewish origin, but the story of his martyrdom (a detailed description of this is found in *Visio Pauli* 49) is certainly Christian, it was nevertheless copied by Yahya, *Shalshelet*, 100a, top.

95. PRE 33. Luria, *ad loc.*, understands the Midrash to say that the people wept because not all the dead came



to life again. Comp. also ER 5, 24, and Sanhedrin 92b. This great miracle was wrought by God, that the belief in the resurrection of the dead might become well-established among Israel. It may be stated as a general principle that all the miracles which are to take place in the “time to come” have been performed “in miniature” during the present order of the world. See Tan. B. III, 90–91, and the parallel passages cited by Buber. Comp. also Midrash Shir 43a. Ezekiel is not the only man who made the dead come to life again; in the world to come the righteous will perform the miracle of the resurrection of the dead. See Pesahim 68a; BHM VI, 64. The dead quickened by Ezekiel chanted a song of praise to God as soon as they came to life; Sanhedrin 92b.

## NEBUCHADNEZZAR A BEAST

Nebuchadnezzar, the ruler of the whole world,<sup>96</sup> to whom even the wild animals paid obedience,—his pet was a lion with a snake coiled about its neck<sup>97</sup>—did not escape punishment for his sins. He was chastised as none before him. He whom fear of God had at first held back from a war against Jerusalem, and who had to be dragged forcibly, as he sat on his horse, to the Holy of Holies<sup>98</sup> by the archangel Michael, he later became so arrogant that he thought himself a god,<sup>99</sup> and cherished the plan of enveloping himself in a cloud, so that he might live apart from men.<sup>100</sup> A heavenly voice resounded: “O thou wicked man, son of a wicked man, and descendant of Nimrod the wicked, who incited the world to rebel against God! Behold, the days of the years of a man are threescore years and ten, or perhaps by reason of strength fourscore years. It takes five hundred years to traverse the distance of the earth from the first heaven, and as long a time to penetrate from the bottom to the top of the first heaven, and not less are the distances from one of the seven heavens to the next. How, then, canst thou speak of ascending like unto the Most High ‘above the heights of the clouds?’”<sup>101</sup> For this transgression of deem-

ing himself more than a man, he was punished by being made to live for some time as a beast among beasts, treated by them as though he were one of them.<sup>102</sup> For forty days<sup>103</sup> he led this life. As far down as his navel he had the appearance of an ox, and the lower part of his body resembled that of a lion. Like an ox he ate grass, and like a lion he attacked and killed many wicked men. The wonder attracted a curious crowd, but Daniel spent his time in prayer, entreating that the seven years of this brutish life allotted to Nebuchadnezzar might be reduced to seven months. His prayer was granted. At the end of forty days reason returned to the king, the next forty days he passed in weeping bitterly over his sins, and in the interval that remained to complete the seven months he again lived the life of a beast.<sup>104</sup>

96. Megillah 11a; PRE 11; ‘Aseret Melakim 39; Maamar ‘Aseret Melakim 54; Aggadat Esther 8; ‘Aktan 12; 2 Targum Esther 1.1 (beginning and end); compare footnote 82 on p. 161, and Index, s. v. “Cosmocrator”. Though he was the ruler of the entire world, Nebuchadnezzar did not enjoy his life for a moment; a glance at his dwarfish figure (on this point, see BR 16.4; ER 31, 158; PK 13, 112a, below; PR 31, 144a) sufficed to mar his pleasure in life. See Tan. B. II, 90; Tan. Terumah 4.

97. Shabbat 150a (top; perhaps it means with a snake coiled about *his neck*); PRE 11 (which reads: Not a bird opened its beak without the permission of Nebuchadnezzar); Midrash ‘Aseret Melakim 42–43. Comp. also Judith 11.7.

98. Tan. B. I, 185. As to Nebuchadnezzar’s reluctance to undertake the campaign against Jerusalem, see text on p. 1074.

99. Nebuchadnezzar’s claim to be a god and his ignominious end are often referred to in the Haggadah. Comp. the references given in the following three notes and Judith 11.2. The deification of the Roman Caesars was well known to the Jews, and occupied their imagination to a great extent.

100. Mekilta Shirah 2, 36a; 6, 39b; 8, 41b; Mekilta RS 58 and 66; Tosefta Sotah 3.10. Comp. also Koheleth 5.2 and Hullin 89a. In the last passage Nimrod (text on p. 161), Pharaoh (text on p. 526), Sennacherib, Hiram (text on p. 1104), and Nebuchadnezzar are contrasted with



the great men in Israel who were modest and humble, whereas the heathen rulers claimed to be gods. Mekilta, 41b, and Mekilta RS, 66, do not count Nimrod among those that claimed divinity. See Tan. B. II, 23 and 31; ShR 8.2; Tan. Wa-Era 9; Tan. in Makiri on Ps. 9, 59 (not in our Tanhumas). These sources speak of Pharaoh, Hiram, Nebuchadnezzar, and Joash (compare with p. 1038) as the four kings who pretended to be gods and ended ignominiously by being abused in "modo foeminarum". Compare footnote 16 on p. 1038. See also BR 11.5, which reads: Adam and his descendants would have enjoyed eternal life, were it not for the fact that God foresaw that Hiram and Nebuchadnezzar would claim to be gods; Hallel 94a–94b (partly based on Baba Batra 75a); BaR 9.24. Comp. further notes 102, 105, and 107.

101. Pesahim 94a–94b; Hagigah 13a. On the distance between the heaven and the earth, see text on p. 6.

102. Tan. B. II, 23 (while in the state of a beast he was misused by the other beasts, and this was his punishment for considering himself more than human; according to *ibid.*, 33, this was his punishment for his attempted abuse of Zedekiah; comp. notes 100 and 107); Tan. Wa-Era 9; ShR 8.2; Tan. in Makiri on Ps. 9, 59. Comp. also Mekilta Shirah 6, 39b, which is to be explained in accordance with Tan. B. II, 33.

103. Yerahmeel 66, 205–206. The old authorities speak of seven years (= שבעה עדין in Dan. 4. 22) which he lived as a beast; comp., e. g., Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 10.6; WR 182. Comp. the following note.

104. Yerahmeel 46, 205–206, which in the main agrees with Chronicon Paschale 1, 299. It is very likely that these authors like many others (comp. Gaster, *ad loc.*) had before them an apocryphal (of Jewish origin?) history of Daniel. Compare footnote 18 on p. 1115. With the exception of Yerahmeel, the rabbinic literature knows nothing of this legend. In reference to the advice given by Daniel to Nebuchadnezzar (Dan. 4.22), the Rabbis remark that the king heeded it for one year. As long as he was charitable and kind to the poor, the heavenly decree against him was not carried out. His doom overtook him only after he had ceased to give alms. See Aggadat Shir 1, 25 and 64. Opinions differ as to whether Daniel acted rightly in attempting to prevent the punishment of the wicked king. According to the Midrash just quoted, he did it in the interest of the needy exiles, whose suffering he hoped to ameliorate thereby, and hence no blame is attached to him. Others, however, maintain that Daniel committed a sin in attempting to save Nebuchadnezzar, and he was punished for it as, shortly after, he lost the high position he had held at court. Some authorities even assert that in consequence of this sin he was thrown into the den of the lions. See Baba Batra 4a; ShR 30.24; Shir 3.4 (end); Tan. Mishpatim 4 (this is the source for the quotation from Midrash Haggadol given by

Schechter, Aggadat Shir, 69); Zohar I, 13b. In the last-named source the following statement is quoted from the "Book of King Solomon". As long as one shows compassion to the poor, his face retains "Adam's features", with the result that animals fear him (compare footnote 113 on p. 91). Hence as long as Nebuchadnezzar was kind to the poor, he retained his human form; but when he ceased to give alms (comp. above), he became a beast. Nebuchadnezzar's guardian angel (his name was Kal; comp. the Babylonian locality called Kalnebo, Sannhedrin 63b) was first "thrown down", before the doom overtook the king. See ShR 21.5; compare also with p. 557. According to Esther R. I. 8, Nebuchadnezzar did not change bodily, but only mentally, so that when the two highest officers of the state (= Cyrus and Darius; comp. Shir 3.4) saw him act as an animal, they drove him from the palace, after having taken off all his garments, so that he almost remained naked. As to the sins committed by Nebuchadnezzar, which were the cause of his severe punishment, see ER 15, 74, and Index, s. v. "Sins, Eight Cardinal". As late as the second century C. E. the house of Nebuchadnezzar, the den of the lions into which Daniel was thrown, and the furnace where the great miracle was wrought for his three companions were pointed out by the Jews of Babylon. See Berakot 57b and compare footnote 54 on p. 1126.

## HIRAM

Hiram II, the king of Tyre, was a contemporary of Nebuchadnezzar, and in many respects resembled him. He, too, esteemed himself a god, and sought to make men believe in his divinity by the artificial heavens he fashioned for himself. In the sea he erected four iron pillars, on which he built up seven heavens, each five hundred ells larger than the one below. The first was a plate of glass of five hundred square ells, and the second a plate of iron of a thousand square ells. The third, of lead, and separated from the second by canals, contained huge round boulders, which produced the sound of thunder on the iron. The fourth heaven was of brass, the fifth of copper, the sixth of silver, and the seventh of gold, all separated from each other by canals. In the seventh, thirty-five hundred ells in



extent, he had diamonds and pearls, which he manipulated so as to produce the effect of flashes and sheets of lightning, while the stones below imitated the growling of the thunder.

As Hiram was thus floating above the earth, in his vain imagination deeming himself superior to the rest of men, he suddenly perceived the prophet Ezekiel next to himself. He had been waved thither by a wind. Frightened and amazed, Hiram asked the prophet how he had risen to his heights. The answer was: "God brought me here, and He bade me ask thee why thou art so proud, thou born of woman?" The king of Tyre replied defiantly: "I am not one born of woman; I live forever, and as God resides on the sea, so my abode is on the sea, and as He inhabits seven heavens, so do I. See how many kings I have survived! Twenty-one of the House of David, and as many of the Kingdom of the Ten Tribes, and no less than fifty prophets and ten high priests have I buried." Thereupon God said: "I will destroy My house, that henceforth Hiram may have no reason for self-glorification, because all his pride comes only from the circumstance that he furnished the cedar-trees for the building of the Temple." The end of this proud king was that he was conquered by Nebuchadnezzar, deprived of his throne, and made to suffer a cruel death. Though the Babylonian king was the step-son of Hiram, he had no mercy with him. Daily he cut off a bit of the flesh of his body, and forced the Tyrian king to eat it, until he finally perished. Hiram's palace was swallowed up by the earth, and in the bowels of the earth it will remain until it shall emerge in the future world as the habitation of the pious.<sup>105</sup>

105. Midrash in Yalkut II, 367, on Ezek. 28 (read: **בדיל** "lead" for **ברזל** "iron" in the description of the third heaven). For other descriptions of the "heavens" fashioned by Hiram, see MHG II, 57–58 (the beginning, "four kings

claimed to be gods, etc."), agrees literally with Tan. as quoted in Makiri on Ps. 9, 59; see the quotation in note 100; accordingly Tan. is the source of MHG); *Bet 'Eked*, II, 20–21 and 28–31; Ma'asiyyot (Gaster's edition, 6–7); BHM V, 111–112 (comp. Jellinek, introduction, 33); Tan. Bereshit 7 (which reads: Hiram erected his palace by means of machines "between the Ocean—Atlantic—and the Adriatic"). Compare also pp. 161–162 and footnote 36 on p. 955. As to the seven kinds of metal out of which Hiram fashioned the seven heavens, see Enoch 52.2; Origen, *Con. Cel.* 6.22. Comp. further Jeremias, *Babylonisches im neuem Testamente*, 24, seq. Tan., *loc. cit.*, as well as *Bet 'Eked*, II, 19, points out that the four kings who claimed to be gods (Pharaoh, Sennacherib, Nebuchadnezzar, and Hiram; comp. note 100) built their palaces "over the water". Herodotus, I, 181, mentions a famous building at Babylon which had eight towers, and it is quite possible that the legend about Hiram's palace contains some reminiscence thereof. As to Hiram's claim to divinity, see Mekilta Shirah 8, 48b = Mekilta RS, 66 (the Mekiltas are the oldest sources which identify the "prince of Tyre" mentioned in Ezek. 28.1 with Hiram); 9.5 and 96.5; Baba Batra 75a; Hullin 89a; Tan. B. I, 213, and II, 23–25, 30; Tan. Wa-Era 9; ShR 8.2; Hallel 91. Comp. further the references in note 100. The Haggadah maintains that this Hiram is identical with Hiram the friend of Judah (Gen. 38.11), who continued to be a friend of the latter's descendants, and assisted Solomon in the building of the Temple. He received his reward for this by being granted a very long life, surviving all the kings of the house of David and those of the ten tribes. See BR 84.8; Tan. B. I, 184. The Church Fathers are likewise acquainted with this Haggadah; comp. Aphraates, 84–85; Ephraem, II, 189F; Jerome on Ezek. 28.11; Book of Adam 125–126. See Ginzberg, *Haggada bei den Kirchenv.*, II, 126–128. For the Arabic version of the Hiram legend, see Steinschneider, *Arabische Literatur der Juden*, 12. According to 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira, 28b, 29a, 37a, Hiram, as a reward for his assisting Solomon to build the Temple, entered paradise alive, and remained there for a thousand years. But when he became proud and claimed to be a god, he was driven out of paradise and made to enter hell. In many sources where the men who entered paradise alive are enumerated (comp. Derek Erez Z. 1, end, and Index, s. v. "Paradise, Entered Alive"), Hiram king of Tyre is given as one of them. In footnote 62 on p. 966 it is suggested to accept the emendation **חירם מצור** "Hiram of Tyre" (the architect of Solomon's Temple) instead of **חירם מלך צור**; but in view of 2 Alphabet of Ben Sira, this emendation is not tenable. For several etymologies of the name Hiram (also spelt **חורם**), see *Rimze Haftarot*, Terumah. That Hiram was Nebuchadnezzar's step father is found only in WR 18.2 (but not in the parallel passage in Tan. B. III, 38), and one is tempted to emend the text and read, in accordance with



Yalkut, *loc. cit.*, נבוכדנצר בעל אמו instead of נבוכדנצר של בעל אמו. But the context clearly shows that the Midrash lays emphasis on the fact that Hiram was killed by Nebuchadnezzar who was closely related to him. An obscure statement is the one of Yelammedenu in *'Aruk*, s. v. מל 6, that Jeremiah's prophecy against "all that have the corners of their hair polled" (Jer. 9.25) is directed against Hiram. See also Bernstein, *König Nebucadnezar* 24, *seq.*

## THE FALSE PROPHETS

Not only among the heathen, but also among the Jews there were very sinful people in those days. The most notorious Jewish sinners were the two false prophets Ahab and Zedekiah. Ahab came to the daughter of Nebuchadnezzar and said: "Yield thyself to Zedekiah," telling her this in the form of a Divine message. The same was done by Zedekiah, who only varied the message by substituting the name of Ahab. The princess could not accept such messages as Divine, and she told her father what had occurred.<sup>106</sup> Though Nebuchadnezzar was so addicted to immoral practices that he was in the habit of making his captive kings drunk, and then satisfying his unnatural lusts upon them, and a miracle had to interpose to shield the pious king of Judah against this disgrace,<sup>107</sup> yet he well knew that the God of the Jews hates immorality. He therefore questioned Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah about it, and they emphatically denied the possibility that such a message could have come from God. The prophets of lies refused to recall their statements, and Nebuchadnezzar decided to subject them to the same fiery test as he had decreed for the three pious companions of Daniel. To be fair toward them, the king permitted them to choose a third fellow-sufferer, some pious man to share their lot. Seeing no escape, Ahab and Zedekiah asked for Joshua, later the high priest, as their companion

in the furnace, in the hope that his distinguished merits would suffice to save all three of them. They were mistaken. Joshua emerged unhurt, only his garments were seared, but the false prophets were consumed. Joshua explained the singeing of his garments by the fact that he was directly exposed to the full fury of the flames. But the truth was that he had to expiate the sins of his sons, who had contracted marriages unworthy of their dignity and descent. Therefore their father escaped death only after the fire had burnt his garments.<sup>108</sup>

106. Sanhedrin 93a; Tan. B. III, 7 (here it is stated that it was Semiramis, Nebuchadnezzar's wife, and not his daughter, whom the false prophets tempted to sin); Tan. Wa-Yikra 6; Midrash Aggadah, Lev. 51 (very elaborate); PRE 33; PK 24, 164–165; Mekilta RS, III (comp. also *ibid.* 86, with regard to the orthography אהב = אחאב); Makiri, Prov. 19, 5a–6b; We-Hizhir I, 97; Ma'asiyyot (Gaster's edition 20–21). On the relation of this legend to the story of Susanna, comp. note 79. The Church Fathers Origen (*Epistola ad Africanum*) and Jerome on Jer. 29 give this legend as they heard it from their Jewish teachers. According to their version, the false prophets used to assure the women that they were destined to become the mothers of the Messiah if they yielded to their wishes. This is hardly connected with the legend that the Messiah would be born and brought up in Rome (= Babylonia). Comp. Sanhedrin 98a (the correct reading is אפיתחא דרומא; comp. Rabinowicz, *ad loc.*) and Tan. Tazri'a 8. In some editions of Tan. this passage is missing undoubtedly on account of the objections raised by the censors. Comp. Buber, note 65 on Tan. B. III, 38.

107. Shabbat 149b. Comp. also Tan. B. II, 33, where בוקלון מבזה אותו means sodomy, as is often the case in the midrashic-talmudic literature, and hence the corresponding punishment of Nebuchadnezzar. See notes 100 and 102. The statement in Tan. dispels all doubt about the meaning of אותו צדיק in Shabbat, *loc. cit.* It refers to Zedekiah, and not to Jehoiachin. As to Zedekiah being described as "that righteousman", see notes 8, 119.

108. Sanhedrin 93a; PK 25, 165a; Tan. B. III, 7; Tan. Wa-Yera 6; PRE 33 (which reads: The angel Michael saved Joshua = Jehoshua from death by fire; the garments of the latter were seared because he was very near the false prophets); Mekilta RS, 111; Midrash Aggadah on Lev. 5.1. According to Justin Martyr, *Dialogue*, 116, Joshua himself



had contracted a marriage unworthy of him. The same author remarks that Joshua was called by the prophet “a brand plucked out of the fire” (Zech. 3.2) διὰ τὸ ἄφεσιν ἁμαρτιῶν εἰληφέναι, which shows that he was not acquainted with, or did not accept, the rabbinic tradition that the high priest was thrown into the fiery furnace by Nebuchadnezzar. Another legend (comp. Yerushalmi, Ta’anit 4, 69b) has it that at the time of the destruction of the Temple eighty thousand young priests (compare also to p. 1086) were burned at the stake, Joshua being the only young priest who escaped this frightful death. Hence the designation applied to him by Zechariah. As to Jehoshua’s friends mentioned in Zech. 3.8, see Horayot 13a, where they are said to have been prophets (= Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah; see Sanhedrin, *loc. cit.*; BR 56, end; note 76); 2 ARN 28. The Church Fathers (comp., e. g., Tertulian, *Adversus Judaeos*, 14; *Lactantius*, IV, 14) explain the story of Joshua allegorically as referring to Jesus (= Joshua). This is perhaps the reason why the Haggadah finds fault with Joshua, for the Rabbis desired to combat the Christian allegory.

## DANIEL’S PIETY

No greater contrast to Hiram and the false prophets Ahab and Zedekiah can be imagined than is presented by the character of the pious Daniel. When Nebuchadnezzar offered him Divine honors,<sup>109</sup> he refused what Hiram sought to obtain by every means in his power. The Babylonian king felt so ardent an admiration for Daniel that he sent him from the country when the time arrived to worship the idol he had erected in Dura, for he knew very well that Daniel would prefer death in the flames to disregard of the commands of God, and he could not well have cast the man into the fire to whom he had paid Divine homage. Moreover, it was the wish of God that Daniel should not pass through the fiery ordeal at the same time as his three friends, in order that their deliverance might not be ascribed to him.<sup>110</sup>

In spite of all this, Nebuchadnezzar endeavored to persuade Daniel by gentle means to

worship an idol. He had the golden diadem of the high priest inserted in the mouth of an idol, and by reason of the wondrous power that resides in the Holy Name inscribed on the diadem, the idol gained the ability to speak, and it said the words: “I am thy God.” Thus were many seduced to worship the image. But Daniel could not be misled so easily. He secured permission from the king to kiss the idol. Laying his mouth upon the idol’s, he adjured the diadem in the following words: “I am but flesh and blood, yet at the same time a messenger of God. I therefore admonish thee, take heed that the Name of the Holy One, blessed be He, may not be desecrated, and I order thee to follow me.” So it happened. When the heathen came with music and song to give honor to the idol, it emitted no sound, but a storm broke loose and overturned it.<sup>111</sup>

On still another occasion Nebuchadnezzar tried to persuade Daniel to worship an idol, this time a dragon that devoured all who approached it, and therefore was adored as a god by the Babylonians. Daniel had straw mixed with nails fed to him, and the dragon ate and perished almost immediately.<sup>112</sup>

All this did not prevent Daniel from keeping the welfare of the king in mind continually. Hence it was that when Nebuchadnezzar was engaged in setting his house in order, he desired to mention Daniel in his will as one of his heirs. But the Jew refused with the words: “Far be it from me to leave the inheritance of my fathers for that of the uncircumcised.”<sup>113</sup>

Nebuchadnezzar died after having reigned forty years, as long as King David.<sup>114</sup> The death of the tyrant brought hope and joy to many a heart, for his severity had been such that during his lifetime none dared laugh, and when he descended to Sheol, its inhabitants trembled, fearing he had come to reign over them, too. However, a heavenly voice called to



him: "Go down, and be thou laid down with the uncircumcised."<sup>115</sup>

The interment of this great king was anything but what one might have expected, and for this reason: During the seven years spent by Nebuchadnezzar among the beasts, his son Evil-merodach ruled in his stead. Nebuchadnezzar reappeared after his period of penance, and incarcerated his son for life. When the death of Nebuchadnezzar actually did occur, Evil-merodach refused to accept the homage the nobles brought him as the new king, because he feared that his father was not dead, but had only disappeared as once before, and would return again. To convince him of the groundlessness of his apprehension, the corpse of Nebuchadnezzar, badly mutilated by his enemies, was dragged through the streets.<sup>116</sup>

Shortly afterward occurred the death of Zedekiah, the dethroned king of Judah. His burial took place amid great demonstrations of sympathy and mourning. The elegy over him ran thus: "Alas that King Zedekiah had to die, he who quaffed the lees which all the generations before him had accumulated."<sup>117</sup>

Zedekiah reached a good old age,<sup>118</sup> for though it was in his reign that the destruction of Jerusalem took place, yet it was the guilt of the nation, not of the king, that had brought about the catastrophe.<sup>119</sup>

109. BR 96.6; Tan. B. I, 213. Comp. note 81.

110. Sanhedrin 93a. On Daniel's leaving Babylon, see vol. IV, p. 328.

111. Shir 7.9; Zohar II, 175a. Compare also to p. 1029.

112. BR 67. This is closely related to, but not directly dependent on, the apocryphal story of Bel and the Dragon, placed in the Septuagint and Theodotion among the additions to the book of Daniel. This apocryphal work consists of two separate stories. In the first, Daniel by a clever device exposed the trickery of the priests of Bel, who made it appear that the idol consumed the food and drink set before it. In the second, Daniel slays the dragon god, by putting into its mouth cakes made of pitch, fat, and hair,

after eating which it burst asunder. Directly based on the Greek Apocrypha is the story of the dragon as given in Yerahmeel (comp. Gaster, *The Unknown Aramaic Original of Theodotion's Additions*, 75–94), in Bereshit Rabba di-Rabba (comp. Neubauer, *Book of Tobit*, 39–43, and Epstein in *Magazin*, XV, 78–79), and in Shalsholet, 99b. Compare also to p. 1113.

113. Yerahmeel 66, 206, and the medieval Christian chronicles. Comp. Gaster, *ad loc.*, and note 104.

114. Seder 'Olam 28 (comp. Ratner, *ad loc.*); PK 27, 168b; WR 20.1; Tan. B. III, 54, and V, 8; Tan. Ahare 1; Megillah 11a (it is said here that he reigned forty-five years); Koheleth 9.2; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 11.1. Compare also to pp. 1111–1112.

115. Shabbat 149a.

116. Tan. B. III, 38; Tan. Tazri'a 8; WR 18.2; *Bet 'Eked* II, 20. According to the version of this legend in 2 Targum Esther 1.1 (beginning) and Jerome on Is. 14.19 (he describes it as a "fable told by the Hebrews"), it was not Evil-merodach who feared to ascend the throne of his father, but the magnates of the state, fearing the reappearance of Nebuchadnezzar, would not let him do it. Yerahmeel 66, 206–207, seems to have been acquainted with the version of the legend as given by Jerome, and hence he states that Evil-merodach was imprisoned together with Jehoiachin. The rabbinical sources do not know of this incident, but it is given by Jerome. The second statement of Yerahmeel, that it was Jehoiachin who advised Evil-merodach to take out his father's corpse from the grave, is not found elsewhere, either in Jewish or in Christian sources. Kimhi on 2 Kings 25.27 quotes the reading of the Midrash (WR *loc. cit.*, is very likely meant), according to which, during the time that Nebuchadnezzar lived among the beasts one of his sons ruled in his stead. This son was killed by his father when he returned. It was the fear of being overtaken by a similar fate that made Evil-merodach cautious before he ascended the throne of the kingdom. An entirely different reason for taking out Nebuchadnezzar's corpse from the grave is given in 2 ARN 17, 37. According to this source, after the death of Nebuchadnezzar, his son Evil-merodach wished to set Jehoiachin free, as he was not a rebel and was kept in prison without any valid reason (comp. the similar statement by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 11.2), but the magnates of the state objected to it, saying to him: "A king cannot revoke the edicts of his dead predecessor, unless he drags the corpse of the dead king out of the grave". Evil-merodach did not refrain from acting in conformity with their words in order to be able to set king Jehoiachin free. There can be no doubt that 2 ARN is based on a fuller text of Seder 'Olam 28, where the words as they stand at present (גוררו בשביל לבטל גזרותיו) are hardly intelligible. Compare also footnote 134 on p. 1061, and Bernstein, *König Nebucadnezar*, 64–69.



117. Seder 'Olam 18; Mo'ed Katan 28b. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 8.7, Zedekiah died during Nebuchadnezzar's life-time, who buried him with great honors. There is also a Haggadah maintaining that Zedekiah was killed by Nebuchadnezzar. Comp. PRE 53, according to the reading in Batte Midrashot, III, 32. See further the quotation from an unknown Midrash in Hasidim 107 concerning the eight kings, descendants of David, who died by the sword. In footnote 107 on p. 932 an attempt was made to explain this passage by assuming that Athaliah is one of the **שמונה מלכים**; but this is hardly acceptable, as the text speaks of kings who were descended from David, whereas Athaliah was not of Jewish descent at all. It is therefore more likely that this Midrash is likewise of the opinion that Zedekiah was killed by Nebuchadnezzar. Comp. also note 8.

118. 2 ARN 43, 122.

119. 'Arakin 17a; Sanhedrin 103a. Comp. also Shabbat 149a, where Zedekiah is described as **אורנו צדיק**, "that

righteous man" (on this passage see note 107); see also Mo'ed Katan 17b; Tehillim 7, 72. Against this favorable view of Zedekiah, see 2 ARN 43, 122. The kindness shown by Evil-merodach to Jehoiachin (comp. 2 Kings, end) is declared by the Haggadah to have been due to the intercession of Daniel in behalf of the imprisoned Jewish king. Daniel admonished the Babylonian king to be mindful of the punishment which overtook his father Nebuchadnezzar for the cruel treatment he meted out to captive kings, whom he imprisoned for life. Evil-merodach heeded Daniel's counsel, and released not only Jehoiachin but also all the other kings who had been imprisoned by his father. See Targum Esther 1.1. Comp. also 2 ARN 17, 37. As to Nebuchadnezzar's cruelty, who never released a prisoner, see also WR 18.2; Tan. B. III, 38; Tan. Tazri'a 8. As long as Nebuchadnezzar lived, no mouth smiled, so that at his death the entire world burst forth in jubilation. See Shabbat 149b. Comp. note 96.







## XXII

### THE RETURN OF THE CAPTIVITY

#### BELSHAZZAR'S FEAST

When God resolved to take revenge upon Babylon for all the sufferings it had inflicted on Israel, He chose Darius and Cyrus as the agents of vengeance. Cyrus, the king of Persia, and his father-in-law Darius, the king of Media, together went up against Belshazzar, the ruler of the Chaldeans. The war lasted a considerable time, and fortune favored first one side, then the other, until finally the Chaldeans won a decisive victory. To celebrate the event, Belshazzar arranged a great banquet, which was served from the vessels taken out of the Temple at Jerusalem by his father. While the king and his guests were feasting, the angel sent by God put the "Mene, Mene, Tekel, Upharsin" on the wall, Aramaic words in Hebrew characters,<sup>1</sup> written with red ink. The angel was seen by none but the king. His grandees and the princes of the realm who were present at the orgy perceived nothing. The king himself did not see the form of the angel, only his awesome fingers as they traced the words were visible to him.

The interpretation given to the enigmatical words by Daniel put an end to the merry-making of the feasters. They scattered in dread and fear, leaving none behind except the king and

his attendants. In the same night the king was murdered by an old servant, who knew Daniel from the time of Nebuchadnezzar, and doubted not that his sinister prophecy would be fulfilled. With the head of King Belshazzar he betook himself to Darius and Cyrus, and told them how his master had desecrated the sacred vessels, told them of the wonderful writing on the wall, and of the way it had been interpreted by Daniel. The two kings were moved by his recital to vow solemnly that they would permit the Jews to return to Palestine, and would grant them the use of the Temple vessels.

They resumed the war against Babylonia with more energy, and God vouchsafed them victory. They conquered the whole of Belshazzar's realm, and took possession of the city of Babylon, whose inhabitants, young and old, were made to suffer death. The subjugated lands were divided between Cyrus and Darius, the latter receiving Babylon and Media, the former Chaldea, Persia, and Assyria.<sup>2</sup>

But this is not the whole story of the fall of Babylon. The wicked king Belshazzar arranged the banquet at which the holy vessels were desecrated in the fifth year of his reign, because he thought it wholly certain then that all danger was past of the realization of Jeremiah's prophecy,



foretelling the return of the Jews to Palestine at the end of seventy years of Babylonian rule over them. Nebuchadnezzar had governed twenty-five years, and Evil-merodach twenty-three, leaving five years in the reign of Belshazzar for the fulfilment of the appointed time.<sup>3</sup> Not enough that the king scoffed at God by using the Temple vessels, he needs must have the pastry for the banquet, which was given on the second day of the Passover festival, made of wheaten flour finer than that used on this day for the 'Omer in the Temple.

Punishment followed hard upon the heels of the atrocity. Cyrus and Darius served as door-keepers of the royal palace on the evening of the banquet. They had received orders from Belshazzar to admit none, though he should say he was the king himself. Belshazzar was forced to leave his apartments for a short time, and he went out unnoticed by the two door-keepers. On his return, when he asked to be admitted, they felled him dead, even while he was asseverating that he was the king.<sup>4</sup>

1. Sanhedrin 22a and Shir 3.4. These sources give different views as to the way the ominous words were written.

2. Josippon 6c–7b; it was borrowed and elaborated by Yerahmeel 67, 207–212. The old rabbinic sources did not know of a war of the Chaldeans against the Medo-Persian empire. Josippon is very likely indirectly dependent upon Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 11.2. The statement of Koheleth 4.8 that Belshazzar was born on the day upon which Gabina (גבינא) the son of Harsum died is very obscure. That Harsum (חרסום) is identical with Croesus is very unlikely, though Gabina and his father are described as having been exceedingly rich. Comp. Perles, *Beiträge*, 18, and the literature on חרסום by Krauss, *Lehnwörter*, s. v. The rabbinic sources consider Nebuchadnezzar as the father of Evil-merodach, and the latter as the father of Belshazzar. See Seder 'Olam 28; BR 44. 15; PK 2, 14a; Shir 3.4; Esther R. 1.8. Compare also the references in footnote 116 on p. 1108. Merodach the father of Nebuchadnezzar (Jerome on Is. 39.1 quotes this as a Jewish tradition; although this view is not explicitly stated in any part of rabbinic literature, it is presupposed in the last three Midrashim just

cited; compare also p. 1050, bottom) was a king, but his three descendants were “cosmocrators”. Tan. Ki-Tissa 5; PK, Shir, Esther R., *loc. cit.* The list of Babylonian kings in Midrash 'Aseret Melakim, 43, is confused, and this is partly due to the corrupt state of the text. Yerahmeel, 67, 6, gives the names of Evil-merodach's three sons as Regosar (ריגוסר), Lebuzar Duk (דוך לבוזר), and Nabar (נבאר), who was Belshazzar. The names are taken from Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 11. 2, but badly mutilated. According to this historian the name of Evil-merodach's son was Niglissar, who was the father of Labosordacus, who in turn was the father of Nabonidus = Belshazzar.

3. Megillah 11b, where the error of Belshazzar's calculations is demonstrated. In the text p. 344 line 6 from below, read forty-three instead of twenty-five, and in the following line, four instead of five. Compare pp. 1105 and 1106, footnote 19, and footnote 24 on p. 1073.

4. Shir 3.4. Here it is also stated that Belshazzar did not die of his wounds immediately, but was in death agony for a night (according to some authorities, for a night and a day). On the desecration of the holy vessels by Belshazzar, see Nedarim 62a; 'Abodah Zarah 52b. The queen, at whose advice Daniel was called in to read the mysterious writing on the wall, was Belshazzar's mother, according to Ma'aseh Daniel, 120; but according to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 11.2, his grandmother. The “fall of Babel” was the work of the angels Michael and Gabriel; BR 63 (end); Tosefta-Targum Is. 21.5. The peculiar way in which Belshazzar met his death proved to him that the precautions taken by him to protect his life were not only in vain but the direct cause of his death; Shir, *loc. cit.* Comp. also Tehillim 75, 338, which contains a reminiscence of the wars preceding the death of Belshazzar; see note 2. According to Panim Aherim, 60, Belshazzar was killed by a candelabrum falling on his head; but according to another reading (comp. Buber, *ad loc.*), the rebels, under the command of Cyrus and Darius, crushed his skull with a candelabrum. This is based on the haggadic interpretation of צפית (Is. 21.5), which is supposed to mean “candelabrum”; comp. Tosefta-Targum, *ad loc.*, and the passages of BR and Shir referred to above. When a successor to Belshazzar had to be elected, the two candidates were Darius and Cyrus, the leaders of the revolt. The former insisted that Cyrus ought to be made king because Daniel, on the authority of Isaiah (comp. Is. 45), used to salute him as the future king while still in the service (אפיקון = *officium*) of Nebuchadnezzar. Cyrus, however, declined the honor, pointing to the writing on the wall, which, according to the interpretation of Daniel, read: Thy kingdom is . . . given to the Medes and Persians; hence Darius the “Mede” (on his paternal side; his mother was a Persian woman) was to be the immediate successor of Nebuchadnezzar. See Panim Aherim and Shir, *loc. cit.* On the night when Belshazzar was to be killed all



Israel came to Daniel and said to him: "All the sufferings predicted by Jeremiah for Israel were fulfilled; but the one prophecy of good tidings, that at the end of seventy years Babylon would be destroyed, has not been fulfilled as yet." Daniel consoled them, assuring them that it entirely depended upon them whether the "kingdoms" should have dominion over them or not; if they obeyed God, no foreign monster would rule over them; Shir, *loc. cit.* Comp. also WR 13.5; ARN 34, 100; Tehillim 70, 363. In the text, see also pp. 1112–1113, wheaten is a printer's error for barley.

## DANIEL UNDER THE PERSIAN KINGS

Daniel left Belshazzar and fled to Shushtar, where he was kindly received by Cyrus, who promised him to have the Temple vessels taken back to Jerusalem, provided Daniel would pray to God to grant him success in his war with the king of Mosul. God gave Daniel's prayer a favorable hearing, and Cyrus was true to his promise.

Daniel now received the Divine charge to urge Cyrus to rebuild the Temple. To this end he was to introduce Ezra and Zerubbabel to the king. Ezra then went from place to place and called upon the people to return to Palestine. Sad to say, only a tribe and a half obeyed his summons. Indeed, the majority of the people were so wroth against Ezra that they sought to slay him. He escaped the peril to his life only by a Divine miracle.<sup>5</sup>

Daniel, too, was exposed to much suffering at this time. King Cyrus cast him into a den of lions, because he refused to bow down before the idol of the king. For seven days Daniel lay among the wild beasts, and not a hair of his head was touched. When the king at the end of the week found Daniel alive, he could not but acknowledge the sovereign grandeur of God. Cyrus released Daniel, and instead had his calumniators thrown to the lions. In an instant they were rent in pieces.<sup>6</sup>

In general Cyrus fell far short of coming up to the expectations set in him for piety and justice. Though he granted permission to the Jews to rebuild the Temple, they were to use no material but wood, so that it might easily be destroyed if the Jews should take it into their heads to rebel against him. Even in point of morals, the Persian king was not above reproach.<sup>7</sup>

Another time Cyrus pressingly urged Daniel to pay homage to the idol Bel. As proof of the divinity of the idol the king advanced the fact that it ate the dishes set before it, a report spread by the priests of Bel, who entered the Temple of the idol at night, through subterranean passages, themselves ate up the dishes, and then attributed their disappearance to the appetite of the god. But Daniel was too shrewd to be misled by a fabricated story. He had ashes strewn upon the floor of the Temple, and the foot-prints visible the next morning convinced the king of the deceit practiced by the priests.<sup>8</sup>

Pleasant relations did not continue to subsist forever between Cyrus and Darius. A war broke out between them, in which Cyrus lost life and lands. Fearing Darius, Daniel fled to Persia. But an angel of God appeared to him with the message: "Fear not the king, not unto him will I surrender thee." Shortly afterward he received a letter from Darius reading as follows: "Come to me, Daniel! Fear naught, I shall be even kinder to thee than Cyrus was." Accordingly Daniel returned to Shushtar, and was received with great consideration by Darius.

One day the king chanced to remember the sacred garments brought by Nebuchadnezzar out of the Temple at Jerusalem to Babylon. They had vanished, and no trace of them could be discovered. The king suspected Daniel of having had something to do with their disappearance. It bootied little that he protested his innocence, he was cast into prison. God sent an angel who was to blind Darius, telling him at the same time



that he was deprived of the light of his eyes because he was keeping the pious Daniel in darkness, and sight would be restored to him only if Daniel interceded for him. The king at once released Daniel, and the two together journeyed to Jerusalem to pray on the holy place for the restoration of the king. An angel appeared to Daniel, and announced to him that his prayer had been heard. The king had but to wash his eyes, and vision would return to them. So it happened. Darius gave thanks to God, and in his gratitude assigned the tithe of his grain to the priests and the Levites. Besides, he testified his appreciation to Daniel by loading him down with gifts, and both returned to Shushtar. The recovery of the king convinced many of his subjects of the omnipotence of God, and they converted to Judaism.<sup>9</sup>

Following the advice of Daniel, Darius<sup>10</sup> appointed a triumvirate to take charge of the administration of his realm, and Daniel was made the chief of the council of three. His high dignity—he was second to none but the king himself—exposed him to envy and hostility on all sides. His enemies plotted his ruin. With cunning they induced the king to sign an order attaching the penalty of death to prayers addressed to any god or any man other than Darius.<sup>11</sup> Though the order did not require Daniel to commit a sin, he preferred to give his life for the honor of the one God rather than omit his devotions to Him. When his jealous enemies surprised him during his prayers, he did not interrupt himself. He was dragged before the king, who refused to give credence to the charge against Daniel. Meanwhile the hour for the afternoon prayer arrived, and in the presence of the king and his princes Daniel began to perform his devotions. This naturally rendered unavailing all efforts made by the king to save his friend from death. Daniel was cast into a pit full of lions. The entrance to the pit was closed up

with a rock, which had all of its own accord rolled from Palestine to protect him against any harm contemplated by his enemies.<sup>12</sup> The ferocious beasts welcomed the pious Daniel like dogs fawning upon their master on his return home, licking his hands and wagging their tails.

While this was passing in Babylon, an angel appeared to the prophet Habakkuk in Judea. He ordered the prophet to bring Daniel the food he was about to carry to his laborers in the field. Astonished, Habakkuk asked the angel how he could carry it to so great a distance, whereupon he was seized by his hair, and in a moment set down before Daniel. They dined together, and then the angel transported Habakkuk back to his place in Palestine. Early in the morning Darius<sup>13</sup> went to the pit of the lions to discover the fate of Daniel. The king called his name, but he received no answer, because Daniel was reciting the Shema' at that moment,<sup>14</sup> after having spent the night in giving praise and adoration to God.<sup>15</sup> Seeing that he was still alive, the king summoned the enemies of Daniel to the pit. It was their opinion that the lions had not been hungry, and therefore Daniel was still unhurt. The king commanded them to put the beasts to the test with their own persons. The result was that the hundred and twenty-two enemies of Daniel, together with their wives and children numbering two hundred and forty-four persons, were torn in shreds by fourteen hundred and sixty-four lions.<sup>16</sup>

The miraculous escape of Daniel brought him more distinguished consideration and greater honors than before. The king published the wonders done by God in all parts of his land, and called upon the people to betake themselves to Jerusalem and help in the erection of the Temple.

Daniel entreated the king to relieve him of the duties of his position, for the performance of which he no longer felt himself fit, on ac-



count of his advanced age. The king consented on condition that Daniel designate a successor worthy of him. His choice fell upon Zerubbabel. Loaded with rich presents and amid public demonstrations designed to honor him, Daniel retired from public life. He settled in the city of Shushan, where he abode until his end.<sup>17</sup> Though he was no prophet, God vouchsafed to him a knowledge of the “end of time” not granted his friends, the prophets Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi,<sup>18</sup> but even he, in the fulness of his years, lost all memory of the revelation with which he had been favored.<sup>19</sup>

---

5. Ma'aseh Daniel 120–121; the king of Mosul (=Babylon) is, of course, none other than Belshazzar, against whom Cyrus was engaged in war; comp. notes 2 and 4. The Yemenite Jews tell the following story: Their forefathers had settled in that country forty-two years prior to the destruction of the first Temple. When Ezra, on the return of the exiles from Babylon, called upon them to do likewise and to return to the Holy Land, they refused because they knew that the second Temple would also be destroyed and that Israel would once again be sent into captivity. Ezra cursed them for their refusal, that they should for ever live in poverty. That is why the Yemenite Jews are poor till this day. They, on their part, cursed Ezra that he should not find his last rest in the Holy Land; this also was fulfilled. See R. Solomon Adeni, in the introduction to his commentary on the Mishnah (beginning); Safir *Eben Sappir*, I, 99a. It is therefore very strange that Mohammed accused the Jews of north Arabia, the neighbors of the Yemenite Jews, of believing that Ezra was the “son of God”; comp. Koran 9.30. Did he confuse the “messenger of God” with the “son of God”? An old Jewish tradition identifies the prophet Malachi (“My messenger” or “messenger of God”) with Ezra; comp. Megillah 15a; Targum and Jerome on Mal. 1.1. Megillah, *loc. cit.*, however, also gives the different view that Malachi was identical with Mordecai, who as the “next one to the king” (Comp. Esther, end) was called Malachi, “the kingly one”. Comp. Seder 'Olam 20, where Mordecai and Malachi are counted as two prophets. See also notes 33, 38 and 50.

6. Bereshit Rabbete of R. Moses ha-Darshan, quoted from a MS. by Epstein, *Magazin*, XV, 78–79, and by Raymond Martinus, *Pugio Fidei*, 956. There can, of course, be no doubt that this legend is based upon the apocryphal writing Bel and the Dragon (but it is not directly taken

from it), where the following story is told: The mob was so infuriated against Daniel for having exposed the tricks played by the priests of Bel and for having destroyed the dragon (compare footnote 112 on p. 1107) that they threatened to destroy the king (Theodotion alone gives his name as Cyrus) if he would not deliver Daniel unto them. The king was compelled to comply with their demand, and cast him into the lions' den, from which, however, he was saved in a miraculous way. In Septuagint this apocryphal work is described as having been taken from the prophecy of Habakkuk the son of Jesus (= Joshua) of the tribe of Levi. This prophet is said to have been sent by God to Daniel while he was in the lions' den; comp. note 13. As to the rabbinical view concerning the father and descent of Habakkuk see Index, s. v. In contrast to the Rabbis, who are unanimous on the point of Daniel's royal descent (compare footnote 76 on p. 1095), this apocryphal work declares him to have been a priest, and his father's name is given as Abal. Comp. note 56 (middle).

7. Rosh ha-Shanah 3b–4a (as to the statement that the name of the king was Darius, whereas Cyrus was an attribute describing him as “the worthy one”, כרש being identical with כָּשָׁר, and that besides these names, he was, like all other Persian kings, also called Artaxerxes, ארתחששתא, see Seder 'Olam 30, and Ratner, note 11); Megillah 12a; which reads: God said to the Messiah: “I must complain against Cyrus (a haggadic interpretation of Is. 45.1). I wanted him to rebuild the Temple and to take the exiles back to the Holy Land; but all he did was to proclaim through his kingdom: Whatsoever there is among you of all His people let him go up” (2 Chron. end). Cyrus disappointed still more the hopes set upon him. When he noticed that the Babylonian cities became desolate because the Jews emigrated from there to the Holy Land, he forbade them to leave the country. See Shir 5.5 and 6.8–10; Koheleth 10.12; Esther R., introduction, 8; Midrash 'Aseret Melakim 44. The degeneration of Cyrus is quite amazing. At the destruction of the Temple he wept bitterly, and as a reward for his tears the Medes (= Persians) received the dominion over the world; he became not only a “cosmocrator”, but he was also found worthy to sit on the throne of Solomon (with the exception of Nebuchadnezzar, he was the only Gentile ruler who was thus distinguished). See ER 20, 114; Esther R. 1.2, 13; PRE 11; Midrash 'Aseret Melakim 44; 1 and 2 Targum Esther 1.2 (end); Aggadat Esther 8. Comp. Index, s. v. “Cosmocrators” and “Solomon, Throne of”. On the proclamation of Cyrus to the Jews to return to the Holy Land and to rebuild the Temple, see 3 Ezra 2.1–14. As to the views concerning Cyrus expressed by the Rabbis, it should be noticed that the Palestinian authorities are rather favorable to him, whereas the Babylonians censure him severely. The Roman yoke which weighed heavily upon the Palestinian Jews made them look



at the Persians as the friends of the Jews. Their favorable opinion of Cyrus expresses their sympathy for the Persians. The Babylonian Jews, on the other hand, suffered terribly at the hands of the Mazdic priests who were very powerful in the Sassanide empire, and they considered the Romans as "the lesser evil", and the "destroyers of the Temple" were preferred to the "builders of the Temple" (= the Persians under Cyrus), so that Cyrus and the Persians came in for a great deal of blame. See Berakot 8b and 46b; Yoma 10a; Megillah 11a; Ketubot 48a; Gittin 17a (top); Kiddushin 49b and 72a; Baba Kamma 117a; Baba Mezi'a 28b; Sanhedrin 98b (top); BR 74.2; PK 4, 33b–34a and 40a, and parallel passages cited by Buber on the last passage. The dominion of the Persians over Israel was the consequence of the victory of Dobiel (comp. Dan. 7.5), the guardian angel of the former, over Gabriel, who was punished for having delayed the execution of the punishment decreed by God against Israel (compare footnote 26 on p. 1074). Gabriel was deposed from the high office, which was given over to Dobiel for twenty one days. During this time Dobiel subjected to the Persians twenty-one kingdoms, besides the Island of Pearls (on the Persian Gulf). He also obtained for the Persians the grant to levy taxes upon the Jews. However, not satisfied with this, he demanded for the Persians the privilege to levy taxes also upon the Jewish scholars, and he received a written promise to that effect. At the moment when the heavenly seal was to be put on this writ granted to Dobiel, a voice was heard exclaiming: "O Master of the world, if all the sages of the world were in one scale of the balance and Daniel in the other, would he not outweigh them all?" It was the voice of Gabriel exclaiming these words from "behind the curtain" (on the curtain, see Index, s. v.), as he had been expelled from the presence of the Lord and was not permitted to enter the place occupied by the "heavenly family" within the curtain. Hearing Gabriel's words, God spoke: "Who is it that pleads for My children?" On being informed that it was Gabriel, He permitted him to enter within the curtain. As soon as he was inside, Gabriel noticed the writ in the hands of Dobiel, and attempted to snatch it away from him. Whereupon the latter swallowed it and thus caused it to be blurred. This is the reason why the levy of taxes upon the scholars in the Persian empire is not carried out strictly. However, when the guardian angel of Javan (Greece) received the dominion over Israel, all the pleadings of Gabriel to mitigate the hardships of the Greek yoke over the Jews were of no avail. See Yoma 79a (on the correct text see Rabbinovicz).

8. The apocryphal writing *Bel and the Dragon* in the Greek Additions to Daniel. See notes 6, 13 and 18, as well as footnote 112 on p. 1107. A Hebrew translation of this Greek work is found in Yerahmeel 72, 220–221, and

Josippon 3, 4b–5a. In these sources it is the king Darius who urged Daniel to pay homage to Bel.

9. Ma'aseh Daniel 121–122. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 11.4, Darius sent for Daniel to come to him to Media, and he conferred great honors upon him.

10. The old sources (Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 11.4; Seder 'Olam 28–29; Shir 3.3), in agreement with the statement of the Bible and the historical facts, make Darius succeed Cyrus (Cambyses, the son and direct successor of Cyrus, is not mentioned in rabbinic sources), whereas the late compilation Ma'aseh Daniel, 120–121, reverses the order. According to Josippon 3, 3a Darius and Cyrus divided among themselves the empire of Belshazzar, the former taking the city of Babel and its surroundings, and the latter the rest.

11. Josippon 3, 7b–7d, where the edict of Darius appointing Daniel as viceroy is given in full. In this edict the nations are called upon not only to acknowledge Daniel as their master, but also to pay homage to his God.

12. Tehillim 64, 311, and 24, 208 (here it is stated that an angel assumed the form of a rock to close the den and thus protect Daniel against his enemies); Shir 1.1; PR 6, 25a–25b; BaR 14.3. According to Josippon 3, 2b, a little girl playing in front of Daniel's house betrayed him to his enemies. According to the Halakah, one must sacrifice one's life in God's honor if one is ordered to commit a sinful act, but not for the sake of performing a divine commandment. Hence Daniel did more than was required by the law when he risked his life for the sake of prayer. Comp. note 14. BaR 13.4 remarks: Had Daniel been thrown into the fire by Darius, he would have perished, because divine homage was paid to him by Nebuchadnezzar, and the law reads: The images of their gods shall ye burn with fire. Comp. Sanhedrin 93a, Josippon 3, 3b and refer also to pp. 1106–1108.

13. Josippon 3, 8b–8c, which is an adaptation of the story given in the apocryphal writing *Bel and the Dragon* (compare footnote 112 on p. 1107; notes 6 and 8) in conformity with the biblical narrative about Daniel in the lions' den. Daniel's life was saved by the prayers of his three companions Hananel, Mishael, and Azariah; Tehillim 55, 292. A Christian adaptation of this story is found in ps.-Matthew 35. On the whole, legends about saints being spared by ferocious beasts are very common in Christian literature, but extremely rare with the Jews. Sanhedrin 39a; Ahimaaz, 112, and the legend concerning R. Samuel ben Kalonymos in Ma'aseh-buch, No. 161. On the view that Darius rose in the early morning, see Leket Midrashim, 23a.

14. Tehillim 64, 311. According to the Halakah, Daniel (and Jacob, see vol. II, *loc. cit.*) was permitted to interrupt this recitation to greet the king (comp. Berakot



2.2), but he did not avail himself of the leniency of the law; comp. note 12.

15. Josippon 3, 8c; comp. Bel and the Dragon in the version of Theodotus, 38.

16. Tehillim 64, 312, which reads: There were four lions for each person. But Josippon 3, 8c, knows only of ten lions, and in Bel and the Dragon the number is seven. The explanation given by the enemies of Daniel for his not having been devoured by the beasts is also found in Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 11.6; comp. Sanhedrin 39a.

17. Josippon 3, 9b–10a (the edict concerning the Temple is partly based on 3 Ezra 15, *seq.*); Yerahmeel 74, 223–244, where, strangely enough, Shushan is said to have been the birthplace of Daniel. Compare also footnote 76 on p. 1095.

18. Megillah 3a. As to the question whether Daniel and his three companions were prophets or not, see references given in footnotes 76 and 108 on pp. 1095 and 1106 respectively. Comp. also Sanhedrin 93a, where, according to one reading (see Rabbinovicz, note 50), the Talmud maintains that the three companions of Daniel were not prophets. It is true that this statement is put into the mouths of the false prophets Ahab and Zedekiah. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 11.7, not only speaks eloquently of the prophet Daniel, but states also that he wrote “several books ... and one is still read by us till this time.” The rabbinic literature knows only of one book by Daniel, if we except the very late work Ma’aseh Daniel. Josephus seems to have known, besides the biblical Book of Daniel, several others ascribed to him. Or did he consider the Greek additions to the book of Daniel as separate works by Daniel? On the Apocalypse of Daniel, known still to some writers of the Middle Ages, refer also to footnote 104 on p. 1103. Based on an old Apocalypse of Daniel is perhaps the statement of Johannes Malala, *Chronographia* 97.257, that Cyrus (comp. note 6) threw Daniel into the lions’ den because he refused to reveal to him whether he would be victorious in the war against Croesus or not. After Daniel’s marvellous escape from death, Cyrus realized that he had done an injustice to the man of God, and asked his forgiveness. Daniel not only forgave him, but also announced to him that he would gain a complete victory over Croesus. Daniel also showed him the prophecies in the book of Isaiah relating to him. The last statement is also found in Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 1.2, and Shir. 3.4. Comp. also James, *Last Apocrypha* 20.

19. BR 98.2; Tehillim 31, 239–240. Comp. also Megillah 12a. Daniel erred in the calculation of the end of time. The curse pronounced against those who “reckoned the end of time” (Sanhedrin 97b) is to be explained accordingly. If Daniel himself failed in fixing the time accurately, it would be futile for any other mortal to attempt this task. Notwithstanding this anathema, there are many

treatises by medieval authors dealing with the “end of time” revealed to Daniel. If we disregard the pseudo-epigraphical writers, Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 11.7 (towards the end), is one of the earliest interpreters of the vision of Daniel, but after giving his view thereof (in his opinion, Daniel also wrote concerning the Roman government), he adds: “But if anyone is inclined to another opinion about them, let him enjoy his different sentiments without any blame from me.” The “other opinion” very likely saw in Daniel’s visions a prophecy bearing upon the contemporary history of the prophet.

## THE GRAVE OF DANIEL

Daniel was buried in Shushan, on account of which a sore quarrel was enkindled among the inhabitants of the city. Shushan is divided in two parts by a river. The side containing the grave of Daniel was occupied by the wealthy inhabitants, and the poor citizens lived on the other side of the river. The latter maintained that they, too, would be rich if the grave of Daniel were in their quarter. The frequent disputes and conflicts were finally adjusted by a compromise; one year the bier of Daniel reposed on one side of the river, the next year on the other. When the Persian king Sanjar came to Shushan, he put a stop to the practice of dragging the bier hither and thither. He resorted to another device for guarding the peace of the city. He had the bier suspended from chains precisely in the middle of the bridge spanning the river. In the same spot he erected a house of prayer for all confessions, and out of respect to Daniel he prohibited fishing in the river for a distance of a mile on either side of the memorial building.<sup>20</sup> The sacredness of the spot appeared when the godless tried to pass by. They were drowned, while the pious remained unscathed. Furthermore, the fish that swam near it had heads glittering like gold.<sup>21</sup>

Beside the house of Daniel lay a stone, under which he had concealed the holy Temple



vessels. Once an attempt was made to roll the stone from its place, but whoever ventured to touch it, fell dead. The same fate overtook all who later tried to make excavations near the spot; a storm broke out and mowed them down.<sup>22</sup>

---

20. R. Benjamin of Tudela 74–76; R. Pethahiah 7b. *Chronicon Paschale* 92.396, also mentions the magnificent mausoleum of Daniel, who is said to have been buried among the kings (of Babylon). All these legends very likely have their origin in the statement of Josephus, *Antiqui.*, X, 11.7, that when “Daniel became famous, on account of the opinion men had that he was beloved of God, he built a tower at Ecbatana in Media.” Josephus then adds that it was a most elegant building and wonderfully made, and that it is still remaining and preserved to this day, and to such as see it, it appears to have been lately built, and to have been no older than the very day when any one looks upon it; it is so fresh, flourishing, and beautiful, and in no way grown old in so long a time . . . Now they bury the kings of Media, of Persia, and Parthia in this tower to this day; and he who was entrusted with the care of it was a Jewish priest, which thing is also observed to this day. According to old rabbinic sources, Daniel left Babylon for the Holy Land, availing himself of the permission granted by Cyrus to the exiles, and became the governor of his native country; Shir 5.5 and Sanhedrin 93b. Josippon 3, 5b agrees in the main with Josephus, and makes Daniel settle in Shushan. There can be no doubt that the old rabbinic sources quoted were of the opinion that Daniel died in the Holy Land, where he spent the remainder of his life. Comp. notes 17 and 23.

21. R. Pethahiah 9a.

22. *Gelilot Erez Israel*, 101c.

## ZERUBBABEL

The successor to Daniel in the service of the king, Zerubbabel, enjoyed equally as much royal consideration and affection. He occupied a higher position than all the other servants and officials, and he and two others constituted the body-guard of the king.<sup>23</sup> Once when the king lay wrapped in deep slumber, his guards resolved to write down what each of them consid-

ered the mightiest thing in the world, and he who wrote the sagest saying should be given rich presents and rewards by the king. What they wrote they laid under the pillow on which the head of the king rested, that he might not delay to make a decision after he awoke. The first one wrote: “Wine is the mightiest thing there is”; the second wrote: “The king is the mightiest on earth”, and the third, Zerubbabel, wrote: “Women are the mightiest in the world, but truth prevails over all else.” When the king awoke, and had perused the document, he summoned the grandees of his realm and the three youths as well. Each of the three was called upon to justify his saying. In eloquent words the first described the potency of wine. When it takes possession of the senses of a man, he forgets grief and sorrow. Still more beautiful and convincing were the words of the second speaker, when his turn came to establish the truth of his saying, that the king was the mightiest on earth. Finally Zerubbabel depicted in glowing words the power of woman, who rules even over kings. “But”, he continued, “truth is supreme over all; the whole earth asks for truth, the heavens sing the praises of truth, all creation quakes and trembles before truth, naught of wrong can be found in truth. Unto truth belongeth the might, the dominion, the power, and the glory of all times. Blessed be the God of truth.” When Zerubbabel ceased from speaking, the assembly broke out into the words: “Great is truth, it is mightier than all else!” The king was so charmed with the wisdom of Zerubbabel that he said to him: “Ask for aught thou wishest, it shall be granted thee.” Zerubbabel required nothing for himself, he only sought permission of the king to restore Jerusalem, rebuild the sanctuary, and return the holy Temple vessels to the place whence they had been carried off. Not only did Darius grant what Zerubbabel wished for, not only did he give him letters of safe-conduct, but he also



conferred numerous privileges upon the Jews who accompanied Zerubbabel to Palestine, and he sent abundant presents to the Temple and its officers.<sup>24</sup>

As unto his predecessor Daniel, so unto Zerubbabel, God vouchsafed a knowledge of the secrets of the future. Especially the archangel Metatron dealt kindly with him. Besides revealing to him the time at which the Messiah would appear, he brought about an interview between the Messiah and Zerubbabel.<sup>25</sup>

In reality, Zerubbabel was none other than Nehemiah, who was given this second name because he was born in Babylon.<sup>26</sup> Richly endowed as Zerubbabel-Nehemiah was with admirable qualities, he yet did not lack faults. He was excessively self-complacent, and he did not hesitate to fasten a stigma publicly upon his predecessors in the office of governor in the land of Judah, among whom was so excellent a man as Daniel. To punish him for these transgressions, the Book of Ezra does not bear the name of its real author Nehemiah.<sup>27</sup>

When Darius felt his end approach,<sup>28</sup> he appointed his son-in-law Cyrus,<sup>29</sup> who had hitherto reigned only over Persia, to be the ruler over his kingdom as well. His wish was honored by the princes of Media and Persia. After Darius had departed this life, Cyrus was proclaimed king.

In the very first year of his reign, Cyrus summoned the most distinguished of the Jews to appear before him, and he gave them permission to return to Palestine and rebuild the Temple at Jerusalem. More than this, he pledged himself to contribute to the Temple service in proportion to his means, and pay honor to the God who had invested him with strength to subdue the Chaldeans. These actions of Cyrus partly flowed from his own pious inclinations, and partly were due to his desire to accomplish the dying behests of Darius, who had admon-

ished him to give the Jews the opportunity of rebuilding the Temple.

When the first sacrifice was to be brought by the company of Jews who returned to Jerusalem under the leadership of Ezra, and set about restoring the Temple, they missed the celestial fire which had dropped from heaven on the altar in the time of Moses, and had not been extinguished so long as the Temple stood. They turned in supplication to God to be instructed by Him. The celestial fire had been hidden by Jeremiah at the time of the destruction of the Holy City, and the law did not permit them to bring "strange fire" upon the altar of God. An old man suddenly remembered the spot in which Jeremiah had buried the holy fire, and he led the elders thither. They rolled away the stone covering the spot, and from under it appeared a spring flowing not with water, but with a sort of oil. Ezra ordered this fluid to be sprinkled upon the altar, and forthwith an all-consuming flame shot up. The priests themselves scattered in fright. But after the Temple and its vessels were purified by the flame, it confined itself to the altar never more to leave it, for the priests guarded it so that it might not be extinguished.<sup>30</sup>

Among the band of returned exiles were the prophets Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi. Each one of them had a place of the greatest importance to fill in the rebuilding of the Temple. By the first the people were shown the plan of the altar, which was larger than the one that had stood in Solomon's Temple. The second informed them of the exact location of the altar, and the third taught them that sacrifices might be brought on the holy place even before the completion of the Temple. On the authority of one of the prophets, the Jews, on their return from Babylonia, gave up their original Hebrew characters, and re-wrote the Torah in the "Assyrian" characters still in use at this day.<sup>31</sup>



While the Temple work was in progress, the builders found the skull of Araunah, the owner of the Temple site in the time of David. The priests, unlearned as they were, could not decide to what extent the corpse lying there had defiled the holy place. It was for this that Haggai poured out his reproaches upon them.<sup>32</sup>

23. Josippon 3, 5b. In 3 Ezra, which is the source of Josippon (comp. the following note), Zerubbabel is one of the three body-guards of the king and not a high official. Josephus maintains that Zerubbabel was appointed head of the Jews by Cyrus, and this is very likely based on the identification of Sheshbazzar, the “prince of the Jews” under Cyrus, with Zerubbabel (Ezra 1.8); comp. Ibn Ezra, *ad loc.* PR 6, 23b, and Sanhedrin 93b (here it is supposed that Daniel preceded Nehemiah in the office of governor, hence his identity with Zerubbabel is assumed) on the other hand, identify Sheshbazzar with Daniel; compare also to footnote 76 on p. 1095. When the Samaritans, Josephus continues, attempted to prevent the building of the Temple, Zerubbabel was sent by the Jews to Media to plead their cause before king Darius, the son of Hystaspes; *Antiqui.*, XI, 4.9. Comp. note 26.

24. 3 Ezra 1–57; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 3.3–9 (with slight variants); Josippon 3, 10a–11a. Comp. also Baba Batra 10a, which has the statement concerning the ten “mighty things existing in the world”, wine being one of them.

25. *Zerubbabel*. As to the part to be played by Zerubbabel in the Messianic times, see Alphabet R. Akiba, 27–28, where it is said that he will recite the Kaddish after the lecture to be delivered by God on the new Torah which He is to reveal through the Messiah. All men, including the wicked in hell and the Gentiles, hearing the Kaddish, will respond: Amen. This will cause God to extend His compassion to all His creatures, even to the sinners, and He will send Michael and Gabriel to open the gates of hell that its dwellers should be set free. Together with Elijah (compare also with pp. 1019–1021) Zerubbabel, in the time to come, will explain all the obscure passages of the Torah, and reveal all its mysteries; quotation from Midrash in Halakot Gedolot (Hildesheimer’s edition, 223, top). See also Pirke Mashiah, 75, and BHM VI, 63, as well as Kalir in his lamentation **הָרֵם הָרֵם** (at the end of Lamentations, according to Roman rite), where Zerubbabel is described as the “Messianic herald”, at whose call Michael and Gabriel will undertake the war of annihilation against the pagan world. There is some connection between this legend and the one about Zerubbabel’s “superhuman”

voice, compare also pp. 56–58. Not quite clear is the part attributed to Zerubbabel in Ma’aseh Daniel, 128, where it is stated that the Messiah will ascend the Mount of Olives with Elijah and Zerubbabel, whereupon Elijah, at the bidding of the Messiah, will blow the trumpet (compare also with p. 1021). There can be no doubt that the text is incomplete; there must have been something said about the part to be played by Zerubbabel on this occasion. It is rather strange that the Rabbis never thought of declaring Zerubbabel to be the promised Messiah. The only one of biblical times who was considered by them as the possible candidate for the Messianic office is Daniel. See Sanhedrin 98b (towards the end). Is this view connected with the supposed identity of Daniel with Zerubbabel? Comp. note 23.

26. Sanhedrin 38a (top). Compare also to footnote 76 on p. 1095 and notes 23, 25. Nehemiah was also called **הַתְּרַשָּׁתָא** (Neh. 8.9), because the authorities of that time “absolved” him (= **הָתֵר**) from observing the injunction (decreed by Daniel and his three companions; ‘Abodah Zarah 36b) against using the wine touched by a heathen, and permitted him to “drink” (= **שָׁתָא**) wine with the king, whose cup-bearer he was. See Yerushalmi Kid-dushin 4, 65b; Midrash ‘Aseret Melakim 44. Nehemiah and his “company” are the authors of the strict law that no vessel or utensil is to be handled on the Sabbath. The people at that time were very lax in the observance of the Sabbath, and hence the strictness introduced by Nehemiah. When the observance of the Sabbath became well established, the rigidity of Nehemiah’s law was relaxed. See Shabbat 123b, and comp. Josephus, *Bell.*, II, 8.9.

27. Sanhedrin 93b. The books of Ezra and Nehemiah are spoken of by the Rabbis as the Book of Ezra. Comp., e. g., Baba Batra 15a. In this passage it is stated that Ezra “wrote” (composed or compiled? compare footnote 89 on p. 1011) also the books of Chronicles up to 2 Chron. 21.1, and the rest of Nehemiah. Comp. the explanation of the talmudic passage in the geonic responsum published by Ginzberg, *Geonica*, II, 16–17. The unpopularity of Nehemiah shows that there is no rule without an exception. There is a maxim which says: He who is disliked by his fellow-men is also disliked by heaven. Nehemiah and David are exceptions to this rule: both were loved by God, but hated by many of their fellow-men. See Sanhedrin 103b, and comp. Blau, *Masoretische Untersuchungen*, 56, and Ginzberg, *Ha-Zofeh*, III, 121–122.

28. Darius was born on the day when Nebuchadnezzar, after his victory over Jehoiachin, entered the Temple; he reigned for one year only, and was succeeded by Cyrus who reigned three, or, according to one reading, four years. See Seder ‘Olam 28 and 29; Megillah 11b (bottom). Comp. notes 10 and 30.

29. The legends about the youth of Cyrus in the classical writers is given by Abravanel in his commentary



on Is. 45, whence it was borrowed by many later rabbinical authors.

30. Josippon 3, 11d–12a. Rashi on Dan. 6.29 quotes from Josippon the statement that Darius reigned only one year, when he fell in battle and was succeeded by his son-in-law Cyrus. Our text of Josippon (comp. *loc. cit.*) has an entirely different reading. It is worth noticing that, according to Josippon, the main factor in the return of the exiles was Darius, who called upon Cyrus to participate in this undertaking, and while the return of the exiles under Ezra, Nehemiah, Mordecai, Joshua, and Zerubbabel took place under Cyrus, the credit for it was due to Darius. Comp. also Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 3.1, who remarks concerning Darius: Now, while he was still a private man, he had made a vow to God that if he came to be king, he would send all the vessels of God that were in Babylon to the Temple at Jerusalem. This vow he faithfully fulfilled as king after he was reminded of it by his great favorite Zerubbabel who had come to him from Jerusalem in behalf of the Jews. Comp. notes 7 and 10. The legend about the celestial fire, as given in Josippon, is, of course, closely related to that found in 2 Macc. 1.19–2.12, but is not directly based on it. Notice especially that 2 Macc. ascribes an important part to Nehemiah in discovering the fire, whereas Josippon ignores him entirely. Comp. note 36; footnote 60, found on p. 1091; pp. 659–660.

31. Zebahim 62a. The prophet knew the exact site of the altar, because he saw the angel Michael sacrifice there. The word “there” very likely refers to the place in heaven exactly corresponding to the terrestrial altar; comp. Mekilta Shirah 10, 43b, and Index, s. v. “Sanctuary, Heavenly”. A number of Halakot are referred to the authority of these prophets, especially to that of Haggai, and as late as the second century C. E., the “seat” of Haggai (in Jerusalem) was shown; comp. Tosefta Kelim, Baba Batra 2.3; Rosh ha-Shanah 19b; Megillah 3a (Jonathan ben Uziel composed his Targum of the Prophets under the guidance of Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi); Yebamot 16a; Yerushalmi 1, 3a; Kiddushin 43a; Nazir 53a; Hullin 137a; Bekorot 58a. Comp. the very interesting remarks on this point by R. Sherira Gaon in *Teshubot Geone Mizrah u-Ma'arib* No., 140. See also Bacher, *Monatsschrift* 52, 708–709. The hypothesis (see Frankel, *Dark. Ham.* 40) that חגי הנביא in many places of the Talmud is an erroneous reading for חגי הנ' (*i. e.* Onia; compare also to footnote 58 found on p. 1091), is not tenable. On the change of the Hebrew Alphabet, see note 44.

32. Yerushalmi Sotah 5, 20b; Pesahim 9, 36c (here it is said that the skull of Araunah was found in the time of Hezekiah, who in consequence thereof ordered the purification of the Temple); Yerushalmi Nedarim 6, 39d–40a; Sanhedrin 1, 18d. Comp. also Aggadat Shir 3, 33. On the Halakot involved in the controversy between the priests,

see also Pesahim 17a. This passage quotes a view that the priests gave a correct answer to the question of law put to them. In view of the widespread legend that Adam was buried in Jerusalem in the place upon which the altar was subsequently erected, one is inclined to explain ארנן היבוסי in the Yerushalmi passages as an erroneous reading of the abbreviation (א"ר = ארונה היבוסי), which in turn was a scribal error for אה"ר = אדם הראשון. Compare to footnote 137 on p. 97. The proselytes known as the “house of Nebalata” (*i. e.*, from Nebalat; comp. Neh. 11.34), who were quite prominent at the end of the second Jewish commonwealth, are said to have been descendants of Araunah; comp. Tosefta Peah 4.11; Yerushalmi 8, 21a; Sifre D., 110. On burial-places in Jerusalem, see Tosefta Nega'im 6.2; Yerushalmi Nazir 9, 57d; Semahot 14; Baba Kamma 82b. According to these sources, the corpses, by a later ordinance, were removed from all the burial places in Jerusalem, only the graves of the kings and that of the prophetess Huldah were left there.

## EZRA

The complete resettlement of Palestine took place under the direction of Ezra, or, as the Scriptures sometimes call him, Malachi.<sup>33</sup> He had not been present at the earlier attempts<sup>34</sup> to restore the sanctuary, because he could not leave his old teacher Baruch, who was too advanced in years to venture upon the difficult journey to the Holy Land.<sup>35</sup>

In spite of Ezra's persuasive efforts, it was but a comparatively small portion of the people that joined the procession winding its way westward to Palestine. For this reason the prophetic spirit did not show itself during the existence of the Second Temple. Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi were the last representatives of prophecy.<sup>36</sup> Nothing was more surprising than the apathy of the Levites. They manifested no desire to return to Palestine. Their punishment was the loss of the tithes, which were later given to the priests, though the Levites had the first claim upon them.<sup>37</sup>

In restoring the Jewish state in Palestine, Ezra cherished two hopes, to preserve the purity



of the Jewish race, and to spread the study of the Torah until it should become the common property of the people at large. To help on his first purpose, he inveighed against marriages between the Jews and the nations round about.<sup>38</sup> He himself had carefully worked out his own pedigree before he consented to leave Babylonia,<sup>39</sup> and in order to perpetuate the purity of the families and groups remaining in the East, he took all the "unfit"<sup>40</sup> with him to Palestine.

In the realization of his second hope, the spread of the Torah, Ezra was so zealous and efficient that it was justly said of him: "If Moses had not anticipated him, Ezra would have received the Torah."<sup>41</sup> In a sense he was, indeed, a second Moses. The Torah had fallen into neglect and oblivion in his day, and he restored and re-established it in the minds of his people.<sup>42</sup> It is due to him chiefly that it was divided up into portions, to be read annually, Sabbath after Sabbath, in the synagogues,<sup>43</sup> and he it was, likewise, who originated the idea of re-writing the Pentateuch in "Assyrian" characters.<sup>44</sup> To further his purpose still more, he ordered additional schools for children to be established everywhere, though the old ones sufficed to satisfy the demand. He thought the rivalry between the old and the new institutions would redound to the benefit of the pupils.<sup>45</sup>

Ezra is the originator of institutions known as "the ten regulations of Ezra". They are the following: 1. Readings from the Torah on Sabbath afternoons. 2. Readings from the Torah on Mondays and Thursdays. 3. Sessions of the court on Mondays and Thursdays. 4. To do laundry work on Thursdays, not Fridays. 5. To eat garlic on Friday on account of its salutary action.<sup>46</sup> 6. To bake bread early in the morning that it may be ready for the poor whenever they ask for some. 7. Women are to cover the lower parts of their bodies with a garment called Sinar.<sup>47</sup> 8. Before taking a ritual bath, the hair is to be

combed. 9. The ritual bath prescribed for the unclean is to cover the case of one who desires to offer prayer or study the law.<sup>48</sup> 10. Permission to peddlers to sell cosmetics to women in the towns.<sup>49</sup>

Ezra was not only a great teacher of his people and their wise leader, he was also their advocate with the celestials, to whom his relation was of a peculiarly intimate character. Once he addressed a prayer to God, in which he complained of the misfortune of Israel and the prosperity of the heathen nations. Thereupon the angel Uriel appeared to him, and instructed him how that the evil has its appointed time in which to run its course, as the dead have their appointed time to sojourn in the nether world. Ezra could not rest satisfied with this explanation, and in response to his further question, seven prophetic visions were vouchsafed him, and interpreted by the angel for him. They typified the whole course of history up to his day, and disclosed the future to his eyes. In the seventh vision he heard a voice from a thorn-bush, like Moses aforesaid, and it admonished him to guard in his heart the secrets revealed to him. The same voice had given Moses a similar injunction: "These words shalt thou publish, those shalt thou keep secret." Then his early translation from earth was announced to him. He besought God to let the holy spirit descend upon him before he died, so that he might record all that had happened since the creation of the world as it was set down in the Torah, and guide men upon the path that leads to God.

Hereupon God bade him take the five experienced scribes, Sarga, Dabria, Seleucia, Ethan, and Azriel, with him into retirement, and dictate to them for forty days. After one day spent with these writers in isolation, remote from the city and from men, a voice admonished him: "Ezra, open thy mouth, and drink whereof I give thee to drink." He opened his mouth, and a chalice



was handed to him filled to the brim with a liquid that flowed like water, but in color resembled fire. His mouth opened to drink, and for forty days it was not closed. During all that time, the five scribes put down, “in signs they did not understand,”—they were the newly adopted Hebrew characters,—all that Ezra dictated to them, and it made ninety-four books. At the end of the forty days’ period, God spoke to Ezra thus: “The twenty-four books of the Holy Scriptures thou shalt publish, for the worthy and the unworthy alike to read; but the last seventy books thou shalt withhold from the populace, for the perusal of the wise of thy people.” On account of his literary activity, he is called “the Scribe of the science of the Supreme Being unto all eternity.”<sup>50</sup>

Having finished his task, Ezra was removed from this mundane world, and he entered the life everlasting. But his death did not occur in the Holy Land. It overtook him at Khuzistan, in Persia, on his journey to King Artachshashta.<sup>51</sup>

At Raccia, in Mesopotamia, there stood, as late as the twelfth century, the synagogue founded by Ezra when he was journeying from Babylon to Palestine.<sup>52</sup>

At his grave, over which columns of fire are often seen to hover at night,<sup>53</sup> a miracle once happened. A shepherd fell asleep by the side of it. Ezra appeared to him and bade him tell the Jews that they were to transport his bier to another spot. If the master of the new place refused assent, he was to be warned to yield permission, else all the inhabitants of his place would perish. At first the master refused to allow the necessary excavations to be made. Only after a large number of the non-Jewish inhabitants of the place had been stricken down suddenly, he consented to have the corpse transported thither. As soon as the grave was opened, the plague ceased.

Shortly before the death of Ezra, the city of Babylon was totally destroyed by the Persians. There remained but a portion of the wall which was impregnable by human strength.<sup>54</sup> All the prophecies hurled against the city by the prophets were accomplished. To this day there is a spot on its site which no animal can pass unless some of the earth of the place is strewn upon it.<sup>55</sup>

33. Megillah 15a; Targum Mal. 1.1, and Jerome in his introduction to his commentary on Malachi. Comp. notes 5 and 38.

34. As to the “several returns” of the exiles, see Seder ‘Olam 28–30, and the sources referred to by Ratner in his notes. The majority of the returning exiles belonged to the tribes of Judah and Benjamin; yet some refer to those of all the other tribes; Seder ‘Olam 29; Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 5.2. Comp. also ‘Arakin 32b–33a (see Tosafot on Gittin 36a, caption בִּזְמָן), and footnote 56 on p. 1088.

35. Megillah 16b; Shir 5.5; comp. Kaftor wa-Ferah 10. 231. In Shir it is said that God commanded Ezra to remain in Babylon as long as Joshua the son of Jehozadak was alive. This high priest belonged to a family that occupied the office of the high priest for generations. If Ezra had come to the Holy Land during the lifetime of the latter, he would, on account of his superior merit, have had a better claim to that office. But God dislikes to see the “chain of nobility snap” (*i. e.*, to take away honors from the family and give them to another). He therefore told Ezra to remain in Babylon, so that Joshua should continue as high priest like his ancestors. But after the death of Joshua, Ezra returned to the Holy Land, where he occupied the office of high priest. Comp. Maimonides in the introduction to his Code. On Ezra as high priest, see also Parah 3.5, where it is stated that he “burned a red heifer”, and this presupposes that he was a high priest. Ezra was the man for his time, and he would have been high priest even if Aaron were then alive; Koheleth 1.4.

36. Yoma 9b–10a; Berakot 4a, which reads: Miracles would have been wrought for Israel on the second entrance to the Holy Land, like those performed at the first entrance, were it not for the sins of the returning exiles. Had all the Israelites returned, the second Temple would never have been destroyed; but because the greater part of the nation remained in foreign lands, the Temple built by the returning exiles was not only destroyed afterwards, but even during its existence it lacked many things which lent glory to the first Temple. The following five things were in the



first Temple only: The heavenly fire (compare against this view on pp. 1119 and 1120), the holy oil of anointing, the ark, the Holy Spirit (revealing itself to the prophets in the Temple; comp. Yerushalmi Sukkah 5, 55a), and the Urim and Tummim. See Shir 8.10; Yoma 21b; PRK (Grünhut's edition, 71); *Aruk*, s. v. כִּבְד; comp. also Josephus, *Bell.*, V, 5.5, which reads: The holy of holies contained nothing. See also Index under the five subjects just mentioned. As to the refusal of the Jews of Yemen to return to the Holy Land, see note 5; on a similar legend concerning the Jews of Germany (who paid dearly for this sin during the Middle Ages), see *Ma'aseh Nissim* I and hence *She'erit Israel* 3; Brüll, *Jahrbücher*, IV, 39–40. Shalshet, 33a, maintains the same with regard to the Jews of Spain. With the death of the three last prophets (as to the use of the expression נְבִיאִים אַחֲרֵינִים see footnote 24 on p. 913), the Holy Spirit departed from Israel. From time to time, however, a “heavenly voice” used to be heard that revealed to Israel things hidden from human knowledge. See Tosefta Sotah 13.2–6; Babli 46b; Yerushalmi 9, 24b (here Jeremiah and Baruch are described as the “former prophets”, in contrast to the three “later prophets”); Yoma 9b; Sanhedrin 11a. At the destruction of the Temple (first?) the prophetic gift was taken away from the prophets and given to children and fools; Baba Batra 12b; comp. also Matth. 21.16. Baba Batra 12a reads: Although the gift of prophecy was taken away from the prophets, it remained with the wise; hence it may be inferred that the wise are greater than the prophets.

37. Yebamot 86b. As to the statement made here that Ezra abolished the custom of having only Levites as officers of the court, see Kati in *Hoffmann-Festschrift*, 109, seq. and Ginzberg, *Unbekannte Sekte*, 69.

38. Megillah 15a. It was in connection with this activity for the purity of the Jewish race, that Ezra-Malachi (on the identity of the “scribe” with the “prophet”, see note 33) addressed his words of reprimand against those who married “foreign women”, found in Mal. 2.10. The Jews of his time revolted against the severe marriage laws of the Torah (compare with pp. 693–694), and especially against the prohibition to intermarry with the Gentiles. They declared this law as unjust, saying: “Has not the same God who created Israel also created the other nations?” (comp. Mal. 2.10). See Sifra 18.2. The women who returned to the Holy Land lost their beauty, and aged before their time, because of the suffering to which they were exposed, and many an inconsiderate husband divorced his wife to marry a foreign woman. Ezra-Malachi (see above) opposed not only the mixed marriages but also the evil of divorce, for even “the altar of the Lord sheds tears for the woman who is divorced by a man who married her as his ‘first love.’” (comp. Mal. 2.13); Yerushalmi Kiddushin 1, 58b; BR 18.5; Gittin 90b.

39. Baba Batra 15a. On the meaning of the words לֹא יָבֹא in this passage, see Rashi and Tosafot, *ad loc.*, as well as the geonic responsum in Ginzberg's *Geonica* II, 16–17. Comp. note 27.

40. Kiddushin 69b–71a and 71b. Ezra excluded the Gibeonites from entering into the “assembly of the Lord”; Yerushalmi Kiddushin 4, 65c; Shemuel 28, 134; BaR 8.4; compare to pp. 846–849. According to Yerushalmi, an attempt was made at the time of R. Eliezer (or Eleazar) ben Azariah (about 100 C. E.), who was a descendant of Ezra in the tenth generation, to change the statute in order to admit the Gibeonites to complete union with Israel; but it failed. On Ezra's descendants, see Berakot 27b; Yerushalmi Yebamot 1, 3d (top).

41. Tosefta Sanhedrin 4.7; Babli 21b; Yerushalmi Megillah 1, 21b; Tertullian *De Cultu Fem.* 3., Jerome, *Adversus Helvidium* 7. Comp. note 50, and the following note.

42. Sifre D., 48; Midrash Tannaim 43; Sukkah 20a. In the last passage it is pointed out that at three different periods in the history of Israel the Torah was nearly forgotten, and in each case the knowledge thereof was revived by a Babylonian: first by Ezra, then by the Babylonian Hillel, and later by the Babylonian R. Hiyya, who was assisted in his work by his two sons Hezekiah and Judah.

43. Megillah 31b. Comp. the first of the ten “regulations of Ezra” in the text below.

44. Tosefta Sanhedrin 4.7–8; Babli 21b–22a; Yerushalmi Megillah 1, 21b–21c. Comp. also Sifre D., 160; Midrash Tannaim 145, as well as pp. 1119–1121 and 1122–1123. A thorough discussion of these and similar passages of the rabbinical literature, bearing upon the “changing of the script” by Ezra, is given by Blau, *Zur Einleitung in die Heilige Schrift*, 48, seq. Besides the view given in the text, there are two others. According to one, the Assyrian characters (*i. e.*, the square characters) were used by Moses in writing the Torah; but in course of time they were discarded by the Jews, and Ezra re-introduced them again; the other view maintains that “just as the Torah was not changed, even so is the script in which it was written unchanged”: the characters used at present came down from Moses, and were in continuous use by the Jews. Owing to the fact that the square writing was introduced in the time of Ezra, none of Belshazzar's wise men was able to read the writing on the wall which was in the new Aramaic (*i. e.*, square) letters. See Tosefta, *loc. cit.*, where אֲוֹתוֹ הָיִים is very likely not to be taken literally. As Ezra is the author of the script used for writing the Torah, he was the one to introduce the dots over a number of biblical words, the genuineness of which was dubious. Ezra said: When Elijah comes (compare with p. 1020) and asks me: “Why didst thou write these spurious words”, I will answer: “Did I not place dots over them, to indicate that they are to be can-



celled?” Should he, on the other hand, say: “Thou didst well in writing these words”, I shall remove the dots. See BaR 3.13; ARN 34, 101 (second version 37, 98). On the dotted words see Blau, *Masoretische Untersuchungen*, 6–40. In the tannaitic literature numerous references are found to ספר עזרא, the Book of Ezra, i. e., the copy of the Torah written by Ezra. The correct reading, however, seems to be ס' עזרה or rather ס' העזרה “the copy of the Bible kept in the sanctuary.” But even if the reading עזרא is correct, it might be explained as the Aramaic form of עֶזְרָה, comp. Kelim 15.6; Tosefta Kelim, Baba Mezi'a 5.8; Yerushalmi Shekalim 2, 47a; Mo'ed Katan 3.4. The alleged writing of Maimonides on the “Codex Ezra”, given by Di Rossi, *Meor 'Enayim*, 9, 150–151, bears the mark of forgery. On the other legends concerning this codex, see Sambari, 118–119, and *Gelilot Erez Israel*, 99b.

45. Baba Batra 21b (bottom). The rabbinical law in other cases is very strict with regard to competition.

46. Popular physiology attributes generative power to garlic, and hence the ordinance to partake thereof on Friday, for according to the Rabbis, the night of Sabbath is to be devoted to conjugal pleasures (in opposition to the Samaritans and other sects who prohibit sexual intercourse on this “holy day”); comp. Ketubot 5.6; Babli 62b; Nedarim 3.10; see the references cited in note 59.

47. The meaning of the word סינר is not quite certain, but it is very likely a different spelling for זונר, the Aramaic transliteration of the Greek ζωνάριον, “belt”. It was mainly worn by women, and covered most of the lower part of the body; see Krauss, *Archäologie*, I, 174, and note 631.

48. This ordinance is said to have had for its purpose the restraint of conjugal relations. Comp. Berakot 21b–22b, and Yerushalmi 3, 6c. Many attempts have been made in talmudic, as well as in post-talmudic times, to abolish this law, but they were not entirely successful, at least not in the East. Comp. Ginzberg, *Geonica*, II, 24.

49. Baba Kamma 82a–82b; Ketubot 5a; Baba Batra 22a. Somewhat different are the “regulations of Ezra” in Yerushalmi Megillah 4, 75a. There 1 and 2 are counted as one, and to make up the number ten, Ezra is credited with a regulation which is elsewhere ascribed to R. Jose, a Tanna who flourished about the middle of the second century C. E. (comp. Sanhedrin 19a). The sixth ordinance is explained by Yerushalmi to refer to Friday and had for its purpose to provide the poor with new bread for the Sabbath. A third version of the ten regulations is found in PRK (Schönblum's edition, 40b). This is essentially identical with Yerushalmi Megillah, but it omits number 4, and the number ten is made up by the addition of a new ordinance not found in any other source. A full discussion of the ten regulations of Ezra is given by Bloch, *Sha'are Torat ha-Takkanot*, I, 107–138; comp. also the critical study by

Zeitlin, *Takkanot Ezra* in *J.Q.R.*, New Series, VIII, 761, seq. Bloch, *op. cit.*, 137–138, attributes the liturgical formula given in Berakot 9.5 to Ezra on the authority of Rashi, *ad loc.* It is very likely that by the expression וסייעתו עזרא “Ezra and his company”, Rashi means the Men of the Great Synagogue. Comp. Yoma 69b. On the origin of this liturgical formula, see Ginzberg, in Geiger's *Kebuzzat Maamarim* (Poznanski's edition, 402–403). It is also stated that Ezra pronounced the Tetragrammaton “as it is written”; comp. Tosefta Berakot 7.23; Yerushalmi 9, 14a; Tehillim 36, 251; comp. also Yoma 69b and Yerushalmi Berakot 4.11c. See the discussion of these passages in footnote 53 on p. 863. In the year of Ezra's return to the Holy Land the month of Elul was a “full one”, consisting of thirty days, which has never happened since, for this month is always defective. See Bezah 6a.

50. 4 Ezra 3–14. The names of the scribes are transmitted in different readings. The correct one is very likely: Seraiah (שרייה), Neriah (נרייה) which was corrupted to Dab-riah) the father of Baruch, Shelemiah (שלמיה), Ethan (איתן), and Azriel (עזיאל). On the characters which the scribes could not read, see note 44. In contrast to the view of this apocryphal work, shared also by many of the Church Fathers (comp., e. g., Irenaeus, III, 21.2; Clemens Alexandrinus, *Stromata*, 1.22; Tertullian, *De Cultu Femin.* 1.3; ps.-Tertullian, *Adversus Marcionitas* 280–281; other references are given by Fabricius, *Codex Pseudepigraphicus*, I, 1156–1160, and Schürer, *Geschichte*, III, 329), that at the destruction of the Temple the holy Bible was burned, so that Ezra was charged by God to write it down anew, the Rabbis maintain that even “Ezra the Scribe” was not permitted to write one letter of the Torah from memory; he transcribed, word by word, letter by letter, from the copy of the Torah before him. See Yerushalmi Megillah 4, 74d; BR 36 (end). On the seventy books which Ezra was commanded to withhold from the populace see Ginzberg, in *Journal of Jewish Philosophy and Lore*, I, 34–37, where it is suggested that it refers to the old halakic literature, which consisted of fifty-eight mishnaic treatises, the nine mid-rashic books on Leviticus, and the Midrashim on Exodus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy. Ginzberg, *op. cit.*, 37, calls attention to Maseket Kelim 88, where it is said that Ezra and five of his companions (they are the three prophets Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi, as well as the Levites Shimur and Hezekiah; on Shimur, see footnote 63 on p. 1091, but he is perhaps identical with Shelemiah in 4 Ezra mentioned above) wrote down the Mishnah. In rabbinic literature the Mishnah is often described as the great “secret” (μυστήριον) which God revealed to Israel (and to Israel only), whereas the Bible was given to all mankind. Comp., e. g., Yerushalmi Peah 2, 17a; PR 5, 14b; Tan. B. I, 88, and II, 116–117; Tan. Wa-Yera 5, and Ki-Tissa 34; ShR 47.1; BaR 14.10. In rabbinic literature Ezra is not one



of those who “entered paradise alive” (comp. Index, s. v. “Paradise, Entering Alive”), whereas 4 Ezra (end) states: And then was Ezra caught away and taken up into the Place (*i. e.*, paradise), of such as were like him. The office of “heavenly scribe” is otherwise given to Enoch or Elijah (comp. Index). It is perhaps this glorification of Ezra which gave rise to the accusation made by Mohammed against the Jews that they consider Ezra as the son of God. Comp. note 5. The much discussed Ezra-Salathiel problem is easily solved, if we assume that the Hebrew original of 4 Ezra had at its opening the words **אני שלח אל עזרא**. A slight curving of the letter **ח** made of **אל שלח אל** “the messenger of God” **שלתיאל** Salathiel. The identification of Ezra with Malachi (comp. notes 5, 33 and 38) may also have its origin in these opening words of 4 Ezra, as **מלאכי אל** and **אל שלח אל** mean both “the messenger of God”.

51. R. Benjamin of Tudela, 73. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 5.5, Ezra died in old age at Jerusalem; comp. note 5. Ezra and Nehemiah died on the second of Tebeth, which day was therefore observed as a fast-day; Megillat Ta’anit (addition) 24.

52. R. Benjamin of Tudela, 51; comp. also with footnote 75 on p. 1142. On an Ezra synagogue in the neighborhood of Mount Ararat, and another in Nisibis, see *Gelilot Erez Israel*, 100a.

53. On this miracle, see also vol. IV, p. 326.

54. *Gelilot Erez Israel*, 101a–101b. On the destruction of the city of Babylon, see also *Shalshelet*, 101b, quoting an alleged old manuscript. According to the medieval Chronicle, published by Neubauer, II, 185, Darius and Cyrus razed the city to the ground. Compare also footnote 104 on p. 1149.

55. Berakot 67b (towards the end); comp. Rashi, *ad loc.*, and also footnote 46 on p. 1137.

## THE MEN OF THE GREAT ASSEMBLY

At the same time with Ezra, or, to speak more accurately, under his direction, the Great Assembly carried on its beneficent activities, which laid the foundations of Rabbinical Judaism, and constituted the binding link between the Jewish Prophet and the Jewish Sage.<sup>56</sup> The great men who belonged to this august assembly once succeeded, through the efficacy of their prayers, in laying hands upon the seducers unto sin, and confining them, to prevent them

from doing more mischief. Thus they banished from the world “the desire unto idolatry”. They tried to do the same to “the desire unto lustfulness”. This evil adversary warned them against making away with him, for the world would cease to exist without him. For three days they kept him a prisoner, but then they had to dismiss him and let him go free. They found that not even an egg was to be had, for sexual appetite had vanished from the world. However, he did not escape altogether unscathed. They plastered up his eyes, and from that time on he gave up inflaming the passions of men against their blood relations.<sup>57</sup>

Among the decrees and ordinances of the Great Assembly, the most prominent is the fixation of the prayer of the Eighteen Benedictions. The several benedictions composing this prayer date back to remote ancient times. The Patriarchs were their authors, and the work of the Great Assembly was to put them together in the order in which we now have them. We know how each of the benedictions originated: 1. When Abraham was saved from the furnace, the angels spoke: “Blessed art Thou, O Lord, the Shield of Abraham,” which is the essence of the first of the Eighteen. 2. When Isaac lay stunned by fright on Mount Moriah, God sent His dew to revive him, whereupon the angels spoke: “Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who quickenest the dead.” 3. When Jacob arrived at the gates of heaven and proclaimed the holiness of God, the angels spoke: “Blessed art Thou, O Lord, Thou holy God.” 4. When Pharaoh was about to make Joseph the ruler over Egypt, and it appeared that he was unacquainted with the seventy tongues which an Egyptian sovereign must know, the angel Gabriel came and taught him those languages, whereupon the angels spoke: “Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who graciously bestowest knowledge.” 5. When Reuben committed the trespass against his father, sentence of death was pro-



nounced upon him in the heavens. But when he repented, he was permitted to continue to live, and the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who hast delight in repentance." 6. When Judah had committed a trespass against Tamar, and confessing his guilt obtained forgiveness, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who pardonest greatly." 7. When Israel was sore oppressed by Mizraim, and God proclaimed his redemption, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who redeemest Israel." 8. When the angel Raphael came to Abraham to soothe the pain of his circumcision, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who healest the sick." 9. When Israel's sowing in the land of the Philistines bore an abundant harvest, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who blessest the years." 10. When Jacob was reunited with Joseph and Simon in Egypt, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who gatherest the dispersed of Thy people Israel." 11. When the Torah was revealed and God communicated the code of laws to Moses, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who lovest righteousness and justice." 12. When the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who shatterest the enemy and humiliatest the presumptuous." 13. When Joseph laid his hands on the eyes of his father Jacob, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who art the stay and the support of the pious." 14. When Solomon built the Temple, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who buildest Jerusalem." 15. When the children of Israel singing hymns of praise unto God passed through the Red Sea, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who causest the hour of salvation to sprout forth." 16. When God lent a gracious ear to the prayer of the suffering Israelites in Egypt, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who hearest our prayer." 17. When the Shekinah descended between the

Cherubim in the Tabernacle, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who wilt restore Thy Divine Presence to Jerusalem." 18. When Solomon dedicated his Temple, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, whose Name is worthy of praise." 19. When Israel entered the Holy Land, the angels spoke: "Blessed art Thou, O Lord, who establishest peace."<sup>58</sup>

---

56. Abot 1.1, which reads: Moses received the Torah from Sinai, and delivered it to Joshua, and Joshua to the elders (Josh. 24.31), and the elders to the prophets, and the prophets delivered it to the men of the Great Synagogue. The Great Synagogue was so called because it restored the attribute of "greatness" to God in addressing Him, as did Moses, as the "great God, the mighty, and the awful" (Deut. 10.7). Jeremiah spoke of the "great and mighty God" (Jer. 32.18), omitting the attribute "awful", because "God is awful out of the holy place" (Ps. 68.36), and in his days the holy place (the Temple) was destroyed. Daniel (Dan. 9.4) described God as great and awful, but not as mighty, saying: His children are in chains, and where then is His might manifested? The men of the Great Synagogue, on the other hand, restored all the attributes of God (comp. Nehem. 9.32 and the beginning of the 'Amidah), maintaining that the awfulness and might of God are manifested in His permitting the wicked nations to do what they like. See Yerushalmi Berakot 7, 11c; Megillah 3, 74c; Yoma 69b; Tehillim 18, 164. Comp. also Berakot 33b. Thus the men of the Great Synagogue, though not all of them were prophets (opinions differ as to the number of the prophets who were among these one hundred and twenty men; comp. Yerushalmi Megillah 1, 70d; Berakot 2, 4d; Ruth R. 2.4; Megillah 17b; comp. also ARN, both versions 1, 2; Tosefta 'Erubin 11.22), saw much deeper than Jeremiah and Daniel. See the quotation from an unknown Midrash in Midrash Talpiyyot, whence it is also incorporated in Toledot Adam 1, 26b. Among the members of the Great Synagogue were, besides Ezra and Mordecai (the latter lived more than four hundred years; comp. *Seder ha-Dorot*, 3404), Zerubbabel, Nehemiah, the high priest, Joshua, as well as Daniel's three companions, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah. Comp. the geonic *Seder Tannaim* in Mahzor Vitry 481 and 463, as well as Maimonides, in his introduction to *Mishneh Torah*. The latter quite correctly understands the talmudic-midrashic view about the Great Synagogue to be based on the narrative in Neh. 8–10. This passage, combined with Ezra 2.2, lends scriptural authority to the view of the Rabbis. Maimonides undoubtedly iden-



tified Mishael (Neh. 8.4), Azariah (10.3), and Hananiah (10.22) with Daniel's three companions. The view that Daniel was a priest (comp. note 6) is likewise based upon the identification of the priest Daniel (Neh. 10.7) with the famous Daniel. Maimonides, *loc. cit.*, gives the "chain of tradition" from Moses to R. Ashi, the compiler of the Babylonian Talmud, extending over forty generations. Ezra and the men of the Great Synagogue form the middle of the chain, since Baruch, the teacher of Ezra (compare also p. 355), is the twentieth from Moses. Later authorities extend the chain of tradition until the last of the Geonim; comp. 2 Seder 'Olam, 163–165; Seder 'Olam Zuta, 176, as well as *Seder ha-Kabbalah* by R. Abraham ibn Daud. As to the activities of the Great Synagogue, the following are the most notable ones. They edited or declared as canonical the books of Ezekiel, Daniel, Esther, and the Minor Prophets. See Baba Batra 15a (as to the word "write", see footnote 89 on p. 1061); comp. also 2 Seder 'Olam, 174, where it is said that Ezra "wrote" the Book of Judges. Very interesting is the statement found in this chronicle, p. 162, to the effect that Moses made use, for the Pentateuch, of the writings which came down from former generations. Josephus, *Contra Apionem*, 1.8, and Seder 'Olam R. 30, maintain that at the end of the Persian period the prophetic spirit departed from among Israel, and this necessitated the final canonization of the holy writings. These authorities very likely also have in mind the activity of the Great Synagogue in connection with the Canon; comp. Tan. Beshallah 16. The men of the Great Synagogue introduced the tripartite division of the oral law, classifying it into Midrash, Halakah, and Haggada; Yerushalmi Shekalim 5 (beginning). Hence the Mishnah contains statements going directly back to these great men; comp. Abot 1.1; Sanhedrin 109b, with reference to the Mishnah 10.1 (see, however, Tan. B. III, 43, where *חכמי המשנה* can hardly mean the men of the Great Synagogue); Megillah 10b, where a haggadic rule is ascribed to them. They introduced the Feast of Purim, and determined the days when it should be celebrated. See Megillah 2a; Yerushalmi 1, 70d; compare footnote 193 on p. 1179. On the view that they built up the entire ritual, see note 58. They also ordained that the tithes and the Terumah should be given, though according to the biblical law these obligations ceased when the Jews were exiled. They drew up a document to the effect that they had taken anew upon themselves these duties, and left it in the Temple over night. In the morning they found the heavenly seal placed under the names attached to the document. See Ruth R. 2.4. Very remarkable is the statement of ER 27, 138 according to which the Great Synagogue was

acting in Babylonia at the time of Ezekiel. Comp. *Jewish Encyclopedia*, s. v. "The Great Synagogue".

57. Yoma 69b. In Shir 7.8 two views are given. According to one, the "desire for idolatry" was eradicated from among Israel in the days of Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah (they belonged to the Great Synagogue; comp. preceding note); but the other view maintains that this happened in the time of Mordecai and Esther; comp. also 'Arakin 32b. In the Babylonian myth about Ishtar's descent into hell it is also said that during her absence from the earth all creatures lost their desire and appetite for any enjoyment. At present Satan is blind, and thus his power is weakened; but in the time to come the evil inclination will entirely disappear from among men, who will be like angels. See BR 48.11.

58. Aggadat Tefillat Shemoneh Esreh 54–55, and, in a somewhat different form, *Eshkol*, I, 19. On the legends presupposed in this midrashic writing, see also pp. 6, 204, 229–230, 260; also pp. 339, 345, 366. "The men of the Great Synagogue formulated the benedictions and the prayers, as well as the benedictions for Kiddush and Habbalah." On the other hand, the view is given that the three patriarchs instituted the three daily prayers: Abraham the morning prayer, Isaac the afternoon prayer, and Jacob the evening prayer. Comp. Berakot 26b and 33b; Yerushalmi 4, 6d; Yoma 28b; Tan. B. I, 195–196, and V, 45 (here it is said that Moses established the daily prayers); Tan. Hayye Sarah 5 and Ki-Tissa 23; Tehillim 19, 164 (the text of Yerushalmi Berakot 7, 11c, is here changed, and instead of *מטבע תפלה* we have *סדר תפלה*, thus making Moses the author of the 'Amidah), and 55, 291–292; Mishle 22, 93; BR 60.14 and 68.9; BaR 2.1. Besides Moses and the patriarchs, the following prophets and kings are said to have contributed to the prayer-book. Joshua composed *'Alenu* on his entering into the Holy Land, and *'Al Ken Nekawweh Leka* at the time when Achan confessed his theft. See *Seder ha-Yom* ע'לינו; Mahkim, 125; Sha'are Teshubah 20a–21a (Hazan's edition; R. Hai Gaon's responsum dealing with the authorship of Joshua is certainly a forgery); Zunz, *Synagogale Poesie*, 4. Solomon is the author of *Yishtabbah* (Orehot Hayyim, 1, 6d; Zunz, *loc. cit.*), while another king, Hezekiah, composed *Adonai Elohe Israel*; *Seder ha-Yom*, *ad loc.*, and Zunz, *loc. cit.* *Shoken 'Ad* is a composition of Isaac's, and is an acrostic containing not only his own name, but also that of his wife Rebekah; Mahzor Vitry 152. On *Hashkibenu*, see refer also to p. 537. On the view that grace after meals was composed by Moses, see also pp. 573–575. Joshua added one benediction to the grace after meals, and later on David and Solomon added another. See Berakot 48b.



## XXIII ESTHER

### THE FEAST FOR THE GRANDEES

**T**he Book of Esther is the last of the Scriptural writings. The subsequent history of Israel and all his suffering we know only through oral tradition. For this reason the heroine of the last canonical book was named Esther, that is, Venus, the morning-star, which sheds its light after all the other stars have ceased to shine, and while the sun still delays to rise. Thus the deeds of Queen Esther cast a ray of light forward into Israel's history at its darkest.<sup>1</sup>

The Jews at the time of Ahasuerus were like the dove about to enter her nest wherein a snake lies coiled. Yet she cannot withdraw, because a falcon bides without to swoop down upon her. In Shushan the Jews were in the clutches of Haman, and in other lands they were at the mercy of many murderous enemies to their race, ready to do the bidding of Haman—to destroy and to slay them, and cause them to perish.<sup>2</sup>

But the rescue of the Jews from the hand of their adversaries is only a part of this wonderful chapter in the history of Israel. No less important is the exalted station to which they rose in the realm of Ahasuerus after the fall of Haman, especially the power and dignity to which Esther herself attained. On this account the mag-

nificent feast prepared by Ahasuerus for his subjects belongs to the history of Esther. The splendor of his feast is the gauge whereby to measure the wealth and power she later enjoyed.<sup>3</sup>

Ahasuerus was not the king of Persia by right of birth. He owed his position to his vast wealth, with which he purchased dominion over the whole world.<sup>4</sup>

He had various reasons for giving a gorgeous feast. The third year of his reign was the seventieth since the beginning of Nebuchadnezzar's rule, and Ahasuerus thought it quite certain that the time had passed for the fulfilment of the prophecy of Jeremiah foretelling the return of Israel to the Holy Land. The Temple was still in ruins, and Ahasuerus was convinced that the Jewish kingdom would never again be restored. Needless to say, it was not Jeremiah who erred. Not with the accession of King Nebuchadnezzar had the prophet's term of years begun, but with the destruction of Jerusalem. Reckoned in this way, the seventy years of desolation were at an end exactly at the time when Darius, the son of Ahasuerus, permitted the rebuilding of the Temple.<sup>5</sup>

Beside this mistaken cause for a celebration, there were reasons personal to Ahasuerus why he desired to give expression to joy. A short time



before, he had crushed a rebellion against himself, and this victory he wanted to celebrate with pomp and ceremony.<sup>6</sup> The first part of the celebration was given over to the hundred and twenty-seven rulers of the hundred and twenty-seven provinces of his empire. His purpose was to win the devotion of those of them with whom otherwise he did not come in direct contact. But can it be said with certainty that this was a good policy? If he had not first made sure of the loyalty of his capital, was it not dangerous to have these rulers near him in case of an insurrection?

For six whole months he celebrated the feast for the grandees—the nobles and the high officials, the latter of whom, according to the constitution, were all required to be Medians under the Persian king Ahasuerus, as they would have had to be Persians under a Median king.<sup>7</sup>

This was the program of the feast: In the first month Ahasuerus showed his treasures to his guests; in the second, the delegates of the king's royal vassals saw them; in the third the presents were exposed to view; in the fourth the guests were invited to admire his literary possessions, among them the sacred scroll; in the fifth his pearl and diamond-studded ornaments of gold were put on exhibition; and in the sixth he displayed the treasures which had been given him as tribute.<sup>8</sup> All this vast wealth, however, appertained to the crown, it was not his personal property. When Nebuchadnezzar felt his end draw nigh, he resolved to sink his immense treasures in the Euphrates rather than let them descend to his son Evil-merodach, so great was his miserliness. But, again, when Cyrus gave the Jews permission to build the Temple, his divinely appointed reward was that he discovered the spot in the river at which the treasures were sunk, and he was permitted to take possession of them. These were the treasures of which Ahasuerus availed himself to glorify his feast. So prodigious were they that during the six months

of the feast he unlocked six treasure-chambers daily to display their contents to his guests.<sup>9</sup>

When Ahasuerus boasted of his wealth, which he had no right to do, as his treasures had come from the Temple, God said: "Verily, has the creature of flesh and blood any possessions of his own? I alone possess treasures, for 'the silver is mine, and the gold is mine.'"<sup>10</sup>

Among the treasures displayed were the Temple vessels, which Ahasuerus had desecrated in his drinking bouts. When the noble Jews who had been invited to the capital saw these, they began to weep, and they refused to take further part in the festivities. Thereupon the king commanded that a separate place be assigned to the Jews, so that their eyes might be spared the painful sight.<sup>11</sup>

This was not the only incident that aroused poignant memories in them, for Ahasuerus arrayed himself in the robes of state once belonging to the high priests at Jerusalem, and this, too, made the Jews smart uncomfortably.<sup>12</sup> The Persian king had wanted to mount the throne of Solomon besides, but herein he was thwarted, because its ingenious construction was an enigma to him. Egyptian artificers tried to fashion a throne after the model of Solomon's, but in vain. After two years' work they managed to produce a weak imitation of it, and upon this Ahasuerus sat during his splendid feast.<sup>13</sup>

---

1. Yoma 29a; Megillah 13a (here several other etymologies of the name Esther are given; comp. also note 67); Tehillim 22, 185. On the meaning of the name Esther, comp. also 1 and 2 Targum Esther 2.7; Hullin 139b; see pp. 1141–1142. The description of Mordecai in 2 Targum Esther (end) as "Venus that glitters among the stars and is like the dawn of the morning" is taken from the old piyyut מראה כהן (compare footnote 42 on p. 959), and has nothing to do with the etymology of his name. He who dreams of the Book of Esther will live to see miracles performed for him. See Berakot 57b.

2. 2 Panim Aherim 55; 2 Targum Esther 1.1 (towards the end).



3. Esther R. 1, 9.9; Abba Gorion 12; Midrash Tan-naim 37.

4. Megillah 11a, which gives also the different view that Ahasuerus owed his throne to his valor and other merits. In contrast to these views, which assume that Ahasuerus did not inherit the throne from his father, 2 Targum Esther 1. 1, 2, describes him as the son of Cyrus the Persian, who was the son of Darius the Mede. Alkabez, 20b, quotes from a Targum on Esther the statement that Ahasuerus was the son of "Cyrus from the empire of Asia". Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.1, in agreement with the Septuagint, calls the king Artaxerxes, and adds that he was known by this name "to the Greeks, whereas his real name was Cyrus." On the view that Artaxerxes was the name of all Persian kings, see Seder 'Olam 30, and footnote 7 on p. 1113. Abba Gorion 4 states that Darius was the father of Ahasuerus. The Rabbis give several etymologies of the name Ahasuerus, which is said to contain a hint as to the sad plight of Israel in the days of the bearer of this name. Comp. Megillah 11a; Esther R. 1, 1.1 and 3. On the vast wealth of Ahasuerus see p. 1130, left column.

5. Megillah 11a–11b; Seder 'Olam 28. The Talmud points out that even Daniel erred in computing the seventy years of the exile fixed by Jeremiah; compare with pp. 1114–1115 (end). See also Letter of Jeremiah 7, and the full discussion of this chronological problem in Lekah on Esther (beginning), as well as *Kad ha-Kemah*, Purim II, 43b and compare further footnote 24 on p. 1073. According to Esther R. 1, 3.15, Ahasuerus gave his feast after the work of the Temple had been stopped for three years. On Darius ("the last"), the son of Ahasuerus and Esther, see WR 13.3; Kallah 1, 6a; Esther R. 1.1. Compare with pp. 1111–1112 in connection with the cause of Belshazzar's feast.

6. Abba Gorion 8, which gives also the different view that the personal reason for the feast was the king's birthday; 2 Panim Aherim 58; 1 and 2 Targum Esther 1.3; Esther R. 1, 3.15, which reads: Ahasuerus prepared a feast to celebrate the completion of his magnificent throne; comp. note 13. The statement found in Septuagint Esther 1.4 that Ahasuerus celebrated with a feast his marriage to Vashti was also known to the Rabbis; see Abba Gorion 12–13 (read **מְזוּגָת לְהַדִּין שָׁחֹר** and comp. Yalkut quoted by Buber; **נִשְׂאָת** is a more common word than **מְזוּגָת**); Panim Aherim 59; 2 Targum Esther 1.9, where the text is corrupt, but MS. K with its **לְהוֹן גְּבָרָא** suggests the correct reading **לְהַדִּין גְּבָרָא**. As to the wars of Ahasuerus, who at first was a small potentate ruling over seven provinces, and finally, by wars of conquest, became the ruler of one hundred and twenty-seven provinces, see Megillah 11a; Esther R. 1, 1.7.

7. Megillah 12a; Esther R. 1, 3.18. Opinions differ as to the guests described in Esther 1.3 as princes; according to one, they were the "crowned heads" of the hundred

and twenty-seven provinces subject to Ahasuerus; but another view maintains that they were the sons of the "crowned heads". Comp. 2 Targum Esther 1.3; Abba Gorion 8; Panim Aherim 58. By the "nobles" (**פִּרְתָּמִים**) are meant the *Decumani* and *Augustiani*, who were the guests of honor; Esther R. 1, 3.19. Compare footnote 52 in text on p. 1086. As to Ahasuerus' lack of common sense, see note 49.

8. Aggadat Esther 10–11.

9. Abba Gorion 8–9; Panim Aherim 58; Esther R. 1.4; ShR 9.7; 1 and 2 Targum Esther 1.4 (in 1 Targum **שִׁית** is to be struck out, as the hundred and eighty kings correspond to the number of days mentioned in Esther 1.4). Comp. also PRE 49.

10. Panim Aherim 58; 2 Targum Esther 1.4.

11. Abba Gorion 9; Panim Aherim 58; 2 Targum Esther 1.4. Comp. also Esther R. 1, 4.2, according to the reading given in *Mattenot Kehunnah*, *ad loc.* Septuagint on Esther 1.7 speaks of the precious cup used by the king at the feast; comp. 2 Targum Esther 1.11.

12. Megillah 12a; ShR 9.7; Esther R. 1.4; Panim Aherim 58.

13. Abba Gorion 2–8; Targum Esther 1.2. Comp. also 2 Targum 1.2, 4, and 7–8; Aggadat Esther 8–9; Esther R. 1.2, 12 and 1.3, 15. As to the fate of Solomon's throne, refer also to p. 969, and the vast literature on the subject given by Salzberger, *Salomos Tempelbau*, 60–74. The sources differ greatly as to the history of the throne. The strangest form of this legend is found in 2 Targum Esther, *loc. cit.*, which reads: When Nebuchadnezzar attempted to ascend and to sit upon Solomon's throne, in possession of which he came at the conquest of Jerusalem, he did not know its mechanism. When he put his foot on the first steps, a golden lion stretched out its right paw, and struck him on his left foot, so that he became lame for the rest of his life. After the conquest of Babylon by Alexander the Macedonian, Solomon's throne was brought by him to Egypt. Shishak the king of Egypt attempted to ascend the throne, as did Nebuchadnezzar before him, and the result of his presumptuousness was the same: his leg was broken by the golden lion, and he was therefore called the "lame Pharaoh" unto the day of his death. When Epiphanes the son of Antiochus (or perhaps Alofernes; the texts have **אֲנִיפּוֹרְנִיס** and **אֲנִיפּוֹנִיס**) destroyed Egypt, he took the throne with him, and put it on a ship (to be sent to Greece). While being moved about, a leg of the throne was loosened from the golden chain holding it (read **מִשִּׁשְׁלֵתָא** instead of **כְּשִׁשְׁלֵתָא**). All the artists and goldsmiths of the world were brought to repair the damage, but none until this day succeeded. When Cyrus arose after Epiphanes, he was found worthy to be permitted to ascend and sit on Solomon's throne, because he assisted in the building of the Temple. Leaving the question of chronology out of consideration (it is hardly conceivable that Targum believed that



Shishak lived after Nebuchadnezzar, and Cyrus after Epiphanes), one does not understand why the "pious" Cyrus is made to sit on a broken throne. It seems therefore certain that the text is corrupt, and that the order of the kings was: Shishak (compare with pp. 969 and 985), Nebuchadnezzar, Cyrus (the only one who was found worthy to sit on it), Alexander the Macedonian, who in his great wisdom did not make any attempt to ascend the throne, and Epiphanes, in whose time the throne was damaged, so that no further attempts were made to ascend it. The statement in Esther R. 1.2, 12, that the "fragments" of the throne "could still be seen at Rome" as late as the second century C. E., is very likely connected with the above legend about its having been damaged in the time of Epiphanes. That it was finally brought to Rome is the natural inference from the preceding statement given in Esther R., to the effect that it came from Jerusalem to Babylon, from there to Media, from there to Greece, and finally from Greece to Rome. The "four kingdoms" were each in its time in possession of Solomon's throne, the symbol of "Cosmocratia". Comp. *ibid.*, which reads: Nebuchadnezzar sat on this throne; Cyrus sat on it; and when Ahasuerus became king, he too wished to ascend it, but was prevented (by the grandees of his realm) from doing so, as he was not a "Cosmocrator", like the other two. Compare with footnote 80 on p. 1096.

## THE FESTIVITIES IN SHUSHAN

At the expiration of the hundred and eighty days allotted to the feast for the nobles, Ahasuerus arranged a great celebration for the residents of Shushan, the capital city of Elam. From the creation of the world until after the deluge the unwritten law had been in force, that the first-born son of the patriarchs was to be the ruler of the world. Thus, Seth was the successor to Adam, and he was followed in turn by Enosh, and so the succession went on, from first-born son to first-born son, down to Noah and his oldest son Shem. Now, the first-born son of Shem was Elam, and, according to custom, he should have been given the universal dominion which was his heritage. Shem, being a prophet, knew that Abraham and his posterity, the Israelites, would not spring from the family of Elam, but

from that of Arpachshad. Therefore he named Arpachshad as his successor, and through him rulership descended to Abraham, and so to Isaac, Jacob, and Judah, and to David and his posterity, down to the last Judean king Zedekiah, who was deprived of his sovereignty by Nebuchadnezzar.

Then it was that God spake thus: "So long as the government rested in the hands of My children, I was prepared to exercise patience. The misdeeds of the one were made good by the other. If one of them was wicked, the other was pious. But now that the dominion has been wrested from My children, it shall at least revert to its original possessors. Elam was the first-born son of Shem, and his seed shall be given the rule." So it happened that Shushan, the capital city of Elam, became the seat of government.<sup>14</sup>

That there were any celebrations in Shushan was due to Haman, who even in those early days was devising intrigues against the Jews. He appeared before Ahasuerus, and said: "O king, this people is a peculiar people. May it please thee to destroy it." Ahasuerus replied: "I fear the God of this people; He is very mighty, and I bear in mind what befell Pharaoh for his wicked treatment of the Israelites." "Their God", said Haman, "hates an unchaste life. Do thou, therefore, prepare feasts for them, and order them to take part in the merry-makings. Have them eat and drink and act as their heart desireth, so that their God may become wrathful against them."

When Mordecai heard of the feasts that were planned, he advised the Jews not to join in them.<sup>15</sup> All the prominent men of his people and many of the lower classes took his advice to heart. They fled from Shushan, to avoid being compelled to take part in the festivities.<sup>16</sup> The rest remained in the city and yielded to force; they participated in the celebrations, and even permitted themselves to eat of food prepared by the heathen, though the king had taken care not



to offend the religious conscience of the Jews in such details.<sup>17</sup> He had been so punctilious that there was no need for them to drink wine touched by the hand of an idolater, let alone eat forbidden food. The arrangements for the feast were entirely in the charge of Haman and Mordecai, so that neither Jew nor Gentile might absent himself for religious reasons.<sup>18</sup>

It was the aim of the king to let every guest follow the inclination of his heart. When Ahasuerus issued the order, that the officers of his house were to “do according to every man’s pleasure”, God became wroth with him. “Thou villain,” He said, “canst thou do every man’s pleasure? Suppose two men love the same woman, can both marry her? Two vessels sail forth together from a port, the one desires a south wind, the other a north wind. Canst thou produce a wind to satisfy the two? On the morrow Haman and Mordecai will appear before thee. Wilt thou be able to side with both?”<sup>19</sup>

The scene of the festivities was in the royal gardens. The upper branches of the high trees were made to interlace with each other, so as to form vaulted arches, and the smaller trees with aromatic foliage were taken up out of the ground, and placed in artfully constructed tents. From tree to tree stretched curtains of byssus, white and sapphire blue, and vivid green and royal purple, fastened to their supports by ropes depending from round silver beams, these in turn resting on pillars of red, green, yellow, white, and glittering blue marble. The couches were made of delicate draperies, their frames stood on silver feet, and the rods attached to them were of gold. The floor was tiled with crystal and marble, outlined with precious stones, whose brilliance illuminated the scene far and wide.<sup>20</sup>

The wine and the other beverages were drunk only from golden vessels, yet Ahasuerus was so rich that no drinking cup was used more than a single time.<sup>21</sup> But magnificent as these

utensils of his were, when the holy vessels of the Temple were brought in, the golden splendor of the others was dimmed; it turned dull as lead. The wine was in each case older than its drinker. To prevent intoxication from unaccustomed drinks, every guest was served with the wine indigenous to his native place. In general, Ahasuerus followed the Jewish rather than the Persian manner. It was a banquet rather than a drinking bout.<sup>22</sup> In Persia a custom prevailed that every participant in a banquet of wine had to drain a huge beaker far exceeding the drinking capacity of any human being, and do it he must, though he lost reason and life. The office of butler accordingly was very lucrative, because the guests at such wassails were in the habit of bribing him to purchase the liberty of drinking as little as they pleased or dared. This Persian habit of compelling excess in drinking was ignored at Ahasuerus’s banquet; every guest did as he chose.<sup>23</sup>

The royal bounty did not show itself in food and drink alone. The king’s guests could also indulge in the pleasures of the dance if they were so minded. Dancers were provided, who charmed the company with their artistic figures displayed upon the purple-covered floor.<sup>24</sup> That the enjoyment of the participants might in no wise be marred, as by separation from their families, all were permitted to bring their households with them,<sup>25</sup> and merchants were released from the taxes imposed upon them.<sup>26</sup>

So sure was Ahasuerus of his success as a host that he dared say to his Jewish guests: “Will your God be able to match this banquet in the future world?” Whereunto the Jews replied: “The banquet God will prepare for the righteous in the world to come is that of which it is written, ‘No eye hath seen it but God’s; He will accomplish it for them that wait upon Him.’ If God were to offer us a banquet like unto thine, O king, we should say, Such as this we ate at the table of Ahasuerus.”<sup>27</sup>



14. 2 Panim Aherim 56–57; 2 Targum Esther 1.2, 3; comp. Rashi on Micah 1.15. On Elam, comp. also Sanhedrin 24a.

15. Abba Gorion 32; Esther R. 3.9, 19. According to the first source, Ahasuerus did not force the Jews to take part in the festivities arranged by him. On God's hatred of unchastity, refer to p. 139; p. 778; and footnote 45 on p. 1085.

16. Abba Gorion 9; Esther R. 1.5.

17. Abba Gorion 32–33; Esther R. 3.9, 19; Shir 7.8; Megillah 12a; Aggadat Esther 11 (an alleged quotation from the Talmud). Compare both p. 1140 and p. 1159. Opinions in these sources differ as to whether Israel, because of their participation in the festivities, deserved punishment or not. According to Megillah and Shir, the trouble which overwhelmed Israel shortly after the feast was the punishment for their worshipping the idol erected by Nebuchadnezzar, a sin committed by the entire nation, with the exception of the three men who were thrown into the fiery furnace for refusing to obey the king's command. Compare footnote 83 on p. 109.

18. Megillah 12a; PRE 49. As to the desire of Ahasuerus not to offend the religious feelings of his guests, see also Abba Gorion 13, and Esther R. 1.8, which has a statement with regard to the Samaritans, who consider it unlawful to keep wine in leather casks. Comp. Geiger, *Kebuzzat Maamarim*, 73–74, and Ginzberg, Notes 389.

19. Abba Gorion 12; Esther R. 1.8.

20. 1 and 2 Targum Esther 1.5–6; Megillah 12a; Abba Gorion 12; Panim Aherim 58–59; PRE 49; Esther R. 1.5–6. In the last source the sumptuous use of expensive marble is pointed out.

21. Abba Gorion 10; Panim Aherim 59; 2 Targum Esther 1.7. According to one view given in Esther R. 1.7, the cups were of glass that glittered like gold.

22. Abba Gorion 10–11; Panim Aherim 59; PRE 39; Esther R. 1.7; Megillah 12a; 1 and 2 Targum Esther 1.7.

23. Abba Gorion 11; Panim Aherim 59; 2 Targum Esther 1.8; comp. also Esther R. 1.7, 13, where בפתקא is to be read instead of בפקתא. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.1, also points out that Ahasuerus abolished the Persian custom of compulsory drinking at this feast. The words of Septuagint on Esther 1.8 οὐ κατὰ προκείμενον νόμον express the same view.

24. Abba Gorion 10; Panim Aherim 59.

25. Esther R. 1.7, 13.

26. Megillah 12a. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.1, Ahasuerus commanded all his subjects to stop their work for some time and to attend his feast.

27. Abba Gorion 10; Esther R. 1.5; comp. also 1.4.

## VASHTI'S BANQUET

The banquet given by Queen Vashti to the women differed but slightly from Ahasuerus's. She sought to emulate her husband's example even in the point of exhibiting treasures. Six store-chambers she displayed daily to the women she had bidden as guests; aye, she did not even shrink from arraying herself in the high-priestly garments. The meats and dishes, as at Ahasuerus's table, were Palestinian, only instead of wine, liqueurs were served, and sweets.

As the weak sex is subject to sudden attacks of indisposition, the banquet was given in the halls of the palace, so that the guests might at need withdraw to the adjoining chambers. The gorgeously ornamented apartments of the palace, besides, were more attractive to the feminine taste than the natural beauties of the royal gardens, "for a woman would rather reside in beautiful chambers and possess beautiful clothes than eat fatted calves."<sup>28</sup> Nothing interested the women more than to become acquainted with the arrangement of the interior of the palace, "for women are curious to know all things." Vashti gratified their desire. She showed them all there was to be seen, describing every place as she came to it: This is the dining-hall, this the wine-room, this the bed-chamber.<sup>29</sup>

Vashti, too, was actuated by a political motive when she determined to give her banquet. By inviting the wives of the nobles entertained by her spouse, she could hold them as hostages in case the men rose in insurrection against the king.<sup>30</sup> For Vashti knew the ways of statecraft. She not only was the wife of a king, but also the daughter of a king, of Belshazzar. The night of Belshazzar's murder in his own palace, Vashti, alarmed by the confusion that ensued, and not knowing of the death of her father, fled to the



apartments in which he was in the habit of sitting. The Median Darius had already ascended the throne of Belshazzar, and so it happened that Vashti, instead of finding the hoped-for refuge with her father, ran straight into the hands of his successor. But he had compassion with her, and gave her to his son Ahasuerus for wife.

---

28. Abba Gorion 13; Panim Aherim 59–60 (here it is stated that the women refused to participate in the desecration of the holy vessels in which the wine was served to the men; they had therefore to be entertained separately); Esther R. 1.9, 9–10. On the reading יין שחור “black wine”, comp. note 6, where it is shown that הדין שחור “this noble man” is to be read instead. Comp. also Buber’s note 45 on Panim Aherim 59.

29. Panim Aherim 60; 1 and 2 Targum Esther 1.9.

30. Esther R. 1.9, 10.

## THE FATE OF VASHTI

**T**hough Ahasuerus had taken every precaution to prevent intemperate indulgence in wine, his banquet revealed the essential difference between Jewish and pagan festivities. When Jews are gathered about a festal board, they discuss a Halakah, or a Haggadah, or, at the least, a simple verse from the Scriptures. Ahasuerus and his boon companions rounded out the banquet with prurient talk. The Persians lauded the charms of the women of their people, while the Medians admitted none superior to the Median women. Then “the fool” Ahasuerus up and spake: “My wife is neither a Persian nor a Median, but a Chaldean, yet she excels all in beauty. Would you convince yourselves of the truth of my words?” “Yes,” shouted the company, who were deep in their cups, “but that we may properly judge of her natural charms, let her appear before us unadorned, yea, without any apparel whatsoever,” and Ahasuerus agreed to the shameless condition.<sup>31</sup>

The thing was from God, that so insensate a demand should be made of Vashti by the king. A whole week Mordecai had spent in fasting and praying, supplicating God to mete out punishment to Ahasuerus for his desecration of the Temple utensils. On the seventh day of the week, on the Sabbath, when Mordecai after his long fast took food, because fasting is forbidden on the Sabbath day, God heard his prayer and the prayer of the Sanhedrin.<sup>32</sup> He sent down seven Angels of Confusion to put an end to Ahasuerus’s pleasure. They were named: Mehuman, Confusion; Biztha, Destruction of the House; Harbonah, Annihilation; Bigtha and Abagtha, the Pressers of the Winepress, for God had resolved to crush the court of Ahasuerus as one presses the juice from grapes in a press; Zethar, Observer of Immorality; and Carcas, Knocker.<sup>33</sup>

There was a particular reason why this interruption of the feast took place on the Sabbath. Vashti was in the habit of forcing Jewish maidens to spin and weave on the Sabbath day, and to add to her cruelty, she would deprive them of all their clothes. It was on the Sabbath, therefore, that her punishment overtook her, and for the same reason it was put into the king’s heart to have her appear in public stripped of all clothing.<sup>34</sup>

Vashti recoiled from the king’s revolting order. But it must not be supposed that she shrank from carrying it out because it offended her moral sense. She was not a whit better than her husband. She fairly revelled in the opportunity his command gave her to indulge in carnal pleasures once again, for it was exactly a week since she had been delivered of a child. But God sent the angel Gabriel to her to disfigure her countenance. Suddenly signs of leprosy appeared on her forehead, and the marks of other diseases on her person.<sup>35</sup> In this state it was impossible for her to show herself to the king. She made a virtue of necessity, and worded her refusal to ap-



pear before him arrogantly: "Say to Ahasuerus: 'O thou fool and madman! Hast thou lost thy reason by too much drinking? I am Vashti, the daughter of Belshazzar, who was a son of Nebuchadnezzar, the Nebuchadnezzar who scoffed at kings and unto whom princes were a derision, and even thou wouldst not have been deemed worthy to run before my father's chariot as a courier. Had he lived, I should never have been given unto thee for wife. Not even those who suffered the death penalty during the reign of my forefather Nebuchadnezzar were stripped bare of their clothing, and thou demandest that I appear naked in public! Why, it is for thine own sake that I refuse to heed thy order. Either the people will decide that I do not come up to thy description of me, and will proclaim thee a liar, or, bewitched by my beauty, they will kill thee in order to gain possession of me, saying, Shall this fool be the master of so much beauty?' "<sup>36</sup>

The first lady of the Persian aristocracy encouraged Vashti to adhere to her resolution. "Better," her adviser said, when Ahasuerus's second summons was delivered to Vashti, together with his threat to kill her unless she obeyed, "better the king should kill thee and annihilate thy beauty, than that thy person should be admired by other eyes than thy husband's, and thus thy name be disgraced, and the name of thy ancestors."<sup>37</sup>

When Vashti refused to obey the repeated command to appear before the king and the hundred and twenty-seven crowned princes of the realm, Ahasuerus turned to the Jewish sages, and requested them to pass sentence upon his queen. Their thoughts ran in this wise: If we condemn the queen to death, we shall suffer for it as soon as Ahasuerus becomes sober, and hears it was at our advice that she was executed. But if we admonish him unto clemency now, while he is intoxicated, he will accuse us of not paying due deference to the majesty of the king. They

therefore resolved upon neutrality. "Since the destruction of the Temple," they said to the king, "since we have not dwelt in our land, we have lost the power to give sage advice, particularly in matters of life and death. Better seek counsel with the wise men of Ammon and Moab, who have ever dwelt at ease in their land, like wine that hath settled on its lees, and hath not been emptied from vessel to vessel."<sup>38</sup>

Thereupon Ahasuerus put his charge against Vashti before the seven princes of Persia, Carshena, Shethar, Admatha, Tarshish, Meres, Marsena, and Memucan, who came from Africa, India, Edom, Tarsus, Mursa, Resen, and Jerusalem, respectively.<sup>39</sup> The names of these seven officials, each representing his country, were indicative of their office. Carshena had the care of the animals, Shethar of the wine, Admatha of the land, Tarshish of the palace, Meres of the poultry, Marsena of the bakery, and Memucan provided for the needs of all in the palace, his wife acting as housekeeper.<sup>40</sup>

This Memucan, a native of Jerusalem, was none other than Daniel, called Memucan, "the appointed one", because he was designated by God to perform miracles and bring about the death of Vashti.<sup>41</sup>

When the king applied for advice to these seven nobles, Memucan was the first to speak up, though in rank he was inferior to the other six, as appears from the place his name occupies in the list. However, it is customary, as well among Persians as among Jews, in passing death sentence, to begin taking the vote with the youngest of the judges on the bench, to prevent the juniors and the less prominent from being overawed by the opinion of the more influential.<sup>42</sup>

It was Memucan's advice to the king to make an example of Vashti, so that in future no woman should dare refuse obedience to her husband. Daniel-Memucan had had unpleasant experiences in his conjugal life. He had married a



wealthy Persian lady, who insisted upon speaking to him in her own language exclusively.<sup>43</sup> Besides, personal antipathy existed between Daniel and Vashti. He had in a measure been the cause of her refusal to appear before the king and his princes. Vashti hated Daniel, because it was he who had prophesied his death to her father, and the extinction of his dynasty. She could not endure his sight, wherefore she would not show herself to the court in his presence.<sup>44</sup> Also, it was Daniel who, by pronouncing the Name of God, had caused the beauty of Vashti to vanish, and her face to be marred.<sup>45</sup> In consequence of all this, Daniel advised, not only that Vashti should be cast off, but that she should be made harmless forever by the hangman's hand. His advice was endorsed by his colleagues, and approved by the king. That the king might not delay the execution of the death sentence, and Daniel himself thus incur danger to his own life, he made Ahasuerus swear the most solemn oath known to the Persians, that it would be carried out forthwith. At the same time a royal edict was promulgated, making it the duty of wives to obey their husbands. With special reference to Daniel's domestic difficulties, it was specified that the wife must speak the language of her lord and master.<sup>46</sup>

The execution of Vashti brought most disastrous consequences in its train. His whole empire, which is tantamount to saying the whole world, rose against Ahasuerus. The widespread rebellion was put down only after his marriage with Esther, but not before it had inflicted upon him the loss of one hundred and twenty-seven provinces, the half of his kingdom. Such was his punishment for refusing permission to rebuild the Temple. It was only after the fall of Haman, when Mordecai had been made the chancellor of the empire, that Ahasuerus succeeded in reducing the revolted provinces to submission.<sup>47</sup>

The death of Vashti was not undeserved punishment, for it had been she who had pre-

vented the king from giving his consent to the rebuilding of the Temple. "Wilt thou rebuild the Temple," said she, reproachfully, "which my ancestors destroyed?"<sup>48</sup>

---

31. Abba Gorion 13, 14–15; Panim Aherim 60–61; Esther R. introduction (end) and 1.9, 9, as well as 1.11–12; Tehillim 10, 96, and 17, 133; Megillah 12b; 1 and 2 Targum Esther 1.10 and 12 (in 1 Targum Esther Vashti is said to have been the daughter of Evil-merodach). As to the father of Ahasuerus, see note 4. The legend about Vashti's refusal to appear naked reminds one of the story told by Herodotus, I, 8, about Candaules and Gyges.

32. 1 Targum Esther 1.10. On the desecration of the holy vessels, refer also to footnote 28 on p. 1134.

33. Abba Gorion 14; Esther R., Targum, and Lekah on 1.10.

34. Megillah 12b; Targum and Esther R. on 1.10; Aggadat Esther 13 (bottom). Comp., on the other hand, 2 Targum Esther 2.2, which reads: She did not deserve capital punishment, but it was so decreed against her in heaven, in order that the offspring of Nebuchadnezzar should perish. A similar view is found in Panim Aherim 61; compare also p. 1137. Compare also footnote 56 on p. 1088.

35. Megillah 12b (בִּירוּשָׁלַיִם), in Rashi and Tosafot, *ad loc.*, is an erroneous reading of the abbreviation ב"ש, i. e., בגזרה שוה; comp. ר"אב, No. 451, and Ginzberg's remarks on it in the Additions to Raschkes' edition of ר"אב; see also Rabinovicz on Megillah, *loc. cit.*; Astruc, 215, and Buber, *Yerushalayim ha-Benuyah* No. 51; Midrash Tan-naim 174; quotation from an unknown Midrash by Alkabez, 37a, and 42 (bottom). According to PRE 49, Ahasuerus followed the custom of the kings of Media, who had dancers appear before them at their carousals to entertain them. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.1, Vashti refused to obey the king because the Persian law prohibited married women showing their faces to any man but their husband. On the favorable comments by the Rabbis on Vashti's refusal, refer to pp. 1135–1136, and p. 1167. The statement: "*Venit Gabriel et fecit et membrum virile*", is missing in many editions of Megillah, *loc. cit.*

36. Abba Gorion 15–16 (read, as in Panim Aherim, מוֹמִסִּים "mimus", an allusion to מִשְׁחָק); Panim Aherim 60–61; Esther R.; 1 and 2 Targum on 1.12; Megillah 12b. Comp. PRE 49. The statement that Nebuchadnezzar did not strip the convicts naked before their execution is based on Dan. 3.21.

37. 2 Targum Esther 1.12. Comp. note 35.

38. Megillah 12b; Esther R. 1.13. The Jewish sages before whom Ahasuerus put the case of Vashti belonged to



the tribe of Issachar; Esther R., *loc. cit.*, as well as Abba Gorion 15 and Targum Esther 1.13. Comp. also Megillah, *loc. cit.* (שידועין לעבר שנים), and Index, s. v. "Issachar, Tribe of".

39. Abba Gorion 16–17; 2 *Panim Aherim* 61; 2 Targum Esther 1.14. The text of none of these sources is quite correct; but it is certain that this Haggadah considers the seven men as representing the seven countries enumerated there. The names, however, of the fifth and sixth countries are corrupt.

40. Esther R. 1.14. Here as well as in Megillah 12b and Targum 1.14 the seven names of the king's counsellors are explained allegorically. Comp. the allegorical interpretations of the names mentioned in Esther 1.10 as given in text on pp. 1135–1136.

41. PRE 49; 2 *Panim Aherim* 61; 2 Targum Esther 1.16. Against the identification of Memucan with Daniel, refer also to text on pp. 1137–1139, and p. 1147, where the former is identified with Haman.

42. Yerushalmi Sanhedrin 4, 22b; Esther R. 1.16. These two sources also give another view, according to which, "among the nations" the taking of the vote begins with the most prominent member of the court. On the text of Esther R., see commentaries, *ad loc.*, and Alkabez, 49b (bottom). The seven princes who sentenced Vashti to death were prominent in the affairs of state as early as the time of Belshazzar. They escaped the doom which overtook this king because they refused to participate in the desecration of the holy vessels; Esther R. 1.14. It is the unanimous opinion of the Haggadah that Vashti was killed; comp. Megillah 12b according to the correct reading in Aggadat Esther 13 (bottom); PRE 49; 2 *Panim Aherim* 61; Esther R., introduction (towards the end), and 1.21; Targum Esther 1.1 and 19; 2 Targum 2.1–2. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.2, maintains that she did not lose her life.

43. 2 Targum Esther 1.16.

44. Midrash Teman 174.

45. Aggadat Esther 15 (bottom). Abba Gorion 17 and Esther R. 1.16 give other reasons for Memucan's hatred of Vashti. Compare also footnote 97 on p. 1147.

46. 2 Targum Esther 1.18–21.

47. Tehillim 22, 194. Compare also text on pp. 1176–1178. Ahasuerus is regarded as a "cosmocrator" not only in the Talmud (Megillah 11a, which says that the one hundred and twenty-seven provinces represent the entire world) and several Midrashim (as, e. g., *Panim Aherim* 56; 2 Targum Esther 1.1, 3; Aggadat Esther 8), but also in Septuagint Esther 3.13. Other Midrashim, however, maintain that he ruled only over half of the world. Comp. PRE 11; ShR 9.7; Esther R. 1.1, 5, and 2.13. In all these Midrashim it is stated that the diminution of Ahasuerus' power was his punishment for stopping the work of the Temple. Accord-

ing to 2 Targum Esther 4.1 (beginning; the text is obscure and very likely corrupt; read דאיתבניא instead of תבניא דא), the work of the Temple was stopped after its seventy-two towers had been completed. On the "cosmocrators", see note 13 (end); vol. I, pp. 177–178, and Index, s. v. The Haggadah draws attention to the correspondence between the number of the provinces over which Ahasuerus ruled and that of the years of Sarah, who lived one hundred and twenty-seven years. The reward for Sarah's pious deeds performed during these years was that her pious descendant Esther ruled over this number of provinces. See BR 58.3; Esther R. 1.1 (end); Tehillim and *Panim Aherim*, *loc. cit.*

48. Abba Gorion 17; 2 *Panim Aherim* 60; Esther R. 2.1; Targum Esther 1.1. Comp. note 34.

## THE FOLLIES OF AHASUERUS

Ahasuerus is the prototype of the unstable, foolish ruler. He sacrificed his wife Vashti to his friend Haman-Memucan, and later on again his friend Haman to his wife Esther.<sup>49</sup> Folly possessed him, too, when he arranged extravagant festivities for guests from afar, before he had won, by means of kindly treatment, the friendship of his surroundings, of the inhabitants of his capital.<sup>50</sup> Ridiculous is the word that describes his edict bidding wives obey their husbands. Every one who read it exclaimed: "To be sure, a man is master in his own house!" However, the silly decree served its purpose. It revealed his true character to the subjects of Ahasuerus, and thenceforward they attached little importance to his edicts. This was the reason why the decree of annihilation directed against the Jews failed of the effect expected by Haman and Ahasuerus. The people regarded it as but another of the king's foolish pranks, and therefore were ready to acquiesce in the revocation of the edict when it came.<sup>51</sup>

The king's true character appeared when he grew sober after the episode with Vashti. Learning that he had had her executed, he burst out



furiously against his seven counsellors, and in turn ordered them to death.<sup>52</sup>

Foolish, too, is the only word to describe the manner in which he set about discovering the most beautiful woman in his dominion. King David on a similar occasion wisely sent out messengers who were to bring to him the most beautiful maiden in the land, and there was none who was not eager to enjoy the honor of giving a daughter of his to the king. Ahasuerus's method was to have his servants gather together a multitude of beautiful maidens and women from all parts, and among them he proposed to make choice. The result of this system was that the women concealed themselves to avoid being taken into the harem of the king, when it was not certain that they would be found worthy of becoming his queen.<sup>53</sup>

With his stupidity Ahasuerus combined wantonness. He ordered force to be used in taking the maidens from their parents and the wives from their husbands, and then he confined them in his harem.<sup>54</sup> On the other hand, the moral sense of the heathen was so degraded that many maidens displayed their charms to public view, so that they might be sure to attract the admiring attention of the royal emissaries.

As for Esther, for four years Mordecai kept her concealed in a chamber, so that the king's scouts could not discover her. But her beauty had long been known to fame, and when they returned to Shushan, they had to confess to the king, that the most superbly beautiful woman in the land eluded their search. Thereupon Ahasuerus issued a decree ordaining the death penalty for the woman who should secrete herself before his emissaries. There was nothing left for Mordecai to do but fetch Esther from her hiding-place, and immediately she was espied and carried to the palace of the king.<sup>55</sup>

---

49. Abba Gorion 1; Esther R., introduction, 9. The identification of Memucan with Haman is also found in Megillah 12b and Targum Esther 1.16. Against this identification, comp. note 41. As to the characterization of Ahasuerus as a "fool", see also Esther R. 1.22; see pp. 1164–1165; notes 7 and 52.

50. Megillah 12a. This passage also gives another view to the effect that Ahasuerus thereby displayed political wisdom.

51. Megillah 12b.

52. Abba Gorion 17–18 (this was their punishment for having advised the king to stop the building of the Temple; comp. note 47); 2 Panim Aherim 61; Targum Esther 2.1. In these sources Memucan is identified neither with Daniel (see also pp. 1136–1137), nor with Haman (379). Septuagint has "Man" instead of Memucan.

53. Megillah 12b. The Persians despised the Jewish women, who had lost their beauty on account of their great sufferings (compare footnote 38 on p. 1135), and God therefore brought it about that among the multitudes of the Persian women not one was found worthy to become queen, and a despised Jewess was chosen by the king as his wife.

54. Panim Aherim 65. Comp. also Megillah 13a (towards the end).

55. 2 Panim Aherim 63–64; Aggadat Esther 20–21; 2 Targum Esther 2.8. As to the question why Esther did not suffer martyrdom rather than transgress the law that prohibits marriage with a Gentile, comp. Sanhedrin 74a; Aggadat Esther 11.9; 2 Targum Esther 2.8; note 80.

## MORDECAI

The descent of Mordecai and of his niece Esther is disposed of in a few words in the Scripture. But he could trace it all the way back to the Patriarch Jacob, from whom he was forty-five degrees removed.<sup>56</sup> Beside the father of Mordecai, the only ancestor of his who is mentioned by name is Shimei, and he is mentioned for a specific reason. This Shimei is none other than the notorious son of Gera, the rebel who had so scoffed and mocked at David fleeing before Absalom that he would have been killed by Abi-



shai, if David had not generously interfered in his favor. David's prophetic eye discerned in Shimei the ancestor of Israel's savior in the time of Ahasuerus. For this reason he dealt leniently with him, and on his death-bed he bade his son Solomon reserve vengeance until Shimei should have reached old age and could beget no more children. Thus Mordecai deserves both appellations, the Benjamite and the Judean, for he owed his existence not only to his actual Benjamite forebears on his father's side, but also to the Judean David, who kept his ancestor Shimei alive.<sup>57</sup>

Shimei's distinction as the ancestor of Israel's redeemer was due to the merits of his wife. When Jonathan and Ahimaaz, David's spies in his war against his son, fled before the myrmidons of Absalom, they found the gate of Shimei's house open. Entering, they concealed themselves in the well. That they escaped detection was due to the ruse of Shimei's pious wife. She quickly transformed the well into a lady's chamber. When Absalom's men came and looked about, they desisted from searching the place, because they reasoned, that men as saintly as Jonathan and Ahimaaz would not have taken refuge in the private apartment of a woman. God determined, that for having rescued two pious men He would reward her with two pious descendants, who should in turn avert the ruin of Israel.<sup>58</sup>

On his mother's side, Mordecai was, in very deed, a member of the tribe of Judah.<sup>59</sup> In any event, he was a son of Judah in the true sense of the word; he publicly acknowledged himself a Jew, and he refused to touch of the forbidden food which Ahasuerus set before his guests at his banquet.<sup>60</sup>

His other appellatives likewise point to his piety and his excellencies. His name Mordecai, for instance, consists of *Mor*, meaning "myrrh", and *Decai*, "pure", for he was as refined and noble as pure myrrh. Again, he is called Ben Jair,

because he "illuminated the eyes of Israel"; and Ben Kish, because when he knocked at the gates of the Divine mercy, they were opened unto him, which is likewise the origin of his name Ben Shimei, for he was heard by God when he offered up prayer.<sup>61</sup> Still another of Mordecai's epithets was Bilshan, "master of languages". Being a member of the great Sanhedrin he understood all the seventy languages spoken in the world.<sup>62</sup> More than that, he knew the language of the deaf mutes. It once happened that no new grain could be obtained at Passover time. A deaf mute came and pointed with one hand to the roof and with the other to the cottage. Mordecai understood that these signs meant a locality by the name of Gagot-Zerifim, Cottage-Roofs, and, lo, new grain was found there for the 'Omer offering. On another occasion a deaf mute pointed with one hand to his eye and with the other to the staple of the bolt on the door. Mordecai understood that he meant a place called En-Soker, "dry well", for eye and spring are the same word, *En*, in Aramaic, and *Sikra* also has a double meaning, staple and exhaustion.<sup>63</sup>

Mordecai belonged to the highest aristocracy of Jerusalem,—he was of royal blood,—and he was deported to Babylonia together with King Jeconiah, by Nebuchadnezzar, who at that time exiled only the great of the land.<sup>64</sup> Later he returned to Palestine, but remained only for a time. He preferred to live in the Diaspora, and watch over the education of Esther. When Cyrus and Darius captured Babylon, Mordecai, Daniel, and the Jewish community of the conquered city accompanied King Cyrus to Shushan, where Mordecai established his academy.<sup>65</sup>

56. The genealogy of Mordecai up to Jacob is found in 2 Panim Aherim 62–63; Aggadat Esther 19; Targum Esther 7.1 and 2 Targum 2.5.

57. Megillah 13a (top); 2 Panim Aherim 62 and 63; Tosefta-Targum 1 Kings 2.36; 2 Targum Esther 2.5.



58. 2 Panim Aherim 82; Shemuel (end).

59. Megillah 12b (below).

60. PRE 50; Panim Aherim 62. Compare with pp. 1132 and p. 1159. On the other hand, Shir 7.8 is of the opinion that “most of the men of this generation” were pious. With regard to the designation of Mordecai as “Jew” (יהודי literally the “Judean”) in Esther 2.5, though he was a Benjamite, 2 Panim Aherim 82 and Esther R. 2.5 remark that this word characterizes one “as confessing one God” (יהודי = יְהוּדִי from יָהוּד “confessed the unity of God”); a similar explanation of the name “Jew” is also found in Constitutiones Apostolicae, 2.60. The Midrashim just cited say that Mordecai was like Abraham and Moses; like the former he was willing to suffer martyrdom for God, and like the latter he was ready to “stand before God in the breach” (Ps. 106.23) to save Israel.

61. Megillah 12b; 2 Panim Aherim 62; PRE 50; 1 and 2 Targum Esther 2.5.

62. 2 Panim Aherim 62; Menahot 65a. In Ezra 2.2, Bilshan is taken as an adjective (“master of tongues”, a contraction of בעל “master” and לשון “tongue” or “language”) of the preceding name Mordecai; another name of his was Pethahiah. As to Mordecai’s mastery of languages, see text on p. 1145.

63. Menahot 64b.

64. PRE 50. As a descendant of King Saul (comp. the sources cited in note 56) he is said to have been of royal blood. On the view that the aristocracy was exiled together with king Jeconiah, see also to pp. 1060–1061.

65. Megillah 13a; 2 Panim Aherim 63; 2 Targum Esther 2, 6 and 7; 1 Targum 1.6. According to Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.2, Mordecai moved to Shushan after Esther’s marriage to king Ahasuerus. The first passage of 2 Targum referred to above seems to be corrupt. It reads; Mordecai and Esther were deported into exile with Jeconiah. Mordecai returned with those who volunteered to go up and build the Temple anew, and Nebuchadnezzar deported him again. The source for this statement is 2 Panim Aherim, *loc. cit.* But there nothing is said about Mordecai’s going up to Jerusalem for the building of the Temple, as it had not been destroyed yet. The “two exiles” of Mordecai refer to his exile with Jeconiah and his second with Zedekiah. It seems fairly certain that the sentence ... וחזר תינינות is to be read after תרתין.

## ESTHER’S BEAUTY AND PIETY

**T**he birth of Esther caused the death of her mother. Her father had died a little while

before, so she was entirely orphaned. Mordecai and his wife interested themselves in the poor babe. His wife became her nurse, and he himself did not hesitate, when there was need for it, to do services for the child that are usually performed only by women.<sup>66</sup>

Both her names, Esther as well as Hadasah, are descriptive of her virtues. Hadassah, or Myrtle, she is called, because her good deeds spread her fame abroad, as the sweet fragrance of the myrtle pervades the air in which it grows. In general, the myrtle is symbolic of the pious, because, as the myrtle is ever green, summer and winter alike, so the saints never suffer dishonor, either in this world or in the world to come. In another way Esther resembled the myrtle, which, in spite of its pleasant scent, has a bitter taste. Esther was pleasant to the Jews, but bitterness itself to Haman and all who belonged to him.

The name Esther is equally significant. In Hebrew it means “she who conceals”, a fitting name for the niece of Mordecai, the woman who well knew how to guard a secret, and long hid her descent and faith from the king and the court. She herself had been kept concealed for years in the house of her uncle, withdrawn from the searching eyes of the king’s spies. Above all she was the hidden light that suddenly shone upon Israel in his rayless darkness.

In build, Esther was neither tall nor short, she was exactly of average height, another reason for calling her Myrtle, a plant which likewise is neither large nor small. In point of fact, Esther was not a beauty in the real sense of the word. The beholder was bewitched by her grace and her charm, and that in spite of her somewhat sallow, myrtlelike complexion.<sup>67</sup> More than this, her enchanting grace was not the grace of youth, for she was seventy-five years old when she came to court, and captivated the hearts of all who saw her, from king to eunuch. This was in fulfilment of the prophecy which God made



to Abraham when he was leaving the home of his father: "Thou art leaving the house of thy father at the age of seventy-five. As thou livest, the deliverer of thy children in Media also shall be seventy-five years old."

Another historical event pointed forward to Esther's achievement. When the Jews, after the destruction of Jerusalem, broke out into the wail, "We are orphans and fatherless," God said: "In very sooth, the redeemer whom I shall send unto you in Media shall also be an orphan, fatherless and motherless."<sup>68</sup>

Ahasuerus put Esther between two groups of beauties, Median beauties to right of her, and Persian beauties to left of her. Yet Esther's comeliness outshone them all.<sup>69</sup> Not even Joseph could vie with the Jewish queen in grace. Grace was suspended above him, but Esther was fairly laden down with it.<sup>70</sup> Whoever saw her, pronounced her the ideal of beauty of his nation. The general exclamation was: "This one is worthy of being queen."<sup>71</sup> In vain Ahasuerus had sought a wife for four years, in vain fathers had spent time and money bringing their daughters to him, in the hope that one or the other would appeal to his fancy. None among the maidens, none among the women, pleased Ahasuerus. But scarcely had he set eyes upon Esther when he thrilled with the feeling, that he had at last found what he had long yearned for.<sup>72</sup>

All these years the portrait of Vashti had hung in his chamber. He had not forgotten his rejected queen. But once he beheld Esther, Vashti's picture was replaced by hers.<sup>73</sup> Maiden grace and womanly charm were in her united.<sup>74</sup>

The change in her worldly position wrought no change in Esther's ways and manners. As she retained her beauty until old age, so the queen remained as pure in mind and soul as ever the simple maiden had been. All the other women who entered the gates of the royal palace made exaggerated demands, Esther's demeanor contin-

ued modest and unassuming. The others insisted that the seven girl pages assigned to them should have certain peculiar qualities, as, that they should not differ, each from her mistress, in complexion and height. Esther uttered no wish whatsoever.

But her unpretending ways were far from pleasing to Hegai, chief of the eunuchs of the harem. He feared lest the king discover that Esther did nothing to preserve her beauty, and would put the blame for it upon him, an accusation that might bring him to the gallows. To avoid such a fate, he loaded Esther down with resplendent jewels, distinguishing her beyond all the other women gathered in the palace, as Joseph, by means of costly gifts lavished upon him, had singled out her ancestor Benjamin from among his brethren.

Hegai paid particular attention to what Esther ate. For her he brought dishes from the royal table, which, however, she refused obstinately to touch. Only such things passed her lips as were permitted to Jews. She lived entirely on vegetable food, as Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah had aforetimes done at the court of Nebuchadnezzar.<sup>75</sup> The forbidden tidbits she passed over to the non-Jewish servants.<sup>76</sup> Her personal attendants were seven Jewish maidens as consistently pious as herself, whose devotion to the ritual law Esther could depend upon.

Otherwise Esther was cut off from all intercourse with Jews, and she was in danger of forgetting when the Sabbath came around. She therefore adopted the device of giving her seven attendants peculiar names, to keep her in mind of the passage of time. The first one was called Hulta, "Workaday", and she was in attendance upon Esther on Sundays. On Mondays, she was served by Rok'ita, to remind her of Rek'ia, "the Firmament", which was created on the second day of the world. Tuesday's maid was called Genunita, "Garden", the third day of creation hav-



ing produced the world of plants. On Wednesday, she was reminded by Nehorita's name, "the Luminous", that it was the day on which God had made the great luminaries, to shed their light in the sky; on Thursday by Ruḥshita, "Movement", for on the fifth day the first animated beings were created; on Friday, the day on which the beasts came into being, by Ḥurfita, "little Ewelamb"; and on the Sabbath her bidding was done by Rego'ita, "Rest". Thus she was sure to remember the Sabbath day week after week.<sup>77</sup>

Mordecai's daily visits to the gate of the palace had a similar purpose. Thus Esther was afforded the opportunity of obtaining instruction from him on all ritual doubts that might assail her.<sup>78</sup> This lively interest displayed by Mordecai in Esther's physical and spiritual welfare is not wholly attributable to an uncle's and guardian's solicitude in behalf of an orphaned niece. A much closer bond, the bond between husband and wife, united them, for when Esther had grown to maidenhood, Mordecai had espoused her.<sup>79</sup> Naturally, Esther would have been ready to defend her conjugal honor with her life. She would gladly have suffered death at the hands of the king's bailiffs rather than yield herself to a man not her husband. Luckily, there was no need for this sacrifice, for her marriage with Ahasuerus was but a feigned union. God had sent down a female spirit in the guise of Esther to take her place with the king. Esther herself never lived with Ahasuerus as his wife.<sup>80</sup>

At the advice of her uncle, Esther kept her descent and her faith a secret. Mordecai's injunction was dictated by several motives. First of all it was his modesty that suggested secrecy. He thought the king, if he heard from Esther that she had been raised by him, might offer to install him in some high office. In point of fact, Mordecai was right in his conjecture; Ahasuerus had pledged himself to make lords, princes, and

kings of Esther's friends and kinspeople, if she would but name them.

Another reason for keeping Esther's Jewish affiliations a secret was Mordecai's apprehension, that the fate of Vashti overtake Esther, too. If such were in store for her, he desired at least to guard against the Jews' becoming her fellow-sufferers. Besides, Mordecai knew only too well the inimical feelings entertained by the heathen toward the Jews, ever since their exile from the Holy Land, and he feared that the Jew-haters, to gratify their hostility against the Jews, might bring about the ruin of Esther and her house.<sup>81</sup>

Mindful of the perils to which Esther was exposed, Mordecai allowed no day to pass without assuring himself of her well-being. His compensation therefore came from God: "Thou makest the well-being of a single soul thy intimate concern. As thou livest, the well-being and good of thy whole nation Israel shall be entrusted to thee as thy task."<sup>82</sup> And to reward him for his modesty, God said: "Thou withdrawest thyself from greatness; as thou livest, I will honor thee more than all men on earth."<sup>83</sup>

Vain were the efforts made by Ahasuerus to draw her secret from Esther. He arranged great festivities for the purpose, but she guarded it well. She had an answer ready for his most insistent questions: "I know neither my people nor my family, for I lost my parents in my earliest infancy." But as the king desired greatly to show himself gracious to the nation to which the queen belonged, he released all the peoples under his dominion from the payment of taxes and imposts. In this way, he thought, her nation was bound to be benefited.<sup>84</sup>

When the king saw that kindness and generosity left her untouched, he sought to wrest the secret from her by threats. Once when she parried his inquiries in the customary way, saying, "I am an orphan, and God, the Father of



the fatherless, in His mercy, has brought me up,” he retorted: “I shall gather virgins together the second time.” His purpose was to provoke the jealousy of Esther, “for a woman is jealous of nothing so much as of a rival.”

When Mordecai noticed that women were being brought to court anew, he was overcome by anxiety for his niece. Thinking that the fate of Vashti might have befallen her, he was impelled to make inquiries about her.<sup>85</sup>

As for Esther herself, she was but following the example of her race. She could keep silent in all modesty, as Rachel, the mother of Benjamin, had kept a modest silence when her father gave her sister Leah to Jacob for wife instead of herself, and as Saul the Benjamite was modestly reserved when, questioned by his uncle, he told about the finding of his she-asses, but nothing about his elevation to the kingship. Rachel and Saul were recompensed for their self-abnegation by being given a descendant like Esther.<sup>86</sup>

---

66. Tehillim 22, 192–193; Megillah 13a; Targum Esther and Esther R. 2.7. A miracle was performed for him, and his breasts supplied milk for the babe Esther. On the milk found in the breast of men, see Preuss, *Biblisch-talmudische Medizin*, 476.

67. Megillah 13a; Panim Aherim 63; Esther R., 1 and 2 Targum on 2.7; Tehillim 22, 181. Opinions differ as to whether Esther was her real name and Hadassah her attribute, or *vice versa*; comp. note 1.

68. Megillah 13a; BR 39.13 (here also two other views are given concerning her age; forty years, as well as eighty, are mentioned); Abba Gorion 18; Panim Aherim 63; Ekah 5, 155; Esther R. 2.7. As a punishment because Saul took away Michal from David by violence, his descendant Esther was taken by force to Ahasuerus and as a reward for his pious act toward his father Noah, Japheth's descendant, Ahasuerus (the Persians are descended from Japheth) was found worthy to marry the virtuous Esther, the descendant of Shem. See Hasidim 397.

69. Abba Gorion 18; Esther R. 2.9 and 15; Aggadat Esther 23.

70. Megillah 13a; Abba Gorion 18; 2 Panim Aherim 64. The last passage adds: All the ladies of the court vied with one another in offering their services to Esther, as

they knew that she would be queen. Comp. also Esther R. 2.15, which reads: The celestials as well as the terrestrials loved her.

71. Megillah 7a and 13a; Aggadat Esther 23.

72. Aggadat Esther 21. Compare with pp. 1138–1139.

73. Abba Gorion 19; Panim Aherim 65; Esther R. 2.17.

74. Megillah 13a; comp. also Yoma 29a, which reads: Ahasuerus continued to love Esther all her life as much as on the day he married her.

75. 2 Panim Aherim 63 and 64; 2 Targum Esther 2.7. That Esther did not partake of forbidden food is stated also in the Additions to Esther (Prayer of Esther); Megillah 13a and PRE 50.

76. 2 Targum Esther 2.9. Some authorities, however, are of the opinion that the maidens waiting upon Esther were Jewesses. Comp. the quotation from an unknown Midrash by Alkabez, 72a, and the following note.

77. Targum Esther 2.9. Genunita, “garden”, is perhaps an allusion to paradise, which was fashioned on the third day of creation; compare with p. 18. According to Alkabez, 71b, Hurfita is to be translated by “haste” (from חרף “he sped”), and is an allusion to Friday, because on that day the people hasten to prepare for the Sabbath; comp. Baba Kamma 32a. See also Megillah 13a.

78. Esther R. 2.11; PRE 51. Comp. also Septuagint 2.20. According to some authorities the purpose of Mordecai's daily visits was to prevent witchcraft from being used against her; Esther R., *loc. cit.*, and comp. Tehillim 22, 194, which reads: By means of witchcraft her enemies caused her to become ugly, but a miracle happened and she regained her former beauty. This is said to have happened when Esther sought to see the king in behalf of the Jews. Compare also with p. 1167.

79. Megillah 13a; Septuagint Esther 2.7.

80. Zohar III, 275b–276b; Tikkune Zohar 20. The old sources do not know of this docetism, and maintain that the last Darius was the offspring of Ahasuerus' marriage with Esther. Comp. Sanhedrin 74a (Zohar, *loc. cit.*, obviously polemizes against this statement of the Talmud); WR 5.13. Comp. notes 5 and 55.

81. 2 Panim Aherim 64; 2 Targum Esther 2.10.

82. Esther R. 2.11.

83. 2 Panim Aherim 64.

84. 2 Targum Esther 2.18. Comp. also Megillah 13a and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.2.

85. 2 Panim Aherim 65; 2 Targum Esther 2.19. Against this, see Megillah 13a (towards the end), where it is said that it was Mordecai who advised the king to “gather virgins together for a second time,” so that Esther might be provoked to jealousy.

86. Megillah 13a–13b; Esther R. 2.20. Compare with pp. 283–284, with p. 1080.



## THE CONSPIRACY

Once the following conversation took place between Ahasuerus and Esther. The king asked Esther: "Whose daughter art thou?"

Esther: "And whose son art thou?"

Ahasuerus: "I am a king, and the son of a king."

Esther: "And I am a queen, the daughter of kings, a descendant of the royal family of Saul. If thou art, indeed, a real prince, how couldst thou put Vashti to death?"

Ahasuerus: "It was not to gratify my own wish, but at the advice of the great princes of Persia and Media."

Esther: "Thy predecessors took no advice from ordinary intelligences; they were guided by prophetic counsel. Arioch brought Daniel to Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, and Belshazzar, too, summoned Daniel before him."

Ahasuerus: "Is there aught left of those toothsome morsels? Are there still prophets abroad?"

Esther: "Seek and thou wilt find."<sup>87</sup>

The result was that Mordecai was given the position at court once occupied by the chamberlains Bigthan and Teresh. Indignant that a place once filled by senators should be given to a barbarian, the ousted officials resolved to be revenged upon the king and take his life. Their purpose was to administer poison, which seemed easy of accomplishment, as they were the royal butlers, and could find many occasions to drop poison into a cup of water before handing it to the king. The plan successfully carried out would have satisfied their vengeful feelings, not only as to the king, but as to Mordecai as well. It would have made it appear that the death of Ahasuerus was attributable to the circumstance, that he had entrusted his person to the care of the Jew, as his life had been secure under Bigthan and Teresh. They discussed their plans in the presence of

Mordecai, acting upon the unwarranted assumption, that he would not understand the language they spoke, the Tarsian, their native tongue. They were ignorant of the fact, that Mordecai was a member of the Sanhedrin, and as such knew all the seventy languages of the world. Thus their own tongue betrayed them to ruin.

However, Mordecai had no need to make use of his great knowledge of languages; he obtained his information about the plot of the two chamberlains through prophetic channels. Accordingly, he appeared one night in the palace. By a miracle the guards at the gates had not seen him, and he could enter unrestrained. Thus he overheard the conversation between the two conspirators.

Mordecai had more than a single reason for preventing the death of Ahasuerus. In the first place, he desired to secure the king's friendship for the Jews, and more especially his permission for the rebuilding of the Temple. Then he feared, if the king were murdered immediately after his rise to a high place in the state, the heathen would assign as the cause of the disaster his connection with the Jews—his marriage with Esther and the appointment of Mordecai to office.

Esther's confidence in Mordecai's piety was so great that she unhesitatingly gave credence to the message she received from him concerning the mischievous plot hatched against the king. She believed that God would execute the wishes of Mordecai. Albeit Bigthan and Teresh had no plans of the sort attributed to them by her uncle, they would conceive them now in order to make Mordecai's words true. That Esther's confidence was justified appeared at once. The conspirators got wind of their betrayal to the king, and in good time they removed the poison they had already placed in Ahasuerus's cup. But that the lie might not be given to Mordecai, God caused poison to appear where none had been, and the conspirators were convicted of their crime.<sup>88</sup>



The king had the water analyzed which he was given to drink, and it was made manifest that it contained poison.<sup>89</sup> Other evidence besides existed against the two plotters. It was established that both had at the same time busied themselves about the person of the king, though the regulations of the palace assigned definite hours of service to the one different from those assigned to the other. This made it clear that they intended to perpetrate a dark deed in common.<sup>90</sup>

The two conspirators sought to escape the legitimate punishment for their dastardly deed by ending their own life. But their intention was frustrated, and they were nailed to the cross.<sup>91</sup>

---

87. Abba Gorion 19; Panim Aherim 65. On the descent of Mordecai and Esther from Saul, comp. notes 56 and 64. See also the following note.

88. 2 Panim Aherim 65–66; Abba Gorion 20; PRE 50; 1 and 2 Targum Esther 2.21; Megillah 13b (the duties of the chamberlains became more burdensome since the king married Esther; for sexual intercourse causes thirst, and the king's demand for drinks disturbed the chamberlains in their night's rest. That is why they attempted to get rid of the king. Comp. Rashi *ad. loc.*, and Alkabez, 83a); Esther R. 2.21. See also Septuagint 2.21, which reads: And...the chiefs of the body-guard were grieved because Mordecai was promoted, and they sought to kill the king. On the miraculous "opening of locked doors" (which enabled Mordecai to surprise the conspirators), see Acts 5.19, 23. This kind of miracle is very often found in Christian legends. Comp. Günter, *Christliche Legende*, index, s. v. "Türe öffnet sich". It is also known to Jewish sources; comp. Kallah 1, 6a; Ginzberg, *Geonica*, I, 28; and also p. 518. According to Josephus, XI, 6.4, a Jewish servant of the conspirators, by the name of Barnabazus, betrayed his masters to Mordecai. Josippon 4 and later sources (as, e. g., Yerahmeel 79, 236) assume that the conspirators were relatives of Haman's (thus explaining the latter's hatred for Mordecai), and that the motive of the conspiracy was a political one. At that time Ahasuerus was engaged in a war with the king of Macedonia (or Greece), and the two conspirators attempted to come to the aid of the Greeks by assassinating the king of the Persians. Comp. the Additions to Esther, Addition A (end), which reads: And Haman sought to bring evil upon Mordecai...because of the two

eunuchs of the king. In Addition E (Decree of Ahasuerus) Haman is described as a Macedonian, and hence the statement in Josippon that his kinsmen attempted to aid the Macedonians. The statement about the war between Greece and Persia is perhaps based upon an erroneous interpretation of the "two dragons" in the Dream of Mordecai. As to Mordecai's reasons for preventing the assassination of Ahasuerus, see also BR 39.12.

89. PRE 50. Sammael removed the poison from the cup, so that Mordecai's accusation should prove false, but Gabriel put it back where it was, and the conspiracy was exposed. See Alkabez, 88a, quoting from the Commentary on Esther (in MS.) by R. Eleazar of Worms. Comp. a similar legend about Sammael and Gabriel in Sotah 10b, and footnote 89 on p. 345. The midrashic basis in Sotah is מוֹצֵא (Gen. 28.28), and in Alkabez וִימָצֵא (Esther 2.23).

90. Megillah 13b. Rashi, *ad. loc.*, takes מִשְׁמֶרֶת to mean "office", and accordingly the two conspirators are said to have held different offices.

91. 2 Panim Aherim 66, where לַחֲנוּקָה is to be read instead of לַחֲנוּקָה, as it is the unanimous opinion of the Haggadah that they attempted to poison Ahasuerus, and not to strangle him; comp. the references given in note 88.

## HAMAN THE JEW-BAITER

The conspiracy of Bigthan and Teresh determined the king never again to have two chamberlains guard his person. Henceforward he would entrust his safety to a single individual, and he appointed Haman to the place. This was an act of ingratitude toward Mordecai, who, as the king's savior, had the most cogent claims upon the post.<sup>92</sup> But Haman possessed one important advantage, he was the owner of great wealth. With the exception of Korah he was the richest man that had ever lived, for he had appropriated to himself the treasures of the Judean kings and of the Temple.<sup>93</sup>

Ahasuerus had an additional reason for distinguishing Haman. He was well aware of Mordecai's ardent desire to see the Temple restored, and he instinctively felt he could not deny the wish of the man who had snatched him from untimely death. Yet he was not prepared to



grant it. To escape from the dilemma he endeavored to make Haman act as a counterpoise against Mordecai, that “what the one built up, the other might pull down.”<sup>94</sup>

Ahasuerus had long been acquainted with Haman’s feeling against the Jews. When the quarrel about the rebuilding of the Temple broke out between the Jews and their heathen adversaries, and the sons of Haman denounced the Jews before Ahasuerus, the two parties at odds agreed to send each a representative to the king, to advocate his case. Mordecai was appointed the Jewish delegate, and no more rabid Jew-hater could be found than Haman, to plead the cause of the antagonists of the Temple builders.<sup>95</sup>

As for his character, that, too, King Ahasuerus had had occasion to see in its true light, because Haman is but another name for Memucan, the prince who is chargeable in the last resort with the death of Vashti. At the time of the king’s wrath against the queen, Memucan was still lowest in rank among the seven princes of Persia, yet, arrogant as he was, he was the first to speak up when the king put his question about the punishment due to Vashti—an illustration of the popular adage: “The common man rushes to the front.”<sup>96</sup> Haman’s hostility toward Vashti dated from her banquet, to which the queen had failed to bid his wife as guest. Moreover, she had once insulted him by striking him a blow in the face. Besides, Haman calculated, if only Vashti’s repudiation could be brought about, he might succeed in marrying his own daughter to the king.<sup>97</sup> He was not the only disappointed man at court. In part the conspiracy of Bigthan and Teresh was a measure of revenge against Ahasuerus for having made choice of Esther instead of a kinswoman of theirs.<sup>98</sup>

Esther once married to the king, however, Haman made the best of a bad bargain. He tried by every means in his power to win the friendship of the queen. Whether she was Jewess or

heathen, he desired to claim kinship with her—as a Jewess through the fraternal bond between Esau and Jacob, as a heathen easily enough, “for all the heathen are akin to one another.”<sup>99</sup>

92. Aggadat Esther 26. The proverb found there, “Cursed are the wicked who never do a good deed completely”, is taken from BR 89.7. Compare with p. 364.

93. PRE 50; Panim Aherim 46; Esther R. 3.1. An unknown Midrash quoted by Alkabez, 153b, maintains that Haman found one of the treasures buried by Joseph; compare with p. 798. There are different versions of Haman’s genealogy, showing his descent from Amalek the son of Eliphaz by his concubine; comp. Targum Esther 5.1; 2 Targum 3.1; Aggadat Esther 26–27; Soferim 13.23. Only few of the names in Haman’s genealogy are found in the Bible, the majority are the names of the oppressors and enemies of the Jews in the Roman period. Pilatus (אפליטוס), Herod, Nero (נירן), are easily recognized, but it is difficult to restore all the names, as some of them are badly corrupted. With regard to Haman’s descendants it is stated that “some of them taught the Torah in Bene Berak”; comp. Gittin 57b; Sanhedrin 96b. It is well known that R. Akiba had his academy in Bene Berak (comp., e. g., Sanhedrin 32b), and as the legend which makes him a descendant of proselytes might perhaps have been known to the Talmud (comp. Ginzberg, *Jewish Encyclopedia*, I, 304), it is quite possible that Haman’s descendant teaching at Bene Berak is none other than this great Tanna. As the name Haman remained in use among the Persians as late as the third century (comp. ‘Erubin 63b; see *Variae Lectiones*, ad loc.), there is no reason to doubt the statement that one of R. Akiba’s ancestors was called Haman, though not necessarily identical with the bearer of this name in the Bible. Compare with p. 869, footnote 72. The description of Haman as the son of Hammedatha (Esther 3.1) is not to be taken literally, as Hammedatha is only used to describe him as the arch-enemy of the Jews. See Yerushalmi Yebamot 2, 4a; Aggadat Esther 26. It is, however, difficult to tell by what principle of exegesis the Rabbis make המדתא to convey this meaning. Did they think of הם “confounded” and דתא “religion”? The name of Haman’s mother was Emtelai, the same as that of Abraham’s (compare with p. 167), and his maternal grandfather was called Urbeti (עורבתי), i. e. “of the ravens”. On the view that Haman was a Macedonian, see note 88.

94. Abba Gorion 21. This passage also gives several reasons why “Haman was elevated before his fall”, one of which is that God made him very rich so that Mordecai might later make use of Haman’s treasures for the building of the Temple. Comp. the following note.



95. Aggadat Esther 55. Of Haman's sons, his assistants in his Jew-baiting, special mention is made of Shimshai, who occurs also in Ezra 4.8 as denouncing the Jews before the king; 2 Panim Aherim 55 and 66. On Shimshai, see also Megillah 16a and Esther R., introduction, 3. Comp. also note 168. On Haman as an opponent to the building of the Temple, see Abba Gorion 20; Esther R. 3.1; note 105. In the last-named passage it is said that God elevated Haman before his fall in order that people should know thereby how severe is the punishment of those who attempt to obstruct the building of the Temple. Comp. Ratner's note 20 on Seder 'Olam 29.

96. Megillah 12b; Targum Esther 1.16. Compare with p. 1138.

97. Abba Gorion 17; Esther R. 1.16. These sources do not state explicitly the identity of Memucan with Haman, but they seem to presuppose it. Comp., however, note 52.

98. Lekah 2.32 (very likely quoting an old source).

99. Abba Gorion 21; Esther R. 3.1.

## MORDECAI'S PRIDE

When Ahasuerus raised Haman to his high office, he at the same time issued the order, that all who saw him were to prostrate themselves before him and pay him Divine honors. To make it manifest that the homage due to him had an idolatrous character, Haman had the image of an idol fastened to his clothes, so that whoever bowed down before him, worshipped an idol at the same time.<sup>100</sup> Mordecai alone of all at court refused to obey the royal order. The highest officials, even the most exalted judges, showed Haman the reverence bidden by the king. The Jews themselves entreated Mordecai not to call forth the fury of Haman, and cause the ruin of Israel thereby. Mordecai, however, remained steadfast; no persuasions could move him to pay to a mortal the tribute due to Divinity.<sup>101</sup>

Also the servants of the king who sat at the gate of the royal palace said to Mordecai: "Wherein art thou better than we, that we should pay reverence to Haman and prostrate ourselves,

and thou doest naught of all commanded us in the matter?" Mordecai answered, saying: "O ye fools without understanding! Hear ye my words and make meet reply thereunto. Who is man that he should act proudly and arrogantly—man born of woman and few of days? At his birth there is weeping and travailing, in his youth pain and groans, all his days are 'full of trouble', and in the end he returns unto dust. Before such an one I should prostrate myself? I bend the knee before God alone, the only living One in heaven, He who is the fire consuming all other fires; who holds the earth in His arms; who stretches out the heavens in His might; who darkens the sun when it pleases Him, and illumines the darkness; who commanded the sand to set bounds unto the seas; who made the waters of the sea salt, and caused its waves to spread an aroma as of wine; who chained the sea as with manacles, and held it fast in the depths of the abyss that it might not overflow the land; it rages, yet it cannot pass its limits. With His word He created the firmament, which He stretched out like a cloud in the air; He cast it over the world like a dark vault, like a tent it is spread over the earth. In His strength He upholds all there is above and below. The sun, the moon, and the Pleiades run before Him, the stars and the planets are not idle for a single moment; they rest not, they speed before Him as His messengers, going to the right and to the left, to do the will of Him who created them. To Him praise is due, before Him we must prostrate ourselves."

The court officials spake and said: "Yet we know well that thy ancestor Jacob prostrated himself before Haman's ancestor Esau!"

Whereunto Mordecai made reply: "I am a descendant of Benjamin, who was not yet born when his father Jacob and his brothers cast themselves upon the earth before Esau. My ancestor never showed such honor to a mortal. Therefore was Benjamin's allotment of land in



Palestine privileged to contain the Temple. The spot whereon Israel and all the peoples of the earth prostrated themselves before God belonged to him who had never prostrated himself before mortal man. Therefore I will not bend my knee before this sinner Haman, nor cast myself to earth before him.”<sup>102</sup>

Haman at first tried to propitiate Mordecai by a show of modesty. As though he had not noticed the behavior of Mordecai, he approached him, and saluted him with the words: “Peace be with thee, my lord!” But Mordecai bluntly replied: “There is no peace, saith my God, to the wicked.”<sup>103</sup>

The hatred of Mordecai cherished by Haman was due to more than the hereditary enmity between the descendants of Saul and Agag.<sup>104</sup> Not even Mordecai’s public refusal to pay the homage due to Haman suffices to explain its virulence. Mordecai was aware of a certain incident in the past of Haman. If he had divulged it, the betrayal would have been most painful to the latter. This accounts for the intensity of his feeling.

It once happened that a city in India rebelled against Ahasuerus. In great haste troops were dispatched thither under the command of Mordecai and Haman. It was estimated that the campaign would require three years, and all preparations were made accordingly. By the end of the first year Haman had squandered the provisions laid in to supply the part of the army commanded by him, for the whole term of the campaign. Greatly embarrassed, he requested Mordecai to give him aid. Mordecai, however, refused him succor; they both had been granted the same amount of provisions for an equal number of men. Haman then offered to borrow from Mordecai and pay him interest. This, too, Mordecai refused to do, and for two reasons. If Mordecai had supplied Haman’s men with provisions, his own would have had to suffer, and as

for interest, the law prohibits it, saying, “Unto thy brother thou shalt not lend upon usury,” and Jacob and Esau, the respective ancestors of Mordecai and Haman, had been brothers.

When starvation stared them in the face, the troops commanded by Haman threatened him with death unless he gave them their rations. Haman again resorted to Mordecai, and promised to pay him as much as ten per cent interest. The Jewish general continued to refuse the offer. But he professed himself willing to help him out of his embarrassment on one condition, that Haman sell himself to Mordecai as his slave. Driven into a corner, he acquiesced, and the contract was written upon Mordecai’s knee-cap, because there was no paper to be found in the camp.

The bill of sale ran thus: “I, Haman, son of Hammedatha of the family of Agag, was sent out by King Ahasuerus to make war upon an Indian city, with an army of sixty thousand soldiers, furnished with the necessary provisions. Precisely the same commission was given by the king to Mordecai, the son of Shimei of the tribe of Benjamin. But I squandered the provisions entrusted to me by the king, so that I had no rations to give to my troops. I desired to borrow from Mordecai on interest, but, having regard to the fact that Jacob and Esau were brothers, he refused to lend me upon usury, and I was forced to sell myself as slave to him. If, now, I should at any time decline to serve him as a slave, or deny that I am his slave, or if my children and children’s children unto the end of all time should refuse to do him service, if only a single day of the week; or if I should act inimically toward him on account of this contract, as Esau did toward Jacob after selling him his birthright; in all these cases, a beam of wood is to be plucked out of the house of the recalcitrant, and he is to be hanged upon it. *I, Haman, the son of Hammedatha of the family of Agag, being under no re-*



*straint, do hereby consent with my own will, and bind myself to be slave in perpetuity to Mordecai, in accordance with the contents of this document."*

Later, when Haman attained to high rank in the state, Mordecai, whenever he met him, was in the habit of stretching out his knee toward him, so that he might see the bill of sale. This so enraged him against Mordecai and against the Jews that he resolved to extirpate the Jewish people.<sup>105</sup>

---

100. PRE 50; Abba Gorion 22; Panim Aherim 46; Esther R. 2.5 and 3.1–2; Targum 3.2; Sanhedrin 61b (the king's command was to pay divine honors to Haman); Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.5 and 8; Additions to Esther (Prayer of Mordecai 7); comp. note 102.

101. 2 Panim Aherim 66

102. 2 Targum 3.4. This source obviously does not think that Haman asked for divine honors (comp. the references in the preceding note), and had not Mordecai been a Benjamite he might have paid homage to Haman. Comp., however, Abba Gorion 22; Panim Aherim 66; Esther R. 3.5 (where it is said that Mordecai cited the example of his ancestor Benjamin, though according to these sources Haman demanded divine honors, and the reference to Benjamin is therefore out of place, if we should not assume that it belonged to another source = Targum). On the reason why the Temple was built in the territory allotted to the tribe of Benjamin, see footnote 926 on p. 822.

103. 2 Panim Aherim 66–67; Abba Gorion 23; Aggadot Esther 29.

104. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.5; Panim Aherim 46. In Targum Esther 3.6, the hereditary enmity is traced further back to that between Jacob the ancestor of Mordecai and Esau the ancestor of the Amalekite Haman. Comp. PRE 50.

105. Targum Esther as quoted by Alkabez, 155a–155b, and in abridged form in the MSS. of the Talmud, Megillah 15a–15b, where the printed texts are very abrupt. A somewhat different version of this legend is found in Aggadot Esther 55. According to this text, the incident of Haman's selling himself as a slave to Mordecai took place when they both journeyed from Jerusalem to Shushan to appear before the king in connection with the rebuilding of the Temple (compare with p. 1146). The bill of sale was written on Mordecai's sandal and not on his knee-cap. Compare with p. 1168.

## CASTING THE LOTS

Haman's hatred, first directed against Mordecai alone, grew apace until it included Mordecai's colleagues, all the scholars, whom he sought to destroy, and not satisfied with even this, he plotted the annihilation of the whole of Mordecai's people, the Jews.<sup>106</sup>

Before beginning to lay out his plans, he desired to determine the most favorable moment for his undertaking, which he did by casting lots.

First of all he wanted to decide on the day of the week. The scribe Shimshai began to cast lots. Sunday appeared inappropriate, being the day on which God created heaven and earth, whose continuance depends on Israel's existence. Were it not for God's covenant with Israel, there would be neither day nor night, neither heaven nor earth. Monday showed itself equally unpropitious for Haman's devices, for it was the day on which God effected the separation between the celestial and the terrestrial waters, symbolic of the separation between Israel and the heathen. Tuesday, the day on which the vegetable world was created, refused to give its aid in bringing about the ruin of Israel, who worships God with branches of palm trees. Wednesday, too, protested against the annihilation of Israel, saying: "On me the celestial luminaries were created, and like unto them Israel is appointed to illumine the whole world. First destroy me, and then Thou mayest destroy Israel." Thursday said: "O Lord, on me the birds were created, which are used for sin offerings. When Israel shall be no more, who will bring offerings? First destroy me, and then Thou mayest destroy Israel." Friday was unfavorable to Haman's lots, because it was the day of the creation of man, and the Lord God said to Israel, "Ye are men." Least of all was the Sabbath day inclined to make itself subservient to Haman's wicked plans. It said: "The Sabbath is a sign between



Israel and God. First destroy me, and then Thou mayest destroy Israel!"<sup>107</sup>

Baffled, Haman gave up all idea of settling upon a favorable day of the week. He applied himself to the task of searching out the suitable month for his sinister undertaking. As it appeared to him, Adar was the only one of the twelve owning naught that might be interpreted in favor of the Jews. The rest of them seemed to be enlisted on their side. In Nisan Israel was redeemed from Egypt; in Iyar Amalek was overcome; in Siwan the Ethiopian Zerah was smitten in the war with Asa; in Tammuz the Amorite kings were subjugated; in Ab the Jews won a victory over Arad, the Canaanite; in Elul Gideon overcame the Midianites and Amalekites; in Tishri the Jewish kingdom was firmly established by the dedication of Solomon's Temple, while in Heshwan the building of the Temple at Jerusalem was completed; Kislew and Tebet were the months during which Sihon and Og were conquered by the Israelites, and in Shebat occurred the sanguinary campaign of the eleven tribes against the godless children of Benjamin. Not alone was Adar a month without favorable significance in Jewish history, but actually a month of misfortune, the month in which Moses died. What Haman did not know was, that Adar was the month in which occurred also the birth of Moses.<sup>108</sup>

Then Haman investigated the twelve signs of the zodiac in relation to Israel, and again it appeared that Adar was the most unfavorable month for the Jews. The first constellation, the Ram, said to Haman, " 'Israel is a scattered sheep,' and how canst thou expect a father to offer his son for slaughter?"

The Bull said: "Israel's ancestor was 'the firstling bullock.' "

The Twins: "As we are twins, so Tamar bore twins to Judah."

The Crab: "As I am called Saratan, the scratcher, so it is said of Israel, 'All that oppress him, he shall scratch sorely.' "

The Lion: "God is called the lion, and is it likely the lion will permit the fox to bite his children?"

The Virgin: "As I am a virgin, so Israel is compared unto a virgin."

The Balance: "Israel obeys the law against unjust balances in the Torah, and must therefore be protected by the Balance."

The Scorpion: "Israel is like unto me, for he, too, is called scorpion."

The Archer: "The sons of Judah are masters of the bow, and the bows of mighty men directed against them will be broken."

The Goat: "It was a goat that brought blessing unto Jacob, the ancestor of Israel, and it stands to reason that the blessing of the ancestor cannot cause misfortune to the descendant."

The Water-bearer: "His dominion is likened unto a bucket, and therefore the Water-bearer cannot but bring him good."<sup>109</sup>

The Fishes were the only constellation which, at least according to Haman's interpretation, made unfavorable prognostications as to the fate of the Jews. It said that the Jews would be swallowed like fishes. God however spake: "O thou villain! Fishes are sometimes swallowed, but sometimes they swallow, and thou shalt be swallowed by the swallowers."<sup>110</sup> And when Haman began to cast lots, God said: "O thou villain, son of a villain! What thy lots have shown thee is thine own lot, that thou wilt be hanged."<sup>111</sup>

---

106. Megillah 13b.

107. Abba Gorion 24–25; Panim Aherim 46, and 2 Panim Aherim 67; Esther R. and 2 Targum 3.7 (but not in all manuscripts of Targum). An essentially different version of this Haggadah is found in Aggadat Esther 27–29. On the view that the existence of the entire world de-



pend on the existence of Israel, see text on p. 1, and Index, s. v. "Israel". On the days of the week and Israel, see text on pp. 48.

108. Aggadat Esther 29, where it is also stated that Joshua made the sun stand still in the month of Tammuz; comp. Seder 'Olam 11. That Moses was born and died in Adar is an old tradition; comp. Megillah 13b, and the references given in footnote 44 on p. 476. For other versions of this Haggadah concerning the selection of Adar, see Abba Gorion 25–26; 2 Panim Aherim 67–68; 2 Targum (but not in MSS. made use of by David), Lekah and Esther R. 3.7. The following memorable dates of the different months, as given in these sources, should be noticed: The death of Sarah in Heshvan, the organization of the Great Synagogue in Shebat, and the wars against the (worshippers of the) image of Micah in the same month. Comp. Megillat Ta'anit (Addition). The source made use of by Ibn Yahya, quoted by Alkabez, 99a–99b, is very likely related to, if not identical with, Aggadat Esther, *loc. cit.* Haman was a great astrologer (comp. PRE 50) like his forebear Amalek, who hoped to conquer Israel by attacking them at the time when they were under the influence of unlucky stars, but he was defeated by Joshua, who surpassed him in the knowledge of astrology and magic. Joshua selected as his warriors against Amalek men who were born in the second Adar, against whom witchcraft has no power. See R. Bahya on Exod. 17.9; R. Eleazar of Worms quoted by Alkabez, 100a. Compare with p. 581.

109. Aggadat Esther 30. Another version found in Abba Gorion 25–26; 2 Panim Aherim 67–68; Esther R. 3.7. According to PRE 50, the day chosen by Haman for the annihilation of Israel was Tuesday, because its constellation is the Lion; comp. Luria, *ad loc.*

110. Abba Gorion 26; Panim Aherim 46 (here it is said: As fish are swelled, even so shall Haman and his sons be swelled up by the fire of hell "every year"); Esther R. 1.7. Yalkut II, 1054, on Esther 3.8, seems to have read a similar statement in Megillah 13b.

111. Esther R. 3.7 (beginning); comp. also 2 Targum Esther 3.7, which reads: When Haman cast lots in order to destroy the holy nation, a heavenly voice was heard saying: "Fear not, congregation of Israel. If thou turnest with repentance to God, the lot will fall upon Haman instead of upon thee." This passage is not found in the MSS. of this Targum made use of by David.

## THE DENUNCIATION OF THE JEWS

**H**is resolve to ruin the Jews taken, Haman appeared before Ahasuerus with his accu-

sation against them. "There is a certain people," he said, "the Jews, scattered abroad and dispersed among the peoples in all the provinces of the kingdom. They are proud and presumptuous. In Tebet, in the depth of winter, they bathe in warm water, and they sit in cold water in summer. Their religion is diverse from the religion of every other people, and their laws from the laws of every other land. To our laws they pay no heed, our religion finds no favor with them, and the decrees of the king they do not execute. When their eye falls upon us, they spit out before us, and they consider us as unclean vessels. When we levy them for the king's service, they either jump upon the wall, and hide within the chambers, or they break through the walls and escape. If we hasten to arrest them, they turn upon us, glare at us with their eyes, grind their teeth, stamp their feet, and so intimidate us that we cannot hold them fast. They do not give us their daughters unto wives, nor do they take our daughters unto wives. If one of them has to do the king's service, he idles all the day long. If they want to buy aught of us, they say, 'This is a day for doing business.' But if we want to buy aught of them, they say, 'We may do no business to-day,' and thus we can buy nothing from them on their market-days.

"Their time they pass in this wise: The first hour of the day, they say, they need for reciting the Shema'; the second for praying; the third for eating; the fourth for saying grace, to give thanks to God for the food and drink He has granted them; the fifth hour they devote to their business affairs; in the sixth they already feel the need of rest; in the seventh their wives call for them, saying, 'Come home, ye weary ones, who are so exhausted by the king's service!'

"The seventh day they celebrate as their Sabbath; they go to the synagogues on that day, read out of their books, translate pieces from their Prophets, curse our king, and execrate our



government, saying: 'This is the day whereon the great God rested; so may He grant us rest from the heathen.'

"The women pollute the waters with their ritual baths, which they take after the seven days of their defilement. On the eighth day after the birth of sons, they circumcise them mercilessly, saying, 'This shall distinguish us from all the other nations.' At the end of thirty days, and sometimes twenty-nine, they celebrate the beginning of the month. In the month of Nisan they observe eight days of Passover, beginning the celebration by kindling a fire of brushwood to burn up the leaven. They put all the leaven in their homes out of sight before they use the unleavened bread, saying, 'This is the day whereon our fathers were redeemed from Egypt.' Such is the festival they call Pesah. They go to their synagogues, read out of their books, and translate from the writings of the Prophets, saying: 'As the leaven has been removed out of our houses, so may this wicked dominion be removed from over us.'

"Again, in Siwan, they celebrate two days, an which they go to their synagogues, recite the Shema', and offer up prayers, read out of the Torah, and translate from the books of their Prophets, curse our king, and execrate our government. This is the holiday which they call Azarta, the closing festival. They ascend to the roofs of their synagogues, and throw down apples, which are picked up by those below, with the words, 'As these apples are gathered up, so may we be gathered together from our dispersion among the heathen.' They say they observe this festival, because on these days the Torah was revealed to their ancestors on Mount Sinai.

"On the first of Tishri they celebrate the New Year—again they go to their synagogues, read out of their books, translate pieces from the writings of their Prophets, curse our king, execrate our government, and blow the trum-

pets, saying: On this Day of Memorial may we be remembered unto good, and our enemies unto evil.'

"On the ninth day of the same month they slaughter cattle, geese, and poultry, they eat and drink and indulge in dainties, they and their wives, their sons and their daughters. But the tenth day of the same month they call the Great Fast, and all of them fast, they together with their wives, their sons, and their daughters, yea, they even torture their little children without mercy, forcing them to abstain from food. They say: 'On this day our sins are pardoned, and are added to the sum of the sins committed by our enemies.' They go to their synagogues, read from their books, translate from the writings of their Prophets, curse our king, and execrate our government, saying: 'May this empire be wiped off from the face of the earth like unto our sins.' They supplicate and pray that the king may die, and his rule be made to cease.

"On the fifteenth of the same month they celebrate the Feast of Tabernacles. They cover the roofs of their houses with foliage, they resort to our parks, where they cut down palm branches for their festal wreaths, pluck the fruit of the Etrog, and cause havoc among the willows of the brook, by breaking down the hedges in their quest after Hosha'not, saying: 'As does the king in the triumphal procession, so do we.' Then they repair to their synagogues to pray, and read out of their books, and make circuits with their Hosha'not, all the while jumping and skipping like goats, so that there is no telling whether they curse us or bless us. This is Sukkot, as they call it, and while it lasts, they do none of the king's service, for, they maintain, all work is forbidden them on these days.

"In this way they waste the whole year with tomfoolery and fiddle-faddle, only in order to avoid doing the king's service. At the expiration of every period of fifty years they have a jubilee



year, and every seventh year is a year of release, during which the land lies fallow, for they neither sow nor reap therein, and sell us neither fruits nor other products of the field, so that those of us who live among them die of hunger. At the end of every period of twelve months, they observe the New Year, at the end of every thirty days the New Moon, and every seventh day is the Sabbath, the day on which, as they say, the Lord of the world rested.”<sup>112</sup>

After Haman had finished his arraignment of the Jews, God said: “Thou didst well enumerate the holidays of the Jews, yet thou didst omit the two—Purim and Shushan Purim—which the Jews will celebrate to commemorate thy fall.”

Clever though Haman’s charge was, the vindication of the Jews was no whit less clever. For they found a defender in the archangel Michael. While Haman was delivering his indictment, he spoke thus to God: “O Lord of the world! Thou knowest well that the Jews are not accused of idolatry, nor of immoral conduct, nor of shedding blood; they are accused only of observing Thy Torah.” God pacified him: “As thou livest, I have not abandoned them, I will not abandon them.”

Haman’s denunciations of the Jewish people found a ready echo in the heart of the king. He replied: “I, too, desire the annihilation of the Jews, but I fear their God, for He is mighty beyond compare, and He loves His people with a great love. Whoever rises up against them, He crushes under their feet. Just think of Pharaoh! Should his example not be a warning to us? He ruled the whole world, yet, because he oppressed the Jews, he was visited with frightful plagues. God delivered them from the Egyptians, and cleft the sea for them, a miracle never done for any other nation, and when Pharaoh pursued them with an army of six hundred thousand warriors, he and his host together were drowned in the sea. Thy ancestor Amalek, O Haman, at-

tacked them with four hundred thousand heroes, and all of them God delivered into the hands of Joshua, who slew them. Sisera had forty thousand generals under him, each one commander of a hundred thousand men, yet they all were annihilated. The God of the Jews ordered the stars to consume the warriors of Sisera, and then He caused the great general to fall into the power of a woman, to become a by-word and a reproach forever. Many and valorous rulers have risen up against them, they all were cast down by their God and crushed unto their everlasting disgrace. Now, then, can we venture aught against them?”

Haman, however, persisted. Day after day he urged the king to consent to his plan. Ahasuerus thereupon called together a council of the wise men of all nations and tongues. To them he submitted the question, whether the Jews ought not to be destroyed, seeing they differed from all other peoples. The sage councillors inquired: “Who is it that desires to induce thee to take so fatal a step? If the Jewish nation is destroyed, the world itself will cease to be, for the world exists only for the sake of the Torah studied by Israel. Yea, the very sun and moon shed their light only for the sake of Israel, and were it not for him, there were neither day nor night, and neither dew nor rain would moisten the earth. More than this, all other nations beside Israel are designated as ‘strangers’ by God, but Israel He called in His love ‘a people near to Him’, and His ‘children’. If men do not suffer their children and kinsmen to be attacked with impunity, how much less will God sit by quiet when Israel is assailed—God the Ruler over all things, over the powers in heaven above and on earth beneath, over the spirits and the souls—God with whom it lies to exalt and to degrade, to slay and to revive.”

Haman was ready with a reply to these words of the wise: “The God who drowned



Pharaoh in the sea, and who did all the wonders and signs ye have recounted, that God is now in His dotage, He can neither see nor protect. For did not Nebuchadnezzar destroy His house, burn His palace, and scatter His people to all corners of the earth, and He was not able to do one thing against it? If He had had power and strength, would He not have displayed them? This is the best proof that He has waxed old and feeble.”

When the heathen sages heard these arguments advanced by Haman, they agreed to his plan, and put their signature to an edict decreeing the persecution of the Jews.<sup>113</sup>

---

112. 2 Targum 3.8, which partly follows old sources; comp. Megillah 13b; Abba Gorion 26; 2 Panim Aherim 68; Aggadat Esther 30–31; Esther R. and Targum Esther 3.8. See also references in notes 114 and 115. It is noteworthy that 2 Targum made use of Palestinian, as well as non-Palestinian (very likely Babylonian) sources. Haman speaks of eight days of Passover and the two days of the Feast of Weeks, and this reflects Jewish life in the diaspora, since in Palestine the first festival consists of seven days and the second of one day. On the other hand, the reference to the Sabbatical and Jubilee year points to the Holy Land, for it is only in that country that the Jews abstain from tilling the soil in these years. The very late date of the final redaction of the 2 Targum is betrayed also by the reference to the reading of the Torah and the translating (into Aramaic) from the books of the Prophets. In pre-Arabic times the custom was to translate the weekly sections of the Torah into the vernacular, that is, into Aramaic. Only after Arabic supplanted Aramaic as the language of the Jews, was the use of Targum limited to the Haftarah. On the throwing down of apples, see Munk, *ad loc.* The explanation given of the custom of the procession with Hosha'anot is old; comp. PK 28, 180a–180b, and the parallel passages cited by Buber, *ad loc.* The statement that on the “Great Fast” (this designates the Day of Atonement only in Palestinian sources; comp., e. g., Yerushalmi Rosh ha-Shanah 1, 57b, and ‘Abodah Zarah 1, 39b) little children are made to fast is not to be taken literally. Comp. Mishnah and Talmud Yoma 82a.

113. Abba Gorion 26–29 (in the last line of 26 read מִנִּית instead of זִמִּית); Panim Aherim 68–69; Esther R. 3.8–9; Aggadat Esther 33–34. On Pharaoh as a “cosmocrator”, see pp. 161–162. As to the vast number of his hosts drowned in the Red Sea, compare with footnote 43 on p. 558. On

Amalek, see text on p. 578. On Sisera, see text on p. 868. On the idea that the existence of the universe is dependent on Israel, see text on p. 1; p. 1150; Index, s. v. “Israel”.

## THE DECREE OF ANNIHILATION

This is the text of the decree which Haman issued to the heads of all the nations regarding the annihilation of the Jews: “This herein is written by me, the great officer of the king, his second in rank, the first among the grandees, and one of the seven princes, and the most distinguished among the nobles of the realm. I, in agreement with the rulers of the provinces, the princes of the king, the chiefs and the lords, the Eastern kings and the satraps, all being of the same counsel and opinion, using the same expressions and the same language, write you at the order of King Ahasuerus this writing sealed with his signet, so that it may not be sent back, concerning the great eagle Israel. The great eagle had stretched out his pinions over the whole world; neither bird nor beast could withstand him. But there came the great lion Nebuchadnezzar, and dealt the great eagle a stinging blow. His pinions snapped, his feathers were plucked out, and his feet were hacked off. The whole world has enjoyed rest, cheer, and tranquillity since the moment the eagle was chased from his eyrie until this day. Now we notice that he is using all efforts to secure wings. He is permitting his feathers to grow, with the intention of covering us and the whole world, as he did unto our forefathers. At the instance of King Ahasuerus, all the magnates of the king of Media and Persia are assembled, and we are writing you our joint advice, as follows: ‘Set snares for the eagle, and capture him before he renews his strength, and soars back to his eyrie.’ We advise you to tear out his plumage, break his wings, give his flesh to the fowl of heaven, split the eggs lying in his



nest, and crush his young, so that his memorial may vanish from the world. Our counsel is not like unto Pharaoh's; he sought to destroy only the men of Israel; to the women he did no harm. It is not like unto the plan of Esau, who wanted to slay his brother Jacob and keep his children as slaves. It is not like unto the tactics of Amalek, who pursued Israel and smote the hindmost and feeble, but left the strong unscathed. It is not like unto the policy of Nebuchadnezzar, who carried them away into exile, and settled them near his own throne. And it is not like unto the way of Sennacherib, who assigned a land unto the Jews as fair as their own had been. We, recognizing clearly what the situation is, have resolved to slay the Jews, annihilate them, young and old, so that their name and their memorial may be no more, and their posterity may be cut off forever."<sup>114</sup>

The edict issued by Ahasuerus against the Jews ran thus: "To all the peoples, nations, and races: Peace be with you! This is to acquaint you that one came to us who is not of our nation and of our land, an Amalekite, the son of great ancestors, and his name is Haman. He made a trifling request of me, saying: 'Among us there dwells a people, the most despicable of all, who are a stumbling-block in every time. They are exceeding presumptuous, and they know our weakness and our shortcomings. They curse the king in these words, which are constantly in their mouths: "God is the King of the world forever and ever: He will make the heathen to perish out of His land: He will execute vengeance and punishments upon the peoples." From the beginning of all time they have been ungrateful, as witness their behavior toward Pharaoh. With kindness he received them, their wives, and their children, at the time of a famine. He gave up to them the best of his land. He provided them with food and all they needed. Then Pharaoh desired to build a palace, and he requested the

Jews to do it for him. They began the work grudgingly, amid murmurings, and it is not completed unto this day. In the midst of it, they approached Pharaoh with these words: "We wish to offer sacrifices to our God in a place that is a three days' journey from here, and we petition thee to lend us silver and gold vessels, and clothes, and apparel." So much did they borrow, that each one bore ninety ass-loads off with him, and Egypt was emptied out. When, the three days having elapsed, they did not return, Pharaoh pursued them in order to recover the stolen treasures. What did the Jews? They had among them a man by the name of Moses, the son of Amram, an arch-wizard, who had been bred in the house of Pharaoh. When they reached the sea, this man raised his staff, and cleft the waters, and led the Jews through them dryshod, while Pharaoh and his host were drowned.

"Their God helps them as long as they observe His law, so that none can prevail against them. Balaam, the only prophet we heathens ever had, they slew with the sword, as they did unto Sihon and Og, the powerful kings of Canaan, whose land they took after killing them. Likewise they brought ruin upon Amalek, the great and glorious ruler—they, and Saul their king, and Samuel their prophet. Later they had an unmerciful king, David by name, who smote the Philistines, the Ammonites, and the Moabites, and not one of them could discomfit him. Solomon, the son of this king, being wise and sagacious, built them a house of worship in Jerusalem, that they might not scatter to all parts of the world. But after they had been guilty of many crimes against their God, He delivered them into the hand of King Nebuchadnezzar, who deported them to Babylon.

"To this day they are among us, and though they are under our hand, we are of none account in their eyes. Their religion and their laws are different from the religion and the laws



of all the other nations. Their sons do not marry with our daughters, our gods they do not worship, they have no regard for our honor, and they refuse to bend the knee before us. Calling themselves freemen, they will not do our service, and our commands they heed not.’

“Therefore the grandees, the princes, and the satraps have been assembled before us, we have taken counsel together, and we have resolved an irrevocable resolution, according to the laws of the Medes and Persians, to extirpate the Jews from among the inhabitants of the earth. We have sent the edict to the hundred and twenty-seven provinces of my empire, to slay them, their sons, their wives, and their little children, on the thirteenth day of the month of Adar—none is to escape. As they did to our forefathers, and desired to do unto us, so shall be done unto them, and their possessions are to be given over to the spoilers. Thus shall ye do, that ye may find grace before me. This is the writing of the letter which I send to you, Ahasuerus king of Media and Persia.”<sup>115</sup>

The price Haman offered the king for the Jews was ten thousand hundredweights of silver. He took the number of the Jews at their exodus from Egypt, six hundred thousand, as the basis of his calculation, and offered a half-shekel for every soul of them, the sum each Israelite had to pay yearly for the maintenance of the sanctuary. Though the sum was so vast that Haman could not find coin enough to pay it, but promised to deliver it in the form of silver bars, Ahasuerus refused the ransom. When Haman made the offer, he said: “Let us cast lots. If thou drawest Israel and I draw the money, then the sale stands as a valid transaction. If the reverse, it is not valid.” Because of the sins of the Jews, the sale was confirmed by the lots. But Haman was not too greatly pleased with his own success. He disliked to give up so large a sum of money. Observing his ill humor, Ahasuerus said: “Keep the

money; I do not care either to make or to lose money on account of the Jews.”<sup>116</sup>

For the Jews it was fortunate that the king did not accept money for them, else his subjects would not have obeyed his second edict, the one favorable to the Jews. They would have been able to advance the argument, that the king, by accepting a sum of money for them, had resigned his rights over the Jews in favor of Haman, who, therefore, could deal with them as he pleased.<sup>117</sup>

The agreement between Ahasuerus and Haman was concluded at a carouse, by way of punishment for the crime of the sons of Jacob, who had unmercifully sold their brother Joseph into slavery to the Ishmaelites while eating and drinking.<sup>118</sup>

The joy of this Jew-hating couple—for Ahasuerus hated the Jews with no less fierce a hatred than Haman did<sup>119</sup>—was shared by none. The capital city of Shushan was in mourning and sorely perplexed. Scarcely had the edict of annihilation been promulgated against the Jews, when all sorts of misfortunes began to happen in the city. Women who were hanging up their wash to dry on the roofs of the houses dropped dead; men who went to draw water fell into the wells, and lost their lives. While Ahasuerus and Haman were making merry in the palace, the city was thrown into consternation and mourning.<sup>120</sup>

---

114. *Panim Aherim* 47; all the other sources (comp. the following note) state that Ahasuerus issued the decree of annihilation. The designation of Haman as “next unto the king” in *Panim Aherim* is no proof of its dependence on Septuagint (comp. the following note); both sources very likely gave Haman this title which, according to Esther 10.2, was borne by Mordecai.

115. *Midrash Esther* 68–69; *Abba Gorion* 29–32 (in Hebrew and Aramaic; the latter seems to be the original form, as the opening line of the Hebrew version is in Aramaic); *Esther R.* 3.8; *Lekah* 3.12; *Aggadat Esther* 36; *Yerahmeel* 81, 241–244 (the decree of Haman and the edict



of Ahasuerus are here combined into one, to which are added many sentences, found in old sources, of the conversation between Haman and the king about the Jews); 2 Targum Esther 3.8 (towards the end) and 4.1. The text of the first passage of Targum contains several corruptions. The sentence *ולית אנהא ידעין* (p. 25, line 5, in David's edition) is a gloss to p. 24, line 22, as a variant to *ולא ידעין*; p. 25, line 10, reads: *כל דזבנין בשויה זבנין*. The accusation made against the Jews is that they buy at low prices and sell at great profits. In contrast to the Midrashim, Targum maintains that Haman's denunciation of the Jews was made in oral conversation with the king. Comp. Megillah 13b, and Yerahmeel, *loc. cit.* As to the statement in Targum that "some of them are dealers in wax", see footnote 87 on p. 930 and footnote 110 on p. 934. The Greek Additions to Esther (Addition B) contain a letter of the king to the princes of the provinces and the subordinate governors, in which, after calling attention to his "moderation and mildness", he informs them that at the advice of the wise Haman, who is exalted to "the second place in the kingdom" (comp. the preceding note), he decreed the annihilation of the Jewish people, the "nation that stands alone in opposition to all men continually." Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.6, used the apocryphal letter of the king, but allowed himself a great deal of liberty in reproducing its text. The rabbinical versions of the letter are, on the other hand, entirely independent of the Greek Additions. It is, however, to be noted that besides the letter of the king, Addition B knows also of the letters of Haman, just as the Midrashim have a decree by Haman and an edict by Ahasuerus. The Arabic version of Haman's decree (comp. Hirschfeld in *Semitic Studies in memory of Kohut*, 248, *seq.*) is an almost literal translation of 2 Targum Esther 4.1, and it is strange that this fact escaped Hirschfeld. Perreau published from a Parma MS. another letter of Haman which agrees with Aggadat Esther and Yerahmeel, in *Hebräische Bibliographie*, VII, 46, *seq.*

116. Abba Gorion 27–29; 2 Panim Aherim 69; Esther R. and 2 Targum 3.9; comp. Tosafoth on Megillah 16a (caption *ידחי*). According to ShR 33.5, Haman offered all his silver and gold as a price for the Jews. See Abba Gorion 29 and Esther R. 3.11. When Ahasuerus said to Haman: "The silver is given thee" (Esther 3.11), the Holy Spirit called out: "The gallows is given thee." This is a play on *כסף* "silver" and *עץ* "gallows", both of which words have the same numerical value. On the half-shekel as the basis for Haman's computing the price for the Jews, see Yerushalmi Megillah 1, 70d, and 3, 74a; *Kad ha-Kemah*, Purim, II, 47a.

117. Aggadat Esther 35.

118. Panim Aherim 51 and 2 Panim Aherim 69; Esther R. and 2 Targum 3.14–15. The last-named passage reads: Because Joseph's brethren sold him unto a foreign

land, their descendants were sold unto a foreign land (= to a foreigner); but as Benjamin did not take part in this transaction, his descendants Mordecai and Esther became the redeemers of Israel. Compare with p. 335; Tehillim 10, 93.

119. Megillah 14a (top), and 11a; (here it is said that Ahasuerus hated the Jews more than Haman); Abba Gorion 29; Esther R. 23.10. Compare with p. 1154. The attacks of Ahasuerus and Haman on Israel are taken to have been aimed at God; compare with p. 1154; 2 Panim Aherim 69.

120. 2 Panim Aherim 69.

## SATAN INDICTS THE JEWS

The position of the Jews after the royal edict became known beggars description. If a Jew ventured abroad on the street to make a purchase, he was almost throttled by the Persians, who taunted him with these words: "Never mind, to-morrow will soon be here, and then I shall kill thee, and take thy money away from thee." If a Jew offered to sell himself as a slave, he was rejected; not even the sacrifice of his liberty could protect him against the loss of his life.<sup>121</sup>

Mordecai, however, did not despair; he trusted in the Divine help. On his way from the court, after Haman and his ilk had informed him with malicious joy of the king's pleasure concerning the Jews, he met Jewish children coming from school. He asked the first child what verse from the Scriptures he had studied in school that day, and the reply was: "Be not afraid of sudden fear, neither of the desolation of the wicked when it cometh." The verse committed to memory by the second was: "Let them take counsel together, but it shall be brought to naught; let them speak the word, but it shall not stand; for God is with us." And the verse which the third had learnt was: "And even to old age I am He, and even to hoar hairs I will carry you: I have made and will bear; yea, I will carry and will deliver."



When Mordecai heard these verses, he broke out into jubilation, astonishing Haman not a little. Mordecai told him, "I rejoice at the good tidings announced to me by the school children." Haman thereupon fell into such a rage that he exclaimed: "In sooth, they shall be the first to feel the weight of my hand."

What gave Mordecai the greatest concern, was the certainty that the danger had been invited by the Jews themselves, through their sinful conduct in connection with the banquets given by Ahasuerus. Eighteen thousand five hundred Jews had taken part in them; they had eaten and drunk, intoxicated themselves and committed immoralities, as Haman had foreseen, the very reason, indeed, he had advised the king to hold the banquets.

Thereupon Satan had indicted the Jews. The accusations which he produced against them were of such a nature that God at once ordered writing materials to be brought to Him for the decree of annihilation, and it was written and sealed.

When the Torah heard that Satan's designs against the Jews had succeeded, she broke out into bitter weeping before God, and her lamentations awakened the angels, who likewise began to wail, saying: "If Israel is to be destroyed, of what avail is the whole world?"

The sun and the moon heard the lamentations of the angels, and they donned their mourning garb and also wept bitterly and wailed, saying: "Is Israel to be destroyed, Israel who wanders from town to town, and from land to land, only for the sake of the study of the Torah; who suffers grievously under the hand of the heathen, only because he observes the Torah and the sign of the covenant?"

In great haste the prophet Elijah ran to the Patriarchs and to the other prophets, and to the saints in Israel, and addressed these words to them: "O ye fathers of the world! Angels, and

the sun and the moon, and heaven and earth, and all the celestial hosts are weeping bitterly. The whole world is seized with threes as of a woman in travail, by reason of your children, who have forfeited their life on account of their sins, and ye sit quiet and tranquil." Thereupon Moses said to Elijah: "Knowest thou any saints in the present generation of Israel?" Elijah named Mordecai, and Moses sent the prophet to him, with the charge that he, the "saint of the living generation", should unite his prayers with the prayers of the saints among the dead, and perhaps the doom might be averted from Israel. But Elijah hesitated. "O faithful shepherd," he said, "the edict of annihilation issued by God is written and sealed." Moses, however, did not desist; he urged the Patriarchs: "If the edict is sealed with wax, your prayers will be heard; if with blood, then all is in vain."

Elijah hastened to Mordecai, who, when first he heard what God had resolved upon, tore his garments and was possessed by a great fear, though before he had confidently hoped that help would come from God. He gathered together all the school children, and had them fast, so that their hunger should drive them to moan and groan. Then it was that Israel spoke to God: "O Lord of the world! When the heathen rage against me, they do not desire my silver and gold, they desire only that I should be exterminated from off the face of the earth. Such was the design of Nebuchadnezzar when he wanted to compel Israel to worship the idol. Had it not been for Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, I had disappeared from the world. Now it is Haman who desires to uproot the whole vine."<sup>122</sup>

Then Mordecai addressed all the people thus: "O people of Israel, that art so dear and precious in the sight of thy Heavenly Father! Knowest thou not what has happened? Hast thou not heard that the king and Haman have



resolved to remove us off the face of the earth, to destroy us from beneath the sun? We have no king on whom we can depend, and no prophet to intercede for us with prayers. There is no place whither we can flee, no land wherein we can find safety. We are like sheep without a shepherd, like a ship upon the sea without a pilot. We are like an orphan born after the death of his father, and death robs him of his mother, too, when he has scarce begun to draw nourishment from her breast.”

After this address a great prayer-meeting was called outside of Shushan. The Ark containing the scroll of the law, covered with sackcloth and strewn with ashes, was brought thither. The scroll was unrolled, and the following verses read from it: “When thou art in tribulation, and all these things are come upon thee, in the latter days thou shalt return to the Lord thy God, and hearken unto His voice, for the Lord thy God is a merciful God: He will not fail thee, neither destroy thee, nor forget the covenant of thy fathers which He swore unto them.”

Thereunto Mordecai added words of admonition: “O people of Israel, that art dear and precious to thy Father in heaven, let us follow the example of the inhabitants of Nineveh, doing as they did when the prophet Jonah came to them to announce the destruction of the city. The king arose from his throne, laid his crown from him, covered himself with sackcloth, and sat in ashes, and he made proclamation, and published through Nineveh by the decree of the king and his nobles, saying, ‘Let neither man nor beast, herd nor flock, taste anything; let them not feed, nor drink water, but let them be covered with sackcloth, both man and beast, and let them cry mightily unto God; yea, let them turn every one from his evil way, and from the violence that is in their hands.’ Then God repented Him of the evil He had designed to bring upon them, and He did it not. Now, then,

let us follow their example, let us hold a fast, mayhap God will have mercy upon us.”<sup>123</sup>

Furthermore spake Mordecai: “O Lord of the world! Didst Thou not swear unto our fathers to make us as many as the stars in the heavens? And now we are as sheep in the shambles. What has become of Thine oath?”<sup>124</sup> He cried aloud, though he knew God hears the softest whisper, for he said: “O Father of Israel, what hast Thou done unto me? One single cry of anguish uttered by Esau Thou didst repay with the blessing of his father Isaac, ‘By thy sword shalt thou live’. and now we ourselves are abandoned to the mercy of the sword.”<sup>125</sup> What Mordecai was not aware of, was that he, the descendant of Jacob, was brought unto weeping and wailing by Haman, the descendant of Esau, as a punishment, because Jacob himself had brought Esau unto weeping and wailing.<sup>126</sup>

121. Esther R. 3.15; 2 Targum 4.2. Comp. Esther R., introduction, 3.

122. Abba Gorion 32–35; BHM V, 55–56; Esther R. 3.4 (towards the end); Aggadat Esther 38–40. Panim Aherim 47 reads as follows: God sent for the patriarchs and said unto them: “Your children deserve to be destroyed.” “Why?” they asked. God replied: “Because they did not sanctify My name in the days of Nebuchadnezzar the wicked, and made it appear as though I had no power to save them.” The patriarchs rejoined: “Do Thou with them as Thou pleasest.” When God saw that the attribute of justice was about to prevail, He rose from the throne of justice, and seated Himself on the throne of mercy. The entire “heavenly family” pleaded for Israel, saying: “Didst Thou not create the universe for the sake of the Torah given to Israel, so that its existence depends upon the existence of Israel? If Thou destroyest this nation, what will become of us?” God replied: “Israel did not act as they should.” The “heavenly family” continued to plead: “It is known and revealed before Thee that what they did (in obeying Nebuchadnezzar’s command to worship the image erected by him) was out of fear.” On hearing this pleading God was filled with mercy for Israel. As to the question whether Israel in Mordecai’s days deserved to be destroyed on account of their sins, and on the nature of these sins, see PK 19, 140a; PR 33, 151b (their lack of trust in God nearly



brought about their destruction, were it not for the fact that even Jacob, when in distress, despaired of God's help, and they followed the example of their ancestor; compare footnote 240 on p. 297); comp. further Ekah 3, 134, and the references cited in notes 16, 17. On the idea that the universe depended on the preservation of Israel, compare with p. 1; text on pp. 1150, 1154; Index, s. v. "Israel". Divination by passages from books (stichomancy), especially by passages from the Bible (Biblomancy) is found in the Talmud (comp., e. g., Hagigah 15a–15b; Hullin 95b), and hence it is quite natural for the legend to make Mordecai ask the children the scriptural verses they had studied. The three verses recited by the children were later inserted in the daily prayer; comp. Baer, *Abodat Israel* (end of *'Alenu*). On the wandering of the scholars from town to town, see Baba Batra 8a; on the intercession of the saints among the dead, see text on p. 869. The designation of Moses as the faithful shepherd is of frequent occurrence; compare with p. 500; text on p. 1080. As to the sealing of the heavenly decree, see text on p. 800, and footnote 26 on p. 1074. According to 2 Targum Esther 4.1 (beginning; part of the text is very obscure), the Holy Spirit revealed to Mordecai the danger threatening Israel (comp. Alkabez, 125a), whereas Targum Esther 4.1 agrees with the Midrashim cited at the beginning of this note, that it was Elijah who gave him this information.

123. 2 Targum Esther 4.1. The passage from **אתחייבו בלחודוי הוא וכד** (p. 28. lines 4–9, in David's edition) does not belong to the end, but is a variant of line 1 (p. 11, line 12). On the covering of the ark with sackcloth, see Ta'anit 2.1; on the inhabitants of Nineveh, see *ibid.*, and text on p. 1034. The verses of the Bible read by Mordecai (Deut. 4.30–31) are taken from the section read on the Fast of Ab (Tosefta Megillah 4.9 and Babli 31b), but it would seem from this passage of the Targum that it was read on all fast-days. The custom prevailing now to read Exod. 32.11–14 and 34.1–10 dates from the time of the Geonim; the Mishnah, Megillah (end), has Lev. 26 and Deut. 28 as the sections for fast-days. Compare also with p. 1055. The prayer of Mordecai in the Greek Addenda reads like an insertion in the first benediction of the 'Amidah, and accordingly it begins with the description of God in whose power is the entire world, and closes with the supplication to the God of Abraham to redeem His inheritance. This corresponds to **... מלך עוזר ומושיע ... קונה הכל** in the first benediction of the 'Amidah. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.8, follows Septuagint, though not verbatim.

124. PRE 50. This short prayer reminds one of the Prayer of Mordecai in the Septuagint. Comp. the preceding note. A Hebrew translation of the Prayer of Mordecai is found in Josippon 4 and hence in numerous later rab-

binic works, as, e. g., in Esther R. 4.10, and Yerahmeel 89, 237. Comp. Schürer, *Geschichte*, III, 450–451.

125. 2 Panim Aherim 70, in explanation of Esther 4.1. A different explanation of this passage is given in Panim Aherim 51, which reads: He cried: Wrong will be done to the king who does wrong to the innocent. See also Septuagint, which reads: He cried with a loud voice: A nation which has done no wrong is going to be destroyed. On the correct reading of Panim Aherim, see Alkabez, 125a. Comp. also Megillah 15a with regard to the words used by Mordecai in his loud crying.

126. BR 67.4; Esther R. 4.1; Panim Aherim 51; compare with pp. 258 and 270.

## THE DREAM OF MORDECAI FULFILLED

Esther, who knew naught of what was happening at court, was greatly alarmed when her attendants told her that Mordecai had appeared in the precincts of the palace clothed in sackcloth and ashes. She was so overcome by fright that she was deprived of the joys of motherhood to which she had been looking forward with happy expectancy.<sup>127</sup> She sent clothes to Mordecai, who, however, refused to lay aside his garb of mourning until God permitted miracles to come to pass for Israel, wherein he followed the example of such great men in Israel as Jacob, David, and Ahab, and of the Gentile inhabitants of Nineveh at the time of Jonah. By no means would he array himself in court attire so long as his people was exposed to sure suffering.<sup>128</sup> The queen sent for Daniel, called also Hathach in the Scriptures, and charged him to learn from Mordecai wherefore he was mourning.<sup>129</sup>

To escape all danger from spying ears, Hathach and Mordecai had their conversation in the open, like Jacob when he consulted with his wives Leah and Rachel about leaving their



father Laban.<sup>130</sup> By Hathach Mordecai sent word to the queen, that Haman was an Amalekite, who like his ancestor sought to destroy Israel.<sup>131</sup> He requested her to appear before the king and plead for the Jews, reminding her at the same time of a dream he had once had and told her about.

Once, when Mordecai had spent a long time weeping and lamenting over the misery of the Jews in the Dispersion, and prayed fervently to God to redeem Israel and rebuild the Temple, he fell asleep, and in his sleep a dream visited him. He dreamed he was transported to a desert place he had never seen before. Many nations lived there jumbled together, only one small and despised nation kept apart at a short distance. Suddenly a snake shot up from the midst of the nations, rising higher and higher, and growing stronger and larger in proportion as it rose. It darted in the direction of the spot in which the tiny nation stood, and tried to project itself upon it. Impenetrable clouds and darkness enveloped the little nation, and when the snake was on the point of seizing it, a hurricane arose from the four corners of the world, covering the snake as clothes cover a man, and blew it to bits. The fragments scattered hither and thither like chaff before the wind, until not a speck of the monster was to be found anywhere. Then the cloud and the darkness vanished from above the little nation, the splendor of the sun again enveloped it.<sup>132</sup>

This dream Mordecai recorded in a book, and when the storm began to rage against the Jews, he thought of it, and demanded that Esther go to the king as the advocate of her people. At first she did not feel inclined to accede to the wishes of Mordecai. By her messenger she recalled to his mind, that he himself had insisted upon her keeping her Jewish descent a secret.<sup>133</sup> Besides, she had always tried to refrain from appearing before the king at her own initiative, in order that she might not be instrumental in

bringing down sin upon her soul, for she well remembered Mordecai's teaching, that "a Jewish woman, captive among the heathen, who of her own accord goes to them, loses her portion in the Jewish nation." She had been rejoicing that her petitions had been granted, and the king had not come nigh unto her this last month. Was she now voluntarily to present herself before him?<sup>134</sup> Furthermore, she had her messenger inform Mordecai, that Haman had introduced a new palace regulation. Any one who appeared before the king without having been summoned by Haman, would suffer the death penalty. Therefore, she could not, if she would, go to the king to advocate the cause of the Jews.<sup>135</sup>

Esther urged her uncle to refrain from incensing Haman and furnishing him with a pretext for wreaking the hatred of Esau to Jacob upon Mordecai and his nation. Mordecai, however, was firmly convinced that Esther was destined by God to save Israel. How could her miraculous history be explained otherwise? At the very moment Esther was taken to court, he had thought: "Is it conceivable that God would force so pious a woman to wed with a heathen, were it not that she is appointed to save Israel from menacing dangers?"<sup>136</sup>

Firm as Mordecai was in his determination to make Esther take a hand in affairs, he yet did not find it a simple matter to communicate with her. For Hathach was killed by Haman as soon as it was discovered that he was acting as mediator between Mordecai and Esther.<sup>137</sup> There was none to replace him, until God dispatched the archangels Michael and Gabriel to carry messages from one to the other and back again.<sup>138</sup>

Mordecai sent word to her, if she let the opportunity to help Israel slip by, she would have to give account for the omission before the heavenly court.<sup>139</sup> To Israel in distress, however, help would come from other quarters. Never had God forsaken His people in time of need.



Moreover, he admonished her, that, as the descendant of Saul, it was her duty to make reparation for her ancestor's sin in not having put Agag to death. Hah he done as he was bidden, the Jews would now not have to fear the machinations of Haman, the offspring of Agag. He bade her supplicate her Heavenly Father to deal with the present enemies of Israel as He had dealt with his enemies in former ages. To give her encouragement, Mordecai continued: "Is Haman so surpassing great that his plan against the Jews must succeed? Dost thou mean to say that he is superior to his own ancestor Amalek, whom God crushed when he precipitated himself upon Israel? Is he mightier than the thirty-one kings who fought against Israel and whom Joshua slew 'with the word of God'? Is he stronger than Sisera, who went out against Israel with nine hundred iron chariots, and yet met his death at the hands of a mere woman, the punishment for having withdrawn the use of the water-springs from the Israelites and prevented their wives from taking the prescribed ritual baths and thus from fulfilling their conjugal duty? Is he more powerful than Goliath, who reviled the warriors of Israel, and was slain by David? Or is he more invincible than the sons of Orpah, who waged wars with Israel, and were killed by David and his men? Therefore, do not refrain thy mouth from prayer, and thy lips from supplication, for on account of the merits of our fathers, Israel has ever and ever been snatched out of the jaws of death. He who has at all times done wonders for Israel, will deliver the enemy into our hands now, for us to do with him as seemeth best to us."

What he endeavored to impress upon Esther particularly, was that God would bring help to Israel without her intermediation, but it was to her interest to use the opportunity, for which alone she had reached her exalted place, to make up for the transgressions committed by her house, Saul and his descendants.<sup>140</sup>

Yielding at last to the arguments of Mordecai, Esther was prepared to risk life in this world, in order to secure life in the world to come. She made only one request of her uncle. He was to have the Jews spend three days in prayer and fasting in her behalf, that she might find favor in the eyes of the king. At first Mordecai was opposed to the proclamation of a fast, because it was Passover time, and the law prohibits fasting on the holidays. But he finally assented to Esther's reasoning: "Of what avail are the holidays, if there is no Israel to celebrate them, and without Israel, there would not be even a Torah. Therefore it is advisable to transgress one law, that God may have mercy upon us."<sup>141</sup>

---

127. Abba Gorion 35; Panim Aherim 51 (this passage contains also another opinion to the effect that Esther took precautions to prevent pregnancy; comp., however, note 80); 2 Panim Aherim 70; Esther R. 4.9. Comp. also the different views about the effects of the queen's fright as stated in Megillah 15a and PRE 50.

128. 2 Panim Aherim 70; Aggadat Esther 42; Esther R. 4.1. Comp. also BR 84.20; Tehillim 10, 93; Panim Aherim 51; Aggadat Esther 40; text on p. 382.

129. Megillah 15b; Baba Batra 4a (according to some authorities, Daniel was called so, because he "decided" the most important affairs of state; according to others, because he was "cut off by Ahasuerus" from the important position he held under the former king; Hathach is derived from חתך "he cut off", "he decided"); Esther R. and Targum 4.5.

130. Aggadat Esther 43; compare with p. 291.

131. Abba Gorion 36; 2 Panim Aherim 70 (read **ברמז** instead of **ברוח הקודש**, which crept into the text from the next paragraph); Esther R. 4.7.

132. Esther R. 4.7; Midrash Esther 67; Aggadat Esther 43. The source upon which these Midrashim drew is very likely Josippon 4, where the Dream of Mordecai found in the Greek Additions to Esther is translated into Hebrew. BHM V, 1.16, contains a Hebrew as well as an Aramaic translation of this apocryphal piece. See Schürer, *Geschichte*, III, 450–451. Mekilta Amalek 2, 55a and 56a (= Esther R. 2.7), remarks: Mordecai took notice of the "hint" given him from above. This refers perhaps to the dream in which the future history of Esther was revealed to him. Compare, however, with p. 1162.



133. Aggadat Esther 43; 2 Panim Aherim 70.

134. 2 Targum Esther 4.1. Compare with pp. 1143 and 1166.

135. Targum Esther 4.11 Against this view, comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.3.

136. Targum Esther 4.10; Mekilta Amalek 2, 56a; Esther R. 2.7. Comp. note 132.

137. Abba Gorion 36; 2 Panim Aherim 70; PRE 50; 1 and 2 Targum 4.11. According to Megillah 15a, Hathach did not want to be the harbinger of a painful message, and accordingly Esther was forced to find somebody else to act as an intermediary. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.7, on the other hand, emphasizes the fact that the same person (Hathach) carried on the negotiations between Mordecai and Esther.

138. Targum Esther 4.12; according to 2 Targum, after the death of Hathach written messages were sent by the queen to Mordecai. A third view is that the Holy Spirit was the intermediary between the two. Comp. Abba Gorion 36 and 2 Panim Aherim 70. PRE 50 maintains that Esther communicated with Mordecai by word of mouth.

139. Esther R. 4.14. A somewhat different account is found in Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.7, which reads: There would certainly arise help from God some other way, but she and her father's house would be destroyed by those whom she now neglected. It seems that Josephus was acquainted with the haggadic interpretation according to which **מָקוֹם** (Esther 4.14) stand for God; comp. Tehillim 22, 182; Targum, Lekah, and Esther R., *ad loc.* See also Buber, note 50 on Aggadat Esther 44. The designation of God as **מָקוֹם** "Place" is found in as early an author as Philo; comp. *De Somniis* 1.11 and Index, s. v. "Place".

140. 2 Targum Esther 4.13–14. As to the view that Saul was responsible for the suffering of the Jews at the hands of Haman, comp. Esther R., introduction, 7, and text on p. 899. On the view that Joshua slew Amalek by the word of God (this is meant by **בְּמִלַּת דְּשִׁמְיָא**), compare with pp. 841–842. The passage beginning with **וְכַד קָם** (not found in all MSS.) at the end of verse 13 is certainly a later addition. It is also possible that the sentence **לְתַקְלָא... אֵלָא אִידְכְּרִי**, if genuine, should be put at the beginning of this verse where Saul's guilt is pointed out. The exhortation to prayer is also found in Septuagint 4.8, where **הַמֶּלֶךְ** is referred to God; comp. Esther R. 1.9 and Megillah 15a with reference to the use of **מֶלֶךְ** "King" in the book of Esther in the sense of the "Heavenly King". Comp. notes 161, 171, 177.

141. 2 Panim Aherim 70–71. The reason for this fast is to atone for the sin of the Jews who had partaken of forbidden food at the banquet of Ahasuerus; Tehillim 22, 182; pp. 1132–1133. Megillah 15a, Esther R. and 2 Targum 4.16 (the MSS. show that the sentence in Targum beginning with **דְּעַד הַשְּׁתָּא** is a later addition, based on the

Talmud) maintain that the queen pointed out to Mordecai the great sacrifice she is bringing. By going voluntarily to Ahasuerus she was for ever cutting herself off from her legitimate husband (*i. e.* Mordecai; compare with p. 1143), as the law does not permit the reunion of husband and wife if the latter of her own free will, had relations with another man. Opinions differ as to how the three days' fast is to be understood. Yebamot 121a and PRE 50 are of the opinion that the fast lasted for seventy-two consecutive hours. On the other hand, Tehillim 22, 183, maintains that this would have been a physical impossibility; accordingly the fast lasted really only a little more than twenty-four hours. They began the fast shortly before night, and finished it shortly after the beginning of the following night. The Bible calls it a three days' fast because it began on one day and ended on the third. Comp. Yoma 81b; *Torat ha-Adam*, 29–81b; Alkabez, 136.

## THE PRAYER OF ESTHER

Accordingly Mordecai made arrangements for a fast and a prayer-meeting. On the very day of the festival, he had himself ferried across the water to the other side of Shushan, where all the Jews of the city could observe the fast together.<sup>142</sup> It was important that the Jewish residents of Shushan beyond all other Jews should do penance and seek pardon from God, because they had committed the sin of partaking of Ahasuerus's banquet. Twelve thousand priests marched in the procession, trumpets in their right hands, and the holy scrolls of the law in their left, weeping and mourning, and exclaiming against God: "Here is the Torah Thou gavest us. Thy beloved people is about to be destroyed. When that comes to pass, who will be left to read the Torah and make mention of Thy name? The sun and the moon will refuse to shed their light abroad, for they were created only for the sake of Israel." Then they fell upon their faces, and said: "Answer us, our Father, answer us, our King." The whole people joined in their cry, and the celestials wept with them, and the Fathers came forth from their graves.



After a three days' fast, Esther arose from the earth and dust, and made preparations to betake herself to the king. She arrayed herself in a silken garment, embroidered with gold from Ophir and spangled with diamonds and pearls sent her from Africa; a golden crown was on her head, and on her feet shoes of gold.

After she had completed her attire, she pronounced the following prayer: "Thou art the great God, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the God of my father Benjamin. Not because I consider myself without blemish, do I dare appear before the foolish king, but that the people of Israel may not be cut off from the world. Is it not for the sake of Israel alone that the whole world was created, and if Israel should cease to exist, who will come and exclaim 'Holy, holy, holy' thrice daily before Thee? As Thou didst save Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah out of the burning furnace, and Daniel out of the den of lions, so save me out of the hand of this foolish king, and make me to appear charming and graceful in his eyes. I entreat Thee to give ear to my prayer in this time of exile and banishment from our land. By reason of our sins the threatening words of the Holy Scriptures are accomplished upon us: 'Ye shall sell yourselves unto your enemies for bondmen and for bond-women, and no man shall buy you.' The decree to kill us has been issued. We are delivered up unto the sword for destruction, root and branch. The children of Abraham covered themselves with sackcloth and ashes, but though the elders sinned, what wrongs have the children committed, and though the children committed wrongs, what have the sucklings done? The nobles of Jerusalem came forth from their graves, for their children were given up to the sword.

"How quickly have the days of our joy flown by! The wicked Haman has surrendered us to our enemies for slaughter.

"I will recount before Thee the deeds of Thy friends, and with Abraham will I begin. Thou didst try him with all temptations, yet didst Thou find him faithful. O that Thou wouldst support his beloved children for his sake, and aid them, so that Thou wouldst bear them as an unbreakable seal upon Thy right hand. Call Haman to account for the wrong he would do us, and be revenged upon the son of Hammedatha. Demand requital of Haman and not of Thy people, for he sought to annihilate us all at one stroke, he, the enemy and afflicter of Thy people, whom he endeavors to hem in on all sides.

"With an eternal bond Thou didst bind us unto Thee. O that Thou wouldst uphold us for the sake of Isaac, who was bound. Haman offered the king ten thousand talents of silver for us. Raise Thou our voice, and answer us, and bring us forth from out of the narrow place into enlargement. Thou who breakest the mightiest, crush Haman, so that he may never again rise from his fall. I am ready to appear before the king, to entreat grace for my inheritance. Send Thou an angel of compassion with me on mine errand, and let grace and favor be my companions. May the righteousness of Abraham go before me, the binding of Isaac raise me, the charm of Jacob be put into my mouth, and the grace of Joseph upon my tongue. Happy the man who putteth his trust in God; he is not confounded. He will lend me His right hand and His left hand, with which He created the whole world. Ye, all ye of Israel, pray for me as I pray in your behalf. For whatsoever a man may ask of God in the time of his distress, is granted unto him. Let us look upon the deeds of our fathers and do like unto them, and He will answer our supplications. The left hand of Abraham held Isaac by the throat, and his right hand grasped the knife. He willingly did Thy bidding, nor did he delay to execute Thy command. Heaven opened its



windows to give space to the angels, who cried bitterly, and said: 'Woe to the world, if this thing should come to pass!' I also call upon Thee! O answer me, for Thou givest ear unto all who are afflicted and oppressed. Thou art called the Merciful and the Gracious; Thou art slow to anger and great in lovingkindness and truth. Hear our voice and answer us, and lead us out of distress into enlargement. For three days have I fasted in accordance with the number of days Abraham journeyed to bind his son upon the altar before Thee. Thou didst make a covenant with him, and didst promise him: 'Whenever thy children shall be in distress, I will remember the binding of Isaac favorably unto them, and deliver them out of their troubles.' Again, I fasted three days corresponding to the three classes of Israel, priests, Levites, and Israelites, who stood at the foot of Sinai, and said: 'All the Lord hath spoken will we do, and be obedient.' "

Esther concluded her prayer and said: "O God, Lord of hosts! Thou that searchest the heart and the reins, in this hour do Thou remember the merits of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, that my petition to Thee may not be turned aside, nor my request be left unfulfilled."<sup>143</sup>

---

142. Megillah 15a (comp. Rabinovitch, *ad loc.*) and Aggadat Esther 45; this is an explanation of ויעבר in 4.17, literally "and he passed over". Targum, *ad loc.*, interprets the word to mean "and he transgressed the law", which forbids fasting on festivals; comp. references cited in the preceding note. According to Seder 'Olam 39, PRE 50, and Esther R. 3.17, the three fast-days were the thirteenth, the fourteenth, and fifteenth of Nisan, whereas according to Panim Aherim 71 (is this the source of Rashi on Megillah, *loc. cit.*?), they were the fourteenth, fifteenth, and sixteenth of that month. The latter view seems to have been shared by Koheleth 8.5, which reads: *Whoso keepeth the commandment shall know no evil thing* (Eccles. 8.5); this refers to Esther who was busy in carrying out the commandment of "searching for leaven" (this ceremony takes place at night from the thirteenth to the fourteenth of Nisan), and knew not of the evil decreed by Haman against the Jews. The

statement, however, that Mordecai went on the first day of Passover to Shushan to arrange for the fast (one of the main features of the fast was the gathering of the people for public prayer) could only be explained if the fast-days were on the fifteenth, sixteenth, and seventeenth of Nisan. Comp. note 146, and Luria on PRE, *loc. cit.*

143. 2 Targum 4.16–5.1. The prayer *Anenu* taken from the ritual for fast-days is given in Hebrew. The second part of the prayer, beginning with a new alphabet (in the first alphabet read אה אנהא instead of וזה), is perhaps the oldest specimen of an 'Akedah. On the view that Israel and the Torah are necessary for the existence of the world, see text on p. 1, and Index, s. v. "Israel" and "Torah". Ahasuerus is called in Targum Esther "a foolish king"; see text on p. 1135, and notes 7, 49. In the days of this king the curse was fulfilled: "and there ye shall sell yourselves, etc." (Deut. 28.68); see Megillah 11a; Esther R., introduction, 3. The suffering of innocent children does not fail to arouse God's compassion; see text on p. 1034. God created the world with His left hand; see footnote 3 on p. 1. The angels wept when Abraham was about to sacrifice his son Isaac; text on p. 229. The prayer of Esther as found in the Greek Additions to Esther occurs in Josippon 4, whence it is borrowed by many other writers (comp., e. g., BHM V, 5–8 and 12–16, where the Hebrew and Aramaic translations from the Greek [Latin?] text are found), but Targum did not make use of it.

## ESTHER INTERCEDES

After finishing her prayer, Esther betook herself to the king, accompanied by three attendants, one walking to the right of her, the second on the other side, and the third bearing her train, heavy with the precious stones with which it was studded.<sup>144</sup> Her chief adornment was the holy spirit that was poured out over her. But scarcely did she enter the chamber containing the idols, when the holy spirit departed from her, and she cried out in great distress: "*Eli, Eli, lamah azabtani!* Shall I be chastised for acts that I do against my will, and only in obedience to the promptings of sore need?"<sup>145</sup> Why should my fate be different from that of the Mother? When Pharaoh only attempted to approach Sarah, plagues came upon him and his house,



but I have been compelled for years to live with this heathen, and Thou dost not deliver me out of his hand. O Lord of the world! Have I not paid scrupulous heed to the three commands Thou didst specially ordain for women?"

To reach the king, Esther had to pass through seven apartments, each measuring ten ells in length. The first three she traversed unhindered; they were too far off for the king to observe her progress through them. But barely had she crossed the threshold of the fourth chamber, when Ahasuerus caught sight of her, and, overcome by rage, he exclaimed: "O for the departed, their like is not found again on earth! How I urged and entreated Vashti to appear before me, but she refused, and I had her killed therefor. This Esther comes hither without invitation, like unto a public prostitute."

In consternation and despair Esther stood rooted to the centre of the fourth chamber. Having once allowed her to pass through the doors under their charge, the guards of the first four rooms had forfeited their authority over her; and to the guards in the other three rooms, she had not yet given cause for interfering with her. Yet the courtiers were so confident that Esther was about to suffer the death penalty, that the sons of Haman were already busy dividing her jewels among themselves, and casting lots for her royal purple. Esther herself was keenly aware of her dangerous position. In her need, she besought God: "*Eli, Eli, lamah azabtani*," and prayed to Him the words which have found their place in the Psalter composed by King David.<sup>146</sup> Because she put her confidence in God, He answered her petition, and sent her three angels to help her: the one enveloped her countenance with "the threads of grace", the second raised her head, and the third drew out the sceptre of Ahasuerus until it touched her.<sup>147</sup> The king turned his head round, to avoid seeing Esther, but the angels

forced him to look her way, and be conquered by her seductive charm.<sup>148</sup>

By reason of her long fast, Esther was so weak that she was unable to extend her hand toward the sceptre of the king. The archangel Michael had to draw her near it. Ahasuerus then said: "I see, thou must have a most important request to prefer, else thou hadst not risked thy life deliberately.<sup>149</sup> I am ready to give it thee, even to the half of the kingdom. There is but one petition I cannot grant, and that is the restoration of the Temple. I gave my oath to Geshem the Arabian, Sanballat the Horonite, and Tobiah the Ammonite, not to allow it to be rebuilt, from fear of the Jews, lest they rise up against me."<sup>150</sup>

For the moment, Esther refrained from uttering her petition. All she asked was, that the king and Haman would come to a banquet she proposed to give. She had good reasons for this peculiar course of conduct. She desired to disarm Haman's suspicions regarding her Jewish descent, and to lead her fellow-Jews to fix their hope upon God and not upon her. At the same time, it was her plan to arouse jealousy of Haman in both the king and the princes. She was quite ready to sacrifice her own life, if her stratagems would but involve the life of Haman, too.<sup>151</sup> At the banquet she therefore favored Haman in such manner that Ahasuerus could not but be jealous. She moved her chair close to Haman's, and when Ahasuerus handed her his wine-cup, to let her drink of it first, she passed it on to his minister.

After the banquet, the king repeated his question, and again made the asseveration, that he would fulfil all her wishes at whatever cost, barring only the restoration of the Temple. Esther, however, was not yet ready; she preferred to wait another day before taking up the conflict with Haman. She had before her eyes the



example of Moses, who also craved a day's preparation before going out against Amalek, the ancestor of Haman.<sup>152</sup>

Deceived by the attention and distinction accorded him by Esther, Haman felt secure in his position, priding himself not only on the love of the king, but also on the respect of the queen. He felt himself to be the most privileged being in all the wide realm governed by Ahasuerus.<sup>153</sup>

Filled with arrogant self-sufficiency, he passed by Mordecai, who not only refused to give him the honors decreed in his behalf, but, besides, pointed to his knee, inscribed with the bill of sale whereby Haman had become the slave of Mordecai.<sup>154</sup> Doubly and triply enraged, he resolved to make an example of the Jew. But he was not satisfied with inflicting death by a simple kick.

On reaching his home he was disappointed not to find his wife Zeresh, the daughter of the Persian satrap Tattenai. As always when Haman was at court, she had gone to her paramours. He sent for her and his three hundred and sixty-five advisers, and with them he took counsel as to what was to be done to Mordecai.<sup>155</sup> Pointing to a representation of his treasure chamber, which he wore on his bosom,<sup>156</sup> he said: "And all this is worthless in my sight when I look upon Mordecai, the Jew. What I eat and drink loses its savor, if I but think of him."<sup>157</sup>

Among his advisers and sons, of whom there were two hundred and eight, none was so clever as Zeresh his wife. She spoke thus: "If the man thou tellest of is a Jew, thou wilt not be able to do aught to him except by sagacity. If thou castest him into the fire, it will have no effect upon him, for Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah escaped from the burning furnace unhurt; Joseph went free from prison; Manasseh prayed to God, and He heard him, and saved him from the iron furnace; to drive him out in the wilderness is useless, thou knowest the desert did no evil to the

Israelites that passed through it; putting out his eyes avails naught, for Samson blind did more mischief than ever Samson seeing. Therefore hang him, for no Jew has ever escaped death by hanging."<sup>158</sup>

Haman was well pleased with the words of his wife. She fetched artificers in wood and iron, the former to erect the cross, the latter to make the nails. Their children danced around in high glee while Zeresh played upon the cithern, and Haman in his pleasurable excitement said: "To the wood workers I shall give abundant pay, and the iron workers I shall invite to a banquet."

When the cross was finished, Haman himself tested it, to see that all was in working order. A heavenly voice was heard: "It is good for Haman the villain, and for the son of Hammedatha it is fitting."<sup>159</sup>

---

144. Additions to Esther, Addition D; a Hebrew translation thereof is found in Josippon 4. Comp. also Yerahmeel 80, 240.

145. Megillah 15a-15b; 2 Panim Aherim 71. The Talmud further remarks that Esther thought she had committed a sin in describing Ahasuerus, in her prayer, as a dog. To make amends for her disrespect, she later, in her prayer, referred to him as a lion. This remark of the Talmud, as well as the other, that she cried out: "Eli Eli, Lammah 'azabtani", is based on the assumption that in Ps. 22 we have the prayer of Esther before she appeared before the king. Tehillim 22, 180-197, contains a paraphrase of this chapter, giving details of Esther's life alluded to therein. See also Yoma 29a. That in the apocryphal prayer of Esther Ahasuerus is called a lion by Esther, has very likely nothing to do with the rabbinical interpretation of this psalm as containing Esther's prayer. Simonsen, *R.E.J.*, XXII, 283-285, explains the typological interpretation of this psalm by the authors of the New Testament (comp., e. g., Matth. 27.46; Mark 15.34), who refer it to the passion of Jesus, to be due to the fact that this Esther psalm was recited in the Temple and in the synagogue on the fourteenth of Nisan, the original fast of Esther, and it was quite natural for the early Christians to substitute, for the suffering of Esther, the passion of Jesus, which took place on the very same day. This hypothesis, however, cannot be accepted for two valid reasons. In the first place, it may be stated with certainty that the day on which the paschal lamb was sacrificed, far



from being a fast-day, was a festival day (comp. Pesahim 4.1 and 5; Yerushalmi, beginning; Megillah Ta'anit 1; Judith 8.6). Then the old sources are of the opinion that Esther fasted not on the fourteenth of Nisan, but on the fifteenth; comp. note 142. It is true the Karaites observe the Fast of Esther on the three days preceding passover (comp. Bashyazi, *Aderet Eliyahu*, end of **חג המצות**), but this obviously does not prove anything. A short prayer of Esther is found in Targum Esther 5.1.

146. Tehillim 22, 188, 193, 194; comp. also 183 (where the words addressed by Esther to God read differently) and 184. On the twenty-second psalm, see the preceding note. On the comparison between Esther and Vashti, comp. note 35. The words used by Ahasuerus, "O for the departed, etc.", are a favorite phrase with the Rabbis; comp., e. g., text on p. 750, with regard to the superiority of the patriarchs to Moses. The Addenda to Esther (Addition D) contain a description of Esther's appearance before the king, which in many points reminds one of that of the Midrash. Note especially the statement in Septuagint that the king beholding Esther looked upon her with fierce wrath, so that she swooned; God then changed the spirit of the king into mildness and the king sprang up from his throne, and raised her in his arms until she came to herself again. Josippon 4 contains a Hebrew translation of this Addition to Esther. Comp. also Esther R. 5.1; BHM V, 13–14. Tehillim, *loc. cit.*, is the source for Aggadat Esther 52–53, as well as for 2 Targum 5.1, where **ובנוי דהמן** is to be read instead of **המן**, in accordance with Tehillim 22, 193.

147. Megillah 15b; the three angels remind one of the attendants of Esther in the Addition to Esther; compare with p. 1166.

148. 2 Panim Aherim 71. Comp. also Tehillim 22, 194, which reads: An angel struck a blow upon the king's mouth (the text is incomplete, and hence obscure; something was very likely said about a remark made by Ahasuerus derogatory to Esther; comp. *ibid.*, 193), and said to him: "Thy spouse stands waiting, and thou sittest on thy throne." The queen's charm captivated him against his will, and he arose to meet her.

149. 2 Panim Aherim 71. Here it is also stated that Ahasuerus was blind, but his eyes became bright as soon as he directed them towards Esther; whereupon he held out the golden sceptre to her. A miracle happened, and the sceptre extended to the place where Esther stood (the distance is variously described as twelve, sixteen, twenty-four, sixty, and two hundred cubits), so that she was able to touch it. Yea, a still greater miracle happened. Whenever Esther visited the king, the sceptre of its own accord would move towards her; Megillah 15b; Tehillim 22, 194–195.

150. Targum Esther 5.3; Megillah 15b; compare with p. 1146.

151. Megillah 15b, where several other reasons are given for this peculiar conduct; comp. also 2 Targum 5.8, and 2 Panim Aherim 71.

152. Panim Aherim 71. The somewhat obscure sentence **היתה שומעת וגו' שלא** means that up to this time Esther did not consent to gratify the king's desire; but now she promised that she would no longer withhold her conjugal duties. On the only wish of the queen that the king would not grant, see the references in the preceding note.

153. PRE 50; Esther R. 5.11 (end). The statement made in the latter source that God would not permit the pious to suffer more than three days, and that accordingly Haman's fall took place on the fifteenth of Nisan, three days after the issue of the decree of annihilation (on the date, see note 142) is based on an old Haggadah; comp. BR 91.7 and 56.1; Tehillim 22, 183.

154. Aggadat Esther 55. Compare with p. 1150.

155. Abba Gorion 36,2; Panim Aherim 72 (read with Aggadat Esther 55; **יצא בעלך לקרורי פוק לשוק** "if thy husband left for the country, it is time for thee to visit the market-place"); Esther R. 5.11.

156. Megillah 15b (top).

157. 2 Panim Aherim 72.

158. Abba Gorion 36–37 (on the **מולא** "furnace" from which Manasseh was saved, see text on p. 1055); 2 Panim Aherim 72; Esther R. 5.11; 2 Targum 5.11, where read **תנורא** "furnace" instead of **תורא** "ox". On the number of Haman's children, concerning which opinions vary greatly (it is given as thirty, one hundred, two hundred and eight), comp. Megillah 15b; Targum Esther 5.11; Tehillim 22, 181; text on p. 1176. On the view that the pious are saved from all kinds of death, see also text on p. 471.

159. 2 Targum 5.14; Abba Gorion 37; Panim Aherim 48 (here Gabriel takes the place of the heavenly voice); Esther R. 5.11; BHM VI, 56; Aggadat Esther 61; an unknown Midrash in Yalkut II, 1059, on Esther 7. In the last two sources the carpenter and smith employed by Haman to make the cross are mentioned by name. According to 2 Panim Aherim 72, Zeresh advised her husband not to engage in any evil designs against Mordecai, because the Jews are like a stone: if any one falls on it, he gets hurt; and if it falls on any one, he gets bruised. Haman, however, did not follow her counsel, but that given him by his friends. On the comparison between Israel and a stone, see also Abba Gorion 24 and Esther R. 3.6.

## THE DISTURBED NIGHT

The night during which Haman erected the cross for Mordecai was the first night of



Passover, the very night in which miracles without number had ever been done for the Fathers and for Israel. But this time the night of joy was changed into a night of mourning and a night of fears. Wherever there were Jews, they passed the night in weeping and lamenting. The greatest terrors it held for Mordecai, because his own people accused him of having provoked their misfortunes by his haughty behavior toward Haman.<sup>160</sup>

Excitement and consternation reigned in heaven as well as on earth.<sup>161</sup> When Haman had satisfied himself that the cross intended for his enemy was properly constructed, he repaired to the Bet ha-Midrash, where he found Mordecai and all the Jewish school children, twenty-two thousand in number, in tears and sorrow. He ordered them to be put in chains, saying: "First I shall kill off these, and then I shall hang Mordecai." The mothers hastened thither with bread and water, and coaxed their children to take something before they had to encounter death. The children, however, laid their hands upon their books, and said: "As our teacher Mordecai liveth, we will neither eat nor drink, but we will perish exhausted with fasting." They rolled up their sacred scrolls, and handed them to their teachers with the words: "For our devotion to the study of the Torah, we had hoped to be rewarded with long life, according to the promise held out in the Holy Scriptures. As we are not worthy thereof, remove the books!" The outcries of the children and of the teachers in the Bet ha-Midrash, and the weeping of the mothers without, united with the supplications of the Fathers, reached unto heaven in the third hour of the night, and God said: "I hear the voice of tender lambs and sheep!" Moses arose and addressed God thus: "Thou knowest well that the voices are not of lambs and sheep, but of the young of Israel, who for three days have been fasting and languishing in fetters, only to be slaughtered on the morrow to the delight of the arch-enemy."

Then God felt compassion with Israel, for the sake of his innocent little ones. He broke the seal with which the heavenly decree of annihilation had been fastened, and the decree itself he tore in pieces.<sup>162</sup> From this moment on Ahasuerus became restless, and sleep was made to flee his eyes, for the purpose that the redemption of Israel might be brought to pass. God sent down Michael, the leader of the hosts of Israel, who was to keep sleep from the king,<sup>163</sup> and the archangel Gabriel descended, and threw the king out of his bed on the floor, no less than three hundred and sixty-five times, continually whispering in his ear: "O thou ingrate, reward him who deserves to be rewarded."

To account for his sleeplessness, Ahasuerus thought he might have been poisoned, and he was about to order the execution of those charged with the preparation of his food. But they succeeded in convincing him of their innocence, by calling to his attention that Esther and Haman had shared his evening meal with him, yet they felt no unpleasant effects.<sup>164</sup> Then suspicions against his wife and his friend began to arise in his mind. He accused them inwardly of having conspired together to put him out of the way. He sought to banish this thought with the reflection, that if a conspiracy had existed against him, his friends would have warned him of it. But the reflection brought others in its train: Did he have any friends? Was it not possible that by leaving valuable services unrewarded, he had forfeited the friendly feelings toward him?<sup>165</sup> He therefore commanded that the chronicles of the kings of Persia be read to him. He would compare his own acts with what his predecessors had done, and try to find out whether he might count upon friends.<sup>166</sup>

What was read to him, did not restore his tranquillity of mind, for he saw a poor man before him—none other than the angel Michael—who called to him continually: "Haman wants



to kill thee, and become king in thy stead. Let this serve thee as proof that I am telling thee the truth: Early in the morning he will appear before thee and request permission of thee to kill him who saved thy life. And when thou inquierest of him what honor should be done to him whom the king delighteth to honor, he will ask to be given the apparel, the crown, and the horse of the king as signs of distinction.”<sup>167</sup>

Ahasuerus's excitement was soothed only when the passage in the chronicles was reached describing the loyalty of Mordecai. Had the wishes of the reader been consulted, Ahasuerus had never heard this entry, for it was a son of Haman who was filling the office of reader, and he was desirous of passing the incident over in silence. But a miracle occurred—the words were heard though they were not uttered!

The names of Mordecai and Israel had a quieting influence upon the king, and he dropped asleep. He dreamed that Haman, sword in hand, was approaching him with evil intent, and when, early in the morning, Haman suddenly, without being announced, entered the antechamber and awakened the king, Ahasuerus was persuaded of the truth of his dream. The king was still further set against Haman by the reply he gave to the question, how honor was to be shown to the man whom the king delighteth to honor. Believing himself to be the object of the king's good-will, he advised Ahasuerus to have his favorite arrayed in the king's coronation garments, and the crown royal put upon his head. Before him one of the grandees of the kingdom was to run, doing herald's service, proclaiming that whosoever did not prostrate himself and bow down before him whom the king delighteth to honor, would have his head cut off, and his house given over to pillage.

Haman was quick to notice that he had made a mistake, for he saw the king's countenance change color at the mention of the word

crown. He therefore took good care not to refer to it again. In spite of this precaution, Ahasuerus saw in the words of Haman a striking verification of his vision, and he was confident that Haman cherished designs against his life and his throne.<sup>168</sup>

---

160. 2 Targum Esther 6.1; Panim Aherim 73–74; comp. PK 5, 55b; PR 15, 78, as well as the references given in footnote 76 on p. 190, and text on p. 541, with regard to the first night of Passover as the night of miracles. According to some, however, the “disturbed night” was the second night of Passover. Comp. note 142.

161. Megillah 15b (on the interpretation of מלך “king”, Esther 6.12, as referring to the “King of the world”, *i. e.* God, see note 140); PRE 50; Panim Aherim 48; 2 Panim Aherim 73; Esther R. and Targumim 6.1.

162. Abba Gorion 37–38 (on the last sentence about the innocent babes, see Makiri on Ps. 8, 50); Esther R. 5.12; BHM VI, 56; 2 Targum Esther 6.1 (Munk's edition). Comp. also Ekah 1, 69–70.

163. 2 Targum 6.1. According to another reading, it was the “angel of insomnia” who kept the king awake. Comp. also the following note, and note 167.

164. Abba Gorion 38–39; Panim Aherim 48 (this passage has Michael instead of Gabriel); 2 Panim Aherim 74. The number of times Ahasuerus was thrown out of bed corresponds to the days of the solar year. This correspondence to the solar year is to be noticed also in the number of Haman's counsellors (compare with p. 1168). In Aggadat Esther “sixty-one” is to be corrected accordingly. Some maintain that Ahasuerus saw, in a dream, Haman assuming a threatening attitude, and this disturbed his sleep greatly. When shortly after that Haman in the presence of the king expressed his wish to be attired in the royal insignia, Ahasuerus saw in it the fulfilment of his dream; comp. PRE 50; Koheleth 5.2; Esther R. 6.1; BHM VI, 57; Yalkut II, 1057, on Esther 7 (derived from an unknown source); Panim Aherim 75; Targum 5.1.

165. Megillah 15b; Panim Aherim 48; 2 Panim Aherim 74.

166. Megillah 15b; Panim Aherim 48; 2 Panim Aherim 74; comp. Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6, 10.

167. 2 Targum Esther 6.1 (David's edition). Elsewhere it is Satan, the great adversary of man, who appears in the disguise of a beggar. Compare footnote 226 on p. 224.

168. PRE 50; BHM VI, 57; Abba Gorion 39; 2 Panim Aherim 74–75; Yalkut II, 1057 (towards the end); 2 Targum Esther 6.1 and 9. Comp. also Alkabez, 159b; Mid-rash Eliyyahu II, 161b; the references in note 164.



Shimshai the son of Haman (comp. note 95) was secretary to the king, and in order not to be made to read the passage about Mordecai, he struck it out; but Gabriel (or according to 2 Panim Aherim 75 and Yalkut, *loc. cit.*, Elijah) wrote it down again as soon as it was struck out. See Megillah 15b; 2 Targum, *loc. cit.*; comp. also *Kad ha-Kemah*, Purim, 2, 47–48. In 2 Targum 6.1 read שְׁמֵי סָפְרָא instead of עַם שׁוֹפְרָא, which gives no sense.

## THE FALL OF HAMAN

Haman was soon to find out that he had gone far afield in supposing himself to be the man whom the king delighted to honor. The king's command ran: "Hasten to the royal treasure chambers; fetch thence a cover of fine purple, a raiment of delicate silk, furnished forth with golden bells and pomegranates and bestrewn with diamonds and pearls, and the large golden crown which was brought me from Macedonia upon the day I ascended the throne. Furthermore, fetch thence the sword and the coat of mail sent me from Ethiopia, and the two veils embroidered with pearls which were Africa's gift. Then repair to the royal stables, and lead forth the black horse whereon I sat at my coronation. With all these insignia of honor, seek out Mordecai!"

Haman: "Which Mordecai?"

Ahasuerus: "Mordecai the Jew."

Haman: "There be many Jews named Mordecai."

Ahasuerus: "The Jew Mordecai who sits at the king's gate."

Haman: "There be many royal gates; I know not which thou meanest."

Ahasuerus: "The gate that leads from the harem to the palace."

Haman: "This man is my enemy and the enemy of my house. Rather would I give him ten thousand talents of silver than do him this honor."

Ahasuerus: "Ten thousand talents of silver shall be given him, and he shall be made lord over thy house, but these honors must thou show unto him."

Haman: "I have ten sons. I would rather have them run before his horse than do him this honor."

Ahasuerus: "Thou, thy sons, and thy wife shall be slaves to Mordecai, but these honors must thou show unto him."

Haman: "O my lord and king, Mordecai is a common man. Appoint him to be ruler over a city, or, if thou wilt, even over a district, rather than I should do him this honor."

Ahasuerus: "I will appoint him ruler over cities and districts. All the kings on land and on water shall pay him obedience, but these honors must thou show unto him."

Haman: "Rather have coins struck bearing thy name together with his, instead of mine as hitherto, than I should do him this honor."

Ahasuerus: "The man who saved the life of the king deserves to have his name put on the coin of the realm. Nevertheless, these honors must thou show unto him."

Haman: "Edicts and writings have been issued to all parts of the kingdom, commanding that the nation to which Mordecai belongs shall be destroyed. Recall them rather than I should do him this honor."

Ahasuerus: "The edicts and the writings shall be recalled, yet these honors must thou show unto Mordecai."

Seeing that all petitions and entreaties were ineffectual, and Ahasuerus insisted upon the execution of his order, Haman went to the royal treasure chambers, walking with his head bowed like a mourner's, his ears hanging down, his eyes dim, his mouth screwed up, his heart hardened, his bowels cut in pieces, his loins weakened, and his knees knocking against each other.<sup>169</sup> He gathered together the royal insignia, and took



them to Mordecai, accompanied on his way by Harbonah and Abzur, who, at the order of the king, were to take heed whether Haman carried out his wishes to the letter.

When Mordecai saw his enemy approach, he thought his last moment had come. He urged his pupils to flee, that they might not “burn themselves with his coals.” But they refused, saying: “In life as in death we desire to be with thee.” The few moments left him, as he thought, Mordecai spent in devotion. With words of prayer on his lips he desired to pass away. Haman, therefore, had to address himself to the pupils of Mordecai: “What was the last subject taught you by your teacher Mordecai?” They told him they had been discussing the law of the ‘Omer, the sacrifice brought on that very day so long as the Temple had stood. At his request, they described some of the details of the ceremony in the Temple connected with the offering. He exclaimed: “Happy are you that your ten farthings, with which you bought the wheat for the ‘Omer, produced a better effect than my ten thousand talents of silver, which I offered unto the king for the destruction of the Jews.”

Meantime Mordecai had finished his prayer. Haman stepped up to him, and said: “Arise, thou pious son of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Thy sackcloth and ashes availed more than my ten thousand talents of silver, which I promised unto the king. They were not accepted, but thy prayers were accepted by thy Father in heaven.”

Mordecai, not yet disabused of the notion that Haman had come to take him to the cross, requested the grace of a few minutes for his last meal. Only Haman’s repeated protests reassured him. When Haman set about arraying him with the royal apparel, Mordecai refused to put it on until he had bathed, and had dressed his hair. Royal apparel agreed but ill with his condition after three days of sackcloth and ashes. As luck would have it, Esther had issued the command

that the bathkeepers and barbers were not to ply their trades on that day, and there was nothing for Haman to do but perform the menial services Mordecai required. Haman tried to play upon the feelings of Mordecai. Fetching a deep sigh, he said: “The greatest in the king’s realm is now acting as bathkeeper and barber!” Mordecai, however, did not permit himself to be imposed upon. He knew Haman’s origin too well to be deceived; he remembered his father, who had been bathkeeper and barber in a village.

Haman’s humiliation was not yet complete. Mordecai, exhausted by his three days’ fast, was too weak to mount his horse unaided. Haman had to serve him as footstool, and Mordecai took the opportunity to give him a kick. Haman reminded him of the Scriptural verse: “Rejoice not when thine enemy falleth, and let not thine heart be glad when he is overthrown.” Mordecai, however, refused to apply it to himself, for he was chastising, not a personal enemy, but the enemy of his people, and of such it is said in the Scriptures: “And thou shalt tread upon the high places of thine enemies.”<sup>170</sup>

Finally, Haman caused Mordecai to ride through the streets of the city, and proclaimed before him: “Thus shall it be done unto the man whom the king delighteth to honor.” In front of them marched twenty-seven thousand youths detailed for this service from the court. In their right hands they bore golden cups, and golden beakers in their left hands, and they, too, proclaimed: “Thus shall be done unto the man whom the king delighteth to honor.” The procession furthermore was swelled by the presence of Jews. They, however, made a proclamation of different tenor. “Thus shall be done”, they cried out, “unto the man whose honor is desired by the King that hath created heaven and earth.”<sup>171</sup>

As he rode along, Mordecai gave praise to God: “I will extol Thee, O Lord; for Thou hast raised me up, and hast not made my foes to



rejoice over me. O Lord my God, I cried unto Thee, and Thou hast healed me. O Lord, Thou hast brought up my soul from Sheol; Thou hast kept me alive, that I should not go down to the pit." Whereupon his pupils joined in with: "Sing praise unto the Lord, O ye saints of His, and give thanks to His holy name. For His anger is but for a moment; in His favor is life; weeping may tarry for the night, but joy cometh in the morning." Haman added the verse thereto: "As for me, I said in my prosperity, I shall never be moved. Thou, Lord, of Thy favor hadst made my mountain to stand strong. Thou didst hide Thy face; I was troubled." Queen Esther continued: "I cried to Thee, O Lord; and unto the Lord I made supplication. What profit is there in my blood, when I go down to the pit? Shall the dust praise Thee? Shall it declare Thy truth?" and the whole concourse of Jews present cried out: "Thou hast turned for me my mourning into dancing; Thou hast loosed my sackcloth, and girded me with gladness, to the end that my glory may sing praise to Thee, and not be silent. O Lord my God, I will give thanks unto Thee forever."<sup>172</sup>

When this procession passed the house of Haman, his daughter was looking out of the window. She took the man on the horse to be her father, and the leader of it, Mordecai. Raising a vessel filled with offal, she emptied it out over the leader—her own father. Scarce had the vessel left her hand, when she realized the truth, and she threw herself from the window, and lay crushed to death on the street below.<sup>173</sup>

In spite of the sudden change in his fortunes, Mordecai ended the eventful day as he had begun it, in prayer and fasting. No sooner was the procession over than he put off the royal robes, and, again covering himself with sackcloth, he prayed until night fell.

Haman was plunged in mourning, partly on account of the deep disgrace to which he had

been subjected, partly on account of the death of his daughter.<sup>174</sup> Neither his wife nor his friends could advise him how to mend his sad fortunes. They could hold out only sorry consolation to him: "If this Mordecai is of the seed of the saints, thou wilt not be able to prevail against him. Thou wilt surely encounter the same fate as the kings in their battle with Abraham, and Abimelech in his quarrel with Isaac. As Jacob was victorious over the angel with whom he wrestled, and Moses and Aaron caused the drowning of Pharaoh and his host, so Mordecai will overcome thee in the end."<sup>175</sup>

While they were yet talking, the king's chamberlains came, and hastily carried Haman off to the banquet Esther had prepared, to prevent him and his influential sons from plotting against the king.<sup>176</sup> Ahasuerus repeated his promise, to give Esther whatever she desired, always excepting the restoration of the Temple. This time, casting her eyes heavenward, Esther replied: "If I have found favor in Thy sight, O Supreme King, and if it please Thee, O King of the world, let my life be given me, and let my people be rescued out of the hands of its enemy."<sup>177</sup> Ahasuerus, thinking these words were addressed to him, asked in irritation: "Who is he, and where is he, this presumptuous conspirator, who thought to do thus!" These were the first words the king had ever spoken to Esther herself. Hitherto he had always communicated with her through an interpreter. He had not been quite satisfied she was worthy enough to be addressed by the king. Now made cognizant of the fact that she was a Jewess, and of royal descent besides, he spoke to her directly, without the intervention of others.<sup>178</sup>

Esther stretched forth her hand to indicate the man who had sought to take her life, as he had actually taken Vashti's, but in the excitement of the moment, she pointed to the king. Fortunately the king did not observe her error,



because an angel guided her hand instantaneously in the direction of Haman,<sup>179</sup> whom her words described: "This is the adversary and the enemy, he who desired to murder thee in thy sleeping-chamber during the night just passed; he who this very day desired to array himself in the royal apparel, ride upon thy horse, and wear the golden crown upon his head, to rise up against thee and deprive thee of thy sovereignty. But God set his undertaking at naught, and the honors he sought for himself, fell to the share of my uncle Mordecai, whom this oppressor and enemy thought to hang."<sup>180</sup>

The anger of the king already burnt so fiercely that he hinted to Esther, that whether Haman was the adversary she had in mind or not, she was to designate him as such. To infuriate him still more, God sent ten angels in the guise of Haman's ten sons, to fell down the trees in the royal park. When Ahasuerus turned his eyes toward the interior of the park, he saw the ruthless destruction of which they were guilty. In his rage he went out into the garden. This was the instant utilized by Haman to implore grace for himself from Esther. Gabriel intervened, and threw Haman upon the couch in a posture as though he were about to do violence to the queen. At that moment Ahasuerus reappeared. Enraged beyond description by what he saw, he cried out: "Haman attempts the honor of the queen in my very presence! Come, then, ye peoples, nations, and races, and pronounce judgment over him!"<sup>181</sup>

When Harbonah, originally a friend of Haman and an adversary of Mordecai, heard the king's angry exclamation, he said to him: "Nor is this the only crime committed by Haman against thee, for he was an accomplice of the conspirators Bigthan and Teresh, and his enmity to Mordecai dates back to the time when Mordecai uncovered their foul plots. Out of revenge therefor, he has erected a cross for him." Har-

bonah's words illustrate the saying: "Once the ox has been cast to the ground, slaughtering knives can readily be found." Knowing that Haman had fallen from his high estate, Harbonah was intent upon winning the friendship of Mordecai.<sup>182</sup> Harbonah was altogether right, for Ahasuerus at once ordered Haman to be hanged. Mordecai was charged with the execution of the king's order, and Haman's tears and entreaties did not in the least move him. He insisted upon hanging him like the commonest of criminals, instead of executing him with the sword, the mode of punishment applied to men of rank guilty of serious misdemeanors.<sup>183</sup>

The cross which Haman, at the advice of his wife Zeresh and of his friends, had erected for Mordecai, was now used for himself. It was made of wood from a thorn-bush. God called all the trees together and inquired which one would permit the cross for Haman to be made of it. The fig-tree said: "I am ready to serve, for I am symbolic of Israel, and, also, my fruits were brought to the Temple as first fruits." The vine said: "I am ready to serve, for I am symbolic of Israel and, also, my wine is brought to the altar." The apple-tree said: "I am ready to serve, for I am symbolic of Israel." The nut-tree said: "I am ready to serve, for I am symbolic of Israel." The Etrog tree said: "I should have the privilege, for with my fruit Israel praises God on Sukkot." The willow of the brook said: "I desire to serve, for I am symbolic of Israel." The cedar-tree said: "I desire to serve, for I am symbolic of Israel." The palm-tree said: "I desire to serve, for I am symbolic of Israel." Finally the thorn-bush came and said: "I am fitted to do this service, for the ungodly are like pricking thorns." The offer of the thorn-bush was accepted, after God gave a blessing to each of the other trees for its willingness to serve.

A sufficiently long beam cut from a thorn-bush could be found only in the house of



Haman, which had to be demolished in order to obtain it.<sup>184</sup> The cross was tall enough for Haman and his ten sons to be hanged upon it. It was planted three cubits deep in the ground, each of the victims required three cubits space in length, one cubit space was left vacant between the feet of the one above and the head of the one below, and the youngest son, Vaizatha, had his feet four cubits from the ground as he hung.<sup>185</sup>

Haman and his ten sons remained suspended a long time, to the vexation of those who considered it a violation of the Biblical prohibition in Deuteronomy, not to leave a human body hanging upon a tree overnight. Esther pointed to a precedent, the descendants of Saul, whom the Gibeonites left hanging half a year, whereby the name of God was sanctified, for whenever the pilgrims beheld them, they told the heathen, that the men had been hanged because their father Saul had laid hand on the Gibeonites. "How much more, then," continued Esther, "are we justified in permitting Haman and his family to hang, they who desired to destroy the house of Israel?"<sup>186</sup>

Beside these ten sons, who had been governors in various provinces, Haman had twenty others, ten of whom died, and the other ten of whom were reduced to beggary.<sup>187</sup> The vast fortune of which Haman died possessed was divided in three parts. The first part was given to Mordecai and Esther, the second to the students of the Torah, and the third was applied to the restoration of the Temple.<sup>188</sup> Mordecai thus became a wealthy man. He was also set up as king of the Jews. As such he had coins struck, which bore the figure of Esther on the obverse, and his own figure on the reverse.<sup>189</sup> However, in the measure in which Mordecai gained in worldly power and consideration, he lost spiritually, because the business connected with his high political station left him no time for the study of

the Torah. Previously he had ranked sixth among the eminent scholars of Israel, he now dropped to the seventh place among them.<sup>190</sup> Ahasuerus, on the other hand, was the gainer by the change. As soon as Mordecai entered upon the office of grand chancellor, he succeeded in subjecting to his sway the provinces that had revolted on account of Vashti's execution.<sup>191</sup>

---

169. 2 Targum Esther 56.10 (the horse שִׁפְרָגָה is very likely identical with the famous horse Shabdaz of the Persian king Khorsau II; comp. Yalkut III, 250, *seq.*, and accordingly the correct reading is שִׁפְרָגָה); Megillah 16a; PRE 50; BHM VI, 57; 2 Panim Aherim 75; Aggadat Esther 62–63. In the last-named source, as well as in Abba Gorion 39, a badly corrupted passage is given about the royal raiment. Comp. Ginzberg's remarks in *Orientalistische Literaturzeitung* XVIII, 180, top, where it is shown that the Midrash speaks here of Labrat-Lilat as having woven those garments. Comp. also Targum Esther 6.10.

170. Megillah 16a; PK 8, 71b–72b (on the village קְרִינוֹס where Haman or, according to others, his father, was a barber, comp. Schlatter, *Verkanntes Griechisch*, 65–66 and vol. V, pp. 385–386); PR 18, 93a–93b; WR 28.6; Abba Gorion 40–41; 2 Panim Aherim 75–76; BHM VI, 57; Esther R. 6.10; 2 Targum 6.11; Aggadat Esther 63–64. That Mordecai first thought Haman was mocking him is also stated by Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.10. On the view that Haman's fall took place on the day of the 'Omer, that is, on the sixteenth day of Nisan, see note 142.

171. 2 Targum 6.11; 2 Panim Aherim 76. According to the latter source and Abba Gorion 41, Mordecai was led in a torch procession; comp. the procession in honor of Joseph, vol. II, p. 74. On the interpretation of "king" in 6.11 as God, the King of the universe, see notes 140 and 161.

172. PK 8, 72b; PR 18, 93b; WR 28.6, Abba Gorion 41; BHM VI, 57; Esther R. and 2 Targum 6.11. The four first-named Midrashim give also the different view according to which Mordecai did not pay any attention to the honors shown to him. The reason was because the procession started early in the morning when he was reciting the Shema' (comp. Abba Gorion 39, which reads: Haman intended to hang Mordecai at the time of the reading of the Shema'), and he would not permit himself to interrupt his prayer. Comp. similar legends in p. 394, with regard to Jacob and also p. 1114, with regard to Daniel. According to 2 Panim Aherim 76, Mordecai expressed his thanks to God by reciting the *Hodu* psalm (*i. e.*, Ps. 136), the so-called Great Hallel; comp. Pesachim 117a, where it is stated



that Mordecai and Esther composed the Hallel at the time when Haman arose against them.

173. Megillah 16a, and somewhat differently in 2 Panim Aherim 76 and Esther R. 6.11, where it is said that Haman's daughter threw herself out of the window when she realized her father's disgrace. Comp. also Buber's note 38 on Abba Gorion 41. According to Targum Esther 5.1, this daughter of Haman was one of the maidens gathered together in Shushan from among whom a queen was to be selected in the place of Vashti. Her own hopes and her father's expectation were sorely disappointed when a repulsive disease attacked her. Comp. also 2 Targum (Munk's edition), note 291.

174. Megillah 16a; Abba Gorion 41; 2 Panim Aherim 76; Esther R. 6.12. The last-named three sources as well as 2 Targum Esther 6.12 point out that on this day Haman had to perform four kinds of menial services: he acted as barber, masseur, groom, and herald to Mordecai. Compare also to pp. 1173–1174. Alkabez, 167b, quotes from the commentary of R. Eleazar of Worms on Esther that Haman became a leper on that day. Comp. also *ibid.*, 172b.

175. Targum Esther 6.13. According to Megillah 16a, Panim Aherim 48, 2 Panim Aherim 76, and Aggadat Esther 65–66, Zeresh told her husband that he might prevail against any other Israelite, but not against a descendant of the tribe of Judah (יהודים in Esther 6.13 is taken in its original meaning) or the Rachel tribes, who, especially the latter, are always chosen by God to gain victory for Israel. Compare text on p. 290; pp. 579–580 and 680. 2 Targum 6.6 makes Zeresh say to her husband that if his adversary is a descendant or a relative (read קרובי instead עבדיו) of Hananiah, Mishaël, and Azariah he would certainly not prevail against him.

176. Abba Gorion 41 (read כתובין "secretaries", instead of כדובין, corresponding to סופרי המלך in PRE 50; in Yalkut II, 1057, סקריטורין is very likely to be read instead of סקנדרין); 2 Panim Aherim 76; Megillah 16a. As to the positions held by the sons of Haman, see references cited in note 168 and Ratner's note 20 on Seder 'Olam 29.

177. Targum Esther 7.3. The first מלך in this verse is taken to refer to God, the second to Ahasuerus; comp. notes 140, 161 and 171. Ahasuerus was wroth with Esther because she continued to withhold from him the secret of her descent. See Panim Aherim 76; comp. the following note.

178. Megillah 16a; WR 26.8, which reads: The king hinted to her that she should appear as Haman's accuser even if he were not her enemy and that of her people. See Tan. B. III, 84; Tan. Emor 3; Ekah 1.13 (not in ed. Buber); 2 Targum Esther 7.5; Shemuel 24.121–122. Targum maintains that at that moment the king did not yet know of Esther's noble descent, and accordingly conversed with

her through an interpreter. This is perhaps the view of the Midrashim cited above, but Megillah, *loc. cit.*, explicitly states that on this occasion Esther told the king "who she was".

179. Megillah 16a; on the correct text of this passage, see Rabbinovicz *ad loc.* and Aggadat Esther 66. On Haman as the one who was responsible for Vashti's death, refer also to p. 1137.

180. Targum Esther 7.6; 2 Panim Aherim 76, which reads: He is the adversary of the celestial, the oppressor of the terrestrial, the enemy of the fathers (read לאבות instead of לאומות) and the oppressor of their children. Comp. also 2 Targum Esther 7.6, which reads: This is the one (הא מן=המן) who wished to stretch his hand against the Jewish people, the children of the "Lord of All".

181. Megillah 16a; PRE 50 (where it is said Michael, assuming the form of one of Haman's sons, felled down the trees); 2 Panim Aherim, 76–77; Targum Esther 7.7; an unknown Midrash quoted in the commentary on Esther by R. Judah ibn Shoshan, as cited by Alkabez, 172a. Comp. note 178. According to 2 Targum 7.7, Ahasuerus commanded to fell trees in the park, so that his anger should find an outlet, but he failed of his object.

182. Panim Aherim 77. The proverb about the ox reads here: Once the ox has been cast to the ground, many slaughterers are found. Comp., however, Ekah 1, 71; Shabbat 32a. See also Yalkut II, 1059, where הרבה is very likely to be read instead of הבא. As to the "wicked" Harbonah being originally a party to the plot against Mordecai, see also Megillah 16a, and 2 Targum Esther 7.9. On the identification of Harbonah with Elijah, refer also to p. 1000.

183. 2 Targum Esther 7.10, where Haman's entreaties are given in full.

184. Abba Gorion 41–42; Panim Aherim 47–48; Yalkut II, 1054; Aggadat Esther 60–61; Esther R. 5.11, where the description of the competition of the trees is given in a more elaborate form than in the other Midrashim. An entirely different version of this legend about the cross of Haman is found in 2 Panim Aherim 77 (here it is the cedar-tree which furnishes the cross) and Aggadat Esther 51–58, with which account 2 Targum 7.10 partly agrees. In these sources none of the trees was willing to furnish the cross, because it did not wish to be defiled by the "impure body" of Haman. There can be no doubt that originally those were two different legends: one about the refusal of the trees to furnish the cross for Mordecai, and another about the competition of the trees for the distinction to be used as the cross for Haman. The present form of the legends is rather confused owing to the fact that the cross used for Haman had originally been intended for Mordecai, and accordingly the different motives of the legends could no longer be kept apart. It is difficult to establish the relation of this legend to the Christian legend about the cross of



Jesus, but there can be no doubt that there exists some connection between the two cross legends. In 2 Targum, *loc. cit.*, read פנדירא דבר לאכסניא למסיק, Haman is said to have taken the same “lodging” as the son of Pandora, *i. e.*, Jesus. As to the provenance of the cedar of which the cross was made for Haman, comp. the two views given in Abba Gorion 37. According to one, it was taken from the royal park (comp. Esther 7.8), while the other maintains that it was one of the cedar-trees used by Noah for the ark and was brought to Shushan by Haman’s son Parshandatha, who was governor of קרדוניה, where the ark “rested” (compare with footnote 48 on p. 150). He gave it to his father to be used for the cross upon which to hang Mordecai. Comp. also Yalkut I, 256 (end), and II, 1059, as well as 2 Panim Aherim 72–73. According to PRE 50, the cross was made of a beam taken from the holy of holies.

185. 2 Targum Esther 9.14; Aggadat Esther 73 and Lekah on 9.14, and somewhat differently 1 Targum, which contains also the additional remark that one hundred and eight children of Haman were killed in Shushan. Shimshai was decapitated, and seventy others, as well as Zeresh, fled and were reduced to beggary. That the cross was fifty cubits high and twelve wide is also stated by Abba Gorion 37, and Aggadat Esther 51. On the number of Haman’s sons, see notes 158, and 187.

186. 2 Targum Esther 9.24. Compare with p. 935.

187. Megillah 15b, which gives also the different view that seventy of Haman’s sons became beggars; comp. notes 158 and 185, as well as the following note.

188. Tehillim 21, 181. Comp. Megillah 10b (bottom). Esther received Haman’s house with all its treasures, and she appointed Mordecai as superintendent; Targum Esther 8.1–2; Aggadat Esther 70. Comp. also Sabba’, Ha’azinu, 162b, who quotes from the Targum of Jonathan ben Uzziel that those killed by the Jews in Shushan were the children of Haman, and those killed in other cities were all Amalekites. Our Targum of Esther 9.14–17 reads somewhat differently.

189. BR 39.11; PRE 50 (in Luria’s edition the text is abridged); Esther R. 8.15; 2 Targum 6.10 (towards the end). The sudden change in Mordecai’s life is dwelt upon in Tehillim 22, 184 and Tan. Mikkez 3, and a parallel is drawn between his history and that of his ancestor Joseph. Comp. BR 87.6; Abba Gorion 22; 2 Panim Aherim 66; Esther R. 3.4. A fantastic description of the five presents received by Mordecai from the king (Esther 8.15–16) is found in 2 Targum Esther (David’s edition, *ad loc.*); compare also with p. 389. On the phylacteries (=טפין), comp. Megillah 16a, which contains also the haggadic interpretation of Esther 3.16 found in Targum, *ad loc.* Another interpretation of this verse occurs in Haserot 35 and 31, whence in Aggadat Esther 71.

190. Megillah 16b. On the Jews as masters of the other nations, comp. 2 Targum Esther 10.1.

191. Tehillim 22, 194. Compare with p. 1137, and 2 Targum Esther (end). Those among the Gentiles who became converted and were circumcized (this is how Septuagint and Josephus, *Antiqui.*, XI, 6.13, render מתידיים, Esther 8.17; in Judeo-German *jüdischen* means “circumcise”) were not considered as perfect Jews, because their motive for circumcision was not above suspicion; Yebamot 24b. The Amalekites were not admitted at all as proselytes, but were killed; compare with footnote 188 and p. 582.

## THE EDICT OF THE KING

The edict issued against the Jews was revoked by Ahasuerus in the following terms:

“King Ahasuerus sends this letter to all the inhabitants of water and earth, to all the rulers of districts, and to generals of the army, who dwell in every country; may your peace be great! I write this to you to inform you, that although I rule over many nations, over the inhabitants of land and sea, yet I am not proud of my power, but will rather walk in lowliness and meekness of spirit all my days, in order to provide for you great peace. Unto all who dwell under my dominion, unto all who seek to carry on business on land or on sea, unto all who desire to export goods from one nation to the other, from one people to the other—unto them all, I am the same, from one end of the earth to the other, and none may seek to cause excitement on land or on sea, or enmities between one nation and another, between one people and another. I write this, because, in spite of our sincerity and honesty with which we love all the nations, revere all the rulers, and do good to all the potentates, there are nevertheless people who were near to the king, and into whose hand the government was entrusted, who by their intrigues and falsehoods misled the king, and wrote letters which



are not right before heaven, which are evil before men, and harmful for the empire. This was the petition they requested from the king: that righteous men should be killed, and most innocent blood be shed, of those who have not done any evil, nor were guilty of death—such righteous people as Esther, celebrated for all virtues, and Mordecai, wise in every branch of wisdom, there is no blemish to be found in them nor in their nation. I thought that I was requested concerning another nation, and did not know it was concerning the Jews, who were called the Children of the Lord of All, who created heaven and earth, and who led them and their fathers through great and mighty empires. And now as he, Haman, the son of Hammedatha, from Judea, a descendant of Amalek, who came to us and enjoyed much kindness, praise, and dignity from us, whom we made great, and called ‘father of the king’, and seated him at the right of the king, did not know how to appreciate the dignity, and how to conduct the affairs of state, but harbored thoughts to kill the king and take away his kingdom, therefore we ordered the son of Hammedatha to be hanged, and all that he desired we have brought upon his head; and the Creator of heaven and earth brought his machinations upon his head.”<sup>192</sup>

As a memorial of the wonderful deliverance from the hands of Haman, the Jews of Shushan celebrated the day their arch-enemy had appointed for their extermination, and their example was followed by the Jews of the other cities of the Persian empire, and by those of other countries. Yet the sages, when besought by Esther, refused at first to make it a festival for all times, lest the hatred of the heathen be excited against the Jews. They yielded only after Esther had pointed out to them that the events on which the holiday was based, were perpetuated in the annals of the kings of Persia and Media,

and thus the outside world would not be able to misinterpret the joy of the Jews.

Esther addressed another petition to the sages. She begged that the book containing her history should be incorporated in the Holy Scriptures. Because they shrank from adding anything to the triple Canon, consisting of the Torah, the Prophets, and the Hagiographa, they again refused, and again they had to yield to Esther’s argument. She quoted the words from Exodus, “Write this for a memorial in a book,” spoken by Moses to Joshua, after the battle at Rephidim with the Amalekites. They saw that it was the will of God to immortalize the warfare waged with the Amalekite Haman. Nor is the Book of Esther an ordinary history. Without the aid of the holy spirit, it could not have been composed, and therefore its canonization resolved upon “below” was endorsed “above”.<sup>193</sup> And as the Book of Esther became an integral and indestructible part of the Holy Scriptures, so the Feast of Purim will be celebrated forever, now and in the future world, and Esther herself by her pious deeds acquired a good name both in this world and in the world to come.<sup>194</sup>

---

192. 2 Targum 8.13. The dependence of this edict in favor of the Jews upon the “decree of Artaxerxes concerning the Jews” in the Additions to Esther (Addition E) cannot be doubted, though the divergence between the two edicts is very great. In accordance with Septuagint **מהנדיא** of Targum is to be emended to **מקדוניה**. The introductory sentences of the edict in Targum are copied from the “Letter of Artaxerxes” (Addition B), commanding the annihilation of the Jews. There is no trace in rabbinic literature of the last Addition in Septuagint, the Interpretation of the Dream of Mordecai. On the dream in rabbinic sources, see text on p. 1162 and footnote 132.

193. Megillah 71a (this passage contains also the controversy whether the book of Esther “defiles the hands”, that is, whether it is considered canonical); Makkot 23b; Yerushalmi Berakot 9, 14c; Megillah 1, 70d; Tan. B. I, 217; Tan. Wa-Yehi 8; Tehillim 57, 296; Ruth R. 2, 4; Shitah Hadashah (beginning); Aggadat Esther 77–78.



The last-named source (76) has the following statement: The Megillah (book of Esther) was composed in Shushan, and was forwarded (by Mordecai and Esther) to the Holy Land, that it should be copied into the Assyrian script. The Talmud is given as source for this statement, but neither the printed texts nor the MSS. of the Talmud, with the exception of one late MS. (comp. Price, Yemenite MS. of Megillah), contain this statement. On the regulations concerning the writing of the Megillah, see Megillah 16b, which reads: The scroll of Esther must be written in lines as though it were the Torah (Pentateuch) itself. For an explanation of this talmudic passage, see *Sha'are Teshubah*, No. 204, and Meiri, *ad loc.* That the name of God is not found in the book of Esther (yet it is hinted at; comp. notes 140, 161, 171) is due to the fact that God did not care to testify to the mixed marriage between Ahasuerus and Esther (comp. Malachi 2.13, and also p. 68). The only other book of the Bible which does not contain the name of God (though it is hinted at; compare with footnote 2 on p. 945)

is Song of Songs. This book is devoted to the description of the beauty of man and woman; yet it is not beauty, but the propagation of the human race which is the ideal of marriage. See Hasidim 183, and comp. note 3 of the editor.

194. Yerushalmi Megillah 1, 70d, which reads: In the time to come all the other parts of the Hagiographa, nay, even the prophetic books, will lose their value, and only the Pentateuch and the book of Esther will retain their worth; Aggadat Esther 81; Lekah 9.28 and 31 (refers it to the time of the Messiah); Mishle 9, 61. In the last source a view is quoted to the effect that of all the festivals only Purim and the Day of Atonement will be celebrated in the time to come. Comp. Al Kabez, 208b–209b and footnotes 300, 301 on p. 632. Esther risked her life for her people, and as her reward a book of the Bible bears her name, and Scripture speaks of Israel as the people of Esther; ShR. 30.3; Makiri, Prov., end. The source of the latter is a version of Midrash Mishle different from ours, see MHG I, 339 and Aggadat Esther 23.



# INDEXES

The original index of *The Legends of the Jews* was prepared by Rabbi Benjamin (Boaz) Cohen and published in 1938. Cohen's compilation included four indexes: subjects, passages, Hebrew and Aramaic words and phrases, and piyyutim. For this two-volume edition of *The Legends of the Jews* Cohen's latter three indexes are reproduced with the page and note numbers of this edition. The subject index is completely new.

## INDEX OF SUBJECTS

*Alphabetization.* The entries in the subject index are alphabetized letter by letter, across spaces and hyphens, up to inverting commas. Entries encompassing both singular and plural items, e.g., angel(s), are alphabetized as singular forms. Subentries are alphabetized according to the first main word; that is, coordinating conjunctions and prepositions are not alphabetized, though the conjunction "that" and the preposition "to" with infinitives are alphabetized.

When enumerations constitute a distinct group within an entry, they appear in numerical order before other subentries. For example, under the name of a Hebrew month, significant dates appear before other descriptive subentries. Elsewhere numbers are alphabetized under the first letter of the number and interspersed among other entries.

*Spelling of names and other terms.* Spellings of personal names and place-names vary in the text and notes of *The Legends of the Jews*; usually the spelling that is most frequently used in the text is the one that appears in this

index. Some names have been made to conform to modern usage (e.g., the names of the Hebrew letters and months) and to the system of transliteration used in this index (e.g., Yozer prayer is rendered as Yotzer). Exceptions are names that would begin with *Y* if transliterated from Hebrew. These names begin with *J* in the index, as they do in the text and notes of *Legends*. Hyphens and underdots have been eliminated in most cases.

Personal names are written in full at the first occurrence but are usually abbreviated to the first letter of the name in subentries, unless abbreviation would cause confusion.

*Transliteration of Hebrew.* Transliteration of Hebrew is according to general systems in use today, with the following equivalents: *v* = ם; *z* = ם; *h* = ן; *t* = ם and ן; *k* = ם and ן; *kh* = ם; *s* = ם and ם; *tz* = ם; *sh* = ם; aleph and ayin are not represented.

## INDEXES OF PASSAGES, HEBREW AND ARAMAIC WORDS AND PHRASES, AND PIYYUTIM

These three indexes are Boaz Cohen's compilations, with the page and note numbers of this edition. In his preface, Cohen stated: "The Index of Passages lists all the passages unless otherwise indicated. It was found inadvisable to cite all the references to the Talmud and Midrash because of their great number, and accordingly only those passages which are explained in the notes are cited. In the Index of Hebrew and Aramaic phrases, the verbs are mostly arranged according to roots" (1938 ed., p. viii).

# SUBJECTS

## A

### Aaron

- A. the Levite and Judean Hur, holding up Moses' arms during battle against Amalek, 581
- acquiring second crown, 672 n399 (see also crown[s])
- angel of death having no power over, 744

### Aaron (cont.)

- blessing people, 659
- breastplate of, 652 (see also breastplate; high priest: breastplate of; precious stones)
- 12 precious stones in, 342
- burial of
  - bier of, floating in air, 742
  - on Mount Her, 736
- crusade of, against idolatrous Hebrews, 435 n6

### Aaron (cont.)

- death of, 740-743, 815
  - A. becoming aware of imminence of death, 742 n636
  - on boundary of Edom, 736
  - clouds of glory vanishing at, 745
  - corpse not decaying, 411-412 (see also under corpse[s])
  - four months after death of Miriam, 737



Aaron (*cont.*)

death of (*cont.*)  
 funeral ceremony for A., lasting 30 days, 743  
 God decreeing that A. to die in desert, 821  
 by kiss of God, 741, 743 n639, 744  
 by kiss of Shekinah, 411  
 last hour of, 742-743 n637  
 in month of Av, 752 n666  
 on Mount Nebo, 814  
 mourning for, 743-744  
   by angels, 743  
   by men as well as women, 744 n643  
   in Moserah, 746  
 preparation for, 739-740  
   by undressing, 743 n637  
 descendants of  
   priesthood belonging to, 48, 509  
   to bestow priestly blessing on Israel even after destruction of Temple, 678  
 in Egypt, 435 n6, 515  
 first to learn Torah from Moses, 634  
 and golden calf  
   A. building altar for golden calf, 621  
   A.'s motives in fashioning golden calf, 650, 650 n351  
   A. yielding to will of people in making golden calf, 620  
 in hall of gold in Paradise, 23 n97 (*see also* Paradise: divisions of)  
 humility of, 743  
 husband of Elisheba, 661  
 as ideal of kindness and lover of peace, 743, 744 n643  
 image of, on Solomon's throne, 968  
 intimidated by people, 622 n265  
 kindness of, 740 n635  
 as leader of people, 490 n79  
 at left hand of God, 535 (*see also* God: left hand of)  
 and leprosy  
   A. not punished with leprosy, 703 n495  
   A.'s leprosy lasting only a moment, 702  
 marrying sister of Nahshon, prince of Judah, 883 n130  
 merits of (*see also* merits)  
   clouds of glory given on account of, 573, 574 n113  
   two of sons saved on account of, 730 n599

Aaron (*cont.*)

and Miriam, slandering Moses, 700-702 (*see also* Aaron: and Moses and Miriam)  
 modesty of, 684 n437  
 and Moses  
   A. accompanying M. on mission to redeem Israel from Egypt, 513  
   A. afflicted with leprosy for slandering M., 702  
   A. appointed high priest by M., 658  
   A. guilty of joining M. in transgression, 735  
   A. in ark with infant M., 478  
   A. taught by M., 516  
   complete equality of, 517 n152  
   eating paschal meal in Egypt, 539  
   extraordinary appearance of, 518  
   first to recite Hallel, 539 (*see also* Hallel)  
   meeting in wilderness, 515  
   before Pharaoh, 517-520  
     A. led by Gabriel into palace, 518  
     rejoicing at mission, 515-516  
     resembling angels, 518  
 and Moses and Miriam, as three shepherds, 737-739  
 name, meaning of ("woe unto this pregnancy"), 474, 475 n36  
 never receiving direct revelation, 674 n405  
 not included in census of Levites, 683 n429 (*see also* census[es] of Israel)  
 not to be anointed in time to come, 658 n371  
 one of eight whose corpse not touched by worms, 939 n128 (*see also under* corpse[s])  
 one of five pious men for sake of whose merits Israel to be redeemed, 502 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of five pious men pious from first to last, 1044 n39 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of seven pillars of earth, 9 n28 (*see also under* world[s])  
 one of seven pious men of world, 968 (*see also under* pious: men)

Aaron (*cont.*)

one of 77 pious men in Israel, 629 n287 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of ten just men in Israel, 628  
 one of three deliverers sent by God to deliver Israel from Egypt, 648  
 one of two redeemers, 430 n434 (*see also* Moses)  
 and peace  
   A. as lover of peace, 715 n543, 733 n605, 743, 744 n643  
   A. attempting to establish peace, 740  
   A.'s special task as peacemaker, 744  
   A.'s special virtue being love of peace, 715 n543  
 people's love for, 743  
 and plagues  
   A. charged with three plagues proceeding from earth and water, 523  
   plagues of Egypt brought through A., 526-529  
 and priesthood  
   A. appointed high priest, 649-650  
   A. as high priest in heavenly Temple, 816  
   high priest to come from line of A., 48  
   Israel convinced of priesthood of A., 728-731  
   priesthood belonging to A., 509  
   priestly activities of A.  
     A. distinguished by lighting candles in sanctuary, 677-678  
     A. observing certain ceremonies when entering sanctuary, 676  
 priestly clothing of  
   bells on robe atoning for slander, 650  
   breeches atoning for unchastity, 650  
   eight garments (coat, breeches, mitre, girdle, breastplate, ephod, robe, golden plate), 650  
   expiatory virtues of, 650  
 as prophet, 814  
 rewarded for  
   kind, generous spirit by being allowed to bear Urim and Thummim on heart, 516



Aaron (*cont.*)

rewarded for  
 pious deeds when people wor-  
 shipped golden calf, 650  
 rod of  
 almonds of, representing Third  
 (Messianic) Temple, 731  
 n600  
 becoming serpent, 519  
 blossoming of  
 blossoms of almonds on rod  
 representing Second  
 Temple, 731 n600  
 showing A.'s priesthood,  
 730  
 buds of almonds on rod  
 representing First Temple,  
 731 n600  
 rod bringing forth blossoms  
 on one side and almonds  
 on other, 646, 731 n600  
 rod bringing forth sweet  
 almonds on one side and  
 bitter almonds on other,  
 731 n600  
 rod never losing blossoms and  
 almonds, 730  
 stories about, 731 n600  
 created in twilight between sixth  
 day and Sabbath, 78 (*see*  
*also under* creation: sixth  
 day)  
 establishing David's claim to  
 kingdom, 731 n600  
 hidden by Josiah, 731 n600,  
 1062 n118  
 miraculously disappearing at  
 destruction of Temple, 730  
 same as  
 rod David held against  
 Goliath, 731 n600  
 rod of Judah, 730 n600  
 rod of Moses, 842 n6  
 rod with which A. performed  
 miracles before Pharaoh,  
 731 n600  
 rod with which Jacob crossed  
 Jordan, 730-731 n600  
 rod with which Moses  
 divided Red Sea, 731 n600  
 as serpent devouring rods of  
 Pharaoh's magicians, 519  
 stretched out  
 to cause frogs to come upon  
 Egypt, 527-528  
 over waters of Nile, 526-527  
 to be fetched by Elijah and  
 handed over to Messiah,  
 730

Aaron (*cont.*)

rod of (*cont.*)  
 used by Judean kings until  
 destruction of Temple, 730  
 second, Zadok as, 947 n10  
 second child of Jochebed and  
 Amram, 474  
 sin of, not trying to prevent Moses'  
 angry words, 735 n619  
 and sons  
 forbidden to drink wine or  
 strong drink when going  
 into Tabernacle, 676  
 receiving direct revelation from  
 God, 676  
 retiring for seven days after  
 anointing, 657  
 and sons and Zadok, as only  
 anointed priests, 658 n371  
 sons of  
 anger of Moses at, 798 n862  
 stature of, shrinking with knowl-  
 edge of impending death,  
 742 n636  
 strength of  
 A. lifting 22,000 Levites in cere-  
 mony of consecration, 674  
 extraordinary, 674  
 teaching people  
 how to pray, 740  
 how to study Torah, 740  
 Shema, 740  
 to perform work of reconciliation,  
 650  
 welcoming Jethro with Moses, 584  
 Ab (month). *See* Av  
 Abaddon  
 in fifth earth, 6  
 one of seven divisions of hell, 13,  
 507  
 Samael searching for Moses in, 835  
*See also* earth(s): fifth; hell  
 Abagtha (angel)  
 one of seven angels of confusion  
 sent to disrupt Ahasuerus's  
 banquet, 1135  
 presser of winepress, 1135  
 Abal (father of Daniel), 1115 n6  
 Abarim, Mount  
 Moses looking at Holy Land from,  
 800, 814  
*See also* Hor, Mount; Nebo,  
 Mount; Pisgah, Mount  
 Abbahu, Rabba bar  
 as ideal of beauty, 60 n24  
 questioning Elijah about Esther's  
 intentions, 1010  
 saved from poverty by Elijah,  
 1001-1002

## Abba Kolon (Father of Colony)

making settlement of Rome possi-  
 ble, 948 n11  
 teaching first settlers of Rome how  
 to make mortar, 948 n11

Ab Bet Din. *See* Av Bet Din

## Abdamon

baffling Solomon with riddle, 955

## Abdon (successor of Jephthah)

protecting Israel against Moabites,  
 876  
 ruling during peaceful time, 877  
 n110

## Abel

appointed judge in heavenly court,  
 109 n31

## birth of

in Adamah, second earth, 110  
 of ignoble spirit, 102 n3  
 when Adam was 77 years old,  
 103 n4

blood of, flowing into Cain's  
 mouth, 103

burial of, 108, 109 n31

with Adam, 97

## death of

in chastity, 106 n17  
 childless, 41 n172  
 manner of, 106, 106 n19, 108  
 n20

as keeper of sheep, 103

life span of, 50 days, 105 n11

name, meaning of, 104 n8, 106  
 n17

## offering of

accepted by God, 103  
 as best of flocks, 103  
 consumed by fire, 103  
 as peace offering, 105 n12  
 as whole offering, 105 n12  
 one of seven pious men erecting  
 altars, 771 (*see also under*  
 pious: men)

## soul of

as accuser of Cain, 109 n31  
 returning in Jacob and Moses,  
 109 n31  
 to judge every soul, 100 n142  
 as type of pious, 109 n31

## Abezi-thibod

## activities of

ascribed to Mastema in Book of  
 Jubilees, 965 n56  
 ascribed to Sammael in rabbinic  
 legend, 965 n56  
 adversary of Moses and Israel in  
 Egypt and at Red Sea, 965  
 n56



Abezi-thibod (*cont.*)

- name, meaning of ("father who is devoid of counsel"), 965 n56
- powerful spirit, 965 n56
- Abiathar (Amora)
  - Elijah explaining to A. about Ephraimite and concubine, 1010
- Abiathar (high priest)
  - great-grandson of Eli's son Phinehas, last high priest of line of Ithamar, 891
  - only priest of Nob to escape massacre, 908 n104
  - priest of Anathoth, 908 n104
  - removed from high priesthood by David or Solomon, 947 n10
  - succeeded by Zadok as high priest, 893 n30
  - Urim and Thummim refusing to give answer to, 947 n10
- Abidan (son of Gideoni)
  - name, meaning of ("my father decreed"), 679
  - prince of tribe of Benjamin, 679
- Abiel (grandfather of Saul)
  - merits of, 898 (*see also* merits)
- Abigail
  - beauty, wisdom, and prophetic gifts of, 940
  - as ideal of beauty, 60 n24
  - as ideal of pious woman, 942 n136
  - and Nabal, 942 n137
  - one of four women of perfect beauty, 940, 941 n132
  - supervising fifth division of women's Paradise, 940
  - supervising one of seven classes of women, 23 n97
  - wife of David, 940
  - wife of Nabal, 940
- Abi Gedor
  - name of Moses given by grandfather Kohath, 480
- Abihu
  - elder from tribe of Asher, 696
  - image of, on Solomon's throne, 968
  - and Nadab, performing priestly service, 602 n205
  - son of Aaron, one of 77 pious men in Israel, 629 n287 (*see also under* pious: men)
  - welcoming Jethro with Moses, 584
  - See also* Nadab: and Abihu
- Abijah (son of Jeroboam and Ano), 982 n2, 985

Abijah (*cont.*)

- making pilgrimage to Jerusalem, 985
- pious, 982 n5
- to be Ephraimite Messiah, according to Kabbalah, 985 n17
- Abijah (son of Rehoboam), 984-985
  - crimes of, bringing about death, 984-985
  - gaining possession of Bethel, 985
  - idolatry of, 985
  - king in Jerusalem, 984-985
  - war of, against Jeroboam, 984
  - wicked, 982 n5
- Abijam
  - victory of, over Jeroboam, 985 n16
- Abika
  - as hero in Jerusalem at time of Babylonian campaign, 1074
  - identified with Chagiras of Adiabene, 1075 n26
- Abimelech
  - another name for Achish, king of Philistines, 918
  - as title of Philistine kings, 422 n429
  - See also* Abimelech (king of Philistines)
- Abimelech (high priest at Nob), 906
  - consulting Urim and Thummim for David, 906
- Abimelech (king of Gerar)
  - and Abraham, covenant between 920, 921 n51
  - contrasted with Abimelech son of Gideon, 874 n103
  - identified with Abimelech in time of Abraham, 263 n65
  - and Isaac, 260, 263 n65
    - A. stricken with leprosy on account of treatment of I., 260-261
    - renewing covenant, 261
    - using astrology, 262 n56
- Abimelech (king of Philistines)
  - at burial of Sarah, 235
  - at circumcision of Isaac, 218
  - covenant with, 222-224
  - curse of, on Sarah's children, causing blindness of Isaac, 267 n74
  - death of, 235
  - giving gifts to Abraham, 217
  - giving robe to Sarah, 217
  - God appearing to, 216
  - positive view of, 217 n192
  - recovery of, 218
  - taking Sarah as wife, 216
  - wife of, bearing child after being barren, 217-218

Abimelech (*cont.*)

- women at court of
  - becoming pregnant, 217 n202
  - being barren, 218 n202
- See also* Abimelech
- Abimelech (son of Gideon)
  - compared to thornbush, 872
  - greedy for riches, 874 n103
  - Jair as successor of, 872
  - meeting death through millstone, 872
  - murdering brothers, 872
  - reigning three years, 874 n103
  - by Shechemite concubine, 872
- Abimenes of Kittim
  - war of Hadar of Edom against, 421
- Abinadab (son of Saul)
  - also called Ishvi, 904 n77, 907
  - name, meaning of, 904 n77
- Abiram
  - elder from tribe of Joseph, 696
  - name, meaning of, 719
- abirim
  - "the mighty" (i.e., angels), and manna, 571 n98
- Abishag
  - Adonijah requesting to marry, 946 n3
  - as ideal of beauty, 60 n244
  - not married by David, 946 n3
  - Shunammite as sister of, 1028
- Abishai
  - and David
    - A. and miraculous deliverance of D., 934
    - slaying Ishbi, 934
  - death of, in plague following famine of David, 936
  - helping Joab kill Abner, 937 n123
  - killing Orpah, 934
- Abi Soco
  - name of Moses given by nurse, 480
- Abi Yisreel
  - one of seven men refusing to worship Baal, 872-873
- Abi Zanoah
  - name of Moses given by Aaron, 480
- ablution
  - before revelation on Sinai, 599 n192 (*see also* purification)
- Abner
  - accompanying Saul on visit to witch of En-dor, 903 n74
  - and Amasa, as two lions in Torah, 907 n91
  - David mourning for, 947 n6
  - general of Saul, 900, 916
  - as giant, 905, 907 n94



Abner (*cont.*)

as head of Sanhedrin, 907 n91  
 killing Asahel in self-defense, 905  
 mortally wounded by Joab, 905  
 name, meaning of, 907 n91  
 refusing Saul's command to execute priests at Nob, 906  
 sin of, 907 n94  
 son of witch of En-dor, cousin of Saul, 900, 905-906

Abodah Zarah. *See avodah zarah*

## abomination

one of five insulting names hurled at David by Shimei, 931 n96

## Abraham

and Abimelech (*see also* Abimelech [king of Gerar]; Abimelech [king of Philistines])

Abraham paying visit of condolence at court of Abimelech, 235

covenant between, 920, 921 n51  
 prayers of Abraham on behalf of Abimelech's wives, 219 n203

addressing letters of alphabet, 1079, 1081 n35

addressing Torah, 1079

and Akedah (*see* Abraham: and Isaac; sacrifice of)

altars erected by

in Ai, 187

in Canaan, 187

in Hebron, 187

for sacrifice of Isaac, 229

and angels

A. given milk by Gabriel, 170

A. soothed by Raphael after circumcision, 1127

A. tended in prison by Gabriel, 175

angels appearing to A., 206 n132, 207 n143

angels eating while guests of A., 634, 635 n309

angels leaving A. for Sodom, 212

angels questioning God about A., 279 n134

appearing at death of Moses, 837

appearing in Hebron

in dream, 249

as tenth man for service on Day of Atonement, 249

birth of, 169, 170 n12, 181

A. deserted in cave, 170, 182  
 place of, 172 n20

Abraham (*cont.*)birth of (*cont.*)

read in stars by Nimrod, 168  
 star appearing at, 107 n7, 181, 186

## blessings by

A. blessing Jacob, 255-256

A. refraining from blessing Isaac, 244 n316

A. refraining from blessing sons of concubines, 244 n316

## blessings of

age of, when blessed, 75 years, 266

by God, 237, 819

having daughter Bakkol ("with all things"), 238 n273

having no daughter, 238 n273  
 three in number, 187

and Book of Razel, 90 n110 (*see also* Razel, Book of)

bosom of, 248 n318

calling pet sheep, bellwether of flock, by name of Isaac, 232 n245

and Cave of Machpelah

seeing Adam and Eve in, 234-235

speaking to Adam in, 235

wishing to be buried in, 236 n263

chastity of, superior to that of Job, 462 n36

chronology of, 202 n115

circumcision and

receiving commandment of, in old age, 219 n205

circumcision of, 203 n122, 218

(*see also* Abraham: and covenant; Abraham: covenant of; circumcision; covenant[s]: of Abraham; covenant[s]: sign of)

A. commanded to put sign of covenant on him and male members of household, 202

A. consulting with three friends concerning, 202

A. soothed by Raphael, source of eighth of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127

in daylight, 815 n904

foreskin removed by bite of scorpion, 203 n126

necessary before begetting son, 218

performed by self, 203 n126

Abraham (*cont.*)circumcision of (*cont.*)

performed by Shem, 203 n126  
 place of, 202, 232 n249

on 10 Tishri, Day of

Atonement, 202 (*see also* date; Day of Atonement; Tishri)

commanded not to rely on astrology, 198, 199 n108

commanded to go to Palestine, 188 n60

as composer of psalms, 823

contrasted with David, 189 n61

and covenant, 172 n13 (*see also* under Abraham: and God)  
 of pieces at age of 70 years, 202 n115

covenant of (*see also* Abraham: circumcision of; circumcision; covenant[s]: sign of)

despised by descendants of Esau, 254 n24

crowns of, three in number, inherited by Israel, 188 n57

and Death, conversation between, 247

death and burial of

A. buried next to Sarah, 237 n268

A. preparing for death, 256

A.'s corpse not decaying, 411-412, 939 n128 (*see also* under corpse[s])

A.'s refusal to die, 58 n20

A.'s soul removed by God as in dream, 247

A. wishing to be buried in Cave of Machpelah, 236 n263

death of A., 237, 244-246, 256

day of, Esau guilty of five crimes on, 257

disease beginning after, 257 n36

five years before allotted time, 257

by kiss of Shekinah, 411  
 man's life span shortened after, 257 n36

funeral and mourning for A. 248 n317

deliverance of, from fire, 161 n76, 175-177, 186

as first of seven miracles visible to all, 219 n208

for sake of merits of Jacob, 255, 400 (*see also* Jacob: merits of; merits)



Abraham (*cont.*)

## descendants of

- A. deserting, 263 n69
- commanded concerning fringes and phylacteries, 196 (*see also* phylacteries; *tzitzit*)
- descended not from Elam but from Arpachshad, 1132
- from Keturah as Japhethites, i.e., Greeks, 244 n314
- Lacedaemonians as, 244 n314
- Queen of Sheba as, 1073 n21
- Spartans as, 244 n314
- 30 nations, 165 n88, 251

## dream of, 257 n36

## and Egypt, 191 n78

- A. enriched by Pharaoh in, 190
- A. learning astronomy and astrology in, 190
- A. learning witchcraft in, 191 n80
- A. meeting with first Pharaoh in, 192
- A. praised for going to, 191 n66
- A. traveling to

- because of famine in Canaan, 189
- as sin, 191 n66 (*see also* Abraham: sins of)

## length of stay in, 191 n78

and Eliezer (*see also* Eliezer)

- A. freeing E., 241

emigration from Palestine one of three sins of, 200 n110 (*see also* Abraham: sins of)

## Ethan the Ezrahite identified with, 955 n19

## and evil inclination

- A. turning evil inclination into good inclination, 939 n128
- evil inclination having no power over, 237, 412 (*see also* under evil inclination)

## exemplar to all, 217

## faith of, rewarded by redemption of Israel, 198

## famine in time of, 189, 191 n64, 259

## as father of proselytes, 203 n122

## as father of 30 nations, 165 n88, 251

## favored by older Haggadah (universalistic), 256 n35

## first to

- declare God "possessor of heaven and earth," 197 n100

Abraham (*cont.*)first to (*cont.*)

- distribute possessions among children in lifetime, 238 n272
- lavish hospitality, 238 n272
- separate priests' portion from his fortune, 260
- show signs of old age, 238 n272
- suffer pain, 238 n272
- as fourth of seven pious men, 682 (*see also* under pious: men)
- fulfilling commandment not to take name of Lord in vain, 593

## fulfilling rabbinical injunctions beforehand, 237

## and furnace

- A. saved from, as source of first of Eighteen Benedictions, 1126
- A. willing to be burned in, to sanctify God's name, 232 n248

## and generations

- 7 from A. to Moses, 224 n222
- 10 from Noah to A., 102 n1, 167
- 15 from A. to Solomon, 967 n57
- 30 from A. to Zedekiah, 967 n57

## giving books on magic to children of concubines, 244 n313

## and God

- A. calling creator God the true God, 184
- A. invited by God to make a request, 198 (*see also* God: actions of, inviting persons . . .)
- A. proclaiming God to Babylonians, 172
- to Nimrod, 173
- A. questioning God, one of three sins of, 200 n110 (*see also* Abraham: sins of)
- A. recognizing God of own accord, 183-184, 184 n49, 456 n13 (*see also* God: recognizing God of one's own accord)

## conversation between

- concerning Isaac and his descendants, 230-231
- concerning sins of progeny, 261

- God revealing Self to A., 188 n59, 199 n107

Abraham (*cont.*)and God (*cont.*)

- God revealing to A. that seed would have to serve in Egypt, 578

- God's promise to A., 187 (*see also* Abraham: and covenant; covenant[s])
- concerning Holy Land, scorned by Esau, 258
- concerning offspring, 193-194, 198

- that they would go from Egypt with great substance, 398 n335

- not to tempt A. or Isaac in future, 232 n247

- good deeds of, rewarded by division of waters of Jordan River for Joshua, 844 n14

## good qualities of, 237, 245

- three in number (good eye, loving soul, humble spirit), 765 n734

## and Hagar

- A. building city in east for idolatrous sons of H., 243
- A. remarrying H. after Sarah's death, 203 n120
- conjugal relations of, 203 n120
- divorce of, 220

## and Haran

- cast into furnace, 186
- having no compassion, 246
- as head of academy, 237, 239 n277 (*see also* Abraham: house of; academy; Bet ha-Midrash)

## and heaven

- A. asking to be taken to heaven in body, 246
- A. in heavenly court, 211 n159
- A. taken to view heaven on chariot, 246

as hero of Akedah legends, 228 n229, 232 n242 (*see also* Akedah)

## history of, recounted to Pharaoh by Balaam, 482

## hospitality of, 204, 206 n130, 206 n138, 206 n140, 223, 224 n223, 584-585

- A. as first to lavish, 238 n272

- A. waiting on guests, 584
- to archangels, 205-206

- failure as reason for sacrifice of Isaac, 224



Abraham (*cont.*)

- house of, as place of instruction, 223 (*see also* Abraham: as head of academy; academy; Bet ha-Midrash)
- humility of, 236 n267
  - two commandments for Israel as reward for, 196, 198 n106
- as iconoclast, 184-186
- and idolatry
  - A. and idols of Terah, 182-184, 184 n49, 185
  - A. denigrating idols, 173-175
  - A. preaching to family about senselessness of worship of celestial bodies, 170, 183-184
  - senselessness of worship of elements, 172 n16, 183-184
  - wickedness of idols, 184 n49
  - A. said to have composed book of laws on, 191 n80
  - A. smashing idols, 174-175
  - A. as vendor of idols, 173-174, 186 n50
- image of, on Solomon's throne, 968
- as indulgent father, 434 n1
- interceding for sinners in world to come, 248
- and Isaac (*see also* Isaac: and Abraham)
  - A. building altar for sacrifice of, 229
  - A. concerned about wife for, 237-238
  - A. doubting announcement of I.'s birth, 205
  - A. investing I. with right of primogeniture, 244 n316
  - A. known as father of I., 251
  - A. leaving inheritance to I., 219-220
  - A. refraining from blessing I., 243, 244 n316, 819
  - A. reserving Torah for I., 244 n313
  - A.'s age at birth of I., 100 years, 1079
  - A.'s readiness to sacrifice I. manna as reward for, 569
  - I. indebted to merits of A., 261 (*see also* Abraham: merits of; merits)
  - I.'s reverence for A., 260

Abraham (*cont.*)

- and Isaac (*cont.*)
  - sacrifice of (*see also* Akedah; Isaac)
    - A. as hero of Akedah legends, 228 n229, 232 n242
  - bluntness of knife for, 231-232 n242
  - as last of temptations of A., 224 (*see also* Abraham: temptations of)
    - to take place three days after command, 233 n255
  - similarities between, 251, 259, 942 n140
- and Isaac and Jacob (*see also* Abraham: and patriarchs)
  - blood of paschal lamb on doorposts and lintel as reminder of, 535
  - living 180 years each, 62 n28
  - merits of
    - God's mercy on Israel for sake of, 510 (*see also* merits)
  - symbolizing three natures of God according to Philo, 319 n304
  - in third division of Paradise, 19 (*see also* Paradise: divisions of)
- and Ishmael
  - A. seeking I., 221-222
- Israel in wilderness compared to, 569
- and Jacob
  - A. instructing J. in ways of Lord, 256 n34
  - A.'s fondness for J., 255
  - A.'s merits one of five charms to protect J., 300 n247 (*see also* Abraham: merits of; merits)
  - A.'s resignation contrasted with J.'s impatience, 378 n228
  - J. bringing meal to A. on Pentecost, 255-256
  - parallels between, 319 n303
  - rivalry between, 508 n118
  - superiority of J. to A., 256 n35
  - and Jebusites, covenant between, 293
  - journeys of (*see also* Abraham: migration of)
    - to Canaan, 179, 187
    - to Gerar, 216
    - to Hebron, 222
    - leaving native country, 188 n53

Abraham (*cont.*)

- kindness and piety of
  - rewarded by heavenly gifts to Israel in wilderness, 570 n92
- as king of Damascus, 181 n46
- lack of trust in God of, 199 n110
- lamenting over Temple, 1079
- last years of, 243-244
- legends relating A. to sun, 197 n98
- life span of
  - A. giving David five years of, 912 n12
  - shortened because of Esau, 257
- like one of glorified beings, 200 n114
- and Lot
  - A. assisted by celestial powers in battle against kings who captured L., 195
  - kindness of A. toward L., 214 n171
  - prayers of A. for deliverance of L., 213-214
  - strife between, 196 n82
  - married to three daughters of sons of Noah, 244 n309
- and Melchizedek
  - A. taught priesthood and Torah by M., 196
- merits of (*see also* merits)
  - forgiveness of Israel's sins on account of, 232 n248
  - Isaac indebted to, 261
  - miracles wrought for Daniel on account of, 1097 n77
  - Moses receiving Torah on account of, 616 n248
  - one of five charms to protect Jacob, 300 n247
  - reason for Esau's dominion over world, 259 n51
  - world created for sake of, 167
- Messianic time made known to, 198
- and Methuselah's sword, 132 n63
- migration of, 179, 188 n54 (*see also* Abraham: journeys of)
- missionary activity of, 170-175, 177-179, 180 n45, 187-189, 189 n61, 204, 328 n1
- as father of proselytes, 203 n317
- Mordecai compared to, 1141 n60
- Moses compared to, 837
- name
  - meaning of, 203 n122
  - mentioned in blessings, 187



Abraham (*cont.*)

name (*cont.*)  
 never called Abram in rabbinic literature, 256 n35  
 numerical value of (= 248), 203 n122  
 repetition of, by angel, 232 n242  
 names and titles of (*see also under individual titles*)  
 A. describing self as "servant of Lord," 805 n880 (*see also* servant of Lord)  
 beloved of God, 168 n4, 1081 n33  
 elect of God, 912 n1  
 father of proselytes, 203 n122  
 favorite of God, 223  
 friend of God, 168 n4, 1081 n33  
 God-fearing one, 397  
 the Hebrew, 196 n90  
 the merciful of the three fathers, 211 n160  
 servant of God, 452 n2  
 and Nimrod (*see also* Nimrod: and Abraham)  
 A. before N., 186 n50  
 A. commanded by Gabriel to follow N. to Babylon, 172  
 A. imprisoned by N., 172 n20, 175, 177 n28, 186  
 A. killing N., 259 n38  
 A. proclaiming God to N., 173  
 A.'s birth read in stars by N., 168  
 A.'s superiority to N., 176  
 N.'s attempts to kill A. with fire, 175-176  
 oath of, to live at peace with Philistines for certain time, 547  
 observing all sacrificial ceremonies, 232 n242  
 observing commandment against false witness, 594  
 observing commandment not to covet, 594  
 observing Noachian precepts, 239 n275 (*see also* Noachian commandments)  
 observing Torah, 239 n275  
 before it was revealed, 206 n140  
 offspring of, blemished  
 Ishmael as, 406  
 sons of Keturah as, 406  
 offspring of, true, 220 n214  
 old age of, 237

Abraham (*cont.*)

one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)  
 one of five men pious from first to last, 1044 n39 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of five pious men, for sake of whose merits Israel to be redeemed, 502 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of four God-fearing men, 1026  
 one of seven patriarchs of world, 968  
 one of seven pillars of earth, 9 n28 (*see also under* world[s])  
 one of seven pious men erecting altars, 771 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of shepherds who assist Messiah on the left, 100 n142  
 one of six righteous men who drew Shekinah back from six heavens, 473  
 one of ten just men in Israel, 628 in Paradise  
 A. entering Paradise by narrow gate, 246-247  
 A. unworthy to pronounce blessing over wine, 939  
 and patriarchs (*see also* Abraham: and Isaac and Jacob)  
 A. as favorite, 168 n2  
 A. as first, 263 n69  
 A. having highest rank, 256 n35  
 and Pentecost, A. permitted to celebrate, 255-256  
 among Philistines, 216-218, 222  
 piety of, redemption of Israel as reward for, 536 n201  
 planting vineyards in Beersheva, 223  
 pleading for sinners, 210-212  
 prayers of  
 A. instituting daily morning prayer, 1128 n58 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)  
 on behalf of Abimelech's wives, 219 n203  
 for deliverance of Lot, 213-214  
 morning devotions, 213-214  
 as prophet, 216  
 punishment of, for lack of trust, 199 n110  
 referred to by Psalm 110, 197 n95

Abraham (*cont.*)

refusal of  
 to die, 58 n20  
 to make bricks, 160  
 to obey God's summons, 246  
 to surrender soul, 247  
 resignation of, contrasted with Jacob's impatience, 378 n228  
 righteousness of, 238 n274  
 at right hand of God, 197 n95, 450 (*see also* God: right hand of)  
 and ritual purity, 205  
 and Sabbath  
 Bible not referring to observance of, by A., 307 n280  
 sacrifices brought by, 198, 199 n109  
 and Sarah  
 A. buried next to S., 237 n268  
 A. calling S. his sister, 200 n110, 216  
 A. concealing S. in casket, 189  
 A. identified as S.'s brother, 216  
 A. mourning for S., 234, 236 n259  
 A. not acknowledging S. as wife, 191 n66  
 A. observing beauty of S., 189  
 A. paying for grave for S., 234, 522  
 A.'s eulogy for S., 236 n259  
 blessed with offspring in old age, 218  
 married for 75 years before birth of Isaac, 202 n116  
 return of, to Canaan, 190  
 and Satan  
 A. accused by S., 224-225  
 A. rebuking S., 227  
 seeing earthly and heavenly Temple, 817 n905  
 and Shekinah  
 A. bringing many under wings of Shekinah, 794 n845  
 sign of covenant and, 206 n130 (*see also* Abraham: circumcision of; circumcision; covenant[s]: sign of)  
 sins of, 191 n66  
 loving Ishmael, 599 n196  
 questioning God, 200 n110  
 three in number, 200 n110 (*see also under* Abraham: and Egypt)  
 traveling to Egypt, 191 n66  
 son of Terah and Emtelai, 168



Abraham (*cont.*)

soul of, removed by God as in dream, 247  
 special virtue of, being zealous for observance of Abrahamic covenant, 715 n543  
 stature of  
   A. as giant, 195, 197 n97  
   in battle with kings who captured Lot, 195  
 story of  
   A. praying in Temple at time of destruction, 1081 n39  
   parallels with other stories, 178 n34  
 superiority of A.  
   to Asshur, 176  
   to Eber, 176  
   to Job, 455 n10  
   to Nimrod, 176  
   to Noah, 176  
   to Shem, 176  
 superiority of others to A.  
   Jacob, 256 n35  
   Moses, 837  
 taking refuge with Noah and Shem, 179  
 taught by Shem, 172 n13  
 teaching how to praise and thank God, 223  
 temptations of, 188 n52, 224  
   A. resisting ten, 187, 453 n5  
   and sufferings of, assigned to Job, 232 n247  
   as ten tests, 628  
 and Terah  
   A., son of T. and Emtelai, 168  
   A. leaving T. in Haran, 188 n54  
   A. made priest by T., 186 n50  
   A. sentenced by T. to death by fire, 175-176, 186 n50  
 throne of  
   greatest in Paradise, 507, 508 n118  
 to be lord over Hebron, 234  
 troubled by spilling of innocent blood, 198  
 victory of, due to intervention of God, 197 n98  
 viewing earth and heaven, 246-249  
 vision of, 198-199, 200 n114  
 warfare of, 196 n91  
   A. concerned about issue of war, 195-196  
   A. giving spoils, 195  
   with four kings, 202 n115  
   legend about A. and battle of Ai, 847 n23

Abraham (*cont.*)

wells dug by, stopped up by Philistines, 260  
 wisdom of, 237  
   Solomon's wisdom greater than, 949-950  
 and world to come  
   A. having foretaste of future world in this world, 237  
   A.'s reward in, 199 n107  
 youth of, 170-171, 171 n13  
 Zadkiel as teacher of, in Kabbalah, 505 n117  
 Abraham ben David  
   Elijah revealing mysteries to, 1018  
 Abraham ben Isaac Av Bet Din  
   Elijah revealing mysteries to, 1018  
 Abrahamic covenant. *See* covenant(s):  
   of Abraham; *also* Abraham:  
   circumcision of; Abraham:  
   covenant of; Abraham: and  
   God, God's promise to  
   Abraham; circumcision;  
   covenant[s]: sign of  
 Abram (son of Terah)  
   name, 181  
   changed to Abraham, 203 n122  
   meaning of, 203 n122  
   *See also* Abraham  
 Absalom  
   beauty of, 60 n24  
   A. having beauty of body but  
   not of soul, 905 n80  
   four children of, preceding A. in  
   death, 932  
 as giant, 931  
 hair of  
   A. clipping hair occasionally,  
   931, 932 n98  
   A. possessing hair of Adam, 58  
   caught in branches of oak tree,  
   58, 932  
 having no portion in world to  
 come, 932 (*see also* world  
 to come: those having no  
 share in)  
 in hell  
   extreme penalties averted from,  
   932  
   in second division, charged with  
   control of ten heathen  
   nations, 932  
 miserable end of, 932, 933 n104  
 as Nazirite, 931  
   clipping hair occasionally, 931,  
   932 n98  
 rebellion of, 931-933  
   against David, 922

Absalom (*cont.*)

similarity of, to Adonijah, 942  
   n139  
 and wicked kings of Israel having  
   no share in world to come,  
   908 n100  
 abstinence, sexual  
   on Noah's ark, 151  
 Abtalion  
   descendant of Sennacherib, 869  
   n72, 1046  
   descendant of Sisera, 869 n72  
   *See also* Shemaiah: and Abtalion  
 abyss  
   created on first day, 82 n98  
   Egyptians cast into, 559  
   Samael searching for Moses in, 835  
   separating second from first earth,  
   6  
   over seventh earth, 6  
   shard laid over, engraved with  
   Ineffable Name, 605, 923  
   stones in, producing water, 5  
   uniting itself with waters in heav-  
   ens against Egyptians, 561  
   n52  
 Abyssinian legend  
   of shamir, 975 n82  
 academy  
   Abraham as head of, 237, 239  
   n277  
   Ephraim as head of, 405  
   heavenly, 1012 n79  
   Asmodeus going to, for discus-  
   sions, 973  
   Elijah revealing secret lore from,  
   1018  
   R. Meir quoted in, 1011  
   to be established to govern 12  
   tribes, 406  
   *See also* Bet ha-Midrash; Shem:  
   academy of; Shem: and  
   Eber, Bet ha-Midrash of  
 Accho  
   allotted to Zebulun, 852  
 Achan  
   burial of, 848 n31  
   confession of, 407, 846  
   as occasion for Joshua compos-  
   ing Al Ken Nekavveh  
   Lekha, 1128 n58 (*see also*  
   prayers, Jewish)  
   saving share in world to come,  
   857 n4  
   crimes of, 845, 847 n25  
   stealing idol, 847 n26  
   descendant of Judah, 407  
   execution of, 848 n31



Achan (*cont.*)

- name, meaning of, 848 n31
- one of three men losing this world and gaining world to come, 847-848 n31
- taking spoils of Jericho, causing defeat at Ai, 845

## Acheron River

- Adam washing three times in, 96

## Achish

- called Abimelech, after king of Gerar, 918

## Achuzan

- etymology of, 128 n60
- as Jerusalem, 128 n60
- place of translation (ascension) of Enoch, 128 n60

## acrostics

- Shokhen Ad as, 1128 n58 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)

## Adah

- name
- changed from Basemath, 271
- meaning of, 271
- second wife of Esau, 271
- two sons of (Jabal and Jubal), 112
- wife of Lamech, 112

## Adah-Basemath

- double name of one of Esau's wives, 274 n122 (*see also* Adah; Basemath)

## Adam, 47-100

- abode of, 77
- accused by man after death, 99
- in Adamah, 110
- as Adne Sadeh ("man of the mountain"), 34
- adored by creatures, 64
- age of, 930 years, 91 (*see also* Adam: life span of)
- altars erected by
  - in Jerusalem, 89 n109
  - on Mount Moriah, 89 n109
- as androgynous, 67 n42 (*see also* Adam: Gnostic ideas about; Gnostic ideas)
- and angels
  - A. created by angels, 49 n3 (*see also* Gnostic ideas)
  - A. entertained by angels, in Paradise, 70 n57
  - A. envied by angels, 62
  - A. taken to third heaven by Michael, 96
  - A. taught smithcraft by angel, 62 n31
  - angels asking questions about A., 279 n134

Adam (*cont.*)and angels (*cont.*)

- angels bringing meat and wine to A., 69
- relation of, 63 n33
- and animals
  - A. as first to breed horse with ass, 324 n322
  - A. understanding language of, 70 n58
- cat taking up residence with A., 35-36
- dog taking up residence with A., 36
- male animals assigned to A., 92
- appearing at death of Moses, 837
- beginnings of culture traced to, 86 n104
- blessings bestowed on, 86 n105
- body of, formed out of earth and water, 54 n15
- book of, 90-91 n110, 641, 641 n324 (*see also* Raziel, Book of)
- recording all generations from creation to resurrection of dead, 641
- Book of Raziel returned to, after repentance, 90 n110
- burial of
  - with Abel, 97
  - A. as first to be buried in ground, 97 n136
  - by angels, 98 n138
  - in Cave of Machpelah, 98 n137, 234, 236 n263
  - in center of earth, 98 n137
  - by Enoch, 98 n137, 124 n59
  - in Hebron, 98 n137
  - place of, identical with place of crucifixion of Jesus, 98 n137
  - by Seth, 234
  - on site of altar in Jerusalem, 97-98 n137
- celibacy of, 114, 115 n46
- commanded to
  - eat only green things of the field, 69
  - study Torah in Paradise, 69
  - work, 70 n54
- commandments given to
  - concerning daily sacrifice, 70 n55
  - concerning observance of Sabbath, 70 n55
- as composer of psalms, 85 n103, 823

Adam (*cont.*)

- condemned by heavenly court, 211 n159
- covered with fig leaves, 88 n106
- creation of, 53-55
  - as androgynous, 67 n42
  - by angels, 49 n3 (*see also* Adam: Gnostic ideas about; Gnostic ideas)
- bearing sign of the covenant, 78 n78, 248 n318 (*see also* circumcision; covenant[s]: sign of)
- in center of earth, 98 n137
- from dust of earth, 54 n15, 117
- from earth and water, 54 n15
- at first without soul, 60 n22
- fully developed, 58
- by God with own hands, 128 n60
- on Jewish New Year, 81 n97
- on sixth day, 77, 82 n98
- soul of, 60 n22
- time of, 3 n8
- crowns of, five in number, 60 n21
- curses of, 76, 95 n127
- daughter of, named Azurah, 113 n42
- death of, 70 n54, 96-98
  - and burial of, 122-123
  - darkness of sun, moon, and stars at, 97 n133
  - day of, as festival, 99 n140
  - six days before death of Eve, 98 n138
- delivered from suffering of hell by Sabbath, 85 n103
- descendants of
  - Enoch as, 126
  - number and names of, 92 n115
- designating areas of settlement on earth, 60
- dust for
  - kneaded at holy place in Jerusalem, 55 n16
  - taken from place of altar in Jerusalem, 97 n137
- east and north assigned to, 92
- and Eve
  - A. blaming E., 75, 94
- burial of
  - in Cave of Machpelah, 98 n137
  - in same sepulchre with patriarchs, 88 n106
- created outside of Paradise, 81 n97
- eating lentils after murder of Abel, 257



Adam (*cont.*)and Eve (*cont.*)

- expelled from Paradise on 1 Tammuz, 77, 81 n97
- garments of, 30 n123, 76-77, 79-80 n93 (*see also* Adam: garment of; garment[s]; Leviathan)
- created in twilight, 82 n99 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)
- as light, 73 n69, 79-80 n93
- made of female Leviathan's hide, 30 n123, 80 n93, 162 n79
- made of linen, 80 n93
- made of wool, 80 n93
- worn by Nimrod, 162 n79, 405
- God's blessing of, remaining upon world until flood, 819
- hiding selves, 93
- married life of, preceding fall, 103 n4
- mourning and lamenting of, 86
- nakedness of, 72
- in Paradise, 68-71
  - 40 years and 7 days, 81 n97
  - for only few hours, 77
  - without sexual intercourse, 103 n4
- refusing to repent, 76-77
- searching for food, 86
- as spiritual beings before fall, 80 n93
- and story of Samael's son, 141-142
- superiority of, 60 n21
- wedding of, 66, 68 n47
- excellence of, Gnostic ideas about, 60 n21, 22 (*see also* Adam: Gnostic ideas about; Gnostic ideas)
- face of
  - A. originally having two faces, 65
  - one of seven gifts of A., 84
  - shining with heavenly splendor, 60 n21, 85 n104
- fall of
  - consequences of, 75
    - A. and Eve receiving bodies, 80 n93
  - fertility of earth diminishing, 21 n75
  - forfeit of image of God, 86 n105

Adam (*cont.*)fall of (*cont.*)

- consequences of (*cont.*)
  - forfeit of Paradise, 86 n105
  - forfeit of tall stature, 66 n37, 75, 86 n105
  - forfeit of tree of life, 86 n105
  - loss of knowledge, 91 n110
  - loss of wisdom, 89, 91 n110
  - due to wine, 153
  - fearing God after, 75
  - time of, 81 n97
- famine in time of, 189
- favorable view of, 100 n142
- fear of darkness of, 88 n107
- first of seven pious men, 682 (*see also under* pious: men)
- first wife of, 68 n46 (*see also* Adam: and Lilith)
- forgiveness of, by God, 88 n106, 98 n138
- as fugitive and wanderer after fall, 86 n105
- garment of (*see also* Adam: and Eve, garments of; garment[s]; Leviathan)
  - one of two gifts given to Joseph by Jacob, 405
- protecting Nimrod, 259 n38, 405
- received by Jacob from Esau, 405
- worn by Esau, 265
- generations from A. to Noah, ten in number, 101
- as giant, 58, 60 n22 (*see also* Adam: height of; Adam: size of)
- gifts of, seven in number, 84
- Gnostic ideas about, 49 n3, 60 n21, 60 n22, 67 n42
- and God
  - A. as dough God kneaded, 68 n45
  - A. at right hand of God, 450 n17 (*see also* God: right hand of)
  - A. fearing God after fall, 75
  - A. hiding from God, 74, 78 n75
  - A. promised resurrection by God, 98 n138
  - A. showed all future generations by God, 61 n27
  - A. slandering God, 75
  - A. tested by God, 763 n730
- grave of (*see* Adam: burial of)
- handsomeness of, 58-59, 60 n24
- as heave offering of world, 65

Adam (*cont.*)

- height of, as 100 cubits, 98 n137 (*see also* Adam: as giant; Adam: size of)
- as heretic, 78 n78
- as high priest, 60 n21
- history of mankind revealed to, 59
- hymn of praise of, 46 n194
- as ideal of beauty, 58-59, 60 n24
- image of, on Solomon's throne, 968
- as inventor
  - of all crafts, including writing, 60
  - of all 70 languages, 60
- Israelites compared to, 713
- in Jerusalem, 89 n109
- as king, 60 n21
- life span of (*see also* Adam: age of)
  - leaving 70 years to David, 59, 61-62 n28, 911
  - leaving 70 years to descendants, 59, 74
  - 930 years, 74
  - 1,000 years, 59
- and Lilith
  - begetting demons, 131
  - descendants of, 114-115
  - L. given as wife to A., 64
- loneliness of, 64
- made to sleep, 64
- Moses compared to, 837
- name
  - calling self Ish, 66
  - meaning of, 54 n15, 59, 60 n21
  - naming self, 59
- naming
  - creatures, 43 n190, 59, 62 n29, 62 n30
  - wife Ishah, 66
- not cursed, 79 n85
- one of five to give expected answer to God's questions, 1102 n94
- one of four men described in Bible as creatures of God, 1071 n13
- one of seven patriarchs of world, 968
- one of seven pillars of earth, 9 n28 (*see also under* world[s])
- one of seven pious men erecting altars, 771 (*see also under* pious: men)
- one of seven pious men in pre-Abrahamic times, 116-117 n53 (*see also under* pious: men)



Adam (*cont.*)

one of seven with overlapping life terms, 982 n4  
 one of shepherds who assist Messiah on the right, 100 n142  
 and Paradise  
   A. bringing spices from, 77, 81 n96  
   A. commanded to study Torah in, 69  
   A. departing before night, 85 n104  
   A. entering when he was 40 days old, 81 n97  
   A. entertained in, by angels, 70 n57  
   A. expelled from, 103 n4  
     on Jewish New Year, 81 n97  
   A. not having to work land in, 69  
   A.'s forfeit of, 86 n105  
   A. taking seeds from, 81 n96  
   A. with Eve in, 68-71  
     for 40 years and 7 days, 81 n97  
     for only a few hours, 77  
     without sexual intercourse, 103 n4  
 perfection of  
   in body, 58  
   in soul, 59  
 persons presented to, after their death, 99  
 prayer of, 89  
   house of, 89 n109  
 as progenitor of all mankind, 66 n38  
 as Prometheus, 85-86 n104  
 as prophet, 60 n21, 62 n30  
 punishments of, 79 n83, 79 n87, 91-92, 94  
 Razi'el as teacher of, in Kabbalah, 505 n117  
 repentance of, 86-89, 87 n106  
 rib of, restored through death of Eve, 97 (*see also* Eve: death of)  
 and Sabbath  
   A. delivered from suffering of hell by, 85 n103  
   A. taking part in, 83  
   commandments given to A. concerning observance of, 70 n55  
   significance of Sabbath, 83-84  
   song of praise for Sabbath, 83

Adam (*cont.*)

sexual instinct, conscious of, 66 n39  
 sexual relations of  
   with animals, 66 n39  
   with female spirits, 114  
     issuing in phantomlike beings, 109  
 sickness of, as punishment for his sin, 91-92  
 sin of  
   causing death of Moses, 806 n888  
   disobedience, 37  
   on first day of his creation, 81 n97  
   persistence in, 78 n78  
 size of, 58, 60 n22, 98 n137  
   after fall, 75  
   before fall, 74-75, 78 n73  
   Gnostic ideas about, 60 n21, 22 (*see also* Adam: Gnostic ideas about; Gnostic ideas)  
   one of seven gifts of A., 84  
   1,000 cubits, 66 n37  
   reduced by God, 66 n37  
 soil of Babylon as material for trunk of, 54 n15  
 soil of Palestine as material for head of, 54 n15  
 song of praise of, for Sabbath day, 83  
 son of, as frog in story of R. Hanina, 115  
 soul of  
   A. created at first without soul, 60 n22  
   breathed into his nostrils, 59  
   created with souls of all generations, 55  
   sparks of, 57 n19  
   taken to heaven in chariot of light, 96  
   taken to third heaven, 98 n137  
 spiritual qualities of, 59  
 splendor of, rationalistic explanation of, 85 n104  
 superiority of Moses to, 837  
 and Torah  
   A. to study in Paradise, 69  
   A. transmitting knowledge of, to Seth, 152 n51  
   Torah revealed to A., 60 n21, 77  
 and 12 tribes  
   A. would have been father of, had he not sinned, 343 n70

Adam (*cont.*)

unfavorable views of, 98 n138  
 washed three times in river Acheron, 96  
 wickedness of, 78 n78  
 wife of, named Ishah, 66  
 wisdom of, 59, 62 n29  
   lost at fall, 89, 91 n110  
   Solomon's wisdom greater than, 949-950  
*See also* creation; fall  
 Adam (plant)  
   deadly to anyone who comes near it, 289 n189  
 Adamah  
   dust of earth, 59  
   second earth, 109  
   Cain born in, 109-110  
   sixth earth, 6  
 Adam Kadmon  
   in Kabbalah, 49 n4  
 Adan (sing.). *See* Adne (pl.) Sadeh  
 Adar (month)  
   1st of  
     death of Moses, 839 n966  
   7th of  
     birth of Moses, 477 n44  
     death of Moses, 477 n44, 737, 839 n966  
     last day of life of Moses, 812-813  
   13th of  
     day decreed by Ahasuerus for extermination of Jews, 1157  
   23rd of  
     Moses consecrating Aaron and sons as priests, 657  
   birth of Moses in, 1151, 1152 n108  
   death of Moses in, 839 n966, 1151, 1152 n108  
   month of misfortune, 1151  
   only month having nothing in favor of Jews, 1151  
   second Adar  
     witchcraft having no power over men born in, 1152 n108  
*See also* date  
 Adares (king of Arabia)  
   appealing to Solomon for assistance against demon, 964  
 Adarshan  
   as ruler of world, 163 n82 (*see also* cosmocrator)  
 Adataneses (city)  
   founded by Japheth, 156  
 Adataneses (wife of Japheth), 156



Adikam (king of Egypt)  
 called Akuz by wise men, 498  
 increasing oppression on Israelites, 498-499  
 made king of Egypt, 498  
 second son of Pharaoh, 498  
 Adinah (wife of Laban)  
 barrenness of, 262  
 bearing twin daughters, Leah and Rachel, 262  
 Adinah (wife of Levi)  
 daughter of Jobab, 348  
 Admah  
 treatment of stranger in, 209  
 wickedness of inhabitants of, 209  
 Admatha (prince of Edom)  
 having charge of land, 1136  
 one of seven princes of Persia consulted by Ahasuerus about fate of Vashti, 1136  
 Adne Sadeh (Adan; man of mountain), 34, 39 n147, 39 n148  
*See also* man of mountain  
 Adon (first wife of Asher), 348  
 Adonai. *See* God: names and titles of  
 Adonai Elohe Yisrael  
 composed by Hezekiah, 1128 n58  
*See also* prayers, Jewish  
 Adoniah (queen of Ethiopia)  
 proposing that her son Monarchos become king, 491  
 Adoni-bezek  
 confessing sin, 861-862 n27  
 conquered by Othniel, 860  
 Adonijah  
 claiming throne, 946 n3  
 crown of David not fitting, 941  
 execution of, ordered by Solomon, 946 n3  
 intending to lead rebellion, 945  
 as pretender to throne, 940-941  
 requesting to marry Abishag, 946 n3  
 similarity of, to Absalom, 942 n139  
 son of David and Haggith, 940-941  
 Adoniram (elder from tribe of Joseph), 696  
 Adora  
 place where Esau died, 321  
 Adoram (Edomite)  
 slain by Jacob, 320-321  
 adulterer  
 one of five insulting names hurled at David by Shimei, 931 n96

adultery  
 considered peccadillo by Abimelech (king of Gerar), 263 n67  
 forbidden by Noah, 308  
 Seventh Commandment, 607  
 fourfold, 609 n230  
 punishment of, 246, 609 n230  
 leprosy as, 931 n96  
 plague as, 607  
 viewed by Abraham from heaven, 246  
 woman suspected of, 568 n82  
 Aesculapius  
 killed by lightning, 157  
 seeking tree of life, 157  
 Af (angel)  
 angel of death in charge of men other than children, young persons, and kings, 42 n187  
 angel of destruction, 505 n117  
 struggling with Moses, 623  
 buried alive opposite grave of Moses, 624 n274  
 and Hemah  
 swallowing Moses down to feet, 515  
 identified with Azza, 505 n117  
 punishing Moses on road to Egypt, 515  
 in seventh heaven, 504  
*See also* angel(s), general: types, of death; angel(s), general: types, of destruction; angel(s), individual  
 afflictions  
 freedom from, one of six gifts as reward for observance of Sabbath, 572 (*see also* gifts; Sabbath: observance of)  
 three great (suffering in times of Gog and Magog; travails of Messianic time; day of judgment), 572  
 Africa  
 named after Ephraim, 243  
 African language  
 used by Hamites, 158 n72  
 Africans  
 defeated by Kittim, 419  
 Afrira and Kastimon  
 monsters as rulers of abode of Cainites, 110 n34  
 Agag  
 ancestor of Haman, king of Amalekites, 899

Agag (*cont.*)  
 child of A. (Edad), slaying Saul, 903 n66  
 conquered by Saul, 680  
 executed by Samuel, 899, 902 n65  
 spared by Saul, 899, 1163  
 as title of Amalekite kings, 422 n429  
 age of majority  
 18 years, 488 n76  
 20 years, 263 n69, 488 n76, 715 n546  
 Aggadah. *See* Haggadah  
 Agnias (king of Africa)  
 asking for Yaniah's hand in marriage, 417  
 conscripting all males over age ten, 419  
 death of, 420  
 digging canal from land of Kittim to Africa, 418  
 making alliance with sons of Esau  
 against sons of Jacob, 416  
 against sons of Seir, 416  
 Agogian language  
 used by Hamites, 158 n72  
 agonic period  
 mystic literature of, 17 n70  
 Agrat (daughter of Mahlat; demon), 27 n109  
*See also* angel(s), fallen; demon(s); devil(s)  
 agriculture  
 inhabitants of Seir as experts in, 324-325 n322  
 Agrimus (demon)  
 also called Angro-Mainyu and Ahriman, 132 n63  
 firstborn of demons, 131  
*See also* angel(s), fallen; demon(s); devil(s)  
 Agur  
 another name of Solomon, 946 n2  
 Ahab, 986-989  
 able to interpret Leviticus in 85 ways, 1058 n109  
 as cosmocrator, 162 n82, 987, 988 n31 (*see also* cosmocrator)  
 and Elijah (*see also* Elijah: and Ahab)  
 generation of, not revealing hiding place of E. and 100 prophets, 989 n35  
 good qualities of, 987  
 great learning of, 988 n34



Ahab (*cont.*)

- having no portion in world to come, 908 n100, 988, 1058 n109 (*see also* world to come: those having no share in)
- inscription of
  - denying God of Israel, 987
- Jacob as example for, 342
- as king
  - A. as one of three kings not to have share in world to come, 908 n100
  - of Samaria, 987
  - over 252 kingdoms, 987
  - over 232 kingdoms, 988 n32
  - wicked, 988 n34
- led into idolatry by Jezebel, 987
- mourning for, 988
- and Naboth
  - A. claiming N.'s possessions, 989 n38
  - A. ordering execution of N., 987
- refusing to surrender Torah to Ben-hadad, 987
- reverence for Torah of, 987
- sins of, 987-988
- slain by Naaman, 988
- slain in Ramoth Gilead, 988, 989 n42
- son of, victorious against Mesha, 989 n35
- trial of, in heavenly court, 987-988, 989 n41
- warfare of
  - with Syrians, 987
  - victory over Syrians as reward for observance of Sabbath, 989 n35 (*see also* Sabbath: observance of)
- wealth of, 987, 988 n33
- wicked children of, 988 n33
- and Zedekiah
  - A. attempting to convince daughter of Nebuchadnezzar to yield to Z., 1106
  - false prophets, most notorious Jewish sinners, 1106
  - punished by fire, 1106

*See also* Jezebel

## Ahasuerus

- blindness of, 1169 n149
- chronicles of kings of Persia read to, 1170
- conspiracy of Bigthan and Teresh against, 1145-1148
- counselors of, punished for advising king to stop rebuilding of Temple, 1139 n52

Ahasuerus (*cont.*)

- dream of, 1171, 1171 n164
- edict of
  - revoking edict of annihilation, 1178-1180
  - that Jews to be annihilated, 1138, 1156-1157, 1157 n114
  - that wife must obey husband, 1137
  - that wife must speak language of husband, 1137
  - torn in pieces by God, 1170
- and Esther
  - A. continuing to love E., 1144 n74
  - A. speaking with E. through interpreter, 1174, 1177 n178
  - Darius as son of, 1131 n5
- feast of, 1129
- dancing at, 1133
- drinking wine at, 1133
- 180 days allotted for nobles, 1132
- program of, for six months, 1130
- reason for, 1131 n6
- for residents of Shushan, 1132
- taking place after work of Temple stopped for three years, 1131 n5
- follies of, 1138-1139
- as fool, 1138-1139, 1139 n49
- as "foolish king," 1165, 1166 n143
- and Haman
  - A. ordering that divine honor be paid to H., 1148
  - A. ordering that H. be hanged, 1175
  - A. to sell Jews to H. over meal, 335
- kept awake by
  - angel of insomnia, 1171 n163
  - Michael, 1170
- marriage of
  - to Esther, 1137
  - to Vashti, 1131 n6
- miracle of scepter of, 1167, 1169 n149
- name, meaning of, 1131 n4
- not daring to sit on throne of Solomon, 969
- not forcing Jews to participate in festivities, 1134 n15
- not wanting to offend religious sensibilities of guests, 1133, 1134 n18

Ahasuerus (*cont.*)

- one of five men wicked from first to last, 1044 n39
- political wisdom of, 1139 n50
- punished by losing half of kingdom for refusing permission to rebuild Temple, 1137
- recounting history of Jews, 1156-1157
- reign of, 641 n323
- robes of, once belonging to high priests, 1130
- royal gardens of, description of, 1133
- as ruler of 127 provinces, 1130, 1131 n6
- as ruler of world, 162 n82, 1129, 1138 n47 (*see also* cosmocrator)
- searching for most beautiful woman in realm, 1139
- son of Cyrus; grandson of Darius, 1131 n4
- son of Darius, 1131 n4
- thrown out of bed 365 times by Gabriel, 1170
- treasures of, coming from Temple, 1130
- unable to mount Solomon's throne, 1130
- using replica of Solomon's throne, 970 n72
- and Vashti
  - A. bragging about V.'s beauty at banquet, 1135
  - A. consulting seven princes of Persia about fate of V., 1136
  - A. ordering execution of seven counselors who condemned V., 1138-1139
  - story of execution of V., 1135-1138
- Wars of, 1131 n6
- wealth of, 1130, 1131 n4

## Ahaz

- abolishing laws against incest, 1044 n43
- death and burial of, 1045
- father of Hezekiah, 1045
- forbidding study of Torah, 1043, 1044 n40
- invited by God to make a request, 198 (*see also* God: actions of, inviting persons . . .)
- losing firstborn son as punishment for wickedness, 1043-1044



Ahaz (*cont.*)

modesty of, 1044 n43  
 one of five men wicked from first to last, 1044 n39  
 only good quality, respect for Isaiah, 1043  
 removing holy ark from Temple, 1062 n118  
 sending wealth as tribute to Sennacherib, 397  
 setting aside Jewish laws of marriage, 1058 n112  
 sins of, 1043  
   A. counted among hopeless sinners, 908 n100, 1043  
 son of Jotham, 1043  
 sun setting ten hours early at funeral of, 1052 n81  
 warfare of, against Pekah (of northern kingdom), 1044  
 and world to come  
   A. forfeiting share in, 967 n59, 1038-1039 n6, 1044 n44  
   A. not forfeiting share in, 1044  
 Ahaziah (king)  
 killed by Jehu, 1037  
 not having share in world to come, 908 n100, 967 n59, 1038-1039 n6  
 one of eight rulers of Davidic dynasty to die violent death, 933 n107  
 one of kings not to have share in world to come, 908 n100  
 as shameless sinner, 1037  
 substituting names of idols for Name of God in Scriptures, 1037  
 Ahiah  
   son of Shemhazai, 137 n10  
 Ahiah of Shiloh  
   one of martyred prophets according to Josephus, 1078 n30  
 Ahiezer  
   elder from tribe of Dan, 696  
   name, meaning of ("brother of help"), 679-680  
   prince of tribe of Dan, 679-680  
   son of Ammishaddai ("My people's judge"), 679-680  
 Ahijah (brother of Joel)  
   as unworthy judge, 897 n46  
 Ahijah (great-grandson of Eli)  
   identified with Ahimelech (father of Abiathar), 893 n30  
 Ahijah (prophet of Shiloh)  
   blindness of, 267 n74

Ahijah (*cont.*)

crowns and embellishments of Hebrew letters transmitted to, by Ahitophel, 892 n24  
 death of  
   executed as martyr by Abijah, 982 n5  
 great age of, 981  
 and Jeroboam  
   A. discussing secret lore with J., 982  
   A. responsible for elevation of J. to throne, 985 n16  
   A. telling Jeroboam of his elevation to kingship, 981  
   J. as disciple of A., 982  
 one of seven with overlapping life terms, 982 n4  
 piety of, 981  
 reviled by Abijah (son of Rehoboam), 985  
 teacher of Elijah, 996 n3  
 teacher of R. Israel Baal Shem Tov in legends of Hasidim, 982 n5  
 transmitting crowns and embellishments of Hebrew letters to Jehoiada, 892 n24  
   of tribe of Levi, 981  
 Ahijah (son of Shisha)  
   one of Solomon's two scribes, 979  
 Ahikar  
   and fable of trees and iron, 21 n74  
 Ahiman  
   name, meaning of, 707  
   one of three giants summoned by Sarah, 236 n259  
   and Sheshai and Talmai pursuing Caleb, 710  
   three giants in Palestine, 707  
 Ahimelech (father of Abiathar)  
   identified with Ahijah (great-grandson of Eli), 893 n30  
 Ahinoam  
   elder from tribe of Dan, 696  
 Ahira  
   name, meaning of ("desirable meadow"), 680  
   prince of tribe of Naphtali, 680  
   son of Enan ("clouds"), 680  
 Ahitophel, 922-924  
   age at death, 33 years, 922  
   author of fortune book, 923  
   composing three prayers for each day, 924 n64  
   crowns and embellishments of Hebrew letters transmitted by, to Ahijah, 892 n24

Ahitophel (*cont.*)

crowns and embellishments of Hebrew letters transmitted to, by Paltiel, 892 n24  
 and David  
   A. as counselor to D., 922  
   A. as D.'s best friend, 923 n61  
   A. as master and teacher of D., 923 n61  
   D. consulting A. about transporting ark to Jerusalem, 923  
   D. fearing no one except A., 923 n61  
   D. learning two things from A., 923 n62  
   related by blood, 922  
   story of shard and abyss, 923  
   strained relations between, 923  
 death of  
   A. dying at same age as Doeg, 908 n97  
   A. hanging self, 923  
 destroyed by pride, 924 n64  
 and Doeg as men of evil tongues, 908 n106  
 forfeiting share in world to come, 908 n100, 922  
 grandfather of Bathsheba, 922  
 as head of Sanhedrin, 923 n60  
 lacking in piety, 922  
 misled by astrological signs, 922  
 name, meaning of, 924 n64  
 not to be resurrected nor given over to punishment, 908 n106  
 one of ten adversaries of David, 922 n59  
 one of two great sages of world who lost this world and world to come, 798 (*see also under Balaam*)  
 scholarship of, 922  
 seeking admiration, 908 n99  
 Socrates as disciple of, 923  
 taking part in Absalom's rebellion against David, 922  
 will of, containing three rules, 923  
 wisdom of, 922, 923 n62  
 Ahitrib  
   elder from tribe of Benjamin, 696  
 Ahriman. *See* Agrimus  
 Ahumai  
   one of five other names of Bezalel, 642  
 Ai (person)  
   to slay Jair, 41 n175



- Ai** (place)  
 altar erected by Abraham at, 187  
 battle of, 847 n23  
 Joshua defeated at, 845  
 legend about Abraham and battle of, 847 n23
- ain** (letter). *See* ayin
- Aisha**  
 one of Ishmael's wives, 222 n218  
 as wife of Muhammad, 222 n218
- Akedah**, 225-233, 227 n229  
 Abraham as hero of, 228 n229, 232 n242  
 date of  
   on Day of Atonement, 232 n248  
   on New Year, 232 n248  
   in Nisan, 232 n248  
 explained as protest against child sacrifice, 233 n255  
 Isaac glorified in, 228 n229  
 Isaac's age at time of, 253 n3  
 liturgical reference to, 228 n229  
 site of, same as site of Temple Mount, 232 n253  
*See also* Abraham: and Isaac, sacrifice of; Isaac: and Akedah
- Akiba, R.**  
 basing Halakhot upon every dot of letters, 616  
 dying in prison, 1004  
 explaining meaning of crowns upon letters, 514  
 in first division of Paradise, 22 n85  
 knowing things not revealed to Moses, 618 n250  
 legend about daughter of, 1017 n96  
 light shining over grave of, 236 n265  
 as martyr victim of government, 19, 616  
 possibly descendant of Haman, 1147 n93  
 propagandist for Bar Kokhba revolt, 1089 n56  
 story of Elijah and, 1003  
 two versions of Alphabet of R. Akiva, 5 n10, 5 n12
- Akiba** (hero of Jerusalem). *See* Abika
- Akraziel** (angel)  
 celestial herald, 801
- Akuz**  
 name given to Adikam by wise men, 498
- Akuzit**  
 second daughter of Pharaoh, 498
- alef** (letter)  
 in Asenath, standing for On, where Potiphar was priest, 368  
 creation of world through, 4  
 first letter of God's revelation on Sinai, 1079  
 first letter of name of Abraham, on standard of tribe of Judah, 686  
 having first place in Ten Commandments, 4  
 Hebrew name of, 46 n194  
 prosthetic, 970 n67  
*See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet
- Alenu**  
 composed by Joshua, 853 n50, 1079, 1128 n58  
*See also* prayers, Jewish
- Alexander** legend(s), 32 n132, 956 n27  
 mountains of darkness mentioned in, 964 n51  
 stream of life and, 70 n51  
 traces of, discernible in story of last years of Abraham, 244 n312  
 of treasure in Nineveh, 1035 n35
- Alexander the Great**  
 bringing Solomon's throne from Babylon to Egypt, 1131 n13  
 finding Solomon's books of wisdom in Jerusalem, 955 n18  
 giving Solomon's books of wisdom to Aristotle, 955 n18  
 as ruler of world, 162 n82 (*see also* cosmocrator)
- Alfaranit** (queen of Egypt), 482  
 name, Arabic, 484 n65
- alien** rule  
 one of two visitations, 199
- Alinus**, 298 n244  
 set over one of Jacob's companies, 297  
 son of Eliezer, servant of Abraham, 297
- Alit**  
 marriage of Judah to, 347
- Al Ken Nekavveh Lekha**  
 composed by Joshua, 1128 n58  
*See also* prayers, Jewish
- allegorical interpretation(s)**  
 of Balaam's ass speaking, 768 n745  
 of Ezekiel's reviving dead, 1102 n94  
 of Leviathan-Behemoth legends, 32 n127  
 of names of seven Persian princes, 1136, 1138 n40
- allegorical interpretation(s)** (*cont.*)  
 of Song of Songs, 977 n93  
 of story of Joshua as referring to Jesus, 1107 n108  
 of tree making bitter waters at Marah sweet, 568 n82
- allegory**  
 creation of Eve out of Adam's rib, 67 n42
- almond** bone  
 dissolved in flood, 149 n44
- almonds**  
 blooming from Aaron's rod, 730 (*see also* Aaron: rod of)
- alms**  
 and prayer and repentance, warding off evil, 1052 n75
- Al-Mutadhid**, Calif  
 Elijah appearing to, in dream, 1013 n93
- aloes**  
 strewn before Joseph by king's servants, 367
- alphabet**, 3-5  
 descended from crown of God, 3  
 Hebrew name of first letter of, 46 n194  
 letters of  
   contained in Ten Commandments in Deuteronomy, 635 n308  
   and creation, 3  
   number of, divisible by three, 593 n179  
   pleading for God to create through them, 3-5  
   22 in number, 3  
 origin of, 3-5  
 and parallels in Christian literature, 5 n10  
*See also* creation; letters of alphabet; *and under individual letters*
- altar(s)**  
 of Abraham  
   on site appointed for Temple, 231  
   on site where Adam brought first sacrifice, 231  
   on site where Cain and Abel offered gifts to God, 231  
   on site where Noah built altar, 231  
 at Bethel, erected by Jacob, 317 n299  
 brazen, 968 n63  
 built by Moses to glorify victory over Amalek, 582



altar(s) (*cont.*)

erected  
 by Abraham, 187 (*see also*  
 altar[s]: of Abraham)  
 by Adam  
   in Jerusalem, 89 n109  
   on Mount Moriah, 89 n109  
 by Moses on Mount Sinai, 598  
 on Mount Ebal with stones  
   from bed of Jordan, 843  
 by Saul, Elijah sacrificing on,  
   997 n113  
 by seven pious men (Adam,  
   Abel, Noah, Abraham,  
   Isaac, Jacob, Moses), 771  
 by Solomon for offerings, 646  
 by 2½ tribes, 853 n52  
 fire of, one of five sacred objects  
   concealed by God at  
   destruction of Temple, 645  
 for golden calf, built by Aaron,  
   621  
 heavenly, terrestrial altar corre-  
   sponding to, 1121 n31  
 of incense, carried by angel to  
   mount whence Moses  
   viewed Holy Land, 1091  
 in Mount Ebal, Torah written on it  
   in 70 languages, 843  
 of Noah  
   destroyed by builders of Tower  
   of Babel, 232 n251  
   N. rebuilding altar destroyed by  
   flood, 232 n251  
   on site of Abraham's altar, 231  
 of Tabernacle, 646-648  
   of brass  
     corresponding to human  
     body, 646-647  
     sacrifices offered on, 647  
   of gold  
     corresponding to human soul,  
     647  
     spices and incense offered on,  
     647  
   height of, three cubits, corre-  
   sponding to three sent by  
   God to deliver Israel from  
   Egypt (Moses, Aaron,  
   Miriam), 648  
   length and breadth of, five  
   cubits, corresponding to  
   five commandments on  
   each of two tablets, 648  
   of shittim wood, overlaid with  
   brass, 646  
   symbolic significance of, 648

altar(s) (*cont.*)

of Temple  
   dust for Adam taken from, 97  
   n137  
   site of, as place of Abraham's  
   circumcision, 202  
   site of, at center of earth, 158  
   n68  
   on site of Abraham's altar, 231  
 terrestrial, corresponding to heav-  
   enly altar, 1121 n31  
 Alukah  
   place in hell, 506  
 Alush  
   commandment concerning obser-  
   vance of Sabbath revealed  
   at, 574 n109  
   place where manna descended first  
   time, 574 n109  
 Amalek  
   annihilation of, as one of three  
   national duties, 897 n47  
   army of, number of, 580 n140  
   as counselor of Pharaoh, 471 n21  
   descendants of, to be exterminated,  
   582  
   identified with Rome, 583 n147  
   and Christianity in later sources,  
   580 n141  
   in early tannaitic sources, 580  
   n141  
   identified with Sammael and evil  
   inclination in Kabbalah,  
   580 n141  
   luring Jews with kindly words of  
   kinship, 578-579  
   and magicians  
     informing Pharaoh that Israelites  
     not returning, 549-550  
   name, meaning of, 578, 580  
   n137  
   and Nebuchadnezzar, 745  
   slain by Joshua by word of God,  
   1163, 1164 n140  
   sneering at covenant of Abraham,  
   580 n141  
   son of Eliphaz, firstborn of Esau,  
   578  
   son of Timna, 323, 580 n138  
   taking part in destruction of  
   Jerusalem, 582  
   to be exterminated in future world,  
   582  
 and war  
   A. as magician in war, 581, 582  
   n144  
   A. making war on Israel after  
   death of Aaron, 745

Amalek (*cont.*)

and war (*cont.*)  
   A. mutilating corpses of  
   Israelites, 579  
   defeat of A., 580-583  
   nations allied with A. against  
   Israel, 578  
   tribes of Ephraim, Manasseh,  
   and Benjamin fighting  
   against A., 680  
   war against A., 842 n3  
 war of  
   against Israel, 577-580  
   after death of Aaron, 745  
   taking place in Iyar, 580  
   n149  
*See also* Amalekites  
 Amalekites  
   becoming animals to escape attacks  
   of enemies, 902 n61  
   disguised as  
     Ammonites, making war against  
     Jehoshaphat, 747 n647  
     Canaanites, 745  
   identified with inhabitants of Seir,  
   307 n278  
   massacre of, by David, 307 n278  
   not to be accepted as proselytes,  
   582, 1178 n191  
   as sorcerers, 902 n61  
   spies reporting that Amalekites  
   dwell in south, 710  
*See also* Amalek  
 Amaltheas  
   name, meaning of ("horn"), 461  
   playing cymbal, 461  
   third daughter of Job, 461  
*See also* Keren ha-Puch  
 Amasa (adjutant of Saul), 900  
 Amaziah (king of Judah)  
   defeated by Joash (of northern  
   kingdom), 1038  
   as false prophet, 1042 n28  
   God-fearing at beginning of reign,  
   1038  
   one of eight rulers of Davidic  
   dynasty to die violent  
   death, 933 n107  
   setting up idolatry in Jerusalem,  
   1038  
   son and successor of Joash, 1038  
   tortured to death by own subjects,  
   1038  
   victory of, over Edomites, 1038  
   violent death of, as punishment for  
   cruelty against Edomites,  
   1039 n17



Amaziah (priest of Bethel)  
 denounced by Amos, 1040  
 identified with "old prophet" of  
 Bethel, 883 n131  
 amethyst (color). *See under* color(s)  
 Amidah, 127 n60  
 beginning of, restored by men of  
 Great Synagogue, 1127 n56  
 first benediction of, 188 n56  
 and prayer of Mordecai, 1161  
 n123  
 Hannah's second prayer as  
 abridged form of, 891 n20  
 Moses as author of, 1128 n58  
 prayed aloud in Palestine, 889 n11  
 prayed in low voice, as Babylonian  
 custom, 889 n11  
*See also* prayers, Jewish; Eighteen  
 Benedictions  
 Amittai  
 name, midrashic interpretation of,  
 997 n9  
 Ammiel  
 name, meaning of, 705  
 son of Gemalli, spy of tribe of  
 Dan, 705  
 Ammihud  
 name, meaning of, 681 n424  
 Ammon (place)  
 part of, becoming possession of  
 Og, 758  
 to be spared because of Naomi,  
 758  
 Ammon (son of Lot)  
 marrying Canaanite, 235  
 name, meaning of ("son of my  
 people"), 758  
 Ammonites  
 capturing wealth from Ben-hadad,  
 397  
 committing four acts of hostility  
 against Israel, 214  
 conquered by Sennacherib, 1051  
 n65  
 as descendants of Lot, 214  
 males excluded from Jewish com-  
 munion, 917  
 and Moabites  
 cruelty of, toward Israel when  
 conquered by Babylon,  
 1086  
 not to enter assembly of Lord to  
 tenth generation, 792  
 Torah commanding considerate  
 treatment of, 983  
 war of, with Jews under  
 Jehoshaphat, 397

Amon  
 burning Torah, 1055, 1058 n112  
 committing incest with mother,  
 1055, 1058 n112  
 father of Josiah, 1058-1059  
 one of eight rulers of Davidic  
 dynasty to die violent  
 death, 933 n107  
 son of Manasseh, surpassing father  
 in wickedness, 1055  
 Amoraic period  
 Tiberias as seat of Jewish learning  
 in, 410 n391  
 Amoraic sources  
 use of Edom for Rome frequent in,  
 254 n19 (*see also* rabbinic  
 literature)  
 Amoraim  
 on Abraham's observance of law,  
 239 n275  
 Amorites  
 attacked by Kenaz, 858  
 custom of, to delay burial of pious  
 man, 706 n509  
 emigrating to Africa, 848 n34  
 as giants, 754, 756 n699  
 as hardest people, 848 n34  
 idols and precious stones of,  
 destroyed by God, 856  
 land provisionally granted to, 157  
 licentiousness of, 210 n155  
 as magicians and sorcerers, 848  
 n34  
 number of, like sand of seashore,  
 310 (*see also* dust: of earth;  
 sand of seashore; star[s]: in  
 heavens)  
 punishment of, 215 n179  
 Sihon as king of, 751-753  
 spies reporting that Amorites dwell  
 in mountains, 710  
 story of Hadrian being shown  
 Amorite corpses, 754  
 stricken with blindness in battle,  
 858, 860 n17  
 surrendering to Jacob, 315  
 warfare of, 311 n289, 314-316  
 assembling for war at Hazor,  
 317 n297  
 attack thwarted by piety and  
 prayers of Jacob, 311  
 n289  
 Israel advancing against  
 Amorites, 716-717  
 kings turning back from fighting  
 against Jacob, 311  
 planning to attack Israel in val-  
 ley of Arnon, 749

Amorites (*cont.*)  
 warfare of (*cont.*)  
 seven kings of Amorites coming  
 to fight against sons of  
 Jacob, 310  
 "ways of," meaning superstitious  
 practices, 848 n34  
*See also* Canaanites  
 Amos  
 denouncing priest Amaziah, 1040  
 having impediment in speech,  
 1040  
 killed by  
 Amaziah, 1042 n28  
 King Uzziah, 1040  
 one of eight postexilic prophets,  
 991 n56  
 one of princes who assist Messiah,  
 100 n142  
 one of those called "man of God"  
 in Scripture, 838 n965 (*see  
 also* man of God)  
 one of three great prophets, 1039  
 as postexilic prophet, 1042 n25  
 prophetic activity of, 1040  
 as shepherd, 501 n109  
 time of activity of, 1041 n20, 1042  
 n25  
 Amoz  
 book of, 1058 n104  
 Tamar as ancestress of, 344  
 Amram  
 death of, in promised land, 548  
 n10  
 and divorce  
 A. changing mind about, 475  
 A. leading movement of divorce  
 in response to Pharaoh's  
 order, 473  
 elder from tribe of Levi, 696  
 as firstborn, 718  
 image of, on Solomon's throne,  
 968  
 and Jochebed  
 Israel redeemed from Egypt on  
 account of merits of, 474  
 n30 (*see also under* Israel: in  
 Egypt; merits)  
 marriage of, 438, 474, 474 n33  
 making only one brick daily for  
 Egyptians, 473  
 one of four sons of Kohath, 718  
 (*see also under* Kohath)  
 one of four to lead sinless life, 473,  
 912 n7  
 one of seven pious men of world,  
 968 (*see also under* pious:  
 men)



- Amram (*cont.*)  
 one of seven with overlapping life terms, 982 n4  
 one of six righteous men who drew Shekinah back from six heavens, 473  
 piety of, 473, 474 n30  
 receiving priesthood as reward for zeal in study of Torah, 928 n78  
 several laws revealed to, 476 n37  
 son of, as derogatory name of Moses, 726 n581, 734  
 son of Izhar, 805  
 from tribe of Levi, 473  
 vision of, about Moses and Aaron, 475-476  
 in war of Egypt against Canaan, 548 n10  
 wisdom of, 473
- Amraphel  
 etymologies of, 196 n85  
 identified with Nimrod, 162 n82, 163 n87, 180 n45, 196 n85  
 one of five kings to make war on Abraham, 194  
 identified with Ninus (grandson of Nimrod), 163 n87, 196 n85
- amulet  
 to protect babies from Lilith, 65
- Amzara (wife of Noah), 146 n29
- Anah (descendant of Esau)  
 first to breed horse and ass, 324  
 meeting demons in desert, 324 n321  
 mother of, also mother of his father, Zibeon, 324  
 offspring of incestuous marriage, 324  
 shepherding asses when monsters came out of sea and rode away on asses, 323-324  
 trying to bring about unnatural unions among animals, 324
- Anak  
 sons and daughters of, as giants, 707
- Anakim  
 name, meaning of, 137  
 offspring of fallen angels and Cainite women, 137
- analogy  
 hermeneutic rule of, 884 n135
- anamnesia  
 Platonic doctrine of, 58 n20
- Anan, R.  
 story of, illustrating severity of Elijah, 1007
- Anani  
 name  
 meaning of, 1063 n136  
 of Messiah, 1063 n136
- Anathoth  
 field of, as inheritance of Jeremiah, 1075
- androgynous  
 Adam as, 67 n42  
 mythological conception of, 67 n42
- Aner  
 advice of, to Abraham concerning circumcision, 202  
 at burial of Sarah, 235  
 as disciple of Abraham, 197 n92  
 partaking of Abraham's banquet, 205
- angel(s), fallen  
 Arabic legend of Harut, 128 n60  
 and astrology, 121 n57  
 Azazel, 118 n56 (*see also* Azazel)  
 Azza, 761 n723  
 and Cainite women  
 Anakim as offspring of, 137  
 descendants of, 121 n57  
 Ezekeel, 119  
 Gadriel, 95 n131  
 and idolatry, 121 n57  
 Kawkabel, teaching men about astrology, 119  
 lured by women, 121 n57  
 names of, 118 n56, 137 n10  
 as originators of all evil, 121 n57  
 punishment of, 119-120, 135-38, 137 n10  
 Rephaim as offspring of fallen angels and Cainite women, 137  
 Samsaweel, teaching men signs of sun, 119  
 in second heaven, 3 n9, 124  
 seducing Eve (Gadriel), 95 n131  
 Seriel, teaching men signs of moon, 119  
 Shemḥazai, 118 n56  
 teaching men  
 augury from clouds (Ezekeel), 119  
 how to make idols, 118 n54  
 signs of earth (Arakiel), 119  
 about spells (Armaros), 119  
 and witchcraft, 121 n57  
 women who caused fall of, transformed into sirens, 41 n168
- angel(s), fallen (*cont.*)  
 Yikon, ringleader of, 137 n9  
 zamzummim as offspring of, with Cainite women, 137  
*See also* angel(s), general; angel(s), individual; *and under individual names*)
- angel(s), general  
 ability of, to see demons, 82 n98  
 and Abraham  
 angels appearing to A., 206 n132, 207 n143  
 angels as accusers of A., 225 n228  
 angels eating with A., 879 n111, 962 n45  
 angels interceding for Isaac's life, 233 n255  
 angels leaving A. to go to Sodom, 212  
 angels marveling at opinion of A., 211 n159  
 Jaol leading A. to highest heaven, 200 n114  
 questions of angels concerning A., 279 n134  
 tears of angels falling on A.'s knife, 229
- accompanying humans  
 Eliezer, 240  
 Enoch (Anpiel), 129  
 Jacob, 294, 328  
 Joseph, 328  
 leaving Abraham to go to Sodom, 212
- accusing humans of sin, 52 n12
- and Adam  
 angels and creation of A., 49 n3 (*see also* Adam; creation)  
 angels envious of A., 62, 142  
 angels grieved by sin of A., 76  
 angels serving meat and wine to A., 69  
 Hadarniel speaking to A., 90 n110  
 relation of, 63 n33
- angel promised to Israelites to lead them identified with ark of covenant, 644 n330
- appearing as (*see also* angel[s], general: forms of; angel[s], general: incorporeality of)  
 Arabs, 204, 206 n136  
 Esau, 306 n273  
 Moses, 488 n76  
 Nabatean, 206 n136  
 Saracen, 206 n136  
 thousands of warriors, 297



angel(s), general (*cont.*)appearing as (*cont.*)

young man, 873 n97, 879 n111

## appearing to

Abimelech in dream, 216

Abraham, 206 n132, 207 n143,

879 n111

Asenath, 424

Hagar, 201, 203 n122

Joseph concerning brothers in  
Egypt, 372

Lot, like lightning, 214 n172

Manoah, taking no food, 879  
n111

appointed over passion of love, 344  
and Aramaic language

angels not understanding, 612  
n242

attending to one task only, 207  
n154

## and Balaam

angel in B.'s throat preventing  
speech, 771

angel of mercy attempting to  
save B. from destruction,  
767 n743

## bearing inscription Hēsed

("grace"), 618-619 n254

## becoming proud, 52 n12

## blessing Asenath, 424

as bodyguards of Moses on tour of  
heavens, 503

bringing food and drink, 177 n29

carrying burdens of Jewish captives  
on march to Babylon, 1085

carrying out punishment on ser-  
pent, 76

causing soul to forget everything,  
58 n20

changed into wind, 13

## chief of

angels, 83

angels (Shemḥazai), 119

cherubim, 83 (*see also* cherubim)

each division of heavenly hosts,  
83

holy ḥayyot, 83 (*see also* ḥayyot)

oath (Kasbiel), 137 n9

ofanim, 83 (*see also* ofanim)

## and circumcision, 16 n62

certain classes created circum-  
cised, 50 n6, 249 n318

## concealing sacred vessels of

Temple, 1092

contest of, with monsters, 30 n127  
creation of

day of, 15 n61

materials for, 16 n63

angel(s), general (*cont.*)creation of (*cont.*)

out of every word uttered by  
God, 16 n62

out of fire, 13, 15-16 n62

out of water and fire, 503

out of white fire, in third  
heaven, 503

rising from perspiration of  
ḥayyot, 17 n69

on second day, 12, 77

springing up daily, 16 n62

and creation of Adam, 49 n3 (*see  
also* Adam; creation)

and creation of man, 51-53 (*see  
also* creation)

opposition to, 51-52, 52 n12,  
52 n13, 118 n56, 614, 615  
n247

punishment of angels for oppo-  
sition to, 52 n13

## and daughters of men

angels luring, 119

sexual intercourse of, 136-137

as degraded god, 256 n35

and demons (*see also* angel[s],  
fallen; demon[s]; devil[s])

ability of angels to see demons,  
82 n98

inability of demons to see  
angels, 82 n98

descent of, motive for, 137 n10

description of, in fourth heaven,  
125

division of, into ten groups, 127  
n60 (*see also* angel[s], gen-  
eral: ranks or degrees  
among)

Dothan, as observer of law, 334  
n29

doxologies of, 17 n70 (*see also*  
angel[s], general: praising  
God; angel[s], general:  
song of; praise)

eating, 634, 635 n309

eating not necessary for, 245

## and Enoch

E. having sexual intercourse  
with angels, 121 n58, 127  
n60

E. transformed into angel, 130  
n61

E. with angel watchers and holy  
ones, 119

Samuil bringing E. to heavens,  
126

## and Esther

three angels sent to assist E.,  
1167

angel(s), general (*cont.*)

evil inclination, not having, 49 n6  
fall of, 119-122, 120-121 n57 (*see  
also* angel[s], fallen)

and rebellion of Satan, 121 n57

feet of, like feet of calves, 622 n271

food for, 207 n143

forms of, 16 n63, 82 n98 (*see also*  
angel[s], general: appear-  
ances of; angel[s], general:  
incorporeality of)

angels taking various forms,  
1004 n47

fire, 16 n63

males, 13, 16 n63, 49 n6

wind, 16 n63

woman, angels never assuming  
form of, 1004 n47

God consulting with, 2 n3, 48, 51,  
51 n10, 52 n12

as anti-Christian tendency, 2 n3  
great numbers of, at revelation of  
Sinai, 601

grinding manna, 570, 619 n254  
guarding

books (Arukh, Parukh), 117 n53

Cave of Machpelah, 234

Enoch's book, 128 n60

having no joints, 305 n258

## in heaven

first, chanting praise of Torah,  
505 n117

second, chanting praise of Israel,  
505 n117

third, chanting glory of

Jerusalem, 505 n117

fourth, chanting glory of

Messiah, 505 n117

fifth, announcing torture of  
wicked in Gehenna, 505  
n117

sixth, announcing joy of righ-  
teous in Paradise, 505 n117

seventh, proclaiming power of  
repentance, 505 n117

seventh (Af, Ḥemah, Samael),  
504

humility of, 701 n490

included or not in expression

"house of God," 701 n493

incorporeality of, 15-16 n62 (*see  
also* angel[s], general:

appearing as; angel[s], gen-  
eral: forms of)

## intercession of

for Isaac's life, 233 n255

for man, 57 n20

for Moses, 477



angel(s), general (*cont.*)

## and Israel

- angels consulting Israel about secrets, 775
- angels learning of redemption of Israel, 541
- Israel singing before angels, 562
- Israel's superiority over angels, 775 n774

## and Jacob

- angels as messengers of J., 305 n266
- bringing J.'s sons for blessing, 406

## and Jacob's ladder, 279 n134

- angels of Babylon, Edom, Greece, and Media on, 277

## and Joseph

- angels bringing J. clothes from Paradise, 364

## killing Er (son of Judah) on third day after wedding, 344

## knowledge of, 207 n150

## lament of

- for Aaron, 743
- over Temple and Jerusalem, 1079

and manna (*see* manna: and angels)

## as members of God's court of justice, 2 n3

and Moses (*see also* angel[s], general: types, of death, and Moses)

- angel assuming form of M., 599 n195

- angel being angry at M., 631
- angels mourning for M., 834, 835 n955

- angels teaching M. response "Praised be the name . . .", 409 n383

- each angel bestowing on M. remedy and secret of Holy Names, 615

- Samael searching for M. among angels, 836

- superiority of M. to angels, 701-702 n493

## on Mount Sinai, 604 n210

## in mystical literature, 16 n63

names (*see also under* angel[s], individual)

- of classes of, 16 n64
- theophoric, 118 n56, 306 n273

## not eternal, 16 n62

## not perfect, 17 n70

## number of, 16 n64, 83, 125, 127 n60

angel(s), general (*cont.*)number of (*cont.*)

- in heavenly court, 211 n159
- 184 myriads, snatching words of intercession from people, 809

## in Paradise, 19

- one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)

## perceived by animals, 766

- pious transformed into, after death, 122 n58

## place of residence, 16 n63

- power of, vanishing in presence of God, 301 n248

## power of speech and, 49 n6

## praising God, 13-14, 83, 279 n134

- (*see also* angel[s], general: doxologies of; angel[s], general: song of; praise)
- in second, third, fourth, and fifth heavens, 503-504

## preexistence of, 15 n61

## prostrating before Metatron, 130

- ranks or degrees among, 13 (*see also* angel[s], general: division of . . .)

## reading Torah in first heaven, 505 n117

## remaining outside Holy of Holies, 453 n4

## and revelation at Mount Sinai

- two angels sent to assist each Israelite at, 603

## rising from perspiration of hayyot, 17 n69

## and Sabbath

- angels remaining silent on, 84 n101

## angels resting on, 84 n102

- seeking refuge in cities of refuge, 307 n275

## sent to heal Israelites in wilderness, 675

## setting fire to city walls, 1092

## and sexual intercourse

- with Cainite women, 137
- with daughters of men, 120-121 n57, 136-137

## with women, 121 n57

## as shades, 16 n63

## and Shekinah

- angels keeping faces toward Shekinah, 503

- angels subsisting on glory of Shekinah, 16 n62, 207 n143, 635 n309

angel(s), general (*cont.*)and Shekinah (*cont.*)

- distance between, 10 n30, 16 n64

- showing children of men blows of death (Gadriel), 94 n116
- of Simeon and Levi, to be reproved by angel of Esau, 579

## sins of, 137

- eating forbidden food and meat with milk, 616 n248

song of (*see also* angel[s], general: doxologies of; angel[s], general: praising God)

- silenced at time of flood, at drowning of Egyptians, and at destruction of Temple, 1080 n32

## stature of, 121 n57

- of fantastic proportions, in third and seventh heavens, 503, 504

## superiority of

- angels to animal world, 52 n12
- angels to man, 17 n66
- Elijah to angels, 1004 n47
- Israel to angels, 775 n774
- man to angels, 50 n6
- Messiah to angels, 790 n836
- righteous to angels, 1100 n89

## sword of, and death, 58 n20

## taking objects from Temple, 1092 n61

- taking spirit of dead to proper place (Duma), 58 n20

## teaching 70 languages to 70 families of Noah, 446

- tears of, falling upon Abraham's knife, 229 (*see also* angel[s], general: weeping of)

## types, 16 n64, 17 n65

## of abyss, 83

## roaring of, 27 n107

## of Arabot, 299

## archangel(s)

- angel of deep (Tamiel), 120 n57

- angel of hidden things (Satarel), 120 n57

- angel of rain (Matarel), 120 n57

- angel of storms (Zakiel), 120 n57

- angel of thunder (Ramiel), 120 n57, 130

- in charge of Mercury (Michael), 131 n61

- in charge of world (Metatron), 21 n75



angel(s), general (*cont.*)types (*cont.*)archangel(s) (*cont.*)

chief of seraphim (Jaoel), 200 n114  
 commanding angels opposed to creation of man (Labbiel), 52  
 controlling heavenly bodies, 127 n60  
 holding male and female Leviathans in check (Jaoel), 31 n127  
 in human form, 204  
 leading Abraham to highest heaven (Jaoel), 200 n114  
 names of, 17 n65, 120 n57 (*see also* angel[s]: individual, archangels)  
 number of, 16 n64, 120 n57  
 12, connected with signs of Zodiac, 17 n65  
 position of, around Divine Throne, 687 n440  
 prostrating before Metatron, 120 n57, 130  
 protectors of Israel (Gabriel, Michael), 2  
 relation of, to planets, 17 n65  
 in seventh heaven, 125  
 of birds, 83  
 cherubim, 80 n94 (*see also* cherubim)  
 of clouds, in second heaven, 503  
 of confusion, seven in number, sent to disrupt Ahasuerus's banquet, 1135  
 of countenance (*see* angel[s], general: types, of face)  
 of day (Shamshiel), 130  
 passing guarding of Israel to angels of night, 775  
 of death (*see also* angel[s], general: types, of destruction)  
 adventure of R. Joshua b. Levi with, 23 n97  
 appearing as beggar, 1016, 1017, 1017 n96  
 appearing to Eve, 72  
 in charge of animals (Meshabber), 42 n187  
 in charge of children (Mashhit), 42 n187  
 in charge of domestic animals (Heman), 42 n187  
 in charge of kings (Kafziel), 42 n187  
 in charge of other kinds of men (Af), 42 n187

angel(s), general (*cont.*)types (*cont.*)of death (*cont.*)

drawing sword at time of Sarah's death, 237 n270  
 and Elijah, 1016-1018  
 angel having no power over E., 999 n25  
 angel struggling with E., 995-996  
 having no power over Aaron, 744  
 Elijah, 999 n25  
 one occupied with fulfilling commandments, 938  
 one studying Torah, 1027 n2  
 holding sway in this world, 563-564  
 identified with Leviathan and Rahab, 20 n73  
 identified with Satan, 95 n130  
 in Islamic legend (Sammael), 307 n275  
 Israelites granted power over, at revelation at Sinai, 612 n238  
 kept at bay by incense, 729  
 and Moses (*see also* angel[s], general: and Moses)  
 giving M. remedy against death, 615  
 M. fearing sword of, 810  
 M. not delivering soul to, 816-817  
 preventing M. from blessing Israel, 819  
 number of, 42 n187  
 people powerless against, 972  
 power of, over animal world, 37-38  
 prince of darkness (identified with Satan) as, 11 n41  
 relation of, to Gabriel, 42 n187  
 relation of, to Leviathan, 42 n187  
 taking stand opposite Isaac, 233 n255  
 Torah given to Israel as weapon against, 621 n262  
 traversing world with eight strokes, 1004 n46  
 tricking David, 938  
 words of, 58 n20  
 of deserts, 83

angel(s), general (*cont.*)types (*cont.*)

of destruction (*see also* angel[s], general: types, of death)  
 assigned place at far end of heavens, 2  
 cherubim as, 80 n94 (*see also* cherubim)  
 distance of, from God, 3 n9  
 dwelling at Sodom, 215 n184  
 Egyptians handed over to, at Red Sea, 559  
 guarding souls of wicked in fifth earth, 6  
 having "joints" and moving slowly, 3 n9  
 incited by blood mark on wicked, 1075 n26  
 leader of (Kemuel), 214 n179, 613  
 number of, 214 n179, 613  
 and plague of slaying of first-born, 537  
 and punishment of wicked, 3 n9, 55-56  
 Satan as, 538 n216  
 supervising in hell, 13  
 three divisions of, seizing wicked at death, 430 n444  
 torturing men in hell, 506  
 warded off by ink mark on pious, 1075 n26  
 of domestic animals, 83  
 of dread, in seventh heaven, 505 n117  
 of each heaven, 83  
 of earth, 46 n194  
 name of, 127-128 n60  
 in fourth heaven, 504  
 of earthquake (Suiel), 130  
 of Edom  
 fleeing to Bozrah, 304  
 hair of, same as wool of goat, 307 n275  
 on Jacob's ladder, 277  
 of Egypt, assisting Egyptians in pursuing Israelites, 550  
 of embryos, 218  
 making child look like father, 691 n448  
 erelim  
 over grass, trees, fruits, and grain, 503  
 in third heaven, 503  
 of Esau, 307 n275  
 and angels of Jews, 579-580  
 of face  
 asked by Moses to intercede, 809



angel(s), general (*cont.*)types (*cont.*)of face (*cont.*)

formula of incantation used

by, 14 n50

Metatron as, 503

ordered to destroy world, 12

punishment of magicians by,  
561-562 n53

of fear, in seventh heaven, 505  
n117

of fire, shown to Elijah by God,  
999 n30

of fishes, 83

of four kingdoms, 277

of Gehenna, 83 (*see also*  
Gehenna)

of grace, in seventh heaven, 505  
n117

of Greece, on Jacob's ladder, 277

grigori, 125 (*see also* grigori)

guardian (Ariuk, Mariuk), 126

as companions of soul, 57  
n20

as good and evil inclinations,  
57 n20

hurled from heaven by God,  
712

of individuals, 558 n41

meeting human at time of  
death, 430 n444

of nations 558 n41

judgment on, 922 n54

of Nebuchadnezzar (Kal),  
1104 n104

punished first, before nations,  
558 n41

rationalistic explanation of,  
57 n20

of Sihon and Og, put in  
chains by God, 751

testifying before God, 57  
n20

of Hades, 306 n273

of hail (Yurkami), 1098

ḥashmal, 17 n70 (*see also* ḥash-  
mal)

ḥayyot, 17 n70 (*see also* ḥayyot,  
holy)

of healing (Raphael), 52 (*see also*  
Raphael)

of heaven, name of, 127 n60

of heavenly bodies, 131 n61

of constellations (Rahtiel),  
130

of Jupiter (Zadkiel), 131 n61

of Mars (Sammael), 131 n61

angel(s), general (*cont.*)types (*cont.*)of heavenly bodies (*cont.*)

of moon, 83

in fourth heaven, 504

of Orion, 83

of Pleiades, 83

of solar system (Galgliel),  
130

of stars, 130

in fourth heaven, 504

of sun, 83

in fourth heaven, 504

of Venus (Aniel), 131 n61

of wheel of moon (Ofaniel),  
130

of herbs, 83

of hell (Nasargiel), 505-506

of hills, 83

of horror, 615

of hurricane (Zamiel), 130

of insomnia, keeping Ahasuerus  
awake, 1171 n163

irin ("watchers"), in sixth  
heaven, 504

ishim, in fifth heaven, 504

of Joseph, not able to be  
repulsed by angel of Esau,  
580

of Judah, to be repulsed by angel  
of Esau, 579

of justice, favoring creation of  
man, 51

kadishim ("holy ones"), in sixth  
heaven, 504

of lightning (Barkiel), 130

of locusts, 83

of love

favoring creation of man, 51  
in seventh heaven, 505 n117

of mankind, 97 n132

of Media, on Jacob's ladder, 277

of mercy

attempting to save Balaam  
from destruction, 767 n743

encircling Divine Throne, 2

going to destroy Sodom, 212

in seventh heaven, 505 n117

three divisions of, meeting  
righteous on entering other  
world, 430 n443

ministering, 13-14

with Aaron at time of death,  
741

creation of, on second day, 13

at entrance of Paradise, 18

leaving Holy of Holies when  
high priest enters on Day  
of Atonement, 674

angel(s), general (*cont.*)types (*cont.*)ministering (*cont.*)

purification bath of, 13-14

surrounding Divine Throne  
in seventh heaven, 6

of mountains, 83

of nations, 166 n91, 279 n134,  
445-446

accusing Israel, 2

being terrified, 2

of night, 55, 57 n20, 120 n57,  
130, 197 n98

and conception of human  
being, 55

fighting for Abraham, 195

passing guarding of Israel to  
angels of day, 775

prostrating before Metatron,  
130

ofanim, 33 n139 (*see also*  
ofanim)

ordinary, having six wings, 40  
n155

of Paradise, 83

of peace, 450

opposed to creation of man,  
51

of praise, creation of, on second  
day, 13

of prayer (Michael, Sandalfon),  
53 n13

of quaking, 615

of rain, in second heaven, 503

of rain (Matarel), 120 n57

of rain (Matriel), 130

of reptiles, 83

of Reuben, to be rebuffed by  
angel of Esau, 579

of rivers, 83

ruler of world (Metatron), 21  
n75 (*see also* Metatron)

of Sabbath, 83

of sea, 18

to cast corpses of Egyptians  
out of Red Sea upon land,  
868

of showers (Zafiel), 130

of snow (Shalgriel), 130

of storm, 130

shown to Elijah by God, 999  
n30

of strength (Zeruel), 860 n17

of terror, as strongest and might-  
iest of angels, 614-615

of trees, 83

of trembling, 615



angel(s), general (*cont.*)types (*cont.*)

## of truth

cast down from heaven to  
earth, 51

opposed to creation of man,  
51

of war (Gabriel), 53 n13 (*see also*  
Gabriel)

of water, 83

of whirlwind (Rashiel), 130

of wild beasts, 83

of wind, 130

in second heaven, 503

shown to Elijah by God, 999  
n30

venom from hand of, causing  
death, 58 n20

as weavers of coverings in fifth  
division of Paradise, 20

weeping of, 231 n242 (*see also*  
angel[s], general: tears of)

over Temple and Jerusalem,  
1079, 1080 n32

as wind, 16 n63

wings of, 63 n34

six in number, 40 n155, 84  
n101

12 in number, 127 n60

women of Israel singing before,  
563

and world to come

angels to disappear before cre-  
ation of new world, 885  
n140

worshipping second Adam (i.e.,  
Jesus), 63 n35

*See also* angel(s), fallen; angel(s),  
individual; *and under indi-*  
*vidual names*

angel(s), individual (*see individual*  
*names*)

Abagtha

Af ("anger")

Akraziel

Aniel

Anpiel

Arakiel (fallen angel)

Ariel

Ariuk

Armaros (fallen angel)

Artakifa (archangel)

Aruk

Aruniel

Bardiel

Barkiel

Ben Nez

Bigtha

angel(s), individual (*cont.*)

Biztha

Carcas

Ceruihel

Dobiel

Dothan

Duma

Dumah

Ezekeel (fallen angel)

Gabriel (archangel)

Gadriel (fallen angel)

Galgliel

Gallizur

Gethel

Hadarniel

Hadriel

Harbonah

Haron

Ĥemah

Heman

Israel

Jaol (archangel)

Kafziel

Kal

Kasbiel

Katriel

Kawkabel (fallen angel)

Kazfiel

Kemuel

Kezef

Kokabiel

Labbiel (archangel)

Lahash

Lailah

Leliel

Mariuk

Marut (fallen angel)

Mashhit

Matarel (archangel)

Matriel

Mehuman

Meshabber

Metatron (archangel)

Michael (archangel)

Nasargiel

Nathaniel

Nuriel

Ofaniel

Oniel

Palit

Parukh

Peneme

Phadihel

Phanuel (archangel)

Posiel

Raguil

Rahab

Rahtiel

angel(s), individual (*cont.*)

Ramael

Ramiel (archangel)

Raphael (archangel)

Rashiel

Raziel

Rigyon

Ruĥiel

Salamiel

Samael

Sammael

Samsaweel (fallen angel)

Samuil

Sandalfon (archangel)

Sargiel

Satan

Satarel (archangel)

Semalion

Seriel (fallen angel)

Shalgriel

Shamiel

Shammiel

Shamshiel

Shemḥazai

Suiel

Suriel

Tamiel (archangel)

Uriel (archangel)

Uzza

Venus

Vretil

Yaasriel

Yefefiyah

Yikon

Yofiel

Yurkami

Zadkiel

Zafiel

Zagzagel

Zakiel (archangel)

Zakkiel

Zakun

Zamiel

Zeruel

Zethar

*See also* angel(s), fallen; angel(s),  
general

## angelology

attitude of Synagogue toward, 16  
n62

of Babylonian Talmud, 137 n10

## anger

causing neglect of duty, 574 n110

having bad effect on Moses, 574  
n110

maxim about, communicated by  
Elijah to R. Judah, 1010

Angias. *See* Agnias



Angro-Mainyu. *See* Agrimus

Anibal (younger brother of Asdrubal),  
making war on Latinus,  
420

Aniel (angel)

of heavenly bodies, in charge of  
Venus, 131 n61

animal(s)

acquiring characteristics of, by eat-  
ing, 42 n189

associated with inebriation, 153

becoming less ferocious, 2

clean, 32 n139, 283

number of, 144

suckling male children of

Hebrews, 565 n61

consumption of, as meat

enticing man into, 146 n32

prohibition against, 69

corruption of, before flood, 146  
n32

creation of, on fifth day, 50 n7

cruelty to

Joseph accusing brothers of, 328

in Sodom, 209

devoted to their young, 42 n181

different species of, in dedication

offering, corresponding to

different ranks of leaders of

Israel, 671

domestic, created on sixth day, 82  
n98

dominion of Adam over, 69

dominion of man over, 135 n7

in time of Solomon, 92 n113,

152 n53

evil inclination of, 50 n6

fables and folklore of, 42 n190,

114-115, 115 n49

ape and crocodile, 42 n190

gazelle giving birth on top of

rock, 452

hind having contracted womb,

452

lion and fox, 262 n55

story about language of, 42

n190

traveler and fox in Sodom, 207-

208

wolf speaking to Jacob, 341,

343 n66

fear of first human couple, 69

fear of man of, after flood, 92

n113

female, assigned to Eve, 92

frightened by Behemoth, 2

God teaching us through, 43

animal(s) (*cont.*)

golden, on throne of Solomon

making noises, 969

movements of, 969

horns of, received prior to hooves,

87, 88 n108

and human language

animals speaking, 45 n194

Arabic influence, 343 n66

in Christian legends, 45-46

n194

animals' understanding of, 69

immorality of, in time of Noah,

144

immortality of, 39 n150, 72, 517

n144

language of, 70 n58

Arabic legend about, 957 n34

Elijah understanding, 1004

Islamic legends about Solomon's

knowledge of, 958 n34

Solomon's knowledge of, 957

n34

Solomon's story of guest want-

ing to learn, 953-954

magic, 548 n3

male, assigned to Adam, 92

moral qualities of, 43-44

and Noah

found worthy to enter ark, 146

n32

immorality of, in time of Noah,

144

not having good inclination, 49 n6

noticing presence of Elijah, 1006

n61

participating in erection of

Tabernacle, 655 n363

perceiving angels, 766

power over, lost by Adam, regained

by Solomon, 961 n38

propagation of, 42 n190

refusal of, to serve impious mas-

ters, 305 n270

resurrection of, 232 n246, 248

n317

reviving of, by Abraham, 198, 200

n113

reward and punishment of, 128

n60

righteous people concerned about

welfare of, 733 n606

ritual slaughtering of

rules for, observed by brothers of

Joseph, 328 (*see also* ani-

mal[s]: as sacrifices)

rule of, over celestial spheres, 71

animal(s) (*cont.*)

as sacrifices (*see also* animal[s]: rit-  
ual slaughtering of)

by Abraham, 198

by Noah, 150-151

to be bound at time of slaughter,

128 n60

Samael searching for Moses

among, 836

serving man, 43

spirit God to shed over, in time to

come, 642 n328

spontaneous generation of, 42

n190

subservient to Solomon, 962

superiority of, over man, 45 n192

tame, 2

before the fall, 79 n87

to be again in Messianic times,

79 n87 (*see also* Messianic

time[s])

unclean, 146 n33

number of, 144

swine as, 283

urine and excrement of, 41 n174

whining when angel of death is

near, 1006 n61

wild, 2

created on sixth day, 82 n98

fearing and obeying saints, 92

n113

as fourth plague, 529-530

in wilderness, 550

*See also under individual animals*

annihilation, decree of. *See under*

Ahasuerus

Ano

bearing Abijah to Jeroboam, 982

n2

anointing

description of ceremony of, 658

n371

of kings (Saul, David, Solomon,

Joash, Jehoahaz), 893 n30

of Messiah, 1022 n112

of priests

Aaron and sons, 893 n30

Zadok, 893 n30

*See also* oil

Anokhi

explanations of, 604 n209

as first word of God on Sinai, 602-

603

in revelation to patriarchs, 604

n209

Anoko

identified with poet-philosopher

Ibicus, 180 n45

wise man advising Nimrod, 179



Anpiel (angel)  
 guiding Enoch, 129  
 antediluvian generations. *See* generation(s): before flood  
 anthropomorphic expressions, 151 n50  
 anthropomorphism  
 of prophets, 1096 n76  
 anti-Christ  
 and Elijah, 131 n61  
 in Christian legend, 1022 n113  
 and Enoch, 131 n61  
 to be from tribe of Dan, according to Christian legend, 580 n141  
 anti-Christian ideas, 7 n15  
 in Balaam's prophecy about man born of woman, 777 n781  
 Esau's rejection of circumcision, 254-255 n24  
 flood disturbing Adam's remains, 149 n44  
 four men not having share in world to come are Jesus and some of apostles, 908 n100  
 God appearing in pillar of cloud to three prophets only, 612 n242  
 identification of spirit of God with spirit of Messiah, 56 n17  
 liturgical formula would mislead people into thinking there are three Gods, 998 n18  
 man created in image of angels, 50 n6  
 Melchizedek deposed from priesthood, 197 n104  
 Messiah will not be anointed in time to come, 658 n371  
 negative view of Bible in Greek, 633, 635 n308  
 not praying with raised hands longer than three hours, 583 n145  
 Pauline Christianity was responsible for destruction of Second Temple, 1074 n24  
 raising and lowering arms as symbol of cross, 583 n145  
 Rome claiming relationship with Israel, 649 n350  
 Shem-Melchizedek born with sign of Abrahamic covenant, 197 n102  
 unusual birth and precociousness of Ben Sira, 1084 n42  
*See also* Christian ideas; Christian legends; Christian polemics

anti-Jewish ideas  
 Paul in Galatians 3:17, 616 n248  
 Antiochus IV Epiphanes  
 John Hyrcanus fighting against, 942  
 Antoninus (emperor)  
 discovering one of places where Joseph hid valuables, 397  
 one of ten rulers who became proselytes, 1093 n66  
 ants  
 story of Solomon and, 972  
 teaching regard for property of others, 43  
 anus  
 one of ten orifices of man, 960  
 ape  
 associated with wine, 153, 155 n58  
 and crocodile, fable of, 42 n190  
 apocryphal-pseudepigraphic literature. *See* pseudepigraphic literature  
 apple  
 as forbidden fruit of Paradise, 73-74 n70 (*see also* fruit[s]: forbidden)  
 apple tree  
 symbolic of Israel, 1175  
 willing to serve as cross for Haman, 1175  
*See also* tree(s)  
 Aquarius (Water-bearer) (sign of Zodiac)  
 answering Haman in defense of Israel, 1151  
 Aquila  
 translating *shaddai* as "ikanos," 11 n43  
 Arab(s)  
 angels appearing as, 204, 206 n136  
 conquered by Sennacherib, 1051 n65  
 Elijah appearing as, 1001  
 identified with Ishmaelites, 206 n136  
 Arabian Nights  
 and story of R. H̄anina, 115 n49  
 Arabic custom  
 separation of young animals from mothers, 1035 n35  
 Arabic ideas  
 different religions among genii, 975 n84  
 Elijah identified with Khadir, 996 n3  
 Arabic influence  
 on idea of Queen of Sheba as female demon, 458 n20

Arabic influence (*cont.*)  
 on legends about Job, 463 n39  
 legends with talking animals, 343 n66  
 on story about fox Hedor, 210 n155  
 on title "servant of God," 452 n2  
 version of legend of Moses as child, 484 n65  
 Arabic language  
 God proclaiming Torah in, 820  
 (*see also* Aramaic language; Hebrew language; Roman language)  
 Arabic legend  
 about David condemning man to death on false testimony, 929 n78  
 about Elijah appearing to Calif Al-Mutadhid in dream, 1013 n93  
 about Elijah appearing to Sultan Sulaiman I in dream, 1013 n93  
 about Hiram of Tyre, 1105 n105  
 about Khadhir, dependent on Elijah legends, 1016 n94  
 about "Land of the Blessed," 1089 n57  
 about languages of animals, 957 n34  
 about marriage of Solomon and Queen of Sheba, 1073 n21  
 about Nebuchadnezzar and Joseph, 1084 n42  
 about Queen of Sheba, 961 n40, 965 n55  
 about Solomon's magic carpet, 973 n77  
 about statues in magnificent building, 973 n79  
 Arabot  
 as seventh portal, 68-69  
 Arad  
 another name for Sihon, 752 n669  
 (*see also* Kenaani)  
 true name of Sihon, 751  
 victory over, taking place in month of Av, 752 n669  
 Arakiel (fallen angel)  
 teaching men signs of earth, 119  
 Aram (place)  
 Laban, king of, slain by Jacob, 314  
 made habitable by kinsman of Abraham, 243  
 Aram (son of Kemuel)  
 building city called Aram-naharaim, 243



- Aram (son of Shem), 346 n79
- Aram (son of Zoba)  
building city called Aram-Zoba, 243
- Aramaic language  
God proclaiming Torah in, 820  
(see also Arabic language; Hebrew language; Roman language)
- laments of Moses and people over Temple in, 1081 n37
- not understood by angels, 612 n242
- older than Hebrew, 166 n91
- prophets receiving divine communications in, 612 n242
- Arameans  
defeated by Joash as reward for king's refusal to listen to accusations against Amos by Amaziah, 1031 n22
- invading Palestine on day of burial of Elisha, 1030
- and Jacob, covenant between, 293
- knowledge of curative properties of grains and seeds, 157
- Arami ("the deceiver")  
another name for Laban, 283
- Aram-naharaim (city)  
built by Aram (son of Kemuel), 243
- identified with Petor, 243
- Aram-Zoba (city)  
built by Aram (son of Zoba), 243
- Ararat, 151 n48 (see also ark [Noah's]; Noah; and ark)
- Arauna. *See* Achuzan
- Arauna the Jebusite, 128 n60
- descendants of, as "house of Nebalata," 1121 n32
- original possessor of site of Temple, 967 n57
- skull of  
found at time of Hezekiah, 1121 n32
- found during rebuilding of Temple, 1120
- Arbat (second wife of Benjamin), 348
- Arbel  
conquered by sons of Jacob, 315
- archangel(s). *See* angel(s), general: types, archangels; angel(s), individual; and *under names of individual angels*
- Archer (sign of Zodiac). *See* Sagittarius
- Archonites  
heresies of, 102 n3
- Ard (son of Benjamin)  
name, meaning of, 380
- Aridah (wife of Issachar, daughter of Jobab), 348
- Ariel (angel)  
of heavenly bodies, in charge of Venus, 131 n61
- Aries (Ram) (sign of Zodiac)  
answering Haman in defense of Israel, 1151
- Arioch (king of Ellasar)  
Chedorlaomer forming alliance with, 194
- Nebuzaradan known as, 1086 n46
- Aristeas  
oldest source to identify Job with Jobab, 456 n14
- Aristotle  
drawing all knowledge from Solomon's books of wisdom, 955 n18
- legend of evil disposition of, 484 n68
- receiving wisdom from Jeremiah and other Jewish sages, 159 n75
- Ariuk (guardian angel), 126
- ark, holy. *See* ark (of covenant)
- ark (of Bezalel). *See* ark (of covenant)
- ark (of covenant)  
accompanying Israel to camps, 891-892, 893 n31
- brought into prayer meeting in Shushan, 1160
- captured by Goliath, 898
- Philistines, 891-892
- carried by angel to mount whence Moses viewed Holy Land, 1091
- carried in desert for 40 years, 429
- with cherubim, 642-644
- circumcised males bowing before, 960
- coming to Babylon with Jehoiachin, 1063 n134
- consisting of three caskets (gold, wooden, gold), 643
- constructed by Bezalel, used also in Solomon's Temple, 643
- containing tablets of Ten Commandments, Ineffable Name, and all other epithets of God, 643
- covering of, with sackcloth, 1161 n123
- crossing Jordan River by itself, 843
- moving by itself, 844-845 n14
- ark (of covenant) (*cont.*)  
description of, 643-644
- first thing constructed by Bezalel, 642
- hidden by Josiah, 1062 n118
- hidden under woodhouse when Temple destroyed, 643
- identified with angel of Lord, 684 n435
- identified with promised angel, 644 n330
- illuminated by precious stone, 147
- as image of Divine Throne, 643
- Levites walking backwards while carrying, 684 n435
- measurements of, 968 n65
- Moses copying Torah scroll for, on last day of life, 812
- not to be transported on wagon, 665
- one of five sacred objects concealed by God at destruction of Temple, 645
- one of five things in First Temple only, 1123-1124 n36
- only element of sanctuary whose measure given in fractions, 644 n330
- pattern of fire for, coming down from heaven to Moses, 645 n338
- placed in center of Holy of Holies, 7, 11 n39
- as receptacle for tablets, Torah scroll, and presents offered by Philistines, 644 n331
- resanctification of, after capture by Philistines, 894 n34
- scholar compared to, 644 n330
- spread over with blue cloth, 643
- staves of, stretched when Solomon set them in Holy of Holies, 644, 646
- taken into battle against Philistines, 893 n31
- by Phinehas, 794
- taking place of high priest's plate, 798 n861
- to be carried on shoulders of priests, 786, 923
- ark (of Moses). *See under* Moses: birth of
- ark (of Noah)  
built from wood of gopher tree, 142
- construction of, 140 n19, 142 n21
- four stories of, 142 n21
- inmates of, 143-47



- ark (of Noah) (*cont.*)  
 measure of, 142-143 n21  
 plank from, worshiped by Sennacherib, 1046  
 plan of, 142 n21  
 sexual abstinence on, 151
- ark (of tablets)  
 second ark, containing tablets, 643
- Arka (fifth earth), 6
- Arka (third earth), Cain in, 110
- Arkites  
 land provisionally granted to, 157
- Armaros (fallen angel)  
 teaching men about spells, 119
- Armenians  
 war of Israelites against, 850-851
- armies. *See* war/warfare
- armor  
 worn by Jashub, king of Tappuah, 314  
*See also* war/warfare; weapon(s)
- arms  
 raising and lowering, significance of, 581, 583 n145
- Arnon  
 Israelites at, 749-750  
 valley of, God's favor shown to Israelites in, 749
- Arpachshad  
 Abraham and posterity descended from, 1132
- arrogance  
 accusations of, against Jews, 51 n8  
 leprosy as punishment for, 1042 n30  
 one of eight sins committed by Pharaoh, inhabitants of sinful cities, builders of Tower of Babel, Sennacherib, and Nebuchadnezzar, 562 n54  
 one of seven tempter spirits, 435  
 punished by death by fire, 1048 n60
- arrows  
 divination by, 1073 n24  
 shot toward heaven from Tower of Babel, 164, 165 n88  
 used by Pharaoh against Israelites, 558-559
- Artakifa (archangel), 120 n57
- Artaxerxes I  
 decree of, concerning Jews, 1179 n192  
 identified with Cyrus, 1131 n4  
 medical knowledge revived in time of, 157-158
- Artaxerxes I (*cont.*)  
 as name of all Persian kings, 1131 n4
- Arukh (angel)  
 guarding books, 117 n53
- Arum (plant)  
 legend concerning, 842 n6
- Aruniel (angel), 874 n105
- Aruzan. *See* Achuzan
- Arvadites  
 land provisionally granted to, 157
- Asa, 985-986  
 afflicted with gout as punishment, 985  
 conquering Zerah, king of Ethiopians, 985  
 doing away with worship of Priapus, 985  
 having little confidence in God, 985  
 idolatry of grandmother of, 986 n18  
 idolatry of mother of, 986 n18  
 making scholars engage in war, 985, 986 n22  
 marriage of, to daughter of prophet Hanani, 988 n28  
 prayer of, for God's help in war, 986 n21  
 regaining possession of Solomon's throne, 985  
 son of Abijah of Judah, as worthy and pious ruler, 985  
 suffering difficulty in walking on account of David's curse of Joab, 946
- Asaf book, 159 n74, 159 n75
- Asahel  
 attacking Abner, 905  
 pierced by Abner's spear, 58  
 as swift runner, 58, 905
- Asaph ben Berechiah  
 author of medical books, 973 n77  
 carrying out orders of Solomon, 971  
 composer of psalms, 823  
 relationship of, to Korah, 728 n590  
 and study of medicine, 158  
 Tohu identified with, 888 n1
- Asdrubal (son of Agnias)  
 death of, in battle, 420  
 war of  
 against Latinus, 420  
 against Zepho, 419
- Asenath, 423-424  
 abandoned under thornbush as baby, 348, 368
- Asenath (*cont.*)  
 amulet of, 349 n97  
 engraved by Jacob with story of her parentage and birth, 368  
 and angels  
 angel appearing to A., 424  
 A. carried by angel to Egypt, 348  
 A. transformed by angel, 425  
 bearing two sons, 368  
 blessed by  
 angel, 424  
 Jacob, 425  
 Joseph, 424  
 compared with Sarah, Rebekah, and Rachel, 423  
 daughter of  
 Dinah and Hamor, 368  
 Dinah and Shechem, 348  
 and right to city of Shechem, 405  
 Potiphar, adopted, 348, 351 n101, 355 n108, 423  
 description of, 423  
 and Jacob  
 A. as J.'s nurse in Egypt, 402  
 A. mourning for J., 412  
 A. visiting J., 425  
 and Joseph  
 A. as infant, defending J., 368  
 A. as wife of J., 368  
 A. blessed by J., 424  
 A. meeting J., 423-424  
 A. moved by beauty of J., 423  
 legend of, 347-348, 349 n97  
 bees bringing honey of Paradise to A., 427 n432  
 name of  
 changed to City of Refuge, 425  
 meaning of, 427 n432  
 meaning of letters of, 368  
 prayer of, 427 n432
- Ashbel (son of Benjamin)  
 descendants of, God-fearing, 434  
 name, meaning of, 380
- Asher (second son of Zilpah), 286  
 blessing of, by Jacob, 408  
 death of, 449  
 age at, 125 years, 448  
 last words of A., 448-449  
 excommunicated by brothers, 318, 393 n293  
 grandsons of, names of, 434  
 imparting mark of true redeemer of Israel to Serah, 516  
 marriage of  
 to Adon, daughter of Ephlal, 348



Asher (*cont.*)

- marriage of (*cont.*)
  - to Hadorah, daughter of Abimael, grandson of Shem, 348
- name, meaning of ("praise"), 286, 433
- one of weak among sons of Jacob, 396 n324
- tribe of
  - beauty of women of, 408
  - blessed by Moses, 823
  - blessed with land rich in olives, 823
  - blessed with many sons, 823
  - chrysolite as stone of, 652, 856
  - confessing that they hid seven golden idols called holy nymphs by Amorites, 856
  - daughters of, keeping beauty into old age, 823
  - distinguished by beauty of women, 680
  - elders from (Pashhur, Shelomi, Samuel, Shalom, Shecaniah, Abihu), 696
  - flag of, fire red with picture of olive tree, 688
  - prince of (Pagiel), 680
  - providing nourishment for Israel, 823
  - significance of dedication offering of, 670
  - spy representing (Sethur), 705

## Ashera

- as moon, 874 n105

## Ashi, R.

- compiler of Babylonian Talmud, 1055, 1128 n56

## Ashkenazic ritual

- Day of Rejoicing of Law in, 481 n57

## Ashmedai (Asmodeus), 973-975

- devil par excellence, offspring of Naamah and Shamdan, 114 n45, 136
- and family, as "Jewish demons," 975 n84
- going daily to heavenly academy for discussions, 973
- invisibility of, on earth, 973 (*see also* invisibility)
- king of demons, 925, 950
- legend of, in Talmud, 965 n56
- mountain abode of, 973
- name, Aramaic origin of, 975 n83
- and Solomon
  - A. before S., 974

Ashmedai (*cont.*)and Solomon (*cont.*)

- A. bringing case of two-headed Cainite before S., 950-951
- A. giving S. book, 977 n93
- A. passing self off as S., 974
- A. telling S. secret of shamir, 974
- strangling little children with Lilith, 114 n45
- thought to be raging through capital of Amalekites, 926
- as unclean spirit, 963
- well of, 973
  - filled with wine by Benaiah, 973-974
- See also* angel(s), fallen; demon(s); devil(s)

## Ashur

- one of seven men refusing to worship Baal, 872-873

## Ashweroth (son of Anam)

- king of Egypt, 192

Asmodeus (devil). *See* Ashmedai

## ass

- Balaam's, 765-768
  - created on sixth day of creation, 766
  - dying when finished speaking, 767
  - as female, 766-767
  - gift from Jacob, 766
  - God opening mouth of, 766
  - mouth of, created in twilight between sixth day and first Sabbath, 767 n739 (*see also* under creation: sixth day)
  - perceiving angel, 766
  - reason for death of, 767
  - speaking, 766
    - in Hebrew language, 766
    - rationalist and allegorical explanations of, 768 n745
- bearing Abraham to Akedah, 515
- jawbone of, as weapon of Samson, 878, 880 n119
- bearing Messiah at end of days, same as ass bearing Moses back to Egypt, 515
- bearing Moses back to Egypt, same as ass bearing Abraham to Akedah, 515
- Egyptians compared to, 528 n175
- as immortal, 517 n144
- worshiped by Avvites, 1044
- See also* donkey

## Asshur

- as ancestor of Ninevites, 1032 n27

## Assyria

- conquering northern kingdom and taking tribes into exile, 1044

## Assyria-Babylon

- one of four kingdoms, 196 n82 (*see also* four kingdoms)

## Assyrian characters

- reintroduced by Ezra, 1124 n44
- square characters used by Moses in writing Torah, 1124 n44
- Torah rewritten in, after exile, 1119

## Assyrian language

- used by Semites, 158 n72

## Assyrians

- bodies burned but not garments, 1047 n59
- as descendants of Shem, 154
- destroyed by Michael, 1047 n55
- destroyed by Ramael, 1047 n55
- manner of destruction of, 1047 n58
- souls burned and garments intact, 1046

## Asteho (concubine of Potiphar), 353

## astrolabe of Joseph, 380

## astrologers

- not seeing clearly in visions, 478-479, 479 n46
- and Pharaoh
  - telling P. day on which redeemer of Israel would be born, 471 n21
  - telling P. that threat had been averted, 478
- predicting that Potiphar's wife would have descendants through Joseph, 352

## astrology

- Abraham commanded not to rely on, 198, 199 n108
- coming from fallen angels, 121 n57
- Egyptians as masters of, 955 n24
- healing powers of, 157
- history of, 26 n100
- misleading Ahitophel, 922
- signs of Zodiac defending Israel, 1151
- taught to Egyptians by Abraham, 190
- taught to men by Kawkabel, 119
- used by Abimelech, 262 n56
- See also* astronomy; constellations; Zodiac, signs of; and under individual signs of Zodiac



## astronomy

- calendar and, 410 n391
- Enoch as father of, 123 n59
- before flood, 116 n53
- knowledge of, passed on from first ten generations, 102 n1
- taught to Egyptians by Abraham, 190
- See also* astrology; constellations; Zodiac, signs of; *and under individual signs of Zodiac*

## Asui

- describing Esau, born fully developed, 253

## asylum

- for criminals in sanctuary at Jerusalem, 947 n8

## Ataroth (city)

- name, meaning of ("garlanded with fruits"), 799

## Athaliah (queen)

- one of eight rulers of Davidic dynasty to die violent death, 933 n107
- one of two reigning queens in Jewish history, 990 (*see also* Jezebel)
- succeeding Ahaziah, 1037

## atonement

- after destruction of Temple, 200 n111
- loving-kindness and, 200 n111
- sacrifice of, at dedication of Temple, kid as, 340
- sin offering of, on 10 Tishri, 341
- Temple service and, 1, 200 n111

## Atro (firstborn son of Pharaoh), 498

Atzarta. *See* Pentecost

## Aud

- Midianite priest using witchcraft to seduce Israel, 871

## augury

- from clouds, taught to men by Ezekeel, 119
- See also* divination; lots; magic arts; sorcery; Urim and Thummim; witchcraft

## Augustiani

- advising Nebuchadnezzar (i.e., Titus) to destroy Jews, 1087 n52

## autumn

- color blue corresponding to, 971

## autumnal equinox

- and great bird Ziz flapping his wings, 2
- time when Abraham stretched out hand to slay Isaac, 877 n109

## Av (month)

- 7th of
  - Temple captured on, 1077 n29
- 8th of
  - Israelites preparing graves for punishment, 715
- 9th of
  - birth date of Jeremiah, 1070 n11
  - demons exercising power from 17 Tammuz to, 660
  - fire set to Temple, 1077 n29
  - Israelites lamenting in wilderness without cause, 712
  - Israelites punished by death, 715
  - Temple to be destroyed on, 712
- 10th of
  - mountains beginning to appear after flood, 148
  - Temple burning down completely, 1077 n29
- 15th of
  - Benjaminites readmitted to Israel, 884 n135
  - festival of bringing sacrifices to Temple, 985 n17
  - holy day to commemorate relief from punishment for rebellion, 715
  - origin of festival of, 715 n547
- 28th of
  - Moses remaining in heaven from 18 Tammuz to, 628
- 29th of
  - Moses remaining in heaven from, to 10 Tishri, 629 n286
- victory over Arad taking place in, 752 n669, 1151
- See also* date

## avarice

- sin of Elimelech, 864 n40

## Av Bet Din (Saul's son Jonathan), 907

## Avesta

- sacred cock of, 32-33 n139

## avodah zarah

- meaning of ("unusual work") or ("service of strange gods"), 881

## Avvites

- worshiping dog and ass, 1044

## ayin (letter)

- creation of world through, 4
- first letter of
  - anavah* ("humility"), 4
  - ervah* ("immorality"), 4
- numerical value of (70), standing for 70 elders, 253

ayin (letter) (*cont.*)

- second letter in name of Jacob, 253
- on standard of tribe of Reuben, 686
- in Zaphenath-paneah, standing for *arum* ("clever"), 368
- See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet

## Azariah

- fiery furnace and, 527
- high priest, identified with Azariah, "chief priest," 1042 n29
- among members of Great Synagogue, 1127 n56
- one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)
- one of six pious men endowed with spiritual gifts descended from Ruth, 866 n61 (*see also* under pious: men)
- riddle of Queen of Sheba about, 960
- trying to restrain Uzziah from offering sacrifices, 1040
- See also* Hananiah: and Mishaël and Azariah

## Azazel (fallen angel), 118 n56

- asking to dwell among men, 135-136
- descending to earth, 138 n10
- devising ornaments for women, 136
- having 12 wings, 95 n131
- identified with Hemah, 505 n117
- identified with Satan, 200 n114 (*see also* Satan)
- punishment of, 135
- like serpent in appearance, 95 n131
- and smoking furnace, 200 n114
- succumbing to Naamah (daughter of Cainite Lamech), 138 n10
- teaching how to make weapons, 119
- teaching makeup and ornamentation, 119
- to be judged by Messiah, 306 n275
- See also* Azzazel

## Azazel (scapegoat), 137-138 n10

- to bear sins of Israel, 136

## Azriel

- one of five scribes going with Ezra, 1122, 1122 n50

Azkariel. *See* Akraziel



Azrial  
 theophorous name, 113 n42  
 Azrikam  
 firstborn of Azael, identified with Doeg, 908 n98  
 Azurah (daughter of Adam), 113 n42  
 azure. *See under* color(s)  
 Azza (fallen angel)  
 and Azzael  
   chained in secret place, 962  
   having intercourse with daughters of earth, 831-832  
   revealing heavenly secrets to Solomon, 962  
   with Azzazel and Balaam, trying to force Israel back to Egypt, 761 n723  
 Azzazel (fallen angel)  
   with Azza and Balaam, trying to force Israel back to Egypt, 761 n723  
   identified with Af, 505 n117  
   identified with Azazel, 118 n56  
   opposition of, to creation of man, 137 n10  
   teaching magic arts, 117  
*See also* Azazel

## B

Baal  
 and God  
   conflict between, on Mount Carmel, 994  
   golden image worshiped by Jews, 1072 n16  
   human sacrifices offered to, 877 n109  
   idol in Priapean form, 874 n102  
   as sun, 874 n105  
   worship of, 995  
 Baal Hamon  
   successor of Saul as king of Edomites, 420  
 Baal-peor  
   site of Israel's misfortune, 770  
 Baal-Zebub  
   Ahaziah sending inquiry to, 1031 n22  
 Baal-zephon (god of Pharaoh), 532  
 Baaras (plant)  
   name, explanation of, in Josephus, 289 n189  
   *See also* mandrakes  
 Baasha (king of Ten Tribes), 397  
   attacking Asa of Judah, 985  
   killing Shemaiah, 1078 n30  
 Baasha (*cont.*)  
   wicked king of Israel, 982 n5  
 Babel, Tower of. *See* Tower of Babel  
 babies, speaking. *See* infants  
 Babylon  
   angel of, on Jacob's ladder, 277  
   destroyed by Persians shortly before death of Ezra, 1123  
   destruction of, 1126 n54  
   dominion of, symbolized by heifer of three years, 198  
   identified with Rome, 948 n11, 1100 n90, 1106 n106  
   journey of Jeremiah to, 1081-1085  
   as kingdom of lion, conquered by Daniel of tribe of Judah, 409  
   myth about founding of, resembling story of founding of Rome, 948-949 n11  
   name associated in Bible with Tower of Babel, 165 n88  
   soil of, as material for Adam's trunk, 54 n15  
 Babylonian captivity. *See* Babylonian exile  
 Babylonian customs  
   praying Amidah in low voice, 889 n11  
 Babylonian exile  
   captives marching to Euphrates River without stopping, 1085  
   duration of  
     52 years, 1073 n24  
     70 years, 1073 n24  
   800 species of clean animals leaving Holy Land in, 1073 n24  
   evil treatment of Jeremiah as cause of, 1072 n16  
   journey of exiles in, 318  
   one of things God repented of creating, 141 n20  
   700 species of clean fish leaving Holy Land in, 1073 n24  
   sins as cause of, 1072 n16  
   suffering of Israel in, 511 n127  
   transportation of captives in, 1085-1087  
 Babylonian Haggadah. *See* Haggadah  
 Babylonian ideas  
   division of cosmos into heaven, earth, and water, 53 n13  
   God revealing all future generations to Adam, 61 n27  
   Lilith as wind spirit, 67 n40  
   man as microcosm, 49 n4  
 Babylonian ideas (*cont.*)  
   stream of life, 70 n51  
 Babylonian myths, 31 n127  
   of Apsu and Tiamat, 149 n39  
   of creation, 30 n123  
   about founding of Babylon, 948-949 n11  
   Nergal in, 53 n13  
   of Tiamat and Kingu, 30 n118  
 Babylonian Rome, 948 n11  
 Babylonians  
   assisted by God in destruction of Temple, 1077 n29  
   campaign of, against Jerusalem, lasting three years, 1074  
   licentiousness of, 1085 n45  
   ordered not to attack married women in Jerusalem, 1085 n45  
   taking Jehoiachin, nobility, and scholars into exile, 1061  
   worshipping hen, 1044  
 badger  
   skin of, one of 13 materials for construction of Tabernacle, 640 (*see also under* Tabernacle)  
 baker, chief. *See* Potiphar: chief baker of  
 Bakkol (daughter of Abraham), 238 n273  
   name, meaning of ("with all things"), 238 n273  
 Balaam (son of Beor)  
   adept in magic, 417  
   advising loosing lions on Moses and Aaron, 518  
   as alias for Jesus, 761 n722, 796 n855  
   and angels  
     angel in throat preventing B.'s speech, 771  
   B. perceiving angel with sword in hand, 768  
   B. trying to force Israel back to Egypt with fallen angels Azza and Azzazel, 761 n723  
   conversation between, 768-769  
   asked by nations about bringing sacrifices, 771 n759  
   ass of, 765-768 (*see also* Balaam: she-ass of)  
     B. said to have committed sodomy with ass, 768 n747  
     B.'s rage at ass, 766, 768 n745  
   and Balak, 762-775 (*see also* Balak)  
   Balaam accepting Balak's invitation, 764-765



Balaam (*cont.*)and Balak (*cont.*)

Balaam instructing Balak to erect seven altars, 770, 771

Balaam recounting history of Israel to Balak, 772-773

Balaam treated badly by Balak, 770

Balak greater soothsayer and magician than Balaam, 762

Balak's messengers to Balaam, 762-764

God compelling Balaam to return to Balak, 774

superiority of Balaam's magic to that of Balak, 770

## and Beor

cursing Moab for Amorites, 758

blessing of  
heard by all inhabitants of earth, 776

that houses of teaching and prayer would always be in Israel, 776

turned to curses, 776

blind in one eye, 763

bones of

snakes arising from B.'s rotting bones, 796

causing defeat of Moab, 759 n714

compared with Moses, 760, 771

corpse of, not buried, 796

counseling Moabites to seduce Israelites to unchastity, 778

cruelty of, 760-761

curse(s) of, 214

B. eager to curse Israel, 766, 767 n742

B. knowing how to curse at moment of God's anger, 770

bringing about defeat of

Moabites by Sihon, 760

turned to blessings, 776-777

death of

at age 33 years, 761 n722

B. executed with four forms of execution (hanging, burning under gallows, decapitation, dropping into fire), 795

B. killed by Joshua, 796 n855

B. killed by Phinehas, 796 n855

B. killed with sword on which serpent engraved on both sides, 796

B. sentenced to death by Sanhedrin, 796 n853

Balaam (*cont.*)death of (*cont.*)

B. to find death through sword, 768

gruesome end of, 795-797

resembling death of Jesus, 796 n855

violence of, 773

destruction of, 768-769

driven from Africa to Kittim by defeat, 419

and Edom

B. as first king of Edomites, 324

B. called Bela as ruler of Edom, 324

Elihu identified with, 460 n32, 462 n33

and five kings of Midianites flying, 794-795

fleeing to Kikanos, king of Ethiopia, 485

flying, by means of Name, 795, 796 n853

and God

B. exalted by God, then humbled, 769

B. forbidden by God from cursing Israel, 764

B. misled by God, 765

B. put to test by God, 763

God appearing to B. at night, 763, 765

hope of, disappointed, 774-776

inciting Amalek against Israel, 761 n723

as interpreter of dreams, 760, 777 n784

and Israel

B. blessing Israel in loud voice, 776

B. envious of Israel, 762 n725, 763 n730, 764, 819

B. extolling Israel, 772-774

B. trying to escape Israel's power by sorcery, 759

B. trying to force Israel back to Egypt with fallen angels Azza and Azzazel, 761 n723

B. wishing to curse Israel, 768-769

Israel regretting having slain B., 795 n850

and Job and four friends

as descendants of Nahor, 761, 762 n727

and Kemuel

B. belonging to family of K., 761 n722

Balaam (*cont.*)and Kemuel (*cont.*)

K. identified with B., 244 n315

and Laban

B. as L.'s grandson, 761 n722

B. as L.'s nephew, 761 n722

B. identified with Laban, 761 n722, 767 n739, 767 n744

relation between, 295 n229

lame in one foot, 763

magic of

keeping Israelites from leaving Egypt, 761 n723

and Moses

B. not inferior to M., 761

name, meaning of ("devourer of nations"), 760

observing Danites from top of Peor, 776 n776

one of five to give expected answer to God's questions, 1102 n94

one of four men not to have share in world to come, 908 n100

one of two great sages of world who lost this world and world to come, 798 (*see also* Ahithophel)

and Onkelos

B. advising O. not to adopt Jewish religion, 796-797 n856

O. speaking with B. by means of necromancy, 796 n856

orations of, haggadic interpretations of, 773 n764

and Pharaoh

B. advising enslavement of Israel in Egypt, 468 n6

B. advising P. to force Israelites to make bricks, 766

B. as one of three advisors of P., 420, 471 n21, 497 (*see also* Jethro; Job)

B. interpreting dream of P., 470

B. recalling oracle to P., 482-483

B. recounting history of Hebrews to P., 482

prophecies of

B. announcing events at end of days, 776

B. announcing events of David's reign, 776

committed to writing by Moses, 777 n784

concerning battle between Zepho and Egyptians, 419



Balaam (*cont.*)  
 prophecies of (*cont.*)  
   concerning battle between Zepho and Joseph, 417  
   that Balak would wear royal crown, 760  
   that Israel would destroy Egypt, 470  
 as prophet, 760  
   B. boasting of gift of prophecy, 769  
   as greatest prophet among heathens, 761  
   as last prophet among nations, 761, 769-770, 776  
   as only prophet Gentiles ever produced, 760-762, 762 n727  
 prophetic spirit of, 776  
   leaving B., 771  
 punishment of, being boiled in scalding *semen virile*, 796 n856  
 sacrifice of, rejected by God, 770-772  
 she-ass of, created in twilight between sixth day and Sabbath, 78 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)  
 and sons  
   B. taking Jannes and Jambres on journey, 766  
   contest of, with Moses and Aaron, 519-520  
   escaping to Egypt, 491  
   left to guard capital of Ethiopia, 489  
   taking over Ethiopia, 489  
 as sorcerer, 243, 760  
   B. trying to escape Israel's power by sorcery, 759  
 three bad traits of (jealous eye, haughty spirit, greedy soul), 764, 765 n734  
   contrasted with Abraham's three good traits, 765 n734  
 uncircumcised, 768  
 voice of  
   powerful, carrying 60 miles, 777 n781  
 wall of, identical to that erected by Jacob and Laban, 767 n744  
 wicked counsel of, 778-779  
 wisdom of, 419-420  
 and world to come (*see also under* world to come)  
   B. losing share in future world, 773, 774 n771, 908 n100

Balaam (*cont.*)  
 and Zepho  
   B. as one of shieldbearers in army of Z., 417  
   B. escaping to Egypt after death of Z., 420  
   B. welcomed by Z. because of wisdom, 419  
 Baladan  
   father's face changed into that of dog, 1050  
   ruler of Babylon, sending embassy to Hezekiah, 1050  
 Balak  
   also known as son of Zipper, 759  
   and Balaam (*see also* Balaam: and Balak)  
   Balak as greater soothsayer and magician than Balaam, 762  
   Balak asking Balaam to curse Israel, 762-764  
   Balak taking Balaam to top of Peor, 775  
   messengers of Balak to Balaam, 762-764  
   as grandson of Jethro, 759 n718  
   ignorant of God's command not to wage war against Moab, 759 n717  
   king of Moab, 758-760  
   formerly vassal of Sihon, 759  
   as magician, 759, 762, 770, 771 n757  
   instrument of sorcery of, bird constructed of precious metals, 759  
   name, meaning of, 760 n719  
   reward of  
     Ruth (great-great-great-granddaughter) becoming mother of Davidic dynasty, 864 n39  
   as soothsayer, 762, 770  
   as sorcerer, 760 n720, 774  
   vassal of Sihon, known as Zur, 759  
 Balance (sign of Zodiac). *See* Libra  
 balsam  
   one of rivers in Paradise, 507  
   root, as gift from Queen of Sheba to Solomon, 962 n47  
   some kings anointed with, 658 n371  
 Bamot-baal  
   another name for Peor, 776 n775  
 ban  
   not valid unless decreed in presence of ten persons, 342

ban (*cont.*)  
   pronounced by sons of Jacob on any who would betray truth of what happened to Joseph, 342  
 baptism  
   imposed on Israelites two days before revelation on Sinai, 598  
 Barak  
   called Lappidoth ("flames"), 867  
   as Deborah's son, 870 n73  
   husband of Deborah, 867  
   as ignoramus, 867  
   taking charge of Sisera's body, 869  
   three names of (Barak, Lappidoth, Michael), 870 n73  
   from tribe of Naphtali, 870 n73  
 Barakel  
   teaching men divination from stars, 119  
 Bardiel (angel)  
   angel of hail, prostrating before Metatron, 130  
 Bari (city), 1087 n48  
   inhabitants of  
     astonished at cruelty of Nebuchadnezzar, 1085-1086  
     rewarded for mitigating cruelty of Nebuchadnezzar, 1085-1086  
 Barisat (one of Terah's gods), 183  
 Barkiel (angel)  
   angel of lightning, prostrating before Metatron, 130  
 Bar Kokhba revolt  
   R. Akiba as propagandist for, 1089 n56  
 barley  
   cake of, meaning of, 873 n100  
 barnacle-goose  
   consumption of, by Christians, during Lent, 39 n150  
   grown to a tree by its bill, 34  
   legend of, 39 n150  
 Baroka, R.  
   Elijah showing B. that appearances can be deceiving, 1015  
 Barozak  
   grave of, not far from grave of Ezekiel, 1095  
 barrenness  
   of Adinah, wife of Laban, 262  
   causes of, 202 n116, 253 n8  
     God's trial of the fathers, 202 n116



barrenness (*cont.*)

- giving husband right to take second wife, 888 n6
  - of Hannah, 887
  - of Leah, not mentioned in old midrashim, 288 n170
  - of Michal, 940
  - miraculously removed from seven sterile women, 878 n111
  - of Potiphar's wife, 348
  - of Rachel, 289 n202
  - as reproach, 287-288
  - of Sarah, as punishment for impious life, according to Hagar, 289 n198
  - self-denial as remedy for, 888 n7
  - ten years of, as grounds for divorce, 888 n6
  - See also* childless; childlessness; women
- Barsan (king of Adullam) and Judah, 343-344
- Baruch, 1092-1094
- as author of three prophetic works (Baruch, Syriac Apocalypse of Baruch, Greek Apocalypse of Baruch), 1093 n65
  - book of, 1092
  - commanded by God to write to Jeremiah that people should remove strangers from their midst, 1090
  - commanded to leave Jerusalem, 1092
  - death and burial of
    - death of, 1093
    - tomb of, 1094-1095
    - adjoining that of Ezekiel, 1094
    - grass near, covered with gold dust, 1094
    - marvelous occurrences connected with, 1094
  - descendant of Rahab, 844 n12, 1093 n65
  - entering Paradise alive, 1083 n42, 1093 n66 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)
  - Ezekiel as teacher of, 1094
  - identified with Ebed-melech the Ethiopian, 1093 n66
  - and Jeremiah
    - B. confused with J., 1083 n42
    - and other pious men commanded to leave Jerusalem, 1076 n28
  - and Jeremiah and Ezekiel fixing calendar outside Holy Land, 1083 n42

Baruch (*cont.*)

- letter of, carried by eagle, 1092
  - living and dying in Babylon, 1083 n42
  - mourning of, 1092
  - one of eight priests descended from Rahab, 1093 n65
  - one of few mortals to visit Paradise and learn its secrets, 1093
  - piety of, 1094
  - as prophet, 1093 n65
  - remaining in Holy Land during exile, 1083 n42
  - revelation to, 1092
  - teacher of Ezra, 1121
  - twentieth from Moses in chain of tradition, 1128 n56
- Bar Yokni, 32 n138, 139
- as food in Messianic times, 32 n139
  - identified with Ziz, 32 n139
- Barzillai
- friend of David during rebellion of Absalom, 932
  - proselyte who had led lascivious life, 933 n103
- Basemath
- daughter of Elon the Hittite, second wife of Esau, 271
  - identified with Mahalath, 274 n121, 274 n122
  - name, changed to Adah by Esau, 271
- Basha. *See* Baasha
- Bashan
- one of six names of Mount Horeb, 500 (*see also* Horeb, Mount)
- basin, golden
- on throne of Solomon, 968
- baskets
- symbolizing kingdoms, in dream of chief baker, 361
- bastards
- dying young, 691 n451
  - in mixed multitude of Exodus, 544 n246
  - not to be excluded from community of Israel in time to come, 1022 n118 (*see also* time to come; world to come)
  - sons of Egyptian women and Hebrew men, 544 n246
- Batarrel, 120 n57
- bath, ritual
- hair to be combed before, 1122

bath, ritual (*cont.*)

- to cover case of one who desires to offer prayer or study law, one of ten regulations of Ezra, 1122
- Bathsheba and David
- B. destined by God for D., 928, 931 n93
  - D.'s punishment for excessive self-consciousness, 928
  - D. swearing to B. that her second child would be his successor, 946 n3
- as divorced woman after death of Uriah, 928
- granddaughter of Ahitophel, 922
- name, meaning of, 931 n93
- one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271
- one of 22 women of virtue praised in last chapter of Proverbs, 949 n13
- seeing through holy spirit that Solomon would be wisest of men, 949 n13
- Bath-shua
- Canaanite wife of Judah, 439
  - death of, 344
  - disliking Tamar because she was not Canaanite, 344
  - getting Canaanite wife for Shelah (third son of Judah), 344
- Batuel. *See* Bethuel
- bdellium
- on bier of Jacob, 413
  - See also* precious stones
- beadle
- as hero of legends about Hebron, 248-249
- bear(s)
- among animals of fourth plague, 530
  - devouring water traders cursed by Elisha, 1025
  - having no breasts, 41 n181
- Bear (constellation)
- two stars transferred from, to stop flood, 147
- beast, horned
- as kingdom of wickedness, to be conquered by Joseph before Messianic time, 409
- beasts
- of field
    - created on sixth day, 77
  - of prey
    - hymns of praise of, 45 (*see also* praise)



beauty  
     ten measures of, Jerusalem having  
         nine, 1085 n45  
     of women (*see* women: beauty of)  
 Becher (son of Benjamin)  
     name, meaning of, 380  
 Beelzebub  
     Israelites worshiping, 872  
     *See also* Beelzebul  
 Beelzeboul. *See* Beelzebul  
 Beelzebul  
     name, meaning of, 965 n56  
     prince of all demons, 963  
     reigning over all in Tartarus, 963  
     similarity of, to Sammael, 965 n56  
     summoned by Solomon, 963  
 Beeri  
     dying in exile, 1041 n21  
     prophecies of  
         two verses of, preserved in  
             Isaiah, 1039, 1041 n22  
 Beer-lahai-roi  
     dwelling place of Hagar, 243  
     name, meaning of, 243 n308  
 Beer Shahat  
     in fifth earth, 6 (*see also* earth[s])  
     one of seven divisions of hell, 13  
         (*see also* hell: divisions of)  
 Beer-sheba  
     Abraham planting vineyard in, 223  
     Jacob going there to learn will of  
         God, 275-276  
     name, meaning of, 223, 260, 263  
         n67  
     place of covenant between  
         Abraham and Abimelech,  
         223  
     well of  
         dug by Abraham, 260  
         found by Isaac, 260  
         to supply water to Jerusalem in  
             Messianic time, 260  
 Beersheva. *See* Beer-sheba  
 bees  
     of Paradise  
         honeycomb produced by, 424  
         springing forth from remains of  
             cattle, 42 n190  
     *See also* honey  
 beggar  
     appearing in guise of beggar  
         angel(s), 1017 n96, 1020 n104  
         angel of death, 1016-1017,  
             1017 n96  
         Elijah, 1006, 1019  
         Satan, 1171 n167  
     legends about, 1017

Behemoth, 3 n7, 28  
     abode of, in desert Dudain, 30  
         n127  
     creation of  
         out of mountains, 38 n141  
         from water, earth, and light, 38  
             n140  
     description of, 33  
     as female monster, 38 n141  
     food for, 39 n142  
     as food for pious in end time, 33,  
         39 n143  
     habitation of, in proximity of  
         Paradise, 31 n127  
     as land monster, 32 n127  
     and Leviathan  
         B. as consort of L., 32 n127  
         combat of, 29, 32 n139, 33  
     as male and female pair, 30 n118  
     as male monster, living on dry  
         land, 31 n127  
     needing enormous quantities of  
         water, 30 n119  
     roaring of, in Tammuz, 2  
     size of, 33  
     slaughtered, 32 n139  
     strength of, 2  
     *See also* Leviathan; monster(s)  
 Bel  
     and the Dragon (part of Additions  
         to Book of Daniel), 1116  
         n8  
     legend of Daniel and Darius  
         based on, 1115 n6  
     story of, 1108 n112  
     encounter of Daniel with B. shown  
         to Jacob, 277  
 Bela (city)  
     city that devours inhabitants, 194  
 Bela (son of Benjamin), 380  
     death of  
         in battle against Joseph, 416  
     descendants of, God-fearing, 434  
     as Edomite king, 325 n323, 416  
     reigning 30 years, 416  
     family of, having two subdivisions,  
         Ardites and Naamites, 434  
     name  
         meaning of, 380  
         as name of Balaam when ruler  
             of Edom, 324  
         as surname of Esau, 325 n324  
 Belachora. *See* Belchira  
 Belchira  
     as accuser of Isaiah and other  
         prophets, 1057 n102  
     name, meaning of, 1057 n101  
     nephew of false prophet Zedekiah,  
         1070 n11

Belchira (*cont.*)  
     Samaritan who betrayed prophets  
         to Manasseh, 1057 n101  
 Belial  
     sons of  
         supporters of Jeroboam called by  
             Abijah, 985 n16  
     streams of, third archangel made  
         from, 53 n13  
     *See also* Beliar  
 Beliar  
     malice of, 450  
     spirits of, 442, 443  
     sword of  
         mother of seven evils, 450  
     as tempter spirit, 450  
     unchastity abandons man to, 436-  
         437  
     *See also* Belial; Belior  
 Belior  
     to be blinded by Messiah, 306  
         n275  
     *See also* Belial; Beliar  
 bells  
     on robe of Aaron, atoning for slan-  
         der, 650  
 belomancy  
     practiced by Nebuchadnezzar,  
         1073  
 beloved of God  
     Abraham as, 168 n4  
     Israel as, 168 n4  
     Jacob as, 168 n4  
     Jerusalem as, 168 n4  
     Solomon as, 168 n4  
     *See also* favorite of God; friend of  
         God  
 Belshazzar  
     as cosmocrator, 1050-1051, 1112  
         n2 (*see also* cosmocrator)  
     death of, 1112 n4  
         B. killed by servant, 1111  
     descendant of Baladan, 1050-1051  
     desecrating holy vessels, 1112 n4  
     feast of, 1111-1113  
         angel writing inscription on wall  
             at, 1111  
         B. taking pastry given on second  
             day of Passover for ban-  
             quet, 1112  
         B. using Temple vessels at ban-  
             quet, 1111-1112  
     one of three sons of Evil-mero-  
         dach, 1112 n2  
     punishment of, 214 n170  
     ruler of Chaldeans, 1111  
     victorious over Darius and Cyrus,  
         1111



## Ben

another name of Solomon, referring to building of Temple, 945

## Benaiah

chancellor of Solomon, 978  
 charged with job of executing Joab, 946, 947 n10  
 chief of Cherethites and Pelethites, 980 n95  
 commander-in-chief of Solomon's army, 980 n95  
 president of Great Sanhedrin, 980 n95  
 priest, 980 n95  
 sent by Solomon to capture Asmodeus, 973  
 sent to meet Queen of Sheba, 959  
 story of  
   about cheating at chess, 978  
   about king of Persia, illustrating superiority of tongue, 978

## bench

three-legged, 623, 625 n275 (*see also* chair[s]: three-legged)

## benediction(s)

David instituting recitation of 100 daily, 937 n123  
 recited by man returning from sea voyage, 564 n58  
*See also* blessings; Eighteen Benedictions

## Ben-hadad (Aramean king)

attacking Asa of Judah, 297, 985  
 contrasted with Ahaziah, 1031 n22  
 sending gift to Elisha, 1030 n22  
 taking all possessions of Ahab, 987

## Ben Jair

another name of Mordecai, 1140 (*see also* Mordecai: name)

## Benjamin

## age of

at death, 125 years, 449  
 at marriage, 349 n98

attacking Edom to west, 321

## birth of

announced to Jacob by God, 317  
 at night, 319 n308  
 in south, 319 n308  
 with twin sisters, 319 n309

## blessed by

Jacob, 409  
 Joseph, 379

called wolf, 409

## corpse of

brought out of Egypt in secret, 450

Benjamin (*cont.*)corpse of (*cont.*)

not decaying, 411-412 (*see also* under corpse[s])

## descendants of

Ehud as, 409  
 Esther, as last ruler of Israel, 409  
 Saul, as first ruler of Israel, 409  
 to include kings Saul and Ish-bosheth, 317

as friend of God, 168 n4

inheritance of, in Holy Land, 409  
 and Joseph

B. extolling J., 449-450

B. held hostage by J., 384

B. receiving 300 shekels from J., 390 n288, 390 n289

B. recognizing J. in astrolabe, 380

B. taking oath before J., 388

Judah as surety for, 385

## name

meaning of ("son of days"), 318, 433, 449, 679, 681 n424

meaning of ("son of the south"), 319 n308

one of eight whose corpse not touched by worms, 939 n128 (*see also* under corpse[s])

one of four to lead sinless life, 473, 912 n7

one of weak among sons of Jacob, 396 n324

only brother not taking part in selling Joseph, 825 n926

only son of Jacob born in Holy Land, 825 n926

## and Rachel

B. as second son of R., 288

B. resembling R., 381 n244

receiving four portions at dinner, 380

receiving seven portions at dinner, 381 n249

saving Asenath from sons of Pharaoh and sons of Bilhah and Zilpah, 426

## and Shekinah

B. as "host of Shekinah," 825 n926

Shekinah resting in territory of B., 825 n926

silver cup found in sack of, 382

## sons of

names of, 380  
 ten in number, 288, 348

suckled by Bilhah, 449

Benjamin (*cont.*)

## territory of

Holy Place situated in, 409  
 sanctuary to be in, 822  
 Temple to be erected in, 411 n401  
 temporary sanctuaries in, 825 n926

## tribe of

blessed by Moses, 822

chiefs of, 434

confessing desire to prove whether law emanated from God or Moses, 856

crime of, at Gibeah, 880-885

distinction conferred on, reasons for, 825 n926

elders from (Senaah, Kislion, Elidad, Ahitrib, Jediah, Mattaniah), 696

flag of, multicolored with picture of wolf, 688

## gem of

jasper, 652

onyx, 856

going to Shiloh on Passover, 884 n135

losing seven divisions in battle over returning to Egypt, 783

Moses' psalm of, 823

prince of (Abidan), 679

readmitted to Israel on 15 Av, 884 n135

## rewarded

for being first to jump into Red Sea, 905 n80

with residence of Shekinah, 555

seduced by Micah to pay homage to idols, 881

significance of dedication offering of, 669

spy representing (Palti), 705

## survivors

emigrating to Italy and Germany, 882

emigrating to Romania, 884 n135

to provide Israel with first and last ruler, 409

war with, beginning on 23

Shevat, 883 n134

willing to jump into waters of Red Sea, 555

twin sisters of, 288 n170, 318



Benjamin (*cont.*)

- wives of
  - Arbat, daughter of Zimran, son of Abraham by Keturah, 348
  - Mahlia, daughter of Aram, grandson of Terah, 348
- Benjamin b. Zerah, R. piyyut of, 26 n102
- Benjaminites. *See* Benjamin: tribe of
- Ben Kish
  - another name of Mordecai, 1140 (*see also* Mordecai: name)
- Benmelek (son of Abimelech, king of Philistines), 235
- Ben Nez (angel)
  - keeping south wind back, 7
  - the Winged, 7
- Ben Shimei
  - another name of Mordecai, 1140 (*see also* Mordecai: name)
- Ben Sira
  - author of Book of Ecclesiasticus, 1084 n42
  - and father
    - creating man according to instructions in Book of Yezirah, 1084 n42
  - identified with high priest Joshua son of Jehozadak, 1084 n42
  - known among Christians as Josephus Sirach, 1084 n42
  - legend
    - and Jeremiah legends, 1083 n42
    - modeled on Evangel of the Childhood of Jesus, 1084 n42
  - precociousness of, 1083 n42
  - son of Jeremiah, 1083 n42
  - speaking as infant, 1083 n42 (*see also* infants)
  - wisdom of, 1083-1084 n42
- Ben Zadua (demons), 529 n185
- Beor (father of Balaam)
  - Kemuel identified with, 244 n315
  - sorcery of, 243
- Bera (the villain, king of Sodom)
  - one of godless kings of Palestine, 194
- Berechiah
  - father of prophet Zechariah in Matthew 22:35, 1078 n30
- Beruria (Valeria)
  - one of ten rulers who became proselytes, 1093 n66
- beryl (color). *See under* color(s)

## beryl (precious stone)

- on Solomon's throne, 968
- bet (letter)
  - creation of world through, 4, 23
  - fourth letter in name of Jacob, 253
  - on standard of tribe of Dan, 686
  - numerical value of (two), standing for two tablets of stone, 253
  - second letter of name of Abraham on standard of tribe of Reuben, 686
  - See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet
- Bet Gubrin
  - identified with Seir, 306 n275
  - in Isaac's blessing of Esau, 270
  - last place to be taken from Edom before Messiah appears, 304
- Bethac, 883 n134, 893 n26
- Bet ha-Midrash
  - erected by Judah in Goshen, 392
  - Joseph studying at, 328
  - of Shem and Eber, 256 n29
  - Jacob studying at, 255, 261
  - See also* academy; Shem: academy of; Shem: and Eber, Bet ha-Midrash of
- Bethel
  - false prophet of, 983 n8
  - golden calves at, 1029
  - vow of Jacob at, 316
- Bethuel (Batuel; Hannah's father), 888 n2
- Bethuel (nephew of Abraham)
  - Aramean father of Rebekah, 238, 251
  - eating own poison and dying, 240
  - name as wordplay on *betulah* ("virgin"), 241 n294
  - trying to kill Eliezer, 240
- Bezalel, 641-642
  - age of
    - at time of erection of Tabernacle, 13 years, 642 n325
  - builder of Tabernacle, 469, 641, 654
  - elder from tribe of Judah, 696
  - endowed with celestial wisdom, 469
  - fashioning ark with own hands, 644 n329
  - making candlestick for Tabernacle, 645
  - name
    - meaning of ("I, the Shadow of God"), 641, 642

Bezalel (*cont.*)

- name (*cont.*)
  - other names of (Reaiah, son of Shobal, Jahath, Ahumai, Lahad), 642
- and Oholiab
  - viewing heavenly sanctuary, 642 n326
- possessing wisdom, insight, and understanding, 641
- Solomon as descendant of, 641
- son of Hur, son of Caleb and Miriam, 641, 642 n325
- from tribe of Judah, 642
- well versed in secret lore, 641
- Bezer (city)
  - first of cities of refuge, 307 n275, 332
- Bible
  - books of
    - authorship of, 1071 n15
    - five books of Moses, eight prophets (Minor Prophets counted as one), eleven Hagiography (Ezra-Nehemiah as one), 956 n25
    - See also* canon; Scripture
- Biblomancy, 1159, 1161 n122
- Bigeon
  - sanctuary at, one of seven holy places destroyed by Esau, 264
- Bigtha (angel)
  - one of seven angels of confusion sent to disrupt Ahasuerus's banquet, 1135
  - presser of winepress, 1135
- Bigthan and Teresh
  - conspiracy of, thwarted by Mordecai, 1145-1146, 1175
  - nailed to cross as punishment, 1146
- Bigvai
  - counted among returning exiles even though in womb, 681
- Bildad
  - one of four friends of Job, 459-460 (*see also* Job: friends of)
  - prophet to heathens, 761
  - questioning Job, 459
- Bilhah
  - bearing son, 286
  - birth of, on same day as Rachel, 444
  - burial of, by tomb of Rachel, 430 n436



Bilhah (*cont.*)

couch of, brought to tent of Jacob  
after death of Rachel, 318

daughter of

Laban and concubine, given to  
Jacob, 284

Rotheus, brother of Deborah,  
444

death of

caused by grief over Joseph,  
340-341

in Palestine, 430 n436

name, meaning of, 444

not a bondwoman, 284 n167

sexual intercourse with Reuben,  
435

son(s) of

called Dan by Rachel, 286

second son of, called Naphtali  
by Rachel, 286

treated with contempt by broth-  
ers of Joseph, 328

suckling Benjamin, 449

surviving Jacob, 343 n65, 430  
n436

as wife of Jacob

given by Rachel, 286

made principal wife after Leah's  
death, 319 n312

and Zilpah

daughters of Rotheus, brother of  
Deborah (Rebekah's nurse),  
284 n167

sons of, making alliance with  
sons of Pharaoh against  
Joseph and Pharaoh, 426

## Bilkis

name given to Queen of Sheba in  
Arabic sources, 1073 n21

## Bilshan

another name of Mordecai, 1140  
(*see also* Mordecai: name)

name, meaning of, 1141 n62

## bird(s)

appearance of wonderful bird at  
Elim, 568 n88

constructed of precious metals, as  
instrument of sorcery of  
Balak, 759 (*see also* Yadua)

created on fifth day, 29, 77, 82 n98

as guides to water, 569 n88

hymns of praise of, 44 (*see also*  
praise)

immortal, 39 n150, 72

kinds

hoopoe, 958, 961 n39

jackdaw, 109 n31

bird(s) (*cont.*)

kinds (*cont.*)

*malham*

immortality of, 72

not eating of fruit of tree, 72

moor-hen, 974

wild cock, as guardian bird of  
shamir, 975 n85

law to cover blood of, 242 n301

legend of bird speaking before

Solomon, 958 n34

made out of marshy ground, 29

not alighting on holy place, 501

of prey (*see also* eagle[s]; vulture[s])  
among animals of fourth plague,  
530

fearing to swoop down, 2

Samael searching for Moses

among, 836

watching over blood from

Rebekah's injury, 242 n301

*See also* Ziz; and under individual  
kinds of birds

## bird's nest

name of secret chamber of Messiah  
in Paradise, 23 n97

## Birsha (the sinner, king of Gomorrah)

one of godless kings of Palestine,  
194

## birth

of female children

position of, feet first, 469, 470  
n15

of male children

position of, head first, 469, 470  
n15

through mouth, 43 n190

untimely, in Egypt, because of  
roaring of Judah, 387

window of

in first heaven, 503

## birthday

significance of, in war, 582-583  
n144

## birthmark

of Esau, serpent, 253

## birthright

appropriated by Joseph, 327

double share of inheritance with,  
258

Esau's sale of, to Jacob, 268 n92,  
327, 579

priestly service and, 258

scorn of, one of five crimes of Esau  
on day of Abraham's death,  
257

*See also* firstborn; inheritance;  
primogeniture

## birthstool, 365

Bithiah (daughter of Pharaoh; foster-  
mother of Moses), 498

accompanying Pharaoh to Moses  
to plead for end of plagues,  
539

adopting Moses as son, 481

daughter of Pharaoh Shishak, 970  
n71

dying before Moses fled from  
Egypt, 481 n61

entering Paradise alive, 73 n67,  
132 n62, 481, 540 n226  
(*see also* Paradise: entering  
alive)

foster-mother of Moses, according  
to rabbinic literature, 479  
n48

marrying Caleb, 480

name, meaning of ("the daughter  
of God"), 480

one of ten rulers who became pros-  
elytes, 1093 n66

one of 22 women of valor, 238  
n271

spared from plague of slaying of  
firstborn, 539

supervising one of seven classes of  
women, 23 n97

## Biztha (angel)

name, meaning of ("destruction of  
the house"), 1135

one of seven angels of confusion  
sent to disrupt Ahasuerus's  
banquet, 1135

black. *See* under color(s)

## black art

taught by Abraham to idolatrous  
sons of Hagar, 243

*See also* augury; magic arts; sorcery;  
witchcraft

## blains

as part of sixth plague, 530

## blasphemer(s)

corpses hung on gallows, 780-781  
n790

one of three men losing this world  
and gaining world to come,  
847-848 n31

punished by being eaten alive by  
worms, 884 n136

story of, 689-691

## blasphemy

forbidden by commandments, 69

Herod punished for, by being  
eaten by worms, 717

n552

Jacob cautioning sons against, 411



blasphemy (*cont.*)

one of eight sins committed by  
Pharaoh, inhabitants of  
sinful cities, builders of  
Tower of Babel, Sennach-  
erib, and Nebuchadnezzar,  
562 n54

one of 13 sins punished by leprosy,  
675 (*see also under* leprosy)

punishment for  
being eaten alive by worms, 908  
n106

death by stoning, 690

“Blessed be the Lord . . .”

praise of angels during night, 617

*See also* praise

## blessing

of Aaron on people, 659

of Abraham, 244 n316

by God, 237

by Melchizedek, 196

brought by pious to those they  
visit, 291 n207

cleanness required for, 406

of Ephraim and Manasseh, 402-  
406

by God before Abraham, 244 n316  
of Isaac

given to I. by God, 243

withheld from I. by Abraham,  
243

of Israel, by Moses at hour of  
death, 819

of Jacob

by Michael, 300

as prophecy of Israel's history,  
268 n95

by Rebekah, 268 n97

tenfold, 266

of Jacob's sons by God, 394 n309

of Japheth by Noah, 154

of Levi

by God, 300

by Isaac, 438

of Noah and sons by God, 151

by righteous man like being

blessed by Shekinah, 402

of Ruth by God, in ears of corn,  
866 n54

in seventh heaven, 6

of Shem by Noah, 154

after sneeze, 401 n357

of 12 tribes by Jacob, 406-411

over wine in Paradise

Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Moses,

Joshua refusing to say, 939

*See also* blessings

## blessings

Abraham's name mentioned in,  
187

disappearing at destruction of  
Temple, 968 n64

pronounced on Mount Gerizim,  
874 n103

12, recited by Levites facing  
Mount Gerizim, 843

upon world at erection of Temple,  
968 n64

*See also* benediction(s); Eighteen  
Benedictions

## blind

considered as dead, 517 n142 (*see  
also* leper[s])

made to see, 218

## blindness

of Ahasuerus, 1169 n149

Amorites stricken with, in battle,  
858, 860 n17

causes of, 267 n74

effects of, on eating, 264

of Eli, 893 n27

Jair's people stricken with, 873  
of Satan, 1128 n57

## blood

of Abel, 108 n21

absorbed by earth, 79 n90

atonement power of, as christological  
doctrine, 599 n195

coming from rock struck by  
Moses, 738

command to abstain from, 151 (*see  
also* food: forbidden)

effect of, on sword, 926 n77

having affinity with bone, 950

heavenly decree sealed with, 1159,  
1161 n122

loosening sword from hand of,  
Joab, 926

Kenaz, 858, 860 n18

of murder victim crying out, 609  
n228

never congealing

and goat slaughtered by brothers  
of Joseph, 1078 n30

miracle of, 1078 n30

of Zechariah, 1078 n30

one of five parts of body received  
from mother, 606 (*see also*  
body, human)

rivers of Egypt turned into, 523-  
527

of salamander, making fireproof,  
1045

seething, cause of, 1077 n30

blood (*cont.*)

shedding of (*see also* bloodshed)  
command against, as one of  
Noachian laws, 151

penalty for, 151

wicked marked with, by angel,  
1075 n26

## bloodguilt

of Cain, 111

## blood relationship

importance of, 737 n622

## bloodshed

causing guilt, 798 n859

as grave sin, 316

impurity of, to be removed from  
Israel in time to come, 677  
n417

one of eight sins committed by  
Pharaoh, inhabitants of  
sinful cities, builders of  
Tower of Babel, Sennach-  
erib, and Nebuchadnezzar,  
562 n54, 1048 n60

one of seven evils, 450

one of three cardinal sins, 278, 280  
n147

shunned by Joseph, 579

*See also* blood: shedding of

blood vengeance, 294 n220

blue. *See under* color(s)

## boar, wild

springing forth from remains of  
mountain-mouse, 42 n190

swine, as emblem of Roman legion  
stationed in Palestine, 284  
n162

## board of intercalation

at time of Solomon, 937 n124

## Boaz

ancestor of Davidic dynasty as  
reward for taking wife for  
sake of heaven, 867 n69

chastity of, 866 n60

death of

in bridal chamber, 867 n69

on day after wedding to Ruth,  
864

giving Elimelech and sons proper  
burial, 863

great-grandfather of David, 911

identified with Ibzan (judge), 864  
n31, 879 n113, 911

identified with Judah (judge), 861  
n26

introducing custom of pronounc-  
ing benedictions on bridal  
couple in presence of ten  
men, 866 n64



Boaz (*cont.*)

introducing greeting "The Lord be with you," 865 n53  
 ordaining that elders be appointed to supervise festive celebrations, 866 n64  
 praying and studying Torah, 866 n60  
 and Ruth, 862-867  
   age of B. at marriage to R., 80 years, 864  
   B. admiring R., 863  
   B. giving R. barley, 866 n61  
   B. marrying R., 864  
 slandered in Karaite sources, 866 n60  
 thanking God for removing famine, 866 n60  
 vision of, concerning descendants of Ruth, 863  
 body, human  
   allegorical interpretation of, 47  
   beginning to decay as result of idolatry, 117  
   composed of  
     fire and water, 608 n224  
     four elements (fire, water, air, earth), 608 n224  
     seven substances, 54 n15  
   correspondence between parts of, and parts of earth, 54 n15  
   duty of man to, 61 n26  
   five parts of  
     received from father (bones, veins, nails, brain, white of eye), 606  
     received from mother (skin, flesh, blood, hair, pupil of eye), 606  
   functions of parts of, 447  
   members of, created to perform divine commandments, 1052 n76  
   as microcosm, 47  
   number of veins of, 61 n26  
   Tabernacle as symbolic representation of, 639  
   ten parts of, received from God (breath, soul, light of countenance, sight, hearing, speech, touch, sense, insight, understanding), 606  
   united with soul, 55  
 Bohu, 8 n19  
   consisting of stones in abyss, 5  
   one of ten things produced on first day of creation, 5

Bohu (*cont.*)

separating second from first earth, 6  
 over seventh earth, 6  
*See also* earth(s); Tohu  
 boils  
   Egyptians afflicted with, at time of Moses' abandonment, 477  
   Job afflicted with, 457  
   as plague of Egypt, 524, 525  
   snails as remedy for, 43  
 Bolan (king of Khazars)  
   one of ten rulers who became proselytes, 1093 n66  
 bondage  
   chronology of, 511 n126  
   lasting 210 or 400 years, reckoning of, 510, 511 n124, 511 n126, 515  
 bondsmen  
   for Torah, heavens, earth, and mountains offered as, 599 n196  
 bone(s)  
   almond-shaped bone to form nucleus of new body in resurrection 401 n345  
   blood having affinity with, 950  
   one of five parts of body received from father, 606 (*see also* body, human)  
   small bone to form nucleus of new body in resurrection, 401 n345  
 Book Concerning Laws of Kings, 533 n187  
 book of Adam, 62 n31  
 book of covenant  
   read to people on occasion of revelation at Sinai, 599 n195  
 Book of King Solomon, 1104 n104  
 book of knowledge. *See* Raziel, Book of  
 Book of Magicians  
   and golden calf and Apis cult, 622 n271  
 Book of Memorial  
   four nights inscribed in, 541  
 Book of Raziel. *See* Raziel, Book of;  
   *also* holy book  
 book of song  
   given to Joshua by Moses, 827, 828 n943  
   identical to Deut. 32:1-43, 828 n942  
   identified with Book of Yashar, 828 n943

## book of the Law

Deuteronomy as, 842 n9  
 Book of Wars of Sons of Jacob, 315 n292  
 Book of Yashar  
   referred to by Joshua, 850 n41  
 Book of Yezirah  
   Ben Sira and father studying together, 1084 n42  
 books  
   of deeds, entrusted to cherubim, 100 n142  
   of medicine, hidden by Hezekiah, 1053 n89  
 Borsippa  
   Bursif, 1092 n64  
   treasure in, 1091  
 bow  
   and arrow, as chief weapon of tribe of Judah, 821  
   of God set in clouds after flood, 151 (*see also* rainbow)  
   *See also* weapon(s)  
 bowl  
   golden, on Solomon's throne, 968  
 Bozrah  
   angel of Edom fleeing to, 304, 307 n275  
   as city of refuge, 304, 307 n275  
   producing Job, ruler of Edom, 324  
 brain  
   one of five parts of body received from father, 606 (*see also* body, human)  
 bramble  
   Elimelech pictured as, 874 n103  
 brass  
   armor of Jashub, king of Tappuah, 314 (*see also* armor; weapon[s])  
   associated with Greece, 648  
   fourth artificial heaven of Hiram made from, 1104  
   one of 13 materials for construction of Tabernacle, 640 (*see also under* Tabernacle)  
   in Tabernacle  
     of altar, 646-647  
     symbolizing Greek empire, 640  
 bread  
   defilement of, by Sarah, 206 n142  
   as part of blessing of Jacob, 266-267  
   to be baked early in morning, one of ten regulations of Ezra, 1122  
   and wine offered to Abraham by Melchizedek, 196



breast-feeding  
 time of, 24 months, 481 n64

breastplate  
 of Aaron (*see also* Aaron: breastplate of; high priest: breastplate of)  
 atoning for partial verdicts, 650  
 one of eight priestly garments, 650  
 precious stones in, 650-653  
 of high priest, 35, 356, 688 (*see also* high priest: breastplate of)

breath  
 one of ten parts of body received from God, 606 (*see also* body, human)  
 one of three things contributed by God to formation of child, 608 n224

brick(s)  
 babies used instead of, 498, 499 n104  
 of sapphire, placed under Divine Throne, 543 n234  
 for Tower of Babel, 163-164  
 worship of, by Hagar, 221 n216

bridegroom  
 pardoned on wedding day for all past sins, 273, 902 n53

brokenhearted  
 loved by God more than the angels, 16 n64

brother  
 as fellow believer, unknown in rabbinic literature, 274 n123

Bul (month)  
 identified with month of Marḥeshvan, i.e., Ḥeshvan, 966

bull(s)  
 as burnt offering and peace offering, 598  
 carved by Moses on piece of Joseph's cup, 429  
 of dedication offering, corresponding to kings, 671  
 depicted on tribe of Ephraim's flag in wilderness, 688  
 engraved on silver leaf used to raise Joseph's coffin from Nile, 621  
 Joseph known as, 409  
 magic, 548 n3  
 miraculously rising out of fire to become golden calf, 621  
 one of four beings represented on Divine Throne, 621 (*see also* Throne, Divine)

bull(s) (*cont.*)  
 and ram and lamb of dedication offering  
 significance of, for Nahshon and for tribes of Asher, Benjamin, Dan, Ephraim, Gad, Issachar, Manasseh, Naphtali, Reuben, Simeon, and Zebulun, 666-671  
 symbolic significance of, in history of world, 671  
*See also* animal(s); bullock; offering

Bull (sign of Zodiac). *See* Taurus

bullock  
 as burnt offering of Levites on first day of dedication of Tabernacle, 674  
 image of, on coins struck by Joshua, 853 n54  
 offered by Noah, 88 n108 (*see also* animal[s]: as sacrifices; Noah: sacrifice of)  
*See also* animal(s); bull(s); offering

Bunah (second wife of Simeon), 309, 348, 348 n95

burial  
 of Aaron, 736  
 of Abel, 97, 108, 109 n39  
 of Abraham, 237 n268  
 Abraham paying for grave for Sarah, 234  
 of Adam, 96-98, 124, 234, 236 n263  
 of Bilhah, 430 n436  
 of Dinah, 348  
 of Esau, 322 n317, 414-415  
 of Eve, 98 n137, 99, 234  
 Michael's instructions to Seth, 99  
*See also* coffins; *and under individual names*

burning bush  
 Moses and, 501-502  
 one of three outstanding moments in life of Moses, 815 n902  
*See also* thornbush

burnt offering. *See* offering: burnt

butler, chief. *See* Potiphar: chief butler of

Buz (brother of Job; nephew of Abraham; father of Shuah, Naamat, and Barachel, fathers of friends of Job), 459

Buzi (father of Ezekiel)  
 as descendant of Rahab, 844 n12, 1093 n65

Buzi (prophet)  
 as name of Jeremiah, 1084 n42, 1101 n93  
 as prophet, 844 n12

## C

Caesarea  
 conquest of, by Maccabees, 315 n292  
 identified with Sartan, "tower of Straton," 315 n292

Caesars  
 deification of, 528 n175, 1103 n99

Caifas  
 high-priestly family of, coming from family of stick-gatherers, 691 n452

Cain  
 and Abel  
 born on day when their parents were created, 103 n4  
 C. killing A., 106, 106 n19  
 day of sacrifices of, 105 n11  
 fighting over sister, 106 n17  
 hostility of C. to A., 103-104, 105 n12  
 place of sacrifices of, 103  
 reason for enmity between, 106 n17  
 as twin brothers, 104 n9  
 twin sisters of, 104, 106 n17  
*See also* Abel: and Cain

arguments in heavenly court concerning, 108 n26

birth of, 101-103, 103 n4  
 in Adamah, second earth, 109-110  
 before fall, 103 n5  
 without pain, 103 n5  
 when Adam was 70 years of age, 103 n4  
 as builder of cities, 111, 112 n40  
 cunning of, 106 n19  
 curse of, 108 n22  
 death of, 113 n44  
 in flood, 112 n37, 147  
 descendants of, 111-114, 112 n40  
 introducing idols, 118 n54  
 wickedness of, 111, 115-116, 138  
 evil inclination of, 106  
 face of  
 becoming black, 104, 105 n13  
 luminous, 101, 103 n5  
 family of, living in field of Damascus, 138



Cain (*cont.*)

first to introduce weights and measures, 111, 112 n41  
 forgiveness of, 88 n106, 107 and God  
   C. forgiven by God, 88 n106  
   C. put to test by God, 763  
   conversation of, 106-107  
 horn as mark of, 111  
 leprosy of, 109 n28, 675  
 letter inscribed on forehead, 107  
 letter tet (value = 9) on arm, 108-109 n27  
 life span of, 112 n37, 112 n40  
 love of husbandry as cause of downfall of, 1042 n30  
 marriage of  
   to sister, 112 n42  
   to Themach, 112 n40  
 monuments of, 111  
 name, meaning of, 102, 103 n6, 103 n7, 105-106 n17, 112 n41  
 offering of, 105 n11, 105 n12  
   leftovers of grain, 103-104  
   rejected by God, 103, 105 n10  
 as offspring of Eve and Satan, 101, 102 n3  
 one of five to give expected answer to God's questions, 1102 n94  
 punishment of, 106-109, 675  
   in seventh generation, 111, 112 n37  
 repentance of, 108 n26  
 seven sins of, 112 n37  
 sign of, 109 n27, 109 n28  
 as son of Sammael, 965 n56  
 as tiller of ground, 103  
 wickedness of, 111, 112 n42

## Cainites

Anakim as offspring of Cainite women and fallen angels, 137  
 as dwarfs, 110  
 dwelling place of, 957 n28  
   living underground, 950  
 as giants, 110  
 having two heads, 110, 110 n34  
 nudity of, 136  
 some having two heads, 950  
 as species of genii, demons, and monsters, 110 n34

## Calcol ("giver of food")

identified with Joseph, 955 n20  
 wisdom of, not as great as that of Solomon, 949-950

## Caleb

connected with family of David, 911  
 described by God as His servant, 805 n880 (*see also* servant of God)  
 father of Kenaz, 857 n1  
 marriage of  
   to Bithiah, 480, 861 n25  
   to Miriam, 861 n25  
 marrying and begetting son at age of 10 years, 716  
 and Moses  
   C. praising M., 710  
   C.'s vision at moment of M.'s death, 833 n952  
   M. asking C. to intercede, 809  
 one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)  
 one of 77 pious men in Israel, 629 n287 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of ten just men in Israel, 628  
 and Phinehas  
   accompanied on spy mission by two demons, husbands of she-devils Lilith and Mahlah, 843  
   appearance of, transformed by demons, 843  
   conquering Jazer, 752  
   sent as spies to Jazer, 752  
 pursued by three giants in Palestine, 710  
 Samael stopping prayer of C., 809  
 son of Hezron, 861 n25  
 son of Kenaz, 861 n25  
 son of Jephunneh, spy of tribe of Judah, 706, 861 n25  
 as spy  
   age of, when sent as spy (40 years), 716  
   C. attempting to contradict report of spies, 710  
   C. chosen by Joshua to be spy, 843  
 stepson of Kenaz, 861 n25  
 strong voice of, 710, 812, 813 n901  
*See also* Joshua: and Caleb  
 calendar  
   and astronomy, 410 n391  
   Enoch as father of, 123 n59  
   fixed outside Holy Land by Jeremiah, Ezekiel, and Baruch, 1083 n42

calendar (*cont.*)

Israel swearing not to divulge secret of, to other nations, 1081 n39  
 Jewish, introduced as protest against Egyptian calendar, 536 n203  
 leap year declared by Hezekiah, adding second month of Nisan, 1053 n89  
 and movements of moon, 534-535  
 received along with commandments to sacrifice paschal lamb and to circumcise sons, 534  
 scholars of, to be descendants of Issachar, 408, 410 n391  
 secret of, revealed to Moses, 536 n203  
 solar year of, 9 n26  
*See also* date; and *under names of months*  
 calends, 88 n107  
   heathen celebration of, 87  
 calf, golden. *See* golden calf  
 camel(s)  
   Abraham riding on, 221  
   carrying merchandise of Ishmaelites, 337  
   given to Esau by Jacob, 306 n274  
   lost ears of, 42 n183  
 camp(s)  
   cattle outside of, 687  
   cleansing of, 674-677  
   cloud of glory separating dwelling places in, 687  
   description of, 687  
   divisions of, 667  
   east of sanctuary  
     abode of Moses, Aaron, and Aaron's sons, 687  
   north of sanctuary  
     abode of sons of Merari, 687  
   prohibition against entering while unclean, 797  
   separation of tents in, 776, 777 n777  
   size of, 834  
   south of sanctuary  
     abode of Levites and family of Kohath, 687  
   surrounded by rivers, 687  
   west of sanctuary  
     abode of sons of Gershon, 687  
 in wilderness, 687-689  
   divisions of, 636  
   Moses moving tent one mile away from, 627



camp(s) (*cont.*)

*See also* Israel (nation; people)/  
Israelites: in wilderness;  
wilderness

## Canaan (place)

famine in, 189  
as land promised to Abraham, 187,  
210

## Canaan (son of Ham)

as builder of Tower of Babel, 164  
n88  
and castration of Noah, 155 n61  
land provisionally granted to, 157,  
188  
last will and testament of, 154  
made slave on account of evil  
deeds, 333  
Noah's curse of Ham on, 154  
one of seven sinners, 856, 857 n9  
settled in land not assigned to him,  
188  
suffering for father's sin, 154

## Canaanites

as accursed race, 238, 239 n282  
claim of, to Palestine, 196 n82  
destroying land before Israel could  
conquer, 718 n558  
destroying land to make it unin-  
habitable for Israelites, 546  
emigrating to Africa, 848 n34  
fearing Israelites, 704, 846  
having right of habitation, 193  
as misers, 717  
reward of, for honoring Abraham,  
548 n8  
spies reporting that they dwell by  
sea and along Jordan, 710  
*See also* Amorites

## Canaanite wives

of Ammon, 235  
children of, not allowed to touch  
bier of Jacob, 414 n405  
of Judah (Bath-shua), 439  
of Moab, son of Lot, 235  
of Reuben, 349 n98  
of Shelah, third son of Judah, 344  
of Simeon, 349 n98

## Cancer (Crab) (sign of Zodiac)

answering Haman in defense of  
Israel, 1151

## candle(s)

Moses likened to, 697 n479  
to be lighted to celebrate Sabbath,  
677-678

## candlestick

God making model of, out of red,  
green, white, and black  
fire, 678

candlestick (*cont.*)

golden, on Solomon's throne, 968  
lighting of, 677-678  
light of, symbolizing light of  
Shekinah, 645

## and Moses

Gabriel teaching M. how to  
make, 645-646 n338  
God showing M. pattern of,  
four times, 678 n421  
one of five sacred objects concealed  
by God at destruction of  
Temple, 645  
pattern of fire of, coming down  
from heaven to Moses, 645  
n338  
seven-branched  
hidden by Shimur, 1091  
precious stones in, 1091  
seven branches of  
corresponding to seven planets,  
639  
representing seven planets, 646  
n339

shaping itself out of fire, 678  
as symbolic representation of  
Torah, 646 n340

## for Tabernacle

difficulty of Moses in construct-  
ing, 645  
later set in Temple of Solomon,  
645  
made by Bezalel, 645  
wrought by miracle, 678  
in Temple of Solomon  
ten in number, each having  
seven lamps, 645

## cannibalism, 34

men gnawing own flesh during  
famine in Joram's time, 991  
women consuming children during  
famine in Joram's time, 991

## canon

of Scripture  
and Great Synagogue, 1128 n56  
*See also* Bible; Scripture

## canopy(ies)

over heads of pious, made from  
hide of Leviathan, 30 n123  
of Paradise, 19-20, 22 n83

## cantillation

of books of Job, Proverbs, and  
Psalms, 463 n39

## caper-spurge, 40 n165

## capital punishment

for certain kinds of work on  
Sabbath, 653, 690  
stoning as punishment for idolatry,  
779

## Cappadocian language, 158 n72

ascribed to Japhethite system of  
writing, 158 n72

## Capricorn (Goat) (sign of Zodiac)

answering Haman in defense of  
Israel, 1151

## captivity

as one of seven evils, 450

captivity, Babylonian. *See* Babylonian  
exile

## carbuncle

beaming like lightning, 651  
on ephod of Pharaoh, 364  
gates of heavenly Temple made  
from, 503  
and gates of Paradise, 18  
making one who wears it wise, 651  
stone of Levi in breastplate of  
Aaron, 651  
thrones in Paradise made from,  
507

*See also* precious stones

## Carcas (angel)

name, meaning of ("knocker"),  
1135  
one of seven angels of confusion  
sent to disrupt Ahasuerus's  
banquet, 1135

## Carmel, Mount

conflict between God and Baal on,  
994  
miracles performed on, 994  
one of four mountains on which  
heavenly Jerusalem will  
descend, 595 n184 (*see also*  
Jerusalem: heavenly)

Carmi (elder from tribe of Reuben),  
696

## carob

swallowing Isaiah, 1057 n103  
and tree of knowledge, 74 n70  
*See also* tree(s)

## Carshena (prince of Africa)

having charge of animals, 1136  
one of seven princes of Persia con-  
sulted by Ahasuerus about  
fate of Vashti, 1136

## Carthage

founded by Phoenicians, 848 n34

## cassia

strewn before Joseph, 367

casting lots. *See* lots: casting

## cat(s)

and dogs, originally friends, 35  
hymn of praise of, 45 (*see also*  
praise)  
and mice  
enmity between 35, 36, 41 n171  
originally friends, 35



- cat(s) (*cont.*)  
 taking up residence with Adam, 35-36
- catapults  
 used by Babylonians against Jerusalem, 1074
- cattle  
 created on sixth day, 77  
 pulling ark to Judea, 894 n34, 894 n36  
 singing song of praise for ark, 892
- cave  
 in which Moses and Elijah dwelt, created in twilight between sixth day and Sabbath, 78 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)
- Cave of Machpelah. *See* Machpelah, Cave of
- cedar(s)  
 coming to Babylon at time of exile, 1074 n24  
 of Lebanon  
 created on third day, 18  
 planted in Paradise, 21 n74  
 at Magdala  
 considered holy, 393 n308  
 planted by patriarchs, 393 n308  
 to be used for Tabernacle, 393 n308  
 only species of shittim to be used, 647  
 planted at head of Jacob's grave, 412  
 sent to Solomon by Hiram of Tyre, becoming green again, 646  
 swallowing Israel, 1057 n103  
 symbolic of Israel, 1175  
 for Tabernacle  
 planted in Egypt, 647  
 praising God, 647  
 for Temple, blossoming and bearing fruit, 647 n342  
 tree for cross of Haman, 1177 n184  
 cedar willing to serve as, 1175  
 wainscoting of first and second divisions of Paradise made from, 19  
*See also* tree(s)
- celestial beings  
 defiled by contact with terrestrial beings, 17 n68  
 hymns of praise of, 46 n194 (*see also* doxologies; praise)  
*See also* angels; cherubim; heavenly beings; seraphim
- celestial bodies. *See* heavenly bodies
- celestial garments. *See* garment(s): celestial
- celestial sanctuary. *See* sanctuary: heavenly
- Celsus  
 accusations of, against Christians, 51 n8
- Cenec  
 medieval Christian form of Kenaz, 857 n1
- censers  
 on Solomon's throne, 968
- census(es) of Israel, 636-638  
 age of men to be counted in, 681  
 at Arbot-Moab, after plague of Shittim, 783  
 at arrangement into camp divisions, 636  
 of David  
 taken in defiance of law in Pentateuch, 936  
 taken without requiring half-shekel offering, 937 n119  
 at distribution of promised land, 636  
 before erection of Tabernacle, 678  
 of Ezra after return from exile, 637  
 of household of Jacob upon entering Egypt, 636  
 of Levites, 681-684  
 Moses instructed to take, 679  
 nine in number, 637  
 occasions on which Israelites were counted, 636-637  
 one month after dedication of Tabernacle, 678-679  
 order of tribes in, 680  
 purpose of  
 to establish family purity, 783, 784  
 in reign of David, 637-638 n314  
 by Saul  
 of army of S., 899  
 during reign of S., 637 n314  
 when setting out against Amalek, 637  
 when setting out against Nahash, 637  
 third, at time of dedication of Tabernacle, 680  
 at time of Exodus, 636, 637 n314  
 after worship of golden calf, 636
- centaur  
 killed by Zepho, 419-420 n425 (*see also* monster[s])
- Ceruihel (angel)  
 angel of strength, giving David strength to slay Goliath, 918 n43
- Chagiras of Adiabene  
 Abika identified with, 1075 n26  
 hero during war with Romans, 1075 n26
- chains  
 on throne of Solomon, 968
- chair(s)  
 golden, on Solomon's throne for Sanhedrin, 968  
 one-legged, 714  
 three-legged, 714 (*see also* bench)
- Chaldea  
 Persia identified with, 458 n22
- Chaldean language  
 used by Semites, 158 n72
- Chaldeans  
 custom of immersing babies in fire, 180 n40  
 one of things God repented of creating, 141 n20  
 regarding fire as god, 180 n40  
*See also* Babylonians
- Chaldees  
 identified with and named for Kasdim, 243
- chalkidri (serpents), 34  
 on chariot of sun, 127 n60  
 etymology of word, 40 n154  
 in fourth heaven, 125
- chalkydri. *See* chalkidri
- Chamber of Gazit  
 as Great Sanhedrin, 777 n783
- Chanethothos  
 induced by Chenephres to kill Moses, 492 n80
- charger, silver  
 and bowl of dedication offering  
 significance of, for Nahshon and for tribes of Asher, Benjamin, Dan, Ephraim, Gad, Issachar, Manasseh, Naphtali, Reuben, Simeon, Zebulun, 665-671  
 symbolizing Adam, who lived 930 years, 671
- chariot(s)  
 of fire, angel ascending in, 425  
 of God, drawn by cherubim, 93  
 Joseph riding on, 367  
 of light, drawn by four shining eagles, at death of Adam, 96  
 of Pharaoh, 550, 552 n17  
 laden with treasure, 559  
 of sun, 127 n60  
 attended by phoenixes and chalkidri, 125



## chastity

- of Boaz, 866 n60
- of dwellers of east, 284 n164
- of Joseph, 579, 866 n60
- of Palti, husband of Michal, 866 n60

## Chedorlaomer (one of Nimrod's generals)

- forming alliance with Arioch, king of Ellasar, 194
- forming alliance with Tidal, king of several nations, 194
- setting self up as king of Elam, 194

## Chemosh

- Moabite god, a blade stone in form of woman, 758

as Moabite Kabah, 759 n715

## Chenephes (king of Memphis)

- husband of Merois, daughter of Pharaoh, 479 n48

## Chenephres (husband of Moses' foster-mother)

- envious of Moses, 492 n80
- first person afflicted with elephantiasis, 499 n101
- inducing Chanethothes to kill Moses, 492 n80
- sending Moses to command force against Ethiopians, 492 n80

*See also* Chenephes

## Cherethites

- Benaiah as chief of, 980 n95

## cherub(im), 17 n70, 48

- above, corresponding to sanctuary of Israel, 648
- as angels, 80 n94
- of destruction, 80 n94
- on ark of covenant
- cherubim shading ark, 643
- description of, 643-644
- having faces of boys and wings, 643

- two in number, corresponding to tablets, 643

and chariot of God, 93, 246

created first, 15 n61

as "ever-turning sword of flames," 77

forms of

- as mare, 561 n44
- as steers, 80 n94

giving burning coals to Gabriel, 1075 n26

guarding entrance to Paradise, 68, 77

measuring 22 spans, corresponding to 22 letters of Hebrew alphabet, 643

cherub(im) (*cont.*)

- number of, in Temple same as number in Tabernacle, 644
- one of five sacred objects concealed by God at destruction of Temple, 645

plucked from Holy of Holies and dragged through streets by Ammonites and Moabites, 1086

praising God, 614 (*see also* praise) in seventh heaven, 125

and translation of Enoch, 129

wings of, 12 in number, 127 n60

*See also* angel(s), general; heavenly beings; seraphim

## child(ren)

birth of, 56

male, 57 n20

of Gehazi

inheriting leprosy, 1029

having share in world to come,

1022 n118 (*see also* world to come: those having share in)

sins of fathers to be visited upon, 618 n251, 1021, 1022 n118

slaughter of innocent, 169, 170 n8 suffering of

arousing God's compassion, 1166 n143

taking after mother's brothers, 883 n130

three things contributed by God to formation of child (spirit,

breath, soul), 608 n224

used as building material in Egypt, 558 n40, 880

wickedness of

causing blindness of parents, 267 n74

causing parents to age prematurely, 267 n74

## childbearing

anguish of, as sentence on Eve, 94

## childless

considered as dead, 517 n142 (*see also* poor; blind; lepers)

## childlessness

cause of, 202 n117

as punishment, 201

*See also* barrenness; childless

child sacrifice. *See* sacrifice: child

## Chileab (son of David)

entering Paradise alive, 19, 941 (*see also* Paradise: entering

alive)

Chileab (*cont.*)

excelling David and Mephibosheth in learning, 941

name, meaning of ("like the father"), 941

one of four to lead sinless life, 473 son of Abigail, 941

## Chilion and Mahlon (sons of Elimelech), 862

death of, punishment for

Elimelech's sin, 864 n40

marrying daughters of Eglon, king of Moab, 862

punished for intermarriage, 862

## Chinese Wall

traces discernible in story of last years of Abraham, 244 n312

Christ. *See* Jesus (son of Mary)

## Christian apologists

and proof for invisibility of God, 351 n102

## Christian Church

accepting Messianic interpretation of blessing of Judah, 410 n388

## Christian ideas

anti-Christ to be from tribe of Dan, 410 n392, 580 n141, 796 n854

atonement power of blood, 599 n195

brass serpent on pole symbolic of crucified Jesus, 748 n658

## celibacy

of Noah, 146 n31

preferable to marriage, 103 n4

cooperation of Logos in creation, 52 n12

Egyptians identifying Joseph with Serapis, 622 n266

golden calf identified with Apis of the Egyptians, 622 n271

identification of Ben Sira with high priest Joshua son of

Jehozadak, 1084 n42

justification by faith, 199 n109

man created by hand of God, 49 n3

marriage as consequence of original sin, 103 n4

## Melchizedek

as descendant of Shem, 197 n102

identified with Shem, 197 n102

as type of Jesus, the everlasting priest, 197 n104



Christian ideas (*cont.*)

- Messianic prophecy of Numbers 24:17, 777 n782
- metaphor of Zion, mother of Israel, 1070 n13
- proverb about trouble being sufficient for the day, 510, 511 n127
- righteous have to pass through Gehenna before entering Paradise, 508 n118
- seven pillars of earth personified as seven saints, 9 n28 (*see also* *under* world[s])
- that "son of God" in Daniel refers to Jesus, 1100 n90
- that story of Joshua refers to Jesus, 1107 n108
- tradition of "two witnesses" (Moses and Jeremiah), 1071 n13
- wolf as Saul, i.e., Paul, 411 n401
- Christian influence
  - on description of Paradise and hell, 509 n118
  - on doctrine of intercession, 508 n118
- Christian legends
  - about Aaron's rod, 731 n600
  - about cross of Jesus and legend of cross of Mordecai, 1177-1178 n184
  - about Elijah
    - and anti-Christ, 1022 n113
    - being sold as slave, 1005 n55
    - translation of, 999 n32
  - about Enoch and Elijah, 131 n61
  - about fall of Satan, 63 n34
  - about flesh and hair torn from martyr changed into trees, 1087 n47
  - flying as common feat of saints in, 536 n210, 796 n853
  - fragrance emanating from dead bodies of pious in, 548 n2
  - about Golgotha, 98 n137
  - about high priest's mitre determining guilt, 798 n861
  - infants speaking in, 359 n134
  - invisibility in, 844 n13
  - about Jebusites settling in Cyprus after being driven out of Palestine by David, 922 n53
  - about Jeremiah
    - meeting with Plato in Egypt, 1083 n42
    - never tasting death, 1083 n42, 1093 n66

Christian legends (*cont.*)

- about martyrdom of Ezekiel, 1102 n94
- nature standing still in, 605 n213
- about numerical value of name of Jesus, 197 n93
- about reviving dead animals, 200 n113
- saints being spared by ferocious beasts in, 1116 n13
- about shortening of road, 241 n287
- about Simon Magus, compared with legend of Balaam, 796 n853
- sinners being swallowed up by earth in, 726 n584
- sword of executioner unable to cut neck in, 488 n76
- water ordeal in, 626 n279
- about Zechariah, father of John the Baptist, substituted for prophet Zechariah, 1077 n30
- Christian literature
  - as source of Jewish legendary material, ix
- Christian polemics
  - concerning Israel after destruction of Temple, 200 n111
  - on inferiority of ceremonial laws, 70 n55
- Christians
  - appellations of Rome transferred to, 254 n19
  - as descendants of Esau, 259 n51
  - identified with Romans, 259 n51
- Christian Scripture
  - generation of wilderness receiving Torah in John 10:34-35, 715 n539
- Christian writings
  - Revelations of Esdras resembling story of angels being sent to fetch Moses' soul, 830 n946
- chrysolite
  - aiding digestion and making owner sturdy and fat, 652
  - stone of tribe of Asher in breastplate of Aaron, 652 (*see also* precious stones)
- church, early
  - and pseudepigrapha, ix-x
  - refusing oral law, 635 n308
- Church Fathers
  - attacks of, on circumcision, 248 n318

Church Fathers (*cont.*)

- believing that Jews interpret Ps. 110 as referring to Hezekiah, 1052 n70
- denying Solomon as ruler of all creation, 961 n40
- explaining desecration of Sabbath by Joshua, 846 n22
- favorable view of Abraham of, 199 n110
- on hospitality, 206 n134
- Israel identified with Christ by, 301 n253
- on Job, 456 n14
- on Job living in Karnaïm, 458 n21
- Michael identified with Holy Ghost by, 301 n248
- Michael identified with Jesus by, 301 n248
- on phoenix, 39 n150
- on salvation of Solomon, 967 n59
- as source of Jewish legendary material, x
- and tradition that Pharisees and Scribes were from tribes of Simeon and Levi, 410 n387
- and view of man as both good and evil, 50 n6
- and view that Adam sinned on first day of his creation, 81 n97
- cinnamon
  - as excrement of worm, 34
  - in Palestine, 1085 n45
  - wood growing in Jerusalem having pleasant flavor of, 1085 n45
- circumcision
  - abandoned by Egyptians after death of Joseph, 479 n51
  - of Abraham, 232 n249, 239 n275
  - Amalek sneering at, 580 n141
  - being born with (*see* covenant[s]: sign of)
  - boys not able to be circumcised during years of disfavor in wilderness, 716
  - called "covenant" in rabbinic literature, 248 n318
  - ceremony of, 249 n318
  - chair of Elijah at, 1020 n103
  - performed in synagogue, 1020 n102
  - child held on knees during, 422 n429
  - of children who die before eighth day, 1022 n118
  - Christian polemics concerning, 197 n102



circumcision (*cont.*)

commandment of, 534  
 criticized by Haman, 1153  
 as dust of Jacob, 774 n770  
 and Egyptians, 369, 370 n196  
 on eighth day, 248 n318  
 Elijah and, 1020 n103  
   E. zealous for observance of, 999 n25  
 epispasm and, 254 n24  
 of Gentile converts, 1178 n191  
 of Gershom by Zipporah on way to Egypt, 515  
 given up by many in Egyptian bondage, 473  
 given up by people during time of Ahab, 995  
 of great-grandsons of Joseph, 422  
 as improvement of natural state of body, 249 n318  
 inhabitants of Shechem and, 308-309  
 Israelites submitting to, at first Passover, 535-536  
 Joshua circumcising those born in desert at Gilgal, 843-844  
 law of, bestowed on Israel through Moses, 807  
 Noah not needing, 134  
 practiced only by Hebrews, 479 n51  
 reasons for, 249 n318  
 Sabbath superseded by, 248 n318  
 sacramental character of, 248 n318  
 Seth not needing, 115  
 as sign of covenant (*see* covenant[s]: sign of)  
 taught to Ethiopians by Moses, 492 n80  
 of those born in wilderness by Joshua, 845 n16  
 undoing by epipost, Jehoiakim and, 1060

## circus

prejudice against attending, 39 n143

## cithern, 454

played by Jemimah, 461  
*See also* instruments, musical

## cities

founded by Og having walls 60 miles high, 754  
 of plain  
   destroyed on 16 Nisan, 213  
   to be restored in Messianic time, 213

cities (*cont.*)

## of refuge

Bezer as first of, 332  
 Bozrah as, 304  
 first in territory of Reuben, 407  
 founded by Moses in territory of 2½ tribes, 799  
 as haven for those who killed unwittingly, 307 n275  
 Joshua introducing regulations for, 800 n869  
 only for Jews, 307 n275  
 sinful, 207-210  
   destroyed by fire, 211-215, 214 n179  
   doom of, caused by eight grievous sins, 1048 n60  
   eight sins of inhabitants of (neglect of justice, idolatry, incest, bloodshed, blasphemy, arrogance, slander, obscenity), 562 n54  
   misery of inhabitants of, 209-210 n155  
   punishment of, 215 n179  
   restoration of, 215 n184  
   riches of, 209-210 n155  
   treatment of strangers in, 207-208  
 Zoar as smallest of, 211

## City of Refuge

Asenath's name changed to, 425

clean animals. *See* animal(s): clean

## cloud(s)

## celestial

providing light in wilderness, 542  
 Enoch carried on, 124  
 giving signal for breaking camp in wilderness, 685-686

## of glory

covering Aaron at time of death, 743 n637  
 created in twilight, 82 n99 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)  
 departing when Israel worshiped golden calf, 622 n270  
 disappearing from sinners, 779  
 as garment at entrance of Paradise, 18  
 keeping garments of Israelites perfect for 40 years in wilderness, 544 n242  
 light provided by, 544 n243  
 not departing when Israel worshiped golden calf, 622 n270

cloud(s) (*cont.*)of glory (*cont.*)

number of, 542, 543 n241  
 one of three gifts received by Israel, given on account of merits of Aaron, 573, 574 n113 (*see also* Aaron: merits of; gifts; merits)  
 protecting Moses and Aaron from rebellion, 712  
 purple in color, 688  
 in rabbinic literature, 543 n241  
 reappearing on account of merits of Moses, 573 (*see also* Moses: merits of; merits)  
 Samael searching for Moses in, 836  
 separating dwelling places in camp, 687  
 seven in number, enveloping Israelites in Exodus, 542  
 vanishing with death of Aaron, 573, 745-746  
 walking in, one of five tokens granted to Israel after Exodus, 565  
 glory of God in, 227  
 hiding Sons of Moses (Levites) from enemies, 1088  
 leveling mountains in front of Israel, 736  
 pillar of, 48  
   over holy ark, 686  
 protecting Israelites in camp, 579  
 protecting Joshua from anger of people, 827  
 protecting only pure Israelites, 579  
 refusing to protect sinners and impure, 580 n141  
 upon sanctuary, meaning that demons hold sway, 673  
 over Sarah's tent  
   during her lifetime, 240  
   reappearing when Rebekah came, 240  
 separating Abraham from enemies, 171, 178 n34

## coat

of Aaron, atoning for murder, 650  
 one of eight priestly garments of Aaron, 650

## cock

boldest among birds, 594 n181  
 comb of, becoming white during moment of God's anger, 770  
 and hen, story about, 43-44



cock (*cont.*)

- as herald of light, 46 n194
- in mystic literature, 46 n194
- only creature to hear cry of man
  - about death, 56
- seven hymns of praise of, 44 (*see also* praise)
- on Solomon's throne, 968
- teaching regard for decorous conduct, 43-44
- uniting with peafowl, 144
- worshiped by people of Cuthah, 1044

*See also* bird(s)

## coffer

- with offering of Philistines, hidden by Josiah, 1062 n118

## coffins

- sinking of
  - by Babylonians, 430 n438
  - of Joseph, 428-430

*See also* burial

## coins

- bearing picture of Abraham and Sarah, 180
- given to Esau by Jacob in exchange for birthright, 258, 259 n46

## struck by

- Abraham, 181 n46
- David, 181 n46, 927
- Joshua, 181 n46, 853 n54
- Mordecai, 181 n46
- Solomon, depicting S.'s name, David's name, and Jerusalem, 930 n85
- struck with figure of Mordecai on reverse and Esther on obverse, 1176

## cold

- as cause of death, 1100 n92

## color(s)

## amethyst

- on standard of tribe Ephraim, 686

## azure

- color of tribe of Judah's flag in wilderness, 688

## beryl

- on standard of tribe of Dan, 686

## black

- color of celestial fire, 501
- color of dust signifying bowels, 53
- color of fire of huge angels in seventh heaven, 504
- color of fire of model of candlestick for Tabernacle, 678

color(s) (*cont.*)black (*cont.*)

- color of fire with which Torah written, 1
- color of tribe of Ephraim's flag in wilderness, 688
- color of tribe of Issachar's flag in wilderness, 688
- color of tribe of Manasseh's flag in wilderness, 688
- face of Cain becoming, 104, 105 n13

## blue

- color of cloth covering ark of covenant, 643
- corresponding to autumn, 971
- worn by king, scholars, priests, and Levites at hippodrome, 971

## of chrysolite

- on standard of tribe of Dan, 686

## corresponding to four seasons, 971

## crimson

- color of garments of angels, 617

## of diamond

- on standard of tribe of Ephraim, 686

## of dust used for creation of man, 53

## of emerald, on standard of tribe of Reuben, 686

## God showing Moses, 617

## green

- color of dust signifying pale skin, 53
- color of fire of model of candlestick for Tabernacle, 678
- color of fire of staves of heavenly Temple, 503
- color of shame on Judah's face when confessing crime with Tamar, 651
- color of tribe of Simeon's flag in wilderness, 688
- corresponding to spring, 971
- on standard of tribe of Judah, 685
- worn by heathen from afar at hippodrome, 971

## multicolored

- color of tribe of Benjamin's flag in wilderness, 688

## of panther-stone

- on standard of tribe of Dan, 686

## purple

- cloud of glory, 688
- dye obtained from murex snail, 377

color(s) (*cont.*)purple (*cont.*)

- Israelites clothed in, at Exodus, 688
- royal, color of garments of angels, 617

## red

- color of dust signifying blood, 53
- color of Esau when born, 253
- color of evening light of clouds of glory in wilderness, 544 n243
- color of fire of huge angels in seventh heaven, 504
- color of fire of model of candlestick for Tabernacle, 678
- color of fire of pillars of heavenly Temple, 503
- color of fire of staves of heavenly Temple, 503
- color of tribe of Naphtali's flag in wilderness, 688
- color of tribe of Reuben's flag in wilderness, 688
- corresponding to summer, 971
- dull
  - color of tribe of Naphtali's flag in wilderness, 688

- evening light of clouds of glory in wilderness, 544 n243
- eyes of descendants of Ham, through Canaan, 154

## fiery

- color of tribe of Asher's flag in wilderness, 688
- on standard of tribe of Judah, 685
- on standard of tribe of Judah, 685
- worn by sightseers from surrounding area at hippodrome, 971

of *sabhalom*

- on standard of tribe of Reuben, 686

## sapphire

- color of tribe of Dan's flag in wilderness, 688
- on standard of tribe of Reuben, 686

## turquoise

- on standard of tribe of Ephraim, 686

## violet

- color of garments of angels, 617
- white
  - color of dust signifying bones and veins, 53



- color(s) (*cont.*)  
 white (*cont.*)  
 color of fire of angels in third heaven, 503  
 color of fire of model of candlestick for Tabernacle, 678  
 color of fire of thresholds of heavenly Temple, 503  
 color of fire on which Torah written, 1  
 color of garments Jacob made people put on, 305 n260  
 color of garments of angels, 617  
 color of tribe of Zebulun's flag in wilderness, 688  
 corresponding to winter, 971  
 morning light of clouds of glory in wilderness, 544 n243  
 worn by Jerusalemites not wearing blue at hippodrome, 971
- Commandment. *See* Ten Commandments
- commandments  
 Noachian (*see* Noachian commandments)  
 six that every human is expected to heed, 69  
 two in Egypt, sacrificing paschal lamb and circumcision, 534-536
- commerce  
 carried on by lying and cheating, 1017 n97
- communication, divine  
 received by Moses in Hebrew language, 612 n242  
 received by prophets in Aramaic language, 612 n242
- competition  
 rabbinic law regarding, 1125 n45
- conception  
 window of, in first heaven, 503
- conjugal relations  
 abstaining from  
 by elders of Israel, 700  
 by Moses, 611, 700  
 one of three things M. did on own authority, 626 n279  
 during revelation on Sinai, 611  
 forbidden with women before they have brought purification offerings, 893 n26  
 restraint of, 1125 n48
- conquest. *See* Israel (land): conquest of
- consciousness  
 Isaiah and Elijah retaining, during prophecy, 612 n242
- constellations  
 ram, worshiped by Egyptians, 395  
*See also* heavenly bodies; Zodiac: signs of; *and under names of individual constellations*
- continence, sexual. *See* abstinence, sexual
- copper  
 fifth artificial heaven of Hiram made from, 1104  
 one of Nimrod's thrones made of, 162  
 throne of, in Paradise, for sinner who has pious son, 507
- coquetry, feminine weakness of, 940
- coriander, manna like, 433
- corn  
 Ruth gleaned ears of, 863, 866 n54
- corona (of penis)  
 uncovering of, first introduced by Joshua, 203 n126
- corpse(s)  
 exposed on gallows, 780 n788  
 of blasphemers and idolaters, 780-781 n790  
 found in field to be buried in same spot, 852  
 mistreatment of, by Jeroboam, 984-985  
 not decaying (Aaron, Abraham, Benjamin, Isaac, Jacob, Miriam, Moses), 411-412  
 not touched by worms (Aaron, Abraham, Benjamin, David, Isaac, Jacob, Miriam, Moses), 939 n128
- correction, duty of, 280 n150
- corruptness  
 one of seven evils, 450
- cosmetics  
 permitted to be sold to women in town, one of ten regulations of Ezra, 1122
- cosmocratia  
 Solomon's throne as symbol of, 1132 n13
- cosmocrator  
 Adarshan as, 163 n82  
 Ahab as, 163 n82, 988 n31  
 Ahasuerus as, 163 n82, 1129, 1138 n47  
 Alexander as, 163 n82  
 Belshazzar as, 1050-1051, 1112 n2  
 Cyrus as, 162 n82, 970 n72, 1115 n7
- cosmocrator (*cont.*)  
 Darius as, 162 n82  
 David as, 162 n82  
 Evil-merodach as, 1050-1051, 1112 n2  
 Messiah as, 161  
 Nebuchadnezzar as, 162 n82, 970 n72, 1050-1051, 1103, 1112 n2  
 Nimrod as, 162 n82  
 Pharaoh as, 163 n82, 552, 1155 n113  
 Rome as, 162 n82  
 Sennacherib as, 1047 n51  
 Solomon as, 162 n82  
 Vespasian as, 163 n82
- cosmogony, 9 n22  
 Greek theories of, 8 n17  
*See also* cosmology; firmament; heavenly bodies; *and under individual heavenly bodies*
- cosmology, 6-7, 1103  
 of sun and moon, 24-25  
*See also* cosmogony; firmament; heavenly bodies; *and under individual heavenly bodies*
- cosmos  
 threefold division of, 53 n13  
*See also* cosmogony; cosmology; firmament; heavenly bodies; *and under individual heavenly bodies*
- countenance  
 light of, one of ten parts of body received from God, 606 (*see also* body, human)
- Counting of Omer. *See* omer
- court  
 heavenly  
 Ahab's trial in, 987-988, 989 n41  
 of justice  
 God's, 2 n3  
 and punishment of sinful cities, 214 n179  
 sessions of, on Mondays and Thursdays, one of ten regulations of Ezra, 1122
- Court of the Dead  
 Samael searching for Moses in, 836
- covenant(s)  
 of Abraham, 187  
 circumcision as, 248 n318 (*see also* Abraham: and circumcision; Abraham: covenant of; circumcision; covenant[s]: sign of)  
 concerning land of Canaan, 210



covenant(s) (*cont.*)of Abraham (*cont.*)

- concerning progeny, 251
- concerning temptations, 232
  - n247
- despised by descendants of Esau, 254 n24
- fulfilled by Israel, 562
- preserved by Israel, 773
- referred to as "covenant of Levi," 674 n409
- sign of, 135 n6 (*see also* covenant[s]: sign of)
  - Shem-Melchizedek born with, 197 n102
- that descendants would go forth from Egypt with great substance, 398 n335
- to give Holy Land to his seed, scorned by Esau, 258
- between Abraham and
  - Abimelech, 222-224, 921 n51
  - inhabitants of Jebus, 235
  - Jebusites, 293
- circumcision as, 248 n318 (*see also* circumcision; covenant[s]: sign of)
- disregarded by David, 920-921
- with fathers, 434 n3
- between God and Israel
  - made second time in desert of Moab, 598
  - made third time by Joshua, 598
- and Rechabites
  - that their descendants would be members of Sanhedrin and teachers of Israel, 590
  - unconditional, 590
- and sons of Jacob, 433
- between Isaac
  - and Abimelech, 921
  - and Philistines, 293
- between Jacob
  - and Arameans, 293
  - and Laban, 293, 921
- with mothers, 434 n3
- of pieces, 198-201, 238, 331
  - Moses referring to, 510
- prophesied to Serug, 167
- sign of, 202, 554 (*see also* circumcision)
  - men born with (Adam, Balaam, David, Enoch, Gad, Isaiah, Jacob, Jeremiah, Joseph, Melchizedek, Moses, Noah, Obed, Samuel, Seth,

covenant(s) (*cont.*)sign of (*cont.*)

- men born with (*cont.*)
  - Shem-Melchizedek, Terah, Zerubbabel), 197 n102,
  - 248 n318, 253, 255 n26,
  - 829, 867 n68, 914 n13,
  - 1067 (*see also under individual names*)
- oath by, 239 n284
- son of, Jew as, 248 n318
- with tribes, 434 n3
- unconditional
  - between God and Rechabites, 590
- covetousness
  - forbidden by Tenth Commandment, 607
  - leading to transgressing all of Ten Commandments, 607-608
  - as source of all evil, 609 n235
- Cozbi
  - name, meaning of, 782 n799
  - slain by Phinehas, 794
  - wife of Zimri, 781 n791
- Crab (sign of Zodiac). *See* Cancer
- created things
  - aspiring to be infinite, 11 n43
  - usefulness of, 45 n191
- creatio ex nihilo*, 2 n5, 48 n1
- view of Rabbis on, 7 n15
- creation, 1-46
  - first day, 5-11, 7 n15
    - angels reading Torah about, in first heaven, 505 n117
    - heaven and earth created, corresponding to tablets of ark, 639
    - Moses surpassing by seizing spiritual light (Torah), 838
    - and Tabernacle of Israel, 48
    - things created on, 5-6, 77, 82 n98
  - second day, 12-17
    - angels reading Torah about, in second heaven, 505 n117
    - creation of Miriam's well, 576
    - firmament created, corresponding to curtain in Tabernacle, 639
    - Moses surpassing by scaling firmament, 838
    - not called good, 14 n54, 735
    - and Tabernacle of Israel, 48
    - things created on, 12, 77, 82 n98
    - water created, 735

creation (*cont.*)

## third day, 18-23

- angels reading Torah about, in third heaven, 505 n117
- and eating herbs on Passover, 48
- great sea created, corresponding to laver in sanctuary, 639
- Moses surpassing because sea retreating from him, 838
- things created on, 77, 82 n98
- fourth day, 23-27
  - angels reading Torah about, in fourth heaven, 505 n117
  - and golden candlestick, 48
  - Moses surpassing by asking God to provide light to Israel, 838
  - sun and moon created, corresponding to candlestick in Tabernacle, 639
  - things created on, 77, 82 n98
- fifth day, 28-33
  - angels reading Torah about, in fifth heaven, 505 n117
  - birds created, corresponding to cherubim, 639
  - and cherubim, 48
  - Moses surpassing by slaughtering animals for Israel's needs, 838
  - things created on, 77, 82 n98
- sixth day, 33-43
  - angels reading Torah about, in sixth heaven, 505 n117
  - Balaam's ass created, 766
  - and creation of Miriam's well, 220
  - and high priest, 48
  - hours of, 77 in number, 81 n96, 81 n97
  - man created, corresponding to high priest in Tabernacle, 639
  - as 1 Tishri, 77
  - things created in twilight
    - between sixth day and Sabbath, 78
    - cave in which Moses and Elijah dwelt, 78
    - clouds of glory, 82 n99
    - manna, 78, 570 n94
    - mouth of earth, 726 n581
    - opening of well at Midian, 494
    - pen for tablets of Sinai, 78
    - rainbow, 78
    - rod of Aaron, 494
    - she-ass of Balaam, 78



creation (*cont.*)sixth day (*cont.*)

things created on, 77, 82 n98

## seventh day, 606

angels reading Torah about, in  
seventh heaven, 505 n117  
and resurrection, 99

## of Adam, 3 n8, 53-55

## alphabet and, 3-5

date of, according to medieval  
authors, 81 n97

## division of waters in, 12-13

each two days of, as witnesses  
on singular sanctity of Sabbath,  
82 n98

on uniqueness of Israel, 82  
n98

on unity of God, 82 n98

## elements of, 29 n114

## ethical conception of, 50 n8

## first things created, 1-3

generations existing prior to,  
974 in number, 2 n5

God creating world with left hand,  
1166 n143

through God's justice and kind-  
ness, 54 n15

God taking counsel with Torah  
concerning, 1, 2 n3

## of man

angels and, 51-53

out of eternal chaos, 2 n5

out of nothing (*see creatio ex nihilo*)  
and praise of Lord, 43-46

progressive order of, 71, 73 n62

for sake of man, 128 n60

## seven days of

names of Esther's attendants  
related to, 1143

and seven things created in the  
beginning, 1

in six days, corresponding to parts  
of Tabernacle, 639

as struggle between light and dark-  
ness, 11 n41

ten acts of and ten sayings of, 47,  
48 n1

things created in twilights of, 82  
n99 (*see also under* creation:  
sixth day)

12 tribes as part of plan of, 343  
n70

## value of, 43

and word of God, 3, 48 n1, 85  
n102

## of world

brought about through merits of  
12 tribes, 434 n2 (*see also*  
merits; tribes: twelve)

creation (*cont.*)of world (*cont.*)

date of, 81 n97

through scepter engraved with  
Ineffable Name, 807

## creations

22 in number, 82 n98

## creatures

## of God

four men described in Bible as  
(Jeremiah, Isaiah, Jacob,  
Adam), 1071 n13

hymns of praise of, 44, 45 n194  
(*see also* praise)

in Christian legends, 46 n194

each having own hymn of  
praise, 44

## creeping things

created on sixth day, 82 n98

## criminals

regulations for burial of, 848 n31  
sanctuary at Jerusalem as asylum  
for, 947 n8

crimson. *See under* color(s)

## crocodiles

descended from frogs, 529 n179  
disappearing from Nile through  
prayers of Jeremiah, 1083  
n42

## crop (gullet)

one of 12 guides of men, grinding  
all food, 671 (*see also* body,  
human; guides: of men)

## cross

fashioned for Mordecai, used for  
Haman, 1175

of Haman, size of, 1175-1176,  
1178 n185

of Jesus, and legend of cross of  
Mordecai, 1177-1178  
n184

of Mordecai, and Christian legend  
of cross of Jesus, 1177-  
1178 n184

## crow

and raven, proverb about, 283  
*See also* bird(s)

## crown(s)

first, acquired by Moses, 672 n399  
second, acquired by Aaron, 672  
n399

third, acquired by David, 672  
n399

fourth, may be acquired by every-  
one, 672 n399

## of David

fitting only rightful successors of  
David, 941, 1037

crown(s) (*cont.*)of David (*cont.*)

weight of, 1039 n9

day of ten (*see* day of ten crowns)  
at entrance of Paradise, 18

every Israelite receiving, on day of  
revelation at Sinai, 600

of fire, for each Israelite, 601

four in number, 672 n399

given to tribe of Levi, 601

of God, and letters of alphabet, 3  
of good name, as highest crown,  
670

for head of Lord, made by  
Sandalfon, 613-614

of kingdom, one of three crowns  
Israel received from God,  
670

lost by Israelites in Jeremiah's time,  
602 n203

as ornamentation of God on letters  
of Torah, 616

of priesthood, one of three crowns  
Israel received from God,  
670

significance of, as ornamentation,  
616

three in number that Israel  
received from God (king-  
dom, priesthood, Torah),  
670

of Torah, one of three crowns Israel  
received from God, 670

of sun, 26 n101

## cruelty

of Sodomites, 209

## cruse

representing Saul's temporary rule,  
915 n22

## crying

heard in land of Philistines, 216  
*See also* tears; weeping

## crystal

giving owner courage in battle, 652  
stone of tribe of Gad in breastplate  
of Aaron, 652

## cup(s)

drinking, made from skulls of slain  
enemies, 1100 n90  
silver, reserved for king and viceroy  
in Egypt, 383 n256

## curse(s)

of Balaam, 214

Balaam's attempts at, 766-774

of Cain, 108 n22

of Canaan, 188

of earth after Adam's fall, 135 n6  
of Esau for selling birthright, 258



curse(s) (*cont.*)

- of ground on account of Cain, 107
- of Ham by Noah, 154
- Noah first to utter against associates, 153
- of one who stole teraphim, 293
- against those who reckon end of time, 1117 n19
- 12 in number, recited by Levites facing Mount Ebal, 843
- unintentional, 294 n224

## curtain

- Gabriel exclaiming from behind, 1116 n7

## Cush (another name for Saul), 941 n134

- Cush (son of Ham; father of Nimrod), 161
- as builder of Tower of Babel, 164 n88

## Cushan

- another name for Laban, 861
- Israel oppressed by, for eight years, 861, 862 n29

Cuthah, people of  
worshiping cock, 1044

## cymbals, 367, 394

- in fourth heaven, 125
- played by Amaltheas, 461
- See also* instruments, musical

Cyrus (king of Persia), 1111  
as agent of vengeance on Babylon, 1111

- allowing Jews to rebuild Temple, but only from wood, 1113, 1119

## Artaxerxes as Greek name of, 1131 n4

- censured severely by Babylonian authorities, 1115 n7
- as cosmocrator, 162 n82, 970 n72, 1115 n7 (*see also* cosmocrator)

## and Darius

- conquering Babylonia, 1111
- C. as son-in-law of D., 1111, 1119
- C. as son of D., 1131 n4
- war between, 1113

## degeneration of, 1115 n7

## as descendant of Japheth, 154

## father of Ahasuerus, 1131 n4

## favored by Palestinian authorities, 1115 n7

## found worthy to sit on Solomon's throne, 1115 n7, 1131 n13

## proclamation of, 1115 n7

Cyrus (*cont.*)

- receiving Chaldea, Persia, and Assyria, 1111
- reigning for three or four years, 1120 n28
- to be builder of second Temple, 154
- youth of, 1120 n29

## D

## Dabria

- one of five scribes going with Ezra, 1122

## Dagon

- fallen down before ark, 894 n34
- god of Philistines, 892
- priests of, subjected to crucifixion, 894 n34

## dalet (letter)

- creation of world through, 4
- standing for *davar* ("Divine Word"), 4
- din* ("justice"), 4
- See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet

## Damascus

- founding of, 106 n19
- as home of Gehazi and Zadokite sect, 1030 n17
- Israelite exiles taken to, by Assyrians, 1044
- as place of Abel's slaying, 140 n14
- Damesek (son of Eliezer; servant of Abraham), 297, 298 n244
- set over one of companies of Jacob, 297

## Dan (elder from tribe of Judah), 696

## Dan (son of Jacob)

- and Asher and Naphtali
- colors of standard of tribes of, 686
- attacking Edom to east, 321
- in battle of Sartan, 315
- blessing of, by Jacob, 408
- referring to Samson, 879 n116
- bloodthirsty, 334 n34
- confession of, 443-444
- death of, 444
- enmity of, toward Joseph, 427 n432
- fighting against Ninevites, 313
- as firstborn of mother, 403
- and Gad and Naphtali and Asher
- planning to kidnap Asenath, 426

- having numerous children, 435 n6
- having only one son, 435 n6

Dan (*cont.*)

- marriage of
- to Elflalet, daughter of Moabite Hamudan, 348
- name, meaning of, 286, 433
- one of weak among sons of Jacob, 396 n324
- son of
- called "heath-rush" because of having many children, 435 n6
- son of Bilhah, named by Rachel, 286
- as standard-bearer, corresponding to Uriel, 685
- to make Mizraim like a desert, 386
- tribe of
- anti-Christ to be from, according to Christian legend, 580 n141
- blessed by Moses, 823
- blessed with strength and might, 823
- blessed with territory in Holy Land in two sections, 823
- confessing they taught children out of books of Amorites, 855
- elders from (Gedaliah, Jogli, Ahinoam, Ahiezer, Daniel, Seraiah), 696
- flag of, sapphire in color, with picture of serpent, 688
- four heroes of (Samson, Zaliah, Ira [David's friend], and Seraiah), 796 n854
- idolatry of, 579, 937 n119
- maternal ancestor of Messiah from, 410 n392
- migrating to Ethiopia, 983
- not covered by clouds of glory, 776 n776
- one of four standard-bearers, 685
- precious stone of
- ligure, 856
- topaz, 651
- prince of (Ahiezer), 679-680
- significance of dedication offering of, 669-670
- spy representing (Ammiel), 705
- standard of
- insignia of serpent on, 686, 689 n447
- inscription on, 686
- as warriors, 983
- dancing
- accompanying song at Red Sea, 564



dancing (*cont.*)

custom of kings of Media to have dancers appear at carousals, 1137 n35

at feast of Ahasuerus, 1133

## danger

avoidance of, 276

Daniel (descendant of Judah), 285, 1095-1097

accompanied by prophets Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi, 1096 n76

appointing Zerubbabel as successor, 1115

born in Shushan, 1117 n17

## burial of

grave of, 1117-1118

among kings of Babylon, 1118 n20

in Shushan, 1117

charged to bring fodder for cattle to Babylonia and swine from Alexandria, 1096

and Cyrus, 1113

C. urging D. to worship Bel, 1113

D. cast into lion's den by C., 1113

D. introducing Ezra and Zerubbabel to C., 1113

D. praying for C.'s success in war against king of Mosul, 1113

D. received kindly in Shushtar by C., 1113

D. receiving divine charge to urge C. to rebuild Temple, 1113

## and Darius

Daniel as one of triumvirate administering realm of Darius, 1114

Daniel cast into lions' pit, 1114 (*see also* Daniel: and lions)

Daniel praying that Darius's sight be restored, 1114

Daniel received kindly by Darius, 1113

Darius accusing Daniel of taking sacred garments, 1113-1114

Darius putting Daniel in prison, 1113-1114

Darius sending for Daniel, 1116 n9

death of, in Holy Land, 1118 n20  
described by God as His servant, 805 n880 (*see also* servant of God)

Daniel (*cont.*)

## and dragon

D. causing dragon to perish, 1107

encounter of D. with Bel, shown to Jacob, 277

in story of Bel and Dragon, 1108 n112 (*see also* Bel)

## error of

in calculation of end of time, 1117 n19

in computing 70 years of exile prophesied by Jeremiah, 1131 n5

as eunuch, 1097 n78

as eyewitness of three exiles (under Jehoiakim, Jehoiachin, Zedekiah), 1096 n76

first to lay foundation of house of God, 1096 n76

giving thanks to God, 285

going to Tiberias and building canal, 1096

and Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah (*see* Daniel: and three companions)

identified with Sheshbazzar, 1120 n23

interceding on behalf of Jehoiachin, 1109 n119

interpreting inscription on wall at Belshazzar's feast, 1111

that Darius would be successor of Nebuchadnezzar, 1112 n4

Jonah and Habakkuk as contemporaries of, 1071 n14

and lions, 1104 n104

D. cast into lions' pit, 1114

D. saved from lions, 1096 n76, 1096 n77

lion ordered not to harm D., 48  
mausoleum of, 1118 n20

merits of, loving-kindness, charity, and prayer, 1096-1097 n77

miracles wrought for, due to merits of Abraham, 1097 n77 (*see also* Abraham: merits of; merits)

and Nebuchadnezzar

D. attempting to shorten N.'s punishment as beast, 1103, 1104 n104

D. having prominent position in royal court, 1095

D. interpreting N.'s dream, 1095-1096

Daniel (*cont.*)and Nebuchadnezzar (*cont.*)

D. refusing to obey N.'s command to worship idol, 1099 n83

not permitting self to be interrupted in prayer, 1176 n172

one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)

one of six pious men endowed with spiritual gifts descended from Ruth, 866 n61 (*see also* under pious: men)

one of three who lived to see new world, 462 n35

## other names of

Hathach, 1096 n76, 1161

Memuchan, 1096 n76 (*see also* Daniel-Memuchan)

Sheshbazzar, 1096 n76

under Persian kings, 1113-1117  
piety of, 1107-1109

prayers of, 1114

as priest, 1115 n6, 1128 n56

as promised Messiah, 1097 n77

as prophet, 1096 n76, 1117 n18  
refraining from eating forbidden

food, 1096 n77

refusing to worship idol, 1107

retiring in Shushan, 1115

royal descent of, 1115 n6

as son of Abal, 1115 n6

as son of Jeconiah (i.e., Jehoiachin), 1096 n76

in story of Bel and Dragon, 1108 n112 (*see also* Bel)

and three companions (Hananiah, Mishael, Azariah), 1095

as descendants of Hezekiah, to serve Babylonian rulers as eunuchs, 1051

as descendants of kings of Judah, 1096 n76

refusing to worship Nebuchadnezzar's idol, 1097

riddle of Queen of Sheba about, 960

self-mutilation of, 1095

three companions thrown into furnace, 1096 n76

and Vashti, enmity between, 1136-1137, 1138 n45

wife of, speaking to him only in Persian, 1136-1137



Daniel (*cont.*)  
 wisdom, piety, and good deeds of, 1095  
 writings by and about, 1117 n18  
 Daniel (elder from tribe of Dan), 696  
 Daniel (priest)  
   identified with Daniel (descendant of Judah), 1128 n56  
 Daniel, Book of  
   edited or declared canonical by Great Synagogue, 1128 n56  
   men of Great Assembly as editors of, 1071 n15  
   as part of Hagiographa, 1096 n76  
 Daniel and the Dragon  
   legend as basis for, 568 n76  
   *See also* Bel; Daniel: and dragon  
 Daniel-Memucan  
   having unpleasant experiences in conjugal life, 1136-1137  
 Danites. *See* Dan: tribe of  
 Darda  
   wisdom of, not as great as Solomon's, 949-950  
 Darius (*to be identified variously as Darius I, Darius II, Darius III, or Darius the Mede*)  
   as agent of vengeance on Babylon, 1111  
   angel sent from God to blind D., 1113-1114  
   appointing Cyrus as successor, 1119  
   and Ahasuerus  
     D. as grandfather of A., 1131 n4  
     D. as son of A., 1129  
     D. as son of A. and Esther, 1111, 1131 n5, 1144 n80  
     D. giving Vashti to A. as wife, 1135  
   born on day when  
     Nebuchadnezzar entered Temple, 1120 n28  
   as cosmocrator, 162 n82 (*see also* cosmocrator)  
   and Cyrus  
     D. as father-in-law of C., 1111  
     D. as father of C., 1131 n4  
     D. as successor to C., 1116 n10  
   dividing empire of Belshazzar, 1116 n10  
   war between, 1113  
   king of Media, 1111  
   not daring to sit on throne of Solomon, 969

Darius (*cont.*)  
   permitting rebuilding of Temple, 1129  
   receiving Babylon and Media, 1111  
   reigning for one year, 1120 n28, 1121 n30  
   to be credited with return of exiles, 1121 n30  
 darkness  
   coming on Adam after fall, 110 n32  
   created on first day, 82 n98  
   density of, 532-533  
   on earth in days of Enoch, 126-127  
   over Egypt, 48  
     causing death of many people in Egypt, 534 n198  
     as ninth plague, 524-525, 532-533  
     three days of, 784 n806  
     to envelop Egypt when Joseph's bones removed, 437  
   evil deeds done in, 214 n170  
   during flood, 147  
   God judging Gentiles in, 773, 774 n769  
   of hell, 532, 534 n198  
   in Messianic time, 243  
   one of ten things produced on first day of creation, 5  
   and punishment of Azazel, 135  
   punishment of evil deeds in, 214 n170  
   at Red Sea, 532, 534 n198  
   wicked in Israel dying during, 534 n198  
 date  
   of Abraham's circumcision, 203 n124  
   of birth of Isaac, 218  
   of birth of redeemer of Israel  
     announced by astrologers, 471 n21  
   Day of Atonement  
     Zechariah son of Jehoiada killed, 1038  
   Hanukkah  
     sacrifices of Cain and Abel, 105 n11  
   New Year  
     Joseph leaving prison, 366 n169  
     sacrifices of Cain and Abel, 105 n11  
   Pentecost  
     sacrifices of Cain and Abel, 105 n11

date (*cont.*)  
   *For specific dates, see under individual months:* Adar, Av, Heshvan, Iyar, Kislev, Nisan, Shevat, Sivan, Tammuz, Tevet, Tishri  
 Dathan  
   and Abiram  
     accosting Moses and Aaron  
       about increased oppression, 521  
     betraying Moses to Pharaoh, 487  
     as bitter enemies of Moses, 488 n75  
     breaking commandments concerning manna, 572  
     counted as one of five men wicked from first to last, 1044 n39  
     Israelites wanting D. and A. to be leaders, 712  
     Moses recounting sins of, 724  
     no longer threats to Moses when M. returned, 515  
     punishment of, with Korah, 725-726  
     remaining in Egypt while Pharaoh pursuing Israelites, 550, 552-553 n18  
     ringleaders of rebellion of Korah, 488 n75  
     seeking to overthrow Moses, 718  
     sin of saving manna to next day  
       betrayed by worms, 572, 574 n110  
     summoned by Moses, 722-723  
     transgressing commandment concerning manna, 488 n75  
   complaining to Moses about Egyptian taskmaster, 486  
   name, meaning of, 718  
   and Shelomith, story of Moses and, 486  
 daughters of man  
   and fallen angels, 82 n98  
 daughters of Zion  
   haughty, 65  
 David  
   and Abishai  
     praying for deliverance from Philistines, 934  
     slaying Ishbi, 934  
   and Abner  
     D. mourning for A., 947 n6  
     D. saved from A. by wasp, 919



David (*cont.*)

Abraham contrasted with, 189 n61  
and Absalom

D. executing Ethiopian who informed him of A.'s death, 933 n107

D. interceding for A., 932

D. rewarding Ahimaaz, who attempted to keep A.'s death secret, 933 n107

D.'s despair over rebellion of A., 932

D.'s prayer bringing A. into Paradise, 933 n107

and Adam

A. giving D. 70 years of life, 911

adding benediction to Grace after Meals, 1128 n58 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)

adversaries, ten in number (Saul, Doeg, Ahitophel, Sheba, Shimei, Shobach, Goliath, Goliath's three brothers), 922 n59

age at death

70 years, 943 n146

71 years, 912 n12

and Ahitophel

A. as D.'s best friend, 923 n61

A. as master and teacher of D., 923 n61

D. consulting A. about transporting ark to Jerusalem, 923

D. fearing no one except A., 923 n61

D. learning two things from A., 923 n62

related by blood, 922

story of shard and abyss, 923

strained relations between, 923

and angel

angel intervening with Saul, 919

D. tricked by angel of death, 938

anointed king, 912-915

by Samuel at age 28 years, 913, 914 n13

appearance of

beauty of, 917 n40

having reddish hair, 914 n13

having ruddy complexion, 914 n13

appointing pious men to administration, 923, 924 n68

and ark

D. erring in putting ark on wagon, 924 n68

David (*cont.*)

and ark (*cont.*)

D. forgetting instruction that ark must be carried on shoulders, 786

D. punished for attempting to transport ark on wagon, 665

atonement of, 933-934

and Bathsheba (*see also* Bathsheba: and David)

D. living like ascetic in penance for sin with B., 939 n128

birth and descent of, 911-912

born circumcised, 914 n13 (*see also* covenant[s]: sign of)

censured for sins, 930 n92

census in reign of, 637

D. omitting Levites from census, 936

D. taking census in defiance of law in Pentateuch, 936

chief virtues of

justice, 929 n78

loving-kindness, 929 n78

coins struck by

depicting shepherds crook and pouch and Tower of David, 927

compared with Haman, 760

as composer of psalms, 927

fleeing from Absalom, 933 n100 to make evil spirit depart, 903 n67

composing "songs of thanks," 285, 288 n175

as cosmocrator, 162 n82, 961 n40 (*see also* cosmocrator)

crown(s) of

always fitting legitimate king of house of David, 941

D. acquiring third crown, 672 n399

weight of, 1039 n9

curse of, on Joab

transferred to Solomon's offspring, 946

and daily prayers

D. instituting practice of saying 100 benedictions, 937 n123

death of, 938

at age 70 years, on Sabbath, 938

corpse not touched by worms, 939 n128 (*see also* under corpse[s])

legend concerning death of D. similar to legend of death of Moses, 833 n952

David (*cont.*)

death of (*cont.*)

on Pentecost, 938

on Sabbath, according to Kabbalah, 466 n3

as descendant

D. as great-grandson of Boaz, 911

D. as supposed son of slave, 912

of Judah, 285, 288 n175, 407, 916

of Miriam, 911

of Miriam and Caleb, 469, 470 n19

son of Natzbat and Jesse, 911

of Tamar, 344

devotion of, to Holy Land, 920 n50

disregarding covenants of patriarchs, 920-921

distinction for

reserved for judgment day, 939

dreams of

D. always troubled by bad dreams, 930 n89

dynasty of

eight rulers of, dying violent death (Joram, Ahaziah, Athaliah, Jehoash,

Amaziah, Amon, Josiah, Jehoiakim), 933 n107

sovereignty of, one of six gifts as reward for observance of Sabbath, 572 (*see also* gifts)

eight sons of

dying premature death, 933 n107

encountering *reem*, lion, and deer, 913

and evil inclination (*see also* evil inclination)

D. slaying evil inclination, 939 n128

evil inclination having no power over, 412, 928, 939 n128

excommunicated by Sanhedrin, 933 n101

family of, 940-942

famine in time of, 189, 901, 934-935

D. not providing for people from wealth during famine, 934-935

fate of

compared with fate of Job and Solomon, 463 n39

finding inscription about king

reigning 1,000 years, 973 n79



David (*cont.*)

five insulting names hurled at D.  
     by Shimei (adulterer,  
     Moabite, murderer, leper,  
     abomination), 931 n96  
 forced to leave Holy Land, 920 n50  
 garment of  
     made from fleece of sheep saved  
     from wild beasts, 914 n15  
 giving alms to poor daily, 929 n78  
 and God  
     conversation between, 918  
     glorification of name of God by  
     D., 824 n913  
     God standing by D., 918  
 and Goliath, 915-918  
     D. afflicting G. with leprosy,  
     916  
     D. casting evil eye on G., 916  
     D. given strength by angel  
     Ceriuel, 918 n43  
     D. meeting G. with five pebbles,  
     916  
     D. related to G. by blood, 915  
 harp of  
     strings made from gut of ram  
     sacrificed by Abraham on  
     Mount Moriah, 927  
     strings vibrating at midnight to  
     awaken D. for study of  
     Torah, 927  
 house of  
     allowed to sit in Temple, 982,  
     984 n9  
     Israel (northern kingdom)  
     renouncing, 984 n10  
 humility of, 406 n376  
 idolatry of, 933 n101  
 impotence of, 946 n3  
 Jacob as example for, 342  
 and Jerusalem  
     D. believing that "place which  
     Lord will choose" refers to  
     Jerusalem, 908 n101  
 and Jesse  
     J. telling D. to have brothers  
     send wives bills of divorce,  
     917 n33  
 Job compared with, 463 n39  
 joined by 1,400 scholars at  
     Adullam, 920 n50  
 and Jonathan  
     D. asking J. to bring eight men  
     for quorum for prayer, 919  
     n50  
     J. not giving D. provisions,  
     resulting in misfortunes,  
     919-920 n50

David (*cont.*)

as judge  
     condemning man to death on  
     false testimony, 929 n78  
 kindness of, 740 n635  
 as king  
     D. as "elect" among kings, 912  
     n1  
     visitations upon Palestine during  
     reign of D., 934-937  
 kingdom of  
     given to Israelites conditionally,  
     590 n173 (*see also* gifts)  
 law of  
     no man exempt from service in  
     defensive war, 920 n50  
     that no woman should be alone  
     with man, 942 n143  
 and Levites  
     D. adding eight sections of  
     Levites, for 24 total, 683  
     D. omitting Levites from cen-  
     sus, 936  
     D. teaching Levites to sing  
     hymns, 930 n84  
 life history of  
     found in blessing of Judah, 410  
     n388  
 life span of  
     appointed to be lengthened by  
     Adam's contribution, 59  
     D. receiving five years from  
     Abraham, 912 n12  
     D. receiving 48 years from  
     Joseph, 912 n12  
     D. receiving 28 years from  
     Jacob, 912 n12  
     three hours of existence allotted  
     to D. at first, 911  
 listening to Ziba's slander against  
     Mephibosheth, 909 n109  
 loved by God but hated by fellow  
     men, 1120 n27  
 merits of  
     acquired by study of Torah, 924  
     n67  
     Hezekiah owing 15 years of life  
     to, 1050  
     *See also* merits  
 and Messiah  
     D. as one of names of Messiah,  
     939 n128  
     D. as promised Messiah, 939  
     n128  
     second D. to be Messiah, 939  
     n128  
 and Michal  
     legality of D.'s marriage to M.,  
     941 n133

David (*cont.*)

and Michal (*cont.*)  
     marriage annulled by Saul, 940  
     M. taken from D. by Saul, 905  
     n80  
 and Moabites, 912 n9  
 modesty of, 927, 930 n86  
 Moses praying for, 821  
 as musician  
     D. making musical instruments,  
     930 n84  
 names and titles of, 928 n78  
     elect of God, 911, 912 n1  
     Elhanan, 928 n78  
     man of God, 838 n965 (*see also*  
     man of God)  
     one of 18 called "servant of  
     God," 452 n2 (*see also* ser-  
     vant of God)  
     servant of Lord, 805 n80, 929  
     n78 (*see also* servant of  
     Lord)  
     son of Jesse as derogatory title,  
     588 n163  
 one of five kings anointed, 658  
     n371, 893 n30  
 one of four pious men who  
     addressed unbecom-  
     ing words to God, 628 n284  
     (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of seven pillars of earth, 9 n28  
     (*see also under* world[s])  
 one of six pious men endowed  
     with spiritual gifts  
     descended from Ruth, 866  
     n61 (*see also under* pious:  
     men)  
 in Paradise, 938-940  
     D. in hall of gold in, 23 n97  
     D. in third division of, 19  
     D. intoning psalms in, 938  
     D. on horse of fire in, 939 n129  
     D. pronouncing blessing over  
     wine in, 939  
     D. ranking first in heavenly  
     realm, 938  
 partaking of holy bread, 909 n107,  
     920 n50  
 and Philistines  
     D. acting as madman in pres-  
     ence of Achish, 918-919  
     D. coming to Achish, king of  
     Philistines, 918  
     D. singing 15 Songs of Ascents,  
     923  
 piety and sin of, 927-931  
 power of eye of, 916, 917 n39



David (*cont.*)

- prayer of
  - efficacy of, 927
  - for exiled Israel, 930 n87
  - for strength against enemies, 986 n21
- as prophet, 915 n24
  - D. as early prophet, 501 n109
  - D. prophesying that he would kill Goliath and erect house of God, 915 n23
  - D. receiving gift of prophecy, 913
- and psalms, 930 n84
  - D. composing psalms only when put in state of ecstasy by music, 929 n81
- punishment of
  - for boastful words regarding Torah, 786
  - D. choosing plague rather than war as punishment, 936, 937 n123
  - with leprosy for adultery, 931 n96
  - in old age for cutting corner of Saul's mantle, 901
  - for speaking of God as the one who stirred up Saul, 937 n119
  - for staying in safe place while army fought Absalom, 933 n107
- and purging of sixth heaven, 5
- repenting for 22 years, 928
- reverence shown to scholars by, 930 n86
- royalty belonging to, 509
- and Sabbath
  - D. coming to high priest Ahimelech on Sabbath and finding priests making shewbread, desecrating Sabbath, 909 n107
  - D. spending every Sabbath studying Torah as protection against angel of death, 938
- and Satan
  - S. appearing to D. in form of deer, 933
  - S. appearing to D. in shape of bird, 928
- and Saul
  - D. cutting off fringes from S.'s garment, 905 n81
  - D. pursued by S., 918-920
  - D. surpassing S. in knowledge and as teacher, 908 n102

David (*cont.*)

- and Saul (*cont.*)
  - D. wearing S.'s armor, 916
  - S. taking Merab from D., 905 n80
- saved by
  - miracle, 934
  - spider's web, 919
  - wasp, 919
- second, to be Messiah, 939 n128
- seized by Ishbi, brother of Goliath, 933
- seven stones of, for Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Moses, Aaron, David, God, 917 n38
- Shekinah departing from, 928
- as shepherd, 501 n109, 912
  - one of shepherds who assist Messiah on the right, 100 n142
  - tested as shepherd of people, 500 (*see also* Moses)
- shield of (Magen David)
  - magic power of, 964 n54
- sin of
  - D. desiring to keep sin secret, 806 n889
  - as reason for destruction of priests of Nob, 933
  - as reason why Doeg cast out of pious, 933
  - as reason why Saul and three sons slain, 933
  - taking census without requiring half-shekel offering, 937 n119
- slaying wild beasts with stones, 914 n15
- and Solomon
  - D. receiving revelation about S. as successor and builder of Temple, 946 n3
  - D. transmitting to S. instructions concerning furniture and vessels of Temple, 967 n57
  - parallels between D. and S., 955 n24
  - superiority of S. to D. 966
- as son of Jesse
  - D. as least esteemed of Jesse's sons, 915 n23
  - D. as seventh son of Jesse, 682
- sovereignty of, one of six gifts to Israel from God, 584 (*see also* gifts)
- spending leisure time in study and prayer, 927

David (*cont.*)

- story of
  - D. and honey jars, 913-914
  - discovery of thief, 956 n27
  - strength of, 913, 914 n15
  - stricken with leprosy for half a year, 928
- sword of
  - D. swearing by sword, 922 n59
  - Name of God engraved on, 922 n59
- taking 60 breaths of sleep, 927
- and Temple
  - D. seeing earthly and heavenly Temple, 817 n905
  - D.'s wish for Temple, 966
  - site of Temple made known to D. by prophet Gad, 967 n57
- throne of, in Paradise, opposite Divine Throne, 938-939
- time of
  - human life span shortened during, 257 n36
- tomb of, 942-943
  - Herod erecting monument over, 943 n144
  - Herod taking money from, 942
  - Hyrcanus taking money from, 942
  - Solomon putting treasures in, 942
  - story of Jewish washerwomen and, 943
  - story of Muslim pasha dropping sword into, 942-943
- and Torah
  - D. receiving kingdom as reward for zeal in study of Torah, 928 n78
- treated badly by Shimei b. Gera, 947
- trembling of, 936
- and Uriah the Hittite
  - D. slaying U. with sword of children of Ammon, 922 n59
  - U. assisting D. with Goliath's armor in return for Israelite wife, 916
- vanguard of, 941, 942 n143
- victory of, over Lahmi, brother of Goliath, 943 n146
- warfare of, 920-922
  - with Amalekites
    - D. aided by divine intervention, 919
    - D. massacring Amalekites, 307 n278



David (*cont.*)

- warfare of (*cont.*)
  - with Amalekites (*cont.*)
    - D. slaying Amalekite, 582
  - D. buying Jerusalem from Jebusites, 920
  - D. planning to get Jerusalem from Jebusites, 920
  - D. singing song of praise in gratitude for victory over Sihon and Og, 755
  - D. treating fallen warriors with piety, 927 n77
- against Edom, 926 n77
  - D. censured for waging war against Edom, 756 n706
- 18 campaigns of, 922 n59
- against Midianites, 914 n15
- against Philistines, in Valley of Giants, 920-921
- against Shobach the Aramean, 921
- against Syria, 920 n50
- walls of Jerusalem lowering before D., 920, 922 n53
- wives of
  - Abigail, 940
  - D. having 18 wives, 946 n3
  - D. having six wives, 940
  - legality of D.'s marriage to Michal, 941 n133
  - Merab, taken from D. by Saul, 905 n80
  - world created for sake of, 939 n128
- Davidic dynasty. *See* David: dynasty of
- Davidic kingdom. *See* David: as king; David: kingdom of
- day
  - angels preparing manna for Israel, 617
  - distinguished from night, 617
  - duration of
    - one of ten things produced on first day of creation, 5
  - God revealing Self to prophets and Jews during, 279 n131, 292
  - Israel judged by God during, 214 n170, 773, 774 n769
  - of revelation on Sinai, twice as long as ordinary day, 613
  - spent by Moses in learning Torah from God, 634
- Day of Atonement
  - Akedah taking place on, 230, 232 n248
  - ceremonies for high priest entering Holy of Holies on, 676

Day of Atonement (*cont.*)

- ceremony of scapegoat on, 137-138 n10
- consecration ceremonies of Temple held on, 966
- day on which Israel finally received Torah, 631-632
- expiatory sacrifice on, 230, 265
- God giving instructions for building Tabernacle on, 638, 640
- Minḥah service of, 687 n440 (*see also* Minḥah service; prayers, Jewish)
- observance of, in time to come, 632 n301
- one of 70 holy days celebrated by Jews, 648
- Satan having no power to accuse Israel on, 632 n300
- set on 10 Tishri, 631-632
- smoke of fire of altar as portent of prosperous new year or not, 661 n380
- ten men needed for public divine service on, 249
- two he-goats sacrificed on, 136
- Zechariah son of Jehoiada killed on, 1038
- day of judgment
  - activity of Elijah on, 1021
  - banquet for righteous to be held on, 939
  - burning of idols in Gehenna on, 558 n41
  - David at God's right hand on, 939 n128
  - deeds made known on, 99
  - distinction reserved for David on, 939
  - evil inclination to be slain by God on, 306 n275
  - ḥayyot to bear witness to God on, 726 n586
  - Isaac to redeem descendants from Gehenna on, 261
  - Korah to bear witness to God on, 726 n586
  - Metatron to bear witness to God on, 726 n586
  - and punishment of Azazel, 135
  - and punishment of generation of Tower, 165-166 n90
  - and resurrection of Adam, 97
  - struggle between Elijah and Sammael on, 999 n33
  - suffering on, 572
  - wicked to be led from hell to Paradise on, 939

## Day of Rejoicing of Law

- according to Ashkenazic ritual, 481 n57
- day of ten crowns, 658-661
- 1 Nisan as, 658
- day of the Lord
  - as thousand years, 99 n140
  - as world to come, 99 n140
- days
  - counting of, between Passover and Feast of Weeks, 592 n175
  - of week, unfavorable to Haman's lots, 1150-1151
- days to come
  - all nations will rise up against Edom, 304
  - See also* future world; time to come; world to come
- dead
  - blind, childless, lepers, and poor considered as, 517 n142
  - intercession of, 128 n60
  - prayer of, 1013 n84
  - in Sheol
    - reviving at sound of divine voice, 604
  - in sixth and seventh divisions of Paradise, 20
  - tax on, in Egypt, 192-193
- dead, resurrection of. *See* resurrection: of dead
- Dead Sea
  - coals as large as, in hell, 13
  - formed by canals of Vale of Siddim, 194
- Dead Sea (Sea of Sodom)
  - Sea of Sodom known to Pausanias and Church Fathers as, 20 n73
- death
  - angel of (*see* angel[s], general: types, of death)
  - as being gathered to one's people, 739
  - brought into world by
    - Adam, 99
    - woman, 65
  - caused by
    - sword of angel, 58 n20
    - venom from hand of angel, 58 n20
  - causing death not as serious a sin as murder, 334 n36
  - day of
    - communicated to pious, 739
    - hereditary, 100 n142
    - by kiss, 832 n950
    - from God, 741, 743 n639



death (*cont.*)by kiss (*cont.*)

privilege granted to only few people, 832 n950

rationalistic interpretation of, 832 n950

moment of, as judgment, 58 n20  
of Moses and those free from sin caused by sin of Adam, 806 n888

penalty of Adam to be suffered by all, 100 n142

## personified

adorned with great beauty, 247  
speaking to Abraham, 247

of pious as painless, 58 n20

preparation for, of Isaac, 264

proverb about, 972

as punishment for perjury, 948 n11

remedy against, given to Moses by angel of death, 615

resuscitation from, brought about by means of dew, 994 (*see also* resurrection of dead)

70 kinds of, 95 n129

signs of approaching, 401 n345  
sickness preceding, 400

as sleep, 61 n25

sudden, 400, 401 n357

symbolized by round lentil, 257

three heavenly messengers present at, 97 n135

## time of

and appearance of God, 99

radiance of glory seen on pious man at, 635 n309

of wicked as painful, 58 n20

window of, in first heaven, 503

withering of wreath as sign of, 934 n110

## Deborah (daughter of Uz)

## burial place of

below Bethel, under palm tree, 317

called "river of Deborah," 318 n301

mistranslation of name of, 318 n301

death of, in Bethel, 317

## and Jacob

D. accompanying J. always, 316-317

D. as J.'s nurse, 318 n302

as mother of Bilhah and Zilpah, 284 n167

nurse of Rebekah, sent to Jacob, 290, 291 n204

Deborah (*cont.*)

prophecy concerning, as part of blessing of Naphtali, 408

Deborah (prophetess and judge), 867-871

## and Barak

haughtiness of D. toward B., 1061-1062 n117

song of praise of, 869

celebrating victory of Sisera with festival at Shiloh, 873 n92

mourning for, 869

name, meaning of ("bee"), 870 n75, 1062 n117

one of two eminent women in Bible, 1061-1062 n117

pictured as fig tree, 874 n103

pride of, 870 n75

receiving revelations from Michael, 870 n73

reigning as judge for 40 years, 869

sitting under palm tree where Deborah (daughter of Uz) buried, 317

subject to frailties of female sex, 868

from tribe of Ephraim, 870 n73

from tribe of Naphtali, 870 n73

wealth of, 870 n74

Decalogue. *See* Ten Commandments

## decapitation

punishment for all those seen by witnesses to worship golden calf, 626

in war, 581

## deceit

as companion of hatred, 447

not created by God, 147 n36

*See also* lying

deception. *See* Deceit; falsehood; lie, diplomatic; lying

## decree

## heavenly

sealing of, with wax or blood, 1159, 1161 n122

## Decuriones

advising Nebuchadnezzar (i.e., Titus) to destroy Jews, 1087 n52

Dedila. *See* Delilah

## deeds

as accusers and defenders, 52 n12  
book of record of, 99 n141

## good

bare of, 95 n120

God giving reward for, 332

recorded by Elijah and Messiah, 1000 n35, 1000 n38

deeds (*cont.*)

made known on judgment day, 99

## Deli

place where Abraham saved from fire, 161 n76

## Delilah

death of, rotting alive, 882

## mother of

Eli, 892 n25

Micah and Heliu (Eli), 882 n125

name, meaning of, 880 n121

## and Samson

D. causing S. to lose everything, 880 n121

D. selling S.'s secret to Philistines, 880

## demon(s)

Agrat, daughter of Mahlat as, 27 n109

Agrimus as firstborn of, 31

## and angels

angels able to see demons, 82 n98

demons as descendants of fallen angels, 82 n98, 121 n57

demons between angels and men, 82 n98

demons having wings like angels, 82 n98

Ben Zadua as chief of, 529 n185

## bodies of

covered with hair, 866 n58, 961 n40 (*see also* hair)

created in twilight, 82 n99 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)

created on sixth day, 77

*dudaim* plant used in expelling, 289 n189

Egypt as home of, 66 n40

exercising power from 17 Tammuz to 9 Av, 660

faces of, covered with hair, 866 n58

as fallen angels, 975 n84

feet of, resembling those of cock, 977 n92

female, misleading pious man, 1017 n97

## form of

assuming any form they please, 82 n98

genii as, 961 n40

heads of, bald, 866 n58

as husbands of she-devils Lilith and Mahlah, 843

Keteb as most dangerous of, 660

losing fear of men as result of idolatry, 117



demon(s) (*cont.*)

male, having hair on heads, 866 n58  
 name for, 81 n98  
 and newborn, legend of, 139  
 not casting shadow, 82 n98  
 numbers of, 82 n98  
 observing Torah, 975 n84  
 as offspring of Adam and Lilith, 131  
 presence of, at debates of scholars, 975 n84  
 ruling Friday night and Saturday, 488 n72  
 seducing men to  
   idolatry, 82 n98, 118 n54  
   sin, 121 n57  
 and Solomon  
   demons as personal attendants of S., 962  
   demons assisting S. in building of Temple, 962, 965 n56  
   demons at throne of S., 970 n69  
   S. inventing incantations to exorcise, 962  
 as souls of wicked, 82 n98  
 three classes of (angel-like, human-like, animal-like), 975 n84  
 transformation of hyena into, 43 n190  
 vanishing as soon as Tabernacle erected, 660  
*See also* angels, fallen; devil(s); evil spirits

depilatory  
 used on Queen of Sheba, 961 n40

desert, 565-569

Dudael  
   as abode of Behemoth, 30 n127  
   and punishment of Azazel, 135  
   evil spirits dwelling in, 324 n321  
   God's wonders appearing in, 500  
 and Israel  
   40 years of wandering in, 429  
   Israel carrying two shrines in, 429  
   as place Israel accepted Torah, 776  
 near Media, one of places where Joseph buried gold, silver, and precious stones, 397  
 middle point of, falling within precincts of Shem, 156  
 and Moses  
   as final resting place of M., 500  
   M. asking deserts to intercede, 808  
   M.'s longing for, 500

desert (*cont.*)

and Moses (*cont.*)  
   Samael searching for M. in, 836  
 near Persia, one of places where Joseph buried gold, silver, and precious stones, 397  
 near Red Sea, one of places where Joseph buried gold, silver, and precious stones, 397  
 three mountains retained by God in (Her, Nebo, Sinai), 736  
*See also* Israel (nation; people)/Israelites: in wilderness; wilderness; *and under* Moses

Desert Kadesh  
   one of six names of Mount Sinai, 593

Desert Kadmut  
   one of six names of Mount Sinai, 593

Desert Paran  
   one of six names of Mount Sinai, 593

Desert Sin  
   one of six names of Mount Sinai, 593

Desert Sinai  
   one of six names of Mount Sinai, 593

Desuath (one of seven sinners), 857 n9

Deuel (one of seven men refusing to worship Baal), 872-873

Deuteronomy, Book of  
   as "book of the Law," 842 n9  
   as book of Torah found in Temple, 1061 n116  
   personification of, 973

devastation  
   one of seven evils, 450

devil(s)  
   Ashmedai (Asmodeus) as devil par excellence, offspring of Naamah and Shamdan, 114 n45, 136  
   offensive odor of, 30 n125  
   *See also* angel(s), fallen; demon(s); devil(s); evil spirits; Mastema; spirit(s)

dew  
   as food of phoenix, 34  
   of heaven, one of tenfold blessings of Jacob, 266 (*see also* Jacob: tenfold blessing of)  
   important in mystic literature, 9 n22

dew (*cont.*)

of light  
   bringing about resurrection of dead, 92 n113  
   of Gnostics, 9 n22 (*see also* Gnostic ideas)  
 not appearing, as miracle for Gideon, 873 n97  
 quantity for year fixed on first day of Passover, 268 n83  
 of resurrection, 6, 9 n22, 604 n210, 997 n12  
   dropping down on Jacob, 279

diamonds  
   in artificial heavens made by Hiram of Tyre, 1105  
   drops of holy oil turning into, 913

Diasporas  
   three in number, 1089 n56

Dibon (city)  
   name, meaning of ("flowing with honey"), 799

dietary customs  
   of Egyptians, 380

dietary laws, 752 n674  
   and Abraham's hospitality, 205, 206 n140  
   Esau and, 270 n100  
   and forbidden food  
     sinew of hip upon hollow of thigh, 302  
   observed by brothers of Joseph, 379  
   observed by Ezekiel, 1102 n94  
   and ritual prescriptions for slaughtering, 379  
   at time of Messiah, 32 n139  
   and unclean fowls, 29  
   *See also* food: forbidden

Dinah (daughter of Leah), 309 n285  
   age of, when Jacob arrived in Shechem, 309 n286  
   burial of  
     grave of, in Arbel, 348-349 n96  
     in Holy Land, 348  
   compared with Leah, 309 n285  
   concealed in chest by Jacob, 307  
   death of  
     caused by grief over Joseph, 341  
     in Egypt, 348  
     in Palestine, 430 n436  
   dishonored  
     as punishment of Jacob, 309 n288, 316  
     in Shechem, 331  
   emigrating to Egypt with Jacob's family, 343 n65



Dinah (*cont.*)

enticed out to see dancers and singers, 307  
 as gadabout, 65, 289 n193  
 marriage of, to brother Simeon, 347  
 as only daughter of Jacob, 319 n309  
 as second wife of Job, 309 n288, 451  
 and Shechem  
   Azenath as daughter of, 348  
   rape of D. by S., 307  
   son of D. by Simeon, 348  
 Dinur, stream  
   angels perishing in, 17 n70  
   angels springing up from, 16 n62  
 Dioscorides of Baala  
   and study of medicine, 158  
 diplomatic lie. *See* lie: diplomatic  
 disease(s)  
   beginning after death of Abraham, 257 n36  
   as consequence of fall, 94, 95 n129  
   elephantiasis  
     Chenephres punished with, for making Jews wear linen garments, 499 n101  
   Israelites cured of, in Exodus, 542  
   and observance of law, 567  
   as punishment  
     of Elisha, 1030  
     of Philistines, 894 n34  
   sent to purify from sins, 1089  
   Solomon inventing incantations to alleviate, 962  
   spittle as remedy for, 1006 n60  
   24 kinds of, 534 n192  
   *See also* healing; illness; magic arts; medicine; sickness; *and under individual diseases*  
 disfavor, years of, 716-717  
   boys not being able to be circumcised, 716  
   Israel not being able properly to observe Passover, 716  
 and Moses  
   M. mourning for Israel during, 717 n550  
   M. receiving only essential directives during, 716  
   north wind not blowing during, 716  
 distance  
   miraculous shortening of, 692  
   in Exodus, 542  
   for spies in Palestine, 708

distance (*cont.*)

*See also* earth(s): contracting of distances of; time: compression of  
 Diul (one of seven sinners), 856  
 divination  
   by passages from Bible, 1159, 1161 n122  
   by passages from books (stichomancy), 1159, 1161 n122  
   from stars, taught to men by Barakel, 119  
   *See also* augury; lots; magic arts; sorcery; Urim and Thummim; witchcraft  
 Divine goodness. *See* God: attributes of  
 Divine herald. *See* herald, Divine  
 Divine Name. *See* Name, Divine  
 Divine Throne. *See* Throne: Divine  
 divorce  
   bill of, between Abraham and Hagar, 220  
   customary for warriors to give wives bills of divorce, 928  
   David having brothers send wives bills of divorce, 917 n33  
   of Israelites in Egypt in response to Pharaoh's order, 473  
   of Moses and Zipporah, 584  
   noise resounding at, 27 n107  
   after revelation of marriage laws, 698  
   ten years of barrenness as grounds for, 888 n6  
 divorcement. *See* divorce  
 Dobiel (angel)  
   guardian angel of Persians, 1116 n7  
   high office of Gabriel given to, for 21 days, 1116 n7  
 Doeg the Syrian, 908 n106  
   accusing priests at Nob of treason, 906  
   and Ahitophel  
     as men of evil tongues, 908 n106  
   arguing that Moabite females are excluded, 916-917  
   called "bloody one," 908 n96  
   called Edomi, 906  
   and David  
     cast out of communion of pious on account of David's sin, 933  
     harping on David's Moabite descent, 906

Doeg the Syrian (*cont.*)

and David (*cont.*)  
   jealous of David, 913  
   mocking David, 924 n67  
   one of ten adversaries of David, 922 n59  
 death of  
   at age 34 years, 906  
   as leper, 907  
 foreign extraction of, 908 n96  
 forfeiting share in life to come, 906, 908 n100 (*see also* world to come: those having no share in)  
 not to be resurrected nor given over to punishment, 908 n106  
 as president of Sanhedrin and greatest scholar, 906  
 and Saul  
   D. as friend of S., 906-907  
   D. as S.'s armor-bearer, slain by David, 909 n107  
   D. attempting to make S. jealous of David, 913  
   D. commissioned by S. to kill priests at Nob, 899  
   D. convincing S. that David's marriage to Michal not valid, 906  
   D. inducing S. to spare Agag, king of Amalekites, 899  
   D. making S. jealous of David, 908 n102  
   D. seeking to ruin David, 906  
   D. trying to poison Saul's mind against David, 906  
   son of, as armor-bearer of S., killed by David, 907, 909 n107  
   soul of, burned by angel, 907  
   to suffer eternal punishment in Gehenna, 908 n106  
   from tribe of Judah, 908 n96  
   wanting admiration, 906  
 Doel (husband of Zilpah, youngest daughter of Kenaz), 859  
 dog(s)  
   on Assyrian-Babylonian monuments, 1053 n82  
   barking of  
     heard throughout land of Egypt, 546  
     when dead, 270 n100  
   boldest among animals, 594 n181  
   and cats  
     originally friends, 35



dog(s) (*cont.*)

cursed by Noah for not observing sexual abstinence, 41 n178, 151, 152 n54  
 Esther referring to Ahasuerus as, 1168 n145  
 excrement of  
   used in tanning hides for *mezu-zot* and phylacteries, 546  
   used in tanning hides from which Torah scrolls made, 546  
 golden, guarding Joseph's coffin, 546  
 guarding corpse of Abel, 108  
 magic  
   as reminiscence of Serapis, 548 n3  
   stationed at gate of Temple, 11 n39  
 meat of, served to Isaac by Esau, 269, 270 n100  
 as protector of  
   Cain, 107, 109 n28  
   lizard, 43 n190  
 reward of, for being silent at command of Moses, 546  
 taking refuge with wolf, monkey, and sheep, 36  
 taking up residence with  
   Adam, 36  
   Seth, 36  
 to be fed meat forbidden to Israelites, 546  
 uniting with wolf, 144  
 worshiped by Avvites, 1044  
 dolmens  
   form of, similar to that of human foot, 576 n122  
 dolphins, 40-41 n168  
   half man and half fish, 35  
   *See also* sirens  
 donkey  
   emblem of Issachar, 688-689 n447  
   shocked at having to serve man without compensation, 41 n174  
   *See also* ass  
 Dothan (angel), 334 n29  
 Dothan (place)  
   sons of Jacob going to, 332  
 Double Cave  
   Jeremiah speaking to patriarchs in, 1078  
   place of burial of Reuben, 436  
   *See also* Machpelah: Cave of  
 dove(s)  
   able to foresee future, 149 n46

dove(s) (*cont.*)

idol in form of  
   destroyed and buried by Jacob, dug up and worshiped by Samaritans, 316  
   monogamous life of, 45 n192  
   representing Israel, 198  
   returning with olive branch, 148  
   sent out by Noah, 148  
   as symbol of people of Israel, 934  
   on throne of Solomon, 968  
   two precious (Ruth and Naamah as), 977 n91  
   use of meat of, 41 n175  
 doxologies  
   of angels, formulas in, 17 n70  
   *See also* angel(s), general: praising God; praise  
 dragon  
   caused to perish by Daniel, 1107  
 dream(s)  
   of Abimelech, 216  
   of Abraham, 257 n36  
   of Ahasuerus, 1171, 1171 n164  
   of chief butler and chief baker in prison, 360  
   of Eve, about Cain and Abel, 103  
   Elijah appearing in, 1013 n93  
   interpretation of, 136, 208, 216  
   by Daniel, 1095-1096  
   interpreters of  
     Balaam as, 760  
     Hebrew-Aramaic word for, 777 n784  
   of Isaac, about death of Abraham, 245  
   of Jacob, 328  
     first prophetic, 277  
     concerning world history, 277  
   of Joseph, 328, 330  
     11 stars making obeisance to, 383  
     as prophecy, 330  
   of Laban  
     warning against harming Jacob, 292  
   of Levi, 438  
   of Naphtali, 444-447  
   of Nimrod, 179  
   of Pharaoh, 362-364, 470  
   of Rebekah  
     revealing Esau's murderous plans, 273 n109  
   of sons of Shemhazai, 136  
   of traveler in Sodom, 208  
 drink  
   maxim about, communicated by Elijah to R. Judah, 1010

drink offering. *See* offering: drink  
 drought

  as punishment for bearing false witness against companions, 607

drowned ones

  martyrs during religious persecution, 22 n86

  in second compartment of Eden, 19

Drumah (mother of Abimelech), 874 n103

drunkenness

  curse of, 153-156

  Lot and, 215 n188

  Noah first to drink to excess, 153

  one not responsible for acts committed in state of, 779 n786

*See also* inebriate; intemperance; intoxication; wine

*dudaim. See* mandrakes

Dudain desert. *See* desert: Dudael

Duma (angel, prince of hell)

  accusing David, 931 n93

  taking spirit of dead to proper place, 58 n20

Dumah (angel)

  guarding souls of deceased in Court of Dead, 836

dumb

  made to speak, 218

dust

  colors of, 53 (*see also* color[s])

  for creation of Adam kneaded at holy place in Jerusalem, 55 n16

  of earth

    seed of Abraham to be as numerous as, 636

    seed of Jacob to be as numerous as, 277 (*see also* dust: of earth; sand of seashore; star[s]: in heavens)

  as food of serpent, 747

  on head, as sign of mourning, 340, 412

  of Jacob, referring to circumcision, 774 n770

  man created from, 53-54

  return to, after death, 53

dwarfs

  Cainites as, 110

dying

  last wish of, 924 n71

  weeping of, 58 n20 (*see also* crying; death; weeping; tears)



## E

Ea (Babylonian god), 27 n107

eagle(s)

carrying letter of Baruch to  
Jeremiah, 1090, 1092  
carved by Moses on Joseph's cup,  
429  
engraved on silver leaf used to raise  
Joseph's coffin from Nile,  
621

fearing to swoop down, 2  
first to slay bird, 152 n51  
Israel described as, 1155-1156  
leading Ebed-melech to Baruch,  
1090  
living immorally after leaving ark,  
151-152 n51  
one of four beings represented on  
Divine Throne, 621  
reviving corpse as sign of truth of  
message, 1090  
and Solomon

eagle carrying out orders of S.,  
971  
eagle giving information to S.,  
980 n100  
eagle transporting S. to desert  
and back in one day, 962  
golden eagle on S.'s throne, 968  
story of eagles and S. and mag-  
nificent building, 972  
summoned by S. to guard body  
of David on Sabbath, 938

*See also* bird(s): of prey; vultures

ear(s)

left, hearing angel, 896 n40  
right, hearing Lord by night, 896  
n40

two of ten orifices of man, 960

early church. *See* church: early

earth(s)

first (Heled), 6  
second (Tebel)  
inhabited by living creatures, 6  
third (Yabbashah), 6  
fourth (Harabah), 6  
fifth (Arka), 6  
sixth (Adamah), 6  
seventh (Eretz), 6  
abyss over, 6  
alarmed at day of revelation, 600  
animals arising from, 50 n7  
becoming mountainous, 109 n31  
center of, as Eben Shetiyyah, 278  
contracting of distances of, 709  
n520, 934 (*see also* distance;  
time: compression of)

earth(s) (*cont.*)

contracting of distances of (*cont.*)  
as miracle for Jacob, 280 n148

covered with water, 18

created by God's left hand, 8 n17

created from snow under Divine  
Throne, 5, 7 n16

created on first day, 5, 8 n18, 77,  
82 n98

cursed by God, 21 n75, 79 n89,  
79 n90

division of, by Noah, 156-157,  
188

fearing Torah would increase sin-  
fulness, 601 n199

and heaven, distance between,  
1103, 1104 n101

hymn of praise of, 44 (*see also*  
praise)

impure for 33 generations after  
giving birth to Adam, 956  
n57

limitations of, 7

middle point of navel of, within  
territory of Shem, 156

misdemeanors of, 76

Moses asking earth to intercede,  
808

mouth of, created in twilight  
between sixth day of cre-  
ation and Sabbath, 726  
n581 (*see also under* cre-  
ation: sixth day)

names of, 9 n28

not following God's bidding, 21  
n75

obedience of, 21 n75

plants coming from, 50 n7

pregnancy of, 21 n74

punished by God, 76

quarreling with sea about corpses  
of Egyptians, 561

rain as consort of, 21 n74

ruled by goodness of God, 2

seven, 6, 9 n28

inhabitants of, 109-110

separated by five layers, 6

seven pillars of (variously identified  
as Aaron; Abraham; Adam;  
David; Enoch; Isaac; Jacob;  
Moses; Noah; Solomon), 9  
n28 (*see also under*  
world[s])

signs of, taught to men by Arakiel,  
119

size of, 6

trembling of, at revelation of Sinai,  
603

earth(s) (*cont.*)

weeping for Moses, 834

witness of, against man, 26-27  
n105, 79 n89

earthquake(s)

aiding Israelites in battle against  
Philistines, 895

causes of, 1012 n77

explained by Elijah to R. Nehorai,  
1010

one of four phenomena preceding  
appearance of God, 995

as one of four portals, 600

result of Joab's lack of trust in  
God, 927 n77

standing for day of death, 995

when Uzziah tried to offer sacri-  
fice, 1040

east

assigned to Adam, 92

Judah to pitch camp in, 685

east wind

bringing deluge, 554

causing destruction of Samaria,  
Jerusalem, and Tyre, 554

laying waste Tower of Babel, 554

punishing sinners in Gehenna, 554

Ebal, Mount

altar erected on, with stones from  
bed of Jordan, 843

ceremonies on, 844 n14

six tribes ascending, 843

Ebed-melech, 1090-1091

entering Paradise alive, 73 n67,  
132 n62 (*see also* Paradise:  
entering alive)

interceding for Jeremiah, 1069-  
1070

led to Baruch by eagle, 1090

name, meaning of, 1070 n13

in Paralipomena of Jeremiah, 1071  
n15

pious Ethiopian who escaped from  
Babylonians, 1090

as proselyte, 1093 n66

one of ten rulers who became  
proselytes, 1093 n66

saved as reward for rescuing  
Jeremiah, 1090

sleeping under tree for 66 years,  
1090

Eben Shetiyyah (foundation stone of  
Temple), 7

ark placed on, 11 n39

as beginning of creation, 11 n39

as center of earth and center of  
sanctuary, 278

derivation of Shetiyyah, 10 n38



Eben Shetiyyah (*cont.*)

as foundation stone for formation of earth, 11 n39, 280 n141  
 God appearing with, to Joseph, 357  
 Ineffable Name engraved on, 11 n39, 278, 280 n142  
 Jacob casting self down before, 278  
 keeping Tehom from overflowing earth, 11 n39  
 legends concerning, 924 n70  
 as metaphor for likeness of Rachel, 358 n124  
 oracular significance of, 653 n358  
 stone of Jacob as, 277  
 tablets of Ten Commandments hewn out of, 619 n258

Eber (son of Shem)  
 at burial of  
   Abraham, 237 n268  
   Sarah, 235  
 at circumcision of Isaac, 218  
 father of Peleg, 158 n69  
 Jacob hiding at house of, 271  
 as prophet, 156 n63, 217  
 and Shem  
   Bet ha-Midrash (academy) of, 252 (*see also* academy; Bet ha-Midrash)  
   transmitting instruction and knowledge to Jacob, 327

Eblaen  
 name, meaning of, 311 n290  
 perhaps identified with Eliezer, 311 n290  
 treated badly by Shechemites, 311

Ecclesiastes, Book of  
 Hezekiah and associates as editors of, 1071 n15  
 Hezekiah having copies made of, 1051  
 opposition of sages to admitting it into canon, 977 n93  
 Solomon as author of, 977 n93

eclipse  
 of heavenly bodies in God's proximity, 97 n133  
 of moon and sun, 26 n100  
 of sun  
   at crucifixion of Jesus, 79 n89  
   during flood, 145 n25  
   at time of fall, 79 n89, 92, 95 n121  
   *See also* moon; sun

Edad (son of Agag)  
 becoming Saul's armor-bearer, 903 n66  
 slayer of Saul, 903 n66

## Eden

beginning beyond Paradise, 19  
 compartments of, 19  
 distinguished from garden (i.e., Paradise), 23 n97 (*see also* Eden, Garden of)  
 located in seventh heaven, 22 n84

Eden, Garden of, 68  
 souls must pass through after death, 68  
*See also* Eden; Paradise

edict  
 decreeing persecution of Jews, 1155

Edom  
 also called Uz ("counsel"), 455  
 angel of  
   fleeing to Bozrah, 304  
   hair of  
     same as wool of goat, 307 n275  
     seized by, 306 n275  
     on Jacob's ladder, 277  
 annihilation of, not taking place before advent of Messiah, 927 n77  
 denying Moses' request for passage, 736  
 first king of, appointed on day Elijah taken from world, 999 n31  
 foreigners as kings of, 324, 325 n323  
 God to take vengeance on, 820  
 identified with Rome, 254 n19, 641 n323, 927 n77, 1087 n52  
   explanation of, 419 n425  
   ruler of world before Messiah, 163 n82  
 Moses requesting passage through, 735-736  
 name, meaning of, 255 n28  
 prince of  
   identified with Satan, 306 n275  
   to be destroyed by Messiah, 306 n275  
 Romans as descendants of, 254 n19  
 sin of, greater than that of Moabites and Ammonites, 737 n622  
 threatened Israel with sword, 737 n622  
 to be destroyed by sword, 737 n622  
 unbrotherly attitude of, toward Israel, 735-737  
*See also* Edomites; Esau

## Edomi

another name of Doeg, meaning of, 906

## Edomite

killing those left behind by Nebuchadnezzar, 1086

## Edomite kingdoms

48 in number, 572 n399

## Edomites

as destroyers of Temple, 1087 n52  
 exterminated by Joab, 926 n77  
 first king of, Aramean Balaam, 324  
 identified with Romans, 325 n323  
 Israel forbidden to wage war against, 755  
 subject to Jewish kings, 324  
 Torah commanding considerate treatment of, 983  
*See also* Edom; Esau

## Edrei

site of battle between Israel and Og, 753

## effrontery

golden plate of Aaron atoning for, 650

Eglah (pet name of Michal), 940, 941 n131

Eglon (king of Moab), 862  
 conquered by Ehud, 409

## Egypt, 405

as abode of Lilith, 66 n40  
 Abraham in, 189-190, 191 n66, 191 n78, 191 n80, 192 (*see also* Abraham: and Egypt)  
 biblical prohibition against dwelling in, 983, 984 n11  
 bondage of Israel in  
   beginning of, 465-466  
   compared to leprosy, 512  
   duration of  
     400 years, 200 n114  
     reduced by merits of Isaac, 263 n69 (*see also* Isaac: merits of; merits)  
   Israel redeemed for sake of Jacob, 256 n35  
   reckoned from birth of Isaac, 199  
   suffering of Israel in, 511 n127  
 boundary dispute with Ethiopia settled by plague of frogs, 528  
 depicted on  
   tribe of Ephraim's flag in wilderness, 688  
   tribe of Manasseh's flag in wilderness, 688  
 fleshpots of, 693-694



Egypt (*cont.*)

as home of demons, 66 n40  
 land of magic and witchcraft par excellence, 66 n40, 965 n55  
 magicians and wise men of, 409  
 Messiah to accept gifts offered by, 649  
 Mizraim as capital city of. *See* Mizraim (city)  
 name, meaning of, 66-67 n40 and Palestine  
     historical reminiscences of relationship between, 364 n163  
 plagues against  
     corresponding to deeds perpetrated against Israelites, 524-525, 526 n172  
     divided into four parts, 523  
 punishment of, after flight of Moses, 488 n76  
 sages of, seeking to cure by magic arts and astrology, 157  
 size of, 1005 n53  
 three calamities befalling on night of Exodus, 542 n230  
 wealth of  
     one of five tokens granted to Israel after Exodus, 565  
     taken by Israel in Exodus, as cause of misfortune for Israelites, 543 n233  
*See also* Exodus; Israel (nation; people)/Israelites: in Egypt; Israel(nation; people)/Israelites: and Exodus  
 Egyptian customs  
     embalming, 412  
 Egyptian language  
     God addressing Israel in, 602-603  
     use of  
       by Hebrews, 499 n106  
       by Semites, 158 n72  
 Egyptian laws  
     that one cannot export wagons or animals, 390 n290  
 Egyptians  
     afflicted with heat when infant Moses left in ark, 479 n48  
     attitude of, toward adultery, 191 n75  
     aversion of, to shepherds, 395, 396 n325  
     and circumcision  
       not practicing rite, 479 n51  
       rite abandoned after death of Joseph, 479 n51

Egyptians (*cont.*)

and circumcision (*cont.*)  
     rite introduced by Joseph, 370 n196, 479 n51  
 compared with asses, 528 n175  
 corpses of  
     earth and sea quarreling about, 561  
     swallowed by earth, as reward for Pharaoh, 561  
 death by water of, 471  
 as descendants of Ham, 154  
 destruction of, 558-562  
 dissolute lives of, 537, 538 n212  
 drowned in Red Sea, 558  
     buried as reward for last honor paid to Jacob, 414 n413  
     number of, 561 n43  
     as punishment for drowning of Hebrew male children, 561 n51  
     source of 12th of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127  
 engulfed in darkness, 561 n52  
 garments of, not sinking in Red Sea, 562 n55  
 God attacking in various ways, 523 and Israelites  
     Egyptians depriving Israelites of fields, 465  
     Egyptians envious of Israelites, 465, 474 n29  
     Egyptians expecting Israelites back after sacrifice in wilderness, 548-549  
     Egyptians giving Israelites gold, jewels, etc., at Exodus, 540  
     Egyptians happy at departure of Israelites, 542  
     Egyptians' hatred of Israelites changing to affection at Exodus, 540  
     Egyptians oppressing Israelites, 521  
     Egyptians requiring each Israelite to make 600 bricks a day, 468 n9  
     enmity between, 470 n12  
     reasons for, 465, 466 n5  
 and Joseph  
     Egyptians asking J. for food, 369  
     rite of circumcision introduced by J., 479 n51  
 led into exile by king of Assyria, 154  
 magicians of, attempting to save them from sea, 559

Egyptians (*cont.*)

as masters of astrology and magic, 955 n24  
 as masters of Israel for 400 years, 191 n80  
 pious among  
     celebrating Passover with Israelites, 544 n246  
     proclaiming belief in true God, 544 n246  
 punishment of, 214 n170, 215 n179, 523-531  
     compared with punishment of Pharaoh, 191 n76  
     concerning Sarah, 191 n75  
     death by water, 471-472, 584  
     in Egypt as well as in Red Sea, 560-561  
 religion of  
     as idolatry, 467  
     worship of animals in, 395, 398 n330  
     worship of constellation of ram, 395  
 sensuality of, 191 n68, 470 n14  
 slain by God with fourth finger of right hand, 638 n315  
 and sons of Jacob, Egyptians not eating at same table with, 380  
 three calamities befalling on night of Exodus, 542 n230  
 vengeance of, one of five tokens granted to Israel after Exodus, 565  
 washed ashore, 560  
 Ehi (son of Benjamin)  
     name  
       changed to Ahiram, 434  
       meaning of, 380  
 Ehud  
     conquering Eglon, king of Moab, 409  
     death of, 867  
     as descendant of Benjamin, 409  
     second judge of Israel, 860 n21  
     succeeded by Shamgar, 869 n70  
     Zebul identified with, 860 n21  
 Ehyeh. *See* Ehyeh Asher  
 Ehyeh Asher  
     meaning of, 511 n128  
     as name of God, 511 n128 (*see also* God: names and titles of)  
 Eighteen Benedictions, 1011  
     fixed by Great Assembly, 1126  
     origins of, 1126-1127  
     patriarchs as authors of, 1126  
*See also* Amidah; prayers, Jewish



## Elah

- one of sinful ones identified by Kenaz, 855
- as sinner who hid foreign gods in tent, 857 n5, 857 n8
- tent of, 857 n8

## Elam

- firstborn son of Shem, 1132
- posterity of, given dominion in Shushan, 1132

Elas. *See* Elah

## Elath (one of seven sinners), 856, 857 n9

## Eldad

- identified with Elidad, 698 n484
- image of, on Solomon's throne, 968
- one of seven pious men of world, 968 (*see also* under pious: men)
- and Medad, 697-698
- Book of, 698 n482
- distinguished for their humility, 697
- half brothers of Moses and Aaron, 698
- identified with Elidad and Samuel, 698 n481
- mentioned by name in Scripture, 697
- parents of, 698 n484
- prophesying about Magog, 697
- prophesying distant future, 697
- receiving prophetic gift from God, 697
- retaining gift of prophecy for life, 697
- surviving after death of Joshua, 697
- name, meaning of, 698
- prophesying death of Moses and leadership of Joshua, 697
- story of fall of Satan of, 63 n34

## elders

- appointment of, 588 n163, 695-697
- one of three signs of true redeemer who would deliver Israel from bondage of Egypt, 405
- first 70 destroyed by fire at Taberah, 695
- forgiven for sins up to day of ordination, 902 n53
- gift of prophecy conferred on, 697 n479
- honor due to, 598 n191
- installation of, 585-588

elders (*cont.*)

- of Israel
  - abstaining from conjugal relations, 700
  - punished for deserting Moses and Aaron, 516
- names of, 696
- receiving prophetic gift when appointed, 696 n472
- refusing to accompany Moses and Aaron to Pharaoh, 536 n207
- rewarded for supporting Moses, 535
- 70 in number, 695
- to accompany Moses to Mount Horeb for water, 575

## Eleazar

- as author of Book of Joshua, 853 n57
- burial place of, 853 n57
- in charge of those who keep sanctuary, 684
- dying soon after death of Joshua, 852
- highest chief of Levites, 684
- and Ithamar
  - sitting at left side of Joshua, 827
- and Moses
  - E. accompanying M. to place of death, 815, 815 n904
  - E. punished for lack of reverence for M., 798
  - M. asking E. to intercede, 809
  - M. passing on to E. applications of Holy Names, 615
- one of 77 pious men in Israel, 629 n287 (*see also* under pious: men)
- one of ten just men in Israel, 628
- and Phinehas
  - E. passing on to P. applications of Holy Names, 615
- Samael stopping prayer of, 809
- son of Elisheba, 661
- vision of, communicated to Kenaz, 860 n20

## Eleazar b. R. Simeon, R.,

- Elijah as teacher of, 1009 n65

## Eleazar of Worms, R.

- probably author of Book of Raziël, 90 n110

## elect of God

- title given in Scripture to David, Abraham, Jacob, people of Israel, Saul, tribe of Levi, Moses, Messiah, Joshua, Judah, Solomon, Jerusalem, 912 n1

## elements, created

- hymns of praise of, 44 (*see also* praise)

elephantiasis (*see also* disease[s])

- Chenephres as first person afflicted by, 499 n101

## Elflalet (wife of Dan, daughter of Moabite Hamudan), 348

## Elhanan (elder from tribe of Naphtali), 696

- another name for David, 928 n78
- name, meaning of, 928 n78

## Eli

- astonished by infant Samuel, 889
- and blessing of Hannah, 888
- blindness of, 893 n27
- copying crowns and embellishments of Hebrew letters, 892 n24
- death of
  - on hearing of death of sons, 893-894 n33
- death of daughter-in-law on same day as Eli, 894 n33
- Delilah as mother of, 892 n25
- hearing from Saul that sons were killed in battle and ark captured, 893 n33
- holding three highest offices (high priest, president of Sanhedrin, political ruler of Israel), 891
- Hophni and Phinehas as sons of, 893 n26
- house of
  - divine decree against, 908 n104
- image of, on basin on Solomon's throne, 968
- from line of Ithamar, 891
- ruling for 40 years, 892 n23
- and sons, 891-895
- sons of
  - detaining women at sanctuary, 891, 893 n26
  - disgraceful treatment of sacrifices by, 893 n26
  - dying as martyrs, 893 n27
  - dying in battle, 892
  - offenses of, 891
  - slain by Goliath, 893 n33

- as successor of Phinehas, 891, 892 n25
- words of rebuke to sons, 893 n27

## Eliab

- daughter of, becoming wife of Rehoboam, 913
- elder from tribe of Reuben, 696
- name, meaning of ("the ship"), 679



Eliab (*cont.*)

oldest brother of David, 913  
prince of tribe of Zebulun, 667,  
679

son of Helon ("the sand"), 679  
violent character of, 915 n20

## Eliakim

described by God as His servant,  
805 n880 (*see also* servant  
of God)

elder from tribe of Naphtali, 696  
one of 18 called "servant of God,"  
452 n2 (*see also* servant of  
God)

## Eliasaph

name, meaning of ("God multi-  
plied"), 680  
prince of tribe of Gad, 680  
son of Deuel, 680

## Elidad

Eldad identified with, 698 n484  
elder from tribe of Benjamin, 696

## Eliezer (prophet)

active during reign of Jehoshaphat,  
988 n28  
grandson of prophet Hanani, 988  
n28

## Eliezer (servant of Abraham)

and Abraham

E. accompanying A. and Isaac,  
226

E. as slave given to A., 177

E. devoted to A., 195, 241-242  
n295

E. freed by A., 241

resemblance of E. to A., 239  
n276, 240

adept in the law, 237

Bethuel trying to kill, 240

as Canaanite, 239 n282

changing names of judges, 208  
curse of, transformed into blessing,  
241

described as Canaan, 242 n306

Eblaen perhaps to be identified  
with, 311 n290

entering Paradise alive, 73 n67,  
132 n62, 241, 242 n301  
(*see also* Paradise: entering  
alive)

evil inclination having no power  
over, 237

first words of, 241 n295

as giant, 240

going to Sodom to inquire after  
Lot, 208

identified with Og, 242 n305

mission of, 237-239

Eliezer (*cont.*)

said to have been a slave (son?) of  
Nimrod, 202 n119

saved from Laban by pronouncing  
the Name, 241 n292

as son of Ham, 242 n306

story of ark related to, by Shem,  
147

strength of 318 men, 195

traveling to Haran, 239

Eliezer (Tanna, son of R. Simon bar  
Yohai), 1008

Elijah imparting secrets of Torah  
to, 1018

## Eliezer, R.

as descendant of Moses, 617

father of R. Israel Baal Shem Tov  
hospitality of, 1019

informed by Elijah of birth of  
son, 1019

## Eliezer b. Hyrcanus, R.,

Elijah advising R. Eliezer to study  
with R. Johanan b. Zakkai,  
1011

pronounced correct by heavenly  
voice, 1010

## Eliezer b. Parata, R.

Elijah making R. Eliezer disappear,  
1004-1005 n51

## Elihoreph

and Ahijah

Solomon's two scribes, strange  
death of, 979

## Elihu (son of Barachel)

identified with Balaam, 460 n32

identified with Isaac, 261, 460 n32

as instrument of Satan, 462 n33

one of four friends of Job, 459-460  
(*see also* Job: four friends  
of)

prophet to heathens, 761

speech of, inspired by Satan, 460-  
461

## Elijah the Prophet

and Abiathar (an Amora)

E. explaining to A. about Eph-  
raimite and concubine,  
1010

ability of, to assume various  
appearances, 1001

accusing Israel before God, 995  
and Ahab

E. hiding from A., 993-994

generation of A. not revealing  
hiding place of E. and 100  
prophets, 989 n35

meeting in house of Hiel, 993

Ahijah of Shilo as teacher of, 996  
n3

Elijah the Prophet (*cont.*)

and angel, 1000 n38, 1000 n39,  
1001

E. as angel before earthly career,  
996

superiority of E. to angel, 1004  
n47

and angel of death, 1016-1018

angel of death having no power  
over E., 999 n25

E. rescuing people from angel of  
death, 1016

struggle between, 995-996

and animals

animals noticing presence of E.,  
1006 n61

E. understanding language of  
animals, 1004

apocalyptic writings about, 1009  
n70

appearance of

in dreams

to Calif Al-Mutadhid, 1013  
n93

to Sultan Sulaiman I, 1013  
n93

to R. Joseph, Gaon of Pum-  
bedita, daily, 1012 n75

assisting poor, 1001-1004

birthplace of, village near Cairo,  
1013 n93

bringing about

famine, 997 n5

as punishment of Ahab, 993

reconciliation between husband  
and wife, 1003

reconciliation between R. Judah  
ha-Nasi and R. H̄ayyah,  
1003

bringing souls of sinners from  
Gehenna at Sabbath, 996

as brother of Enoch-Metatron,  
1000 n40

and caravan of 4,000 camels, 1008  
n63

celestial body of, 1000 n39

E. receiving, 999 n32

as censor, 1006

as "certain old scholar" in Talmud,  
1012 n75

chair of, at ceremony of circumci-  
sion, 1020 n103

Christian legends about

E. and anti-Christ, 1022 n113

E. to be killed by anti-Christ,  
131 n61

and circumcision

E. zealous for observance of, 999  
n25



Elijah the Prophet (*cont.*)

commanding sun to stand still, 995  
 concerned to establish oral law, 1011  
 conjured up to give aid to women in childbirth against Lilith and witches, 1020 n100  
 and conversations with sages and saints, 1009-1013, 1013 n93  
 daily duty of, to awaken patriarchs for prayers, 1010  
 descendant of Gad, 286, 288-289 n183  
 description of, 997 n5  
   as hairy man, 997 n5  
 disciple(s) of, 1026-1027 n1  
   Elisha as, 1025-1027  
 disguised as  
   Arab, 1003, 1005 n56, 1008 n63  
   beggar, 1006  
   receiving hospitality of R. Eliezer, 1019  
 courtier Harbonah in time of Ahasuerus, 1000  
 harlot, 1004 n47  
 horseman to R. Shimi bar Ashi, 1003  
 old man, 1012 n75, 1020 n103  
 ordinary man, Arab, horseman, Roman court-official, harlot, 1001  
 Persian, 1001  
 Rabbi, 1011  
 R. Hayyah to R. Judah, 1003  
 double exclamation of, 998 n19  
 elder from tribe of Zebulun, 696  
 and Elisha  
   Elijah appointing Elisha as successor, 995, 999 n25  
   Elisha as disciple of Elijah, 1025-1027  
 and Elkanah  
   Elijah appearing as old man to reveal secrets, 1018  
   Elijah taking Elkanah to tomb of patriarchs and heavenly academy, 1018  
 Esther's intentions made known by Elijah at banquet, 1010  
 eulogy "remembered to good" added to name of, 996 n1  
 famine in time of, 189  
 fed by ravens, 48, 997 n7  
   rationalistic explanation of, 997 n6

Elijah the Prophet (*cont.*)

and God  
   God instructing E. about destiny of man, 995-996  
   God showing E. three classes of angels (angels of storm, wind, and fire), 999 n30  
 great order of (unknown work by E.), 1009 n70  
 Harbonah identified with, 1177 n182  
 having wings, 1001  
 in heaven  
   E. living in heaven for all time, 996  
 as heavenly scribe, 100 n142, 1126 n50  
   E. recording  
     deeds of men and chronicles of world, 996  
     every marriage, 1000 n35  
     good deeds of those who observe Sabbath, 1000 n38  
   E. reporting earthly events in heavenly regions, 1011  
 holding "key of rain," 997 n12  
 on Horeb  
   hearing what Raziel calls down to earth, 614  
 identified with  
   Harbonah, 1004 n45  
   Khadir, by Arabs, 996 n3  
   Phinehas, 892 n25, 993, 996 n3, 1000 n35, 1013 n93  
 inflicting punishment on pious, 1017 n97  
 inhabitant of Jabesh-Gilead, 996 n2  
 irascibility of, 1027 n5  
 John the Baptist identified with, 1021 n106  
 and Kabbalah, 1018-1020  
   E. conversing with masters of Kabbalah, 1005 n52  
   Maltiel as teacher of Elijah, in Kabbalah, 505 n117  
 last act of, to slay Sammael and banish evil, 1021  
 letter of, to Jehoram, seven years after translation, 1000  
 life and work of, during reigns of Ahab and Joram, 993-996  
 and Messiah  
   E. as companion of Messiah in Paradise, 73 n67  
   E. as competitor of Messiah, 306 n275

Elijah the Prophet (*cont.*)

and Messiah (*cont.*)  
   E. as forerunner of Messiah, 825 n930, 1020-1023  
     of tribe of Joseph, 997 n9  
   E. as Messiah, 100 n142, 1021 n105  
   E. as one of eight princes forming cabinet of Messiah, 1021  
   E. as one of four Messiahs, 1021 n105  
   E. as one of names of Messiah, 1021 n105  
   E. as one of princes who assist Messiah, 100 n142  
   E. consoling Messiah during exile, 1022 n115  
   E. to anoint Messiah, 1022 n112  
   E. to introduce Messiah, 1021  
   E. writing down good deeds of man, 1000 n35  
 Messianic activity of  
   on great judgment day, 1021  
   relation of E. to Moses in Messianic time, 1020  
   to appear at end of time, 408, 514  
   to be expounder of law, 1020  
   to begin three days before coming of Messiah, 1020-1021  
   to blow trumpet, 1021, 1120 n25  
   to destroy foundations of heathens, 823  
   to destroy prince of Edom, 306 n275  
   to establish peace and harmony in world, 1020  
   to fetch rod of Aaron in future and hand it to Messiah, 730  
   to induce Israel to repent, 1020  
   to order coming time and restore tribes of Jacob, 1020  
   to restore purity of family, 1021 n107  
   to restore three concealed objects (three jugs: one filled with manna, one with water from well of Miriam, and one with sacred oil), 573, 574 n112  
   to slaughter angel of Edom, 304  
   to solve all differences of opinion, 1020



Elijah the Prophet (*cont.*)

Michael revealing secrets concerning Messianic times to, 1009 n70  
 miracles of  
   bringing Israel back to God, 998 n18  
   during life, eight in number, 1025  
 name, 996 n1  
   defective spelling of, 257 n35  
 names and titles of  
   Abba Elijah (father Elijah), 1013 n90  
   disciple of Moses, 996 n3  
   harbinger of good tidings, 1022 n111  
   man of God, 838 n965  
   righteous one, 1015 n94  
   Sandalfon as angel name of, 996  
 never marrying, 996 n2  
 and 100 prophets  
   hiding place of, not revealed by generation of Ahab, 989 n35  
 one of seven with overlapping life terms, 982 n4  
 one of those called "man of God" in Scripture, 838 n965 (*see also* man of God)  
 and Paradise  
   E. as Psychopomp, guiding pious to appointed places in Paradise, 996  
   entering Paradise alive, 73 n67, 122 n58, 132 n62, 999 n32, 1000 n34 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)  
   in fifth division of Paradise, 20  
   in hall of gold in Paradise, 23 n97  
 participation of  
   in deliverance of Jews from hands of Haman, 1004 n45  
 performing services of sexton, 1004  
 Phinehas  
   identified with E., 783, 885 n140  
   son of Eleazar identified with, 860 n19  
 as physician, 1003  
   in story about woman with animal face, 1006 n59  
 and pious  
   E. sustaining courage of, 1003  
   prayer of, 998 n18

Elijah the Prophet (*cont.*)

present at every ceremony of circumcision, 1020 n103  
 as priest, 993  
 as prophet  
   E. retaining consciousness in moments of prophecy, 612 n242  
   punished for revealing heavenly secrets, 1013 n84  
 and R. Akiba, 1003  
   E. finding burial place for R. Akiba, 1004  
 and R. bar Abbahu  
   E. taking R. bar Abbahu to Paradise to save him from poverty, 1001-1002  
 and R. Eleazar b. R. Simeon  
   E. as teacher of, 1009 n65  
 and R. Eliezer b. Hyrcanus  
   E. advising R. Eliezer to study with R. Johanan b. Zakkai, 1011  
 and R. Eliezer b. Parata  
   E. making R. Eliezer disappear, 1004-1005 n51  
 and R. Elijah Wilna, 1020 n104  
 and R. Jose, 1008  
   E. imparting regulations concerning prayer to R. Jose, 1012 n76  
   E. teaching R. Jose meaning of Scriptural passage about woman as helpmeet of man, 1010  
 and R. Joshua b. Levi  
   E. getting R. Joshua interview with Messiah, 1012  
   E. granting any wish of R. Joshua, 1014  
   E. showing R. Joshua precious stones of Messianic time, 1011-1012  
   R. Joshua as favorite of E., 1012  
   story of journeys together, 1014-1015  
   appearing in Koran, 1015 n94  
 and R. Judah  
   E. communicating three maxims to R. Judah, 1010  
 and R. Judah ha-Nasi  
   E. attending R. Judah's academy daily, 1010  
 and R. Kahana  
   E. rescuing R. Kahana, 1001  
 and R. Meir  
   E. saving R. Meir from Romans, 1001

Elijah the Prophet (*cont.*)

and R. Nahum  
   E. saving R. Nahum from execution in Rome, 1001  
 and R. Nathan  
   E. advising R. Nathan never to fill self with food and drink, 1012-1013 n82  
 and R. Nehorai, 1012 n77  
   E. explaining earthquakes to R. Nehorai, 1010  
   E. explaining purpose of noxious insects to R. Nehorai, 1010  
 relieving mental pain and anguish, 1017 n97  
 reproached by widow of Zarephath, 997 n10  
 returning souls of sinners to Gehenna after Sabbath, 996  
 reviving dead person, 1027 n3, 1029 n14, 1030 n21  
 riddle of Queen of Sheba about, 960  
 and righteous  
   to flee to desert for 45 days before Messiah comes, 1022 n112  
 running to patriarchs and prophets lamenting edict of Ahasuerus, 1159  
 sacrificing on altar erected by Saul, 997 n13  
 and Sammael  
   struggle between, on day of judgment, 999 n33  
 as sandek at circumcision ceremony, 1020 n103  
 severity of, and R. Anan, 1007  
 showing special vigilance in Talmudic times, 1000-1001  
 sitting under tree of life, 1000 n38  
 small order of (unknown work by E.), 1009 n70  
 story of  
   destruction of Jerusalem, 1015 n94  
   E. being sold as slave, 1002  
   man and money on Sabbath, 1005 n58  
   man and spice garden and three sons, 1003-1004  
   man lacking intelligence and wisdom, 1011  
   offering of twin bullocks, 994  
   pious man misled by female demon, 1017 n97



Elijah the Prophet (*cont.*)story of (*cont.*)

- poor scholar at Passover, 1005 n56
- rescuing R. Shila, 1001
- seven years of good fortune for man and wife, 1002
- two brothers, 1006
- two shekels and poor pious man, 1003
- would-be cattle buyer, 1007-1008
- young man and seven years of slavery, 1017-1018 n97
- young woman whose husbands died day after wedding, 1016
- stubbornness of, to God, 994
- subject to own wrath and zeal, 1025
- teachings of theodicy, 1014-1016 and Torah
  - devotion of E. to study of Torah, 1011
- translation of, 996
  - E. after translation, 1000-1006
  - E. before, 993-1000
- prophetic spirit vanishing at, 1025
- shown to Jacob, 277
- traversing world with four strokes, 1004 n46
- of tribe of Gad, 823, 825 n929, 996 n3
- and tribes of Gad, Benjamin, and Levi
  - E. claimed by, 996 n3
- and two pious brothers, 1007
- as witness, 122 n58
- wrath of, 995
- zeal of
  - for circumcision, 1020 n103
  - for purity of family, 1000 n35
- and Zerubbabel
  - Messiah to ascend Mount of Olives with E. and Z., 1120 n25
  - to explain all obscure passages of Torah in time to come, 1120 n25

## Elijah Wilna, R.

- interactions with Elijah the Prophet, 1020 n104
- opponent of R. Israel Baal Shem Tov, 1020 n104

## Elim

- abundance of water and vegetation at, according to Philo, 568 n86

Elim (*cont.*)

- appearance of wonderful bird at, 568 n88
- Israel journeying to, in wilderness, 567
- lack of water at, 567
- study of law first taken up at, 567
- 12 wells of water at, made by God at creation, 567

## Elimelech

- avarice as sin of, 864 n40
- pictured as bramble, 874 n103
- son of Nahshon, 864 n34
- and sons
  - in aristocracy of Israel, 862
- burial of, by Boaz, 863
- leaving Israel for Moab in time of famine, 862

## Eliphaz (king of Teman)

- addressing Job, 459
- announcing damnation of Elihu, instrument of Satan, 461
- identified with Eliphaz, son of Esau, 323, 456 n14
- one of four friends of Job, 459-460 (*see also* Job: friends of)
- as prophet to heathens, 761
- speech of, to Job, 323
- thanking God for forgiveness, 461

## Eliphaz (son of Esau)

- and Amalek
  - E. partly responsible for destruction of A., 582
- E. to be blamed for neglecting education of A., 580 n138
- having sexual relations with father's wife, 324 n319
- identified with Eliphaz, friend of Job, 323, 324 n319
- and Jacob
  - E. and Esau pursuing J., 274-276
  - E. as pupil of J., 321, 324 n318
  - E. sparing J., 275
- Eliphaz swearing to Esau to kill J. to regain birthright, 580 n138

## Elisha

- always helping poor and needy, 1025
- assisting widow of Obadiah, 1025-1026
- birthplace of, Abel-meholah ("mourning-dance"), 1026 n1
- cursing those who sold water, 1025
- death and burial of
  - corpse of, reviving dead, 1030, 1030 n21

Elisha (*cont.*)death and burial of (*cont.*)

- resulting in first invasion by Arameans, 1030
- declining gifts offered by Naaman, 423 n430
- disciples of, 1026-1027 n1
  - numbering many thousands, 1031
- disease of, 1030 n20
  - E. as first to survive disease, 1030
  - as punishment for excessive severity toward Gehazi and mocking boys of Jericho, 1030
  - as punishment for yielding to passion, 1025

## and Elijah

- Elisha appointed as successor of Elijah, 995
- Elisha as disciple of Elijah, 1025-1027

## famine in time of, 189

## and Gehazi

- pseudepigraphic work about, 1030 n17

## Jehoshaphat consulting, 986-987 miracles of

- crossing Jordan River, as first of 16 miracles, 1025
- healing waters of Jericho, second of 16 miracles, 1025
- 16 in number, 1025
- one of those called "man of God" in Scripture, 838 n965 (*see also* man of God)
- period of activity of, 60 years, 1031

## prophetic spirit of, strengthened at translation of Elijah, 1025

## reviving dead

- reviving son of Shunammite, 1028
- reviving two dead, 1029 n14, 1030 n21

## subject to own wrath and zeal, 1025

## Elisha b. Abuyah

- as teacher of R. Meir, 1011

## Elishama

- elder from tribe of Naphtali, 696
- name, meaning of ("he obeyed Me"), 679, 681 n424
- prince of tribe of Ephraim, 679
- son of Ammihud ("Me he honored"), 679



## Elisheba

- daughter of Amminadab and Aaron's wife, 661
- five joys of, 661
  - brother-in-law Moses being king, 661
  - brother Nahshon being prince of tribe, 661
  - grandson Phinehas being priest of war, 661
  - husband Aaron being high priest, 661
  - son Eleazar being head of priests, 661
- happiest of women, 661
- identified with Puah, 470 n17
- as one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271

## Elizaphan

- husband of Ethema, 859

## Elizur

- name, meaning of ("my God is a rock"), 679
- prince of tribe of Reuben, 679
- son of Shedeur ("cast into the fire"), 679

## Elkanah

- author of Peliah and Kanah, 1018
- deciphering mysterious characters on fiery rock, 1018
- and Elijah
  - Elijah appearing as old man to reveal secrets, 1018
  - Elijah taking Elkanah to tomb of patriarchs and heavenly academy, 1018
  - Elkanah learning mysteries from Elijah, 1018
- equal in importance to 31 pious men, 888 n3
- and Hannah, 887-889
  - endowed with gift of prophecy, 887
- making three pilgrimages each year, 887
- as man of God, 893 n28
- as man of moderate means, 888 n4
- one of those called "man of God" in Scripture, 838 n965 (*see also* man of God)
- prophesying to Eli the misfortune to come upon Eli's family, 891
- as second Abraham, 887
- stimulating people to make pilgrimages to Shiloh, 887
- virtues of, 887

## ell (unit of linear measure), 33, 119

- See also* measures; weights and measures; *and under* names of individual units

## Elohim

- name of God when acting as Judge, 510 (*see also* God: names and titles of)
- one of two sacred names of God, 643
- standing for God's severity, 150 n46

## Elon

- elder from tribe of Zebulun, 696
- king of Gaash, slain by Levi, 314

## Elon the Hittite

- father of Adah, Esau's second wife, 271

El Shaddai. *See* God: names and titles of

## Elul (month)

- as "full" month of 30 days in year of Ezra's return, 1125 n49
- Gideon conquering Midianites and Amalekites in, 1151
- new moon of, Moses returning to heaven for 40 days, 632
- war of Israel against Midianites taking place in, 873 n100
- war of Israel against Sihon taking place in, 752 n666, 753
- See also* date

## Eluma (daughter of Remac, mother of Samaon)

- responsible for childlessness, 879 n111

## Elyoram (daughter of Canaanite Uzzi of Timnah)

- marriage of, to Reuben, 347

## Elzaphan (Levite cousin of Aaron)

- attending funeral of Nadab and Abihu, 663

## embalming

- corpse of Jacob, for 40 days, 412
- displeasing to God, 412

## embryo

- differentiation of sex in, 57 n20
- instruction of, by heavenly hosts, 58 n20
- male changed into female in Leah's womb, 287
- refusal of soul to enter, 57 n20
- soul of, knowing and seeing everything, 58 n20

## emerald(s)

- on ephod of Pharaoh, 364
- making owner victorious in battle, 651

emerald(s) (*cont.*)

- on Solomon's throne, 968
- stone of tribe of Judah in breastplate of Aaron, 651
- See also* precious stones
- emet* ("truth")
  - alef removed from, yielding *met* ("dead"), 1084 n42
  - written on Adam's forehead, 1084 n42

## Emim

- name, meaning of, 137
- as offspring of fallen angels and Cainite women, 137

## Emtelai (daughter of Karnabo)

- malady of, 169, 170 n10
- marrying Terah, 168
- name, meaning of, 169 n6

## Emtelai (Haman's mother), 1147 n93

## Emzaru (Noah's wife), 113 n42

## end of time

- coming of, 20
- as mystery, 409-410 n383
- secret of, taken from Isaac and Jacob by Shekinah, 406
- See also* Messianic time(s)

## En-dor

- witch of, 900

## En-Gedi

- wine required for libations coming from, 709 n519

## En Mishpat

- name, meaning of ("fountain of justice"), 734

## Enoch (city)

- built by Cain, 111

## Enoch (last son of Reuben)

- attacking Edom to west, 321

## Enoch (son of Jared, father of Methuselah), 122-124

- adorned by God, 129-130
- and angels
  - E. as ruler over angels, 123
  - E. brought to heaven by Samuil, 126
  - E. changed into angel after translation, 130 n61, 1000 n40
  - E. having sexual intercourse with angels in heaven, 121 n58, 127 n60
  - E. with angel watchers and holy ones, 119
- appearing before Lord, 125-126
- ascension of, 124-129 (*see also* Enoch: translation of)
- carried to heaven in fiery chariot, 123



Enoch (*cont.*)

ascension of (*cont.*)  
 taken to heaven from Achuzan, 127  
 attributes of, 129  
 body of, turned into celestial fire, 130  
 book(s) of, 126, 127-128 n60  
 and Book of Raziël, 142  
 born on 6 Sivan, 127  
 Christian legends about, 131 n61  
     E. to be killed by anti-Christ, 131 n61  
 conversation with God, 120  
 death of, 122 n58  
 description of, 129  
 as father of  
     astronomy, 123 n59  
     calendation, 123 n59  
 finding Adam and Eve, 128 n60  
 in heaven  
     in first heaven, 124  
     in second heaven, 124  
     in third heaven, 124  
     in fourth heaven, 125  
     in seventh heaven, 122 n58  
     as heavenly scribe, 100 n142, 122 n58, 1126 n50  
 identified with Metatron, 129, 130 n61 (*see also* Enoch-Metatron; Metatron; Metatron-Enoch)  
 influence of, prevailing for 243 years, 122  
 as inventor of science and knowledge, 121 n58  
 life span of, 132 n64  
 as "little Lord," 130  
 living in seclusion, 119, 122, 123  
 marriage of, to sister, 113 n42  
 one of seven pillars of earth, 9 n28 (*see also under* world[s])  
 one of seven pious men in pre-Abrahamic times, 116-117 n53 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 as one of shepherds who assist Messiah, 100 n142  
 and Paradise  
     E. entering Paradise alive, 73 n67, 122 n58, 131 n61, 132 n62 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)  
     Paradise as abode of E., 122 n58  
 and revelation  
     E. as bearer of revelation, 102 n1, 127 n60  
 righteousness of, 129

Enoch (*cont.*)

at right hand of God, 450 (*see also* God: right hand of)  
 as ruler  
     over angels, 123  
     over men, 123  
 as scribe of justice, 119  
 as seventh since Adam who pleased God, 122 n58  
 as son of Cain, 111, 112 n40  
 stature of, 129  
 as teacher, 122-123, 126  
 as third of seven pious men, 682 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 three sons of, 127 n60  
 and Torah  
     E. receiving knowledge of Torah from Seth, 152 n51  
     E. transmitting knowledge of Torah to Shem, 152 n51  
 translation of, 129-131 (*see also* Enoch: ascension of)  
     because of sinfulness of men, 129  
     on day of his birth, 128 n60  
     into Paradise, 121-122 n58  
     on 6 Sivan, 127  
 vision of, 124  
 as witness, 122 n58  
 Enoch (son of Nimrod)  
     identified as Hiwwar ("the leper"), killed by Esau, 258 n38  
 Enoch-Metatron, 128 n60  
     as angel of face, 122 n58  
     *See also* Enoch; Metatron-Enoch  
 Enosh (son of Seth), 117-119  
     as ancestor of Enoch, 126  
     generation of  
         as first idol worshipers, 117  
         punishment of, by flood, 117  
         three sins of, 118 n55  
         three visitations of, 118 n55  
         wicked, 118 n54  
     and idolatry  
         E. as originator of idolatry, 118 n54, 119 n56  
         E. forming clay image, 117  
     name, meaning of, 118 n54  
     one of seven pious men in pre-Abrahamic times, 116-117 n53 (*see also under* pious: men)  
     as type of the pious, 118 n54  
 envy  
     one of 13 sins punished by leprosy, 675 (*see also* leprosy)  
 Envy (demon)  
     having all limbs of man but without head, coming before Solomon, 963

Epher (grandson of Abraham and Keturah)

Africa named after, 243  
 invading Lybia, 243  
 Ephlāl (grandson of Ishmael), 348  
 ephod  
     of Aaron  
         atoning for idolatry, 650  
         having two precious stones, one on each shoulder, 650  
         one of eight priestly garments of Aaron, 650 (*see also under* Aaron)  
         set with precious stones, 650  
     golden, of Pharaoh, 364  
 Ephraim  
     descendant of Joshua, 404  
     descendants of  
         called Ephrati, 405  
         seducing Israel to idolatry, 403  
         to include King Jeroboam, 317  
     as head of academy, 405  
     humility of, 406 n376  
     and Jacob  
         E. being instructed in Torah by J., 402  
         E. receiving special and separate blessing from J., 405  
         J. giving birthright to E., 404  
     and Manasseh  
         adopted by Jacob, 403  
         birth of  
             announced to Jacob by God, 317  
             E. preceding M., 404  
         blessing of, 402-406  
         sons of Asenath and Joseph, 368  
         superiority of E. to M., 405 n367  
         to be founders of tribes, 317  
     and Manasseh and Benjamin  
         tribes of  
             colors of standard of, 686  
     tribe of  
         addicted to worship of idol called Sibboleth, 877 n109  
         battle of, against Philistines at Gath, 547  
         compared with fish, 404  
         confessing to sacrificing children to Moloch, 856  
         corpses of, remaining on ground at Gath for many years, 547  
         flag of  
             black with picture of Egypt and bull, 688  
         following Ganon in attempt to leave Egypt, 547



Ephraim (*cont.*)

- tribe of (*cont.*)
  - lisp of, 404, 406 n375
  - murder common among, 877 n109
  - offering human sacrifices to Baal, 877 n109
  - one of four standard-bearers, 685
  - prince of
    - bringing offering on Sabbath, 666
    - Elishama, 679
  - punishment of, for trying to leave Egypt, 547
  - significance of dedication offering of, 668
  - spy representing (Hoshea), 706
  - standard of
    - in form of fish, 686, 689 n447
    - inscription on, 686
- Ephraimites. *See* Ephraim: tribe of
- Ephrath
  - place of Rachel's sepulchre, 337
- Ephrathi
  - haggadic interpretations of, 888 n1
- Ephrati
  - as descendants of Ephraim, 405
- Ephron
  - Abraham acquiring Cave of Machpelah from, 235
  - chief of children of Heth, 235
- Epiphanes (son of Antiochus)
  - shipping Solomon's throne from Egypt to Greece, 1131 n13
- epispasm
  - Esau and, 254 n24
  - See also* circumcision
- epispasmos*
  - one of crimes of Achan, 847 n25
- Epistle of Jeremiah, 1071 n15
- Er (firstborn son of Judah), 344
  - age of, at marriage, 7 years, 346 n82
  - death of
    - E. killed by angel on third day after wedding, 344
    - one year after marriage, 346 n82
  - marrying Tamar, daughter of Aram, son of Shem, 344
  - name, meaning of ("the childless"), 344
  - and Onan
    - difference in age of, 346 n82
  - sin of, 346 n79
- erelim (angels)
  - in third heaven, 503

## Eretz (seventh earth), 6, 109

- Cain in, 109-110
- error
  - one of seven evils, 450
- Esau
  - adultery of, 283
  - age of
    - at Abraham's death, 258 n37
    - when married, 40, 282
  - associating with two pious men, 579
  - birthmark of, sign of serpent, 253
  - birth of, 251-255
    - blood-red, 253
    - E. causing injury to Rebekah's womb, 254 n16
    - first with all impurity, 253
    - with hair, beard, and teeth, 253
  - and birthright
    - E. cursed by God for selling birthright, 258
    - E. losing birthright, 579
    - E. making son Eliphaz swear to kill Jacob to regain birthright, 580 n138
    - E. scorning birthright, 257
    - E. selling birthright to Jacob, 257-259, 285
  - blessing of, by Isaac, 264
  - burial of
    - in Adorah, 322 n317
    - E. demanding burial place in Cave of Machpelah, 414
    - headless corpse of E. returned to Mount Seir, 415
  - children of, refusing Torah, 593
  - and circumcision
    - E. called "uncircumcised one," 254 n24
    - E. rejecting, 254 n24
    - E. remaining uncircumcised, 253
    - legend that E. underwent epispasm, 254 n24
  - committing lewdness and murder, 257, 579
  - compared to swine, 282-283
  - conflict with sons of Jacob, 414
  - conspiring with Ishmael, 273
  - cunning and deceit of, 261
  - death of
    - in Adora, 321
    - legend about, 415 n422
  - deceitfulness of, 273 n109
  - denying God, 257, 259 n48
  - denying resurrection, 257, 579

Esau (*cont.*)

- descendants of, 322-325 (*see also* Esau: sons of)
  - Anah, 323-324
  - choosing Bela as king, 416
  - cut off from world, 258
  - despising Abrahamic covenant, 254 n24
  - dominion over world of, 259 n51
  - Eliphaz as firstborn and most worthy, 322-323
  - rejecting Torah, 625 n276
  - rewarded for E.'s filial love, 265-266, 927 n77
  - Romans as, 254 n15, 259 n51
  - as rulers of Rome, 254 n19
  - served by descendants of Jacob, 258
- despising priestly service, 258
- and dietary laws, 270 n100
- dominion of, over world
  - for merits of Abraham, 259 n51
  - (*see also* Abraham: merits of; merits)
  - as reward for love of Isaac, 259 n51
- emigrating from Holy Land, 328 n2
- esteemed by contemporaries, 324 n320
- filial piety of, 267 n77, 298 n240, 756 n706
- five crimes of, on day of Abraham's death (murder, rape, rejecting resurrection of the dead, scorn of birthright, denial of God), 257
- garments of, high-priestly raiment of Adam, 265
- giving up share in world to come, 259 n43 (*see also* world to come: those having no share in)
- gluttony of, 259 n45
- grievous sin of, 271 n105
- guardian angel of, Sammael, 254 n15
- hairiness of, 265
- hand and sword of, 736
- having evil eye, 264
- head of, rolling into Cave of Machpelah onto lap of Isaac, 414
- house of, to be destroyed by house of Joseph, 290
- and hunting, 257, 259 n51, 261, 269, 270 n100



Esau (*cont.*)

- hypocrisy of, 255
- identified with Rome, 254 n15, 254 n19, 263 n69, 305 n271
  - as swine in rabbinic literature, 284 n162
- idolatry of, 255
- immorality of, 255
- impious way of life of, 199
  - for two years in secret before death of Abraham, 259 n48
- inheritance of
  - E. wanting to be only heir, 271
- and Isaac
  - E. as I.'s blemished offspring, 406
  - E. giving I. forbidden food, 255, 270 n100
  - E. planning to murder I. and Jacob, 271, 273, 273 n109
  - E.'s love for I., 258, 259 n51
  - E. winning I.'s love, 255
  - I. bestowing power of sword on E., 263 n69
  - I.'s blessing of E., 270, 271 n104
- and Jacob
  - birth order of, 254 n22
  - compared to wolf and ram, 303
  - dialogue between, about resurrection, 257-258
  - disagreeing about material world and world to come, 252
  - division of two worlds of, 307 n276
  - E. acknowledging rights of J., 320
  - E. and Eliphaz pursuing J., 274-276
  - E. breaking oath he swore to J., 320, 322 n316
  - E. envying blessing of J., 819
  - E. exchanging messages with J., 295-296
  - E. hating J. on account of blessing, 271
  - E. killed during burial of J., 272
  - E. mortally wounded in thigh by J., 321
  - E. not acknowledging J.'s superiority, 322 n316
  - E. planning to murder Isaac and J., 271, 273, 273 n109
  - E. planning to murder J. while J. grieving for Isaac, 415 n422
  - E.'s anger at J., 271

Esau (*cont.*)

- and Jacob (*cont.*)
  - E.'s campaign against J., 319-322
  - E. selling birthright to J., 257-259, 285
  - E. selling claim to burial site in Cave of Machpelah to J., 258, 414
  - E.'s eyes falling out of sockets onto J.'s knees, 414
  - E.'s guardian angel weaker than J.'s, 254 n15
  - E.'s resemblance to J. as reason for sons of J. not killing E., 415 n422
  - E. stealing wealth of J., 276 n124
  - E.'s war against J., 320
  - E. wanting to bite J., 303
  - J. giving red wine to E., 259 n45
  - meeting between, 302-307
  - quarreling in womb, 252, 253-254 n13
    - as two nations in womb, 252
  - youth of, 255-257
- Joseph as opposite of, 579
- killed
  - during burial of Jacob, 272
  - by Hushim (son of Dan), 414
  - by Judah, 415 n422
- legend about, that E. had long teeth, adaptation of Og legend, 305 n263
- marriage of
  - to daughters of Canaanites, as abomination, 263 (*see also* Canaanite wives; marriage[s])
  - to Judith, daughter of Heth, 283
  - to Mahalath, daughter of Ishmael, 273
  - to ungodly daughter of Ishmael, 274 n121
- and Methuselah's sword, 132 n63
- moving to land of Seir, 271
- name, meaning of, 253, 255 n28
- as nation owning sin, 252
- nearness of hell to, 269
- and Nimrod
  - Esau killing Enoch, son of Nimrod, 258 n38
  - E. killing N.
    - on day of Abraham's death, 257
    - in duel, 259 n38
  - E. putting on garments of Adam in order to kill N., 259 n38

Esau (*cont.*)

- and Nimrod (*cont.*)
  - feud between, 257, 259 n38
  - not to behold majesty of Lord, 414
  - one of five men wicked from first to last, 1044 n39
- portion of
  - chosen on advice of Ishmael, 322 n316
  - chosen on advice of Nebaioth, 322 n316
  - money and material possessions of Isaac, 320
- pretending to be pious, 284 n162
- punishment of, for denying God and resurrection, 258
- pursuing evil inclinations in secret, 257
- ravishing betrothed maiden, 257
- refusing to learn, 261
- rejoicing at report of Joseph's death, 393 n293
- residing in Mount Seir, 320
- rewarded for
  - departing from Palestine with 100 cities in Seir, 322 n316
  - kindness to Isaac, 755
- Samael as ally of, 252
- Sammael disguised as, 306 n273
- Satan accompanying on hunt, 264-265
- scorning promise to give Holy Land to seed of Abraham, 258
- seven abominations of, 268 n77
- seven holy places destroyed by (Tabernacle; sanctuaries at Gilgal, Shiloh, Nob, and Gibeon; and First and Second Temple), 264
- sons of (*see also* Esau: descendants of)
  - appointing foreign kings over selves, 417 n424
  - appointing Jobab of Bozrah to succeed king Bela, 416
  - dividing land of Seir, 416
  - fleeing from sons of Jacob, 321
  - slaying all inhabitants of Seir except 50 lads and maidens, 416
  - to be judged by Messiah, 1090 n57
  - was of
    - allied with Agnias against sons of Seir, 415, 416



Esau (*cont.*)

- sons of (*cont.*)
- wars of (*cont.*)
  - allied with Agnias and Ishmaelites in second campaign against sons of Jacob, 416
  - defeated by Joseph at Raamses, 416
  - against Joseph and brothers, 415
  - victory in battle in desert of Paran, 416
- sword of, legends concerning, 922 n59
- to wrap self in prayer shawl (*tallit*), 284 n162
- true character of, 269-271
- weeping of, 270, 271 n104 (*see also* crying; tears; weeping)
- wives of
  - Basemath as second wife, 271
  - double names of, 274 n122
  - E. not separating from Canaanite wives, 274 n121 (*see also* Canaanite wives; marriage[s])
  - idolatry of, 263, 267 n73
  - Judith of family of Ham, 262
- and world
  - E. ruling over, 252, 257
  - E. to enjoy goods of, 270, 307 n276
  - E. to inherit, 322 n316
- See also* Edom
- escaped, the
  - Michael as, 194, 196 n90
  - Og as, 196 n90
  - Palit (angel) as, 194
- Esh (fire)
  - name of man if God withdraws His Name, 66
- Eshcol (Eshkol)
  - at Abraham's banquet, 205
  - advice of, to Abraham concerning circumcision, 202
  - at burial of Sarah, 235
  - disciple of Abraham, 197 n92
- esophagus
  - one of 12 guides of men, swallowing food and drink, 671 (*see also* body, human; guides: of men)
- Esther, 1129-1180
  - adorned with holy spirit, 1166
  - age of, when coming to court 40 or 80 years, 1144 n68

Esther (*cont.*)

- age of, when coming to court (*cont.*)
  - 75 years, 1141
  - fulfillment of promise to Abraham, 1141-1142
- and Ahasuerus
  - E. inviting A. and Haman to banquet, 1167
  - female spirit in guise of E., as wife of A., 1143
- assisted by three angels, 1167
- beauty and piety of, 1141-1144
- E. as ideal of beauty, 60 n24
- birth of
  - causing death of mother, 1141
- as descendant of royal family of Saul, 1145
- description of, 1141-1142
- eating only food permitted to Jews, 1142
- Hadassah another name for, 1141
- intentions of, known by Elijah at banquet, 1010
- interceding for Jews, 1166-1169
- keeping descent and faith secret, 1143-1144
- as last ruler of Israel, 409
- loved by celestials as well as terrestrials, 1144 n68
- marriage of
  - with Gentile, 1139 n54
- modesty of, 1142
- and Mordecai
  - coins struck with figures of E. and M., 1176
  - communications between, 1162, 1164 n138
  - E. as niece of M., 1139
  - E. as orphan taken in by M. and wife, 1141
  - E. as wife of M., 1143, 1164 n141
  - E. concealed by M. for four years, 1139
- name, meaning of ("she who conceals"), 1129, 1130 n1, 1141
- one of four most beautiful women in history, 940, 941 n132
- one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271
- as orphan, 1141, 1142
- prayer of, 1164-1166
- seven Jewish attendants of, 1142
- names related to seven days of creation, 1143

Esther (*cont.*)

- to make up for transgressions of Saul, 1163
- virtues of, 1179
- wealth and power of, 1129
- Esther, Book of
  - canonicity of, 1179 n193
  - edited by men of Great Assembly, 1071 n15
  - edited or declared canonical by Great Synagogue, 1128 n56
  - incorporated into Holy Scripture at request of Esther, 1179
  - last of scriptural writings, 1129
- Esther, Fast of. *See* fast, three-day
- Esther, Scroll of. *See* Esther, Book of
- Etam
  - identified with Manohah, 878 n111
- Ethan
  - one of five scribes going with Ezra, 1122, 1125 n50
- Ethan the Ezrahite
  - identified with Abraham, 955 n19
  - wisdom of, Solomon's wisdom greater than, 949-950
- Ethema
  - oldest daughter of Kenaz, 859
- Ethiopia
  - conquered by Sennacherib, 1051 n65
  - Messiah to accept gifts offered by, 649
- Ethiopians
  - as descendants of Ham, 154
  - learning circumcision from Moses, 492 n80
  - led into exile by king of Assyria, 154
- etrog tree
  - Israel praising God with fruit of, on Sukkot, 1175
  - willing to serve as cross for Haman, 1175
- See also* tree(s)
- eulogy "remembered to good" added to name(s) of
  - Elijah, 1004 n45
  - Elijah and Moses, 996 n1
  - Harbonah, 1004 n45
- eunuch(s)
  - Daniel as, 1097 n78
  - in Egypt, 349
  - Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah as, 1097 n78
- euphemisms
  - "eating bread" meaning sexual intercourse, 351 n103



## Euphrates River

- banks of, one of places where
  - Joseph buried gold, silver, and precious stones, 397
- name, meaning of, 70 n51
- source of, beneath tree of life, 69
- water from, necessary to make mortar for founding of Rome, 948 n11

## Eve

## and Adam

- E. as A.'s serpent, 102 n3
- E. compared with A., 59
- E. created from third rib of A.'s right side, 67 n42
- E. forbidden by A. to touch tree, 71
- E. weeping after death of A., 98
- oath of E. to make A. eat fruit, 93
- prayer of E. to be buried with A., 98-99
- why E. not created at same time as A., 66 n38, 67 n40

## adorned as bride, 66

## and animals

- E. giving animals fruit of tree of knowledge, 34
- E. taking care of animals, 70 n57
- E. understanding language of animals, 68 n47
- female animals assigned to E., 92

## beauty of, 59, 60 n24, 68 n47

## bringing sin into world, 65

## burial of

- by angels with Adam and Abel, 99

## in Cave of Machpelah, 234

## in Hebron, 98 n137

## prepared for by Seth, 99

## covering nakedness with fig leaves, 93

## creation of

- as allegory, 67 n42
- on sixth day, 77
- from third rib of Adam's right side, 67 n42

## death of, 98-100

## six days after Adam, 98 n138

## dream of, about Cain and Abel, 103

## and fall

- story of, 92-96
- telling descendants story of, 91-94

## and forbidden fruit

- E. taking forbidden fruit, 65

Eve (*cont.*)and forbidden fruit (*cont.*)

- oath of E., to make Adam eat, 93

## garments of, made of hide of

- female Leviathan, 30 n123

## name, meaning of, 68 n47, 102 n3

## oath of, to make Adam eat fruit, 93

## and Paradise

- E. as weaver of coverings in fifth division, 19-20

- E. entering when 80 days old, 81 n97

- E. going with Seth to gates of, 91

## penance of, 86, 88 n106

## hindered by Satan, 87

## punishment of, 78 n81

## number of penalties of, 79 n83

## sentence pronounced on, 94

## and Satan

- E. hindered by S. in her

## penance, 87

## having sexual intercourse, 101

## and serpent

## conversation between, 71

## E. as serpent, 68 n47

## E. blaming serpent, 94

## having sexual intercourse, 102 n3

## sexual union of, with male spirits, 115 n47

## as "speaker," 68 n47

## ten curses of, 76

## west and south assigned to, 92

## evil

## deliverance from, by God, 428

## God's final victory over, 306 n275

## having appointed time to run its course, 1122

## not found in God's proximity, 9 n22

## represented by Leviathan, 306 n275

## to be abolished in world to come, 306 n275

## warded off by prayer, alms, and repentance, 1052 n75

## evil eye

- as cause of death of Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, 1100 n92

## Esau and, 264

## of nations causing breaking of tablets, 661

## of Sarah on Hagar, 201

## of Sarah on Ishmael, 220

evil eye (*cont.*)

## and sons of Jacob, 371

## spell of, broken by priestly blessing, 660-661

evil impulse. *See* evil inclinationevil inclination (*Yetzer ha-Ra*)

## admonition of Moses to drive away, 661 n380

## Amalek identified with, in

## Kabbalah, 580 n141

## animals and, 50 n6

## born in man, 105 n14

## Cain and, 104

## created by God, 452

## entering body

## at time of birth, 61 n25

## at time of conception, 105 n14

## entering soul

## 40 days after conception, 61 n25

## at time of conception, 61 n25

## having no power over

## Abraham, 237, 412

## Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Moses, Aaron, Benjamin, Miriam, David, 412

## David, 928, 939 n128

## holding sway in this world, 563-564

## identical with Sammael, 306 n275

## injected into Eve by serpent, 95 n119

## in man, 49-50 n6

## not in angels, 49 n6

## one of things God repented of creating, 141 n20

one of three things to be removed before advent of Messiah, 307 n275 (*see also* Messiah: advent of)

## overcoming, 17 n66

## as poison of serpent, 93

## removed from people in direct communication with God, 611

## slain by David, 939 n128

## to be removed in world to come, 611

## to be slain by God on day of judgment, 306 n275

## to disappear in time to come, 1128 n57

## turned into good inclination by Abraham, 939 n128

## Evil-merodach

- as cosmocrator, 1050-1051, 1112 n2 (*see also* cosmocrator)

## descendant of Baladan, 1050-1051



Evil-merodach (*cont.*)

father of Belshazzar, 1112 n2  
 freeing Jehoiachin from prison,  
 1063 n134, 1108 n116  
 ruling while Nebuchadnezzar was  
 beast, 1108  
 son of Nebuchadnezzar, 1108  
 three sons of (Regosar, Lebuzar  
 Duk, Nabar [i.e.,  
 Belshazzar]), 1112 n2  
 evils, seven (bloodshed, corruptness,  
 error, captivity, hunger,  
 panic, devastation), 450  
 evil spirits, 120  
 becoming powerless when Israelites  
 recite Shema, 775  
 called "angels of Satan," 830 n946  
 and Divine goodness, 1  
 dwelling in desert, 324 n321  
 invisibility of, 767 n743  
 leading people astray, 167  
 Mastema as leader of, 167  
 as offspring of Adam, 109  
 origin of, in giants, 120  
 Samael as head of, 817  
 and scholars  
   evil spirits envious of scholars,  
   305 n259  
   evil spirits trying to attack schol-  
   ars at night, 305 n259  
*See also* angel(s), fallen; demon(s);  
 devil(s); Mastema; Satan;  
 spirit(s)  
 exclusiveness  
   accusations of, against Jews, 51 n8  
 execution, methods of  
   being stung by bees, 209  
   stoning, 690  
 exile, 1065-1109  
   first  
     Nebuchadnezzar exiling 300 of  
     noblest people, including  
     Ezekiel, 1061  
   under Jehoiachin, 1096 n76  
   Messiah consoled by Elijah during,  
   1022 n115  
   70 years of, fixed by Jeremiah,  
   1131 n5  
   under Zedekiah, 1096 n76  
*See also* Babylonian exile  
 exiles  
   majority of, from tribes of Judah  
   and Benjamin, 1123 n34  
   Rachel interceding for, 403  
   returning  
     under Ezra, Nehemiah,  
     Mordecai, Joshua, and  
     Zerubbabel, 1121 n30

exiles (*cont.*)

returning (*cont.*)  
   including Haggai, Zechariah,  
   and Malachi, 1119  
   several returns of, 1123 n34  
   sins of, preventing miracles from  
   being wrought, 1123 n36  
   three in number, 1096 n76  
 Exodus, the, 540-544  
   beginning at Raamses, 542  
   Egyptians and Israelites compared  
   to portly man riding ass,  
   542  
   five tokens granted to Israel after,  
   565  
   God's account of, to Uzza, 556-  
   557  
   Israelites cured of diseases in, 542  
   number of people leaving Egypt,  
   542  
   provisions of Israelites lasting  
   from 15 Nisan to 15 Iyar, 570  
   n89  
   for 61 meals, 570 n89  
   for 30 days, 570 n89  
   for 31 days, 569  
   seven weeks from, to revelation on  
   Sinai, 761 n723  
   taking place at noon, 814  
   taking place on Thursday, 549  
   three calamities befalling Egypt on  
   night of, 542 n230  
   time of, Shekinah bringing  
   Israelites to 600,000 in  
   number, 393 n305  
*See also* Egypt; Israel (nation;  
 people)/Israelites: in Egypt;  
 Israel (nation; people)/  
 Israelites: and Exodus  
 exorcism  
   taught to men by Shemhazai, 119  
 eye(s)  
   black of, enabling one to see, 677  
   pupil of, one of five parts of body  
   received from mother, 606  
   two of ten orifices of man, 960  
   white of, 677  
     one of five parts of body  
     received from father, 606  
*See also* body, human  
 Ezbon (son of Gad)  
   name, meaning of, 433-434  
 Ezekeel (fallen angel)  
   teaching men augury from clouds,  
   119  
 Ezekiel  
   advising Hananiah, Mishaël, and  
   Azariah to flee, 1098

Ezekiel (*cont.*)

as descendant of Rahab, 844 n12,  
 1093 n65  
 famine in Egypt in days of, lasting  
 40 years, 365  
 in first exile of Nebuchadnezzar,  
 1061  
 heavens ordered to open before, 48  
 and Jeremiah  
   E. as son of Jeremiah, 1101 n93  
   relationship between, 1093 n65  
 and Jeremiah and Baruch  
   fixing calendar outside Holy  
   Land, 1083 n42  
 one of eight postexilic prophets,  
 991 n56  
 one of five to give expected answer  
 to God's questions (Adam,  
 Cain, Balaam, Hezekiah),  
 1102 n94  
 one of four prophets appointed to  
 proclaim punishment of  
 descendants of Lot, 214  
 people arguing with, 1101 n93  
 praised for strict observance of  
 Law, 1102 n94  
 punished for lack of faith, 1102  
 receiving revelation about future  
 Temple, 1101 n93  
 reviving dead, 1101-1103  
   allegorical interpretation of,  
   1102 n94  
   of different classes of people,  
   1101  
   of Ephraimites who perished  
   attempting to escape from  
   Egypt before Exodus, 1101  
   of godless Jews who had not  
   believed in resurrection,  
   1101  
   of godless Jews who had pol-  
   luted Temple, 1101  
   of handsome youths slaughtered  
   by Nebuchadnezzar, 1102  
   in valley of Dura, 1098  
 story of martyrdom of, 1102 n94  
 as teacher of  
   Baruch, 1094  
   Pythagoras, 1102 n94  
 tomb of, 1094-1095  
   adjoining that of Baruch, 1094  
   covered by mausoleum erected  
   by King Jeconiah, 1094  
   as scene of many miracles, 1094  
 vision of, 1043 n36  
   compared with that of Isaiah,  
   1043 n36  
   and dry bones, 1102



Ezekiel (*cont.*)vision of (*cont.*)

heavenly throne, 1101 n93

visiting Hiram of Tyre, 1105

## Ezekiel, Book of

edited or declared canonical by  
Great Synagogue, 1128 n56  
men of Great Assembly as editors  
of, 1071 n15

## Ezra, 1121-1126

abolishing custom of having only  
Levites as officers of court,  
1124 n37

as advocate of people with celes-  
tials, 1122

as author, compiler, or editor

E. and five companions (Haggai,  
Zechariah, Malachi, Levite  
Shimur, Hezekiah), writing  
down Mishnah, 1125 n50

E. as compiler of books of  
Chronicles, 1120 n27

E. as editor of book of Judges,  
1128 n56

E. called "Scribe," 1125 n50

E. called "Scribe of science of  
Supreme Being unto all  
eternity," 1123

E. dictating 94 books in 40  
days, 1122-1123

E. dividing Torah into portions  
to be read annually, 1122

E. introducing use of dots over  
words to indicate doubtful  
genuineness, 1124 n44

E. not permitted to write one  
letter of Torah from mem-  
ory, 1125 n50

E. originating idea of rewriting  
Pentateuch in "Assyrian"  
characters, 1122

E. taking five scribes (Sarga,  
Dabria, Seleucia, Ethan,  
Aziel) to dictate for 40  
days, 1122

census of, after people returned  
from exile, 637

commanded by God to remain in  
Babylon as long as Joshua  
lives, 1123 n35

cursed by Yemenite Jews that he  
would not have final rest in  
Holy Land, 1115 n5

death of

according to Josephus, 1126 n51

grave of, miracle at, 1123

not occurring in Holy Land,  
1123

Ezra (*cont.*)death of (*cont.*)

occurring on journey to King  
Artachshashta, 1123

on 2 Tevet, 1126 n51

disciple of Baruch, 1093

entering Paradise alive

E. not entering Paradise alive, in  
rabbinic literature, 1125-  
1126 n50

in 4 Ezra, 1125-1126 n50

hearing voice from thornbush,  
1122

identified with prophet Malachi,  
1115 n5

introduced to Cyrus by Daniel,  
1113

leading return from captivity, 1119  
and Men of Great Synagogue,  
1127 n56

E. and company as Men of  
Great Synagogue, 1125  
n49

as middle of chain of tradition,  
1128 n56

occupying office of high priest  
after Joshua, 1123 n35

one of five men pious from first to  
last, 1044 n39 (*see also*  
*under* pious: men)

pronouncing Tetragrammaton "as  
it is written," 1125 n49

prophetic visions of

E. receiving seven prophetic  
visions interpreted by  
Uriel, 1122

showing history and future,  
1122

reprimanding those who married  
foreign women, 1122,  
1124 n38

and resettlement of Palestine,  
1113, 1121

as second Moses, 1122

sometimes called Malachi, 1121

ten regulations of, 1122, 1125 n49  
to withhold 70 books from general  
populace, 1123, 1125 n50

wanting to preserve purity of  
Jewish race and spread  
study of Torah, 1121-1122

## Ezra, Book of

comprising Ezra and Nehemiah,  
1120 n27

as copy of Torah, 1125 n44

## Ezra-Malachi

opposing divorce, 1124 n38

Ezra-Salathiel problem, 1126 n50

## F

fables. *See* animals: fables and folklore  
of

faces

heavenly radiance of, at revelation  
of Torah, 600

*See also* countenance

faith

lack of, war of Amalek as punish-  
ment for, 577

those steadfast in, in fourth divi-  
sion of Paradise, 19

Falashas

and personification of Sabbath, 84  
n101

falcon

on Solomon's throne, 968

fall, 71-74

of Adam

description of, 64 n35

owing to wine, 153

Eve's story of, 92-96

punishment for, 74-82

*See also* Adam: fall of; Eve: and fall  
falsehood

not created by God, 147 n36, 607

one of seven tempter spirits, 435

personification of

asking for shelter on ark, 144

paired with Misfortune on ark,  
144-145

*See also* deceit; lie, diplomatic;  
lying

false suspicion

one of 13 sins punished by leprosy,  
675 (*see also* leprosy)

family, celestial. *See* heavenly court

famine

causing scabies, 372 n197

in Egypt

averted on account of Jacob's  
merits, 412

extending from Egypt to  
Phoenicia, Arabia, and  
Palestine, 370

Joseph's dream interpretation  
concerning, 365

lasting two years, 412

ending when remains of Saul and  
Jonathan brought to Holy  
Land, 935

not for bread only, but for heav-  
enly words of Lord, 864  
n33

as punishment, 372 n198

for theft, 607

during reign of Joram, 991



famine (*cont.*)

ten God-appointed famines from creation of world until advent of Messiah, 189, 862

## first

in time of Abraham, 191 n64  
in time of Adam, 189

## second

in time of Abraham, 189, 191 n64

in time of Lamech (father of Noah), 191 n64

third, compelling Isaac to move to land of Philistines, 189, 262 n52

fourth, driving sons of Jacob to Egypt, 189

fifth, in time of judges, 189

sixth, in time of David, 189, 901, 934-935

caused by D., who bestowed all priestly gifts on master Ira, 936 n111

seventh, in day of Elijah, 189

eighth, in time of Elisha, 189

ninth, coming on men piece-meal, 189

tenth, to come before advent of Messiah, 189

as test of Abraham's faith, 189

in time of Boaz, 864 n33

in time of Ruth, 862

## Faria

identified with Isis, 484 n65

## fast, three-day

dates of, 1166 n142, 1168-1169 n145

for Esther, 1164 n141

## fast days

scriptural passages read on, 1161 n123

## fasting

on account of sin of Benjaminites, 881

## of Adam

after loss of Book of Raziël, 142  
after murder of Samael's son, 142

criticized by Haman, 1153

forbidden on festivals, 1164, 1166 n142

forbidden on Sabbath, 1135

Israel fasting for seven days, 868

making a beautiful countenance, 352

of Methuselah, 131

fasting (*cont.*)

and Mordecai, 1135

M. calling on people to fast, 1160

M. ordering fast to atone for eating forbidden food at banquet of Ahasuerus, 1164 n141

## of Moses

for 40 days and nights while studying Torah, 634  
in heaven, 829

of Ninevites in repentance, 1034

as sign of repentance, 318

of Simeon, for two years, 436

taking place of sacrifices, 200 n111

on Thursday and Monday because Moses went to and from heaven, 628-629 n286

Fast of Esther. *See* fast, three-day

## father(s)

being gathered to, 248 n318

five parts of body received from (bones, veins, nails, brain, white of eye), 606

of Israel, sons of Jacob, 433

as Merkabah, bearers of Divine

Throne, 523 n166

merits of, 624 n274 (*see also* merits)

all good things coming to Israel on account of, 638

ceasing to be effective, 998 n24

invoked by Elijah, 998 n18

Israelites redeemed from Egypt on account of, 499

Israel saved on account of, 1163  
warning against relying on, 508 n118

names of, engraved on rod of

Moses, 554

patriarchs as, 434 n2

## of proselytes

Abraham as, 203 n122

sins of, to be visited upon children, 618 n251

sons of Jacob as, 434 n2

three, witnessing passage of Israel through Red Sea, 556

*See also* patriarchs; *and under individual names*

## Fatima

as daughter of Muhammad, 222 n218

as one of Ishmael's wives, 222 n218

## favorite of God

Abraham as, 223

*See also* beloved of God; friend of God

## fear

as consequence of sin, 636 n311  
of God

Jacob raising sons in, 433

not in Gerar, 217

## Fear of Isaac

oath by, 293

## feet

of demons, resembling those of cock, 977 n92

washing of, 204

of strangers, 245

## fence

around Law, 612 n239

## fenugreek, 852

## festivals

dead rising from graves on, 23 n97  
Jewish (*see under names of individual festivals*)

pilgrimage, abolished by Jeroboam, 984 n9 (*see also* pilgrimage festivals)

three in number, as reward for observing Sabbath (in months of Nisan, Sivan, and Tishri), 572

## field

as metaphor for woman, 752 n673

## fig(s)

Deborah pictured as, 874 n103

dried, as food on ark, 148 n37

of Ebed-melech, staying fresh for 66 years, 1090

as forbidden fruit, 73 n70, 93, 95 n122

fruits of, brought to Temple as first fruits, 1175

leaves of, covering Adam and Eve, 72, 74 n70, 74

symbolic of Israel, 1175

willing to serve as cross for

Haman, 1175

*See also* tree(s)

## fingers

sucking of, 41 n181

## fire

## of altar

likeness of, to lion, 661 n380

remaining on altar for 116 years, 659-660

archangel Michael created from, 16 n63

black (*see also* color[s])

huge angels made from, in seventh heaven, 504

model of candlestick for

Tabernacle made of, 678

Torah written with, on white fire, 1



fire (*cont.*)

celestial (*see* fire: heavenly)  
 chariot of, 425  
 coals of, weapon of God against Pharaoh, 559  
 columns of  
   hovering over grave of Ezra at night, 1123  
 at consecration of Tabernacle, 692  
 consuming sacrifice of Aaron, 659-660  
 creation of  
   on second day, 12-13  
   in twilight, 82 n99 (*see also* *under* creation: sixth day)  
 death by  
   as punishment, 209, 211, 212 n168, 601 n197  
   for adultery, 246  
   for arrogance, 1048 n60  
   for certain kinds of immorality, 212 n168  
   for usurping priesthood, 1042 n30  
 destroying enemy at Hazor, 317 n297  
 Divine, 692  
   beheld at moment of death, 692  
   being extinguished by bundles of wool, 693  
 as division between celestial and terrestrial, 12  
 as element of creation, 29 n114  
 fatal  
   burning first troops that Ahaziah sent against Elijah, 692  
   burning second troops that Ahaziah sent against Elijah, 692  
   consuming company of Korah, 692  
   consuming Nadab and Abihu, 692  
   destroying Job's sheep 692  
   to murmuring multitude, 692  
 flaming  
   boards and clasps of heavenly Temple made from, 503  
   engraving alphabet on crown of God, 3  
 flesh of Moses changed into, by Metatron, 503  
 green (*see also* color[s])  
   model of candlestick for Tabernacle made of, 678  
   staves of heavenly Temple made from, 503

fire (*cont.*)

heavenly  
   coming down at Elijah's sacrifice on Mount Carmel, 104 n10  
   coming down at Solomon's consecration of Temple, 104 n10  
   coming down on Manoah's sacrifice, 104 n10  
   consuming food, 248 n317  
   consuming Nadab and Abihu, 104 n10 (*see also under* fire: fatal)  
   consuming sacrifices, 104 n10  
   discovery of, and Nehemiah, 1121 n30  
   firmament crystallized by, 12  
   hidden by Jeremiah, 1119  
   lacking for first sacrifice after returning from captivity, 1119  
   peculiarities of, 502 n115  
   three properties of, 501  
   wreaking havoc among idolatrous tribe of Dan, 692  
   wreaking havoc among mixed multitude, 692  
 incorporeality of, 15-16 n62  
 ishim (angels) made of, 504  
 kinds of  
   in hell, 13, 15 n60  
   six in number, 998 n21  
   ministering to angels, 67 n40  
   not consuming burning bush, 501, 502 n115  
   at offerings of David, Gideon, and Manoah, 692  
   one face of sun, 24  
   one of five things in First Temple only, 1123-1124 n36  
   one of four phenomena preceding appearance of God, 995  
   one of four portals, 600  
   ordered to spare three youths in furnace, 48  
 pillar of, 48  
   guiding Israelites in wilderness, 542  
   lighting way for Sons of Moses, 1088  
   at tomb of Ezekiel, 1094-1095  
 red (*see also* color[s])  
   huge angels made from, in seventh heaven, 504  
   model of candlestick for Tabernacle made of, 678  
   pillars of heavenly Temple made from, 503

fire (*cont.*)

representing tribunal in Gehenna, 995  
 and revelation on Mount Sinai, 12  
 rivers of  
   flowing before Shekinah, 1047 n55  
   in hell, 13  
 white (*see also* color[s])  
   angels made of, in third heaven, 503  
   model of candlestick for Tabernacle made of, 678  
   thresholds of heavenly Temple made from, 503  
   Torah written on, with black fire, 1  
*See also* flame  
 firmament  
   created on second day, 12, 14 n44, 50 n7, 77, 82 n98  
   crystallized by heavenly fire, 12  
   relation of, to heavens, 12, 14 n46  
   ruled by plants, 71  
   saving earth from waters of heavens, 12  
   thickness of, 12  
*See also* cosmogony; cosmology; heavenly bodies; *and under* *individual heavenly bodies*  
 firstborn  
   Amram as, 718  
   battle of, with fathers, 537, 542 n230  
   as first of three calamities befalling Egypt on night of Exodus, 542 n230  
   Joseph enjoying rights of, 579  
   man slain to make teraphim, 291  
   number of, compared with number of Levites, 682  
   originally servants of sanctuary, 673  
   priestly service of, 258, 259 n44, 602 n205  
   all firstborn males before erection of Tabernacle, 265  
   garments for, before Aaron's time, 268 n89  
   redemption money for, 682  
   rights of, 219  
   to dominion, 1132  
   of sheep, as tribute for priest, 721  
   sin of  
     atoned for by tribe of Levi, 682  
     worship of golden calf, 682  
   slaying of, 536-538  
   as plague of Egypt, 524, 525



firstborn (*cont.*)slaying of (*cont.*)

as second of three calamities  
befalling Egypt on night of  
Exodus, 542 n230

## in tenth plague

60 myriads slain in, 538 n218  
suffering agony of death from  
midnight until morning,  
543 n236

*See also* birthright; inheritance; pri-  
mogeniture

## first fruits

as tribute to priests, 720

## fish

attesting holiness of Sabbath, 1089  
n56

## big

becoming uneasy at winter sol-  
stice, 2

eating small, except for Divine  
goodness, 2

created on fifth day, 28, 77

facing mate during copulation, 42  
n190

as food conducive to fecundity,  
655 n364

## harboring Jonah

created in beginning, 1033  
description of, 1033

having least developed mind, 43  
n190

hymns of praise of, 45 (*see also*  
praise)

as insignia of Ephraim, 689 n447

made out of water, 29

and Noah, 149 n42

not receiving any names from  
Adam, 43 n190

ordered to spew forth Jonah, 48  
showing Jonah mysterious places,  
1033

standard of Ephraim in form of,  
686

Fishes (sign of Zodiac). *See* Pisces

## flags of 12 tribes in wilderness

colors of, corresponding to colors  
of stones in breastplate of  
high priest, 688

## flame

tongue of Moses changed into, by  
Metatron, 503

*See also* fire

## flax

cursed by God, 104

prohibition against using with  
wool, 105 n12

seed, as offering of Cain, 104

## flesh

one of five parts of body received  
from mother, 606 (*see also*  
body, human)

## flies

not able to approach pious, 1028,  
1028 n12

stinging, as plague of Egypt, 534  
n188

## flood, 147-150

altar destroyed in, rebuilt by Noah,  
232 n251

## causes of

idolatry, 140 n17

immorality, 140 n17

unchastity, 140 n17

violence, 140 n17

chronology of, 147-148, 149 n42,  
149 n45

duration of, 147

ideal conditions before, 139

and Noah

flood announced to N. by Uriel,  
135

not reaching Holy Land, 150 n47

one of three visitations of genera-  
tion of Enosh, 118 n55

## predictions of

in dreams of Hiwwa and Hiyya,  
136

to Enoch, 126

to Methuselah, 133

to Shemhazai by Metatron, 136

as union of male and female

waters, 147, 148-149 n39

violence of waters of, 149 n44

## flour

mixed with oil, of dedication offer-  
ing

significance of, for Nahshon and  
for tribes of Asher, Benja-  
min, Ephraim, Gad, Issa-  
char, Naphtali, Simeon,  
666-670

significance of, in history of  
world, 671

## flute, 367

accompanying song at Red Sea,  
564

*See also* instruments, musical

## flying

Balaam, 795

as common feat of saints in Chris-  
tian legends, 536 n210

five kings of Midianites, 795

one of accomplishments of sorcer-  
ers, 796 n853

Phinehas, 796 n853

flying (*cont.*)

Zaliah, 795

## food

forbidden, 206 n140 (*see also*  
dietary laws)

angels transgressing Torah by  
eating, 616 n248

Daniel refraining from eating,  
1096 n77

given to Isaac by Esau, 255

sinew of hip upon hollow of  
thigh, 302

heavenly, 569-571

for journey, proverb about, 972

for students of Torah, sweet fruit  
as, 1074 n24

in time of war, only sacrificial meat  
to be eaten, 902 n58

food laws. *See* dietary laws

foot washing. *See* feet: washing of

forced marches

of Israelites in wilderness, 691-692,  
693 n459

## forgetfulness

of Abimelech by Abraham, 217

dependent on repentance, 540

prayer for, 217 n199

of sins, 211

on account of Isaac, 231

on account of merit of Abra-  
ham, 232 n248 (*see also*  
Abraham: merits of; merits)

after destruction of Temple, 200  
n111

and site of Tower of Babel, 164

## fornication

Noah admonished against, 156

one of seven tempter spirits, 435

removing soul from God, 610

of Shechem with Dinah, 308

## fortune-book

written by Ahitophel, 923

four kingdoms, 194, 196 n82, 231,  
648-649, 649 n350

angels of, 277

devastations brought upon Israel  
by, 991 n56

dominion of, in vision of  
Abraham, 199

Israel becoming subject to, through  
worship of Peor, 779 n786

meaning four kinds of locusts, 991  
n56

in possession of Solomon's throne,  
1132 n13

ruling world by sword, 268 n78

symbolic interpretation of, 991 n56  
to be judged and destroyed by  
God, 199



fox  
 cunning of, 37-38, 42 n190  
 hymn of praise of, 45 (*see also* praise)  
 and Leviathan, 38  
 and lion  
   fable of, 262 n55, 302  
   strategy of, used by Jacob, 302  
 and traveler in Sodom, 207-208  
 fragrance  
   coming from Joseph's bones, 546  
   coming from live and dead bodies of pious, 548 n2, 1028, 1028 n12 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 heavenly  
   at time of revelation on Sinai, 604 n210  
   to restore breath to dead bodies, 604 n210  
   sustaining soul, 648 n343  
*See also* perfume(s)  
 frankincense  
   coming from winds in desert, 686  
 fratricide, 103-106  
 free will, of man, 50 n6  
 Friday  
   unfavorable in Haman's lots, 1150  
 friend of God, 167  
   Abraham as, 168 n4  
   Benjamin as, 168 n4  
   Israel as, 168 n4  
   Jerusalem as, 168 n4  
   Moses as, 168 n4  
   Solomon as, 168 n4  
*See also* beloved of God; favorite of God  
 fringes. *See* tzitzit  
 frog(s)  
   confronting David about pride, 927  
   crawling through marble buildings and killing Egyptians, 918 n42  
   crocodiles descended from, 529 n179  
   feeding hungry creatures, 44  
   hymn of praise of, 45, 46 n194 (*see also* praise)  
   made harmless, 37  
   as plague of Egypt, 523, 524, 525, 527  
   severest plague, 529 n179  
   in story of R. Hanina, 114-115  
 fruit(s)  
   erelim (angels) appointed over, 503  
   forbidden  
     apple as, 73-74 n70

fruit(s) (*cont.*)  
   forbidden (*cont.*)  
     fig as, 73 n70, 93, 95 n122  
     grape as, 73-74 n70  
     identification of, 73-74 n70  
     in Paradise, 73 n61  
   of soil and tree, one of seven gifts enjoyed by Adam, 84  
 furnace  
   fiery, size of, 1097-1098, 1099 n85  
   smoking  
     Gehenna as, 200 n114  
     referring to Azazel (i.e., Satan), 200 n114  
     three men in, 1097-1101  
 future  
   knowledge of, 134 n4  
 future world  
   gift to Israel for observing Torah, 606  
   as most precious thing in God's possession, 606  
   one of six gifts to Israel from God, 584 (*see also* gifts)  
   Sabbath as foretaste of, 606  
*See also* days to come; time to come; world to come

## G

Gaash  
   conquered by sons of Jacob, 315  
   Elon, king of, slain by Levi, 314  
   identification of, 315 n292  
 Gabriel (archangel)  
   aiding Kenaz against Amorites, 858  
   angel of death  
     in charge of kings, 830 n946  
     G. as one of six, 830 n946  
     taking away lives of young persons, 42 n187  
   angel of fire  
     prostrating before Metatron, 130  
     in rabbinic angelology, 874 n105  
   angel of war, 53 n13  
   angel who does not vanish, 16 n62  
   annihilating Sennacherib's camp, 53 n13, 1046, 1098  
   appearance of  
     disguised as column of fire, 1098  
     disguised as one of wise men of Egypt, 483  
     indicating presence of Shekinah, 502 n115  
 Gabriel (*cont.*)  
   appearance to  
     Abraham after circumcision, 204  
     Balaam, 767 n743  
     Enoch, 125  
     Moses, 502 n115  
   bringing Amram and Jochebed together, 476 n40  
   bringing dust for creation of man, 53, 54 n14  
   bringing ram to altar to sacrifice in place of Isaac, 232 n245  
   burying all handmaids who were with Thermutis, 477-478  
   charged with  
     punishment of sons of fallen angels, 135  
     ripening produce, 1046, 1047 n58  
   in charge of  
     moon, 131 n61  
     soul, 57 n20  
   coming with drawn sword to kill Abimelech, 217 n191  
   corresponding to Judah, 685  
   created of snow or water, 16 n63, 53 n13  
   defending Eliezer to Isaac, 242 n301  
   destroying sinful cities, 207 n154, 213  
   and destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah, 204  
   and destruction of Temple, 1075 n26  
   guardian angel of Israel, 3 n8  
   herald of light, 53 n13  
   holding back waters, 554  
   holding burning coals from cherubim, 1075 n26  
   identified with man clothed in linen  
     in dream of Miriam, 476 n40  
     in Ezekiel 10:2, 1075 n26  
   and Jacob  
     G. as angel who wrestled with J., 306 n273  
     G. assisting J., 268 n92, 268 n97, 270 n99  
     in deceiving Isaac for blessing, 266  
   and Joseph  
     G. appearing to J. in wilderness in human form, 332  
     G. as teacher of J. in Kabbalah, 505 n117  
     G. changing tear from front to back of J.'s garment, 398



Gabriel (*cont.*)and Joseph (*cont.*)

G. clothing J. after rescue from pit, 336

G. inciting J. against brothers, 375 n206

G. leading J. to Dothan, 332

G. mutilating Potiphar so that he could not molest J., 350

G. teaching J. all 70 languages, 366, 367 n182

leader of most exalted rank of angels, 13

master of all 70 languages, 612 n242

## and Michael

accusing Uzza with brick made from child, 557

carrying out destruction of Temple, 1076 n27

causing fall of Babel, 1112 n4

confusion between, in tradition, 347 n89

G. preferred to M., in Babylonian Haggadah, 1047 n55

as messengers between Mordecai and Esther, 1162

M. preferred to G., in Palestinian Haggadah, 1047 n55

rivalry between, 3 n8, 54 n14, 767 n743, 1099 n87

to open gates of hell in Messianic times, 1120 n25

witnesses of new moon, 535

## and Moses

G. accompanying God to fetch M.'s soul, 831

G. appearing to M., 502 n115

G. arranging couch for M.'s death, 832 n948

G. assisting M., 599 n195

G. attacking M. on road to Egypt, 517 n146

G. devising test with burning coal for three-year-old M., 483

G. leading M. and Aaron into palace of Pharaoh, 518

G. making infant M. and Aaron weep in ark, 478

G. sent to fetch M.'s soul, 828

G. showing M. hell, 505-506

G. showing M. Paradise, 507

G. taking Torah scroll of M. to heavenly court, 812

Gabriel (*cont.*)and Moses (*cont.*)

G. teaching M. to make candlestick, 645-646 n338

## name

Hamon ("noise") as name, 1047 n58

meaning of ("God is mighty"), 685

one of four angels surrounding Divine Throne, 685

one of two angels punished for revealing heavenly secret, 301 n249

opposed to creation of man, 52

ordered by God to drag Leviathan out of Great Sea, 30 n127

positioned on left, 127 n60

prince of strength

witnessing deed between Adam and David, 912 n12

protector of Israel, 2

punished for delaying punishment of Israel, 1116 n7

relation of, to angel of death, 42 n187

requested to pronounce blessing over wine in Paradise, 940 n129

restoring words in chronicles of kings of Persia, 1172 n168

restraining Nebuchadnezzar from walking farther for glory of God, 1072-1073

returning pledges to Tamar, 347 n89

saved from destruction, 52

saving three men from furnace, 1098, 1099 n86

sent to give Abraham milk, 170

and story of reed in sea and site of Rome, 947

summoning Levi, 285

swallowed by Leviathan, 30 n127

throwing Ahasuerus out of bed

365 times, 1170

torturing Pharaoh for 50 days, 560

traversing world with two strokes, 1004 n46

*See also* under angel(s), general

## Gad (prophet)

coming to tell David of punishment for taking census, 936

making known to David site of Temple, 967 n57

one of ten members of board of intercalation, 937 n124

## Gad (son of Jacob)

age of, at death, 125 years, 447

as bloodthirsty, 334 n34

born circumcised, 286 (*see also* covenant[s]: sign of)

as brave man, 329

confession of, 447

death of, 448

firstborn of Zilpah, 403

guarding herd of Jacob, 329

illness of, for 11 months, 447

## and Joseph

G. accused by J. of killing lamb, 447

G. and Simeon setting out to slay J., 332

G.'s anger at and hatred of J., 329, 447-448

marriage of, to Uzit, daughter of Amoram, grandson of Nahor, 348

## name

given by Leah, 286

inscribed on standard of tribe of Reuben, 686

meaning of ("fortune" or "the cutter"), 286, 288 n183, 289 n185

one of weak among sons of Jacob, 396 n324

penance of, 447

remains of, taken to Hebron, 448

## and Simeon

setting out to slay Joseph, 332

## sons of

names of, interpreting history of tribe, 433-434

to join Reuben in camp in south, 685

## tribe of

blessed by Moses, 822-823

body of Moses taken to territory of, 823

confessing to immoral life, 856

counted first in David's census, 936

elders from (Haggai, Zarhi, Keni, Mattathiah, Zechariah, Shunil), 696

excelling in military skill, 971 n75, 822-823

good fortune of, 286

Moses' psalm of, 823

precious stone of

agate, 856

crystal, 652

prince of (Eliasaph), 680



Gad (*cont.*)tribe of (*cont.*)

significance of dedication offering of, 668

spy representing (Geuel), 705

as vanguard of Israel, armed to conquer Holy Land, 410 n393

warfare of

attacking Edom to south, 321

in battle of Sartan, 315

against Ninevites, 313

tribe of G. to be strong in battle, 822-823, 971 n75

## Gaddi

son of Susi, spy representing tribe of Manasseh, 705

## Gaddiel

name, meaning of, 705

son of Sodi, spy representing tribe of Zebulun, 705

Gadites. *See* Gad: tribe of

## Gadriel (fallen angel)

seducing Eve, 95 n131

showing children of men all blows of death, 94 n116

## Galen of Caphtor

and study of medicine, 158

## galgalim (angels), 801

## Galglriel (angel)

of solar system, prostrating before Metatron, 130

## Gallizur (angel)

also called Raziel, 614

description of, 615

## Gamaliel

name, meaning of, 679, 681 n424

prince of tribe of Manasseh, 679

son of Pedahzur, 679

## Ganges River

source of, beneath tree of life, 69

## Ganon

chief of Ephraimites, 548 n10

descendant of Joseph, attempting to lead Israelites out of Egypt, 547

king of Philistines who attacked and destroyed Ephraimites, 548 n10

gaonic literature. *See* geonic literatureGarden of Eden. *See* Eden, Garden of

## Gareb

Micah erecting altar to idols at, 883 n129

## garlic

generative power of, 1125 n46  
salutary action of, 1122garlic (*cont.*)to be eaten on Friday, one of ten regulations of Ezra, 1122 (*see also* Ezra: ten regulations of)

## garment(s)

of Aaron

eight in number (coat, breeches, mitre, girdle, breastplate, ephod, robe, golden plate), 650

of Adam

descended to Noah, to Shem, to Abraham, to Isaac, to Esau, 265

fragrance from, 268 n92

made by God and given to

Joseph by Jacob, 405

magic protection of, 259 n38

in safekeeping of Rebekah, 265  
worn by Esau, 265

of Adam and Eve

of light, 80 n93

of skin, 161

celestial

provided for Aaron at time of death, 742, 743 n637

of Egyptians

not sinking in Red Sea, 562 n55

given to brothers by Joseph, 389, 390 n289

of glory

Abraham in, 200 n114

of God

God tearing festive robe when Israel sinned, 564

of Israelites

at Exodus

not subject to fire, 688

remaining ever new, 688

in wilderness, given by angels, 544 n242

of Jehoiakim, of two substances

mingled together, 1060

of light

of pious, 80 n93 (*see also under* pious)

magical power of, 161

of Nimrod

extraordinary effects of, 257

given to N. by Cush, 161

priestly, 268 n89

eight in number, 740

in second vision of Levi, 438

symbolic interpretation of, 650-651 n353

white, Jacob making people put on, 305 n260

garment(s) (*cont.*)*See also* Adam: garment of; Adam: and Eve, garments of; Leviathan

## gate

of Abraham's tent, 346 n84

broad, of sinners, 246

at entrance of Paradise, 18

of hell, 15 n55

narrow, of just, 246

Gavon. *See* Ganon

## Ge (fourth earth)

inhabitants of, skillful in arts, science, and knowledge, 110  
place of generations of Tower of Babel and their descendants, 110

## Ge ben Hinnom

modeled after Gehinnom, having seven compartments, 15 n56

*See also* Gehenna; Gehinnom; Hades; hell; netherworld; Sheol; Tofet; water(s): below

## Ge ben Hinnom (valley near Jerusalem)

Moloch worshiped in, 15 n55

## Gedaliah

elder from tribe of Dan, 696

killed on 3 Tishri, 1087 n53

son of Ahikam, 1077 n30

telling Nebuzaradan real cause of seething blood, 1077 n30

## Gehazi, 1029-1031

children of

inheriting leprosy, 1029

disregarding order not to accept money from Naaman, 1029

and Elisha

G. afflicted with leprosy for frustrating purpose of E., 675, 1029

G. as disciple of E., 1028

pseudepigraphic work about, 1030 n17

and golden calves at Bethel, 1029

as great scholar in law, 1029

having no faith in resurrection of dead, 1029

not having faith to perform mission, 1028, 1029 n13

one of four men not to have share in world to come, 908 n100, 1029 (*see also* world to come: those having no share in)



Gehazi (*cont.*)

and sect of Zadokites, 1030 n17  
settling in Damascus, 1030 n17  
tricking many into idolatry, 1029  
wicked character of, 1029

## Gehenna (hell)

any nation ruling over Isaac to be  
punished in, 244 n311  
burning of idols in, on day of  
judgment, 558 n41  
created on second day, 77  
descendants of Isaac to be  
redeemed from, on day of  
judgment, 261  
doorkeeper of, taking place of  
Abraham, 248 n318  
earth watered from, 155 n59  
in fifth earth, 6  
Jacob believing self doomed to,  
because Joseph died while  
he was still alive, 342  
located at center of earth, 10 n39  
as one of seven divisions of hell,  
13  
as one of two visitations, 199  
place where fallen undergo punish-  
ment, 89 n109  
rain of flood passing through, 144  
relation of, to Jerusalem, 15 n55  
Samael searching for Moses in, 835  
as smoking furnace, 198, 200  
n114  
torture of wicked in, announced by  
angels in fifth heaven, 505  
n117  
*See also* Gehinnom; Hades; hell;  
netherworld; Sheol; Tofet;  
water(s): below

## Gehinnom (hell)

word used in rabbinic sources, 15  
n55  
*See also* Ge ben Hinnom;  
Gehenna; Hades; hell;  
netherworld; Sheol; Tofet;  
water(s): below

## Gehinnom (valley near Jerusalem)

Moloch worshiped in, 15 n55

## Gemini (Twins) (sign of Zodiac)

answering Haman in defense of  
Israel, 1151

*See also* Zodiac

## gender

reversal of, in work, 467, 468 n7

## generation(s)

of confusion of tongues, as inno-  
cent, 216 (*see also* genera-  
tion: of Tower)  
consecutive sinful, 605

generation(s) (*cont.*)

of Enosh (*see* Enosh: generation of)  
first ten (*see also* generation[s]:  
number of)

God's testing of, 102 n1

longevity of, 102 n1

before flood

living without pain or disease,  
92 n111

study of astronomy of, 116 n53

of flood, 138-41

doom of, caused by eight griev-  
ous sins, 1048 n60

as innocent, 216

losing gigantic strength, 86  
n105

losing longevity, 86 n105

losing multitude of children, 86  
n105

losing peace, 86 n105

not to be resurrected, 149 n44

one of things God repented of  
creating, 141 n20

practicing idolatry, 135

punishment of, 145 n26, 164,  
215 n179, 521

visited upon children, 608  
n217

register of sins of, 210 n155

sexual dissipation of, 145 n26

stature of, 146 n35

suffering death by fire, 1048  
n60

fourth, punishment visited on, 605

of Noah, addicted to sorcery, 633

none without 30 pious men, 211  
n164

number of

7 from Abraham to Moses, 474  
n31

10 from Adam to Noah, 101

(*see also* generation[s]: first  
ten)

10 from Jacob to Samson, 879  
n111

10 from Noah to Abraham, 167

10 from Perez to David, 666

15 from Abraham to Solomon,  
967 n57

26 from Adam to Moses, 592  
n177

30 from Abraham to Zedekiah,  
967 n57

33 from Adam to Solomon, 967  
n57

974 elapsed before Adam was  
created, 592 n177

generation(s) (*cont.*)

of revelation, 593 n177

distinction of, 612-613 n244

losing share in world to come,  
612-613 n244 (*see also*  
world to come: those hav-  
ing no share in)

seventh

bloodguilt visited upon, 111

most excellent, producing

Enoch, 682

of sinful cities (Sodom and  
Gomorrah)

losing riches and fertility of soil,  
86 n105

of Tower of Babel

doom of, caused by eight griev-  
ous sins, 1048 n60

Job better than, 453 n5

losing share in world to come,  
165 n90 (*see also* world to  
come: those having no  
share in)

losing unity of speech, 86 n105

punishment of, 164, 521

sins that caused destruction of,  
164-165 n88

of wilderness

corpses of, free from worms and  
insects, 612 (*see also under*  
corpse[s])

dying in wilderness, 734

having no physical impurity, 612  
and life to come, 22 n92, 735  
n615

losing six heavenly blessings, 86  
n105

receiving Torah, 715 n539

six blessings of, 86 n105

to be led by Moses in Messianic  
times, 1022 n114

worthy to receive Torah, 591

genii. *See* demon(s)

## Gennesaret, valley of

as possession of tribe of Naphtali,  
823

## Gentiles

accusations of, against Israel, 3 n8

Balaam as great sage of, who lost  
this world and world to  
come, 798

circumcised converts of, not con-  
sidered perfect Jews, 1178  
n191

distinguished from Jews by odor of  
dead bones, 339 n58

as enemies of Israel, 2

God revealing Self to, during  
night, 279 n131



Gentiles (*cont.*)

Goliath as great hero of, meeting death on account of strength, 798  
 guardian angels of, 3 n8  
 Haman as wealthy man of, perishing on account of wealth, 798  
 Jews forbidden to eat food prepared by, 752 n674  
 offering gifts to Messiah, 649 n350  
 producing one pious person every year, 211 n164  
 refusing Torah, 593-594  
 tried by God at night, 214 n170

Genunita  
 Jewish attendant of Esther on Tuesdays, 1142  
 name, meaning of ("garden"), alluding to Paradise, 1142, 1144 n77

geonic literature  
 and idea that God created world through letters, 4 n10  
 and rationalistic explanations of animal's language, 71 n58

geonic mysticism  
 in Book of Razi'el, 90 n110  
 Metatron-Enoch in, 128 n60

Gera (son of Benjamin)  
 name, meaning of, 380

Gerar  
 Abraham journeying to, 216

Gerizim, Mount  
 blessings pronounced on, 874 n103  
 ceremonies on, 844 n14  
 claimed as holy by Samaritans, 872  
 pieces of idols broken by Jacob buried under oak on, 316  
 six tribes ascending, 843

German popular beliefs  
 that Liliths assemble under trees, 67 n40

Germany  
 Jews of, refusing to return to Holy Land, 1124 n36

Gershon (son of Levi)  
 name, meaning of, 438, 517 n149  
*See also* Gershon

Gershon (son of Moses and Zipporah), 496  
 circumcised by Zipporah on way to Egypt, 515  
 supposed to be brought up as Gentile, 515

Gershon (firstborn son of Levi), 683  
 sons of, receiving two wagons for Tabernacle, 665  
*See also* Gershom (son of Levi)

Gershonites  
 second division of Levites, 684

Geshem the Arabian  
 oath of Ahasuerus to, 1167

Gethel (angel)  
 aiding Kenaz in battle, 859-860 n17  
 name, meaning of, 860 n17

Geuel (son of Machi)  
 spy representing tribe of Gad, 705

giant(s)  
 allowing spies to go their way, 707-708  
 and building of Tower of Babel, 165 n88  
 Cainites as, 110  
 descendants of, annihilated by Chedorlaomer, Arioch, and Tidal, 194  
 descended from angels and daughters of men, 708  
 devouring men, 119  
 half mortal, 708  
 immortality of, 113 n44  
 land of, preserved as reward, 708  
 number of, that perished in flood, 138 n13  
 offspring of  
 angels and daughters of men, 119  
 fallen angels and Cainite women, 137  
 in Palestine, 707  
 seeing spies as grasshoppers, 710  
 perishing from heat in flood, 146 n35  
 Sihon as, 751  
 stature of, 138 n13  
 three, summoned by Sarah, 236 n259

Gibborim  
 name, meaning of, 137  
 as offspring of fallen angels and Cainite women, 137 (*see also* giants)

Gibeon  
 battle of, one of three occasions for war of confusion, 896 n42

Gibeonites  
 alliance of, with Israelites, 848  
 defense of, 850 n44  
 excluded by Ezra from entering into assembly of Lord, 1124 n40

Gibeonites (*cont.*)

excluded from community of Israel forever, 846  
 and Saul, 937 n114  
 S. charged with having killed seven Gibeonites, 935

Gideon (judge), 871-874  
 asking for sign, 872  
 considered one of least worthy judges by Haggadah, 874 n101  
 as descendant of  
 Joseph, 330  
 Manasseh, 404, 822, 872  
 ephod of  
 G. having ephod made, bearing name of Manasseh, 872  
 treated as idol after G.'s death, 872  
 gaining victory during Passover, 872  
 miracles wrought for, 873 n97  
 pictured as vine, 874 n103  
 sign of, blood and water, 872  
 transgressing law, 873 n97  
 victory of, as reward for filial piety, 873 n100  
 war of, against Midianites, 872

gifts  
 conditional, to Israelites (Holy Land, Temple, Davidic kingdom), 590-591 n173  
 from God as reward for observance of Sabbath, 572  
 from God to world, three in number (wisdom, strength, wealth), 798  
 heavenly, 628 n285  
 magic girdle as, 463 n39  
 motif of, in legends, 463 n39  
 to Israel  
 received in wilderness, three in number (well, clouds of glory, manna), 573  
 at revelation at Sinai (feelings of shame, compassion, kindness), 612 n240  
 priestly, symbolic explanation of, 784 n801  
 unconditional, to Israelites (Torah, priesthood, title "children of God"), 590-591 n173

Gigit (Ishmael's wife), 113 n42

Gihon River  
 flowing through fifth division of Paradise, 19  
 place of Adam's penance, 87-88 n106



## Gilgal

- arrival of people at, 843
- Joshua circumcising those born in desert at, 843-844
- name, meaning of, 845 n16
- sanctuary at, one of seven holy places destroyed by Esau, 264

## Gilgamesh epic, 61 n25

## gimel (letter)

- creation of world through, 4
- standing for
  - gadol* ("great"), 4
  - gemul* ("retribution"), 4
- See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet

## girdle

- of Aaron, atoning for theft, 650
- celestial
  - ensuring Job's recovery, 462 n37
  - having three ribands, given to Job, 461
- one of eight priestly garments of Aaron, 650

## Girgashites

- emigration of, 848 n34
- connected to legend of kings of Persia and Media, 851 n45

- land provisionally granted to, 157

## glass

- first artificial heaven of Hiram made from, 1104
- hall of, in Paradise, for proselytes, 23 n97
- walls of first division of Paradise made from, 19
- white, possession of Zebulun distinguished by, 667

## gleaning

- law pertaining to, 865 n50
- for poor, 720

## glorification

- garment of, Abraham in, 200 n114 (*see also* garment[s])
- of God (*see* God: glory of)
- of Jacob, antiquity of, 257 n35
- radiance of, seen on pious man at time of death, 635 n309
- seven clouds of, 22 n82

## gluttony

- one of seven tempter spirits, 435

## gnat(s)

- as antidote for poison of viper, 43
- destined to cause death of Titus, 45 n191
- living only one day, 45 n191
- as third plague, 529 n183

## Gnostic ideas

- about Adam
  - excellence and size of, 60 n21, 60 n22
  - that A. was androgynous, 67 n42
  - that A. was partly or wholly created by angels, 49 n3
- dew of light, 9 n22
- everything created in pairs, 608 n221
- about first mother, Sophia-Prunicus, 106 n17
- heavens 365 in number, 9 n22 (*see also under* heaven[s])
- identification of hayyot with four archangels, 687 n440
- man created by lower powers, not by God, 52 n12

## Gnostic legends

- concerning Melchizedek, 197 n102

## Gnostics

- and allegorical interpretation, 32 n127
- Jewish, and glorification of Adam, 98 n138

## goat(s)

- hair of, one of 13 materials for construction of Tabernacle, 640 (*see also under* Tabernacle)

- he-goat of peace offering, corresponding to 60 empires, 672

- offering wool for hangings of Tabernacle, 655 n363

- and sacrifice of Noah, 150
- Sammael as, in Kabbalah, 307 n275

## she-goat(s)

- three, sacrificed by Abraham, 198
- of three years, symbolizing empire of Greeks, 198
- skin of, used for Tabernacle in remembrance of Jacob, 268 n88

- on Solomon's throne, 968
- speckled and spotted, Jacob asked for, as wages, 290
- wool of, same as hair of angel of Edom, 307 n275

Goat (sign of Zodiac). *See* Capricorn God

- and Aaron
  - God decreeing that A. to die in desert, 821

God (*cont.*)

## and Abraham

- God promising A. that descendants would go forth from Egypt with great substance, 398 n335

## actions of

- adding Name to names of man and woman, 66
- attacking Egypt
  - by bringing pestilence, 523 with darkness, 524-525
  - by hail, 523-525
  - with locusts, 524-525
  - by pouring naphtha on them to create boils, 523-525
  - by sending frogs, 523-527
  - by sending lice, 523-525
  - by sending wild beasts against them, 523-525
  - by slaying firstborn, 524
  - by turning rivers into blood, 523-525

## avenging Abel, 104

- being merciful, on 10 Tishri, 631

- breeding snake and lizard to bring forth *ḥabarbar*, with poisonous bite, 324

- causing Name to dwell in land, 399

- causing storm to help Judah against Edom, 321

- consulting with angels, 48, 51, 51 n10, 52 n12, 61 n25, 77
- creation before creating man, 51

- heavenly court, 61 n25
- souls of pious, 57 n19

- convoking Sanhedrin of angels, 76

- during day, 30 n124
- describing Self as "One," 805 n886

- flying on swift wind against Pharaoh, 558

- foreseeing worship of golden calf, 624

- forgiving in response to repentance, 748

- forgiving sin of Reuben, 820

- fulfilling prayer of one human being for another, 217

- giving three gifts to world, 798

- holding keys of sustenance, rain, graves, womb of barren woman, quickening dead, and birth, 997 n12



God (*cont.*)

actions of (*cont.*)

inviting persons to make request  
 Abraham, Ahaz, Jacob,  
 Messiah, 198  
 Abraham, Jacob, Solomon,  
 Ahaz, Messiah, 955 n17  
 Solomon, Ahaz, Messiah, 949  
 joining Self to people in joy and  
 suffering, 582, 583 n150  
 judging world, 30 n124  
 lamenting for suffering of peo-  
 ple, 1087 n47  
 lamenting over Temple, 1078  
 loathing unchastity, 778  
 marking sinners by cloud of  
 glory disappearing, 779  
 never forgiving theft, 607  
 providing for needs of creatures,  
 30 n124  
 putting four men to test (Cain,  
 Hezekiah, Balaam, Adam),  
 763, 763 n730  
 recounted in wilderness, 572  
 recounting ingratitude of  
 Israelites, 713-714  
 requiring bondsmen before  
 revelation on Sinai, 598-  
 599  
 revealing Self  
 to Abraham, 198, 199 n107  
 to Gentiles by night, 279  
 n131, 292  
 to human being first, 199  
 n107  
 to Jews by day, 279 n131  
 to Moses in pillar of cloud,  
 611  
 in palace of Pharaoh, 533  
 to prophets of Jews during  
 day, 292  
 on Sinai at noon, 600  
 revealing several laws to Amram,  
 476 n37  
 revealing to Abraham  
 destruction of sinful cities,  
 210, 211 n159  
 that Temple would be  
 destroyed, 231  
 rewarding faithful laborer in this  
 world, 290  
 sending darkness and terror  
 upon Ishmaelites, 337, 338  
 sending fire on earth  
 six times as punishment,  
 692  
 six times as token of honor,  
 692

God (*cont.*)

actions of (*cont.*)

sending fire on Israelites in  
 wilderness, 692  
 separating waters, 12  
 showing Moses Tabernacle when  
 M. was in heaven, 641  
 sitting in midst of Eden  
 expounding Torah, 19  
 slaying Egyptians with fourth  
 finger of right hand, 638  
 n315  
 tearing decree of annihilation in  
 pieces, 1170  
 treating man according to his  
 deserts, 221 n215  
 visiting Abraham after circumci-  
 sion, 204  
 wishing to test Isaac, 225  
 writing Ten Commandments  
 with middle finger of right  
 hand, 638 n315  
 and angels  
 God changing names of, at time  
 of Babylonian siege of  
 Jerusalem, 1074  
 God consulting with angels, 48,  
 51, 51 n10, 52 n12, 61  
 n25, 77  
 God convoking Sanhedrin of  
 angels, 76  
 God sending Gabriel to disfig-  
 ure Vashti, 1135  
 God sending seven angels of  
 confusion to disrupt Aha-  
 suer's banquet (Mehu-  
 man, Biztha, Harbonah,  
 Bigtha, Abagtha, Zethar,  
 Carcas), 1135  
 anger of  
 at Balaam, 768 n744  
 God angry for one instant every  
 day, 770  
 at Moses for not accepting  
 death, 809  
 when kings worship sun, 770  
 as wind and storm, 699  
 appearance(s) of  
 to Abimelech, 216  
 to Abraham, 212 n166  
 concerning Hagar and  
 Ishmael, 220  
 at advent of Messiah, fourth  
 appearance, 824 n919  
 to Amram in sleep, 475  
 to Balaam, 763, 765  
 in burning bush, 824 n919  
 in cloud, 631

God (*cont.*)

appearance(s) of (*cont.*)

four in number (in Egypt, on  
 Sinai, to take vengeance on  
 Gog and Magog, in  
 Messianic times), 632 n296  
 four phenomena preceding  
 (wind; earthquake; fire;  
 still, small voice), 995  
 to Gentiles at night, 763 n730  
 against Gog, third appearance  
 of, 824 n919  
 in guise of precursor of congre-  
 gation, 631  
 only at night, 277  
 in Paradise, 93  
 in pillar of cloud, 700-701  
 to three prophets, 612 n242  
 ten on earth, 824 n919  
 to deliver Israel from Egypt, 824  
 n919  
 to drown Egyptians in Red Sea,  
 824 n919  
 to execute judgment on Gog,  
 824 n919  
 to look at Tower of Babel, 824  
 n919  
 to make Shekinah dwell in  
 Temple, 824 n919  
 to make spirit rest on 70 elders,  
 824 n919  
 to make water flow from rock,  
 824 n919  
 to punish Adam, 824  
 to reveal Torah, 824 n919  
 to see wickedness of sinful cities,  
 824 n919  
 to Sheilah, 875  
 attributes of  
 almighty, 631  
 bountiful, 631  
 compassion, 632 n298  
 faithfulness, 511 n128, 631  
 goodness, 511 n128  
 in daily morning prayer  
 (Yotzer), 2 n6  
 and preservation of the people  
 Israel, 2  
 prevailing from the begin-  
 ning, 1-2  
 and protection of weak, 1  
 ruling in heaven, 2  
 ruling on earth, 2  
 as underlying principle of cre-  
 ation, 2 n6  
 grace, 632 n298  
 graciousness, 631  
 greatness, 1127 n56



God (*cont.*)

attributes of (*cont.*)  
 immutability, 511 n128  
 invisibility of, proof for, 351  
     n102  
 justice and mercy, 54 n15, 210,  
     804, 1160 n122  
 justice of, Elijah's teachings of,  
     1014-1016  
 kindness of, to those who are  
     undeserving, 629  
 long-suffering, 616-617, 631,  
     632 n298, 714  
     and merciful, 54  
 love, 714  
 loving-kindness, 68 n47  
 magnificence, in sixth earth, 6  
 mercy, 631, 714, 767 n743 (*see*  
     *also* justice; mercy)  
     as chief attribute of God, 714  
     God having mercy on Leah,  
         285  
     on Israel for sake of merits of  
         Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob,  
         510 (*see also* merits)  
     Israel redeemed on account  
         of, 499 n106  
     and man's existence, 54 n15  
 number of, 632 n297  
     7 in number, 7 n15  
     10 in number, 7 n15  
     13 in number, 631-632, 632  
         n297  
 patience with sinners, 617  
 sublimity, 511 n128  
 truth, 632 n298  
 unchangeability, 511 n128  
 unity, testified to by Israel and  
     Sabbath, 82 n98  
 and Baal, conflict between on  
     Mount Carmel, 994  
 battle with Pharaoh, 558-559  
 blessings of  
     on Abraham, 237  
     on Levi, 300  
     not making things arise "from  
         nothing," 1027 n8  
     in world to come, 428  
 children of  
     as title given to Israelites uncon-  
         ditionally, 590-591 n173  
 commandments of, 69  
     commanding Abraham to sacri-  
         fice Isaac, 225-228  
 compared to potter, 444  
 contributing three things to forma-  
     tion of child, 608 n224

God (*cont.*)

conversations of  
     with Abraham, Jacob, and Isaac,  
         concerning sins of progeny,  
         261  
     with Abraham concerning Isaac  
         and his descendants, 230-  
         231  
     with Abraham only, in ten gen-  
         erations since Noah, 210  
 counting Self among pious, 396  
     n321  
 and covenant, with sons of Jacob,  
     433  
 and creation  
     justice and mercy in, 54 n15  
     left hand creating terrestrial  
         beings, 49 n3  
 and David  
     conversation between, 918  
     God standing by D., 918  
 delaying setting of sun until battle  
     against Amalek won, 581  
 denial of  
     by Esau, 259 n48  
     one of five crimes of Esau on  
         day of Abraham's death,  
         257  
 descent of  
     to earth, 164, 166 n91  
     into hell to save pious, 508  
         n118  
 described as priest, 703 n497  
 and evil  
     God having no contact with  
         evil, 3 n9  
     God not being direct source of  
         evil, 773 n766  
 fear of (*see* fear: of God)  
 final victory of, over evil, 306  
     n275  
 garments of, 564  
     God tearing festive robe when  
         Israel sinned, 564  
     heavens fashioned from, 5  
     spattered by blood of angel of  
         Edom, 304  
 and Gentiles  
     God judging in darkness, 773,  
         774 n769  
 glorified by death of pious, 664  
     n385  
 glory of  
     in cloud, 227  
     dwelling in Tabernacle, 48  
     seen by slaves and bondwomen  
         at revelation of Torah, 602  
         n207

God (*cont.*)

grace of, 210-211  
 holy spirit of, manifesting self in  
     man's hair, 879 n116  
 image of, as bridegroom, 601 n200  
 inscrutable ways of, 629-631  
 instructing Moses to transmit  
     God's words to people in  
         Hebrew, 597  
 and Isaac  
     God appearing to I., 259-260  
         bidding I. to return to  
         Canaan, 261  
     God on side of I., 260  
 and Israel  
     God accompanying Israel into  
         exile, 1082, 1082 n42  
     God addressing Israel in Egypt-  
         ian language, 602-603  
     God as cause of Israel's apostasy,  
         998 n18  
     God as King of Israel, 824 n918  
     God judging Israel in daylight,  
         773, 774 n769  
     God loving Israel on account of  
         Jacob, 256 n35  
     God making covenant with  
         Israel for sake of Torah,  
         634  
     God making Israel swear five  
         oaths in exile, 1081 n39  
     God not associating Self with  
         evil brought on Israel, 773  
         n766  
     God performing 13 deeds for  
         Israel in Egypt, 640  
     God revealing secrets of Torah  
         to Israel, 775  
     God revealing Self from four  
         directions, 820  
     God suffering when Israel in  
         distress, 502, 502 n115  
     God to appear to Israel four  
         times, 820  
     like master and student, 775  
     testifying to uniqueness of  
         Sabbath, 82 n98  
 and Jacob  
     God announcing impending  
         birth  
         of Benjamin to J., 317  
         of Manasseh and Ephraim to  
         J., 317  
     God appearing to J.  
         on day after Feast of Weeks,  
         393 n301  
         as El Shaddai, 409  
         with heavenly court at Bethel,  
         319 n303



God (*cont.*)and Jacob (*cont.*)

God appearing to J. (*cont.*)  
at time of death, 402  
to comfort him for loss of  
Rebekah, 317

God confirming change of  
name from J. to Israel,  
317-318

God not appearing to J. while  
sons of J. carry idols, 317

God not revealing Joseph's fate  
to J., 342

God promising J. that land  
where he lay would belong  
to him and his descen-  
dants, 400

God revealing that J. was last of  
patriarchs to have name  
united with God, 318 (*see*  
*also* God: names and titles  
of)

God speaking to J., 290-291  
through wolf, 341

God to accompany J. to Egypt,  
392

jealous of idols, 625 n276

## and Jerusalem

God planning to destroy  
Jerusalem, 947

## and Job

God accusing friends of J., 461

God blessing J., 461

God giving J. girdle, 461

God revealing all history to J.,  
461

God wishing to connect Name  
with that of J., 456 n14

## and Joseph

God appearing to J. with Eben  
Shetiyyah, 357

as keeper of vineyard, 774-775

as king and high priest, 703 n497

kiss from, as death, 237 n270 (*see*  
*also* death; Shekinah: kiss  
of)

## lap of

Torah lying in, 1

## left hand of

creating terrestrial beings, 49  
n3

earth created by, 8 n17

God creating world with, 1166  
n143

holding life and justice, 619  
n260

left side of, and hell, 1

love of, for seventh, 682

God (*cont.*)

## and man

communication of, changing  
with establishment of sanc-  
tuary, 660, 661 n381

God treating man according to  
his deserts, 221 n215

## and Moses

God absolved from vow by M.,  
624

God comforting M. concerning  
death, 806-807

God commanding M. to  
appoint judges, 779

God describing M. as "the One  
prophet," 805 n886

God granting two wishes of  
Moses, 629

God pointing out to M. with  
fourth finger new moon,  
638 n315

God pointing out to M. with  
index finger of right hand  
half shekel offering of  
atonement, 638 n315

God protecting M. from angels,  
613-615

God reproaching M. for break-  
ing tablets, 626 n279

God revealing defection of Israel  
to M. before Exodus, 625  
n276

God revealing to M. God's great  
Name, 816

God sending Gabriel to fetch  
M.'s soul, 828

God sending Michael to fetch  
M.'s soul, 828

God sending Zagzagel to fetch  
M.'s soul, 828

God showing M. all the land of  
Israel, 813-814

God showing M. every genera-  
tion in future, 630

God thanking M. for breaking  
tablets, 625

God weeping for M., 834

M. wishing to know ways of  
God, 629

## name of, 510

avoiding pronunciation of, 128  
n60

causing death, 520 n155

desecration of, one of eight

grievous sins of  
Sennacherib, 1048 n60

engraved on gold plate of mitre  
of high priest, 794

God (*cont.*)name of (*cont.*)

joined to names of three patri-  
archs, 318, 319 n304

not united with name of living  
person, 293

revealed to Moses, 511, 511  
n127, 523 n166

names and titles of (*see also* Name,  
Divine; Name, Ineffable;  
Shekinah; Tetragrammaton)

Adonai, 522, 643

name of God when having  
mercy on world, 510

All-Merciful, 522

borne by men, 1052 n70

Comfort, 229

contained in ark of covenant,  
643

Ehyeh Asher, 511 n128

Elohim, 643

El Shaddai, 378 n232, 409

God appearing to Abraham,  
Isaac, and Jacob as, 522

name of God when waiting  
patiently for improvement  
of sinner, 510

the Eternal, 563

Father, 261

God of Abraham, 174, 510

God of Abraham, God of Isaac,  
and God of Jacob, 503

God of Isaac, 293, 510

God of Jacob, 510

Hanun (Gracious One), 4

Ineffable Name, engraved on  
scepter given to Moses,  
807, 807 n894

Kadosh (Holy One), 4

Melekh (King), 4

the Place, 279 n130, 1164 n139

Possessor of Heaven and Earth,  
197 n100

Rahum (the Merciful), 3-4

Redeemer, 261

Redeemer of Abraham, 217

Ruler of World, 162 n82

70 in number, 649 n348

Shield of Abraham, 187

Solomon, 946 n2

two sacred names, Adonai and  
Elohim, 643

"the very good," 2 n6

## and nations

God making nations swear not  
to oppress Israel too hard,  
1081 n39



God (*cont.*)

oath of  
 to Noah, never again to destroy world by water, 471, 472 n22  
 to patriarchs, 813  
 phylacteries of, 632 n299  
 power of, 7  
 praise of  
 learned by Moses from angels, 505 n117  
 of pious, taking place of song chanted by nature, 850 n43  
 promise of  
 to Abraham, that descendants would go forth from Egypt with great substance, 398 n335  
 to Jacob, that land where he lay would belong to him and to descendants, 400  
 recognizing God of one's own accord (Abraham, Hezekiah, Job, Messiah), 183-184, 184 n49, 456 n13  
 at Red Sea, accompanied by 9,000 myriads of angels, 561 n45  
 relationship with soul, according to Stoics, 61 n25  
 residence of, under tree of life, 95 n126  
 right hand of  
 Abraham at, 197 n95  
 Adam at, 450 n17  
 bound as long as Israel in exile, 1074 n25  
 creating heavenly beings, 49 n3  
 David sitting at, on judgment day, 939 n128  
 each finger performing deed of salvation, 638 n315  
 Enoch at, 450  
 God giving Moses Torah with, 619 n260  
 God slaying with fourth finger of, 638 n315  
 heavens created by, 8 n17  
 holding grace and Torah, 619 n260  
 Isaac at, 450  
 Jacob at, 450  
 Methuselah at, 450 n17  
 Noah at, 450  
 Shem at, 450  
 right side of, and Paradise, 1  
 and Sabbath, testifying to uniqueness of Israel, 82 n98

God (*cont.*)

and Samael, dialogue between, 558 n42  
 servant of, as title, 805 n880  
 sight of, causing death to mortals, 1043 n34  
 and Solomon  
 God inviting S. to make request, 949  
 as source of good, 3 n9  
 spirit of, 7 n15 (*see also* holy spirit; spirit[s]: of Lord)  
 as Adam's spirit or soul, 7 n15  
 coming upon Israelites as reward for trust in God, 562  
 in form of dove, 7 n15  
 identified by Church Fathers with Holy Ghost, 56 n17  
 as mercy, 150 n46  
 as spirit of Messiah, 7 n15, 56 n17  
 tears of, for suffering of Israel, turning into pearls, 1081 n39  
 ten descents of, to earth, 824 n919  
 ten parts of body received from (breath, soul, light of countenance, sight, hearing, speech, touch, sense, insight, understanding), 606  
 as tenth person for validating ban, 342  
 three natures of, symbolized by Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, according to Philo, 319 n304  
 Throne of (*see* Throne, Divine)  
 and Torah  
 God offering Torah to nations, 593, 820  
 God ornamenting letters in which Torah written, 616  
 God proclaiming Torah in languages of Kadesh (Aramaic), Paran (Arabic), Seir (Roman), Sinai (Hebrew), 820  
 God sitting in midst of Eden expounding, 19  
 God studying, 30 n124  
 God taking counsel with, 1  
 Torah lying in lap of God, 1  
 to slay angel of Edom, 304  
 voice of  
 dead in Sheol reviving at sound of, 604  
 dividing into 70 languages of man on Sinai, 604

God (*cont.*)

voice of (*cont.*)  
 on Sinai, having no echo, 604 n213  
 vow of  
 never to exchange Israel for another nation, 761  
 never to permit Israel to dwell in land other than Palestine, 761  
 that Moses would not see Holy Land, 813  
 wind of, 7 n15 (*see also* God: spirit of)  
 word(s) of  
 as act, 48 n1, 232 n243  
 first, on Sinai, 602-603  
 on Sinai heard by inhabitants of all the earth, 604  
 wrath of, against heathens, 593  
 God-fearing men  
 four in number (Abraham, Joseph, Job, Obadiah), 1026, 1027 n8  
 not sinning, 217 n195  
 as proselytes, 1027 n6  
 God-fearing one  
 title of Joseph, Abraham, Job, and Obadiah, given on account of charity and loving-kindness, 397, 398 n332  
 godless  
 to be punished in future world, 611  
 Gog  
 God to destroy, 820  
 and Magog  
 prophecies of Saul concerning, 898  
 suffering in days of, 572  
 gold  
 of altar of Tabernacle, 647  
 associated with Babylon, 648  
 bier of Jacob made from, 413  
 given to Esau by Jacob for Cave of Machpelah, 304  
 hall of, in Paradise, for patriarchs, etc., 23 n97  
 love of, leading to idolatry, 440  
 one of 13 materials for construction of Tabernacle, 640 (*see also under* Tabernacle)  
 one of thrones of Nimrod made of, 162  
 from Ophir, on throne of Solomon, 968  
 of Parvaim, 22 n96  
 bearing fruit, 21 n77  
 crown made of, 18



gold (*cont.*)

refined, fifth division of Paradise built from, 19  
 seventh artificial heaven of Hiram made from, 1104  
 and silver, for vessels of Temple, 968 n66  
 and silver and bronze, used to construct bird of sorcery for Balak, 759  
 soil of Sodom consisting of, 208-209  
 of spoons in dedication offering, corresponding to years of Moses' life, 671  
 in Tabernacle, symbolizing yoke of Israelites under Babylon, 640  
 on throne of Pharaoh, 364  
 thrones in Paradise made from, 507  
 thrones made from, for repentant sinners, 507  
 golden calf, 619-622  
 Aaron's motives in fashioning, 650, 650 n351  
 angels taking away gifts after worship of, 600  
 identified with Apis of Egyptians, 622 n271  
 Israel worshipping, 620  
 punishment for worshipping, three forms of (execution by Levites, death by water, death by plague), 626 n281  
 reminders of, 17 n70  
 riddle of Queen of Sheba about, 960  
 Sammael roaring from mouth of, 118 n54  
 worship of, 801-802  
 consequences of  
   disastrous for Israel, 620  
   diseases and defects returning to Israelites, 675  
   robes of Israelites taken away by angels, 627  
   weapons of Israelites taken away by angels, 627  
 Israel misled by mixed multitude, 674  
 one of ten temptations, 757  
 one of two sins of people, 659  
 golden calves  
 at Bethel, 1029  
 erected by Jeroboam, 947, 982  
 gilded calves substituted for, 1045 n45

golden calves (*cont.*)

taken by Assyrians, 1044  
 taken by priests, 1045 n45  
 13 in number, 621  
 worship of, by pious in Israel, 1038 n4  
 golden candlestick, 48  
 golden plate  
   of Aaron, atoning for effrontery, 650  
   one of eight priestly garments of Aaron, 650  
 Golgotha  
   legend of, 89 n109, 98 n137  
 Goliath  
   brothers of, as bodyguards of Achish, king of Philistines, 918  
   challenging Saul, 917 n32  
   and David  
     G. afflicted with leprosy by D., 916  
     G. as one of ten adversaries of D., 922 n59  
     G. related to D. by blood, 915  
     G. slain by D., 1163  
   extraordinary strength of, 917 n32  
   name, meaning of, 917 n27  
   one of two great heroes of world who met death on account of strength, 798  
   ruling for 40 days, 915-916, 917 n31  
   size of, 755 n687  
   slayer of, named Elhanan, 928 n78  
   son of Samson and Orpah, daughter of Eglon, king of Moab, 862-863, 915, 917 n29  
   stricken with leprosy for reviling God, 675  
   three brothers of, as three of ten adversaries of David, 922 n59  
   trying to disrupt worship of Israelites, 916  
 Gomer of Diblaim (wife of Hosea), 1041 n23  
 Gomorrah. *See* Sodom: and Gomorrah  
 good deeds. *See* deeds: good  
 good inclination  
   evil inclination turned into, by Abraham, 939 n128  
   in man, 49-50 n6  
   not in animals, 49 n6  
   time of entry into body  
     at puberty, 61 n25  
     in tenth year, 61 n25

good inclination (*cont.*)

time of entry into man  
   at birth, 105 n14  
   at 13 years, 105 n14  
 time of entry into soul, 61 n25  
 good intentions  
   God's reward for, 332  
 goodness, divine. *See* God: attributes of  
 gopher tree  
   used to build Noah's ark, 142  
   *See also* tree(s)  
 Goshen, land of, 371  
   given to Sarah as irrevocable possession, 395  
   Jacob and family settling in, 396  
 gout  
   as punishment, 985  
 grace  
   one of four standards of Divine Throne, 687 n440  
 Grace after Meals, 370 n195  
   according to Ashkenazic ritual, 575 n118  
   benedictions added to, by Joshua, David, and Solomon, 853 n50, 1128 n58  
   composed by Moses, 1128 n58  
   and prayer of Abraham, 224 n224  
   *See also* prayers, Jewish  
 grain(s)  
   curative properties of, 157  
   ears of, hymn of praise of, 44 (*see also* praise)  
   erelim, angels appointed over, 503  
   rotting during famine, 369, 370 n194  
 grandees  
   feast for, 1129-1132  
   Median nobles and high officials under Persian king Ahasuerus, 1130  
 grape  
   as forbidden fruit of Paradise, 73-74 n70  
   *See also* fruit(s): forbidden  
 grapevine  
   gigantic, carried along in wilderness, 708  
 grass  
   created on third day, 82 n98  
   erelim, angels appointed over, 503  
   leaves of, covered with gold dust near grave of Baruch, 1094  
   reproduction of, 18  
 grasshopper  
   lesson learned from, 44  
 gratitude to God  
   of Daniel, David, and Leah, 285



Great Assembly  
 decrees and ordinances of, 1126  
 laying foundations of rabbinic Judaism, 1126  
 men of, as editors of books of Ezekiel, Minor Prophets, Daniel, and Esther, 1071 n15  
*See also* Great Synagogue  
 great bird Ziz. *See* Ziz  
 Great Fast  
 criticized by Haman, 1153  
 Great Hallel  
 composed by Mordecai and Esther, 1176-1177 n172  
 Psalm 136, 1176 n172  
 greatness of God. *See* God: attributes of  
 Great Sabbath. *See* Sabbath: Great  
 Great Sea  
 emptying into Red Sea, 561 n52  
 Moses asking to intercede, 808  
 Great Synagogue, 1127 n56  
 activities of, 1128 n56  
 Chamber of Gazit as, 777 n783  
 men of  
 and Ezra, as middle of chain of tradition, 1128 n56  
 formulating benedictions and prayers, 1128 n58  
 introducing tripartite division of oral law (Midrash, Halakhah, Haggadah), 1128 n56  
 120 in number, 1127 n56  
 referred to as "Ezra and his company," 1125 n49  
 organized in month of Shevat, 1152 n108  
*See also* Great Assembly  
 Great Synhedrin. *See* Sanhedrin  
 Greece  
 angel of, on Jacob's ladder, 277  
 Greater, as dwelling of Esau, 270  
 guardian angel of, receiving dominion over Israel, 1116 n7  
 as ruler of world, 162 n82  
 greed  
 cause of death of Saul, 903 n66  
 of Sodom, 208-209  
 Greek ideas  
 bathing of soul in stream of fire, 97 n134  
 concerning the soul, 61 n25  
 human body consisting of four elements, 54 n15  
 man as microcosm, 49 n4  
 place of "forgetfulness," 110 n35

Greek ideas (*cont.*)  
 wreath of sun, 26 n101  
 Greek influence  
 on legend of Balaam and sons in Ethiopia, 491-492 n80  
 Greek language  
 ascribed to Japhethite system of writing, 158 n72  
 as beauty of Japheth, 244 n314  
 Bible in, negative view of, 635 n308  
 translation of Scripture into, as part of Noah's blessing, 156 n65  
 Greeks  
 empire of, symbolized by she-goat of three years, 198  
 Japheth as ancestor of, 244 n314  
 learning art of writing from Phoenicians, 484 n67  
 wisdom of, dependent on Solomon, 955 n18  
 green. *See under* color(s)  
 grief  
 causing death of Bilhah and Dinah, 340-341  
 over death, consoled after year, 341  
*See also* death; mourning; rending clothes  
 grigori (angels)  
 description of, 125  
 in fifth heaven, 125  
 rejecting Lord, 125  
 Salamiel as leader of, 125  
 ground dividing  
 under feet of enemy at Hazor, 317 n297  
 guardian angel. *See* angel(s), general: types  
 guides of men  
 10 in number, 672 n401  
 12 in number (heart, kidneys, mouth, tongue, palate, windpipe, esophagus, lungs, spleen, crop, stomach, liver), 671  
*See also* body, human  
 guilt  
 to be proved only through two witnesses, 846  
 Guni (son of Naphtali)  
 name, meaning of, 434

## H

Haazinu  
 writing of, 697 n477

Habakkuk  
 bringing food to Daniel, 1114  
 as contemporary of Daniel, 1071 n14  
 as contemporary of Jeremiah and Ezekiel, 1071 n14  
 as contemporary of Manasseh, 991 n56, 1057 n100  
 one of four pious men who addressed unbecoming words to God, 628 n284 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 as postexilic prophet, 991 n56  
 refusing to leave circle until God answered him, 630-631 n291  
 Shunammite as mother of, 1028 n10  
 as son of Joshua of tribe of Levi, 1115 n6  
 transported to Daniel by angel, 1114  
 habarbar  
 offspring of snake and lizard, having poisonous bite, 324  
 Habdalah. *See* Havdalah  
 habitations. *See* worlds: of pious  
 Hadad (king of Edom), 419  
 death of, 420  
 execution of, by Abimenes, 421  
 successor of Baal Hamon as king of Edomites, 421  
 warfare of  
 against Abimenes of Kittim, 421  
 H. allied with Zepho against descendants of Jacob, 419  
 H. coming to assistance of Moabites against Midianites, 420  
 against Moabites, 420, 421  
 Zepho asking H. for help in Africa, 418  
 Hadarniel (angel)  
 becoming messenger of Moses, 613  
 huge proportions of, 613  
 roaring at Moses, 613  
 speaking to Adam, 90 n110  
 Hadassah  
 another name for Esther, 1141  
 name, meaning of ("myrtle"), 1141  
 Haddakum (grandfather of Shechem)  
 conspiring against Jacob, 308-309  
 refusing to be circumcised, 308  
 Hades  
 angel of, 306 n273  
*See also* Gehenna; hell; netherworld; Sheol; Tofet; water(s): below



- Hadorah  
second wife of Asher, 348
- Hadrian  
attempting to locate grave of Moses, 1091 n60  
boasting of victory over Jerusalem, 754  
persecution of, and Jews, 255 n24
- Hadriel (angel)  
in charge of sixth division of hell, 882
- Hagar  
and Abraham  
conjugal relations of, 203 n120  
H. bearing daughter after Sarah's death, 237  
H. given by Pharaoh, 191 n74  
offspring of, as progenitors of many wicked nations, 244 n309  
angels appearing to, 201, 203 n122  
as bondwoman, 203 n122  
as daughter of Ham, 244 n309  
as daughter of Pharaoh, 190, 201  
as Egyptian, 244 n309  
identified with Keturah, 243, 243 n309  
piety of, 202 n119, 243 n309  
praying to idols, 220  
punishment of idolatry of, 221 n216  
and Sarah  
H. given to S., 190, 201  
H. saying that barrenness of S. was punishment for impious life, 289 n198  
H. treating S. with contempt, 201  
sons of, as idolators, 243  
worshiping brick, 221 n216
- Haggadah (pl. Haggadot), ix  
Babylonian, preferring Gabriel to Michael, 1047 n55  
considering Gideon, Jephthah, and Samson least worthy of judges, 874 n101  
contained in second tablets, 632, 633  
explaining heavenly gifts received by Israel in wilderness, 570 n92  
favorite topics of, deceitfulness and guile of Rome, 284 n162  
interpretations of Balaam's orations in, 773 n764  
literature included in, viii  
man as microcosm in, 49 n4  
meaning of, viii
- Haggadah (*cont.*)  
and Midrash, viii  
modern investigation of, ix  
one of three parts of oral law, 592, 1128 n56 (*see also* Halakhah; Midrash)  
Palestinian, preferring Michael to Gabriel, 1047 n55  
pedagogic, 4-5 n10, 5 n12  
popular character of, vii-viii  
Reuben referred to in, as example of penitent, 342 n60  
among statutes of Israel, 567  
teachers of (Rabbanan d'Aggadta), ix  
wolf taken as symbol of Saul, first king of Israel, 411 n401
- Haggai (elder from tribe of Gad), 696
- Haggai (postexilic prophet), 991 n56  
among returning exiles, 1119  
showing plan of altar for rebuilt Temple, 1119  
and Zechariah and Malachi accompanying Daniel, 1096 n76  
last representatives of prophecy, 1121
- Haggi (elder from tribe of Issachar), 696
- Haggith (mother of Adonijah), 940
- Hagiographa, 977 n93  
one of three parts of Torah, 592  
*See also* Minor Prophets; Pentateuch; prophet(s)
- hail  
chief angel of irin and kadishim made from, 504  
hot, falling on Canaanites, 848-849  
one face of sun, 24  
one of four portals, 600  
rivers of, in hell, 13  
of seventh plague in Egypt, 523-524, 525  
and fire, 531-532  
suspended in air  
dropping down while Joshua battling Amorites, 532  
to be sent down by God against Gog, 532  
weapon of God against Pharaoh, 559
- hailstones. *See* hail
- hair  
angel of Edom seized by, 306 n275  
bodies and faces of demons covered with, 866 n58, 961 n40
- hair (*cont.*)  
on body  
as disfigurement of women, 959, 961 n40  
ornament to man, 959  
covered on woman, 65  
curly, because of curse of Ham, 154  
each one on head numbered, 453 n6  
follicles of, directed by God, 452, 453 n6  
God revealing Self to man in, 453 n6  
God's holy spirit manifesting in, 879 n116  
Israelite male children hidden by, 472  
of Jonah, falling out, 1034, 1035 n36  
on Judah's chest  
becoming hot, 390 n278  
becoming stiff, 386, 387 n277  
of man, appearance of God's majesty in, 511 n127  
one of five parts of body received from mother, 606 (*see also* body, human)  
to be combed before ritual bath, one of ten regulations of Ezra, 1122  
wife of Job selling, 458, 459 n29  
*See also under* Absalom; Edom; Elijah; Esau; goat(s); Israel (nation; people)/Israelites: children of; Jonah; Queen of Sheba; Samson; Seir; woman (women); wool
- Halakhah (pl. Halakhot)  
contained on second tablets, 632  
and daily existence, vii  
formula: This is a Halakhah revealed to Moses on Mount Sinai, 514  
Joseph learning from Jacob, 328  
one of three parts of oral law, 592, 1128 n56 (*see also* Haggadah; Midrash)  
among statutes of Israel, 567  
and Torah, viii  
*See also* law(s); law (Torah); Torah: of Moses
- half-shekel  
offering required during census, 937 n119  
yearly contribution to sanctuary, 240  
*See also* offering: half-shekel



## Halifin

form of acquisition known as, 867  
n65

## hallah, laws of

Moses and Aaron instructing  
Israelites in wilderness on,  
712 n530

## Hallel

chanted on night of slaying of  
firstborn consisting of  
Psalm 113 only, 540 n225,  
540 n228

composed by Hananiah, Mishael,  
and Azariah, 1100 n88

composed by Moses and Israel  
after crossing Red Sea, 540  
n225

manner of reciting, 565 n63

Moses and Aaron as first to recite,  
in Egypt, 539

origin of, 540 n225

and Passover

Hallel chanted during sacrifice of  
paschal lamb and at time of  
Passover meal, 540 n225

Hallel recited on first day of  
Passover, 565 n60

Hallel sung on eve of Passover,  
264

*See also* prayers, Jewish

## Ham

allotment of lands, islands, lan-  
guages, and writing of, 157

descendants of  
through Canaan, having red  
eyes, 154

having dark skin, 41 n178, 151

as first sorcerer, 163 n83

inheritance of, as south, 157

later called Zoroaster, 163 n83

and Noah

H. as son of N., 146 n30

H. attempting to keep N. from  
further procreation, 153-  
154

H. cursed by N., 154

for not observing sexual absti-  
nence, 41 n178, 151, 152  
n54

one of seven sinners, 857 n9

punishment of, 151, 214 n170

sons of, building cities, 707

taking care of birds, 148 n37

wife of, committing adultery with  
Ahiyah before and after  
flood, producing Sihon and  
Og, 752 n668

## Haman

and Ahasuerus

A. ordering that H. be hanged,  
1175

planning feasts to entrap Jews in  
immorality, 1132

H. offering A. money for Jews,  
1157, 1158 n116

H. restricting access to A., 1162  
another name for Memucan, 1147

arguing that Israel's God was old  
and feeble, 1154-1155

as astrologer, 1152 n108

becoming leper, 1177 n174

casting lots, 1150-1152

on days of week, 1150-1151

on months, to determine favor-  
able time for annihilation  
of Israel, 1151

on 12 signs of Zodiac, 1151

to determine most favorable  
moment to annihilate Jews,  
1150

children of

fate of, 1176, 1178 n185, 1178  
n187

number of, 1168, 1169 n158,  
1178 n185

compared with David, 760

daughter of, dying during proces-  
sion, 1174, 1177 n173

descendant of

Agag, 1163

Amalek and concubine, 1147  
n93

Emtelai, 1147 n93

devising intrigues against Jews,  
1132

fall of, 1129, 1172-1178

date of, 1169 n153

16 Nisan, 1176 n170

fortune of

divided into three parts, 1176  
one-third going to restoration of  
Temple, 1176

genealogy of, 1147 n93

great wealth of, 1146

homage paid to him as to an idol,  
1148

hostility of, toward Vashti, 1147

identified with Memucan, 1139  
n49

and Jews

H. as "Jew-baiter," 1146-1148

H. choosing Tuesday as day of  
annihilation of Israel, 1152  
n109

Haman (*cont.*)

and Jews (*cont.*)

H. oppressing Jews in Shushan,  
1129

H. plotting annihilation of Jews,  
1150

H.'s decree of annihilation  
of Jews, 412, 1155-1158  
torn in pieces by God,  
1170

H.'s opposition of, to rebuilding  
of Temple, 1148 n95

persecution of Jews by H., 899

and Mordecai

enmity between, 1148-1149

traced back to enmity  
between Jacob and Esau,  
1150 n104

H. erecting cross for M. on first  
night of Passover, 1169-  
1172

H. fashioning cross on which to  
hang M., 1168, 1169 n159

H. having to perform menial  
services for M., 1173, 1177  
n174

H. opposing M. about rebuild-  
ing of Temple, 1147

H. selling self to M. as slave,  
1149-1150, 1150 n105,  
1168

name, meaning of, 1147 n93

one of two wealthy men who per-  
ished on account of wealth,  
798

responsible for Vashti's death,  
1174-1175, 1177 n179

sons of, positions held by, 1177  
n176

ten sons of, hanged with  
Haman, 1176

20 other sons of, 1176

Haman-Memucan, 1138

Hamath, people of

worshiping ram, 1044

Hamathites

land provisionally granted to, 157

Hamites

as builders of Tower of Babel, 164  
n88

as first idolaters, 164 n88

Hamon ("noise")

as name of Gabriel, 1047 n58

Hamor (father of Shechem), 308

Hanamel (son of Shallum)

one of eight priests descended from  
Rahab, 844 n12, 1093 n65

son of Shallum son of Tikvah,  
1030



Hanamel (*cont.*)

summoning angels and prince of world to defense of Jerusalem, 1074

uncle of Jeremiah

attempts of, to save Jerusalem from Babylonians, 1074

## Hanani (prophet)

daughter of, marrying Asa, 988 n28

## Hananiah

death of, 1069

elder from tribe of Levi, 696

false prophecy of, 1072 n20

as false prophet prophesying victory over Nebuchadnezzar, 1069

fiery furnace and, 527

among members of Great

Synagogue, 1127 n56

and Mishaël and Azariah

cast into fiery furnace, 1096 n76, 1098

companions of Daniel, 1095

desire for idolatry eradicated from Israel in days of, 1128 n57

eating only vegetables, 1142

as eunuchs, 1097 n78

fate of, 1100-1101 n92

going to Palestine to join high priest Joshua, 1098

Haman not able to prevail

against relative of, 1177 n175

among members of Great

Synagogue, 1128 n57

as prophets, 1096 n76, 1107 n108

as three pillars on which world rests, 728 n590, 1099

one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)

one of six pious men endowed

with spiritual gifts

descended from Ruth, 866

n61 (*see also under* pious: men)

riddle of Queen of Sheba about, 960

as true prophet, 1072 n18

## hand(s)

laying on of

as cure, 1003

by Moses on Joshua, 789

raising and lowering, significance of, 581, 583 n145

## handmaids, sons of

referring to sons of Billah and Zilpah, 327 n7, 330-331 n9

## hanging on tree

biblical prohibition against leaving body overnight, 1176

## Hanina, R.

story of, 114-115

## Hanina b. Dosa, R.

world created for sake of, 51 n8

## Hannah

age of, at birth of Samuel, 130 years, 889

barrenness of, 887

Batuel as father of, 888 n2

beauty of, 889 n12

children of, 891 n22

first to call God "Lord of hosts," 889 n10

long prayer of, shortening days of Samuel, 903 n70

miracle wrought for, 890 n15

one of seven sterile women who bore children, 878 n111

one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271

## and Peninnah

conflict between, 887

H. interceding for P., 890

prayer of, 888 n9

bringing relief to sons of Korah, 890

considered correct by Rabbis, 889 n11

second prayer of, as abridged form of Amidah, 891 n20

for son, 887-888

taking place on Passover, 890 n13

in thanksgiving, 889-890, 891 n20

words of, encouraging Korah not to despair, 726

## Hannibal

defeat of, 421 n426

## Hanoah (elder from tribe of Reuben), 696

## Hanukkah

as compensation for month of

Kislev, 656 n367

as day of sacrifices of Cain and Abel, 105 n11

lights of, to shine forever, 678

## Harabah (fourth earth), 6

## Haran

burned attempting to rescue Terah's idols from fire, 184 n49

Haran (*cont.*)

consumed by fire, 177

death of, by fire, as punishment for incest, 180 n40

star of, 177

well of

going dry at departure of Jacob, 292, 294 n220

production of water in, increased by Jacob, 278, 283

younger brother of Abraham, 178 n39

## Haranites

modesty of, 284 n164

## Harar

journeying to Egypt with Ishmael, 220

## Harariah

land of, ceded to Jacob by Amorites, 315

## harbinger of good tidings

as epithet of Elijah, 1022 n111

## Harbonah (angel)

accusing Haman, 1175

identified with Elijah, 1004 n45, 1177 n182

name, meaning of ("annihilation"), 1135

one of seven angels of confusion sent to disrupt Ahasuerus's banquet, 1135

## hard

conquered by soft on five occasions, 918 n42

## hare

changing sex of, 41 n177

meat of, served to Isaac by Esau, 270 n100 (*see also* food: forbidden)

Nebuchadnezzar eating piece of live hare, 1065

stomach of, as cure for sterility, 41 n177, 879 n111

## harlot

Elijah appearing as, 1001

## Haron (angel)

of destruction, struggling with Moses, 623

sometimes called Peor, 623

## harp

of David

legend of

rationalistic explanation of, 929 n83

related to legend of Aeol's harp of Greeks, 929 n83

number of strings of, 929 n81



- harp (*cont.*)  
 of David (*cont.*)  
 strings of, made from gut of ram sacrificed by Abraham on Mount Moriah, 927  
 vibrating to awaken him for study of Torah, 927  
 to be used in Messianic time to have eight strings, 929 n81  
*See also* instruments, musical
- Harut  
 fallen angel of Arabic legend, 128 n60
- Hashkivenu, 1128 n58. *See also* prayers, Jewish
- hashmal (pl. hashmalim)  
 as class of angels, 17 n70  
 praising God, 614  
 surrounding Divine Throne, 14
- hasid (godly)  
 etymology of word, 929 n78  
 title given to Joseph, 329 n3
- Hasidim  
 Ahijah in legends of, 982 n5  
 as source of Jewish legendary material, ix
- Hasmoneans, 825 n925
- Hathach  
 another name of Daniel, 1096 n76, 1161  
 killed by Haman for acting as mediator between Mordecai and Esther, 1162  
 name, meaning of, 1163 n129
- hatred  
 banished by righteousness, 447  
 companion of deception, 448
- Hatzubah  
 to keep boundaries of tribes fixed., 852
- Havdalah  
 benedictions for, formulated by men of Great Synagogue, 1128 n58  
 liturgical formula of, recited at termination of Sabbath, 724 n573  
*See also* prayers, Jewish
- Havilah  
 idols of Amorites made from precious stones from, 856
- hawk  
 on step of Solomon's throne, 968
- Hayyah, R.  
 and two sons, efficacy of prayer of, 1011
- hayyot, holy  
 breath of, arrested by Raziel, 614
- hayyot, holy (*cont.*)  
 bull image of, 17 n70  
 as class of angels, 17 n70  
 encircling Divine Throne, 1, 6, 14, 17 n69  
 firmament stretched over heads of, 12  
 four faces of, 17 n70  
 Israel (angel), belonging to, 17 n70  
 joining in David's psalms in Paradise, 938  
 made of fire, 646  
 in Paradise, 24  
 perspiration of, as fire, 17 n69, 614  
 receiving nourishment from radiance of Shekinah, 634  
 referring to creatures with animal forms, 17 n70  
 in seventh heaven, 504  
 supporting Divine Throne, 504  
 taking place of four archangels in Minḥah service on Day of Atonement, 687 n440  
 to bear witness to God on day of judgment, 726 n586
- Hayyot ha-Kodesh (holy creatures).  
*See* hayyot, holy
- Hazarmaveth  
 inhabitants of, living in poverty, 158 n70
- Hazleponith (Samson's mother), 878-879 n111, 879 n112  
 name, meaning of, 878 n111  
 one of seven sterile women who bore children, 878 n111  
 one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271  
 one of 22 women praised in last chapter of Proverbs, 878 n111  
 of tribe of Judah, 879 n112
- Hazor  
 burned down by Joshua, 869 n71  
 destroyed by Joshua, 317 n297  
 identification of, 315 n292  
 Pirathon, king of Hazor, slain by Jacob, 314  
 warfare at  
 with Amorites 314-315, 317 n297  
 conquered by sons of Jacob, 314-315  
 walls of, mounted by Judah, 314  
 walls of, mounted by Naphtali, 314-315
- hazzan  
 Elijah as, 1011, 1013 n84
- hazzan (*cont.*)  
 heavenly, in mystic literature, 17 n70  
 Jeremiah as, 1013 n84  
 pronouncing wedding blessings under *huppah*, 66
- he (letter)  
 added to name of Joseph, 359  
 creation of world through, 4  
 from name of Abraham, not on standards, 686  
 occurring twice in Name of God, 359  
 reserved for God, visible in pillar of cloud over holy ark, 686  
*See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet
- healing  
 of all disease in world to come, 591  
 of all Jews, before revelation at Sinai, 591  
 art of, learned from holy book, 142
- book(s) of  
 origin of, 159 n75  
 used by Hezekiah, 159 n75  
 written down by Shem, 159 n75  
 by hissing of brazen serpent, 1053 n90  
 and oak of Abraham, 206 n137  
 power of, in precious stone, 237  
 springs, list of, hidden by Hezekiah, 1053 n90  
 window of, in first heaven, 503  
*See also* disease(s); illness; magic arts; medicine; sickness
- health  
 window of, in first heaven, 503
- hearing  
 one of ten parts of body received from God, 606 (*see also* body, human)
- heart  
 hardening of, 528, 530, 531  
 for meditating, 447  
 one of 12 guides of men, bestowing understanding and insight, 671 (*see also* body, human; guides: of men)  
 signifying intellect, 42 n189
- heat  
 Egyptians afflicted with, at time of Moses' abandonment, 477
- heathen  
 bound to observe Noachian commandments, 261  
 in Exodus, not protected by clouds of glory, 542



heathen (*cont.*)

God's hatred of, 500, 501 n113  
mourning 70 days for Jacob, recompensed at time of Ahasuerus, 412  
pious, as descendants of those whom Sarah nursed, 218  
represented by Leviathan, 30 n124

heaven(s) (*shamayim*)

## first

angels reading from Torah about first day of creation in, 505 n117  
consisting of windows, 503  
Moses' tour of, 503, 505 n117  
streams of water in, 503  
to cover light during night, 5

## second

angel Nuriel in, 503  
angels reading from Torah about second day of creation in, 505 n117  
fallen angels imprisoned in, 124  
Moses' tour of, 503  
planets fastened to, 5

## third

Adam in, 96  
angels reading from Torah about third day of creation in, 505 n117  
manna in, 5, 9 n22, 427 n432  
mills in, for grinding manna for future use of pious, 570  
Moses' tour of, 503  
Paradise located in, 98 n137, 124, 427 n432  
"tall angel" in, identified with Sandalfon, 505 n117

## fourth

angels reading from Torah about fourth day of creation in, 505 n117  
containing heavenly Jerusalem and Temple, 5, 9 n22  
Enoch in, 125  
Moses' tour of, 503-504  
six gates of, 125  
Temple in, 503-504

## fifth

angelic hosts residing in, 5  
angels reading from Torah about fifth day of creation in, 505 n117  
Enoch in, 125  
Moses' tour of, 504

## sixth

angels in, 504

heaven(s) (*cont.*)sixth (*cont.*)

angels reading from Torah about sixth day of creation in, 505 n117  
Moses' tour of, 504  
as place where trials ordained for earth originate, 5  
removal of instruments of punishment from, 9 n22

## seventh

as abode of unborn souls, 57 n19  
angels reading from Torah about Sabbath in, 505 n117  
attached to arm of God, 6  
Eden in, 22 n84  
Enoch in, 125  
heavenly Temple in, 9 n22  
Moses' tour of, 504  
ofanim in, 505 n117  
as place of what is good and beautiful, 6

principalities and powers in, 125  
seraphim in, 504, 505 n117

artificial, made by Hiram of Tyre, 1104-1105

becoming fearful and multiplying, 11 n43

## creation of

out of fire and water, 7 n16  
on first day, 5, 77, 82 n98  
by God's right hand, 8 n17  
from light of God's garment, 5  
out of snow, 11 n43

like curtain, corresponding to curtains of goats' hair in sanctuary, 648

distances between, 1103

## and earth

all things coming from, 50 n7  
created simultaneously, 5, 8 n17  
exceeding earth, 24

## and firmament

firmament springing up from, 50 n7  
heavens kept in place by firmament, 71

gates of, guarded by angels, 615

lights emanating from, 50 n7

limitations of, 7

meaning of word, 8 n20

Moses asking heavens to intercede, 808

mourning for Moses, 834

number of, 5

seven, 8 n22

God showing Moses, 617

heaven(s) (*cont.*)number of (*cont.*)seven (*cont.*)

origin of idea in tannaitic period, 8 n22  
passages referring to, 9 n22  
ten, 9 n22  
11, corresponding to 11 curtains in Tabernacle, 648  
365, according to Gnostics, 9 n22  
390, 23 n97  
ordered to open before Ezekiel, 48  
ruled by goodness of God, 2  
Sabbath in, 83-86  
Samael searching for Moses in, 836  
size of, 6  
windows of, 17 n67, 503  
witness of, against man, 26-27 n105

## heavenly beings

created by God with right hand, 49 n3  
grieved by sin of Adam, 76  
immortality of, 47  
some made of fire and some of water, 647 n342

## heavenly bodies

asking for power to destroy sinners, 26 n105  
assisting Abraham in battle, 195  
attached to wheel, 25  
changes in, during flood, 147  
consciousness and intelligence of, 27-28 n112

creation of, 25 n98, 99  
having power over plants, 71  
mourning for Moses, 834  
movements of, 25 n100, 26 n105  
Bildad questioning Job about, 459

song of praise of, 26 n102, 44 (*see also* praise)

subjugated through magic, 118 n56

witness of, against man, 26-27 n105

*See also* cosmogony; cosmology; firmament; *and under individual heavenly bodies*

## heavenly court

absolving Moses of oath to Jethro, 517 n143

arbitrating case between Michael and Samael, 252

arguments of, concerning Cain, 108 n26



heavenly court (*cont.*)  
 condemning Adam, 211 n159  
 God appearing with, to Jacob at Bethel, 319 n303  
 judging between God and Uzza, 556-557  
 members  
   number of, 120 n57  
     70 in number, 211 n159  
     71 in number, 95 n124  
     60 myriads of angels, 211 n159  
 to decide case of Sodomites, 211 n159  
 heavenly decree  
   sealing of, 801 n872  
 heavenly family  
   comforting Jacob, 317  
   *See also* heavenly court  
 heavenly ladder  
   from one heaven to another, 8 n22  
 heavenly light. *See* light: celestial;  
   light: heavenly  
 heave offering. *See* offering: heave  
 Hebel (second son of Eve)  
   name, meaning of, 102  
 Heber (grandson of Asher)  
   name, meaning of, 434  
   name Moses called by father, 480  
   one of seven names of Jethro, 493  
 Hebrew alphabet. *See* alphabet;  
   Hebrew characters; Hebrew script  
 Hebrew characters  
   Seth as inventor of, 116 n53  
 Hebrew language  
   Balaam's ass speaking in, 766  
   Balaam's imperfect knowledge of, 768 n746  
   characters for, allotted to Shem, 157  
   God proclaiming Torah in, 820  
     (*see also* Roman language, Arabic language, Aramaic language)  
   Joseph speaking to brothers in, 388, 390 n281  
   Moses receiving divine communications in, 612 n242  
   not known by angels, 49 n6  
   as original language of mankind, 166 n91  
   remaining in house of Shem and Eber, 446  
   reserved for Israel, 164  
   spoken by serpent, 70 n58  
   used by God at creation of world, 164, 166 n91

Hebrew language (*cont.*)  
   used by Semites, 158 n72  
   *See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet  
 Hebrews. *See* Israel (nation; people)/  
   Israelites  
 Hebrew script  
   change of, 1124 n44  
 Hebron (city)  
   altar erected by Abraham at, 187  
   built by sons of Ham, 707  
   as burial site (*see also* Machpelah, Cave of)  
     of Adam and patriarchs and matriarchs, 98 n137  
     Joseph wishing to be buried in, 430 n443  
     remains of founder of each tribe transported to, 437  
     Reuben buried in, 436  
   inhabitants of, honoring Sarah at her death, 237 n268  
   Isaac settling in, 261  
   Jews of, 249  
   as Kiryat Arba ("City of the Four"), 98 n137  
   patron of, 249-250  
   rewarded for kindness to Abraham, 236 n267  
   taken by Jews 47 years after Exodus, 236 n268  
 Hebron (one of four sons of Kohath), 718  
 Hedor  
   fox in story of Sodom, 207-208  
 Hegai  
   adorning Esther above all others in harem, 1142  
   chief of eunuchs of Ahasuerus's harem, 1142  
 heifer(s)  
   with neck broken, brought to atone for sin of those neglecting to accompany wayfarer, 393 n296  
   three, sacrificed by Abraham, 198  
   of three years, symbolizing domination of Babylon, 198  
   *See also* red heifer  
 Hekhal (pl. Hekhalot)  
   at center of sanctuary, 7  
   seven (heavenly halls), 9 n22  
   *See also* Holy of Holies; Holy Place; sanctuary;  
     Tabernacle; Temple  
 Heled (first earth), 6  
 Helena (queen of Adiabene)  
   one of ten rulers who became proselytes, 1093 n66

Heliu. *See* Eli  
 hell  
   Abaddon as place of punishment in, 507  
   Abraham not letting those who kept law of circumcision enter, 248  
   adulterers never getting out of, 609 n229  
   Alukah as place of punishment in, 506  
   compartments of, 15 n56  
   created on second day, 12  
   crying out for souls of pious, 506  
   darkness of, 532, 534 n198  
   description of, 22 n90, 23 n97  
   divisions of, 508 n118  
     fifth division of, Ahab dwelling in, 988  
     names of, 9 n25, 15 n57  
     seven, 13  
     subdivisions of, 13  
   fiery pit of, 135  
   gate(s) of  
     Abraham sitting at, on day of judgment, 248  
     three, location of, 15 n55  
   and hot springs of Tiberias, 15 n55  
   on left side of God, 1  
   location of, 6, 15 n55  
   men tortured in, by angels of destruction, 506  
   nearness of, to Esau, 269  
   Nergal as Babylonian god of, 508 n118  
   one of seven things created in the beginning, 1  
   and Paradise, legends relating to, 22 n90  
   as punishment, 1  
   punishments of, 506  
   reserved for heathen, according to rabbinic literature, 508 n118  
   rivers of fire in, 13  
   rivers of hail in, 13  
   shown to Moses by God, 814  
   size of, 13, 15 n55  
   those spared tortures of  
     Ahaz and Ahaziah, 1039 n6  
     kings who do evil, 1039 n6  
   those who give opprobrious names to fellow men never getting out of, 609 n229  
   those who put fellow men to shame never getting out of, 609 n229



hell (*cont.*)

Tit ha-Yawen as place of punishment in, 506  
*See also* Gehenna; Gehinnom; Hades; netherworld; Sheol; Tofet; water(s): below

## Hemah (angel)

as angel of destruction, 505 n117  
 identified with Azza, 505 n117  
 punishing Moses on road to Egypt, 515

in seventh heaven, 504

## Heman (angel)

angel of death in charge of domestic animals, 42 n187  
 buried alive opposite grave of Moses, 624 n274  
 “the confidant,” identified with Moses, 955 n20  
 of destruction, struggling with Moses, 623  
 wisdom of, Solomon’s wisdom greater than, 949-950

## hen

and cock, story about, 43-44  
 worshiped by Babylonians, 1044

## Her, Mount

one of three mountains retained by God in desert, 736  
 retained by God as burial place of Aaron, 736

## herald, Divine

Shamiel, 13

## heralds of Solomon

seven in number, 969

## herbs

created on third day, 77  
 eaten on first night of Passover, 48  
 used in sorcery, 760 n720

## herem (anathema), 119

## hermeneutic rules

analogy, 884 n135

## Hermon, Mount

contesting for spot of revelation, 594  
 one of four mountains on which heavenly Jerusalem will descend, 595 n184 (*see also* Jerusalem: heavenly)  
 200 angels on, 119

## Herod

atonement of, 672 n397  
 called “the Idumean,” 254 n19  
 eaten by worms as punishment for blasphemy, 717 n552  
 taking money from David’s tomb, 942

## heroes

heavenly light at birth of, 219 n203  
 infancy and youth of, enhanced in description, 482 n64  
 two great (Samson and Goliath) who met death on account of strength, 798  
 worship of, as source of idolatry, 163 n83

## heron

keen sight of, 43 n190  
 as unkind animal, 43 n190  
*See also* animal(s); bird(s)

## Heshbon

destruction of, by Israel, 752  
 formerly belonging to Moab, 758  
 inhabitants of  
   God putting masks on faces of, 752  
   thrown into convulsions by God, 752

## Heshvan (month)

17th of, as first day of flood, 147  
 27th of  
   leaving ark, 148  
 building of Temple completed in, 966, 1151  
 death of Sarah in, 235 n256, 1152 n108  
*See also* date

## het (letter)

creation of world through, 4  
 heart of locust having shape of, 992 n56  
 standing for *hanun* (“Gracious One”), 4 (*see also* God: names and titles of)  
 standing for *hattat* (“sin”), 4  
   not contained in names of 12 tribes, 409 n383  
 as third letter of name of Yitzhak, on standard of tribe of Ephraim, 686  
 in Zaphenath-paneah, standing for *hakham* (“wise”), 368  
*See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet

## Heth

children of  
   being friendly to Abraham, 234  
   as inhabitants of Jebus, 235  
   land provisionally granted to, 157  
 Hezekiah (king of Judah), 1045-1048  
 afflicted with skin disease for sending gold from Temple to Assyrians, 1049  
 arrogance of, 1051

Hezekiah (*cont.*)

and associates

attempting to have Hebrew literature put into writing, 1051

as editors of books of Isaiah, Proverbs, Song of Songs, and Ecclesiastes, 1071 n15

breaking in pieces brazen serpent made by Moses, 1053 n89

burial of, next to David and

Solomon, 1051

burying Ahaz as though poor, 1045

burying father as pauper, 1053 n89

celibate life of, 1049

as child of Isaiah 9:5, 1052 n70

as composer of Adonai Elohe Yisrael, 1128 n58 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)

death of, 1051

declaring leap year by adding second month of Nisan, 1053 n89

failing in gratitude, 1048-1049

as first to recover from disease, 1050

frugal ways of, 1048

illness of, punishment for unseemly language, 1052 n75

as infant, destined as sacrifice to Moloch, 1045

and Isaiah, 1049

H. marrying daughter of I., 1054

life span of

  15 years added to, 1057 n102  
   H. owing added 15 years of life to merits of David, 1050

men of, 1053 n89

miracles wrought for, 1048-1054

name, meaning of, 1053 n92

one of five to give expected answer to God’s questions, 1102 n94

one of princes who assist Messiah, 100 n142

piety of, 1051

H. among most pious of Israel, 1045

H. as one of five men pious from first to last, 1044 n39 (*see also under* pious: men)

H. as one of six pious men endowed with spiritual gifts descended from Ruth, 866 n61 (*see also under* pious: men)



Hezekiah (*cont.*)

piety of (*cont.*)  
 victory over Sennacherib as  
 reward for, 1045-1046  
 prayer of, 1050  
 as model, 1052 n76  
 that God would defeat enemy,  
 986 n21  
 put to test by God, 763  
 recognizing God of own accord,  
 184 n49, 456 n13  
 referred to by Psalm 110, 197 n95,  
 1052 n70  
 refusal of, to sing song of praise to  
 God, 1048-1049, 1051-  
 1052 n67  
 saved from fire through merits of  
 descendants, 1045, 1047  
 n47  
 scraping gold from Temple, 1053  
 n89  
 Shebnah (high priest) as opponent  
 of, 1048  
 sins of, 1049  
 stopping upper spring of Gihon,  
 1053 n89  
 taking throne of Solomon from  
 Sennacherib, 969  
 to be Messiah, according to divine  
 plan, 1049  
 and Torah  
 devotion of H. to study of  
 Torah, 1052 n67  
 H. mandating study of Torah,  
 1045  
 undertaking six reforms, 1053 n89  
 warfare of  
 victory over Sennacherib as  
 reward for piety, 1045-  
 1046  
 number of survivors of, 1047  
 n57  
 wicked sons of (Rabshakeh and  
 Manasseh), 1054  
 winning wealth back, 397  
 Hezekiah (son of R. Hiyya), 1124  
 n42  
 Hezron (father of Caleb), 861 n25  
 married though one year old, 395  
 Hiel  
 commander-in-chief of Israelite  
 army under Ahab, 993  
 suffering curse of Joshua against  
 one who would rebuild  
 Jericho, 993  
 high priest  
 Aaron appointed as, 649-650

high priest (*cont.*)

breastplate of (*see also* Aaron:  
 breastplate of; breastplate;  
 precious stones)  
 names engraved on, 356  
 precious stones in, 35  
 colors corresponding to flags  
 of tribes, 688  
 giving information, 846  
 clad in Urim and Thummim, 775  
 forbidden to have two wives, 1039  
 n11  
 greater than Michael, 676 n415  
 having to observe certain cere-  
 monies when entering  
 sanctuary, 676  
 mitre of, determining age of  
 women of Midian, 797  
 not allowed to take part in funeral  
 procession, 663  
 and Satan  
 high priest seized by S. to pre-  
 vent him from performing  
 service, 677 n415  
 S. having to flee before high  
 priest, 676  
 from sons of Aaron, 48  
 to come from tribe of Levi, 649  
 high priesthood  
 line of succession in, 892 n25  
 Hilkiah (father of Jeremiah), 1067  
 descendant of Rahab, 844 n12  
 finding Torah in Temple, 1061  
 n116  
 fleeing from persecution of Jezebel,  
 1067  
 identified with high priest, 1070  
 n10  
 one of eight priests descended from  
 Rahab, 1093 n65  
 as prophet, 1067  
 Hillel  
 Babylonian who revived knowledge  
 of Torah, 1124 n42  
 hind  
 depicted on tribe of Naphtali's flag  
 in wilderness, 688  
 as "pious one" among animals, 43  
 n190  
 hip  
 sinew of, removed in ritual slaugh-  
 tering, 379 (*see also* food:  
 forbidden)  
 Hippocrates  
 and study of medicine, 158  
 hippodrome, 970-971  
 Hirah  
 chief shepherd of Judah, 343

Hirah (*cont.*)

identified with Hiram, king of  
 Tyre, 347, 348 n95  
 Hiram (architect)  
 descendant of Oholiab, assistant of  
 Bezalel, 967 n61  
 descendant of tribes of Naphtali  
 and Dan, 642, 967 n61  
 entering Paradise alive, 966 (*see  
 also* Paradise: entering  
 alive)  
 master workman of Temple, 642,  
 966  
 Hiram (friend of Judah)  
 identified with Hiram of Tyre,  
 1105 n105  
 Hiram (king of Tyre), 1104-1106  
 Arabic version of legend of, 1105  
 n105  
 claiming to be God, 100 n142,  
 1103-1104 n100, 1105  
 n105  
 conquered by Nebuchadnezzar,  
 1105  
 considering self god, 1104-1105  
 entering Paradise alive, 73 n67,  
 132 n62, 1105 n105 (*see  
 also* Paradise: entering  
 alive)  
 fashioning artificial heavens, 1104  
 fashioning statue of daughter from  
 gold given by Solomon,  
 958 n36  
 forced by Nebuchadnezzar to con-  
 sume own flesh, 1105  
 furnishing cedars for building of  
 Temple, 1105  
 identified with Hirah, 347, 348  
 n95  
 identified with Hiram, friend of  
 Judah, 1105 n105  
 name, meaning of, 1105 n105  
 one of four kings claiming to be  
 gods, 1039 n16  
 one of ten rulers who became pros-  
 elytes, 1093 n66  
 palace of, 1105 n105  
 swallowed by earth, to return in  
 future as home of pious,  
 1105  
 rewarded with long life, 1105  
 n105  
 and Solomon  
 correspondence between, 958  
 n36  
 H. desiring to test wisdom of  
 Solomon, 955  
 story of war between, 980 n100



Hiram (*cont.*)

- stepfather of Nebuchadnezzar, 1105
- visited by Ezekiel, 1105
- Hiram (title of Phoenician kings), 422 n429
- historical reminiscence
  - concerning Babylonian exile and catastrophe of 70 c.e., 1074 n24
  - defeat of Ephraimites by Philistines as, 548 n10
  - in enmity of Egyptians and Israelites, 470 n12
  - Jews as sellers of wax in Rome, 930 n87
  - palace of Hiram of Tyre and building in Babylon with eight towers, 1105 n105
  - Palmyrene archers assisting in campaign against Jerusalem, 1087 n53
  - of relations between Babylon and Palestine, 848 n33
  - of relationship between Egypt and Palestine, 364 n163
  - Sisera resembling Alexander the Great, 869 n72
  - war between Egypt and Canaan as, 548 n10
  - in wars of sons of Jacob with sons of Esau, 419 n425, 421 n426
- history
  - revealed to Abraham in vision, 200 n114
  - of Israel, 198, 200 n112
  - of world, 198
- Hittites
  - spies reporting that they dwell in mountains, 710
- Hivites
  - land provisionally granted to, 157
  - preparing for war against sons of Jacob, 332
- Hiwwa (son of Shemhazai), 136
- and Hiyya, dreams of, 136
- Hiwwar ("the leper")
  - Enoch, son of Nimrod, 258 n38
- Hiyya, R.
  - and sons reviving knowledge of Torah, 1124 n42
- Hiyya (son of Shemhazai), 136
- Hiyyah, R.
  - blinding lustre of chariot of, 1013 n84
- Hobab
  - one of seven names of Jethro, 493

## Hodu psalm (Psalm 136)

- recited by Mordecai, 1176 n172
- holidays, Jewish. *See* holy days; *and under names of individual holidays*
- holiness
  - one of three natures of God, according to Philo, 319 n304
- holy book (Book of Raziel), 141-143
  - different accounts of, 143 n23
  - entrusted to Shem, 142
  - given to Abraham by Shem, 142
  - given to Noah by Raphael, 142
  - made of sapphires, 142
  - passed from Jacob, to Levi, to Moses, to Joshua, to Solomon, 142
  - See also* Raziel, Book of
- holy days
  - manna descending on, 574 n108
  - manna not descending on, 571-572
  - 70 celebrated by Jews (52 Sabbaths, seven days of Passover, eight days of Tabernacles, Pentecost, Day of Atonement, New Year), 648
  - souls of pious reading from Torah scroll on, 812
- Holy, holy, holy, 614, 1165
  - praise of angels during day, 617
  - praise of seraphim in seventh heaven, 504
  - said by Metatron at end of David's psalms, 938
  - in seventh heaven, 125
  - See also* praise
- Holy Land
  - as central point of earth's surface, 7
  - controlled by 12 Canaanite tribes, 159 n73
  - given to Israelites conditionally, 590 n173
  - God causing Name to dwell in, 399
  - Israel's right to, legends explaining, 322 n316
  - Israel swearing not to reconquer, 1081 n39
  - as land of living, 837 n958
  - land of Philistines as part of, 262 n53
  - Messianic kingdom to be confined to, 401 n345
  - Moses not allowed to enter, 515

Holy Land (*cont.*)

- mountains of, to be ground into powder, one of seven wonders of Messiah, 1021
- no revelations made to prophets outside of, 1032 n27
- in possession of strangers, 196 n82
- possessions acquired outside of, 304, 306 n274
- promise of God to Jacob concerning, 277
- Shekinah dwelling in, 260
- Shekinah not revealing self outside of, 1032 n27
- size of, 709 n520
- superiority of, at time of resurrection, 401 n345
- See also* Israel (land); Palestine
- Holy of Holies
  - angels remaining outside of, 453 n4
  - falling within precincts of Shem, 156
  - place where meteor fell, 11 n39
  - priest raising curtain of, on pilgrimage festivals, 644
  - waters below, 924 n70
  - See also* Hekhal; Holy Place; sanctuary; Tabernacle; Temple
- Holy Place
  - of Tabernacle, 48
  - in territory of Benjamin, 409
  - See also* Hekhal; Holy of Holies; sanctuary; Tabernacle; Temple
- holy places
  - seven destroyed by Esau, 264, 268 n77
- holy spirit
  - adorning Esther, 1166
  - answering Eliezer, 226
  - causing Egyptians to love and fear Israelites, 543 n232
  - crying out against Judah for marrying a Canaanite, 344
  - departing from Israel with death of last three prophets, 1124 n36
  - and Isaac
    - holy spirit filling I., 266
    - I. deserted by holy spirit, 264
  - and Jacob
    - holy spirit abandoning J. during time he grieved for Joseph, 405 n366
    - holy spirit enabling J. to bless Ephraim and Manasseh, 404



holy spirit (*cont.*)  
   and Jacob (*cont.*)  
     revelation of holy spirit to J., 290  
   joy as necessary condition for manifestation of, 268 n94  
   one of five things in First Temple only, 1123-1124 n36  
   revealing to Rebekah words of Isaac and Esau, 265  
   Shekinah as, 276 n124  
   *See also* God: spirit of; spirit(s): of Lord  
 honey  
   from bees of Paradise given to Asenath, 427 n432  
   flowing from trees in Palestine, 709  
   one of rivers in Paradise, 507  
   as stream from tree of life, 127 n60  
   *See also* bees; manna; milk: and honey  
 honeycomb  
   Torah as sweet as, 286  
 Honi (i.e., Onias)  
   sleeping for 70 years, 1091 n58  
 hoopoe, 961 n39  
   story of Solomon and, 958-959  
   wild cock identified with, 975 n85  
 Hophni  
   image of, on Solomon's throne, 968  
   and Phinehas, descendants of Aaron killed by Goliath, 916  
   as righteous man slain by Philistines, 223  
   son of Eli, 893 n26  
 Hor, Mount  
   Moses looking at Holy Land from, 814  
   *See also* Abarim, Mount; Nebo, Mount; Pisgah, Mount  
 Horeb, Mount  
   defective spelling of, 501 n113  
   as holy mount, 501, 501 n113  
   Moses sent to, to fetch water, 575  
   moving toward Moses, 501  
   name, meaning of ("sword"), 500  
   one of six names of Mount Sinai, 593  
   as place God desired for His abode, 500  
   as place where God revealed law, 500  
   sheep not allowed to graze on, 501 n113

Horeb, Mount (*cont.*)  
   six names of (mountain of God; Bashan; mountain of humps; mountain of abode; Sinai), 500, 501 n113  
 horn  
   four in number, in four corners of Tabernacle (kingdom, priesthood, Shekinah, Torah), 648  
   as symbol of David's everlasting kingdom, 915 n22  
   used by Pharaoh against Israelites, 559  
 hornet(s)  
   cure for sting of, 43  
   penetrating rocks and killing Amorites, 756 n701, 918 n42  
   remaining on east side of Jordan, 755  
   sent by God against Amorites, 755  
   spitting venom across Jordan against Canaanites, 755  
   springing forth from remains of horse, 42 n190  
   two kinds of, 756 n702  
   *See also* wasp  
 horse(s)  
   being dragged to death by, 1048, 1051 n65  
   bred with ass by Adam, 324, 324 n322  
   cherub having form of mare, 561 n44, 561 n47  
   fiery, and translation of Enoch, 123  
   heavenly mare of Pharaoh, 558, 561 n44  
   use of, in warfare, 314  
   worshiped by Sepharvites, 1044  
 horseman  
   Elijah appearing as, 1001  
 Hosea  
   burial of, in Safed, 1040  
   death of, in Babylon, 1040  
   descendant of Reuben, 318  
   first to try to lead Israel back to God, 318, 332  
   marriage of, 1039-1040  
     as prophetic vision, 1041 n23  
   one of three great prophets, 1039  
   son of Beeri, prophet and prince, 1039  
   time of activity of, 1041 n20  
   wife of, Gomer of Diblaim, 1041 n23

Hoshea  
   Assyria taking tribes into exile in reign of, 1044  
   name, changed by Moses to Joshua, 706  
   son of Nun, spy representing tribe of Ephraim, 706  
 hospitality  
   of Abraham, 206 n130, 223, 224 n223, 225  
   to archangels, 204  
   mirrored by acts of God, 206 n138  
   forbidden in Sodom, 212  
   importance of providing provisions to departing guest, 919-920 n50  
   of Jethro to Moses, 902 n60  
   of Jews of Hebron, 249  
   of Lot, 214 n176  
   toward angels, 212  
   merit of, 984 n8  
   as one good quality of Micah, 882  
   and Shekinah, 206 n134  
   of Shunammite, 1028, 1029 n14  
   of widow of Zarephath, 997 n11  
   *See also* strangers; traveler(s); wayfarer  
 hosts of heaven  
   fighting against Sisera, 868  
 hot springs  
   in time of flood, 151 n48  
 hour  
   smallest fraction of, 770, 771 n758  
 house  
   with many doors, 224 n223  
   as metaphor for wife, 155 n60  
 housefly  
   as cure for sting of hornet, 43  
 Hozai (prophet), 1058 n104  
 Huldah (prophetess)  
   active among women, 1068  
   contemporary of Jeremiah, 1068  
   descendant of Joshua and Rahab, 1059  
   having academy in Jerusalem, 1062 n117  
   married to Shallum son of Tikvah, 1030  
   name, meaning of ("weasel"), 870 n75, 1062 n117  
   one of two eminent women in Bible, 1061-1062 n117  
   pride of, 870 n75  
   Rahab as ancestress of, 843  
   relation of, to Jeremiah, 1059  
   supervising one of seven classes of women, 23 n97



## Hulta

- attending Esther on Sundays, 1142
- one of seven Jewish attendants of Esther, 1142
- human beings. *See* man (human beings; humanity)
- human figure
  - carved by Moses on piece of Joseph's cup, 429
- humanity. *See* man (human beings; humanity)
- humility
  - of Aaron, 743
  - of Abraham, 236 n267
  - David rewarded for, 406 n376
  - Ephraim rewarded for, 406 n376
  - Joktan rewarded for, 406 n376
  - lessons in, concerning Solomon, 971-973
  - of letter alef, 4
  - of Moses, 700
  - proverb about vine and, 406 n376
  - as qualification of prophet, 633 (*see also* prophet[s]: qualifications of)
- hunger
  - one of seven evils, 450
- hunting
  - and Esau, 257, 259 n51, 261, 269
  - E. accompanied by Satan in, 264-265
  - and Nimrod, 257
- Huppim (son of Benjamin), 380
- name
  - changed to Hupham, 434
  - meaning of, 380
- Hur (son of Miriam)
  - and Aaron the Levite
    - holding up Moses' arms during battle against Amalek, 581
  - leaders when Moses was on Mount Sinai, 620
- image of, on Solomon's throne, 968
- one of martyred prophets, according to Josephus, 1078 n30
- one of seven pious men of world, 968 (*see also* under pious: men)
- slain by people, 620, 622 n265
- Hurfita ("haste")
  - allusion to Friday, because people hasten to prepare for Sabbath, 1144 n77
- Hurfita ("little ewe-lamb")
  - one of seven Jewish attendants of Esther, attending Esther on Fridays, 1143

## hurricane

- sent by God three times (over Job's house; when Jonah found in ship; when God revealed Self to Elijah on Horeb), 458 n24
- See also* lightning; storm; thunder; thunderstorms
- husbandry
  - love of, as cause of downfall of Uzziah, Cain, Noah, and Lot, 1042 n30
- Hushai the Archite
  - counseling David about Absalom, 932
- Husham
  - succeeding Jobab as third king of Esau's sons, 325 n323, 416
- Hushim (son of Dan)
  - deaf, 414
  - killing Esau, 414
  - son of Dan and Elfalet, 348
  - wanting to proceed with burial of Jacob, 414

## hyena

- colors of, 43 n190
- sexual metamorphosis of, 41 n177, 43 n190
- transformation of, into demon, 43 n190

## hyssop

- meaning of, symbolizing Israel as God's treasure, 535

## I

## Ibicus

- identified with Anoko, 180 n45

## Ibzan (judge)

- identified with Boaz, 864 n31, 879 n113
- not inviting Samson's parents to wedding banquets, 877

## Ichabod

- birth of, 894 n33
- grandson of Eli, 894 n33
- name, meaning of, 894 n33
- as seventh-month child, 890 n13

## Iddo (prophet)

- man of God out of Judah, 883 n133
- one of those called "man of God" in Scripture, 838 n965 (*see also* man of God)
- Shunammite as mother of, 1028 n10
- Shunammite as wife of, 1028

## identification

- by means of affinity of blood and bone, 950
- Idne. *See* Adne Sadeh
- idol(s)
  - and Abraham's youth, 182-183
  - brought by Israelites from Egypt, 567 n72
  - burning of, in Gehenna, on day of judgment, 558 n41
  - in dream of Joseph, 330
  - on earrings of Shechemites, 317 n295
  - of Egyptians, destroyed in tenth plague, 537-538
  - falling to ground, 173 n24
  - generation of Enosh as first worshippers of, 117
  - with hatchet, 185-186, 186 n50
  - punishment of, 558 n41
  - sacrifices offered to, by daughters-in-law of Isaac, 263
  - taken by Jacob from sons and destroyed, 316
  - worship of, forbidden, 69
- See also* idolatry
- idolaters
  - corpses of, hung on gallows, 780-781 n790
- idolatry
  - and Abraham
    - A. said to have composed book of laws on, 191 n80
    - during youth, 182
  - of Ahaz, 1043
  - of Asa's mother and/or grandmother, 986 n18
  - as cause of flood, 140 n17
  - coming from fallen angels, 121 n57
  - commandment against, 605
  - idolatry as infringement of First Commandment, 609 n234
  - consequences of, 117
  - of descendants of Noah, 167
  - desire for
    - eradicated from Israel in days of Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, 1128 n57
    - eradicated from Israel in days of Mordecai and Esther, 1128 n57
  - ephod of Aaron atoning for, 650
  - of generation of flood, 135
  - of Hagar, 221 n216
  - impurity of, to be removed from Israel in time to come, 677 n417



- idolatry (*cont.*)  
 of Ishmael, 221 n216  
 of Israelites (*see also* Israel: idolatry of)  
 idolatry in Egypt, 535  
 idolatry of all tribes except Reuben, Simeon, and Levi, 435 n6  
 idolatry of tribe of Dan, 579  
 idolatry under Nebuchadnezzar, 1134 n15  
 Israel addicted to idolatry during reign of Ahab, 988 n35  
 Israel free from idolatry during reign of Josiah, 949 n12  
 Israel free from idolatry for only 20 years, 949 n12  
 and Jacob  
   J. cautioning sons against, 411  
   Jeremiah warning against, 1071 n15  
 and Jeroboam  
   of J. and people, 984 n9  
   J. tricking people into worshipping golden calves, 982-983  
 Jezebel leading Ahab into, 987  
 love of gold leading to, 440  
 men seduced to, by demons, 118 n54  
 of Nebuchadnezzar, 1097  
 one of things God repented of creating, 141 n20  
 origin of, 118 n54  
   in hero worship, 163 n83  
   occupying Greeks, 118 n54  
 rabbinic view of, 1072 n16  
 as sin, 316  
   as capital offense, 625  
   punishable by death by stoning, 779  
   one of eight sins committed by Pharaoh, inhabitants of sinful cities, builders of Tower of Babel, Sennacherib, and Nebuchadnezzar, 562 n54, 1048 n60  
   one of 13 sins punished by leprosy, 675 (*see also* leprosy)  
   one of three cardinal sins, 278, 280 n147  
   one of three sins of generation of Enosh, 118 n55  
 of Zepho, 419  
*See also avodah zarah*; idol(s)  
 Iebul. *See* Zebul  
 Iehud. *See* Ehud
- Igal  
 elder from tribe of Issachar, 696  
 son of Joseph, spy representing tribe of Issachar, 705
- ignorance  
 of law, no excuse for breaking law, 786  
 of people before revelation of Torah, 611
- illness  
 first, legend of, 238 n272  
 as forerunner of death, 92 n111, 401 n357  
*See also* disease(s); healing; magic arts; medicine; sickness; and under individual diseases
- image of jealousy  
 fashioned by generation of exile, 1101 n93
- imago vocis*  
 in revelation at Sinai, 612 n238
- immorality  
 one of three cardinal sins, 278, 280 n147  
 punished by fire, 212 n168  
 as sin that hastened flood, 139
- immortal bird, 39 n150
- immortality  
 of animals, 39 n150, 72, 517 n144  
 denied to Moses, 515  
 of giants, 113 n44  
 of heavenly beings, 47
- immortals, 131 n61 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)  
 to taste death in time to come, 885 n140
- impatience  
 producing anger as her son, 102 n3
- incense  
 bringing death on Nadab and Abihu, 729  
 before Joseph, 367  
 keeping angel of death at bay, 72  
 offering of, 722  
 spices for, 640
- incest  
 of Amon, 1055, 1058 n112  
 forbidden by commandments, 69  
 of Jehoiakim, 1060  
 of Manasseh, 1058 n112  
 and nakedness, 158 n67  
 one of eight sins committed by Pharaoh, inhabitants of sinful cities, builders of Tower of Babel, Sennacherib, and Nebuchadnezzar, 562 n54
- incest (*cont.*)  
 one of three sins of generation of Enosh, 118 n55
- inclinations  
 two in number, 448  
*See also* evil inclination; good inclination
- India  
 sages of, studying curative trees and spices, 157
- Indian influence  
 and animal fables, 43 n190
- inebriate  
 irresponsibility of, 779 n786  
*See also* drunkenness; intemperance; intoxication; wine
- Ineffable Name. *See* Name, Ineffable; also God: names and titles of
- inextinguishable name, 306 n273
- infants  
 death of, as punishment for sins of parents, 599 n196  
 speaking, 134 n2  
   Ben Sira, 1083 n42  
   child of Zuleika, in defense of Joseph, 358  
   as favorite subject in Jewish and Christian legends, 359 n134  
   Jeremiah, 1067, 1083 n42  
   Melchizedek, 134 n2  
   speaking and walking, 170-171, 172 n15  
   Moses, 476, 829
- Ingethel. *See* Gethel
- ingratitude  
 as grave as idolatry, 874 n103  
 of Joash, 1039 n16  
 of Moabites and Ammonites, 1039 n16
- inheritance  
 birthright and, 258  
 laws of  
   and daughters of Zelophehad, 785-786  
   and succession of Solomon, 946 n3  
 and rights of firstborn, 219  
*See also* birthright; firstborn; primogeniture
- injustice  
 one of seven tempter spirits, 435
- ink  
 heavenly, on forehead of Moses, 634  
 pious marked with, by angel, 1075 n26



- innocents, slaughter of, 471-472
- insanity  
one exception in beautiful and good world, 918
- inscription(s)  
of Ahab, denying God of Israel, 987  
found by David, about king reigning 1,000 years, 973 n79  
Greek, in magnificent building, 972  
on pillar found in Tangiers, Africa, concerning Canaanites, 848 n34  
on Solomon's throne, 970 n70  
on standards of tribes of Dan, Ephraim, and Judah, 686
- insects  
Jonah annoyed by, 1034-1035  
noxious, Elijah explaining purpose of, to R. Nehorai, 1010  
*See also under individual insects*
- insight  
into Halakhah, aiding in building Tabernacle, 641  
one of ten parts of body received from God, 606 (*see also* body, human)
- instruction  
one of three natures of God according to Philo, 319 n304
- instruments, musical  
1,000 playing on wedding night of Solomon, 948  
played by women, 394  
sacred, hidden by Baruch and Zedekiah until advent of Messiah, 1091  
*See also* cithern; cymbals; flute; harp; ram(s): horn of; shofar; timbrel; trumpet(s)
- intemperance  
in Sodom, 210 n155  
*See also* drunkenness; inebriate; intoxication; wine
- intention  
mattering more than deed, 655 n364
- intercession  
doctrine of, in later authorities, 508 n118  
Pharisaic doctrine of, 508 n118
- interest  
exacted from Obadiah by Jehoram, 1027 n7
- intermarriage  
law of, broken by Zimri, 781 n791  
of Mahlon and Chilion, 862  
prohibition of, 1124 n38  
with Moabites, 864 n40  
applied to Moabite males because of Ruth, 794 n845, 866 n64
- interpreter  
in communications between Ahasuerus and Esther, 1174, 1177 n178  
used by God to communicate with Eve, 76
- intoxication, 722  
as cause of all sins, 155 n58  
of Judah, 344  
of people at coronation of Jeroboam, 984 n9  
of Solomon when Temple completed, 949 n13  
*See also* drunkenness; inebriate; intemperance; wine
- invisibility  
of Asmodeus, on earth, 973  
in Christian legends, 844 n13  
of Elijah, 1020 n103  
of Jochebed and Miriam, 474  
as miracle, 844 n13  
of sanctuary, 996  
of spies at house of Rahab, 475 n35
- Ira (David's friend)  
one of four heroes of tribe of Dan, 796 n854  
teacher of David, 927
- Irad (descendant of Cain), 111
- Iranian influence  
on word Chalkidri, 40 n154
- Iranian mythology  
and Ziz legends, 32-33 n139
- iron  
armor of Jashub, king of Tappuah, 314 (*see also* war/warfare; weapon[s])  
associated with Rome, 648-649  
not used in Tabernacle or Temple, 648  
one of thrones of Nimrod made of, 162  
second artificial heaven of Hiram made from, 1104
- tools  
created on third day, to fell trees, 18  
prohibited for work in Temple, 35
- Isaac  
and Abraham  
I. as chief mourner for A., 248 n317  
I. indebted to merits of A., 261 (*see also* Abraham: merits of; merits)  
I. resembling A., 251  
I.'s reverence for A., 260  
similarities between, 259, 942 n140  
and Abraham and Jacob (*see* Abraham: and Isaac and Jacob)  
age of  
at death, 257  
life span of I., 264  
old age of I., 264  
at time of Akedah, 37 years, 1079  
and Akedah, 224  
age of I. at time of, 253 n3, 1079  
Akedah occurring on Day of Atonement, 230  
injury to I. in, 233 n255  
I. as hero of, 228 n229  
I. as perfect sacrifice, 259-260  
I. in Paradise after Akedah, 233 n255  
I. returning after Akedah, 233 n254  
I.'s terror at, 270 n101  
remembrance of sacrifice of Akedah by two daily sacrifices, 232 n249  
source of second of Eighteen Benedictions, 1126  
willingness of I. to be sacrificed, 228, 251  
and angels  
I. accompanied by angel, 240  
question of angels concerning I., 279 n134  
tears of angels falling on eyes of I., 264  
Balaam recounting history of, to Pharaoh, 482  
beholding vision of Merkabah, 270 n101  
bellwether of Abraham's flocks sacrificed instead of, 232 n245  
binding of, 229 (*see also* Akedah) in conformity with law, 232 n242  
birth of, 218-219  
to aging parents, 179-180



Isaac (*cont.*)birth of (*cont.*)

- announcement of, 205
- bondage of Israel in Egypt reckoned from, 199
- celebration of, 224-225, 225 n226
- date of, 218, 219 n203
- on first day of Passover, 218
- keeping world from ceasing to exist, 219 n203
- as second of seven miracles visible to all, 219 n208 (*see also* miracle[s])
- as "seventh-month child," 890 n13
- sun shining splendidly on, 218

## blessing

- Esau, 264
- Esau and Jacob before his death, 319-320
- leading to dispute between E. and J., 819
- God, 230
- Jacob, 263-68, 272
- Judah, 440
- Levi, 438
- Levi and Judah, 316-317

## blindness of, 232 n243, 264

- cause of, 264, 267 n74
- disqualifying I. for priestly service, 268 n89
- effects on eating of, 264
- as first case of disease, 267 n74
- I. regaining sight, 267 n75
- as punishment for preferring Esau, 267 n74
- spiritual, 264

## blood of, brought as sacrifice, 233 n255

## burned to ashes and then brought back to life, 233 n255

## as burnt offering, 225-226, 260

## circumcision of, 218

- on eighth day, 251

as composer of Shokhen Ad, 1128 n58 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)

## cunning of, 269

## daughters-in-law of, offering sacrifices to idols, 263

## death and burial of, 366 n169, 379

- burial of I., by Jacob alone, 415 n422

corpse of I., not decaying, 411-412 (*see also under* corpse[s])

## death of I., by kiss of Shekinah, 411

Isaac (*cont.*)death and burial of (*cont.*)

- funeral of I., 320
- grave of I., dug by I. himself, 320
- I. wishing to be buried in Cave of Machpelah next to Abraham, 320
- last wish and will of, 319-320
- descendants of
  - redeemed from Gehenna by I., 263 n69
  - to be redeemed from Gehenna on day of judgment, 261
  - as true progeny of Abraham, 220 n214
- deserted by holy spirit, 264
- eating lentils after death of Abraham, 257
- Elihu son of Barachel identified with, 261, 460 n32
- and Esau
  - E. as blemished offspring of I., 406
  - I. and E.'s filial love, 264
  - I. attempting to reform E., 256 n31
  - I. bestowing power of sword on E., 263 n69
  - I. fooled by E., 255
  - I. not discerning wickedness of E., 264
  - I. (though dead) praying to God to have mercy on E., 414
- evil inclination not having any effect on, 412 (*see also* evil inclination)
- famine in time of, 259
  - compelling move to land of Philistines, 189
- as fifth of seven pious men, 682 (*see also under* pious: men)
- filial piety and modesty of, 262 n62
- as firstborn, 268 n89
- fulfilling commandment to honor father and mother, 593
- and Gerar
  - conversation of, concerning sins of progeny, 261
  - I. departing from, 260
  - I. giving tithe of all possessions to poor in, 260
  - I. settling in, 260
  - Philistine wells running dry when I. leaves, 261
  - trees failing to yield their fruit when I. leaves, 261

Isaac (*cont.*)

## and God

- God appearing to I., 263 n67
- God demanding I. as sacrifice, 251
- I. pleading with God for descendants, 263 n69
- image of, on Solomon's throne, 968
- as indulgent father, 434 n1
- and Ishmael (*see also* Ishmael)
  - Isaac mourning for Ishmael, 248 n317
  - Isaac receiving all honors, 248 n317
  - quarrels between, 219, 251
- and Jacob
  - I. commanding J. to go to house of Bethuel for wife, 272
  - I. frightened by J., 271 n101
  - I. given wine by J., 266
  - I.'s tenfold blessing of J., 266
  - resemblance between, 396 n327
- and Jacob and Esau
  - I. dividing possessions between J. and E., 320
- and Jacob and Judah
  - as judges in case of Tamar, 345
- and Joseph
  - I. mourning for J., 343 n69
- and land, abundant yield of, 260
- marriage of, 237
  - late in life, 251
  - to Rebekah, 251
- merits of (*see also* merits)
  - one of five charms to protect Jacob, 300 n247
  - reducing years of Egyptian servitude, 263 n69
  - to be rewarded in future, 261
- missionary activity of, 328 n1
- and Moses
  - I. appearing at death of M., 837
  - I. as prophet as great as M., 1058 n104
  - superiority of M. to I., 837
- name, meaning of, 219 n203, 255 n28
  - I. as name of Abraham's pet (bellwether of flock), 232 n245
  - I. as one of six men given name by God before birth, 201
  - never changed, 203 n122, 260
  - numerical value of, 263 n69
  - should have been Yishak instead of Yitzhak, 263 n69
- not mentioned by Isaiah as one of fathers, 263 n69



Isaac (*cont.*)

not participating in erection of altar, 231 n241  
 one of eight whose corpse not touched by worms, 939 n128 (*see also under* corpse[s])  
 one of five pious men for sake of whose merits Israel to be redeemed, 502 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of seven patriarchs of world, 968  
 one of seven pillars of earth, 9 n28 (*see also under* world[s])  
 one of seven pious men erecting altar, 771 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of ten just men in Israel, 628 in Paradise  
   I. unworthy to pronounce blessing over wine in, 939  
   purpose of stay in, after Akedah, 233 n255  
   for three years, 231  
 as perfect sacrifice, 259-260  
 and Philistines, 259-263  
   covenant between, 261, 263 n66, 293  
   enmity between, 260  
   I. interceding for Philistines, 263 n65  
 piety of  
   piety of Rebekah equal to, 251-252  
 pleading with God for Israel, 1079  
 prayer of  
   accompanied by sacrifice on Mount Moriah, 253 n8  
   for deliverance of Jacob from Canaanites, 310  
   efficaciousness of, 253 n10  
   heard by God, 252  
   I. instituting daily afternoon prayer, 240, 1128 n58  
   on Mount Moriah, 251-252  
   on site of field Abraham bought from Ephron, 242 n300  
 as prophet, 343 n69  
   knowing Joseph's fate, 342  
 prophetic eye of, 272  
 punishment of  
   blindness as, 267 n74  
   for lack of paternal love, 276 n124  
   loss of prophetic spirit as, 267 n74

Isaac (*cont.*)

and Rebekah  
 childlessness of  
   due to both of them, 253 n8  
   duration of, 253 n7  
   I. blaming R. for childlessness, 251  
   I. pretending R. was sister, 260, 274 n123  
 marriage of  
   childless, 251  
   not entirely happy, 251  
   piety of I. equal to that of R., 251-252  
 represented as blind man on monument of Jebusites, 921 n51  
 resignation of, to God's will, 232 n242  
 returning to Canaan, 261  
 revealing mysteries of nature to Job, 261  
 reward of, 260  
 at right hand of God, 450 (*see also* God: right hand of)  
 sacrifice of (*see also* Akedah; Isaac: and Akedah)  
   as burnt offering, 260  
 and Sarah  
   I. as firstborn of mother, 268 n89  
   I. mourning for S., 234, 251  
   S. dressing I. in finery, 226  
 seeing earthly and heavenly Temple, 817 n905  
 settling in Hebron, 261  
 and Shekinah  
   death of I. by kiss of Shekinah, 411  
   I. as one of six righteous men who drew Shekinah back from six heavens, 473  
   I. beholding face of Shekinah, 837  
   I. giving up life at appearance of Shekinah, 232 n243  
   Shekinah deserting I., 270, 276 n124  
 special virtue of, excelling in prayer, 715 n543  
 suspicious of Eliezer, 242 n299, 301  
 tithe of, 438  
 to redeem descendants from Gehenna on day of judgment, 261  
 virtues coming to Jacob through, 253 n1

Isaac (*cont.*)

walking on head, 242 n301  
 wealth of, 260, 262 n60, 276 n124  
 wearing garments of Adam, 265  
 wells dug by  
   motivation for digging, 263 n68  
   number of, 263 n63  
   previously stopped up, 260  
 Isaac Loria, R. *See* Luria, R. Isaac  
 Isaiah  
   age at death, 120 years, 1055  
   beholding Divine Throne, 1040-1041  
   as blood relative of king, 1044 n42  
   as comforter of mourners for Zion, 1043 n35  
   daughter of, marrying Hezekiah, 1054  
   death of  
   being sawed in two, 1057 n103  
   by hand of Manasseh, 1055  
   last words of, 1056 n96  
   martyrdom of, 1057 n103  
   describing self as "servant of Lord," 805 n880 (*see also* servant of Lord)  
   and Hezekiah, 1049  
   I. rebuking Hezekiah for showing heathen holy ark and tablets, 1051  
   and Manasseh  
   I. condemned to death by M., 1054  
   kinship between, 1058 n105  
   and Obadiah  
   prophesying in 71 tongues, 1058 n104  
   receiving permission from Great Sanhedrin to prophesy, 1058 n104  
   one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)  
   one of four men described in Bible as creatures of God, 1071 n13  
 as prophet, 612 n242 (*see also* Isaiah: and Obadiah)  
   call of, 1042 n32  
   of consolation, 1041  
   distinguished above all other prophets, 1042-1043 n32, 1058 n104  
   first vision of, 1042 n29  
   as great a prophet as Moses, 1058 n104  
   one of four prophets appointed to proclaim punishment of descendants of Lot, 214



Isaiah (*cont.*)as prophet (*cont.*)

- one of martyred prophets, according to Josephus, 1078 n30
- one of three great prophets, 1039
- prophetic spirit of, received from God, 1043 n32
- retaining consciousness in moments of prophecy, 612 n242
- respected by Ahaz, 1043
- son of Amoz, 1042 n25
- swallowed up by tree, 1055, 1057 n103
- Tamar as ancestress of, 344
- time of activity of, 1041 n20, 1042 n25
- touched with live coal
  - by Michael, 1043 n36
  - as punishment for slandering Israel, 1041
- vision of, 1043 n36
  - compared with that of Ezekiel, 1043 n36

## Isaiah, Book of

- Hezekiah and associates as editors of, 1071 n15
- Hezekiah having copies made of, 1051

## Iscah ("the seer")

- another name for Sarah, 178 n38, 178

## Ish

- name Adam gave to self, 66

## Ishah

- name given by Adam to wife, 66

## Ishbi

- slain by David and Abishai, 934

## Ishbosheth

- descendant of Benjamin, 317
- uncle of Mephibosheth, 929 n79

## ishim (angels)

- made of snow and fire, 504

## Ishmael

- accompanying Abraham and Isaac, 226
- banishment of, 219-221
  - reasons for, 220 n214
- birth of, prophesied to Hagar, 201
- as blemished offspring of Abraham, 406
- catching locusts and sacrificing them to idols, 220 n211
- children of, refusing Torah, 593
- circumcision of, at 13 years, 251
- committing adultery and murder, 220 n211

Ishmael (*cont.*)

- death of, 273
- entering Paradise as pious man, 248 n317 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)
- Esau conspiring with, 273
- fever of, 220
- as firstborn, 219, 222, 226
- first legitimate child of father, 268 n89
- going to land of Canaan, 222
- and Isaac
  - Ishmael persecuting Isaac, 220 n211
  - Ishmael taunting Isaac for being circumcised on eighth day, 251
- quarrels between, 219
- journeying to Abraham in land of Philistines with family, 222
- one of six men given name by God before birth, 201
- punishment of idolatry of, 221 n216
- repentance of, 237, 248 n317
- returning to wilderness with family, 221
- rule of, represented by ram, 198
- to turn to path of righteousness, 199
- wife/wives of
  - beating children and cursing Ishmael, 221
- Gigit as, 113 n42
- I. divorcing, 221-222
- two, 221-222

## Ishmael, R.

- as ideal of beauty, 60 n24

## Ishmael b. Jose, R.

- censured by Elijah for prosecuting Jewish thieves and criminals, 1006

## Ishmaelite kingdoms

- 12 in number, 672 n399

## Ishmaelites

- causing death of 80,000 priests who passed Nebuchadnezzar, 1086
- identified with Arabs, 206 n136
- and Joseph
  - Ishmaelites buying J. from Midianites, 333, 336
- making alliance with sons of Esau against sons of Jacob, 416
- merchandise of
  - bags of perfumery, 337
  - pitch and skins of beasts, 337
- as merchants, 337

Ishmaelites (*cont.*)

- one of things God repented of creating, 141 n20
- territory of, invaded by Tarshish, 369
- treatment of Jews by, 221 n215

## Ishmar

- Babylonian myth of descent of, into hell, 15 n56

## Isidao

- identified with Zerori, 315 n292

## Islamic legends

- about Aaron's rod, 731 n600
- of angel of death assuming form of ram, 307 n275
- explaining how Moses buried self, 833 n952
- about Joseph eating little during famine, 370 n190
- through misunderstanding, stating that Adam donated 40 years to David, 912 n12
- about Solomon's knowledge of languages of animals, 958 n34
- story of Muslim pasha dropping sword into David's tomb, 942-943
- story of travels of Elijah and R. Joshua b. Levi, 1015 n94
- of two Pharaohs in Joseph's time, 370 n195
- See also* Muslim ideas; Muslim writers

## Israel (angel)

- belonging to order of hayyot, 17 n70 (*see also* hayyot, holy)

## Israel (kingdom)

- division of, into Judah and Israel, 981-982
- northern kingdom (Israel)
  - renouncing house of David and loyalty to sanctuary, 984 n10

## Israel (land)

- allotment of, 851-853
  - time required for, 852
  - by Urim and Thummim, 852
- conquest of, 845-853
  - lasting seven years, 852 n46
- division of, 814
  - carried out by decision of Urim and Thummim, 852-853 n47
- lasting seven years, 852 n46



Israel (*cont.*)

Israelites commanded by God not to enter Palestine by force, 716

one of six gifts as reward for observance of Sabbath, 572, 584 (*see also* gifts; Sabbath: observance of)

shown to Moses by God, 813-814

*See also* Holy Land; Palestine

Israel (nation; people)/Israelites and Aaron

Israelites convinced of priesthood of A., 728-731

Israelites loving A. more than Moses, 740

all of nature mourning for, 1081 n39

and angels

angels chanting praise of Israelites, in second heaven, 505 n117

angels consulting Israel about secrets, 775

Israelites preceding angels in praising God, 17 n66, 562

Israelites preferred to angels, 13

Israel's superiority to angels, 775 n774

apostasy of, God as cause of, 998 n18

assigned to God, 164

as bride, receiving gifts, 591, 601 n200

as bridegroom, 601-602 n200

called "sons of rebellion," 802

censuses of, 636-638 (*see also* census[es] of Israel)

at arrangement into camp divisions, 636

at distribution of promised land, 636

occasions on which censuses taken, 636-637

after people returned from exile, 637

in reign of David, 637

by Saul when he set out against Amalek, 637

by Saul when he set out against Nahash, 637

at time of Exodus, 636

after worship of golden calf, 636

children of

born same night as Moses, saved on account of his merits, 479 (*see also* Moses: merits of; merits)

Israel (*cont.*)

children of (*cont.*)

born same night as Moses, 600,000 in number, 479

male

born in fields and taken care of by angels and God, 472

growing long hair to hide selves, 472

suckling on pebbles, 472

swallowed by earth until grown, 472

sacrificed to idols of Egyptians, 467

coming originally from Babylon and returning there, 984 n15

commanded to observe Abrahamic covenant, Sabbath, and commandment against idolatry, 596

compared to Adam, 713

compared with stone, 1169 n159

confessing sins on Mount of Judah, 868

and creation

Israel taken into special consideration when man created, 48

defended against accusations, 2

as descendants of Shem, 158 n68

described as eagle, 1155-1156

described as flock of sheep, 859, 860 n20

described as vineyard, 774-775

desiring a king, 895

devoted to study of Torah during time of Samuel and Saul, 988 n35

different kinds of trees symbolizing Israel, 1175

distinguished from all other nations, 773

by circumcision, 773

by costume, 773

by food, 773

by token on doorposts, 773

divided into groups by Moses, 684-685

divisions of, three in number (priests, Levites, laymen), 592

dominion of Persians over, as result of victory of Dabiel (angel) over Gabriel, 1116 n7

duplicity of, 602 n204

and Edom

Edom's unbrotherly attitude toward Israel, 735-737

Israel (*cont.*)

and Edom (*cont.*)

Israel forbidden by God from bringing war against Edomites, 736

Israel to gain control of Edom in world to come, 755

in Egypt

bondage of Israel in Egypt, 465

duration of, 86 years, 552

as punishment for Abraham going to Egypt, 191 n66

as punishment for Abraham's lack of trust in God, 199 n110

as punishment for Abraham's making scholars engage in war, 986 n22

revealed to Abraham, 199

children used as building material, 880

enmity of Egyptians toward Israel, 470 n12

reasons for, 465, 466 n5

God lending ear to prayer of Israelites, as source of 16th of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127

God performing 13 deeds for, 640

God sending three deliverers (Moses, Aaron, Miriam), 648

increased suffering of, 520-523

Israelites addressed by God in Egyptian language, 602-603

Israelites losing honored position with death of Joseph, 466 n3

Israelites not affected by plagues, 530

Israelites oppressed by Egyptians, 521

Israelites profiting from first plague by selling water, 527

Israelites redeemed from Egypt, 509-511, 538-540

on account of merits of Amram and Jochebed, 474 n30 (*see also* merits)

on account of merits of fathers, 499 n106 (*see also* merits)

for sake of Jacob, 256 n35

Israelites refusing to listen to Aaron and five sons of Zerah, 489



Israel (*cont.*)in Egypt (*cont.*)

Israelites speaking Egyptian language, 602-603

Israelites speaking Hebrew language, 604 n209

Israelites to be punished for demanding flesh to eat, 573

Israelites upset with Moses and Aaron on account of increased oppression, 521

Israelites walled up in Pharaoh's building projects, 521

latter years of, 497-499

number of

increasing despite Pharaoh's plan, 467, 468

60 myriads minus 3,000, 636

remarriages of, 475

response of Israelites to

Pharaoh's order that male children be drowned, 473

600,000 in number, 465

suffering beginning after death of Levi, 465

envied by Balaam, 819

existence of world depending on, 1151-1152 n107

and Exodus (*see also* Egypt;

Exodus; *and under* Moses)

five tokens granted to Israel after Exodus, 565

Israelites cured of their diseases in Exodus, 542

Israelites each clothed in purple by angels at Exodus, 688

majority of Israelites of Exodus afflicted with defects and diseases, 675

and wealth of Egyptians

Israelites capturing public treasure of Egyptians at Red Sea, 541

Israelites going out from Egypt with treasures, 397, 543 n232, 543 n233

Israelites receiving private wealth of Egyptians, 540-541

fathers of, sons of Jacob, 433

as firstborn son of God, 83

first commandment to, to release Hebrew slaves in seventh year, 523 n168

and four kingdoms

Israel becoming subject to four kingdoms through worship of Peor, 779 n786

Israel (*cont.*)

given three gifts on account of merits of Aaron, 573, 574 n113 (*see also* merits)

given title "elect of God" in Scripture, 912 n1

and God

God as King of, 824 n918

God making covenant with Israel for sake of Torah, 634

God proclaiming redemption for, source of seventh of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127

Israel as possession of God, 596, 636

Israel judged by God during day, 214 n170

Israel loved by God on account of Jacob, 256 n35

Israel receiving three crowns from God, 670 (*see also* crown[s])

Israel thought of by God before creation of world, 772

like student and master, 775

testify to singular sanctity of Sabbath, 82 n98

having evil tongues during time of Samuel and Saul, 988 n35

having three national duties after entering Holy Land (establish monarchy, annihilate Amalek, build Temple), 897 n47

Hebrew language reserved for, 164

history of

as Moses' last words to Joshua, 815 n902

recounted by Ahasuerus, 1156-1157

recounted by Balaam, 772-773

shown to Moses by God, 814

and Holy Land

Israel entering Holy Land, 256

n35

Israel entering Holy Land, as source of Nineteenth

Benediction, 1127

Israel's exclusive right to Holy Land, legends explaining, 322 n316

identified with Logos by Philo, 301 n253

idolatry of (*see also* idolatry: of Israelites)

in Egypt, 535

Israel (*cont.*)idolatry of (*cont.*)

Israel addicted to idolatry during reign of Ahab, 988 n35

Israel free from idolatry during reign of Josiah, 949 n12

Israel free from idolatry for only 20 years, 949 n12

Israelites seduced to idolatry by Midianite priest Aud, 871

Israelites worshipping Beelzebub, 872

Jeroboam and Jehu seducing Israel to idolatry, 403

as innocent dove, 198

as kingdom of priests, 598 n191

as lamb for atonement, 401 n345

merits of (*see also* merits) redemption on account of, 499

n106

Metatron (identified with Michael) as guardian angel of, 201

n248

Michael and Gabriel as guardian

angels of, 166 n91

Michael as guardian angel of, 817

Moab's hatred of, 792

moon as symbol of, 25 n100

and Moses

Israelites blessed by M., 586-587, 819-826

Israelites divided into groups by M., 684-685

Israelites lamenting for M., 826-827

Israelites learning art of writing from M., 484 n67

Israelites receiving three gifts on account of merits of M., 573, 574 n113

names of, 70 in number, 649 n348

nations to bow down twice before, 236 n267

officers of

appointed as judges, 779

seven myriads, 8,600 in number, 779

one part of

carried off by cloud, 1089 n56

exiled to Daphne near

Antiochia, 1089 n56

praising God and passing through Red Sea, as source of 15th

of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127

and promised land

Israelites commanded by God

not to enter Palestine by force, 716



Israel (*cont.*)

and proselytes, dispute between  
 about offerings, 717  
 prosperity of, under Saul, 637  
 protectors of, 2  
 punishment of  
 by Amalek, 578  
 coming from sanctuary, 730  
 for idolatry under  
 Nebuchadnezzar, 1134 n15  
 for lack of reverence for ark, 892  
 for permitting Micah's idolatry,  
 881  
 for rebellion, lasting 40 years,  
 714-715  
 for whoredom with Moabite  
 women, 779  
 reaping abundant harvest in land  
 of Philistines, as source of  
 ninth of Eighteen Bene-  
 dictions, 1127  
 redemption of  
 on account of God's mercy, 499  
 n106  
 on account of Israel's own mer-  
 its, 499 n106  
 on account of merits of pious of  
 future generations, 499 (*see*  
*also* merits)  
 in future days, on 15 Nisan, 541  
 Israel to be redeemed by  
 Messiah for sake of Jacob,  
 256 n35  
 Israel to be redeemed through  
 Moses, 428  
 from "kingdoms" in time to  
 come, 543 n235  
 reasons for, 499 n106  
 as reward for faith of Abraham,  
 198, 536 n201  
 for sake of merits of five pious  
 men (*see also* under pious:  
 men), 502  
 rewarded for trust in God, 562  
 rewarded for trust in Moses, 562  
 and Rome, two nations destined to  
 be hated by all, 252  
 as ruler of world, 162 n82  
 and Sabbath  
 Israel as spouse of Sabbath, 606  
 testify to unity of God, 82 n98  
 saved on account of merits of  
 fathers, 1163 (*see also* mer-  
 its)  
 and Shema  
 Israelites reciting Shema upon  
 awakening and retiring,  
 775

Israel (*cont.*)

at Sinai  
 Israelites dying and being  
 revived at revelation of  
 Torah, 603  
 Israelites preparing for revela-  
 tion, 598-599  
 Israelites receiving three gifts,  
 612 n240 (*see also* gifts)  
 Israelites warned to remain pure  
 for three days before revela-  
 tion, 612 n239  
 sins of, 564 n58  
 sacrifices to atone for, 198  
 two to atone for (selling Joseph,  
 worshipping golden calf),  
 659  
 songs of, ten in number, 562  
 strength of, lying in Torah, 773  
 n765  
 sullenness of, 565  
 sun and moon shedding light for  
 sake of, 1154  
 teaching art of writing to  
 Phoenicians, 484 n67  
 thornbush as symbol of, 502  
 to be scattered over all the earth,  
 816  
 and Torah  
 Israelites not receiving Torah  
 until having performed  
 three ceremonies (circumci-  
 sion, baptism, sacrifice),  
 598  
 Israelites repeating Torah four  
 times, 634  
 Israelites rewarded with heavenly  
 gifts for accepting Torah,  
 602 n204 (*see also* gifts)  
 Israelites studying Torah morn-  
 ing and night, 775  
 necessary for existence of world,  
 1166 n143  
 Torah as bride of Israel, 820  
 Torah offered to Israel, 596-598  
 transgressing all Ten Command-  
 ments by worshipping idols  
 of Micah, 883 n131  
 tribes of, divisions of, 553 n23  
 troubles of, 272  
 two commandments for, as reward  
 for Abraham's humility,  
 196, 198 n106  
 uniqueness of, testified to by God  
 and Sabbath, 82 n98  
 universe depending on preservation  
 of, 1161 n122

Israel (*cont.*)

warfare of  
 Ammonites and Moabites com-  
 mitting four acts of hostil-  
 ity against Israel, 214  
 against Arameans, 850-851,  
 1031 n22  
 attack of Amalek on Israelites  
 as punishment for desecration  
 of Sabbath, 580 n136  
 as punishment for lack of  
 faith and neglect of Torah  
 and laws, 577-580  
 Israelites advancing against  
 Amorites, 716-717  
 Israelites defeated by Amorites,  
 717  
 Israelites defeating Sihon, 751-  
 752  
 Israelites indifferent to spoils of  
 battle against Og, 756  
 n698  
 Israelites learning of miracle of  
 leveling mountains from  
 two lepers, 750 n662  
 Israelites not to wage war against  
 Moabites, 758  
 Israelites proclaiming peace to  
 city before waging war, 792  
 Israelites saved by Name from  
 mountain wielded by Og,  
 756 n695  
 Israelites saving Egyptians in  
 battle against Zepho, 465  
 Israelites wounded but not killed  
 by enemies, 717-718 n556  
 against kings of Canaan, 845-  
 846, 850 n44  
 lasting seven years, 851  
 against Midian  
 each tribe sending 2,000 war-  
 riors, 795 n850  
 humane warfare of Israelites,  
 795  
 Israelites chosen by lot for  
 war, 794  
 Israelites hiding from war, 794  
 observance of religious  
 statutes during, 797  
 return from, 797-798  
 Moab and Midian allied against  
 Israel, 759  
 war against, in time of Jephthah,  
 214  
 in wilderness (*see also* wilderness)  
 at Arnon, 749-750  
 four opinions of what Israelites  
 should do in wilderness,  
 551



Israel (*cont.*)in wilderness (*cont.*)

- garments given to Israelites by angels in wilderness, 544 n242
- ingratitude of Israelites recounted by God, 713-714
- Israelites attempting to return to Egypt, as second of ten temptations, 565
- Israelites compared to Abraham, 569
- Israelites complaining to Moses about lack of water after death of Miriam, 732
- Israelites criticizing Moses, 586
- Israelites denying God, 712
- Israelites desiring flesh to eat, 699
- Israelites desiring to make idol, one of ten temptations, 757
- Israelites dying after eating quail, 699
- Israelites entering wilderness with no provisions, 542
- Israelites lamenting without cause on 9 Av, 712
- Israelites murmuring against God and Moses, 693, 747
- Israelites murmuring against God and Moses at Zalmonah, 749
- Israelites murmuring for flesh, one of ten temptations, 757
- Israelites not bringing any sacrifices, 709 n519
- Israelites not permitted any meat except sacrificial, 709 n519
- Israelites preparing graves on 8 Av, 715
- Israelites protected in camp by cloud, 579
- Israelites punished by death on 9 Av, 715
- Israelites punished by serpents at Punon, 747-749
- Israelites punished for rebellion, 713-716
- Israelites rebelling against Moses after punishment of Korah, 729
- Israelites receiving water from rock on account of merits of those in Cave of Machpelah, 732 (*see also* merits)

Israel (*cont.*)in wilderness (*cont.*)

- Israelites singing song of praise to well in valley of Arnon, 749-750
- Israelites throwing stones at cloud of glory, 712, 713 n538
- Israelites trusting in Lord, 542
- Israelites waiting for Miriam to be healed, 703
- Israelites wanting Dathan and Abiram to be leaders, 712
- Israelites wanting to return to Egypt, 712, 746
- Israelites wanting to stone Moses for lack of water, 737
- lack of faith of Israelites, 565
- number of Israelites dying each year, 733 n604
- ten temptations of, 757-758
- world created for sake of, 48, 1165
- and worship of golden calf, 619-622
- Israelites doomed to suffering on account of worship of golden calf, 620
- Israelites losing power over angel of death by worshipping golden calf, 620
- Israelites suffering death by water as result of worshipping golden calf, 628 n282
- years of disfavor of, 716-717
- See also* Jew(s); Jewish people; Judaism
- Israel (person)
  - as beloved of God, 168 n4
  - called "man," 145 n28
  - as friend of God, 168 n4
  - and God, Israel disobeying, 2
  - Laban as archenemy of, 760
  - name, meaning of, 301-302 n253
  - name of heavenly being spoken of by geonic mystics, 301 n253
  - as name of patriarch, 256-257 n35
  - one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)
  - right of, to Cave of Machpelah, legends explaining, 322 n316
  - sons of
    - Jacob's 12 sons as, 305 n259
    - Jewish people as, 305 n259
    - meaning of, 305 n259

## Israel Baal Shem Tov, R.,

- as founder of Ḥasidim, 982 n5
- unrivaled in Ḥasidic Kabbalah, 1019

Israelites. *See* Israel (nation; people)/Israelites

## Issachar (son of Jacob)

- age of, at death, 122 years, 442
- ancestor of tribe of wise, 343 n61
- blessing of, by Jacob, 408
- born as reward for *dudaim*, 440
- compact of, with Zebulun, 289 n194
- death of, 442
- descendants of
  - to be members of Sanhedrin, 408
  - to be scholars who fix calendar, 408
- fifth son of Leah, 287
- inventing explanation about what happened to Joseph, 339
- marriage of, to daughter of Jobab, grandson of Eber, 348
- name
  - inscribed on standard of tribe of Judah, 685
  - meaning of ("a reward"), 287, 433, 441
  - one of weak among sons of Jacob, 396 n324
  - rewarded for devotion to Torah, 408
- sons of, 433
- testament of, 440-442
- to join Judah in camp in east, 685
- to make Mizraim like Sodom, 385
- to study Torah, 408
- tribe of
  - blessed by Moses, 822
  - confessing to consulting idols, 855
  - devoting itself to study of Torah, 287
  - donkey as emblem of, 688-689 n447
  - elders from (Zuar, Uzza, Igal, Palti, Othniel, Haggi), 696
  - flag of, black with picture of sun and moon, 688
  - house of instruction and Great Sanhedrin to be located in, 822
  - known for wise words, 433
  - as mathematicians, 434 n5
  - Moses' psalm of, 823
  - observing Torah, 433
  - prince of (Nethanel), 679



Issachar (*cont.*)  
 tribe of (*cont.*)  
   renowned for wisdom and erudition, 664, 666  
   sages consulted by Ahasuerus belonging to, 1137-1138 n38  
   sapphire as stone of, 651, 856  
   as scholars, 410 n391, 434 n5  
   significance of dedication offering of, 666-667  
   spy representing (Igal), 705  
   to be tribe of scholars and judges, 822  
   warfare of  
     attacking Edom to north, 321  
     battle of Sartan, 315  
     against Ninevites, 313  
   wise counsel of, 343 n61  
 Istehar  
   placed in constellation of Pleiades, 136  
   pronouncing Ineffable Name, 136  
   and Shemhazai, 136  
 Italy  
   identified with Kittim, 419 n425  
 Ithamar  
   in charge of sons of Gershon and Merari, 683  
   and Eleazar  
     priestly line of, coming to power with Eli, 891  
     sitting at left side of Joshua, 827  
   helping Moses to draw up accounts for construction of Tabernacle, 656 n369  
   one of 77 pious men in Israel, 629 n287 (*see also under* pious: men)  
   one of ten just men in Israel, 628  
 Ithiel  
   another name of Solomon, 857 n13, 946 n2  
   meaning of ("God with him"), 945  
 Ithra  
   father of Amasa, 917  
   as Ishmaelite, 918 n45  
 ivory  
   Og's bed fashioned from, 755  
 Ivvim  
   name, meaning of, 137  
   as offspring of fallen angels and Cainite women, 137  
 Iyar (month)  
   1st of  
     Moses instructed to take census of men over 20 fit to go to war, 679

Iyar (*cont.*)  
   15th of  
     provisions of Israelites in Exodus lasting from 15 Nisan to, 570 n89  
   Amalek conquered in, 580 n149, 1151  
   *See also* date  
 Iye-abarim  
   Israelites continuing hostile actions against God at, 749  
 Izhar  
   name, meaning of ("heat of noon"), 718  
   one of four sons of Kohath, 718  
   son of Kohath, 805  
   war of Amalek against Israelites in, 580 n149

## J

Jabal (son of Lamech and Adah)  
   first man to erect temples to idols, 112  
 Jabbok (brook)  
   Jacob at, 294, 295  
   J. and stranger taking animals across ford of, 298-299  
 Jabel  
   name as corruption of Jabin, 869 n71  
 Jabesh-Gilead  
   punishment of inhabitants of, 884 n135  
   women of, as virgins, 884 n135  
 Jabez  
   entering Paradise alive, 73 n67, 862 n30 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)  
   identified with Othniel, 860, 861 n23  
   name, 860 n19  
 Jabin (king of Hazor)  
   enemy raised up against Israel by God, 867  
 Jachin  
   elder from tribe of Simeon, 696  
 jackals  
   hating their young, 41-42 n181  
 jackdaw bird, 109 n31  
 Jacob, 251-293  
   abandoned by prophetic spirit, 372 n198  
   and Abraham  
     J. as deliverer of A., 401 n347  
     parallels between, 319 n303  
     superiority of J. to A., 256 n35

Jacob (*cont.*)  
   and Abraham and Isaac (*see* Abraham: and Isaac and Jacob)  
   and academy (*see* Jacob: and Bet ha-Midrash)  
   addressing wolf, 341  
   age of  
     at marriage, 84 years, 282, 284 n160  
     when blessed, 63 years, 266  
     when coming to Egypt, 130 years, 395  
   altars erected by, 305  
     at Bethel 316, 317 n299  
   and angel(s)  
     angels being J.'s army, 303  
     angels increasing flocks of J., 290  
     intervention of angels, 291 n209  
   J. injured by angel, 302, 305 n258  
   J. receiving blessing from angel with whom he wrestled, 819  
   J.'s encounter with angels, described in Prayer of Joseph, 306 n273  
   J. wrestling with angel, 279, 298-302  
     angel as Esau, 304, 306 n273  
     angel as Esau's guardian angel, 300 n247  
     angel as Metatron, 300 n248  
     angel as Michael, to remind Jacob of tithes, 301 n251  
   J. healed by sun of injury sustained in encounter with angel, 303  
   legend that it took place in heaven, 301 n250  
   question of angels concerning J., 279 n134  
   appointed by God to be lord of all earthly things, 307 n280  
   and Arameans, covenant between, 293  
   arriving at gates of heaven, source of third of Eighteen Benedictions, 1126  
   Balaam recounting history of, to Pharaoh, 482  
   and Beer-sheba  
     J. going to, to hew down cedars planted by Abraham, 392  
     J. going to, to learn will of God, 275-276  
   believing Samson to be Messiah, 408



Jacob (*cont.*)

believing self doomed to Gehenna because Joseph died while he was still alive, 342  
 as beloved of God, 168 n4  
 and Bet ha-Midrash, 324 n318 (*see also* academy; Bet ha-Midrash)  
 J. as head of, 394 n310  
 of Shem and Eber, 255, 261  
 birth of, 251-255  
 circumcised, 253, 327 (*see also* covenant[s]: sign of)  
 and blessing  
 blessings given by J.  
 to Asenath, 425  
 to Dan, referring to Samson, 879 n116  
 to grandchildren, 404  
 not without blemish, 819  
 blessings received by J.  
 from Abraham, 255, 256  
 from angel with whom he wrestled, 819  
 due to merits of Joseph, 327  
 from holy spirit, 267  
 from Isaac, 264-268, 272, 819  
 as prophecy of Israel's history, 268 n95  
 from Michael, 300  
 relation of J.'s blessings to blessings of Moses, 824 n912  
 brothers of, 425-426  
 burial of  
 body embalmed, 328, 412  
 body not decaying, 411-412 (*see also under* corpse[s])  
 in Cave of Machpelah, 414  
 description of bier, 412, 413  
 Esau slain during, 272  
 funeral cortège, 413, 414 n413  
 grandchildren not allowed to touch bier, 414 n405  
 in Holy Land, 328  
 J. giving instructions for transporting bier, 411  
 casting self down before Eben Shetiyyah, 278  
 cautioning against  
 blasphemy, 411  
 idolatry, 411  
 celebrating Feast of Tabernacles, 317 n299  
 celebrating Feast of Weeks on 15th of third month, 393 n301  
 charms protecting, five in number, 300 n247

Jacob (*cont.*)

children of, 285-290 (*see also* Jacob: sons of; Jacob: daughters of)  
 as twins, 285  
 circumcision of, by Isaac, 255 n26  
 conceived first, 254 n22  
 countenance of (*see* Jacob: face of)  
 courage of, 275  
 daughter(s) of, 285, 287  
 meaning of, 343 n69  
 punished for arrogance of J., 305  
 and David  
 J. giving D. 28 years, 912 n12  
 death of, 411-415  
 at age 33 years younger than age of Isaac at death, 395  
 in Egypt, 328  
 by kiss of Shekinah, 411  
 delaying to fulfill vow, 316-317  
 descendant(s) of  
 having to serve descendants of Esau, 258  
 J. deserting, 263 n69  
 on list of king's pensioners in Egypt, 398 n333  
 Mordecai as, 269, 1139  
 number of, at time of J.'s death, 60 myriads, 415 n417  
 number of, to be like dust of earth, 277 (*see also* dust: of earth; sand of seashore; star[s]: of heavens)  
 describing self as  
 angel of God, 256 n35  
 servant of Lord, 805 n880 (*see also* servant of Lord)  
 and Dinah  
 J. refusing to let D. marry Esau, 307  
 dream of, 328  
 concerning world history, 277  
 in Egypt  
 arrival of J., 394-396  
 J. asking not to be buried in Egypt, 399, 401 n345  
 J. going to Egypt, 328  
 no illness in Egypt while J. there, 396 n329  
 and Ephraim  
 J. giving birthright to E., 404  
 J. instructing E. in Torah, 402  
 and Ephraim and Manasseh, 403  
 erecting booths, 317 n299 (*see also* Tabernacles: Feast of)  
 and Esau  
 birth of, 251-255

Jacob (*cont.*)

and Esau (*cont.*)  
 birth order of, 254 n22  
 compared to wolf and ram, 303  
 dialogue between, about resurrection, 257-258  
 disagreeing about material world and world to come, 252  
 division of two worlds of, 307 n276  
 E.'s anger at J., 271  
 E.'s campaign against J., 319-322  
 exchanging messages, 295-296  
 J. appropriating birthright of E., 327  
 J. buying birthright from E., 257-259  
 motive for, 259 n44  
 J. buying E.'s share in Cave of Machpelah, 304, 414  
 J. charged by angel with holding E.'s heel at birth, 372 n198  
 J. giving E.  
 only animals unfit for sacrifices, 305 n270  
 presents for a year, 304  
 red wine, 259 n45  
 tenth of all his wealth, 303  
 J. hated by E. on account of blessing, 271  
 J. insisting that E. leave Palestine, 320  
 J. opening eyes and smiling (though dead) when E.'s eyes fell on his knees, 414  
 J. owing honor to older brother, E., 295, 298 n233  
 J. preparing for encounter with E., 302-303  
 J. refusing to let Dinah marry E., 307  
 J. saved from E. by premature darkness, 277  
 J. securing birthright by cunning, 258  
 J. sending animals as offering to E., 298, 298 n245  
 J. striking E. mortal wound with arrow, 321  
 meeting between, 295-298, 302-307  
 prayer of J. to God concerning war with E., 297  
 quarreling in womb, 252, 253-254 n13  
 resemblance of E. to J. as reason for sons of J. not killing E., 415 n422



Jacob (*cont.*)

and Esau (*cont.*)  
 youth of, 255-257  
 evil inclination not affecting, 412  
   (*see also* evil inclination)  
 as example for David, Ahab,  
   Joram, and Mordecai, 342  
 face of  
   heavenly being identified with,  
     301 n253  
   man in moon having, 256 n35  
   in Merkabah, 279 n134  
   representing human race, 279  
     n134  
 and family  
   settling in land of Goshen, 396  
   traveling to Egypt, 391-392  
 family of  
   all males married in, 395  
   counting of members of, 396  
     n321  
   70 in number, 392, 393 n305,  
     395, 396 n321  
   69 in number, 395  
 famine averted from Egypt on  
   account of merits of, 412  
 famine in time of, 328  
 favored by younger Haggadah  
   (nationalistic), 256 n35  
 fearing  
   dangers of travel, 376 n224  
   that he would be made an idol,  
     400, 401 n345  
   to make war with Esau, 296-297  
 feeling sin of Israel more than  
   other patriarchs, 256 n35  
 first to  
   make vow, 278  
   tithe, 278, 280 n144, 301 n251  
 fleeing to house of Eber, 271  
 foreseeing that descendants of  
   Ephraim and Manasseh  
   would seduce Israel to idol-  
   atry, 403  
 foretelling history of future to  
   sons, 672 n390  
 fulfilling first of Ten  
   Commandments, 593  
 glorification of, 257 n35  
 as goal of creation, 401 n347  
 and God  
   conversation of, concerning sins  
     of progeny, 261  
   God appearing to J.  
     on day after Feast of Weeks,  
       393 n301  
     at time of death, 402  
   God's blessing of J., 266-267

Jacob (*cont.*)

and God (*cont.*)  
 J. addressing God as Shaddai,  
   378 n232  
 J. invited by God to make  
   request, 198 (*see also* God:  
   actions of, inviting . . .)  
   promise of God to J.  
     concerning land, 277  
     to bring Israel out of Egypt,  
       509-510  
 going to Timna, 315  
 good deeds of, rewarded by divi-  
   sion of waters of Jordan  
   River for Joshua, 844 n14  
 guardian angel of  
   Michael as, 254 n15, 406 n373  
   mightier than Esau's guardian  
   angel, 254 n15  
 happy years of, 328 n2  
 and Haran  
   compression of time in J.'s jour-  
   ney to, 278 (*see also*  
   earth[s]: contracting of dis-  
   tances of; distance; time:  
   compression of)  
 J. bringing good fortune to, 290  
 J. rolling stone from well in,  
   278  
 miracle of water supply of, 278,  
   279  
 miracles on way to, 276-280  
 hardships of, 327  
 and Hebron  
   J. dwelling in, 328 n2  
 height of, 265  
 hewing 12 stones, one for each  
   son, 341-342  
 hiding at house of Eber for 14  
   years, 271, 276 n127  
 household of, census of, 636  
 as ideal man, 279 n134  
 as ideal of beauty, 60 n24  
 identified with  
   Israel (nation), 254 n15  
   man in moon, 279 n134 (*see*  
     *also* man in moon)  
 and idols  
   J. destroying teraphim and idols  
     taken from Shechem as  
     spoil, 316  
   J. hiding foreign gods under  
     terebinth, 857 n5  
 image of, on Solomon's throne,  
   968  
 impatience of  
   contrasted with resignation of  
   Abraham, 378 n228

Jacob (*cont.*)

inheritance of  
   world to come, 322 n316 (*see*  
     *also* Jacob: portion of)  
 and Isaac  
   I.'s blessing of J. depending on  
     pious deeds, 270  
   J. causing terror to I., 271 n101  
   J. deceiving I. into giving bless-  
     ing of firstborn, 265-268  
   J. giving I. wine to drink, 266  
   J. grieving for I., 415 n422  
   J. leaving house of I., 272-274  
   J. resembling I., 396 n327  
   J. summoned to I. from Bethel,  
     316  
 and Isaac and Judah  
   as judges in case of Tamar, 345  
 and Israel (nation)  
   Israel loved by God on account  
     of J., 256 n35  
   Israel to be redeemed by  
     Messiah for sake of J., 256  
     n35  
 at Jabbok, 294-295  
   J. and stranger taking animals  
     across ford of Jabbok, 298-  
     299  
 and Joseph  
   dwelling together for 17 years,  
     399  
   Jacob abandoned by holy spirit  
     during grief for Joseph,  
       405 n366  
   Jacob bowing before Joseph,  
     394, 401 n348, 401 n355  
   Jacob giving Joseph coat of  
     many colors, 330  
   Jacob imparting to Joseph mark  
     of true redeemer of Israel,  
       516  
   Jacob learning of Joseph's fate,  
     391-394  
   Jacob mourning for Joseph, 340  
   Jacob receiving word of Joseph's  
     death on 10 Tishri, 341  
   Jacob reciting Shema when  
     Joseph embraced him,  
       394  
   Jacob revealing to Joseph teach-  
     ings of wisdom and mys-  
     tery of Messianic age, 409  
     n382  
   Jacob sending Joseph to inquire  
     after welfare of brothers,  
       331, 334 n23  
   Jacob suspecting Joseph was  
     alive, 341-342



Jacob (*cont.*)and Joseph (*cont.*)

Jacob suspecting Joseph was in Egypt, 370

Jacob teaching Joseph

Halakhot, 328  
instruction and knowledge, 327

three signs to distinguish true redeemer of Israel, 405

Jacob telling Joseph to forgive brothers, 411

Jacob understanding meaning of Joseph's dream, 330

Joseph swearing oath to Jacob, 400, 401 n351

last conversation of, as halakhic discussion, 393 n296

parallels between, 327-328

accompanied by angels, 328  
appropriating older brother's birthright, 327

becoming servant, 327

being shepherd, 327

blessed with wealth, 328

body embalmed, 328

born circumcised, 327 (*see*

*also* covenant[s]: sign of)

childless mother, 327

dying in Egypt, 328

exacting promise from sons to bury him in Holy Land, 328

favorite son, 327

going to Egypt and ending famine, 328

great things announced to, in dream, 328

hated by brethren, 327

living in land of stranger, 327  
marrying wives outside Holy

Land, 328

master of, blessed by God, 327

mother of, bearing two sons, 327

providing sustenance for each other, 328

remains carried to Holy Land for burial, 328

separated for 17 years, 399

serving for sake of woman, 327

suffering in birth of, 327

journey of, to Jerusalem, 318

and kid of goat

being deceived by means of, 343 n62

Jacob (*cont.*)and kid of goat (*cont.*)

deceiving father by means of, 343 n62

and Laban, 281-282

covenant between, 293, 921, 922 n57

J. fleeing before L., 290-292

J. leaving L. with flocks of 600,000 animals, 290

J.'s agreement with L. concerning marriage to Rachel, 282

J.'s anger at L., 284

J. spending every night with L. reciting Psalms, 277

last wish of, 399-401

leading lament for Israel, 1081 n39

and Leah (*see* Jacob: marriage of; *also* Leah: and Jacob)

letter of, to ruler of Egypt, 377-378  
marriage of, 282-284

J. not to take wife from Canaanites, 272

J. resolving to marry only four daughters of Laban, 293

woman from family of Abraham, 262, 293

to Leah and Rachel, 283

to Rachel, 284

to two sisters, and laws of Torah, 284 n167

merits of (*see also* merits)

Abraham delivered from fiery furnace for sake of, 400

famine averted from Egypt on account of, 412

Jordan River becoming dry for, 256 n35

Laban blessed on account of, 1027 n6

man created on account of, 256 n35

one of five charms to protect him, 300 n247

and water in Haran, 278

world created for sake of, 400

and Methuselah's sword, 132 n63  
missionary activity of, 327

as model of companionableness, 278

and Moses

comparison between, 280 n153, 837

J. appearing at death of M., 837

J. prophesying rise of M., 411  
relation of J.'s blessings to bless-

ings of M., 824 n912

Jacob (*cont.*)and Moses (*cont.*)

superiority of M. to J., 837  
as most prominent of patriarchs, 168 n2

mourning

for Joseph, 340

for seven days, 415

for 70 days, 412

for 22 years, 342

name (*see also* Israel [person])

changed to Israel, 203 n122, 317-318

by angel, 306 n273

given by God, 253, 255 n28

interpretation of, 255 n28

J. learning from Michael that name would be changed, 300

meaning of, 269

numerical value of, 253

spelling of, 257 n35

as nation owning Torah, 52

neck of, turning hard as ivory, 303  
not desiring wealth, 304

not expressing untruth, 268 n91  
not fulfilling vow made at Bethel

promptly, 316

observing Sabbath

according to Bible, 307 n280

J. rewarded for, with unbounded possessions, 280 n139

observing Torah, 298 n234

one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)

one of eight whose corpse not touched by worms, 939 n128 (*see also under* corpse[s])

one of five pious men for sake of whose merits Israel to be redeemed, 502 (*see also under* pious: men)

one of four men described in Bible as creatures of God, 1071 n13

one of seven patriarchs of world, 968 (*see also* patriarchs)

one of seven pillars of earth, 9 n28 (*see also under* world[s])

one of seven pious men erecting altar, 771 (*see also under* pious: men)

one of seven with overlapping life terms, 982 n4

one of shepherds who assist Messiah on left, 100 n142



Jacob (*cont.*)

one of six righteous men who drew Shekinah back from six heavens, 473  
 one of ten just men in Israel, 628  
 as originator of Feast of Tabernacles, 317 n299  
 in Paradise  
   J. unworthy to pronounce blessing over wine in, 939  
 parting waters of Jordan River, 275  
 piety of, warding off attack by Amorites, 311 n289  
 piety of sons of, 390 n280  
 pleading with God for Israel, 1079-1080  
 portion of (*see also* Jacob: inheritance of)  
   Cave of Machpelah and title to Holy Land, 320  
   future as, 307 n276  
 pouring out drink offering on pillar, 318  
 prayer of  
   for deliverance from Canaanites, 311  
   J. instituting daily evening prayer, 1128 n58  
   J. not permitting self to be interrupted in prayer, 1176 n172  
   for sons on second trip to Egypt, 377  
 as priest on earth, 299  
 promise of, at Bethel to give God a tenth of everything, 402  
 promised unbounded possession of land, 277  
 prophesying  
   redeemer to take them out of Egypt, 411  
   rise of Moses, 411  
   that Joshua would lead Israel into Holy Land, 404  
 prophetic spirit of, 318, 370, 391, 405 n367  
   J. abandoned by, 372 n198  
 protecting Asenath with amulet, 348  
 punishment of  
   for calling Esau "lord," 298 n246  
   for calling self lord of all earthly things, 305  
   for causing terror to Isaac, 271 n101  
   death of Rachel as, 317 n293  
   for delaying to set aside tithes for God, 305 n267

Jacob (*cont.*)

punishment of (*cont.*)  
   for excessive self-confidence, rape of Dinah as, 307  
   for ingratitude, dying 33 years younger than Isaac, 395  
   for not promptly fulfilling vow made at Bethel, 316  
 pursued by Eliphaz and Esau, 274-276  
 at Raamses, giving blessings to sons, 406  
 and Rachel (*see also* Jacob: marriage of; Rachel: and Jacob)  
   death of R. as punishment of J., 317 n293  
   J. marrying R., 284  
   J. meeting R. at well, 278  
   J. proposing marriage to R., 282  
   J. serving another seven years for R., 284  
   J. weeping for kissing R., 281  
 Raphael as teacher of, in Kabbalah, 505 n117  
 and Rebekah  
   J. weeping at command of R., 295  
   R.'s blessing of J., 262, 267  
 receiving instruction and knowledge from Shem and Eber, 327  
 reciting Shema when Joseph embraced him, 394  
 remnant of, as dew from Lord, 266  
 represented as lame man on monument of Jebusites, 921 n51  
 returning home at age 50 after death of Shem, 262  
 reunited with Joseph and Simon in Egypt, source of tenth of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127  
 revelation to, that Reuben repented and did penance for trespass against J., 400  
 at right hand of God, 450 (*see also* God: right hand of)  
 robbed of possessions by Eliphaz, 281, 282 n156  
 saved from hot spring, 275  
 seed of (*see* Jacob: descendant[s] of)  
 setting up pillar of stone  
   made from 12 pillars, 277-278  
   in token of revelation of God at Bethel, 318  
 and Shechem  
   J. coming to Shechem in peace, 304

Jacob (*cont.*)

and Shechem (*cont.*)  
   J. concerned to lay out boundaries so that Sabbath not violated, 304-305  
   J. entering Shechem on Friday, 304  
   J. establishing bathhouses, marketplaces, and mine in Shechem, 305, 307 n280  
   J. journeying to Shechem after Succoth, 304  
   J. settling in area around Shechem, 314  
   war of J. against Shechemites, 406 n377  
 and Shekinah  
   J. addressed by Shekinah, 392  
   J. dying by kiss of Shekinah, 411  
   J. visited by Shekinah, 406  
   Shekinah dwelling in Israel for sake of J., 256 n35  
   Shekinah over bed of J., 400  
 as shepherd, 501 n109  
 shortcomings of, 298 n240  
 shown  
   attempt of Nebuchadnezzar to burn three in fiery furnace, 277  
   destruction of Temple, 277  
   earthly and heavenly Jerusalem in dream, 816  
   earthly and heavenly Temple in dream, 816, 817 n905  
   encounter of Daniel with Bel, 277  
   revelation of Mount Sinai, 277  
   Temple in its glory, 277  
   translation of Elijah, 277  
 signing bill of sale with Yod-He, 305  
 as sixth of seven pious men, 682 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 slaying  
   Adoram the Edomite, 320-321  
   Laban, king of Aram, 314  
   Pasusi, king of Sartan, 314  
   Pirathon, king of Hazor, 314  
   Shebir, king of Mahanaim, 314  
   Zerori, king of Shiloh, 314  
   sometimes called "the pious," 256 n35  
 sons and grandsons of, becoming fathers when young, 395  
 sons of, 285-290, 433-450 (*see also* Jacob: children of)  
   abandoned by prophetic spirit, 372 n198



Jacob (*cont.*)

sons of (*cont.*)  
 angry with Shechem, 308  
 appointed chief shepherds by Pharaoh, 398 n330  
 blessed by God, 394 n309  
 born with twin sisters, 285, 319 n309  
 bringing wolf to Jacob, 341  
 burying Esau, 321  
 and Canaanite women, 348 n95  
 compared to animals, 470 n18  
 conflict with Esau and followers, 414  
 covenant of God with, 433  
 deserving to be called fathers of Israel, 432 n2, 433  
 difference of ages of, 288 n170  
 driven by famine to find food in Egypt, 189  
 eating meat from flocks, 334  
 exacting tribute from sons of Esau, 321  
 excommunicating Asher, 393 n293  
 great sin of, never forgiven, 336 n50  
 inheritance of, 157  
 J. sending sons out to look for body of Joseph, 341  
 J. sending sons to Egypt for food, 370-371, 372 n198  
 keeping idols taken as spoil from Shechem, 316  
 making war on Edom, 321  
 mourning for J., 412  
 names of, 433-435  
   meaning of, 288 n170  
 praised for filial devotion and chastity, 434 n2  
 repenting of selling Joseph, 339, 340  
 second journey to Egypt of, 376-379  
 sent to look for body of Joseph, 341  
 shedding blood, 316  
 as sons of Israel, 305 n259  
 spending Sabbath with Isaac, 824 n912  
 stature and handsomeness of, 371  
 swearing oath not to tell Jacob what they had done with Joseph, 339  
 trying to overtake Midianites to ransom Joseph, 339  
 wanting to kill Asenath, 348

Jacob (*cont.*)

sons of (*cont.*)  
 at war with sons of Esau, 415-417  
   wives of, 347-349  
 special virtue of, truth, 715 n543  
 staying in Succoth  
   for year, 304  
   for 18 months, 307 n277  
 as stern father, 434 n1  
 strength of, 278, 280 n152, 427 n432  
   uprooting oak tree with one hand, 316, 317 n297  
 studies of, 256 n29  
 studying Torah under guidance of Eber, 276 n127  
 suffering with descendants, 736 n621  
 and Tabernacle  
   J. preparing necessary building material for, 648 n344  
 taking 12 stones from altar of Akedah, 277  
 telling man's character by looking at him, 393 n307  
 telling tribes to help one another, 411  
 tenfold blessing of (dew of heaven; fatness of earth; corn and wine; Torah and commandments; peoples serving him; nations bowing down to him; rule of, over brothers; mother's sons bowing down to him; all who curse him being cursed; all who bless him being blessed), 266  
 ten generations from J. to Samson, 879 n111  
 tents of, referring to houses of study, 777 n780  
 as third patriarch, 263 n69  
 throne of, as greatest in Paradise, 508 n118  
 and tithe  
   consecrating Levi to God, 300, 403  
   J. as first to tithe income, 278, 280 n144, 301 n251  
   of sons of J., 405 n364  
   and Ten Days of Penitence, 280 n144  
 title of  
   J. given title "elect of God" in Scripture, 912 n1  
 to rule over all in the end, 252

Jacob (*cont.*)

uprightness of, 256 n29  
 viewing famine as punishment for holding Esau's heel at birth, 372 n198  
 virtues coming to, through Isaac, 253 n1  
 virtues coming to Joseph through Jacob, 253 n1  
 vision of ladder of, 277, 279 n134  
 voice of, 736  
   prophecy concerning, 266  
 wages requested as speckled and spotted goats and black sheep, 290  
 water in well rising to top for, 280 n153  
 wealth of, 328  
 welcoming righteous into Paradise, 431 n444  
 in womb, saved from Samael by Michael, 252  
*See also* Israel (person)  
 Jacob, R.  
   Elijah revealing mysteries to, 1018  
 Jacobel (Semitic god), 256 n35  
 Jael  
   approaching fleeing Sisera, 868  
   beauty of, 60 n24, 868, 871 n85  
   J. as one of four women of perfect beauty, 941 n132  
   God's name attached to name, 871 n85  
   one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271  
   praying for sign, 868  
   and Sisera  
     J. giving Sisera milk of her breast, 871 n85  
     J. slaying Sisera with spike, 869  
 Jahath  
   one of five other names of Bezalel, 642  
 Jahel, 857 n13  
   one of other names of Solomon, 857 n13  
 Jahshun (judge)  
   identified with Nahshon, 864 n31  
 Jahzeel (son of Naphtali)  
   name, meaning of, 434  
 Jair (son of Manasseh)  
   burned by angel Nathaniel, 873  
   commanding seven men to be burned, 873  
   elder from tribe of Joseph, 696  
   equalling Abimelech in wickedness, 872



Jair (*cont.*)

- erecting altar to Baal, 872
- forcing people to worship Baal, 872
- of keen mind, 847 n23
- perishing in battle of Ai, 845, 847 n23
- piety and learning of, 41 n175
- as successor of Abimelech, 872
- to be slain by inhabitants of Ai, 41 n175

## Jakeh

- another name of Solomon, referring to ruling whole world, 945, 946 n2

## Jaldabaot

- as progenitor of shame, 106 n17

## Jambres (son of Balaam)

- name, 489, 491-492 n80

*See also* Jannes: and Jambres

Jambri. *See* Zambri

## Jamin (elder from tribe of Simeon), 696

## Jannes (son of Balaam), 489, 520 n161

- and Jambres
- accompanying Balaam on journey, 766
- archmagicians of Egyptians, 559-560
- assisting Balaam in flying, 795
- battling with angels over fate of Egyptians, 559-560
- defeated by Michael, 560
- drowned in Red Sea, 767 n740
- dying at Red Sea, 622 n265
- killed shortly after fashioning golden calf, 796 n854
- punished by Metatron, 562
- responsible for fashioning golden calf, 767 n740
- name of, 491-492 n80

## Janus

- succeeding Zepho as king of Kittim, 420

## Jaoel (archangel)

- as chief of seraphim, 200 n114
- holding male and female Leviathans in check, 31 n127
- leading Abraham to highest heaven, 200 n114
- See also* angel(s), general: types

## Japheth

- allotment of lands, islands, languages, and writing of, 157
- as ancestor of Greeks, 244 n314
- blessed by Noah, 154

Japheth (*cont.*)

- Greek language called "beauty of Japheth," 244 n314
- inheritance of (north), 157
- joining 45 kings of Persia and Media against Joshua, 850
- Persians descended from, 1144 n68
- rewarded for covering Noah, 154
- rewarded for pious act toward Noah by descendant Ahasuerus being found worthy to marry Esther, 1144 n68
- son of Noah, 146 n30
- sons of, as "uncles" of Israel, 244 n314
- taking care of reptiles, 148 n37

## Jared

- father of Enoch, 126
- grandson of Enosh, 119
- life span of, 132 n64
- name, meaning of, 132 n64

## Jashub (king of Tappuah)

- gathering force to fight against Jacob, 310
- slain by Judah, 314

## Jashub (son of Issachar)

- name, meaning of ("the returning one"), 433

## jasper

- changing color, as did Benjamin's feelings, 652
- Hebrew name *yashpeh* ("there is a mouth"), 652
- precious stone of tribe of Benjamin in breastplate of Aaron, 652

javelins, 314. *See also* weapon(s)

## Jazer (city)

- name, meaning of ("help"), 799

## Jebus

- inhabitants of, as children of Heth, 235

## Jebusite language

- ascribed to Japhethic system of writing, 158 n72

## Jebusites

- and Abraham, covenant between, 293
- David buying Jerusalem from, 920
- as descendants of Abimelech, king of Gerar, 921 n51
- given money for Jerusalem, 920, 921 n53
- land provisionally granted to, 157

Jebusites (*cont.*)

- legend that they settled in Cyprus after being driven out of Palestine by David, 922 n53
- received Jerusalem from Abraham in exchange for Cave of Machpelah, 920
- spies reporting that they dwell in mountains, 710

## Jeconiah

- living off charity on account of David's curse of Joab, 946

## Jediael (elder from tribe of Benjamin), 696

## Jedidiah

- name, meaning of ("friend of God"), 945
- as real name of Solomon, 945

## Jehoahaz

- anointed as king, 1060
- carried off into exile by Pharaoh, 1060
- one of five kings anointed, 893 n30
- son of Jehu, as repentant sinner, 1038 n5
- successor of Josiah, 1060

## Jehoash

- one of eight rulers of Davidic dynasty to die violent death, 933 n107
- one of kings anointed with holy oil, 658 n371
- throne of Solomon carried to Egypt by Pharaoh Necho in time of, 969

## Jehoiachin

- blessed with distinguished posterity, 1061
- Daniel as son of, 1096 n76
- exile under, 1096 n76
- identified with exile of scholars, 1063 n132
- freed from prison by Evil-Merodach, 1063 n134, 1108 n116
- giving keys of Temple back to God, 1061
- giving self over to Babylonians, 1061
- installed as king of Judah by Nebuchadnezzar, 1060
- kept in prison for 27 years, 1063 n134

## Jehoiada

- crowns and embellishments of Hebrew letters transmitted to, by Ahijah, 892 n24



Jehoiada (*cont.*)

death of  
     Joash becoming wicked after,  
     1038  
 high priest, hiding child Joash in  
     Holy of Holies, 1037  
 installing Joash as king of Judah,  
     1037  
 married to Jehosheba, 1037  
 son of Benaiah, 1037  
 transmitting crowns and embellish-  
 ments of Hebrew letters to  
 prophets, 892 n24

## Jehoiakim

body of, tattooed with names of  
     idols, 1060  
 committing incest, 1060  
 conquered by Nebuchadnezzar,  
     1060  
 death of  
     J. as one of eight rulers of  
     Davidic dynasty to die vio-  
     lent death, 933 n107  
     J. slain by Nebuchadnezzar,  
     1060  
     peculiar, 1062 n128  
 exile under, 1096 n76  
 garments of two substances min-  
 gled together, 1060  
 performing epipost upon self, 1060  
 ruling after Jehoahaz carried into  
 exile, 1060  
 story of skull of, 1060  
 tattooed "membrum" with Name  
 of God, 1062 n125

## Jehonadab

one of seven men refusing to  
 worship Baal, 872-873

## Jehoram

exacting interest from Obadiah,  
     1027 n7  
 slain by Jehu's bow for taking  
     interest, 1027 n7  
 wicked king of Judah, 1000

## Jehoseph

spelling of name of Joseph on  
     ephod of Aaron, 650  
*See also* Joseph: name of

## Jehoshaphat, 986-989

association of, with house of Omri,  
     988 n27  
 concerned about purity and sancti-  
 fication of Temple, 987  
 condemned to death by God for  
 joining Ahab in war, 988  
     n30  
 consulting prophet Elisha, 986-  
     987

Jehoshaphat (*cont.*)

gracious toward scholars, 987  
 humility of, 988 n28  
 modesty of, 986  
 ordinance of, about ascending  
     Temple Mount, 987  
 prayer of, that God would defeat  
     enemy, 986 n21  
 saved from death by prayer, 988  
     n30  
 son of Asa, 986, 988 n28  
 suffering of, having atoning power,  
     989 n43  
 supplying food to Elijah during  
     famine, 994  
 trusting in God, 987  
 war with Ammonites under, 397  
 wealth of, 986

## Jehosheba (wife of Jehoiada), 1037

## Jehu (king), 1037

anointed king by Jonah, 1031,  
     1037  
 descendant of Joseph, 330  
 descendant of Manasseh, 317  
     seducing Israel to idolatry, 403  
 dynasty of, lasting five generations,  
     1037, 1038 n5  
 Jonadab censured for friendship  
     with, 590 n173  
 killing king of Judah, 986  
 last legitimate king of northern  
     kingdom, 1032 n25  
 not opposing worship of Baal at  
     Bethel, 1037  
 not promoting peace, 1038 n4  
 of tribe of Manasseh, 1032 n25

## Jehudah (fourth son of Leah), 285

name, meaning of ("thanks unto  
 God"), 285, 407  
 name of Judah, 407  
*See also* Judah

## Jekuthiel

name Moses called by mother, 480  
 one of seven men refusing to wor-  
 ship Baal, 872-873

## Jemimah

name, meaning of  
     "beautiful as the day," 462 n37  
     "day," 461

oldest daughter of Job, 461  
 playing cithern, 461

## Jephthah, 874-877

Abdon as successor of, 876  
 considered one of least worthy  
     judges by Haggadah, 874  
     n101  
 earth refusing to receive corpse of,  
     877 n109

Jephthah (*cont.*)

horrible death of, 876  
 leading war against Getal (king of  
     Ammonites), 874-875  
 legend that he did not sacrifice  
     daughter, 877 n109  
 offspring of father and woman of  
     another tribe, 874  
 punished for slaying Ephraimites,  
     877 n109  
 vow of  
     not according to law, 876, 876  
     n108  
     to sacrifice whatever came out of  
     door of house, 875  
     war against Israel in time of, 214  
 Jephuneh (father of Caleb), 861 n25  
 Jered  
     name Moses called by Miriam, 480  
 Jeremiah, 1067-1072  
 activity of, in work of redemption,  
     1022 n114  
 as author of  
     Book of Lamentations and Book  
     of Kings, 1071 n15  
     Epistle of Jeremiah, 1071 n15  
     Paralipomena of Jeremiah, 1071  
     n15  
 and Baruch  
     confusion between, 1083 n42  
     fate of, 1082-1083 n42  
     as "former prophets," 1124  
     n36  
     and other pious men com-  
     manded to leave Jerusalem,  
     1076 n28  
 birth date of, 9 Av, 1070 n11  
 body of, disinterred by Alexander  
     and buried in Alexandria,  
     1083 n42  
 born circumcised, 1067 (*see also*  
     covenant[s]: sign of)  
 brother of Susannah, 1070 n10  
 Buzi as name of, 1084 n42, 1101  
     n93  
 call of, 1068  
 cast into lime pit, 1069  
 concealing sacred objects in cave,  
     1091  
 condemning alliance with Egypt,  
     1068  
 consecrated as prophet while in  
     womb, 1071 n13  
 contemporary of Zechariah and  
     Huldah, 1068  
 crocodiles disappearing from Nile  
     through prayers of, 1083  
     n42



Jeremiah (*cont.*)

descendant of  
   Joshua and Rahab, 844 n12,  
   847 n22, 1059, 1067  
   one of eight priests descended  
   from Rahab, 1093 n65  
 different versions of martyrdom of,  
   1083 n42  
 different versions of whereabouts  
   during exile, 1083 n42  
 entrusted with sanctuary and all  
   contained in it, 1091  
 evil treatment of, as cause of  
   Babylonian exile, 1072  
   n16  
 and Ezekiel  
   J. as father of E., 1101 n93  
   relationship between, 1093 n65  
 and Ezekiel and Baruch  
   fixing calendar outside Holy  
   Land, 1083 n42  
 falsely imprisoned for treason,  
   1069  
 first public appearance of, during  
   reign of Josiah, 1068  
 as Hazzan in congregation of  
   pious, 1013 n84  
 as immortal in Christian legend,  
   1093 n66  
 as infant, 1070 n12  
 Job compared with, 463 n39  
 journey of, to Babylon, 1081-  
   1085  
 legend of stoning of, connected to  
   legend of stoning of Onias,  
   1091 n58  
 marching with captives beyond  
   Bari, 1086 n47  
 mocked by Israelites, 1084-1085  
   n44  
 modesty and humility of, 1071  
   n13  
 and Moses  
   J. as prophet like M., 1070  
   n13  
   parallels between, 1070 n13  
 name, meaning of, 1070 n12  
 naming of, 1070 n12  
 and Nebuchadnezzar  
   as childhood friends, 1077 n29  
   J. favoring peace with N., 1068  
   N. charging Nebuzaradan to be  
   kind to J., 1081-1082  
 one of eight postexilic prophets,  
   991 n56  
 one of four men described in Bible  
   as creatures of God, 1071  
   n13

Jeremiah (*cont.*)

one of four pious men addressing  
   unbecoming words to God,  
   628 n284 (*see also under*  
   pious: men)  
 one of four prophets appointed to  
   proclaim punishment of  
   descendants of Lot, 214  
 one of martyred prophets, accord-  
   ing to Josephus, 1078 n30  
 one of "two witnesses," 1071 n13,  
   1083 n42  
 perpetuating memory of Josiah in  
   Lamentations, 1059  
 prophecy of, foretelling return of  
   Jews to Palestine at end of  
   70 years, 1111-1112  
 prophesying for 40 years, 1070  
   n13  
 prophesying 70 years of exile, 1131  
   n5  
 as prophet like Moses, 1070 n13  
 returning to Palestine to remain  
   there, 1082  
 sending Babylonian women away,  
   1090-1091  
 sent from Jerusalem to Anathoth,  
   which resulted in fall of  
   Jerusalem, 1074-1075  
 speaking as infant, 1083 n42  
 speaking to patriarchs in Double  
   Cave, 1078  
 stoned by Egyptians, 1083 n42  
 story of meeting with Plato in  
   Egypt, 1083 n42  
 telling people God will sustain  
   them in study of Torah as  
   with manna, 572  
 two tears of, becoming two foun-  
   tains, 1086 n47  
 writings of, 1071 n15  
 zealous for honor of God and  
   honor of people, 999 n25  
 and Zedekiah  
   J. falling on evil times in reign  
   of Z., 1068  
   J. released from prison by Z.,  
   1069

## Jeremiah legends

and Ben Sira legend, 1083 n42

## Jeriah (son of Shelemiah), 1069

## Jericho

battle against, 849-850  
 captured by Joshua, 845-846  
 conquered on Sabbath, 845  
 curse against one who would  
   rebuild Jericho, 993  
 declared anathema, 845

Jericho (*cont.*)

descendants of Jethro settling  
   around, 589  
 healing of waters of, second of 16  
   miracles performed by  
   Elisha during life, 1025  
 relinquished by descendants of  
   Jethro to tribe of Judah,  
   589  
 to be overthrown through sound of  
   trumpets, 775  
 walls of, disappearing into bowels  
   of earth, 847 n22  
 Jeroboam (king), 982-984  
   able to interpret Leviticus in 103  
   ways, 1058 n109  
   abolishing three pilgrimage festivals  
   and Sabbaths, 984 n9  
   attempting to incite war against  
   Judah and Jerusalem, 983  
   bringing about division between  
   Judah and Israel, 983  
   building fortress at Sarira, 982 n2  
   claiming kingship on account of  
   Ephraimitic descent, 984  
   n9  
   cruelty of, in war, 984-985  
   as descendant of  
   Ephraim, 317  
   seducing Israel to idolatry,  
   403  
   Joseph, 330  
   son of Micah, 882  
   Zarua as mother of, 982 n2  
 as disciple of Ahijah, 982  
 early history of, 982 n2  
 great learning of, 988 n34  
 having respect for Amos, 1040  
 idolatry of, 882, 984 n9  
   J. introducing worship of Baal,  
   332  
   J. setting up golden calves, 947,  
   982  
   J. tricking people to worship  
   idols, 982-983, 984 n9,  
   995  
 one of three kings not to have  
   share in world to come,  
   908 n100, 1058 n109 (*see*  
   *also under* world to come)  
 pride of, leading to destruction,  
   982  
 as scholar, 982, 983 n6  
 and Solomon  
   conflict between, 981, 981 n1  
   staying in Egypt with Sousakim  
   until Solomon died, 982  
   n2  
 as wicked king, 988 n34



## Jerusalem

angels chanting glory of, in third heaven, 505 n117  
 beginning of creation, 10 n39  
 beloved of God, 168 n4 (*see also* beloved of God)  
 bought by David from Jebusites, 920  
 burial places in, 1121 n32  
 capture of, by Babylonians, 1074-1078  
 center of earth, 89 n109, 128 n60  
 center of Palestine, 10 n39  
 city of fallen angels, 89 n109  
 conquest of, brought about by God, 1077 n29  
 corpses removed from, 1121 n32  
 destruction of  
   beginning of 70 years of exile counted by Jeremiah, 1129  
   consequences of, 86 n105  
 earthly and heavenly, 816  
 as friend of God, 168 n4 (*see also* friend of God)  
 given title "elect of God" in Scripture, 912 n1  
 God's plan to destroy, 947  
 heavenly  
   in fourth heaven, 5  
   in pseudepigraphic literature, 280 n141  
   to descend on four mountains: Tabor, Hermon, Carmel, and Sinai, 595 n184  
 lament over, 1078-1081  
 Melchizedek as king of, 196  
 mount of, as site of Akedah, 232-233 n253  
 name  
   meaning of, 197 n102, 231  
   named after Solomon, 232 n253  
   Salem, renamed by Melchizedek, 232 n253  
   70 names of, 649 n348  
 prominent inhabitants of, exiled to Spain, 1087 n53  
 promised to Jebusites by Abraham in exchange for Cave of Machpelah, 920  
 as provocation to God, 949 n12  
 relation of Gehenna to, 15 n55  
 remaining impregnable as long as Baruch present, 1092  
 Israel brought daily offering, 1076  
 Jeremiah present, 1074, 1076 n28  
 Michael protected it, 1073, 1074 n25

Jerusalem (*cont.*)

remaining impregnable as long as (*cont.*)  
   Shekinah dwelled there, 1076 n27  
 story of walls sinking before Babylonians, 1077 n29  
 surrounded by high wall, 920  
 well of Beer-sheba to supply water to, in Messianic time, 260  
 young men of, charms of, 1085 n45  
 Jesse (father of David), 911  
   age at death, 400 years, 911  
   also known as Nahash ("serpent"), 912 n7  
   one of eight princes to rule over world in Messianic time, 911  
   one of four to lead sinless life, 473, 911, 912 n7 (*see also* sinless life)  
   one of greatest scholars, 911  
   one of princes who assist Messiah, 100 n142  
   piety of, 912 n7  
   slain by Moabite king, 911  
 Jesus (son of Mary)  
   Balaam as cryptic name for, 761 n722, 796 n855  
   contrasted with Jesus, son of Sira, 1084 n42  
   death of  
     death of Balaam resembling, 796 n855  
   as descendant of priestly family, 470 n19  
   descent of, into hell, influencing Kabbalah, 508 n118  
   identified with Logos and Israel, 301 n153  
   identified with Michael by Church Fathers, 301 n248  
   Jonah as prototype of, 1035 n38  
   and Joshua  
     claims made for Joshua applied to Jesus, 706 n505  
     name of Jesus as form of Joshua, 706 n505  
   Melchizedek as type of, 197 n104  
   performing miracles with Ineffable Name, 11 n39  
   as second Adam, 63 n35  
   as "son of God," 1100 n90  
   story of worship of infant by Magi, 244 n311  
 Jesus (son of Sira)  
   contrasted with Jesus, son of Mary, 1084 n42

## Jether

one of seven names of Jethro, 493  
 Jethro, 493-494, 583-585  
 advisor to Pharaoh, 471 n21, 497 (*see also* Balaam; Job; Reuel)  
   fleeing to Midian, 497  
 in Amalek's army, 585 n151  
 converting kinsmen and compatriots to true God, 589  
 descendants of  
   called "families of scribes," 590  
   called Tirathites, Shimeathites, and Suchathites, 590  
   dedicating lives to study of Torah, 590  
   dwelling in Jericho for 480 years, 589  
   enjoying legal status as pure-blooded Israelites, 590 n170  
   inheriting J.'s devotion to Torah, 590  
   moving to wilderness to Jabez to house of instruction, 590  
   not to be destroyed by Israel in Messianic time, 776  
   relinquishing Jericho to tribe of Judah, 589  
   rewarded for piety, 590  
   settling in land of Jericho, 589  
   supporting selves by making pottery, 590 n172  
 descent of, from Abraham, 496 n91  
 devising test with burning coal for three-year-old Moses, 483  
 having seven daughters, 493  
 love of Torah of, 588  
 miracle at arrival, manna falling at noon, 588  
 and Moses  
   hospitality of J. to M., 902 n60  
   J. consenting for M. to return to Egypt, 515  
   J. criticizing M. as judge, 585-586  
   J. imprisoning M. for ten years, 497 n96  
   J. returning from M. to native land, 588-589  
   J. throwing M. into pit, 495  
   time of J.'s arrival at M.'s camp, 585 n151, 585 n156  
 piety of, 588  
 position of, in Pharaoh's court, 585 n151  
 as priest of idols in Midian, 493, 783



Jethro (*cont.*)

- as proselyte, 585 n156
- most excellent, 588
- reward of, 588-591
- sent home before revelation at Sinai, 591
- seven names of (*also* Jether, Hobab, Keni, Reuel, Heber, Putiel), 493
- transformation of, into God-fearing man, 493
- turning to God of Israel, 583, 584
- welcomed by Moses, Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, 584

Jethro-Reuel. *See* Reuel

## Jeush (son of Esau), 321

## Jew(s)

- Ahithophel as great sage of, who lost this world and world to come, 798 (*see also under* world to come)
- Babylonian, suffering at hands of Mazdic priests in Sassanide empire, 1116 n7
- called Children of Lord of All, 1179
- counting of
  - forbidden by Jewish law, 638 n314
- See also* census(es) of Israel
- denunciation of, by Haman before Ahasuerus, 1152-1155
- designated as son of covenant, 248 n318
- edict of annihilation of Ahasuerus against, 1155-1158
- fleeing from Shushan, 1132
- and Gentiles
  - Jews distinguished from Gentiles by odor of dead bones, 339 n58
  - Jews forbidden to eat food prepared by Gentiles, 752 n674
  - not distinguished by God in terms of rewards and punishments, 508 n118
- God revealing Self to, during day, 279 n131
- indicted by Satan, 1158-1161
- Korah as wealthy man of, perishing on account of wealth, 798
- lifestyle of, caricatured by Haman, 1152-1153
- as masters of other nations, 1176, 1178 n190
- oppressed in Hebron, 249
- during persecution of Hadrian, 255 n24

Jew(s) (*cont.*)

- returning to Jerusalem under leadership of Ezra, 1119
- Samson as great hero of, meeting death on account of strength, 798
- sinful conduct of, at banquets of Ahasuerus, 1159
- subject to kings of Edomites, 324
- wealth of, at time of erection of Tabernacle, 651 n354
- Yemenite, cursed by Ezra to live in poverty, 1115 n5

*See also* Judaism

Jew (*Yehudi*)

- meaning of, 434 n4, 1141 n60

## jewel(s)

- on altar of heavenly sanctuary, 1
- graven with Name of Messiah, 1
- See also* jewelry; precious stones; *and under individual precious stones*

## jewelry

- bracelets for Rebekah, foreshadowing tablets with Ten Commandments, 240
- earrings of Shechemites, idols on, 317 n295
- Joseph wearing, 367
- nose ring for Rebekah, 240
- precious stones as, 240
- See also* jewel(s); precious stones; *and under individual precious stones*

## Jewish

- meaning of term, ix

Jewish law. *See* law: Jewish

## Jewish legends

- distinguishing features of, viii
- flying in, 796 n853
- infants speaking in, 359 n134 (*see also under* infants)

## Jewish people

- as sons of Israel, 305 n259
- See also* Israel (nation; people)/Israelites; Jew(s); Judaism

## Jezebel, 990

## and Ahab

- J. as cause of A.'s suffering, 990
- J. as co-regent with A., 990
- J. as wife of A., 987
- J. attaching unchaste images to A.'s chariot, 990
- J. leading A. into idolatry, 987
- J. offering to idol A.'s daily increase in weight in gold, 990
- J.'s responsibility for A.'s wicked life, 990, 990 n48

Jezebel (*cont.*)

- daughter of king, 990 n51
  - daughter of priest, 990 n51
  - death of, 990
  - good qualities of, 990
  - one of two reigning queens in Jewish history, 990 (*see also* Athaliah)
  - persecuting prophets, 1067
- Jezer (son of Naphtali)
- name, meaning of, 434
- Joab, 924-927
- as avenger of brother Asahel, 905, 945-946
  - city captured by, called Rabbah of children of Ammon, 926 n77
  - conquering Amalekite capital by infiltrating inside, 925
  - crime of, murder of Abner and Amasa, 945
  - and David
    - D.'s curse of J., transferred to Solomon's offspring, 946
  - J. and Israelites bringing Amalekite king back to D., 926
  - J. as D.'s first general, 924, 945
  - punishment of J., as deathbed instruction of D., 945
  - war of, against Edom, 926 n77
  - death of, 947 n10
  - devising plan to enter Jerusalem, 920
  - exterminating all Edomites, 926 n77
  - father of Joel, 947 n10
  - hand loosed from sword by blood of unborn baby, 926
  - lack of trust in God of, 927 n77
  - name, meaning of, 926 n76
  - pious descendants of, 946 n4
  - president of Sanhedrin, 924
  - president of the academy, 945
  - referred to as Tahchemonite, 926 n76
  - seeking protection of Temple, 945
  - and story about father and mother and 12 children, 924-925
  - and story of blacksmith, 925
  - trial of, 947 n8
  - as true Jewish hero, 924
- Joah
- supporting Shebnah against Hezekiah, 1048
- Joash, 1037-1039
- becoming wicked after death of Jehoiaada, 1038



Joash (*cont.*)

claiming to be god, 1104 n100  
 defeating Arameans, 1031 n22  
 evil end of, 1038  
 hidden in Temple as child, 1039 n8  
 ingratitude of, 1039 n16  
 installed as king of Judah by  
   Jehoiada, 1037  
 kept in hiding as child in Holy of  
   Holies by high priest  
   Jehoiada and wife  
   Jehosheba, 1037  
 name, meaning of, 1039 n9  
 one of four kings claiming to be  
   gods, 1039 n16  
 one of kings anointed with holy  
   oil, 658 n371, 893 n30  
 undertaking restoration of Temple,  
   1037-1038

## Joauv

form of name of, 184 n49  
 god made out of silver, 183

## Job, 451-463

abode of  
   in Karnaim, 458 n21  
   in Magdala of Dyers, 458 n21  
 afflicted with  
   boils, 457  
   50 plagues, 458 n25  
   leprosy, 457  
 afflictions of, as punishment for  
   advising Pharaoh to enslave  
   Hebrews, 471 n21  
 better than generation of Tower of  
   Babel, 453 n5  
 blasphemy of, 463 n38  
 blessed by God, 461  
 chastity of, 462 n36  
 children of, appearing in heaven,  
   460  
 compared with David, 463 n39  
 compared with Jeremiah, 463 n39  
 corpse of, left unburied for three  
   days, 461  
 as counsellor of Pharaoh, 470, 471  
   n21, 497 (*see also* Pharaoh:  
   four advisors of)  
   advising enslavement of  
   Hebrews, 471 n21  
   advising killing all male children  
   of Hebrews, 468, 471  
 date of, 452 n3  
 daughters of  
   meaning of names of, 462 n37  
   singing hymns, 461  
   transformed by magic ribands  
   into higher beings, 461

Job (*cont.*)

death of, 461  
   leaving not one pious man  
   among Canaanites, 706  
 denying resurrection of dead, 452  
 described by God as His servant,  
   805 n880 (*see also* servant  
   of God)  
 destroying idol near house, 455  
 fate of, compared with fate of  
   David and Solomon, 463  
   n39  
 as fictitious character, 453 n3  
 friends of, 459-460 (*see also* Bildad;  
   Elihu; Eliphaz; Zophar)  
   having pictures of one another  
   in crowns, 459  
   holy spirit poured over, by God,  
   462  
   as kings, 460 n31  
   names of, preserved, 462  
   receiving signs of Job's distress,  
   459, 460 n30  
   rewarded for sympathy, 462  
   spared punishment of hell, 462  
   speeches of, 452  
   thinking that Job's fate was pun-  
   ishment for sin, 460  
 and God  
   J. believing God made mistake,  
   452  
   J. murmuring against God, 451  
   J. serving God out of fear, 453  
   n4  
 as God-fearing one, 397 (*see also*  
   God-fearing one)  
 grandson of Esau, 451  
 heeding warning of plague of hail,  
   531  
 hospitality of, 224 n223  
 identified with Jobab, 325 n325,  
   453 n3, 455, 456 n14  
 identified with Uz, son of Nahor,  
   456 n14  
 image of, on throne of Solomon,  
   968  
 as Jew, 452 n3  
   in late Haggadah, 453 n3  
 as Jewish sage, 462 n38  
 as king of Edom, 324, 455  
 life span of, 210 years, 462 n35  
 making sin offering on behalf of  
   friends, 461  
 marriage of, to Dinah, 451, 461  
 and monument of Arabic general  
   Ayyub in Constantinople,  
   453 n3  
 as most pious Gentile, 451-452

Job (*cont.*)

one of 18 called "servant of God,"  
   451, 452 n2 (*see also* ser-  
   vant of God)  
 one of four God-fearing men,  
   1026  
 one of seven patriarchs of world,  
   968  
 one of three who lived to see new  
   world, 462 n35 (*see also*  
   Daniel; Noah)  
 other men buried with, according  
   to custom of Amorites, 707  
   n509  
 and patriarchs, 451-453  
   early legend considering J. con-  
   temporary of patriarchs,  
   453 n3  
   J. compared with patriarchs,  
   451, 453 n4  
 and poverty, 462 n33  
 prayer of, being pure, 455 n12  
 prophecy and, 452-453 n3  
 as prophet, 761, 762 n727  
 punishment of, delayed three years,  
   458 n21  
 receiving girdle from God, 461  
 recognizing God of own accord,  
   184 n49, 456 n13 (*see also*  
   God: recognizing of own  
   accord)  
 restoration of, 460-463  
 revelations of God to, 463 n38  
 rewarded by God for repentance,  
   462 n38  
 and Samael  
   J. given over to S. to distract S.  
   from Israelites, 552  
   S. to fetch soul of J., in seventh  
   heaven, 504  
 and Satan, 455-457  
 size of wounds of, 458 n26  
 suffering of, 457-459  
   duration of  
     one year, 462 n34  
     seven years, 461  
     30 years, 462 n34  
   J. tested by suffering and found  
   wanting, 463 n38  
 superiority of Abraham to, 455  
   n10  
 temptations and sufferings of  
   Abraham assigned to, 232  
   n247  
 weakness of, 455 n8  
 wealth and benefactions of, 453-  
   455  
 wealth of, as foretaste of Messianic  
   time, 453



Job (*cont.*)

wife of

advising J. to blaspheme God,  
458, 458 n27advising J. to pray for death,  
457

dying of exhaustion, 460

imploing friends of Job, 460

leading pious life, 459 n28

named Zitidos, 460

trials of, 457-458

*See also* Jobab

## Job, Book of

cantillation of, 463 n39 (*see also*  
Proverbs: book of; Psalms:  
book of)

Moses as author of, 453 n3

## Jobab (Edomite king), 325 n323

identified with Job, 324, 453 n3,  
455, 456 n14succeeding Bela as king of sons of  
Esau, 416*See also* JobJochebed (daughter of Levi; mother  
of Moses and Aaron), 469,  
785

age of

at birth of Moses, 130 years,  
668at marriage to Amram, 126  
years, 474at marriage to Amram, 130  
years, 475 n36

and Amram

children of, 474

Israel redeemed from Egypt on  
account of merits of, 474  
n30 (*see also* merits)

marriage of J. to A., 438, 474

birth of

in Egypt, 438

on journey to Egypt, 395, 396  
n321entering promised land at age of  
250 years, 785as Hebrew midwife, refusing to  
comply with Pharaoh's  
order, 469, 474made invisible by God, so as not to  
be captured by Pharaoh's  
hangmen, 474 (*see also*  
invisibility)

and Moses

J. as mother of M., 395

J. blamed and exonerated for  
exposing infant M., 479  
n46J. exposing infant M. to danger,  
474 n30Jochebed (*cont.*)and Moses (*cont.*)J. leading M. to Joseph's bones,  
546J. making ark from bulrushes for  
M., 477

J. mourning for M., 834

J. rewarded for defiance of  
Pharaoh by return of M. to  
her, 478J. searching for M. after death,  
834J. teaching M. history of  
Hebrews, 487 n69name, meaning of ("divine splen-  
dor"), 474one of 22 women of valor, 238  
n271

as proselyte, 470 n17

rewarded for good deeds, 469

Shiphrah identified with, 469, 470  
n17supervising one of seven classes of  
women, 23 n97

## Joel (prophet)

identified with Joel son of Samuel,  
991 n56

name, meaning of, 992 n56

one of eight postexilic prophets,  
991 n56

son of Joab, 947 n10

time of activity of, 1041 n20

during famine in Joram's time,  
991in time of Manasseh, 991, 991  
n56, 1057 n100

## Joel (son of Samuel), 895

identified with prophet Joel, 991  
n56Joezer (elder from tribe of Joseph),  
696

## Jogli (elder from tribe of Dan), 696

## Johanan (elder from tribe of

Naphtali), 696

## Johanan (high priest)

father of Mattathias the  
Hasmonean, 825 n925

## Johanan b. Zakkai, R., 128 n60

beauty of, 22 n80

believing Job served God out of  
fear, 453 n4careful examination of witnesses of,  
1097 n79disciples of, as "third division," 22  
n87Elijah advising Eliezer b. Hyrcanus  
to study with, 1011expected to be met at death by  
Hezekiah, 1052 n67Johanan b. Zakkai, R. (*cont.*)

as just, 18-19

last words of, 97 n132

on Nimrod, 162 n77

R. Johanan's favorable opinion of  
Job, 462-463 n38story of Hadrian being shown  
Amorite corpses, 754

in third compartment of Eden, 19

Johanan Hyrcanus. *See* John  
Hyrcanus

## John Hyrcanus, 825 n925

fighting against Antiochus IV  
Epiphanes, 942taking money from tomb of  
David, 942John of Anathoth (adherent of  
Belchira), 1057 n101

## John the Baptist

identified with Elijah, 1021 n106

## Joktan (brother of Peleg)

duration of man's lifetime short-  
ened in his time, 157name, meaning of ("modest one"),  
158 n70prince for descendants of Shem,  
160

as progenitor of 13 tribes, 158 n70

rewarded for humility, 406 n376

## Jonadab (the Rechabite)

ascetic practices of, 590

censured for friendship with Jehu,  
590 n173descendants of, becoming members  
of Sanhedrin as reward for

hospitality of Jethro, 777

n783

elder from tribe of Judah, 696

entering Paradise alive, 73 n67 (*see*  
*also* Paradise: entering

alive)

nephew of David, described as wise  
but wicked, 590 n173son of Rechab, descendant of  
Jethro, 590

sons of

entering Paradise alive, 1090  
n57 (*see also* Paradise:

entering alive)

not exiled, 1089 n57

sent to "mountains of darkness,"  
1089-1090 n57to be first to bring offerings to  
Temple in Messianic time,  
776

## Jonah

abandoned into sea, 1032



Jonah (*cont.*)

in belly of fish for three days, 1033  
 effects on J. of being in belly of fish, 1034  
 fish ordered to spew forth, 48  
 J. speaking to Leviathan, 1033  
 J. to capture Leviathan in days to come, 1033 n31  
 charged with mission of anointing Jehu king, 1031  
 contemporary of Daniel, 1071 n14  
 contemporary of Isaiah, Hosea, and Daniel, 1035 n38  
 disciple of Elijah, 1026 n1  
 entering Paradise alive, 1035, 1035 n38 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)  
 fleeing from divine revelation, 1032 n27  
 flight of, 1031-1032  
 forgiven by God, 1034  
 as God-fearing one, 398 n332 (*see also* God-fearing one)  
 hair of, falling out, 1034, 1035 n36  
 journeying on ship, 1031-1032  
 and kikayon (plant protecting J.), 1034-1035  
 known as false prophet, 1031  
 Messianic part ascribed to, 1033 n31, 1035 n38  
 not fulfilling vow to go to Nineveh, 1033 n32  
 prayer of, 1033, 1035 n37  
 having regular form of Seliḥah, 1033 n32 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)  
 proclaiming destruction  
 to inhabitants of Jerusalem, 1031  
 to Nineveh, 1034  
 prototype of Jesus, 1035 n38  
 receiving two divine revelations concerning Nineveh, 1032 n26  
 riddle of Queen of Sheba about, 960  
 son of widow of Zarephath resuscitated by Elijah, 994, 1035 n38  
 soul of, 1033 n32  
 storm over, 1031  
 one of three hurricanes sent by God, 458 n24  
 time of activity of, 1035 n38, 1041 n20  
 voice of, reaching every corner of Nineveh, 1034

Jonah (*cont.*)

wife of,  
 known for piety, 1035  
 name of, 113 n42  
 zealous for honor of Israel, 999 n25  
 Jonah, Book of  
 not part of Book of Twelve, 1035 n38  
 Jonathan (Maccabee), 315 n292  
 Jonathan (nephew of David)  
 Nathan (prophet) identified with, 948 n11  
 slaying one of Philistine giants, 948 n11  
 Jonathan (son of Saul)  
 atoning with offering of gold and burnt offering, 898  
 as Av Bet Din, 907  
 modesty of, 907  
 to be slain for tasting food on certain day, 898  
 Joram (son of Ahab), 990-992  
 hardening heart against compassion, 990  
 having sympathy with people's suffering, 991 n53  
 Jacob as example for, 342  
 king of Samaria, 986  
 miserliness of, 990  
 one of eight rulers of Davidic dynasty to die violent death, 933 n107  
 prophet Joel active during reign of, 991  
 seven years of famine during reign of, 991  
 usurious practices of, 990  
 warfare of  
 allied with kings of Judah and Edom against Moab, 990-991  
 against Moab, 990-991  
 J. victorious on account of merits of observing Sabbath, 1027 n5  
 wickedness of, 990  
 Jordan River  
 becoming dry for merits of Jacob, 256 n35 (*see also* Jacob: merits of; merits)  
 ceasing flowing at penance of Adam, 87  
 division of waters of  
 by Jacob, 275  
 as reward for  
 good deeds of Abraham, 844 n14  
 good deeds of Jacob, 844 n14  
 piety of Joseph, 327, 844 n14

Jordan River (*cont.*)

Elisha's crossing of, as first of 16 miracles performed during life, 1025  
 Israelites marching through, 843  
 waters of, miraculously piling up, 843

## Jose, R.

and Elijah, 1008  
 E. imparting to R. Jose regulations concerning prayer, 1012 n76  
 E. teaching R. Jose meaning of Scriptural passage about woman as helpmeet of man, 1010

## Joseph

age of, at death of Pharaoh, 71 years, 422  
 and angels  
 clothes given to J. by angel, 366 n169  
 J. led to Dothan by Gabriel, 332  
 sallow complexion of J. changed by angel, 337 n51  
 appropriating birthright, 327  
 and Asenath  
 J. blessing A., 424  
 J. meeting A., 423-424  
 marriage of, 348, 424-425  
 astrological prediction fulfilled concerning, 352  
 beauty of, 60 n24, 352, 359, 367, 396 n319, 423 (*see also* Joseph: handsomeness of)  
 distracting women guests of Zuleika, 354-355  
 equal to that of Rachel, 329  
 begging for life, 332  
 and Benjamin  
 in Egypt, 379-382  
 J. blessing B., 379  
 J. demanding that brothers bring B. to Egypt, 374-375  
 J. giving B. five changes of clothes, 389  
 J. giving B. 300 shekels, 390 n288  
 J. holding B. hostage, 384  
 J. making self known to B., 390 n279  
 J. weeping at sight of B., 381 n244  
 birth of, circumcised, 327 (*see also* covenant[s]: sign of)  
 birthright conferred on, because of sin of Reuben, 407  
 brothers of (*see also* Joseph: and Benjamin)



Joseph (*cont.*)

- brothers of (*cont.*)
  - anger of Gad at J., 329
  - angry at J.'s revelation of his identity, 388
  - confession of, 384 n263
  - conspiring against J., 332
  - in Egypt, 370-372
  - envying J., 329
  - fearing vengeance from J., 421
  - hatred of brothers for J., 329-331, 361 n136
- J. accusing brothers falsely
  - of being cruel to animals, 328
  - of being spies, 372
  - of looking at daughters of Canaanites, 328
  - of treating sons of Bilhah and Zilpah with contempt, 328
- J. and brothers meeting in Egypt, 372-376
- J. demanding that brothers bring Benjamin to Egypt, 374-375
- J. giving brothers 100 shekels, 390 n289
- J. giving brothers two changes of clothes, 389
- J. giving changes of clothes to children of brothers, 389
- J. imparting to brothers mark of true redeemer of Israel, 516
- J. keeping silent about what brothers did to him, 402, 405 n360, 405 n370, 449-450
- J. making brothers swear oath to take his bones to Palestine, 427
- J. making identity known to brothers, 387-390
- J. not betraying brothers, 349
- J. partly responsible for crime of brothers, 361 n136
- J. preparing Sabbath meal for, in Egypt, 379
- J. putting brothers in prison, 373
- openly expressing hatred of J., 330, 331 n11
- resolving to destroy Mizraim, 385-386
- as "the bull," 385
- burying gold, silver, and precious stones in four different places, 397
- Calcol ("giver of food") identified with, 955 n21

Joseph (*cont.*)

- capturing Zepho (son of Eliphaz), 415
- chastity of, 405, 579, 866 n60
- coat of, 334 n43
  - brought to Jacob, 339-343, 343 n64
  - by Judah, 343 n64, 346 n74
  - by Naphtali, 343 n64
  - by sons of bondwomen, 343 n64
- called *Passim*, 330
- as holy tunic of priest, 331 n11
- Joseph receiving coat from Jacob, 330
- smeared with blood of slaughtered kid, 328
- compared with Noah as *tzadik*, 329 n3
- death and burial of, 427-431
  - all Israel participating in, 430 n437, 430 n443
  - body, embalmed, 328
  - body, emitting pleasant fragrance, 337, 546
- bones
  - buried in Shechem, 429
  - coming to life and assuming form of sheep, 430 n442
  - sought by Moses in Egypt, 545-546
  - wrapped by Moses in sheepskin on which "Name of God" written, 430 n442
- burial in Holy Land, 328
- burial in royal palace, 430 n438, 546
- coffin
  - carried in desert 40 years, 429
  - finding of, 548 n3
  - guarded by two golden dogs, 546
  - kept in tent of Moses in wilderness, 548 n6
  - miraculously rising to Moses, 546
  - sunk in Nile, 428-429
  - to make waters abundant, 430 n438
  - to prevent Egyptians from worshipping his body, 430 n438
- death of
  - at age 110 years, 839 n966
  - because he accepted gifts of Pharaoh, 423 n430
  - because of haughtiness as ruler, 423 n429
  - in Egypt, 328

Joseph (*cont.*)

- death and burial of (*cont.*)
  - death of (*cont.*)
    - premature death of J., 422, 422 n429
    - as punishment for allowing brothers to call Jacob "servant," 422, 423 n430
    - allowing Jacob to bow to him, 394
    - reasons for, 423 n429
    - on Sabbath, according to Kabbalah, 466 n3
  - J. wishing to be buried in Hebron, 430 n443
  - ten years before allotted time, 422
  - words of J. on deathbed, 427-428
- decree of, concerning purchase of corn in Egypt, 371
- as delicate lad, 329
- and descendants, proof against evil eye, 370 n185
- descendants of
  - Gideon as, 330
  - hoping to conquer Amalekites, 579
  - Jehu as, 330
  - Jeroboam as, 330
  - Joshua as, 330
  - Phinehas as, 794
  - ruling over Israel, 330
  - to be victorious over descendants of Esau, 579
- description of, 328, 351
  - as slave, 364
- desiring to sanctify Name of God, 354
- destined to be father of 12 sons, 381 n251
- division of waters of Jordan River for Joshua on account of, 844 n14
- and dream(s), 328, 330
  - 11 stars making obeisance to him, 383
- J. interpreting dreams, 361 n150
  - of chief butler and chief baker, 360-361
  - J. keeping part of interpretation of dream secret, 361
  - of Pharaoh, 365-367
- J.'s dream fulfilled in entirety, 384 n261
- J.'s dream understood by Jacob, 330



Joseph (*cont.*)

- in Egypt (*see also* Joseph: and Potiphar)
  - Balaam recounting history of J. to Pharaoh, 482
- J. acquiring knowledge necessary for being statesman, 351 n105
- J. and Benjamin, 379-382
- J. and brothers meeting, 372-376
- J. as administrator for Magron, son of Pharaoh, 422
- J. as helper and counsellor of Egyptians, 422
- J. as king, 367-370, 378 n234
- J. asking members of Pharaoh's family to intercede for him regarding transporting Jacob's body, 412-413
- J. as viceroy, 422, 422 n429
- J. before Pharaoh, 364-367
- J. bought by Zuleika for 80 pieces of gold, 350
- J. called Zaphenath-paneah by Pharaoh, 368
- J. demanding that brothers bring Benjamin to Egypt, 374-375
- J. demanding that Egyptians circumcise selves, 369
- J. exiling Egyptians from native provinces, 398
- J. given great wealth by Pharaoh and Egyptians, 368
- J. given many changes of garments by Zuleika, 353, 355 n112
- J. given Pharaoh's signet ring, 367
- J. instructed in arts, 351
- J. left with shopkeeper, 349
- J. living as Nazirite, 380 (*see also* Nazirite)
- J. presenting brothers to Pharaoh, 389
- J. pretending not to know Egyptian language, 355 n111
- J. prophesying birth and death of Pharaoh's sons, 365
- J. selling grain to all who came, 397
- J. set over land by Pharaoh, 366
- J. succeeding Pharaoh as ruler of Egypt, 427
- J. telling signs and tokens of dream interpretation to Pharaoh, 365

Joseph (*cont.*)

- in Egypt (*cont.*)
    - J. tried in Egyptian court, 358, 358 n130
  - J. weeping about going to Egypt, 337
  - opposition of Pharaoh's officials to J., 366, 367 n181
  - ordinance of J. that one-fifth of land produce should belong to Pharaoh, 399 n341
  - power of J. in Egypt, 376-377
  - in prison, 359-362
    - angels bringing J. clothes from Paradise, 364
    - jailer kindly disposed to J., 359
  - J. leaving prison on New Year, 366 n169
  - as overseer of prison, 359-360
    - for ten years, 359
    - for 13 years, 366 n169
    - for 12 years, 362
  - wisdom of J.'s counsel to Pharaoh, 367 n180
- and Esau
- J. as opposite of E., 579
- famine in time of, 328
- J. providing food for man and beast in, 329 n3
  - J. providing for whole world during, 397
  - J. saving in years of plenty to prepare for, 369
- fasting and praying, 352
- as father of two tribes, 408-409
- firstborn
- J. enjoying rights of, 579
  - of mother, 403
- first of Hasidim, 329 n3
- first of sons of Jacob to die, as punishment for having corpse of Jacob embalmed, 412
- first son of Rachel, 287-288
- first to appear in Holy Land, 825 n927
- first to be subjected to Egyptian bondage, 332
- following ritual prescriptions in slaughtering cattle, 379
- found by royal princesses following scent, 337
- fulfilling commandment to observe Sabbath, 593
- fulfilling Ten Commandments, 429
- Gabriel as teacher of, in Kabbalah, 505 n117

Joseph (*cont.*)

- giving away possessions, 397
- giving David 48 years, 912 n12
- giving Dinah gifts, 389
- God adding to wisdom of J., 368
- as God-fearing one, 397, 398 n332
- handsomeness of, 335, 349, 350, 373 (*see also* Joseph: beauty of)
- having faith in resurrection, 579
- and Hebrew language
  - J. addressing brothers in Hebrew, 388, 390 n281
  - J. understanding Hebrew, 373, 386
- honesty of, 430 n442
- house of, to destroy house of Esau, 290
- identified with Serapis, 622 n266
- indicating that Mordecai would be arrayed in five royal garments, 389
- as inventor of measures, 399 n339
- and Ishmaelites
  - J. beaten by Ishmaelites for weeping, 337
  - J. ill-treated by Ishmaelites, 338, 381
  - J. interceding for Ishmaelites with God, 338
  - J. sold to Ishmaelites by Midianites, 336
- issuing proclamation that all should go out to meet Jacob, 394
- and Jacob
  - dwelling together for 17 years, 399
  - Jacob blessed on account of merits of Joseph, 327 (*see also* merits)
  - Jacob bowing before Joseph, 394, 401 n348, 401 n355
  - Joseph blessed by Jacob, 408-409
  - Joseph bringing evil reports of brothers to Jacob, 328
  - Joseph laying hands on Jacob, source of 13th of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127
  - Joseph learning Halakhot from Jacob, 328
  - Joseph preparing chariot with own hands to meet Jacob, 393
  - Joseph punished for having Jacob's corpse embalmed, 412



Joseph (*cont.*)and Jacob (*cont.*)

Joseph receiving from Jacob  
 coat of many colors, 330  
 instruction and knowledge,  
 327  
 two gifts, 405  
 Joseph resembling Jacob in  
 appearance, 327  
 Joseph sent by Jacob to check on  
 brothers at Shechem, 331  
 Joseph studying under Jacob and  
 Isaac, 329 n6  
 Joseph swearing oath to Jacob,  
 401 n351, 413  
 Joseph telling Jacob falsely that  
 sons of handmaids slaugh-  
 tering choice cattle of herd,  
 329  
 Joseph tending flock of Jacob,  
 329  
 last conversation of, as halakhic  
 discussion, 393 n296  
 parallels between (*see* Jacob: and  
 Joseph, parallels between)  
 premonition of Joseph concern-  
 ing Jacob, 391  
 separated for 17 years, 399  
 terror of Jacob at report of  
 Joseph's death, 271 n101  
 virtues coming to Joseph  
 through Jacob, 253 n1  
 as just, 18-19  
 kindness and generosity of, 396-  
 399  
 last words of, showing belief in res-  
 urrection of dead, 430  
 n435  
 magnanimity of, 421-423  
 marriage of, 424-425  
 to Asenath, daughter of Dinah  
 and Shechem, 348  
 merits of  
 and final redemption, 328 n3  
 Jacob blessed on account of, 327  
 (*see also* merits)  
 miraculous powers of, 351  
 Mordecai compared with, 1178  
 n189  
 and Moses  
 J. appearing at death of M., 837  
 J.'s bones  
 sought by M. in Egypt, 545-  
 546  
 wrapped by M. in sheepskin  
 on which "Name of God"  
 written, 430 n442

Joseph (*cont.*)and Moses (*cont.*)

J.'s coffin  
 kept in M.'s tent in wilder-  
 ness, 548 n6  
 miraculously rising to M.,  
 546  
 J.'s cup carved and broken by  
 M., 429  
 mountains of  
 antedating mountains of Israel,  
 825 n927  
 as hill-country of Ephraim, 825  
 n927  
 name  
 changed to Jehoseph, 359  
 meaning of ("increase"), 288,  
 289 n201, 433  
 name of God attached to, 871  
 n85  
 spelled Jehoseph on ephod of  
 Aaron, 650  
 nobility of character of, 405 n370  
 noble lineage of, 409  
 oath of  
 by life of Pharaoh, 373, 375  
 n210  
 not to succumb to temptation,  
 354  
 by sign of covenant of Abraham,  
 400  
 observing commandment not to  
 commit adultery, 593-594  
 observing law before revelation,  
 379  
 observing Sabbath before revela-  
 tion of law, 381 n238  
 one of four God-fearing men,  
 1026  
 piety of, 327  
 in resisting temptations, 351,  
 381 n238  
 and pit  
 J. cast into pit, 331-335  
 J. looking sallow and sickly after  
 being in pit, 336, 337 n51  
 J. naked in pit, 333, 336  
 J. taken from pit by Midianites,  
 335  
 plea of J. to be saved from pit,  
 333  
 Reuben throwing J. into pit,  
 334 n41  
 and Potiphar (*see also* Potiphar: and  
 Joseph)  
 enmity of P. toward J., 411  
 n400  
 J. as slave of P., 439-352

Joseph (*cont.*)and Potiphar (*cont.*)

J. associating with two wicked  
 men, Potiphar and  
 Pharaoh, 579  
 J. called pious because of virtue  
 over P.'s wife, 329 n3  
 P. blessed on account of J., 1027  
 n6  
 sale of J. by Medanites to P., 339  
 story of, 349-350  
 precious stone of, beryl, 856  
 price of  
 20 pieces of silver, 336  
 correlated with annual pay-  
 ment to sanctuary, 336  
 correlated with price of  
 redemption of firstborn  
 son, 336  
 used by brothers to buy shoes,  
 336  
 prophetic spirit of, 389  
 punishment of  
 for allowing Jacob to bow to  
 him, 394  
 for forgetting father, 548 n10  
 for having corpse of Jacob  
 embalmed, 412  
 for one moment of passion, 381  
 n251  
 standard of descendants bearing  
 name of Ephraim, not his,  
 423 n429  
 and Rachel  
 J. pleading at R.'s grave for her  
 to arise, 337-338  
 J. shielding R. from Esau, 305  
 n262  
 J. weeping at R.'s grave, 337-338  
 R. speaking to J. from grave,  
 338  
 as reformer of taxation of soil, 398  
 n339  
 represented by Ephraim on high  
 priest's breastplate, 872  
 resemblance of Naphtali to, 444  
 resembling Sarah, 409  
 rewarded for  
 chastity and steadfastness, 359  
 virtuous life, with high position,  
 370 n183  
 reward of, most fruitful land, 822  
 as ruler of world, 162 n82  
 sale of, 335-337  
 by Ishmaelites to descendants of  
 Medan, son of Abraham,  
 for five shekels, 338  
 "over meal," 335



Joseph (*cont.*)

- sale of (*cont.*)
  - one of two sins of people, 659
  - by Medanites to Potiphar, officer of Pharaoh, 339
  - as slave, 328
  - for 20 pieces of silver, 335
- as scholar and prophet, 398 n333
- sending ten donkeys to Canaan, 390 n291
- Shekinah resting on, 351
- shunning bloodshed, 579
- sons of
  - to rule nations, 822
  - two in number, 288
- and sons of handmaids, relations between, 330-331 n9
- soul of, struggle between passion and virtue in, 358 n126
- special virtue of
  - chastity, 715 n543
  - loving-kindness, 715 n543
- steadfastness of, 355 n110
  - deserting him, 356
- studying in Bet ha-Midrash, 328
- studying under Jacob and Isaac, 329 n6
- superiority of Moses to, 837
- taught 70 languages by Gabriel, source of fourth of Eighteen Benedictions, 1126
- telling captors he was slave, 349
- ten temptations of, 188 n52, 352 n107
  - J. resisting temptation, 356-359
  - vision of dead in, 356
- thanking God for happy state in Egypt, 351
- three masters of, 337-339
- titles of
  - al-Ziddik*, given by Muslim writers, 329 n3
  - "God-fearing one," 397
  - "good and pious one," 328 n3
  - hasid*, 329 n3
  - hatzadik*, frequent among Arabic-speaking Jews, 329 n3
  - tzadik*, 328-329 n3
- to be ancestor of Ephraimitic Messiah, 289 n201
- treasures of, 552
- treatment of sons of Bilhah and Zilpah, 329 n7
- tribe(s) of
  - blessed by Moses, 822
  - elders from (Jair, Joezer, Malchiel, Adoniram, Abiram, Sethur), 696

Joseph (*cont.*)

- tribe(s) of (*cont.*)
  - having most fruitful land, 822
  - onyx as stone of, 652
  - rejected because Joseph slandered brethren, 650 n351
  - to be first in future world to appear in Holy Land, 822
- visions of, 428
- warfare of
  - absence of J. from war against Esau, 322 n317
  - against Ninevites, 313
  - against Tarshish, 369
- wealth of, 328, 349
- wisdom of, Solomon's wisdom greater than, 949-950
- and Zuleika, 352-359
  - conversation between, 353-354
  - J. accused of immorality by Z., 357-358
  - J. resisting Z., 354-355
  - J. sentenced to prison for harming Z.'s good name, 358
  - J. spared from death by Z., 359, 359 n133
  - torn garment of J., 397-398
  - as proof of innocence, 399 n340
- Joseph della Reyna, R.
  - conjuring up Elijah to learn how to conquer Satan, 1018-1019
- Joseph ha-Levi
  - mentioning anointing of, by Elijah, 1022 n112
- Josephus
  - on Abraham as king, 181 n46
  - on Akedah, 228 n230
  - on anti-Israelite policy of Egyptians, 474 n29
  - on appointment of judges, 588 n164
  - on Balaam, 769 n752
    - on B. as prophet, 762 n725
    - on B.'s ass speaking with voice of man, 768 n745
    - on B.'s lengthy address, 775 n772
    - on B.'s oration, 773 n764
  - on battle at Ai, 847 n23
  - on cherubim, 644 n333
  - on chronology of Rebekah's death, 318 n302
  - on date of fall of Jericho, 847 n22
  - on Evil-merodach's sons, 1112 n2
  - on idolatry of Solomon, 949 n12
  - on intermarriage, 781 n790

Josephus (*cont.*)

- on inviolability of oath, 848 n35
- on Jacob
  - escaping from Laban, 294 n224
  - J.'s message to Esau, 298 n236
  - not wanting to lodge with Canaanites, 280 n140
  - serving Laban for seven years, 284 n166
- on Jephthah, 876 n106
- on Jethro, 494 n82
- on Joseph
  - interpreting dreams, 361 n150
  - J.'s dream, 331 n17
  - search of J.'s brothers' sacks, 383 n256
- on Judah's oration, 387 n268
- on location of Sambation River, 1089 n56
- on Manoah, 878-879 n111
- on martyred prophets, 1078 n30
- on meaning of cake of barley, 873 n100
- on meaning of name of Samson, 879 n111
- on Moses
  - delivery of M. from Nile, 479 n48
  - last moments of M.'s life, 815 n904
  - legend of M. and Ethiopians, 492 n80
  - name of M., 481 n59
  - precocity of M. 481 n64
  - question of whether or not M. died, 832 n951
  - relationship between M. and Zipporah, 494 n81
  - story of M. stomping on crown of Pharaoh, 484 n65
- name Thermutis found in, 479 n48
- on Noah as preacher, 145 n25
- on Potiphar's wife, 358-359 n132
- on Ruth
  - R. performing ceremony of "taking off shoe," 867 n65
  - time of story of R., 864 n31
- Samson described as prophet, 879 n116
- on sin of Tower generation, 165 n90
- on succession of high priests, 892 n25
- on talkativeness of young women, 280 n149
- on Torah, viii
- on tower of Ecbatana built by Daniel, 1118 n20



Josephus (*cont.*)

- tripartite division of Tabernacle in, 651 n353
- on uprooting of mandrake, 289 n189
- and view that demons are souls of wicked, 82 n98
- Joshua (high priest, son of Jehozadak)
  - escaping death by fire in furnace, 1106
  - identified with Ben Sira, 1084 n42
  - among members of Great Synagogue, 1127 n56
- Joshua (son of Nun)
  - adding benediction to Grace after Meals, 1128 n58 (*see also* Grace after Meals; prayers, Jewish)
  - appointed to office of hangman, 841
  - appointment of, 787-790
  - and Book of Deuteronomy, 842
  - and Caleb (*see also* Joshua; and spies)
    - rending garments at blasphemy of Israelites, 712
    - rewarded by receiving property in Holy Land allotted to other spies, 716
  - causing people to pass before ark, 847 n28
  - circumcising those born in desert at Gilgal, 843-844, 845 n16
  - J. to take away reproach of Israelites by circumcising them, 288
  - coins struck by, 853 n54
  - commanded to remove shoes, 511 n122
  - as composer of (*see also* prayers, Jewish)
    - Al Ken Nekavveh Lekha, 1128 n58
    - Alenu, 853 n50, 1079, 1128 n58
    - second benediction in Grace after Meals, 853 n50, 1128 n58
  - crossing Jordan River, 843
  - cutting off father's head, 841, 842 n2
  - death and burial of, 852
    - death of
      - at age 110 years, 793
      - J. dying childless, 711 n526
      - J. dying free from sin, 853 n56

Joshua (*cont.*)

- death and burial of (*cont.*)
  - death of (*cont.*)
    - ten years early, 793
    - because of giving advice to Moses, 794 n847
  - mourning for J., 852
- descendant of
  - Ephraim, 404, 822
  - Joseph, 288, 330
  - J. growing up ignorant of descent, 841
- devotion of, 626 n277
- and Eliezer
  - as two leaders at head of Israel entering Holy Land, 790 n830
- errors committed by, 626 n278
- establishing laws revealed to Moses on Sinai, 842 n7
- face of, shining like moon, 813
- as first Jewish conqueror, 841
- having daughters but no sons, 711 n526
- as ideal type of scholar, 842 n9
- infancy of
  - J. exposed after birth, 842 n2
  - J. pious from infancy, 1061 n114
  - J. spewed forth unharmed from whale, 841
  - J. swallowed by whale, 841, 842 n2
- introducing regulations for cities of refuge, 800 n869
- killing Balaam, 796 n855
- kissing steer on nose, 37
- lack of intelligence of, 711 n526, 842 n3
- leader of Israel for 28 years, 852
- letter of, to allied kings of Persia and Media, 851
- as man in moon, 842 n6
- and Michael
  - M. speaking to J. about study of Torah, 844
- and Moses
  - J. as servant of M., 841-842
  - J. awaiting M.'s return from Sinai, 625
  - J. instructed by M. on campaign against Amalek, 580-582
  - J. made successor of M., 841
  - J. mourning for M., 834
  - J. punished for giving advice to M., 711 n526
  - J. sent by M. to battle Amalekites, 579

Joshua (*cont.*)

- and Moses (*cont.*)
  - J.'s mind kindled and spirit stirred, putting on garments of M., 842 n9
  - J. speaking to Israel on last day of M.'s life, 812-813
  - J.'s vision at moment of M.'s death, 833 n952
  - M. asking J. to intercede, 808-809
  - M. serving J. from 1 Shevat to 6 Adar, 810-812
  - name given by M. to Hoshea, 706
- mother of, breasts miraculously flowing with milk, 841
- names and titles of
  - called "cutter of heads," 842 n2
  - called "robber," 848 n34
  - J. described by God as His servant, 805 n880 (*see also* servant of God)
  - J. given title "elect of God" in Scripture, 912 n1
- one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)
- one of ten just men in Israel, 628 in Paradise
  - J. unworthy to pronounce blessing over wine, 939
- participating in breaking of tablets, 626 n279
- prayer of, 847 n27
  - Samael stopping prayer of J., 809
- and Rahab
  - J. blamed for marrying R., 845 n19
- royal apparel of, 851
- and Sabbath
  - J. conquering Jericho on, 846 n22
  - J. not allowing trumpets to be blown on, 846-847 n22
- song of praise of, 849-850
- and spies
  - J. attempting to contradict report of spies, 710
  - J. sending out Perez and Zerah as spies, 345
- stature of, 851
- sun standing still for J., 24, 48, 848-850, 1152 n108
- surpassing Amalek in knowledge of astrology and magic, 1152 n108



Joshua (*cont.*)

- as teacher of Israel, 827
- ten ordinances of, concerning private property, 852
- told to loose shoes from feet as sign of mourning for neglect of Torah, 844
- as type of disciple of wise, 842 n7
- unable to resolve difficulties of law, 841
- warfare of
  - with Amalekites, 841, 1152 n108
- J. blamed for defeat at Ai, 847 n23
- J. capturing Jericho, 845-846
- J. destroying Hazor, 317 n297
- J. not leading Israelites in battle at Ai, 847 n23
- J. proceeding slowly in conquering Canaan, 793
- J. victorious against Amalek, 680
- 31 kings captured by, 755
- 31 kings slain by, 846, 848 n33, 850 n44
- weeping, 809
- wisdom of, like candle, 789
- Joshua b. Levi, R.
  - adventure of, with angel of death, 23 n97
- description of Paradise of, 23 n97 and Elijah
  - E. getting R. Joshua interview with Messiah, 1012
  - E. granting any wish of R. Joshua, 1014
  - E. showing R. Joshua precious stones of Messianic time, 1011-1012
  - R. Joshua as favorite of E., 1012
  - R. Joshua incurring displeasure of E. for second time, 1007
  - story of journeys together, 1014-1015
- entering Paradise alive, 22 n90, 73 n67, 132 n62, (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)
- modesty of, 1012
- question to, about rainbow, 1013 n92
- story of fugitive and R. Joshua, 1006-1007
- Josiah, 1058-1063
  - death of, in battle against Egyptians, 1059
  - enlisting aid of Huldah to bring about reform, 1059

Josiah (*cont.*)

- finding copy of Torah in Temple, 1059
- hiding holy ark before destruction of Temple, 1059
- Israel free from idolatry during reign of, 949 n12
- killed by darts through nostrils, 59
- one of eight rulers of Davidic dynasty to die violent death, 933 n107
- one of most pious kings of Israel, 1059
- one of six men given name by God before birth, 201
- one of six pious men endowed with spiritual gifts descended from Ruth, 866 n61 (*see also under* pious: men)
- pious son of Amon, 1058-1059
- possessing nostrils of Adam, 58
- ruling over both Judah and Israel, 1059
- Shallum as another name for, 1066 n1
- slain by Pharaoh on account of David's curse of Joab, 946
- three sons of (Jehoiakim, Johanan, Zedekiah), 1062 n124
- trying to eliminate idols from houses, 1059
- Jotham (son of Uzziah)
  - administering kingdom during last 25 years of Uzziah's life, 1039 n19, 1043
  - characterizing Othniel, Deborah, and Gideon as olive or fig trees or vine, 872
  - comparing Abimelech to thorn-bush, 872
  - parable of, 874 n103
  - piety of, 1043, 1044 n38
  - as teller of parables, 872
  - youngest son of Gideon, 872
- journey
  - maxim about, communicated by Elijah to R. Judah, 1010
  - as metaphor for life, 973 n78
- joy(s)
  - of four ages, 22 n81
  - interrupted, 661-664
  - as necessary condition for manifestation of holy spirit, 268 n94
  - window of, in first heaven, 503
- Jubal
  - inventor of music sung in temples to idols, 112

Jubal (*cont.*)

- son of Lamech and Adah, 112
- Jubilee year
  - criticized by Haman, 1153-1154
- Judah (judge)
  - identified with Othniel, 861 n22
- Judah (kingdom of)
  - kings of, descendants of Judah, 912 n2
  - later kings of, 1037-1063
  - prophet of, 983 n8
- Judah (Othniel), 860
- Judah (son of Jacob)
  - admitted to heavenly academy after prayer of Moses, 820-821
  - age of, at death, 119 years, 440
  - animal images and, 439
  - becoming intoxicated, 344 and Benjamin
    - J. as surety for B., 377, 385, 387 n267
    - J. pleading with Joseph for B., 384-387
  - blamed for two things, 346 n74
  - bones of, joining together when Moses prayed, 820
  - burning wagons ornamented with idols, 389
  - and Canaanite king Barsan, 343-344
  - confession of, 345, 384 n263, 407
  - reward for, 347 n90
  - source of sixth of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127
  - death of, 440
    - corpse of, falling to pieces, 820
  - J. as fourth of Jacob's sons to die, 465 n2
  - defending Simon and Levi, 310
  - descendants of
    - confessing openly, 407
    - Messiah to be descendant of J., 408
    - to be princes over Jacob's sons, 316
  - Er as firstborn son of, 344
  - face of, like lion, 312, 313
  - fulfilling commandment not to kill, 593
  - gnashing teeth, 313, 314 n291
  - going to Arbel, 315
  - hair on chest (*see also* hair)
    - becoming hot, 390 n278
    - becoming stiff, 386, 387 n277
  - having impudence of dog and bravery of lion, 407



Judah (*cont.*)

and Isaac  
 J. being blessed by I., 316-317, 440  
 and Isaac and Jacob  
 as judges in case of Tamar, 345  
 and Jacob  
 blessing of Judah by Jacob, 407-408, 410 n388  
 Judah bringing Joseph's coat to Jacob, 343 n64, 346 n74  
 Judah deceiving Jacob by means of kid, 347 n87  
 and Joseph  
 death of first wife and sons of Judah, as punishment for selling Joseph, 346 n81, 347  
 dialogue between, 384-390  
 Judah accused of being responsible for death of Joseph, 343  
 Judah comparing Joseph to Pharaoh, 384  
 Judah guarding pit, 333  
 Judah not saving Joseph, 346 n74  
 Judah pleading with Joseph for Benjamin, 384-387  
 Judah preventing others from killing Joseph, 334 n34  
 Judah proposing to sell Joseph to Ishmaelites, 333  
 Judah responsible for selling Joseph, 346 n81  
 Judah saving Joseph from death, 407  
 Judah selling Joseph without knowledge of brothers, 335 n48  
 Judah viewed unfavorably for not saving Joseph from slavery, 334 n46  
 Judah weeping for Joseph, 340  
 kingship conferred on, because of sin of Reuben, 407  
 and Levi  
 fighting against Ninevites, 312  
 as lion, 385  
 name  
 inscribed on banner, 685  
 J. called Jehudah by mother, 407  
 J. given title "elect of God" in Scripture, 912 n1  
 meaning of, 433, 439, 823  
 reason for, 288 n175  
 penance of, 440

Judah (*cont.*)

as pious man, 347 n86  
 recognizing kin in Manasseh's touch, 387  
 revealing history of Israel until advent of Messiah, 440  
 right eye of, shedding tears of blood, 386  
 rod of, identical to rod of Aaron, 730 n600  
 sent to Goshen to erect Bet ha-Midrash, 392  
 sin of  
 finally forgiven, 820-821  
 not returning Benjamin back to Jacob, 820  
 with Tamar, 820  
 and sons, 343-347  
 as standard-bearer, corresponding to Gabriel, 685  
 and Tamar, 344-345  
 J. compelled by angel of love to notice T., 344, 347 n86  
 J. confessing about improper relations with T., 439  
 J. deceived by T. by means of kid, 347 n87  
 J. judging that T. should suffer death by burning, 345  
 J. saving T. and two sons from fire, 347 n89, 407  
 testament of, 439-440  
 to pitch camp in east, 685  
 tribe of  
 blessed by Moses, 820  
 bow as chief weapon of, 821  
 confessing to worship of golden calf, 855  
 courage of, in crossing Red Sea, 672 n388  
 elders from (Zerah, Dan, Jonadab, Bezalel, Shephatiah, Nahshon), 696  
 flag of, azure with picture of lion, 688  
 Haman not able to prevail against descendant of, 1177 n175  
 Israel led forth from Egypt on account of, 394 n311  
 lion as insignia of, 689 n447  
 Moses' psalm of, 823  
 one of four standard-bearers, 685  
 precious stone of  
 carbuncle, 856 (*see also* precious stones)  
 emerald, 651

Judah (*cont.*)

tribe of (*cont.*)  
 prince of (Nahshon), 679  
 receiving Jericho from descendants of Jethro, 589-590  
 rewarded with royalty of Israel, 555  
 spy representing (Caleb), 706  
 standard of  
 colors of, 685-686  
 figure of lion on, 686  
 inscription on, 686  
 wanting to jump into waters of Red Sea, 555  
 voice of, 385, 387 n275, 390 n281  
 bringing down walls of city of Egypt, 388  
 J. to destroy Mizraim by voice, 385  
 warfare of, 439  
 against Amorites, 314  
 in battle of Sartan, 315  
 against Esau, 320  
 J. attacking Edom to south, 321  
 J. brave in battle, 321  
 J. mounting walls of Hazor, 314  
 J. slaying Jashub, king of Tappuah, 314  
 against Ninevites, 312, 313  
 warning against wine, unchastity, and greed, 440  
 wives of  
 Alit, daughter of noble merchant Shua, 347  
 Bath-shua, daughter of king of Adullam, 343-344  
 Canaanite women, 349 n98, 439  
*See also* Jehudah  
 Judah (son of R. Hiyya), 1124 n42  
 Judah ha-Nasi, R.  
 and Elijah  
 E. attending academy of R. Judah daily, 1010  
 E. communicating three maxims to R. Judah, 1010  
 R. Judah cured of toothache by E., 1003  
 Judah he-Hasid of Regensburg, R.  
 story of Elijah and circumcision, 1020 n103  
 Judaism  
 admission to, requiring submission to three ceremonies (circumcision, baptism, sacrifice), 598  
 Alexandrian, importance of  
 Akedah for, 233 n255



Judaism (*cont.*)

- defense of, against Christian polemics, 200 n111
- See also* Jew(s)
- judge(s), 855-885
  - appointed by Moses, 587
  - each to execute two sinners, 779
  - famine in time of, 189
  - first, 855-857
  - God commanding Moses to appoint, 779
  - number of, 588 n164
  - respect due to, 588 n164
  - seven qualifications for, 586, 588 n162
- Judges, Book of
  - edited by Ezra, 1128 n56
- judgeship
  - mantle as symbol of, 344
- judgment
  - day of (*see* day of judgment)
  - after Enoch fetches book of deeds, 100 n142
  - fourth herald of Solomon reminding about, 969
  - at moment of death, 58 n20
- judgment day. *See* day of judgment
- Judith
  - daughter of Heth, married to Esau, 283
  - of family of Ham, wife of Esau, 262
- Jupiter (planet)
  - assisting Abraham in battle, 195
  - moving from west to east for sake of Abraham, 197 n98
  - Zadkiel as angel in charge of, 131 n61
  - See also* heavenly bodies
- jus primae noctis*
  - introduced by Bethuel, 241 n294
- just
  - thrones for, in Paradise, made from rubies, 507 (*see also* under pious)
- justice
  - and mercy
    - dialogue of, 54 n15
    - near to souls of pious, 611
    - ruling world jointly, 1
  - neglect of, as one of eight sins committed by Pharaoh, inhabitants of sinful cities, builders of Tower of Babel, Sennacherib, and Nebuchadnezzar, 562 n54, 1048 n60

justice (*cont.*)

- one of four standards of Divine Throne, 687 n440
- practice of, one of three natures of God according to Philo, 319 n304
- in seventh heaven, 6

## K

## Kaat Kesef ("silver charger")

- numerical values of letters in (930), 671

## Kabah

- worship of, in Mecca, 221 n216

## Kabbalah

- Abijah to be Ephraimitic Messiah in, 985 n17
- allegorizing legend of Cain, 102 n3
- Amalek identified with Sammael and evil inclination in, 580 n141
- on anamnesia, 58 n20
- calling Joseph *tzadik* because of sexual purity, 328 n3
- describing charms applied by Moses to strengthen Joshua's intellect, 842 n3
- description of Paradise in, 23 n97
- destruction of Temple not reality in, 1092 n64
- on differentiation of sex in embryo, 57 n20
- and doctrine concerning Adam Kadmon, 49 n4
- on Egypt as home of witchcraft and demons, 66 n40
- Gabriel as teacher of Joseph in, 505 n117
- identification of Leviathan with "Evil" in, 32 n127
- identification of Satan with Leviathan in, 42 n187
- on identity of angels with souls, 16 n63
- on Israel as God's portion, 166 n91
- and legend that Nebuchadnezzar ordered Temple rebuilt and people returned, 1077 n29
- Maltiel as teacher of Elijah in, 505 n117
- Nebuchadnezzar as descendant of Queen of Sheba in, 1073 n21
- and new legends, ix
- Raphael as teacher of Jacob in, 505 n117

Kabbalah (*cont.*)

- Raziel as teacher of Adam in, 505 n117
- on residence of Shekinah under tree of life, 95 n126
- on resurrection of dead in Holy Land 40 years earlier than in other countries, 401 n345
- on righteous having to pass through Gehenna before entering Paradise, 508 n118
- rivalry between Solomon and Hiram of Tyre in solving riddles in, 958 n36
- Sammael as goat in, 307 n275
- on Satan's power over Job, 456 n14
- Seth as Messiah in, 116 n52
- on souls passing through river of fire, 97 n134
- as source of Jewish legendary material, ix
- and view that
  - Abraham learned witchcraft in Egypt, 191 n80
  - Akedah took place on Day of Atonement, 232 n248
  - all souls are part of Adam's soul, 57 n19
  - demons are souls of wicked, 82 n98
  - Yofiel as teacher of Shem in, 505 n117
  - Zadkiel as teacher of Abraham in, 505 n117
  - Zagzagel as teacher of Moses in, 505 n117
- See also* mysticism; mystic literature
- Kabbalists
  - having power to conjure up Elijah, 1018
- Kaddish
  - to be recited by Zerubbabel after God's lecture on new Torah, 1120 n25
  - See also* prayers, Jewish
- Kadesh
  - name, meaning of ("sanctity"), 734
  - place of judgment against Moses and Aaron, 194
- Kadesh-Barnea
  - Israelites remaining at, for 19 years, 731
  - Moses sending spies from, on 27 Sivan, 707
  - rebellion of Korah at, 731
- Kadosh (the Holy One), 4. *See also* God: names and titles of



- kaf (letter)  
 creation of world through, 4  
 standing for  
*kavod* ("honor"), 4  
*keter* ("crown"), 4  
*kisseh* ("throne of God"), 4  
*See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet
- Kafziel (angel)  
 in charge of Saturn, 131 n61
- Kahana, R.  
 saved by Elijah, 1001
- Kal (angel)  
 guardian angel of Nebuchadnezzar, 1104 n104
- Kanah  
 book of Kabbalah authored by Elkanah, 1018
- Kangar  
 author of Midrash of Chaldees, 157
- Karaïtes  
 attempting to ridicule Rabbanites, 270 n100
- Karaite sources  
 slandering Boaz, 866 n60
- Kardu  
 mountain on which ark rested, 151 n48
- Karnaim  
 abode of Job, 458 n21
- Kasbiel (angel)  
 as chief of the oath, 137 n9
- Kasdim (people)  
 identified with Chaldees, 243
- Kasdim (place)  
 location of Nimrod's palace, 186
- Kaspiel. *See* Kasbiel
- Kastimon and Afira  
 monsters as rulers of abode of Cainites, 110 n34
- kataṭav* ("to write")  
 meaning may be "to edit," 1071 n15
- Katriel (angel). *See* Gadriel
- Kawkabel (fallen angel)  
 teaching men about astrology, 119
- Kazban (Falsifier). *See* Zabnak
- Kazfiel (angel)  
 angel of death in charge of kings, 42 n187
- Kedushah  
 recited by Israel only on Sabbath, 1043 n36
- Kemuel (angel)  
 destroyed by Moses, 613  
 leader of destroying angels, 214 n179
- Kemuel (*cont.*)  
 as porter in charge of 12,000 angels of destruction, 613
- Kemuel (person)  
 Balaam belonging to family of, 761 n722  
 identified with  
 Balaam, 244 n315, 761 n722  
 Beor, 244 n315
- Kenaani  
 another name for Sihon, 752 n669
- Kenan (son of Arpachshad), 116 n53  
 ancestor of Enoch, 126  
 grandchild of Seth, founder of a city, 116 n53  
 inducing his generation to worship idols, 116 n53  
 master of wisdom, 116 n53
- Kenath (city)  
 Nobah giving name to, 799
- Kenaz  
 campaigns of, 858-860  
 chosen by lot to be prince over Israel, 855  
 commanded by God to deposit 12 stones in holy ark, 856  
 death of, 859  
 executing those who murmured against him, 858  
 fighting with 300,000 men, 858  
 having three daughters, 859  
 name of, 857 n1  
 people murmuring against, 858  
 praying to God for sign by means of sword, 858  
 reigning for 57 years, 858  
 and Seenamias (sons of Caleb), as spies, 844 n10  
 son of Caleb, 857 n1  
 son of Othniel, 857 n1  
 stepfather of Caleb, 861 n25  
 vision of, concerning length of world, 859  
 younger brother of Caleb, 861 n25
- Keni  
 elder from tribe of Gad, 696  
 one of seven names of Jethro, 493
- Kenites  
 attitude of Saul toward, 902 n60  
 to announce to Israel arrival of Messiah, 776
- Keren ha-Puch  
 name, meaning of  
 "as the diamond," 462 n37  
 "splendid as saffron," 462 n37  
 third daughter of Job, 462 n37  
 translated in LXX as "horn of Amalthea," 462 n37  
*See also* Amaltheas
- Kesed (city)  
 founded by descendants of Kesed, 243
- Kesed (nephew of Abraham)  
 descendants of, establishing themselves opposite to Shinar, 243  
 Kasdim (Chaldees) named for, 243
- Keteb (most dangerous of demons), 660
- Keturah  
 Abraham's third wife, 243 n309  
 daughter of Japheth, 244 n309, 244 n314  
 identified with Hagar, 243, 243 n309  
 name, meaning of, 243 n309  
 sons of  
 as blemished offspring of Abraham, 406  
 names of, 244 n309  
 not to come near Isaac, 243, 244 n311
- keys, held by God, 997 n12
- Kezef (angel)  
 coming to destroy Israel, 730 n595  
 of destruction, struggling with Moses, 623  
 fighting against Moses on Horeb, 730 n595  
 name, meaning of ("wrath"), 730 n595
- Keziah  
 name, meaning of  
 "exquisite as aromatic cassia," 462 n37  
 "perfume," 461  
 second daughter of Job, 461  
 using censer, 461
- Kibroth-hattaavah (place)  
 name, meaning of, 699
- kid  
 as atoning sacrifice for deception of dipping Joseph's coat in kid's blood, 340  
 as atoning sacrifice on Day of Atonement, 265  
 blood of, resembling human blood, 339  
 of dedication offering  
 corresponding to governors, 671  
 significance of, for Nahshon and for tribes of Asher, Benjamin, Dan, Ephraim, Issachar, Manasseh, Reuben, and Simeon, 666-670  
 symbolic significance of, in history of world, 671



- kid (*cont.*)  
   and Judah  
     Tamar deceiving Judah with kid,  
       as Jacob deceived his father,  
       347 n87  
   for Passover sacrifice, 265  
   reward for Tamar, 344  
   rules for ritual slaughtering of,  
     observed by brothers of  
     Joseph, 328  
   as sin offering of atonement on 10  
     Tishri, 341
- Kiddush  
   benedictions for, formulated by  
     men of Great Synagogue,  
     1128 n58  
   *See also* prayers, Jewish
- kidneys  
   for making resolves, 447  
   one of 12 guides of men, giving  
     counsels, 671 (*see also*  
     body, human; guides: of  
     men)
- Kikanos (king of Ethiopia)  
   death of, 489  
   laying siege to city for nine years,  
     489  
   war of, against nations of East, 489
- kikayon  
   caused to grow to protect Jonah,  
     1034
- Kilab (son of David)  
   one of four sinless men, 912 n7  
   (*see also* sinless lives)
- kindness  
   to wayfarer, 393 n296 (*see also* hos-  
     pitality)
- king  
   without army, 1  
   to country as heart is to body, 218  
     n202  
   forgiven for sins up to day of coro-  
     nation, 902 n53  
   never to be present at funeral, 947  
     n6  
   people's demand for, 895, 897-898  
     n47
- kingdom  
   one of crowns of Abraham, 188  
     n57  
   one of four horns in four corners  
     of Tabernacle, 648 (*see also*  
     *under* horn)  
   one of three crowns Israel received  
     from God, 670 (*see also*  
     *under* crown[s])
- kingdoms  
   three, Israel subject to (Babylon,  
     Media, and Greece), 361
- kingdoms (*cont.*)  
   60 in number, 672 n399
- kingdoms, four. *See* four kingdoms
- kings  
   anointed (Saul, David, Joash, and  
     Jehoash), 658 n371  
   claiming to be gods, four in num-  
     ber (Hiram, Nebuchad-  
     nezzar, Pharaoh, Joash),  
     1039 n16  
   Davidic, permitted to sit in Temple  
     court, 930 n88  
   doing evil, having no share in  
     world to come, 1038-1039  
     n6 (*see also* world to come:  
     those having no share in)  
   of earth, consulting Balaam about  
     portents on day of revela-  
     tion, 600  
   of east, coming to Abraham, 237  
   Edomite, coming from alien peo-  
     ples, 324  
   four (David, Asa, Jehoshaphat,  
     Hezekiah), prayers of, in  
     war, 986 n21  
   Jewish, coming from their own  
     people, 324  
   of Judah, in third division of  
     Paradise, 19  
   law for, first herald of Solomon  
     reciting, 969  
   ruling over whole world (Solomon,  
     Ahab), 987  
   of west, coming to Abraham,  
     237
- Kings, Book of  
   Jeremiah as editor of, 1071 n15
- king's highway, 751
- Kingu  
   and Tiamat, 30 n118
- kinship. *See* blood relationship
- Kiriath-Arba ("City of Four")  
   inhabited by Anak, 707  
   *See also* Hebron
- Kiriath-Jearim  
   Uriah coming from, 1071 n14
- Kirkisani  
   Karaite writer, 661 n381  
   treatise of, on Jewish sects, 661  
     n381
- Kiryat Arba. *See* Kiriath-Arba
- Kishon River  
   fighting against Sisera, 868  
   troops of Sisera drowned in, 868
- Kislev (month)  
   15th of  
     Jacob celebrating Feast of  
       Weeks, 393 n301
- Kislev (*cont.*)  
   24th of  
     rain stopping, 147  
   compensated with feast of  
     Hanukkah, 656 n367  
   everything ready for Tabernacle in,  
     655  
   and Tever  
     Sihon and Og conquered in,  
       1151  
   *See also* date
- Kislon (elder from tribe of  
   Benjamin), 696
- Kitor (city)  
   ruled by Queen of Sheba, accord-  
     ing to legend of hoopoe,  
     958-959
- Kittim  
   identified with Italy, 419 n425  
   identified with Rome, 254 n19,  
     777 n782  
   victorious against Africans, 419
- knowledge  
   given by God for sanctification of  
     His holy Name, 414 n406  
   and wisdom given by God to resist  
     temptation, 414 n406
- kof (letter)  
   creation of world through, 4  
   fourth letter of name of Isaac, on  
     standard of tribe of Dan,  
     686  
   as letter of word *ketz* ("end"), not  
     contained in names of 12  
     tribes, 409 n383  
   numerical value of (100), height of  
     Temple in ells, 253  
   standing for *kelalah* ("curse"), 4  
   third letter of Jacob, 253  
   on standard of Ephraim, 686  
   *See also* alphabet; letters of alpha-  
     bet
- Kohath (son of Levi), 805  
   four sons of (Amram, Izhar,  
     Hebron, Uzziel), 718  
   grandfather of Moses, 480  
   image of, on Solomon's throne,  
     968  
   name, meaning of ("bluntness"),  
     438, 718  
   one of seven pious men of world,  
     968 (*see also* *under* pious:  
     men)  
   one of six righteous men who drew  
     Shekinah back from six  
     heavens, 473  
   sons of  
     entrusted with transportation of  
       ark, 665



Kohath (*cont.*)  
 sons of (*cont.*)  
 most distinguished among  
 Levites, 683  
 taking care of  
 ark of covenant, 683  
 Holy of Holies in desert, 683  
 Kohathites  
 first to be numbered in census of  
 Levites, 683 (*see also* cen-  
 sus[es] of Israel)  
 having to walk backwards, 683  
 slain by God for unwillingness to  
 take care of ark, 683  
 Kokabiel (angel)  
 of stars, prostrating before  
 Metatron, 130  
 Koptiziah, mountains of  
 Zepho slaying monster in, 418  
 Korah (son of Esau), 321  
 and Dathan and Abiram,  
 Tabernacle of, 724  
 death of, 1087 n53  
 discovering one of places where  
 Joseph hid valuables, 397  
 in fifth division of Paradise, 20  
 followers of  
 appointed as keepers of portals  
 of hell, 726  
 death of, by heavenly fire con-  
 suming souls and leaving  
 bodies, 1087 n53  
 punishment of, 725-726  
 to be raised from earth, one of  
 seven wonders of Messiah,  
 1021  
 250 in number, 725, 728  
 253 in number, 720 n563  
 and Moses  
 K. abusing M. and Torah, 720-  
 722  
 K. feeling slighted by M. when  
 Elizaphan appointed chief  
 of Levite division of  
 Kohathites, 718  
 K. inciting rebellion against M.,  
 720  
 K. questioning M. about laws,  
 719  
 M. pleading with K., 722-725  
 name, meaning of ("baldness"),  
 718  
 one of two wealthy men who per-  
 ished on account of wealth,  
 798  
 pride bringing about fall of, 718  
 punishment of  
 continuing in hell, 725

Korah (*cont.*)  
 punishment of (*cont.*)  
 K. consumed by fire, 726 n585  
 to cease after resurrection, 725  
 rebellion of, 718-720  
 and commandment of fringes  
 (*tzitzit*), 720 n566  
 gaining support from people,  
 723  
 including members of all tribes  
 except Levi, 720 n563  
 taking place during sojourn at  
 Kadesh-Barnea, 731  
 relationship of, to Asaph, 728 n590  
 riches of, 718, 719 n560  
 sons of  
 as authors of many psalms, 728  
 n590  
 entering Paradise alive, 728  
 n590 (*see also* Paradise:  
 entering alive)  
 number of, 728 n589  
 as prophets, 888 n1  
 receiving prophetic gift, 727  
 relieved by prayer of Hannah,  
 890  
 saved by flying in air, 728 n589  
 three in number  
 as composers of psalms, 823  
 saved because of their repen-  
 tance, 724, 726-728  
 three pillars on which world  
 rests, 728 n590  
 swallowed up by earth, 725  
 to bear witness to God on day of  
 judgment, 726 n586  
 treasurer of Pharaoh, 718  
 wife of, inciting K. to rebellion  
 against Moses, 719, 726

Koran  
 and story of torn garment proving  
 Joseph's innocence, 399  
 n340  
 Korduene (Armenia). *See* Kardu  
 Kushta (place)  
 inhabitants of  
 never speaking untruth, 862 n28  
 not dying before old age, 862  
 n28  
 name, meaning of, 862 n28

## L

Laban  
 and Balaam  
 B. identified with L., 796, 796  
 n855

Laban (*cont.*)  
 and Balaam (*cont.*)  
 relationship between, 295 n229  
 blessed on account of merits of  
 Jacob, 1027 n6 (*see also*  
 Jacob: merits of; merits)  
 brother of Rebekah, 251  
 deceitfulness of, 283  
 fearing Esau, 294 n220  
 having two daughters, 283  
 and Israel  
 L. as Israel's archenemy, 760  
 L. inciting Pharaoh and Amalek  
 against Israel, 760  
 and Jacob  
 anger of J. toward L., 284  
 covenant between, 293, 921,  
 922 n57  
 dream of L. warning against  
 harming J., 292  
 enmity of L. toward descendants  
 of J., 862 n29  
 in Haran, 278  
 L. conspiring with Esau against  
 J., 293-294  
 L. deceiving J. about returning  
 home, 290  
 L. envying wealth and good for-  
 tune of J., 290  
 L. overtaking J. at mountain of  
 Gilead, 292  
 L. pursuing J., 292  
 L. using witchcraft against J.,  
 294 n223  
 Michael appearing to L., telling  
 him not to do anything to  
 J., 292  
 pious daughters of L. marrying  
 Jacob, 274 n121  
 punishment of L. for evil designs  
 against J., 295 n228  
 king of Aram, slain by Jacob, 314  
 name  
 as antiphrastic, 241 n293  
 meaning of, 241 n293  
 other names of  
 Arami ("the deceiver"), 283  
 Cushan, 861  
 prominent social position of, 280  
 n149  
 sorcery of, 243, 294 n223  
 swearing not to pass over stone  
 boundary with hostile  
 intent, 293  
 teraphim of  
 L. consulting teraphim, 281  
 L. getting another set of  
 teraphim, which revealed  
 J.'s escape, 294 n220



Laban (*cont.*)

- teraphim of (*cont.*)
  - L. searching for teraphim in J.'s camp, 292
  - stolen by Rachel, 291
  - wife of
    - Adinah, bearing twin daughters, Leah and Rachel, 262
- Labbiel (archangel)
  - commanding angels opposed to creation of man, 52
  - name changed to Raphael, the Rescuer, 52 (*see also* angels, general: types)
- Labosordacus (son of Niglissar; grandson of Evil-merodach), 1112 n2
- Lacedaemonians
  - as descendants of Abraham, 244 n314
- ladder
  - of Jacob, vision of four kingdoms and, 277, 279 n134
- Lahad
  - one of five other names of Bezalel, 642
- Lahash (angel)
  - leading angels to snatch words of Israelites interceding for Moses, 809
- Lahmi (brother of Goliath)
  - conquered by David, 943 n146
- Lailah (angel), 57 n20, 197 n98
  - angel of night, 55
  - fighting for Abraham, 195
- lamb
  - he-lamb of peace offering, corresponding to building of Second Temple, 672
  - on Solomon's throne, 968
- lamb, paschal
  - blood of, on doorposts and lintel, as reminder of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, 535
  - commandment to sacrifice, 534
  - sacrifice of
    - early law concerning, 535
    - Hallel chanted during, 540 n225
    - to show that Israelites had given up idolatry, 535
  - selection of, 536 n206
  - See also* Passover; sacrifice
- lame
  - made whole, 218
- Lamech (father of Noah)
  - blind, 111
  - famine in time of, 191 n64

Lamech (*cont.*)

- great-grandson of Cain, 111
- inadvertently killing son, 111
- killing Cain, 111
- and knowledge of future, 134 n4
- life span of, 132 n64
- as prophet, 112 n42
- 77 descendants of, perishing at time of flood, 112 n37
- son of Methuselah, 133
- two wives of, 111-112
- lamed (letter)
  - creation of world through, 4
  - standing for *luhot* ("celestial tablets"), 4
  - See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet
- lament, great, 1078-1081
- lamentation
  - over Temple, 1078
- Lamentations, Book of, 1071 n15
- Lamia
  - Lilith conceived as, 67 n40
- lamps
  - golden, on Solomon's throne, 968
- lance
  - as weapon of Phinehas, 781
- land. *See* Holy Land
- language(s)
  - acquisition of, through swallowing, 115 n49
  - Adam naming animals in 70 languages, 512
  - African, 158 n72
  - Agogian, 158 n72
  - Ahasuerus ruling that wife must speak language of husband, 1137
  - of animals
    - Arabic legend about, 957 n34
    - Elijah understanding, 1004
    - Solomon's knowledge of, 957 n34
    - Islamic legends about, 958 n34
    - Solomon's story of guest wanting to learn, 953-954
  - assigned to nations, 164
  - confounded, 164
  - number of, 159 n72
  - invented by Adam, 60
  - 70 in number, 114, 413, 512
  - obscene, one of eight grievous sins of Sennacherib, 1048 n60
  - original, spoken by man and animals, 70 n58
  - See also under individual language*
- Lapidoth. *See* Lappidoth
- Lappidoth
  - one of names of Barak, 870 n73

Latinus (king of Kittim)

- destroying canal from Kittim to Africa, 420
- marriage of, to Ushpiziwnah, daughter of Asdrubal, 420
- war of, against Asdrubal, 420
- laundry
  - to be done on Thursdays, one of ten regulations of Ezra, 1122
- laurel tree
  - to make water sweet, 566
  - See also* tree(s)
- laver
  - for sanctuary, made from mirrors, 654
- law(s)
  - biblical
    - forbidding marriage of Egyptian males and Jewish females, 949 n16
    - that married woman should not be alone with man, 942 n143
    - transgressed by Solomon, 948
  - civil, given to Israel at Marah, 567
  - concerning last wish of dying, 924 n71
  - eight sections of, revealed to Moses on first day of dedication of Tabernacle, 673
  - favoring rich in Sodom, 209
  - fish must be devoured by Leviathan, 1033
  - forbidding sacrifice outside Temple in Jerusalem, 997 n13
  - of God, producing pious man, 47-48
  - ignorance of, not an excuse, 786
  - of inheritance, and succession of Solomon, 946 n3
  - Jewish
    - forbidding counting of Jews, 638 n314
    - stories explaining about forbidden meat given to dogs, 546
  - against killing animal and its young on same day, 899
  - of marriage, given to Israel at Marah, 567
  - Moses as interpreter of, 616 n248
  - of nature, suspended during mourning for Methuselah, 139
  - of Nehemiah and company that no vessel or utensil is to be handled on Sabbath, 1120 n26



law(s) (*cont.*)

- obliging day laborer to work until dark, 287
  - oral, consisting of Midrash, Halakhah, and Haggadah, 592
  - revealed by God through divine prophecy, 616 n248
  - of sanctity, revealed to Aaron and descendants, 673
  - of separation of Levites, revealed on first day of dedication of Tabernacle, 673
  - suspensions of, 896-897 n42
  - that firstborn son of patriarchs to be ruler of world, 1132
  - that king never to be present at funeral, 947 n6
  - written on hearts, 611
- law (Torah)
- fence around, 612 n239
  - gradual revelation of, 239 n275
  - neglect of observance of, war of Amalek as punishment for, 577
  - observance of, 50 n6 (*see also* Halakhah; Ten Commandments) and disease, 567
  - study of, first taken up at Elim, 567
- See also* law(s); Torah

Law of Moses. *See* Torah: of Moses

## lawsuits

- civil cases of, to be handled swiftly, 690
- criminal cases of, to be handled slowly, 690
- settled by manna, 571

## laymen

- one of three divisions of Israel (*see also* priest[s]; Levites), 592

## lead

- third artificial heaven of Hiram made from, 1104

## Leah

- age of, at death, 44 years, 319 n307
- barrenness of, 285
  - not mentioned in old Midrashim, 288 n170
- beauty of, 283
- bowing before Esau, 305 n262
- burial of, in Hebron, 98 n137
- children of
  - Issachar as fifth son of L., 287
  - L. bearing twins seven months after marriage, 285

Leah (*cont.*)children of (*cont.*)

- Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah as sons of L., 285
  - seventh child of, a daughter, 287
  - Zebulun as sixth son of L., 287
- daughter of Laban and Adinah, 262
- death of, 319 n307, 320
- envied by Rachel, 285
- first to give thanks to God since creation, 285
- as gadabout, 289 n193
- God having mercy on, 285
- gossip about, 285
- and Jacob
  - L. as wife of J., 283
  - L. giving Zilpah to J. as wife, 286
  - L. hated by J., 285, 288 n168
- as one of four mothers, 434 n3 (*see also* mothers; Rachel; Rebekah; Sarah)
- one of seven sterile women who bore children, 878 n111
- as one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271
- supervising one of seven classes of women, 23 n97
- to marry older of Rebekah's sons, 283
- as twin sister of Rachel, 319 n307
- weakness of eyes of, reason for, 283
- weeping of, causing eyelashes to fall out, 283
- in women's Paradise, 940
- and Zilpah
  - L. naming second son of Z. Asher, 286
  - L. naming son of Z. Gad, 286

## Lebanon

- Canaan dwelling in, 188
- Temple as, 1077 n29

## Lebanon, Mount

- as fifth mountain on which heavenly Jerusalem will descend, 595 n184 (*see also* under Jerusalem: heavenly)

Lebiel. *See* Labbiel

## Lebuzar Duk

- one of three sons of Evil-merodach, 1112 n2

## left hand

- God created world with, 1166 n143

## left side

- of Messiah, 100 n142

## Leliel (angel)

- of night, prostrating before Metatron, 130

Lemech. *See* Lamech

## Lemuel

- another name of Solomon, 946 n2

## lentils

- as mourner's meal, 259 n41
  - of Adam and Eve after murder of Abel, 257
  - of Isaac after death of Abraham, 257
  - of parents of Haran after he perished in furnace, 257
  - reason for, 257
  - as price of birthright, 259 n46
  - symbolizing death, 257
- Leo (Lion) (sign of Zodiac)
- answering Haman in defense of Israel, 1151

## leopard

- on Solomon's throne, 968

## leper(s)

- considered as dead, 517 n142, 1042 n29 (*see also* blind; childless; poor)
- denied right of staying within camp, 675
- law regarding, 675
- one of five insulting names hurled at David by Shimei, 931 n96
- put out of camp, 674
- regulations for cleansing, 673

## leprosy

- Aaron and Miriam afflicted with, for slandering Moses, 702
- Abimelech afflicted with, on account of treatment of Isaac, 260-261
- affliction of those who worshiped golden calf, 675
- bathing in blood as remedy for, 499 n101
- Cain afflicted with, 107, 109 n28, 675
- daughters of Zion afflicted with, for unchastity, 675
- as disease of Naaman, Syrian captain, 1029
- Egyptian bondage compared to, 512
- Egyptians afflicted with, at time of Moses' abandonment, 477
- Gehazi afflicted with, for frustrating purpose of Elisha, 675
- Goliath afflicted with by David, 916



leprosy (*cont.*)

Goliath afflicted with (*cont.*)  
 for reviling God, 675  
 Haman afflicted with, 1177 n174  
 Job afflicted with, 457  
 Miriam afflicted with, for slander-  
 ing Moses, 675  
 Naaman afflicted with, for arro-  
 gance, 675  
 as part of sixth plague, 530  
 Pharaoh afflicted with  
 in time of Abraham, 190  
 in time of Moses, 497  
 as punishment  
 for adultery, 931 n96  
 for arrogance, 1042 n30  
 for coming near to burn incense  
 before Lord, 728  
 of Moses, 512  
 for pride of Naaman, 1030 n15  
 of serpent, 79 n83  
 for speaking ill of neighbor, 702  
 of those who devote selves to  
 acquiring possessions, 109  
 n28  
 Shebnah afflicted with, for evil  
 deeds, 1051 n64  
 13 sins punished by (blasphemy,  
 unchastity, murder, false  
 suspicion, pride, illegal  
 appropriation of rights of  
 others, slander, theft, per-  
 jury, profanation of Divine  
 Name, idolatry, envy, con-  
 tempt of Torah), 675  
 Uzziah afflicted with, for presum-  
 ing on rights of priesthood,  
 675  
 whoever enters Tabernacle without  
 being commanded to be  
 afflicted with, 663  
 letters of alphabet  
 combination of, by which God cre-  
 ated world, 641, 642 n326  
 and creation, 4 n10, 49 n3  
 crowns and embellishments of, 892  
 n24  
 engraved on precious stones of  
 breastplate of Aaron, 650,  
 651 n356  
 mystic theory of, 5 n12  
 and pedagogic Haggadot, 4-5 n10  
 refraining from testifying against  
 Israel, 1079  
 speaking to God, 3  
 on standards of tribes, 686  
 Torah glorified with, 807  
*See also under individual letters*

## Levi

age of, at death, 137 years, 438  
 ascension of, 301 n251, 437-439  
 L. taken to heaven by Michael,  
 300  
 blessed  
 by God, 300  
 by Isaac, 316-317, 438  
 censured by Jacob for sin, 410  
 n387  
 covenant of, Abrahamic covenant  
 referred to as, 674 n409  
 death of, 439  
 descendants of, to serve in sanctu-  
 ary, 316  
 discovering money in sack of grain,  
 374, 375 n221  
 favorable portrayals of, 375 n216  
 glorification of, in legend of  
 Asenath, 427 n432  
 idealized as prophet and priest,  
 334 n34  
 and Judah  
 fighting against Ninevites, 312  
 resembling Jacob, 328 n3  
 last of Jacob's sons to die, 465  
 loving-kindness of, to son of  
 Pharaoh, 427  
 making amends for sin at  
 Shechem, 821  
 name  
 given by God, 285  
 meaning of  
 "accompanied," 288 n174  
 "borrowed," 288 n174  
 "conduct," 433, 718  
 one crowned with 24 gifts of  
 priests, 285  
 one of six righteous men who drew  
 Shekinah back from six  
 heavens, 473  
 one of weak among sons of Jacob,  
 396 n324  
 possessing wisdom, prophecy, and  
 priesthood, 375 n216  
 priesthood bestowed on L., 437  
 because of sin of Reuben, 407  
 prophetic spirit of, 426-427  
 as seventh pious man, 682 (*see also*  
*under pious: men*)  
 and Simeon  
 conspiring against Joseph, 332,  
 334 n41  
 slaying inhabitants of Shechem,  
 308-309, 438  
 summoned through angel Gabriel,  
 285  
 third of Jacob's sons to die, 465 n2

Levi (*cont.*)

third son of Leah, 285  
 as tithe of Jacob's sons, 300, 403  
 to destroy Mizraim with sword,  
 385  
 to execute vengeance on Shechem  
 for Dinah, 437  
 tribe of  
 blessed by Moses, 821  
 clinging to Abrahamic covenant,  
 673  
 discerning plan of Pharaoh, 467  
 elders from (Amram, Hananiah,  
 Nethand, Sithri), 696  
 given title "elect of God" in  
 Scripture, 912 n1  
 having responsibility of atoning  
 for sin of firstborn, 682  
 having smallest number of sin-  
 ners, 857 n3  
 high priest to come from, 649  
 Moses' psalm of, 823  
 not worshiping golden calf, 601,  
 626, 673  
 observing Torah in Egypt, 673  
 precious stone of  
 carbuncle, 651  
 emerald, 856  
 receiving crowns, 601  
 refusing to serve Pharaoh, 468  
 n6  
 remaining faithful to covenant  
 of fathers, 403  
 remaining faithful to God, 473  
 as scholars to expound Torah  
 and render decisions, 407  
 too wise to be deceived by  
 Pharaoh, 474 n32  
 tradition of Scribes belonging  
 to, 410 n387  
 visions of  
 on deathbed, 437  
 second, 438  
 warfare of  
 L. assisting Judah in battle  
 against Amorites, 314  
 L. attacking Edom to east, 321  
 L. in battle of Sartan, 315  
 L. slaying Elon, king of Gaash,  
 314  
 wives of  
 daughter of Jobab, grandson of  
 Eber, 348  
 Milcah, 438  
 two in number, 474 n33  
 Leviathan  
 abode of, in depths of sea, 31 n127



Leviathan (*cont.*)

- and angels
  - battle of L. with angels in last hour, 28-29
  - L. as bad angel, 32 n127
  - struggle between, 306 n275
- and Behemoth (*see also* Behemoth)
  - allegorical interpretations of, 32 n127
  - combat between, 29, 32 n139, 33
  - as female-male pair, 30 n127
  - as food of pious in life to come, 31 n127
  - legends of, and Messianic banquet, 31 n127
- as clean animal, 32 n139
- created on fifth day, 28, 77
- description of, 28
- empowered to destroy rivers, 1047 n55
- as evil, 30 n124
- fins of, and ritual slaughtering, 32 n139
- as food for pious at end of time, 28-29, 31 n127
- form of, as serpent encircling world, 32 n127
- foul smell of, 28, 30 n125
- and fox, 38
- gender of
  - Leviathan and Behemoth as female-male pair, 28, 30 n118, 30 n127
  - female, 30 n118
  - killed by God, 28, 30 n126
- God sporting with, 30 n124
- hide of
  - canopy over heads of pious made from, 30 n123
  - garments of Adam and Eve made from, 30 n123, 80 n93
- identification of
  - with "Evil" in Kabbalah, 32 n127
  - with Rahab and angel of death, 20 n73
  - with Satan in Kabbalah, 42 n187
  - with sea, 30 n125
  - with vault of heaven to which signs of Zodiac affixed, 31 n127
- Jonah speaking to, 1033
- kept in check
  - by archangel Jaoel, 31 n127
  - by stickleback fish, 28

Leviathan (*cont.*)

- lying on abyss, 39 n142
  - power of, over animal world, 28, 37-38
  - relationship of, with angel of death, 42 n187
  - representing evil, 306 n275
  - representing power of heathen, 30 n124
  - slain by God, 30 n127, 306 n275
  - spouting up water at winter solstice, frightening big fish to stop eating small, 2
  - and story about compensating pious son, 42 n190
  - as *taninim* or *tanin*, 29 n117
  - to be captured by Jonah in days to come, 1033 n31
  - to devour all fish, 1033
  - torn by Ziz, 32 n139
  - two consorts of, 39 n141
  - in vision of Abraham, 200 n114
- Levite
- of Judges 17:7 identified with Jonathan of Judges 18:30, 883 n130
- Levites
- apathy of, about returning to Palestine, 1121
  - appointed by Moses as judges, 626
  - becoming servants of sanctuary, 626-627 n279
  - census of, 681-683 (*see also* census[es] of Israel)
  - Levites omitted by David from census, 936
  - confessing to wanting to prove whether Tabernacle is holy, 855
  - consecrated as servants of God and His sanctuary, on first day of dedication of Tabernacle, 673
  - defiling selves through contact with dead bodies of worshipers of golden calf, 674 n410
  - descendants of Moses as, 511 n121
  - divided by Moses into eight sections, 683
  - divisions of, 665, 683-684
  - fighting with other tribes over returning to Egypt, 746
  - giving tithe to priests, 821
  - killed by Babylonians for refusing to sing songs, 1088
  - not tempted to rebellion by spies, 821
  - number of, 682

Levites (*cont.*)

- offerings of, on first day of dedication of Tabernacle, 674
  - as officers of court, 1124 n37
  - one of three divisions of Israel (*see also* priest[s]; laymen), 592
  - punished with loss of tithes for not wanting to return to Palestine, 1121
  - remaining true to God, 821
  - rewarded for piety in refusing to worship golden calf, 626 n279
  - slaying those who worshiped golden calf, 821
  - as Sons of Moses, 1088
  - taking place of firstborn, 682
  - to be blessed with earthly goods, 821
  - walking barefoot, 683
- Lewdness, Well of, 778
- libations
- wine required for
    - coming from En-Gedi, 709 n519
    - coming from Miriam's well, 709 n519
  - See also* offering; sacrifice(s)
- Libnian language
- used by Semites, 158 n72
- Libra (Balance) (sign of Zodiac)
- answering Haman in defense of Israel, 1151
- lice
- plague of Egypt, 523, 524, 525
  - brought through mediation of Aaron, 528
- licentiousness
- of Amorites, 210 n155
  - in Sodom, 210 n155
- lie, diplomatic
- sometimes permitted, 307 n276
  - See also* deceit; falsehood; lying
- life
- eternal, one of seven gifts enjoyed by Adam, 84
  - as temporary sojourn, 396 n327
  - window of, in first heaven, 503
- life span
- of antediluvians, rationalistic explanation of, 78 n72
  - of first ten generations, 102 n1
  - human
    - shortened after death of Abraham, 257 n36
    - shortened in days of David, 257 n36
  - in time of patriarchs, 235



## light

bright, emanating from body of persons distinguished for beauty, 942 n137  
 celestial (*see also* light: heavenly)  
   appearing at birth of heroes, 134 n1, 219 n203, 476 n42  
   radiating from countenance of Jochebed, 474  
   shining in Cave of Machpelah as long as Jacob dwelt in Canaan, 415 n423  
 created on first day, 77, 82 n98  
 and darkness, struggle between, 11 n42  
 as element of creation, 29 n114  
 of first day  
   allowing man to see whole world, 5  
   concealed in anticipation of wickedness, 5  
   different from light created on fourth day, 5  
   to appear to pious in world to come, 5  
 first ray of, 7  
 from God's splendor, as beginning of creation, 8 n18  
 heavenly (*see also* light: celestial)  
   at birth of heroes, 219 n203  
   one of seven gifts enjoyed by Adam, 84  
 of heavenly bodies, 25 n98  
 from light, 8 n18  
 miraculous, shining in Rebekah's tent, 242 n303  
 one of ten things produced on first day of creation, 5  
 primordial  
   and creation, 85 n104  
   shining on Moses for first three months of life, 476 n42  
   and splendor of Adam's countenance, 85 n104  
   to appear at first trumpet blast of Elijah in Messianic time, 1021  
 reaching full strength in time of Solomon, 967 n57  
 shining over R. Akiba's grave, 236 n265  
 as sign of heavenly origin, 134 n3  
 lightning  
   weapon of God against Pharaoh, 559 (*see also* hurricane; storm; thunder; thunderstorms)  
 lights  
   created on fourth day, 50 n7

## lilies

on Solomon's throne, 968  
 Lilith  
   abode of, in Egypt, 66 n40  
   and Adam  
     begetting demons, 131  
     descendants of, 114-115  
     L. as first wife of A., 64, 67 n40  
     L. insisting on full equality with A., 64  
   and children  
     babies protected from L. by amulet, 65  
     L. afflicting women in childbirth, 1020 n100  
     L. injuring babies, 64-65  
     L. slaying own children, 714  
     L. strangling little children with Ashmedai, 114 n45  
   created out of dust, 64  
   female spirit, 956 n25  
   husband of, as demon accompanying Caleb and Phinehas on spy mission, 843  
   identified with Babylonian Labartu, 67 n40  
   identified with Naamah, appearing to men in sleep, 110 n34  
   insubordination of, 67 n40  
   queen of Sheba, assailing Job, 457  
   queen of Zmargad, 458 n20  
   in Red Sea in Egypt, 67 n40  
   as wind spirit, 67 n40  
 Liliths (night spirits)  
   assembling under trees, according to German popular beliefs, 67 n40  
 lime powder  
   as weapon, 312  
 linen  
   blue, purple, and scarlet  
     among 13 materials for construction of Tabernacle, 640 (*see also under* Tabernacle)  
 lion(s)  
   among animals of fourth plague, 530 (*see also* plague[s]: against Egypt)  
   on ark, having fever, 147  
   associated with wine, 153, 155 n58  
   carrying out orders of Solomon, 971  
   carved by Moses on piece of Joseph's cup, 429  
   Daniel saved from, 1096 n76, 1096 n77  
   depicted on tribe of Judah's flag in wilderness, 686, 688

lion(s) (*cont.*)

engraved on silver leaf used to raise Joseph's coffin from Nile, 621  
 Esther referring to Ahasuerus as, 1168 n145  
 and fox, fable of, 262 n55, 302  
 gilded, on hippodrome, 970-971  
 golden, on Solomon's throne, 968  
 guarding doors of palace of Pharaoh, 518  
 hymn of praise of, 45 (*see also* praise)  
 as insignia of tribe of Judah, 689 n447  
 Judah known as, 409  
 as king of beasts, 913, 914 n16  
 likeness of fire of altar to, 661 n380  
 lizard as protector of, 43 n190  
 magic, 548 n3  
 Nebuchadnezzar described as, 1155-1156  
 and Noah, 150  
   encounter of, 148 n37  
   lion hurting N., 151 n51  
 number of, in pit of Darius, 1117 n16  
 one of four beings represented on Divine Throne, 621  
 ordered to do no harm to Daniel, 48  
 Ornias having form of, 965 n56  
 prophet of Judah killed by, 984 n8  
 with snake around neck, as pet of Nebuchadnezzar, 1103  
 Lion (sign of Zodiac). *See* Leo  
 lips  
   misshapen, because of curse of Ham, 154  
 lithology  
   Kenaz as master of, 857 n1  
 liturgical formulas  
   in angels' doxologies, 17 n70 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)  
 liturgy  
   traced back to angels, 17 n70 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)  
 liver  
   for anger, 447  
   one of 12 guides of men, promoting irritation, 671 (*see also* body, human; guides: of men)  
 lizard(s)  
   as antidote for scorpion's venom, 43  
   in desert of Shur, 566



lizard(s) (*cont.*)

as protector of lion, 43 n190  
and snake, ḥabarbar as offspring of, 324

## locusts

of eighth plague, preserved in brine to be eaten, 532  
kinds of, 992 n56  
as plague of Egypt, 524, 525

## Logos

and Enoch legends, 130 n61  
identified with Israel, 301 n253  
role of, in creation, according to Christians, 52 n12

long-suffering. *See* God: attributes of

## Lord

as avenger, 304  
swearing falsely by name of, 605  
*See also* God

## Lot

and Abraham  
L. deeply indebted to A., four times, 213-214  
L. leaving and forsaking God of A., 193  
L. ungrateful to A., 214 n171  
moving to Canaan, 179  
strife between, 193, 196 n82  
accused of being usurer, 214 n171  
admitted to kingdom of Sodom, 194  
as ancestor of David, 214 n171  
children of, refusing Torah, 593  
consequences of departure of, 194  
daughter of, riddle of Queen of Sheba about, 960  
and daughters, 215 n188  
incident with L.'s daughters, 216  
L. having two betrothed daughters, 214 n177  
L. ready to sacrifice honor of daughters, 213  
death of, 235  
descendants of, 214  
precluded from entering assembly of Lord, 794 n845  
hospitality and, 212, 214 n176  
immorality of, 193  
lasciviousness of, 214 n171, 215 n188  
love of husbandry as cause of downfall of, 1042 n30  
as perfect and pious man, 214 n171  
pleading for sinners, 212  
prophecy of punishment of descendants of, 214  
saved by archangel, 206

Lot (*cont.*)

settling in land of Moabites and Ammonites, 217 n189  
taken captive by Chedorlaomer, Arioch, and Tidal, 194  
wife of, 215 n180  
beholding Shekinah when turning to look back, 213  
betraying presence of angels, 212  
looking back at Sodom, 213  
L. ready to sacrifice honor of, 213  
turned into pillar of salt, 213, 214 n174, 215 n180

Lotan (son of Esau), 21

## lots

casting, 249  
by Haman, 1150-1152  
drawing  
to see how to kill Joseph, 334 n33  
to see who would bring Joseph's coat to Jacob, 343 n64  
falling against Jonah, 1031  
identifying sinners, 898  
Jacob assigning lands to tribes by, 784  
Kenaz identifying 6,110 sinners by means of, 855  
promised land divided by, 784  
stones of, crying out decision, 853 n47  
use of  
to choose leader, 855, 890 n17  
to identify sinners, 846, 855, 898  
*See also* augury; divination; magic arts; sorcery; Urim and Thummim; witchcraft

## love

as attribute of God, 714  
of father, extending to third generation, 223

## love of admiration

as one of seven tempter spirits, 435 (*see also* spirits: seven tempter)

## loving-kindness

of fathers, 224 n224

## Lubar, Mount

mountain on which ark rested, 156

## luck

emigration to Palestine and, 263 n66

## Lucus (king of Sardinia)

Turnus, king of Benevento, making war on, 417

## lungs

one of 12 guides of men, absorbing fluids, 671 (*see also* body, human; guides: of men)

## Luria, R. Isaac

and Elijah

E. at circumcision of R. Luria, 1019  
E. revealing mysteries of universe to R. Luria, 1019  
"father of Kabbalistic Renaissance," 1019

## Luz (bone)

almond-shaped bone forming nucleus of new body in resurrection, 401 n345, 862 n28  
immortal bone of body, 862 n28  
legend of, 39 n151  
coming to Arabs from Jews, 401 n345

## Luz (city)

angel of death having no power in, 861, 979  
captured by Israelites under Othniel, 860-861  
inhabitants of, never dying unless they leave city, 92 n113, 861  
not conquered by Sennacherib or Nebuchadnezzar, 861  
purple made in, 862 n28  
secret approach to, 860-861

## lying

of Adam and Eve, concerning son of Samael, 141-142  
*See also* deceit; falsehood; lie, diplomatic

## M

## Maani Shakir

identification of, 315 n292

## Maccabean wars

remiscences of, in legend of Jacob and Amorites, 315 n292 (*see also* historical reminiscence)

## Macedonia

sages of, applying medical knowledge practically, 157

## Macedonia-Greece

one of four kingdoms, 196 n82 (*see also* four kingdoms)

## Machir

grandson of Joseph, 422



Machpelah, Cave of  
 acquired by Abraham from Ephron, 235  
 as burial site (*see also* Hebron [city]: as burial site)  
 of Adam, 98 n137, 234, 236 n263  
 Esau selling claim to, 258  
 of Eve, 98 n137, 234  
 of Jacob, 414  
 order of graves in, 415 n423  
 of Sarah, 234  
 those buried in, to rise first, 236 n263  
 celestial light shining in, as long as Jacob dwelt in Canaan, 415 n423  
 conveyed with right of primogeniture, 244 n316  
 as Double Cave, 236 n263 (*see also* Double Cave)  
 as entrance to Paradise, 69 n49  
 as first portal of Garden of Eden, 68  
 fragrance of Paradise pervading whenever Jacob entered, 415 n423  
 guarded by angels, 234  
 Isaac wishing to be buried in, next to Abraham, 320  
 Israel's right to, legends explaining, 322 n316  
 Jacob giving Esau large sum of money for, 304, 306 n274  
 legend about, 248 n317  
 light of, 236 n266  
 merits of those sleeping in, Israelites receiving water from rock on account of, 732 (*see also* merits)  
 strangers coming to, to pray at, 249

Macob  
 marriage of, to pious daughters of Laban, 274 n121

mad  
 restored to reason, 218

Magdala  
 grove of cedars at, considered holy, 393 n308

Magdala of Dyers  
 as abode of Job, 458 n21

Magen David (shield of David)  
 magic power of, 964 n54

magic. *See* magic arts

magic arts  
 and Balaam (son of Beor), 417

magic arts (*cont.*)  
 books on, given by Abraham to children of his concubines, 244 n313

Egyptian magicians taking nine of ten measures allotted to world, 559

Egyptians as masters of, 955 n24

healing powers of, 157 (*see also* disease[s]; healing; illness; medicine; sickness)

Potiphar's wife and, 352

and subjugation of heavenly bodies, 118 n56

taught by Uzza and Azazel, 117

ten measures allotted to world, 559

*See also* augury; divination; lots; sorcery; Urim and Thummim; witchcraft

magic carpet of Solomon  
 story of, 971

magicians, Egyptian (*see also under* magic arts)  
 animating golden calf, 622 n266  
 attempting to save Egyptians from sea, 559  
 bringing frogs upon land, 527  
 not able to stop plagues they produced, 530-531  
 producing first two plagues with help of Ben Zadua, chief of demons, 529 n185

punishment of  
 by angel of face, 561-562 n53  
 by Metatron, 562  
 by Michael, 560  
 trying to produce plagues, 529 n185

turning water into blood, 527

magnificent building  
 statues of, Arabic origin of legend, 973 n77

Magog  
 punishment of people of, 698 n482  
*See also* Gog; and Magog

Magron (king of Egypt)  
 death of, 465  
 son of Pharaoh, 422

Mahalalel  
 ancestor of Enoch, 126  
 marriage of, to sister, 113 n42  
 one of seven pious men in pre-Abrahamic times, 116-117 n53 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 son of Kenan, 116 n53

Mahalath (daughter of Ishmael)  
 identified with Basemath, 274 n121, 274 n122  
 marriage of, to Esau, 273

Mahanaim  
 conquered by sons of Jacob, 315  
 name  
 changed to Penuel, 300  
 meaning of  
 "double host," 294  
 "host," 295  
 Shebir, king of, slain by Jacob, 314  
 site where angels of Palestine met Jacob, 294  
 site where Jacob saw men from Isaac's household, 295

Mahlah  
 husband of, as demon accompanying Caleb and Phinehas on spy mission, 843

Mahlia (first wife of Benjamin), 348

Mahlon  
 and Chilion  
 death of, punishment for Elimelech's sin, 864 n40  
 marrying daughters of Eglon, king of Moab, 862  
 punished for intermarriage, 862  
 sons of Elimelech, 862

Mahol  
 wisdom of three sons of, not as great as Solomon's, 949-950

Mahseiah (grandfather of Baruch and Seraiah)  
 one of eight priests descended from Rahab, 844 n12, 1093 n65

Makir, R.  
 identity of, 159 n75

Malachi  
 and Haggai and Zechariah  
 accompanying Daniel, 1096 n76  
 last representatives of prophecy, 1121  
 identified with Ezra, 1115 n5, 1121  
 identified with Mordecai, 1115 n5  
 one of eight postexilic prophets, 991 n56  
 among returning exiles, 1119  
 teaching that sacrifices could be offered before completion of Temple, 1119

Malala, Johan (chronologist)  
 on death of Cain, 113 n44

Malchiel (elder from tribe of Joseph), 696



Malchiel (grandson of Asher)  
 first husband of Hadorah, 348  
 name, meaning of, 434

male  
 changed into female in Leah's  
   womb, 287  
*See also* man (male)

*malham* (bird)  
 immortality of, 72  
 not eating of fruit of tree, 72  
*See also milham*; phoenix

Malol (king of Egypt, successor of  
 Magron)  
 called Maror ("bitterness") by  
   Israelites, 467  
 name, meaning of, 475 n36  
 oppressing Hebrews, 465

Maltiel  
 as teacher of Elijah in Kabbalah,  
   505 n117

mammals  
 Behemoth as most notable repre-  
   sentative of, 33  
 created on sixth day, 33  
 formed out of solid earth, 33  
*See also* animals

Mamre  
 and Abraham  
   M. advising A. concerning cir-  
     cumcision, 202  
   M. as disciple of A., 197 n92  
   M. giving pious advice, 203  
     n124  
   M. partaking of A.'s banquet,  
     205  
 at burial of Sarah, 235  
 field of, as site of God's appearance  
   to Abraham, 203 n124

man (Adam)  
 body of, created of earth, 50 n7  
 creation of, from dust, 53, 65  
 dust for, taken from place of atone-  
   ment, 54  
*See also* man (human beings;  
   humanity); man (male)

man (human beings; humanity)  
 actions of, as witnesses, 57 n20  
 and angels  
   angels and creation of man, 51-  
     53  
   man as angel, 47  
   man as terrestrial being inferior  
     to angels, 17 n66  
   man created in image and like-  
     ness of angels, 50 n6  
   man having more wisdom, 59  
   opinions of angels about cre-  
     ation, 51

man (*cont.*)  
 and angels (*cont.*)  
   superiority of man, 50 n6  
 body of, as microcosm, 47  
 born of woman, passing self off as  
   god, 776  
 combining heavenly and earthly  
   elements, 47, 49 n6  
 configured as monsters, 6, 9 n27  
 and creation  
   on account of merits of Jacob,  
     256 n35 (*see also* merits)  
   double account of, 67 n42  
   from dust, 263  
   by God with both hands, 49 n3  
   by hand of God, 47, 49 n3  
   in image and likeness of angels,  
     50 n6  
   by lower powers, 52 n12 (*see also*  
     Gnostic ideas)  
 man as beginning and end of,  
   60 n22  
 man as crown of, 50 n8  
 man as first work of, 55  
 man as purpose of, 50 n8  
 as mortal, 100 n142  
 opposition of angels to, 51, 614,  
   615 n247  
 on seventh day, 60 n22  
 on sixth day, 60 n22  
 death of, 58 n20  
   appearance of God at, 58 n20  
   deeds of, as defenders, 58 n20  
   guardian angels meeting at time  
     of, 430 n444  
 depicted on standard of tribe of  
   Reuben, 686  
 depravity of, 160-61  
   caused by posterity of fallen  
     angels, 135  
 descended from one pair, 66 n38  
 division of, into seven classes, 23  
   n97  
 dominion of, over animals, 135 n7  
 dying against his will, 56  
 eating flesh and blood of animals,  
   119  
 Elijah appearing as, 1001  
 engraved on silver leaf used to raise  
   Joseph's coffin from Nile,  
     621  
 enmity with Satan, 63  
 entering Paradise alive, 100 n142  
   (*see also* Paradise: entering  
     alive)  
 facing mate during copulation, 42  
   n190  
 fall of, 71-74 (*see also* Adam: fall  
   of; fall)

man (*cont.*)  
 figure of, carved by Moses on  
   Joseph's cup, 429  
 four sinless (Benjamin; Amram;  
   Jesse; Kilab [Chileab], son  
   of David), 473, 912 n7  
 free will of, 55, 57 n20  
 having both good and evil inclina-  
   tions, 49-50 n6 (*see also*  
   evil inclination; good incli-  
   nation)  
 having place in heaven or hell, 58  
   n20  
 history of, shown to Moses, 815  
   n902  
 ideal, 58-62, 60 n22  
 as image of this world, 47  
 individual, having one guardian  
   angel, 57 n20  
 intelligence of, maturing, 67-68  
   n44  
 language of, original, 70 n58  
 late appearance of, on earth, 47  
 life span of, affected by sin of  
   Adam, 100 n142  
 limbs of, as witnesses, 57 n20  
 as microcosm, 49 n4  
 Moses asking man to intercede,  
   808-809  
 name, meaning of, 68 n47  
 not able to comprehend acts of  
   God, 462 n33  
 one of four beings represented on  
   Divine Throne, 621  
 seduced to idolatry by demons,  
   118 n54  
 seven, refusing to worship Baal  
   (Deuel, Abi Yisrael,  
   Jekuthiel, Shalom, Ashur,  
   Jehonadab, Shemiel), 872-  
   873  
 seven, with overlapping terms of  
   life (Adam, Methuselah,  
   Noah, Shem, Jacob,  
   Amram, Ahijah, Elijah),  
   982 n4  
 simple, description of, 441  
 sinfulness of, 1  
 soul of, 55-58  
   created of heaven, 50 n7  
   as witness, 57 n20  
 soul of one righteous more pre-  
   cious than all, 605 n216  
 stature of, shortened as one of  
   three visitations of genera-  
   tion of Enosh, 118 n55  
 superiority of  
   to angels, 50 n6  
   to other creatures, 47



man (*cont.*)

- taught to make idols by fallen angels, 118 n54
- ten guides of, 672 n401 (*see also* guides: of men)
- ten orifices of (eyes, ears, nostrils, mouth, anus, urethra, navel), 960
- riddle of Queen of Sheba about, 960
- three, losing this world and gaining world to come (gatherer of wood on Sabbath, blasphemer, Achan), 847-848 n31
- three who lived to see new world (Daniel, Job, Noah), 462 n35
- to be counted from age of one month, 681 (*see also* census[es] of Israel)
- to be counted from 20 years of age, 679, 681 (*see also* census[es] of Israel)
- transformation of, into apes, 118 n55
- virtuous, one in 1,000, according to Solomon, 952
- walking about with sword in hand, 216
- and world, 47-51
  - parallels between, 49 n4
  - world created for sake of man, 51 n8
- See also* man (Adam); man (male); woman (women)

## man (male)

- avoiding being alone with woman, 215 n188
- changed into female in Leah's womb, 287
- compared to woman, 263
- confusion of word for "male" with word for "remembrance," 926 n77
- distinguished from woman by odor of dead bones, 339 n58
- See also* man (Adam); man (human beings; humanity)

## Manasseh, 1054-1058

- birthright of, 404
- bringing idol into Holy of Holies, 646
- committing incest with sister, 1056 n95, 1058 n112
- contemporary of Joel, Nahum, and Habakkuk, 991 n56
- cutting divine Name from Scriptures, 1058 n112

Manasseh (*cont.*)

- descendants of
  - Gideon as, 404
  - seducing Israel to idolatry, 403
  - to include King Jehu, 317
- as descendants of Judah, confessing openly, 407
- and Ephraim
  - adopted by Jacob, 403
  - birth of, announced to Jacob by God, 317
  - blessing of, 402-406
  - sons of Asenath and Joseph, 368
  - to be founders of tribes, 317
- fashioning image with four faces, 1054, 1056 n97
- forfeiting share in world to come, 908 n100, 1058 n108 (*see also* world to come: those having no share in)
- great learning of, 988 n34, 1055
- as guard of city of Egypt, 371
- as interpreter between Joseph and brothers, 374
- and Isaiah
  - condemning I. to death, 1054
  - kinship between, 1058 n105
  - M. as grandson of I., 1056 n94
- mastery of knowledge of Torah of, 1057 n99
- name, meaning of, 1056 n95
- presiding over penitents in Paradise, 19
- put in oven, 1067 n6
- repentance of, 1058 n108
- M. saved by repentance, 1055
- restoring city of Baal-bek, 1058 n103
- ridiculing Torah, 1054
- ruthless toward people, 1054
- setting up idol in Temple on 17 Tammuz, 1054, 1056 n96
- sins of, 1056-1057 n98
  - Shekinah leaving sanctuary on account of, 1057 n98
- son of Hezekiah, 1054
- as steward of Joseph's house, 382
- strength of, 374
- tribe of
  - confessing they desecrated Sabbath, 856
  - destroying Amalekites, 680
  - flag of, black with picture of Egypt and unicorn, 688
  - prince of (Gamaliel), 679
  - significance of dedication offering of, 669
  - spy representing (Gaddi), 705
  - as wicked king, 988 n34

## Manasseh, Prayer of, 1058 n107

mandrakes (*dudaim*)

- depicted on tribe of Reuben's flag in wilderness, 688
- in folklore, 289 n189
- as fragrant apples, 440
- Rachel and, 440-441
- resembling manikins, 689 n447
- Reuben tied ass to, 287
- securing two sons for Leah, 287
- uprooted by dog, 289 n189, 289 n193
- used in expelling demons, 289 n189
- whoever tears it up must die, 287

## manikin

- as insignia of tribe of Reuben, 689 n447

## man in moon

- having Jacob's face, 256 n35
- identified with Jacob, 279 n134
- Joshua as, 842 n6

mankind. *See* man (human beings; humanity)

## manna

- absorbed into body, 570, 571 n98, 694, 713
- amount of, an omer for every man, 571
- and angels
  - grinding of manna by angels, 570, 619 n254
  - manna as "bread of angels," 570, 571 n95
  - created on same day as angels, 570 n94
- manna as food of angels, 207 n143, 694
- manna causing one to be equal in strength to angels, 570
- manna prepared by angels in third heaven, 9 n22, 427 n432
- ceasing to fall at death of Moses, 844
- color of, sparkling more than usual on Sabbath and holy days, 571-572
- commandments concerning, 572
- continuing to come down until crossing of Jordan, 845 n17
- like coriander seed, 433
- created in twilight between sixth day and Sabbath, 78, 570 n94 (*see also* under creation: sixth day)
- created on second day of creation, 570



manna (*cont.*)

as daily ration, 569-570  
 descending first time at Alush, 574 n109  
 descending on holy days, 574 n108  
 earthen vessel full of, placed before holy ark, concealed by Josiah before destruction of Temple, 572-573  
 enormous mass of, 571  
 falling at noon on day Jethro arrived, 588  
 as food for livestock, 573  
 as food of phoenix, 34  
 fragrance of, 573  
 gathering of, 571-575  
 as gift to Israel from God, 433, 591  
 given to Israel as reward for good deeds of Moses, 845 n17  
 for Israel in wilderness, 48  
 of last day  
   sufficing for 14 years, 845 n17  
   sufficing for 39 days, 845 n17  
 lasting until fourth hour of day, 571  
 lawsuits settled by, 571  
 melted into rivers, from which pious will drink in hereafter, 571  
 miraculous appearance of, 570, 571 n100  
 miraculous flavor of, 570  
 mixed multitude not partaking of, 574 n103  
 not descending on holy days, 571-572  
 one of six blessings of generation of wilderness, 86 n105  
 one of three gifts received by Israel, given on account of merits of Moses, 573, 574 n113 (*see also* gifts; merits)  
 as perfume, 577 n132  
 precious stones and pearls raining down with, 650  
 promised to descendants of Abraham as reward for readiness to sacrifice Isaac, 569  
 rivalry of, with well of Miriam, 577 n132  
 and Sabbath  
   gathering of manna on Sabbath, one of ten temptations, 757  
   manna not descending on, 571-572

manna (*cont.*)

and Sabbath (*cont.*)  
   miracle of manna and sanctification of Sabbath, 545  
   storing more than day's supply, one of ten temptations, 757  
   sustaining Israel for 40 years, 573  
 taste of  
   like any food, 584, 693  
   bitter to heathen, 571  
 to return in time to come, 577 n134  
 used as offering to golden calf, 621  
 vessel for, created in twilight, 82 n99 (*see also* under creation: sixth day)  
 vessel with, hidden by Josiah, 1062 n118  
 in world to come, 570, 571 n97  
   manna as food of pious in, 574 n108  
 Manohah  
   Etam identified with, 878 n111  
 man of God  
   Elkanah as, 893 n28  
   meaning of expression, 838 n965  
   Moses as, 838, 838 n965  
   out of Judah  
     identified with prophet Iddo, 883 n133  
   title applied to Moses, Elkanah, Samuel, David, Iddo, Shemaiah, Elijah, Elisha, Micaiah, Amos, 838 n965  
 man of mountain, 34, 39 n147, 39 n148. *See also* Adam; Adne Sadeh  
 Manoismus  
   speaking of ten creations, 48 n1  
 manslaughter  
   and cities of refuge, 799  
 mantle  
   as symbol of judgeship, 344  
 Maono  
   judge in Zeboiim, 208  
 Marah  
   bitter waters of  
     made sweet by tree of life, 568 n82  
     to establish which women were chaste, 568 n82  
   commandment concerning observance of Sabbath revealed at, 574 n109  
   lack of water at  
     due to neglect of study of Torah, 567  
   one of ten temptations, 757

Marah (*cont.*)

precept of Sabbath rest given to Israel at, 567  
 marble  
   on Solomon's throne, 968  
 Mardon (son of Nimrod)  
   killed in battle, 194  
   wicked, 161  
 Marduk, 30 n118  
 mare. *See* horse  
 Marheshwan. *See* Heshvan  
 Mariokh. *See* Mariuk  
 Mariuk (guardian angel), 126  
 Maroshah (wife of Zebulun), 348  
 marriage(s)  
   of Cain to sister, 112 n42  
   contract  
     story of, and second tablets, 632-633  
   every one recorded by Elijah, 1000 n35  
   between Jews and nations, banned by Ezra, 1122  
 laws of  
   disregarded by Ahaz, 1043  
   in Egypt, 694  
   forbidding marriage of blood relatives, 698  
   Jews of Ezra's time revolting against, 1124 n38  
 levirate, 336, 337 n54  
 made in heaven, 57 n20, 242 n297  
 and polygamy, 111  
 prohibited, 284 n167  
 Mars (planet)  
   in fourth heaven, 504  
   Sammael as angel in charge of, 131 n61  
   warming moon, 504  
   *See also* heavenly bodies; Zodiac  
 Marsena (prince of Resen)  
   having charge of bakery, 1136  
   one of seven princes of Persia consulted by Ahasuerus about fate of Vashti, 1136  
 martyrs  
   drowned during religious persecution, 22 n86  
   of government, in first compartment of Eden, 19  
   ten, death of, as partial payment of debt of sin of Jacob's sons selling Joseph, 336 n50  
 Marumath (one of Terah's gods), 182, 183, 184 n49  
 Marut (fallen angel of Arabic legend), 128 n60



- Mary (mother of Jesus)  
 coining phrase "Thanked be God," 866 n53
- Mashhit (angel)  
 angel of death in charge of children, 42 n187  
 angel of destruction, struggling with Moses, 623
- Massah  
 name, meaning of, 575  
 spot where water flowed from rock, 575
- Mastema  
 accuser of Abraham, 225 n228  
 adversary of Moses and Israel in Egypt and at Red Sea, 965 n56  
 bound by God from 14 to 18 Nisan, 553 n27  
 having one-tenth of unclean spirits, 157  
 as leader of evil spirits, 167  
 as Satan, 159 n74  
 spirit of, not ruling over seed of Jacob, 255  
*See also* angel(s), fallen; devil(s); demon(s); evil spirits; Satan
- Mastemah. *See* Mastema
- Matarel (archangel)  
 angel of rain, 120 n57
- maternal descent, 689
- Matriel (angel)  
 angel of rain, prostrating before Metatron, 130
- Mattaniah  
 another name of Zedekiah, 1062 n124  
 called Jehoiachin, installed as king by Nebuchadnezzar, 1060  
 elder from tribe of Benjamin, 696  
 elder from tribe of Gad, 696  
 name changed to Zedekiah, 1065
- Mattathias the Hasmonean  
 son of Johanan (high priest), 825 n925
- maxims  
 communicated by Elijah to R. Judah, 1010  
 three, to be observed by travelers, 390
- Mazle-Din (Perverter of Judgment). *See* Maono
- measure for measure  
 describing plagues on Egyptians, 526 n172
- measures  
 Joseph as inventor of, 399 n339  
 linear, 33, 117, 119, 1005 n53
- measures (*cont.*)  
*See also* weights and measures; *and under* names of individual units
- meat  
 brought to Adam by angels, 69  
 commandment against eating, 153 n56  
 with milk, 206 n140  
 angels transgressing Torah by eating, 616 n248  
 only sacrificial meat to be eaten during war, 902 n58
- Medad  
 image of, on Solomon's throne, 968  
 name, meaning of, 698  
 one of seven pious men of world, 968 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 prophesying that quail to bring evil, 697  
*See also* Eldad: and Medad
- Medan (son of Abraham)  
 Joseph sold to, 338
- Medes  
 praised for modesty, 284 n164
- Media  
 angel of, on Jacob's ladder, 277  
 custom of kings of, having dancers appear at carousals, 1137 n35  
 as kingdom of wolf, conquered by Mordecai of tribe of Benjamin, 409  
 and Persia  
 allied kings of, sending letter to Joshua, 850-851  
*See also* Media-Persia
- Median language  
 ascribed to Japhethite system of writing, 158 n72
- Media-Persia  
 one of four kingdoms, 196 n82 (*see also* four kingdoms)  
*See also* Medo-Persian power
- medical remedies  
 Hezekiah concealing book of, 1051
- medicine  
 beginnings of knowledge of, 157-158  
 and curative powers of trees and spices, 157  
 father of, 973 n77  
 source of, in book of Noah, 157  
*See also* disease(s), healing; illness; magic arts; sickness
- medieval authors  
 and date of creation, 81 n97
- medieval influence  
 on significance of precious stones in breastplate of high priest, 652 n357  
*See also* Middle Ages
- Medo-Persian power  
 symbolized by ram of three years, 198  
*See also* Media-Persia
- Mehujael (descendant of Cain), 111
- Mehuman (angel)  
 name, meaning of ("confusion"), 1135  
 one of seven angels of confusion sent to disrupt Ahasuerus's banquet, 1135
- Meir, R.  
 Elisha b. Abuyah as wicked teacher of, 1011
- Melchizedek  
 born with sign of covenant on him, 248 n318 (*see also* covenant[s]: sign of)  
 changing name of Salem to Jerusalem, 232 n253  
 composer of psalms, 823  
 deposed by God, 196  
 Gnostic legends concerning, 197 n102  
 grave of, in center of earth, 98 n137  
 as high priest, 196  
 as king of Jerusalem, 89 n109, 128 n60, 196  
 as priest of Jerusalem, 89 n109  
 and Shem  
 M. as descendant of S., 197 n102  
 M. identified with S., 197 n102  
 S. sometimes called M., 196  
 as son of prostitute, 197 n102  
 speaking as infant, 134 n2 (*see also under* infants)  
 as title of Canaanite kings, 422 n429  
 to be priest and king in Achuzan, 128 n60  
 as type of Jesus, 197 n104
- Melchizedekites  
 teachings of, 1000 n39
- Melkiel  
 name given to Moses by Jochebed, 481 n57
- mem (letter)  
 creation of world through, 4



mem (*cont.*)

as last letter of name of Abraham,  
on standard of tribe of  
Dan, 686

in *Passim*, standing for Midianites,  
who bought Joseph from  
merchants, 330

standing for  
*mehumah* ("confusion"), 4  
*melekh* ("king"), 4

in word *shittim*, standing for  
*mehillah* ("forgiveness"),  
647

*See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet

memory  
loss of, caused by Shekinah, 406

Memucan  
another name of Daniel, 1096 n76  
identified with Daniel  
designated by God to perform  
miracles and bring about  
death of Vashti, 1136  
identified with Haman, 1138 n41,  
1139 n49, 1147  
prince of Jerusalem  
one of seven princes of Persia  
consulted by Ahasuerus  
about fate of Vashti, 1136  
providing for needs of all in  
palace, 1136

and Vashti  
enmity between, 1138 n45  
M. responsible for death of V.,  
1147

*See also* Daniel-Memucan

Memuchan. *See* Memucan

men. *See* man (human beings;  
humanity); *and under*  
pious: men

Menahem  
name, meaning of, 133

Men of Great Assembly. *See* Great  
Assembly

Men of Great Synagogue. *See* Great  
Synagogue

menstruation  
and not daring to touch teraphim,  
294 n224

as penalty for Eve's sin, 79 n85

precept in connection with, 68 n45

meon  
*meum athamaticum*, as cure for  
barrenness, 202 n117

Mephibosheth (grandson of Saul)  
instigated slaying of Ishbosheth in  
hope of succeeding him as  
king, 929 n79  
reputed to be great man, 907

Mephibosheth (*cont.*)

teacher of David, 927

wronged by David's granting half  
of possessions to Ziba, 909  
n109

Merab  
children of, 941 n133  
taken from David by Saul, 905  
n80

Merari (son of Levi)  
name, meaning of, 438, 475 n36  
sons of  
receiving four wagons for  
Tabernacle, 665  
third division of Levites, 684

Mercury  
Michael as angel in charge of, 131  
n61

mercy  
of God (*see* God: attributes of)  
and justice (*see also* justice: and  
mercy)  
dialogue of, 54 n15  
near to souls of pious, 611  
ruling world jointly, 1  
in seventh heaven, 6

Meres (prince of Mursa)  
having charge of poultry, 1136  
one of seven princes of Persia  
consulted by Ahasuerus  
about fate of Vashti, 1136

Meribah  
episode of water at, taking place  
one year before death of  
Moses, 801 n870  
name, meaning of, 575  
people of, anger of Moses at, 798  
n862  
spot where water flowed from  
rock, 575  
waters of, 731-733

merit  
of observance of Sabbath, giving  
Joram victory in war  
against Moab, 1027 n5  
of study of Torah, not taken away  
by sin, 924 n67

merits  
of Aaron  
clouds of glory given on account  
of, 573, 574 n113  
two of sons saved on account of,  
730 n599  
of Abiel (grandfather of Saul), 898  
of Abraham  
forgiveness of Israel's sins on  
account of, 232 n248  
Isaac indebted to, 261

merits (*cont.*)

of Abraham (*cont.*)  
miracles wrought for Daniel due  
to, 1097 n77

Moses receiving Torah on  
account of, 616 n248  
one of five charms to protect  
Jacob, 300 n247  
as reason for Esau's dominion  
over world, 259 n51  
world created for sake of, 167  
of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob  
God's mercy on Israel for sake  
of, 510

of Amram and Jochebed  
Israel redeemed from Egypt on  
account of, 474 n30

of ancestors of Saul, 898

of David  
Hezekiah owing 15 years of life  
to, 1050

of fathers, 624 n274, 768 (*see also*  
fathers: merits of; *and*  
*under individual fathers*)  
all good things coming to Israel  
on account of, 638  
ceasing to be effective, 998 n24  
God calling away three angels of  
destruction in recognition  
of, 623  
invoked by Elijah, 998 n18  
Israel redeemed from Egypt on  
account of, 499  
Israel saved on account of, 1163  
of fathers and wives of fathers  
high priest venturing into Holy  
of Holies depending on,  
676

of five pious men (*see also under*  
pious: men)  
Israel redeemed for sake of, 502  
of Hezekiah's descendants  
Hezekiah saved from fire  
through, 1047 n47

of Israel, 510, 768  
redemption of Israel on account  
of own merits, 499 n106

of Jacob  
famine averted from Egypt on  
account of, 412  
Laban blessed on account of,  
1027 n6  
man created on account of, 256  
n35

of Joseph  
final redemption to take place  
on account of, 328 n3  
Jacob blessed on account of, 327



merits (*cont.*)

- of Miriam
  - well given on account of, 573, 574 n113, 576
- of Moses
  - children born on same night as M. saved on account of, 479
  - cloud of glory reappearing on account of, 573
  - manna given on account of, 573, 574 n113
- of Moses and Aaron
  - saving world from God's angry wind, 699
- of pious of future generations
  - Israel redeemed on account of, 499
- of Rachel
  - one of five charms to protect Jacob, 300 n247
- of Sarah
  - one of five charms to protect Jacob, 300 n247
- of those sleeping in Cave of Machpelah
  - Israelites receiving water from rock on account of, 732
- of 12 tribes
  - creation of world brought about through, 434 n2
  - invoked by Elijah, 998 n18
- Merkabah
  - bearers of Divine Throne, 523 n166
  - fathers as, 523 n166
  - Jacob's countenance in, 279 n134
  - wheels of, eyes of Moses changed into, by Metatron, 503
- Merodach
  - father of Nebuchadnezzar, 1112 n2
  - as sun god, 1053 n82
- Merodach-baladan (Babylonian king)
  - Nebuchadnezzar as secretary to, 1072
- Meroe
  - name of Moses' foster-mother, 540 n226
- Merois (daughter of Pharaoh)
  - wife of Chenephes, king of Memphis, 479 n48
- Merois (place)
  - place of burial of Moses' foster-mother under name of Meroe, 540 n226
- Meros (star)
  - not fighting against Sisera, 868

## Meroz

- prominent person refusing to take part in war against Sisera, 870 n82

## Mesene

- Jewish slaves sent to viceroy of, 1073 n21

## Mesha

- Ahab's son victorious over, 989 n35

## Meshabber (angel)

- angel of death in charge of animals, 42 n187

## Messiah

- advent of, 57 n19
- annihilation of Edom not to take place before, 927 n77
- announced by bird, 44-45
- nature to be restored at, 1081 n39
- tenth famine to come before, 189
- three things to be removed before (evil inclination; Seir; wicked kingdom), 307 n275
- to be announced to Israel by Kenites, 776
- trumpet at, 232 n246
- and angels
  - angels chanting glory of, in fourth heaven, 505 n117
- Messiah superior to angels, 790 n836
- anointing of, 1022 n112
- appointed to bring salvation, 1
- assisted by council of 14, 100 n142
- bidden by Abraham to wait for appointed time, 198
- birth of, on day of destruction of Temple, 1087 n53
- as child referred to in Isaiah 9:5, 1052 n70
- coming from Rome on night of end of redemption, 541
- countenance of, rays emanating from, 790 n836
- Daniel as, 1097 n77
- David as, 939 n128
- as David's son, 816
- descendant of Judah and Levi, 912 n2
- descendant of Perez, son of Judah, 347 n92
- and description of life of pious in Paradise, 23 n97

Messiah (*cont.*)

## and Elijah

- E. as companion in Paradise, 73 n67
- E. as competitor of Messiah, 306 n275
- E. as forerunner of Messiah, 1020-1023
- E. as Messiah, 100 n142, 1021 n105
- E. securing for R. Joshua b. Levi interview with Messiah, 1012
- Messiah consoled by E. during exile, 1022 n115
- Messiah introduced by E., 1021
- Messiah to be anointed by E., 1022 n112
- writing down good deeds of man, 1000 n35
- Ephraimitic
  - to be revived, one of seven wonders of Messiah, 1021
  - to inaugurate future redemption, 825 n927
- eyes of, 408
- garments of, 408
- gifts to
  - Messiah to accept gifts of Egypt and Ethiopia, 649
  - Messiah to reject gifts of Rome, 649
  - offered by Gentiles, 649 n350
- greater than three patriarchs, 790 n836
- interview of, with Zerubbabel, 1119
- invited by God to make request, 198 (*see also* God: actions of, inviting . . .)
- Israel to be redeemed by Messiah for sake of Jacob, 256 n35
- of Joseph
  - in J.'s dream, 330
- knowing God through own reasoning, 184 n49
- left side of, 100 n142
- Miriam as ancestress of, 470 n19
- and Moses
  - Messiah more exalted than Moses, 790 n836
  - Messiah seen by Moses in heavenly Temple, 816
  - superiority of Moses to Messiah, 834 n953
- Naamah as ancestress of, 976
- name of
  - engraved on jewel, 280 n142



Messiah (*cont.*)

name of (*cont.*)  
 engraved on stone of heavenly Temple, 1 (*see also* Eben Shetiyyah)  
 one of seven things created in beginning, 1  
 names and titles of  
 David, 939 n128  
 Elijah, 1021 n105  
 Messiah given title "elect of God" in Scripture, 912 n1  
 Perez, allusion to Messiah as "the breaker," 347 n92  
 Yagon, 548 n10  
 one endowed with seven divine gifts, 1063 n136  
 one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)  
 one of six men given name by God before birth, 201 (*see also under* name)  
 one of six pious men endowed with spiritual gifts descended from Ruth, 866 n61 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 and Paradise  
 entering alive, 132 n62 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)  
 in fifth division of Paradise, 20  
 secret chamber of Messiah in Paradise, 23 n97  
 as priest of justice, 100 n142  
 princes assisting, 100 n142  
 eight in number, 1021  
 putting end to all sinfulness, 1  
 recognizing God of own accord, 456 n13  
 reign of, to last 40 years, 401 n345  
 riddle of Queen of Sheba about, 960  
 right side of, 100 n142  
 rod of Aaron to be handed over to, in future, 730  
 as ruler of world, 162 n82  
 and Seth  
 Messiah as descendant of S., 115  
 Messiah identified with S. by Gnostic sect, 116 n52  
 soul of S. entered into Messiah, 116 n52  
 seven wonders of, 1021  
 shepherds assisting, 100 n142  
 and Solomon  
 S. as Messiah, 967 n59

Messiah (*cont.*)

and Solomon (*cont.*)  
 S. thought to be Messiah by inhabitants of Sheba, 244 n311  
 as son of (*see also* Messiah: to be descendant of)  
 David, 100 n142, 215 n188  
 entering Paradise alive, 1035 n38  
 Messiah to be second D., 939 n128  
 must be "son of D.," 1021 n105  
 one of four Messiahs, 1021 n105  
 and Rehoboam, 214  
 Ephraim, to precede Messiah son of David, 548 n10  
 Joseph, 100 n142  
 Manasseh, 100 n142  
 Ruth, 215 n188  
 Solomon and Naamah, 215 n188  
 spirit of, as spirit of God, 56 n17 (*see also* God: spirit of)  
 as stone cut out without hands, 1097 n80  
 Tamar as ancestress of, 344  
 teeth of, 408  
 in time to come  
 Messiah not to be anointed, 658 n371  
 to annihilate Rome, 361  
 to appear after nations take kingdom of Edom up to Bet Gubrin, 304  
 to ascend Mount of Olives with Elijah and Zerubbabel, 1120 n25  
 to be born and brought up in Rome (i.e., Babylon), 1106 n106  
 to be descendant of  
 Davidic kings, 977 n89  
 Jehoiachin, 1061  
 Judah, 408  
 Lot, 214  
 tribe of Dan on mother's side, 410 n392  
 tribe of Joseph  
 one of four Messiahs, 1021 n105  
 son of widow of Zarephath as Messiah of tribe of Joseph, 1035 n38  
 tribe of Judah, 408, 410 n388  
 to be great prophet, akin to Moses, 790 n836

Messiah (*cont.*)

to be king of Israel in future, 820  
 to be ninth ruler of whole world, 161 (*see also* cosmocrator)  
 to be surrounded by seven shepherds, 820  
 to blind Belior, 306 n275  
 to furnish tenth red heifer, 677 n417  
 to judge Azazel and companions, 306 n275  
 to judge sons of Esau, 1090 n57  
 to perform miracle of resurrection before eyes of people, 1021  
 to reveal all treasures, 1091  
 travail of, 924 n72  
 weeping of, 20  
 in hall of gold in Paradise, 23 n97  
 world created for sake of, 939 n128  
 Messiah, time of. *See* Messianic time(s)  
 Messiahs  
 numbering four (Messiah son of David, Messiah of tribe of Joseph, Elijah, priest of righteousness), 1021 n105  
 Messiahship  
 staff as symbol of, 344  
 Messianic banquet  
 conceived of, in spiritual sense, 31 n127  
 and disposal of three monsters, 32 n139  
 Moses to be cupbearer at, 838-839 n966  
 not contained in tannaitic literature, 30 n127  
 Messianic herald  
 Zerubbabel described as, 1120 n25  
 Messianic kingdom  
 to be confined to Holy Land, 401 n345  
 Messianic prophecy, 777 n782  
 Messianic time(s)  
 angels not permitted to approach God as closely as Israel, 775  
 animals to be tame, 79 n87, 92 n113  
 beauty of man in, 86 n105  
 and celestial light, 84  
 cities of plain to be restored, 213  
 and darkness, 243  
 descendants of Isaac to possess realms of mighty rulers, 260



Messianic time(s) (*cont.*)

dietary laws and, 32 n139  
 earth to become level again, 109 n31  
 eight princes to rule over world, 911  
 Elijah to restore three concealed objects (three jugs: one filled with manna, one with water from well of Miriam, and one with sacred oil), 574 n112  
 fertility of earth, 86 n105, 109 n30  
 and fulfillment of Noachian commandments, 70 n55  
 golden trees in Temple to blossom again, 966  
 heavenly fire coming down, 104 n10  
 illuminating stones, 857 n14  
 increase of flocks, 290  
 Israel to go to Seir and take possession, 304  
 Israel to rejoice in delights and pleasures, 773  
 Job's wealth a foretaste of, 453  
 joy of Israel in, 619  
 made known to Abraham, 198  
 manna in, 570, 571 n97  
 Michael and Gabriel to open gates of hell, 1120 n25  
 mountains to be razed, 1021  
 mystery of, not revealed to sons of Jacob, 407  
 nations to bow down before Israel, 236 n267  
 and Passover, 543 n235  
 place of honor for Adam, 100 n142  
 precious stones to be used, 1013 n90  
 precious stones to take place of sun, 1011-1012  
 relations between men and animals to be restored, 92 n113  
 restoration of blessings of Adam, 86 n105  
 resurrection of dead, 399  
     those buried in Palestine to rise without delay, 399  
     those buried outside Palestine to go from land to land before, 399-400  
 resurrection of Moses at beginning of, 73 n67  
 riches of Joseph to be enjoyed by pious, 397  
 Rome and all nations to be destroyed by Israel, 776

Messianic time(s) (*cont.*)

secrets concerning, revealed to Elijah by Michael, 1009 n70  
 seven shepherds and eight princes of, 100 n142  
 Shekinah to become visible to all, 1021  
 and suffering, 572  
 Temple to stand in perfection as described by Ezekiel, 1021  
 trees of Temple to bloom again, 95 n125  
 vessel of manna and jug of sacred oil to be restored by Elijah, 573  
 visitations of generation of Enosh to be rescinded, 118 n55  
 Well of Lewdness losing force, 778  
 well to supply water to Jerusalem, 260  
 Zerubbabel, 1120 n25  
*See also* end of time  
 metaphor  
     Eben Shetiyyah as metaphor for likeness of Rachel, 358 n124  
 Metatron (archangel)  
     as angel of face, 503, 845 n21  
     angels prostrating before, 130  
     arranging interview between Zerubbabel and Messiah, 1119  
     being changed into angel after translation, 1000 n40  
     as celestial high priest, 660, 661 n381  
     in charge of world, 21 n75  
     as executioner of Jannes and Jambres, 562  
     as God's messenger, 137 n10  
     as guardian angel of Israel with Michael, 166 n91  
     identified with Michael, 300-301 n248, 845 n21  
     as guardian angel of Israel, 301 n248  
     as master of heavenly song, 17 n70  
 and Moses  
     Metatron as "prince of face," teaching Moses, 615  
     Metatron conducting Moses to celestial regions, 503  
     Metatron consoling God weeping for Moses, 834  
     Metatron placing Moses on couch to die, 832 n948  
     Moses refusing services of Metatron, 845 n21

Metatron (*cont.*)

offering souls of pious in heavenly Tabernacle, 660  
 pleading for Isaac's life, 231 n242  
 predicting flood to Shemhazai, 136  
 as "prince of world," 1049, 1052 n69  
 saying "Holy, holy, holy" at end of David's psalms, 938  
 sent to restrain Abraham from slaying Isaac, 231 n242  
 70 names of, 130  
 signing deed giving David 70 years of life from Adam, 911  
 as supervisor in sixth heaven, 5  
 to bear witness to God on day of judgment, 726 n586  
 and Zerubbabel  
     Metatron dealing kindly with Z., 1119  
     Metatron revealing to Z. time when Messiah would appear, 1119  
 Metatron-Enoch  
     legends of, 130 n61  
     as "prince of face," 128 n60  
*See also* Enoch-Metatron  
 meteor  
     falling down where Holy of Holies situated, 11 n39  
 Methuselah, 131-132  
     building altar at Achuzan, 127  
     composing parables in praise of God, 131  
     death of  
         and beginning of flood, 139  
         mourning at, 131-132  
     entering Paradise alive, 73 n67, 132 n62 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)  
     fearing power of witchcraft, 134 n5  
     and knowledge of future, 134 n4  
     life span of, 132 n64  
     name, meaning of, 132 n62, 132 n64  
     one of seven with overlapping life terms, 982 n4  
     one of shepherds who assist Messiah on right, 100 n142  
     proclaimed ruler of earth, 131  
     at right hand of God, 450 n17 (*see also* God: right hand of)  
     as ruler, 132 n62  
     son of Enoch, 126  
     sword of, 131, 132 n62  
         bestowed on Jacob by Isaac, 258



Methuselah (*cont.*)  
 sword of (*cont.*)  
 and birth of Noah, 134 n5  
 given to Esau by Jacob in  
 exchange for birthright,  
 258  
 inherited from Abraham by  
 Isaac, 258

Methushael  
 as descendant of Cain, 111

mezuzah (pl. mezuzot)  
 question of Korah concerning, 719  
 tanning of hides for, 546

Micah (postexilic prophet), 991 n56  
 as disciple of Elijah, 1026 n1  
 identified with Micaiah son of  
 Imlah, 1041 n20  
 time of activity of, 1041 n20

Micah (son of Delilah)  
 death of, by fire, 882  
 father of Jeroboam, 882  
 granted share in world to come on  
 account of hospitality, 882  
 hospitality as one good quality of,  
 882  
 identified with Sheba, son of  
 Bichri, 884 n139  
 and idolatry  
 M. erecting altar to idols at  
 Gareb, 883 n129  
 M. fashioning golden calf, 880,  
 882-883 n126, 883 n128  
 M. fashioning graven image,  
 880, 892 n25  
 M. finally abandoning idolatry  
 and receiving gift of  
 prophecy, 881  
 M. seducing Benjaminites to  
 pay homage to idols, 881  
 various idols of M., 881  
 and Moses  
 Moses writing Name of God on  
 body of Micah, 880  
 Micah owing life to miracle per-  
 formed by Moses, 880  
 Micah used as building material  
 in Egypt, saved by Moses,  
 880  
 position of, in hell, 882  
 as priest of Bethel, 883 n133  
 removed from position by  
 Solomon, 881  
 spared tortures in hell, 882  
 taking up residence close to sanctu-  
 ary at Shiloh, 880-881  
 time of activity of, 883 n127, 883  
 n128, 883 n131, 884 n136  
 as treasurer under David, 881

Micaiah (son of Imlah)  
 activity of, at time of Ahab, 989  
 n36  
 Micah identified with, 1041 n20  
 one of those called "man of God"  
 in Scripture, 838 n965 (*see*  
*also* man of God)  
 prophesying to Ahab, 987

mice  
 causing defeat of Sennacherib by  
 gnawing bows and armor  
 of Assyrians, 1047 n58  
 gnawing through metal vessels and  
 killing Philistines, 918 n42  
 as plague on Philistines, 892, 894  
 n34

Michael (archangel)  
 and Abraham  
 M. appearing to A. after circum-  
 cision, 204  
 M. as angel who delivered A.,  
 177 n33  
 M. bringing news to A. of Lot's  
 captivity, 194  
 M. stopping A. from slaying  
 Isaac, 229  
 M. visiting A. at time of his  
 death, 244-245  
 accompanying Enoch, 126  
 and Adam  
 M. announcing imminent death  
 of A., 91  
 M. burying A., 97 n135  
 M. first to prostrate self before  
 A., 63  
 M. preparing A.'s body for  
 grave, 96-97  
 M. taking A. to third heaven, 96  
 as angel of face, 845 n21  
 as angel of mercy, 53 n13  
 as angel of prayer, 53 n13  
 as angel who does not vanish, 16  
 n62  
 announcing  
 birth of Isaac, 205, 207 n154  
 to Sarah that she will bear son,  
 204  
 appearance of  
 to Balaam, 767 n743  
 indicating presence of Shekinah,  
 502 n115  
 to Laban, telling him not to do  
 anything to Jacob, 292  
 being bound so Nebuchadnezzar  
 could conquer Jerusalem,  
 1073, 1074 n25  
 blowing trumpet to introduce  
 Messiah, 1021

Michael (*cont.*)  
 bringing dust for creation of man,  
 54 n14  
 in burning bush as forerunner of  
 Shekinah, 501  
 as celestial high priest, 660, 661  
 n381  
 charged with punishment of  
 Shemhazai's ilk, 135  
 in charge of Mercury, 131 n61  
 coming with drawn sword to kill  
 Abimelech, 217 n191  
 communicating revelations to  
 Deborah, 870 n73  
 consisting of fire, the heavenly ele-  
 ment, 16 n63, 53 n13  
 corresponding to Reuben, 685  
 defeating Jannes and Jambres, 560  
 destroyer of Assyrians, 1047 n55  
 and Elijah  
 M. revealing to E. secrets con-  
 cerning Messianic times,  
 1009 n70  
 with Enoch before Lord, 126  
 and Gabriel  
 accusing Uzza with brick made  
 from child, 557  
 carrying out destruction of  
 Temple, 1076 n27  
 causing fall of Babel, 1112 n4  
 G. preferred to M. in  
 Babylonian Haggadah,  
 1047 n55  
 as guardian angels of Israel, 166  
 n91  
 as messengers between Mordecai  
 and Esther, 1162  
 M. preferred to G. in Palestinian  
 Haggadah, 1047 n55  
 M. superior to G., 53 n13  
 as princes of the angels, 53 n13  
 rivalry between, 3 n8, 54 n14,  
 767 n743, 1099 n87  
 same stories told of, 347 n89  
 sent against male and female  
 Behemoth, 30 n127  
 to open gates of hell in  
 Messianic times, 1120 n25  
 as witnesses of new moon, 535  
 as guardian angel of Israel, 3 n8,  
 301 n248, 817 (*see also*  
 Michael [archangel]: as  
 protector of Israel)  
 at head of 70 angels to teach lan-  
 guages to families of Noah,  
 446  
 high priest greater than, 676 n415  
 as high priest in heavenly Temple,  
 5, 53 n13



Michael (*cont.*)

identified with  
 Holy Ghost by Church Fathers, 301 n248  
 Jesus by Church Fathers, 301 n248  
 Metatron, 845 n21  
 inserting reed in sea, 948 n11  
 interceding for Jews, 1154  
 and Jacob  
 M. acknowledging J.'s birth-right, 300  
 M. appearing to J. as shepherd, 299  
 M. as angel who wrestled with J., 306 n273  
 M. as guardian angel of J., 299, 406 n373  
 M. assisting J., 252, 268 n92, 268 n97, 270 n99  
 M. assisting J. in deceiving Isaac for blessing, 266  
 M. blessing J., 300  
 M. injuring J. in hollow of thigh 299  
 M. revealing secret to J. that name would be changed, 300  
 and Joshua  
 M. appearing to J., 845 n21  
 M. saving J. (i.e., Jehoshua) from death by fire, 1106 n108  
 M. speaking to J. about study of Torah, 844  
 as leader of most exalted rank of angels, 13  
 listening to Uzza's charges against Israel, 552  
 making Judah notice Tamar, 346 n84  
 as master of heavenly song, 17 n70  
 and Moses  
 Michael accompanying God to fetch Moses' soul, 831  
 Michael arranging couch for Moses' death, 832 n948  
 Michael as intermediary between Shekinah and Moses, 870 n73  
 Michael asking God for permission to bury Moses, 830 n946  
 Michael guiding Moses' hand in sacrifice, 598  
 Michael sent to fetch Moses' soul, 828  
 Michael speaking to Moses in heaven, 346-347 n86

Michael (*cont.*)

and Moses (*cont.*)  
 Michael struggling with Satan over body of Moses, 830 n946  
 name  
 also called Palit ("the escaped"), 194, 196 n90  
 meaning of ("who is like God"), 685  
 one of four angels surrounding Divine Throne, 685  
 one of names of Barak, 870 n73  
 opposing creation of man, 51-52 in Paradise  
 M. asking to pronounce blessing over wine, 939 n129  
 presenting soul to God, 68  
 as priest in heaven, 299  
 as prince of angels, 53 n13  
 as prince of Paradise, 53 n13  
 prince of wisdom  
 witnessing deed between Adam and David, 912 n12  
 as protector of Israel, 2 (*see also* Michael [archangel]: as guardian angel of Israel)  
 required to be present at morning song of heavenly beings, 301 n248  
 required to start song of praise in heaven, 299  
 rescuing three men from furnace, 1099 n87  
 returning pledges to Tamar, 347 n89  
 and Samael  
 case between, arbitrated in heavenly court, 252  
 M. trying to burn S., 252  
 and Satan  
 struggle between, over body of Moses, 830 n946  
 saved from destruction, 52  
 saving Lot and wife and daughters, 213  
 sent to keep Ahasuerus from sleeping, 1170  
 sent to rescue Tamar, 345  
 as seraph who touched Isaiah with live coal, 1043 n36  
 and Solomon  
 M. assisting S. to lock up demons, 963  
 taking Levi to heaven as Jacob's tithe of sons, 300  
 tears of, becoming precious stones, 245

Michael (*cont.*)

traversing world with one stroke, 1004 n46  
 and Uriel, burying Adam, 97 n135  
 as wall of fire between Israel and Egyptians, 555 n35  
 watching over Israel from his appearance to Moses on Mount Horeb to worship of golden calf, 502 n115

## Michal

barrenness of, 940  
 called Eglah ("calfkin"), 940  
 as daughter of Cush, 941 n134  
 as daughter of Saul, 940  
 and David  
 legality of M.'s marriage to D., 941 n133  
 M. as wife of D., 940  
 M. enabling D. to escape, 941 n133  
 M. punished by God for reproaching D., 940  
 M. taken from D. by Saul, 905 n80  
 death of, in childbirth, 940  
 fulfilling commandment of phylacteries, 940, 942 n134  
 as ideal of beauty, 60 n24, 940  
 kindness of, 940  
 marriage of  
 to David, legality of, 941 n133  
 to Palti, legality of, 941 n133  
 one of four women of perfect beauty, 941 n132  
 one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271  
 piety of, 940  
 raising children of Adriel and Merab, 940  
 raising Merab's children, 941 n133

## Middle Ages

belief in generative power of precious stones in, 647 n342  
 as source of Jewish legendary material, ix

## Midian

allied with Moab against Israel, 759  
 complete annihilation of, 794-795  
 well at  
 Moses meeting Zipporah at, 494  
 opening made at twilight of first Sabbath eve, 494

## Midianites

defeated by Hadad, 420  
 enmity toward Moabites, 420  
 fearing to keep Joseph, 336



Midianites (*cont.*)

- five kings of, slain by Israelites, 795
- identified with Moabites, 793 n842
- inciting Moabites against Israel, 760 n721
- making alliance with Moab against Edom, 420
- making war on Moabites, 420
- punished before Moabites, 792-793
- rescuing Joseph from pit, 335
- slaughtered by Edomites, 420
- victory of Gideon over
  - as reward for fulfilling commandment of omer, 873 n100
  - taking place
    - on day omer was brought, 873 n100
    - on first night of Passover, 873 n100
    - on second night of Passover, 873 n96
- war against
  - connected with death of Moses, 793
  - Israelites polluted by Jewish apostate slain in Midian, 797
  - taking place in month of Elul, 873 n100
- midnight
  - north wind blowing at, 717 n548
  - prayer at, first found in mystic literature of Middle Ages, 929 n83
- Midrash (pl. Midrashim)
  - contained on second tablets, 632
  - and Haggadah, viii
  - and Jewish legends, viii-ix
  - old Midrashim not mentioning barrenness of Leah, 288 n170
  - one of three parts of oral law, 592, 1128 n56 (*see also* Haggadah; Halakhah)
  - and parenesis, viii
  - and pseudepigraphic literature, viii
  - as source of Jewish legendary material, ix
- Midrash of the Chaldees
  - taught by Egyptians, 157
- Milcah (wife of Levi), 438
- Milcah (wife of Nahor, brother of Abraham)
  - bearing Bethuel after birth of Isaac, 238

Milcah (*cont.*)

- mother of Serug, 168 n3
- milham* (bird)
  - name of, 73 n67
  - version of phoenix legend, 73 n67
  - See also* *malham*; phoenix
- military service
  - exemption from, for newly married men, 920 n50
- milk
  - found in breasts of men, 1144 n66
  - and honey, 172 n14
  - land flowing with 709, 827
  - one of rivers in Paradise, 507 (*see also* rivers: flowing under thrones of pious)
  - produced by goats in Palestine, 709
  - served with meat, 206 n140
  - as stream from tree of life, 127 n60
  - See also* dietary laws; food: forbidden; meat
- mill
  - introduced by Jews to Babylon, 1074 n24
- millennium
  - and day of the Lord, 99 n140
  - to take place after 7,000 years, 99 n140
- Minḥah service
  - ḥayyot taking place of four archangels in, 687 n440
  - introduced by Isaac, 240, 1128 n58
  - most acceptable to God, 998 n18
  - to be said at three o'clock in afternoon, 240
  - See also* prayers, Jewish
- ministering angels. *See* angel(s): types
- Minor Prophets
  - edited or declared canonical by Great Synagogue, 1071 n15, 1128 n56
- miracle(s)
  - and Aaron
    - A. being clothed with celestial garments for death, 741
    - A.'s rod blooming to prove his priesthood, 730
    - cave appearing for A.'s death, 741
    - holy oil for anointing hanging on A.'s beard, 657
  - and Ahasuerus
    - words of chronicles heard though not uttered, 1171
    - of scepter, 1169 n149
  - and animals
    - Balaam's ass speaking, 766-767
    - jawbone of Abraham's ass preserved, 878

miracle(s) (*cont.*)

- barrenness removed from sterile women
  - Isaac and Rebekah having children, 252
  - Rachel bearing children, 289 n202
  - Ruth becoming pregnant, 867 n68
  - seven in number (Sarah, Rebekah, Leah, Rachel, Hannah, Hazleponith, Zion), 878 n111
- and blood
  - blood of sacrifice being sufficient for all Israelites, 598
  - miracle of never-congealing blood, 1078 n30
- of candlestick for sanctuary, 678
- and David
  - D. and Abishai, 934
  - D. saved from winepress, 934
  - in D.'s flight from Saul, 918-919
  - D.'s pebble striking Goliath, 918 n42
  - wall of Jerusalem lowering itself before D., 920, 922 n53
- Ebed-melech saved from destruction of Jerusalem, 1090
- and Elijah
  - E. and Hiel under altar, 994
  - E. and twin bullocks, 994
  - performed by E.
    - bringing Israel back to God, 998 n18
    - eight in number, 1025
    - for Nahum, 1001
- and Elisha
  - at death of E., 1030
  - oil for widow of Obadiah, 1026
  - 16 in number, 1025
  - crossing Jordan River as first of 16 miracles, 1025
  - healing waters of Jericho as second of 16 miracles, 1025
  - of Exodus, performed by God's will, 555 n32
  - for Gideon, 873 n97
  - at grave of Ezra, 1123
  - for Hannah, 890 n15
  - of healing all sick among Jews, 591
  - for Hezekiah, 1048-1054
  - of invisibility, 844 n13 (*see also* invisibility)



miracle(s) (*cont.*)

and Jacob

J. being saved from hot spring,  
275of J. on journey to Haran, four  
in number, 276-280

performed by J., 517 n153

Jeremiah saved from lime pit, 1069  
at Jericho, 847 n22

and Joseph

J.'s coffin rising from ground to  
Moses, 546performed by J. for Potiphar,  
351

and Joshua

at J.'s crossing of Jordan, 843

of Kenaz conquering Amorites  
single-handedly, 858of lots, in dividing promised land,  
784 (*see also* lots)making possible presence of all  
Israel at consecration of  
Levites, 674 n410and manna (*see also* manna)manna falling at noon at Jethro's  
arrival, 588

and Moses

of God for M., 512

performed by M., 517 n153

at Mount Carmel, 994

of nature

earthquake, thunder, and light-  
ning in battle against  
Philistines, 895

of grain growing in 11 days, 991

narrow space in bed of Jordan  
River containing all people,  
844 n14sun not setting on day of revela-  
tion on Sinai, 613 (*see also*  
sun)sun shining ten extra hours on  
day of Hezekiah's recovery,  
1050 (*see also* sun)

and Passover

first night of Passover as night of  
miracles, 1047 n54Israelites transported on clouds  
to Holy Land to eat sacri-  
fice, 536performed by prophet of Judah,  
983 n8performed for Phinehas, 12 in  
number, 781-782performed for spies in Palestine,  
709 n515in present world prefiguring mira-  
cles in world to come,  
1103 n95miracle(s) (*cont.*)

as primordial creations, 51 n9

of Red Sea, 555-556, 561 n46  
ten in number, 555-556, 557  
n36

seven great, 850 n39

sickness before death as fourth  
great miracle since creation,  
401 n357

and Solomon

wealth coming to S. from sea,  
949 n16when S. brought cherubim into  
Temple, 644spring of water flowing from  
Samson's mouth, 878of supply of holy oil for anointing,  
657teraphim transformed into drink-  
ing vessels, 292terrifying Nebuchadnezzar, six in  
number, 1098

of 12 stones, 277

in valley of Arnon, 749

visible to all, seven in number, 219  
n208of wagons and oxen for Tabernacle,  
665

of water, 750 n665

bitter water made sweet in  
wilderness, 566-567water flowing from Elijah's fin-  
gers, 995

water from rock, 575

in wilderness, 688

Miriam

and Aaron

slandering Moses, 700-702

as ancestress of David (and  
Messiah), 470 n19becoming mother of Bezalel,  
builder of Tabernacle, 469corpse of, not decaying, 411-412,  
939 n128 (*see also under*  
corpse[s])

death of

day of, 738 n623

by kiss of Shekinah, 411, 743  
n639M. as only woman to die during  
march through desert, 731

on Mount Nebo, 814

on 1 Nisan, 737

reasons for, 731

report of, in Scripture following  
law of red heifer, 733 n602and temporary disappearance of  
well, 573, 574 n113Miriam (*cont.*)first child of Jochebed and Amram,  
474

healed after a week, 702-3

Hebrew midwife, 469

identified with Puah, 469, 470  
n17

illness of, cured, 469

merits of, well given on account of,  
573, 574 n113 (*see also*  
merits)

and Moses and Aaron

as three shepherds, 737-739

mourning for, 737, 738 n625

name, meaning of ("bitterness"),  
474, 475 n36one of three deliverers sent by God  
to deliver Israel from  
Egypt, 648one of 22 women of valor, 238  
n271prophecy of, that Jochebed would  
bring forth redeemer of  
Israel, 477

as prophet, 814

prophetic dream of, 476

punishment of, with leprosy, 675,  
702-704refusing to comply with Pharaoh's  
order, 469

rewarded for good deeds, 469

slandering Moses, 703-704

song of, at Red Sea, 564

speaking to Amram about conse-  
quences of divorce of all  
Israelites, 475supervising one of seven classes of  
women, 23 n97

as talebearer accusing Moses, 65

union of, with Caleb

yielding royal house of David,  
469

## Miriam, well of, 575-577

accompanying Israelites in wilder-  
ness, 576, 577 n129

containing "fat fish," 577 n133

created in twilight of sixth day of  
creation, 220 (*see also under*  
creation: sixth day)

created on second day, 576

disappearing for a time at death of  
Miriam, 573, 574 n113,  
731, 737

as gift to Israel, 591

given on account of merits of  
Miriam, 573, 574 n113,  
576 (*see also* merits)healing waters of, 576, 577 n134,  
577 n135



Miriam, well of (*cont.*)

hidden in Sea of Tiberias, 576  
 identified by sheep of Abraham, 576  
 identified with fourth well dug by Isaac, 263 n63  
 identified with well in wilderness, 750 n663  
 leaders of 12 tribes chanting to, 576  
 miraculous plants growing around, to be enjoyed in Messianic times, 576 n131  
 moving from river to river and well to well at termination of Sabbath, 577 n135  
 name of, not found in tannaitic sources, 577 n126  
 rivalry of, with manna, 577 n132  
 settling opposite Tabernacle, 576  
 in shape of sieve-like rock, 576  
 springing up for Ishmael, 220  
 taken by Abimelech and demanded back by Abraham, 576  
 to return in time to come, 577 n134  
 water from, tasting like all beverages, 584  
 water gushing forth from, to ocean, 576  
 as well at which Eliezer stopped, 241 n288  
 wine required for libations coming from, 709 n519

## Mirod

chief butler of Pharaoh, 363

## mirrors

as gifts of women to sanctuary, 653-654  
 significance of, for Israelites in Egypt, 654  
 used to make laver for sanctuary, 654

## Misfortune (personified)

asking for shelter on ark, 144-145  
 paired with Falsehood on ark, 144-145

## Mishael

and Elzaphan, unable to keep Passover because of attending burial of Nadab and Abihu, 675-676  
 fiery furnace and, 527  
 Levite cousin of Aaron, attending funeral of Nadab and Abihu, 663  
 among members of Great Synagogue, 1127 n56

Mishael (*cont.*)

one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)  
 one of six pious men endowed with spiritual gifts descended from Ruth, 866 n61 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 riddle of Queen of Sheba about, 960  
*See also* Hananiah: and Mishael and Azariah

## Mishnah

contained in second tablets, 633  
 containing statements going back to Great Synagogue, 1128 n56  
 as great "secret" revealed to Israel only, 1125 n50  
 written down by Ezra and five companions, 1125 n50

## missiles

used by Pharaoh against Israelites, 559

## mitre

of Aaron, atoning for pride, 650  
 one of eight priestly garments of Aaron, 650

## mixed multitude

denying God, 712  
 descendants of, and daughters of tribe of Simeon as sinners who fell prey to Moabite women, 782 n799  
 of Exodus, 542, 544 n246  
 God not wanting Moses to take out of Egypt, 624  
 marrying daughters of tribe of Simeon, 782 n799  
 Moses accepting those who did penance, 624  
 not partaking of manna, 574 n103  
 rebelling against God and Moses, 693  
 and worship of golden calf, 625 n276, 654 n360, 674

## Mizpah

assembly at, offering rulership to Jephthah, 874  
 Samuel assembling people for prayer at, 895  
 water test at, 895

## Mizraim (city)

capital city of Egypt, 370 n184, 371, 375 n204

## Mizraim (person)

builder of Tower of Babel, 164 n88  
 son of Ham, coming to assistance of Egyptians, 553 n21

## Moab (place)

allied with Midian against Israel, 759  
 king of  
   sacrificing son to God of Israel, 991  
   sacrificing son to idol, 991 n54  
   violating corpses of Edomite kings, 992 n56  
 prohibition of waging war against, extending until David's birth, 794 n845  
 to be spared because of Ruth, 758  
 war of Joram against, 990-991  
 Moab (son of Lot)  
 allied with Midianites against Edom, 420  
 daughters of, sinning with Zimri, 285  
 Hadad, king of Edom, making war against, 420  
 hatred of, for Israel, 792  
 marrying Canaanite, 235  
 name, meaning of ("by the father"), 758

## Moabite

one of five insulting names hurled at David by Shimei, 931 n96

## Moabites

Abdon protecting Israel against, 876  
 and Ammonites  
   cruelty of, toward Israel when conquered by Babylon, 1086  
   Moabites enlisting assistance of Ammonites against Edomites, 421  
 command to wage war against, fulfilled by David, 792  
 committing four acts of hostility against Israel, 214  
 conquered by Sennacherib, 1051 n65  
 as descendants of Lot, 214  
 and Edomites  
   Moabites enlisting assistance of Ammonites against Edomites, 421  
   Moabites paying tribute to Edomites, 420  
   Moabites rebelling against Edomites, 420  
 enmity with Midianites, 420  
 fearing Israel, 758  
 fleeing battle, 420  
 identified with Midianites, 793 n842



Moabites (*cont.*)

Israel not to wage war against, 758  
 males excluded from Israel, 863, 864, 864 n40, 865 n53  
 males excluded from Jewish communion, 916-917  
 not to enter assembly of Lord to tenth generation, 7f92  
 Peor as god of, 778  
 seducing Israelites to worship Peor, 778  
 Torah commanding considerate treatment of, 983

## moderation

in consumption of wine, 155 n58  
 (*see also* drunkenness; inebriate; intemperance; intoxication; wine)

## mole, 42 n186

made harmless, 37

## Moloch

fires of, 34  
 Philistines sacrificing humans to, 922 n54  
 place of worship of, 15 n56  
 worshiped in Gehinnom, 15 n55  
*See also* Gehenna; Gehinnom; hell

## Monarchos

made king of Ethiopia, 491  
 name of, 491 n80

## monarchy

dating from Nimrod, 168 n5  
 establishment of, as one of three national duties, 897 n47  
 institution of, commanded by God, 897 n47

## Monday

day on which God separated celestial and terrestrial waters, symbolizing Israel and heaven, 1150  
 fasting on, because Moses descended from heaven on, 628-629 n286  
 Moses descended from heaven on, 628-629 n286  
 souls of pious reading from Torah scroll on, 812

## money

leading astray, 440  
 penalties of, 637  
 prohibition against carrying on Sabbath, 951  
*See also* wealth

## Monobaz (king of Adiabene)

one of ten rulers who became proselytes, 1093 n66

## monster(s), 33

Afira and Kastimon as, rulers of abode of Cainites, 110 n34  
 centaur, killed by Zepho, 418, 419-420 n425  
 contest with angels, 30 n127  
 creature slain by Zepho in mountains of Koptiziah, 418  
 human beings configured as, 6, 9 n27  
*See also* Behemoth; Leviathan

## months

Haman casting lots on, 1151  
*See also* calendar; date; *and under individual months*

## monument(s)

erected by Abraham in Jerusalem, 920  
 erected by Jacob and Laban on border between Palestine and Aram, 921  
 of Jebusites, 921 n51

## moon

acquiring complete light after 15 days, 967 n57  
 Asherah as, 874 n105  
 assigned place on fourth day of creation, 23  
 created on fourth day, 23, 77, 82 n98  
 darkness of, 26 n100, 35 (*see also* eclipse)  
 dialogue of, with God, 23-24  
 eclipse of, 26 n100 (*see also* moon: darkness of)  
 endowed with wisdom and passion like man, 25 n100  
 full, on fourth day of creation, 26 n100  
 Gabriel as angel in charge of, 131 n61  
 having light but no heat, 26 n104  
 having likeness of woman, 28 n112  
 in Joseph's dream  
   standing for Bilhah, 330  
   standing for Rachel, 330  
 Joshua's face shining like, 813  
 laughing after sin of Adam, 76  
 made of light, 28 n112  
 new  
   dead rising from graves on, 23 n97  
   divine teaching about, 535  
   as festival (*see* New Moon)  
   God pointing out, with fourth finger, 638 n315

moon (*cont.*)new (*cont.*)

to be proclaimed on testimony of two witnesses and through president of court, 535  
 not shining for seven days at death of Adam, 97 n133  
 punishment of, 25, 25 n100  
 signs of, taught to men by Seriel, 119  
 song of praise of, 26 n102 (*see also* praise)  
 suffering of, after sin of Adam, 76  
 and sun, 26 n100  
   moon made lesser than sun, 24  
 as symbol of Israel and the pious, 25 n100  
 wanting to be spared sight of sinful mankind, 24  
 warmed by Mars in fourth heaven, 504  
 worship of, in cities of plain, 213  
 moon god  
   children sacrificed to, 184 n49

## moor-hen

entrusted with secret of shamir by angel of sea, 974  
 suicide of, 974  
 taking oath to watch shamir carefully, 974

## Mordecai, 1139-1141

advising Jews not to join in feasts, 1132  
 and Ahasuerus  
   five gifts received by M. from A., 1178 n189  
   M. fasting for week praying that God would punish A. for desecrating Temple vessels, 1135  
   M. honored by A., 1172-1174  
   M. thwarting conspiracy against A., 1145-1146  
 calling on people to fast so as to avert annihilation, 1160  
 compared to  
   Abraham, 1141 n60  
   Joseph, 1178 n189  
   Moses, 1141 n60  
 deported to Babylonia with King Jeconiah, 1140  
 descended  
   45 generations from Jacob, 1139  
   from Jacob, 269  
   on mother's side from tribe of Judah, 1140  
   from tribe of Benjamin, 1140



Mordecai (*cont.*)

dream of, 1161-1164  
 dressed in garb of mourning, 1160, 1161  
 establishing academy in Shushan, 1140  
 and Esther  
   coins struck with figures of M. and E. on, 1176  
   communications between, 1162, 1164 n138  
   desire for idolatry eradicated from Israel in days of, 1128 n57  
   marriage of, 1143  
   M. asking E. to intercede for Jews, 1162  
   M. concealing E. for four years, 1139  
   M. miraculously having milk in breasts for E., 1144 n66  
   M. to have Jews spend three days in prayer and fasting on behalf of E., 1163  
   M. visiting E. daily to prevent witchcraft from being used against her, 1144 n78  
   receiving one-third of Haman's fortune, 1176  
 genealogy of, 1140 n56  
 and Haman  
   descendants of Jacob and Esau, 1149  
   enmity between, 1148-1149  
     traced back to enmity between Jacob and Esau, 1150 n104  
   H. erecting cross for M. on first night of Passover, 1169-1172  
   M. charged to carry out H.'s execution, 1175  
   M. opposing H. about rebuilding Temple, 1147  
   M. recalling edict of H., 412  
   story of military campaign in India, 1149  
 Jacob as example for, 342  
 as "Jew," 1140, 1141 n60  
 as king of Jews, 1176  
 knowing language of deaf-mutes, 1140  
 living more than 400 years, 1127 n56  
 Malachi identified with, 1115 n5  
 among members of Great Sanhedrin, 1140  
 among members of Great Synagogue, 1127 n56

Mordecai (*cont.*)

name  
   meaning of ("pure myrrh"), 1140  
   other names of  
     Ben Jair, 1140  
     Ben Kish, 1140  
     Ben Shimei, 1140  
     Bilshan ("master of languages"), 1140  
     Pethahiah, 1141 n62  
 not paying attention to procession, 1176 n172  
 not permitting self to be interrupted in prayer, 1176 n172  
 owing existence to Judean David, who spared Shimei, 1140  
 piety of, 1140  
 prayer of, 1160, 1161 n123, 1161 n124  
   and first benediction of Amidah, 1161 n123 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)  
 pride of, 1148-1150  
 reciting Hodu psalm (i.e., Psalm 136), 1176 n172 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)  
 refusing to give divine honor to Haman, 1148-1149  
 of royal blood, 1140  
 trusting in God after edict of Haman, 1158-1159  
 understanding 70 languages of world, 1140  
 wisdom of, 1179  
 Moriah, Mount  
   altar erected by Adam on, 89 n109  
   as gate to Paradise, 98 n137  
   Isaac and Rebekah going to, to pray, 251  
   name, meaning of, 232-233 n253, 596 n186  
   place of Bet ha-Midrash of Shem and Eber, 252  
   place of offering of Isaac, 231, 232 n253  
   prayer of Isaac on, accompanied by sacrifice, 253 n8  
   in proximity to Paradise, 89 n109  
   sacrifice on, 251  
   source of dust from which Adam created, 89 n109  
   sun sinking while Jacob passing Mount Moriah, 276  
   as Temple Mount, 232 n253  
   where Adam landed after expulsion from Paradise, 89 n109

## mortality

of creatures, 47

## mortals

Samael searching for Moses among, 836

Moryon (third son of Pharaoh), 498

## Moserah

mourning for Aaron in, 746

## Moses

and Aaron

A. accompanying M. on mission to redeem Israel from Egypt, 513

complete equality of, 517 n152

description of God of, 518-519

eating paschal meal in Egypt, 539

extraordinary appearance of, 518

as first to recite Hallel, 539

instructing people on laws of hallah and orlah, 712 n530

## miracle of

repeated by Egyptian school-children, 519

repeated by Pharaoh's wife, 519

M. consecrating A. and sons as priests on 23 Adar, 657

M. informing A. of impending death, 739-740

M. instructing A. and sons how to perform priestly functions in Tabernacle, 657

M. instructing A. and sons in priestly laws, 650

M. stripping A. and putting garments on Eleazar, 741

M. teaching A. all God taught him, 516

not to lead Israel to Holy Land until Messianic time, 734

before Pharaoh, 516-520

presiding over third division of Paradise, 19

protected from rebellion by cloud of glory, 712

resembling angels, 518

speaking to God, 521-522

and Aaron and Miriam

Moses slandered by Miriam and A., 700-702

as three shepherds, 737-739

## altar of

called "My Miracle" to glorify victory over Amalek, 582

hidden by Solomon, 1062 n118



Moses (*cont.*)

- and Amalek, 577-583
  - M. and Aaron the Levite and Judean Hur watching battle against, 581
  - M. hesitating to attack A., 583 n145
- as ancestor of clan of 600,000 men, 715 n540
- and angels
  - angel of death giving M. remedy against death, 615
  - angel of wisdom taking M. to place of scholars interpreting Torah, 514
  - angels becoming friends of M., 615
  - Gabriel appearing to M., 502 n115
  - Gabriel leading M. and Aaron into Pharaoh's palace, 518
  - Gabriel showing hell to M., 505-506
  - Gabriel taking Torah scroll of M. to heavenly court, 812
  - Michael appearing to Moses, 501
  - M. as lord of angels, 791-792
  - M. contending for Torah, 613-616
  - M. exalted above angels, 807 n893
  - M. fearing
    - angels after Israel's worship of golden calf, 622-623
    - Metatron, 503
    - sword of angel of death, 810
  - M. first to notice appearance of destroying angel, 730 n595
  - M. frightened by angels so as to forget Torah, 615
  - M. learning praise of God from angels, 409 n383, 505 n117
  - M. meeting angels of terror (Gallizur, Hadarniel, Kemuel, Metatron, Rigyon, Sandalfon), 613-615
  - M. passing through flames of Sandalfon, 614
  - M. prevented by angel of death from blessing Israel, 819
  - M. protected by God from angels, 613-615
  - M. receiving gifts from angels, 729
  - M. recounting wonders of life to Samael, 829

Moses (*cont.*)

- and angels (*cont.*)
  - M. refusing help of angel, 845 n20
  - M. refusing to submit to angel of death, 615 n245
  - M. slaying Hemah for swallowing him, 515
  - M. slaying Kemuel, 613
  - M. speaking in heaven to Michael, 346-347 n86
  - M. struggling with
    - Af, Haron, Hemah, Kezef, and Mashhit, 623
    - angels, 626 n279
    - destroying angels, 623, 624 n274
  - M. swallowed by Af and Hemah down to feet, 515
  - M. using incense to keep angel of death from destroying rebellious Israelites, 729
  - superiority of M. to angels, 701 n493
  - Yefefiyah, handing over Torah to M., 615
- anger of, 797, 798 n862
  - causing doom, 733-735
  - causing M. to forget words of God, 797, 798 n862
  - having bad effect on, 574 n110
  - at people of Meribah, 798 n862
  - at sons of Aaron, 798 n862
- announcing law of sacrifices after defeat by Amorites, 717
- ascension of, 502-505, 505 n117, 832 n951, 837 n960 (*see also* Moses: in heaven; Moses: in Paradise)
- in cloud, 613
- legend of, 815 n904
- M. remaining in heaven
  - from 18 Tammuz to 28 Av, 628
  - from 7 Sivan to 17 Tammuz, 629 n286
- M. returning from heaven on 11 Tishri, 585
- M. spending 40 days in heaven for second time, 633
  - in study of Torah, 615, 617
- M.'s tour of heavens, 503-505
- after revelation on Sinai, 615 n246
  - several ascensions of, 505 n117
- asking people to nominate judges, 587

Moses (*cont.*)

- as author/composer of
  - Amidah, 1128 n58 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)
  - book of Job, 453 n3
  - 11 psalms, 823
  - Grace after Meals, 1128 n58 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)
  - psalms for Benjamin, Gad, Issachar, Judah, Levi, and Reuben, 823
- bearing mark of true redeemer, 516
- beauty of, 479 n50, 481, 481-482 n64
- beholding future, 814-815
- birth of, 475-477
  - attended by great radiance, 476
  - circumcised, 479 n51, 829 (*see also* covenant[s]: sign of; Moses: circumcision of)
  - date of
    - 7th of Adar, 477 n44
    - six months after conception, 476
  - and description of basket (ark) of Moses, 477, 479 n46
  - in month of Adar, 1152 n108
- blessing Israel
  - all tribes, 826
  - at consecration of Tabernacle, 819
  - first time, at erection of Tabernacle, 819
  - four times, 819-820
  - at installation of judges, 819
  - M. not blessing tribe of Simeon, 821, 825 n924
  - M. prevented by angel of death from blessing Israel, 819
  - tribe of Asher, 823
  - tribe of Benjamin, 822
  - tribe of Gad, 822-823
  - tribe of Issachar, 822
  - tribe of Joseph, 822
  - tribe of Levi, 821
  - tribe of Naphtali, 823
  - tribe of Reuben, 820
  - tribe of Zebulun, 822
- blessing(s) of, 824 n912
  - at hour of death, 819-826
  - more effective than others, 819
  - number exceeding blessings of predecessors, 819
  - relation to blessings of Jacob, 824 n912
- brother-in-law of Elisheba, 661



Moses (*cont.*)

burial of (*see also* Moses: death of)  
 body of M. taken to Gad's territory, 823  
 by celestial beings, 833 n952  
 corpse of M. not decaying, 411-412, 832 (*see also under* corpse[s])  
 by God, 832, 833 n952  
 grave of  
   attempt of Roman government to locate, 1091 n60  
   connected by underground passage to graves of patriarchs, 832  
   created in twilight between sixth day and Sabbath, 78, 833 n952 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)  
   location of, unknown, 781 n792, 832, 833 n952  
   opposite spot where Peor bound, 623  
 Michael asking God for permission to bury Moses, 830 n946  
 by M. himself, 833 n952  
 M. requesting that bones be carried to other side of Jordan, 802  
 by three angels, 97 n135  
 tomb and bier of, made by God, 807  
 and burning bush, 501-502, 509-511, 815 n902 (*see also* Moses: and Sinai; thorn-bush)  
 and calendar, 534-535  
 circumcision of (*see also* Moses: birth of)  
   on eighth day by parents, 479 n51  
   M. recognized as Hebrew by circumcision, 479 n51  
 commanded  
   to remove shoes, 509, 511 n122  
   to wage war against Midian, 792  
 commanding that women of Midian be killed, 797  
 compared to  
   Abraham, 837  
   Adam, 837  
   animals of fifth day of creation, 838  
   Balaam, 760, 771  
   burning candle, 697 n479  
   firmament of second day of creation, 838

Moses (*cont.*)

compared to (*cont.*)  
   heavenly bodies of fourth day of creation, 838  
   Jacob, 280 n153, 837  
   light of first day of creation, 838  
   Noah, 837  
   sea of third day of creation, 838  
 condemned for calling Israelites "fools," 738  
 confronted by Zimri, 779-780  
 contrasted with Balaam in haggadic literature, 762 n727  
 credited with many accomplishments in culture and society, 484 n67  
 crown acquired by M., 672 n399  
 death of, 800-801, 826-827 (*see also* Moses: burial of)  
   Abraham, Adam, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, and Noah appearing at, 837  
   age at, 120 years, 831, 839 n966  
   ascent to heaven on day of, 816  
   caused by sin of Adam, 806 n888  
   caused by waters of Meribah, 478  
 date  
   1st of Adar, 839 n966  
   6th of Adar, 477 n44  
   7th of Adar, 477 n44, 737, 812-813, 839 n966  
   7th of Iyar, 477 n44  
   in month of Adar, 839 n966, 1152 n108  
 disappearance of well, clouds of glory, and manna at, 573, 574 n113  
 eye of M. not becoming dim at death, one of six distinctions, 833-834 n953  
 face of M. remaining radiant after death, one of six distinctions, 833-834 n953  
 Gabriel sent to fetch soul of, 828  
 God angry with M. for not accepting death, 809  
 God comforting M. concerning death, 806-807  
 God's command concerning, 815  
 God sending Michael to fetch Moses' soul, 828  
 by kiss of God, 743 n639  
 by kiss of Shekinah, 411  
 last hours of, 817-819  
 manna ceasing to fall at, 844

Moses (*cont.*)

death of (*cont.*)  
   M. delivering to Joshua scroll with Ineffable Name and book of song, 827  
   M. imploring God that he not have to die, 813  
   M. pleading again for life, 817-818  
   M. refusing to die, 58 n20, 832 n948  
   M. seeing glory of God at moment of death, 834 n953  
   on Mount Nebo, 814, 823  
   on Mount Pisgah, 774  
   mourning for, 744 n643, 834-835, 835 n954  
     God Himself weeping for M., 834  
     rending garment and putting dust on head, 827  
     for three months, 834  
   mysteries revealed to M. before death, 815 n902  
   nearly a year after death of Miriam, 737  
   in public, 815 n904  
   as punishment for calling Israel "rebels," 805 n879  
 on Sabbath  
   according to Kabbalah, 466 n3  
   afternoon, 839 n966  
 struggle between Michael and Satan over Moses' body, 830 n946  
 on Sunday, Wednesday, Friday, or Saturday, 839 n966  
 view of some that M. did not die, 832 n951  
 and war against Midianites, 793  
 Zagzagel sent to fetch soul of, 828  
 degeneration of family of, 881  
 descendants of, as Levites, 511 n121 (*see also* Moses: sons of)  
 and desert, longing of M. for, 500 (*see also* Moses: in wilderness)  
 difficulty of, in understanding calendar, 534-535  
 compounding of holy anointing oil, 535  
 construction of candlestick in Tabernacle, 535, 678  
 which animals are permitted or prohibited, 535



Moses (*cont.*)

distinction(s) of  
   owing to Israel, 625 n275, 717 n550  
   owing to Torah, 634  
   six in number  
     eye of M. not becoming dim at death, 833-834 n953  
     face remaining radiant after death, 833-834 n953  
   M. able to see entire Holy Land with one glance, 833-834 n953  
   M. and God speaking face to face, 833-834 n953  
   no prophet equal to M., 833-834 n953  
   voice of M. able to be heard throughout camp, 833-834 n953  
 distinguished in this world and world to come, 806  
 dividing promised land, 784  
 dividing sea into 12 parts, 829  
 and Divine Throne  
   M. saved by clinging to Divine Throne, 623  
 doing three things on own authority (breaking tablets, adding day of preparation for revelation on Sinai, giving up conjugal life), 626 n279  
 and Edom  
   M. assuring king of Edom that Israelites would not attack Edomite women, 737 n622  
   M. requesting passage through Edom, 735-736  
 education of, 483  
 in Egypt, 465-544  
   age of M. at time of flight from Egypt, 487 n69, 488 n76  
   M. asking Pharaoh to let Hebrews rest one day a week, 485-486  
   M. bringing plagues at age 80 years, 829  
   M. cast into prison by Pharaoh, 520 n155  
   M. charged with three plagues that proceeded from air and fire, 523  
   M. drowning Egyptians, 829  
   M. fleeing from Pharaoh, 487, 488-490  
   M. killing Egyptian taskmaster, by pronouncing Name of God, 486-487

Moses (*cont.*)

in Egypt (*cont.*)  
   M. miraculously released from prison, 520 n155  
   M. returning to Egypt on mission, 515-517  
     on same ass that bore Abraham to Akedah on Mount Moriah, 515  
   M. taking crown from Pharaoh at age six months, 829  
   M. working along with Israelites in bondage, 485  
   plagues brought through M., 529-534  
 and Eleazar  
   M. asking E. to intercede, 809  
   M. passing on to E. applications of Holy Names, 615  
 and Elijah  
   relationship of, in Messianic time, 1020  
 and Ethiopia  
   age of M. when becoming king of Ethiopia, 27 years, 490  
   age of M. when leaving Ethiopia, 67 years, 491  
   M. as king of Ethiopia for 40 years, 490-493  
   M. forced to marry queen of Ethiopians while fleeing from Pharaoh, 701 n488  
   M. teaching circumcision to Ethiopians, 492 n80  
   M. using birds to eat serpents in campaign against Ethiopians, 492 n80  
 evil disposition of  
   legend of, also told of Aristotle, 484 n68  
   legend of, and king of Arabia, 483-484  
   M. transforming evil disposition, 483-484  
 eyes of, changed into Merkabah wheels by Metatron, 503  
 face of  
   as fiery red, 661 n381  
   remaining radiant after death, one of six distinctions of M., 833-834 n953  
   shining like sun, 813  
 finding favor with Kikanos, 489  
 as first national leader of Israel, 545  
 as first sage, 484 n67  
 as first to enter Red Sea, 557 n36  
 flesh of, changed into torches of fire by Metatron, 503

Moses (*cont.*)

foster-mother of, 479 n48  
 founding cities of refuge, 799  
 gates of wisdom open to, 49 in number, 950  
 and generation of desert brought to life, one of seven wonders of Messiah, 1021  
 and God  
   conversation between, 501-502  
   God addressing M., 509  
   God angry with M. for not accepting death, 809  
   God changing M.'s face to look like Abraham, 616 n248  
   God comforting M. concerning death, 806-807  
   God commanding M. to appoint judges, 779  
   God disapproving of M.'s breaking tablets, 635 n305  
   God kissing soul of M., 831-834  
   God not accepting prayers of M., 801  
   God recounting actions favoring M., 807  
   God reversing order of heaven and earth for sake of M., 806  
   God showing to M.  
     all generations, 630, 631 n291  
     all judges and prophets of future, 788  
     all land of Israel, 813-814  
     future, 509-510, 512  
     reward awaiting him in heaven, 816  
   Tabernacle in heaven, 641  
   M. acknowledging God's justice, 818-819 n908  
   M. appealing to God for assistance in judgment, 689-691  
   M. appointed king by God, 641  
   M. arguing with God, 509-510  
     about golden calf, 623-624  
   M. imploring God that he not have to die, 813  
   M. instructed  
     to perform ceremony to convince people of Aaron's priesthood, 730  
     to speak to rock for water, 732, 737  
   M. near to Mercy and Justice, 611



Moses (*cont.*)and God (*cont.*)

- M. not to look on glory of God, 630
- M. rebuked by God for allowing sin at Shittim, 792
- M. sitting in presence of God, 807 n893
- M. sustained by seeing God, 635 n309
- revelation of name of God to M., 511, 523 n166
- revelation to M. directly from God, 612 n242
- speaking face to face, one of six distinctions of M., 833-834 n953
- in Goshen
  - M. going to land of, 485
  - story of Dathan and Shelomith, 486
- grandson of
  - doing *avodah zarah*, 881
  - officiating as priest before Micah's idol at Shiloh, 881
  - as old prophet at Beth-el, 881
  - subverting idol worshipers, 881
- as half man and half God, 838
- as half terrestrial and half celestial, 838 n965
- hand of, becoming leprous, 675
- having "benevolent eye," 819
- as head of generation at time of resurrection (*see* Moses: Messianic activity of; Moses: in time to come; Moses: in world to come)
- in heaven (*see also* Moses: ascension of; Moses: in Paradise)
  - for 40 days and nights, 806-807
  - M. as one of servants of Lord, 832
  - M. fasting, 829
  - for 120 days and nights, 829
- and Hebrew language
  - M. receiving divine communications in Hebrew, 612 n242
- Heman "the confidant" identified with, 955 n20
- as high priest (*see* Moses: as priest)
- and Holy Land
  - M. wanting to enter Holy Land to fulfill commandments, 828 n942
- humiliation of, 637 n313
- humility of, 503, 596 n187, 635 n310, 700 (*see also* Moses: modesty of)

Moses (*cont.*)

- identified with Musaeus, the Greek sage, in syncretistic writings, 481 n59, 484 n67
- and idolatry
  - M. casting idolaters into ocean, 625
  - M. ordering execution of idolaters
    - at command of God, 626 n279
    - on own authority, 626 n279
- image of, on Solomon's throne, 968
- imploring
  - blessings for tribes, 820-823
  - forgiveness for Judah and Reuben, 820
- importance of, as great as that of cherubim, 838 n965
- Ineffable Name revealed to, 511
- infancy and youth of, 480-482, 485-488
  - Arabic version of legend of M. as child, 484 n65
- M. abandoned by shores of Red Sea, 477
- M. beginning to prophesy at four months, 480
- M. exposed on 6 Sivan, day of revelation of Torah on Mount Sinai, 479 n47
- M. exposed on 21 Nisan, 477
- M. refusing to nurse
  - at all, 476, 479 n51
  - from Egyptian woman, 478, 479 n51
- M. rescued from water, 477-480
  - by angels and Michael, 487
  - by Gabriel, 482-485
- M. suckled by Jochebed, 478
- M. taking crown from king and putting it on head, in third year, 482
- M. walking and speaking with parents at age of one day, 476 (*see also* under infants)
- M. walking and talking at age of three days, 829 (*see also* under infants)
- remarkable size of M., at three years old, 481
- influence of, upon people, 612 n240
- instituting preaching in synagogues on holy days, 653
- instructing, method of, 634
- intelligence of, 481

Moses (*cont.*)

## interceding

- on account of ten just men in Israel (Moses, Aaron, Eleazar, Ithamar, Phinehas, Joshua, Caleb, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob), 628
- for Jews, 1170
- for Miriam, 702
- intercessions for, 808-810
  - M. asking Great Sea to intercede, 808
  - M. asking hills and mountains to intercede, 808
  - M. pleading with works of creation to intercede for him, 818, 818 n908
- as intermediator, 610-613, 835 n955
- Isaiah as great a prophet as, 1058 n104
- and Israel
  - Israelites being critical of M., 586
  - law of circumcision bestowed on Israel through M., 807
  - M. appointed over 60 myriads of Israel in this world, 807
  - M. as greatest religious guide of Israel, 545
  - M. asking angel of face to intercede for Israel, 809
  - M. asking Caleb to intercede for Israel, 809
  - M. asking forgiveness for Israel, 826
  - M. asking 70 elders and leaders to intercede for Israel, 809
  - M. blamed for Israel's sin, 622-625
  - M. blessing Israelites, 586-587
  - M. blessing Israel upon completion of Temple, 661
  - M. insisting on direct guidance from God for Israel, 845 n20
  - M. interceding for Israel, 627-629, 628 n283, 714, 715 n541, 1080 (*see also* Moses: prayer of; prayer)
    - after golden calf, 624
  - M. making children of Israel drink from ocean, 625
  - M. making serpent of brass to heal Israelites punished by serpents, 748
  - M. prevented by angel of death from blessing Israel, 819



Moses (*cont.*)and Israel (*cont.*)

M. reproaching Israel with its sins, 757

## and Jeremiah

M. appearing to Jews with J., 1080

parallels between, 1070 n13

## and Jethro

conditions imposed on M. by J., 517 n143

M. absolved of oath to J. by heavenly court, 517 n143

M. allowing J. to think he was Egyptian, punishment for, 495

M. asking J.'s consent to return to Egypt, 515

M. as shepherd for 40 years, 500-501

M. released from vow to J., 802

M. swearing oath to J. not to leave, 500

M. waiting on guests at feast of J., 584

M. welcoming J., 584

## and Jochebed

J. teaching M. history of Hebrews, 487 n69

M. led to Joseph's bones by Jochebed, 546

## and Joseph

miracle at Nile to get J.'s coffin, 429

M. searching for J.'s coffin, 428-429

M. seeking J.'s body to bring bones to resting place, 545-546

M. taking charge of J.'s remains, 428-429, 430 n437, 547-548 n1, 633

M. wrapping J.'s bones in sheepskin on which "Name of God" written, 430 n442

## and Joshua

M. addressing J. in last hour of life, 818

M. asking J.

to be kind to Zipporah, 819 n909

to intercede, 808-809

to take care of Jochebed, 819 n909

M. bestowing on J. insight, understanding, and radiant countenance, 789

M. blessing J., 581, 818

Moses (*cont.*)and Joshua (*cont.*)

M. giving J. book of prophecy as inheritance, 790

M. instructing J. on campaign against Amalek, 580

M. laying both hands on J.'s head, 789

M. laying only one hand on J.'s head, 789

M. not understanding discourse of J., 827

M. sending J. to battle Amalekites, 579

M. serving J. from 1 Shevat to 6 Adar, 810-812

M. sitting at right side of J., 827

M.'s last words to J., 815 n902

M.'s legacy to J., 790-791

M. subordinating self to J., 827

M. treating J. as equal, 581

as judge, 585-586

kindness of, 740 n635

as king, 634, 635 n308

of Israel, 590 n170, 696, 820

in Jeshurun, 590 n170

of Jews, 590 n170

and priest, 511 n121

and Korah, M. pleading in vain with K., 722-725

lament of, in Aramaic language, 1081 n37

last campaign of, 791-794

Law of (*see* Torah: of Moses)

leprosy of, 514 n132, 675

as Levite, not permitted to enter

place in Tabernacle

assigned to priest, 664

n384

meekness of, 701 n490

merits of

children born on same night as

M. saved on account of, 479

clouds of glory reappearing on account of, 573

manna given on account of, 573, 574 n113

saved on account of, 573

and Messiah

Messiah more exalted than Moses, 790 n836

Moses meeting Messiah in heaven, 816-817

Messianic activity of (*see also*

Moses: in time to come;

Moses: in world to come)

with Elijah or Messiah, 838

n966

Moses (*cont.*)Messianic activity of (*cont.*)

M. to be cupbearer at Messianic banquet, 838-839 n966

work of redemption, 1081 n36

in Midian

length of time in, 487 n69, 488 n76

M. journeying to Midian, 491

M. meeting Zipporah at well in Midian, 493

well in, same as well God created at beginning of world, 494

miracles of, performed before elders of people in Egypt, 516

and Miriam and Aaron (*see* Moses: and Aaron and Miriam)

mission of, 503

M. declining, 509-511, 512-513

modesty of, 581 (*see also* Moses: humility of)

as M.'s special virtue, 715 n543

Mordecai compared to, 1141 n60

on Mount Horeb, 501-502 (*see also* Moses: at Sinai)

name

eulogy "remembered to good"

added to, 996 n1

meaning of, 480, 481 n59

not mentioned in Tetzavveh section of Pentateuch, 268

n284, 627

names and titles of, 480, 484-485 n68

Abi Gedor, 480

Abi Soco, 480

Abi Zanoah, 480

elect of God, 912 n1

faithful shepherd, 500-501, 501 n109, 1081 n36, 1159,

1161 n122

father of prophecy, 485 n68, 955 n18

father of prophets, 545

father of wisdom, 955 n18

father of wise, 485 n68

friend of God, 168 n4

*hasid*, 485 n68

Jekuthiel, 480

Jered, 480

king in Jeshurun, 545

man of God, 838, 838 n965

master of all prophets, 485 n68

M. called Heber as child, 480

M. called Hermes by Egyptians, 484 n67

M. called Melkiel by Jochebed, 481 n57



Moses (*cont.*)names and titles of (*cont.*)

- M. called Moses by daughter of Pharaoh, 480
  - M. called Moyses by Artapanus, 484 n67
  - M. describing self as "servant of Lord," 805 n880 (*see also* Abraham; David; Isaiah; Jacob)
  - Nathaniel, 481 n57
  - pious, 485 n68
  - Shemaiah b. Nethanel, 480
  - son of Amram, 613
    - as derogatory title, 588 n163
  - ten in number, 481 n57
  - Tobiah, 481 n57
  - wisest of wise, 545
- and Og
- M. fearing to wage war against O., 754
  - M. permitted to enter land of Sihon and Og, 800
- one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)
- one of eight whose corpse not touched by worms, 939 n128 (*see also under* corpse[s])
- one of seven pillars of earth, 9 n28 (*see also under* world[s])
- one of seven shepherds who will lead Israel with Messiah in Messianic time, 508
- one of shepherds who assist Messiah on left, 100 n142
- one of six men given name by God before birth, 201 (*see also under* name)
- one of ten just men in Israel, 628
- one of three deliverers sent by God to deliver Israel from Egypt, 648
- one of two redeemers, 430 n434 (*see also* Aaron)
- one of "two witnesses" in Christian tradition, 1071 n13
- in Paradise
- M. in hall of gold, 23 n97
  - M. unworthy to pronounce blessing over wine in, 939
- parents of, 473-475
- perfection of, 511 n122
- M. as greatest and most perfect of all men, 838 n961

Moses (*cont.*)

## and Phinehas

- M. sending P. into battle with ark and Urim and Thummim, 794
- piety of, 788
- M. as one of five men pious from first to last, 1044 n39 (*see also under* pious: men)
  - M. as one of five pious men for sake of whose merits Israel to be redeemed, 502 (*see also under* pious: men)
  - M. as one of four pious men who addressed unbecoming words to God, 628 n284 (*see also under* pious: men)
  - M. as one of seven pious men erecting altar, 771 (*see also under* pious: men)
  - M. as one of seven pious men of world, 968 (*see also under* pious: men)
  - M. greater than all pious men, 837-839
  - shown by copying Torah scrolls, 812
- in pit for seven years, 495
- play on words *anav* ("humble") and *ani* ("poor") of, 636 n310
- prayer(s) of
- barred from heaven, 801
  - for David and dynasty, 821
  - for death, 826-828
  - for Israel, 628 n284
  - M. praying 515 prayers, 805
  - for Reuben's life in future world, 824 n920
  - saving only two of Aaron's sons, 730 n599
  - for successor, 787-788, 789 n824
  - for suspension of judgment, 801-806
  - like sword, 801
  - to three patriarchs for help against angels of destruction, 623
  - for victory over Amalek, 581
  - in wilderness, 551
- as priest
- as high priest, 514 n139
  - performing priest's service in Tabernacle, 514, 514 n139
  - performing services of high priest for 40 years, 658 n372

Moses (*cont.*)

## and promised land

- God allowing M. to look at promised land from top of mountain, 805 n876
  - God granting all of M.'s requests except immortality and entering Holy Land, 515
  - God not allowing M. to enter promised land lest he see idols, 805 n879
  - M. dividing promised land, 784
  - M. dying outside promised land because he allowed Jethro to think he was Egyptian, 495
  - M. imploring God to do away with sentence denying him entrance to promised land, 800
  - M. not to enter, 734
  - M. to die in desert without entering promised land, 716
- and prophecy, 502
- as prophet, 814
- M. as "elect" among prophets, 912 n1
  - M. as greatest prophet among Israelites, 761
  - M. prophesying for 40 years, 1070 n13
  - only original, 612 n242
- prophetic spirit of, 500
- punishment of
- for anger, 797-798
  - for boastful words regarding legal question, 786
  - for calling Israel "rebels," 805 n879
  - for hesitation, by descendants being made Levites, 514
  - for indecision about Zimri, 780
  - leprosy as, 512
  - for refusing God third time, 522
  - for reluctance, 596 n187
  - on road to Egypt, 515
  - for stubbornness, 512-515
  - pursued by 70 elders for tablets, 625
- in rabbinic literature
- M. spoken of as "Moses our master," 484 n68
- radiance of face of, 600-601, 602 n204, 619 n260, 632 n295, 634
- diminished after Israel worshiped golden calf, 619 n260



Moses (*cont.*)

radiance of face of (*cont.*)  
   origin of, 635 n309, 635 n310  
   and Shekinah, 619 n260  
 raising hands resulting in victory in  
   battle, 581  
 receiving revelation concerning red  
   heifer, 676  
 recounting sins of Dathan and  
   Abiram, 724  
 recounting ten temptations of  
   Israelites, 757  
 at Red Sea  
   sea ordered to divide before, 48  
 resurrection of, at beginning of  
   Messianic time, 73 n67  
 revelations to, 815 n902  
   earthly and heavenly Temple,  
     817 n905  
 rewarded for interceding for  
   Israelites, 839 n966  
 at right hand of God, 535 (*see also*  
   God: right hand of)  
 rod of, 512, 514 n132  
   becoming serpent, 512  
   coming from Jacob to Joseph,  
     496-497 n95  
   created in twilight, 82 n99 (*see*  
     *also under* creation: sixth  
     day)  
   dividing Red Sea, 553-554  
   doing good, 575  
   engraved with exalted Name,  
     names of ten plagues,  
     names of three Fathers,  
     names of six Mothers, and  
     names of 12 tribes, 554  
   given to spies as weapon  
     against Canaanites, 842 n6  
     against giants, 708  
   identified with rod of Aaron,  
     842 n6  
   made from branch of tree in  
     Paradise, 837 n958  
   made from sapphire, 626 n279  
   as shepherd's staff, 501 n111  
   smiting rock for water, 575  
   taken away as punishment for  
     smiting rock, 735 n611  
   taken from tree of life, 568 n82  
   turning lions into meek animals,  
     518  
   weight of (60 seah), 626 n279  
 as ruler of sea, 792  
 and Sabbath  
   M. failing to communicate law  
     of Sabbath in time, 574  
     n109, 574 n110

Moses (*cont.*)

and Sabbath (*cont.*)  
   M. receiving instruction to cele-  
     brate Sabbath by lighting  
     candles, 677-678  
   M. transforming Sabbath-  
     breakers into apes, 691  
     n452  
   Sabbath as commandment  
     revealed to M., 545  
   Sabbath bestowed on Israel  
     through M., 807  
 and Samael  
   M. chastising S., 828-831  
 and Satan  
   M. attacked by S. on way to  
     Egypt, 517 n146, 538  
     n216  
   S. disguised as M., 620  
 second  
   Ezra as, 1122  
 seized by great fear, three times,  
   639  
 sentenced to death, 487  
 seven generations from Abraham  
   to, 224 n222, 474 n31  
 sexual abstinence of, 509, 511  
   n122, 700, 832  
 and Shekinah  
   M. as seventh righteous man  
     who drew Shekinah back  
     from seventh heaven, 473  
   M. receiving nourishment from  
     radiance of Shekinah, 634  
   M. uniting with Shekinah, 509  
   Shekinah assisting M. in census  
     of Levites, 682  
 as shepherd, 501 n109  
 and Sihon and Og  
   M. permitted to enter land of,  
     800  
   M. slaying S. and O. with rod,  
     756 n695  
   M. waging war against S. and  
     O., 829  
 at Sinai  
   M. breaking tablets of Ten  
     Commandments, 4, 625  
   M. carried to God in cloud, 596  
   M. erecting 12 memorial pillars  
     on Mount Sinai, 598  
   M. ordered to Mount Sinai on  
     second day of third month,  
     596  
   M. returning with second tablets  
     on 10 Tishri, 632  
   M. to receive tablets second  
     time on 10 Tishri, 631

Moses (*cont.*)

singing song of praise to God, 820  
 sin(s) of, 803-804  
   M. claiming to be free of sin,  
     806 n891  
   M. wishing sin to be recorded,  
     806 n889  
 slandering those in grave, 806  
   n889  
 slaughterer of Ziz, 32 n139  
 slaying guardian angel of  
   Egyptians, 829  
 son of Amram, 726 n581, 734,  
   804-805 (*see also* Moses:  
   names and titles of)  
 sons of  
   biting off fingers rather than  
     play harps for tyrants,  
     1088  
   hidden from enemies by cloud,  
     1088  
   land of, 1088  
   and legend about sons of  
     Rechab, 1089 n57  
   Levites as, 1088-1090  
   living peaceably and in prosper-  
     ity, 1088  
   more than 600,000 in number,  
     1089 n55  
   never suffering sickness, 1089  
   uncircumcised, 517 n148  
   way illuminated by pillar of fire,  
     1088  
 soul of Seth entered into, 116 n52  
 speech impediment of, 513, 514  
   n136  
   removed by God for a time, 514  
     n140  
   story of reason for, 483  
 speech of admonition of, 756-758  
 and spies  
   M. giving instructions to spies,  
     706  
   M. giving spies two weapons  
     against giants, 708  
   M. sending Caleb and Phinehas  
     as spies to Jazer, 752  
   M. sending spies from Kadesh-  
     Barnea on 27 Sivan, 707  
 staff of (*see* Moses: rod of)  
 strength of will of, 483  
 studying oral teachings at night,  
   617  
 studying written teaching in day,  
   617  
 successor of, to be invincible, 775  
 summoning Dathan and Abiram,  
   722-723



Moses (*cont.*)

## and sun

- M. asking sun why it was shining after destruction of Temple, 1080
- M. bidding sun and moon to stand still, 829
- M. causing sun to stand still, 583 n144, 583 n146 (*see also* sun)

## superiority of

- to Abraham, 837
- to Adam, 837
- to all prophets, 834 n953
- to angels, 701 n493
- to fathers, 523 n166
- to Isaac, 837
- to Jacob, 837
- to Joseph, 837
- to Messiah, 833-834 n953
- to Noah, 837
- to other mortals, 806 n889

## surpassing

- all creation, 838
- all men in understanding, 838 n961
- all other human beings, 838
- sword of executioner unable to cut neck of, 487, 488 n76

## and Tabernacle

- first sanctuary erected by M., 545
- God showing Tabernacle to M. in heaven, 641
- M. assembling people on 11 Tishri to instruct them about Tabernacle, 653
- M. giving accounting of construction of Tabernacle, 655
- M. rejecting gifts of women at first, 653-654
- M. setting up Tabernacle, 656
- M. to make furniture of Tabernacle, 641 n324
- Tabernacle as commandment revealed to M., 545

## taking city by using storks, 490-491

## teaching writing to Hebrews, 484 n67

## tent of

- heavenly bodies going to, 627
- M. hiding heavenly gifts in, 628 n285
- sapphire quarry in, 635 n306
- seraphim going to, 627
- tested as shepherd of people, 500 (*see also* David)

Moses (*cont.*)

## testing wisdom of Bezalel, 641

- three outstanding moments in life of (burning bush, Sinai, vision on Mount Pisgah), 815 n902

in time to come, 543 n235 (*see also* Moses: Messianic activity of; Moses: in world to come)

## tongue of, changed into flame by Metatron, 503

## and Torah

- Korah abusing, 720-722
- M. becoming master of Torah, 619 n256
- M. copying 13 scrolls of Torah, 812
- M. devoting 40 days and nights to study of Torah second time, 634
- M. fasting 40 days and nights while studying Torah, 634
- M. forgetting what he learned about Torah, 617
- M. giving Torah first to women for sake of merits of mothers, 597 n189
- M. putting life in danger for sake of Torah, Israel, and Justice, 619 n257
- M. receiving Torah, 616-619 on account of merits of Abraham, 616 n248
- from God's right hand, 829
- from Yefefiyah, 615
- M. repeating Torah in 70 languages, 757, 812
- M. repeating whole Torah, 757
- M. sent away while God revealing Torah to people, 601
- M. spending 40 days in heaven in study of Torah, 615, 617
- M. teaching Torah in academy, 801
- M. telling people of punishments for not observing Torah, 597
- M. to present Torah to men and women differently, 596
- to women first, 596
- M. writing down Torah, 634
- reed used by M. in writing Torah, 837 n958
- revelation of, as final, 842 n8
- Torah as gift of God to M., 504, 617

Moses (*cont.*)and Torah (*cont.*)

- Torah named after M., 806
- tour of heavens of, 503-505
- translation of (*see* Moses: ascension of)
- turning bitter water sweet, 829
- unable to decide four legal cases, 789 n822
- uniqueness of leadership of, 791 n838
- vision of
  - clear, 612 n242
  - clear and distinct, 611
- visiting Paradise and hell, 505-509
- voice of, 602 n201
  - able to be heard throughout camp, one of six distinctions of M., 833-834 n953
  - on day of revelation, 600
  - heard throughout land of Egypt, 542, 543 n241
  - strength of, carrying for 12 miles, 711 n521
- and war against Midian
  - M. commanded to wage war against Midian, 792
  - M. commanding that women of Midian be killed, 797
  - M. not leading in war against Midian, 794
- wealth of, gained from diamonds of second tablets, 633
- in wilderness
  - manna given to Israel as reward for good deeds of M., 845 n17
  - M. requesting Sihon to let Israel pass through land, 751
  - M. striking rock for water, 738
  - M. striking rock instead of speaking to it, 734
  - people murmuring against, 565, 566
  - sin of M., at waters of Meribah, 735 n613
  - and water ordeal, 626 n279
  - wisdom of, 484 n67
  - Solomon's wisdom greater than, 949-950
  - like torch, 789
  - wishes of, three in number (that Shekinah might dwell with Israel; that Shekinah might not dwell with other nations; that he might learn to know ways of God), 629



Moses (*cont.*)

wives of  
 M. given Adoniah, queen of Ethiopia, 490, 491  
 M. marrying sister of idolaters, 883 n130  
 Tharbis, 492 n80  
 Zipporah, 494-497  
 world created for sake of, 939 n128  
 in world to come (*see also* Moses: Messianic activity of; Moses: in time to come)  
 M. appointed over 55 myriads of pious men, 807, 807 n894  
 M. to be given scepter engraved with Ineffable Name, 807  
 M. to be teacher of Israel, 508  
 M. to lead generation of wilderness, 1022 n114  
 M. to lead Israel, 838  
 writing 613 commandments, 829  
 Zagzagel as teacher of, in Kabbalah, 505 n117  
 and Zelophehad  
 M. sentencing Z. to death by stoning, 690  
 and Zipporah  
 M. divorced from Z., 584  
 Moses Hamon, R.  
 physician to Sultan Sulaiman I, 1013 n93  
 Moses Krammer, R.  
 great-grandfather of R. Elijah Wilna, 1020 n104  
 Most Holy  
 of Tabernacle, 48  
*See also* Holy of Holies; Holy Place; sanctuary; Tabernacle; Temple  
 Mosul  
 another name for Babylon, 1115 n5  
 Belshazzar as king of, 1115 n5  
 mother  
 five parts of body received from (skin, flesh, blood, hair, pupil of eye), 606  
 “mother earth”  
 traces of, in Jewish legends, 54 n15  
 mothers  
 covenant with, 434 n3  
 four in number (Sarah, Rebekah, Rachel, and Leah), 434 n3  
 merits of (*see* merits)  
 names of six of, engraved on rod of Moses, 554

mothers (*cont.*)

as prophetesses, 254 n15, 271  
 six in number (Sarah, Rebekah, Jacob's four wives)  
 witnessing passage of Israel through Red Sea, 556  
 mountain(s)  
 of abode, one of six names of Mount Horeb, 500  
 attesting holiness of Sabbath, 1089 n56  
 becoming rocks as result of idolatry, 117  
 contest of, 594-596  
 of darkness  
 location of third Diaspora, 1089 n56  
 mentioned in Alexander legend of Talmud, 964 n51  
 trysting place of spirits and demons, 962  
 fighting for honor of being spot for revelation, 594-596  
 four in number, on which heavenly Jerusalem will descend, 595 n184 (*see also* Jerusalem: heavenly)  
 of God, one of six names of Mount Horeb, 500  
 God retaining three in desert (Sinai, Nebo, Her), 736  
 of humps, one of six names of Mount Horeb, 500  
 leveled by cloud preceding Israel, 736  
 one of three visitations of generation of Enosh, 118 n55  
 origin of, 18, 20 n71, 79 n90, 109 n31  
 of promised land, leaping to meet Israelites, 749  
 Samael searching for Moses in, 836  
 to be razed, at fourth blast of Elijah on trumpet in Messianic time, 1021  
 wielded by Og  
 perforated by ants, 754  
 perforated by hoopoe, 756 n695  
 perforated by raven, 756 n695  
 Mount Hermon. *See* Hermon, Mount  
 Mount Horeb. *See* Horeb, Mount  
 Mount Lubar. *See* Lubar, Mount  
 Mount Moriah. *See* Moriah, Mount  
 Mount of Olives  
 Shekinah dwelling on, for 13½ years, 1076 n27  
 Mount of the Kings  
 one of names of Mount Horeb, 501 n113

Mount Sinai. *See* Sinai, MountMount Zion. *See* Zion, Mount

## mourning

customs of, visiting house of, 462 n33  
 immoderate, 236 n259  
 introduced at death of Adam, 99 n140  
 Isaac mourning Sarah for three years, 251  
 length of  
 for Abraham, 248 n317  
 for Deborah, 70 days, 869  
 seven days, 99 n139, 114  
 for Jacob, 415  
 for Sarah, 235  
 six days, 99, 99 n139  
 three days, 99 n139  
 lentils and, 257  
 signs of, 412  
 bare feet, 844  
 baring shoulders, 989 n45  
 dust on head, 340  
 rending clothes, 339, 340  
 sackcloth, 342  
*See also* grief; rending clothes  
 mouse  
 creation of, 36  
 hymn of praise of, 45, 46 n194 (*see also* praise)  
 and Noah, 36  
 wild boar springing forth from remains of mountain-mouse, 42 n190  
 mouth  
 given to Jacob, 768  
 giving birth through, 43 n190  
 one of ten orifices of man, 960  
 one of 12 guides of men, cutting all kinds of food, 671 (*see also* body, human; guides: of men)  
 mulberry tree  
 David not to attack until he hears marching in, 920-921  
*See also* tree(s)  
 mule  
 created in twilight, 82 n99 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)  
 female, of Solomon, as special act of creation, 945  
 offspring of horse and ass, 324, 324 n322  
 white she-mule having poisonous bite, 324  
 multicolor  
 color of tribe of Benjamin's flag in wilderness, 688



multipe  
   springing forth from backbone of fish, 42 n190  
 multitude, mixed. *See* mixed multi-  
   tude  
 multitude, ungrateful, 691-693  
 Muppim (son of Benjamin)  
   name  
     changed to Shephupham, 434  
     meaning of, 380  
 murder  
   coat of Aaron atoning for, 650  
   common among Ephraimites, 877  
     n109  
   destroying likeness of God, 609  
     n228  
   forbidden by commandments, 69  
   one of five crimes of Esau on day  
     of Abraham's death, 257  
   one of 13 sins punished by leprosy,  
     675 (*see also* leprosy)  
   one of three sins of generation of  
     Enosh, 118 n55  
   punishment of, devastating war  
     over mankind, 606  
 murderer  
   damned for eternity to Gehenna,  
     607  
   description of punishment of, 609  
     n229  
   one of five insulting names hurled  
     at David by Shimei, 931  
     n96  
 murex snail  
   producing Tyrian purple dye, 377  
 murmuring  
   at Elim, 568 n86  
   in wilderness (*see also* Israel  
     [nation; people]/Israelites:  
       in wilderness)  
     against God and Moses, 569  
     against Moses, 565, 566  
     against Moses and Aaron, 573  
 Musaeus  
   Greek sage, identified with Moses  
     in syncretistic writings, 481  
     n59, 484 n67  
 Musaf service  
   and New Moon celebration, 1010  
   *See also* prayers, Jewish  
 music  
   accompanying song at Red Sea,  
     564  
   at ascension of Moses, 505 n117  
   heavenly, at revelation of Sinai,  
     602 n201  
 musical instruments. *See* instruments,  
   musical

musicians  
   celebrating Joseph's appointment,  
     367  
 music of spheres, 27 n107  
   Pythagorean doctrine of, 26 n102  
 Muslim ideas  
   Jews considering Ezra to be son of  
     God, 1126 n50  
   Melchizedek as descendant of  
     Shem, 197 n102  
   story of fall of Satan, 63 n34  
   *See also* Islamic legends  
 Muslim writers  
   giving Joseph title *al-Ziddik*,  
     "truthful one," 329 n3  
   on Job living in Karnaim, 458 n21  
   *See also* Islamic legends  
 myrrh  
   coming from winds in desert, 686  
   strewn before Joseph by king's ser-  
     vants, 367  
 myrtle  
   compared to thornbush, 255  
   in hand of one entering Paradise,  
     18  
   known by fragrance, 255  
   symbolic of pious, 1141  
 mysteries  
   Book of Razi'el and, 90  
   known to watchers of heaven, 120  
 mysticism  
   doctrine that God desires prayers  
     of pious, 202 n116  
   speculative, 23 n97  
     concerning letters and creation,  
       4 n10  
   *See also* Kabbalah  
 mystic literature  
   of agonistic period, 17 n70  
   angels praising God in, 45 n194  
   of geonic period  
     Metatron in, 21 n75  
     speaking of heavenly being  
       named Israel, 301 n253  
   God's visit to pious in Paradise  
     connected with song of  
       cock, 46 n194  
   heavenly Hazzan in, 17 n70  
   *See also* Kabbalah  
 mythology  
   and astronomy, 25 n100

## N

Naamah  
   Ammonite mother of Rehoboam,  
     214

Naamah (*cont.*)  
   calling worshipers to pay homage  
     to idols, 112  
   daughter of  
     Ammonite king, destined to be  
       ancestress of Messiah, 976  
     Cainite Lamech and Zillah, 112,  
       138 n11  
     Enoch, 138 n11  
   female spirit, 956 n25  
   identified with Lilith, appearing to  
     men in sleep, 110 n34  
   mother of  
     Ashmedai (devil par excellence),  
       114 n45, 136  
     Rehoboam, 977 n89  
   one of two precious doves, 977  
     n91  
   sister of Tubal-cain, leading fallen  
     angels astray, 136  
   wife of Noah, 113 n45  
     saved on ark, 144  
   wife of Shamdan, 114 n45, 136  
 Naaman (son of Benjamin)  
   humility of, 1030 n15  
   leprosy of, as punishment for  
     pride, 1030 n15  
   name, meaning of, 380  
   slayer of Ahab, 988  
   stricken with leprosy for arrogance,  
     675  
 Naaseniens  
   view of, that all things endowed  
     with sensation, 45 n194  
 Nabal  
   Abigail as wife of, 940, 942 n137  
   leading loose life, 903 n72  
   not mourning for Samuel, 900  
   pride of, 903 n72  
   untimely death of, for failing to  
     assist poor, 903 n72  
 Nabar (i.e., Belshazzar)  
   one of three sons of Evil-  
     merodach, 1112 n2  
 Nabatean  
   angel appearing as, 206 n136 (*see*  
     *also* angel[s], general:  
       appearing as)  
 Nabiah  
   king of Transjordanian tribes, com-  
     ing to aid of Joshua against  
     kings of Persia and Media,  
     851  
 Naboandelus (Belshazzar; son of  
   Labosordacus), 1112 n2  
 Nabopolassar  
   participating in building, 468 n7



## Naboth

executed by Ahab, 987  
 of noble descent, 989 n38  
 as pious man and great singer, 987  
 soul of, in abode of pious, 989 n42  
 three false witnesses testifying  
 against, 989 n39

## Nadab

and Abihu  
 consumed by incense offering,  
 722  
 death of, 664 n383  
   brought by incense, 729  
   on day of dedication of  
   Tabernacle, 658  
   by two flames of fire from  
   Holy of Holies, 662  
 disastrous sacrifice of, 662  
 funeral of, 663  
 garments remaining intact at  
 death of, 664 n385  
 mourning for, 663  
 performing priestly service, 602  
 n205  
 riddle of Queen of Sheba about,  
 960  
 sins of, 662  
 image of, on Solomon's throne,  
 968  
 one of 77 pious men in Israel, 629  
 n287 (*see also under* pious:  
 men)  
 welcoming Jethro with Moses, 584

## Nahash, 748

identified with Hanun, Ammonite  
 king, 898, 932  
 attacked by Saul, 898

name, meaning of ("serpent"), 912  
 n7

## Nahbi (son of Vophsi)

spy representing tribe of Naphtali,  
 705

## Nahmanides

mentioning anointing of Messiah  
 by Elijah, 1022 n112

## Nahor (brother of Abraham)

at circumcision of Isaac, 218

death of, 235

and Milcah, descendants of, 761

## Nahor (son of Serug)

as soothsayer, 167

## Nahshon

brother of Elisheba, as prince of  
 tribe, 661  
 dedication offering of, 665-666  
 elder from tribe of Judah, 696  
 four sons of: Elimelech, Shalmon  
 (father of Boaz), Naomi's  
 father, Tob, 864 n34

Nahshon (*cont.*)

grandfather of Boaz, 864 n31  
 name, meaning of ("wave of the  
 sea"), 679  
 plunged into Red Sea first, 665  
 prince of tribe of Judah, to make  
 first dedication offering,  
 665-666, 679  
 son of Amminadab ("prince of My  
 people"), 679  
 as temporal king, 667

## Nahshon, R.

Babylonian Gaon, circumcising  
 children who die before  
 eighth day, 1022 n118

## Nahum

called Gamzu, 1004 n48  
 as contemporary of  
 Jothan, 1057 n100  
 Manasseh, 991 n56, 1057 n100  
 story of N.'s journey to Rome and  
 condemnation to death,  
 1001

## nails

one of five parts of body received  
 from father, 606 (*see also*  
 body, human)

## nakedness

of Adam and Eve, 72  
 of Cainites, 136  
 and curse of Ham, 154  
 and execution, 1137 n36  
 God punishing wicked while  
 naked, 562 n55  
 and incest or unchastity, 158 n67  
 and story of Vashti and Ahasuerus,  
 1135-1138

## name

change of patriarchal, 203 n122  
 given by God  
   to Samuel, 890 n17  
   to six men, before birth  
   (Ishmael, Isaac, Moses,  
   Solomon, Josiah, Messiah),  
   201, 946 n2

lengthening of, as mark of honor,  
 203 n122

shortening of, as sign of degrada-  
 tion, 203 n122

theophorous, abbreviation of, 118  
 n56

## Name, Divine

exalted, engraved on rod of Moses,  
 554  
 given to spies as weapon against  
 giants, 708  
 profanation of, one of 13 sins pun-  
 ished by leprosy, 675 (*see also*  
 leprosy)

Name, Divine (*cont.*)

*See also* God: name of; God: names  
 and titles of

## Name, Ineffable

blasphemed by son of Shelomith,  
 690

contained in ark of covenant, 643  
 engraved on

Eben Shetiyyah, 11 n39, 278

rod of Jethro, 494

shard laid over abyss, 605

sun, 27 n106

Jesus performing miracles by  
 means of, 11 n39

knowledge of, 11 n39

giving mastery over nature, over  
 life and death, 278

one of six blessings of wilderness  
 generation, 86 n105

letters of, flying away when one  
 swears falsely in God's  
 Name, 605

made known to Istehar, 136

Methuselah writing on sword, 131  
 and praise of God, 24

proclaiming of, one of three signs  
 of true redeemer who  
 would deliver Israel from  
 bondage of Egypt, 405

pronounced by Lilith, 64

revealed to Moses, 511, 512

sealing boundaries of waters, 21  
 n73

taught to Aaron by Moses, 516

uttered by Moses to protect Israel,  
 578

written on teraphim, 291

*See also* God: names and titles of

name, inextinguishable, 306 n273

## Naomi

as Ammonite, 758

arriving in Bethlehem at end of  
 first day of Passover, 865  
 n48

as mother of Mahlon and Chilion,  
 sons of Elimelech, 862

as nurse to Boaz, 867 n69

oath of, to provide for Ruth, 866  
 n56

one of 22 pious women whose  
 piety praised by Solomon,  
 865 n49

one of 22 women of valor, 238  
 n271

returning to Holy Land, 865 n43

## Naphtali

age of, at death, 132 years, 408,  
 444



Naphtali (*cont.*)

blessing of, by Jacob, 288 n180, 408  
 death of, 447  
 descendants of  
   Deborah, 408  
 dreams of, 444-447  
 fleetness of, 291 n216, 314 n291, 316 n292, 386, 390 n278, 410 n397  
 going to foreign houses of learning, 410 n391  
 and Jacob  
   N. bringing Joseph's coat to Jacob, 340, 343 n64  
 marriage to Merimit, daughter of Amoram, grandson of Nahor, 348  
 as messenger  
   of Jacob, 444  
   of Joseph's brothers, 408  
   to Rachel and Leah, 291  
   sent back to Egypt to get bill of sale for Cave of Machpelah, 414  
 name, meaning of, 286, 288 n180, 433  
 one of weak among Jacob's sons, 396 n324  
 resemblance of, to Joseph, 444  
 second son of Bilhah, named by Rachel, 286  
 sons of, 434  
 tribe of  
   blessed by Moses, 823  
   confessing they taught children out of books of Amorites, 856  
   elders from (Elhanan, Eliakim, Elishama, Sanachiah, Zabdi, Johanan), 696  
   flag of, dull red with picture of hind, 688  
   house of instruction at Tiberius in territory of, 823  
   precious stone of  
     amethyst, 856  
     turquoise, 651  
   prince of (Ahira), 680  
   scholarship of, 410 n396  
   significance of dedication offering of, 670  
   spy representing (Nahbi), 705  
   valley of Gennesaret as possession of, 823  
   women outnumbering men in, 680  
 vision of ship, 445-446

Naphtali (*cont.*)

wanting to be buried in Hebron, 447  
 warfare of  
   attacking Edom to south, 321  
   in battle of Sartan, 315  
   mounting walls of Hazor, 314-315  
   against Ninevites, 313  
 Naphtalites  
   swift runners, 971 n75  
 naphtha  
   as plague of Egypt, 523  
 Naracho  
   name ascribed to first Pharaoh, 193 n81  
 Narrative of Zosimos  
   legend about Land of Blessed in, 1089 n57  
 Nasargiel (angel)  
   angel of hell, 505-506  
   name, meaning of, 508 n118  
 Nathan (prophet)  
   encouraging David before revelation, 930 n88  
   identified with Jonathan, David's nephew, 948 n11  
   one of ten members of board of intercalation, 937 n124  
   sent to David with message that he was not to build Temple, 927  
   as Solomon's teacher, 948 n11  
   son of one of David's brothers, 930 n88  
 Nathan, R.  
   Elijah advising N. never to fill self with food and drink, 1012-1013 n82  
 Nathanel. *See* Nathaniel  
 Nathaniel (angel)  
   angel of fire, 873, 874 n105  
   extinguishing fire of Jair, 873  
   striking Jair's people with blindness, 873  
 Nathaniel (Nethanel)  
   name of Moses, 481 n57 (*see also* Moses: names and titles of)  
 nations  
   Abraham made father of 30 nations, 165 n88  
   approached by God offering them Torah, 593  
   asking Balaam about sacrifices, 771 n759  
   assigned to angels, 164, 166 n91, 445-446  
   distribution of, by lot, 166 n90

nations (*cont.*)

doomed to Gehenna, 636  
 evil eye of, bringing about breaking of tablets, 661  
 fearing Israelites because of miracles in wilderness, 546-547  
 God making nations swear not to oppress Israel too hard, 1081 n39  
 guardian angels of, judgment on, 922 n54  
 hatred of, due to hatred of God and Torah, 795 n848  
 immorality of, making them unfit for Torah, 593-594  
 Israel and Rome destined to be hated by all, 252  
 Israel swearing not to rebel against, in exile, 1081 n39  
 number of, 158 n72  
   70 in number, 252, 672 n399  
   130 in number, 672 n399  
 power of, held in check while lamps in Temple burn, 645  
 punishment visited first on guardian angels of, 558 n41  
 reactions of, to Ten Commandments, 606  
 refusing Torah, 593  
 rejoicing at Israel's immorality, 783  
 sacrifices of, not acceptable to God, 771-772 n759  
 seven  
   extermination of, commanded by God, 847 n22  
   marriage forbidden with women from, 949 n16  
   table of, in Genesis, 158-159 n72  
   to bow down before Israel during Messianic times, 235 n267  
   during reign of Solomon, 236 n267  
   twice, 236 n267  
   and wicked designs against Israel, 2  
 nature  
   all of, mourning for Israel, 1081 n39  
   deteriorating after destruction of Temple, 1081 n39  
   elements of, Moses asking to intercede, 808  
   standing still  
     at revelation of Sinai, 604-605 n213  
     Christian parallel to, 605 n213



nature (*cont.*)

to be restored at advent of  
Messiah, 1081 n39

Natzbat (daughter of Adiel, wife of  
Jesse), 911

## navel

one of ten orifices of man, 960  
string (*see* umbilical cord)

## Nazirite

Absalom as, 931

Joseph living as, in Egypt, 380

R. Jacob as, 1018

Samson as, 878, 880 n121

## Nebaioth (son of Ishmael)

Esau choosing portion on advice  
of, 322 n316

giving away Mahalath to Esau in  
marriage, 273

## Nebalata, house of

descendants of Araunah, 1121 n32  
prominent at end of Second Jewish  
Commonwealth, 1121 n32

Nebo (Babylonian heavenly scribe),  
130 n61

## Nebo (city)

name, meaning of ("produce"),  
799

## Nebo, Mount

deaths of Moses, Aaron, and  
Miriam on, 814

graves of patriarchs on, 832 n952

Moses looking at Holy Land from,  
814

name, meaning of, 814

one of three mountains retained by  
God in desert, 736

retained by God as burial place of  
Moses, 736

as Reuben's possession, 823

site of death of Moses, 823

*See also* Abarim, Mount; Hor,  
Mount; Pisgah, Mount

## Nebuchadnezzar, 1072-1074

attempt of, to burn three in fiery  
furnace, shown to Jacob,  
277

auguries of, 1073

as avenger of Zechariah, 1077 n30

as beast, 1103-1104

besieging Jerusalem for 3½ years,  
1077 n29

bringing cedar tree to Babylon at  
time of exile, 1074 n24

called "dwarf," 1088, 1089 n54

calling upon Levites to sing songs  
of Zion by Euphrates,  
1088

charging Nebuzaradan to be kind  
to Jeremiah, 1081-1082

Nebuchadnezzar (*cont.*)

claiming to be god, 100 n142,  
1103 n99, 1103-1104

n100, 1105 n105

compared with Solomon, 760

conquering Hiram of Tyre, 1105

conquering Jehoiaqim, 1060

as cosmocrator, 162 n82, 970 n72,  
1050-1051, 1103, 1112 n2

cruelty of, to captives, 1085-1086

death of, 1107-1108

descendant of Baladan, 1050-1051  
described as grandson of Nimrod,  
1073 n21

described as lion, 1155-1156

divination used by, 1073 n24

doom of, caused by eight grievous  
sins, 1048 n60

dream of, interpreted by Daniel,  
1095-1096

and drinking vessel made from  
bones of slain Jew, 1098

eating piece of flesh from live hare,  
1066 n3

eight sins of (neglect of justice,  
idolatry, incest, bloodshed,  
blasphemy, arrogance, slan-  
der, obscenity), 562 n54

executing 60,000 Jews who had  
worshiped idol, 1102

father of Evil-merodach; grandfa-  
ther of Belshazzar, 1112 n2

forcing Hiram of Tyre to consume  
own flesh, 1105

giving alms to ward off heavenly  
decree, 1104 n104

grandson of Sennacherib, 1073  
n22

having dwarfish figure, 1103 n96

idolatry of, 1097

idolatry of Israel under, 1134 n15  
installing Mattaniah, called

Jehoiachin, as king of  
Judah, 1060

and Jeremiah, as childhood friends,  
1077 n29

Kal as guardian angel of, 1104  
n104

killing members of Sanhedrin,  
1066 n3

life as beast

lasting 40 days, 1103

lasting seven months, 1103

lasting seven years, 1104 n103

making two exiles of Jews, 1061

name, meaning of, 1099 n84

not able to conquer Luz, 861

Nebuchadnezzar (*cont.*)

one of 18 called "servant of God,"  
452 n2 (*see also* servant of  
God)

one of four kings claiming to be  
gods, 1039 n16

participating in building, 468 n7

pet of, lion with snake around

neck, 1103

praise of God by, 1100 n90

punished as beast, 1104 n102

punished for sins by being made to  
live as beast for 40 days,  
1103

reigning for 40 years, 1107

restrained by Gabriel from walking  
farther for glory of God,  
1072-1073

secretary to Merodach-baladan,  
1072

sins of, 1104 n104

slaughtering handsome youths  
desired by Babylonian  
women, 1102

and Solomon's throne, 1131 n13  
lameness of N. caused by  
throne, 1131 n13

N. injured while attempting to  
ascend throne, 1097 n80

N. taking throne from Egypt to  
Babylonia, 969

son-in-law of Sennacherib, 1046,  
1072

son of Merodach-Baladan, 1053  
n83

son of Solomon and Queen of  
Sheba, 1072

standing for Titus, 1087 n52

stepson of Hiram of Tyre, 1105

treasures of

discovered by Cyrus as reward  
for giving Jews permission  
to rebuild Temple, 1130

N. sinking treasures in  
Euphrates rather than pass  
them on to Evil-merodach,  
1130

wise men of, envious of Ben Sira,  
1083-1084 n42

and Zedekiah, conflict between,  
1065-1066

## Nebuzaradan

as avenger of Zechariah, 1038,  
1077 n30

called Arioch, 1086 n46

captain of Nebuchadnezzar's guard,  
1038

carnage caused by, 1075



Nebuzaradan (*cont.*)

- charged by Nebuchadnezzar to be kind to Jeremiah, 1081-1082
- executing more than one million, 1075
- large number of priests killed by, 1078 n30
- as proselyte, 1075, 1078 n30
- saved from annihilation, 1046
- taking charge of transport of exiles, 1086 n46
- Necho (pharaoh)
  - called Necho the hobbler, 969
  - carrying Solomon's throne to Egypt in time of Jehoash, 969
  - injured by mechanism of Solomon's throne, 969
  - name, meaning of, 970 n71, 1062 n123
  - ships of, covered with corpses from Red Sea, 1068
- necromancy, 796 n856, 900
  - can only be performed during day, 904 n75
- Neelatamauk (city)
  - founded by Ham, 156
- Neelatamauk (wife of Ham), 156
- nefilim. *See* nephilim
- Nehardea (city)
  - site where Jehoiachin built synagogue in exile, 1063 n134
- Nehemiah
  - as author of Book of Ezra, 1119
  - called *Tirshata*, 1120 n26
  - death of, on 2 Tevet, 1126 n51
  - given name Zerubbabel because born in Babylon, 1119
  - introducing strictness in observance of Sabbath, 1120 n26
  - loved by God but hated by fellow men, 1120 n27
  - among members of Great Synagogue, 1127 n56
  - Zerubbabel identified with, 1063 n135, 1119
- Nehorai, R.
  - and Elijah, 1012 n77
    - E. explaining earthquakes to R. Nehorai, 1010
    - E. explaining purpose of noxious insects to R. Nehorai, 1010
- Nehorita ("the luminous")
  - one of seven Jewish attendants of Esther, attending Esther on Wednesdays, 1143

## Nehoshet ("brass"), 748

- neighbor
  - speaking ill of, leprosy as punishment for, 702
- Nemuel
  - elder from tribe of Reuben, 696
  - true name of On, 727
- nephilim
  - as builders of Tower of Babel, 165 n88
  - name, meaning of, 137
  - offspring of fallen angels and Cainite women, 137
  - offspring of families of Seth and Cain, 138
- Nergal (Babylonian god of hell), 508 n118
- Neriah (father of Baruch)
  - descendant of Rahab, 844 n12
  - one of eight priests descended from Rahab, 1093 n65
  - one of scribes accompanying Ezra, 1125 n50
- Neshiah
  - fifth earth, Cain in, 110
  - name, meaning of, 110
- nest with birds
  - law of, transgressed by priests, 896 n40
- Nethand (elder from tribe of Levi), 696
- Nethanel
  - called son of Zuar ("burden"), 679
  - name, meaning of ("God gave"), 679
  - prince of tribe of Issachar, 679
  - as spiritual king, 667
- netherworld
  - thirst of inhabitants of, 110 n35
  - See also* Gehenna; Gehinnom; Hades; hell; Sheol; Tofet; water(s): below
- new moon. *See* moon: new
- New Moon (festival)
  - criticized by Haman, 1154
  - as festival for women, 655 n364
  - reward for refusing to give up jewels for making golden calf, 620
  - Musaf service and, 1010
- new world
  - one of six gifts to Israel from God, 584 (*see also* gifts)
  - three who lived to see (David, Job, Noah), 462 n35
  - See also* world to come
- New Year
  - accusations of Satan against Israel on, 27 n105

New Year (*cont.*)

- Adam expelled from Paradise on, 81 n97
- Akedah referred to in Zikronot in Musaf for, 228 n229
- Akedah taking place on, 232 n248
- angels speaking about Abimelech on, 218
- creation of Adam on, 81 n97
- criticized by Haman, 1153
- Elisha promising child to Shunammite on, 1028-1029 n12
- fortunes of men determined for whole year on, 218
- God deciding fate of all men for coming year on, 1029 n12
- as judgment day, 231 (*see also* day of judgment)
- one of 70 holy days celebrated by Jews, 648
- ram's horn blown on, 232 n248
- smoke of fire of altar on Day of Atonement predicting prosperous new year or not, 661 n380
- when good and evil deeds of man brought before God, 456
- See also* date; Rosh Hashanah
- Niblos
  - body of, put inside golden statue, 417
  - killed in battle in Valley of Campania, 417
  - son of Lucus, commander-in-chief of Sardinian troops, 417
- night
  - angels sending manna to earth in, 617
  - as best time for serious study, 618 n251
  - of covenant of pieces, as second of four nights inscribed in Book of Memorial, 541
  - of creation of world, as first of four nights inscribed in Book of Memorial, 541
  - disturbed, 1169-1172
    - as first night of Passover, 1169-1170
    - as second night of Passover, 1171 n160
  - duration of, one of ten things produced on first day of creation, 5
  - evil spirits trying to attack scholars in, 305 n259



night (*cont.*)

- four nights inscribed by God in Book of Memorial, 541, 543 n235
- Gentiles tried by God at, 214 n170
- God revealing Self to Gentiles during, 279 n131, 292
- of miracles
  - first night of Passover as, 1047 n54
- as proper time for prayer and study, 929 n83
- of slaying of firstborn, as third of four nights inscribed in Book of Memorial, 541
- spent by Moses repeating what he had learned from God during day, 634
- of tears, 711-713, 713 n532
- of tenth plague, one of four nights inscribed in Book of Memorial, 541
- time for divine revelation, 294 n221, 356 n113
- time Moses studied oral law, 618 n251
- when end of redemption accomplished, as fourth of four nights inscribed in Book of Memorial, 541
- wicked punished by God during, 538 n216
- See also* darkness
- night spirits (Liliths)
  - assembling under trees, according to German popular beliefs, 67 n40
- Niglissar (son of Evil-merodach), 1112 n2
- Nile River
  - coffin of Joseph in, 428-429
  - inundation of, 395, 396 n329
  - name, meaning of, 70 n51
  - source of, beneath tree of life, 69
- Nimrah (city)
  - name, meaning of ("gaily colored"), 799
- Nimrod, 161-63
  - and Abraham
    - N. advised to slay A., 181
    - N. attempting to make A. suffer death by fire, 175-176, 186
    - N. killed by A., 259 n38
    - N. making war on A., 194
    - N. offering to pay Terah for A., 181
  - as astrologer, 168

Nimrod (*cont.*)

- being taught language of Cush, 446
- and births
  - of females, 168
  - of males, 168
- as chief of Hamites, 162 n81
- choosing Shinar as capital, 161
- claiming to be god, 1103-1104 n100
- death of, at hands of Esau, 180 n45
- demanding people abandon Shem's teaching, 163 n86
- dream of, 179
- emigrating to Assyria, 178 n36
- and Esau
  - feud between, 257, 259 n38
  - N. envying E., 257
  - N. killed by E. in duel, 257, 259 n38, 405
- fate of, read in stars, 179
- as father of Pharaoh, 202 n119
- as first to eat meat, 162 n77
- garments of, extraordinary effects of, 257
- and garments of Adam, 405, 259 n38
- great house built by, 168-169
- and hunting, 257
- identified with
  - Amraphel, 162 n82, 163 n87, 180 n45, 196 n85
  - Zoroaster, 163 n83
- instigating building of Tower of Babel, 163 n87, 164 n88
- as leader of corrupt men, 161-162
- making idols, 161
- making war on Chedorlaomer, 194
- monarchy dating from, 168 n5
- mother of, 254 n17
  - difficult pregnancy of, 252
- moving to Babylon, 171
- name, meaning of, 162 n77
- one of five men wicked from first to last, 1044 n39
- one of seven sinners, 856, 857 n9
- as prince for descendants of Ham, 160
- as ruler of world, 162 n82 (*see also* cosmocrator)
- as ruler over men and beasts, 257
- seducing men to evil, 163 n83
- setting self up as god, 162
- slaughtering 70,000 male children, 169
- son of, killed by Esau, 258 n38

Nimrod (*cont.*)

- teaching Persians to worship fire, 163 n83
- worship of fire connected with, 163 n83
- Nimshi (elder from tribe of Zebulun), 696
- Nineveh
  - destruction of, 1035 n37
  - honored by sending of prophet to, 1032 n27
  - king of, formerly Pharaoh of Joseph's time, 414 n413, 560
  - named after Ninus (i.e., Nimrod), 163 n83
  - population of, 1034, 1035 n34
  - repentance of, 1034-1035
  - size of, 1034
- Ninevites
  - army of, numerous as sand of seashore, 313 (*see also* dust: of earth; star[s]: in heavens)
  - continuing in loving-kindness for 40 days, 1035
  - having 40 days respite before destruction of their city, 412
  - penance of, 1035 n35
  - story of treasure being returned to legitimate owners, 1034
  - war of sons of Jacob against, 311-314
- Ninus
  - identified with Amraphel, 163 n87, 196 n85
- See also* Nimrod
- Nisan (month)
  - 1st of
    - day of ten crowns, 658
    - death of Miriam, 737
    - first day for regular sacrificial service, 658
    - first day of first month of year, 658
    - first day of week, Sunday, 658
    - first day on which priests partook of certain portions of offering, 658
    - first day when heavenly fire seen on altar, 658
    - first day when priests bestowed their blessing on Israel, 658
    - first day when Shekinah came to dwell among Israel, 658
    - Isaac's birthday, 655
    - priests performing sacrificial rites, 658



Nisan (*cont.*)1st of (*cont.*)

princes of tribes beginning to bring offerings, 658

rain beginning to fall after famine in Joram's time, 991

sacrifice in any but appointed place forbidden, 658

Tabernacle set up on, 655

## 10th of

Egyptians attacking Israelites, 536 n206

## 13th of

circumcision of Abraham, 203 n124

Haman's edict ordering extermination of Jews, 412

## 14th of

God keeping Mastema bound, to 18 Nisan, 553 n27

when sacrifices of Cain and Abel brought, 103

## 15th of

Abraham learning of Lot's captivity, 194

battle between Abraham and kings who captured Lot, 195

circumcision of Abraham, 203 n124

end of plagues, 528 n174

important events happening on, 191 n76

night appointed for miraculous deeds, 195

night when Pharaoh punished on account of Sarah, 190

Passover to be celebrated, 534

provisions of Israelites in Exodus lasting from, to 15 Iyar, 570 n89

redemption of Israel in future days, 541

## 16th of

day for offering omer, 991, 1176 n170

destruction of cities of plain, 213

fall of Haman, 1176 n170

## 21st of

Israelites singing praise and gratitude for redemption from waters, 477

Moses exposed on, 477

Akedah taking place in, 232 n248

competition with Tishri for highest place in Jewish legend, 219 n203

Nisan (*cont.*)

Egyptian redemption completed in, 428

festival in, one of three given as reward for observing Sabbath, 572

and intimidation of evil spirits by seraphim, 1

Israelites to leave Egypt in, 428

Israel redeemed from Egypt in, 1151

three-day fast in, 1164, 1166, 1166 n142, 1166 n143,

1168 n145, 1169 n153

year to begin with this month, 534  
*See also* date

Noachian commandments, 70 n55, 152 n51, 158 n67, 224

n221, 594 n181

heathen bound to observe, 261

as minimum of laws necessary for civilization, 594 n181

not fulfilled in time of Ezekiel, 1101 n93

number of, 70 n55

observed by Abraham, 239 n275 seven, 223

to be fulfilled in Messianic times, 70 n55

to be observed by all men, 151

*See also* Noah; Pharaoh: eight sins of

Noachite laws. *See* Noachian commandments

## Noah

## altar of

N. rebuilding altar destroyed by flood, 232 n251

on place where Adam, Cain, and Abel sacrificed, 151

## and angels

N. escaping angel of death, 148 n38

question of angels concerning N., 279 n134

appearing at death of Moses, 837 and ark (*see also* ark [Noah's])

animals and, 36

diseases on, 159 n75

food for animals in, 147

gathering animals for, 143, 145 n24

N. commanded by God to leave ark, 150-153

N. entering ark at noon, 814

N. sending out dove from, 148

N. sending out raven from, 148

Noah (*cont.*)

birth of, 133-135

and sword of Methuselah, 134 n5

blessing of

containing translation of Scripture into Greek, 156 n65

divided, 819

bodily defect of, 150

book of

containing plant remedies for disease, 157

received from Raphael after flood, 143 n23

and Book of Raziel, 90 n110

called Menahem by Lamech and others, 133

castration of, 155 n61

circumcised from mother's womb, 134 (*see also* covenant[s]: sign of)

commanded not to eat meat, 70 n55

compared with Joseph as *tzadik*, 329 n3

cursing Ham, 154

daughters-in-law of, 158 n67

descendants of, 156-60

depravity of, 167

number of, 158 n72, 159 n73

description of, 133

dividing earth by lot, 156

drunkenness of

N. first to drink to excess, 153

favorable view of, 146 n29

fingers of hands not separated, 135 n6

first to

introduce slavery, 153

utter curses upon associates, 153

generation of, addicted to sorcery, 133

generations from Adam to, ten in number, 101, 102 n1

generations to Abraham from, ten in number, 167

given permission to eat meat, 151 and God

God pointing way to ark with little finger of right hand, 638 n315

God's blessing of N. remaining upon world until Abraham, 819

grandson of Methuselah, 133

image of, on Solomon's throne, 968



Noah (*cont.*)

as inventor of plough and other farm implements, 134  
 and lion, 148 n37, 150  
   injury by, rendering N. incapable of sexual intercourse, 151 n51, 155 n60  
 love of husbandry as cause of downfall of, 1042 n30  
 Moses compared to, 837  
 mother of, 113 n42  
 and mouse, 36  
 name  
   kept secret, 133  
   meaning of, 133, 134-135 n5, 147, 150  
   and rest, 134 n5  
   significance of, 151 n50  
 naming of, 133, 134 n4  
 natural phenomena and, 134  
 not able to perform priestly services, 150  
 oath of God to, never again to destroy world by water, 471, 472 n22  
 one of seven patriarchs of world, 968  
 one of seven pillars of earth, 9 n28 (*see also under* world[s])  
 one of seven pious men erecting altar, 771 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of seven pious men in pre-Abrahamic times, 116-117 n53 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of seven with overlapping life terms, 982 n4  
 one of three who lived to see new world, 462 n35 (*see also* Daniel; Job)  
 prayer of, to God, 147  
 preaching repentance, 140 n19  
 and prediction of flood, 139  
 providing food for man and beast in time of famine, 329 n3  
 and raven, 37, 41 n177, 41 n178, 151, 152 n54 (*see also* raven)  
 at right hand of God, 450 (*see also* God: right hand of)  
 sacrifice of, 150, 152 n52  
 saved by grace of God, 144  
 second of seven pious men, 682 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 selfishness of, 151 n49  
 sexual abstinence of, 155 n60  
 son of Lamech, 133

Noah (*cont.*)

sons of, 146 n30  
 stealing hair from sleeping swine, 41 n174  
 superiority of Moses to, 837  
 suspicion against, 41 n176  
 taking care of wild animals, 148 n37  
 as *tzadik*, 145 n28  
 vine of, as offshoot of tree of knowledge, 155 n58  
 wife of, 113 n42  
   Noamzara as name of, 146 n29  
   one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271  
 willing to care for ancestors, 102 n1  
 and wine, 153, 155 n58  
   N. assisted by Satan in cultivating grapes, 153  
 Noah's ark. *See* ark (of Noah); Noah: and ark  
 Noamzara (Noah's wife), 146 n29  
 Nob  
   execution of priests at, 904 n78  
   on account of David's sin, 933  
   as last act in divine decree against house of Eli, 908 n104  
   priests at  
     baking shewbread on Friday, 909 n107  
     deserving of death, 907 n92  
   sanctuary at, one of seven holy places destroyed by Esau, 264  
 nobility  
   exile of, during reign of Jehoiakim, 1063 n132  
*nofet* ("honeycomb")  
   Torah as sweet as, 286  
 noises  
   of universe inaudible to man, 27 n107  
 noon  
   Noah entering ark at, 814  
   significance of, 814, 815 n904  
   time of execution of God's commands, 814  
   time of Exodus from Egypt, 814  
 north  
   all evil coming from, 645  
   assigned to Adam, 92  
   Dan, Asher, and Naphtali to pitch camp in, 685  
   left unfinished by God, 7  
   location of hellfire, snow, darkness, devils, etc., 6

north (*cont.*)

Paradise situated in, 645, 646 n340  
 qualities of, 645 n337  
 northern kingdom  
   destroyed by Assyrians, 1044  
 northern tribes  
   exiled beyond Sambation River, 1089 n56  
 nostrils  
   two of ten orifices of man, 960  
 Notarikon  
   hermeneutical rule of, 370 n187, 409 n382  
 nudity. *See* nakedness  
 number  
   1  
     number of pious produced by Gentiles every year, 211 n164  
   year  
     of flood, 526  
     of Job's suffering, 526  
     of judgment on Gog, 526  
     of plagues, 526  
     of tortures of hell, 526  
   2  
     cherubim on ark of covenant, 643  
     great heroes of world (Samson and Goliath), dying on account of strength, 798  
     great sages of world (Balaam and Ahithophel), losing this world and world to come, 798 (*see also under* world to come)  
     wealthy men in world perishing on account of wealth, 798  
   years  
     of famine in Egypt, 412  
     of fasting for Simeon, 436  
   3  
     conditional gifts to Israel, 590-591 n173 (*see also* gifts)  
     cubits as height of altar, 648  
   days  
     corpse of Job left unburied, 461  
     of distress of pious, 373  
     Jonah spent in belly of fish, 1033  
   days and nights Abraham walked in midst of fire, 186  
   deliverers sent by God to deliver Israel from Egypt, 648  
   divisions of Israel, 592



number (*cont.*)3 (*cont.*)

- gifts of God to world, 798 (*see also* gifts)
- gifts received by Israel at Sinai, 612 n240 (*see also* gifts)
- God having preference for "third," 592
- importance of, in life of Moses, 592
- men losing this world and gaining world to come, 847-848 n31
- mountains retained by God in desert, 736
- parts of oral law, 592
- parts of Torah, 592
- patriarchs, 592
- persons carrying out communications between God and Israel, 592
- things contributed by God to formation of child, 608 n224
- things Moses did on own authority, 626 n279
- things world exists for sake of, 660
- unconditional gifts to Israel, 590-591 n173 (*see also* gifts)
- wishes of Moses, 629

## 4

- beings represented on Divine Throne, 621
- men described in Bible as creatures of God, 1071 n13
- mountains on which heavenly Jerusalem will descend, 595 n184
- nights inscribed by God in Book of Memorial, 541
- pious men who addressed unbecoming words to God (Moses, David, Habakkuk, Jeremiah), 628 n284
- portals (fire, earthquake, storm, hail), 600
- times Torah to be impressed on Israel, 634
- voices heard at Sinai, 605 n214

## 5

- bearing title "beloved of God," 168 n4
- bearing title "friend of God," 168 n4
- men pious from first to last, 1044 n39

number (*cont.*)5 (*cont.*)

- men wicked from first to last, 1044 n39
- parts of body received from father, 606
- parts of body received from mother, 606
- sinful cities, 211
- voices heard at Sinai, 605 n214

## 6

- days of mourning, 99
- heavens, 665
- laws of Torah prescribed for king, 665
- miracles terrifying Nebuchadnezzar, 1098
- mothers (Sarah, Rebekah, Rachel, Leah, Bilhah, Zilpah), 665
- names of Mount Sinai, 593
- orders of Mishnah, 665
- wagons for Tabernacle, 665

## 7

- altars erected by seven pious men, 771
- angels of confusion sent to disrupt Ahasuerus's banquet, 1135
- clouds of glory enveloping Israelites in Exodus, 542
- days of mourning, 114
  - for Jacob, 415
  - for Sarah, 235
- days of retirement for Aaron and sons after anointing, 657
- days of wedding festivities, 425
- evils, 450
- generations from Abraham to Moses, 224 n222
- golden idols of Amorites, 856
- great wonders in history, 237
- heralds to remind Solomon of duties, 969
- holy places destroyed by Esau, 264
- kine of Pharaoh's dream, 362
- months of Reuben's illness, 435
- names of Jethro, 493
- nations whose extermination commanded by God, 847 n22
- Noachian commandments, 151
- patriarchs of world (Adam, Noah, Shem, Job, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob), 968

number (*cont.*)7 (*cont.*)

- pious men
  - from Adam to Levi, 682
  - in pre-Abrahamic times, 116-117 n53
  - of world (Kohath, Amram, Moses, Aaron, Eldad, Medad, Hur), 968
- punishments of Cain, 450
- righteous men slain by Philistines, 223
- sevenfold pain suffered by Job for seven years, 461
- sounds of trumpet at resurrection, 605 n214
- tempter spirits, 435
- things created in beginning, 1
- voices heard at Sinai, 605 n214
- years
  - of conquest of land of Israel, 852 n46
  - of division of land of Israel, 852 n46
  - Jacob lived around Shechem unmolested, 314
  - Jacob would serve Laban for Rachel, 282
  - of Reuben's penance, 435
  - Solomon took to build Temple, 966
  - of warfare for Israelites, 851

## 8

- day of circumcision, 248 n318
- grievous sins of Sennacherib, 1048 n60
- men whose corpses not touched by worms, 939 n128 (*see also under* corpse[s])
- miracles performed by Elijah during life, 1025

## 9

- censuses of Israel, 637
- songs sung by Israel to God in course of history, 562

## 10

- candlesticks in Solomon's Temple, 645
- curses pronounced against Adam, 95 n127
- days of penitence from New Year to Day of Atonement, 903 n72
- essential constituent parts of human body, 671
- famines appointed by God, 189
- generations
  - from Adam to Noah, 101



number (*cont.*)10 (*cont.*)generations (*cont.*)

from Jacob to Samson, 879

n111

from Noah to Abraham, 167,  
168 n1

from Perez to David, 666

just men in Israel, 628

lists of generations in Scriptures,  
671

measures of beauty in world,  
1085 n45

## miracles

connected with Exodus, 556,  
671

God wrought for Israel in  
Egypt, 671

ordinances of Joshua concerning  
private property, 852

parts of body received from  
God, 606

persons needed to pronounce  
valid ban, 342

plagues of Egypt, 523-525, 525  
n170

## punishments

of Egyptians, 525-526 n170

of serpent, 95 n131

quorum required for morning  
prayers, 919 n50

Sefirot, 671

significance of, 48 n1, 525-526  
n170

sons of Benjamin, 380

tables in Solomon's Temple,  
644-645

## temptations

of Abraham, 187, 526 n170

of Joseph, 188 n52, 352 n107

words of creation, 525 n170

## 11

materials for construction of  
Tabernacle, 641 n322

months of illness of Gad, 447

## 12

blessings recited by Levites fac-  
ing Mount Gerizim, 843

constellations in heavens, 422,  
665, 671

curses recited by Levites facing  
Mount Ebal, 843

days Rachel fasted, 318

guides of men, 672

## hours

in day, 342, 422

in night, 342, 422

in Jewish legends, 343 n67

number (*cont.*)12 (*cont.*)

memorial pillars erected by

Moses on Mount Sinai, 598

miles of cleft in Temple, 1042

n30

## months

of flood, 149 n45

punishment of sinners in

Gehenna, 149 n45

in year, 342, 422, 671

oxen to draw wagons for  
Tabernacle, 665

precious stones on Aaron's  
breastplate, 342, 650

significance of, 342, 422

signs of Zodiac, 342

stones taken by Jacob from altar  
of Akedah, 277

tribes, 342, 422

## wings

of Azazel, 95 n131

of Satan, 62

## years

Joseph spent in prison, 362

Rachel bore no child before

Benjamin, 318

## 13

age when good inclination  
enters man, 105 n14

attributes of God, 631-632

deeds God performed for Israel  
in Egypt, 640

gifts from God to Israel in world  
to come, 640 (*see also* gifts)

materials used in construction of  
Tabernacle, 640

representations of golden calf,  
621

## 14

members of council to assist  
Messiah, 100 n142

## 15

age of Cain at time of sacrifice,  
105 n11

generations from Abraham to  
Solomon, 967 n57

materials for construction of  
Tabernacle, 641 n322

## 16

different character sets for 72  
languages, 157

miracles performed by Elisha  
during life, 1025

## 17

## years

Jacob and Joseph dwelled  
together, 399

number (*cont.*)17 (*cont.*)years (*cont.*)

Jacob and Joseph separated,  
399

## 18

age of majority, 488 n76

men given title "servant of  
God," 452 n2

## 20

age of majority, 263 n69

pieces of silver as price of  
Joseph, 335

years Israel free from idolatry,  
949 n12

## 22

books of Bible, 11 n82, 82  
n98

creations, 11 n82, 82 n98

generations from Adam to  
Jacob, 82 n98

letters of Hebrew alphabet, 11  
n82, 82 n98

## years

Jacob dwelled apart from par-  
ents, 342

Jacob mourned for Joseph,  
342

## 24

books of Bible, 956 n25

## 25

years Zebul reigned as judge,  
859

## 26

age of Isaac at time of Akedah,  
253 n3

## 28

years Joshua was leader of Israel,  
852

## 30

age of Cain at time of sacrifice,  
105 n11

generations from Abraham to  
Zedekiah, 967 n57

shekels as penalty if ox kills ser-  
vant, 637

## 33

days of impurity for woman  
after giving birth to male  
child, 967 n57

## generations

from Adam to Solomon, 967  
n57

of impurity for earth after  
giving birth to Adam, 967  
n57

## 36

age of Rachel at death, 318



number (*cont.*)

- 37  
 age of Isaac at time of Akedah, 253 n3, 1079
- 39  
 no generation without 39 pious men, 211 n164
- 40  
 age of  
 Abel at time of sacrifice, 105 n11  
 Cain at time of sacrifice, 105 n11  
 Esau when married, 282  
 Isaac when married, 282
- days  
 Egyptians spent embalming Jacob, 412  
 Goliath ruled, 915-916, 917 n31  
 of Moses' stay on Sinai, 149 n42  
 Nebuchadnezzar lived as beast, 1103  
 of punishment in flood, 149 n42  
 of respite for Ninevites before city destroyed, 412  
 Solomon fasted in order to be granted wisdom, 955 n18  
 spies scouted Palestine, 708 that Ninevites were pious, 1035
- days and nights Moses in heaven, 806-807
- steps Orpah followed Naomi, 915, 917 n30
- years  
 dead buried in Holy Land to rise before those buried in other countries, 401 n345  
 Deborah reigned as judge, 869  
 Israelites punished by death for rebellion, 715  
 Israel sustained by manna, 573  
 Jeremiah prophesied, 1070 n13  
 Joseph ruled in Egypt, 422  
 Moses prophesied, 1070 n13  
 Moses reigned in Ethiopia, 491  
 Moses was shepherd for Jethro, 500  
 of Nebuchadnezzar's reign, 1107  
 Othniel reigned as judge, 860

number (*cont.*)

- 40 (*cont.*)  
 years (*cont.*)  
 reign of Messiah, 401 n345  
 respite for Canaanites, 548 n8  
 of wandering in wilderness, 429, 542
- 42  
 men killed by bears after curse of Elisha, 1027 n4  
 sacrifices brought by Balak, 1027 n4  
 years of famine in Egypt, 365
- 43  
 years spent building Tower of Babel, 165 n88
- 45  
 righteous needed to save sinful cities, 211
- 49  
 correct interpretations of Torah, 956 n25  
 gates of wisdom, 950
- 50  
 days  
 Abel lived, 105 n11  
 Pharaoh tortured by Gabriel, 560  
 gates of wisdom, 633, 635 n306  
 plagues afflicting Job, 458 n25  
 righteous needed to save sinful cities, 210-211  
 shekels as penalty for dishonoring woman, 637
- 51  
 age of city of Zoar, 213
- 52  
 years  
 of Babylonian exile, 1073 n24  
 God warned unrighteous in sinful cities, 211
- 57  
 years Kenaz reigned as first judge, 858
- 60  
 cities founded by Og, 754  
 miles, as height of walls around cities founded by Og, 754
- seah  
 weight of rod of Moses, 626 n279  
 weight of tablets, 626 n279  
 years of Elisha's activity, 1031
- 66  
 years Ebed-melech slept under tree, 1090
- 69  
 members of Jacob's family, 395

number (*cont.*)

- 70  
 age of  
 Adam when Cain born, 103 n4  
 David at death, 938
- angels  
 surrounding Divine Throne, 164  
 surrounding each of 70 thrones in Paradise, 507  
 to teach 70 languages to 70 families of Noah, 446  
 average age of man, 62 n28  
 days of mourning for Jacob, 412  
 descendants of Noah, 158 n72  
 diseases as consequence of fall, 95 n129  
 families of Noah, 446  
 holy days celebrated by Jews, 648 (*see also* holy days)  
 kinds of deaths, 95 n129  
 lamps in Solomon's Temple, 645  
 languages of men, 114, 364, 366, 413, 446
- members  
 of heavenly court, 211 n159  
 of Jacob's family, 392, 393 n305  
 of Sanhedrin, 274 n114
- names  
 of God, 649 n348  
 of Israel, 649 n348  
 of Jerusalem, 649 n348  
 of Metatron, 130  
 nations of world, 158 n72, 645  
 plagues upon flesh after fall, 944  
 seah, as weight of tablets of Ten Commandments, 625  
 secretaries of Pharaoh, 518  
 significance of, in Tabernacle, 648  
 steps on Pharaoh's throne, 364, 366  
 thrones in Paradise, 507
- years  
 of Babylonian exile, 1073 n24  
 person's life span, 261
- 71  
 members  
 of heavenly court, 95 n124  
 of heavenly Sanhedrin, 1027 n6
- 72  
 diseases as consequence of fall, 95 n129  
 languages in earth as divided by Noah, 157



number (*cont.*)

- 72 (*cont.*)  
 nations divided by Noah, 157
- 75  
 years of marriage of Abraham and Sarah before birth of Isaac, 202 n116
- 77  
 age of Adam when Cain born, 103 n4  
 descendants of Lamech who perished at time of flood, 112 n37  
 golden tables hidden in tower of Baghdad, 1091  
 pious men in Israel (70 members of Sanhedrin, Aaron, Aaron's four sons, Caleb, Phineas), 629 n287
- 83  
 kinds of deaths, 95 n129
- 84  
 age of Jacob when married to Rachel, 282
- 90  
 age of Sarah at Isaac's birth, 233
- 99  
 islands divided by Noah, 157
- 100  
 age of Abraham at birth of Isaac, 1079  
 cities given to Esau in Seir, 322 n316  
 shekels  
 Joseph gave to brothers, 390 n289  
 penalty for slander, 637
- 104  
 lands in earth divided by Noah, 157
- 116  
 years fire remained on altar, 659-660
- 120  
 age of  
 Moses, 502  
 Simeon at death, 437  
 angels surrounding throne of Abraham in Paradise, 507  
 days Shekinah would rest on Mount Horeb, 502  
 men of Great Synagogue, 1127 n56  
 numerical value of Hebrew word for thornbush (*seneh*), 502  
 years  
 of man's life, 140 n19  
 Noah preaching repentance, 143-44

number (*cont.*)

- 125  
 age of Reuben at death, 436
- 127  
 age of Sarah at death, 1138 n47  
 provinces ruled by Ahasuerus, 1130, 1131 n6, 1138 n47  
 provinces ruled by Esther, corresponding to years of Sarah, 1138 n47
- 130  
 age of  
 Hannah at birth of Samuel, 889  
 Jacob when migrating to Egypt, 669  
 Jochebed at birth of Moses, 668
- 177  
 age of Pharaoh at death, 427
- 208  
 sons and advisors of Haman, 1168
- 210  
 years of servitude in Egypt, 263 n69, 510, 511 n126, 513
- 232  
 kingdoms ruled by Ahab, 988 n32
- 243  
 years of influence of Enoch, 122
- 244  
 persons killed by lions in pit of Darius, 1114
- 248  
 commandments, corresponding to number of members of body, 603  
 members of human body, 97 n134, 1050  
 numerical value of name of Abraham, 203 n122  
 rivers of balsam, 97 n134
- 252  
 kingdoms ruled by Ahab, 987  
 years that blood of Jehoiada seethed in hall of priests, 1038
- 300  
 shekels Joseph gave to Benjamin, 390 n288
- 310  
 words of God for every righteous man, 807 n894  
 worlds prepared for pious in world to come, 807
- 318  
 Eliezer having strength of 318 men, 195

number (*cont.*)

- 318 (*cont.*)  
 numerical value of  
 name of Eliezer, 197 n93  
 name of Jesus, 197 n93
- 365  
 advisors of Haman, 1168  
 books of Enoch, 128 n60  
 days in solar year, 1171 n164  
 number of prohibitions, corresponding to number of days of year, 603  
 times Ahasuerus thrown out of bed, corresponding to number of days in solar year, 1170, 1171 n164
- 366  
 books of Enoch, 126, 128 n60
- 400  
 years of bondage in Egypt, 199, 263 n69
- 410  
 years of existence of first Temple, 949 n12
- 550  
 cattle tithed by Jacob, 300
- 600  
 bricks each Israelite required to make daily, 468 n9
- 613  
 commandments of Torah, 593
- 620  
 letters in Ten Commandments, 635 n308
- 800  
 proverbs of Solomon, 950
- 903  
 kinds of deaths, 95 n129
- 930  
 years Adam lived, 671
- 974  
 generations  
 before creation when Torah written down, 102 n2  
 suppressed before flood, 101, 1,464  
 lions in pit of Darius, 1114
- 1,700  
 forgotten traditions restored by Othniel, 860
- 3,000  
 executed for worshipping golden calf, 627  
 proverbs of Solomon, 950
- 5,000  
 gates of wisdom opened to Moses on Sinai, 956 n25



number (*cont.*)

- 7,000  
years of duration of world, 126, 859
- 8,000  
gates of understanding opened to Moses on Sinai, 956 n25
- 11,000  
gates of knowledge opened to Moses on Sinai, 956 n25
- 22,000  
children with Mordecai in Bet ha-Midrash, 1170
- 24,000  
Israelites dying as result of sin with daughters of Moab, 796  
men from tribe of Simeon lost to plague at Shittim, 783-784  
sinners executed by judges of Israel, 782 n798
- 30,000  
angels as bodyguards of Moses on tour of heavens, 503
- 60,000  
executed by Nebuchadnezzar for worshipping idol, 1102  
male children conceived same night as Moses, 404
- 70,000  
heads, mouths, and stingers of scorpions in hell, 506  
male children slaughtered by Nimrod, 169
- 80,000  
archers of Palmyrenes assisting Nebuchadnezzar in war against Israel, 1086  
priests  
burned at stake at destruction of Temple, 1107 n108  
whose death caused by Ishmaelites, 1086
- 200,000  
Ephraimites killed by Philistines, 548 n10
- 300,000  
men fighting with Kenaz, 858
- 600,000  
angels in each host accompanying Jacob, 294  
heads of families leaving Egypt, 542  
Israelites at time of Exodus, 393 n305, 465

number (*cont.*)

- 600,000 (*cont.*)  
male children born same night as Moses, saved on account of his merits, 479  
sheep and goats in Jacob's flock, 290  
sons of Moses numbering more than, 1089 n55
- 60 myriads  
firstborn slain during tenth plague, 538 n218  
Israelites to be brought out of Egypt, 513  
Jacob's descendants at time of his death, 415 n417  
prophets during Elijah's time, 1026 n1  
standard number representing Israel, 211 n159
- 60 myriads minus 3,000  
number of Israelites, 636  
of Israelites as sum of numerical values of names of 12 tribes, 636  
of righteous needed to save sinful cities, 210-211
- numbers, exaggerated, 172 n18, 894 n34  
of conversion, 935  
of Job's possessions and wealth, 453-454  
in warfare, 309-313, 415-419, 420, 858, 868, 870 n80, 872, 876, 880 n124, 882, 914 n15, 925-926, 986, 987, 1045-1046
- Nun  
receiving revelation that his child would cut off his head, 842 n2
- nun (letter)  
in Asenath, standing for *nobemet*, for she wept and entreated, 368  
and creation, 4  
long nun at end of *mishpatan*, explanation of, 787 n818, 789 n822  
suspended in Judges 18:30, explanation of, 883 n130  
standing for *ner*, lamp of the Lord and of the wicked, 4  
in Zaphenath-paneah  
standing for  
*navi* ("prophet"), 368  
*navon* ("discreet"), 368  
*See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet

- nuptial benedictions, 242 n298  
quorum for, 241 n285
- Nuriel (angel)  
in second heaven, 503, 505 n117  
height of (300 parasangs), 503
- nursing. *See* breast-feeding
- nut tree  
symbolic of Israel, 1175  
willing to serve as cross for Haman, 1175  
*See also* tree(s)
- nymphs, holy  
seven golden idols of Amorites, 856

## O

- oak tree  
of Abraham, 206 n137  
A. sitting under, at Mamre, 247  
healing properties of, 206 n137  
Absalom caught in branches of, 932  
pieces of idols broken by Jacob buried under, 316  
under which Deborah buried called "oak of mourners of Deborah," 318 n301  
*See also* tree(s)
- oath  
of angels, 119  
of Benjamin before Joseph, 388  
chief of, 137 n9  
of Eliezer to Abraham concerning wife for Isaac, 238  
of Esau, concerning birthright, 258  
of Eve, to make Adam eat the fruit, 93  
of God, 232 n243  
to Noah not to destroy earth again by water, 152 n55, 210, 471, 472 n22  
inviolability of, 848 n35  
of Jacob to take no wives other than four daughters of Laban, 293  
of Joseph  
to Jacob, 401 n351  
to Jacob to bury him in Canaan, 413  
not to succumb to temptation, 354  
swearing by life of Pharaoh, 373  
of Laban not to pass over stone boundary with hostile intent, 293



oath (*cont.*)

- of Naomi to provide for Ruth, 866 n56
  - of pious, not to succumb to temptation, 354
  - of sons of Jacob not to tell Jacob what they had done with Joseph, 339
  - swearing of, 322 n317
    - by Fear of Isaac, 293
    - by God of Abraham, 293
    - by God of Nahor, 293
    - by life of father (*b'pahad aviv*), 294 n227
    - by sign of covenant, 238, 239 n284, 400 (*see also* circumcision; covenant[s]: sign of)
  - sworn at Shibah, 261
- Obadiah (prophet)
- active during time of
    - Amaziah, 1041 n20
    - Jehoshaphat, 1041 n20
  - as disciple of Elijah, 1026 n1
  - as "God-fearing one," 397 (*see also* God-fearing one)
  - identified with Obadiah, high official in Ahab's court, 1027 n7, 1041 n20
  - and Isaiah
    - prophesying in 71 tongues, 1058 n104
    - receiving permission from Great Sanhedrin to prophesy, 1058 n104
  - Jehoram exacting interest from, 1027 n7
  - as most insignificant of prophets, 1058 n104
  - non-Jewish descent of, 1027 n6
  - one of four God-fearing men, 1026
  - pious protector of prophets in hiding, 990
  - prophecy of, against Edom, 323, 1026
  - as proselyte and overseer in Paradise, 19, 22 n91
  - supporting 100 prophets in hiding, 998 n23, 1026
  - widow of, assisted by Elisha, 1025-1026
  - wife of, one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271
- Obed (grandfather of David), 911
- born circumcised, 867 n68 (*see also* covenant[s]: sign of)
  - name, meaning of, 867 n68, 911
  - the pious, son of Ruth and Boaz, 864

## Obed Edom

- lighting lamp twice a day before ark, 942 n135
- rewarded with many children, 942 n135
- women in house of
  - giving birth after two months, 942 n135
  - giving birth to six children at one time, 942 n135

## Oboth

- Israelites continuing hostile actions against God at, 749

## obscenity

- one of eight sins committed by Pharaoh, inhabitants of sinful cities, builders of Tower of Babel, Sennacherib, and Nebuchadnezzar, 562 n54 (*see also* Pharaoh: eight sins of)

## ocean

- drinking from, as method of capital punishment for worshippers of golden calf, 625-626
  - as "Great Sea," 20 n73
  - identified with "sea of death," 20 n73
  - location of, 6
  - name, meaning of, 20 n73
  - wanting to flood world at breaking of tablets, 625
  - See also* sea; sea of death; water(s)
- Odihel (husband of Pheila), 859

## odor

- of dead bones, distinguishing between pious and wicked, Jew and Gentile, man and woman, 339 n58

## Ofaniel (angel)

- angel of wheel of moon, prostrating before Metatron, 130
- ofanim (type of angel), 33 n139
- above, corresponding to ofanim below, 648

- in seventh heaven, 505 n117
- surrounding Divine Throne, 6
- and translation of Enoch, 129
- See also* angel(s): types

## offering

- burnt
  - accompanying prayer of Isaac, 253 n8
  - atoning for sinful thoughts, 456 n14
  - bull as, 598
  - not brought by Abraham, 225

offering (*cont.*)

- burnt (*cont.*)
    - sacrifice of Isaac as, 225-226, 228-229, 260
  - dedication
    - of princes of tribes for
      - Tabernacle being same for each, 665-673
    - significance of, for each tribe, 666-673
    - symbolic significance of total of, 671
    - symbolizing history of world from Adam to erection of Tabernacle, 671
  - drink
    - poured out by Jacob on pillar at Bethel, 318
  - free-will, to treasury at Shiloh, 859
  - of gold in amount of one's increase in weight, 990, 990 n50
  - half-shekel
    - pointed out by God with index finger of right hand, 638 n315
    - to sanctuary at second census, 637
  - heave
    - Adam as, 65
    - first and second tithes to priests, 721
    - to be separated from dough, 65
  - incense, 722
    - Nadab and Abihu consumed by, 722
  - peace
    - bull as, 598
    - he-goat as, 672
    - he-lamb as, 672
    - not brought by Abraham, 225
    - sacrifice of Abel as, 105 n12
  - purification
    - of women before having conjugal relations, 893 n26
  - sin
    - of Aaron, calf as, 659
    - made by Moses to atone for any possible wrong in building Tabernacle, 657
    - offered by Job on behalf of friends, 461
    - on 10 Tishri, 341
  - whole
    - sacrifice of Abel as, 105 n12
    - See also* libations; sacrifice(s)
- officers
- number of, 588 n164



## official(s)

chiefs, 737  
 elders, 737  
 magnates, 737  
 princes, 737  
 of Roman court  
   Elijah appearing as, 1001  
 rulers of fifties, 737  
 rulers of hundreds, 737  
 rulers of tens, 737  
 rulers of thousands, 737  
 offspring, blemished  
   of Abraham  
     Ishmael as, 406  
     sons of Keturah as, 406  
   of Isaac, Esau as, 406

## Og

and Abraham  
   A. freeing O., 753, 756 n689  
   A. receiving O. as gift from  
     Nimrod, 753  
   O. as slave to A., 753  
   O. bringing A. news of Lot's  
     bondage, with wicked  
     motive, 753  
   O. circumcised by A., 756 n691  
 battle of Israelites against, 753  
   taking place in Edrei, 753  
   taking place on Sabbath, 756  
     n693  
 beauty of, 756 n704  
 bed of, fashioned from ivory, 755  
 at circumcision of Isaac, 219  
 claimed as child by Ham, 152 n54  
 death of, 754  
 escape of  
   from Amraphel's sword, 756  
     n697  
   from flood, 756 n697  
 founder of 60 cities, 754  
 as giant, 753-756, 829  
   last of giants, 754, 756 n697  
   only one to escape hand of  
     Amraphel, 754  
 guardian angel of, put in chains by  
   God, 751  
 identified as "the escaped," 196  
   n90  
 identified with Eliezer, Abraham's  
   steward, 753  
 legend of, about long teeth, 305  
   n263  
 life span of, 755 n684  
   500 years, 753  
 with Pharaoh when Jacob came to  
   Egypt, 395  
 promising to serve Noah as slave,  
   144

Og (*cont.*)

size of thigh bone of, 753  
 slain by Moses, 753  
 as slave of Nimrod, 755 n689  
 sons of Shemhazai as ancestors of,  
   137 n10  
 on top of ark, 144

## Ogi

identified with Og, who is identi-  
   fied with Eliezer, 180 n41  
 slave given to Abraham, 177

## Ohad

elder from tribe of Simeon, 696

Oholiab (elder from tribe of  
Zebulun), 696

from tribe of Dan, assisting Bezalel  
 in construction of  
 Tabernacle, 642

## Oholibamah-Judith

double name of one of Esau's  
 wives, 274 n122

## oil

on anointing stone made from 12  
 stones, 277-278  
 coming down from heaven for  
   Jacob's sake, 92 n113  
 holy, 915 n22  
   of anointing  
     for anointing kings, 1038 n2  
     prepared by Moses, 658  
     n371  
     anointing of Enoch with, 126  
   changing body of anointed,  
     917 n35  
   one of five things in First  
     Temple only, 1123-1124  
     n36  
   drops of, on David's garments  
     turning to diamonds and  
     pearls, 913  
   hidden by Josiah, 658 n371,  
     1062 n118  
   jug of, concealed by Josiah  
     before destruction of  
     Temple, 573  
   not pouring out on David's  
     brothers, 913  
   sanctuary and vessels anointed  
     with, 657  
 inexhaustible, and widow of  
   Obadiah, 1026  
 Jacob anointing site of Luz with,  
   92 n113  
 of life  
   description of, 92 n113  
   dispensed to pious, 91  
 for light in Tabernacle, symbolizing  
   Messiah, 640-641

oil (*cont.*)

olive, in golden bowl on throne of  
   Solomon, 968  
 one of 13 materials for construc-  
   tion of Tabernacle, 640 (*see*  
     *also under* Tabernacle)  
 from pitcher  
   poured from pitcher rather than  
     from horn, 1037  
   used to anoint Jehu, 1037  
   used to anoint Saul, 1038 n2  
 as stream from tree of life, 127 n60  
 from tree of His mercy, 91  
*See also* anointing  
 old age  
   change of appearance in, as one of  
     seven wonders of history,  
     237  
   marks to distinguish it from youth,  
     237  
   not distinguished by appearance  
     before death of Sarah, 237  
   signs of, in appearance of  
     Abraham, 239 n276

## older

to serve younger, 252, 254 n19

## olive tree

depicted on tribe of Asher's flag in  
 wilderness, 688  
 Othniel pictured as, 874 n103  
 as tree of life, 92 n113  
 wainscoting of fourth division of  
   Paradise made from, 19  
*See also* tree(s)

## omen

meeting young maidens on enter-  
 ing city, 281

## omer, 1173

amount of daily manna for each  
 person, 571  
 brought on 16 Nisan, 991, 1176  
   n170  
 Counting of Omer, 592 n175  
 offering, 1140  
   barley cake as, 872  
 preparation of, 865 n48

## Omri, house of, 986

## On

becoming intoxicated, 727  
 called On, "the penitent," 727  
 saved because of repentance, 724  
 son of Peleth, saved with sons of  
   Korah, 726-728  
 true name of, Nemuel, son of  
   Eliab, brother of Dathan  
   and Abiram, 727  
 wife of  
   On owing salvation to, 726  
   pleading for On, 727



## Onan

age of, at marriage, 7 years, 346 n82  
 dying on account of sin, 344  
 and Er, difference in age of, 346 n82  
 name, meaning of ("mourning"), 344  
 not begetting children with Tamar, 344  
 second son of Judah, 344  
 sin of, 346 n79  
 and Tamar

living together for year without consummating marriage, 344

onanism, 346 n79

in Ben Sira legend, 1083 n42

one-horned animal, 40 n166

one-horned ox. *See* unicorn

## Onias

legend of stoning of, connected to legend of stoning of Jeremiah, 1091 n58

*See also* Honi

## Othiel (angel)

supervising fifth division of hell, 988

## Onkelos

speaking with Balaam through necromancy, 796 n856

## Onoskelis

unclean spirit having shape and skin of fair-hued woman, 963

## onyx

on bier of Jacob, 413

endowing one who wears it with grace, 652

precious stone of Joseph in breastplate of Aaron, 652

on throne of Pharaoh, 364

*See also* precious stones

## Ophir

gold from, on Solomon's throne, 968

oral law. *See* law: oral

oral Torah. *See* Torah: oral

## oranges

legend of women friends of Potiphar's wife and, 354-355, 356 n118

## organs (bodily)

legend about rivalry of, 978-979, 980 n97

*See also* body, human; guides: of men; *and under individual organs*

## organs (musical)

in fourth heaven, 125

## orgies

in sinful cities, 207 (*see also* cities: sinful)

## Origen

defense of Christians by, 51 n8

on Gabriel as angel of war, 53 n13

on Jacob's encounter with angel, 306 n273

on Michael as angel of prayer, 53 n13

Oriokh. *See* Ariuk

## orlah

laws of, Moses and Aaron instructing Israelites in wilderness on, 712 n530

## Ornias

having form of lion, 965 n56

as offspring of Uriel (identified with Ariel, "lion of God"), 965 n56

story of Solomon and old man

with impious son, 964

vampire spirit who stole money from king's page, 963

## Orpah

accompanying Naomi, 915, 917 n30

attempting to kill Abishai, 934

bringing forth four giants (Goliath and three brothers), 862-863

conversion to Judaism only temporary, 864 n40

daughter of Eglon, king of Moab, daughter-in-law of Naomi, 862

killed by Abishai, 934

leading life of infamy, 915

name, meaning of, 917 n27

rewarded for 40 steps with Naomi and four tears, 915

sons of, killed by David, 1163

## orphans

Job's concern for, 454

## Osnappar

one of eight other names of Sennacherib, 1054 n92

## Osnappar of Assyria (king)

leading penitents of Nineveh, 1034

## Osorchan I

Zerah identified with, 986 n19

## Osra (mother of Serug), 168 n3

## ostrich

cruelty of, 43 n190

## Othniel (judge), 860-862

capturing Luz, 860

Othniel (*cont.*)

connected with family of David, 911

devotion of, to Torah, 861 n23

elder from tribe of Issachar, 696

entering Paradise alive, 861 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)

father of Kenaz, 857 n1

half-brother of Caleb, 860

identified with Judah (judge), 862 n30

Jabez as epithet of, 860

Judah as real name of, 860

pictured as olive tree, 874 n103

reigning 40 years as judge, 860

restoring 1,700 traditions forgotten since Moses, 860

as scholar, 860

as successor of Joshua, 861 n22, 861 n26

as successor of Kenaz, 860 n21

victory of, over Adoni-bezek, 860

wife of, 860

zealous for study of Torah, 860

Othniel-Jabez. *See* Othniel

## ox (oxen)

and ass

Solomon's story of conversation between, 953-954

offered by Adam, 88 n108 (*see also* unicorn)

of peace offering

corresponding to books of Scripture, 671

at dedication of sanctuary

significance of, for tribes of

Asher, Benjamin, Dan,

Ephraim, Gad, Manasseh,

Naphtali, and Simeon,

668-670

symbolic significance of, in

history of world, 671

and sacrifice of Noah, 150

on Solomon's throne, 968

to draw wagons of Tabernacle

living forever, 665

12 in number, 665

ox, wild (*reem*)

on coins struck by Joshua, 853 n54

## Ozni (son of Gad)

name, meaning of, 433-434

## P

## Pagiel

name, meaning of ("the interceder"), 680



Pagiel (*cont.*)

prince of tribe of Asher, 680  
son of Ochran ("the afflicted"),  
680

pain

God employing same means to  
inflict and cure, 568 n82

pairs

everything created in, 608 n221

paitanim, 191 n76, 481 n57

medieval, praising Abraham in  
Akedah, 228 n229

of Synagogue

Jose b. Jose, 128 n60

*pakod*

use of word in addressing people,  
one of three signs of true  
redeemer of Israel from  
bondage of Egypt, 405  
words of redeemer ("I have surely  
visited you"), 428

palate

one of 12 guides of men, tasting  
flavors of food, 671 (*see also*  
body, human; guides:  
of men)

Palestine

claim of Canaanites to, 196 n82  
created before other parts of world,  
10 n39

and Egypt

reminiscences of relationship  
between, 364 n163 (*see also*  
historical reminiscence)

emigration to, and luck, 263 n66

filled with treasures when con-

quered by Israel, 717

foreign kings in, 846, 848 n33

as God's favorite land, 10 n39

guardian angel of, hurled from

heaven by God, 712

plague in, during visit of spies, 708  
n511

promised to Jacob, 277

resettlement of, under direction of  
Ezra, 1121

as rightful possession of Israel, 158  
n68

situated in center of earth, 10

n39

size of, 1005 n53

soil of, as material for Adam's head,  
54 n15

as unlawful possession of Canaan,  
159 n73

*See also* Holy Land; Israel (land);  
promised land

Palestinian Haggadah. *See* Haggadah

Palie

name, meaning of, 194

Palit (angel)

identified with Michael, 194

Pallu

elder from tribe of Reuben, 696

married though two years old, 395

palm tree, 567

brought to Babylon 40 years before  
exile, 1074 n24

Deborah buried under, 317

Deborah (prophetess) sitting  
under, 317

indicating accession to royal dig-  
nity, 901 n52

70 palms, corresponding to 70

elders, at Elim, 567

symbolic of Israel, 1175

symbolic significance of, 568 n86,  
1175

as tree of life, 92 n113

willing to serve as cross for

Haman, 1175

*See also* tree(s)

Palmyra

burial place of Queen of Sheba,  
964 n53

Palmyrenes

archers of, 1087 n53

and destruction of Temple, 1087  
n53

Palnesser

one of eight other names of  
Sennacherib, 1054 n92

Palti (husband of Michal)

chastity of, 866 n60

legality of marriage to Michal, 941  
n133

praised for control of passions, 941  
n133

*See also* Paltiel

Palti (son of Raphu)

elder from tribe of Issachar, 696

spy representing tribe of Benjamin,  
705

Paltiel (husband of Michal)

crowns and embellishments of  
Hebrew letters transmitted  
to, by Eli, 892 n24

God's name attached to name, 871  
n85

transmitting crowns and embellish-  
ments of Hebrew letters to  
Ahitophel, 892 n24

*See also* Palti (husband of Michal)

Paltit (daughter of Lot)

name, meaning of, 209

punished for feeding beggar, 209

Paneas Grotto

running from east bank to west  
bank of Jordan, 802

panic

one of seven evils, 450

panthers

among animals of fourth plague,  
530, 533-534 n188

parable(s)

of king and servant, 806 n891

Paradise

as abode of unborn souls, 57 n19

account of, allegorization of, 69

n50  
Adam and Eve in, 68-71, 77, 81  
n97, 103 n4

allegorical conception of description  
of, 80 n95

banquet for righteous to be held  
on judgment day, 939

bees of, honeycomb produced by,  
424

created before world, 21 n76

created on third day, 18, 77, 82  
n98

David in, 939-940

description of, 18, 19-20, 21 n77,  
23 n97

in R. Joshua b. Levi, 23 n97

divisions of, 19-20

seven in number, 6, 19, 22 n91

earthly, 21 n77, 68

entering alive, 73 n67

Baruch, 1083 n42, 1093 n66

Bithiah, 73 n67, 132 n62, 481,  
540 n226

Chileab, 19, 941

Ebed-melech, 73 n67, 132 n62

Eliezer, 73 n67, 132 n62, 241,  
242 n301

Elijah, 73 n67, 122 n58, 132

n62, 999 n32, 1000 n34

Enoch, 73 n67, 122 n58, 131

n61, 132 n62

Hiram (architect), 966

Hiram (king of Tyre), 73 n67,  
132 n62, 1105 n105

Ishmael, 248 n317

Jabez, 73 n67, 862 n30

Jonadab (the Rechabite), 73  
n67

Jonah, 1035, 1035 n38

Joshua b. Levi, R., 22 n90, 73  
n67, 132 n62

Messiah, 132 n62

Methuselah, 73 n67, 132 n62

Othniel, 861

Phinehas, 892 n25



Paradise (*cont.*)

entering alive (*cont.*)  
 Serah, 73 n67, 132 n62, 391, 393 n295  
 sons of Jonadab the Rechabite, 1090 n57  
 sons of Korah, 73 n67, 132 n62, 728 n590  
 urshana (animal), 147, 148 n37  
 extent of, 19  
 forbidden food of, wheat, 73-74 n70  
 four streams in, 21 n79 (*see also* Paradise: rivers of)  
 fragrance of, 22 n83, 268 n92, 1005 n54  
 clinging to Jacob, 266  
 herbs of, 248 n317  
 leaves of, 1002  
 pervading Cave of Machpelah whenever Jacob entered, 415 n423  
 gate of  
 of carbuncle, 18 (*see also* precious stones)  
 guarded by cherubim, 68  
 Gehazi having no share in, 1029 (*see also* world to come: those having no share in)  
 God's visit to pious in, 46 n194  
 halls of, three in number  
 glass, for proselytes, 23 n97  
 gold, for patriarchs and other biblical figures, 23 n97  
 silver, for righteous of Israel, 23 n97  
 and hell, legends relating to, 22 n90  
 ice of, 857 n11  
 identified with heavenly Jerusalem, 21 n77 (*see also* Jerusalem: heavenly)  
 inhabitants of, 22 n85  
 walking on heads, 242 n301  
 location of, 6, 21 n77, 22 n84, 999 n32  
 in east, 10 n33  
 near Jerusalem, 89 n109  
 in north, 645, 646 n340  
 on right side of God, 1  
 in third heaven, 98 n137, 427 n432  
 in west or northwest, 10 n33  
 Manasseh presiding over penitents in, 19  
 and Moses  
 Moses' tour of, 507-508

Paradise (*cont.*)

and Moses (*cont.*)  
 Paradise shown to Moses by God, 814  
 one of seven things created in beginning, 1  
 portion of, assigned to women, 23 n97  
 preexistence of, 21 n76, 82 n98  
 as reward, 1  
 rivers of, 70 n51 (*see also* Paradise: four streams in)  
 Samael searching for Moses in, 836  
 secret chamber of Messiah in, 23 n97  
 70 thrones made of precious stones in, 507  
 Shamshiel as prince of, 507  
 size of, 507  
 spring of living water in, 507  
 tree of life in, 124  
 in vision of Abraham, 200 n114  
 women's, 940  
 seven divisions of, 940  
*See also* Adam: and Eve, in Paradise; Adam: and Paradise; heaven(s)  
 Paralipomena of Jeremiah, 1071 n15  
 Paran  
 one of names of Sinai, 501 n113  
 parasang  
 unit of (linear) measurement, 33, 117, 1005 n53 (*see also* measures)  
 parenesis  
 and Midrash, viii  
 parents  
 failing to honor, as insult to God, 608 n226  
 honor due to  
 as honor to God, 608 n226  
 not to conflict with honor due to God, 654 n359  
 Parukh (angel)  
 guarding books, 117 n53  
 Parvaim, gold of  
 crown made of, 18  
 paschal lamb. *See* lamb: paschal  
 paschal meal  
 Moses and Aaron eating, in Egypt, 539  
*See also* Passover  
 Pashhur  
 announcing birth of Jeremiah to father, 1070 n11  
 elder from tribe of Asher, 696  
*Passim*  
 garment referred to as, 334 n43

*Passim* (*cont.*)

Hebrew name of Joseph's coat of many colors, 330  
 meaning of ("clefts"), 330  
 significance of letters of, 330 (*see also under individual letters*)  
 telling story of sale of Joseph, 330  
 Passover  
 ceremonies of, purpose of, 535  
 criticized by Haman, 1153  
 date of  
 15 Nisan, 534  
 eve of  
 Hallel sung on, 264, 265, 540 n225  
 storehouses of dew unlocked on, 264, 265  
 first, 534-536  
 first day of  
 quantity of dew fixed for year, 268 n83  
 first night of  
 Abraham learning of Lot's captivity, 194  
 and covenant of pieces, 202 n115  
 herbs eaten on, 48  
 important events happening on, 191 n76  
 as night Haman erected cross for Mordecai, 1169-1172  
 as night of miracles, 1047 n54, 1170, 1171 n160  
 Gideon gaining victory during, 872  
 lasting eight days in description of Haman, 1153, 1155 n112  
 laws concerning, communicated to elders by Moses, 535  
 as memorable day of 1 Samuel 1:4, 888 n9  
 in Messianic times, 543 n235  
 Sabbath preceding  
 called Great Sabbath, 536 n206  
 piyyut for, 557 n39  
 sacrifice of, by Jacob, 265  
 second, law concerning, 675  
 second night of, as disturbed night, 1171 n160  
 seven days of, one of 70 holy days celebrated by Jews, 648  
 and three-day fast of Mordechai, 1166 n142  
 Passover lamb. *See* lamb: paschal  
 Passover meal  
 Hallel chanted during, 540 n225  
 Pasusi  
 identification of, 315 n292



Pasusi (*cont.*)

king of Sartan, slain by Jacob, 314

## paternal descent

determining man's admission to tribe, 689-690

## paths

12 in number, opening up for each tribe, one of ten miracles at Red Sea, 556

## patriarchs

as authors of Eighteen

Benedictions, 1126

benedictions of, 777 n780

buried in Hebron, 98 n137

dying by kiss of God, 743 n639

graves of

connected to burial site of Moses by underground passage, 832

on Mount Nebo, 832 n952

greater than Moses, 838 n961

in hall of gold in Paradise, 23 n97

Job and, 451-453

Messiah greater than, 790 n836

oath of God to, 813

observing laws subsequently revealed to Moses, 239 n275

praised for kindness, 740 n635

refusing to welcome righteous into

Paradise, 431 n444

special virtues of, 715 n543

as three pillars on which world

rests, 728 n590, 1101 n93

tomb of (*see also* patriarchs: graves of)

Elijah taking Elkanah to, 1018

of God, seven in number, 968

Moses as seventh, 682

*See also* fathers; and *under individual patriarchs*

## patristic literature

on Christian made in image of

God, 51 n8

*See also* Church Fathers

## paws

sucking of, 41 n181

## pe (letter)

creation of world through, 4

in *Pasim*, standing for Potiphar, 330

standing for

*pesha* ("transgression"), 4

*podeh* ("redeemer"), 4

in Zaphenath-paneah, standing for *podeh* ("redeemer"), 368

*poter* ("interpreter of dreams"), 368

pe (*cont.*)

*See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet

## peace

greatness of, 1038 n4

greeting of, between Moses and

Jethro, 584

reigning on day of consecration of Tabernacle, 660

in seventh heaven, 6

window of, in first heaven, 503

peace offering. *See* offering: peace

## peacock

on Solomon's throne, 968

## pearl(s)

in artificial heavens made by

Hiram of Tyre, 1105

bringing owner sleep, 651

as crown at entrance of Paradise, 18

drops of holy oil turning into, 913

grains of manna appearing as, 571 n100, 650

in heavenly Temple, 816

presented by Pharaoh to chieftains of army, 552 n17

on Solomon's throne, 968

tears of God turning into, 1081 n39

thrones in Paradise made from, for scholars of Torah, 507

white, stone of tribe of Zebulun in breastplate of Aaron, 651

*See also* precious stones

## pebbles of David

five in number, standing for God, three patriarchs, and Aaron, 916

## Pedahzur

name, meaning of, 681 n424

## peddlers

having permission to sell cosmetics to women in town, one of ten regulations of Ezra, 1122

## Pekah (son of Tabeel; king of north-

ern kingdom), 1051 n66

conquered by king of Assyria, 1044

king of Samaria, 1048

warfare of, against Ahaz, 1044

## Pelatiah, 1073 n21

remonstrating with

Nebuchadnezzar about cruelty to Jews, 1067 n8

## Peleg (son of Eber)

days of, families of earth divided in, 446

Peleg (*cont.*)

division of earth during life of, 157, 158 n69

## Peleth

name, meaning of ("miracle"), 727

## Pelethites

Benaiah as chief of, 980 n95

## Peliah

book of Kabbalah authored by Elkanah, 1018

## Pelilah

marriage of, to Terah, 243

## penance

of Reuben, 435

## Peneme (angel), 137 n9

## pen for tablets of Sinai

created in twilight between sixth day and Sabbath, 78 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)

## Peninnah

children of

death of children of, 890

eight lost, 891 n22

ten in number, 891 n22

and Hannah, conflict between, 887

second wife of Elkanah, 887

taunting words of, 888 n7

## Penitence

Ten Days of

granted to Israel as reward for tithes of Jacob, 280 n144

from New Year to Day of Atonement, 903 n72

*See also* penance; repentance

## penitents

in fifth compartment of Eden, 19

*See also* penance; penitence; repentance

## Pentalpha

engraved on ring given to Solomon by Michael, 963

five A's interlaced, 964 n54

## Pentateuch

one of three parts of Torah, 592 (*see also* Prophets;

Hagiographa)

written down, 633

## Pentecost (Feast of Weeks)

celebrated by Jacob on 15th of third month, 393 n301

connected with sacrifice of Noah, 152 n52

criticized by Haman, 1153

day of sacrifices of Cain and Abel, 105 n11

Festival of Revelation, 128 n60



Pentecost (*cont.*)

- lasting two days in description of Haman, 1153, 1155 n112
- one of 70 holy days celebrated by Jews, 648
- referred to as "the day," 889 n9
- See also under date*

## Pentophoe

- wife of Pharaoh's chief cook, in Philo, 355 n111

## Penuel

- name given by Jacob to place of encounter with angels, 300

people. *See* Israel (nation; people)/Israelites

## Peor (god of Moabites), 778

- worship of, 779 n786
- consisting in baring body, 778
- Israel becoming subject to four kingdoms through, 779 n786

## Peor (place)

- also called Bamot-baal, 776 n775
- another name for Haron, 623
- site of great disaster to befall Israel, 775
- site of Israel's sin with daughters of Moab and punishment, 775

## Perez

- breaking through mother's womb, 347 n92
- Messiah as descendant of, 347 n92
- name
  - as allusion to Messiah, 347 n92
  - meaning of ("mighty"), 345
- one of twin sons of Tamar, 345
- and Zerah
  - sent out as spies by Joshua, 345
  - sons of Judah, as spies, 844 n10
  - twin sons of Tamar, 345

## perfect ones

- in fourth division of Paradise, 19

## perfume(s)

- from Paradise, brought to wilderness by clouds, 655 n365
- on Solomon's throne, 969
- wood growing in Jerusalem having flavor of cinnamon to be used as, 1085 n45

*See also fragrance*

## Perizzites

- having right of habitation, 193

## perjury

- death as punishment for, 948 n11, 1067 n6
- not a capital crime, 1067 n6

perjury (*cont.*)

- one of 13 sins punished by leprosy, 675 (*see also* leprosy)

## persecution

- of Hadrian, Jews during, 255 n24
- of Jews in time of Ben Sira, 1084 n42

## Persia

- identified with Chaldea, 458 n22
- king of, and Benaiah, 978-979
- and Media
  - allied kings of, sending letter to Joshua, 850-851
- seven princes of, consulted by Ahasuerus (Carshena, Shethar, Admatha, Tarshish, Meres, Marsena, Memucan), 1136

## Persian custom

- compelling excessive drinking of wine at banquet, 1133

## Persian ideas

- fire of Rigny, 615 n247
- legend of Adam taking 30 kinds of trees from Paradise, 81 n96
- legend of different kinds of fires in hell, 15 n60
- redeemer Saoshyant to spring up from seed of Zarathustra, 115 n47
- sources using legend of man and lost purse, 630 n290

## Persian language

- ascribed to Hamitic system of writing, 158 n72
- used by Hamites, 158 n72

## Persian law

- that married women should not show faces to any man but husband, 1137 n35

## Persian princes

- refusing to participate in desecration of holy vessels, 1138 n42

## Persians

- descended from Japheth, 1144 n68
- ox of, 88 n108
- praised for modesty, 284 n164
- view of noxious animals of, 45 n191

## pestilence

- as plague of Egypt, 523, 525
- window of, in first heaven, 503

## Peter legend, Jewish

- of Peter sitting on stone from which Ezekiel used to deliver prophecies, 1101 n93

## Pethahiah (another name of

Mordecai), 1141 n62

## Pethor (Petor; city)

- founded by son of Kemuel, 244 n315

real name of Aram-naharaim, 243

## Pethuel (father of Joel)

name, meaning of, 992 n56

## Petor (son of Aram son of Kemuel), 243

## Phadihel (angel)

- sent to Eluma to announce conception and birth of Samson, 879 n111

## Phanuel (archangel), 16 n65

## Pharaoh

- accompanying Israelites in Exodus, 546

## afflicted with

- boils, 497
- leprosy, 497, 499 n101
- age of, at death, 177 years, 427
- Amalek as counselor of, 471 n21
- anger of, at advisors who advised against letting Israelites go, 542 n230, 546

appointing sons of Jacob as chief shepherds, 398 n330

attempting to discover birth of male children, 472 n23

attempt to poison P., 360, 361, 361 n143

bathing in blood of slaughtered Israelite children, 497

battle of, with God, 558-559

becoming lame when trying to ascend Solomon's throne, 1060, 1062 n123

chief butler of (Mirod), recommending Joseph as interpreter, 363

claiming to be god, 1103-1104 n100, 1105 n105

as cosmocrator, 162 n82, 517-518, 552 n15, 1155 n113 (*see also* cosmocrator)

cunning of, 466-468

and death of firstborn

P. escaping plague of death of firstborn, 540 n222

P. fearing death as firstborn, 539-540

decreeing Israelites not permitted to rest on Sabbath, 520

doom of, caused by eight grievous sins, 1048 n60

dreams of, 362-364

cattle symbolizing years of abundance or famine, 362



Pharaoh (*cont.*)dreams of (*cont.*)

ears of corn symbolizing years of abundance or famine, 362

about old man with balance, 470

P. summoning wise men to interpret dreams, 362

edict of, duration of, 480 n56

eight sins of (neglect of justice, idolatry, incest, bloodshed, blasphemy, arrogance, slander, obscenity), 562 n54

also committed by inhabitants of sinful cities, builders of Tower of Babel, Sennacherib, and Nebuchadnezzar, 562 n54

and Exodus

P. ordering magnates to ask pardon of Israelites, 540

of Exodus

identification of, 499 n104

falling dead when Moses tells

Name of God, 520 n155

fate of, 562 n54

drowning with army, 562 n54

only Egyptian not drowned in

Red Sea, 560, 562 n54

first, 192

names ascribed to, 193 n81

first to be attacked by frogs, 529 n181

flung from throne at roaring of Judah, 387

four advisors of (Jethro, Balaam, Job, Reuel), 471 n21, 497

hardening heart, 528, 529 n178, 530

caused by God, 531

having feast for birth of son, 361 and Hebrews

P. pursuing Hebrews in Exodus, 548-553

P. releasing Hebrews from bondage, 539

P. riding swiftest horse in pursuit of Hebrews, 558

P. trying to keep Hebrews from increasing, 466-467

plan of P. against Hebrews, 466 and Jacob

P. impressed by J., 398 n330

and Joseph

J. before P., 364-367

J. interpreting dreams of P., 365-367

Pharaoh (*cont.*)and Joseph (*cont.*)

J. prophesying birth and death of P.'s sons, 365

opposition of P.'s officials to J., 366, 367 n181

P. as one of two wicked men J. associated with, 579

P. persecuting Hebrews not same as P. at time of Joseph, 474 n29

P. setting J. over land, 366 keeping guard at portals of hell, 560, 562 n54

king of Nineveh, 414 n413, 560

liberated from Assyrians by Hezekiah, 1049

as magus, 528 n175

mortally wounded on trip to Goshen, 497-498

and Moses (*see also under* Moses: in Egypt)

P. going to M. to plead for end of plagues, 539

name, meaning of, 192-193

negative view of, 217 n192

never dying, 560

not heeding warning of plague of hail, 531

one of four kings claiming to be gods, 1039 n16

order of

all midwives to be Egyptian, 472

interpreters to be executed, 363 order rescinded, 364

Israelites not to sleep in own homes, 467

male children of Hebrews to be killed, 469

male children to be drowned, order rescinded, 478

palace of, description of, 518

participating in building, 467, 468 n7

punishment of

compared with punishment of Egyptians, 191 n76

concerning Sarah, 191 n75, 216 and Sarah, 189, 191 n80

son born to, 361

and story of Rakyon, 192 (*see also* Rakyon)

suffering death by fire, 1048 n60 summoning wise men, 483

to interpret dreams, 362

three advisors of (Balaam, Jethro, Job), 497

Pharaoh (*cont.*)

## throne of

customs pertaining to steps of, 364

having 70 steps, 364

precious stones and metals of, 364

at time of Exodus as ruler of

world, 162 n82 (*see also* Pharaoh: as cosmocrator)

at time of Joseph

had made acquaintance of Isaac, 396 n327

as ruler of world, 162 n82 (*see also* Pharaoh: as cosmocrator)

as title of all Egyptian kings, 422 n429

tortured by Gabriel for 50 days, 560

troops of, stricken with blindness and dumbness, 487

trying to restore health by murdering Israelite children, 497

withholding straw from brick making of Israelites, 520

Pharisees

permitting intercourse with heathen women, 781

tradition of belonging to tribe of Simeon, 410 n387

Pheila (second daughter of Kenaz), 859

Phenech

prince for descendants of Japheth, 160

Phicol (captain of Abimelech's host) at circumcision of Isaac, 218

Philistines

Abraham among, 216-218

battle of Samuel against, one of three occasions for war of confusion, 896 n42

breaking covenant made with Abraham, 260

character of, 261

Dagon as god of, 892

as enemies of Kenaz, 859 n15 and Isaac

covenant between, 263 n66, 293

Philistines envious of I.'s wealth, 260

punishment of Philistines for unkindness to I., 261

trees of Philistines failing to yield fruit when I. leaves, 261



Philistines (*cont.*)and Isaac (*cont.*)

- wells of Philistines running dry when I. leaves, 261
- land of, as part of Holy Land, 262 n53
- plague of mice on, 894 n34
- punishment of, 260
  - being smitten in secret parts, 894 n34
- seeking alliance with Abraham, 222-223
- struck with disease, 894 n34
- victory of, over Ephraimites at Gath, 547
- war with, blamed on sins of sons of Eli, 891-892
- wickedness of, 263 n67

## Philo

## on Abraham

- A. mourning for Sarah, 236 n259
- changing of names of Abram and Sarai, 203 n122
- conjugal relations of A. with Hagar, 203 n120
- faith of A., 199 n110
- hospitality of A., 206 n140
- reaction of A. to announcement of Isaac's conception, 207 n151
- warriors of A., 197 n93

## on Adam

- A. naming living creatures, 43 n190

## A. partly or wholly created by angels, 49 n3

## wisdom of A., 62 n29

## on Akedah, 228 n230, 233 n255

## on annihilation of Sihon's army, 753 n681

## on Balaam

- B. attempting to influence God, 775 n772

## insincerity of B., 769 n752

## Benjamin, name of, 319 n308

## on birds and fishes, relationship between, 21 n128

## on body being formed from fire, water, air, and earth, 608 n224

## on Cain and Abel, 105 n12, 105 n16

## on Canaan and Noah, 155 n61

## on circumcision, 249 n318

## on conditions before fall, 92 n113

## on conflagration of world, 116 n53

Philo (*cont.*)

## on creation

- of heavenly bodies, 25 n99
- order of, 7-8 n17
- on cursing of serpent, 78 n82
- on divine voice at Sinai, 604 n213
- division of commandments in, 619 n258
- on double account of creation of man, 67 n42
- on effects of holy oil, 917 n35
- on fishes, 43 n190
- on God of three patriarchs, 319 n304
- Hebrew midwives, names of, 470 n17

## ideas of

- human body consisting of four elements, 54 n15
- ideal man, 60 n22
- man as microcosm, 49 n4
- man created by lower powers, not by God, 52 n12
- man not made by hand, 49 n3
- man on boundary between mortal and immortal, 49 n6
- nothing but good emanates from God, 3 n9
- sinner regarded as dead while alive, 78 n72
- identifying Israel with Logos, 301 n253
- on identity of angels with souls, 16 n63
- on importance of seven, 8 n21
- on intelligence of heavenly bodies, 28 n112
- on Isaac and character of sons, 267 n75
- on Isaac's piety, 262 n62
- on Israel, meaning of name, 301 n253
- on Jacob's ladder, 279 n134
- on Jacob suspecting that Joseph was in Egypt, 372 n198
- on Joseph
  - angel meeting J. in wilderness, 334 n29
  - frugality of J.'s Sabbath meal, 381 n250
  - J.'s dream, 331 n17
  - J.'s kindness and wisdom, 361 n142
  - Pharaoh's perceptions about J., 366 n171
  - search of J.'s brothers' sacks, 383 n256
- on legend that Cain never died, 113 n44

Philo (*cont.*)

- on length of a man's life, 140 n19
- on manna, 574 n113

## on Moses

- blessings of M., 824 n920
- daughter of Pharaoh adopting M., 479 n48
- devotion of M. to nation and attempts to alleviate its suffering, 488 n70
- education of M., 484 n67
- M.'s self-discipline, 484 n68
- M.'s slowness of speech, 514 n140
- name of, 481 n59
- P. describing M. as high priest, 658 n372
- precocity of M., 481 n64
- question of whether or not M. died, 832 n951
- on music of spheres, 26 n102
- on night, 214 n170
- on Noah, 145 n28
  - naming of, 134 n4
- on oath taken by God, 232 n243
- on pillar of salt, 215 n180
- on place of residence of angels, 16 n63
- on plants, 21 n74
- presupposing identification of Midianites with Moabites, 793 n842
- on primordial light, 8 n19, 85 n104
- on punishment
  - of Egyptians for not protesting Pharaoh's desire for Sarah, 191 n75
  - of Sodomites, 215 n179
- on raven, 149 n46
- on revelation of Torah in wilderness, 595-596 n185
- on salamander, 40 n157
- on Samuel as greatest of kings and prophets, 897 n43
- on Sarah
  - beauty of, 191 n73
  - praying to God, 191 n73
- on seduction of Israel to idolatry and unchastity, 778 n785
- on seven branches of candlestick representing seven planets, 646 n339
- on significance of seven, 683 n430
- on Simeon
  - P. blaming S. for throwing Joseph into pit, 334 n41
- on smoking furnace, 200 n114



Philo (*cont.*)

- on Sodom, 210 n155
- on sons of Jacob, names of, 434 n4
- on souls of pious, 612 n241
- on spread of famine, 371-372 n197
- symbolic interpretation of priestly garments in, 650-651 n353
- on Tamar
  - P. giving idealized picture of T., 346 n82
- on time, origin of, 7 n14
- translating Elohim as "God's goodness," 3 n6

Phineas. *See* Phinehas

## Phinehas (prophet)

- identified with Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest, 860 n19

## Phinehas (son of Eleazar)

- as angel of God mentioned in Judg. 2:1, 997 n4
- attempting to punish Zimri and Cozbi, 780
- attempting to reconcile God and Israel, 782, 783
- attempting to ward off plague by slaying sinners, 781 n792
- and Balaam
  - P. flying after B., 796 n853
  - P. killing B., 796 n855
- blamed for not preventing war between Jephthah and Ephraimites, 877 n109
- and Caleb
  - accompanied on spy mission by two demons, husbands of she-devils Lilith and Mahlah, 843 (*see also* Lilith)
  - appearance of, transformed by demons, 843
  - conquering Jazer, 752
  - sent as spies to Jazer, 752
- as commander-in-chief of army, 798 n860
- death and burial of, 885 n140
- debating with Moses and pious men about Zimri, 781
- decree of, against wine of Gentiles, 784 n804
- descendant of Joseph and Jethro, 783, 794
- and Eleazar
  - E. passing on to P. applications of Holy Names, 615
- Eli as successor of, 891, 892 n25
- entering Paradise alive, 892 n25 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)

Phinehas (*cont.*)

- forbidding drinking wine of heathens, 798
- as forerunner of Messiah, 783
- grandson of Aaron, 783
- grandson of Elisheba, 661
- held responsible for the many who died in war with Benjaminites, 883-884 n134
- holy spirit departing from, 876
- identified with Elijah, 783, 860 n19, 885 n140, 892 n25, 993, 996 n3, 1000 n35
- image of, on Solomon's throne, 968
- and Jabez, prophets summoned by Kenaz, 859
- as Levite, slaying prince of tribe of Simeon and mistress, 821
- as messenger of God to Israel after death of Joshua, 861 n22
- one of 77 pious men in Israel, 629 n287 (*see also under* pious: men)
- one of ten just men in Israel, 628
- peace as reward for zeal of, 784 n804
- prayer of, concerning Benjaminites, 880-881
- as priest
  - P. appointed priest as reward, 783
  - P. as high priest
    - P. losing high-priestly dignity, 891
    - P. taking into battle gold plate of mitre of high priest, 794
    - rivalry of, with Jephthah, 876
  - P. becoming priest at same time as father and grandfather, 784 n802
  - P. granted everlasting priesthood, 783
  - P. summoned by Kenaz, 859
- rewarded, 782-784
- sent to mountain of Danabene at age of 120 years, 882
- slaying Cozbi, 794
- as spy, chosen by Joshua, 843
- sword of, legends concerning, 922 n59
- 12 miracles performed for, 781
- and war against Midian, 794
- zeal for God of, 715 n543, 779-782

## Phinehas (son of Eli)

- as high priest, 891
- as righteous man slain by Philistines, 223

## Phinehas-Elijah

- entering Paradise alive, 885 n140
- exercising high-priestly functions for several centuries, 892 n25

## Phoenician language

- used by Hamites, 158 n72

## Phoenicians

- learning art of writing from Hebrews, 484 n67
- teaching art of writing to Greeks, 484 n67

## phoenix

- on chariot of sun, 127 n60
- color and size of, 34
- dew as food of, 34
- excrement of, 34
- as flying creature, 34
- form of
  - having feet and tails of lion, 34
  - having heads of crocodile, 34
- in fourth heaven, 125
- as guardian of terrestrial sphere, 34
- manna as food of, 34
- as most wonderful of birds, 34
- name of, 39 n151
- refusing to eat fruit of tree of knowledge, 34
- and resurrection of dead, 39-40 n150
- rewarded with eternal life, 34
- in seventh heaven, 125
- See also malham; milham*

## phylacteries, 554

- command concerning, given to descendants of Abraham, 196
- of God, 632 n299
- Michal fulfilling commandment of, 940
- of Mordecai, 1178 n189
- not worn on Sabbath, 690
- significance of, 196
- tanning of hides for, 546
- physiognomy, book about
  - composed by Solomon, 977 n93

## pig

- associated with wine, 153, 155 n58

## pigeon

- sacrificed by Abraham, 198
- and sacrifice of Noah, 150

## Pi-hahiroth

- Israelites turning back to, 549
- place where Joseph hid one-third of wealth, 549
- site of sanctuary of Baal-zephon, 549
- See also* Pithom (city)



## pilgrimage

life of pious conceived as, 328 n1

## pilgrimage festivals

abolished by Jeroboam, 985 n17

priest raising curtain of Holy of Holies on, 644

three times a year, 766

*See also* Passover; Pentecost; Tabernacles, Feast of

## pillar(s)

of brick, made by descendants of Seth, 116

of cloud, 48

God appearing in, 612 n242, 700-701

guiding Israelites in wilderness, 542

over holy ark, 686

responding to word of Moses, 686

weapon of God against Pharaoh, 559

of cloud and fire

created in twilight, 82 n99 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)

one of six blessings of generation of wilderness, 86 n105

of earth, seven in number, 9 n28

(*variously* Aaron, Abraham, Adam, David, Enoch, Isaac, Jacob, Moses, Noah, Solomon)

personified as seven saints, 9 n28

of fire, 48

guiding Israelites in wilderness, 542

identified with angel, 555 n35  
lighting way for Sons of Moses, 1088

on mountain of Abraham's sacrifice, 227

at tomb of Ezekiel, 1094-1095  
weapon of God against Pharaoh, 559

of heavenly Temple, made from red fire, 503

made by descendants of Seth, 116

of Paradise, identical to celestial ladder of Konen, 69 n49

patriarchs as, 1101 n93

preceding Israelites leveling mountains, 750 n662

of salt, Lot's wife turned into, 213, 215 n180

set up by Jacob at Bethel, 316, 318

of smoke, between Paradise and gate of heaven, 68

pillar(s) (*cont.*)

of stone, made by descendants of Seth, 116

supporting world (Hananiah, Mishael, Azariah), 728 n590, 1099

12 memorials, erected by Moses on Mount Sinai, 598

## pious

Abel as type of, 109 n31

actions of, made known while in womb, 254 n13

and blessing

pious as blessing for world, 395

pious bringing blessing to those they visit, 291 n207

bodies of

flies not able to approach, 1028, 1028 n12

fragrance emanating from live and dead bodies of, 268 n92, 548 n2, 1028, 1028 n12

God being solicitous about, 429  
not showing signs of decay, 1095 n73

remaining intact one year after death, 807

canopy over heads of, made from hide of Leviathan, 30 n123

death of, 58 n20

as atoning, 664 n386

God communicating day of, 739

God glorified by, 664 n385

as great a calamity as destruction of Temple, 1087 n53

pious met by Michael and Gabriel at death, 430 n444

pious praising God when dead, 23 n97 (*see also* praise)

pious seeing God after death, 632 n296

radiance of glory seen on pious, at time of death, 635 n309

when dead

lacking faculty of speech, 430 n444

not able to intercede for living sinners, 871 n91

digging wells for water, 263 n68

distinguished from wicked by odor of dead bones, 339 n58

division of, into classes, 22 n85, 23 n97

efficaciousness of prayer of, 252

among Egyptians  
celebrating Passover with Israelites, 544 n246

pious (*cont.*)

among Egyptians (*cont.*)

proclaiming belief in true God, 544 n246

feeling like strangers in this world, 236 n260

food for

Behemoth as, 33, 33 n143

manna as, 573 n102, 574 n108

Ziz as, in world to come, 28-29

of future generations

merits of, Israel redeemed on account of, 499 (*see also* merits)

God counting Self among, 396 n321

God descending into hell to save, 508 n118

greater than angels, 17 n66

grieving over Israel's suffering, 23 n97

happiness of

often deferred, 282

pious enjoying happiness during last years of life, 399, 401 n344

hindered by Satan, 327

of Israel

worshiping golden calves, 1038 n4

law of God producing, 47-48

life of, conceived as pilgrimage, 328 n1

loath to have last rest among wicked, 401 n345

and manna

manna as food of pious in world to come, 573 n102, 574 n108

manna ground for, in third heaven, 570

pious finding manna at door of tent, 573 n102

pious to drink in hereafter from rivers formed by melted manna, 571

mark set on foreheads of, by angel, 1075 n26

as masters of their hearts (passions), 273 n109

men

custom of Amorites to delay burial of, 706 n509

each cultivating special virtue, 714



pious (*cont.*)

men (*cont.*)

enumerations of

four addressing unbecoming

words to God (Moses,

David, Habakkuk,

Jeremiah), 628 n284

five for sake of whose merits

Israel to be redeemed

(Aaron, Abraham, Isaac,

Jacob, Moses), 502

five pious from first to last

(Abraham, Moses, Aaron,

Hezekiah, Ezra), 1044 n39

(*see also* wicked men:

wicked from first to last)

six endowed with spiritual

gifts, descendants of Ruth

(David, Daniel, Hananiah,

Mishaël, Azariah, Messiah),

866 n61

seven erecting altars, 771 (*see*

*also* altars: erected by seven

pious men)

seven in world (Adam, Noah,

Enoch, Abraham, Isaac,

Jacob, Levi), 682, 968

seven preceding Abraham

(Adam, Enoch, Mahalalel,

Noah, Shem, Seth, Enosh),

116-117 n53, 256 n34

12 in time of Noah, 160, 161

n76

77 in Israel (70 members of

Sanhedrin, Aaron, Aaron's

four sons, Caleb, Phineas),

629 n287

honor of, prized by God, 767

and Jeremiah and Baruch com-

manded to leave Jerusalem,

1076 n28

merits of (*see also* merits)

protecting other men buried

with, 706-707 n509

moon as symbol of, 25 n100

Moses greater than all, 837-839

myrtle symbolic of, 1141

in mystic literature, 46 n194

names of, received from God, 203

n122

never relying on promises of

earthly good, 296

number of, in generations and

world, 211 n164

and Paradise

pious led into Paradise by

Michael and Gabriel, 430

n444

pious (*cont.*)

pilgrimages of

pious continuing pilgrimages

under Jeroboam, 985 n17

praise of God of, 850 n43

praying to God for redemption, 23

n97

punished for not having guided

wicked back to righteous-

ness, 1075 n26

purified in river of fire, 97 n134

rejuvenation of, 39 n150

riches of Joseph reserved for, 397

souls of

creation of, 7 n15

God consulting with, 57 n19

in immediate proximity of God,

611

in loftiest places, 612 n241

reading from Torah scroll copied

by Moses, 812

as sacrifices in heavenly Temple,

5

in seventh heaven, 6

standing before God like angels,

429-430

transformed into angels, 68, 122

n58

studying Torah under tree of life,

22 n85

suffering of

pious attributing suffering to

sins, 372 n198

pious not allowed to suffer more

than three days, 373, 1169

n153

pious suffering first, then happy,

399

taking great care not to squander

possessions, 300 n247

thrones of, 508 n118

in Paradise, made from precious

stones, 507

to dwell in palace of Hiram of Tyre

in future, 1105

treasures of ocean stored in Sea of

Chaifa for, 822

at well, 241 n288

wine preserved for, 21 n79

wishing to prove piety under temp-

tations, 352 n107

women

not included in curse pro-

nounced on Eve, 476

in world to come

future world set apart for pious,

327

light of first day appearing to

pious, 5

pious (*cont.*)

in world to come (*cont.*)

manna as food of pious, 573

n102, 574 n108

pious given wine, 268 n92

reward of pious postponed for

future world, 21 n77

310 worlds prepared for pious,

807

tree of life preserved for pious,

81 n96

Ziz as food for pious, 28-29

*See also* righteous

Pirathon (king of Hazor)

slain by Jacob, 314

Pirathon (place), 315 n292

Pisces (Fishes) (sign of Zodiac)

answering Haman that Jews would

be swallowed up, 1151

Pisgah, Mount

Balak taking Balaam to top of, 774

death of Moses on, 774

Moses looking at Holy Land from,

814

Moses' vision on

one of three outstanding

moments in life of M., 815

n902

place of misfortune for Israel, 774

*See also* Abarim, Mount; Hor,

Mount; Nebo, Mount

Pishon River

flowing from Paradise, 559

identified with Nile, 70 n51

sinner burned at, 856

pitch

rivers of, in hell, 13

Pithom (city)

earlier name of Pi-hahiroth, 549

evidence of ancient king partici-

pating in public building

project, 167

fortification of, 466-467

piyyut

for Great Sabbath, 557 n39

Place, the

as name of God, 279 n130

*See also* God: names and titles of

plague(s)

against Egypt

first

announced by Moses, 526

duration of, one week, 526

as punishment for worship of

Nile, 528 n176

second, frogs, 523-525, 527

third

gnats, 529 n183

lice, 529 n183



plagues (*cont.*)against Egypt (*cont.*)

fourth

killing children of Egyptians,  
534 n188, 534 n190as punishment for Egyptians  
trying to force Israelites to  
amalgamate with other  
nations, 530wild animals, 529-530, 533-  
534 n188

fifth

killing livestock of Egyptians,  
534 n190

pestilence, 530

sixth, boils, 530

seventh, hail, 531

eighth, locusts, 532

ninth, darkness, 532-533

tenth

destruction of Egyptian idols  
during, 537-538executed by God Himself,  
537, 538 n213Israelites sleeping during, 538  
n216night of, one of four nights  
inscribed in Book of  
Memorial, 541slaying of firstborn, 533, 536-  
538taking place exactly at mid-  
night, 537, 538 n213beginning on 1 Shevat, 528  
n174

brought by

Aaron, 526-529

Moses, 529-534

Moses and Aaron together,  
530connection with ten words of  
creation, 525 n170

divided into four parts, 523

duration of, 528 n174

one week, 528 n174

three weeks, 528 n174

one year, 526

ending on 15 Nisan, 528 n174

names of, engraved on rod of  
Moses, 554preceded by warning period,  
528 n176

of one week, 528 n174

of three weeks, 526, 528  
n174

at Red Sea, 557 n36, 559

number of, 557 n36

ten in number, 525

plagues (*cont.*)in Palestine during visit of spies,  
708 n511

upon Philistines, 892

as punishment

for adultery, 607

for census-taking, 936

for lack of enthusiasm for build-  
ing Temple, 937 n123, 937  
n124

of Zimri, 782 n798

*See also* Egypt; Exodus

## planets

corresponding to seven branches of  
candlestick, 639

each having own angel, 131 n61

function of, 131 n61

*See also* heavenly bodies; *see also*  
*under names of individual*  
*planets*plant-man. *See* Adne Sadeh; man of  
mountain

## plants

Adam plant deadly to anyone who  
comes near, 289 n189Adam praying to God to give food  
to, 69

created on third day, 18, 50 n7

hymns of praise of, 44 (*see also*  
praise)

as remedies for disease, 157

*See also* herbs; medicine; trees

## Plato

described as Moses speaking in  
Attic Greek, 484 n67receiving wisdom from Jeremiah  
and other Jewish sages, 159  
n75

## Platonic ideas

anamnesia, 58 n20

## Pleiades

Istehar in, 136

stealing two stars from Bear, 149  
n40

two stars removed from, 147

## plenitude

window of, in first heaven, 503

## poison

used by Bethuel on Eliezer, 240

## politeness, rule of, 701

## polypsychism, 56 n18

## pomegranates

golden, on Solomon's throne, 968

## poor

considered as dead, 517 n142 (*see*  
*also* blind; leprous; child-  
less)kindness to, causing one to retain  
Adam's features, 1104 n104poor (*cont.*)legends about, and Elijah and R.  
Joshua b. Levi, 1014studying Bible and Mishnah, in  
seventh compartment of  
Eden, 19

treatment of, in Sodom, 209

*See also* poverty

## portals

fire, earthquake, storm, hail, 600

## Posiel (angel)

in charge of sixth division of hell,  
884 n138

## possessions

acquired by Jacob outside Holy  
Land, 304, 306 n274

## Potiphar

called Potiphera, 350, 351 n100

chief baker of

accused of dereliction of duty,  
360

executed, 361

guilty of gross negligence, 361  
n143

chief butler and chief baker of

condemned to death, 360

having dream, 360

in prison for ten years, 360

chief butler of

accused of dereliction of duty,  
360failing to remember to intercede  
for Joseph, 362guilt of, not as great as that of  
chief baker, 361 n143

restored to butlership, 361

as eunuch, chief, 350, 351 n101

made eunuch as punishment for  
evil intentions toward  
Joseph, 351 n101

and Joseph

enmity of P. to J., 411 n400

P. blessed on account of J., 1027  
n6P. buying J. from Medanites,  
339

P. interrogating J., 350

P. interrogating shopkeeper  
about J., 349P. as one of two wicked men J.  
associated with, 579P. put in prison for life by J.,  
351 n101

P. putting J. in prison, 350

wife of P., and J., 328, 349

## Potiphera

Joseph's father-in-law, 351 n100

Potiphar identified with, 351 n100



## potter

God compared to, 444

## poverty

as most precious gift of God to Israel, 1012 n76 (*see also* gifts)

window of, in first heaven, 503  
worse than pain, 453

*See also* poor

## praise

David singing song of, 755

hymns of

of all creation, 44-45

in Christian legends, 46 n194

Methuselah composing parables of, 131

song of, at Red Sea

composed by Moses and sung by Israel, 750 n663

*See also* Holy, holy, holy

## prayer(s)

of Abimelech for Abraham, 217

of Abraham in Egypt, 189-190

afternoon, instituted by Isaac, 1128 n58

and alms and repentance

warding off evil, 1052 n75

daily (*see* prayers, Jewish)

of dead, 1013 n84

efficaciousness of, 253 n10

Elijah imparting to R. Jose regulations concerning, 1012 n76

of Hagar to God and idols, 220

having power to ward off half of punishment decreed by God, 730 n599

of Isaac on Mount Moriah, accompanied by sacrifice, 253 n8

of Ishmael, 220

of Michael and Abraham, 247

of Mordecai, 1160, 1161 n123, 1161 n124

of Moses

concerning successor, 787-788

for Israel, 628, 628 n284

saving only two of Aaron's sons, 730 n599

during war of Joshua against Amalek, 581

in wilderness, 551

of pious, efficaciousness of, 252

place of Isaac's, 242 n300

and repentance

to bring about Messianic

redemption of Israel, 1013 n84

before retiring at night, 401 n356

prayer(s) (*cont.*)

of Sarah in Egypt, 190

superiority of, to sacrifices, 888 n5

taking place of sacrifice, 200 n111

taught by Abraham, 224 n224

of thanks after eating manna, 573

window of, in first heaven, 503

*See also* offering; prayers, Jewish; sacrifice

Prayer of Joseph (lost pseudepigraphic work), 256 n35

account of Jacob's encounter with angel in, 306 n273

Prayer of Manasseh, 1058 n107

## prayers, Jewish

Abraham's name mentioned in blessings, 187

Adonai Elohe Yisrael, composed by Hezekiah, 1128 n58

Akedah referred to, in Zikronot in Musaf for New Year, 228 n229

Alenu, composed by Joshua, 853 n50, 1079, 1128 n58

Al Ken Nekavveh Lekha, composed by Joshua, 1128 n58

## Amidah

first benediction of, 1161 n123

Moses as author of, 1128 n58

and prayer of Mordecai, 1160, 1161 n124

## daily

afternoon, instituted by Isaac, 1128 n58

evening, instituted by Jacob, 1128 n58

instituted by Moses, 1128 n58

instituted by patriarchs, 1128 n58

morning, instituted by

Abraham, 1128 n58

quorum of ten required for, 919 n50

100 benedictions of, instituted by David, 937 n123

doxologies of angels, formulas in, 17 n70

expression "God, shield of David" used in benediction after reading Haftarah, 931 n94

Grace after Meals, 370 n195, 853 n50 (*see also* Grace after Meals)

benediction added to, by David, 1128 n58

composed by Moses, 1128 n58

and prayer of Abraham, 224 n224

prayers, Jewish (*cont.*)

Hallel, sung on eve of Passover, 264 (*see also* Hallel; Passover)

Hashkivenu, 1128 n58

Havdalah, recited at end of

Sabbath, 724 n573

Hodu psalm (Psalm 136)

recited by Mordecai, 1176 n172

Kedushah, recited by Israel only on Sabbath, 1043 n36

## Kiddush

benedictions for, formulated by men of Great Synagogue, 1128 n58

## at midnight

first found in mystic literature of Middle Ages, 929 n83

Minhah service (*see also* Minhah service)

ḥayyot taking place of four archangels in, 687 n440

introduced by Isaac, 240

as most acceptable to God, 998 n18

to be said at three o'clock in afternoon, 240

Musaf service of New Moon celebration, 1010

Seliḥah and prayer of Jonah, 1033 n32

Shema (*see also* Shema)

recited by Israelites upon awakening and retiring, 775

recited by Jacob when Joseph embraced him, 394

Shokhen Ad, composed by Isaac, 1128 n58

Yisṭabbah, composed by

Solomon, 1128 n58

Yotzer (daily morning prayer), 2 n6  
instituted by Abraham, 1128 n58

*See also* Amidah; Eighteen Benedictions

## precious stones

on altar of celestial heaven, graven with name of Messiah, 1

book about, composed by Solomon, 977 n93

on breastplate of Aaron, 342, 650  
engraved with names of patriarchs and 12 tribes, 650

qualities of, 651-653

12 in number, 650

on breastplate of high priest  
colors of, used on four standards, 685-686



precious stones (*cont.*)

- on breastplate of high priest (*cont.*)
  - indicating guilt, 898, 902 n57
  - making Urim and Thummim
  - perform functions, 652
  - oracular importance of, 652

in bridal chamber of Adam and Eve, 66

engraved with names of 12 tribes, 856

on ephod of Aaron
 

- engraved with names of six tribes, 650

on ephod of Pharaoh, 364  
generative power of, 647 n342  
from Havilah

- ability of, to restore sight, 856
- idols of Amorites made from, 856

intended for Temple

- discovered by scribe Hilkiah and delivered to angel Shamshiel, 1091

around neck of Abraham, healing power of, 237

presented by Pharaoh to chieftains of army, 552 n17

raining down with manna, 650  
as seat of Nimrod on his throne, 162

on 70 thrones in Paradise, 507

on Solomon's throne, 968

in story of R. Hanina, 114-115  
for Tabernacle

- etched by clouds from river Pishon, 655 n365

- one of 13 materials for construction, 640 (*see also under* Tabernacle)

tears of Michael becoming, 245  
thrones made from, for pious, 507

to be set in ephod and in breastplate, 640

to be used in Messianic time, 1013 n90

to take place of sun in Messianic time, 1011-1012

used to make idols, 117  
on wheel of sun, 237

*See also* jewel(s); jewelry; *and under individual stones*

## predestination

- of intellectual and other traits of man, 57 n20

## pride

- causing impurity, 1016 n95
- mitre of Aaron atoning for, 650

pride (*cont.*)

- one of eight grievous sins of Sennacherib, 1048 n60
- one of 13 sins punished by leprosy, 675 (*see also* leprosy)
- unbecoming to women, 870 n75

## priest(s)

- Aaron and sons consecrated as, on 23 Adar, 657

anointed

- Aaron and sons and Zadok as only ones, 658 n371
- burned at stake at destruction of Temple, 80,000 in number, 1107 n108

consecration of, 657-658

- Aaron and sons, on 23 Adar, 657

- of Egypt, favorable position of, 398

- gifts of, received by Aaron on first day of dedication of Tabernacle, 673

- Israel as kingdom of, 598 n191
- of justice, Messiah as, 100 n142

- large number killed by Nebuzaradan, 1078 n30

and Levites, institution of

- one of six gifts to Israel from God, 584 (*see also* gifts)
- priests taking place of Levites as bearers of ark, 843

- one of three divisions of Israel, 592

- permitted to remain in possession of land, 397

- of righteousness, one of four Messiahs, 1021 n105

- robes of, 649-651

- tribute for imposed on people by Moses, 720-721

- 24 gifts as, 285, 783

## priesthood

- of all firstborn males before erection of Tabernacle, 265

- belonging to Aaron and his descendants, 509

- blessing of, bestowed on Levi, 437

- crown of, one of three Israel received from God, 670 (*see also* crown[s])

- garments of, in second vision of Levi, 438

- given to Israelites unconditionally, 590-591 n173 (*see also* gifts)

priesthood (*cont.*)

- and Levites, institution of
  - one of six gifts as reward for observance of Sabbath, 572 (*see also* gifts; Sabbath: observance of)

- one of crowns of Abraham, 188 n57

- one of four horns in four corners of Tabernacle, 648 (*see also* horn)

- taught to Abraham by Melchizedek, 196
- usurpation of, punished by death by celestial fire, 1042 n30

priestly garments, 268 n89. *See also* Aaron: and priesthood, priestly clothing of

## priestly gifts

- symbolic explanation of, 784 n801

## priestly service

- and birthright, 258
- of firstborn, 268 n89
- garments for, 268 n89

## primogeniture

- Isaac invested with right of, 244 n316

*See also* birthright; firstborn; inheritance

## prince of darkness

- as angel of death (i.e., Satan), 11 n41

- created by God, 11 n41

*See also* angel(s): types

## prince of earth

- Satan as, 21 n75 (*see also* Satan)

## prince of face

- Metatron-Enoch as, 128 n60

## prince of shades

- Raphael (archangel) as, 53 n13

## prince of world, 1049

- angel in charge of world, 21 n75
- exclamation of, 18

- Metatron as, 1052 n69

- not identified with prince of earth, 21 n75

## princes

- assisting Messiah, 100 n142

- dedication offerings of, 665-673

## eight

- called Messiahs, 100 n142

- as great men of New Covenant, 100 n142

## gifts of

- bringing gifts after people, 664
- providing jewels for robes of high priest, 664

- providing wagons for transportation of Tabernacle, 664-665



princes (*cont.*)

## gifts of

symbolic explanations of, 673  
n403

for Tabernacle, 664-673

seven, assisting Messiah, 100 n142  
of tribes (*see also under individual tribes*)

names of, 681 n424

## Procrustes

story about bed of, 210 n155

## Prometheus

and Adam, 85 n104

## promise

of God to Jacob

in dream, concerning land, 277  
land on which he lay would  
belong to him and descend-  
ants, 400

of unbounded possession, 277

*See also* covenant(s)

## promised land

Canaan as, 187

census of Israel at distribution of,  
636

death of Amram in, 548 n10

divided among tribes according to  
their numbers, 784

division of, 786 n808

Israelites entering, 842-845

*See also* Holy Land; Israel; Moses;  
Palestine

## property

value of, 379

## prophecy

of Abraham concerning Isaac, 227

at birth of Serug, 167

concerning voice of Jacob, 266

drops of, 62 n30

about future of Israel, in dream of  
chief baker, 361

## gift of

all mothers endowed with, 254  
n15

exclusive possession of Israel  
after death of Moses, 453  
n3

received from God by Eldad and  
Medad, 697

remaining with wise, 1124 n36  
of Saul, 898

taken from prophets at destruc-  
tion of Temple and given  
to children and fools, 1124  
n36

withdrawn from heathens, 761

of God to Og, king of Bashan,  
219

prophecy (*cont.*)

holy spirit of, one of five sacred  
objects concealed by God  
at destruction of Temple,  
645

## spirit of

coming upon elders, 696

coming with joy, 391

departing from Israel at end of  
Persian period, 1128 n56

departure of, necessitating

canonization of holy

writings, 1128 n56

“fathers” and “mothers”

endowed with, 263 n72

unconscious, 334 n25

## prophet(s)

able to suspend but not abrogate  
law, 997 n113

Balaam as, 760

confirming prophecies uttered by  
Moses, 612 n242

crowns and embellishments of

Hebrew letters transmitted  
to, by Jehoiada, 892 n24

David as, 501 n109

during Elijah's time

60 myriads in number, 1026 n1

false, 1106-1107

of Bethel, 983-984 n8

causing sun and moon to stand  
still, 873 n93

## first

Gad and Nathan, 915 n24

identification of, 652 n358

Jeremiah and Baruch, 915 n24

Samuel and David, 915 n24

joyful mood necessary for, 372  
n198

of Judah, 983 n8

killed by lion, 984 n8

living to old age, 423 n429

martyred (Hur, Shemaiah, Ahiah,  
Zechariah, Isaiah,  
Jeremiah), 1078 n30

as messengers of God's words, 611  
like Moses

Jeremiah as, 1070 n13

non-Jewish, 762 n727

not receiving revelations outside of  
Holy Land, 1032 n27

no two speaking same words, 988,  
989 n42

number of, 62 n30

one of three parts of Torah, 592

(*see also* Hagiographa;  
Pentateuch)

ordering of books of, 1041 n20

prophet(s) (*cont.*)

owing distinction to Israel, 717  
n550

postexilic, 8 in number (Joel,  
Amos, Zephaniah, Haggai,  
Zechariah, Malachi,  
Ezekiel, Jeremiah), 991  
n56

qualifications of, 635 n306

wealth, strength, humility, and  
wisdom, 633

Rahab as ancestress of, 843

receiving divine communications  
in Aramaic, 612 n242

and sage, link between, 1126

Samuel as, 501 n109

of Scripture, 48 in number, 1026  
n1

as seventh-month children, 890  
n13

three great, 1039-1043

wealth of, 1032

wise men greater than, 1124 n36

## prophetess(es)

mothers as, 271

Rachel as, 288, 289 n201

Rebekah as, 263 n69, 268 n81,  
271

of Scripture, 7 in number, 1026 n1

prophetic gift. *See* prophecy: gift of  
prophetic spirit. *See* prophecy: spirit  
of

Prophets, Minor. *See* Minor Prophets  
proselyte(s)

Abraham as father of, 203 n122

attracting by kindness, 585 n154  
called “God-fearing men,” 1027  
n6

circumcision and, 219 n205

as descendants of those whom  
Sarah nursed, 218

having no claim on property in  
Holy Land, 589

and Israelites

dispute between, about offer-  
ings, 717

laws pertaining to, 865 n44

none admitted into Jewish fold  
during time of David and  
Solomon, 937 n117

in Paradise

in first division of, 19

hall of glass for, 23 n97

thrones for righteous proselytes  
made from silver, 507

praise of, 936 n112

sons of Sennacherib becoming,  
1046



proselyte(s) (*cont.*)

ten rulers becoming (Hiram, Ebed-melech, Antoninus, Talmi, Monoaz, Tobai, Bolan, Bithiah, Helena, Beruria), 1093 n66

## proverb(s)

about child and piece of bread, 749, 750 n662  
 about child taking after mother's brothers, 883 n130  
 about city and Abba Kolon, 948 n11  
 about dinner of herbs where love is, 975  
 about flattery and king, 947  
 about hearing not like seeing, 598 n191  
 inscribed on doors of magnificent building, 972  
 about mercy and justice, 805  
 about moving slowly, 972  
 about ox and slaughtering knives, 1175, 1177 n182  
 about pious and wicked, 770  
 about pious deeds, 799  
 about pride and destruction, 769  
 about raven and crow, 283  
 about rope and water bucket, 383, 384 n264, 385, 386, 387 n274  
 about snake and rope, 262 n55  
 of Solomon  
   800 in number, 950  
   3,000 in Scripture's counting, 950  
 about stone cast into well, 794  
 about thief and receiver, 701, 702 n493  
 about throwing stick, 778, 779 n786  
 about time and death, 972  
 about trouble being sufficient for day, 510, 511 n127  
 about vanity of all earthly things, 972  
 about vine and humility, 406 n376  
 about weasel and cat, 759  
 about wheat, 238  
 about wicked and neighbor, 719, 720 n563  
 about wicked never doing good deed completely, 1147 n92  
 about wisdom and gold, 953  
 about wise and foolish, 1032 n25

## Proverbs, Book of

cantillation of, 463 n39

Proverbs, Book of (*cont.*)

Hezekiah and associates as editors of, 1071 n15  
 Hezekiah having copies made of, 1051  
 not always in harmony with Book of Psalms, 955 n24  
 Solomon as author of, 977 n93

## psalm(s)

composed by David fleeing from Absalom, 933 n100  
 composition of, 930 n84  
 recited by Jacob every night with Laban, 277

## Psalms, Book of

cantillation of, 463 n39  
 of David, 823  
 not always in harmony with Book of Proverbs, 955 n24

## Psalm 22

in prayer of Esther, 1166, 1167, 1168 n145

## Psalm 30

composed by Solomon, according to Haggadah, 564 n59

## Psalm 110, as reference to

Abraham, 197 n95  
 Hezekiah, 197 n95

Psalm 136 (*see also* prayers, Jewish)

Hodu psalm, recited by Mordecai, 1176 n172

Psalter. *See* Psalms, Book of  
 pseudepigraphic literature

Christian interpolations in, ix  
 and Christians, viii  
 classes of angels found in, 17 n65  
 and early Church, ix-x  
 extent of, ix  
 and Haggadah, viii  
 heavenly Jerusalem in, 280 n141  
 and idea that

  demons are descendants of fallen angels, 82 n98

  world created for Israel, 50 n8

## importance of, ix

Joseph given title "pious one" in, 328 n3

on Leviathan-Behemoth legends, 31 n127

## and sectaries, viii

as source of Jewish legendary material, ix

## and Synagogue, ix-x

Synagogue's disavowal of, viii

## Pseudo-Philo

address by Deborah in, 870 n78  
 censure of Gideon in, 874 n101  
 on Deborah, 873 n92

Pseudo-Philo (*cont.*)

on Elkanah, 888 n3  
 on Hannah, 888 n7  
 on Jael, 871 n85  
 on judges, 861 n22, 869 n70, 869 n71  
 on Kenaz and judges, 859 n15, 859 n16, 859 n17, 860 n19, 860 n20  
 legend about Samuel in, 890 n17  
 on merits of fathers, 871 n91  
 on Philistines and ark, 894 n34  
 on Phinehas identified with Elijah, 885 n140  
 on Samson, 879 n111, 879 n115  
 on sin of Benjaminites, 883 n134  
 on Sisera's army, 870 n80  
 spelling of names in, 860 n21  
 story of call of Samuel in, 895-896 n40  
 story of witch of En-dor in, 904 n77  
 words of rebuke of Eli to sons in, 893 n27

## Psychopomp

Elijah as, 996

## Ptolemy of Egypt

commanded Septuagint to be prepared, 1093 n66

Puah (Hebrew midwife), 469 (*see also*

Jochebed; Miriam; Shiphrah)

## identified with

  Elisheba, wife of Aaron and daughter-in-law of Jochebed, 470 n17

  Miriam, 469, 470 n17

name, meaning of, 470 n17

## Puah (son of Issachar)

name, meaning of, 433

## Pul

one of eight other names of Sennacherib, 1054 n92

## punishment(s)

of Cain, seven in number, 450

capital, methods of

  decapitation, 626

  drinking from ocean, 626

  by plague, 626 n279

  by water, 626 n279

death by fire, for daughter of high priest who leads unchaste life, 345

Divine, averted through penitence, 768

entirely ward off by repentance, 730 n599

gout as, 985



punishment(s) (*cont.*)

- leprosy (*see* leprosy)
- one-half of, warded off by prayer, 730 n599
- after revelation of Torah, meted out according to merits, 599 n196
- before revelation of Torah, visited upon all, 599 n196
- of sinners, 625-627
  - through unclean spirits, 157
- visited on fourth generation, 605
- for worship of golden calf
  - lips becoming closed, 626 n279
  - three forms of (execution by Levites, death by water, death by plague), 626 n281
  - tongue cut off by water, 626 n279
- Punon
  - Israelites punished by serpents at, 749
- Pure Brethren
  - writings of, 45 n194
- purification
  - laws of, 797-798
  - ritual, and Abraham, 204, 205
  - of warriors before war, 583 n145
  - See also* ablution
- Purim, Feast of
  - as celebration of fall of Haman, 1179
  - introduced by men of Great Synagogue, 1128 n56
  - origin of, 1179-1180
- purple
  - dye, obtained from murex snail, 377
  - See also under* color(s)
- Put
  - as builder of Tower of Babel, 164 n88
  - one of seven sinners, 856, 857 n9
- Putiel
  - maternal grandfather of Phineas, 784 n800
  - as one of seven names of Jethro, 493
  - as other name for Jethro or Joseph, 784 n800
- putrefaction
  - of dead, 58 n20
  - and spontaneous generation of animals, 42 n190
- Pythagoras
  - Ezekiel as teacher of, 1102 n94
- Pythagorean doctrines
  - music of spheres, 26 n102

## Q

- quail, 699-700
  - episode of, at Elim, 568 n86
  - as gift to Israel, 591
  - kinds of, 574-575 n116
  - miraculous appearance of, 573
- queen(s)
  - among heathens, two in number (Semiramis, Vashti), 990 n51
  - in Jewish history, two in number (Athaliah, Jezebel), 990
- Queen of Sheba, 958-962
  - Arabic legend of, 961 n40
  - burial of, in Palmyra, 964 n53
  - descended from Abraham and concubines, 1073 n21
  - as female demon, 458 n20, 965 n55
  - as great witch, 458 n20
  - having hair on feet, 959
  - having hair on legs, 961 n40
  - as queen of Egypt and Ethiopia, 962 n47
  - raiding Job, 458 n21
  - ruler of Kitor, according to legend of hoopoe, 958-959
- and Solomon
  - asking S. how to withstand three enchantments of snakes, 796
  - burial of Q. by S., 964 n53
  - letter of S. to Q., 959
  - Q. marrying S., 961 n40
  - Q. posing riddles to S., 955, 959-961
  - Q. sending gifts to S., 959
  - as sorceress, 963-964

## R

- Raah
  - star in Egyptian prophecies, 623
- Raamses (city), 371
  - fortifications of, 466, 467
- Jacob giving blessings at, 406
- Rabbah of children of Ammon
  - city captured by Joab, 926 n77
- Rabbanites
  - lack of reverence of, for heroes of Israel, 897 n43
  - ridiculed by Karaites, 270 n100
- Rabba-yakkira
  - one of eight other names of Sennacherib, 1054 n92
- Rabbi Johanan. *See* Johanan b. Zakkai, R.

## rabbinic literature

- Abraham never called Abram in, 256 n35
- Amoraic sources of, frequently using Edom for Rome, 254 n19
- Amoraim on Abraham's observance of law, 239 n272
- angelology of Babylonian Talmud, 137 n10
- classes of angels found in, 17 n65
- division of world according to, 10 n33
- fourth plague in, 534 n188
- hell reserved for heathen in, 508 n118
- and idea
  - that thrones in Paradise reserved for time after resurrection, 508 n118
  - that world created for sake of Abraham, Moses, David, Messiah, 50 n8
- identification of Esau with Rome and swine in, 284 n162
- Joseph given title "pious one" in, 328 n3
- Moses spoken of as "Moses our master" in, 484 n68
- as point of departure for Jewish legendary material, ix-x
- popular character of, vii
- seven clouds of glory in, 543 n241
- stating that fall of Jericho took place on Sabbath, 846 n22
- tannaitic sources rarely using Edom for Rome, 254 n19
- See also* Amoraic sources; Hagga-dah; Halakhah; Kabbalah; Midrash; Mishnah; tannaitic literature
- Rabdos
  - houndlike spirit, coming before Solomon, 963
- Rabshakeh (son of Hezekiah), 1056 n94
  - advisor to Sennacherib, 1047 n54
  - as apostate, 1056 n94
  - killed falling from Hezekiah's shoulders, 1054
- Raccia
  - site of synagogue founded by Ezra, 1123
- Rachel (daughter of Laban)
  - age of, at death, 36 years, 318
  - 45 years, 319 n307



Rachel (*cont.*)

barrenness of, 285-286, 289 n202, 327  
 for 14 years after marriage, 288 n176  
 beauty of, 283  
 bowing before Esau, 305 n262  
 burial of  
   in Ephrath, 318, 337  
   immediately after death, 319 n310  
   tomb of, 319 n310  
   on way, so that she could intercede for exiles, 318, 403  
 daughter of Laban and Adinah, 262, 278  
 death of  
   attributed to sin of Jacob, 317 n293  
   giving birth to Benjamin, 293, 318, 449  
   premature, as punishment for stealing teraphim, 293  
   R. having presentiment of premature death, 288 n178  
   R. speaking to Joseph from grave, 338  
   at time of death of Laban, as punishment for breaking covenant with Jacob, 319 n307  
 descendants of, bringing victory to Israel against Amalekites, 580 n142  
 Eben Shetiyyah as metaphor for likeness of, 358 n124  
 God promising to lead Israel back for sake of, 1080  
 and Jacob  
   J.'s love for R., 282  
   J. weeping after kissing R., 281  
   R. as wife of J., 283  
   R. giving Bilhah to J., 286  
   R. to give sign to J. on wedding night, 282, 282 n159  
 jealousy of, 285, 288 n176  
 and Leah  
   R.'s envy of L., 65, 285  
   R.'s kindness to L., 289-290 n202  
   R. telling L. sign to deceive Jacob on wedding night, 289-290 n202  
 naming son of Bilhah Dan, 286  
 one of four mothers, 434 n3 (*see also* Leah; Rebekah; Sarah)  
 one of four women of perfect beauty, 941 n132

Rachel (*cont.*)

one of seven sterile women who bore children, 878 n111  
 one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271  
 pleading for Israel, 1081 n39  
 pleading with God for Israel, 1080  
 as prophetess, 288, 288 n178, 289 n201  
 punishment of, for letting Jacob go to Leah, 287  
 sons of  
   Benjamin, 288, 305 n262  
   Joseph, 287-288  
   R. granted son on New Year's Day, 287  
   two in number, 327  
 stealing teraphim of Laban, 291, 294 n220, 294 n224  
 suffering of, in giving birth to Joseph, 327  
 supervising one of seven classes of women, 23 n97  
 tending sheep of Laban, 278  
 to marry younger of Rebekah's sons, 283  
 tribes of  
   Haman not able to prevail against descendant of, 1177 n175  
   12 in number, 288  
   in women's Paradise, 940  
 Rachel (daughter of Shuthelah)  
   story of birth of child at time of Exodus, 541  
 Raguil (angel)  
   bringing Enoch to heavens, 126  
 Rahab (angel)  
   angel of sea, 18, 142  
   drowned with Egyptians in Red Sea, 557  
   chief of waters, 142  
   God's strife with, 20 n73  
   identified with Leviathan and angel of death, 20 n73  
   as prince of Egypt, 558 n42  
   punishment of, 18  
   rebellng at creation of world, 18  
   *See also* angel(s), general: types; Leviathan  
 Rahab (woman)  
   ancestress of  
     eight priests (Jeremiah, Hilkiah, Shallum, Hanamel, Baruch, Neriah, Mahseiah, Seraiah), 1093 n65  
     eight prophets and of prophetess Huldah, 843

Rahab (*cont.*)

ancestress of (*cont.*)  
   prophets and priests, 1070 n10  
 beauty of, 60 n24  
   R. as one of four most beautiful women in history, 940  
 descendants of, seven kings and eight prophets, 844 n12  
 escaping fate of inhabitants of Jericho, 847 n22  
 as illustration of effect of repentance, 844 n12  
 living immoral life for 40 years, 843, 844 n12  
 oath of two spies to, 847 n22  
 one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271  
 receiving from Zerah line bound to her window, 345  
 wife of Joshua, 843  
 Rahtiel (angel)  
   angel of constellations, prostrating before Metatron, 130  
 Raḥum (the Merciful)  
   as name of God, 3-4  
   *See also* God: names and titles of  
 rain  
   as consort of earth, 21 n74  
   drops of, directed by God, 452, 453 n6  
   of flood, passing through Gehenna, 144  
   formation of, 21 n74, 69, 70 n52  
   hot, 144  
   as part of blessing of Jacob, 266  
   quantity for year fixed on last day of Tabernacles, 268 n83  
   as tears, 20 n73  
   windows of, in first heaven, 503  
 rainbow  
   created in twilight between sixth day and Sabbath, 78 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)  
   first visible in Noah's days, 152 n55  
   and question to R. Joshua b. Levi, 1013 n92  
   as reflection of God's majesty, 152 n55  
   as sign that God has laid aside His weapon, the bow, 152 n55  
   *See also* bow  
 Rakyon (Have-naught)  
   legend of, with King Ashwerosh, Arabic origin of, 192-193, 193 n81



## ram(s)

as burnt offering in place of Isaac, 230  
 coming to life again after sacrificed for Isaac, 232 n246  
 of dedication offering, corresponding to princes of tribes, 671  
 horn of (*see also* instruments, musical; shofar; trumpet[s])  
   blown at end of revelation on Mount Sinai, 230  
   blown on New Year, 231, 232 n248, 235 n256  
   to be blown at end of exile, 230  
 of peace offering, corresponding to 60 myriads of Israel's fighting hosts, 672  
 representing rule of Ishmael, 198  
 sacrificed by Abraham, 88 n108, 198  
   created in twilight, 82 n99 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)  
   strings of David's harp made from gut of, 927  
   three in number, 198  
 Sammael, angel of death, taking form of, in Islamic legend, 307 n275  
 sign of Zodiac (*see also* Aries; heavenly bodies; Zodiac)  
   constellation worshiped by Egyptians, 395  
 sinews of, made into harp strings by David, 230  
 skin of  
   made into girdle for Elijah, 230  
   one of 13 materials for construction of Tabernacle, 640 (*see also under* Tabernacle)  
   in Tabernacle, dyed red, symbolizing Rome, 640  
 of three years, symbolizing Medo-Persian power, 198  
 and wolf, legend of, 303  
 worshiped by people of Hamath, 1044  
 worshiped in Egypt, 535  
 Ramael (angel)  
   as destroyer of Assyrians, 1047 n55  
 Ramathaim-Zophim  
   haggadic interpretations of, 888 n1  
 Ramiel (archangel)  
   angel of thunder, prostrating before Metatron, 120 n57, 130

## Ramirat (demon)

carrying out orders of Solomon, 971  
 Ramoth Gilead  
   Ahab slain in, 988, 989 n42  
 rapacity  
   sin that hastened flood, 139  
 rape  
   one of five crimes of Esau on day of Abraham's death, 257  
 Raphael (archangel)  
   and Abraham  
     R. appearing to A. after circumcision, 204  
     R. healing A., 204  
   as angel in charge of sun, 131 n61  
   as angel of healing, 52, 337 n52  
     curing Jacob of injury inflicted by Michael, 299  
     healing wound of Abraham, 204  
   as angel who clothed Joseph, 337 n52  
   as leader of most exalted rank of angels, 13  
 name  
   changed from Labbiel, 52  
   meaning of  
     derived from *refaim* ("shades"), 53 n13  
     "God heals," 685  
   one of four angels surrounding Divine Throne, 685  
   as prince of shades, 53 n13  
   and punishment of Azazel, 135  
   the Rescuer, 52  
   returning Book of Raziel to Adam after repentance, 90 n110  
   saving Lot, 207 n154  
   sent to banish unclean spirits, 157  
   substituting for Gabriel, 337 n52  
   as teacher of Jacob in Kabbalah, 505 n117  
 Rashiel (angel)  
   angel of whirlwind, prostrating before Metatron, 130  
 rational explanations  
   of wonders in battle against Sisera, 870 n81  
 raven, 149 n46  
   able to foresee future, 149 n46  
   bringing food from Jehoshaphat to Elijah, 994  
   and burial of Abel, 108  
   ceasing to despoil earth, 184 n49  
   changing appearance on Noah's ark, 37  
   and crow, proverb about, 283

raven (*cont.*)

cursed by Noah for not observing sexual abstinence, 41 n177, 41 n178, 151, 152 n54  
 destined to bring food for Elijah, 149 n46  
 devouring seed, 167  
 gait of, 37  
 impregnated through mouth, 37, 41 n177  
 living immorally after leaving ark, 151-152 n51  
 not approaching house of Ahab, 994  
 not returning to ark, 150 n47  
 ordered to feed Elijah, 48  
 sent out by Noah, 148  
 use of meat of, 41 n175  
 Raziel, Book of, 89-91  
 and Adam  
   Book disappearing at death of, 142  
   Book given to A. by Raziel, 141  
   Book restored to A. by Rahab, 142  
   Book stolen from A. by angels and thrown into sea, 142  
   coming into possession of Seth after Adam's death, 90 n110  
   disappearing after fall, 90 n110  
   hidden by Enoch, 142  
   instructions in, for building ark, 143  
   R. Eleazar of worms as probable author of, 90 n110  
   returned to Adam by Raphael after repentance, 90 n110  
 Raziel (angel)  
   another name of Gallizur, 614  
   appearing to Adam with book, 90  
   arresting breath of hayyot, 614  
   functions of, in heaven, 614  
   revealing teachings of God, 614  
   as teacher of Adam in Kabbalah, 505 n117  
 Razuyal  
   theophorous name, 113 n42  
 Reaiah  
   one of five other names of Bezalel, meaning of ("to behold"), 642  
 Rebekah  
   admonished by Abraham to keep guard over Jacob, 255  
 age of  
   at death, 158 years, 318 n302  
   at marriage, 251, 253 n4



Rebekah (*cont.*)

barrenness of, 251, 327 (*see also* Rebekah: and Isaac, childlessness of)  
 because of injury of Esau, 254 n16  
 duration of, 253 n7  
 as result of curse by kin, 240  
 beauty of, 241 n290, 260  
 burial of  
   in Hebron, 98 n137  
   at night, 317  
 as counterpart of Sarah, 241  
 as daughter of  
   Bethuel, king of Haran, 239, 251  
   idolatrous priest, 267 n73  
 death of, 317  
   age at time of, 253 n4  
   before Deborah, 318 n302  
 descendants of, not free from cunning and deceit, 253 n5  
 descended from deceivers (*ramai*) or Arameans (*arami*), 253 n5  
 dream of, revealing Esau's murderous plans, 273 n109  
 gifts of Eliezer to, 240  
 injury of, 240, 242 n301  
 and Isaac  
   childlessness of, 251 (*see also* Rebekah: barrenness of)  
   due to both of them, 253 n8  
   duration of, 253 n7  
   I. pretending R. is sister, 260  
   marriage of, not entirely happy, 251  
 and Jacob  
   R. accompanying J. to Bethel, 316-317  
   R. giving J. maternal blessing, 262  
   R.'s love for J., 255  
   R. warning J. about Esau, 271-272, 295  
 learning from holy spirit that she would be mother of Esau, 240  
 merits of, one of five charms to protect Jacob, 300 n247 (*see also* merits)  
 no one to mourn for her, 317  
 one of four mothers, 434 n3 (*see also* Leah; Rachel; Sarah)  
 one of seven sterile women who bore children, 878 n111  
 one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271

Rebekah (*cont.*)

piety of  
   equal to piety of Isaac, 251-252  
 prayer of  
   efficaciousness of, 253 n10  
   in praise of God, 262  
   that God would not destroy all scholars, 254 n15  
 pregnancy of, difficulty of, 252  
 as prophetess, 254 n15, 263 n69, 271, 272, 273 n109, 273 n113  
 receiving revelation through Shem or other medium, 254 n18  
 saved from *jus primae noctis* by God, 241 n294  
 sister of Laban, 240, 251, 283  
 sons of, two in number, 283, 327  
 suffering of, in giving birth to Jacob, 327  
 supervising one of seven classes of women, 23 n97  
 to be mother of 12 tribes, 254 n16  
 weeping of, 273, 273 n113  
 in women's Paradise, 940  
 wooing of, 239-242  
 rebels  
   including members of all tribes except Levi, 720 n563  
 Rechab  
   sons of, legend about, similar to legend of Sons of Moses, 1089 n57  
 Rechabites  
   covenant with, that descendants would be members of Sanhedrin and teachers of Israel, 590  
   following practices of Jonadab, 590  
   rewarded by God, 590  
 red. *See under* color(s)  
 redeemer  
   Aaron as, 430 n434  
   of Israel  
     date of birth announced by astrologers, 471 n21  
     mark of, 516  
   Moses as, 430 n434  
   true, three signs of, 405  
   words of, 428  
 redemption  
   final, to take place on account of merits of Joseph, 328 n3  
   Israel swearing not to despair of, 1081 n39  
   Israel swearing not to divulge appointed time of, 1081 n39

redemption (*cont.*)

Messianic  
   part played by Moses in, 1081 n36  
   to be brought about by prayer and repentance, 1013 n84  
 repentance as necessary condition for, 1021 n106  
 revelation of secret of, one of seven wonders of Messiah, 1021  
 second, 433  
 time of, three Diasporas will return in, 1089 n56  
 red heifer  
   ashes of  
     kept forever, 676  
     taken into exile to Babylon, 677 n417  
     used for purification of Israel, 676  
   Messiah to furnish tenth one, 677 n417  
   number of, 677 n417  
   revelation concerning, 676  
   used for purification of sin, 733 n602  
   *See also* heifer(s)  
 Red Rome  
   allusion to identification of Rome with Edom, 641 n323  
 Red Sea  
   darkness at, 532, 534 n198  
   division of, 553-558  
     first of ten miracles connected with passage of Israelites, 555-556  
     as reward for piety of Joseph, 327, 330  
   Egyptians killed in, 540  
   Israel's turning from, one of ten temptations, 757 (*see also under* temptations)  
   miracles of water of, 555-556  
   not wanting to divide because Israelites had rebelled against God, 555 n30  
   passage through, 48, 555-558  
     rationalist explanation of, 557 n38  
     witnesses of, 556, 557 n39  
   refusing to obey Moses, 554  
   sweet waters of, 568 n79  
   ten miracles at, 557 n36  
 reem (wild ox)  
   description of, 146 n34  
   giant animal, 33, 39 n145  
   horns of, 445  
   mammoth beast, 913



*reem (cont.)*

- reproduction of, 33
- size of, 33, 39 n146
- too large for ark, 144

*See also* ox, wild

refuge, cities of. *See* cities: of refuge

Regoita ("rest")

- one of seven Jewish attendants of Esther, attending Esther on Sabbath, 1143

Regosar

- one of three sons of Evil-merodach, 1112 n2

Rehoboam (son of Solomon)

- afflicted with issue on account of David's curse of Joab, 946
- as king, 984 n9
- Naamah as mother of, 977 n89
- and Solomon
  - S. calling on R. to slay Joab, 947 n10

S.'s throne carried to Egypt during life of, 969

rejuvenation

- of pious, 39 n150

Renanim

- as celestial singer, 29
- identified with Bar Yokni, 32 n139
- name of Ziz, 29 (*see also* Ziz)

rending clothes

- father and brothers of Joseph, 361 n136

mourning for Jacob, 412

as sign of

anger, 339, 382

despair, 382

grief, 382

mourning, 340 (*see also under* mourning)

repentance

actions of, 1034

putting ashes on head, 424

wearing sackcloth, 318, 424

of Adam, 86-89

creation of, 1

denied to Eli's sons, 893 n27

fasting and, 318

most grievous sins forgiven on

account of, 735 n615

as necessary condition for final redemption, 1021 n106

and prayer

to bring about Messianic

redemption of Israel, 1013

n84

and prayer and alms, warding off

evil, 1052 n75

reaching Divine Throne, 505 n117

repentance (*cont.*)

of Reuben, 318

saving Manasseh, 1055

sinful cities given opportunity for, 212 n167

warding off entire punishment,

730 n599

window of, in first heaven, 503

*See also* penance; penitence

Rephaim

idol, 965 n56

name, meaning of, 137

as offspring of fallen angels and

Cainite women, 137

Rephidim (place)

lack of water at, one of ten temptations, 757 (*see also under* temptations)

war of Amalek during sojourn of Israelites in, 577-580

reptiles

created on sixth day, 77

hymns of praise of, 45 (*see also* praise)

*See also* salamander; serpent; shamir

resh (letter)

creation of world through, 3-4

as first letter in name of God

Rahum, the Merciful, 3-4

standing for

ra ("wicked"), 3

rasha ("evil"), 3

as third letter of name of Abraham,

on standard of tribe of

Ephraim, 686

*See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet

rest

and name of Noah, 134 n5

Rest of Words of Baruch (Paralipomena of Jeremiah), 1071

n15

resurrection

of animals, 232 n246

by Abraham, 198, 200 n113

of fourth plague, 530

of dead, 628

belief in

by Joseph, 579

reinforced by Ezekiel's reviving dead

dead raised by Ezekiel, praising God, 1103 n95

dead to rise in garments in

which buried, 900, 904

n77

denied by

Esau, 579

resurrection (*cont.*)

of dead (*cont.*)

denied by (*cont.*)

Job, 452

dew of, 994, 997 n12

resurrection to be brought

about through "dew of light," 92 n113

dialogue between Jacob and

Esau about, 257-258

doctrine of, 39 n150

doubt of, one of five crimes of

Esau on day of Abraham's

death, 257

from graves on Sabbath, festi-

vals, and new moons, 23

n97

promised to Adam, 97

on Sabbath, festivals, and new

moons, 23 n97

at second blast of Elijah on

trumpet in Messianic time, 1021

seven sounds of trumpet heard

at, 605 n214

those buried in Cave of

Machpelah to be raised

first, 236 n263

those buried in Holy Land to

rise before those buried in

other countries, 401 n345

time of, made known to

Abraham, 198

Reu (ancestor of Abraham), 167

Reuben

admonishing children to join

themselves to Levi, 435-436

afflicted with illness for seven

months as punishment,

435

age of, at death, 125 years, 436

angel of, to be rebuffed by angel of

Esau, 579

anger of, that Leah passed over in

favor of Bilhah after death

of Rachel, 318

birthright of

forfeited because of sin, 407

given to Joseph, 285

blessing of, by Jacob, 407

burial of, in Hebron in Double

Cave, 436 (*see also*

Machpelah: Cave of)

confession of, 345, 384 n263

death of, 436

descendants of, to include Hosea,

318



Reuben (*cont.*)

as firstborn of mother, 285, 403  
 first of  
   brothers to attempt to save Joseph, 332, 333  
   men to do penance, 318  
   sons of Jacob to die, 465 n2  
 forgiveness of sin of, 824 n921  
 God forgiving sin of, 820  
 good deed of, saving Joseph, 820  
 and Jacob  
   R. acting disrespectfully toward J., 318  
   R. censured by J. for sin, 410 n387  
   R. rebuked by J. in blessing, 819  
   R. trying to separate J. from Bilhah, 319 n312  
 and Joseph  
   R. as oldest son, responsible for J., 339  
   R. intending to save J. from pit, 332, 334 n36, 334 n41  
   R. not present when J. was sold, 339  
   R. preventing others from killing J., 334 n34  
   R. proposing to cast J. into pit, 332  
   R. rescuing J., 285  
 marriage of, to Elyoram, daughter of Canaanite Uzzi of Timnah, 347  
 name  
   inscribed on standard of tribe of Reuben, 686  
   meaning of ("see the normal man"), 285, 433  
 occupied with penance, praying, and studying Torah, 339  
 one of weak among sons of Jacob, 396 n324  
 penance of, 400  
   R. as example of penitent, 342 n60  
   R. rending clothes, 339  
   for seven years, 435  
   for sin against Jacob, 339  
   source of fifth of Eighteen Benedictions, 1126-1127  
 pronouncing curse against incest, 824 n921  
 in pseudepigraphic literature, 319 n312  
 reminding brothers of their sins, 373  
 significance of dedication offering of, 667

Reuben (*cont.*)

sin of  
   with Bilhah, 435, 820  
   against Jacob, 435  
 as standard-bearer, corresponding to Michael, 685  
 testament of, 435-436  
 tribe of  
   angry with Moses for bestowing honors on tribe of Judah, 720 n563  
   blessed by Moses, 820  
   confessing to burning sacrifices to idols, 855  
   elders from (Hanoch, Carmi, Pallu, Zaccur, Eliab, Nemuel), 696  
   flag of, red with picture of man-drakes, 688  
   manikin as insignia of, 689 n447  
   Moses' psalm of, 823  
   one of four standard-bearers, 685  
   precious stone of  
     ruby, 651  
     sardius, 856  
   prince of (Elizur), 679  
   rejected because of Reuben's sin with Bilhah, 650 n351  
   spy representing (Shammua), 705  
   standard of  
     colors of, 686  
     figure of man on, 686, 689 n447  
     inscription on, 686  
   and tribes of Simeon and Levi not intermarrying with those not of pure Jewish blood, 691 n448  
 warfare of  
   attacking Edom to north, 321  
   battle of Sarta, 315  
   to destroy Mizraim with arm, 385  
 warning against unchastity, 435, 436  
 wife of, as Canaanite, 349 n98  
 Reuben, R.  
   story of R. Reuben and angel of death, 1016-1017  
 Reubenites. *See* Reuben: tribe of  
 Reuel (son of Esau), 321  
   advising Pharaoh to cease oppressing Hebrews, 470-471  
   banished by Pharaoh, 471  
   as father of Jethro, 494 n83

Reuel (*cont.*)

one of seven names of Jethro, 493  
 revelation  
   divine, taking place at night, 356 n113  
   to Moses, directly from God, 612 n242  
   not through medium of angels, 616 n248  
 at Sinai, 599-602  
   audibility of visible, 612 n238  
   causing death, 612 n238  
   choice of time of, 591  
   day of  
     portents on, 600  
 Israelites granted power over angel of death at, 612 n238  
 Israel preparing for, 598-599  
 Israel receiving three gifts at, 612 n240 (*see also* gifts)  
 Moses adding extra day of preparation for, one of three things Moses did on own authority, 626 n279  
 music at, 602 n201  
 time of, 592 n177  
   on 6 Sivan or 7 Sivan, 297 n188  
   on 15 Sivan, 297 n188  
   in presence of living and dead, 604  
   violent motions of entire universe at, 600, 601 n198  
   and Zodiac, 297 n188  
 in Tabernacle, 673-674  
 tenth to take place on day of judgment, 601  
 of Torah  
   delayed by God, 591-592  
   Torah as sixth, 601  
 Revelation, Festival of. *See* Pentecost  
 revelations  
   ten in number, 602 n206  
 reward  
   of pious, postponed for future world, 21 n77  
   and punishment and creation, 1  
   remaining with descendants to fourth generation, 1038 n5  
 riddle(s) of Queen of Sheba  
   about angels and Abraham, 960  
   about cedar trunk, 961  
   about Daniel and three friends, 960  
   about daughter of Lot, 960  
   about distinguishing circumcised and uncircumcised, 960



riddle(s) of Queen of Sheba (*cont.*)

about distinguishing males and females, 960  
 about Elijah and Messiah, 960  
 about enclosure with ten doors, 960  
 about flax, 961, 962 n47  
 about golden calf, 960  
 about Jonah, 960  
 about land that only once saw the sun, 960  
 about Lot and daughters, 960  
 about Naphtha, 961  
 about one who is neither born nor dies, 960  
 about rouge-tube, 961  
 about Samson and Philistines, 961  
 about seven and nine, 959-960  
 about signet, cord, and staff, 960  
 about something moving with head cut off, 960  
 sources of, 962 n46  
 about Tamar, 961  
 about wick, 960  
 right (righteousness)  
   in seventh heaven, 6 (*see also* righteousness)  
 righteousness  
   banishing hatred, 447  
   one of four standards of Divine Throne, 687 n440  
   in seventh heaven, 6  
   *See also* right  
 righteous ones  
   concerned about welfare of their animals, 733 n606  
   death of  
     on birthday, 477 n44  
     possessing atoning power, 733 n602  
   righteous not dying unless expressing desire to, 740 n632  
   to be met by merciful angels when entering other world, 430 n444  
   to be welcomed by Jacob, 431 n444  
   four transformations of, 19  
   among Gentiles acting as priests of God, 598 n191  
   greater than angels, 1100 n89  
   having to pass through Gehenna before entering Paradise, 508 n118  
   of Israel, hall of silver in Paradise for, 23 n97

righteous ones (*cont.*)

joy of, in Paradise, announced by angels in sixth heaven, 505 n117  
 light of, 19  
 men  
   drawing Shekinah back from six heavens, six in number, 473  
   every one to receive 310 words from God, 807 n894  
 number of, as stars, 330 (*see also* dust: of earth; sand of seashore; star[s]: in heavens)  
 punished for sins during lifetime, 383 n257  
 reward of, in world to come, 258, 611  
 soul of one, more precious than all mankind, 605 n216  
 to raise dead in world to come, 1103 n95  
   *See also* pious  
 right hand of God. *See* God: right hand of  
 rights of others  
   illegal appropriation of, one of 13 sins punished by leprosy, 675 (*see also* leprosy: 13 sins punished by)  
 Rigion  
   fire of, 615 n247  
   *See also* Rigyon  
 Rigyon (angel)  
   as stream of fire, 614  
 ritual baths  
   caricatured by Haman, 1152  
   reaching to neck, 88 n106  
 rivers  
   flowing under thrones of pious, four in number (honey, milk, wine, balsam), 507  
   Moses asking rivers to intercede, 808  
   in third earth, 6  
 Rizpah  
   noble deeds of, 941 n131  
   wife or concubine of David, 941 n131  
 robbery  
   forbidden by  
     commandments, 69  
     Noah, 308  
   in sinful cities, 207  
 robe(s)  
   one of eight priestly garments of Aaron, 649-651

## rock

bringing forth  
 blood, 738, 739 n627  
 honey, 738, 739 n627  
 water, 575, 738

## rod

of Aaron (*see* Aaron: rod of)  
   created in twilight between sixth day and Sabbath, 78 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)  
 Ineffable Name engraved on, 494  
 hewn from sapphire of Divine Throne, 496 n88  
 putting forth blossoms, 494  
 testing suitors of Jethro's daughters, 494  
 of Moses (*see* Moses: rod of)

## Rokita

attending Esther on Mondays, 1142  
 name, reminding Esther of *rakia* ("firmament"), created on second day, 1142  
 one of seven Jewish attendants of Esther, 1142  
 Roman language, 158 n72  
   ascribed to Japhethite system of writing, 158 n72  
   God proclaiming Torah in, 820 (*see also* Arabic language, Aramaic language, Hebrew language)

## Roman legion

stationed in Palestine, 284 n162

## Romans

as descendants of Edom/Esau, 254 n15, 254 n19, 259 n51  
 prophesied to slay great Jewish scholars, 254 n15

## Rome

Amalek as designation for, 580 n141  
 appellations of, transferred to Christians, 254 n19  
 Babylon identified with, 948 n11, 1100 n90  
 called "boar out of the wood," 284 n162  
 deceit and guile of, 284 n162  
 descent of, from Abraham, 649, 649 n350  
 identified with  
   Amalek, 254 n19  
   Babylon, 1106 n106



Rome (*cont.*)

identified with (*cont.*)  
 Edom, 254 n19, 641 n323, 927 n77  
 explanation of tradition of, 419 n425  
 Esau, 254 n19, 263 n69  
   called swine, 284 n162  
 Kittim, 254 n19  
 Seir, 254 n19  
 and Israel, two nations destined to  
   be hated by all, 252  
 Messiah to reject gifts of, 649  
 not to contribute to messianic  
   Temple, 649  
 as one of four kingdoms, 196 n82  
 punishment of, 215 n179  
 as ruler of world, 162 n82  
 site of, place where Gabriel put  
   reed in sea, 947  
 story of founding of, resembling  
   myth about founding of  
   Babylon, 948-949 n11  
 Rosh (son of Benjamin)  
   name, meaning of, 380  
 Rosh Hashanah  
   Jacob erecting altar at Bethel on,  
   317 n299  
   *See also* date: New Year; New Year  
 Rosh Hodesh. *See* New Moon (festi-  
   val)  
 Rotheus (brother of Deborah)  
   father of Bilhah and Zilpah, a  
   Chaldean, 284 n167, 444  
 royalty  
   belonging to David and house of  
   David, 509  
   signet as symbol of, 344  
*ruah*  
   as wind, 56 n17  
 ruby/rubies  
   on ephod of Pharaoh, 364  
   fourth division of Paradise built  
   from, 19  
   pinnacles of heavenly Temple made  
   from, 503  
   promoting pregnancy, 651  
   relation of, to mandrakes, 651  
   on Solomon's throne, 968  
   stone of tribe of Reuben in breast-  
   plate of Aaron, 651  
   thrones for just made from, 507  
   thrones in Paradise made from,  
   507  
   *See also* precious stones  
 Ruhiel (angel)  
   angel of wind, prostrating before  
   Metatron, 130

## Ruḥshita ("movement")

one of seven Jewish attendants of  
 Esther, attending Esther on  
 Thursdays, 1143  
 rule of conduct  
   to take two companions on jour-  
   ney, 903 n73  
 ruler of dark, 7  
 rulers, heathen  
   claiming to be gods (Nimrod,  
   Pharaoh, Sennacherib,  
   Hiram, Nebuchadnezzar),  
   1103-1104 n100, 1105  
   n105  
 rulers of world  
   list of, 162 n82  
   *See also* cosmocrator  
 Ruth  
   age of, at marriage, 40 years, 864  
   ancestress of six pious men  
   endowed with spiritual  
   gifts (David, Daniel,  
   Hananiah, Mishael,  
   Azariah, Messiah), 866 n61  
   beauty of, 866 n57  
   and Boaz, 862-867  
   marriage of R. to B., 864  
   R. admired by B., 863  
   R. describing self as one of  
   handmaids of B., 865 n53  
   R. led to field of B. by angel,  
   865 n51  
   daughter of Eglon, king of Moab,  
   daughter-in-law of Naomi,  
   863  
   desiring to follow Jewish customs,  
   863  
   famine in time of, as punishment,  
   862  
   gleaning in fields, 863, 866 n55  
   God putting blessing in ears of  
   corn, 866 n54  
   living to see glory of Solomon,  
   864, 867 n69  
   as Moabite, 758  
   destined to be ancestor of  
   David, 793  
   Moabite great-grandmother of  
   David, 214, 214 n17  
   modest words of, contrasted with  
   indecent words of  
   Potiphar's wife, 356 n115  
   mother of Obed the pious, 864  
   and Naomi  
   as two doves, 758, 977 n91  
   one of mothers of Israel, 865 n53  
   one of 22 women of valor, 238  
   n271

Ruth (*cont.*)

as pious and reliable Jewess, 915  
 time of story of, 862, 864 n31  
 Ruth, Book of  
   time of events of, 861 n26

## S

## Sabbath

abolished by Jeroboam, 984 n9  
 as Adam's defender, 84  
 battle against Og taking place on,  
   756 n693  
 breaking of  
   death by stoning as penalty for,  
   690  
   Sabbath not to be broken in  
   construction of Tabernacle,  
   653  
   by Zelophehad, 690  
 candles lighted on, 677-678  
 caricatured by Haman, 1151-1152  
 commandment concerning obser-  
   vance of  
   fulfilled by Joseph, 593  
   given to Adam, 70 n55  
   revealed at Alush, 574 n109  
   revealed at Marah, 574 n109  
   revealed to Moses, 545  
 as creation in itself, 85 n102  
 criticized by Haman, 1154  
 David dying on, 938  
 as day of study and religious  
   instruction, 654 n360  
 dead rising from graves on, 23  
   n97  
 desecration of  
   as cause of calamity at Gibeah,  
   884 n134  
   first Sabbath, 572, 574 n109  
   by Joshua, 846 n22  
   one of crimes of Achan, 847  
   n25  
   by priests making shewbread,  
   909 n107  
 in Egypt, 488 n72  
 fasting forbidden on, 1135  
 52 in number, components of 70  
   holy days celebrated by  
   Jews, 648  
 first, 83  
   praise of God on, 83  
   violation of, 572, 574 n109  
 gatherer of wood on, one of three  
   men losing this world and  
   gaining world to come,  
   847-848 n31



Sabbath (*cont.*)

and God

testifying to uniqueness of Israel,  
82 n98

Great

piyyut for, 557 n39

as Sabbath preceding Passover,  
536 n206symbolic description of world to  
come as, 99 n140

in heaven, 83-86

and heavenly light, 84

holiness of, attested by Sambation  
River, 1089 n56and Israel, testifying to unity of  
God, 82 n98Israelites not making war on, 555  
n30

and Jacob

J. rewarded for observing, 280  
n139law of Nehemiah and company  
no vessel or utensil to be han-  
dled on Sabbath, 1120  
n26

laws of

Jacob concerned to observe,  
304-305Moses instructing people in,  
653

limits to journeys on, 237

of Lord, to take place 6,093 years  
after creation, 99 n140manna not descending on, 571-  
572man receiving additional soul on,  
85 n104meal, made by Joseph for brothers  
in Egypt, 379night of, to be devoted to conjugal  
pleasures, 1125 n46not willing to be subservient to  
Haman's wicked plans,  
1150

observance of

by Abraham, not referred to in  
Bible, 307 n280Ahab's son's victory over Mesha  
as reward for, 989 n35Ahab's victory over Syrians as  
reward for, 989 n35by Jacob, according to Bible,  
307 n280leading to redemption, 574  
n109merits of, giving Joram victory  
in war against Moab, 1027  
n5Sabbath (*cont.*)observance of (*cont.*)to be rewarded by six gifts from  
God (land of Israel, future  
world, new world, sover-  
eignty of dynasty of David,  
institution of Priests and  
Levites, freedom from three  
afflictions—sufferings of  
times of Gog and Magog,  
travails of Messianic time,  
and day of judgment), 572to be rewarded by three festivals  
and six gifts, 572 (*see also*  
gifts)one not allowed to carry money  
on, 951

personification of, 84 n101

phylacteries not worn on, 690

preexistence of, 85 n102

production of music forbidden on,  
847 n22respite granted to souls of Gehenna  
on, 577 n135

and rest

precept of, given to Israel at  
Marah, 567

and sacrifices

only daily sacrifices permitted  
on, 666

sanctification of, 545

scrolls read by Hebrews on, 522-  
523 n164

seraphim silent on, 1043 n36

as sign between God and Israel,  
1150

significance of, 85 n102

singular sanctity of, testified to by  
God and Israel, 82 n98souls of pious reading from Torah  
scroll on, 812superseded by circumcision, 248  
n318

termination of

drinking water after, 577 n135  
well of Miriam moving around  
after, 577 n135to be celebrated by lighting can-  
dles, 677-678Vashti forcing Jewish women to  
spin and weave on, 1135

work permissible on, 653

and world to come

eternal Sabbath in, 85 n102  
joy of Sabbath as one-sixtieth of,  
608 n220Sabbath as foretaste of, 99 n140,  
606Sabbath (*cont.*)and world to come (*cont.*)symbolic description of world to  
come as Great Sabbath, 99  
n140Zechariah son of Jehoiada killed  
on, 1038

Sabbath-breaker(s)

story of, 689-691

transformed by Moses into apes,  
691 n452

sabbatical year

criticized by Haman, 1154

king to read word of God to peo-  
ple in Temple in, 984 n9

sackbuts

used by Pharaoh against Israelites  
559

sackcloth

as sign of mourning, 342, 412

as sign of repentance, 318

sacrifice(s)

of Abel as whole offering, 105 n12  
of atonementat dedication of Temple, kid as,  
340

on new moon, 25 n100

for sins of Israel, 198

binding of, before slaughter, 232  
n242child (*see also* Moloch)

in Egyptian bondage, 467

story of Akedah as protest  
against, 233 n255

connected with Torah, 771 n759

consumed by heavenly fire, 104  
n10

daily

commandments concerning

observance of, given to  
Adam, 70 n55offered by Phineas-Elijah, 783,  
784 n803two in number, in remembrance  
of sacrifice of Isaac, 232  
n249expiatory, on Day of Atonement,  
230

fasting taking place of, 200 n111

human

Jephthah offering daughter, 877  
n109

offered to Baal, 877 n109

practiced by Philistines, 922 n54

of Job on behalf of friends, 461

law of

announced by Moses after defeat  
by Amorites, 717



sacrifice(s) (*cont.*)

- law of (*cont.*)
    - forgotten by Moses in anger, 798 n862
  - offered on morning of revelation of Sinai, 598
  - ordinances of, observed by Saul, 898-899
  - performed by elders before priests, 598
  - prayer taking place of, 200 n111
  - public, in wilderness, performed by Levites, 709 n519
  - salt from sea offered with, 10 n33, 14 n52
  - slaughtering of, by non-priest, 889, 890 n18
  - souls of pious as, 5
  - superiority of prayer to, 888 n5
  - before war, 795 n849
  - See also* fasting; libation; offering; prayer(s)
- sadeh (letter). *See* tzade
- sage(s)
- conversations of Elijah with, 1013 n93
  - and prophet, link between, 1126
  - two great (Balaam and Ahithophel) losing this world and world to come, 798
- Sagittarius (Archer) (sign of Zodiac)
- answering Haman in defense of Israel, 1151
- saints
- intercession of, for Israel, 1161 n122
- salamander, 34, 40 n157
- blood of, as protection, 34, 1046, 1047 n47
  - clothes of, 40 n158
  - King Hezekiah owing life to, 34
  - originating from fire of myrtle wood, 34
  - properties of, 34
  - See also* reptiles; serpent; shamir
- Salamiel (angel)
- leader of grigori, 125
- Salem
- identified with
    - Jerusalem, 197 n102
    - Shechem by Samaritans, 197 n102
  - as Melchizedek's city, 197 n102
  - name of
    - changed to Jerusalem by Melchizedek, 232 n253
    - meaning of, 197 n102
  - See also* Jerusalem

## salt

- exempt from tithing, 255
  - not to be used in certain religious ceremonies, 215 n180
  - pillar of, 214 n174 (*see also* Lot: wife of)
  - from sea, offered with every sacrifice, 10 n33, 14 n52
  - of Sodom, poisonous quality of, 215 n184
- Samael (angel)
- ally of Esau against Jacob, 252
  - assisting Pharaoh in pursuing Israelites, 550
  - desiring to slay Jacob in womb, 252
  - fall of, 194
  - fettering Lahash, 809
  - as head of evil spirits, 817, 830 n946
  - identified with Satan, 101, 103 n5
  - Job given over to, to distract S. from Israelites, 552
  - making accusations against Israel, 551-552
  - and Michael, case between, arbitrated in heavenly court, 252
  - and Moses
    - S. chastised by M., 828-831
    - S. receiving permission to fetch M.'s soul, 828
    - S. waiting for moment of M.'s death, 817
    - vain search of S. for M., 835-837
  - prostrating before Metatron, 130
  - R. Joseph della Reyna attempting to conquer, 1018-1019
  - in seventh heaven, 504
  - son of, and Adam and Eve, 141-142
  - stopping prayer of
    - Caleb, 809
    - Eleazar, 809
    - Joshua, 809
  - taking souls away from men, 504
  - See also* Sammael; Satan
- Samaon
- descendant of Dan, 286
- Samaria
- founded by those who would not expel heathen women, 1091
  - gates of, inscription of Ahab on, 987
- Samaritans
- attempting to prevent rebuilding of Temple, 1120 n23

Samaritans (*cont.*)

- claiming Mount Gerizim as holy, 872
  - considering it unlawful to keep wine in leather casks, 1134 n18
  - fashioning images of Jacob and Joseph, 1045 n46
  - identifying Shem with Melchizedek, 197 n102
  - worshipping idol in form of dove, 316
- Sambation River
- attesting holiness of Sabbath, 1089 n56
  - flowing at border of land of Sons of Moses, 1088
  - location of, 1089 n56
  - references to, in Christian, Muslim, and Samaritan writings, 1089 n56
  - resting on Sabbath, 1088, 1089 n56
  - ten tribes dwelling beyond, 1089 n56
- samekh (letter)
- in Asenath, standing for *setirah* ("hidden"), 368
  - creation of world through, 4
  - in *Passim*, standing for *soharim*, merchants who bought Joseph from Ishmaelites, 330
  - See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet
- Samlah of Masrekah
- succeeding Hadad as king of Edomites, 420
- Sammael (angel)
- as adversary of Moses and Israel in Egypt and at Red Sea, 965 n56
  - Amalek identified with, in Kabbalah, 580 n141
  - as angel of death in Islamic legend, taking form of ram, 307 n275
  - as angel of Edom, 306 n275
  - as angel of Esau, 306 n273, 307 n275
  - appearing from fire as golden calf, 622 n266
  - attempting to possess Moses' soul, 830 n946
  - Cain as son of, 965 n56
  - in charge of Mars, 131 n61
  - choosing Seir as people, 307 n275
  - disguised as Esau, 306 n273



Sammael (*cont.*)

downfall of, as penalty of serpent, 79 n83  
 and Elijah, struggle between, on day of judgment, 999 n33  
 as goat in Kabbalah, 307 n275  
 and God, dialogue between, 558 n42  
 as greatest of angels, 131 n61  
 as guardian angel of Egypt, 558 n42  
 Esau, 254 n15, 306 n273  
 Rome, 306 n273  
 having 12 wings, 40 n155  
 hiding pledges of Tamar, 347 n89  
 identified with  
   Satan, 228 n234  
   *Yetzer ha-Ra*, 306 n275  
 name, meaning of, 94 n116  
 as prince of Rome, 131 n61  
 roaring from mouth of golden calf, 118 n54  
 as seducer of Eve, 94 n116  
 similarity of Beelzebul to, 965 n56  
 as tempter of Abraham, 228 n234  
 to be slain by Elijah, 1021  
*See also* Samael; Satan  
 Samsaweel (fallen angel)  
   teaching men signs of sun, 119  
 Samson, 877-880  
   believed by Jacob to be Messiah, 408  
   blindness of, 878  
   carrying gates of Gaza on shoulders, 879 n115  
   character weakness of, 878  
   considered one of least worthy judges by Haggadah, 874 n101  
   death of, 878  
   and Delilah, 880 n121  
   D. selling S.'s secret to Philistines, 880  
   descendants of  
     having gigantic strength and great valor, 882 n125  
     war cry of, 882 n125  
   described as prophet by Josephus, 879 n116  
   Eluma as mother of, 879 n111  
   father of Goliath, 917 n29  
   hair of, emitting bell-like sound, 878  
   having sexual intercourse with Philistine women, 880 n121  
   having spirit of God, 879 n116

Samson (*cont.*)

maimed in both feet, 878  
 marrying Philistine woman from Timnah, 880 n121  
 mother of, Hazleponith, 878-879 n111, 879 n112  
 name, meaning of, 879 n111  
 as Nazirite, 878  
 never recognized by God as "servant of Lord," 805 n880 (*see also* Solomon)  
 not a prophet, 879 n116  
 one of four heroes of tribe of Dan, 796 n854  
 one of two great heroes of world who met death on account of strength, 798  
 and Philistines, riddle of Queen of Sheba about, 961  
 possessing strength of Adam, 58  
 as righteous man slain by Philistines, 223  
 son of Manoa and Zelalponit, 877  
 spiritual distinctions of, 878  
 spring of water flowing from mouth, 878  
 stature of, 879 n115  
 strength of, 877-878, 879 n114  
   causing death, 58  
 ten generations from Jacob to, 879 n111  
 thirst of, 878, 879 n119  
 from tribe of Dan, 680, 877  
 uprooting mountains, 878  
 victory of, over Philistines, 878  
 water flowing from, rationalistic explanation of, 879-880 n119  
 weapon of, jawbone of ass on which Abraham rode to Mount Moriah, 878  
 Samuel  
   activities of, 894-898  
   aging suddenly, 900  
   assembling people at Mizpah for prayer, 895  
   asserting incorruptibility, 347 n89  
   birth of, 889  
     as "seventh-month child," 889, 890 n13  
   death of  
     at age 52 years, 892 n23, 900  
     shortly before death of Saul, 891 n19  
   as descendant of Korah, 719 n561, 888 n1

Samuel (*cont.*)

doubling sections of Levites to 16 men, 683  
 elder from tribe of Asher, 696  
 equal to Moses, 897 n43  
 executing Agag, 899, 902 n65  
 frail, 889  
 humility of, 896 n40  
 infancy and youth of, 889-891  
   learning and intelligence of, as infant, 889  
 Samuel brought to Shiloh at age two, 889  
 unusual qualities of, as infant, 889  
 as Levite, not able to perform any holy service after age of 50 years, 903 n70  
 linking period of judges with period of kingdom, 887  
 as Nazirite, 897 n43  
   not permitted to slay Agag, 902 n65  
 one of princes who assist Messiah, 100 n142  
 performing water ordeal, 626 n279  
 as prophet, 887  
   as early prophet, 501 n109  
   as master of prophets, 897 n43  
 and Saul, 887-909  
   conversation between, after Samuel's death, 900-901  
   Samuel appearing to Saul after death, 904 n77  
   Samuel giving Saul sign of who successor would be, 899  
   Samuel interceding for Saul, 899  
   Samuel mourning for Saul, 900  
 name  
   made known by God, 889, 890 n17  
   meaning of, 890 n17  
 one of those called "man of God" in Scripture, 838 n965 (*see also* man of God)  
 performing sacrificial rites though not a priest, 896 n42  
 premature death of, due to sins, 903 n68  
 receiving special revelation that David to be king, 913  
 revelation to, punishment of priests, 896 n40  
 ruling  
   for 12 years, 892 n23  
   for 40 years, 903 n69



Samuel (*cont.*)

## sons of

Ahijah and Joel (prophet), 895, 897 n46

repenting, 895

two in number, 891 n22

unworthy, 895

story of call of, 895-896 n40

summoned back to earth, accompanied by Moses and a number of pious, 900

victorious over Philistines, 895

## Samuil (angel)

bringing Enoch to heavens, 126

## Sanachiah

elder from tribe of Naphtali, 696

## Sanballat the Horonite

oath of Ahasuerus to, 1167

## sanctuary

as asylum for criminals, 947 n8

center of, as Eben Shetiyah, 278

as commandment revealed to Moses, 545

curtains for, woven by virgins, 1075, 1077 n30

day of consecration of, to be reckoned with days of creation, 660

described as "avenger of unchastity," 672 n393

first, erected by Moses, 545

heavenly (*see also* Temple: heavenly)

altar of, having jewel engraved with name of Messiah, 1

distance of 18 miles from terrestrial sanctuary to, 280 n141

in front of God, 1

one of seven things created in beginning, 1

relation of, to terrestrial sanctuary, 661 n381

terrestrial sanctuary corresponding to, 661 n381

terrestrial sanctuary placed opposite, 280 n141

invisible, 996 (*see also* invisibility)

punishments of Israel coming from, 730

## terrestrial

corresponding to heavenly sanctuary, 649 n346, 661 n381

at distance of 18 miles from heavenly sanctuary, 280 n141

placed opposite heavenly sanctuary, 280 n141

sanctuary (*cont.*)terrestrial (*cont.*)

relation of, to heavenly sanctuary, 661 n381

as testimony to forgiveness of God, 638

and vessels, anointed with holy oil, 657

*See also* Holy of Holies; Holy Place; Tabernacle; Temple

sanctuary, celestial. *See* sanctuary: heavenly

## Sandalfon (archangel)

as angel name of Elijah, 996

angel of prayer according to Rabbis, 53 n13

connected with Ziz, 33 n139

description of, 615

and differentiation of sex in embryo, 57 n20

function of, 17 n70

huge proportions of, 613

instructing R. Joseph della Reyna how to conquer Satan, 1018-1019

making crown for head of Lord, 613-614

name, meaning of, 1000 n40

as "tall angel" seen by Moses in third heaven, 505 n117

## sandek

at circumcision ceremony, 1020 n103

*See also* circumcision

## sand of seashore

Amorites as numerous as, 310

descendants as numerous as, 229-230

inhabitants of Africa as numerous as, 418

sons of Jacob as numerous as, 421-422

*See also* dust: of earth; star(s): in heavens

## Sanhedrin

appointed by God to judge serpent, 95 n124

heavenly, members of, 71 in number, 1027 n6

held responsible for the many who died in war with Benjaminites, 883-884 n134

## members of

as descendants of Issachar, 408

70 in number, 274 n114, 621

70 of 77 pious men in Israel, 629 n287 (*see also* under pious: men)

Sanhedrin (*cont.*)members of (*cont.*)

71 in number, 95 n124

qualifications for membership in, 777 n783

turning Jehoiaxim over to Nebuchadnezzar, 1060

and worship of golden calf, 621

sapphire (color). *See* under color(s)

sapphire (stone)

increasing strength of vision and healing diseases, 651

quarry of

under Divine Throne, 635 n305

in tent of Moses, 635 n306

stone of tribe of Issachar in breastplate of Aaron, 651

*See also* precious stones

## Saracen

angel appearing as, 206 n136

## Sarah

and Abraham

S. as wife of A., 177

S. blaming A., 203 n121

S. calling A. her brother, 190

S. complaining to A., 201

S. insisting that A. divorce from Hagar, 219

S. known as sister of A., 216

S.'s beauty observed by A., 189

barrenness of, 201, 202 n116, 117

cured, 218, 219 n203

as punishment for impious life,

according to Hagar, 289

n198

beauty of, 59, 60 n24, 189, 191

n68, 191 n73, 205, 216,

234

S. as one of four most beautiful

women in history, 940

S. as one of four women of perfect beauty, 941 n132

burial of, 233-237

in Cave of Machpelah, 234

in Hebron, 98 n137

children of, cursed by Abimelech, causing blindness of Isaac, 267 n74

daughter of

Haran, 177

Shem, 244 n309

death of, 207 n151, 231, 233-237, 247, 251

confusion in land after, 234

by kiss of God, 237 n270

in month of Shevat, 1152 n108

mourning in land after, 234

premature, reason for, 236 n259



Sarah (*cont.*)

eavesdropping in own tent, 65  
 in Egypt, 191 n80  
 and Isaac  
   S. appearing to I. after her death, 242 n304  
   S. defending I. as being her own child, 224  
   S. dressing I. in finery, 226  
   S. going to Hebron looking for I., 234  
   S. laughing at announcement about I., 207 n151  
   S. mourning for I., 233  
   S.'s attachment to I., 226  
 jealousy of, 220 n214  
 length of life of, 236 n258  
 light of, burning miraculously throughout week, 240-241  
 likeness of, hanging in Pharaoh's bedroom, 411 n400  
 merits of, one of five charms to protect Jacob, 300 n247 (*see also* merits)  
 name of, also called Iscah, 178, 178 n38, 180 n44  
 one of four mothers, 434 n3 (*see also* Rebekah, Rachel, Leah)  
 one of seven sterile women who bore children, 878 n111  
 one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271  
 as only woman with whom God ever spoke, 76, 254 n18  
 prophetic gift of, 180 n44  
 protected from Pharaoh by angel, 190  
 punishment of, for lack of faith, 207 n151  
 Rebekah as counterpart of, 241  
 resemblance of Joseph to, 409  
 rewarded for trust in God, 219 n203  
 suckling 100 babies, 218, 219 n208  
 supervising one of seven classes of women, 23 n97  
 taken as wife by Abimelech, 216  
 tent of, remaining unoccupied until Isaac married Rebekah, 242 n302  
 treating Hagar as bondwoman, 203 n122  
 in women's Paradise, 940  
 words of resignation of, 234, 235 n256

## Sarga

one of five scribes going with Ezra, 1122

## Sargiel (angel)

filling hell with souls of wicked, 508 n118

## Sargon

one of eight other names of Sennacherib, 1054 n92

## Sartan

battle at, 315  
 identified with "tower of Straton," i.e., Caesarea, 315 n292  
 name, spelling of, 315 n292  
 Pasusi, king of, slain by Jacob, 314  
 walls of, scaled by Judah, Gad, Simon, Levi, Reuben, Dan, Naphtali, and Issachar, 315

## Satan

accompanying Esau on hunt, 264-265  
 accusing  
   Abraham before God, 224-225  
   Israel, 3 n8, 27 n105  
   men, 376 n224  
 and Adam  
   fall of S. as punishment for leading A. to sin, 64 n35  
   S. demanding trial of wit with A., 62-63  
   S. refusing to do homage to A., 63  
   S.'s jealousy of A., 62, 63 n35, 64 n35  
 advising Nimrod, 176  
 appearances of  
   to Abraham, 226  
   to David  
     in form of deer, 933  
     in shape of bird, 928  
   to Eve in guise of angel, 87  
   to Isaac, 225-226  
   to Nimrod, 171  
   to Sarah, 233-234, 236 n259  
 assisting Noah in cultivating grapes, 153  
 attempting to assign names to animals, 63  
 blindness of, 1128 n57  
 called "the ugly one," 95 n130  
 created out of fire of hell, 64 n35  
 as destroying angel, 538 n216  
 disguised as  
   angel, 93  
   beggar, 224, 225 n226, 1171 n167  
   appearing to Job, 455-456

Satan (*cont.*)

disguised as (*cont.*)  
   beggar (*cont.*)  
     frequent in Jewish legends, 456 n14  
   bread merchant in story of Job, 458  
   human, 176, 178 n34  
   king of Persia, 457  
   large brook of water in road, 227  
   old man, 226, 227, 233-234  
   serpent, 96 n131  
     appearing to Moses, 496  
 distinguished from Sammael, 131 n61  
 enmity with man, 63  
 entering clay image made by Enosh, 117  
 and Eve  
   S. appearing to E. in guise of angel, 87  
   S. having sexual intercourse with E., 101  
   S. trying to hinder E. in her penance, 87  
 fall of, 62-64, 94 n116  
   Eldad's story of, 63 n34  
   as punishment for  
     conduct toward Job, 64 n35  
     leading Adam to sin, 64 n35  
   S. cast down from heaven, 462  
   S. dismissed from heavenly host, 92  
   S. flung from heaven by God, 63  
 having no power to accuse Israel on Day of Atonement, 632 n300  
 having to flee before high priest, 676  
 having 12 wings, 62  
 hindering pious, 327  
 holding sway in this world, 563-564  
 identified with  
   Azazel and smoking furnace, 200 n114  
   Leviathan in kabbalistic literature, 42 n187  
   serpent, 95 n131  
 indicting Jews, 1158-1161  
 inspiring Elihu against Job, 460-461  
 jealousy of, 72  
   of Adam, 62, 63-64 n35  
   of God, 63 n35



Satan (*cont.*)

- and Job, 455-457
    - good motives of S., in testing J., 463 n39
  - S. accusing J. on New Year's Day, 456
  - S. appearing to J.
    - as beggar, 455-456
    - as bread merchant, 458
  - S. asking God to put J. into his power, 456
  - S. depriving J. of all he owned, 457
  - S. given power over J.'s body and possessions, 457
  - S. surrendering to J., 458
  - S. vanquished by J., 458, 462
  - knocking knife out of Abraham's hand, 232 n242
  - as Mastema, 159 n74
  - and Michael
    - struggle between, over body of Moses, 830 n946
  - and Moses (*see also* Satan: and Michael)
    - S. attacking M. on road to Egypt, 517 n146
    - S. disguised as M., 620
  - permitted to claim everything corporeal as his due, 830 n946
  - as prince
    - of darkness or angel of death, 11 n41
    - of earth, 21 n75
    - of Edom, 306 n275
  - rebellion of, and fall of angels, 121 n57
  - seizing high priest by throat to prevent him from performing service, 677 n415
  - and Torah
    - S. inquiring about whereabouts of Torah, 617
  - to renew rebellion on last day, 64 n35
  - transformation of, into angel, 94 n118
  - winning serpent to his side, 92-93
  - See also* angel(s), general: types, of death; demon(s); devil(s); Mastema; prince of darkness; Samael; Sammael
- Satanel. *See* Satan
- Satarel (archangel)
- as angel of hidden things, 120 n57

## Saturday

- chosen as day of rest for Hebrews
  - by Moses, 487, 488 n72
- as unlucky day, 488 n72

## Saturn

- Kafziel as angel in charge of, 131 n61
  - representing star of evil, 103 n5
- saturnalia
- heathen celebration of, 87, 88 n107

## Saul

- assisted by angel in covering great distance, 901 n48
- attempting to communicate with dead Samuel, 900
- attitude of, toward Kenites, 902 n60
- beauty of, 60 n24, 898
  - S. possessing beauty of body but not of soul, 905 n80
- census of army of, 899
- census of Israel of
  - when setting out against Amalek, 637
  - when setting out against Nahash, 637

## and David

- D. pursued by S., 918-920
- S. and three sons slain on account of D.'s sin, 933
- S. as one of ten adversaries of D., 922 n59
- S. persecuting D. and followers, 899
- S.'s jealousy of D., 916
- S. surpassed by D. in knowledge and as teacher, 908 n102
- S. taking away daughters Merab and Michal from D., 905 n80

## death of

- in battle, 901
- by cutting neck, 58
  - as punishment for executing priests at Nob, 904 n78
- as descendant of Benjamin, 317, 902 n55
  - victorious against Agag, king of Amalek, 680
- descendants of
  - left hanging by Gibeonites for half a year, 1176
  - seven given to Gibeonites, 935
- devotion of, to Torah, 905 n80
- free from sin, 901-902 n53
- given sword by angel, 899

Saul (*cont.*)

## and Jonathan

- S. ready to slay J. for tasting food on certain day, 898

## as king, 898-905

- court of, 905-909
- length of rule of, 905 n80
- one of kings anointed with holy oil, 658 n371, 893 n30
- S. as first king of Israel to rule over Edom, 324
- S. as first ruler of Israel, 409
- S. chosen as king on account of merits of ancestors, 898
- S. losing crown on account of Agag, 899

## lacking trust in God, 922 n55

## names and titles of

- called Cush, "Ethiopian," 941 n134
- called "elect of God," 901
- given title "elect of God" in Scripture, 912 n1
- observing priestly laws of purity, 901, 905 n80
- observing sacrificial ordinances, 898-899
- one of princes who assist Messiah, 100 n142
- piety of, 901, 937 n113
- possessing neck of Adam, 58
- and priests of Nob (*see also* Nob)
  - S.'s death as punishment for executing priests, 904 n78
- S. executing 85 priests, 904 n78
- S. regretting executing priests, 901

## prophecies of

- concerning reign of David, 937 n113
- concerning war of Gog and Magog, 898

## prophetic gift of, 898

## prosperity of Israel under, 637

## punished

- for seeking help from sorcerers, 903 n73
- for taking Michal from David by having Esther taken by Ahasuerus, 1144 n68
- reporting to Eli that sons were killed in battle and ark captured, 893 n33
- responsible for suffering of Jews at hands of Haman, 1164 n140
- retaking tablets from Goliath, 898



Saul (*cont.*)

- as righteous man slain by Philistines, 223
  - seized by evil spirit, 899, 903 n67
  - sign of successor of, given by Samuel, 899
  - sin of
    - sparing Agag and wife, 902 n62, 1163
    - out of greed, 902 n62, 903 n66
    - to be made up for by Esther, 1163
  - son of Simeon and Bunah, 348
  - three sons of, righteous men slain by Philistines, 223
  - virtues of, 905 n80
    - innocence as chief virtue of, 898
    - modesty of, 898
  - vision of, 901 n52
  - and warfare
    - against Amalekites, 899
    - S. as distinguished military hero, 898
    - S.'s attack on Nahash, king of Ammonites, 898
    - S.'s campaign against Philistines, 898
  - wealth of, 899
  - wife of, 901
- Saul of Pethor
- succeeding Samlah as king of Edomites, 420
- scapegoat
- Azazel as, 137-138 n10
  - ceremony of, on Day of Atonement, 137-138 n10
- scepter
- engraved with Ineffable Name to be given to Moses in world to come, 807
  - given to Messiah by God, one of seven wonders of Messiah, 1021
- scholar(s)
- compared to ark of covenant, 644 n330
  - exile of, identified with exile of Jehoiachin, 1063 n132
  - interpreting Torah in 49 different ways, 514
  - Jehoshaphat gracious toward, 987
  - Jewish, prophesied to be destroyed by Romans, 254 n15
  - made to engage in war by Asa, 985, 986 n22
  - thrones for, in Paradise, made from pearls, 507

scholar(s) (*cont.*)

- wandering of, from town to town, 1161 n122
- Scorpio (Scorpion) (sign of Zodiac)
- answering Haman in defense of Israel, 1151
- scorpion(s)
- bite of, removing foreskin of Abraham, 203 n126
  - in caves of hell, 13
  - in desert of Shur, 566
  - heads of, used in sorcery, 760 n720
  - in hell, fantastic proportions of, 506
  - killed by sparks from cherubim, 643
  - lizard as antidote for venom of, 43
- scribe(s)
- accompanying Ezra, names of, 1125 n50
  - heavenly, office of, given to Enoch or Elijah, 1126 n50
  - tradition of belonging to tribe of Levi, 410 n387
- Scripture
- translation of, into Greek, 156 n65
  - See also* Bible; canon
- sea
- casting up valuable things for Solomon, 949 n16
  - creation of, showing God's might, 29 n115
  - of death
    - identified with ocean, 20 n73
    - not to be confused with "Dead Sea" (i.e., Sea of Sodom), 20 n73
  - distinguished from water, 9 n23
  - growing restless at winter solstice, 2
  - hymn of praise of, 44 (*see also* praise)
  - in Jewish legend, 9 n23
  - separating second from first earth, 6
  - over seventh earth, 6
  - waging war against wood of field, 20-21 n73
  - See also* ocean; water(s)
- sea (Red Sea)
- division of
    - one of five tokens granted to Israel after Exodus, 565
  - ordered to divide before Moses, 48
  - quarreling with earth about corpses of Egyptians, 561
- sea monsters
- created on fifth day, 82 n98

## Sea of Chaifa

- in land of Zebulun, 822
  - site where all treasures of sea brought to shore, 822
  - treasures of ocean stored in, for pious, 822
- Sea of Sodom
- healing of, 215 n184
  - known to Pausanias and Church Fathers as "Dead Sea," 20 n73
- seasons
- four colors corresponding to, 971
- Sebam (city)
- name, meaning of ("perfume"), 799
- secret(s)
- lore of Torah, 949 n14
  - of world revealed to Solomon, 948
  - See also* mysteries
- Sedecla
- daughter of Adod, witch of Endor, 903 n74
  - name, meaning of, 903 n74
- seeds
- curative properties of, 157
- Seenamias
- and Kenaz, sons of Caleb, as spies, 844 n10
- Sefer Milhamot Benei Yaakov* (Book of Wars of Sons of Jacob), 315 n292
- Sefer Raziel*. *See* Raziel, Book of
- Seir (descendant of Esau)
- and angel of Edom
    - Seir chosen as people by Sammael, angel of Edom, 307 n275
    - seizure of angel of Edom by hair, 306-307 n275
    - "hairy one," 306-307 n275
  - sons of
    - making alliances with children of East and Midianites against sons of Esau, 416
    - quarreling with sons of Esau, 415
- Seir (place)
- Bet Gubrin identified with, 306 n275
  - Esau moving family to, 271
  - identified with Rome, 254 n19
  - inhabitants of
    - as experts in agriculture, 324-325 n322
    - identified with Amalekites, 307 n278
  - Israel going to, in Messianic time, 304



Seir (*cont.*)

- land of, divided among five sons of Esau, 416
- made province of Kittim, 421
- name, meaning of, 255 n28
- one of names of Sinai, 501 n113
- one of three things to be removed before advent of Messiah, 307 n275

## Seir, Mount

- Esau's family taking up residence in, 320
- home of Judith, wife of Esau, 262

## Sekwi (the seer), 32 n137

- name of Ziz, 29

Selac, Mount. *See* Telag, Mount

## Selath

- one of seven sinners, 857 n9

## Seleucia

- one of five scribes going with Ezra, 1122

## self-denial

- as remedy for barrenness, 888 n7

## Selihah

- prayer of Jonah having form of, 1033 n32

*See also* prayers, Jewish

## Semalion (angel)

- announcing death of Moses, 835 n955

## Semiramis

- Ahab and Zedekiah attempting to seduce, 1106 n106
- name, meaning of, 1063 n134
- one of two reigning heathen queens, 990 n51 (*see also* Vashti)
- wife of Nebuchadnezzar, 1073 n21
- interceding for Jehoiachin, 1061

## Senaah (elder from tribe of

Benjamin), 696

*seneb* (thornbush)

- numerical value of (120), 502
- See also* burning bush; thornbush

## Sennacherib

- army of, 1045-1046
- annihilated by Gabriel, 53 n13, 1046
- campaign of, against Judah, 1051 n65
- claiming to be god, 1103-1104 n100, 1105 n105
- conquering Moabites, Ammonites, Arabs, and Ethiopia, 1051 n65
- as cosmocrator, 1047 n51
- defeat of, caused by mice, 1047 n58

Sennacherib (*cont.*)

- downfall of, taking place on same day Hezekiah became ill, 1052 n71
- eight other names of (Tiglath-pileser, Palnesser, Shalmanesser, Pul, Sargon, Osnappar, Rabba-yakkira), 1054 n92
- eight sins of (neglect of justice, idolatry, incest, bloodshed, blasphemy, arrogance, slander, obscenity), 562 n54, 1048 n60
- father-in-law of Nebuchadnezzar, 1072
- as grandfather of Nebuchadnezzar, 1073 n22
- killed by two sons, 1046
- not able to conquer Luz, 861
- pious descendants of sons of, 1048 n61
- policy of exiling conquered populations, 1047 n51
- punishment of, 215 n179
- receiving tribute from King Ahaz, 397
- Shebna delivering Jerusalem into hands of, 1051 n63
- Shemaiah and Abtalion as descendants of, 869 n72
- size of camp of, 1045
- sons of
  - becoming proselytes, 1046
  - graves of, 1048 n61
- story of death of, 1046
- suffering death by fire, 1048 n60
- taking throne of Solomon from Egypt, 969
- to be Gog and Magog, according to divine plan, 1049
- victory of Hezekiah over, 1045-1046

## sense

- one of ten parts of body received from God, 606 (*see also* body, human)

## Sepharvites

- worshiping horse, 1044

serafim. *See* seraphim

## Serah (daughter of Asher)

- bringing glad tidings to Jacob, 411 n398
- entering Paradise alive, 73 n67, 132 n62, 391, 393 n295 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)

Serah (*cont.*)

- one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271
- raised in house of Jacob, 348
- as 70th member of family of Jacob, 396 n321
- singing the story of Joseph to Jacob, 391
- skilled in playing harp, 391
- telling Moses that Joseph's coffin in Nile, 428-429

## Serah (daughter of Malchiel and Hadorah), 348

## Seraiah (brother of Baruch)

- last high priest, 1076 n29

## Seraiah (elder from tribe of Dan), 696

- connected with Christian legend about descent of anti-Christ from tribe of Dan, 796 n854

descendant of Rahab, 844 n12

- one of four heroes of tribe of Dan, 796 n854

- one of scribes accompanying Ezra, 1125 n50

## seraph (pl. seraphim), 801

- angered by Uzziah, 1040
- burning books of accusations against Israel, 3 n8
- feet of, concealed, 17 n70
- as God's advisors, 52 n12
- having six wings, 17 n70, 504, 1043 n36
- and intimidation of evil spirits, 1
- roaring like lions, 613-614
- in seventh heaven, 504, 505 n117
- hiding face with two wings, 504
- surrounding Divine Throne, 6
- silent on Sabbath, 1043 n36
- size of wings of, 504
- taking Adam to river Acheron, 96
- and translation of Enoch, 129
- See also* angel(s), general: types

## Serapis

- magic dogs as reminiscence of, 548 n3

## Sered (elder from tribe of Zebulun), 696

## Seriel (fallen angel)

- teaching men signs of moon, 119

## serpent(s)

- accusations of, against God, 94 n118
- as birthmark of Esau, 253
- brass (brazen), 747-749
- hissing of, as healing remedy, 1053 n90



serpent(s) (*cont.*)brass (*cont.*)

made by Moses, broken by  
Hezekiah, 1053 n89

change in appearance of, 37-38

as cleverest of animals, 37

climbing tree of knowledge, 95  
n119

curse on, by God, 75, 78 n82, 94

cutting off feet of, 79 n83, 84

depicted on tribe of Dan's flag in  
wilderness, 686, 688, 689  
n447

desiring to have intercourse with  
women, 102 n3

dust as food of, 747

eating fruit of tree, 71-72

enmity of

with man, 94, 96 n131

with woman, 75

envious of

Adam, 70 n56

human conjugal relations, 71

man, 71, 72 n60

and Eve

serpent conversing with E., 71,  
93

serpent injecting evil inclination  
into E., 95 n119

facing mate during copulation, 42  
n190

form of, resembling man, 37, 94,  
96 n131

fumigation with horns of hind as  
remedy against, 43 n190

identified with Satan, 95 n131

idol of Ammonites, engraved on  
sword of children of  
Ammon, 922 n59

killed by sparks from cherubim,  
643

kind of death caused by, 748 n654

knowing place of hidden treasure,  
957 n31

leprosy of, 79 n83

and man with jug of milk, contro-  
versy before Solomon, 951-  
952

old, 96 n131

poison of, as evil inclination, 93

as possessor of gold and silver, 73  
n60

punishments of

carried out by angels, 76

nine in number, 79 n83

ten in number, 75, 95 n131

rod of Aaron becoming, 519

rod of Moses becoming, 512

serpent(s) (*cont.*)

similarities of, to man, 71, 72-73  
n60

slandering God, 73 n62

speaking Hebrew, 70 n58

splitting tongue of, 79 n84

springing forth from backbone of  
human body, 43 n190

superiority of, 42 n185, 71

symbol of all that is wicked and  
hated by God, 253

venom of, 15 n59

weakness of, for female sex, 43  
n190

wickedness of, 43 n190

## Serug (son of Reu)

as fourth generation from Noah,  
167

idolater, 161 n76

mother of, 168 n3

name, meaning of, 167, 168 n5

## servant of God

title given to Abraham, Jacob,  
Israel, Messiah, Moses,  
Joshua, Caleb, David,  
Isaiah, Eliakim, Job,  
Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael,  
Azariah, Nebuchadnezzar,  
Zerubbabel, angels, 452  
n2, 805 n880

*See also* servant of Lord

## servant of Lord, 928 n78

those describing self as (Abraham,  
Jacob, Moses, David), 805  
n880

*See also* servant of God

## service, Divine

one of three things for whose sake  
world exists, 660

Sesanchis. *See* Shishak

## Seth

and Adam

S. attending A.'s sickness, 91

S. beholding vision at A.'s death,  
96

S. only one awake when A.'s  
body buried by angels, 98

S. receiving knowledge of Torah  
from A., 152 n51

S. taking care of burial of A., 98  
n137

ancestor of

Enoch, 126

humanity, 115, 592

Messiah, 115

astronomical knowledge of, 116  
n53

as bearer of revelation, 102 n1

Seth (*cont.*)

birth of

in Adamah, second earth, 110

with sign of covenant on him,  
115, 248 n318 (*see also*  
covenant[s]: sign of)

descendants of, 115-117

as inventors of astronomy, 116

dog taking up residence with, 36

dwelling in vicinity of Paradise,  
138

family of, becoming corrupted,  
138

as foundation of mankind, 115  
n50

glorification of, 116 n52

identified with Messiah by Gnostic  
sect, 116 n52

as inventor

of division of time into weeks,  
months, and years, 116  
n53

of Hebrew characters, 116 n53

marriage of

to niece, 112 n42

to sister, 113 n42

meeting of, with wild beasts, 92  
n113

name, meaning of, 115 n50

not needing to be circumcised,  
115, 248 n318

one of seven pious men in pre-  
Abrahamic times, 116-117  
n53 (*see also* *under* pious:  
men)

one of shepherds who assist  
Messiah on right, 100  
n142

one of 13 men born perfect, 115

pillars made by, 116 n53

receiving knowledge from angel  
Uriel, 116 n53

soul of

entering into Messiah and  
Moses, 116 n52

and Torah

S. receiving knowledge of Torah  
from Adam, 152 n51

S. transmitting knowledge of  
Torah to Enoch, 152 n51

translation of, to angels, 116 n52

as virtuous man, 116

## Sethiani

Gnostic sect, 116 n52

## Sethur

elder from tribe of Joseph, 696

son of Michael, spy representing  
tribe of Asher, 705



- seven (number)  
 significance of, 8 n21  
*See also* number: 7; seventh
- seventh  
 day  
   rest on, as token of resurrection, 99  
   as Sabbath, 682 (*see also* Sabbath)  
 generation, most excellent, producing Enoch, 682  
 love of God for, 682  
 month, Tishri, month of holy days, 682  
 patriarch, Moses, 682  
 period of time, favorite of God, 682  
 sabbatical year, as year of Jubilee, 682  
 son of Jesse, David, 682  
 world, only one inhabited by human beings, 682  
 year, as sabbatical year, 682  
*See also* number: 7; seven (number)
- seventh-month child  
 all prophets as, 890 n13  
 Ichabod as, 890 n13  
 Isaac as, 890 n13  
 Samuel as, 890 n13
- sex  
 differentiation of, in embryo, 57 n20
- sexual desire  
 viewed as result of eating forbidden fruit, 79 n85
- sexual immorality  
 of generation of flood, 145 n26
- sexual intercourse  
 of Adam with animals, 66 n39  
 before fall of Adam and Eve, 66 n39  
 between men and demons, 82 n98  
 prohibited on Sabbath by Samaritans and other sects, 1125 n46
- Shaare Mavet  
 in fifth earth, 6  
 one of seven divisions of hell, 13  
*See also* hell
- Shaare Zalmavet  
 in fifth earth, 6  
 one of seven divisions of hell, 13  
*See also* hell
- Shabdaz  
 famous horse of Persian king Khorsau II, 1176 n169
- Shadad ben Ad  
 powerless against angel of death, 972
- shadow  
 not cast by demons, 82 n98  
 as soul that reflects body, 82 n98 (*see also* polypsychism)
- Shakkara (Liar). *See* Sherek
- Shakrura (Archdeceiver). *See* Sharkar
- Shalem  
 name given by Shem to site of altar of Abraham, 231
- Shalem (Place of Peace), 231, 307 n279 (*see also* Salem)
- Shalgiel (angel)  
 angel of snow, prostrating before Metatron, 130
- Shallum  
 another name for  
   Josiah, 1066 n1  
   Zedekiah, 1066 n1, 1062 n124  
 husband of prophetess Huldah, 1062 n118  
 name, meaning of, 1066 n1  
 son of Tikvah, husband of Huldah, revived by contact with bones of Elisha, 1030
- Shallum (Jeremiah's cousin)  
 descendant of Rahab, 844 n12
- Shallum (uncle of Jeremiah)  
 one of eight priests descended from Rahab, 1093 n65
- Shalmanesser  
 one of eight other names of Sennacherib, 1054 n92
- Shalmon (son of Nahshon, father of Boaz), 864 n34
- Shalom  
 elder from tribe of Asher, 696  
 one of seven men refusing to worship Baal, 872-873
- shamayim* (heaven). *See* heaven(s)
- Shamgar  
 succeeding Ehud, 869 n70
- Shamiel (angel)  
 confused with Shammiel, 17 n70  
 as Divine herald, 13  
*See also* Shammiel
- shamir, 34, 35  
 Abyssinian legend of, 975 n82  
 brought from Paradise by eagle, 975 n85  
 brought to Solomon, 974  
 created for use in sanctuary, 975 n82  
 created in twilight between sixth day and Sabbath, 82 n99, 975 n82 (*see also* under creation: sixth day)  
 disappearing after destruction of Temple, 35, 975 n82
- shamir (*cont.*)  
 entrusted by angel of sea to moorhen, 974  
 given by God to angel of sea, 974  
 guardian bird of, wild cock, 975 n85  
 properties of, 35  
 size of, 35  
 stone that splits rocks, used by Moses, 973  
 substance of, 975 n82  
 used for hewing stones of Temple, 35, 40 n162  
 as worm, 40 n165  
*See also* reptiles; salamander; serpent(s)
- Shammiel (angel)  
 probably correct reading for Shamiel, 17 n70  
*See also* Shamiel
- Shammua (son of Zaccur)  
 spy representing tribe of Reuben, 705
- Shamshiel (angel)  
 angel of day, prostrating before Metatron, 130  
 as prince of Paradise, 507
- Shaphar (son of Hori)  
 name, meaning of, 705  
 spy representing tribe of Simeon, 705
- Shapor (king)  
 cohorts of, swallowed by snake in desert of Shur, 566
- Sharkar (judge in Gomorrah), 208
- Shaul (elder from tribe of Simeon), 696
- shav* ("lie"). *See* shin (letter)
- shaving  
 as disgrace, 719
- Shavuot. *See* Pentecost
- Sheba (land), 959  
 distance from, to Palestine, 458 n21  
 inhabitants of, thinking Solomon to be Messiah, 244 n311  
 as land of sorcerers, 965 n55  
 queen of (*see* Queen of Sheba)
- Sheba (son of Bichri)  
 father of Jeroboam, 983  
 identified with Micah, son of Delilah, 884 n139  
 killed by inhabitants of Abel of Beth-maacah, 982 n2  
 rebelling against David, 922 n59, 981  
 taking refuge in Abel of Beth-maacah, 981-982 n2



Sheba (son of Keturah), 244 n311  
 Shebat. *See* Shevat  
 Shebir (king of Mahanaim)  
   slain by Jacob, 314  
 Shebnah (high priest)  
   afflicted with leprosy as punishment for evil deeds, 1051 n64  
   as Amarkol (high Temple official), 1051 n62  
   delivering Jerusalem into hands of Sennacherib, 1051 n63  
   dragged to death by Assyrians, 1048, 1051 n65  
   most prominent scholar of his time, 1051 n64  
   opponent of Hezekiah, 1048  
   treachery of, 1048  
 Shecaniah (elder from tribe of Asher), 696  
 Shechem (person)  
   and Dinah  
     rape of D. by S., 307  
     S. desiring to marry D., 307  
     S. giving city of Shechem to D., 405  
   outrage at, 307-309  
   son of Hamor, 308  
 Shechem (place)  
   bones of Joseph buried in, 429  
   depicted on Simeon's flag in wilderness, 688  
   given to David by Shechem (person), 405  
   given to Dinah as gift, 405  
   identified with Salem by Samaritans, 197 n102  
   inhabitants of, being circumcised, 308-309  
   and Jacob  
     Eliphaz and Esau pursuing J. opposite Shechem, 274  
     J. establishing bathhouses, marketplaces, and a mint in Shechem, 307 n280  
     J. journeying to Shechem, after Succoth, 304  
     J. settling in area around Shechem, 314  
     J.'s war against Shechem, 406 n377  
   Shechem as one of two gifts given to Joseph by Jacob, 405  
   Shechem as place of ill omen for J. and offspring, 331-332  
   survivors of, telling Jashub, king of Tappuah, what sons of Jacob had done, 310

Shechem (*cont.*)  
   ten tribes of Israel rebelling against David in, 331  
   to be called city of imbeciles, 438  
   war against, 309-311  
   wickedness of, 311  
 Shechemites  
   defeat of, 316 n292  
   killing of, justification for, 311 n290  
 sheep  
   associated with wine, 153, 155 n58  
   black, Jacob asked for, as wages, 290  
   of dedication offering, corresponding to government officials, 671  
   fleece of, tribute to priests, 721  
   Israel imaged as, 859, 860 n20  
   and sacrifice of Noah, 150  
 she-goat(s). *See* goat(s)  
 Sheilah (daughter of Jephthah)  
   God appearing to, 875  
   going out to meet Jephthah, 875  
   name, meaning of, 875  
   prayer of, 875  
   saying Torah speaks only of animal sacrifices, 875  
 shekel(s)  
   five, redemption money for first-born, 682  
   half  
     offering of  
       reason for, 637  
       to sanctuary at second census, 637  
     significance of, 637  
 sheker ("falsehood"). *See* shin (letter)  
 Shekinah  
   accompanying spies, 706  
   and angel(s)  
     angel(s) keeping faces toward, 503  
     distance from Shekinah to angels, 10 n30, 16 n64  
     glory of Shekinah as subsistence of angels, 16 n62, 207 n143  
     radiance of Shekinah sustaining angels, 635 n309  
   beheld by  
     dead rising from graves, 23 n97  
     Lot's wife when turning to look back, 213  
   brightness of, 117 (*see also* Shekinah: glory of; Shekinah: radiance of)

Shekinah (*cont.*)  
   bringing number of Israelites to 600,000 at time of Exodus, 393 n305  
   calling for repentance of sons of Korah, 727  
   causing loss of memory, 406  
   departing from  
     Abraham, 211, 212 n166  
     David for a time, 928  
   sanctuary on account of sins of Manasseh, 1057 n98  
   Shekinah never departing from western wall, 1076 n27  
   Temple and not returning until time of Isaiah, 1077 n30  
   descending between cherubim in Tabernacle, source of 17th of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127  
   drawing close to mortals because of Amram's piety, 473  
   drawn back by six righteous men (Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Levi, Kohath, Amram), 473  
   drawn back to earth by Moses, 473  
   dwelling  
     with husband and wife, 319 n312  
     on Mount of Olives for 13½ years, 1076 n27  
     only with those who are strong, rich, wise, and humble, 1032 n28  
     only with those whose spirit is joyful, 717 n550  
     originally among men, 473  
     in synagogue in Nehardea, 1063 n134  
     under tree of life, 118 n56  
   exile of, 542, 543 n240, 583 n150  
   Shekinah going with Israel into exile, 393 n305  
   first journey of, during Isaiah's time, 1057 n98  
   gazing at light of, as one delight of world to come, 645  
   glory of, as subsistence of angels, 16 n62, 207 n143 (*see also* Shekinah: brightness of; Shekinah: radiance of)  
   and Holy Land  
     Shekinah dwelling in, 260, 280 n137, 392  
     for sake of Jacob, 256 n35  
   Shekinah not able to reside outside of, 291



Shekinah (*cont.*)

- as holy spirit, 276 n124
- horn of, one of four horns in four corners of Tabernacle, 648
- and Isaac
  - I. beholding face of Shekinah, 837
  - I. giving up life at appearance of Shekinah, 232 n243
  - I. looking at Shekinah at time of Akedah, 267 n74
- Shekinah causing I. to forget secret of end of time, 406
- Shekinah deserting I., 270, 276 n124
- and Jacob
  - Shekinah accompanying J.'s funeral cortege, 413
  - Shekinah accompanying J. to Egypt, 392
  - counted among 70 family members, 396 n321
  - Shekinah addressing J., 392
  - Shekinah causing J. to forget secret of end of time, 406
  - Shekinah over bed of J., 400
  - Shekinah taking soul of J. with kiss, 411
  - Shekinah to rest on J., 291
  - Shekinah visiting J. on deathbed, 406
- kiss of, as manner of death of Aaron, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Miriam, and Moses, 411
- in Messianic time
  - Shekinah becoming visible at third blast of Elijah on trumpet, 1021
- Michael
  - as forerunner of Shekinah, in burning bush, 501
  - indicating presence of Shekinah, 502 n115
- and Moses
  - M. to look for Shekinah where rock shows imprint of human foot, 576 n122
  - M. uniting with Shekinah, 509
  - M. wishing Shekinah might dwell with Israel, 629
  - M. wishing Shekinah might not dwell with other nations, 629
- radiance of Shekinah providing nourishment for M., 634
- Shekinah and radiance of M.'s face, 619 n260

Shekinah (*cont.*)

- and Moses (*cont.*)
  - Shekinah assisting M. in census of Levites, 682
  - Shekinah communing with M. between cherubim on ark, 643-644
  - Shekinah descending upon earth for sake of M., 509
  - Shekinah speaking through M.'s mouth, 602 n201
- number of Israelites necessary for Shekinah to dwell in their midst, 592 n177
- place of, as place of great light, 619 n260
- presence of, 630 n288
  - in assembly of ten, 16 n64
  - indicated by appearance of Gabriel or Michael, 502 n115
  - one of six blessings of generation of wilderness, 86 n105
  - in wilderness march, 692
- protecting from
  - disease, 117
  - vermin, 118 n56
- radiance of (*see also* Shekinah: brightness of; Shekinah: glory of)
  - on faces of circumcised, 960
  - providing nourishment for hayyot and Moses, 634
  - sustaining angels, 635 n309
- redemption of, with Israel, 542
- remaining in Paradise, 117
- resting
  - on Joseph, 351
  - on one who is joyous, 266
  - in territory of Benjamin, 825 n926
- returning to earth on day of consecration of Tabernacle, 660
- returning to heaven, 1076 n27
- revealing self only to descendants of Jacob, 280 n137
- rivers of fire flowing before, 1047 n55
- stations of, 1077 n30
  - ten in number, 1057 n98, 1076 n27
- in Temple
  - in midst of precious stones in heavenly Temple, 816
  - Shekinah absent from Second Temple, 156 n65
  - Shekinah withdrawing from Temple, 1076 n27

Shekinah (*cont.*)

- in Temple (*cont.*)
  - of Solomon, 154
  - to dwell in Israel, 638
  - to rest on mountain, 594-595
  - transferred from earth to heaven, 117, 129
  - west as place of, 824 n914
  - withdrawal of, 118 n56
    - to heaven, 661 n380
    - to lowest heaven after sin of Adam, 473
    - to second heaven after Cain's crime, 473
    - to third heaven after sins of generation of Enoch, 473
    - to fourth heaven after sins of generation of flood, 473
    - to fifth heaven during building of Tower of Babel, 473
    - to sixth heaven because of wicked Egyptians at time of Abraham, 473
    - to seventh heaven because of abominations of Sodom, 473
- Shelah
  - name, meaning of, 346 n81
  - one of seven sinners, 856
- Shelemiah
  - one of scribes accompanying Ezra, 1125 n50
  - perhaps identified with Shimur, 1125 n50
  - son of Hananiah, 1069
  - unable to take revenge on Jeremiah, 1069
- Shelomi (elder from tribe of Asher), 696
- Shelomith
  - beauty of, 486
  - and Dathan, story of Moses and, 486
  - daughter of Dibri of tribe of Dan, 486
  - and Egyptian taskmaster
    - offspring of, 486
    - S. dishonored by, 486, 689
  - son of
    - mocking showbread, 691 n451
    - not of pure descent, 689
    - rejected by tribe of Dan, 689
    - sentenced to death by stoning for blasphemy, 690
  - name, meaning of ("my God is peace"), 679
  - prince of tribe of Simeon, 679
  - presenting dedication offering, 667-668



## Shem

academy of, 241, 242 n303 (*see also* academy; Bet ha-Midrash; Shem: and Eber, Bet ha-Midrash of)  
 allotment of lands, islands, languages, and writing of, 157  
 ancestor of Assyrians, 1047-1048 n59  
 as bearer of revelation, 102 n1  
 book of, 160 n75  
 at burial of  
   Abraham, 237 n268  
   Sarah, 235  
 circumcising Abraham, 203 n126  
 at circumcision of Isaac, 218  
 death of, 262  
 and Eber  
   Bet ha-Midrash of, 252, 256 n29 (*see also* academy; Bet ha-Midrash; Shem: academy of)  
   Jacob studying at, 255, 261  
   transmitting instruction and knowledge to Jacob, 327  
 as father of Aram, 346 n79  
 as first prophet to heathens, 761  
 going to Paradise and receiving remedies, 159 n75  
 identified with Melchizedek, 197 n102 (*see also* Shem-Melchizedek)  
   receiving name when God appointed him priest, 196, 197 n102  
 image of, on Solomon's throne, 968  
 inheriting middle of earth, 156  
 and Noah  
   S. as son of N., 146 n30  
   S. blessed by N., 154  
   S. given medical book by N., 157  
   S. offering sacrifice for N., 150  
   S. rewarded for covering N., 154  
 one of seven patriarchs of world, 968  
 one of seven pious men in pre-Abrahamic times, 116-117 n53 (*see also under* pious: men)  
 one of seven with overlapping life terms, 982 n4  
 praise of, 154  
 as presiding judge over Tamar, 347 n89  
 as priest, 152 n51

Shem (*cont.*)

prophesying to nations for 400 years, 761  
 receiving knowledge of Torah from Enoch, 152 n51  
 relating story of ark to Eliezer, servant of Abraham, 147  
 at right hand of God, 450 (*see also* God: right hand of)  
 sent as prophet, 217  
 taking care of domestic animals, 148 n37  
 third of Noah's sons, 592  
 Yofiel as teacher of, in Kabbalah, 505 n117

## Shema

evil spirits becoming powerless when Israelites recite, 775, 775 n774  
 recited by Israelites upon awakening and retiring, 775  
 recited by Jacob when Joseph embraced him, 394  
*See also* prayers, Jewish

## Shemaiah

and Abtalion, as kings of Baal-bek, 1048 n61  
 bearing divine message to Jeroboam, 982 n4  
 death of  
   S. as martyr executed by Baasha, wicked king of Israel, 982 n5  
   S. as one of martyred prophets, according to Josephus, 1078 n30  
 descendant of  
   Sennacherib, 869 n72, 1046  
   Sisera, 869 n72  
 one of those called "man of God" in Scripture, 838 n965 (*see also* man of God)

## Shemaiah b. Nethanel

name Moses called by Israel, 480

## Shemeber

the voluptuary, king of Zeboiim, one of godless kings of Palestine, 194

## Shemhazael

having intercourse with wife of Ham on ark, 152 n54  
 Sihon and Og as sons of, 752 n667

## Shemhazai (angel)

asking to dwell among men, 135-136  
 as chief of angels, 119  
 grandfather of Sihon and Og, 751  
 and Istehar, 136

Shemhazai (*cont.*)

penance of, 136  
 teaching men about exorcism and roots, 119  
 two sons of, 136

## Shemhazai (fallen angel), 118 n56

## Shemiel

one of seven men refusing to worship Baal, 872-873

Shemini Atzeret. *See* Tabernacles

## Shem-Melchizedek

born with sign of Abrahamic covenant, 197 n102 (*see also* covenant[s]: sign of)  
 spoken of by Church Fathers, 197 n102

*See also* Shem

## Sheol

all creatures descending to, 806 n891  
 in fifth earth, 6  
 one of seven divisions of hell, 13  
 outer division of, those slain before their time in, 607  
 Samael searching for Moses in, 835  
 two divisions in (inner and outer), 606-607  
*See also* Gehenna; Gehinnom; Hades; hell; netherworld; Tofet; water(s): below

## Shephatiah (elder from tribe of Judah), 696

## shepherd(s)

Amos as, 501 n109  
 David as, 500, 501 n109  
 Jacob as, 501 n109  
 life of, as proper preparation for being ruler, 329 n6  
 Moses as, 500, 501 n109  
 seven

  assisting Messiah, 100 n142  
   called Messiahs, 100 n142  
   as patriarchs and prophets, 100 n142  
   to lead Israel with Messiah in Messianic time, 508

task of, 500

three (Moses, Aaron, Miriam), 737-739

## Sherek (one of judges of Sodom), 208

## Sheshai

and Ahiman and Talmi, three giants in Palestine, 707  
 name, meaning of, 707  
 one of three giants summoned by Sarah, 236 n259



## Sheshbazzar

Daniel identified with, 1096 n76,  
1120 n23  
name, meaning of, 1096 n76  
Zerubbabel identified with, 1120  
n23

## Shethar (prince of India)

having charge of wine, 1136  
one of seven princes of Persia  
consulted by Ahasuerus  
about fate of Vashti, 1136

Shetiyyah. *See* Eben Shetiyyah

## Shevat (month)

1st of  
beginning of plagues, 528 n174  
Moses serving Joshua from, to 6  
Adar, 810-812  
23rd of  
beginning of war with  
Benjaminites, 883 n134  
campaign of 11 tribes against chil-  
dren of Benjamin in, 1151  
organization of Great Synagogue  
in, 1152 n108  
wars against worshipers of image of  
Micah in, 1152 n108  
*See also* date

shewbread. *See* showbread

## Shibah

name, meaning of, 261  
place where Isaac and Philistines  
renewed covenant, 261

## Shibboleth

pronounced as Sibboleth by  
Ephraimites, 406 n375,  
877 n109

## Shield of Abraham, 188 n56

*See also* God: names and titles of,  
187

## Shila, Rabba bar

Elijah speaking with, in heaven,  
1010

## Shillem (son of Naphtali)

name, meaning of, 434

## Shiloah

souls bathing in, 97 n134

## Shiloh

conquered by sons of Jacob, 315  
king of (Zerori), slain by Jacob,  
314  
sanctuary at, one of seven holy  
places destroyed by Esau,  
264  
as spiritual center of Israel, 887  
Shimeathites (descendants of Jethro),  
590

## Shimei (son of Gera)

ancestor of Mordecai, 1139

Shimei (*cont.*)

## and David

S. as one of ten adversaries of  
D., 922 n59  
S. executed for ill treatment of  
D., 947  
S. hurling five insulting names  
at D., 931 n96  
S. mocking D., 1139-1140  
S.'s ill treatment of D., 948 n11  
S. spared by D. and Solomon,  
1140

distinction of, due to merits of  
wife, 1140

## executed

for ill treatment of David, 947  
by pronouncing of name of  
God, 948 n11  
by Solomon for breaking oath,  
948 n11

Solomon's teacher, 947

Shimeon. *See* Simeon

## Shimi bar Ashi, R.

healed by Elijah after swallowing  
noxious reptile, 1003

## Shimron (son of Issachar)

name, meaning of ("the observing  
one"), 433

## Shimshai

casting lots for Haman, 1150  
one of Haman's sons, 1148 n95  
secretary to Ahasuerus, 1171-1172  
n168

## Shimur

and friends, hiding Temple vessels  
in tower at Baghdad, 1091  
perhaps identical to Shelemiah,  
1125 n50

## shin (letter)

creation of world through, 3  
numerical value of, 263 n69  
in Shittim, standing for *shalom*  
("peace"), 647

## standing for

*shav* ("lie"), 3  
*sheker* ("falsehood"), 3

*See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet

## Shinab

father hater, king of Admah, one  
of godless kings of  
Palestine, 194

## Shinar

abode of Rakyon, 192  
capital of Nimrod, 161  
name  
associated with Babylon, 165  
n88  
meaning of, 165 n88

## ship

Anibal sailing to Kittim in, 420  
depicted on tribe of Zebulun's flag  
in wilderness, 688  
Latinus sailing to Africa in, 420

## Shiphrah

Hebrew midwife, 469 (*see also*  
Puah; Jochebed; Miriam)  
identified with Jochebed, 469, 470  
n17  
name, meaning of, 470 n17  
as proselyte, 470 n17

## Shishak (pharaoh)

called "lame Pharaoh," 1062 n123,  
1131 n13  
demanding daughter's jointure,  
983  
father-in-law of Solomon, 969  
name, meaning of, 984 n13  
Zebub ("fly") as real name of,  
984 n13

## and Solomon's throne

lameness of Shishak caused by  
Solomon's throne, 1131  
n13

Shishak appropriating Solomon's  
throne, 969

Shishak attempting to ascend  
Solomon's throne, 1131  
n13

Shishak carrying off Solomon's  
throne, 983

taking wealth of Egypt away from  
Israelites, 397, 983

## Shittim

meaning of ("follies"), 647  
plague on sinners of, 783  
significance of letters of, 647  
sin committed at, 781 n790  
24,000 descendants of Simeon  
falling at, 407  
well of  
identified with Well of  
Lewdness, 778, 779 n787  
relation to that of Sodom, 215  
n184

## shittim wood

bequeathed to Isaac by Abraham,  
648 n344  
bequeathed to Jacob by Isaac, 648  
n344  
boards made from, never decaying,  
647  
for Tabernacle  
of altar of Tabernacle, 646  
coming from Paradise, 648 n344  
one of 13 materials for construc-  
tion of Tabernacle, 640 (*see*  
*also under* Tabernacle)



shittim wood (*cont.*)  
 for Tabernacle (*cont.*)  
   used for Tabernacle as atone-  
   ment for sin committed in  
   Shittim, 647  
 taken from Paradise by Adam, 648  
   n344  
 Shobach (king of Armenia)  
   mother of, using magic against  
   Joshua, 851  
   son of king slain by Joshua, 850  
   uniting 45 kings of Persia and  
   Media against Joshua,  
   850  
 Shobach the Aramean  
   one of ten adversaries of David,  
   922 n59  
   stature of, 921  
   war of David against, 921  
 Shobal  
   son of, one of five other names of  
   Bezalel, 642 (*see also*  
   Bezalel: five other names  
   of)  
 Shobi (son of Nahash)  
   coming to aid of David in rebel-  
   lion of Absalom, 932  
 shoe(s)  
   loosed from feet  
   of brothers in Egypt, 336  
   ceremony of, 867 n65  
   as indication of giving up con-  
   jugal life, 509, 511 n122  
   in presence of Shekinah, 509,  
   511 n122  
   as punishment, 336  
   for failing to enter into levi-  
   rate marriage, 336, 337  
   n54  
   as sign of mourning, 844  
   as part of price of Joseph, 337 n51  
 shofar  
   to be blown by God in Messianic  
   times, 1022 n116  
   to be blown by Michael in  
   Messianic times, 1022  
   n116  
   *See also* instruments, musical;  
   ram(s): horn of; trumpet(s)  
 Shokhen Ad  
   as acrostic, 1128 n58  
   composed by Isaac, 1128 n58  
   *See also* prayers, Jewish  
 showbread, 48  
   mocked by son of Shelomith, 691  
   n451  
 Shuah  
   one of seven sinners, 856

Shunammite, 1028-1029  
   and Elisha  
     E. predicting that Shunammite  
     would have child, 1028  
     hospitality of Shunammite to E.,  
     1028  
   as mother of Habakkuk, 1028 n10  
   as mother of prophet Iddo, 1028  
   n10  
   one of 22 women of valor, 238  
   n271  
   rewarded for hospitality, 1029 n14  
   sister of Abishag, wife of prophet  
   Iddo, 1028  
 Shunil (elder from tribe of Gad), 696  
 Shur, desert of  
   filled with snakes, lizards, and scor-  
   pions, 566  
   Israel journeying to, 566  
   snakes in, 568 n78  
 Shushan  
   birthplace of Daniel, 1117 n17  
   capital city of Elam, 1132  
   fast and prayer meeting in, 1164-  
   1165  
   festivities in, 1132-1134  
   Jews fleeing from, 1132  
   misfortunes happening in, after  
   edict of annihilation, 1157  
 Sibboleth  
   versus Shibboleth, 877 n109  
 Sibyl in the moon, 256 n35  
 sickness  
   of Adam, 91-92  
   window of, in first heaven, 503  
   *See also* disease; healing; illness;  
   magic arts; medicine  
 sight  
   one of ten parts of body received  
   from God, 606 (*see also*  
   body, human)  
 sign  
   Eliezer recognizing wife of Isaac by,  
   239  
   forbidden to ask prophet for, 1052  
   n79  
   of identification between Rachel  
   and Jacob, 282, 282 n159  
   of successor of Saul, 899  
 signet  
   as symbol of royalty, 344  
 sign of covenant. *See* covenant[s]: sign  
   of; *also* circumcision  
 signs of earth. *See* earth(s): signs of  
 signs of moon. *See* moon: signs of  
 signs of sun. *See* sun: signs of  
 Sihon  
   claimed as child by Ham, 152 n54

Sihon (*cont.*)  
   defeated by Israel, 751-752  
   as giant, 751, 829  
   guardian angel of, put in chains by  
   God, 751  
   killed in war against Israel, 751  
   king of Amorites, 751-753  
   name  
     meaning of ("foal"), 751  
     other names of  
       Arad, 751, 752 n669  
       Kenaani, 752 n669  
   and Og  
     as sentinels of Palestine, 759  
     n716  
     sons of Ahiah, son of  
     Shemhazai, one of fallen  
     angels, 751  
     as sons of Shemhazael, 752  
     n667  
     victories over, greater than vic-  
     tory over Pharaoh, 755,  
     756 n700  
   son of Ham's wife, 752 n668  
   sons of Shemhazai as ancestors of,  
   137 n10  
   war with, taking place in Elul, 753  
 silence  
   imposed on world during conflict  
   between God and Baal,  
   994-995  
 silver  
   associated with Media, 648  
   cup, reserved for king and viceroy  
   in Egypt, 383 n256 (*see*  
   *also* cup, silver)  
   and gold  
     sixth artificial heaven of Hiram  
     made from, 1104  
     third and fifth divisions of  
     Paradise built from, 19  
     utensils made from, in  
     Solomon's time, 948  
     wainscoting of fifth division of  
     Paradise made from, 19  
   hall of, in Paradise, for righteous of  
   Israel, 23 n97  
   one of 13 materials for construc-  
   tion of Tabernacle, 640 (*see*  
   *also under* Tabernacle)  
   one of thrones of Nimrod made of,  
   162  
   second division of Paradise built  
   from, 19  
   in Tabernacle, symbolizing sover-  
   eignty of Persia and Media  
   over Israel, 640  
   on throne of Pharaoh, 364



silver (*cont.*)

- thrones for righteous proselytes made from, 507
- thrones in Paradise made from, 507
- of vessels in dedication offering, corresponding to years from creation to advent of Moses in 40th year, 671

## Simeon (priest)

- one who hid holy vessels, 1092 n63

## Simeon (son of Jacob)

- age of, at death, 120 years, 437
- bones of, carried to Hebron, 437 and Bunah

Saul as son of, 348

- censured by Jacob for sin, 410 n387

deathbed confession of, 436

death of, 437

- descendants of, to be dispersed, 407

Dinah as wife of, 348 n95

fasting for two years, 436

- frightening valiant men of Pharaoh, 374

and Gad, setting out to slay Joseph, 332

and Joseph

S. guilty of envy of J., 436

S. kept by J. as hostage, 374

S. not wanting to relinquish J.'s coat, 340

S. threatening war on Midianites to get J., 335

S. throwing J. into pit, 333, 334 n41, 374

and Levi

blessing of, by Jacob, 407

S. included in L.'s blessing, according to Philo, 825 n923

killing inhabitants of Shechem, 308-309

wanting to kill Joseph, 332, 334 n34

marriage of, to sister Dinah, 347 name

inscribed on standard of tribe of Reuben, 686

meaning of ("yonder is sin"), 285, 433, 436

one of weak among sons of Jacob, 396 n324

right hand of, withering for seven days, 436

second of sons of Jacob to die, 465 n2

Simeon (*cont.*)

second son of Leah, 285

as spokesman of brothers, 336 n49

terrible voice of, 335, 336 n49

to destroy Mizraim with hand, 385

to join Reuben in camp in south, 685

treated kindly in prison in Egypt, 379

tribe of

elders from (Jamin, Jachin, Zohar, Ohad, Shaul, Zimri), 696

flag of, green with picture of Shechem on it, 688

having largest number of sinners, 857 n3

losing 24,000 men in plague at Shittim, 783

not blessed by Moses, 821, 825 n923

not furnishing Israel with king, 825 n923

precious stone of smaragd, 651

topaz, 856

prince of

Shelumiel, 679

Zimri, 779

rejected because of sins at Shittim, 650 n351

significance of dedication offering of, 667-668

spy representing (Shaphat), 705

to bring forth teachers, 407

tradition of Pharisees belonging to, 410 n387

warfare of

battle of Sartan, 315

S. and Levi killing inhabitants of Shechem, 308-309

S. attacking Edom to west, 321

S. threatening war on Midianites to get Joseph, 335

wife of, Canaanite, 349 n98

Zimri as descendant of, 285

Simḥat Torah. *See* Day of Rejoicing of Law

Simon (son of Jacob). *See* Simeon

Simon bar Yoḥai, R.

associating self with Ahijah, 981

Elijah imparting secrets of Torah to, 1018

hiding for 13 years to escape Romans, 1001

not wishing to converse with R. Joshua b. Levi, 1012

pride of son of, 1008

## sin

of Adam, causing death of Moses and those free from sin, 806 n888

brought into world by woman, 65

fear as consequence of, 636 n311

hereditary, 100 n142

not taking away merit of study of Torah, 924 n67

of sons of Jacob, never forgiven, 336 n50

to be abolished in world to come, 306 n275

window of, in first heaven, 503

*See also* sinfulness; sins

## Sinai, Mount

and Moses

M. asking Mount Sinai to intercede, 808

M. erecting altar on Mount Sinai, 598

name, meaning of, 500, 501 n113

no idolatry on, 595

one of four mountains where heavenly Jerusalem will descend, 595 n184

one of six names of Mount Horeb, 500

one of three mountains retained by God in desert, 736

originally part of Mount Moriah, 595

within precincts of Shem, 156

preferred as site of revelation, 595

retained by God as place of revelation, 736

revelation at, 591-593, 599-602

and fire, 12, 200 n114

one of three outstanding moments in life of Moses, 815 n902

seven weeks from Exodus to, 761 n723

shown to Jacob, 277

voices heard at, 605 n214

rising into air, 601

Samael searching for Moses at, 836

six names of (Desert Sin; Desert

Kadesh; Desert Kadmut;

Desert Paran; Desert Sinai;

Horeb), 593

to return to Mount Moriah in future world, 595

## sinar

garment to be used by women to cover lower parts of bodies, 1122

meaning of, 1125 n47



sinful cities. *See* cities: sinful

sinfulness

of human beings, 1

and Messiah, 1

repentance created on account of, 1

and reward and punishment, 1

Temple service as atonement for, 1

*See also* sin; sins

Sinim, Land of

as dwelling-place of sons of

Rechab, 1089 n57

Sinites

land provisionally granted to, 157

sinless life

four leading (Amram, Benjamin,

Chileab, Jesse), 473

sinner

cloud of glory disappearing from, 779

God not wishing sinners to be publicly disgraced, 769 n748

having pious son

throne for, in Paradise, made

from copper, 507

identified by Kenaz

five in number, 480, 857 n3

six in number, 110, 857 n3

punishment of, 625-627

plague as, 626

through unclean spirits, 157

repentant

thrones for, in Paradise, made

from gold, 507

seven in number (*variously*

Canaan, Put, Selath,

Nimrod, Elath, Desuath,

Ham, Shelah, Diul,

Shuah), 856, 857 n9

unable to move, 847 n28

worshiping own images in water,

872, 873 n98

sin offering. *See* offering, sin

sins

causing destruction of generation

of Tower, 164-165 n88

causing flood, 140 n17

eight of Pharaoh, inhabitants of

sinful cities, builders of

Tower of Babel,

Sennacherib, and

Nebuchadnezzar, 562 n54

expiation of

12 months as term of, 526

forgiveness of, 211

on account of Isaac, 231

for bridegroom on day of wedding, 902 n53

sins (*cont.*)

forgiveness of (*cont.*)

for elder on day of ordination, 902 n53

for king on day of coronation, 902 n53

and sacrifices, 198

sins of Israel, 232 n248

keeping back rain (lies), 936 n112

punished in hell, 506-507

three cardinal (idolatry, immorality,

bloodshed), 280 n147

sirens, 40-41 n168

Sisera (general), 867

approached by Jael while fleeing,

868

battle against

one of three occasions for war of

confusion, 896 n42

conqueror of world at age of 30

years, 867, 869 n72

death of

in battle, 871 n85

body of, sent to mother, 869

S. meeting death at hands of

woman, 1163

S. suffering death by fire, 1048

n60

fighting against Israel with 900

chariots, 1163

intoxication of, 871 n85

leading 31 kings of Palestine, 868

name, 869 n72

preventing women from taking rit-

ual baths, 1163

punished with heavenly fire for

blasphemy, 869 n72

reminiscent of Alexander the

Great, 869 n72

Shemaiah and Abtalion as descen-

dants of, 869 n72

stature of, 867

strength of voice of, 867

troops of, drowned in Kishon

River, 868

victory over

won by tribes of Naphtali and

Zebulun, 870 n73

won on first night of Passover,

871 n85

wonders in battle against, rational

explanation of, 870 n81

sister

same as wife, 878 n111

Sithri (elder from tribe of Levi), 696

Sivan (month)

1st of

waters beginning to recede, 148

Sivan (*cont.*)

6th of

birth and translation of Enoch, 127

Moses exposed, 479 n47

revelation of Torah on Mount

Sinai, 479 n47, 297 n188

7th of

Moses remaining in heaven

from, to 17 Tammuz, 629

n286

revelation on Sinai, 297 n188

15th of

birth of Isaac, 219 n203

revelation on Sinai, 297 n188

23rd of

Mordecai recalling edict of

Haman, 412

27th of

Moses sending spies from

Kadesh-Barnea, 707

Ethiopian Zerah conquered by Asa

in, 1151

festival in, one of three given as

reward for observing

Sabbath, 572

revelation on Sinai occurring in,

202 n115

*See also* date

Siwan. *See* Sivan

sixty fiery scourges, 1080, 1081 n39

six-winged creatures, in seventh

heaven, 125

skin

garments of, of Adam and Eve, 161

of goat, used for Tabernacle, in

remembrance of Jacob, 268

n88

one of five parts of body received

from mother, 606 (*see also*

body, human)

skin eruptions

venom of viper as cure for, 43

*See also* leprosy

slain ones

before their time, in outer division

of Sheol, 606-607

slander, 703 n494

bells on robe of Aaron atoning for,

650

as grievous sin, 280 n147

as most abominable sin, 716 n547

one of eight sins committed by

Pharaoh, inhabitants of

sinful cities, builders of

Tower of Babel, Sennach-

erib, and Nebuchadnezzar,

562 n54, 1048 n60



slander (*cont.*)

- one of 13 sins punished by leprosy, 675 (*see also* leprosy)
- punishment of, 703
  - being eaten alive by worms, 908 n106

## slaughtering, ritual

- and fins of Leviathan, 32 n139
- rules for, observed by brothers of Joseph, 328

## slavery

- as evil, 167
- Noah first to introduce, 153

## sleep

- of Adam, purpose of, 64
- as death, 61 n25
- deep, as foretaste of death, 929 n80
- purpose of, 64
- sent by God to Israelites on night of tenth plague, 538 n216
- as sign of mortality, 66 n37
- 60 breaths of, 927
- about one-half hour, 929 n80

## small

- more precious than great in eyes of God, 301 n251

## smaragd

- breaking when looked at by unchaste woman, 651
- stone of Simeon in breastplate of Aaron, 651
- See also* precious stones

## smoke

- descending, as sign of rejection, 105 n13
- God's grace indicated by, 661 n380
- rising, as sign of acceptance, 105 n13

## snail(s)

- murex, producing Tyrian purple dye, 377
- purple, possessions of Zebulun distinguished by, 667
- as remedy for boils, 43

## snake(s)

- arising from rotting bones of Balaam, 796
- used for three enchantments, 796
- coiled around neck of pet lion of Nebuchadnezzar, 1103
- in desert of Shur, Israelites not fearing, 566
- and lizard

- hababar as offspring of, 324
- in Mordecai's dream, 1162

## sneeze, blessing after, 401 n357

## snow

- archangel Gabriel created from, 16 n63
- heavens created out of, 11 n43
- ishim (angels) made of, 504
- as primeval component of earth, 8 n18

- Shalgriel as angel of, 130

## snuff dishes, on Solomon's throne, 968

## Socrates

- as disciple of Ahitophel, 923

## Sodi (elder from tribe of Zebulun), 696

## Sodom

- cruelty to animals in, 209
- despoiled by Chedorlaomer, Arioch, and Tidal, 194
- destruction of, 206
  - by angels, 212
  - time of, 213-214
- and Gomorrah, as sinful cities, 207
- greed of, 208-209
- inhabitants of, drawing water from Well of Lewdness, 779 n787
- laws of, 209
- salt of, poisonous quality of, 215 n184
- story of traveler and fox in, 207-208
- thieves in, 209
- wealth of, 208-209

## Sodomites

- cruelty of, 209
- favorable description of, 210 n155
- punishment of, 214 n170, 215 n179
- sins of, 140 n18
- to be judged by heavenly court, 211 n159
- tried by equal numbers of angels and human souls, 211 n159
- wickedness of, 210 n155

## sodomy

- practiced by Nebuchadnezzar on captive kings, 1106, 1106 n107

## soft

- conquering hard on five occasions, 918 n42

## soil

- changing when Egyptians step on it, one of ten miracles at Red Sea, 556

## virgin

- Christological explanation of, 54 n15
- and creation of Adam, 54 n15

## Solomon

- adding benediction to Grace after Meals, 1128 n58
- age of, when assuming throne, 946 n1
- and animals
  - animals subservient to S., 962
  - S. knowing language of animals, 957-958 n34, 958
- appointing Zadok as high priest, 947 n10
- attempting to discover time of advent of Messiah, 955 n18
- author/composer of
  - books of Sons of the East, 978 n93
  - conjuring books, 964 n48
  - incantations to alleviate diseases, 962
- proverbs
  - 800 in number, 950
  - Scripture counting them as 3,000 in number, 950
- psalms, 823
  - Psalms 30, according to Haggadah, 564 n59
- Song of Songs and books of Proverbs and Ecclesiastes, 977 n93
- Yishtabbah, 1128 n58
- banished from kingdom by Asmodeus, 975
- becoming chief cook for king of Ammon, 976
- as beggar, 975-978
  - S. atoning for three sins by wandering as beggar for three years, 975-976
- as beloved of God, 168 n4 (*see also* beloved of God)
- and Benaiah
  - story about chess game of, 978
- coins struck by, depicting S.'s name, David's name, and Jerusalem, 930 n85
- compared with Nebuchadnezzar, 760
- and David
  - parallels between, 955 n24
  - S. carrying out deathbed instructions of D., 945
  - S. putting treasures in tomb of D., 942
  - S. succeeding D. at age of 12 years, 945
  - superiority of S. to David, 966



Solomon (*cont.*)

death of  
 legend concerning death of S.  
 similar to legend of death  
 of Moses, 833 n92

and demons  
 demons assisting in building of  
 Temple, 962-963  
 demons at S.'s throne, 970 n69  
 S. able to turn power of demons  
 to his advantage, 962  
 S. as master of demons, 962-  
 965  
 S. inventing incantations to  
 exorcise demon, 962  
 and story of spirit stealing  
 money and food of king's  
 page, 962-963

dominion of  
 over all creation, 961 n38  
 over spirits and demons, 964  
 n48

dream revelation of, in Gibeon,  
 949

fate of, compared with fate of Job  
 and David, 463 n39

15 generations from Abraham to  
 S., 967 n57

food at table of, 971

forfeiting power to perform mirac-  
 ulous deeds, 964

as friend of God, 168 n4 (*see also*  
 friend of God)

games and shows of, 970  
 games of chess, 978

giving judgment without evidence  
 of witnesses, 956 n25

and God  
 glorification of name of God by  
 S., 824 n913  
 God appearing to S. in dream  
 revelation in Gibeon, 949  
 S. as name of God in Song of  
 Songs, 946 n2 (*see also*  
 God: names and titles of)  
 S. growing unmindful of God,  
 973  
 S. led by God to Ammon, 976  
 S. never recognized by God as  
 "servant of Lord," 805  
 n880 (*see also* Samson)

growing tropical plants in  
 Palestine, 962

and Hiram of Tyre  
 correspondence between, 958  
 n36  
 story of war between, 980 n100

holy spirit coming upon, 977 n93

Solomon (*cont.*)

idolatry of  
 S. building temples to Baal and  
 Raphan, 964  
 S. making images of brazen  
 oxen, 949 n12

invited by God to make request,  
 198

and Jeroboam, conflict between,  
 981

Jerusalem named after, 232 n253

and Joab, S. punishing J., 945-947

as king  
 anointing of, in public, 945  
 counteracting Adonijah's claim  
 to throne, 946 n3  
 court of, 978-980  
 length of reign of, 40 or 80  
 years, 946 n1  
 nations to bow down before  
 Israel during reign of, 236  
 n267  
 S. as third of Jewish kings, 592  
 S. as wicked king, 967 n59  
 S. reminded of duties by seven  
 heralds, 969, 1101 n93  
 S. ruling over all creatures of  
 world, 958  
 S. walking in ways of Lord only  
 for first four years of reign,  
 949 n12

and magic, 957 n32  
 magic carpet of, Arabic origin of  
 legend, 973 n77  
 magic ring of, 964, 965 n56,  
 973, 976

as Messiah, 967 n59  
 S. thought by inhabitants of  
 Sheba to be Messiah, 244  
 n311

name  
 meaning of, 945, 946 n2  
 S. as one of six men given name  
 by God before birth, 201,  
 946 n2 (*see also* under  
 name)

names and titles of  
 "elect of God," 912 n1  
 father of wisdom, 955 n18  
 other names of, 857 n13  
 as attributes (Agur, Jakeh,  
 Lemuel, Ithiel), 946 n2  
 Ben, Jakeh, Ithiel, 945  
 Jedidiah as real name of S.,  
 945  
 Koheleth, 946 n2

Nathan (prophet) as teacher of,  
 948 n11

Solomon (*cont.*)

new ordinances and ceremonies  
 introduced by  
 extension of prohibited mar-  
 riages, 955 n18  
 institution of *eruv*, 955 n18  
 washing hands before meals,  
 955 n18

one of five kings anointed, 893 n30

one of seven pillars of earth, 9 n28  
 (*see also* under world[s])

one of ten members of board of  
 intercalation, 937 n124

opinion of  
 differing from that of David on  
 seat of wisdom, 956 n24  
 that head (intellect) is seat of  
 wisdom, 956 n24

ordering execution of Adonijah,  
 946 n3

pool of, drying up on Sabbath,  
 1089 n56

pride of  
 and story of ants, 971-972  
 and story of magic carpet, 971

as prophet, 977 n93

and Rehoboam  
 S. calling on R. to slay Joab, 947  
 n10

riding on she-mule that was special  
 act of creation, 945

as ruler of world, 162 n82 (*see also*  
 cosmocrator)

sin(s) of (*see also* Solomon: and  
 women)  
 amassing silver and gold, 948,  
 973  
 having many wives, 949 n16,  
 973, 975 n80  
 keeping many horses, 948, 973  
 marrying foreign wives, 948,  
 967 n59  
 multiplying gold, 973  
 three in number, 976  
 transgressing biblical laws, 948

story about  
 demon Ornias and old man  
 with impious son, 964  
 hoopoe, 958-959  
 magic carpet of, 971  
 S. and fallen angels Azza and  
 Azrael, 962  
 S. and magnificent building of  
 eagles, 972  
 S. putting daughter in high  
 tower, 979  
 that S. died without regaining  
 throne, 977 n93



Solomon (*cont.*)

story about (*cont.*)  
   visiting rich man and poor man, 975  
 succeeding to throne by law of inheritance, 946 n3  
 summoning Beelzeboul, 963  
 summoning creatures to dance and entertain, 958  
 and Temple  
   building of Temple, 641  
   demon bringing cornerstone up out of Red Sea, 964  
   demons assisting in, 962, 963  
   instructions concerning furniture and vessels of Temple transmitted from David to S., 967 n57  
   source of 14th of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127  
   dedication of, as source of 18th of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127  
   Shekinah to dwell in, 154  
   S. drinking wine when Temple completed, 949 n13  
 throne of, 968-970  
   Ahasuerus not daring to sit on, 969, 1130  
   brazen images on, 949 n12  
   brought by Alexander the Macedonian to Egypt, 1131 n13  
   carried to Egypt by Pharaoh Necho in time of Jehoash, 969  
   carried to Egypt during life of Rehoboam, 969  
   Cyrus as only Gentile ruler to sit on, 1115 n7  
   Cyrus found worthy to ascend, 1131 n13  
   damaged in time of Epiphanes, 1131-1132 n13  
   Darius not daring to sit on, 969  
   demons at, 970 n69  
   description of, 968-969, 970 n69  
   fate of, 1131 n13  
   finally brought to Rome, 1132 n13  
   history of, 1131 n13  
   inscriptions on, 970 n70  
   legends about, 970 n70  
   lost by Sennacherib to Hezekiah, 969  
   made use of by cosmocrators, 970 n72

Solomon (*cont.*)

throne of (*cont.*)  
   magnificence of, 968  
   Nebuchadnezzar injured while attempting to ascend, 1097 n80  
   only able to be used by S. and descendants, 970 n72  
   Pharaoh becoming lame when trying to ascend, 1060, 1062 n123  
   reaching Elam through Darius, 969  
   regained by Asa, 985  
   sent by ship to Greece by Epiphanes son of Antiochus, 1131 n13  
   Shishak attempting to ascend, 1131 n13  
   similarity of, to Divine Throne, 864 n39  
   symbolic explanations of six steps of, 970 n70  
   as symbol of Cosmocratia, 1132 n13  
   taken from Egypt by Sennacherib, 969  
   taken from Egypt to Babylonia by Nebuchadnezzar, 969  
   taken from Greeks by Romans, 969  
   taken from Median rulers by Greeks, 969  
 and Torah  
   S. praised for mastery of Torah, 955 n18  
   S. to spring from Jacob as nation of Torah, 252  
 from tribe of Judah, 642  
 two scribes of, Elihoreph and Ahijah, 979  
 in valley of ants, 971-972  
   S. speaking with ants, 972  
 wealth of, 948  
   coming in miraculous way, 949 n16  
   diminishing after marriage to Pharaoh's daughter, 949 n16  
 and wine, 958  
 wisdom of, 949-958  
   akin to divine wisdom, 956 n25  
   animals submitting controversies to S., 951-952  
   brought to bear on foreign rulers, 954-955  
   and case of  
     child claimed by two mothers, 347 n89, 950, 955 n26

Solomon (*cont.*)

wisdom of (*cont.*)  
   and case of  
     debtor and egg, 956 n27  
     man with jug of milk and serpent, 951-952  
     poor man with sack of flour, 956 n27  
     Roman maiden and youth involving theft, 951  
     three men accusing one another of theft, 951  
     two-headed Cainite, 950-951  
   excelling wisest men of all other nations, 955 n24  
   fame spread far and wide, 952  
   49 gates of wisdom open to S., 950  
   greater than that of Ethan the Ezrahite, Heman, Calcol, Darda, three sons of Mahol, Abraham, Moses, Joseph, generation of wilderness, Adam, 949-950  
   as knowledge of science and philosophy, 955 n18  
   learned from holy book, 142  
   legend of thief who betrayed self, 957 n30  
   manifested in equipment and ornamentation of Temple, 966  
   and riddles  
     of Queen of Sheba, 955, 959-961  
     S. baffled by riddle of Abdamon, 955  
   S. asking for wisdom, 949  
   S. fasting 40 days in order to be granted wisdom, 955 n18  
   statements of S. concerning virtuous men and women, 952  
   and story of  
     guest wanting to learn language of animals, 953-954  
     laborers sent from Pharaoh, 954  
     three brothers who served him to acquire wisdom, 952-953  
     three rules of conduct and three brothers, 953  
   superior to that of David, 956 n27  
   supplementing words of David, 955 n24  
   tested by Hiram of Tyre, 955



Solomon (*cont.*)

- wisdom of (*cont.*)
  - 3,000 parables of, 955 n24
  - as wisest of men, 949 n13
- and women
  - marriages of, 947-949, 949 n16
  - to daughter of Hiram of Tyre, 958 n36
  - to Pharaoh's daughter, 947, 949 n12
  - to Queen of Sheba, 961 n40
  - wedding feast of, on same day as consecration of Temple, 947
  - to women from "seven nations," 949 n16
- Queen of Sheba
  - letter of S. to Queen, 959
  - Queen posing 22 riddles to S., 959-961
  - S. imparting to Queen secret of withstanding three enchantments of snakes, 796
- Ruth living to see glory of S., 864, 867 n69
- S. falling in love with
  - Sonmanites, Jebusite woman, 964
- S. having illicit relations with foreign women, 949 n16
- S. rebuked by Bathsheba for neglecting daily sacrifice, 948
- story of love of S. and Naamah, 976
- wives of
  - foreign wives not observing commandments, 949 n16
  - Pharaoh's daughter as favorite, 948, 949 n16
- words of, against women, 957 n32
- as youth
  - overruling decisions of David, 956 n27
  - solving case of dispute over inheritance, 950, 955 n26
- Solomon, R.
  - commanded by Babylonian prince to show him grave of Ezekiel, 1094
- Solomon, Testament of, 965 n56
  - Christian elements of, 965 n56
  - pagan elements of, 965 n56
  - parallels to Solomon legend in, 965 n56

## song(s)

- of celestials, causing death to Assyrians, 1046
- of Israel
  - first, on night when freed from captivity, 562
  - second, of triumph at Red Sea, 562
  - third, when well sprang up in wilderness, 562
  - fourth, of Moses before death, 562
  - fifth, of Joshua after victory over Amorites, 562
  - sixth, of Deborah and Barak after victory over Sisera, 562
  - seventh, David's psalm of thanksgiving, 562
  - eighth, Solomon's song at dedication of Temple, 562
  - ninth, of Jehoshaphat going to battle against Moabites and Ammonites, 562
  - tenth, to be sung at future deliverance, 562
  - nine in number
    - sung by Israel to God in course of history, 562
  - ten in number, 562, 564 n59
- of Levites in Temple, atoning power of, 564 n58
- of people of Israel after passage through Red Sea, 563
- of praise, one of five tokens granted to Israel after Exodus, 565
- at Red Sea (*see* Song at the Sea)
- Song at the Sea, 562-565
  - as first song ever sung in God's honor, 565 n63
  - moving God to grant forgiveness to Israel, 562
  - repeated by Miriam and women, 564
  - second of nine songs sung by Israel to God in course of history, 562
  - as song of Moses, 563
  - verses included in, 565 n66
- Song of Moses
  - causing heaven and earth to keep silent, 830 n947
- Song of Songs
  - as allegorical presentation of history of Israel, 977 n93
  - Hezekiah and associates as editors of, 1071 n15

Song of Songs (*cont.*)

- Hezekiah having copies made of, 1051
- as holiest of holy books, 977 n93
- Solomon as author of, 977 n93
- Sonmanites
  - Jebusite woman with whom Solomon fell in love, 964
- son of Amram
  - as derogatory name of Moses, 726 n581, 734
- son of Bathsheba
  - as derogatory name, 656 n367
- son of the nest, 32 n137, 138
- sons
  - not ready to care for grandparents, 102 n1
- sons of God
  - angels as, 121 n57
  - as descendants of Seth, 121 n57
- sons of Israel. *See* Israel (nation; people)/Israelites: children of
- sons of Korah
  - entering Paradise alive, 73 n67, 132 n62 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)
- Sons of Moses. *See* Moses: sons of; *also* Levites
- Sons of the East, books of
  - Solomon as author or redactor of, 978 n93
- Sophia-Prunicus (first mother)
  - Gnostic ideas about, 106 n17 (*see also* Gnostic ideas)
- sorcerer(s)
  - Balaam as, 760
  - Laban as, 294 n223
  - Sheba as land of, 965 n55
  - See also* magicians, Egyptian
- sorcery
  - generation of Noah addicted to, 133
  - herbs and heads of scorpions used in, 760 n720
  - See also* augury; divination; magic arts; lots; Urim and Thummim; witchcraft
- Sosipater
  - African general, slain in battle against Zepho, 419
- soul(s)
  - abode of, while unborn, 6, 57 n19
  - all part of Adam's soul, 57 n19
  - born against its will, 56
  - burning of
    - of Nadab and Abihu, 698 n482
    - of people of Magog, 698 n482
  - created on first day, 55



soul(s) (*cont.*)

and death of person, 56  
 departing  
   from body after seven or three days, 99 n140  
   from brothers of Joseph when he revealed self to them, 388  
   at death, 58 n20, 448  
 of embryo, knowing and seeing everything, 58 n20  
 escaping from body every night, 55, 56-57 n18  
 fastened to spine, 61 n25  
 forced to enter sperm, 55  
 form of, as bird, 61 n25  
 as image of God, 59  
 immortality of, 61 n25  
 of man, 55-58  
 as material, 61 n25  
 not sleeping, 61 n25  
 number of, 56 n18  
 one of ten parts of body received from God, 606 (*see also* body, human)  
 one of three things contributed by God to formation of child, 608 n224  
 of one who has tasted piety, compared to palm tree, 567  
 of pious  
   creation of, 7 n15  
   as sacrifices in heavenly Temple, 5  
   in seventh heaven, 6 (*see also* pious: souls of)  
 as pledge entrusted to man by God, 742 n636  
 powers of, five in number, 55  
 questioned by angel, 55-56  
 refusal of, to enter embryo, 57 n20  
 relationship with God, according to Stoics, 61 n25  
 as spirit of God, 55  
 as spiritual, 61 n25  
 stored in seventh heaven, 6, 55  
 sustained by fragrant odors, 648 n343  
 taken by angel  
   to view hell, 55-56  
   to view Paradise, 55  
 time of entering body, 61 n25  
 time when inclinations enter, 61 n25  
 united with body, 55  
 various powers of, 56 n18  
 of wicked, in fifth earth, 6

## Sousakim (king of Egypt)

giving sister-in-law Ano to Jeroboam as wife, 982 n2

## south

assigned to Eve, 92  
 as blessed region, 687 n441  
 dews of blessing and rains of plenty coming from, 645  
 place of fire and smoke, 6  
 qualities of, 645 n337  
 Reuben to pitch its camp in, 685

## space

in Palestine for all multitudes at time of resurrection, 657, 658 n373

## Spain

Jews of, refusing to return to Holy Land, 1124 n36

## sparrow, on Solomon's throne, 968

## Spartans

as descendants of Abraham, 244 n314

## spears, throwing, 314

## speech

confounding of, 164  
 immediately after birth, 139, 140 n16  
 one of ten parts of body received from God, 606 (*see also* body, human)

## spelling, defective

of Horeb, 501 n113  
 as indication of being morally defective, 236 n267  
 of name of Abishai, 937 n123  
 of name of Elijah, 257 n35

## spelling, plene

of name of Jacob, 257 n35

## spells

taught to men by Armaros, 119  
*See also* magic arts; sorcery; witchcraft

## sperm

and conception of human being, 55

## spices

for anointing oil in Tabernacle, to anoint high priest, 640-641  
 brought by Adam from Paradise, 81 n96  
 curative properties of, 157  
 one of 13 materials for construction of Tabernacle, 640 (*see also under* Tabernacle)  
 used in Temple, coming from Paradise, 81 n96

## spider, web of

saving David from Saul, 919

## spies

accompanied by Shekinah, 706  
 appearing to giants as grasshoppers, 708  
 attempting to incite people to rebellion, 711-712  
 avoiding suspicion of inhabitants of Jericho, 844 n11  
 bearing fruits of land through Palestine, 708  
 bringing evil report of promised land, 704-705  
 death of  
   because bodies fell apart, 717 n552  
   by croup, 717 n552  
 deceiving Israelites into lamenting about fate at hands of peoples of Palestine, 711-712  
 disguising selves  
   as carpenters, 844 n11  
   as pottery merchants, 844 n11  
 disreputable houses as hiding places for, 375 n209  
 gigantic stature of, 709 n513  
 given instructions by Moses, 706  
 Israelites believing report of, 711  
 Joseph accusing brothers of being, 372-373  
 meeting mourners for Job throughout Canaan, 706 n509  
 names of, showing wickedness, 705-707  
 one from each tribe except Levi, 704  
 in Palestine, 707-709  
 pretending to be deaf and dumb, 844 n11  
 punishment of, 716  
   tongues growing to touch navel, 716  
 rebellion of, 785  
 reporting  
   about giants in Hebron, 709  
   that land flows with milk and honey, 709  
 returning after 40 days, 708  
 selection of, first step in preparation for war, 842  
 sending of, 703-705  
 slanderous report of, 709-711  
 ten wicked, 705  
 terrified by giants in Kiriath-Arba, 707  
 two pious, 706  
   names indicating pious actions, 706



- spies (*cont.*)  
 two weapons of, against giants, given by Moses (staff, Divine Name), 708
- spirit(s)  
 over animals, in time to come, 642 n328  
 evil (*see* evil spirits)  
 of Lord, coming over Rebekah, 262  
 night (*see* Liliths)  
 one of three things contributed by God to formation of child, 608 n224  
 as personal attendants of Solomon, 962  
 prophetic  
 departing from Elisha when E. rebuked King Jehoram, 1025  
 not manifest during Second Temple because only small number of people returned, 1121  
 vanishing at translation of Elijah, 1025  
 remaining at tip of nose after death, 58 n20  
 seven tempter (fornication, gluttony, strife, love of admiration, arrogance, falsehood, injustice), 435  
 unclean  
 nine-tenths of, banished from earth, 157  
 tormenting men with pain and suffering, 157  
 spirit of God. *See* God: spirit of
- spittle  
 as remedy for sickness, 1006 n60
- spleen  
 for laughing, 447  
 one of 12 guides of men, promoting laughter, 671 (*see also* body, human; guides: of men)  
 removed from 50 men running before Adonijah, 941
- spoils of war  
 distribution of, 195, 197 n101  
 taken in war against Midian, 797
- spoon, golden  
 of dedication offering  
 significance of, for Nahshon and for tribes of Asher, Benjamin, Dan, Ephraim, Issachar, Manasseh, Naphtali, Reuben, Simeon, and Zebulun, 666-671
- spoon, golden (*cont.*)  
 of dedication offering (*cont.*)  
 symbolic significance of, in history of world, 671
- spring  
 color green corresponding to, 971  
 spring equinox  
 and intimidation of evil spirits by seraphim, 1
- springs (of water)  
 appearing wherever patriarchs travel or settle, 276  
 created on third day, 82 n98  
 in third earth, 6
- staff  
 as symbol of Messiahship, 344
- standards  
 colors of, 685-686  
 four, 684-687  
 of groups of angels, 684  
 hooks on, 686  
 used in Exodus, 687 n439
- standing  
 while studying Torah, 790 n832
- star(s)  
 created and assigned place on fourth day, 23, 77, 82 n98  
 11 in Joseph's dream, symbolizing J.'s brothers, 330, 383  
 of evil, bringing misfortune to Israel, 103 n5  
 having light but no heat, 26 n104  
 in heavens (*see also* dust: of earth; sand of seashore)  
 descendants as numerous as, 229-230  
 righteous as numerous as, 330  
 seed of Abraham to be as numerous as, 636  
 sons of Jacob as numerous as, 422  
 hymn of praise of, 44 (*see also* praise)  
 not shining for seven days at death of Adam, 97 n133  
 and planets  
 Moses asking stars and planets to intercede, 808  
 rebellion of, 127 n60  
 as tiny threads loosed from moon, 25  
 unlucky, named Ra ("evil"), 534 n196  
*See also* heavenly bodies; moon; planets; sun
- starvation  
 window of, in first heaven, 503
- steer  
 change in appearance of, 37  
 kissed on nose by Joshua, 37
- sterility  
 eating of hare's stomach as cure for, 879 n111  
*See also* barrenness; childlessness
- stichomancy, 1159, 1161 n122
- stickleback fish  
 keeping Leviathan in check, 28
- stinging flies. *See* flies: stinging
- Stoic ideas  
 parents in middle position between divine and human, 608-609 n226  
 on relationship between God and soul, 61 n25  
 that soul enters body at time of conception, 61 n25
- stomach  
 one of 12 guides of men, affording pleasant sleep, 671 (*see also* body, human; guides: of men)
- stone(s)  
 cut out without hands, as reference to Messiah, 1097 n80  
 found in Holy of Holies, as beginning of creation, 10 n39 (*see also* Eben Shetiyah)  
 heaps of, as sign of covenant, 293  
 illuminating, in Messianic times, 857 n14  
 Israel compared with, 1169 n159  
 made from 12, anointed by Jacob, 277-278  
 12, becoming one, 277
- stones, precious. *See* precious stones
- stoning  
 method of execution for blasphemy, 690  
 breaking Sabbath, 690  
 idolatry, 779
- storehouses of life  
 in seventh heaven, 6
- stork  
 called "pious one," 43 n190  
 as compassionate and merciful, 44  
 guarding purity of family life, 44  
 keen sight of, 43 n190
- storm  
 over house of Job, 457, 458 n24  
 one of three hurricanes sent by God, 458 n24  
 one of four portals, 600



storm (*cont.*)

*See also* hurricane; lightning; thunder; thunderstorms

## strangers

hospitality to, forbidden in Sodom, 212

legends about, and Elijah and R. Joshua b. Levi, 1014

## treatment of

in sinful cities, 207-208

in Sodom, 212

*See also* hospitality; traveler(s); wayfarer

## Straton, tower of

identified with Sartan, 315 n292  
(*see also* Caesarea)

## straw

exempt from tithing, 255

## stream(s)

flowing from tree of life, 127 n60, 507

from Holy of Holies, to uncover treasures buried in earth, 1091

of life, 70 n51

## strength

causing Samson and Goliath to meet death, 798

one of three gifts of God to world, 798 (*see also* gifts)

as qualification of prophet, 633  
(*see also* prophet[s]: qualifications of)

## strife

one of seven tempter spirits, 435

## stubbornness

of Moses, 512-515

Suah (one of seven sinners), 857 n9

## succoth

Jacob staying in, for year, 304

Succoth. *See* Tabernacles, Feast of

## Suchathites

descendants of Jethro, 590

## suffering

on day of judgment, one of three great afflictions from which Israel will be freed as reward for observance of Sabbath, 572

having atoning power, 989 n43  
holding sway in this world, 563-564

of individual, causing God to grieve, 583 n150

in Messianic time, one of three great afflictions from which Israel will be freed as reward for observance of Sabbath, 572

suffering (*cont.*)

in times of Gog and Magog, one of three great afflictions from which Israel will be freed as reward for observance of Sabbath, 572

## suicide

of moor-hen, 974

## Suiel (angel)

angel of earthquake, prostrating before Metatron, 130

Sukkot. *See* Tabernacles, Feast of

Sulaiman I (sultan)

Elijah appearing to, in dream, 1013 n93

## sulphur

rivers of, in hell, 13

*See also* hell

## summer

color red corresponding to, 971

## summer solstice

and strength of Behemoth, 2

time when Moses smote rock and blood flowed from it, 877 n109

## sun

accompanied by angels, 24

assigned place on fourth day, 23

Baal as, 874 n105

bathing in stream of fire, 26 n104

as bridegroom, 24, 26 n101

cooled by Venus in fourth heaven, 504

## course of

change in, 140-141 n19

365 days, 24

created on fourth day, 23, 77, 82 n98

crown of, removed by angels in evening, 26 n105

darkness of, 26 n100 (*see also* sun: eclipse of)

double-faced, 24

each turn of, having different angel appointed over world, 877 n109

eclipse of, 26 n100

during flood, 145 n25

at time of crucifixion of Jesus, 79 n89

at time of fall, 79 n89, 92, 95 n121

endowed with wisdom and passion like man, 25 n100

forced to shine after destruction of Temple, 1080, 1081 n38

four turns of, 877 n109

God's name engraved on, 27 n106

sun (*cont.*)

greater than moon, 24, 26 n100  
growing dark at Adam's disobedience, 76 (*see also* sun: eclipse of)

having power over plants, 71

healing qualities of

and devastating power of, 302

healing Jacob of injury sustained in encounter with angel, 302

motes of sunbeams as carriers of healing to sick, 25, 27 n108

human countenance of, 26 n102

hymn of praise of, 26 n102, 44 (*see also* praise)

Israelites suffering from, after death of Aaron, 747, 748 n651

in Joseph's dream, designating Jacob, 330

and Joshua

sun obeying J., 848-850

sun and moon ordered to stand still for J., 48

sun standing still for J. in Tammuz, 1152 n108

sun to aid J. in battle, 581

led through stream, 26 n103

made of fire, 28 n112

miracle of sinking, while Jacob passing Mount Moriah, 276

and moon

appearing before God to call for punishment of Korah, 724

depicted on tribe of Issachar's flag in wilderness, 688

having to be driven to their duty, 724

lamenting over edict of

Ahasuerus, 1159

Moses asking sun and moon to intercede, 808

ordered to stand still before Joshua, 48

shedding light for sake of Israel, 1154

turning black, called Ethiopians, 96

Moses' face shining like, 813

not setting

on day of revelation on Sinai, 613

on last day of Moses' life, 812

miracle occurring four times for Moses' sake, 613



sun (*cont.*)

not shining for seven days after death of Adam, 97 n133  
 precious stones to take place of, in Messianic time, 1011-1012  
 Raphael as angel in charge of, 131 n61  
 rising and setting early for Jacob, 302  
 setting ten hours early at funeral of Ahaz, 1052 n81  
 shining ten extra hours on day of Hezekiah's recovery, 1050  
 signs of, taught to men by Samsaweel, 119  
 standing still, 583 n146  
   for Elijah, 995  
   for Hezekiah, 1052 n68  
   for Joshua, 48, 849  
   in Tammuz, 1152 n108  
   for Moses  
     on day of battle with Amalek, 615 n245  
     on days of battle with Sihon and Og, 615 n245  
     when Moses commanded, 615 n245  
   one of seven great miracles, 850 n39, 850 n40  
   one of six wonders since creation of world, 849  
   on summer's day in Tammuz, 850 n40  
 wanting to be spared sight of sinful mankind, 24  
 wheel of  
   grating against, 27 n107, 27 n108  
   precious stone attached to, 237  
   as witness against man, 79 n89  
   worship of, in cities of plain, 213  
 sunbirds  
   possessing 12 wings, 40 n155  
 Sunday  
   as day on which God created heaven and earth, 1150  
 "superman"  
   as goal of creation, 50 n8  
 supplication  
   window of, in first heaven, 503  
 Suriel (angel)  
   as angel of death, 833 n952  
   Uriel identified with, 687 n440  
 Susanna  
   beauty and goodness of, 1095  
   condemned to death on false testimony, 1095

## swine

brought as sacrifice by enemy, 1076 n29  
 cloven-footed, 282-283  
 Esau identified with Rome as, 284 n162  
*See also* boar, wild  
 sword(s), 314  
   angel with, pointing to Balaam's destruction, 768  
   of children of Ammon, serpent engraved on, 922 n59  
   Esau to live by, 270  
   flaming  
     in front of Paradise, 80 n95  
     as metaphor of Gehenna, 80-81 n95  
   given to Esau and other nations, 768  
   legends concerning, 922 n59  
   used by Pharaoh against Israelites, 558-559  
   used to kill Balaam, 796, 796 n855  
 synagogue  
   beadle of, 943, 943 n145  
   and disavowal of pseudepigraphal writings, ix-x  
   founded by Ezra  
     near Mount Ararat, 1126 n52  
     in Nisibis, 1126 n52  
 Synhedrion. *See* Sanhedrin  
 Syrian language  
   used by Hamites, 158 n72  
 syzygies  
   doctrine of, 608 n221

## T

Tabeel (father of Pekah), 1051 n66  
 Tabernacle  
   able to be folded up and taken down, 657  
   candlestick in, corresponding to sun and moon created on fourth day, 639  
   command of God to build, 638-640  
   completion of, 653-655  
   consecration of, fire at, 692  
   curtain in, corresponding to firmament, 639  
   as dwelling place of God's glory, 48  
   erection of, as finishing touch to creation of world, 660  
   everything ready for, in month of Kislev, 655

Tabernacle (*cont.*)

existing for sake of Torah, 643  
 failures in setting up, 656  
 first day of dedication of  
   eight sections of laws revealed to Moses on, 673  
   gifts of priests received by Aaron on, 673  
   law of separation of Levites revealed on, 673  
   Levites consecrated as servants of God on, 673  
   third law revealed on, expelling lepers and unclean persons from camp, 674  
 God commanding angels to build one in heaven, 660  
 heavenly, 660  
 Holy Place of, 48  
 of Korah and Dathan and Abiram, 724  
 laver in, symbolizing sea created on third day, 639  
 materials for construction of, 640-641  
   11 in number, 641 n322  
   13 in number (gold, silver, brass, blue linen, purple linen, scarlet linen, goats' hair, rams' skins, badgers' skins, shittim wood, oil, spices, onyx, precious stones), 640  
   15 in number, 641 n322  
   gold, as expiation of golden calf, 640  
 middle bar of  
   becoming circular, 648 n344  
   length of, 648 n344  
   made from tree Abraham planted at Beer-Sheba, 648  
 Most Holy of, 48  
 one of seven holy places destroyed by Esau, 264  
 parts of, corresponding to creation in six days, 639  
 purpose of, as place for Shekinah, 643  
 revelations in, 673-674  
 setting up of, 655-656  
 set up by Moses, 656  
 set up on 1 Nisan, Isaac's birthday, 655  
 Shekinah returning to earth on day of consecration of, 660  
 size of (70 cubits), corresponding to 70 holy days celebrated by Jews, 648



Tabernacle (*cont.*)

skin of goat used for, in remembrance of Jacob, 268 n88  
 skin of *taḥash* (sea creature) used for, 35  
 as symbolic representation of human body, 639  
 symbolic significance of, 648-649, 649 n346  
 veil of, 48  
 well of Miriam settling opposite, 576  
 whoever enters without being commanded, to be stricken with leprosy, 663  
 wood for  
     from Paradise, 81 n96  
     from tamarisk tree, 224 n225  
*See also* Holy of Holies; Holy Place; sanctuary; Temple

Tabernacle of revelation

identical to Tabernacle in camp, constructed from extra materials, 655-656

Tabernacle of Testimony, 638

Tabernacles, Feast of

celebrated by Jacob, 317 n299  
 criticized by Haman, 1153  
 eight days of, among 70 holy days celebrated by Jews, 648  
 Israelites enveloped in seven clouds of glory in Exodus at, 542  
 last day of, quantity of rain for year fixed on, 268 n83  
 priests offering libations in Temple on, 318  
 water libation performed on, 929 n78

*See also* date

table(s)

for bread and salt, placed on northern side, 645 n337  
 golden  
     hidden in tower of Baghdad, 1091  
     taken from Paradise by Solomon, 1091  
 of Moses, 644-645  
     positioned in center, 645  
     showbread placed on, 645  
 of nations (*see* nations: table of)  
 in Solomon's temple  
     positioned five to south and five to north, 645  
     ten in number, 644-645  
 in Tabernacle  
     pattern of fire for, coming down from heaven to Moses, 645 n338

table(s) (*cont.*)

in Tabernacle (*cont.*)  
     to indicate delights of pious in Paradise, 645  
     of tongues, 158 n72  
 tablets of Sinai. *See* Ten Commandments: tablets of  
 Tabor, Mount  
     contesting for spot of revelation, 594  
     one of four mountains on which heavenly Jerusalem will descend, 595 n184

Tadmor (city)

built by Solomon, 962

*taḥash*

as clean animal, 35  
 created exclusively for needs of Tabernacle, 647  
 description of, 35  
 size of, 647  
 skin of, for use for Tabernacle, 35

Tahchemonite

name applied to Joab and David, 926 n76

*tallit* (prayer shawl)

and Esau, 284 n162  
 as reward for descendants of Shem, 154

Talmai (giant)

and Ahiman and Sheshai, three giants in Palestine, 707  
 name, meaning of, 707  
 one of three giants summoned by Sarah, 236 n259

Talmai (Ptolemy of Egypt)

one of ten rulers who became proselytes, 1093 n66

Talmud

Babylonian  
     compiled by R. Ashi, 1128 n56  
     contained in second tablets, 633  
 Talmudic-Midrashic literature  
     as source of Jewish legendary material, ix  
*See also* rabbinic literature

Tamar

and Amnon, 941  
 as ancestress of  
     Amoz, 344  
     David and Messiah, 344  
     Isaiah, 344  
 as daughter of  
     Aram, 346 n79  
     Shem, 345, 346 n79  
 deceiving Judah by means of kid, 347 n87

Tamar (*cont.*)

giving birth to twin sons, 345  
 having gift of prophecy, 344  
 Judah confessing to improper relations with, 439  
 marriage of  
     to Er, son of Judah, 344  
     to Onan, second son of Judah, 344  
 modesty of, reward for, 344  
 name, meaning of, 346 n79  
 not considered child of David  
     because born before mother's conversion to Judaism, 941  
 praying to God for deliverance, 345  
 as proselyte who converted to Judaism from idolatry, 346 n82  
 riddle of Queen of Sheba about, 961

tamarisk

of Abraham, 206 n137  
 and middle bar in boards of Tabernacle, 224 n225

*See also* tree(s)

Tamiel (archangel)

as angel of deep, 120 n57

Tammuz (month)

1st of  
     Adam and Eve expelled from Paradise, 81 n97  
 10th of  
     Noah sent forth raven, 148  
 17th of  
     demons exercising power, to 9 Av, 660  
     Manasseh setting up idol in Temple, 1056 n96  
     Moses remaining in heaven, from 7 Sivan to, 629 n286

18th of

Moses staying in heaven from, to 28 Av, 628

Amorite kings subjugated in, 1151

Joshua making sun stand still in, 1152 n108

and strength of Behemoth, 2  
*See also* date

tannaitic literature

on Abraham's observance of law, 239 n275  
 early, Amalek as designation of Rome in, 580 n141  
 idea of seven heavens originating in, 8 n22



tannaitic literature (*cont.*)

- not containing anything about Leviathan and Behemoth, 30 n127
- Messianic banquet, 30 n127
- use of Edom for Rome rare in, 254 n19
- See also* Amoraic sources; Hagga-dah; Halakhah; Kabbalah; Midrash; Mishnah; rabbinic literature

## Tappuah

- Jashub, king of, slain by Judah, 314
- subdued by sons of Jacob, 315

## Targumim

- as source of Jewish legendary material, ix

## Tarshish

- invading territory of Ishmaelites, 369
- Joseph making war on, 369
- prince of Tarsus
  - having charge of palace, 1136
  - one of seven princes of Persia consulted by Ahasuerus about fate of Vashti, 1136

## tattoos

- of Jehoiakim on "membrum," 1062 n125
- of names of idols on body of Jehoiakim, 1060

## Taurus (Bull) (sign of Zodiac)

- answering Haman in defense of Israel, 1151

## tav (letter)

- in Asenath, standing for *tammah* ("the perfect one"), 368
- creation of world through, 3
- as sign of death upon foreheads of men, 3
- in Zaphenath-paneah, standing for *tomekh* ("supporter"), 368
- See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet

taw (letter). *See* tav

## tears

- changing into pearls, 248 n317
- night of, 711-713
- See also* crying; weeping

## Tebel

- second earth, 6
- seventh earth, inhabited by men, 110

Tebet (month). *See* Tevet

## teeth

- gnashing of, by Judah, 313, 314 n291
- long, of Esau and Og, 305 n263

teeth (*cont.*)

- lost at cry of Judah, 388
- set on edge, of Adam and Eve, 72
- Tehom
  - kept from overflowing earth by Eben Shetiyyah, 11 n39
- Telag, Mount
  - Sheilah going up to, 875
- Temah (Sisera's mother), 871 n87
- Temple
  - Ahaz setting up idol in, 1043
  - altar of (*see* altar: of Temple)
  - blessings disappearing at destruction of, 968 n64
  - blessings upon world at erection of, 968 n64
  - breach torn in, when Uzziah trying to offer sacrifice, 1040
  - building itself, 967 n60
  - building of
    - completed in month of Heshvan, 966
    - no worker becoming sick or dying during, 966
    - one of three national duties, 897 n47
    - Solomon planting golden trees at, 966
    - taking seven years, 966
  - built in territory of tribe of Benjamin, 1148-1149, 1150 n102
  - burned by angels, 1076 n27
  - burned down completely on 10 Av, 1077 n29
  - called "house of David," 930 n89
  - captured on 7 Av, 1077 n29
  - confusion between First and Second Temple in stories, 1087 n53
  - consecration of, held on Day of Atonement, 966
  - created by God with both hands, 49 n3
  - dedication of
    - source of 18th of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127
    - taking place in month of Abraham's birth, 966
  - defilement of, by enemy, 1076 n29
  - destruction of, 198
    - by Amalek (i.e., Rome), 582, 583 n147
    - by angel, 1076 n29
    - because David listened to Ziba's slander against Mephibosheth, 909 n109

Temple (*cont.*)destruction of (*cont.*)

- and hatred of Ammonites and Moabites for Israel, 214
- by Nebuchadnezzar
  - God concealing five sacred objects at (ark, candlestick, fire of altar, holy spirit of prophecy, cherubim), 645
- party played by Gabriel in, 1075 n26
- revealed to Abraham, 231
- and sacrifices, 198
- saving Israel from annihilation, 1081 n39
- shown to Jacob, 277
- sins as cause of, 1072 n16
- in time of Zedekiah, 1065
- to take place on 9 Av, 712
- disappearing from sight of man, to become visible again in Messianic times, 1092 n64
- duty to perform service in, 199
- Edomites as destroyers of, 1087 n52
- everything in, being fruitful and multiplying, 647 n342
- fire set on 9 Av, 1077 n29
- foundation stone of, as center of earth, 7 (*see also* Eben Shetiyyah)
- four angels setting fire to, 1075
- gates of
  - opening by selves, 1077 n29
  - sinking into earth, 1091
- given to Israelites conditionally, 590 n173 (*see also* gifts)
- glory of, shown to Jacob, 277
- gold used in, not booty from heathen temples, 966
- having secret place for hiding holy objects, 1062 n118
- heavenly (*see also* sanctuary: heavenly)
  - Aaron as high priest in, 816
  - in fourth heaven, 9 n22, 503-504
  - precious stones in, 816
  - in seventh heaven, 9 n22
  - Shekinah dwelling in, 816
  - shown to Moses by God, 617
- importance of, in stopping torrential rains in month of Heshvan, 966
- instructions concerning furniture and vessels of
  - handed down from Moses, 967 n57



Temple (*cont.*)  
 instructions concerning furniture  
   and vessels of (*cont.*)  
   transmitted from David to  
     Solomon, 967 n57  
 iron tools prohibited for work on,  
   35  
 keys of  
   given back to God by  
     Jehoiachin, 1061  
   legend of, 1076 n29  
   thrown heavenward by high  
     priest, 1075  
 as Lebanon, 1077 n29  
 mourning of Moses and patriarchs  
   for, 1078-1079  
 part played by Palmyrenes in  
   destruction of, 1087 n53  
 reflecting honor on David, 966  
 sacrifices to be brought to, 198  
 service, atoning power of, 1  
 site of  
   in inhabited land, 10 n33  
   in Jerusalem  
     partly in territory of Benja-  
       min, 411 n401, 825  
       n926  
     partly in territory of Judah,  
       825 n926  
   known before Solomon, 967  
     n57  
   made known to David by  
     prophet Gad, 967 n57  
 as place of  
   Abraham's circumcision of  
     self, 232 n249  
   beginning of creation, 10 n39  
   Isaac's offering, 231  
 of Solomon (*see also* Temple, First)  
   building of, 965-968  
   consecration of, on same day as  
     wedding feast of Solomon,  
     947  
   cornerstone of, brought up by  
     demon from Red Sea, 964  
   existing for 410 years, 949 n12  
   Shekinah to dwell in, 154  
 symbolism of, 967 n60  
 three hidden vessels of, to be  
   shown, one of seven won-  
     ders of Messiah, 1021  
 to be built by Solomon, 928  
 to stand in perfection in Messianic  
   times, as described by  
     Ezekiel, 1021  
 vessels of, 1091-1092  
   desecrated by Ahasuerus in  
     drinking bouts, 1130

Temple (*cont.*)  
 vessels of (*cont.*)  
   gold and silver for, 968 n66  
   hidden by Josiah, 1062 n118  
   hidden in tower at Baghdad by  
     Levite Shimur and friends,  
     1091  
   prevented from falling into  
     hands of enemy, 1091  
   western wall only remnant of,  
     1076 n27  
   work of rebuilding stopped after  
     72 towers completed, 1138  
     n47  
 Temple, First (*see also* Temple: of  
   Solomon)  
   five things in First Temple only  
     (heavenly fire, holy oil of  
     anointing, ark, Holy Spirit,  
     Urim and Thummim),  
     1123-1124 n36  
   one of seven holy places destroyed  
     by Esau, 264  
 Temple, Second  
   absence of Shekinah from, 156  
     n65  
   destruction of, 1087 n52  
     because most Jews remained in  
       foreign lands, 1123 n36  
     on same day as that of First  
       Temple, 1077 n29  
   one of seven holy places destroyed  
     by Esau  
   *See also* Hekhal; high priest; Holy  
     of Holies; Holy Place;  
     sanctuary; Tabernacle;  
     Temple Mount  
 Temple, Third (Messianic), 731  
   n600  
   Rome not to contribute to, 649  
 Temple Mount  
   created first, 825 n927  
   Mount Moriah as, 232 n253  
   site of  
     originally a plain, 233 n255  
     same as site of Akedah, 232  
       n253 (*see also* Temple: site  
       of)  
 temptation(s)  
   of Abraham, 187  
     assigned to Job, 232 n247  
   of Israel  
     ten in number, 565, 757  
   Israel tempting God with ten  
     temptations during wan-  
       dering in desert, 565  
   resisting, through knowledge and  
     wisdom, 414 n406

Ten Commandments, 602-610  
 First, 602-605, 604 n212  
   corresponding to first word of  
     creation, 610  
   corresponding to Sixth Com-  
     mandment, 609  
   singular used in, 605 n216  
   transgression of, on account of  
     covetousness, 607  
 Second  
   corresponding to second word  
     of creation, 610  
   corresponding to Seventh Com-  
     mandment, 609  
   forbidding false oath and also  
     swearing in vain, 608 n218  
   transgression of, on account of  
     covetousness, 607  
 Third  
   corresponding to Eighth Com-  
     mandment, 609  
   corresponding to word of cre-  
     ation about gathering  
       waters, 610  
   against swearing falsely by name  
     of Lord, 605  
   transgression of, on account of  
     covetousness, 607  
 Fourth  
   corresponding to Ninth Com-  
     mandment, 609  
   corresponding to word of cre-  
     ation about earth bringing  
       forth grass, 610  
   most important of command-  
     ments, 608 n223  
   to observe Sabbath, 606  
   transgression of, on account of  
     covetousness, 607  
 Fifth  
   corresponding to Tenth Com-  
     mandment, 609  
   corresponding to word of cre-  
     ation about lights in firma-  
       ment, 610  
   to honor father and mother, 606  
   transgression of, on account of  
     covetousness, 607  
 Sixth  
   corresponding to word of crea-  
     tion about waters bringing  
       forth moving creatures,  
       610  
   against murder, 606-607  
   transgression of, on account of  
     covetousness, 607  
 Seventh  
   against adultery, 607



Ten Commandments (*cont.*)Seventh (*cont.*)

corresponding to word about earth bringing forth living creatures, 610

transgression of, on account of covetousness, 607

## Eighth

corresponding to word of creation about herb-bearing seed, 610

forbidding stealing, 607

transgression of, on account of covetousness, 607

## Ninth

corresponding to word of creation about creation of man, 610

forbidding false witness against companions, 607

transgression of, on account of covetousness, 607

## Tenth

corresponding to word of creation about creation of woman, 610

forbidding covetousness, 607

transgression of, on account of covetousness, 607-608

## and Abraham

A. fulfilling commandments, 593

A. observing commandment against false witness, 594

A. observing commandment not to covet, 594

alef having first place in, 4

all received by Israel directly from God, 612 n243

in ark of covenant in desert, 429

containing kernel of entire Torah, 619 n258

containing 620 letters, 635 n308

corresponding to ten words of creation, 612 n243

in Deuteronomy, containing all letters of Hebrew alphabet, 635 n308

difference between, in Exodus and Deuteronomy, 635 n308

distribution of, on tablets, 619 n258

division of, 609 n234

first five, written on one tablet, 609

first two

learned directly from God, 611

received by Israel directly from God, 612 n243

Ten Commandments (*cont.*)

against idolatry, 605

and Isaac

I. fulfilling commandment to honor father and mother, 593

and Jacob

J. fulfilling first commandment, 593

and Joseph

J. fulfilling commandment not to commit adultery, 593-594

not to kill, 593

to observe Sabbath, 593

last eight

learned through intercession of Moses, 611

last five

written on second tablet, 609

reactions of nations to, 606

repeated to angels, 614-615

among statutes of Israel, 567

tablets of

breaking of, 625-626

angels rejoicing at, 615-616 n248

brought about by evil eye of nations, 661

by Moses, 4

one of three things Moses did on own authority, 626 n279

celestial, 4

characters and stylus for, created during twilight of first Sabbath eve, 619 n258 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)

contained in ark of covenant, 643

corresponding to heaven and earth, 639

created in twilight between sixth day and Sabbath, 78, 618 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)

hewn out of Eben Shetiyyah, 619 n258

made of sapphire-like stone, 618, 626 n279

measurement of, 635 n308

sapphire for, taken from Divine Throne, 619 n258

second, 632-636

coming from diamond quarry, 633

containing Halakhot, Midrash, and Haggadot, 632

Ten Commandments (*cont.*)

tablets of (*cont.*)

second (*cont.*)

containing Mishnah, Talmud, and Haggadah, 633

given quietly, 632-633

given with great ceremony, 635 n304

God writing words on, 635 n305

made of sapphire, 635 n305

and story of marriage contract, 632-633

to be received by Moses on 10 Tishri, 631

weight of

60 seah, 626 n279

70 seah, 625

writing vanishing from, 625, 626 n279

unity of, 609-610

use of singular in, 635 n306

written by God with middle finger of right hand, 638 n315

*See also* commandment(s)

Ten Days of Penitence. *See* Penitence: Ten Days of

ten martyrs. *See* martyrs: ten

tent

holy, carried by angel to mount whence Moses viewed Holy Land, 1091

as metaphor for house of study, 256 n29

wife, 155 n60

tentpin

as metaphor for wife of Ishmael, 221-222

Tephros

demon of ashes, coming before Solomon, 963

Terah

and Abraham

T. exchanging handmaid's child for A., 182

T. not convinced about idols, 184-185

T. telling Nimrod about A., 185

at circumcision of Isaac, 218

death of, 237 n270

entering Paradise alive, 180 (*see also* Paradise: entering alive)

on account of merits of

Abraham, 508 n118

fate of, 200 n114

favorable opinion of, 180 n45

as high official in court of Nimrod, 181



Terah (*cont.*)

- marriage of
  - to Emtelai, 168
  - to Pelilah, 243
- name, meaning of, 167, 168 n5
- penance of, 199
- perished by fire for idolatry, 180 n40
- settling in Palestine, 184 n49
- son of Nahor, 167
- to have share in world to come, 199

## teraphim

- curse of thief of, 293
- etymology of, 965 n56
- and Laban
  - L. getting another set of teraphim, 294 n220
  - teraphim consulted by L., 281
  - stolen by Rachel, 291
  - destroyed by Jacob, 316
- method of making, 291
- transformed into drinking vessels, 292

## terebinth

- Jacob hiding foreign gods under, 857 n5

Teresh. *See* Bighthan and Teresh

## terrestrial beings

- contact with, defiling celestial beings, 17 n68
- created by God with left hand, 49 n3
- hymns of praise of, 46 n194 (*see also* praise)

## terumah

- ordained by men of Great Synagogue, 1128 n56

## tet (letter)

- creation of world through, 4
- as letter of word *bet* ("sin"), not contained in names of 12 tribes, 409 n383
- missing from Ten Commandments in Exodus version, 635 n308
- in word Shittim, standing for *tovah* ("good"), 647
- See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet

## Tetragrammaton

- designating God's attribute of goodness, 3 n6
- name by which Adam called God, 62 n29
- pronounced by Ezra "as it is written," 1125 n49
- standing for God's mercy, 150 n46

Tetragrammaton (*cont.*)

- used to describe God as merciful, 767 n743
- use of, by Boaz, 866 n53
- See also* God: names and titles of
- Tevet (month), 2
- 2nd of
  - date of death of Ezra and Nehemiah, 1126 n51
  - as fast day, 1126 n51
- Jephthah's daughter sacrificed and wept for in, 877 n109
- and Kislev, Sihon and Og conquered in, 1151
- Leviathan spouting up water in, 2
- See also* date
- Tharbis (daughter of king of Ethiopians)
  - falling in love with Moses, 492 n80
- theater
  - prejudice against attending, 39 n143

## theft

- famine as punishment for, 607
- forbidden by Eighth Commandment, 69, 607
- girdle of Aaron atoning for, 650
- never forgiven by God, 607
- not a capital offense according to Jewish law, 387 n268
- one of 13 sins punished by leprosy, 675 (*see also* leprosy)
- See also* robbery; thief (thieves)
- Thelac, Mount. *See* Telag, Mount
- Themac (Sisera's mother), 869
- theodicy, 629-630, 630 n291
- Elijah's teachings of, 1014-1016
- theophany
  - to Elijah on Mount Horeb, one of three hurricanes sent by God, 458 n24

## theophorous names

- of angels, 128 n60

Thermuthis. *See* Thermutis

## Thermutis (daughter of Pharaoh)

- advising Moses to undertake campaign against Ethiopians, 492 n80
- arm of, lengthening miraculously, 478
- moved by weeping of Moses and Aaron, 478
- observing circumcision of Moses, 478
- perceiving Shekinah in ark with Moses, 478
- rescuing Moses from Nile, 477-478

Thermutis (*cont.*)

- source of name, 479 n48
- thief (thieves)
  - and keeper of vineyard, 774-775
  - legend of thief who betrayed self, 957 n30
  - making double restitution, 384
  - proverb about thief and receiver, 701, 702 n493
  - punishment of, 246
  - in Sodom, 209
  - stealing teraphim, 293
  - story of David and thief, 956 n27
  - viewed by Abraham from heaven, 246
- See also* robbery; theft
- third
  - God having preference for, 592
  - Seth as third son of Adam, 592
  - Shem as third son of Noah, 592
  - Solomon as third of Jewish kings, 592

## thirst

- in wilderness, 566

## thornbush

- accepted by God to serve as cross for Haman, 1175
- as burning bush, 501
- cleanliness of, 595 n185
- compared with
  - Israel, 502
  - myrtle, 255
- Ezra hearing voice from, 1122
- lowliness of, 501-502, 502 n115
- numerical value of Hebrew word for (*seneh*) (120), 502
- purity of, 502 n115
- as symbol for Israel, 502, 502 n115
- symbolic significance of, 502 n115
- as vessel for divine vision, 501
- See also* burning bush

## thorns

- burned by sparks from cherubim, 643

three youths. *See* youths: three

## throne(s)

- of Abraham
  - greatest in Paradise, 507, 508 n118
- in Paradise
  - made of precious metals and gems, 507
  - size of, 507
- of pious, 508 n118
- reserved for time after resurrection, according to rabbinic literature, 508 n118



## throne(s)

of Solomon (*see also* Solomon: throne of)  
 brazen images on, 949 n12

Throne, Divine  
 color of, blue, 643  
 and crown, imagery of, 613-614  
 curtain before, 57 n19  
 description of, 17 n70  
 footstool of, made from brick containing child of Rachel, daughter of Shuthelah, 541  
 four beings represented on (lion, man, eagle, bull), 621  
 hashmal surrounding, 14  
 having four standards (righteousness, justice, grace, truth), 687 n440  
 over heads of hayyot (*see also* hayyot)  
 Moses saved by holding on to, 614, 615 n247  
 mysteries of, discussed by Jeroboam and Ahijah, 983 n7  
 one of seven things created in beginning, 1  
 repentance reaching, 505 n117  
 representation of bull on, as model for golden calf, 621  
 Sandalfon standing behind, 613  
 sapphire for tablets of Ten Commandments taken from, 619 n258  
 sapphire quarry under, 635 n305, 635 n306  
 in seventh heaven, 6  
 similarity of, to throne of Solomon, 864 n39  
 snow under, and creation of earth, 5  
 surrounded by four angels (Michael, Gabriel, Uriel, Raphael), 685  
 as Throne of Mercy, 816  
 wheels of, 614

Throne of Glory. *See* Throne, Divine

Throne of Joy  
 God sitting upon, 83 (*see also* Throne, Divine)

Thummim. *See* Urim and Thummim

thunder  
 and lightning  
 aiding Israelites in battle against Philistines, 895  
 weapons of God against Egyptians, 559, 561 n46

thunder (*cont.*)

of seventh plague, suspended until siege of Samaria, 532  
*See also* hurricane; lightning; storm; thunderstorms

thunderstorms, on mountains, 502 n114  
*See also* hurricane; lightning; storm; thunder

Thursday  
 fasting on, because Moses ascended to heaven on, 628-629 n286  
 Moses ascended to heaven on, 628-629 n286  
 protesting annihilation of Israel, 1150  
 souls of pious reading from Torah scroll on, 812

Tiamat  
 and Babylonian creation myths, 30 n123  
 and Kingu, 30 n118, 31 n127

Tiberias, Sea of  
 fishing in, lawful for anyone, 852  
 Jacob's libation at Bethel compared to, 318

Tiberias (city)  
 as center of Jewish learning in amoraic period, 410 n391  
 located in territory of Naphtali, 288 n180  
 hot springs of, and hell, 15 n55  
 house of instruction in, 823

Tibni  
 rival of Omri, 986

Tidal (king of several nations)  
 alliance of, with Chedorlaomer, 194

Tiglath-pileser  
 one of eight other names of Sennacherib, 1054 n92

Tigris River  
 source of, beneath tree of life, 69

timbrel, 394  
 accompanying song at Red Sea, 564  
*See also* instruments, musical

time  
 compression of, 239-240, 241 n287 (*see also* distance; earth[s]: contracting of distances of)  
 for Abishai, 241 n287  
 for Abraham, 241 n287  
 for Eliezer, 239, 240, 241 n287, 242 n299  
 four times in history, 278

time (*cont.*)

compression of (*cont.*)  
 for Jacob, 241 n287, 278  
 in Laban's pursuit of Jacob, 292  
 one of Lord's days as 1,000 years, 59  
 creation of, 7 n14  
 58,088 moments in hour, 770  
 of Grace, time between creation and revelation, 593 n177  
*See also* time to come

time to come  
 Aaron not to be anointed in, 658 n371  
 bastards not to be excluded from community of Israel in, 1022 n118  
 evil inclination to disappear in, 1128 n57  
 impurity of idolatry to be removed in, 677 n417  
 impurity of unchastity to be removed in, 677 n417  
 manna to return in, 577 n134  
 miracles to take place in, prefigured in present world, 1103 n95  
*See also* days to come; future world; world to come

Timna (person)  
 and Amalek  
 T. as mother of A., 323  
 T. inciting A. to attack Israel, 580 n138  
 T. persuading A. to leave Jacob alone, 580 n138  
 daughter of royal house, 863, 865 n52  
 princess of royal blood, concubine of Eliphaz, 323  
 rejected by patriarchs, 323  
 wife of Eliphaz, dissuading Eliphaz from killing Jacob, 580 n138

Timna (place)  
 ceded to Jacob by Amorites, 315

Tiranus  
 identified with Turus, king of Benevento, 419 n425

Tirathites  
 descendants of Jethro, 590

Tirhakah (Ethiopian king)  
 liberated from Assyrians by Hezekiah, 1049

Tishri (month)  
 1st of  
 Israelites ceasing to serve the Egyptians, 543 n234



Tishri (*cont.*)1st of (*cont.*)

Jacob erecting altar at Bethel,  
317 n299

New Year's Day, 77

sixth day of creation, 77

## 3rd of

Gedaliah killed on, declared fast  
day for all time, 1087 n53

## 10th of

circumcision of Abraham, 202  
Day of Atonement, 202, 631-  
632

day of mourning on account of  
Joseph, 341

God being merciful on, 631

Jacob receiving word of Joseph's  
death, 341

Moses remaining in heaven from  
20 Av to, 629 n286

Moses returning with second  
tablets, 631, 632

Moses to receive tablets for sec-  
ond time, 631

sin offering of atonement on, to  
be kid of goat, 341

## 11th of

Moses instructing people about  
Tabernacle, 653

Moses returning from heaven,  
585

and autumnal equinox, 2

competition with Nisan for highest  
place in Jewish legend, 219  
n203

Egyptian redemption to begin in,  
428

festival in, one of three given as  
reward for observing  
Sabbath, 572

and great bird Ziz flapping his  
wings, 2

Israelites resting from war in, 753  
Jewish kingdom established by  
dedication of Temple,  
1151

as seventh month, 682

*See also* date

## Tit ha-Yawen

in fifth earth, 6

one of seven divisions of hell, 13,  
506

Samael searching for Moses in, 835  
*See also* hell

## tithe(s), 721

Isaac and, 260, 262 n60

and Jacob

J. vowing to tithe, 278

tithe(s) (*cont.*)

and Jacob (*cont.*)

and Ten Days of Penitence, 280  
n144

ordained by men of Great  
Synagogue, 1128 n56

for poor, introduced by Isaac,  
260

priestly, introduced by Abraham  
and Jacob, 262 n60

on straw and salt, 255

## title

position of, before or after name,  
484-485 n68

## Titus

death of, to be caused by gnat, 45  
n191

Nebuchadnezzar standing for,  
1087 n52

to destroy Temple, 273 n113

Tob (brother of Boaz), 864, 876  
n107

declining to marry Ruth, 864  
name, 866 n61

son of Nahshon, 864 n34

## Tob (land)

identified with city of Hippos in  
Decapolis, 876 n107

## Tobai

one of ten rulers who became pros-  
elytes, 1093 n66

## Tobiah

as name of Moses, 481 n57

## Tobiah the Ammonite

oath of Ahasuerus to, 1167

## Tobiah the Canaanite

adherent of Belchira, 1057 n101

## Tobit

story of, and legend of Elijah and  
young groom, 1016, 1017  
n96

## Tofet

and worship of Moloch in  
Gehinnom, 15 n55

*See also* Gehinnom; hell; Moloch

## toga

as reward for descendants of  
Japheth, 154

## Tohu, 8 n19

dispensing darkness, 5

as green band encompassing world,  
5

one of ten things produced on first  
day of creation, 5

separating second from first earth,  
6

over seventh earth, 6

*See also* Bohu

## Tohu (person)

great-grandfather of Elkanah, 888  
n1

identified with psalmist Asaph,  
888 n1

## Tola (son of Issachar)

name, meaning of, 433

## tongs, first pair of

created in twilight, 82 n99 (*see also*  
*under* creation: sixth day)

## tongue

evil, meriting severe punishment,  
988-989 n35

one of 12 guides of men, rendering  
speech possible, 671 (*see*  
*also* body, human; guides:  
of men)

supremacy of, to all organs of  
body, story about, 978-979

## tools, iron

forbidden in construction of altar,  
973

## topaz

having inverted face of man to sig-  
nify turning good to evil,  
651

stone of tribe of Dan in breastplate  
of Aaron, 651

*See also* precious stones

## Torah

and Abraham

A. taught Torah by Melchizedek,  
196

Torah as one of crowns of A.,  
188 n57

Torah given to Isaac by A., 244  
n313

and Adam

A. to study Torah in Paradise,  
69

Torah given to A. by God, 60  
n21, 77, 142

admitting of 49 correct interpreta-  
tions, 956 n25

Ahaz issuing edict against study of,  
1044 n40

and angels

angels reading Torah, in first  
heaven, 505 n117

angels transgressing Torah by  
eating forbidden food and  
meat with milk, 616 n248

as Book of Raziël, 142

as bride, 601-602 n200

of Israel, 820, 824 n917

burned by Amon, 1055

candlestick as symbolic representa-  
tion of, 646 n340



Torah (*cont.*)

coming from heaven and letters of tablets returning there, 984 n15  
 compared to wine, 18  
 completeness of, 635 n308  
 conceived of as having emanated from God's wisdom, 2 n2  
 connected with sacrifices, 771 n759  
 consisting of three parts:  
   Pentateuch, Prophets,  
   Hagiographa, 592  
 containing crowns and embellishments of Hebrew letters brought to Jerusalem by Ezra, 892 n24  
 buried by prophets under threshold of Temple, 892 n24  
 found by Ezekiel, 892 n24  
 taken by Ezekiel to Babylon, 892 n24  
 containing 365 prohibitions, corresponding to days of year, 603  
 containing 248 positive commandments, corresponding to number of members of body, 603  
 contempt of, one of 13 sins punished by leprosy, 675 (*see also* leprosy: 13 sins punished by)  
 copy of, found by Josiah in Temple, 1059, 1061 n115  
 and creation  
   through tav, 3  
   Torah interfering in creation of man, 54  
 creation of  
   Torah as one of seven things created in beginning, 1  
   Torah created before creation of world, 2 n5  
 custom of reading from, on Saturday, Monday, and Thursday, 567 (*see also* Torah: readings from)  
 date of revelation of, on Mount Sinai (6 Sivan), 479 n47  
 devotion of Hezekiah to study of, 1052 n67  
 Ezra not permitted to write one letter of, from memory, 1125 n50  
 as gift of God to Moses, 504  
 given in desert, 10 n33

Torah (*cont.*)

given to all inhabitants of earth, 595 n185  
 glorified with 22 letters, 807  
 and God  
   God giving Torah to Moses with right hand, 619 n260  
   God making covenant with Israel for sake of Torah, 634  
   God ornamenting letters in which Torah written, 616  
   God taking counsel with Torah, 1, 2 n3  
 Torah lying in lap of God, 1  
 horn of, one of four horns in four corners of Tabernacle, 648 (*see also* horn[s])  
 and Israel  
   Israel finally receiving Torah on Day of Atonement, 631-632  
   Israel's acceptance of Torah, 48  
   necessary for existence of world, 1166 n143  
   Torah bestowed on Israel by God, 433  
   Torah given to Israel  
     unconditionally, 590-591 n173 (*see also* gifts)  
     as weapon against angel of death, 621 n262  
   Torah offered to Israel, 596-598  
   Torah rejoicing to be given to Israel, 592 n176  
   Torah to bring happiness and life to Israel, 567  
 knowledge of  
   Manasseh's mastery of, 1057 n99  
   revived by Babylonians (Ezra, Hillel, R. Hiyya), 1124 n42  
   transmitted  
     to Enoch by Seth, 152 n51  
     to Seth by Adam, 152 n51  
     to Shem by Enoch, 152 n51  
 lamenting over edict of Ahasuerus, 1159  
 meaning of, 1011  
 as means for man to perform his task, 50 n8  
 merit of study of, not taken away by sin, 924 n67  
 of Moses  
   origin of name of, 616-617  
   as reward for M. putting life in danger, 619 n257

Torah (*cont.*)

of Moses (*cont.*)  
 Torah named after M., 806  
 nearly forgotten in three periods of Israel's history, 1124 n42  
 neglect of study of, 567  
   as main cause of destruction of Temple, 1072 n16  
   war of Amalek as punishment for, 577  
 new, to be revealed through Messiah, 1120 n25  
 observance of, 55-56  
   by Abraham before revealed, 206 n140  
 one of three crowns Israel received from God, 670 (*see also* crown[s])  
 one of three things for whose sake world exists, 660  
 oral, 633-634  
   binding power of, 1013 n89  
   as true teaching, 633  
 originally intended only for Moses, 635 n306  
 people neglecting after manna ended, 844  
 personification of, 592 n176  
   as female, 1  
 preexistence of, 102 n2  
 readings from (*see also* Torah: custom of . . .)  
   on Mondays and Thursdays, one of ten regulations of Ezra, 1122  
   on Sabbath afternoons, one of ten regulations of Ezra, 1122  
 refraining from testifying against Israel, 1079  
 rejection of  
   by other nations, 593-594, 1081 n34  
   by sons of Esau, 625 n276  
 as remedy against evil inclination, 452  
 restored and reestablished by Ezra, 1122  
 revelation of  
   direct character of, 616 n248  
   source of 11th of Eighteen Benedictions, 1127  
   taking place in wilderness, 595 n185  
 rewritten in "Assyrian" characters after exile, 1119  
 ridiculed by Manasseh, 1054  
 scholars explaining, sitting under tree of life, 19



Torah (*cont.*)

secret lore of, 949 n14  
 severe marriage laws of  
   Jews of Ezra's time revolting  
     against, 1124 n38  
 significance of, viii  
 613 commandments of, 593, 594  
   n181  
   division of, into ten classes, 619  
     n258  
   not found in tannaitic sources,  
     594 n181  
   observed by Jacob, 296  
 as sixth revelation of God upon  
   earth since creation, 601  
 students of, receiving one-third of  
   Haman's fortune, 1176  
 study of  
   as duty, 199, 200 n111, 575  
   forbidden by Ahaz, 1043  
   under God's guidance, 22 n89  
   by Israelites as first thing in  
     morning and before going  
     to sleep, 775  
   mandated by Hezekiah, 1045  
   by pious in shade of tree of life,  
     22 n85  
   standing while studying, 790  
     n832  
   studying text four times, 636  
     n312  
   vocation of Issachar, 408  
 sweetness of, like honeycomb  
   (*nofet*), 18, 286, 433  
 to be revealed 50 days after  
   Exodus, 592 n175  
 to be taught in territory of  
   Naphthali, 286  
 to remain in heaven for 1,000 gen-  
   erations after creation, 592  
     n177  
 as tree of life, 77, 568 n82  
 world created for sake of, 50 n8,  
   1160 n122  
 world existing for sake of Torah  
   studied by Israel, 1154  
 written, 633-634  
   binding power of, 1013 n89  
   written down 974 generations  
     before creation, 102 n2  
   with black fire on white fire, 1  
 written on  
   altar on Mount Ebal in 70 lan-  
     guages, 843  
   stones of Gilgal camp contain-  
     ing crowns and embellish-  
     ments of Hebrew letters,  
     892 n24

Torah (*cont.*)

Zagzagel (angel) as prince of, 504  
 torch, flaming  
   as revelation on Sinai, in vision of  
     Abraham, 198-199, 200  
     n114  
 tortures in hell, 506  
 touch  
   one of ten parts of body received  
     from God, 606 (*see also*  
     body, human)  
 Tower of Babel, 163-166  
   arrows shooting toward heaven  
     from, 164  
   as attempt to prevent second  
     deluge, 164 n88  
   builders of  
     destroying altar, 232 n251  
     eight sins of (neglect of justice,  
       idolatry, incest, bloodshed,  
       blasphemy, arrogance, slan-  
       der, obscenity), 562 n54  
     punishment of, 215 n179  
   building of, 160, 161 n76, 162  
     n77, 163  
   reasons for, 164 n88  
   ten years after death of Noah,  
     178 n35  
   time spent in (43 years), 165  
     n88  
   dimensions of, 165 n88  
   fate of, 164  
   generation of, 162 n77  
   height of, 163  
   overthrown by wind, 166 n90  
   as revolt against God, 164 n88  
 tradition, chain of, 1128 n56  
   extended to last of geonim, 1128  
     n56  
   extending over 40 generations,  
     1128 n56  
   Ezra and men of Great Synagogue  
     as middle of, 1128 n56  
 translation  
   of Elijah, 1000-1006, 1000 n39,  
     1000 n40  
 traveler(s)  
   story of, and fox in Sodom, 207-  
     208  
   three maxims to be observed by,  
     390  
   treatment of, in sinful cities, 207-  
     208  
   *See also* hospitality; strangers; way-  
     farer  
 treasure(s)  
   of Exodus, returning in possession  
     of Shishak, 984 n15

treasure(s) (*cont.*)

returning to place whence they  
   came (Israel, Torah, treas-  
     ures of Exodus), 984 n15  
 treasure chambers  
   of God, 321  
 treasure troves  
   stored up for pious, 629  
 treaty. *See* covenant(s)  
 tree(s)  
   blessed by God for willingness to  
     serve as cross for Haman,  
     1175  
   command to bear seed given to, 18  
   competition of, 1175  
   confusion of legends about,  
     1177 n184  
   created on third day, 77, 82 n98  
   curative properties of, 157  
   distinguishing between clean and  
     unclean, 204  
   erelim (angels) appointed over, 503  
   fable of trees and iron, 18  
   fruitful, hymn of praise of, 44 (*see*  
     *also* praise)  
   fruit of  
     in fourth year to belong to  
       priest, 156  
     not to be used during first three  
       years of bearing, 156  
 golden  
   planted by Solomon at Temple,  
     966  
   in Temple, to blossom again in  
     time of Messiah, 966  
 identifying believers or idolaters,  
   204  
 kinds  
   apple  
     symbolic of Israel, 1175  
     willing to serve as cross for  
       Haman, 1175  
   carob  
     swallowing Isaiah, 1057 n103  
     and tree of knowledge, 74  
     n70  
   cedar  
     coming to Babylon at time of  
       exile, 1074 n24  
     of Lebanon  
       created on third day, 18  
       planted in Paradise, 21 n74  
     at Magdala  
       considered holy, 393 n308  
       planted by patriarchs, 393  
       n308  
     to be used for Tabernacle,  
       393 n308



tree(s) (*cont.*)kinds (*cont.*)cedar (*cont.*)

only species of shittim to be used, 647  
 planted at head of Jacob's grave, 412  
 sent to Solomon by Hiram of Tyre, becoming green again, 646  
 swallowing Isaiah, 1057 n103  
 symbolic of Israel, 1175  
 for Tabernacle  
   planted in Egypt, 647  
   praising God, 647  
 for Temple, blossoming and bearing fruit, 647 n342  
 tree for cross of Haman, 1177 n184  
   cedar willing to serve as, 1175, 1177 n184  
 wainscoting of first and second divisions of Paradise made from, 19

## etrog

Israel praising God with fruit of, at Tabernacles, 1175  
 willing to serve as cross for Haman, 1175

## fig

Deborah pictured as, 874 n103  
 dried, as food on ark, 148 n37  
 of Ebed-melech, staying fresh for 66 years, 1090  
 as forbidden fruit, 73 n70, 93, 95 n122  
 fruits of, brought to Temple as first fruits, 1175  
 leaves of, covering Adam and Eve, 72, 74 n70, 74  
 symbolic of Israel, 1175  
 willing to serve as cross for Haman, 1175

## gopher, Noah's ark built from, 142

## laurel, to make water sweet, 566

## mulberry, David not to attack until he hears marching in tops of mulberry trees, 920-921

## nut

symbolic of Israel, 1175  
 willing to serve as cross for Haman, 1175

tree(s) (*cont.*)kinds (*cont.*)

## oak

of Abraham, 206 n137  
   A. sitting under, at Mamre, 247  
   healing properties of, 206 n137  
 Absalom caught in branches of, 932  
 pieces of idols broken by Jacob buried under, 316  
 under which Deborah buried called "oak of mourners of Deborah," 318 n301

## olive

depicted on Asher's flag in wilderness, 688  
 Othniel pictured as, 874 n103  
 as tree of life, 92 n113  
 wainscoting of fourth division of Paradise made from, 19

## palm, 567

brought to Babylon 40 years before exile, 1074 n24  
 Deborah buried under, 317  
 Deborah (prophetess) sitting under, 317  
 indicating accession to royal dignity, 901 n52  
 70 in number, corresponding to 70 elders, at Elim, 567  
 symbolic of Israel, 1175  
 symbolic significance of, 568 n86  
 as tree of life, 92 n113  
 willing to serve as cross for Haman, 1175

## tamarisk

of Abraham, 206 n137  
 and middle bar in boards of Tabernacle, 224 n225

## terebinth, Jacob hiding foreign gods under, 857 n5

## willow

symbolic of Israel, 1175  
 willing to serve as cross for Haman, 1175

## language of, 45 n194

human, 46 n194, 248 n317

## number of, in Paradise, 19

## pride of, 21 n74

## story of kind of tree used for cross of Haman, 1175-1176

## of Temple, withering when heathen entered sanctuary, 95 n125

tree(s) (*cont.*)

voice from, talking to Abraham, 245

weeping of, 18

withering of leaves of, at time of fall, 95 n121

*See also* tree of knowledge; tree of life

## tree of knowledge

description of, 74 n70

forming hedge around tree of life, 69

of good and evil

  Samael searching for Moses at, 836

  Noah's vine as offshoot of, 155 n58

in Paradise, 69

## tree of life

description of, 124

distribution of food of, in world to come, 92 n114

Elijah sitting under, 1000 n38

as God's residence, 95 n126, 127 n60

olive tree as, 92 n113

palm tree as, 92 n113

in Paradise, 69

  in middle of Paradise, 19

  in third heaven, 124

and pious

  pious studying Torah in shade of, 22 n85

  tree preserved for pious in world to come, 81 n96

rod of Moses taken from, 568 n82

Samael searching for Moses at, 836  
 scholars sitting under, explaining Torah, 19

size of, 69, 69 n50, 127 n60

streams flowing from, 124, 507

tastes of, 19

*See also* tree(s)

## tribes

covenant with, 434 n3

four as standard-bearers (Reuben, Judah, Dan, Ephraim), 685

merits of, invoked by Elijah, 998 n18

names of

  engraved on precious stones on ephod of Aaron, 650

  numerical value of, as number of Israelites, 636

  numerical value of first letters of names of, as number of Israelites, 637 n314

order of, in census, 680



tribes (*cont.*)

- order of names of
  - on left shoulderpiece of Aaron (Simeon, Judah, Zebulun, Dan, Asher, Benjamin), 650
  - on right shoulderpiece of Aaron (Reuben, Levi, Issachar, Naphtali, Gad, Jehoseph), 650

princes of, names of, indicating history, 679-680

ten

- dwelling beyond Sambation River, 1089 n56
- exile of, 86 n105
- Jacob's prayer for, 377
- repudiated by God forever, according to R. Akiba, 1089 n56

twelve

- blessing of, 406-411
- compared to wells, 567
- corresponding to signs of Zodiac, 687 n441
- creation of world brought about through merits of, 434 n2
- each having flag of different color in wilderness, 688
- as fixed order of nature, 279 n133
- Jacob as father of, 277
- merits of, creation of world through, 434 n2
- Moses copying Torah scroll for each tribe on last day of life, 812
- names of
  - on breastplate of high priest, 35
  - engraved on rod of Moses, 554
  - not containing letters for "sin" or "end," 409 n383
- part of plan of creation, 343 n70
- pointing to redemption of Israel, 433 (*see also under individual names of tribes*)
- princes of, 678-681
- Rebekah destined to be mother of, 254 n16
- separation of, in dream vision of Naphtali, 445-446

tribute

- demanding from Hamites by Chedorlaomer, 194
- paid by
  - Moabites to Edomites, 420

tribute (*cont.*)

- paid by (*cont.*)
  - sons of Esau to Kittim, 421
- paid to Joseph, 422
- to priests, imposed on people by Moses, 720-721

Trinity, 2 n3

trumpet(s)

- at advent of Messiah, 232 n246
- announcing Moses' return to heaven, 632
- blowing of, in warfare, 313
- blown by
  - angel at death of Adam, 96
  - Elijah in Messianic time, 1021
  - Michael to introduce Messiah, 1021

description of, 697 n480

fashioned by Moses, 696, 697 n480

Jericho to be overthrown through sound of, 775

music of, 697 n480

seven sounds of, at resurrection, 605 n214

sounded at

- ascent of Shekinah, 118-119 n56

- Deborah's victory celebration, 873 n92

used by Pharaoh against Israelites, 559

*See also* instruments, musical; ram(s): horn of; shofar

truth

- one of four standards of Divine Throne, 687 n440

tsade (letter). *See* tzade

Tubal

- sons of, war with Zepho, 418

Tubal-cain (son of Lamech and Zillah)

- furnished instruments of war, 112

Tuesday

- refusing to help in ruin of Israel, 1150

Tummim. *See* Urim and Thummim

tunny

- possessions of Zebulun distinguished by, 667

turbot

- only species not returning to Holy Land after exile, 1073 n24

Turnus (king of Benevento)

- asking for Yaniah's hand in marriage, 417

- killed in battle in Valley of Campania, 417

Turnus (*cont.*)

- making war on King Lucus of Sardinia, brother of Agnias, 417

turquoise

- giving owner speed in riding, 651
- stone of tribe of Naphtali in breastplate of Aaron, 651

*See also* precious stones

turtledove

- sacrificed

- by Abraham, 198

- by Noah, 150

Twins (sign of Zodiac). *See* Gemini

twos, all things in, 448

two ways, put before men by God, 448

Tyrian language, 158 n72

tzade (letter)

- creation of world through, 4

- as letter of word *ketz* ("end"), not contained in names of 12 tribes, 409 n383

- numerical value of, 263 n69

- as second letter of name of Isaac, on standard of tribe of Reuben, 686

- standing for

- tzadik* ("pious one"), 4

- tzarot* ("misfortunes" of Israel), 4

- in Zaphenath-paneah, standing for *tzofeh* ("seer"), 368

*See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet *tzadik* ("pious")

- as name of pillar, 9 n28

- title given to Joseph, 328-329 n3

- See also* God: names and titles of

*tzitzit* (fringes)

- commandment of

- given to descendants of

- Abraham, 196

- occasioned by Zelophehad's sin, 690

- and rebellion of Korah, 720 n566

- David cutting off, from Saul's garment, 905 n81

- of Isaiah's garment, 1057 n103

- law of, read to people by Moses, 719

- to recall all commandments of God, 690

- significance of, 196

## U

umbilical cord

- legend of, 139



unchastity

- with betrothed woman, one of
  - crimes of Achan, 847 n25
- breeches of Aaron atoning for, 650
- as cause of flood, 140 n17
- as grave sin, 316
- impurity of, to be removed from
  - Israel in time to come, 677 n417
- loathed by God, 778
- as mother of all evil, 436
- and nakedness, 158 n67
- one of eight grievous sins of
  - Sennacherib, 1048 n60
- one of 13 sins punished by leprosy, 675 (*see also* leprosy)
- wine leading to, 880 n121

uncircumcised ones

- Canaanites as, 310
- not able to bear divine presence, 961 n43
- not able to stand and listen to
  - words of God, 768, 769 n749
- Shechem as, 308
- See also* circumcision

uncleanness

- Noah admonished against, 156

unclean persons

- prohibited from staying near sanctuary, 675
- put out of camp, 674

understanding

- 8,000 gates of, opened to Moses
  - on Sinai, 956 n25
- one of ten parts of body received
  - from God, 606 (*see also* body, human)
- in Talmud, aiding in building
  - Tabernacle, 641

unicorn

- depicted on tribe of Manasseh's
  - flag in wilderness, 688
- getting horn prior to hooves, 87, 88 n108
- offered to God by Adam, 87, 88 n108

unity

- first condition of Israel's redemption, 406

universe

- chanting continuous song to God, 84 n100
- depending on preservation of
  - Israel, 1161 n122
- See also* world[s]

Ur, 161 n76

- place of birth of Abraham, 172 n20

urethra

- one of ten orifices of man, 960
- See also* body, human

Uriah

- called "Gibeonite," 1071 n14
- incurring death penalty for refusing to take his ease in own house, 928
- killed by Jehoiakim, identified with
  - priest Uriah, 1068, 1071 n14

Uriah of Kiriathjearim

- relative of Jeremiah, 1068

Uriah the Hittite

- assisting David with Goliath's
  - armor in return for Israelite wife, 916

Uriel (archangel)

- corresponding to Dan, 685
- as Enoch's teacher, 127 n60
- explaining to Ezra about appointed time of evil, 1122
- giving knowledge to Seth, 116 n53

- identified with Suriel, 687 n440
- and Jacob, 306 n273

- as leader of most exalted rank of
  - angels, 13

- and Michael burying Adam, 97 n135

and Moses

- encounter of U. with Moses, 306 n273

- U. attacking M. on road to
  - Egypt, 517 n146

- name, meaning of ("God is my light"), 685

and Noah

- U. informing N. of coming of
  - flood, 143 n23

- U. sent to N. to announce
  - flood, 135

- one of four angels surrounding
  - Divine Throne, 685

Urim and Thummim

- Aaron permitted to bear on heart, 516

- Abimelech consulting for David, 906

- ceasing to give oracular answers
  - after death of first prophets, 652 n358

- consulted by Phinehas concerning
  - battle at Gibeah, 881

- consulted concerning Saul, 898

- giving answer to Zadok, 947 n10

- high priest clad in, 775

Urim and Thummim (*cont.*)

- made to perform functions by precious stones in breastplate
  - of high priest, 652

- name, meaning of, 652

- one of five things in First Temple
  - only, 1123-1124 n36

- refusing to give answer to Abiathar, 947 n10

- taken into battle by Phinehas, 794

- to be consulted only for king, 906
- to belong to Aaron, 821

- wisdom of Ahitophel coinciding
  - with, 922

- See also* augury; divination; lots; magic arts; sorcery; witchcraft

- urshana, among immortals, 147, 148 n37

Ushpiziwnah

- beauty of, 420
- daughter of Asdrubal, marriage of,
  - to Latinus, 420

usurer(s)

- excluded from resurrection, 1102, 1102 n94

Uz

- Edom also called, 455

Uzriah (king), 821

Uzza (angel)

- as adversary of Moses and Israel in
  - Egypt and at Red Sea, 965 n56

- charging that bondage of Israel was
  - only 86 years, 552

- fallen angel, as Azza and
  - Shemhazai, 118 n56

- first to be drowned in sea, 557

- interceding for Egyptians at Red
  - Sea, 556

- opposition of, to creation of man, 137 n10

- as prince of sea, 558 n42

- teaching magic arts, 117

- tutelary angel of Egyptians, making accusation against
  - Israel, 552

- Uzza (elder from tribe of Issachar), 696

Uzzah, dropping dead

- for easing self near ark, 924 n68

- for forgetting about transportation of ark on shoulders, 786

- for touching ark, 924 n68

- for uncovering ark, 924 n68



Uzziah (son of Amaziah)  
 administering kingdom during last  
 years of Amaziah's life,  
 1039 n19  
 arrogance of, 1042 n30  
 arrogating to self privileges of  
 priesthood, 1040  
 killing Amos, 1040  
 love of husbandry as cause of  
 downfall of, 1042 n30  
 neglecting study of Torah, 1042  
 n30  
 possessing forehead of Adam, 58  
 reign of, marking beginning of  
 activity of Hosea, Amos,  
 and Isaiah, 1039  
 stricken with leprosy, 59, 1040,  
 1042 n29, 1043  
   on account of David's curse of  
   Joab, 946  
   for presuming on rights of  
   priesthood, 675  
   for trying to burn incense in  
   Temple, 728  
 Uzziel  
   father of Mishael and Elzaphan,  
   663  
   one of four sons of Kohath, 718  
 Uzzi of Timnah  
   daughter of, married to Reuben,  
   347

## V

Vale of Siddim  
   five godless kings of Palestine  
   routed at, 194  
 Valeria. *See* Beruria  
 valley of ants  
   story of Solomon in, 971-972  
 Valley of Campania  
   battle in, between kings of Bene-  
   vento, Sardinia, and Africa,  
   417  
 Valley of Pathros  
   battle in, between Zepho and sons  
   of Jacob and Egyptians, 419  
 Valley of Shechem  
   battle in, between Jacob and  
   Amorites, 314  
 Vashti  
   arraying self in high priestly gar-  
   ments, 1134  
   banquet of  
     consisting of Palestinian meats  
     and dishes, liqueurs, and  
     sweets, 1134

Vashti (*cont.*)  
   banquet of (*cont.*)  
     held in halls of palace, 1134  
     political motivation for, 1134  
   V. exhibiting treasures at,  
     1134  
   V. refusing Ahasuerus's order to  
     appear at banquet naked,  
     1134-1135  
   for women, 1134-1135  
 as daughter of  
   Belshazzar, 1134  
   Evil-merodach, 1137 n31  
 death of  
   caused by Haman, 1174-1175,  
   1177 n179  
   execution  
     bringing about rebellion  
     against Ahasuerus, 1137  
     ordained in heaven, 1137 n34  
   Memucan responsible for, 1147  
   disfigured with leprosy by Gabriel,  
   1135  
   forcing Jewish women to spin and  
   weave on Sabbath, 1135  
 legend about refusal to appear  
   naked, similar to story told  
   by Herodotus about  
   Candaules and Gyges,  
   1137 n31  
   marriage of, to Ahasuerus, 1131  
   n6  
   one of four women of perfect  
   beauty, 941 n132  
   one of two heathen queens, 990  
   n51 (*see also* Semiramis)  
   story of fate of, 1135-1138  
 vav (letter)  
   creation of world through, 4  
   *See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet  
 vegetarianism  
   practiced by Esther, Hananiah,  
   Mishael, and Azariah,  
   1142  
 veins  
   one of five parts of body received  
   from father, 606 (*see also*  
   body, human)  
 venom, of serpents, 15 n59  
 Venus (angel), 120 n57  
 Venus (planet), 18  
   Aniel as angel in charge of, 131  
   n61  
   cooling sun, 504  
   in fourth heaven, 504  
 verdicts, partial  
   breastplate of Aaron atoning for,  
   650

vermin  
   as consequence of fall, 79 n90  
 vernal equinox  
   God turning waters of Egypt into  
   blood, 877 n109  
 Vespasian  
   as ruler of world, 163 n82 (*see also*  
   cosmocrator)  
   to spring from Esau as nation of  
   sin, 252  
 vessels, holy  
   brought to Babylon, 1092 n52  
   hidden by priest Simeon, 1092 n63  
 vetches  
   eaten during famine, 936 n111  
 vigils, kept by Jacob, 277  
 vine  
   Gideon pictured as, 874 n103  
   spies not able to carry, 709 n518  
   symbolic of Israel, 1175  
   willing to serve as cross for  
   Haman, 1175  
   wine of, brought to altar, 1175  
   *See also* tree(s)  
 vineyard  
   image of keeper of, and thief, 774-  
   775  
   Israel described as, 774-775  
   as metaphor for woman, 752  
   n673  
   people described as, 859  
 violence  
   as cause of flood, 140 n17  
 violet. *See under* color(s)  
 viper  
   gnat as antidote for poison of, 43  
   venom of, as cure for skin erup-  
   tions, 43  
   *See also* serpent  
 Virgin (sign of Zodiac). *See* Virgo  
 virgins  
   throwing selves on flames, 1075  
   weaving curtains for sanctuary,  
   1077 n30  
 Virgo (Virgin) (sign of Zodiac)  
   answering Haman in defense of  
   Israel, 1151  
 visibility  
   of audible, in revelation at Sinai,  
   612 n238  
 vision  
   of Boaz, concerning descendants of  
   Ruth, 863  
   divine, at Sinai, greater than  
   visions of prophets, 612  
   n238  
   of Saul, 901 n52  
   *See also* dream(s)



## visitations

alien rule as, 199

Gehenna as, 199

## voice(s)

calling Samuel at age of eight years, 896 n40

calling to Moses, in form of tube of fire, 673

heavenly, 747

announcing birth of Samuel, 889

directing Solomon to Mount Zion as best site for Temple, 965

heard in Israel from time to time, 1124 n36

identifying mother of child in case before Solomon, 950

preventing Solomon from dispensing judgment without witnesses, 950

sanctioning Boaz's greeting "The Lord be with you," 865 n53

one of seven things created in beginning, 1

at revelation at Sinai

four in number, 605 n214

five in number, 605 n214

seven in number, 605 n214

still, small

as last judgment, 995

one of four phenomena preceding appearance of God, 995

validating words of mortals, 347 n89

## vow

fulfilling of, 316

and Jacob

J. as first to make vow, 278

J.'s vow at Bethel not fulfilled promptly, 316

of Jonah to go to Nineveh, 1033 n32

law of absolution from, 624

submitted to by God, 624, 625 n276

## Vretil (angel)

Enoch's teacher (should be Uriel), 127 n60

*See also* oath

## vulture(s)

fearing to swoop down, 2

hymn of praise of, 44, 46 n194 (*see also* praise)

*See also* bird(s): of prey; eagle(s)

## W

## wagons

for Tabernacle

brought by princes, 665

lasting for all eternity, 665

## walls

in Egypt and Goshen, falling at roaring of Judah, 387

## war/warfare

of Amalek against Israel, 745-746

with Amorites, 314-316

of Anibal against Latinus, 420

of Aram and nations of East against Ethiopia, 491

armor and, 314

between Carthage and Rome, 421 n426

of confusion

three occasions of (battle of

Gibeon, battle against

Sisera, battle of Samuel

against Philistines), 896

n42

to be in Messianic time, 896 n42

defensive war

no man exempt from service in, 920 n50

of Edom against Moab, 420

between Edomites and Kittim, 421

between Egypt and Canaan

mention of, in Tel-Amarna letters, 548 n10

of Ephraimites against Philistines at Gath, 547

between Ethiopia and nations of East, 489

exaggerated numbers in, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 415, 416,

418, 419, 420 (*see also* under number)

first step in preparation for, selection of spies, 842-843

holding sway in this world 563-564

horses used in, 314

of Israel

against Amorites, 716-717

against Og, 753

against Sihon, 751-752

taking place in Elul, 752 n666

of Jacob and sons

against Ninevites, 311-314

against Shechemites, 309-311

of Joshua against Amalek, 581-582

magic and, 581

between Midianites and Moabites,

420

war/warfare (*cont.*)

among nations, 420-421

observance of religious statutes during, 797

only meat of sacrifice to be eaten during, 902 n58

purification of warriors before, 583 n145

of Simon and Levi, against

Shechemites, 309-310

between sons of Esau and sons of Jacob, 415

second campaign of, 416

between sons of Esau and sons of Seir, 416

teaching, as evil, 167

window of, in first heaven, 503

between Zepho and

Africa, 418-419

Islands of the Sea, 418

sons of Tubal, 418

## warriors

purification of, before war, 583

n145

## wasp

David saved from Abner by, 919

*See also* hornet

## watchers of heaven

as fallen angels, 119-120

## water(s)

as abode of demons, 67 n40

above

distance of, from firmament, 14 n48

as foundations for seven heavens, Divine Throne, and

abode of angels, 12

identified with light, 14 n48

becoming transparent as glass, one of ten miracles at Red Sea, 556

below

as foundations for netherworld,

12 (*see also* Hades; hell;

Gehenna; Gehinnom;

netherworld; Sheol; Tofet)

identified with darkness, 14 n48

of bitterness, 1068, 1070 n13

boundaries of, sealed by Name of God, 21 n73

bringing about death of Moses, 735

as chaotic primeval substance, 11 n42

chief of, Rahab, angel of sea, 18

and creation

created on first day, 82 n98



water(s) (*cont.*)and creation (*cont.*)

- created on second day, 735
- division of waters in, 12-13, 14 n52, 48
- element of creation, 29 n114
- gathering of waters on third day, 82 n98
- one of ten things produced on first day of creation, 5
- ordered to divide before Moses, 48
- division of, when Red Sea divided, 554
- drinking, congealed in heart of sea, one of ten miracles at Red Sea, 556
- eagerness of, to obey, 20 n73
- effect of, on those who partake of it, 779 n787
- first to give praise to God, 12
- flowing from beneath tree of life, 69
- gender of, 21 n74
  - female, issuing from earth, 147
  - male, above firmament, 147
- in Haran, 278
- identical with darkness, 11 n42
- in Jewish legend, 9 n23
- lack of
  - at Elim, 567
  - at Marah, 567
  - as punishment for neglect of study of Torah, 575
  - in wilderness, 566
- ministering to demons, 67 n40
- miracles connected with, 750 n665
- poisoning of, in four equinoxes, 877 n109
- of purification, sprinkled on warriors before war, 583 n145
- rebellion of, 14 n50, 18, 20 n72, 20 n73
- refusal of, to separate, 12
- from rock, 575
- separating second from first earth, 6
- over seventh earth, 6
- song of praise of, 14 n53 (*see also* praise)
- spring of living water in Paradise, 507
- springs of, having various effects on those who drink them, 778
- stream of
  - in first heaven, 503
  - flowing through brackish sea, one of ten miracles at Red Sea, 556

water(s) (*cont.*)

- trial by, 625-626
- at Mizpah, 895 n40
- for worshipers of golden calf, 895 n40
- turning bitter to sweet in wilderness, 566-567
- turning to blood, as plague in Egypt, 527
- united in vault above heads of Israelites, one of ten miracles connected with passage of Israelites, 555
- walls of, transformed into rocks, one of ten miracles connected with passage of Israelites, 556
- weeping of, at separation, 20 n73
- See also* ocean; sea
- Water-bearer (sign of Zodiac). *See* Aquarius
- water libation
  - performed on Feast of Tabernacles, 929 n78
  - in Temple, commanded by God, 14 n52
- watersprings
  - created in twilight between sixth day and Sabbath, 78 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)
- waw (letter). *See* vav
- wax
  - heavenly decree sealed with, 1159, 1161 n122
- wayfarer
  - kindness toward, 393 n296 (*see also* hospitality; strangers; traveler[s])
- ways, two. *See* two ways
- weak, protection of, 1-2
- wealth
  - bringing destruction, 798-800
  - desired by Esau, 304
  - not desired by Jacob, 304
  - one of three gifts of God to world, 798 (*see also* gifts)
  - as qualification of prophet, 633 (*see also* prophet: qualifications of)
  - of Sodom, 208-209
  - two men perishing on account of (Korah, Haman), 798
- wealthy people
  - legends about, and Elijah and R. Joshua b. Levi, 1014
- window of, in first heaven, 503

## weapon(s)

- acquiring, as evil, 167
- Azazel teaching men to make, 119
- bow, as chief weapon of tribe of Judah, 821
- catapults, used by Babylonians against Jerusalem, 1074
- of Israelites, taken away by angels, 627
- javelins, 314
- lime powder as, 312
- mentioned by Isaac, 268 n78
- swords, 314
- throwing spears as, 314
- See also* armor; bow; javelins; spears; swords; war/warfare
- weasel, 42 n188
- wedding
  - day, bridegroom pardoned on, for all past sins, 273
  - festivities, lasting seven days, 425
  - See also* marriage(s)
- Wednesday
  - considered unlucky day in Middle Ages, 27 n109
  - protesting annihilation of Israel, 1150
- Weeks, Feast of. *See* Pentecost
- weeping
  - of angels, 231 n242
  - over Isaac, 264
  - of dying, 58 n20
  - of Esau, 270
  - of Eve after death of Adam, 98
  - of Jacob
    - at command of Rebekah, 295
    - for kissing Rachel, 281
  - of Jeremiah, 1086-1087 n47
  - of Joseph
    - over going to Egypt, 337
    - at Rachel's grave, 337-338
    - at sight of Benjamin, 381 n244
  - of Joshua, 809
  - of Judah
    - for Joseph, 340
  - of Leah, 283, 285
  - of Messiah, 20, 23 n97
  - of Rebekah, 273, 273 n113
  - significance of, 922 n54
  - of sons of Jacob, for what they did to Joseph, 340
  - of trees, 18
  - window of, in first heaven, 503
  - See also* crying; tears
- weights and measures
  - Cain as first to introduce, 111, 112 n41



## well(s)

of Abraham  
 names of, restored by Isaac, 260  
 restored by Isaac, 260  
 dug by Isaac  
 fourth well identified with well  
 of Miriam, 263 n63  
 motivation for, 263 n68  
 number of, 263 n63  
 significance of, 263 n63  
 of Miriam (*see* Miriam, well of)  
 reappearing on account of merits  
 of Aaron and Moses, 573  
 12, at Elim, corresponding to 12  
 tribes, 567  
 12, made by God at creation at  
 Elim, 567  
 to which pious repair, 241 n288  
 in wilderness  
 identified with Miriam's well,  
 750 n663  
 one of six blessings of generation  
 of wilderness, 86 n105  
 one of three gifts received by  
 Israel, given on account of  
 merits of Miriam, 573, 574  
 n113 (*see also* gifts; merits)  
 revealing miracle in valley of  
 Arnon  
 Well of Lewdness  
 identified with well of Shittim,  
 778, 779 n787  
 inhabitants of Sodom drawing  
 from, 779 n787  
 werewolf, 39 n148  
 west  
 assigned to Eve, 92  
 Ephraim, Manasseh, and Benjamin  
 to pitch camp in, 685  
 location of ocean, 6  
 location of Shekinah, 824 n914  
 wheat  
 as forbidden fruit of Paradise, 73-  
 74 n70  
 white. *See under* color(s)  
 whole offering. *See* offering; sacri-  
 fice(s)  
 whoredom  
 punished by stoning and hanging  
 corpses on gallows, 779  
 wicked  
 actions of, made known while in  
 womb, 254 n13  
 death of, 58 n20  
 distinguished from pious by odor  
 of dead bones, 339 n58  
 experiencing sorrow after joy,  
 399

wicker (*cont.*)

having to search laboriously for  
 manna, 573 n102  
 in hell, resting on Sabbath, 85  
 n103  
 judged in river of fire, 97 n134  
 looking at, causing blindness, 267  
 n74  
 marked by angel with blood, 1075  
 n26  
 punished  
 after death, 383 n257  
 by God during night, 538 n216  
 by God while naked, 562 n55  
 seized by angels of destruction at  
 death, 430 n444  
 as slaves to their hearts, 273 n109  
 to be led from hell to Paradise on  
 judgment day, 939  
 torture of, in Gehenna, announced  
 by angels in fifth heaven,  
 505 n117  
 wicked kingdom  
 identified with Rome, one of three  
 things to be removed  
 before advent of Messiah,  
 307 n275  
 wicked men  
 wicked from first to last, five in  
 number (Nimrod, Esau,  
 Dathan and Abiram, Ahaz,  
 Ahasuerus), 1044 n39  
 wickedness  
 coming into world with Cain,  
 101  
 widower  
 rule concerning marriage of, 243  
 n308  
 widows  
 Job's concern for, 454  
 wife  
 having one at a time, 461  
 of Lot (*see* Lot: wife of)  
 metaphors for, 155 n60  
 of Potiphar (*see* Zuleika)  
 same as sister, 878 n111  
 wild beasts  
 being devoured by, as punishment  
 of thieves, 246  
 slain by David with stones, 914  
 n15  
 wild cock  
 as guardian bird of shamir, 975  
 n85  
 identified with hoopoe, 975 n85  
 wilderness  
 Gabriel appearing to Joseph in,  
 332

wilderness (*cont.*)

generation of  
 Solomon's wisdom greater than  
 wisdom of, 949-950  
 heavenly gifts received by Israel  
 in, as rewards for kindness  
 and piety of Abraham, 570  
 n92  
 Ishmael and family in, 221  
 Israel in, 48  
 Israel receiving three gifts in (well,  
 clouds of glory, manna),  
 573, 574 n113 (*see also*  
 gifts)  
 Israel wandering in, for 40 years,  
 542, 545-548, 548 n8  
 while Palestine made habitable,  
 717  
 Joseph losing way in, 332  
 revelation of Torah taking place in,  
 595 n185  
 sojourn of Israelites in  
 Israelites studying Torah in,  
 546  
 spiritually and materially benefi-  
 cial for Israelites, 546  
*See also* camp(s); desert; Israel  
 (nation; people)/Israelites:  
 in wilderness; Moses: in  
 wilderness  
 wilderness generation. *See* genera-  
 tion(s): of wilderness  
 willow tree  
 symbolic of Israel, 1175  
 willing to serve as cross for  
 Haman, 1175  
*See also* tree(s)  
 wind  
 as anger of God, 699  
 created on first day, 82 n98  
 God flying on, against Pharaoh,  
 558  
 ministering to God, 67 n40  
 north  
 most beneficial for production  
 of nourishment, 645 n337  
 as sign of God's grace, 717 n548  
 one of four phenomena preceding  
 appearance of God, 995  
 one of ten things produced on first  
 day of creation, 5  
 standing for this world, 995  
 stilling of, 10 n36  
 strength of, 999 n29  
*See also* God: spirit of  
 windows  
 in first heaven, names of, 503  
 of heaven, 17 n67



## windpipe

- one of 12 guides of men, rendering breathing and utterance of sounds possible, 671 (*see also* body, human; guides: of men)

## wine

- brought to Adam by angels, 69
- causing one to disclose secrets, 440
- drunk from golden vessels at feast of Ahasuerus, 1133
- fall of Adam due to, 153
- given to
  - Isaac by archangel like wine of pious in world to come, 268 n92
  - Isaac by Jacob, 266
  - pious in world to come, 268 n92
- of heathens, Israelites forbidden to drink, 798
- intoxication with, twisting understanding, 440
- leading Judah astray, 440
- leading to unchastity, 880 n121
- mixed with water, given to Sisera by Jael, 869
- moderation in consumption of, 155 n58
- one of rivers in Paradise, 507 (*see also* rivers: flowing under thrones of pious)
- one of ten mighty things existing in world, 1120 n24
- Persian custom to compel excessive drinking of, at banquet, 1133
- preserved for pious, 21 n79
- potency of, 1118
- red, given to Esau by Jacob, 259 n45
- required for libations
  - coming from En-Gedi, 709 n519
  - coming from Miriam's well, 709 n519
- and seduction of Israelites by Moabites, 778
- served at Sabbath meal by Joseph to sons of Jacob, 380
- and Solomon, 958
- S. drinking wine when Temple completed, 949 n13
- as stream from tree of life, 127 n60
- well of Asmodeus filled with, 973
- See also* drunkenness; inebriate; intoxication

## winter

- color white corresponding to, 971

## winter solstice

- and Leviathan spouting up water, 2
- time when Jephthah offered daughter, 877 n109
- See also* Tevet (month)

## wisdom

- causing Balaam and Ahithophel to lose this world and world to come, 798
- celestial, Bezalel endowed with, 469
- divine
  - cannot be comprehended by man, 459
  - as source of Torah, 2 n2
- gates of
  - 49 in number, 956 n25
  - 50 in number, 633, 635 n306
  - 5,000 opened to Moses on Sinai, 956 n25
  - open to Moses and Solomon, 950
- given by God to be used for sanctification of His holy name, 414 n406
- heart as seat of, 956 n24
- intellect as seat of, 956 n24
- one of three gifts of God to world, 798 (*see also* gifts)
- originating with the Jews, 159 n75
- as qualification of prophet, 633 (*see also* prophet: qualifications of)
- required for building of Noah's ark, 141
- of Solomon (*see* Solomon: wisdom of)
- in Torah, aiding in building Tabernacle, 641
- and tribe of Issachar, 433
- Zagzagel (angel) as prince of, 504

## wise men

- greater than prophets, 1124 n36
- summoned to Pharaoh to interpret dreams, 362

## witch

- of En-dor, 900
- deceiving people for 40 years, 903-904 n74
- Queen of Sheba as, 458 n20

## witchcraft

- coming from fallen angels, 121 n57
- Egypt as seat of, 66 n40
- having no power over men born in second Adar, 1152 n108
- Laban and, 294 n223

witchcraft (*cont.*)

- and making of "image of jealousy," 1101 n93
- prohibition of, 70 n55
- used against Esther, 1144 n78
- See also* augury; divination; lots; magic arts; sorcery; Urim and Thummim

## witness, false

- drought as punishment for, 607
- forbidden by Ninth Commandment, 607

## witnesses

- necessary for capital punishment, three in number, 989 n39
- necessary for dispensing judgment, 950
- women disqualified as, 207 n151

## wolf (wolves)

- among animals of fourth plague, 530
- Benjamin known as, 409
- depicted on tribe of Benjamin's flag in wilderness, 688
- and ram, legend of, 303
- on Solomon's throne, 968

## woman (women), 64-68

- at banquet of Vashti refusing to participate in desecration of holy vessels, 1135 n28
- and barrenness (*see* barrenness)
- beauty of, leading astray, 440
- women of perfect beauty, four in number (Sarah, Rahab, Esther, Abigail), 940, 941 n132
- blackening faces of, 797
- "born of," as designation of contempt, 632 n296
- character of, ascertained from barking of dogs, 241 n288
- in childbirth, 1020 n100
- corpses of, not proper to transport, 319 n310
- covering hair, 65
- covering head, 68 n45
- creation of
  - from bone, 65, 263
  - from man, 65
  - from rib, 65
- Cushite, Zipporah as, 701 n488
- disqualified as witnesses in court, 207 n151
- distinguished from man by odor of dead bones, 339 n58
- division of, into seven classes, 23 n97
- as eavesdroppers, 268 n81



woman (women) (*cont.*)

edict of Ahasuerus  
that wife must obey husband, 1137  
that wife must speak language of husband, 1137  
Edomite, Moses assuring king of Edom that Israelites would not attack, 737 n622  
of Egypt, to find hidden male Israelite children, 472  
eligibility of, for office of judge, 870 n74  
eminent, in Bible, two in number (Deborah, Huldah), 1061-1062 n117  
expected to instruct children in ways of Torah, 596  
extinguishing light of man's soul, 65  
faithless, dying after tasting dust on floor of Tabernacle, 672 n393  
forbidden to use weapons, 871 n85  
foreign, married by Solomon, 949 n16  
free from punishment for rebellion in wilderness, 715 n546  
of Gibeah, deserving her death, 884 n134  
giving birth to giants, 121 n57  
Hebrew, legendary fertility of, 466 n4, 468  
impure for 33 days after giving birth to male child, 967 n57  
intelligence of, 65, 67-68 n44  
of Israel, singing before angels, 563  
jealous disposition of, 288 n176  
of Jerusalem  
afflicted with repulsive diseases, 1082  
beauty of, 1082, 1085 n45  
cast off by Babylonians, 1082  
Jewish, despised by Persians, 1139 n53  
led by Miriam, singing song at Red Sea, 564  
lighting candles  
on Sabbath, 65  
to celebrate appointment of elders, 700  
liking to show selves in street, 307  
making bricks for Tower of Babel, 163-64  
and man (men)  
woman not to claim equality with man, 67 n40

woman (women) (*cont.*)

and man (men) (*cont.*)  
women more scrupulous than men in observance of religious precepts, 596  
mendacious nature of, 207 n151  
metaphors for, 752 n673  
of Midian, killed by Israelites, 797  
Moses at first rejecting gifts of, 653-654  
mourning, story of, 1084 n43  
name, meaning of, 68 n47  
needing perfume, 65  
New Moon as festival for, 655 n364  
only one found worthy to receive divine communication directly, 254 n18  
Paradise of, 940  
physical formation of, 65  
piety of, 785  
pious  
not included in curse pronounced on Eve, 476  
22 in number, 942 n134  
praised for virtue in last chapter of Proverbs  
22 in number, 949 n13  
producing woolen hangings for Tabernacle, 653  
purification offerings of, 893 n26  
refusing to give up jewels for making of golden calf, 620  
rejuvenated monthly as reward for, 620  
remaining true to Moses and God, 785  
of returning exiles, losing beauty, 1124 n38  
seducing angels, 41 n168, 118 n55, 121 n57  
and serpent, enmity between, 75  
seven sterile, who bore children (Sarah, Rebekah, Leah, Rachel, Hannah, Hazlelponith, Zion), 878 n111  
shrill voice of, 65  
of Shunem (*see* Shunammite)  
spinning wool while still on goats, 653  
suspected of adultery, 568 n82  
water test of, 654  
talkativeness of, 280 n149  
to cover lower parts of bodies with garment called sinar, one of ten regulations of Ezra, 1122

woman (women) (*cont.*)

transformed into  
sirens, 41 n168  
star, 137 n10  
trying to restrain men from worshipping golden calf, 785  
of valor, 22 in number (Bathsheba, Bithiah, Elisheba, Esther, Hannah, Hazlelponith, Jael, Jochebed, Leah, Michal, Miriam, Naomi, Noah's wife, Obadiah's wife, Rachel, Rahab, Rebekah, Ruth, Sarah, Serah, Shunammite, Zarephath's widow), 238 n271  
virtuous, Solomon not finding any, 952  
in wilderness, spared customary ailments of women, 675  
words of Solomon against, 957 n32  
wonder children, 172 n15  
wonders  
six, since creation of world, 849  
seven great, in history, 237  
wool  
of goat, same as hair of angel of Edom, 307 n275  
prohibition against using with flax, 105 n12  
word, spoken  
effect of, whether curse or blessing, 294 n224  
word of God. *See* God: word of  
work(s)  
kinds of, permissible on Sabbath in construction of sanctuary, 653  
of love, one of three things for whose sake world exists, 660  
world(s)  
created by God  
with left hand, 1166 n143  
with one hand, 49 n3  
created for sake of  
Abraham, 50 n8  
David, 50 n8, 939 n128  
Israel, 20 n8, 48, 1165  
man, 47-48, 51 n8, 63 n35, 146 n32  
merits of Abraham, 167  
merits of Jacob, 400  
Messiah, 50 n8, 939 n128  
Moses, 50 n8, 939 n128  
R. Hanina b. Dosa, 51 n8  
Torah, 50 n8, 1160 n122



world(s) (*cont.*)

creation of  
 through letters of alphabet, 3-4  
 through merits of 12 tribes, 434  
 n2  
 from creation to Sinai, owing existence to love and grace of God, 660  
 destruction of, beginning with Zion, 11 n40  
 division of, into 12 zones, 10 n33  
 duration of, 7,000 years, 126, 859  
 existence of, conditional upon Israel's acceptance of Torah, 635 n308  
 existing for sake of  
 three things (Torah, Divine service, works of love), 660  
 Torah studied by Israel, 1154  
 existing on account of one godly person, 212 n164  
 four, through which man must pass, 999 n30  
 Israel and Torah necessary for existence of, 1166 n143  
 and man, 47-51  
 world as macroanthropos, 49  
 n4, 60 n22  
 world as reflex of man, 47  
 new, 574 n108  
 creation of, beginning with Zion, 11 n40  
 one of six gifts as reward for observance of Sabbath, 572 (*see also* gifts; Sabbath: observance of)  
 three who lived to see (Daniel, Job, Noah), 462 n35  
 number of  
 310, 10 n30  
 18,000, 23 n97  
 two, greater and lesser, 24  
 other, created by God before this one, 1  
 owing existence to three sons of Korah, 728 n590  
 of pious, received according to merit, 22 n85  
 resting on three pillars  
 as three patriarchs, 728 n590  
 as three sons of Korah, 728 n590  
 as three youths, Hananiah, Mishaël, and Azariah, 728 n590, 1099  
 seven parts of, 683 n430  
 seventh, only one inhabited by human beings, 682

world(s) (*cont.*)

from Sinai to erection of sanctuary, owing existence to Torah and to love, 660  
 traversing of, by Michael, Gabriel, Elijah, and angel of death, 1004 n46  
 zones of, corresponding to signs of Zodiac, 10 n33  
*See also* earth(s)  
 world to come  
 angels in, 17 n66  
 blessing of God in, 428  
 creation of, 8 n17  
 David to be member of company of righteous in, 940 n129  
 as day of Lord, 99 n140  
 distribution of food of tree of life in, 92 n114  
 erection of sanctuary in, 640  
 evil and sin to be abolished in, 306 n275  
 healing of all disease in, 591  
 Israel to receive 13 gifts from God in, 640 (*see also* gifts)  
 larger than this world, 23-24  
 life in, as eternal life, 1022 n119  
 light of sun in, 24  
 and Moses  
 M. to be teacher of Israel in, 508  
 M. to lead Israel in, 838  
 part to be played by Moses in, 543 n235  
 song of praise led by Moses in, 564  
 observance of Day of Atonement in, 632 n301  
 one delight of, to gaze at light of Shekinah, 645  
 one of six gifts as reward for observance of Sabbath, 572 (*see also* gifts; Sabbath: observance of)  
 pious in (*see also under* pious)  
 light of first day to appear to pious in, 5  
 manna as food of pious in, 574 n108  
 310 worlds prepared for pious in, 807  
 tree of life preserved for pious in, 81 n96  
 world to come set apart for pious, 327  
 righteous to perform resurrection of dead in, 1103 n95

world to come (*cont.*)

and Sabbath  
 joy of Sabbath as one-sixtieth of world to come, 608 n220  
 Sabbath as foretaste of world to come, 99 n140, 606  
 world to come as eternal Sabbath, 85 n102  
 world to come as Great Sabbath, 99 n140  
 those having no share in, 989 n46  
 Absalom, 932  
 Ahab, 988, 1058 n109  
 Ahaz, 1044 n44  
 Ahaz and Ahaziah, 967 n59, 1038-1039 n6  
 Ahitophel, 922  
 Esau, 259 n43  
 generation of revelation, 612-613 n244  
 generation of Tower, 165 n90  
 Jeroboam, 1058 n109  
 kings who do evil, 1038-1039 n6  
 Manasseh, 1058 n108  
 those having share in  
 all except three kings (Jeroboam, Ahab, Manasseh) and four men (Balaam, Doeg, Ahitophel, Gehazi), 908 n100  
 children, 1022 n118  
 Terah, 199  
*See also* days to come; future world; time to come  
 worms  
 being eaten alive by, 908 n106  
 as punishment, 884 n136  
 betraying Dathan and Abiram as sinners, 572, 574 n110  
 corpses of eight not touched by (Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Moses, Aaron, Miriam, Benjamin, David), 939 n128 (*see also under* corpse[s])  
 created on fifth day, 82 n98  
 excrement of, as cinnamon, 34  
 excrement of phoenix as, 34  
 in hell, 506  
 wreath  
 of bridegroom, 26 n101  
 of sun, 26 n101  
 withering of, as sign of death, 934 n110  
 writing  
 art of  
 taught to Greeks by Phoenicians, 484 n67



writing (*cont.*)  
 art of (*cont.*)  
   taught to Hebrews by Moses, 484 n67  
   taught to Phoenicians by Hebrews, 484 n67  
 characters used for, 157  
 Japhethite system of, 158 n72  
 meaning editing, 1071 n15  
 on tablets of Sinai, created in twilight between sixth day and Sabbath, 78 (*see also under* creation: sixth day)

writings, holy  
   canonization of, 1128 n56  
*See also* Bible; Hagiographa; Scripture

## Y

Yaasriel (angel)  
   having charge of 70 pencils, 605-606  
   sent to engrave Ineffable Name anew on shard over abyss, 605-606

Yabbashah (third earth), 6

Yaddua  
   identified with “vegetable man,” 760 n720  
*See also* Yadua

Yadua (bird)  
   tongue of, used in construction of bird of Balak, 759, 760 n720

Yagon  
   one of names of Messiah, 548 n10  
*See also* Ganon

Yah (God)  
   name by which God created world, 686

*See also* God: names and titles of

Yam Suf  
   meaning of, 479 n46

Yaniah  
   becoming ill in Africa, 418  
   daughter of Uzi, 417  
   marriage of, to Agnias, 417  
   recovering from illness with water from Forma in land of Kittim, 418

*yashpeh*  
   Hebrew name of jasper, 652

year  
   1569 as year after creation when Noah divided earth, 156

year (*cont.*)  
   to begin with month of Nisan, 534  
*See also* date  
 Yefefiyah (angel)  
   handing over Torah to Moses, 615  
   placing Moses on couch to die, 832 n948  
   prince of Torah, 615  
   teacher of Torah, not revealer, 616 n248

Yefefiyah. *See* Yefefiyah

*Yehudi*. *See* Jew(s)

Yemen, Jews of  
   refusing to return to Holy Land, 1124 n36

*Yetzer ha-Ra*. *See* evil inclination

Yiganon. *See* Ganon

Yikon (angel)  
   ringleader of rebellious angels, 137 n9

Yireh  
   name, meaning of, 231  
   site of altar of Abraham, 231

Yishtabbah  
   composed by Solomon, 1128 n58  
*See also* prayers, Jewish

Yoam (wife of Jonah), 113 n42

yod (letter)  
   creation of world through, 4  
   first letter of name of Isaac, on standard of tribe of Judah, 686

first letter of name of Jacob, 253  
   on standard of tribe of Judah, 686

and he (letter), sacred letters over ark, 686

lamenting for being removed from name of Sarah, 706

numerical value of (10), standing for Ten Commandments, 253

in *Passim*, standing for Ishmaelites, 330

prefixed to Hoshea's name to make it Joshua (Yehoshua), 706

standing for *Yah* (God), 4  
 story of complaint of Book of

Deuteronomy about Solomon trying to remove yod, 973

visible in pillar of cloud over holy ark, 686

in word Shittim, standing for *yeshuah* (“salvation”), 647

*See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet

Yofiel (angel)  
   placing Moses on couch to die, 832 n948  
   as teacher of Shem in Kabbalah, 505 n117

Yohanan b. Zakkai. *See* Johanan b. Zakkai, R.

Yorkami. *See* Yurkami

Yotzer (daily morning prayer)  
   and goodness of God, 2 n6  
*See also* prayers, Jewish

younger  
   set above older, Ephraim and Manasseh, 404

youth  
   Jochebed regaining, though old, 475

youths  
   of fiery furnace  
     as descendants of Hezekiah, 1047 n47  
     three in number, saved as reward for Judah, 347 n89  
   innocent, worthy to offer sacrifices, 599 n193  
   Jewish, beauty of, 1102 n94  
   who have not tasted sin, in sixth compartment of Eden, 19

Yubal  
   stream flowing from Paradise for Behemoth, 33

Yurkami (angel)  
   name, meaning of, 1099 n87  
   offering to extinguish fire in furnace, 1098

## Z

Zabdi (elder from tribe of Naphtali), 696

Zabnak (judge in Admah), 208

Zaccur (elder from tribe of Reuben), 696

zadde (letter). *See* tzade

Zadkiel (angel)  
   in charge of Jupiter, 131 n61  
   teacher of Abraham in Kabbalah, 505 n117

Zadok  
   and Aaron and sons as only anointed priests, 658 n371, 893 n30  
   anointing of, 947 n10  
   appointed high priest by Solomon, 947 n10  
   described as second Aaron, 947 n10  
   stopping plague by prayers, 947 n10



- Zadok (*cont.*)  
 succeeding Abiathar as high priest, 893 n30  
 Urim and Thummim giving answer to, 947 n10
- Zadokite sect  
 connection of, with Gehazi and Damascus, 1030 n17
- Zafiel (angel)  
 angel of showers, prostrating before Metatron, 130
- Zagzagel (angel)  
 accompanying God to fetch Moses' soul, 828, 831  
 as angel who appeared to Moses in bush, 505 n117  
 prince of Torah and wisdom, 504  
 scribe of angels, 811  
 teacher of Moses, 801  
   in Kabbalah, 505 n117  
   Z. teaching M. ten mysteries, 504  
 teaching Torah in 70 languages, 504
- zain (letter). *See* zayin
- Zakiel (archangel)  
 angel of storms, 120 n57
- Zakkiel (angel)  
 angel of storms, prostrating before Metatron, 130
- Zakun (angel)  
 leading angels to snatch words of Israelites interceding for Moses, 809
- Zaliah  
 one of four heroes of tribe of Dan, 796 n854  
 ordered to kill Balaam, 796  
 as sorcerer, 795  
 from tribe of Dan, flying after Balaam, 795
- Zalmonah  
 Israelites murmuring against Moses and God at, 749
- Zamiel (angel)  
 angel of hurricane, prostrating before Metatron, 130
- Zamzamai (queen)  
 identified with Zenobia, queen of Palmyra, 1085 n45
- Zamzummin  
 name, meaning of, 137  
 as offspring of fallen angels and Cainite women, 137
- Zaphenath-paneah  
 name  
   meaning of ("he who can reveal secret things with ease"), 368, 370 n187
- Zaphenath-paneah (*cont.*)  
 name (*cont.*)  
   meaning of letters of, 368  
 name Joseph called by Pharaoh, 368  
 as ruler of Egypt, 377
- Zarephath, widow of, 997 n9  
 hospitality of, 997 n11  
 one of 22 women of valor, 238 n271  
 reproaching Elijah, 997 n10  
 son of, as future Messiah of tribe of Joseph, 997 n9, 1035 n39
- Zarhi (elder from tribe of Gad), 696
- Zarua (mother of Jeroboam)  
 name, meaning of, 982 n2
- zayin (letter)  
 creation of world through, 4  
 standing for *zakhor* ("remembrance"), 4  
*See also* alphabet; letters of alphabet
- Zebaot  
 name of God when rising up to do battle, 510 (*see also* God: names and titles of)
- Zebub ("fly")  
 as real name of Shishak, 984 n13
- Zebul (person)  
 appointed as successor of Kenaz, 859  
 identified with Ehud, second judge, 860 n21  
 instituting treasury at Shiloh, 859  
 name, meaning of, 860 n21  
 reigning for 25 years, 859
- Zebul (place)  
 one of heavens, 965 n56  
 third portal of Garden of Eden, 68
- Zebulun. *See* Zebulun
- Zebulun  
 Accho as allotment of, 852  
 age of, at death, 114 years, 443  
 always to be victorious in battle, 822  
 blessing of, by Jacob, 408  
 compact of, with Issachar, 289 n194  
 death of, 443  
 given land by Sea of Chaifa, 822  
 guarding pit, 333  
 marriage of, to Maroshah, daughter of Molad, grandson of Midian, son of Abraham by Keturah, 348  
 name  
   inscribed on standard of tribe of Judah, 685
- Zebulun (*cont.*)  
 name (*cont.*)  
   meaning of ("dwelling place"), 287, 433  
 one of weak among sons of Jacob, 396 n324  
 possessions of, distinguished by tunny, purple snail, and white glass, 667  
 rewarded for sacrifice for brother Issachar, 408  
 showing pity for Joseph, 332, 333  
 sixth son of Leah, 287  
 sons of, to dwell in Holy Land, 287  
 testament of, 442-443  
 to support brothers by trade, 408  
 tribe of  
   blessed by Moses, 822  
   carrying on commerce to support tribe of Issachar, 287, 667  
   confessing to desiring to eat flesh of children, 855  
   devoted to commerce, 822  
   elders from (Sered, Elon, Sodi, Oholiab, Elijah, Nimshi), 696  
   flag of, white with picture of ship, 688  
   pearl as stone of, 651  
   prince of (Eliab), 679  
   spy representing (Gaddiel), 705  
   to join Judah in camp in east, 685  
 warfare of  
   attacking Edom to north, 321  
   against Ninevites, 313  
   to conquer seacoast as far as Sidon, 408  
   to make Mizraim like Gomorrah, 386
- Zechariah (elder from tribe of Gad), 696
- Zechariah (father of John Baptist)  
 substituted for prophet Zechariah in Christian stories, 1077 n30
- Zechariah (son of Berechiah; post-exilic prophet; author of biblical book), 1078 n30  
 contemporary of Jeremiah, 1068  
 and Haggai and Malachi  
 accompanying Daniel, 1096 n76  
 last representatives of prophecy, 1121



Zechariah (*cont.*)

- one of eight postexilic prophets, 991 n56
- among returning exiles, 1119
- Zechariah (son of Jehoiada; preexilic prophet), 1078 n30
- active in synagogue, 1068
- avenged by Nebuzaradan, 1038
- blood of
  - seething and pulsating in hall of priests for 252 years, 1038, 1075
- spattering walls of sanctuary, 1077 n30
- informing people of location of altar, 1119
- murdered in Temple, 1075
- one of martyred prophets, according to Josephus, 1078 n30
- son of Jehoiada
  - blocking entrance to Temple from Joash, 1038
  - killed by Joash, 1038
- Zedekelbab (city)
  - founded by Shem, 156
- Zedekelbab (wife of Shem), 156
- Zedekiah (false prophet), 1065-1067
- and Ahab
  - attempting to seduce daughter of Nebuchadnezzar, 1106
  - false prophets, most notorious Jewish sinners, 1106
  - punished by fire, 1106
- described as "righteous man," 1106 n107, 1109 n119
- and Nebuchadnezzar
  - Z. buried with great honors by N., 1109 n117
  - Z. killed by N., 1108, 1109 n117
- revived by contact with Elisha's corpse, 1030 n21
- Zedekiah (king)
  - blinded, 59
  - and then taken to Babylonia, 1066
  - children of, killed before own eyes, 1066
  - exile under, 1096 n76
  - light becoming dark during time of, 967 n57
  - losing wealth to Chaldeans, 397
  - and Nebuchadnezzar
    - conflict between, 1065-1066
    - Z. seeing N. eating piece of live hare, 1065
  - oath of, 1065-1066, 1066 n2

Zedekiah (*cont.*)

- one of princes who assist Messiah, 100 n142
- other names of
  - Mattaniah, 1062 n124
  - Shallum, 1062 n124, 1066 n1
- perjury of, 1067
- punishment for, 1066
- piety of, 1062 n127
- possessing eyes of Adam, 58
- treatment of, in captivity, 1067 n8
- Zelaponit
  - of tribe of Judah, 877
- Zelophehad
  - breaking Sabbath, 690
  - daughters of, 784-787
    - addressing Moses and elders, 787 n812
    - bringing case to Moses, 785, 787 n818
    - claiming inheritance, 690
    - marrying uncle's sons, 786
    - wanting case decided by lower authorities, 787 n818
- death of
  - in battle against Amalekites, 785
  - in battle against Amorites, 717
  - killed by serpents, 787 n814
- as firstborn of Hephher, 786
- as ignorant man, 787 n814
- sin of, occasion for God's commandment of *tzitzit*, 690
- willing to sacrifice life to show sacredness of Sabbath, 691 n452
- Zemaraim, Mount
  - Abijah (son of Rehoboam) addressing people on, 985
- Zemarites
  - land provisionally granted to, 157
- Zenek
  - form of name Kenaz, 857 n1
- Zenobia (queen of Palmyra)
  - Zamzamai identified with, 1085 n45
- Zephaniah
  - great-grandson of King Hezekiah, teacher of Jeremiah, 1071 n13
  - one of eight postexilic prophets, 991 n56
  - one of four prophets appointed to proclaim punishment of Lot's descendants, 214
  - one of princes who assist Messiah, 100 n142
- Zepho
  - captured by Joseph, 415

Zepho (*cont.*)

- death of, 420
- escaping from Egypt and taking refuge with Agnias, 416
- founder of city of Rome, 419 n425
- idolatry of, 419
- killed by Tiranus, king of Elisha, 419 n425
- king of Kittim and of Italy, 417-418, 419 n425
- prayer of, to God of Abraham and Isaac, 418
- slaying monster in mountains of Koptitziah, 418
- story of, 417-420
  - likely source of, 417 n424
- warfare of
  - against Africa, 418-419
  - against Islands of Sea, 418
  - against sons of Tubal, 418
  - Z. allied with Hadad, Ishmaelites, and nations of East against descendants of Jacob, 419
  - Z. defeated by Israelites, 419
  - Z. made commander-in-chief of troops of Agnias, 416
  - Z. persuading Agnias to invade Egypt, 417
  - Z. trying to persuade Agnias to make war on sons of Jacob, 416
- Zerah (elder from tribe of Judah), 696
- Zerah (king of Ethiopia)
  - conquered by King Asa, 397, 985
  - identified with Osorchon I, 986 n19
  - taking wealth from Shishak, 397
- Zerah (son of Judah)
  - five sons of (Zimri, Ethan, Kalkol, Ethan, Darda), 490 n79
  - giving to Rahab line that was bound to her window, 345
  - name, meaning of, 345
  - and Perez, twin sons of Judah and Tamar, as spies, 345, 844 n10
  - scarlet thread on hand of, 345, 347 n93
- Zeresh (wife of Haman), 1168
  - advising death by hanging for Mordecai, 1168
  - advising Haman not to do evil against Mordecai, 1169 n158



Zeresh (*cont.*)

- telling Haman that he could not prevail against descendant of tribe of Judah or of Rachel tribes, 1177 n175
- telling Haman that he could not prevail against relative of Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, 1177 n175

## Zerori (king of Shiloh)

- identified with Isidao, 315 n292
- slain by Jacob, 314

## Zerubbabel, 1118-1121

- appointed to succeed Daniel, 1115
- coming to Darius from Jerusalem on behalf of Jews, 1121 n30
- described as "Messianic herald," 1120 n25
- described by God as His servant, 805 n880 (*see also* servant of God)
- and Elijah

- Messiah to ascend Mount of Olives with E. and Z., 1120 n25
- to explain all obscure passages of Torah in time to come, 1120 n25

- God revealing secrets of future to, 1119

## grandson of Jehoiachin, 1061

- identified with Nehemiah, 1063 n135, 1119

- identified with Sheshbazzar, "prince of Jews," under Cyrus, 1120 n23

- introduced to Cyrus by Daniel, 1113

- among members of Great Synagogue, 1127 n56

- one of 18 called "servant of God," 452 n2 (*see also* servant of God)

- part played by, in Messianic times, 1120 n25

- possessing voice of Adam, 58

- son of Jehoiachin, 1063 n135

- successor of Daniel, 1118

- to recite Kaddish after God's lecture on new Torah to be revealed through Messiah, 1120 n25

- wisdom of, 1118

## Zeruel (angel)

- aiding Kenaz in battle, 860 n17
- name, meaning of, 860 n17
- set over strength, 860 n17

## Zethar (angel)

- name, meaning of ("observer of immorality"), 1135
- one of seven angels of confusion sent to disrupt Ahasuerus's banquet, 1135

## Ziah

- name, meaning of, 110
- sixth earth, inhabited by handsome men, 110

## Zidon

- land provisionally granted to, 157

## zikta

- eating worms on ark, 147

## Zillah

- Tubal-cain and Naamah as son and daughter of, 112
- wife of Lamech, 112

## Zilpah (daughter of Laban)

- bones of, to be taken from Egypt and buried near sepulchre of Bilhah and Rachel, 428

- daughter of Laban and concubine, given to Jacob, 284

- daughter of Rotheus, brother of Deborah, 444

- given to Jacob by Leah, 286

- not a bondwoman, 284 n167

## sons of

- first, named Gad by Leah, 286

- second, named Asher by Leah, 286

- treated with contempt by brothers of Joseph, 328

- youngest daughter of Kenaz, 859

## Zimri

- Cozbi as wife of, 779, 781 n791

- elder from tribe of Simeon, 696

- head of tribe of Simeon, 679

- identified with Saul, 782 n799

- identified with Shelumiel, prince of tribe of Simeon, 782 n799

- before Moses, 779-780

- name, meaning of, 782 n799

- as prince of tribe of Simeon, 779
- sin of, 679, 779-782

- with daughters of Moab, 285
- from tribe of Simeon, 825 n923

## Zion

- and beginning of creation of new world, 11 n40

## daughters of

- being haughty, 65
- stricken with leprosy for unchastity, 675

Zion (*cont.*)

- "mother of Israel," as metaphor of Christian writers, 1070 n13

- as mourning woman, 1084 n43

- one of seven sterile women who bore children, 878 n111

## Zion, Mount

- in precincts of Shem, 156
- Solomon directed to, as best site for Temple, 965

- story of brotherly love at, 965

## Zipper

- son of, Balak known as, 759

## Zipporah

- beauty of, 496 n88
- called "bird," 515, 517 n147
- as Cushite woman, 701 n488
- divorced from Moses, 584
- as Ethiopian wife of Moses, 493 n80, 496
- name, allegorical interpretations of, 517 n147

- piety of, 496 n88

## Zitidos (wife of Job), 460

## Ziz (great bird), 2, 3 n7

- as *ben netz*, "son of the nest," 29, 32 n134

- as clean animal, 32 n139

- connected with Sandalfon, 33 n139 (*see also* Sandalfon)

- darkening sun with its pinions, 71
- flapping wings at autumnal equinox, 2

- food for pious in world to come, 28-29, 33 n139

- identified with Bar Yokni, 32 n139

- influenced by Iranic mythology, 32-33 n139

- name, meaning of, 32 n129

- originally taken as heavenly singer, 33 n139

- as Renanim, 29

- ruler over birds, 29

- as Sekwi (the seer), 29

- size of, 29, 32 n131

- slaughtered by Moses, 32 n139

- tearing Leviathan, 32 n139

- wings of, eclipsing the sun, 33 n139

Zizit. *See tzitzit*

## Zmargad

- kingdom of Lilith, 458 n20

## Zoan (city)

- built by sons of Ham, 707
- destruction of, at time of Exodus, 236-237 n268



## Zoar

- destruction of, 215 n182
- left undestroyed among sinful cities, 213
- smallest of sinful cities, 211
- wickedness of, 215 n182

## Zoba (son of Terah and Pelilah)

- begot three sons, 243

## Zodiac, signs of

- allegorical interpretation of, 11 n42
- connected with 12 archangels, 17 n65
- corresponding to zones of world, 10 n33
- Haman casting lots on, 1151
- See also under individual signs of Zodiac*

## Zohar (book)

- description of seven worlds in, in Hebrew, 112 n37

Zohar (*cont.*)

- on Moses as faithful shepherd, 501 n109

## Zohar (elder from tribe of Simeon),

696

## Zophar

- offering to have Job treated by physicians, 460
- one of four friends of Job, 459-460 (*see also* Job: friends of)
- as prophet to heathens, 761

## Zoroaster (living star)

- identified with Ham, 163 n83
- identified with Nimrod, 163 n83
- worshiped by Persians as celestial fire, 163 n83

## Zuar (elder from tribe of Issachar),

696

## Zucheus

- form of name of, 184 n49
- god of Nahor, Terah's brother, 183

## Zuleika (wife of Potiphar), 352-356

- babe of, speaking in defense of Joseph, 358
- illness of, 354, 356 n118
- indecent language of, contrasted with modest words of Ruth, 356 n115

## and Joseph

- Z. accusing J. of immorality, 357-358
- Z. attempting to seduce J., 352
- Z. visiting J. in prison, 359
- name of, 356 n113

## Zur

- name of Balak as vassal of Sihon, 759



# PASSAGES

<b>A. Ancient Bible Versions</b>		<b>Judges</b>		<b>Job</b>		3.8	78 n73
		1.13	861 n25	42.14	462 n37	6.2, 4	121 n57
<b>I. SEPTUAGINT</b>		3.2	856 n1	(additions)	453 n3, 456 n14	22.2	232-233 n253
<b>Genesis</b>		<b>1 Samuel</b>		<b>Esther</b>		<b>4. THEODOTON</b>	
2.20	62 n30	4.21	894 n33	1.4	1131 n6	<b>Genesis</b>	
2.24	72 n60	5.6	894 n34	1.8	1134 n23	2.23	68 n48
3.23	89 n109	5.9	894 n34	2.7	1144 n79	3.8	78 n73
4.7	105 n12	6.5	894 n34	2.20	1144 n78	4.4	104 n10
4.8	105 n16	6.17	894 n34	2.21	1146 n88		
4.26	118 n54	6.19	895 n37	3.13	1138 n47	<b>5. SAMARITAN</b>	
5.24	122 n58	9.14	901 n51	4.1	1161 n125	<b>Genesis</b>	
5.29	134-135 n5	13.1	905 n80	4.8	1164 n140	4.8	105 n16
8.7	156 n47	16.12	914 n13	(additions)	1144 n75, 1146 n88, 1150 n100, 1158 n115, 1161 n123, 1163 n132, 1166 n143, 1169 n146, 1179 n192	46.28	394 n310
10.21	146 n30	21.8	908 n96			<b>6. TARGUM ONKELOS</b>	
13.3	191 n79	28.14	904 n75			<b>Genesis</b>	
22.2	232 n253					4.14	112 n37
26.32	263 n63	<b>2 Samuel</b>		<b>Additions to Daniel</b>		4.26	118 n54
39.1	355 n111	12.25	948 n11	1099 n85,		5.24	122 n58
46.28	394 n310			1100 n88, 1116 n8		6.2, 4	121 n57
		<b>1 Kings</b>		<b>2 Chronicles</b>		6.3	140 n19
<b>Exodus</b>		11.42	946 n1	24.3	1039 n11	8.4	151 n48
1.11	468 n7	14.1	982 n4			9.6	153 n56
8.17	534 n188	(additions)	982 n4			9.27	156 n65
		18.10	988 n31			15.9	199 n110
<b>Leviticus</b>						23.16	236 n267
24.7	645 n337	<b>2 Kings</b>				24.63	242 n300
		2.1	999 n32			24.67	242 n302
<b>Numbers</b>				<b>2. AQUILA</b>		25.3	244 n311
21.1	746 n646, 752 n669	<b>Isaiah</b>		<b>Genesis</b>		26.12	262 n60
23.10	774 n771	24.1	760 n719			27.40	271 n105
						36.24	324 n322
<b>Deuteronomy</b>		<b>Jonah</b>				39.21-23	361 n142
32.8-9	166 n91	1.3	1032 n28			43.32	381 n247
34.6	833 n952	<b>Psalms</b>				45.27	393 n294
						46.28	394 n310
<b>Joshua</b>				<b>3. SYMMACHUS</b>			
(end)	853 n55, 861 n22, 885 n140	78.25	571 n95	<b>Genesis</b>		<b>Exodus</b>	
		78.85	207 n143			6.20	474 n33
		104.26	30 n124	2.17	78 n72	12.32	542 n231



## TARGUM ONKELOS

## TARGUM YERUSHALMI

<b>Exodus (cont.)</b>		6.3	140 n19	20.18	218 n202	27.33	270 n100
15.8	561 n52,	6.4	121 n57	21.9	220 n211	27.35	268 n93
	565 n60	6.14-15	142 n21	21.15	221 n215	27.40	271 n150
25.20	644 n335	6.16	149 n41	21.16	221 n215,	27.41	273 n108
		7.4	141 n19		221 n16	27.46	273 n113
	<b>Numbers</b>	7.8	149 n45	21.21	222 n218	28.3	274 n114
11.25	697 n479	7.10	141 n19,	21.24	294 n220	28.9	274 n121
21.16	577 n129		145 n26	22.2	227 n229,	28.10	279 n131,
21.17-20	750 n664	7.11	149 n45		232 n253		280 n148
		7.12	145 n27	22.4	228 n236	28.12	279 n134
	<b>Deuteronomy</b>	7.16	145 n25	22.5	228 n238	28.22	280 n149
3.9	876 n108	8.1	150 n46	22.8	231 n240	29.3	282 n156
		8.4	151 n48	22.9	152 n52,	29.10	280 n151
	<b>7. TARGUM YERUSHALMI</b>	8.11	150 n46		231 n242,	29.12	284 n164
	<b>Genesis</b>	8.20	89 n109,		232 n251	29.17	284 n163
1.2	2 n6		152 n52	22.13	217 n196	29.24	284 n167
1.16	25 n100	9.6	153 n56,	22.14	187 n34,	29.30	288 n175
1.20	29 n117,		155 n59		232 n248	29.34	288 n174
	32 n128	9.24-25	155 n60	22.15	232 n249	30.1	517 n142
1.21	31 n127	9.27	156 n65	22.19	233 n254	30.1-2	288 n177
1.26	15 n61	10.8	162 n77	23.16	236 n267	30.5	288 n175
1.27	61 n26	10.9	163 n86	24.2	239 n276	30.8	288 n181
2.6	70 n52	10.11	162 n77,	24.31	241 n293	30.11	289 n184
2.7	54 n15		178 n36,	24.33, 55	241 n294	30.12	289 n196
2.12	70 n51		180 n40	24.61	242 n299	30.13	289 n187
2.17	78 n72	10.21	146 n30	24.62	242 n303	30.20	289 n195
2.21	67 n42	11.1	205 n91	24.64	243 n308	30.23	289 n200
3.6	73 n65	11.4	164 n88	24.67	242 n302	30.25	291 n291
3.7	73 n69	11.7	158 n72,	25.3	244 n310,	30.27	291 n205
3.9	78 n77		165 n88		435 n6	31.4	291 n216
3.10	95 n120	11.8	165 n88,	25.8	248 n317	31.19	292 n218
3.15	92 n113,		166 n91	25.21	253 n7,	31.21	294 n219,
	95-96 n131	11.26	31 n127		253 n8		294 n220
3.21	73 n69,	11.28	180 n40	25.22	253 n13,	31.22	280 n149,
	79-80 n93	12.2	188 n55		253 n17		294 n219,
3.23	89 n109	12.11	191 n67	25.23	254 n21		294 n220
3.24	80 n94,	13.7	196 n82	25.25	254 n23,	31.23	294 n222
	80-81 n95	14.1	195 n85		255 n28,	31.46	294 n226
4.1	102 n3,	14.2	196 n87		258 n38	32.3	295 n232
	102-103 n4	14.13	196 n87	25.27	256 n29	32.25	301 n251
4.2	105-106 n17,	14.14	197 n93	25.29, 34	258 n37	32.32	305 n255
	178 n34	14.18	197 n102	26.1	191 n74	33.2	305 n261
4.3	105 n12	14.20	197 n100	26.2	262 n61	33.4	305 n263
4.7	105 n14	15.5	180 n42	26.10	263 n67	33.16	307 n276,
4.8	105 n16,	15.6	199 n109	26.12	262 n60		307 n279
	106 n18	15.9	199 n110	26.20, 27, 28	263 n66	33.17	307 n277
4.10	108 n21	15.10	200 n112	26.35	267 n73	35.4	317 n295
4.13	108 n25	15.17	200 n114	27.1	267 n74,	35.8	318 n302
4.14	112 n37	16.5	203 n121		268 n79	35.9	68 n48
4.15	108 n27	18.1	206 n127	27.5	268 n81	35.14	317 n299,
4.16	109 n29	18.2	206 n132	27.6	268 n83		319 n305
4.22	113-114 n45	18.8	206-207 n143	27.9	268 n87	35.21	319 n311
4.24	112 n37	18.10	207 n148	27.22	282 n154	35.22	319 n312
4.26	118 n54	18.17	168 n4	27.27	268 n92	36.2-3	328 n3
5.3	102 n3	18.21	210 n157	27.29	268 n96	36.12	460 n31
5.20	145 n24	18.24	211 n162	27.30	270 n99	36.24	324 n322
5.24	130 n61	18.32	212 n165	27.31	256 n32,	36.32	325 n324
6.2	121 n57	20.16	217 n198		270 n100	37.2	329 n5,
							331 n9



<b>Genesis (cont.)</b>		46.3	393 n304	6.18	996 n3	19.19	11 n39
37.3	334 n43	46.4	393 n305	7.5	533 n186	20.2	604 n210
37.11	208 n85	46.13-14	434 n5	7.11	492 n80	20.6	608 n218
37.13	334 n22	46.17	393 n295	7.15	528 n175	20.13	609 n230
37.15	334 n29	46.20	349 n97	8.17	534 n188	20.14	609 n234
37.17	334 n31	46.23	435 n6	9.20-21, 29	534 n194	21.19	602 n201
37.19	334 n41	46.27	396 n321	10.19	534 n197	22.13	609 n231
37.25	343 n64	46.28	394 n 310	10.23	534 n198	22.30	548 n4
37.29	342 n60	46.29	396 n315	10.29	517 n142	24.4	599 n194
37.31	343 n62	46.30	396 n320	12.6	536 n206	24.10	543 n234,
37.32	343 n64	47.2	396 n324	12.12	538 n213,		715 n540
37.33	343 n67	47.21	381 n251,		538 n221	25.20	644 n335
38.1	346 n74		399 n342	12.21	536 n201	26.28	648 n344
38.3	346 n76	47.22	399 n340	12.29	540 n222	28.17	652 n357
38.4	346 n80	47.30	401 n352	12.31	540 n228	28.30	10 n30,
38.5	346 n81	48.2	409 n383	12.32	543 n231		11 n39,
38.7	346 n79	48.9	405 n366	12.34	544 n248		280 n142,
38.15	346 n85	48.16	381 n236,	12.37	543 n241,		653 n358
38.24	347 n88		406 n375		544 n246	31.18	626 n279
38.25-26	347 n89	48.20	406 n371	12.38	544 n246	32.1	621-622 n264
38.27	339 n41	48.22	311 n289,	12.40	511 n126	32.3-5	622 n265
38.29	347 n92		406 n377	12.42	538 n216,	32.19	626 n279
39.1	351 n101	49.1-2	409 n382		543 n235	32.30	626 n281
39.6	351 n103	49.3-4	410 n384	13.17	548 n10,	33.6-7	626 n285
39.14, 20	358 n130,	49.5-7	410 n387		1102 n94	34.10	1089 n55
	399 n340	49.8-12	410 n388	13.19	430 n438	35.26	655 n363
39.21-23	361 n142	49.13	410 n390	14.2	552 n13	35.27	655 n365
40.1	361 n143	49.16-18	410 n392	14.3	553 n18		
40.14	364 n154	49.19	410 n393	14.9	561 n48		<b>Leviticus</b>
40.20	361 n150	49.20-1	410 n394,	14.11	725 n579	10.2	664 n382
40.22	362 n153		410 n397,	14.13	553 n23	10.4-5	664 n385
40.23	364 n154		411 n398	14.16	557 n36	24.10	488 n73
41.1	375 n212	49.22-26	411 n399	14.21	496 n88,	24.11	691 n451
41.10	364 165	49.27	411 n401		555 n31	24.12	691 n455
41.45	349 n97,	50.1	414 n409	14.22	557 n38	29.10	691 n449
	370 n187	50.3	414 n411	15.2	565 n61		
41.47	370 n192	50.12	415 n422	15.12	562 n56		<b>Numbers</b>
41.48	370 n193	50.15-20	422 n427	15.18	565 n66	1.15-16	703 n498
42.5	372 n201	50.23	422 n429	15.21	565 n71	1.51	601 n197
42.6	372 n202			15.22	568 n84	2.2-25	652 n357
42.8	375 n205			15.25, 26	568 n83	2.3	689 n447
42.21	415 n422	1.11	468 n7	16.8	580 n140	2.3-25	687 n442
42.23	375 n214	1.21	470 n19	16.15	571 n94	2.10	687 n440
42.24	334 n41,	2.2	476 n44	16.21	574 n103	3.10, 38	601 n197
	375 n217	2.5	479 n48	16.22	568 n81	7.11	730 n595
42.27	375 n221	2.12	488 n75	17.1	576 n120	7.19	672 n390
43.14	378 n233,	2.18-19	494 n84	17.8	580 n141	7.84-88	673 n403
	393 n294	2.21	496 n88	17.9	582 n143	9.8	691 n455
43.16	381 n237	2.23	499 n101	17.10-13	583 n145	10.32	590 n171
43.32	381 n247	3.2	505 n117	18.6-7	585 n153	10.33	693 n457
44.3	383 n258	4.13	514 n134,	18.8-11	585 n156	11.1	580 n141,
44.15	384 n263		514 n137	18.27	590 n170		693 n460,
44.18	387 n269	4.19	517 n142	19.2	593 n178,		693 n462
45.4, 12	390 n281	4.20	496 n88		597 n188	11.5, 10	694 n469
45.14	390 n284	4.25	517 n146,	19.3	597 n189	11.12-15	694 n471
45.24	390 n292		517 n149,	19.4	536 n210	11.16	696 n474
45.27	393 n294		538 n216	19.4-7	597 n191	11.23, 25	697 n479
45.28	393 n297	4.26	517 n149	19.13	601 n197	11.26	698 n482,
							698 n484



## TARGUM YERUSHALMI

## TARGUM JONATHAN

<b>Numbers (cont.)</b>						
11.28	698 n483	25.8	782 n798	34.6	68 n48,	19.19, 23 908 n101
11.31-33	700 n486,	25.12	996 n3		624 n274,	20.1 908 n101
	700 n487	25.13	784 n801		832 n948	22.18 904 n78
12.1	493 n80,	25.14	782 n799	34.12	496 n88	
	701 n488	27.1	787 n811			<b>2 Samuel</b>
12.12	703 n496	27.2	787 n818	<b>Targum Yerushalmi II</b>		1.18 850 n41
13.21	708 n510	27.3	787 n812,	<b>(Fragment Targum)</b>		5.6 921 n51
15.32-35	691 n452		787 n813	<b>Genesis</b>		8.19 942 n141
15.34	691 n455	27.4	787 n812	1.1	162 n82	18.18 933 n108
16.4	721 n569	27.5	691 n455	7.4, 10	141 n19	20.26 928 n78
16.12	724 n574	27.46	411 n398	10.8	162 n77	21.19 928 n78,
16.19	719 n560	28.15	25 n100	10.9	163 n86	943 n146
16.22-34	726 n584	31.6	795 n850	11.2	165 n88	23.8 926 n76,
17.5	730 n593	31.8	796 n853	16.3	202 n118	928 n78
17.12-13	730 n598	31.9	798 n861	26.10	262 n57	23.20-25 980 n94
20.1	746 n646	31.50	798 n859	28.10	280 n148	24.15 937 n122
20.8	733 n607,	32.28	800 n867	30.22	997 n12	
	733 n608,	32.38	799 n866	44.18	390 n278	<b>1 Kings</b>
	739 n626	33.4	538 n221,	48.22	311 n289	5.13 977 n93
			747 n647			18.37 998 n18
20.11	739 n627	33.4-42	750 n660	<b>Exodus</b>		18.46 998 n22
20.16	538 n213	33.9	568 n88	14.3	553 n18	19.11 999 n30
20.17	737 n622	33.40	746 n646	14.29	555 n32	
20.29	744 n643	38.8	561 n48	15.18	543 n235	<b>2 Kings</b>
21.1	747 n650					2.1 999 n32
21.5	748 n651	<b>Deuteronomy</b>		<b>Targum Jonathan on</b>		4.1 1027 n7
21.6	748 n653	1.1	758 n708	<b>Prophets</b>		22.14 1062 n117
21.8-9	748 n658	2.11	146 n35	<b>Joshua</b>		23.29 970 n71
21.16	577 n129	2.25	752 n671	2.1	844 n12	
21.17-20	750 n664	2.28	752 n675	6.20	847 n22	<b>Isaiah</b>
21.22	752 n673	3.10	146 n35	24.26	1061 n116	6.1 1042 n29
21.35	756 n695	3.11	755 n687,			6.6 1043 n33
22.4	759 n718		756 n697,	<b>Judges</b>		8.2 1071 n14
22.5	761 n724,		756 n704	2.1	861 n22	9.5 1052 n70
	777 n784	3.25	805 n882	4.5	870 n74	14.29 912 n7
22.12	765 n732	9.19	624 n274	5.1	870 n83,	28.21 1042 n30
22.18	82 n99	10.6	747 n650		871 n90	34.13 43 n190
22.22	767 n740	21.8	574 n110	5.5	595 n183	38.7 231 n242
22.24	767 n744	22.5	878 n111	5.23	870 n73	65.9 733 n607
22.25	761 n722	25.19	580 n141	5.24, 26	871 n86	
22.27-28	768 n745	26.5	294 n220	11.39	877 n109	<b>Jeremiah</b>
22.30	767 n744,	27.9, 25	844 n15	15.15	879 n118	1.1 1070 n10
	768 n747	28.12	997 n12	19.2	884 n134	
		30.4	996 n3	21.19	884 n135	<b>Ezekiel</b>
22.41-23.1	776 n776	32.1-43	824 n920			1.1 1061 n116
23.9	774 n768	32.2	824 n915	<b>1 Samuel</b>		
23.10	774 n771	32.8-9	166 n91	1.1	888 n1	<b>Hosea</b>
23.19	775 n772	32.9	158 n72	1.3	888 n5	9.6 43 n190
24.1	776 n776	33.5	824 n918	1.4-5	888 n7	
24.2	777 n777	33.7	825 n923	1.11	897 n43	<b>Joel</b>
24.3	762 n725,	33.11	825 n925	2.1-11	891 n20	1.4 991 n56
	769 n749	33.16-17	825 n927	3.20	896 n40	
24.4	779 n785	33.18-19	825 n928	6.19	895 n37	<b>Amos</b>
24.5	777 n780	33.20	825 n930	7.6	896 n41	2.1 992 n56
24.7-9	777 n782	33.21	838 n966	13.1	901-902 n53	
24.17-24	777 n782	33.24	825 n933	15.4	637 n314	<b>Jonah</b>
25.4	780 n790	34.1-4	815 n902	15.7	905 n80	1.16 1033 n33
25.6	781 n791	34.3	1027 n1,	16.4	902 n62	2.8 1033 n31
25.7	782 n796		1032 n23			



1441



Targum Esther I ( <i>cont.</i> )						
1.2	1115 n7, 1131 n13		1081 n39, 1086 n47, 1087 n48,	3.8	1155 n112, 1158 n115	2 Kings 23.29 970 n71, 1062 n123
1.3	1131 n6		1089 n54,	3.9	1158 n116	
1.4	1131 n9		1097 n80,	3.14-15	1158 n118	
1.5	1134 n20		1115 n7,	4.1	1073 n22, 1138 n47,	Isaiah 38.7 231 n242
1.6	1134 n20, 1141 n65		1131 n4, 1131 n13, 1134 n14		1158 n115, 1161 n122, 1161 n123,	Psalms 12.9 254 n19 89.3 112 n42
1.7	1134 n22		1076 n29, 1131 n6,	4.2	1160 n121	
1.10, 12	1137 n31, 1137 n32, 1137 n36	1.3	1134 n14, 1138 n47	4.11	1164 n137	Ruth 3.3 866 n57
1.13	1138 n38		1131 n9,	4.13	1164 n140	
1.14	1138 n40	1.4	1131 n11, 1131 n13	4.14	1164 n140	
1.16	1138 n41, 1139 n49		1134 n20	4.16	1164 n141, 1166 n173	2 Chronicles 33.7 1056 n97
1.19	1138 n42	1.5	1134 n20	4.17-5.1	1166 n143	
2.1	1139 n52	1.6	1131 n13,	5.1	1169 n146, 1177 n173	9. VULGATE Genesis 4.13 108 n25 8.7 150 n47 13.3 191 n79
2.5	1141 n61	1.7	1134 n21, 1134 n22	5.8	1169 n151	
2.7	1130 n1, 1144 n67		1131 n13, 1134 n23	5.11	1169 n158	
2.9	1144 n77	1.8	1131 n13,	5.14	1169 n159	
2.21	1146 n88		1131 n6, 1135 n29	6.1	1171 n160, 1171 n167, 1171 n168	Exodus 2.21 501 n108 20.6 608 n218
3.2	1150 n100	1.9	1137 n31	6.6	1171 n168	
3.6	1150 n104	1.10	1073 n22, 1076 n29,	6.9	1176 n169, 1178 n189	Numbers 10.11 494 n83
3.8	1155 n112	1.11	1131 n11	6.10	1176 n170, 1176 n171, 1176 n172	1 Samuel 17.4 917 n29
4.1	1161 n122		1076 n29, 1137 n31, 1137 n36,	6.11	1177 n174, 1177 n183, 1177 n184	2 Samuel 12.25 948 n11 14.26 932 n98
4.5	1163 n129		1137 n37	7.10	1179 n192	
4.10	1164 n136		1138 n39	8.13	1178 n189	
4.11	1164 n135, 1164 n137	1.12	1138 n43	8.15-16	1178 n185	1 Kings 15.13 986 n18
4.12	1164 n138		1138 n42	9.14	1178 n186	
4.14	1164 n139	1.14	1137 n34, 1138 n42	9.24	1178 n190	
4.17	1166 n142	1.16	1140 n56, 1141 n61	10.1	1130 n1, 1178 n191	2 Chronicles 24.3 1039 n11
5.1	1147 n93, 1169 n145, 1177 n173	1.18-21	1141 n65, 1144 n67, 1144 n75	(end)		
5.3	1169 n150	2.1	1139 n55			
5.11	1169 n158	2.2	1144 n76			
6.10	1176 n169	2.5	1144 n81			
6.13	1177 n175	2.6	1144 n84			
7.1	1140 n56	2.7	1144 n85			
7.3	1177 n177		1147 n88			
7.6	1177 n180		1147 n93			
7.7	1177 n181		1150 n102			
8.1-2	1178 n188		1151 n107,			
9.14-17	1178 n188		1152 n111			
Targum Esther II		2.8		8. PESHITTA Genesis		B. Apocrypha
1.1	1103 n96, 1108 n116, 1130 n2, 1131 n 4, 1138 n47	2.9		4.8 105 n16		I. BEL AND DRAGON
		2.10		4.13 108 n25		1116 n8, 1116 n13
		2.18		4.26 118 n54		
		2.19		6.1-4 121 n57		
		2.21		22.2 232 n253		2. ECCLESIASTICUS (BEN SIRA)
1.2	1067 n8, 1073 n22, 1076 n29, 1077 n30,	3.1		22.12 232 n247		10.13 109 n28 32.1-5 639 n318 38.17 99 n139 39.9 762 n727 39.28-34 45 n191 40.1 54 n15 44.16 122 n58
		3.4		46.28 394 n310		
		3.7			1 Samuel 2.22 893 n26	
					2 Samuel	
					24.15 937 n122	



ECCLESIASTICUS ( <i>cont.</i> )	9.9	717 n552	10.14	370 n183	54	72 n60,
44.20	188 n52	10.29	917 n38	10.20	562 n55	82 n99,
44.22-45.1	482 n64	12.43	509 n118	11.5	526 n172	95 n120
45.1	996 n1			11.6-8	529 n178	60 106 n17
46.1	706 n505	<b>9. 4 MACCABEES</b>		11.24	2 n6	63 92 n113
46.11	897 n43	2.2	328 n3	12.8-10	756 n701	78 106 n17
46.20	904 n77	2.10	654 n359	14.12-13	118 n54	82 139 n14
47.13	955 n18	2.17	725 n578	15.8	236 n259	
48.9	999 n32	6.5	517 n149	15.11	122 n58	<b>2. APOCALYPSE OF</b>
48.10-11	1021 n105,	6.6	1099 n87	15.16	236 n259	<b>ABRAHAM</b>
	1022 n119	7.11	730 n598	16.10-13	748 n658	1-7 184 n49
49.14	122 n58	7.20	629 n287	16.15-23	534 n194	10 31 n127
49.16	60 n23,	12.17	248 n318	16.20	571 n95	11-32 200 n114
	116 n52,	13.12	232 n242	16.21	571 n99	23 74 n70,
	118 n54,	14.17	8 n21	17-18	534 n198	95 n131,
	155 n63	14.20	232 n242	18.9	540 n225	102 n3,
50.11	596 n187	16.20	232 n242	18.15-20	543 n237	155 n59
		16.25	629 n287	19.7-10	557 n36	29-53 184 n49
				19.9	536 n206	
<b>3. 3 EZRA</b>		<b>10. PRAYER OF MANASSEH</b>		<b>C. Pseudepigrapha</b>		<b>3. APOCALYPSE OF BARUCH</b>
2.1-14	1115 n7	1058 n108		<b>I. ADAMSSCHRIFTEN</b>		<b>a. Greek text</b>
3.1-4.57		3 21 n73		16 81 n96		9 n22,
(=1 Esdras)	1120 n24	7 100 n142		24 62 n31	2	79 n92
15	1117 n17			26 149 n44	2.2	165 n88
				27 10 n39,	3	70 n52
<b>4. JUDITH</b>		<b>11. PRAYER OF AZARIAH</b>		16 n64,		10 n32,
8.6	1169 n145	12 168 n4		72 n60,	4.8	110 n35,
8.14	462 n33	26-27 1099 n87		89 n109		165 n88
11.7	1103 n97			49 n3,		74 n70,
<b>5. LETTER OF JEREMIAH</b>		<b>12. SUSANNAH</b>		60 n24		96 n131,
7	1131 n5	(Greek) 1097 n79		29 87 n106,	4.10	155 n59
				88 n108	6	138 n13
<b>6. JEREMIAH, REST OF THE WORDS</b>		<b>13. TOBIT</b>		62 n31,		26 n102,
4.5	1083 n42	1.8 870 n73		105 n11,		27 n106,
9	1083 n42	4.4 1035 n37		108 n20	7	33 n139,
(end)	1057 n102	4.12 146 n29		105 n13,		46 n194
		5.22 878 n111		106 n19	8	26 n105,
<b>7. I MACCABEES</b>		6.18 242 n297		109 n28,	9	33 n139
1.15	248 n318	8.3 66 n40		113 n44	11	28 n112
1.52	188 n52	12.19 207 n143		113 n44		53 n13
1.57	599 n195	14.10 1058 n108		122 n58,	<b>b. Syriac text</b>	
1.63	248 n318			139 n14	1-77	1093 n66
2.53	370 n183	<b>14. WISDOM</b>		140 n19	1.3	1062 n127
9.50	315 n292	1.2 78 n72		87 n106,	2	1076 n28
12.10, 21	244 n314	1.13 100 n142		103 n4,	3.1	1070 n13
14.20	244 n314	1.16 78 n72		115 n50	4.5	509 n118
16.15	588 n163	2.15-20 534 n188		104 n9	6.7-10	1092 n61
		2.23 100 n142		109 n28	7-8	1076 n29
<b>8. 2 MACCABEES</b>		2.24 95 n131		97 n136,	10	1083 n42
1.19-2.12	1121 n30	3.16 691 n451,		109 n31	10.8	41 n168,
2.1	73 n67,	4.6 691 n451,		115 n50		115 n47
	1093 n66	1022 n118		116 n52	10.18-19	1077 n30
2.4-8	1092 n61	7.15 955 n18		80 n93,	14.17	48 n1,
2.10	661 n380	7.20 956 n25		85 n104		50 n8
3.26	58 n20	9.15-16 462 n33		80 n93	17.4	646 n340
5.9	244 n314	10.1 62 n29				
9.5	499 n104	10.3 103 n7				
		10.6 215 n180				
		10.7 215 n184				



<b>Apocalypse of Baruch</b>	3.14	168 n4	15-30	94 n116	8.13	9 n22
(cont.)	3.15	200 n114	16	94 n117,	8.26	508 n118
21.6	15 n61	601 n198		96 n131	9.9	122 n58
21.25	42 n187	999 n30	17-18	94 n118	9.10	508 n118
23.4	58 n20	49 n4,	18	73 n62	9.16	42 n187
23.5	57 n19	462 n33	19	94 n119	11.40	508 n118
29.2	401 n345	49 n3	20	95 n120	24	615 n247
29.4	31 n127	4.15-17	21	74 n70,		
29.5	109 n30	4.35		78 n78,	<b>10. ASSUMPTION OF</b>	
29.7	9 n22,	5.6		95 n121	<b>MOSES</b>	
	92 n113	5.16-18	23	95 n126	1	791 n838
29.8	9 n22	5.25	24	95 n127	1.12	50 n8
32.6	574 n108	5.26	25	95 n128,	1.15	815 n904
33	1083 n42	5.28		95 n131	2.3	852 n46
40.2	401 n345	5.37	26	95 n131	3.2	1092 n62
48.9	25 n100	6.9-10	27-29	81 n96	3.5	1072 n16
48.24	724 n573		31-32	97 n132	12	827 n941
48.40	594 n181	6.26	33-36	97 n133	12.2	790 n832
50.2-4	1022 n113	6.38	37	97 n134,	105	830 n946
51.3	8 n19	6.40		98 n137	106-107	73 n67
54.15	57 n20		38	95 n125,		
56.6	103 n4	6.49-52		97 n134	<b>BIBLICAL ANTIQUITIES, see</b>	
59.2	646 n340	6.55	39	97 n134	<b>Ps.-PHILO</b>	
59.4	509 n118	7.3	40	97 n137,		
60.1	848 n34	7.20-21		108 n21,	<b>11. BOOK OF ADAM (ed.</b>	
63.6	1047 n55			109 n31	<b>Maian)</b>	
63.7	1047 n52	7.29	41-45	98 n138	1.79	97 n136
63.8	1048 n59	7.52	43	99 n140	2.13	113 n44
64	1058 n108	7.66			3.6	149 n44
64.2-3	1056 n98	7.80-81	<b>7. APOCALYPSE OF</b>		3.8	152 n54
64.3	1056 n97	7.101	<b>SEDRACH</b>		3.11	151 n51,
64.4	1056 n97	7.132	5	63 n35		152 n54
66.11-15	121 n57	7.132-139	7	60 n24	3.13	155 n60
69.3-4	608 n221	8.8	14	931 n95	3.23, 25	163 n87
71.1	401 n345	8.30			73.90-91	103 n4
73.2	9 n22,	9.38-10.28	<b>8. ARISTEAS</b>		76	106 n17
	92 n113	10.22	35	152 n54	77	105 n11
77.2	73 n67,	13.41-50	83	10 n39	79	108 n20
	1081 n32	13.48-49	93	674 n411	125-126	1105 n105
77.10	1072 n16	14.9	97	651 n356		
78-87	1093 n67	42	140	838 n965	<b>12. ENOCH</b>	
80	1076 n29	(end)			1	16 n62
87.26	964 n50	1126 n50	<b>9. ASCENSION OF ISAIAH</b>		1.7	27 n105
				1057 n103	2.1-5.3	25 n100
<b>c. Slavonic text</b>		<b>6. APOCALYPSE OF MOSES</b>	1.1	1042 n25,	6-8	120 n57
9	79 n92	1-2		1056 n94	7.2	138 n13
10.8	21 n74	5	2.1	1056 n95	7.3	137 n10
97	102 n3		2.4-5	1056 n95,	8.1	137 n10
		6		1057 n98	9.1	16 n65
<b>4. APOCALYPSE OF DANIEL</b>			2.12	1070 n11	9-10	137 n9
(beg.)	1076 n29,	8	2-3	1057 n101	10.1-3	143 n23
	1077 n30	9-10	4.5	140 n19	10.4	31 n127
(end)	1022 n116	11	4.16	80 n93	10.11-12	137 n10
			4.22	1058 n104	10.19	109 n30
<b>5. APOCALYPSE OF EZRA</b>		12	4(end)	328 n3	12-16	121 n58
(beg.)	49 n3	13	7.18	10 n31	14.17	48 n1
3.11	145 n28	14	7.22	508 n118	17.4	26 n104,
3-14	1025 n50	15	8.7	687 n440		70 n51



ENOCH ( <i>cont.</i> )		99.7	118 n54	25	92 n113	4 EZRA, see APOCALYPSE	
18.13-16	28 n112	106-107	134 n4	27	14 n48	OF EZRA	
18.15-16	25 n100,	106.18	135 n5	27.38	124 n59		
	121 n57	107.3	135 n5	28	128 n60	14. JUBILEES	
19.2	41 n168,	108.12	508 n118	29.3	15 n61	1.1	597 n188
	118 n55			29.4-5	63 n35	1.17	616 n248
20	16 n62	13. 2 ENOCH		30	70 n54	2.2	7 n15,
20.1	16 n64	(Slavonic)		30.8	54 n15		15 n61
20.1-8	17 n65	2.5	46 n194	30.13	54 n15	2.4	14 n44
20.2-3	53 n13	3.31	9 n22	31.2	70 n57,	2.7	21 n76
20.7	80 n94	4.1	127 n60		127 n60	2.17-20	84 n102
22.1-6	53 n13	4.91	109 n31	31.3	72 n60	3.2	82 n98
22.7	109 n31,	6	127 n60	31.7-8	79 n85	3.4	81 n97
	609 n228	6.5	127 n60	33	99 n140	3.28	70 n58,
24.1	687 n440	7.3	127 n60	33.4	48 n1,		166 n91
24.4	92 n113	7.4	127 n60		127 n60	3.33	146 n30
25.4	81 n96,	7.5	127 n60	33.6	127 n60	4	113 n42
	92 n114	8.3	95 n126,	33.9	91 n110	4.1	103 n4,
25.5	92 n113		127 n60	33.10	91 n110,		106 n17,
26.1	10 n39	8.5	21 n79		116 n52		112 n40
32	10 n33	8.7	92 n113,	33.11	128 n60	4.8	106 n17
32.4	74 n70,		127 n60	33.12	143 n23	4.14	121 n57
	155 n59	10.1-2	127 n60	34	140 n17	4.15	120-121 n57
38.4	8 n19	10.13	127 n60	37	128 n60	4.17-23	121 n58
40.1	16 n63	10.15	127 n60	37.2	26 n103	4.19	145 n28
40.2-10	16 n65	11.2	26 n100,	38.8	128 n60	4.22	121 n57
41.5	28 n112		26 n101	40.8	453 n6	4.23	122 n58
41.7	26 n102	11.4	26 n102	40.11	10 n36	4.29	97 n136
52.2	1105 n105	12	40 n151,	41.1	128 n60	4.30	78 n72
53.1	649 n350		40 n155	42.4	127 n60	4.31	108 n20,
54.8-9	149 n39	12.1	127 n60	42.5	128 n60		112 n40,
55.4	306 n275	15	33 n48,	44.1	49 n3,		113 n44
59.1-5	1012 n77		40 n155		128 n60	4.33	146 n29
60.7-10	31 n127	18	3 n9,	45.2	128 n60	5.1	121 n57
60.17	9 n22		121 n57	45.2-4	639 n318	5.2	146 n32
61.10	80 n94	18.15	127 n60	49	58 n20	5.28	151 n48
62.16	80 n93	19.1	127 n60	49.11	128 n60	6.1	152 n52
66.6	118 n54	19.4	127 n60	52.4	128 n60	7.12	156 n66
67-69	137 n9	19.5	57 n20	53.1	128 n60,	7.13-39	158 n67
67.2	143 n23	19.6	80 n94		508 n118	7.14-16	113 n42
69.6	95 n131	20.1	127 n60	55.5	128 n60	7.21	140 n17
70.3-4	122 n58	21.1	21 n76,	56	128 n60	8.1	113 n42
71.9	16 n65		128 n60	56.2	127 n60	8.3	116 n53
72.37	26 n100	21.4	95 n131	58	153 n56	8.8	158 n69
73.2	26 n100	22	9 n22	58.5	57 n19	8.10-30	158 n68
75.8	26 n101	22.6	127 n60,	59	232 n242	8.12	10 n39
78.4	26 n100		128 n60	59.3	128 n60	9.14-15	158 n71
80.4-5	140 n19	22.8	80 n93,	61.2	22 n85	10.1	121 n57
81.5	17 n65		92 n113,	64	128 n60	10.21	165 n88
85.8-9	116 n52		127 n60	65.3	128 n60	10.23	166 n91
88	166 n91	22.9	9 n22,	66.2	92 n113	10.26	165 n88,
89.12	284 n162		80 n93,	66.3	8 n19		166 n90
89.39	790 n830		128 n60	66.9	8 n19	10.29-34	189 n62
90.20	10 n39	22.10	80 n93,	67	128 n60	10.114	159 n74
90.21-22	17 n65,		128 n60	67.2	128 n60	11.1-14	168 n5
	166 n91	22.12	127 n60	68	128 n60	11.2-3	161 n76
90.30	649 n350	23.14	57 n19	68.5	89 n109,	11.4	118 n54
93.3	122 n58	24.1	127 n60		128 n60	11.7	168 n3



<b>JUBILEES</b> ( <i>cont.</i> )		29.9	756 n699	<b>16. LETTERS OF HEROD AND PILATE</b> (in <i>Apocrypha Anecdota</i> II, 164)		12C	11.2	604 n212
11.14	169 n6	30.1	307 n279			12C	11.3	602 n201
11.16-21.21	184 n49	31.2	317 n295			12D	11.5	601 n198
12.12	180 n40	31.3-32	317 n299	996 n3,		12D	11.7	608 n219
12.16	188 n54,	31.16	288 n174	998 n15,		13A	11.15	568 n82,
	199 n108	32.3	301 n251	1083 n42				577 n129
12.25-26	166 n91	32.4-29	317 n299			13A	12.1	619 n255,
13.11	191 n78	32.8	262 n60	<b>17. MELCHIZEDEK FRAGMENT</b>				619 n260,
13.17-14.1	202 n115	32.25	619 n256					636 n311
13.25	262 n60	32.33	319 n308	1-2	132 n62	13B	12.5	626 n279
14.1	202 n115	32.33	319 n308	2.35-36	98 n137	14C	12.7	626 n281
15.8	182 n48	33.16	239 n275	3	158 n68	14D	12.10	635 n305
15.14	248 n318	33.22	319 n309	3.35	89 n109	16C	15.1	705 n503
15.27	16 n62,	34.11	355 n111	85-93	197 n102	16C	15.2	709 n515
	50 n6,	34.14-19	343 n65	88	128 n60	16D	15.6	601 n198
	249 n118	35.27	318 n302	91	128 n60	16D	16.1	720 n566
15.31-32	166 n91	36.1-8	322 n315			16D	16.2	108 n21,
16.13	219 n203	36.20	239 n275	<b>18. Ps.-PHILO<sup>1</sup></b>				726 n581
16.17	220 n214	37.9	322 n317	(beg.) 1.1-4	92 n115	16D	16.3	726 n586
17.4	220 n214	38	322 n317,	1 2.1	871 n87	17A	16.7	733 n601
18.1	232 n247	40.10	415 n422	1-2 2.3	105 n11,	17B	17.3-4	731 n600
18.3-4	236 n260	41.1	351 n100		112 n40	17B	18.2	759 n714
18.4	228 n236	42.23	346 n79	2 2.6	113 n44	17B	18.4 <sup>3</sup>	763 n730
18.6	225 n228	42.25	381 n249	4C 4.7	162 n77	18C	18.5	232 n242,
18.10	232 n242	42.25	381 n252	4D 4.10	161 n76			233 n255
19.4	116 n53	43.15	390 n281	4D 4.11	168 n3	18C <sup>4</sup>	18.6	301 n249
19.8	188 n52	44.2-4	393 n301	4D <sup>2</sup> 4.13	168 n5	18C	18.8	765 n736
19.16-30	256 n34	44.9	394 n310	5A 4-5	161 n76	18C-D	18.10-12	
19.24	116 n52	44.12-33	396 n321	5A 4.16	161 n76,			773 n764
19.25	257 n35	44.13	349 n98		180 n40	19A	19.3	835 n955
21.9	328 n3	44.28	435 n6	5A 5.1	162 n81	19B	19.6-7	805 n879
21.15, 20	168 n4	44.33-34	435 n6	6D 6.2	165 n88	19B	19.10-13	
22.1-23.7	257 n36	45.9-10	396 n329	6D 6.7-9	161 n76			815 n902
23.9	62 n28	46.9-11	548 n10	6-8 6.16-18	874 n104	20C	19.11	496 n88
24.4-9	315 n292	47	479 n48	8C 6.18	161 n76	20D	19.16	815 n904,
24.28-33	922 n59	47.10	488 n76	8C 7.4	165 n88			833 n952,
25.1-23	263 n72	48.2	538 n216	8D 7.5	150 n47,			834 n953,
25.17	254 n15	48.11	488 n76		161 n76			835 n955
26.13	268 n91	48.14	561 n43,	9 8.5	274 n122	20D	20.2	835 n957,
26.31	271 n105		561 n51	10 9.1	470 n14			842 n9
26.35	273 n109	48.15-17	553 n27	10C 9.2	474 n27	21A	20.5	698 n482
27.1	273 n109	48.18	543 n233,	10C 9.3	511 n126	21A	20.6 <sup>5</sup>	844 n10
27.5	273 n110		553 n27	10D 9.5	477 n44,	21A	20.8	574 n113
27.7	273 n112	49.2	538 n216		480 n56	21B	21.3	847 n27
27.8	273 n113	49.5	540 n225	10-11 9.10	476 n40	22D	22.1	853 n52
27.13-18	274 n123	<b>15. LADDER OF JACOB</b>		11A 9.16	481 n57	24	23.8	890 n13
27.14	878 n111	<b>(in James, Lost Apocrypha)</b>		11B 10.3	553 n23	24D	23.10	601 n198,
28.4	284 n165			11B 10.4	553 n24			604 n210
28.8	284 n166	69 n49,		12C 10.7	568 n82,	26C	25.7	848 n31
28.11-12	434 n4	279 n134			577 n129			

1. The figures in the first column refer to the pages in the Latin text, Basel 1527; in the second column to the chapter and verse in the English translation of James, London 1917.

2. In the notes it is misprinted as 4A.

3. In the notes the reference is misprinted as 18.173.

4. In the notes the reference is misprinted as 18A.

5. In the notes the reference is misprinted as 20, 21.



Ps.-PHILO (cont.)			20. REVELATION OF EZRA		(ed. Kohler)	
26D	25.10, 26		50 <sup>7</sup>	50.7-8	889 n11	
		848 n34	51	51.1-2	890 n17	288
28	26.12	857 n13	51	51.3	891 n20	169 n6
33	30.1-2, 3	869 n70,	51	51.6 <sup>8</sup>	888 n2	290
		870 n80	51	52.1	893 n26	462 n39
33-34	30.4-7	870 n78	51-52	52.2-4	893 n27	
34C-D	31.1	870 n81	52	53.1	896 n40	
34	31.2-3	870 n80,	53	53.11	890 n17	25. TESTAMENT OF SOLOMON
		871 n84,	53	54.2	893 n31	
		871 n85	53	54.3-4	901 n48,	
					917 n34	
35	31.6-7	871 n85	53	54.3-6	894 n33	26. TESTAMENTS OF THE 12 PATRIARCHS
35A	31.8	112 n40,	53-54	55.1-2	897 n42	Testament of Reuben
		871 n88	53-54	55.2-9	894 n34,	1-6
					894 n35	436 n7
35B	32.7-8	601 n198,			894 n34,	4.6
		604 n210	54D	55.10	894 n35	610 n236
					894 n35	5.6
35-36	32.1-17	871 n90			898 n47	121 n57
37	33.1-6	871 n91	54	56.1-3	898 n47	Testament of Simeon
37	34.1-5	873 n93	54	56.4	901 n51	1-5, 8
38	35.6-7	873 n97	55	56.6	901 n51	437 n8
38	36.1-2	873 n98	55	57.4	898 n47	5.6
38	36.3-4	874 n101	55	57.11	884 n135	825 n923
39	38.1-2	874 n104	55	58.2-3	902 n65	
40	39.5	934 n110	55	58.3-4	903 n66	Testament of Levi
40-42	39.6-40.4		55	58.4	898 n47,	1-2
		876 n108			902 n62	439 n9
41A	40.2	231 n240	56	59.2	914 n19	3
42	41.1	877 n110	56	59.4	914 n13,	9 n22
42-43	42.1	879 n111			914 n15	5-8
43	42.8	879 n111	56	59.5	914 n15	311 n290
43	43.4	879 n115	56	60.2-3	903 n67	8.1
43	43.5	880 n121	57	61.1	914 n15	11
44	43.8	880 n124	57	61.2	917 n32	439 n9,
44	44.2	860 n21,	57	61.4-8	918 n43	439 n9,
		883 n131,	57	61.5	917 n38	474 n33
		892 n25	57	61.6	917 n27,	17
					917 n28,	475 n36
44	44.2-9	883 n131,			917 n34	17.7
		884 n136	57	61.8-9	918 n44	18.2
44	45-47	883 n134	57	62.2	937 n113	306 n275
45	44.10	936 n112	58	62.3	919 n50	92 n114
46	45.3	884 n134	58	62.5	912 n7	(in James, <i>Lost Apocrypha</i> , 20)
47A	47.1	860 n21	58	63.1	907 n92,	1117 n18
48	47.11 <sup>6</sup>	884 n135			908 n96	Testament of Judah
48	48.1-2	884 n135,	58	63.3	904 n78	315 n292
		885 n140,	58-59	63.4	908 n106	1-2
		892 n25	59	64.1	903 n73	9
49	49.1	890 n17	59	64.3-8	904 n77	9.8, 11
50	50.2	888 n9,	(end)	65.4	903 n66	10-11
		889 n12,				346 n75,
		892 n25	19. REST OF THE WORDS OF BARUCH			346 n81
50	50.4	888 n9	1-8			210 n155
50	50.5-6	889 n11	3			440 n10
						347 n87
						440 n10
						Testament of Issachar
						1-7
						442 n11
						4.4
						109 n31

6. In the notes the reference is misprinted as 57.11.

7. In the notes the reference is misprinted as 52.

8. In the notes the reference is misprinted as 61.6.



Testament of Zebulun	25.4	81 n96		214 n172		612 n238	
1	443 n12	26	97 n133	23	206 n143	12	43 n190,
2	334 n34	30	89 n109,	25	206 n135		610 n236
3	328 n3,		92 n111	27	210 n155,	14 (192 ed. Mangey)	175
	337 n54	31	92 n112		215 n180		n26
4	334 n45,	34	95 n129	28	207 n154	22	608 n226
	337 n51,	40-42	92 n114	32	228 n230,	25	609 n228
	343 n63	44	92 n115		232 n242	29	619 n258
5-8	443 n12	46-47	97 n134	39	197 n93		
		48	97 n135	42	202 n119		
Testament of Dan		50-51	99 n139,	43	203 n120	2, 7, 10	155 n61
1-6	444 n13		99 n140	44	236 n259	11	585 n156
				46	239 n277	13	156 n66,
Testament of Naphtali		28. ZADOKITE FRAGMENTS					597 n190
1-2	447 n14	2	127 n60,		De Agricultura	21	644 n330
1.9	284 n167		138 n13	1	154 n57	23	701 n490
3.5	121 n57					34	897 n43
		5.18	965 n56				
Testament of Gad		8.20	1030 n17		De Caritate		
1-2, 5-8	330 n9,	10.8-10	257 n36	1-3	790 n837		De Fortitudine
	448 n15	12	248 n318	3	26 n102,	3	49 n6
		16.5	159 n74		790 n835,	7	779 n785,
Testament of Asher		18	520 n161		831 n947		782 n798,
1-8	449 n16	27	342 n60	4	824 n920		793 n842
6	430 n444						
		29. CODEX			Cherubim		De Gigantibus
Testament of Joseph		PSEUDEPIGRAPHICUS		2	203 n122	2	16 n63,
1.7	188 n52	VETERIS TESTAMENTI,					121 n57
2.2	200 n114	(ed. Fabricius,		De Confusione		6-8	82 n98,
3	352 n107	Hamburg 1722)		Lingarum			697 n479
3.5	381 n250	6 and 12	62 n30	2	165 n88	14	203 n122
3-7	355 n110	106-223	122 n58	3	71 n58	15	162 n77,
7	356 n118	120-122	113 n44	15	760 n719		203 n122
9	361 n138	141, 143, 145	116 n52	16	301 n253		
10	370 n183	224-227	132 n62	17	396 n327		
11-16	351 n99	842	830 n946	20	301 n253	1	329 n6,
18	328 n3	1156-1160	1125 n50	22	105 n14		501 n109
18.3	351 n100			25	105 n12	2	331 n11,
		D. Hellenistic Literature		27	52 n12,		334 n23
					598 n191	3	343 n64
Testament of Benjamin		I. PHILO		35	52 n12,	6	289 n201,
1	319 n308	De Abrahamo			825 n923		405 n367
1-7	450 n18					8	351 n105
2	381 n253	2	118 n54			9	356 n114
3	398 n331	3	122 n58	De Congr. Quaer.		10	399 n340
7.1-5	112 n37	5	135 n5	Erud. Gratia		16	361 n142
10	450 n18	7	145 n28,	10	301 n253	19	364 n155
10.7	100 n142		238 n273	11	580 n137	20	366 n171
11	411 n401	8	145 n25	17	102 n1	21	376 n221
12	328 n3,	8.46	239 n275			27	371 n197
	450 n18	12	301 n253			30	334 n41,
		14	188 n53		De Decalogo		376 n222
27. VITA ADAE		15	199 n108	1	595 n185	32	346 n74,
1-17	87 n106	16 (Mangey, I, 12)	351	5	612 n243		372 n198,
14-16	63 n35		n102	8	54 n15		378 n229
18	102 n4	17 (I., 401)	168 n4	9	604 n213,	38	383 n256
19-21	103 n5	18	203 n122	10	612 n238	39	381 n252
21	103 n6	19	61 n24,	11	50 n8,	40	390 n281
22	103 n7		191 n73		605 n216	41	406 n370
24-39	92 n113	22	206 n135,		599 n192,		
					602 n206,		



<b>De Josepho</b> ( <i>cont.</i> )		1.11	496 n88,	2.11	142 n142	22	43 n190
42	393 n307,		496 n94,	2.12	145 n24	23	61 n25
	398 n330		501 n109	2.36 (ed.		24	49 n6,
43	430 n442,	1.12	501 n112,	Mangey, 175)	116 n53		52 n12,
	629 n287		502 n115	2.39	832 n951		60 n22,
<b>De Legum Allegoriis</b>		1.14	499 n104,	2.43	255 n25		67 n42,
			514 n140	2 (3).2	511 n122,		79 n87
1.2	8 n21	1.17	525 n170,		635 n309	25	50 n8
1.21	78 n82		528 n176	2 (3).2-14	651 n353	28	49 n4,
1.30	69 n50	1.18	529 n179	2 (3).3	641 n324		92 n113
1.33	78 n72	1.19	529 n183	2 (3).3-10	649 n346	30	683 n430
2.1	14 n54	1.20	534 n194	2 (3).8	644 n333	30-34	8 n21
2.4	60 n22	1.21	534 n198,	2 (3).9	646 n339	40	78 n72,
2.20	748 n657		534 n199	2(3).10	645 n337		79 n87
3.24	135 n5	1.23	534 n188	2 (3).15	655 n364	46	49 n6,
3.31	642 n326	1.25	543 n233	2 (3).17	661 n380		60 n22,
3.56	570 n93	1.26	529 n182	2 (3).19	626 n278		67 n42
3.66 <sup>1</sup>	580 n137	1.27	544 n246,	2 (3).20	627 n281	47	55 n16,
3.72 <sup>2</sup>	232 n243		598 n191	2 (3).21	720 n566		60 n21
3.84	351 n101	1.29	555 n35,	2 (3).23	616 n248	51	54 n15,
3.84	355 n111		588 n164	2 (3).24	528 n176,		60 n21,
<b>De Migratione Abrahami</b>		1.30	561 n51		691 n455		60 n22,
		1.32	557 n36	2 (3).27	612 n243,		608 n224
11	612 n238	1.33	568 n82		654 n360	54	81 n96
13	104 n8,	1.34	568 n87	2 (3).27-28	691 n452	56	102 n3
	105 n16,	1.35	570 n89	2 (3).31	787 n819	60	80 n94
	106 n19	1.36	570 n91,	2 (3).33	85 n102,		
18 (end)	301 n253		574 n113		553 n23	<b>De Mutatione Nominum</b>	
19	188 n55	1.37	575 n116	2 (3).34	557 n36,	2	319 n304,
24	462 n33	1.39	583 n145,		562 n55,		632 n299
36-39	301 n253		769 n752		565 n70	3	511 n128
<b>De Vita Mosis</b>		1.40-41	705 n503	2 (3).37	627 n281	3.22	838 n965
		1.41-42	709 n518	2 (3).38	720 n566	5	2 n6
1 (beg.)	615 n245,	1.41	705 n503,	2 (3).39	824 n920	8.9	203 n122
	616 n248		709 n518	2 (3).97	612 n238	12	301 n253
1.2	474 n31	1.42	709 n518	2 (3) end	832 n951,	13.14	203 n122
1.3	472 n23,	1.45	746 n646,		835 n954	15	319 n308,
	476 n43,		747 n648,	3.14	49 n4		370 n187
	479 n50,		752 n669			16	434 n4
	481 n62	1.46	750 n664	<b>De Mundi Opificio</b>		17	494 n83
1.4	479 n48,	1.47	753 n681	3-4	25 n98	20	517 n147
	481 n59	1.48	760 n720,	5	2 n6	37	517 n152
1.5	481 n64,		763 n730	7	7 n14, 7 n15	<b>De Nobilitate</b>	
	781 n790	1.49	598 n191	8	8 n19,	5	181 n46,
1.5-7	484 n67	1.50	774 n771		85 n104		199 n108
1.6	484 n68	1.51	775 n772	10	14 n44	6	346 n82
1.7	468 n7,	1.52	776 n776	13	21 n74,		
	468 n8,	1.54	779 n785		60 n21	<b>De Plantatione Noe</b>	
	488 n70	1.55	779 n785,	14-15	25 n99,	2.4	49 n6
1.8	488 n70,		782 n798,		73 n62	3	25 n100,
	488 n71,		784 n804	18	8 n19,		28 n112
	488 n73,	1.56	793 n842,		85 n104	4	16 n63,
	488 n75		795 n848	19	28 n112		612 n241
1.9	488 n75	1.57	798 n859	20	32 n128	6	612 n242,
1.10	494 n84	2.10	215 n180	21	73 n62		642 n326

1. Misprinted as 2.66

2. Misprinted as 3.71.



De Plantatione Noe ( <i>cont.</i> )	1.92	121 n57	2.28	40 n157	20	105 n12	
8	69 n50	1.94	78 n82,	2.42	619 n258	32	68 n45
19	49 n4		146 n32	2.48	615 n247	36	301 n253
		2.2	199 n110	2.52	641 n324		
De Posteritate Caini	2.9	146 n32	2.54	644 n330		De Sobrietate	
11	112 n42	2.13	141 n20	2.51-124	649 n346	4	239 n277
13	132 n62	2.14	149 n42	2.62	644 n333		
20	103 n7	2.15-16 <sup>1</sup>	135 n5	2.82-83	641 n324		De Somniis
33	113 n45	2.17	149 n45			1.3	54 n15
43	605 n216	2.28	150 n46	Quis Rerum Divinarum		1.4	25 n100,
44	241 n290	2.35	149 n46	Heres Sit			28 n112
48	632 n299	2.45	149 n45	5	602 n201,	1.10	462 n33
		2.47	149 n45		674 n405,	1.11	228 n236,
De Praemiis		2.49	152 n54		699 n485		1164 n139
2 (end)	118 n54	2.56	60 n22	6	3 n6	1.22	16 n63
3	122 n58	2.63	152 n55	11	106 n19	1.22 (133-136)	82 n98
4, 5	219 n203	2.64	153 n55	15	301 n253	1.24	279 n134
8	301 n253	2.65, 70, 77	155 n61	20	199 n108,	1.27	319 n304
9	484 n68,	2.79	146 n30		199 n110	1.28	188 n55
	514 n140	2.82	162 n77,	26	470 n17	1.36	49 n3,
			164 n88	35	608 n222		462 n33
De Profugis		3.15	200 n114	38	658 n372	2.3	434 n4
	664 n383	3.47-48	249 n318	45	646 n339	2.4, 6	301 n253
14	52 n12	3.53 <sup>2</sup>	203 n122	52	62 n30,	2.16	25 n100
21	78 n72	4.10	206 n140		134 n4	2.26	301 n253
25	301 n253	4.17	207 n151			2.35-36	838 n965
29	632 n299	4.24 <sup>3</sup>	212 n167	Quod Deterius Potiori			De Specialibus Legibus
38	301 n253	4.27	259 n44	Insidiari Soleat			<i>Passim</i>
		4.30	214 n170	1.10-11	105 n16		619 n258
Quaestiones in Genesin		4.33-34	214 n172	7	334 n29		
1.12	43 n190	4.56	215 n188	9	242 n300		Book I
1.12-13	70 n51	4.73	236 n259	11	106 n19		<i>De Circumcisione</i>
1.14	70 n54	4.74	236 n260	14	105 n16,	(Beg.)	249 n318
1.16	78 n72	4.80 <sup>4</sup>	236 n263		106 n19		
1.19	67 n42	4.85	239 n277	29	49 n6		<i>De Monarchia</i>
1.20	67 n41	4.140	242 n300	41	108 n25	7	781 n790
1.21	62 n31	4.147	243 n309	46	511 n128		
1.22	62 n31,	4.170	232 n243	48	113 n44		<i>De Sacerdotibus</i>
	70 n58	4.188	262 n56			1.4 (322-24)	627 n281
1.25	81 n97	4.194	262 n62	Quod Deus Sit			
1.32	71 n58	4.196, 198	267 n75	Immutabilis			
1.33-34	73 n61	4.200	268 n82	5	141 n20		<i>De Praemiis Sacerdotum</i>
1.45	78 n77	4.233	271 n104			3	784 n801
1.52	68 n48	4.245	274 n121	Quod Omnis Probus			
1.53	80 n93			Liber Sit			<i>De Sacrificantibus</i>
1.57	80 n95			7	838 n965		<i>Offerentibus</i>
1.62	105 n12	Quaestiones				5	890 n18
1.63	105 n10	in Exodum		De Sacrificiis Abelis		11	724 n573
1.69	108 n24	1.1	81 n97	et Caini		15-16	651 n353
1.82-86	122 n58	1.6	536 n206	3	50 n8		
1.87	134 n4,	1.10	890 n18	12	517 n147		Book II
	135 n5	2.11-12	536 n206	13	105 n12,	2.1(2 ed. Cohn)	259 n49
1.91	140 n19	2.13	845 n20		517 n147	2.3	294 n277
		2.24	756 n701	18	48 n1		

1. Misprinted in the notes as 2.245.

2. Quoted in the notes as Gen. 17.5.

3. Misprinted in the notes as 15.24.

4. Misprinted in the notes as 3.80.



<i>De Septenario</i>		I., 15.1	244 n314		479 n46,	IV., 6.5	773 n764,
2.6	654 n360	I., 16.1	241 n288		479 n47		775 n772,
2.19	81 n97	I., 16.2	241 n290	II., 9.5	479 n48,		777 n782
		I., 18	268 n89		479 n50	IV., 6.6-9	779 n785
<i>De Colendis Parentibus</i>		I., 19.1	280 n140	II., 9.6	474 n31,	IV., 6.9	781 n790
1	608 n226	I., 19.4	280 n149		481 n64	IV., 6.10-11	781 n791
7 (241		I., 19.7	284 n166	II., 9.7	479 n48,	IV., 6.12	782 n798
ed. Cohn)	259 n49	I., 19.8	284 n167		481 n64,	IV., 6.13	777 n784
8	691 n452	I., 20.1	298 n236,		484 n65	IV., 7	795 n849
			298 n245	II., 10-11	492 n80	IV., 8	813 n899
<b>Book IV</b>		I., 20.3	307 n275	II., 11.1	494 n81	IV., 8.2	608 n226
<i>De Iudice</i>		I., 20.9-11	294 n224	II., 11.2	494 n82	IV., 8.3	835 n954
2	598 n191	I., 21.1	309 n284,	II., 12.1	494 n83,	IV., 8.5	724 n573
			318 n302		501 n113	IV., 8.44	824 n920
<i>De Concupiscentia</i>		I., 32	140 n19	II., 12.3	511 n129	IV., 8.48	815 n904,
2	609 n235	I., 32.1	231 n240	II., 14.2	529 n179		832 n951,
		II., 2.1	328 n2,	II., 14.3	534 n188		835 n954
<i>De Vita Contemplativa</i>			329 n6	II., 14.5	534 n198	IV., 8.49	835 n954
11	565 n70	II., 2.2	331 n13	II., 14.6	543 n233	V., 1.2	844 n12
		II., 2.3	331 n14,	II., 15.3	548 n8,	V., 1.11	845 n16
<b>2. JOSEPHUS</b>			331 n16,		548 n10,	V., 1.12	847 n23
<b>a. Antiquities</b>			331 n18		561 n43	V., 1.13	847 n27
I., 1	20 n71	II., 2.4	334 n22	II., 15.4	553 n23	V., 1.14	848 n31
I., 1.2	54 n15	II., 3.1-3	334 n36	II., 16.1	553 n25	V., 1.15	847 n22
I., 1.4	70 n58,	II., 3.2	334 n41	II., 16.2	557 n36	V., 1.17	848 n35
	73 n61	II., 4.1	351 n105	II., 16.3	561 n46	V., 1.19	845 n15,
I., 2.1	104 n8	II., 4.2	529 n183	II., 16.6	562 n55		852 n46
I., 2.2	112 n37,	II., 4.4	358 n128	III., 1.2	568 n80	V., 1.21	853 n47
	112 n42,	II., 4.5	358 n132	III., 1.3	568 n85	V., 2.1	861 n22,
	134 n4	II., 5.1	361 n142,	III., 1.3-5	570 n89		997 n4
I., 2.3	92 n115,		364 n155	III., 1.6	571 n99	V., 3.3	856 n1
	116 n52	II., 5.2	361 n150	III., 3.1	585 n157	V., 5.1	870 n80
I., 3.1	121 n57,	II., 5.4	366 n172	III., 4.1-2	588 n164,	V., 5.4	870 n81
	145 n25	II., 5.5	366 n171		590 n167	V., 5.11, 12	880 n121
I., 3.2	142 n21	II., 6.1	370 n187,	III., 4.2	705 n503	V., 6.2	873 n97
I., 3.3	149 n45		372 n197,	III., 5.2-3	601 n198	V., 6.3	873 n98,
I., 3.4	122 n58		375 n205,	III., 5.4	612 n243		874 n100
I., 3.5-6	151 n48		398 n333	III., 5.5	609 n234	V., 7.1	874 n103
I., 4.1	163 n84,	II., 6.2	372 n202	III., 6.4-5	644 n333	V., 7.8	876 n106,
	165 n90	II., 6.3	769 n752	III., 6.7	646 n339		876 n107
I., 4.2	163 n84,	II., 6.5	379 n234	III., 7.5	651 n356	V., 7.10	877 n109
	164 n88	II., 6.6	375 n220,	III., 7.7	651 n353	V., 7.15	877 n110
I., 6.5	178 n38		645 n337	III., 9.1	890 n18	V., 8.2	879 n111,
I., 7.2	181 n46	II., 6.7	381 n252,	III., 12.1	580 n140		884 n136
I., 8.1	191 n66,		383 n256	III., 13.1	694 n470	V., 8.3	879 n111
	191 n70	II., 6.8	387 n268	IV., 2.2	720 n563	V., 8.4	879 n111,
I., 8.2	191 n80	II., 6.10	390 n281	IV., 2.3	721 n570		879 n116
I., 10	206 n137	II., 7.2	393 n300	IV., 3.4	726 n585	V., 8.6	880 n121
I., 10.1	196 n91	II., 7.3	378 n234	IV., 3.32	724 n576	V., 8.9	879 n119
I., 11	214 n177	II., 7.4	396 n321	IV., 4.2	731 n600	V., 9.1	864 n31
I., 11.2	206 n132,	II., 7.7	399 n339	IV., 4.6	738 n625	V., 9.4	866 n62,
	206 n143	II., 9.1	474 n29	IV., 5.2	755 n682		867 n69
I., 11.4	215 n180,	II., 9.2	470 n17,	IV., 5.3	755 n683,	V., 10.2	889 n11
	215 n188		472 n24		756 n704	V., 10.3	903 n69
I., 12.3	220 n211	II., 9.3	474 n28,	IV., 6.2	759 n717,	V., 11.2	893 n32
I., 13	70 n51		476 n39		760 n721,	V., 11.4	890 n13,
I., 13.1	228 n230	II., 9.4	476 n39,		762 n725		894 n33
I., 13.2	233 n253		476 n41,	IV., 6.3	768 n745	V., 11.5	892 n25



<b>Antiquities (cont.)</b>	VIII., 5.2	967 n58	X., 11.4	1096 n76,	1.26	499 n101
V., 11.12	893 n27	VIII., 5.3		1116 n10	2.23	724 n573
V., 16.2	888 n4	VIII., 6.5-6	X., 11.6	1117 n16	1.31	481 n59
V., 16.4	896 n40	VIII., 7.2	X., 11.7	1096 n76,	2.27-28	608 n226
VI., 1.1	894 n34	VIII., 7.3		1117 n18,		
VI., 1.2, 4	894 n35,	VIII., 7.5		1117 n19		
	894 n37		XI., 1.2	1117 n18	<b>3. ARTAPANUS</b>	
VI., 2.2	896 n42	VIII., 8.5	XI., 3.1	1121 n30	344b	499 n101
VI., 3.3	898 n47		XI., 3.3-9	1120 n24	429d (9.23)	398 n339
VI., 4.1	902 n63	VIII., 9	XI., 4.9	1120 n23	431	488 n76
VI., 4.5	901 n51	VIII., 10.3	XI., 5.2	1123 n34	432 (9.27)	481 n62,
VI., 5.1	902 n56	VIII., 12.2	XI., 5.5	1126 n51		484 n67,
VI., 7.2-3	902 n60	VIII., 13.5	XI., 6.1	1131 n4,		492 n80
VI., 7 (end)	902 n65	VIII., 13.6		1134 n23,	433c	481 n61
VI., 8.1	914 n13,	VIII., 13.7		1134 n26,	433c-d	540 n226
	915 n22			1137 n35	434	481 n59
VI., 8.2	915 n24		XI., 6.2	1138 n42,	434b	497 n96
VI., 11.4	941 n133	VIII., 14.15		1141 n65,	434d	520 n155
VI., 11.9	905 n80	VIII., 15.4		1144 n84	435c	528 n176
VI., 12.1	908 n96	IX., 2.2	XI., 6.3	1164 n135	436b	557 n38
VI., 12.3	912 n9	IX., 3.2	XI., 6.4	1146 n88	436c	520 n157
VI., 12.6	908 n104	IX., 4.2	XI., 6.5	1150 n100,		
VI., 12.7	902 n63	IX., 4.6		1150 n104	<b>4. DEMETRIUS</b>	
VI., 13.5	903 n69	IX., 5.2	XI., 6.6	1158 n115	422d (9.11)	396 n325
VI., 14.2	904 n75,	IX., 6.1	XI., 6.7	1164 n137,	424c (9.12)	366 n169
	904 n77	IX., 7.5		1164 n139	425 (9.12)	381 n249
VI., (end)	905 n80	IX., 8.5-6	XI., 6.8	1150 n100,	438d (10.29)	474 n31
VII., 1.5	947 n9	IX., 9.3		1161 n123	439d	493 n80
VII., 4.2	924 n68	IX., 10.2	XI., 6.10	1171 n166		
VII., 4.3	941 n133	IX., 10.4	XI., 6.13	1178 n191	<b>5. EUPOLEMUS</b>	
VII., 4.20	942 n135		XII., 4.6	912 n11	418d	161 n76
VII., 5.4	942 n141	IX., 11.2	XII., 14.1	705 n503	419	123 n59
VII., 7.8	946 n1	IX., 11.3	XIV., 2.1	1091 n58	431c	484 n67
VII., 8.5	932 n98		XIV., 2.2	1076 n29	448-449	958 n36
VII., 9.4	931 n96	X., 1.4	XV., 5.3	616 n248	451	958 n36
VII., 11.3	985 n16		XVIII., 15.5	989 n43	452	946 n1
VII., 11.7	947 n9	X., 3.1			454b-d	1071 n15,
VII., 12.3	929 n81,	X., 4.4	<b>b. Bellum Judaicum</b>			1072 n16
	930 n84	X., 5.1	II., 8.9	1120 n26	477b	905 n80
VII., 13.1 <sup>1</sup>	638 n314	X., 6.3	IV., 5.4	1078 n30		
VII., 13.1-3	937 n119,		IV., 8.4	215 n180,	<b>6. Ps.-EUPOLEMUS</b>	
	937 n121,	X., 7.1		215 n184		165 n88
	937 n122		IV., 9.7	206 n137		
VII., 13.4	967 n57	X., 8.2	V., 5.5	1124 n36	<b>7. EZEKIEL</b>	
VII., 13.6, 8	942 n137	X., 8.3	V., 11.5	1075 n26	348	493 n80
VII., 15.3	943 n144	X., 8.7	VI., 4.3	1076 n29	349	494 n82
VIII., 1.4	947 n10		VI., 4.5-8	1077 n29	438b	484 n67,
VIII., 2.5	955 n18,	X., 10.1	VI., 5.3	1077 n29		487 n69
	964 n48	X., 10.5	VI., 9.2	1076 n29	440	517 n143
VIII., 2.6-7	958 n36	X., 10.6	VI., 10	197 n102	446	568 n88
VIII., 3.4	967 n61		VII., 5.1	1089 n56	458b	481 n62
VIII., 4.2	946 n2,	X., 11.1	VII., 6.3	289 n189		
	984 n9	X., 11.2			<b>8. Ps-PHOCYLIDES</b>	
VIII., 5	1053 n90		<b>c. Contra Apionem</b>		5.8	608 n226
VIII., 5.1	948 n11		1.8	1128 n56		

1. In the text the reference is misprinted as 181.



E. Tannaitic Literature <sup>1</sup>	F. Talmud and Minor Treatises <sup>1</sup>	Talmud Commentary by Rashi	3. MINOR TREATISES Abot de R. Nathan
<b>I. MEKILTA OF R. ISHMAEL</b>	<b>I. BABLI</b>	<b>Sukkah</b>	1.6 73 n68
<b>Shira</b>	<b>Berakot</b>	52b 263 n69	30.90-91 50 n8
9.43a <sup>2</sup> 737 n622	29b 1012 n78	<b>Megillah</b>	156 832 n948,
10.44a 168 n4		12b 1137 n34	836 n958
	<b>Erubin</b>	15a 1164 n140	157 836 n958
<b>Wa-Yassa</b>	18b 74 n70	<b>Kiddushin</b>	34.10 334 n21
1.44a 467 n72		70a 1000 n35	<b>Gerim</b>
1.46a 568 n83	<b>Pesahim</b>	<b>Bekorot</b>	2 599 n192
1.46b 570 n89	117a 567 n72,	8a 40 n168	2.4 1093 n66
1.47a 570 n90	1058 n103		
<b>Amalek</b>	118a, b 1099 n87	<b>YERUSHALMI</b>	<b>Kallah</b>
1.53a 1039 n16	<b>Megillah</b>	<b>Berakot</b>	1.1b 977 n93
2.56a 583 n147	16a 1177 n178	7.11c 1128 n58	1.4b 612 n240
<b>Yitro</b>	<b>Gittin</b>	<b>Kilayim</b>	1.6a 1131 n5,
1.59a 206 n134	68a 976 n86	9.32c 980 n99	1146 n88
2.60a 590 n166	68b 976 n86,	<b>Shabbat</b>	2.4a 635 n309
<b>Bahodesh</b>	1005 n54	1.3b 43 n190	2.6 744 n643
6.68 625 n276	<b>Kiddushin</b>	14.14c 1000 n92	2.8a 121 n57
6.69a 608 n221	6a 31 n127	<b>Erubin</b>	2.9b 862 n30
<i>Not in our texts</i>	<b>Baba Mezia</b>	10.26c 289 n189	3 (end) 1022 n119
552 n15,	107b 1100 n92	<b>Yebamot</b>	3.7a 196 n84,
565 n62	114a-b 1005 n54	4.6a 842 n7	196 n86
<b>2. MEKILTA OF R. SIMON</b>	<b>Baba Batra</b>	<b>Nedarim</b>	3.8a 138 n12
48 328 n3	91a 878 n111	6.39-40a 1121 n32	6.13b 206 n132
76 573 n101	<b>Sanhedrin</b>	<b>Sanhedrin</b>	6.16 923 n62
94 597 n189	92b 1099 n85,	2.20a 538 n213	8b 396 n319
<b>3. MEKILTA TO DEUTERONOMY</b>	1100 n90	10.29b 967 n59	8.15a 619 n257
4 597 n191	93a 1100 n90	<b>Makkot</b>	<b>G. Midrashim<sup>3</sup></b>
189, 190 844 n15	101b 271 n104	2.31a 800 n869	<b>I. ABBA GORION</b>
<b>4. SIFRE ZUTA</b>	108b 141 n20,	<b>Abodah Zarah</b>	8.12-13 1131 n6
160-162 790 n827	152 n53	1.39b 985 n17	15-16 1137 n36
<b>5. MIDRASH TANNAIM</b>	109a 165 n89	1.39c 88 n107	26-29 1155 n113
14-15 827 n941	<b>Abodah Zarah</b>	<i>Quotations not in our editions</i>	36-37 1169 n158
<b>6. MEGILLAT TA'ANIT</b>	73a 67 n41	583 n147,	41 1177 n176
3 315 n292	<b>Zebahim</b>	871 n89,	
<b>7. SEDER OLAM</b>	115a 664 n385	915 n19,	
24 1058 n112	<b>Talmud</b>	919 n48,	
30 61 n27	<i>Quotations not in our texts</i>	936 n112,	
<b>8. TOSEFTA SOTAH</b>	42 n190,	1012 n77	
11.11 901 n52	1180 n193		

1. Only the passages that are explained are cited here.

2. In the text this reference is misprinted as 11.49a.

3. In this section only the passages explained are cited, unless there is an asterisk.



ABKIR ( <i>cont.</i> )	300 n248,	7. ALPHABETOT	6.172	118 n56,	401	259 n48,
	301 n250,	83 3 n6		137 n10		262 n52
	305 n256,	8. BAMIDBAR RABBAH	6.173	118 n54	407-8	262 n62
	305 n263,	9.48 635 n306	6.175	131 n61	440	274 n118
	306 n275,		6.179-180	3 n8	463	284 n164
	349 n97,	9. BARAITA DI YESHUA	17. KONEN		503	298 n236,
	351 n102,	46 989 n37	24	11 n40		298 n238,
	358 n121,	10. BERESHIT RABBAH	25	11 n40,	594-5	298 n240
	358 n131,	8.1 56 n17		14 n44,	720-1	361 n145
	370 n189,	8.2 67 n43		27 n112,	761	405 n367
	375 n216,	11.1 85 n104	26	27 n112,		414 n414
	390 n278,	11.9 81 n98		29 n113,	Exodus	
	393 n307,	12.6 85 n104		29 n114	11	475 n34,
	410 n386,	15.7 73 n70				475 n35
	468 n8,	19.5 74 n70	18. LEKAH TOB, GENESIS			
	488 n75,	22.6 105 n13	4.8 108 n20		MIDRASH RABBAH, see	
	490 n78,	25.3 191 n64	5.24 122 n58		respective Hebrew names	
	494 n84,	35.2 152 n55	27.36 271 n102		of the Pentateuch and the	
	514 n131,	45.2 202 n119	40.4-6 361 n147		five Scrolls	
	514 n138,	45.5-8 203 n122	19. LEKAH TOB, NUMBERS		25. MISHLE	
	520 n155,	49.13 212 n165	22.1 760 n719		1.1 955 n18	
	520 n157,	64.4 1070 n11			23.94 632 n303	
	552 n15,	65.1-3 284 n162	20. LEKET MIDRASHIM		30.107-108 949 n13	
	553 n24,	67.11 273 n113	5a 458 n25			
	555 n34,	68.2 276 n124			26. NISTAROT R. SIMON	
	558 n40,	98.12 289 n191	21. MA'ASEH ABRAHAM		8 32 n139	
	558 n42,					
	561 n53,	II. DIBRE HA-YAMIM SHEL			27. OSEH FELEH	
	565 n69,	MOSHEH			II., 21 1017 n96	
	570 n93,	2 475 n36	32.34 175 n26,		II., 22b, 23 1017 n96,	
	574 n105,		43 171 n13			1020 n103
	594 n182,	12. EKAH RABBAH	(In Beth Ha-Midrash)		II., 44a 1005 n58	
	654 n360,	2. 114-115 1066 n3	II., 118 172 n16		II., 52 1005 n56	
	1022 n119					
		13. ESFAH	22. MAASIYYOT		28. PANIM AHERIM	
3. AGGADAT AGGADOT			(Jellinek's Beth ha-Midrash		63 1141 n65	
57-59 970 n72		656 n369,	V., 150-156)		66 1146 n91	
77-78 869 n72		677 n417,		14 n50	70 1163 n131	
		691 n448,			71 1169 n149,	
4. AGGADAT SHIR HA-		696 n476,	23. MIDRASH AGGADA			1169 n151,
SHIRIM		697 n478,	Genesis			1169 n152
6.41 and 88-89 711 n527		701 n490,	9.2 152 n53		72 1169 n157	
		701 n491,	30.14 289 n189		76 1177 n180	
5. AGUR		733 n605,	49.14 289 n189			
684 n437		784 n805				
			Numbers		29. PEREK HA-SHALOM	
6. 2 ALPHABET OF BEN		14. ESTHER RABBAH	27.38 681 n424			585 n155,
SIRA		1.2 1087 n52				588 n65
23a-b 66 n40		1.7 1134 n21,	24. MIDRASH HA-GADOL		30. PESIKTA DE	
24a 42 n182		1134 n23	Genesis		R. KAHANA	
25a 42 n184		1.13 1134 n23	11 8 n21		7.65b 191 n80	
26a 42 n183		1.9, 9-10 1135 n28	26 14 n53		13.116a 1071 n13	
27a-28a 42 n190			12-13 5 n12		71b, 72b 1176 n170	
28b 73 n67		15. HALLEL	76 69 n50			
29a-b 73 n67		103 1072 n18	127 81 n96		31. PESIKTA RABBATI	
33a-b 66 n40			179-80 159 n73		3.12a-b 405 n367	
33b 42 n182		16. HEKALOT	182 158 n72		20.97a 17 n70	
36a 73 n67		6.170-171 130 n61	400 259 n48			



<b>Pesikta Rabbati</b> ( <i>cont.</i> )	<b>38. SHEMUEL</b>	<b>46. YALKUT SHIMEONI,</b>	153	468 n8,
24.124b 609 n228	5.60 1100 n90	<b>PART I (PENTATEUCH)*</b>		1022 n119
26.131a-b 1067 n6,		17 51 n10	157	410 n386
1067 n8		20 22 n90,	167	488 n75,
33.155a 40 n162	<b>39. SHIR HA-SHIRIM</b>	66 n37		490 n78
40.167a 2 n6	<b>RABBAH</b>	34 60 n22,	168	491 n80
47.190b-191a 453 n4	3.4 1053 n83	80 n93,	169	494 n84
	7.9 1100 n87	88 n106	171	514 n131
		38 113 n44	173	514 n138,
<b>32. PETIRAT AHARON</b>	<b>40. TADSHE</b>	41 62 n28,		520 n155
92 738 n626	8 870 n73	912 n12	182	42 n190,
93-94 742 n636		131 n61,		526 n173
94-95 743 n640	<b>41. TANHUMA</b>	132 n64,	184	534 n193
	(Ed. Buber)	134 n5,	213	585 n154
<b>33. PETIRAT MOSHEH</b>	Intro., 154 50 n6	135 n6	219	646 n339
121 10 n30,	I., 103 874 n103	44 137 n10	230	552 n14
807 n894	I., 133 268 n89	47 78 n81,	233	553 n24
125-126 818 n908	II., 33 1106 n107	113 n45,	234	555 n34,
127-128 830 n947		118 n54,		558 n42
128-129 832 n948	<b>Vulgate Text</b>	118 n55	235	561 n53
	<b>Bereshit</b>	57 145 n25,	240	562 n55
<b>34. PIRKE R. ELIEZER</b>	11 113 n44	149 n41	241	520 n157,
3 8 n19	12 118 n56	61 155 n58,		552 n15,
11 162 n82		158 n72		553 n28,
12 68 n48	<b>Noah</b>	77 178 n39		558 n40,
14 78 n79	10 1100 n91	96 225 n228		565 n62,
20 87 n106		98 228 n232,		565 n69
21 105 n11	<b>Lek.</b>	228 n235,	243	558 n40
25 214 n171	12 224 n224	236 n259	256	215 n180
27 217 n197	<i>Not in our texts</i> 632 n298	228 n235	258	570 n93,
29 219 n206		100 233 n253,		574 n103
30 221 n216,	<b>42. TEHILLIM</b>	233 n255	276	594 n182,
222 n218	<i>Quotation not in our texts</i>	101 232 n245		597 n189
32 280 n152	700 n486,	109 241 n292,	301	612 n240
33 1030 n16	947 n8	241 n294,	408	654 n360
35 693 n460	1.14 721 n567	242 n301	426	577 n129
38 336 n51	2.26 70 n55	254 n15,	427	688 n445
45 703 n494	60.305 927 n77	258 n38	429	641 n322
48 638 n315	78.349-350 533 n188	267 n73	513	650 n353
53 1109 n117	90.389 1067 n8	132 300 n248,	540	832 n948
<b>35. RUTH RABBAH</b>	104.442-443 45 n194	301 n250,	673	733 n603
1.4 864 n35,	104.445 43 n190	305 n256,	683	691 n448
864 n40	109.471 8 n22	315 n292,	719	640 n321,
1.7 865 n43	118.484 178 n39	322 n317		678 n419
		133 306 n275	723	639 n316
<b>36. SEDER ELIAHU</b>	<b>43. WAYIKRA RABBAH</b>	142 334 n42	729	26 n102,
<b>RABBAH</b>	18.2 1105 n105	145 358 n121		644 n330,
8.39 1030 n22	19.6 1063 n134	146 349 n97,		831 n947
8.46 1052 n75	<i>Not in our texts</i> 20 n73	358 n129,	732	693 n466,
18.95 1013 n88		358 n131,		696 n472
18.97-98 997 n9	<b>44. WA-YISSA'U</b>	370 n189	736	696 n477
28.154 1087 n53	315 n292,	49 n4,	737	656 n369,
	322 n317	372 n200,		697 n478
<b>37. SEDER RABBA DI</b>		375 n216	738	701 n488,
<b>BERESHIT</b>	<b>45. WEHIZHIR</b>	381 n251,		701 n491
4-5 10 n30	<i>Quotation not in our texts</i>	383 n255,	739	693 n456,
5-6 8 n22	641 n322	384 n265,		701 n490,
7-8 84 n101		390 n278		701 n492



YALKUT SHIMEONI I ( <i>cont.</i> )		793 n844,	296	180 n45		740 n632,
742	703 n498	794 n846,	317	612 n243		1030 n20
743	49 n4,	796 n853	319	595 n184	879	733 n609
	705 n502,	742 n637,	321	248 n318	890	930 n84
	705 n503,	743 n640,	358	1101 n93	897	387 n275
	713 n532,	744 n642,	359	1101 n93	907	738 n623
	715 n540,	753 n678,	367	73 n67,	916	57 n20
	801 n870	756 n694		132 n62	924	728 n590
744	78 n71,	693 n466,	376	728 n590	925	16 n63
	329 n3	805 n877	378	577 n134	932	239 n275
752	721 n568,	612 n241,	382	200 n111	936	861 n23
	724 n574,	805 n877	394	288 n168	940	564 n60,
	726 n582,	1012 n77	404	1042 n29		674 n404
	728 n589	635 n304	418	759 n712	950	259 n45
763	731 n600,		424	1052 n71	956	267 n73
	733 n609,	YALKUT SHIMEONI,	439	737 n622	959	842 n3
	746 n647,	PART II (PROPHETS AND	440	215 n179	960	152 n54,
	750 n663,	HAGIOGRAPHIA)	447	612 n240		596 n187
	750 n665	15	574 n113,	871 n86	961	79 n84,
764	557 n37,		577 n134,	612 n243		691 n451
	577 n128,		844 n14	501 n113	988	538 n216
	735 n614,	24-28		145 n26	1001	1076 n27
	735 n617,	(Joshua 15)	168 n2	565 n63	1054	1152 n110,
	740 n632,	43	626 n281	985 n17		1177 n184
	742 n636,	47	595 n183		1057	1171 n164,
	743 n640,	62	873 n94,	746 n647,		1171 n168,
	743 n641,		873 n97	1035 n37,		1177 n176
	747 n649,	64	874 n101	1035 n37,	1059	1169 n159,
	750 n663,	69	16 n63	1041 n20,		1177 n182,
	752 n672	80	890 n15,	1087 n52,		1178 n184
765	769 n748,		891 n20	1090 n57	1074	1093 n65
	772 n762,	86	806 n891	574 n113	1080	719 n561
	773 n763,	123	915 n19			
	773 n764,	124	307 n276,	561-562		
	774 n768,		915 n21	(Nahum)		
	774 n770,	130	909 n107,	197 n102	YALKUT SHIMEONI,	
	777 n778		920 n50	574 n113	SUPPLEMENT	
766	453 n3,	131	908 n104	577 n132	16	254 n18
	460 n32,	139	664 n387	674 n409	18	274 n121
	761 n722,	141	903 n70,	224 n224	19	276 n125
	762 n727,		942 n140	543 n235		
	769 n751,	151	924 n66	88 n106	47. YALKUT DAVID*	
	773 n764,	182	40 n164	605 n214	Genesis	
	773 n765,	214	998 n15	214 n170	4.16	108 n26
	777 n779	215	998 n17	915 n21,	12.1	132 n63
768	774 n769	219	988 n35,	917 n35	27.27	233 n255
771	777 n777,		998 n23	758		
	777 n780,	223-230		301 n248,		
	777 n784,	(2 Kings, 5)	1030 n15	372 n198	Exodus	
	779 n787,	241	1047 n54	777 n778	11.7	548 n3
	784 n804	243	1052 n71	1033 n32	32.1	622 n270
773	784 n805,	257	1067 n7	199 n110,		
	786 n810	271	730 n593,	548 n10	Numbers	
776	789 n823		848 n33	49 n6,	13.32	706 n509
783	793 n840	284	805 n876	367 n182		
785	214 n171,	285	370 n196,	605 n214	48. YALKUT HADASH	
	779 n785,		907 n85	1012 n77	Keshafim	
	793 n841,	292	724 n576	731 n600	55	866 n58
				806 n891,		
				830 n946	s.v. Hurban	
				238 n272,	7 and 18	1092 n64



<b>49. YALKUT MAKIRI</b>		<b>Numbers</b>	27a	180 n41,	<b>Toledot</b>
<b>Psalms</b>		13.17		186 n51	50a 253 n8
136, 260	755 n685	23.22	27b-28a	180 n45	50b 248 n317,
		26.56	29a	196 n85	253 n8,
<b>50. YALKUT REUBENI*</b>					253 n11,
<b>Genesis</b>		30.14			255 n28,
1.1	608 n219,		<b>Lek</b>		258 n37
	851 n47,	<b>Deuteronomy</b>	29b	193 n81	51a 256 n34
	924 n70	1.1	31a	191 n67,	51b 258 n38
1.26	3 n8,	3.22	31b	193 n81	52a-b 258 n38,
	1000 n39,	12.2	32a	191 n68	262 n55,
	1084 n42			191 n73,	262 n56
2.2	1089 n56	<b>Addenda s.v. Elijah</b>	32b	191 n74,	53a-b 256 n29,
2.3	84 n101	1000 n38		196 n82	259 n50,
3 (end)	112 n37		33a	196 n85	262 n59,
4.1	102 n3,	<b>51. YASHAR BERESHIT*</b>	34a	202 n119,	263 n65,
	109 n31	<b>Bereshit</b>		203 n121	273 n107
4.8	956 n26	9a			54b 248 n317,
4.16	108 n26		<b>Wa-Yera</b>		274 n114
5.22	132 n64		35b	206 n140,	55a-b 274 n114,
5.24	130 n61			209 n155	276 n124
5 (p 25b-c)	118 n56	9b	36a-38a	209 n155	
7.7	152 n54		39a-b	210 n157,	<b>Wa-Yeze</b>
7.14	148 n37	10a		215 n180,	57a 284 n164
15.14	398 n335			217 n190	57b-58b 284 n164,
19.1	279 n134	10b, 11a	40a	217 n190	291 n204
22.2	233 n255		40b	219 n207,	58b 291 n218
23.9 (p 44c)	921 n51	11a-13a		221 n217	59a 291 n218,
25.18	244 n309,		41a-b	222 n218	294 n220,
	244 n312		42a	224 n219	295 n229
25.25	254 n24		42b	224 n223,	59b 295 n229
25.32	259 n42			244 n315	(end) 298 n233
26. (p 2, 36c)	244 n309	13b	43a	244 n315,	
27.27	233 n255			263 n71	<b>Wa-Yishlah</b>
28.12	279 n134		43b	225 n227,	60b-61b 295 n229,
28.20	282 n156	<b>Noah</b>		225 n228,	298 n243
29.15	282 n157	14a-b		263 n71	62b 305 n263
29.17	291 n205		43b-44a	227 n229,	63a-b 309 n284
32.4	298 n233			228 n232	63b-69a 311 n289
32.25-33	301 n248,	15a-16a	44b	228 n232,	69a-b 318 n300,
	206 n273			228 n234,	318 n302,
32.29	306 n273			248 n317	319 n307
41.46	398 n335	16b	45a-b	228 n234,	70a 324 n320
45.28	393 n307	17a		228 n236	70b-79b 315 n292
47.31	396 n325		46a	231 n242	
		17b	46b	228 n235,	<b>Wa-Yesheb</b>
<b>Exodus</b>		18a		232 n245,	80a-90b 349 n98
1.1	263 n69			235 n256	80b 334 n22
1.8	422 n429		47a	235 n256	81a 334 n41,
1.10	470 n12				334 n44
3.5	511 n122	18a-19a	<b>Hayye Sarah</b>		81b-82a 336 n49
16.14	574 n114	20a	24a	236 n266	82b-84a 342 n59
19.2	618 n250	20b-21a	47a-48b	236 n268,	84a-85a 343 n64,
34.35	636 n310			239 n278,	343 n66
				242 n303	85b 342 n59,
<b>Leviticus</b>		23a		253 n4,	343 n66
1.1	511 n122	23b-26b	49a	291 n204	86a 342 n59
1.3	456 n15				



<b>Wa-Yesheb</b> ( <i>cont.</i> )		<b>Wa-Yehi</b>		<b>Bo</b>		
86b-89a	355 n111, 358 n126, 359 n134	112a-113a	414 n405, 415 n416	114b	534 n198	372 n200, 378 n234,
				142b	529 n185	394 n310,
89a-b	348 n95, 361 n139, 399 n340	113b-114a	415 n422	143b	529 n177	401 n351,
		114b-117b	417 n424, 422 n429	144b-145a	540 n226	401 n358, 405 n366,
91a-b	361 n145, 362 n151	<b>Shemot</b>		<b>Joshua</b>		410 n387,
92a-93a	322 n316	112b	466 n5	157a-b	421 n426	410 n392, 410 n393,
		118a	466 n3	<b>52. YELAMMEDENU*</b>		453 n3,
		118b-119b	417 n424		2 n6,	460 n32,
<b>Mikkez</b>		120a-125b	419 n425		11 n41,	501 n113,
94a-b	364 n163, 364 n166	121a-b	421 n426		15 n61,	526 n170,
95a-b	364 n166, 366 n168, 415 n415	122a-b	466 n3		16 n63,	526 n173,
		124a-b	470 n12		26 n102,	543 n235,
95b-97a	367 n178, 367 n182	125a-b	466 n5		52 n12,	548 n10,
		125b-127a	421 n426, 468 n6		54 n15,	557 n37,
97a-99a	370 n186, 370 n191, 370 n194, 371 n197	127b	470 n16		57 n20,	564 n60,
		128a-130b	421 n426, 471 n21, 472 n25, 475 n36, 476 n42, 479 n48		68 n45,	565 n63,
99a-101a	372 n202, 375 n204, 375 n209	131a-b	421 n426, 479 n48,		78 n81,	574 n105,
			480 n54, 481 n57, 484 n65		79 n84,	574 n113,
101b-102a	375 n218, 375 n221, 376 n226		484 n65,		108 n26,	577 n128,
102b-103a	376 n226, 378 n230, 378 n234	132a-b	487 n69,		109 n28,	577 n132,
103b-104a	378 n234, 381 n241, 381 n249	133a	487 n69, 488 n72		145 n26,	595 n183,
		133b	488 n74, 488 n76, 491 n80, 691 n450		165 n88,	595 n184,
104b	381 n249, 381 n252		421 n426, 491 n80		168 n2,	602 n203,
105a	381 n252, 383 n256, 384 n262	134a-136b	421 n426, 491 n80		180 n40,	605 n214,
(end)	387 n266	135b-136a	850 n44		180 n45,	612 n240,
		137a-b	421 n426, 548 n11		188 n57,	612 n243,
			491 n80		197 n93,	626 n279,
<b>Wa-Yiggash</b>		138a	491 n80		197 n102,	635 n304,
(beg.)	387 n266	138b-140a	497 n96, 499 n104		199 n107,	639 n316,
107a-108a	390 n285		421 n426, 496 n95, 497 n96		199 n110,	644 n330,
108b-109a	390 n285, 390 n291	141a	421 n426, 496 n95, 497 n96		207 n151,	645 n337,
109b-110a	390 n291, 393 n293, 393 n298, 393 n307		497 n97, 517 n146		214 n170,	650 n353,
		141b	497 n97, 517 n146		215 n179,	664 n383,
			497 n97		215 n188,	673 n403,
		142a-143b	497 n97		219 n204,	676 n415,
110b	393 n307, 396 n314, 396 n317	143a	496 n88		224 n224,	678 n419,
		145b-146a	552 n12, 553 n23		238 n272,	691 n451,
111a	396 n317		553 n25		239 n275,	693 n456,
111b	398 n330, 398 n335	146b	580 n140, 583 n144		242 n307,	693 n466,
		147a	580 n140, 583 n144		248 n318,	701 n488,
					254 n18,	703 n498,
					256 n31,	705 n503,
					274 n121,	706 n507,
					276 n125,	709 n518,
					279 n134,	711 n522,
					288 n168,	713 n532,
					289 n201,	715 n540,
					295 n228,	719 n561,
					301 n248,	721 n568,
					305 n266,	724 n574,
					322 n316,	726 n582,
					328 n3,	728 n589,
					329 n7,	730 n593,
					367 n174,	731 n600,
					370 n196,	733 n602,



YELAMMEDENU ( <i>cont.</i> )		908 n104,	58.174	870 n81,	231 n242,
733 n609,		909 n107,		871 n88 <sup>1</sup>	232 n245,
735 n617,		915 n21,	58.175	873 n97,	233 n253,
737 n622,		915 n23,		874 n104,	233 n255,
742 n636,		920 n50,		874 n105 <sup>2</sup>	236 n259,
742 n637,		922 n59,	59.176	876 n108	238 n271,
743 n641,		936 n112,	59.180	885 n140	241 n292,
744 n644,		942 n140,	59.180-181	883 n134	242 n301,
746 n647,		946 n2,	66.205-206	1104 n103	244 n309,
750 n663,		949 n13,	66.206	1108 n113	249 n318,
752 n670,		988 n35,	66.206-207	1108 n116	254 n24,
753 n677,		989 n41,	67.207-212	1112 n2	256 n35,
756 n694,		998 n23,	71-72	175 n26	258 n37,
756 n706,		1005 n58,	72.220-221	1116 n8	259 n45,
761 n722,		1012 n77,	79.236	1146 n88	257 n74,
762 n727,		1030 n20,	81.241-244	1157 n115	274 n118,
769 n748,		1033 n32,	84.251-253	970 n69	280 n144,
769 n751,		1042 n29,	89.237	1161 n124	289 n189,
772 n761,		1052 n71,	91	356 n118	301 n251,
773 n765,		1087 n52,			317 n298,
774 n770,		1099 n84,	54. ZERUBBABEL		324 n322,
777 n778,		1101 n93,		1120 n25	329 n3,
777 n779,		1106 n105			343 n67,
777 n780,			55. MIDRASHIM*		347 n87,
777 n781,	53. YERAHMEEL*		Lost and Unknown		358 n125,
777 n782,	23.1-4	132 n63			361 n136,
777 n783,	23.5-6	118 n54,		2 n3,	367 n176,
777 n784,		132 n64		2 n6,	375 n211,
779 n785,	24.7	117 n53		10 n33,	375 n221,
779 n787,	24.10-12	139 n14		14 n53,	381 n239,
784 n801,	25	137 n10		26 n103,	381 n252,
789 n823,	27.7	169 n6		27 n112,	382 n254,
793 n840,	28-29	161 n76		30 n119,	384 n265,
793 n841,	29.2	165 n88		39 n142,	390 n281,
793 n842,	32	163 n87		50 n7,	409 n382,
793 n844,	35.1	180 n40		54 n15,	409 n383,
794 n845,	35.5	206 n137		60 n21,	410 n388,
794 n846,	36	315 n292		61 n25,	410 n396,
794 n847,	37	322 n317		63 n34,	414 n413,
801 n870,	42.8	476 n40		73 n64,	422 n429,
805 n881,	45	491 n80		152 n53,	435 n6,
806 n891,	45.2	490 n77		158 n72,	455 n9,
830 n946,	46.6-9	491 n80		180 n42,	456 n14,
838 n962,	48.128	562 n54		188 n57,	458 n21,
842 n3,	50.4	417 n424		196 n86,	458 n25,
844 n11,	53.149	687 n443		199 n110,	458 n27,
844 n14,	53.152-153	689 n447		203 n126,	459 n28,
848 n33,	53.155-156	688 n445		206 n134,	470 n12,
861 n23,	54.159	561 n53		206 n138,	499 n107,
873 n94,	57.165-173	856 n1,		210 n157,	505 n117,
873 n97,		857 n6,		211 n132,	511 n126,
874 n103,		859 n17,		215 n188,	534 n194,
891 n20,		860 n19		222 n218,	536 n206,
897 n43,	58.2	869 n70		225 n228,	538 n215,
908 n100,	58.172	871 n86		228 n235,	548 n2,

1. In the notes the reference is misprinted as 58.184.

2. In this note the reference is misprinted as 68, 175, and 48, 175.



MIDRASHIM ( <i>cont.</i> )			Genesis	Deuteronomy
553 n23,	901 n51,		10 n30,	25.19
558 n40,	902 n64,	1.1	16 n64	(Ki Teze, end) 902 n61
564 n58,	903 n73,		3 n6	
564 n60,	909 n107,	1.31	511 n128	<b>4. BA'AL HA-TURIM</b>
574 n109,	912 n11,	2.4	69 n50	<b>Genesis</b>
580 n138,	914 n15,	2.9	63 n34	23.2 236 n259
582 n144,	918 n42,	2.19	162 n79	32.16 305 n270
592 n175,	918 n44,	3.21	200 n114	42.6 375 n206
599 n196,	921 n51,	11.32	196 n86	
602 n203,	924 n66,	14.5	210 n157	<b>Numbers</b>
608 n221,	926 n77,	18.21	328 n1	1.46 681 n426
612 n243,	929 n81,	26.15	262 n62	22.1 760 n719
615 n247,	930 n84,	26.18	319 n310	
619 n257,	930 n91,	35.19	315 n292	<b>5. BEKOR SHOR</b>
625 n275,	931 n93,	36.6	331 n11,	<b>Genesis</b>
625 n276,	941 n131,	37.3	334 n33	45.16 390 n285
635 n304,	947 n10,		15 n61	
637 n313,	949 n16,	38.12	361 n143	<b>6. DA'AT ZEKENIM</b>
639 n317,	977 n93,	40.1, 21	349 n97,	<b>Tosafot on the Pentateuch</b>
648 n344,	984 n9,	41.45	351 n101	<b>Genesis</b>
661 n381,	997 n13,		390 n288	1.1 5 n10
677 n415,	1022 n114,	45.22	409 n383	3.21 30 n123,
678 n420,	1027 n4,	47.28		80 n93,
680 n422,	1032 n27,		<b>Exodus</b>	162 n79
687 n440,	1043 n36,		592 n175	5.29 134 n5,
691 n452,	1052 n70,	3.12	393 n305	135 n6
693 n461,	1062 n118,	12.37	414 n413	7.7 152 n54
696 n472,	1066 n5,	15.12	582 n144	18.1 203 n124
707 n509,	1071 n13,	16.9	1152 n108	18.8 206 n140,
709 n513,	1072 n17,	17.9	232 n246,	207 n144
709 n515,	1077 n29,	19.13	929 n82	22.23 761 n722
728 n589,	1078 n30,		23 n97,	23.1 236 n258
731 n600,	1081 n39,	20.8	85 n103	24.5 242 n301
747 n647,	1120 n25,		904 n77	25.25 254 n25
752 n667,	1137 n35,	22.7	628 n284	25.27 259 n48
767 n738,	1144 n76,	22.23	845 n21	25.29-32 162 n79,
777 n783,	1146 n89,	23.20	652 n357	259 n38
781 n791,	1169 n159,	28.17	1045 n46	25.33 259 n51
781 n795,	1177 n181	32.8	661 n381	26.8 262 n56
798 n858,		40.17		27.1 270 n101
810 n895,	<b>H. Medieval Bible</b>		<b>Leviticus</b>	27.15 162 n79
824 n921,	<b>Commentators<sup>1</sup></b>		693 n461	27.30 270 n99
830 n947,	<b>I. ABRAVANEL</b>	9.24	284 n167	28.22 280 n144,
832 n948,	<b>Isaiah</b>	20.21		301 n251
842 n2,	45 1120-1121 n29		<b>Numbers</b>	30.29-30 406 n379
846 n22,			10 n33	31.52 295 n229
847 n28,	<b>2. ALSHEKH</b>	10.35	693 n460	31.52 (Wa-Yeze end) 767 n744
853 n56,	<b>2 Samuel</b>	11.1	709 n515	32.33 305 n259
857 n5,	12 931 n93	13.7	711 n524	34.1 349 n97
861 n27,	13 918 n44	13.22	709 n518	35.8 318 n301
883 n126,		13.23		37.2 337 n51
884 n134,	<b>3. BAHYA</b>	21.34		37.31 343 n64
894 n34,	<b>Introduction</b>	(Hukat end)	152 n54	38.22-23 337 n52
896 n40,	970 n69	32.38	799 n866	

1. In this section all passages are cited.



DA'AT ZEKENIM	(cont.)	3.21	30 n123,	37.31	343 n64	24.6	599 n195
40.1	361 n143		80 n93,	38.15	346 n86	24.10	558 n40
40.21	361 n143		162 n79	38.22-23	337 n52	27.20	628 n284
41.45	349 n97,	3.22	69 n50	40.1, 21	361 n143	30.21	638 n315
	370 n187	4.3, 4	105 n12	41.45	349 n97,	32.1 (42d, 43a)	622 n264
45.4	390 n281	4.5	106 n19		370 n187	32.4	882-883
45.22	390 n288	4.26	118 n54	42.27 (20b			n126
45.27	393 n296	5.29	134 n4,	Mikkez)	376 n221	33.7	602 n204
46.5	393 n309		135 n6	44.18	387 n276	34b (Yitro)	601 n197
47.8-9	396 n328	6.2	137 n10,	44.20	390 n280	35.22	655 n366
47.22	399 n340		139 n14	45.4	390 n281		
47.30	401 n353	7.5	14 n53	45.22	390 n288		Leviticus
48.1	401 n344,	8.19	152 n53	45.26	393 n293	9.2	661 n381
	405 n360,	9.21	155 n58	45.27	393 n296	24.11	691 n451
	409 n383	15.10 (6b)	200 n114	46.5	393 n309		
48.2	405 n362	18.1	203 n124	47.8-9	396 n328		Numbers
49.2	410 n395	19.8 (7b)	215 n188	47.22	399 n340	7.28	681 n424
50.12	415 n417	19.3 (7c)	219 n203	47.30	401 n353	11.26	698 n484
		23.1 (8a)	232 n248,	48.1	405 n360,	12.3	701 n490
			236 n258		409 n383	13.2, 28	709 n513
1.10	Exodus 295 n229	23.2	236 n259	48.2	405 n362	14.7	618 n249
1.13	468 n6,	24.33 (9a Hayye		48.22	316 n292	17.23	731 n600
	474 n32	Sarah)	238 n272,	49.2	410 n395	21.8	748 n656
3.2	650 n351		242 n301	49.33	415 n422	21.17-20	750 n664
4.13	514 n134	24.1 (9a)	238 n272	50.12	415 n417	21.34 (Hukkat,	
8.12	529 n185	24.10 (9c)	241 n285			end)	752 n668
14.16	262 n53	25.25	254 n25,	Exodus		22.5	761 n722
14.21	555 n34		255 n28	1.10	295 n229,	23.28	1027 n4
17.18	580 n138	25.27	253 n7		761 n722	26.59	474 n33
19.17	602 n202	25.29-32	162 n79,	1.13	468 n6,	32.38	799 n864
22.23	628 n284		259 n41		474 n32		
30.21	638 n315	25.33	259 n51	3.2	650 n351		Deuteronomy
		26.8	262 n56	4.4	543 n234	1.44	718 n556
		26.25	259 n46	4.13	514 n134	2.20	138 n13
24.11	Leviticus 691 n451	27.1 (10b		6.1	263 n69	3.25	810 n897
		Toledot)	233 n255	7.14	42 n190	22.5	871 n86
		27.15	162 n79	8.12	529 n185	25.18	552 n15
11.26	Numbers 698 n484	27.30	270 n99	12.3	536 n206	31.26 (Wa-Yelek,	
21.34		27.42	274 n118	13.17	548 n9,	end), 75a	861 n25
(Hukkat, end)	752 n668	28.13	137 n10		687 n439	32.1	26 n102,
26.59	474 n33	28.22	280 n144,	13.19	430 n442		615 n245,
			301 n251	14.10	553 n21,		831 n947
	Deuteronomy	30.29-30	406 n379		553 n28,	32.5	159 n73
1.44	718 n556	31.4	317 n298		558 n41	33.24	393 n293
32.12	399 n340	31.52 (Wa-Yeze,		14.16	262 n53,	34.5	832 n948
34.5	832 n948	end)	767 n744		555 n32,	(end)	838 n962
		31.52	295 n229		558 n42		
7. HADAR ZEKENIM		31.53	294 n227	14.21	555 n34		
Tosafot on the Pentateuch		32.14	305 n269	14.28	562 n54	8. HIZKUNI	
Genesis		32.19	306 n273	15.8	14 n53	Genesis	
1.1	5 n10	32.33	305 n259	15.10	562 n53	3.16	78 n81
1.4	14 n52	34.1	349 n97	17.16 <sup>1</sup>	580 n138	3.21	80 n93
1.9	14 n50	35.8	318 n301	19.17	602 n202		
1.16	27 n112	35.22	319 n312	19.19	11 n39	9. IBN EZRA	
1.27	52 n12	37.2	336 n51	21.11 (37a		Genesis	
3.20	70 n57	37.15	334 n29	Mishpatim)	196 n82	35.31	590 n170

1. In the notes the reference is misprinted as 17, 18.



22.28	Numbers	22.23	767 n743	3.3	949 n16	MINHAT YEHUDAH, see DA'AT ZEKENIM
	768 n745	22.24	767 n744	6.19	1062 n118	
1.2	Micah	24.3 (Balak, end)	422 n429	14.25	977 n91	15. NAHMANIDES Genesis
		25.6	781 n791	15.2	986 n18	
		25.13	784 n804	17.4	997 n6	
		32.14 (Mattot, end)	806 n889	18.30	902 n64	
4.8		34.21 (Mass'e)	698 n484	18.37	998 n18	34.13 315 n292
1.1	Zephaniah			2 Kings		36.6 316 n292
10. IMRE NO'AM	Genesis	Deuteronomy		2.1	131 n61	Numbers
		25.18	552 n15	2.24	1027 n4	
3.20		II. KARA, JOSEPH Joshua		4.1	1027 n8	16. PA'ANEAH RAZA Genesis
3.22				22.8, 11	1061 n115,	
4.3-4					1061 n116	1.1 5 n10
25.3				25.4	1066 n5	3.24 80 n94
25.26		22.57	1032 n27	25.27	1108 n116	5.29 135 n6
29.15		1 Kings				8.19 152 n53
32.25		10.1	244 n311	Isaiah		24.64 233 n255
38.22-23				6.6	1052 n70	25.22 254 n17
41.16		12. KIMHI, DAVID Genesis		27.1	31 n127	25.25 254 n24
46.34				Jeremiah		27.2 284 n167
47.8		9.12	153 n55	1.1	1070 n10	31.52 (Wa-Yeze, end) 767 n744
47.22		49.23	411 n400	20.14-15	1070 n11	32.33 305 n259
		Joshua		39.4	1066 n5	34.65 242 n301
				Ezekiel		35.8 318 n301
		8.3	847 n28	1.3	1101 n93	41.10
		24.26	857 n5	12.13	1066 n5	41.45 370 n187
		24.30	853 n56			45.27 393 n296
1.13	Exodus	Judges		Micah		47.22 399 n340
1.15						48.1 409 n383
6.1		5.23	870 n73	4.8	319 n311	49.2 681 n426
7.14		11.1	876 n106	5.4	100 n142	
11.6 (Bo, end)		11.39	877 n109	Zephaniah		Exodus
14.16		17.2	882 n125			
15.10		20.5	884 n135	1.1	1071 n13	6.1 263 n69
21.1 (Mishpatim, end)		21.19	884 n135	Malachi		13.18 538 n213
28.12		1 Samuel				13.21 618 n254
38.32				3.23	999 n32	14.7 561 n43
		3.20	896 n40	1 Chronicles		18.13 588 n160
		4.21	894 n33			32.4 622 n271
		6.12	894 n36	20.5	943 n146	(end) 628 n284
		15.12	997 n13	2 Chronicles		Leviticus
		17.40	917 n38			
		17.44	918 n41	20.11	747 n647	11 (end) 43 n190
		17.49	918 n42	35.3	1062 n118	12.2 41 n177
		18.25	904 n77			24.11 691 n451
		22.18	904 n78	13. KIMHI, JOSEPH 1 Kings		Numbers
		2 Samuel		10.1	1073 n21	1.4-14 681 n424
						1.7 70 n51
		5.6	921 n51	14. MASNUT Job		11.26 698 n484
		8.13	927 n77			11.33 700 n486
		12.24	946 n3			13.17 706 n507
		21.10	941 n131	1.3	453 n5	13.2 709 n513
		1 Kings		2.10	459 n28	13.28 709 n513
				3.1	463 n39	16.1 720 n563
		2.8	948 n11	29.13	455 n11	32.14 (Mattot, end) 806 n889



<b>Deuteronomy</b>		<b>Jeremiah</b>		3.6	73 n64	56c	435 n6
3.24	805 n883	39.4	1066 n5	5a	936 n112	(Gen. 45.16)	390 n285
32.44 (Haazinu, end)	845 n19	44.14	1083 n42	7a	78 n81	(Gen. 45.19)	390 n290
				8d	861 n27	(Gen. 49.21)	411 n398
		<b>Ezekiel</b>		9a	132 n64		
<b>17. RASHI</b>		12.13	1066 n5	9b	134 n4	<b>Wa-Yehi</b>	
<b>Genesis</b>						59a-d	846 n22
1.27	49 n3	<b>Micah</b>		<b>Noah</b>	151 n49	59c	406 n378
4.4	104 n10	1.15	1134 n14	10d		60a	410 n385
11.6	189 n62	4.8	319 n311			62a (top)	410 n388
19.11	276 n124			<b>Wa-Yera</b>		63a, 63c	410 n396,
28.18	280 n141	<b>Job</b>		18b	206 n137		410 n397,
29.34	288 n174	1.1	456 n14	22a <sup>1</sup>	188 n57		411 n399
30.11	288 n183	1.3	453 n5	22b	767 n738	104a	414 n413
31.42	294 n227	39.26	32 n134			(end)	430 n438
35.8	318 n300			<b>Hayye Sarah</b>			
36.43	324 n322	<b>Daniel</b>		24a	236 n266	<b>Shemot</b>	
37.35	343 n71	6.29	1121 n30			66d, 67a	502 n115
40.4	361 n145	<b>Ps.-RASHI</b>		<b>Toledot</b>			
		<b>1 Chronicles</b>		27c	224 n223	<b>Bo</b>	
<b>Numbers</b>		20.5	943 n146	28a	162 n79	71b	536 n203
1.1	680 n422	<b>2 Chronicles</b>				<b>Wa-Era</b>	
1.49	682 n427	20.11	747 n647	<b>Wa-Yeze</b>		69d	529 n185,
11.1	693 n459			27d	871 n88		533 n187
16.11	730 n596	<b>18. RECANATI</b>		31a	279 n134	(end)	526 n170,
21.4	748 n651	<b>Genesis</b>		33b	958 n34		526 n173,
22.23	767 n743	2	61 n27	34a	288 n177,		534 n194
		3.6	102 n3		289 n189	<b>Beshallah</b>	
<b>Joshua</b>		3.13	102 n3	35d	288 n173	74b	548 n2
24.26	857 n5	3.24	23 n97,	36b	824 n921	77a (Exodus	
24.30	853 n56		69 n50,	42c	294 n223	17.16) <sup>2</sup>	580 n138
			85 n103,	<b>Wa-Yishlah</b>			
<b>Judges</b>			159 n75	45a	322 n317	<b>Tezawweh</b>	
3.10	862 n29	6.9	145 n28	46b	280 n144,	84	958 n36
17.2	882 n125	25.6 (Hayye, end)	244 n313		316 n292		
<b>1 Samuel</b>				<b>Wa-Yesheb</b>		<b>Zaw</b>	
3.20	896 n40	<b>Exodus</b>		48a	334 n37	95c	602 n203
20.30	902 n55	3.1	502 n114	<b>Mikkez</b>		<b>Emor</b>	
		3.2	505 n117	51b-c	367 n176	104c	592 n175
<b>2 Samuel</b>		20.17	635 n308	53a	375 n211	(end)	691 n451
5.6	921 n51	33.6 (Ki-Tissa)	602 n203	53b (Gen. 43.16)	95 n129	<b>Bamidbar</b>	
5.24	922 n54			53c	381 n239,	110a-b	687 n443
8.13	927 n77	<b>Leviticus</b>			381 n240		
		18.6	284 n167	53b	381 n252	<b>Beha'aloteka</b>	
<b>1 Kings</b>		23.24	54 n15	53d	383 n256	116b	694 n468
18.30	902 n64	<b>Deuteronomy</b>		54a	384 n265		
		31.17 (Wa-Yelek)		<b>Wa-Yiggash</b>		<b>Hukkat</b>	
<b>2 Kings</b>			508 n118	54d	381 n253,	(end)	750 n664
25.4	1066 n5	<b>19. SABBA</b>			390 n281	<b>Balak</b>	
<b>Isaiah</b>		<b>Bereshit</b>		55c	396 n325		
30.6	39 n144	2.19	62 n30	56b	393 n305	127c	784 n800

1. In the notes it is misprinted as 32a.

2. In the notes it is misprinted as 17.18.



<b>Pinhas</b>		<b>Wa-Yesheb</b>		<b>Terumah</b>		<b>Mattot</b>	
128 (end)	781 n795	18d	347 n87	36b	640 n321, 649 n346	91d	1071 n13
<b>Wa-Ethanan</b>		21	200 n110	36c	640 n321	<b>Debarim</b>	
134a	958 n36	22a	361 n136	37b	648 n344	(beg.), 98c	630 n290
<b>Ki Tabo</b>		<b>Wa-Yishlah</b>		(end)	81 n96	100b	453 n3
152a	824 n921	16a	305 n262, 349 n96	<b>Zakor</b>		<b>Ekeb</b>	
152c	294 n223	16c	298 n240	37c	580 n138	104b	903 n72
<b>Haazinu</b>		<b>Mikkez</b>		<b>Ki Tissa</b>		<b>Reeh</b>	
162b	1178 n188	Genesis 41.10	422 n429	Exodus 32.4	882-883 n126	107c	159 n75
<b>Berakah</b>		<b>Wa-Yiggash</b>		39c	60 n21	<b>Nizzabim</b>	
165b	824 n912	21a	263 n69, 599 n196	40b	628 n282, 628 n285	114a	984 n9
<b>20. SHU'AIB</b>		<b>Genesis 45.19</b>		<b>Pekude</b>		<b>Haazinu</b>	
<b>Bereshit</b>		45.27	390 n290	41c	640 n321	119a	159 n75
3a	159 n75	47.8-9	393 n296	(end)	661 n381	<b>Kippurim</b>	
5d	109 n30	47.22	396 n328	<b>Wa-Yikra</b>		121a	930 n91, 931 n92
(end)	850 n40	47.28	399 n340	44b	612 n241	<b>Jonah</b>	
<b>Noah</b>		48.1	396 n329 409 n383	<b>Zaw</b>		122a	1033 n32, 1035 n35
4b	145 n29	<b>Wa-Yehi</b>		47c	536 n206	<b>Shemini Azeret</b>	
4d	134 n1	22d	236 n258, 409 n382	<b>1 Pesah</b>		126b	256 n35
5a	140 n17, 146 n33, 146 n34	24a	349 n96	51c	592 n175	<b>21. SIFTE KOHEN</b>	
5b	145 n25, 146 n33, 155 n60	<b>Shemot</b>		<b>Tazri'a</b>		<b>Bereshit</b>	
5d	155 n58	25b	502 n114	61a	61 n26	(end)	132 n63
(end)	166 n91	<b>Bo</b>		<b>Ahare Mot</b>		<b>Noah</b>	
<b>Lek</b>		28c	929 n83	62d	608 n221	4d	132 n63
6b	188 n57	29c	538 n215	<b>Bamidbar</b>		<b>Hayye Sarah</b>	
7a	196 n82, 508 n118	<b>Wa-Era</b>		74a	387 n439 689 n447	Genesis 23.2	236 n259
<b>Wa-Yera</b>		Exodus 8.12	529 n185	<b>Beha'aloteka</b>		<b>Shemot</b>	
8c	211 n159	26d	585 n156	Numbers 11.26	698 n484	Exodus 2.25	499 n107
9a	224 n220	27a	523 n166	Numbers 11.28	698 n483	<b>Beshallah</b>	
9b	219 n203	<b>Beshallah</b>		<b>Shelah</b>		Exodus 14.2	552 n14
<b>Hayye Sarah</b>		Exodus 14.16	262 n53	(beg.)	930 n84	<b>22. SFORNO</b>	
10d	180 n44, 1061 n116	30a	557 n39, 564 n58	83d-84a	980 n97	<b>Genesis</b>	
11a	236 n258	30b	555 n34, 564 n58	<b>Korah</b>		9.25	155 n61
11b	233 n255	Exodus 17.11	583 n145	Numbers 16.2	720 n563	<b>23. SAMUEL LANIADO</b>	
11c	242 n301, 242 n304	<b>Yitro</b>		Numbers 17.23	731 n600	<b>1 Samuel</b>	
<b>Toledot</b>		32b	256 n35	<b>Hukkat</b>		17.50	918 n44
Genesis 25.25	254 n25	33b	604 n210, 1008 n63	88c	677 n417	<b>24. TOLDOT YIZHAK</b>	
12c	268 n93	<b>Shekalim</b>		<b>Balak</b>		<b>Genesis</b>	
12d	256 n31	34c	956 n26	90d	1027 n4	1.1	5 n10
13a	253 n5					1.16	27 n112
13b	258 n37						



<b>Genesis (cont.)</b>	6b	735 n611,	55a	62 n28,	82b	46 n194,
2.19 63 n34		1052 n81		113 n45,		191 n68,
21.23, Wa-Yera,	7b	1028 n10		912 n12		939 n128
25c 224 n220	8a	248 n317	55b	87 n106,	84a	214 n171
22.13 232 n246	8b	931 n93		90 n110,	85a	329 n3,
30.14 289 n189	9b	110 n34,		912 n12		1032 n27
41.45 370 n187		110 n36	56a	119 n56	85b	8 n22
	10a-11b	225 n226	56b	98 n137	86a	196 n84,
<b>Exodus</b>	10b	46 n194	57b	565 n60,		197 n98
28.17 652 n357	13a	1004 n46,		912 n12,	86b	196 n88,
38.21 656 n368		1052 n75	58a	138 n12,		256 n35
	13b	1104 n104		135 n6	88a	1027 n8
<b>Leviticus</b>	15b	8 n21	58b	135 n6,	90b	61 n27
9.24 693 n461	16	999 n30		143 n23	92a-b	46 n194
	17b	305 n264	59b	329 n3	93b	517 n146
<b>25. ZIYYONI</b>	17	720 n566	60a	295 n227	94a	931 n93
<b>Genesis</b>	18b	39 n142	60b-61a	103 n4	95b	771 n758
4.26 118 n56	19b	67 n40,	61b	565 n60	96	137 n10
11.4 (Noah, end)		370 n183	62a	145 n26	96b	769 n749
12.7 188 n59	23a	138 n10	62	140 n19	97a	431 n444
18.8 207 n144	24b	703 n497	63	151 n48	98a	58 n20
25.22 254 n14	25a	138 n10,	63b	628 n285,	98b	203 n124,
25.5 (Hayye,		625 n276		908 n104		977 n93
end) 244 n313	26a	625 n276	64b	1029 n12	99a	42 n187,
25.25 255 n27	28b	625 n276	65b	100 n142		830 n946
32.27 301 n249	31a	102 n3	66a	145 n26,	99b	978 n93
38.8 767 n744	31b	8 n19		505 n117,	100a	200 n111
	33b	242 n304		1052 n75	100b	244 n313
<b>Exodus</b>	34a	8 n19	67b	628 n284	101b	207 n150
3.2 505 n117	34b	67 n40	68a	148 n38,	102a	207 n143
3.14 511 n128	36a	70 n55		151 n49	102b	206 n137
13.19 (Beshallah,	36b	73 n69,	68b	148 n38	103	242 n295
beg.) 401 n345		80 n93,	69a	148 n38,	104a	207 n143
24.21 206 n140		109 n27,		149 n44	104b-105a	211 n159
23.20 (Mishpatim,		752 n673	71b	329 n3	105-106b	980 n94
end) 301 n248	37a	138 n10,	72a	46 n194	105b	210 n155
32.1 622 n271		140 n14	72b	127 n60,	108a	196 n83
32.4 883 n126	37b	90 n110,		143 n23,	112b	196 n91
		127 n60,		1013 n92	113b	86 n105
<b>Leviticus</b>		143 n23	73b	162 n79,	113b-114a	401 n345
18.21 159 n75	38a	8 n21,		162 n80	114b	842 n6
20.6 (Kedoshim,		70 n56,	74a	162 n80,	117a	191 n68,
end) 904 n77		135 n6		967 n60		538 n213
	39b-40a	110 n36	75b	166 n91	118a	90 n110
<b>Numbers</b>	40b	46 n194	76a	165 n88	120b	231 n242,
1.1 689 n447	41a	23 n97	77a-b	46 n194,		232 n245
1.52 (Bamidbar)	45b	8 n19		175 n26,	121a	57 n18,
21.29 759 n715	46a	15 n61		180 n40,		1032 n29,
	48b	608 n221		200 n114		1033 n32
<b>Deuteronomy</b>	49a	874 n105	78b	200 n114	122a	57 n18
5.6 626 n279,	52b	628 n285	79a	58 n20,	123b	60 n23,
635 n308	53a	853 n56		72 n60,		431 n444
31.27 (Wa-Yelek)	53b	57 n18		180 n45,	125a	22 n84,
805 n886	54b	100 n142,		214 n171		61 n25,
		102 n3,	81a	100 n142		62 n30,
<b>26. ZOHAR I</b>		106 n17,	81b	191 n66		237 n270,
2b-3a 5 n12		108 n20,	82a	191 n75,		779 n787
5a 615 n247,		110 n36,		931 n94	125b	431 n444
636 n312		115 n47				



# ZOHAR I

# ZOHAR II

126a	137 n10	168a-b	912 n12	217b	401 n345	43a	16 n64
127a	100 n142,	169b	57 n18,	218b	46 n194	44a	1028 n12
	236 n265		292 n218	222a	328 n3	45a	543 n240
128a	236 n265,	171b	305 n263	223a	39 n142,	45a-b	542 n230,
	237 n269	172a	305 n263		244 n313,		548 n7
128b-129a	237 n269,	173a	317 n295		284 n163	46a	46 n194,
	401 n345	175b	319 n312	223b	244 n313		430 n438
131b	619 n258	176a	319 n312,	225b	978 n93	46b	552 n15
132a	241 n288		893 n26	227a	401 n345	49a	328 n3
133a	242 n304	177a	322 n316	231	280 n141	51a-b	552 n16
133b	244 n313,	178b	46 n194	246b	329 n3	52b	558 n41
	242 n302	180a	328 n3,	248b	62 n28,	53a	557 n39
135a	219 n204,		401 n344		912 n12	54b	558 n41
	977 n93	180b	393 n294	250b	415 n423	55a	67 n42,
136b-137a	401 n345	182b	328 n3	294	414 n411		60 n24,
137b	253 n8,	183a	57 n18				127 n60
	253 n9,	184a	334 n29			57a	46 n194
	253 n13,	185a	334 n37	3	616 n248	58a	615 n247,
	254 n18	185b	334 n37,	4a	691 n449		619 n260,
138a	307 n282		343 n62	4b	301 n253		1000 n41
138b	253 n13	186a	346 n74	5a	585 n156	60a	565 n64
139a-b	259 n41	188a-b	324 n321,	8a	23 n97	61a	958 n36
140a	22 n81,		324 n322,	11a	57 n20	63a	574 n107
	22 n90,		346 n82	11b	57 n20,	65b	8 n17
	62 n28,	189	351 n104		476 n42,	66a	842 n5
	912 n12	189b	329 n3		610 n237	69b	585 n154
140b	262 n56	191	72 n60	12a	610 n237	70a	977 n93
142a	268 n79	191a	57 n20	12b	494 n86	78a	956 n25
142b	60 n24,	194a	364 n160	13b	494 n84	78b	592 n177
	162 n79	194b	329 n3,	16	393 n305	80a	110 n34,
143a	270 n101		366 n169	16b	466 n3		110 n36
144a	207 n143,	195b	534 n200	18b	8 n17	80b	127 n60
	270 n101	196	398 n335	19	474 n30	82a	612 n238
144b	57 n20,	196a	367 n174	19a	476 n40	82b <sup>1</sup>	676 n412
	271 n101	198b	375 n220	19b	422 n429,	84a	619 n258
146a	306 n273	200a	57 n18,		553 n21	84b	604 n210,
146b	242 n295		930 n89	21a	502 n114		619 n258
151b	932-933 n100	200b	375 n220,	22a	762 n727	90a	610 n236
153b	329 n3,		375 n221	23a	256 n35,	91b	594 n181,
	381 n251	202b	381 n244	26a	329 n3		608 n219
154a	381 n251	204a	329 n3	28	534 n200	92a	608 n221
155a	138 n11	205b	5 n12	28b	529 n178	94a	612 n238
157a	110 n36	206a	387 n273	29b	401 n345	96b	57 n19
158a	329 n3	206b	329 n3	30a	284 n163	101a	930 n84
160b	282 n157,	206b-207b	929 n80	32b	411 n400	107a	931 n93,
	1029 n12	207a	329 n3	33a	456 n18		922 n59
161a	291 n207	207b	405 n366		471 n21,	107b	933 n101
165b	57 n20	208a	329 n3	33b	553 n27	108a	922 n59,
166a	294 n223,	209a	915 n19,		453 n4,		948 n11
	298 n240		999 n25	34a	553 n27	108b	30 n118
166b	295 n229	209b	390 n284,	38a-b	534 n194	113b	626 n280
167a	294 n223		999 n25	39b	543 n237	125b	1096 n77
167b	294 n223,	216b	331 n10,	41b-42a	242 n300	127a	978 n93
	298 n239		393 n294,	41b	57 n20	146a	612 n238
168a	62 n28		401 n344		110 n36,	147b	189 n61
					306 n273		

1. In the notes it is misprinted as 51b.



148a	641 n322	9a-9b	8 n22,	124b	568 n82	212a	585 n156,
150a	80 n93		110 n36	147b	764 n730		761 n723
150b	15 n56,	10a	110 n36	148a	199 n109	213b	355 n111,
	80 n93	14a	329 n3	149a	538 n213,		367 n182
151a	10 n39	16b	97 n34		543 n238	214a	328 n3
151b	862 n28	19a	67 n40	157a	787 n814	217a	15 n61,
156a	466 n3	19b	870 n74	158a	705 n504		39 n142
157	11 n39	21b	870 n76-77	158b	709 n517	218a	553 n27
158b	8 n19	22a	46 n194,	159a	709 n517,	219b	50 n7
159a	958 n36		870 n77		711 n524	221a	137 n10
164b-165a	8 n22	22b	46 n194,	160b	709 n515	221b	10 n39
166a	460 n32		592 n177	161b	10-11 n39	222b	930 n84
170b	565 n60,	23a	46 n194	162a	711 n525	224a	608 n221
	1032 n27	23b	651 n354	164a	415 n423	231	456 n18,
171b	127 n60,	24a	933 n101	167b	23 n97		1029 n12
	978 n93	26a	329 n3	168a	189 n61	232b	930 n84
172a	8 n22	27b-28a	1022 n110	172a	1081 n39	233a-b	964 n53
173b	46 n194	32b	661 n380,	175b	929 n83	234b	57 n18
175a	1108 n111		965 n56	181a	756 n691	240a	127 n60
175b	46 n194	33a	661 n380	183a	742 n636,	240b	39 n142
181b	553 n27	34b	8 n18		743 n641	242b	329 n3
191a	594 n181,	44b	67 n42,	183b	748 n654	246a	628 n284
	622 n265		106 n17	184b	760 n720	248b	127 n60
191b	544 n245,	45a	301 n252	188a	759 n712	251b-252b	949 n11
	574 n103,	49a	720 n565	188b	409 n383	253a	975 n84
	574 n114,	52a	191 n76	189a	329 n3	253b	127 n60
	577 n129,	52b	46 n194	189b	760 n721	261b-262a	612 n242
	622 n265	53a	58 n20	190a	760 n721,	265b	1029 n13
192a-b	594 n181	55a	305 n259		864 n40,	272a	917 n37
196a	46 n194	56b	664 n386		912 n9	275a	27 n105
197a	999 n32,	57a	1100 n88	193a	46 n194	275b-276b	1144 n80
	1000 n39	57b	664 n386	193b	977 n93	277a	975 n84
198a	189 n61	64b	17 n70	194a	796 n854,	279	31 n127
198b	51 n9	70a	82 n98		796 n856	289b	580 n141
203	654 n360	76b	113 n45,	194b	977 n93,	299	200 n114
206a-b	917 n39		115 n47		796 n854,	304a	771 n757
211	40 n158	78b	931 n93,		796 n856	309a	977 n92
214b	967 n57		615 n247	196b-197a	759 n718	309b	965 n55
224a-b	1027 n4	83b	60 n24	198a	511 n122,		
226	656 n368	84a	939 n128		763 n728		
230b	328 n3,	84b	605 n216	198b	760 n720,		
	1032 n29,	86a	127 n60		924 n70		
	1032 n30	87a	105 n12	199b	1051 n64		
231a-b	108 n20,	88a	97 n135	200a	294 n221,		
	1032 n29	92b	608 n221		763 n730,		
235a	62 n28,	101b	553 n27		1053 n86,	1.14	934 n110
	912 n12	106a	57 n20		1102 n94	4.6	867 n65
240b	1092 n64	112b	771 n757,	200b	772 n760	97b	110 n36,
241a	661 n381		964 n53	205b	787 n814,		112 n37,
250-251a	398 n330	113a	294 n221,		787 n818		236 n264
254-263a	9 n22		771 n758	206a	676 n413	97c	236 n265
256a	97 n135	113b	262 n56	207	329 n6	99a	113 n45,
258a	329 n3	114a	1062 n119	207b	767 n743		137 n10,
270	558 n42	117a	102 n3	208a	137 n10,		138 n11
		118b	687 n440		964 n53		
		119a	57 n18,	209b	763 n728,		
			871 n88		768 n747		
			890 n18	210a	768 n747		
Zohar III						Ruth	
3a	701 n492					(beg.)	964 n53
3b	661 n381	124a				1.1	864 n37
						1.4	779 n787,
							864 n40
						1.14	934 n110
						4.6	867 n65
						97b	110 n36,
							112 n37,
							236 n264
						97c	236 n265
						99a	113 n45,
							137 n10,
							138 n11
						Shir ha-Shirim	
						(beg.)	1019 n98
						1.2	268 n94



Shir ha-Shirim ( <i>cont.</i> )	1.7	1027 n7	5. HASIDIM	3	419 n425,
(addition from	2.1	996 n2,	18		1092 n61
Sitre Otiyyot		1000 n39	23	824 n912	
1.15a)	84 n101	97b	31	88 n106	3.2b
(additions), I., 3a-b		98b	36	456 n18	3.3a, 3b
	112 n37	99a	46	58 n20	3.4b-5a
supplement, 4a, 68a			71	1101 n93	3.5b
	151 n49			254 n24,	3.6c-7b
a quotation from,		28. TIKKUNE ZOHAR		806 n889	3.7b-d
actually in the		(beg.)	78	1030 n20	3.8b-c
Yalkut Reubeni		17	80	207 n151	
	233 n255	20	85	242 n295	3.9b-10a
		47	91	956 n27	3.10a-11a
			122	884 n134	3.11d-12a
27. ZOHAR HADASH		48, 86a	123	632 n297	4
Bereshit		70	126	84 n101	
8a-b	110 n36,	(end)	183	1180 n193	
	112 n37		225	839 n966	
11b-12a	15 n61	I. Other Medieval	231, 232	548 n10	
Genesis, 1.9	14 n54	Writings	240-241	43 n190	
3.17b	46 n194		247	132 n64	8. KAD HA-KEMAH
4.19b	26 n102,	I. AZILUT	269	262 n53	68a
	27 n112	(beg.)	277	16 n63	78b
4.22a	84 n100		290	66 n37	93a
4.23a	27 n106,	2. EMUNOT WE-DEOT	294	242 n302	
	27 n107	3.92	294-295	244 n309	
24a	78 n81,		296	635 n309	9. KUZARI
	105 n12		341	259 n51	I., 89
24b	79 n89		383	414 n405	II., 14
25a	105 n11		394	505 n117	III., 73
(end)	139 n14,	3. ESHKOL (HADASSI)	397	1144 n68	
	983 n7	24b-c-d	399	575 n118	10. MA'ASEH BOOK
			400	17 n70	143.40a-40b
Noah			416	924 n68	145.42d-43c
(beg.)	69 n49	30a, nos. 82,	426	502 n114	157.47d
28b	149 n46,	338	438	681 n424	
	152 n53	36a, no. 82	446	259 n44,	161
29a	149 n46,	45a, nos. 117,		259 n51	163.49b
	151 n49,	118	454	71 n58	169.52c
	873 n96,		455	140 n14	180.54d
	874 n101	45b, no. 118	461	215 n188	194
29b	152 n51,	45b, no. 119	478	49 n6	199.67d
	197 n102	45b	479	406 n370	201
(end)	999 n27	92c, no. 242	480	288 n183,	230
Lek	430 n444,	132a, no. 358		406 n370	
	1009 n65	133a, no. 362			II. MAHZOR VITRY
Wa-Yeze (end)	280 n137	134a			3
Beshallah	568 n82	134d, nos. 362,			8
Terumah	143 n23	363			33
Ahare Mot (end)	930 n84	137a-b, no. 364			164
Balak, 66a	97 n134,				320-322
	100 n142,				331
	508 n118,				332
	985 n17				
Ki Teze	511 n122				
Ki Tabo (beg.)	1005 n52,				
	1019 n98				
		4. ESHKOL (ABRAHAM B.			
		ISAAC)			
Ruth		I. 17			
1.1 (beg.)	999 n33				



12. MENORATH HA-MAOR III., 1.5 602 n203	PIYYUT, see Hebrew Index	22. TOLA'AT YA'AKOB (end of Asher Yazar) 9 n22	12.44 655 n364 13.32 410 n383 15.34 1168 n145
13. MISHNEH TORAH Yesode ha-Torah	16. RAZIEL	23. YEZIRAH	Luke
2.7 16 n64, 97 n132	6b 301 n253 11a 608 n219 11b 14 n52 12a-13d 9 n22 18a-b 14 n52 19a-c 9 n22 20b 2 n4 27c-d 9 n22, 14 n52 38a, 61a 17 n65	82 n98 8 n21 15 n60, 172 n13	1.41 254 n13 3.38 121 n57 3.52 482 n64 10.19 306 n275 11.29 1035 n38 17.32 215 n180 18.12 629 n286 22.30 100 n142 24.5 520 n158
3.9 28 n112		Al Barceloni's Commentary on Yezirah	
Abodat Kokabim		57 228 n238 247 131 n61	
1.1 118 n54, 119 n56		J. New Testament	John
Abodah Zarah	17. RIMZE HAFTAROT		
1.3 172 n13	Yitro 1044 n43	Matthew	4.5, 12 307 n281 5.4 577 n135 5.17 85 n102 8.39-44 937 n114 8.44 72 n60 8.52 1032 n27 8.56 200 n112 9.6 1006 n60 10.34-35 715 n539 11.39 58 n20 11.51 228 n239 12.28 664 n385 12.31 21 n75 14.2 22 n85
Teshubah	1 Shebuot 3 n8		Acts
2.4 203 n122	Naso 41 n177	1.17 967 n57 1.21 706 n505 3.9 203 n122 3.16 7 n15 5.18 975 n80 6.34 511 n127 7.1 526 n172 7.4 864 n32 7.29 971 n76 8.22 629 n287 9.28 508 n118 10.15 215 n184 10.30 453 n6 11.24 215 n184 12.3-4 909 n107 12.5 608 n221 12.29 306 n275 12.39 1035 n38 14.25 1096 n76 15.5 1053 n88 16.14 1022 n114, 1071 n13 18.10 57 n20 19.17 2-3 n6 19.28 100 n142 21.16 1124 n36 22.31-32 629 n287 22.35 1078 n30 23.14 721 n567 24.38 145 n29 26.29 21 n79 26.53 514 n135 27.45 79 n89 27.46 1168 n145 33.15 212 n164	1.15 588 n164 5.19, 23 1146 n88 7.5 188 n54 7.7 200 n112 7.23 487 n69 8.20 482 n64 12.23 717 n552 13.36 939 n128
9.2 790 n836			Romans
Issure Biah	18. ROKEAH		
17.13 1039 n11	221 747 n648		4.3 199 n109 4.15 239 n275 5.14 57 n19
Bet ha-Behirah	Hasidut Zakuyyot Arum 172 n13		1 Corinthians
4.1 11 n39	19. SEMAG		
Kele ha-Mikdash	10 Positive Precept 585 n154		6.2 100 n142 4.19 1009 n71 9.5 274 n123 10.4 577 n129 13.12 612 n242 15.22 57 n19
5.10 1039 n11	29 Negative Precept 608 n221		2 Corinthians
9.9 651 n355	116 Negative Precept 585 n154		
Melakim	20. SHALSHELET HA- KABBALAH		
9.1 476 n37	13a 453 n3, 488 n72, 698 n484 16a 943 n144 19a 1042 n24 92b 155 n58 93b 132 n62 96 561 n43 97 1042 n28 99b 1042 n25 99b-100a, 101a 1083 n42 100a 1102 n94 101a 1087 n53 101b 1126 n54 102b 955 n18		
Sanhedrin		Mark	
2.7 588 n162		8.22 1006 n60 9.1 999 n32 9.7 612 n241 11.21 517 n144	3.7 635 n309 3.18 612 n242 11.4 94 n118 15.6 9 n22
14. MOREH NEBUKIM	21. SHIBBOLE HA-LEKET		
I., 1 50 n6 I., 21 632 n299 I., 66 501 n113 II., 5 28 n112 II., 8 27 n107 II., 10 84 n101 II., 29 51 n9 II., 30 69 n50 II., 34 and 48 329 n3 II., 39 132 n64, 141 n20 II., 42 768 n745 II., 46 1041 n23 II., 47 78 n72, 755 n687 III., 13 50 n8 III., 23 57 n20 III., 46 329 n3 III., 49 249 n318	7 612 n243		
15. OR ZARU'A			
I., 139, no. 321 678 n420			



Galatians	3.21	508 n118	5 Ezra	9.2	726 n585
	3.8	188 n57		13	102 n3
	3.17	616 n248		18	605 n213
	3.24	594 n181		24	1077 n30
	4.26	220 n211		Questions of Bartholomew	
1 Timothy			History of Joseph the Carpenter		63 n35
	2.15	68 n45		13	
	5.6-7	629 n287		22	57 n20
				31-32	53 n13
					131 n61
2 Timothy			Gospel of the Savior's Infancy	Slavonic Palaea	
	3.8	520 n161			103 n4
				52	109 n31
				Visio Pauli	
				4	58 n20
Hebrews			Gospel of Ps. Matthew	4-6	25 n100,
	1.6	63 n35			26 n105
	1.14	63 n35		14	57 n20,
	2.9	999 n32		18	430 n444
	6.3	1009 n71		20	609 n228
K. New Testament Pseudepigrapha	6.13	232 n243	Gospel of Nicodemus	22	122 n58
	7.1-3	197 n104		23	109 n30
	9.19-22	599 n195		27	21 n79
	11.3	48 n1		29	214 n170
	11.5	122 n58		49	940 n130
Acts of Andrew and Matthew	11.19	232 n243	Gospel of Thomas		214 n170,
	11.37	1058 n103,		6	458 n26,
		1083 n42			462 n34,
	12.23	481 n62		18	1058 n103,
	12.24-25	488 n70			1083 n42,
Acts of Barnabas			Liber Johannis Apocryphus	50	1102 n94
	9.8	197 n93			140 n19
	12.2	583 n145		L. Church Fathers and Medieval Christian Writers	
	15.4	99 n140			
	(end)	922 n53			
Acts of Matthew			Martyrdom of Bartholomew	Albertus Magnus	
					<i>Physics</i> , XIX
				1.731	14 n54
				Ambrosius	
					<i>De Cain</i>
Acts of Philip			Narrative of Zosimus	2.10	105 n12
Acts of Pilate			Nicephorus, Stichometry	<i>De Fide</i>	
	2	200 n113			(ed. Migne), III., 11.88,
					XVI., 607
					1000 n39
Acta Thomae			Passing of Mary	<i>De Viduis</i> , I	
				8.45	870 n73
				16.248	870 n73
Acts of Xanthippe			Passing of Maria, second version	Aphraates	
	30	46 n194			<i>Homilies</i>
				28	381 n238
				57	767 n743,
					845 n21
Descent of Christ			Protevangelium of James	58	1047 n55
	3	92 n113			
Evangel of Seth			5 Ezra		
	39	142 n21,			
		145 n24,			
		145 n25,			
		146 n29,			
Revelation		146 n31	History of Joseph the Carpenter		
	(beg.)	109 n30,			
		131 n61			
	1.8	511 n128			
	2.7	81 n96			
	2.14	779 n785			



<i>Homilies (cont.)</i>		<i>In Epistolam Joan.</i>		3.39	141 n20,	<i>Protrepticus</i>	
63	104 n10	<i>Ad Parthos</i>			151 n50,	(end)	50 n6
84-85	1105 n105	5.3	102 n3		212 n167		
110	517 n148			4.34	49 n3	<i>Stromata</i>	
122	697 n479	<i>Contra Faustum</i>		7.18-19	159 n74	1.5	197 n102
138	78 n77,	12, 71	543 n233	8.11-12	137 n10	1.15	256 n35,
	140 n19			8.11-15	121 n57		484 n67
162	833 n952	<i>Contra Adversarium Legis</i>		8.13	138 n12	1.20	1041 n20,
168	78 n72,	2.5	67 n40	8.15	140 n15,		1042 n25
	81 n97	<i>Quaestiones in Exodum</i>			146 n32	1.21	62 n30,
196	501 n109	69	62 n31	9.4-6	163 n83		140 n19,
215	456 n14			9.5	118 n54		481 n57,
234	146 n30	<i>Quaestiones ex</i>		11.4	50 n6		870 n73,
240	49 n3	<i>Novo Testamento</i>		16.19	50 n6		958 n36,
245	79 n84	III., 2282 (Migne's		17.7	50 n6		1035 n38,
272	892 n25	edition)		18.9	99 n140		1070 n10,
293	212 n167	102 n3		19.12	608 n221		1071 n14
310	153 n56	<i>Bar Hebraeus</i>				1.22	479 n46,
314	996 n3,	<i>Historia Dynastiarum</i>		<i>Recognitiones</i>			488 n75,
	997 n7	13	180 n40	1.27	8 n17		501 n109,
354	62 n30			1.29	756 n699		1125 n50
362	1042 n29	<i>Basilius</i>		1.30	146 n30,	1.23	484 n67,
363	924 n68	<i>Hexaemeron</i>			155 n60,		543 n233
400	233 n253	3	7 n15		158 n68,	1.26	158 n72
420	815 n902,	4	25 n98		163 n83,	2.1	153 n56
	824 n920	9.6	52 n12		166 n91	2.5	168 n4,
452	746 n646			1.31	180 n40		301 n253
461	977 n91	<i>Chronicon Paschale</i>		1.35	548 n8,	4.6	649 n346
471	1062 n123	1.299	1104 n104		571 n99	5.1, 10	121 n57
481	861 n22	92.396	1118 n20	1.45	84 n101,	6.11	197 n93
					92 n113	6.16	99 n140
					60 n21	6.17	57 n20,
					100 n142		610 n236
					166 n91	<i>Codex Nazareus</i>	
					632 n296	III., 72	150 n47
					608 n221		
					122 n58	<i>Comestor</i>	
					118 n54	<i>Genesis</i>	
					163 n83	41	180 n40
					172 n16		
					61 n26	<i>Commodianus</i>	
					166 n91	<i>Instructiones</i>	
					608 n221	3	74 n70,
					10 n33		121 n57
						<i>Constitutiones</i>	
						<i>Apostolicae</i>	
						2.23	1058 n111
						2.60	434 n4,
							1141 n60
						6.20	622 n271
						<i>Christian-Palestinian</i>	
						<i>Homilies</i>	
						<i>Anecdota Oxon.;</i>	
						<i>Semitic Series</i>	
						<i>I., Part IX</i>	
						56	140 n19



Cyprian	153E	777 n782	Isaiah	Amos		
<i>Epistola ad Donatum</i>	156D-157A	180 n40	36.1	1056 n94	1042 n28	
1.14	159	60 n21				
	166B	782 n797	Job	Obadiah		
<i>Epistolae</i>	166D	784 n801	42.16	462 n35	1027 n7	
62.3	173	242 n300				
	178C	479 n51	Ed. Lagarde	Hippolytus		
Cyril of Alexandria	181B	301 n251	80.22	150 n47	<i>Genesis</i>	
<i>Glaphyra</i>	191A-C	825 n924			1.3	20 n71
1.3	200D	517 n148	Eusebius	1.27	67 n42	
	202A	511 n126	<i>Praeparatio Evangelica</i>			
<i>De Trinitate</i>	205A-B, D	517 n149,	206	82 n98	<i>Deuteronomy</i>	
19		517 n151	410-11	484 n67	33.11	477 n44
	216B	750 n663	418d, 9.17	172 n20		
Ephraem	216D	561 n52	420b, 9.18	191 n78	Isaiah	
<i>Opera Omnia, I</i>	218	571 n99	430d-431, 9.25	456 n14	630-631	1053 n81
5, 2E	222D	602 n205	452	958 n36		
8B	223A	696 n472	484d	163 n87	Daniel	
8B, F	224A	622 n265	515c	62 n31	3.16	1099 n83
15A	225B	625 n275	517b	68 n48	4	99 n140
	254E	494 n83	689a	57 n20	4.32	1100 n90
	257	700 n485			641	1062 n128
15B-C	257E	698 n482	Isaiah			
19C	263	577 n129,	22.15	1051 n62		
23C		748 n653	39.1	1052 n71	Susannah	
23E	287A	577 n132			1.1	1070 n10,
26D	526C	1027 n7	Epiphanius			1083 n42
41	560	1052 n71	<i>Haereses</i>			
43E			1.1, 4	151 n48	<i>De Consummatione</i>	
47	<i>Opera Omnia II</i>		1.4, 4	60 n22	<i>Mundi</i>	
47E-F	189F	1105 n105	15 (ed. Migne, XII, 976)	1000 n39	18	410 n388
47F	313E	105 n12				
51J			26.5	102 n3	<i>De Anti-Christo</i>	
52C-D	<i>Genesis</i>		40.5	102 n3,	9	410 n388
54B	19.31	215 n188		105 n17		
56F			45	74 n70	<i>Haereses</i>	
57A-B	<i>Exodus</i>		55.3	996 n3	2.175	215 n184
59E	2.5	479 n48	55.6	197 n102	4.33	40 n157
61D	20.3-6	608 n217			5.21	102 n3
61E			<i>De Mensuris et Ponderibus</i>		8.7	48 n1
64B-C	<i>1 Samuel</i>		16	254 n25	9.25	45 n194
	1.1	888 n1				
65	2.22	893 n26	<i>Ancoratus</i>		<i>Philosophumena</i>	
76E	15.27	902 n64	97	824 n920	5.1	67 n42
77B	16.13	915 n23			5.2	60 n22,
77D	17.55	918 n44	Ps. Epiphanius			70 n51,
78B			<i>Hexaemeron</i>			92 n113
79D	<i>2 Samuel</i>		251	79 n83	5.3	67 n42
100, 17C	6.7	924 n68			5.4 (end)	915 n22
102	12.24-25	946 n2	<i>De Vitis Prophetarum</i>		5.21	32 n127
105E	<i>1 Kings</i>		(s.v. Elijah)	996 n3	5.22	70 n51
126A-B	14.25	977 n91			6.1	67 n42
127C	18.19	998 n15	Isaiah		6.22	74 n70
135			1042 n25		7.1	74 n70
143D	<i>2 Kings</i>				7.16, 20	52 n12
148B	3.26-27	991 n54	Jeremiah		8.16	60 n22
149E	6.1	989 n43		1083 n42	10.26	158 n72
150C						
153C						



Ps.-Hippolytus	11.28	180 n40	22.12	1062 n128	7.16	902 n60
<i>Sermo in Sancta</i>	11.29	178 n38	22.20	1077 n29	12.13	977 n93
<i>Theophania</i>	12.17	191 n77				
2	158 n67	13.3		<i>Ezekiel</i>	<i>Epistola ad Damasum</i>	
2-3	142 n21,	14.2-7	1.1	1061 n116	36 (ed. Migne, I.,	
	149 n44,	14.18	18.4	850 n41	458)	784 n806
	152 n54		23.12	118 n54	39.3	259 n41
4	152 n54	19.14	27.18	106 n19	72 (22, 674)	946 n1
705	1048 n61,	19.31	28.11	1105 n105	125	112 n37,
	1058 n103	21.9				112 n42,
		22.2		<i>Hosea</i>		113 n44
		22.21	1.1	1041 n20	I., n369	1057 n102
<i>Hermas Pastor</i>		23.2	1.3	1042 n23	I., 375	1043 n35
2.3	698 n482	23.16	2.10	118 n54		
V., 6.2	57 n20	24.2	3.2	874 n100	<i>Epistola ad Evagrium</i>	
		24.63	4.14	986 n18	73	197 n102
<i>Irenaeus</i>		25.1	7.4-7	984 n9		
<i>Adversus Haereses</i>		27.16	10.2	1044 n45	<i>Adversus Helvidium</i>	
I., 30	184 n49	33.16			7	1124 n41
I., 30.7	61 n24,	35.21		<i>Amos</i>	<i>Adversus Jovinianum</i>	
	102 n3	36.10	1.3	1042 n31	1.16	103 n4
2.5	52 n12	36.24	2.1	992 n56		
2.58	49 n3	37.36				
2.66	131 n61	41.45				
III., 5.3	156 n65			<i>Joel</i>	<i>Ps.-Jerome</i>	
5.5, 1	49 n3				<i>Leviticus</i>	
III., 21.2	1125 n50		1.1	992 n56,	26.8	928 n78
III., 23.5	74 n70,		1.4	1041 n20		
	80 n93,	<i>Isaiah</i>	4.4-12	991 n56	<i>Quaestiones in Iudices</i>	
	88 n106	1.10		1013 n90	5.1	870 n73,
IV., 31	215 n180	6.6				870 n83
V., 22.2	60 n22,	7.3		<i>Micah</i>	5.4-5	594 n181
	78 n72,	7.12			5.23	870 n82
	81 n97	10.3			5.25	870 n73
5.23	109 n30	10.13		<i>Jonah</i>		
V., 30	410 n392	10.16		Introduction	<i>1 Samuel</i>	
4.5	184 n49	14.19		997 n9	1.1	888 n1
		15.7		1.2	1.3	888 n5
		17		1032 n27	1.4-5	888 n7
		20.1		1032 n28	2.5	891 n22
<i>Fragmenta</i>		21.2		1032 n30	2.22	893 n26
32	703 n495	22.15		1033 n33	2.27	893 n28,
		27.1		1033 n31		997 n3
		30.2		1035 n35	4.19	895 n38
<i>Jerome</i>		36.1		1032 n27	7.6	626 n281,
<i>Quaestiones</i>		39.1		<i>Obadiah</i>		895 n40
<i>Genesis</i>				Introduction	9.20	901 n52
1.2	7 n15			1027 n6	10.6	902 n54
1.8	14 n54			1.1	13.1	902 n53
2.12	70 n51			998 n23	14.34	902 n58
2.17	78 n72	39.7			15.6	902 n60
2.21	62 n30			<i>Habakkuk</i>	16.10	930 n88
2.23	68 n48	44.2		2.15	17.18	917 n33
3.1	72 n60	47.2			21.1	893 n30
3.8	78 n73			<i>Zechariah</i>	21.6	909 n107
4.4	104-105 n10	56.4-5		8.18-19	25.44	941 n133
4.26	118 n54	64.1			28.7	903 n74
5	132 n62			<i>Malachi</i>	28.8	903 n71
5.29	135 n5			Introduction	31.6	904 n77,
6.3	140 n19			1123 n33		909 n110
9.27	156 n65			1.1		
10.25	158 n69			1115 n5		
		<i>Jeremiah</i>		<i>Ecclesiastes</i>		
		22.11		946 n2		



<i>2 Samuel</i>		32.21	1048 n60	62	52 n12	<i>De Ira Dei</i>	
1.2	909 n107	33.10	1057 n102	75	301 n253	13	608 n221
3.5	941 n131	32.33	1053 n92	79	121 n57		
4.2	929 n79	33.13	1058 n107	81	78 n72	Manoimus	
5.4-5	931 n96	35.3, 22-25	1062 n118	90	583 n145	<i>Philosophoumena</i>	
5.24	922 n54	36.8	1062 n125	91	583 n145,	8.7	525 n170
6.11	942 n135				748 n658		
10.10	937 n123	Joel		94	748 n658	Martinus Raymundi	
11.3	923 n61	<i>Chronographia</i>		95	100 n142	<i>Pugio Fidei</i>	
13.37	942 n143	p 3	116 n53	96	197 n104	554	61 n25
14.26	932 n98			97	200 n111	563	63 n35
15.25	933 n101	Johannes Malalas		99	78 n77	837-838	137 n10
16.10	982 n2	<i>Chronologia</i>		112	298 n245,	956	1115 n6
17.25	912 n7	1.151	116 n53		306 n274,		
18.18	933 n108	71	193 n81		748 n658	Methodius	
19.29	909 n112	97.257	1117 n18	113	706 n505	<i>Symposium</i>	
21.8	941 n133			116	1106 n108		140 n19
21.19	928 n78	John a Lapide		120	1058 n103	2	74 n70
23.8	928 n78	<i>Commentarium</i>		121	166 n91		
23.20-25	980 n94	<i>in Genesim</i>		124	64 n35	Michael Glycas	
24.9	937 n120	106 n19		128	16 n62,	<i>Annales</i>	
24.15	937 n122				502 n115	228-233	116 n53
24.24	921 n53	Julius Africanus		131	544 n241,	Minucius Felix	
		I., 93	903 n69		544 n242,	<i>Octavius</i>	
					580 n141,		
					688 n446	26.7	118 n54
<i>1 Kings</i>		<i>Epistola ad Aristidem</i>					
1.6	942 n139	1	470 n19,	139	155 n60	Moses bar Cepha	
1.17	946 n3		784 n800	141	931 n94	36E	74 n70
2.11	931 n96					<i>De Paradiso</i>	
2.34	926 n75	Justin Martyr		<i>Cohortatio ad Gent.</i>		84A	80 n93
4.31-32	955 n24	<i>Apologia</i>		30	67 n42	90A	81 n97
7.14	967 n61	1.10	51 n8				
<i>1 Chronicles</i>		1.45	51 n8	<i>Ad Diogenem</i>		Moses Chronensis	
2.17	918 n45	2.15	118 n54	7	51 n8	53	851 n45
3.1	942 n141	11.5	121 n57	Ps.-Justinian			
4.17	698 n484			<i>Quaestiones</i>		Novatian	
6.13	897 n46	<i>1 Apologia</i>		<i>ad Orthodoxes</i>		<i>De Cibis Judaicis</i>	
8.38	908 n96,	60	748 n658	VI., 1293	80 n93	2	70 n56
	908 n98						
9.44	909 n107	<i>2 Apologia</i>		Lactantius		Origen	
11.11	928 n78	5	57 n20	<i>Divinae Institutiones</i>		<i>Gen. Selecta</i>	
11.18	929 n78	7	50 n8	2.11	51 n8	7.19	152 n54
14.14	922 n54			2.13	49 n6,		
17.8	931 n94	<i>Dialogue</i>			70 n54,	<i>Genesis</i>	
20.7	948 n11	5	57 n20		78 n72	1.7	25 n100
21.7	947 n10	10	51 n8	2.14	140 n19	2.2	25 n98
33.19	1058 n104	19	248 n318	2.15	121 n57,	3.9	256 n35
		20	153 n56,		140 n19,	9.20	74 n70,
			502 n115		164 n88		155 n59,
<i>2 Chronicles</i>			197 n104,	2.16	118 n54		155 n60
2.7	848 n31	33	248 n318,	4.10	232 n253,	12.10d	146 n30
2.13	967 n61		1052 n70		622 n271,	15.9	199 n110
15.16	986 n18				861 n22	19.3	214 n172
20.5	988 n29	34	961 n40	4.14	1107 n108	37.36	351 n100
20.31, 37	988 n28	49	1022 n112	5.6	609 n235	41.45	370 n187
23.9	1044 n39	55	166 n91	7.4	45 n191		
24.17	1039 n12	56	206 n132	8.5	51 n8	<i>Numbers</i>	
24.27	1039 n16	57	206-207 n143	12.13	81 n95	36.8	876 n100
26.22	1042 n29	60	16 n62				



<i>Numbers</i> (ed. Migne) 12, 578B 833 n952	<i>Photius</i> <i>Bibliotheca</i> VIII., 453 n3	2.8 50 n6 2.21, 12 846 n22 2.24 78 n77 2.25 166 n90 2.26 625 n275 2.30 543 n233 3.8 748 n658 3.18 410 n387 4.24 568 n88 5.8 68 n45, 248 n318 5.9 1052 n70 11 62 n30	6 50 n6 7 80 n93
<i>In Josuam, Homily</i> 2.1 (Lommatzsch ed.) 11.22 833 n952	<i>Procopius</i> II., 20 848 n34	<i>Specilegium Syriacum</i> 89 622 n266	
<i>Isaiah, Homily</i> 1.5 1057 n102 39.7 1053 n88	<i>Schatzhöhle</i> 7 81 n97 34 105 n17 78 113 n44 176 864 n31	<i>De Spectactulis</i> 4 39 n143	
<i>Ezekiel, Homily</i> 4 456 n14	<i>Syncellus</i> <i>Chronographia</i> 1.16-17 116 n53 I., 21 140 n19, 151 n48 I., 34 121 n57 107 al. 86 317 n296 I., 176, 18 188 n54 I., 227 484 n65	<i>De Virgin.</i> 7 121 n57	
<i>John</i> 892 n25 2.25 256 n35 2.31 306 n273 6.7 997 n3	<i>Tertullian</i> <i>Ad Nationes</i> 2.8 622 n266 3.8 484 n65 11.8 548 n3	<i>Ps.-Tertullian</i> <i>Genesis</i> 35-40 49 n3 85 74 n70 86 74 n70 113 78 n73 184 105 n13	
<i>Contra Celsum</i> 3.41 140 n19 4.27-31 51 n8 4.31 121 n57 4.34 14 n50 4.37 49 n3 4.38 67 n42 4.40 80 n93 4.41 143 n21 4.43 215 n188 4.66 3 n9 5.30 164 n88, 166 n91 6.22 1105 n105 6.27 92 n113 6.30 687 n440 6.43 453 n3 6.62 612 n238 6.66 351 n102 7.63 50 n6	<i>Adversus Omnes</i> <i>Haereses</i> 1 9 n22 2 102 n3 4 608 n221	<i>Sodoma</i> 41 214 n171 160-170 215 n180	
<i>De Principiis</i> I., 3.3 56 n17 I., 3.7 62 n30 I., 8.1 53 n13 I., 33 7 n15 III., 2.5 168 n4 III., 6.1 50 n6 3.21 94 n117	<i>Adversus Hermogenem</i> 26 67 n42 34 15 n61, 131 n61	<i>Adversus Marcionitas</i> 3.210 1030 n20 3.235 1072 n16 3.245, 257 1083 n42 280-281 1125 n50	
<i>Epistola ad Africanum</i> 1106 n106 4 14 n54 12 68 n48	<i>Adversus Judaeos</i> 2 70 n55 4 248 n318, 846 n22 7 961 n40 9 706 n505 10 410 n387, 748 n658 14 1107 n108	<i>De Baptismo</i> 3 14 n53 13 248 n318 19 543 n235	<i>Adversus Omnes Haereses</i> 2 95 n119, 147 n36
<i>Petrus Damascus</i> (ed. Migne), CXIV 382B 997 n3	<i>Adversus Marcionem</i> I., 25-26 54 n15 2 49 n3 2.2 74 n70, 78 n78 2.3 54 n15 2.3-4 51 n8 2.5 50 n6	<i>De Cultu Fem.</i> 1.3 1124 n41, 1125 n50	<i>De Jona</i> 20 1032 n27
		<i>De Idol.</i> 5 748 n658 9 121 n57	<i>Theodoretus</i> <i>Haeres</i> 1.11 105 n17
		<i>De Oratione</i> 22 68 n45 26 206 n134	<i>Genesis</i> 1.2 7 n15, 56 n17 1.27 52 n12 3.15 200 n114 3.27 80 n93 9.3, 29 153 n56 12.17 191 n77 15.9 200 n114 18 145 n24 18.8 207 n143 25.22 254 n18 31.19 292 n218 43 112 n37 247 118 n54
		<i>De Patientia</i> 5 102 n3 14 1058 n103	
		<i>De Pudicitia</i> 9 80 n93 10 1032 n27	
		<i>De Resurrectione</i> 5 49 n3, 52 n12	



<i>Exodus</i>	<i>De Fabrica Mundi</i>	Lobeck	Ibn Tufail
2.6 479 n51	81 n97,	<i>Aglaophamos</i>	39 n148
3.1 502 n115	99 n140	909 279 n134	
6.5 511 n122			Istahri
11.2 543 n233	M. Greek and Latin Writers	Plato	54 172 n20
14.16 557 n36		<i>Timaeus</i>	
20.3-6 608 n218	Aristotle	92a 43 n190	Koran
32.10 625 n275	<i>De Coelo</i>	<i>Symposium</i>	2.33 63 n35
72 81 n97	I., 4 45 n191	189d, 190d 67 n42	2.60 118 n55,
			691 n452
<i>Numbers</i>	<i>De Generatione Animalium</i>	Pliny	2.67 574 n110
10.11 494 n83	III., 6.5 41 n177	<i>Historia Naturalis</i>	4.124 168 n4
11.17 697 n479		VIII., 32, 50 43 n190	6.100 178 n34
11.21 700 n485		X., 68, 87 40 n157	7.174 118 n55
12.1 701 n488	<i>Historia Animalium</i>	26.1, 5 499 n101	9.30 1115 n5
22.23 767 n743	V., 19 40 n157	30.1, 11 520 n161	11.73 207 n143
24.17 777 n782	V., 47 41 n177	31.2 1089 n56	12.26-28 399 n340
<i>Deuteronomy</i>	IX., 13 43 n190		12.30-33 356 n118
Interr., 43 833 n952		Strabo	18.59-82 1015 n94
	Arrian	<i>Geographia</i>	21.69 177 n33
<i>2 Kings</i>	<i>Alexander's Campaigns</i>	16.11 430 n438	47.16-17 21 n79
4.1 1027 n7	7.2 430 n438		Maras
		Seneca	II., 519 172 n20
Theophilus	Berosus	<i>Epistolae</i>	
<i>πρὸς Ἀντόλῳκον</i>	(Richter's Ed.)	65.24 61 n25	Mas'udi
1.2 351 n102	56 151 n48		<i>Les Prairies d'Or</i>
2 66 n38	56.39 165 n88	Stoicorum Veter.	39 n148
2.3 197 n102		Fragmenta	I., 100 1077 n29
2.13 14 n45	Diogenes of Babylonia	(ed. Arnim)	I., 161 1089 n56
2.15 25 n99	<i>Philodem. De Piet.,</i>	II., 584 81 n97	Pantschatantra
2.18 49 n3,	(ed. Gomperz)		(ed. Benfey)
52 n12	82 61 n25	Suidas	I., 376, 377 172 n16
2.19 70 n54		<i>Lexicon</i>	IV., 1 42 n190
2.26, 29 78 n77	Herodotus	s.v. χαναάν 848 n34	
2.27 50 n6	I., 8 598 n191	s.v. Seth 116 n52	Pend-Nameh
2.30 113 n45	I., 32 62 n28		207 42 n183
2.31 166 n90,	I., 134 291 n217	Tacitus	
193 n81,	I., 181 1105 n105	<i>Annales</i>	Tabari
232 n253	II., 21, 23 20 n73	XIV., 15.2 1087 n52	<i>Annales</i>
3.19 135 n5,	II., 35 468 n7		I., 414 903 n69
140 n19,	III., 23 779 n787	Xenophon	II., 45 1035 n35
155 n60	III., 109 39 n144	<i>Memorabilia</i>	
7 632 n296	III., 153 228 n239	IV., 3.14 351 n102	
Tatian	IV., 65 1100 n90		
<i>Oratio ad Graecos</i>	IV., 120 718 n558	N. Oriental Literature	
8 118 n54	IV., 168 241 n294	Buchari	
Victorinus of Peteau	Juvenal	<i>Sabih</i>	
<i>Apocalypse of John</i>	<i>Saturnalia</i>	III., 379 307 n275	
11.1 1083 n42	6.542 930 n87		



# HEBREW AND ARAMAIC WORDS AND PHRASES

אבות	434 n2	איִקון	137 n9	אספסוף	552 n12
אבינו	484 n68	איש אלהים	838 n965	אסקופים	573 n101
אבותיך	1017 n97	איש הבינים	917 n27	אסקפטרין	980 n99
אבלון	458 n21	אנשי שם	720 n563	איִסקבטיריי	980 n99
אבני אישתא	11 n39	איתמלאי	169 n6	אסרשא	315 n292
אבירים	571 n98	אכל לעלמיה	1005 n54	אפלישוס	1147 n93
אברך	1099 n84	אל	113 n42, 121	אפים	888 n7
אבריקא	848 n34		n57, 306	אפיקון	1112 n4
אנוסטיאני	1087 n52		n273	אפרענית	499 n104
אדם	54 n15, 145	ואל אחיו	331 n18	אצטרנגא	619 n258
	n28, 576	אלה	108 n20	אקטורין	552 n15
	n122	אלהים	3 n6, 121	ארה	773 n764
אדם הקדמוני	60 n21		n57, 128	ארים	131 n61
אדום	259 n46		n60, 150	ארמי	131 n61, 253
אדמי	908 n96, 908		n46, 622		n5, 322 n317
	n98		n264, 884	ארץ	7 n16
אדן	39 n148		n134	ארקלין	962 n47
אדנת נשא	113 n42	האלהים	553 n27	ארעא תקיף	120 n57
אדורין	322 n317	אלהים עולים	904 n77	אשה	68 n48, 273
אהב	168 n4	אלקים	128 n60		n113, 288
אהוב	168 n4	אם ירצה השם	1009 n71		n179
לאהליך	984 n10	אמה תיביקין	143 n21	אשיא	608 n219
אומות	158 n78	אמזרע	113 n42	אשל	224 n225
אופסים	573 n101	אם זרע	146 n29	את	334 n21
אוקינוס	20 n73	אמפורין	435 n6	מאת ד'	214 n179
אור הננוז	8 n19	אמר המגיד	178 n34	אתוראה	178 n36
אורולי דימא	39 n145	אמתי	997 n9	אתרוג	74 n70,
אוראל	128 n60	אמתלא	169 n6		356 n118
אוריה	128 n60, 161	אמתלאי	169 n6		
	n76	אניפונים	1131 n13	בבל	1092 n64
אוריו	128 n60	אניפורנים	1131 n13	בגד	288 n183
אותיותיה משולשות	593 n179	אנקא	43 n190	בד	27 n109
אחיו	262 n52	אניקא	970 n67	בהמות שדה	31 n127
אחיך במצות	274 n123	אנוקו	180 n45	בונה	348 n96
אחד	262 n57	אניקש	180 n45	בוה	231 n240
כאחד	879 n114	אנונות	737 n622	מבזה אותו בקלון	1106 n107
אחו	67 n40	אנקניהא	43 n190	ביל	131 n61
אחוזה	89 n109	אסותא	401 n357	בישין	110 n34
ואחותיה נשיין	878 n111	אסטרשא	315 n292	בית יואב	926 n76
לאט	1051 n66	אספים	573 n101	בכאים	922 n54
אי	894 n33	אספיים	573 n101	בכי	1058 n103



ולבכתה	236 n259	גליגי לאימך	140 n16	זכור לשוב	996 n1, 1004 n45
בכרו	908 n98	גלומי	40 n162	זמין	237 n269
בלצוציחא	810 n896	גלמא	40 n162	זמרגד	458 n20
בולקה	760 n719	גם זו לשובה	1004 n48	זעקפי המלחמה	410 n385
במה	901 n51	געגע	2 n6	זקן	904 n75
בן אחרוני של עולם	289 n201	מתגעגעין	827 n941	זקק לאישה	95 n128
בן דודוהו	988 n28	גרוד	276 n124	זקאל	120 n57
בן יומו	396 n316	גרידא	276 n124	זרעאל	860 n17, 918 n43
בן ימים	319 n308	גרסי	499 n101		
בן נבו	169 n6	גורפת מחושמה	273 n113		
בן נץ	32 n134	גרשה	800 n869		
בני	435 n6				
בני אלהים	306 n273	דוביאל	3 n8	המחבל	104 n8
בני בליעל	985 n16	דויג	909 n107	חגב בעל כנפים	61 n25
בני דויה	790 n827	דוכיפת	975 n85	חד שבעה	1099 n85
בני ימא	40 n168	דולפיין	40 n168	חדים	20 n71
בנים	933 n108	דיקומני	1087 n52	בחדש	597 n188
בסוסו	1030 n15	דכיין	284 n164	חזה	68 n48, 102 n3
בספריה	127 n60	דליים ובנריות	203 n122	מחזיא	91 n110
בעל	1085 n45	דמואל	3 n8	חויא	68 n48
בעל בכי	1058 n103	דקלים	15 n55	חוח	43 n190
בער	1058 n112	דקריוני	1087 n52	חול	39 n151
בקמון	874 n104	דרך שמים מת	743 n641	חויץ לפילייה	1062 n128
ברונא	689 n447	דורשי רשומות	908 n100	חיצא	231 n242
ברוי	3 n8	דתנה	334 n29	חוצה	231 n242
ברולא	689 n447			חזיל	161 n76
בריא	42 n184	הבל	104 n8	חזיר מיער	284 n162
בראילא	689 n447	הדר עלה	967 n59	חשה	74 n70
ברחילא	689 n447	היכל	639 n318	חי	1066 n3
בר יוכני	32 n137	הימק סורו	1099 n85	חייא	137 n10
ברנבו	169 n6	הכי	271 n102	חיה	301 n253
בר נפלי	1063 n136	המדתא	1147 n93	חיה יחיה	1022 n119
ברקוליאני	1087 n52	הימקסירוס	1099 n85	חייה	137 n10
בר נש דטורא	39 n148	הינדיק	70 n51	חיל	322 n317
ברנשא	1095 n75	הלך	284 n162	חכם	1067 n8
ברא	32 n136	הלך וגדל	262 n62	חלילה	211 n161
ברית	248 n318	הלכו לאורה	942 n137	חלומי בראשו	361 n147
בריתו של אברהם	248 n318	הליכתו	80 n95	החלות	805 n883
ברכת הגומל	564 n58	ותהם הארץ	893 n31	חלונות	172 n14
ברק נביאה	870 n73	הן	805 n886	חליפין	867 n65
בת אנוש	113 n42	הצללפוני	878 n111	חליצה	867 n65
		להורת	394 n310	חמור גרם	289 n193
גבינא	1112 n2	וי	309 n287, 894 n33	חמור חמרתים	879 n118
גדר	289 n185			וחמשים	784 n806
גדוד	276 n124	זיבורית	259 n45	חנם	694 n469
גדול הדור	474 n27	זהוב	259 n46	חסד	929 n78
ואגדלוהו	295 n229	נזדווגה	103 n4	חסיד	88 n106, 329 n3, 485 n68, 715 n543, 929 n78
גדלם	739 n627	זונה	844 n12	חסידות	715 n543
גדלת שפתים	414 n414	זונה	876 n106	חסנת	427 n432
גוטאוכי	158 n72	זונרא	1125 n47	חוסנא	427 n432
גועש	315 n292	זירורי	315 n292	חצות	896 n40
גוף	57 n19, 66 n37	זח	184 n49	החצר החדשה	988 n29
גוש של רוק	1101 n92	זוחא	184 n49	הצרמות	161 n76
גוריגון	422 n429	זמרי	860 n21	חורב	501 n113
גחון	87 n106	זכות אבות	912 n7		
גלוי אליהו	1013 n93	זכר	926 n77		
גלוי עריות	158 n67	זכר ונקבה	67 n42		



מחרמת	184 n49	יוחני	492 n80	כרשינה	936 n111
חרס	844 n11	יחנה	520 n161	כשף	137 n9
חרסום	1112 n2	יין המשומר	268 n93	כשילאה	1131 n13
חרפה	289 n200	יין שחור	1135 n28	כתב	1071 n15
חרש	844 n11	ייוס	492 n80	כתב ליבונאה	158 n72
יתחשב	773 n764	יכולנו	1087 n52	כתב ומכתב	82 n99
ונתחדש	462 n35	ילדא בהות	106 n17	כתובין	1177 n176
חתך	1163 n129	ים	9 n23	כתים	770 n782
חכמי המשנה	1128 n56	הימים	324 n322	לא	27 n108, 263 n63
טוב	635 n308,	ותניקתו	479 n51	לא ירבה	975 n80
	876 n107	יפי	184 n49	לובש תפלין	942 n134
כטובתו	399 n341	והוציא	289 n189	לבוזר דוק	1112 n2
טוטפן	1178 n189	יקך	740 n632	לבנים	42 n182
טטרנוא	619 n258	ירד	120 n57	לביאל	53 n13
טורא בריכא	874 n103	ירח	27 n112	לו	263 n63
טחן	880 n121,	ירוקה	88 n106	לוה	288 n174
	1085 n45	ירושלמי	224 n223	לולבא	456 n14
טחרי זהב	894 n34	ירושת שלמה	232 n253	לחי	880 n119
טליא	471 n21, 970 n67	ישוע ליספאה	848 n34	לחם אבירים	207 n143,
טלניס	1100 n87	ישראל סבא	558 n39		571 n95
טפסר	1099 n84	ישר	828 n943	לילה	904 n75
		יתרך	733 n607	ליליאל	120 n57
ויואל	501 n108,	כבוד	602 n206	לשונות	158 n72
	517 n148	כדובין	1177 n176	מאמרא אפיתרניו	128 n60
יאניס	184 n49	כדי כניסה	212 n165	מביט	962 n47
יבין	860 n19	כה	228 n238	מגבעון	1057 n101
יברוחא	289 n189	כהן	494 n82, 928 n78	מדבחא	655 n365
יד	902 n64	כהנים	942 n141	מדברא	655 n365
יד ה'	998 n22	כודות ברזל	713 n532	מדון	322 n316
ידיד	168 n4	בכזיב	346 n81	מדורה	15 n56
ידעוני	760 n720	כוס של עקרים	202 n117	מדורי	15 n56
ידעתי	232 n247	כושאי	980 n99	מדינה	173 n22
יה	113 n42, 118 n56, 128 n56, 128	כותא	172 n20	מדינים	793 n842
	n60, 184 n49	כחושים	466 n4	מדרש	224 n223,
יהו	118 n56	כידנו לרחים	192 n80		398 n335,
יהואל	200 n114	כיון	103 n6		564 n60
יהודי	434 n4, 1141 n60	כיל	131 n61	מה לו	1008 n63
		כיפה	163 n82	מהויא	91 n110
יהודים	1177 n175	כוכבים	27 n112	מהנדיא	1179 n192
מתייהדים	1178 n191	כל ונוכחת	217 n198	מולא	1169 n158
שנתייהדו	865 n40	כלוב	1067 n6	מומסים	1137 n36
יהועזי	118 n56	כלבו	88 n106	מונחס	492 n80
יו	128 n60	כלוני	1087 n52	מוקרת ראש	67 n43
יום הולדת	362 n151	כלי לדברות	94 n117	מושב	894 n34
היום כפול	615 n245	כמלנית	533 n188	מזוגת	1131 n6
יומא	961 n42	כנס	529 n183	מזלות	583 n144
מימים ימימה	884 n135,	כנניה	697 n477	מזרע	113 n42
	888 n5, 888 n9	כנסת ישראל	1043 n36	מזרק	672 n400
יומברוס	492 n80	כנעני	348 n95, 752 n669	משבע תפלה	1128 n58
יורקמי	1099 n87	כנענית	348 n96	למחות	949 n13
ייחד	677 n416	כאפא רנומיהא	1099 n87	משעת	903 n70
שנתייהדו	865 n40	כרב	80 n94	מטריאל	120 n57
יחדיו	231 n240	כרדו	172 n20	מי נדה	574 n112
יחני	520 n162	כרה	1030 n22	מים	574 n112
		כרש	1115 n7	מים מתוקים	9 n23



מינין	113 n42	משוח מלחמה	795 n849	סומא	94 n116
מינקת רבקה	319 n302	משמר	1146 n90	סוף	479 n46,
מיתת קרח	1087 n53	משפטן	787 n818		1033 n31
מך	870 n73	משקה	536 n209	סטרטן	315 n292
מכרותיהם	410 n387	מישלהא	1131 n13	סיגרי	499 n101
מלאך בשמים	1000 n39	משולשות	593 n179	סיגר	1125 n47
מלאכי חבלה	80 n94	משלשת	199 n110	סילונית	533 n188
מלאכי שטן	64 n35	משנה	1067 n8	סלונות	172 n14
מלאכי השרת	122 n58			סלם	576 n122
מלח סדומית	215 n184	נבאר	1112 n2	סלמאל	306 n273
מלחם	39 n151,	הנביא	484 n68	סמל	1056 n97
	73 n67	נביאים אחרונים	1124 n36	סמלנית	534 n188
מלחם	39 n151	נבון	890 n17	סמוכין	720 n566
מלחם	73 n67	נגד השמש	780 n790	סנאב	697 n477
מלך	456 n17,	נוגף ישמעאל	274 n120	סנאה	697 n477
	1164 n140,	נהר	170 n12	סנדטור	842 n2
	1171 n161,	נופך	462 n37	סנהדרין	866 n62
	1177 n177	נחל	170 n12, 318	סנאה	697 n477
המלך	484 n68		n301	סניאב	697 n477
מלכת	244 n311	נחל קדומים	870 n73	ספר	635 n306
מלכיות	1099 n85	נחשול	672 n388	ספר עזרא	1125 n44
ממשיח	678 n421	נינוס	70 n51, 681	ספר התורה	842 n9
מקושש	691 n452		n424	ספיר	635 n306
ממתיח	678 n421	נינוח היה נישול	580 n141	סקנדרין	1177 n176
מנות	888 n7	נכה	1062 n123	סקרישורין	1177 n176
מנרכוס	492 n80	נכה רגלים	970 n71	סרשן	315 n292
מסורת	291 n203,	נסות	601 n200	סריסים	1097 n78
	869 n71	נסיכי	100 n142	ובסתרים	597 n191,
מעדנות	902 n65	נעל	867 n65		844 n15
מעונות	8 n22, 14	למסעיו	191 n79	ועבדתי	282 n158
	n48	נעם זרע	146 n29	ויעבר	1166 n142
מעניות	8 n22	נעמיות	902 n65	עד לו	1124 n39
כמעט	263 n67	נעץ חרב	941 n133	עדאל	912 n11
מעלה	999 n32	נעוריתא	533 n188	עדה	912 n11
מעשה חיוי	72 n60	נער פורפורה	384 n265	עדיאל	912 n11
מעשה כל הדורות	1000 n36	נוער	67 n41	עדישה	222 n218
מעשר כספים	280 n144	ויפל	105 n13	עדית	215 n180
מעשר ממון	280 n144	נפילים	120 n57	עודד	1028 n10
מפלצת	986 n18	נקבה	282 n157	עול	271 n105
מצוה	805 n878	הקיש בוזג	68 n47	עור	73 n69, 80
מצפיר	760 n719	נרתיק	26 n100		n93
מצרים	66-67 n40,	נשא פניו	918 n44	עורבתי	1147 n93
	370 n184,	חשא ראש	637 n313	בעזר השם	1009 n71
	375 n204	מנשבין	22 n82	עזרא וסייעתו	1125 n49
מצרים סבא	558 n39	נשיין	878 n111	עזרה	930 n88
מקום	279 n130,	נשמה	58 n20	עזרו	113 n42
	756 n701,	נתזה	890 n17	עזריאל	113 n42
	1164 n139	נתן	543 n233	עזריה	113 n42
מקלו	731 n600	ויתן לך האלהים	880 n122	עזיה	118 n56
מראה	40 n165			עזיהו	118 n56
מריאים	81 n98	סבא	256-257 n35	עשהאל	860 n17
מרכבה	26 n101	מסנן	152 n55	עשיאל	860 n17
מרודים	346 n74	סנן סגניאל	812 n898	עיר	173 n22
מרפא	401 n357	סגנואל	812 n898	עיפה	222 n218
מרום	999 n32	סדר תפלה	1128 n58	עירם	322 n316
מריו	128 n60	סדר	27 n112	עכבית	40 n159
נמרצת	931 n96	סוניא	152 n55	עכן	848 n31
משה רבינו	484 n68	סוד העבור	536 n203		



עכנא	848 n31	פקד יפקד	430 n434	קצתי	273 n113
עולה ויורדת	57 n18	פקידה	1071 n13	קורסור	693 n457
בעלות המנחה	998 n18	פקפילי	158 n72	קודור	1013 n88
עלילה	271 n104,	פרגוד	57 n19	קשורין	552 n15
	888 n9	פרגוד מצויר	343 n43	קינסלי	926 n77
התעללות	768 n746	פרח רוחה	61 n25	קיפא	691 n452
עלומה	878 n111	פרשוריאני	1087 n52	הקל ראש	67 n43
לעולם הבא	571 n97	פרמשתקו	499 n101	קלקל	1073 n24
עליהא	40 n159	פרי	148 n37	מקולקל	568 n85
עם שופרא	1172 n168	מחפרסמת	79 n85	קמין	874 n104
עומד בבכי	567 n72	פריעה	203 n126	לקמציים	370 n192
מחעננין	827 n941	פרנטוס	1076 n29	קמוש	43 n190
עניתני	914 n13	פרעתון	315 n292	קן צפור	896 n40
ענקים	121 n57	פרץ	347 n92	קנים	896 n40
עסתר	120 n57	בפרק אחד	1041 n20	קניחי	866 n64
עסתראל	120 n57	פורק על	271 n105	קניהו	31 n127
עפלים	894 n34	פרת	430 n438	קנסור	693 n457
עפר	774 n770	פרתמים	1131 n7	קנסרי	926 n77
עצה	456 n14	פתח עינים	346 n84	קנעתי	31 n127
עצורה	113 n42	פתקא	1134 n23	קסדור	1013 n88
עצורתי	113 n42			קסרין	926 n77
ער	346 n79	צדי	43 n190	קפדקי	158 n72
ערב רב	552 n12	צדק	329 n3	קפישילין	430 n438
ערוב	533 n188	צדקה	224 n224,	קפיצת הדרך	241 n287
ערבים	997 n6		1017 n96	קציעי צואריא	711 n526
ערומים	95 n120	צדקות	224 n224	קד	1100 n92
לעתיד לבוא	571 n97	צדק לא	903 n74	קרא על יברוחא	289 n189
ויעתר	253 n8	צדוק הדין	343 n64, 819 n908, 896 n40	קרדו	172 n20
				קרדוניא	1178 n184
פנה	931 n93			ויקר	866 n57
ויפגע	279 n130	צדיק	145 n28,	קרינוס	1176 n170
פדיאל	879 n111		328-329 n3,	קרקע	752 n673
פואה	470 n17		1015 n94,	קרקע בתולה	54 n15
פוך	462 n37		1106 n107,	קשר תפלה	463 n39
פולסא	810 n896		1109 n119	קשר הספד	463 n39
פונדקיתא	844 n12, 876 n106	וצדקת אבות	912 n7	לראות	309 n285,
		צופים	888 n1		394 n310
פוסטין	1030 n22	צורי	158 n72	ראש סינהדרין	474 n27
פועה	470 n17	ציון	726 n581	רב	484 n68
בפחד אביו	294 n227	ציר	967 n61	רב לך	805 n887
פחדאל	879 n111	צפרה	470 n17	רבי	484 n68
פשוות	699 n485	צפית	1112 n4	רבינו	484 n68
פטרנוס	1076 n29	צרדי	158 n72	רבן	484 n68
פלא	120 n57	צרי	967 n61	למרבה	1052 n70
פלניס	1100 n87	צרוע	982 n2	רגג	74 n70
פילגש	961 n41,	והצרעת זרחה	1042 n30	ברגול	405 n367
	1073 n21			ברגליו	871 n84
הפליט	756 n697	קבוע	202 n117	לרגליו	517 n149
פלילה	271 n104	קובע	202 n117	וירד	346 n74
פגנוס	595 n185	מקדם	15 n61	רהט	152 n55
לפני	236 n262	שמקדם	735 n615	רהומי	158 n72
פנים	122 n58	קברנישין	430 n438	רוזנים	949 n14
פנימי	137 n9	קודיר	1013 n88	רוח	56 n17, 58 n20, 1101 n92
פניקין	158 n72	קולצאני	170 n10		
פסוסו	315 n292	מקולל	568 n85	רוח אלהים	7 n15
פסים	334 n43	קוליני	170 n10	רוסתקיאחא	847 n22
פסל	884 n138	קוסטינר	842 n2	הרם	555 n32
פספסין	334 n43	קין	618 n250		



הרים	20 n71
רחמי	168 n4
רחומי	158 n72
רק	1100-1101 n92
ראקא	1009 n72
ריקה	1009 n72
ריגוסר	1112 n2
ריש קטיעא	711 n526
רמון	884 n135
רומניא	884 n135
רננים	32 n139
רעמיאל	120 n57
רעיא מדימנא	501 n109
רפאים	965 n56
רצואל	113 n42
רצויה	113 n42
ונתרקנה כבודו	11 n42
מרחוק	334 n33
הרמותים	888 n4
הרפה	917 n27
תרצח	609 n228
רקת	410 n391
הרשע	43 n190
שאל	543 n233
שבא	1073 n21
שבע	284 n166
שבעה	1063 n136
שבעה עדנין	1104 n103
שבעתים	15 n56, 112 n37
שבת	85 n103, 1089 n56
שנעון	1032 n25
שדים	80 n94
שדה	31 n127, 39 n148, 82 n98, 752 n673
שדי	11 n43, 1005 n58
שה	914 n15
שהוצדה	865 n43
שה	904 n77
שוח	857 n9
שופט	864 n36
שורניקא	970 n68
שור הבר	32 n136, 38 n141
שושן	113 n42
שותף	64 n35
וישתחו	401 n348, 401 n355

שחוק באמך	140 n16
שחור	1135 n28
שיפדו	1176 n169
שיפרגו	1176 n169
שיר נצח	127 n60
שכה	178 n38
שכוי	32 n137
ואשטיף	1012 n75
משכמם	977 n90
שכרה	1032 n28
שלג	876 n108
שלח	132 n62, 132 n64
שלם	307 n279, 197 n102
שלשה סימנים	574 n112
שלוהאל	1126 n50
שם	292 n218, 347 n89
שם רוח טומאה	291-292 n218
שמו של אל עליון	890 n17
שמות שאינן נמחקין	306 n273
שמחה	113 n42
שמים	7 n16, 8 n20
שמע	17 n70
השומרים	1047 n55
שמירמה	1063 n134
שמירמית	1063 n134
שמירעם	1063 n134
שמש	27 n112
שנצחבת	744 n643
שניות לעריות	955 n18
שפטים	1039 n16
שר הטבחים	355 n111
שר הפנים	14 n50, 122 n58
שר צבא הגדול	127 n60
שרש	184 n49
ששון	113 n42
שתי	10 n38, 11 n39
שתיה	11 n39
שתיל	115 n50
תאווה	217 n198
תאנא	122 n58
תדוי	1012 n78
תהומאל	120 n57
תוכו כבודו	644 n330
תור בר	38 n141
תורפה	292 n218
תחטי	1012 n78
תלג	876 n108

תלי אתליא	31 n127
תמה	172 n19
תמח	112 n40, 871 n87
תמר	456 n14
תנה כופר ופדין	231 n242
תנין	29 n117, 39 n145
תפוח	74 n70
תרב	271 n105
תרדמה	62 n30
תרי	168 n5
תריכון	733 n607, 739 n626
תרנגול ברא	32 n136, 975 n85
תרפים	965 n56
התרשתא	1120 n26
תשנק רוחך	947 n10
ותתע	221 n216
ותלה	398 n334
מתקן	147 n36

## INDEX OF PIYYUTIM

אדני אלהי ישראל	1128 n58
האומרים אחד	57 n20
או במלאת	1084 n43
או רוב ניסים	191 n76
אולת יוכבד	835 n956
איכה עצת	82 n98
איתן	682 n427
אל ברוב עצות	84 n101
אלה אוכרה	97 n134
אלהינו אלהים אמת	26 n102
אליהו הנביא	1023 n119
אמיצי שחקים	63 n34
בימים ההם	1120 n25
התקבצו מלאכים	481 n57
ובכן ויהי בחצי הלילה	874 n100
ויכון עולם	30 n127, 39 n141
זכר ברית	434 n3
כך גזרו	557 n39
מה נהדר	961 n42
מראה כהן	1130 n1
רחמנא אדכר	715 n543
פרשת החדש	485 n68